R: A Language and Environment for Statistical Computing

Reference Index

The Core Team

Version 3.1.3 (2015-03-09)

Copyright (©) 1999–2012 R Foundation for Statistical Computing.
Permission is granted to make and distribute verbatim copies of this manual provided the copyright notice and this permission notice are preserved on all copies.
Permission is granted to copy and distribute modified versions of this manual under the conditions for verbatim copying, provided that the entire resulting derived work is distributed under the terms of a permission notice identical to this one.
Permission is granted to copy and distribute translations of this manual into another language, under the above conditions for modified versions, except that this permission notice may be stated in a translation approved by the R Core Team.

R is free software and comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You are welcome to redistribute it under the terms of the GNU General Public License. For more information about these matters, see .

Contents

Part I

Chapter 1

The base package

---

base-package *The R Base Package*

Description

Base R functions

Details

This package contains the basic functions which let function as a language: arithmetic, input/output, basic programming support, etc. Its contents are available through inheritance from any environment.

For a complete list of functions, use `library(help = "base")`.

.bincode *Bin a Numeric Vector*

Description

Bin a numeric vector and return integer codes for the binning.

Usage

```
.bincode(x, breaks, right = TRUE, include.lowest = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector which is to be converted to integer codes by binning.
breaks	a numeric vector of two or more cut points, sorted in increasing order.
right	logical, indicating if the intervals should be closed on the right (and open on the left) or vice versa.
include.lowest	logical, indicating if an 'x[i]' equal to the lowest (or highest, for `right = FALSE`) 'breaks' value should be included in the first (or last) bin.

Details

This is a 'barebones' version of `cut.default(labels = FALSE)` intended for use in other functions which have checked the arguments passed. (Note the different order of the arguments they have in common.)

Unlike `cut`, the `breaks` do not need to be unique. An input can only fall into a zero-length interval if it is closed at both ends, so only if `include.lowest = TRUE` and it is the first (or last for `right = FALSE`) interval.

Value

An integer vector of the same length as `x` indicating which bin each element falls into (the leftmost bin being bin `1`). `NaN` and `NA` elements of `x` are mapped to `NA` codes, as are values outside range of `breaks`.

See Also

`cut`, `tabulate`

Examples

```
## An example with non-unique breaks:
x <- c(0, 0.01, 0.5, 0.99, 1)
b <- c(0, 0, 1, 1)
.bincode(x, b, TRUE)
.bincode(x, b, FALSE)
.bincode(x, b, TRUE, TRUE)
.bincode(x, b, FALSE, TRUE)
```

.Device *Lists of Open/Active Graphics Devices*

Description

A pairlist of the names of open graphics devices is stored in `.Devices`. The name of the active device (see `dev.cur`) is stored in `.Device`. Both are symbols and so appear in the base namespace.

Value

`.Device` is a length-one character vector.

`.Devices` is a pairlist of length-one character vectors. The first entry is always `"null device"`, and there are as many entries as the maximal number of graphics devices which have been simultaneously active. If a device has been removed, its entry will be `""` until the device number is reused.

`.Machine` *Numerical Characteristics of the Machine*

Description

`.Machine` is a variable holding information on the numerical characteristics of the machine is running on, such as the largest double or integer and the machine's precision.

Usage

```
.Machine
```

Details

The algorithm is based on Cody's (1988) subroutine MACHAR. As all current implementations of use 32-bit integers and use IEC 60559 floating-point (double precision) arithmetic, all but three of the last four values are the same for almost all builds.

Note that on most platforms smaller positive values than `.Machine$double.xmin` can occur. On a typical platform the smallest positive double is about `5e-324`.

Value

A list with components

`double.eps` the smallest positive floating-point number `x` such that `1 + x != 1`. It equals `double.base ^ ulp.digits` if either `double.base` is 2 or `double.rounding` is 0; otherwise, it is `(double.base ^ double.ulp.digits) / 2`. Normally `2.220446e-16`.

`double.neg.eps` a small positive floating-point number `x` such that `1 - x != 1`. It equals `double.base ^ double.neg.ulp.digits` if `double.base` is 2 or `double.rounding` is 0; otherwise, it is `(double.base ^ double.neg.ulp.digits) / 2`. Normally `1.110223e-16`. As `double.neg.ulp.digits` is bounded below by `-(double.digits + 3)`, `double.neg.eps` may not be the smallest number that can alter 1 by subtraction.

`double.xmin` the smallest non-zero normalized floating-point number, a power of the radix, i.e., `double.base ^ double.min.exp`. Normally `2.225074e-308`.

`double.xmax` the largest normalized floating-point number. Typically, it is equal to `(1 - double.neg.eps) * double.base ^ double.max.exp`, but on some machines it is only the second or third largest such number, being too small by 1 or 2 units in the last digit of the significand. Normally `1.797693e+308`. Note that larger unnormalized numbers can occur.

`double.base` the radix for the floating-point representation: normally `2`.

`double.digits` the number of base digits in the floating-point significand: normally `53`.

`double.rounding`
the rounding action, one of
0 if floating-point addition chops;
1 if floating-point addition rounds, but not in the IEEE style;
2 if floating-point addition rounds in the IEEE style;
3 if floating-point addition chops, and there is partial underflow;

4 if floating-point addition rounds, but not in the IEEE style, and there is partial underflow;
5 if floating-point addition rounds in the IEEE style, and there is partial underflow.
Normally 5.

`double.guard` the number of guard digits for multiplication with truncating arithmetic. It is 1 if floating-point arithmetic truncates and more than `double digits` base-`double.base` digits participate in the post-normalization shift of the floating-point significand in multiplication, and 0 otherwise.
Normally 0.

`double.ulp.digits`
the largest negative integer `i` such that `1 + double.base ^ i != 1`, except that it is bounded below by `-(double.digits + 3)`. Normally `-52`.

`double.neg.ulp.digits`
the largest negative integer `i` such that `1 - double.base ^ i != 1`, except that it is bounded below by `-(double.digits + 3)`. Normally `-53`.

`double.exponent`
the number of bits (decimal places if `double.base` is 10) reserved for the representation of the exponent (including the bias or sign) of a floating-point number. Normally 11.

`double.min.exp` the largest in magnitude negative integer `i` such that `double.base ^ i` is positive and normalized. Normally `-1022`.

`double.max.exp` the smallest positive power of `double.base` that overflows. Normally `1024`.

`integer.max` the largest integer which can be represented. Always $2^31 - 1 = 2147483647$.

`sizeof.long` the number of bytes in a C `long` type: `4` or `8` (most 64-bit systems, but not Windows).

`sizeof.longlong`
the number of bytes in a C `long long` type. Will be zero if there is no such type, otherwise usually `8`.

`sizeof.longdouble`
the number of bytes in a C `long double` type. Will be zero if there is no such type (or its use was disabled when was built), otherwise possibly `12` (most 32-bit builds) or `16` (most 64-bit builds).

`sizeof.pointer` the number of bytes in a C `SEXP` type. Will be `4` on 32-bit builds and `8` on 64-bit builds of .

Note

`sizeof.longdouble` only tells you the amount of storage allocated for a long double (which are normally used internally by for accumulators in e.g. `sum`, and can be read by `readBin`). Often what is stored is the 80-bit extended double type of IEC 60559, padded to the double alignment used on the platform — this seems to be the case for the common platforms using ix86 and x86_64 chips.

Source

Uses a C translation of Fortran code in the reference, modified by the R Core Team to defeat over-optimization in recent compilers.

References

Cody, W. J. (1988) MACHAR: A subroutine to dynamically determine machine parameters. *Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **14**, 4, 303–311.

See Also

.Platform for details of the platform.

Examples

```
.Machine
## or for a neat printout
noquote(unlist(format(.Machine)))
```

.Platform *Platform Specific Variables*

Description

.Platform is a list with some details of the platform under which was built. This provides means to write OS-portable code.

Usage

```
.Platform
```

Value

A list with at least the following components:

OS.type	character string, giving the **O**perating **S**ystem (family) of the computer. One of "unix" or "windows".
file.sep	character string, giving the **file sep**arator used on your platform: "/" on both Unix-alikes *and* on Windows (but not on the former port to Classic Mac OS).
dynlib.ext	character string, giving the file name **ext**ension of **dyn**amically loadable **lib**raries, e.g., ".dll" on Windows and ".so" or ".sl" on Unix-alikes. (Note for OS X users: these are shared objects as loaded by dyn.load and not dylibs: see dyn.load.)
GUI	character string, giving the type of GUI in use, or "unknown" if no GUI can be assumed. Possible values are for Unix-alikes the values given via the '-g' command-line flag ("X11", "Tk"), "AQUA" (running under R.app on OS X), "Rgui" and "RTerm" (Windows) and perhaps others under alternative front-ends or embedded .
endian	character string, "big" or "little", giving the endianness of the processor in use. This is relevant when it is necessary to know the order to read/write bytes of e.g. an integer or double from/to a connection: see readBin.
pkgType	character string, the preferred setting for options("pkgType"). Values "source", "mac.binary", "mac.binary.mavericks" and "win.binary" are currently in use. This should **not** be used to identify the OS.
path.sep	character string, giving the **path sep**arator, used on your platform, e.g., ":" on Unix-alikes and ";" on Windows. Used to separate paths in environment variables such as PATH and TEXINPUTS.
r_arch	character string, possibly "". The name of an architecture-specific directory used in this build of .

AQUA

`.Platform$GUI` is set to `"AQUA"` under the OS X GUI, `R.app`. This has a number of consequences:

- the `DISPLAY` environment variable is set to `":0"` if unset.
- appends '`/usr/local/bin`' to the `PATH` environment variable.
- the default graphics device is set to `quartz`.
- selects native (rather than Tk) widgets for the `graphics = TRUE` options of `menu` and `select.list`.
- HTML help is displayed in the internal browser.
- The spreadsheet-like data editor/viewer uses a Quartz version rather than the X11 one.

See Also

`R.version` and `Sys.info` give more details about the OS. In particular, `R.version$platform` is the canonical name of the platform under which was compiled.

`.Machine` for details of the arithmetic used, and `system` for invoking platform-specific system commands.

Examples

```
## Note: this can be done in a system-independent way
##   by file.info()$isdir: see utils::file_test,
##   and there is a built-in dir.exists() as from R 3.2.0.
if(.Platform$OS.type == "unix") {
   system.test <- function(...) system(paste("test", ...)) == 0L
   dir.exists2 <- function(dir)
       sapply(dir, function(d) system.test("-d", d))
   dir.exists2(c(R.home(), "/tmp", "~", "/NO")) # > T T T F
}
```

---

abbreviate *Abbreviate Strings*

Description

Abbreviate strings to at least `minlength` characters, such that they remain *unique* (if they were), unless `strict = TRUE`.

Usage

```
abbreviate(names.arg, minlength = 4, use.classes = TRUE,
           dot = FALSE, strict = FALSE,
           method = c("left.kept", "both.sides"))
```

Arguments

names.arg	a character vector of names to be abbreviated, or an object to be coerced to a character vector by as.character.
minlength	the minimum length of the abbreviations.
use.classes	logical (currently ignored by).
dot	logical: should a dot (".") be appended?
strict	logical: should minlength be observed strictly? Note that setting strict = TRUE may return *non*-unique strings.
method	a string specifying the method used with default "left.kept", see 'Details' below.

Details

The default algorithm (method = "left.kept") used is similar to that of S. For a single string it works as follows. First all spaces at the beginning of the string are stripped. Then (if necessary) any other spaces are stripped. Next, lower case vowels are removed (starting at the right) followed by lower case consonants. Finally if the abbreviation is still longer than minlength upper case letters are stripped.

Characters are always stripped from the end of the word first. If an element of names.arg contains more than one word (words are separated by space) then at least one letter from each word will be retained.

Missing (NA) values are unaltered.

If use.classes is FALSE then the only distinction is to be between letters and space. This has NOT been implemented.

Value

A character vector containing abbreviations for the strings in its first argument. Duplicates in the original names.arg will be given identical abbreviations. If any non-duplicated elements have the same minlength abbreviations then, if method = "both.sides" the basic internal abbreviate() algorithm is applied to the characterwise *reversed* strings; if there are still duplicated abbreviations and if strict = FALSE as by default, minlength is incremented by one and new abbreviations are found for those elements only. This process is repeated until all unique elements of names.arg have unique abbreviations.

The character version of names.arg is attached to the returned value as a names argument: no other attributes are retained.

Warning

This is really only suitable for English, and does not work correctly with non-ASCII characters in multibyte locales. It will warn if used with non-ASCII characters (and required to reduce the length).

See Also

substr.

Examples

```
x <- c("abcd", "efgh", "abce")
abbreviate(x, 2)
abbreviate(x, 2, strict = TRUE) # >> 1st and 3rd are == "ab"

(st.abb <- abbreviate(state.name, 2))
table(nchar(st.abb)) # out of 50, 3 need 4 letters :
as <- abbreviate(state.name, 3, strict = TRUE)
as[which(as == "Mss")]

## method="both.sides" helps:  no 4-letters, and only 4 3-letters:
st.ab2 <- abbreviate(state.name, 2, method = "both")
table(nchar(st.ab2))
## Compare the two methods:
cbind(st.abb, st.ab2)
```

---

agrep *Approximate String Matching (Fuzzy Matching)*

Description

Searches for approximate matches to `pattern` (the first argument) within each element of the string `x` (the second argument) using the generalized Levenshtein edit distance (the minimal possibly weighted number of insertions, deletions and substitutions needed to transform one string into another).

Usage

```
agrep(pattern, x, max.distance = 0.1, costs = NULL,
      ignore.case = FALSE, value = FALSE, fixed = TRUE,
      useBytes = FALSE)

agrepl(pattern, x, max.distance = 0.1, costs = NULL,
       ignore.case = FALSE, fixed = TRUE, useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`pattern`	a non-empty character string or a character string containing a regular expression (for `fixed = FALSE`) to be matched. Coerced by `as.character` to a string if possible.
`x`	character vector where matches are sought. Coerced by `as.character` to a character vector if possible.
`max.distance`	Maximum distance allowed for a match. Expressed either as integer, or as a fraction of the *pattern* length times the maximal transformation cost (will be replaced by the smallest integer not less than the corresponding fraction), or a list with possible components `cost`: maximum number/fraction of match cost (generalized Levenshtein distance) `all`: maximal number/fraction of *all* transformations (insertions, deletions and substitutions)

`insertions`: maximum number/fraction of insertions

`deletions`: maximum number/fraction of deletions

`substitutions`: maximum number/fraction of substitutions

If `cost` is not given, `all` defaults to 10%, and the other transformation number bounds default to `all`. The component names can be abbreviated.

`costs` a numeric vector or list with names partially matching '`insertions`', '`deletions`' and '`substitutions`' giving the respective costs for computing the generalized Levenshtein distance, or `NULL` (default) indicating using unit cost for all three possible transformations. Coerced to integer via `as.integer` if possible.

`ignore.case` if `FALSE`, the pattern matching is *case sensitive* and if `TRUE`, case is ignored during matching.

`value` if `FALSE`, a vector containing the (integer) indices of the matches determined is returned and if `TRUE`, a vector containing the matching elements themselves is returned.

`fixed` logical. If `TRUE` (default), the pattern is matched literally (as is). Otherwise, it is matched as a regular expression.

`useBytes` logical. in a multibyte locale, should the comparison be character-by-character (the default) or byte-by-byte.

Details

The Levenshtein edit distance is used as measure of approximateness: it is the (possibly cost-weighted) total number of insertions, deletions and substitutions required to transform one string into another.

This uses `tre` by Ville Laurikari (`http://laurikari.net/tre/`), which supports MBCS character matching.

The main effect of `useBytes` is to avoid errors/warnings about invalid inputs and spurious matches in multibyte locales. It inhibits the conversion of inputs with marked encodings, and is forced if any input is found which is marked as `"bytes"` (see `Encoding`).

Value

`agrep` returns a vector giving the indices of the elements that yielded a match, or, if `value` is `TRUE`, the matched elements (after coercion, preserving names but no other attributes).

`agrepl` returns a logical vector.

Note

Since someone who read the description carelessly even filed a bug report on it, do note that this matches substrings of each element of `x` (just as `grep` does) and **not** whole elements. See also `adist` in package **utils**, which optionally returns the offsets of the matched substrings.

Author(s)

Original version in < 2.10.0 by David Meyer. Current version by Brian Ripley and Kurt Hornik.

See Also

`grep`, `adist`.

Examples

```
agrep("lasy", "1 lazy 2")
agrep("lasy", c(" 1 lazy 2", "1 lasy 2"), max = list(sub = 0))
agrep("laysy", c("1 lazy", "1", "1 LAZY"), max = 2)
agrep("laysy", c("1 lazy", "1", "1 LAZY"), max = 2, value = TRUE)
agrep("laysy", c("1 lazy", "1", "1 LAZY"), max = 2, ignore.case = TRUE)
```

`all` *Are All Values True?*

Description

Given a set of logical vectors, are all of the values true?

Usage

```
all(..., na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`...`	zero or more logical vectors. Other objects of zero length are ignored, and the rest are coerced to logical ignoring any class.
`na.rm`	logical. If true `NA` values are removed before the result is computed.

Details

This is a generic function: methods can be defined for it directly or via the `Summary` group generic. For this to work properly, the arguments `...` should be unnamed, and dispatch is on the first argument.

Coercion of types other than integer (raw, double, complex, character, list) gives a warning as this is often unintentional.

This is a primitive function.

Value

The value is a logical vector of length one.

Let `x` denote the concatenation of all the logical vectors in `...` (after coercion), after removing `NA`s if requested by `na.rm = TRUE`.

The value returned is `TRUE` if all of the values in `x` are `TRUE` (including if there are no values), and `FALSE` if at least one of the values in `x` is `FALSE`. Otherwise the value is `NA` (which can only occur if `na.rm = FALSE` and `...` contains no `FALSE` values and at least one `NA` value).

S4 methods

This is part of the S4 `Summary` group generic. Methods for it must use the signature `x, ..., na.rm`.

Note

That `all(logical(0))` is true is a useful convention: it ensures that

```
all(all(x), all(y)) == all(x, y)
```

even if `x` has length zero.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

any, the 'complement' of all, and stopifnot(*) which is an all(*) 'insurance'.

Examples

```
range(x <- sort(round(stats::rnorm(10) - 1.2, 1)))
if(all(x < 0)) cat("all x values are negative\n")

all(logical(0))  # true, as all zero of the elements are true.
```

---

all.equal *Test if Two Objects are (Nearly) Equal*

Description

all.equal(x, y) is a utility to compare objects x and y testing 'near equality'. If they are different, comparison is still made to some extent, and a report of the differences is returned. Do not use all.equal directly in if expressions—either use isTRUE(all.equal(....)) or identical if appropriate.

Usage

```
all.equal(target, current, ...)

## S3 method for class numeric
all.equal(target, current,
          tolerance = .Machine$double.eps ^ 0.5, scale = NULL,
          ..., check.attributes = TRUE)

## S3 method for class list
all.equal(target, current, ...,
          check.attributes = TRUE, use.names = TRUE)

## S3 method for class POSIXt
all.equal(target, current, ..., tolerance = 1e-3, scale)


attr.all.equal(target, current, ...,
               check.attributes = TRUE, check.names = TRUE)
```

Arguments

target	object.
current	other object, to be compared with target.
...	Further arguments for different methods, notably the following two, for numerical comparison:

`tolerance`	numeric ≥ 0. Differences smaller than `tolerance` are not reported. The default value is close to `1.5e-8`.
`scale`	numeric scalar > 0 (or `NULL`). See 'Details'.
`check.attributes`	logical indicating if the `attributes` of `target` and `current` (other than the names) should be compared.
`use.names`	logical indicating if `list` comparison should report differing components by name (if matching) instead of integer index. Note that this comes after `...` and so must be specified by its full name.
`check.names`	logical indicating if the `names(.)` of `target` and `current` should be compared.

Details

`all.equal` is a generic function, dispatching methods on the `target` argument. To see the available methods, use `methods("all.equal")`, but note that the default method also does some dispatching, e.g. using the raw method for logical targets.

Remember that arguments which follow `...` must be specified by (unabbreviated) name: some of them were before `...` prior to 3.1.0. It is inadvisable to pass unnamed arguments in `...` as these will match different arguments in different methods.

Numerical comparisons for `scale = NULL` (the default) are done by first computing the mean absolute difference of the two numerical vectors. If this is smaller than `tolerance` or not finite, absolute differences are used, otherwise relative differences scaled by the mean absolute difference.

If `scale` is positive, absolute comparisons are made after scaling (dividing) by `scale`.

For complex `target`, the modulus (`Mod`) of the difference is used: `all.equal.numeric` is called so arguments `tolerance` and `scale` are available.

The `list` method compares components of `target` and `current` recursively, passing all other arguments, as long as both are "list-like", i.e., fulfill either `is.vector` or `is.list`.

The methods for the date-time classes by default allow a tolerance of `tolerance = 0.001` seconds, and ignore `scale`.

`attr.all.equal` is used for comparing `attributes`, returning `NULL` or a `character` vector.

Value

Either `TRUE` (`NULL` for `attr.all.equal`) or a vector of `mode` `"character"` describing the differences between `target` and `current`.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer (for =).

See Also

`identical`, `isTRUE`, `==`, and `all` for exact equality testing.

Examples

```
all.equal(pi, 355/113)
# not precise enough (default tol) > relative error

d45 <- pi*(1/4 + 1:10)
stopifnot(
```

```
all.equal(tan(d45), rep(1, 10)))          # TRUE, but
all      (tan(d45) == rep(1, 10))         # FALSE, since not exactly
all.equal(tan(d45), rep(1, 10), tolerance = 0)  # to see difference
```

`all.names` *Find All Names in an Expression*

Description

Return a character vector containing all the names which occur in an expression or call.

Usage

```
all.names(expr, functions = TRUE, max.names = -1L, unique = FALSE)

all.vars(expr, functions = FALSE, max.names = -1L, unique = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`expr`	an expression or call from which the names are to be extracted.
`functions`	a logical value indicating whether function names should be included in the result.
`max.names`	the maximum number of names to be returned. `-1` indicates no limit (other than vector size limits).
`unique`	a logical value which indicates whether duplicate names should be removed from the value.

Details

These functions differ only in the default values for their arguments.

Value

A character vector with the extracted names.

See Also

`substitute` to replace symbols with values in an expression.

Examples

```
all.names(expression(sin(x+y)))
all.names(quote(sin(x+y))) # or a call
all.vars(expression(sin(x+y)))
```

any *Are Some Values True?*

Description

Given a set of logical vectors, is at least one of the values true?

Usage

```
any(..., na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	zero or more logical vectors. Other objects of zero length are ignored, and the rest are coerced to logical ignoring any class.
na.rm	logical. If true NA values are removed before the result is computed.

Details

This is a generic function: methods can be defined for it directly or via the Summary group generic. For this to work properly, the arguments ... should be unnamed, and dispatch is on the first argument.

Coercion of types other than integer (raw, double, complex, character, list) gives a warning as this is often unintentional.

This is a primitive function.

Value

The value is a logical vector of length one.

Let x denote the concatenation of all the logical vectors in ... (after coercion), after removing NAs if requested by na.rm = TRUE.

The value returned is TRUE if at least one of the values in x is TRUE, and FALSE if all of the values in x are FALSE (including if there are no values). Otherwise the value is NA (which can only occur if na.rm = FALSE and ... contains no TRUE values and at least one NA value).

S4 methods

This is part of the S4 Summary group generic. Methods for it must use the signature x, ..., na.rm.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

all, the 'complement' of any.

Examples

```
range(x <- sort(round(stats::rnorm(10) - 1.2, 1)))
if(any(x < 0)) cat("x contains negative values\n")
```

aperm *Array Transposition*

Description

Transpose an array by permuting its dimensions and optionally resizing it.

Usage

```
aperm(a, perm, ...)
## Default S3 method:
aperm(a, perm = NULL, resize = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class table
aperm(a, perm = NULL, resize = TRUE, keep.class = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

a	the array to be transposed.
perm	the subscript permutation vector, usually a permutation of the integers 1:n, where n is the number of dimensions of a. When a has named dimnames, it can be a character vector of length n giving a permutation of those names. The default (used whenever perm has zero length) is to reverse the order of the dimensions.
resize	a flag indicating whether the vector should be resized as well as having its elements reordered (default TRUE).
keep.class	logical indicating if the result should be of the same class as a.
...	potential further arguments of methods.

Value

A transposed version of array a, with subscripts permuted as indicated by the array perm. If resize is TRUE, the array is reshaped as well as having its elements permuted, the dimnames are also permuted; if resize = FALSE then the returned object has the same dimensions as a, and the dimnames are dropped. In each case other attributes are copied from a.

The function t provides a faster and more convenient way of transposing matrices.

Author(s)

Jonathan Rougier, <J.C.Rougier@durham.ac.uk> did the faster C implementation.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

t, to transpose matrices.

Examples

```
# interchange the first two subscripts on a 3-way array x
x  <- array(1:24, 2:4)
xt <- aperm(x, c(2,1,3))
stopifnot(t(xt[,,2]) == x[,,2],
          t(xt[,,3]) == x[,,3],
          t(xt[,,4]) == x[,,4])

UCB <- aperm(UCBAdmissions, c(2,1,3))
UCB[1,,]
summary(UCB) # UCB is still a continency table
```

---

append *Vector Merging*

Description

Add elements to a vector.

Usage

```
append(x, values, after = length(x))
```

Arguments

`x`	the vector to be modified.
`values`	to be included in the modified vector.
`after`	a subscript, after which the values are to be appended.

Value

A vector containing the values in `x` with the elements of `values` appended after the specified element of `x`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
append(1:5, 0:1, after = 3)
```

apply *Apply Functions Over Array Margins*

Description

Returns a vector or array or list of values obtained by applying a function to margins of an array or matrix.

Usage

```
apply(X, MARGIN, FUN, ...)
```

Arguments

X	an array, including a matrix.
MARGIN	a vector giving the subscripts which the function will be applied over. E.g., for a matrix 1 indicates rows, 2 indicates columns, c(1, 2) indicates rows and columns. Where X has named dimnames, it can be a character vector selecting dimension names.
FUN	the function to be applied: see 'Details'. In the case of functions like +, %*%, etc., the function name must be backquoted or quoted.
...	optional arguments to FUN.

Details

If X is not an array but an object of a class with a non-null dim value (such as a data frame), apply attempts to coerce it to an array via as.matrix if it is two-dimensional (e.g., a data frame) or via as.array.

FUN is found by a call to match.fun and typically is either a function or a symbol (e.g., a backquoted name) or a character string specifying a function to be searched for from the environment of the call to apply.

Arguments in ... cannot have the same name as any of the other arguments, and care may be needed to avoid partial matching to MARGIN or FUN. In general-purpose code it is good practice to name the first three arguments if ... is passed through: this both avoids partial matching to MARGIN or FUN and ensures that a sensible error message is given if arguments named X, MARGIN or FUN are passed through ....

Value

If each call to FUN returns a vector of length n, then apply returns an array of dimension c(n, dim(X)[MARGIN]) if n > 1. If n equals 1, apply returns a vector if MARGIN has length 1 and an array of dimension dim(X)[MARGIN] otherwise. If n is 0, the result has length 0 but not necessarily the 'correct' dimension.

If the calls to FUN return vectors of different lengths, apply returns a list of length prod(dim(X)[MARGIN]) with dim set to MARGIN if this has length greater than one.

In all cases the result is coerced by as.vector to one of the basic vector types before the dimensions are set, so that (for example) factor results will be coerced to a character array.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`lapply` and there, `simplify2array`; `tapply`, and convenience functions `sweep` and `aggregate`.

Examples

```
## Compute row and column sums for a matrix:
x <- cbind(x1 = 3, x2 = c(4:1, 2:5))
dimnames(x)[[1]] <- letters[1:8]
apply(x, 2, mean, trim = .2)
col.sums <- apply(x, 2, sum)
row.sums <- apply(x, 1, sum)
rbind(cbind(x, Rtot = row.sums), Ctot = c(col.sums, sum(col.sums)))

stopifnot( apply(x, 2, is.vector))

## Sort the columns of a matrix
apply(x, 2, sort)

##- function with extra args:
cave <- function(x, c1, c2) c(mean(x[c1]), mean(x[c2]))
apply(x, 1, cave,  c1 = "x1", c2 = c("x1","x2"))

ma <- matrix(c(1:4, 1, 6:8), nrow = 2)
ma
apply(ma, 1, table)  #--> a list of length 2
apply(ma, 1, stats::quantile) # 5 x n matrix with rownames

stopifnot(dim(ma) == dim(apply(ma, 1:2, sum)))

## Example with different lengths for each call
z <- array(1:24, dim = 2:4)
zseq <- apply(z, 1:2, function(x) seq_len(max(x)))
zseq         ## a 2 x 3 matrix
typeof(zseq) ## list
dim(zseq) ## 2 3
zseq[1,]
apply(z, 3, function(x) seq_len(max(x)))
# a list without a dim attribute
```

---

args *Argument List of a Function*

Description

Displays the argument names and corresponding default values of a function or primitive.

Usage

```
args(name)
```

Arguments

name	a function (a closure or a primitive). If name is a character string then the function with that name is found and used.

Details

This function is mainly used interactively to print the argument list of a function. For programming, consider using formals instead.

Value

For a closure, a closure with identical formal argument list but an empty (NULL) body.

For a primitive, a closure with the documented usage and NULL body. Note that some primitives do not make use of named arguments and match by position rather than name.

NULL in case of a non-function.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

formals, help.

Examples

```
args(c)
args(graphics::plot.default)
```

Arithmetic *Arithmetic Operators*

Description

These unary and binary operators perform arithmetic on numeric or complex vectors (or objects which can be coerced to them).

Usage

```
+ x
- x
x + y
x - y
x * y
x / y
x ^ y
x %% y
x %/% y
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric or complex vectors or objects which can be coerced to such, or other objects for which methods have been written.

Details

The unary and binary arithmetic operators are generic functions: methods can be written for them individually or via the Ops group generic function. (See Ops for how dispatch is computed.)

If applied to arrays the result will be an array if this is sensible (for example it will not if the recycling rule has been invoked).

Logical vectors will be coerced to integer or numeric vectors, FALSE having value zero and TRUE having value one.

1 ^ y and y ^ 0 are 1, *always*. x ^ y should also give the proper limit result when either argument is infinite (i.e., +- Inf).

Objects such as arrays or time-series can be operated on this way provided they are conformable.

For double arguments, %% can be subject to catastrophic loss of accuracy if x is much larger than y, and a warning is given if this is detected.

%% and x %/% y can be used for non-integer y, e.g. 1 %/% 0.2, but the results are subject to representation error and so may be platform-dependent. Because the IEC 60059 representation of 0.2 is a binary fraction slightly larger than 0.2, the answer to 1 %/% 0.2 should be 4 but most platforms give 5.

Users are sometimes surprised by the value returned, for example why (-8)^(1/3) is NaN. For double inputs, makes use of IEC 60559 arithmetic on all platforms, together with the C system function 'pow' for the ^ operator. The relevant standards define the result in many corner cases. In particular, the result in the example above is mandated by the C99 standard. On many Unix-alike systems the command man pow gives details of the values in a large number of corner cases.

Arithmetic on type double in is supposed to be done in 'round to nearest, ties to even' mode, but this does depend on the compiler and FPU being set up correctly.

Value

Unary + and unary - return a numeric or complex vector. All attributes (including class) are preserved if there is no coercion: logical x is coerced to integer and names, dims and dimnames are preserved.

The binary operators return vectors containing the result of the element by element operations. The elements of shorter vectors are recycled as necessary (with a warning when they are recycled only *fractionally*). The operators are + for addition, - for subtraction, * for multiplication, / for division and ^ for exponentiation.

%% indicates x mod y and %/% indicates integer division. It is guaranteed that x == (x %% y) + y * (x %/% y) (up to rounding error) unless y == 0 where the result of %% is NA_integer_ or NaN (depending on the typeof of the arguments).

If either argument is complex the result will be complex, otherwise if one or both arguments are numeric, the result will be numeric. If both arguments are of type integer, the type of the result of / and ^ is numeric and for the other operators it is integer (with overflow, which occurs at $\pm(2^{31}-1)$, returned as NA_integer_ with a warning).

The rules for determining the attributes of the result are rather complicated. Most attributes are taken from the longer argument. Names will be copied from the first if it is the same length as the answer, otherwise from the second if that is. If the arguments are the same length, attributes will be copied from both, with those of the first argument taking precedence when the same attribute

is present in both arguments. For time series, these operations are allowed only if the series are compatible, when the class and `tsp` attribute of whichever is a time series (the same, if both are) are used. For arrays (and an array result) the dimensions and dimnames are taken from first argument if it is an array, otherwise the second.

S4 methods

These operators are members of the S4 `Arith` group generic, and so methods can be written for them individually as well as for the group generic (or the `Ops` group generic), with arguments `c(e1, e2)` (with `e2` missing for a unary operator).

Implementation limits

is dependent on OS services (and they on FPUs) for floating-point arithmetic. On all current platforms IEC 60559 (also known as IEEE 754) arithmetic is used, but some things in those standards are optional. In particular, the support for *denormal numbers* (those outside the range given by `.Machine`) may differ between platforms and even between calculations on a single platform.

Another potential issue is signed zeroes: on IEC 60659 platforms there are two zeroes with internal representations differing by sign. Where possible treats them as the same, but for example direct output from C code often does not do so and may output '`-0.0`' (and on Windows whether it does so or not depends on the version of Windows). One place in where the difference might be seen is in division by zero: `1/x` is `Inf` or `-Inf` depending on the sign of zero `x`.

Note

The binary operators are sometimes called as functions as e.g. `&(x, y)`: see the description of how argument-matching is done in `Ops`.

`**` is translated in the parser to `^`, but this was undocumented for many years. It appears as an index entry in Becker *et al* (1988), pointing to the help for `Deprecated` but is not actually mentioned on that page. Even though it had been deprecated in S for 20 years, it was still accepted in in 2008.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

D. Goldberg (1991) *What Every Computer Scientist Should Know about Floating-Point Arithmetic* ACM Computing Surveys, **23(1)**.
Postscript version available at `http://www.validlab.com/goldberg/paper.ps` Extended PDF version at `http://www.validlab.com/goldberg/paper.pdf`

See Also

`sqrt` for miscellaneous and `Special` for special mathematical functions.

`Syntax` for operator precedence.

`%*%` for matrix multiplication.

Examples

```
x <- -1:12
x + 1
2 * x + 3
x %% 2 #-- is periodic
x %/% 5
```

`array` *Multi-way Arrays*

Description

Creates or tests for arrays.

Usage

```
array(data = NA, dim = length(data), dimnames = NULL)
as.array(x, ...)
is.array(x)
```

Arguments

`data`	a vector (including a list or `expression` vector) giving data to fill the array. Non-atomic classed objects are coerced by `as.vector`.
`dim`	the dim attribute for the array to be created, that is an integer vector of length one or more giving the maximal indices in each dimension.
`dimnames`	either `NULL` or the names for the dimensions. This must a list (or it will be ignored) with one component for each dimension, either `NULL` or a character vector of the length given by `dim` for that dimension. The list can be named, and the list names will be used as names for the dimensions. If the list is shorter than the number of dimensions, it is extended by `NULL`s to the length required.
`x`	an object.
`...`	additional arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

An array in can have one, two or more dimensions. It is simply a vector which is stored with additional attributes giving the dimensions (attribute `"dim"`) and optionally names for those dimensions (attribute `"dimnames"`).

A two-dimensional array is the same thing as a `matrix`.

One-dimensional arrays often look like vectors, but may be handled differently by some functions: `str` does distinguish them in recent versions of .

The `"dim"` attribute is an integer vector of length one or more containing non-negative values: the product of the values must match the length of the array.

The `"dimnames"` attribute is optional: if present it is a list with one component for each dimension, either `NULL` or a character vector of the length given by the element of the `"dim"` attribute for that dimension.

`is.array` is a primitive function.

For a list array, the `print` methods prints entries of length not one in the form '`integer,7`' indicating the type and length.

Value

`array` returns an array with the extents specified in `dim` and naming information in `dimnames`. The values in `data` are taken to be those in the array with the leftmost subscript moving fastest. If there are too few elements in `data` to fill the array, then the elements in `data` are recycled. If `data` has length zero, `NA` of an appropriate type is used for atomic vectors (`0` for raw vectors) and `NULL` for lists.

Unlike `matrix`, `array` does not currently remove any attributes left by `as.vector` from a classed list `data`, so can return a list array with a class attribute.

`as.array` is a generic function for coercing to arrays. The default method does so by attaching a `dim` attribute to it. It also attaches `dimnames` if `x` has `names`. The sole purpose of this is to make it possible to access the `dim[names]` attribute at a later time.

`is.array` returns `TRUE` or `FALSE` depending on whether its argument is an array (i.e., has a `dim` attribute of positive length) or not. It is generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods.

Note

`is.array` is a primitive function.

2.x.y allowed (although documented not to) a zero-length `dim` argument, and returned a vector of length one.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`aperm`, `matrix`, `dim`, `dimnames`.

Examples

```
dim(as.array(letters))
array(1:3, c(2,4)) # recycle 1:3 "2 2/3 times"
#     [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
#[1,]    1    3    2    1
#[2,]    2    1    3    2
```

`as.data.frame` *Coerce to a Data Frame*

Description

Functions to check if an object is a data frame, or coerce it if possible.

Usage

```
as.data.frame(x, row.names = NULL, optional = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class character
as.data.frame(x, ...,
              stringsAsFactors = default.stringsAsFactors())

## S3 method for class matrix
as.data.frame(x, row.names = NULL, optional = FALSE, ...,
              stringsAsFactors = default.stringsAsFactors())

is.data.frame(x)
```

Arguments

x	any object.
row.names	NULL or a character vector giving the row names for the data frame. Missing values are not allowed.
optional	logical. If TRUE, setting row names and converting column names (to syntactic names: see make.names) is optional.
...	additional arguments to be passed to or from methods.
stringsAsFactors	logical: should the character vector be converted to a factor?

Details

as.data.frame is a generic function with many methods, and users and packages can supply further methods. For classes that act as vectors, often a copy of as.data.frame.vector will work as the method.

If a list is supplied, each element is converted to a column in the data frame. Similarly, each column of a matrix is converted separately. This can be overridden if the object has a class which has a method for as.data.frame: two examples are matrices of class "model.matrix" (which are included as a single column) and list objects of class "POSIXlt" which are coerced to class "POSIXct".

Arrays can be converted to data frames. One-dimensional arrays are treated like vectors and two-dimensional arrays like matrices. Arrays with more than two dimensions are converted to matrices by 'flattening' all dimensions after the first and creating suitable column labels.

Character variables are converted to factor columns unless protected by I.

If a data frame is supplied, all classes preceding "data.frame" are stripped, and the row names are changed if that argument is supplied.

If row.names = NULL, row names are constructed from the names or dimnames of x, otherwise are the integer sequence starting at one. Few of the methods check for duplicated row names. Names are removed from vector columns unless I.

Value

as.data.frame returns a data frame, normally with all row names "" if optional = TRUE.

is.data.frame returns TRUE if its argument is a data frame (that is, has "data.frame" amongst its classes) and FALSE otherwise.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`data.frame`, `as.data.frame.table` for the `table` method (which has additional arguments if called directly).

`as.Date` *Date Conversion Functions to and from Character*

Description

Functions to convert between character representations and objects of class `"Date"` representing calendar dates.

Usage

```
as.Date(x, ...)
## S3 method for class character
as.Date(x, format, ...)
## S3 method for class numeric
as.Date(x, origin, ...)
## S3 method for class POSIXct
as.Date(x, tz = "UTC", ...)

## S3 method for class Date
format(x, ...)

## S3 method for class Date
as.character(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object to be converted.
`format`	A character string. If not specified, it will try `"%Y-%m-%d"` then `"%Y/%m/%d"` on the first non-`NA` element, and give an error if neither works. Otherwise, the processing is via `strptime`
`origin`	a Date object, or something which can be coerced by `as.Date(origin, ...)` to such an object.
`tz`	a time zone name.
`...`	Further arguments to be passed from or to other methods, including `format` for `as.character` and `as.Date` methods.

Details

The usual vector re-cycling rules are applied to `x` and `format` so the answer will be of length that of the longer of the vectors.

Locale-specific conversions to and from character strings are used where appropriate and available. This affects the names of the days and months.

The `as.Date` methods accept character strings, factors, logical `NA` and objects of classes `"POSIXlt"` and `"POSIXct"`. (The last is converted to days by ignoring the time after midnight in the representation of the time in specified time zone, default UTC.) Also objects of class `"date"` (from package **date**) and `"dates"` (from package **chron**). Character strings are processed as far as necessary for the format specified: any trailing characters are ignored.

`as.Date` will accept numeric data (the number of days since an epoch), but *only* if `origin` is supplied.

The `format` and `as.character` methods ignore any fractional part of the date.

Value

The `format` and `as.character` methods return a character vector representing the date. `NA` dates are returned as `NA_character_`.

The `as.Date` methods return an object of class `"Date"`.

Conversion from other Systems

Most systems record dates internally as the number of days since some origin, but this is fraught with problems, including

- Is the origin day 0 or day 1? As the 'Examples' show, Excel manages to use both choices for its two date systems.
- If the origin is far enough back, the designers may show their ignorance of calendar systems. For example, Excel's designer thought 1900 was a leap year (claiming to copy the error from earlier DOS spreadsheets), and Matlab's designer chose the non-existent date of 'January 0, 0000' (there is no such day), not specifying the calendar. (There is such a year in the 'Gregorian' calendar as used in ISO 8601:2004, but that does say that it is only to be used for years before 1582 with the agreement of the parties in information exchange.)

The only safe procedure is to check the other systems values for known dates: reports on the Internet (including R-help) are more often wrong than right.

Note

The default formats follow the rules of the ISO 8601 international standard which expresses a day as `"2001-02-03"`.

If the date string does not specify the date completely, the returned answer may be system-specific. The most common behaviour is to assume that a missing year, month or day is the current one. If it specifies a date incorrectly, reliable implementations will give an error and the date is reported as `NA`. Unfortunately some common implementations (such as '`glibc`') are unreliable and guess at the intended meaning.

Years before 1CE (aka 1AD) will probably not be handled correctly.

References

International Organization for Standardization (2004, 1988, 1997, ...) *ISO 8601. Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times.* For links to versions available on-line see (at the time of writing) http://www.qsl.net/g1smd/isopdf.htm.

See Also

Date for details of the date class; locales to query or set a locale.

Your system's help pages on strftime and strptime to see how to specify their formats. Windows users will find no help page for strptime: code based on 'glibc' is used (with corrections), so all the format specifiers described here are supported, but with no alternative number representation nor era available in any locale.

Examples

```
## locale-specific version of the date
format(Sys.Date(), "%a %b %d")

## read in date info in format ddmmmyyyy
## This will give NA(s) in some locales; setting the C locale
## as in the commented lines will overcome this on most systems.
## lct <- Sys.getlocale("LC_TIME"); Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", "C")
x <- c("1jan1960", "2jan1960", "31mar1960", "30jul1960")
z <- as.Date(x, "%d%b%Y")
## Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", lct)
z

## read in date/time info in format m/d/y
dates <- c("02/27/92", "02/27/92", "01/14/92", "02/28/92", "02/01/92")
as.Date(dates, "%m/%d/%y")

## date given as number of days since 1900-01-01 (a date in 1989)
as.Date(32768, origin = "1900-01-01")
## Excel is said to use 1900-01-01 as day 1 (Windows default) or
## 1904-01-01 as day 0 (Mac default), but this is complicated by Excel
## incorrectly treating 1900 as a leap year.
## So for dates (post-1901) from Windows Excel
as.Date(35981, origin = "1899-12-30") # 1998-07-05
## and Mac Excel
as.Date(34519, origin = "1904-01-01") # 1998-07-05
## (these values come from http://support.microsoft.com/kb/214330)

## Experiment shows that Matlabs origin is 719529 days before ours,
## (it takes the non-existent 0000-01-01 as day 1)
## so Matlab day 734373 can be imported as
as.Date(734373, origin = "1970-01-01") - 719529 # 2010-08-23
## (value from
## http://www.mathworks.de/de/help/matlab/matlab_prog/represent-date-and-times-in-MATLAB.html)

## Time zone effect
z <- ISOdate(2010, 04, 13, c(0,12)) # midnight and midday UTC
as.Date(z) # in UTC
## these time zone names are common
as.Date(z, tz = "NZ")
as.Date(z, tz = "HST") # Hawaii
```

`as.environment` *Coerce to an Environment Object*

Description

A generic function coercing an object to an `environment`. A number or a character string is converted to the corresponding environment on the search path.

Usage

```
as.environment(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object to convert. If it is already an environment, just return it. If it is a positive number, return the environment corresponding to that position on the search list. If it is `-1`, the environment it is called from. If it is a character string, match the string to the names on the search list. If it is a list, the equivalent of `list2env(x, parent = emptyenv())` is returned. If `is.object(x)` is true and it has a `class` for which an `as.environment` method is found, that is used.

Value

The corresponding environment object.

Note

This is a primitive function.

Author(s)

John Chambers

See Also

`environment` for creation and manipulation, `search`; `list2env`.

Examples

```
as.environment(1) ## the global environment
identical(globalenv(), as.environment(1)) ## is TRUE
try( ## <<- stats need not be attached
    as.environment("package:stats"))
ee <- as.environment(list(a = "A", b = pi, ch = letters[1:8]))
ls(ee) # names of objects in ee
utils::ls.str(ee)
```

`as.function` *Convert Object to Function*

Description

`as.function` is a generic function which is used to convert objects to functions.

`as.function.default` works on a list `x`, which should contain the concatenation of a formal argument list and an expression or an object of mode `"call"` which will become the function body. The function will be defined in a specified environment, by default that of the caller.

Usage

```
as.function(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
as.function(x, envir = parent.frame(), ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	object to convert, a list for the default method.
`...`	additional arguments, depending on object
`envir`	environment in which the function should be defined

Value

The desired function.

Note

For ancient historical reasons, `envir = NULL` uses the global environment rather than the base environment. Please use `envir = globalenv()` instead if this is what you want, as the special handling of `NULL` may change in a future release.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

See Also

`function`; `alist` which is handy for the construction of argument lists, etc.

Examples

```
as.function(alist(a = , b = 2, a+b))
as.function(alist(a = , b = 2, a+b))(3)
```

as.POSIX* *Date-time Conversion Functions*

Description

Functions to manipulate objects of classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" representing calendar dates and times.

Usage

```
as.POSIXct(x, tz = "", ...)
as.POSIXlt(x, tz = "", ...)

## S3 method for class character
as.POSIXlt(x, tz = "", format, ...)

## S3 method for class numeric
as.POSIXlt(x, tz = "", origin, ...)

## S3 method for class POSIXlt
as.double(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	An object to be converted.
tz	A time zone specification to be used for the conversion, *if one is required*. System-specific (see time zones), but "" is the current time zone, and "GMT" is UTC (Universal Time, Coordinated). Invalid values are most commonly treated as UTC, on some platforms with a warning.
...	further arguments to be passed to or from other methods.
format	character string giving a date-time format as used by strptime.
origin	a date-time object, or something which can be coerced by as.POSIXct(tz = "GMT") to such an object.

Details

The as.POSIX* functions convert an object to one of the two classes used to represent date/times (calendar dates plus time to the nearest second). They can convert a wide variety of objects, including objects of the other class and of classes "Date", "date" (from package **date**), "chron" and "dates" (from package **chron**) to these classes. Dates without times are treated as being at midnight UTC.

They can also convert character strings of the formats "2001-02-03" and "2001/02/03" optionally followed by white space and a time in the format "14:52" or "14:52:03". (Formats such as "01/02/03" are ambiguous but can be converted via a format specification by strptime.) Fractional seconds are allowed. Alternatively, format can be specified for character vectors or factors: if it is not specified and no standard format works for all non-NA inputs an error is thrown.

If format is specified, remember that some of the format specifications are locale-specific, and you may need to set the LC_TIME category appropriately *via* Sys.setlocale. This most often affects the use of %b, %B (month names) and %p (AM/PM).

Logical NAs can be converted to either of the classes, but no other logical vectors can be.

If you are given a numeric time as the number of seconds since an epoch, see the examples.

Character input is first converted to class "POSIXlt" by strptime: numeric input is first converted to "POSIXct". Any conversion that needs to go between the two date-time classes requires a time zone: conversion from "POSIXlt" to "POSIXct" will validate times in the selected time zone. One issue is what happens at transitions to and from DST, for example in the UK

```
as.POSIXct(strptime("2011-03-27 01:30:00", "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S"))
as.POSIXct(strptime("2010-10-31 01:30:00", "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S"))
```

are respectively invalid (the clocks went forward at 1:00 GMT to 2:00 BST) and ambiguous (the clocks went back at 2:00 BST to 1:00 GMT). What happens in such cases is OS-specific: one should expect the first to be NA, but the second could be interpreted as either BST or GMT (and common OSes give both possible values). Note too (see strftime) that OS facilities may not format invalid times correctly.

Value

as.POSIXct and as.POSIXlt return an object of the appropriate class. If tz was specified, as.POSIXlt will give an appropriate "tzone" attribute. Date-times known to be invalid will be returned as NA.

Note

Some of the concepts used have to be extended backwards in time (the usage is said to be 'proleptic'). For example, the origin of time for the "POSIXct" class, '1970-01-01 00:00.00 UTC', is before UTC was defined. More importantly, conversion is done assuming the Gregorian calendar which was introduced in 1582 and not used universally until the 20th century. One of the re-interpretations assumed by ISO 8601:2004 is that there was a year zero, even though current year numbering (and zero) is a much later concept (525 AD for year numbers from 1 AD).

If you want to extract specific aspects of a time (such as the day of the week) just convert it to class "POSIXlt" and extract the relevant component(s) of the list, or if you want a character representation (such as a named day of the week) use the format method.

If a time zone is needed and that specified is invalid on your system, what happens is system-specific but attempts to set it will probably be ignored.

Conversion from character needs to find a suitable format unless one is supplied (by trying common formats in turn): this can be slow for long inputs.

See Also

DateTimeClasses for details of the classes; strptime for conversion to and from character representations.

Sys.timezone for details of the (system-specific) naming of time zones.

locales for locale-specific aspects.

Examples

```
(z <- Sys.time())             # the current datetime, as class "POSIXct"
unclass(z)                    # a large integer
floor(unclass(z)/86400)       # the number of days since 1970-01-01 (UTC)
(now <- as.POSIXlt(Sys.time())) # the current datetime, as class "POSIXlt"
unlist(unclass(now))          # a list shown as a named vector
```

```
now$year + 1900               # see ?DateTimeClasses
months(now); weekdays(now)    # see ?months

## suppose we have a time in seconds since 1960-01-01 00:00:00 GMT
## (the origin used by SAS)
z <- 1472562988
# ways to convert this
as.POSIXct(z, origin = "1960-01-01")               # local
as.POSIXct(z, origin = "1960-01-01", tz = "GMT")    # in UTC

## SPSS dates (R-help 2006-02-16)
z <- c(10485849600, 10477641600, 10561104000, 10562745600)
as.Date(as.POSIXct(z, origin = "1582-10-14", tz = "GMT"))

## Stata date-times: milliseconds since 1960-01-01 00:00:00 GMT
## format %tc excludes leap-seconds, assumed here
## For format %tC including leap seconds, see foreign::read.dta()
z <- 1579598122120
op <- options(digits.secs = 3)
# avoid rounding down: milliseconds are not exactly representable
as.POSIXct((z+0.1)/1000, origin = "1960-01-01")
options(op)

## Matlab serial day number (days and fractional days)
z <- 7.343736909722223e5 # 2010-08-23 16:35:00
as.POSIXct((z - 719529)*86400, origin = "1970-01-01", tz = "UTC")

as.POSIXlt(Sys.time(), "GMT") # the current time in UTC

## These may not be correct names on your system
as.POSIXlt(Sys.time(), "America/New_York")  # in New York
as.POSIXlt(Sys.time(), "EST5EDT")           # alternative.
as.POSIXlt(Sys.time(), "EST" )   # somewhere in Eastern Canada
as.POSIXlt(Sys.time(), "HST")    # in Hawaii
as.POSIXlt(Sys.time(), "Australia/Darwin")
```

`AsIs` *Inhibit Interpretation/Conversion of Objects*

Description

Change the class of an object to indicate that it should be treated 'as is'.

Usage

```
I(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object

Details

Function I has two main uses.

- In function data.frame. Protecting an object by enclosing it in I() in a call to data.frame inhibits the conversion of character vectors to factors and the dropping of names, and ensures that matrices are inserted as single columns. I can also be used to protect objects which are to be added to a data frame, or converted to a data frame *via* as.data.frame.

  It achieves this by prepending the class "AsIs" to the object's classes. Class "AsIs" has a few of its own methods, including for [, as.data.frame, print and format.
- In function formula. There it is used to inhibit the interpretation of operators such as "+", "-", "*" and "^" as formula operators, so they are used as arithmetical operators. This is interpreted as a symbol by terms.formula.

Value

A copy of the object with class "AsIs" prepended to the class(es).

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models*. Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

data.frame, formula

---

assign *Assign a Value to a Name*

Description

Assign a value to a name in an environment.

Usage

```
assign(x, value, pos = -1, envir = as.environment(pos),
       inherits = FALSE, immediate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	a variable name, given as a character string. No coercion is done, and the first element of a character vector of length greater than one will be used, with a warning.
value	a value to be assigned to x.
pos	where to do the assignment. By default, assigns into the current environment. See 'Details' for other possibilities.
envir	the environment to use. See 'Details'.
inherits	should the enclosing frames of the environment be inspected?
immediate	an ignored compatibility feature.

Details

There are no restrictions on the name given as x: it can be a non-syntactic name (see make.names).

The pos argument can specify the environment in which to assign the object in any of several ways: as -1 (the default), as a positive integer (the position in the search list); as the character string name of an element in the search list; or as an environment (including using sys.frame to access the currently active function calls). The envir argument is an alternative way to specify an environment, but is primarily for back compatibility.

assign does not dispatch assignment methods, so it cannot be used to set elements of vectors, names, attributes, etc.

Note that assignment to an attached list or data frame changes the attached copy and not the original object: see attach and with.

Value

This function is invoked for its side effect, which is assigning value to the variable x. If no envir is specified, then the assignment takes place in the currently active environment.

If inherits is TRUE, enclosing environments of the supplied environment are searched until the variable x is encountered. The value is then assigned in the environment in which the variable is encountered (provided that the binding is not locked: see lockBinding: if it is, an error is signaled). If the symbol is not encountered then assignment takes place in the user's workspace (the global environment).

If inherits is FALSE, assignment takes place in the initial frame of envir, unless an existing binding is locked or there is no existing binding and the environment is locked (when an error is signaled).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

<-, get, exists, environment.

Examples

```
for(i in 1:6) { #-- Create objects  r.1, r.2, ... r.6 --
    nam <- paste("r", i, sep = ".")
    assign(nam, 1:i)
}
ls(pattern = "^r..$")

##-- Global assignment within a function:
myf <- function(x) {
    innerf <- function(x) assign("Global.res", x^2, envir = .GlobalEnv)
    innerf(x+1)
}
myf(3)
Global.res # 16

a <- 1:4
assign("a[1]", 2)
a[1] == 2          # FALSE
```

```
get("a[1]") == 2   # TRUE
```

`assignOps` *Assignment Operators*

Description

Assign a value to a name.

Usage

```
x <- value
x <<- value
value -> x
value ->> x

x = value
```

Arguments

`x`	a variable name (possibly quoted).
`value`	a value to be assigned to `x`.

Details

There are three different assignment operators: two of them have leftwards and rightwards forms.

The operators `<-` and `=` assign into the environment in which they are evaluated. The operator `<-` can be used anywhere, whereas the operator `=` is only allowed at the top level (e.g., in the complete expression typed at the command prompt) or as one of the subexpressions in a braced list of expressions.

The operators `<<-` and `->>` are normally only used in functions, and cause a search to made through parent environments for an existing definition of the variable being assigned. If such a variable is found (and its binding is not locked) then its value is redefined, otherwise assignment takes place in the global environment. Note that their semantics differ from that in the S language, but are useful in conjunction with the scoping rules of . See 'The R Language Definition' manual for further details and examples.

In all the assignment operator expressions, `x` can be a name or an expression defining a part of an object to be replaced (e.g., `z[[1]]`). A syntactic name does not need to be quoted, though it can be (preferably by backticks).

The leftwards forms of assignment `<- = <<-` group right to left, the other from left to right.

Value

`value`. Thus one can use `a <- b <- c <- 6`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Chamber, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer (for =).

See Also

assign, for "subassignment" such as x[i] <- v, [<-; environment.

---

attach *Attach Set of R Objects to Search Path*

Description

The database is attached to the search path. This means that the database is searched by when evaluating a variable, so objects in the database can be accessed by simply giving their names.

Usage

```
attach(what, pos = 2L, name = deparse(substitute(what)),
       warn.conflicts = TRUE)
```

Arguments

what	'database'. This can be a data.frame or a list or a data file created with save or NULL or an environment. See also 'Details'.
pos	integer specifying position in search() where to attach.
name	name to use for the attached database. Names starting with package: are reserved for library.
warn.conflicts	logical. If TRUE, warnings are printed about conflicts from attaching the database, unless that database contains an object .conflicts.OK. A conflict is a function masking a function, or a non-function masking a non-function.

Details

When evaluating a variable or function name searches for that name in the databases listed by search. The first name of the appropriate type is used.

By attaching a data frame (or list) to the search path it is possible to refer to the variables in the data frame by their names alone, rather than as components of the data frame (e.g., in the example below, height rather than women$height).

By default the database is attached in position 2 in the search path, immediately after the user's workspace and before all previously attached packages and previously attached databases. This can be altered to attach later in the search path with the pos option, but you cannot attach at pos = 1.

The database is not actually attached. Rather, a new environment is created on the search path and the elements of a list (including columns of a data frame) or objects in a save file or an environment are *copied* into the new environment. If you use <<- or assign to assign to an attached database, you only alter the attached copy, not the original object. (Normal assignment will place a modified version in the user's workspace: see the examples.) For this reason attach can lead to confusion.

One useful 'trick' is to use what = NULL (or equivalently a length-zero list) to create a new environment on the search path into which objects can be assigned by assign or load or sys.source.

Names starting "package:" are reserved for library and should not be used by end users. Attached files are by default given the name file:*what*. The name argument given for the attached environment will be used by search and can be used as the argument to as.environment.

There are hooks to attach user-defined table objects of class "UserDefinedDatabase", supported by the Omegahat package **RObjectTables**. See http://www.omegahat.org/RObjectTables/.

Value

The environment is returned invisibly with a "name" attribute.

Good practice

attach has the side effect of altering the search path and this can easily lead to the wrong object of a particular name being found. People do often forget to detach databases.

In interactive use, with is usually preferable to the use of attach/detach.

In programming, functions should not change the search path unless that is their purpose. Often with can be used within a function. If not, good practice is to

- Always use a distinctive name argument, and
- To immediately follow the attach call by an on.exit call to detach using the distinctive name.

This ensures that the search path is left unchanged even if the function is interrupted or if code after the attach call changes the search path.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

library, detach, search, objects, environment, with.

Examples

```
require(utils)

summary(women$height)   # refers to variable height in the data frame
attach(women)
summary(height)         # The same variable now available by name
height <- height*2.54   # Dont do this. It creates a new variable
                        # in the users workspace
find("height")
summary(height)         # The new variable in the workspace
rm(height)
summary(height)         # The original variable.
height <<- height*25.4  # Change the copy in the attached environment
find("height")
summary(height)         # The changed copy
detach("women")
summary(women$height)   # unchanged

## Not run: ## create an environment on the search path and populate it
sys.source("myfuns.R", envir = attach(NULL, name = "myfuns"))

## End(Not run)
```

attr *Object Attributes*

Description

Get or set specific attributes of an object.

Usage

```
attr(x, which, exact = FALSE)
attr(x, which) <- value
```

Arguments

x	an object whose attributes are to be accessed.
which	a non-empty character string specifying which attribute is to be accessed.
exact	logical: should which be matched exactly?
value	an object, the new value of the attribute, or NULL to remove the attribute.

Details

These functions provide access to a single attribute of an object. The replacement form causes the named attribute to take the value specified (or create a new attribute with the value given).

The extraction function first looks for an exact match to which amongst the attributes of x, then (unless exact = TRUE) a unique partial match. (Setting options(warnPartialMatchAttr = TRUE) causes partial matches to give warnings.)

The replacement function only uses exact matches.

Note that some attributes (namely class, comment, dim, dimnames, names, row.names and tsp) are treated specially and have restrictions on the values which can be set. (Note that this is not true of levels which should be set for factors via the levels replacement function.)

The extractor function allows (and does not match) empty and missing values of which: the replacement function does not.

Both are primitive functions.

Value

For the extractor, the value of the attribute matched, or NULL if no exact match is found and no or more than one partial match is found.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

attributes

Examples

```
# create a 2 by 5 matrix
x <- 1:10
attr(x,"dim") <- c(2, 5)
```

`attributes` *Object Attribute Lists*

Description

These functions access an object's attributes. The first form below returns the object's attribute list. The replacement forms uses the list on the right-hand side of the assignment as the object's attributes (if appropriate).

Usage

```
attributes(obj)
attributes(obj) <- value
mostattributes(obj) <- value
```

Arguments

`obj`	an object
`value`	an appropriate named list of attributes, or `NULL`.

Details

Unlike `attr` it is possible to set attributes on a `NULL` object: it will first be coerced to an empty list.

Note that some attributes (namely `class`, `comment`, `dim`, `dimnames`, `names`, `row.names` and `tsp`) are treated specially and have restrictions on the values which can be set. (Note that this is not true of `levels` which should be set for factors via the `levels` replacement function.)

Attributes are not stored internally as a list and should be thought of as a set and not a vector. They must have unique names (and `NA` is taken as `"NA"`, not a missing value).

Assigning attributes first removes all attributes, then sets any `dim` attribute and then the remaining attributes in the order given: this ensures that setting a `dim` attribute always precedes the `dimnames` attribute.

The `mostattributes` assignment takes special care for the `dim`, `names` and `dimnames` attributes, and assigns them only when known to be valid whereas an `attributes` assignment would give an error if any are not. It is principally intended for arrays, and should be used with care on classed objects. For example, it does not check that `row.names` are assigned correctly for data frames.

The names of a pairlist are not stored as attributes, but are reported as if they were (and can be set by the replacement form of `attributes`).

Both assignment and replacement forms of `attributes` are primitive functions.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

attr.

Examples

```
x <- cbind(a = 1:3, pi = pi) # simple matrix with dimnames
attributes(x)

## strip an objects attributes:
attributes(x) <- NULL
x # now just a vector of length 6

mostattributes(x) <- list(mycomment = "really special", dim = 3:2,
   dimnames = list(LETTERS[1:3], letters[1:5]), names = paste(1:6))
x # dim(), but not {dim}names
```

---

autoload *On-demand Loading of Packages*

Description

autoload creates a promise-to-evaluate autoloader and stores it with name name in .AutoloadEnv environment. When attempts to evaluate name, autoloader is run, the package is loaded and name is re-evaluated in the new package's environment. The result is that behaves as if file was loaded but it does not occupy memory.

.Autoloaded contains the names of the packages for which autoloading has been promised.

Usage

```
autoload(name, package, reset = FALSE, ...)
autoloader(name, package, ...)

.AutoloadEnv
.Autoloaded
```

Arguments

name	string giving the name of an object.
package	string giving the name of a package containing the object.
reset	logical: for internal use by autoloader.
...	other arguments to library.

Value

This function is invoked for its side-effect. It has no return value.

See Also

delayedAssign, library

Examples

```
require(stats)
autoload("interpSpline", "splines")
search()
ls("Autoloads")
.Autoloaded

x <- sort(stats::rnorm(12))
y <- x^2
is <- interpSpline(x, y)
search() ## now has splines
detach("package:splines")
search()
is2 <- interpSpline(x, y+x)
search() ## and again
detach("package:splines")
```

---

backsolve *Solve an Upper or Lower Triangular System*

Description

Solves a triangular system of linear equations.

Usage

```
   backsolve(r, x, k = ncol(r), upper.tri = TRUE,
             transpose = FALSE)
forwardsolve(l, x, k = ncol(l), upper.tri = FALSE,
             transpose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

r, l	an upper (or lower) triangular matrix giving the coefficients for the system to be solved. Values below (above) the diagonal are ignored.
x	a matrix whose columns give the right-hand sides for the equations.
k	The number of columns of r and rows of x to use.
upper.tri	logical; if TRUE (default), the *upper tri*angular part of r is used. Otherwise, the lower one.
transpose	logical; if TRUE, solve $r' * y = x$ for y, i.e., t(r) %*% y == x.

Details

Solves a system of linear equations where the coefficient matrix is upper (or 'right', 'R') or lower ('left', 'L') triangular.

x <- backsolve (R, b) solves $Rx = b$, and
x <- forwardsolve(L, b) solves $Lx = b$, respectively.

The r/l must have at least k rows and columns, and x must have at least k rows.

This is a wrapper for the level-3 BLAS routine dtrsm.

Value

The solution of the triangular system. The result will be a vector if x is a vector and a matrix if x is a matrix.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Dongarra, J. J., Bunch, J. R., Moler, C. B. and Stewart, G. W. (1978) *LINPACK Users Guide*. Philadelphia: SIAM Publications.

See Also

chol, qr, solve.

Examples

```
## upper triangular matrix r:
r <- rbind(c(1,2,3),
           c(0,1,1),
           c(0,0,2))
( y <- backsolve(r, x <- c(8,4,2)) ) # -1 3 1
r %*% y # == x = (8,4,2)
backsolve(r, x, transpose = TRUE) # 8 -12 -5
```

---

basename *Manipulate File Paths*

Description

basename removes all of the path up to and including the last path separator (if any).

dirname returns the part of the path up to but excluding the last path separator, or "." if there is no path separator.

Usage

```
basename(path)
dirname(path)
```

Arguments

path	character vector, containing path names.

Details

For dirname tilde expansion of the path is done.

Trailing path separators are removed before dissecting the path, and for dirname any trailing file separators are removed from the result.

Value

A character vector of the same length as `path`. A zero-length input will give a zero-length output with no error.

Paths not containing any separators are taken to be in the current directory, so `dirname` returns `"."`.

If an element of `path` is `NA`, so is the result.

`""` is not a valid pathname, but is returned unchanged.

Behaviour on Windows

On Windows this will accept either `\` or `/` as the path separator, but `dirname` will return a path using `/` (except if on a network share, when the leading `\\` will be preserved). Expect these only to be able to handle complete paths, and not for example just a network share or a drive.

UTF-8-encoded path names not valid in the current locale can be used.

Note

These are not wrappers for the POSIX system functions of the same names: in particular they do **not** have the special handling of the path `"/"` and of returning `"."` for empty strings.

See Also

`file.path`, `path.expand`.

Examples

```
basename(file.path("","p1","p2","p3", c("file1", "file2")))
dirname(file.path("","p1","p2","p3","filename"))
```

`Bessel` *Bessel Functions*

Description

Bessel Functions of integer and fractional order, of first and second kind, J_ν and Y_ν, and Modified Bessel functions (of first and third kind), I_ν and K_ν.

Usage

```
besselI(x, nu, expon.scaled = FALSE)
besselK(x, nu, expon.scaled = FALSE)
besselJ(x, nu)
besselY(x, nu)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric, ≥ 0.
`nu`	numeric; The *order* (maybe fractional!) of the corresponding Bessel function.
`expon.scaled`	logical; if `TRUE`, the results are exponentially scaled in order to avoid overflow (I_ν) or underflow (K_ν), respectively.

Details

If `expon.scaled = TRUE`, $e^{-x} I_\nu(x)$, or $e^x K_\nu(x)$ are returned.

For $\nu < 0$, formulae 9.1.2 and 9.6.2 from Abramowitz & Stegun are applied (which is probably suboptimal), except for `besselK` which is symmetric in `nu`.

The current algorithms will give warnings about accuracy loss for large arguments. In some cases, these warnings are exagerated, and the precision is perfect. For large `nu`, say in the order of millions, the current algorithms are rarely useful.

Value

Numeric vector with the (scaled, if `expon.scaled = TRUE`) values of the corresponding Bessel function.

The length of the result is the maximum of the lengths of the parameters. All parameters are recycled to that length.

Author(s)

Original Fortran code: W. J. Cody, Argonne National Laboratory
Translation to C and adaption to : Martin Maechler <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch>.

Source

The C code is a translation of Fortran routines from http://www.netlib.org/specfun/ribesl, '../rjbesl', etc.

References

Abramowitz, M. and Stegun, I. A. (1972) *Handbook of Mathematical Functions.* Dover, New York; Chapter 9: Bessel Functions of Integer Order.

See Also

Other special mathematical functions, such as `gamma`, $\Gamma(x)$, and `beta`, $B(x)$.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

nus <- c(0:5, 10, 20)

x <- seq(0, 4, length.out = 501)
plot(x, x, ylim = c(0, 6), ylab = "", type = "n",
     main = "Bessel Functions  I_nu(x)")
for(nu in nus) lines(x, besselI(x, nu = nu), col = nu + 2)
legend(0, 6, legend = paste("nu=", nus), col = nus + 2, lwd = 1)

x <- seq(0, 40, length.out = 801); yl <- c(-.8, .8)
plot(x, x, ylim = yl, ylab = "", type = "n",
     main = "Bessel Functions  J_nu(x)")
for(nu in nus) lines(x, besselJ(x, nu = nu), col = nu + 2)
legend(32, -.18, legend = paste("nu=", nus), col = nus + 2, lwd = 1)

## Negative nus :
xx <- 2:7
```

```
nu <- seq(-10, 9, length.out = 2001)
op <- par(lab = c(16, 5, 7))
matplot(nu, t(outer(xx, nu, besselI)), type = "l", ylim = c(-50, 200),
        main = expression(paste("Bessel ", I[nu](x), " for fixed ", x,
                                ",  as ", f(nu))),
        xlab = expression(nu))
abline(v = 0, col = "light gray", lty = 3)
legend(5, 200, legend = paste("x=", xx), col=seq(xx), lty=seq(xx))
par(op)

x0 <- 2^(-20:10)
plot(x0, x0^-8, log = "xy", ylab = "", type = "n",
     main = "Bessel Functions  J_nu(x)  near 0\n log - log  scale")
for(nu in sort(c(nus, nus+0.5)))
    lines(x0, besselJ(x0, nu = nu), col = nu + 2)
legend(3, 1e50, legend = paste("nu=", paste(nus, nus+0.5, sep=",")),
       col = nus + 2, lwd = 1)

plot(x0, x0^-8, log = "xy", ylab = "", type = "n",
     main = "Bessel Functions  K_nu(x)  near 0\n log - log  scale")
for(nu in sort(c(nus, nus+0.5)))
    lines(x0, besselK(x0, nu = nu), col = nu + 2)
legend(3, 1e50, legend = paste("nu=", paste(nus, nus + 0.5, sep = ",")),
       col = nus + 2, lwd = 1)

x <- x[x > 0]
plot(x, x, ylim = c(1e-18, 1e11), log = "y", ylab = "", type = "n",
     main = "Bessel Functions  K_nu(x)")
for(nu in nus) lines(x, besselK(x, nu = nu), col = nu + 2)
legend(0, 1e-5, legend=paste("nu=", nus), col = nus + 2, lwd = 1)

yl <- c(-1.6, .6)
plot(x, x, ylim = yl, ylab = "", type = "n",
     main = "Bessel Functions  Y_nu(x)")
for(nu in nus){
    xx <- x[x > .6*nu]
    lines(xx, besselY(xx, nu=nu), col = nu+2)
}
legend(25, -.5, legend = paste("nu=", nus), col = nus+2, lwd = 1)

## negative nu in bessel_Y -- was bogus for a long time
curve(besselY(x, -0.1), 0, 10, ylim = c(-3,1), ylab = "")
for(nu in c(seq(-0.2, -2, by = -0.1)))
  curve(besselY(x, nu), add = TRUE)
title(expression(besselY(x, nu) * "   " *
                 {nu == list(-0.1, -0.2, ..., -2)}))
```

---

bindenv *Binding and Environment Locking, Active Bindings*

Description

These functions represent an experimental interface for adjustments to environments and bindings within environments. They allow for locking environments as well as individual bindings, and for linking a variable to a function.

Usage

```
lockEnvironment(env, bindings = FALSE)
environmentIsLocked(env)
lockBinding(sym, env)
unlockBinding(sym, env)
bindingIsLocked(sym, env)

makeActiveBinding(sym, fun, env)
bindingIsActive(sym, env)
```

Arguments

env	an environment.
bindings	logical specifying whether bindings should be locked.
sym	a name object or character string.
fun	a function taking zero or one arguments.

Details

The function lockEnvironment locks its environment argument, which must be a normal environment (not base). (Locking the base environment and namespace may be supported later.) Locking the environment prevents adding or removing variable bindings from the environment. Changing the value of a variable is still possible unless the binding has been locked. The namespace environments of packages with namespaces are locked when loaded.

lockBinding locks individual bindings in the specified environment. The value of a locked binding cannot be changed. Locked bindings may be removed from an environment unless the environment is locked.

makeActiveBinding installs fun in environment env so that getting the value of sym calls fun with no arguments, and assigning to sym calls fun with one argument, the value to be assigned. This allows the implementation of things like C variables linked to variables and variables linked to databases, and is used to implement setRefClass. It may also be useful for making thread-safe versions of some system globals.

Value

The bindingIsLocked and environmentIsLocked return a length-one logical vector. The remaining functions return NULL, invisibly.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney

Examples

```
# locking environments
e <- new.env()
assign("x", 1, envir = e)
get("x", envir = e)
lockEnvironment(e)
get("x", envir = e)
assign("x", 2, envir = e)
try(assign("y", 2, envir = e)) # error
```

```
# locking bindings
e <- new.env()
assign("x", 1, envir = e)
get("x", envir = e)
lockBinding("x", e)
try(assign("x", 2, envir = e)) # error
unlockBinding("x", e)
assign("x", 2, envir = e)
get("x", envir = e)

# active bindings
f <- local( {
    x <- 1
    function(v) {
       if (missing(v))
           cat("get\n")
       else {
           cat("set\n")
           x <<- v
       }
       x
    }
})
makeActiveBinding("fred", f, .GlobalEnv)
bindingIsActive("fred", .GlobalEnv)
fred
fred <- 2
fred
```

`bitwise` *Bitwise Logical Operations*

Description

Logical operations on integer vectors with elements viewed as sets of bits.

Usage

```
bitwNot(a)
bitwAnd(a, b)
bitwOr(a, b)
bitwXor(a, b)

bitwShiftL(a, n)
bitwShiftR(a, n)
```

Arguments

`a, b`	integer vectors; numeric vectors are coerced to integer vectors.
`n`	non-negative integer vector of values up to 31.

Details

Each element of an integer vector has 32 bits.

Pairwise operations can result in integer NA.

Shifting is done assuming the values represent unsigned integers.

Value

An integer vector of length the longer of the arguments, or zero length if one is zero-length.

The output element is NA if an input is NA (after coercion) or an invalid shift.

See Also

The logical operators, !, &, |, xor.

The classes "octmode" and "hexmnode" whose implementation of the standard logical operators is based on these functions.

Package **bitOps** has similar functions for numeric vectors which differ in the way they treat integers 2^{31} or larger.

Examples

```
bitwAnd(15L, 7L)
bitwOr(15L, 7L)
bitwXor(15L, 7L)
bitwXor(-1L, 1L)

bitwShiftR(-1, 1:31) # shifts of 2^32-1 = 4294967295
```

---

body *Access to and Manipulation of the Body of a Function*

Description

Get or set the body of a function.

Usage

```
body(fun = sys.function(sys.parent()))
body(fun, envir = environment(fun)) <- value
```

Arguments

fun	a function object, or see 'Details'.
envir	environment in which the function should be defined.
value	an object, usually a language object: see section 'Value'.

Details

For the first form, fun can be a character string naming the function to be manipulated, which is searched for from the parent frame. If it is not specified, the function calling body is used.

The bodies of all but the simplest are braced expressions, that is calls to {: see the 'Examples' section for how to create such a call.

Value

body returns the body of the function specified. This is normally a language object, most often a call to {, but it can also be an object (e.g., pi) to be the return value of the function.

The replacement form sets the body of a function to the object on the right hand side, and (potentially) resets the environment of the function. If value is of class "expression" the first element is used as the body: any additional elements are ignored, with a warning.

See Also

alist, args, function.

Examples

```
body(body)
f <- function(x) x^5
body(f) <- quote(5^x)
## or equivalently  body(f) <- expression(5^x)
f(3) # = 125
body(f)

## creating a multi-expression body
e <- expression(y <- x^2, return(y)) # or a list
body(f) <- as.call(c(as.name("{"), e))
f
f(8)
```

---

bquote *Partial substitution in expressions*

Description

An analogue of the LISP backquote macro. bquote quotes its argument except that terms wrapped in .() are evaluated in the specified where environment.

Usage

```
bquote(expr, where = parent.frame())
```

Arguments

expr	A language object.
where	An environment.

Value

A language object.

See Also

quote, substitute

Examples

```
require(graphics)

a <- 2

bquote(a == a)
quote(a == a)

bquote(a == .(a))
substitute(a == A, list(A = a))

plot(1:10, a*(1:10), main = bquote(a == .(a)))

## to set a function default arg
default <- 1
bquote( function(x, y = .(default)) x+y )
```

`browser` *Environment Browser*

Description

Interrupt the execution of an expression and allow the inspection of the environment where `browser` was called from.

Usage

```
browser(text = "", condition = NULL, expr = TRUE, skipCalls = 0L)
```

Arguments

`text`	a text string that can be retrieved once the browser is invoked.
`condition`	a condition that can be retrieved once the browser is invoked.
`expr`	An expression, which if it evaluates to `TRUE` the debugger will invoked, otherwise control is returned directly.
`skipCalls`	how many previous calls to skip when reporting the calling context.

Details

A call to `browser` can be included in the body of a function. When reached, this causes a pause in the execution of the current expression and allows access to the interpreter.

The purpose of the `text` and `condition` arguments are to allow helper programs (e.g., external debuggers) to insert specific values here, so that the specific call to browser (perhaps its location in a source file) can be identified and special processing can be achieved. The values can be retrieved by calling `browserText` and `browserCondition`.

The purpose of the `expr` argument is to allow for the illusion of conditional debugging. It is an illusion, because execution is always paused at the call to browser, but control is only passed to the evaluator described below if `expr` evaluates to `TRUE`. In most cases it is going to be more efficient to use an `if` statement in the calling program, but in some cases using this argument will be simpler.

The `skipCalls` argument should be used when the `browser()` call is nested within another debugging function: it will look further up the call stack to report its location.

At the browser prompt the user can enter commands or expressions, followed by a newline. The commands are

`c` exit the browser and continue execution at the next statement.

`cont` synonym for `c`.

`f` finish execution of the current loop or function

`help` print this list of commands

`n` evaluate the next statement, stepping over function calls. For byte compiled functions interrupted by `browser` calls, `n` is equivalent to `c`.

`s` evaluate the next statement, stepping into function calls. Again, byte compiled functions make `s` equivalent to `c`.

`where` print a stack trace of all active function calls.

`Q` exit the browser and the current evaluation and return to the top-level prompt.

Leading and trailing whitespace is ignored, except for an empty line. Handling of empty lines depends on the `"browserNLdisabled"` option; if it is `TRUE`, empty lines are ignored. If not, an empty line is the same as `n` (or `s`, if it was used most recently).

Anything else entered at the browser prompt is interpreted as an expression to be evaluated in the calling environment: in particular typing an object name will cause the object to be printed, and `ls()` lists the objects in the calling frame. (If you want to look at an object with a name such as `n`, print it explicitly.)

The number of lines printed for the deparsed call can be limited by setting `options(deparse.max.lines)`.

The browser prompt is of the form `Browse[`*n*`]>`: here `var{n}` indicates the 'browser level'. The browser can be called when browsing (and often is when `debug` is in use), and each recursive call increases the number. (The actual number is the number of 'contexts' on the context stack: this is usually `2` for the outer level of browsing and `1` when examining dumps in `debugger`.)

This is a primitive function but does argument matching in the standard way.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

See Also

`debug`, and `traceback` for the stack on error. `browserText` for how to retrieve the text and condition.

`browserText` *Functions to Retrieve Values Supplied by Calls to the Browser*

Description

A call to browser can provide context by supplying either a text argument or a condition argument. These functions can be used to retrieve either of these arguments.

Usage

```
browserText(n = 1)
browserCondition(n = 1)
browserSetDebug(n = 1)
```

Arguments

`n`	The number of contexts to skip over, it must be non-negative.

Details

Each call to `browser` can supply either a text string or a condition. The functions `browserText` and `browserCondition` provide ways to retrieve those values. Since there can be multiple browser contexts active at any time we also support retrieving values from the different contexts. The innermost (most recently initiated) browser context is numbered 1: other contexts are numbered sequentially.

`browserSetDebug` provides a mechanism for initiating the browser in one of the calling functions. See `sys.frame` for a more complete discussion of the calling stack. To use `browserSetDebug` you select some calling function, determine how far back it is in the call stack and call `browserSetDebug` with `n` set to that value. Then, by typing `c` at the browser prompt you will cause evaluation to continue, and provided there are no intervening calls to browser or other interrupts, control will halt again once evaluation has returned to the closure specified. This is similar to the up functionality in gdb or the "step out" functionality in other debuggers.

Value

`browserText` returns the text, while `browserCondition` returns the condition from the specified browser context.

`browserSetDebug` returns NULL, invisibly.

Note

It may be of interest to allow for querying further up the set of browser contexts and this functionality may be added at a later date.

Author(s)

R. Gentleman

See Also

`browser`

builtins *Returns the Names of All Built-in Objects*

Description

Return the names of all the built-in objects. These are fetched directly from the symbol table of the interpreter.

Usage

```
builtins(internal = FALSE)
```

Arguments

internal	a logical indicating whether only 'internal' functions (which can be called via .Internal) should be returned.

Details

builtins() returns an unsorted list of the objects in the symbol table, that is all the objects in the base environment. These are the built-in objects plus any that have been added subsequently when the base package was loaded. It is less confusing to use ls(baseenv(), all = TRUE).

builtins(TRUE) returns an unsorted list of the names of internal functions, that is those which can be accessed as .Internal(*foo*(args ...)) for *foo* in the list.

Value

A character vector.

by *Apply a Function to a Data Frame Split by Factors*

Description

Function by is an object-oriented wrapper for tapply applied to data frames.

Usage

```
by(data, INDICES, FUN, ..., simplify = TRUE)
```

Arguments

data	an object, normally a data frame, possibly a matrix.
INDICES	a factor or a list of factors, each of length nrow(data).
FUN	a function to be applied to (usually data-frame) subsets of data.
...	further arguments to FUN.
simplify	logical: see tapply.

Details

A data frame is split by row into data frames subsetted by the values of one or more factors, and function FUN is applied to each subset in turn.

For the default method, an object with dimensions (e.g., a matrix) is coerced to a data frame and the data frame method applied. Other objects are also coerced to a data frame, but FUN is applied separately to (subsets of) each column of the data frame.

Value

An object of class "by", giving the results for each subset. This is always a list if simplify is false, otherwise a list or array (see tapply).

See Also

tapply, simplify2array. ave also applies a function block-wise.

Examples

```
require(stats)
by(warpbreaks[, 1:2], warpbreaks[,"tension"], summary)
by(warpbreaks[, 1],   warpbreaks[, -1],       summary)
by(warpbreaks, warpbreaks[,"tension"],
   function(x) lm(breaks ~ wool, data = x))

## now suppose we want to extract the coefficients by group
tmp <- with(warpbreaks,
            by(warpbreaks, tension,
               function(x) lm(breaks ~ wool, data = x)))
sapply(tmp, coef)
```

---

c *Combine Values into a Vector or List*

Description

This is a generic function which combines its arguments.

The default method combines its arguments to form a vector. All arguments are coerced to a common type which is the type of the returned value, and all attributes except names are removed.

Usage

```
c(..., recursive = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	objects to be concatenated.
recursive	logical. If recursive = TRUE, the function recursively descends through lists (and pairlists) combining all their elements into a vector.

Details

The output type is determined from the highest type of the components in the hierarchy NULL < raw < logical < integer < double < complex < character < list < expression. Pairlists are treated as lists, but non-vector components (such names and calls) are treated as one-element lists which cannot be unlisted even if `recursive = TRUE`.

`c` is sometimes used for its side effect of removing attributes except names, for example to turn an array into a vector. `as.vector` is a more intuitive way to do this, but also drops names. Note too that methods other than the default are not required to do this (and they will almost certainly preserve a class attribute).

This is a primitive function.

Value

`NULL` or an expression or a vector of an appropriate mode. (With no arguments the value is `NULL`.)

S4 methods

This function is S4 generic, but with argument list `(x, ..., recursive = FALSE)`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`unlist` and `as.vector` to produce attribute-free vectors.

Examples

```
c(1,7:9)
c(1:5, 10.5, "next")

## uses with a single argument to drop attributes
x <- 1:4
names(x) <- letters[1:4]
x
c(x)          # has names
as.vector(x)  # no names
dim(x) <- c(2,2)
x
c(x)
as.vector(x)

## append to a list:
ll <- list(A = 1, c = "C")
## do *not* use
c(ll, d = 1:3) # which is == c(ll, as.list(c(d = 1:3))
## but rather
c(ll, d = list(1:3))  # c() combining two lists

c(list(A = c(B = 1)), recursive = TRUE)

c(options(), recursive = TRUE)
c(list(A = c(B = 1, C = 2), B = c(E = 7)), recursive = TRUE)
```

`call` *Function Calls*

Description

Create or test for objects of mode `"call"`.

Usage

```
call(name, ...)
is.call(x)
as.call(x)
```

Arguments

`name`	a non-empty character string naming the function to be called.
`...`	arguments to be part of the call.
`x`	an arbitrary object.

Details

`call` returns an unevaluated function call, that is, an unevaluated expression which consists of the named function applied to the given arguments (`name` must be a quoted string which gives the name of a function to be called). Note that although the call is unevaluated, the arguments `...` are evaluated.

`call` is a primitive, so the first argument is taken as `name` and the remaining arguments as arguments for the constructed call: if the first argument is named the name must partially match `name`.

`is.call` is used to determine whether `x` is a call (i.e., of mode `"call"`).

Objects of mode `"list"` can be coerced to mode `"call"`. The first element of the list becomes the function part of the call, so should be a function or the name of one (as a symbol; a quoted string will not do).

All three are primitive functions.

Warning

`call` should not be used to attempt to evade restrictions on the use of `.Internal` and other non-API calls.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`do.call` for calling a function by name and argument list; `Recall` for recursive calling of functions; further `is.language`, `expression`, `function`.

Examples

```
is.call(call) #-> FALSE: Functions are NOT calls

## set up a function call to round with argument 10.5
cl <- call("round", 10.5)
is.call(cl) # TRUE
cl
## such a call can also be evaluated.
eval(cl) # [1] 10

A <- 10.5
call("round", A)        # round(10.5)
call("round", quote(A)) # round(A)
f <- "round"
call(f, quote(A))       # round(A)
## if we want to supply a function we need to use as.call or similar
f <- round
## Not run: call(f, quote(A))  # error: first arg must be character
(g <- as.call(list(f, quote(A))))
eval(g)
## alternatively but less transparently
g <- list(f, quote(A))
mode(g) <- "call"
g
eval(g)
## see also the examples in the help for do.call
```

`callCC` *Call With Current Continuation*

Description

A downward-only version of Scheme's call with current continuation.

Usage

```
callCC(fun)
```

Arguments

`fun`	function of one argument, the exit procedure.

Details

`callCC` provides a non-local exit mechanism that can be useful for early termination of a computation. `callCC` calls `fun` with one argument, an *exit function*. The exit function takes a single argument, the intended return value. If the body of `fun` calls the exit function then the call to `callCC` immediately returns, with the value supplied to the exit function as the value returned by `callCC`.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney

Examples

```
# The following all return the value 1
callCC(function(k) 1)
callCC(function(k) k(1))
callCC(function(k) {k(1); 2})
callCC(function(k) repeat k(1))
```

`CallExternal` *Modern Interfaces to C/C++ code*

Description

Functions to pass objects to compiled C/C++ code that has been loaded into .

Usage

```
    .Call(.NAME, ..., PACKAGE)
.External(.NAME, ..., PACKAGE)
```

Arguments

`.NAME`	a character string giving the name of a C function, or an object of class `"NativeSymbolInfo"`, `"RegisteredNativeSymbol"` or `"NativeSymbol"` referring to such a name.
`...`	arguments to be passed to the compiled code. Up to 65 for `.Call`.
`PACKAGE`	if supplied, confine the search for a character string `.NAME` to the DLL given by this argument (plus the conventional extension, '`.so`', '`.dll`', ...). This argument follows `...` and so its name cannot be abbreviated. This is intended to add safety for packages, which can ensure by using this argument that no other package can override their external symbols, and also speeds up the search (see 'Note').

Details

The functions are used to call compiled code which makes use of internal objects, passing the arguments to the code as a sequence of objects. They assume C calling conventions, so can usually also be used of C++ code.

For details about how to write code to use with these functions see the chapter on 'System and foreign language interfaces' in the 'Writing Extensions' manual. They differ in the way the arguments are passed to the C code: `.External` allows for a variable number of arguments.

These functions are primitive, and `.NAME` is always matched to the first argument supplied (which should not be named). For clarity, avoid using names in the arguments passed to `...` that match or partially match `.NAME`.

Value

An object constructed in the compiled code.

Header files for external code

Writing code for use with these functions will need to use internal structures defined in 'Rinternals.h' and/or the macros in 'Rdefines.h'.

Note

If one of these functions is to be used frequently, do specify PACKAGE (to confine the search to a single DLL) or pass .NAME as one of the native symbol objects. Searching for symbols can take a long time, especially when many namespaces are loaded.

You may see PACKAGE = "base" for symbols linked into . Do not use this in your own code: such symbols are not part of the API and may be changed without warning.

PACKAGE = "" used to be accepted (but was undocumented): it is now an error.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer. (.Call.)

See Also

dyn.load, .C, .Fortran.

The 'Writing R Extensions' manual.

---

capabilities *Report Capabilities of this Build of R*

Description

Report on the optional features which have been compiled into this build of .

Usage

```
capabilities(what = NULL)
```

Arguments

what	character vector or NULL, specifying required components. NULL implies that all are required.

Value

A named logical vector. Current components are

jpeg	is the jpeg function operational?
png	is the png function operational?
tiff	is the tiff function operational?
tcltk	is the **tcltk** package operational? Note that to make use of Tk you will almost always need to check that "X11" is also available.
X11	Are the X11 graphics device and the X11-based data editor available? This loads the X11 module if not already loaded, and checks that the default display can be contacted unless a X11 device has already been used.

aqua	Is the quartz function operational? Only on some OS X builds, including CRAN binary distributions of . Note that this is distinct from .Platform$GUI == "AQUA", which is true only when using the Mac R.app GUI console.
http/ftp	Are url and the internal method for download.file available?
sockets	Are make.socket and related functions available?
libxml	is there support for integrating libxml with the event loop?
fifo	are FIFO connections supported?
cledit	is command-line editing available in the current session? This is false in non-interactive sessions. It will be true for the command-line interface if readline support has been compiled in and '--no-readline' was *not* used when was invoked. (If '--interactive' was used, command-line editing will not actually be available.)
iconv	is internationalization conversion via iconv supported? Always true in current .
NLS	is there Natural Language Support (for message translations)?
profmem	is there support for memory profiling? See tracemem.
cairo	is there support for the svg, cairo_pdf and cairo_ps devices, and for type = "cairo" in the X11, bmp, jpeg, png, and tiff devices?
ICU	is ICU available for collation? See the help on Comparison and icuSetCollate: it is never used for a C locale.
long.double	does this build use a C long double type which is longer than double? Some platforms do not have such a type, and on others its use can be suppressed by the configure option '--disable-long-double'. Although not guaranteed, it is a reasonable assumption that if present long doubles will have at least as much range and accuracy as the ISO/IEC 60559 80-bit 'extended precision' format.

Note to OS X users

Capabilities "jpeg", "png" and "tiff" refer to the X11-based versions of these devices. If capabilities("aqua") is true, then these devices with type = "quartz" will be available, and out-of-the-box will be the default type. Thus for example the tiff device will be available if capabilities("aqua") || capabilities("tiff") if the defaults are unchanged.

See Also

.Platform

Examples

```
capabilities()

if(!capabilities("http/ftp"))
   warning("internal download.file() method is not available")

## See also the examples for connections.
```

cat *Concatenate and Print*

Description

Outputs the objects, concatenating the representations. cat performs much less conversion than print.

Usage

```
cat(... , file = "", sep = " ", fill = FALSE, labels = NULL,
    append = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	objects (see 'Details' for the types of objects allowed).
file	A connection, or a character string naming the file to print to. If "" (the default), cat prints to the standard output connection, the console unless redirected by sink. If it is "|cmd", the output is piped to the command given by 'cmd', by opening a pipe connection.
sep	a character vector of strings to append after each element.
fill	a logical or (positive) numeric controlling how the output is broken into successive lines. If FALSE (default), only newlines created explicitly by '"\n"' are printed. Otherwise, the output is broken into lines with print width equal to the option width if fill is TRUE, or the value of fill if this is numeric. Non-positive fill values are ignored, with a warning.
labels	character vector of labels for the lines printed. Ignored if fill is FALSE.
append	logical. Only used if the argument file is the name of file (and not a connection or "|cmd"). If TRUE output will be appended to file; otherwise, it will overwrite the contents of file.

Details

cat is useful for producing output in user-defined functions. It converts its arguments to character vectors, concatenates them to a single character vector, appends the given sep = string(s) to each element and then outputs them.

No linefeeds are output unless explicitly requested by '"\n"' or if generated by filling (if argument fill is TRUE or numeric).

If file is a connection and open for writing it is written from its current position. If it is not open, it is opened for the duration of the call in "wt" mode and then closed again.

Currently only atomic vectors and names are handled, together with NULL and other zero-length objects (which produce no output). Character strings are output 'as is' (unlike print.default which escapes non-printable characters and backslash — use encodeString if you want to output encoded strings using cat). Other types of object should be converted (e.g., by as.character or format) before being passed to cat. That includes factors, which are output as integer vectors.

cat converts numeric/complex elements in the same way as print (and not in the same way as as.character which is used by the S equivalent), so options "digits" and "scipen" are relevant. However, it uses the minimum field width necessary for each element, rather than the same field width for all elements.

Value

None (invisible NULL).

Note

If any element of sep contains a newline character, it is treated as a vector of terminators rather than separators, an element being output after every vector element *and* a newline after the last. Entries are recycled as needed.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

print, format, and paste which concatenates into a string.

Examples

```
iter <- stats::rpois(1, lambda = 10)
## print an informative message
cat("iteration = ", iter <- iter + 1, "\n")

## fill and label lines:
cat(paste(letters, 100* 1:26), fill = TRUE, labels = paste0("{", 1:10, "}:"))
```

---

cbind *Combine R Objects by Rows or Columns*

Description

Take a sequence of vector, matrix or data frames arguments and combine by *c*olumns or *r*ows, respectively. These are generic functions with methods for other classes.

Usage

```
cbind(..., deparse.level = 1)
rbind(..., deparse.level = 1)
```

Arguments

...	vectors or matrices. These can be given as named arguments. Other objects will be coerced as appropriate: see sections 'Details' and 'Value'. (For the "data.frame" method of cbind these can be further arguments to data.frame such as stringsAsFactors.)
deparse.level	integer controlling the construction of labels in the case of non-matrix-like arguments (for the default method): deparse.level = 0 constructs no labels; the default, deparse.level = 1 or 2 constructs labels from the argument names, see the 'Value' section below.

Details

The functions cbind and rbind are S3 generic, with methods for data frames. The data frame method will be used if at least one argument is a data frame and the rest are vectors or matrices. There can be other methods; in particular, there is one for time series objects. See the section on 'Dispatch' for how the method to be used is selected.

In the default method, all the vectors/matrices must be atomic (see vector) or lists. Expressions are not allowed. Language objects (such as formulae and calls) and pairlists will be coerced to lists: other objects (such as names and external pointers) will be included as elements in a list result. Any classes the inputs might have are discarded (in particular, factors are replaced by their internal codes).

If there are several matrix arguments, they must all have the same number of columns (or rows) and this will be the number of columns (or rows) of the result. If all the arguments are vectors, the number of columns (rows) in the result is equal to the length of the longest vector. Values in shorter arguments are recycled to achieve this length (with a warning if they are recycled only *fractionally*).

When the arguments consist of a mix of matrices and vectors the number of columns (rows) of the result is determined by the number of columns (rows) of the matrix arguments. Any vectors have their values recycled or subsetted to achieve this length.

For cbind (rbind), vectors of zero length (including NULL) are ignored unless the result would have zero rows (columns), for S compatibility. (Zero-extent matrices do not occur in S3 and are not ignored in .)

Value

For the default method, a matrix combining the ... arguments column-wise or row-wise. (Exception: if there are no inputs or all the inputs are NULL, the value is NULL.)

The type of a matrix result determined from the highest type of any of the inputs in the hierarchy raw < logical < integer < double < complex < character < list .

For cbind (rbind) the column (row) names are taken from the colnames (rownames) of the arguments if these are matrix-like. Otherwise from the names of the arguments or where those are not supplied and deparse.level > 0, by deparsing the expressions given, for deparse.level = 1 only if that gives a sensible name (a 'symbol', see is.symbol).

For cbind row names are taken from the first argument with appropriate names: rownames for a matrix, or names for a vector of length the number of rows of the result.

For rbind column names are taken from the first argument with appropriate names: colnames for a matrix, or names for a vector of length the number of columns of the result.

Data frame methods

The cbind data frame method is just a wrapper for data.frame(..., check.names = FALSE). This means that it will split matrix columns in data frame arguments, and convert character columns to factors unless stringsAsFactors = FALSE is specified.

The rbind data frame method first drops all zero-column and zero-row arguments. (If that leaves none, it returns the first argument with columns otherwise a zero-column zero-row data frame.) It then takes the classes of the columns from the first data frame, and matches columns by name (rather than by position). Factors have their levels expanded as necessary (in the order of the levels of the levelsets of the factors encountered) and the result is an ordered factor if and only if all the components were ordered factors. (The last point differs from S-PLUS.) Old-style categories (integer vectors with levels) are promoted to factors.

Dispatch

The method dispatching is *not* done via `UseMethod()`, but by C-internal dispatching. Therefore there is no need for, e.g., `rbind.default`.

The dispatch algorithm is described in the source file ('`.../src/main/bind.c`') as

1. For each argument we get the list of possible class memberships from the class attribute.
2. We inspect each class in turn to see if there is an applicable method.
3. If we find an applicable method we make sure that it is identical to any method determined for prior arguments. If it is identical, we proceed, otherwise we immediately drop through to the default code.

If you want to combine other objects with data frames, it may be necessary to coerce them to data frames first. (Note that this algorithm can result in calling the data frame method if all the arguments are either data frames or vectors, and this will result in the coercion of character vectors to factors.)

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`c` to combine vectors (and lists) as vectors, `data.frame` to combine vectors and matrices as a data frame.

Examples

```
m <- cbind(1, 1:7) # the 1 (= shorter vector) is recycled
m
m <- cbind(m, 8:14)[, c(1, 3, 2)] # insert a column
m
cbind(1:7, diag(3)) # vector is subset -> warning

cbind(0, rbind(1, 1:3))
cbind(I = 0, X = rbind(a = 1, b = 1:3))  # use some names
xx <- data.frame(I = rep(0,2))
cbind(xx, X = rbind(a = 1, b = 1:3))   # named differently

cbind(0, matrix(1, nrow = 0, ncol = 4)) #> Warning (making sense)
dim(cbind(0, matrix(1, nrow = 2, ncol = 0))) #-> 2 x 1

## deparse.level
dd <- 10
rbind(1:4, c = 2, "a++" = 10, dd, deparse.level = 0) # middle 2 rownames
rbind(1:4, c = 2, "a++" = 10, dd, deparse.level = 1) # 3 rownames (default)
rbind(1:4, c = 2, "a++" = 10, dd, deparse.level = 2) # 4 rownames
```

char.expand *Expand a String with Respect to a Target Table*

Description

Seeks a unique match of its first argument among the elements of its second. If successful, it returns this element; otherwise, it performs an action specified by the third argument.

Usage

```
char.expand(input, target, nomatch = stop("no match"))
```

Arguments

input	a character string to be expanded.
target	a character vector with the values to be matched against.
nomatch	an expression to be evaluated in case expansion was not possible.

Details

This function is particularly useful when abbreviations are allowed in function arguments, and need to be uniquely expanded with respect to a target table of possible values.

Value

A length-one character vector, one of the elements of target (unless nomatch is changed to be a non-error, when it can be a zero-length character string).

See Also

charmatch and pmatch for performing partial string matching.

Examples

```
locPars <- c("mean", "median", "mode")
char.expand("me", locPars, warning("Could not expand!"))
char.expand("mo", locPars)
```

character *Character Vectors*

Description

Create or test for objects of type "character".

Usage

```
character(length = 0)
as.character(x, ...)
is.character(x)
```

Arguments

length	A non-negative integer specifying the desired length. Double values will be coerced to integer: supplying an argument of length other than one is an error.
x	object to be coerced or tested.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

as.character and is.character are generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods. Further, for as.character the default method calls as.vector, so dispatch is first on methods for as.character and then for methods for as.vector.

as.character represents real and complex numbers to 15 significant digits (technically the compiler's setting of the ISO C constant DBL_DIG, which will be 15 on machines supporting IEC60559 arithmetic according to the C99 standard). This ensures that all the digits in the result will be reliable (and not the result of representation error), but does mean that conversion to character and back to numeric may change the number. If you want to convert numbers to character with the maximum possible precision, use format.

Value

character creates a character vector of the specified length. The elements of the vector are all equal to "".

as.character attempts to coerce its argument to character type; like as.vector it strips attributes including names. For lists and pairlists (including language objects such as calls) it deparses the elements individually, except that it extracts the first element of length-one character vectors.

is.character returns TRUE or FALSE depending on whether its argument is of character type or not.

Note

as.character breaks lines in language objects at 500 characters, and inserts newlines. Prior to 2.15.0 lines were truncated.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

paste, substr and strsplit for character concatenation and splitting, chartr for character translation and casefolding (e.g., upper to lower case) and sub, grep etc for string matching and substitutions. Note that help.search(keyword = "character") gives even more links.

deparse, which is normally preferable to as.character for language objects.

Examples

```
form <- y ~ a + b + c
as.character(form)  ## length 3
deparse(form)       ## like the input

a0 <- 11/999          # has a repeating decimal representation
```

```
(a1 <- as.character(a0))
format(a0, digits = 16) # shows one more digit
a2 <- as.numeric(a1)
a2 - a0               # normally around -1e-17
as.character(a2)      # normally different from a1
print(c(a0, a2), digits = 16)
```

---

charmatch *Partial String Matching*

Description

charmatch seeks matches for the elements of its first argument among those of its second.

Usage

```
charmatch(x, table, nomatch = NA_integer_)
```

Arguments

x	the values to be matched: converted to a character vector by as.character. Long vectors are supported.
table	the values to be matched against: converted to a character vector. Long vectors are not supported.
nomatch	the (integer) value to be returned at non-matching positions.

Details

Exact matches are preferred to partial matches (those where the value to be matched has an exact match to the initial part of the target, but the target is longer).

If there is a single exact match or no exact match and a unique partial match then the index of the matching value is returned; if multiple exact or multiple partial matches are found then 0 is returned and if no match is found then nomatch is returned.

NA values are treated as the string constant "NA".

Value

An integer vector of the same length as x, giving the indices of the elements in table which matched, or nomatch.

Author(s)

This function is based on a C function written by Terry Therneau.

See Also

pmatch, match.

grep or regexpr for more general (regexp) matching of strings.

Examples

```
charmatch("", "")                          # returns 1
charmatch("m",   c("mean", "median", "mode")) # returns 0
charmatch("med", c("mean", "median", "mode")) # returns 2
```

---

chartr *Character Translation and Casefolding*

Description

Translate characters in character vectors, in particular from upper to lower case or vice versa.

Usage

```
chartr(old, new, x)
tolower(x)
toupper(x)
casefold(x, upper = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a character vector, or an object that can be coerced to character by as.character.
old	a character string specifying the characters to be translated. If a character vector of length 2 or more is supplied, the first element is used with a warning.
new	a character string specifying the translations. If a character vector of length 2 or more is supplied, the first element is used with a warning.
upper	logical: translate to upper or lower case?.

Details

chartr translates each character in x that is specified in old to the corresponding character specified in new. Ranges are supported in the specifications, but character classes and repeated characters are not. If old contains more characters than new, an error is signaled; if it contains fewer characters, the extra characters at the end of new are ignored.

tolower and toupper convert upper-case characters in a character vector to lower-case, or vice versa. Non-alphabetic characters are left unchanged.

casefold is a wrapper for tolower and toupper provided for compatibility with S-PLUS.

Value

A character vector of the same length and with the same attributes as x (after possible coercion).

Elements of the result will be have the encoding declared as that of the current locale (see Encoding if the corresponding input had a declared encoding and the current locale is either Latin-1 or UTF-8. The result will be in the current locale's encoding unless the corresponding input was in UTF-8, when it will be in UTF-8 when the system has Unicode wide characters.

See Also

sub and gsub for other substitutions in strings.

Examples

```
x <- "MiXeD cAsE 123"
chartr("iXs", "why", x)
chartr("a-cX", "D-Fw", x)
tolower(x)
toupper(x)

## "Mixed Case" Capitalizing - toupper( every first letter of a word ) :

.simpleCap <- function(x) {
    s <- strsplit(x, " ")[[1]]
    paste(toupper(substring(s, 1, 1)), substring(s, 2),
          sep = "", collapse = " ")
}
.simpleCap("the quick red fox jumps over the lazy brown dog")
## ->  [1] "The Quick Red Fox Jumps Over The Lazy Brown Dog"

## and the better, more sophisticated version:
capwords <- function(s, strict = FALSE) {
    cap <- function(s) paste(toupper(substring(s, 1, 1)),
                  {s <- substring(s, 2); if(strict) tolower(s) else s},
                             sep = "", collapse = " " )
    sapply(strsplit(s, split = " "), cap, USE.NAMES = !is.null(names(s)))
}
capwords(c("using AIC for model selection"))
## ->  [1] "Using AIC For Model Selection"
capwords(c("using AIC", "for MODEL selection"), strict = TRUE)
## ->  [1] "Using Aic"  "For Model Selection"
##                ^^^        ^^^^^
##               bad       good

## -- Very simple insecure crypto --
rot <- function(ch, k = 13) {
   p0 <- function(...) paste(c(...), collapse = "")
   A <- c(letters, LETTERS, " ")
   I <- seq_len(k); chartr(p0(A), p0(c(A[-I], A[I])), ch)
}

pw <- "my secret pass phrase"
(crypw <- rot(pw, 13)) #-> you can send this off

## now decrypt :
rot(crypw, 54 - 13) # -> the original:
stopifnot(identical(pw, rot(crypw, 54 - 13)))
```

---

chol *The Choleski Decomposition*

Description

Compute the Choleski factorization of a real symmetric positive-definite square matrix.

Usage

```
chol(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
chol(x, pivot = FALSE,  LINPACK = FALSE, tol = -1, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object for which a method exists. The default method applies to numeric (or logical) symmetric, positive-definite matrices.
...	arguments to be based to or from methods.
pivot	Should pivoting be used?
LINPACK	logical. Should LINPACK be used (now ignored)?
tol	A numeric tolerance for use with `pivot = TRUE`.

Details

`chol` is generic: the description here applies to the default method.

Note that only the upper triangular part of `x` is used, so that $R'R = x$ when `x` is symmetric.

If `pivot = FALSE` and `x` is not non-negative definite an error occurs. If `x` is positive semi-definite (i.e., some zero eigenvalues) an error will also occur as a numerical tolerance is used.

If `pivot = TRUE`, then the Choleski decomposition of a positive semi-definite `x` can be computed. The rank of `x` is returned as `attr(Q, "rank")`, subject to numerical errors. The pivot is returned as `attr(Q, "pivot")`. It is no longer the case that `t(Q) %*% Q` equals `x`. However, setting `pivot <- attr(Q, "pivot")` and `oo <- order(pivot)`, it is true that `t(Q[, oo]) %*% Q[, oo]` equals `x`, or, alternatively, `t(Q) %*% Q` equals `x[pivot, pivot]`. See the examples.

Pivoting with LAPACK requires LAPACK >= 3.2 and was added in 2.15.2 (it was previously available using LINPACK). The value of `tol` is passed to LAPACK, with negative values selecting the default tolerance of (usually) `nrow(x) * .Machine$double.neg.eps * max(diag(x))`. The algorithm terminates once the pivot is less than `tol`.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code: these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code.

Value

The upper triangular factor of the Choleski decomposition, i.e., the matrix R such that $R'R = x$ (see example).

If pivoting is used, then two additional attributes `"pivot"` and `"rank"` are also returned.

Warning

The code does not check for symmetry.

If `pivot = TRUE` and `x` is not non-negative definite then there will be a warning message but a meaningless result will occur. So only use `pivot = TRUE` when `x` is non-negative definite by construction.

Source

This is an interface to the LAPACK routines DPOTRF and DPSTRF,

LAPACK is from http://www.netlib.org/lapack and its guide is listed in the references.

References

Anderson. E. and ten others (1999) *LAPACK Users' Guide*. Third Edition. SIAM.
Available on-line at http://www.netlib.org/lapack/lug/lapack_lug.html.

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

chol2inv for its *inverse* (without pivoting), backsolve for solving linear systems with upper triangular left sides.

qr, svd for related matrix factorizations.

Examples

```
( m <- matrix(c(5,1,1,3),2,2) )
( cm <- chol(m) )
t(cm) %*% cm  #-- = m
crossprod(cm)  #-- = m

# now for something positive semi-definite
x <- matrix(c(1:5, (1:5)^2), 5, 2)
x <- cbind(x, x[, 1] + 3*x[, 2])
colnames(x) <- letters[20:22]
m <- crossprod(x)
qr(m)$rank # is 2, as it should be

# chol() may fail, depending on numerical rounding:
# chol() unlike qr() does not use a tolerance.
try(chol(m))

(Q <- chol(m, pivot = TRUE))
## we can use this by
pivot <- attr(Q, "pivot")
crossprod(Q[, order(pivot)]) # recover m

## now for a non-positive-definite matrix
( m <- matrix(c(5,-5,-5,3), 2, 2) )
try(chol(m))  # fails
(Q <- chol(m, pivot = TRUE)) # warning
crossprod(Q)  # not equal to m
```

---

chol2inv *Inverse from Choleski (or QR) Decomposition*

Description

Invert a symmetric, positive definite square matrix from its Choleski decomposition. Equivalently, compute $(X'X)^{-1}$ from the (R part) of the QR decomposition of X.

Usage

```
chol2inv(x, size = NCOL(x), LINPACK = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix. The first size columns of the upper triangle contain the Choleski decomposition of the matrix to be inverted.
size	the number of columns of x containing the Choleski decomposition.
LINPACK	logical. Defunct and ignored (with a warning for true value).

Value

The inverse of the matrix whose Choleski decomposition was given.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code: these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code.

Source

This is an interface to the LAPACK routine DPOTRI. LAPACK is from http://www.netlib.org/lapack and its guide is listed in the references.

References

Anderson. E. and ten others (1999) *LAPACK Users' Guide*. Third Edition. SIAM. Available on-line at http://www.netlib.org/lapack/lug/lapack_lug.html.

Dongarra, J. J., Bunch, J. R., Moler, C. B. and Stewart, G. W. (1978) *LINPACK Users Guide*. Philadelphia: SIAM Publications.

See Also

chol, solve.

Examples

```
cma <- chol(ma  <- cbind(1, 1:3, c(1,3,7)))
ma %*% chol2inv(cma)
```

---

class *Object Classes*

Description

possesses a simple generic function mechanism which can be used for an object-oriented style of programming. Method dispatch takes place based on the class of the first argument to the generic function.

Usage

```
class(x)
class(x) <- value
unclass(x)
inherits(x, what, which = FALSE)

oldClass(x)
oldClass(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	a object
what, value	a character vector naming classes. value can also be NULL.
which	logical affecting return value: see 'Details'.

Details

Here, we describe the so called "S3" classes (and methods). For "S4" classes (and methods), see 'Formal classes' below.

Many objects have a class attribute, a character vector giving the names of the classes from which the object *inherits*. If the object does not have a class attribute, it has an implicit class, "matrix", "array" or the result of mode(x) (except that integer vectors have implicit class "integer"). (Functions oldClass and oldClass<- get and set the attribute, which can also be done directly.)

When a generic function fun is applied to an object with class attribute c("first", "second"), the system searches for a function called fun.first and, if it finds it, applies it to the object. If no such function is found, a function called fun.second is tried. If no class name produces a suitable function, the function fun.default is used (if it exists). If there is no class attribute, the implicit class is tried, then the default method.

The function class prints the vector of names of classes an object inherits from. Correspondingly, class<- sets the classes an object inherits from. Assigning NULL removes the class attribute.

unclass returns (a copy of) its argument with its class attribute removed. (It is not allowed for objects which cannot be copied, namely environments and external pointers.)

inherits indicates whether its first argument inherits from any of the classes specified in the what argument. If which is TRUE then an integer vector of the same length as what is returned. Each element indicates the position in the class(x) matched by the element of what; zero indicates no match. If which is FALSE then TRUE is returned by inherits if any of the names in what match with any class.

All but inherits are primitive functions.

Formal classes

An additional mechanism of *formal* classes, nicknamed "S4", is available in package **methods** which is attached by default. For objects which have a formal class, its name is returned by class as a character vector of length one and method dispatch can happen on *several* arguments, instead of only the first. However, S3 method selection attempts to treat objects from an S4 class as if they had the appropriate S3 class attribute, as does inherits. Therefore, S3 methods can be defined for S4 classes. See the 'Classes' and 'Methods' help pages for details.

The replacement version of the function sets the class to the value provided. For classes that have a formal definition, directly replacing the class this way is strongly deprecated. The expression as(object, value) is the way to coerce an object to a particular class.

The analogue of `inherits` for formal classes is `is`. The two functions behave consistently with one exception: S4 classes can have conditional inheritance, with an explicit test. In this case, `is` will test the condition, but `inherits` ignores all conditional superclasses.

Note

Functions `oldClass` and `oldClass<-` behave in the same way as functions of those names in S-PLUS 5/6, *but* in `UseMethod` dispatches on the class as returned by `class` (with some interpolated classes: see the link) rather than `oldClass`. *However*, group generics dispatch on the `oldClass` for efficiency, and internal generics only dispatch on objects for which `is.object` is true.

In some versions of , assigning a zero-length vector with `class` removes the class: in others it is an error (whereas it works for `oldClass`. It is clearer to always assign `NULL` to remove the class.

See Also

`UseMethod`, `NextMethod`, 'group generic', 'internal generic'

Examples

```
x <- 10
class(x) # "numeric"
oldClass(x) # NULL
inherits(x, "a") #FALSE
class(x) <- c("a", "b")
inherits(x,"a") #TRUE
inherits(x, "a", TRUE) # 1
inherits(x, c("a", "b", "c"), TRUE) # 1 2 0
```

---

col *Column Indexes*

Description

Returns a matrix of integers indicating their column number in a matrix-like object, or a factor of column labels.

Usage

```
col(x, as.factor = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix-like object, that is one with a two-dimensional `dim`.
`as.factor`	a logical value indicating whether the value should be returned as a factor of column labels (created if necessary) rather than as numbers.

Value

An integer (or factor) matrix with the same dimensions as `x` and whose `ij`-th element is equal to `j` (or the `j`-th column label).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`row` to get rows.

Examples

```
# extract an off-diagonal of a matrix
ma <- matrix(1:12, 3, 4)
ma[row(ma) == col(ma) + 1]

# create an identity 5-by-5 matrix
x <- matrix(0, nrow = 5, ncol = 5)
x[row(x) == col(x)] <- 1
```

Colon *Colon Operator*

Description

Generate regular sequences.

Usage

```
from:to
   a:b
```

Arguments

`from`	starting value of sequence.
`to`	(maximal) end value of the sequence.
`a, b`	`factor`s of the same length.

Details

The binary operator `:` has two meanings: for factors `a:b` is equivalent to `interaction(a, b)` (but the levels are ordered and labelled differently).

For other arguments `from:to` is equivalent to `seq(from, to)`, and generates a sequence from `from` to `to` in steps of `1` or `-1`. Value `to` will be included if it differs from `from` by an integer up to a numeric fuzz of about `1e-7`. Non-numeric arguments are coerced internally (hence without dispatching methods) to numeric—complex values will have their imaginary parts discarded with a warning.

Value

For numeric arguments, a numeric vector. This will be of type `integer` if `from` is integer-valued and the result is representable in the integer type, otherwise of type `"double"` (aka `mode` `"numeric"`).

For factors, an unordered factor with levels labelled as `la:lb` and ordered lexicographically (that is, `lb` varies fastest).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.
(for numeric arguments: S does not have : for factors.)

See Also

`seq` (a *generalization* of `from:to`).

As an alternative to using : for factors, `interaction`.

For : used in the formal representation of an interaction, see `formula`.

Examples

```
1:4
pi:6 # real
6:pi # integer

f1 <- gl(2, 3); f1
f2 <- gl(3, 2); f2
f1:f2 # a factor, the "cross"  f1 x f2
```

`colSums` *Form Row and Column Sums and Means*

Description

Form row and column sums and means for numeric arrays.

Usage

```
colSums (x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1)
rowSums (x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1)
colMeans(x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1)
rowMeans(x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1)

.colSums(X, m, n, na.rm = FALSE)
.rowSums(X, m, n, na.rm = FALSE)
.colMeans(X, m, n, na.rm = FALSE)
.rowMeans(X, m, n, na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	an array of two or more dimensions, containing numeric, complex, integer or logical values, or a numeric data frame.
`na.rm`	logical. Should missing values (including `NaN`) be omitted from the calculations?
`dims`	integer: Which dimensions are regarded as 'rows' or 'columns' to sum over. For `row*`, the sum or mean is over dimensions `dims+1, ...`; for `col*` it is over dimensions `1:dims`.
`X`	a numeric matrix.
`m, n`	the dimensions of X.

Details

These functions are equivalent to use of `apply` with `FUN = mean` or `FUN = sum` with appropriate margins, but are a lot faster. As they are written for speed, they blur over some of the subtleties of `NaN` and `NA`. If `na.rm = FALSE` and either `NaN` or `NA` appears in a sum, the result will be one of `NaN` or `NA`, but which might be platform-dependent.

Notice that omission of missing values is done on a per-column or per-row basis, so column means may not be over the same set of rows, and vice versa. To use only complete rows or columns, first select them with `na.omit` or `complete.cases` (possibly on the transpose of `x`).

The versions with an initial dot in the name are 'bare-bones' versions for use in programming: they apply only to numeric matrices and do not name the result.

Value

A numeric or complex array of suitable size, or a vector if the result is one-dimensional. For the first four functions the `dimnames` (or `names` for a vector result) are taken from the original array.

If there are no values in a range to be summed over (after removing missing values with `na.rm = TRUE`), that component of the output is set to `0` (`*Sums`) or `NaN` (`*Means`), consistent with `sum` and `mean`.

See Also

`apply`, `rowsum`

Examples

```
## Compute row and column sums for a matrix:
x <- cbind(x1 = 3, x2 = c(4:1, 2:5))
rowSums(x); colSums(x)
dimnames(x)[[1]] <- letters[1:8]
rowSums(x); colSums(x); rowMeans(x); colMeans(x)
x[] <- as.integer(x)
rowSums(x); colSums(x)
x[] <- x < 3
rowSums(x); colSums(x)
x <- cbind(x1 = 3, x2 = c(4:1, 2:5))
x[3, ] <- NA; x[4, 2] <- NA
rowSums(x); colSums(x); rowMeans(x); colMeans(x)
rowSums(x, na.rm = TRUE); colSums(x, na.rm = TRUE)
rowMeans(x, na.rm = TRUE); colMeans(x, na.rm = TRUE)

## an array
dim(UCBAdmissions)
rowSums(UCBAdmissions); rowSums(UCBAdmissions, dims = 2)
colSums(UCBAdmissions); colSums(UCBAdmissions, dims = 2)

## complex case
x <- cbind(x1 = 3 + 2i, x2 = c(4:1, 2:5) - 5i)
x[3, ] <- NA; x[4, 2] <- NA
rowSums(x); colSums(x); rowMeans(x); colMeans(x)
rowSums(x, na.rm = TRUE); colSums(x, na.rm = TRUE)
rowMeans(x, na.rm = TRUE); colMeans(x, na.rm = TRUE)
```

commandArgs *Extract Command Line Arguments*

Description

Provides access to a copy of the command line arguments supplied when this session was invoked.

Usage

```
commandArgs(trailingOnly = FALSE)
```

Arguments

trailingOnly	logical. Should only arguments after '--args' be returned?

Details

These arguments are captured before the standard command line processing takes place. This means that they are the unmodified values. This is especially useful with the '--args' command-line flag to , as all of the command line after that flag is skipped.

Value

A character vector containing the name of the executable and the user-supplied command line arguments. The first element is the name of the executable by which was invoked. The exact form of this element is platform dependent: it may be the fully qualified name, or simply the last component (or basename) of the application, or for an embedded it can be anything the programmer supplied.

If `trailingOnly = TRUE`, a character vector of those arguments (if any) supplied after '--args'.

See Also

Startup BATCH

Examples

```
commandArgs()
## Spawn a copy of this application as it was invoked,
## subject to shell quoting issues
## system(paste(commandArgs(), collapse = " "))
```

comment *Query or Set a "comment" Attribute*

Description

These functions set and query a *comment* attribute for any objects. This is typically useful for data.frames or model fits.

Contrary to other attributes, the comment is not printed (by print or print.default).

Assigning NULL or a zero-length character vector removes the comment.

Usage

```
comment(x)
comment(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	any object
value	a character vector, or NULL.

See Also

attributes and attr for other attributes.

Examples

```
x <- matrix(1:12, 3, 4)
comment(x) <- c("This is my very important data from experiment #0234",
                "Jun 5, 1998")
x
comment(x)
```

Comparison *Relational Operators*

Description

Binary operators which allow the comparison of values in atomic vectors.

Usage

```
x < y
x > y
x <= y
x >= y
x == y
x != y
```

Arguments

x, y	atomic vectors, symbols, calls, or other objects for which methods have been written.

Details

The binary comparison operators are generic functions: methods can be written for them individually or via the Ops) group generic function. (See Ops for how dispatch is computed.)

Comparison of strings in character vectors is lexicographic within the strings using the collating sequence of the locale in use: see locales. The collating sequence of locales such as 'en_US' is normally different from 'C' (which should use ASCII) and can be surprising. Beware of making *any* assumptions about the collation order: e.g. in Estonian Z comes between S and T, and collation is not necessarily character-by-character – in Danish aa sorts as a single letter, after z. In Welsh ng

may or may not be a single sorting unit: if it is it follows g. Some platforms may not respect the locale and always sort in numerical order of the bytes in an 8-bit locale, or in Unicode code-point order for a UTF-8 locale (and may not sort in the same order for the same language in different character sets). Collation of non-letters (spaces, punctuation signs, hyphens, fractions and so on) is even more problematic.

Character strings can be compared with different marked encodings (see Encoding): they are translated to UTF-8 before comparison.

Raw vectors should not really be considered to have an order, but the numeric order of the byte representation is used.

At least one of x and y must be an atomic vector, but if the other is a list attempts to coerce it to the type of the atomic vector: this will succeed if the list is made up of elements of length one that can be coerced to the correct type.

If the two arguments are atomic vectors of different types, one is coerced to the type of the other, the (decreasing) order of precedence being character, complex, numeric, integer, logical and raw.

Missing values (NA) and NaN values are regarded as non-comparable even to themselves, so comparisons involving them will always result in NA. Missing values can also result when character strings are compared and one is not valid in the current collation locale.

Language objects such as symbols and calls are deparsed to character strings before comparison.

Value

A logical vector indicating the result of the element by element comparison. The elements of shorter vectors are recycled as necessary.

Objects such as arrays or time-series can be compared this way provided they are conformable.

S4 methods

These operators are members of the S4 Compare group generic, and so methods can be written for them individually as well as for the group generic (or the Ops group generic), with arguments c(e1, e2).

Note

Do not use == and != for tests, such as in if expressions, where you must get a single TRUE or FALSE. Unless you are absolutely sure that nothing unusual can happen, you should use the identical function instead.

For numerical and complex values, remember == and != do not allow for the finite representation of fractions, nor for rounding error. Using all.equal with identical is almost always preferable. See the examples. (This also applies to the other comparison operators.)

These operators are sometimes called as functions as e.g. <(x, y): see the description of how argument-matching is done in Ops.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Collation of character strings is a complex topic. For an introduction see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Collating_sequence. The *Unicode Collation Algorithm* (http://unicode.org/reports/tr10/) is likely to be increasingly influential. Where available by default makes use of ICU (http://site.icu-project.org/) for collation (except in a C locale).

See Also

factor for the behaviour with factor arguments.

Syntax for operator precedence.

capabilities for whether ICU is available, and icuSetCollate to tune the string collation algorithm when it is.

Examples

```
x <- stats::rnorm(20)
x < 1
x[x > 0]

x1 <- 0.5 - 0.3
x2 <- 0.3 - 0.1
x1 == x2                          # FALSE on most machines
identical(all.equal(x1, x2), TRUE) # TRUE everywhere


# range of most 8-bit charsets, as well as of Latin-1 in Unicode
z <- c(32:126, 160:255)
x <- if(l10n_info()$MBCS) {
    intToUtf8(z, multiple = TRUE)
} else rawToChar(as.raw(z), multiple = TRUE)
## by number
writeLines(strwrap(paste(x, collapse=" "), width = 60))
## by locale collation
writeLines(strwrap(paste(sort(x), collapse=" "), width = 60))
```

---

complex *Complex Vectors*

Description

Basic functions which support complex arithmetic in R.

Usage

```
complex(length.out = 0, real = numeric(), imaginary = numeric(),
        modulus = 1, argument = 0)
as.complex(x, ...)
is.complex(x)

Re(z)
Im(z)
Mod(z)
Arg(z)
Conj(z)
```

Arguments

length.out	numeric. Desired length of the output vector, inputs being recycled as needed.
real	numeric vector.
imaginary	numeric vector.
modulus	numeric vector.
argument	numeric vector.
x	an object, probably of mode complex.
z	an object of mode complex, or one of a class for which a methods has been defined.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Complex vectors can be created with complex. The vector can be specified either by giving its length, its real and imaginary parts, or modulus and argument. (Giving just the length generates a vector of complex zeroes.)

as.complex attempts to coerce its argument to be of complex type: like as.vector it strips attributes including names. All forms of NA and NaN are coerced to a complex NA, for which both the real and imaginary parts are NA.

Note that is.complex and is.numeric are never both TRUE.

The functions Re, Im, Mod, Arg and Conj have their usual interpretation as returning the real part, imaginary part, modulus, argument and complex conjugate for complex values. The modulus and argument are also called the *polar coordinates*. If $z = x + iy$ with real x and y, for $r = Mod(z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$, and $\phi = Arg(z)$, $x = r * \cos(\phi)$ and $y = r * \sin(\phi)$. They are all internal generic primitive functions: methods can be defined for them individually or *via* the Complex group generic.

In addition, the elementary trigonometric, logarithmic, exponential, square root and hyperbolic functions are implemented for complex values.

Internally, complex numbers are stored as a pair of double precision numbers, either or both of which can be NaN or plus or minus infinity.

S4 methods

as.complex is primitive and can have S4 methods set.

Re, Im, Mod, Arg and Conj constitute the S4 group generic Complex and so S4 methods can be set for them individually or via the group generic.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

0i ^ (-3:3)

matrix(1i^ (-6:5), nrow = 4) #- all columns are the same
0 ^ 1i # a complex NaN
```

```
## create a complex normal vector
z <- complex(real = stats::rnorm(100), imaginary = stats::rnorm(100))
## or also (less efficiently):
z2 <- 1:2 + 1i*(8:9)

## The Arg(.) is an angle:
zz <- (rep(1:4, len = 9) + 1i*(9:1))/10
zz.shift <- complex(modulus = Mod(zz), argument = Arg(zz) + pi)
plot(zz, xlim = c(-1,1), ylim = c(-1,1), col = "red", asp = 1,
     main = expression(paste("Rotation by ","  ", pi == 180^o)))
abline(h = 0, v = 0, col = "blue", lty = 3)
points(zz.shift, col = "orange")
```

`conditions` *Condition Handling and Recovery*

Description

These functions provide a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.

Usage

```
tryCatch(expr, ..., finally)
withCallingHandlers(expr, ...)

signalCondition(cond)

simpleCondition(message, call = NULL)
simpleError    (message, call = NULL)
simpleWarning  (message, call = NULL)
simpleMessage  (message, call = NULL)

## S3 method for class condition
as.character(x, ...)
## S3 method for class error
as.character(x, ...)
## S3 method for class condition
print(x, ...)
## S3 method for class restart
print(x, ...)

conditionCall(c)
## S3 method for class condition
conditionCall(c)
conditionMessage(c)
## S3 method for class condition
conditionMessage(c)

withRestarts(expr, ...)
```

```
computeRestarts(cond = NULL)
findRestart(name, cond = NULL)
invokeRestart(r, ...)
invokeRestartInteractively(r)

isRestart(x)
restartDescription(r)
restartFormals(r)

.signalSimpleWarning(msg, call)
.handleSimpleError(h, msg, call)
```

Arguments

c	a condition object.
call	call expression.
cond	a condition object.
expr	expression to be evaluated.
finally	expression to be evaluated before returning or exiting.
h	function.
message	character string.
msg	character string.
name	character string naming a restart.
r	restart object.
x	object.
...	additional arguments; see details below.

Details

The condition system provides a mechanism for signaling and handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings. Conditions are represented as objects that contain information about the condition that occurred, such as a message and the call in which the condition occurred. Currently conditions are S3-style objects, though this may eventually change.

Conditions are objects inheriting from the abstract class `condition`. Errors and warnings are objects inheriting from the abstract subclasses `error` and `warning`. The class `simpleError` is the class used by `stop` and all internal error signals. Similarly, `simpleWarning` is used by `warning`, and `simpleMessage` is used by `message`. The constructors by the same names take a string describing the condition as argument and an optional call. The functions `conditionMessage` and `conditionCall` are generic functions that return the message and call of a condition.

Conditions are signaled by `signalCondition`. In addition, the `stop` and `warning` functions have been modified to also accept condition arguments.

The function `tryCatch` evaluates its expression argument in a context where the handlers provided in the `...` argument are available. The `finally` expression is then evaluated in the context in which `tryCatch` was called; that is, the handlers supplied to the current `tryCatch` call are not active when the `finally` expression is evaluated.

Handlers provided in the `...` argument to `tryCatch` are established for the duration of the evaluation of `expr`. If no condition is signaled when evaluating `expr` then `tryCatch` returns the value of the expression.

If a condition is signaled while evaluating `expr` then established handlers are checked, starting with the most recently established ones, for one matching the class of the condition. When several handlers are supplied in a single `tryCatch` then the first one is considered more recent than the second. If a handler is found then control is transferred to the `tryCatch` call that established the handler, the handler found and all more recent handlers are disestablished, the handler is called with the condition as its argument, and the result returned by the handler is returned as the value of the `tryCatch` call.

Calling handlers are established by `withCallingHandlers`. If a condition is signaled and the applicable handler is a calling handler, then the handler is called by `signalCondition` in the context where the condition was signaled but with the available handlers restricted to those below the handler called in the handler stack. If the handler returns, then the next handler is tried; once the last handler has been tried, `signalCondition` returns `NULL`.

User interrupts signal a condition of class `interrupt` that inherits directly from class `condition` before executing the default interrupt action.

Restarts are used for establishing recovery protocols. They can be established using `withRestarts`. One pre-established restart is an `abort` restart that represents a jump to top level.

`findRestart` and `computeRestarts` find the available restarts. `findRestart` returns the most recently established restart of the specified name. `computeRestarts` returns a list of all restarts. Both can be given a condition argument and will then ignore restarts that do not apply to the condition.

`invokeRestart` transfers control to the point where the specified restart was established and calls the restart's handler with the arguments, if any, given as additional arguments to `invokeRestart`. The restart argument to `invokeRestart` can be a character string, in which case `findRestart` is used to find the restart.

New restarts for `withRestarts` can be specified in several ways. The simplest is in `name = function` form where the function is the handler to call when the restart is invoked. Another simple variant is as `name = string` where the string is stored in the `description` field of the restart object returned by `findRestart`; in this case the handler ignores its arguments and returns `NULL`. The most flexible form of a restart specification is as a list that can include several fields, including `handler`, `description`, and `test`. The `test` field should contain a function of one argument, a condition, that returns `TRUE` if the restart applies to the condition and `FALSE` if it does not; the default function returns `TRUE` for all conditions.

One additional field that can be specified for a restart is `interactive`. This should be a function of no arguments that returns a list of arguments to pass to the restart handler. The list could be obtained by interacting with the user if necessary. The function `invokeRestartInteractively` calls this function to obtain the arguments to use when invoking the restart. The default `interactive` method queries the user for values for the formal arguments of the handler function.

`.signalSimpleWarning` and `.handleSimpleError` are used internally and should not be called directly.

References

The `tryCatch` mechanism is similar to Java error handling. Calling handlers are based on Common Lisp and Dylan. Restarts are based on the Common Lisp restart mechanism.

See Also

`stop` and `warning` signal conditions, and `try` is essentially a simplified version of `tryCatch`. `assertCondition` in package **tools** *tests* that conditions are signalled and works with several of the above handlers.

Examples

```
tryCatch(1, finally = print("Hello"))
e <- simpleError("test error")
## Not run:
 stop(e)
 tryCatch(stop(e), finally = print("Hello"))
 tryCatch(stop("fred"), finally = print("Hello"))

## End(Not run)
tryCatch(stop(e), error = function(e) e, finally = print("Hello"))
tryCatch(stop("fred"),  error = function(e) e, finally = print("Hello"))
withCallingHandlers({ warning("A"); 1+2 }, warning = function(w) {})
## Not run:
 { withRestarts(stop("A"), abort = function() {}); 1 }

## End(Not run)
withRestarts(invokeRestart("foo", 1, 2), foo = function(x, y) {x + y})

##--> More examples are part of
##-->   demo(error.catching)
```

---

conflicts *Search for Masked Objects on the Search Path*

Description

`conflicts` reports on objects that exist with the same name in two or more places on the `search` path, usually because an object in the user's workspace or a package is masking a system object of the same name. This helps discover unintentional masking.

Usage

```
conflicts(where = search(), detail = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`where`	A subset of the search path, by default the whole search path.
`detail`	If `TRUE`, give the masked or masking functions for all members of the search path.

Value

If `detail = FALSE`, a character vector of masked objects. If `detail = TRUE`, a list of character vectors giving the masked or masking objects in that member of the search path. Empty vectors are omitted.

Examples

```
lm <- 1:3
conflicts(, TRUE)
## gives something like
# $.GlobalEnv
# [1] "lm"
```

```
#
# $package:base
# [1] "lm"

## Remove things from your "workspace" that mask others:
remove(list = conflicts(detail = TRUE)$.GlobalEnv)
```

---

connections *Functions to Manipulate Connections*

Description

Functions to create, open and close connections.

Usage

```
file(description = "", open = "", blocking = TRUE,
     encoding = getOption("encoding"), raw = FALSE)

url(description, open = "", blocking = TRUE,
    encoding = getOption("encoding"))

gzfile(description, open = "", encoding = getOption("encoding"),
       compression = 6)

bzfile(description, open = "", encoding = getOption("encoding"),
       compression = 9)

xzfile(description, open = "", encoding = getOption("encoding"),
       compression = 6)

unz(description, filename, open = "",
    encoding = getOption("encoding"))

pipe(description, open = "", encoding = getOption("encoding"))

fifo(description, open = "", blocking = FALSE,
     encoding = getOption("encoding"))

socketConnection(host = "localhost", port, server = FALSE,
                 blocking = FALSE, open = "a+",
                 encoding = getOption("encoding"),
                 timeout = getOption("timeout"))

open(con, ...)
## S3 method for class connection
open(con, open = "r", blocking = TRUE, ...)

close(con, ...)
## S3 method for class connection
close(con, type = "rw", ...)
```

```
flush(con)

isOpen(con, rw = "")
isIncomplete(con)
```

Arguments

description	character string. A description of the connection: see 'Details'.
open	character string. A description of how to open the connection (if it should be opened initially). See section 'Modes' for possible values.
blocking	logical. See the 'Blocking' section.
encoding	The name of the encoding to be assumed. See the 'Encoding' section.
raw	logical. If true, a 'raw' interface is used which will be more suitable for arguments which are not regular files, e.g. character devices. This suppresses the check for a compressed file when opening for text-mode reading, and asserts that the 'file' may not be seekable.
compression	integer in 0–9. The amount of compression to be applied when writing, from none to maximal available. For xzfile can also be negative: see the 'Compression' section.
timeout	numeric: the timeout (in seconds) to be used for this connection. Beware that some OSes may treat very large values as zero: however the POSIX standard requires values up to 31 days to be supported.
filename	a filename within a zip file.
host	character string. Host name for the port.
port	integer. The TCP port number.
server	logical. Should the socket be a client or a server?
con	a connection.
type	character string. Currently ignored.
rw	character string. Empty or "read" or "write", partial matches allowed.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The first nine functions create connections. By default the connection is not opened (except for socketConnection), but may be opened by setting a non-empty value of argument open.

For file the description is a path to the file to be opened or a complete URL (when it is the same as calling url), or "" (the default) or "clipboard" (see the 'Clipboard' section). Use "stdin" to refer to the C-level 'standard input' of the process (which need not be connected to anything in a console or embedded version of , and is not in RGui on Windows). See also stdin() for the subtly different R-level concept of stdin.

For url the description is a complete URL, including scheme (such as 'http://', 'ftp://' or 'file://'). Proxies can be specified for HTTP and FTP url connections: see download.file.

For gzfile the description is the path to a file compressed by gzip: it can also open for reading uncompressed files and those compressed by bzip2, xz or lzma.

For bzfile the description is the path to a file compressed by bzip2.

For xzfile the description is the path to a file compressed by xz (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xz) or (for reading only) lzma (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LZMA).

unz reads (only) single files within zip files, in binary mode. The description is the full path to the zip file, with '.zip' extension if required.

For pipe the description is the command line to be piped to or from. This is run in a shell, on Windows that specified by the COMSPEC environment variable.

For fifo the description is the path of the fifo.

All platforms support file, pipe, gzfile, bzfile, xzfile, unz and url("file://") connections. The other connections may be partially implemented or not implemented at all. (They do work on most Unix platforms, and all on Windows.)

The intention is that file and gzfile can be used generally for text input (from files and URLs) and binary input respectively.

open, close and seek are generic functions: the following applies to the methods relevant to connections.

open opens a connection. In general functions using connections will open them if they are not open, but then close them again, so to leave a connection open call open explicitly.

close closes and destroys a connection. This will happen automatically in due course (with a warning) if there is no longer an object referring to the connection.

A maximum of 128 connections can be allocated (not necessarily open) at any one time. Three of these are pre-allocated (see stdout). The OS will impose limits on the numbers of connections of various types, but these are usually larger than 125.

flush flushes the output stream of a connection open for write/append (where implemented, currently for file and clipboard connections, stdout and stderr).

If for a file or (on most platforms) a fifo connection the description is "", the file/fifo is immediately opened (in "w+" mode unless open = "w+b" is specified) and unlinked from the file system. This provides a temporary file/fifo to write to and then read from.

Value

file, pipe, fifo, url, gzfile, bzfile, xzfile, unz and socketConnection return a connection object which inherits from class "connection" and has a first more specific class.

open and flush return NULL, invisibly.

close returns either NULL or an integer status, invisibly. The status is from when the connection was last closed and is available only for some types of connections (e.g., pipes, files and fifos): typically zero values indicate success.

isOpen returns a logical value, whether the connection is currently open.

isIncomplete returns a logical value, whether the last read attempt was blocked, or for an output text connection whether there is unflushed output.

URLs

url and file support URL schemes 'http://', 'ftp://' and 'file://'.

A note on 'file://' URLs. The most general form (from RFC1738) is 'file://host/path/to/file', but only accepts the form with an empty host field referring to the local machine.

On a Unix-alike, this is then 'file:///path/to/file', where 'path/to/file' is relative to '/'. So although the third slash is strictly part of the specification not part of the path, this can be

regarded as a way to specify the file '/path/to/file'. It is not possible to specify a relative path using a file URL.

In this form the path is relative to the root of the filesystem, not a Windows concept. The standard form on Windows is 'file:///d:/R/repos': for compatibility with earlier versions of and Unix versions, any other form is parsed as as 'file://' plus path_to_file. Also, backslashes are accepted within the path even though RFC1738 does not allow them.

No attempt is made to decode an encoded URL: call URLdecode if necessary.

Note that the 'https://' URL scheme is not supported except on Windows. There it is only supported if '--internet2' or setInternet2(TRUE) was used (to make use of Internet Explorer internals), and then only if the certificate is considered to be valid. With that option only, the 'http://user:pass@site' notation for sites requiring authentication is also accepted.

Function download.file and contributed package **RCurl** provide more comprehensive facilities to download from URLs.

Modes

Possible values for the argument open are

"r" **or** "rt" Open for reading in text mode.

"w" **or** "wt" Open for writing in text mode.

"a" **or** "at" Open for appending in text mode.

"rb" Open for reading in binary mode.

"wb" Open for writing in binary mode.

"ab" Open for appending in binary mode.

"r+", "r+b" Open for reading and writing.

"w+", "w+b" Open for reading and writing, truncating file initially.

"a+", "a+b" Open for reading and appending.

Not all modes are applicable to all connections: for example URLs can only be opened for reading. Only file and socket connections can be opened for both reading and writing. An unsupported mode is usually silently substituted.

If a file or fifo is created on a Unix-alike, its permissions will be the maximal allowed by the current setting of umask (see Sys.umask).

For many connections there is little or no difference between text and binary modes. For file-like connections on Windows, translation of line endings (between LF and CRLF) is done in text mode only (but text read operations on connections such as readLines, scan and source work for any form of line ending). Various operations are possible in only one of the modes: for example pushBack is text-oriented and is only allowed on connections open for reading in text mode, and binary operations such as readBin, load and save can only be done on binary-mode connections.

The mode of a connection is determined when actually opened, which is deferred if open = "" is given (the default for all but socket connections). An explicit call to open can specify the mode, but otherwise the mode will be "r". (gzfile, bzfile and xzfile connections are exceptions, as the compressed file always has to be opened in binary mode and no conversion of line-endings is done even on Windows, so the default mode is interpreted as "rb".) Most operations that need write access or text-only or binary-only mode will override the default mode of a non-yet-open connection.

Append modes need to be considered carefully for compressed-file connections. They do **not** produce a single compressed stream on the file, but rather append a new compressed stream to the file. Readers may or may not read beyond end of the first stream: currently does so for gzfile, bzfile and xzfile connections.

Compression

has for a long time supported `gzip` and `bzip2` compression, and support for `xz` compression (and read-only support for its precursor `lzma` compression) was added in 2.10.0.

For reading, the type of compression (if any) can be determined from the first few bytes of the file. Thus for `file(raw = FALSE)` connections, if `open` is `""`, `"r"` or `"rt"` the connection can read any of the compressed file types as well as uncompressed files. (Using `"rb"` will allow compressed files to be read byte-by-byte.) Similarly, `gzfile` connections can read any of the forms of compression and uncompressed files in any read mode.

(The type of compression is determined when the connection is created if `open` is unspecified and a file of that name exists. If the intention is to open the connection to write a file with a *different* form of compression under that name, specify `open = "w"` when the connection is created or `unlink` the file before creating the connection.)

For write-mode connections, `compress` specifies how hard the compressor works to minimize the file size, and higher values need more CPU time and more working memory (up to ca 800Mb for `xzfile(compress = 9)`). For `xzfile` negative values of `compress` correspond to adding the `xz` argument '`-e`': this takes more time (double?) to compress but may achieve (slightly) better compression. The default (6) has good compression and modest (100Mb memory) usage: but if you are using `xz` compression you are probably looking for high compression.

Choosing the type of compression involves tradeoffs: `gzip`, `bzip2` and `xz` are successively less widely supported, need more resources for both compression and decompression, and achieve more compression (although individual files may buck the general trend). Typical experience is that `bzip2` compression is 15% better on text files than `gzip` compression, and `xz` with maximal compression 30% better. The experience with `save` files is similar, but on some large '`.rda`' files `xz` compression is much better than the other two. With current computers decompression times even with `compress = 9` are typically modest and reading compressed files is usually faster than uncompressed ones because of the reduction in disc activity.

Encoding

The encoding of the input/output stream of a connection can be specified by name in the same way as it would be given to `iconv`: see that help page for how to find out what encoding names are recognized on your platform. Additionally, `""` and `"native.enc"` both mean the 'native' encoding, that is the internal encoding of the current locale and hence no translation is done.

Re-encoding only works for connections in text mode: reading from a connection with re-encoding specified in binary mode will read the stream of bytes, but mixing text and binary mode reads (e.g., mixing calls to `readLines` and `readChar`) is likely to lead to incorrect results.

The encodings `"UCS-2LE"` and `"UTF-16LE"` are treated specially, as they are appropriate values for Windows 'Unicode' text files. If the first two bytes are the Byte Order Mark `0xFEFF` then these are removed as some implementations of `iconv` do not accept BOMs. Note that whereas most implementations will handle BOMs using encoding `"UCS-2"` and choose the appropriate byte order, some (including earlier versions of `glibc`) will not. There is a subtle distinction between `"UTF-16"` and `"UCS-2"` (see `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/UTF-16`: the use of characters in the 'Supplementary Planes' which need surrogate pairs is very rare so `"UCS-2LE"` is an appropriate first choice (as it is more widely implemented).

As from 3.0.0 the encoding `"UTF-8-BOM"` is accepted for reading and will remove a Byte Order Mark if present (which it often is for files and webpages generated by Microsoft applications). If it is required (it is not recommended) when writing it should be written explicitly, e.g. by `writeChar("\ufeff", con, eos = NULL)` or `writeBin(as.raw(c(0xef, 0xbb, 0xbf)), binary_con)`

Encoding names "utf8", "mac" and "macroman" are not portable, and not supported on all current platforms. "UTF-8" is portable and "macintosh" is the official (and most widely supported) name for 'Mac Roman'.

Requesting a conversion that is not supported is an error, reported when the connection is opened. Exactly what happens when the requested translation cannot be done for invalid input is in general undocumented. On output the result is likely to be that up to the error, with a warning. On input, it will most likely be all or some of the input up to the error.

It may be possible to deduce the current native encoding from `Sys.getlocale("LC_CTYPE")`, but not all OSes record it.

Blocking

Whether or not the connection blocks can be specified for file, url (default yes), fifo and socket connections (default not).

In blocking mode, functions using the connection do not return to the evaluator until the read/write is complete. In non-blocking mode, operations return as soon as possible, so on input they will return with whatever input is available (possibly none) and for output they will return whether or not the write succeeded.

The function `readLines` behaves differently in respect of incomplete last lines in the two modes: see its help page.

Even when a connection is in blocking mode, attempts are made to ensure that it does not block the event loop and hence the operation of GUI parts of . These do not always succeed, and the whole process will be blocked during a DNS lookup on Unix, for example.

Most blocking operations on HTTP/FTP URLs and on sockets are subject to the timeout set by `options("timeout")`. Note that this is a timeout for no response, not for the whole operation. The timeout is set at the time the connection is opened (more precisely, when the last connection of that type – '`http:`', '`ftp:`' or socket – was opened).

Fifos

Fifos default to non-blocking. That follows S version 4 and is probably most natural, but it does have some implications. In particular, opening a non-blocking fifo connection for writing (only) will fail unless some other process is reading on the fifo.

Opening a fifo for both reading and writing (in any mode: one can only append to fifos) connects both sides of the fifo to the process, and provides an similar facility to `file()`.

Clipboard

`file` can be used with `description = "clipboard"` in mode `"r"` only. This reads the X11 primary selection (see `http://standards.freedesktop.org/clipboards-spec/clipboards-latest.txt`), which can also be specified as `"X11_primary"` and the secondary selection as `"X11_secondary"`. On most systems the clipboard selection (that used by 'Copy' from an 'Edit' menu) can be specified as `"X11_clipboard"`.

When a clipboard is opened for reading, the contents are immediately copied to internal storage in the connection.

Unix users wishing to *write* to one of the selections may be able to do so via `xclip` (`http://sourceforge.net/projects/xclip/`), for example by `pipe("xclip -i", "w")` for the primary selection.

OS X users can use `pipe("pbpaste")` and `pipe("pbcopy", "w")` to read from and write to that system's clipboard.

Note

's connections are modelled on those in S version 4 (see Chambers, 1998). However goes well beyond the S model, for example in output text connections and URL, compressed and socket connections.

The default open mode in is `"r"` except for socket connections. This differs from S, where it is the equivalent of `"r+"`, known as `"*"`.

On (rare) platforms where `vsnprintf` does not return the needed length of output there is a 100,000 byte output limit on the length of line for text output on `fifo`, `gzfile`, `bzfile` and `xzfile` connections: longer lines will be truncated with a warning.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language.* Springer.

Ripley, B. D. (2001) Connections. *R News*, **1/1**, 16–7. http://www.r-project.org/doc/Rnews/Rnews_2001-1.pdf

See Also

`textConnection`, `seek`, `showConnections`, `pushBack`.

Functions making direct use of connections are (text-mode) `readLines`, `writeLines`, `cat`, `sink`, `scan`, `parse`, `read.dcf`, `dput`, `dump` and (binary-mode) `readBin`, `readChar`, `writeBin`, `writeChar`, `load` and `save`.

`capabilities` to see if HTTP/FTP `url`, `fifo` and `socketConnection` are supported by this build of .

`gzcon` to wrap `gzip` (de)compression around a connection.

`memCompress` for more ways to (de)compress and references on data compression.

Examples

```
zz <- file("ex.data", "w")  # open an output file connection
cat("TITLE extra line", "2 3 5 7", "", "11 13 17", file = zz, sep = "\n")
cat("One more line\n", file = zz)
close(zz)
readLines("ex.data")
unlink("ex.data")

zz <- gzfile("ex.gz", "w")  # compressed file
cat("TITLE extra line", "2 3 5 7", "", "11 13 17", file = zz, sep = "\n")
close(zz)
readLines(zz <- gzfile("ex.gz"))
close(zz)
unlink("ex.gz")

zz <- bzfile("ex.bz2", "w")  # bzip2-ed file
cat("TITLE extra line", "2 3 5 7", "", "11 13 17", file = zz, sep = "\n")
close(zz)
print(readLines(zz <- bzfile("ex.bz2")))
close(zz)
unlink("ex.bz2")

## An example of a file open for reading and writing
Tfile <- file("test1", "w+")
```

```
c(isOpen(Tfile, "r"), isOpen(Tfile, "w")) # both TRUE
cat("abc\ndef\n", file = Tfile)
readLines(Tfile)
seek(Tfile, 0, rw = "r") # reset to beginning
readLines(Tfile)
cat("ghi\n", file = Tfile)
readLines(Tfile)
close(Tfile)
unlink("test1")

## We can do the same thing with an anonymous file.
Tfile <- file()
cat("abc\ndef\n", file = Tfile)
readLines(Tfile)
close(Tfile)

## Not run: ## fifo example -- may hang even with OS support for fifos
if(capabilities("fifo")) {
  zz <- fifo("foo-fifo", "w+")
  writeLines("abc", zz)
  print(readLines(zz))
  close(zz)
  unlink("foo-fifo")
}
## End(Not run)

## Unix examples of use of pipes

# read listing of current directory
readLines(pipe("ls -1"))

# remove trailing commas.  Suppose

## Not run: % cat data2_
450, 390, 467, 654,  30, 542, 334, 432, 421,
357, 497, 493, 550, 549, 467, 575, 578, 342,
446, 547, 534, 495, 979, 479
## End(Not run)
# Then read this by
scan(pipe("sed -e s/,$// data2_"), sep = ",")


# convert decimal point to comma in output: see also write.table
# both R strings and (probably) the shell need \ doubled
zz <- pipe(paste("sed s/\\\\./,/ >", "outfile"), "w")
cat(format(round(stats::rnorm(48), 4)), fill = 70, file = zz)
close(zz)
file.show("outfile", delete.file = TRUE)

## Not run:
## example for a machine running a finger daemon

con <- socketConnection(port = 79, blocking = TRUE)
writeLines(paste0(system("whoami", intern = TRUE), "\r"), con)
gsub(" *$", "", readLines(con))
close(con)
```

```
## End(Not run)

## Not run:
## Two R processes communicating via non-blocking sockets
# R process 1
con1 <- socketConnection(port = 6011, server = TRUE)
writeLines(LETTERS, con1)
close(con1)

# R process 2
con2 <- socketConnection(Sys.info()["nodename"], port = 6011)
# as non-blocking, may need to loop for input
readLines(con2)
while(isIncomplete(con2)) {
   Sys.sleep(1)
   z <- readLines(con2)
   if(length(z)) print(z)
}
close(con2)

## examples of use of encodings
# write a file in UTF-8
cat(x, file = (con <- file("foo", "w", encoding = "UTF-8"))); close(con)
# read a Windows Unicode file
A <- read.table(con <- file("students", encoding = "UCS-2LE")); close(con)

## End(Not run)
```

`Constants` *Built-in Constants*

Description

Constants built into .

Usage

```
LETTERS
letters
month.abb
month.name
pi
```

Details

has a small number of built-in constants.

The following constants are available:

- `LETTERS`: the 26 upper-case letters of the Roman alphabet;
- `letters`: the 26 lower-case letters of the Roman alphabet;
- `month.abb`: the three-letter abbreviations for the English month names;
- `month.name`: the English names for the months of the year;
- `pi`: the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter.

These are implemented as variables in the base namespace taking appropriate values.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

data, DateTimeClasses.

Quotes for the parsing of character constants, NumericConstants for numeric constants.

Examples

```
## John Machin (ca 1706) computed pi to over 100 decimal places
## using the Taylor series expansion of the second term of
pi - 4*(4*atan(1/5) - atan(1/239))

## months in English
month.name
## months in your current locale
format(ISOdate(2000, 1:12, 1), "%B")
format(ISOdate(2000, 1:12, 1), "%b")
```

---

contributors *R Project Contributors*

Description

The Who-is-who, describing who made significant contributions to the development of .

Usage

```
contributors()
```

Control *Control Flow*

Description

These are the basic control-flow constructs of the language. They function in much the same way as control statements in any Algol-like language. They are all reserved words.

Usage

```
if(cond) expr
if(cond) cons.expr  else  alt.expr

for(var in seq) expr
while(cond) expr
repeat expr
break
next
```

Arguments

cond	A length-one logical vector that is not NA. Conditions of length greater than one are accepted with a warning, but only the first element is used. Other types are coerced to logical if possible, ignoring any class.
var	A syntactical name for a variable.
seq	An expression evaluating to a vector (including a list and an expression) or to a pairlist or NULL. A factor value will be coerced to a character vector.
expr, cons.expr, alt.expr	An *expression* in a formal sense. This is either a simple expression or a so called *compound expression*, usually of the form { expr1 ; expr2 }.

Details

break breaks out of a for, while or repeat loop; control is transferred to the first statement outside the inner-most loop. next halts the processing of the current iteration and advances the looping index. Both break and next apply only to the innermost of nested loops.

Note that it is a common mistake to forget to put braces ({ .. }) around your statements, e.g., after if(..) or for(....). In particular, you should not have a newline between } and else to avoid a syntax error in entering a if ... else construct at the keyboard or via source. For that reason, one (somewhat extreme) attitude of defensive programming is to always use braces, e.g., for if clauses.

The seq in a for loop is evaluated at the start of the loop; changing it subsequently does not affect the loop. If seq has length zero the body of the loop is skipped. Otherwise the variable var is assigned in turn the value of each element of seq. You can assign to var within the body of the loop, but this will not affect the next iteration. When the loop terminates, var remains as a variable containing its latest value.

Value

if returns the value of the expression evaluated, or NULL invisibly if none was (which may happen if there is no else).

for, while and repeat return NULL invisibly. for sets var to the last used element of seq, or to NULL if it was of length zero.

break and next do not return a value as they transfer control within the loop.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

Syntax for the basic syntax and operators, Paren for parentheses and braces.

ifelse, switch for other ways to control flow.

Examples

```
for(i in 1:5) print(1:i)
for(n in c(2,5,10,20,50)) {
   x <- stats::rnorm(n)
   cat(n, ": ", sum(x^2), "\n", sep = "")
```

```
}
f <- factor(sample(letters[1:5], 10, replace = TRUE))
for(i in unique(f)) print(i)
```

---

copyright *Copyrights of Files Used to Build R*

Description

is released under the 'GNU Public License': see license for details. The license describes your right to use . Copyright is concerned with ownership of intellectual rights, and some of the software used has conditions that the copyright must be explicitly stated: see the 'Details' section. We are grateful to these people and other contributors (see contributors) for the ability to use their work.

Details

The file '*R_HOME*/COPYRIGHTS' lists the copyrights in full detail.

---

crossprod *Matrix Crossproduct*

Description

Given matrices x and y as arguments, return a matrix cross-product. This is formally equivalent to (but usually slightly faster than) the call t(x) %*% y (crossprod) or x %*% t(y) (tcrossprod).

Usage

```
crossprod(x, y = NULL)

tcrossprod(x, y = NULL)
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric or complex matrices: y = NULL is taken to be the same matrix as x. Vectors are promoted to single-column or single-row matrices, depending on the context.

Value

A double or complex matrix, with appropriate dimnames taken from x and y.

Note

When x or y are not matrices, they are treated as column or row matrices, but their names are usually **not** promoted to dimnames. Hence, currently, the last example has empty dimnames.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

%*% and outer product %o%.

Examples

```
(z <- crossprod(1:4))    # = sum(1 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 4^2)
drop(z)                  # scalar
x <- 1:4; names(x) <- letters[1:4]; x
tcrossprod(as.matrix(x)) # is
identical(tcrossprod(as.matrix(x)),
          crossprod(t(x)))
tcrossprod(x)            # no dimnames

m <- matrix(1:6, 2,3) ; v <- 1:3; v2 <- 2:1
stopifnot(identical(tcrossprod(v, m), v %*% t(m)),
          identical(tcrossprod(v, m), crossprod(v, t(m))),
          identical(crossprod(m, v2), t(m) %*% v2))
```

Cstack_info *Report Information on C Stack Size and Usage*

Description

Report information on the C stack size and usage (if available).

Usage

```
Cstack_info()
```

Details

On most platforms, C stack information is recorded when is initialized and used for stack-checking. If this information is unavailable, the `size` will be returned as `NA`, and stack-checking is not performed.

The information on the stack base address is thought to be accurate on Windows, Linux, OS X and FreeBSD but a heuristic is used on other platforms. Because this might be slightly inaccurate, the current usage could be estimated as negative. (The heuristic is not used on embedded uses of on platforms where the stack base is not thought to be accurate.)

The 'evaluation depth' is the number of nested expressions currently under evaluation: this has a limit controlled by `options("expressions")`.

Value

An integer vector. This has named elements

`size`	The size of the stack (in bytes), or `NA` if unknown.
`current`	The estimated current usage (in bytes), possibly `NA`.
`direction`	`1` (stack grows down, the usual case) or `-1` (stack grows up).
`eval_depth`	The current evaluation depth (including two calls for the call to `Cstack_info`).

Examples

```
Cstack_info()
```

cumsum *Cumulative Sums, Products, and Extremes*

Description

Returns a vector whose elements are the cumulative sums, products, minima or maxima of the elements of the argument.

Usage

```
cumsum(x)
cumprod(x)
cummax(x)
cummin(x)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric or complex (not cummin or cummax) object, or an object that can be coerced to one of these.

Details

These are generic functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the Math group generic.

Value

A vector of the same length and type as x (after coercion), except that cumprod returns a numeric vector for integer input (for consistency with *). Names are preserved.

An NA value in x causes the corresponding and following elements of the return value to be NA, as does integer overflow in cumsum (with a warning).

S4 methods

cumsum and cumprod are S4 generic functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the Math group generic. cummax and cummin are individually S4 generic functions.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (cumsum only.)

Examples

```
cumsum(1:10)
cumprod(1:10)
cummin(c(3:1, 2:0, 4:2))
cummax(c(3:1, 2:0, 4:2))
```

`cut` *Convert Numeric to Factor*

Description

`cut` divides the range of `x` into intervals and codes the values in `x` according to which interval they fall. The leftmost interval corresponds to level one, the next leftmost to level two and so on.

Usage

```
cut(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
cut(x, breaks, labels = NULL,
    include.lowest = FALSE, right = TRUE, dig.lab = 3,
    ordered_result = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric vector which is to be converted to a factor by cutting.
`breaks`	either a numeric vector of two or more unique cut points or a single number (greater than or equal to 2) giving the number of intervals into which `x` is to be cut.
`labels`	labels for the levels of the resulting category. By default, labels are constructed using `"(a,b]"` interval notation. If `labels = FALSE`, simple integer codes are returned instead of a factor.
`include.lowest`	logical, indicating if an 'x[i]' equal to the lowest (or highest, for `right = FALSE`) 'breaks' value should be included.
`right`	logical, indicating if the intervals should be closed on the right (and open on the left) or vice versa.
`dig.lab`	integer which is used when labels are not given. It determines the number of digits used in formatting the break numbers.
`ordered_result`	logical: should the result be an ordered factor?
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

When `breaks` is specified as a single number, the range of the data is divided into `breaks` pieces of equal length, and then the outer limits are moved away by 0.1% of the range to ensure that the extreme values both fall within the break intervals. (If `x` is a constant vector, equal-length intervals are created, one of which includes the single value.)

If a `labels` parameter is specified, its values are used to name the factor levels. If none is specified, the factor level labels are constructed as `"(b1, b2]"`, `"(b2, b3]"` etc. for `right = TRUE` and as `"[b1, b2)"`, ...if `right = FALSE`. In this case, `dig.lab` indicates the minimum number of digits should be used in formatting the numbers `b1`, `b2`, ... A larger value (up to 12) will be used if needed to distinguish between any pair of endpoints: if this fails labels such as `"Range3"` will be used. Formatting is done by `formatC`.

The default method will sort a numeric vector of `breaks`, but other methods are not required to and `labels` will correspond to the intervals after sorting.

Value

A factor is returned, unless `labels = FALSE` which results in an integer vector of level codes.

Values which fall outside the range of `breaks` are coded as `NA`, as are `NaN` and `NA` values.

Note

Instead of `table(cut(x, br))`, `hist(x, br, plot = FALSE)` is more efficient and less memory hungry. Instead of `cut(*, labels = FALSE)`, `findInterval()` is more efficient.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

split for splitting a variable according to a group factor; factor, tabulate, table, findInterval.

quantile for ways of choosing breaks of roughly equal content (rather than length).

.bincode for a bare-bones version.

Examples

```
Z <- stats::rnorm(10000)
table(cut(Z, breaks = -6:6))
sum(table(cut(Z, breaks = -6:6, labels = FALSE)))
sum(graphics::hist(Z, breaks = -6:6, plot = FALSE)$counts)

cut(rep(1,5), 4) #-- dummy
tx0 <- c(9, 4, 6, 5, 3, 10, 5, 3, 5)
x <- rep(0:8, tx0)
stopifnot(table(x) == tx0)

table( cut(x, b = 8))
table( cut(x, breaks = 3*(-2:5)))
table( cut(x, breaks = 3*(-2:5), right = FALSE))

##--- some values OUTSIDE the breaks :
table(cx  <- cut(x, breaks = 2*(0:4)))
table(cxl <- cut(x, breaks = 2*(0:4), right = FALSE))
which(is.na(cx));  x[is.na(cx)]  #-- the first 9  values  0
which(is.na(cxl)); x[is.na(cxl)] #-- the last  5  values  8


## Label construction:
y <- stats::rnorm(100)
table(cut(y, breaks = pi/3*(-3:3)))
table(cut(y, breaks = pi/3*(-3:3), dig.lab = 4))

table(cut(y, breaks =  1*(-3:3), dig.lab = 4))
# extra digits dont "harm" here
table(cut(y, breaks =  1*(-3:3), right = FALSE))
#- the same, since no exact INT!
```

```
## sometimes the default dig.lab is not enough to be avoid confusion:
aaa <- c(1,2,3,4,5,2,3,4,5,6,7)
cut(aaa, 3)
cut(aaa, 3, dig.lab = 4, ordered = TRUE)

## one way to extract the breakpoints
labs <- levels(cut(aaa, 3))
cbind(lower = as.numeric( sub("\\((.+),.*", "\\1", labs) ),
      upper = as.numeric( sub("[^,]*,([^]]*)\\]", "\\1", labs) ))
```

`cut.POSIXt` *Convert a Date or Date-Time Object to a Factor*

Description

Method for `cut` applied to date-time objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class POSIXt
cut(x, breaks, labels = NULL, start.on.monday = TRUE,
    right = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class Date
cut(x, breaks, labels = NULL, start.on.monday = TRUE,
    right = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"POSIXt"` or `"Date"`.
`breaks`	a vector of cut points *or* number giving the number of intervals which `x` is to be cut into *or* an interval specification, one of `"sec"`, `"min"`, `"hour"`, `"day"`, `"DSTday"`, `"week"`, `"month"`, `"quarter"` or `"year"`, optionally preceded by an integer and a space, or followed by `"s"`. (For `"Date"` objects only interval specifications using `"day"`, `"week"`, `"month"`, `"quarter"` and `"year"` are allowed.)
`labels`	labels for the levels of the resulting category. By default, labels are constructed from the left-hand end of the intervals (which are included for the default value of `right`). If `labels = FALSE`, simple integer codes are returned instead of a factor.
`start.on.monday`	logical. If `breaks = "weeks"`, should the week start on Mondays or Sundays?
`right, ...`	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

Note that the default for `right` differs from the default method. Using `include.lowest = TRUE` will include both ends of the range of dates.

Using `breaks = "quarter"` will create intervals of 3 calendar months, with the intervals beginning on January 1, April 1, July 1 or October 1 (based upon `min(x)`) as appropriate.

A vector of `breaks` will be sorted before use: `labels` should correspond to the sorted vector.

Value

A factor is returned, unless `labels = FALSE` which returns the integer level codes.

Values which fall outside the range of `breaks` are coded as `NA`, as are and `NA` values.

See Also

`seq.POSIXt`, `seq.Date`, `cut`

Examples

```
## random dates in a 10-week period
cut(ISOdate(2001, 1, 1) + 70*86400*stats::runif(100), "weeks")
cut(as.Date("2001/1/1") + 70*stats::runif(100), "weeks")

# The standards all have midnight as the start of the day, but some
# people incorrectly interpret it at the end of the previous day ...
tm <- seq(as.POSIXct("2012-06-01 06:00"), by = "6 hours", length.out = 24)
aggregate(1:24, list(day = cut(tm, "days")), mean)
# and a version with midnight included in the previous day:
aggregate(1:24, list(day = cut(tm, "days", right = TRUE)), mean)
```

`data.class` *Object Classes*

Description

Determine the class of an arbitrary object.

Usage

```
data.class(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object.

Value

character string giving the *class* of `x`.

The class is the (first element) of the `class` attribute if this is non-`NULL`, or inferred from the object's `dim` attribute if this is non-`NULL`, or `mode(x)`.

Simply speaking, `data.class(x)` returns what is typically useful for method dispatching. (Or, what the basic creator functions already and maybe eventually all will attach as a class attribute.)

Note

For compatibility reasons, there is one exception to the rule above: When `x` is `integer`, the result of `data.class(x)` is `"numeric"` even when `x` is classed.

See Also

`class`

Examples

```
x <- LETTERS
data.class(factor(x))                # has a class attribute
data.class(matrix(x, ncol = 13))     # has a dim attribute
data.class(list(x))                  # the same as mode(x)
data.class(x)                        # the same as mode(x)

stopifnot(data.class(1:2) == "numeric") # compatibility "rule"
```

---

data.frame *Data Frames*

Description

This function creates data frames, tightly coupled collections of variables which share many of the properties of matrices and of lists, used as the fundamental data structure by most of 's modeling software.

Usage

```
data.frame(..., row.names = NULL, check.rows = FALSE,
           check.names = TRUE,
           stringsAsFactors = default.stringsAsFactors())

default.stringsAsFactors()
```

Arguments

`...`	these arguments are of either the form `value` or `tag = value`. Component names are created based on the tag (if present) or the deparsed argument itself.
`row.names`	`NULL` or a single integer or character string specifying a column to be used as row names, or a character or integer vector giving the row names for the data frame.
`check.rows`	if `TRUE` then the rows are checked for consistency of length and names.
`check.names`	logical. If `TRUE` then the names of the variables in the data frame are checked to ensure that they are syntactically valid variable names and are not duplicated. If necessary they are adjusted (by `make.names`) so that they are.
`stringsAsFactors`	logical: should character vectors be converted to factors? The 'factory-fresh' default is `TRUE`, but this can be changed by setting `options(stringsAsFactors = FALSE)`.

Details

A data frame is a list of variables of the same number of rows with unique row names, given class `"data.frame"`. If no variables are included, the row names determine the number of rows.

The column names should be non-empty, and attempts to use empty names will have unsupported results. Duplicate column names are allowed, but you need to use `check.names = FALSE` for `data.frame` to generate such a data frame. However, not all operations on data frames will preserve

duplicated column names: for example matrix-like subsetting will force column names in the result to be unique.

`data.frame` converts each of its arguments to a data frame by calling `as.data.frame(optional = TRUE)`. As that is a generic function, methods can be written to change the behaviour of arguments according to their classes: comes with many such methods. Character variables passed to `data.frame` are converted to factor columns unless protected by `I` or argument `stringsAsFactors` is false. If a list or data frame or matrix is passed to `data.frame` it is as if each component or column had been passed as a separate argument (except for matrices of class `"model.matrix"` and those protected by `I`).

Objects passed to `data.frame` should have the same number of rows, but atomic vectors (see `is.vector`), factors and character vectors protected by `I` will be recycled a whole number of times if necessary (including as elements of list arguments).

If row names are not supplied in the call to `data.frame`, the row names are taken from the first component that has suitable names, for example a named vector or a matrix with rownames or a data frame. (If that component is subsequently recycled, the names are discarded with a warning.) If `row.names` was supplied as `NULL` or no suitable component was found the row names are the integer sequence starting at one (and such row names are considered to be 'automatic', and not preserved by `as.matrix`).

If row names are supplied of length one and the data frame has a single row, the `row.names` is taken to specify the row names and not a column (by name or number).

Names are removed from vector inputs not protected by `I`.

`default.stringsAsFactors` is a utility that takes `getOption("stringsAsFactors")` and ensures the result is `TRUE` or `FALSE` (or throws an error if the value is not `NULL`).

Value

A data frame, a matrix-like structure whose columns may be of differing types (numeric, logical, factor and character and so on).

How the names of the data frame are created is complex, and the rest of this paragraph is only the basic story. If the arguments are all named and simple objects (not lists, matrices of data frames) then the argument names give the column names. For an unnamed simple argument, a deparsed version of the argument is used as the name (with an enclosing `I(...)` removed). For a named matrix/list/data frame argument with more than one named column, the names of the columns are the name of the argument followed by a dot and the column name inside the argument: if the argument is unnamed, the argument's column names are used. For a named or unnamed matrix/list/data frame argument that contains a single column, the column name in the result is the column name in the argument. Finally, the names are adjusted to be unique and syntactically valid unless `check.names = FALSE`.

Note

In versions of prior to 2.4.0 `row.names` had to be character: to ensure compatibility with such versions of , supply a character vector as the `row.names` argument.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

I, plot.data.frame, print.data.frame, row.names, names (for the column names), [.data.frame for subsetting methods, Math.data.frame etc, about *Group* methods for data.frames; read.table, make.names.

Examples

```
L3 <- LETTERS[1:3]
fac <- sample(L3, 10, replace = TRUE)
(d <- data.frame(x = 1, y = 1:10, fac = fac))
## The "same" with automatic column names:
data.frame(1, 1:10, sample(L3, 10, replace = TRUE))

is.data.frame(d)

## do not convert to factor, using I() :
(dd <- cbind(d, char = I(letters[1:10])))
rbind(class = sapply(dd, class), mode = sapply(dd, mode))

stopifnot(1:10 == row.names(d))  # {coercion}

(d0  <- d[, FALSE])   # data frame with 0 columns and 10 rows
(d.0 <- d[FALSE, ])   # <0 rows> data frame  (3 named cols)
(d00 <- d0[FALSE, ])  # data frame with 0 columns and 0 rows
```

---

data.matrix *Convert a Data Frame to a Numeric Matrix*

Description

Return the matrix obtained by converting all the variables in a data frame to numeric mode and then binding them together as the columns of a matrix. Factors and ordered factors are replaced by their internal codes.

Usage

```
data.matrix(frame, rownames.force = NA)
```

Arguments

frame	a data frame whose components are logical vectors, factors or numeric vectors.
rownames.force	logical indicating if the resulting matrix should have character (rather than NULL) rownames. The default, NA, uses NULL rownames if the data frame has 'automatic' row.names or for a zero-row data frame.

Details

Logical and factor columns are converted to integers. Any other column which is not numeric (according to is.numeric) is converted by as.numeric or, for S4 objects, as(, "numeric"). If all columns are integer (after conversion) the result is an integer matrix, otherwise a numeric (double) matrix.

Value

If `frame` inherits from class `"data.frame"`, an integer or numeric matrix of the same dimensions as `frame`, with dimnames taken from the `row.names` (or `NULL`, depending on `rownames.force`) and `names`.

Otherwise, the result of `as.matrix`.

Note

The default behaviour for data frames differs from < 2.5.0 which always gave the result character rownames.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`as.matrix`, `data.frame`, `matrix`.

Examples

```
DF <- data.frame(a = 1:3, b = letters[10:12],
                 c = seq(as.Date("2004-01-01"), by = "week", len = 3),
                 stringsAsFactors = TRUE)
data.matrix(DF[1:2])
data.matrix(DF)
```

`date` *System Date and Time*

Description

Returns a character string of the current system date and time.

Usage

```
date()
```

Value

The string has the form `"Fri Aug 20 11:11:00 1999"`, i.e., length 24, since it relies on POSIX's `ctime` ensuring the above fixed format. Timezone and Daylight Saving Time are taken account of, but *not* indicated in the result.

The day and month abbreviations are always in English, irrespective of locale.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

Sys.Date and Sys.time; Date and DateTimeClasses for objects representing date and time.

Examples

```
(d <- date())
nchar(d) == 24

## something similar in the current locale
format(Sys.time(), "%a %b %d %H:%M:%S %Y")
```

Dates *Date Class*

Description

Description of the class "Date" representing calendar dates.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class Date
summary(object, digits = 12, ...)
```

Arguments

object	An object summarized.
digits	Number of significant digits for the computations.
...	Further arguments to be passed from or to other methods.

Details

Dates are represented as the number of days since 1970-01-01, with negative values for earlier dates. They are always printed following the rules of the current Gregorian calendar, even though that calendar was not in use long ago (it was adopted in 1752 in Great Britain and its colonies).

It is intended that the date should be an integer, but this is not enforced in the internal representation. Fractional days will be ignored when printing. It is possible to produce fractional days via the mean method or by adding or subtracting (see Ops.Date).

The print methods respect options("max.print").

See Also

Sys.Date for the current date.

Ops.Date for operators on "Date" objects.

format.Date for conversion to and from character strings.

axis.Date and hist.Date for plotting.

weekdays for convenience extraction functions.

seq.Date, cut.Date, round.Date for utility operations.

DateTimeClasses for date-time classes.

Examples

```
(today <- Sys.Date())
format(today, "%d %b %Y")  # with month as a word
(tenweeks <- seq(today, length.out=10, by="1 week")) # next ten weeks
weekdays(today)
months(tenweeks)
as.Date(.leap.seconds)
```

DateTimeClasses *Date-Time Classes*

Description

Description of the classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" representing calendar dates and times.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class POSIXct
print(x, ...)

## S3 method for class POSIXct
summary(object, digits = 15, ...)

time + z
z + time
time - z
time1 lop time2
```

Arguments

x, object	An object to be printed or summarized from one of the date-time classes.
digits	Number of significant digits for the computations: should be high enough to represent the least important time unit exactly.
...	Further arguments to be passed from or to other methods.
time	date-time objects
time1, time2	date-time objects or character vectors. (Character vectors are converted by as.POSIXct.)
z	a numeric vector (in seconds)
lop	One of ==, !=, <, <=, > or >=.

Details

There are two basic classes of date/times. Class "POSIXct" represents the (signed) number of seconds since the beginning of 1970 (in the UTC time zone) as a numeric vector. Class "POSIXlt" is a named list of vectors representing

sec 0–61: seconds.

min 0–59: minutes.

hour 0–23: hours.

`mday` 1–31: day of the month

`mon` 0–11: months after the first of the year.

`year` years since 1900.

`wday` 0–6 day of the week, starting on Sunday.

`yday` 0–365: day of the year.

`isdst` Daylight Saving Time flag. Positive if in force, zero if not, negative if unknown.

`zone` (Optional.) The abbreviation for the time zone in force at that time: `""` if unknown (but `""` might also be used for UTC).

`gmtoff` (Optional.) The offset in seconds from GMT: positive values are East of the meridian. Usually `NA` if unknown, but `0` could mean unknown.

(The last two components are not present for times in UTC and are platform-dependent: they are supported on platforms based on BSD or `glibc` (including Linux and OS X) and those using the `tzcode` implementation shipped with (including Windows). But they are not necessarily set.). Note that the internal list structure is somewhat hidden, as many methods (including `length(x)`, `print()` and `str`) apply to the abstract date-time vector, as for `"POSIXct"`. The classes correspond to the POSIX/C99 constructs of 'calendar time' (the `time_t` data type) and 'local time' (or broken-down time, the `struct tm` data type), from which they also inherit their names. The components of `"POSIXlt"` are integer vectors, except `sec` and `zone`.

`"POSIXct"` is more convenient for including in data frames, and `"POSIXlt"` is closer to human-readable forms. A virtual class `"POSIXt"` exists from which both of the classes inherit: it is used to allow operations such as subtraction to mix the two classes.

Components `wday` and `yday` of `"POSIXlt"` are for information, and are not used in the conversion to calendar time. However, `isdst` is needed to distinguish times at the end of DST: typically 1am to 2am occurs twice, first in DST and then in standard time. At all other times `isdst` can be deduced from the first six values, but the behaviour if it is set incorrectly is platform-dependent.

Logical comparisons and some arithmetic operations are available for both classes. One can add or subtract a number of seconds from a date-time object, but not add two date-time objects. Subtraction of two date-time objects is equivalent to using `difftime`. Be aware that `"POSIXlt"` objects will be interpreted as being in the current time zone for these operations unless a time zone has been specified.

`"POSIXlt"` objects will often have an attribute `"tzone"`, a character vector of length 3 giving the time zone name from the `TZ` environment variable and the names of the base time zone and the alternate (daylight-saving) time zone. Sometimes this may just be of length one, giving the time zone name.

`"POSIXct"` objects may also have an attribute `"tzone"`, a character vector of length one. If set to a non-empty value, it will determine how the object is converted to class `"POSIXlt"` and in particular how it is printed. This is usually desirable, but if you want to specify an object in a particular time zone but to be printed in the current time zone you may want to remove the `"tzone"` attribute (e.g., by `c(x)`).

Unfortunately, the conversion is complicated by the operation of time zones and leap seconds (25 days have been 86401 seconds long so far: the times of the extra seconds are in the object `.leap.seconds`). The details of this are entrusted to the OS services where possible. It seems that some rare systems used to use leap seconds, but all known current platforms ignore them (as required by POSIX). This is detected and corrected for at build time, so `"POSIXct"` times used by do not include leap seconds on any platform.

Using `c` on `"POSIXlt"` objects converts them to the current time zone, and on `"POSIXct"` objects drops any `"tzone"` attributes (even if they are all marked with the same time zone).

A few times have specific issues. First, the leap seconds are ignored, and real times such as `"2005-12-31 23:59:60"` are (probably) treated as the next second. However, they will never be generated by , and are unlikely to arise as input. Second, on some OSes there is a problem in the POSIX/C99 standard with `"1969-12-31 23:59:59 UTC"`, which is `-1` in calendar time and that value is on those OSes also used as an error code. Thus `as.POSIXct("1969-12-31 23:59:59", format = "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S", tz = "UTC")` may give `NA`, and hence `as.POSIXct("1969-12-31 23:59:59", tz = "UTC")` will give `"1969-12-31 23:59:00"`. Other OSes (including the code used by on Windows) report errors separately and so are able to handle that time as valid.

The print methods respect `options("max.print")`.

Sub-second Accuracy

Classes `"POSIXct"` and `"POSIXlt"` are able to express fractions of a second. (Conversion of fractions between the two forms may not be exact, but will have better than microsecond accuracy.)

Fractional seconds are printed only if `options("digits.secs")` is set: see `strftime`.

Valid ranges for times

The `"POSIXlt"` class can represent a very wide range of times (up to billions of years), but such times can only be interpreted with reference to a time zone.

The concept of time zones was first adopted in the nineteenth century, and the Gregorian calendar was introduced in 1582 but not universally adopted until 1927. OS services almost invariably assume the Gregorian calendar and may assume that the time zone that was first enacted for the location was in force before that date. (The earliest legislated time zone seems to have been London on 1847-12-01.) Some OSes assume the previous use of 'local time' based on the longitude of a location within the time zone.

Most operating systems represent `POSIXct` times as C type `long`. This means that on 32-bit OSes this covers the period 1902 to 2037. On all known 64-bit platforms and for the code we use on 32-bit Windows, the range of representable times is billions of years: however, not all can convert correctly times before 1902 or after 2037. A few benighted OSes used a unsigned type and so cannot represent times before 1970.

Where possible the platform limits are detected, and outside the limits we use our own C code. This uses the offset from GMT in use either for 1902 (when there was no DST) or that predicted for one of 2030 to 2037 (chosen so that the likely DST transition days are Sundays), and uses the alternate (daylight-saving) time zone only if `isdst` is positive or (if `-1`) if DST was predicted to be in operation in the 2030s on that day.

Note that there are places (e.g., Rome) whose offset from UTC varied in the years prior to 1902, and these will be handled correctly only where there is OS support.

There is no reason to suppose that the DST rules will remain the same in the future, and indeed the US legislated in 2005 to change its rules as from 2007, with a possible future reversion. So conversions for times more than a year or two ahead are speculative.

Warnings

Some Unix-like systems (especially Linux ones) do not have environment variable `TZ` set, yet have internal code that expects it (as does POSIX). We have tried to work around this, but if you get unexpected results try setting `TZ`. See `Sys.timezone` for valid settings.

Great care is needed when comparing objects of class `"POSIXlt"`. Not only are components and attributes optional; several components may have values meaning 'not yet determined' and the same time represented in different time zones will look quite different.

References

Ripley, B. D. and Hornik, K. (2001) Date-time classes. *R News*, **1/2**, 8–11. http://www.r-project.org/doc/Rnews/Rnews_2001-2.pdf

See Also

Dates for dates without times.

as.POSIXct and as.POSIXlt for conversion between the classes.

strptime for conversion to and from character representations.

Sys.time for clock time as a "POSIXct" object.

difftime for time intervals.

cut.POSIXt, seq.POSIXt, round.POSIXt and trunc.POSIXt for methods for these classes.

weekdays for convenience extraction functions.

Examples

```
(z <- Sys.time())            # the current date, as class "POSIXct"

Sys.time() - 3600            # an hour ago

as.POSIXlt(Sys.time(), "GMT") # the current time in GMT
format(.leap.seconds)         # the leap seconds in your time zone
print(.leap.seconds, tz = "PST8PDT")  # and in Seattles

## look at *internal* representation of "POSIXlt" :
leapS <- as.POSIXlt(.leap.seconds)
names(leapS) ; is.list(leapS)
## str() "too smart" -->  need unclass(.):
utils::str(unclass(leapS), vec.len = 7)
```

---

dcf *Read and Write Data in DCF Format*

Description

Reads or writes an object from/to a file in Debian Control File format.

Usage

```
read.dcf(file, fields = NULL, all = FALSE, keep.white = NULL)

write.dcf(x, file = "", append = FALSE,
          indent = 0.1 * getOption("width"),
          width = 0.9 * getOption("width"),
          keep.white = NULL)
```

Arguments

file	either a character string naming a file or a connection. "" indicates output to the console. For read.dcf this can name a compressed file (see gzfile).
fields	Fields to read from the DCF file. Default is to read all fields.
all	a logical indicating whether in case of multiple occurrences of a field in a record, all these should be gathered. If all is false (default), only the last such occurrence is used.
keep.white	a character string with the names of the fields for which whitespace should be kept as is, or NULL (default) indicating that there are no such fields. Coerced to character if possible. For fields where whitespace is not to be kept as is, read.dcf removes leading and trailing whitespace, and write.dcf folds using strwrap.
x	the object to be written, typically a data frame. If not, it is attempted to coerce x to a data frame.
append	logical. If TRUE, the output is appended to the file. If FALSE, any existing file of the name is destroyed.
indent	a positive integer specifying the indentation for continuation lines in output entries.
width	a positive integer giving the target column for wrapping lines in the output.

Details

DCF is a simple format for storing databases in plain text files that can easily be directly read and written by humans. DCF is used in various places to store system information, like descriptions and contents of packages.

The DCF rules as implemented in are:

1. A database consists of one or more records, each with one or more named fields. Not every record must contain each field. Fields may appear more than once in a record.
2. Regular lines start with a non-whitespace character.
3. Regular lines are of form tag:value, i.e., have a name tag and a value for the field, separated by : (only the first : counts). The value can be empty (i.e., whitespace only).
4. Lines starting with whitespace are continuation lines (to the preceding field) if at least one character in the line is non-whitespace. Continuation lines where the only non-whitespace character is a '.' are taken as blank lines (allowing for multi-paragraph field values).
5. Records are separated by one or more empty (i.e., whitespace only) lines.
6. Individual lines may not be arbitrarily long; prior to 3.0.2 the length limit was approximately 8191 bytes per line.

Note that read.dcf(all = FALSE) reads the file byte-by-byte. This allows a 'DESCRIPTION' file to be read and only its ASCII fields used, or its 'Encoding' field used to re-encode the remaining fields.

write.dcf does not write NA fields.

Value

The default read.dcf(all = FALSE) returns a character matrix with one row per record and one column per field. Leading and trailing whitespace of field values is ignored unless a field is listed in keep.white. If a tag name is specified in the file, but the corresponding value is empty, then an

empty string is returned. If the tag name of a field is specified in `fields` but never used in a record, then the corresponding value is `NA`. If fields are repeated within a record, the last one encountered is returned. Malformed lines lead to an error.

For `read.dcf(all = TRUE)` a data frame is returned, again with one row per record and one column per field. The columns are lists of character vectors for fields with multiple occurrences, and character vectors otherwise.

Note that an empty `file` is a valid DCF file, and `read.dcf` will return a zero-row matrix or data frame.

For `write.dcf`, invisible `NULL`.

References

http://www.debian.org/doc/debian-policy/ch-controlfields.html.

Note that does not require encoding in UTF-8, which is a recent Debian requirement. Nor does it use the Debian-specific sub-format which allows comment lines starting with '#'.

See Also

`write.table`.

`available.packages`, which uses `read.dcf` to read the indices of package repositories.

Examples

```
## Create a reduced version of the DESCRIPTION file in package splines
x <- read.dcf(file = system.file("DESCRIPTION", package = "splines"),
              fields = c("Package", "Version", "Title"))
write.dcf(x)

## An online DCF file with multiple records
con <- url("http://cran.r-project.org/src/contrib/PACKAGES")
y <- read.dcf(con, all = TRUE)
close(con)
utils::str(y)
```

---

debug *Debug a Function*

Description

Set, unset or query the debugging flag on a function. The `text` and `condition` arguments are the same as those that can be supplied via a call to `browser`. They can be retrieved by the user once the browser has been entered, and provide a mechanism to allow users to identify which breakpoint has been activated.

Usage

```
debug(fun, text = "", condition = NULL)
debugonce(fun, text = "", condition = NULL)
undebug(fun)
isdebugged(fun)
```

Arguments

fun	any interpreted function.
text	a text string that can be retrieved when the browser is entered.
condition	a condition that can be retrieved when the browser is entered.

Details

When a function flagged for debugging is entered, normal execution is suspended and the body of function is executed one statement at a time. A new browser context is initiated for each step (and the previous one destroyed).

At the debug prompt the user can enter commands or expressions, followed by a newline. The commands are described in the browser help topic.

To debug a function which is defined inside another function, single-step though to the end of its definition, and then call debug on its name.

If you want to debug a function not starting at the very beginning, use trace(..., at = *) or setBreakpoint.

Using debug is persistent, and unless debugging is turned off the debugger will be entered on every invocation (note that if the function is removed and replaced the debug state is not preserved). Use debugonce to enter the debugger only the next time the function is invoked.

In order to debug S4 methods (see Methods), you need to use trace, typically calling browser, e.g., as

```
trace("plot", browser, exit = browser, signature = c("track", "missing"))
```

The number of lines printed for the deparsed call when a function is entered for debugging can be limited by setting options(deparse.max.lines).

When debugging is enabled on a byte compiled function then the interpreted version of the function will be used until debugging is disabled.

See Also

browser, trace; traceback to see the stack after an Error: ... message; recover for another debugging approach.

Defunct *Marking Objects as Defunct*

Description

When a function is removed from it should be replaced by a function which calls .Defunct.

Usage

```
.Defunct(new, package = NULL, msg)
```

Arguments

new	character string: A suggestion for a replacement function.
package	character string: The package to be used when suggesting where the defunct function might be listed.
msg	character string: A message to be printed, if missing a default message is used.

Details

`.Defunct` is called from defunct functions. Functions should be listed in `help("pkg-defunct")` for an appropriate `pkg`, including `base` (with the alias added to the respective Rd file).

See Also

`Deprecated`.

`base-defunct` and so on which list the defunct functions in the packages.

`delayedAssign` *Delay Evaluation*

Description

`delayedAssign` creates a *promise* to evaluate the given expression if its value is requested. This provides direct access to the *lazy evaluation* mechanism used by for the evaluation of (interpreted) functions.

Usage

```
delayedAssign(x, value, eval.env = parent.frame(1),
              assign.env = parent.frame(1))
```

Arguments

`x`	a variable name (given as a quoted string in the function call)
`value`	an expression to be assigned to `x`
`eval.env`	an environment in which to evaluate `value`
`assign.env`	an environment in which to assign `x`

Details

Both `eval.env` and `assign.env` default to the currently active environment.

The expression assigned to a promise by `delayedAssign` will not be evaluated until it is eventually 'forced'. This happens when the variable is first accessed.

When the promise is eventually forced, it is evaluated within the environment specified by `eval.env` (whose contents may have changed in the meantime). After that, the value is fixed and the expression will not be evaluated again.

Value

This function is invoked for its side effect, which is assigning a promise to evaluate `value` to the variable `x`.

See Also

`substitute`, to see the expression associated with a promise.

Examples

```
msg <- "old"
delayedAssign("x", msg)
msg <- "new!"
x #- new!
substitute(x) #- x (was msg ?)

delayedAssign("x", {
    for(i in 1:3)
        cat("yippee!\n")
    10
})

x^2 #- yippee
x^2 #- simple number

e <- (function(x, y = 1, z) environment())(1+2, "y", {cat(" HO! "); pi+2})
(le <- as.list(e)) # evaluates the promises
```

`deparse` *Expression Deparsing*

Description

Turn unevaluated expressions into character strings.

Usage

```
deparse(expr, width.cutoff = 60L,
        backtick = mode(expr) %in%
            c("call", "expression", "(", "function"),
        control = c("keepInteger", "showAttributes", "keepNA"),
        nlines = -1L)
```

Arguments

`expr`	any expression.
`width.cutoff`	integer in $[20, 500]$ determining the cutoff (in bytes) at which line-breaking is tried.
`backtick`	logical indicating whether symbolic names should be enclosed in backticks if they do not follow the standard syntax.
`control`	character vector of deparsing options. See `.deparseOpts`.
`nlines`	integer: the maximum number of lines to produce. Negative values indicate no limit.

Details

This function turns unevaluated expressions (where 'expression' is taken in a wider sense than the strict concept of a vector of mode "expression" used in expression) into character strings (a kind of inverse to parse).

A typical use of this is to create informative labels for data sets and plots. The example shows a simple use of this facility. It uses the functions deparse and substitute to create labels for a plot which are character string versions of the actual arguments to the function myplot.

The default for the backtick option is not to quote single symbols but only composite expressions. This is a compromise to avoid breaking existing code.

Using control = "all" comes closest to making deparse() an inverse of parse(). However, not all objects are deparse-able even with this option and a warning will be issued if the function recognizes that it is being asked to do the impossible.

Numeric and complex vectors are converted using 15 significant digits: see as.character for more details.

width.cutoff is a lower bound for the line lengths: deparsing a line proceeds until at least width.cutoff *bytes* have been output and e.g. arg = value expressions will not be split across lines.

Note

To avoid the risk of a source attribute out of sync with the actual function definition, the source attribute of a function will never be deparsed as an attribute.

Deparsing internal structures may not be accurate: for example the graphics display list recorded by recordPlot is not intended to be deparsed and .Internal calls will be shown as primitive calls.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

substitute, parse, expression.

Quotes for quoting conventions, including backticks.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)

deparse(args(lm))
deparse(args(lm), width = 500)
myplot <-
function(x, y) {
    plot(x, y, xlab = deparse(substitute(x)),
        ylab = deparse(substitute(y)))
}
e <- quote(foo bar)
deparse(e)
deparse(e, backtick = TRUE)
e <- quote(foo bar+1)
deparse(e)
deparse(e, control = "all")
```

deparseOpts *Options for Expression Deparsing*

Description

Process the deparsing options for deparse, dput and dump.

Usage

```
.deparseOpts(control)
```

Arguments

control	character vector of deparsing options.

Details

This is called by deparse, dput and dump to process their control argument.

The control argument is a vector containing zero or more of the following strings. Partial string matching is used.

keepInteger Either surround integer vectors by as.integer() or use suffix L, so they are not converted to type double when parsed. This includes making sure that integer NAs are preserved (via NA_integer_ if there are no non-NA values in the vector, unless "S_compatible" is set).

quoteExpressions Surround expressions with quote(), so they are not evaluated when re-parsed.

showAttributes If the object has attributes (other than a source attribute), use structure() to display them as well as the object value. This is the default for deparse and dput.

useSource If the object has a source attribute, display that instead of deparsing the object. Currently only applies to function definitions.

warnIncomplete Some exotic objects such as environments, external pointers, etc. can not be deparsed properly. This option causes a warning to be issued if the deparser recognizes one of these situations.

Also, the parser in < 2.7.0 would only accept strings of up to 8192 bytes, and this option gives a warning for longer strings.

keepNA Integer, real and character NAs are surrounded by coercion functions where necessary to ensure that they are parsed to the same type. Since e.g. NA_real_ can be output in , this is mainly used in connection with S_compatible.

all An abbreviated way to specify all of the options listed above. This is the default for dump, and the options used by edit (which are fixed).

delayPromises Deparse promises in the form <promise: expression> rather than evaluating them. The value and the environment of the promise will not be shown and the deparsed code cannot be sourced.

S_compatible Make deparsing as far as possible compatible with S and < 2.5.0. For compatibility with S, integer values of double vectors are deparsed with a trailing decimal point. Backticks are not used.

For the most readable (but perhaps incomplete) display, use `control = NULL`. This displays the object's value, but not its attributes. The default in `deparse` is to display the attributes as well, but not to use any of the other options to make the result parseable. (`dput` and `dump` do use more default options, and printing of functions without sources uses `c("keepInteger", "keepNA")`.)

Using `control = "all"` comes closest to making `deparse()` an inverse of `parse()`. However, not all objects are deparse-able even with this option. A warning will be issued if the function recognizes that it is being asked to do the impossible.

Value

A numerical value corresponding to the options selected.

`Deprecated` *Marking Objects as Deprecated*

Description

When an object is about to be removed from it is first deprecated and should include a call to `.Deprecated`.

Usage

```
.Deprecated(new, package=NULL, msg,
            old = as.character(sys.call(sys.parent()))[1L])
```

Arguments

`new`	character string: A suggestion for a replacement function.
`package`	character string: The package to be used when suggesting where the deprecated function might be listed.
`msg`	character string: A message to be printed, if missing a default message is used.
`old`	character string specifying the function (default) or usage which is being deprecated.

Details

`.Deprecated("<new name>")` is called from deprecated functions. The original help page for these functions is often available at `help("oldName-deprecated")` (note the quotes). Functions should be listed in `help("pkg-deprecated")` for an appropriate `pkg`, including `base`.

See Also

`Defunct`

`base-deprecated` and so on which list the deprecated functions in the packages.

det *Calculate the Determinant of a Matrix*

Description

det calculates the determinant of a matrix. determinant is a generic function that returns separately the modulus of the determinant, optionally on the logarithm scale, and the sign of the determinant.

Usage

```
det(x, ...)
determinant(x, logarithm = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric matrix: logical matrices are coerced to numeric.
logarithm	logical; if TRUE (default) return the logarithm of the modulus of the determinant.
...	Optional arguments. At present none are used. Previous versions of det allowed an optional method argument. This argument will be ignored but will not produce an error.

Details

The determinant function uses an LU decomposition and the det function is simply a wrapper around a call to determinant.

Often, computing the determinant is *not* what you should be doing to solve a given problem.

Value

For det, the determinant of x. For determinant, a list with components

modulus	a numeric value. The modulus (absolute value) of the determinant if logarithm is FALSE; otherwise the logarithm of the modulus.
sign	integer; either $+1$ or -1 according to whether the determinant is positive or negative.

Examples

```
(x <- matrix(1:4, ncol = 2))
unlist(determinant(x))
det(x)

det(print(cbind(1, 1:3, c(2,0,1))))
```

detach *Detach Objects from the Search Path*

Description

Detach a database, i.e., remove it from the search() path of available objects. Usually this is either a data.frame which has been attached or a package which was attached by library.

Usage

```
detach(name, pos = 2L, unload = FALSE, character.only = FALSE,
       force = FALSE)
```

Arguments

name	The object to detach. Defaults to search()[pos]. This can be an unquoted name or a character string but *not* a character vector. If a number is supplied this is taken as pos.
pos	Index position in search() of the database to detach. When name is a number, pos = name is used.
unload	A logical value indicating whether or not to attempt to unload the namespace when a package is being detached. If the package has a namespace and unload is TRUE, then detach will attempt to unload the namespace *via* unloadNamespace: if the namespace is imported by another namespace or unload is FALSE, no unloading will occur.
character.only	a logical indicating whether name can be assumed to be a character string.
force	logical: should a package be detached even though other attached packages depend on it?

Details

This is most commonly used with a single number argument referring to a position on the search list, and can also be used with a unquoted or quoted name of an item on the search list such as package:tools.

If a package has a namespace, detaching it does not by default unload the namespace (and may not even with unload = TRUE), and detaching will not in general unload any dynamically loaded compiled code (DLLs). Further, registered S3 methods from the namespace will not be removed. If you use library on a package whose namespace is loaded, it attaches the exports of the already loaded namespace. So detaching and re-attaching a package may not refresh some or all components of the package, and is inadvisable.

Value

The return value is invisible. It is NULL when a package is detached, otherwise the environment which was returned by attach when the object was attached (incorporating any changes since it was attached).

Good practice

`detach()` without an argument removes the first item on the search path after the workspace. It is all too easy to call it too many or too few times, or to not notice that the search path has changed since an `attach` call.

Use of `attach`/`detach` is best avoided in functions (see the help for `attach`) and in interactive use and scripts it is prudent to detach by name.

Note

You cannot detach either the workspace (position 1) nor the **base** package (the last item in the search list), and attempting to do so will throw an error.

Unloading some namespaces has undesirable side effects: e.g. unloading **grid** closes all graphics devices, and on some systems **tcltk** cannot be reloaded once it has been unloaded and may crash if this is attempted.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`attach`, `library`, `search`, `objects`, `unloadNamespace`, `library.dynam.unload` .

Examples

```
require(splines) # package
detach(package:splines)
## or also
library(splines)
pkg <- "package:splines"

detach(pkg, character.only = TRUE)

## careful: do not do this unless splines is not already attached.
library(splines)
detach(2) # pos used for name

## an example of the name argument to attach
## and of detaching a database named by a character vector
attach_and_detach <- function(db, pos = 2)
{
   name <- deparse(substitute(db))
   attach(db, pos = pos, name = name)
   print(search()[pos])
   detach(name, character.only = TRUE)
}
attach_and_detach(women, pos = 3)
```

`diag` *Matrix Diagonals*

Description

Extract or replace the diagonal of a matrix, or construct a diagonal matrix.

Usage

```
diag(x = 1, nrow, ncol)
diag(x) <- value
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix, vector or 1D array, or missing.
`nrow, ncol`	Optional dimensions for the result when `x` is not a matrix.
`value`	either a single value or a vector of length equal to that of the current diagonal. Should be of a mode which can be coerced to that of `x`.

Details

`diag` has four distinct usages:

1. `x` is a matrix, when it extracts the diagonal.
2. `x` is missing and `nrow` is specified, it returns an identity matrix.
3. `x` is a scalar (length-one vector) and the only argument, it returns a square identity matrix of size given by the scalar.
4. `x` is a numeric vector, either of length at least 2 or there were further arguments. This returns a matrix with the given diagonal and zero off-diagonal entries.

It is an error to specify `nrow` or `ncol` in the first case.

Value

If `x` is a matrix then `diag(x)` returns the diagonal of `x`. The resulting vector will have `names` if the matrix `x` has matching column and rownames.

The replacement form sets the diagonal of the matrix `x` to the given value(s).

In all other cases the value is a diagonal matrix with `nrow` rows and `ncol` columns (if `ncol` is not given the matrix is square). Here `nrow` is taken from the argument if specified, otherwise inferred from `x`: if that is a vector (or 1D array) of length two or more, then its length is the number of rows, but if it is of length one and neither `nrow` nor `ncol` is specified, `nrow = as.integer(x)`.

When a diagonal matrix is returned, the diagonal elements are one except in the fourth case, when `x` gives the diagonal elements: it will be recycled or truncated as needed, but fractional recycling and truncation will give a warning.

Note

Using `diag(x)` can have unexpected effects if `x` is a vector that could be of length one. Use `diag(x, nrow = length(x))` for consistent behaviour.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

upper.tri, lower.tri, matrix.

Examples

```
require(stats)
dim(diag(3))
diag(10, 3, 4) # guess what?
all(diag(1:3) == {m <- matrix(0,3,3); diag(m) <- 1:3; m})

diag(var(M <- cbind(X = 1:5, Y = stats::rnorm(5))))
#-> vector with names "X" and "Y"

rownames(M) <- c(colnames(M), rep("", 3));
M; diag(M) #  named as well
```

---

diff *Lagged Differences*

Description

Returns suitably lagged and iterated differences.

Usage

```
diff(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
diff(x, lag = 1, differences = 1, ...)

## S3 method for class POSIXt
diff(x, lag = 1, differences = 1, ...)

## S3 method for class Date
diff(x, lag = 1, differences = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector or matrix containing the values to be differenced.
lag	an integer indicating which lag to use.
differences	an integer indicating the order of the difference.
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

diff is a generic function with a default method and ones for classes "ts", "POSIXt" and "Date".

NA's propagate.

Value

If x is a vector of length n and `differences = 1`, then the computed result is equal to the successive differences `x[(1+lag):n] - x[1:(n-lag)]`.

If `difference` is larger than one this algorithm is applied recursively to `x`. Note that the returned value is a vector which is shorter than `x`.

If `x` is a matrix then the difference operations are carried out on each column separately.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`diff.ts`, `diffinv`.

Examples

```
diff(1:10, 2)
diff(1:10, 2, 2)
x <- cumsum(cumsum(1:10))
diff(x, lag = 2)
diff(x, differences = 2)

diff(.leap.seconds)
```

`difftime` *Time Intervals*

Description

Time intervals creation, printing, and some arithmetic.

Usage

```
time1 - time2

difftime(time1, time2, tz,
         units = c("auto", "secs", "mins", "hours",
                   "days", "weeks"))

as.difftime(tim, format = "%X", units = "auto")

## S3 method for class difftime
format(x, ...)
## S3 method for class difftime
units(x)
## S3 replacement method for class difftime
units(x) <- value
## S3 method for class difftime
as.double(x, units = "auto", ...)
```

```
## Group methods, notably for round(), signif(), floor(),
## ceiling(), trunc(), abs(); called directly, *not* as Math():
## S3 method for class difftime
Math(x, ...)
```

Arguments

time1, time2	date-time or date objects.
tz	an optional time zone specification to be used for the conversion, mainly for "POSIXlt" objects.
units	character string. Units in which the results are desired. Can be abbreviated.
value	character string. Like units, except that abbreviations are not allowed.
tim	character string or numeric value specifying a time interval.
format	character specifying the format of tim: see strptime. The default is a locale-specific time format.
x	an object inheriting from class "difftime".
...	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

Function difftime calculates a difference of two date/time objects and returns an object of class "difftime" with an attribute indicating the units. The Math group method provides round, signif, floor, ceiling, trunc, abs, and sign methods for objects of this class, and there are methods for the group-generic (see Ops) logical and arithmetic operations.

If units = "auto", a suitable set of units is chosen, the largest possible (excluding "weeks") in which all the absolute differences are greater than one.

Subtraction of date-time objects gives an object of this class, by calling difftime with units = "auto". Alternatively, as.difftime() works on character-coded or numeric time intervals; in the latter case, units must be specified, and format has no effect.

Limited arithmetic is available on "difftime" objects: they can be added or subtracted, and multiplied or divided by a numeric vector. In addition, adding or subtracting a numeric vector by a "difftime" object implicitly converts the numeric vector to a "difftime" object with the same units as the "difftime" object. There are methods for mean and sum (via the Summary group generic).

The units of a "difftime" object can be extracted by the units function, which also has a replacement form. If the units are changed, the numerical value is scaled accordingly. The replacement version keeps attributes such as names and dimensions.

Note that units = "days" means a period of 24 hours, hence takes no account of Daylight Savings Time. Differences in objects of class "Date" are computed as if in the UTC time zone.

The as.double method returns the numeric value expressed in the specified units. Using units = "auto" means the units of the object.

The format method simply formats the numeric value and appends the units as a text string.

Note

Units such as "months" are not possible as they are not of constant length. To create intervals of months, quarters or years use seq.Date or seq.POSIXt.

See Also

DateTimeClasses.

Examples

```
(z <- Sys.time() - 3600)
Sys.time() - z                # just over 3600 seconds.

## time interval between release days of R 1.2.2 and 1.2.3.
ISOdate(2001, 4, 26) - ISOdate(2001, 2, 26)

as.difftime(c("0:3:20", "11:23:15"))
as.difftime(c("3:20", "23:15", "2:"), format = "%H:%M") # 3rd gives NA
(z <- as.difftime(c(0,30,60), units = "mins"))
as.numeric(z, units = "secs")
as.numeric(z, units = "hours")
format(z)
```

---

dim *Dimensions of an Object*

Description

Retrieve or set the dimension of an object.

Usage

```
dim(x)
dim(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	an object, for example a matrix, array or data frame.
value	For the default method, either NULL or a numeric vector, which is coerced to integer (by truncation).

Details

The functions dim and dim<- are internal generic primitive functions.

dim has a method for data.frames, which returns the lengths of the row.names attribute of x and of x (as the numbers of rows and columns respectively).

Value

For an array (and hence in particular, for a matrix) dim retrieves the dim attribute of the object. It is NULL or a vector of mode integer.

The replacement method changes the "dim" attribute (provided the new value is compatible) and removes any "dimnames" *and* "names" attributes.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

ncol, nrow and dimnames.

Examples

```
x <- 1:12 ; dim(x) <- c(3,4)
x

# simple versions of nrow and ncol could be defined as follows
nrow0 <- function(x) dim(x)[1]
ncol0 <- function(x) dim(x)[2]
```

---

dimnames *Dimnames of an Object*

Description

Retrieve or set the dimnames of an object.

Usage

```
dimnames(x)
dimnames(x) <- value

provideDimnames(x, sep = "", base = list(LETTERS))
```

Arguments

x	an object, for example a matrix, array or data frame.
value	a possible value for dimnames(x): see the 'Value' section.
sep	a character string, used to separate base symbols and digits in the constructed dimnames.
base	a non-empty list of character vectors. The list components are used in turn (and recycled when needed) to construct replacements for empty dimnames components. See also the examples.

Details

The functions dimnames and dimnames<- are generic.

For an array (and hence in particular, for a matrix), they retrieve or set the dimnames attribute (see attributes) of the object. A list value can have names, and these will be used to label the dimensions of the array where appropriate.

The replacement method for arrays/matrices coerces vector and factor elements of value to character, but does not dispatch methods for as.character. It coerces zero-length elements to NULL, and

a zero-length list to NULL. If value is a list shorter than the number of dimensions, it is extended with NULLs to the needed length.

Both have methods for data frames. The dimnames of a data frame are its row.names and its names. For the replacement method each component of value will be coerced by as.character.

For a 1D matrix the names are the same thing as the (only) component of the dimnames.

Both are primitive functions.

provideDimnames(x) provides dimnames where "missing", such that its result has character dimnames for each component.

Value

The dimnames of a matrix or array can be NULL (which is not stored) or a list of the same length as dim(x). If a list, its components are either NULL or a character vector with positive length of the appropriate dimension of x. The list can have names. It is possible that all components are NULL: such dimnames may get converted to NULL.

For the "data.frame" method both dimnames are character vectors, and the rownames must contain no duplicates nor missing values.

provideDimnames(x) returns x, with "NULL - free" dimnames, i.e. each component a character vector of correct length.

Note

Setting components of the dimnames, e.g., dimnames(A)[[1]] <- value is a common paradigm, but note that it will not work if the value assigned is NULL. Use rownames instead, or (as it does) manipulate the whole dimnames list.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

rownames, colnames; array, matrix, data.frame.

Examples

```
## simple versions of rownames and colnames
## could be defined as follows
rownames0 <- function(x) dimnames(x)[[1]]
colnames0 <- function(x) dimnames(x)[[2]]

(dn <- dimnames(A <- provideDimnames(N <- array(1:24, dim = 2:4))))
A0 <- A; dimnames(A)[2:3] <- list(NULL)
stopifnot(identical(A0, provideDimnames(A)))
strd <- function(x) utils::str(dimnames(x))
strd(provideDimnames(A, base= list(letters[-(1:9)], tail(LETTERS))))
strd(provideDimnames(N, base= list(letters[-(1:9)], tail(LETTERS)))) # recycling
strd(provideDimnames(A, base= list(c("AA","BB")))) # recycling on both levels
```

`do.call` *Execute a Function Call*

Description

`do.call` constructs and executes a function call from a name or a function and a list of arguments to be passed to it.

Usage

```
do.call(what, args, quote = FALSE, envir = parent.frame())
```

Arguments

`what`	either a function or a non-empty character string naming the function to be called.
`args`	a *list* of arguments to the function call. The `names` attribute of `args` gives the argument names.
`quote`	a logical value indicating whether to quote the arguments.
`envir`	an environment within which to evaluate the call. This will be most useful if `what` is a character string and the arguments are symbols or quoted expressions.

Details

If `quote` is `FALSE`, the default, then the arguments are evaluated (in the calling environment, not in `envir`). If `quote` is `TRUE` then each argument is quoted (see `quote`) so that the effect of argument evaluation is to remove the quotes – leaving the original arguments unevaluated when the call is constructed.

The behavior of some functions, such as `substitute`, will not be the same for functions evaluated using `do.call` as if they were evaluated from the interpreter. The precise semantics are currently undefined and subject to change.

Value

The result of the (evaluated) function call.

Warning

This should not be used to attempt to evade restrictions on the use of `.Internal` and other non-API calls.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`call` which creates an unevaluated call.

Examples

```
do.call("complex", list(imag = 1:3))

## if we already have a list (e.g., a data frame)
## we need c() to add further arguments
tmp <- expand.grid(letters[1:2], 1:3, c("+", "-"))
do.call("paste", c(tmp, sep = ""))

do.call(paste, list(as.name("A"), as.name("B")), quote = TRUE)

## examples of where objects will be found.
A <- 2
f <- function(x) print(x^2)
env <- new.env()
assign("A", 10, envir = env)
assign("f", f, envir = env)
f <- function(x) print(x)
f(A)                                    # 2
do.call("f", list(A))                   # 2
do.call("f", list(A), envir = env)      # 4
do.call(f, list(A), envir = env)        # 2
do.call("f", list(quote(A)), envir = env) # 100
do.call(f, list(quote(A)), envir = env)   # 10
do.call("f", list(as.name("A")), envir = env) # 100

eval(call("f", A))                     # 2
eval(call("f", quote(A)))              # 2
eval(call("f", A), envir = env)        # 4
eval(call("f", quote(A)), envir = env)  # 100
```

---

dontCheck *Identity Function to Suppress Checking*

Description

The dontCheck function is the same as identity, but is interpreted by R CMD check code analysis as a directive to suppress checking of x. Currently this is only used by checkFF(registration = TRUE) when checking the .NAME argument of foreign function calls.

Usage

```
dontCheck(x)
```

Arguments

x	an object.

See Also

suppressForeignCheck which explains why that and dontCheck are undesirable and should be avoided if at all possible.

double *Double-Precision Vectors*

Description

Create, coerce to or test for a double-precision vector.

Usage

```
double(length = 0)
as.double(x, ...)
is.double(x)

single(length = 0)
as.single(x, ...)
```

Arguments

length	A non-negative integer specifying the desired length. Double values will be coerced to integer: supplying an argument of length other than one is an error.
x	object to be coerced or tested.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

double creates a double-precision vector of the specified length. The elements of the vector are all equal to 0. It is identical to numeric.

as.double is a generic function. It is identical to as.numeric. Methods should return an object of base type "double".

is.double is a test of double type.

has no single precision data type. All real numbers are stored in double precision format. The functions as.single and single are identical to as.double and double except they set the attribute Csingle that is used in the .C and .Fortran interface, and they are intended only to be used in that context.

Value

double creates a double-precision vector of the specified length. The elements of the vector are all equal to 0.

as.double attempts to coerce its argument to be of double type: like as.vector it strips attributes including names. (To ensure that an object is of double type without stripping attributes, use storage.mode.) Character strings containing optional whitespace followed by either a decimal representation or a hexadecimal representation (starting with 0x or 0X) can be converted, as can special values such as "NA", "NaN", "Inf" and "infinity", irrespective of case.

as.double for factors yields the codes underlying the factor levels, not the numeric representation of the labels, see also factor.

is.double returns TRUE or FALSE depending on whether its argument is of double type or not.

Double-precision values

All platforms are required to work with values conforming to the IEC 60559 (also known as IEEE 754) standard. This basically works with a precision of 53 bits, and represents to that precision a range of absolute values from about 2×10^{-308} to 2×10^{308}. It also has special values NaN (many of them), plus and minus infinity and plus and minus zero (although acts as if these are the same). There are also *denormal(ized)* (or *subnormal*) numbers with absolute values above or below the range given above but represented to less precision.

See .Machine for precise information on these limits. Note that ultimately how double precision numbers are handled is down to the CPU/FPU and compiler.

In IEEE 754-2008/IEC60559:2011 this is called 'binary64' format.

Note on names

It is a historical anomaly that has two names for its floating-point vectors, double and numeric (and formerly had real).

double is the name of the type. numeric is the name of the mode and also of the implicit class. As an S4 formal class, use "numeric".

The potential confusion is that has used *mode* "numeric" to mean 'double or integer', which conflicts with the S4 usage. Thus is.numeric tests the mode, not the class, but as.numeric (which is identical to as.double) coerces to the class.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE_754-1985, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE_754-2008, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Double_precision, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Denormal_number.

http://grouper.ieee.org/groups/754/ for links to information on the standards.

See Also

integer, numeric, storage.mode.

Examples

```
is.double(1)
all(double(3) == 0)
```

---

dput *Write an Object to a File or Recreate it*

Description

Writes an ASCII text representation of an object to a file or connection, or uses one to recreate the object.

Usage

```
dput(x, file = "",
     control = c("keepNA", "keepInteger", "showAttributes"))

dget(file)
```

Arguments

x	an object.
file	either a character string naming a file or a connection. "" indicates output to the console.
control	character vector indicating deparsing options. See .deparseOpts for their description.

Details

dput opens file and deparses the object x into that file. The object name is not written (unlike dump). If x is a function the associated environment is stripped. Hence scoping information can be lost.

Deparsing an object is difficult, and not always possible. With the default control, dput() attempts to deparse in a way that is readable, but for more complex or unusual objects (see dump, not likely to be parsed as identical to the original. Use control = "all" for the most complete deparsing; use control = NULL for the simplest deparsing, not even including attributes.

dput will warn if fewer characters were written to a file than expected, which may indicate a full or corrupt file system.

To display saved source rather than deparsing the internal representation include "useSource" in control. currently saves source only for function definitions. If you do not care about source representation (e.g., for a data object), for speed set options(keep.source = FALSE) when calling source.

Value

For dput, the first argument invisibly.

For dget, the object created.

Note

This is **not** a good way to transfer objects between sessions. dump is better, but the function save is designed to be used for transporting data, and will work with objects that dput does not handle correctly as well as being much faster.

To avoid the risk of a source attribute out of sync with the actual function definition, the source attribute of a function will never be written as an attribute.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

deparse, dump, write.

Examples

```
## Write an ASCII version of mean to the file "foo"
dput(mean, "foo")
## And read it back into bar
bar <- dget("foo")
unlink("foo")
## Create a function with comments
baz <- function(x) {
  # Subtract from one
  1-x
}
## and display it
dput(baz)
## and now display the saved source
dput(baz, control = "useSource")
```

---

drop *Drop Redundant Extent Information*

Description

Delete the dimensions of an array which have only one level.

Usage

```
drop(x)
```

Arguments

x	an array (including a matrix).

Value

If `x` is an object with a `dim` attribute (e.g., a matrix or `array`), then `drop` returns an object like `x`, but with any extents of length one removed. Any accompanying `dimnames` attribute is adjusted and returned with `x`: if the result is a vector the `names` are taken from the `dimnames` (if any). If the result is a length-one vector, the names are taken from the first dimension with a dimname.

Array subsetting (`[`) performs this reduction unless used with `drop = FALSE`, but sometimes it is useful to invoke `drop` directly.

See Also

`drop1` which is used for dropping terms in models.

Examples

```
dim(drop(array(1:12, dim = c(1,3,1,1,2,1,2)))) # = 3 2 2
drop(1:3 %*% 2:4)  # scalar product
```

droplevels *droplevels*

Description

The function droplevels is used to drop unused levels from a factor or, more commonly, from factors in a data frame.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class factor
droplevels(x, ...)
## S3 method for class data.frame
droplevels(x, except, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object from which to drop unused factor levels.
...	further arguments passed to methods
except	indices of columns from which *not* to drop levels

Details

The method for class "factor" is essentially equivalent to factor(x).

The except argument follow the usual indexing rules.

Value

droplevels returns an object of the same class as x

Note

This function was introduced in R 2.12.0. It is primarily intended for cases where one or more factors in a data frame contains only elements from a reduced level set after subsetting. (Notice that subsetting does *not* in general drop unused levels). By default, levels are dropped from all factors in a data frame, but the except argument allows you to specify columns for which this is not wanted.

See Also

subset for subsetting data frames. factor for definition of factors. drop for dropping array dimensions. drop1 for dropping terms from a model. [.factor for subsetting of factors.

Examples

```
aq <- transform(airquality, Month = factor(Month, labels = month.abb[5:9]))
aq <- subset(aq, Month != "Jul")
table(aq$Month)
table(droplevels(aq)$Month)
```

dump *Text Representations of R Objects*

Description

This function takes a vector of names of objects and produces text representations of the objects on a file or connection. A dump file can usually be sourced into another (or S) session.

Usage

```
dump(list, file = "dumpdata.R", append = FALSE,
     control = "all", envir = parent.frame(), evaluate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

list	character. The names of one or more objects to be dumped.
file	either a character string naming a file or a connection. "" indicates output to the console.
append	if TRUE and file is a character string, output will be appended to file; otherwise, it will overwrite the contents of file.
control	character vector indicating deparsing options. See .deparseOpts for their description.
envir	the environment to search for objects.
evaluate	logical. Should promises be evaluated?

Details

If some of the objects named do not exist (in scope), they are omitted, with a warning. If file is a file and no objects exist then no file is created.

sourceing may not produce an identical copy of dumped objects. A warning is issued if it is likely that problems will arise, for example when dumping exotic or complex objects (see the Note).

dump will also warn if fewer characters were written to a file than expected, which may indicate a full or corrupt file system.

A dump file can be sourced into another (or perhaps S) session, but the function save is designed to be used for transporting data, and will work with objects that dump does not handle.

To produce a more readable representation of an object, use control = NULL. This will skip attributes, and will make other simplifications that make source less likely to produce an identical copy. See deparse for details.

To deparse the internal representation of a function rather than displaying the saved source, use control = c("keepInteger", "warnIncomplete", "keepNA"). This will lose all formatting and comments, but may be useful in those cases where the saved source is no longer correct.

Promises will normally only be encountered by users as a result of lazy-loading (when the default evaluate = TRUE is essential) and after the use of delayedAssign, when evaluate = FALSE might be intended.

Value

An invisible character vector containing the names of the objects which were dumped.

Note

As dump is defined in the base namespace, the **base** package will be searched *before* the global environment unless dump is called from the top level prompt or the envir argument is given explicitly.

To avoid the risk of a source attribute becoming out of sync with the actual function definition, the source attribute of a function will never be dumped as an attribute.

Currently environments, external pointers, weak references and objects of type S4 are not deparsed in a way that can be sourced. In addition, language objects are deparsed in a simple way whatever the value of control, and this includes not dumping their attributes (which will result in a warning).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

dput, dget, write.
save for a more reliable way to save objects.

Examples

```
x <- 1; y <- 1:10
dump(ls(pattern = ^[xyz]), "xyz.Rdmped")
print(.Last.value)
unlink("xyz.Rdmped")
```

---

duplicated *Determine Duplicate Elements*

Description

duplicated() determines which elements of a vector or data frame are duplicates of elements with smaller subscripts, and returns a logical vector indicating which elements (rows) are duplicates.

anyDuplicated(.) is a "generalized" more efficient shortcut for any(duplicated(.)).

Usage

```
duplicated(x, incomparables = FALSE, ...)

## Default S3 method:
duplicated(x, incomparables = FALSE,
           fromLast = FALSE, nmax = NA, ...)

## S3 method for class array
duplicated(x, incomparables = FALSE, MARGIN = 1,
           fromLast = FALSE, ...)

anyDuplicated(x, incomparables = FALSE, ...)
## Default S3 method:
anyDuplicated(x, incomparables = FALSE,
```

```
           fromLast = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class array
anyDuplicated(x, incomparables = FALSE,
           MARGIN = 1, fromLast = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a vector or a data frame or an array or NULL.
incomparables	a vector of values that cannot be compared. FALSE is a special value, meaning that all values can be compared, and may be the only value accepted for methods other than the default. It will be coerced internally to the same type as x.
fromLast	logical indicating if duplication should be considered from the reverse side, i.e., the last (or rightmost) of identical elements would correspond to duplicated = FALSE.
nmax	the maximum number of unique items expected (greater than one).
...	arguments for particular methods.
MARGIN	the array margin to be held fixed: see apply, and note that MARGIN = 0 maybe useful.

Details

These are generic functions with methods for vectors (including lists), data frames and arrays (including matrices).

For the default methods, and whenever there are equivalent method definitions for duplicated and anyDuplicated, anyDuplicated(x, ...) is a "generalized" shortcut for any(duplicated(x, ...)), in the sense that it returns the *index* i of the first duplicated entry x[i] if there is one, and 0 otherwise. Their behaviours may be different when at least one of duplicated and anyDuplicated has a relevant method.

duplicated(x, fromLast = TRUE) is equivalent to but faster than rev(duplicated(rev(x))).

The data frame method works by pasting together a character representation of the rows separated by \r, so may be imperfect if the data frame has characters with embedded carriage returns or columns which do not reliably map to characters.

The array method calculates for each element of the sub-array specified by MARGIN if the remaining dimensions are identical to those for an earlier (or later, when fromLast = TRUE) element (in row-major order). This would most commonly be used to find duplicated rows (the default) or columns (with MARGIN = 2). Note that MARGIN = 0 returns an array of the same dimensionality attributes as x.

Missing values are regarded as equal, but NaN is not equal to NA_real_.

Values in incomparables will never be marked as duplicated. This is intended to be used for a fairly small set of values and will not be efficient for a very large set.

When used on a data frame with more than one column, or an array or matrix when comparing dimensions of length greater than one, this tests for identity of character representations. This will catch people who unwisely rely on exact equality of floating-point numbers!

Character strings will be compared as byte sequences if any input is marked as "bytes" (see Encoding).

Except for factors, logical and raw vectors the default nmax = NA is equivalent to nmax = length(x). Since a hash table of size 8*nmax bytes is allocated, setting nmax suitably can save large amounts of memory. For factors it is automatically set to the smaller of length(x)

and the number of levels plus one (for NA). If nmax is set too small there is liable to be an error: nmax = 1 is silently ignored.

Long vectors are supported for the default method of duplicated, but may only be usable if nmax is supplied.

Value

duplicated(): For a vector input, a logical vector of the same length as x. For a data frame, a logical vector with one element for each row. For a matrix or array, and when MARGIN = 0, a logical array with the same dimensions and dimnames.

anyDuplicated(): an integer or real vector of length one with value the 1-based index of the first duplicate if any, otherwise 0.

Warning

Using this for lists is potentially slow, especially if the elements are not atomic vectors (see vector) or differ only in their attributes. In the worst case it is $O(n^2)$.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

unique.

Examples

```
x <- c(9:20, 1:5, 3:7, 0:8)
## extract unique elements
(xu <- x[!duplicated(x)])
## similar, same elements but different order:
(xu2 <- x[!duplicated(x, fromLast = TRUE)])

## xu == unique(x) but unique(x) is more efficient
stopifnot(identical(xu,  unique(x)),
          identical(xu2, unique(x, fromLast = TRUE)))

duplicated(iris)[140:143]

duplicated(iris3, MARGIN = c(1, 3))
anyDuplicated(iris) ## 143

anyDuplicated(x)
anyDuplicated(x, fromLast = TRUE)
```

dyn.load *Foreign Function Interface*

Description

Load or unload DLLs (also known as shared objects), and test whether a C function or Fortran subroutine is available.

Usage

```
dyn.load(x, local = TRUE, now = TRUE, ...)
dyn.unload(x)

is.loaded(symbol, PACKAGE = "", type = "")
```

Arguments

x	a character string giving the pathname to a DLL, also known as a dynamic shared object. (See 'Details' for what these terms mean.)
local	a logical value controlling whether the symbols in the DLL are stored in their own local table and not shared across DLLs, or added to the global symbol table. Whether this has any effect is system-dependent.
now	a logical controlling whether all symbols are resolved (and relocated) immediately the library is loaded or deferred until they are used. This control is useful for developers testing whether a library is complete and has all the necessary symbols, and for users to ignore missing symbols. Whether this has any effect is system-dependent.
...	other arguments for future expansion.
symbol	a character string giving a symbol name.
PACKAGE	if supplied, confine the search for the name to the DLL given by this argument (plus the conventional extension, '.so', '.sl', '.dll', ...). This is intended to add safety for packages, which can ensure by using this argument that no other package can override their external symbols. This is used in the same way as in .C, .Call, .Fortran and .External functions.
type	The type of symbol to look for: can be any ("", the default), "Fortran", "Call" or "External".

Details

The objects dyn.load loads are called 'dynamically loadable libraries' (abbreviated to 'DLL') on all platforms except OS X, which uses the term for a different sort of object. On Unix-alikes they are also called 'dynamic shared objects' ('DSO'), or 'shared objects' for short. (The POSIX standards use 'executable object file', but no one else does.)

See 'See Also' and the 'Writing R Extensions' and 'R Installation and Administration' manuals for how to create and install a suitable DLL.

Unfortunately a very few platforms (e.g., Compaq Tru64) do not handle the PACKAGE argument correctly, and may incorrectly find symbols linked into .

The additional arguments to dyn.load mirror the different aspects of the mode argument to the dlopen() routine on POSIX systems. They are available so that users can exercise greater control

over the loading process for an individual library. In general, the default values are appropriate and you should override them only if there is good reason and you understand the implications.

The `local` argument allows one to control whether the symbols in the DLL being attached are visible to other DLLs. While maintaining the symbols in their own namespace is good practice, the ability to share symbols across related 'chapters' is useful in many cases. Additionally, on certain platforms and versions of an operating system, certain libraries must have their symbols loaded globally to successfully resolve all symbols.

One should be careful of the potential side-effect of using lazy loading via the `now` argument as `FALSE`. If a routine is called that has a missing symbol, the process will terminate immediately. The intended use is for library developers to call with value `TRUE` to check that all symbols are actually resolved and for regular users to call with `FALSE` so that missing symbols can be ignored and the available ones can be called.

The initial motivation for adding these was to avoid such termination in the `_init()` routines of the Java virtual machine library. However, symbols loaded locally may not be (read probably) available to other DLLs. Those added to the global table are available to all other elements of the application and so can be shared across two different DLLs.

Some (very old) systems do not provide (explicit) support for local/global and lazy/eager symbol resolution. This can be the source of subtle bugs. One can arrange to have warning messages emitted when unsupported options are used. This is done by setting either of the options `verbose` or `warn` to be non-zero via the `options` function.

There is a short discussion of these additional arguments with some example code available at `http://cm.bell-labs.com/stat/duncan/R/dynload`.

Value

The function `dyn.load` is used for its side effect which links the specified DLL to the executing image. Calls to `.C`, `.Call`, `.Fortran` and `.External` can then be used to execute compiled C functions or Fortran subroutines contained in the library. The return value of `dyn.load` is an object of class `DLLInfo`. See `getLoadedDLLs` for information about this class.

The function `dyn.unload` unlinks the DLL. Note that unloading a DLL and then re-loading a DLL of the same name may or may not work: on Solaris it uses the first version loaded.

`is.loaded` checks if the symbol name is loaded *and searchable* and hence available for use as a character string value for argument `.NAME` in `.C` or `.Fortran` or `.Call` or `.External`. It will succeed if any one of the four calling functions would succeed in using the entry point unless `type` is specified. (See `.Fortran` for how Fortran symbols are mapped.) Note that symbols in base packages are not searchable, and other packages can be so marked.

Warning

Do not use `dyn.unload` on a DLL loaded by `library.dynam`: use `library.dynam.unload`. This is needed for system housekeeping.

Note

`is.loaded` requires the name you would give to `.C` etc and **not** (as in S) that remapped by the defunct functions `symbol.C` or `symbol.For`.

The creation of DLLs and the runtime linking of them into executing programs is very platform dependent. In recent years there has been some simplification in the process because the C subroutine call `dlopen` has become the POSIX standard for doing this. Under Unix-alikes `dyn.load` uses the `dlopen` mechanism and should work on all platforms which support it. On Windows it uses the standard mechanism (`LoadLibrary`) for loading DLLs.

The original code for loading DLLs in Unix-alikes was provided by Heiner Schwarte.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`library.dynam` to be used inside a package's `.onLoad` initialization.

`SHLIB` for how to create suitable DLLs.

`.C`, `.Fortran`, `.External`, `.Call`.

Examples

```
## expect all of these to be false in R >= 3.0.0.
is.loaded("supsmu") # Fortran entry point in stats
is.loaded("supsmu", "stats", "Fortran")
is.loaded("PDF", type = "External") # pdf() device in grDevices
```

---

eapply *Apply a Function Over Values in an Environment*

Description

`eapply` applies `FUN` to the named values from an `environment` and returns the results as a list. The user can request that all named objects are used (normally names that begin with a dot are not). The output is not sorted and no enclosing environments are searched.

This is a primitive function.

Usage

```
eapply(env, FUN, ..., all.names = FALSE, USE.NAMES = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`env`	environment to be used.
`FUN`	the function to be applied, found *via* `match.fun`. In the case of functions like `+`, `%*%`, etc., the function name must be backquoted or quoted.
`...`	optional arguments to `FUN`.
`all.names`	a logical indicating whether to apply the function to all values.
`USE.NAMES`	logical indicating whether the resulting list should have `names`.

Value

A named (unless `USE.NAMES = FALSE`) list. Note that the order of the components is arbitrary for hashed environments.

See Also

`environment`, `lapply`.

Examples

```
require(stats)

env <- new.env(hash = FALSE) # so the order is fixed
env$a <- 1:10
env$beta <- exp(-3:3)
env$logic <- c(TRUE, FALSE, FALSE, TRUE)
# what have we there?
utils::ls.str(env)

# compute the mean for each list element
       eapply(env, mean)
unlist(eapply(env, mean, USE.NAMES = FALSE))

# median and quartiles for each element (making use of "..." passing):
eapply(env, quantile, probs = 1:3/4)
eapply(env, quantile)
```

---

eigen *Spectral Decomposition of a Matrix*

Description

Computes eigenvalues and eigenvectors of numeric (double, integer, logical) or complex matrices.

Usage

```
eigen(x, symmetric, only.values = FALSE, EISPACK = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric or complex matrix whose spectral decomposition is to be computed. Logical matrices are coerced to numeric.
symmetric	if TRUE, the matrix is assumed to be symmetric (or Hermitian if complex) and only its lower triangle (diagonal included) is used. If symmetric is not specified, the matrix is inspected for symmetry.
only.values	if TRUE, only the eigenvalues are computed and returned, otherwise both eigenvalues and eigenvectors are returned.
EISPACK	logical. Defunct and ignored.

Details

If symmetric is unspecified, the code attempts to determine if the matrix is symmetric up to plausible numerical inaccuracies. It is faster and surer to set the value yourself.

Computing the eigenvectors is the slow part for large matrices.

Computing the eigendecomposition of a matrix is subject to errors on a real-world computer: the definitive analysis is Wilkinson (1965). All you can hope for is a solution to a problem suitably close to x. So even though a real asymmetric x may have an algebraic solution with repeated real eigenvalues, the computed solution may be of a similar matrix with complex conjugate pairs of eigenvalues.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code (most often 1): these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code.

Value

The spectral decomposition of `x` is returned as components of a list with components

`values` a vector containing the p eigenvalues of `x`, sorted in *decreasing* order, according to `Mod(values)` in the asymmetric case when they might be complex (even for real matrices). For real asymmetric matrices the vector will be complex only if complex conjugate pairs of eigenvalues are detected.

`vectors` either a $p \times p$ matrix whose columns contain the eigenvectors of `x`, or `NULL` if `only.values` is `TRUE`. The vectors are normalized to unit length.

Recall that the eigenvectors are only defined up to a constant: even when the length is specified they are still only defined up to a scalar of modulus one (the sign for real matrices).

If `r <- eigen(A)`, and `V <- r$vectors; lam <- r$values`, then

$$A = V \Lambda V^{-1}$$

(up to numerical fuzz), where Λ =`diag(lam)`.

Source

`eigen` uses the LAPACK routines `DSYEVR`, `DGEEV`, `ZHEEV` and `ZGEEV`.

LAPACK is from http://www.netlib.org/lapack and its guide is listed in the references.

References

Anderson. E. and ten others (1999) *LAPACK Users' Guide*. Third Edition. SIAM.
Available on-line at http://www.netlib.org/lapack/lug/lapack_lug.html.

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. Springer-Verlag Lecture Notes in Computer Science **6**.

Wilkinson, J. H. (1965) *The Algebraic Eigenvalue Problem.* Clarendon Press, Oxford.

See Also

`svd`, a generalization of `eigen`; `qr`, and `chol` for related decompositions.

To compute the determinant of a matrix, the `qr` decomposition is much more efficient: `det`.

Examples

```
eigen(cbind(c(1,-1), c(-1,1)))
eigen(cbind(c(1,-1), c(-1,1)), symmetric = FALSE)
# same (different algorithm).

eigen(cbind(1, c(1,-1)), only.values = TRUE)
eigen(cbind(-1, 2:1)) # complex values
eigen(print(cbind(c(0, 1i), c(-1i, 0)))) # Hermite ==> real Eigenvalues
## 3 x 3:
eigen(cbind( 1, 3:1, 1:3))
eigen(cbind(-1, c(1:2,0), 0:2)) # complex values
```

encodeString *Encode Character Vector as for Printing*

Description

encodeString escapes the strings in a character vector in the same way print.default does, and optionally fits the encoded strings within a field width.

Usage

```
encodeString(x, width = 0, quote = "", na.encode = TRUE,
             justify = c("left", "right", "centre", "none"))
```

Arguments

x	A character vector, or an object that can be coerced to one by as.character.
width	integer: the minimum field width. If NULL or NA, this is taken to be the largest field width needed for any element of x.
quote	character: quoting character, if any.
na.encode	logical: should NA strings be encoded?
justify	character: partial matches are allowed. If padding to the minimum field width is needed, how should spaces be inserted? justify == "none" is equivalent to width = 0, for consistency with format.default.

Details

This escapes backslash and the control characters '\a' (bell), '\b' (backspace), '\f' (formfeed), '\n' (line feed), '\r' (carriage return), '\t' (tab) and '\v' (vertical tab) as well as any non-printable characters in a single-byte locale, which are printed in octal notation ('\xyz' with leading zeroes).

Which characters are non-printable depends on the current locale. Windows' reporting of printable characters is unreliable, so there all other control characters are regarded as non-printable, and all characters with codes 32–255 as printable in a single-byte locale. See print.default for how non-printable characters are handled in multi-byte locales.

If quote is a single or double quote any embedded quote of the same type is escaped. Note that justification is of the quoted string, hence spaces are added outside the quotes.

Value

A character vector of the same length as x, with the same attributes (including names and dimensions) but with no class set.

As from 3.0.0, marked UTF-8 encodings are preserved.

Note

The default for width is different from format.default, which does similar things for character vectors but without encoding using escapes.

See Also

print.default

Examples

```
x <- "ab\bc\ndef"
print(x)
cat(x) # interprets escapes
cat(encodeString(x), "\n", sep = "") # similar to print()

factor(x) # makes use of this to print the levels

x <- c("a", "ab", "abcde")
encodeString(x, width = NA) # left justification
encodeString(x, width = NA, justify = "c")
encodeString(x, width = NA, justify = "r")
encodeString(x, width = NA, quote = "", justify = "r")
```

Encoding *Read or Set the Declared Encodings for a Character Vector*

Description

Read or set the declared encodings for a character vector.

Usage

```
Encoding(x)

Encoding(x) <- value

enc2native(x)
enc2utf8(x)
```

Arguments

x	A character vector.
value	A character vector of positive length.

Details

Character strings in can be declared to be encoded in "latin1" or "UTF-8" or as "bytes". These declarations can be read by Encoding, which will return a character vector of values "latin1", "UTF-8" "bytes" or "unknown", or set, when value is recycled as needed and other values are silently treated as "unknown". ASCII strings will never be marked with a declared encoding, since their representation is the same in all supported encodings. Strings marked as "bytes" are intended to be non-ASCII strings which should be manipulated as bytes, and never converted to a character encoding.

enc2native and enc2utf8 convert elements of character vectors to the native encoding or UTF-8 respectively, taking any marked encoding into account. They are primitive functions, designed to do minimal copying.

There are other ways for character strings to acquire a declared encoding apart from explicitly setting it (and these have changed as has evolved). Functions scan, read.table, readLines, and parse have an encoding argument that is used to declare encodings, iconv declares encodings from its to argument, and console input in suitable locales is also declared. intToUtf8 declares

its output as "UTF-8", and output text connections (see textConnection) are marked if running in a suitable locale. Under some circumstances (see its help page) source(encoding=) will mark encodings of character strings it outputs.

Most character manipulation functions will set the encoding on output strings if it was declared on the corresponding input. These include chartr, strsplit(useBytes = FALSE), tolower and toupper as well as sub(useBytes = FALSE) and gsub(useBytes = FALSE). Note that such functions do not *preserve* the encoding, but if they know the input encoding and that the string has been successfully re-encoded (to the current encoding or UTF-8), they mark the output.

substr does preserve the encoding, and chartr, tolower and toupper preserve UTF-8 encoding on systems with Unicode wide characters. With their fixed and perl options, strsplit, sub and gsub will give a marked UTF-8 result if any of the inputs are UTF-8.

paste and sprintf return elements marked as bytes if any of the corresponding inputs is marked as bytes, and otherwise marked as UTF-8 of any of the inputs is marked as UTF-8.

match, pmatch, charmatch, duplicated and unique all match in UTF-8 if any of the elements are marked as UTF-8.

Value

A character vector.

For enc2utf8 encodings are always marked: they are for enc2native in UTF-8 and Latin-1 locales.

Examples

```
## x is intended to be in latin1
x <- "fa\xE7ile"
Encoding(x)
Encoding(x) <- "latin1"
x
xx <- iconv(x, "latin1", "UTF-8")
Encoding(c(x, xx))
c(x, xx)
Encoding(xx) <- "bytes"
xx # will be encoded in hex
cat("xx = ", xx, "\n", sep = "")
```

---

environment *Environment Access*

Description

Get, set, test for and create environments.

Usage

```
environment(fun = NULL)
environment(fun) <- value

is.environment(x)

.GlobalEnv
globalenv()
```

```
.BaseNamespaceEnv

emptyenv()
baseenv()

new.env(hash = TRUE, parent = parent.frame(), size = 29L)

parent.env(env)
parent.env(env) <- value

environmentName(env)

env.profile(env)
```

Arguments

fun	a function, a formula, or NULL, which is the default.
value	an environment to associate with the function
x	an arbitrary object.
hash	a logical, if TRUE the environment will use a hash table.
parent	an environment to be used as the enclosure of the environment created.
env	an environment
size	an integer specifying the initial size for a hashed environment. An internal default value will be used if size is NA or zero. This argument is ignored if hash is FALSE.

Details

Environments consist of a *frame*, or collection of named objects, and a pointer to an *enclosing environment*. The most common example is the frame of variables local to a function call; its *enclosure* is the environment where the function was defined (unless changed subsequently). The enclosing environment is distinguished from the *parent frame*: the latter (returned by parent.frame) refers to the environment of the caller of a function. Since confusion is so easy, it is best never to use 'parent' in connection with an environment (despite the presence of the function parent.env).

When get or exists search an environment with the default inherits = TRUE, they look for the variable in the frame, then in the enclosing frame, and so on.

The global environment .GlobalEnv, more often known as the user's workspace, is the first item on the search path. It can also be accessed by globalenv(). On the search path, each item's enclosure is the next item.

The object .BaseNamespaceEnv is the namespace environment for the base package. The environment of the base package itself is available as baseenv().

If one follows the chain of enclosures found by repeatedly calling parent.env from any environment, eventually one reaches the empty environment emptyenv(), into which nothing may be assigned.

The replacement function parent.env<- is extremely dangerous as it can be used to destructively change environments in ways that violate assumptions made by the internal C code. It may be removed in the near future.

The replacement form of environment, is.environment, baseenv, emptyenv and globalenv are primitive functions.

System environments, such as the base, global and empty environments, have names as do the package and namespace environments and those generated by `attach()`. Other environments can be named by giving a `"name"` attribute, but this needs to be done with care as environments have unusual copying semantics.

Value

If `fun` is a function or a formula then `environment(fun)` returns the environment associated with that function or formula. If `fun` is `NULL` then the current evaluation environment is returned.

The replacement form sets the environment of the function or formula `fun` to the `value` given.

`is.environment(obj)` returns `TRUE` if and only if `obj` is an `environment`.

`new.env` returns a new (empty) environment with (by default) enclosure the parent frame.

`parent.env` returns the enclosing environment of its argument.

`parent.env<-` sets the enclosing environment of its first argument.

`environmentName` returns a character string, that given when the environment is printed or `""` if it is not a named environment.

`env.profile` returns a list with the following components: `size` the number of chains that can be stored in the hash table, `nchains` the number of non-empty chains in the table (as reported by `HASHPRI`), and `counts` an integer vector giving the length of each chain (zero for empty chains). This function is intended to assess the performance of hashed environments. When `env` is a non-hashed environment, `NULL` is returned.

See Also

For the performance implications of hashing or not, see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hash_table.

The `envir` argument of `eval`, `get`, and `exists`.

`ls` may be used to view the objects in an environment, and hence `ls.str` may be useful for an overview.

`sys.source` can be used to populate an environment.

Examples

```
f <- function() "top level function"

##-- all three give the same:
environment()
environment(f)
.GlobalEnv

ls(envir = environment(stats::approxfun(1:2, 1:2, method = "const")))

is.environment(.GlobalEnv) # TRUE

e1 <- new.env(parent = baseenv())  # this one has enclosure package:base.
e2 <- new.env(parent = e1)
assign("a", 3, envir = e1)
ls(e1)
ls(e2)
exists("a", envir = e2)   # this succeeds by inheritance
exists("a", envir = e2, inherits = FALSE)
exists("+", envir = e2)   # this succeeds by inheritance
```

```
eh <- new.env(hash = TRUE, size = NA)
with(env.profile(eh), stopifnot(size == length(counts)))
```

EnvVar *Environment Variables*

Description

Details of some of the environment variables which affect an session.

Details

It is impossible to list all the environment variables which can affect an session: some affect the OS system functions which uses, and others will affect add-on packages. But here are notes on some of the more important ones. Those that set the defaults for options are consulted only at startup (as are some of the others).

HOME: The user's 'home' directory.

LANGUAGE: Optional. The language(s) to be used for message translations. This is consulted when needed.

LC_ALL: (etc) Optional. Use to set various aspects of the locale – see Sys.getlocale. Consulted at startup.

MAKEINDEX: The path to makeindex. If unset to a value determined when was built. Used by the emulation mode of texi2dvi and texi2pdf.

R_BATCH: Optional – set in a batch session, that is one started by R CMD BATCH. Most often set to "", so test by something like !is.na(Sys.getenv("R_BATCH", NA)).

R_BROWSER: The path to the default browser. Used to set the default value of options("browser").

R_COMPLETION: Optional. If set to FALSE, command-line completion is not used. (Not used by OS X GUI.)

R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES: A comma-separated list of packages which are to be attached in every session. See options.

R_DOC_DIR: The location of the 'doc' directory. Set by .

R_ENVIRON: Optional. The path to the site environment file: see Startup. Consulted at startup.

R_GSCMD: Optional. The path to Ghostscript, used by dev2bitmap, bitmap and embedFonts. Consulted when those functions are invoked. Since it will be treated as if passed to system, spaces and shell metacharacters should be escaped.

R_HISTFILE: Optional. The path of the history file: see Startup. Consulted at startup and when the history is saved.

R_HISTSIZE: Optional. The maximum size of the history file, in lines. Exactly how this is used depends on the interface. For the readline command-line interface it takes effect when the history is saved (by savehistory or at the end of a session).

R_HOME: The top-level directory of the installation: see R.home. Set by .

R_INCLUDE_DIR: The location of the 'include' directory. Set by .

R_LIBS: Optional. Used for initial setting of .libPaths.

R_LIBS_SITE: Optional. Used for initial setting of .libPaths.

`R_LIBS_USER`: Optional. Used for initial setting of `.libPaths`.

`R_PAPERSIZE`: Optional. Used to set the default for `options("papersize")`, e.g. used by `pdf` and `postscript`.

`R_PDFVIEWER`: The path to the default PDF viewer. Used by `R CMD Rd2pdf`.

`R_PLATFORM`: The platform – a string of the form *cpu-vendor-os*, see `R.Version`.

`R_PROFILE`: Optional. The path to the site profile file: see Startup. Consulted at startup.

`R_RD4PDF`: Options for `pdflatex` processing of `Rd` files. Used by `R CMD Rd2pdf`.

`R_SHARE_DIR`: The location of the 'share' directory. Set by .

`R_TEXI2DVICMD`: The path to `texi2dvi`. Defaults to the value of `TEXI2DVI`, and if that is unset to a value determined when was built. Consulted at startup to set the default for `options("texi2dvi")`, used by `texi2dvi` and `texi2pdf` in package **tools**.

`R_UNZIPCMD`: The path to `unzip`. Sets the initial value for `options("unzip")` on a Unix-alike when namespace **utils** is loaded.

`R_ZIPCMD`: The path to `zip`. Used by `zip` and by `R CMD INSTALL --build` on Windows.

`TMPDIR`, `TMP`, `TEMP`: Consulted (in that order) when setting the temporary directory for the session: see `tempdir`. `TMPDIR` is also used by some of the utilities see the help for `build`.

`TZ`: Optional. The current time zone. See `Sys.timezone` for the system-specific formats. Consulted as needed.

`no_proxy`, `http_proxy`, `ftp_proxy`: (and more). Optional. Settings for `download.file`: see its help for further details.

Unix-specific

Some variables set on Unix-alikes, and not (in general) on Windows.

`DISPLAY`: Optional: used by `X11`, Tk (in package **tcltk**), the data editor and various packages.

`EDITOR`: The path to the default editor: sets the default for `options("editor")` when namespace **utils** is loaded.

`PAGER`: The path to the pager with the default setting of `options("pager")`. The default value is chosen at configuration, usually as the path to `less`.

`R_PRINTCMD`: Sets the default for `options("printcmd")`, which sets the default print command to be used by `postscript`.

See Also

`Sys.getenv` and `Sys.setenv` to read and set environmental variables in an session.

`gctorture` for environment variables controlling garbage collection.

`eval` *Evaluate an (Unevaluated) Expression*

Description

Evaluate an expression in a specified environment.

Usage

```
eval(expr, envir = parent.frame(),
           enclos = if(is.list(envir) || is.pairlist(envir))
                       parent.frame() else baseenv())
evalq(expr, envir, enclos)
eval.parent(expr, n = 1)
local(expr, envir = new.env())
```

Arguments

`expr`	an object to be evaluated. See 'Details'.
`envir`	the `environment` in which `expr` is to be evaluated. May also be `NULL`, a list, a data frame, a pairlist or an integer as specified to `sys.call`.
`enclos`	Relevant when `envir` is a (pair)list or a data frame. Specifies the enclosure, i.e., where looks for objects not found in `envir`. This can be `NULL` (interpreted as the base package environment, `baseenv()`) or an environment.
`n`	number of parent generations to go back

Details

`eval` evaluates the `expr` argument in the environment specified by `envir` and returns the computed value. If `envir` is not specified, then the default is `parent.frame()` (the environment where the call to `eval` was made).

Objects to be evaluated can be of types `call` or `expression` or `name` (when the name is looked up in the current scope and its binding is evaluated), a promise or any of the basic types such as vectors, functions and environments (which are returned unchanged).

The `evalq` form is equivalent to `eval(quote(expr), ...)`. `eval` evaluates its first argument in the current scope before passing it to the evaluator: `evalq` avoids this.

`eval.parent(expr, n)` is a shorthand for `eval(expr, parent.frame(n))`.

If `envir` is a list (such as a data frame) or pairlist, it is copied into a temporary environment (with enclosure `enclos`), and the temporary environment is used for evaluation. So if `expr` changes any of the components named in the (pair)list, the changes are lost.

If `envir` is `NULL` it is interpreted as an empty list so no values could be found in `envir` and look-up goes directly to `enclos`.

`local` evaluates an expression in a local environment. It is equivalent to `evalq` except that its default argument creates a new, empty environment. This is useful to create anonymous recursive functions and as a kind of limited namespace feature since variables defined in the environment are not visible from the outside.

Value

The result of evaluating the object: for an expression vector this is the result of evaluating the last element.

Note

Due to the difference in scoping rules, there are some differences between and S in this area. In particular, the default enclosure in S is the global environment.

When evaluating expressions in a data frame that has been passed as an argument to a function, the relevant enclosure is often the caller's environment, i.e., one needs `eval(x, data, parent.frame())`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (`eval` only.)

See Also

`expression`, `quote`, `sys.frame`, `parent.frame`, `environment`.

Further, `force` to *force* evaluation, typically of function arguments.

Examples

```
eval(2 ^ 2 ^ 3)
mEx <- expression(2^2^3); mEx; 1 + eval(mEx)
eval({ xx <- pi; xx^2}) ; xx

a <- 3 ; aa <- 4 ; evalq(evalq(a+b+aa, list(a = 1)), list(b = 5)) # == 10
a <- 3 ; aa <- 4 ; evalq(evalq(a+b+aa, -1), list(b = 5))        # == 12

ev <- function() {
   e1 <- parent.frame()
   ## Evaluate a in e1
   aa <- eval(expression(a), e1)
   ## evaluate the expression bound to a in e1
   a <- expression(x+y)
   list(aa = aa, eval = eval(a, e1))
}
tst.ev <- function(a = 7) { x <- pi; y <- 1; ev() }
tst.ev()  #-> aa : 7,  eval : 4.14

a <- list(a = 3, b = 4)
with(a, a <- 5) # alters the copy of a from the list, discarded.

##
## Example of evalq()
##

N <- 3
env <- new.env()
assign("N", 27, envir = env)
## this version changes the visible copy of N only, since the argument
## passed to eval is 4.
eval(N <- 4, env)
```

```
N
get("N", envir = env)
## this version does the assignment in env, and changes N only there.
evalq(N <- 5, env)
N
get("N", envir = env)


##
## Uses of local()
##

# Mutually recursive.
# gg gets value of last assignment, an anonymous version of f.

gg <- local({
    k <- function(y)f(y)
    f <- function(x) if(x) x*k(x-1) else 1
})
gg(10)
sapply(1:5, gg)

# Nesting locals: a is private storage accessible to k
gg <- local({
    k <- local({
        a <- 1
        function(y){print(a <<- a+1);f(y)}
    })
    f <- function(x) if(x) x*k(x-1) else 1
})
sapply(1:5, gg)

ls(envir = environment(gg))
ls(envir = environment(get("k", envir = environment(gg))))
```

`exists` *Is an Object Defined?*

Description

Look for an object of the given name.

Usage

```
exists(x, where = -1, envir = , frame, mode = "any",
       inherits = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a variable name (given as a character string).
`where`	where to look for the object (see the details section); if omitted, the function will search as if the name of the object appeared unquoted in an expression.
`envir`	an alternative way to specify an environment to look in, but it is usually simpler to just use the `where` argument.

frame	a frame in the calling list. Equivalent to giving where as sys.frame(frame).
mode	the mode or type of object sought: see the 'Details' section.
inherits	should the enclosing frames of the environment be searched?

Details

The where argument can specify the environment in which to look for the object in any of several ways: as an integer (the position in the search list); as the character string name of an element in the search list; or as an environment (including using sys.frame to access the currently active function calls). The envir argument is an alternative way to specify an environment, but is primarily there for back compatibility.

This function looks to see if the name x has a value bound to it in the specified environment. If inherits is TRUE and a value is not found for x in the specified environment, the enclosing frames of the environment are searched until the name x is encountered. See environment and the 'R Language Definition' manual for details about the structure of environments and their enclosures.

Warning: inherits = TRUE is the default behaviour for but not for S.

If mode is specified then only objects of that type are sought. The mode may specify one of the collections "numeric" and "function" (see mode): any member of the collection will suffice. (This is true even if a member of a collection is specified, so for example mode = "special" will seek any type of function.)

Value

Logical, true if and only if an object of the correct name and mode is found.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

get. For quite a different kind of "existence" checking, namely if function arguments were specified, missing; and for yet a different kind, namely if a file exists, file.exists.

Examples

```
##  Define a substitute function if necessary:
if(!exists("some.fun", mode = "function"))
  some.fun <- function(x) { cat("some.fun(x)\n"); x }
search()
exists("ls", 2) # true even though ls is in pos = 3
exists("ls", 2, inherits = FALSE) # false
```

expand.grid *Create a Data Frame from All Combinations of Factors*

Description

Create a data frame from all combinations of the supplied vectors or factors. See the description of the return value for precise details of the way this is done.

Usage

```
expand.grid(..., KEEP.OUT.ATTRS = TRUE, stringsAsFactors = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`...`	vectors, factors or a list containing these.
`KEEP.OUT.ATTRS`	a logical indicating the `"out.attrs"` attribute (see below) should be computed and returned.
`stringsAsFactors`	logical specifying if character vectors are converted to factors.

Value

A data frame containing one row for each combination of the supplied factors. The first factors vary fastest. The columns are labelled by the factors if these are supplied as named arguments or named components of a list. The row names are 'automatic'.

Attribute `"out.attrs"` is a list which gives the dimension and dimnames for use by `predict` methods.

Note

Conversion to a factor is done with levels in the order they occur in the character vectors (and not alphabetically, as is most common when converting to factors).

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`combn` (package `utils`) for the generation of all combinations of n elements, taken m at a time.

Examples

```
require(utils)

expand.grid(height = seq(60, 80, 5), weight = seq(100, 300, 50),
            sex = c("Male","Female"))

x <- seq(0, 10, length.out = 100)
y <- seq(-1, 1, length.out = 20)
d1 <- expand.grid(x = x, y = y)
d2 <- expand.grid(x = x, y = y, KEEP.OUT.ATTRS = FALSE)
```

```
object.size(d1) - object.size(d2)
##-> 5992 or 8832 (on 32- / 64-bit platform)
```

`expression` *Unevaluated Expressions*

Description

Creates or tests for objects of mode `"expression"`.

Usage

```
expression(...)

is.expression(x)
as.expression(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`...`	`expression`: objects, typically calls, symbols or constants. `as.expression`: arguments to be passed to methods.
`x`	an arbitrary object.

Details

'Expression' here is not being used in its colloquial sense, that of mathematical expressions. Those are calls (see `call`) in , and an expression vector is a list of calls, symbols etc, for example as returned by `parse`.

As an object of mode `"expression"` is a list, it can be subsetted by `[`, `[[` or `$`, the latter two extracting individual calls etc. The replacement forms of these operators can be used to replace or delete elements.

`expression` and `is.expression` are primitive functions. `expression` is 'special': it does not evaluate its arguments.

Value

`expression` returns a vector of type `"expression"` containing its arguments (unevaluated).

`is.expression` returns `TRUE` if `expr` is an expression object and `FALSE` otherwise.

`as.expression` attempts to coerce its argument into an expression object. It is generic, and only the default method is described here. (The default method calls `as.vector(type = "expression")` and so may dispatch methods for `as.vector`.) `NULL`, calls, symbols (see `as.symbol`) and pairlists are returned as the element of a length-one expression vector. Atomic vectors are placed element-by-element into an expression vector (without using any names): lists are changed type to an expression vector (keeping all attributes). Other types are not currently supported.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`call`, `eval`, `function`. Further, `text` and `legend` for plotting mathematical expressions.

Examples

```
length(ex1 <- expression(1 + 0:9)) # 1
ex1
eval(ex1) # 1:10

length(ex3 <- expression(u, v, 1+ 0:9)) # 3
mode(ex3 [3])   # expression
mode(ex3[[3]])  # call
rm(ex3)
```

`Extract` *Extract or Replace Parts of an Object*

Description

Operators acting on vectors, matrices, arrays and lists to extract or replace parts.

Usage

```
x[i]
x[i, j, ... , drop = TRUE]
x[[i, exact = TRUE]]
x[[i, j, ..., exact = TRUE]]
x$name
getElement(object, name)

x[i] <- value
x[i, j, ...] <- value
x[[i]] <- value
x$i <- value
```

Arguments

`x, object`	object from which to extract element(s) or in which to replace element(s).
`i, j, ...`	indices specifying elements to extract or replace. Indices are `numeric` or `character` vectors or empty (missing) or `NULL`. Numeric values are coerced to integer as by `as.integer` (and hence truncated towards zero). Character vectors will be matched to the `names` of the object (or for matrices/arrays, the `dimnames`): see 'Character indices' below for further details. For `[`-indexing only: `i`, `j`, `...` can be logical vectors, indicating elements/slices to select. Such vectors are recycled if necessary to match the corresponding extent. `i`, `j`, `...` can also be negative integers, indicating elements/slices to leave out of the selection. When indexing arrays by `[` a single argument `i` can be a matrix with as many columns as there are dimensions of `x`; the result is then a vector with elements corresponding to the sets of indices in each row of `i`. An index value of `NULL` is treated as if it were `integer(0)`.

name	A literal character string or a name (possibly backtick quoted). For extraction, this is normally (see under 'Environments') partially matched to the names of the object.
drop	For matrices and arrays. If TRUE the result is coerced to the lowest possible dimension (see the examples). This only works for extracting elements, not for the replacement. See drop for further details.
exact	Controls possible partial matching of [[when extracting by a character vector (for most objects, but see under 'Environments'). The default is no partial matching. Value NA allows partial matching but issues a warning when it occurs. Value FALSE allows partial matching without any warning.
value	typically an array-like object of a similar class as x.

Details

These operators are generic. You can write methods to handle indexing of specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods as well as [.data.frame and [.factor. The descriptions here apply only to the default methods. Note that separate methods are required for the replacement functions [<-, [[<- and $<- for use when indexing occurs on the assignment side of an expression.

The most important distinction between [, [[and $ is that the [can select more than one element whereas the other two select a single element.

The default methods work somewhat differently for atomic vectors, matrices/arrays and for recursive (list-like, see is.recursive) objects. $ is only valid for recursive objects, and is only discussed in the section below on recursive objects.

Subsetting (except by an empty index) will drop all attributes except names, dim and dimnames.

Indexing can occur on the right-hand-side of an expression for extraction, or on the left-hand-side for replacement. When an index expression appears on the left side of an assignment (known as *subassignment*) then that part of x is set to the value of the right hand side of the assignment. In this case no partial matching of character indices is done, and the left-hand-side is coerced as needed to accept the values. For vectors, the answer will be of the higher of the types of x and value in the hierarchy raw < logical < integer < double < complex < character < list < expression. Attributes are preserved (although names, dim and dimnames will be adjusted suitably). Subassignment is done sequentially, so if an index is specified more than once the latest assigned value for an index will result.

It is an error to apply any of these operators to an object which is not subsettable (e.g., a function).

Atomic vectors

The usual form of indexing is [. [[can be used to select a single element *dropping* names, whereas [keeps them, e.g., in c(abc = 123)[1].

The index object i can be numeric, logical, character or empty. Indexing by factors is allowed and is equivalent to indexing by the numeric codes (see factor) and not by the character values which are printed (for which use [as.character(i)]).

An empty index selects all values: this is most often used to replace all the entries but keep the attributes.

Matrices and arrays

Matrices and arrays are vectors with a dimension attribute and so all the vector forms of indexing can be used with a single index. The result will be an unnamed vector unless x is one-dimensional when it will be a one-dimensional array.

The most common form of indexing a k-dimensional array is to specify k indices to `[`. As for vector indexing, the indices can be numeric, logical, character, empty or even factor. An empty index (a comma separated blank) indicates that all entries in that dimension are selected. The argument `drop` applies to this form of indexing.

A third form of indexing is via a numeric matrix with the one column for each dimension: each row of the index matrix then selects a single element of the array, and the result is a vector. Negative indices are not allowed in the index matrix. `NA` and zero values are allowed: rows of an index matrix containing a zero are ignored, whereas rows containing an `NA` produce an `NA` in the result.

Indexing via a character matrix with one column per dimensions is also supported if the array has dimension names. As with numeric matrix indexing, each row of the index matrix selects a single element of the array. Indices are matched against the appropriate dimension names. `NA` is allowed and will produce an `NA` in the result. Unmatched indices as well as the empty string (`""`) are not allowed and will result in an error.

A vector obtained by matrix indexing will be unnamed unless `x` is one-dimensional when the row names (if any) will be indexed to provide names for the result.

Recursive (list-like) objects

Indexing by `[` is similar to atomic vectors and selects a list of the specified element(s).

Both `[[` and `$` select a single element of the list. The main difference is that `$` does not allow computed indices, whereas `[[` does. `x$name` is equivalent to `x[["name", exact = FALSE]]`. Also, the partial matching behavior of `[[` can be controlled using the `exact` argument.

`getElement(x, name)` is a version of `x[[name, exact = TRUE]]` which for formally classed (S4) objects returns `slot(x, name)`, hence providing access to even more general list-like objects.

`[` and `[[` are sometimes applied to other recursive objects such as calls and expressions. Pairlists are coerced to lists for extraction by `[`, but all three operators can be used for replacement.

`[[` can be applied recursively to lists, so that if the single index `i` is a vector of length `p`, `alist[[i]]` is equivalent to `alist[[i1]]...[[ip]]` providing all but the final indexing results in a list.

Note that in all three kinds of replacement, a value of `NULL` deletes the corresponding item of the list. To set entries to `NULL`, you need `x[i] <- list(NULL)`.

When `$<-` is applied to a `NULL` `x`, it first coerces `x` to `list()`. This is what also happens with `[[<-` if the replacement value `value` is of length greater than one: if `value` has length 1 or 0, `x` is first coerced to a zero-length vector of the type of `value`.

Environments

Both `$` and `[[` can be applied to environments. Only character indices are allowed and no partial matching is done. The semantics of these operations are those of `get(i, env = x, inherits = FALSE)`. If no match is found then `NULL` is returned. The replacement versions, `$<-` and `[[<-`, can also be used. Again, only character arguments are allowed. The semantics in this case are those of `assign(i, value, env = x, inherits = FALSE)`. Such an assignment will either create a new binding or change the existing binding in `x`.

NAs in indexing

When extracting, a numerical, logical or character `NA` index picks an unknown element and so returns `NA` in the corresponding element of a logical, integer, numeric, complex or character result, and `NULL` for a list. (It returns `00` for a raw result.)

When replacing (that is using indexing on the lhs of an assignment) `NA` does not select any element to be replaced. As there is ambiguity as to whether an element of the rhs should be used or not,

this is only allowed if the rhs value is of length one (so the two interpretations would have the same outcome). (The documented behaviour of S was that an NA replacement index 'goes nowhere' but uses up an element of `value`: Becker *et al* p. 359. However, that has not been true of other implementations.)

Argument matching

Note that these operations do not match their index arguments in the standard way: argument names are ignored and positional matching only is used. So `m[j = 2, i = 1]` is equivalent to `m[2, 1]` and **not** to `m[1, 2]`.

This may not be true for methods defined for them; for example it is not true for the `data.frame` methods described in `[.data.frame` which warn if `i` or `j` is named and have undocumented behaviour in that case.

To avoid confusion, do not name index arguments (but `drop` and `exact` must be named).

S4 methods

These operators are also implicit S4 generics, but as primitives, S4 methods will be dispatched only on S4 objects `x`.

The implicit generics for the `$` and `$<-` operators do not have `name` in their signature because the grammar only allows symbols or string constants for the `name` argument.

Character indices

Character indices can in some circumstances be partially matched (see `pmatch`) to the names or dimnames of the object being subsetted (but never for subassignment). Unlike S (Becker *et al* p. 358)), never uses partial matching when extracting by `[`, and partial matching is not by default used by `[[` (see argument `exact`).

Thus the default behaviour is to use partial matching only when extracting from recursive objects (except environments) by `$`. Even in that case, warnings can be switched on by `options(warnPartialMatchDollar = TRUE)`.

Neither empty (`""`) nor NA indices match any names, not even empty nor missing names. If any object has no names or appropriate dimnames, they are taken as all `""` and so match nothing.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`names` for details of matching to names, and `pmatch` for partial matching.

`list`, `array`, `matrix`.

`[.data.frame` and `[.factor` for the behaviour when applied to data.frame and factors.

`Syntax` for operator precedence, and the 'R Language Definition' manual about indexing details.

`NULL` for details of indexing null objects.

Examples

```
x <- 1:12
m <- matrix(1:6, nrow = 2, dimnames = list(c("a", "b"), LETTERS[1:3]))
li <- list(pi = pi, e = exp(1))
x[10]                 # the tenth element of x
x <- x[-1]            # delete the 1st element of x
m[1,]                 # the first row of matrix m
m[1, , drop = FALSE]  # is a 1-row matrix
m[,c(TRUE,FALSE,TRUE)]# logical indexing
m[cbind(c(1,2,1),3:1)]# matrix numeric index
ci <- cbind(c("a", "b", "a"), c("A", "C", "B"))
m[ci]                 # matrix character index
m <- m[,-1]           # delete the first column of m
li[[1]]               # the first element of list li
y <- list(1, 2, a = 4, 5)
y[c(3, 4)]            # a list containing elements 3 and 4 of y
y$a                   # the element of y named a

## non-integer indices are truncated:
(i <- 3.999999999) # "4" is printed
(1:5)[i]  # 3

## named atomic vectors, compare "[" and "[[" :
nx <- c(Abc = 123, pi = pi)
nx[1] ; nx["pi"] # keeps names, whereas "[[" does not:
nx[[1]] ; nx[["pi"]]

## recursive indexing into lists
z <- list(a = list(b = 9, c = "hello"), d = 1:5)
unlist(z)
z[[c(1, 2)]]
z[[c(1, 2, 1)]]  # both "hello"
z[[c("a", "b")]] <- "new"
unlist(z)

## check $ and [[ for environments
e1 <- new.env()
e1$a <- 10
e1[["a"]]
e1[["b"]] <- 20
e1$b
ls(e1)

## partial matching - possibly with warning :
stopifnot(identical(li$p, pi))
op <- options(warnPartialMatchDollar = TRUE)
stopifnot( identical(li$p, pi), #-- a warning
  inherits(tryCatch (li$p, warning = identity), "warning"))
## revert the warning option:
if(is.null(op[[1]])) op[[1]] <- FALSE; options(op)
```

`Extract.data.frame` *Extract or Replace Parts of a Data Frame*

Description

Extract or replace subsets of data frames.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class data.frame
x[i, j, drop = ]
## S3 replacement method for class data.frame
x[i, j] <- value
## S3 method for class data.frame
x[[..., exact = TRUE]]
## S3 replacement method for class data.frame
x[[i, j]] <- value
## S3 method for class data.frame
x$name
## S3 replacement method for class data.frame
x$name <- value
```

Arguments

x	data frame.
i, j, ...	elements to extract or replace. For [and [[, these are numeric or character or, for [only, empty. Numeric values are coerced to integer as if by as.integer. For replacement by [, a logical matrix is allowed.
name	A literal character string or a name (possibly backtick quoted).
drop	logical. If TRUE the result is coerced to the lowest possible dimension. The default is to drop if only one column is left, but **not** to drop if only one row is left.
value	A suitable replacement value: it will be repeated a whole number of times if necessary and it may be coerced: see the Coercion section. If NULL, deletes the column if a single column is selected.
exact	logical: see [, and applies to column names.

Details

Data frames can be indexed in several modes. When [and [[are used with a single vector index (x[i] or x[[i]]), they index the data frame as if it were a list. In this usage a drop argument is ignored, with a warning.

The data.frame method for $, treats x as a list, except that (as of R-3.1.0) partial matching of name to the names of x will generate a warning; this may become an error in future versions. The replacement method checks value for the correct number of rows, and replicates it if necessary.

When [and [[are used with two indices (x[i, j] and x[[i, j]]) they act like indexing a matrix: [[can only be used to select one element. Note that for each selected column, xj say, typically (if it is not matrix-like), the resulting column will be xj[i], and hence rely on the corresponding [method, see the examples section.

If [returns a data frame it will have unique (and non-missing) row names, if necessary transforming the row names using make.unique. Similarly, if columns are selected column names will be transformed to be unique if necessary (e.g., if columns are selected more than once, or if more than one column of a given name is selected if the data frame has duplicate column names).

When `drop = TRUE`, this is applied to the subsetting of any matrices contained in the data frame as well as to the data frame itself.

The replacement methods can be used to add whole column(s) by specifying non-existent column(s), in which case the column(s) are added at the right-hand edge of the data frame and numerical indices must be contiguous to existing indices. On the other hand, rows can be added at any row after the current last row, and the columns will be in-filled with missing values. Missing values in the indices are not allowed for replacement.

For `[` the replacement value can be a list: each element of the list is used to replace (part of) one column, recycling the list as necessary. If columns specified by number are created, the names (if any) of the corresponding list elements are used to name the columns. If the replacement is not selecting rows, list values can contain `NULL` elements which will cause the corresponding columns to be deleted. (See the Examples.)

Matrix indexing (`x[i]` with a logical or a 2-column integer matrix `i`) using `[` is not recommended. For extraction, `x` is first coerced to a matrix. For replacement, logical matrix indices must be of the same dimension as `x`. Replacements are done one column at a time, with multiple type coercions possibly taking place.

Both `[` and `[[` extraction methods partially match row names. By default neither partially match column names, but `[[` will if `exact = FALSE` (and with a warning if `exact = NA`). If you want to exact matching on row names use `match`, as in the examples.

Value

For `[` a data frame, list or a single column (the latter two only when dimensions have been dropped). If matrix indexing is used for extraction a vector results. If the result would be a data frame an error results if undefined columns are selected (as there is no general concept of a 'missing' column in a data frame). Otherwise if a single column is selected and this is undefined the result is `NULL`.

For `[[` a column of the data frame or `NULL` (extraction with one index) or a length-one vector (extraction with two indices).

For `$`, a column of the data frame (or `NULL`).

For `[<-`, `[[<-` and `$<-`, a data frame.

Coercion

The story over when replacement values are coerced is a complicated one, and one that has changed during 's development. This section is a guide only.

When `[` and `[[` are used to add or replace a whole column, no coercion takes place but `value` will be replicated (by calling the generic function `rep`) to the right length if an exact number of repeats can be used.

When `[` is used with a logical matrix, each value is coerced to the type of the column into which it is to be placed.

When `[` and `[[` are used with two indices, the column will be coerced as necessary to accommodate the value.

Note that when the replacement value is an array (including a matrix) it is *not* treated as a series of columns (as `data.frame` and `as.data.frame` do) but inserted as a single column.

Warning

The default behaviour when only one *row* is left is equivalent to specifying `drop = FALSE`. To drop from a data frame to a list, `drop = TRUE` has to be specified explicitly.

Arguments other than `drop` and `exact` should not be named: there is a warning if they are and the behaviour differs from the description here.

See Also

`subset` which is often easier for extraction, `data.frame`, `Extract`.

Examples

```
sw <- swiss[1:5, 1:4]  # select a manageable subset

sw[1:3]      # select columns
sw[, 1:3]    # same
sw[4:5, 1:3] # select rows and columns
sw[1]        # a one-column data frame
sw[, 1, drop = FALSE]  # the same
sw[, 1]      # a (unnamed) vector
sw[[1]]      # the same

sw[1,]       # a one-row data frame
sw[1,, drop = TRUE]  # a list

sw["C", ] # partially matches
sw[match("C", row.names(sw)), ] # no exact match
try(sw[, "Ferti"]) # column names must match exactly


swiss[ c(1, 1:2), ]   # duplicate row, unique row names are created

sw[sw <= 6] <- 6  # logical matrix indexing
sw

## adding a column
sw["new1"] <- LETTERS[1:5]   # adds a character column
sw[["new2"]] <- letters[1:5] # ditto
sw[, "new3"] <- LETTERS[1:5] # ditto
sw$new4 <- 1:5
sapply(sw, class)
sw$new4 <- NULL              # delete the column
sw
sw[6:8] <- list(letters[10:14], NULL, aa = 1:5)
# update col. 6, delete 7, append
sw

## matrices in a data frame
A <- data.frame(x = 1:3, y = I(matrix(4:6)), z = I(matrix(letters[1:9], 3, 3)))
A[1:3, "y"] # a matrix
A[1:3, "z"] # a matrix
A[, "y"]    # a matrix

## keeping special attributes: use a class with a
## "as.data.frame" and "[" method:


as.data.frame.avector <- as.data.frame.vector

[.avector <- function(x,i,...) {
```

```
  r <- NextMethod("[")
  mostattributes(r) <- attributes(x)
  r
}

d <- data.frame(i = 0:7, f = gl(2,4),
                u = structure(11:18, unit = "kg", class = "avector"))
str(d[2:4, -1]) # u keeps its "unit"
```

`Extract.factor` *Extract or Replace Parts of a Factor*

Description

Extract or replace subsets of factors.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class factor
x[..., drop = FALSE]
## S3 method for class factor
x[[...]]
## S3 replacement method for class factor
x[...] <- value
## S3 replacement method for class factor
x[[...]] <- value
```

Arguments

`x`	a factor
`...`	a specification of indices – see `Extract`.
`drop`	logical. If true, unused levels are dropped.
`value`	character: a set of levels. Factor values are coerced to character.

Details

When unused levels are dropped the ordering of the remaining levels is preserved.

If `value` is not in `levels(x)`, a missing value is assigned with a warning.

Any `contrasts` assigned to the factor are preserved unless `drop = TRUE`.

The `[[` method supports argument `exact`.

Value

A factor with the same set of levels as `x` unless `drop = TRUE`.

See Also

`factor`, `Extract`.

Examples

```
## following example(factor)
(ff <- factor(substring("statistics", 1:10, 1:10), levels = letters))
ff[, drop = TRUE]
factor(letters[7:10])[2:3, drop = TRUE]
```

Extremes *Maxima and Minima*

Description

Returns the (parallel) maxima and minima of the input values.

Usage

```
max(..., na.rm = FALSE)
min(..., na.rm = FALSE)

pmax(..., na.rm = FALSE)
pmin(..., na.rm = FALSE)

pmax.int(..., na.rm = FALSE)
pmin.int(..., na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`...`	numeric or character arguments (see Note).
`na.rm`	a logical indicating whether missing values should be removed.

Details

`max` and `min` return the maximum or minimum of *all* the values present in their arguments, as `integer` if all are `logical` or `integer`, as `double` if all are numeric, and character otherwise.

If `na.rm` is `FALSE` an `NA` value in any of the arguments will cause a value of `NA` to be returned, otherwise `NA` values are ignored.

The minimum and maximum of a numeric empty set are `+Inf` and `-Inf` (in this order!) which ensures *transitivity*, e.g., `min(x1, min(x2)) == min(x1, x2)`. For numeric `x` `max(x) == -Inf` and `min(x) == +Inf` whenever `length(x) == 0` (after removing missing values if requested). However, `pmax` and `pmin` return `NA` if all the parallel elements are `NA` even for `na.rm = TRUE`.

`pmax` and `pmin` take one or more vectors (or matrices) as arguments and return a single vector giving the 'parallel' maxima (or minima) of the vectors. The first element of the result is the maximum (minimum) of the first elements of all the arguments, the second element of the result is the maximum (minimum) of the second elements of all the arguments and so on. Shorter inputs (of non-zero length) are recycled if necessary. Attributes (see `attributes`: such as `names` or `dim`) are copied from the first argument (if applicable).

`pmax.int` and `pmin.int` are faster internal versions only used when all arguments are atomic vectors and there are no classes: they drop all attributes. (Note that all versions fail for raw and complex vectors since these have no ordering.)

`max` and `min` are generic functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the `Summary` group generic. For this to work properly, the arguments `...` should be unnamed, and dispatch is on the first argument.

By definition the min/max of a numeric vector containing an `NaN` is `NaN`, except that the min/max of any vector containing an `NA` is `NA` even if it also contains an `NaN`. Note that `max(NA, Inf) == NA` even though the maximum would be `Inf` whatever the missing value actually is.

Character versions are sorted lexicographically, and this depends on the collating sequence of the locale in use: the help for 'Comparison' gives details. The max/min of an empty character vector is defined to be character `NA`. (One could argue that as `""` is the smallest character element, the maximum should be `""`, but there is no obvious candidate for the minimum.)

Value

For `min` or `max`, a length-one vector. For `pmin` or `pmax`, a vector of length the longest of the input vectors, or length zero if one of the inputs had zero length.

The type of the result will be that of the highest of the inputs in the hierarchy integer < double < character.

For `min` and `max` if there are only numeric inputs and all are empty (after possible removal of `NA`s), the result is double (`Inf` or `-Inf`).

S4 methods

`max` and `min` are part of the S4 `Summary` group generic. Methods for them must use the signature `x, ..., na.rm`.

Note

'Numeric' arguments are vectors of type integer and numeric, and logical (coerced to integer). For historical reasons, `NULL` is accepted as equivalent to `integer(0)`.

`pmax` and `pmin` will also work on classed objects with appropriate methods for comparison, `is.na` and `rep` (if recycling of arguments is needed).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`range` (*both* min and max) and `which.min` (`which.max`) for the *arg min*, i.e., the location where an extreme value occurs.

'plotmath' for the use of `min` in plot annotation.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
 min(5:1, pi) #-> one number
pmin(5:1, pi) #->  5  numbers

x <- sort(rnorm(100));  cH <- 1.35
pmin(cH, quantile(x)) # no names
pmin(quantile(x), cH) # has names
```

```
plot(x, pmin(cH, pmax(-cH, x)), type = "b", main =  "Hubers function")

cut01 <- function(x) pmax(pmin(x, 1), 0)
curve(      x^2 - 1/4, -1.4, 1.5, col = 2)
curve(cut01(x^2 - 1/4), col = "blue", add = TRUE, n = 500)
## pmax(), pmin() preserve attributes of *first* argument
D <- diag(x = (3:1)/4) ; n0 <- numeric()
stopifnot(identical(D,  cut01(D) ),
          identical(n0, cut01(n0)),
          identical(n0, cut01(NULL)),
          identical(n0, pmax(3:1, n0, 2)),
          identical(n0, pmax(n0, 4)))
```

`factor` *Factors*

Description

The function `factor` is used to encode a vector as a factor (the terms 'category' and 'enumerated type' are also used for factors). If argument `ordered` is `TRUE`, the factor levels are assumed to be ordered. For compatibility with S there is also a function `ordered`.

`is.factor`, `is.ordered`, `as.factor` and `as.ordered` are the membership and coercion functions for these classes.

Usage

```
factor(x = character(), levels, labels = levels,
       exclude = NA, ordered = is.ordered(x), nmax = NA)

ordered(x, ...)

is.factor(x)
is.ordered(x)

as.factor(x)
as.ordered(x)

addNA(x, ifany = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a vector of data, usually taking a small number of distinct values.
`levels`	an optional vector of the values (as character strings) that `x` might have taken. The default is the unique set of values taken by `as.character(x)`, sorted into increasing order *of* `x`. Note that this set can be specified as smaller than `sort(unique(x))`.
`labels`	*either* an optional character vector of labels for the levels (in the same order as `levels` after removing those in `exclude`), *or* a character string of length 1.
`exclude`	a vector of values to be excluded when forming the set of levels. This should be of the same type as `x`, and will be coerced if necessary.

ordered	logical flag to determine if the levels should be regarded as ordered (in the order given).
nmax	an upper bound on the number of levels; see 'Details'.
...	(in ordered(.)): any of the above, apart from ordered itself.
ifany	(only add an NA level if it is used, i.e. if any(is.na(x)).

Details

The type of the vector x is not restricted; it only must have an as.character method and be sortable (by sort.list).

Ordered factors differ from factors only in their class, but methods and the model-fitting functions treat the two classes quite differently.

The encoding of the vector happens as follows. First all the values in exclude are removed from levels. If x[i] equals levels[j], then the i-th element of the result is j. If no match is found for x[i] in levels (which will happen for excluded values) then the i-th element of the result is set to NA.

Normally the 'levels' used as an attribute of the result are the reduced set of levels after removing those in exclude, but this can be altered by supplying labels. This should either be a set of new labels for the levels, or a character string, in which case the levels are that character string with a sequence number appended.

factor(x, exclude = NULL) applied to a factor is a no-operation unless there are unused levels: in that case, a factor with the reduced level set is returned. If exclude is used it should also be a factor with the same level set as x or a set of codes for the levels to be excluded.

The codes of a factor may contain NA. For a numeric x, set exclude = NULL to make NA an extra level (prints as <NA>); by default, this is the last level.

If NA is a level, the way to set a code to be missing (as opposed to the code of the missing level) is to use is.na on the left-hand-side of an assignment (as in is.na(f)[i] <- TRUE; indexing inside is.na does not work). Under those circumstances missing values are currently printed as <NA>, i.e., identical to entries of level NA.

is.factor is generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see Internal-Methods.

Where levels is not supplied, unique is called. Since factors typically have quite a small number of levels, for large vectors x it is helpful to supply nmax as an upper bound on the number of unique values.

Value

factor returns an object of class "factor" which has a set of integer codes the length of x with a "levels" attribute of mode character and unique (!anyDuplicated(.)) entries. If argument ordered is true (or ordered() is used) the result has class c("ordered", "factor").

Applying factor to an ordered or unordered factor returns a factor (of the same type) with just the levels which occur: see also [.factor for a more transparent way to achieve this.

is.factor returns TRUE or FALSE depending on whether its argument is of type factor or not. Correspondingly, is.ordered returns TRUE when its argument is an ordered factor and FALSE otherwise.

as.factor coerces its argument to a factor. It is an abbreviated form of factor.

as.ordered(x) returns x if this is ordered, and ordered(x) otherwise.

addNA modifies a factor by turning NA into an extra level (so that NA values are counted in tables, for instance).

Warning

The interpretation of a factor depends on both the codes and the "levels" attribute. Be careful only to compare factors with the same set of levels (in the same order). In particular, as.numeric applied to a factor is meaningless, and may happen by implicit coercion. To transform a factor f to approximately its original numeric values, as.numeric(levels(f))[f] is recommended and slightly more efficient than as.numeric(as.character(f)).

The levels of a factor are by default sorted, but the sort order may well depend on the locale at the time of creation, and should not be assumed to be ASCII.

There are some anomalies associated with factors that have NA as a level. It is suggested to use them sparingly, e.g., only for tabulation purposes.

Comparison operators and group generic methods

There are "factor" and "ordered" methods for the group generic Ops which provide methods for the Comparison operators, and for the min, max, and range generics in Summary of "ordered". (The rest of the groups and the Math group generate an error as they are not meaningful for factors.)

Only == and != can be used for factors: a factor can only be compared to another factor with an identical set of levels (not necessarily in the same ordering) or to a character vector. Ordered factors are compared in the same way, but the general dispatch mechanism precludes comparing ordered and unordered factors.

All the comparison operators are available for ordered factors. Collation is done by the levels of the operands: if both operands are ordered factors they must have the same level set.

Note

In earlier versions of , storing character data as a factor was more space efficient if there is even a small proportion of repeats. However, identical character strings now share storage, so the difference is small in most cases. (Integer values are stored in 4 bytes whereas each reference to a character string needs a pointer of 4 or 8 bytes.)

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

[.factor for subsetting of factors.

gl for construction of balanced factors and C for factors with specified contrasts. levels and nlevels for accessing the levels, and unclass to get integer codes.

Examples

```
(ff <- factor(substring("statistics", 1:10, 1:10), levels = letters))
as.integer(ff)      # the internal codes
(f. <- factor(ff))  # drops the levels that do not occur
ff[, drop = TRUE]   # the same, more transparently

factor(letters[1:20], labels = "letter")

class(ordered(4:1)) # "ordered", inheriting from "factor"
z <- factor(LETTERS[3:1], ordered = TRUE)
## and "relational" methods work:
```

```
stopifnot(sort(z)[c(1,3)] == range(z), min(z) < max(z))


## suppose you want "NA" as a level, and to allow missing values.
(x <- factor(c(1, 2, NA), exclude = NULL))
is.na(x)[2] <- TRUE
x  # [1] 1    <NA> <NA>
is.na(x)
# [1] FALSE  TRUE FALSE

## Using addNA()
Month <- airquality$Month
table(addNA(Month))
table(addNA(Month, ifany = TRUE))
```

`file.access` *Ascertain File Accessibility*

Description

Utility function to access information about files on the user's file systems.

Usage

```
file.access(names, mode = 0)
```

Arguments

`names`	character vector containing file names. Tilde-expansion will be done: see `path.expand`.
`mode`	integer specifying access mode required: see 'Details'.

Details

The `mode` value can be the exclusive or of the following values

0 test for existence.

1 test for execute permission.

2 test for write permission.

4 test for read permission.

Permission will be computed for real user ID and real group ID (rather than the effective IDs).

Please note that it is not a good idea to use this function to test before trying to open a file. On a multi-tasking system, it is possible that the accessibility of a file will change between the time you call `file.access()` and the time you try to open the file. It is better to wrap file open attempts in `try`.

Value

An integer vector with values `0` for success and `-1` for failure.

Note

This is intended as a replacement for the S-PLUS function `access`, a wrapper for the C function of the same name, which explains the return value encoding. Note that the return value is **false** for **success**.

See Also

`file.info` for more details on permissions, `Sys.chmod` to change permissions, and `try` for a 'test it and see' approach.

`file_test` for shell-style file tests.

Examples

```
fa <- file.access(dir("."))
table(fa) # count successes & failures
```

---

file.choose *Choose a File Interactively*

Description

Choose a file interactively.

Usage

```
file.choose(new = FALSE)
```

Arguments

new	Logical: choose the style of dialog box presented to the user: at present only new = FALSE is used.

Value

A character vector of length one giving the file path.

See Also

`list.files` for non-interactive selection.

`file.info` *Extract File Information*

Description

Utility function to extract information about files on the user's file systems.

Usage

```
file.info(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	character vectors containing file paths. Tilde-expansion is done: see `path.expand`.

Details

What constitutes a 'file' is OS-dependent but includes directories. (However, directory names must not include a trailing backslash or slash on Windows.) See also the section in the help for `file.exists` on case-insensitive file systems.

The file 'mode' follows POSIX conventions, giving three octal digits summarizing the permissions for the file owner, the owner's group and for anyone respectively. Each digit is the logical *or* of read (4), write (2) and execute/search (1) permissions.

On most systems symbolic links are followed, so information is given about the file to which the link points rather than about the link.

Value

A data frame with row names the file names and columns

`size`	double: File size in bytes.
`isdir`	logical: Is the file a directory?
`mode`	integer of class `"octmode"`. The file permissions, printed in octal, for example `644`.
`mtime, ctime, atime`	integer of class `"POSIXct"`: file modification, 'last status change' and last access times.
`uid`	integer: the user ID of the file's owner.
`gid`	integer: the group ID of the file's group.
`uname`	character: `uid` interpreted as a user name.
`grname`	character: `gid` interpreted as a group name.

Unknown user and group names will be `NA`.

Entries for non-existent or non-readable files will be `NA`. The `uid`, `gid`, `uname` and `grname` columns may not be supplied on a non-POSIX Unix-alike system, and will not be on Windows.

What is meant by the three file times depends on the OS and file system. On Windows native file systems `ctime` is the file creation time (something which is not recorded on most Unix-alike file systems). What is meant by 'file access' and hence the 'last access time' is system-dependent.

The times are reported to an accuracy of seconds, and perhaps more on some systems. However, many file systems only record times in seconds, and some (e.g., modification time on FAT systems) are recorded in increments of 2 or more seconds.

Note

Some systems allow files of more than 2Gb to be created but not accessed by the `stat` system call. Such files will show up as non-readable (and very likely not be readable by any of 's input functions) – fortunately such file systems are becoming rare.

See Also

`Sys.readlink` to find out about symbolic links, `files`, `file.access`, `list.files`, and `DateTimeClasses` for the date formats.

`Sys.chmod` to change permissions.

Examples

```
ncol(finf <- file.info(dir()))  # at least six
## Not run: finf # the whole list
## Those that are more than 100 days old :
finf[difftime(Sys.time(), finf[,"mtime"], units = "days") > 100 , 1:4]

file.info("no-such-file-exists")
```

`file.path` *Construct Path to File*

Description

Construct the path to a file from components in a platform-independent way.

Usage

```
file.path(..., fsep = .Platform$file.sep)
```

Arguments

`...`	character vectors.
`fsep`	the path separator to use.

Details

The implementation is designed to be fast (faster than `paste`) as this function is used extensively in itself.

It can also be used for environment paths such as `PATH` and `R_LIBS` with `fsep = .Platform$path.sep`.

Trailing path separators are invalid for Windows file paths apart from '`/`' and '`d:/`' (although some functions/utilities do accept them), so as from 3.1.0 a trailing `/` or `\` is removed.

Value

A character vector of the arguments concatenated term-by-term and separated by `fsep` if all arguments have positive length; otherwise, an empty character vector (unlike `paste`).

Note

The components are by default separated by `/` (not \) on Windows.

`file.show` *Display One or More Files*

Description

Display one or more files.

Usage

```
file.show(..., header = rep("", nfiles),
          title = "R Information",
          delete.file = FALSE, pager = getOption("pager"),
          encoding = "")
```

Arguments

`...`	one or more character vectors containing the names of the files to be displayed. Paths with have tilde expansion.
`header`	character vector (of the same length as the number of files specified in `...`) giving a header for each file being displayed. Defaults to empty strings.
`title`	an overall title for the display. If a single separate window is used for the display, `title` will be used as the window title. If multiple windows are used, their titles should combine the title and the file-specific header.
`delete.file`	should the files be deleted after display? Used for temporary files.
`pager`	the pager to be used: not used on all platforms
`encoding`	character string giving the encoding to be assumed for the file(s).

Details

This function provides the core of the R help system, but it can be used for other purposes as well, such as `page`.

How the pager is implemented is highly system-dependent.

The basic Unix version concatenates the files (using the headers) to a temporary file, and displays it in the pager selected by the `pager` argument, which is a character vector specifying a system command (a full path or a command found on the `PATH`) to run on the set of files. The 'factory-fresh' default is to use '`R_HOME/bin/pager`', which is a shell script running the command-line specified by the environment variable `PAGER` whose default is set at configuration, usually to `less`. On a Unix-alike `more` is used if `pager` is empty.

Most GUI systems will use a separate pager window for each file, and let the user leave it up while continues running. The selection of such pagers could either be done using special pager names being intercepted by lower-level code (such as `"internal"` and

"console" on Windows), or by letting pager be an function which will be called with arguments (files, header, title, delete.file) corresponding to the first four arguments of file.show and take care of interfacing to the GUI.

The R.app GUI on OS X uses its internal pager irrespective of the setting of pager.

Not all implementations will honour delete.file. In particular, using an external pager on Windows does not, as there is no way to know when the external application has finished with the file.

Author(s)

Ross Ihaka, Brian Ripley.

See Also

files, list.files, help.

file.edit.

Examples

```
file.show(file.path(R.home("doc"), "COPYRIGHTS"))
```

---

files *File Manipulation*

Description

These functions provide a low-level interface to the computer's file system.

Usage

```
file.create(..., showWarnings = TRUE)
file.exists(...)
file.remove(...)
file.rename(from, to)
file.append(file1, file2)
file.copy(from, to, overwrite = recursive, recursive = FALSE,
          copy.mode = TRUE, copy.date = FALSE)
file.symlink(from, to)
file.link(from, to)
```

Arguments

..., file1, file2	character vectors, containing file names or paths.
from, to	character vectors, containing file names or paths. For file.copy and file.symlink to can alternatively be the path to a single existing directory.
overwrite	logical; should existing destination files be overwritten?
showWarnings	logical; should the warnings on failure be shown?
recursive	logical. If to is a directory, should directories in from be copied (and their contents)? (Like cp -R on POSIX OSes.)
copy.mode	logical: should file permission bits be copied where possible?
copy.date	logical: should file dates be preserved where possible? See Sys.setFileTime.

Details

The ... arguments are concatenated to form one character string: you can specify the files separately or as one vector. All of these functions expand path names: see path.expand.

file.create creates files with the given names if they do not already exist and truncates them if they do. They are created with the maximal read/write permissions allowed by the 'umask' setting (where relevant). By default a warning is given (with the reason) if the operation fails.

file.exists returns a logical vector indicating whether the files named by its argument exist. (Here 'exists' is in the sense of the system's stat call: a file will be reported as existing only if you have the permissions needed by stat. Existence can also be checked by file.access, which might use different permissions and so obtain a different result. Note that the existence of a file does not imply that it is readable: for that use file.access.) What constitutes a 'file' is system-dependent, but should include directories. (However, directory names must not include a trailing backslash or slash on Windows.) Note that if the file is a symbolic link on a Unix-alike, the result indicates if the link points to an actual file, not just if the link exists. Lastly, note the *different* function exists which checks for existence of objects.

file.remove attempts to remove the files named in its argument. On most Unix platforms 'file' includes *empty* directories, symbolic links, fifos and sockets. On Windows, 'file' means a regular file and not, say, an empty directory.

file.rename attempts to rename files (and from and to must be of the same length). Where file permissions allow this will overwrite an existing element of to. This is subject to the limitations of the OS's corresponding system call (see something like man 2 rename on a Unix-alike): in particular in the interpretation of 'file': most platforms will not rename files across file systems. (On Windows, file.rename can move files but not directories between volumes.) On platforms which allow directories to be renamed, typically neither or both of from and to must a directory, and if to exists it must be an empty directory.

file.append attempts to append the files named by its second argument to those named by its first. The subscript recycling rule is used to align names given in vectors of different lengths.

file.copy works in a similar way to file.append but with the arguments in the natural order for copying. Copying to existing destination files is skipped unless overwrite = TRUE. The to argument can specify a single existing directory. If copy.mode = TRUE file read/write/execute permissions are copied where possible, restricted by 'umask'. (On Windows this applies only to files.) Other security attributes such as ACLs are not copied. On a POSIX filesystem the targets of symbolic links will be copied rather than the links themselves, and hard links are copied separately.

file.symlink and file.link make symbolic and hard links on those file systems which support them. For file.symlink the to argument can specify a single existing directory. (Unix and OS X native filesystems support both. Windows has hard links to files on NTFS file systems and concepts related to symbolic links on recent versions: see the section below on the Windows version of this help page. What happens on a FAT or SMB-mounted file system is OS-specific.)

Value

These functions return a logical vector indicating which operation succeeded for each of the files attempted. Using a missing value for a file or path name will always be regarded as a failure.

If showWarnings = TRUE, file.create will give a warning for an unexpected failure.

Case-insensitive file systems

Case-insensitive file systems are the norm on Windows and OS X, but can be found on all OSes (for example a FAT-formatted USB drive is probably case-insensitive).

These functions will most likely match existing files regardless of case on such file systems: however this is an OS function and it is possible that file names might be mapped to upper or lower case.

Author(s)

Ross Ihaka, Brian Ripley

See Also

file.info, file.access, file.path, file.show, list.files, unlink, basename, path.expand.

dir.create.

Sys.glob to expand wildcards in file specifications.

file_test, Sys.readlink.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hard_link and http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Symbolic_link for the concepts of links and their limitations.

Examples

```
cat("file A\n", file = "A")
cat("file B\n", file = "B")
file.append("A", "B")
file.create("A")
file.append("A", rep("B", 10))
if(interactive()) file.show("A")
file.copy("A", "C")
dir.create("tmp")
file.copy(c("A", "B"), "tmp")
list.files("tmp")
setwd("tmp")
file.remove("B")
file.symlink(file.path("..", c("A", "B")), ".")
setwd("..")
unlink("tmp", recursive = TRUE)
file.remove("A", "B", "C")
```

---

files2 *Manipulaton of Directories and File Permissions*

Description

These functions provide a low-level interface to the computer's file system.

Usage

```
dir.create(path, showWarnings = TRUE, recursive = FALSE, mode = "0777")
Sys.chmod(paths, mode = "0777", use_umask = TRUE)
Sys.umask(mode = NA)
```

Arguments

path	a character vector containing a single path name. Tilde expansion (see path.expand) is done.
paths	character vectors containing file or directory paths. Tilde expansion (see path.expand) is done.
showWarnings	logical; should the warnings on failure be shown?
recursive	logical. Should elements of the path other than the last be created? If true, like the Unix command mkdir -p.
mode	the mode to be used on Unix-alikes: it will be coerced by as.octmode. For Sys.chmod it is recycled along paths.
use_umask	logical: should the mode be restricted by the umask setting?

Details

dir.create creates the last element of the path, unless recursive = TRUE. Trailing path separators are discarded. The mode will be modified by the umask setting in the same way as for the system function mkdir. What modes can be set is OS-dependent, and it is unsafe to assume that more than three octal digits will be used. For more details see your OS's documentation on the system call mkdir, e.g. man 2 mkdir (and not that on the command-line utility of that name).

One of the idiosyncrasies of Windows is that directory creation may report success but create a directory with a different name, for example dir.create("G.S.") creates '"G.S"'. This is undocumented, and what are the precise circumstances is unknown (and might depend on the version of Windows). Also avoid directory names with a trailing space.

Sys.chmod sets the file permissions of one or more files. It may not be supported on a system (when a warning is issued). See the comments for dir.create for how modes are interpreted. Changing mode on a symbolic link is unlikely to work (nor be necessary). For more details see your OS's documentation on the system call chmod, e.g. man 2 chmod (and not that on the command-line utility of that name). Whether this changes the permission of a symbolic link or its target is OS-dependent (although to change the target is more common, and POSIX does not support modes for symbolic links: BSD-based Unixes do, though).

Sys.umask sets the umask and returns the previous value: as a special case mode = NA just returns the current value. It may not be supported (when a warning is issued and "0" is returned). For more details see your OS's documentation on the system call umask, e.g. man 2 umask.

How modes are handled depends on the file system, even on Unix-alikes (although their documentation is often written assuming a POSIX file system). So treat documentation cautiously if you are using, say, a FAT/FAT32 or network-mounted file system.

Value

dir.create and Sys.chmod return invisibly a logical vector indicating if the operation succeeded for each of the files attempted. Using a missing value for a path name will always be regarded as a failure. dir.create indicates failure if the directory already exists. If showWarnings = TRUE, dir.create will give a warning for an unexpected failure (e.g., not for a missing value nor for an already existing component for recursive = TRUE).

Sys.umask returns the previous value of the umask, as a length-one object of class "octmode": the visibility flag is off unless mode is NA.

See also the section in the help for file.exists on case-insensitive file systems for the interpretation of path and paths.

Author(s)

Ross Ihaka, Brian Ripley

See Also

file.info, file.exists, file.path, list.files, unlink, basename, path.expand.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Fix up maximal allowed permissions in a file tree
Sys.chmod(list.dirs("."), "777")
f <- list.files(".", all.files = TRUE, full.names = TRUE, recursive  TRUE)
Sys.chmod(f, (file.info(f)$mode | "664"))

## End(Not run)
```

---

find.package *Find Packages*

Description

Find the paths to one or more packages.

Usage

```
find.package(package, lib.loc = NULL, quiet = FALSE,
             verbose = getOption("verbose"))

path.package(package, quiet = FALSE)
```

Arguments

package	character vector: the names of packages.
lib.loc	a character vector describing the location of library trees to search through, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to checking the loaded namespace, then all libraries currently known in .libPaths().
quiet	logical. Should this not give warnings or an error if the package is not found?
verbose	a logical. If TRUE, additional diagnostics are printed.

Details

find.package returns path to the locations where the given packages are found. If lib.loc is NULL, then loaded namespaces are searched before the libraries. If a package is found more than once, the first match is used. Unless quiet = TRUE a warning will be given about the named packages which are not found, and an error if none are. If verbose is true, warnings about packages found more than once are given. For a package to be returned it must contain a either a 'Meta' subdirectory or a 'DESCRIPTION' file containing a valid version field, but it need not be installed (it could be a source package if lib.loc was set suitably).

find.package is not usually the right tool to find out if a package is available for use: the only way to do that is to use require to try to load it. It need not be installed for the correct platform, it

might have a version requirement not met by the running version of , there might be dependencies which are not available, ...

`path.package` returns the paths from which the named packages were loaded, or if none were named, for all currently attached packages. Unless `quiet = TRUE` it will warn if some of the packages named are not attached, and given an error if none are.

Value

A character vector of paths of package directories.

`findInterval` *Find Interval Numbers or Indices*

Description

Given a vector of non-decreasing breakpoints in `vec`, find the interval containing each element of `x`; i.e., if `i <- findInterval(x,v)`, for each index `j` in `x` $v_{i_j} \le x_j < v_{i_j+1}$ where $v_0 := -\infty$, $v_{N+1} := +\infty$, and `N <- length(v)`. At the two boundaries, the returned index may differ by 1, depending on the optional arguments `rightmost.closed` and `all.inside`.

Usage

```
findInterval(x, vec, rightmost.closed = FALSE, all.inside = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric.
`vec`	numeric, sorted (weakly) increasingly, of length `N`, say.
`rightmost.closed`	logical; if true, the rightmost interval, `vec[N-1] .. vec[N]` is treated as *closed*, see below.
`all.inside`	logical; if true, the returned indices are coerced into `1`, . . . , `N-1`, i.e., `0` is mapped to `1` and `N` to `N-1`.

Details

The function `findInterval` finds the index of one vector `x` in another, `vec`, where the latter must be non-decreasing. Where this is trivial, equivalent to `apply( outer(x, vec, ">="), 1, sum)`, as a matter of fact, the internal algorithm uses interval search ensuring $O(n \log N)$ complexity where `n <- length(x)` (and `N <- length(vec)`). For (almost) sorted `x`, it will be even faster, basically $O(n)$.

This is the same computation as for the empirical distribution function, and indeed, `findInterval(t, sort(X))` is *identical* to $nF_n(t; X_1, \ldots, X_n)$ where F_n is the empirical distribution function of $X_1, \ldots, X_n$.

When `rightmost.closed = TRUE`, the result for `x[j] = vec[N]` ($= \max vec$), is `N - 1` as for all other values in the last interval.

Value

vector of length `length(x)` with values in `0:N` (and `NA`) where `N <- length(vec)`, or values coerced to `1:(N-1)` if and only if `all.inside = TRUE` (equivalently coercing all x values *inside* the intervals). Note that `NA`s are propagated from `x`, and `Inf` values are allowed in both `x` and `vec`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

`approx(*, method = "constant")` which is a generalization of `findInterval()`, `ecdf` for computing the empirical distribution function which is (up to a factor of n) also basically the same as `findInterval(.)`.

Examples

```
x <- 2:18
v <- c(5, 10, 15) # create two bins [5,10) and [10,15)
cbind(x, findInterval(x, v))

N <- 100
X <- sort(round(stats::rt(N, df = 2), 2))
tt <- c(-100, seq(-2, 2, len = 201), +100)
it <- findInterval(tt, X)
tt[it < 1 | it >= N] # only first and last are outside range(X)
```

---

force *Force Evaluation of an Argument*

Description

Forces the evaluation of a function argument.

Usage

```
force(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	a formal argument of the enclosing function.

Details

`force` forces the evaluation of a formal argument. This can be useful if the argument will be captured in a closure by the lexical scoping rules and will later be altered by an explicit assignment or an implicit assignment in a loop or an apply function.

Note

This is semantic sugar: just evaluating the symbol will do the same thing (see the examples).

`force` does not force the evaluation of other promises. (It works by forcing the promise that is created when the actual arguments of a call are matched to the formal arguments of a closure, the mechanism which implements *lazy evaluation*.)

Examples

```
f <- function(y) function() y
lf <- vector("list", 5)
for (i in seq_along(lf)) lf[[i]] <- f(i)
lf[[1]]()  # returns 5

g <- function(y) { force(y); function() y }
lg <- vector("list", 5)
for (i in seq_along(lg)) lg[[i]] <- g(i)
lg[[1]]()  # returns 1

## This is identical to
g <- function(y) { y; function() y }
```

Foreign *Foreign Function Interface*

Description

Functions to make calls to compiled code that has been loaded into .

Usage

```
      .C(.NAME, ..., NAOK = FALSE, DUP = TRUE, PACKAGE, ENCODING)
.Fortran(.NAME, ..., NAOK = FALSE, DUP = TRUE, PACKAGE, ENCODING)
```

Arguments

`.NAME`	a character string giving the name of a C function or Fortran subroutine, or an object of class `"NativeSymbolInfo"`, `"RegisteredNativeSymbol"` or `"NativeSymbol"` referring to such a name.
`...`	arguments to be passed to the foreign function. Up to 65.
`NAOK`	if `TRUE` then any `NA` or `NaN` or `Inf` values in the arguments are passed on to the foreign function. If `FALSE`, the presence of `NA` or `NaN` or `Inf` values is regarded as an error.
`DUP`	if `TRUE` then arguments are duplicated if necessary before their addresses are passed to C or Fortran.
`PACKAGE`	if supplied, confine the search for a character string `.NAME` to the DLL given by this argument (plus the conventional extension, '`.so`', '`.dll`', ...). This is intended to add safety for packages, which can ensure by using this argument that no other package can override their external symbols, and also speeds up the search (see 'Note').
`ENCODING`	For back-compatibility, accepted but ignored.

Details

These functions can be used to make calls to compiled C and Fortran 77 code. Later interfaces are `.Call` and `.External` which are more flexible and have better performance.

These functions are primitive, and `.NAME` is always matched to the first argument supplied (which should not be named). The other named arguments follow `...` and so cannot be abbreviated. For clarity, should avoid using names in the arguments passed to `...` that match or partially match `.NAME`.

Value

A list similar to the `...` list of arguments passed in (including any names given to the arguments), but reflecting any changes made by the C or Fortran code.

Argument types

The mapping of the types of arguments to C or Fortran arguments is

	C	Fortran
integer	int *	integer
numeric	double *	double precision
– or –	float *	real
complex	Rcomplex *	double complex
logical	int *	integer
character	char **	[see below]
raw	unsigned char *	not allowed
list	SEXP *	not allowed
other	SEXP	not allowed

Note: The C types corresponding to `integer` and `logical` are `int`, not `long` as in S. This difference matters on most 64-bit platforms, where `int` is 32-bit and `long` is 64-bit (but not on 64-bit Windows).

Note: The Fortran type corresponding to `logical` is `integer`, not `logical`: the difference matters on some Fortran compilers.

Numeric vectors in will be passed as type `double *` to C (and as `double precision` to Fortran) unless the argument has attribute `Csingle` set to `TRUE` (use `as.single` or `single`). This mechanism is only intended to be used to facilitate the interfacing of existing C and Fortran code.

The C type `Rcomplex` is defined in 'Complex.h' as a `typedef struct {double r; double i;}`. It may or may not be equivalent to the C99 `double complex` type, depending on the compiler used.

Logical values are sent as `0` (`FALSE`), `1` (`TRUE`) or `INT_MIN = -2147483648` (`NA`, but only if `NAOK = TRUE`), and the compiled code should return one of these three values: however non-zero values other than `INT_MIN` are mapped to `TRUE`.

Missing (`NA`) string values are passed to `.C` as the string "NA". As the C `char` type can represent all possible bit patterns there appears to be no way to distinguish missing strings from the string `"NA"`. If this distinction is important use `.Call`.

`.Fortran` passes the first (only) character string of a character vector as a C character array to Fortran: that may be usable as `character*255` if its true length is passed separately. Only up to 255 characters of the string are passed back. (How well this works, and even if it works at all, depends on the C and Fortran compilers and the platform.)

Lists, functions are other objects can (for historical reasons) be passed to `.C`, but the `.Call` interface is much preferred. All inputs apart from atomic vectors should be regarded as read-only, and all apart from vectors (including lists), functions and environments are now deprecated.

Warning

`DUP = FALSE` *is dangerous*. It was deprecated in 3.1.0 and will be disabled in 3.2.0.

People concerned about performance and especially memory usage are strongly recommended to use the `.Call` interface instead of these interfaces.

If you pass a local variable to `.C`/`.Fortran` with `DUP = FALSE`, your compiled code can alter the local variable and not just the copy in the return list. Worse, if you pass a local variable that is a formal parameter of the calling function, you may be able to change not only the local variable but the variable one level up. This will be very hard to trace.

With `DUP = FALSE`, character vectors cannot be used, and single precision values will not be returned.

It is safe to set `DUP = FALSE` provided you do not change any of the variables that might be affected, e.g.,

```
.C("Cfunction", input = x, output = numeric(10)).
```

In this case the `output` variable did not exist before the call so is not copied (even with `DUP = TRUE`). *If* the `input` variable is not changed in the C code of `Cfunction` you would be safe. Unfortunately, there is no automated check that the C function does not change its argument, and authors have frequently done so without realizing it.

In recent versions of most unnecessary copying is avoided: on the other hand using `DUP = FALSE` can omit *necessary* copying.

Fortran symbol names

All Fortran compilers known to be usable to compile map symbol names to lower case, and so does `.Fortran`.

Symbol names containing underscores are not valid Fortran 77 (although they are valid in Fortran 9x). Many Fortran 77 compilers will allow them but may translate them in a different way to names not containing underscores. Such names will often work with `.Fortran` (since how they are translated is detected when is built and the information used by `.Fortran`), but portable code should not use Fortran names containing underscores.

Use `.Fortran` with care for compiled Fortran 9x code: it may not work if the Fortran 9x compiler used differs from the Fortran 77 compiler used when configuring , especially if the subroutine name is not lower-case or includes an underscore. It is possible to use `.C` and do any necessary symbol-name translation yourself.

Copying of arguments

Character vectors are copied before calling the compiled code and to collect the results. For `DUP = TRUE` and other atomic vectors, the argument is copied before calling the compiled code if it is otherwise used in the calling code.

Non-atomic-vector objects are read-only to the C code and are never copied.

This behaviour can be changed by setting `options(CBoundsCheck = TRUE)`. In that case raw, logical, integer, double and complex vector arguments are copied both before and after calling the compiled code. The first copy made is extended at each end by guard bytes, and on return it is checked that these are unaltered. For `.C`, each element of a character vector uses guard bytes.

Note

If one of these functions is to be used frequently, do specify PACKAGE (to confine the search to a single DLL) or pass .NAME as one of the native symbol objects. Searching for symbols can take a long time, especially when many namespaces are loaded.

You may see PACKAGE = "base" for symbols linked into . Do not use this in your own code: such symbols are not part of the API and may be changed without warning.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

dyn.load, .Call.

The 'Writing R Extensions' manual.

---

formals *Access to and Manipulation of the Formal Arguments*

Description

Get or set the formal arguments of a function.

Usage

```
formals(fun = sys.function(sys.parent()))
formals(fun, envir = environment(fun)) <- value
```

Arguments

fun	a function object, or see 'Details'.
envir	environment in which the function should be defined.
value	a list (or pairlist) of expressions.

Details

For the first form, fun can also be a character string naming the function to be manipulated, which is searched for from the parent frame. If it is not specified, the function calling formals is used.

Only *closures* have formals, not primitive functions.

Value

formals returns the formal argument list of the function specified, as a pairlist, or NULL for a non-function or primitive.

The replacement form sets the formals of a function to the list/pairlist on the right hand side, and (potentially) resets the environment of the function.

See Also

args for a human-readable version, alist, body, function.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
length(formals(lm))      # the number of formal arguments
names(formals(boxplot))  # formal arguments names

f <- function(x) a+b
formals(f) <- alist(a = , b = 3) # function(a, b = 3) a+b
f(2) # result = 5
```

---

format *Encode in a Common Format*

Description

Format an object for pretty printing.

Usage

```
format(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
format(x, trim = FALSE, digits = NULL, nsmall = 0L,
       justify = c("left", "right", "centre", "none"),
       width = NULL, na.encode = TRUE, scientific = NA,
       big.mark = "",   big.interval = 3L,
       small.mark = "", small.interval = 5L,
       decimal.mark = ".", zero.print = NULL,
       drop0trailing = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
format(x, ..., justify = "none")

## S3 method for class factor
format(x, ...)

## S3 method for class AsIs
format(x, width = 12, ...)
```

Arguments

x	any object (conceptually); typically numeric.
trim	logical; if FALSE, logical, numeric and complex values are right-justified to a common width: if TRUE the leading blanks for justification are suppressed.
digits	how many significant digits are to be used for numeric and complex x. The default, NULL, uses getOption("digits"). This is a suggestion: enough decimal places will be used so that the smallest (in magnitude) number has this many significant digits, and also to satisfy nsmall. (For the interpretation for complex numbers see signif.)

`nsmall` the minimum number of digits to the right of the decimal point in formatting real/complex numbers in non-scientific formats. Allowed values are `0 <= nsmall <= 20`.

`justify` should a *character* vector be left-justified (the default), right-justified, centred or left alone.

`width` `default` method: the *minimum* field width or `NULL` or `0` for no restriction.

`AsIs` method: the *maximum* field width for non-character objects. `NULL` corresponds to the default `12`.

`na.encode` logical: should `NA` strings be encoded? Note this only applies to elements of character vectors, not to numerical, complex nor logical `NA`s, which are always encoded as `"NA"`.

`scientific` Either a logical specifying whether elements of a real or complex vector should be encoded in scientific format, or an integer penalty (see `options("scipen")`). Missing values correspond to the current default penalty.

`...` further arguments passed to or from other methods.

`big.mark, big.interval, small.mark, small.interval, decimal.mark, zero.print, drop0trailing` used for prettying (longish) numerical and complex sequences. Passed to `prettyNum`: that help page explains the details.

Details

`format` is a generic function. Apart from the methods described here there are methods for dates (see `format.Date`), date-times (see `format.POSIXct`)) and for other classes such as `format.octmode` and `format.dist`.

`format.data.frame` formats the data frame column by column, applying the appropriate method of `format` for each column. Methods for columns are often similar to `as.character` but offer more control. Matrix and data-frame columns will be converted to separate columns in the result, and character columns (normally all) will be given class `"AsIs"`.

`format.factor` converts the factor to a character vector and then calls the default method (and so `justify` applies).

`format.AsIs` deals with columns of complicated objects that have been extracted from a data frame. Character objects are passed to the default method (and so `width` does not apply). Otherwise it calls `toString` to convert the object to character (if a vector or list, element by element) and then right-justifies the result.

Justification for character vectors (and objects converted to character vectors by their methods) is done on display width (see `nchar`), taking double-width characters and the rendering of special characters (as escape sequences, including escaping backslash but not double quote: see `print.default`) into account. Thus the width is as displayed by `print(quote = FALSE)` and not as displayed by `cat`. Character strings are padded with blanks to the display width of the widest. (If `na.encode = FALSE` missing character strings are not included in the width computations and are not encoded.)

Numeric vectors are encoded with the minimum number of decimal places needed to display all the elements to at least the `digits` significant digits. However, if all the elements then have trailing zeroes, the number of decimal places is reduced until `nsmall` is reached or at least one element has a non-zero final digit; see also the argument documentation for `big.*`, `small.*` etc, above. See the note in `print.default` about `digits >= 16`.

Raw vectors are converted to their 2-digit hexadecimal representation by `as.character`.

The internal code respects the option `getOption("OutDec")` for the 'decimal mark', so if this is set to something other than `"."` then it takes precedence over argument `decimal.mark`.

Value

An object of similar structure to x containing character representations of the elements of the first argument x in a common format, and in the current locale's encoding.

For character, numeric, complex or factor x, dims and dimnames are preserved on matrices/arrays and names on vectors: no other attributes are copied.

If x is a list, the result is a character vector obtained by applying `format.default(x, ...)` to each element of the list (after unlisting elements which are themselves lists), and then collapsing the result for each element with `paste(collapse = ", ")`. The defaults in this case are `trim = TRUE, justify = "none"` since one does not usually want alignment in the collapsed strings.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`format.info` indicates how an atomic vector would be formatted.

`formatC`, `paste`, `as.character`, `sprintf`, `print`, `prettyNum`, `toString`, `encodeString`.

Examples

```
format(1:10)
format(1:10, trim = TRUE)

zz <- data.frame("(row names)"= c("aaaaa", "b"), check.names = FALSE)
format(zz)
format(zz, justify = "left")

## use of nsmall
format(13.7)
format(13.7, nsmall = 3)
format(c(6.0, 13.1), digits = 2)
format(c(6.0, 13.1), digits = 2, nsmall = 1)

## use of scientific
format(2^31-1)
format(2^31-1, scientific = TRUE)

## a list
z <- list(a = letters[1:3], b = (-pi+0i)^((-2:2)/2), c = c(1,10,100,1000),
          d = c("a", "longer", "character", "string"),
          q = quote( a + b ), e = expression(1+x))
## can you find the "2" small differences?
(f1 <- format(z, digits = 2))
(f2 <- format(z, digits = 2, justify = "left", trim = FALSE))
f1 == f2 ## 2 FALSE, 4 TRUE
```

format.info *format(.) Information*

Description

Information is returned on how `format(x, digits, nsmall)` would be formatted.

Usage

```
format.info(x, digits = NULL, nsmall = 0)
```

Arguments

x	an atomic vector; a potential argument of `format(x, ...)`.
digits	how many significant digits are to be used for numeric and complex x. The default, NULL, uses `getOption("digits")`.
nsmall	(see `format(..., nsmall)`).

Value

An `integer vector` of length 1, 3 or 6, say r.

For logical, integer and character vectors a single element, the width which would be used by format if `width = NULL`.

For numeric vectors:

r[1]	width (in characters) used by `format(x)`
r[2]	number of digits after decimal point.
r[3]	in 0:2; if $\geq$1, *exponential* representation would be used, with exponent length of r[3]+1.

For a complex vector the first three elements refer to the real parts, and there are three further elements corresponding to the imaginary parts.

See Also

`format` (notably about `digits >= 16`), `formatC`.

Examples

```
dd <- options("digits") ; options(digits = 7) #-- for the following
format.info(123)   # 3 0 0
format.info(pi)    # 8 6 0
format.info(1e8)   # 5 0 1 - exponential "1e+08"
format.info(1e222) # 6 0 2 - exponential "1e+222"

x <- pi*10^c(-10,-2,0:2,8,20)
names(x) <- formatC(x, width = 1, digits = 3, format = "g")
cbind(sapply(x, format))
t(sapply(x, format.info))

## using at least 8 digits right of "."
```

```
t(sapply(x, format.info, nsmall = 8))

# Reset old options:
options(dd)
```

`format.pval` *Format P Values*

Description

`format.pval` is intended for formatting p-values.

Usage

```
format.pval(pv, digits = max(1, getOption("digits") - 2),
            eps = .Machine$double.eps, na.form = "NA", ...)
```

Arguments

`pv`	a numeric vector.
`digits`	how many significant digits are to be used.
`eps`	a numerical tolerance: see 'Details'.
`na.form`	character representation of `NA`s.
`...`	further arguments to be passed to `format` such as `nsmall`.

Details

`format.pval` is mainly an auxiliary function for `print.summary.lm` etc., and does separate formatting for fixed, floating point and very small values; those less than `eps` are formatted as `"< [eps]"` (where '[eps]' stands for `format(eps, digits)`).

Value

A character vector.

Examples

```
format.pval(c(stats::runif(5), pi^-100, NA))
format.pval(c(0.1, 0.0001, 1e-27))
```

formatC *Formatting Using C-style Formats*

Description

Formatting numbers individually and flexibly, using C style format specifications.

Usage

```
formatC(x, digits = NULL, width = NULL,
        format = NULL, flag = "", mode = NULL,
        big.mark = "", big.interval = 3L,
        small.mark = "", small.interval = 5L,
        decimal.mark = ".", preserve.width = "individual",
        zero.print = NULL, drop0trailing = FALSE)

prettyNum(x, big.mark = "",   big.interval = 3L,
          small.mark = "", small.interval = 5L,
          decimal.mark = ".",
          preserve.width = c("common", "individual", "none"),
          zero.print = NULL, drop0trailing = FALSE, is.cmplx = NA,
          ...)
```

Arguments

x	an atomic numerical or character object, possibly complex only for prettyNum(), typically a vector of real numbers. Any class is discarded, with a warning.
digits	the desired number of digits after the decimal point (format = "f") or *significant* digits (format = "g", = "e" or = "fg"). Default: 2 for integer, 4 for real numbers. If less than 0, the C default of 6 digits is used. If specified as more than 50, 50 will be used with a warning unless format = "f" where it is limited to typically 324. (Not more than 15–21 digits need be accurate, depending on the OS and compiler used. This limit is just a precaution against segfaults in the underlying C runtime.)
width	the total field width; if both digits and width are unspecified, width defaults to 1, otherwise to digits + 1. width = 0 will use width = digits, width < 0 means left justify the number in this field (equivalent to flag = "-"). If necessary, the result will have more characters than width. For character data this is interpreted in characters (not bytes nor display width).
format	equal to "d" (for integers), "f", "e", "E", "g", "G", "fg" (for reals), or "s" (for strings). Default is "d" for integers, "g" for reals. "f" gives numbers in the usual xxx.xxx format; "e" and "E" give n.ddde+nn or n.dddE+nn (scientific format); "g" and "G" put x[i] into scientific format only if it saves space to do so. "fg" uses fixed format as "f", but digits as the minimum number of *significant* digits. This can lead to quite long result strings, see examples below. Note that unlike signif this prints large numbers with more significant digits than digits. Trailing zeros are *dropped* in this format, unless flag contains "#".

flag	For formatC, a character string giving a format modifier as in Kernighan and Ritchie (1988, page 243). "0" pads leading zeros; "-" does left adjustment, others are "+", " ", and "#". There can be more than one of these, in any order.
mode	"double" (or "real"), "integer" or "character". Default: Determined from the storage mode of x.
big.mark	character; if not empty used as mark between every big.interval decimals *before* (hence big) the decimal point.
big.interval	see big.mark above; defaults to 3.
small.mark	character; if not empty used as mark between every small.interval decimals *after* (hence small) the decimal point.
small.interval	see small.mark above; defaults to 5.
decimal.mark	the character to be used to indicate the numeric decimal point.
preserve.width	string specifying if the string widths should be preserved where possible in those cases where marks (big.mark or small.mark) are added. "common", the default, corresponds to format-like behavior whereas "individual" is the default in formatC().
zero.print	logical, character string or NULL specifying if and how *zeros* should be formatted specially. Useful for pretty printing 'sparse' objects.
drop0trailing	logical, indicating if trailing zeros, i.e., "0" *after* the decimal mark, should be removed; also drops "e+00" in exponential formats.
is.cmplx	optional logical, to be used when x is "character" to indicate if it stems from complex vector or not. By default (NA), x is checked to 'look like' complex.
...	arguments passed to format.

Details

If you set format it overrides the setting of mode, so formatC(123.45, mode = "double", format = "d") gives 123.

The rendering of scientific format is platform-dependent: some systems use n.ddde+nnn or n.dddenn rather than n.ddde+nn.

formatC does not necessarily align the numbers on the decimal point, so formatC(c(6.11, 13.1), digits = 2, format = "fg") gives c("6.1", " 13"). If you want common formatting for several numbers, use format.

prettyNum is the utility function for prettifying x. x can be complex (or format(<complex>), here. If x is not a character, format(x[i], ...) is applied to each element, and then it is left unchanged if all the other arguments are at their defaults. Note that prettyNum(x) may behave unexpectedly if x is a character vector not resulting from something like format(<number>): in particular it assumes that a period is a decimal mark.

Because gsub is used to insert the big.mark and small.mark, special characters need escaping. In particular, to insert a single backslash, use "\\\\".

The C doubles used for numerical vectors have signed zeros, which formatC may output as -0, -0.000 ....

Value

A character object of same size and attributes as x (after discarding any class), in the current locale's encoding.

Unlike format, each number is formatted individually. Looping over each element of x, the C function sprintf(...) is called for numeric inputs (inside the C function str_signif).

formatC: for character x, do simple (left or right) padding with white space.

Note

Prior to 3.0.2 this copied the class of x to the return value and could easily create invalid objects.

The default for decimal.mark is not appropriate for use within print methods: use decimal.mark = getOption("OutDec") there.

Author(s)

formatC was originally written by Bill Dunlap for S-PLUS, later much improved by Martin Maechler.

It was first adapted for by Friedrich Leisch and since much improved by the R Core team.

References

Kernighan, B. W. and Ritchie, D. M. (1988) *The C Programming Language.* Second edition. Prentice Hall.

See Also

format.

sprintf for more general C like formatting.

Examples

```
xx  <- pi * 10^(-5:4)
cbind(format(xx, digits = 4), formatC(xx))
cbind(formatC(xx, width = 9, flag = "-"))
cbind(formatC(xx, digits = 5, width = 8, format = "f", flag = "0"))
cbind(format(xx, digits = 4), formatC(xx, digits = 4, format = "fg"))

formatC(    c("a", "Abc", "no way"), width = -7)  # <=> flag = "-"
formatC(c((-1:1)/0,c(1,100)*pi), width = 8, digits = 1)

## note that some of the results here depend on the implementation
## of long-double arithmetic, which is platform-specific.
xx <- c(1e-12,-3.98765e-10,1.45645e-69,1e-70,pi*1e37,3.44e4)
##       1        2             3        4      5       6
formatC(xx)
formatC(xx, format = "fg")       # special "fixed" format.
formatC(xx[1:4], format = "f", digits = 75) #>> even longer strings

formatC(c(3.24, 2.3e-6), format = "f", digits = 11, drop0trailing = TRUE)

r <- c("76491283764.97430", "29.12345678901", "-7.1234", "-100.1","1123")
## American:
prettyNum(r, big.mark = ",")
## Some Europeans:
prettyNum(r, big.mark = "", decimal.mark = ",")

(dd <- sapply(1:10, function(i) paste((9:0)[1:i], collapse = "")))
prettyNum(dd, big.mark = "")
```

```
## examples of small.mark
pN <- stats::pnorm(1:7, lower.tail = FALSE)
cbind(format (pN, small.mark = " ", digits = 15))
cbind(formatC(pN, small.mark = " ", digits = 17, format = "f"))

cbind(ff <- format(1.2345 + 10^(0:5), width = 11, big.mark = ""))
## all with same width (one more than the specified minimum)

## individual formatting to common width:
fc <- formatC(1.234 + 10^(0:8), format = "fg", width = 11, big.mark = "")
cbind(fc)

## complex numbers:
r <- 10.0000001; rv <- (r/10)^(1:10)
(zv <- (rv + 1i*rv))
op <- options(digits = 7) ## (system default)
(pnv <- prettyNum(zv))
stopifnot(pnv == "1+1i", pnv == format(zv),
          pnv == prettyNum(zv, drop0trailing = TRUE))
## more digits change the picture:
options(digits = 8)
head(fv <- format(zv), 3)
prettyNum(fv)
prettyNum(fv, drop0trailing = TRUE) # a bit nicer
options(op)
```

`formatDL` *Format Description Lists*

Description

Format vectors of items and their descriptions as 2-column tables or LaTeX-style description lists.

Usage

```
formatDL(x, y, style = c("table", "list"),
         width = 0.9 * getOption("width"), indent = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	a vector giving the items to be described, or a list of length 2 or a matrix with 2 columns giving both items and descriptions.
`y`	a vector of the same length as `x` with the corresponding descriptions. Only used if `x` does not already give the descriptions.
`style`	a character string specifying the rendering style of the description information. If `"table"`, a two-column table with items and descriptions as columns is produced (similar to Texinfo's @table environment. If `"list"`, a LaTeX-style tagged description list is obtained.
`width`	a positive integer giving the target column for wrapping lines in the output.
`indent`	a positive integer specifying the indentation of the second column in table style, and the indentation of continuation lines in list style. Must not be greater than `width/2`, and defaults to `width/3` for table style and `width/9` for list style.

Details

After extracting the vectors of items and corresponding descriptions from the arguments, both are coerced to character vectors.

In table style, items with more than `indent - 3` characters are displayed on a line of their own.

Value

a character vector with the formatted entries.

Examples

```
## Provide a nice summary of the numerical characteristics of the
## machine R is running on:
writeLines(formatDL(unlist(.Machine)))
## Inspect Sys.getenv() results in "list" style (by default, these are
## printed in "table" style):
writeLines(formatDL(Sys.getenv(), style = "list"))
```

`function` *Function Definition*

Description

These functions provide the base mechanisms for defining new functions in the language.

Usage

```
function( arglist ) expr
return(value)
```

Arguments

`arglist`	Empty or one or more name or name=expression terms.
`expr`	An expression.
`value`	An expression.

Details

The names in an argument list can be back-quoted non-standard names (see 'backquote').

If `value` is missing, `NULL` is returned. If it is a single expression, the value of the evaluated expression is returned. (The expression is evaluated as soon as `return` is called, in the evaluation frame of the function and before any `on.exit` expression is evaluated.)

If the end of a function is reached without calling `return`, the value of the last evaluated expression is returned.

Technical details

This type of function is not the only type in : they are called *closures* (a name with origins in LISP) to distinguish them from primitive functions.

A closure has three components, its `formals` (its argument list), its `body` (`expr` in the 'Usage' section) and its `environment` which provides the enclosure of the evaluation frame when the closure is used.

There is an optional further component if the closure has been byte-compiled. This is not normally user-visible, but it indicated when functions are printed.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`args`.

`formals`, `body` and `environment` for accessing the component parts of a function.

`debug` for debugging; using `invisible` inside `return(.)` for returning *invisibly*.

Examples

```
norm <- function(x) sqrt(x%*%x)
norm(1:4)

## An anonymous function:
(function(x, y){ z <- x^2 + y^2; x+y+z })(0:7, 1)
```

---

funprog — *Common Higher-Order Functions in Functional Programming Languages*

Description

`Reduce` uses a binary function to successively combine the elements of a given vector and a possibly given initial value. `Filter` extracts the elements of a vector for which a predicate (logical) function gives true. `Find` and `Position` give the first or last such element and its position in the vector, respectively. `Map` applies a function to the corresponding elements of given vectors. `Negate` creates the negation of a given function.

Usage

```
Reduce(f, x, init, right = FALSE, accumulate = FALSE)
Filter(f, x)
Find(f, x, right = FALSE, nomatch = NULL)
Map(f, ...)
Negate(f)
Position(f, x, right = FALSE, nomatch = NA_integer_)
```

Arguments

f	a function of the appropriate arity (binary for Reduce, unary for Filter, Find and Position, k-ary for Map if this is called with k arguments). An arbitrary predicate function for Negate.
x	a vector.
init	an object of the same kind as the elements of x.
right	a logical indicating whether to proceed from left to right (default) or from right to left.
accumulate	a logical indicating whether the successive reduce combinations should be accumulated. By default, only the final combination is used.
nomatch	the value to be returned in the case when "no match" (no element satisfying the predicate) is found.
...	vectors.

Details

If init is given, Reduce logically adds it to the start (when proceeding left to right) or the end of x, respectively. If this possibly augmented vector v has $n > 1$ elements, Reduce successively applies f to the elements of v from left to right or right to left, respectively. I.e., a left reduce computes $l_1 = f(v_1, v_2)$, $l_2 = f(l_1, v_3)$, etc., and returns $l_{n-1} = f(l_{n-2}, v_n)$, and a right reduce does $r_{n-1} = f(v_{n-1}, v_n)$, $r_{n-2} = f(v_{n-2}, r_{n-1})$ and returns $r_1 = f(v_1, r_2)$. (E.g., if v is the sequence (2, 3, 4) and f is division, left and right reduce give $(2/3)/4 = 1/6$ and $2/(3/4) = 8/3$, respectively.) If v has only a single element, this is returned; if there are no elements, NULL is returned. Thus, it is ensured that f is always called with 2 arguments.

The current implementation is non-recursive to ensure stability and scalability.

Reduce is patterned after Common Lisp's reduce. A reduce is also known as a fold (e.g., in Haskell) or an accumulate (e.g., in the C++ Standard Template Library). The accumulative version corresponds to Haskell's scan functions.

Filter applies the unary predicate function f to each element of x, coercing to logical if necessary, and returns the subset of x for which this gives true. Note that possible NA values are currently always taken as false; control over NA handling may be added in the future. Filter corresponds to filter in Haskell or remove-if-not in Common Lisp.

Find and Position are patterned after Common Lisp's find-if and position-if, respectively. If there is an element for which the predicate function gives true, then the first or last such element or its position is returned depending on whether right is false (default) or true, respectively. If there is no such element, the value specified by nomatch is returned. The current implementation is not optimized for performance.

Map is a simple wrapper to mapply which does not attempt to simplify the result, similar to Common Lisp's mapcar (with arguments being recycled, however). Future versions may allow some control of the result type.

Negate corresponds to Common Lisp's complement. Given a (predicate) function f, it creates a function which returns the logical negation of what f returns.

See Also

Function clusterMap and mcmapply (not Windows) in package **parallel** provide parallel versions of Map.

Examples

```
## A general-purpose adder:
add <- function(x) Reduce("+", x)
add(list(1, 2, 3))
## Like sum(), but can also used for adding matrices etc., as it will
## use the appropriate + method in each reduction step.
## More generally, many generics meant to work on arbitrarily many
## arguments can be defined via reduction:
FOO <- function(...) Reduce(FOO2, list(...))
FOO2 <- function(x, y) UseMethod("FOO2")
## FOO() methods can then be provided via FOO2() methods.

## A general-purpose cumulative adder:
cadd <- function(x) Reduce("+", x, accumulate = TRUE)
cadd(seq_len(7))

## A simple function to compute continued fractions:
cfrac <- function(x) Reduce(function(u, v) u + 1 / v, x, right = TRUE)
## Continued fraction approximation for pi:
cfrac(c(3, 7, 15, 1, 292))
## Continued fraction approximation for Eulers number (e):
cfrac(c(2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 4, 1, 1, 6, 1, 1, 8))

## Iterative function application:
Funcall <- function(f, ...) f(...)
## Compute log(exp(acos(cos(0))
Reduce(Funcall, list(log, exp, acos, cos), 0, right = TRUE)
## n-fold iterate of a function, functional style:
Iterate <- function(f, n = 1)
    function(x) Reduce(Funcall, rep.int(list(f), n), x, right = TRUE)
## Continued fraction approximation to the golden ratio:
Iterate(function(x) 1 + 1 / x, 30)(1)
## which is the same as
cfrac(rep.int(1, 31))
## Computing square root approximations for x as fixed points of the
## function t |-> (t + x / t) / 2, as a function of the initial value:
asqrt <- function(x, n) Iterate(function(t) (t + x / t) / 2, n)
asqrt(2, 30)(10) # Starting from a positive value => +sqrt(2)
asqrt(2, 30)(-1) # Starting from a negative value => -sqrt(2)

## A list of all functions in the base environment:
funs <- Filter(is.function, sapply(ls(baseenv()), get, baseenv()))
## Functions in base with more than 10 arguments:
names(Filter(function(f) length(formals(args(f))) > 10, funs))
## Number of functions in base with a ... argument:
length(Filter(function(f)
              any(names(formals(args(f))) %in% "..."),
              funs))

## Find all objects in the base environment which are *not* functions:
Filter(Negate(is.function),  sapply(ls(baseenv()), get, baseenv()))
```

---

gc *Garbage Collection*

Description

A call of gc causes a garbage collection to take place. gcinfo sets a flag so that automatic collection is either silent (verbose = FALSE) or prints memory usage statistics (verbose = TRUE).

Usage

```
gc(verbose = getOption("verbose"), reset = FALSE)
gcinfo(verbose)
```

Arguments

verbose	logical; if TRUE, the garbage collection prints statistics about cons cells and the space allocated for vectors.
reset	logical; if TRUE the values for maximum space used are reset to the current values.

Details

A call of gc causes a garbage collection to take place. This will also take place automatically without user intervention, and the primary purpose of calling gc is for the report on memory usage.

However, it can be useful to call gc after a large object has been removed, as this may prompt to return memory to the operating system.

allocates space for vectors in multiples of 8 bytes: hence the report of "Vcells", a relict of an earlier allocator (that used a vector heap).

When gcinfo(TRUE) is in force, messages are sent to the message connection at each garbage collection of the form

```
Garbage collection 12 = 10+0+2 (level 0) ...
6.4 Mbytes of cons cells used (58%)
2.0 Mbytes of vectors used (32%)
```

Here the last two lines give the current memory usage rounded up to the next 0.1Mb and as a percentage of the current trigger value. The first line gives a breakdown of the number of garbage collections at various levels (for an explanation see the 'R Internals' manual).

Value

gc returns a matrix with rows "Ncells" (*cons cells*), usually 28 bytes each on 32-bit systems and 56 bytes on 64-bit systems, and "Vcells" (*vector cells*, 8 bytes each), and columns "used" and "gc trigger", each also interpreted in megabytes (rounded up to the next 0.1Mb).

If maxima have been set for either "Ncells" or "Vcells", a fifth column is printed giving the current limits in Mb (with NA denoting no limit).

The final two columns show the maximum space used since the last call to gc(reset = TRUE) (or since started).

gcinfo returns the previous value of the flag.

See Also

The 'R Internals' manual.

Memory on 's memory management, and gctorture if you are an developer.

reg.finalizer for actions to happen at garbage collection.

Examples

```
gc() #- do it now
gcinfo(TRUE) #-- in the future, show when R does it
x <- integer(100000); for(i in 1:18) x <- c(x, i)
gcinfo(verbose = FALSE) #-- dont show it anymore

gc(TRUE)

gc(reset = TRUE)
```

---

gc.time *Report Time Spent in Garbage Collection*

Description

This function reports the time spent in garbage collection so far in the session while GC timing was enabled.

Usage

```
gc.time(on = TRUE)
```

Arguments

on	logical; if TRUE, GC timing is enabled.

Details

Due to timer resolution this may be under-estimate.

This is a primitive.

Value

A numerical vector of length 5 giving the user CPU time, the system CPU time, the elapsed time and children's user and system CPU times (normally both zero), of time spent doing garbage collection whilst GC timing was enabled.

Times of child processes are not available on Windows and will always be given as NA.

See Also

gc, proc.time for the timings for the session.

Examples

```
gc.time()
```

gctorture *Torture Garbage Collector*

Description

Provokes garbage collection on (nearly) every memory allocation. Intended to ferret out memory protection bugs. Also makes run *very* slowly, unfortunately.

Usage

```
gctorture(on = TRUE)
gctorture2(step, wait = step, inhibit_release = FALSE)
```

Arguments

on	logical; turning it on/off.
step	integer; run GC every step allocations; step = 0 turns the GC torture off.
wait	integer; number of allocations to wait before starting GC torture.
inhibit_release	logical; do not release free objects for re-use: use with caution.

Details

Calling gctorture(TRUE) instructs the memory manager to force a full GC on every allocation. gctorture2 provides a more refined interface that allows the start of the GC torture to be deferred and also gives the option of running a GC only every step allocations.

The third argument to gctorture2 is only used if R has been configured with a strict write barrier enabled. When this is the case all garbage collections are full collections, and the memory manager marks free nodes and enables checks in many situations that signal an error when a free node is used. This can help greatly in isolating unprotected values in C code. It does not detect the case where a node becomes free and is reallocated. The inhibit_release argument can be used to prevent such reallocation. This will cause memory to grow and should be used with caution and in conjunction with operating system facilities to monitor and limit process memory use.

gctorture2 can also be invoked via environment variables at the start of the session. R_GCTORTURE corresponds to the step argument, R_GCTORTURE_WAIT to wait, and R_GCTORTURE_INHIBIT_RELEASE to inhibit_release.

Value

Previous value of first argument.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard and Luke Tierney

`get` *Return the Value of a Named Object*

Description

Search by name for an object (`get`) or zero or more objects (`mget`).

Usage

```
get(x, pos = -1, envir = as.environment(pos), mode = "any",
    inherits = TRUE)

mget(x, envir = as.environment(-1), mode = "any", ifnotfound,
     inherits = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	For `get`, an object name (given as a character string). For `mget`, a character vector of object names.
`pos, envir`	where to look for the object (see 'Details'); if omitted search as if the name of the object appeared unquoted in an expression.
`mode`	the mode or type of object sought: see the 'Details' section.
`inherits`	should the enclosing frames of the environment be searched?
`ifnotfound`	A `list` of values to be used if the item is not found: it will be coerced to a list if necessary.

Details

The `pos` argument can specify the environment in which to look for the object in any of several ways: as a positive integer (the position in the `search` list); as the character string name of an element in the search list; or as an `environment` (including using `sys.frame` to access the currently active function calls). The default of `-1` indicates the current environment of the call to `get`. The `envir` argument is an alternative way to specify an environment.

These functions look to see if each of the name(s) `x` have a value bound to it in the specified environment. If `inherits` is `TRUE` and a value is not found for `x` in the specified environment, the enclosing frames of the environment are searched until the name `x` is encountered. See `environment` and the 'R Language Definition' manual for details about the structure of environments and their enclosures.

If `mode` is specified then only objects of that type are sought. `mode` here is a mixture of the meanings of `typeof` and `mode`: `"function"` covers primitive functions and operators, `"numeric"`, `"integer"` and `"double"` all refer to any numeric type, `"symbol"` and `"name"` are equivalent *but* `"language"` must be used (and not `"call"` or `"("`).

For `mget`, the values of `mode` and `ifnotfound` can be either the same length as `x` or of length 1. The argument `ifnotfound` must be a list containing either the value to use if the requested item is not found or a function of one argument which will be called if the item is not found, with argument the name of the item being requested.

Value

For `get`, the object found. If no object is found an error results.

For `mget`, a named list of objects (found or specified *via* `ifnotfound`).

Note

The reverse of `a <- get(nam)` is `assign(nam, a)`.

`inherits = TRUE` is the default for `get` in but not for S where it had a different meaning.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`exists`, `assign`.

Examples

```
get("%o%")

## test mget
e1 <- new.env()
mget(letters, e1, ifnotfound = as.list(LETTERS))
```

`getDLLRegisteredRoutines`
Reflectance Information for C/Fortran routines in a DLL

Description

This function allows us to query the set of routines in a DLL that are registered with R to enhance dynamic lookup, error handling when calling native routines, and potentially security in the future. This function provides a description of each of the registered routines in the DLL for the different interfaces, i.e. `.C`, `.Call`, `.Fortran` and `.External`.

Usage

```
getDLLRegisteredRoutines(dll, addNames = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`dll`	a character string or `DLLInfo` object. The character string specifies the file name of the DLL of interest, and is given without the file name extension (e.g., the '`.dll`' or '`.so`') and with no directory/path information. So a file '`MyPackage/libs/MyPackage.so`' would be specified as '`MyPackage`'. The `DLLInfo` objects can be obtained directly in calls to `dyn.load` and `library.dynam`, or can be found after the DLL has been loaded using `getLoadedDLLs`, which returns a list of `DLLInfo` objects (index-able by DLL file name). The `DLLInfo` approach avoids any ambiguities related to two DLLs having the same name but corresponding to files in different directories.

addNames — a logical value. If this is TRUE, the elements of the returned lists are named using the names of the routines (as seen by R via registration or raw name). If FALSE, these names are not computed and assigned to the lists. As a result, the call should be quicker. The name information is also available in the NativeSymbolInfo objects in the lists.

Details

This takes the registration information after it has been registered and processed by the R internals. In other words, it uses the extended information.

There is print methods for the class, which prints only the types which have registered routines.

Value

A list of class "DLLRegisteredRoutines" with four elements corresponding to the routines registered for the .C, .Call, .Fortran and .External interfaces. Each is a list with as many elements as there were routines registered for that interface.

Each element identifies a routine and is an object of class "NativeSymbolInfo". An object of this class has the following fields:

name — the registered name of the routine (not necessarily the name in the C code).

address — the memory address of the routine as resolved in the loaded DLL. This may be NULL if the symbol has not yet been resolved.

dll — an object of class DLLInfo describing the DLL. This is same for all elements returned.

numParameters — the number of arguments the native routine is to be called with. In the future, we will provide information about the types of the parameters also.

Author(s)

Duncan Temple Lang <duncan@wald.ucdavis.edu>

References

'Writing R Extensions Manual' for symbol registration.

R News, Volume 1/3, September 2001. "In search of C/C++ & Fortran Symbols"

See Also

getLoadedDLLs, getNativeSymbolInfo for information on the entry points listed.

Examples

```
dlls <- getLoadedDLLs()
getDLLRegisteredRoutines(dlls[["base"]])

getDLLRegisteredRoutines("stats")
```

`getLoadedDLLs` *Get DLLs Loaded in Current Session*

Description

This function provides a way to get a list of all the DLLs (see `dyn.load`) that are currently loaded in the session.

Usage

```
getLoadedDLLs()
```

Details

This queries the internal table that manages the DLLs.

Value

An object of class `"DLLInfoList"` which is a list with an element corresponding to each DLL that is currently loaded in the session. Each element is an object of class `"DLLInfo"` which has the following entries.

`name`	the abbreviated name.
`path`	the fully qualified name of the loaded DLL.
`dynamicLookup`	a logical value indicating whether R uses only the registration information to resolve symbols or whether it searches the entire symbol table of the DLL.
`handle`	a reference to the C-level data structure that provides access to the contents of the DLL. This is an object of class `"DLLHandle"`.

Note that the class `DLLInfo` has an overloaded method for `$` which can be used to resolve native symbols within that DLL. Therefore, one must access the R-level elements described above using `[[`, e.g. `x[["name"]]` or `x[["handle"]]`.

Note

We are starting to use the `handle` elements in the DLL object to resolve symbols more directly in .

Author(s)

Duncan Temple Lang <duncan@wald.ucdavis.edu>.

See Also

`getDLLRegisteredRoutines`, `getNativeSymbolInfo`

Examples

```
getLoadedDLLs()
```

getNativeSymbolInfo *Obtain a Description of one or more Native (C/Fortran) Symbols*

Description

This finds and returns a description of one or more dynamically loaded or 'exported' built-in native symbols. For each name, it returns information about the name of the symbol, the library in which it is located and, if available, the number of arguments it expects and by which interface it should be called (i.e `.Call`, `.C`, `.Fortran`, or `.External`). Additionally, it returns the address of the symbol and this can be passed to other C routines. Specifically, this provides a way to explicitly share symbols between different dynamically loaded package libraries. Also, it provides a way to query where symbols were resolved, and aids diagnosing strange behavior associated with dynamic resolution.

Usage

```
getNativeSymbolInfo(name, PACKAGE, unlist = TRUE,
                    withRegistrationInfo = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`name`	the name(s) of the native symbol(s).
`PACKAGE`	an optional argument that specifies to which DLL to restrict the search for this symbol. If this is `"base"`, we search in the executable itself.
`unlist`	a logical value which controls how the result is returned if the function is called with the name of a single symbol. If `unlist` is `TRUE` and the number of symbol names in `name` is one, then the `NativeSymbolInfo` object is returned. If it is `FALSE`, then a list of `NativeSymbolInfo` objects is returned. This is ignored if the number of symbols passed in `name` is more than one. To be compatible with earlier versions of this function, this defaults to `TRUE`.
`withRegistrationInfo`	a logical value indicating whether, if `TRUE`, to return information that was registered with about the symbol and its parameter types if such information is available, or if `FALSE` to return just the address of the symbol.

Details

This uses the same mechanism for resolving symbols as is used in all the native interfaces (`.Call`, etc.). If the symbol has been explicitly registered by the DLL in which it is contained, information about the number of arguments and the interface by which it should be called will be returned. Otherwise, a generic native symbol object is returned.

Value

Generally, a list of `NativeSymbolInfo` elements whose elements can be indexed by the elements of `name` in the call. Each `NativeSymbolInfo` object is a list containing the following elements:

`name`	the name of the symbol, as given by the `name` argument.

address — if withRegistrationInfo is FALSE, this is the native memory address of the symbol which can be used to invoke the routine, and also to compare with other symbol addresses. This is an external pointer object and of class NativeSymbol. If withRegistrationInfo is TRUE and registration information is available for the symbol, then this is an object of class RegisteredNativeSymbol and is a reference to an internal data type that has access to the routine pointer and registration information. This too can be used in calls to .Call, .C, .Fortran and .External.

package — a list containing 3 elements:

name the short form of the library name which can be used as the value of the PACKAGE argument in the different native interface functions.

path the fully qualified name of the DLL.

dynamicLookup a logical value indicating whether dynamic resolution is used when looking for symbols in this library, or only registered routines can be located.

If the routine was explicitly registered by the dynamically loaded library, the list contains a fourth field

numParameters — the number of arguments that should be passed in a call to this routine.

Additionally, the list will have an additional class, being CRoutine, CallRoutine, FortranRoutine or ExternalRoutine corresponding to the R interface by which it should be invoked.

If any of the symbols is not found, an error is raised.

If name contains only one symbol name and unlist is TRUE, then the single NativeSymbolInfo is returned rather than the list containing that one element.

Note

One motivation for accessing this reflectance information is to be able to pass native routines to C routines as function pointers in C. This allows us to treat native routines and functions in a similar manner, such as when passing an function to C code that makes callbacks to that function at different points in its computation (e.g., nls). Additionally, we can resolve the symbol just once and avoid resolving it repeatedly or using the internal cache.

Author(s)

Duncan Temple Lang

References

For information about registering native routines, see "In Search of C/C++ & FORTRAN Routines", R-News, volume 1, number 3, 2001, p20–23 (http://cran.r-project.org/doc/Rnews/Rnews_2001-3.pdf).

See Also

getDLLRegisteredRoutines, is.loaded, .C, .Fortran, .External, .Call, dyn.load.

gettext *Translate Text Messages*

Description

If Native Language Support was enabled in this build of , attempt to translate character vectors or set where the translations are to be found.

Usage

```
gettext(..., domain = NULL)

ngettext(n, msg1, msg2, domain = NULL)

bindtextdomain(domain, dirname = NULL)
```

Arguments

`...`	One or more character vectors.
`domain`	The 'domain' for the translation.
`n`	a non-negative integer.
`msg1`	the message to be used in English for `n = 1`.
`msg2`	the message to be used in English for `n = 0, 2, 3, ...`.
`dirname`	The directory in which to find translated message catalogs for the domain.

Details

If `domain` is `NULL` or `""`, and `gettext` is called from a function in the namespace of package **pkg** the domain is set to `"R-pkg"`. Otherwise there is no default domain.

If a suitable domain is found, each character string is offered for translation, and replaced by its translation into the current language if one is found. The value (logical) `NA` suppresses any translation.

Conventionally the domain for warning/error messages in package **pkg** is `"R-pkg"`, and that for C-level messages is `"pkg"`.

For `gettext`, leading and trailing whitespace is ignored when looking for the translation.

`ngettext` is used where the message needs to vary by a single integer. Translating such messages is subject to very specific rules for different languages: see the GNU Gettext Manual. The string will often contain a single instance of `%d` to be used in `sprintf`. If English is used, `msg1` is returned if `n == 1` and `msg2` in all other cases.

`bindtextdomain` is a wrapper for the C function of the same name: your system may have a `man` page for it. With a non-`NULL` `dirname` it specifies where to look for message catalogues: with `domain = NULL` it returns the current location.

Value

For `gettext`, a character vector, one element per string in `...`. If translation is not enabled or no domain is found or no translation is found in that domain, the original strings are returned.

For `ngettext`, a character string.

For `bindtextdomain`, a character string giving the current base directory, or `NULL` if setting it failed.

See Also

stop and warning make use of gettext to translate messages.

xgettext for extracting translatable strings from source files.

Examples

```
bindtextdomain("R")  # non-null if and only if NLS is enabled

for(n in 0:3)
    print(sprintf(ngettext(n, "%d variable has missing values",
                              "%d variables have missing values"),
                  n))

## Not run:
## for translation, those strings should appear in R-pkg.pot as
msgid        "%d variable has missing values"
msgid_plural "%d variables have missing values"
msgstr[0] ""
msgstr[1] ""

## End(Not run)

miss <- c("one", "or", "another")
cat(ngettext(length(miss), "variable", "variables"),
    paste(sQuote(miss), collapse = ", "),
    ngettext(length(miss), "contains", "contain"), "missing values\n")

## better for translators would be to use
cat(sprintf(ngettext(length(miss),
                     "variable %s contains missing values\n",
                     "variables %s contain missing values\n"),
            paste(sQuote(miss), collapse = ", ")))
```

---

getwd *Get or Set Working Directory*

Description

getwd returns an absolute filepath representing the current working directory of the process; setwd(dir) is used to set the working directory to dir.

Usage

```
getwd()
setwd(dir)
```

Arguments

dir	A character string: tilde expansion will be done.

Value

getwd returns a character string or NULL if the working directory is not available. On Windows the path returned will use / as the path separator and be encoded in UTF-8. The path will not have a trailing / unless it is the root directory (of a drive or share on Windows).

setwd returns the current directory before the change, invisibly and with the same conventions as getwd. It will give an error if it does not succeed (including if it is not implemented).

Note

Note that the return value is said to be **an** absolute filepath: there can be more than one representation of the path to a directory and on some OSes the value returned can differ after changing directories and changing back to the same directory (for example if symbolic links have been traversed).

See Also

list.files for the *contents* of a directory.

normalizePath for a 'canonical' path name.

Examples

```
(WD <- getwd())
if (!is.null(WD)) setwd(WD)
```

---

gl *Generate Factor Levels*

Description

Generate factors by specifying the pattern of their levels.

Usage

```
gl(n, k, length = n*k, labels = seq_len(n), ordered = FALSE)
```

Arguments

n	an integer giving the number of levels.
k	an integer giving the number of replications.
length	an integer giving the length of the result.
labels	an optional vector of labels for the resulting factor levels.
ordered	a logical indicating whether the result should be ordered or not.

Value

The result has levels from 1 to n with each value replicated in groups of length k out to a total length of length.

gl is modelled on the *GLIM* function of the same name.

See Also

The underlying `factor()`.

Examples

```
## First control, then treatment:
gl(2, 8, labels = c("Control", "Treat"))
## 20 alternating 1s and 2s
gl(2, 1, 20)
## alternating pairs of 1s and 2s
gl(2, 2, 20)
```

---

grep *Pattern Matching and Replacement*

Description

`grep`, `grepl`, `regexpr` and `gregexpr` search for matches to argument `pattern` within each element of a character vector: they differ in the format of and amount of detail in the results.

`sub` and `gsub` perform replacement of the first and all matches respectively.

Usage

```
grep(pattern, x, ignore.case = FALSE, perl = FALSE, value = FALSE,
     fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE, invert = FALSE)

grepl(pattern, x, ignore.case = FALSE, perl = FALSE,
      fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)

sub(pattern, replacement, x, ignore.case = FALSE, perl = FALSE,
    fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)

gsub(pattern, replacement, x, ignore.case = FALSE, perl = FALSE,
     fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)

regexpr(pattern, text, ignore.case = FALSE, perl = FALSE,
        fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)

gregexpr(pattern, text, ignore.case = FALSE, perl = FALSE,
         fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)

regexec(pattern, text, ignore.case = FALSE,
        fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`pattern`	character string containing a regular expression (or character string for `fixed = TRUE`) to be matched in the given character vector. Coerced by `as.character` to a character string if possible. If a character vector of length 2 or more is supplied, the first element is used with a warning. Missing values are allowed except for `regexpr` and `gregexpr`.

x, text	a character vector where matches are sought, or an object which can be coerced by as.character to a character vector. Long vectors are supported.
ignore.case	if FALSE, the pattern matching is *case sensitive* and if TRUE, case is ignored during matching.
perl	logical. Should perl-compatible regexps be used?
value	if FALSE, a vector containing the (integer) indices of the matches determined by grep is returned, and if TRUE, a vector containing the matching elements themselves is returned.
fixed	logical. If TRUE, pattern is a string to be matched as is. Overrides all conflicting arguments.
useBytes	logical. If TRUE the matching is done byte-by-byte rather than character-by-character. See 'Details'.
invert	logical. If TRUE return indices or values for elements that do *not* match.
replacement	a replacement for matched pattern in sub and gsub. Coerced to character if possible. For fixed = FALSE this can include backreferences "\1" to "\9" to parenthesized subexpressions of pattern. For perl = TRUE only, it can also contain "\U" or "\L" to convert the rest of the replacement to upper or lower case and "\E" to end case conversion. If a character vector of length 2 or more is supplied, the first element is used with a warning. If NA, all elements in the result corresponding to matches will be set to NA.

Details

Arguments which should be character strings or character vectors are coerced to character if possible.

Each of these functions (apart from regexec, which currently does not support Perl-style regular expressions) operates in one of three modes:

1. fixed = TRUE: use exact matching.
2. perl = TRUE: use Perl-style regular expressions.
3. fixed = FALSE, perl = FALSE: use POSIX 1003.2 extended regular expressions.

See the help pages on regular expression for details of the different types of regular expressions.

The two *sub functions differ only in that sub replaces only the first occurrence of a pattern whereas gsub replaces all occurrences. If replacement contains backreferences which are not defined in pattern the result is undefined (but most often the backreference is taken to be "").

For regexpr, gregexpr and regexec it is an error for pattern to be NA, otherwise NA is permitted and gives an NA match.

The main effect of useBytes is to avoid errors/warnings about invalid inputs and spurious matches in multibyte locales, but for regexpr it changes the interpretation of the output. It inhibits the conversion of inputs with marked encodings, and is forced if any input is found which is marked as "bytes" see Encoding).

Caseless matching does not make much sense for bytes in a multibyte locale, and you should expect it only to work for ASCII characters if useBytes = TRUE.

regexpr and gregexpr with perl = TRUE allow Python-style named captures, but not for *long vector* inputs.

Invalid inputs in the current locale are warned about up to 5 times.

Caseless matching with PERL = TRUE for non-ASCII characters depends on the PCRE library being compiled with 'Unicode property support': an external library might not be.

Value

`grep(value = FALSE)` returns a vector of the indices of the elements of `x` that yielded a match (or not, for `invert = TRUE`. This will be an integer vector unless the input is a *long vector*, when it will be a double vector.

`grep(value = TRUE)` returns a character vector containing the selected elements of `x` (after coercion, preserving names but no other attributes).

`grepl` returns a logical vector (match or not for each element of `x`).

For `sub` and `gsub` return a character vector of the same length and with the same attributes as `x` (after possible coercion to character). Elements of character vectors `x` which are not substituted will be returned unchanged (including any declared encoding). If `useBytes = FALSE` a non-ASCII substituted result will often be in UTF-8 with a marked encoding (e.g., if there is a UTF-8 input, and in a multibyte locale unless `fixed = TRUE`). Such strings can be re-encoded by `enc2native`.

`regexpr` returns an integer vector of the same length as `text` giving the starting position of the first match or -1 if there is none, with attribute `"match.length"`, an integer vector giving the length of the matched text (or -1 for no match). The match positions and lengths are in characters unless `useBytes = TRUE` is used, when they are in bytes. If named capture is used there are further attributes `"capture.start"`, `"capture.length"` and `"capture.names"`.

`gregexpr` returns a list of the same length as `text` each element of which is of the same form as the return value for `regexpr`, except that the starting positions of every (disjoint) match are given.

`regexec` returns a list of the same length as `text` each element of which is either -1 if there is no match, or a sequence of integers with the starting positions of the match and all substrings corresponding to parenthesized subexpressions of `pattern`, with attribute `"match.length"` a vector giving the lengths of the matches (or -1 for no match).

Warning

POSIX 1003.2 mode of `gsub` and `gregexpr` does not work correctly with repeated word-boundaries (e.g., `pattern = "\b"`). Use `perl = TRUE` for such matches (but that may not work as expected with non-ASCII inputs, as the meaning of 'word' is system-dependent).

Performance considerations

If you are doing a lot of regular expression matching, including on very long strings, you will want to consider the options used. Generally PCRE will be faster than the default regular expression engine, and `fixed = TRUE` faster still (especially when each pattern is matched only a few times).

If you are working in a single-byte locale and have marked UTF-8 strings that are representable in that locale, convert them first as just one UTF-8 string will force all the matching to be done in Unicode, which attracts a penalty of around $3\times$ for the default POSIX 1003.2 mode.

If you can make use of `useBytes = TRUE`, the strings will not be checked before matching, and the actual matching will be faster. Often byte-based matching suffices in a UTF-8 locale since byte patterns of one character never match part of another.

Source

The C code for POSIX-style regular expression matching has changed over the years. As from 2.10.0 the TRE library of Ville Laurikari (`http://laurikari.net/tre/`) is used. The POSIX standard does give some room for interpretation, especially in the handling of invalid regular expressions and the collation of character ranges, so the results will have changed slightly over the years.

For Perl-style matching PCRE (`http://www.pcre.org`) is used.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole (grep)

See Also

regular expression (aka regexp) for the details of the pattern specification.

regmatches for extracting matched substrings based on the results of regexpr, gregexpr and regexec.

glob2rx to turn wildcard matches into regular expressions.

agrep for approximate matching.

charmatch, pmatch for partial matching, match for matching to whole strings.

tolower, toupper and chartr for character translations.

apropos uses regexps and has more examples.

grepRaw for matching raw vectors.

Examples

```
grep("[a-z]", letters)

txt <- c("arm","foot","lefroo", "bafoobar")
if(length(i <- grep("foo", txt)))
   cat("foo appears at least once in\n\t", txt, "\n")
i # 2 and 4
txt[i]

## Double all a or bs;  "\" must be escaped, i.e., doubled
gsub("([ab])", "\\1_\\1_", "abc and ABC")

txt <- c("The", "licenses", "for", "most", "software", "are",
  "designed", "to", "take", "away", "your", "freedom",
  "to", "share", "and", "change", "it.",
   "", "By", "contrast,", "the", "GNU", "General", "Public", "License",
   "is", "intended", "to", "guarantee", "your", "freedom", "to",
   "share", "and", "change", "free", "software", "--",
   "to", "make", "sure", "the", "software", "is",
   "free", "for", "all", "its", "users")
( i <- grep("[gu]", txt) ) # indices
stopifnot( txt[i] == grep("[gu]", txt, value = TRUE) )

## Note that in locales such as en_US this includes B as the
## collation order is aAbBcCdEe ...
(ot <- sub("[b-e]",".", txt))
txt[ot != gsub("[b-e]",".", txt)]#- gsub does "global" substitution

txt[gsub("g","#", txt) !=
    gsub("g","#", txt, ignore.case = TRUE)] # the "G" words

regexpr("en", txt)

gregexpr("e", txt)

## Using grepl() for filtering
```

```
## Find functions with argument names matching "warn":
findArgs <- function(env, pattern) {
  nms <- ls(envir = as.environment(env))
  nms <- nms[is.na(match(nms, c("F","T")))] # <-- work around "checking hack"
  aa <- sapply(nms, function(.) { o <- get(.)
              if(is.function(o)) names(formals(o)) })
  iw <- sapply(aa, function(a) any(grepl(pattern, a, ignore.case=TRUE)))
  aa[iw]
}
findArgs("package:base", "warn")

## trim trailing white space
str <- "Now is the time      "
sub(" +$", "", str)  ## spaces only
sub("[[:space:]]+$", "", str) ## white space, POSIX-style
sub("\\s+$", "", str, perl = TRUE) ## Perl-style white space

## capitalizing
txt <- "a test of capitalizing"
gsub("(\\w)(\\w*)", "\\U\\1\\L\\2", txt, perl=TRUE)
gsub("\\b(\\w)",    "\\U\\1",       txt, perl=TRUE)

txt2 <- "useRs may fly into JFK or laGuardia"
gsub("(\\w)(\\w*)(\\w)", "\\U\\1\\E\\2\\U\\3", txt2, perl=TRUE)
 sub("(\\w)(\\w*)(\\w)", "\\U\\1\\E\\2\\U\\3", txt2, perl=TRUE)

## named capture
notables <- c("  Ben Franklin and Jefferson Davis",
              "\tMillard Fillmore")
# name groups first and last
name.rex <- "(?<first>[[:upper:]][[:lower:]]+) (?<last>[[:upper:]][[:lower:]]+)"
(parsed <- regexpr(name.rex, notables, perl = TRUE))
gregexpr(name.rex, notables, perl = TRUE)[[2]]
parse.one <- function(res, result) {
  m <- do.call(rbind, lapply(seq_along(res), function(i) {
    if(result[i] == -1) return("")
    st <- attr(result, "capture.start")[i, ]
    substring(res[i], st, st + attr(result, "capture.length")[i, ] - 1)
  }))
  colnames(m) <- attr(result, "capture.names")
  m
}
parse.one(notables, parsed)

## Decompose a URL into its components.
## Example by LT (http://www.cs.uiowa.edu/~luke/R/regexp.html).
x <- "http://stat.umn.edu:80/xyz"
m <- regexec("^(([^:]+)://)?([^:/]+)(:([0-9]+))?(/.*)", x)
m
regmatches(x, m)
## Element 3 is the protocol, 4 is the host, 6 is the port, and 7
## is the path.  We can use this to make a function for extracting the
## parts of a URL:
URL_parts <- function(x) {
    m <- regexec("^(([^:]+)://)?([^:/]+)(:([0-9]+))?(/.*)", x)
    parts <- do.call(rbind,
                     lapply(regmatches(x, m), [, c(3L, 4L, 6L, 7L)))
```

```
    colnames(parts) <- c("protocol","host","port","path")
    parts
}
URL_parts(x)
```

---

grepRaw *Pattern Matching for Raw Vectors*

Description

grepRaw searches for substring pattern matches within a raw vector x.

Usage

```
grepRaw(pattern, x, offset = 1L, ignore.case = FALSE,
        value = FALSE, fixed = FALSE, all = FALSE, invert = FALSE)
```

Arguments

pattern	raw vector containing a regular expression (or fixed pattern for fixed = TRUE) to be matched in the given raw vector. Coerced by charToRaw to a character string if possible.
x	a raw vector where matches are sought, or an object which can be coerced by charToRaw to a raw vector. Long vectors are not supported.
ignore.case	if FALSE, the pattern matching is *case sensitive* and if TRUE, case is ignored during matching.
offset	An integer specifying the offset from which the search should start. Must be positive. The beginning of line is defined to be at that offset so "^" will match there.
value	logical. Determines the return value: see 'Value'.
fixed	logical. If TRUE, pattern is a pattern to be matched as is.
all	logical. If TRUE all matches are returned, otherwise just the first one.
invert	logical. If TRUE return indices or values for elements that do *not* match. Ignored (with a warning) unless value = TRUE.

Details

Unlike grep, seeks matching patterns within the raw vector x . This has implications especially in the all = TRUE case, e.g., patterns matching empty strings are inherently infinite and thus may lead to unexpected results.

The argument invert is interpreted as asking to return the complement of the match, which is only meaningful for value = TRUE. Argument offset determines the start of the search, not of the complement. Note that invert = TRUE with all = TRUE will split x into pieces delimited by the pattern including leading and trailing empty strings (consequently the use of regular expressions with "^" or "$" in that case may lead to less intuitive results).

Some combinations of arguments such as fixed = TRUE with value = TRUE are supported but are less meaningful.

Value

`grepRaw(value = FALSE)` returns an integer vector of the offsets at which matches have occurred. If `all = FALSE` then it will be either of length zero (no match) or length one (first matching position).

`grepRaw(value = TRUE, all = FALSE)` returns a raw vector which is either empty (no match) or the matched part of `x`.

`grepRaw(value = TRUE, all = TRUE)` returns a (potentially empty) list of raw vectors corresponding to the matched parts.

Source

The TRE library of Ville Laurikari (`http://laurikari.net/tre/`) is used except for `fixed = TRUE`.

See Also

regular expression (aka `regexp`) for the details of the pattern specification.

`grep` for matching character vectors.

`groupGeneric` *S3 Group Generic Functions*

Description

Group generic methods can be defined for four pre-specified groups of functions, `Math`, `Ops`, `Summary` and `Complex`. (There are no objects of these names in base , but there are in the **methods** package.)

A method defined for an individual member of the group takes precedence over a method defined for the group as a whole.

Usage

```
## S3 methods for group generics have prototypes:
Math(x, ...)
Ops(e1, e2)
Complex(z)
Summary(..., na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x, z, e1, e2`	objects.
`...`	further arguments passed to methods.
`na.rm`	logical: should missing values be removed?

Details

There are four *groups* for which S3 methods can be written, namely the "Math", "Ops", "Summary" and "Complex" groups. These are not objects in base , but methods can be supplied for them and base contains factor, data.frame and difftime methods for the first three groups. (There is also a ordered method for Ops, POSIXt and Date methods for Math and Ops, package_version methods for Ops and Summary, as well as a ts method for Ops in package **stats**.)

1. Group "Math":
   - abs, sign, sqrt,
     floor, ceiling, trunc,
     round, signif
   - exp, log, expm1, log1p,
     cos, sin, tan,
     cospi, sinpi, tanpi,
     acos, asin, atan
     cosh, sinh, tanh,
     acosh, asinh, atanh
   - lgamma, gamma, digamma, trigamma
   - cumsum, cumprod, cummax, cummin

   Members of this group dispatch on x. Most members accept only one argument, but members log, round and signif accept one or two arguments, and trunc accepts one or more.
2. Group "Ops":
   - "+", "-", "*", "/", "^", "%%", "%/%"
   - "&", "|", "!"
   - "==", "!=", "<", "<=", ">=", ">"

   This group contains both binary and unary operators (+, - and !): when a unary operator is encountered the Ops method is called with one argument and e2 is missing.

   The classes of both arguments are considered in dispatching any member of this group. For each argument its vector of classes is examined to see if there is a matching specific (preferred) or Ops method. If a method is found for just one argument or the same method is found for both, it is used. If different methods are found, there is a warning about 'incompatible methods': in that case or if no method is found for either argument the internal method is used.

   If the members of this group are called as functions, any argument names are removed to ensure that positional matching is always used.
3. Group "Summary":
   - all, any
   - sum, prod
   - min, max
   - range

   Members of this group dispatch on the first argument supplied.
4. Group "Complex":
   - Arg, Conj, Im, Mod, Re

   Members of this group dispatch on z.

Note that a method will be used for one of these groups or one of its members *only* if it corresponds to a "class" attribute, as the internal code dispatches on oldClass and not on class. This is for efficiency: having to dispatch on, say, Ops.integer would be too slow.

The number of arguments supplied for primitive members of the "Math" group generic methods is not checked prior to dispatch.

There is no lazy evaluation of arguments for group-generic functions.

Technical Details

These functions are all primitive and internal generic.

The details of method dispatch and variables such as .Generic are discussed in the help for UseMethod. There are a few small differences:

- For the operators of group Ops, the object .Method is a length-two character vector with elements the methods selected for the left and right arguments respectively. (If no method was selected, the corresponding element is "".)
- Object .Group records the group used for dispatch (if a specific method is used this is "").

Note

Package **methods** does contain objects with these names, which it has re-used in confusing similar (but different) ways. See the help for that package.

References

Appendix A, *Classes and Methods* of
Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. eds (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

methods for methods of non-internal generic functions.

S4groupGeneric for group generics for S4 methods.

Examples

```
require(utils)

d.fr <- data.frame(x = 1:9, y = stats::rnorm(9))
class(1 + d.fr) == "data.frame" ##-- add to d.f. ...

methods("Math")
methods("Ops")
methods("Summary")
methods("Complex")  # none in base R
```

---

gzcon *(De)compress I/O Through Connections*

Description

gzcon provides a modified connection that wraps an existing connection, and decompresses reads or compresses writes through that connection. Standard gzip headers are assumed.

Usage

```
gzcon(con, level = 6, allowNonCompressed = TRUE)
```

Arguments

con	a connection.
level	integer between 0 and 9, the compression level when writing.
allowNonCompressed	logical. When reading, should non-compressed input be allowed?

Details

If con is open then the modified connection is opened. Closing the wrapper connection will also close the underlying connection.

Reading from a connection which does not supply a gzip magic header is equivalent to reading from the original connection if allowNonCompressed is true, otherwise an error.

Compressed output will contain embedded NUL bytes, and so con is not permitted to be a textConnection opened with open = "w". Use a writable rawConnection to compress data into a variable.

The original connection becomes unusable: any object pointing to it will now refer to the modified connection. For this reason, the new connection needs to be closed explicitly.

Value

An object inheriting from class "connection". This is the same connection *number* as supplied, but with a modified internal structure. It has binary mode.

See Also

gzfile

Examples

```
## Uncompress a data file from a URL
z <- gzcon(url("http://www.stats.ox.ac.uk/pub/datasets/csb/ch12.dat.gz"))
# read.table can only read from a text-mode connection.
raw <- textConnection(readLines(z))
close(z)
dat <- read.table(raw)
close(raw)
dat[1:4, ]


## gzfile and gzcon can inter-work.
## Of course here one would use gzfile, but file() can be replaced by
## any other connection generator.
zz <- gzfile("ex.gz", "w")
cat("TITLE extra line", "2 3 5 7", "", "11 13 17", file = zz, sep = "\n")
close(zz)
readLines(zz <- gzcon(file("ex.gz", "rb")))
close(zz)
unlink("ex.gz")
```

```
zz <- gzcon(file("ex2.gz", "wb"))
cat("TITLE extra line", "2 3 5 7", "", "11 13 17", file = zz, sep = "\n")
close(zz)
readLines(zz <- gzfile("ex2.gz"))
close(zz)
unlink("ex2.gz")
```

---

hexmode *Display Numbers in Hexadecimal*

Description

Convert or print integers in hexadecimal format, with as many digits as are needed to display the largest, using leading zeroes as necessary.

Usage

```
as.hexmode(x)

## S3 method for class hexmode
as.character(x, ...)

## S3 method for class hexmode
format(x, width = NULL, upper.case = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class hexmode
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	An object, for the methods inheriting from class "hexmode".
width	NULL or a positive integer specifying the minimum field width to be used, with padding by leading zeroes.
upper.case	a logical indicating whether to use upper-case letters or lower-case letters (default).
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Class "hexmode" consists of integer vectors with that class attribute, used merely to ensure that they are printed in hex.

If width = NULL (the default), the output is padded with leading zeroes to the smallest width needed for all the non-missing elements.

as.hexmode can convert integers (of type "integer" or "double") and character vectors whose elements contain only 0-9, a-f, A-F (or are NA) to class "hexmode".

There is a ! method and |, & and xor methods: these recycle their arguments to the length of the longer and then apply the operators bitwise to each element.

See Also

`octmode`, `sprintf` for other options in converting integers to hex, `strtoi` to convert hex strings to integers.

Examples

```
i <- as.hexmode("7fffffff")
i; class(i)
identical(as.integer(i), .Machine$integer.max)

hm <- as.hexmode(c(NA, 1)); hm
as.integer(hm)
```

`Hyperbolic` *Hyperbolic Functions*

Description

These functions give the obvious hyperbolic functions. They respectively compute the hyperbolic cosine, sine, tangent, and their inverses, arc-cosine, arc-sine, arc-tangent (or '*area cosine*', etc).

Usage

```
cosh(x)
sinh(x)
tanh(x)
acosh(x)
asinh(x)
atanh(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric or complex vector

Details

These are internal generic primitive functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the `Math` group generic.

Branch cuts are consistent with the inverse trigonometric functions `asin` *et seq*, and agree with those defined in Abramowitz and Stegun, figure 4.7, page 86. The behaviour actually on the cuts follows the C99 standard which requires continuity coming round the endpoint in a counter-clockwise direction.

S4 methods

All are S4 generic functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the `Math` group generic.

References

Abramowitz, M. and Stegun, I. A. (1972) *Handbook of Mathematical Functions.* New York: Dover. Chapter 4. Elementary Transcendental Functions: Logarithmic, Exponential, Circular and Hyperbolic Functions

See Also

The trigonometric functions, cos, sin, tan, and their inverses acos, asin, atan.

The logistic distribution function plogis is a shifted version of tanh() for numeric x.

---

iconv *Convert Character Vector between Encodings*

Description

This uses system facilities to convert a character vector between encodings: the 'i' stands for 'internationalization'.

Usage

```
iconv(x, from = "", to = "", sub = NA, mark = TRUE, toRaw = FALSE)

iconvlist()
```

Arguments

x	A character vector, or an object to be converted to a character vector by as.character, or a list with NULL and raw elements as returned by iconv(toRaw = TRUE).
from	A character string describing the current encoding.
to	A character string describing the target encoding.
sub	character string. If not NA it is used to replace any non-convertible bytes in the input. (This would normally be a single character, but can be more.) If "byte", the indication is "<xx>" with the hex code of the byte.
mark	logical, for expert use. Should encodings be marked?
toRaw	logical. Should a list of raw vectors be returned rather than a character vector?

Details

The names of encodings and which ones are available are platform-dependent. All platforms support "" (for the encoding of the current locale), "latin1" and "UTF-8". Generally case is ignored when specifying an encoding.

On most platforms iconvlist provides an alphabetical list of the supported encodings. On others, the information is on the man page for iconv(5) or elsewhere in the man pages (but beware that the system command iconv may not support the same set of encodings as the C functions calls). Unfortunately, the names are rarely supported across all platforms.

Elements of x which cannot be converted (perhaps because they are invalid or because they cannot be represented in the target encoding) will be returned as NA unless sub is specified.

Most versions of iconv will allow transliteration by appending '//TRANSLIT' to the to encoding: see the examples.

Encoding "ASCII" is accepted, and on most systems "C" and "POSIX" are synonyms for ASCII.

Any encoding bits (see Encoding) on elements of x are ignored: they will always be translated as if from encoding from even if declared otherwise.

Value

If toRaw = FALSE (the default), the value is a character vector of the same length and the same attributes as x (after conversion to a character vector).

If mark = TRUE (the default) the elements of the result have a declared encoding if to is "latin1" or "UTF-8", or if to = "" and the current locale's encoding is detected as Latin-1 (or its superset CP1252 on Windows) or UTF-8.

If toRaw = TRUE, the value is a vector of the same length and the same attributes as x whose elements are either NULL (if conversion fails) or a raw vector.

For iconvlist(), a character vector (typically of a few hundred elements).

Implementation Details

There are three main implementations of iconv in use. Linux's C runtime 'glibc' contains one. Several platforms supply GNU 'libiconv', including OS X, FreeBSD and Cygwin, in some cases with additional encodings. On Windows we use a version of Yukihiro Nakadaira's 'win_iconv', which is based on Windows' codepages. (We have added many encoding names for compatibility with other systems.) All three have iconvlist, ignore case in encoding names and support '//TRANSLIT' (but with different results, and for 'win_iconv' currently a 'best fit' strategy is used except for to = "ASCII").

Most commercial Unixes contain an implemetation of iconv but none we have encountered have supported the encoding names we need: the "R Installation and Administration Manual" recommends installing GNU 'libiconv' on Solaris and AIX, for example.

There are other implementations, e.g NetBSD has used one from the Citrus project (which does not support '//TRANSLIT') and there is an older FreeBSD port ('libiconv' is usually used there): it has not been reported whether or not these work with .

Note that you cannot rely on invalid inputs being detected, especially for to = "ASCII" where some implementations allow 8-bit characters and pass them through unchanged or with transliteration.

Some of the implementations have interesting extra encodings: for example GNU 'libiconv' allows to = "C99" to use \uxxx escapes for non-ASCII characters.

Byte Order Marks

most commonly known as 'BOMs'.

Encodings using character units which are more than one byte in size can be written on a file in either big-endian or little-endian order: this applies most commonly to UCS-2, UTF-16 and UTF-32/UCS-4 encodings. Some systems will write the Unicode character U+FEFF at the beginning of a file in these encodings and perhaps also in UTF-8. In that usage the character is known as a BOM, and should be handled during input (see the 'Encodings' section under connection: re-encoded connections have some special handling of BOMs). The rest of this section applies when this has not been done so x starts with a BOM.

Implementations will generally interpret a BOM for from given as one of "UCS-2", "UTF-16" and "UTF-32". Implementations differ in how they treat BOMs in x in other from encodings: they may be discarded, returned as character U+FEFF or regarded as invalid.

Note

The only reasonably portable name for the ISO 8859-15 encoding, commonly known as 'Latin 9', is "latin-9": some platforms support "latin9" but GNU 'libiconv' does not.

Encoding names "utf8", "mac" and "macroman" are not portable. "utf8" is converted to "UTF-8" for from (as from 2.8.0) and to (as from 3.0.3) by iconv, but not for e.g. fileEncoding arguments.

"macintosh" is the official (and most widely supported) name for 'Mac Roman' (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mac_OS_Roman).

See Also

localeToCharset, file.

Examples

```
## In principle, as not all systems have iconvlist
try(utils::head(iconvlist(), n = 50))

## Not run:
## convert from Latin-2 to UTF-8: two of the glibc iconv variants.
iconv(x, "ISO_8859-2", "UTF-8")
iconv(x, "LATIN2", "UTF-8")

## End(Not run)

## Both x below are in latin1 and will only display correctly in a
## locale that can represent and display latin1.
x <- "fa\xE7ile"
Encoding(x) <- "latin1"
x
charToRaw(xx <- iconv(x, "latin1", "UTF-8"))
xx

iconv(x, "latin1", "ASCII")          #   NA
iconv(x, "latin1", "ASCII", "?")     # "fa?ile"
iconv(x, "latin1", "ASCII", "")      # "faile"
iconv(x, "latin1", "ASCII", "byte")  # "fa<e7>ile"

## Extracts from old R help files (they are nowadays in UTF-8)
x <- c("Ekstr\xf8m", "J\xf6reskog", "bi\xdfchen Z\xfcrcher")
Encoding(x) <- "latin1"
x
try(iconv(x, "latin1", "ASCII//TRANSLIT"))  # platform-dependent
iconv(x, "latin1", "ASCII", sub = "byte")
## and for Windows Unicode
str(xx <- iconv(x, "latin1", "UTF-16LE", toRaw = TRUE))
iconv(xx, "UTF-16LE", "UTF-8")
```

---

icuSetCollate *Setup Collation by ICU*

Description

Controls the way collation is done by ICU (an optional part of the build).

Usage

```
icuSetCollate(...)

icuGetCollate(type = c("actual", "valid"))
```

Arguments

...	Named arguments, see 'Details'.
type	either the actual locale in use for collation or the most specific locale which would be valid.

Details

Optionally, can be built to collate character strings by ICU (http://site.icu-project.org). For such systems, `icuSetCollate` can be used to tune the way collation is done. On other builds calling this function does nothing, with a warning.

Possible arguments are

`locale`: A character string such as `"da_DK"` giving the language and country whose collation rules are to be used. If present, this should be the first argument.

`case_first`: `"upper"`, `"lower"` or `"default"`, asking for upper- or lower-case characters to be sorted first. The default is usually lower-case first, but not in all languages (not under the default settings for Danish, for example).

`alternate_handling`: Controls the handling of 'variable' characters (mainly punctuation and symbols). Possible values are `"non_ignorable"` (primary strength) and `"shifted"` (quaternary strength).

`strength`: Which components should be used? Possible values `"primary"`, `"secondary"`, `"tertiary"` (default), `"quaternary"` and `"identical"`.

`french_collation`: In a French locale the way accents affect collation is from right to left, whereas in most other locales it is from left to right. Possible values `"on"`, `"off"` and `"default"`.

`normalization`: Should strings be normalized? Possible values are `"on"` and `"off"` (default). This affects the collation of composite characters.

`case_level`: An additional level between secondary and tertiary, used to distinguish large and small Japanese Kana characters. Possible values `"on"` and `"off"` (default).

`hiragana_quaternary`: Possible values `"on"` (sort Hiragana first at quaternary level) and `"off"`.

Only the first three are likely to be of interest except to those with a detailed understanding of collation and specialized requirements.

Some special values are accepted for `locale`:

`"none"`: ICU is not used for collation: the OS's collation services are used instead. (As from 3.1.2.)

`"ASCII"`: ICU is not used for collation: the C function `strcmp` is used instead, which should sort byte-by-byte in (unsigned) numerical order. (As from 3.1.3.)

`"default"`: obtains the locale from the OS as is done at the start of the session. If environment variable `R_ICU_LOCALE` is set to a non-empty value, its value is used rather than consulting the OS.

`""`, `"root"`: the 'root' collation: see http://www.unicode.org/reports/tr35/tr35-collation.html#Root_Collation.

For the specifications of 'real' ICU locales, see http://userguide.icu-project.org/locale. Note that ICU does not report that a locale is not supported, but falls back to its idea of 'best fit' (which could be rather different and is reported by `icuGetCollate("actual")`, often `"root"`). Most English locales fall back to `"root"` as although e.g. `"en_GB"` is a valid locale (at least on

some platforms), it contains no special rules for collation. Note that "C" is not a supported ICU locale.

Some examples are case_level = "on", strength = "primary" to ignore accent differences and alternate_handling = "shifted" to ignore space and punctuation characters.

Initially ICU will not be used for collation if the OS is set to use the C locale for collation. Once this function is called with a value for locale, ICU will be used until it is called again with locale = "none".

All customizations are reset to the default for the locale if locale is specified: the collation engine is reset if the OS collation locate category is changed by Sys.setlocale.

Value

For icuGetCollate, a character string describing the ICU locale in use (which may be reported as "ICU not in use"). The 'actual' locale may be simpler than the requested locale: for example "da" rather than "da_DK": English locales are likely to report "root".

Note

ICU is used by default wherever it is available: this include OS X, Solaris and many Linux installations. As it works internally in UTF-8, it will be most efficient in UTF-8 locales.

It is optional on Windows: if has been built against ICU, it will only be used if environment variable R_ICU_LOCALE is set or once icuSetCollate is called to select the locale (as ICU and Windows, at least pre-Vista, differ in their idea of locale names).

See Also

Comparison, sort.

capabilities for whether ICU is in use.

The ICU user guide chapter on collation (http://userguide.icu-project.org/collation).

Examples

```
## These examples depend on having ICU available, and on the locale.
## As we dont know the current settings, we can only reset to the default.
if(capabilities("ICU")) {
    print(icuGetCollate())
    print(icuGetCollate("valid"))
    x <- c("Aarhus", "aarhus", "safe", "test", "Zoo")
    print(sort(x))
    icuSetCollate(case_first = "upper"); print(sort(x))
    icuSetCollate(case_first = "lower"); print(sort(x))

    ## Danish collates upper-case-first and with aa as a single letter
    icuSetCollate(locale = "da_DK", case_first = "default"); print(sort(x))
    ## Estonian collates Z between S and T
    icuSetCollate(locale = "et_EE"); print(sort(x))
    icuSetCollate(locale = "default")
}
```

identical *Test Objects for Exact Equality*

Description

The safe and reliable way to test two objects for being *exactly* equal. It returns TRUE in this case, FALSE in every other case.

Usage

```
identical(x, y, num.eq = TRUE, single.NA = TRUE, attrib.as.set = TRUE,
          ignore.bytecode = TRUE, ignore.environment = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x, y	any objects.
num.eq	logical indicating if (double and complex non-NA) numbers should be compared using == ('equal'), or by bitwise comparison. The latter (non-default) differentiates between -0 and +0.
single.NA	logical indicating if there is conceptually just one numeric NA and one NaN; single.NA = FALSE differentiates bit patterns.
attrib.as.set	logical indicating if attributes of x and y should be treated as *unordered* tagged pairlists ("sets"); this currently also applies to slots of S4 objects. It may well be too strict to set attrib.as.set = FALSE.
ignore.bytecode	logical indicating if byte code should be ignored when comparing closures.
ignore.environment	logical indicating if their environments should be ignored when comparing closures.

Details

A call to identical is the way to test exact equality in if and while statements, as well as in logical expressions that use && or ||. In all these applications you need to be assured of getting a single logical value.

Users often use the comparison operators, such as == or !=, in these situations. It looks natural, but it is not what these operators are designed to do in . They return an object like the arguments. If you expected x and y to be of length 1, but it happened that one of them was not, you will *not* get a single FALSE. Similarly, if one of the arguments is NA, the result is also NA. In either case, the expression if(x == y)... won't work as expected.

The function all.equal is also sometimes used to test equality this way, but was intended for something different: it allows for small differences in numeric results.

The computations in identical are also reliable and usually fast. There should never be an error. The only known way to kill identical is by having an invalid pointer at the C level, generating a memory fault. It will usually find inequality quickly. Checking equality for two large, complicated objects can take longer if the objects are identical or nearly so, but represent completely independent copies. For most applications, however, the computational cost should be negligible.

If single.NA is true, as by default, identical sees NaN as different from NA_real_, but all NaNs are equal (and all NA of the same type are equal).

Character strings are regarded as identical if they are in different marked encodings but would agree when translated to UTF-8.

If `attrib.as.set` is true, as by default, comparison of attributes view them as a set (and not a vector, so order is not tested).

If `ignore.bytecode` is true (the default), the compiled bytecode of a function (see `cmpfun`) will be ignored in the comparison. If it is false, functions will compare equal only if they are copies of the same compiled object (or both are uncompiled). To check whether two different compiles are equal, you should compare the results of `disassemble()`.

You almost never want to use `identical` on datetimes of class `"POSIXlt"`: not only can different times in the different time zones represent the same time and time zones have multiple names, but several of the components are optional.

Note that `identical(x, y, FALSE, FALSE, FALSE, FALSE)` pickily tests for exact equality.

Value

A single logical value, `TRUE` or `FALSE`, never `NA` and never anything other than a single value.

Author(s)

John Chambers and R Core

References

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

See Also

`all.equal` for descriptions of how two objects differ; Comparison for operators that generate elementwise comparisons. `isTRUE` is a simple wrapper based on `identical`.

Examples

```
identical(1, NULL) ## FALSE -- dont try this with ==
identical(1, 1.)   ## TRUE in R (both are stored as doubles)
identical(1, as.integer(1)) ## FALSE, stored as different types

x <- 1.0; y <- 0.99999999999
## how to test for object equality allowing for numeric fuzz :
(E <- all.equal(x, y))
isTRUE(E) # which is simply defined to just use
identical(TRUE, E)
## If all.equal thinks the objects are different, it returns a
## character string, and the above expression evaluates to FALSE

## even for unusual R objects :
identical(.GlobalEnv, environment())

### ------- Pickyness Flags : -----------------------------

## the infamous example:
identical(0., -0.) # TRUE, i.e. not differentiated
identical(0., -0., num.eq = FALSE)
## similar:
identical(NaN, -NaN) # TRUE
```

```
identical(NaN, -NaN, single.NA = FALSE) # differ on bit-level
## for functions:
f <- function(x) x
f
g <- compiler::cmpfun(f)
g
identical(f, g)
identical(f, g, ignore.bytecode = FALSE)
```

`identity` *Identity Function*

Description

A trivial identity function returning its argument.

Usage

```
identity(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object.

`ifelse` *Conditional Element Selection*

Description

`ifelse` returns a value with the same shape as `test` which is filled with elements selected from either `yes` or `no` depending on whether the element of `test` is `TRUE` or `FALSE`.

Usage

```
ifelse(test, yes, no)
```

Arguments

`test`	an object which can be coerced to logical mode.
`yes`	return values for true elements of `test`.
`no`	return values for false elements of `test`.

Details

If `yes` or `no` are too short, their elements are recycled. `yes` will be evaluated if and only if any element of `test` is true, and analogously for `no`.

Missing values in `test` give missing values in the result.

Value

A vector of the same length and attributes (including dimensions and "class") as test and data values from the values of yes or no. The mode of the answer will be coerced from logical to accommodate first any values taken from yes and then any values taken from no.

Warning

The mode of the result may depend on the value of test (see the examples), and the class attribute (see oldClass) of the result is taken from test and may be inappropriate for the values selected from yes and no.

Sometimes it is better to use a construction such as

```
(tmp <- yes; tmp[!test] <- no[!test]; tmp)
```

, possibly extended to handle missing values in test.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

if.

Examples

```
x <- c(6:-4)
sqrt(x)  #- gives warning
sqrt(ifelse(x >= 0, x, NA))  # no warning

## Note: the following also gives the warning !
ifelse(x >= 0, sqrt(x), NA)

## example of different return modes:
yes <- 1:3
no <- pi^(0:3)
typeof(ifelse(NA, yes, no))    # logical
typeof(ifelse(TRUE, yes, no))  # integer
typeof(ifelse(FALSE, yes, no)) # double
```

---

integer *Integer Vectors*

Description

Creates or tests for objects of type "integer".

Usage

```
integer(length = 0)
as.integer(x, ...)
is.integer(x)
```

Arguments

length	A non-negative integer specifying the desired length. Double values will be coerced to integer: supplying an argument of length other than one is an error.
x	object to be coerced or tested.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Integer vectors exist so that data can be passed to C or Fortran code which expects them, and so that (small) integer data can be represented exactly and compactly.

Note that current implementations of use 32-bit integers for integer vectors, so the range of representable integers is restricted to about $\pm 2 \times 10^9$: doubles can hold much larger integers exactly.

Value

integer creates a integer vector of the specified length. Each element of the vector is equal to 0.

as.integer attempts to coerce its argument to be of integer type. The answer will be NA unless the coercion succeeds. Real values larger in modulus than the largest integer are coerced to NA (unlike S which gives the most extreme integer of the same sign). Non-integral numeric values are truncated towards zero (i.e., as.integer(x) equals trunc(x) there), and imaginary parts of complex numbers are discarded (with a warning). Character strings containing optional whitespace followed by either a decimal representation or a hexadecimal representation (starting with 0x or 0X) can be converted, as well as any allowed by the platform for real numbers. Like as.vector it strips attributes including names. (To ensure that an object x is of integer type without stripping attributes, use storage.mode(x) <- "integer".)

is.integer returns TRUE or FALSE depending on whether its argument is of integer type or not, unless it is a factor when it returns FALSE.

Note

is.integer(x) does **not** test if x contains integer numbers! For that, use round, as in the function is.wholenumber(x) in the examples.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

numeric, storage.mode.

round (and ceiling and floor on that help page) to convert to integral values.

Examples

```
## as.integer() truncates:
x <- pi * c(-1:1, 10)
as.integer(x)

is.integer(1) # is FALSE !

is.wholenumber <-
```

```
    function(x, tol = .Machine$double.eps^0.5)  abs(x - round(x)) < tol
is.wholenumber(1) # is TRUE
(x <- seq(1, 5, by = 0.5) )
is.wholenumber( x ) #-->  TRUE FALSE TRUE ...
```

`interaction` *Compute Factor Interactions*

Description

`interaction` computes a factor which represents the interaction of the given factors. The result of `interaction` is always unordered.

Usage

```
interaction(..., drop = FALSE, sep = ".", lex.order = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`...`	the factors for which interaction is to be computed, or a single list giving those factors.
`drop`	if `drop` is `TRUE`, unused factor levels are dropped from the result. The default is to retain all factor levels.
`sep`	string to construct the new level labels by joining the constituent ones.
`lex.order`	logical indicating if the order of factor concatenation should be lexically ordered.

Value

A factor which represents the interaction of the given factors. The levels are labelled as the levels of the individual factors joined by `sep` which is `.` by default.

By default, when `lex.order = FALSE`, the levels are ordered so the level of the first factor varies fastest, then the second and so on. This is the reverse of lexicographic ordering (which you can get by `lex.order = TRUE`), and differs from `:`. (It is done this way for compatibility with S.)

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`factor`; `:` where `f:g` is similar to `interaction(f, g, sep = ":")` when `f` and `g` are factors.

Examples

```
a <- gl(2, 4, 8)
b <- gl(2, 2, 8, labels = c("ctrl", "treat"))
s <- gl(2, 1, 8, labels = c("M", "F"))
interaction(a, b)
interaction(a, b, s, sep = ":")
stopifnot(identical(a:s,
                    interaction(a, s, sep = ":", lex.order = TRUE)),
```

```
identical(a:s:b,
          interaction(a, s, b, sep = ":", lex.order = TRUE)))
```

`interactive` *Is R Running Interactively?*

Description

Return `TRUE` when is being used interactively and `FALSE` otherwise.

Usage

```
interactive()
```

Details

An interactive session is one in which it is assumed that there is a human operator to interact with, so for example can prompt for corrections to incorrect input or ask what to do next or if it is OK to move to the next plot.

GUI consoles will arrange to start in an interactive session. When is run in a terminal (via `Rterm.exe` on Windows), it assumes that it is interactive if '`stdin`' is connected to a (pseudo-)terminal and not if '`stdin`' is redirected to a file or pipe. Command-line options '`--interactive`' (Unix) and '`--ess`' (Windows, `Rterm.exe`) override the default assumption. (On a Unix-alike, whether the `readline` command-line editor is used is **not** overridden by '`--interactive`'.)

Embedded uses of can set a session to be interactive or not.

Internally, whether a session is interactive determines

- how some errors are handled and reported, e.g. see `stop` and `options("showWarnCalls")`.
- whether one of '`--save`', '`--no-save`' or '`--vanilla`' is required, and if ever asks whether to save the workspace.
- the choice of default graphics device launched when needed and by `dev.new`: see `options("device")`
- whether graphics devices ever ask for confirmation of a new page.

In addition, 's own code makes use of `interactive()`: for example `help`, `debugger` and `install.packages` do.

Note

This is a primitive function.

See Also

`source`, `.First`

Examples

```
.First <- function() if(interactive()) x11()
```

Internal *Call an Internal Function*

Description

`.Internal` performs a call to an internal code which is built in to the interpreter.

Only true wizards should even consider using this function, and only developers can add to the list of internal functions.

Usage

```
.Internal(call)
```

Arguments

`call`	a call expression

See Also

`.Primitive`, `.External` (the nearest equivalent available to users).

InternalMethods *Internal Generic Functions*

Description

Many -internal functions are *generic* and allow methods to be written for.

Details

The following primitive and internal functions are *generic*, i.e., you can write `methods` for them:

`[`, `[[`, `$`, `[<-`, `[[<-`, `$<-`,

`length`, `length<-`, `dimnames`, `dimnames<-`, `dim`, `dim<-`, `names`, `names<-`, `levels<-`,

`c`, `unlist`, `cbind`, `rbind`,

`as.character`, `as.complex`, `as.double`, `as.integer`, `as.logical`, `as.raw`, `as.vector`, `is.array`, `is.matrix`, `is.na`, `is.nan`, `is.numeric`, `rep`, `seq.int` (which dispatches methods for `"seq"`) and `xtfrm`

In addition, `is.name` is a synonym for `is.symbol` and dispatches methods for the latter.

Note that all of the group generic functions are also internal/primitive and allow methods to be written for them.

`.S3PrimitiveGenerics` is a character vector listing the primitives which are internal generic and not group generic. Currently `as.vector`, `cbind`, `rbind` and `unlist` are the internal non-primitive functions which are internally generic.

For efficiency, internal dispatch only occurs on *objects*, that is those for which `is.object` returns true.

See Also

`methods` for the methods which are available.

invisible *Change the Print Mode to Invisible*

Description

Return a (temporarily) invisible copy of an object.

Usage

```
invisible(x)
```

Arguments

x	an arbitrary object.

Details

This function can be useful when it is desired to have functions return values which can be assigned, but which do not print when they are not assigned.

This is a primitive function.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

withVisible, return, function.

Examples

```
# These functions both return their argument
f1 <- function(x) x
f2 <- function(x) invisible(x)
f1(1)  # prints
f2(1)  # does not
```

is.finite *Finite, Infinite and NaN Numbers*

Description

is.finite and is.infinite return a vector of the same length as x, indicating which elements are finite (not infinite and not missing) or infinite.

Inf and -Inf are positive and negative infinity whereas NaN means 'Not a Number'. (These apply to numeric values and real and imaginary parts of complex values but not to values of integer vectors.) Inf and NaN are reserved words in the language.

Usage

```
is.finite(x)
is.infinite(x)
is.nan(x)

Inf
NaN
```

Arguments

x	object to be tested: the default methods handle atomic vectors.

Details

`is.finite` returns a vector of the same length as `x` the jth element of which is `TRUE` if `x[j]` is finite (i.e., it is not one of the values `NA`, `NaN`, `Inf` or `-Inf`) and `FALSE` otherwise. Complex numbers are finite if both the real and imaginary parts are.

`is.infinite` returns a vector of the same length as `x` the jth element of which is `TRUE` if `x[j]` is infinite (i.e., equal to one of `Inf` or `-Inf`) and `FALSE` otherwise. This will be false unless `x` is numeric or complex. Complex numbers are infinite if either the real or the imaginary part is.

`is.nan` tests if a numeric value is `NaN`. Do not test equality to `NaN`, or even use `identical`, since systems typically have many different NaN values. One of these is used for the numeric missing value `NA`, and `is.nan` is false for that value. A complex number is regarded as `NaN` if either the real or imaginary part is `NaN` but not `NA`. All elements of logical, integer and raw vectors are considered not to be NaN.

All three functions accept `NULL` as input and return a length zero result. The default methods accept character and raw vectors, and return `FALSE` for all entries. Prior to version 2.14.0 they accepted all input, returning `FALSE` for most non-numeric values; cases which are not atomic vectors are now signalled as errors.

All three functions are generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods.

Value

A logical vector of the same length as `x`: `dim`, `dimnames` and `names` attributes are preserved.

Note

In , basically all mathematical functions (including basic `Arithmetic`), are supposed to work properly with `+/- Inf` and `NaN` as input or output.

The basic rule should be that calls and relations with `Inf`s really are statements with a proper mathematical *limit*.

Computations involving `NaN` will return `NaN` or perhaps `NA`: which of those two is not guaranteed and may depend on the platform (since compilers may re-order computations).

References

The IEC 60559 standard, also known as the ANSI/IEEE 754 Floating-Point Standard.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NaN.

D. Goldberg (1991) *What Every Computer Scientist Should Know about Floating-Point Arithmetic* ACM Computing Surveys, **23(1)**.

Postscript version available at http://www.validlab.com/goldberg/paper.ps Extended PDF version at http://www.validlab.com/goldberg/paper.pdf

The C99 function `isfinite` is used for `is.finite` if available.

See Also

NA, '*Not Available*' which is not a number as well, however usually used for missing values and applies to many modes, not just numeric and complex.

Arithmetic, double.

Examples

```
pi / 0 ## = Inf a non-zero number divided by zero creates infinity
0 / 0  ## =  NaN

1/0 + 1/0 # Inf
1/0 - 1/0 # NaN

stopifnot(
    1/0 == Inf,
    1/Inf == 0
)
sin(Inf)
cos(Inf)
tan(Inf)
```

---

is.function *Is an Object of Type (Primitive) Function?*

Description

Checks whether its argument is a (primitive) function.

Usage

```
is.function(x)
is.primitive(x)
```

Arguments

x	an object.

Details

`is.primitive(x)` tests if `x` is a primitive function (either a `"builtin"` or `"special"` as described for typeof)? It is a primitive function.

Value

`TRUE` if `x` is a (primitive) function, and `FALSE` otherwise.

Examples

```
is.function(1) # FALSE
is.function(is.primitive)  # TRUE: it is a function, but ..
is.primitive(is.primitive) # FALSE:its not a primitive one, whereas
is.primitive(is.function)  # TRUE: that one *is*
```

---

is.language *Is an Object a Language Object?*

Description

is.language returns TRUE if x is a variable name, a call, or an expression.

Usage

```
is.language(x)
```

Arguments

x	object to be tested.

Note

This is a primitive function.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
ll <- list(a = expression(x^2 - 2*x + 1), b = as.name("Jim"),
           c = as.expression(exp(1)), d = call("sin", pi))
sapply(ll, typeof)
sapply(ll, mode)
stopifnot(sapply(ll, is.language))
```

---

is.object *Is an Object 'internally classed'?*

Description

A function rather for internal use. It returns TRUE if the object x has the internal OBJECT bit set, and FALSE otherwise. The OBJECT bit is set when a "class" attribute is added and removed when that attribute is removed, so this is a very efficient way to check if an object has a class attribute. (S4 objects always should.)

Usage

```
is.object(x)
```

Arguments

x	object to be tested.

Note

This is a primitive function.

See Also

class, and methods.

isS4.

Examples

```
is.object(1) # FALSE
is.object(as.factor(1:3)) # TRUE
```

---

is.R *Are we using R, rather than S?*

Description

Test if running under .

Usage

```
is.R()
```

Details

The function has been written such as to correctly run in all versions of , S and S-PLUS. In order for code to be runnable in both and S dialects previous to S-PLUS 8.0, your code must either define is.R or use it as

```
if (exists("is.R") && is.function(is.R) && is.R()) {
## R-specific code
} else {
## S-version of code
}
```

Value

is.R returns TRUE if we are using and FALSE otherwise.

See Also

R.version, system.

Examples

```
x <- stats::runif(20); small <- x < 0.4
## In the early years of R, which() only existed in R:
if(is.R()) which(small) else seq(along = small)[small]
```

is.recursive *Is an Object Atomic or Recursive?*

Description

`is.atomic` returns `TRUE` if `x` is of an atomic type (or `NULL`) and `FALSE` otherwise.

`is.recursive` returns `TRUE` if `x` has a recursive (list-like) structure and `FALSE` otherwise.

Usage

```
is.atomic(x)
is.recursive(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	object to be tested.

Details

`is.atomic` is true for the atomic types (`"logical"`, `"integer"`, `"numeric"`, `"complex"`, `"character"` and `"raw"`) and `NULL`.

Most types of objects are regarded as recursive, except for the atomic types, `NULL` and symbols (as given by `as.name`).

It is common to call the atomic types 'atomic vectors', but note that `is.vector` imposes further restrictions: an object can be atomic but not a vector (in that sense).

These are primitive functions.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`is.list`, `is.language`, etc, and the `demo("is.things")`.

Examples

```
require(stats)

is.a.r <- function(x) c(is.atomic(x), is.recursive(x))

is.a.r(c(a = 1, b = 3)) # TRUE FALSE
is.a.r(list())          # FALSE TRUE - a list is a list
is.a.r(list(2))         # FALSE TRUE
is.a.r(lm)              # FALSE TRUE
is.a.r(y ~ x)           # FALSE TRUE
is.a.r(expression(x+1)) # FALSE TRUE (nowadays)
```

is.single *Is an Object of Single Precision Type?*

Description

`is.single` reports an error. There are no single precision values in R.

Usage

```
is.single(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	object to be tested.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

is.unsorted *Test if an Object is Not Sorted*

Description

Test if an object is not sorted (in increasing order), without the cost of sorting it.

Usage

```
is.unsorted(x, na.rm = FALSE, strictly = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object with a class or a numeric, complex, character, logical or raw vector.
`na.rm`	logical. Should missing values be removed before checking?
`strictly`	logical indicating if the check should be for *strictly* increasing values.

Value

A length-one logical value. All objects of length 0 or 1 are sorted. Otherwise, the result will be `NA` except for atomic vectors and objects with an S3 class (where the >= or > method is used to compare `x[i]` with `x[i-1]` for `i` in `2:length(x)`) or with an S4 class where you have to provide a method for `is.unsorted()`.

Note

This function is designed for objects with one-dimensional indices, as described above. Data frames, matrices and other arrays may give surprising results.

Support for raw vectors was added in 3.1.0.

See Also

sort, order.

`ISOdatetime` *Date-time Conversion Functions from Numeric Representations*

Description

Convenience wrappers to create date-times from numeric representations.

Usage

```
ISOdatetime(year, month, day, hour, min, sec, tz = "")
ISOdate(year, month, day, hour = 12, min = 0, sec = 0, tz = "GMT")
```

Arguments

`year, month, day`	numerical values to specify a day.
`hour, min, sec`	numerical values for a time within a day. Fractional seconds are allowed.
`tz`	A time zone specification to be used for the conversion. `""` is the current time zone and `"GMT"` is UTC. Invalid values are most commonly treated as UTC, on some platforms with a warning.

Details

`ISOdatetime` and `ISOdate` are convenience wrappers for `strptime` that differ only in their defaults and that `ISOdate` sets UTC as the time zone. For dates without times it would normally be better to use the `"Date"` class.

The main arguments will be recycled using the usual recycling rules.

Because these make use of `strptime`, only years in the range `0:9999` are accepted.

Value

An object of class `"POSIXct"`.

See Also

DateTimeClasses for details of the date-time classes; `strptime` for conversions from character strings.

`isS4` *Test for an S4 object*

Description

Tests whether the object is an instance of an S4 class.

Usage

```
isS4(object)

asS4(object, flag = TRUE, complete = TRUE)
asS3(object, flag = TRUE, complete = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`object`	Any R object.
`flag`	Optional, logical: indicate direction of conversion.
`complete`	Optional, logical: whether conversion to S3 is completed. Not usually needed, but see the details section.

Details

Note that `isS4` does not rely on the **methods** package, so in particular it can be used to detect the need to `require` that package.

`asS3` uses the value of `complete` to control whether an attempt is made to transform `object` into a valid object of the implied S3 class. If `complete` is `TRUE`, then an object from an S4 class extending an S3 class will be transformed into an S3 object with the corresponding S3 class (see `S3Part`). This includes classes extending the pseudo-classes `array` and `matrix`: such objects will have their class attribute set to `NULL`.

`isS4` is primitive.

Value

`isS4` always returns `TRUE` or `FALSE` according to whether the internal flag marking an S4 object has been turned on for this object.

`asS4` and `asS3` will turn this flag on or off, and `asS3` will set the class from the objects `.S3Class` slot if one exists. Note that `asS3` will *not* turn the object into an S3 object unless there is a valid conversion; that is, an object of type other than `"S4"` for which the S4 object is an extension, unless argument `complete` is `FALSE`.

See Also

`is.object` for a more general test; Methods for general information on S4.

Examples

```
isS4(pi) # FALSE
isS4(getClass("MethodDefinition")) # TRUE
```

`isSymmetric` *Test if a Matrix or other Object is Symmetric*

Description

Generic function to test if `object` is symmetric or not. Currently only a matrix method is implemented.

Usage

```
isSymmetric(object, ...)
## S3 method for class matrix
isSymmetric(object, tol = 100 * .Machine$double.eps, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object; a `matrix` for the matrix method.
`tol`	numeric scalar >= 0. Smaller differences are not considered, see `all.equal.numeric`.
`...`	further arguments passed to methods; the matrix method passes these to `all.equal`.

Details

The `matrix` method is used inside `eigen` by default to test symmetry of matrices *up to rounding error*, using `all.equal`. It might not be appropriate in all situations.

Note that a matrix is only symmetric if its `rownames` and `colnames` are identical.

Value

logical indicating if `object` is symmetric or not.

See Also

`eigen` which calls `isSymmetric` when its `symmetric` argument is missing.

Examples

```
isSymmetric(D3 <- diag(3)) # -> TRUE

D3[2, 1] <- 1e-100
D3
isSymmetric(D3) # TRUE
isSymmetric(D3, tol = 0) # FALSE for zero-tolerance
```

`jitter` *'Jitter' (Add Noise) to Numbers*

Description

Add a small amount of noise to a numeric vector.

Usage

```
jitter(x, factor = 1, amount = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric vector to which *jitter* should be added.
`factor`	numeric.
`amount`	numeric; if positive, used as *amount* (see below), otherwise, if `= 0` the default is `factor * z/50`. Default (`NULL`): `factor * d/5` where `d` is about the smallest difference between `x` values.

Details

The result, say `r`, is `r <- x + runif(n, -a, a)` where `n <- length(x)` and `a` is the `amount` argument (if specified).

Let `z <- max(x) - min(x)` (assuming the usual case). The amount `a` to be added is either provided as *positive* argument `amount` or otherwise computed from `z`, as follows:

If `amount == 0`, we set `a <- factor * z/50` (same as S).

If `amount` is `NULL` (*default*), we set `a <- factor * d/5` where *d* is the smallest difference between adjacent unique (apart from fuzz) `x` values.

Value

`jitter(x, ...)` returns a numeric of the same length as `x`, but with an `amount` of noise added in order to break ties.

Author(s)

Werner Stahel and Martin Maechler, ETH Zurich

References

Chambers, J. M., Cleveland, W. S., Kleiner, B. and Tukey, P.A. (1983) *Graphical Methods for Data Analysis.* Wadsworth; figures 2.8, 4.22, 5.4.

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`rug` which you may want to combine with `jitter`.

Examples

```
round(jitter(c(rep(1, 3), rep(1.2, 4), rep(3, 3))), 3)
## These two fail with S-plus 3.x:
jitter(rep(0, 7))
jitter(rep(10000, 5))
```

---

kappa *Compute or Estimate the Condition Number of a Matrix*

Description

The condition number of a regular (square) matrix is the product of the *norm* of the matrix and the norm of its inverse (or pseudo-inverse), and hence depends on the kind of matrix-norm.

`kappa()` computes by default (an estimate of) the 2-norm condition number of a matrix or of the R matrix of a QR decomposition, perhaps of a linear fit. The 2-norm condition number can be shown to be the ratio of the largest to the smallest *non-zero* singular value of the matrix.

`rcond()` computes an approximation of the **r**eciprocal **cond**ition number, see the details.

Usage

```
kappa(z, ...)
## Default S3 method:
kappa(z, exact = FALSE,
      norm = NULL, method = c("qr", "direct"), ...)
## S3 method for class lm
kappa(z, ...)
## S3 method for class qr
kappa(z, ...)

.kappa_tri(z, exact = FALSE, LINPACK = TRUE, norm = NULL, ...)

rcond(x, norm = c("O","I","1"), triangular = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`z, x`	A matrix or a the result of `qr` or a fit from a class inheriting from `"lm"`.
`exact`	logical. Should the result be exact?
`norm`	character string, specifying the matrix norm with respect to which the condition number is to be computed, see also `norm`. For `rcond`, the default is `"O"`, meaning the **O**ne- or 1-norm. The (currently only) other possible value is `"I"` for the infinity norm.
`method`	character string, specifying the method to be used; `"qr"` is default for back-compatibility, mainly.
`triangular`	logical. If true, the matrix used is just the lower triangular part of `z`.
`LINPACK`	logical. If true and `z` is not complex, the LINPACK routine `dtrco()` is called; otherwise the relevant LAPACK routine is.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods; for `kappa.*()`, notably `LINPACK` when `norm` is not `"2"`.

Details

For `kappa()`, if `exact = FALSE` (the default) the 2-norm condition number is estimated by a cheap approximation. However, the exact calculation (via `svd`) is also likely to be quick enough.

Note that the 1- and Inf-norm condition numbers are much faster to calculate, and `rcond()` computes these ***reciprocal*** condition numbers, also for complex matrices, using standard Lapack routines.

`kappa` and `rcond` are different interfaces to *partly* identical functionality.

`.kappa_tri` is an internal function called by `kappa.qr` and `kappa.default`.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code: these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code.

Value

The condition number, $kappa$, or an approximation if `exact = FALSE`.

Author(s)

The design was inspired by (but differs considerably from) the S function of the same name described in Chambers (1992).

Source

The LAPACK routines `DTRCON` and `ZTRCON` and the LINPACK routine `DTRCO`.

LAPACK and LINPACK are from `http://www.netlib.org/lapack` and `http://www.netlib.org/linpack` and their guides are listed in the references.

References

Anderson. E. and ten others (1999) *LAPACK Users' Guide*. Third Edition. SIAM.
Available on-line at `http://www.netlib.org/lapack/lug/lapack_lug.html`.

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models.* Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Dongarra, J. J., Bunch, J. R., Moler, C. B. and Stewart, G. W. (1978) *LINPACK Users Guide.* Philadelphia: SIAM Publications.

See Also

`norm`; `svd` for the singular value decomposition and `qr` for the QR one.

Examples

```
kappa(x1 <- cbind(1, 1:10)) # 15.71
kappa(x1, exact = TRUE)        # 13.68
kappa(x2 <- cbind(x1, 2:11)) # high! [x2 is singular!]

hilbert <- function(n) { i <- 1:n; 1 / outer(i - 1, i, "+") }
sv9 <- svd(h9 <- hilbert(9))$ d
kappa(h9)  # pretty high!
kappa(h9, exact = TRUE) == max(sv9) / min(sv9)
kappa(h9, exact = TRUE) / kappa(h9)  # 0.677 (i.e., rel.error = 32%)
```

kronecker *Kronecker Products on Arrays*

Description

Computes the generalised kronecker product of two arrays, X and Y.

Usage

```
kronecker(X, Y, FUN = "*", make.dimnames = FALSE, ...)
X %x% Y
```

Arguments

X	A vector or array.
Y	A vector or array.
FUN	a function; it may be a quoted string.
make.dimnames	Provide dimnames that are the product of the dimnames of X and Y.
...	optional arguments to be passed to FUN.

Details

If X and Y do not have the same number of dimensions, the smaller array is padded with dimensions of size one. The returned array comprises submatrices constructed by taking X one term at a time and expanding that term as FUN(x, Y, ...).

%x% is an alias for kronecker (where FUN is hardwired to "*").

Value

An array A with dimensions dim(X) * dim(Y).

Author(s)

Jonathan Rougier

References

Shayle R. Searle (1982) *Matrix Algebra Useful for Statistics.* John Wiley and Sons.

See Also

outer, on which kronecker is built and %*% for usual matrix multiplication.

Examples

```
# simple scalar multiplication
( M <- matrix(1:6, ncol = 2) )
kronecker(4, M)
# Block diagonal matrix:
kronecker(diag(1, 3), M)

# ask for dimnames

fred <- matrix(1:12, 3, 4, dimnames = list(LETTERS[1:3], LETTERS[4:7]))
bill <- c("happy" = 100, "sad" = 1000)
kronecker(fred, bill, make.dimnames = TRUE)

bill <- outer(bill, c("cat" = 3, "dog" = 4))
kronecker(fred, bill, make.dimnames = TRUE)
```

---

l10n_info *Localization Information*

Description

Report on localization information.

Usage

```
l10n_info()
```

Value

A list with three logical components:

MBCS	If a multi-byte character set in use?
UTF-8	Is this a UTF-8 locale?
Latin-1	Is this a Latin-1 locale?

See Also

Sys.getlocale, localeconv

Examples

```
l10n_info()
```

labels *Find Labels from Object*

Description

Find a suitable set of labels from an object for use in printing or plotting, for example. A generic function.

Usage

```
labels(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	Any object: the function is generic.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

A character vector or list of such vectors. For a vector the results is the names or `seq_along(x)` and for a data frame or array it is the dimnames (with `NULL` expanded to `seq_len(d[i])`.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

lapply *Apply a Function over a List or Vector*

Description

`lapply` returns a list of the same length as `X`, each element of which is the result of applying `FUN` to the corresponding element of `X`.

`sapply` is a user-friendly version and wrapper of `lapply` by default returning a vector, matrix or, if `simplify = "array"`, an array if appropriate, by applying `simplify2array()`. `sapply(x, f, simplify = FALSE, USE.NAMES = FALSE)` is the same as `lapply(x, f)`.

`vapply` is similar to `sapply`, but has a pre-specified type of return value, so it can be safer (and sometimes faster) to use.

`replicate` is a wrapper for the common use of `sapply` for repeated evaluation of an expression (which will usually involve random number generation).

`simplify2array()` is the utility called from `sapply()` when `simplify` is not false and is similarly called from `mapply()`.

Usage

```
lapply(X, FUN, ...)

sapply(X, FUN, ..., simplify = TRUE, USE.NAMES = TRUE)

vapply(X, FUN, FUN.VALUE, ..., USE.NAMES = TRUE)

replicate(n, expr, simplify = "array")

simplify2array(x, higher = TRUE)
```

Arguments

X	a vector (atomic or list) or an expression object. Other objects (including classed objects) will be coerced by base::as.list.
FUN	the function to be applied to each element of X: see 'Details'. In the case of functions like +, %*%, the function name must be backquoted or quoted.
...	optional arguments to FUN.
simplify	logical or character string; should the result be simplified to a vector, matrix or higher dimensional array if possible? For sapply it must be named and not abbreviated. The default value, TRUE, returns a vector or matrix if appropriate, whereas if simplify = "array" the result may be an array of "rank" (=length(dim(.))) one higher than the result of FUN(X[[i]]).
USE.NAMES	logical; if TRUE and if X is character, use X as names for the result unless it had names already. Since this argument follows ... its name cannot be abbreviated.
FUN.VALUE	a (generalized) vector; a template for the return value from FUN. See 'Details'.
n	integer: the number of replications.
expr	the expression (a language object, usually a call) to evaluate repeatedly.
x	a list, typically returned from lapply().
higher	logical; if true, simplify2array() will produce a ("higher rank") array when appropriate, whereas higher = FALSE would return a matrix (or vector) only. These two cases correspond to sapply(*, simplify = "array") or simplify = TRUE, respectively.

Details

FUN is found by a call to match.fun and typically is specified as a function or a symbol (e.g., a backquoted name) or a character string specifying a function to be searched for from the environment of the call to lapply.

Function FUN must be able to accept as input any of the elements of X. If the latter is an atomic vector, FUN will always be passed a length-one vector of the same type as X.

Arguments in ... cannot have the same name as any of the other arguments, and care may be needed to avoid partial matching to FUN. In general-purpose code it is good practice to name the first two arguments X and FUN if ... is passed through: this both avoids partial matching to FUN and ensures that a sensible error message is given if arguments named X or FUN are passed through ....

Simplification in sapply is only attempted if X has length greater than zero and if the return values from all elements of X are all of the same (positive) length. If the common length is one the result is a vector, and if greater than one is a matrix with a column corresponding to each element of X.

Simplification is always done in vapply. This function checks that all values of FUN are compatible with the FUN.VALUE, in that they must have the same length and type. (Types may be promoted to a higher type within the ordering logical < integer < double < complex, but not demoted.)

Users of S4 classes should pass a list to lapply and vapply: the internal coercion is done by the as.list in the base namespace and not one defined by a user (e.g., by setting S4 methods on the base function).

lapply and vapply are primitive functions.

Value

For lapply, sapply(simplify = FALSE) and replicate(simplify = FALSE), a list.

For sapply(simplify = TRUE) and replicate(simplify = TRUE): if X has length zero or n = 0, an empty list. Otherwise an atomic vector or matrix or list of the same length as X (of length n for replicate). If simplification occurs, the output type is determined from the highest type of the return values in the hierarchy NULL < raw < logical < integer < double < complex < character < list < expression, after coercion of pairlists to lists.

vapply returns a vector or array of type matching the FUN.VALUE. If length(FUN.VALUE) == 1 a vector of the same length as X is returned, otherwise an array. If FUN.VALUE is not an array, the result is a matrix with length(FUN.VALUE) rows and length(X) columns, otherwise an array a with dim(a) == c(dim(FUN.VALUE), length(X)).

The (Dim)names of the array value are taken from the FUN.VALUE if it is named, otherwise from the result of the first function call. Column names of the matrix or more generally the names of the last dimension of the array value or names of the vector value are set from X as in sapply.

Note

sapply(*, simplify = FALSE, USE.NAMES = FALSE) is equivalent to lapply(*).

For historical reasons, the calls created by lapply are unevaluated, and code has been written (e.g., bquote) that relies on this. This means that the recorded call is always of the form FUN(X[[i]], ...), with i replaced by the current (integer or double) index. This is not normally a problem, but it can be if FUN uses sys.call or match.call or if it is a primitive function that makes use of the call. This means that it is often safer to call primitive functions with a wrapper, so that e.g. lapply(ll, function(x) is.numeric(x)) is required to ensure that method dispatch for is.numeric occurs correctly.

If expr is a function call, be aware of assumptions about where it is evaluated, and in particular what ... might refer to. You can pass additional named arguments to a function call as additional named arguments to replicate: see 'Examples'.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

apply, tapply, mapply for applying a function to **m**ultiple arguments, and rapply for a **r**ecursive version of lapply(), eapply for applying a function to each entry in an environment.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)

x <- list(a = 1:10, beta = exp(-3:3), logic = c(TRUE,FALSE,FALSE,TRUE))
# compute the list mean for each list element
lapply(x, mean)
# median and quartiles for each list element
lapply(x, quantile, probs = 1:3/4)
sapply(x, quantile)
i39 <- sapply(3:9, seq) # list of vectors
sapply(i39, fivenum)
vapply(i39, fivenum,
       c(Min. = 0, "1st Qu." = 0, Median = 0, "3rd Qu." = 0, Max. = 0))

## sapply(*, "array") -- artificial example
(v <- structure(10*(5:8), names = LETTERS[1:4]))
f2 <- function(x, y) outer(rep(x, length.out = 3), y)
(a2 <- sapply(v, f2, y = 2*(1:5), simplify = "array"))
a.2 <- vapply(v, f2, outer(1:3, 1:5), y = 2*(1:5))
stopifnot(dim(a2) == c(3,5,4), all.equal(a2, a.2),
          identical(dimnames(a2), list(NULL,NULL,LETTERS[1:4])))

hist(replicate(100, mean(rexp(10))))

## use of replicate() with parameters:
foo <- function(x = 1, y = 2) c(x, y)
# does not work: bar <- function(n, ...) replicate(n, foo(...))
bar <- function(n, x) replicate(n, foo(x = x))
bar(5, x = 3)
```

Last.value *Value of Last Evaluated Expression*

Description

The value of the internal evaluation of a top-level expression is always assigned to `.Last.value` (in `package:base`) before further processing (e.g., printing).

Usage

```
.Last.value
```

Details

The value of a top-level assignment *is* put in `.Last.value`, unlike S.

Do not assign to `.Last.value` in the workspace, because this will always mask the object of the same name in `package:base`.

See Also

`eval`

Examples

```
## These will not work correctly from example(),
## but they will in make check or if pasted in,
## as example() does not run them at the top level
gamma(1:15)          # think of some intensive calculation...
fac14 <- .Last.value # keep them

library("splines") # returns invisibly
.Last.value    # shows what library(.) above returned
```

La_version *LAPACK version*

Description

Report the version of LAPACK in use.

Usage

```
La_version()
```

Value

A character vector of length one.

Examples

```
La_version()
```

---

length *Length of an Object*

Description

Get or set the length of vectors (including lists) and factors, and of any other object for which a method has been defined.

Usage

```
length(x)
length(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	an object. For replacement, a vector or factor.
value	a non-negative integer or double (which will be rounded down).

Details

Both functions are generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods. `length<-` has a `"factor"` method.

The replacement form can be used to reset the length of a vector. If a vector is shortened, extra values are discarded and when a vector is lengthened, it is padded out to its new length with `NA`s (`nul` for raw vectors).

Both are primitive functions.

Value

The default method for `length` currently returns a non-negative `integer` of length 1, except for vectors of more than $2^{31} - 1$ elements, when it returns a double.

For vectors (including lists) and factors the length is the number of elements. For an environment it is the number of objects in the environment, and `NULL` has length 0. For expressions and pairlists (including language objects and dotlists) it is the length of the pairlist chain. All other objects (including functions) have length one: note that for functions this differs from S.

The replacement form removes all the attributes of `x` except its names, which are adjusted (and if necessary extended by `""`).

Warning

Package authors have written methods that return a result of length other than one (**Formula**) and that return a vector of type `double` (**Matrix**), even with non-integer values (earlier versions of **sets**). Where a single double value is returned that can be represented as an integer it is returned as a length-one integer vector.

As from 3.0.0, lengths can be returned as double in base .

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`nchar` for counting the number of characters in character vectors.

Examples

```
length(diag(4))  # = 16 (4 x 4)
length(options())  # 12 or more
length(y ~ x1 + x2 + x3)  # 3
length(expression(x, {y <- x^2; y+2}, x^y))  # 3

## from example(warpbreaks)
require(stats)

fm1 <- lm(breaks ~ wool * tension, data = warpbreaks)
length(fm1$call)      # 3, lm() and two arguments.
length(formula(fm1))  # 3, ~ lhs rhs
```

`levels` *Levels Attributes*

Description

`levels` provides access to the levels attribute of a variable. The first form returns the value of the levels of its argument and the second sets the attribute.

Usage

```
levels(x)
levels(x) <- value
```

Arguments

`x`	an object, for example a factor.
`value`	A valid value for `levels(x)`. For the default method, `NULL` or a character vector. For the `factor` method, a vector of character strings with length at least the number of levels of `x`, or a named list specifying how to rename the levels.

Details

Both the extractor and replacement forms are generic and new methods can be written for them. The most important method for the replacement function is that for `factor`s.

For the factor replacement method, a `NA` in `value` causes that level to be removed from the levels and the elements formerly with that level to be replaced by `NA`.

Note that for a factor, replacing the levels via `levels(x) <- value` is not the same as (and is preferred to) `attr(x, "levels") <- value`.

The replacement function is primitive.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`nlevels`, `relevel`, `reorder`.

Examples

```
## assign individual levels
x <- gl(2, 4, 8)
levels(x)[1] <- "low"
levels(x)[2] <- "high"
x

## or as a group
y <- gl(2, 4, 8)
levels(y) <- c("low", "high")
y
```

```
## combine some levels
z <- gl(3, 2, 12)
levels(z) <- c("A", "B", "A")
z

## same, using a named list
z <- gl(3, 2, 12)
levels(z) <- list(A = c(1,3), B = 2)
z

## we can add levels this way:
f <- factor(c("a","b"))
levels(f) <- c("c", "a", "b")
f

f <- factor(c("a","b"))
levels(f) <- list(C = "C", A = "a", B = "b")
f
```

`libPaths` *Search Paths for Packages*

Description

`.libPaths` gets/sets the library trees within which packages are looked for.

Usage

```
.libPaths(new)

.Library
.Library.site
```

Arguments

`new`	a character vector with the locations of library trees. Tilde expansion (`path.expand`) is done, and if any element contains one of `*?[`, globbing is done where supported by the platform: see `Sys.glob`.

Details

`.Library` is a character string giving the location of the default library, the '`library`' subdirectory of `R_HOME`.

`.Library.site` is a (possibly empty) character vector giving the locations of the site libraries, by default the '`site-library`' subdirectory of `R_HOME` (which may not exist).

`.libPaths` is used for getting or setting the library trees that knows about (and hence uses when looking for packages). If called with argument `new`, the library search path is set to the existing directories in `unique(c(new, .Library.site, .Library))` and this is returned. If given no argument, a character vector with the currently active library trees is returned.

How paths `new` with a trailing slash are treated is OS-dependent. On a POSIX filesystem existing directories can usually be specified with a trailing slash: on Windows filepaths with a trailing slash (or backslash) are invalid and so will never be added to the library search path.

The library search path is initialized at startup from the environment variable R_LIBS (which should be a colon-separated list of directories at which library trees are rooted) followed by those in environment variable R_LIBS_USER. Only directories which exist at the time will be included.

By default R_LIBS is unset, and R_LIBS_USER is set to directory 'R/*R.version$platform*-library/*x.y*' of the home directory (or 'Library/R/*x.y*/library' for CRAN OS X builds), for *x.y.z*.

.Library.site can be set via the environment variable R_LIBS_SITE (as a non-empty colon-separated list of library trees).

Both R_LIBS_USER and R_LIBS_SITE feature possible expansion of specifiers for version specific information as part of the startup process. The possible conversion specifiers all start with a '%' and are followed by a single letter (use '%%' to obtain '%'), with currently available conversion specifications as follows:

'%V' version number including the patchlevel (e.g., '2.5.0').

'%v' version number excluding the patchlevel (e.g., '2.5').

'%p' the platform for which was built, the value of R.version$platform.

'%o' the underlying operating system, the value of R.version$os.

'%a' the architecture (CPU) was built on/for, the value of R.version$arch.

(See version for details on R version information.)

Function .libPaths always uses the values of .Library and .Library.site in the base namespace. .Library.site can be set by the site in 'Rprofile.site', which should be followed by a call to .libPaths(.libPaths()) to make use of the updated value.

For consistency, the paths are always normalized by normalizePath(winslash = "/").

Value

A character vector of file paths.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

library

Examples

```
.libPaths()               # all library trees R knows about
```

`library` *Loading/Attaching and Listing of Packages*

Description

`library` and `require` load and attach add-on packages.

Usage

```
library(package, help, pos = 2, lib.loc = NULL,
        character.only = FALSE, logical.return = FALSE,
        warn.conflicts = TRUE, quietly = FALSE,
        verbose = getOption("verbose"))

require(package, lib.loc = NULL, quietly = FALSE,
        warn.conflicts = TRUE,
        character.only = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`package, help`	the name of a package, given as a name or literal character string, or a character string, depending on whether `character.only` is `FALSE` (default) or `TRUE`).
`pos`	the position on the search list at which to attach the loaded namespace. Can also be the name of a position on the current search list as given by `search()`.
`lib.loc`	a character vector describing the location of library trees to search through, or `NULL`. The default value of `NULL` corresponds to all libraries currently known to `.libPaths()`. Non-existent library trees are silently ignored.
`character.only`	a logical indicating whether `package` or `help` can be assumed to be character strings.
`logical.return`	logical. If it is `TRUE`, `FALSE` or `TRUE` is returned to indicate success.
`warn.conflicts`	logical. If `TRUE`, warnings are printed about `conflicts` from attaching the new package. A conflict is a function masking a function, or a non-function masking a non-function.
`verbose`	a logical. If `TRUE`, additional diagnostics are printed.
`quietly`	a logical. If `TRUE`, no message confirming package attaching is printed, and most often, no errors/warnings are printed if package attaching fails.

Details

`library(package)` and `require(package)` both load the namespace of the package with name `package` and attach it on the search list. `require` is designed for use inside other functions; it returns `FALSE` and gives a warning (rather than an error as `library()` does by default) if the package does not exist. Both functions check and update the list of currently attached packages and do not reload a namespace which is already loaded. (If you want to reload such a package, call `detach(unload = TRUE)` or `unloadNamespace` first.) If you want to load a package without attaching it on the search list, see `requireNamespace`.

To suppress messages during the loading of packages use `suppressPackageStartupMessages`: this will suppress all messages from itself but not necessarily all those from package authors.

If library is called with no package or help argument, it lists all available packages in the libraries specified by lib.loc, and returns the corresponding information in an object of class "libraryIQR". (The structure of this class may change in future versions.) Use .packages(all = TRUE) to obtain just the names of all available packages, and installed.packages() for even more information.

library(help = somename) computes basic information about the package **somename**, and returns this in an object of class "packageInfo". (The structure of this class may change in future versions.) When used with the default value (NULL) for lib.loc, the attached packages are searched before the libraries.

Value

Normally library returns (invisibly) the list of attached packages, but TRUE or FALSE if logical.return is TRUE. When called as library() it returns an object of class "libraryIQR", and for library(help=), one of class "packageInfo".

require returns (invisibly) a logical indicating whether the required package is available.

Licenses

Some packages have restrictive licenses, and there is a mechanism to allow users to be aware of such licenses. If getOption("checkPackageLicense") == TRUE, then at first use of a package with a not-known-to-be-FOSS (see below) license the user is asked to view and accept the license: a list of accepted licenses is stored in file '~/.R/licensed'. In a non-interactive session it is an error to use such a package whose license has not already been accepted.

Free or Open Source Software (FOSS, e.g., http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FOSS) packages are determined by the same filters used by available.packages but applied to just the current package, not its dependencies.

There can also be a site-wide file 'R_HOME/etc/licensed.site' of packages (one per line).

Formal methods

library takes some further actions when package **methods** is attached (as it is by default). Packages may define formal generic functions as well as re-defining functions in other packages (notably **base**) to be generic, and this information is cached whenever such a namespace is loaded after **methods** and re-defined functions (implicit generics) are excluded from the list of conflicts. The caching and check for conflicts require looking for a pattern of objects; the search may be avoided by defining an object .noGenerics (with any value) in the namespace. Naturally, if the package *does* have any such methods, this will prevent them from being used.

Note

library and require can only load/attach an *installed* package, and this is detected by having a 'DESCRIPTION' file containing a 'Built:' field.

Under Unix-alikes, the code checks that the package was installed under a similar operating system as given by R.version$platform (the canonical name of the platform under which R was compiled), provided it contains compiled code. Packages which do not contain compiled code can be shared between Unix-alikes, but not to other OSes because of potential problems with line endings and OS-specific help files. If sub-architectures are used, the OS similarity is not checked since the OS used to build may differ (e.g. i386-pc-linux-gnu code can be built on an x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu OS).

The package name given to `library` and `require` must match the name given in the package's 'DESCRIPTION' file exactly, even on case-insensitive file systems such as are common on Windows and OS X.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`.libPaths`, `.packages`.

`attach`, `detach`, `search`, `objects`, `autoload`, `requireNamespace`, `library.dynam`, `data`, `install.packages` and `installed.packages`; `INSTALL`, `REMOVE`.

The initial set of packages attached is set by `options(defaultPackages=)`: see also `Startup`.

Examples

```
library()                  # list all available packages
library(lib.loc = .Library) # list all packages in the default library
library(help = splines)    # documentation on package splines
library(splines)           # attach package splines
require(splines)           # the same
search()                   # "splines", too
detach("package:splines")

# if the package name is in a character vector, use
pkg <- "splines"
library(pkg, character.only = TRUE)
detach(pos = match(paste("package", pkg, sep = ":"), search()))

require(pkg, character.only = TRUE)
detach(pos = match(paste("package", pkg, sep = ":"), search()))

require(nonexistent)       # FALSE
## Not run:
## if you want to mask as little as possible, use
library(mypkg, pos = "package:base")

## End(Not run)
```

---

library.dynam *Loading DLLs from Packages*

Description

Load the specified file of compiled code if it has not been loaded already, or unloads it.

Usage

```
library.dynam(chname, package, lib.loc,
              verbose = getOption("verbose"),
              file.ext = .Platform$dynlib.ext, ...)

library.dynam.unload(chname, libpath,
              verbose = getOption("verbose"),
              file.ext = .Platform$dynlib.ext)

.dynLibs(new)
```

Arguments

chname	a character string naming a DLL (also known as a dynamic shared object or library) to load.
package	a character vector with the name of package.
lib.loc	a character vector describing the location of library trees to search through.
libpath	the path to the loaded package whose DLL is to be unloaded.
verbose	a logical value indicating whether an announcement is printed on the console before loading the DLL. The default value is taken from the verbose entry in the system options.
file.ext	the extension (including '.' if used) to append to the file name to specify the library to be loaded. This defaults to the appropriate value for the operating system.
...	additional arguments needed by some libraries that are passed to the call to dyn.load to control how the library and its dependencies are loaded.
new	a list of "DLLInfo" objects corresponding to the DLLs loaded by packages. Can be missing.

Details

See dyn.load for what sort of objects these functions handle.

library.dynam is designed to be used inside a package rather than at the command line, and should really only be used inside .onLoad. The system-specific extension for DLLs (e.g., '.so' or '.sl' on Unix-alike systems, '.dll' on Windows) should not be added.

library.dynam.unload is designed for use in .onUnload: it unloads the DLL and updates the value of .dynLibs()

.dynLibs is used for getting (with no argument) or setting the DLLs which are currently loaded by packages (using library.dynam).

Value

If chname is not specified, library.dynam returns an object of class "DLLInfoList" corresponding to the DLLs loaded by packages.

If chname is specified, an object of class "DLLInfo" that identifies the DLL and which can be used in future calls is returned invisibly. Note that the class "DLLInfo" has a method for $ which can be used to resolve native symbols within that DLL.

library.dynam.unload invisibly returns an object of class "DLLInfo" identifying the DLL successfully unloaded.

`.dynLibs` returns an object of class `"DLLInfoList"` corresponding corresponding to its current value.

Warning

Do not use `dyn.unload` on a DLL loaded by `library.dynam`: use `library.dynam.unload` to ensure that `.dynLibs` gets updated. Otherwise a subsequent call to `library.dynam` will be told the object is already loaded.

Note that whether or not it is possible to unload a DLL and then reload a revised version of the same file is OS-dependent: see the 'Value' section of the help for `dyn.unload`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`getLoadedDLLs` for information on `"DLLInfo"` and `"DLLInfoList"` objects.

`.onLoad`, `library`, `dyn.load`, `.packages`, `.libPaths`

`SHLIB` for how to create suitable DLLs.

Examples

```
## Which DLLs were dynamically loaded by packages?
library.dynam()
```

---

license *The R License Terms*

Description

The license terms under which is distributed.

Usage

```
license()
licence()
```

Details

 is distributed under the terms of the GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE, either Version 2, June 1991 or Version 3, June 2007. A copy of the version 2 license is in file '*R_HOME*`/doc/COPYING`' and can be viewed by `RShowDoc("COPYING")`. Version 3 of the license can be displayed by `RShowDoc("GPL-3")`.

A small number of files (some of the API header files) are distributed under the LESSER GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE, version 2.1 or later. A copy of this license is in file '`$R_SHARE_DIR/licenses/LGPL-2.1`' and can be viewed by `RShowDoc("LGPL-2.1")`. Version 3 of the license can be displayed by `RShowDoc("LGPL-3")`.

`list` *Lists – Generic and Dotted Pairs*

Description

Functions to construct, coerce and check for both kinds of lists.

Usage

```
list(...)
pairlist(...)

as.list(x, ...)
## S3 method for class environment
as.list(x, all.names = FALSE, ...)
as.pairlist(x)

is.list(x)
is.pairlist(x)

alist(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	objects, possibly named.
`x`	object to be coerced or tested.
`all.names`	a logical indicating whether to copy all values or (default) only those whose names do not begin with a dot.

Details

Almost all lists in internally are *Generic Vectors*, whereas traditional *dotted pair* lists (as in LISP) remain available but rarely seen by users (except as `formals` of functions).

The arguments to `list` or `pairlist` are of the form `value` or `tag = value`. The functions return a list or dotted pair list composed of its arguments with each value either tagged or untagged, depending on how the argument was specified.

`alist` handles its arguments as if they described function arguments. So the values are not evaluated, and tagged arguments with no value are allowed whereas `list` simply ignores them. `alist` is most often used in conjunction with `formals`.

`as.list` attempts to coerce its argument to a list. For functions, this returns the concatenation of the list of formal arguments and the function body. For expressions, the list of constituent elements is returned. `as.list` is generic, and as the default method calls `as.vector(mode = "list")` for a non-list, methods for `as.vector` may be invoked. `as.list` turns a factor into a list of one-element factors. Attributes may be dropped unless the argument already is a list or expression. (This is inconsistent with functions such as `as.character` which always drop attributes, and is for efficiency since lists can be expensive to copy.)

`is.list` returns `TRUE` if and only if its argument is a `list` *or* a `pairlist` of `length` > 0. `is.pairlist` returns `TRUE` if and only if the argument is a pairlist or `NULL` (see below).

The `"environment"` method for `as.list` copies the name-value pairs (for names not beginning with a dot) from an environment to a named list. The user can request that all named objects are copied. The list is in no particular order (the order depends on the order of creation of objects and whether the environment is hashed). No enclosing environments are searched. (Objects copied are duplicated so this can be an expensive operation.) Note that there is an inverse operation, the `as.environment()` method for list objects.

An empty pairlist, `pairlist()` is the same as `NULL`. This is different from `list()`.

`as.pairlist` is implemented as `as.vector(x, "pairlist")`, and hence will dispatch methods for the generic function `as.vector`. Lists are copied element-by-element into a pairlist and the names of the list used as tags for the pairlist: the return value for other types of argument is undocumented.

`list`, `is.list` and `is.pairlist` are primitive functions.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`vector("list", length)` for creation of a list with empty components; `c`, for concatenation; `formals`. `unlist` is an approximate inverse to `as.list()`.

'plotmath' for the use of `list` in plot annotation.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

# create a plotting structure
pts <- list(x = cars[,1], y = cars[,2])
plot(pts)

is.pairlist(.Options)  # a user-level pairlist

## "pre-allocate" an empty list of length 5
vector("list", 5)

# Argument lists
f <- function() x
# Note the specification of a "..." argument:
formals(f) <- al <- alist(x = , y = 2+3, ... = )
f
al

## environment->list coercion

e1 <- new.env()
e1$a <- 10
e1$b <- 20
as.list(e1)
```

`list.files` *List the Files in a Directory/Folder*

Description

These functions produce a character vector of the names of files or directories in the named directory.

Usage

```
list.files(path = ".", pattern = NULL, all.files = FALSE,
           full.names = FALSE, recursive = FALSE,
           ignore.case = FALSE, include.dirs = FALSE, no.. = FALSE)

       dir(path = ".", pattern = NULL, all.files = FALSE,
           full.names = FALSE, recursive = FALSE,
           ignore.case = FALSE, include.dirs = FALSE, no.. = FALSE)

list.dirs(path = ".", full.names = TRUE, recursive = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`path`	a character vector of full path names; the default corresponds to the working directory, `getwd()`. Tilde expansion (see `path.expand`) is performed. Missing values will be ignored.
`pattern`	an optional regular expression. Only file names which match the regular expression will be returned.
`all.files`	a logical value. If `FALSE`, only the names of visible files are returned. If `TRUE`, all file names will be returned.
`full.names`	a logical value. If `TRUE`, the directory path is prepended to the file names to give a relative file path. If `FALSE`, the file names (rather than paths) are returned.
`recursive`	logical. Should the listing recurse into directories?
`ignore.case`	logical. Should pattern-matching be case-insensitive?
`include.dirs`	logical. Should subdirectory names be included in recursive listings? (They always are in non-recursive ones).
`no..`	logical. Should both `"."` and `".."` be excluded also from non-recursive listings?

Value

A character vector containing the names of the files in the specified directories, or `""` if there were no files. If a path does not exist or is not a directory or is unreadable it is skipped, with a warning.

The files are sorted in alphabetical order, on the full path if `full.names = TRUE`.

`list.dirs` implicitly has `all.files = TRUE`, and if `recursive = TRUE`, the answer includes `path` itself (provided it is a readable directory).

Note

File naming conventions are platform dependent. The pattern matching works with the case of file names as returned by the OS.

On a POSIX filesystem recursive listings will follow symbolic links to directories.

Author(s)

Ross Ihaka, Brian Ripley

See Also

`file.info`, `file.access` and `files` for many more file handling functions and `file.choose` for interactive selection.

`glob2rx` to convert wildcards (as used by system file commands and shells) to regular expressions.

`Sys.glob` for wildcard expansion on file paths.

Examples

```
list.files(R.home())
## Only files starting with a-l or r
## Note that a-l is locale-dependent, but using case-insensitive
## matching makes it unambiguous in English locales
dir("../..", pattern = "^[a-lr]", full.names = TRUE, ignore.case = TRUE)

list.dirs(R.home("doc"))
list.dirs(R.home("doc"), full.names = FALSE)
```

---

list2env *From A List, Build or Add To an Environment*

Description

From a *named* `list` `x`, create an `environment` containing all list components as objects, or "multi-assign" from `x` into a pre-existing environment.

Usage

```
list2env(x, envir = NULL, parent = parent.frame(),
         hash = (length(x) > 100), size = max(29L, length(x)))
```

Arguments

`x`	a `list`, where `names(x)` must not contain empty (`""`) elements.
`envir`	an `environment` or `NULL`.
`parent`	(for the case `envir = NULL`): a parent frame aka enclosing environment, see `new.env`.
`hash`	(for the case `envir = NULL`): logical indicating if the created environment should use hashing, see `new.env`.
`size`	(in the case `envir = NULL, hash = TRUE`): hash size, see `new.env`.

Details

This will be very slow for large inputs unless hashing is used on the environment.

Environments must have uniquely named entries, but named lists need not: where the list has duplicate names it is the *last* element with the name that is used. Empty names throw an error.

Value

An environment, either newly created (as by new.env) if the envir argument was NULL, otherwise the updated environment envir. Since environments are never duplicated, the argument envir is also changed.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

environment, new.env, as.environment; further, assign.

The (semantical) "inverse": as.list.environment.

Examples

```
L <- list(a = 1, b = 2:4, p = pi, ff = gl(3, 4, labels = LETTERS[1:3]))
e <- list2env(L)
ls(e)
stopifnot(ls(e) == sort(names(L)),
          identical(L$b, e$b)) # "$" working for environments as for lists

## consistency, when we do the inverse:
ll <- as.list(e)  # -> dispatching to the as.list.environment() method
rbind(names(L), names(ll)) # not in the same order, typically,
                           # but the same content:
stopifnot(identical(L [sort.list(names(L ))],
                    ll[sort.list(names(ll))]))

## now add to e -- can be seen as a fast "multi-assign":
list2env(list(abc = LETTERS, note = "just an example",
              df = data.frame(x = rnorm(20), y = rbinom(20, 1, pr = 0.2))),
         envir = e)
utils::ls.str(e)
```

---

load *Reload Saved Datasets*

Description

Reload datasets written with the function save.

Usage

```
load(file, envir = parent.frame(), verbose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

file	a (readable binary-mode) connection or a character string giving the name of the file to load (when tilde expansion is done).
envir	the environment where the data should be loaded.
verbose	should item names be printed during loading?

Details

load can load objects saved in the current or any earlier format. It can read a compressed file (see save) directly from a file or from a suitable connection (including a call to url).

A not-open connection will be opened in mode "rb" and closed after use. Any connection other than a gzfile or gzcon connection will be wrapped in gzcon to allow compressed saves to be handled: note that this leaves the connection in an altered state (in particular, binary-only), and that it needs to be closed explicitly (it will not be garbage-collected).

Only objects saved in the current format (used since 1.4.0) can be read from a connection. If no input is available on a connection a warning will be given, but any input not in the current format will result in a error.

Loading from an earlier version will give a warning about the 'magic number': magic numbers 1971:1977 are from < 0.99.0, and RD[ABX]1 from 0.99.0 to 1.3.1. These are all obsolete, and you are strongly recommended to re-save such files in a current format.

The verbose argument is mainly intended for debugging. If it is TRUE, then as objects from the file are loaded, their names will be printed to the console. If verbose is set to an integer value greater than one, additional names corresponding to attributes and other parts of individual objects will also be printed. Larger values will print names to a greater depth.

Objects can be saved with references to namespaces, usually as part of the environment of a function or formula. As from 3.1.0 such objects can be loaded even if the namespace is not available: it is replaced by a reference to the global environment with a warning. The warning identifies the first object with such a reference (but there may be more than one).

Value

A character vector of the names of objects created, invisibly.

Warning

Saved objects are binary files, even those saved with ascii = TRUE, so ensure that they are transferred without conversion of end of line markers. load tries to detect such a conversion and gives an informative error message.

load(<file>) replaces all existing objects with the same names in the current environment (typically your workspace), and hence potentially overwrites important data. It is considerably safer to use envir = to load into a different environment, or to attach(file) which load()s into a new entry in the search path.

See Also

save, download.file.

For other interfaces to the underlying serialization format, see unserialize and readRDS.

Examples

```
## save all data
xx <- pi # to ensure there is some data
save(list = ls(all = TRUE), file= "all.RData")
rm(xx)

## restore the saved values to the current environment
local({
   load("all.RData")
```

```
   ls()
})
## restore the saved values to the users workspace
load("all.RData", .GlobalEnv)

unlink("all.RData")

## Not run:
con <- url("http://some.where.net/R/data/example.rda")
## print the value to see what objects were created.
print(load(con))
close(con) # url() always opens the connection

## End(Not run)
```

`locales` *Query or Set Aspects of the Locale*

Description

Get details of or set aspects of the locale for the process.

Usage

```
Sys.getlocale(category = "LC_ALL")
Sys.setlocale(category = "LC_ALL", locale = "")
```

Arguments

`category`	character string. The following categories should always be supported: `"LC_ALL"`, `"LC_COLLATE"`, `"LC_CTYPE"`, `"LC_MONETARY"`, `"LC_NUMERIC"` and `"LC_TIME"`. Some systems (not Windows) will also support `"LC_MESSAGES"`, `"LC_PAPER"` and `"LC_MEASUREMENT"`.
`locale`	character string. A valid locale name on the system in use. Normally `""` (the default) will pick up the default locale for the system.

Details

The locale describes aspects of the internationalization of a program. Initially most aspects of the locale of are set to `"C"` (which is the default for the C language and reflects North-American usage). sets `"LC_CTYPE"` and `"LC_COLLATE"`, which allow the use of a different character set and alphabetic comparisons in that character set (including the use of `sort`), `"LC_MONETARY"` (for use by `Sys.localeconv`) and `"LC_TIME"` may affect the behaviour of `as.POSIXlt` and `strptime` and functions which use them (but not `date`).

The first seven categories described here are those specified by POSIX. `"LC_MESSAGES"` will be `"C"` on systems that do not support message translation, and is not supported on Windows. Trying to use an unsupported category is an error for `Sys.setlocale`.

Note that setting category `"LC_ALL"` sets only `"LC_COLLATE"`, `"LC_CTYPE"`, `"LC_MONETARY"` and `"LC_TIME"`.

Attempts to set an invalid locale are ignored. There may or may not be a warning, depending on the OS.

Attempts to change the character set (by Sys.setlocale("LC_TYPE",), if that implies a different character set) during a session may not work and are likely to lead to some confusion.

Note that the LANGUAGE environment variable has precedence over "LC_MESSAGES" in selecting the language for message translation on most platforms.

On platforms where ICU is used for collation the locale used for collation can be reset by icuSetCollate). Except on Windows, the initial setting is taken from the "LC_COLLATE" category, and it is reset when this is changed by a call to Sys.setlocale.

Value

A character string of length one describing the locale in use (after setting for Sys.setlocale), or an empty character string if the current locale settings are invalid or NULL if locale information is unavailable.

For category = "LC_ALL" the details of the string are system-specific: it might be a single locale name or a set of locale names separated by "/" (Solaris, OS X) or ";" (Windows, Linux). For portability, it is best to query categories individually: it is not necessarily the case that the result of foo <- Sys.getlocale() can be used in Sys.setlocale("LC_ALL", locale = foo).

Warning

Setting "LC_NUMERIC" may cause to function anomalously, so gives a warning. Input conversions in itself are unaffected, but the reading and writing of ASCII save files will be, as may packages.

Setting it temporarily on a Unix-alike to produce graphical or text output may work well enough, but options(OutDec) is often preferable.

Almost all the output routines used by itself under Windows ignore the setting of "LC_NUMERIC" since they make use of the Trio library which is not internationalized.

Note

Changing the values of locale categories whilst is running ought to be noticed by the OS services, and usually is but exceptions have been seen (usually in collation services).

See Also

strptime for uses of category = "LC_TIME". Sys.localeconv for details of numerical and monetary representations.

l10n_info gives some summary facts about the locale and its encoding.

The 'R Installation and Administration' manual for background on locales and how to find out locale names on your system.

Examples

```
Sys.getlocale()
Sys.getlocale("LC_TIME")
## Not run:
Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", "de")     # Solaris: details are OS-dependent
Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", "de_DE.utf8")   # Modern Linux etc.
Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", "de_DE.UTF-8")  # ditto
Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", "de_DE")  # OS X, in UTF-8
Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", "German") # Windows

## End(Not run)
```

```
Sys.getlocale("LC_PAPER")          # may or may not be set

## Not run:
Sys.setlocale("LC_COLLATE", "C")   # turn off locale-specific sorting,
                                   # usually, but not on all platforms
## End(Not run)
```

---

log *Logarithms and Exponentials*

Description

log computes logarithms, by default natural logarithms, log10 computes common (i.e., base 10) logarithms, and log2 computes binary (i.e., base 2) logarithms. The general form log(x, base) computes logarithms with base base.

log1p(x) computes $\log(1 + x)$ accurately also for $|x| \ll 1$.

exp computes the exponential function.

expm1(x) computes $\exp(x) - 1$ accurately also for $|x| \ll 1$.

Usage

```
log(x, base = exp(1))
logb(x, base = exp(1))
log10(x)
log2(x)

log1p(x)

exp(x)
expm1(x)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric or complex vector.
base	a positive or complex number: the base with respect to which logarithms are computed. Defaults to e=exp(1).

Details

All except logb are generic functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the Math group generic.

log10 and log2 are only convenience wrappers, but logs to bases 10 and 2 (whether computed *via* log or the wrappers) will be computed more efficiently and accurately where supported by the OS. Methods can be set for them individually (and otherwise methods for log will be used).

logb is a wrapper for log for compatibility with S. If (S3 or S4) methods are set for log they will be dispatched. Do not set S4 methods on logb itself.

All except log are primitive functions.

Value

A vector of the same length as `x` containing the transformed values. `log(0)` gives `-Inf`, and `log(x)` for negative values of `x` is `NaN`. `exp(-Inf)` is `0`.

For complex inputs to the log functions, the value is a complex number with imaginary part in the range $[-\pi, \pi]$: which end of the range is used might be platform-specific.

S4 methods

`exp`, `expm1`, `log`, `log10`, `log2` and `log1p` are S4 generic and are members of the `Math` group generic.

Note that this means that the S4 generic for `log` has a signature with only one argument, `x`, but that `base` can be passed to methods (but will not be used for method selection). On the other hand, if you only set a method for the `Math` group generic then `base` argument of `log` will be ignored for your class.

Source

`log1p` and `expm1` may be taken from the operating system, but if not available there then they are based on the Fortran subroutine `dlnrel` by W. Fullerton of Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory (see `http://www.netlib.org/slatec/fnlib/dlnrel.f` and (for small `x`) a single Newton step for the solution of `log1p(y) = x` respectively.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (for `log`, `log10` and `exp`.)

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer. (for `logb`.)

See Also

`Trig`, `sqrt`, `Arithmetic`.

Examples

```
log(exp(3))
log10(1e7) # = 7

x <- 10^-(1+2*1:9)
cbind(x, log(1+x), log1p(x), exp(x)-1, expm1(x))
```

`Logic` *Logical Operators*

Description

These operators act on raw, logical and number-like vectors.

Usage

```
! x
x & y
x && y
x | y
x || y
xor(x, y)

isTRUE(x)
```

Arguments

x, y	raw or logical or 'number-like' vectors (i.e., of types double (class numeric), integer and complex)), or objects for which methods have been written.

Details

! indicates logical negation (NOT).

& and && indicate logical AND and | and || indicate logical OR. The shorter form performs elementwise comparisons in much the same way as arithmetic operators. The longer form evaluates left to right examining only the first element of each vector. Evaluation proceeds only until the result is determined. The longer form is appropriate for programming control-flow and typically preferred in if clauses.

xor indicates elementwise exclusive OR.

isTRUE(x) is an abbreviation of identical(TRUE, x), and so is true if and only if x is a length-one logical vector whose only element is TRUE and which has no attributes (not even names).

Numeric and complex vectors will be coerced to logical values, with zero being false and all non-zero values being true. Raw vectors are handled without any coercion for !, &, | and xor, with these operators being applied bitwise (so ! is the 1s-complement).

The operators !, & and | are generic functions: methods can be written for them individually or via the Ops (or S4 Logic, see below) group generic function. (See Ops for how dispatch is computed.)

NA is a valid logical object. Where a component of x or y is NA, the result will be NA if the outcome is ambiguous. In other words NA & TRUE evaluates to NA, but NA & FALSE evaluates to FALSE. See the examples below.

See Syntax for the precedence of these operators: unlike many other languages (including S) the AND and OR operators do not have the same precedence (the AND operators have higher precedence than the OR operators).

Value

For !, a logical or raw vector(for raw x) of the same length as x: names, dims and dimnames are copied from x, and all other attributes (including class) if no coercion is done.

For |, & and xor a logical or raw vector. The elements of shorter vectors are recycled as necessary (with a warning when they are recycled only *fractionally*). The rules for determining the attributes of the result are rather complicated. Most attributes are taken from the longer argument, the first if they are of the same length. Names will be copied from the first if it is the same length as the answer, otherwise from the second if that is. For time series, these operations are allowed only if the series are compatible, when the class and tsp attribute of whichever is a time series (the same, if both are) are used. For arrays (and an array result) the dimensions and dimnames are taken from first argument if it is an array, otherwise the second.

For `||`, `&&` and `isTRUE`, a length-one logical vector.

S4 methods

`!`, `&` and `|` are S4 generics, the latter two part of the `Logic` group generic (and hence methods need argument names `e1, e2`).

Note

The elementwise operators are sometimes called as functions as e.g. `&(x, y)`: see the description of how argument-matching is done in `Ops`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`TRUE` or `logical`.

`any` and `all` for OR and AND on many scalar arguments.

`Syntax` for operator precedence.

`bitwAnd` for bitwise versions for integer vectors.

Examples

```
y <- 1 + (x <- stats::rpois(50, lambda = 1.5) / 4 - 1)
x[(x > 0) & (x < 1)]    # all x values between 0 and 1
if (any(x == 0) || any(y == 0)) "zero encountered"

## construct truth tables :

x <- c(NA, FALSE, TRUE)
names(x) <- as.character(x)
outer(x, x, "&") ## AND table
outer(x, x, "|") ## OR  table
```

`logical` *Logical Vectors*

Description

Create or test for objects of type `"logical"`, and the basic logical constants.

Usage

```
TRUE
FALSE
T; F

logical(length = 0)
as.logical(x, ...)
is.logical(x)
```

Arguments

length	A non-negative integer specifying the desired length. Double values will be coerced to integer: supplying an argument of length other than one is an error.
x	object to be coerced or tested.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

TRUE and FALSE are reserved words denoting logical constants in the language, whereas T and F are global variables whose initial values set to these. All four are logical(1) vectors.

Logical vectors are coerced to integer vectors in contexts where a numerical value is required, with TRUE being mapped to 1L, FALSE to 0L and NA to NA_integer_.

Value

logical creates a logical vector of the specified length. Each element of the vector is equal to FALSE.

as.logical attempts to coerce its argument to be of logical type. For factors, this uses the levels (labels). Like as.vector it strips attributes including names. Character strings c("T", "TRUE", "True", "true") are regarded as true, c("F", "FALSE", "False", "false") as false, and all others as NA.

is.logical returns TRUE or FALSE depending on whether its argument is of logical type or not.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

NA, the other logical constant.

LongVectors *Long Vectors*

Description

Vectors of 2^{31} or more elements were added in 3.0.0.

Details

Prior to 3.0.0, all vectors in were restricted to at most $2^{31} - 1$ elements and could be indexed by integer vectors.

Currently all atomic (raw, logical, integer, numeric, complex, character) vectors, lists and expressions can be much longer on 64-bit platforms: such vectors are referred to as 'long vectors' and have a slightly different internal structure. In theory up they can to 2^{52} elements, but address space limits of current CPUs and OSes will be much smaller. Such objects will have a length that is expressed as a double, and can be indexed by double vectors.

Arrays (including matrices) can be based on long vectors provided each of their dimensions is at most $2^{31} - 1$: thus there are no 1-dimensional long arrays.

code typically only needs minor changes to work with long vectors, maybe only checking that `as.integer` is not used unnecessarily for e.g. lengths. However, compiled code typically needs quite extensive changes. Note that the `.C` and `.Fortran` interfaces do not accept long vectors, so `.Call` (or similar) has to be used.

Because of the storage requirements (a minimum of 64 bytes per character string), character vectors are only going to be usable if they have a small number of distinct elements, and even then factors will be more efficient (4 bytes per element rather than 8). So it is expected that most of the usage of long vectors will be integer vectors (including factors) and numeric vectors.

Matrix algebra

It is now possible to use $m \times n$ matrices with more than 2 billion elements. Whether matrix algebra (including `%*%`, `crossprod`, `svd`, `qr`, `solve` and `eigen` will actually work is somewhat implementation dependent, including the Fortran compiler used and if an external BLAS or LAPACK is used.

An efficient parallel BLAS implementation will often be important to obtain usable performance. For example on one particular platform `chol` on a 47,000 square matrix took about 5 hours with the internal BLAS, 21 minutes using an optimized BLAS on one core, and 2 minutes using an optimized BLAS on 16 cores.

---

lower.tri *Lower and Upper Triangular Part of a Matrix*

Description

Returns a matrix of logicals the same size of a given matrix with entries `TRUE` in the lower or upper triangle.

Usage

```
lower.tri(x, diag = FALSE)
upper.tri(x, diag = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix.
`diag`	logical. Should the diagonal be included?

See Also

`diag`, `matrix`.

Examples

```
(m2 <- matrix(1:20, 4, 5))
lower.tri(m2)
m2[lower.tri(m2)] <- NA
m2
```

`ls` *List Objects*

Description

`ls` and `objects` return a vector of character strings giving the names of the objects in the specified environment. When invoked with no argument at the top level prompt, `ls` shows what data sets and functions a user has defined. When invoked with no argument inside a function, `ls` returns the names of the function's local variables: this is useful in conjunction with `browser`.

Usage

```
ls(name, pos = -1L, envir = as.environment(pos),
   all.names = FALSE, pattern)
objects(name, pos= -1L, envir = as.environment(pos),
        all.names = FALSE, pattern)
```

Arguments

`name`	which environment to use in listing the available objects. Defaults to the *current* environment. Although called `name` for back compatibility, in fact this argument can specify the environment in any form; see the 'Details' section.
`pos`	an alternative argument to `name` for specifying the environment as a position in the search list. Mostly there for back compatibility.
`envir`	an alternative argument to `name` for specifying the environment. Mostly there for back compatibility.
`all.names`	a logical value. If `TRUE`, all object names are returned. If `FALSE`, names which begin with a '`.`' are omitted.
`pattern`	an optional regular expression. Only names matching `pattern` are returned. `glob2rx` can be used to convert wildcard patterns to regular expressions.

Details

The `name` argument can specify the environment from which object names are taken in one of several forms: as an integer (the position in the `search` list); as the character string name of an element in the search list; or as an explicit `environment` (including using `sys.frame` to access the currently active function calls). By default, the environment of the call to `ls` or `objects` is used. The `pos` and `envir` arguments are an alternative way to specify an environment, but are primarily there for back compatibility.

Note that the *order* of the resulting strings is locale dependent, see `Sys.getlocale`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

glob2rx for converting wildcard patterns to regular expressions.

ls.str for a long listing based on str. apropos (or find) for finding objects in the whole search path; grep for more details on 'regular expressions'; class, methods, etc., for object-oriented programming.

Examples

```
.Ob <- 1
ls(pattern = "O")
ls(pattern= "O", all.names = TRUE)    # also shows ".[foo]"

# shows an empty list because inside myfunc no variables are defined
myfunc <- function() {ls()}
myfunc()

# define a local variable inside myfunc
myfunc <- function() {y <- 1; ls()}
myfunc()                # shows "y"
```

---

make.names *Make Syntactically Valid Names*

Description

Make syntactically valid names out of character vectors.

Usage

```
make.names(names, unique = FALSE, allow_ = TRUE)
```

Arguments

names	character vector to be coerced to syntactically valid names. This is coerced to character if necessary.
unique	logical; if TRUE, the resulting elements are unique. This may be desired for, e.g., column names.
allow_	logical. For compatibility with prior to 1.9.0.

Details

A syntactically valid name consists of letters, numbers and the dot or underline characters and starts with a letter or the dot not followed by a number. Names such as ".2way" are not valid, and neither are the reserved words.

The definition of a *letter* depends on the current locale, but only ASCII digits are considered to be digits.

The character "X" is prepended if necessary. All invalid characters are translated to ".". A missing value is translated to "NA". Names which match keywords have a dot appended to them. Duplicated values are altered by make.unique.

Value

A character vector of same length as `names` with each changed to a syntactically valid name, in the current locale's encoding.

Warning

Some OSes, notably FreeBSD, report extremely incorrect information about which characters are alphabetic in some locales (typically, all multi-byte locales including UTF-8 locales). However, provides substitutes on Windows, OS X and AIX.

Note

Prior to version 1.9.0, underscores were not valid in variable names, and code that relies on them being converted to dots will no longer work. Use `allow_ = FALSE` for back-compatibility.

`allow_ = FALSE` is also useful when creating names for export to applications which do not allow underline in names (for example, S-PLUS and some DBMSs).

See Also

`make.unique`, `names`, `character`, `data.frame`.

Examples

```
make.names(c("a and b", "a-and-b"), unique = TRUE)
# "a.and.b"  "a.and.b.1"
make.names(c("a and b", "a_and_b"), unique = TRUE)
# "a.and.b"  "a_and_b"
make.names(c("a and b", "a_and_b"), unique = TRUE, allow_ = FALSE)
# "a.and.b"  "a.and.b.1"
make.names(c("", "X"), unique = TRUE)
# "X.1" "X" currently; R up to 3.0.2 gave "X" "X.1"

state.name[make.names(state.name) != state.name] # those 10 with a space
```

---

make.unique *Make Character Strings Unique*

Description

Makes the elements of a character vector unique by appending sequence numbers to duplicates.

Usage

```
make.unique(names, sep = ".")
```

Arguments

`names`	a character vector
`sep`	a character string used to separate a duplicate name from its sequence number.

Details

The algorithm used by `make.unique` has the property that `make.unique(c(A, B)) == make.unique(c(make.unique(A), B))`.

In other words, you can append one string at a time to a vector, making it unique each time, and get the same result as applying `make.unique` to all of the strings at once.

If character vector `A` is already unique, then `make.unique(c(A, B))` preserves `A`.

Value

A character vector of same length as `names` with duplicates changed, in the current locale's encoding.

Author(s)

Thomas P. Minka

See Also

`make.names`

Examples

```
make.unique(c("a", "a", "a"))
make.unique(c(make.unique(c("a", "a")), "a"))

make.unique(c("a", "a", "a.2", "a"))
make.unique(c(make.unique(c("a", "a")), "a.2", "a"))

rbind(data.frame(x = 1), data.frame(x = 2), data.frame(x = 3))
rbind(rbind(data.frame(x = 1), data.frame(x = 2)), data.frame(x = 3))
```

---

mapply *Apply a Function to Multiple List or Vector Arguments*

Description

`mapply` is a multivariate version of `sapply`. `mapply` applies `FUN` to the first elements of each ... argument, the second elements, the third elements, and so on. Arguments are recycled if necessary.

Usage

```
mapply(FUN, ..., MoreArgs = NULL, SIMPLIFY = TRUE,
       USE.NAMES = TRUE)
```

Arguments

FUN	function to apply, found via match.fun.
...	arguments to vectorize over (vectors or lists of strictly positive length, or all of zero length). See also 'Details'.
MoreArgs	a list of other arguments to FUN.
SIMPLIFY	logical or character string; attempt to reduce the result to a vector, matrix or higher dimensional array; see the simplify argument of sapply.
USE.NAMES	logical; use names if the first ... argument has names, or if it is a character vector, use that character vector as the names.

Details

mapply calls FUN for the values of ... (re-cycled to the length of the longest, unless any have length zero), followed by the arguments given in MoreArgs. The arguments in the call will be named if ... or MoreArgs are named.

Arguments with classes in ... will be accepted, and their subsetting and length methods will be used.

Value

A list, or for SIMPLIFY = TRUE, a vector, array or list.

See Also

sapply, after which mapply() is modelled.

outer, which applies a vectorized function to all combinations of two arguments.

Examples

```
mapply(rep, 1:4, 4:1)

mapply(rep, times = 1:4, x = 4:1)

mapply(rep, times = 1:4, MoreArgs = list(x = 42))

mapply(function(x, y) seq_len(x) + y,
       c(a =  1, b = 2, c = 3),  # names from first
       c(A = 10, B = 0, C = -10))

word <- function(C, k) paste(rep.int(C, k), collapse = "")
utils::str(mapply(word, LETTERS[1:6], 6:1, SIMPLIFY = FALSE))
```

---

margin.table *Compute table margin*

Description

For a contingency table in array form, compute the sum of table entries for a given index.

Usage

```
margin.table(x, margin = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	an array
margin	index number (1 for rows, etc.)

Details

This is really just `apply(x, margin, sum)` packaged up for newbies, except that if `margin` has length zero you get `sum(x)`.

Value

The relevant marginal table. The class of `x` is copied to the output table, except in the summation case.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

See Also

`prop.table` and `addmargins`.

Examples

```
m <- matrix(1:4, 2)
margin.table(m, 1)
margin.table(m, 2)
```

---

mat.or.vec *Create a Matrix or a Vector*

Description

`mat.or.vec` creates an `nr` by `nc` zero matrix if `nc` is greater than 1, and a zero vector of length `nr` if `nc` equals 1.

Usage

```
mat.or.vec(nr, nc)
```

Arguments

nr, nc	numbers of rows and columns.

Examples

```
mat.or.vec(3, 1)
mat.or.vec(3, 2)
```

match *Value Matching*

Description

match returns a vector of the positions of (first) matches of its first argument in its second.

%in% is a more intuitive interface as a binary operator, which returns a logical vector indicating if there is a match or not for its left operand.

Usage

```
match(x, table, nomatch = NA_integer_, incomparables = NULL)

x %in% table
```

Arguments

x	vector or NULL: the values to be matched. Long vectors are supported.
table	vector or NULL: the values to be matched against. Long vectors are not supported.
nomatch	the value to be returned in the case when no match is found. Note that it is coerced to integer.
incomparables	a vector of values that cannot be matched. Any value in x matching a value in this vector is assigned the nomatch value. For historical reasons, FALSE is equivalent to NULL.

Details

%in% is currently defined as
`"%in%" <- function(x, table) match(x, table, nomatch = 0) > 0`

Factors, raw vectors and lists are converted to character vectors, and then x and table are coerced to a common type (the later of the two types in 's ordering, logical < integer < numeric < complex < character) before matching. If incomparables has positive length it is coerced to the common type.

Matching for lists is potentially very slow and best avoided except in simple cases.

Exactly what matches what is to some extent a matter of definition. For all types, NA matches NA and no other value. For real and complex values, NaN values are regarded as matching any other NaN value, but not matching NA.

That %in% never returns NA makes it particularly useful in if conditions.

Character strings will be compared as byte sequences if any input is marked as "bytes" (see Encoding).

Value

A vector of the same length as x.

match: An integer vector giving the position in table of the first match if there is a match, otherwise nomatch.

If x[i] is found to equal table[j] then the value returned in the i-th position of the return value is j, for the smallest possible j. If no match is found, the value is nomatch.

`%in%`: A logical vector, indicating if a match was located for each element of `x`: thus the values are `TRUE` or `FALSE` and never `NA`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`pmatch` and `charmatch` for (*partial*) string matching, `match.arg`, etc for function argument matching. `findInterval` similarly returns a vector of positions, but finds numbers within intervals, rather than exact matches.

`is.element` for an S-compatible equivalent of `%in%`.

Examples

```
## The intersection of two sets can be defined via match():
## Simple version:
## intersect <- function(x, y) y[match(x, y, nomatch = 0)]
intersect # the R function in base is slightly more careful
intersect(1:10, 7:20)

1:10 %in% c(1,3,5,9)
sstr <- c("c","ab","B","bba","c",NA,"@","bla","a","Ba","%")
sstr[sstr %in% c(letters, LETTERS)]

"%w/o%" <- function(x, y) x[!x %in% y] #--  x without y
(1:10) %w/o% c(3,7,12)
## Note that setdiff() is very similar and typically makes more sense:
        c(1:6,7:2) %w/o% c(3,7,12)  # -> keeps duplicates
setdiff(c(1:6,7:2),        c(3,7,12)) # -> unique values
```

`match.arg` *Argument Verification Using Partial Matching*

Description

`match.arg` matches `arg` against a table of candidate values as specified by `choices`, where `NULL` means to take the first one.

Usage

```
match.arg(arg, choices, several.ok = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`arg`	a character vector (of length one unless `several.ok` is `TRUE`) or `NULL`.
`choices`	a character vector of candidate values
`several.ok`	logical specifying if `arg` should be allowed to have more than one element.

Details

In the one-argument form `match.arg(arg)`, the choices are obtained from a default setting for the formal argument `arg` of the function from which `match.arg` was called. (Since default argument matching will set `arg` to `choices`, this is allowed as an exception to the 'length one unless `several.ok` is `TRUE`' rule, and returns the first element.)

Matching is done using `pmatch`, so `arg` may be abbreviated.

Value

The unabbreviated version of the exact or unique partial match if there is one; otherwise, an error is signalled if `several.ok` is false, as per default. When `several.ok` is true and more than one element of `arg` has a match, all unabbreviated versions of matches are returned.

See Also

`pmatch`, `match.fun`, `match.call`.

Examples

```
require(stats)
## Extends the example for switch
center <- function(x, type = c("mean", "median", "trimmed")) {
  type <- match.arg(type)
  switch(type,
         mean = mean(x),
         median = median(x),
         trimmed = mean(x, trim = .1))
}
x <- rcauchy(10)
center(x, "t")       # Works
center(x, "med")     # Works
try(center(x, "m"))  # Error
stopifnot(identical(center(x),       center(x, "mean")),
          identical(center(x, NULL), center(x, "mean")) )

## Allowing more than one match:
match.arg(c("gauss", "rect", "ep"),
          c("gaussian", "epanechnikov", "rectangular", "triangular"),
          several.ok = TRUE)
```

---

match.call *Argument Matching*

Description

`match.call` returns a call in which all of the specified arguments are specified by their full names.

Usage

```
match.call(definition = NULL, call = sys.call(sys.parent()),
           expand.dots = TRUE)
```

Arguments

definition	a function, by default the function from which match.call is called. See details.
call	an unevaluated call to the function specified by definition, as generated by call.
expand.dots	logical. Should arguments matching ... in the call be included or left as a ... argument?

Details

'function' on this help page means an interpreted function (also known as a 'closure'): match.call does not support primitive functions (where argument matching is normally positional).

match.call is most commonly used in two circumstances:

- To record the call for later re-use: for example most model-fitting functions record the call as element call of the list they return. Here the default expand.dots = TRUE is appropriate.
- To pass most of the call to another function, often model.frame. Here the common idiom is that expand.dots = FALSE is used, and the ... element of the matched call is removed. An alternative is to explicitly select the arguments to be passed on, as is done in lm.

Calling match.call outside a function without specifying definition is an error.

Value

An object of class call.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

See Also

sys.call() is similar, but does *not* expand the argument names; call, pmatch, match.arg, match.fun.

Examples

```
match.call(get, call("get", "abc", i = FALSE, p = 3))
## -> get(x = "abc", pos = 3, inherits = FALSE)
fun <- function(x, lower = 0, upper = 1) {
  structure((x - lower) / (upper - lower), CALL = match.call())
}
fun(4 * atan(1), u = pi)
```

`match.fun` *Extract a Function Specified by Name*

Description

When called inside functions that take a function as argument, extract the desired function object while avoiding undesired matching to objects of other types.

Usage

```
match.fun(FUN, descend = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`FUN`	item to match as function: a function, symbol or character string. See 'Details'.
`descend`	logical; control whether to search past non-function objects.

Details

`match.fun` is not intended to be used at the top level since it will perform matching in the *parent* of the caller.

If `FUN` is a function, it is returned. If it is a symbol (for example, enclosed in backquotes) or a character vector of length one, it will be looked up using `get` in the environment of the parent of the caller. If it is of any other mode, it is attempted first to get the argument to the caller as a symbol (using `substitute` twice), and if that fails, an error is declared.

If `descend = TRUE`, `match.fun` will look past non-function objects with the given name; otherwise if `FUN` points to a non-function object then an error is generated.

This is used in base functions such as `apply`, `lapply`, `outer`, and `sweep`.

Value

A function matching `FUN` or an error is generated.

Bugs

The `descend` argument is a bit of misnomer and probably not actually needed by anything. It may go away in the future.

It is impossible to fully foolproof this. If one `attach`es a list or data frame containing a length-one character vector with the same name as a function, it may be used (although namespaces will help).

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard and Robert Gentleman, based on an earlier version by Jonathan Rougier.

See Also

`match.arg`, `get`

Examples

```
# Same as get("*"):
match.fun("*")
# Overwrite outer with a vector
outer <- 1:5
try(match.fun(outer, descend = FALSE)) #-> Error:  not a function
match.fun(outer) # finds it anyway
is.function(match.fun("outer")) # as well
```

`MathFun` *Miscellaneous Mathematical Functions*

Description

`abs(x)` computes the absolute value of x, `sqrt(x)` computes the (principal) square root of x, $\sqrt{x}$.

The naming follows the standard for computer languages such as C or Fortran.

Usage

```
abs(x)
sqrt(x)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric or `complex` vector or array.

Details

These are internal generic primitive functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the `Math` group generic. For complex arguments (and the default method), z, `abs(z) == Mod(z)` and `sqrt(z) == z^0.5`.

`abs(x)` returns an `integer` vector when x is `integer` or `logical`.

S4 methods

Both are S4 generic and members of the `Math` group generic.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`Arithmetic` for simple, `log` for logarithmic, `sin` for trigonometric, and `Special` for special mathematical functions.

'plotmath' for the use of `sqrt` in plot annotation.

Examples

```
require(stats) # for spline
require(graphics)
xx <- -9:9
plot(xx, sqrt(abs(xx)),  col = "red")
lines(spline(xx, sqrt(abs(xx)), n=101), col = "pink")
```

`matmult` *Matrix Multiplication*

Description

Multiplies two matrices, if they are conformable. If one argument is a vector, it will be promoted to either a row or column matrix to make the two arguments conformable. If both are vectors it will return the inner product (as a matrix).

Usage

```
x %*% y
```

Arguments

`x, y`	numeric or complex matrices or vectors.

Details

When a vector is promoted to a matrix, its names are not promoted to row or column names, unlike `as.matrix`.

This operator is S4 generic but not S3 generic. S4 methods need to be written for a function of two arguments named `x` and `y`.

Value

A double or complex matrix product. Use `drop` to remove dimensions which have only one level.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`matrix`, `Arithmetic`, `diag`.

Examples

```
x <- 1:4
(z <- x %*% x)    # scalar ("inner") product (1 x 1 matrix)
drop(z)             # as scalar

y <- diag(x)
z <- matrix(1:12, ncol = 3, nrow = 4)
y %*% z
y %*% x
x %*% z
```

`matrix` *Matrices*

Description

`matrix` creates a matrix from the given set of values.

`as.matrix` attempts to turn its argument into a matrix.

`is.matrix` tests if its argument is a (strict) matrix.

Usage

```
matrix(data = NA, nrow = 1, ncol = 1, byrow = FALSE,
       dimnames = NULL)

as.matrix(x, ...)
## S3 method for class data.frame
as.matrix(x, rownames.force = NA, ...)

is.matrix(x)
```

Arguments

`data`	an optional data vector (including a list or `expression` vector). Non-atomic classed objects are coerced by `as.vector` and all attributes discarded.
`nrow`	the desired number of rows.
`ncol`	the desired number of columns.
`byrow`	logical. If `FALSE` (the default) the matrix is filled by columns, otherwise the matrix is filled by rows.
`dimnames`	A `dimnames` attribute for the matrix: `NULL` or a `list` of length 2 giving the row and column names respectively. An empty list is treated as `NULL`, and a list of length one as row names. The list can be named, and the list names will be used as names for the dimensions.
`x`	an object.
`...`	additional arguments to be passed to or from methods.
`rownames.force`	logical indicating if the resulting matrix should have character (rather than `NULL`) `rownames`. The default, `NA`, uses `NULL` rownames if the data frame has 'automatic' row.names or for a zero-row data frame.

Details

If one of nrow or ncol is not given, an attempt is made to infer it from the length of data and the other parameter. If neither is given, a one-column matrix is returned.

If there are too few elements in data to fill the matrix, then the elements in data are recycled. If data has length zero, NA of an appropriate type is used for atomic vectors (0 for raw vectors) and NULL for lists.

is.matrix returns TRUE if x is a vector and has a "dim" attribute of length 2) and FALSE otherwise. Note that a data.frame is **not** a matrix by this test. The function is generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods.

as.matrix is a generic function. The method for data frames will return a character matrix if there is only atomic columns and any non-(numeric/logical/complex) column, applying as.vector to factors and format to other non-character columns. Otherwise, the usual coercion hierarchy (logical < integer < double < complex) will be used, e.g., all-logical data frames will be coerced to a logical matrix, mixed logical-integer will give a integer matrix, etc.

The default method for as.matrix calls as.vector(x), and hence e.g. coerces factors to character vectors.

When coercing a vector, it produces a one-column matrix, and promotes the names (if any) of the vector to the rownames of the matrix.

is.matrix is a primitive function.

The print method for a matrix gives a rectangular layout with dimnames or indices. For a list matrix, the entries of length not one are printed in the form 'integer,7' indicating the type and length.

Note

If you just want to convert a vector to a matrix, something like

```
dim(x) <- c(nx, ny)
dimnames(x) <- list(row_names, col_names)
```

will avoid duplicating x.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

data.matrix, which attempts to convert to a numeric matrix.

A matrix is the special case of a two-dimensional array.

Examples

```
is.matrix(as.matrix(1:10))
!is.matrix(warpbreaks)  # data.frame, NOT matrix!
warpbreaks[1:10,]
as.matrix(warpbreaks[1:10,])  # using as.matrix.data.frame(.) method

## Example of setting row and column names
mdat <- matrix(c(1,2,3, 11,12,13), nrow = 2, ncol = 3, byrow = TRUE,
```

```
                dimnames = list(c("row1", "row2"),
                                c("C.1", "C.2", "C.3")))
mdat
```

---

maxCol *Find Maximum Position in Matrix*

Description

Find the maximum position for each row of a matrix, breaking ties at random.

Usage

```
max.col(m, ties.method = c("random", "first", "last"))
```

Arguments

m	numerical matrix
ties.method	a character string specifying how ties are handled, "random" by default; can be abbreviated; see 'Details'.

Details

When `ties.method = "random"`, as per default, ties are broken at random. In this case, the determination of a tie assumes that the entries are probabilities: there is a relative tolerance of 10^{-5}, relative to the largest (in magnitude, omitting infinity) entry in the row.

If `ties.method = "first"`, `max.col` returns the column number of the *first* of several maxima in every row, the same as `unname(apply(m, 1, which.max))`.
Correspondingly, `ties.method = "last"` returns the *last* of possibly several indices.

Value

index of a maximal value for each row, an integer vector of length `nrow(m)`.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* New York: Springer (4th ed).

See Also

`which.max` for vectors.

Examples

```
table(mc <- max.col(swiss))  # mostly "1" and "5", 5 x "2" and once "4"
swiss[unique(print(mr <- max.col(t(swiss)))) , ]  # 3 33 45 45 33 6

set.seed(1)  # reproducible example:
(mm <- rbind(x = round(2*stats::runif(12)),
             y = round(5*stats::runif(12)),
             z = round(8*stats::runif(12))))
## Not run:
```

```
  [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4] [,5] [,6] [,7] [,8] [,9] [,10] [,11] [,12]
x    1    1    1    2    0    2    2    1    1     0     0     0
y    3    2    4    2    4    5    2    4    5     1     3     1
z    2    3    0    3    7    3    4    5    4     1     7     5

## End(Not run)
## column indices of all row maxima :
utils::str(lapply(1:3, function(i) which(mm[i,] == max(mm[i,]))))
max.col(mm) ; max.col(mm) # "random"
max.col(mm, "first") # -> 4 6 5
max.col(mm, "last")  # -> 7 9 11
```

`mean` *Arithmetic Mean*

Description

Generic function for the (trimmed) arithmetic mean.

Usage

```
mean(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
mean(x, trim = 0, na.rm = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object. Currently there are methods for numeric/logical vectors and date, date-time and time interval objects. Complex vectors are allowed for `trim = 0`, only.
`trim`	the fraction (0 to 0.5) of observations to be trimmed from each end of `x` before the mean is computed. Values of trim outside that range are taken as the nearest endpoint.
`na.rm`	a logical value indicating whether `NA` values should be stripped before the computation proceeds.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

If `trim` is zero (the default), the arithmetic mean of the values in `x` is computed, as a numeric or complex vector of length one. If `x` is not logical (coerced to numeric), numeric (including integer) or complex, `NA_real_` is returned, with a warning.

If `trim` is non-zero, a symmetrically trimmed mean is computed with a fraction of `trim` observations deleted from each end before the mean is computed.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

weighted.mean, mean.POSIXct, colMeans for row and column means.

Examples

```
x <- c(0:10, 50)
xm <- mean(x)
c(xm, mean(x, trim = 0.10))
```

---

memCompress *In-memory Compression and Decompression*

Description

In-memory compression or decompression for raw vectors.

Usage

```
memCompress(from, type = c("gzip", "bzip2", "xz", "none"))

memDecompress(from,
              type = c("unknown", "gzip", "bzip2", "xz", "none"),
              asChar = FALSE)
```

Arguments

from	A raw vector. For memCompress a character vector will be converted to a raw vector with character strings separated by "\n".
type	character string, the type of compression. May be abbreviated to a single letter, defaults to the first of the alternatives.
asChar	logical: should the result be converted to a character string?

Details

type = "none" passes the input through unchanged, but may be useful if type is a variable.

type = "unknown" attempts to detect the type of compression applied (if any): this will always succeed for bzip2 compression, and will succeed for other forms if there is a suitable header. It will auto-detect the 'magic' header ("\x1f\x8b") added to files by the gzip program (and to files written by gzfile), but memCompress does not add such a header.

bzip2 compression always adds a header ("BZh").

Compressing with type = "xz" is equivalent to compressing a file with xz -9e (including adding the 'magic' header): decompression should cope with the contents of any file compressed with xz version 4.999 and some versions of lzma. There are other versions, in particular 'raw' streams, that are not currently handled.

All the types of compression can expand the input: for "gzip" and "bzip" the maximum expansion is known and so memCompress can always allocate sufficient space. For "xz" it is possible (but extremely unlikely) that compression will fail if the output would have been too large.

Value

A raw vector or a character string (if `asChar = TRUE`).

See Also

connections.

`http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Data_compression` for background on data compression, `http://zlib.net/`, `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gzip`, `http://www.bzip.org/`, `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bzip2`, `http://tukaani.org/xz/` and `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xz` for references about the particular schemes used.

Examples

```
txt <- readLines(file.path(R.home("doc"), "COPYING"))
sum(nchar(txt))
txt.gz <- memCompress(txt, "g")
length(txt.gz)
txt2 <- strsplit(memDecompress(txt.gz, "g", asChar = TRUE), "\n")[[1]]
stopifnot(identical(txt, txt2))
txt.bz2 <- memCompress(txt, "b")
length(txt.bz2)
## can auto-detect bzip2:
txt3 <- strsplit(memDecompress(txt.bz2, asChar = TRUE), "\n")[[1]]
stopifnot(identical(txt, txt3))

## xz compression is only worthwhile for large objects
txt.xz <- memCompress(txt, "x")
length(txt.xz)
txt3 <- strsplit(memDecompress(txt.xz, asChar = TRUE), "\n")[[1]]
stopifnot(identical(txt, txt3))
```

Memory *Memory Available for Data Storage*

Description

How manages its workspace.

Details

has a variable-sized workspace. There are (rarely-used) command-line options to control its minimum size, but no longer any to control the maximum size.

maintains separate areas for fixed and variable sized objects. The first of these is allocated as an array of *cons cells* (Lisp programmers will know what they are, others may think of them as the building blocks of the language itself, parse trees, etc.), and the second are thrown on a *heap* of 'Vcells' of 8 bytes each. Each cons cell occupies 28 bytes on a 32-bit build of , (usually) 56 bytes on a 64-bit build.

The default values are (currently) an initial setting of 350k cons cell sand 6Mb of vector heap. Note that the areas are not actually allocated initially: rather these values are the sizes for triggering garbage collection. These values can be set by the command line options '`--min-nsize`' and '`--min-vsize`' (or if they are not used, the environment variables `R_NSIZE` and `R_VSIZE`) when is

started. Thereafter will grow or shrink the areas depending on usage, never decreasing below the initial values.

How much time spends in the garbage collector will depend on these initial settings and on the trade-off the memory manager makes, when memory fills up, between collecting garbage to free up unused memory and growing these areas. The strategy used for growth can be specified by setting the environment variable `R_GC_MEM_GROW` to an integer value between 0 and 3. This variable is read at start-up. Higher values grow the heap more aggressively, thus reducing garbage collection time but using more memory.

You can find out the current memory consumption (the heap and cons cells used as numbers and megabytes) by typing `gc()` at the prompt. Note that following `gcinfo(TRUE)`, automatic garbage collection always prints memory use statistics.

The command-line option '`--max-ppsize`' controls the maximum size of the pointer protection stack. This defaults to 50000, but can be increased to allow deep recursion or large and complicated calculations to be done. *Note* that parts of the garbage collection process goes through the full reserved pointer protection stack and hence becomes slower when the size is increased. Currently the maximum value accepted is 500000.

See Also

An Introduction to R for more command-line options.

`Memory-limits` for the design limitations.

`gc` for information on the garbage collector and total memory usage, `object.size(a)` for the (approximate) size of object `a`. `memory.profile` for profiling the usage of cons cells.

`Memory-limits` *Memory Limits in R*

Description

holds objects it is using in virtual memory. This help file documents the current design limitations on large objects: these differ between 32-bit and 64-bit builds of .

Details

Currently runs on 32- and 64-bit operating systems, and most 64-bit OSes (including Linux, Solaris, Windows and OS X) can run either 32- or 64-bit builds of . The memory limits depends mainly on the build, but for a 32-bit build of on Windows they also depend on the underlying OS version.

holds all objects in virtual memory, and there are limits based on the amount of memory that can be used by all objects:

- There may be limits on the size of the heap and the number of cons cells allowed – see `Memory` – but these are usually not imposed.
- There is a limit on the (user) address space of a single process such as the executable. This is system-specific, and can depend on the executable.
- The environment may impose limitations on the resources available to a single process: Windows' versions of do so directly.

Error messages beginning `cannot allocate vector of size` indicate a failure to obtain memory, either because the size exceeded the address-space limit for a process or, more likely, because the system was unable to provide the memory. Note that on a 32-bit build there may well be enough free memory available, but not a large enough contiguous block of address space into which to map it.

There are also limits on individual objects. The storage space cannot exceed the address limit, and if you try to exceed that limit, the error message begins `cannot allocate vector of length`. The number of bytes in a character string is limited to $2^{31} - 1 \approx 2\,10^9$, which is also the limit on each dimension of an array.

Unix

The address-space limit is system-specific: 32-bit OSes imposes a limit of no more than 4Gb: it is often 3Gb. Running 32-bit executables on a 64-bit OS will have similar limits: 64-bit executables will have an essentially infinite system-specific limit (e.g., 128Tb for Linux on x86_64 cpus).

See the OS/shell's help on commands such as `limit` or `ulimit` for how to impose limitations on the resources available to a single process. For example a `bash` user could use

```
ulimit -t 600 -v 4000000
```

whereas a `csh` user might use

```
limit cputime 10m
limit vmemoryuse 4096m
```

to limit a process to 10 minutes of CPU time and (around) 4Gb of virtual memory. (There are other options to set the RAM in use, but they are not generally honoured.)

Windows

The address-space limit is 2Gb under 32-bit Windows unless the OS's default has been changed to allow more (up to 3Gb). See `http://www.microsoft.com/whdc/system/platform/server/PAE/PAEmem.mspx` and `http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb613473(VS.85).aspx`. Under most 64-bit versions of Windows the limit for a 32-bit build of is 4Gb: for the oldest ones it is 2Gb. The limit for a 64-bit build of (imposed by the OS) is 8Tb.

It is not normally possible to allocate as much as 2Gb to a single vector in a 32-bit build of even on 64-bit Windows because of preallocations by Windows in the middle of the address space.

Under Windows, imposes limits on the total memory allocation available to a single session as the OS provides no way to do so: see `memory.size` and `memory.limit`.

See Also

`object.size(a)` for the (approximate) size of object `a`.

memory.profile *Profile the Usage of Cons Cells*

Description

Lists the usage of the cons cells by SEXPREC type.

Usage

```
memory.profile()
```

Details

The current types and their uses are listed in the include file 'Rinternals.h'.

Value

A vector of counts, named by the types. See typeof for an explanation of types.

See Also

gc for the overall usage of cons cells. Rprofmem and tracemem allow memory profiling of specific code or objects, but need to be enabled at compile time.

Examples

```
memory.profile()
```

merge *Merge Two Data Frames*

Description

Merge two data frames by common columns or row names, or do other versions of database *join* operations.

Usage

```
merge(x, y, ...)

## Default S3 method:
merge(x, y, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
merge(x, y, by = intersect(names(x), names(y)),
      by.x = by, by.y = by, all = FALSE, all.x = all, all.y = all,
      sort = TRUE, suffixes = c(".x",".y"),
      incomparables = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	data frames, or objects to be coerced to one.
by, by.x, by.y	specifications of the columns used for merging. See 'Details'.
all	logical; all = L is shorthand for all.x = L and all.y = L, where L is either TRUE or FALSE.
all.x	logical; if TRUE, then extra rows will be added to the output, one for each row in x that has no matching row in y. These rows will have NAs in those columns that are usually filled with values from y. The default is FALSE, so that only rows with data from both x and y are included in the output.
all.y	logical; analogous to all.x.
sort	logical. Should the result be sorted on the by columns?
suffixes	a character vector of length 2 specifying the suffixes to be used for making unique the names of columns in the result which not used for merging (appearing in by etc).
incomparables	values which cannot be matched. See match. This is intended to be used for merging on one column, so these are incomparable values of that column.
...	arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

merge is a generic function whose principal method is for data frames: the default method coerces its arguments to data frames and calls the "data.frame" method.

By default the data frames are merged on the columns with names they both have, but separate specifications of the columns can be given by by.x and by.y. The rows in the two data frames that match on the specified columns are extracted, and joined together. If there is more than one match, all possible matches contribute one row each. For the precise meaning of 'match', see match.

Columns to merge on can be specified by name, number or by a logical vector: the name "row.names" or the number 0 specifies the row names. If specified by name it must correspond uniquely to a named column in the input.

If by or both by.x and by.y are of length 0 (a length zero vector or NULL), the result, r, is the *Cartesian product* of x and y, i.e., dim(r) = c(nrow(x)*nrow(y), ncol(x) + ncol(y)).

If all.x is true, all the non matching cases of x are appended to the result as well, with NA filled in the corresponding columns of y; analogously for all.y.

If the columns in the data frames not used in merging have any common names, these have suffixes (".x" and ".y" by default) appended to try to make the names of the result unique. If this is not possible, an error is thrown.

The complexity of the algorithm used is proportional to the length of the answer.

In SQL database terminology, the default value of all = FALSE gives a *natural join*, a special case of an *inner join*. Specifying all.x = TRUE gives a *left (outer) join*, all.y = TRUE a *right (outer) join*, and both (all = TRUE a *(full) outer join*. DBMSes do not match NULL records, equivalent to incomparables = NA in .

Value

A data frame. The rows are by default lexicographically sorted on the common columns, but for sort = FALSE are in an unspecified order. The columns are the common columns followed by the remaining columns in x and then those in y. If the matching involved row names, an extra character column called Row.names is added at the left, and in all cases the result has 'automatic' row names.

Note

This is intended to work with data frames with vector-like columns: some aspects work with data frames containing matrices, but not all.

Currently long vectors are not accepted for inputs, which are thus restricted to less than 2^31 rows, and that restriction also applies to the result.

See Also

`data.frame`, `by`, `cbind`.

`dendrogram` for a class which has a `merge` method.

Examples

```
## use character columns of names to get sensible sort order
authors <- data.frame(
    surname = I(c("Tukey", "Venables", "Tierney", "Ripley", "McNeil")),
    nationality = c("US", "Australia", "US", "UK", "Australia"),
    deceased = c("yes", rep("no", 4)))
books <- data.frame(
    name = I(c("Tukey", "Venables", "Tierney",
             "Ripley", "Ripley", "McNeil", "R Core")),
    title = c("Exploratory Data Analysis",
              "Modern Applied Statistics ...",
              "LISP-STAT",
              "Spatial Statistics", "Stochastic Simulation",
              "Interactive Data Analysis",
              "An Introduction to R"),
    other.author = c(NA, "Ripley", NA, NA, NA, NA,
                     "Venables & Smith"))

(m1 <- merge(authors, books, by.x = "surname", by.y = "name"))
(m2 <- merge(books, authors, by.x = "name", by.y = "surname"))
stopifnot(as.character(m1[, 1]) == as.character(m2[, 1]),
          all.equal(m1[, -1], m2[, -1][ names(m1)[-1] ]),
          dim(merge(m1, m2, by = integer(0))) == c(36, 10))

## "R core" is missing from authors and appears only here :
merge(authors, books, by.x = "surname", by.y = "name", all = TRUE)

## example of using incomparables
x <- data.frame(k1 = c(NA,NA,3,4,5), k2 = c(1,NA,NA,4,5), data = 1:5)
y <- data.frame(k1 = c(NA,2,NA,4,5), k2 = c(NA,NA,3,4,5), data = 1:5)
merge(x, y, by = c("k1","k2")) # NAs match
merge(x, y, by = "k1") # NAs match, so 6 rows
merge(x, y, by = "k2", incomparables = NA) # 2 rows
```

---

message *Diagnostic Messages*

Description

Generate a diagnostic message from its arguments.

Usage

```
message(..., domain = NULL, appendLF = TRUE)
suppressMessages(expr)

packageStartupMessage(..., domain = NULL, appendLF = TRUE)
suppressPackageStartupMessages(expr)

.makeMessage(..., domain = NULL, appendLF = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	zero or more objects which can be coerced to character (and which are pasted together with no separator) or (for message only) a single condition object.
domain	see gettext. If NA, messages will not be translated, see also the note in stop.
appendLF	logical: should messages given as a character string have a newline appended?
expr	expression to evaluate.

Details

message is used for generating 'simple' diagnostic messages which are neither warnings nor errors, but nevertheless represented as conditions. Unlike warnings and errors, a final newline is regarded as part of the message, and is optional. The default handler sends the message to the stderr() connection.

If a condition object is supplied to message it should be the only argument, and further arguments will be ignored, with a warning.

While the message is being processed, a muffleMessage restart is available.

suppressMessages evaluates its expression in a context that ignores all 'simple' diagnostic messages.

packageStartupMessage is a variant whose messages can be suppressed separately by suppressPackageStartupMessages. (They are still messages, so can be suppressed by suppressMessages.)

.makeMessage is a utility used by message, warning and stop to generate a text message from the ... arguments by possible translation (see gettext) and concatenation (with no separator).

See Also

warning and stop for generating warnings and errors; conditions for condition handling and recovery.

gettext for the mechanisms for the automated translation of text.

Examples

```
message("ABC", "DEF")
suppressMessages(message("ABC"))

testit <- function() {
  message("testing package startup messages")
  packageStartupMessage("initializing ...", appendLF = FALSE)
  Sys.sleep(1)
  packageStartupMessage(" done")
}
```

```
testit()
suppressPackageStartupMessages(testit())
suppressMessages(testit())
```

`missing` *Does a Formal Argument have a Value?*

Description

`missing` can be used to test whether a value was specified as an argument to a function.

Usage

```
missing(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	a formal argument.

Details

`missing(x)` is only reliable if `x` has not been altered since entering the function: in particular it will *always* be false after `x <- match.arg(x)`.

The example shows how a plotting function can be written to work with either a pair of vectors giving x and y coordinates of points to be plotted or a single vector giving y values to be plotted against their indices.

Currently `missing` can only be used in the immediate body of the function that defines the argument, not in the body of a nested function or a `local` call. This may change in the future.

This is a 'special' primitive function: it must not evaluate its argument.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

See Also

`substitute` for argument expression; `NA` for missing values in data.

Examples

```
myplot <- function(x, y) {
                if(missing(y)) {
                        y <- x
                        x <- 1:length(y)
                }
                plot(x, y)
        }
```

mode *The (Storage) Mode of an Object*

Description

Get or set the type or storage mode of an object.

Usage

```
mode(x)
mode(x) <- value
storage.mode(x)
storage.mode(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	any object.
value	a character string giving the desired mode or 'storage mode' (type) of the object.

Details

Both mode and storage.mode return a character string giving the (storage) mode of the object — often the same — both relying on the output of typeof(x), see the example below.

mode(x) <- "newmode" changes the mode of object x to newmode. This is only supported if there is an appropriate as.newmode function, for example "logical", "integer", "double", "complex", "raw", "character", "list", "expression", "name", "symbol" and "function". Attributes are preserved (but see below).

storage.mode(x) <- "newmode" is a more efficient primitive version of mode<-, which works for "newmode" which is one of the internal types (see typeof), but not for "single". Attributes are preserved.

As storage mode "single" is only a pseudo-mode in , it will not be reported by mode or storage.mode: use attr(object, "Csingle") to examine this. However, mode<- can be used to set the mode to "single", which sets the real mode to "double" and the "Csingle" attribute to TRUE. Setting any other mode will remove this attribute.

Note (in the examples below) that some calls have mode "(" which is S compatible.

Mode names

Modes have the same set of names as types (see typeof) except that

- types "integer" and "double" are returned as "numeric".
- types "special" and "builtin" are returned as "function".
- type "symbol" is called mode "name".
- type "language" is returned as "(" or "call".

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

typeof for the R-internal 'mode', attributes.

Examples

```
require(stats)

sapply(options(), mode)

cex3 <- c("NULL", "1", "1:1", "1i", "list(1)", "data.frame(x = 1)",
  "pairlist(pi)", "c", "lm", "formals(lm)[[1]]",  "formals(lm)[[2]]",
  "y ~ x","expression((1))[[1]]", "(y ~ x)[[1]]",
  "expression(x <- pi)[[1]][[1]]")
lex3 <- sapply(cex3, function(x) eval(parse(text = x)))
mex3 <- t(sapply(lex3,
                 function(x) c(typeof(x), storage.mode(x), mode(x))))
dimnames(mex3) <- list(cex3, c("typeof(.)","storage.mode(.)","mode(.)"))
mex3

## This also makes a local copy of pi:
storage.mode(pi) <- "complex"
storage.mode(pi)
rm(pi)
```

NA *'Not Available' / Missing Values*

Description

NA is a logical constant of length 1 which contains a missing value indicator. NA can be coerced to any other vector type except raw. There are also constants NA_integer_, NA_real_, NA_complex_ and NA_character_ of the other atomic vector types which support missing values: all of these are reserved words in the language.

The generic function is.na indicates which elements are missing.

The generic function is.na<- sets elements to NA.

The generic function anyNA implements any(is.na(x)) in a possibly faster way (especially for atomic vectors).

Usage

```
NA
is.na(x)
anyNA(x)

## S3 method for class data.frame
is.na(x)

is.na(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	an object to be tested: the default method for is.na handles atomic vectors, lists and pairlists: that for anyNA also handles NULL.
value	a suitable index vector for use with x.

Details

The NA of character type is distinct from the string "NA". Programmers who need to specify an explicit missing string should use NA_character_ (rather than "NA") or set elements to NA using is.na<-.

is.na and anyNA are generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods.

Function is.na<- may provide a safer way to set missingness. It behaves differently for factors, for example.

Numerical computations using NA will normally result in NA: a possible exception is where NaN is also involved, in which case either might result. Logical computations treat NA as a missing TRUE/FALSE value, and so may return TRUE or FALSE if the expression does not depend on the NA operand.

The default method for anyNA handles atomic vectors without a class and NULL. It calls any(is.na(x)) on objects with classes and on lists and pairlists.

Value

The default method for is.na applied to an atomic vector returns a logical vector of the same length as its argument x, containing TRUE for those elements marked NA or, for numeric or complex vectors, NaN, and FALSE otherwise. (A complex value is regarded as NA if either its real or imaginary part is NA or NaN.) dim, dimnames and names attributes are copied to the result.

The default methods also work for lists and pairlists:
For is.na, elementwise the result is false unless that element is a length-one atomic vector and the single element of that vector is regarded as NA or NaN (note that any is.na method for the class of the element is ignored).
For these types anyNA calls is.na.

The data frame method for is.na returns a logical matrix with the same dimensions as the data frame, and with dimnames taken from the row and column names of the data frame.

anyNA(NULL) is false: is.na(NULL) is logical(0) with a warning.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

See Also

NaN, is.nan, etc., and the utility function complete.cases.

na.action, na.omit, na.fail on how methods can be tuned to deal with missing values.

Examples

```
is.na(c(1, NA))        #> FALSE  TRUE
is.na(paste(c(1, NA))) #> FALSE FALSE

(xx <- c(0:4))
is.na(xx) <- c(2, 4)
xx                     #> 0 NA  2 NA  4
anyNA(xx) # TRUE

# Some logical operations do not return NA
c(TRUE, FALSE) & NA
c(TRUE, FALSE) | NA


## Measure speed difference in a favourable case:
## the difference depends on the platform, on most ca 3x.
x <- 1:10000; x[5000] <- NaN  # coerces x to be double
if(require("microbenchmark")) { # does not work reliably on all platforms
  print(microbenchmark(any(is.na(x)), anyNA(x)))
} else {
  nSim <- 2^13
  print(rbind(is.na = system.time(replicate(nSim, any(is.na(x)))),
              anyNA = system.time(replicate(nSim, anyNA(x)))))
}


## ... lists, and hence data frames, too:
dN <- dd <- USJudgeRatings; dN[3,6] <- NA
anyNA(dd) # FALSE
anyNA(dN) # TRUE
```

---

name *Names and Symbols*

Description

A 'name' (also known as a 'symbol') is a way to refer to objects by name (rather than the value of the object, if any, bound to that name).

`as.name` and `as.symbol` are identical: they attempt to coerce the argument to a name.

`is.symbol` and the identical `is.name` return `TRUE` or `FALSE` depending on whether the argument is a name or not.

Usage

```
as.symbol(x)
is.symbol(x)

as.name(x)
is.name(x)
```

Arguments

x	object to be coerced or tested.

Details

Names are limited to 10,000 bytes (and were to 256 bytes in versions of before 2.13.0).

`as.name` first coerces its argument internally to a character vector (so methods for `as.character` are not used). It then takes the first element and provided it is not `""`, returns a symbol of that name (and if the element is `NA_character_`, the name is `NA`).

`as.name` is implemented as `as.vector(x, "symbol")`, and hence will dispatch methods for the generic function `as.vector`.

`is.name` and `is.symbol` are primitive functions.

Value

For `as.name` and `as.symbol`, an object of type `"symbol"` (see `typeof`).

For `is.name` and `is.symbol`, a length-one logical vector with value `TRUE` or `FALSE`.

Note

The term 'symbol' is from the LISP background of , whereas 'name' has been the standard S term for this.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`call`, `is.language`. For the internal object mode, `typeof`.

`plotmath` for another use of 'symbol'.

Examples

```
an <- as.name("arrg")
is.name(an) # TRUE
mode(an)   # name
typeof(an) # symbol
```

---

names *The Names of an Object*

Description

Functions to get or set the names of an object.

Usage

```
names(x)
names(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	an object.
value	a character vector of up to the same length as x, or NULL.

Details

names is a generic accessor function, and names<- is a generic replacement function. The default methods get and set the "names" attribute of a vector (including a list) or pairlist.

If value is shorter than x, it is extended by character NAs to the length of x.

It is possible to update just part of the names attribute via the general rules: see the examples. This works because the expression there is evaluated as z <- "names<-"(z, "[<-"(names(z), 3, "c2")).

The name "" is special: it is used to indicate that there is no name associated with an element of a (atomic or generic) vector. Subscripting by "" will match nothing (not even elements which have no name).

A name can be character NA, but such a name will never be matched and is likely to lead to confusion.

Both are primitive functions.

Value

For names, NULL or a character vector of the same length as x. (NULL is given if the object has no names, including for objects of types which cannot have names.)

For names<-, the updated object. (Note that the value of names(x) <- value is that of the assignment, value, not the return value from the left-hand side.)

Note

For vectors, the names are one of the attributes with restrictions on the possible values. For pairlists, the names are the tags and converted to and from a character vector.

For a one-dimensional array the names attribute really is dimnames[[1]].

Formally classed aka "S4" objects typically have slotNames() (and no names()).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

slotNames, dimnames.

Examples

```
# print the names attribute of the islands data set
names(islands)

# remove the names attribute
names(islands) <- NULL
islands
rm(islands) # remove the copy made
```

```
z <- list(a = 1, b = "c", c = 1:3)
names(z)
# change just the name of the third element.
names(z)[3] <- "c2"
z

z <- 1:3
names(z)
## assign just one name
names(z)[2] <- "b"
z
```

---

nargs *The Number of Arguments to a Function*

Description

When used inside a function body, nargs returns the number of arguments supplied to that function, *including* positional arguments left blank.

Usage

```
nargs()
```

Details

The count includes empty (missing) arguments, so that foo(x,,z) will be considered to have three arguments (see 'Examples'). This can occur in rather indirect ways, so for example x[] might dispatch a call to [.some_method(x,) which is considered to have two arguments.

This is a primitive function.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

args, formals and sys.call.

Examples

```
tst <- function(a, b = 3, ...) {nargs()}
tst() # 0
tst(clicketyclack) # 1 (even non-existing)
tst(c1, a2, rr3) # 3

foo <- function(x, y, z, w) {
   cat("call was ", deparse(match.call()), "\n", sep = "")
   nargs()
}
foo()      # 0
foo(, , 3) # 3
```

```
foo(z = 3) # 1, even though this is the same call

nargs()  # not really meaningful
```

---

nchar *Count the Number of Characters (or Bytes or Width)*

Description

nchar takes a character vector as an argument and returns a vector whose elements contain the sizes of the corresponding elements of x.

nzchar is a fast way to find out if elements of a character vector are non-empty strings.

Usage

```
nchar(x, type = "chars", allowNA = FALSE)

nzchar(x)
```

Arguments

x	character vector, or a vector to be coerced to a character vector. Giving a factor is an error.
type	character string: partial matching to one of c("bytes", "chars", "width"). See 'Details'.
allowNA	logical: should NA be returned for invalid multibyte strings or "bytes"-encoded strings (rather than throwing an error)?

Details

The 'size' of a character string can be measured in one of three ways

bytes The number of bytes needed to store the string (plus in C a final terminator which is not counted).

chars The number of human-readable characters.

width The number of columns cat will use to print the string in a monospaced font. The same as chars if this cannot be calculated.

These will often be the same, and almost always will be in single-byte locales. There will be differences between the first two with multibyte character sequences, e.g. in UTF-8 locales.

The internal equivalent of the default method of as.character is performed on x (so there is no method dispatch). If you want to operate on non-vector objects passing them through deparse first will be required.

Value

For nchar, an integer vector giving the sizes of each element, currently always 2 for missing values (for NA).

If allowNA = TRUE and an element is invalid in a multi-byte character set such as UTF-8, its number of characters and the width will be NA. Otherwise the number of characters will be non-negative, so !is.na(nchar(x, "chars", TRUE)) is a test of validity.

A character string marked with "bytes" encoding (see Encoding) has a number of bytes, but neither a known number of characters nor a width, so the latter two types are NA if allowNA = TRUE, otherwise an error.

Names, dims and dimnames are copied from the input.

For nzchar, a logical vector of the same length as x, true if and only if the element has non-zero length.

Note

This does **not** by default give the number of characters that will be used to print() the string. Use encodeString to find the characters used to print the string. Where character strings have been marked as UTF-8, the number of characters and widths will be computed in UTF-8, even though printing may use escapes such as '<U+2642>' in a non-UTF-8 locale.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

strwidth giving width of strings for plotting; paste, substr, strsplit

Examples

```
x <- c("asfef", "qwerty", "yuiop[", "b", "stuff.blah.yech")
nchar(x)
# 5  6  6  1 15

nchar(deparse(mean))
# 18 17
```

---

nlevels *The Number of Levels of a Factor*

Description

Return the number of levels which its argument has.

Usage

```
nlevels(x)
```

Arguments

x	an object, usually a factor.

Details

This is usually applied to a factor, but other objects can have levels.

The actual factor levels (if they exist) can be obtained with the `levels` function.

Value

The length of `levels(x)`, which is zero if `x` has no levels.

See Also

`levels`, `factor`.

Examples

```
nlevels(gl(3, 7)) # = 3
```

---

noquote *Class for 'no quote' Printing of Character Strings*

Description

Print character strings without quotes.

Usage

```
noquote(obj)

## S3 method for class noquote
print(x, ...)

## S3 method for class noquote
c(..., recursive = FALSE)
```

Arguments

obj	any object, typically a vector of `character` strings.
x	an object of class `"noquote"`.
...	further options passed to next methods, such as `print`.
recursive	for compatibility with the generic `c` function.

Details

`noquote` returns its argument as an object of class `"noquote"`. There is a method for `c()` and subscript method (`"[.noquote"`) which ensures that the class is not lost by subsetting. The print method (`print.noquote`) prints character strings *without* quotes (`"..."`).

These functions exist both as utilities and as an example of using (S3) `class` and object orientation.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch>

See Also

methods, class, print.

Examples

```
letters
nql <- noquote(letters)
nql
nql[1:4] <- "oh"
nql[1:12]

cmp.logical <- function(log.v)
{
  ## Purpose: compact printing of logicals
  log.v <- as.logical(log.v)
  noquote(if(length(log.v) == 0)"()" else c(".","|")[1 + log.v])
}
cmp.logical(stats::runif(20) > 0.8)
```

---

norm *Compute the Norm of a Matrix*

Description

Computes a matrix norm of x using LAPACK. The norm can be the one ("O") norm, the infinity ("I") norm, the Frobenius ("F") norm, the maximum modulus ("M") among elements of a matrix, or the "spectral" or "2"-norm, as determined by the value of type.

Usage

```
norm(x, type = c("O", "I", "F", "M", "2"))
```

Arguments

x	numeric matrix; note that packages such as **Matrix** define more norm() methods.
type	character string, specifying the *type* of matrix norm to be computed. A character indicating the type of norm desired. "O", "o" **or** "1" specifies the **o**ne norm, (maximum absolute column sum); "I" **or** "i" specifies the **i**nfinity norm (maximum absolute row sum); "F" **or** "f" specifies the **F**robenius norm (the Euclidean norm of x treated as if it were a vector); "M" **or** "m" specifies the **m**aximum modulus of all the elements in x; and "2" specifies the "spectral" or 2-norm, which is the largest singular value (svd) of x. The default is "O". Only the first character of type[1] is used.

Details

The **base** method of `norm()` calls the Lapack function `dlange`.

Note that the 1-, Inf- and `"M"` norm is faster to calculate than the Frobenius one.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code: these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code.

Value

The matrix norm, a non-negative number.

Source

Except for `norm = "2"`, the LAPACK routine `DLANGE`.

LAPACK is from http://www.netlib.org/lapack.

References

Anderson, E., *et al* (1994). *LAPACK User's Guide*, 2nd edition, SIAM, Philadelphia.

See Also

`rcond` for the (reciprocal) condition number.

Examples

```
(x1 <- cbind(1, 1:10))
norm(x1)
norm(x1, "I")
norm(x1, "M")
stopifnot(all.equal(norm(x1, "F"),
                    sqrt(sum(x1^2))))

hilbert <- function(n) { i <- 1:n; 1 / outer(i - 1, i, "+") }
h9 <- hilbert(9)
## all 5 types of norm:
(nTyp <- eval(formals(base::norm)$type))
sapply(nTyp, norm, x = h9)
```

`normalizePath` *Express File Paths in Canonical Form*

Description

Convert file paths to canonical form for the platform, to display them in a user-understandable form and so that relative and absolute paths can be compared.

Usage

```
normalizePath(path, winslash = "\\", mustWork = NA)
```

Arguments

path	character vector of file paths.
winslash	the separator to be used on Windows – ignored elsewhere. Must be one of c("/", "\\").
mustWork	logical: if TRUE then an error is given if the result cannot be determined; if NA then a warning.

Details

Tilde-expansion (see path.expand) is first done on paths.

Where the Unix-alike platform supports it attempts to turn paths into absolute paths in their canonical form (no './', '../' nor symbolic links). It relies on the POSIX system function realpath: if the platform does not have that (we know of no current example) then the result will be an absolute path but might not be canonical. Even where realpath is used the canonical path need not be unique, for example *via* hard links or multiple mounts.

On Windows it converts relative paths to absolute paths, converts short names for path elements to long names and ensures the separator is that specified by winslash. It will match paths case-insensitively and return the canonical case. UTF-8-encoded paths not valid in the current locale can be used.

mustWork = FALSE is useful for expressing paths for use in messages.

Value

A character vector.

If an input is not a real path the result is system-dependent (unless mustWork = TRUE, when this should be an error). It will be either the corresponding input element or a transformation of it into an absolute path.

Converting to an absolute file path can fail for a large number of reasons. The most common are

- One of more components of the file path does not exist.
- A component before the last is not a directory, or there is insufficient permission to read the directory.
- For a relative path, the current directory cannot be determined.
- A symbolic link points to a non-existent place or links form a loop.
- The canonicalized path would be exceed the maximum supported length of a file path.

Examples

```
 # random tempdir
cat(normalizePath(c(R.home(), tempdir())), sep = "\n")
```

NotYet *Not Yet Implemented Functions and Unused Arguments*

Description

In order to pinpoint missing functionality, the core team uses these functions for missing functions and not yet used arguments of existing functions (which are typically there for compatibility purposes).

You are very welcome to contribute your code ...

Usage

```
.NotYetImplemented()
.NotYetUsed(arg, error = TRUE)
```

Arguments

arg	an argument of a function that is not yet used.
error	a logical. If TRUE, an error is signalled; if FALSE; only a warning is given.

See Also

the contrary, Deprecated and Defunct for outdated code.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
barplot(1:5, inside = TRUE) # inside is not yet used
```

nrow *The Number of Rows/Columns of an Array*

Description

nrow and ncol return the number of rows or columns present in x. NCOL and NROW do the same treating a vector as 1-column matrix.

Usage

```
nrow(x)
ncol(x)
NCOL(x)
NROW(x)
```

Arguments

x	a vector, array or data frame

Value

an integer of length 1 or NULL.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole (ncol and nrow.)

See Also

dim which returns *all* dimensions; array, matrix.

Examples

```
ma <- matrix(1:12, 3, 4)
nrow(ma)   # 3
ncol(ma)   # 4

ncol(array(1:24, dim = 2:4)) # 3, the second dimension
NCOL(1:12) # 1
NROW(1:12) # 12
```

---

ns-dblcolon *Double Colon and Triple Colon Operators*

Description

Accessing exported and internal variables in a namespace.

Usage

```
pkg::name
pkg:::name
```

Arguments

pkg	package name: symbol or literal character string.
name	variable name: symbol or literal character string.

Details

For a package **pkg**, pkg::name returns the value of the exported variable name in namespace pkg, whereas pkg:::name returns the value of the internal variable name. The namespace will be loaded if it was not loaded before the call, but the package will not be attached to the search path.

Specifying a variable or package that does not exist is an error.

Note that pkg::name does **not** access the objects in the environment package:pkg (which does not exist until the package's namespace is attached): the latter may contain objects not exported from the namespace. It can access datasets made available by lazy-loading.

Note

It is typically a design mistake to use `:::` in your code since the corresponding object has probably been kept internal for a good reason. Consider contacting the package maintainer if you feel the need to access the object for anything but mere inspection.

See Also

`get` to access an object masked by another of the same name.

Examples

```
base::log
base::"+"

## Beware --  use ::: at your own risk! (see "Details")
stats:::coef.default
```

---

ns-hooks *Hooks for Namespace Events*

Description

Packages can supply functions to be called when loaded, attached, detached or unloaded.

Usage

```
.onLoad(libname, pkgname)
.onAttach(libname, pkgname)
.onUnload(libpath)
.onDetach(libpath)
.Last.lib(libpath)
```

Arguments

`libname`	a character string giving the library directory where the package defining the namespace was found.
`pkgname`	a character string giving the name of the package.
`libpath`	a character string giving the complete path to the package.

Details

After loading, `loadNamespace` looks for a hook function named `.onLoad` and calls it (with two unnamed arguments) before sealing the namespace and processing exports.

When the package is attached (via `library` or `attachNamespace`), the hook function `.onAttach` is looked for and if found is called (with two unnamed arguments) before the package environment is sealed.

If a function `.onDetach` (as from 3.0.0) is in the namespace or `.Last.lib` is exported from the package, it will be called (with a single argument) when the package is detached. Beware that it might be called if `.onAttach` has failed, so it should be written defensively. (It is called within `tryCatch`, so errors will not stop the package being detached.)

If a namespace is unloaded (via unloadNamespace), a hook function .onUnload is run (with a single argument) before final unloading.

Note that the code in .onLoad and .onUnload should not assume any package except the base package is on the search path. Objects in the current package will be visible (unless this is circumvented), but objects from other packages should be imported or the double colon operator should be used.

.onLoad, .onUnload, .onAttach and .onDetach are looked for as internal objects in the namespace and should not be exported (whereas .Last.lib should be).

Note that packages are not detached nor namespaces unloaded at the end of an session unless the user arranges to do so (e.g., *via* .Last).

Anything needed for the functioning of the namespace should be handled at load/unload times by the .onLoad and .onUnload hooks. For example, DLLs can be loaded (unless done by a useDynLib directive in the 'NAMESPACE' file) and initialized in .onLoad and unloaded in .onUnload. Use .onAttach only for actions that are needed only when the package becomes visible to the user (for example a start-up message) or need to be run after the package environment has been created.

Good practice

Loading a namespace should where possible be silent, with startup messages given by .onAttach. These messages (and any essential ones from .onLoad) should use packageStartupMessage so they can be silenced where they would be a distraction.

There should be no calls to library nor require in these hooks. The way for a package to load other packages is via the 'Depends' field in the 'DESCRIPTION' file: this ensures that the dependence is documented and packages are loaded in the correct order. Loading a namespace should not change the search path, so rather than attach a package, dependence of a namespace on another package should be achieved by (selectively) importing from the other package's namespace.

Uses of library with argument help to display basic information about the package should use format on the computed package information object and pass this to packageStartupMessage.

There should be no calls to installed.packages in startup code: it is potentially very slow and may fail in versions of before 2.14.2 if package installation is going on in parallel. See its help page for alternatives.

Compiled code should be loaded (e.g., *via* library.dynam) in .onLoad or a useDynLib directive in the 'NAMESPACE' file, and not in .onAttach. Similarly, compiled code should not be unloaded (e.g., *via* library.dynam.unload) in .Last.lib nor .onDetach, only in .onUnload.

See Also

setHook shows how users can set hooks on the same events, and lists the sequence of events involving all of the hooks.

reg.finalizer for hooks to be run at the end of a session.

---

ns-load *Loading and Unloading Name Spaces*

Description

Functions to load and unload name spaces.

Usage

```
attachNamespace(ns, pos = 2L, depends = NULL)
loadNamespace(package, lib.loc = NULL,
              keep.source = getOption("keep.source.pkgs"),
              partial = FALSE, versionCheck = NULL)
requireNamespace(package, ..., quietly = FALSE)
loadedNamespaces()
unloadNamespace(ns)
```

Arguments

ns	string or name space object.
pos	integer specifying position to attach.
depends	NULL or a character vector of dependencies to be recorded in object .Depends in the package.
package	string naming the package/name space to load.
lib.loc	character vector specifying library search path.
keep.source	Now ignored except during package installation. For more details see this argument to library.
partial	logical; if true, stop just after loading code.
versionCheck	NULL or a version specification (a list with components op and version)).
quietly	logical: should progress and error messages be suppressed?
...	further arguments to be passed to loadNamespace.

Details

The functions loadNamespace and attachNamespace are usually called implicitly when library is used to load a name space and any imports needed. However it may be useful at times to call these functions directly.

loadNamespace loads the specified name space and registers it in an internal data base. A request to load a name space when one of that name is already loaded has no effect. The arguments have the same meaning as the corresponding arguments to library, whose help page explains the details of how a particular installed package comes to be chosen. After loading, loadNamespace looks for a hook function named .onLoad as an internal variable in the name space (it should not be exported). Partial loading is used to support installation with lazy-loading.

loadNamespace does not attach the name space it loads to the search path. attachNamespace can be used to attach a frame containing the exported values of a name space to the search path (but this is almost always done *via* library). The hook function .onAttach is run after the name space exports are attached.

requireNamespace is a wrapper for loadNamespace analogous to require that returns a logical value.

loadedNamespaces returns a character vector of the names of the loaded name spaces.

unloadNamespace can be used to attempt to force a name space to be unloaded. If the name space is attached, it is first detached, thereby running a .onDetach or .Last.lib function in the name space if one is exported. An error is signaled and the name space is not unloaded if the name space is imported by other loaded name spaces. If defined, a hook function .onUnload is run before removing the name space from the internal registry.

See the comments in the help for detach about some issues with unloading and reloading name spaces.

Value

`attachNamespace` returns invisibly the package environment it adds to the search path.

`loadNamespace` returns the name space environment, either one already loaded or the one the function causes to be loaded.

`requireNamespace` returns `TRUE` if it succeeds or `FALSE`.

`loadedNamespaces` returns a character vector.

`unloadNamespace` returns `NULL`, invisibly.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney and R-core

`ns-topenv` *Top Level Environment*

Description

Finding the top level environment.

Usage

```
topenv(envir = parent.frame(),
       matchThisEnv = getOption("topLevelEnvironment"))
```

Arguments

`envir`	environment.
`matchThisEnv`	return this environment, if it matches before any other criterion is satisfied. The default, the option '`topLevelEnvironment`', is set by `sys.source`, which treats a specific environment as the top level environment. Supplying the argument as `NULL` means it will never match.

Details

`topenv` returns the first top level environment found when searching `envir` and its enclosing environments. An environment is considered top level if it is the internal environment of a namespace, a package environment in the search path, or `.GlobalEnv`.

Examples

```
topenv(.GlobalEnv)
topenv(new.env())
```

NULL *The Null Object*

Description

NULL represents the null object in : it is a reserved word. NULL is often returned by expressions and functions whose value is undefined.

as.null ignores its argument and returns the value NULL.

is.null returns TRUE if its argument is NULL and FALSE otherwise.

Usage

```
NULL
as.null(x, ...)
is.null(x)
```

Arguments

x	an object to be tested or coerced.
...	ignored.

Details

NULL can be indexed (see Extract) in just about any syntactically legal way: whether is makes sense or not, the result is always NULL. Objects with value NULL can be changed by replacement operators and will be coerced to the type of the right-hand side.

NULL is also used as the empty pairlist.

Note

is.null is a primitive function.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
is.null(list())     # FALSE (on purpose!)
is.null(integer(0)) # FALSE
is.null(logical(0)) # FALSE
as.null(list(a = 1, b = "c"))
```

numeric *Numeric Vectors*

Description

Creates or coerces objects of type "numeric". is.numeric is a more general test of an object being interpretable as numbers.

Usage

```
numeric(length = 0)
as.numeric(x, ...)
is.numeric(x)
```

Arguments

length	A non-negative integer specifying the desired length. Double values will be coerced to integer: supplying an argument of length other than one is an error.
x	object to be coerced or tested.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

numeric is identical to double (and real). It creates a double-precision vector of the specified length with each element equal to 0.

as.numeric is a generic function, but S3 methods must be written for as.double. It is identical to as.double.

is.numeric is an internal generic primitive function: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods. It is **not** the same as is.double. Factors are handled by the default method, and there are methods for classes "Date", "POSIXt" and "difftime" (all of which return false). Methods for is.numeric should only return true if the base type of the class is double or integer *and* values can reasonably be regarded as numeric (e.g., arithmetic on them makes sense, and comparison should be done via the base type).

Value

for numeric and as.numeric see double.

The default method for is.numeric returns TRUE if its argument is of mode "numeric" (type "double" or type "integer") and not a factor, and FALSE otherwise. That is, is.integer(x) || is.double(x), or (mode(x) == "numeric") && !is.factor(x).

S4 methods

as.numeric and is.numeric are internally S4 generic and so methods can be set for them *via* setMethod.

To ensure that as.numeric and as.double remain identical, S4 methods can only be set for as.numeric.

Note on names

It is a historical anomaly that has two names for its floating-point vectors, double and numeric (and formerly had real).

double is the name of the type. numeric is the name of the mode and also of the implicit class. As an S4 formal class, use "numeric".

The potential confusion is that has used *mode* "numeric" to mean 'double or integer', which conflicts with the S4 usage. Thus is.numeric tests the mode, not the class, but as.numeric (which is identical to as.double) coerces to the class.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

double, integer, storage.mode.

Examples

```
as.numeric(c("-.1"," 2.7 ","B")) # (-0.1, 2.7, NA)  +  warning
as.numeric(factor(5:10))
```

NumericConstants *Numeric Constants*

Description

How parses numeric constants.

Details

 parses numeric constants in its input in a very similar way to C99 floating-point constants.

Inf and NaN are numeric constants (with typeof(.) "double"). In text input (e.g., in scan and as.double), these are recognized ignoring case as is infinity as an alternative to Inf. NA_real_ and NA_integer_ are constants of types "double" and "integer" representing missing values. All other numeric constants start with a digit or period and are either a decimal or hexadecimal constant optionally followed by L.

Hexadecimal constants start with 0x or 0X followed by a nonempty sequence from 0-9 a-f A-F . which is interpreted as a hexadecimal number, optionally followed by a binary exponent. A binary exponent consists of a P or p followed by an optional plus or minus sign followed by a non-empty sequence of (decimal) digits, and indicates multiplication by a power of two. Thus 0x123p456 is 291×2^{456}.

Decimal constants consist of a nonempty sequence of digits possibly containing a period (the decimal point), optionally followed by a decimal exponent. A decimal exponent consists of an E or e followed by an optional plus or minus sign followed by a non-empty sequence of digits, and indicates multiplication by a power of ten.

Values which are too large or too small to be representable will overflow to Inf or underflow to 0.0.

A numeric constant immediately followed by `i` is regarded as an imaginary complex number.

An numeric constant immediately followed by `L` is regarded as an `integer` number when possible (and with a warning if it contains a `"."`).

Only the ASCII digits 0–9 are recognized as digits, even in languages which have other representations of digits. The 'decimal separator' is always a period and never a comma.

Note that a leading plus or minus is not regarded by the parser as part of a numeric constant but as a unary operator applied to the constant.

Note

When a string is parsed to input a numeric constant, the number may or may not be representable exactly in the C double type used. If not one of the nearest representable numbers will be returned.

's own C code is used to convert constants to binary numbers, so the effect can be expected to be the same on all platforms implementing full IEC 600559 arithmetic (the most likely area of difference being the handling of numbers less than `.Machine$double.xmin`). The same code is used by `scan`.

See Also

`Syntax`.

`Quotes` for the parsing of character constants,

Examples

```
2.1
typeof(2)
sqrt(1i) # remember elementary math?
utils::str(0xA0)
identical(1L, as.integer(1))

## You can combine the "0x" prefix with the "L" suffix :
identical(0xFL, as.integer(15))
```

---

numeric_version *Numeric Versions*

Description

A simple S3 class for representing numeric versions including package versions, and associated methods.

Usage

```
numeric_version(x, strict = TRUE)
package_version(x, strict = TRUE)
R_system_version(x, strict = TRUE)
getRversion()
```

Arguments

x	a character vector with suitable numeric version strings (see 'Details'); for package_version, alternatively an R version object as obtained by R.version.
strict	a logical indicating whether invalid numeric versions should results in an error (default) or not.

Details

Numeric versions are sequences of one or more non-negative integers, usually (e.g., in package 'DESCRIPTION' files) represented as character strings with the elements of the sequence concatenated and separated by single '.' or '-' characters. package versions consist of at least two such integers, an system version of exactly three (major, minor and patchlevel).

Functions numeric_version, package_version and R_system_version create a representation from such strings (if suitable) which allows for coercion and testing, combination, comparison, summaries (min/max), inclusion in data frames, subscripting, and printing. The classes can hold a vector of such representations.

getRversion returns the version of the running as an R system version object.

The [[operator extracts or replaces a single version. To access the integers of a version use two indices: see the examples.

See Also

compareVersion; packageVersion for the version of a specific package. R.version etc for the version of (and the information underlying getRversion()).

Examples

```
x <- package_version(c("1.2-4", "1.2-3", "2.1"))
x < "1.4-2.3"
c(min(x), max(x))
x[2, 2]
x$major
x$minor

if(getRversion() <= "2.5.0") { ## work around missing feature
  cat("Your version of R, ", as.character(getRversion()),
      ", is outdated.\n",
      "Now trying to work around that ...\n", sep = "")
}

x[[c(1, 3)]]  # 4 as a numeric vector, same as x[1, 3]
x[1, 3]      # 4 as an integer
x[[2, 3]] <- 0   # zero the patchlevel
x[[c(2, 3)]] <- 0 # same
x
x[[3]] <- "2.2.3"; x
x <- c(x, package_version("0.0"))
is.na(x)[4] <- TRUE
stopifnot(identical(is.na(x), c(rep(FALSE,3), TRUE)),
  anyNA(x))
```

`octmode` *Display Numbers in Octal*

Description

Convert or print integers in octal format, with as many digits as are needed to display the largest, using leading zeroes as necessary.

Usage

```
as.octmode(x)

## S3 method for class octmode
as.character(x, ...)

## S3 method for class octmode
format(x, width = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class octmode
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object, for the methods inheriting from class `"octmode"`.
`width`	`NULL` or a positive integer specifying the minimum field width to be used, with padding by leading zeroes.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Class `"octmode"` consists of integer vectors with that class attribute, used merely to ensure that they are printed in octal notation, specifically for Unix-like file permissions such as `755`. Subsetting (`[`) works too.

If `width = NULL` (the default), the output is padded with leading zeroes to the smallest width needed for all the non-missing elements.

`as.octmode` can convert integers (of type `"integer"` or `"double"`) and character vectors whose elements contain only digits `0-7` (or are `NA`) to class `"octmode"`.

There is a `!` method and `|`, `&` and `xor` methods: these recycle their arguments to the length of the longer and then apply the operators bitwise to each element.

See Also

These are auxiliary functions for `file.info`.

`hexmode`, `sprintf` for other options in converting integers to octal, `strtoi` to convert octal strings to integers.

Examples

```
(on <- as.octmode(c(16, 32, 127:129))) # "020" "040" "177" "200" "201"
unclass(on[3:4]) # subsetting

## manipulate file modes
fmode <- as.octmode("170")
(fmode | "644") & "755"

umask <- Sys.umask(NA) # depends on platform
c(fmode, "666", "755") & !umask
```

`on.exit` *Function Exit Code*

Description

`on.exit` records the expression given as its argument as needing to be executed when the current function exits (either naturally or as the result of an error). This is useful for resetting graphical parameters or performing other cleanup actions.

If no expression is provided, i.e., the call is `on.exit()`, then the current `on.exit` code is removed.

Usage

```
on.exit(expr = NULL, add = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`expr`	an expression to be executed.
`add`	if TRUE, add `expr` to be executed after any previously set expressions; otherwise (the default) `expr` will overwrite any previously set expressions.

Details

The `expr` argument passed to `on.exit` is recorded without evaluation. If it is not subsequently removed/replaced by another `on.exit` call in the same function, it is evaluated in the evaluation frame of the function when it exits (including during standard error handling). Thus any functions or variables in the expression will be looked for in the function and its environment at the time of exit: to capture the current value in `expr` use `substitute` or similar.

This is a 'special' primitive function: it only evaluates the argument `add`.

Value

Invisible `NULL`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

sys.on.exit which returns the expression stored for use by on.exit() in the function in which sys.on.exit() is evaluated.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

opar <- par(mai = c(1,1,1,1))
on.exit(par(opar))
```

Ops.Date *Operators on the Date Class*

Description

Operators for the "Date" class.

There is an Ops method and specific methods for + and - for the Date class.

Usage

```
date + x
x + date
date - x
date1 lop date2
```

Arguments

date	date objects
date1, date2	date objects or character vectors. (Character vectors are converted by as.Date.)
x	a numeric vector (in days) *or* an object of class "difftime", rounded to the nearest whole day.
lop	One of ==, !=, <, <=, > or >=.

Details

x does not need to be integer if specified as a numeric vector, but see the comments about fractional days in the help for Dates.

Examples

```
(z <- Sys.Date())
z + 10
z < c("2009-06-01", "2010-01-01", "2015-01-01")
```

options *Options Settings*

Description

Allow the user to set and examine a variety of global *options* which affect the way in which computes and displays its results.

Usage

```
options(...)

getOption(x, default = NULL)

.Options
```

Arguments

...	any options can be defined, using name = value. However, only the ones below are used in base . Options can also be passed by giving a single unnamed argument which is a named list.
x	a character string holding an option name.
default	if the specified option is not set in the options list, this value is returned. This facilitates retrieving an option and checking whether it is set and setting it separately if not.

Details

Invoking options() with no arguments returns a list with the current values of the options. Note that not all options listed below are set initially. To access the value of a single option, one should use, e.g., getOption("width") rather than options("width") which is a *list* of length one.

Value

For getOption, the current value set for option x, or NULL if the option is unset.

For options(), a list of all set options sorted by name. For options(name), a list of length one containing the set value, or NULL if it is unset. For uses setting one or more options, a list with the previous values of the options changed (returned invisibly).

Options used in base

add.smooth: typically logical, defaulting to TRUE. Could also be set to an integer for specifying how many (simulated) smooths should be added. This is currently only used by plot.lm.

browserNLdisabled: logical: whether newline is disabled as a synonym for "n" is the browser.

checkPackageLicense: logical, not set by default. If true, library asks a user to accept any non-standard license at first use.

check.bounds: logical, defaulting to FALSE. If true, a warning is produced whenever a vector (atomic or list) is extended, by something like x <- 1:3; x[5] <- 6.

`CBoundsCheck`: logical, controlling whether `.C` and `.Fortran` make copies to check for array overruns on the atomic vector arguments.

Initially set from value of the environment variable `R_C_BOUNDS_CHECK` (set to `yes` to enable).

`continue`: a non-empty string setting the prompt used for lines which continue over one line.

`defaultPackages`: the packages that are attached by default when starts up. Initially set from value of the environment variable `R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES`, or if that is unset to `c("datasets", "utils", "grDevices", "graphics", "stats", "methods")`. (Set `R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES` to `NULL` or a comma-separated list of package names.) A call to `options` should be in your '`.Rprofile`' file to ensure that the change takes effect before the base package is initialized (see `Startup`).

`deparse.cutoff`: integer value controlling the printing of language constructs which are `deparse`d. Default `60`.

`deparse.max.lines`: controls the number of lines used when deparsing in `traceback`, `browser`, and upon entry to a function whose debugging flag is set. Initially unset, and only used if set to a positive integer.

`digits`: controls the number of digits to print when printing numeric values. It is a suggestion only. Valid values are 1...22 with default 7. See the note in `print.default` about values greater than 15.

`digits.secs`: controls the maximum number of digits to print when formatting time values in seconds. Valid values are 0...6 with default 0. See `strftime`.

`download.file.extra`: Extra command-line argument(s) for non-default methods: see `download.file`.

`download.file.method`: Method to be used for `download.file`. Currently download methods `"internal"`, `"wget"` and `"lynx"` are available. There is no default for this option, when `method = "auto"` is chosen: see `download.file`.

`echo`: logical. Only used in non-interactive mode, when it controls whether input is echoed. Command-line option '`--slave`' sets this to `FALSE`, but otherwise it starts the session as `TRUE`.

`encoding`: The name of an encoding, default `"native.enc"`. See `connections`.

`error`: either a function or an expression governing the handling of non-catastrophic errors such as those generated by `stop` as well as by signals and internally detected errors. If the option is a function, a call to that function, with no arguments, is generated as the expression. The default value is `NULL`: see `stop` for the behaviour in that case. The functions `dump.frames` and `recover` provide alternatives that allow post-mortem debugging. Note that these need to specified as e.g. `options(error = utils::recover)` in startup files such as '`.Rprofile`'.

`expressions`: sets a limit on the number of nested expressions that will be evaluated. Valid values are 25...500000 with default 5000. If you increase it, you may also want to start with a larger protection stack; see '`--max-ppsize`' in `Memory`. Note too that you may cause a segfault from overflow of the C stack, and on OSes where it is possible you may want to increase that. Once the limit is reached an error is thrown. The current number under evaluation can be found by calling `Cstack_info`.

`keep.source`: When `TRUE`, the source code for functions (newly defined or loaded) is stored internally allowing comments to be kept in the right places. Retrieve the source by printing or using `deparse(fn, control = "useSource")`.

The default is `interactive()`, i.e., `TRUE` for interactive use.

`keep.source.pkgs`: As for `keep.source`, used only when packages are installed. Defaults to `FALSE` unless the environment variable `R_KEEP_PKG_SOURCE` is set to `yes`.

`max.print`: integer, defaulting to `99999`. `print` or `show` methods can make use of this option, to limit the amount of information that is printed, to something in the order of (and typically slightly less than) `max.print` *entries*.

`OutDec`**:** character string containing a single-byte character. The preferred character to be used as the decimal point in output conversions, that is in printing, plotting, `format` and `as.character` but not when deparsing nor by `sprintf` nor `formatC` (which are sometimes used prior to printing.

`pager`**:** the command used for displaying text files by `file.show`. Defaults to '*R_HOME*`/bin/pager`', which is a shell script running the command-line specified by the environment variable `PAGER` whose default is set at configuration, usually to `less`. Can be a character string or an function, in which case it needs to accept the arguments `(files, header,title, delete.file)` corresponding to the first four arguments of `file.show`.

`papersize`**:** the default paper format used by `postscript`; set by environment variable `R_PAPERSIZE` when is started: if that is unset or invalid it defaults to a value derived from the locale category `LC_PAPER`, or if that is unavailable to a default set when was built.

`pdfviewer`**:** default PDF viewer. The default is set from the environment variable `R_PDFVIEWER`, the default value of which is set when is configured.

`printcmd`**:** the command used by `postscript` for printing; set by environment variable `R_PRINTCMD` when is started. This should be a command that expects either input to be piped to '`stdin`' or to be given a single filename argument. Usually set to `"lpr"` on a Unix-alike.

`prompt`**:** a non-empty string to be used for 's prompt; should usually end in a blank (`" "`).

`rl_word_breaks`**:** Used for the readline-based terminal interface. Default value `" \t\n\"\\><=%;,|&{()}"`.

This is the set of characters use to break the input line into tokens for object- and file-name completion. Those who do not use spaces around operators may prefer `" \t\n\"\\><=+-*%;,|&{()}"`

`save.defaults`**,** `save.image.defaults`**:** see `save`.

`scipen`**:** integer. A penalty to be applied when deciding to print numeric values in fixed or exponential notation. Positive values bias towards fixed and negative towards scientific notation: fixed notation will be preferred unless it is more than `scipen` digits wider.

`showWarnCalls`**,** `showErrorCalls`**:** a logical. Should warning and error messages show a summary of the call stack? By default error calls are shown in non-interactive sessions.

`showNCalls`**:** integer. Controls how long the sequence of calls must be (in bytes) before ellipses are used. Defaults to 40 and should be at least 30 and no more than 500.

`show.error.locations`**:** Should source locations of errors be printed? If set to `TRUE` or `"top"`, the source location that is highest on the stack (the most recent call) will be printed. `"bottom"` will print the location of the earliest call found on the stack.

Integer values can select other entries. The value `0` corresponds to `"top"` and positive values count down the stack from there. The value `-1` corresponds to `"bottom"` and negative values count up from there.

`show.error.messages`**:** a logical. Should error messages be printed? Intended for use with `try` or a user-installed error handler.

`stringsAsFactors`**:** The default setting for arguments of `data.frame` and `read.table`.

`texi2dvi`**:** used by functions `texi2dvi` and `texi2pdf` in package **tools**. Set at startup from the environment variable `R_TEXI2DVICMD`.

`timeout`**:** integer. The timeout for some Internet operations, in seconds. Default 60 seconds. See `download.file` and `connections`.

`topLevelEnvironment`**:** see `topenv` and `sys.source`.

`useFancyQuotes`**:** controls the use of directional quotes in `sQuote`, `dQuote` and in rendering text help (see `Rd2txt` in package **tools**). Can be `TRUE`, `FALSE`, `"TeX"` or `"UTF-8"`.

`verbose`: logical. Should report extra information on progress? Set to `TRUE` by the command-line option '`--verbose`'.

`warn`: sets the handling of warning messages. If `warn` is negative all warnings are ignored. If `warn` is zero (the default) warnings are stored until the top–level function returns. If 10 or fewer warnings were signalled they will be printed otherwise a message saying how many were signalled. An object called `last.warning` is created and can be printed through the function `warnings`. If `warn` is one, warnings are printed as they occur. If `warn` is two or larger all warnings are turned into errors.

`warnPartialMatchArgs`: logical. If true, warns if partial matching is used in argument matching.

`warnPartialMatchAttr`: logical. If true, warns if partial matching is used in extracting attributes via `attr`.

`warnPartialMatchDollar`: logical. If true, warns if partial matching is used for extraction by `$`.

`warning.expression`: an code expression to be called if a warning is generated, replacing the standard message. If non-null it is called irrespective of the value of option `warn`.

`warning.length`: sets the truncation limit for error and warning messages. A non-negative integer, with allowed values 100...8170, default 1000.

`nwarnings`: the limit for the number of warnings kept when `warn = 0`, default 50. This will discard messages if called whilst they are being collected.

`width`: controls the maximum number of columns on a line used in printing vectors, matrices and arrays, and when filling by `cat`.

Columns are normally the same as characters except in CJK languages.

You may want to change this if you re-size the window that is running in. Valid values are 10...10000 with default normally 80. (The limits on valid values are in file '`Print.h`' and can be changed by re-compiling .) Some consoles automatically change the value when they are resized.

See the examples on Startup for one way to set this automatically from the terminal width when is started.

The 'factory-fresh' default settings of some of these options are

```
add.smooth            TRUE
check.bounds          FALSE
continue              "+ "
digits                7
echo                  TRUE
encoding              "native.enc"
error                 NULL
expressions           5000
keep.source           interactive()
keep.source.pkgs      FALSE
max.print             99999
OutDec                "."
prompt                "> "
scipen                0
show.error.messages   TRUE
timeout               60
verbose               FALSE
warn                  0
warning.length        1000
width                 80
```

Others are set from environment variables or are platform-dependent.

Options set in package grDevices

These will be set when package **grDevices** (or its namespace) is loaded if not already set.

`bitmapType`: (Unix-only) character. The default type for the bitmap devices such as `png`. Defaults to `"cairo"` on systems where that is available, or to `"quartz"` on OS X where that is available.

`device`: a character string giving the name of a function, or the function object itself, which when called creates a new graphics device of the default type for that session. The value of this option defaults to the normal screen device (e.g., `X11`, `windows` or `quartz`) for an interactive session, and `pdf` in batch use or if a screen is not available. If set to the name of a device, the device is looked for first from the global environment (that is down the usual search path) and then in the **grDevices** namespace.

The default values in interactive and non-interactive sessions are configurable via environment variables `R_INTERACTIVE_DEVICE` and `R_DEFAULT_DEVICE` respectively.

`device.ask.default`: logical. The default for `devAskNewPage("ask")` when a device is opened.

`locatorBell`: logical. Should selection in `locator` and `identify` be confirmed by a bell? Default `TRUE`. Honoured at least on `X11` and `windows` devices.

Other options used by package graphics

`max.contour.segments`: positive integer, defaulting to `25000` if not set. A limit on the number of segments in a single contour line in `contour` or `contourLines`.

Options set in package stats

These will be set when package **stats** (or its namespace) is loaded if not already set.

`contrasts`: the default `contrasts` used in model fitting such as with `aov` or `lm`. A character vector of length two, the first giving the function to be used with unordered factors and the second the function to be used with ordered factors. By default the elements are named `c("unordered", "ordered")`, but the names are unused.

`na.action`: the name of a function for treating missing values (`NA`'s) for certain situations.

`show.coef.Pvalues`: logical, affecting whether P values are printed in summary tables of coefficients. See `printCoefmat`.

`show.nls.convergence`: logical, should `nls` convergence messages be printed for successful fits?

`show.signif.stars`: logical, should stars be printed on summary tables of coefficients? See `printCoefmat`.

`ts.eps`: the relative tolerance for certain time series (`ts`) computations. Default `1e-05`.

`ts.S.compat`: logical. Used to select S compatibility for plotting time-series spectra. See the description of argument `log` in `plot.spec`.

Options set in package utils

These will be set when package **utils** (or its namespace) is loaded if not already set.

`BioC_mirror`: The URL of a Bioconductor mirror for use by `setRepositories`, e.g. the default `'"http://www.bioconductor.org"'` or the European mirror `'"http://bioconductor.statistik.tu-dortmund.de"'`. Can be set by `chooseBioCmirror`.

`browser`: default HTML browser used by `help.start()` and `browseURL` on UNIX, or a non-default browser on Windows. Alternatively, an function that is called with a URL as its argument.

`ccaddress`: default Cc: address used by `create.post` (and hence `bug.report` and `help.request`). Can be `FALSE` or `""`.

`citation.bibtex.max`: default 1; the maximal number of bibentries (`bibentry`) in a `citation` for which the bibtex version is printed in addition to the text one.

`de.cellwidth`: integer: the cell widths (number of characters) to be used in the data editor `dataentry`. If this is unset (the default), 0, negative or `NA`, variable cell widths are used.

`demo.ask`: default for the `ask` argument of `demo`.

`editor`: a non-empty string or a function that sets the default text editor, e.g., for `edit`. Set from the environment variable `EDITOR` on UNIX, or if unset `VISUAL` or `vi`.

`example.ask`: default for the `ask` argument of `example`.

`help.ports`: optional integer vector for setting ports of the internal HTTP server, see `startDynamicHelp`.

`help.search.types`: default types of documentation to be searched by `help.search` and `??`.

`help.try.all.packages`: default for an argument of `help`.

`help_type`: default for an argument of `help`, used also as the help type by `?`.

`HTTPUserAgent`: string used as the user agent in HTTP requests. If `NULL`, HTTP requests will be made without a user agent header. The default is `R (<version> <platform> <arch> <os>)`

`install.lock`: logical: should per-directory package locking be used by `install.packages`? Most useful for binary installs on OS X and Windows, but can be used in a startup file for source installs *via* `R CMD INSTALL`. For binary installs, can also be the character string `"pkgloack"`.

`internet.info`: The minimum level of information to be printed on URL downloads etc. Default is 2, for failure causes. Set to 1 or 0 to get more information.

`install.packages.check.source`: Used by `install.packages` on platforms which support binary packages. Possible values `"yes"` and `"no"`, with unset being equivalent to `"yes"`.

`mailer`: default emailing method used by `create.post` and hence `bug.report` and `help.request`.

`menu.graphics`: Logical: should graphical menus be used if available?. Defaults to `TRUE`. Currently applies to `select.list`, `chooseCRANmirror`, `setRepositories` and to select from multiple (text) help files in `help`.

`pkgType`: The default type of packages to be downloaded and installed – see `install.packages`. Possible values are `"source"` (the default except under the CRAN OS X build), `"mac.binary."` and `"mac.binary.mavericks"`. Windows uses `"win.binary"`. (`"mac.binary.leopard"` and `"mac.binary.universal"` are no longer in use.) Value `"binary"` is a synonym for the native binary type (if there is one); `"both"` is used by `install.packages` to choose between source and binary installs.

`repos`: URLs of the repositories for use by `update.packages`. Defaults to `c(CRAN="@CRAN@")`, a value that causes some utilities to prompt for a CRAN mirror. To avoid this do set the CRAN mirror, by something like `local({r <- getOption("repos"); r["CRAN"] <- "http://my.local.cran"; options(repos = r)})`.

Note that you can add more repositories (Bioconductor and Omegahat, R-Forge, Rforge.net ...) using `setRepositories`.

`SweaveHooks`, `SweaveSyntax`: see `Sweave`.

`unzip`: a character string used by `unzip`: the path of the external program `unzip` or `"internal"`. Defaults to the value of `R_UNZIPCMD`, which is set in '`etc/Renviron`' if an `unzip` command was found during configuration.

Options set in package parallel

These will be set when package **parallel** (or its namespace) is loaded if not already set.

`mc.cores`: a integer giving the maximum allowed number of *additional* processes allowed to be run in parallel to the current process. Defaults to the setting of the environment variable `MC_CORES` if set. Most applications which use this assume a limit of `2` if it is unset.

Options used on Unix only

`dvipscmd`: character string giving a command to be used in the (deprecated) off-line printing of help pages *via* PostScript. Defaults to `"dvips"`.

Options used on Windows only

`warn.FPU`: logical, by default undefined. If true, a warning is produced whenever dyn.load repairs the control word damaged by a buggy DLL.

Note

For compatibility with S there is a visible object `.Options` whose value is a pairlist containing the current `options()` (in no particular order). Assigning to it will make a local copy and not change the original.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
op <- options(); utils::str(op) # op is a named list

getOption("width") == options()$width # the latter needs more memory
options(digits = 15)
pi

# set the editor, and save previous value
old.o <- options(editor = "nedit")
old.o

options(check.bounds = TRUE, warn = 1)
x <- NULL; x[4] <- "yes" # gives a warning

options(digits = 5)
print(1e5)
options(scipen = 3); print(1e5)

options(op)     # reset (all) initial options
options("digits")

## Not run: ## set contrast handling to be like S
```

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))

## End(Not run)

## Not run: ## on error, terminate the R session with error status 66
options(error = quote(q("no", status = 66, runLast = FALSE)))
stop("test it")

## End(Not run)

## Not run: ## Set error actions for debugging:
## enter browser on error, see ?recover:
options(error = recover)
## allows to call debugger() afterwards, see ?debugger:
options(error = dump.frames)
## A possible setting for non-interactive sessions
options(error = quote({dump.frames(to.file = TRUE); q()}))

## End(Not run)

  # Compare the two ways to get an option and use it
  # acconting for the possibility it might not be set.
if(as.logical(getOption("performCleanp", TRUE)))
   cat("do cleanup\n")

## Not run:
  # a clumsier way of expressing the above w/o the default.
tmp <- getOption("performCleanup")
if(is.null(tmp))
  tmp <- TRUE
if(tmp)
   cat("do cleanup\n")

## End(Not run)
```

`order` *Ordering Permutation*

Description

`order` returns a permutation which rearranges its first argument into ascending or descending order, breaking ties by further arguments. `sort.list` is the same, using only one argument.
See the examples for how to use these functions to sort data frames, etc.

Usage

```
order(..., na.last = TRUE, decreasing = FALSE)

sort.list(x, partial = NULL, na.last = TRUE, decreasing = FALSE,
          method = c("shell", "quick", "radix"))
```

Arguments

...	a sequence of numeric, complex, character or logical vectors, all of the same length, or a classed object.
x	an atomic vector.
partial	vector of indices for partial sorting. (Non-NULL values are not implemented.)
decreasing	logical. Should the sort order be increasing or decreasing?
na.last	for controlling the treatment of NAs. If TRUE, missing values in the data are put last; if FALSE, they are put first; if NA, they are removed (see 'Note'.)
method	the method to be used: partial matches are allowed. The default is "shell" except for some special cases: see 'Details'.

Details

In the case of ties in the first vector, values in the second are used to break the ties. If the values are still tied, values in the later arguments are used to break the tie (see the first example). The sort used is *stable* (except for method = "quick"), so any unresolved ties will be left in their original ordering.

Complex values are sorted first by the real part, then the imaginary part.

The sort order for character vectors will depend on the collating sequence of the locale in use: see Comparison.

The default method for sort.list is a good compromise. Method "quick" is only supported for numeric x with na.last = NA, and is not stable, but will be substantially faster for long vectors. Method "radix" is only implemented for integer x with a range of less than 100,000. For such x it is very fast (and stable), and hence is ideal for sorting factors—as from 3.0.0 it is the default method for factors with less than 100,000 levels. (This is also known as *counting sorting*.)

partial = NULL is supported for compatibility with other implementations of S, but no other values are accepted and ordering is always complete.

For a classed object, the sort order is taken from xtfrm: as its help page notes, this can be slow unless a suitable method has been defined or is.numeric(x) is true. For factors, this sorts on the internal codes, which is particularly appropriate for ordered factors.

Value

An integer vector unless any of the inputs has 2^{31} or more elements, when it is a double vector.

Note

sort.list can get called by mistake as a method for sort with a list argument, and gives a suitable error message for list x.

There is a historical difference in behaviour for na.last = NA: sort.list removes the NAs and then computes the order amongst the remaining elements: order computes the order amongst the non-NA elements of the original vector. Thus

```
x[order(x, na.last = NA)]
zz <- x[!is.na(x)]; zz[sort.list(x, na.last = NA)]
```

both sort the non-NA values of x.

Prior to 3.1.0 method = "radix" was only supported for non-negative integers.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

sort, rank, xtfrm.

Examples

```
require(stats)

(ii <- order(x <- c(1,1,3:1,1:4,3), y <- c(9,9:1), z <- c(2,1:9)))
## 6  5  2  1  7  4 10  8  3  9
rbind(x, y, z)[,ii] # shows the reordering (ties via 2nd & 3rd arg)

## Suppose we wanted descending order on y.
## A simple solution for numeric y is
rbind(x, y, z)[, order(x, -y, z)]
## More generally we can make use of xtfrm
cy <- as.character(y)
rbind(x, y, z)[, order(x, -xtfrm(cy), z)]

## Sorting data frames:
dd <- transform(data.frame(x, y, z),
                z = factor(z, labels = LETTERS[9:1]))
## Either as above {for factor z : using internal coding}:
dd[ order(x, -y, z), ]
## or along 1st column, ties along 2nd, ... *arbitrary* no.{columns}:
dd[ do.call(order, dd), ]

set.seed(1)  # reproducible example:
d4 <- data.frame(x = round(   rnorm(100)), y = round(10*runif(100)),
                 z = round( 8*rnorm(100)), u = round(50*runif(100)))
(d4s <- d4[ do.call(order, d4), ])
(i <- which(diff(d4s[, 3]) == 0))
#   in 2 places, needed 3 cols to break ties:
d4s[ rbind(i, i+1), ]

## rearrange matched vectors so that the first is in ascending order
x <- c(5:1, 6:8, 12:9)
y <- (x - 5)^2
o <- order(x)
rbind(x[o], y[o])

## tests of na.last
a <- c(4, 3, 2, NA, 1)
b <- c(4, NA, 2, 7, 1)
z <- cbind(a, b)
(o <- order(a, b)); z[o, ]
(o <- order(a, b, na.last = FALSE)); z[o, ]
(o <- order(a, b, na.last = NA)); z[o, ]


##  speed examples for long vectors:
x <- factor(sample(letters, 1e6, replace = TRUE))
```

```
system.time(o <- sort.list(x)) ## 0.4 secs
stopifnot(!is.unsorted(x[o]))
system.time(o <- sort.list(x, method = "quick", na.last = NA)) # 0.1 sec
stopifnot(!is.unsorted(x[o]))
system.time(o <- sort.list(x, method = "radix")) # 0.01 sec
stopifnot(!is.unsorted(x[o]))
xx <- sample(1:26, 1e7, replace = TRUE)
system.time(o <- sort.list(xx, method = "radix")) # 0.1 sec
xx <- sample(1:100000, 1e7, replace = TRUE)
system.time(o <- sort.list(xx, method = "radix")) # 0.5 sec
system.time(o <- sort.list(xx, method = "quick", na.last = NA)) # 1.3 sec
```

`outer` *Outer Product of Arrays*

Description

The outer product of the arrays `X` and `Y` is the array `A` with dimension `c(dim(X), dim(Y))` where element `A[c(arrayindex.x, arrayindex.y)] = FUN(X[arrayindex.x], Y[arrayindex.y], ...)`.

Usage

```
outer(X, Y, FUN = "*", ...)
X %o% Y
```

Arguments

`X, Y`	First and second arguments for function `FUN`. Typically a vector or array.
`FUN`	a function to use on the outer products, found *via* `match.fun` (except for the special case `"*"`).
`...`	optional arguments to be passed to `FUN`.

Details

`X` and `Y` must be suitable arguments for `FUN`. Each will be extended by `rep` to length the products of the lengths of `X` and `Y` before `FUN` is called.

`FUN` is called with these two extended vectors as arguments (plus any arguments in `...`). It must be a vectorized function (or the name of one) expecting at least two arguments and returning a value with the same length as the first (and the second).

Where they exist, the [dim]names of `X` and `Y` will be copied to the answer, and a dimension assigned which is the concatenation of the dimensions of `X` and `Y` (or lengths if dimensions do not exist).

`FUN = "*"` is handled as a special case *via* `as.vector(X) %*% t(as.vector(Y))`, and is intended only for numeric vectors and arrays.

`%o%` is binary operator providing a wrapper for `outer(x, y, "*")`.

Author(s)

Jonathan Rougier

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`%*%` for usual (*inner*) matrix vector multiplication; `kronecker` which is based on `outer`; `Vectorize` for vectorizing a non-vectorized function.

Examples

```
x <- 1:9; names(x) <- x
# Multiplication & Power Tables
x %o% x
y <- 2:8; names(y) <- paste(y,":", sep = "")
outer(y, x, "^")

outer(month.abb, 1999:2003, FUN = "paste")

## three way multiplication table:
x %o% x %o% y[1:3]
```

`Paren` *Parentheses and Braces*

Description

Open parenthesis, `(`, and open brace, `{`, are `.Primitive` functions in .

Effectively, `(` is semantically equivalent to the identity `function(x) x`, whereas `{` is slightly more interesting, see examples.

Usage

```
( ... )

{ ... }
```

Value

For `(`, the result of evaluating the argument. This has visibility set, so will auto-print if used at top-level.

For `{`, the result of the last expression evaluated. This has the visibility of the last evaluation.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`if`, `return`, etc for other objects used in the language itself.

`Syntax` for operator precedence.

Examples

```
f <- get("(")
e <- expression(3 + 2 * 4)
identical(f(e), e)

do <- get("{")
do(x <- 3, y <- 2*x-3, 6-x-y); x; y

## note the differences
(2+3)
{2+3; 4+5}
(invisible(2+3))
{invisible(2+3)}
```

---

parse *Parse Expressions*

Description

parse returns the parsed but unevaluated expressions in a list.

Usage

```
parse(file = "", n = NULL, text = NULL, prompt = "?",
      keep.source = getOption("keep.source"), srcfile,
      encoding = "unknown")
```

Arguments

file	a connection, or a character string giving the name of a file or a URL to read the expressions from. If file is "" and text is missing or NULL then input is taken from the console.
n	integer (or coerced to integer). The maximum number of expressions to parse. If n is NULL or negative or NA the input is parsed in its entirety.
text	character vector. The text to parse. Elements are treated as if they were lines of a file. Other objects will be coerced to character if possible.
prompt	the prompt to print when parsing from the keyboard. NULL means to use 's prompt, getOption("prompt").
keep.source	a logical value; if TRUE, keep source reference information.
srcfile	NULL, a character vector, or a srcfile object. See the 'Details' section.
encoding	encoding to be assumed for input strings. If the value is "latin1" or "UTF-8" it is used to mark character strings as known to be in Latin-1 or UTF-8: it is not used to re-encode the input. To do the latter, specify the encoding as part of the connection con or *via* options(encoding=): see the example under file.

Details

If `text` has length greater than zero (after coercion) it is used in preference to `file`.

All versions of accept input from a connection with end of line marked by LF (as used on Unix), CRLF (as used on DOS/Windows) or CR (as used on classic Mac OS). The final line can be incomplete, that is missing the final EOL marker.

When input is taken from the console, `n = NULL` is equivalent to `n = 1`, and `n < 0` will read until an EOF character is read. (The EOF character is Ctrl-Z for the Windows front-ends.) The line-length limit is 4095 bytes when reading from the console (which may impose a lower limit: see 'An Introduction to R').

The default for `srcfile` is set as follows. If `keep.source` is not `TRUE`, `srcfile` defaults to a character string, either `"<text>"` or one derived from `file`. When `keep.source` is `TRUE`, if `text` is used, `srcfile` will be set to a `srcfilecopy` containing the text. If a character string is used for `file`, a `srcfile` object referring to that file will be used.

When `srcfile` is a character string, error messages will include the name, but source reference information will not be added to the result. When `srcfile` is a `srcfile` object, source reference information will be retained.

Value

An object of type `"expression"`, with up to `n` elements if specified as a non-negative integer.

When `srcfile` is non-`NULL`, a `"srcref"` attribute will be attached to the result containing a list of `srcref` records corresponding to each element, a `"srcfile"` attribute will be attached containing a copy of `srcfile`, and a `"wholeSrcref"` attribute will be attached containing a `srcref` record corresponding to all of the parsed text. Detailed parse information will be stored in the `"srcfile"` attribute, to be retrieved by `getParseData`.

A syntax error (including an incomplete expression) will throw an error.

Character strings in the result will have a declared encoding if `encoding` is `"latin1"` or `"UTF-8"`, or if `text` is supplied with every element of known encoding in a Latin-1 or UTF-8 locale.

Partial parsing

When a syntax error occurs during parsing, `parse` signals an error. The partial parse data will be stored in the `srcfile` argument if it is a `srcfile` object and the `text` argument was used to supply the text. In other cases it will be lost when the error is triggered.

The partial parse data can be retrieved using `getParseData` applied to the `srcfile` object. Because parsing was incomplete, it will typically include references to `"parent"` entries that are not present.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murdoch, D. (2010). Source References. *The R Journal* 2/2, 16-19.

See Also

`scan`, `source`, `eval`, `deparse`.

The source reference information can be used for debugging (see e.g. `setBreakpoint`) and profiling (see `Rprof`). It can be examined by `getSrcref` and related functions. More detailed information is available through `getParseData`.

Examples

```
cat("x <- c(1, 4)\n  x ^ 3 -10 ; outer(1:7, 5:9)\n", file = "xyz.Rdmped")
# parse 3 statements from the file "xyz.Rdmped"
parse(file = "xyz.Rdmped", n = 3)
unlink("xyz.Rdmped")

# A partial parse with a syntax error
txt <- "
x <- 1
an error
"
sf <- srcfile("txt")
try(parse(text = txt, srcfile = sf))
getParseData(sf)
```

---

paste *Concatenate Strings*

Description

Concatenate vectors after converting to character.

Usage

```
paste (..., sep = " ", collapse = NULL)
paste0(..., collapse = NULL)
```

Arguments

`...`	one or more objects, to be converted to character vectors.
`sep`	a character string to separate the terms. Not `NA_character_`.
`collapse`	an optional character string to separate the results. Not `NA_character_`.

Details

`paste` converts its arguments (*via* `as.character`) to character strings, and concatenates them (separating them by the string given by `sep`). If the arguments are vectors, they are concatenated term-by-term to give a character vector result. Vector arguments are recycled as needed, with zero-length arguments being recycled to `""`.

Note that `paste()` coerces `NA_character_`, the character missing value, to `"NA"` which may seem undesirable, e.g., when pasting two character vectors, or very desirable, e.g. in `paste("the value of p is ", p)`.

`paste0(..., collapse)` is equivalent to `paste(..., sep = "", collapse)`, slightly more efficiently.

If a value is specified for `collapse`, the values in the result are then concatenated into a single string, with the elements being separated by the value of `collapse`.

Value

A character vector of the concatenated values. This will be of length zero if all the objects are, unless `collapse` is non-NULL in which case it is a single empty string.

If any input into an element of the result is in UTF-8 (and none are declared with encoding `"bytes"`, (see `Encoding`), that element will be in UTF-8, otherwise in the current encoding in which case the encoding of the element is declared if the current locale is either Latin-1 or UTF-8, at least one of the corresponding inputs (including separators) had a declared encoding and all inputs were either ASCII or declared.

If an input into an element is declared with encoding `"bytes"`, no translation will be done of any of the elements and the resulting element will have encoding `"bytes"`. If `collapse` is non-NULL, this applies also to the second, collapsing, phase, but some translation may have been done in pasting object together in the first phase.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

String manipulation with `as.character`, `substr`, `nchar`, `strsplit`; further, `cat` which concatenates and writes to a file, and `sprintf` for C like string construction.

'plotmath' for the use of `paste` in plot annotation.

Examples

```
paste(1:12) # same as as.character(1:12)
paste("A", 1:6, sep = "")
stopifnot(identical(paste ("A", 1:6, sep = ""),
    paste0("A", 1:6)))
paste("Today is", date())
```

---

path.expand *Expand File Paths*

Description

Expand a path name, for example by replacing a leading tilde by the user's home directory (if defined on that platform).

Usage

```
path.expand(path)
```

Arguments

`path`	character vector containing one or more path names.

Details

On *some* Unix builds of , a leading `~user` will expand to the home directory of `user`, but not on Unix versions without `readline` installed, nor if is invoked with '`--no-readline`'.

In an interactive session `capabilities("cledit")` will report if `readline` is available.

See Also

`basename`, `normalizePath`.

Examples

```
path.expand("~/foo")
```

`pcre_config` *Report Configuration Options for PCRE*

Description

Report some of the configuration options of the version of PCRE in use in this session.

Usage

```
pcre_config()
```

Value

A named logical vector, currently with elements

`UTF-8`	Support for UTF-8 inputs. Pretty much essential as all non-ASCII inputs are converted to UTF-8.
`Unicode properties`	Support for '`\p{xx}`' and '`\P{xx}`' in regular expressions. Desirable.
`JIT`	Support for just-in-time compilation. Desirable.

Examples

```
pcre_config()
```

pmatch *Partial String Matching*

Description

pmatch seeks matches for the elements of its first argument among those of its second.

Usage

```
pmatch(x, table, nomatch = NA_integer_, duplicates.ok = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	the values to be matched: converted to a character vector by as.character. Long vectors are supported.
table	the values to be matched against: converted to a character vector. Long vectors are not supported.
nomatch	the value to be returned at non-matching or multiply partially matching positions. Note that it is coerced to integer.
duplicates.ok	should elements be in table be used more than once?

Details

The behaviour differs by the value of duplicates.ok. Consider first the case if this is true. First exact matches are considered, and the positions of the first exact matches are recorded. Then unique partial matches are considered, and if found recorded. (A partial match occurs if the whole of the element of x matches the beginning of the element of table.) Finally, all remaining elements of x are regarded as unmatched. In addition, an empty string can match nothing, not even an exact match to an empty string. This is the appropriate behaviour for partial matching of character indices, for example.

If duplicates.ok is FALSE, values of table once matched are excluded from the search for subsequent matches. This behaviour is equivalent to the algorithm for argument matching, except for the consideration of empty strings (which in argument matching are matched after exact and partial matching to any remaining arguments).

charmatch is similar to pmatch with duplicates.ok true, the differences being that it differentiates between no match and an ambiguous partial match, it does match empty strings, and it does not allow multiple exact matches.

NA values are treated as if they were the string constant "NA".

Value

An integer vector (possibly including NA if nomatch = NA) of the same length as x, giving the indices of the elements in table which matched, or nomatch.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

See Also

`match`, `charmatch` and `match.arg`, `match.fun`, `match.call`, for function argument matching etc., `grep` etc for more general (regexp) matching of strings.

Examples

```
pmatch("", "")                           # returns NA
pmatch("m",   c("mean", "median", "mode")) # returns NA
pmatch("med", c("mean", "median", "mode")) # returns 2

pmatch(c("", "ab", "ab"), c("abc", "ab"), dup = FALSE)
pmatch(c("", "ab", "ab"), c("abc", "ab"), dup = TRUE)
## compare
charmatch(c("", "ab", "ab"), c("abc", "ab"))
```

`polyroot` *Find Zeros of a Real or Complex Polynomial*

Description

Find zeros of a real or complex polynomial.

Usage

```
polyroot(z)
```

Arguments

`z`	the vector of polynomial coefficients in increasing order.

Details

A polynomial of degree $n-1$,

$$p(x) = z_1 + z_2 x + \cdots + z_n x^{n-1}$$

is given by its coefficient vector `z[1:n]`. `polyroot` returns the $n-1$ complex zeros of $p(x)$ using the Jenkins-Traub algorithm.

If the coefficient vector `z` has zeroes for the highest powers, these are discarded.

There is no maximum degree, but numerical stability may be an issue for all but low-degree polynomials.

Value

A complex vector of length $n-1$, where n is the position of the largest non-zero element of `z`.

Source

C translation by Ross Ihaka of Fortran code in the reference, with modifications by the R Core Team.

References

Jenkins and Traub (1972) TOMS Algorithm 419. *Comm. ACM*, **15**, 97–99.

See Also

`uniroot` for numerical root finding of arbitrary functions; `complex` and the `zero` example in the demos directory.

Examples

```
polyroot(c(1, 2, 1))
round(polyroot(choose(8, 0:8)), 11) # guess what!
for (n1 in 1:4) print(polyroot(1:n1), digits = 4)
polyroot(c(1, 2, 1, 0, 0)) # same as the first
```

`pos.to.env` *Convert Positions in the Search Path to Environments*

Description

Returns the environment at a specified position in the search path.

Usage

```
pos.to.env(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	an integer between `1` and `length(search())`, the length of the search path, or `-1`.

Details

Several functions for manipulating objects in environments (such as `get` and `ls`) allow specifying environments via corresponding positions in the search path. `pos.to.env` is a convenience function for programmers which converts these positions to corresponding environments; users will typically have no need for it. It is primitive.

`-1` is interpreted as the environment the function is called from.

This is a primitive function.

Examples

```
pos.to.env(1) # R_GlobalEnv
# the next returns the base environment
pos.to.env(length(search()))
```

`pretty` *Pretty Breakpoints*

Description

Compute a sequence of about `n+1` equally spaced 'round' values which cover the range of the values in `x`. The values are chosen so that they are 1, 2 or 5 times a power of 10.

Usage

```
pretty(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
pretty(x, n = 5, min.n = n %/% 3,  shrink.sml = 0.75,
       high.u.bias = 1.5, u5.bias = .5 + 1.5*high.u.bias,
       eps.correct = 0, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object coercible to numeric by `as.numeric`.
`n`	integer giving the *desired* number of intervals. Non-integer values are rounded down.
`min.n`	nonnegative integer giving the *minimal* number of intervals. If `min.n == 0`, `pretty(.)` may return a single value.
`shrink.sml`	positive numeric by a which a default scale is shrunk in the case when `range(x)` is very small (usually 0).
`high.u.bias`	non-negative numeric, typically > 1. The interval unit is determined as {1,2,5,10} times `b`, a power of 10. Larger `high.u.bias` values favor larger units.
`u5.bias`	non-negative numeric multiplier favoring factor 5 over 2. Default and 'optimal': `u5.bias = .5 + 1.5*high.u.bias`.
`eps.correct`	integer code, one of {0,1,2}. If non-0, an *epsilon correction* is made at the boundaries such that the result boundaries will be outside `range(x)`; in the *small* case, the correction is only done if `eps.correct >= 2`.
`...`	further arguments for methods.

Details

`pretty` ignores non-finite values in `x`.

Let `d <- max(x) - min(x)` ≥ 0. If `d` is not (very close) to 0, we let `c <- d/n`, otherwise more or less `c <- max(abs(range(x)))*shrink.sml / min.n`. Then, the *10 base* `b` is $10^{\lfloor \log_{10}(c) \rfloor}$ such that $b \leq c < 10b$.

Now determine the basic *unit* u as one of $\{1, 2, 5, 10\}b$, depending on $c/b \in [1, 10)$ and the two '*bias*' coefficients, $h =$`high.u.bias` and $f =$`u5.bias`.

.....

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`axTicks` for the computation of pretty axis tick locations in plots, particularly on the log scale.

Examples

```
pretty(1:15)          # 0  2  4  6  8 10 12 14 16
pretty(1:15, h = 2)   # 0  5 10 15
pretty(1:15, n = 4)   # 0  5 10 15
pretty(1:15 * 2)      # 0  5 10 15 20 25 30
pretty(1:20)          # 0  5 10 15 20
pretty(1:20, n = 2)   # 0 10 20
pretty(1:20, n = 10)  # 0  2  4 ... 20

for(k in 5:11) {
  cat("k=", k, ": "); print(diff(range(pretty(100 + c(0, pi*10^-k)))))}

##-- more bizarre, when  min(x) == max(x):
pretty(pi)

add.names <- function(v) { names(v) <- paste(v); v}
utils::str(lapply(add.names(-10:20), pretty))
utils::str(lapply(add.names(0:20),   pretty, min.n = 0))
sapply(    add.names(0:20),   pretty, min.n = 4)

pretty(1.234e100)
pretty(1001.1001)
pretty(1001.1001, shrink = 0.2)
for(k in -7:3)
  cat("shrink=", formatC(2^k, width = 9),":",
      formatC(pretty(1001.1001, shrink.sml = 2^k), width = 6),"\n")
```

Primitive *Look Up a Primitive Function*

Description

`.Primitive` looks up by name a 'primitive' (internally implemented) function.

Usage

```
.Primitive(name)
```

Arguments

`name`	name of the function.

Details

The advantage of `.Primitive` over `.Internal` functions is the potential efficiency of argument passing, and that positional matching can be used where desirable, e.g. in `switch`. For more details, see the 'R Internals Manual'.

All primitive functions are in the base namespace.

This function is almost never used: `name` or, more carefully, `get(name, envir = baseenv())` work equally well and do not depend on knowing which functions are primitive (which does change as evolves).

See Also

`.Internal`.

Examples

```
mysqrt <- .Primitive("sqrt")
c
.Internal # this one *must* be primitive!
if # need backticks
```

---

print *Print Values*

Description

`print` prints its argument and returns it *invisibly* (via `invisible(x)`). It is a generic function which means that new printing methods can be easily added for new `class`es.

Usage

```
print(x, ...)

## S3 method for class factor
print(x, quote = FALSE, max.levels = NULL,
      width = getOption("width"), ...)

## S3 method for class table
print(x, digits = getOption("digits"), quote = FALSE,
      na.print = "", zero.print = "0", justify = "none", ...)

## S3 method for class function
print(x, useSource = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object used to select a method.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
`quote`	logical, indicating whether or not strings should be printed with surrounding quotes.

max.levels	integer, indicating how many levels should be printed for a factor; if 0, no extra "Levels" line will be printed. The default, NULL, entails choosing max.levels such that the levels print on one line of width width.
width	only used when max.levels is NULL, see above.
digits	minimal number of *significant* digits, see print.default.
na.print	character string (or NULL) indicating NA values in printed output, see print.default.
zero.print	character specifying how zeros (0) should be printed; for sparse tables, using "." can produce more readable results, similar to printing sparse matrices in **Matrix**.
justify	character indicating if strings should left- or right-justified or left alone, passed to format.
useSource	logical indicating if internally stored source should be used for printing when present, e.g., if options(keep.source = TRUE) has been in use.

Details

The default method, print.default has its own help page. Use methods("print") to get all the methods for the print generic.

print.factor allows some customization and is used for printing ordered factors as well.

print.table for printing tables allows other customization. As of R 3.0.0, it only prints a description in case of a table with 0-extents (this can happen if a classifier has no valid data).

See noquote as an example of a class whose main purpose is a specific print method.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

The default method print.default, and help for the methods above; further options, noquote.

For more customizable (but cumbersome) printing, see cat, format or also write. For a simple prototypical print method, see .print.via.format in package **tools**.

Examples

```
require(stats)

ts(1:20)  #-- print is the "Default function" --> print.ts(.) is called
for(i in 1:3) print(1:i)

## Printing of factors
attenu$station ## 117 levels -> max.levels depending on width

## ordered factors: levels  "l1 < l2 < .."
esoph$agegp[1:12]
esoph$alcgp[1:12]

## Printing of sparse (contingency) tables
set.seed(521)
t1 <- round(abs(rt(200, df = 1.8)))
t2 <- round(abs(rt(200, df = 1.4)))
```

```
table(t1, t2) # simple
print(table(t1, t2), zero.print = ".") # nicer to read

## same for non-integer "table":
T <- table(t2,t1)
T <- T * (1+round(rlnorm(length(T)))/4)
print(T, zero.print = ".") # quite nicer,
print.table(T[,2:8] * 1e9, digits=3, zero.print = ".")
## still slightly inferior to  Matrix::Matrix(T)  for larger T

## Corner cases with empty extents:
table(1, NA) # < table of extent 1 x 0 >
```

`print.data.frame` *Printing Data Frames*

Description

Print a data frame.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class data.frame
print(x, ..., digits = NULL,
      quote = FALSE, right = TRUE, row.names = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	object of class `data.frame`.
`...`	optional arguments to `print` or `plot` methods.
`digits`	the minimum number of significant digits to be used: see `print.default`.
`quote`	logical, indicating whether or not entries should be printed with surrounding quotes.
`right`	logical, indicating whether or not strings should be right-aligned. The default is right-alignment.
`row.names`	logical (or character vector), indicating whether (or what) row names should be printed.

Details

This calls `format` which formats the data frame column-by-column, then converts to a character matrix and dispatches to the `print` method for matrices.

When `quote = TRUE` only the entries are quoted not the row names nor the column names.

See Also

`data.frame`.

Examples

```
(dd <- data.frame(x = 1:8, f = gl(2,4), ch = I(letters[1:8])))
     # print() with defaults
print(dd, quote = TRUE, row.names = FALSE)
     # suppresses row.names and quotes all entries
```

`print.default` *Default Printing*

Description

`print.default` is the *default* method of the generic `print` function which prints its argument.

Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
print(x, digits = NULL, quote = TRUE,
      na.print = NULL, print.gap = NULL, right = FALSE,
      max = NULL, useSource = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	the object to be printed.
`digits`	a non-null value for `digits` specifies the minimum number of significant digits to be printed in values. The default, `NULL`, uses `getOption("digits")`. (For the interpretation for complex numbers see `signif`.) Non-integer values will be rounded down, and only values greater than or equal to 1 and no greater than 22 are accepted.
`quote`	logical, indicating whether or not strings (`character`s) should be printed with surrounding quotes.
`na.print`	a character string which is used to indicate `NA` values in printed output, or `NULL` (see 'Details').
`print.gap`	a non-negative integer ≤ 1024, or `NULL` (meaning 1), giving the spacing between adjacent columns in printed vectors, matrices and arrays.
`right`	logical, indicating whether or not strings should be right aligned. The default is left alignment.
`max`	a non-null value for `max` specifies the approximate maximum number of entries to be printed. The default, `NULL`, uses `getOption("max.print")`; see that help page for more details.
`useSource`	logical, indicating whether to use source references or copies rather than deparsing language objects. The default is to use the original source if it is available.
`...`	further arguments to be passed to or from other methods. They are ignored in this function.

Details

The default for printing NAs is to print NA (without quotes) unless this is a character NA *and* quote = FALSE, when '<NA>' is printed.

The same number of decimal places is used throughout a vector. This means that digits specifies the minimum number of significant digits to be used, and that at least one entry will be encoded with that minimum number. However, if all the encoded elements then have trailing zeroes, the number of decimal places is reduced until at least one element has a non-zero final digit. Decimal points are only included if at least one decimal place is selected.

Attributes are printed respecting their class(es), using the values of digits to print.default, but using the default values (for the methods called) of the other arguments.

Option width controls the printing of vectors, matrices and arrays, and option deparse.cutoff controls the printing of language objects such as calls and formulae.

When the **methods** package is attached, print will call show for objects with formal classes if called with no optional arguments.

Large number of digits

Note that for large values of digits, currently for digits >= 16, the calculation of the number of significant digits will depend on the platform's internal (C library) implementation of 'sprintf()' functionality.

Single-byte locales

If a non-printable character is encountered during output, it is represented as one of the ANSI escape sequences ('\a', '\b', '\f', '\n', '\r', '\t', '\v', '\\' and '\0': see Quotes), or failing that as a 3-digit octal code: for example the UK currency pound sign in the C locale (if implemented correctly) is printed as '\243'. Which characters are non-printable depends on the locale. (Because some versions of Windows get this wrong, all bytes with the upper bit set are regarded as printable on Windows in a single-byte locale.)

Unicode and other multi-byte locales

In all locales, the characters in the ASCII range ('0x00' to '0x7f') are printed in the same way, as-is if printable, otherwise via ANSI escape sequences or 3-digit octal escapes as described for single-byte locales.

Multi-byte non-printing characters are printed as an escape sequence of the form '\uxxxx' or '\Uxxxxxxxx' (in hexadecimal). This is the internal code for the wide-character representation of the character. If this is not known to be Unicode code points, a warning is issued. The only known exceptions are certain Japanese ISO 2022 locales on commercial Unixes, which use a concatenation of the bytes: it is unlikely that compiles on such a system.

It is possible to have a character string in a character vector that is not valid in the current locale. If a byte is encountered that is not part of a valid character it is printed in hex in the form '\xab' and this is repeated until the start of a valid character. (This will rapidly recover from minor errors in UTF-8.)

See Also

The generic print, options. The "noquote" class and print method.

encodeString, which encodes a character vector the way it would be printed.

Examples

```
pi
print(pi, digits = 16)
LETTERS[1:16]
print(LETTERS, quote = FALSE)

M <- cbind(I = 1, matrix(1:10000, ncol = 10,
                         dimnames = list(NULL, LETTERS[1:10])))
utils::head(M)        # makes more sense than
print(M, max = 1000)  # prints 90 rows and a message about omitting 910
```

`prmatrix` *Print Matrices, Old-style*

Description

An earlier method for printing matrices, provided for S compatibility.

Usage

```
prmatrix(x, rowlab =, collab =,
         quote = TRUE, right = FALSE, na.print = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric or character matrix.
`rowlab, collab`	(optional) character vectors giving row or column names respectively. By default, these are taken from `dimnames(x)`.
`quote`	logical; if `TRUE` and `x` is of mode `"character"`, *quotes* (‘`"`’) are used.
`right`	if `TRUE` and `x` is of mode `"character"`, the output columns are *right*-justified.
`na.print`	how `NA`s are printed. If this is non-null, its value is used to represent `NA`.
`...`	arguments for `print` methods.

Details

`prmatrix` is an earlier form of `print.matrix`, and is very similar to the S function of the same name.

Value

Invisibly returns its argument, `x`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`print.default`, and other `print` methods.

Examples

```
prmatrix(m6 <- diag(6), rowlab = rep("", 6), collab = rep("", 6))

chm <- matrix(scan(system.file("help", "AnIndex", package = "splines"),
                   what = ""), , 2, byrow = TRUE)
chm  # uses print.matrix()
prmatrix(chm, collab = paste("Column", 1:3), right = TRUE, quote = FALSE)
```

`proc.time` *Running Time of R*

Description

`proc.time` determines how much real and CPU time (in seconds) the currently running process has already taken.

Usage

```
proc.time()
```

Details

`proc.time` returns five elements for backwards compatibility, but its `print` method prints a named vector of length 3. The first two entries are the total user and system CPU times of the current process and any child processes on which it has waited, and the third entry is the 'real' elapsed time since the process was started.

Value

An object of class `"proc_time"` which is a numeric vector of length 5, containing the user, system, and total elapsed times for the currently running process, and the cumulative sum of user and system times of any child processes spawned by it on which it has waited. (The `print` method uses the `summary` method to combine the child times with those of the main process.)

The definition of 'user' and 'system' times is from your OS. Typically it is something like

The 'user time' is the CPU time charged for the execution of user instructions of the calling process. The 'system time' is the CPU time charged for execution by the system on behalf of the calling process.

Times of child processes are not available on Windows and will always be given as `NA`.

The resolution of the times will be system-specific and on Unix-alikes times are rounded down to milliseconds. On modern systems they will be that accurate, but on older systems they might be accurate to 1/100 or 1/60 sec. They are typically available to 10ms on Windows.

This is a primitive function.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

system.time for timing an expression, gc.time for how much of the time was spent in garbage collection.

Examples

```
## a way to time an R expression: system.time is preferred
ptm <- proc.time()
for (i in 1:50) mad(stats::runif(500))
proc.time() - ptm
```

---

prod *Product of Vector Elements*

Description

prod returns the product of all the values present in its arguments.

Usage

```
prod(..., na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	numeric or complex or logical vectors.
na.rm	logical. Should missing values be removed?

Details

If na.rm is FALSE an NA value in any of the arguments will cause a value of NA to be returned, otherwise NA values are ignored.

This is a generic function: methods can be defined for it directly or via the Summary group generic. For this to work properly, the arguments ... should be unnamed, and dispatch is on the first argument.

Logical true values are regarded as one, false values as zero. For historical reasons, NULL is accepted and treated as if it were numeric(0).

Value

The product, a numeric (of type "double") or complex vector of length one. **NB:** the product of an empty set is one, by definition.

S4 methods

This is part of the S4 Summary group generic. Methods for it must use the signature x, ..., na.rm.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

sum, cumprod, cumsum.

'plotmath' for the use of prod in plot annotation.

Examples

```
print(prod(1:7)) == print(gamma(8))
```

---

prop.table *Express Table Entries as Fraction of Marginal Table*

Description

This is really sweep(x, margin, margin.table(x, margin), "/") for newbies, except that if margin has length zero, then one gets x/sum(x).

Usage

```
prop.table(x, margin = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	table
margin	index, or vector of indices to generate margin for

Value

Table like x expressed relative to margin

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

See Also

margin.table

Examples

```
m <- matrix(1:4, 2)
m
prop.table(m, 1)
```

pushBack *Push Text Back on to a Connection*

Description

Functions to push back text lines onto a connection, and to enquire how many lines are currently pushed back.

Usage

```
pushBack(data, connection, newLine = TRUE,
         encoding = c("", "bytes", "UTF-8"))
pushBackLength(connection)
clearPushBack(connection)
```

Arguments

data	a character vector.
connection	A connection.
newLine	logical. If true, a newline is appended to each string pushed back.
encoding	character. See details.

Details

Several character strings can be pushed back on one or more occasions. The occasions form a stack, so the first line to be retrieved will be the first string from the last call to pushBack. Lines which are pushed back are read prior to the normal input from the connection, by the normal text-reading functions such as readLines and scan.

Pushback is only allowed for readable connections in text mode.

Not all uses of connections respect pushbacks, in particular the input connection is still wired directly, so for example parsing commands from the console and scan("") ignore pushbacks on stdin.

When character strings with a marked encoding (see Encoding) are pushed back they are converted to the current encoding if encoding = "". This may involve representing characters as '<U+xxxx>' if they cannot be converted. They will be converted to UTF-8 if encoding = "UTF-8" or left as-is if encoding = "bytes".

Value

pushBack and clearPushBack() return nothing, invisibly.

pushBackLength returns the number of lines currently pushed back.

See Also

connections, readLines.

Examples

```
zz <- textConnection(LETTERS)
readLines(zz, 2)
pushBack(c("aa", "bb"), zz)
pushBackLength(zz)
readLines(zz, 1)
pushBackLength(zz)
readLines(zz, 1)
readLines(zz, 1)
close(zz)
```

---

qr *The QR Decomposition of a Matrix*

Description

qr computes the QR decomposition of a matrix.

Usage

```
qr(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
qr(x, tol = 1e-07 , LAPACK = FALSE, ...)

qr.coef(qr, y)
qr.qy(qr, y)
qr.qty(qr, y)
qr.resid(qr, y)
qr.fitted(qr, y, k = qr$rank)
qr.solve(a, b, tol = 1e-7)
## S3 method for class qr
solve(a, b, ...)

is.qr(x)
as.qr(x)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric or complex matrix whose QR decomposition is to be computed. Logical matrices are coerced to numeric.
tol	the tolerance for detecting linear dependencies in the columns of x. Only used if LAPACK is false and x is real.
qr	a QR decomposition of the type computed by qr.
y, b	a vector or matrix of right-hand sides of equations.
a	a QR decomposition or (qr.solve only) a rectangular matrix.
k	effective rank.
LAPACK	logical. For real x, if true use LAPACK otherwise use LINPACK (the default).
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods

Details

The QR decomposition plays an important role in many statistical techniques. In particular it can be used to solve the equation $\boldsymbol{Ax} = \boldsymbol{b}$ for given matrix $\boldsymbol{A}$, and vector $\boldsymbol{b}$. It is useful for computing regression coefficients and in applying the Newton-Raphson algorithm.

The functions `qr.coef`, `qr.resid`, and `qr.fitted` return the coefficients, residuals and fitted values obtained when fitting `y` to the matrix with QR decomposition `qr`. (If pivoting is used, some of the coefficients will be `NA`.) `qr.qy` and `qr.qty` return `Q %*% y` and `t(Q) %*% y`, where `Q` is the (complete) $\boldsymbol{Q}$ matrix.

All the above functions keep `dimnames` (and `names`) of `x` and `y` if there are any.

`solve.qr` is the method for `solve` for `qr` objects. `qr.solve` solves systems of equations via the QR decomposition: if `a` is a QR decomposition it is the same as `solve.qr`, but if `a` is a rectangular matrix the QR decomposition is computed first. Either will handle over- and under-determined systems, providing a least-squares fit if appropriate.

`is.qr` returns `TRUE` if `x` is a `list` with components named `qr`, `rank` and `qraux` and `FALSE` otherwise.

It is not possible to coerce objects to mode `"qr"`. Objects either are QR decompositions or they are not.

The LINPACK interface is restricted to matrices `x` with less than 2^{31} elements.

`qr.fitted` and `qr.resid` only support the LINPACK interface.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code: these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code.

Value

The QR decomposition of the matrix as computed by LINPACK or LAPACK. The components in the returned value correspond directly to the values returned by DQRDC/DGEQP3/ZGEQP3.

`qr`	a matrix with the same dimensions as `x`. The upper triangle contains the $\boldsymbol{R}$ of the decomposition and the lower triangle contains information on the $\boldsymbol{Q}$ of the decomposition (stored in compact form). Note that the storage used by DQRDC and DGEQP3 differs.
`qraux`	a vector of length `ncol(x)` which contains additional information on $\boldsymbol{Q}$.
`rank`	the rank of `x` as computed by the decomposition: always full rank in the LAPACK case.
`pivot`	information on the pivoting strategy used during the decomposition.

Non-complex QR objects computed by LAPACK have the attribute `"useLAPACK"` with value `TRUE`.

Note

To compute the determinant of a matrix (do you *really* need it?), the QR decomposition is much more efficient than using Eigen values (`eigen`). See `det`.

Using LAPACK (including in the complex case) uses column pivoting and does not attempt to detect rank-deficient matrices.

Source

For `qr`, the LINPACK routine `DQRDC` and the LAPACK routines `DGEQP3` and `ZGEQP3`. Further LINPACK and LAPACK routines are used for `qr.coef`, `qr.qy` and `qr.aty`.

LAPACK and LINPACK are from `http://www.netlib.org/lapack` and `http://www.netlib.org/linpack` and their guides are listed in the references.

References

Anderson. E. and ten others (1999) *LAPACK Users' Guide*. Third Edition. SIAM.
Available on-line at http://www.netlib.org/lapack/lug/lapack_lug.html.

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Dongarra, J. J., Bunch, J. R., Moler, C. B. and Stewart, G. W. (1978) *LINPACK Users Guide*. Philadelphia: SIAM Publications.

See Also

qr.Q, qr.R, qr.X for reconstruction of the matrices. lm.fit, lsfit, eigen, svd.

det (using qr) to compute the determinant of a matrix.

Examples

```
hilbert <- function(n) { i <- 1:n; 1 / outer(i - 1, i, "+") }
h9 <- hilbert(9); h9
qr(h9)$rank           #--> only 7
qrh9 <- qr(h9, tol = 1e-10)
qrh9$rank             #--> 9
##-- Solve linear equation system  H %*% x = y :
y <- 1:9/10
x <- qr.solve(h9, y, tol = 1e-10) # or equivalently :
x <- qr.coef(qrh9, y) #-- is == but much better than
                      #-- solve(h9) %*% y
h9 %*% x              # = y


## overdetermined system
A <- matrix(runif(12), 4)
b <- 1:4
qr.solve(A, b) # or solve(qr(A), b)
solve(qr(A, LAPACK = TRUE), b)
# this is a least-squares solution, cf. lm(b ~ 0 + A)

## underdetermined system
A <- matrix(runif(12), 3)
b <- 1:3
qr.solve(A, b)
solve(qr(A, LAPACK = TRUE), b)
# solutions will have one zero, not necessarily the same one
```

QR.Auxiliaries *Reconstruct the Q, R, or X Matrices from a QR Object*

Description

Returns the original matrix from which the object was constructed or the components of the decomposition.

Usage

```
qr.X(qr, complete = FALSE, ncol =)
qr.Q(qr, complete = FALSE, Dvec =)
qr.R(qr, complete = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

qr	object representing a QR decomposition. This will typically have come from a previous call to qr or lsfit.
complete	logical expression of length 1. Indicates whether an arbitrary orthogonal completion of the Q or X matrices is to be made, or whether the R matrix is to be completed by binding zero-value rows beneath the square upper triangle.
ncol	integer in the range 1:nrow(qr$qr). The number of columns to be in the reconstructed X. The default when complete is FALSE is the first min(ncol(X), nrow(X)) columns of the original X from which the qr object was constructed. The default when complete is TRUE is a square matrix with the original X in the first ncol(X) columns and an arbitrary orthogonal completion (unitary completion in the complex case) in the remaining columns.
Dvec	vector (not matrix) of diagonal values. Each column of the returned Q will be multiplied by the corresponding diagonal value. Defaults to all 1s.
...	potentially further arguments, passed potentially to non-default methods.

Value

qr.X returns X, the original matrix from which the qr object was constructed, provided ncol(X) <= nrow(X). If complete is TRUE or the argument ncol is greater than ncol(X), additional columns from an arbitrary orthogonal (unitary) completion of X are returned.

qr.Q returns part or all of **Q**, the order-nrow(X) orthogonal (unitary) transformation represented by qr. If complete is TRUE, **Q** has nrow(X) columns. If complete is FALSE, **Q** has ncol(X) columns. When Dvec is specified, each column of **Q** is multiplied by the corresponding value in Dvec.

Note that qr.Q(qr, *) is a special case of qr.qy(qr, y) (with a "diagonal" y), and qr.X(qr, *) is basically qr.qy(qr, R) (apart from pivoting and dimnames setting).

qr.R returns **R**. This may be pivoted, e.g., if a <- qr(x) then x[, a$pivot] = **QR**. The number of rows of **R** is either nrow(X) or ncol(X) (and may depend on whether complete is TRUE or FALSE).

See Also

qr, qr.qy.

Examples

```
p <- ncol(x <- LifeCycleSavings[, -1]) # not the sr
qrstr <- qr(x)   # dim(x) == c(n,p)
qrstr $ rank # = 4 = p
Q <- qr.Q(qrstr) # dim(Q) == dim(x)
R <- qr.R(qrstr) # dim(R) == ncol(x)
X <- qr.X(qrstr) # X == x
range(X - as.matrix(x))  # ~ < 6e-12
## X == Q %*% R if there has been no pivoting, as here:
all.equal(unname(X),
          unname(Q %*% R))
```

```
# example of pivoting
x <- cbind(int = 1,
           b1 = rep(1:0, each = 3), b2 = rep(0:1, each = 3),
           c1 = rep(c(1,0,0), 2), c2 = rep(c(0,1,0), 2), c3 = rep(c(0,0,1),2))
x # is singular, columns "b2" and "c3" are "extra"
a <- qr(x)
zapsmall(qr.R(a)) # columns are int b1 c1 c2 b2 c3
a$pivot
pivI <- sort.list(a$pivot) # the inverse permutation
all.equal (x,            qr.Q(a) %*% qr.R(a)) # no, no
stopifnot(
 all.equal(x[, a$pivot], qr.Q(a) %*% qr.R(a)),          # TRUE
 all.equal(x           , qr.Q(a) %*% qr.R(a)[, pivI]))  # TRUE too!
```

`quit` *Terminate an R Session*

Description

The function `quit` or its alias `q` terminate the current session.

Usage

```
quit(save = "default", status = 0, runLast = TRUE)
   q(save = "default", status = 0, runLast = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`save`	a character string indicating whether the environment (workspace) should be saved, one of `"no"`, `"yes"`, `"ask"` or `"default"`.
`status`	the (numerical) error status to be returned to the operating system, where relevant. Conventionally `0` indicates successful completion.
`runLast`	should `.Last()` be executed?

Details

`save` must be one of `"no"`, `"yes"`, `"ask"` or `"default"`. In the first case the workspace is not saved, in the second it is saved and in the third the user is prompted and can also decide *not* to quit. The default is to ask in interactive use but may be overridden by command-line arguments (which must be supplied in non-interactive use).

Immediately *before* normal termination, `.Last()` is executed if the function `.Last` exists and `runLast` is true. If in interactive use there are errors in the `.Last` function, control will be returned to the command prompt, so do test the function thoroughly. There is a system analogue, `.Last.sys()`, which is run after `.Last()` if `runLast` is true.

Exactly what happens at termination of an session depends on the platform and GUI interface in use. A typical sequence is to run `.Last()` and `.Last.sys()` (unless `runLast` is false), to save the workspace if requested (and in most cases also to save the session history: see `savehistory`), then run any finalizers (see `reg.finalizer`) that have been set to be run on exit, close all open graphics devices, remove the session temporary directory and print any remaining warnings (e.g., from `.Last()` and device closure).

Some error status values are used by itself. The default error handler for non-interactive use effectively calls `q("no", 1, FALSE)` and returns error status 1. Error status 2 is used for 'suicide', that is a catastrophic failure, and other small numbers are used by specific ports for initialization failures. It is recommended that users choose statuses of 10 or more.

Valid values of `status` are system-dependent, but `0:255` are normally valid. (Many OSes will report the last byte of the value, that is report the value modulo 256. But not all.)

Warning

The value of `.Last` is for the end user to control: as it can be replaced later in the session, it cannot safely be used programmatically, e.g. by a package. The other way to set code to be run at the end of the session is to use a *finalizer*: see `reg.finalizer`.

Note

The `R.app` GUI on OS X has its own version of these functions with slightly different behaviour for the `save` argument (the GUI's 'Startup' preferences for this action are taken into account).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`.First` for setting things on startup.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## Unix-flavour example
.Last <- function() {
  graphics.off() # close devices before printing
  cat("Now sending PDF graphics to the printer:\n")
  system("lpr Rplots.pdf")
  cat("bye bye...\n")
}
quit("yes")
## End(Not run)
```

`Quotes` *Quotes*

Description

Descriptions of the various uses of quoting in .

Details

Three types of quotes are part of the syntax of : single and double quotation marks and the backtick (or back quote, ‘’). In addition, backslash is used to escape the following character inside character constants.

Character constants

Single and double quotes delimit character constants. They can be used interchangeably but double quotes are preferred (and character constants are printed using double quotes), so single quotes are normally only used to delimit character constants containing double quotes.

Backslash is used to start an escape sequence inside character constants. Escaping a character not in the following table is an error.

Single quotes need to be escaped by backslash in single-quoted strings, and double quotes in double-quoted strings.

'\n'	newline
'\r'	carriage return
'\t'	tab
'\b'	backspace
'\a'	alert (bell)
'\f'	form feed
'\v'	vertical tab
'\\'	backslash '\'
'\''	ASCII apostrophe '''
'\"'	ASCII quotation mark '"'
'\`'	ASCII grave accent (backtick) '`'
'\nnn'	character with given octal code (1, 2 or 3 digits)
'\xnn'	character with given hex code (1 or 2 hex digits)
'\unnnn'	Unicode character with given code (1–4 hex digits)
'\Unnnnnnnn'	Unicode character with given code (1–8 hex digits)

Alternative forms for the last two are '`\u{nnnn}`' and '`\U{nnnnnnnn}`'. All except the Unicode escape sequences are also supported when reading character strings by `scan` and `read.table` if `allowEscapes = TRUE`. Unicode escapes can be used to enter Unicode characters not in the current locale's charset (when the string will be stored internally in UTF-8).

The parser does not allow the use of both octal/hex and Unicode escapes in a single string.

These forms will also be used by `print.default` when outputting non-printable characters (including backslash).

Embedded nuls are not allowed in character strings, so using escapes (such as '`\0`') for a nul will result in the string being truncated at that point (usually with a warning).

Names and Identifiers

Identifiers consist of a sequence of letters, digits, the period (`.`) and the underscore. They must not start with a digit nor underscore, nor with a period followed by a digit. Reserved words are not valid identifiers.

The definition of a *letter* depends on the current locale, but only ASCII digits are considered to be digits.

Such identifiers are also known as *syntactic names* and may be used directly in code. Almost always, other names can be used provided they are quoted. The preferred quote is the backtick (``), and `deparse` will normally use it, but under many circumstances single or double quotes can be used (as a character constant will often be converted to a name). One place where backticks may be essential is to delimit variable names in formulae: see `formula`.

See Also

Syntax for other aspects of the syntax.

sQuote for quoting English text.

shQuote for quoting OS commands.

The 'R Language Definition' manual.

R.Version *Version Information*

Description

R.Version() provides detailed information about the version of running.

R.version is a variable (a list) holding this information (and version is a copy of it for S compatibility).

Usage

```
R.Version()
R.version
R.version.string
version
```

Details

This gives details of the OS under which was built, not the one under which it is currently running (for which see Sys.info).

Note that OS names might not be what you expect: for example OS X Mavericks 10.9.4 identifies itself as 'darwin13.3.0', Linux usually as 'linux-gnu' and Solaris 10 as 'solaris2.10'.

Value

R.Version returns a list with character-string components

platform	the platform for which was built. A triplet of the form CPU-VENDOR-OS, as determined by the configure script. E.g, "i686-unknown-linux-gnu" or "i386-pc-mingw32".
arch	the architecture (CPU) was built on/for.
os	the underlying operating system.
system	CPU and OS, separated by a comma.
status	the status of the version (e.g., "Alpha")
major	the major version number
minor	the minor version number, including the patchlevel
year	the year the version was released
month	the month the version was released
day	the day the version was released

`svn rev`	the Subversion revision number, which should be either `"unknown"` or a single number. (A range of numbers or a number with 'M' or 'S' appended indicates inconsistencies in the sources used to build this version of .)
`language`	always `"R"`.
`version.string`	a `character` string concatenating some of the info above, useful for plotting, etc.

`R.version` and `version` are lists of class `"simple.list"` which has a `print` method.

Note

Do *not* use `R.version$os` to test the platform the code is running on: use `.Platform$OS.type` instead. Slightly different versions of the OS may report different values of `R.version$os`, as may different versions of .

`R.version.string` is a copy of `R.version$version.string` for simplicity and backwards compatibility.

See Also

`sessionInfo` which provides additional information; `getRversion` typically used inside R code, `.Platform`, `Sys.info`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

R.version$os # to check how lucky you are ...
plot(0) # any plot
mtext(R.version.string, side = 1, line = 4, adj = 1) # a useful bottom-right note

## a good way to detect OS X:
if(grepl("^darwin", R.version$os)) message("running on OS X")
```

Random *Random Number Generation*

Description

`.Random.seed` is an integer vector, containing the random number generator (RNG) **state** for random number generation in . It can be saved and restored, but should not be altered by the user.

`RNGkind` is a more friendly interface to query or set the kind of RNG in use.

`RNGversion` can be used to set the random generators as they were in an earlier version (for reproducibility).

`set.seed` is the recommended way to specify seeds.

Usage

```
.Random.seed <- c(rng.kind, n1, n2, ...)

RNGkind(kind = NULL, normal.kind = NULL)
RNGversion(vstr)
set.seed(seed, kind = NULL, normal.kind = NULL)
```

Arguments

kind	character or NULL. If kind is a character string, set 's RNG to the kind desired. Use "default" to return to the default. See 'Details' for the interpretation of NULL.
normal.kind	character string or NULL. If it is a character string, set the method of Normal generation. Use "default" to return to the default. NULL makes no change.
seed	a single value, interpreted as an integer, or NULL (see 'Details').
vstr	a character string containing a version number, e.g., "1.6.2"
rng.kind	integer code in 0:k for the above kind.
n1, n2, ...	integers. See the details for how many are required (which depends on rng.kind).

Details

The currently available RNG kinds are given below. kind is partially matched to this list. The default is "Mersenne-Twister".

"Wichmann-Hill" The seed, .Random.seed[-1] == r[1:3] is an integer vector of length 3, where each r[i] is in 1:(p[i] - 1), where p is the length 3 vector of primes, p = (30269, 30307, 30323). The Wichmann–Hill generator has a cycle length of 6.9536×10^{12} (= prod(p-1)/4, see *Applied Statistics* (1984) **33**, 123 which corrects the original article).

"Marsaglia-Multicarry": A *multiply-with-carry* RNG is used, as recommended by George Marsaglia in his post to the mailing list 'sci.stat.math'. It has a period of more than 2^{60} and has passed all tests (according to Marsaglia). The seed is two integers (all values allowed).

"Super-Duper": Marsaglia's famous Super-Duper from the 70's. This is the original version which does *not* pass the MTUPLE test of the Diehard battery. It has a period of $\approx 4.6 \times 10^{18}$ for most initial seeds. The seed is two integers (all values allowed for the first seed: the second must be odd).

We use the implementation by Reeds *et al* (1982–84).

The two seeds are the Tausworthe and congruence long integers, respectively. A one-to-one mapping to S's .Random.seed[1:12] is possible but we will not publish one, not least as this generator is **not** exactly the same as that in recent versions of S-PLUS.

"Mersenne-Twister": From Matsumoto and Nishimura (1998). A twisted GFSR with period $2^{19937} - 1$ and equidistribution in 623 consecutive dimensions (over the whole period). The 'seed' is a 624-dimensional set of 32-bit integers plus a current position in that set.

"Knuth-TAOCP-2002": A 32-bit integer GFSR using lagged Fibonacci sequences with subtraction. That is, the recurrence used is

$$X_j = (X_{j-100} - X_{j-37}) \bmod 2^{30}$$

and the 'seed' is the set of the 100 last numbers (actually recorded as 101 numbers, the last being a cyclic shift of the buffer). The period is around 2^{129}.

"Knuth-TAOCP": An earlier version from Knuth (1997).

The 2002 version was not backwards compatible with the earlier version: the initialization of the GFSR from the seed was altered. did not allow you to choose consecutive seeds, the reported 'weakness', and already scrambled the seeds.

Initialization of this generator is done in interpreted code and so takes a short but noticeable time.

`"L'Ecuyer-CMRG"`: A 'combined multiple-recursive generator' from L'Ecuyer (1999), each element of which is a feedback multiplicative generator with three integer elements: thus the seed is a (signed) integer vector of length 6. The period is around 2^{191}.

The 6 elements of the seed are internally regarded as 32-bit unsigned integers. Neither the first three nor the last three should be all zero, and they are limited to less than `4294967087` and `4294944443` respectively.

This is not particularly interesting of itself, but provides the basis for the multiple streams used in package **parallel**.

`"user-supplied"`: Use a user-supplied generator. See `Random.user` for details.

`normal.kind` can be `"Kinderman-Ramage"`, `"Buggy Kinderman-Ramage"` (not for `set.seed`), `"Ahrens-Dieter"`, `"Box-Muller"`, `"Inversion"` (the default), or `"user-supplied"`. (For inversion, see the reference in `qnorm`.) The Kinderman-Ramage generator used in versions prior to 1.7.0 (now called `"Buggy"`) had several approximation errors and should only be used for reproduction of old results. The `"Box-Muller"` generator is stateful as pairs of normals are generated and returned sequentially. The state is reset whenever it is selected (even if it is the current normal generator) and when `kind` is changed.

`set.seed` uses a single integer argument to set as many seeds as are required. It is intended as a simple way to get quite different seeds by specifying small integer arguments, and also as a way to get valid seed sets for the more complicated methods (especially `"Mersenne-Twister"` and `"Knuth-TAOCP"`). There is no guarantee that different values of `seed` will seed the RNG differently, although any exceptions would be extremely rare. If called with `seed = NULL` it re-initializes (see 'Note') as if no seed had yet been set.

The use of `kind = NULL` or `normal.kind = NULL` in `RNGkind` or `set.seed` selects the currently-used generator (including that used in the previous session if the workspace has been restored): if no generator has been used it selects `"default"`.

Value

`.Random.seed` is an `integer` vector whose first element *codes* the kind of RNG and normal generator. The lowest two decimal digits are in `0:(k-1)` where `k` is the number of available RNGs. The hundreds represent the type of normal generator (starting at `0`).

In the underlying C, `.Random.seed[-1]` is `unsigned`; therefore in `.Random.seed[-1]` can be negative, due to the representation of an unsigned integer by a signed integer.

`RNGkind` returns a two-element character vector of the RNG and normal kinds selected *before* the call, invisibly if either argument is not `NULL`. A type starts a session as the default, and is selected either by a call to `RNGkind` or by setting `.Random.seed` in the workspace.

`RNGversion` returns the same information as `RNGkind` about the defaults in a specific version.

`set.seed` returns `NULL`, invisibly.

Note

Initially, there is no seed; a new one is created from the current time and the process ID when one is required. Hence different sessions will give different simulation results, by default. However, the seed might be restored from a previous session if a previously saved workspace is restored.

`.Random.seed` saves the seed set for the uniform random-number generator, at least for the system generators. It does not necessarily save the state of other generators, and in particular does not save the state of the Box–Muller normal generator. If you want to reproduce work later, call `set.seed` (preferably with explicit values for `kind` and `normal.kind`) rather than set `.Random.seed`.

The object `.Random.seed` is only looked for in the user's workspace.

Do not rely on randomness of low-order bits from RNGs. Most of the supplied uniform generators return 32-bit integer values that are converted to doubles, so they take at most 2^{32} distinct values and long runs will return duplicated values (Wichmann-Hill is the exception, and all give at least 30 varying bits.)

Author(s)

of RNGkind: Martin Maechler. Current implementation, B. D. Ripley

References

Ahrens, J. H. and Dieter, U. (1973) Extensions of Forsythe's method for random sampling from the normal distribution. *Mathematics of Computation* **27**, 927-937.

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (`set.seed`, storing in `.Random.seed`.)

Box, G. E. P. and Muller, M. E. (1958) A note on the generation of normal random deviates. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics* **29**, 610–611.

De Matteis, A. and Pagnutti, S. (1993) *Long-range Correlation Analysis of the Wichmann-Hill Random Number Generator*, Statist. Comput., **3**, 67–70.

Kinderman, A. J. and Ramage, J. G. (1976) Computer generation of normal random variables. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **71**, 893-896.

Knuth, D. E. (1997) *The Art of Computer Programming.* Volume 2, third edition.
Source code at http://www-cs-faculty.stanford.edu/~knuth/taocp.html.

Knuth, D. E. (2002) *The Art of Computer Programming.* Volume 2, third edition, ninth printing.

L'Ecuyer, P. (1999) Good parameters and implementations for combined multiple recursive random number generators. *Operations Research* **47**, 159–164.

Marsaglia, G. (1997) *A random number generator for C.* Discussion paper, posting on Usenet newsgroup `sci.stat.math` on September 29, 1997.

Marsaglia, G. and Zaman, A. (1994) Some portable very-long-period random number generators. *Computers in Physics*, **8**, 117–121.

Matsumoto, M. and Nishimura, T. (1998) Mersenne Twister: A 623-dimensionally equidistributed uniform pseudo-random number generator, *ACM Transactions on Modeling and Computer Simulation*, **8**, 3–30.
Source code formerly at `http://www.math.keio.ac.jp/~matumoto/emt.html`.
Now see http://www.math.sci.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/~m-mat/MT/VERSIONS/C-LANG/c-lang.html.

Reeds, J., Hubert, S. and Abrahams, M. (1982–4) C implementation of SuperDuper, University of California at Berkeley. (Personal communication from Jim Reeds to Ross Ihaka.)

Wichmann, B. A. and Hill, I. D. (1982) *Algorithm AS 183: An Efficient and Portable Pseudo-random Number Generator*, Applied Statistics, **31**, 188–190; Remarks: **34**, 198 and **35**, 89.

See Also

`sample` for random sampling with and without replacement.

Distributions for functions for random-variate generation from standard distributions.

Examples

```
require(stats)

## the default random seed is 626 integers, so only print a few
runif(1); .Random.seed[1:6]; runif(1); .Random.seed[1:6]
## If there is no seed, a "random" new one is created:
rm(.Random.seed); runif(1); .Random.seed[1:6]

ok <- RNGkind()
RNGkind("Wich")  # (partial string matching on kind)

## This shows how runif(.) works for Wichmann-Hill,
## using only R functions:

p.WH <- c(30269, 30307, 30323)
a.WH <- c(  171,   172,   170)
next.WHseed <- function(i.seed = .Random.seed[-1])
  { (a.WH * i.seed) %% p.WH }
my.runif1 <- function(i.seed = .Random.seed)
  { ns <- next.WHseed(i.seed[-1]); sum(ns / p.WH) %% 1 }
rs <- .Random.seed
(WHs <- next.WHseed(rs[-1]))
u <- runif(1)
stopifnot(
 next.WHseed(rs[-1]) == .Random.seed[-1],
 all.equal(u, my.runif1(rs))
)

## ----
.Random.seed
RNGkind("Super") # matches  "Super-Duper"
RNGkind()
.Random.seed # new, corresponding to  Super-Duper

## Reset:
RNGkind(ok[1])

## ----
sum(duplicated(runif(1e6))) # around 110 for default generator
## and we would expect about almost sure duplicates beyond about
qbirthday(1 - 1e-6, classes = 2e9) # 235,000
```

`Random.user` *User-supplied Random Number Generation*

Description

Function `RNGkind` allows user-coded uniform and normal random number generators to be supplied. The details are given here.

Details

A user-specified uniform RNG is called from entry points in dynamically-loaded compiled code. The user must supply the entry point `user_unif_rand`, which takes no arguments and returns a *pointer to* a double. The example below will show the general pattern.

Optionally, the user can supply the entry point `user_unif_init`, which is called with an `unsigned int` argument when `RNGkind` (or `set.seed`) is called, and is intended to be used to initialize the user's RNG code. The argument is intended to be used to set the 'seeds'; it is the `seed` argument to `set.seed` or an essentially random seed if `RNGkind` is called.

If only these functions are supplied, no information about the generator's state is recorded in `.Random.seed`. Optionally, functions `user_unif_nseed` and `user_unif_seedloc` can be supplied which are called with no arguments and should return pointers to the number of seeds and to an integer (specifically, '`Int32`') array of seeds. Calls to `GetRNGstate` and `PutRNGstate` will then copy this array to and from `.Random.seed`.

A user-specified normal RNG is specified by a single entry point `user_norm_rand`, which takes no arguments and returns a *pointer to* a double.

Warning

As with all compiled code, mis-specifying these functions can crash . Do include the '`R_ext/Random.h`' header file for type checking.

Examples

```
## Not run:
##  Marsaglias congruential PRNG
#include <R_ext/Random.h>

static Int32 seed;
static double res;
static int nseed = 1;

double * user_unif_rand()
{
    seed = 69069 * seed + 1;
    res = seed * 2.32830643653869e-10;
    return &res;
}

void  user_unif_init(Int32 seed_in) { seed = seed_in; }
int * user_unif_nseed() { return &nseed; }
int * user_unif_seedloc() { return (int *) &seed; }

/*  ratio-of-uniforms for normal  */
#include <math.h>
static double x;

double * user_norm_rand()
{
    double u, v, z;
    do {
        u = unif_rand();
        v = 0.857764 * (2. * unif_rand() - 1);
        x = v/u; z = 0.25 * x * x;
        if (z < 1. - u) break;
        if (z > 0.259/u + 0.35) continue;
    } while (z > -log(u));
    return &x;
}
```

```
## Use under Unix:
R CMD SHLIB urand.c
R
> dyn.load("urand.so")
> RNGkind("user")
> runif(10)
> .Random.seed
> RNGkind(, "user")
> rnorm(10)
> RNGkind()
[1] "user-supplied" "user-supplied"

## End(Not run)
```

`range` *Range of Values*

Description

`range` returns a vector containing the minimum and maximum of all the given arguments.

Usage

```
range(..., na.rm = FALSE)

## Default S3 method:
range(..., na.rm = FALSE, finite = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`...`	any `numeric` or character objects.
`na.rm`	logical, indicating if `NA`'s should be omitted.
`finite`	logical, indicating if all non-finite elements should be omitted.

Details

`range` is a generic function: methods can be defined for it directly or via the `Summary` group generic. For this to work properly, the arguments `...` should be unnamed, and dispatch is on the first argument.

If `na.rm` is `FALSE`, `NA` and `NaN` values in any of the arguments will cause `NA` values to be returned, otherwise `NA` values are ignored.

If `finite` is `TRUE`, the minimum and maximum of all finite values is computed, i.e., `finite = TRUE` *includes* `na.rm = TRUE`.

A special situation occurs when there is no (after omission of `NA`s) nonempty argument left, see `min`.

S4 methods

This is part of the S4 `Summary` group generic. Methods for it must use the signature `x, ..., na.rm`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`min`, `max`.

The `extendrange()` utility in package **grDevices**.

Examples

```
(r.x <- range(stats::rnorm(100)))
diff(r.x) # the SAMPLE range

x <- c(NA, 1:3, -1:1/0); x
range(x)
range(x, na.rm = TRUE)
range(x, finite = TRUE)
```

---

rank *Sample Ranks*

Description

Returns the sample ranks of the values in a vector. Ties (i.e., equal values) and missing values can be handled in several ways.

Usage

```
rank(x, na.last = TRUE,
     ties.method = c("average", "first", "random", "max", "min"))
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric, complex, character or logical vector.
`na.last`	for controlling the treatment of `NA`s. If `TRUE`, missing values in the data are put last; if `FALSE`, they are put first; if `NA`, they are removed; if `"keep"` they are kept with rank `NA`.
`ties.method`	a character string specifying how ties are treated, see 'Details'; can be abbreviated.

Details

If all components are different (and no `NA`s), the ranks are well defined, with values in `seq_len(x)`. With some values equal (called 'ties'), the argument `ties.method` determines the result at the corresponding indices. The `"first"` method results in a permutation with increasing values at each index set of ties. The `"random"` method puts these in random order whereas the default, `"average"`, replaces them by their mean, and `"max"` and `"min"` replaces them by their maximum and minimum respectively, the latter being the typical sports ranking.

`NA` values are never considered to be equal: for `na.last = TRUE` and `na.last = FALSE` they are given distinct ranks in the order in which they occur in `x`.

NB: rank is not itself generic but xtfrm is, and rank(xtfrm(x), ...) will have the desired result if there is a xtfrm method. Otherwise, rank will make use of ==, >, is.na and extraction methods for classed objects, possibly rather slowly.

Value

A numeric vector of the same length as x with names copied from x (unless na.last = NA, when missing values are removed). The vector is of integer type unless x is a long vector or ties.method = "average" when it is of double type (whether or not there are any ties).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

order and sort.

Examples

```
(r1 <- rank(x1 <- c(3, 1, 4, 15, 92)))
x2 <- c(3, 1, 4, 1, 5, 9, 2, 6, 5, 3, 5)
names(x2) <- letters[1:11]
(r2 <- rank(x2)) # ties are averaged

## rank() is "idempotent": rank(rank(x)) == rank(x) :
stopifnot(rank(r1) == r1, rank(r2) == r2)

## ranks without averaging
rank(x2, ties.method= "first")  # first occurrence wins
rank(x2, ties.method= "random") # ties broken at random
rank(x2, ties.method= "random") # and again

## keep ties ties, no average
(rma <- rank(x2, ties.method= "max"))  # as used classically
(rmi <- rank(x2, ties.method= "min"))  # as in Sports
stopifnot(rma + rmi == round(r2 + r2))
```

---

rapply *Recursively Apply a Function to a List*

Description

rapply is a recursive version of lapply.

Usage

```
rapply(object, f, classes = "ANY", deflt = NULL,
       how = c("unlist", "replace", "list"), ...)
```

Arguments

object	A list.
f	A function of a single argument.
classes	A character vector of class names, or "ANY" to match any class.
deflt	The default result (not used if how = "replace").
how	A character string matching the three possibilities given: see 'Details'.
...	additional arguments passed to the call to f.

Details

This function has two basic modes. If how = "replace", each element of the list which is not itself a list and has a class included in classes is replaced by the result of applying f to the element.

If the mode is how = "list" or how = "unlist", the list is copied, all non-list elements which have a class included in classes are replaced by the result of applying f to the element and all others are replaced by deflt. Finally, if how = "unlist", unlist(recursive = TRUE) is called on the result.

The semantics differ in detail from lapply: in particular the arguments are evaluated before calling the C code.

Value

If how = "unlist", a vector, otherwise a list of similar structure to object.

References

Chambers, J. A. (1998) *Programming with Data*. Springer.
(rapply is only described briefly there.)

See Also

lapply, dendrapply.

Examples

```
X <- list(list(a = pi, b = list(c = 1:1)), d = "a test")
rapply(X, function(x) x, how = "replace")
rapply(X, sqrt, classes = "numeric", how = "replace")
rapply(X, nchar, classes = "character",
       deflt = as.integer(NA), how = "list")
rapply(X, nchar, classes = "character",
       deflt = as.integer(NA), how = "unlist")
rapply(X, nchar, classes = "character", how = "unlist")
rapply(X, log, classes = "numeric", how = "replace", base = 2)
```

raw *Raw Vectors*

Description

Creates or tests for objects of type "raw".

Usage

```
raw(length = 0)
as.raw(x)
is.raw(x)
```

Arguments

length	desired length.
x	object to be coerced.

Details

The raw type is intended to hold raw bytes. It is possible to extract subsequences of bytes, and to replace elements (but only by elements of a raw vector). The relational operators (see Comparison, using the numerical order of the byte representation) work, as do the logical operators (see Logic) with a bitwise interpretation.

A raw vector is printed with each byte separately represented as a pair of hex digits. If you want to see a character representation (with escape sequences for non-printing characters) use rawToChar.

Coercion to raw treats the input values as representing small (decimal) integers, so the input is first coerced to integer, and then values which are outside the range [0 ... 255] or are NA are set to 0 (the nul byte).

as.raw and is.raw are primitive functions.

Value

raw creates a raw vector of the specified length. Each element of the vector is equal to 0. Raw vectors are used to store fixed-length sequences of bytes.

as.raw attempts to coerce its argument to be of raw type. The (elementwise) answer will be 0 unless the coercion succeeds (or if the original value successfully coerces to 0).

is.raw returns true if and only if typeof(x) == "raw".

See Also

charToRaw, rawShift, etc.

& for bitwise operations on raw vectors.

Examples

```
xx <- raw(2)
xx[1] <- as.raw(40)     # NB, not just 40.
xx[2] <- charToRaw("A")
xx

x <- "A test string"
(y <- charToRaw(x))
is.vector(y) # TRUE
rawToChar(y)
is.raw(x)
is.raw(y)

isASCII <-  function(txt) all(charToRaw(txt) <= as.raw(127))
isASCII(x)  # true
isASCII("\x9c25.63") # false (in Latin-1, this is an amount in UK pounds)
```

`rawConnection` *Raw Connections*

Description

Input and output raw connections.

Usage

```
rawConnection(object, open = "r")

rawConnectionValue(con)
```

Arguments

`object`	character or raw vector. A description of the connection. For an input this is an raw vector object, and for an output connection the name for the connection.
`open`	character. Any of the standard connection open modes.
`con`	An output raw connection.

Details

An input raw connection is opened and the raw vector is copied at the time the connection object is created, and `close` destroys the copy.

An output raw connection is opened and creates an raw vector internally. The raw vector can be retrieved *via* `rawConnectionValue`.

If a connection is open for both input and output the initial raw vector supplied is copied when the connections is open

Value

For `rawConnection`, a connection object of class `"rawConnection"` which inherits from class `"connection"`.

For `rawConnectionValue`, a raw vector.

Note

As output raw connections keep the internal raw vector up to date call-by-call, they are relatively expensive to use (although over-allocation is used), and it may be better to use an anonymous `file()` connection to collect output.

On (rare) platforms where `vsnprintf` does not return the needed length of output there is a 100,000 character limit on the length of line for output connections: longer lines will be truncated with a warning.

See Also

`connections`, `showConnections`.

Examples

```
zz <- rawConnection(raw(0), "r+") # start with empty raw vector
writeBin(LETTERS, zz)
seek(zz, 0)
readLines(zz) # raw vector has embedded nuls
seek(zz, 0)
writeBin(letters[1:3], zz)
rawConnectionValue(zz)
close(zz)
```

---

rawConversion *Convert to or from Raw Vectors*

Description

Conversion and manipulation of objects of type `"raw"`.

Usage

```
charToRaw(x)
rawToChar(x, multiple = FALSE)

rawShift(x, n)

rawToBits(x)
intToBits(x)
packBits(x, type = c("raw", "integer"))
```

Arguments

`x`	object to be converted or shifted.
`multiple`	logical: should the conversion be to a single character string or multiple individual characters?
`n`	the number of bits to shift. Positive numbers shift right and negative numbers shift left: allowed values are `-8 ... 8`.
`type`	the result type.

Details

packBits accepts raw, integer or logical inputs, the last two without any NAs.

Note that 'bytes' are not necessarily the same as characters, e.g. in UTF-8 locales.

Value

charToRaw converts a length-one character string to raw bytes. It does so without taking into account any declared encoding (see Encoding).

rawToChar converts raw bytes either to a single character string or a character vector of single bytes (with "" for 0). (Note that a single character string could contain embedded nuls; only trailing nulls are allowed and will be removed.) In either case it is possible to create a result which is invalid in a multibyte locale, e.g. one using UTF-8. Long vectors are allowed if multiple is true.

rawShift(x, n) shift the bits in x by n positions to the right, see the argument n, above.

rawToBits returns a raw vector of 8 times the length of a raw vector with entries 0 or 1. intToBits returns a raw vector of 32 times the length of an integer vector with entries 0 or 1. (Non-integral numeric values are truncated to integers.) In both cases the unpacking is least-significant bit first.

packBits packs its input (using only the lowest bit for raw or integer vectors) least-significant bit first to a raw or integer vector.

Examples

```
x <- "A test string"
(y <- charToRaw(x))
is.vector(y) # TRUE

rawToChar(y)
rawToChar(y, multiple = TRUE)
(xx <- c(y,  charToRaw("&"), charToRaw("more")))
rawToChar(xx)

rawShift(y, 1)
rawShift(y, -2)

rawToBits(y)

showBits <- function(r) stats::symnum(as.logical(rawToBits(r)))

z <- as.raw(5)
z ; showBits(z)
showBits(rawShift(z, 1)) # shift to right
showBits(rawShift(z, 2))
showBits(z)
showBits(rawShift(z, -1)) # shift to left
showBits(rawShift(z, -2)) # ..
showBits(rawShift(z, -3)) # shifted off entirely
```

RdUtils *Utilities for Processing Rd Files*

Description

Utilities for converting files in R documentation (Rd) format to other formats or create indices from them, and for converting documentation in other formats to Rd format.

Usage

```
R CMD Rdconv [options] file
R CMD Rd2pdf [options] files
```

Arguments

`file`	the path to a file to be processed.
`files`	a list of file names specifying the R documentation sources to use, by either giving the paths to the files, or the path to a directory with the sources of a package.
`options`	further options to control the processing, or for obtaining information about usage and version of the utility.

Details

`R CMD Rdconv` converts Rd format to plain text, HTML or LaTeX formats: it can also extract the examples.

`R CMD Rd2pdf` is the user-level program for producing PDF output from Rd sources. It will make use of the environment variables `R_PAPERSIZE` (set by `R CMD`, with a default set when was installed: values for `R_PAPERSIZE` are `a4`, `letter`, `legal` and `executive`) and `R_PDFVIEWER` (the PDF previewer). Also, `RD2PDF_INPUTENC` can be set to `inputenx` to make use of the LaTeX package of that name rather than `inputenc`: this might be needed for better support of the UTF-8 encoding.

Use `R CMD` *foo* `--help` to obtain usage information on utility *foo*.

See Also

The chapter "Processing Rd format" in the "Writing Extensions" manual.

---

readBin *Transfer Binary Data To and From Connections*

Description

Read binary data from a connection, or write binary data to a connection.

Usage

```
readBin(con, what, n = 1L, size = NA_integer_, signed = TRUE,
        endian = .Platform$endian)

writeBin(object, con, size = NA_integer_,
         endian = .Platform$endian, useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

con	A connection object or a character string naming a file or a raw vector.
what	Either an object whose mode will give the mode of the vector to be read, or a character vector of length one describing the mode: one of "numeric", "double", "integer", "int", "logical", "complex", "character", "raw".
n	integer. The (maximal) number of records to be read. You can use an over-estimate here, but not too large as storage is reserved for n items.
size	integer. The number of bytes per element in the byte stream. The default, NA_integer_, uses the natural size. Size changing is not supported for raw and complex vectors.
signed	logical. Only used for integers of sizes 1 and 2, when it determines if the quantity on file should be regarded as a signed or unsigned integer.
endian	The endian-ness ("big" or "little") of the target system for the file. Using "swap" will force swapping endian-ness.
object	An object to be written to the connection.
useBytes	See writeLines.

Details

These functions are intended to be used with binary-mode connections. If con is a character string, the functions call file to obtain a binary-mode file connection which is opened for the duration of the function call.

If the connection is open it is read/written from its current position. If it is not open, it is opened for the duration of the call in an appropriate mode (binary read or write) and then closed again. An open connection must be in binary mode.

If readBin is called with con a raw vector, the data in the vector is used as input. If writeBin is called with con a raw vector, it is just an indication that a raw vector should be returned.

If size is specified and not the natural size of the object, each element of the vector is coerced to an appropriate type before being written or as it is read. Possible sizes are 1, 2, 4 and possibly 8 for integer or logical vectors, and 4, 8 and possibly 12/16 for numeric vectors. (Note that coercion occurs as signed types except if signed = FALSE when reading integers of sizes 1 and 2.) Changing sizes is unlikely to preserve NAs, and the extended precision sizes are unlikely to be portable across platforms.

readBin and writeBin read and write C-style zero-terminated character strings. Input strings are limited to 10000 characters. readChar and writeChar can be used to read and write fixed-length strings. No check is made that the string is valid in the current locale.

Handling 's missing and special (Inf, -Inf and NaN) values is discussed in the 'R Data Import/Export' manual.

Only $2^{31} - 1$ bytes can be written in a single call (and that is the maximum capacity of a raw vector).

Value

For readBin, a vector of appropriate mode and length the number of items read (which might be less than n).

For writeBin, a raw vector (if con is a raw vector) or invisibly NULL.

Note

Integer read/writes of size 8 will be available if either C type `long` is of size 8 bytes or C type `long long` exists and is of size 8 bytes.

Real read/writes of size `sizeof(long double)` (usually 12 or 16 bytes) will be available only if that type is available and different from `double`.

If `readBin(what = character())` is used incorrectly on a file which does not contain C-style character strings, warnings (usually many) are given. From a file or connection, the input will be broken into pieces of length 10000 with any final part being discarded.

Using these functions on a text-mode connection may work but should not be mixed with text-mode access to the connection, especially if the connection was opened with an `encoding` argument.

See Also

The 'R Data Import/Export' manual.

`readChar` to read/write fixed-length strings.

`connections`, `readLines`, `writeLines`.

`.Machine` for the sizes of `long`, `long long` and `long double`.

Examples

```
zz <- file("testbin", "wb")
writeBin(1:10, zz)
writeBin(pi, zz, endian = "swap")
writeBin(pi, zz, size = 4)
writeBin(pi^2, zz, size = 4, endian = "swap")
writeBin(pi+3i, zz)
writeBin("A test of a connection", zz)
z <- paste("A very long string", 1:100, collapse = " + ")
writeBin(z, zz)
if(.Machine$sizeof.long == 8 || .Machine$sizeof.longlong == 8)
    writeBin(as.integer(5^(1:10)), zz, size = 8)
if((s <- .Machine$sizeof.longdouble) > 8)
    writeBin((pi/3)^(1:10), zz, size = s)
close(zz)

zz <- file("testbin", "rb")
readBin(zz, integer(), 4)
readBin(zz, integer(), 6)
readBin(zz, numeric(), 1, endian = "swap")
readBin(zz, numeric(), size = 4)
readBin(zz, numeric(), size = 4, endian = "swap")
readBin(zz, complex(), 1)
readBin(zz, character(), 1)
z2 <- readBin(zz, character(), 1)
if(.Machine$sizeof.long == 8 || .Machine$sizeof.longlong == 8)
    readBin(zz, integer(), 10,  size = 8)
if((s <- .Machine$sizeof.longdouble) > 8)
    readBin(zz, numeric(), 10, size = s)
close(zz)
unlink("testbin")
stopifnot(z2 == z)

## signed vs unsigned ints
```

```
zz <- file("testbin", "wb")
x <- as.integer(seq(0, 255, 32))
writeBin(x, zz, size = 1)
writeBin(x, zz, size = 1)
x <- as.integer(seq(0, 60000, 10000))
writeBin(x, zz, size = 2)
writeBin(x, zz, size = 2)
close(zz)
zz <- file("testbin", "rb")
readBin(zz, integer(), 8, size = 1)
readBin(zz, integer(), 8, size = 1, signed = FALSE)
readBin(zz, integer(), 7, size = 2)
readBin(zz, integer(), 7, size = 2, signed = FALSE)
close(zz)
unlink("testbin")

## use of raw
z <- writeBin(pi^{1:5}, raw(), size = 4)
readBin(z, numeric(), 5, size = 4)
z <- writeBin(c("a", "test", "of", "character"), raw())
readBin(z, character(), 4)
```

---

readChar *Transfer Character Strings To and From Connections*

Description

Transfer character strings to and from connections, without assuming they are null-terminated on the connection.

Usage

```
readChar(con, nchars, useBytes = FALSE)

writeChar(object, con, nchars = nchar(object, type = "chars"),
          eos = "", useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

con	A connection object, or a character string naming a file, or a raw vector.
nchars	integer vector, giving the lengths in characters of (unterminated) character strings to be read or written. Elements must be >= 0 and not NA.
useBytes	logical: For readChar, should nchars be regarded as a number of bytes not characters in a multi-byte locale? For writeChar, see writeLines.
object	A character vector to be written to the connection, at least as long as nchars.
eos	'end of string': character string . The terminator to be written after each string, followed by an ASCII nul; use NULL for no terminator at all.

Details

These functions complement readBin and writeBin which read and write C-style zero-terminated character strings. They are for strings of known length, and can optionally write an end-of-string mark. They are intended only for character strings valid in the current locale.

These functions are intended to be used with binary-mode connections. If con is a character string, the functions call file to obtain a binary-mode file connection which is opened for the duration of the function call.

If the connection is open it is read/written from its current position. If it is not open, it is opened for the duration of the call in an appropriate mode (binary read or write) and then closed again. An open connection must be in binary mode.

If readChar is called with con a raw vector, the data in the vector is used as input. If writeChar is called with con a raw vector, it is just an indication that a raw vector should be returned.

Character strings containing ASCII nul(s) will be read correctly by readChar but truncated at the first nul with a warning.

If the character length requested for readChar is longer than the data available on the connection, what is available is returned. For writeChar if too many characters are requested the output is zero-padded, with a warning.

Missing strings are written as NA.

Value

For readChar, a character vector of length the number of items read (which might be less than length(nchars)).

For writeChar, a raw vector (if con is a raw vector) or invisibly NULL.

Note

Earlier versions of allowed embedded nul bytes within character strings, but not >= 2.8.0. readChar was commonly used to read fixed-size zero-padded byte fields for which readBin was unsuitable. readChar can still be used for such fields if there are no embedded nuls: otherwise readBin(what = "raw") provides an alternative.

nchars will be interpreted in bytes not characters in a non-UTF-8 multi-byte locale, with a warning.

There is little validity checking of UTF-8 reads.

Using these functions on a text-mode connection may work but should not be mixed with text-mode access to the connection, especially if the connection was opened with an encoding argument.

See Also

The 'R Data Import/Export' manual.

connections, readLines, writeLines, readBin

Examples

```
## test fixed-length strings
zz <- file("testchar", "wb")
x <- c("a", "this will be truncated", "abc")
nc <- c(3, 10, 3)
writeChar(x, zz, nc, eos = NULL)
writeChar(x, zz, eos = "\r\n")
close(zz)
```

```
zz <- file("testchar", "rb")
readChar(zz, nc)
readChar(zz, nchar(x)+3) # need to read the terminator explicitly
close(zz)
unlink("testchar")
```

`readline` *Read a Line from the Terminal*

Description

`readline` reads a line from the terminal (in interactive use).

Usage

```
readline(prompt = "")
```

Arguments

`prompt`	the string printed when prompting the user for input. Should usually end with a space `" "`.

Details

The prompt string will be truncated to a maximum allowed length, normally 256 chars (but can be changed in the source code).

This can only be used in an interactive session.

Value

A character vector of length one. Both leading and trailing spaces and tabs are stripped from the result.

In non-interactive use the result is as if the response was RETURN and the value is `""`.

See Also

`readLines` for reading text lines from connections, including files.

Examples

```
fun <- function() {
  ANSWER <- readline("Are you a satisfied R user? ")
  ## a better version would check the answer less cursorily, and
  ## perhaps re-prompt
  if (substr(ANSWER, 1, 1) == "n")
    cat("This is impossible.  YOU LIED!\n")
  else
    cat("I knew it.\n")
}
if(interactive()) fun()
```

readLines *Read Text Lines from a Connection*

Description

Read some or all text lines from a connection.

Usage

```
readLines(con = stdin(), n = -1L, ok = TRUE, warn = TRUE,
          encoding = "unknown", skipNul = FALSE)
```

Arguments

con	a connection object or a character string.
n	integer. The (maximal) number of lines to read. Negative values indicate that one should read up to the end of input on the connection.
ok	logical. Is it OK to reach the end of the connection before n > 0 lines are read? If not, an error will be generated.
warn	logical. Warn if a text file is missing a final EOL or if there are embedded nuls in the file.
encoding	encoding to be assumed for input strings. It is used to mark character strings as known to be in Latin-1 or UTF-8: it is not used to re-encode the input. To do the latter, specify the encoding as part of the connection con or via options(encoding=): see the examples.
skipNul	logical: should nuls be skipped?

Details

If the con is a character string, the function calls file to obtain a file connection which is opened for the duration of the function call. This can be a compressed file.

If the connection is open it is read from its current position. If it is not open, it is opened in "rt" mode for the duration of the call and then closed again.

If the final line is incomplete (no final EOL marker) the behaviour depends on whether the connection is blocking or not. For a non-blocking text-mode connection the incomplete line is pushed back, silently. For all other connections the line will be accepted, with a warning.

Whatever mode the connection is opened in, any of LF, CRLF or CR will be accepted as the EOL marker for a line.

Embedded nuls in the input stream will terminate the line currently being read, with a warning (unless skipNul = TRUE or warn = FALSE)).

If con is a not-already-open connection with a non-default encoding argument, the text is converted to UTF-8 and declared as such (and the encoding argument to readLines is ignored). See the examples.

Value

A character vector of length the number of lines read.

The elements of the result have a declared encoding if encoding is "latin1" or "UTF-8",

Note

The default connection, stdin, may be different from con = "stdin": see file.

See Also

connections, writeLines, readBin, scan

Examples

```
cat("TITLE extra line", "2 3 5 7", "", "11 13 17", file = "ex.data",
    sep = "\n")
readLines("ex.data", n = -1)
unlink("ex.data") # tidy up

## difference in blocking
cat("123\nabc", file = "test1")
readLines("test1") # line with a warning

con <- file("test1", "r", blocking = FALSE)
readLines(con) # empty
cat(" def\n", file = "test1", append = TRUE)
readLines(con) # gets both
close(con)

unlink("test1") # tidy up

## Not run:
# read a Windows Unicode file
A <- readLines(con <- file("Unicode.txt", encoding = "UCS-2LE"))
close(con)
unique(Encoding(A)) # will most likely be UTF-8

## End(Not run)
```

---

readRDS *Serialization Interface for Single Objects*

Description

Functions to write a single object to a file, and to restore it.

Usage

```
saveRDS(object, file = "", ascii = FALSE, version = NULL,
        compress = TRUE, refhook = NULL)

readRDS(file, refhook = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	object to serialize.
file	a connection or the name of the file where the object is saved to or read from.
ascii	a logical. If TRUE, an ASCII representation is written; otherwise a binary one is used. See the comments in the help for save.
version	the workspace format version to use. NULL specifies the current default version (2). Versions prior to 2 are not supported, so this will only be relevant when there are later versions.
compress	a logical specifying whether saving to a named file is to use "gzip" compression, or one of "gzip", "bzip2" or "xz" to indicate the type of compression to be used. Ignored if file is a connection.
refhook	a hook function for handling reference objects.

Details

These functions provide the means to save a single object to a connection (typically a file) and to restore the object, quite possibly under a different name. This differs from save and load, which save and restore one or more named objects into an environment. They are widely used by itself, for example to store metadata for a package and to store the help.search databases: the ".rds" file extension is most often used.

Functions serialize and unserialize provide a slightly lower-level interface to serialization: objects serialized to a connection by serialize can be read back by readRDS and conversely.

All of these interfaces use the same serialization format, which has been used since 1.4.0 (but extended from time to time as new object types have been added to). However, save writes a single line header (typically "RDXs\n") before the serialization of a single object (a pairlist of all the objects to be saved).

Compression is handled by the connection opened when file is a file name, so is only possible when file is a connection if handled by the connection. So e.g. url connections will need to be wrapped in a call to gzcon.

If a connection is supplied it will be opened (in binary mode) for the duration of the function if not already open: if it is already open it must be in binary mode for saveRDS(ascii = FALSE) (the default).

Value

For readRDS, an object.

For saveRDS, NULL invisibly.

See Also

serialize, save and load.

The 'R Internals' manual for details of the format used.

Examples

```
## save a single object to file
saveRDS(women, "women.rds")
## restore it under a different name
women2 <- readRDS("women.rds")
identical(women, women2)
```

```
## or examine the object via a connection, which will be opened as needed.
con <- gzfile("women.rds")
readRDS(con)
close(con)

## Less convenient ways to restore the object
## which demonstrate compatibility with unserialize()
con <- gzfile("women.rds", "rb")
identical(unserialize(con), women)
close(con)
con <- gzfile("women.rds", "rb")
wm <- readBin(con, "raw", n = 1e4) # size is a guess
close(con)
identical(unserialize(wm), women)

## Format compatibility with serialize():
con <- file("women2", "w")
serialize(women, con) # ASCII, uncompressed
close(con)
identical(women, readRDS("women2"))
con <- bzfile("women3", "w")
serialize(women, con) # binary, bzip2-compressed
close(con)
identical(women, readRDS("women2"))
```

`readRenviron` *Set Environment Variables from a File*

Description

Read as file such as '`.Renviron`' or '`Renviron.site`' in the format described in the help for Startup, and set environment variables as defined in the file.

Usage

```
readRenviron(path)
```

Arguments

`path`	A length-one character vector giving the path to the file. Tilde-expansion is performed where supported.

Value

Scalar logical indicating if the file was read successfully. Returned invisibly. If the file cannot be opened for reading, a warning is given.

See Also

`Startup` for the file format.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## re-read a startup file (or read it in a vanilla session)
readRenviron("~/.Renviron")

## End(Not run)
```

`Recall` *Recursive Calling*

Description

`Recall` is used as a placeholder for the name of the function in which it is called. It allows the definition of recursive functions which still work after being renamed, see example below.

Usage

```
Recall(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	all the arguments to be passed.

Note

`Recall` will not work correctly when passed as a function argument, e.g. to the `apply` family of functions.

See Also

`do.call` and `call`.

`local` for another way to write anonymous recursive functions.

Examples

```
## A trivial (but inefficient!) example:
fib <- function(n)
   if(n<=2) { if(n>=0) 1 else 0 } else Recall(n-1) + Recall(n-2)
fibonacci <- fib; rm(fib)
## renaming wouldnt work without Recall
fibonacci(10) # 55
```

`reg.finalizer` *Finalization of Objects*

Description

Registers an function to be called upon garbage collection of object or (optionally) at the end of an session.

Usage

```
reg.finalizer(e, f, onexit = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`e`	Object to finalize. Must be an environment or an external pointer.
`f`	Function to call on finalization. Must accept a single argument, which will be the object to finalize.
`onexit`	logical: should the finalizer be run if the object is still uncollected at the end of the session?

Details

The main purpose of this function is to allow objects that refer to external items (a temporary file, say) to perform cleanup actions when they are no longer referenced from within . This only makes sense for objects that are never copied on assignment, hence the restriction to environments and external pointers.

Inter alia, it provides a way to program code to be run at the end of an session without manipulating `.Last`. For use in a package, it is often a good idea to set a finalizer on an object in the namespace: then it will be called at the end of the session, or soon after the namespace is unloaded if that is done during the session.

Value

`NULL`.

Note

's interpreter is not re-entrant and the finalizer could be run in the middle of a computation. So there are many functions which it is potentially unsafe to call from `f`: one example which caused trouble is `options`. As from 3.0.3 finalizers are scheduled at garbage collection but only run at a relatively safe time thereafter.

See Also

`gc` and `Memory` for garbage collection and memory management.

Examples

```
f <- function(e) print("cleaning....")
g <- function(x){ e <- environment(); reg.finalizer(e, f) }
g()
invisible(gc()) # trigger cleanup
```

regex *Regular Expressions as used in R*

Description

This help page documents the regular expression patterns supported by grep and related functions grepl, regexpr, gregexpr, sub and gsub, as well as by strsplit.

Details

A 'regular expression' is a pattern that describes a set of strings. Two types of regular expressions are used in , *extended* regular expressions (the default) and *Perl-like* regular expressions used by perl = TRUE. There is a also fixed = TRUE which can be considered to use a *literal* regular expression.

Other functions which use regular expressions (often via the use of grep) include apropos, browseEnv, help.search, list.files and ls. These will all use *extended* regular expressions.

Patterns are described here as they would be printed by cat: (*do remember that backslashes need to be doubled when entering character strings*, e.g. from the keyboard).

Long regular expressions may or may not be accepted: the POSIX standard only requires up to 256 *bytes*.

Extended Regular Expressions

This section covers the regular expressions allowed in the default mode of grep, regexpr, gregexpr, sub, gsub and strsplit. They use an implementation of the POSIX 1003.2 standard: that allows some scope for interpretation and the interpretations here are those currently used by . The implementation supports some extensions to the standard.

Regular expressions are constructed analogously to arithmetic expressions, by using various operators to combine smaller expressions. The whole expression matches zero or more characters (read 'character' as 'byte' if useBytes = TRUE).

The fundamental building blocks are the regular expressions that match a single character. Most characters, including all letters and digits, are regular expressions that match themselves. Any metacharacter with special meaning may be quoted by preceding it with a backslash. The metacharacters in extended regular expressions are '. \ | ( ) [{ ^ $ * + ?', but note that whether these have a special meaning depends on the context.

Escaping non-metacharacters with a backslash is implementation-dependent. The current implementation interprets '\a' as 'BEL', '\e' as 'ESC', '\f' as 'FF', '\n' as 'LF', '\r' as 'CR' and '\t' as 'TAB'. (Note that these will be interpreted by 's parser in literal character strings.)

A *character class* is a list of characters enclosed between '[' and ']' which matches any single character in that list; unless the first character of the list is the caret '^', when it matches any character *not* in the list. For example, the regular expression '[0123456789]' matches any single digit, and '[^abc]' matches anything except the characters 'a', 'b' or 'c'. A range of characters may be specified by giving the first and last characters, separated by a hyphen. (Because their interpretation is locale- and implementation-dependent, character ranges are best avoided.) The only portable way to specify all ASCII letters is to list them all as the character class '[ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz]'.
(The current implementation uses numerical order of the encoding.)

Certain named classes of characters are predefined. Their interpretation depends on the *locale* (see locales); the interpretation below is that of the POSIX locale.

‘[:alnum:]’ Alphanumeric characters: ‘[:alpha:]’ and ‘[:digit:]’.

‘[:alpha:]’ Alphabetic characters: ‘[:lower:]’ and ‘[:upper:]’.

‘[:blank:]’ Blank characters: space and tab, and possibly other locale-dependent characters such as non-breaking space.

‘[:cntrl:]’ Control characters. In ASCII, these characters have octal codes 000 through 037, and 177 (DEL). In another character set, these are the equivalent characters, if any.

‘[:digit:]’ Digits: ‘0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9’.

‘[:graph:]’ Graphical characters: ‘[:alnum:]’ and ‘[:punct:]’.

‘[:lower:]’ Lower-case letters in the current locale.

‘[:print:]’ Printable characters: ‘[:alnum:]’, ‘[:punct:]’ and space.

‘[:punct:]’ Punctuation characters:
‘! " # $ % & ( ) * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\ ] ^ _ { | } ~’.

‘[:space:]’ Space characters: tab, newline, vertical tab, form feed, carriage return, space and possibly other locale-dependent characters.

‘[:upper:]’ Upper-case letters in the current locale.

‘[:xdigit:]’ Hexadecimal digits:
‘0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F a b c d e f’.

For example, ‘[[:alnum:]]’ means ‘[0-9A-Za-z]’, except the latter depends upon the locale and the character encoding, whereas the former is independent of locale and character set. (Note that the brackets in these class names are part of the symbolic names, and must be included in addition to the brackets delimiting the bracket list.) Most metacharacters lose their special meaning inside a character class. To include a literal ‘]’, place it first in the list. Similarly, to include a literal ‘^’, place it anywhere but first. Finally, to include a literal ‘-’, place it first or last (or, for `perl = TRUE` only, precede it by a backslash). (Only ‘^ - \ ]’ are special inside character classes.)

The period ‘.’ matches any single character. The symbol ‘\w’ matches a ‘word’ character (a synonym for ‘[[:alnum:]_]’, an extension) and ‘\W’ is its negation (‘[^[:alnum:]_]’). Symbols ‘\d’, ‘\s’, ‘\D’ and ‘\S’ denote the digit and space classes and their negations (these are all extensions).

The caret ‘^’ and the dollar sign ‘$’ are metacharacters that respectively match the empty string at the beginning and end of a line. The symbols ‘\<’ and ‘\>’ match the empty string at the beginning and end of a word. The symbol ‘\b’ matches the empty string at either edge of a word, and ‘\B’ matches the empty string provided it is not at an edge of a word. (The interpretation of ‘word’ depends on the locale and implementation: these are all extensions.)

A regular expression may be followed by one of several repetition quantifiers:

‘?’ The preceding item is optional and will be matched at most once.

‘*’ The preceding item will be matched zero or more times.

‘+’ The preceding item will be matched one or more times.

‘{n}’ The preceding item is matched exactly n times.

‘{n,}’ The preceding item is matched n or more times.

‘{n,m}’ The preceding item is matched at least n times, but not more than m times.

By default repetition is greedy, so the maximal possible number of repeats is used. This can be changed to ‘minimal’ by appending ? to the quantifier. (There are further quantifiers that allow approximate matching: see the TRE documentation.)

Regular expressions may be concatenated; the resulting regular expression matches any string formed by concatenating the substrings that match the concatenated subexpressions.

Two regular expressions may be joined by the infix operator '|'; the resulting regular expression matches any string matching either subexpression. For example, 'abba|cde' matches either the string abba or the string cde. Note that alternation does not work inside character classes, where '|' has its literal meaning.

Repetition takes precedence over concatenation, which in turn takes precedence over alternation. A whole subexpression may be enclosed in parentheses to override these precedence rules.

The backreference '\N', where 'N = 1 ... 9', matches the substring previously matched by the Nth parenthesized subexpression of the regular expression. (This is an extension for extended regular expressions: POSIX defines them only for basic ones.)

Perl-like Regular Expressions

The perl = TRUE argument to grep, regexpr, gregexpr, sub, gsub and strsplit switches to the PCRE library that implements regular expression pattern matching using the same syntax and semantics as Perl 5.x, with just a few differences.

For complete details please consult the man pages for PCRE, especially man pcrepattern and man pcreapi), on your system or from the sources at http://www.pcre.org. If PCRE support was compiled from the sources within , the PCRE version is 8.36 as described here.

Perl regular expressions can be computed byte-by-byte or (UTF-8) character-by-character: the latter is used in all multibyte locales and if any of the inputs are marked as UTF-8 (see Encoding).

All the regular expressions described for extended regular expressions are accepted except '\<' and '\>': in Perl all backslashed metacharacters are alphanumeric and backslashed symbols always are interpreted as a literal character. '{' is not special if it would be the start of an invalid interval specification. There can be more than 9 backreferences (but the replacement in sub can only refer to the first 9).

Character ranges are interpreted in the numerical order of the characters, either as bytes in a single-byte locale or as Unicode code points in UTF-8 mode. So in either case '[A-Za-z]' specifies the set of ASCII letters.

In UTF-8 mode the named character classes only match ASCII characters: see '\p' below for an alternative.

The construct '(?...)' is used for Perl extensions in a variety of ways depending on what immediately follows the '?'.

Perl-like matching can work in several modes, set by the options '(?i)' (caseless, equivalent to Perl's '/i'), '(?m)' (multiline, equivalent to Perl's '/m'), '(?s)' (single line, so a dot matches all characters, even new lines: equivalent to Perl's '/s') and '(?x)' (extended, whitespace data characters are ignored unless escaped and comments are allowed: equivalent to Perl's '/x'). These can be concatenated, so for example, '(?im)' sets caseless multiline matching. It is also possible to unset these options by preceding the letter with a hyphen, and to combine setting and unsetting such as '(?im-sx)'. These settings can be applied within patterns, and then apply to the remainder of the pattern. Additional options not in Perl include '(?U)' to set 'ungreedy' mode (so matching is minimal unless '?' is used as part of the repetition quantifier, when it is greedy). Initially none of these options are set.

If you want to remove the special meaning from a sequence of characters, you can do so by putting them between '\Q' and '\E'. This is different from Perl in that '$' and '@' are handled as literals in '\Q...\E' sequences in PCRE, whereas in Perl, '$' and '@' cause variable interpolation.

The escape sequences '\d', '\s' and '\w' represent any decimal digit, space character and 'word' character (letter, digit or underscore in the current locale: in UTF-8 mode only ASCII letters and digits are considered) respectively, and their upper-case versions represent their negation. Vertical tab is not regarded as a space character before PCRE 8.34 (included in 3.0.3). Sequences '\h',

'\v', '\H' and '\V' match horizontal and vertical space or the negation. (In UTF-8 mode, these do match non-ASCII Unicode code points.)

There are additional escape sequences: '\cx' is 'cntrl-x' for any 'x', '\ddd' is the octal character (for up to three digits unless interpretable as a backreference, as '\1' to '\7' always are), and '\xhh' specifies a character by two hex digits. In a UTF-8 locale, '\x{h...}' specifies a Unicode code point by one or more hex digits. (Note that some of these will be interpreted by 's parser in literal character strings.)

Outside a character class, '\A' matches at the start of a subject (even in multiline mode, unlike '^'), '\Z' matches at the end of a subject or before a newline at the end, '\z' matches only at end of a subject. and '\G' matches at first matching position in a subject (which is subtly different from Perl's end of the previous match). '\C' matches a single byte, including a newline, but its use is warned against. In UTF-8 mode, '\R' matches any Unicode newline character (not just CR), and '\X' matches any number of Unicode characters that form an extended Unicode sequence.

In UTF-8 mode, some Unicode properties may be supported via '\p{xx}' and '\P{xx}' which match characters with and without property 'xx' respectively. For a list of supported properties see the PCRE documentation, but for example 'Lu' is 'upper case letter' and 'Sc' is 'currency symbol'. (This support depends on the PCRE library being compiled with 'Unicode property support': an external library might not be. It can be checked *via* pcre_config.)

The sequence '(?#' marks the start of a comment which continues up to the next closing parenthesis. Nested parentheses are not permitted. The characters that make up a comment play no part at all in the pattern matching.

If the extended option is set, an unescaped '#' character outside a character class introduces a comment that continues up to the next newline character in the pattern.

The pattern '(?:...)' groups characters just as parentheses do but does not make a backreference.

Patterns '(?=...)' and '(?!...)' are zero-width positive and negative lookahead *assertions*: they match if an attempt to match the ... forward from the current position would succeed (or not), but use up no characters in the string being processed. Patterns '(?<=...)' and '(?<!...)' are the lookbehind equivalents: they do not allow repetition quantifiers nor '\C' in ....

regexpr and gregexpr support 'named capture'. If groups are named, e.g., "(?<first>[A-Z][a-z]+)" then the positions of the matches are also returned by name. (Named backreferences are not supported by sub.)

Atomic grouping, possessive qualifiers and conditional and recursive patterns are not covered here.

Author(s)

This help page is based on the TRE documentation and the POSIX standard, and the pcrepattern man page from PCRE 8.36.

See Also

grep, apropos, browseEnv, glob2rx, help.search, list.files, ls and strsplit.

The TRE documentation at http://laurikari.net/tre/documentation/regex-syntax/).

The POSIX 1003.2 standard at http://pubs.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/9699919799/basedefs/V1_chap09.html

The pcrepattern man page (found as part of http://www.pcre.org/original/pcre.txt), and details of Perl's own implementation at http://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html.

regmatches *Extract or Replace Matched Substrings*

Description

Extract or replace matched substrings from match data obtained by regexpr, gregexpr or regexec.

Usage

```
regmatches(x, m, invert = FALSE)
regmatches(x, m, invert = FALSE) <- value
```

Arguments

x	a character vector
m	an object with match data
invert	a logical: if TRUE, extract or replace the non-matched substrings.
value	an object with suitable replacement values for the matched or non-matched substrings (see Details).

Details

If invert is FALSE (default), regmatches extracts the matched substrings as specified by the match data. For vector match data (as obtained from regexpr), empty matches are dropped; for list match data, empty matches give empty components (zero-length character vectors).

If invert is TRUE, regmatches extracts the non-matched substrings, i.e., the strings are split according to the matches similar to strsplit (for vector match data, at most a single split is performed).

Note that the match data can be obtained from regular expression matching on a modified version of x with the same numbers of characters.

The replacement function can be used for replacing the matched or non-matched substrings. For vector match data, if invert is FALSE, value should be a character vector with length the number of matched elements in m. Otherwise, it should be a list of character vectors with the same length as m, each as long as the number of replacements needed. Replacement coerces values to character or list and generously recycles values as needed. Missing replacement values are not allowed.

Value

For regmatches, a character vector with the matched substrings if m is a vector and invert is FALSE. Otherwise, a list with the matched or non-matched substrings.

For regmatches<-, the updated character vector.

Examples

```
x <- c("A and B", "A, B and C", "A, B, C and D", "foobar")
pattern <- "[[:space:]]*(,|and)[[:space:]]"
## Match data from regexpr()
m <- regexpr(pattern, x)
regmatches(x, m)
regmatches(x, m, invert = TRUE)
## Match data from gregexpr()
```

```
m <- gregexpr(pattern, x)
regmatches(x, m)
regmatches(x, m, invert = TRUE)

## Consider
x <- "John (fishing, hunting), Paul (hiking, biking)"
## Suppose we want to split at the comma (plus spaces) between the
## persons, but not at the commas in the parenthesized hobby lists.
## One idea is to "blank out" the parenthesized parts to match the
## parts to be used for splitting, and extract the persons as the
## non-matched parts.
## First, match the parenthesized hobby lists.
m <- gregexpr("\\([^)]*\\)", x)
## Write a little utility for creating blank strings with given numbers
## of characters.
blanks <- function(n) {
     vapply(Map(rep.int, rep.int(" ", length(n)), n, USE.NAMES = FALSE),
           paste, "", collapse = "")
}
## Create a copy of x with the parenthesized parts blanked out.
s <- x
regmatches(s, m) <- Map(blanks, lapply(regmatches(s, m), nchar))
s
## Compute the positions of the split matches (note that we cannot call
## strsplit() on x with match data from s).
m <- gregexpr(", *", s)
## And finally extract the non-matched parts.
regmatches(x, m, invert = TRUE)
```

`remove` *Remove Objects from a Specified Environment*

Description

`remove` and `rm` can be used to remove objects. These can be specified successively as character strings, or in the character vector `list`, or through a combination of both. All objects thus specified will be removed.

If `envir` is NULL then the currently active environment is searched first.

If `inherits` is `TRUE` then parents of the supplied directory are searched until a variable with the given name is encountered. A warning is printed for each variable that is not found.

Usage

```
remove(..., list = character(), pos = -1,
       envir = as.environment(pos), inherits = FALSE)

rm    (..., list = character(), pos = -1,
       envir = as.environment(pos), inherits = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`...`	the objects to be removed, as names (unquoted) or character strings (quoted).
`list`	a character vector naming objects to be removed.

pos	where to do the removal. By default, uses the current environment. See 'details' for other possibilities.
envir	the environment to use. See 'details'.
inherits	should the enclosing frames of the environment be inspected?

Details

The pos argument can specify the environment from which to remove the objects in any of several ways: as an integer (the position in the search list); as the character string name of an element in the search list; or as an environment (including using sys.frame to access the currently active function calls). The envir argument is an alternative way to specify an environment, but is primarily there for back compatibility.

It is not allowed to remove variables from the base environment and base namespace, nor from any environment which is locked (see lockEnvironment).

Earlier versions of incorrectly claimed that supplying a character vector in ... removed the objects named in the character vector, but it removed the character vector. Use the list argument to specify objects *via* a character vector.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

ls, objects

Examples

```
tmp <- 1:4
## work with tmp  and cleanup
rm(tmp)

## Not run:
## remove (almost) everything in the working environment.
## You will get no warning, so dont do this unless you are really sure.
rm(list = ls())

## End(Not run)
```

---

rep *Replicate Elements of Vectors and Lists*

Description

rep replicates the values in x. It is a generic function, and the (internal) default method is described here.

rep.int and rep_len are faster simplified versions for two common cases. They are not generic.

Usage

```
rep(x, ...)

rep.int(x, times)

rep_len(x, length.out)
```

Arguments

x	a vector (of any mode including a list) or a factor or (for rep only) a POSIXct or POSIXlt or Date object; or an S4 object containing such an object.
...	further arguments to be passed to or from other methods. For the internal default method these can include: times A integer vector giving the (non-negative) number of times to repeat each element if of length length(x), or to repeat the whole vector if of length 1. Negative or NA values are an error. length.out non-negative integer. The desired length of the output vector. Other inputs will be coerced to an integer vector and the first element taken. Ignored if NA or invalid. each non-negative integer. Each element of x is repeated each times. Other inputs will be coerced to an integer vector and the first element taken. Treated as 1 if NA or invalid.
times	see ... .
length.out	non-negative integer: the desired length of the output vector.

Details

The default behaviour is as if the call was

```
rep(x, times = 1, length.out = NA, each = 1)
```

. Normally just one of the additional arguments is specified, but if each is specified with either of the other two, its replication is performed first, and then that implied by times or length.out.

If times consists of a single integer, the result consists of the whole input repeated this many times. If times is a vector of the same length as x (after replication by each), the result consists of x[1] repeated times[1] times, x[2] repeated times[2] times and so on.

length.out may be given in place of times, in which case x is repeated as many times as is necessary to create a vector of this length. If both are given, length.out takes priority and times is ignored.

Non-integer values of times will be truncated towards zero. If times is a computed quantity it is prudent to add a small fuzz or use round. And analogously for each.

If x has length zero and length.out is supplied and is positive, the values are filled in using the extraction rules, that is by an NA of the appropriate class for an atomic vector (0 for raw vectors) and NULL for a list.

Value

An object of the same type as x.

rep.int and rep_len return no attributes (except the class if returning a factor).

The default method of rep gives the result names (which will almost always contain duplicates) if x had names, but retains no other attributes.

Note

Function `rep.int` is a simple case which was provided as a separate function partly for S compatibility and partly for speed (especially when names can be dropped). The performance of `rep` has been improved since, but `rep.int` is still at least twice as fast when `x` has names.

The name `rep.int` long precedes making `rep` generic.

Function `rep` is a primitive, but (partial) matching of argument names is performed as for normal functions.

For historical reasons `rep` (only) works on `NULL`: the result is always `NULL` even when `length.out` is positive.

Although it has never been documented, these functions have always worked on expression vectors. 2.x.y accepted pairlists and some other objects (although the results were rarely what their users intended).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`seq`, `sequence`, `replicate`.

Examples

```
rep(1:4, 2)
rep(1:4, each = 2)       # not the same.
rep(1:4, c(2,2,2,2))     # same as second.
rep(1:4, c(2,1,2,1))
rep(1:4, each = 2, len = 4)    # first 4 only.
rep(1:4, each = 2, len = 10)   # 8 integers plus two recycled 1s.
rep(1:4, each = 2, times = 3)  # length 24, 3 complete replications

rep(1, 40*(1-.8)) # length 7 on most platforms
rep(1, 40*(1-.8)+1e-7) # better

## replicate a list
fred <- list(happy = 1:10, name = "squash")
rep(fred, 5)

# date-time objects
x <- .leap.seconds[1:3]
rep(x, 2)
rep(as.POSIXlt(x), rep(2, 3))

## named factor
x <- factor(LETTERS[1:4]); names(x) <- letters[1:4]
x
rep(x, 2)
rep(x, each = 2)
rep.int(x, 2)  # no names
rep_len(x, 10)
```

replace *Replace Values in a Vector*

Description

`replace` replaces the values in `x` with indices given in `list` by those given in `values`. If necessary, the values in `values` are recycled.

Usage

```
replace(x, list, values)
```

Arguments

`x`	vector
`list`	an index vector
`values`	replacement values

Value

A vector with the values replaced.

Note

`x` is unchanged: remember to assign the result.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Reserved *Reserved Words in R*

Description

The reserved words in 's parser are

`if` `else` `repeat` `while` `function` `for` `in` `next` `break`

`TRUE` `FALSE` `NULL` `Inf` `NaN` `NA` `NA_integer_` `NA_real_` `NA_complex_` `NA_character_`

`...` and `..1`, `..2` etc, which are used to refer to arguments passed down from a calling function. See the 'Introduction to R' manual for usage of these syntactic elements, and dotsMethods for their use in formal methods.

Details

Reserved words outside quotes are always parsed to be references to the objects linked to in the 'Description', and hence they are not allowed as syntactic names (see `make.names`). They **are** allowed as non-syntactic names, e.g. inside backtick quotes.

rev *Reverse Elements*

Description

rev provides a reversed version of its argument. It is generic function with a default method for vectors and one for dendrograms.

Note that this is no longer needed (nor efficient) for obtaining vectors sorted into descending order, since that is now rather more directly achievable by sort(x, decreasing = TRUE).

Usage

```
rev(x)
```

Arguments

x	a vector or another object for which reversal is defined.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

seq, sort.

Examples

```
x <- c(1:5, 5:3)
## sort into descending order; first more efficiently:
stopifnot(sort(x, decreasing = TRUE) == rev(sort(x)))
stopifnot(rev(1:7) == 7:1)  #- dont need rev here
```

Rhome *Return the R Home Directory*

Description

Return the home directory.

Usage

```
R.home(component = "home")
```

Arguments

component	As well as "home" which gives the home directory, other known values are "bin", "doc", "etc", "modules" and "share" giving the paths to the corresponding parts of an installation.

Details

The home directory is the top-level directory of the installation being run.

The home directory is often referred to as *R_HOME*, and is the value of an environment variable of that name in an session. It can be found outside an session by `R RHOME`.

Value

A character string giving the home directory or path to a particular component. Normally the components are all subdirectories of the home directory, but this may not be the case in a Unix-like installation.

The return value for `"modules"` and on Windows `"bin"` is to a sub-architecture-specific location.

The function `R.home()` bases the constructed paths on the current value of the environment variable `R_HOME` which is normally set on startup.

On Windows the values of `R.home()` and `R_HOME` are guaranteed not to contain spaces, switching to the 8.3 short form of path elements if required. The value of `R_HOME` is set on startup to use forward slashes (since many package maintainers pass it unquoted to shells, for example in 'Makefile's).

---

rle *Run Length Encoding*

Description

Compute the lengths and values of runs of equal values in a vector – or the reverse operation.

Usage

```
rle(x)
inverse.rle(x, ...)

## S3 method for class rle
print(x, digits = getOption("digits"), prefix = "", ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a vector (atomic, not a list) for `rle()`; an object of class `"rle"` for `inverse.rle()`.
`...`	further arguments; ignored here.
`digits`	number of significant digits for printing, see `print.default`.
`prefix`	character string, prepended to each printed line.

Details

'vector' is used in the sense of `is.vector`.

Missing values are regarded as unequal to the previous value, even if that is also missing.

`inverse.rle()` is the inverse function of `rle()`, reconstructing `x` from the runs.

Value

`rle()` returns an object of class `"rle"` which is a list with components:

`lengths`	an integer vector containing the length of each run.
`values`	a vector of the same length as `lengths` with the corresponding values.

`inverse.rle()` returns an atomic vector.

Examples

```
x <- rev(rep(6:10, 1:5))
rle(x)
## lengths [1:5]  5 4 3 2 1
## values  [1:5] 10 9 8 7 6

z <- c(TRUE, TRUE, FALSE, FALSE, TRUE, FALSE, TRUE, TRUE, TRUE)
rle(z)
rle(as.character(z))
print(rle(z), prefix = "..| ")

N <- integer(0)
stopifnot(x == inverse.rle(rle(x)),
          identical(N, inverse.rle(rle(N))),
          z == inverse.rle(rle(z)))
```

Round *Rounding of Numbers*

Description

`ceiling` takes a single numeric argument `x` and returns a numeric vector containing the smallest integers not less than the corresponding elements of `x`.

`floor` takes a single numeric argument `x` and returns a numeric vector containing the largest integers not greater than the corresponding elements of `x`.

`trunc` takes a single numeric argument `x` and returns a numeric vector containing the integers formed by truncating the values in `x` toward `0`.

`round` rounds the values in its first argument to the specified number of decimal places (default 0).

`signif` rounds the values in its first argument to the specified number of significant digits.

Usage

```
ceiling(x)
floor(x)
trunc(x, ...)

round(x, digits = 0)
signif(x, digits = 6)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector. Or, for round and signif, a complex vector.
digits	integer indicating the number of decimal places (round) or significant digits (signif) to be used. Negative values are allowed (see 'Details').
...	arguments to be passed to methods.

Details

These are generic functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the Math group generic.

Note that for rounding off a 5, the IEC 60559 standard is expected to be used, '*go to the even digit*'. Therefore round(0.5) is 0 and round(-1.5) is -2. However, this is dependent on OS services and on representation error (since e.g. 0.15 is not represented exactly, the rounding rule applies to the represented number and not to the printed number, and so round(0.15, 1) could be either 0.1 or 0.2).

Rounding to a negative number of digits means rounding to a power of ten, so for example round(x, digits = -2) rounds to the nearest hundred.

For signif the recognized values of digits are 1...22, and non-missing values are rounded to the nearest integer in that range. Complex numbers are rounded to retain the specified number of digits in the larger of the components. Each element of the vector is rounded individually, unlike printing.

These are all primitive functions.

S4 methods

These are all (internally) S4 generic.

ceiling, floor and trunc are members of the Math group generic. As an S4 generic, trunc has only one argument.

round and signif are members of the Math2 group generic.

Warning

The realities of computer arithmetic can cause unexpected results, especially with floor and ceiling. For example, we 'know' that floor(log(x, base = 8)) for x = 8 is 1, but 0 has been seen on an platform. It is normally necessary to use a tolerance.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

as.integer.

Examples

```
round(.5 + -2:4) # IEEE rounding: -2  0  0  2  2  4  4
( x1 <- seq(-2, 4, by = .5) )
round(x1) #-- IEEE rounding !
x1[trunc(x1) != floor(x1)]
x1[round(x1) != floor(x1 + .5)]
(non.int <- ceiling(x1) != floor(x1))

x2 <- pi * 100^(-1:3)
round(x2, 3)
signif(x2, 3)
```

`round.POSIXt` *Round / Truncate Data-Time Objects*

Description

Round or truncate date-time objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class POSIXt
round(x, units = c("secs", "mins", "hours", "days"))
## S3 method for class POSIXt
trunc(x, units = c("secs", "mins", "hours", "days"), ...)

## S3 method for class Date
round(x, ...)
## S3 method for class Date
trunc(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from `"POSIXt"` or `"Date"`.
`units`	one of the units listed. Can be abbreviated.
`...`	arguments to be passed to or from other methods, notably `digits` for `round`.

Details

The time is rounded or truncated to the second, minute, hour or day. Time zones are only relevant to days, when midnight in the current time zone is used.

The methods for class `"Date"` are of little use except to remove fractional days.

Value

An object of class `"POSIXlt"` or `"Date"`.

See Also

`round` for the generic function and default methods.

`DateTimeClasses`, `Date`

Examples

```
round(.leap.seconds + 1000, "hour")
trunc(Sys.time(), "day")
```

`row` *Row Indexes*

Description

Returns a matrix of integers indicating their row number in a matrix-like object, or a factor indicating the row labels.

Usage

```
row(x, as.factor = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix-like object, that is one with a two-dimensional `dim`.
`as.factor`	a logical value indicating whether the value should be returned as a factor of row labels (created if necessary) rather than as numbers.

Value

An integer (or factor) matrix with the same dimensions as `x` and whose `ij`-th element is equal to `i` (or the `i`-th row label).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`col` to get columns.

Examples

```
x <- matrix(1:12, 3, 4)
# extract the diagonal of a matrix
dx <- x[row(x) == col(x)]
dx

# create an identity 5-by-5 matrix
x <- matrix(0, nrow = 5, ncol = 5)
x[row(x) == col(x)] <- 1
x
```

row+colnames *Row and Column Names*

Description

Retrieve or set the row or column names of a matrix-like object.

Usage

```
rownames(x, do.NULL = TRUE, prefix = "row")
rownames(x) <- value

colnames(x, do.NULL = TRUE, prefix = "col")
colnames(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	a matrix-like object, with at least two dimensions for colnames.
do.NULL	logical. If FALSE and names are NULL, names are created.
prefix	for created names.
value	a valid value for that component of dimnames(x). For a matrix or array this is either NULL or a character vector of non-zero length equal to the appropriate dimension.

Details

The extractor functions try to do something sensible for any matrix-like object x. If the object has dimnames the first component is used as the row names, and the second component (if any) is used for the column names. For a data frame, rownames and colnames eventually call row.names and names respectively, but the latter are preferred.

If do.NULL is FALSE, a character vector (of length NROW(x) or NCOL(x)) is returned in any case, prepending prefix to simple numbers, if there are no dimnames or the corresponding component of the dimnames is NULL.

The replacement methods for arrays/matrices coerce vector and factor values of value to character, but do not dispatch methods for as.character.

For a data frame, value for rownames should be a character vector of non-duplicated and non-missing names (this is enforced), and for colnames a character vector of (preferably) unique syntactically-valid names. In both cases, value will be coerced by as.character, and setting colnames will convert the row names to character.

Note

If the replacement versions are called on a matrix without any existing dimnames, they will add suitable dimnames. But constructions such as

```
rownames(x)[3] <- "c"
```

may not work unless x already has dimnames, since this will create a length-3 value from the NULL value of rownames(x).

See Also

dimnames, case.names, variable.names.

Examples

```
m0 <- matrix(NA, 4, 0)
rownames(m0)

m2 <- cbind(1, 1:4)
colnames(m2, do.NULL = FALSE)
colnames(m2) <- c("x","Y")
rownames(m2) <- rownames(m2, do.NULL = FALSE, prefix = "Obs.")
m2
```

---

row.names *Get and Set Row Names for Data Frames*

Description

All data frames have a row names attribute, a character vector of length the number of rows with no duplicates nor missing values.

For convenience, these are generic functions for which users can write other methods, and there are default methods for arrays. The description here is for the data.frame method.

Usage

```
row.names(x)
row.names(x) <- value
```

Arguments

x	object of class "data.frame", or any other class for which a method has been defined.
value	an object to be coerced to character unless an integer vector. It should have (after coercion) the same length as the number of rows of x with no duplicated nor missing values. NULL is also allowed: see 'Details'.

Details

A data frame has (by definition) a vector of *row names* which has length the number of rows in the data frame, and contains neither missing nor duplicated values. Where a row names sequence has been added by the software to meet this requirement, they are regarded as 'automatic'.

Row names are currently allowed to be integer or character, but for backwards compatibility (with <= 2.4.0) row.names will always return a character vector. (Use attr(x, "row.names") if you need to retrieve an integer-valued set of row names.)

Using NULL for the value resets the row names to seq_len(nrow(x)), regarded as 'automatic'.

Value

row.names returns a character vector.

row.names<- returns a data frame with the row names changed.

Note

row.names is similar to rownames for arrays, and it has a method that calls rownames for an array argument.

Row names of the form 1:n for n > 2 are stored internally in a compact form, which might be seen from C code or by deparsing but never via row.names or attr(x, "row.names"). Additionally, some names of this sort are marked as 'automatic' and handled differently by as.matrix and data.matrix (and potentially other functions). (All zero-row data frames are regarded as having automatic row.names.)

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

data.frame, rownames, names.

.row_names_info for the internal representations.

---

rowsum — *Give Column Sums of a Matrix or Data Frame, Based on a Grouping Variable*

Description

Compute column sums across rows of a numeric matrix-like object for each level of a grouping variable. rowsum is generic, with a method for data frames and a default method for vectors and matrices.

Usage

```
rowsum(x, group, reorder = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
rowsum(x, group, reorder = TRUE, na.rm = FALSE, ...)

## Default S3 method:
rowsum(x, group, reorder = TRUE, na.rm = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix, data frame or vector of numeric data. Missing values are allowed. A numeric vector will be treated as a column vector.
group	a vector or factor giving the grouping, with one element per row of x. Missing values will be treated as another group and a warning will be given.
reorder	if TRUE, then the result will be in order of sort(unique(group)), if FALSE, it will be in the order that groups were encountered.
na.rm	logical (TRUE or FALSE). Should NA (including NaN) values be discarded?
...	other arguments to be passed to or from methods

Details

The default is to reorder the rows to agree with `tapply` as in the example below. Reordering should not add noticeably to the time except when there are very many distinct values of `group` and `x` has few columns.

The original function was written by Terry Therneau, but this is a new implementation using hashing that is much faster for large matrices.

To sum over all the rows of a matrix (ie, a single `group`) use `colSums`, which should be even faster.

For integer arguments, over/underflow in forming the sum results in `NA`.

Value

A matrix or data frame containing the sums. There will be one row per unique value of `group`.

See Also

`tapply`, `aggregate`, `rowSums`

Examples

```
require(stats)

x <- matrix(runif(100), ncol = 5)
group <- sample(1:8, 20, TRUE)
(xsum <- rowsum(x, group))
## Slower versions
tapply(x, list(group[row(x)], col(x)), sum)
t(sapply(split(as.data.frame(x), group), colSums))
aggregate(x, list(group), sum)[-1]
```

---

sample *Random Samples and Permutations*

Description

`sample` takes a sample of the specified size from the elements of `x` using either with or without replacement.

Usage

```
sample(x, size, replace = FALSE, prob = NULL)

sample.int(n, size = n, replace = FALSE, prob = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	Either a vector of one or more elements from which to choose, or a positive integer. See 'Details.'
`n`	a positive number, the number of items to choose from. See 'Details.'
`size`	a non-negative integer giving the number of items to choose.
`replace`	Should sampling be with replacement?
`prob`	A vector of probability weights for obtaining the elements of the vector being sampled.

Details

If `x` has length 1, is numeric (in the sense of `is.numeric`) and `x >= 1`, sampling *via* `sample` takes place from `1:x`. *Note* that this convenience feature may lead to undesired behaviour when `x` is of varying length in calls such as `sample(x)`. See the examples.

Otherwise `x` can be any object for which `length` and subsetting by integers make sense: S3 or S4 methods for these operations will be dispatched as appropriate.

For `sample` the default for `size` is the number of items inferred from the first argument, so that `sample(x)` generates a random permutation of the elements of `x` (or `1:x`).

It is allowed to ask for `size = 0` samples with `n = 0` or a length-zero `x`, but otherwise `n > 0` or positive `length(x)` is required.

Non-integer positive numerical values of `n` or `x` will be truncated to the next smallest integer, which has to be no larger than `.Machine$integer.max`.

The optional `prob` argument can be used to give a vector of weights for obtaining the elements of the vector being sampled. They need not sum to one, but they should be non-negative and not all zero. If `replace` is true, Walker's alias method (Ripley, 1987) is used when there are more than 200 reasonably probable values: this gives results incompatible with those from < 2.2.0.

If `replace` is false, these probabilities are applied sequentially, that is the probability of choosing the next item is proportional to the weights amongst the remaining items. The number of nonzero weights must be at least `size` in this case.

`sample.int` is a bare interface in which both `n` and `size` must be supplied as integers.

As from 3.0.0, `n` can be larger than the largest integer of type `integer`, up to the largest representable integer in type `double`. Only uniform sampling is supported. Two random numbers are used to ensure uniform sampling of large integers.

Value

For `sample` a vector of length `size` with elements drawn from either `x` or from the integers `1:x`.

For `sample.int`, an integer vector of length `size` with elements from `1:n`, or a double vector if $n \geq 2^{31}$.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Ripley, B. D. (1987) *Stochastic Simulation*. Wiley.

See Also

`RNG` about random number generation.

CRAN package **sampling** for other methods of weighted sampling without replacement.

Examples

```
x <- 1:12
# a random permutation
sample(x)
# bootstrap resampling -- only if length(x) > 1 !
sample(x, replace = TRUE)

# 100 Bernoulli trials
```

```
sample(c(0,1), 100, replace = TRUE)

## More careful bootstrapping --  Consider this when using sample()
## programmatically (i.e., in your function or simulation)!

# sample()s surprise -- example
x <- 1:10
    sample(x[x >  8]) # length 2
    sample(x[x >  9]) # oops -- length 10!
    sample(x[x > 10]) # length 0

resample <- function(x, ...) x[sample.int(length(x), ...)]
resample(x[x >  8]) # length 2
resample(x[x >  9]) # length 1
resample(x[x > 10]) # length 0

## R 3.x.y only
sample.int(1e10, 12, replace = TRUE)
sample.int(1e10, 12) # not that there is much chance of duplicates
```

---

save *Save R Objects*

Description

save writes an external representation of objects to the specified file. The objects can be read back from the file at a later date by using the function load or attach (or data in some cases).

save.image() is just a short-cut for 'save my current workspace', i.e., save(list = ls(all.names = TRUE), file = ".RData", envir = .GlobalEnv). It is also what happens with q("yes").

Usage

```
save(..., list = character(),
     file = stop("file must be specified"),
     ascii = FALSE, version = NULL, envir = parent.frame(),
     compress = !ascii, compression_level,
     eval.promises = TRUE, precheck = TRUE)

save.image(file = ".RData", version = NULL, ascii = FALSE,
           compress = !ascii, safe = TRUE)
```

Arguments

...	the names of the objects to be saved (as symbols or character strings).
list	A character vector containing the names of objects to be saved.
file	a (writable binary-mode) connection or the name of the file where the data will be saved (when tilde expansion is done). Must be a file name for save.image or version = 1.
ascii	if TRUE, an ASCII representation of the data is written. The default value of ascii is FALSE which leads to a binary file being written.

version	the workspace format version to use. NULL specifies the current default format. The version used from 0.99.0 to 1.3.1 was version 1. The default format as from 1.4.0 is version 2.
envir	environment to search for objects to be saved.
compress	logical or character string specifying whether saving to a named file is to use compression. TRUE corresponds to gzip compression, and character strings "gzip", "bzip2" or "xz" specify the type of compression. Ignored when file is a connection and for workspace format version 1.
compression_level	integer: the level of compression to be used. Defaults to 6 for gzip compression and to 9 for bzip2 or xz compression.
eval.promises	logical: should objects which are promises be forced before saving?
precheck	logical: should the existence of the objects be checked before starting to save (and in particular before opening the file/connection)? Does not apply to version 1 saves.
safe	logical. If TRUE, a temporary file is used for creating the saved workspace. The temporary file is renamed to file if the save succeeds. This preserves an existing workspace file if the save fails, but at the cost of using extra disk space during the save.

Details

The names of the objects specified either as symbols (or character strings) in ... or as a character vector in list are used to look up the objects from environment envir. By default promises are evaluated, but if eval.promises = FALSE promises are saved (together with their evaluation environments). (Promises embedded in objects are always saved unevaluated.)

All platforms use the XDR (bigendian) representation of C ints and doubles in binary save-d files, and these are portable across all platforms.

ASCII saves used to be useful for moving data between platforms but are now mainly of historical interest. They can be more compact than binary saves where compression is not used, but are almost always slower to both read and write: binary saves compress much better than ASCII ones. Further, ASCII saves may not restore double/complex values exactly, and what value is restored may depend on the platform.

Default values for the ascii, compress, safe and version arguments can be modified with the "save.defaults" option (used both by save and save.image), see also the 'Examples' section. If a "save.image.defaults" option is set it is used in preference to "save.defaults" for function save.image (which allows this to have different defaults). In addition, compression_level can be part of the "save.defaults" option.

A connection that is not already open will be opened in mode "wb". Supplying a connection which is open and not in binary mode gives an error.

Compression

Large files can be reduced considerably in size by compression. A particular 46MB object was saved as 35MB without compression in 2 seconds, 22MB with gzip compression in 8 secs, 19MB with bzip2 compression in 13 secs and 9.4MB with xz compression in 40 secs. The load times were 1.3, 2.8, 5.5 and 5.7 seconds respectively. These results are indicative, but the relative performances do depend on the actual file: xz compressed unusually well here.

It is possible to compress later (with gzip, bzip2 or xz) a file saved with compress = FALSE: the effect is the same as saving with compression. Also, a saved file can be uncompressed and

re-compressed under a different compression scheme (and see resaveRdaFiles for a way to do so from within).

Parallel compression

That file can be a connection can be exploited to make use of an external parallel compression utility such as pigz (http://zlib.net/pigz/) or pbzip2 (http://compression.ca/pbzip2/) *via* a pipe connection. For example, using 8 threads,

```
con <- pipe("pigz -p8 > fname.gz", "wb")
save(myObj, file = con); close(con)

con <- pipe("pbzip2 -p8 -9 > fname.bz2", "wb")
save(myObj, file = con); close(con)

con <- pipe("xz -T8 -6 -e > fname.xz", "wb")
save(myObj, file = con); close(con)
```

where the last requires xz 5.1.1 or later (and parallel compression is only effective for large objects: at level 6 it will compress in serialized chunks of 12MB).

Warnings

The ... arguments only give the *names* of the objects to be saved: they are searched for in the environment given by the envir argument, and the actual objects given as arguments need not be those found.

Saved objects are binary files, even those saved with ascii = TRUE, so ensure that they are transferred without conversion of end-of-line markers and of 8-bit characters. The lines are delimited by LF on all platforms.

Although the default version has not changed since 1.4.0, this does not mean that saved files are necessarily backwards compatible. You will be able to load a saved image into an earlier version of unless use is made of later additions (for example, raw vectors, external pointers and some S4 objects).

One such 'later addition' was long vectors, introduced in 3.0.0 and loadable only on 64-bit platforms.

Note

The most common reason for failure is lack of write permission in the current directory. For save.image and for saving at the end of a session this will shown by messages like

```
Error in gzfile(file, "wb") : unable to open connection
In addition: Warning message:
In gzfile(file, "wb") :
  cannot open compressed file .RDataTmp,
  probable reason Permission denied
```

See Also

dput, dump, load, data.

For other interfaces to the underlying serialization format, see serialize and saveRDS.

Examples

```
x <- stats::runif(20)
y <- list(a = 1, b = TRUE, c = "oops")
save(x, y, file = "xy.RData")
save.image()
unlink("xy.RData")
unlink(".RData")

# set save defaults using option:
options(save.defaults = list(ascii = TRUE, safe = FALSE))
save.image()
unlink(".RData")
```

---

scale *Scaling and Centering of Matrix-like Objects*

Description

`scale` is generic function whose default method centers and/or scales the columns of a numeric matrix.

Usage

```
scale(x, center = TRUE, scale = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric matrix(like object).
`center`	either a logical value or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of columns of `x`.
`scale`	either a logical value or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of columns of `x`.

Details

The value of `center` determines how column centering is performed. If `center` is a numeric vector with length equal to the number of columns of `x`, then each column of `x` has the corresponding value from `center` subtracted from it. If `center` is `TRUE` then centering is done by subtracting the column means (omitting `NA`s) of `x` from their corresponding columns, and if `center` is `FALSE`, no centering is done.

The value of `scale` determines how column scaling is performed (after centering). If `scale` is a numeric vector with length equal to the number of columns of `x`, then each column of `x` is divided by the corresponding value from `scale`. If `scale` is `TRUE` then scaling is done by dividing the (centered) columns of `x` by their standard deviations if `center` is `TRUE`, and the root mean square otherwise. If `scale` is `FALSE`, no scaling is done.

The root-mean-square for a (possibly centered) column is defined as $\sqrt{\sum(x^2)/(n-1)}$, where x is a vector of the non-missing values and n is the number of non-missing values. In the case `center = TRUE`, this is the same as the standard deviation, but in general it is not. (To scale by the standard deviations without centering, use `scale(x, center = FALSE, scale = apply(x, 2, sd, na.rm = TRUE))`.)

Value

For `scale.default`, the centered, scaled matrix. The numeric centering and scalings used (if any) are returned as attributes `"scaled:center"` and `"scaled:scale"`

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`sweep` which allows centering (and scaling) with arbitrary statistics.

For working with the scale of a plot, see `par`.

Examples

```
require(stats)
x <- matrix(1:10, ncol = 2)
(centered.x <- scale(x, scale = FALSE))
cov(centered.scaled.x <- scale(x)) # all 1
```

---

scan *Read Data Values*

Description

Read data into a vector or list from the console or file.

Usage

```
scan(file = "", what = double(), nmax = -1, n = -1, sep = "",
     quote = if(identical(sep, "\n")) "" else "\"", dec = ".",
     skip = 0, nlines = 0, na.strings = "NA",
     flush = FALSE, fill = FALSE, strip.white = FALSE,
     quiet = FALSE, blank.lines.skip = TRUE, multi.line = TRUE,
     comment.char = "", allowEscapes = FALSE,
     fileEncoding = "", encoding = "unknown", text, skipNul = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`file` the name of a file to read data values from. If the specified file is `""`, then input is taken from the keyboard (or whatever `stdin()` reads if input is redirected or is embedded). (In this case input can be terminated by a blank line or an EOF signal, 'Ctrl-D' on Unix and 'Ctrl-Z' on Windows.)

Otherwise, the file name is interpreted *relative* to the current working directory (given by `getwd()`), unless it specifies an *absolute* path. Tilde-expansion is performed where supported. When running from a script, `file = "stdin"` can be used to refer to the process's `stdin` file stream.

This can be a compressed file (see `file`).

Alternatively, `file` can be a `connection`, which will be opened if necessary, and if so closed at the end of the function call. Whatever mode the connection

is opened in, any of LF, CRLF or CR will be accepted as the EOL marker for a line and so will match `sep = "\n"`.

`file` can also be a complete URL. (For the supported URL schemes, see the 'URLs' section of the help for `url`.)

To read a data file not in the current encoding (for example a Latin-1 file in a UTF-8 locale or conversely) use a `file` connection setting its `encoding` argument (or `scan`'s `fileEncoding` argument).

`what` — the `type` of `what` gives the type of data to be read. (Here 'type' is used in the sense of `typeof`.) The supported types are `logical`, `integer`, `numeric`, `complex`, `character`, `raw` and `list`. If `what` is a list, it is assumed that the lines of the data file are records each containing `length(what)` items ('fields') and the list components should have elements which are one of the first six (atomic) types listed or `NULL`, see section 'Details' below.

`nmax` — integer: the maximum number of data values to be read, or if `what` is a list, the maximum number of records to be read. If omitted or not positive or an invalid value for an integer (and `nlines` is not set to a positive value), `scan` will read to the end of `file`.

`n` — integer: the maximum number of data values to be read, defaulting to no limit. Invalid values will be ignored.

`sep` — by default, scan expects to read 'white-space' delimited input fields. Alternatively, `sep` can be used to specify a character which delimits fields. A field is always delimited by an end-of-line marker unless it is quoted.

If specified this should be the empty character string (the default) or `NULL` or a character string containing just one single-byte character.

`quote` — the set of quoting characters as a single character string or `NULL`. In a multibyte locale the quoting characters must be ASCII (single-byte).

`dec` — decimal point character. This should be a character string containing just one single-byte character. (`NULL` and a zero-length character vector are also accepted, and taken as the default.)

`skip` — the number of lines of the input file to skip before beginning to read data values.

`nlines` — if positive, the maximum number of lines of data to be read.

`na.strings` — character vector. Elements of this vector are to be interpreted as missing (`NA`) values. Blank fields are also considered to be missing values in logical, integer, numeric and complex fields.

`flush` — logical: if `TRUE`, `scan` will flush to the end of the line after reading the last of the fields requested. This allows putting comments after the last field, but precludes putting more that one record on a line.

`fill` — logical: if `TRUE`, `scan` will implicitly add empty fields to any lines with fewer fields than implied by `what`.

`strip.white` — vector of logical value(s) corresponding to items in the `what` argument. It is used only when `sep` has been specified, and allows the stripping of leading and trailing 'white space' from `character` fields (`numeric` fields are always stripped). Note: white space inside quoted strings is not stripped.

If `strip.white` is of length 1, it applies to all fields; otherwise, if `strip.white[i]` is `TRUE` *and* the `i`-th field is of mode character (because `what[i]` is) then the leading and trailing unquoted white space from field `i` is stripped.

`quiet` — logical: if `FALSE` (default), scan() will print a line, saying how many items have been read.

`blank.lines.skip`
: logical: if `TRUE` blank lines in the input are ignored, except when counting `skip` and `nlines`.

`multi.line`
: logical. Only used if `what` is a list. If `FALSE`, all of a record must appear on one line (but more than one record can appear on a single line). Note that using `fill = TRUE` implies that a record will be terminated at the end of a line.

`comment.char`
: character: a character vector of length one containing a single character or an empty string. Use `""` to turn off the interpretation of comments altogether (the default).

`allowEscapes`
: logical. Should C-style escapes such as '`\n`' be processed (the default) or read verbatim? Note that if not within quotes these could be interpreted as a delimiter (but not as a comment character).

  The escapes which are interpreted are the control characters '`\a, \b, \f, \n, \r, \t, \v`' and octal and hexadecimal representations like '`\040`' and '`\0x2A`'. Any other escaped character is treated as itself, including backslash. Note that Unicode escapes (starting '`\u`' or '`\U`': see Quotes) are never processed.

`fileEncoding`
: character string: if non-empty declares the encoding used on a file (not a connection nor the keyboard) so the character data can be re-encoded. See the 'Encoding' section of the help for `file`, and the 'R Data Import/Export Manual'.

`encoding`
: encoding to be assumed for input strings. If the value is `"latin1"` or `"UTF-8"` it is used to mark character strings as known to be in Latin-1 or UTF-8: it is not used to re-encode the input (see `fileEncoding`). See also 'Details'.

`text`
: character string: if `file` is not supplied and this is, then data are read from the value of `text` via a text connection.

`skipNul`
: logical: should nuls be skipped when reading character fields?

Details

The value of `what` can be a list of types, in which case `scan` returns a list of vectors with the types given by the types of the elements in `what`. This provides a way of reading columnar data. If any of the types is `NULL`, the corresponding field is skipped (but a `NULL` component appears in the result).

The type of `what` or its components can be one of the six atomic vector types or `NULL` (see `is.atomic`).

'White space' is defined for the purposes of this function as one or more contiguous characters from the set space, horizontal tab, carriage return and line feed. It does not include form feed nor vertical tab, but in Latin-1 and Windows 8-bit locales (but not UTF-8) 'space' includes the non-breaking space '`"\xa0"`'.

Empty numeric fields are always regarded as missing values. Empty character fields are scanned as empty character vectors, unless `na.strings` contains `""` when they are regarded as missing values.

The allowed input for a numeric field is optional whitespace followed either `NA` or an optional sign followed by a decimal or hexadecimal constant (see NumericConstants), or `NaN`, `Inf` or `infinity` (ignoring case). Out-of-range values are recorded as `Inf`, `-Inf` or `0`.

For an integer field the allowed input is optional whitespace, followed by either `NA` or an optional sign and one or more digits ('`0-9`'): all out-of-range values are converted to `NA_integer_`.

If `sep` is the default (`""`), the character '`\`' in a quoted string escapes the following character, so quotes may be included in the string by escaping them.

If sep is non-default, the fields may be quoted in the style of '.csv' files where separators inside quotes (or "") are ignored and quotes may be put inside strings by doubling them. However, if sep = "\n" it is assumed by default that one wants to read entire lines verbatim.

Quoting is only interpreted in character fields and in NULL fields (which might be skipping character fields).

Note that since sep is a separator and not a terminator, reading a file by scan("foo", sep = "\n", blank.lines.skip = FALSE) will give an empty final line if the file ends in a linefeed and not if it does not. This might not be what you expected; see also readLines.

If comment.char occurs (except inside a quoted character field), it signals that the rest of the line should be regarded as a comment and be discarded. Lines beginning with a comment character (possibly after white space with the default separator) are treated as blank lines.

There is a line-length limit of 4095 bytes when reading from the console (which may impose a lower limit: see 'An Introduction to R').

There is a check for a user interrupt every 1000 lines if what is a list, otherwise every 10000 items.

If file is a character string and fileEncoding is non-default, or if it is a not-already-open connection with a non-default encoding argument, the text is converted to UTF-8 and declared as such (and the encoding argument to scan is ignored). See the examples of readLines.

Embedded nuls in the input stream will terminate the field currently being read, with a warning once per call to scan. Setting skipNul = TRUE causes them to be ignored.

Value

if what is a list, a list of the same length and same names (as any) as what.

Otherwise, a vector of the type of what.

Character strings in the result will have a declared encoding if encoding is "latin1" or "UTF-8".

Note

The default for multi.line differs from S. To read one record per line, use flush = TRUE and multi.line = FALSE. (Note that quoted character strings can still include embedded newlines.)

If number of items is not specified, the internal mechanism re-allocates memory in powers of two and so could use up to three times as much memory as needed. (It needs both old and new copies.) If you can, specify either n or nmax whenever inputting a large vector, and nmax or nlines when inputting a large list.

Using scan on an open connection to read partial lines can lose chars: use an explicit separator to avoid this.

Having nul bytes in fields (including '\0' if allowEscapes = TRUE) may lead to interpretation of the field being terminated at the nul. They not normally present in text files – see readBin.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

read.table for more user-friendly reading of data matrices; readLines to read a file a line at a time. write.

Quotes for the details of C-style escape sequences.

readChar and readBin to read fixed or variable length character strings or binary representations of numbers a few at a time from a connection.

Examples

```
cat("TITLE extra line", "2 3 5 7", "11 13 17", file = "ex.data", sep = "\n")
pp <- scan("ex.data", skip = 1, quiet = TRUE)
scan("ex.data", skip = 1)
scan("ex.data", skip = 1, nlines = 1) # only 1 line after the skipped one
scan("ex.data", what = list("","","")) # flush is F -> read "7"
scan("ex.data", what = list("","",""), flush = TRUE)
unlink("ex.data") # tidy up

## "inline" usage
scan(text = "1 2 3")
```

---

search *Give Search Path for R Objects*

Description

Gives a list of attached *packages* (see library), and objects, usually data.frames.

Usage

```
search()
searchpaths()
```

Value

A character vector, starting with ".GlobalEnv", and ending with "package:base" which is 's **base** package required always.

searchpaths gives a similar character vector, with the entries for packages being the path to the package used to load the code.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (search.)

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer. (searchPaths.)

See Also

.packages to list just the packages on search path.

loadedNamespaces to list loaded namespaces.

attach and detach to change the search path, objects to find objects in there.

Examples

```
search()
searchpaths()
```

---

seek *Functions to Reposition Connections*

Description

Functions to re-position connections.

Usage

```
seek(con, ...)
## S3 method for class connection
seek(con, where = NA, origin = "start", rw = "", ...)

isSeekable(con)

truncate(con, ...)
```

Arguments

con	a connection.
where	numeric. A file position (relative to the origin specified by origin), or NA.
rw	character. Empty or "read" or "write", partial matches allowed.
origin	character. One of "start", "current", "end": see 'Details'.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

seek with where = NA returns the current byte offset of a connection (from the beginning), and with a non-missing where argument the connection is re-positioned (if possible) to the specified position. isSeekable returns whether the connection in principle supports seek: currently only (possibly gz-compressed) file connections do.

where is stored as a real but should represent an integer: non-integer values are likely to be truncated. Note that the possible values can exceed the largest representable number in an integer on 64-bit builds, and on some 32-bit builds.

File connections can be open for both writing/appending, in which case keeps separate positions for reading and writing. Which seek refers to can be set by its rw argument: the default is the last mode (reading or writing) which was used. Most files are only opened for reading or writing and so default to that state. If a file is open for both reading and writing but has not been used, the default is to give the reading position (0).

The initial file position for reading is always at the beginning. The initial position for writing is at the beginning of the file for modes "r+" and "r+b", otherwise at the end of the file. Some platforms only allow writing at the end of the file in the append modes. (The reported write position for a file opened in an append mode will typically be unreliable until the file has been written to.)

gzfile connections support seek with a number of limitations, using the file position of the uncompressed file. They do not support origin = "end". When writing, seeking is only possible

forwards: when reading seeking backwards is supported by rewinding the file and re-reading from its start.

If `seek` is called with a non-`NA` value of `where`, any pushback on a text-mode connection is discarded.

`truncate` truncates a file opened for writing at its current position. It works only for `file` connections, and is not implemented on all platforms: on others (including Windows) it will not work for large (> 2Gb) files.

None of these should be expected to work on text-mode connections with re-encoding selected.

Value

`seek` returns the current position (before any move), as a (numeric) byte offset from the origin, if relevant, or `0` if not. Note that the position can exceed the largest representable number in an `integer` on 64-bit builds, and on some 32-bit builds.

`truncate` returns `NULL`: it stops with an error if it fails (or is not implemented).

`isSeekable` returns a logical value, whether the connection supports `seek`.

Warning

Use of `seek` on Windows is discouraged. We have found so many errors in the Windows implementation of file positioning that users are advised to use it only at their own risk, and asked not to waste the developers' time with bug reports on Windows' deficiencies.

See Also

`connections`

`seq` *Sequence Generation*

Description

Generate regular sequences. `seq` is a standard generic with a default method. `seq.int` is a primitive which can be much faster but has a few restrictions. `seq_along` and `seq_len` are very fast primitives for two common cases.

Usage

```
seq(...)

## Default S3 method:
seq(from = 1, to = 1, by = ((to - from)/(length.out - 1)),
    length.out = NULL, along.with = NULL, ...)

seq.int(from, to, by, length.out, along.with, ...)

seq_along(along.with)
seq_len(length.out)
```

Arguments

`...`	arguments passed to or from methods.
`from, to`	the starting and (maximal) end values of the sequence. Of length `1` unless just `from` is supplied as an unnamed argument.
`by`	number: increment of the sequence.
`length.out`	desired length of the sequence. A non-negative number, which for `seq` and `seq.int` will be rounded up if fractional.
`along.with`	take the length from the length of this argument.

Details

Numerical inputs should all be finite (that is, not infinite, `NaN` or `NA`).

The interpretation of the unnamed arguments of `seq` and `seq.int` is *not* standard, and it is recommended always to name the arguments when programming.

`seq` is generic, and only the default method is described here. Note that it dispatches on the class of the **first** argument irrespective of argument names. This can have unintended consequences if it is called with just one argument intending this to be taken as `along.with`: it is much better to use `seg_along` in that case.

`seq.int` is an internal generic which dispatches on methods for `"seq"` based on the class of the first supplied argument (before argument matching).

Typical usages are

```
seq(from, to)
seq(from, to, by= )
seq(from, to, length.out= )
seq(along.with= )
seq(from)
seq(length.out= )
```

The first form generates the sequence `from, from+/-1, ..., to` (identical to `from:to`).

The second form generates `from, from+by, ...`, up to the sequence value less than or equal to `to`. Specifying `to - from` and `by` of opposite signs is an error. Note that the computed final value can go just beyond `to` to allow for rounding error, but is truncated to `to`. ('Just beyond' is by up to 10^{-10} times `abs(from - to)`.)

The third generates a sequence of `length.out` equally spaced values from `from` to `to`. (`length.out` is usually abbreviated to `length` or `len`, and `seq_len` is much faster.)

The fourth form generates the integer sequence `1, 2, ..., length(along.with)`. (`along.with` is usually abbreviated to `along`, and `seq_along` is much faster.)

The fifth form generates the sequence `1, 2, ..., length(from)` (as if argument `along.with` had been specified), *unless* the argument is numeric of length 1 when it is interpreted as `1:from` (even for `seq(0)` for compatibility with S). Using either `seq_along` or `seq_len` is much preferred (unless strict S compatibility is essential).

The final form generates the integer sequence `1, 2, ..., length.out` unless `length.out = 0`, when it generates `integer(0)`.

Very small sequences (with `from - to` of the order of 10^{-14} times the larger of the ends) will return `from`.

For seq (only), up to two of from, to and by can be supplied as complex values provided length.out or along.with is specified. More generally, the default method of seq will handle classed objects with methods for the Math, Ops and Summary group generics.

seq.int, seq_along and seq_len are primitive.

Value

seq.int and the default method of seq for numeric arguments return a vector of type "integer" or "double": programmers should not rely on which.

seq_along and seq_len return an integer vector, unless it is a *long vector* when it will be double.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

The methods seq.Date and seq.POSIXt.

:, rep, sequence, row, col.

Examples

```
seq(0, 1, length.out = 11)
seq(stats::rnorm(20)) # effectively along
seq(1, 9, by = 2)     # matches end
seq(1, 9, by = pi)    # stays below end
seq(1, 6, by = 3)
seq(1.575, 5.125, by = 0.05)
seq(17) # same as 1:17, or even better seq_len(17)
```

---

seq.Date *Generate Regular Sequences of Dates*

Description

The method for seq for objects of class class "Date" representing calendar dates.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class Date
seq(from, to, by, length.out = NULL, along.with = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

from	starting date. Required
to	end date. Optional.
by	increment of the sequence. Optional. See 'Details'.
length.out	integer, optional. Desired length of the sequence.
along.with	take the length from the length of this argument.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

by can be specified in several ways.

- A number, taken to be in days.
- A object of class `difftime`
- A character string, containing one of `"day"`, `"week"`, `"month"`, `"quarter"` or `"year"`. This can optionally be preceded by a (positive or negative) integer and a space, or followed by `"s"`.

  See `seq.POSIXt` for the details of `"month"`.

Value

A vector of class `"Date"`.

Note

Quarterly increments were specified by `by = "3 months"` prior to 3.1.0.

See Also

`Date`

Examples

```
## first days of years
seq(as.Date("1910/1/1"), as.Date("1999/1/1"), "years")
## by month
seq(as.Date("2000/1/1"), by = "month", length.out = 12)
## quarters
seq(as.Date("2000/1/1"), as.Date("2003/1/1"), by = "quarter")

## find all 7th of the month between two dates, the last being a 7th.
st <- as.Date("1998-12-17")
en <- as.Date("2000-1-7")
ll <- seq(en, st, by = "-1 month")
rev(ll[ll > st & ll < en])
```

---

seq.POSIXt *Generate Regular Sequences of Times*

Description

The method for `seq` for date-time classes.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class POSIXt
seq(from, to, by, length.out = NULL, along.with = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

from	starting date. Required.
to	end date. Optional.
by	increment of the sequence. Optional. See 'Details'.
length.out	integer, optional. Desired length of the sequence.
along.with	take the length from the length of this argument.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

by can be specified in several ways.

- A number, taken to be in seconds.
- A object of class difftime
- A character string, containing one of "sec", "min", "hour", "day", "DSTday", "week", "month", "quarter" or "year". This can optionally be preceded by a (positive or negative) integer and a space, or followed by "s".

The difference between "day" and "DSTday" is that the former ignores changes to/from daylight savings time and the latter takes the same clock time each day. ("week" ignores DST (it is a period of 144 hours), but "7 DSTdays") can be used as an alternative. "month" and "year" allow for DST.)

The time zone of the result is taken from from: remember that GMT means UTC (and not the time zone of Greenwich, England) and so does not have daylight savings time.

Using "month" first advances the month without changing the day: if this results in an invalid day of the month, it is counted forward into the next month: see the examples.

Value

A vector of class "POSIXct".

Note

Quarterly increments were specified by by = "3 months" prior to 3.1.0.

See Also

DateTimeClasses

Examples

```
## first days of years
seq(ISOdate(1910,1,1), ISOdate(1999,1,1), "years")
## by month
seq(ISOdate(2000,1,1), by = "month", length.out = 12)
seq(ISOdate(2000,1,31), by = "month", length.out = 4)
## quarters
seq(ISOdate(1990,1,1), ISOdate(2000,1,1), by = "quarter") # or "3 months"
## days vs DSTdays: use c() to lose the time zone.
seq(c(ISOdate(2000,3,20)), by = "day", length.out = 10)
seq(c(ISOdate(2000,3,20)), by = "DSTday", length.out = 10)
seq(c(ISOdate(2000,3,20)), by = "7 DSTdays", length.out = 4)
```

sequence *Create A Vector of Sequences*

Description

For each element of nvec the sequence `seq_len(nvec[i])` is created. These are concatenated and the result returned.

Usage

```
sequence(nvec)
```

Arguments

nvec	a non-negative integer vector each element of which specifies the end point of a sequence.

Details

Earlier versions of sequence used to work for 0 or negative inputs as `seq(x) == 1:x`.

Note that `sequence <- function(nvec) unlist(lapply(nvec, seq_len))` and it mainly exists in reverence to the very early history of .

See Also

gl, seq, rep.

Examples

```
sequence(c(3, 2)) # the concatenated sequences 1:3 and 1:2.
#> [1] 1 2 3 1 2
```

serialize *Simple Serialization Interface*

Description

A simple low-level interface for serializing to connections.

Usage

```
serialize(object, connection, ascii, xdr = TRUE,
          version = NULL, refhook = NULL)

unserialize(connection, refhook = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	object to serialize.
connection	an open connection or (for serialize) NULL or (for unserialize) a raw vector (see 'Details').
ascii	a logical. If TRUE, an ASCII representation is written; otherwise binary one. The default is TRUE for a text-mode connection and FALSE otherwise. See also the comments in the help for save.
xdr	a logical: if a binary representation is used, should a big-endian one (XDR) be used?
version	the workspace format version to use. NULL specifies the current default version (2). Versions prior to 2 are not supported, so this will only be relevant when there are later versions.
refhook	a hook function for handling reference objects.

Details

The function serialize serializes object to the specified connection. If connection is NULL then object is serialized to a raw vector, which is returned as the result of serialize.

Sharing of reference objects is preserved within the object but not across separate calls to serialize.

unserialize reads an object (as written by serialize) from connection or a raw vector.

The refhook functions can be used to customize handling of non-system reference objects (all external pointers and weak references, and all environments other than namespace and package environments and .GlobalEnv). The hook function for serialize should return a character vector for references it wants to handle; otherwise it should return NULL. The hook for unserialize will be called with character vectors supplied to serialize and should return an appropriate object.

For a text-mode connection, the default value of ascii is set to TRUE: only ASCII representations can be written to text-mode connections and attempting to use ascii = FALSE will throw an error.

The format consists of a single line followed by the data: the first line contains a single character: X for binary serialization and A for ASCII serialization, followed by a new line. (The format used is identical to that used by readRDS.)

The option of xdr = FALSE was introduced in 2.15.0. As almost all systems in current use are little-endian, this can be used to avoid byte-shuffling at both ends when transferring data from one little-endian machine to another. Depending on the system, this can speed up serialization and unserialization by a factor of up to 3x.

Value

For serialize, NULL unless connection = NULL, when the result is returned in a raw vector.

For unserialize an object.

Warning

These functions have provided a stable interface since 2.4.0 (when the storage of serialized objects was changed from character to raw vectors). However, the serialization format may change in future versions of , so this interface should not be used for long-term storage of objects.

On 32-bit platforms a raw vector is limited to $2^{31} - 1$ bytes, but objects can exceed this and their serializations will normally be larger than the objects.

See Also

saveRDS for a more convenient interface to serialize an object to a file or connection.

save and load to serialize and restore one or more named objects.

The 'R Internals' manual for details of the format used.

Examples

```
x <- serialize(list(1,2,3), NULL)
unserialize(x)

## see also the examples for saveRDS
```

---

sets *Set Operations*

Description

Performs **set** union, intersection, (asymmetric!) difference, equality and membership on two vectors.

Usage

```
union(x, y)
intersect(x, y)
setdiff(x, y)
setequal(x, y)

is.element(el, set)
```

Arguments

x, y, el, set	vectors (of the same mode) containing a sequence of items (conceptually) with no duplicated values.

Details

Each of union, intersect, setdiff and setequal will discard any duplicated values in the arguments, and they apply as.vector to their arguments (and so in particular coerce factors to character vectors).

is.element(x, y) is identical to x %in% y.

Value

A vector of the same mode as x or y for setdiff and intersect, respectively, and of a common mode for union.

A logical scalar for setequal and a logical of the same length as x for is.element.

See Also

%in%

'plotmath' for the use of union and intersect in plot annotation.

Examples

```
(x <- c(sort(sample(1:20, 9)), NA))
(y <- c(sort(sample(3:23, 7)), NA))
union(x, y)
intersect(x, y)
setdiff(x, y)
setdiff(y, x)
setequal(x, y)

## True for all possible x & y :
setequal( union(x, y),
          c(setdiff(x, y), intersect(x, y), setdiff(y, x)))

is.element(x, y) # length 10
is.element(y, x) # length  8
```

`setTimeLimit` *Set CPU and/or Elapsed Time Limits*

Description

Functions to set CPU and/or elapsed time limits for top-level computations or the current session.

Usage

```
setTimeLimit(cpu = Inf, elapsed = Inf, transient = FALSE)

setSessionTimeLimit(cpu = Inf, elapsed = Inf)
```

Arguments

`cpu`	double. Limit on total cpu time.
`elapsed`	double. Limit on elapsed time.
`transient`	logical. If `TRUE`, the limits apply only to the rest of the current computation.

Details

`setTimeLimit` sets limits which apply to each top-level computation, that is a command line (including any continuation lines) entered at the console or from a file. If it is called from within a computation the limits apply to the rest of the computation and (unless `transient = TRUE`) to subsequent top-level computations.

`setSessionTimeLimit` sets limits for the rest of the session. Once a session limit is reached it is reset to `Inf`.

Setting any limit has a small overhead – well under 1% on the systems measured.

Time limits are checked whenever a user interrupt could occur. This will happen frequently in code and during `Sys.sleep`, but only at points in compiled C and Fortran code identified by the code author.

'Total cpu time' includes that used by child processes where the latter is reported.

showConnections *Display Connections*

Description

Display aspects of connections.

Usage

```
showConnections(all = FALSE)
getConnection(what)
closeAllConnections()

stdin()
stdout()
stderr()

isatty(con)
```

Arguments

all	logical: if true all connections, including closed ones and the standard ones are displayed. If false only open user-created connections are included.
what	integer: a row number of the table given by showConnections.
con	a connection.

Details

stdin(), stdout() and stderr() are standard connections corresponding to input, output and error on the console respectively (and not necessarily to file streams). They are text-mode connections of class "terminal" which cannot be opened or closed, and are read-only, write-only and write-only respectively. The stdout() and stderr() connections can be re-directed by sink (and in some circumstances the output from stdout() can be split: see the help page).

The encoding for stdin() when redirected can be set by the command-line flag '--encoding'.

showConnections returns a matrix of information. If a connection object has been lost or forgotten, getConnection will take a row number from the table and return a connection object for that connection, which can be used to close the connection, for example. However, if there is no level object referring to the connection it will be closed automatically at the next garbage collection (except for gzcon connections).

closeAllConnections closes (and destroys) all user connections, restoring all sink diversions as it does so.

isatty returns true if the connection is one of the class "terminal" connections and it is apparently connected to a terminal, otherwise false. This may not be reliable in embedded applications, including GUI consoles.

Value

`stdin()`, `stdout()` and `stderr()` return connection objects.

`showConnections` returns a character matrix of information with a row for each connection, by default only for open non-standard connections.

`getConnection` returns a connection object, or `NULL`.

Note

`stdin()` refers to the 'console' and not to the C-level '`stdin`' of the process. The distinction matters in GUI consoles (which may not have an active '`stdin`', and if they do it may not be connected to console input), and also in embedded applications. If you want access to the C-level file stream '`stdin`', use `file("stdin")`.

When is reading a script from a file, the *file* is the 'console': this is traditional usage to allow in-line data (see 'An Introduction to R' for an example).

See Also

`connections`

Examples

```
showConnections(all = TRUE)
## Not run:
textConnection(letters)
# oops, I forgot to record that one
showConnections()
#  class     description      mode text   isopen   can read can write
#3 "letters" "textConnection" "r"  "text" "opened" "yes"    "no"
mycon <- getConnection(3)

## End(Not run)

c(isatty(stdin()), isatty(stdout()), isatty(stderr()))
```

`shQuote` *Quote Strings for Use in OS Shells*

Description

Quote a string to be passed to an operating system shell.

Usage

```
shQuote(string, type = c("sh", "csh", "cmd"))
```

Arguments

`string`	a character vector, usually of length one.
`type`	character: the type of shell. Partial matching is supported. `"cmd"` refers to the Windows NT shell, and is the default under Windows.

Details

The default type of quoting supported under Unix-alikes is that for the Bourne shell sh. If the string does not contain single quotes, we can just surround it with single quotes. Otherwise, the string is surrounded in double quotes, which suppresses all special meanings of metacharacters except dollar, backquote and backslash, so these (and of course double quote) are preceded by backslash. This type of quoting is also appropriate for bash, ksh and zsh.

The other type of quoting is for the C-shell (csh and tcsh). Once again, if the string does not contain single quotes, we can just surround it with single quotes. If it does contain single quotes, we can use double quotes provided it does not contain dollar or backquote (and we need to escape backslash, exclamation mark and double quote). As a last resort, we need to split the string into pieces not containing single quotes and surround each with single quotes, and the single quotes with double quotes.

References

Loukides, M. *et al* (2002) *Unix Power Tools* Third Edition. O'Reilly. Section 27.12.

See Also

Quotes for quoting code.

sQuote for quoting English text.

Examples

```
test <- "abc$defghi\\j"
cat(shQuote(test), "\n")
## Not run: system(paste("echo", shQuote(test)))
test <- "dont do it!"
cat(shQuote(test), "\n")

tryit <- paste("use the", sQuote("-c"), "switch\nlike this")
cat(shQuote(tryit), "\n")
## Not run: system(paste("echo", shQuote(tryit)))
cat(shQuote(tryit, type = "csh"), "\n")

## Windows-only example.
perlcmd <- print "Hello World\n";
## Not run: shell(paste("perl -e", shQuote(perlcmd, type = "cmd")))
```

---

sign *Sign Function*

Description

sign returns a vector with the signs of the corresponding elements of x (the sign of a real number is 1, 0, or -1 if the number is positive, zero, or negative, respectively).

Note that sign does not operate on complex vectors.

Usage

```
sign(x)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector

Details

This is an internal generic primitive function: methods can be defined for it directly or via the Math group generic.

See Also

abs

Examples

```
sign(pi)    # == 1
sign(-2:3)  # -1 -1 0 1 1 1
```

Signals *Interrupting Execution of R*

Description

On receiving SIGUSR1 will save the workspace and quit. SIGUSR2 has the same result except that the .Last function and on.exit expressions will not be called.

Usage

```
kill -USR1 pid
kill -USR2 pid
```

Arguments

pid	The process ID of the process.

Details

The commands history will also be saved if would be at normal termination.

This is not available on Windows, and possibly on other OSes which do not support these signals.

Warning

It is possible that one or more objects will be undergoing modification at the time the signal is sent. These objects could be saved in a corrupted form.

See Also

Sys.getpid to report the process ID for future use.

sink *Send R Output to a File*

Description

sink diverts output to a connection.

sink.number() reports how many diversions are in use.

sink.number(type = "message") reports the number of the connection currently being used for error messages.

Usage

```
sink(file = NULL, append = FALSE, type = c("output", "message"),
     split = FALSE)

sink.number(type = c("output", "message"))
```

Arguments

file	a writable connection or a character string naming the file to write to, or NULL to stop sink-ing.
append	logical. If TRUE, output will be appended to file; otherwise, it will overwrite the contents of file.
type	character. Either the output stream or the messages stream.
split	logical: if TRUE, output will be sent to the new sink and to the current output stream, like the Unix program tee.

Details

sink diverts output to a connection. If file is a character string, a file connection with that name will be established for the duration of the diversion.

Normal output (to connection stdout) is diverted by the default type = "output". Only prompts and (most) messages continue to appear on the console. Messages sent to stderr() (including those from message, warning and stop) can be diverted by sink(type = "message") (see below).

sink() or sink(file = NULL) ends the last diversion (of the specified type). There is a stack of diversions for normal output, so output reverts to the previous diversion (if there was one). The stack is of up to 21 connections (20 diversions).

If file is a connection it will be opened if necessary (in "wt" mode) and closed once it is removed from the stack of diversions.

split = TRUE only splits output (via Rvprintf) and the default output from writeLines: it does not split all output that might be sent to stdout().

Sink-ing the messages stream should be done only with great care. For that stream file must be an already open connection, and there is no stack of connections.

If file is a character string, the file will be opened using the current encoding. If you want a different encoding (e.g., to represent strings which have been stored in UTF-8), use a file connection — but some ways to produce output will already have converted such strings to the current encoding.

Value

`sink` returns `NULL`.

For `sink.number()` the number (0, 1, 2, ...) of diversions of output in place.

For `sink.number("message")` the connection number used for messages, 2 if no diversion has been used.

Warning

Do not use a connection that is open for `sink` for any other purpose. The software will stop you closing one such inadvertently.

Do not sink the messages stream unless you understand the source code implementing it and hence the pitfalls.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

See Also

`capture.output`

Examples

```
sink("sink-examp.txt")
i <- 1:10
outer(i, i, "*")
sink()
unlink("sink-examp.txt")

## capture all the output to a file.
zz <- file("all.Rout", open = "wt")
sink(zz)
sink(zz, type = "message")
try(log("a"))
## back to the console
sink(type = "message")
sink()
file.show("all.Rout")
```

---

slice.index *Slice Indexes in an Array*

Description

Returns a matrix of integers indicating the number of their slice in a given array.

Usage

```
slice.index(x, MARGIN)
```

Arguments

x	an array. If x has no dimension attribute, it is considered a one-dimensional array.
MARGIN	an integer giving the dimension number to slice by.

Value

An integer array y with dimensions corresponding to those of x such that all elements of slice number i with respect to dimension MARGIN have value i.

See Also

row and col for determining row and column indexes; in fact, these are special cases of slice.index corresponding to MARGIN equal to 1 and 2, respectively when x is a matrix.

Examples

```
x <- array(1 : 24, c(2, 3, 4))
slice.index(x, 2)
```

---

slotOp *Extract or Replace A Slot*

Description

Extract or replace the contents of a slot in a object with a formal (S4) class structure.

Usage

```
object@name
object@name <- value
```

Arguments

object	An object from a formally defined (S4) class.
name	The character-string name of the slot, quoted or not. Must be the name of a slot in the definition of the class of object.
value	A replacement value for the slot, which must be from a class compatible with the class defined for this slot in the definition of the class of object.

Details

These operators support the formal classes of package **methods**, and are enabled only when package **methods** is loaded (as per default). See slot for further details, in particular for the differences between slot() and the @ operator.

It is checked that object is an S4 object (see isS4), and it is an error to attempt to use @ on any other object. (There is an exception for name .Data for internal use only.) The replacement operator checks that the slot already exists on the object (which it should if the object is really from the class it claims to be).

Prior to 3.0.0 the replacement operator was in package **methods** and had a different test for validity of name.

These are internal generic operators: see InternalMethods.

Value

The current contents of the slot.

See Also

Extract, slot

---

socketSelect *Wait on Socket Connections*

Description

Waits for the first of several socket connections to become available.

Usage

```
socketSelect(socklist, write = FALSE, timeout = NULL)
```

Arguments

socklist	list of open socket connections
write	logical. If TRUE wait for corresponding socket to become available for writing; otherwise wait for it to become available for reading.
timeout	numeric or NULL. Time in seconds to wait for a socket to become available; NULL means wait indefinitely.

Details

The values in write are recycled if necessary to make up a logical vector the same length as socklist. Socket connections can appear more than once in socklist; this can be useful if you want to determine whether a socket is available for reading or writing.

Value

Logical the same length as socklist indicating whether the corresponding socket connection is available for output or input, depending on the corresponding value of write.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## test whether socket connection s is available for writing or reading
socketSelect(list(s, s), c(TRUE, FALSE), timeout = 0)

## End(Not run)
```

`solve` *Solve a System of Equations*

Description

This generic function solves the equation `a %*% x = b` for `x`, where `b` can be either a vector or a matrix.

Usage

```
solve(a, b, ...)

## Default S3 method:
solve(a, b, tol, LINPACK = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`a`	a square numeric or complex matrix containing the coefficients of the linear system. Logical matrices are coerced to numeric.
`b`	a numeric or complex vector or matrix giving the right-hand side(s) of the linear system. If missing, `b` is taken to be an identity matrix and `solve` will return the inverse of `a`.
`tol`	the tolerance for detecting linear dependencies in the columns of `a`. The default is `.Machine$double.eps`. Not currently used with complex matrices `a`.
`LINPACK`	logical. Defunct and ignored.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods

Details

`a` or `b` can be complex, but this uses double complex arithmetic which might not be available on all platforms.

The row and column names of the result are taken from the column names of `a` and of `b` respectively. If `b` is missing the column names of the result are the row names of `a`. No check is made that the column names of `a` and the row names of `b` are equal.

For back-compatibility `a` can be a (real) QR decomposition, although `qr.solve` should be called in that case. `qr.solve` can handle non-square systems.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code: these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code.

Source

The default method is an interface to the LAPACK routines `DGESV` and `ZGESV`.

LAPACK is from `http://www.netlib.org/lapack`.

References

Anderson. E. and ten others (1999) *LAPACK Users' Guide*. Third Edition. SIAM.
Available on-line at `http://www.netlib.org/lapack/lug/lapack_lug.html`.

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

solve.qr for the qr method, chol2inv for inverting from the Choleski factor backsolve, qr.solve.

Examples

```
hilbert <- function(n) { i <- 1:n; 1 / outer(i - 1, i, "+") }
h8 <- hilbert(8); h8
sh8 <- solve(h8)
round(sh8 %*% h8, 3)

A <- hilbert(4)
A[] <- as.complex(A)
## might not be supported on all platforms
try(solve(A))
```

---

sort *Sorting or Ordering Vectors*

Description

Sort (or *order*) a vector or factor (partially) into ascending or descending order. For ordering along more than one variable, e.g., for sorting data frames, see order.

Usage

```
sort(x, decreasing = FALSE, ...)

## Default S3 method:
sort(x, decreasing = FALSE, na.last = NA, ...)

sort.int(x, partial = NULL, na.last = NA, decreasing = FALSE,
         method = c("shell", "quick"), index.return = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	for sort an object with a class or a numeric, complex, character or logical vector. For sort.int, a numeric, complex, character or logical vector, or a factor.
decreasing	logical. Should the sort be increasing or decreasing? Not available for partial sorting.
...	arguments to be passed to or from methods or (for the default methods and objects without a class) to sort.int.
na.last	for controlling the treatment of NAs. If TRUE, missing values in the data are put last; if FALSE, they are put first; if NA, they are removed.
partial	NULL or a vector of indices for partial sorting.
method	character string specifying the algorithm used. Not available for partial sorting.
index.return	logical indicating if the ordering index vector should be returned as well; this is only available for a few cases, the default na.last = NA and full sorting of non-factors.

Details

sort is a generic function for which methods can be written, and sort.int is the internal method which is compatible with S if only the first three arguments are used.

The default sort method makes use of order for classed objects, which in turn makes use of the generic function xtfrm (and can be slow unless a xtfrm method has been defined or is.numeric(x) is true).

Complex values are sorted first by the real part, then the imaginary part.

The sort order for character vectors will depend on the collating sequence of the locale in use: see Comparison. The sort order for factors is the order of their levels (which is particularly appropriate for ordered factors).

If partial is not NULL, it is taken to contain indices of elements of the result which are to be placed in their correct positions in the sorted array by partial sorting. For each of the result values in a specified position, any values smaller than that one are guaranteed to have a smaller index in the sorted array and any values which are greater are guaranteed to have a bigger index in the sorted array. (This is included for efficiency, and many of the options are not available for partial sorting. It is only substantially more efficient if partial has a handful of elements, and a full sort is done (a Quicksort if possible) if there are more than 10.) Names are discarded for partial sorting.

Method "shell" uses Shellsort (an $O(n^{4/3})$ variant from Sedgewick (1986)). If x has names a stable modification is used, so ties are not reordered. (This only matters if names are present.)

Method "quick" uses Singleton (1969)'s implementation of Hoare's Quicksort method and is only available when x is numeric (double or integer) and partial is NULL. (For other types of x Shellsort is used, silently.) It is normally somewhat faster than Shellsort (perhaps 50% faster on vectors of length a million and twice as fast at a billion) but has poor performance in the rare worst case. (Peto's modification using a pseudo-random midpoint is used to make the worst case rarer.) This is not a stable sort, and ties may be reordered.

Factors with less than 100,000 levels are sorted by radix sorting when method is not supplied: see sort.list.

Value

For sort, the result depends on the S3 method which is dispatched. If x does not have a class sort.int is used and it description applies. For classed objects which do not have a specific method the default method will be used and is equivalent to x[order(x, ...)]: this depends on the class having a suitable method for [(and also that order will work, which is not the case for a class based on a list).

For sort.int the value is the sorted vector unless index.return is true, when the result is a list with components named x and ix containing the sorted numbers and the ordering index vector. In the latter case, if method == "quick" ties may be reversed in the ordering (unlike sort.list) as quicksort is not stable. NB: the index vector refers to element numbers *after removal of* NAs: see order if you want the original element numbers.

All attributes are removed from the return value (see Becker *et al*, 1988, p.146) except names, which are sorted. (If partial is specified even the names are removed.) Note that this means that the returned value has no class, except for factors and ordered factors (which are treated specially and whose result is transformed back to the original class).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Sedgewick, R. (1986) A new upper bound for Shell sort. *J. Algorithms* **7**, 159–173.

Singleton, R. C. (1969) An efficient algorithm for sorting with minimal storage: Algorithm 347. *Communications of the ACM* **12**, 185–187.

See Also

'Comparison' for how character strings are collated.

`order` for sorting on or reordering multiple variables.

`is.unsorted`. `rank`.

Examples

```
require(stats)

x <- swiss$Education[1:25]
x; sort(x); sort(x, partial = c(10, 15))

## illustrate stable sorting (of ties):
sort(c(10:3, 2:12), method = "sh", index.return = TRUE) # is stable
## $x : 2  3  3  4  4  5  5  6  6  7  7  8  8  9  9 10 10 11 12
## $ix: 9  8 10  7 11  6 12  5 13  4 14  3 15  2 16  1 17 18 19
sort(c(10:3, 2:12), method = "qu", index.return = TRUE) # is not
## $x : 2  3  3  4  4  5  5  6  6  7  7  8  8  9  9 10 10 11 12
## $ix: 9 10  8  7 11  6 12  5 13  4 14  3 15 16  2 17  1 18 19

x <- c(1:3, 3:5, 10)
is.unsorted(x)                  # FALSE: is sorted
is.unsorted(x, strictly = TRUE) # TRUE : is not (and cannot be)
                                # sorted strictly
## Not run:
## Small speed comparison simulation:
N <- 2000
Sim <- 20
rep <- 1000 # << adjust to your CPU
c1 <- c2 <- numeric(Sim)
for(is in seq_len(Sim)){
  x <- rnorm(N)
  c1[is] <- system.time(for(i in 1:rep) sort(x, method = "shell"))[1]
  c2[is] <- system.time(for(i in 1:rep) sort(x, method = "quick"))[1]
  stopifnot(sort(x, method = "s") == sort(x, method = "q"))
}
rbind(ShellSort = c1, QuickSort = c2)
cat("Speedup factor of quick sort():\n")
summary({qq <- c1 / c2; qq[is.finite(qq)]})

## A larger test
x <- rnorm(1e7)
system.time(x1 <- sort(x, method = "shell"))
system.time(x2 <- sort(x, method = "quick"))
stopifnot(identical(x1, x2))

## End(Not run)
```

source *Read R Code from a File or a Connection*

Description

source causes to accept its input from the named file or URL or connection. Input is read and parsed from that file until the end of the file is reached, then the parsed expressions are evaluated sequentially in the chosen environment.

Usage

```
source(file, local = FALSE, echo = verbose, print.eval = echo,
       verbose = getOption("verbose"),
       prompt.echo = getOption("prompt"),
       max.deparse.length = 150, chdir = FALSE,
       encoding = getOption("encoding"),
       continue.echo = getOption("continue"),
       skip.echo = 0, keep.source = getOption("keep.source"))
```

Arguments

file	a connection or a character string giving the pathname of the file or URL to read from. "" indicates the connection stdin().
local	TRUE, FALSE or an environment, determining where the parsed expressions are evaluated. FALSE (the default) corresponds to the user's workspace (the global environment) and TRUE to the environment from which source is called.
echo	logical; if TRUE, each expression is printed after parsing, before evaluation.
print.eval	logical; if TRUE, the result of eval(i) is printed for each expression i; defaults to the value of echo.
verbose	if TRUE, more diagnostics (than just echo = TRUE) are printed during parsing and evaluation of input, including extra info for **each** expression.
prompt.echo	character; gives the prompt to be used if echo = TRUE.
max.deparse.length	integer; is used only if echo is TRUE and gives the maximal number of characters output for the deparse of a single expression.
chdir	logical; if TRUE and file is a pathname, the working directory is temporarily changed to the directory containing file for evaluating.
encoding	character vector. The encoding(s) to be assumed when file is a character string: see file. A possible value is "unknown" when the encoding is guessed: see the 'Encodings' section.
continue.echo	character; gives the prompt to use on continuation lines if echo = TRUE.
skip.echo	integer; how many comment lines at the start of the file to skip if echo = TRUE.
keep.source	logical: should the source formatting be retained when echoing expressions, if possible?

Details

Note that running code via source differs in a few respects from entering it at the command line. Since expressions are not executed at the top level, auto-printing is not done. So you will need to include explicit print calls for things you want to be printed (and remember that this includes plotting by **lattice**, FAQ Q7.22). Since the complete file is parsed before any of it is run, syntax errors result in none of the code being run. If an error occurs in running a syntactically correct script, anything assigned into the workspace by code that has been run will be kept (just as from the command line), but diagnostic information such as traceback() will contain additional calls to withVisible.

All versions of accept input from a connection with end of line marked by LF (as used on Unix), CRLF (as used on DOS/Windows) or CR (as used on classic Mac OS) and map this to newline. The final line can be incomplete, that is missing the final end-of-line marker.

If keep.source is true (the default in interactive use), the source of functions is kept so they can be listed exactly as input.

Unlike input from a console, lines in the file or on a connection can contain an unlimited number of characters.

When skip.echo > 0, that many comment lines at the start of the file will not be echoed. This does not affect the execution of the code at all. If there are executable lines within the first skip.echo lines, echoing will start with the first of them.

If echo is true and a deparsed expression exceeds max.deparse.length, that many characters are output followed by .... [TRUNCATED] .

Encodings

By default the input is read and parsed in the current encoding of the session. This is usually what it required, but occasionally re-encoding is needed, e.g. if a file from a UTF-8-using system is to be read on Windows (or *vice versa*).

The rest of this paragraph applies if file is an actual filename or URL (and not "" nor a connection). If encoding = "unknown", an attempt is made to guess the encoding: the result of localeToCharset() is used as a guide. If encoding has two or more elements, they are tried in turn until the file/URL can be read without error in the trial encoding. If an actual encoding is specified (rather than the default or "unknown") in a Latin-1 or UTF-8 locale then character strings in the result will be translated to the current encoding and marked as such (see Encoding).

If file is a connection (including one specified by ""), it is not possible to re-encode the input inside source, and so the encoding argument is just used to mark character strings in the parsed input in Latin-1 and UTF-8 locales: see parse.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

demo which uses source; eval, parse and scan; options("keep.source").

sys.source which is a streamlined version to source a file into an environment.

'The R Language Definition' for a discussion of source directives.

Examples

```
## If you want to source() a bunch of files, something like
## the following may be useful:
 sourceDir <- function(path, trace = TRUE, ...) {
    for (nm in list.files(path, pattern = "[.][RrSsQq]$")) {
       if(trace) cat(nm,":")
       source(file.path(path, nm), ...)
       if(trace) cat("\n")
    }
 }
```

`Special` *Special Functions of Mathematics*

Description

Special mathematical functions related to the beta and gamma functions.

Usage

```
beta(a, b)
lbeta(a, b)

gamma(x)
lgamma(x)
psigamma(x, deriv = 0)
digamma(x)
trigamma(x)

choose(n, k)
lchoose(n, k)
factorial(x)
lfactorial(x)
```

Arguments

`a, b`	non-negative numeric vectors.
`x, n`	numeric vectors.
`k, deriv`	integer vectors.

Details

The functions `beta` and `lbeta` return the beta function and the natural logarithm of the beta function,

$$B(a,b) = \frac{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b)}{\Gamma(a+b)}.$$

The formal definition is

$$B(a,b) = \int_0^1 t^{a-1}(1-t)^{b-1}dt$$

(Abramowitz and Stegun section 6.2.1, page 258). Note that it is only defined in for non-negative `a` and `b`, and is infinite if either is zero.

The functions gamma and lgamma return the gamma function $\Gamma(x)$ and the natural logarithm of *the absolute value of* the gamma function. The gamma function is defined by (Abramowitz and Stegun section 6.1.1, page 255)

$$\Gamma(x) = \int_0^\infty t^{x-1} e^{-t} dt$$

for all real x except zero and negative integers (when NaN is returned). There will be a warning on possible loss of precision for values which are too close (within about 10^{-8})) to a negative integer less than '-10'.

factorial(x) ($x!$ for non-negative integer x) is defined to be gamma(x+1) and lfactorial to be lgamma(x+1).

The functions digamma and trigamma return the first and second derivatives of the logarithm of the gamma function. psigamma(x, deriv) (deriv >= 0) computes the deriv-th derivative of $\psi(x)$.

$$\texttt{digamma(x)} = \psi(x) = \frac{d}{dx} \ln \Gamma(x) = \frac{\Gamma'(x)}{\Gamma(x)}$$

ψ and its derivatives, the psigamma() functions, are often called the 'polygamma' functions, e.g. in Abramowitz and Stegun (section 6.4.1, page 260); and higher derivatives (deriv = 2:4) have occasionally been called 'tetragamma', 'pentagamma', and 'hexagamma'.

The functions choose and lchoose return binomial coefficients and the logarithms of their absolute values. Note that choose(n, k) is defined for all real numbers n and integer k. For $k \geq 1$ it is defined as $n(n-1)\cdots(n-k+1)/k!$, as 1 for $k = 0$ and as 0 for negative k. Non-integer values of k are rounded to an integer, with a warning.
choose(*, k) uses direct arithmetic (instead of [l]gamma calls) for small k, for speed and accuracy reasons. Note the function combn (package **utils**) for enumeration of all possible combinations.

The gamma, lgamma, digamma and trigamma functions are internal generic primitive functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the Math group generic.

Source

gamma, lgamma, beta and lbeta are based on C translations of Fortran subroutines by W. Fullerton of Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory (now available as part of SLATEC).

digamma, trigamma and psigamma are based on

Amos, D. E. (1983). A portable Fortran subroutine for derivatives of the psi function, Algorithm 610, *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software* **9(4)**, 494–502.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (For gamma and lgamma.)

Abramowitz, M. and Stegun, I. A. (1972) *Handbook of Mathematical Functions*. New York: Dover. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abramowitz_and_Stegun provides links to the full text which is in public domain.
Chapter 6: Gamma and Related Functions.

See Also

Arithmetic for simple, sqrt for miscellaneous mathematical functions and Bessel for the real Bessel functions.

For the incomplete gamma function see pgamma.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

choose(5, 2)
for (n in 0:10) print(choose(n, k = 0:n))

factorial(100)
lfactorial(10000)

## gamma has 1st order poles at 0, -1, -2, ...
## this will generate loss of precision warnings, so turn off
op <- options("warn")
options(warn = -1)
x <- sort(c(seq(-3, 4, length.out = 201), outer(0:-3, (-1:1)*1e-6, "+")))
plot(x, gamma(x), ylim = c(-20,20), col = "red", type = "l", lwd = 2,
     main = expression(Gamma(x)))
abline(h = 0, v = -3:0, lty = 3, col = "midnightblue")
options(op)

x <- seq(0.1, 4, length.out = 201); dx <- diff(x)[1]
par(mfrow = c(2, 3))
for (ch in c("", "l","di","tri","tetra","penta")) {
  is.deriv <- nchar(ch) >= 2
  nm <- paste0(ch, "gamma")
  if (is.deriv) {
    dy <- diff(y) / dx # finite difference
    der <- which(ch == c("di","tri","tetra","penta")) - 1
    nm2 <- paste0("psigamma(*, deriv = ", der,")")
    nm  <- if(der >= 2) nm2 else paste(nm, nm2, sep = " ==\n")
    y <- psigamma(x, deriv = der)
  } else {
    y <- get(nm)(x)
  }
  plot(x, y, type = "l", main = nm, col = "red")
  abline(h = 0, col = "lightgray")
  if (is.deriv) lines(x[-1], dy, col = "blue", lty = 2)
}
par(mfrow = c(1, 1))

## "Extended" Pascal triangle:
fN <- function(n) formatC(n, width=2)
for (n in -4:10) {
    cat(fN(n),":", fN(choose(n, k = -2:max(3, n+2))))
    cat("\n")
}

## R code version of choose()  [simplistic; warning for k < 0]:
mychoose <- function(r, k)
    ifelse(k <= 0, (k == 0),
           sapply(k, function(k) prod(r:(r-k+1))) / factorial(k))
k <- -1:6
cbind(k = k, choose(1/2, k), mychoose(1/2, k))

## Binomial theorem for n = 1/2 ;
## sqrt(1+x) = (1+x)^(1/2) = sum_{k=0}^Inf  choose(1/2, k) * x^k :
k <- 0:10 # 10 is sufficient for ~ 9 digit precision:
```

```
sqrt(1.25)
sum(choose(1/2, k)* .25^k)
```

---

split *Divide into Groups and Reassemble*

Description

split divides the data in the vector x into the groups defined by f. The replacement forms replace values corresponding to such a division. unsplit reverses the effect of split.

Usage

```
split(x, f, drop = FALSE, ...)
split(x, f, drop = FALSE, ...) <- value
unsplit(value, f, drop = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	vector or data frame containing values to be divided into groups.
f	a 'factor' in the sense that as.factor(f) defines the grouping, or a list of such factors in which case their interaction is used for the grouping.
drop	logical indicating if levels that do not occur should be dropped (if f is a factor or a list).
value	a list of vectors or data frames compatible with a splitting of x. Recycling applies if the lengths do not match.
...	further potential arguments passed to methods.

Details

split and split<- are generic functions with default and data.frame methods. The data frame method can also be used to split a matrix into a list of matrices, and the replacement form likewise, provided they are invoked explicitly.

unsplit works with lists of vectors or data frames (assumed to have compatible structure, as if created by split). It puts elements or rows back in the positions given by f. In the data frame case, row names are obtained by unsplitting the row name vectors from the elements of value.

f is recycled as necessary and if the length of x is not a multiple of the length of f a warning is printed.

Any missing values in f are dropped together with the corresponding values of x.

The default method calls interaction. If the levels of the factors contain '.' they may not be split as expected, so the method has argument sep which is use to join the levels.

Value

The value returned from split is a list of vectors containing the values for the groups. The components of the list are named by the levels of f (after converting to a factor, or if already a factor and drop = TRUE, dropping unused levels).

The replacement forms return their right hand side. unsplit returns a vector or data frame for which split(x, f) equals value

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`cut` to categorize numeric values.

`strsplit` to split strings.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
n <- 10; nn <- 100
g <- factor(round(n * runif(n * nn)))
x <- rnorm(n * nn) + sqrt(as.numeric(g))
xg <- split(x, g)
boxplot(xg, col = "lavender", notch = TRUE, varwidth = TRUE)
sapply(xg, length)
sapply(xg, mean)

### Calculate z-scores by group (standardize to mean zero, variance one)
z <- unsplit(lapply(split(x, g), scale), g)

# or

zz <- x
split(zz, g) <- lapply(split(x, g), scale)

# and check that the within-group std dev is indeed one
tapply(z, g, sd)
tapply(zz, g, sd)


### data frame variation

## Notice that assignment form is not used since a variable is being added

g <- airquality$Month
l <- split(airquality, g)
l <- lapply(l, transform, Oz.Z = scale(Ozone))
aq2 <- unsplit(l, g)
head(aq2)
with(aq2, tapply(Oz.Z,  Month, sd, na.rm = TRUE))


### Split a matrix into a list by columns
ma <- cbind(x = 1:10, y = (-4:5)^2)
split(ma, col(ma))

split(1:10, 1:2)
```

sprintf *Use C-style String Formatting Commands*

Description

A wrapper for the C function sprintf, that returns a character vector containing a formatted combination of text and variable values.

Usage

```
sprintf(fmt, ...)
gettextf(fmt, ..., domain = NULL)
```

Arguments

fmt	a character vector of format strings, each of up to 8192 bytes.
...	values to be passed into fmt. Only logical, integer, real and character vectors are supported, but some coercion will be done: see the 'Details' section.
domain	see gettext.

Details

sprintf is a wrapper for the system sprintf C-library function. Attempts are made to check that the mode of the values passed match the format supplied, and 's special values (NA, Inf, -Inf and NaN) are handled correctly.

gettextf is a convenience function which provides C-style string formatting with possible translation of the format string.

The arguments (including fmt) are recycled if possible a whole number of times to the length of the longest, and then the formatting is done in parallel. Zero-length arguments are allowed and will give a zero-length result. All arguments are evaluated even if unused, and hence some types (e.g., "symbol" or "language", see typeof) are not allowed.

The following is abstracted from Kernighan and Ritchie (see References): however the actual implementation will follow the C99 standard and fine details (especially the behaviour under user error) may depend on the platform.

The string fmt contains normal characters, which are passed through to the output string, and also conversion specifications which operate on the arguments provided through .... The allowed conversion specifications start with a % and end with one of the letters in the set aAdifeEgGosxX%. These letters denote the following types:

d, i, o, x, X Integer value, o being octal, x and X being hexadecimal (using the same case for a-f as the code). Numeric variables with exactly integer values will be coerced to integer. Formats d and i can also be used for logical variables, which will be converted to 0, 1 or NA.

f Double precision value, in "**f**ixed point" decimal notation of the form "[-]mmm.ddd". The number of decimal places ("d") is specified by the precision: the default is 6; a precision of 0 suppresses the decimal point. Non-finite values are converted to NA, NaN or (perhaps a sign followed by) Inf.

e, E Double precision value, in "**e**xponential" decimal notation of the form [-]m.ddde[+-]xx or [-]m.dddE[+-]xx.

`g`, `G` Double precision value, in `%e` or `%E` format if the exponent is less than -4 or greater than or equal to the precision, and `%f` format otherwise. (The precision (default 6) specifies the number of *significant* digits here, whereas in `%f`, `%e`, it is the number of digits after the decimal point.)

`a`, `A` Double precision value, in binary notation of the form `[-]0xh.hhhp[+-]d`. This is a binary fraction expressed in hex multiplied by a (decimal) power of 2. The number of hex digits after the decimal point is specified by the precision: the default is enough digits to represent exactly the internal binary representation. Non-finite values are converted to `NA`, `NaN` or (perhaps a sign followed by) `Inf`. Format `%a` uses lower-case for `x`, `p` and the hex values: format `%A` uses upper-case.

This should be supported on all platforms as it is a feature of C99. The format is not uniquely defined: although it would be possible to make the leading `h` always zero or one, this is not always done. Most systems will suppress trailing zeros, but a few do not. On a well-written platform, for normal numbers there will be a leading one before the decimal point plus (by default) 13 hexadecimal digits, hence 53 bits. The treatment of denormalized (aka 'subnormal') numbers is very platform-dependent.

`s` Character string. Character `NA`s are converted to `"NA"`.

`%` Literal `%` (none of the extra formatting characters given below are permitted in this case).

Conversion by `as.character` is used for non-character arguments with `s` and by `as.double` for non-double arguments with `f, e, E, g, G`. NB: the length is determined before conversion, so do not rely on the internal coercion if this would change the length. The coercion is done only once, so if `length(fmt) > 1` then all elements must expect the same types of arguments.

In addition, between the initial `%` and the terminating conversion character there may be, in any order:

`m.n` Two numbers separated by a period, denoting the field width (`m`) and the precision (`n`).

`-` Left adjustment of converted argument in its field.

`+` Always print number with sign: by default only negative numbers are printed with a sign.

a space Prefix a space if the first character is not a sign.

`0` For numbers, pad to the field width with leading zeros. For characters, this zero-pads on some platforms and is ignored on others.

`#` specifies "alternate output" for numbers, its action depending on the type: For `x` or `X`, `0x` or `0X` will be prefixed to a non-zero result. For `e`, `e`, `f`, `g` and `G`, the output will always have a decimal point; for `g` and `G`, trailing zeros will not be removed.

Further, immediately after `%` may come `1$` to `99$` to refer to numbered argument: this allows arguments to be referenced out of order and is mainly intended for translators of error messages. If this is done it is best if all formats are numbered: if not the unnumbered ones process the arguments in order. See the examples. This notation allows arguments to be used more than once, in which case they must be used as the same type (integer, double or character).

A field width or precision (but not both) may be indicated by an asterisk `*`: in this case an argument specifies the desired number. A negative field width is taken as a '-' flag followed by a positive field width. A negative precision is treated as if the precision were omitted. The argument should be integer, but a double argument will be coerced to integer.

There is a limit of 8192 bytes on elements of `fmt`, and on strings included from a single *%letter* conversion specification.

Field widths and precisions of `%s` conversions are interpreted as bytes, not characters, as described in the C standard.

The C doubles used for numerical vectors have signed zeros, which `sprintf` may output as `-0`, `-0.000` ....

Value

A character vector of length that of the longest input. If any element of `fmt` or any character argument is declared as UTF-8, the element of the result will be in UTF-8 and have the encoding declared as UTF-8. Otherwise it will be in the current locale's encoding.

Warning

The format string is passed down the OS's `sprintf` function, and incorrect formats can cause the latter to crash the process . does perform sanity checks on the format, but not all possible user errors on all platforms have been tested, and some might be terminal.

The behaviour on inputs not documented here is 'undefined', which means it is allowed to differ by platform.

Author(s)

Original code by Jonathan Rougier.

References

Kernighan, B. W. and Ritchie, D. M. (1988) *The C Programming Language.* Second edition, Prentice Hall. Describes the format options in table B-1 in the Appendix.

The C Standards, especially ISO/IEC 9899:1999 for 'C99'. Links can be found at http://developer.r-project.org/Portability.html.

`man sprintf` on a Unix-alike system.

See Also

`formatC` for a way of formatting vectors of numbers in a similar fashion.

`paste` for another way of creating a vector combining text and values.

`gettext` for the mechanisms for the automated translation of text.

Examples

```
## be careful with the format: most things in R are floats
## only integer-valued reals get coerced to integer.

sprintf("%s is %f feet tall\n", "Sven", 7.1)      # OK
try(sprintf("%s is %i feet tall\n", "Sven", 7.1)) # not OK
    sprintf("%s is %i feet tall\n", "Sven", 7  )  # OK

## use a literal % :

sprintf("%.0f%% said yes (out of a sample of size %.0f)", 66.666, 3)

## various formats of pi :

sprintf("%f", pi)
sprintf("%.3f", pi)
sprintf("%1.0f", pi)
sprintf("%5.1f", pi)
sprintf("%05.1f", pi)
sprintf("%+f", pi)
sprintf("% f", pi)
```

```
sprintf("%-10f", pi) # left justified
sprintf("%e", pi)
sprintf("%E", pi)
sprintf("%g", pi)
sprintf("%g",   1e6 * pi) # -> exponential
sprintf("%.9g", 1e6 * pi) # -> "fixed"
sprintf("%G", 1e-6 * pi)

## no truncation:
sprintf("%1.f", 101)

## re-use one argument three times, show difference between %x and %X
xx <- sprintf("%1$d %1$x %1$X", 0:15)
xx <- matrix(xx, dimnames = list(rep("", 16), "%d%x%X"))
noquote(format(xx, justify = "right"))

## More sophisticated:

sprintf("min 10-char string %10s",
        c("a", "ABC", "and an even longer one"))

## Platform-dependent bad example from qdapTools 1.0.0:
## may pad with spaces or zeroes.
sprintf("%09s", month.name)

n <- 1:18
sprintf(paste0("e with %2d digits = %.", n, "g"), n, exp(1))

## Using arguments out of order
sprintf("second %2$1.0f, first %1$5.2f, third %3$1.0f", pi, 2, 3)

## Using asterisk for width or precision
sprintf("precision %.*f, width %*.3f", 3, pi, 8, pi)

## Asterisk and argument re-use, e example reiterated:
sprintf("e with %1$2d digits = %2$.*1$g", n, exp(1))

## re-cycle arguments
sprintf("%s %d", "test", 1:3)

## binary output showing rounding/representation errors
x <- seq(0, 1.0, 0.1); y <- c(0,.1,.2,.3,.4,.5,.6,.7,.8,.9,1)
cbind(x, sprintf("%a", x), sprintf("%a", y))
```

---

sQuote *Quote Text*

Description

Single or double quote text by combining with appropriate single or double left and right quotation marks.

Usage

```
sQuote(x)
dQuote(x)
```

Arguments

x	an object, to be coerced to a character vector.

Details

The purpose of the functions is to provide a simple means of markup for quoting text to be used in the R output, e.g., in warnings or error messages.

The choice of the appropriate quotation marks depends on both the locale and the available character sets. Older Unix/X11 fonts displayed the grave accent (ASCII code 0x60) and the apostrophe (0x27) in a way that they could also be used as matching open and close single quotation marks. Using modern fonts, or non-Unix systems, these characters no longer produce matching glyphs. Unicode provides left and right single quotation mark characters (U+2018 and U+2019); if Unicode markup cannot be assumed to be available, it seems good practice to use the apostrophe as a non-directional single quotation mark.

Similarly, Unicode has left and right double quotation mark characters (U+201C and U+201D); if only ASCII's typewriter characteristics can be employed, than the ASCII quotation mark (0x22) should be used as both the left and right double quotation mark.

Some other locales also have the directional quotation marks, notably on Windows. TeX uses grave and apostrophe for the directional single quotation marks, and doubled grave and doubled apostrophe for the directional double quotation marks.

What rendering is used depend on the `options` setting for `useFancyQuotes`. If this is `FALSE` then the undirectional ASCII quotation style is used. If this is `TRUE` (the default), Unicode directional quotes are used are used where available (currently, UTF-8 locales on Unix-alikes and all Windows locales except `C`): if set to `"UTF-8"` UTF-8 markup is used (whatever the current locale). If set to `"TeX"`, TeX-style markup is used. Finally, if this is set to a character vector of length four, the first two entries are used for beginning and ending single quotes and the second two for beginning and ending double quotes: this can be used to implement non-English quoting conventions such as the use of guillemets.

Where fancy quotes are used, you should be aware that they may not be rendered correctly as not all fonts include the requisite glyphs: for example some have directional single quotes but not directional double quotes.

Value

A character vector of the same length as `x` (after any coercion) in the current locale's encoding.

References

Markus Kuhn, "ASCII and Unicode quotation marks". http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/ucs/quotes.html

See Also

Quotes for quoting code.

`shQuote` for quoting OS commands.

Examples

```
op <- options("useFancyQuotes")
paste("argument", sQuote("x"), "must be non-zero")
options(useFancyQuotes = FALSE)
```

```
cat("\ndistinguish plain", sQuote("single"), "and",
    dQuote("double"), "quotes\n")
options(useFancyQuotes = TRUE)
cat("\ndistinguish fancy", sQuote("single"), "and",
    dQuote("double"), "quotes\n")
options(useFancyQuotes = "TeX")
cat("\ndistinguish TeX", sQuote("single"), "and",
    dQuote("double"), "quotes\n")
if(l10n_info()$Latin-1) {
    options(useFancyQuotes = c("\xab", "\xbb", "\xbf", "?"))
    cat("\n", sQuote("guillemet"), "and",
        dQuote("Spanish question"), "styles\n")
} else if(l10n_info()$UTF-8) {
    options(useFancyQuotes = c("\xc2\xab", "\xc2\xbb", "\xc2\xbf", "?"))
    cat("\n", sQuote("guillemet"), "and",
        dQuote("Spanish question"), "styles\n")
}
options(op)
```

`srcfile` *References to source files*

Description

These functions are for working with source files.

Usage

```
srcfile(filename, encoding = getOption("encoding"), Enc = "unknown")
srcfilecopy(filename, lines, timestamp = Sys.time(), isFile = FALSE)
srcfilealias(filename, srcfile)
getSrcLines(srcfile, first, last)
srcref(srcfile, lloc)
## S3 method for class srcfile
print(x, ...)
## S3 method for class srcfile
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class srcfile
open(con, line, ...)
## S3 method for class srcfile
close(con, ...)
## S3 method for class srcref
print(x, useSource = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class srcref
summary(object, useSource = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class srcref
as.character(x, useSource = TRUE, ...)
.isOpen(srcfile)
```

Arguments

`filename`	The name of a file.

encoding	The character encoding to assume for the file.
Enc	The encoding with which to make strings: see the encoding argument of parse.
lines	A character vector of source lines. Other objects will be coerced to character.
timestamp	The timestamp to use on a copy of a file.
isFile	Is this srcfilecopy known to come from a file system file?
srcfile	A srcfile object.
first, last, line	Line numbers.
lloc	A vector of four, six or eight values giving a source location; see 'Details'.
x, object, con	An object of the appropriate class.
useSource	Whether to read the srcfile to obtain the text of a srcref.
...	Additional arguments to the methods; these will be ignored.

Details

These functions and classes handle source code references.

The srcfile function produces an object of class srcfile, which contains the name and directory of a source code file, along with its timestamp, for use in source level debugging (not yet implemented) and source echoing. The encoding of the file is saved; see file for a discussion of encodings, and iconvlist for a list of allowable encodings on your platform.

The srcfilecopy function produces an object of the descendant class srcfilecopy, which saves the source lines in a character vector. It copies the value of the isFile argument, to help debuggers identify whether this text comes from a real file in the file system.

The srcfilealias function produces an object of the descendant class srcfilealias, which gives an alternate name to another srcfile. This is produced by the parser when a #line directive is used.

The getSrcLines function reads the specified lines from srcfile.

The srcref function produces an object of class srcref, which describes a range of characters in a srcfile. The lloc value gives the following values:

```
c(first_line, first_byte, last_line, last_byte, first_column,
  last_column, first_parsed, last_parsed)
```

. Bytes (elements 2, 4) and columns (elements 5, 6) may be different due to multibyte characters. If only four values are given, the columns and bytes are assumed to match. Lines (elements 1, 3) and parsed lines (elements 7, 8) may differ if a #line directive is used in code: the former will respect the directive, the latter will just count lines. If only 4 or 6 elements are given, the parsed lines will be assumed to match the lines.

Methods are defined for print, summary, open, and close for classes srcfile and srcfilecopy. The open method opens its internal file connection at a particular line; if it was already open, it will be repositioned to that line.

Methods are defined for print, summary and as.character for class srcref. The as.character method will read the associated source file to obtain the text corresponding to the reference. The exact behaviour depends on the class of the source file. If the source file inherits from class "srcfilecopy", the lines are taken from the saved copy using the "parsed" line counts. If not, an attempt is made to read the file, and the original line numbers of the srcref record (i.e., elements 1 and 3) are used. If an error occurs (e.g., the file no longer exists), text like <srcref: "file" chars 1:1 to 2:10> will be returned instead, indicating the line:column ranges of the first and last character. The summary method defaults to this type of display.

Lists of `srcref` objects may be attached to expressions as the `"srcref"` attribute. (The list of `srcref` objects should be the same length as the expression.) By default, expressions are printed by `print.default` using the associated `srcref`. To see deparsed code instead, call `print` with argument `useSource = FALSE`. If a `srcref` object is printed with `useSource = FALSE`, the `<srcref: ...>` record will be printed.

`.isOpen` is intended for internal use: it checks whether the connection associated with a `srcfile` object is open.

Value

`srcfile` returns a `srcfile` object.

`srcfilecopy` returns a `srcfilecopy` object.

`getSrcLines` returns a character vector of source code lines.

`srcref` returns a `srcref` object.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

See Also

`getSrcFilename` for extracting information from a source reference.

Examples

```
 # has timestamp
src <- srcfile(system.file("DESCRIPTION", package = "base"))
summary(src)
getSrcLines(src, 1, 4)
ref <- srcref(src, c(1, 1, 2, 1000))
ref
print(ref, useSource = FALSE)
```

`Startup` *Initialization at Start of an R Session*

Description

In , the startup mechanism is as follows.

Unless '`--no-environ`' was given on the command line, searches for site and user files to process for setting environment variables. The name of the site file is the one pointed to by the environment variable `R_ENVIRON`; if this is unset, '*R_HOME*`/etc/Renviron.site`' is used (if it exists, which it does not in a 'factory-fresh' installation). The name of the user file can be specified by the `R_ENVIRON_USER` environment variable; if this is unset, the files searched for are '`.Renviron`' in the current or in the user's home directory (in that order). See 'Details' for how the files are read.

Then searches for the site-wide startup profile file of code unless the command line option '`--no-site-file`' was given. The path of this file is taken from the value of the `R_PROFILE` environment variable (after tilde expansion). If this variable is unset, the default is '*R_HOME*`/etc/Rprofile.site`', which is used if it exists (which it does not in a 'factory-fresh'

installation). This code is sourced into the **base** package. Users need to be careful not to unintentionally overwrite objects in **base**, and it is normally advisable to use `local` if code needs to be executed: see the examples.

Then, unless '`--no-init-file`' was given, searches for a user profile, a file of code. The path of this file can be specified by the `R_PROFILE_USER` environment variable (and tilde expansion will be performed). If this is unset, a file called '`.Rprofile`' is searched for in the current directory or in the user's home directory (in that order). The user profile file is sourced into the workspace.

Note that when the site and user profile files are sourced only the **base** package is loaded, so objects in other packages need to be referred to by e.g. `utils::dump.frames` or after explicitly loading the package concerned.

then loads a saved image of the user workspace from '`.RData`' in the current directory if there is one (unless '`--no-restore-data`' or '`--no-restore`' was specified on the command line).

Next, if a function `.First` is found on the search path, it is executed as `.First()`. Finally, function `.First.sys()` in the **base** package is run. This calls `require` to attach the default packages specified by `options("defaultPackages")`. If the **methods** package is included, this will have been attached earlier (by function `.OptRequireMethods()`) so that namespace initializations such as those from the user workspace will proceed correctly.

A function `.First` (and `.Last`) can be defined in appropriate '`.Rprofile`' or '`Rprofile.site`' files or have been saved in '`.RData`'. If you want a different set of packages than the default ones when you start, insert a call to `options` in the '`.Rprofile`' or '`Rprofile.site`' file. For example, `options(defaultPackages = character())` will attach no extra packages on startup (only the **base** package) (or set `R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES=NULL` as an environment variable before running). Using `options(defaultPackages = "")` or `R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES=""` enforces the R *system* default.

On front-ends which support it, the commands history is read from the file specified by the environment variable `R_HISTFILE` (default '`.Rhistory`' in the current directory) unless '`--no-restore-history`' or '`--no-restore`' was specified.

The command-line option '`--vanilla`' implies '`--no-site-file`', '`--no-init-file`', '`--no-environ`' and (except for `R CMD`) '`--no-restore`'

Details

Note that there are two sorts of files used in startup: *environment files* which contain lists of environment variables to be set, and *profile files* which contain code.

Lines in a site or user environment file should be either comment lines starting with `#`, or lines of the form *name=value*. The latter sets the environmental variable *name* to *value*, overriding an existing value. If *value* contains an expression of the form `${foo-bar}`, the value is that of the environmental variable `foo` if that exists and is set to a non-empty value, otherwise `bar`. (If it is of the form `${foo}`, the default is `""`.) This construction can be nested, so `bar` can be of the same form (as in `${foo-${bar-blah}}`). Note that the braces are essential: for example `$HOME` will not be interpreted.

Leading and trailing white space in *value* are stripped. *value* is then processed in a similar way to a Unix shell: in particular the outermost level of (single or double) quotes is stripped, and backslashes are removed except inside quotes.

On systems with sub-architectures (mainly Windows), the files '`Renviron.site`' and '`Rprofile.site`' are looked for first in architecture-specific directories, e.g. '*R_HOME*`/etc/i386/Renviron.site`'. And e.g. '`.Renviron.i386`' will be used in preference to '`.Renviron`'.

Note

It is not intended that there be interaction with the user during startup code. Attempting to do so can crash the process, especially so prior to 3.0.2.

On Unix versions of here is also a file '*R_HOME*`/etc/Renviron`' which is read very early in the start-up processing. It contains environment variables set by in the configure process. Values in that file can be overridden in site or user environment files: do not change '*R_HOME*`/etc/Renviron`' itself. Note that this is distinct from '*R_HOME*`/etc/Renviron.site`'.

Command-line options may well not apply to alternative front-ends: they do not apply to `R.app` on OS X.

`R CMD check` and `R CMD build` do not always read the standard startup files, but they do always read specific '`Renviron`' files. The location of these can be controlled by the environment variables `R_CHECK_ENVIRON` and `R_BUILD_ENVIRON`. If these are set their value is used as the path for the '`Renviron`' file; otherwise, files '`~/.R/check.Renviron`' or '`~/.R/build.Renviron`' or sub-architecture-specific versions are employed.

If you want '`~/.Renviron`' or '`~/.Rprofile`' to be ignored by child processes (such as those run by `R CMD check` and `R CMD build`), set the appropriate environment variable `R_ENVIRON_USER` or `R_PROFILE_USER` to (if possible, which it is not on Windows) `""` or to the name of a non-existent file.

See Also

For the definition of the 'home' directory on Windows see the '`rw-FAQ`' Q2.14. It can be found from a running by `Sys.getenv("R_USER")`.

`.Last` for final actions at the close of an session. `commandArgs` for accessing the command line arguments.

There are examples of using startup files to set defaults for graphics devices in the help for `X11` and `quartz`.

An Introduction to R for more command-line options: those affecting memory management are covered in the help file for Memory.

`readRenviron` to read '`.Renviron`' files.

For profiling code, see `Rprof`.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Example ~/.Renviron on Unix
R_LIBS=~/R/library
PAGER=/usr/local/bin/less

## Example .Renviron on Windows
R_LIBS=C:/R/library
MY_TCLTK="c:/Program Files/Tcl/bin"

## Example of setting R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES (from R CMD check)
R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES=utils,grDevices,graphics,stats
# this loads the packages in the order given, so they appear on
# the search path in reverse order.

## Example of .Rprofile
options(width=65, digits=5)
options(show.signif.stars=FALSE)
```

```
setHook(packageEvent("grDevices", "onLoad"),
        function(...) grDevices::ps.options(horizontal=FALSE))
set.seed(1234)
.First <- function() cat("\n   Welcome to R!\n\n")
.Last <- function()  cat("\n   Goodbye!\n\n")

## Example of Rprofile.site
local({
  # add MASS to the default packages, set a CRAN mirror
  old <- getOption("defaultPackages"); r <- getOption("repos")
  r["CRAN"] <- "http://my.local.cran"
  options(defaultPackages = c(old, "MASS"), repos = r)
  ## (for Unix terminal users) set the width from COLUMNS if set
  cols <- Sys.getenv("COLUMNS")
  if(nzchar(cols)) options(width = as.integer(cols))
  # interactive sessions get a fortune cookie (needs fortunes package)
  if (interactive())
    fortunes::fortune()
})

## if .Renviron contains
FOOBAR="coo\bar"doh\ex"abc\"def"

## then we get
# > cat(Sys.getenv("FOOBAR"), "\n")
# coo\bardoh\exabc"def

## End(Not run)
```

---

stop *Stop Function Execution*

Description

stop stops execution of the current expression and executes an error action.

geterrmessage gives the last error message.

Usage

```
stop(..., call. = TRUE, domain = NULL)
geterrmessage()
```

Arguments

...	zero or more objects which can be coerced to character (and which are pasted together with no separator) or a single condition object.
call.	logical, indicating if the call should become part of the error message.
domain	see gettext. If NA, messages will not be translated.

Details

The error action is controlled by error handlers established within the executing code and by the current default error handler set by `options(error=)`. The error is first signaled as if using `signalCondition()`. If there are no handlers or if all handlers return, then the error message is printed (if `options("show.error.messages")` is true) and the default error handler is used. The default behaviour (the `NULL` error-handler) in interactive use is to return to the top level prompt or the top level browser, and in non-interactive use to (effectively) call `q("no", status = 1, runLast = FALSE)`. The default handler stores the error message in a buffer; it can be retrieved by `geterrmessage()`. It also stores a trace of the call stack that can be retrieved by `traceback()`.

Errors will be truncated to `getOption("warning.length")` characters, default 1000.

If a condition object is supplied it should be the only argument, and further arguments will be ignored, with a warning.

Value

`geterrmessage` gives the last error message, as a character string ending in `"\n"`.

Note

Use `domain = NA` whenever `...` contain a result from `gettextf()` as that is translated already.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`warning`, `try` to catch errors and retry, and `options` for setting error handlers. `stopifnot` for validity testing. `tryCatch` and `withCallingHandlers` can be used to establish custom handlers while executing an expression.

`gettext` for the mechanisms for the automated translation of messages.

Examples

```
options(error = expression(NULL))
# dont stop on stop(.)  << Use with CARE! >>

iter <- 12
if(iter > 10) stop("too many iterations")

tst1 <- function(...) stop("dummy error")
tst1(1:10, long, calling, expression)

tst2 <- function(...) stop("dummy error", call. = FALSE)
tst2(1:10, longcalling, expression, but.not.seen.in.Error)

options(error = NULL)  # restore to default
```

stopifnot *Ensure the Truth of R Expressions*

Description

If any of the expressions in ... are not all TRUE, stop is called, producing an error message indicating the *first* of the elements of ... which were not true.

Usage

```
stopifnot(...)
```

Arguments

...	any number of (logical) expressions, which should evaluate to TRUE.

Details

This function is intended for use in regression tests or also argument checking of functions, in particular to make them easier to read.

stopifnot(A, B) is conceptually equivalent to

```
{   if(any(is.na(A)) || !all(A)) stop(...) ;
      if(any(is.na(B)) || !all(B)) stop(...) }
```

Value

(NULL if all statements in ... are TRUE.)

See Also

stop, warning; assertCondition in package **tools** complements stopifnot() for testing warnings and errors.

Examples

```
stopifnot(1 == 1, all.equal(pi, 3.14159265), 1 < 2) # all TRUE

m <- matrix(c(1,3,3,1), 2, 2)
stopifnot(m == t(m), diag(m) == rep(1, 2)) # all(.) |=>  TRUE

op <- options(error = expression(NULL))
# "disable stop(.)"  << Use with CARE! >>

stopifnot(all.equal(pi, 3.141593),  2 < 2, all(1:10 < 12), "a" < "b")
stopifnot(all.equal(pi, 3.1415927), 2 < 2, all(1:10 < 12), "a" < "b")

options(op)  # revert to previous error handler
```

strptime *Date-time Conversion Functions to and from Character*

Description

Functions to convert between character representations and objects of classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" representing calendar dates and times.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class POSIXct
format(x, format = "", tz = "", usetz = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class POSIXlt
format(x, format = "", usetz = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class POSIXt
as.character(x, ...)

strftime(x, format = "", tz = "", usetz = FALSE, ...)
strptime(x, format, tz = "")
```

Arguments

x	An object to be converted: a character vector for strptime, an object which can be converted to "POSIXlt" for strftime.
tz	A character string specifying the time zone to be used for the conversion. System-specific (see as.POSIXlt), but "" is the current time zone, and "GMT" is UTC. Invalid values are most commonly treated as UTC, on some platforms with a warning.
format	A character string. The default for the format methods is "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S" if any element has a time component which is not midnight, and "%Y-%m-%d" otherwise. If options("digits.secs") is set, up to the specified number of digits will be printed for seconds.
...	Further arguments to be passed from or to other methods.
usetz	logical. Should the time zone be appended to the output? This is used in printing times, and more reliable than using "%Z".

Details

The format and as.character methods and strftime convert objects from the classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" to character vectors.

strptime converts character vectors to class "POSIXlt": its input x is first converted by as.character. Each input string is processed as far as necessary for the format specified: any trailing characters are ignored.

strftime is a wrapper for format.POSIXlt, and it and format.POSIXct first convert to class "POSIXlt" by calling as.POSIXlt (so they also work for class "Date"). Note that only that conversion depends on the time zone.

The usual vector re-cycling rules are applied to x and format so the answer will be of length of the longer of these vectors.

Locale-specific conversions to and from character strings are used where appropriate and available. This affects the names of the days and months, the AM/PM indicator (if used) and the separators in formats such as `%x` and `%X`, via the setting of the `LC_TIME` locale category. The 'current locale' of the descriptions might mean the locale in use at the start of the session or when these functions are first used.

The details of the formats are platform-specific, but the following are likely to be widely available: most are defined by the POSIX standard. A *conversion specification* is introduced by `%`, usually followed by a single letter or `O` or `E` and then a single letter. Any character in the format string not part of a conversion specification is interpreted literally (and `%%` gives `%`). Widely implemented conversion specifications include

`%a` Abbreviated weekday name in the current locale. (Also matches full name on input.)

`%A` Full weekday name in the current locale. (Also matches abbreviated name on input.)

`%b` Abbreviated month name in the current locale. (Also matches full name on input.)

`%B` Full month name in the current locale. (Also matches abbreviated name on input.)

`%c` Date and time. Locale-specific on output, `"%a %b %e %H:%M:%S %Y"` on input.

`%C` Century (00–99): the integer part of the year divided by 100.

`%d` Day of the month as decimal number (01–31).

`%D` Date format such as `%m/%d/%y`: ISO C99 says it should be that exact format.

`%e` Day of the month as decimal number (1–31), with a leading space for a single-digit number.

`%F` Equivalent to %Y-%m-%d (the ISO 8601 date format).

`%g` The last two digits of the week-based year (see `%V`). (Accepted but ignored on input.)

`%G` The week-based year (see `%V`) as a decimal number. (Accepted but ignored on input.)

`%h` Equivalent to `%b`.

`%H` Hours as decimal number (00–23). As a special exception strings such as '`24:00:00`' are accepted for input, since ISO 8601 allows these.

`%I` Hours as decimal number (01–12).

`%j` Day of year as decimal number (001–366).

`%m` Month as decimal number (01–12).

`%M` Minute as decimal number (00–59).

`%n` Newline on output, arbitrary whitespace on input.

`%p` AM/PM indicator in the locale. Used in conjunction with `%I` and **not** with `%H`. An empty string in some locales (and the behaviour is undefined if used for input in such a locale).

Some platforms accept `%P` for output, which uses a lower-case version: others will output `P`.

`%r` The 12-hour clock time (using the locale's AM or PM). Only defined in some locales.

`%R` Equivalent to `%H:%M`.

`%S` Second as decimal number (00–61), allowing for up to two leap-seconds (but POSIX-compliant implementations will ignore leap seconds).

`%t` Tab on output, arbitrary whitespace on input.

`%T` Equivalent to `%H:%M:%S`.

`%u` Weekday as a decimal number (1–7, Monday is 1).

`%U` Week of the year as decimal number (00–53) using Sunday as the first day 1 of the week (and typically with the first Sunday of the year as day 1 of week 1). The US convention.

`%V` Week of the year as decimal number (01–53) as defined in ISO 8601. If the week (starting on Monday) containing 1 January has four or more days in the new year, then it is considered week 1. Otherwise, it is the last week of the previous year, and the next week is week 1. (Accepted but ignored on input.)

`%w` Weekday as decimal number (0–6, Sunday is 0).

`%W` Week of the year as decimal number (00–53) using Monday as the first day of week (and typically with the first Monday of the year as day 1 of week 1). The UK convention.

`%x` Date. Locale-specific on output, `"%y/%m/%d"` on input.

`%X` Time. Locale-specific on output, `"%H:%M:%S"` on input.

`%y` Year without century (00–99). On input, values 00 to 68 are prefixed by 20 and 69 to 99 by 19 – that is the behaviour specified by the 2004 and 2008 POSIX standards, but they do also say 'it is expected that in a future version the default century inferred from a 2-digit year will change'.

`%Y` Year with century. Note that whereas there was no zero in the original Gregorian calendar, ISO 8601:2004 defines it to be valid (interpreted as 1BC): see `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/0_(year)`. Note that the standards also say that years before 1582 in its calendar should only be used with agreement of the parties involved.

For input, only years `0:9999` are accepted.

`%z` Signed offset in hours and minutes from UTC, so `-0800` is 8 hours behind UTC. Values up to `+1400` are accepted as from 3.1.1: previous versions only accepted up to `+1200`. (Standard only for output.)

`%Z` (Output only.) Time zone abbreviation as a character string (empty if not available). This may not be reliable when a time zone has changed abbreviations over the years.

Where leading zeros are shown they will be used on output but are optional on input. Names are matched case-insensitively on input: whether they are capitalized on output depends on the platform and the locale. Note that abbreviated names are platform-specific (although the standards specify that in the 'C' locale they must be the first three letters of the capitalized English name: this convention is widely used in English-language locales but for example French month abbreviations are not the same on any of Linux, OS X, Solaris and Windows).

When `%z` or `%Z` is used for output with an object with an assigned time zone an attempt is made to use the values for that time zone — but it is not guaranteed to succeed.

Not in the standards and less widely implemented are

`%k` The 24-hour clock time with single digits preceded by a blank.

`%l` The 12-hour clock time with single digits preceded by a blank.

`%s` (Output only.) The number of seconds since the epoch.

`%+` (Output only.) Similar to `%c`, often `"%a %b %e %H:%M:%S %Z %Y"`. May depend on the locale.

For output there are also `%O[dHImMUVwWy]` which may emit numbers in an alternative locale-dependent format (e.g., roman numerals), and `%E[cCyYxX]` which can use an alternative 'era' (e.g., a different religious calendar). Which of these are supported is OS-dependent. These are accepted for input, but with the standard interpretation.

Specific to is `%OSn`, which for output gives the seconds truncated to `0 <= n <= 6` decimal places (and if `%OS` is not followed by a digit, it uses the setting of `getOption("digits.secs")`, or if that is unset, `n = 3`). Further, for `strptime` `%OS` will input seconds including fractional seconds. Note that `%S` ignores (and not rounds) fractional parts on output.

The behaviour of other conversion specifications (and even if other character sequences commencing with `%` *are* conversion specifications) is system-specific. Some systems document that the use of multi-byte characters in `format` is unsupported: UTF-8 locales are unlikely to cause a problem.

Value

The format methods and strftime return character vectors representing the time. NA times are returned as NA_character_.

strptime turns character representations into an object of class "POSIXlt". The time zone is used to set the isdst component and to set the "tzone" attribute if tz != "". If the specified time is invalid (for example '"2010-02-30 08:00"') all the components of the result are NA. (NB: this does means exactly what it says – if it is an invalid time, not just a time that does not exist in some time zone.)

Printing years

Everyone agrees that years from 1000 to 9999 should be printed with 4 digits, but the standards do not define what is to be done outside that range. For years 0 to 999 most OSes pad with zeros or spaces to 4 characters, and Linux outputs just the number.

OS facilities will probably not print years before 1 CE (aka 1 AD) 'correctly' (they tend to assume the existence of a year 0: see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/0_(year), and some OSes get them completely wrong). Common formats are -45 and -045.

Years after 9999 and before -999 are normally printed with five or more characters.

Some platforms support modifiers from POSIX 2008 (and others). On Linux the format "%04Y" assures a minimum of four characters and zero-padding. The internal code (as used on Windows and by default on OS X) uses zero-padding by default, and formats %_4Y and %_Y can be used for space padding and no padding.

Time zone offsets

Offsets from GMT (also known as UTC) are part of the conversion between timezones and to/from class "POSIXct", but cause difficulties as they often computed incorrectly.

They conventionally have the opposite sign from time-zone specifications (see Sys.timezone): positive values are East of the meridian. Although there have been time zones with offsets like 00:09:21 (Paris in 1900), and 00:44:30 (Liberia until 1972), offsets are usually treated as whole numbers of minutes, and are most often seen in RFC 822 email headers in forms like -0800 (e.g., used on the Pacific coast of the US in winter).

Format %z can be used for input or output: it is a character string, conventionally plus or minus followed by two digits for hours and two for minutes: the standards say that an empty string should be output if the offset is unknown, but some systems use the offsets for the time zone in use for the current year.

Note

The default formats follow the rules of the ISO 8601 international standard which expresses a day as "2001-02-28" and a time as "14:01:02" using leading zeroes as here. (The ISO form uses no space to separate dates and times: does by default.)

For strptime the input string need not specify the date completely: it is assumed that unspecified seconds, minutes or hours are zero, and an unspecified year, month or day is the current one. Some components may be returned as NA (but an unknown tzone component is represented by an empty string).

If the time zone specified is invalid on your system, what happens is system-specific but it will probably be ignored.

Remember that in most time zones some times do not occur and some occur twice because of transitions to/from 'daylight saving' (also known as 'summer') time. strptime does not validate

such times (it does not assume a specific time zone), but conversion by as.POSIXct will do so. Conversion by strftime and formatting/printing uses OS facilities and may return nonsensical results for non-existent times at DST transitions.

Much less comprehensive support for output specifications was provided on Windows before 3.1.0.

In a C locale %c is required to be "%a %b %e %H:%M:%S %Y". As Windows does not comply (and uses a date format not understood outside N. America), that format is used by on Windows in all locales.

That %A %a %B %b on input match both full and abbreviated names caused problems in some locales prior to 3.0.3: e.g. in French on OS X 'juillet' was matched by jui, the abbreviation for June.

References

International Organization for Standardization (2004, 2000, ...) *ISO 8601. Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times.* For links to versions available on-line see (at the time of writing) http://dotat.at/tmp/ISO_8601-2004_E.pdf and http://www.qsl.net/g1smd/isopdf.htm; for information on the current official version, see http://www.iso.org/iso/iso8601.

The POSIX 1003.1 standard, which is in some respects stricter than ISO 8601.

See Also

DateTimeClasses for details of the date-time classes; locales to query or set a locale.

Your system's help page on strftime to see how to specify their formats. (On some systems, including Windows, strftime is replaced by more comprehensive internal code.)

Examples

```
## locale-specific version of date()
format(Sys.time(), "%a %b %d %X %Y %Z")

## time to sub-second accuracy (if supported by the OS)
format(Sys.time(), "%H:%M:%OS3")

## read in date info in format ddmmmyyyy
## This will give NA(s) in some locales; setting the C locale
## as in the commented lines will overcome this on most systems.
## lct <- Sys.getlocale("LC_TIME"); Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", "C")
x <- c("1jan1960", "2jan1960", "31mar1960", "30jul1960")
z <- strptime(x, "%d%b%Y")
## Sys.setlocale("LC_TIME", lct)
z

## read in date/time info in format m/d/y h:m:s
dates <- c("02/27/92", "02/27/92", "01/14/92", "02/28/92", "02/01/92")
times <- c("23:03:20", "22:29:56", "01:03:30", "18:21:03", "16:56:26")
x <- paste(dates, times)
strptime(x, "%m/%d/%y %H:%M:%S")

## time with fractional seconds
z <- strptime("20/2/06 11:16:16.683", "%d/%m/%y %H:%M:%OS")
z # prints without fractional seconds
op <- options(digits.secs = 3)
z
options(op)
```

```
## time zones name are not portable, but EST5EDT comes pretty close.
(x <- strptime(c("2006-01-08 10:07:52", "2006-08-07 19:33:02"),
               "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S", tz = "EST5EDT"))
attr(x, "tzone")

## An RFC 822 header (Eastern Canada, during DST)
strptime("Tue, 23 Mar 2010 14:36:38 -0400",  "%a, %d %b %Y %H:%M:%S %z")
```

`strsplit` *Split the Elements of a Character Vector*

Description

Split the elements of a character vector `x` into substrings according to the matches to substring `split` within them.

Usage

```
strsplit(x, split, fixed = FALSE, perl = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	character vector, each element of which is to be split. Other inputs, including a factor, will give an error.
`split`	character vector (or object which can be coerced to such) containing regular expression(s) (unless `fixed = TRUE`) to use for splitting. If empty matches occur, in particular if `split` has length 0, `x` is split into single characters. If `split` has length greater than 1, it is re-cycled along `x`.
`fixed`	logical. If `TRUE` match `split` exactly, otherwise use regular expressions. Has priority over `perl`.
`perl`	logical. Should Perl-compatible regexps be used?
`useBytes`	logical. If `TRUE` the matching is done byte-by-byte rather than character-by-character, and inputs with marked encodings are not converted. This is forced (with a warning) if any input is found which is marked as `"bytes"` (see `Encoding`).

Details

Argument `split` will be coerced to character, so you will see uses with `split = NULL` to mean `split = character(0)`, including in the examples below.

Note that splitting into single characters can be done *via* `split = character(0)` or `split = ""`; the two are equivalent. The definition of 'character' here depends on the locale: in a single-byte locale it is a byte, and in a multi-byte locale it is the unit represented by a 'wide character' (almost always a Unicode code point).

A missing value of `split` does not split the corresponding element(s) of `x` at all.

The algorithm applied to each input string is

```
repeat {
    if the string is empty
        break.
    if there is a match
        add the string to the left of the match to the output.
        remove the match and all to the left of it.
    else
        add the string to the output.
        break.
}
```

Note that this means that if there is a match at the beginning of a (non-empty) string, the first element of the output is `""`, but if there is a match at the end of the string, the output is the same as with the match removed.

Invalid inputs in the current locale are warned about up to 5 times.

Value

A list of the same length as `x`, the `i`-th element of which contains the vector of splits of `x[i]`.

If any element of `x` or `split` is declared to be in UTF-8 (see `Encoding`), all non-ASCII character strings in the result will be in UTF-8 and have their encoding declared as UTF-8. For `perl = TRUE, useBytes = FALSE` all non-ASCII strings in a multibyte locale are translated to UTF-8.

Note

Prior to 2.11.0 there was an argument `extended` which could be used to select 'basic' regular expressions: this was often used when `fixed = TRUE` would be preferable.

See Also

`paste` for the reverse, `grep` and `sub` for string search and manipulation; also `nchar`, `substr`.

'regular expression' for the details of the pattern specification.

Examples

```
noquote(strsplit("A text I want to display with spaces", NULL)[[1]])

x <- c(as = "asfef", qu = "qwerty", "yuiop[", "b", "stuff.blah.yech")
# split x on the letter e
strsplit(x, "e")

unlist(strsplit("a.b.c", "."))
## [1] "" "" "" "" ""
## Note that split is a regexp!
## If you really want to split on ., use
unlist(strsplit("a.b.c", "[.]"))
## [1] "a" "b" "c"
## or
unlist(strsplit("a.b.c", ".", fixed = TRUE))

## a useful function: rev() for strings
strReverse <- function(x)
        sapply(lapply(strsplit(x, NULL), rev), paste, collapse = "")
```

```
strReverse(c("abc", "Statistics"))

## get the first names of the members of R-core
a <- readLines(file.path(R.home("doc"),"AUTHORS"))[-(1:8)]
a <- a[(0:2)-length(a)]
(a <- sub(" .*","", a))
# and reverse them
strReverse(a)

## Note that final empty strings are not produced:
strsplit(paste(c("", "a", ""), collapse="#"), split="#")[[1]]
# [1] ""  "a"
## and also an empty string is only produced before a definite match:
strsplit("", " ")[[1]]    # character(0)
strsplit(" ", " ")[[1]]   # [1] ""
```

`strtoi` *Convert Strings to Integers*

Description

Convert strings to integers according to the given base using the C function `strtol`, or choose a suitable base following the C rules.

Usage

```
strtoi(x, base = 0L)
```

Arguments

`x`	a character vector, or something coercible to this by `as.character`.
`base`	an integer which is between 2 and 36 inclusive, or zero (default).

Details

Conversion is based on the C library function `strtol`.

For the default `base = 0L`, the base chosen from the string representation of that element of `x`, so different elements can have different bases (see the first example). The standard C rules for choosing the base are that octal constants (prefix `0` not followed by `x` or `X`) and hexadecimal constants (prefix `0x` or `0X`) are interpreted as base `8` and `16`; all other strings are interpreted as base `10`.

For a base greater than `10`, letters `a` to `z` (or `A` to `Z`) are used to represent `10` to `35`.

Value

An integer vector of the same length as `x`. Values which cannot be interpreted as integers or would overflow are returned as `NA_integer_`.

See Also

For decimal strings `as.integer` is equally useful.

Examples

```
strtoi(c("0xff", "077", "123"))
strtoi(c("ffff", "FFFF"), 16L)
strtoi(c("177", "377"), 8L)
```

`strtrim` *Trim Character Strings to Specified Display Widths*

Description

Trim character strings to specified display widths.

Usage

```
strtrim(x, width)
```

Arguments

`x`	a character vector, or an object which can be coerced to a character vector by `as.character`.
`width`	Positive integer values: recycled to the length of `x`.

Details

'Width' is interpreted as the display width in a monospaced font. What happens with non-printable characters (such as backspace, tab) is implementation-dependent and may depend on the locale (e.g., they may be included in the count or they may be omitted).

Using this function rather than `substr` is important when there might be double-width (e.g., Chinese/Japanese/Korean) characters in the character vector.

Value

A character vector of the same length and with the same attributes as `x` (after possible coercion).

Elements of the result will have the encoding declared as that of the current locale (see `Encoding`) if the corresponding input had a declared encoding and the current locale is either Latin-1 or UTF-8.

Examples

```
strtrim(c("abcdef", "abcdef", "abcdef"), c(1,5,10))
```

`structure` *Attribute Specification*

Description

`structure` returns the given object with further attributes set.

Usage

```
structure(.Data, ...)
```

Arguments

`.Data`	an object which will have various attributes attached to it.
`...`	attributes, specified in `tag = value` form, which will be attached to data.

Details

Adding a class `"factor"` will ensure that numeric codes are given integer storage mode.

For historical reasons (these names are used when deparsing), attributes `".Dim"`, `".Dimnames"`, `".Names"`, `".Tsp"` and `".Label"` are renamed to `"dim"`, `"dimnames"`, `"names"`, `"tsp"` and `"levels"`.

It is possible to give the same tag more than once, in which case the last value assigned wins. As with other ways of assigning attributes, using `tag = NULL` removes attribute `tag` from `.Data` if it is present.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`attributes`, `attr`.

Examples

```
structure(1:6, dim = 2:3)
```

strwrap *Wrap Character Strings to Format Paragraphs*

Description

Each character string in the input is first split into paragraphs (or lines containing whitespace only). The paragraphs are then formatted by breaking lines at word boundaries. The target columns for wrapping lines and the indentation of the first and all subsequent lines of a paragraph can be controlled independently.

Usage

```
strwrap(x, width = 0.9 * getOption("width"), indent = 0,
        exdent = 0, prefix = "", simplify = TRUE, initial = prefix)
```

Arguments

x	a character vector, or an object which can be converted to a character vector by as.character.
width	a positive integer giving the target column for wrapping lines in the output.
indent	a non-negative integer giving the indentation of the first line in a paragraph.
exdent	a non-negative integer specifying the indentation of subsequent lines in paragraphs.
prefix, initial	a character string to be used as prefix for each line except the first, for which initial is used.
simplify	a logical. If TRUE, the result is a single character vector of line text; otherwise, it is a list of the same length as x the elements of which are character vectors of line text obtained from the corresponding element of x. (Hence, the result in the former case is obtained by unlisting that of the latter.)

Details

Whitespace (space, tab or newline characters) in the input is destroyed. Double spaces after periods, question and explanation marks (thought as representing sentence ends) are preserved. Currently, possible sentence ends at line breaks are not considered specially.

Indentation is relative to the number of characters in the prefix string.

Value

A character vector in the current locale's encoding (if simplify is TRUE), or a list of such character vectors.

Examples

```
## Read in file THANKS.
x <- paste(readLines(file.path(R.home("doc"), "THANKS")), collapse = "\n")
## Split into paragraphs and remove the first three ones
x <- unlist(strsplit(x, "\n[ \t\n]*\n"))[-(1:3)]
## Join the rest
```

```
x <- paste(x, collapse = "\n\n")
## Now for some fun:
writeLines(strwrap(x, width = 60))
writeLines(strwrap(x, width = 60, indent = 5))
writeLines(strwrap(x, width = 60, exdent = 5))
writeLines(strwrap(x, prefix = "THANKS> "))

## Note that messages are wrapped AT the target column indicated by
## width (and not beyond it).
## From an R-devel posting by J. Hosking <jh910@juno.com>.
x <- paste(sapply(sample(10, 100, replace = TRUE),
           function(x) substring("aaaaaaaaaa", 1, x)), collapse = " ")
sapply(10:40,
       function(m)
       c(target = m, actual = max(nchar(strwrap(x, m)))))
```

`subset` *Subsetting Vectors, Matrices and Data Frames*

Description

Return subsets of vectors, matrices or data frames which meet conditions.

Usage

```
subset(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
subset(x, subset, ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
subset(x, subset, select, drop = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
subset(x, subset, select, drop = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	object to be subsetted.
`subset`	logical expression indicating elements or rows to keep: missing values are taken as false.
`select`	expression, indicating columns to select from a data frame.
`drop`	passed on to `[` indexing operator.
`...`	further arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

This is a generic function, with methods supplied for matrices, data frames and vectors (including lists). Packages and users can add further methods.

For ordinary vectors, the result is simply `x[subset & !is.na(subset)]`.

For data frames, the `subset` argument works on the rows. Note that `subset` will be evaluated in the data frame, so columns can be referred to (by name) as variables in the expression (see the examples).

The `select` argument exists only for the methods for data frames and matrices. It works by first replacing column names in the selection expression with the corresponding column numbers in the data frame and then using the resulting integer vector to index the columns. This allows the use of the standard indexing conventions so that for example ranges of columns can be specified easily, or single columns can be dropped (see the examples).

The `drop` argument is passed on to the indexing method for matrices and data frames: note that the default for matrices is different from that for indexing.

Factors may have empty levels after subsetting; unused levels are not automatically removed. See `droplevels` for a way to drop all unused levels from a data frame.

Value

An object similar to `x` contain just the selected elements (for a vector), rows and columns (for a matrix or data frame), and so on.

Warning

This is a convenience function intended for use interactively. For programming it is better to use the standard subsetting functions like `[`, and in particular the non-standard evaluation of argument `subset` can have unanticipated consequences.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard and Brian Ripley

See Also

`[`, `transform` `droplevels`

Examples

```
subset(airquality, Temp > 80, select = c(Ozone, Temp))
subset(airquality, Day == 1, select = -Temp)
subset(airquality, select = Ozone:Wind)

with(airquality, subset(Ozone, Temp > 80))

## sometimes requiring a logical subset argument is a nuisance
nm <- rownames(state.x77)
start_with_M <- nm %in% grep("^M", nm, value = TRUE)
subset(state.x77, start_with_M, Illiteracy:Murder)
# but in recent versions of R this can simply be
subset(state.x77, grepl("^M", nm), Illiteracy:Murder)
```

substitute *Substituting and Quoting Expressions*

Description

substitute returns the parse tree for the (unevaluated) expression expr, substituting any variables bound in env.

quote simply returns its argument. The argument is not evaluated and can be any R expression.

enquote is a simple one-line utility which transforms a call of the form Foo(....) into the call quote(Foo(....)). This is typically used to protect a call from early evaluation.

Usage

```
substitute(expr, env)
quote(expr)
enquote(cl)
```

Arguments

expr	any syntactically valid expression
cl	a call, i.e., an object of class (and mode) "call".
env	an environment or a list object. Defaults to the current evaluation environment.

Details

The typical use of substitute is to create informative labels for data sets and plots. The myplot example below shows a simple use of this facility. It uses the functions deparse and substitute to create labels for a plot which are character string versions of the actual arguments to the function myplot.

Substitution takes place by examining each component of the parse tree as follows: If it is not a bound symbol in env, it is unchanged. If it is a promise object, i.e., a formal argument to a function or explicitly created using delayedAssign(), the expression slot of the promise replaces the symbol. If it is an ordinary variable, its value is substituted, unless env is .GlobalEnv in which case the symbol is left unchanged.

Both quote and substitute are 'special' primitive functions which do not evaluate their arguments.

Value

The mode of the result is generally "call" but may in principle be any type. In particular, single-variable expressions have mode "name" and constants have the appropriate base mode.

Note

substitute works on a purely lexical basis. There is no guarantee that the resulting expression makes any sense.

Substituting and quoting often cause confusion when the argument is expression(...). The result is a call to the expression constructor function and needs to be evaluated with eval to give the actual expression object.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`missing` for argument 'missingness', `bquote` for partial substitution, `sQuote` and `dQuote` for adding quotation marks to strings,

`all.names` to retrieve the symbol names from an expression or call.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
(s.e <- substitute(expression(a + b), list(a = 1)))  #> expression(1 + b)
(s.s <- substitute( a + b,            list(a = 1)))  #> 1 + b
c(mode(s.e), typeof(s.e)) #  "call", "language"
c(mode(s.s), typeof(s.s)) #   (the same)
# but:
(e.s.e <- eval(s.e))          #>  expression(1 + b)
c(mode(e.s.e), typeof(e.s.e)) #  "expression", "expression"

substitute(x <- x + 1, list(x = 1)) # nonsense

myplot <- function(x, y)
    plot(x, y, xlab = deparse(substitute(x)),
         ylab = deparse(substitute(y)))

## Simple examples about lazy evaluation, etc:

f1 <- function(x, y = x)             { x <- x + 1; y }
s1 <- function(x, y = substitute(x)) { x <- x + 1; y }
s2 <- function(x, y) { if(missing(y)) y <- substitute(x); x <- x + 1; y }
a <- 10
f1(a)  # 11
s1(a)  # 11
s2(a)  # a
typeof(s2(a))  # "symbol"
```

---

substr *Substrings of a Character Vector*

Description

Extract or replace substrings in a character vector.

Usage

```
substr(x, start, stop)
substring(text, first, last = 1000000L)
substr(x, start, stop) <- value
substring(text, first, last = 1000000L) <- value
```

Arguments

x, text	a character vector.
start, first	integer. The first element to be replaced.
stop, last	integer. The last element to be replaced.
value	a character vector, recycled if necessary.

Details

substring is compatible with S, with first and last instead of start and stop. For vector arguments, it expands the arguments cyclically to the length of the longest *provided* none are of zero length.

When extracting, if start is larger than the string length then "" is returned.

For the extraction functions, x or text will be converted to a character vector by as.character if it is not already one.

For the replacement functions, if start is larger than the string length then no replacement is done. If the portion to be replaced is longer than the replacement string, then only the portion the length of the string is replaced.

If any argument is an NA element, the corresponding element of the answer is NA.

Elements of the result will be have the encoding declared as that of the current locale (see Encoding if the corresponding input had a declared Latin-1 or UTF-8 encoding and the current locale is either Latin-1 or UTF-8.

If an input element has declared "bytes" encoding (see Encoding, the subsetting is done in units of bytes not characters.

Value

For substr, a character vector of the same length and with the same attributes as x (after possible coercion).

For substring, a character vector of length the longest of the arguments. This will have names taken from x (if it has any after coercion, repeated as needed), and other attributes copied from x if it is the longest of the arguments).

Elements of x with a declared encoding (see Encoding) will be returned with the same encoding.

Note

The S4 version of substring<- ignores last; this version does not.

These functions are often used with nchar to truncate a display. That does not really work (you want to limit the width, not the number of characters, so it would be better to use strtrim), but at least make sure you use the default nchar(type = "c").

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (substring.)

See Also

strsplit, paste, nchar.

Examples

```
substr("abcdef", 2, 4)
substring("abcdef", 1:6, 1:6)
## strsplit is more efficient ...

substr(rep("abcdef", 4), 1:4, 4:5)
x <- c("asfef", "qwerty", "yuiop[", "b", "stuff.blah.yech")
substr(x, 2, 5)
substring(x, 2, 4:6)

substring(x, 2) <- c("..", "+++")
x
```

---

sum *Sum of Vector Elements*

Description

sum returns the sum of all the values present in its arguments.

Usage

```
sum(..., na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	numeric or complex or logical vectors.
na.rm	logical. Should missing values (including NaN) be removed?

Details

This is a generic function: methods can be defined for it directly or via the Summary group generic. For this to work properly, the arguments ... should be unnamed, and dispatch is on the first argument.

If na.rm is FALSE an NA or NaN value in any of the arguments will cause a value of NA or NaN to be returned, otherwise NA and NaN values are ignored.

Logical true values are regarded as one, false values as zero. For historical reasons, NULL is accepted and treated as if it were integer(0).

Loss of accuracy can occur when summing values of different signs: this can even occur for sufficiently long integer inputs if the partial sums would cause integer overflow. Where possible extended-precision accumulators are used, but this is platform-dependent.

Value

The sum. If all of ... are of type integer or logical, then the sum is integer, and in that case the result will be NA (with a warning) if integer overflow occurs. Otherwise it is a length-one numeric or complex vector.

NB: the sum of an empty set is zero, by definition.

S4 methods

This is part of the S4 Summary group generic. Methods for it must use the signature x, ..., na.rm.

'plotmath' for the use of sum in plot annotation.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

colSums for row and column sums.

---

summary *Object Summaries*

Description

summary is a generic function used to produce result summaries of the results of various model fitting functions. The function invokes particular methods which depend on the class of the first argument.

Usage

```
summary(object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
summary(object, ..., digits = max(3, getOption("digits")-3))
## S3 method for class data.frame
summary(object, maxsum = 7,
       digits = max(3, getOption("digits")-3), ...)

## S3 method for class factor
summary(object, maxsum = 100, ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object for which a summary is desired.
maxsum	integer, indicating how many levels should be shown for factors.
digits	integer, used for number formatting with signif() (for summary.default) or format() (for summary.data.frame).
...	additional arguments affecting the summary produced.

Details

For factors, the frequency of the first `maxsum - 1` most frequent levels is shown, and the less frequent levels are summarized in `"(Others)"` (resulting in at most `maxsum` frequencies).

The functions `summary.lm` and `summary.glm` are examples of particular methods which summarize the results produced by `lm` and `glm`.

Value

The form of the value returned by `summary` depends on the class of its argument. See the documentation of the particular methods for details of what is produced by that method.

The default method returns an object of class `c("summaryDefault", "table")` which has a specialized `print` method. The `factor` method returns an integer vector.

The matrix and data frame methods return a matrix of class `"table"`, obtained by applying `summary` to each column and collating the results.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`anova`, `summary.glm`, `summary.lm`.

Examples

```
summary(attenu, digits = 4) #-> summary.data.frame(...), default precision
summary(attenu $ station, maxsum = 20) #-> summary.factor(...)

lst <- unclass(attenu$station) > 20 # logical with NAs
## summary.default() for logicals -- different from *.factor:
summary(lst)
summary(as.factor(lst))
```

---

svd *Singular Value Decomposition of a Matrix*

Description

Compute the singular-value decomposition of a rectangular matrix.

Usage

```
svd(x, nu = min(n, p), nv = min(n, p), LINPACK = FALSE)

La.svd(x, nu = min(n, p), nv = min(n, p))
```

Arguments

x	a numeric or complex matrix whose SVD decomposition is to be computed. Logical matrices are coerced to numeric.
nu	the number of left singular vectors to be computed. This must between 0 and n = nrow(x).
nv	the number of right singular vectors to be computed. This must be between 0 and p = ncol(x).
LINPACK	logical. Defunct and ignored.

Details

The singular value decomposition plays an important role in many statistical techniques. svd and La.svd provide two interfaces which differ in their return values.

Computing the singular vectors is the slow part for large matrices. The computation will be more efficient if both nu <= min(n, p) and nv <= min(n, p), and even more so if both are zero.

Unsuccessful results from the underlying LAPACK code will result in an error giving a positive error code (most often 1): these can only be interpreted by detailed study of the FORTRAN code but mean that the algorithm failed to converge.

Value

The SVD decomposition of the matrix as computed by LAPACK,

$$\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{U}\boldsymbol{D}\boldsymbol{V}',$$

where $\boldsymbol{U}$ and $\boldsymbol{V}$ are orthogonal, $\boldsymbol{V}'$ means *V transposed* (and conjugated for complex input), and $\boldsymbol{D}$ is a diagonal matrix with the singular values D_{ii}. Equivalently, $\boldsymbol{D} = \boldsymbol{U}'\boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{V}$, which is verified in the examples.

The returned value is a list with components

d	a vector containing the singular values of x, of length min(n, p).
u	a matrix whose columns contain the left singular vectors of x, present if nu > 0. Dimension c(n, nu).
v	a matrix whose columns contain the right singular vectors of x, present if nv > 0. Dimension c(p, nv).

Recall that the singular vectors are only defined up to sign (a constant of modulus one in the complex case). If a left singular vector has its sign changed, changing the sign of the corresponding right vector gives an equivalent decomposition.

For La.svd the return value replaces v by vt, the (conjugated if complex) transpose of v.

Source

The main functions used are the LAPACK routines DGESDD and ZGESDD.

LAPACK is from http://www.netlib.org/lapack and its guide is listed in the references.

References

Anderson. E. and ten others (1999) *LAPACK Users' Guide*. Third Edition. SIAM.
Available on-line at http://www.netlib.org/lapack/lug/lapack_lug.html.

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

eigen, qr.

Examples

```
hilbert <- function(n) { i <- 1:n; 1 / outer(i - 1, i, "+") }
X <- hilbert(9)[, 1:6]
(s <- svd(X))
D <- diag(s$d)
s$u %*% D %*% t(s$v) #  X = U D V
t(s$u) %*% X %*% s$v #  D = U X V
```

---

sweep *Sweep out Array Summaries*

Description

Return an array obtained from an input array by sweeping out a summary statistic.

Usage

```
sweep(x, MARGIN, STATS, FUN = "-", check.margin = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an array.
MARGIN	a vector of indices giving the extent(s) of x which correspond to STATS.
STATS	the summary statistic which is to be swept out.
FUN	the function to be used to carry out the sweep.
check.margin	logical. If TRUE (the default), warn if the length or dimensions of STATS do not match the specified dimensions of x. Set to FALSE for a small speed gain when you *know* that dimensions match.
...	optional arguments to FUN.

Details

FUN is found by a call to match.fun. As in the default, binary operators can be supplied if quoted or backquoted.

FUN should be a function of two arguments: it will be called with arguments x and an array of the same dimensions generated from STATS by aperm.

The consistency check among STATS, MARGIN and x is stricter if STATS is an array than if it is a vector. In the vector case, some kinds of recycling are allowed without a warning. Use sweep(x, MARGIN, as.array(STATS)) if STATS is a vector and you want to be warned if any recycling occurs.

Value

An array with the same shape as x, but with the summary statistics swept out.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`apply` on which sweep used to be based; `scale` for centering and scaling.

Examples

```
require(stats) # for median
med.att <- apply(attitude, 2, median)
sweep(data.matrix(attitude), 2, med.att)  # subtract the column medians

## More sweeping:
A <- array(1:24, dim = 4:2)

## no warnings in normal use
sweep(A, 1, 5)
(A.min <- apply(A, 1, min))  # == 1:4
sweep(A, 1, A.min)
sweep(A, 1:2, apply(A, 1:2, median))

## warnings when mismatch
sweep(A, 1, 1:3)  # STATS does not recycle
sweep(A, 1, 6:1)  # STATS is longer

## exact recycling:
sweep(A, 1, 1:2)  # no warning
sweep(A, 1, as.array(1:2))  # warning
```

---

switch *Select One of a List of Alternatives*

Description

`switch` evaluates `EXPR` and accordingly chooses one of the further arguments (in `...`).

Usage

```
switch(EXPR, ...)
```

Arguments

`EXPR`	an expression evaluating to a number or a character string.
`...`	the list of alternatives. If it is intended that `EXPR` has a character-string value these will be named, perhaps except for one alternative to be used as a 'default' value.

Details

switch works in two distinct ways depending whether the first argument evaluates to a character string or a number.

If the value of EXPR is not a character string it is coerced to integer. Note that this also happens for factors, with a warning, as typically the character level is meant. If the integer is between 1 and nargs()-1 then the corresponding element of ... is evaluated and the result returned: thus if the first argument is 3 then the fourth argument is evaluated and returned.

If EXPR evaluates to a character string then that string is matched (exactly) to the names of the elements in .... If there is a match then that element is evaluated unless it is missing, in which case the next non-missing element is evaluated, so for example switch("cc", a = 1, cc =, cd =, d = 2) evaluates to 2. If there is more than one match, the first matching element is used. In the case of no match, if there is a unnamed element of ... its value is returned. (If there is more than one such argument an error is returned.)

The first argument is always taken to be EXPR: if it is named its name must (partially) match.

This is implemented as a primitive function that only evaluates its first argument and one other if one is selected.

Value

The value of one of the elements of ..., or NULL, invisibly (whenever no element is selected).

The result has the visibility (see invisible) of the element evaluated.

Warning

It is possible to write calls to switch that can be confusing and may not work in the same way in earlier versions of . For compatibility (and clarity), always have EXPR as the first argument, naming it if partial matching is a possibility. For the character-string form, have a single unnamed argument as the default after the named values.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
require(stats)
centre <- function(x, type) {
  switch(type,
         mean = mean(x),
         median = median(x),
         trimmed = mean(x, trim = .1))
}
x <- rcauchy(10)
centre(x, "mean")
centre(x, "median")
centre(x, "trimmed")

ccc <- c("b","QQ","a","A","bb")
# note: cat() produces no output for NULL
for(ch in ccc)
    cat(ch,":", switch(EXPR = ch, a = 1, b = 2:3), "\n")
for(ch in ccc)
```

```
    cat(ch,":", switch(EXPR = ch, a =, A = 1, b = 2:3, "Otherwise: last"),"\n")

## switch(f, *) with a factor f
ff <- gl(3,1, labels=LETTERS[3:1])
ff[1] # C
## so one might expect " is C" here, but
switch(ff[1], A = "I am A", B="Bb..", C=" is C")# -> "A"
## so we give a warning

## Numeric EXPR does not allow a default value to be specified
## -- it is always NULL
for(i in c(-1:3, 9))  print(switch(i, 1, 2 , 3, 4))

## visibility
switch(1, invisible(pi), pi)
switch(2, invisible(pi), pi)
```

`Syntax` *Operator Syntax and Precedence*

Description

Outlines syntax and gives the precedence of operators.

Details

The following unary and binary operators are defined. They are listed in precedence groups, from highest to lowest.

`::  :::`	access variables in a namespace
`$ @`	component / slot extraction
`[ [[`	indexing
`^`	exponentiation (right to left)
`- +`	unary minus and plus
`:`	sequence operator
`%any%`	special operators (including `%%` and `%/%`)
`* /`	multiply, divide
`+ -`	(binary) add, subtract
`< > <= >= == !=`	ordering and comparison
`!`	negation
`& &&`	and
`| ||`	or
`~`	as in formulae
`-> ->>`	rightwards assignment
`<- <<-`	assignment (right to left)
`=`	assignment (right to left)
`?`	help (unary and binary)

Within an expression operators of equal precedence are evaluated from left to right except where indicated. (Note that = is not necessarily an operator.)

The binary operators `::`, `:::`, `$` and `@` require names or string constants on the right hand side, and

the first two also require them on the left.

The links in the **See Also** section cover most other aspects of the basic syntax.

Note

There are substantial precedence differences between and S. In particular, in S ? has the same precedence as (binary) + - and & && | || have equal precedence.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

Arithmetic, Comparison, Control, Extract, Logic, NumericConstants, Paren, Quotes, Reserved.

The 'R Language Definition' manual.

Sys.getenv *Get Environment Variables*

Description

`Sys.getenv` obtains the values of the environment variables.

Usage

```
Sys.getenv(x = NULL, unset = "", names = NA)
```

Arguments

`x`	a character vector, or `NULL`.
`unset`	a character string.
`names`	logical: should the result be named? If `NA` (the default) single-element results are not named whereas multi-element results are.

Details

Both arguments will be coerced to character if necessary.

Setting `unset = NA` will enable unset variables and those set to the value `""` to be distinguished, *if the OS does*. POSIX requires the OS to distinguish, and all known current platforms do.

Value

A vector of the same length as `x`, with (if `names ==  TRUE`) the variable names as its `names` attribute. Each element holds the value of the environment variable named by the corresponding component of `x` (or the value of `unset` if no environment variable with that name was found).

On most platforms `Sys.getenv()` will return a named vector giving the values of all the environment variables, sorted in the current locale. It may be confused by names containing = which some platforms allow but POSIX does not. (Windows is such a platform: there names including = are truncated just before the first =.)

See Also

Sys.setenv, Sys.getlocale for the locale in use, getwd for the working directory.

The help for 'environment variables' lists many of the environment variables used by .

Examples

```
## whether HOST is set will be shell-dependent e.g. Solaris csh does not.
Sys.getenv(c("R_HOME", "R_PAPERSIZE", "R_PRINTCMD", "HOST"))

names(s <- Sys.getenv()) # all settings (the values could be very long)

## Language and Locale settings -- but rather use Sys.getlocale()
s[grep("^L(C|ANG)", names(s))]
```

Sys.getpid *Get the Process ID of the R Session*

Description

Get the process ID of the Session. It is guaranteed by the operating system that two sessions running simultaneously will have different IDs, but it is possible that sessions running at different times will have the same ID.

Usage

```
Sys.getpid()
```

Value

An integer, often between 1 and 32767 under Unix-alikes (but for example FreeBSD and OS X use IDs up to 99999) and a positive integer (up to 32767) under Windows.

Examples

```
Sys.getpid()
```

Sys.glob *Wildcard Expansion on File Paths*

Description

Function to do wildcard expansion (also known as 'globbing') on file paths.

Usage

```
Sys.glob(paths, dirmark = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`paths`	character vector of patterns for relative or absolute filepaths. Missing values will be ignored.
`dirmark`	logical: should matches to directories from patterns that do not already end in `/` have a slash appended? May not be supported on all platforms.

Details

This expands wildcards in file paths. For precise details, see your system's documentation on the `glob` system call. There is a POSIX 1003.2 standard (see `http://pubs.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/9699919799/functions/glob.html`) but some OSes will go beyond this. The implementation will always do tilde expansion.

All systems should interpret `*` (match zero or more characters), `?` (match a single character) and (probably) `[` (begin a character class or range). The handling of paths ending with a separator is system-dependent. On a POSIX-2008 compliant OS they will match directories (only), but as they are not valid filepaths on Windows, they match nothing there. (Earlier POSIX standards allowed them to match files.)

The rest of these details are indicative (and based on the POSIX standard).

If a filename starts with `.` this may need to be matched explicitly: for example `Sys.glob("*.RData")` may or may not match '`.RData`' but will not usually match '`.aa.RData`'. Note that this is platform-dependent: e.g. on Solaris `Sys.glob("*.*")` matches '`.`' and '`..`'.

`[` begins a character class. If the first character in `[...]` is not `!`, this is a character class which matches a single character against any of the characters specified. The class cannot be empty, so `]` can be included provided it is first. If the first character is `!`, the character class matches a single character which is *none* of the specified characters. Whether `.` in a character class matches a leading `.` in the filename is OS-dependent.

Character classes can include ranges such as `[A-Z]`: include `-` as a character by having it first or last in a class. (The interpretation of ranges should be locale-specific, so the example is not a good idea in an Estonian locale.)

One can remove the special meaning of `?`, `*` and `[` by preceding them by a backslash (except within a character class).

Value

A character vector of matched file paths. The order is system-specific (but in the order of the elements of `paths`): it is normally collated in either the current locale or in byte (ASCII) order; however, on Windows collation is in the order of Unicode points.

Directory errors are normally ignored, so the matches are to accessible file paths (but not necessarily accessible files).

See Also

`path.expand`.

Quotes for handling backslashes in character strings.

Examples

```
Sys.glob(file.path(R.home(), "library", "*", "R", "*.rdx"))
```

`Sys.info` *Extract System and User Information*

Description

Reports system and user information.

Usage

```
Sys.info()
```

Details

This function is not implemented on all platforms, and returns `NULL` when not available. Where possible it is based on POSIX system calls. (Under Windows, it is obtained by Windows system calls and the last three values are the same.)

`Sys.info()` returns details of the platform is running on, whereas `R.version` gives details of the platform was built on: the `release` and `version` may well be different.

Note that OS names might not be what you expect: for example OS X identifies itself as '`Darwin`' and Solaris as '`SunOS`'.

Value

A character vector with fields

`sysname`	The operating system name.
`release`	The OS release.
`version`	The OS version.
`nodename`	A name by which the machine is known on the network (if any).
`machine`	A concise description of the hardware, often the CPU type.
`login`	The user's login name, or `"unknown"` if it cannot be ascertained.
`user`	The name of the real user ID, or `"unknown"` if it cannot be ascertained.
`effective_user`	The name of the effective user ID, or `"unknown"` if it cannot be ascertained. This may differ from the real user in 'set-user-ID' processes.

The first five fields come from the `uname(2)` system call. The login name comes from `getlogin(2)`, and the user names from `getpwuid(getuid())` and `getpwuid(geteuid())`

Note

The meaning of OS 'release' and 'version' is system-dependent and there is no guarantee that the node or login or user names will be what you might reasonably expect. (In particular on some Linux distributions the login name is unknown from sessions with re-directed inputs.)

The use of alternatives such as `system("whoami")` is not portable: the POSIX command `system("id")` is much more portable on Unix-alikes, provided only the POSIX options are used (and not the many BSD and GNU extensions).

See Also

`.Platform`, and `R.version`. `sessionInfo()` gives a synopsis of both your system and the session.

Examples

```
Sys.info()
## An alternative (and probably better) way to get the login name on Unix
Sys.getenv("LOGNAME")
```

`Sys.localeconv` *Find Details of the Numerical and Monetary Representations in the Current Locale*

Description

Get details of the numerical and monetary representations in the current locale.

Usage

```
Sys.localeconv()
```

Details

Normally is run without looking at the value of `LC_NUMERIC`, so the decimal point remains '`.`'. So the first three of these components will only be useful if you have set the locale category `LC_NUMERIC` using `Sys.setlocale` in the current session (when may not work correctly).

The monetary components will only be set to non-default values (see the 'Examples' section if the `LC_MONETARY` category is set. It often is not set: set the examples for how to trigger setting it.

Value

A character vector with 18 named components. See your ISO C documentation for details of the meaning.

It is possible to compile without support for locales, in which case the value will be `NULL`.

See Also

`Sys.setlocale` for ways to set locales.

Examples

```
Sys.localeconv()
## The results in the C locale are
##    decimal_point     thousands_sep          grouping   int_curr_symbol
##              "."                ""                ""                ""
##  currency_symbol mon_decimal_point mon_thousands_sep      mon_grouping
##                ""                ""                ""                ""
##    positive_sign     negative_sign   int_frac_digits       frac_digits
##                ""                ""             "127"             "127"
##    p_cs_precedes    p_sep_by_space     n_cs_precedes    n_sep_by_space
##             "127"             "127"             "127"             "127"
##      p_sign_posn       n_sign_posn
##             "127"             "127"

## Now try your default locale (which might be "C").
old <- Sys.getlocale()
```

```
## The category may not be set:
## the following may do so, but it might not be supported.
Sys.setlocale("LC_MONETARY", locale = "")
Sys.localeconv()
## or set an appropriate value yourself, e.g.
Sys.setlocale("LC_MONETARY", "de_AT")
Sys.localeconv()
Sys.setlocale(locale = old)

## Not run: read.table("foo", dec=Sys.localeconv()["decimal_point"])
```

`sys.parent` *Functions to Access the Function Call Stack*

Description

These functions provide access to `environment`s ('frames' in S terminology) associated with functions further up the calling stack.

Usage

```
sys.call(which = 0)
sys.frame(which = 0)
sys.nframe()
sys.function(which = 0)
sys.parent(n = 1)

sys.calls()
sys.frames()
sys.parents()
sys.on.exit()
sys.status()
parent.frame(n = 1)
```

Arguments

`which`	the frame number if non-negative, the number of frames to go back if negative.
`n`	the number of generations to go back. (See the 'Details' section.)

Details

`.GlobalEnv` is given number 0 in the list of frames. Each subsequent function evaluation increases the frame stack by 1 and the call, function definition and the environment for evaluation of that function are returned by `sys.call`, `sys.function` and `sys.frame` with the appropriate index.

`sys.call`, `sys.frame` and `sys.function` accept integer values for the argument `which`. Non-negative values of `which` are frame numbers whereas negative values are counted back from the frame number of the current evaluation.

The parent frame of a function evaluation is the environment in which the function was called. It is not necessarily numbered one less than the frame number of the current evaluation, nor is it the environment within which the function was defined. `sys.parent` returns the number of the parent frame if `n` is 1 (the default), the grandparent if `n` is 2, and so on. See also the 'Note'.

`sys.nframe` returns an integer, the number of the current frame as described in the first paragraph.

`sys.calls` and `sys.frames` give a pairlist of all the active calls and frames, respectively, and `sys.parents` returns an integer vector of indices of the parent frames of each of those frames.

Notice that even though the `sys.`*xxx* functions (except `sys.status`) are interpreted, their contexts are not counted nor are they reported. There is no access to them.

`sys.status()` returns a list with components `sys.calls`, `sys.parents` and `sys.frames`, the results of calls to those three functions (which this will include the call to `sys.status`: see the first example).

`sys.on.exit()` returns the expression stored for use by `on.exit` in the function currently being evaluated. (Note that this differs from S, which returns a list of expressions for the current frame and its parents.)

`parent.frame(n)` is a convenient shorthand for `sys.frame(sys.parent(n))` (implemented slightly more efficiently).

Value

`sys.call` returns a call, `sys.function` a function definition, and `sys.frame` and `parent.frame` return an environment.

For the other functions, see the 'Details' section.

Note

Strictly, `sys.parent` and `parent.frame` refer to the *context* of the parent interpreted function. So internal functions (which may or may not set contexts and so may or may not appear on the call stack) may not be counted, and S3 methods can also do surprising things.

Beware of the effect of lazy evaluation: these two functions look at the call stack at the time they are evaluated, not at the time they are called. Passing calls to them as function arguments is unlikely to be a good idea.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (Not `parent.frame`.)

See Also

`eval` for a usage of `sys.frame` and `parent.frame`.

Examples

```
require(utils)

## Note: the first two examples will give different results
## if run by example().
ff <- function(x) gg(x)
gg <- function(y) sys.status()
str(ff(1))

gg <- function(y) {
    ggg <- function() {
        cat("current frame is", sys.nframe(), "\n")
        cat("parents are", sys.parents(), "\n")
```

```
        print(sys.function(0)) # ggg
        print(sys.function(2)) # gg
    }
    if(y > 0) gg(y-1) else ggg()
}
gg(3)

t1 <- function() {
  aa <- "here"
  t2 <- function() {
    ## in frame 2 here
    cat("current frame is", sys.nframe(), "\n")
    str(sys.calls()) ## list with two components t1() and t2()
    cat("parents are frame numbers", sys.parents(), "\n") ## 0 1
    print(ls(envir = sys.frame(-1))) ## [1] "aa" "t2"
    invisible()
  }
  t2()
}
t1()

test.sys.on.exit <- function() {
  on.exit(print(1))
  ex <- sys.on.exit()
  str(ex)
  cat("exiting...\n")
}
test.sys.on.exit()
## gives language print(1), prints 1 on exit

## An example where the parent is not the next frame up the stack
## since method dispatch uses a frame.
as.double.foo <- function(x)
{
    str(sys.calls())
    print(sys.frames())
    print(sys.parents())
    print(sys.frame(-1)); print(parent.frame())
    x
}
t2 <- function(x) as.double(x)
a <- structure(pi, class = "foo")
t2(a)
```

`Sys.readlink` *Read File Symbolic Links*

Description

Find out if a file path is a symbolic link, and if so what it is linked to, *via* the system call `readlink`.

Symbolic links are a POSIX concept, not implemented on Windows but for most filesystems on Unix-alikes.

Usage

```
Sys.readlink(paths)
```

Arguments

paths	character vector of file paths. Tilde expansion is done: see path.expand.

Value

A character vector of the the same length as paths. The entries are the path of the file linked to, "" if the path is not a symbolic link, and NA if there is an error (e.g., the path does not exist).

On platforms without the readlink system call, all elements are "".

See Also

file.symlink for the creation of symbolic links (and their Windows analogues), file.info

---

Sys.setenv *Set or Unset Environment Variables*

Description

Sys.setenv sets environment variables (for other processes called from within or future calls to Sys.getenv from this process).

Sys.unsetenv removes environment variables.

Usage

```
Sys.setenv(...)

Sys.unsetenv(x)
```

Arguments

...	named arguments with values coercible to a character string.
x	a character vector, or an object coercible to character.

Details

Non-standard names must be quoted in Sys.setenv: see the examples. Most platforms (and POSIX) do not allow names containing "=". Windows does, but the facilities provided by may not handle these correctly so they should be avoided. Most platforms allow setting an environment variable to "", but Windows does not, and there Sys.setenv(FOO = "") unsets FOO.

There may be system-specific limits on the maximum length of the values of individual environment variables or of all environment variables.

Value

A logical vector, with elements being true if (un)setting the corresponding variable succeeded. (For Sys.unsetenv this includes attempting to remove a non-existent variable.)

Note

If Sys.unsetenv is not supported, it will at least try to set the value of the environment variable to "", with a warning.

See Also

Sys.getenv, Startup for ways to set environment variables for the session.

setwd for the working directory.

The help for 'environment variables' lists many of the environment variables used by .

Examples

```
print(Sys.setenv(R_TEST = "testit", "A+C" = 123))  # A+C could also be used
Sys.getenv("R_TEST")
Sys.unsetenv("R_TEST")  # may warn and not succeed
Sys.getenv("R_TEST", unset = NA)
```

Sys.setFileTime *Set File Time*

Description

Uses system calls to set the times on a file or directory.

Usage

```
Sys.setFileTime(path, time)
```

Arguments

path	A length-one character vector specifying the path to a file or directory.
time	A date-time of class "POSIXct" or an object which can be coerced to one. Fractions of a second are ignored.

Details

This attempts sets the file time to the value specified.

On a Unix-alike it uses the system call utimes if that is available, otherwise utimes. On a POSIX file system it sets both the last-access and modification times.

On Windows it uses the system call SetFileTime to set the 'last write time'. Some Windows file systems only record the time at a resolution of two seconds.

Value

Logical, invisibly. An indication if the operation succeeded.

`Sys.sleep` *Suspend Execution for a Time Interval*

Description

Suspend execution of expressions for a given number of seconds

Usage

```
Sys.sleep(time)
```

Arguments

`time`	The time interval to suspend execution for, in seconds.

Details

Using this function allows to be given very low priority and hence not to interfere with more important foreground tasks. A typical use is to allow a process launched from to set itself up and read its input files before execution is resumed.

The intention is that this function suspends execution of expressions but wakes the process up often enough to respond to GUI events, typically every 0.5 seconds.

There is no guarantee that the process will sleep for the whole of the specified interval, and it may well take slightly longer in real time to resume execution. The resolution of the time interval is system-dependent, but will normally be down to 0.02 secs or better. (On modern Unix-alikes it will be better than 1ms.)

Value

Invisible `NULL`.

Note

This function may not be implemented on all systems. Where it is not implemented calling it given an error.

Examples

```
testit <- function(x)
{
    p1 <- proc.time()
    Sys.sleep(x)
    proc.time() - p1 # The cpu usage should be negligible
}
testit(3.7)
```

`sys.source` *Parse and Evaluate Expressions from a File*

Description

Parses expressions in the given file, and then successively evaluates them in the specified environment.

Usage

```
sys.source(file, envir = baseenv(), chdir = FALSE,
           keep.source = getOption("keep.source.pkgs"))
```

Arguments

`file`	a character string naming the file to be read from
`envir`	an object specifying the environment in which the expressions are to be evaluated. May also be a list or an integer. The default value `NULL` corresponds to evaluation in the base environment. This is probably not what you want; you should typically supply an explicit `envir` argument.
`chdir`	logical; if `TRUE`, the working directory is changed to the directory containing `file` for evaluating.
`keep.source`	logical. If `TRUE`, functions keep their source including comments, see `options(keep.source = *)` for more details.

Details

For large files, `keep.source = FALSE` may save quite a bit of memory.

In order for the code being evaluated to use the correct environment (for example, in global assignments), source code in packages should call `topenv()`, which will return the namespace, if any, the environment set up by `sys.source`, or the global environment if a saved image is being used.

See Also

`source`, and `library` which uses `sys.source`.

Examples

```
## a simple way to put some objects in an environment
## high on the search path
tmp <- tempfile()
writeLines("aaa <- pi", tmp)
env <- attach(NULL, name = "myenv")
sys.source(tmp, env)
unlink(tmp)
search()
aaa
detach("myenv")
```

`Sys.time` *Get Current Date and Time*

Description

`Sys.time` and `Sys.Date` returns the system's idea of the current date with and without time.

Usage

```
Sys.time()
Sys.Date()
```

Details

`Sys.time` returns an absolute date-time value which can be converted to various time zones and may return different days.

`Sys.Date` returns the current day in the current time zone.

Value

`Sys.time` returns an object of class `"POSIXct"` (see DateTimeClasses). On almost all systems it will have sub-second accuracy, possibly microseconds or better. On Windows it increments in clock ticks (usually 1/60 of a second) reported to millisecond accuracy.

`Sys.Date` returns an object of class `"Date"` (see Date).

Note

`Sys.time` may return fractional seconds, but they are ignored by the default conversions (e.g., printing) for class `"POSIXct"`. See the examples and `format.POSIXct` for ways to reveal them.

See Also

`date` for the system time in a fixed-format character string.

`Sys.timezone`.

`system.time` for measuring elapsed/CPU time of expressions.

Examples

```
Sys.time()
## print with possibly greater accuracy:
op <- options(digits.secs = 6)
Sys.time()
options(op)

## locale-specific version of date()
format(Sys.time(), "%a %b %d %X %Y")

Sys.Date()
```

Sys.which *Find Full Paths to Executables*

Description

This is an interface to the system command `which`, or to an emulation on Windows.

Usage

```
Sys.which(names)
```

Arguments

`names`	Character vector of names or paths of possible executables.

Details

The system command `which` reports on the full path names of an executable (including an executable script) as would be executed by a shell, accepting either absolute paths or looking on the path.

On Windows an 'executable' is a file with extension '`.exe`', '`.com`', '`.cmd`' or '`.bat`'. Such files need not actually be executable, but they are what `system` tries.

On a Unix-alike the full path to `which` (usually '`/usr/bin/which`') is found when is installed.

Value

A character vector of the same length as `names`, named by `names`. The elements are either the full path to the executable or some indication that no executable of that name was found. Typically the indication is `""`, but this does depend on the OS (and the known exceptions are changed to `""`). Missing values in `names` have missing return values (as from 3.0.0).

On Windows the paths will be short paths (8+3 components, no spaces) with \ as the path delimiter.

Note

Except on Windows this calls the system command `which`: since that is not part of e.g. the POSIX standards, exactly what it does is OS-dependent. It will usually do tilde-expansion and it may make use of `csh` aliases.

In 2.x.y, arguments containing spaces or other metacharacters needed to be escaped as they would be for a shell: for example Windows paths containing spaces needed to be enclosed in double quotes.

Examples

```
## the first two are likely to exist everywhere
## texi2dvi exists on most Unix-alikes and under MiKTeX
Sys.which(c("ftp", "ping", "texi2dvi", "this-does-not-exist"))
```

system *Invoke a System Command*

Description

system invokes the OS command specified by command.

Usage

```
system(command, intern = FALSE,
       ignore.stdout = FALSE, ignore.stderr = FALSE,
       wait = TRUE, input = NULL, show.output.on.console = TRUE,
       minimized = FALSE, invisible = TRUE)
```

Arguments

command	the system command to be invoked, as a character string.
intern	a logical (not NA) which indicates whether to capture the output of the command as an character vector.
ignore.stdout, ignore.stderr	a logical (not NA) indicating whether messages written to 'stdout' or 'stderr' should be ignored.
wait	a logical (not NA) indicating whether the interpreter should wait for the command to finish, or run it asynchronously. This will be ignored (and the interpreter will always wait) if intern = TRUE.
input	if a character vector is supplied, this is copied one string per line to a temporary file, and the standard input of command is redirected to the file.
show.output.on.console, minimized, invisible	arguments that are accepted on Windows but ignored on this platform, with a warning.

Details

This interface has become rather complicated over the years: see system2 for a more portable and flexible interface which is recommended for new code.

command is parsed as a command plus arguments separated by spaces. So if the path to the command (or a single argument such as a file path) contains spaces, it must be quoted e.g. by shQuote. Unix-alikes pass the command line to a shell (normally '/bin/sh', and POSIX requires that shell), so command can be anything the shell regards as executable, including shell scripts, and it can contain multiple commands separated by ;.

On Windows, system does not use a shell and there is a separate function shell which passes command lines to a shell.

If intern is TRUE then popen is used to invoke the command and the output collected, line by line, into an character vector. If intern is FALSE then the C function system is used to invoke the command.

wait is implemented by appending & to the command: this is in principle shell-dependent, but required by POSIX and so widely supported.

The ordering of arguments after the first two has changed from time to time: it is recommended to name all arguments after the first.

There are many pitfalls in using system to ascertain if a command can be run — Sys.which is more suitable.

Value

If intern = TRUE, a character vector giving the output of the command, one line per character string. (Output lines of more than 8095 bytes will be split.) If the command could not be run an error is generated. If command runs but gives a non-zero exit status this will be reported with a warning and in the attribute "status" of the result: an attribute "errmsg" may also be available

If intern = FALSE, the return value is an error code (0 for success), given the invisible attribute (so needs to be printed explicitly). If the command could not be run for any reason, the value is 127. Otherwise if wait = TRUE the value is the exit status returned by the command, and if wait = FALSE it is 0 (the conventional success value).

Stdout and stderr

For command-line , error messages written to 'stderr' will be sent to the terminal unless ignore.stderr = TRUE. They can be captured (in the most likely shells) by

```
system("some command 2>&1", intern = TRUE)
```

For GUIs, what happens to output sent to 'stdout' or 'stderr' if intern = FALSE is interface-specific, and it is unsafe to assume that such messages will appear on a GUI console (they do on the OS X GUI's console, but not on some others).

Differences between Unix and Windows

How processes are launched differs fundamentally between Windows and Unix-alike operating systems, as do the higher-level OS functions on which this function is built. So it should not be surprising that there are many differences between OSes in how system behaves. For the benefit of programmers, the more important ones are summarized in this section.

- The most important difference is that on a Unix-alike system launches a shell which then runs command. On Windows the command is run directly – use shell for an interface which runs command *via* a shell (by default the Windows shell cmd.exe, which has many differences from a POSIX shell).
  This means that it cannot be assumed that redirection or piping will work in system (redirection sometimes does, but we have seen cases where it stopped working after a Windows security patch), and system2 (or shell) must be used on Windows.
- What happens to stdout and stderr when not captured depends on how is running: Windows batch commands behave like a Unix-alike, but from the Windows GUI they are generally lost. system(intern = TRUE) captures 'stderr' when run from the Windows GUI console unless ignore.stderr = TRUE.
- The behaviour on error is different in subtle ways (and has differed between versions).
- The quoting conventions for command differ, but shQuote is a portable interface.
- Arguments show.output.on.console, minimized, invisible only do something on Windows (and are most relevant to Rgui there).

See Also

man system and man sh for how this is implemented on the OS in use.

.Platform for platform-specific variables.

pipe to set up a pipe connection.

Examples

```
# list all files in the current directory using the -F flag
## Not run: system("ls -F")

# t1 is a character vector, each element giving a line of output from who
# (if the platform has who)
t1 <- try(system("who", intern = TRUE))

try(system("ls fizzlipuzzli", intern = TRUE, ignore.stderr = TRUE))
# zero-length result since file does not exist, and will give warning.
```

`system.file` *Find Names of R System Files*

Description

Finds the full file names of files in packages etc.

Usage

```
system.file(..., package = "base", lib.loc = NULL,
            mustWork = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`...`	character vectors, specifying subdirectory and file(s) within some package. The default, none, returns the root of the package. Wildcards are not supported.
`package`	a character string with the name of a single package. An error occurs if more than one package name is given.
`lib.loc`	a character vector with path names of libraries. See 'Details' for the meaning of the default value of `NULL`.
`mustWork`	logical. If `TRUE`, an error is given if there are no matching files.

Details

This checks the existence of the specified files with `file.exists`. So file paths are only returned if there are sufficient permissions to establish their existence.

The unnamed arguments in `...` are usually character strings, but if character vectors they are recycled to the same length.

This uses `find.package` to find the package, and hence with the default `lib.loc = NULL` looks first for attached packages then in each library listed in `.libPaths()`. Note that if a namespace is loaded but the package is not attached, this will look only on `.libPaths()`.

Value

A character vector of positive length, containing the file paths that matched `...`, or the empty string, `""`, if none matched (unless `mustWork = TRUE`).

If matching the root of a package, there is no trailing separator.

`system.file()` with no arguments gives the root of the **base** package.

See Also

R.home for the root directory of the installation, list.files.

Sys.glob to find paths via wildcards.

Examples

```
system.file()                  # The root of the base package
system.file(package = "stats") # The root of package stats
system.file("INDEX")
system.file("help", "AnIndex", package = "splines")
```

---

system.time *CPU Time Used*

Description

Return CPU (and other) times that expr used.

Usage

```
system.time(expr, gcFirst = TRUE)
unix.time(expr, gcFirst = TRUE)
```

Arguments

expr	Valid expression to be timed.
gcFirst	Logical - should a garbage collection be performed immediately before the timing? Default is TRUE.

Details

system.time calls the function proc.time, evaluates expr, and then calls proc.time once more, returning the difference between the two proc.time calls.

unix.time is an alias of system.time, for compatibility with S.

Timings of evaluations of the same expression can vary considerably depending on whether the evaluation triggers a garbage collection. When gcFirst is TRUE a garbage collection (gc) will be performed immediately before the evaluation of expr. This will usually produce more consistent timings.

Value

A object of class "proc_time": see proc.time for details.

See Also

proc.time, time which is for time series.

Sys.time to get the current date & time.

Examples

```
require(stats)
system.time(for(i in 1:100) mad(runif(1000)))
## Not run:
exT <- function(n = 10000) {
  # Purpose: Test if system.time works ok;   n: loop size
  system.time(for(i in 1:n) x <- mean(rt(1000, df = 4)))
}
#-- Try to interrupt one of the following (using Ctrl-C / Escape):
exT()                #- about 4 secs on a 2.5GHz Xeon
system.time(exT())   #~ +/- same

## End(Not run)
```

`system2` *Invoke a System Command*

Description

`system2` invokes the OS command specified by `command`.

Usage

```
system2(command, args = character(),
        stdout = "", stderr = "", stdin = "", input = NULL,
        env = character(), wait = TRUE,
        minimized = FALSE, invisible = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`command`	the system command to be invoked, as a character string.
`args`	a character vector of arguments to `command`.
`stdout, stderr`	where output to 'stdout' or 'stderr' should be sent. Possible values are `""`, to the console (the default), `NULL` or `FALSE` (discard output), `TRUE` (capture the output in a character vector) or a character string naming a file.
`stdin`	should input be diverted? `""` means the default, alternatively a character string naming a file. Ignored if `input` is supplied.
`input`	if a character vector is supplied, this is copied one string per line to a temporary file, and the standard input of `command` is redirected to the file.
`env`	character vector of name=value strings to set environment variables.
`wait`	a logical (not `NA`) indicating whether the interpreter should wait for the command to finish, or run it asynchronously. This will be ignored (and the interpreter will always wait) if `stdout = TRUE`.
`minimized, invisible`	arguments that are accepted on Windows but ignored on this platform, with a warning.

Details

Unlike system, command is always quoted by shQuote, so it must be a single command without arguments.

For details of how command is found see system.

On Windows, env is only supported for commands such as R and make which accept environment variables on their command line.

Some Unix commands (such as some implementations of ls) change their output if they consider it to be piped or redirected: stdout = TRUE uses a pipe whereas stdout = "some_file_name" uses redirection.

Because of the way it is implemented, on a Unix-alike stderr = TRUE implies stdout = TRUE: a warning is given if this is not what was specified.

Value

If stdout = TRUE or stderr = TRUE, a character vector giving the output of the command, one line per character string. (Output lines of more than 8095 bytes will be split.) If the command could not be run an error is generated. If command runs but gives a non-zero exit status this will be reported with a warning and in the attribute "status" of the result: an attribute "errmsg" may also be available.

In other cases, the return value is an error code (0 for success), given the invisible attribute (so needs to be printed explicitly). If the command could not be run for any reason, the value is 127. Otherwise if wait = TRUE the value is the exit status returned by the command, and if wait = FALSE it is 0 (the conventional success value).

Note

system2 is a more portable and flexible interface than system, introduced in 2.12.0. It allows redirection of output without needing to invoke a shell on Windows, a portable way to set environment variables for the execution of command, and finer control over the redirection of stdout and stderr. Conversely, system (and shell on Windows) allows the invocation of arbitrary command lines.

There is no guarantee that if stdout and stderr are both TRUE or the same file that the two streams will be interleaved in order. This depends on both the buffering used by the command and the OS.

See Also

system.

---

t *Matrix Transpose*

Description

Given a matrix or data.frame x, t returns the transpose of x.

Usage

```
t(x)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix or data frame, typically.

Details

This is a generic function for which methods can be written. The description here applies to the default and "data.frame" methods.

A data frame is first coerced to a matrix: see as.matrix. When x is a vector, it is treated as a column, i.e., the result is a 1-row matrix.

Value

A matrix, with dim and dimnames constructed appropriately from those of x, and other attributes except names copied across.

Note

The *conjugate* transpose of a complex matrix A, denoted A^H or A^*, is computed as Conj(t(A)).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

aperm for permuting the dimensions of arrays.

Examples

```
a <- matrix(1:30, 5, 6)
ta <- t(a) ##-- i.e.,  a[i, j] == ta[j, i] for all i,j :
for(j in seq(ncol(a)))
  if(! all(a[, j] == ta[j, ])) stop("wrong transpose")
```

---

table *Cross Tabulation and Table Creation*

Description

table uses the cross-classifying factors to build a contingency table of the counts at each combination of factor levels.

Usage

```
table(..., exclude = if (useNA == "no") c(NA, NaN), useNA = c("no",
    "ifany", "always"), dnn = list.names(...), deparse.level = 1)

as.table(x, ...)
is.table(x)

## S3 method for class table
```

```
as.data.frame(x, row.names = NULL, ...,
              responseName = "Freq", stringsAsFactors = TRUE,
              sep = "", base = list(LETTERS))
```

Arguments

`...`	one or more objects which can be interpreted as factors (including character strings), or a list (or data frame) whose components can be so interpreted. (For `as.table`, arguments passed to specific methods; for `as.data.frame`, unused.)
`exclude`	levels to remove for all factors in `...`. If set to `NULL`, it implies `useNA = "always"`. See 'Details' for its interpretation for non-factor arguments.
`useNA`	whether to include `NA` values in the table. See 'Details'.
`dnn`	the names to be given to the dimensions in the result (the *dimnames names*).
`deparse.level`	controls how the default `dnn` is constructed. See 'Details'.
`x`	an arbitrary object, or an object inheriting from class `"table"` for the `as.data.frame` method. Note that `as.data.frame.table(x, *)` may be called explicitly for non-table `x` for "reshaping" `array`s.
`row.names`	a character vector giving the row names for the data frame.
`responseName`	The name to be used for the column of table entries, usually counts.
`stringsAsFactors`	logical: should the classifying factors be returned as factors (the default) or character vectors?
`sep, base`	passed to `provideDimnames`.

Details

If the argument `dnn` is not supplied, the internal function `list.names` is called to compute the 'dimname names'. If the arguments in `...` are named, those names are used. For the remaining arguments, `deparse.level = 0` gives an empty name, `deparse.level = 1` uses the supplied argument if it is a symbol, and `deparse.level = 2` will deparse the argument.

Only when `exclude` is specified and non-NULL (i.e., not by default), will `table` potentially drop levels of factor arguments.

`useNA` controls if the table includes counts of `NA` values: the allowed values correspond to never, only if the count is positive and even for zero counts. This is overridden by specifying `exclude = NULL`. Note that levels specified in `exclude` are mapped to `NA` and so included in `NA` counts.

Both `exclude` and `useNA` operate on an "all or none" basis. If you want to control the dimensions of a multiway table separately, modify each argument using `factor` or `addNA`.

It is best to supply factors rather than rely on coercion. In particular, `exclude` will be used in coercion to a factor, and so values (not levels) which appear in `exclude` before coercion will be mapped to `NA` rather than be discarded.

The `summary` method for class `"table"` (used for objects created by `table` or `xtabs`) which gives basic information and performs a chi-squared test for independence of factors (note that the function `chisq.test` currently only handles 2-d tables).

Value

`table()` returns a *contingency table*, an object of class `"table"`, an array of integer values. Note that unlike S the result is always an array, a 1D array if one factor is given.

`as.table` and `is.table` coerce to and test for contingency table, respectively.

The `as.data.frame` method for objects inheriting from class `"table"` can be used to convert the array-based representation of a contingency table to a data frame containing the classifying factors and the corresponding entries (the latter as component named by `responseName`). This is the inverse of `xtabs`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`tabulate` is the underlying function and allows finer control.

Use `ftable` for printing (and more) of multidimensional tables. `margin.table`, `prop.table`, `addmargins`.

`xtabs` for cross tabulation of data frames with a formula interface.

Examples

```
require(stats) # for rpois and xtabs
## Simple frequency distribution
table(rpois(100, 5))
## Check the design:
with(warpbreaks, table(wool, tension))
table(state.division, state.region)

# simple two-way contingency table
with(airquality, table(cut(Temp, quantile(Temp)), Month))

a <- letters[1:3]
table(a, sample(a))                   # dnn is c("a", "")
table(a, sample(a), deparse.level = 0) # dnn is c("", "")
table(a, sample(a), deparse.level = 2) # dnn is c("a", "sample(a)")

## xtabs() <-> as.data.frame.table() :
UCBAdmissions ## already a contingency table
DF <- as.data.frame(UCBAdmissions)
class(tab <- xtabs(Freq ~ ., DF)) # xtabs & table
## tab *is* "the same" as the original table:
all(tab == UCBAdmissions)
all.equal(dimnames(tab), dimnames(UCBAdmissions))

a <- rep(c(NA, 1/0:3), 10)
table(a)
table(a, exclude = NULL)
b <- factor(rep(c("A","B","C"), 10))
table(b)
table(b, exclude = "B")
d <- factor(rep(c("A","B","C"), 10), levels = c("A","B","C","D","E"))
table(d, exclude = "B")
```

```
print(table(b, d), zero.print = ".")

## NA counting:
is.na(d) <- 3:4
d. <- addNA(d)
d.[1:7]
table(d.) # ", exclude = NULL" is not needed
## i.e., if you want to count the NAs of d, use
table(d, useNA = "ifany")

## Two-way tables with NA counts. The 3rd variant is absurd, but shows
## something that cannot be done using exclude or useNA.
with(airquality,
   table(OzHi = Ozone > 80, Month, useNA = "ifany"))
with(airquality,
   table(OzHi = Ozone > 80, Month, useNA = "always"))
with(airquality,
   table(OzHi = Ozone > 80, addNA(Month)))
```

`tabulate` *Tabulation for Vectors*

Description

`tabulate` takes the integer-valued vector `bin` and counts the number of times each integer occurs in it.

Usage

```
tabulate(bin, nbins = max(1, bin, na.rm = TRUE))
```

Arguments

`bin`	a numeric vector (of positive integers), or a factor. Long vectors are supported.
`nbins`	the number of bins to be used.

Details

`tabulate` is the workhorse for the `table` function.

If `bin` is a factor, its internal integer representation is tabulated.

If the elements of `bin` are numeric but not integers, they are truncated by `as.integer`.

Value

An integer vector (without names). There is a bin for each of the values `1, ..., nbins`; values outside that range and NAs are (silently) ignored.

On 64-bit platforms `bin` can have 2^{31} or more elements and hence a count could exceed the maximum integer: this is currently an error.

See Also

`table`, `factor`.

Examples

```
tabulate(c(2,3,5))
tabulate(c(2,3,3,5), nbins = 10)
tabulate(c(-2,0,2,3,3,5))  # -2 and 0 are ignored
tabulate(c(-2,0,2,3,3,5), nbins = 3)
tabulate(factor(letters[1:10]))
```

---

tapply *Apply a Function Over a Ragged Array*

Description

Apply a function to each cell of a ragged array, that is to each (non-empty) group of values given by a unique combination of the levels of certain factors.

Usage

```
tapply(X, INDEX, FUN = NULL, ..., simplify = TRUE)
```

Arguments

X	an atomic object, typically a vector.
INDEX	list of one or more factors, each of same length as X. The elements are coerced to factors by as.factor.
FUN	the function to be applied, or NULL. In the case of functions like +, %*%, etc., the function name must be backquoted or quoted. If FUN is NULL, tapply returns a vector which can be used to subscript the multi-way array tapply normally produces.
...	optional arguments to FUN: the Note section.
simplify	If FALSE, tapply always returns an array of mode "list". If TRUE (the default), then if FUN always returns a scalar, tapply returns an array with the mode of the scalar.

Value

If FUN is not NULL, it is passed to match.fun, and hence it can be a function or a symbol or character string naming a function.

When FUN is present, tapply calls FUN for each cell that has any data in it. If FUN returns a single atomic value for each such cell (e.g., functions mean or var) and when simplify is TRUE, tapply returns a multi-way array containing the values, and NA for the empty cells. The array has the same number of dimensions as INDEX has components; the number of levels in a dimension is the number of levels (nlevels()) in the corresponding component of INDEX. Note that if the return value has a class (e.g., an object of class "Date") the class is discarded.

Note that contrary to S, simplify = TRUE always returns an array, possibly 1-dimensional.

If FUN does not return a single atomic value, tapply returns an array of mode list whose components are the values of the individual calls to FUN, i.e., the result is a list with a dim attribute.

When there is an array answer, its dimnames are named by the names of INDEX and are based on the levels of the grouping factors (possibly after coercion).

For a list result, the elements corresponding to empty cells are NULL.

Note

Optional arguments to FUN supplied by the ... argument are not divided into cells. It is therefore inappropriate for FUN to expect additional arguments with the same length as X.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

the convenience functions by and aggregate (using tapply); apply, lapply with its versions sapply and mapply.

Examples

```
require(stats)
groups <- as.factor(rbinom(32, n = 5, prob = 0.4))
tapply(groups, groups, length) #- is almost the same as
table(groups)

## contingency table from data.frame : array with named dimnames
tapply(warpbreaks$breaks, warpbreaks[,-1], sum)
tapply(warpbreaks$breaks, warpbreaks[, 3, drop = FALSE], sum)

n <- 17; fac <- factor(rep(1:3, length = n), levels = 1:5)
table(fac)
tapply(1:n, fac, sum)
tapply(1:n, fac, sum, simplify = FALSE)
tapply(1:n, fac, range)
tapply(1:n, fac, quantile)

## example of ... argument: find quarterly means
tapply(presidents, cycle(presidents), mean, na.rm = TRUE)

ind <- list(c(1, 2, 2), c("A", "A", "B"))
table(ind)
tapply(1:3, ind) #-> the split vector
tapply(1:3, ind, sum)
```

---

taskCallback *Add or Remove a Top-Level Task Callback*

Description

addTaskCallback registers an R function that is to be called each time a top-level task is completed.

removeTaskCallback un-registers a function that was registered earlier via addTaskCallback.

These provide low-level access to the internal/native mechanism for managing task-completion actions. One can use taskCallbackManager at the S-language level to manage S functions that are called at the completion of each task. This is easier and more direct.

Usage

```
addTaskCallback(f, data = NULL, name = character())
removeTaskCallback(id)
```

Arguments

f	the function that is to be invoked each time a top-level task is successfully completed. This is called with 5 or 4 arguments depending on whether data is specified or not, respectively. The return value should be a logical value indicating whether to keep the callback in the list of active callbacks or discard it.
data	if specified, this is the 5-th argument in the call to the callback function f.
id	a string or an integer identifying the element in the internal callback list to be removed. Integer indices are 1-based, i.e the first element is 1. The names of currently registered handlers is available using getTaskCallbackNames and is also returned in a call to addTaskCallback.
name	character: names to be used.

Details

Top-level tasks are individual expressions rather than entire lines of input. Thus an input line of the form `expression1 ; expression2` will give rise to 2 top-level tasks.

A top-level task callback is called with the expression for the top-level task, the result of the top-level task, a logical value indicating whether it was successfully completed or not (always TRUE at present), and a logical value indicating whether the result was printed or not. If the data argument was specified in the call to addTaskCallback, that value is given as the fifth argument.

The callback function should return a logical value. If the value is FALSE, the callback is removed from the task list and will not be called again by this mechanism. If the function returns TRUE, it is kept in the list and will be called on the completion of the next top-level task.

Value

addTaskCallback returns an integer value giving the position in the list of task callbacks that this new callback occupies. This is only the current position of the callback. It can be used to remove the entry as long as no other values are removed from earlier positions in the list first.

removeTaskCallback returns a logical value indicating whether the specified element was removed. This can fail (i.e., return FALSE) if an incorrect name or index is given that does not correspond to the name or position of an element in the list.

Note

There is also C-level access to top-level task callbacks to allow C routines rather than R functions be used.

See Also

getTaskCallbackNames taskCallbackManager http://developer.r-project.org/TaskHandlers.pdf

Examples

```
times <- function(total = 3, str = "Task a") {
   ctr <- 0

   function(expr, value, ok, visible) {
    ctr <<- ctr + 1
    cat(str, ctr, "\n")
    if(ctr == total) {
      cat("handler removing itself\n")
    }
    return(ctr < total)
   }
 }

 # add the callback that will work for
 # 4 top-level tasks and then remove itself.
 n <- addTaskCallback(times(4))

 # now remove it, assuming it is still first in the list.
 removeTaskCallback(n)

## Not run:
# There is no point in running this
# as
 addTaskCallback(times(4))

 sum(1:10)
 sum(1:10)
 sum(1:10)
 sum(1:10)
 sum(1:10)

## End(Not run)
```

`taskCallbackManager` *Create an R-level Task Callback Manager*

Description

This provides an entirely S-language mechanism for managing callbacks or actions that are invoked at the conclusion of each top-level task. Essentially, we register a single R function from this manager with the underlying, native task-callback mechanism and this function handles invoking the other R callbacks under the control of the manager. The manager consists of a collection of functions that access shared variables to manage the list of user-level callbacks.

Usage

```
taskCallbackManager(handlers = list(), registered = FALSE,
                    verbose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

handlers	this can be a list of callbacks in which each element is a list with an element named "f" which is a callback function, and an optional element named "data" which is the 5-th argument to be supplied to the callback when it is invoked. Typically this argument is not specified, and one uses add to register callbacks after the manager is created.
registered	a logical value indicating whether the evaluate function has already been registered with the internal task callback mechanism. This is usually FALSE and the first time a callback is added via the add function, the evaluate function is automatically registered. One can control when the function is registered by specifying TRUE for this argument and calling addTaskCallback manually.
verbose	a logical value, which if TRUE, causes information to be printed to the console about certain activities this dispatch manager performs. This is useful for debugging callbacks and the handler itself.

Value

A list containing 6 functions:

add	register a callback with this manager, giving the function, an optional 5-th argument, an optional name by which the callback is stored in the list, and a register argument which controls whether the evaluate function is registered with the internal C-level dispatch mechanism if necessary.
remove	remove an element from the manager's collection of callbacks, either by name or position/index.
evaluate	the 'real' callback function that is registered with the C-level dispatch mechanism and which invokes each of the R-level callbacks within this manager's control.
suspend	a function to set the suspend state of the manager. If it is suspended, none of the callbacks will be invoked when a task is completed. One sets the state by specifying a logical value for the status argument.
register	a function to register the evaluate function with the internal C-level dispatch mechanism. This is done automatically by the add function, but can be called manually.
callbacks	returns the list of callbacks being maintained by this manager.

See Also

addTaskCallback, removeTaskCallback, getTaskCallbackNames\ http://developer.r-project.org/TaskHandlers.pdf

Examples

```
# create the manager
h <- taskCallbackManager()

# add a callback
h$add(function(expr, value, ok, visible) {
                      cat("In handler\n")
                      return(TRUE)
                    }, name = "simpleHandler")
```

```
# look at the internal callbacks.
getTaskCallbackNames()

# look at the R-level callbacks
names(h$callbacks())

getTaskCallbackNames()
removeTaskCallback("R-taskCallbackManager")
```

`taskCallbackNames` *Query the Names of the Current Internal Top-Level Task Callbacks*

Description

This provides a way to get the names (or identifiers) for the currently registered task callbacks that are invoked at the conclusion of each top-level task. These identifiers can be used to remove a callback.

Usage

```
getTaskCallbackNames()
```

Value

A character vector giving the name for each of the registered callbacks which are invoked when a top-level task is completed successfully. Each name is the one used when registering the callbacks and returned as the in the call to `addTaskCallback`.

Note

One can use `taskCallbackManager` to manage user-level task callbacks, i.e., S-language functions, entirely within the S language and access the names more directly.

See Also

`addTaskCallback`, `removeTaskCallback`, `taskCallbackManager`\ http://developer.r-project.org/TaskHandlers.pdf

Examples

```
n <- addTaskCallback(function(expr, value, ok, visible) {
                       cat("In handler\n")
                       return(TRUE)
                     }, name = "simpleHandler")

getTaskCallbackNames()

  # now remove it by name
removeTaskCallback("simpleHandler")


h <- taskCallbackManager()
h$add(function(expr, value, ok, visible) {
                       cat("In handler\n")
```

```
                        return(TRUE)
                      }, name = "simpleHandler")
getTaskCallbackNames()
removeTaskCallback("R-taskCallbackManager")
```

`tempfile` *Create Names for Temporary Files*

Description

`tempfile` returns a vector of character strings which can be used as names for temporary files.

Usage

```
tempfile(pattern = "file", tmpdir = tempdir(), fileext = "")
tempdir()
```

Arguments

`pattern`	a non-empty character vector giving the initial part of the name.
`tmpdir`	a non-empty character vector giving the directory name
`fileext`	a non-empty character vector giving the file extension

Details

The length of the result is the maximum of the lengths of the three arguments; values of shorter arguments are recycled.

The names are very likely to be unique among calls to `tempfile` in an session and across simultaneous sessions (unless `tmpdir` is specified). The filenames are guaranteed not to be currently in use.

The file name is made by concatenating the path given by `tmpdir`, the `pattern` string, a random string in hex and a suffix of `fileext`.

By default, `tmpdir` will be the directory given by `tempdir()`. This will be a subdirectory of the per-session temporary directory found by the following rule when the session is started. The environment variables `TMPDIR`, `TMP` and `TEMP` are checked in turn and the first found which points to a writable directory is used: if none succeeds '`/tmp`' is used. The path should not contain spaces. Note that setting any of these environment variables in the session has no effect on `tempdir()`: the per-session temporary directory is created before the interpreter is started.

Value

For `tempfile` a character vector giving the names of possible (temporary) files. Note that no files are generated by `tempfile`.

For `tempdir`, the path of the per-session temporary directory.

Note on parallel

processes forked by functions such as `mclapply` in package **parallel** (or **multicore**) share a per-session temporary directory. Further, the 'guaranteed not to be currently in use' applies only at the time of asking, and two children could ask simultaneously. This is circumvented by ensuring that `tempfile` calls in different children try different names.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`unlink` for deleting files.

Examples

```
tempfile(c("ab", "a b c"))   # give file name with spaces in!

tempfile("plot", fileext = c(".ps", ".pdf"))

tempdir() # works on all platforms with a platform-dependent result
```

---

textConnection *Text Connections*

Description

Input and output text connections.

Usage

```
textConnection(object, open = "r", local = FALSE,
               encoding = c("", "bytes", "UTF-8"))

textConnectionValue(con)
```

Arguments

`object`	character. A description of the connection. For an input this is an character vector object, and for an output connection the name for the character vector to receive the output, or `NULL` (for none).
`open`	character. Either `"r"` (or equivalently `""`) for an input connection or `"w"` or `"a"` for an output connection.
`local`	logical. Used only for output connections. If `TRUE`, output is assigned to a variable in the calling environment. Otherwise the global environment is used.
`encoding`	character. Used only for input connections. How marked strings in `object` should be handled: converted to the current locale, used byte-by-byte or translated to UTF-8.
`con`	An output text connection.

Details

An input text connection is opened and the character vector is copied at time the connection object is created, and `close` destroys the copy. `object` should be the name of a character vector: however, short expressions will be accepted provided they deparse to less than 60 bytes.

An output text connection is opened and creates an character vector of the given name in the user's workspace or in the calling environment, depending on the value of the `local` argument. This object will at all times hold the completed lines of output to the connection, and `isIncomplete` will indicate if there is an incomplete final line. Closing the connection will output the final line, complete or not. (A line is complete once it has been terminated by end-of-line, represented by `"\n"` in .) The output character vector has locked bindings (see `lockBinding`) until `close` is called on the connection. The character vector can also be retrieved *via* `textConnectionValue`, which is the only way to do so if `object = NULL`. If the current locale is detected as Latin-1 or UTF-8, non-ASCII elements of the character vector will be marked accordingly (see `Encoding`).

Opening a text connection with `mode = "a"` will attempt to append to an existing character vector with the given name in the user's workspace or the calling environment. If none is found (even if an object exists of the right name but the wrong type) a new character vector will be created, with a warning.

You cannot `seek` on a text connection, and `seek` will always return zero as the position.

Text connections have slightly unusual semantics: they are always open, and throwing away an input text connection without closing it (so it get garbage-collected) does not give a warning.

Value

For `textConnection`, a connection object of class `"textConnection"` which inherits from class `"connection"`.

For `textConnectionValue`, a character vector.

Note

As output text connections keep the character vector up to date line-by-line, they are relatively expensive to use, and it is often better to use an anonymous `file()` connection to collect output.

On (rare) platforms where `vsnprintf` does not return the needed length of output there is a 100,000 character limit on the length of line for output connections: longer lines will be truncated with a warning.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language.* Springer.
[S has input text connections only.]

See Also

`connections`, `showConnections`, `pushBack`, `capture.output`.

Examples

```
zz <- textConnection(LETTERS)
readLines(zz, 2)
scan(zz, "", 4)
pushBack(c("aa", "bb"), zz)
scan(zz, "", 4)
close(zz)
```

```
zz <- textConnection("foo", "w")
writeLines(c("testit1", "testit2"), zz)
cat("testit3 ", file = zz)
isIncomplete(zz)
cat("testit4\n", file = zz)
isIncomplete(zz)
close(zz)
foo

# capture R output: use part of example from help(lm)
zz <- textConnection("foo", "w")
ctl <- c(4.17, 5.58, 5.18, 6.11, 4.5, 4.61, 5.17, 4.53, 5.33, 5.14)
trt <- c(4.81, 4.17, 4.41, 3.59, 5.87, 3.83, 6.03, 4.89, 4.32, 4.69)
group <- gl(2, 10, 20, labels = c("Ctl", "Trt"))
weight <- c(ctl, trt)
sink(zz)
anova(lm.D9 <- lm(weight ~ group))
cat("\nSummary of Residuals:\n\n")
summary(resid(lm.D9))
sink()
close(zz)
cat(foo, sep = "\n")
```

`tilde` *Tilde Operator*

Description

Tilde is used to separate the left- and right-hand sides in a model formula.

Usage

```
y ~ model
```

Arguments

`y, model`	symbolic expressions.

Details

The left-hand side is optional, and one-sided formulae are used in some contexts.

A formula has mode `call`. It can be subsetted by `[[`: the components are `~`, the left-hand side (if present) and the right-hand side *in that order*.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical models.* Chapter 2 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`formula`

timezones *Time Zones*

Description

Information about time zones in . `Sys.timezone` returns the name of the current time zone.

Usage

```
Sys.timezone(location = TRUE)

OlsonNames()
```

Arguments

`location`	logical: should an attempt be made to find the location name as used in the Olson/IANA database? (See 'Time zone names' below.)

Details

Time zones are a system-specific topic, but these days almost all platforms use similar underlying code, used by Linux, OS X, Solaris, AIX, FreeBSD, Sun Java >= 1.4 and Tcl >= 8.5, and installed with on Windows. Unfortunately there are many system-specific errors in the implementations. It is possible to use 's own version of the code on Unix-alikes as well as on Windows: this is the default for OS X and recommended for Solaris.

It should be possible to set the time zone via the environment variable `TZ`: see the section on 'Time zone names' for suitable values. `Sys.timezone()` will return the value of `TZ` if set (and on some OSes it is always set), otherwise it will try to retrieve a value which if set for `TZ` would give the current time zone. This is not in general possible, and `Sys.timezone(FALSE)` on Windows will retrieve the abbreviation used for the current time.

If `TZ` is set but empty or invalid, most platforms default to 'UTC', the time zone colloquially known as 'GMT' (see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coordinated_Universal_Time). (Some but not all platforms will give a warning for invalid time zones.)

Time zones did not come into use until the second half of the nineteenth century and were not widely adopted until the twentieth, and *daylight saving time* (DST, also known as *summer time*) was first introduced in the early twentieth century, most widely in 1916. Over the last 100 years places have changed their affiliation between major time zones, have opted out of (or in to) DST in various years or adopted DST rule changes late or not at all.

The most common system implementation of `POSIXct` is as signed 32-bit integers and so only goes back to the end of 1901: on such systems assumes that dates prior to that are in the same time zone as they were in 1902. Most of the world had not adopted time zones by 1902 (so used local 'mean time' based on longitude) but for some places there had been time-zone changes before then. 64-bit representations are becoming common; unfortunately on some 64-bit OSes (notably OS X) the database information is only available for the range 1901–2038, and incompletely for the end years.

Value

`Sys.timezone` returns an OS-specific character string, possibly `NA` or an empty string (which on some OSes means 'UTC'). For the default `location = TRUE` this will be a location such as `"Europe/London"` if one can be ascertained. For `location = FALSE` this may be an abbreviation such as `"EST"` or `"CEST"` on Windows.

`OlsonNames` returns a character vector.

Time zone names

Names `"UTC"` and (its synonym) `"GMT"` are accepted on all platforms.

Where OSes describe their valid time zones can be obscure. The help for the C function `tzset` can be helpful, but it can also be inaccurate. There is a cumbersome POSIX specification (listed under environment variable `TZ` at http://pubs.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/9699919799/basedefs/V1_chap08.html#tag_08), which is often at least partially supported, but there are other more user-friendly ways to specify time zones.

Almost all platforms make use of a time-zone database originally compiled by Arthur David Olson and now managed by IANA, in which the preferred way to refer to a time zone is by a location (typically of a city), e.g., `Europe/London`, `America/Los_Angeles`, `Pacific/Easter`. Some traditional designations are also allowed such as `EST5EDT` or `GB`. (Beware that some of these designations may not be what you expect: in particular `EST` is a time zone used in Canada *without* daylight saving time, and not `EST5EDT` nor (Australian) Eastern Standard Time.) The designation can also be an optional colon prepended to the path to a file giving complied zone information (and the examples above are all files in a system-specific location). See http://www.twinsun.com/tz/tz-link.htm for more details and references. By convention, regions with a unique time-zone history since 1970 have specific names in the database, but those with different earlier histories may not. Each time zone has one or two (the second for DST) *abbreviations* used when formatting times.

The abbreviations used have changed over the years: for example France used 'PMT' ('Paris Mean Time') from 1891 to 1911 then 'WET/WEST' up to 1940 and 'CET/CEST' from 1946. (In almost all time zones they have been stable since 1970.) The POSIX standard allows only one or two abbreviations per time zone, so you may see the current abbreviation(s) used for older times: more so in versions of prior to 3.1.0.

The function `OlsonNames` returns the time-zone names known to the Olson/IANA database on the current system. The system-specific location in the file system varies, e.g. '`/usr/share/zoneinfo`' (Linux, OS X, FreeBSD), '`/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo`' (Solaris, AIX), ... It is likely that there is a file named something like '`zone.tab`' under that directory listing the locations known as time-zone names (but not for example `EST5EDT`): this is read by `OlsonNames`. See also http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zone.tab.

Where was configured with option '`--with-internal-tzcode`' (the default on OS X: recommended on Solaris), the database at `file.path(R.home("share"), "zoneinfo")` is used by default: file '`VERSION`' in that directory states the version. Environment variable `TZDIR` can be used to point to a different '`zoneinfo`' directory: this is also supported by the native services on some OSes, e.g. Linux).

Most platforms support time zones of the form '`GMT+n`' and '`GMT-n`', which assume at a fixed offset from UTC (hence no DST). Contrary to some expectations (but consistent with names such as '`PST8PDT`'), negative offsets are times ahead of (east of) UTC, positive offsets are times behind (west of) UTC.

Immediately prior to the advent of legislated time zones, people used time based on their longitude, known as 'Local Mean Time' and abbreviated as '`LMT`' in the databases. Often this was codified by a name such as 'Copenhagen Mean Time' for a period before the switch to standard time zones

(such as 'GMT+5'). For example, Paris codified its LMT as 'Paris Mean Time' in 1891, switched to 'GMT+0' in 1911 and to 'GMT-1' in 1945.

Note

Since 2007 there has been considerable disruption over changes to the timings of the DST transitions, aimed at energy conservation. These often have short notice and time-zone databases may not be up to date. (Chile has in the recent past announced changes at *5 days* notice, and in 2014 Turkey gave only a month's notice.)

On platforms with case-insensitive file systems, time zone names will be case-insensitive. They may or may not be on other platforms and so, for example, "gmt" is valid on some platforms and not on others.

Note that except where replaced, the operation of time zones is an OS service, and even where replaced a third-party database is used and can be updated (see the section on 'Time zone names'). Incorrect results will never be an issue, so please ensure that you have the courtesy not to blame for them.

See Also

Sys.time, as.POSIXlt.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Time_zone and http://www.twinsun.com/tz/tz-link.htm for extensive sets of links.

Examples

```
Sys.timezone()

str(OlsonNames()) ## a few hundred names
```

---

toString *Convert an R Object to a Character String*

Description

This is a helper function for format to produce a single character string describing an object.

Usage

```
toString(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
toString(x, width = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	The object to be converted.
width	Suggestion for the maximum field width. Values of NULL or 0 indicate no maximum. The minimum value accepted is 6 and smaller values are taken as 6.
...	Optional arguments passed to or from methods.

Details

This is a generic function for which methods can be written: only the default method is described here. Most methods should honor the `width` argument to specify the maximum display width (as measured by `nchar(type = "width")` of the result.

The default method first converts `x` to character and then concatenates the elements separated by `", "`. If `width` is supplied and is not `NULL`, the default method returns the first `width - 4` characters of the result with `....` appended, if the full result would use more than `width` characters.

Value

A character vector of length 1 is returned.

Author(s)

Robert Gentleman

See Also

`format`

Examples

```
x <- c("a", "b", "aaaaaaaaaa")
toString(x)
toString(x, width = 8)
```

`trace` *Interactive Tracing and Debugging of Calls to a Function or Method*

Description

A call to `trace` allows you to insert debugging code (e.g., a call to `browser` or `recover`) at chosen places in any function. A call to `untrace` cancels the tracing. Specified methods can be traced the same way, without tracing all calls to the function. Trace code can be any expression. Tracing can be temporarily turned on or off globally by calling `tracingState`.

Usage

```
trace(what, tracer, exit, at, print, signature,
      where = topenv(parent.frame()), edit = FALSE)
untrace(what, signature = NULL, where = topenv(parent.frame()))

tracingState(on = NULL)
.doTrace(expr, msg)
```

Arguments

what	The name (quoted or not) of a function to be traced or untraced. For untrace or for trace with more than one argument, more than one name can be given in the quoted form, and the same action will be applied to each one.
tracer	Either a function or an unevaluated expression. The function will be called or the expression will be evaluated either at the beginning of the call, or before those steps in the call specified by the argument at. See the details section.
exit	Either a function or an unevaluated expression. The function will be called or the expression will be evaluated on exiting the function. See the details section.
at	optional numeric vector or list. If supplied, tracer will be called just before the corresponding step in the body of the function. See the details section.
print	If TRUE (as per default), a descriptive line is printed before any trace expression is evaluated.
signature	If this argument is supplied, it should be a signature for a method for function what. In this case, the method, and *not* the function itself, is traced.
edit	For complicated tracing, such as tracing within a loop inside the function, you will need to insert the desired calls by editing the body of the function. If so, supply the edit argument either as TRUE, or as the name of the editor you want to use. Then trace() will call edit and use the version of the function after you edit it. See the details section for additional information.
where	where to look for the function to be traced; by default, the top-level environment of the call to trace. An important use of this argument is to trace a function when it is called from a package with a namespace. The current namespace mechanism imports the functions to be called (with the exception of functions in the base package). The functions being called are *not* the same objects seen from the top-level (in general, the imported packages may not even be attached). Therefore, you must ensure that the correct versions are being traced. The way to do this is to set argument where to a function in the namespace. The tracing computations will then start looking in the environment of that function (which will be the namespace of the corresponding package). (Yes, it's subtle, but the semantics here are central to how namespaces work in R.)
on	logical; a call to the support function tracingState returns TRUE if tracing is globally turned on, FALSE otherwise. An argument of one or the other of those values sets the state. If the tracing state is FALSE, none of the trace actions will actually occur (used, for example, by debugging functions to shut off tracing during debugging).
expr, msg	arguments to the support function .doTrace, calls to which are inserted into the modified function or method: expr is the tracing action (such as a call to browser(), and msg is a string identifying the place where the trace action occurs.

Details

The trace function operates by constructing a revised version of the function (or of the method, if signature is supplied), and assigning the new object back where the original was found. If only the what argument is given, a line of trace printing is produced for each call to the function (back compatible with the earlier version of trace).

The object constructed by `trace` is from a class that extends `"function"` and which contains the original, untraced version. A call to `untrace` re-assigns this version.

If the argument `tracer` or `exit` is the name of a function, the tracing expression will be a call to that function, with no arguments. This is the easiest and most common case, with the functions `browser` and `recover` the likeliest candidates; the former browses in the frame of the function being traced, and the latter allows browsing in any of the currently active calls.

The `tracer` or `exit` argument can also be an unevaluated expression (such as returned by a call to `quote` or `substitute`). This expression itself is inserted in the traced function, so it will typically involve arguments or local objects in the traced function. An expression of this form is useful if you only want to interact when certain conditions apply (and in this case you probably want to supply `print = FALSE` in the call to `trace` also).

When the `at` argument is supplied, it can be a vector of integers referring to the substeps of the body of the function (this only works if the body of the function is enclosed in `{ ...}`. In this case `tracer` is *not* called on entry, but instead just before evaluating each of the steps listed in `at`. (Hint: you don't want to try to count the steps in the printed version of a function; instead, look at `as.list(body(f))` to get the numbers associated with the steps in function `f`.)

The `at` argument can also be a list of integer vectors. In this case, each vector refers to a step nested within another step of the function. For example, `at = list(c(3,4))` will call the tracer just before the fourth step of the third step of the function. See the example below.

Using `setBreakpoint` (from package **utils**) may be an alternative, calling `trace(...., at, ...)`.

An intrinsic limitation in the `exit` argument is that it won't work if the function itself uses `on.exit`, since the existing calls will override the one supplied by `trace`.

Tracing does not nest. Any call to `trace` replaces previously traced versions of that function or method (except for edited versions as discussed below), and `untrace` always restores an untraced version. (Allowing nested tracing has too many potentials for confusion and for accidentally leaving traced versions behind.)

When the `edit` argument is used repeatedly with no call to `untrace` on the same function or method in between, the previously edited version is retained. If you want to throw away all the previous tracing and then edit, call `untrace` before the next call to `trace`. Editing may be combined with automatic tracing; just supply the other arguments such as `tracer`, and the `edit` argument as well. The `edit = TRUE` argument uses the default editor (see `edit`).

Tracing primitive functions (builtins and specials) from the base package works, but only by a special mechanism and not very informatively. Tracing a primitive causes the primitive to be replaced by a function with argument `...` (only). You can get a bit of information out, but not much. A warning message is issued when `trace` is used on a primitive.

The practice of saving the traced version of the function back where the function came from means that tracing carries over from one session to another, *if* the traced function is saved in the session image. (In the next session, `untrace` will remove the tracing.) On the other hand, functions that were in a package, not in the global environment, are not saved in the image, so tracing expires with the session for such functions.

Tracing a method is basically just like tracing a function, with the exception that the traced version is stored by a call to `setMethod` rather than by direct assignment, and so is the untraced version after a call to `untrace`.

The version of `trace` described here is largely compatible with the version in S-Plus, although the two work by entirely different mechanisms. The S-Plus `trace` uses the session frame, with the result that tracing never carries over from one session to another (does not have a session frame). Another relevant distinction has nothing directly to do with `trace`: The browser in S-Plus allows changes to be made to the frame being browsed, and the changes will persist after exiting the browser. The

browser allows changes, but they disappear when the browser exits. This may be relevant in that the S-Plus version allows you to experiment with code changes interactively, but the version does not. (A future revision may include a 'destructive' browser for .)

Value

In the simple version (just the first argument), invisible `NULL`. Otherwise, the traced function(s) name(s). The relevant consequence is the assignment that takes place.

Note

The version of function tracing that includes any of the arguments except for the function name requires the **methods** package (because it uses special classes of objects to store and restore versions of the traced functions).

If methods dispatch is not currently on, `trace` will load the methods namespace, but will not put the methods package on the search list.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`browser` and `recover`, the likeliest tracing functions; also, `quote` and `substitute` for constructing general expressions.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

##  Very simple use
trace(sum)
hist(stats::rnorm(100)) # shows about 3-4 calls to sum()
untrace(sum)

if(.isMethodsDispatchOn()) { # non-simple use needs methods package

f <- function(x, y) {
    y <- pmax(y, 0.001)
    if (x > 0) x ^ y else stop("x must be positive")
}

## arrange to call the browser on entering and exiting
## function f
trace("f", quote(browser(skipCalls = 4)),
      exit = quote(browser(skipCalls = 4)))

## instead, conditionally assign some data, and then browse
## on exit, but only then.  Dont bother me otherwise

trace("f", quote(if(any(y < 0)) yOrig <- y),
      exit = quote(if(exists("yOrig")) browser(skipCalls = 4)),
      print = FALSE)
```

```
## Enter the browser just before stop() is called.  First, find
## the step numbers

as.list(body(f))
as.list(body(f)[[3]])

## Now call the browser there

trace("f", quote(browser(skipCalls = 4)), at = list(c(3,4)))

## trace a utility function, with recover so we
## can browse in the calling functions as well.

trace("as.matrix", recover)

## turn off the tracing

untrace(c("f", "as.matrix"))

## Not run:
## trace calls to the function lm() that come from
## the nlme package.
## (The function nlme is in that package, and the package
## has a namespace, so the where= argument must be used
## to get the right version of lm)

trace(lm, exit = recover, where = nlme)

## End(Not run)
}
```

`traceback` *Print Call Stacks*

Description

By default `traceback()` prints the call stack of the last uncaught error, i.e., the sequence of calls that lead to the error. This is useful when an error occurs with an unidentifiable error message. It can also be used to print the current stack or arbitrary lists of deparsed calls.

Usage

```
traceback(x = NULL, max.lines = getOption("deparse.max.lines"))
```

Arguments

`x`	`NULL` (default, meaning `.Traceback`), or an integer count of calls to skip in the current stack, or a list or pairlist of deparsed calls. See the details.
`max.lines`	The maximum number of lines to be printed *per call*. The default is unlimited.

Details

The default display is of the stack of the last uncaught error as stored as a list of deparsed calls in `.Traceback`, which `traceback` prints in a user-friendly format. The stack of deparsed calls always contains all function calls and all foreign function calls (such as `.Call`): if profiling is in progress it will include calls to some primitive functions. (Calls to builtins are included, but not to specials.)

Errors which are caught *via* `try` or `tryCatch` do not generate a traceback, so what is printed is the call sequence for the last uncaught error, and not necessarily for the last error.

If `x` is numeric, then the current stack is printed, skipping `x` entries at the top of the stack. For example, `options(error = function() traceback(2))` will print the stack at the time of the error, skipping the call to `traceback()` and the error function that called it.

Otherwise, `x` is assumed to be a list or pairlist of deparsed calls and will be displayed in the same way.

Value

`traceback()` prints the deparsed call stack deepest call first, and returns it invisibly. The calls may print on more than one line, and the first line for each call is labelled by the frame number. The number of lines printed per call can be limited via `max.lines`.

Warning

It is undocumented where `.Traceback` is stored nor that it is visible, and this is subject to change.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
foo <- function(x) { print(1); bar(2) }
bar <- function(x) { x + a.variable.which.does.not.exist }
## Not run:
foo(2) # gives a strange error
traceback()
## End(Not run)
## 2: bar(2)
## 1: foo(2)
bar
## Ah, this is the culprit ...

## This will print the stack trace at the time of the error.
options(error = function() traceback(2))
```

---

tracemem *Trace Copying of Objects*

Description

This function marks an object so that a message is printed whenever the internal code copies the object. It is a major cause of hard-to-predict memory use in R.

Usage

```
tracemem(x)
untracemem(x)
retracemem(x, previous = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	An R object, not a function or environment or NULL.
previous	A value as returned by tracemem or retracemem.

Details

This functionality is optional, determined at compilation, because it makes R run a little more slowly even when no objects are being traced. tracemem and untracemem give errors when R is not compiled with memory profiling; retracemem does not (so it can be left in code during development).

It is enabled in the CRAN OS X and Windows builds of .

When an object is traced any copying of the object by the C function duplicate produces a message to standard output, as does type coercion and copying when passing arguments to .C or .Fortran.

The message consists of the string tracemem, the identifying strings for the object being copied and the new object being created, and a stack trace showing where the duplication occurred. retracemem() is used to indicate that a variable should be considered a copy of a previous variable (e.g., after subscripting).

The messages can be turned off with tracingState.

It is not possible to trace functions, as this would conflict with trace and it is not useful to trace NULL, environments, promises, weak references, or external pointer objects, as these are not duplicated.

These functions are primitive.

Value

A character string for identifying the object in the trace output (an address in hex enclosed in angle brackets), or NULL (invisibly).

See Also

capabilities("profmem") to see if this was enabled for this build of .

trace, Rprofmem

http://developer.r-project.org/memory-profiling.html

Examples

```
## Not run:
a <- 1:10
tracemem(a)
## b and a share memory
b <- a
b[1] <- 1
untracemem(a)

## copying in lm: less than R <= 2.15.0
```

```
d <- stats::rnorm(10)
tracemem(d)
lm(d ~ a+log(b))

## f is not a copy and is not traced
f <- d[-1]
f+1
## indicate that f should be traced as a copy of d
retracemem(f, retracemem(d))
f+1

## End(Not run)
```

`transform` *Transform an Object, for Example a Data Frame*

Description

`transform` is a generic function, which—at least currently—only does anything useful with data frames. `transform.default` converts its first argument to a data frame if possible and calls `transform.data.frame`.

Usage

```
transform(_data, ...)
```

Arguments

`_data`	The object to be transformed
`...`	Further arguments of the form `tag=value`

Details

The `...` arguments to `transform.data.frame` are tagged vector expressions, which are evaluated in the data frame `_data`. The tags are matched against `names(_data)`, and for those that match, the value replace the corresponding variable in `_data`, and the others are appended to `_data`.

Value

The modified value of `_data`.

Warning

This is a convenience function intended for use interactively. For programming it is better to use the standard subsetting arithmetic functions, and in particular the non-standard evaluation of argument `transform` can have unanticipated consequences.

Note

If some of the values are not vectors of the appropriate length, you deserve whatever you get!

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

See Also

`within` for a more flexible approach, `subset`, `list`, `data.frame`

Examples

```
transform(airquality, Ozone = -Ozone)
transform(airquality, new = -Ozone, Temp = (Temp-32)/1.8)

attach(airquality)
transform(Ozone, logOzone = log(Ozone)) # marginally interesting ...
detach(airquality)
```

Trig *Trigonometric Functions*

Description

These functions give the obvious trigonometric functions. They respectively compute the cosine, sine, tangent, arc-cosine, arc-sine, arc-tangent, and the two-argument arc-tangent.

`cospi(x)`, `sinpi(x)`, and `tanpi(x)`, compute `cos(pi*x)`, `sin(pi*x)`, and `tan(pi*x)`.

Usage

```
cos(x)
sin(x)
tan(x)

acos(x)
asin(x)
atan(x)
atan2(y, x)

cospi(x)
sinpi(x)
tanpi(x)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	numeric or complex vectors.

Details

The arc-tangent of two arguments `atan2(y, x)` returns the angle between the x-axis and the vector from the origin to (x, y), i.e., for positive arguments `atan2(y, x) == atan(y/x)`.

Angles are in radians, not degrees, for the standard versions (i.e., a right angle is $\pi/2$), and in 'half-rotations' for `cospi` etc.

`cospi(x)`, `sinpi(x)`, and `tanpi(x)` are accurate for `x` which are multiples of a half.

All except `atan2` are internal generic primitive functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the `Math` group generic.

Value

`tanpi(0.5)` is `NaN`. Similarly for other inputs with fractional part `0.5`.

Complex values

For the inverse trigonometric functions, branch cuts are defined as in Abramowitz and Stegun, figure 4.4, page 79.

For `asin` and `acos`, there are two cuts, both along the real axis: $(-\infty, -1]$ and $[1, \infty)$.

For `atan` there are two cuts, both along the pure imaginary axis: $(-\infty i, -1i]$ and $[1i, \infty i)$.

The behaviour actually on the cuts follows the C99 standard which requires continuity coming round the endpoint in a counter-clockwise direction.

Complex arguments for `cospi`, `sinpi`, and `tanpi` are not yet implemented.

S4 methods

All except `atan2` are S4 generic functions: methods can be defined for them individually or via the `Math` group generic.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Abramowitz, M. and Stegun, I. A. (1972). *Handbook of Mathematical Functions*. New York: Dover.
Chapter 4. Elementary Transcendental Functions: Logarithmic, Exponential, Circular and Hyperbolic Functions

For `cospi`, `sinpi`, and `tanpi` the draft C11 extension ISO/IEC TS 18661 (http://www.open-std.org/jtc1/sc22/wg14/www/docs/n1785.pdf).

Examples

```
x <- seq(-3, 7, by = 1/8)
tx <- cbind(x, cos(pi*x), cospi(x), sin(pi*x), sinpi(x),
               tan(pi*x), tanpi(x), deparse.level=2)
op <- options(digits = 4, width = 90) # for nice formatting
head(tx)
tx[ (x %% 1) %in% c(0, 0.5) ,]
options(op)
```

try *Try an Expression Allowing Error Recovery*

Description

try is a wrapper to run an expression that might fail and allow the user's code to handle error-recovery.

Usage

```
try(expr, silent = FALSE)
```

Arguments

expr	an expression to try.
silent	logical: should the report of error messages be suppressed?

Details

try evaluates an expression and traps any errors that occur during the evaluation. If an error occurs then the error message is printed to the stderr connection unless options("show.error.messages") is false or the call includes silent = TRUE. The error message is also stored in a buffer where it can be retrieved by geterrmessage. (This should not be needed as the value returned in case of an error contains the error message.)

try is implemented using tryCatch; for programming, instead of try(expr, silent = TRUE), something like tryCatch(expr, error = function(e) e) (or other simple error handler functions) may be more efficient and flexible.

Value

The value of the expression if expr is evaluated without error, but an invisible object of class "try-error" containing the error message, and the error condition as the "condition" attribute, if it fails.

See Also

options for setting error handlers and suppressing the printing of error messages; geterrmessage for retrieving the last error message. The underlying tryCatch provides more flexible means of catching and handling errors.

assertCondition in package **tools** is related and useful for testing.

Examples

```
## this example will not work correctly in example(try), but
## it does work correctly if pasted in
options(show.error.messages = FALSE)
try(log("a"))
print(.Last.value)
options(show.error.messages = TRUE)

## alternatively,
print(try(log("a"), TRUE))
```

```
## run a simulation, keep only the results that worked.
set.seed(123)
x <- stats::rnorm(50)
doit <- function(x)
{
    x <- sample(x, replace = TRUE)
    if(length(unique(x)) > 30) mean(x)
    else stop("too few unique points")
}
## alternative 1
res <- lapply(1:100, function(i) try(doit(x), TRUE))
## alternative 2
## Not run: res <- vector("list", 100)
for(i in 1:100) res[[i]] <- try(doit(x), TRUE)
## End(Not run)
unlist(res[sapply(res, function(x) !inherits(x, "try-error"))])
```

---

typeof *The Type of an Object*

Description

typeof determines the (internal) type or storage mode of any object

Usage

```
typeof(x)
```

Arguments

x	any object.

Value

A character string. The possible values are listed in the structure TypeTable in 'src/main/util.c'. Current values are the vector types "logical", "integer", "double", "complex", "character", "raw" and "list", "NULL", "closure" (function), "special" and "builtin" (basic functions and operators), "environment", "S4" (some S4 objects) and others that are unlikely to be seen at user level ("symbol", "pairlist", "promise", "language", "char", "...", "any", "expression", "externalptr", "bytecode" and "weakref").

See Also

mode, storage.mode.

isS4 to determine if an object has an S4 class.

Examples

```
typeof(2)
mode(2)
```

unique *Extract Unique Elements*

Description

unique returns a vector, data frame or array like x but with duplicate elements/rows removed.

Usage

```
unique(x, incomparables = FALSE, ...)

## Default S3 method:
unique(x, incomparables = FALSE, fromLast = FALSE,
        nmax = NA, ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
unique(x, incomparables = FALSE, MARGIN = 1,
       fromLast = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class array
unique(x, incomparables = FALSE, MARGIN = 1,
       fromLast = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a vector or a data frame or an array or NULL.
incomparables	a vector of values that cannot be compared. FALSE is a special value, meaning that all values can be compared, and may be the only value accepted for methods other than the default. It will be coerced internally to the same type as x.
fromLast	logical indicating if duplication should be considered from the last, i.e., the last (or rightmost) of identical elements will be kept. This only matters for names or dimnames.
nmax	the maximum number of unique items expected (greater than one). See duplicated.
...	arguments for particular methods.
MARGIN	the array margin to be held fixed: a single integer.

Details

This is a generic function with methods for vectors, data frames and arrays (including matrices).

The array method calculates for each element of the dimension specified by MARGIN if the remaining dimensions are identical to those for an earlier element (in row-major order). This would most commonly be used for matrices to find unique rows (the default) or columns (with MARGIN = 2).

Note that unlike the Unix command uniq this omits *duplicated* and not just *repeated* elements/rows. That is, an element is omitted if it is equal to any previous element and not just if it is equal the immediately previous one. (For the latter, see rle).

Missing values are regarded as equal, but NaN is not equal to NA_real_. Character strings are regarded as equal if they are in different encodings but would agree when translated to UTF-8.

Values in `incomparables` will never be marked as duplicated. This is intended to be used for a fairly small set of values and will not be efficient for a very large set.

When used on a data frame with more than one column, or an array or matrix when comparing dimensions of length greater than one, this tests for identity of character representations. This will catch people who unwisely rely on exact equality of floating-point numbers!

Character strings will be compared as byte sequences if any input is marked as `"bytes"` (see `Encoding`).

Value

For a vector, an object of the same type of `x`, but with only one copy of each duplicated element. No attributes are copied (so the result has no names).

For a data frame, a data frame is returned with the same columns but possibly fewer rows (and with row names from the first occurrences of the unique rows).

A matrix or array is subsetted by `[, drop = FALSE]`, so dimensions and dimnames are copied appropriately, and the result always has the same number of dimensions as `x`.

Warning

Using this for lists is potentially slow, especially if the elements are not atomic vectors (see `vector`) or differ only in their attributes. In the worst case it is $O(n^2)$.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`duplicated` which gives the indices of duplicated elements.

`rle` which is the equivalent of the Unix `uniq -c` command.

Examples

```
x <- c(3:5, 11:8, 8 + 0:5)
(ux <- unique(x))
(u2 <- unique(x, fromLast = TRUE)) # different order
stopifnot(identical(sort(ux), sort(u2)))

length(unique(sample(100, 100, replace = TRUE)))
## approximately 100(1 - 1/e) = 63.21

unique(iris)
```

unlink *Delete Files and Directories*

Description

unlink deletes the file(s) or directories specified by x.

Usage

```
unlink(x, recursive = FALSE, force = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a character vector with the names of the file(s) or directories to be deleted. Wildcards (normally '*' and '?') are allowed.
recursive	logical. Should directories be deleted recursively?
force	logical. Should permissions be changed (if possible) to allow the file or directory to be removed?

Details

Tilde-expansion (see path.expand) is done on x.

If recursive = FALSE directories are not deleted, not even empty ones.

On most platforms 'file' includes symbolic links, fifos and sockets. Prior to 2.15.0 unlink(x, recursive = TRUE) would delete the contents of a directory target of a symbolic link: it now only deletes the symbolic link (as unlink(x, recursive = FALSE) always has).

Wildcard expansion is done by the internal code of Sys.glob. Wildcards never match a leading '.' in the filename, and files '.' and '..' will never be considered for deletion. Wildcards will only be expanded if the system supports it. Most systems will support not only '*' and '?' but also character classes such as '[a-z]' (see the man pages for the system call glob on your OS). The metacharacters * ? [can occur in Unix filenames, and this makes it difficult to use unlink to delete such files (see file.remove), although escaping the metacharacters by backslashes usually works. If a metacharacter matches nothing it is considered as a literal character.

recursive = TRUE might not be supported on all platforms, when it will be ignored, with a warning: however there are no known current examples.

Value

0 for success, 1 for failure, invisibly. Not deleting a non-existent file is not a failure, nor is being unable to delete a directory if recursive = FALSE. However, missing values in x are regarded as failures.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

file.remove.

unlist *Flatten Lists*

Description

Given a list structure x, unlist simplifies it to produce a vector which contains all the atomic components which occur in x.

Usage

```
unlist(x, recursive = TRUE, use.names = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	an object, typically a list or vector.
recursive	logical. Should unlisting be applied to list components of x?
use.names	logical. Should names be preserved?

Details

unlist is generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods, and note, e.g., relist with the unlist method for relistable objects.

If recursive = FALSE, the function will not recurse beyond the first level items in x.

Factors are treated specially. If all non-list elements of x are factors (or ordered factors) then the result will be a factor with levels the union of the level sets of the elements, in the order the levels occur in the level sets of the elements (which means that if all the elements have the same level set, that is the level set of the result).

x can be an atomic vector, but then unlist does nothing useful, not even drop names.

By default, unlist tries to retain the naming information present in x. If use.names = FALSE all naming information is dropped.

Where possible the list elements are coerced to a common mode during the unlisting, and so the result often ends up as a character vector. Vectors will be coerced to the highest type of the components in the hierarchy NULL < raw < logical < integer < double < complex < character < list < expression: pairlists are treated as lists.

A list is a (generic) vector, and the simplified vector might still be a list (and might be unchanged). Non-vector elements of the list (for example language elements such as names, formulas and calls) are not coerced, and so a list containing one or more of these remains a list. (The effect of unlisting an lm fit is a list which has individual residuals as components.) Note that unlist(x) now returns x unchanged also for non-vector x, instead of signalling an error in that case.

Value

NULL or an expression or a vector of an appropriate mode to hold the list components.

The output type is determined from the highest type of the components in the hierarchy NULL < raw < logical < integer < double < complex < character < list < expression, after coercion of pairlists to lists.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

c, as.list, relist.

Examples

```
unlist(options())
unlist(options(), use.names = FALSE)

l.ex <- list(a = list(1:5, LETTERS[1:5]), b = "Z", c = NA)
unlist(l.ex, recursive = FALSE)
unlist(l.ex, recursive = TRUE)

l1 <- list(a = "a", b = 2, c = pi+2i)
unlist(l1) # a character vector
l2 <- list(a = "a", b = as.name("b"), c = pi+2i)
unlist(l2) # remains a list

ll <- list(as.name("sinc"), quote( a + b ), 1:10, letters, expression(1+x))
utils::str(ll)
for(x in ll)
  stopifnot(identical(x, unlist(x)))
```

---

unname *Remove* names *or* dimnames

Description

Remove the names or dimnames attribute of an object.

Usage

```
unname(obj, force = FALSE)
```

Arguments

obj	an object.
force	logical; if true, the dimnames (names and row names) are removed even from data.frames.

Value

Object as obj but without names or dimnames.

Examples

```
require(graphics); require(stats)

## Answering a question on R-help (14 Oct 1999):
col3 <- 750+ 100*rt(1500, df = 3)
breaks <- factor(cut(col3, breaks = 360+5*(0:155)))
z <- table(breaks)
z[1:5] # The names are larger than the data ...
barplot(unname(z), axes = FALSE)
```

`UseMethod` *Class Methods*

Description

possesses a simple generic function mechanism which can be used for an object-oriented style of programming. Method dispatch takes place based on the class(es) of the first argument to the generic function or of the object supplied as an argument to `UseMethod` or `NextMethod`.

Usage

```
UseMethod(generic, object)

NextMethod(generic = NULL, object = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`generic`	a character string naming a function (and not a built-in operator). Required for `UseMethod`.
`object`	for `UseMethod`: an object whose class will determine the method to be dispatched. Defaults to the first argument of the enclosing function.
`...`	further arguments to be passed to the next method.

Details

An object is a data object which has a `class` attribute (and this can be tested by `is.object`). A class attribute is a character vector giving the names of the classes from which the object *inherits*. If the object does not have a class attribute, it has an implicit class. Matrices and arrays have class `"matrix"` or`"array"` followed by the class of the underlying vector. Most vectors have class the result of `mode(x)`, except that integer vectors have class `c("integer", "numeric")` and real vectors have class `c("double", "numeric")`.

When a function calling `UseMethod("fun")` is applied to an object with class attribute `c("first", "second")`, the system searches for a function called `fun.first` and, if it finds it, applies it to the object. If no such function is found a function called `fun.second` is tried. If no class name produces a suitable function, the function `fun.default` is used, if it exists, or an error results.

Function `methods` can be used to find out about the methods for a particular generic function or class.

`UseMethod` is a primitive function but uses standard argument matching. It is not the only means of dispatch of methods, for there are internal generic and group generic functions. `UseMethod`

currently dispatches on the implicit class even for arguments that are not objects, but the other means of dispatch do not.

`NextMethod` invokes the next method (determined by the class vector, either of the object supplied to the generic, or of the first argument to the function containing `NextMethod` if a method was invoked directly). Normally `NextMethod` is used with only one argument, `generic`, but if further arguments are supplied these modify the call to the next method.

`NextMethod` should not be called except in methods called by `UseMethod` or from internal generics (see InternalGenerics). In particular it will not work inside anonymous calling functions (e.g., `get("print.ts")(AirPassengers)`).

Namespaces can register methods for generic functions. To support this, `UseMethod` and `NextMethod` search for methods in two places: first in the environment in which the generic function is called, and then in the registration data base for the environment in which the generic is defined (typically a namespace). So methods for a generic function need to be available in the environment of the call to the generic, or they must be registered. (It does not matter whether they are visible in the environment in which the generic is defined.)

Technical Details

Now for some obscure details that need to appear somewhere. These comments will be slightly different than those in Chambers(1992). (See also the draft 'R Language Definition'.) `UseMethod` creates a new function call with arguments matched as they came in to the generic. Any local variables defined before the call to `UseMethod` are retained (unlike S). Any statements after the call to `UseMethod` will not be evaluated as `UseMethod` does not return. `UseMethod` can be called with more than two arguments: a warning will be given and additional arguments ignored. (They are not completely ignored in S.) If it is called with just one argument, the class of the first argument of the enclosing function is used as `object`: unlike S this is the first actual argument passed and not the current value of the object of that name.

`NextMethod` works by creating a special call frame for the next method. If no new arguments are supplied, the arguments will be the same in number, order and name as those to the current method but their values will be promises to evaluate their name in the current method and environment. Any named arguments matched to `...` are handled specially: they either replace existing arguments of the same name or are appended to the argument list. They are passed on as the promise that was supplied as an argument to the current environment. (S does this differently!) If they have been evaluated in the current (or a previous environment) they remain evaluated. (This is a complex area, and subject to change: see the draft 'R Language Definition'.)

The search for methods for `NextMethod` is slightly different from that for `UseMethod`. Finding no `fun.default` is not necessarily an error, as the search continues to the generic itself. This is to pick up an internal generic like `[` which has no separate default method, and succeeds only if the generic is a primitive function or a wrapper for a `.Internal` function of the same name. (When a primitive is called as the default method, argument matching may not work as described above due to the different semantics of primitives.)

You will see objects such as `.Generic`, `.Method`, and `.Class` used in methods. These are set in the environment within which the method is evaluated by the dispatch mechanism, which is as follows:

1. Find the context for the calling function (the generic): this gives us the unevaluated arguments for the original call.
2. Evaluate the object (usually an argument) to be used for dispatch, and find a method (possibly the default method) or throw an error.
3. Create an environment for evaluating the method and insert special variables (see below) into that environment. Also copy any variables in the environment of the generic that are not formal (or actual) arguments.

4. Fix up the argument list to be the arguments of the call matched to the formals of the method.

`.Generic` is a length-one character vector naming the generic function.

`.Method` is a character vector (normally of length one) naming the method function. (For functions in the group generic `Ops` it is of length two.)

`.Class` is a character vector of classes used to find the next method. `NextMethod` adds an attribute `"previous"` to `.Class` giving the `.Class` last used for dispatch, and shifts `.Class` along to that used for dispatch.

`.GenericCallEnv` and `.GenericDefEnv` are the environments of the call to be generic and defining the generic respectively. (The latter is used to find methods registered for the generic.)

Note that `.Class` is set when the generic is called, and is unchanged if the class of the dispatching argument is changed in a method. It is possible to change the method that `NextMethod` would dispatch by manipulating `.Class`, but 'this is not recommended unless you understand the inheritance mechanism thoroughly' (Chambers & Hastie, 1992, p. 469).

Note

This scheme is called *S3* (S version 3). For new projects, it is recommended to use the more flexible and robust *S4* scheme provided in the **methods** package.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Classes and methods: object-oriented programming in S.* Appendix A of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

The draft 'R Language Definition'.

`methods`, `class`, `getS3method`, `is.object`.

`userhooks` *Functions to Get and Set Hooks for Load, Attach, Detach and Unload*

Description

These functions allow users to set actions to be taken before packages are attached/detached and namespaces are (un)loaded.

Usage

```
getHook(hookName)
setHook(hookName, value,
        action = c("append", "prepend", "replace"))

packageEvent(pkgname,
             event = c("onLoad", "attach", "detach", "onUnload"))
```

Arguments

hookName	character string: the hook name
pkgname	character string: the package/namespace name
event	character string: an event for the package
value	A function or a list of functions, or for action = "replace", NULL
action	The action to be taken. The names can be abbreviated.

Details

setHook provides a general mechanism for users to register hooks, a list of functions to be called from system (or user) functions. The initial set of hooks was associated with events on packages/namespaces: these hooks are named via calls to packageEvent.

To remove a hook completely, call setHook(hookName, NULL, "replace").

When an package is attached by library or loaded by other means, it can call initialization code. See .onLoad for a description of the package hook functions called during initialization. Users can add their own initialization code via the hooks provided by setHook(), functions which will be called as funname(pkgname, pkgpath) inside a try call.

The sequence of events depends on which hooks are defined, and whether a package is attached or just loaded. In the case where all hooks are defined and a package is attached, the order of initialization events is as follows:

1. The package namespace is loaded.
2. The package's .onLoad function is run.
3. If S4 methods dispatch is on, any actions set by setLoadAction are run.
4. The namespace is sealed.
5. The user's "onLoad" hook is run.
6. The package is added to the search path.
7. The package's .onAttach function is run.
8. The package environment is sealed.
9. The user's "attach" hook is run.

A similar sequence (but in reverse) is run when a package is detached and its namespace unloaded:

1. The user's "detach" hook is run.
2. The package's .Last.lib function is run.
3. The package is removed from the search path.
4. The user's "onUnload" hook is run.
5. The package's .onUnload function is run.
6. The package namespace is unloaded.

Note that when an session is finished, packages are not detached and namespaces are not unloaded, so the corresponding hooks will not be run.

Also note that some of the user hooks are run without the package being on the search path, so in those hooks objects in the package need to be referred to using the double (or triple) colon operator, as in the example.

If multiple hooks are added, they are normally run in the order shown by getHook, but the "detach" and "onUnload" hooks are run in reverse order so the default for package events is to add hooks 'inside' existing ones.

The hooks are stored in the environment .userHooksEnv in the base package, with 'mangled' names.

Value

For getHook function, a list of functions (possibly empty). For setHook function, no return value. For packageEvent, the derived hook name (a character string).

See Also

library, detach, loadNamespace.

See :: for a discussion of the double and triple colon operators.

Other hooks may be added later: functions plot.new and persp already have them.

Examples

```
setHook(packageEvent("grDevices", "onLoad"),
        function(...) grDevices::ps.options(horizontal = FALSE))
```

---

utf8Conversion *Convert to or from UTF-8-encoded Character Vectors*

Description

Conversion of UTF-8 encoded character vectors to and from integer vectors.

Usage

```
utf8ToInt(x)
intToUtf8(x, multiple = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	object to be converted.
multiple	logical: should the conversion be to a single character string or multiple individual characters?

Details

These will work in any locale, including on platforms that do not otherwise support multi-byte character sets.

Value

Unicode defines a name and a number of all of the glyphs it encompasses: the numbers are called *code points*: they run from 0 to 0x10FFFF.

utf8ToInt converts a length-one character string encoded in UTF-8 to an integer vector of Unicode code points.

intToUtf8 converts a numeric vector of Unicode code points either to a single character string or a character vector of single characters. (For a single character string 0 is silently omitted: otherwise 0 is mapped to "". Non-integral numeric values are truncated to integers.) The Encoding is declared as "UTF-8".

NA inputs are mapped to NA output.

Examples

```
## will only display in some locales and fonts
intToUtf8(0x03B2L) # Greek beta
```

`vector` *Vectors*

Description

`vector` produces a vector of the given length and mode.

`as.vector`, a generic, attempts to coerce its argument into a vector of mode `mode` (the default is to coerce to whichever vector mode is most convenient): if the result is atomic all attributes are removed.

`is.vector` returns `TRUE` if `x` is a vector of the specified mode having no attributes *other than names*. It returns `FALSE` otherwise.

Usage

```
vector(mode = "logical", length = 0)
as.vector(x, mode = "any")
is.vector(x, mode = "any")
```

Arguments

`mode`	character string naming an atomic mode or `"list"` or `"expression"` or (except for `vector`) `"any"`.
`length`	a non-negative integer specifying the desired length. For a long vector, i.e., `length > .Machine$integer.max`, it has to be of type `"double"`. Supplying an argument of length other than one is an error.
`x`	an object.

Details

The atomic modes are `"logical"`, `"integer"`, `"numeric"` (synonym `"double"`), `"complex"`, `"character"` and `"raw"`.

If `mode = "any"`, `is.vector` may return `TRUE` for the atomic modes, `list` and `expression`. For any `mode`, it will return `FALSE` if `x` has any attributes except names. (This is incompatible with S.) On the other hand, `as.vector` removes *all* attributes including names for results of atomic mode (but not those of mode `"list"` nor `"expression"`).

Note that factors are *not* vectors; `is.vector` returns `FALSE` and `as.vector` converts a factor to a character vector for `mode = "any"`.

Value

For `vector`, a vector of the given length and mode. Logical vector elements are initialized to `FALSE`, numeric vector elements to `0`, character vector elements to `""`, raw vector elements to `nul` bytes and list/expression elements to `NULL`.

For `as.vector`, a vector (atomic or of type list or expression). All attributes are removed from the result if it is of an atomic mode, but not in general for a list result. The default method handles 24

input types and 12 values of type: the details of most coercions are undocumented and subject to change.

For is.vector, TRUE or FALSE. is.vector(x, mode = "numeric") can be true for vectors of types "integer" or "double" whereas is.vector(x, mode = "double") can only be true for those of type "double".

Methods for as.vector()

Writers of methods for as.vector need to take care to follow the conventions of the default method. In particular

- Argument mode can be "any", any of the atomic modes, "list", "expression", "symbol", "pairlist" or one of the aliases "double" and "name".
- The return value should be of the appropriate mode. For mode = "any" this means an atomic vector or list.
- Attributes should be treated appropriately: in particular when the result is an atomic vector there should be no attributes, not even names.
- is.vector(as.vector(x, m), m) should be true for any mode m, including the default "any".

Note

as.vector and is.vector are quite distinct from the meaning of the formal class "vector" in the **methods** package, and hence as(x, "vector") and is(x, "vector").

Note that as.vector(x) is not necessarily a null operation if is.vector(x) is true: any names will be removed from an atomic vector.

Non-vector modes "symbol" (synonym "name") and "pairlist" are accepted but have long been undocumented: they are used to implement as.name and as.pairlist, and those functions should preferably be used directly. None of the description here applies to those modes: see the help for the preferred forms.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

c, is.numeric, is.list, etc.

Examples

```
df <- data.frame(x = 1:3, y = 5:7)
## Error:
try(as.vector(data.frame(x = 1:3, y = 5:7), mode = "numeric"))

x <- c(a = 1, b = 2)
is.vector(x)
as.vector(x)
all.equal(x, as.vector(x)) ## FALSE


###-- All the following are TRUE:
```

```
is.list(df)
! is.vector(df)
! is.vector(df, mode = "list")

is.vector(list(), mode = "list")
```

Vectorize *Vectorize a Scalar Function*

Description

Vectorize creates a function wrapper that vectorizes the action of its argument FUN.

Usage

```
Vectorize(FUN, vectorize.args = arg.names, SIMPLIFY = TRUE,
          USE.NAMES = TRUE)
```

Arguments

FUN	function to apply, found via match.fun.
vectorize.args	a character vector of arguments which should be vectorized. Defaults to all arguments of FUN.
SIMPLIFY	logical or character string; attempt to reduce the result to a vector, matrix or higher dimensional array; see the simplify argument of sapply.
USE.NAMES	logical; use names if the first ... argument has names, or if it is a character vector, use that character vector as the names.

Details

The arguments named in the vectorize.args argument to Vectorize are the arguments passed in the ... list to mapply. Only those that are actually passed will be vectorized; default values will not. See the examples.

Vectorize cannot be used with primitive functions as they do not have a value for formals.

Value

A function with the same arguments as FUN, wrapping a call to mapply.

Examples

```
# We use rep.int as rep is primitive
vrep <- Vectorize(rep.int)
vrep(1:4, 4:1)
vrep(times = 1:4, x = 4:1)

vrep <- Vectorize(rep.int, "times")
vrep(times = 1:4, x = 42)

f <- function(x = 1:3, y) c(x, y)
vf <- Vectorize(f, SIMPLIFY = FALSE)
f(1:3, 1:3)
```

```
vf(1:3, 1:3)
vf(y = 1:3) # Only vectorizes y, not x

# Nonlinear regression contour plot, based on nls() example
require(graphics)
SS <- function(Vm, K, resp, conc) {
    pred <- (Vm * conc)/(K + conc)
    sum((resp - pred)^2 / pred)
}
vSS <- Vectorize(SS, c("Vm", "K"))
Treated <- subset(Puromycin, state == "treated")

Vm <- seq(140, 310, length.out = 50)
K <- seq(0, 0.15, length.out = 40)
SSvals <- outer(Vm, K, vSS, Treated$rate, Treated$conc)
contour(Vm, K, SSvals, levels = (1:10)^2, xlab = "Vm", ylab = "K")
```

`warning` *Warning Messages*

Description

Generates a warning message that corresponds to its argument(s) and (optionally) the expression or function from which it was called.

Usage

```
warning(..., call. = TRUE, immediate. = FALSE, noBreaks. = FALSE,
        domain = NULL)
suppressWarnings(expr)
```

Arguments

`...`	zero or more objects which can be coerced to character (and which are pasted together with no separator) or a single condition object.
`call.`	logical, indicating if the call should become part of the warning message.
`immediate.`	logical, indicating if the call should be output immediately, even if `getOption("warn") <= 0`.
`noBreaks.`	logical, indicating as far as possible the message should be output as a single line when `options(warn = 1)`.
`expr`	expression to evaluate.
`domain`	see `gettext`. If `NA`, messages will not be translated, see also the note in `stop`.

Details

The result *depends* on the value of `options("warn")` and on handlers established in the executing code.

If a condition object is supplied it should be the only argument, and further arguments will be ignored, with a message.

warning signals a warning condition by (effectively) calling signalCondition. If there are no handlers or if all handlers return, then the value of warn = getOption("warn") is used to determine the appropriate action. If warn is negative warnings are ignored; if it is zero they are stored and printed after the top–level function has completed; if it is one they are printed as they occur and if it is 2 (or larger) warnings are turned into errors. Calling warning(immediate. = TRUE) turns warn <= 0 into warn = 1 for this call only.

If warn is zero (the default), a read-only variable last.warning is created. It contains the warnings which can be printed via a call to warnings.

Warnings will be truncated to getOption("warning.length") characters, default 1000, indicated by [... truncated].

While the warning is being processed, a muffleWarning restart is available. If this restart is invoked with invokeRestart, then warning returns immediately.

An attempt is made to coerce other types of inputs to warning to character vectors.

suppressWarnings evaluates its expression in a context that ignores all warnings.

Value

The warning message as character string, invisibly.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

stop for fatal errors, message for diagnostic messages, warnings, and options with argument warn=.

gettext for the mechanisms for the automated translation of messages.

Examples

```
testit <- function() warning("testit")
testit() ## shows call
testit <- function() warning("problem in testit", call. = FALSE)
testit() ## no call
suppressWarnings(warning("testit"))
```

---

warnings *Print Warning Messages*

Description

warnings and its print method print the variable last.warning in a pleasing form.

Usage

```
warnings(...)
```

Arguments

...	arguments to be passed to `cat`.

Details

See the description of `options("warn")` for the circumstances under which there is a `last.warning` object and `warnings()` is used. In essence this is if `options(warn = 0)` and `warning` has been called at least once.

It is possible that `last.warning` refers to the last recorded warning and not to the last warning, for example if `options(warn)` has been changed or if a catastrophic error occurred.

Value

an object of S3 class `"warnings"`, basically a named `list`.

Warning

It is undocumented where `last.warning` is stored nor that it is visible, and this is subject to change.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`warning`.

Examples

```
## NB this example is intended to be pasted in,
##    rather than run by example()
ow <- options("warn")
for(w in -1:1) {
   options(warn = w); cat("\n warn =", w, "\n")
   for(i in 1:3) { cat(i,"..\n"); m <- matrix(1:7, 3,4) }
}
warnings()
options(ow) # reset
tail(warnings(), 2) # see the last two warnings only (via [ method)
```

---

weekdays *Extract Parts of a POSIXt or Date Object*

Description

Extract the weekday, month or quarter, or the Julian time (days since some origin). These are generic functions: the methods for the internal date-time classes are documented here.

Usage

```
weekdays(x, abbreviate)
## S3 method for class POSIXt
weekdays(x, abbreviate = FALSE)
## S3 method for class Date
weekdays(x, abbreviate = FALSE)

months(x, abbreviate)
## S3 method for class POSIXt
months(x, abbreviate = FALSE)
## S3 method for class Date
months(x, abbreviate = FALSE)

quarters(x, abbreviate)
## S3 method for class POSIXt
quarters(x, ...)
## S3 method for class Date
quarters(x, ...)

julian(x, ...)
## S3 method for class POSIXt
julian(x, origin = as.POSIXct("1970-01-01", tz = "GMT"), ...)
## S3 method for class Date
julian(x, origin = as.Date("1970-01-01"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "POSIXt" or "Date".
abbreviate	logical. Should the names be abbreviated?
origin	an length-one object inheriting from class "POSIXt" or "Date".
...	arguments for other methods.

Value

weekdays and months return a character vector of names in the locale in use.

quarters returns a character vector of "Q1" to "Q4".

julian returns the number of days (possibly fractional) since the origin, with the origin as a "origin" attribute. All time calculations in are done ignoring leap-seconds.

Note

Other components such as the day of the month or the year are very easy to compute: just use as.POSIXlt and extract the relevant component. Alternatively (especially if the components are desired as character strings), use strftime.

See Also

DateTimeClasses, Date

Examples

```
weekdays(.leap.seconds)
months(.leap.seconds)
quarters(.leap.seconds)

## Julian Day Number (JDN, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Julian_day)
## is the number of days since noon UTC on the first day of 4317 BC.
## in the proleptic Julian calendar.  To more recently, in
## Terrestrial Time which differs from UTC by a few seconds
## See http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Terrestrial_Time
julian(Sys.Date(), -2440588) # from a day
floor(as.numeric(julian(Sys.time())) + 2440587.5) # from a date-time
```

---

which *Which indices are TRUE?*

Description

Give the TRUE indices of a logical object, allowing for array indices.

Usage

```
which(x, arr.ind = FALSE, useNames = TRUE)
arrayInd(ind, .dim, .dimnames = NULL, useNames = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a logical vector or array. NAs are allowed and omitted (treated as if FALSE).
arr.ind	logical; should **arr**ay **ind**ices be returned when x is an array?
ind	integer-valued index vector, as resulting from which(x).
.dim	dim(.) integer vector
.dimnames	optional list of character dimnames(.). If useNames is true, to be used for constructing dimnames for arrayInd() (and hence, which(*, arr.ind=TRUE)). If names(.dimnames) is not empty, these are used as column names. .dimnames[[1]] is used as row names.
useNames	logical indicating if the value of arrayInd() should have (non-null) dimnames at all.

Value

If arr.ind == FALSE (the default), an integer vector with length equal to sum(x), i.e., to the number of TRUEs in x; Basically, the result is (1:length(x))[x].

If arr.ind == TRUE and x is an array (has a dim attribute), the result is arrayInd(which(x), dim(x), dimnames(x)), namely a matrix whose rows each are the indices of one element of x; see Examples below.

Note

Unlike most other base functions this does not coerce to x to logical: only arguments with typeof logical are accepted and others give an error.

Author(s)

Werner Stahel and Peter Holzer (ETH Zurich) proposed the `arr.ind` option.

See Also

`Logic`, `which.min` for the index of the minimum or maximum, and `match` for the first index of an element in a vector, i.e., for a scalar `a`, `match(a, x)` is equivalent to `min(which(x == a))` but much more efficient.

Examples

```
which(LETTERS == "R")
which(ll <- c(TRUE, FALSE, TRUE, NA, FALSE, FALSE, TRUE)) #> 1 3 7
names(ll) <- letters[seq(ll)]
which(ll)
which((1:12)%%2 == 0) # which are even?
which(1:10 > 3, arr.ind = TRUE)

( m <- matrix(1:12, 3, 4) )
div.3 <- m %% 3 == 0
which(div.3)
which(div.3, arr.ind = TRUE)
rownames(m) <- paste("Case", 1:3, sep = "_")
which(m %% 5 == 0, arr.ind = TRUE)

dim(m) <- c(2, 2, 3); m
which(div.3, arr.ind = FALSE)
which(div.3, arr.ind = TRUE)

vm <- c(m)
dim(vm) <- length(vm) #-- funny thing with  length(dim(...)) == 1
which(div.3, arr.ind = TRUE)
```

---

which.min *Where is the Min() or Max() or first TRUE or FALSE ?*

Description

Determines the location, i.e., index of the (first) minimum or maximum of a numeric (or logical) vector.

For a logical vector `x`, `which.min(x)` and `which.max(x)` return the index of the first `FALSE` or `TRUE`, respectively.

Usage

```
which.min(x)
which.max(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric (integer or double) vector, whose `min` or `max` is searched for.

Value

Missing and NaN values are discarded.

an integer of length 1 or 0 (iff x has no non-NAs), giving the index of the *first* minimum or maximum respectively of x.

If this extremum is unique (or empty), the results are the same as (but more efficient than) `which(x == min(x))` or `which(x == max(x))` respectively.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

`which`, `max.col`, `max`, etc.

Use `arrayInd()`, if you need array/matrix indices instead of 1D vector ones.

`which.is.max` in package **nnet** differs in breaking ties at random (and having a 'fuzz' in the definition of ties).

Examples

```
x <- c(1:4, 0:5, 11)
which.min(x)
which.max(x)

## it *does* work with NAs present, by discarding them:
presidents[1:30]
range(presidents, na.rm = TRUE)
which.min(presidents) # 28
which.max(presidents) #  2

## Find the first occurrence, i.e. the first TRUE:
x <- rpois(10000, lambda = 10); x[sample.int(50, 20)] <- NA
## where is the first value >= 20 ?
which.max(x >= 20)
```

---

with *Evaluate an Expression in a Data Environment*

Description

Evaluate an expression in an environment constructed from data, possibly modifying (a copy of) the original data.

Usage

```
with(data, expr, ...)
within(data, expr, ...)
```

Arguments

data	data to use for constructing an environment. For the default with method this may be an environment, a list, a data frame, or an integer as in sys.call. For within, it can be a list or a data frame.
expr	expression to evaluate.
...	arguments to be passed to future methods.

Details

with is a generic function that evaluates expr in a local environment constructed from data. The environment has the caller's environment as its parent. This is useful for simplifying calls to modeling functions. (Note: if data is already an environment then this is used with its existing parent.)

Note that assignments within expr take place in the constructed environment and not in the user's workspace.

within is similar, except that it examines the environment after the evaluation of expr and makes the corresponding modifications to a copy of data (this may fail in the data frame case if objects are created which cannot be stored in a data frame), and returns it. within can be used as an alternative to transform.

Value

For with, the value of the evaluated expr. For within, the modified object.

See Also

evalq, attach, assign, transform.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
#examples from glm:

library(MASS)
with(anorexia, {
    anorex.1 <- glm(Postwt ~ Prewt + Treat + offset(Prewt),
                    family = gaussian)
    summary(anorex.1)
})



aq <- within(airquality, {     # Notice that multiple vars can be changed
    lOzone <- log(Ozone)
    Month <- factor(month.abb[Month])
    cTemp <- round((Temp - 32) * 5/9, 1) # From Fahrenheit to Celsius
    S.cT <- Solar.R / cTemp  # using the newly created variable
    rm(Day, Temp)
})
head(aq)

with(data.frame(u = c(5,10,15,20,30,40,60,80,100),
                lot1 = c(118,58,42,35,27,25,21,19,18),
                lot2 = c(69,35,26,21,18,16,13,12,12)),
    list(summary(glm(lot1 ~ log(u), family = Gamma)),
```

```
          summary(glm(lot2 ~ log(u), family = Gamma))))

# example from boxplot:
with(ToothGrowth, {
    boxplot(len ~ dose, boxwex = 0.25, at = 1:3 - 0.2,
            subset = (supp == "VC"), col = "yellow",
            main = "Guinea Pigs Tooth Growth",
            xlab = "Vitamin C dose mg",
            ylab = "tooth length", ylim = c(0, 35))
    boxplot(len ~ dose, add = TRUE, boxwex = 0.25, at = 1:3 + 0.2,
            subset = supp == "OJ", col = "orange")
    legend(2, 9, c("Ascorbic acid", "Orange juice"),
           fill = c("yellow", "orange"))
})

# alternate form that avoids subset argument:
with(subset(ToothGrowth, supp == "VC"),
     boxplot(len ~ dose, boxwex = 0.25, at = 1:3 - 0.2,
             col = "yellow", main = "Guinea Pigs Tooth Growth",
             xlab = "Vitamin C dose mg",
             ylab = "tooth length", ylim = c(0, 35)))
with(subset(ToothGrowth,  supp == "OJ"),
     boxplot(len ~ dose, add = TRUE, boxwex = 0.25, at = 1:3 + 0.2,
             col = "orange"))
legend(2, 9, c("Ascorbic acid", "Orange juice"),
       fill = c("yellow", "orange"))
```

`withVisible` *Return both a value and its visibility*

Description

This function evaluates an expression, returning it in a two element list containing its value and a flag showing whether it would automatically print.

Usage

```
withVisible(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	An expression to be evaluated.

Details

The argument is evaluated in the caller's context.

This is a primitive function.

Value

`value`	The value of `x` after evaluation.
`visible`	logical; whether the value would auto-print.

See Also

invisible, eval

Examples

```
x <- 1
withVisible(x <- 1)
x
withVisible(x)

# Wrap the call in evalq() for special handling

df <- data.frame(a = 1:5, b = 1:5)
evalq(withVisible(a + b), envir = df)
```

---

write *Write Data to a File*

Description

The data (usually a matrix) x are written to file file. If x is a two-dimensional matrix you need to transpose it to get the columns in file the same as those in the internal representation.

Usage

```
write(x, file = "data",
      ncolumns = if(is.character(x)) 1 else 5,
      append = FALSE, sep = " ")
```

Arguments

x	the data to be written out, usually an atomic vector.
file	A connection, or a character string naming the file to write to. If "", print to the standard output connection. If it is "|cmd", the output is piped to the command given by 'cmd'.
ncolumns	the number of columns to write the data in.
append	if TRUE the data x are appended to the connection.
sep	a string used to separate columns. Using sep = "\t" gives tab delimited output; default is " ".

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

write is a wrapper for cat, which gives further details on the format used.

save for writing any objects, write.table for data frames, and scan for reading data.

Examples

```
# create a 2 by 5 matrix
x <- matrix(1:10, ncol = 5)

# the file data contains x, two rows, five cols
# 1 3 5 7 9 will form the first row
write(t(x))

# Writing to the "console" tab-delimited
# two rows, five cols but the first row is 1 2 3 4 5
write(x, "", sep = "\t")
unlink("data") # tidy up
```

`writeLines` *Write Lines to a Connection*

Description

Write text lines to a connection.

Usage

```
writeLines(text, con = stdout(), sep = "\n", useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`text`	A character vector
`con`	A connection object or a character string.
`sep`	character. A string to be written to the connection after each line of text.
`useBytes`	logical. See 'Details'.

Details

If the `con` is a character string, the function calls `file` to obtain a file connection which is opened for the duration of the function call.

If the connection is open it is written from its current position. If it is not open, it is opened for the duration of the call in `"wt"` mode and then closed again.

Normally `writeLines` is used with a text-mode connection, and the default separator is converted to the normal separator for that platform (LF on Unix/Linux, CRLF on Windows). For more control, open a binary connection and specify the precise value you want written to the file in `sep`. For even more control, use `writeChar` on a binary connection.

`useBytes` is for expert use. Normally (when false) character strings with marked encodings are converted to the current encoding before being passed to the connection (which might do further re-encoding). `useBytes = TRUE` suppresses the re-encoding of marked strings so they are passed byte-by-byte to the connection: this can be useful when strings have already been re-encoded by e.g. `iconv`. (It is invoked automatically for strings with marked encoding `"bytes"`.)

See Also

`connections`, `writeChar`, `writeBin`, `readLines`, `cat`

xtfrm *Auxiliary Function for Sorting and Ranking*

Description

A generic auxiliary function that produces a numeric vector which will sort in the same order as `x`.

Usage

```
xtfrm(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object.

Details

This is a special case of ranking, but as a less general function than `rank` is more suitable to be made generic. The default method is similar to `rank(x, ties.method = "min", na.last = "keep")`, so `NA` values are given rank `NA` and all tied values are given equal integer rank.

The `factor` method extracts the codes. The `Surv` method sorts first on times and then on status code(s), finally on `timme2` if present. Note that with the conventional status codes this sorts individuals still alive before deaths.

The default method will unclass the object if `is.numeric(x)` is true but otherwise make use of `==` and `>` methods for the class of `x[i]` (for integers `i`), and the `is.na` method for the class of `x`, but might be rather slow when doing so.

This is an internal generic primitive, so S3 or S4 methods can be written for it.

Value

A numeric (usually integer) vector of the same length as `x`.

See Also

`rank`, `sort`, `order`.

zapsmall *Rounding of Numbers*

Description

`zapsmall` determines a `digits` argument `dr` for calling `round(x, digits = dr)` such that values close to zero (compared with the maximal absolute value) are 'zapped', i.e., treated as `0`.

Usage

```
zapsmall(x, digits = getOption("digits"))
```

Arguments

x	a numeric or complex vector.
digits	integer indicating the precision to be used.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1998) *Programming with Data. A Guide to the S Language*. Springer.

Examples

```
x2 <- pi * 100^(-1:3)
print(x2 / 1000, digits = 4)
zapsmall(x2 / 1000, digits = 4)

zapsmall(exp(1i*0:4*pi/2))
```

---

zpackages *Listing of Packages*

Description

.packages returns information about package availability.

Usage

```
.packages(all.available = FALSE, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

all.available	logical; if TRUE return a character vector of all available packages in lib.loc.
lib.loc	a character vector describing the location of library trees to search through, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to .libPaths().

Details

.packages() returns the names of the currently attached packages *invisibly* whereas .packages(all.available = TRUE) gives (visibly) *all* packages available in the library location path lib.loc.

For a package to be regarded as being 'available' it must have valid metadata (and hence be an installed package). However, this will report a package as available if the metadata does not match the directory name: use find.package to confirm that the metadata match or installed.packages for a much slower but more comprehensive check of 'available' packages.

Value

A character vector of package base names, invisible unless all.available = TRUE.

Note

.packages(all.available = TRUE) is not a way to find out if a small number of packages are available for use: not only is it expensive when thousands of packages are installed, it is an incomplete test. See the help for find.package for why require should be used.

Author(s)

R core; Guido Masarotto for the `all.available = TRUE` part of `.packages`.

See Also

`library`, `.libPaths`, `installed.packages`.

Examples

```
(.packages())               # maybe just "base"
.packages(all.available = TRUE) # return all available as character vector
require(splines)
(.packages())               # "splines", too
detach("package:splines")
```

---

zutils *Miscellaneous Internal/Programming Utilities*

Description

Miscellaneous internal/programming utilities.

Usage

```
.standard_regexps()
```

Details

`.standard_regexps` returns a list of 'standard' regexps, including elements named `valid_package_name` and `valid_package_version` with the obvious meanings. The regexps are not anchored.

Chapter 2

The `compiler` package

`compile` *Byte Code Compiler*

Description

These functions provide an interface to a byte code compiler for R.

Usage

```
cmpfun(f, options = NULL)
compile(e, env = .GlobalEnv, options = NULL)
cmpfile(infile, outfile, ascii = FALSE, env = .GlobalEnv,
        verbose = FALSE, options = NULL)
loadcmp(file, envir = .GlobalEnv, chdir = FALSE)
disassemble(code)
enableJIT(level)
compilePKGS(enable)
getCompilerOption(name, options)
setCompilerOptions(...)
```

Arguments

`f`	a closure.
`options`	list of named compiler options
`env`	the top level environment for the compiling.
`file,infile,outfile`	pathnames; outfile defaults to infile with a .Rc extension in place of any existing extension.
`ascii`	logical; should the compiled file be saved in ascii format?
`verbose`	logical; should the compiler show what is being compiled
`envir`	environment to evaluate loaded expressions in.
`chdir`	logical; change directory before evaluation?
`code`	byte code expression or compiled closure

e	expression to compile
level	integer; the JIT level to use
enable	logical; enable compiling packages if TRUE
name	character string; name of option to return
...	named compiler options to set

Details

The function cmpfun compiles the body of a closure and returns a new closure with the same formals and the body replaced by the compiled body expression.

compile compiles an expression into a byte code object; the object can then be evaluated with eval.

cmpfile parses the expression in infile, compiles them, and writes the compiled expressions to outfile. If outfile is not provided, it is formed from infile by replacing or appending a .Rc suffix.

loadcmp is used to load compiled files. It is similar to sys.source, except that its default loading environment is the global environment rather than the base environment.

disassemble produces a printed representation of the code that may be useful to give a hint of what is going on.

enableJIT enables or disables just-in-time (JIT) compilation. JIT is disabled if the argument is 0. If enable is 1 then closures are compiled before their first use. If enable is 2, then in addition closures are also compiled before they are duplicated (useful for some packages, like lattice, that store closures in lists). If enable is 3 then in addition all loops are compiled before they are executed. JIT can also be enabled by starting with the environment variable R_ENABLE_JIT set to one of these values.

compilePKGS enables or disables compiling packages when they are installed. This requires that the package use lazy loading as compilation occurs as functions are written to the lazy loading data base. This can also be enabled by starting with the environment variable R_COMPILE_PKGS set to a positive integer value.

Currently the compiler warns about a variety of things. It does this by using cat to print messages. Eventually this should use the condition handling mechanism.

The options argument can be used to control compiler operation. There are currently three options: optimize, suppressAll, and suppressUndefined. optimize specifies the optimization level, which can be an integer form 0 to 3. suppressAll should be a scalar logical; if TRUE no messages will be shown. suppressUndefined can be TRUE to suppress all messages about undefined variables, or it can be a character vector of the names of variables for which messages should not be shown.

getCompilerOption returns the value of the specified option. The default value is returned unless a value is supplied in the options argument; the options argument is primarily for internal use. setCompilerOption sets the default option values. It returns a named list of the previous values.

Calling the compiler a byte code compiler is actually a bit of a misnomer: the external representation of code objects currently uses int operands, and when compiled with gcc the internal representation is actually threaded code rather than byte code.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney

Examples

```
# a simple example
f <- function(x) x+1
fc <- cmpfun(f)
fc(2)
disassemble(fc)

# old R version of lapply
la1 <- function(X, FUN, ...) {
    FUN <- match.fun(FUN)
    if (!is.list(X))
X <- as.list(X)
    rval <- vector("list", length(X))
    for(i in seq(along = X))
rval[i] <- list(FUN(X[[i]], ...))
    names(rval) <- names(X)   # keep names !
    return(rval)
}
# a small variation
la2 <- function(X, FUN, ...) {
    FUN <- match.fun(FUN)
    if (!is.list(X))
X <- as.list(X)
    rval <- vector("list", length(X))
    for(i in seq(along = X)) {
        v <- FUN(X[[i]], ...)
        if (is.null(v)) rval[i] <- list(v)
        else rval[[i]] <- v
    }
    names(rval) <- names(X)   # keep names !
    return(rval)
}
# Compiled versions
la1c <- cmpfun(la1)
la2c <- cmpfun(la2)
# some timings
x <- 1:10
y <- 1:100

system.time(for (i in 1:10000) lapply(x, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:10000) la1(x, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:10000) la1c(x, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:10000) la2(x, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:10000) la2c(x, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:1000) lapply(y, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:1000) la1(y, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:1000) la1c(y, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:1000) la2(y, is.null))
system.time(for (i in 1:1000) la2c(y, is.null))
```

Chapter 3

The `datasets` package

`datasets-package` *The R Datasets Package*

Description

Base R datasets

Details

This package contains a variety of datasets. For a complete list, use `library(help = "datasets")`.

Author(s)

R Core Team and contributors worldwide

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

`ability.cov` *Ability and Intelligence Tests*

Description

Six tests were given to 112 individuals. The covariance matrix is given in this object.

Usage

```
ability.cov
```

Details

The tests are described as

general: a non-verbal measure of general intelligence using Cattell's culture-fair test.

picture: a picture-completion test

blocks: block design

maze: mazes

reading: reading comprehension

vocab: vocabulary

Bartholomew gives both covariance and correlation matrices, but these are inconsistent. Neither are in the original paper.

Source

Bartholomew, D. J. (1987) *Latent Variable Analysis and Factor Analysis.* Griffin.

Bartholomew, D. J. and Knott, M. (1990) *Latent Variable Analysis and Factor Analysis.* Second Edition, Arnold.

References

Smith, G. A. and Stanley G. (1983) Clocking g: relating intelligence and measures of timed performance. *Intelligence*, **7**, 353–368.

Examples

```
require(stats)
(ability.FA <- factanal(factors = 1, covmat = ability.cov))
update(ability.FA, factors = 2)
## The signs of factors and hence the signs of correlations are
## arbitrary with promax rotation.
update(ability.FA, factors = 2, rotation = "promax")
```

---

airmiles *Passenger Miles on Commercial US Airlines, 1937–1960*

Description

The revenue passenger miles flown by commercial airlines in the United States for each year from 1937 to 1960.

Usage

```
airmiles
```

Format

A time series of 24 observations; yearly, 1937–1960.

Source

F.A.A. Statistical Handbook of Aviation.

References

Brown, R. G. (1963) *Smoothing, Forecasting and Prediction of Discrete Time Series*. Prentice-Hall.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
plot(airmiles, main = "airmiles data",
     xlab = "Passenger-miles flown by U.S. commercial airlines", col = 4)
```

AirPassengers *Monthly Airline Passenger Numbers 1949-1960*

Description

The classic Box & Jenkins airline data. Monthly totals of international airline passengers, 1949 to 1960.

Usage

```
AirPassengers
```

Format

A monthly time series, in thousands.

Source

Box, G. E. P., Jenkins, G. M. and Reinsel, G. C. (1976) *Time Series Analysis, Forecasting and Control.* Third Edition. Holden-Day. Series G.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## These are quite slow and so not run by example(AirPassengers)

## The classic airline model, by full ML
(fit <- arima(log10(AirPassengers), c(0, 1, 1),
              seasonal = list(order = c(0, 1, 1), period = 12)))
update(fit, method = "CSS")
update(fit, x = window(log10(AirPassengers), start = 1954))
pred <- predict(fit, n.ahead = 24)
tl <- pred$pred - 1.96 * pred$se
tu <- pred$pred + 1.96 * pred$se
ts.plot(AirPassengers, 10^tl, 10^tu, log = "y", lty = c(1, 2, 2))

## full ML fit is the same if the series is reversed, CSS fit is not
ap0 <- rev(log10(AirPassengers))
attributes(ap0) <- attributes(AirPassengers)
arima(ap0, c(0, 1, 1), seasonal = list(order = c(0, 1, 1), period = 12))
```

```
arima(ap0, c(0, 1, 1), seasonal = list(order = c(0, 1, 1), period = 12),
      method = "CSS")

## Structural Time Series
ap <- log10(AirPassengers) - 2
(fit <- StructTS(ap, type = "BSM"))
par(mfrow = c(1, 2))
plot(cbind(ap, fitted(fit)), plot.type = "single")
plot(cbind(ap, tsSmooth(fit)), plot.type = "single")

## End(Not run)
```

`airquality` *New York Air Quality Measurements*

Description

Daily air quality measurements in New York, May to September 1973.

Usage

```
airquality
```

Format

A data frame with 154 observations on 6 variables.

`[,1]`	`Ozone`	numeric	Ozone (ppb)
`[,2]`	`Solar.R`	numeric	Solar R (lang)
`[,3]`	`Wind`	numeric	Wind (mph)
`[,4]`	`Temp`	numeric	Temperature (degrees F)
`[,5]`	`Month`	numeric	Month (1–12)
`[,6]`	`Day`	numeric	Day of month (1–31)

Details

Daily readings of the following air quality values for May 1, 1973 (a Tuesday) to September 30, 1973.

- `Ozone`: Mean ozone in parts per billion from 1300 to 1500 hours at Roosevelt Island
- `Solar.R`: Solar radiation in Langleys in the frequency band 4000–7700 Angstroms from 0800 to 1200 hours at Central Park
- `Wind`: Average wind speed in miles per hour at 0700 and 1000 hours at LaGuardia Airport
- `Temp`: Maximum daily temperature in degrees Fahrenheit at La Guardia Airport.

Source

The data were obtained from the New York State Department of Conservation (ozone data) and the National Weather Service (meteorological data).

References

Chambers, J. M., Cleveland, W. S., Kleiner, B. and Tukey, P. A. (1983) *Graphical Methods for Data Analysis*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
pairs(airquality, panel = panel.smooth, main = "airquality data")
```

---

anscombe *Anscombe's Quartet of 'Identical' Simple Linear Regressions*

Description

Four x-y datasets which have the same traditional statistical properties (mean, variance, correlation, regression line, etc.), yet are quite different.

Usage

```
anscombe
```

Format

A data frame with 11 observations on 8 variables.

x1 == x2 == x3	the integers 4:14, specially arranged
x4	values 8 and 19
y1, y2, y3, y4	numbers in (3, 12.5) with mean 7.5 and sdev 2.03

Source

Tufte, Edward R. (1989) *The Visual Display of Quantitative Information*, 13–14. Graphics Press.

References

Anscombe, Francis J. (1973) Graphs in statistical analysis. *American Statistician*, **27**, 17–21.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
summary(anscombe)

##-- now some "magic" to do the 4 regressions in a loop:
ff <- y ~ x
mods <- setNames(as.list(1:4), paste0("lm", 1:4))
for(i in 1:4) {
  ff[2:3] <- lapply(paste0(c("y","x"), i), as.name)
  ## or   ff[[2]] <- as.name(paste0("y", i))
  ##      ff[[3]] <- as.name(paste0("x", i))
  mods[[i]] <- lmi <- lm(ff, data = anscombe)
  print(anova(lmi))
}
```

```
## See how close they are (numerically!)
sapply(mods, coef)
lapply(mods, function(fm) coef(summary(fm)))

## Now, do what you should have done in the first place: PLOTS
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), mar = 0.1+c(4,4,1,1), oma =  c(0, 0, 2, 0))
for(i in 1:4) {
  ff[2:3] <- lapply(paste0(c("y","x"), i), as.name)
  plot(ff, data = anscombe, col = "red", pch = 21, bg = "orange", cex = 1.2,
       xlim = c(3, 19), ylim = c(3, 13))
  abline(mods[[i]], col = "blue")
}
mtext("Anscombes 4 Regression data sets", outer = TRUE, cex = 1.5)
par(op)
```

`attenu` *The Joyner–Boore Attenuation Data*

Description

This data gives peak accelerations measured at various observation stations for 23 earthquakes in California. The data have been used by various workers to estimate the attenuating affect of distance on ground acceleration.

Usage

```
attenu
```

Format

A data frame with 182 observations on 5 variables.

[,1]	event	numeric	Event Number
[,2]	mag	numeric	Moment Magnitude
[,3]	station	factor	Station Number
[,4]	dist	numeric	Station-hypocenter distance (km)
[,5]	accel	numeric	Peak acceleration (g)

Source

Joyner, W.B., D.M. Boore and R.D. Porcella (1981). Peak horizontal acceleration and velocity from strong-motion records including records from the 1979 Imperial Valley, California earthquake. USGS Open File report 81-365. Menlo Park, Ca.

References

Boore, D. M. and Joyner, W.B.(1982) The empirical prediction of ground motion, *Bull. Seism. Soc. Am.*, **72**, S269–S268.

Bolt, B. A. and Abrahamson, N. A. (1982) New attenuation relations for peak and expected accelerations of strong ground motion, *Bull. Seism. Soc. Am.*, **72**, 2307–2321.

Bolt B. A. and Abrahamson, N. A. (1983) Reply to W. B. Joyner & D. M. Boore's "Comments on: New attenuation relations for peak and expected accelerations for peak and expected accelerations

of strong ground motion", *Bull. Seism. Soc. Am.*, **73**, 1481–1483.

Brillinger, D. R. and Preisler, H. K. (1984) An exploratory analysis of the Joyner-Boore attenuation data, *Bull. Seism. Soc. Am.*, **74**, 1441–1449.

Brillinger, D. R. and Preisler, H. K. (1984) *Further analysis of the Joyner-Boore attenuation data*. Manuscript.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
## check the data class of the variables
sapply(attenu, data.class)
summary(attenu)
pairs(attenu, main = "attenu data")
coplot(accel ~ dist | as.factor(event), data = attenu, show.given = FALSE)
coplot(log(accel) ~ log(dist) | as.factor(event),
       data = attenu, panel = panel.smooth, show.given = FALSE)
```

---

attitude *The Chatterjee–Price Attitude Data*

Description

From a survey of the clerical employees of a large financial organization, the data are aggregated from the questionnaires of the approximately 35 employees for each of 30 (randomly selected) departments. The numbers give the percent proportion of favourable responses to seven questions in each department.

Usage

```
attitude
```

Format

A data frame with 30 observations on 7 variables. The first column are the short names from the reference, the second one the variable names in the data frame:

Y	rating	numeric	Overall rating
X[1]	complaints	numeric	Handling of employee complaints
X[2]	privileges	numeric	Does not allow special privileges
X[3]	learning	numeric	Opportunity to learn
X[4]	raises	numeric	Raises based on performance
X[5]	critical	numeric	Too critical
X[6]	advancel	numeric	Advancement

Source

Chatterjee, S. and Price, B. (1977) *Regression Analysis by Example*. New York: Wiley. (Section 3.7, p.68ff of 2nd ed.(1991).)

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
```

```
pairs(attitude, main = "attitude data")
summary(attitude)
summary(fm1 <- lm(rating ~ ., data = attitude))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0),
            mar = c(4.1, 4.1, 2.1, 1.1))
plot(fm1)
summary(fm2 <- lm(rating ~ complaints, data = attitude))
plot(fm2)
par(opar)
```

`austres` *Quarterly Time Series of the Number of Australian Residents*

Description

Numbers (in thousands) of Australian residents measured quarterly from March 1971 to March 1994. The object is of class `"ts"`.

Usage

```
austres
```

Source

P. J. Brockwell and R. A. Davis (1996) *Introduction to Time Series and Forecasting.* Springer

---

`beavers` *Body Temperature Series of Two Beavers*

Description

Reynolds (1994) describes a small part of a study of the long-term temperature dynamics of beaver *Castor canadensis* in north-central Wisconsin. Body temperature was measured by telemetry every 10 minutes for four females, but data from a one period of less than a day for each of two animals is used there.

Usage

```
beaver1
beaver2
```

Format

The `beaver1` data frame has 114 rows and 4 columns on body temperature measurements at 10 minute intervals.

The `beaver2` data frame has 100 rows and 4 columns on body temperature measurements at 10 minute intervals.

The variables are as follows:

day Day of observation (in days since the beginning of 1990), December 12–13 (`beaver1`) and November 3–4 (`beaver2`).

time Time of observation, in the form `0330` for 3:30am

temp Measured body temperature in degrees Celsius.

activ Indicator of activity outside the retreat.

Note

The observation at 22:20 is missing in `beaver1`.

Source

P. S. Reynolds (1994) Time-series analyses of beaver body temperatures. Chapter 11 of Lange, N., Ryan, L., Billard, L., Brillinger, D., Conquest, L. and Greenhouse, J. eds (1994) *Case Studies in Biometry.* New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
(yl <- range(beaver1$temp, beaver2$temp))

beaver.plot <- function(bdat, ...) {
  nam <- deparse(substitute(bdat))
  with(bdat, {
    # Hours since start of day:
    hours <- time %/% 100 + 24*(day - day[1]) + (time %% 100)/60
    plot (hours, temp, type = "l", ...,
          main = paste(nam, "body temperature"))
    abline(h = 37.5, col = "gray", lty = 2)
    is.act <- activ == 1
    points(hours[is.act], temp[is.act], col = 2, cex = .8)
  })
}
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 1), mar = c(3, 3, 4, 2), mgp = 0.9 * 2:0)
 beaver.plot(beaver1, ylim = yl)
 beaver.plot(beaver2, ylim = yl)
par(op)
```

BJsales *Sales Data with Leading Indicator*

Description

The sales time series `BJsales` and leading indicator `BJsales.lead` each contain 150 observations. The objects are of class `"ts"`.

Usage

```
BJsales
BJsales.lead
```

Source

The data are given in Box & Jenkins (1976). Obtained from the Time Series Data Library at http://www-personal.buseco.monash.edu.au/~hyndman/TSDL/

References

G. E. P. Box and G. M. Jenkins (1976): *Time Series Analysis, Forecasting and Control*, Holden-Day, San Francisco, p. 537.

P. J. Brockwell and R. A. Davis (1991): *Time Series: Theory and Methods*, Second edition, Springer Verlag, NY, pp. 414.

BOD *Biochemical Oxygen Demand*

Description

The BOD data frame has 6 rows and 2 columns giving the biochemical oxygen demand versus time in an evaluation of water quality.

Usage

```
BOD
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Time A numeric vector giving the time of the measurement (days).

demand A numeric vector giving the biochemical oxygen demand (mg/l).

Source

Bates, D.M. and Watts, D.G. (1988), *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley, Appendix A1.4.

Originally from Marske (1967), *Biochemical Oxygen Demand Data Interpretation Using Sum of Squares Surface* M.Sc. Thesis, University of Wisconsin – Madison.

Examples

```
require(stats)
# simplest form of fitting a first-order model to these data
fm1 <- nls(demand ~ A*(1-exp(-exp(lrc)*Time)), data = BOD,
   start = c(A = 20, lrc = log(.35)))
coef(fm1)
fm1
# using the plinear algorithm
fm2 <- nls(demand ~ (1-exp(-exp(lrc)*Time)), data = BOD,
   start = c(lrc = log(.35)), algorithm = "plinear", trace = TRUE)
# using a self-starting model
fm3 <- nls(demand ~ SSasympOrig(Time, A, lrc), data = BOD)
summary(fm3)
```

`cars` *Speed and Stopping Distances of Cars*

Description

The data give the speed of cars and the distances taken to stop. Note that the data were recorded in the 1920s.

Usage

```
cars
```

Format

A data frame with 50 observations on 2 variables.

[,1]	speed	numeric	Speed (mph)
[,2]	dist	numeric	Stopping distance (ft)

Source

Ezekiel, M. (1930) *Methods of Correlation Analysis*. Wiley.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
plot(cars, xlab = "Speed (mph)", ylab = "Stopping distance (ft)",
     las = 1)
lines(lowess(cars$speed, cars$dist, f = 2/3, iter = 3), col = "red")
title(main = "cars data")
plot(cars, xlab = "Speed (mph)", ylab = "Stopping distance (ft)",
     las = 1, log = "xy")
title(main = "cars data (logarithmic scales)")
lines(lowess(cars$speed, cars$dist, f = 2/3, iter = 3), col = "red")
summary(fm1 <- lm(log(dist) ~ log(speed), data = cars))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0),
            mar = c(4.1, 4.1, 2.1, 1.1))
plot(fm1)
par(opar)

## An example of polynomial regression
plot(cars, xlab = "Speed (mph)", ylab = "Stopping distance (ft)",
    las = 1, xlim = c(0, 25))
d <- seq(0, 25, length.out = 200)
for(degree in 1:4) {
  fm <- lm(dist ~ poly(speed, degree), data = cars)
  assign(paste("cars", degree, sep = "."), fm)
  lines(d, predict(fm, data.frame(speed = d)), col = degree)
}
anova(cars.1, cars.2, cars.3, cars.4)
```

`ChickWeight` *Weight versus age of chicks on different diets*

Description

The `ChickWeight` data frame has 578 rows and 4 columns from an experiment on the effect of diet on early growth of chicks.

Usage

```
ChickWeight
```

Format

An object of class `c("nfnGroupedData", "nfGroupedData", "groupedData", "data.frame")` containing the following columns:

weight a numeric vector giving the body weight of the chick (gm).

Time a numeric vector giving the number of days since birth when the measurement was made.

Chick an ordered factor with levels `18` < ... < `48` giving a unique identifier for the chick. The ordering of the levels groups chicks on the same diet together and orders them according to their final weight (lightest to heaviest) within diet.

Diet a factor with levels 1, ..., 4 indicating which experimental diet the chick received.

Details

The body weights of the chicks were measured at birth and every second day thereafter until day 20. They were also measured on day 21. There were four groups on chicks on different protein diets.

This dataset was originally part of package `nlme`, and that has methods (including for `[`, `as.data.frame`, `plot` and `print`) for its grouped-data classes.

Source

Crowder, M. and Hand, D. (1990), *Analysis of Repeated Measures*, Chapman and Hall (example 5.3)

Hand, D. and Crowder, M. (1996), *Practical Longitudinal Data Analysis*, Chapman and Hall (table A.2)

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

See Also

`SSlogis` for models fitted to this dataset.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
coplot(weight ~ Time | Chick, data = ChickWeight,
       type = "b", show.given = FALSE)
```

chickwts *Chicken Weights by Feed Type*

Description

An experiment was conducted to measure and compare the effectiveness of various feed supplements on the growth rate of chickens.

Usage

```
chickwts
```

Format

A data frame with 71 observations on the following 2 variables.

`weight` a numeric variable giving the chick weight.

`feed` a factor giving the feed type.

Details

Newly hatched chicks were randomly allocated into six groups, and each group was given a different feed supplement. Their weights in grams after six weeks are given along with feed types.

Source

Anonymous (1948) *Biometrika*, **35**, 214.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
boxplot(weight ~ feed, data = chickwts, col = "lightgray",
    varwidth = TRUE, notch = TRUE, main = "chickwt data",
    ylab = "Weight at six weeks (gm)")
anova(fm1 <- lm(weight ~ feed, data = chickwts))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0),
            mar = c(4.1, 4.1, 2.1, 1.1))
plot(fm1)
par(opar)
```

CO2 *Carbon Dioxide Uptake in Grass Plants*

Description

The CO2 data frame has 84 rows and 5 columns of data from an experiment on the cold tolerance of the grass species *Echinochloa crus-galli*.

Usage

```
CO2
```

Format

An object of class `c("nfnGroupedData", "nfGroupedData", "groupedData", "data.frame")` containing the following columns:

Plant an ordered factor with levels `Qn1` < `Qn2` < `Qn3` < ... < `Mc1` giving a unique identifier for each plant.

Type a factor with levels `Quebec` `Mississippi` giving the origin of the plant

Treatment a factor with levels `nonchilled` `chilled`

conc a numeric vector of ambient carbon dioxide concentrations (mL/L).

uptake a numeric vector of carbon dioxide uptake rates (μmol/m^2 sec).

Details

The CO_2 uptake of six plants from Quebec and six plants from Mississippi was measured at several levels of ambient CO_2 concentration. Half the plants of each type were chilled overnight before the experiment was conducted.

This dataset was originally part of package `nlme`, and that has methods (including for `[`, `as.data.frame`, `plot` and `print`) for its grouped-data classes.

Source

Potvin, C., Lechowicz, M. J. and Tardif, S. (1990) "The statistical analysis of ecophysiological response curves obtained from experiments involving repeated measures", *Ecology*, **71**, 1389–1400.

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)

coplot(uptake ~ conc | Plant, data = CO2, show.given = FALSE, type = "b")
## fit the data for the first plant
fm1 <- nls(uptake ~ SSasymp(conc, Asym, lrc, c0),
   data = CO2, subset = Plant == "Qn1")
summary(fm1)
## fit each plant separately
fmlist <- list()
for (pp in levels(CO2$Plant)) {
  fmlist[[pp]] <- nls(uptake ~ SSasymp(conc, Asym, lrc, c0),
```

```
      data = CO2, subset = Plant == pp)
}
## check the coefficients by plant
print(sapply(fmlist, coef), digits = 3)
```

---

co2 *Mauna Loa Atmospheric CO2 Concentration*

Description

Atmospheric concentrations of CO_2 are expressed in parts per million (ppm) and reported in the preliminary 1997 SIO manometric mole fraction scale.

Usage

```
co2
```

Format

A time series of 468 observations; monthly from 1959 to 1997.

Details

The values for February, March and April of 1964 were missing and have been obtained by interpolating linearly between the values for January and May of 1964.

Source

Keeling, C. D. and Whorf, T. P., Scripps Institution of Oceanography (SIO), University of California, La Jolla, California USA 92093-0220.

ftp://cdiac.esd.ornl.gov/pub/maunaloa-co2/maunaloa.co2.

References

Cleveland, W. S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*. New Jersey: Summit Press.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
plot(co2, ylab = expression("Atmospheric concentration of CO"[2]),
     las = 1)
title(main = "co2 data set")
```

`crimtab` *Student's 3000 Criminals Data*

Description

Data of 3000 male criminals over 20 years old undergoing their sentences in the chief prisons of England and Wales.

Usage

```
crimtab
```

Format

A `table` object of `integer` counts, of dimension 42×22 with a total count, `sum(crimtab)` of 3000.

The 42 `rownames` (`"9.4"`, `"9.5"`, ...) correspond to midpoints of intervals of finger lengths whereas the 22 column names (`colnames`) (`"142.24"`, `"144.78"`, ...) correspond to (body) heights of 3000 criminals, see also below.

Details

Student is the pseudonym of William Sealy Gosset. In his 1908 paper he wrote (on page 13) at the beginning of section VI entitled *Practical Test of the forgoing Equations*:

"Before I had succeeded in solving my problem analytically, I had endeavoured to do so empirically. The material used was a correlation table containing the height and left middle finger measurements of 3000 criminals, from a paper by W. R. MacDonell (*Biometrika*, Vol. I., p. 219). The measurements were written out on 3000 pieces of cardboard, which were then very thoroughly shuffled and drawn at random. As each card was drawn its numbers were written down in a book, which thus contains the measurements of 3000 criminals in a random order. Finally, each consecutive set of 4 was taken as a sample—750 in all—and the mean, standard deviation, and correlation of each sample determined. The difference between the mean of each sample and the mean of the population was then divided by the standard deviation of the sample, giving us the z of Section III."

The table is in fact page 216 and not page 219 in MacDonell(1902). In the MacDonell table, the middle finger lengths were given in mm and the heights in feet/inches intervals, they are both converted into cm here. The midpoints of intervals were used, e.g., where MacDonell has $4'7''9/16 - -8''9/16$, we have 142.24 which is 2.54*56 = 2.54*($4'8''$).

MacDonell credited the source of data (page 178) as follows: *The data on which the memoir is based were obtained, through the kindness of Dr Garson, from the Central Metric Office, New Scotland Yard...* He pointed out on page 179 that : *The forms were drawn at random from the mass on the office shelves; we are therefore dealing with a random sampling.*

Source

`http://pbil.univ-lyon1.fr/R/donnees/criminals1902.txt` thanks to Jean R. Lobry and Anne-Béatrice Dufour.

References

Garson, J.G. (1900) The metric system of identification of criminals, as used in in Great Britain and Ireland. *The Journal of the Anthropological Institute of Great Britain and Ireland* **30**, 161–198.

MacDonell, W.R. (1902) On criminal anthropometry and the identification of criminals. *Biometrika* **1**, 2, 177–227.

Student (1908) The probable error of a mean. *Biometrika* **6**, 1–25.

Examples

```
require(stats)
dim(crimtab)
utils::str(crimtab)
## for nicer printing:
local({cT <- crimtab
       colnames(cT) <- substring(colnames(cT), 2, 3)
       print(cT, zero.print = " ")
})

## Repeat Students experiment:

# 1) Reconstitute 3000 raw data for heights in inches and rounded to
#    nearest integer as in Students paper:

(heIn <- round(as.numeric(colnames(crimtab)) / 2.54))
d.hei <- data.frame(height = rep(heIn, colSums(crimtab)))

# 2) shuffle the data:

set.seed(1)
d.hei <- d.hei[sample(1:3000), , drop = FALSE]

# 3) Make 750 samples each of size 4:

d.hei$sample <- as.factor(rep(1:750, each = 4))

# 4) Compute the means and standard deviations (n) for the 750 samples:

h.mean <- with(d.hei, tapply(height, sample, FUN = mean))
h.sd   <- with(d.hei, tapply(height, sample, FUN = sd)) * sqrt(3/4)

# 5) Compute the difference between the mean of each sample and
#    the mean of the population and then divide by the
#    standard deviation of the sample:

zobs <- (h.mean - mean(d.hei[,"height"]))/h.sd

# 6) Replace infinite values by +/- 6 as in Students paper:

zobs[infZ <- is.infinite(zobs)] # 3 of them
zobs[infZ] <- 6 * sign(zobs[infZ])

# 7) Plot the distribution:

require(grDevices); require(graphics)
hist(x = zobs, probability = TRUE, xlab = "Students z",
```

```
        col = grey(0.8), border = grey(0.5),
        main = "Distribution of Students z score  for crimtab data")
```

`discoveries` *Yearly Numbers of Important Discoveries*

Description

The numbers of "great" inventions and scientific discoveries in each year from 1860 to 1959.

Usage

```
discoveries
```

Format

A time series of 100 values.

Source

The World Almanac and Book of Facts, 1975 Edition, pages 315–318.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
plot(discoveries, ylab = "Number of important discoveries",
     las = 1)
title(main = "discoveries data set")
```

`DNase` *Elisa assay of DNase*

Description

The `DNase` data frame has 176 rows and 3 columns of data obtained during development of an ELISA assay for the recombinant protein DNase in rat serum.

Usage

```
DNase
```

Format

An object of class `c("nfnGroupedData", "nfGroupedData", "groupedData", "data.frame")` containing the following columns:

Run an ordered factor with levels `10` < ... < `3` indicating the assay run.

conc a numeric vector giving the known concentration of the protein.

density a numeric vector giving the measured optical density (dimensionless) in the assay. Duplicate optical density measurements were obtained.

Details

This dataset was originally part of package `nlme`, and that has methods (including for `[`, `as.data.frame`, `plot` and `print`) for its grouped-data classes.

Source

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995) *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman & Hall (section 5.2.4, p. 134)

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)

coplot(density ~ conc | Run, data = DNase,
       show.given = FALSE, type = "b")
coplot(density ~ log(conc) | Run, data = DNase,
       show.given = FALSE, type = "b")
## fit a representative run
fm1 <- nls(density ~ SSlogis( log(conc), Asym, xmid, scal ),
    data = DNase, subset = Run == 1)
## compare with a four-parameter logistic
fm2 <- nls(density ~ SSfpl( log(conc), A, B, xmid, scal ),
    data = DNase, subset = Run == 1)
summary(fm2)
anova(fm1, fm2)
```

---

esoph *Smoking, Alcohol and (O)esophageal Cancer*

Description

Data from a case-control study of (o)esophageal cancer in Ille-et-Vilaine, France.

Usage

```
esoph
```

Format

A data frame with records for 88 age/alcohol/tobacco combinations.

[,1]	"agegp"	Age group	1 25–34 years
			2 35–44
			3 45–54
			4 55–64
			5 65–74
			6 75+
[,2]	"alcgp"	Alcohol consumption	1 0–39 gm/day
			2 40–79
			3 80–119
			4 120+
[,3]	"tobgp"	Tobacco consumption	1 0– 9 gm/day
			2 10–19
			3 20–29
			4 30+
[,4]	"ncases"	Number of cases	
[,5]	"ncontrols"	Number of controls	

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley

Source

Breslow, N. E. and Day, N. E. (1980) *Statistical Methods in Cancer Research. Volume 1: The Analysis of Case-Control Studies.* IARC Lyon / Oxford University Press.

Examples

```
require(stats)
require(graphics) # for mosaicplot
summary(esoph)
## effects of alcohol, tobacco and interaction, age-adjusted
model1 <- glm(cbind(ncases, ncontrols) ~ agegp + tobgp * alcgp,
              data = esoph, family = binomial())
anova(model1)
## Try a linear effect of alcohol and tobacco
model2 <- glm(cbind(ncases, ncontrols) ~ agegp + unclass(tobgp)
                                       + unclass(alcgp),
              data = esoph, family = binomial())
summary(model2)
## Re-arrange data for a mosaic plot
ttt <- table(esoph$agegp, esoph$alcgp, esoph$tobgp)
o <- with(esoph, order(tobgp, alcgp, agegp))
ttt[ttt == 1] <- esoph$ncases[o]
tt1 <- table(esoph$agegp, esoph$alcgp, esoph$tobgp)
tt1[tt1 == 1] <- esoph$ncontrols[o]
tt <- array(c(ttt, tt1), c(dim(ttt),2),
            c(dimnames(ttt), list(c("Cancer", "control"))))
mosaicplot(tt, main = "esoph data set", color = TRUE)
```

`euro` *Conversion Rates of Euro Currencies*

Description

Conversion rates between the various Euro currencies.

Usage

```
euro
euro.cross
```

Format

`euro` is a named vector of length 11, `euro.cross` a matrix of size 11 by 11, with dimnames.

Details

The data set `euro` contains the value of 1 Euro in all currencies participating in the European monetary union (Austrian Schilling ATS, Belgian Franc BEF, German Mark DEM, Spanish Peseta ESP, Finnish Markka FIM, French Franc FRF, Irish Punt IEP, Italian Lira ITL, Luxembourg Franc LUF, Dutch Guilder NLG and Portuguese Escudo PTE). These conversion rates were fixed by the European Union on December 31, 1998. To convert old prices to Euro prices, divide by the respective rate and round to 2 digits.

The data set `euro.cross` contains conversion rates between the various Euro currencies, i.e., the result of `outer(1 / euro, euro)`.

Examples

```
cbind(euro)

## These relations hold:
euro == signif(euro, 6) # [6 digit precision in Euros definition]
all(euro.cross == outer(1/euro, euro))

## Convert 20 Euro to Belgian Franc
20 * euro["BEF"]
## Convert 20 Austrian Schilling to Euro
20 / euro["ATS"]
## Convert 20 Spanish Pesetas to Italian Lira
20 * euro.cross["ESP", "ITL"]

require(graphics)
dotchart(euro,
         main = "euro data: 1 Euro in currency unit")
dotchart(1/euro,
         main = "euro data: 1 currency unit in Euros")
dotchart(log(euro, 10),
         main = "euro data: log10(1 Euro in currency unit)")
```

eurodist *Distances Between European Cities*

Description

The data give the road distances (in km) between 21 cities in Europe. The data are taken from a table in *The Cambridge Encyclopaedia*.

Usage

```
eurodist
```

Format

A `dist` object based on 21 objects. (You must have the **stats** package loaded to have the methods for this kind of object available).

Source

Crystal, D. Ed. (1990) *The Cambridge Encyclopaedia*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press,

EuStockMarkets *Daily Closing Prices of Major European Stock Indices, 1991–1998*

Description

Contains the daily closing prices of major European stock indices: Germany DAX (Ibis), Switzerland SMI, France CAC, and UK FTSE. The data are sampled in business time, i.e., weekends and holidays are omitted.

Usage

```
EuStockMarkets
```

Format

A multivariate time series with 1860 observations on 4 variables. The object is of class `"mts"`.

Source

The data were kindly provided by Erste Bank AG, Vienna, Austria.

`faithful` *Old Faithful Geyser Data*

Description

Waiting time between eruptions and the duration of the eruption for the Old Faithful geyser in Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming, USA.

Usage

```
faithful
```

Format

A data frame with 272 observations on 2 variables.

[,1]	eruptions	numeric	Eruption time in mins
[,2]	waiting	numeric	Waiting time to next eruption (in mins)

Details

A closer look at `faithful$eruptions` reveals that these are heavily rounded times originally in seconds, where multiples of 5 are more frequent than expected under non-human measurement. For a better version of the eruption times, see the example below.

There are many versions of this dataset around: Azzalini and Bowman (1990) use a more complete version.

Source

W. Härdle.

References

Härdle, W. (1991) *Smoothing Techniques with Implementation in S*. New York: Springer.

Azzalini, A. and Bowman, A. W. (1990). A look at some data on the Old Faithful geyser. *Applied Statistics* **39**, 357–365.

See Also

`geyser` in package **MASS** for the Azzalini–Bowman version.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
f.tit <-  "faithful data: Eruptions of Old Faithful"

ne60 <- round(e60 <- 60 * faithful$eruptions)
all.equal(e60, ne60)             # relative diff. ~ 1/10000
table(zapsmall(abs(e60 - ne60))) # 0, 0.02 or 0.04
faithful$better.eruptions <- ne60 / 60
te <- table(ne60)
```

```
te[te >= 4]                     # (too) many multiples of 5 !
plot(names(te), te, type = "h", main = f.tit, xlab = "Eruption time (sec)")

plot(faithful[, -3], main = f.tit,
     xlab = "Eruption time (min)",
     ylab = "Waiting time to next eruption (min)")
lines(lowess(faithful$eruptions, faithful$waiting, f = 2/3, iter = 3),
      col = "red")
```

`Formaldehyde` *Determination of Formaldehyde*

Description

These data are from a chemical experiment to prepare a standard curve for the determination of formaldehyde by the addition of chromatropic acid and concentrated sulphuric acid and the reading of the resulting purple color on a spectrophotometer.

Usage

```
Formaldehyde
```

Format

A data frame with 6 observations on 2 variables.

[,1]	carb	numeric	Carbohydrate (ml)
[,2]	optden	numeric	Optical Density

Source

Bennett, N. A. and N. L. Franklin (1954) *Statistical Analysis in Chemistry and the Chemical Industry*. New York: Wiley.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis.* New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
plot(optden ~ carb, data = Formaldehyde,
     xlab = "Carbohydrate (ml)", ylab = "Optical Density",
     main = "Formaldehyde data", col = 4, las = 1)
abline(fm1 <- lm(optden ~ carb, data = Formaldehyde))
summary(fm1)
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0))
plot(fm1)
par(opar)
```

`freeny` *Freeny's Revenue Data*

Description

Freeny's data on quarterly revenue and explanatory variables.

Usage

```
freeny
freeny.x
freeny.y
```

Format

There are three 'freeny' data sets.

`freeny.y` is a time series with 39 observations on quarterly revenue from (1962,2Q) to (1971,4Q).

`freeny.x` is a matrix of explanatory variables. The columns are `freeny.y` lagged 1 quarter, price index, income level, and market potential.

Finally, `freeny` is a data frame with variables `y`, `lag.quarterly.revenue`, `price.index`, `income.level`, and `market.potential` obtained from the above two data objects.

Source

A. E. Freeny (1977) *A Portable Linear Regression Package with Test Programs*. Bell Laboratories memorandum.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
summary(freeny)
pairs(freeny, main = "freeny data")
# gives warning: freeny$y has class "ts"

summary(fm1 <- lm(y ~ ., data = freeny))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0),
            mar = c(4.1, 4.1, 2.1, 1.1))
plot(fm1)
par(opar)
```

HairEyeColor *Hair and Eye Color of Statistics Students*

Description

Distribution of hair and eye color and sex in 592 statistics students.

Usage

```
HairEyeColor
```

Format

A 3-dimensional array resulting from cross-tabulating 592 observations on 3 variables. The variables and their levels are as follows:

No	Name	Levels
1	Hair	Black, Brown, Red, Blond
2	Eye	Brown, Blue, Hazel, Green
3	Sex	Male, Female

Details

The Hair × Eye table comes rom a survey of students at the University of Delaware reported by Snee (1974). The split by Sex was added by Friendly (1992a) for didactic purposes.

This data set is useful for illustrating various techniques for the analysis of contingency tables, such as the standard chi-squared test or, more generally, log-linear modelling, and graphical methods such as mosaic plots, sieve diagrams or association plots.

Source

http://euclid.psych.yorku.ca/ftp/sas/vcd/catdata/haireye.sas

Snee (1974) gives the two-way table aggregated over Sex. The Sex split of the 'Brown hair, Brown eye' cell was changed to agree with that used by Friendly (2000).

References

Snee, R. D. (1974) Graphical display of two-way contingency tables. *The American Statistician*, **28**, 9–12.

Friendly, M. (1992a) Graphical methods for categorical data. *SAS User Group International Conference Proceedings*, **17**, 190–200. http://www.math.yorku.ca/SCS/sugi/sugi17-paper.html

Friendly, M. (1992b) Mosaic displays for loglinear models. *Proceedings of the Statistical Graphics Section*, American Statistical Association, pp. 61–68. http://www.math.yorku.ca/SCS/Papers/asa92.html

Friendly, M. (2000) *Visualizing Categorical Data.* SAS Institute, ISBN 1-58025-660-0.

See Also

chisq.test, loglin, mosaicplot

Examples

```
require(graphics)
## Full mosaic
mosaicplot(HairEyeColor)
## Aggregate over sex (as in Snees original data)
x <- apply(HairEyeColor, c(1, 2), sum)
x
mosaicplot(x, main = "Relation between hair and eye color")
```

Harman23.cor *Harman Example 2.3*

Description

A correlation matrix of eight physical measurements on 305 girls between ages seven and seventeen.

Usage

```
Harman23.cor
```

Source

Harman, H. H. (1976) *Modern Factor Analysis*, Third Edition Revised, University of Chicago Press, Table 2.3.

Examples

```
require(stats)
(Harman23.FA <- factanal(factors = 1, covmat = Harman23.cor))
for(factors in 2:4) print(update(Harman23.FA, factors = factors))
```

Harman74.cor *Harman Example 7.4*

Description

A correlation matrix of 24 psychological tests given to 145 seventh and eight-grade children in a Chicago suburb by Holzinger and Swineford.

Usage

```
Harman74.cor
```

Source

Harman, H. H. (1976) *Modern Factor Analysis*, Third Edition Revised, University of Chicago Press, Table 7.4.

Examples

```
require(stats)
(Harman74.FA <- factanal(factors = 1, covmat = Harman74.cor))
for(factors in 2:5) print(update(Harman74.FA, factors = factors))
Harman74.FA <- factanal(factors = 5, covmat = Harman74.cor,
                        rotation = "promax")
print(Harman74.FA$loadings, sort = TRUE)
```

Indometh *Pharmacokinetics of Indomethacin*

Description

The Indometh data frame has 66 rows and 3 columns of data on the pharmacokinetics of indometacin (or, older spelling, 'indomethacin').

Usage

```
Indometh
```

Format

An object of class `c("nfnGroupedData", "nfGroupedData", "groupedData", "data.frame")` containing the following columns:

Subject an ordered factor with containing the subject codes. The ordering is according to increasing maximum response.

time a numeric vector of times at which blood samples were drawn (hr).

conc a numeric vector of plasma concentrations of indometacin (mcg/ml).

Details

Each of the six subjects were given an intravenous injection of indometacin.

This dataset was originally part of package nlme, and that has methods (including for [, as.data.frame, plot and print) for its grouped-data classes.

Source

Kwan, Breault, Umbenhauer, McMahon and Duggan (1976) Kinetics of Indomethacin absorption, elimination, and enterohepatic circulation in man. *Journal of Pharmacokinetics and Biopharmaceutics* **4**, 255–280.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995) *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman & Hall (section 5.2.4, p. 129)

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

See Also

SSbiexp for models fitted to this dataset.

infert *Infertility after Spontaneous and Induced Abortion*

Description

This is a matched case-control study dating from before the availability of conditional logistic regression.

Usage

```
infert
```

Format

1.	Education	0 = 0-5 years
		1 = 6-11 years
		2 = 12+ years
2.	age	age in years of case
3.	parity	count
4.	number of prior	0 = 0
	induced abortions	1 = 1
		2 = 2 or more
5.	case status	1 = case
		0 = control
6.	number of prior	0 = 0
	spontaneous abortions	1 = 1
		2 = 2 or more
7.	matched set number	1-83
8.	stratum number	1-63

Note

One case with two prior spontaneous abortions and two prior induced abortions is omitted.

Source

Trichopoulos *et al* (1976) *Br. J. of Obst. and Gynaec.* **83**, 645–650.

Examples

```
require(stats)
model1 <- glm(case ~ spontaneous+induced, data = infert, family = binomial())
summary(model1)
## adjusted for other potential confounders:
summary(model2 <- glm(case ~ age+parity+education+spontaneous+induced,
                      data = infert, family = binomial()))
## Really should be analysed by conditional logistic regression
## which is in the survival package
if(require(survival)){
```

```
  model3 <- clogit(case ~ spontaneous+induced+strata(stratum), data = infert)
  print(summary(model3))
  detach()  # survival (conflicts)
}
```

`InsectSprays` *Effectiveness of Insect Sprays*

Description

The counts of insects in agricultural experimental units treated with different insecticides.

Usage

```
InsectSprays
```

Format

A data frame with 72 observations on 2 variables.

[,1]	count	numeric	Insect count
[,2]	spray	factor	The type of spray

Source

Beall, G., (1942) The Transformation of data from entomological field experiments, *Biometrika*, **29**, 243–262.

References

McNeil, D. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
boxplot(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays,
        xlab = "Type of spray", ylab = "Insect count",
        main = "InsectSprays data", varwidth = TRUE, col = "lightgray")
fm1 <- aov(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays)
summary(fm1)
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0))
plot(fm1)
fm2 <- aov(sqrt(count) ~ spray, data = InsectSprays)
summary(fm2)
plot(fm2)
par(opar)
```

`iris` *Edgar Anderson's Iris Data*

Description

This famous (Fisher's or Anderson's) iris data set gives the measurements in centimeters of the variables sepal length and width and petal length and width, respectively, for 50 flowers from each of 3 species of iris. The species are *Iris setosa*, *versicolor*, and *virginica*.

Usage

```
iris
iris3
```

Format

`iris` is a data frame with 150 cases (rows) and 5 variables (columns) named `Sepal.Length`, `Sepal.Width`, `Petal.Length`, `Petal.Width`, and `Species`.

`iris3` gives the same data arranged as a 3-dimensional array of size 50 by 4 by 3, as represented by S-PLUS. The first dimension gives the case number within the species subsample, the second the measurements with names `Sepal L.`, `Sepal W.`, `Petal L.`, and `Petal W.`, and the third the species.

Source

Fisher, R. A. (1936) The use of multiple measurements in taxonomic problems. *Annals of Eugenics*, **7**, Part II, 179–188.

The data were collected by Anderson, Edgar (1935). The irises of the Gaspe Peninsula, *Bulletin of the American Iris Society*, **59**, 2–5.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (has `iris3` as `iris`.)

See Also

`matplot` some examples of which use `iris`.

Examples

```
dni3 <- dimnames(iris3)
ii <- data.frame(matrix(aperm(iris3, c(1,3,2)), ncol = 4,
                        dimnames = list(NULL, sub(" L.",".Length",
                                                  sub(" W.",".Width", dni3[[2]])))),
    Species = gl(3, 50, labels = sub("S", "s", sub("V", "v", dni3[[3]]))))
all.equal(ii, iris) # TRUE
```

islands *Areas of the World's Major Landmasses*

Description

The areas in thousands of square miles of the landmasses which exceed 10,000 square miles.

Usage

```
islands
```

Format

A named vector of length 48.

Source

The World Almanac and Book of Facts, 1975, page 406.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
dotchart(log(islands, 10),
   main = "islands data: log10(area) (log10(sq. miles))")
dotchart(log(islands[order(islands)], 10),
   main = "islands data: log10(area) (log10(sq. miles))")
```

JohnsonJohnson *Quarterly Earnings per Johnson & Johnson Share*

Description

Quarterly earnings (dollars) per Johnson & Johnson share 1960–80.

Usage

```
JohnsonJohnson
```

Format

A quarterly time series

Source

Shumway, R. H. and Stoffer, D. S. (2000) *Time Series Analysis and its Applications*. Second Edition. Springer. Example 1.1.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
JJ <- log10(JohnsonJohnson)
plot(JJ)
## This example gives a possible-non-convergence warning on some
## platforms, but does seem to converge on x86 Linux and Windows.
(fit <- StructTS(JJ, type = "BSM"))
tsdiag(fit)
sm <- tsSmooth(fit)
plot(cbind(JJ, sm[, 1], sm[, 3]-0.5), plot.type = "single",
     col = c("black", "green", "blue"))
abline(h = -0.5, col = "grey60")

monthplot(fit)
```

LakeHuron *Level of Lake Huron 1875–1972*

Description

Annual measurements of the level, in feet, of Lake Huron 1875–1972.

Usage

```
LakeHuron
```

Format

A time series of length 98.

Source

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1991). *Time Series and Forecasting Methods*. Second edition. Springer, New York. Series A, page 555.

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1996). *Introduction to Time Series and Forecasting*. Springer, New York. Sections 5.1 and 7.6.

---

lh *Luteinizing Hormone in Blood Samples*

Description

A regular time series giving the luteinizing hormone in blood samples at 10 mins intervals from a human female, 48 samples.

Usage

```
lh
```

Source

P.J. Diggle (1990) *Time Series: A Biostatistical Introduction.* Oxford, table A.1, series 3

`LifeCycleSavings` *Intercountry Life-Cycle Savings Data*

Description

Data on the savings ratio 1960–1970.

Usage

```
LifeCycleSavings
```

Format

A data frame with 50 observations on 5 variables.

[,1]	sr	numeric	aggregate personal savings
[,2]	pop15	numeric	% of population under 15
[,3]	pop75	numeric	% of population over 75
[,4]	dpi	numeric	real per-capita disposable income
[,5]	ddpi	numeric	% growth rate of dpi

Details

Under the life-cycle savings hypothesis as developed by Franco Modigliani, the savings ratio (aggregate personal saving divided by disposable income) is explained by per-capita disposable income, the percentage rate of change in per-capita disposable income, and two demographic variables: the percentage of population less than 15 years old and the percentage of the population over 75 years old. The data are averaged over the decade 1960–1970 to remove the business cycle or other short-term fluctuations.

Source

The data were obtained from Belsley, Kuh and Welsch (1980). They in turn obtained the data from Sterling (1977).

References

Sterling, Arnie (1977) Unpublished BS Thesis. Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Belsley, D. A., Kuh. E. and Welsch, R. E. (1980) *Regression Diagnostics*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
pairs(LifeCycleSavings, panel = panel.smooth,
      main = "LifeCycleSavings data")
fm1 <- lm(sr ~ pop15 + pop75 + dpi + ddpi, data = LifeCycleSavings)
summary(fm1)
```

`Loblolly` *Growth of Loblolly pine trees*

Description

The `Loblolly` data frame has 84 rows and 3 columns of records of the growth of Loblolly pine trees.

Usage

```
Loblolly
```

Format

An object of class `c("nfnGroupedData", "nfGroupedData", "groupedData", "data.frame")` containing the following columns:

height a numeric vector of tree heights (ft).

age a numeric vector of tree ages (yr).

Seed an ordered factor indicating the seed source for the tree. The ordering is according to increasing maximum height.

Details

This dataset was originally part of package `nlme`, and that has methods (including for `[`, `as.data.frame`, `plot` and `print`) for its grouped-data classes.

Source

Kung, F. H. (1986), Fitting logistic growth curve with predetermined carrying capacity, in *Proceedings of the Statistical Computing Section, American Statistical Association*, 340–343.

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
plot(height ~ age, data = Loblolly, subset = Seed == 329,
     xlab = "Tree age (yr)", las = 1,
     ylab = "Tree height (ft)",
     main = "Loblolly data and fitted curve (Seed 329 only)")
fm1 <- nls(height ~ SSasymp(age, Asym, R0, lrc),
           data = Loblolly, subset = Seed == 329)
age <- seq(0, 30, length.out = 101)
lines(age, predict(fm1, list(age = age)))
```

`longley` *Longley's Economic Regression Data*

Description

A macroeconomic data set which provides a well-known example for a highly collinear regression.

Usage

```
longley
```

Format

A data frame with 7 economical variables, observed yearly from 1947 to 1962 ($n = 16$).

`GNP.deflator` GNP implicit price deflator ($1954 = 100$)

`GNP` Gross National Product.

`Unemployed` number of unemployed.

`Armed.Forces` number of people in the armed forces.

`Population` 'noninstitutionalized' population $\geq$ 14 years of age.

`Year` the year (time).

`Employed` number of people employed.

The regression `lm(Employed ~ .)` is known to be highly collinear.

Source

J. W. Longley (1967) An appraisal of least-squares programs from the point of view of the user. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **62**, 819–841.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
## give the data set in the form it is used in S-PLUS:
longley.x <- data.matrix(longley[, 1:6])
longley.y <- longley[, "Employed"]
pairs(longley, main = "longley data")
summary(fm1 <- lm(Employed ~ ., data = longley))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0),
            mar = c(4.1, 4.1, 2.1, 1.1))
plot(fm1)
par(opar)
```

lynx *Annual Canadian Lynx trappings 1821–1934*

Description

Annual numbers of lynx trappings for 1821–1934 in Canada. Taken from Brockwell & Davis (1991), this appears to be the series considered by Campbell & Walker (1977).

Usage

```
lynx
```

Source

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1991) *Time Series and Forecasting Methods.* Second edition. Springer. Series G (page 557).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Campbell, M. J.and A. M. Walker (1977). A Survey of statistical work on the Mackenzie River series of annual Canadian lynx trappings for the years 1821–1934 and a new analysis. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society series A*, **140**, 411–431.

morley *Michelson Speed of Light Data*

Description

A classical data of Michelson (but not this one with Morley) on measurements done in 1879 on the speed of light. The data consists of five experiments, each consisting of 20 consecutive 'runs'. The response is the speed of light measurement, suitably coded (km/sec, with `299000` subtracted).

Usage

```
morley
```

Format

A data frame with 100 observations on the following 3 variables.

`Expt` The experiment number, from 1 to 5.

`Run` The run number within each experiment.

`Speed` Speed-of-light measurement.

Details

The data is here viewed as a randomized block experiment with 'experiment' and 'run' as the factors. 'run' may also be considered a quantitative variate to account for linear (or polynomial) changes in the measurement over the course of a single experiment.

Note

This is the same dataset as `michelson` in package **MASS**.

Source

A. J. Weekes (1986) *A Genstat Primer*. London: Edward Arnold.

S. M. Stigler (1977) Do robust estimators work with real data? *Annals of Statistics* **5**, 1055–1098. (See Table 6.)

A. A. Michelson (1882) Experimental determination of the velocity of light made at the United States Naval Academy, Annapolis. *Astronomic Papers* **1** 135–8. U.S. Nautical Almanac Office. (See Table 24.)

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
michelson <- transform(morley,
                       Expt = factor(Expt), Run = factor(Run))
xtabs(~ Expt + Run, data = michelson)  # 5 x 20 balanced (two-way)
plot(Speed ~ Expt, data = michelson,
     main = "Speed of Light Data", xlab = "Experiment No.")
fm <- aov(Speed ~ Run + Expt, data = michelson)
summary(fm)
fm0 <- update(fm, . ~ . - Run)
anova(fm0, fm)
```

`mtcars` *Motor Trend Car Road Tests*

Description

The data was extracted from the 1974 *Motor Trend* US magazine, and comprises fuel consumption and 10 aspects of automobile design and performance for 32 automobiles (1973–74 models).

Usage

```
mtcars
```

Format

A data frame with 32 observations on 11 variables.

[, 1]	mpg	Miles/(US) gallon
[, 2]	cyl	Number of cylinders
[, 3]	disp	Displacement (cu.in.)
[, 4]	hp	Gross horsepower
[, 5]	drat	Rear axle ratio

[, 6]	wt	Weight (lb/1000)
[, 7]	qsec	1/4 mile time
[, 8]	vs	V/S
[, 9]	am	Transmission (0 = automatic, 1 = manual)
[,10]	gear	Number of forward gears
[,11]	carb	Number of carburetors

Source

Henderson and Velleman (1981), Building multiple regression models interactively. *Biometrics*, **37**, 391–411.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
pairs(mtcars, main = "mtcars data")
coplot(mpg ~ disp | as.factor(cyl), data = mtcars,
       panel = panel.smooth, rows = 1)
```

---

nhtemp *Average Yearly Temperatures in New Haven*

Description

The mean annual temperature in degrees Fahrenheit in New Haven, Connecticut, from 1912 to 1971.

Usage

```
nhtemp
```

Format

A time series of 60 observations.

Source

Vaux, J. E. and Brinker, N. B. (1972) *Cycles*, **1972**, 117–121.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
plot(nhtemp, main = "nhtemp data",
  ylab = "Mean annual temperature in New Haven, CT (deg. F)")
```

`Nile` *Flow of the River Nile*

Description

Measurements of the annual flow of the river Nile at Ashwan 1871–1970.

Usage

```
Nile
```

Format

A time series of length 100.

Source

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press. http://www.ssfpack.com/DKbook.html

References

Balke, N. S. (1993) Detecting level shifts in time series. *Journal of Business and Economic Statistics* **11**, 81–92.

Cobb, G. W. (1978) The problem of the Nile: conditional solution to a change-point problem. *Biometrika* **65**, 243–51.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
par(mfrow = c(2, 2))
plot(Nile)
acf(Nile)
pacf(Nile)
ar(Nile) # selects order 2
cpgram(ar(Nile)$resid)
par(mfrow = c(1, 1))
arima(Nile, c(2, 0, 0))

## Now consider missing values, following Durbin & Koopman
NileNA <- Nile
NileNA[c(21:40, 61:80)] <- NA
arima(NileNA, c(2, 0, 0))
plot(NileNA)
pred <-
   predict(arima(window(NileNA, 1871, 1890), c(2, 0, 0)), n.ahead = 20)
lines(pred$pred, lty = 3, col = "red")
lines(pred$pred + 2*pred$se, lty = 2, col = "blue")
lines(pred$pred - 2*pred$se, lty = 2, col = "blue")
pred <-
   predict(arima(window(NileNA, 1871, 1930), c(2, 0, 0)), n.ahead = 20)
lines(pred$pred, lty = 3, col = "red")
lines(pred$pred + 2*pred$se, lty = 2, col = "blue")
```

```
lines(pred$pred - 2*pred$se, lty = 2, col = "blue")

## Structural time series models
par(mfrow = c(3, 1))
plot(Nile)
## local level model
(fit <- StructTS(Nile, type = "level"))
lines(fitted(fit), lty = 2)              # contemporaneous smoothing
lines(tsSmooth(fit), lty = 2, col = 4)   # fixed-interval smoothing
plot(residuals(fit)); abline(h = 0, lty = 3)
## local trend model
(fit2 <- StructTS(Nile, type = "trend")) ## constant trend fitted
pred <- predict(fit, n.ahead = 30)
## with 50% confidence interval
ts.plot(Nile, pred$pred,
        pred$pred + 0.67*pred$se, pred$pred -0.67*pred$se)

## Now consider missing values
plot(NileNA)
(fit3 <- StructTS(NileNA, type = "level"))
lines(fitted(fit3), lty = 2)
lines(tsSmooth(fit3), lty = 3)
plot(residuals(fit3)); abline(h = 0, lty = 3)
```

---

nottem *Average Monthly Temperatures at Nottingham, 1920–1939*

Description

A time series object containing average air temperatures at Nottingham Castle in degrees Fahrenheit for 20 years.

Usage

```
nottem
```

Source

Anderson, O. D. (1976) *Time Series Analysis and Forecasting: The Box-Jenkins approach.* Butterworths. Series R.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
nott <- window(nottem, end = c(1936,12))
fit <- arima(nott, order = c(1,0,0), list(order = c(2,1,0), period = 12))
nott.fore <- predict(fit, n.ahead = 36)
ts.plot(nott, nott.fore$pred, nott.fore$pred+2*nott.fore$se,
        nott.fore$pred-2*nott.fore$se, gpars = list(col = c(1,1,4,4)))
```

npk *Classical N, P, K Factorial Experiment*

Description

A classical N, P, K (nitrogen, phosphate, potassium) factorial experiment on the growth of peas conducted on 6 blocks. Each half of a fractional factorial design confounding the NPK interaction was used on 3 of the plots.

Usage

```
npk
```

Format

The npk data frame has 24 rows and 5 columns:

`block` which block (label 1 to 6).

`N` indicator (0/1) for the application of nitrogen.

`P` indicator (0/1) for the application of phosphate.

`K` indicator (0/1) for the application of potassium.

`yield` Yield of peas, in pounds/plot (the plots were (1/70) acre).

Source

Imperial College, London, M.Sc. exercise sheet.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.sum", "contr.poly"))
npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk)
npk.aov
summary(npk.aov)
coef(npk.aov)
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
npk.aov1 <- aov(yield ~ block + N + K, data = npk)
summary.lm(npk.aov1)
se.contrast(npk.aov1, list(N=="0", N=="1"), data = npk)
model.tables(npk.aov1, type = "means", se = TRUE)
```

occupationalStatus *Occupational Status of Fathers and their Sons*

Description

Cross-classification of a sample of British males according to each subject's occupational status and his father's occupational status.

Usage

```
occupationalStatus
```

Format

A `table` of counts, with classifying factors `origin` (father's occupational status; levels `1:8`) and `destination` (son's occupational status; levels `1:8`).

Source

Goodman, L. A. (1979) Simple Models for the Analysis of Association in Cross-Classifications having Ordered Categories. *J. Am. Stat. Assoc.*, **74** (367), 537–552.

The data set has been in package **gnm** and been provided by the package authors.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)

plot(occupationalStatus)

##  Fit a uniform association model separating diagonal effects
Diag <- as.factor(diag(1:8))
Rscore <- scale(as.numeric(row(occupationalStatus)), scale = FALSE)
Cscore <- scale(as.numeric(col(occupationalStatus)), scale = FALSE)
modUnif <- glm(Freq ~ origin + destination + Diag + Rscore:Cscore,
               family = poisson, data = occupationalStatus)

summary(modUnif)
plot(modUnif) # 4 plots, with warning about  h_ii ~= 1
```

Orange *Growth of Orange Trees*

Description

The `Orange` data frame has 35 rows and 3 columns of records of the growth of orange trees.

Usage

```
Orange
```

Format

An object of class `c("nfnGroupedData", "nfGroupedData", "groupedData", "data.frame")` containing the following columns:

Tree an ordered factor indicating the tree on which the measurement is made. The ordering is according to increasing maximum diameter.

age a numeric vector giving the age of the tree (days since 1968/12/31)

circumference a numeric vector of trunk circumferences (mm). This is probably "circumference at breast height", a standard measurement in forestry.

Details

This dataset was originally part of package `nlme`, and that has methods (including for `[`, `as.data.frame`, `plot` and `print`) for its grouped-data classes.

Source

Draper, N. R. and Smith, H. (1998), *Applied Regression Analysis (3rd ed)*, Wiley (exercise 24.N).

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
coplot(circumference ~ age | Tree, data = Orange, show.given = FALSE)
fm1 <- nls(circumference ~ SSlogis(age, Asym, xmid, scal),
           data = Orange, subset = Tree == 3)
plot(circumference ~ age, data = Orange, subset = Tree == 3,
     xlab = "Tree age (days since 1968/12/31)",
     ylab = "Tree circumference (mm)", las = 1,
     main = "Orange tree data and fitted model (Tree 3 only)")
age <- seq(0, 1600, length.out = 101)
lines(age, predict(fm1, list(age = age)))
```

OrchardSprays *Potency of Orchard Sprays*

Description

An experiment was conducted to assess the potency of various constituents of orchard sprays in repelling honeybees, using a Latin square design.

Usage

```
OrchardSprays
```

Format

A data frame with 64 observations on 4 variables.

[,1]	rowpos	numeric	Row of the design
[,2]	colpos	numeric	Column of the design
[,3]	treatment	factor	Treatment level
[,4]	decrease	numeric	Response

Details

Individual cells of dry comb were filled with measured amounts of lime sulphur emulsion in sucrose solution. Seven different concentrations of lime sulphur ranging from a concentration of 1/100 to 1/1,562,500 in successive factors of 1/5 were used as well as a solution containing no lime sulphur.

The responses for the different solutions were obtained by releasing 100 bees into the chamber for two hours, and then measuring the decrease in volume of the solutions in the various cells.

An 8×8 Latin square design was used and the treatments were coded as follows:

A	highest level of lime sulphur
B	next highest level of lime sulphur
.	
.	
.	
G	lowest level of lime sulphur
H	no lime sulphur

Source

Finney, D. J. (1947) *Probit Analysis*. Cambridge.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
pairs(OrchardSprays, main = "OrchardSprays data")
```

`PlantGrowth` *Results from an Experiment on Plant Growth*

Description

Results from an experiment to compare yields (as measured by dried weight of plants) obtained under a control and two different treatment conditions.

Usage

```
PlantGrowth
```

Format

A data frame of 30 cases on 2 variables.

[, 1]	weight	numeric
[, 2]	group	factor

The levels of `group` are 'ctrl', 'trt1', and 'trt2'.

Source

Dobson, A. J. (1983) *An Introduction to Statistical Modelling*. London: Chapman and Hall.

Examples

```
## One factor ANOVA example from Dobsons book, cf. Table 7.4:
require(stats); require(graphics)
boxplot(weight ~ group, data = PlantGrowth, main = "PlantGrowth data",
        ylab = "Dried weight of plants", col = "lightgray",
        notch = TRUE, varwidth = TRUE)
anova(lm(weight ~ group, data = PlantGrowth))
```

---

precip *Annual Precipitation in US Cities*

Description

The average amount of precipitation (rainfall) in inches for each of 70 United States (and Puerto Rico) cities.

Usage

```
precip
```

Format

A named vector of length 70.

Source

Statistical Abstracts of the United States, 1975.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
dotchart(precip[order(precip)], main = "precip data")
title(sub = "Average annual precipitation (in.)")
```

presidents *Quarterly Approval Ratings of US Presidents*

Description

The (approximately) quarterly approval rating for the President of the United States from the first quarter of 1945 to the last quarter of 1974.

Usage

```
presidents
```

Format

A time series of 120 values.

Details

The data are actually a fudged version of the approval ratings. See McNeil's book for details.

Source

The Gallup Organisation.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
plot(presidents, las = 1, ylab = "Approval rating (%)",
     main = "presidents data")
```

pressure *Vapor Pressure of Mercury as a Function of Temperature*

Description

Data on the relation between temperature in degrees Celsius and vapor pressure of mercury in millimeters (of mercury).

Usage

```
pressure
```

Format

A data frame with 19 observations on 2 variables.

[, 1]	temperature	numeric	temperature (deg C)
[, 2]	pressure	numeric	pressure (mm)

Source

Weast, R. C., ed. (1973) *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*. CRC Press.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
plot(pressure, xlab = "Temperature (deg C)",
     ylab = "Pressure (mm of Hg)",
     main = "pressure data: Vapor Pressure of Mercury")
plot(pressure, xlab = "Temperature (deg C)",  log = "y",
     ylab = "Pressure (mm of Hg)",
     main = "pressure data: Vapor Pressure of Mercury")
```

Puromycin *Reaction Velocity of an Enzymatic Reaction*

Description

The Puromycin data frame has 23 rows and 3 columns of the reaction velocity versus substrate concentration in an enzymatic reaction involving untreated cells or cells treated with Puromycin.

Usage

```
Puromycin
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`conc` a numeric vector of substrate concentrations (ppm)

`rate` a numeric vector of instantaneous reaction rates (counts/min/min)

`state` a factor with levels `treated` `untreated`

Details

Data on the velocity of an enzymatic reaction were obtained by Treloar (1974). The number of counts per minute of radioactive product from the reaction was measured as a function of substrate concentration in parts per million (ppm) and from these counts the initial rate (or velocity) of the reaction was calculated (counts/min/min). The experiment was conducted once with the enzyme treated with Puromycin, and once with the enzyme untreated.

Source

Bates, D.M. and Watts, D.G. (1988), *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley, Appendix A1.3.

Treloar, M. A. (1974), *Effects of Puromycin on Galactosyltransferase in Golgi Membranes*, M.Sc. Thesis, U. of Toronto.

See Also

SSmicmen for other models fitted to this dataset.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)

plot(rate ~ conc, data = Puromycin, las = 1,
     xlab = "Substrate concentration (ppm)",
     ylab = "Reaction velocity (counts/min/min)",
     pch = as.integer(Puromycin$state),
     col = as.integer(Puromycin$state),
     main = "Puromycin data and fitted Michaelis-Menten curves")
## simplest form of fitting the Michaelis-Menten model to these data
fm1 <- nls(rate ~ Vm * conc/(K + conc), data = Puromycin,
           subset = state == "treated",
           start = c(Vm = 200, K = 0.05))
fm2 <- nls(rate ~ Vm * conc/(K + conc), data = Puromycin,
           subset = state == "untreated",
           start = c(Vm = 160, K = 0.05))
summary(fm1)
summary(fm2)
## add fitted lines to the plot
conc <- seq(0, 1.2, length.out = 101)
lines(conc, predict(fm1, list(conc = conc)), lty = 1, col = 1)
lines(conc, predict(fm2, list(conc = conc)), lty = 2, col = 2)
legend(0.8, 120, levels(Puromycin$state),
       col = 1:2, lty = 1:2, pch = 1:2)

## using partial linearity
fm3 <- nls(rate ~ conc/(K + conc), data = Puromycin,
           subset = state == "treated", start = c(K = 0.05),
           algorithm = "plinear")
```

---

quakes *Locations of Earthquakes off Fiji*

Description

The data set give the locations of 1000 seismic events of MB > 4.0. The events occurred in a cube near Fiji since 1964.

Usage

```
quakes
```

Format

A data frame with 1000 observations on 5 variables.

[,1]	lat	numeric	Latitude of event
[,2]	long	numeric	Longitude
[,3]	depth	numeric	Depth (km)
[,4]	mag	numeric	Richter Magnitude
[,5]	stations	numeric	Number of stations reporting

Details

There are two clear planes of seismic activity. One is a major plate junction; the other is the Tonga trench off New Zealand. These data constitute a subsample from a larger dataset of containing 5000 observations.

Source

This is one of the Harvard PRIM-H project data sets. They in turn obtained it from Dr. John Woodhouse, Dept. of Geophysics, Harvard University.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
pairs(quakes, main = "Fiji Earthquakes, N = 1000", cex.main = 1.2, pch = ".")
```

---

randu *Random Numbers from Congruential Generator RANDU*

Description

400 triples of successive random numbers were taken from the VAX FORTRAN function RANDU running under VMS 1.5.

Usage

```
randu
```

Format

A data frame with 400 observations on 3 variables named `x`, `y` and `z` which give the first, second and third random number in the triple.

Details

In three dimensional displays it is evident that the triples fall on 15 parallel planes in 3-space. This can be shown theoretically to be true for all triples from the RANDU generator.

These particular 400 triples start 5 apart in the sequence, that is they are ((U[5i+1], U[5i+2], U[5i+3]), i= 0, . . . , 399), and they are rounded to 6 decimal places.

Under VMS versions 2.0 and higher, this problem has been fixed.

Source

David Donoho

Examples

```
## We could re-generate the dataset by the following R code
seed <- as.double(1)
RANDU <- function() {
    seed <<- ((2^16 + 3) * seed) %% (2^31)
    seed/(2^31)
}
for(i in 1:400) {
    U <- c(RANDU(), RANDU(), RANDU(), RANDU(), RANDU())
    print(round(U[1:3], 6))
}
```

`rivers` *Lengths of Major North American Rivers*

Description

This data set gives the lengths (in miles) of 141 "major" rivers in North America, as compiled by the US Geological Survey.

Usage

```
rivers
```

Format

A vector containing 141 observations.

Source

World Almanac and Book of Facts, 1975, page 406.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

`rock` *Measurements on Petroleum Rock Samples*

Description

Measurements on 48 rock samples from a petroleum reservoir.

Usage

```
rock
```

Format

A data frame with 48 rows and 4 numeric columns.

[,1]	area	area of pores space, in pixels out of 256 by 256
[,2]	peri	perimeter in pixels
[,3]	shape	perimeter/sqrt(area)
[,4]	perm	permeability in milli-Darcies

Details

Twelve core samples from petroleum reservoirs were sampled by 4 cross-sections. Each core sample was measured for permeability, and each cross-section has total area of pores, total perimeter of pores, and shape.

Source

Data from BP Research, image analysis by Ronit Katz, U. Oxford.

`sleep` *Student's Sleep Data*

Description

Data which show the effect of two soporific drugs (increase in hours of sleep compared to control) on 10 patients.

Usage

```
sleep
```

Format

A data frame with 20 observations on 3 variables.

[, 1]	extra	numeric	increase in hours of sleep
[, 2]	group	factor	drug given
[, 3]	ID	factor	patient ID

Details

The `group` variable name may be misleading about the data: They represent measurements on 10 persons, not in groups.

Source

Cushny, A. R. and Peebles, A. R. (1905) The action of optical isomers: II hyoscines. *The Journal of Physiology* **32**, 501–510.

Student (1908) The probable error of the mean. *Biometrika*, **6**, 20.

References

Scheffé, Henry (1959) *The Analysis of Variance*. New York, NY: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats)
## Students paired t-test
with(sleep,
     t.test(extra[group == 1],
            extra[group == 2], paired = TRUE))

## The sleep *prolongations*
sleep1 <- with(sleep, extra[group == 2] - extra[group == 1])
summary(sleep1)
stripchart(sleep1, method = "stack", xlab = "hours",
           main = "Sleep prolongation (n = 10)")
boxplot(sleep1, horizontal = TRUE, add = TRUE,
        at = .6, pars = list(boxwex = 0.5, staplewex = 0.25))
```

---

stackloss *Brownlee's Stack Loss Plant Data*

Description

Operational data of a plant for the oxidation of ammonia to nitric acid.

Usage

```
stackloss

stack.x
stack.loss
```

Format

`stackloss` is a data frame with 21 observations on 4 variables.

[,1]	`Air Flow`	Flow of cooling air
[,2]	`Water Temp`	Cooling Water Inlet Temperature
[,3]	`Acid Conc.`	Concentration of acid [per 1000, minus 500]
[,4]	`stack.loss`	Stack loss

For compatibility with S-PLUS, the data sets `stack.x`, a matrix with the first three (independent) variables of the data frame, and `stack.loss`, the numeric vector giving the fourth (dependent) variable, are provided as well.

Details

"Obtained from 21 days of operation of a plant for the oxidation of ammonia (NH_3) to nitric acid (HNO_3). The nitric oxides produced are absorbed in a countercurrent absorption tower". (Brownlee, cited by Dodge, slightly reformatted by MM.)

`Air Flow` represents the rate of operation of the plant. `Water Temp` is the temperature of cooling water circulated through coils in the absorption tower. `Acid Conc.` is the concentration of the acid circulating, minus 50, times 10: that is, 89 corresponds to 58.9 per cent acid. `stack.loss` (the

dependent variable) is 10 times the percentage of the ingoing ammonia to the plant that escapes from the absorption column unabsorbed; that is, an (inverse) measure of the over-all efficiency of the plant.

Source

Brownlee, K. A. (1960, 2nd ed. 1965) *Statistical Theory and Methodology in Science and Engineering*. New York: Wiley. pp. 491–500.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Dodge, Y. (1996) The guinea pig of multiple regression. In: *Robust Statistics, Data Analysis, and Computer Intensive Methods; In Honor of Peter Huber's 60th Birthday*, 1996, *Lecture Notes in Statistics* **109**, Springer-Verlag, New York.

Examples

```
require(stats)
summary(lm.stack <- lm(stack.loss ~ stack.x))
```

---

state *US State Facts and Figures*

Description

Data sets related to the 50 states of the United States of America.

Usage

```
state.abb
state.area
state.center
state.division
state.name
state.region
state.x77
```

Details

currently contains the following "state" data sets. Note that all data are arranged according to alphabetical order of the state names.

`state.abb`**:** character vector of 2-letter abbreviations for the state names.

`state.area`**:** numeric vector of state areas (in square miles).

`state.center`**:** list with components named `x` and `y` giving the approximate geographic center of each state in negative longitude and latitude. Alaska and Hawaii are placed just off the West Coast.

`state.division`**:** factor giving state divisions (New England, Middle Atlantic, South Atlantic, East South Central, West South Central, East North Central, West North Central, Mountain, and Pacific).

`state.name`: character vector giving the full state names.

`state.region`: factor giving the region (Northeast, South, North Central, West) that each state belongs to.

`state.x77`: matrix with 50 rows and 8 columns giving the following statistics in the respective columns.

`Population`: population estimate as of July 1, 1975

`Income`: per capita income (1974)

`Illiteracy`: illiteracy (1970, percent of population)

`Life Exp`: life expectancy in years (1969–71)

`Murder`: murder and non-negligent manslaughter rate per 100,000 population (1976)

`HS Grad`: percent high-school graduates (1970)

`Frost`: mean number of days with minimum temperature below freezing (1931–1960) in capital or large city

`Area`: land area in square miles

Source

U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census (1977) *Statistical Abstract of the United States*.

U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census (1977) *County and City Data Book*.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

`sunspot.month` *Monthly Sunspot Data, from 1749 to "Present"*

Description

Monthly numbers of sunspots, as from the World Data Center, aka SIDC. This is the version of the data that will occasionally be updated when new counts become available.

Usage

```
sunspot.month
```

Format

The univariate time series `sunspot.year` and `sunspot.month` contain 289 and 2988 observations, respectively. The objects are of class `"ts"`.

Author(s)

R

Source

WDC-SILSO, Solar Influences Data Analysis Center (SIDC), Royal Observatory of Belgium, Av. Circulaire, 3, B-1180 BRUSSELS Currently at http://www.sidc.be/silso/datafiles

See Also

sunspot.month is a longer version of sunspots; the latter runs until 1983 and is kept fixed (for reproducibility as example dataset).

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
## Compare the monthly series
plot (sunspot.month,
      main="sunspot.month & sunspots [packagedatasets]", col=2)
lines(sunspots) # -> faint differences where they overlap

## Now look at the difference :
all(tsp(sunspots)     [c(1,3)] ==
    tsp(sunspot.month)[c(1,3)]) ## Start & Periodicity are the same
n1 <- length(sunspots)
table(eq <- sunspots == sunspot.month[1:n1]) #>  132  are different !
i <- which(!eq)
rug(time(eq)[i])
s1 <- sunspots[i] ; s2 <- sunspot.month[i]
cbind(i = i, time = time(sunspots)[i], sunspots = s1, ss.month = s2,
      perc.diff = round(100*2*abs(s1-s2)/(s1+s2), 1))

## How to recreate the "old" sunspot.month (R <= 3.0.3):
.sunspot.diff <- cbind(
    i = c(1202L, 1256L, 1258L, 1301L, 1407L, 1429L, 1452L, 1455L,
          1663L, 2151L, 2329L, 2498L, 2594L, 2694L, 2819L),
    res10 = c(1L, 1L, 1L, -1L, -1L, -1L, 1L, -1L,
          1L, 1L, 1L, 1L, 1L, 20L, 1L))
ssm0 <- sunspot.month[1:2988]
with(as.data.frame(.sunspot.diff), ssm0[i] <<- ssm0[i] - res10/10)
sunspot.month.0 <- ts(ssm0, start = 1749, frequency = 12)
```

---

sunspot.year *Yearly Sunspot Data, 1700–1988*

Description

Yearly numbers of sunspots from 1700 to 1988 (rounded to one digit).

Note that monthly numbers are available as sunspot.month, though starting slightly later.

Usage

```
sunspot.year
```

Format

The univariate time series sunspot.year contains 289 observations, and is of class "ts".

Source

H. Tong (1996) *Non-Linear Time Series*. Clarendon Press, Oxford, p. 471.

See Also

For *monthly* sunspot numbers, see sunspot.month and sunspots.

Regularly updated yearly sunspot numbers are available from WDC-SILSO, Royal Observatory of Belgium, at http://www.sidc.be/silso/datafiles

Examples

```
utils::str(sm <- sunspots)# the monthly version we keep unchanged
utils::str(sy <- sunspot.year)
## The common time interval
(t1 <- c(max(start(sm), start(sy)),     1)) # Jan 1749
(t2 <- c(min(  end(sm)[1],end(sy)[1]), 12)) # Dec 1983
s.m <- window(sm, start=t1, end=t2)
s.y <- window(sy, start=t1, end=t2[1]) # {irrelevant warning}
stopifnot(length(s.y) * 12 == length(s.m),
          ## The yearly series *is* close to the averages of the monthly one:
          all.equal(s.y, aggregate(s.m, FUN = mean), tol = 0.0020))
## NOTE: Strangely, correctly weighting the number of days per month
##       (using 28.25 for February) is *not* closer than the simple mean:
ndays <- c(31, 28.25, rep(c(31,30, 31,30, 31), 2))
all.equal(s.y, aggregate(s.m, FUN = mean))                    # 0.0013
all.equal(s.y, aggregate(s.m, FUN = weighted.mean, w = ndays)) # 0.0017
```

---

sunspots *Monthly Sunspot Numbers, 1749–1983*

Description

Monthly mean relative sunspot numbers from 1749 to 1983. Collected at Swiss Federal Observatory, Zurich until 1960, then Tokyo Astronomical Observatory.

Usage

```
sunspots
```

Format

A time series of monthly data from 1749 to 1983.

Source

Andrews, D. F. and Herzberg, A. M. (1985) *Data: A Collection of Problems from Many Fields for the Student and Research Worker*. New York: Springer-Verlag.

See Also

sunspot.month has a longer (and a bit different) series, sunspot.year is a much shorter one. See there for getting more current sunspot numbers.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
plot(sunspots, main = "sunspots data", xlab = "Year",
     ylab = "Monthly sunspot numbers")
```

`swiss` *Swiss Fertility and Socioeconomic Indicators (1888) Data*

Description

Standardized fertility measure and socio-economic indicators for each of 47 French-speaking provinces of Switzerland at about 1888.

Usage

```
swiss
```

Format

A data frame with 47 observations on 6 variables, *each* of which is in percent, i.e., in $[0, 100]$.

[,1]	Fertility	I_g, 'common standardized fertility measure'
[,2]	Agriculture	% of males involved in agriculture as occupation
[,3]	Examination	% draftees receiving highest mark on army examination
[,4]	Education	% education beyond primary school for draftees.
[,5]	Catholic	% 'catholic' (as opposed to 'protestant').
[,6]	Infant.Mortality	live births who live less than 1 year.

All variables but 'Fertility' give proportions of the population.

Details

(paraphrasing Mosteller and Tukey):

Switzerland, in 1888, was entering a period known as the *demographic transition*; i.e., its fertility was beginning to fall from the high level typical of underdeveloped countries.

The data collected are for 47 French-speaking "provinces" at about 1888.

Here, all variables are scaled to $[0, 100]$, where in the original, all but `"Catholic"` were scaled to $[0, 1]$.

Note

Files for all 182 districts in 1888 and other years have been available at https://opr.princeton.edu/archive/pefp/switz.aspx.

They state that variables `Examination` and `Education` are averages for 1887, 1888 and 1889.

Source

Project "16P5", pages 549–551 in

Mosteller, F. and Tukey, J. W. (1977) *Data Analysis and Regression: A Second Course in Statistics*. Addison-Wesley, Reading Mass.

indicating their source as "Data used by permission of Franice van de Walle. Office of Population Research, Princeton University, 1976. Unpublished data assembled under NICHD contract number No 1-HD-O-2077."

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
pairs(swiss, panel = panel.smooth, main = "swiss data",
      col = 3 + (swiss$Catholic > 50))
summary(lm(Fertility ~ . , data = swiss))
```

Theoph *Pharmacokinetics of Theophylline*

Description

The Theoph data frame has 132 rows and 5 columns of data from an experiment on the pharmacokinetics of theophylline.

Usage

```
Theoph
```

Format

An object of class `c("nfnGroupedData", "nfGroupedData", "groupedData", "data.frame")` containing the following columns:

Subject an ordered factor with levels `1`, ..., `12` identifying the subject on whom the observation was made. The ordering is by increasing maximum concentration of theophylline observed.

Wt weight of the subject (kg).

Dose dose of theophylline administered orally to the subject (mg/kg).

Time time since drug administration when the sample was drawn (hr).

conc theophylline concentration in the sample (mg/L).

Details

Boeckmann, Sheiner and Beal (1994) report data from a study by Dr. Robert Upton of the kinetics of the anti-asthmatic drug theophylline. Twelve subjects were given oral doses of theophylline then serum concentrations were measured at 11 time points over the next 25 hours.

These data are analyzed in Davidian and Giltinan (1995) and Pinheiro and Bates (2000) using a two-compartment open pharmacokinetic model, for which a self-starting model function, `SSfol`, is available.

This dataset was originally part of package `nlme`, and that has methods (including for `[`, `as.data.frame`, `plot` and `print`) for its grouped-data classes.

Source

Boeckmann, A. J., Sheiner, L. B. and Beal, S. L. (1994), *NONMEM Users Guide: Part V*, NONMEM Project Group, University of California, San Francisco.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995) *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman & Hall (section 5.5, p. 145 and section 6.6, p. 176)

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer (Appendix A.29)

See Also

SSfol

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)

coplot(conc ~ Time | Subject, data = Theoph, show.given = FALSE)
Theoph.4 <- subset(Theoph, Subject == 4)
fm1 <- nls(conc ~ SSfol(Dose, Time, lKe, lKa, lCl),
           data = Theoph.4)
summary(fm1)
plot(conc ~ Time, data = Theoph.4,
     xlab = "Time since drug administration (hr)",
     ylab = "Theophylline concentration (mg/L)",
     main = "Observed concentrations and fitted model",
     sub  = "Theophylline data - Subject 4 only",
     las = 1, col = 4)
xvals <- seq(0, par("usr")[2], length.out = 55)
lines(xvals, predict(fm1, newdata = list(Time = xvals)),
      col = 4)
```

Titanic *Survival of passengers on the Titanic*

Description

This data set provides information on the fate of passengers on the fatal maiden voyage of the ocean liner 'Titanic', summarized according to economic status (class), sex, age and survival.

Usage

```
Titanic
```

Format

A 4-dimensional array resulting from cross-tabulating 2201 observations on 4 variables. The variables and their levels are as follows:

No	Name	Levels
1	Class	1st, 2nd, 3rd, Crew
2	Sex	Male, Female
3	Age	Child, Adult
4	Survived	No, Yes

Details

The sinking of the Titanic is a famous event, and new books are still being published about it. Many well-known facts—from the proportions of first-class passengers to the 'women and children first' policy, and the fact that that policy was not entirely successful in saving the women and children in the third class—are reflected in the survival rates for various classes of passenger.

These data were originally collected by the British Board of Trade in their investigation of the sinking. Note that there is not complete agreement among primary sources as to the exact numbers on board, rescued, or lost.

Due in particular to the very successful film 'Titanic', the last years saw a rise in public interest in the Titanic. Very detailed data about the passengers is now available on the Internet, at sites such as *Encyclopedia Titanica* (http://www.rmplc.co.uk/eduweb/sites/phind).

Source

Dawson, Robert J. MacG. (1995), The 'Unusual Episode' Data Revisited. *Journal of Statistics Education*, **3**. http://www.amstat.org/publications/jse/v3n3/datasets.dawson.html

The source provides a data set recording class, sex, age, and survival status for each person on board of the Titanic, and is based on data originally collected by the British Board of Trade and reprinted in:

British Board of Trade (1990), *Report on the Loss of the 'Titanic' (S.S.)*. British Board of Trade Inquiry Report (reprint). Gloucester, UK: Allan Sutton Publishing.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
mosaicplot(Titanic, main = "Survival on the Titanic")
## Higher survival rates in children?
apply(Titanic, c(3, 4), sum)
## Higher survival rates in females?
apply(Titanic, c(2, 4), sum)
## Use loglm() in package MASS for further analysis ...
```

ToothGrowth *The Effect of Vitamin C on Tooth Growth in Guinea Pigs*

Description

The response is the length of odontoblasts (teeth) in each of 10 guinea pigs at each of three dose levels of Vitamin C (0.5, 1, and 2 mg) with each of two delivery methods (orange juice or ascorbic acid).

Usage

```
ToothGrowth
```

Format

A data frame with 60 observations on 3 variables.

[,1]	len	numeric	Tooth length
[,2]	supp	factor	Supplement type (VC or OJ).
[,3]	dose	numeric	Dose in milligrams.

Source

C. I. Bliss (1952) *The Statistics of Bioassay*. Academic Press.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
coplot(len ~ dose | supp, data = ToothGrowth, panel = panel.smooth,
       xlab = "ToothGrowth data: length vs dose, given type of supplement")
```

---

treering *Yearly Treering Data, -6000–1979*

Description

Contains normalized tree-ring widths in dimensionless units.

Usage

```
treering
```

Format

A univariate time series with 7981 observations. The object is of class `"ts"`.

Each tree ring corresponds to one year.

Details

The data were recorded by Donald A. Graybill, 1980, from Gt Basin Bristlecone Pine 2805M, 3726-11810 in Methuselah Walk, California.

Source

Time Series Data Library: http://www-personal.buseco.monash.edu.au/~hyndman/TSDL/, series 'CA535.DAT'

References

For some photos of Methuselah Walk see http://www.ltrr.arizona.edu/~hallman/sitephotos/meth.html

trees *Girth, Height and Volume for Black Cherry Trees*

Description

This data set provides measurements of the girth, height and volume of timber in 31 felled black cherry trees. Note that girth is the diameter of the tree (in inches) measured at 4 ft 6 in above the ground.

Usage

```
trees
```

Format

A data frame with 31 observations on 3 variables.

[,1]	Girth	numeric	Tree diameter in inches
[,2]	Height	numeric	Height in ft
[,3]	Volume	numeric	Volume of timber in cubic ft

Source

Ryan, T. A., Joiner, B. L. and Ryan, B. F. (1976) *The Minitab Student Handbook*. Duxbury Press.

References

Atkinson, A. C. (1985) *Plots, Transformations and Regression*. Oxford University Press.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
pairs(trees, panel = panel.smooth, main = "trees data")
plot(Volume ~ Girth, data = trees, log = "xy")
coplot(log(Volume) ~ log(Girth) | Height, data = trees,
       panel = panel.smooth)
summary(fm1 <- lm(log(Volume) ~ log(Girth), data = trees))
summary(fm2 <- update(fm1, ~ . + log(Height), data = trees))
step(fm2)
## i.e., Volume ~= c * Height * Girth^2  seems reasonable
```

UCBAdmissions *Student Admissions at UC Berkeley*

Description

Aggregate data on applicants to graduate school at Berkeley for the six largest departments in 1973 classified by admission and sex.

Usage

```
UCBAdmissions
```

Format

A 3-dimensional array resulting from cross-tabulating 4526 observations on 3 variables. The variables and their levels are as follows:

No	Name	Levels
1	Admit	Admitted, Rejected
2	Gender	Male, Female
3	Dept	A, B, C, D, E, F

Details

This data set is frequently used for illustrating Simpson's paradox, see Bickel *et al* (1975). At issue is whether the data show evidence of sex bias in admission practices. There were 2691 male applicants, of whom 1198 (44.5%) were admitted, compared with 1835 female applicants of whom 557 (30.4%) were admitted. This gives a sample odds ratio of 1.83, indicating that males were almost twice as likely to be admitted. In fact, graphical methods (as in the example below) or log-linear modelling show that the apparent association between admission and sex stems from differences in the tendency of males and females to apply to the individual departments (females used to apply *more* to departments with higher rejection rates).

This data set can also be used for illustrating methods for graphical display of categorical data, such as the general-purpose mosaicplot or the fourfoldplot for 2-by-2-by-k tables.

References

Bickel, P. J., Hammel, E. A., and O'Connell, J. W. (1975) Sex bias in graduate admissions: Data from Berkeley. *Science*, **187**, 398–403.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
## Data aggregated over departments
apply(UCBAdmissions, c(1, 2), sum)
mosaicplot(apply(UCBAdmissions, c(1, 2), sum),
           main = "Student admissions at UC Berkeley")
## Data for individual departments
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 3), oma = c(0, 0, 2, 0))
for(i in 1:6)
  mosaicplot(UCBAdmissions[,,i],
    xlab = "Admit", ylab = "Sex",
    main = paste("Department", LETTERS[i]))
mtext(expression(bold("Student admissions at UC Berkeley")),
      outer = TRUE, cex = 1.5)
par(opar)
```

UKDriverDeaths *Road Casualties in Great Britain 1969–84*

Description

UKDriverDeaths is a time series giving the monthly totals of car drivers in Great Britain killed or seriously injured Jan 1969 to Dec 1984. Compulsory wearing of seat belts was introduced on 31 Jan 1983.

Seatbelts is more information on the same problem.

Usage

```
UKDriverDeaths
Seatbelts
```

Format

Seatbelts is a multiple time series, with columns

DriversKilled car drivers killed.

drivers same as UKDriverDeaths.

front front-seat passengers killed or seriously injured.

rear rear-seat passengers killed or seriously injured.

kms distance driven.

PetrolPrice petrol price.

VanKilled number of van ('light goods vehicle') drivers.

law 0/1: was the law in effect that month?

Source

Harvey, A.C. (1989) *Forecasting, Structural Time Series Models and the Kalman Filter.* Cambridge University Press, pp. 519–523.

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press. http://www.ssfpack.com/dkbook/

References

Harvey, A. C. and Durbin, J. (1986) The effects of seat belt legislation on British road casualties: A case study in structural time series modelling. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society* series B, **149**, 187–227.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
## work with pre-seatbelt period to identify a model, use logs
work <- window(log10(UKDriverDeaths), end = 1982+11/12)
par(mfrow = c(3, 1))
plot(work); acf(work); pacf(work)
par(mfrow = c(1, 1))
(fit <- arima(work, c(1, 0, 0), seasonal = list(order = c(1, 0, 0))))
```

```
z <- predict(fit, n.ahead = 24)
ts.plot(log10(UKDriverDeaths), z$pred, z$pred+2*z$se, z$pred-2*z$se,
        lty = c(1, 3, 2, 2), col = c("black", "red", "blue", "blue"))

## now see the effect of the explanatory variables
X <- Seatbelts[, c("kms", "PetrolPrice", "law")]
X[, 1] <- log10(X[, 1]) - 4
arima(log10(Seatbelts[, "drivers"]), c(1, 0, 0),
      seasonal = list(order = c(1, 0, 0)), xreg = X)
```

UKgas *UK Quarterly Gas Consumption*

Description

Quarterly UK gas consumption from 1960Q1 to 1986Q4, in millions of therms.

Usage

```
UKgas
```

Format

A quarterly time series of length 108.

Source

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press. http://www.ssfpack.com/dkbook/

Examples

```
## maybe str(UKgas) ; plot(UKgas) ...
```

UKLungDeaths *Monthly Deaths from Lung Diseases in the UK*

Description

Three time series giving the monthly deaths from bronchitis, emphysema and asthma in the UK, 1974–1979, both sexes (`ldeaths`), males (`mdeaths`) and females (`fdeaths`).

Usage

```
ldeaths
fdeaths
mdeaths
```

Source

P. J. Diggle (1990) *Time Series: A Biostatistical Introduction.* Oxford, table A.3

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics) # for time
plot(ldeaths)
plot(mdeaths, fdeaths)
## Better labels:
yr <- floor(tt <- time(mdeaths))
plot(mdeaths, fdeaths,
     xy.labels = paste(month.abb[12*(tt - yr)], yr-1900, sep = ""))
```

USAccDeaths *Accidental Deaths in the US 1973–1978*

Description

A time series giving the monthly totals of accidental deaths in the USA. The values for the first six months of 1979 are 7798 7406 8363 8460 9217 9316.

Usage

```
USAccDeaths
```

Source

P. J. Brockwell and R. A. Davis (1991) *Time Series: Theory and Methods.* Springer, New York.

USArrests *Violent Crime Rates by US State*

Description

This data set contains statistics, in arrests per 100,000 residents for assault, murder, and rape in each of the 50 US states in 1973. Also given is the percent of the population living in urban areas.

Usage

```
USArrests
```

Format

A data frame with 50 observations on 4 variables.

[,1]	Murder	numeric	Murder arrests (per 100,000)
[,2]	Assault	numeric	Assault arrests (per 100,000)
[,3]	UrbanPop	numeric	Percent urban population
[,4]	Rape	numeric	Rape arrests (per 100,000)

Source

World Almanac and Book of facts 1975. (Crime rates).

Statistical Abstracts of the United States 1975. (Urban rates).

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

See Also

The `state` data sets.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
pairs(USArrests, panel = panel.smooth, main = "USArrests data")
```

`USJudgeRatings` *Lawyers' Ratings of State Judges in the US Superior Court*

Description

Lawyers' ratings of state judges in the US Superior Court.

Usage

```
USJudgeRatings
```

Format

A data frame containing 43 observations on 12 numeric variables.

[,1]	CONT	Number of contacts of lawyer with judge.
[,2]	INTG	Judicial integrity.
[,3]	DMNR	Demeanor.
[,4]	DILG	Diligence.
[,5]	CFMG	Case flow managing.
[,6]	DECI	Prompt decisions.
[,7]	PREP	Preparation for trial.
[,8]	FAMI	Familiarity with law.
[,9]	ORAL	Sound oral rulings.
[,10]	WRIT	Sound written rulings.
[,11]	PHYS	Physical ability.
[,12]	RTEN	Worthy of retention.

Source

New Haven Register, 14 January, 1977 (from John Hartigan).

Examples

```
require(graphics)
pairs(USJudgeRatings, main = "USJudgeRatings data")
```

USPersonalExpenditure *Personal Expenditure Data*

Description

This data set consists of United States personal expenditures (in billions of dollars) in the categories; food and tobacco, household operation, medical and health, personal care, and private education for the years 1940, 1945, 1950, 1955 and 1960.

Usage

```
USPersonalExpenditure
```

Format

A matrix with 5 rows and 5 columns.

Source

The World Almanac and Book of Facts, 1962, page 756.

References

Tukey, J. W. (1977) *Exploratory Data Analysis*. Addison-Wesley.

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats) # for medpolish
USPersonalExpenditure
medpolish(log10(USPersonalExpenditure))
```

uspop *Populations Recorded by the US Census*

Description

This data set gives the population of the United States (in millions) as recorded by the decennial census for the period 1790–1970.

Usage

```
uspop
```

Format

A time series of 19 values.

Source

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
plot(uspop, log = "y", main = "uspop data", xlab = "Year",
     ylab = "U.S. Population (millions)")
```

VADeaths *Death Rates in Virginia (1940)*

Description

Death rates per 1000 in Virginia in 1940.

Usage

```
VADeaths
```

Format

A matrix with 5 rows and 4 columns.

Details

The death rates are measured per 1000 population per year. They are cross-classified by age group (rows) and population group (columns). The age groups are: 50–54, 55–59, 60–64, 65–69, 70–74 and the population groups are Rural/Male, Rural/Female, Urban/Male and Urban/Female.

This provides a rather nice 3-way analysis of variance example.

Source

Molyneaux, L., Gilliam, S. K., and Florant, L. C.(1947) Differences in Virginia death rates by color, sex, age, and rural or urban residence. *American Sociological Review*, **12**, 525–535.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. Wiley.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
n <- length(dr <- c(VADeaths))
nam <- names(VADeaths)
d.VAD <- data.frame(
 Drate = dr,
 age = rep(ordered(rownames(VADeaths)), length.out = n),
 gender = gl(2, 5, n, labels = c("M", "F")),
 site =  gl(2, 10, labels = c("rural", "urban")))
coplot(Drate ~ as.numeric(age) | gender * site, data = d.VAD,
       panel = panel.smooth, xlab = "VADeaths data - Given: gender")
summary(aov.VAD <- aov(Drate ~ .^2, data = d.VAD))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0))
plot(aov.VAD)
par(opar)
```

volcano *Topographic Information on Auckland's Maunga Whau Volcano*

Description

Maunga Whau (Mt Eden) is one of about 50 volcanos in the Auckland volcanic field. This data set gives topographic information for Maunga Whau on a 10m by 10m grid.

Usage

```
volcano
```

Format

A matrix with 87 rows and 61 columns, rows corresponding to grid lines running east to west and columns to grid lines running south to north.

Source

Digitized from a topographic map by Ross Ihaka. These data should not be regarded as accurate.

See Also

`filled.contour` for a nice plot.

Examples

```
require(grDevices); require(graphics)
filled.contour(volcano, color.palette = terrain.colors, asp = 1)
title(main = "volcano data: filled contour map")
```

warpbreaks *The Number of Breaks in Yarn during Weaving*

Description

This data set gives the number of warp breaks per loom, where a loom corresponds to a fixed length of yarn.

Usage

```
warpbreaks
```

Format

A data frame with 54 observations on 3 variables.

`[,1]`	`breaks`	numeric	The number of breaks
`[,2]`	`wool`	factor	The type of wool (A or B)
`[,3]`	`tension`	factor	The level of tension (L, M, H)

There are measurements on 9 looms for each of the six types of warp (AL, AM, AH, BL, BM, BH).

Source

Tippett, L. H. C. (1950) *Technological Applications of Statistics*. Wiley. Page 106.

References

Tukey, J. W. (1977) *Exploratory Data Analysis*. Addison-Wesley.

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. Wiley.

See Also

xtabs for ways to display these data as a table.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
summary(warpbreaks)
opar <- par(mfrow = c(1, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0))
plot(breaks ~ tension, data = warpbreaks, col = "lightgray",
     varwidth = TRUE, subset = wool == "A", main = "Wool A")
plot(breaks ~ tension, data = warpbreaks, col = "lightgray",
     varwidth = TRUE, subset = wool == "B", main = "Wool B")
mtext("warpbreaks data", side = 3, outer = TRUE)
par(opar)
summary(fm1 <- lm(breaks ~ wool*tension, data = warpbreaks))
anova(fm1)
```

---

women *Average Heights and Weights for American Women*

Description

This data set gives the average heights and weights for American women aged 30–39.

Usage

```
women
```

Format

A data frame with 15 observations on 2 variables.

[,1]	height	numeric	Height (in)
[,2]	weight	numeric	Weight (lbs)

Details

The data set appears to have been taken from the American Society of Actuaries *Build and Blood Pressure Study* for some (unknown to us) earlier year.

The World Almanac notes: "The figures represent weights in ordinary indoor clothing and shoes, and heights with shoes".

Source

The World Almanac and Book of Facts, 1975.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
plot(women, xlab = "Height (in)", ylab = "Weight (lb)",
     main = "women data: American women aged 30-39")
```

`WorldPhones` *The World's Telephones*

Description

The number of telephones in various regions of the world (in thousands).

Usage

```
WorldPhones
```

Format

A matrix with 7 rows and 8 columns. The columns of the matrix give the figures for a given region, and the rows the figures for a year.

The regions are: North America, Europe, Asia, South America, Oceania, Africa, Central America.

The years are: 1951, 1956, 1957, 1958, 1959, 1960, 1961.

Source

AT&T (1961) *The World's Telephones*.

References

McNeil, D. R. (1977) *Interactive Data Analysis*. New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
matplot(rownames(WorldPhones), WorldPhones, type = "b", log = "y",
        xlab = "Year", ylab = "Number of telephones (1000s)")
legend(1951.5, 80000, colnames(WorldPhones), col = 1:6, lty = 1:5,
       pch = rep(21, 7))
title(main = "World phones data: log scale for response")
```

WWWusage *Internet Usage per Minute*

Description

A time series of the numbers of users connected to the Internet through a server every minute.

Usage

```
WWWusage
```

Format

A time series of length 100.

Source

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press. http://www.ssfpack.com/dkbook/

References

Makridakis, S., Wheelwright, S. C. and Hyndman, R. J. (1998) *Forecasting: Methods and Applications.* Wiley.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
work <- diff(WWWusage)
par(mfrow = c(2, 1)); plot(WWWusage); plot(work)
## Not run:
require(stats)
aics <- matrix(, 6, 6, dimnames = list(p = 0:5, q = 0:5))
for(q in 1:5) aics[1, 1+q] <- arima(WWWusage, c(0, 1, q),
    optim.control = list(maxit = 500))$aic
for(p in 1:5)
   for(q in 0:5) aics[1+p, 1+q] <- arima(WWWusage, c(p, 1, q),
       optim.control = list(maxit = 500))$aic
round(aics - min(aics, na.rm = TRUE), 2)

## End(Not run)
```

Chapter 4

The grDevices package

---

grDevices-package *The R Graphics Devices and Support for Colours and Fonts*

Description

Graphics devices and support for base and grid graphics

Details

This package contains functions which support both base and grid graphics.

For a complete list of functions, use `library(help = "grDevices")`.

Author(s)

R Core Team and contributors worldwide

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

---

adjustcolor *Adjust Colors in One or More Directions Conveniently.*

Description

Adjust or modify a vector of colors by "turning knobs" on one or more coordinates in (r, g, b, α) space, typically by up or down scaling them.

Usage

```
adjustcolor(col, alpha.f = 1, red.f = 1, green.f = 1, blue.f = 1,
            offset = c(0, 0, 0, 0),
            transform = diag(c(red.f, green.f, blue.f, alpha.f)))
```

Arguments

col	vector of colors, in any format that col2rgb() accepts
alpha.f	factor modifying the opacity alpha; typically in [0,1]
red.f, green.f, blue.f	factors modifying the "red-", "green-" or "blue-"ness of the colors, respectively.
offset	
transform	

Value

a color vector of the same length as col, effectively the result of rgb().

See Also

rgb, col2rgb. For more sophisticated color constructions: convertColor

Examples

```
## Illustrative examples :
opal <- palette("default")
stopifnot(identical(adjustcolor(1:8,       0.75),
                    adjustcolor(palette(), 0.75)))
cbind(palette(), adjustcolor(1:8, 0.75))

##  alpha = 1/2 * previous alpha --> opaque colors
x <- palette(adjustcolor(palette(), 0.5))

sines <- outer(1:20, 1:4, function(x, y) sin(x / 20 * pi * y))
matplot(sines, type = "b", pch = 21:23, col = 2:5, bg = 2:5,
        main = "Using an opaque (translucent) color palette")

x. <- adjustcolor(x, offset = c(0.5, 0.5, 0.5, 0), # <- "more white"
                  transform = diag(c(.7, .7, .7, 0.6)))
cbind(x, x.)
op <- par(bg = adjustcolor("goldenrod", offset = -rep(.4, 4)), xpd = NA)
plot(0:9, 0:9, type = "n", axes = FALSE, xlab = "", ylab = "",
     main = "adjustcolor() -> translucent")
text(1:8, labels = paste0(x,"++"), col = x., cex = 8)
par(op)

## and

(M <- cbind( rbind( matrix(1/3, 3, 3), 0), c(0, 0, 0, 1)))
adjustcolor(x, transform = M)

## revert to previous palette: active
palette(opal)
```

as.graphicsAnnot *Coerce an Object for Graphics Annotation*

Description

Coerce an object into a form suitable for graphics annotation.

Usage

```
as.graphicsAnnot(x)
```

Arguments

x	an object

Details

Expressions, calls and names (as used by plotmath) are passed through unchanged. All other objects with an explicit class (as determined by `is.object`) are coerced by `as.character` to character vectors.

All the **graphics** and **grid** functions which use this coerce calls and names to expressions internally.

Value

A language object or a character vector.

as.raster *Create a Raster Object*

Description

Functions to create a raster object (representing a bitmap image) and coerce other objects to a raster object.

Usage

```
is.raster(x)
as.raster(x, ...)

## S3 method for class logical
as.raster(x, max = 1, ...)
## S3 method for class numeric
as.raster(x, max = 1, ...)
## S3 method for class character
as.raster(x, max = 1, ...)
## S3 method for class matrix
as.raster(x, max = 1, ...)
## S3 method for class array
as.raster(x, max = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

x	Any R object.
max	number giving the maximum of the color values range.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

An object of class "raster" is a matrix of colour values as given by rgb representing a bitmap image.

It is not expected that the user will need to call these functions directly; functions to render bitmap images in graphics packages will make use of the as.raster() function to generate a raster object from their input.

The as.raster() function is generic so methods can be written to convert other R objects to a raster object.

The default implementation for numeric matrices interprets scalar values on black-to-white scale.

Raster objects can be subsetted like a matrix and it is possible to assign to a subset of a raster object.

There is a method for converting a raster object to a matrix (of colour strings).

Raster objects can be compared for equality or inequality (with each other or with a colour string).

There is a is.na method which returns a logical matrix of the same dimensions as the raster object. Note that NA values are interpreted as the fully transparent colour by some (but not all) graphics devices.

Value

For as.raster(), a raster object.

For is.raster(), a logical indicating whether x is a raster object.

Examples

```
# A red gradient
as.raster(matrix(hcl(0, 80, seq(50, 80, 10)),
                 nrow = 4, ncol = 5))

# Vectors are 1-column matrices ...
#   character vectors are color names ...
as.raster(hcl(0, 80, seq(50, 80, 10)))
#   numeric vectors are greyscale ...
as.raster(1:5, max = 5)
#   locigal vectors are black and white ...
as.raster(1:10 %% 2 == 0)

# ... unless nrow/ncol are supplied ...
as.raster(1:10 %% 2 == 0, nrow = 1)

# Matrix can also be logical or numeric ...
as.raster(matrix(c(TRUE, FALSE), nrow = 3, ncol = 2))
as.raster(matrix(1:3/4, nrow = 3, ncol = 4))

# An array can be 3-plane numeric (R, G, B planes) ...
as.raster(array(c(0:1, rep(0.5, 4)), c(2, 1, 3)))
```

```
# ... or 4-plane numeric (R, G, B, A planes)
as.raster(array(c(0:1, rep(0.5, 6)), c(2, 1, 4)))

# subsetting
r <- as.raster(matrix(colors()[1:100], ncol = 10))
r[, 2]
r[2:4, 2:5]

# assigning to subset
r[2:4, 2:5] <- "white"

# comparison
r == "white"
```

`axisTicks` *Compute Pretty Axis Tick Scales*

Description

Compute pretty axis scales and tick mark locations, the same way as traditional graphics do it. This is interesting particularly for log scale axes.

Usage

```
axisTicks(usr, log, axp = NULL, nint = 5)
 .axisPars(usr, log = FALSE, nintLog = 5)
```

Arguments

`usr`	numeric vector of length 2, with `c(min, max)` axis extents.
`log`	logical indicating if a log scale is (thought to be) in use.
`axp`	numeric vector of length 3, `c(mi, ma, n.)`, with identical meaning to `par("?axp")` (where `?` is `x` or `y`), namely "pretty" axis extents, and an integer *code* `n.`.
`nint, nintLog`	positive integer value indicating (*approximately*) the desired number of intervals. `nintLog` is used **only** for the case `log = TRUE`.

Details

`axisTicks(usr, *)` calls `.axisPars(usr, ..)` when `axp` is missing (or `NULL`).

Value

`axisTicks()` returns a numeric vector of potential axis tick locations, of length approximately `nint+1`.

`.axisPars()` returns a `list` with components

`axp`	numeric vector of length 2, `c(min., max.)`, of pretty axis extents.
`n`	integer (code), with the same meaning as `par("?axp")[3]`.

See Also

axTicks; axis, and par (from the **graphics** package).

Examples

```
##--- Demonstrating correspondence between graphics
##--- axis() and the graphics-engine agnostic  axisTicks() :

require("graphics")
plot(10*(0:10)); (pu <- par("usr"))
aX <- function(side, at, ...)
    axis(side, at = at, labels = FALSE, lwd.ticks = 2, col.ticks = 2,
         tck = 0.05, ...)
aX(1, print(xa <- axisTicks(pu[1:2], log = FALSE)))  # x axis
aX(2, print(ya <- axisTicks(pu[3:4], log = FALSE)))  # y axis

axisTicks(pu[3:4], log = FALSE, n = 10)

plot(10*(0:10), log = "y"); (pu <- par("usr"))
aX(2, print(ya <- axisTicks(pu[3:4], log = TRUE)))  # y axis

plot(2^(0:9), log = "y"); (pu <- par("usr"))
aX(2, print(ya <- axisTicks(pu[3:4], log = TRUE)))  # y axis
```

---

boxplot.stats *Box Plot Statistics*

Description

This function is typically called by another function to gather the statistics necessary for producing box plots, but may be invoked separately.

Usage

```
boxplot.stats(x, coef = 1.5, do.conf = TRUE, do.out = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector for which the boxplot will be constructed (NAs and NaNs are allowed and omitted).
coef	this determines how far the plot 'whiskers' extend out from the box. If coef is positive, the whiskers extend to the most extreme data point which is no more than coef times the length of the box away from the box. A value of zero causes the whiskers to extend to the data extremes (and no outliers be returned).
do.conf, do.out	logicals; if FALSE, the conf or out component respectively will be empty in the result.

Details

The two 'hinges' are versions of the first and third quartile, i.e., close to `quantile(x, c(1,3)/4)`. The hinges equal the quartiles for odd n (where `n <- length(x)`) and differ for even n. Whereas the quartiles only equal observations for `n %% 4 == 1` ($n \equiv 1 \bmod 4$), the hinges do so *additionally* for `n %% 4 == 2` ($n \equiv 2 \bmod 4$), and are in the middle of two observations otherwise.

The notches (if requested) extend to `+/-1.58 IQR/sqrt(n)`. This seems to be based on the same calculations as the formula with 1.57 in Chambers *et al* (1983, p. 62), given in McGill *et al* (1978, p. 16). They are based on asymptotic normality of the median and roughly equal sample sizes for the two medians being compared, and are said to be rather insensitive to the underlying distributions of the samples. The idea appears to be to give roughly a 95% confidence interval for the difference in two medians.

Value

List with named components as follows:

`stats`	a vector of length 5, containing the extreme of the lower whisker, the lower 'hinge', the median, the upper 'hinge' and the extreme of the upper whisker.
`n`	the number of non-`NA` observations in the sample.
`conf`	the lower and upper extremes of the 'notch' (`if(do.conf)`). See the details.
`out`	the values of any data points which lie beyond the extremes of the whiskers (`if(do.out)`).

Note that `$stats` and `$conf` are sorted in *in*creasing order, unlike S, and that `$n` and `$out` include any `+- Inf` values.

References

Tukey, J. W. (1977) *Exploratory Data Analysis.* Section 2C.

McGill, R., Tukey, J. W. and Larsen, W. A. (1978) Variations of box plots. *The American Statistician* **32**, 12–16.

Velleman, P. F. and Hoaglin, D. C. (1981) *Applications, Basics and Computing of Exploratory Data Analysis.* Duxbury Press.

Emerson, J. D and Strenio, J. (1983). Boxplots and batch comparison. Chapter 3 of *Understanding Robust and Exploratory Data Analysis*, eds. D. C. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller and J. W. Tukey. Wiley.

Chambers, J. M., Cleveland, W. S., Kleiner, B. and Tukey, P. A. (1983) *Graphical Methods for Data Analysis.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`fivenum`, `boxplot`, `bxp`.

Examples

```
require(stats)
x <- c(1:100, 1000)
(b1 <- boxplot.stats(x))
(b2 <- boxplot.stats(x, do.conf = FALSE, do.out = FALSE))
stopifnot(b1 $ stats == b2 $ stats) # do.out = FALSE is still robust
boxplot.stats(x, coef = 3, do.conf = FALSE)
## no outlier treatment:
boxplot.stats(x, coef = 0)
```

```
boxplot.stats(c(x, NA)) # slight change : n is 101
(r <- boxplot.stats(c(x, -1:1/0)))
stopifnot(r$out == c(1000, -Inf, Inf))
```

---

cairo *Cairographics-based SVG, PDF and PostScript Graphics Devices*

Description

Graphics devices for SVG, PDF and PostScript graphics files using the cairo graphics API.

Usage

```
svg(filename = if(onefile) "Rplots.svg" else "Rplot%03d.svg",
    width = 7, height = 7, pointsize = 12,
    onefile = FALSE, family = "sans", bg = "white",
    antialias = c("default", "none", "gray", "subpixel"))

cairo_pdf(filename = if(onefile) "Rplots.pdf" else "Rplot%03d.pdf",
          width = 7, height = 7, pointsize = 12,
          onefile = FALSE, family = "sans", bg = "white",
          antialias = c("default", "none", "gray", "subpixel"))

cairo_ps(filename = if(onefile) "Rplots.ps" else "Rplot%03d.ps",
         width = 7, height = 7, pointsize = 12,
         onefile = FALSE, family = "sans", bg = "white",
         antialias = c("default", "none", "gray", "subpixel"))
```

Arguments

filename	the name of the output file. The page number is substituted if a C integer format is included in the character string, as in the default. (The result must be less than PATH_MAX characters long, and may be truncated if not. See postscript for further details.) Tilde expansion is performed where supported by the platform.
width	the width of the device in inches.
height	the height of the device in inches.
pointsize	the default pointsize of plotted text (in big points).
onefile	should all plots appear in one file or in separate files?
family	one of the device-independent font families, "sans", "serif" and "mono", or a character string specify a font family to be searched for in a system-dependent way. See, the 'Cairo fonts' section in the help for X11.
bg	the initial background colour: can be overridden by setting par("bg").
antialias	string, the type of anti-aliasing (if any) to be used; defaults to "default".

Details

SVG (Scalar Vector Graphics) is a W3C standard for vector graphics. See http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/. The output from svg is SVG version 1.1 for onefile = FALSE (the default), otherwise SVG 1.2. (Very few SVG viewers are capable of displaying multi-page SVG files.)

Note that unlike postscript and pdf, cairo_pdf and cairo_ps sometimes record *bitmaps* and not vector graphics: a resolution of 72dpi is used. On the other hand, they can (on suitable platforms) include a much wider range of UTF-8 glyphs, and embed the fonts used.

The output produced by cairo_ps(onefile = FALSE) will be encapsulated postscript on a platform with cairo >= 1.6.

can be compiled without support for any of these devices: this will be reported if you attempt to use them on a system where they are not supported. They all require cairo version 1.2 (from 2006) or later.

If you plot more than one page on one of these devices and do not include something like %d for the sequence number in file (or set onefile = TRUE) the file will contain the last page plotted.

There is full support of transparency, but using this is one of the things liable to trigger bitmap output (and will always do so for cairo_ps).

Value

A plot device is opened: nothing is returned to the interpreter.

Anti-aliasing

Anti-aliasing is applied to both graphics and fonts. It is generally preferable for lines and text, but can lead to undesirable effects for fills, e.g. for image plots, and so is never used for fills.

antialias = "default" is in principle platform-dependent, but seems most often equivalent to antialias = "gray".

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is in pixels (svg) or inches.
- Font sizes are in big points.
- The default font family is Helvetica.
- Line widths are multiples of 1/96 inch.
- Circle radii have a minimum of 1/72 inch.
- Colours are interpreted by the viewing application.

Note

Cairo 1.2.4 (seen in Centos/RHEL 5) is known to give incorrect SVG output.

In principle these devices are independent of X11 (as is seen by their presence on Windows). But on a Unix-alike the cairo libraries may be distributed as part of the X11 system and hence that (on OS X, XQuartz) may need to be installed.

See Also

Devices, dev.print, pdf, postscript

capabilities to see if cairo is supported.

---

check.options *Set Options with Consistency Checks*

Description

Utility function for setting options with some consistency checks. The attributes of the new settings in new are checked for consistency with the *model* (often default) list in name.opt.

Usage

```
check.options(new, name.opt, reset = FALSE, assign.opt = FALSE,
              envir = .GlobalEnv,
              check.attributes = c("mode", "length"),
              override.check = FALSE)
```

Arguments

new	a *named* list
name.opt	character with the name of object containing the default list.
reset	logical; if TRUE, reset the options from name.opt. If there is more than one object with name name.opt, remove the first one in the search() path.
assign.opt	logical; if TRUE, assign the ...
envir	the environment used for get and assign.
check.attributes	character containing the attributes which check.options should check.
override.check	logical vector of length length(new) (or 1 which entails recycling). For those new[i] where override.check[i] == TRUE, the checks are overridden and the changes made anyway.

Value

A list of components with the same names as the one called name.opt. The values of the components are changed from the new list, as long as these pass the checks (when these are not overridden according to override.check).

Note

Option "names" is exempt from all the checks or warnings, as in the application it can be NULL or a variable-length character vector.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

ps.options and pdf.options, which use check.options.

Examples

```
(L1 <- list(a = 1:3, b = pi, ch = "CH"))
check.options(list(a = 0:2), name.opt = "L1")
check.options(NULL, reset = TRUE, name.opt = "L1")
```

---

chull *Compute Convex Hull of a Set of Points*

Description

Computes the subset of points which lie on the convex hull of the set of points specified.

Usage

```
chull(x, y = NULL)
```

Arguments

x, y	coordinate vectors of points. This can be specified as two vectors x and y, a 2-column matrix x, a list x with two components, etc, see xy.coords.

Details

xy.coords is used to interpret the specification of the points. Infinite, missing and NaN values are not allowed.

The algorithm is that given by Eddy (1977).

Value

An integer vector giving the indices of the unique points lying on the convex hull, in clockwise order. (The first will be returned for duplicate points.)

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Eddy, W. F. (1977) A new convex hull algorithm for planar sets. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **3**, 398–403.

Eddy, W. F. (1977) Algorithm 523. CONVEX, A new convex hull algorithm for planar sets[Z]. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **3**, 411–412.

See Also

xy.coords, polygon

Examples

```
X <- matrix(stats::rnorm(2000), ncol = 2)
chull(X)
## Not run:
  # Example usage from graphics package
  plot(X, cex = 0.5)
  hpts <- chull(X)
  hpts <- c(hpts, hpts[1])
  lines(X[hpts, ])

## End(Not run)
```

---

cm *Unit Transformation*

Description

Translates from inches to cm (centimeters).

Usage

```
cm(x)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector

Examples

```
cm(1)  # = 2.54

## Translate *from* cm *to* inches:

10 / cm(1) # -> 10cm  are 3.937 inches
```

---

col2rgb *Color to RGB Conversion*

Description

color to RGB (red/green/blue) conversion.

Usage

```
col2rgb(col, alpha = FALSE)
```

Arguments

col	vector of any of the three kinds of color specifications, i.e., either a color name (as listed by `colors()`), a hexadecimal string of the form `"#rrggbb"` or `"#rrggbbaa"` (see `rgb`), or a positive integer `i` meaning `palette()[i]`.
alpha	logical value indicating whether the alpha channel (opacity) values should be returned.

Details

NA (as integer or character) and "NA" mean transparent.

Values of col not of one of these types are coerced: real vectors are coerced to integer and other types to character. (Prior to 3.0.2 factors were coerced to their integer codes: in all other cases the class is still ignored when doing the coercion.)

Zero and negative values of col are an error.

Value

An integer matrix with three or four (for alpha = TRUE) rows and number of columns the length of col. If col has names these are used as the column names of the return value.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler and the R core team.

See Also

rgb, colors, palette, etc.

The newer, more flexible interface, convertColor().

Examples

```
col2rgb("peachpuff")
col2rgb(c(blu = "royalblue", reddish = "tomato"))  # note: colnames

col2rgb(1:8)  # the ones from the palette() (if the default)

col2rgb(paste0("gold", 1:4))

col2rgb("#08a0ff")
## all three kinds of color specifications:
col2rgb(c(red = "red", hex = "#abcdef"))
col2rgb(c(palette = 1:3))

##-- NON-INTRODUCTORY examples --

grC <- col2rgb(paste0("gray", 0:100))
table(print(diff(grC["red",])))  # 2 or 3: almost equidistant
## The named grays are in between {"slate gray" is not gray, strictly}
col2rgb(c(g66 = "gray66", darkg =  "dark gray", g67 = "gray67",
          g74 = "gray74", gray  =       "gray", g75 = "gray75",
          g82 = "gray82", light = "light gray", g83 = "gray83"))

crgb <- col2rgb(cc <- colors())
colnames(crgb) <- cc
t(crgb)  # The whole table

ccodes <- c(256^(2:0) %*% crgb)  # = internal codes
## How many names are aliases of each other:
table(tcc <- table(ccodes))
length(uc <- unique(sort(ccodes))) # 502
## All the multiply named colors:
mult <- uc[tcc >= 2]
```

```
cl <- lapply(mult, function(m) cc[ccodes == m])
names(cl) <- apply(col2rgb(sapply(cl, function(x)x[1])),
                   2, function(n)paste(n, collapse = ","))
utils::str(cl)
## Not run:
 if(require(xgobi)) { ## Look at the color cube dynamically :
   tc <- t(crgb[, !duplicated(ccodes)])
   table(is.gray <- tc[,1] == tc[,2] & tc[,2] == tc[,3])  # (397, 105)
   xgobi(tc, color = c("gold", "gray")[1 + is.gray])
 }

## End(Not run)
```

`colorRamp` *Color interpolation*

Description

These functions return functions that interpolate a set of given colors to create new color palettes (like `topo.colors`) and color ramps, functions that map the interval $[0, 1]$ to colors (like `grey`).

Usage

```
colorRamp(colors, bias = 1, space = c("rgb", "Lab"),
          interpolate = c("linear", "spline"), alpha = FALSE)
colorRampPalette(colors, ...)
```

Arguments

`colors`	colors to interpolate; must be a valid argument to `col2rgb()`.
`bias`	a positive number. Higher values give more widely spaced colors at the high end.
`space`	a character string; interpolation in RGB or CIE Lab color spaces.
`interpolate`	use spline or linear interpolation.
`alpha`	logical: should alpha channel (opacity) values should be returned? It is an error to give a true value if `space` is specified.
`...`	arguments to pass to `colorRamp`.

Details

The CIE Lab color space is approximately perceptually uniform, and so gives smoother and more uniform color ramps. On the other hand, palettes that vary from one hue to another via white may have a more symmetrical appearance in RGB space.

The conversion formulas in this function do not appear to be completely accurate and the color ramp may not reach the extreme values in Lab space. Future changes in the color model may change the colors produced with `space = "Lab"`.

Argument `alpha` has introduced in 3.1.0.

Value

colorRamp returns a function with argument a vector of values between 0 and 1 that are mapped to a numeric matrix of RGB color values with one row per color and 3 or 4 columns.

colorRampPalette returns a function that takes an integer argument (the required number of colors) and returns a character vector of colors (see rgb) interpolating the given sequence (similar to heat.colors or terrain.colors.

See Also

Good starting points for interpolation are the "sequential" and "diverging" ColorBrewer palettes in the **RColorBrewer** package.

splinefun or approxfun are used for interpolation.

Examples

```
## Both return a *function* :
colorRamp(c("red", "green"))( (0:4)/4 ) ## (x) , x in [0,1]
colorRampPalette(c("blue", "red"))( 4 ) ## (n)
## a ramp in opacity of blue values
colorRampPalette(c(rgb(0,0,1,1), rgb(0,0,1,0)), alpha = TRUE)(8)

require(graphics)

## Here space="rgb" gives palettes that vary only in saturation,
## as intended.
## With space="Lab" the steps are more uniform, but the hues
## are slightly purple.
filled.contour(volcano,
               color.palette =
                   colorRampPalette(c("red", "white", "blue")),
               asp = 1)
filled.contour(volcano,
               color.palette =
                   colorRampPalette(c("red", "white", "blue"),
                                    space = "Lab"),
               asp = 1)

## Interpolating a sequential ColorBrewer palette
YlOrBr <- c("#FFFFD4", "#FED98E", "#FE9929", "#D95F0E", "#993404")
filled.contour(volcano,
               color.palette = colorRampPalette(YlOrBr, space = "Lab"),
               asp = 1)
filled.contour(volcano,
               color.palette = colorRampPalette(YlOrBr, space = "Lab",
                                                bias = 0.5),
               asp = 1)

## jet.colors is "as in Matlab"
## (and hurting the eyes by over-saturation)
jet.colors <-
  colorRampPalette(c("#00007F", "blue", "#007FFF", "cyan",
                     "#7FFF7F", "yellow", "#FF7F00", "red", "#7F0000"))
filled.contour(volcano, color = jet.colors, asp = 1)

## space="Lab" helps when colors dont form a natural sequence
```

```
m <- outer(1:20,1:20,function(x,y) sin(sqrt(x*y)/3))
rgb.palette <- colorRampPalette(c("red", "orange", "blue"),
                                space = "rgb")
Lab.palette <- colorRampPalette(c("red", "orange", "blue"),
                                space = "Lab")
filled.contour(m, col = rgb.palette(20))
filled.contour(m, col = Lab.palette(20))
```

`colors` *Color Names*

Description

Returns the built-in color names which knows about.

Usage

```
colors (distinct = FALSE)
colours(distinct = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`distinct`	logical indicating if the colors returned should all be distinct; e.g., `"snow"` and `"snow1"` are effectively the same point in the $(0 : 255)^3$ RGB space.

Details

These color names can be used with a `col=` specification in graphics functions.

An even wider variety of colors can be created with primitives `rgb`, `hsv` and `hcl`, or the derived `rainbow`, `heat.colors`, etc.

Value

A character vector containing all the built-in color names.

See Also

`palette` for setting the 'palette' of colors for `par(col=`*num*`)`; `rgb`, `hsv`, `hcl`, `gray`; `rainbow` for a nice example; and `heat.colors`, `topo.colors` for images.

`col2rgb` for translating to RGB numbers and extended examples.

Examples

```
cl <- colors()
length(cl); cl[1:20]

length(cl. <- colors(TRUE))
## only 502 of the 657 named ones

## ----------- Show all named colors and more:
demo("colors")
## -----------
```

`contourLines` *Calculate Contour Lines*

Description

Calculate contour lines for a given set of data.

Usage

```
contourLines(x = seq(0, 1, length.out = nrow(z)),
             y = seq(0, 1, length.out = ncol(z)),
             z, nlevels = 10,
             levels = pretty(range(z, na.rm = TRUE), nlevels))
```

Arguments

`x, y`	locations of grid lines at which the values in `z` are measured. These must be in ascending order. By default, equally spaced values from 0 to 1 are used. If `x` is a `list`, its components `x$x` and `x$y` are used for `x` and `y`, respectively. If the list has component `z` this is used for `z`.
`z`	a matrix containing the values to be plotted (`NA`s are allowed). Note that `x` can be used instead of `z` for convenience.
`nlevels`	number of contour levels desired **iff** `levels` is not supplied.
`levels`	numeric vector of levels at which to draw contour lines.

Details

`contourLines` draws nothing, but returns a set of contour lines.

There is currently no documentation about the algorithm. The source code is in '*R_HOME*`/src/main/plot3d.c`'.

Value

A list of contours. Each contour is a list with elements:

`level`	The contour level.
`x`	The x-coordinates of the contour.
`y`	The y-coordinates of the contour.

See Also

`options("max.contour.segments")` for the maximal complexity of a single contour line.

`contour`.

Examples

```
x <- 10*1:nrow(volcano)
y <- 10*1:ncol(volcano)
contourLines(x, y, volcano)
```

convertColor *Convert between Colour Spaces*

Description

Convert colours between their representations in standard colour spaces.

Usage

```
convertColor(color, from, to, from.ref.white, to.ref.white,
             scale.in = 1, scale.out = 1, clip = TRUE)
```

Arguments

color	A matrix whose rows specify colors.
from, to	Input and output color spaces. See 'Details' below.
from.ref.white, to.ref.white	Reference whites or NULL if these are built in to the definition, as for RGB spaces. D65 is the default, see 'Details' for others.
scale.in, scale.out	Input is divided by scale.in, output is multiplied by scale.out. Use NULL to suppress scaling when input or output is not numeric.
clip	If TRUE, truncate RGB output to [0,1], FALSE return out-of-range RGB, NA set out of range colors to NaN.

Details

Color spaces are specified by objects of class colorConverter, created by colorConverter or make.rgb. Built-in color spaces may be referenced by strings: "XYZ", "sRGB", "Apple RGB", "CIE RGB", "Lab", "Luv". The converters for these colour spaces are in the object colorspaces.

The "sRGB" color space is that used by standard PC monitors. "Apple RGB" is used by Apple monitors. "Lab" and "Luv" are approximately perceptually uniform spaces standardized by the Commission Internationale d'Eclairage. XYZ is a 1931 CIE standard capable of representing all visible colors (and then some), but not in a perceptually uniform way.

The Lab and Luv spaces describe colors of objects, and so require the specification of a reference 'white light' color. Illuminant D65 is a standard indirect daylight, Illuminant D50 is close to direct sunlight, and Illuminant A is the light from a standard incandescent bulb. Other standard CIE illuminants supported are B, C, E and D55. RGB colour spaces are defined relative to a particular reference white, and can be only approximately translated to other reference whites. The Bradford chromatic adaptation algorithm is used for this.

The RGB color spaces are specific to a particular class of display. An RGB space cannot represent all colors, and the clip option controls what is done to out-of-range colors.

For the named color spaces color must be a matrix of values in the from color space: in particular opaque colors.

Value

A 3-column matrix whose rows specify the colors.

References

For all the conversion equations http://www.brucelindbloom.com/.

For the white points http://www.efg2.com/Lab/Graphics/Colors/Chromaticity.htm.

See Also

col2rgb and colors for ways to specify colors in graphics.

make.rgb for specifying other colour spaces.

Examples

```
## The displayable colors from four planes of Lab space
ab <- expand.grid(a = (-10:15)*10,
                  b = (-15:10)*10)
require(graphics); require(stats) # for na.omit
par(mfrow = c(2, 2), mar = .1+c(3, 3, 3, .5), mgp = c(2,  .8,  0))

Lab <- cbind(L = 20, ab)
srgb <- convertColor(Lab, from = "Lab", to = "sRGB", clip = NA)
clipped <- attr(na.omit(srgb), "na.action")
srgb[clipped, ] <- 0
cols <- rgb(srgb[, 1], srgb[, 2], srgb[, 3])
image((-10:15)*10, (-15:10)*10, matrix(1:(26*26), ncol = 26), col = cols,
  xlab = "a", ylab = "b", main = "Lab: L=20")

Lab <- cbind(L = 40, ab)
srgb <- convertColor(Lab, from = "Lab", to = "sRGB", clip = NA)
clipped <- attr(na.omit(srgb), "na.action")
srgb[clipped, ] <- 0
cols <- rgb(srgb[, 1], srgb[, 2], srgb[, 3])
image((-10:15)*10, (-15:10)*10, matrix(1:(26*26), ncol = 26), col = cols,
  xlab = "a", ylab = "b", main = "Lab: L=40")

Lab <- cbind(L = 60, ab)
srgb <- convertColor(Lab, from = "Lab", to = "sRGB", clip = NA)
clipped <- attr(na.omit(srgb), "na.action")
srgb[clipped, ] <- 0
cols <- rgb(srgb[, 1], srgb[, 2], srgb[, 3])
image((-10:15)*10, (-15:10)*10, matrix(1:(26*26), ncol = 26), col = cols,
  xlab = "a", ylab = "b", main = "Lab: L=60")

Lab <- cbind(L = 80, ab)
srgb <- convertColor(Lab, from = "Lab", to = "sRGB", clip = NA)
clipped <- attr(na.omit(srgb), "na.action")
srgb[clipped, ] <- 0
cols <- rgb(srgb[, 1], srgb[, 2], srgb[, 3])
image((-10:15)*10, (-15:10)*10, matrix(1:(26*26), ncol = 26), col = cols,
  xlab = "a", ylab = "b", main = "Lab: L=80")

cols <- t(col2rgb(palette())); rownames(cols) <- palette(); cols
zapsmall(lab <- convertColor(cols, from = "sRGB", to = "Lab", scale.in = 255))
stopifnot(all.equal(cols, # converting back.. getting the original:
   round(convertColor(lab, from = "Lab", to = "sRGB", scale.out = 255)),
                    check.attributes = FALSE))
```

densCols *Colors for Smooth Density Plots*

Description

densCols produces a vector containing colors which encode the local densities at each point in a scatterplot.

Usage

```
densCols(x, y = NULL, nbin = 128, bandwidth,
         colramp = colorRampPalette(blues9[-(1:3)]))
blues9
```

Arguments

x, y	the x and y arguments provide the x and y coordinates of the points. Any reasonable way of defining the coordinates is acceptable. See the function xy.coords for details. If supplied separately, they must be of the same length.
nbin	numeric vector of length one (for both directions) or two (for x and y separately) specifying the number of equally spaced grid points for the density estimation; directly used as gridsize in bkde2D().
bandwidth	numeric vector (length 1 or 2) of smoothing bandwidth(s). If missing, a more or less useful default is used. bandwidth is subsequently passed to function bkde2D.
colramp	function accepting an integer n as an argument and returning n colors.

Details

densCols computes and returns the set of colors that will be used in plotting, calling bkde2D(*, bandwidth, gridsize = nbin, ..) from package **KernSmooth**.

blues9 is a set of 9 color shades of blue used as the default in plotting.

Value

densCols returns a vector of length nrow(x) that contains colors to be used in a subsequent scatterplot. Each color represents the local density around the corresponding point.

Author(s)

Florian Hahne at FHCRC, originally

See Also

bkde2D from package **KernSmooth**; further, smoothScatter() (package **graphics**) which builds on the same computations as densCols.

Examples

```
x1  <- matrix(rnorm(1e3), ncol = 2)
x2  <- matrix(rnorm(1e3, mean = 3, sd = 1.5), ncol = 2)
x   <- rbind(x1, x2)

dcols <- densCols(x)
graphics::plot(x, col = dcols, pch = 20, main = "n = 1000")
```

---

dev *Control Multiple Devices*

Description

These functions provide control over multiple graphics devices.

Usage

```
dev.cur()
dev.list()
dev.next(which = dev.cur())
dev.prev(which = dev.cur())
dev.off(which = dev.cur())
dev.set(which = dev.next())
dev.new(..., noRStudioGD = FALSE)
graphics.off()
```

Arguments

`which`	An integer specifying a device number.
`...`	arguments to be passed to the device selected.
`noRStudioGD`	Do not use the RStudio graphics device even if specified as the default device: it does not accept arguments such as `width` and `height`.

Details

Only one device is the 'active' device: this is the device in which all graphics operations occur. There is a `"null device"` which is always open but is really a placeholder: any attempt to use it will open a new device specified by `getOption("device")`).

Devices are associated with a name (e.g., `"X11"` or `"postscript"`) and a number in the range 1 to 63; the `"null device"` is always device 1. Once a device has been opened the null device is not considered as a possible active device. There is a list of open devices, and this is considered as a circular list not including the null device. `dev.next` and `dev.prev` select the next open device in the appropriate direction, unless no device is open.

`dev.off` shuts down the specified (by default the current) device. If the current device is shut down and any other devices are open, the next open device is made current. It is an error to attempt to shut down device 1. `graphics.off()` shuts down all open graphics devices. Normal termination of a session runs the internal equivalent of `graphics.off()`.

`dev.set` makes the specified device the active device. If there is no device with that number, it is equivalent to `dev.next`. If `which = 1` it opens a new device and selects that.

dev.new opens a new device. Normally will open a new device automatically when needed, but this enables you to open further devices in a platform-independent way. (For which device is used see getOption("device").) Note that care is needed with file-based devices such as pdf and postscript and in that case file names such as 'Rplots.pdf', 'Rplots1.pdf', ..., 'Rplots999.pdf' are tried in turn. Only named arguments are passed to the device, and then only if they match the argument list of the device. Even so, care is needed with the interpretation of e.g. width, and for the standard bitmap devices units = "in", res = 72 is forced if neither is supplied but both width and height are.

Value

dev.cur returns a length-one named integer vector giving the number and name of the active device, or 1, the null device, if none is active.

dev.list returns the numbers of all open devices, except device 1, the null device. This is a numeric vector with a names attribute giving the device names, or NULL is there is no open device.

dev.next and dev.prev return the number and name of the next / previous device in the list of devices. This will be the null device if and only if there are no open devices.

dev.off returns the number and name of the new active device (after the specified device has been shut down).

dev.set returns the number and name of the new active device.

dev.new returns the return value of the device opened, usually invisible NULL.

See Also

Devices, such as postscript, etc.

layout and its links for setting up plotting regions on the current device.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## Unix-specific example
x11()
plot(1:10)
x11()
plot(rnorm(10))
dev.set(dev.prev())
abline(0, 1) # through the 1:10 points
dev.set(dev.next())
abline(h = 0, col = "gray") # for the residual plot
dev.set(dev.prev())
dev.off(); dev.off() #- close the two X devices

## End(Not run)
```

---

dev.capabilities *Query Capabilities of the Current Graphics Device*

Description

Query the capabilities of the current graphics device.

Usage

```
dev.capabilities(what = NULL)
```

Arguments

what	a character vector partially matching the names of the components listed in section 'Value', or NULL which lists all available capabilities.

Details

The capabilities have to be specified by the author of the graphics device, unless they can be deduced from missing hooks. Thus they will often by returned as NA, and may reflect the maximal capabilities of the underlying device where several output formats are supported by one device.

Most recent devices support semi-transparent colours provided the graphics format does (which PostScript does not). On the other hand, relatively few graphics formats support (fully or semi-) transparent backgrounds: generally the latter is found only in PDF and PNG plots.

Value

A named list with some or all of the following components, any of which may take value NA:

semiTransparency	logical: Does the device support semi-transparent colours?
transparentBackground	character: Does the device support (semi)-transparent backgrounds? Possible values are "no", "fully" (only full transparency) and "semi" (semi-transparent background colours are supported).
rasterImage	character: To what extent does the device support raster images as used by rasterImage and grid.raster? Possible values "no", "yes" and "non-missing" (support only for arrays without any missing values).
capture	logical: Does the current device support raster capture as used by grid.cap?
locator	logical: Does the current device support locator and identify?
events	character: Which events can be generated on this device? Currently this will be a subset of c("MouseDown", "MouseMove", "MouseUp", "Keybd"), but other events may be supported in the future.

See Also

See getGraphicsEvent for details on interactive events.

Examples

```
dev.capabilities()
```

dev.capture *Capture device output as a raster image*

Description

dev.capture captures the current contents of a graphics device as a raster (bitmap) image.

Usage

```
dev.capture(native = FALSE)
```

Arguments

native	Logical. If FALSE the result is a matrix of R color names, if TRUE the output is returned as a nativeRaster object which is more efficient for plotting, but not portable.

Details

Not all devices support capture of the output as raster bitmaps. Typically, only image-based devices do and even not all of them.

Value

NULL if the device does not support capture, otherwise a matrix of color names (for native = FALSE) or a nativeRaster object (for native = TRUE).

dev.flush *Hold or Flush Output on an On-Screen Graphics Device.*

Description

This gives a way to hold/flush output on certain on-screen devices, and is ignored by other devices.

Usage

```
dev.hold(level = 1L)
dev.flush(level = 1L)
```

Arguments

level	Integer >= 0. The amount by which to change the hold level. Negative values will be silently replaced by zero.

Details

Devices which implement this maintain a stack of hold levels: calling `dev.hold` increases the level and `dev.flush` decreases it. Calling `dev.hold` when the hold level is zero increases the hold level and inhibits graphics display. When calling `dev.flush` clears all pending holds the screen display is refreshed and normal operation is resumed.

This is implemented for the cairo-based `X11` types with buffering. When the hold level is positive the 'watch' cursor is set on the device's window.

It is available on the `quartz` device on OS X.

This is implemented for the `windows` device with buffering selected (the default). When the hold level is positive the 'busy' cursor is set on the device's window.

Value

The current level after the change, invisibly. This is `0` on devices where hold levels are not supported.

`dev.interactive` *Is the Current Graphics Device Interactive?*

Description

Test if the current graphics device (or that which would be opened) is interactive.

Usage

```
dev.interactive(orNone = FALSE)

deviceIsInteractive(name = NULL)
```

Arguments

`orNone`	logical; if `TRUE`, the function also returns `TRUE` when `.Device == "null device"` and `getOption("device")` is among the known interactive devices.
`name`	one or more device names as a character vector, or `NULL` to give the existing list.

Details

The `X11` (Unix), `windows` (Windows) and `quartz` (OS X, on-screen types only) are regarded as interactive, together with `JavaGD` (from the package of the same name) and `CairoWin` and `CairoX11` (from package **Cairo**). Packages can add their devices to the list by calling `deviceIsInteractive`.

Value

`dev.interactive()` returns a logical, `TRUE` if and only if an interactive (screen) device is in use.

`deviceIsInteractive` returns the updated list of known interactive devices, invisibly unless `name = NULL`.

See Also

Devices for the available devices on your platform.

Examples

```
dev.interactive()
print(deviceIsInteractive(NULL))
```

`dev.size` *Find Size of Device Surface*

Description

Find the dimensions of the device surface of the current device.

Usage

```
dev.size(units = c("in", "cm", "px"))
```

Arguments

`units`	the units in which to return the value – inches, cm, or pixels (device units).

Value

A two-element numeric vector giving width and height of the current device; a new device is opened if there is none, similarly to `dev.new()`.

See Also

The size information in inches can be obtained by `par("din")`, but this provides a way to access it independent of the graphics sub-system in use. Note that `par("din")` is only updated when a new plot is started, whereas `dev.size` tracks the size as an on-screen device is resized.

Examples

```
dev.size("cm")
```

dev2 *Copy Graphics Between Multiple Devices*

Description

dev.copy copies the graphics contents of the current device to the device specified by which or to a new device which has been created by the function specified by device (it is an error to specify both which and device). (If recording is off on the current device, there are no contents to copy: this will result in no plot or an empty plot.) The device copied to becomes the current device.

dev.print copies the graphics contents of the current device to a new device which has been created by the function specified by device and then shuts the new device.

dev.copy2eps is similar to dev.print but produces an EPSF output file in portrait orientation (horizontal = FALSE). dev.copy2pdf is the analogue for PDF output.

dev.control allows the user to control the recording of graphics operations in a device. If displaylist is "inhibit" ("enable") then recording is turned off (on). It is only safe to change this at the beginning of a plot (just before or just after a new page). Initially recording is on for screen devices, and off for print devices.

Usage

```
dev.copy(device, ..., which = dev.next())
dev.print(device = postscript, ...)
dev.copy2eps(...)
dev.copy2pdf(..., out.type = "pdf")
dev.control(displaylist = c("inhibit", "enable"))
```

Arguments

device	A device function (e.g., x11, postscript, ...)
...	Arguments to the device function above: for dev.copy2eps arguments to postscript and for dev.copy2pdf, arguments to pdf. For dev.print, this includes which and by default any postscript arguments.
which	A device number specifying the device to copy to.
out.type	The name of the output device: can be "pdf", or "quartz" (some OS X builds) or "cairo" (Windows and some Unix-alikes, see cairo_pdf).
displaylist	A character string: the only valid values are "inhibit" and "enable".

Details

Note that these functions copy the *device region* and not a plot: the background colour of the device surface is part of what is copied. Most screen devices default to a transparent background, which is probably not what is needed when copying to a device such as png.

For dev.copy2eps and dev.copy2pdf, width and height are taken from the current device unless otherwise specified. If just one of width and height is specified, the other is adjusted to preserve the aspect ratio of the device being copied. The default file name is Rplot.eps or Rplot.pdf, and can be overridden by specifying a file argument.

Copying to devices such as postscript and pdf which need font families pre-specified needs extra care – is unaware of which families were used in a plot and so they will need to manually specified

by the fonts argument passed as part of .... Similarly, if the device to be copied from was opened with a family argument, a suitable family argument will need to be included in ....

The default for dev.print is to produce and print a postscript copy. This will not work unless options("printcmd") is set suitably and you have a PostScript printing system: see postscript for how to set this up. Windows users may prefer to use dev.print(win.print).

dev.print is most useful for producing a postscript print (its default) when the following applies. Unless file is specified, the plot will be printed. Unless width, height and pointsize are specified the plot dimensions will be taken from the current device, shrunk if necessary to fit on the paper. (pointsize is rescaled if the plot is shrunk.) If horizontal is not specified and the plot can be printed at full size by switching its value this is done instead of shrinking the plot region.

If dev.print is used with a specified device (even postscript) it sets the width and height in the same way as dev.copy2eps. This will not be appropriate unless the device specifies dimensions in inches, in particular not for png, jpeg, tiff and bmp unless units = "inches" is specified.

Value

dev.copy returns the name and number of the device which has been copied to.

dev.print, dev.copy2eps and dev.copy2pdf return the name and number of the device which has been copied from.

Note

Most devices (including all screen devices) have a display list which records all of the graphics operations that occur in the device. dev.copy copies graphics contents by copying the display list from one device to another device. Also, automatic redrawing of graphics contents following the resizing of a device depends on the contents of the display list.

After the command dev.control("inhibit"), graphics operations are not recorded in the display list so that dev.copy and dev.print will not copy anything and the contents of a device will not be redrawn automatically if the device is resized.

The recording of graphics operations is relatively expensive in terms of memory so the command dev.control("inhibit") can be useful if memory usage is an issue.

See Also

dev.cur and other dev.xxx functions.

Examples

```
## Not run:
x11() # on a Unix-alike
plot(rnorm(10), main = "Plot 1")
dev.copy(device = x11)
mtext("Copy 1", 3)
dev.print(width = 6, height = 6, horizontal = FALSE) # prints it
dev.off(dev.prev())
dev.off()

## End(Not run)
```

dev2bitmap *Graphics Device for Bitmap Files via Ghostscript*

Description

bitmap generates a graphics file. dev2bitmap copies the current graphics device to a file in a graphics format.

Usage

```
bitmap(file, type = "png16m", height = 7, width = 7, res = 72,
       units = "in", pointsize, taa = NA, gaa = NA, ...)

dev2bitmap(file, type = "png16m", height = 7, width = 7, res = 72,
           units = "in", pointsize, ...,
           method = c("postscript", "pdf"), taa = NA, gaa = NA)
```

Arguments

file	The output file name, with an appropriate extension.
type	The type of bitmap.
width, height	Dimensions of the display region.
res	Resolution, in dots per inch.
units	The units in which height and width are given. Can be in (inches), px (pixels), cm or mm.
pointsize	The pointsize to be used for text: defaults to something reasonable given the width and height
...	Other parameters passed to postscript or pdf.
method	Should the plot be done by postscript or pdf?
taa, gaa	Number of bits of antialiasing for text and for graphics respectively. Usually 4 (for best effect) or 2. Not supported on all types.

Details

dev2bitmap works by copying the current device to a postscript or pdf device, and post-processing the output file using ghostscript. bitmap works in the same way using a postscript device and post-processing the output as 'printing'.

You will need ghostscript: the full path to the executable can be set by the environment variable R_GSCMD. If this is unset, a GhostScript executable will be looked for by name on your path: on a Unix alike "gs" is used, and on Windows the setting of the environment variable GSC is used, otherwise commands "gswi64c.exe" then "gswin32c.exe" are tried.

The types available will depend on the version of ghostscript, but are likely to include "jpeg", "jpegcmyk", "jpeggray", "tiffcrle", "tiffg3", "tiffg32d", "tiffg4", "tiffgray", "tifflzw", "tiffpack", "tiff12nc", "tiff24nc", "tiff32nc" "png16", "png16m", "png256", "png48", "pngmono", "pnggray", "pngalpha", "bmp16", "bmp16m" "bmp256", "bmp32b", "bmpgray", "bmpmono".

The default type, "png16m", supports 24-bit colour and anti-aliasing. Type "png256" uses a palette of 256 colours and could give a more compact representation. Monochrome graphs can

use "pngmono", or "pnggray" if anti-aliasing is desired. Plots with a transparent background and varying degrees of transparency should use "pngalpha".

Note that for a colour TIFF image you probably want "tiff24nc", which is 8-bit per channel RGB (the most common TIFF format). None of the listed TIFF types support transparency. "tiff32nc" uses 8-bit per channel CMYK, which printers might require.

For formats which contain a single image, a file specification like Rplots%03d.png can be used: this is interpreted by Ghostscript.

For dev2bitmap if just one of width and height is specified, the other is chosen to preserve the aspect ratio of the device being copied. The main reason to prefer method = "pdf" over the default would be to allow semi-transparent colours to be used.

For graphics parameters such as "cra" that need to work in pixels, the default resolution of 72dpi is always used.

Value

None.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual". These devices follow the underlying device, so when viewed at the stated res:

- The default device size is 7 inches square.
- Font sizes are in big points.
- The default font family is (for the standard Ghostscript setup) URW Nimbus Sans.
- Line widths are as a multiple of 1/96 inch, with no minimum.
- Circle of any radius are allowed.
- Colours are interpreted by the viewing/printing application.

Note

Although using type = "pdfwrite" will work for simple plots, it is not recommended. Either use pdf to produce PDF directly, or call ps2pdf -dAutoRotatePages=/None on the output of postscript: that command is optimized to do the conversion to PDF in ways that these functions are not.

See Also

savePlot, which for windows and X11(type = "cairo") provides a simple way to record a PNG record of the current plot.

postscript, pdf, png, jpeg, tiff and bmp.

To display an array of data, see image.

devAskNewPage *Prompt before New Page*

Description

This function can be used to control (for the current device) whether the user is prompted before starting a new page of output.

Usage

```
devAskNewPage(ask = NULL)
```

Arguments

ask	NULL or a logical value. If TRUE, the user will in future be prompted before a new page of output is started.

Details

If the current device is the null device, this will open a graphics device.

The default argument just returns the current setting and does not change it.

The default value when a device is opened is taken from the setting of `options("device.ask.default")`.

The precise circumstances when the user will be asked to confirm a new page depend on the graphics subsystem. Obviously this needs to be an interactive session. In addition 'recording' needs to be in operation, so only when the display list is enabled (see `dev.control`) which it usually is only on a screen device.

Value

The current prompt setting *before* any new setting is applied. Invisibly if ask is logical.

See Also

`plot.new`, `grid.newpage`

Devices *List of Graphical Devices*

Description

The following graphics devices are currently available:

- `pdf` Write PDF graphics commands to a file
- `postscript` Writes PostScript graphics commands to a file
- `xfig` Device for XFIG graphics file format
- `bitmap` bitmap pseudo-device via `Ghostscript` (if available).
- `pictex` Writes TeX/PicTeX graphics commands to a file (of historical interest only)

The following devices will be functional if was compiled to use them (they exist but will return with a warning on other systems):

- X11 The graphics device for the X11 windowing system
- cairo_pdf, cairo_ps PDF and PostScript devices based on cairo graphics.
- svg SVG device based on cairo graphics.
- png PNG bitmap device
- jpeg JPEG bitmap device
- bmp BMP bitmap device
- tiff TIFF bitmap device
- quartz The graphics device for the OS X native Quartz 2d graphics system. (This is only functional on OS X where it can be used from the R.app GUI and from the command line: but it will display on the local screen even for a remote session.)

Details

If no device is open, using a high-level graphics function will cause a device to be opened. Which device is given by options("device") which is initially set as the most appropriate for each platform: a screen device for most interactive use and pdf (or the setting of R_DEFAULT_DEVICE) otherwise. The exception is interactive use under Unix if no screen device is known to be available, when pdf() is used.

It is possible for an package to provide further graphics devices and several packages on CRAN do so. These include other devices outputting SVG and PGF/TiKZ (TeX-based graphics, see http://pgf.sourceforge.net/).

See Also

The individual help files for further information on any of the devices listed here; X11.options, quartz.options, ps.options and pdf.options for how to customize devices.

dev.interactive, dev.cur, dev.print, graphics.off, image, dev2bitmap.

capabilities to see if X11, jpeg png, tiff, quartz and the cairo-based devices are available.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## open the default screen device on this platform if no device is
## open
if(dev.cur() == 1) dev.new()

## End(Not run)
```

---

embedFonts *Embed Fonts in PostScript and PDF*

Description

Runs Ghostscript to process a PDF or PostScript file and embed all fonts in the file.

Usage

```
embedFonts(file, format, outfile = file, fontpaths = character(),
           options = "")
```

Arguments

file	a character string giving the name of the original file.
format	the format for the new file (with fonts embedded) given as the name of a ghostscript output device. If not specified, it is guessed from the suffix of file.
outfile	the name of the new file (with fonts embedded).
fontpaths	a character vector giving directories that Ghostscript will search for fonts.
options	a character string containing further options to Ghostscript.

Details

This function is not necessary if you just use the standard default fonts for PostScript and PDF output.

If you use a special font, this function is useful for embedding that font in your PostScript or PDF document so that it can be shared with others without them having to install your special font (provided the font licence allows this).

If the special font is not installed for Ghostscript, you will need to tell Ghostscript where the font is, using something like `options="-sFONTPATH=path/to/font"`.

You will need `ghostscript`: the full path to the executable can be set by the environment variable `R_GSCMD`. If this is unset, a GhostScript executable will be looked for by name on your path: on a Unix alike `"gs"` is used, and on Windows the setting of the environment variable `GSC` is used, otherwise commands `"gswi64c.exe"` then `"gswin32c.exe"` are tried.

The `format` is by default `"ps2write"`, when the original file has a `.ps` or `.eps` suffix, or `"pdfwrite"` when the original file has a `.pdf` suffix. For versions of Ghostscript before 9.10, `format = "pswrite"` or `format = "epswrite"` can be used: as from 9.14 `format = "eps2write"` is also available. If an invalid device is given, the error message will list the available devices.

Note that Ghostscript may do font substitution, so the font embedded may differ from that specified in the original file.

Some other options which can be useful (see your Ghostscript documentation) are '`-dMaxSubsetPct=100`', '`-dSubsetFonts=true`' and '`-dEmbedAllFonts=true`'.

Value

The shell command used to invoke Ghostscript is returned invisibly. This may be useful for debugging purposes as you can run the command by hand in a shell to look for problems.

See Also

`postscriptFonts`, `Devices`.

Paul Murrell and Brian Ripley (2006) Non-standard fonts in PostScript and PDF graphics. *R News*, 6(2):41–47. http://cran.r-project.org/doc/Rnews/Rnews_2006-2.pdf.

extendrange *Extend a Numerical Range by a Small Percentage*

Description

Extends a numerical range by a small percentage, i.e., fraction, *on both sides*.

Usage

```
extendrange(x, r = range(x, na.rm = TRUE), f = 0.05)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector; not used if r is specified.
r	numeric vector of length 2; defaults to the range of x.
f	number specifying the fraction by which the range should be extended.

Value

A numeric vector of length 2, `r + c(-f,f) * diff(r)`.

See Also

range; pretty which can be considered a sophisticated extension of extendrange.

Examples

```
x <- 1:5
(r <- range(x))         # 1    5
extendrange(x)          # 0.8  5.2
extendrange(x, f= 0.01) # 0.96 5.04
## Use r if you have it already:
stopifnot(identical(extendrange(r = r),
                    extendrange(x)))
```

getGraphicsEvent *Wait for a mouse or keyboard event from a graphics window*

Description

This function waits for input from a graphics window in the form of a mouse or keyboard event.

Usage

```
getGraphicsEvent(prompt = "Waiting for input",
                 onMouseDown = NULL, onMouseMove = NULL,
                 onMouseUp = NULL, onKeybd = NULL,
                 consolePrompt = prompt)
setGraphicsEventHandlers(which = dev.cur(), ...)
getGraphicsEventEnv(which = dev.cur())
setGraphicsEventEnv(which = dev.cur(), env)
```

Arguments

prompt	prompt to be displayed to the user in the graphics window
onMouseDown	a function to respond to mouse clicks
onMouseMove	a function to respond to mouse movement
onMouseUp	a function to respond to mouse button releases
onKeybd	a function to respond to key presses
consolePrompt	prompt to be displayed to the user in the console
which	which graphics device does the call apply to?
...	items including handlers to be placed in the event environment
env	an environment to be used as the event environment

Details

These functions allow user input from some graphics devices (currently only the `windows()` and `X11(type = "Xlib")` screen displays in base). Event handlers may be installed to respond to events involving the mouse or keyboard.

The functions are related as follows. If any of the first five arguments to `getGraphicsEvent` are given, then it uses those in a call to `setGraphicsEventHandlers` to replace any existing handlers in the current device. This is for compatibility with pre-2.12.0 versions. The current normal way to set up event handlers is to set them using `setGraphicsEventHandlers` or `setGraphicsEventEnv` on one or more graphics devices, and then use `getGraphicsEvent()` with no arguments to retrieve event data. `getGraphicsEventEnv()` may be used to save the event environment for use later.

The names of the arguments in `getGraphicsEvent` are special. When handling events, the graphics system will look through the event environment for functions named `onMouseDown`, `onMouseMove`, `onMouseUp` and `onKeybd` and use them as event handlers. It will use `prompt` for a label on the graphics device. Two other special names are `which`, which will identify the graphics device, and `result`, where the result of the last event handler will be stored before being returned by `getGraphicsEvent()`.

The mouse event handlers should be functions with header `function(buttons, x, y)`. The coordinates `x` and `y` will be passed to mouse event handlers in device independent coordinates (i.e., the lower left corner of the window is `(0,0)`, the upper right is `(1,1)`). The `buttons` argument will be a vector listing the buttons that are pressed at the time of the event, with 0 for left, 1 for middle, and 2 for right.

The keyboard event handler should be a function with header `function(key)`. A single element character vector will be passed to this handler, corresponding to the key press. Shift and other modifier keys will have been processed, so `shift-a` will be passed as `"A"`. The following special keys may also be passed to the handler:

- Control keys, passed as `"Ctrl-A"`, etc.
- Navigation keys, passed as one of `"Left", "Up", "Right", "Down", "PgUp", "PgDn", "End", "Home"`
- Edit keys, passed as one of `"Ins", "Del"`
- Function keys, passed as one of `"F1", "F2", ...`

The event handlers are standard R functions, and will be executed as though called from the event environment.

In an interactive session, events will be processed until

- one of the event handlers returns a non-NULL value which will be returned as the value of getGraphicsEvent, or
- the user interrupts the function from the console.

Value

When run interactively, getGraphicsEvent returns a non-NULL value returned from one of the event handlers. In a non-interactive session, getGraphicsEvent will return NULL immediately. It will also return NULL if the user closes the last window that has graphics handlers.

getGraphicsEventEnv returns the current event environment for the graphics device, or NULL if none has been set.

setGraphicsEventEnv and setGraphicsEventHandlers return the previous event environment for the graphics device.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

Examples

```
# This currently only works on the Windows
# and X11(type = "Xlib") screen devices...
## Not run:
savepar <- par(ask = FALSE)
dragplot <- function(..., xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL, xaxs = "r", yaxs = "r") {
    plot(..., xlim = xlim, ylim = ylim, xaxs = xaxs, yaxs = yaxs)
    startx <- NULL
    starty <- NULL
    prevx <- NULL
    prevy <- NULL
    usr <- NULL

    devset <- function()
        if (dev.cur() != eventEnv$which) dev.set(eventEnv$which)

    dragmousedown <- function(buttons, x, y) {
        startx <<- x
        starty <<- y
        prevx <<- 0
        prevy <<- 0
        devset()
        usr <<- par("usr")
        eventEnv$onMouseMove <- dragmousemove
        NULL
    }

    dragmousemove <- function(buttons, x, y) {
        devset()
        deltax <- diff(grconvertX(c(startx, x), "ndc", "user"))
        deltay <- diff(grconvertY(c(starty, y), "ndc", "user"))
if (abs(deltax-prevx) + abs(deltay-prevy) > 0) {
    plot(..., xlim = usr[1:2]-deltax, xaxs = "i",
      ylim = usr[3:4]-deltay, yaxs = "i")
    prevx <<- deltax
    prevy <<- deltay
```

```
}
        NULL
    }

    mouseup <- function(buttons, x, y) {
     eventEnv$onMouseMove <- NULL
    }

    keydown <- function(key) {
        if (key == "q") return(invisible(1))
        eventEnv$onMouseMove <- NULL
        NULL
    }

    setGraphicsEventHandlers(prompt = "Click and drag, hit q to quit",
                    onMouseDown = dragmousedown,
                    onMouseUp = mouseup,
                    onKeybd = keydown)
    eventEnv <- getGraphicsEventEnv()
}

dragplot(rnorm(1000), rnorm(1000))
getGraphicsEvent()
par(savepar)

## End(Not run)
```

`gray` *Gray Level Specification*

Description

Create a vector of colors from a vector of gray levels.

Usage

```
gray(level, alpha = NULL)
grey(level, alpha = NULL)
```

Arguments

`level`	a vector of desired gray levels between `0` and `1`; zero indicates `"black"` and one indicates `"white"`.
`alpha`	the opacity, if specified.

Details

The values returned by `gray` can be used with a `col=` specification in graphics functions or in `par`.

`grey` is an alias for `gray`.

Value

A vector of colors of the same length as `level`.

See Also

rainbow, hsv, hcl, rgb.

Examples

```
gray(0:8 / 8)
```

`gray.colors` *Gray Color Palette*

Description

Create a vector of n gamma-corrected gray colors.

Usage

```
gray.colors(n, start = 0.3, end = 0.9, gamma = 2.2, alpha = NULL)
grey.colors(n, start = 0.3, end = 0.9, gamma = 2.2, alpha = NULL)
```

Arguments

n	the number of gray colors (≥ 1) to be in the palette.
start	starting gray level in the palette (should be between 0 and 1 where zero indicates "black" and one indicates "white").
end	ending gray level in the palette.
gamma	the gamma correction.
alpha	the opacity, is specified.

Details

The function `gray.colors` chooses a series of n gamma-corrected gray levels between `start` and `end`: `seq(start^gamma, end^gamma, length = n)^(1/gamma)`. The returned palette contains the corresponding gray colors. This palette is used in `barplot.default`.

`grey.colors` is an alias for `gray.colors`.

Value

A vector of n gray colors.

See Also

gray, rainbow, palette.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

pie(rep(1, 12), col = gray.colors(12))
barplot(1:12, col = gray.colors(12))
```

hcl *HCL Color Specification*

Description

Create a vector of colors from vectors specifying hue, chroma and luminance.

Usage

```
hcl(h = 0, c = 35, l = 85, alpha, fixup = TRUE)
```

Arguments

h	The hue of the color specified as an angle in the range [0,360]. 0 yields red, 120 yields green 240 yields blue, etc.
c	The chroma of the color. The upper bound for chroma depends on hue and luminance.
l	A value in the range [0,100] giving the luminance of the colour. For a given combination of hue and chroma, only a subset of this range is possible.
alpha	numeric vector of values in the range [0,1] for alpha transparency channel (0 means transparent and 1 means opaque).
fixup	a logical value which indicates whether the resulting RGB values should be corrected to ensure that a real color results. if fixup is FALSE RGB components lying outside the range [0,1] will result in an NA value.

Details

This function corresponds to polar coordinates in the CIE-LUV color space. Steps of equal size in this space correspond to approximately equal perceptual changes in color. Thus, hcl can be thought of as a perceptually based version of hsv.

The function is primarily intended as a way of computing colors for filling areas in plots where area corresponds to a numerical value (pie charts, bar charts, mosaic plots, histograms, etc). Choosing colors which have equal chroma and luminance provides a way of minimising the irradiation illusion which would otherwise produce a misleading impression of how large the areas are.

The default values of chroma and luminance make it possible to generate a full range of hues and have a relatively pleasant pastel appearance.

The RGB values produced by this function correspond to the sRGB color space used on most PC computer displays. There are other packages which provide more general color space facilities.

Semi-transparent colors (0 < alpha < 1) are supported only on some devices: see rgb.

Value

A vector of character strings which can be used as color specifications by graphics functions.

Missing or infinite values of any of h, c, l result in NA: such values of alpha are taken as 1 (opaque).

Note

At present there is no guarantee that the colours rendered by R graphics devices will correspond to their sRGB description. It is planned to adopt sRGB as the standard R color description in future.

Author(s)

Ross Ihaka

References

Ihaka, R. (2003). Colour for Presentation Graphics, Proceedings of the 3rd International Workshop on Distributed Statistical Computing (DSC 2003), March 20-22, 2003, Technische Universität Wien, Vienna, Austria. http://www.ci.tuwien.ac.at/Conferences/DSC-2003.

See Also

hsv, rgb.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

# The Foley and Van Dam PhD Data.
csd <- matrix(c( 4,2,4,6, 4,3,1,4, 4,7,7,1,
                 0,7,3,2, 4,5,3,2, 5,4,2,2,
                 3,1,3,0, 4,4,6,7, 1,10,8,7,
                 1,5,3,2, 1,5,2,1, 4,1,4,3,
                 0,3,0,6, 2,1,5,5), nrow = 4)

csphd <- function(colors)
  barplot(csd, col = colors, ylim = c(0,30),
          names = 72:85, xlab = "Year", ylab = "Students",
          legend = c("Winter", "Spring", "Summer", "Fall"),
          main = "Computer Science PhD Graduates", las = 1)

# The Original (Metaphorical) Colors (Ouch!)
csphd(c("blue", "green", "yellow", "orange"))

# A Color Tetrad (Maximal Color Differences)
csphd(hcl(h = c(30, 120, 210, 300)))

# Same, but lighter and less colorful
# Turn off automatic correction to make sure
# that we have defined real colors.
csphd(hcl(h = c(30, 120, 210, 300),
          c = 20, l = 90, fixup = FALSE))

# Analogous Colors
# Good for those with red/green color confusion
csphd(hcl(h = seq(60, 240, by = 60)))

# Metaphorical Colors
csphd(hcl(h = seq(210, 60, length = 4)))

# Cool Colors
csphd(hcl(h = seq(120, 0, length = 4) + 150))

# Warm Colors
csphd(hcl(h = seq(120, 0, length = 4) - 30))

# Single Color
```

```
hist(stats::rnorm(1000), col = hcl(240))

## Exploring the hcl() color space {in its mapping to Rs sRGB colors}:
demo(hclColors)
```

`Hershey` *Hershey Vector Fonts in R*

Description

If the `family` graphical parameter (see `par`) has been set to one of the Hershey fonts (see 'Details') Hershey vector fonts are used to render text.

When using the `text` and `contour` functions Hershey fonts may be selected via the `vfont` argument, which is a character vector of length 2 (see 'Details' for valid values). This allows Cyrillic to be selected, which is not available via the font families.

Usage

```
Hershey
```

Details

The Hershey fonts have two advantages:

1. vector fonts describe each character in terms of a set of points; renders the character by joining up the points with straight lines. This intimate knowledge of the outline of each character means that can arbitrarily transform the characters, which can mean that the vector fonts look better for rotated text.
2. this implementation was adapted from the GNU libplot library which provides support for non-ASCII and non-English fonts. This means that it is possible, for example, to produce weird plotting symbols and Japanese characters.

Drawback:
You cannot use mathematical expressions (`plotmath`) with Hershey fonts.

The Hershey characters are organised into a set of fonts. A particular font is selected by specifying one of the following font families via `par(family)` and specifying the desired font face (plain, bold, italic, bold-italic) via `par(font)`.

family	faces available
`"HersheySerif"`	plain, bold, italic, bold-italic
`"HersheySans"`	plain, bold, italic, bold-italic
`"HersheyScript"`	plain, bold
`"HersheyGothicEnglish"`	plain
`"HersheyGothicGerman"`	plain
`"HersheyGothicItalian"`	plain
`"HersheySymbol"`	plain, bold, italic, bold-italic
`"HersheySansSymbol"`	plain, italic

In the `vfont` specification for the `text` and `contour` functions, the Hershey font is specified by a typeface (e.g., `serif` or `sans serif`) and a fontindex or 'style' (e.g., `plain` or `italic`). The first element of `vfont` specifies the typeface and the second element specifies the fontindex. The first table produced by `demo(Hershey)` shows the character `a` produced by each of the different fonts.

The available `typeface` and `fontindex` values are available as list components of the variable `Hershey`. The allowed pairs for `(typeface, fontindex)` are:

serif	plain
serif	italic
serif	bold
serif	bold italic
serif	cyrillic
serif	oblique cyrillic
serif	EUC
sans serif	plain
sans serif	italic
sans serif	bold
sans serif	bold italic
script	plain
script	italic
script	bold
gothic english	plain
gothic german	plain
gothic italian	plain
serif symbol	plain
serif symbol	italic
serif symbol	bold
serif symbol	bold italic
sans serif symbol	plain
sans serif symbol	italic

and the indices of these are available as `Hershey$allowed`.

Escape sequences: The string to be drawn can include escape sequences, which all begin with a '`\`'. When encounters a '`\`', rather than drawing the '`\`', it treats the subsequent character(s) as a coded description of what to draw.

One useful escape sequence (in the current context) is of the form: '`\123`'. The three digits following the '`\`' specify an octal code for a character. For example, the octal code for `p` is 160 so the strings `"p"` and `"\160"` are equivalent. This is useful for producing characters when there is not an appropriate key on your keyboard.

The other useful escape sequences all begin with '`\\`'. These are described below. Remember that backslashes have to be doubled in character strings, so they need to be entered with *four* backslashes.

Symbols: an entire string of Greek symbols can be produced by selecting the HersheySymbol or HersheySansSymbol family or the Serif Symbol or Sans Serif Symbol typeface. To allow Greek symbols to be embedded in a string which uses a non-symbol typeface, there are a set of symbol escape sequences of the form '`\\ab`'. For example, the escape sequence '`\\*a`' produces a Greek alpha. The second table in `demo(Hershey)` shows all of the symbol escape sequences and the symbols that they produce.

ISO Latin-1: further escape sequences of the form '`\\ab`' are provided for producing ISO Latin-1 characters. Another option is to use the appropriate octal code. The (non-ASCII) ISO Latin-1

characters are in the range 241...377. For example, '`\366`' produces the character o with an umlaut. The third table in `demo(Hershey)` shows all of the ISO Latin-1 escape sequences.

These characters can be used directly. (Characters not in Latin-1 are replaced by a dot.)

Several characters are missing, c-cedilla has no cedilla and 'sharp s' ('`U+00DF`', also known as 'esszett') is rendered as `ss`.

Special Characters: a set of characters are provided which do not fall into any standard font. These can only be accessed by escape sequence. For example, '`\\LI`' produces the zodiac sign for Libra, and '`\\JU`' produces the astronomical sign for Jupiter. The fourth table in `demo(Hershey)` shows all of the special character escape sequences.

Cyrillic Characters: cyrillic characters are implemented according to the K018-R encoding, and can be used directly in such a locale using the Serif typeface and Cyrillic (or Oblique Cyrillic) fontindex. Alternatively they can be specified via an octal code in the range 300 to 337 for lower case characters or 340 to 377 for upper case characters. The fifth table in `demo(Hershey)` shows the octal codes for the available Cyrillic characters.

Cyrillic has to be selected via a `("serif", fontindex)` pair rather than via a font family.

Japanese Characters: 83 Hiragana, 86 Katakana, and 603 Kanji characters are implemented according to the EUC-JP (Extended Unix Code) encoding. Each character is identified by a unique hexadecimal code. The Hiragana characters are in the range 0x2421 to 0x2473, Katakana are in the range 0x2521 to 0x2576, and Kanji are (scattered about) in the range 0x3021 to 0x6d55.

When using the Serif typeface and EUC fontindex, these characters can be produced by a *pair* of octal codes. Given the hexadecimal code (e.g., 0x2421), take the first two digits and add 0x80 and do the same to the second two digits (e.g., 0x21 and 0x24 become 0xa4 and 0xa1), then convert both to octal (e.g., 0xa4 and 0xa1 become 244 and 241). For example, the first Hiragana character is produced by '`\244\241`'.

It is also possible to use the hexadecimal code directly. This works for all non-EUC fonts by specifying an escape sequence of the form '`\#J1234`'. For example, the first Hiragana character is produced by '`\#J2421`'.

The Kanji characters may be specified in a third way, using the so-called "Nelson Index", by specifying an escape sequence of the form '`\#N1234`'. For example, the (obsolete) Kanji for 'one' is produced by '`\#N0001`'.

`demo(Japanese)` shows the available Japanese characters.

Raw Hershey Glyphs: all of the characters in the Hershey fonts are stored in a large array. Some characters are not accessible in any of the Hershey fonts. These characters can only be accessed via an escape sequence of the form '`\#H1234`'. For example, the fleur-de-lys is produced by '`\#H0746`'. The sixth and seventh tables of `demo(Hershey)` shows all of the available raw glyphs.

References

http://www.gnu.org/software/plotutils/plotutils.html.

See Also

`demo(Hershey)`, `par`, `text`, `contour`.

`Japanese` for the Japanese characters in the Hershey fonts.

Examples

```
Hershey

## for tables of examples, see demo(Hershey)
```

hsv *HSV Color Specification*

Description

Create a vector of colors from vectors specifying hue, saturation and value.

Usage

```
hsv(h = 1, s = 1, v = 1, alpha)
```

Arguments

h,s,v	numeric vectors of values in the range [0, 1] for 'hue', 'saturation' and 'value' to be combined to form a vector of colors. Values in shorter arguments are recycled.
alpha	numeric vector of values in the range [0, 1] for alpha transparency channel (0 means transparent and 1 means opaque).

Details

Semi-transparent colors (0 < alpha < 1) are supported only on some devices: see rgb.

Value

This function creates a vector of colors corresponding to the given values in HSV space. The values returned by hsv can be used with a col= specification in graphics functions or in par.

See Also

hcl for a perceptually based version of hsv(), rgb and rgb2hsv for RGB to HSV conversion; rainbow, gray.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

hsv(.5,.5,.5)

## Red tones:
n <- 20;  y <- -sin(3*pi*((1:n)-1/2)/n)
op <- par(mar = rep(1.5, 4))
plot(y, axes = FALSE, frame.plot = TRUE,
     xlab = "", ylab = "", pch = 21, cex = 30,
     bg = rainbow(n, start = .85, end = .1),
     main = "Red tones")
par(op)
```

Japanese *Japanese characters in R*

Description

The implementation of Hershey vector fonts provides a large number of Japanese characters (Hiragana, Katakana, and Kanji).

Details

Without keyboard support for typing Japanese characters, the only way to produce these characters is to use special escape sequences: see Hershey.

For example, the Hiragana character for the sound "ka" is produced by '\#J242b' and the Katakana character for this sound is produced by '\#J252b'. The Kanji ideograph for "one" is produced by '\#J306c' or '\#N0001'.

The output from demo(Japanese) shows tables of the escape sequences for the available Japanese characters.

References

http://www.gnu.org/software/plotutils/plotutils.html

See Also

demo(Japanese), Hershey, text

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(1:9, type = "n", axes = FALSE, frame = TRUE, ylab = "",
     main = "example(Japanese)", xlab = "using Hershey fonts")
par(cex = 3)
Vf <- c("serif", "plain")

text(4, 2, "\#J244b\#J245b\#J2473", vfont = Vf)
text(4, 4, "\#J2538\#J2563\#J2551\#J2573", vfont = Vf)
text(4, 6, "\#J467c\#J4b5c", vfont = Vf)
text(4, 8, "Japan", vfont = Vf)
par(cex = 1)
text(8, 2, "Hiragana")
text(8, 4, "Katakana")
text(8, 6, "Kanji")
text(8, 8, "English")
```

make.rgb *Create colour spaces*

Description

These functions specify colour spaces for use in convertColor.

Usage

```
make.rgb(red, green, blue, name = NULL, white = "D65",
         gamma = 2.2)

colorConverter(toXYZ, fromXYZ, name, white = NULL)
```

Arguments

red,green,blue	Chromaticity (xy or xyY) of RGB primaries
name	Name for the colour space
white	Character string specifying the reference white (see 'Details'.)
gamma	Display gamma (nonlinearity). A positive number or the string "sRGB"
fromXYZ	Function to convert from XYZ tristimulus coordinates to this space
toXYZ	Function to convert from this space to XYZ tristimulus coordinates.

Details

An RGB colour space is defined by the chromaticities of the red, green and blue primaries. These are given as vectors of length 2 or 3 in xyY coordinates (the Y component is not used and may be omitted). The chromaticities are defined relative to a reference white, which must be one of the CIE standard illuminants: "A", "B", "C", "D50", "D55", "D60", "E" (usually "D65").

The display gamma is most commonly 2.2, though 1.8 is used for Apple RGB. The sRGB standard specifies a more complicated function that is close to a gamma of 2.2; gamma = "sRGB" uses this function.

Colour spaces other than RGB can be specified directly by giving conversions to and from XYZ tristimulus coordinates. The functions should take two arguments. The first is a vector giving the coordinates for one colour. The second argument is the reference white. If a specific reference white is included in the definition of the colour space (as for the RGB spaces) this second argument should be ignored and may be ....

Value

An object of class colorConverter

References

Conversion algorithms from http://www.brucelindbloom.com.

See Also

convertColor

Examples

```
(pal <- make.rgb(red =   c(0.6400, 0.3300),
                 green = c(0.2900, 0.6000),
                 blue =  c(0.1500, 0.0600),
                 name = "PAL/SECAM RGB"))

## converter for sRGB in #rrggbb format
hexcolor <- colorConverter(toXYZ = function(hex, ...) {
                            rgb <- t(col2rgb(hex))/255
                            colorspaces$sRGB$toXYZ(rgb, ...) },
                           fromXYZ = function(xyz, ...) {
                              rgb <- colorspaces$sRGB$fromXYZ(xyz, ..)
                              rgb <- round(rgb, 5)
                              if (min(rgb) < 0 || max(rgb) > 1)
                                   as.character(NA)
                              else rgb(rgb[1], rgb[2], rgb[3])},
                           white = "D65", name = "#rrggbb")

(cols <- t(col2rgb(palette())))
zapsmall(luv <- convertColor(cols, from = "sRGB", to = "Luv", scale.in = 255))
(hex <- convertColor(luv, from = "Luv",  to = hexcolor, scale.out = NULL))

## must make hex a matrix before using it
(cc <- round(convertColor(as.matrix(hex), from = hexcolor, to = "sRGB",
                          scale.in = NULL, scale.out = 255)))
stopifnot(cc == cols)
```

`n2mfrow` *Compute Default mfrow From Number of Plots*

Description

Easy setup for plotting multiple figures (in a rectangular layout) on one page. This computes a sensible default for `par(mfrow)`.

Usage

```
n2mfrow(nr.plots)
```

Arguments

`nr.plots`	integer; the number of plot figures you'll want to draw.

Value

A length two integer vector `nr`, `nc` giving the number of rows and columns, fulfilling `nr >= nc >= 1` and `nr * nc >= nr.plots`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

par, layout.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

n2mfrow(8) # 3 x 3

n <- 5 ; x <- seq(-2, 2, len = 51)
## suppose now that n is not known {inside function}
op <- par(mfrow = n2mfrow(n))
for (j in 1:n)
   plot(x, x^j, main = substitute(x^ exp, list(exp = j)), type = "l",
   col = "blue")

sapply(1:10, n2mfrow)
```

---

nclass *Compute the Number of Classes for a Histogram*

Description

Compute the number of classes for a histogram.

Usage

```
nclass.Sturges(x)
nclass.scott(x)
nclass.FD(x)
```

Arguments

x	A data vector.

Details

`nclass.Sturges` uses Sturges' formula, implicitly basing bin sizes on the range of the data.

`nclass.scott` uses Scott's choice for a normal distribution based on the estimate of the standard error, unless that is zero where it returns 1.

`nclass.FD` uses the Freedman-Diaconis choice based on the inter-quartile range (IQR) unless that's zero where it reverts to `mad(x, constant = 2)` and when that is 0 as well, returns 1.

Value

The suggested number of classes.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Springer, page 112.

Freedman, D. and Diaconis, P. (1981) On the histogram as a density estimator: L_2 theory. *Zeitschrift für Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie und verwandte Gebiete* **57**, 453–476.

Scott, D. W. (1979) On optimal and data-based histograms. *Biometrika* **66**, 605–610.

Scott, D. W. (1992) *Multivariate Density Estimation. Theory, Practice, and Visualization*. Wiley.

Sturges, H. A. (1926) The choice of a class interval. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **21**, 65–66.

See Also

`hist` and `truehist` (package **MASS**); `dpih` (package **KernSmooth**) for a plugin bandwidth proposed by Wand(1995).

Examples

```
set.seed(1)
x <- stats::rnorm(1111)
nclass.Sturges(x)

## Compare them:
NC <- function(x) c(Sturges = nclass.Sturges(x),
      Scott = nclass.scott(x), FD = nclass.FD(x))
NC(x)
onePt <- rep(1, 11)
NC(onePt) # no longer gives NaN
```

---

palette *Set or View the Graphics Palette*

Description

View or manipulate the color palette which is used when a `col=` has a numeric index.

Usage

```
palette(value)
```

Arguments

`value`	an optional character vector.

Details

The color palette and referring to colors by number (see e.g. `par`) was provided for compatibility with S: in it is almost always better to specify colours by name.

If `value` has length 1, it is taken to be the name of a built-in color palette (only `"default"` is built-in currently). If `value` has length greater than 1 it is assumed to contain a description of the colors which are to make up the new palette (either by name or by RGB levels). The maximum size for a palette is 1024 entries.

If value is omitted, no change is made to the current palette.

There is only one palette setting for all devices in a session. If the palette is changed, the new palette applies to all subsequent plotting.

Prior to 3.0.0 the current palette also applies to re-plotting (for example if an on-screen device is resized or dev.copy or replayPlot is used). In current , the palette is recorded on the displaylist at the start of each page and when it is changed.

Value

A character vector giving the palette which *was* in effect. This is invisible unless the argument is omitted.

See Also

colors for the vector of built-in named colors; hsv, gray, rainbow, terrain.colors, ... to construct colors.

adjustcolor, e.g., for tweaking existing palettes; colorRamp to interpolate colors, making custom palettes; col2rgb for translating colors to RGB 3-vectors.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

palette()               # obtain the current palette
palette(rainbow(6))     # six color rainbow

(palette(gray(seq(0,.9,len = 25)))) # gray scales; print old palette
matplot(outer(1:100, 1:30), type = "l", lty = 1,lwd = 2, col = 1:30,
        main = "Gray Scales Palette",
        sub = "palette(gray(seq(0, .9, len=25)))")
palette("default")      # reset back to the default

## on a device where alpha-transparency is supported,
##  use alpha = 0.3 transparency with the default palette :
mycols <- adjustcolor(palette(), alpha.f = 0.3)
opal <- palette(mycols)
x <- rnorm(1000); xy <- cbind(x, 3*x + rnorm(1000))
plot (xy, lwd = 2,
       main = "Alpha-Transparency Palette\n alpha = 0.3")
xy[,1] <- -xy[,1]
points(xy, col = 8, pch = 16, cex = 1.5)
palette("default")
```

Palettes *Color Palettes*

Description

Create a vector of n contiguous colors.

Usage

```
rainbow(n, s = 1, v = 1, start = 0, end = max(1, n - 1)/n, alpha = 1)
heat.colors(n, alpha = 1)
terrain.colors(n, alpha = 1)
topo.colors(n, alpha = 1)
cm.colors(n, alpha = 1)
```

Arguments

`n`	the number of colors (≥ 1) to be in the palette.
`s, v`	the 'saturation' and 'value' to be used to complete the HSV color descriptions.
`start`	the (corrected) hue in [0,1] at which the rainbow begins.
`end`	the (corrected) hue in [0,1] at which the rainbow ends.
`alpha`	the alpha transparency, a number in [0,1], see argument `alpha` in `hsv`.

Details

Conceptually, all of these functions actually use (parts of) a line cut out of the 3-dimensional color space, parametrized by `hsv(h, s, v)`, and hence equispaced hues in RGB space tend to cluster at the red, green and blue primaries.

Some applications such as contouring require a palette of colors which do not wrap around to give a final color close to the starting one.

With `rainbow`, the parameters `start` and `end` can be used to specify particular subranges of hues. The following values can be used when generating such a subrange: red = 0, yellow = $\frac{1}{6}$, green = $\frac{2}{6}$, cyan = $\frac{3}{6}$, blue = $\frac{4}{6}$ and magenta = $\frac{5}{6}$.

Value

A character vector, `cv`, of color names. This can be used either to create a user–defined color palette for subsequent graphics by `palette(cv)`, a `col =` specification in graphics functions or in `par`.

See Also

`colors`, `palette`, `hsv`, `hcl`, `rgb`, `gray` and `col2rgb` for translating to RGB numbers.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
# A Color Wheel
pie(rep(1, 12), col = rainbow(12))

##------ Some palettes ------------
demo.pal <-
  function(n, border = if (n < 32) "light gray" else NA,
           main = paste("color palettes;  n=", n),
           ch.col = c("rainbow(n, start=.7, end=.1)", "heat.colors(n)",
                      "terrain.colors(n)", "topo.colors(n)",
                      "cm.colors(n)"))
{
    nt <- length(ch.col)
    i <- 1:n; j <- n / nt; d <- j/6; dy <- 2*d
    plot(i, i+d, type = "n", yaxt = "n", ylab = "", main = main)
```

```
    for (k in 1:nt) {
        rect(i-.5, (k-1)*j+ dy, i+.4, k*j,
             col = eval(parse(text = ch.col[k])), border = border)
        text(2*j,  k * j + dy/4, ch.col[k])
    }
}
n <- if(.Device == "postscript") 64 else 16
     # Since for screen, larger n may give color allocation problem
demo.pal(n)
```

---

pdf *PDF Graphics Device*

Description

pdf starts the graphics device driver for producing PDF graphics.

Usage

```
pdf(file = ifelse(onefile, "Rplots.pdf", "Rplot%03d.pdf"),
    width, height, onefile, family, title, fonts, version,
    paper, encoding, bg, fg, pointsize, pagecentre, colormodel,
    useDingbats, useKerning, fillOddEven, compress)
```

Arguments

file	a character string giving the name of the file. If it is of the form "|cmd", the output is piped to the command given by cmd. If it is NULL, then no external file is created (effectively, no drawing occurs), but the device may still be queried (e.g., for size of text). For use with onefile = FALSE give a C integer format such as "Rplot%03d.pdf" (the default in that case). (See postscript for further details.) Tilde expansion (see path.expand) is done.
width, height	the width and height of the graphics region in inches. The default values are 7.
onefile	logical: if true (the default) allow multiple figures in one file. If false, generate a file with name containing the page number for each page. Defaults to TRUE, and forced to true if file is a pipe.
family	the font family to be used, see postscript. Defaults to "Helvetica".
title	title string to embed as the '/Title' field in the file. Defaults to "R Graphics Output".
fonts	a character vector specifying graphics font family names for additional fonts which will be included in the PDF file. Defaults to NULL.
version	a string describing the PDF version that will be required to view the output. This is a minimum, and will be increased (with a warning) if necessary. Defaults to "1.4", but see 'Details'.

paper	the target paper size. The choices are "a4", "letter", "legal" (or "us") and "executive" (and these can be capitalized), or "a4r" and "USr" for rotated ('landscape'). The default is "special", which means that the width and height specify the paper size. A further choice is "default"; if this is selected, the papersize is taken from the option "papersize" if that is set and as "a4" if it is unset or empty. Defaults to "special".
encoding	the name of an encoding file. See postscript for details. Defaults to "default".
bg	the initial background color to be used. Defaults to "transparent".
fg	the initial foreground color to be used. Defaults to "black".
pointsize	the default point size to be used. Strictly speaking, in bp, that is 1/72 of an inch, but approximately in points. Defaults to 12.
pagecentre	logical: should the device region be centred on the page? – is only relevant for paper != "special". Defaults to TRUE.
colormodel	a character string describing the color model: currently allowed values are "srgb", "gray" (or "grey") and "cmyk". Defaults to "srgb". See section 'Color models'.
useDingbats	logical. Should small circles be rendered *via* the Dingbats font? Defaults to TRUE, which produces smaller and better output. Setting this to FALSE can work around font display problems in broken PDF viewers: although this font is one of the 14 guaranteed to be available in all PDF viewers, that guarantee is not always honoured. See the 'Note' for a possible fix for some viewers.
useKerning	logical. Should kerning corrections be included in setting text and calculating string widths? Defaults to TRUE.
fillOddEven	logical controlling the polygon fill mode: see polygon for details. Defaults to FALSE.
compress	logical. Should PDF streams be generated with Flate compression? Defaults to TRUE.

Details

All arguments except file default to values given by pdf.options(). The ultimate defaults are quoted in the arguments section.

pdf() opens the file file and the PDF commands needed to plot any graphics requested are sent to that file.

The file argument is interpreted as a C integer format as used by sprintf, with integer argument the page number. The default gives files 'Rplot001.pdf', ..., 'Rplot999.pdf', 'Rplot1000.pdf', ...

The family argument can be used to specify a PDF-specific font family as the initial/default font for the device. If additional font families are to be used they should be included in the fonts argument.

If a device-independent graphics font family is specified (e.g., via par(family =) in the graphics package), the PDF device makes use of the PostScript font mappings to convert the graphics font family to a PDF-specific font family description. (See the documentation for pdfFonts.)

This device does *not* embed fonts in the PDF file, so it is only straightforward to use mappings to the font families that can be assumed to be available in any PDF viewer: "Times" (equivalently "serif"), "Helvetica" (equivalently "sans") and "Courier" (equivalently "mono"). Other families may be specified, but it is the user's responsibility to ensure that these fonts are available on the system and third-party software (e.g., Ghostscript) may be required to embed the fonts so that the

PDF can be included in other documents (e.g., LaTeX): see embedFonts. The URW-based families described for postscript can be used with viewers set up to use URW fonts, which is usual with those based on xpdf or Ghostscript. Since embedFonts makes use of Ghostscript, it should be able to embed the URW-based families for use with other viewers.

See postscript for details of encodings, as the internal code is shared between the drivers. The native PDF encoding is given in file 'PDFDoc.enc'.

The PDF produced is fairly simple, with each page being represented as a single stream (by default compressed and possibly with references to raster images). The graphics model does not distinguish graphics objects at the level of the driver interface.

The version argument declares the version of PDF that gets produced. The version must be at least 1.2 when compression is used, 1.4 for semi-transparent output to be understood, and at least 1.3 if CID fonts are to be used: if any of these features are used the version number will be increased (with a warning). (PDF 1.4 was first supported by Acrobat 5 in 2001; it is very unlikely not to be supported in a current viewer.)

Line widths as controlled by par(lwd =) are in multiples of 1/96 inch. Multiples less than 1 are allowed. pch = "." with cex = 1 corresponds to a square of side 1/72 inch, which is also the 'pixel' size assumed for graphics parameters such as "cra".

The paper argument sets the '/MediaBox' entry in the file, which defaults to width by height. If it is set to something other than "special", a device region of the specified size is (by default) centred on the rectangle given by the paper size: if either width or height is less than 0.1 or too large to give a total margin of 0.5 inch, it is reset to the corresponding paper dimension minus 0.5. Thus if you want the default behaviour of postscript use pdf(paper = "a4r", width = 0, height = 0) to centre the device region on a landscape A4 page with 0.25 inch margins.

When the background colour is fully transparent (as is the initial default value), the PDF produced does not paint the background. Most PDF viewers will use a white canvas so the visual effect is if the background were white. This will not be the case when printing onto coloured paper, though.

Color models

The default color model ("srgb") is sRGB. Model "gray" (or "grey") maps sRGB colors to greyscale using perceived luminosity (biased towards green). "cmyk" outputs in CMYK colorspace. The simplest possible conversion from sRGB to CMYK is used (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CMYK_color_model#Mapping_RGB_to_CMYK), and raster images are output in RGB.

Also available for backwards compatibility is model "rgb" which uses uncalibrated RGB and corresponds to the model used with that name in prior to 2.13.0. Some viewers may render some plots in that colorspace faster than in sRGB, and the plot files will be smaller.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is 7 inches square.
- Font sizes are in big points.
- The default font family is Helvetica.
- Line widths are as a multiple of 1/96 inch, with a minimum of 0.01 enforced.
- Circles of any radius are allowed. Unless useDingbats = FALSE, opaque circles of less than 10 big points radius are rendered using char 108 in the Dingbats font: all semi-transparent and larger circles using a Bézier curve for each quadrant.

- Colours are by default specified as sRGB.

At very small line widths, the line type may be forced to solid.

Printing

Except on Windows it is possible to print directly from `pdf` by something like (this is appropriate for a CUPS printing system):

```
pdf("|lp -o landscape", paper = "a4r")
```

This forces `onefile = TRUE`.

Note

If you see problems with PDF output, do remember that the problem is much more likely to be in your viewer than in . Try another viewer if possible. Symptoms for which the viewer has been at fault are apparent grids on image plots (turn off graphics anti-aliasing in your viewer if you can) and missing or incorrect glyphs in text (viewers silently doing font substitution).

Unfortunately the default viewers on most Linux and OS X systems have these problems, and no obvious way to turn off graphics anti-aliasing.

Acrobat Reader does not use the fonts specified but rather emulates them from multiple-master fonts. This can be seen in imprecise centering of characters, for example the multiply and divide signs in Helvetica. This can be circumvented by embedding fonts where possible. Most other viewers substitute fonts, e.g. URW fonts for the standard Helvetica and Times fonts, and these too often have different font metrics from the true fonts.

Acrobat Reader can be extended by 'font packs', and these will be needed for the full use of encodings other than Latin-1 (although they may be offered for download as needed).

On some systems the default plotting character `pch = 1` was displayed in some PDF viewers incorrectly as a `"q"` character. (These seem to be viewers based on the '`poppler`' PDF rendering library). This may be due to incorrect or incomplete mapping of font names to those used by the system. Adding the following lines to '`~/.fonts.conf`' or '`/etc/fonts/local.conf`' may circumvent this problem, although this has largely been corrected on the affected systems.

```
<fontconfig>
<alias binding="same">
  <family>ZapfDingbats</family>
  <accept><family>Dingbats</family></accept>
</alias>
</fontconfig>
```

Some further workarounds for problems with symbol fonts on viewers using 'fontconfig' are given in the 'Cairo Fonts' section of the help for `X11`.

There is a different font bug in the `pdf.js` viewer included in Firefox 19 and later: that maps Dingbats to the Symbol font and so displays symbols such `pch = 1` as lambda.

See Also

`pdfFonts`, `pdf.options`, `embedFonts`, `Devices`, `postscript`.

`cairo_pdf` and (on OS X only) `quartz` for other devices that can produce PDF.

More details of font families and encodings and especially handling text in a non-Latin-1 encoding and embedding fonts can be found in

Paul Murrell and Brian Ripley (2006) Non-standard fonts in PostScript and PDF graphics. *R News*, 6(2):41–47. http://cran.r-project.org/doc/Rnews/Rnews_2006-2.pdf.

Examples

```
## Test function for encodings
TestChars <- function(encoding = "ISOLatin1", ...)
{
    pdf(encoding = encoding, ...)
    par(pty = "s")
    plot(c(-1,16), c(-1,16), type = "n", xlab = "", ylab = "",
         xaxs = "i", yaxs = "i")
         title(paste("Centred chars in encoding", encoding))
    grid(17, 17, lty = 1)
    for(i in c(32:255)) {
        x <- i %% 16
        y <- i %/% 16
        points(x, y, pch = i)
    }
    dev.off()
}
## there will be many warnings.
TestChars("ISOLatin2")
## this does not view properly in older viewers.
TestChars("ISOLatin2", family = "URWHelvetica")
## works well for viewing in gs-based viewers, and often in xpdf.
```

`pdf.options` *Auxiliary Function to Set/View Defaults for Arguments of pdf*

Description

The auxiliary function `pdf.options` can be used to set or view (if called without arguments) the default values for some of the arguments to `pdf`.

`pdf.options` needs to be called before calling `pdf`, and the default values it sets can be overridden by supplying arguments to `pdf`.

Usage

```
pdf.options(..., reset = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`...`	arguments `width`, `height`, `onefile`, `family`, `title`, `fonts`, `paper`, `encoding`, `pointsize`, `bg`, `fg`, `pagecentre`, `useDingbats`, `colormodel`, `fillOddEven` and `compress` can be supplied.
`reset`	logical: should the defaults be reset to their 'factory-fresh' values?

Details

If both `reset = TRUE` and `...` are supplied the defaults are first reset to the 'factory-fresh' values and then the new values are applied.

Value

A named list of all the defaults. If any arguments are supplied the return values are the old values and the result has the visibility flag turned off.

See Also

pdf, ps.options.

Examples

```
pdf.options(bg = "pink")
utils::str(pdf.options())
pdf.options(reset = TRUE) # back to factory-fresh
```

---

pictex *A PicTeX Graphics Driver*

Description

This function produces simple graphics suitable for inclusion in TeX and LaTeX documents. It dates from the very early days of and is for historical interest only.

Usage

```
pictex(file = "Rplots.tex", width = 5, height = 4, debug = FALSE,
       bg = "white", fg = "black")
```

Arguments

file	the file where output will appear.
width	The width of the plot in inches.
height	the height of the plot in inches.
debug	should debugging information be printed.
bg	the background color for the plot. Ignored.
fg	the foreground color for the plot. Ignored.

Details

This driver is much more basic than the other graphics drivers included in . It does not have any font metric information, so the use of plotmath is not supported.

Line widths are ignored except when setting the spacing of line textures. pch = "." corresponds to a square of side 1pt.

This device does not support colour (nor does the PicTeX package), and all colour settings are ignored.

Note that text is recorded in the file as-is, so annotations involving TeX special characters (such as ampersand and underscore) need to be quoted as they would be when entering TeX.

Multiple plots will be placed as separate environments in the output file.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is 5 inches by 4 inches.
- There is no `pointsize` argument: the default size is interpreted as 10 point.
- The only font family is `cmss10`.
- Line widths are only used when setting the spacing on line textures.
- Circle of any radius are allowed.
- Colour is not supported.

Author(s)

This driver was provided around 1996–7 by Valerio Aimale of the Department of Internal Medicine, University of Genoa, Italy.

References

Knuth, D. E. (1984) *The TeXbook.* Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

Lamport, L. (1994) *LATEX: A Document Preparation System.* Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

Goossens, M., Mittelbach, F. and Samarin, A. (1994) *The LATEX Companion.* Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

See Also

`postscript`, `pdf`, `Devices`.

The `tikzDevice` in the CRAN package of that name for more modern TeX-based graphics (`http://pgf.sourceforge.net/`, although including PDF figures *via* `pdftex` is most common in (La)TeX documents).

Examples

```
require(graphics)

pictex()
plot(1:11, (-5:5)^2, type = "b", main = "Simple Example Plot")
dev.off()
##--------------------
## Not run:
%% LaTeX Example
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pictex}
\usepackage{graphics} % for \rotatebox
\begin{document}
%...
\begin{figure}[h]
  \centerline{\input{Rplots.tex}}
  \caption{}
\end{figure}
%...
\end{document}
```

```
## End(Not run)
##--------------------
unlink("Rplots.tex")
```

---

plotmath *Mathematical Annotation in R*

Description

If the text argument to one of the text-drawing functions (text, mtext, axis, legend) in is an expression, the argument is interpreted as a mathematical expression and the output will be formatted according to TeX-like rules. Expressions can also be used for titles, subtitles and x- and y-axis labels (but not for axis labels on persp plots).

In most cases other language objects (names and calls, including formulas) are coerced to expressions and so can also be used.

Details

A mathematical expression must obey the normal rules of syntax for any expression, but it is interpreted according to very different rules than for normal expressions.

It is possible to produce many different mathematical symbols, generate sub- or superscripts, produce fractions, etc.

The output from demo(plotmath) includes several tables which show the available features. In these tables, the columns of grey text show sample expressions, and the columns of black text show the resulting output.

The available features are also described in the tables below:

Syntax	Meaning
x + y	x plus y
x - y	x minus y
x*y	juxtapose x and y
x/y	x forwardslash y
x %+-% y	x plus or minus y
x %/% y	x divided by y
x %*% y	x times y
x %.% y	x cdot y
x[i]	x subscript i
x^2	x superscript 2
paste(x, y, z)	juxtapose x, y, and z
sqrt(x)	square root of x
sqrt(x, y)	yth root of x
x == y	x equals y
x != y	x is not equal to y
x < y	x is less than y
x <= y	x is less than or equal to y
x > y	x is greater than y
x >= y	x is greater than or equal to y
x %~~% y	x is approximately equal to y
x %=~% y	x and y are congruent
x %==% y	x is defined as y

`x %prop% y`	x is proportional to y
`x %~% y`	x is distributed as y
`plain(x)`	draw x in normal font
`bold(x)`	draw x in bold font
`italic(x)`	draw x in italic font
`bolditalic(x)`	draw x in bolditalic font
`symbol(x)`	draw x in symbol font
`list(x, y, z)`	comma-separated list
`...`	ellipsis (height varies)
`cdots`	ellipsis (vertically centred)
`ldots`	ellipsis (at baseline)
`x %subset% y`	x is a proper subset of y
`x %subseteq% y`	x is a subset of y
`x %notsubset% y`	x is not a subset of y
`x %supset% y`	x is a proper superset of y
`x %supseteq% y`	x is a superset of y
`x %in% y`	x is an element of y
`x %notin% y`	x is not an element of y
`hat(x)`	x with a circumflex
`tilde(x)`	x with a tilde
`dot(x)`	x with a dot
`ring(x)`	x with a ring
`bar(xy)`	xy with bar
`widehat(xy)`	xy with a wide circumflex
`widetilde(xy)`	xy with a wide tilde
`x %<->% y`	x double-arrow y
`x %->% y`	x right-arrow y
`x %<-% y`	x left-arrow y
`x %up% y`	x up-arrow y
`x %down% y`	x down-arrow y
`x %<=>% y`	x is equivalent to y
`x %=>% y`	x implies y
`x %<=% y`	y implies x
`x %dblup% y`	x double-up-arrow y
`x %dbldown% y`	x double-down-arrow y
`alpha – omega`	Greek symbols
`Alpha – Omega`	uppercase Greek symbols
`theta1, phi1, sigma1, omega1`	cursive Greek symbols
`Upsilon1`	capital upsilon with hook
`aleph`	first letter of Hebrew alphabet
`infinity`	infinity symbol
`partialdiff`	partial differential symbol
`nabla`	nabla, gradient symbol
`32*degree`	32 degrees
`60*minute`	60 minutes of angle
`30*second`	30 seconds of angle
`displaystyle(x)`	draw x in normal size (extra spacing)
`textstyle(x)`	draw x in normal size
`scriptstyle(x)`	draw x in small size
`scriptscriptstyle(x)`	draw x in very small size
`underline(x)`	draw x underlined
`x ~~ y`	put extra space between x and y

`x + phantom(0) + y`	leave gap for "0", but don't draw it
`x + over(1, phantom(0))`	leave vertical gap for "0" (don't draw)
`frac(x, y)`	x over y
`over(x, y)`	x over y
`atop(x, y)`	x over y (no horizontal bar)
`sum(x[i], i==1, n)`	sum x[i] for i equals 1 to n
`prod(plain(P)(X==x), x)`	product of P(X=x) for all values of x
`integral(f(x)*dx, a, b)`	definite integral of f(x) wrt x
`union(A[i], i==1, n)`	union of A[i] for i equals 1 to n
`intersect(A[i], i==1, n)`	intersection of A[i]
`lim(f(x), x %->% 0)`	limit of f(x) as x tends to 0
`min(g(x), x > 0)`	minimum of g(x) for x greater than 0
`inf(S)`	infimum of S
`sup(S)`	supremum of S
`x^y + z`	normal operator precedence
`x^(y + z)`	visible grouping of operands
`x^{y + z}`	invisible grouping of operands
`group("(",list(a, b),"]")`	specify left and right delimiters
`bgroup("(",atop(x,y),")")`	use scalable delimiters
`group(lceil, x, rceil)`	special delimiters
`group(lfloor, x, rfloor)`	special delimiters

The supported 'scalable delimiters' are `|` `(` `[` `{`, `lceil`, `lfloor` and their right-hand versions. `"."` is equivalent to `""`: the corresponding delimiter will be omitted. Delimiter `||` is supported but has the same effect as `|`.

The symbol font uses Adobe Symbol encoding so, for example, a lower case mu can be obtained either by the special symbol `mu` or by `symbol("m")`. This provides access to symbols that have no special symbol name, for example, the universal, or forall, symbol is `symbol("\042")`. To see what symbols are available in this way use `TestChars(font=5)` as given in the examples for `points`: some are only available on some devices.

Note to TeX users: TeX's '`\Upsilon`' is `Upsilon1`, TeX's '`\varepsilon`' is close to `epsilon`, and there is no equivalent of TeX's '`\epsilon`'. TeX's '`\varpi`' is close to `omega1`. `vartheta`, `varphi` and `varsigma` are allowed as synonyms for `theta1`, `phi1` and `sigma1`.

`sigma1` is also known as `stigma`, its Unicode name.

Control characters (e.g., '`\n`') are not interpreted in character strings in plotmath, unlike normal plotting.

The fonts used are taken from the current font family, and so can be set by `par(family=)` in base graphics, and `gpar(fontfamily=)` in package **grid**.

Note that `bold`, `italic` and `bolditalic` do not apply to symbols, and hence not to the Greek *symbols* such as `mu` which are displayed in the symbol font. They also do not apply to numeric constants.

Other symbols

On many OSes and some graphics devices many other symbols are available as part of the standard text font, and all of the symbols in the Adobe Symbol encoding are in principle available *via* changing the font face or (see 'Details') plotmath: see the examples section of `points` for a function to display them. ('In principle' because some of the glyphs are missing from some implementations of the symbol font.) Unfortunately, `postscript` and `pdf` have support for little more than European

(not Greek) and CJK characters and the Adobe Symbol encoding (and in a few fonts, also Cyrillic characters).

In a UTF-8 locale any Unicode character can be entered, perhaps as a '\uxxxx' or '\Uxxxxxxxx' escape sequence, but the issue is whether the graphics device is able to display the character. The widest range of characters is likely to be available in the X11 device using cairo: see its help page for how installing additional fonts can help. This can often be used to display Greek *letters* in bold or italic.

In non-UTF-8 locales there is normally no support for symbols not in the languages for which the current encoding was intended.

References

Murrell, P. and Ihaka, R. (2000) An approach to providing mathematical annotation in plots. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, **9**, 582–599.

The symbol codes can be found in octal in the Adobe reference manuals, e.g. for Postscript http://www.adobe.com/products/postscript/pdfs/PLRM.pdf or PDF http://www.adobe.com/devnet/acrobat/pdfs/pdf_reference_1-7.pdf and in decimal, octal and hex at http://www.stat.auckland.ac.nz/~paul/R/CM/AdobeSym.html.

See Also

demo(plotmath), axis, mtext, text, title, substitute quote, bquote

Examples

```
require(graphics)

x <- seq(-4, 4, len = 101)
y <- cbind(sin(x), cos(x))
matplot(x, y, type = "l", xaxt = "n",
        main = expression(paste(plain(sin) * phi, "  and  ",
                                plain(cos) * phi)),
        ylab = expression("sin" * phi, "cos" * phi), # only 1st is taken
        xlab = expression(paste("Phase Angle ", phi)),
        col.main = "blue")
axis(1, at = c(-pi, -pi/2, 0, pi/2, pi),
     labels = expression(-pi, -pi/2, 0, pi/2, pi))


## How to combine "math" and numeric variables :
plot(1:10, type="n", xlab="", ylab="", main = "plot math & numbers")
theta <- 1.23 ; mtext(bquote(hat(theta) == .(theta)), line= .25)
for(i in 2:9)
    text(i, i+1, substitute(list(xi, eta) == group("(",list(x,y),")"),
                            list(x = i, y = i+1)))
## note that both of these use calls rather than expressions.
##
text(1, 10,  "Derivatives:", adj = 0)
text(1, 9.6, expression(
 "             first: {f * minute}(x) " == {f * minute}(x)), adj = 0)
text(1, 9.0, expression(
 "     second: {f * second}(x) "        == {f * second}(x)), adj = 0)


plot(1:10, 1:10)
```

```
text(4, 9, expression(hat(beta) == (X^t * X)^{-1} * X^t * y))
text(4, 8.4, "expression(hat(beta) == (X^t * X)^{-1} * X^t * y)",
     cex = .8)
text(4, 7, expression(bar(x) == sum(frac(x[i], n), i==1, n)))
text(4, 6.4, "expression(bar(x) == sum(frac(x[i], n), i==1, n))",
     cex = .8)
text(8, 5, expression(paste(frac(1, sigma*sqrt(2*pi)), " ",
                            plain(e)^{frac(-(x-mu)^2, 2*sigma^2)})),
     cex = 1.2)

## some other useful symbols
plot.new(); plot.window(c(0,4), c(15,1))
text(1, 1, "universal", adj = 0); text(2.5, 1,  "\\042")
text(3, 1, expression(symbol("\042")))
text(1, 2, "existential", adj = 0); text(2.5, 2,  "\\044")
text(3, 2, expression(symbol("\044")))
text(1, 3, "suchthat", adj = 0); text(2.5, 3,  "\\047")
text(3, 3, expression(symbol("\047")))
text(1, 4, "therefore", adj = 0); text(2.5, 4,  "\\134")
text(3, 4, expression(symbol("\134")))
text(1, 5, "perpendicular", adj = 0); text(2.5, 5,  "\\136")
text(3, 5, expression(symbol("\136")))
text(1, 6, "circlemultiply", adj = 0); text(2.5, 6,  "\\304")
text(3, 6, expression(symbol("\304")))
text(1, 7, "circleplus", adj = 0); text(2.5, 7,  "\\305")
text(3, 7, expression(symbol("\305")))
text(1, 8, "emptyset", adj = 0); text(2.5, 8,  "\\306")
text(3, 8, expression(symbol("\306")))
text(1, 9, "angle", adj = 0); text(2.5, 9,  "\\320")
text(3, 9, expression(symbol("\320")))
text(1, 10, "leftangle", adj = 0); text(2.5, 10,  "\\341")
text(3, 10, expression(symbol("\341")))
text(1, 11, "rightangle", adj = 0); text(2.5, 11,  "\\361")
text(3, 11, expression(symbol("\361")))
```

---

png *BMP, JPEG, PNG and TIFF graphics devices*

Description

Graphics devices for BMP, JPEG, PNG and TIFF format bitmap files.

Usage

```
bmp(filename = "Rplot%03d.bmp",
    width = 480, height = 480, units = "px", pointsize = 12,
    bg = "white", res = NA, ...,
    type = c("cairo", "Xlib", "quartz"), antialias)

jpeg(filename = "Rplot%03d.jpeg",
     width = 480, height = 480, units = "px", pointsize = 12,
     quality = 75,
     bg = "white", res = NA, ...,
     type = c("cairo", "Xlib", "quartz"), antialias)
```

```
png(filename = "Rplot%03d.png",
    width = 480, height = 480, units = "px", pointsize = 12,
     bg = "white",  res = NA, ...,
    type = c("cairo", "cairo-png", "Xlib", "quartz"), antialias)

tiff(filename = "Rplot%03d.tiff",
     width = 480, height = 480, units = "px", pointsize = 12,
     compression = c("none", "rle", "lzw", "jpeg", "zip", "lzw+p", "zip+p"),
     bg = "white", res = NA,  ...,
     type = c("cairo", "Xlib", "quartz"), antialias)
```

Arguments

filename	the name of the output file. The page number is substituted if a C integer format is included in the character string, as in the default. (The result must be less than PATH_MAX characters long, and may be truncated if not. See postscript for further details.) Tilde expansion is performed where supported by the platform.
width	the width of the device.
height	the height of the device.
units	The units in which height and width are given. Can be px (pixels, the default), in (inches), cm or mm.
pointsize	the default pointsize of plotted text, interpreted as big points (1/72 inch) at res ppi.
bg	the initial background colour: can be overridden by setting par("bg").
quality	the 'quality' of the JPEG image, as a percentage. Smaller values will give more compression but also more degradation of the image.
compression	the type of compression to be used. Ignored for type = "quartz".
res	The nominal resolution in ppi which will be recorded in the bitmap file, if a positive integer. Also used for units other than the default, and to convert points to pixels.
...	for type = "Xlib" only, additional arguments to the underlying X11 device such as fonts or family. For types "cairo" and "quartz", the family argument can be supplied. See the 'Cairo fonts' section in the help for X11.
type	character string, one of "Xlib" or "quartz" (some OS X builds) or "cairo". The latter will only be available if the system was compiled with support for cairo – otherwise "Xlib" will be used. The default is set by getOption("bitmapType") – the 'out of the box' default is "quartz" or "cairo" where available, otherwise "Xlib".
antialias	for type = "cairo", giving the type of anti-aliasing (if any) to be used for fonts and lines (but not fills). See X11. The default is set by X11.options. Also for type = "quartz", where antialiasing is used unless antialias = "none".

Details

Plots in PNG and JPEG format can easily be converted to many other bitmap formats, and both can be displayed in modern web browsers. The PNG format is lossless and is best for line diagrams and blocks of colour. The JPEG format is lossy, but may be useful for image plots, for example. BMP

is a standard format on Windows. TIFF is a meta-format: the default format written by `tiff` is lossless and stores RGB (and alpha where appropriate) values uncompressed—such files are widely accepted, which is their main virtue over PNG.

`png` supports transparent backgrounds: use `bg = "transparent"`. (Not all PNG viewers render files with transparency correctly.) When transparency is in use in the `type = "Xlib"` variant a very light grey is used as the background and so appears as transparent if used in the plot. This allows opaque white to be used, as in the example. The `type = "cairo"`, `type = "cairo-png"` and `type = "quartz"` variants allow semi-transparent colours, including on a transparent or semi-transparent background.

`tiff` with types `"cairo"` and `"quartz"` supports semi-transparent colours, including on a transparent or semi-transparent background. Compression type `"zip"` is 'deflate (Adobe-style)'. Compression types `"lzw+p"` and `"zip+p"` use horizontal differencing ('differencing predictor', section 14 of the TIFF specification) in combination with the compression method, which is effective for continuous-tone images, especially colour ones.

can be compiled without support for some or all of the types for each of these devices: this will be reported if you attempt to use them on a system where they are not supported. For `type = "Xlib"` they may not be usable unless the X11 display is available to the owner of the process. `type = "cairo"` requires cairo 1.2 or later. `type = "quartz"` uses the `quartz` device and so is only available where that is (on some OS X builds: see `capabilities("aqua")`).

By default no resolution is recorded in the file, except for BMP. Viewers will often assume a nominal resolution of 72 ppi when none is recorded. As resolutions in PNG files are recorded in pixels/metre, the reported ppi value will be changed slightly.

For graphics parameters that make use of dimensions in inches (including font sizes in points) the resolution used is `res` (or 72 ppi if unset).

`png` will normally use a palette if there are less than 256 colours on the page, and record a 24-bit RGB file otherwise (or a 32-bit ARGB file if `type = "cairo"` and non-opaque colours are used). However, `type = "cairo-png"` uses cairographics' PNG backend which will never use a palette and normally creates a larger 32-bit ARGB file—this may work better for specialist uses with semi-transparent colours.

Quartz-produced PNG and TIFF plots with a transparent background are recorded with a dark grey matte which will show up in some viewers, including `Preview` on OS X.

Prior to 3.0.3 unknown resolutions in BMP files were sometimes recorded incorrectly: they are now recorded as 72 ppi.

Value

A plot device is opened: nothing is returned to the interpreter.

Warnings

Note that by default the `width` and `height` values are in pixels not inches. A warning will be issued if both are less than 20.

If you plot more than one page on one of these devices and do not include something like `%d` for the sequence number in `file`, the file will contain the last page plotted.

Differences between OSes

These functions are interfaces to three or more different underlying devices.

- On Windows, devices based on plotting to a hidden screen using Windows' GDI calls.

- On platforms with support for X11, plotting to a hidden X11 display.
- On OS X when working at the console and when is compiled with suitable support, using Apple's Quartz plotting system.
- Where support has been compiled in for cairographics, plotting on cairo surfaces. This may use the native platform support for fonts, or it may use `fontconfig` to support a wide range of font formats. (This was first available on Windows in 2.14.0.)

Inevitably there will be differences between the options supported and output produced. Perhaps the most important are support for antialiased fonts and semi-transparent colours: the best results are likely to be obtained with the cairo- or Quartz-based devices where available.

The default extensions are '`.jpg`' and '`.tif`' on Windows, and '`.jpeg`' and '`.tiff`' elsewhere.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is in pixels.
- Font sizes are in big points interpreted at `res` ppi.
- The default font family is Helvetica.
- Line widths in 1/96 inch (interpreted at `res` ppi), minimum one pixel for `type = "Xlib"`, 0.01 for `type = "cairo"`.
- For `type = "Xlib"` circle radii are in pixels with minimum one.
- Colours are interpreted by the viewing application.

For `type = "quartz"` see the help for `quartz`.

Note

For `type = "Xlib"` these devices are based on the `X11` device. The colour model used will be that set up by `X11.options` at the time the first Xlib-based devices was opened (or the first after all such devices have been closed).

Author(s)

Guido Masarotto and Brian Ripley

References

The PNG specification, `http://www.w3.org/TR/PNG/`.

The TIFF specification, including extensions, at `http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/tiff/`.

See Also

`Devices`, `dev.print`

`capabilities` to see if these devices are supported by this build of , and if `type = "cairo"` is supported.

`bitmap` provides an alternative way to generate plots in many bitmap formats that does not depend on accessing the X11 display but does depend on having GhostScript installed.

Examples

```
## these examples will work only if the devices are available
## and cairo or an X11 display or an OS X display is available.

## copy current plot to a (large) PNG file
## Not run: dev.print(png, file = "myplot.png", width = 1024, height = 768)

png(file = "myplot.png", bg = "transparent")
plot(1:10)
rect(1, 5, 3, 7, col = "white")
dev.off()

## will make myplot1.jpeg and myplot2.jpeg
jpeg(file = "myplot%d.jpeg")
example(rect)
dev.off()
```

`postscript` *PostScript Graphics*

Description

`postscript` starts the graphics device driver for producing PostScript graphics.

Usage

```
postscript(file = ifelse(onefile, "Rplots.ps", "Rplot%03d.ps"),
           onefile, family, title, fonts, encoding, bg, fg,
           width, height, horizontal, pointsize,
           paper, pagecentre, print.it, command,
           colormodel, useKerning, fillOddEven)
```

Arguments

`file`	a character string giving the name of the file. If it is `""`, the output is piped to the command given by the argument `command`. If it is of the form `"|cmd"`, the output is piped to the command given by `cmd`. For use with `onefile = FALSE` give a `printf` format such as `"Rplot%03d.ps"` (the default in that case). The string should not otherwise contain a `%`: if it is really necessary, use `%%` in the string for `%` in the file name. A single integer format matching the regular expression `"%[#0 +=-]*[0-9.]*[diouxX]"` is allowed. Tilde expansion (see `path.expand`) is done.
`onefile`	logical: if true (the default) allow multiple figures in one file. If false, generate a file name containing the page number for each page and use an EPSF header and no `DocumentMedia` comment. Defaults to the `TRUE`.
`family`	the initial font family to be used, normally as a character string. See the section 'Families'. Defaults to `"Helvetica"`.
`title`	title string to embed as the `Title` comment in the file. Defaults to `"R Graphics Output"`.

fonts	a character vector specifying additional graphics font family names for font families whose declarations will be included in the PostScript file and are available for use with the device. See 'Families' below. Defaults to NULL.
encoding	the name of an encoding file. Defaults to "default". The latter is interpreted as '"ISOLatin1.enc"' unless the locale is recognized as corresponding to a language using ISO 8859-{2,5,7,13,15} or KOI8-{R,U}. The file is looked for in the 'enc' directory of package **grDevices** if the path does not contain a path separator. An extension ".enc" can be omitted.
bg	the initial background color to be used. If "transparent" (or any other non-opaque colour), no background is painted. Defaults to "transparent".
fg	the initial foreground color to be used. Defaults to "black".
width, height	the width and height of the graphics region in inches. Default to 0. If paper != "special" and width or height is less than 0.1 or too large to give a total margin of 0.5 inch, the graphics region is reset to the corresponding paper dimension minus 0.5.
horizontal	the orientation of the printed image, a logical. Defaults to true, that is landscape orientation on paper sizes with width less than height.
pointsize	the default point size to be used. Strictly speaking, in bp, that is 1/72 of an inch, but approximately in points. Defaults to 12.
paper	the size of paper in the printer. The choices are "a4", "letter" (or "us"), "legal" and "executive" (and these can be capitalized). Also, "special" can be used, when arguments width and height specify the paper size. A further choice is "default" (the default): If this is selected, the papersize is taken from the option "papersize" if that is set and to "a4" if it is unset or empty.
pagecentre	logical: should the device region be centred on the page? Defaults to true.
print.it	logical: should the file be printed when the device is closed? (This only applies if file is a real file name.) Defaults to false.
command	the command to be used for 'printing'. Defaults to "default", the value of option "printcmd". The length limit is 2*PATH_MAX, typically 8096 bytes.
colormodel	a character string describing the color model: currently allowed values as "srgb", "srgb+gray", "rgb", "rgb-nogray", "gray" (or "grey") and "cmyk". Defaults to "srgb". See section 'Color models'.
useKerning	logical. Should kerning corrections be included in setting text and calculating string widths? Defaults to TRUE.
fillOddEven	logical controlling the polygon fill mode: see polygon for details. Default FALSE.

Details

All arguments except file default to values given by ps.options(). The ultimate defaults are quoted in the arguments section.

postscript opens the file file and the PostScript commands needed to plot any graphics requested are written to that file. This file can then be printed on a suitable device to obtain hard copy.

The file argument is interpreted as a C integer format as used by sprintf, with integer argument the page number. The default gives files 'Rplot001.ps', ..., 'Rplot999.ps', 'Rplot1000.ps', ...

The postscript produced for a single plot is EPS (*Encapsulated PostScript*) compatible, and can be included into other documents, e.g., into LaTeX, using \includegraphics{<filename>}. For use in this way you will probably want to use setEPS() to set the defaults as

horizontal = FALSE, onefile = FALSE, paper = "special". Note that the bounding box is for the *device* region: if you find the white space around the plot region excessive, reduce the margins of the figure region via par(mar =).

Most of the PostScript prologue used is taken from the character vector .ps.prolog. This is marked in the output, and can be changed by changing that vector. (This is only advisable for PostScript experts: the standard version is in namespace:grDevices.)

A PostScript device has a default family, which can be set by the user via family. If other font families are to be used when drawing to the PostScript device, these must be declared when the device is created via fonts; the font family names for this argument are graphics font family names (see the documentation for postscriptFonts).

Line widths as controlled by par(lwd =) are in multiples of 1/96 inch: multiples less than 1 are allowed. pch = "." with cex = 1 corresponds to a square of side 1/72 inch, which is also the 'pixel' size assumed for graphics parameters such as "cra".

When the background colour is fully transparent (as is the initial default value), the PostScript produced does not paint the background. Almost all PostScript viewers will use a white canvas so the visual effect is if the background were white. This will not be the case when printing onto coloured paper, though.

Families

Font families are collections of fonts covering the five font faces, (conventionally plain, bold, italic, bold-italic and symbol) selected by the graphics parameter par(font =) or the grid parameter gpar(fontface =). Font families can be specified either as an an initial/default font family for the device via the family argument or after the device is opened by the graphics parameter par(family =) or the grid parameter gpar(fontfamily =). Families which will be used in addition to the initial family must be specified in the fonts argument when the device is opened.

Font families are declared via a call to postscriptFonts.

The argument family specifies the initial/default font family to be used. In normal use it is one of "AvantGarde", "Bookman", "Courier", "Helvetica", "Helvetica-Narrow", "NewCenturySchoolbook", "Palatino" or "Times", and refers to the standard Adobe PostScript fonts families of those names which are included (or cloned) in all common PostScript devices.

Many PostScript emulators (including those based on ghostscript) use the URW equivalents of these fonts, which are "URWGothic", "URWBookman", "NimbusMon", "NimbusSan", "NimbusSanCond", "CenturySch", "URWPalladio" and "NimbusRom" respectively. If your PostScript device is using URW fonts, you will obtain access to more characters and more appropriate metrics by using these names. To make these easier to remember, "URWHelvetica" == "NimbusSan" and "URWTimes" == "NimbusRom" are also supported.

Another type of family makes use of CID-keyed fonts for East Asian languages – see postscriptFonts.

The family argument is normally a character string naming a font family, but family objects generated by Type1Font and CIDFont are also accepted. For compatibility with earlier versions of , the initial family can also be specified as a vector of four or five afm files.

Note that does not embed the font(s) used in the PostScript output: see embedFonts for a utility to help do so.

Viewers and embedding applications frequently substitute fonts for those specified in the family, and the substitute will often have slightly different font metrics. useKerning = TRUE spaces the letters in the string using kerning corrections for the intended family: this may look uglier than useKerning = FALSE.

Encodings

Encodings describe which glyphs are used to display the character codes (in the range 0–255). Most commonly uses ISOLatin1 encoding, and the examples for `text` are in that encoding. However, the encoding used on machines running may well be different, and by using the `encoding` argument the glyphs can be matched to encoding in use. This suffices for European and Cyrillic languages, but not for CJK languages. For the latter, composite CID fonts are used. These fonts are useful for other languages: for example they may contain Greek glyphs. (The rest of this section applies only when CID fonts are not used.)

None of this will matter if only ASCII characters (codes 32–126) are used as all the encodings (except `"TeXtext"`) agree over that range. Some encodings are supersets of ISOLatin1, too. However, if accented and special characters do not come out as you expect, you may need to change the encoding. Some other encodings are supplied with : `"WinAnsi.enc"` and `"MacRoman.enc"` correspond to the encodings normally used on Windows and Classic Mac OS (at least by Adobe), and `"PDFDoc.enc"` is the first 256 characters of the Unicode encoding, the standard for PDF. There are also encodings `"ISOLatin2.enc"`, `"CP1250.enc"`, `"ISOLatin7.enc"` (ISO 8859-13), `"CP1257.enc"`, and `"ISOLatin9.enc"` (ISO 8859-15), `"Cyrillic.enc"` (ISO 8859-5), `"KOI8-R.enc"`, `"KOI8-U.enc"`, `"CP1251.enc"`, `"Greek.enc"` (ISO 8859-7) and `"CP1253.enc"`. Note that many glyphs in these encodings are not in the fonts corresponding to the standard families. (The Adobe ones for all but Courier, Helvetica and Times cover little more than Latin-1, whereas the URW ones also cover Latin-2, Latin-7, Latin-9 and Cyrillic but no Greek. The Adobe exceptions cover the Latin character sets, but not the Euro.)

If you specify the encoding, it is your responsibility to ensure that the PostScript font contains the glyphs used. One issue here is the Euro symbol which is in the WinAnsi and MacRoman encodings but may well not be in the PostScript fonts. (It is in the URW variants; it is not in the supplied Adobe Font Metric files.)

There is an exception. Character 45 (`"-"`) is always set as minus (its value in Adobe ISOLatin1) even though it is hyphen in the other encodings. Hyphen is available as character 173 (octal 0255) in all the Latin encodings, Cyrillic and Greek. (This can be entered as `"\uad"` in a UTF-8 locale.) There are some discrepancies in accounts of glyphs 39 and 96: the supplied encodings (except CP1250 and CP1251) treat these as 'quoteright' and 'quoteleft' (rather than 'quotesingle'/'acute' and 'grave' respectively), as they are in the Adobe documentation.

TeX fonts

TeX has traditionally made use of fonts such as Computer Modern which are encoded rather differently, in a 7-bit encoding. This encoding can be specified by `encoding = "TeXtext.enc"`, taking care that the ASCII characters `< > \ _ { }` are not available in those fonts.

There are supplied families `"ComputerModern"` and `"ComputerModernItalic"` which use this encoding, and which are only supported for `postscript` (and not `pdf`). They are intended to use with the Type 1 versions of the TeX CM fonts. It will normally be possible to include such output in TeX or LaTeX provided it is processed with `dvips -Ppfb -j0` or the equivalent on your system. (`-j0` turns off font subsetting.) When `family = "ComputerModern"` is used, the italic/bold-italic fonts used are slanted fonts (`cmsl10` and `cmbxsl10`). To use text italic fonts instead, set `family = "ComputerModernItalic"`.

These families use the TeX math italic and symbol fonts for a comprehensive but incomplete coverage of the glyphs covered by the Adobe symbol font in other families. This is achieved by special-casing the postscript code generated from the supplied '`CM_symbol_10.afm`'.

Color models

The default color model (`"srgb"`) is sRGB.

The alternative "srgb+gray" uses sRGB for colors, but with pure gray colors (including black and white) expressed as greyscales (which results in smaller files and can be advantageous with some printer drivers). Conversely, its files can be rendered much slower on some viewers, and there can be a noticeable discontinuity in color gradients involving gray or white.

Other possibilities are "gray" (or "grey") which used only greyscales (and converts other colours to a luminance), and "cmyk". The simplest possible conversion from sRGB to CMYK is used (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CMYK_color_model#Mapping_RGB_to_CMYK), and raster images are output in RGB.

Color models provided for backwards compatibility are "rgb") (which is RGB+gray) and "rgb-nogray" which use uncalibrated RGB (as used in prior to 2.13.0). These result in slightly smaller files which may render faster, but do rely on the viewer being properly calibrated.

Printing

A postscript plot can be printed via postscript in two ways.

1. Setting print.it = TRUE causes the command given in argument command to be called with argument "file" when the device is closed. Note that the plot file is not deleted unless command arranges to delete it.
2. file = "" or file = "|cmd" can be used to print using a pipe. Failure to open the command will probably be reported to the terminal but not to , in which case close the device by dev.off immediately.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is 7 inches square.
- Font sizes are in big points.
- The default font family is Helvetica.
- Line widths are as a multiple of 1/96 inch, with a minimum of 0.01 enforced.
- Circle of any radius are allowed.
- Colours are by default specified as sRGB.

At very small line widths, the line type may be forced to solid.

Raster images are currently limited to opaque colours.

Note

If you see problems with postscript output, do remember that the problem is much more likely to be in your viewer than in . Try another viewer if possible. Symptoms for which the viewer has been at fault are apparent grids on image plots (turn off graphics anti-aliasing in your viewer if you can) and missing or incorrect glyphs in text (viewers silently doing font substitution).

Unfortunately the default viewers on most Linux and OS X systems have these problems, and no obvious way to turn off graphics anti-aliasing.

Author(s)

Support for Computer Modern fonts is based on a contribution by Brian D'Urso <durso@hussle.harvard.edu>.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

postscriptFonts, Devices, and check.options which is called from both ps.options and postscript.

cairo_ps for another device that can produce PostScript.

More details of font families and encodings and especially handling text in a non-Latin-1 encoding and embedding fonts can be found in

Paul Murrell and Brian Ripley (2006) Non-standard fonts in PostScript and PDF graphics. *R News*, 6(2):41–47. http://cran.r-project.org/doc/Rnews/Rnews_2006-2.pdf.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
## Not run:
# open the file "foo.ps" for graphics output
postscript("foo.ps")
# produce the desired graph(s)
dev.off()              # turn off the postscript device
postscript("|lp -dlw")
# produce the desired graph(s)
dev.off()              # plot will appear on printer

# for URW PostScript devices
postscript("foo.ps", family = "NimbusSan")

## for inclusion in Computer Modern TeX documents, perhaps
postscript("cm_test.eps", width = 4.0, height = 3.0,
           horizontal = FALSE, onefile = FALSE, paper = "special",
           family = "ComputerModern", encoding = "TeXtext.enc")
## The resultant postscript file can be used by dvips -Ppfb -j0.

## To test out encodings, you can use
TestChars <- function(encoding = "ISOLatin1", family = "URWHelvetica")
{
    postscript(encoding = encoding, family = family)
    par(pty = "s")
    plot(c(-1,16), c(-1,16), type = "n", xlab = "", ylab = "",
         xaxs = "i", yaxs = "i")
    title(paste("Centred chars in encoding", encoding))
    grid(17, 17, lty = 1)
    for(i in c(32:255)) {
        x <- i %% 16
        y <- i %/% 16
        points(x, y, pch = i)
    }
    dev.off()
}
## there will be many warnings.  We use URW to get a complete enough
## set of font metrics.
TestChars()
TestChars("ISOLatin2")
```

```
TestChars("WinAnsi")

## End(Not run)
```

`postscriptFonts` *PostScript and PDF Font Families*

Description

These functions handle the translation of a graphics font family name to a PostScript or PDF font description, used by the `postscript` or `pdf` graphics devices.

Usage

```
postscriptFonts(...)
pdfFonts(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	either character strings naming mappings to display, or named arguments specifying mappings to add or change.

Details

If these functions are called with no argument they list all the existing mappings, whereas if they are called with named arguments they add (or change) mappings.

A PostScript or PDF device is created with a default font family (see the documentation for `postscript`), but it is also possible to specify a font family when drawing to the device (for example, see the documentation for `"family"` in `par` and for `"fontfamily"` in `gpar` in the **grid** package).

The font family sent to the device is a simple string name, which must be mapped to a set of PostScript fonts. Separate lists of mappings for `postscript` and `pdf` devices are maintained for the current session and can be added to by the user.

The `postscriptFonts` and `pdfFonts` functions can be used to list existing mappings and to define new mappings. The `Type1Font` and `CIDFont` functions can be used to create new mappings, when the `xxxFonts` function is used to add them to the database. See the examples.

Default mappings are provided for three device-independent family names: `"sans"` for a sans-serif font (to `"Helvetica"`), `"serif"` for a serif font (to `"Times"`) and `"mono"` for a monospaced font (to `"Courier"`).

Mappings for a number of standard Adobe fonts (and URW equivalents) are also provided: `"AvantGarde"`, `"Bookman"`, `"Courier"`, `"Helvetica"`, `"Helvetica-Narrow"`, `"NewCenturySchoolbook"`, `"Palatino"` and `"Times"`; `"URWGothic"`, `"URWBookman"`, `"NimbusMon"`, `"NimbusSan"` (synonym `"URWHelvetica"`), `"NimbusSanCond"`, `"CenturySch"`, `"URWPalladio"` and `"NimbusRom"` (synonym `"URWTimes"`).

There are also mappings for `"ComputerModern"`, `"ComputerModernItalic"` and, as from 3.1.0, `"ArialMT"` (Monotype Arial).

Finally, there are some default mappings for East Asian locales described in a separate section.

The specification of font metrics and encodings is described in the help for the `postscript` function.

The fonts are not embedded in the resulting PostScript or PDF file, so software including the PostScript or PDF plot file should either embed the font outlines (usually from '`.pfb`' or '`.pfa`' files) or use DSC comments to instruct the print spooler or including application to do so (see also `embedFonts`).

A font family has both an -level name, the argument name used when `postscriptFonts` was called, and an internal name, the `family` component. These two names are the same for all the pre-defined font families.

Once a font family is in use it cannot be changed. 'In use' means that it has been specified *via* a `family` or `fonts` argument to an invocation of the same graphics device already in the session. (For these purposes `xfig` counts the same as `postscript` but only uses some of the predefined mappings.)

Value

A list of one or more font mappings.

East Asian fonts

There are some default mappings for East Asian locales:
`"Japan1"`, `"Japan1HeiMin"`, `"Japan1GothicBBB"`, and `"Japan1Ryumin"` for Japanese; `"Korea1"` and `"Korea1deb"` for Korean; `"GB1"` (Simplified Chinese) for mainland China and Singapore; `"CNS1"` (Traditional Chinese) for Hong Kong and Taiwan.

These refer to the following fonts

Japan1 (PS)	`HeiseiKakuGo-W5` Linotype Japanese printer font
Japan1 (PDF)	`KozMinPro-Regular-Acro` from Adobe Reader 7.0 Japanese Font Pack
Japan1HeiMin (PS)	`HeiseiMin-W3` Linotype Japanese printer font
Japan1HeiMin (PDF)	`HeiseiMin-W3-Acro` from Adobe Reader 7.0 Japanese Font Pack
Japan1GothicBBB	`GothicBBB-Medium` Japanese-market PostScript printer font
Japan1Ryumin	`Ryumin-Light` Japanese-market PostScript printer font
Korea1 (PS)	`Baekmuk-Batang` TrueType font found on some Linux systems
Korea1 (PDF)	`HYSMyeongJoStd-Medium-Acro` from Adobe Reader 7.0 Korean Font Pack
Korea1deb (PS)	`Batang-Regular` another name for Baekmuk-Batang
Korea1deb (PDF)	`HYGothic-Medium-Acro` from Adobe Reader 4.0 Korean Font Pack
GB1 (PS)	`BousungEG-Light-GB` TrueType font found on some Linux systems
GB1 (PDF)	`STSong-Light-Acro` from Adobe Reader 7.0 Simplified Chinese Font Pack
CNS1 (PS)	`MOESung-Regular` Ken Lunde's CJKV resources

CNS1 (PDF)	MSungStd-Light-Acro from Adobe Reader 7.0 Traditional Chinese Font Pack

BousungEG-Light-GB can be found at ftp://ftp.gnu.org/pub/non-gnu/chinese-fonts-truetype/. Ken Lunde's CJKV resources are at ftp://ftp.oreilly.com/pub/examples/nutshell/cjkv/adobe/samples/. These will need to be installed or otherwise made available to the postscript/PDF interpreter such as ghostscript (and not all interpreters can handle TrueType fonts).

You may well find that your postscript/PDF interpreters has been set up to provide aliases for many of these fonts. For example, ghostscript on Windows can optionally be installed to map common CJK fonts names to Windows TrueType fonts. (You may want to add the -Acro versions as well.)

Adding a mapping for a CID-keyed font is for gurus only.

Author(s)

Support for Computer Modern fonts is based on a contribution by Brian D'Urso.

See Also

postscript and pdf; Type1Font and CIDFont for specifying new font mappings.

Examples

```
postscriptFonts()
## This duplicates "ComputerModernItalic".
CMitalic <- Type1Font("ComputerModern2",
                      c("CM_regular_10.afm", "CM_boldx_10.afm",
                        "cmti10.afm", "cmbxti10.afm",
                         "CM_symbol_10.afm"),
                      encoding = "TeXtext.enc")
postscriptFonts(CMitalic = CMitalic)

## A CID font for Japanese using a different CMap and
## corresponding cmapEncoding.
Jp_UCS-2 <- CIDFont("TestUCS2",
                    c("Adobe-Japan1-UniJIS-UCS2-H.afm",
                      "Adobe-Japan1-UniJIS-UCS2-H.afm",
                      "Adobe-Japan1-UniJIS-UCS2-H.afm",
                      "Adobe-Japan1-UniJIS-UCS2-H.afm"),
                    "UniJIS-UCS2-H", "UCS-2")
pdfFonts(Jp_UCS-2 = Jp_UCS-2)
names(pdfFonts())
```

---

pretty.Date *Pretty Breakpoints for Date-Time Classes*

Description

Compute a sequence of about n+1 equally spaced 'nice' values which cover the range of the values in x.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class Date
pretty(x, n = 5, min.n = n %/% 2, sep = " ", ...)
## S3 method for class POSIXt
pretty(x, n = 5, min.n = n %/% 2, sep = " ", ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "Date" or "POSIXt" (i.e., "POSIXct" or "POSIXlt").
n	integer giving the *desired* number of intervals.
min.n	nonnegative integer giving the *minimal* number of intervals.
sep	character string, serving as a separator for certain formats (e.g., between month and year).
...	further arguments for compatibility with the generic, ignored.

Value

A vector (of the suitable class) of locations, with attribute "labels" giving corresponding formatted character labels.

See Also

pretty for the default method.

Examples

```
steps <-
    list("10 secs", "1 min", "5 mins", "30 mins", "6 hours", "12 hours",
         "1 DSTday", "2 weeks", "1 month", "6 months", "1 year",
         "10 years", "50 years", "1000 years")

names(steps) <- paste("span =", unlist(steps))

x <- as.POSIXct("2002-02-02 02:02")
lapply(steps,
       function(s) {
           at <- pretty(seq(x, by = s, length = 2), n = 5)
           attr(at, "labels")
       })
```

---

ps.options *Auxiliary Function to Set/View Defaults for Arguments of postscript*

Description

The auxiliary function ps.options can be used to set or view (if called without arguments) the default values for some of the arguments to postscript.

ps.options needs to be called before calling postscript, and the default values it sets can be overridden by supplying arguments to postscript.

Usage

```
ps.options(..., reset = FALSE, override.check = FALSE)

setEPS(...)
setPS(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	arguments `onefile`, `family`, `title`, `fonts`, `encoding`, `bg`, `fg`, `width`, `height`, `horizontal`, `pointsize`, `paper`, `pagecentre`, `print.it`, `command`, `colormodel` and `fillOddEven` can be supplied. `onefile`, `horizontal` and `paper` are *ignored* for `setEPS` and `setPS`.
`reset`	logical: should the defaults be reset to their 'factory-fresh' values?
`override.check`	logical argument passed to `check.options`. See the Examples.

Details

If both `reset = TRUE` and `...` are supplied the defaults are first reset to the 'factory-fresh' values and then the new values are applied.

For backwards compatibility argument `append` is accepted but ignored with a warning.

`setEPS` and `setPS` are wrappers to set defaults appropriate for figures for inclusion in documents (the default size is 7 inches square unless `width` or `height` is supplied) and for spooling to a PostScript printer respectively. For historical reasons the latter is the ultimate default.

Value

A named list of all the previous defaults. If `...` or `reset = TRUE` is supplied the result has the visibility flag turned off.

See Also

`postscript`, `pdf.options`

Examples

```
ps.options(bg = "pink")
utils::str(ps.options())

### ---- error checking of arguments: ----
ps.options(width = 0:12, onefile = 0, bg = pi)
# override the check for width, but not bg:
ps.options(width = 0:12, bg = pi, override.check = c(TRUE,FALSE))
utils::str(ps.options())
ps.options(reset = TRUE) # back to factory-fresh
```

quartz *OS X Quartz Device*

Description

quartz starts a graphics device driver for the OS X System. It supports plotting both to the screen (the default) and to various graphics file formats.

Usage

```
quartz(title, width, height, pointsize, family, antialias, type,
      file = NULL, bg, canvas, dpi)

quartz.options(..., reset = FALSE)

quartz.save(file, type = "png", device = dev.cur(), dpi = 100, ...)
```

Arguments

title	title for the Quartz window (applies to on-screen output only), default "Quartz %d". A C-style format for an integer will be substituted by the device number (see the file argument to postscript for further details).
width	the width of the plotting area in inches. Default 7.
height	the height of the plotting area in inches. Default 7.
pointsize	the default pointsize to be used. Default 12.
family	this is the family name of the font that will be used by the device. Default "Arial". This will be the base name of a font as shown in Font Book.
antialias	whether to use antialiasing. Default TRUE.
type	the type of output to use. See 'Details' for more information. Default "native".
file	an optional target for the graphics device. The default, NULL, selects a default name where one is needed. See 'Details' for more information.
bg	the initial background colour to use for the device. Default "transparent". An opaque colour such as "white" will normally be required on off-screen types that support transparency such as "png" and "tiff".
canvas	canvas colour to use for an on-screen device. Default "white", and will be forced to be an opaque colour.
dpi	resolution of the output. The default (NA_real_) for an on-screen display defaults to the resolution of the main screen, and to 72 dpi otherwise. See 'Details'.
...	Any of the arguments to quartz except file.
reset	logical: should the defaults be reset to their defaults?
device	device number to copy from.

Details

The defaults for all but one of the arguments of quartz are set by quartz.options: the 'Arguments' section gives the 'factory-fresh' defaults.

The Quartz graphics device supports a variety of output types. On-screen output types are "" or "native" or "Cocoa". Off-screen output types produce output files and utilize the file argument. type = "pdf" gives PDF output. The following bitmap formats may be supported (depending on the OS version): "png", "jpeg", "jpg", "jpeg2000", "tif", "tiff", "gif", "psd" (Adobe Photoshop), "bmp" (Windows bitmap), "sgi" and "pict".

The file argument is used for off-screen drawing. The actual file is only created when the device is closed (e.g., using dev.off()). For the bitmap devices, the page number is substituted if a C integer format is included in the character string, e.g. Rplot%03d.png. (The result must be less than PATH_MAX characters long, and may be truncated if not. See postscript for further details.) If a file argument is not supplied, the default is Rplots.pdf or Rplot%03d.*type*. Tilde expansion (see path.expand) is done.

If a device-independent graphics font family is specified (e.g., via par(family =) in the graphics package), the Quartz device makes use of the Quartz font database (see quartzFonts) to convert the R graphics font family to a Quartz-specific font family description. The default conversions are (MonoType TrueType versions of) Helvetica for sans, Times-Roman for serif and Courier for mono.

On-screen devices are launched with a semi-transparent canvas. Once a new plot is created, the canvas is first painted with the canvas colour and then the current background colour (which can be transparent or semi-transparent). Off-screen devices have no canvas colour, and so start with a transparent background where possible (e.g., type = "png" and type = "tiff") – otherwise it appears that a solid white canvas is assumed in the Quartz code. PNG and TIFF files are saved with a dark grey matte which will show up in some viewers, including Preview.

title can be used for on-screen output. It must be a single character string with an optional integer printf-style format that will be substituted by the device number. It is also optionally used (without a format) to give a title to a PDF file.

Calling quartz() sets .Device to "quartz" for on-screen devices and to "quartz_off_screen" otherwise.

The font family chosen needs to cover the characters to be used: characters not in the font are rendered as empty oblongs. For non-Western-European languages something other than the default of "Arial" is likely to be needed—one choice for Chinese is "MingLiU".

quartz.save is a modified version of dev.copy2pdf to copy the plot from the current screen device to a quartz device, by default to a PNG file.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is 7 inches square.
- Font sizes are in big points.
- The default font family is Arial.
- Line widths are a multiple of 1/96 inch with no minimum set by .
- Circle radii are real-valued with no minimum set by .
- Colours are specified as sRGB.

Note

For a long time the default font family was documented as "Helvetica" after it had been changed to "Arial" to work around a deficiency in OS X 10.4. It may be changed back in future.

A fairly common Mac problem is no text appearing on plots due to corrupted or duplicated fonts on your system. You may be able to confirm this by using another font family, e.g. family = "serif". Open the Font Book application (in Applications) and check the fonts that you are using.

See Also

quartzFonts, Devices.

png for way to access the bitmap types of this device via 's standard bitmap devices.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## put something like this is your .Rprofile to customize the defaults
setHook(packageEvent("grDevices", "onLoad"),
        function(...) grDevices::quartz.options(width = 8, height = 6,
                                                pointsize = 10))

## End(Not run)
```

---

quartzFonts *quartz Fonts*

Description

These functions handle the translation of a device-independent R graphics font family name to a quartz font description.

Usage

```
quartzFont(family)

quartzFonts(...)
```

Arguments

family	a character vector containing the four PostScript font names for plain, bold, italic, and bolditalic versions of a font family.
...	either character strings naming mappings to display, or new (named) mappings to define.

Details

A quartz device is created with a default font (see the documentation for quartz), but it is also possible to specify a font family when drawing to the device (for example, see the documentation for gpar in the grid package).

The font family sent to the device is a simple string name, which must be mapped to something more specific to quartz fonts. A list of mappings is maintained and can be modified by the user.

The quartzFonts function can be used to list existing mappings and to define new mappings. The quartzFont function can be used to create a new mapping.

Default mappings are provided for three device-independent font family names: "sans" for a sans-serif font, "serif" for a serif font and "mono" for a monospaced font.

See Also

quartz

Examples

```
quartzFonts()
quartzFonts("mono")
## Not run:
## for CJK locales you can use something like
quartzFonts(sans = quartzFont(rep("AppleGothic", 4)),
            serif = quartzFont(rep("AppleMyungjp", 4)))
## since the default fonts may well not have the glyphs needed

## End(Not run)
```

---

recordGraphics *Record Graphics Operations*

Description

Records arbitrary code on the graphics engine display list. Useful for encapsulating calculations with graphical output that depends on the calculations. Intended *only* for expert use.

Usage

```
recordGraphics(expr, list, env)
```

Arguments

expr	object of mode expression or call or an unevaluated expression.
list	a list defining the environment in which expr is to be evaluated.
env	An environment specifying where looks for objects not found in envir.

Details

The code in expr is evaluated in an environment constructed from list, with env as the parent of that environment.

All three arguments are saved on the graphics engine display list so that on a device resize or copying between devices, the original evaluation environment can be recreated and the code can be re-evaluated to reproduce the graphical output.

Value

The value from evaluating expr.

Warning

This function is not intended for general use. Incorrect or improper use of this function could lead to unintended and/or undesirable results.

An example of acceptable use is querying the current state of a graphics device or graphics system setting and then calling a graphics function.

An example of improper use would be calling the `assign` function to performing assignments in the global environment.

See Also

`eval`

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(1:10)
# This rectangle remains 1inch wide when the device is resized
recordGraphics(
  {
    rect(4, 2,
         4 + diff(par("usr")[1:2])/par("pin")[1], 3)
  },
  list(),
  getNamespace("graphics"))
```

`recordPlot` *Record and Replay Plots*

Description

Functions to save the current plot in an variable, and to replay it.

Usage

```
recordPlot()
replayPlot(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	A saved plot.

Details

These functions record and replay the displaylist of the current graphics device. The returned object is of class `"recordedplot"`, and `replayPlot` acts as a `print` method for that class.

The returned object is stored as a pairlist, but the usual methods for examining objects such as `deparse` and `str` are liable to mislead.

Value

`recordPlot` returns an object of class `"recordedplot"`.

`replayPlot` has no return value.

Warning

The format of recorded plots may change between versions. Recorded plots can **not** be used as a permanent storage format for plots. There were extensive changes in 3.0.0, and now only plots from the current session can be replayed.

See Also

The displaylist can be turned on and off using `dev.control`. Initially recording is on for screen devices, and off for print devices.

---

rgb *RGB Color Specification*

Description

This function creates colors corresponding to the given intensities (between 0 and `max`) of the red, green and blue primaries. The colour specification refers to the standard sRGB colorspace (IEC standard 61966).

An alpha transparency value can also be specified (as an opacity, so `0` means fully transparent and `max` means opaque). If `alpha` is not specified, an opaque colour is generated.

The `names` argument may be used to provide names for the colors.

The values returned by these functions can be used with a `col=` specification in graphics functions or in `par`.

Usage

```
rgb(red, green, blue, alpha, names = NULL, maxColorValue = 1)
```

Arguments

`red, blue, green, alpha`	numeric vectors with values in $[0, M]$ where M is `maxColorValue`. When this is `255`, the `red`, `blue`, `green`, and `alpha` values are coerced to integers in `0:255` and the result is computed most efficiently.
`names`	character. The names for the resulting vector.
`maxColorValue`	number giving the maximum of the color values range, see above.

Details

The colors may be specified by passing a matrix or data frame as argument `red`, and leaving `blue` and `green` missing. In this case the first three columns of `red` are taken to be the `red`, `green` and `blue` values.

Semi-transparent colors (`0 < alpha < 1`) are supported only on some devices: at the time of writing on the `pdf`, `windows`, `quartz` and `X11(type = "cairo")` devices and associated bitmap devices (`jpeg`, `png`, `bmp`, `tiff` and `bitmap`). They are supported by several third-party devices such as those in packages **Cairo**, **cairoDevice** and **JavaGD**. Only some of these devices support semi-transparent backgrounds.

Most other graphics devices plot semi-transparent colors as fully transparent, usually with a warning when first encountered.

`NA` values are not allowed for any of `red`, `blue`, `green` or `alpha`.

Value

A character vector with elements of 7 or 9 characters, `"#"` followed by the red, blue, green and optionally alpha values in hexadecimal (after rescaling to `0 ... 255`). The optional alpha values range from `0` (fully transparent) to `255` (opaque).

does **not** use 'premultiplied alpha'.

See Also

`col2rgb` for translating colors to RGB vectors; `rainbow`, `hsv`, `hcl`, `gray`.

Examples

```
rgb(0, 1, 0)

rgb((0:15)/15, green = 0, blue = 0, names = paste("red", 0:15, sep = "."))

rgb(0, 0:12, 0, max = 255) # integer input

ramp <- colorRamp(c("red", "white"))
rgb( ramp(seq(0, 1, length = 5)), max = 255)
```

`rgb2hsv` *RGB to HSV Conversion*

Description

`rgb2hsv` transforms colors from RGB space (red/green/blue) into HSV space (hue/saturation/value).

Usage

```
rgb2hsv(r, g = NULL, b = NULL, maxColorValue = 255)
```

Arguments

r	vector of 'red' values in $[0, M]$, (M =maxColorValue) or 3-row rgb matrix.
g	vector of 'green' values, or NULL when r is a matrix.
b	vector of 'blue' values, or NULL when r is a matrix.
maxColorValue	number giving the maximum of the RGB color values range. The default 255 corresponds to the typical 0:255 RGB coding as in col2rgb().

Details

Value (brightness) gives the amount of light in the color.
Hue describes the dominant wavelength.
Saturation is the amount of Hue mixed into the color.

An HSV colorspace is relative to an RGB colorspace, which in is sRGB, which has an implicit gamma correction.

Value

A matrix with a column for each color. The three rows of the matrix indicate hue, saturation and value and are named "h", "s", and "v" accordingly.

Author(s)

interface by Wolfram Fischer <wolfram@fischer-zim.ch>;
C code mainly by Nicholas Lewin-Koh <nikko@hailmail.net>.

See Also

hsv, col2rgb, rgb.

Examples

```
## These (saturated, bright ones) only differ by hue
(rc <- col2rgb(c("red", "yellow","green","cyan", "blue", "magenta")))
(hc <- rgb2hsv(rc))
6 * hc["h",] # the hues are equispaced


(rgb3 <- floor(256 * matrix(stats::runif(3*12), 3, 12)))
(hsv3 <- rgb2hsv(rgb3))
## Consistency :
stopifnot(rgb3 == col2rgb(hsv(h = hsv3[1,], s = hsv3[2,], v = hsv3[3,])),
          all.equal(hsv3, rgb2hsv(rgb3/255, maxColorValue = 1)))

## A (simplified) pure R version -- originally by Wolfram Fischer --
## showing the exact algorithm:
rgb2hsvR <- function(rgb, gamma = 1, maxColorValue = 255)
{
    if(!is.numeric(rgb)) stop("rgb matrix must be numeric")
    d <- dim(rgb)
    if(d[1] != 3) stop("rgb matrix must have 3 rows")
    n <- d[2]
    if(n == 0) return(cbind(c(h = 1, s = 1, v = 1))[,0])
    rgb <- rgb/maxColorValue
    if(gamma != 1) rgb <- rgb ^ (1/gamma)
```

```
    ## get the max and min
    v <- apply( rgb, 2, max)
    s <- apply( rgb, 2, min)
    D <- v - s # range

    ## set hue to zero for undefined values (gray has no hue)
    h <- numeric(n)
    notgray <- ( s != v )

    ## blue hue
    idx <- (v == rgb[3,] & notgray )
    if (any (idx))
        h[idx] <- 2/3 + 1/6 * (rgb[1,idx] - rgb[2,idx]) / D[idx]
    ## green hue
    idx <- (v == rgb[2,] & notgray )
    if (any (idx))
        h[idx] <- 1/3 + 1/6 * (rgb[3,idx] - rgb[1,idx]) / D[idx]
    ## red hue
    idx <- (v == rgb[1,] & notgray )
    if (any (idx))
        h[idx] <-       1/6 * (rgb[2,idx] - rgb[3,idx]) / D[idx]

    ## correct for negative red
    idx <- (h < 0)
    h[idx] <- 1+h[idx]

    ## set the saturation
    s[! notgray] <- 0;
    s[notgray] <- 1 - s[notgray] / v[notgray]

    rbind( h = h, s = s, v = v )
}

## confirm the equivalence:
all.equal(rgb2hsv (rgb3),
          rgb2hsvR(rgb3), tolerance = 1e-14) # TRUE
```

---

savePlot *Save Cairo X11 Plot to File*

Description

Save the current page of a cairo X11() device to a file.

Usage

```
savePlot(filename = paste("Rplot", type, sep = "."),
         type = c("png", "jpeg", "tiff", "bmp"),
         device = dev.cur())
```

Arguments

filename	filename to save to.

type	file type: only "png" will be accepted for cairo version 1.0.
device	the device to save from.

Details

Only cairo-based X11 devices are supported.

This works by copying the image surface to a file. For PNG will always be a 24-bit per pixel PNG 'DirectClass' file, for JPEG the quality is 75% and for TIFF there is no compression.

For devices with buffering this copies the buffer's image surface, so works even if dev.hold has been called.

At present the plot is saved after rendering onto the canvas (default opaque white), so for the default bg = "transparent" the effective background colour is the canvas colour.

Value

Invisible NULL.

Note

There is a similar function of the same name but more types for windows devices on Windows.

See Also

X11, dev.copy, dev.print

---

trans3d *3D to 2D Transformation for Perspective Plots*

Description

Projection of 3-dimensional to 2-dimensional points using a 4x4 viewing transformation matrix. Mainly for adding to perspective plots such as persp.

Usage

```
trans3d(x, y, z, pmat)
```

Arguments

x, y, z	numeric vectors of equal length, specifying points in 3D space.
pmat	a 4×4 *viewing transformation matrix*, suitable for projecting the 3D coordinates (x, y, z) into the 2D plane using homogeneous 4D coordinates (x, y, z, t); such matrices are returned by persp().

Value

a list with two components

x,y	the projected 2d coordinates of the 3d input (x,y,z).

See Also

persp

Examples

```
## See  help(persp) {after attaching the graphics package}
##      -----------
```

Type1Font *Type 1 and CID Fonts*

Description

These functions are used to define the translation of a graphics font family name to a Type 1 or CID font descriptions, used by both the postscript and pdf graphics devices.

Usage

```
Type1Font(family, metrics, encoding = "default")

CIDFont(family, cmap, cmapEncoding, pdfresource = "")
```

Arguments

family	a character string giving the name to be used internally for a Type 1 or CID-keyed font family. This needs to uniquely identify each family, so if you modify a family which is in use (see postscriptFonts) you need to change the family name.
metrics	a character vector of four or five strings giving paths to the afm (Adobe Font Metric) files for the font.
cmap	the name of a CMap file for a CID-keyed font.
encoding	for Type1Font, the name of an encoding file. Defaults to "default", which maps on Unix-alikes to "ISOLatin1.enc" and on Windows to "WinAnsi.enc". Otherwise, a file name in the 'enc' directory of the **grDevices** package, which is used if the path does not contain a path separator. An extension ".enc" can be omitted.
cmapEncoding	The name of a character encoding to be used with the named CMap file: strings will be translated to this encoding when written to the file.
pdfresource	A chunk of PDF code; only required for using a CID-keyed font on pdf; users should not be expected to provide this.

Details

For Type1Fonts, if four '.afm' files are supplied the fifth is taken to be "Symbol.afm". Relative paths are taken relative to the directory '*R_HOME*/library/grDevices/afm'. The fifth (symbol) font must be in AdobeSym encoding. However, the glyphs in the first four fonts are referenced by name and any encoding given within the '.afm' files is not used.

The '.afm' files may be compressed with (or without) final extension '.gz': the files which ship with are installed as compressed files with this extension.

Glyphs in CID-keyed fonts are accessed by ID (number) and not by name. The CMap file maps encoded strings (usually in a MBCS) to IDs, so `cmap` and `cmapEncoding` specifications must match. There are no real bold or italic versions of CID fonts (bold/italic were very rarely used in traditional CJK topography), and for the `pdf` device all four font faces will be identical. However, for the `postscript` device, bold and italic (and bold italic) are emulated.

CID-keyed fonts are intended only for use for the glyphs of CJK languages, which are all monospaced and are all treated as filling the same bounding box. (Thus `plotmath` will work with such characters, but the spacing will be less carefully controlled than with Western glyphs.) The CID-keyed fonts do contain other characters, including a Latin alphabet: non-CJK glyphs are regarded as monospaced with half the width of CJK glyphs. This is often the case, but sometimes Latin glyphs designed for proportional spacing are used (and may look odd). We strongly recommend that CID-keyed fonts are **only** used for CJK glyphs.

Value

A list of class `"Type1Font"` or `"CIDFont"`.

See Also

`postscript`, `pdf`, `postscriptFonts`, and `pdfFonts`.

Examples

```
## This duplicates "ComputerModernItalic".
CMitalic <- Type1Font("ComputerModern2",
                      c("CM_regular_10.afm", "CM_boldx_10.afm",
                        "cmti10.afm", "cmbxti10.afm",
                        "CM_symbol_10.afm"),
                      encoding = "TeXtext.enc")

## Not run:
## This could be used by
postscript(family = CMitalic)
## or
postscriptFonts(CMitalic = CMitalic)  # once in a session
postscript(family = "CMitalic", encoding = "TeXtext.enc")

## End(Not run)
```

---

x11 *X Window System Graphics*

Description

`X11` starts a graphics device driver for the X Window System (version 11). This can only be done on machines/accounts that have access to an X server.

`x11` is recognized as a synonym for `X11`.

The function is a wrapper for two devices, one based on Xlib (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xlib) and one using cairographics (http://www.cairographics.org).

Usage

```
X11(display = "", width, height, pointsize, gamma, bg, canvas,
    fonts, family, xpos, ypos, title, type, antialias)

X11.options(..., reset = FALSE)
```

Arguments

display	the display on which the graphics window will appear. The default is to use the value in the user's environment variable DISPLAY. This is ignored (with a warning) if an X11 device is already open on another display.
width, height	the width and height of the plotting window, in inches. If NA, taken from the resources and if not specified there defaults to 7 inches. See also 'Resources'.
pointsize	the default pointsize to be used. Defaults to 12.
gamma	gamma correction fudge factor. Colours in R are sRGB; if your monitor does not conform to sRGB, you might be able to improve things by tweaking this parameter to apply additional gamma correction to the RGB channels. By default 1 (no additional gamma correction).
bg	colour, the initial background colour. Default "transparent".
canvas	colour. The colour of the canvas, which is visible only when the background colour is transparent. Should be an opaque colour (and any alpha value will be ignored). Default "white".
fonts	for type = "Xlib" only: X11 font description strings into which weight, slant and size will be substituted. There are two, the first for fonts 1 to 4 and the second for font 5, the symbol font. See section 'Fonts'.
family	The default family: a length-one character string. This is primarily intended for cairo-based devices, but for type = "Xlib", the X11Fonts() database is used to map family names to fonts (and this argument takes precedence over that one).
xpos, ypos	integer: initial position of the top left corner of the window, in pixels. Negative values are from the opposite corner, e.g. xpos = -100 says the top right corner should be 100 pixels from the right edge of the screen. If NA (the default), successive devices are cascaded in 20 pixel steps from the top left. See also 'Resources'.
title	character string, up to 100 bytes. With the default, "", a suitable title is created internally. A C-style format for an integer will be substituted by the device number (see the file argument to postscript for further details). How non-ASCII titles are handled is implementation-dependent.
type	character string, one of "Xlib", "cairo", "nbcairo" or "dbcairo". Only the first will be available if the system was compiled without support for cairographics. The default is "cairo" where available except on OS X, otherwise "Xlib".
antialias	for cairo types, the type of anti-aliasing (if any) to be used. One of c("default", "none", "gray", "subpixel").
reset	logical: should the defaults be reset to their defaults?
...	Any of the arguments to X11, plus colortype and maxcubesize (see section 'Colour Rendering').

Details

The defaults for all of the arguments of X11 are set by X11.options: the 'Arguments' section gives the 'factory-fresh' defaults.

The initial size and position are only hints, and may not be acted on by the window manager. Also, some systems (especially laptops) are set up to appear to have a screen of a different size to the physical screen.

Option type selects between two separate devices: can be built with support for neither, type = "Xlib" or both. Where both are available, types "cairo", "nbcairo" and "dbcairo" offer

- antialiasing of text and lines.
- translucent colours.
- scalable text, including to sizes like 4.5 pt.
- full support for UTF-8, so on systems with suitable fonts you can plot in many languages on a single figure (and this will work even in non-UTF-8 locales). The output should be locale-independent.

There are three variants of the cairo-based device. type = "nbcairo" has no buffering. type = "cairo" has some buffering, and supports dev.hold and dev.flush. type = "dbcairo" buffers output and updates the screen about every 100ms (by default). The refresh interval can be set (in units of seconds) by e.g. options(X11updates = 0.25): the value is consulted when a device is opened. Updates are only looked for every 50ms (at most), and during heavy graphics computations only every 500ms.

Which version will be fastest depends on the X11 connection and the type of plotting. You will probably want to use a buffered type unless backing store is in use on the X server (which for example it always is on OS X displays), as otherwise repainting when the window is exposed will be slow. On slow connections type = "dbcairo" will probably give the best performance.

Because of known problems with font selection on OS X without Pango (for example, the CRAN distribution), type = "cairo" is not the default there. These problems have included mixing up bold and italic (since worked around), selecting incorrect glyphs and ugly or missing symbol glyphs.

All devices which use an X11 server (including the type = "Xlib" versions of bitmap devices such as png) share internal structures, which means that they must use the same display and visual. If you want to change display, first close all such devices.

The cursor shown indicates the state of the device. If quiescent the cursor is an arrow: when the locator is in use it is a crosshair cursor, and when plotting computations are in progress (and this can be detected) it is a watch cursor. (The exact cursors displayed will depend on the window manager in use.)

X11 Fonts

This section applies only to type = "Xlib".

An initial/default font family for the device can be specified via the fonts argument, but if a device-independent R graphics font family is specified (e.g., via par(family =) in the graphics package), the X11 device makes use of the X11 font database (see X11Fonts) to convert the R graphics font family to an X11-specific font family description. If family is supplied as an argument, the X11 font database is used to convert that, but otherwise the argument fonts (with default given by X11.options) is used.

X11 chooses fonts by matching to a pattern, and it is quite possible that it will choose a font in the wrong encoding or which does not contain glyphs for your language (particularly common in iso10646-1 fonts).

The fonts argument is a two-element character vector, and the first element will be crucial in successfully using non-Western-European fonts. Settings that have proved useful include

"-*-mincho-%s-%s-*-*-%d-*-*-*-*-*-*-*" for CJK languages and "-cronyx-helvetica-%s-%s-*-*-%d-*-*-*-*-*-*-*" for Russian.

For UTF-8 locales, the XLC_LOCALE databases provide mappings between character encodings, and you may need to add an entry for your locale (e.g., Fedora Core 3 lacked one for ru_RU.utf8).

Cairo Fonts

The cairographics-based devices work directly with font family names such as "Helvetica" which can be selected initially by the family argument and subsequently by par or gpar. There are mappings for the three device-independent font families, "sans" for a sans-serif font (to "Helvetica"), "serif" for a serif font (to "Times") and "mono" for a monospaced font (to "Courier").

The font selection is handled by Pango (usually *via* fontconfig) or fontconfig (on OS X and perhaps elsewhere). The results depend on the fonts installed on the system running – setting the environmnent variable FC_DEBUG to 1 normally allows some tracing of the selection process.

This works best when high-quality scalable fonts are installed, usually in Type 1 or TrueType formats: see the "R Installation and Administration Manual" for advice on how to obtain and install such fonts. At present the best rendering (including using kerning) will be achieved with TrueType fonts: see http://www.freedesktop.org/software/fontconfig/fontconfig-user.html for ways to set up your system to prefer them. The default family ("Helvetica") is likely not to use kerning: alternatives which should if you have them installed are "Arial", "DejaVu Sans" and "Liberation Sans" (and perhaps "FreeSans"). For those who prefer fonts with serifs, try "Times New Roman", "DejaVu Serif" and "Liberation Serif". To match LaTeX text, use something like "CM Roman".

Problems with incorrect rendering of symbols (e.g., of quote(pi) and expression(10^degree)) have been seen on Linux systems which have the Wine symbol font installed – fontconfig then prefers this and misinterprets its encoding. Adding the following lines to '~/.fonts.conf' or '/etc/fonts/local.conf' may circumvent this problem by preferring the URW Type 1 symbol font.

```
<fontconfig>
<match target="pattern">
  <test name="family"><string>Symbol</string></test>
  <edit name="family" mode="prepend" binding="same">
    <string>Standard Symbols L</string>
  </edit>
</match>
</fontconfig>
```

A test for this is to run at the command line fc-match Symbol. If that shows symbol.ttf that may be the Wine symbol font – use locate symbol.ttf to see if it is found from a directory with 'wine' in the name.

Resources

The standard X11 resource geometry can be used to specify the window position and/or size, but will be overridden by values specified as arguments or non-NA defaults set in X11.options. The class looked for is R_x11. Note that the resource specifies the width and height in pixels and not in inches. See for example 'man X' (or http://www.xfree86.org/current/X.7.html). An example line in '~/.Xresources' might be

```
R_x11*geometry: 900x900-0+0
```

which specifies a 900 x 900 pixel window at the top right of the screen.

Colour Rendering

X11 supports several 'visual' types, and nowadays almost all systems support 'truecolor' which `X11` will use by default. This uses a direct specification of any RGB colour up to the depth supported (usually 8 bits per colour). Other visuals make use of a palette to support fewer colours, only grays or even only black/white. The palette is shared between all X11 clients, so it can be necessary to limit the number of colours used by .

The default for `type = "Xlib"` is to use the best possible colour model for the visual of the X11 server: these days this will almost always be 'truecolor'. This can be overridden by the `colortype` argument of `X11.options`. **Note:** All `X11` and `type = "Xlib"` `bmp`, `jpeg`, `png` and `tiff` devices share a `colortype` which is set when the first device to be opened. To change the `colortype` you need to close *all* open such devices, and then use `X11.options(colortype =)`.

The colortype types are tried in the order `"true"`, `"pseudo"`, `"gray"` and `"mono"` (black or white only). The values `"pseudo"` and `"pseudo.cube"` provide two colour strategies for a pseudocolor visual. The first strategy provides on-demand colour allocation which produces exact colours until the colour resources of the display are exhausted (when plotting will fail). The second allocates (if possible) a standard colour cube, and requested colours are approximated by the closest value in the cube.

With `colortype` equal to `"pseudo.cube"` or `"gray"` successively smaller palettes are tried until one is completely allocated. If allocation of the smallest attempt fails the device will revert to `"mono"`. For `"gray"` the search starts at 256 grays for a display with depth greater than 8, otherwise with half the available colours. For `"pseudo.cube"` the maximum cube size is set by `X11.options(maxcolorsize =)` and defaults to 256. With that setting the largest cube tried is 4 levels each for RGB, using 64 colours in the palette.

The cairographics-based devices most likely only work (or work correctly) with 'TrueColor' visuals, although in principle this depends on the cairo installation: a warning is given if any other visual is encountered.

`type = "Xlib"` supports 'TrueColor', 'PseudoColor', 'GrayScale', `StaticGray` and `MonoChrome` visuals: 'StaticColor' and 'DirectColor' visuals are handled only in black/white.

Anti-aliasing

Anti-aliasing is only supported for cairographics-based devices, and applies to both graphics and fonts. It is generally preferable for lines and text, but can lead to undesirable effects for fills, e.g. for `image` plots, and so is never used for fills.

`antialias = "default"` is in principle platform-dependent, but seems most often equivalent to `antialias = "gray"`.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is 7 inches square.
- Font sizes are in big points.
- The default font family is Helvetica.
- Line widths in 1/96 inch, minimum one pixel for `type = "Xlib"`, 0.01 otherwise.

- For `type = "Xlib"` circle radii are in pixels with minimum one.
- Colours are interpreted by the X11 server, which is *assumed* to conform to sRGB.

See Also

`Devices`, `X11Fonts`, `savePlot`.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## put something like this is your .Rprofile to customize the defaults
setHook(packageEvent("grDevices", "onLoad"),
        function(...) grDevices::X11.options(width = 8, height = 6, xpos = 0,
                                             pointsize = 10))

## End(Not run)
```

`X11Fonts` *X11 Fonts*

Description

These functions handle the translation of a device-independent R graphics font family name to an X11 font description.

Usage

```
X11Font(font)

X11Fonts(...)
```

Arguments

`font`	a character string containing an X11 font description.
`...`	either character strings naming mappings to display, or new (named) mappings to define.

Details

These functions apply only to an `X11` device with `type = "Xlib"` – `X11(type = "cairo")` uses a different mechanism to select fonts.

Such a device is created with a default font (see the documentation for `X11`), but it is also possible to specify a font family when drawing to the device (for example, see the documentation for `"family"` in `par` and for `"fontfamily"` in `gpar` in the **grid** package).

The font family sent to the device is a simple string name, which must be mapped to something more specific to X11 fonts. A list of mappings is maintained and can be modified by the user.

The `X11Fonts` function can be used to list existing mappings and to define new mappings. The `X11Font` function can be used to create a new mapping.

Default mappings are provided for three device-independent font family names: `"sans"` for a sans-serif font, `"serif"` for a serif font and `"mono"` for a monospaced font. Further mappings are provided for `"Helvetica"` (the device default), `"Times"`, `"CyrHelvetica"`, `"CyrTimes"` (versions of these fonts with Cyrillic support, at least on Linux), `"Arial"` (on some platforms including OS X and Solaris) and `"Mincho"` (a CJK font).

See Also

X11

Examples

```
X11Fonts()
X11Fonts("mono")
utopia <- X11Font("-*-utopia-*-*-*-*-*-*-*-*-*-*-*-*")
X11Fonts(utopia = utopia)
```

---

xfig *XFig Graphics Device*

Description

`xfig` starts the graphics device driver for producing XFig (version 3.2) graphics.

The auxiliary function `ps.options` can be used to set and view (if called without arguments) default values for the arguments to `xfig` and `postscript`.

Usage

```
xfig(file = ifelse(onefile, "Rplots.fig", "Rplot%03d.fig"),
     onefile = FALSE, encoding = "none",
     paper = "default", horizontal = TRUE,
     width = 0, height = 0, family = "Helvetica",
     pointsize = 12, bg = "transparent", fg = "black",
     pagecentre = TRUE, defaultfont = FALSE, textspecial = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`file`	a character string giving the name of the file. For use with `onefile = FALSE` give a C integer format such as `"Rplot%03d.fig"` (the default in that case). (See `postscript` for further details.)
`onefile`	logical: if true allow multiple figures in one file. If false, assume only one page per file and generate a file number containing the page number.
`encoding`	The encoding in which to write text strings. The default is not to re-encode. This can be any encoding recognized by `iconv`: in a Western UTF-8 locale you probably want to select an 8-bit encoding such as `latin1`, and in an East Asian locale an `EUC` encoding. If re-encoding fails, the text strings will be written in the current encoding with a warning.
`paper`	the size of paper region. The choices are `"A4"`, `"Letter"` and `"Legal"` (and these can be lowercase). A further choice is `"default"`, which is the default. If this is selected, the papersize is taken from the option `"papersize"` if that is set to a non-empty value, otherwise `"A4"`.
`horizontal`	the orientation of the printed image, a logical. Defaults to true, that is landscape orientation.
`width, height`	the width and height of the graphics region in inches. The default is to use the entire page less a 0.5 inch overall margin in each direction. (See `postscript` for further details.)

family	the font family to be used. This must be one of "AvantGarde", "Bookman", "Courier", "Helvetica" (the default), "Helvetica-Narrow", "NewCenturySchoolbook", "Palatino" or "Times". Any other value is replaced by "Helvetica", with a warning.
pointsize	the default point size to be used.
bg	the initial background color to be used.
fg	the initial foreground color to be used.
pagecentre	logical: should the device region be centred on the page?
defaultfont	logical: should the device use xfig's default font?
textspecial	logical: should the device set the textspecial flag for all text elements. This is useful when generating pstex from xfig figures.

Details

Although xfig can produce multiple plots in one file, the XFig format does not say how to separate or view them. So onefile = FALSE is the default.

The file argument is interpreted as a C integer format as used by sprintf, with integer argument the page number. The default gives files 'Rplot001.fig', ..., 'Rplot999.fig', 'Rplot1000.fig', ...

Line widths as controlled by par(lwd =) are in multiples of 5/6*1/72 inch. Multiples less than 1 are allowed. pch = "." with cex = 1 corresponds to a square of side 1/72 inch.

Windows users can make use of WinFIG (http://www.schmidt-web-berlin.de/WinFIG.htm, shareware), or XFig under Cygwin.

Conventions

This section describes the implementation of the conventions for graphics devices set out in the "R Internals Manual".

- The default device size is the paper size with a 0.25 inch border on all sides.
- Font sizes are in big points.
- The default font family is Helvetica.
- Line widths are integers, multiples of 5/432 inch.
- Circle radii are multiples of 1/1200 inch.
- Colours are interpreted by the viewing/printing application.

Note

Only some line textures (0 <= lty < 4) are used. Eventually this may be partially remedied, but the XFig file format does not allow as general line textures as the model. Unimplemented line textures are displayed as *dash-double-dotted*.

There is a limit of 512 colours (plus white and black) per file.

Author(s)

Brian Ripley. Support for defaultFont and textSpecial contributed by Sebastian Fischmeister.

See Also

Devices, postscript, ps.options.

xy.coords *Extracting Plotting Structures*

Description

xy.coords is used by many functions to obtain x and y coordinates for plotting. The use of this common mechanism across all relevant functions produces a measure of consistency.

Usage

```
xy.coords(x, y = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, log = NULL,
          recycle = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x, y	the x and y coordinates of a set of points. Alternatively, a single argument x can be provided.
xlab, ylab	names for the x and y variables to be extracted.
log	character, "x", "y" or both, as for plot. Sets negative values to NA and gives a warning.
recycle	logical; if TRUE, recycle (rep) the shorter of x or y if their lengths differ.

Details

An attempt is made to interpret the arguments x and y in a way suitable for bivariate plotting (or other bivariate procedures).

If y is NULL and x is a

formula: of the form yvar ~ xvar. xvar and yvar are used as x and y variables.

list: containing components x and y, these are used to define plotting coordinates.

time series: the x values are taken to be time(x) and the y values to be the time series.

matrix or data.frame with two or more columns: the first is assumed to contain the x values and the second the y values. *Note* that is also true if x has columns named "x" and "y"; these names will be irrelevant here.

In any other case, the x argument is coerced to a vector and returned as **y** component where the resulting x is just the index vector 1:n. In this case, the resulting xlab component is set to "Index".

If x (after transformation as above) inherits from class "POSIXt" it is coerced to class "POSIXct".

Value

A list with the components

x	numeric (i.e., "double") vector of abscissa values.
y	numeric vector of the same length as x.
xlab	character(1) or NULL, the 'label' of x.
ylab	character(1) or NULL, the 'label' of y.

See Also

plot.default, lines, points and lowess are examples of functions which use this mechanism.

Examples

```
xy.coords(stats::fft(c(1:9)), NULL)

with(cars, xy.coords(dist ~ speed, NULL)$xlab ) # = "speed"

xy.coords(1:3, 1:2, recycle = TRUE)
xy.coords(-2:10, NULL, log = "y")
##> warning: 3 y values <= 0 omitted ..
```

---

xyTable *Multiplicities of (x,y) Points, e.g., for a Sunflower Plot*

Description

Given (x,y) points, determine their multiplicity – checking for equality only up to some (crude kind of) noise. Note that this is special kind of 2D binning.

Usage

```
xyTable(x, y = NULL, digits)
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric vectors of the same length; alternatively other (x, y) argument combinations as allowed by xy.coords(x, y).
digits	integer specifying the significant digits to be used for determining equality of coordinates. These are compared after rounding them via signif(*, digits).

Value

A list with three components of same length,

x	x coordinates, rounded and sorted.
y	y coordinates, rounded (and sorted within x).
number	multiplicities (positive integers); i.e., number[i] is the multiplicity of (x[i], y[i]).

See Also

sunflowerplot which typically uses xyTable(); signif.

Examples

```
xyTable(iris[, 3:4], digits = 6)

## Discretized uncorrelated Gaussian:

require(stats)
xy <- data.frame(x = round(sort(rnorm(100))), y = rnorm(100))
xyTable(xy, digits = 1)
```

xyz.coords *Extracting Plotting Structures*

Description

Utility for obtaining consistent x, y and z coordinates and labels for three dimensional (3D) plots.

Usage

```
xyz.coords(x, y = NULL, z = NULL,
           xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, zlab = NULL,
           log = NULL, recycle = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x, y, z	the x, y and z coordinates of a set of points. Both y and z can be left at NULL. In this case, an attempt is made to interpret x in a way suitable for plotting. If the argument is a formula zvar ~ xvar + yvar, xvar, yvar and zvar are used as x, y and z variables; if the argument is a list containing components x, y and z, these are assumed to define plotting coordinates; if the argument is a matrix or data.frame with three or more columns, the first is assumed to contain the x values, the 2nd the y ones, and the 3rd the z ones – independently of any column names that x may have. Alternatively two arguments x and y can be provided (leaving z = NULL). One may be real, the other complex; in any other case, the arguments are coerced to vectors and the values plotted against their indices.
xlab, ylab, zlab	names for the x, y and z variables to be extracted.
log	character, "x", "y", "z" or combinations. Sets negative values to NA and gives a warning.
recycle	logical; if TRUE, recycle (rep) the shorter ones of x, y or z if their lengths differ.

Value

A list with the components

x	numeric (i.e., double) vector of abscissa values.
y	numeric vector of the same length as x.
z	numeric vector of the same length as x.
xlab	character(1) or NULL, the axis label of x.
ylab	character(1) or NULL, the axis label of y.
zlab	character(1) or NULL, the axis label of z.

Author(s)

Uwe Ligges and Martin Maechler

See Also

xy.coords for 2D.

Examples

```
xyz.coords(data.frame(10*1:9, -4), y = NULL, z = NULL)

xyz.coords(1:5, stats::fft(1:5), z = NULL, xlab = "X", ylab = "Y")

y <- 2 * (x2 <- 10 + (x1 <- 1:10))
xyz.coords(y ~ x1 + x2, y = NULL, z = NULL)

xyz.coords(data.frame(x = -1:9, y = 2:12, z = 3:13), y = NULL, z = NULL,
           log = "xy")
##> Warning message: 2 x values <= 0 omitted ...
```

Chapter 5

The graphics package

---

graphics-package *The R Graphics Package*

Description

R functions for base graphics

Details

This package contains functions for 'base' graphics. Base graphics are traditional S-like graphics, as opposed to the more recent grid graphics.

For a complete list of functions with individual help pages, use `library(help = "graphics")`.

Author(s)

R Core Team and contributors worldwide

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

---

abline *Add Straight Lines to a Plot*

Description

This function adds one or more straight lines through the current plot.

Usage

```
abline(a = NULL, b = NULL, h = NULL, v = NULL, reg = NULL,
       coef = NULL, untf = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

a, b	the intercept and slope, single values.
untf	logical asking whether to *untransform*. See 'Details'.
h	the y-value(s) for horizontal line(s).
v	the x-value(s) for vertical line(s).
coef	a vector of length two giving the intercept and slope.
reg	an object with a coef method. See 'Details'.
...	graphical parameters such as col, lty and lwd (possibly as vectors: see 'Details') and xpd and the line characteristics lend, ljoin and lmitre.

Details

Typical usages are

```
abline(a, b, untf = FALSE, ...)
abline(h =, untf = FALSE, ...)
abline(v =, untf = FALSE, ...)
abline(coef =, untf = FALSE, ...)
abline(reg =, untf = FALSE, ...)
```

The first form specifies the line in intercept/slope form (alternatively a can be specified on its own and is taken to contain the slope and intercept in vector form).

The h= and v= forms draw horizontal and vertical lines at the specified coordinates.

The coef form specifies the line by a vector containing the slope and intercept.

reg is a regression object with a coef method. If this returns a vector of length 1 then the value is taken to be the slope of a line through the origin, otherwise, the first 2 values are taken to be the intercept and slope.

If untf is true, and one or both axes are log-transformed, then a curve is drawn corresponding to a line in original coordinates, otherwise a line is drawn in the transformed coordinate system. The h and v parameters always refer to original coordinates.

The graphical parameters col, lty and lwd can be specified; see par for details. For the h= and v= usages they can be vectors of length greater than one, recycled as necessary.

Specifying an xpd argument for clipping overrides the global par("xpd") setting used otherwise.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

lines and segments for connected and arbitrary lines given by their *endpoints*. par.

Examples

```
## Setup up coordinate system (with x == y aspect ratio):
plot(c(-2,3), c(-1,5), type = "n", xlab = "x", ylab = "y", asp = 1)
## the x- and y-axis, and an integer grid
abline(h = 0, v = 0, col = "gray60")
text(1,0, "abline( h = 0 )", col = "gray60", adj = c(0, -.1))
abline(h = -1:5, v = -2:3, col = "lightgray", lty = 3)
abline(a = 1, b = 2, col = 2)
text(1,3, "abline( 1, 2 )", col = 2, adj = c(-.1, -.1))

## Simple Regression Lines:
require(stats)
sale5 <- c(6, 4, 9, 7, 6, 12, 8, 10, 9, 13)
plot(sale5)
abline(lsfit(1:10, sale5))
abline(lsfit(1:10, sale5, intercept = FALSE), col = 4) # less fitting

z <- lm(dist ~ speed, data = cars)
plot(cars)
abline(z) # equivalent to abline(reg = z) or
abline(coef = coef(z))

## trivial intercept model
abline(mC <- lm(dist ~ 1, data = cars)) ## the same as
abline(a = coef(mC), b = 0, col = "blue")
```

`arrows` *Add Arrows to a Plot*

Description

Draw arrows between pairs of points.

Usage

```
arrows(x0, y0, x1 = x0, y1 = y0, length = 0.25, angle = 30,
       code = 2, col = par("fg"), lty = par("lty"),
       lwd = par("lwd"), ...)
```

Arguments

`x0, y0`	coordinates of points **from** which to draw.
`x1, y1`	coordinates of points **to** which to draw. At least one must the supplied
`length`	length of the edges of the arrow head (in inches).
`angle`	angle from the shaft of the arrow to the edge of the arrow head.
`code`	integer code, determining *kind* of arrows to be drawn.
`col, lty, lwd`	graphical parameters, possible vectors. `NA` values in `col` cause the arrow to be omitted.
`...`	graphical parameters such as `xpd` and the line characteristics `lend`, `ljoin` and `lmitre`: see `par`.

Details

For each `i`, an arrow is drawn between the point `(x0[i], y0[i])` and the point `(x1[i], y1[i])`. The coordinate vectors will be recycled to the length of the longest.

If `code = 1` an arrowhead is drawn at `(x0[i], y0[i])` and if `code = 2` an arrowhead is drawn at `(x1[i], y1[i])`. If `code = 3` a head is drawn at both ends of the arrow. Unless `length = 0`, when no head is drawn.

The graphical parameters `col`, `lty` and `lwd` can be vectors of length greater than one and will be recycled if necessary.

The direction of a zero-length arrow is indeterminate, and hence so is the direction of the arrowheads. To allow for rounding error, arrowheads are omitted (with a warning) on any arrow of length less than 1/1000 inch.

Note

The first four arguments in the comparable S function are named `x1, y1, x2, y2`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`segments` to draw segments.

Examples

```
x <- stats::runif(12); y <- stats::rnorm(12)
i <- order(x, y); x <- x[i]; y <- y[i]
plot(x,y, main = "arrows(.) and segments(.)")
## draw arrows from point to point :
s <- seq(length(x)-1)  # one shorter than data
arrows(x[s], y[s], x[s+1], y[s+1], col = 1:3)
s <- s[-length(s)]
segments(x[s], y[s], x[s+2], y[s+2], col = "pink")
```

---

assocplot *Association Plots*

Description

Produce a Cohen-Friendly association plot indicating deviations from independence of rows and columns in a 2-dimensional contingency table.

Usage

```
assocplot(x, col = c("black", "red"), space = 0.3,
          main = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	a two-dimensional contingency table in matrix form.
col	a character vector of length two giving the colors used for drawing positive and negative Pearson residuals, respectively.
space	the amount of space (as a fraction of the average rectangle width and height) left between each rectangle.
main	overall title for the plot.
xlab	a label for the x axis. Defaults to the name (if any) of the row dimension in x.
ylab	a label for the y axis. Defaults to the name (if any) of the column dimension in x.

Details

For a two-way contingency table, the signed contribution to Pearson's χ^2 for cell i, j is $d_{ij} = (f_{ij} - e_{ij})/\sqrt{e_{ij}}$, where f_{ij} and e_{ij} are the observed and expected counts corresponding to the cell. In the Cohen-Friendly association plot, each cell is represented by a rectangle that has (signed) height proportional to d_{ij} and width proportional to $\sqrt{e_{ij}}$, so that the area of the box is proportional to the difference in observed and expected frequencies. The rectangles in each row are positioned relative to a baseline indicating independence ($d_{ij} = 0$). If the observed frequency of a cell is greater than the expected one, the box rises above the baseline and is shaded in the color specified by the first element of col, which defaults to black; otherwise, the box falls below the baseline and is shaded in the color specified by the second element of col, which defaults to red.

A more flexible and extensible implementation of association plots written in the grid graphics system is provided in the function assoc in the contributed package **vcd** (Meyer, Zeileis and Hornik, 2005).

References

Cohen, A. (1980), On the graphical display of the significant components in a two-way contingency table. *Communications in Statistics—Theory and Methods*, **A9**, 1025–1041.

Friendly, M. (1992), Graphical methods for categorical data. *SAS User Group International Conference Proceedings*, **17**, 190–200. http://www.math.yorku.ca/SCS/sugi/sugi17-paper.html

Meyer, D., Zeileis, A., and Hornik, K. (2005) The strucplot framework: Visualizing multi-way contingency tables with vcd. *Report 22*, Department of Statistics and Mathematics, Wirtschaftsuniversität Wien, Research Report Series. http://epub.wu.ac.at/dyn/openURL?id=oai:epub.wu-wien.ac.at:epub-wu-01_8a1

See Also

mosaicplot, chisq.test.

Examples

```
## Aggregate over sex:
x <- margin.table(HairEyeColor, c(1, 2))
x
assocplot(x, main = "Relation between hair and eye color")
```

`Axis` *Generic Function to Add an Axis to a Plot*

Description

Generic function to add a suitable axis to the current plot.

Usage

```
Axis(x = NULL, at = NULL, ..., side, labels = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object which indicates the range over which an axis should be drawn
`at`	the points at which tick-marks are to be drawn.
`side`	an integer specifying which side of the plot the axis is to be drawn on. The axis is placed as follows: 1=below, 2=left, 3=above and 4=right.
`labels`	this can either be a logical value specifying whether (numerical) annotations are to be made at the tickmarks, or a character or expression vector of labels to be placed at the tickpoints. If this is specified as a character or expression vector, `at` should be supplied and they should be the same length.
`...`	Arguments to be passed to methods and perhaps then to `axis`.

Details

This is a generic function. It works in a slightly non-standard way: if `x` is supplied and non-NULL it dispatches on `x`, otherwise if `at` is supplied and non-NULL it dispatches on `at`, and the default action is to call `axis`, omitting argument `x`.

The idea is that for plots for which either or both of the axes are numerical but with a special interpretation, the standard plotting functions (including `boxplot`, `contour`, `coplot`, `filled.contour`, `pairs`, `plot.default`, `rug` and `stripchart`) will set up user coordinates and `Axis` will be called to label them appropriately.

There are `"Date"` and `"POSIXt"` methods which can pass an argument `format` on to the appropriate `axis` method (see `axis.POSIXct`).

Value

The numeric locations on the axis scale at which tick marks were drawn when the plot was first drawn (see 'Details').

This function is usually invoked for its side effect, which is to add an axis to an already existing plot.

See Also

`axis`.

`axis` *Add an Axis to a Plot*

Description

Adds an axis to the current plot, allowing the specification of the side, position, labels, and other options.

Usage

```
axis(side, at = NULL, labels = TRUE, tick = TRUE, line = NA,
     pos = NA, outer = FALSE, font = NA, lty = "solid",
     lwd = 1, lwd.ticks = lwd, col = NULL, col.ticks = NULL,
     hadj = NA, padj = NA, ...)
```

Arguments

`side`	an integer specifying which side of the plot the axis is to be drawn on. The axis is placed as follows: 1=below, 2=left, 3=above and 4=right.
`at`	the points at which tick-marks are to be drawn. Non-finite (infinite, `NaN` or `NA`) values are omitted. By default (when `NULL`) tickmark locations are computed, see 'Details' below.
`labels`	this can either be a logical value specifying whether (numerical) annotations are to be made at the tickmarks, or a character or expression vector of labels to be placed at the tickpoints. (Other objects are coerced by `as.graphicsAnnot`.) If this is not logical, `at` should also be supplied and of the same length. If `labels` is of length zero after coercion, it has the same effect as supplying `TRUE`.
`tick`	a logical value specifying whether tickmarks and an axis line should be drawn.
`line`	the number of lines into the margin at which the axis line will be drawn, if not `NA`.
`pos`	the coordinate at which the axis line is to be drawn: if not `NA` this overrides the value of `line`.
`outer`	a logical value indicating whether the axis should be drawn in the outer plot margin, rather than the standard plot margin.
`font`	font for text. Defaults to `par("font")`.
`lty`	line type for both the axis line and the tick marks.
`lwd, lwd.ticks`	line widths for the axis line and the tick marks. Zero or negative values will suppress the line or ticks.
`col, col.ticks`	colors for the axis line and the tick marks respectively. `col = NULL` means to use `par("fg")`, possibly specified inline, and `col.ticks = NULL` means to use whatever color `col` resolved to.
`hadj`	adjustment (see `par("adj")`) for all labels *parallel* ('horizontal') to the reading direction. If this is not a finite value, the default is used (centring for strings parallel to the axis, justification of the end nearest the axis otherwise).
`padj`	adjustment for each tick label *perpendicular* to the reading direction. For labels parallel to the axes, `padj = 0` means right or top alignment, and `padj = 1` means left or bottom alignment. This can be a vector given a value for each string, and will be recycled as necessary.

If padj is not a finite value (the default), the value of par("las") determines the adjustment. For strings plotted perpendicular to the axis the default is to centre the string.

... other graphical parameters may also be passed as arguments to this function, particularly, cex.axis, col.axis and font.axis for axis annotation, mgp and xaxp or yaxp for positioning, tck or tcl for tick mark length and direction, las for vertical/horizontal label orientation, or fg instead of col, and xpd for clipping. See par on these.

Parameters xaxt (sides 1 and 3) and yaxt (sides 2 and 4) control if the axis is plotted at all.

Note that lab will partial match to argument labels unless the latter is also supplied. (Since the default axes have already been set up by plot.window, lab will not be acted on by axis.)

Details

The axis line is drawn from the lowest to the highest value of at, but will be clipped at the plot region. By default, only ticks which are drawn from points within the plot region (up to a tolerance for rounding error) are plotted, but the ticks and their labels may well extend outside the plot region. Use xpd = TRUE or xpd = NA to allow axes to extend further.

When at = NULL, pretty tick mark locations are computed internally (the same way axTicks(side) would) from par("xaxp") or "yaxp" and par("xlog") (or "ylog"). Note that these locations may change if an on-screen plot is resized (for example, if the plot argument asp (see plot.window) is set.)

If labels is not specified, the numeric values supplied or calculated for at are converted to character strings as if they were a numeric vector printed by print.default(digits = 7).

The code tries hard not to draw overlapping tick labels, and so will omit labels where they would abut or overlap previously drawn labels. This can result in, for example, every other tick being labelled. (The ticks are drawn left to right or bottom to top, and space at least the size of an 'm' is left between labels.)

If either line or pos is set, they (rather than par("mgp")[3]) determine the position of the axis line and tick marks, and the tick labels are placed par("mgp")[2] further lines into (or towards for pos) the margin.

Several of the graphics parameters affect the way axes are drawn. The vertical (for sides 1 and 3) positions of the axis and the tick labels are controlled by mgp[2:3] and mex, the size and direction of the ticks is controlled by tck and tcl and the appearance of the tick labels by cex.axis, col.axis and font.axis with orientation controlled by las (but not srt, unlike S which uses srt if at is supplied and las if it is not). Note that adj is not supported and labels are always centered. See par for details.

Value

The numeric locations on the axis scale at which tick marks were drawn when the plot was first drawn (see 'Details').

This function is usually invoked for its side effect, which is to add an axis to an already existing plot.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`Axis` for a generic interface.

`axTicks` returns the axis tick locations corresponding to `at = NULL`; `pretty` is more flexible for computing pretty tick coordinates and does *not* depend on (nor adapt to) the coordinate system in use.

Several graphics parameters affecting the appearance are documented in `par`.

Examples

```
require(stats) # for rnorm
plot(1:4, rnorm(4), axes = FALSE)
axis(1, 1:4, LETTERS[1:4])
axis(2)
box() #- to make it look "as usual"

plot(1:7, rnorm(7), main = "axis() examples",
     type = "s", xaxt = "n", frame = FALSE, col = "red")
axis(1, 1:7, LETTERS[1:7], col.axis = "blue")
# unusual options:
axis(4, col = "violet", col.axis = "dark violet", lwd = 2)
axis(3, col = "gold", lty = 2, lwd = 0.5)

# one way to have a custom x axis
plot(1:10, xaxt = "n")
axis(1, xaxp = c(2, 9, 7))
```

`axis.POSIXct` *Date and Date-time Plotting Functions*

Description

Functions to plot objects of classes `"POSIXlt"`, `"POSIXct"` and `"Date"` representing calendar dates and times.

Usage

```
axis.POSIXct(side, x, at, format, labels = TRUE, ...)
axis.Date(side, x, at, format, labels = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, at`	A date-time or date object.
`side`	See `axis`.
`format`	See `strptime`.
`labels`	Either a logical value specifying whether annotations are to be made at the tick-marks, or a vector of character strings to be placed at the tickpoints.
`...`	Further arguments to be passed from or to other methods, typically graphical parameters.

Details

`axis.POSIXct` and `axis.Date` work quite hard to choose suitable time units (years, months, days, hours, minutes or seconds) and a sensible output format, but this can be overridden by supplying a `format` specification.

If `at` is supplied it specifies the locations of the ticks and labels whereas if `x` is specified a suitable grid of labels is chosen. Printing of tick labels can be suppressed by using `labels = FALSE`.

The date-times for a `"POSIXct"` input are interpreted in the time zone give by the `"tzone"` attribute if there is one, otherwise the current time zone.

The way the date-times are rendered (especially month names) is controlled by the locale setting of category `"LC_TIME"` (see `Sys.setlocale`).

Value

The locations on the axis scale at which tick marks were drawn.

See Also

DateTimeClasses, Dates for details of the classes.

`Axis`.

Examples

```
with(beaver1, {
time <- strptime(paste(1990, day, time %/% 100, time %% 100),
                 "%Y %j %H %M")
plot(time, temp, type = "l") # axis at 4-hour intervals.
# now label every hour on the time axis
plot(time, temp, type = "l", xaxt = "n")
r <- as.POSIXct(round(range(time), "hours"))
axis.POSIXct(1, at = seq(r[1], r[2], by = "hour"), format = "%H")
})

plot(.leap.seconds, seq_along(.leap.seconds), type = "n", yaxt = "n",
     xlab = "leap seconds", ylab = "", bty = "n")
rug(.leap.seconds)
## or as dates
lps <- as.Date(.leap.seconds)
plot(lps, seq_along(.leap.seconds),
     type = "n", yaxt = "n", xlab = "leap seconds",
     ylab = "", bty = "n")
rug(lps)

## 100 random dates in a 10-week period
random.dates <- as.Date("2001/1/1") + 70*sort(stats::runif(100))
plot(random.dates, 1:100)
# or for a better axis labelling
plot(random.dates, 1:100, xaxt = "n")
axis.Date(1, at = seq(as.Date("2001/1/1"), max(random.dates)+6, "weeks"))
axis.Date(1, at = seq(as.Date("2001/1/1"), max(random.dates)+6, "days"),
     labels = FALSE, tcl = -0.2)
```

axTicks *Compute Axis Tickmark Locations*

Description

Compute pretty tickmark locations, the same way as does internally. This is only non-trivial when **log** coordinates are active. By default, gives the `at` values which `axis(side)` would use.

Usage

```
axTicks(side, axp = NULL, usr = NULL, log = NULL, nintLog = NULL)
```

Arguments

`side`	integer in 1:4, as for `axis`.
`axp`	numeric vector of length three, defaulting to `par("xaxp")` or `par("yaxp")` depending on the `side` argument (`par("xaxp")` if `side` is 1 or 3, `par("yaxp")` if side is 2 or 4).
`usr`	numeric vector of length two giving user coordinate limits, defaulting to the relevant portion of `par("usr")` (`par("usr")[1:2]` or `par("usr")[3:4]` for `side` in (1,3) or (2,4) respectively).
`log`	logical indicating if log coordinates are active; defaults to `par("xlog")` or `par("ylog")` depending on `side`.
`nintLog`	(only used when `log` is true): approximate (lower bound for the) number of tick intervals; defaults to `par("lab")[j]` where `j` is 1 or 2 depending on `side`. Set this to `Inf` if you want the same behavior as in earlier versions (than 2.14.x).

Details

The `axp`, `usr`, and `log` arguments must be consistent as their default values (the `par(..)` results) are. If you specify all three (as non-NULL), the graphics environment is not used at all. Note that the meaning of `axp` differs significantly when `log` is `TRUE`; see the documentation on `par(xaxp = .)`.

`axTicks()` can be used an interface to the C function `CreateAtVector()` in '`..../src/main/plot.c`' which is called by `axis(side, *)` when no argument `at` is specified. The delicate case, `log = TRUE`, now makes use of `axisTicks` (in package **grDevices**) unless `nintLog = Inf` which exists for back compatibility.

Value

numeric vector of coordinate values at which axis tickmarks can be drawn. By default, when only the first argument is specified, these values should be identical to those that `axis(side)` would use or has used. Note that the values are decreasing when `usr` is ("reverse axis" case).

See Also

`axis`, `par`. `pretty` uses the same algorithm (but independently of the graphics environment) and has more options. However it is not available for `log = TRUE`.

`axisTicks()` (package **grDevices**).

Examples

```
 plot(1:7, 10*21:27)
 axTicks(1)
 axTicks(2)
 stopifnot(identical(axTicks(1), axTicks(3)),
           identical(axTicks(2), axTicks(4)))

## Show how axTicks() and axis() correspond :
op <- par(mfrow = c(3, 1))
for(x in 9999 * c(1, 2, 8)) {
    plot(x, 9, log = "x")
    cat(formatC(par("xaxp"), width = 5),";", T <- axTicks(1),"\n")
    rug(T, col =  adjustcolor("red", 0.5), lwd = 4)
}
par(op)

x <- 9.9*10^(-3:10)
plot(x, 1:14, log = "x")
axTicks(1) # now length 5, in R <= 2.13.x gave the following
axTicks(1, nintLog = Inf) # rather too many

## An example using axTicks() without reference to an existing plot
## (copying Rs internal procedures for setting axis ranges etc.),
## You do need to supply _all_ of axp, usr, log, nintLog
## standard logarithmic y axis labels
ylims <- c(0.2, 88)
get_axp <- function(x) 10^c(ceiling(x[1]), floor(x[2]))
## mimic par("yaxs") == "i"
usr.i <- log10(ylims)
(aT.i <- axTicks(side = 2, usr = usr.i,
                 axp = c(get_axp(usr.i), n = 3), log = TRUE, nintLog = 5))
## mimic (default) par("yaxs") == "r"
usr.r <- extendrange(r = log10(ylims), f = 0.04)
(aT.r <- axTicks(side = 2, usr = usr.r,
                 axp = c(get_axp(usr.r), 3), log = TRUE, nintLog = 5))

## Prove that we got it right :
plot(0:1, ylims, log = "y", yaxs = "i")
stopifnot(all.equal(aT.i, axTicks(side = 2)))

plot(0:1, ylims, log = "y", yaxs = "r")
stopifnot(all.equal(aT.r, axTicks(side = 2)))
```

---

barplot *Bar Plots*

Description

Creates a bar plot with vertical or horizontal bars.

Usage

```
barplot(height, ...)
```

```
## Default S3 method:
barplot(height, width = 1, space = NULL,
        names.arg = NULL, legend.text = NULL, beside = FALSE,
        horiz = FALSE, density = NULL, angle = 45,
        col = NULL, border = par("fg"),
        main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
        xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL, xpd = TRUE, log = "",
        axes = TRUE, axisnames = TRUE,
        cex.axis = par("cex.axis"), cex.names = par("cex.axis"),
        inside = TRUE, plot = TRUE, axis.lty = 0, offset = 0,
        add = FALSE, args.legend = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

height	either a vector or matrix of values describing the bars which make up the plot. If height is a vector, the plot consists of a sequence of rectangular bars with heights given by the values in the vector. If height is a matrix and beside is FALSE then each bar of the plot corresponds to a column of height, with the values in the column giving the heights of stacked sub-bars making up the bar. If height is a matrix and beside is TRUE, then the values in each column are juxtaposed rather than stacked.
width	optional vector of bar widths. Re-cycled to length the number of bars drawn. Specifying a single value will have no visible effect unless xlim is specified.
space	the amount of space (as a fraction of the average bar width) left before each bar. May be given as a single number or one number per bar. If height is a matrix and beside is TRUE, space may be specified by two numbers, where the first is the space between bars in the same group, and the second the space between the groups. If not given explicitly, it defaults to c(0,1) if height is a matrix and beside is TRUE, and to 0.2 otherwise.
names.arg	a vector of names to be plotted below each bar or group of bars. If this argument is omitted, then the names are taken from the names attribute of height if this is a vector, or the column names if it is a matrix.
legend.text	a vector of text used to construct a legend for the plot, or a logical indicating whether a legend should be included. This is only useful when height is a matrix. In that case given legend labels should correspond to the rows of height; if legend.text is true, the row names of height will be used as labels if they are non-null.
beside	a logical value. If FALSE, the columns of height are portrayed as stacked bars, and if TRUE the columns are portrayed as juxtaposed bars.
horiz	a logical value. If FALSE, the bars are drawn vertically with the first bar to the left. If TRUE, the bars are drawn horizontally with the first at the bottom.
density	a vector giving the density of shading lines, in lines per inch, for the bars or bar components. The default value of NULL means that no shading lines are drawn. Non-positive values of density also inhibit the drawing of shading lines.
angle	the slope of shading lines, given as an angle in degrees (counter-clockwise), for the bars or bar components.
col	a vector of colors for the bars or bar components. By default, grey is used if height is a vector, and a gamma-corrected grey palette if height is a matrix.
border	the color to be used for the border of the bars. Use border = NA to omit borders. If there are shading lines, border = TRUE means use the same colour for the border as for the shading lines.

main,sub	overall and sub title for the plot.
xlab	a label for the x axis.
ylab	a label for the y axis.
xlim	limits for the x axis.
ylim	limits for the y axis.
xpd	logical. Should bars be allowed to go outside region?
log	string specifying if axis scales should be logarithmic; see plot.default.
axes	logical. If TRUE, a vertical (or horizontal, if horiz is true) axis is drawn.
axisnames	logical. If TRUE, and if there are names.arg (see above), the other axis is drawn (with lty = 0) and labeled.
cex.axis	expansion factor for numeric axis labels.
cex.names	expansion factor for axis names (bar labels).
inside	logical. If TRUE, the lines which divide adjacent (non-stacked!) bars will be drawn. Only applies when space = 0 (which it partly is when beside = TRUE).
plot	logical. If FALSE, nothing is plotted.
axis.lty	the graphics parameter lty applied to the axis and tick marks of the categorical (default horizontal) axis. Note that by default the axis is suppressed.
offset	a vector indicating how much the bars should be shifted relative to the x axis.
add	logical specifying if bars should be added to an already existing plot; defaults to FALSE.
args.legend	list of additional arguments to pass to legend(); names of the list are used as argument names. Only used if legend.text is supplied.
...	arguments to be passed to/from other methods. For the default method these can include further arguments (such as axes, asp and main) and graphical parameters (see par) which are passed to plot.window(), title() and axis.

Details

This is a generic function, it currently only has a default method. A formula interface may be added eventually.

Value

A numeric vector (or matrix, when beside = TRUE), say mp, giving the coordinates of *all* the bar midpoints drawn, useful for adding to the graph.

If beside is true, use colMeans(mp) for the midpoints of each *group* of bars, see example.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

plot(..., type = "h"), dotchart, hist.

Examples

```
require(grDevices) # for colours
tN <- table(Ni <- stats::rpois(100, lambda = 5))
r <- barplot(tN, col = rainbow(20))
#- type = "h" plotting *is* barplot
lines(r, tN, type = "h", col = "red", lwd = 2)

barplot(tN, space = 1.5, axisnames = FALSE,
        sub = "barplot(..., space= 1.5, axisnames = FALSE)")

barplot(VADeaths, plot = FALSE)
barplot(VADeaths, plot = FALSE, beside = TRUE)

mp <- barplot(VADeaths) # default
tot <- colMeans(VADeaths)
text(mp, tot + 3, format(tot), xpd = TRUE, col = "blue")
barplot(VADeaths, beside = TRUE,
        col = c("lightblue", "mistyrose", "lightcyan",
                "lavender", "cornsilk"),
        legend = rownames(VADeaths), ylim = c(0, 100))
title(main = "Death Rates in Virginia", font.main = 4)

hh <- t(VADeaths)[, 5:1]
mybarcol <- "gray20"
mp <- barplot(hh, beside = TRUE,
        col = c("lightblue", "mistyrose",
                "lightcyan", "lavender"),
        legend = colnames(VADeaths), ylim = c(0,100),
        main = "Death Rates in Virginia", font.main = 4,
        sub = "Faked upper 2*sigma error bars", col.sub = mybarcol,
        cex.names = 1.5)
segments(mp, hh, mp, hh + 2*sqrt(1000*hh/100), col = mybarcol, lwd = 1.5)
stopifnot(dim(mp) == dim(hh))  # corresponding matrices
mtext(side = 1, at = colMeans(mp), line = -2,
      text = paste("Mean", formatC(colMeans(hh))), col = "red")

# Bar shading example
barplot(VADeaths, angle = 15+10*1:5, density = 20, col = "black",
        legend = rownames(VADeaths))
title(main = list("Death Rates in Virginia", font = 4))

# border :
barplot(VADeaths, border = "dark blue")


# log scales (not much sense here):
barplot(tN, col = heat.colors(12), log = "y")
barplot(tN, col = gray.colors(20), log = "xy")

# args.legend
barplot(height = cbind(x = c(465, 91) / 465 * 100,
                       y = c(840, 200) / 840 * 100,
                       z = c(37, 17) / 37 * 100),
        beside = FALSE,
        width = c(465, 840, 37),
        col = c(1, 2),
```

```
          legend.text = c("A", "B"),
          args.legend = list(x = "topleft"))
```

---

box *Draw a Box around a Plot*

Description

This function draws a box around the current plot in the given color and linetype. The `bty` parameter determines the type of box drawn. See `par` for details.

Usage

```
box(which = "plot", lty = "solid", ...)
```

Arguments

`which`	character, one of `"plot"`, `"figure"`, `"inner"` and `"outer"`.
`lty`	line type of the box.
`...`	further graphical parameters, such as `bty`, `col`, or `lwd`, see `par`. Note that `xpd` is not accepted as clipping is always to the device region.

Details

The choice of colour is complicated. If `col` was supplied and is not `NA`, it is used. Otherwise, if `fg` was supplied and is not `NA`, it is used. The final default is `par("col")`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`rect` for drawing of arbitrary rectangles.

Examples

```
plot(1:7, abs(stats::rnorm(7)), type = "h", axes = FALSE)
axis(1, at = 1:7, labels = letters[1:7])
box(lty = 1373, col = red)
```

boxplot *Box Plots*

Description

Produce box-and-whisker plot(s) of the given (grouped) values.

Usage

```
boxplot(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
boxplot(formula, data = NULL, ..., subset, na.action = NULL)

## Default S3 method:
boxplot(x, ..., range = 1.5, width = NULL, varwidth = FALSE,
        notch = FALSE, outline = TRUE, names, plot = TRUE,
        border = par("fg"), col = NULL, log = "",
        pars = list(boxwex = 0.8, staplewex = 0.5, outwex = 0.5),
        horizontal = FALSE, add = FALSE, at = NULL)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula, such as `y ~ grp`, where `y` is a numeric vector of data values to be split into groups according to the grouping variable `grp` (usually a factor).
data	a data.frame (or list) from which the variables in `formula` should be taken.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used for plotting.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain `NA`s. The default is to ignore missing values in either the response or the group.
x	for specifying data from which the boxplots are to be produced. Either a numeric vector, or a single list containing such vectors. Additional unnamed arguments specify further data as separate vectors (each corresponding to a component boxplot). `NA`s are allowed in the data.
...	For the `formula` method, named arguments to be passed to the default method. For the default method, unnamed arguments are additional data vectors (unless `x` is a list when they are ignored), and named arguments are arguments and graphical parameters to be passed to `bxp` in addition to the ones given by argument `pars` (and override those in `pars`). Note that `bxp` may or may not make use of graphical parameters it is passed: see its documentation.
range	this determines how far the plot whiskers extend out from the box. If `range` is positive, the whiskers extend to the most extreme data point which is no more than `range` times the interquartile range from the box. A value of zero causes the whiskers to extend to the data extremes.
width	a vector giving the relative widths of the boxes making up the plot.
varwidth	if `varwidth` is `TRUE`, the boxes are drawn with widths proportional to the square-roots of the number of observations in the groups.
notch	if `notch` is `TRUE`, a notch is drawn in each side of the boxes. If the notches of two plots do not overlap this is 'strong evidence' that the two medians differ (Chambers *et al*, 1983, p. 62). See `boxplot.stats` for the calculations used.

outline	if outline is not true, the outliers are not drawn (as points whereas S+ uses lines).
names	group labels which will be printed under each boxplot. Can be a character vector or an expression (see plotmath).
boxwex	a scale factor to be applied to all boxes. When there are only a few groups, the appearance of the plot can be improved by making the boxes narrower.
staplewex	staple line width expansion, proportional to box width.
outwex	outlier line width expansion, proportional to box width.
plot	if TRUE (the default) then a boxplot is produced. If not, the summaries which the boxplots are based on are returned.
border	an optional vector of colors for the outlines of the boxplots. The values in border are recycled if the length of border is less than the number of plots.
col	if col is non-null it is assumed to contain colors to be used to colour the bodies of the box plots. By default they are in the background colour.
log	character indicating if x or y or both coordinates should be plotted in log scale.
pars	a list of (potentially many) more graphical parameters, e.g., boxwex or outpch; these are passed to bxp (if plot is true); for details, see there.
horizontal	logical indicating if the boxplots should be horizontal; default FALSE means vertical boxes.
add	logical, if true *add* boxplot to current plot.
at	numeric vector giving the locations where the boxplots should be drawn, particularly when add = TRUE; defaults to 1:n where n is the number of boxes.

Details

The generic function boxplot currently has a default method (boxplot.default) and a formula interface (boxplot.formula).

If multiple groups are supplied either as multiple arguments or via a formula, parallel boxplots will be plotted, in the order of the arguments or the order of the levels of the factor (see factor).

Missing values are ignored when forming boxplots.

Value

List with the following components:

stats	a matrix, each column contains the extreme of the lower whisker, the lower hinge, the median, the upper hinge and the extreme of the upper whisker for one group/plot. If all the inputs have the same class attribute, so will this component.
n	a vector with the number of observations in each group.
conf	a matrix where each column contains the lower and upper extremes of the notch.
out	the values of any data points which lie beyond the extremes of the whiskers.
group	a vector of the same length as out whose elements indicate to which group the outlier belongs.
names	a vector of names for the groups.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Chambers, J. M., Cleveland, W. S., Kleiner, B. and Tukey, P. A. (1983) *Graphical Methods for Data Analysis*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See also `boxplot.stats`.

See Also

`boxplot.stats` which does the computation, `bxp` for the plotting and more examples; and `stripchart` for an alternative (with small data sets).

Examples

```
## boxplot on a formula:
boxplot(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays, col = "lightgray")
# *add* notches (somewhat funny here):
boxplot(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays,
        notch = TRUE, add = TRUE, col = "blue")

boxplot(decrease ~ treatment, data = OrchardSprays,
        log = "y", col = "bisque")

rb <- boxplot(decrease ~ treatment, data = OrchardSprays, col = "bisque")
title("Comparing boxplot()s and non-robust mean +/- SD")

mn.t <- tapply(OrchardSprays$decrease, OrchardSprays$treatment, mean)
sd.t <- tapply(OrchardSprays$decrease, OrchardSprays$treatment, sd)
xi <- 0.3 + seq(rb$n)
points(xi, mn.t, col = "orange", pch = 18)
arrows(xi, mn.t - sd.t, xi, mn.t + sd.t,
       code = 3, col = "pink", angle = 75, length = .1)

## boxplot on a matrix:
mat <- cbind(Uni05 = (1:100)/21, Norm = rnorm(100),
             5T = rt(100, df = 5), Gam2 = rgamma(100, shape = 2))
boxplot(as.data.frame(mat),
        main = "boxplot(as.data.frame(mat), main = ...)")
par(las = 1) # all axis labels horizontal
boxplot(as.data.frame(mat), main = "boxplot(*, horizontal = TRUE)",
        horizontal = TRUE)

## Using at =  and adding boxplots -- example idea by Roger Bivand :

boxplot(len ~ dose, data = ToothGrowth,
        boxwex = 0.25, at = 1:3 - 0.2,
        subset = supp == "VC", col = "yellow",
        main = "Guinea Pigs Tooth Growth",
        xlab = "Vitamin C dose mg",
        ylab = "tooth length",
        xlim = c(0.5, 3.5), ylim = c(0, 35), yaxs = "i")
boxplot(len ~ dose, data = ToothGrowth, add = TRUE,
        boxwex = 0.25, at = 1:3 + 0.2,
        subset = supp == "OJ", col = "orange")
```

```
legend(2, 9, c("Ascorbic acid", "Orange juice"),
       fill = c("yellow", "orange"))

## more examples in  help(bxp)
```

`boxplot.matrix` *Draw a Boxplot for each Column (Row) of a Matrix*

Description

Interpreting the columns (or rows) of a matrix as different groups, draw a boxplot for each.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class matrix
boxplot(x, use.cols = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric matrix.
`use.cols`	logical indicating if columns (by default) or rows (`use.cols = FALSE`) should be plotted.
`...`	Further arguments to `boxplot`.

Value

A list as for `boxplot`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler, 1995, for S+, then package **sfsmisc**.

See Also

`boxplot.default` which already works nowadays with data.frames; `boxplot.formula`, `plot.factor` which work with (the more general concept) of a grouping factor.

Examples

```
## Very similar to the example in ?boxplot
mat <- cbind(Uni05 = (1:100)/21, Norm = rnorm(100),
             T5 = rt(100, df = 5), Gam2 = rgamma(100, shape = 2))
boxplot(mat, main = "boxplot.matrix(...., main = ...)",
        notch = TRUE, col = 1:4)
```

bxp *Draw Box Plots from Summaries*

Description

bxp draws box plots based on the given summaries in z. It is usually called from within boxplot, but can be invoked directly.

Usage

```
bxp(z, notch = FALSE, width = NULL, varwidth = FALSE,
    outline = TRUE, notch.frac = 0.5, log = "",
    border = par("fg"), pars = NULL, frame.plot = axes,
    horizontal = FALSE, add = FALSE, at = NULL, show.names = NULL,
    ...)
```

Arguments

z	a list containing data summaries to be used in constructing the plots. These are usually the result of a call to boxplot, but can be generated in any fashion.
notch	if notch is TRUE, a notch is drawn in each side of the boxes. If the notches of two plots do not overlap then the medians are significantly different at the 5 percent level.
width	a vector giving the relative widths of the boxes making up the plot.
varwidth	if varwidth is TRUE, the boxes are drawn with widths proportional to the square-roots of the number of observations in the groups.
outline	if outline is not true, the outliers are not drawn.
notch.frac	numeric in (0,1). When notch = TRUE, the fraction of the box width that the notches should use.
border	character or numeric (vector), the color of the box borders. Is recycled for multiple boxes. Is used as default for the boxcol, medcol, whiskcol, staplecol, and outcol options (see below).
log	character, indicating if any axis should be drawn in logarithmic scale, as in plot.default.
frame.plot	logical, indicating if a 'frame' (box) should be drawn; defaults to TRUE, unless axes = FALSE is specified.
horizontal	logical indicating if the boxplots should be horizontal; default FALSE means vertical boxes.
add	logical, if true *add* boxplot to current plot.
at	numeric vector giving the locations where the boxplots should be drawn, particularly when add = TRUE; defaults to 1:n where n is the number of boxes.
show.names	Set to TRUE or FALSE to override the defaults on whether an x-axis label is printed for each group.
pars,...	graphical parameters (etc) can be passed as arguments to this function, either as a list (pars) or normally(...), see the following. (Those in ... take precedence over those in pars.)

Currently, yaxs and ylim are used 'along the boxplot', i.e., vertically, when horizontal is false, and xlim horizontally. xaxt, yaxt, las, cex.axis, and col.axis are passed to axis, and main, cex.main, col.main, sub, cex.sub, col.sub, xlab, ylab, cex.lab, and col.lab are passed to title.

In addition, axes is accepted (see plot.window), with default TRUE.

The following arguments (or pars components) allow further customization of the boxplot graphics. Their defaults are typically determined from the non-prefixed version (e.g., boxlty from lty), either from the specified argument or pars component or the corresponding par one.

boxwex: a scale factor to be applied to all boxes. When there are only a few groups, the appearance of the plot can be improved by making the boxes narrower. The default depends on at and typically is 0.8.

staplewex, outwex: staple and outlier line width expansion, proportional to box width; both default to 0.5.

boxlty, boxlwd, boxcol, boxfill: box outline type, width, color, and fill color (which currently defaults to col and will in future default to par("bg")).

medlty, medlwd, medpch, medcex, medcol, medbg: median line type, line width, point character, point size expansion, color, and background color. The default medpch = NA suppresses the point, and medlty = "blank" does so for the line. Note thatmedlwd defaults to 3× the default lwd.

whisklty, whisklwd, whiskcol: whisker line type (default: "dashed"), width, and color.

staplelty, staplelwd, staplecol: staple (= end of whisker) line type, width, and color.

outlty, outlwd, outpch, outcex, outcol, outbg: outlier line type, line width, point character, point size expansion, color, and background color. The default outlty = "blank" suppresses the lines and outpch = NA suppresses points.

Value

An invisible vector, actually identical to the at argument, with the coordinates ("x" if horizontal is false, "y" otherwise) of box centers, useful for adding to the plot.

Note

When add = FALSE, xlim now defaults to xlim = range(at, *) + c(-0.5, 0.5). It will usually be a good idea to specify xlim if the "x" axis has a log scale or width is far from uniform.

Author(s)

The R Core development team and Arni Magnusson (then at U Washington) who has provided most changes for the box*, med*, whisk*, staple*, and out* arguments.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
require(stats)
set.seed(753)
(bx.p <- boxplot(split(rt(100, 4), gl(5, 20))))
op <- par(mfrow =  c(2, 2))
bxp(bx.p, xaxt = "n")
bxp(bx.p, notch = TRUE, axes = FALSE, pch = 4, boxfill = 1:5)
bxp(bx.p, notch = TRUE, boxfill = "lightblue", frame = FALSE,
    outl = FALSE, main = "bxp(*, frame= FALSE, outl= FALSE)")
bxp(bx.p, notch = TRUE, boxfill = "lightblue", border = 2:6,
    ylim = c(-4,4), pch = 22, bg = "green", log = "x",
    main = "... log = x, ylim = *")
par(op)
op <- par(mfrow = c(1, 2))

## single group -- no label
boxplot (weight ~ group, data = PlantGrowth, subset = group == "ctrl")
## with label
bx <- boxplot(weight ~ group, data = PlantGrowth,
              subset = group == "ctrl", plot = FALSE)
bxp(bx, show.names=TRUE)
par(op)


z <- split(rnorm(1000), rpois(1000, 2.2))
boxplot(z, whisklty = 3, main = "boxplot(z, whisklty = 3)")

## Colour support similar to plot.default:
op <- par(mfrow = 1:2, bg = "light gray", fg = "midnight blue")
boxplot(z,   col.axis = "skyblue3", main = "boxplot(*, col.axis=..,main=..)")
plot(z[[1]], col.axis = "skyblue3", main =    "plot(*, col.axis=..,main=..)")
mtext("par(bg=\"light gray\", fg=\"midnight blue\")",
      outer = TRUE, line = -1.2)
par(op)

## Mimic S-Plus:
splus <- list(boxwex = 0.4, staplewex = 1, outwex = 1, boxfill = "grey40",
              medlwd = 3, medcol = "white", whisklty = 3, outlty = 1, outpch = NA)
boxplot(z, pars = splus)
## Recycled and "sweeping" parameters
op <- par(mfrow = c(1,2))
 boxplot(z, border = 1:5, lty = 3, medlty = 1, medlwd = 2.5)
 boxplot(z, boxfill = 1:3, pch = 1:5, lwd = 1.5, medcol = "white")
par(op)
## too many possibilities
boxplot(z, boxfill = "light gray", outpch = 21:25, outlty = 2,
        bg = "pink", lwd = 2,
        medcol = "dark blue", medcex = 2, medpch = 20)
```

---

cdplot *Conditional Density Plots*

Description

Computes and plots conditional densities describing how the conditional distribution of a categorical variable y changes over a numerical variable x.

Usage

```
cdplot(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
cdplot(x, y,
  plot = TRUE, tol.ylab = 0.05, ylevels = NULL,
  bw = "nrd0", n = 512, from = NULL, to = NULL,
  col = NULL, border = 1, main = "", xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
  yaxlabels = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = c(0, 1), ...)

## S3 method for class formula
cdplot(formula, data = list(),
  plot = TRUE, tol.ylab = 0.05, ylevels = NULL,
  bw = "nrd0", n = 512, from = NULL, to = NULL,
  col = NULL, border = 1, main = "", xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
  yaxlabels = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = c(0, 1), ...,
  subset = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	an object, the default method expects a single numerical variable (or an object coercible to this).
y	a "factor" interpreted to be the dependent variable
formula	a "formula" of type y ~ x with a single dependent "factor" and a single numerical explanatory variable.
data	an optional data frame.
plot	logical. Should the computed conditional densities be plotted?
tol.ylab	convenience tolerance parameter for y-axis annotation. If the distance between two labels drops under this threshold, they are plotted equidistantly.
ylevels	a character or numeric vector specifying in which order the levels of the dependent variable should be plotted.
bw, n, from, to, ...	arguments passed to density
col	a vector of fill colors of the same length as levels(y). The default is to call gray.colors.
border	border color of shaded polygons.
main, xlab, ylab	character strings for annotation
yaxlabels	character vector for annotation of y axis, defaults to levels(y).
xlim, ylim	the range of x and y values with sensible defaults.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used for plotting.

Details

cdplot computes the conditional densities of x given the levels of y weighted by the marginal distribution of y. The densities are derived cumulatively over the levels of y.

This visualization technique is similar to spinograms (see spineplot) and plots $P(y|x)$ against x. The conditional probabilities are not derived by discretization (as in the spinogram), but using a smoothing approach via density.

Note, that the estimates of the conditional densities are more reliable for high-density regions of x. Conversely, the are less reliable in regions with only few x observations.

Value

The conditional density functions (cumulative over the levels of y) are returned invisibly.

Author(s)

Achim Zeileis <Achim.Zeileis@R-project.org>

References

Hofmann, H., Theus, M. (2005), *Interactive graphics for visualizing conditional distributions*, Unpublished Manuscript.

See Also

spineplot, density

Examples

```
## NASA space shuttle o-ring failures
fail <- factor(c(2, 2, 2, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1,
                 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1),
               levels = 1:2, labels = c("no", "yes"))
temperature <- c(53, 57, 58, 63, 66, 67, 67, 67, 68, 69, 70, 70,
                 70, 70, 72, 73, 75, 75, 76, 76, 78, 79, 81)

## CD plot
cdplot(fail ~ temperature)
cdplot(fail ~ temperature, bw = 2)
cdplot(fail ~ temperature, bw = "SJ")

## compare with spinogram
(spineplot(fail ~ temperature, breaks = 3))

## highlighting for failures
cdplot(fail ~ temperature, ylevels = 2:1)

## scatter plot with conditional density
cdens <- cdplot(fail ~ temperature, plot = FALSE)
plot(I(as.numeric(fail) - 1) ~ jitter(temperature, factor = 2),
     xlab = "Temperature", ylab = "Conditional failure probability")
lines(53:81, 1 - cdens[[1]](53:81), col = 2)
```

clip *Set Clipping Region*

Description

Set clipping region in user coordinates

Usage

```
clip(x1, x2, y1, y2)
```

Arguments

`x1, x2, y1, y2`	user coordinates of clipping rectangle

Details

How the clipping rectangle is set depends on the setting of `par("xpd")`: this function changes the current setting until the next high-level plotting command resets it.

Clipping of lines, rectangles and polygons is done in the graphics engine, but clipping of text is if possible done in the device, so the effect of clipping text is device-dependent (and may result in text not wholly within the clipping region being omitted entirely).

Exactly when the clipping region will be reset can be hard to predict. `plot.new` always resets it. Functions such as `lines` and `text` only reset it if `par("xpd")` has been changed. However, functions such as `box`, `mtext`, `title` and `plot.dendrogram` can manipulate the xpd setting.

See Also

`par`

Examples

```
x <- rnorm(1000)
hist(x, xlim = c(-4,4))
usr <- par("usr")
clip(usr[1], -2, usr[3], usr[4])
hist(x, col = red, add = TRUE)
clip(2, usr[2], usr[3], usr[4])
hist(x, col = blue, add = TRUE)
do.call("clip", as.list(usr))  # reset to plot region
```

contour *Display Contours*

Description

Create a contour plot, or add contour lines to an existing plot.

Usage

```
contour(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
contour(x = seq(0, 1, length.out = nrow(z)),
        y = seq(0, 1, length.out = ncol(z)),
        z,
        nlevels = 10, levels = pretty(zlim, nlevels),
        labels = NULL,
        xlim = range(x, finite = TRUE),
        ylim = range(y, finite = TRUE),
        zlim = range(z, finite = TRUE),
        labcex = 0.6, drawlabels = TRUE, method = "flattest",
        vfont, axes = TRUE, frame.plot = axes,
        col = par("fg"), lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"),
        add = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	locations of grid lines at which the values in z are measured. These must be in ascending order. By default, equally spaced values from 0 to 1 are used. If x is a list, its components x$x and x$y are used for x and y, respectively. If the list has component z this is used for z.
z	a matrix containing the values to be plotted (NAs are allowed). Note that x can be used instead of z for convenience.
nlevels	number of contour levels desired **iff** levels is not supplied.
levels	numeric vector of levels at which to draw contour lines.
labels	a vector giving the labels for the contour lines. If NULL then the levels are used as labels, otherwise this is coerced by as.character.
labcex	cex for contour labelling. This is an absolute size, not a multiple of par("cex").
drawlabels	logical. Contours are labelled if TRUE.
method	character string specifying where the labels will be located. Possible values are "simple", "edge" and "flattest" (the default). See the 'Details' section.
vfont	if NULL, the current font family and face are used for the contour labels. If a character vector of length 2 then Hershey vector fonts are used for the contour labels. The first element of the vector selects a typeface and the second element selects a fontindex (see text for more information). The default is NULL on graphics devices with high-quality rotation of text and c("sans serif", "plain") otherwise.
xlim, ylim, zlim	x-, y- and z-limits for the plot.

`axes, frame.plot`
: logical indicating whether axes or a box should be drawn, see `plot.default`.

`col`
: color for the lines drawn.

`lty`
: line type for the lines drawn.

`lwd`
: line width for the lines drawn.

`add`
: logical. If `TRUE`, add to a current plot.

`...`
: additional arguments to `plot.window`, `title`, `Axis` and `box`, typically graphical parameters such as `cex.axis`.

Details

`contour` is a generic function with only a default method in base .

The methods for positioning the labels on contours are `"simple"` (draw at the edge of the plot, overlaying the contour line), `"edge"` (draw at the edge of the plot, embedded in the contour line, with no labels overlapping) and `"flattest"` (draw on the flattest section of the contour, embedded in the contour line, with no labels overlapping). The second and third may not draw a label on every contour line.

For information about vector fonts, see the help for `text` and `Hershey`.

Notice that `contour` interprets the `z` matrix as a table of `f(x[i], y[j])` values, so that the x axis corresponds to row number and the y axis to column number, with column 1 at the bottom, i.e. a 90 degree counter-clockwise rotation of the conventional textual layout.

Alternatively, use `contourplot` from the **lattice** package where the `formula` notation allows to use vectors `x`, `y`, and `z` of the same length.

There is limited control over the axes and frame as arguments `col`, `lwd` and `lty` refer to the contour lines (rather than being general graphical parameters). For more control, add contours to a plot, or add axes and frame to a contour plot.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`options("max.contour.segments")` for the maximal complexity of a single contour line.

`contourLines`, `filled.contour` for color-filled contours, `contourplot` (and `levelplot`) from package **lattice**. Further, `image` and the graphics demo which can be invoked as `demo(graphics)`.

Examples

```
require(grDevices) # for colours
x <- -6:16
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2))
contour(outer(x, x), method = "edge", vfont = c("sans serif", "plain"))
z <- outer(x, sqrt(abs(x)), FUN = "/")
image(x, x, z)
contour(x, x, z, col = "pink", add = TRUE, method = "edge",
        vfont = c("sans serif", "plain"))
contour(x, x, z, ylim = c(1, 6), method = "simple", labcex = 1,
        xlab = quote(x[1]), ylab = quote(x[2]))
contour(x, x, z, ylim = c(-6, 6), nlev = 20, lty = 2, method = "simple",
```

```
        main = "20 levels; \"simple\" labelling method")
par(op)

## Persian Rug Art:
x <- y <- seq(-4*pi, 4*pi, len = 27)
r <- sqrt(outer(x^2, y^2, "+"))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), mar = rep(0, 4))
for(f in pi^(0:3))
  contour(cos(r^2)*exp(-r/f),
          drawlabels = FALSE, axes = FALSE, frame = TRUE)

rx <- range(x <- 10*1:nrow(volcano))
ry <- range(y <- 10*1:ncol(volcano))
ry <- ry + c(-1, 1) * (diff(rx) - diff(ry))/2
tcol <- terrain.colors(12)
par(opar); opar <- par(pty = "s", bg = "lightcyan")
plot(x = 0, y = 0, type = "n", xlim = rx, ylim = ry, xlab = "", ylab = "")
u <- par("usr")
rect(u[1], u[3], u[2], u[4], col = tcol[8], border = "red")
contour(x, y, volcano, col = tcol[2], lty = "solid", add = TRUE,
        vfont = c("sans serif", "plain"))
title("A Topographic Map of Maunga Whau", font = 4)
abline(h = 200*0:4, v = 200*0:4, col = "lightgray", lty = 2, lwd = 0.1)

## contourLines produces the same contour lines as contour
plot(x = 0, y = 0, type = "n", xlim = rx, ylim = ry, xlab = "", ylab = "")
u <- par("usr")
rect(u[1], u[3], u[2], u[4], col = tcol[8], border = "red")
contour(x, y, volcano, col = tcol[1], lty = "solid", add = TRUE,
        vfont = c("sans serif", "plain"))
line.list <- contourLines(x, y, volcano)
invisible(lapply(line.list, lines, lwd=3, col=adjustcolor(2, .3)))
par(opar)
```

---

convertXY *Convert between Graphics Coordinate Systems*

Description

Convert between graphics coordinate systems.

Usage

```
grconvertX(x, from = "user", to = "user")
grconvertY(y, from = "user", to = "user")
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric vector of coordinates.
from, to	character strings giving the coordinate systems to convert between.

Details

The coordinate systems are

`"user"` user coordinates.

`"inches"` inches.

`"device"` the device coordinate system.

`"ndc"` normalized device coordinates.

`"nfc"` normalized figure coordinates.

`"npc"` normalized plot coordinates.

`"nic"` normalized inner region coordinates. (The 'inner region' is that inside the outer margins.)

(These names can be partially matched.) For the 'normalized' coordinate systems the lower left has value 0 and the top right value 1.

Device coordinates are those in which the device works: they are usually in pixels where that makes sense and in big points (1/72 inch) otherwise (e.g., `pdf` and `postscript`).

Value

A numeric vector of the same length as the input.

Examples

```
op <- par(omd=c(0.1, 0.9, 0.1, 0.9), mfrow = c(1, 2))
plot(1:4)
for(tp in c("in", "dev", "ndc", "nfc", "npc", "nic"))
    print(grconvertX(c(1.0, 4.0), "user", tp))
par(op)
```

---

coplot *Conditioning Plots*

Description

This function produces two variants of the **co**nditioning plots discussed in the reference below.

Usage

```
coplot(formula, data, given.values, panel = points, rows, columns,
       show.given = TRUE, col = par("fg"), pch = par("pch"),
       bar.bg = c(num = gray(0.8), fac = gray(0.95)),
       xlab = c(x.name, paste("Given :", a.name)),
       ylab = c(y.name, paste("Given :", b.name)),
       subscripts = FALSE,
       axlabels = function(f) abbreviate(levels(f)),
       number = 6, overlap = 0.5, xlim, ylim, ...)
co.intervals(x, number = 6, overlap = 0.5)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula describing the form of conditioning plot. A formula of the form `y ~ x | a` indicates that plots of y versus x should be produced conditional on the variable a. A formula of the form `y ~ x| a * b` indicates that plots of y versus x should be produced conditional on the two variables a and b. All three or four variables may be either numeric or factors. When x or y are factors, the result is almost as if `as.numeric()` was applied, whereas for factor a or b, the conditioning (and its graphics if `show.given` is true) are adapted.
data	a data frame containing values for any variables in the formula. By default the environment where `coplot` was called from is used.
given.values	a value or list of two values which determine how the conditioning on a and b is to take place. When there is no b (i.e., conditioning only on a), usually this is a matrix with two columns each row of which gives an interval, to be conditioned on, but is can also be a single vector of numbers or a set of factor levels (if the variable being conditioned on is a factor). In this case (no b), the result of `co.intervals` can be used directly as `given.values` argument.
panel	a `function(x, y, col, pch, ...)` which gives the action to be carried out in each panel of the display. The default is `points`.
rows	the panels of the plot are laid out in a `rows` by `columns` array. `rows` gives the number of rows in the array.
columns	the number of columns in the panel layout array.
show.given	logical (possibly of length 2 for 2 conditioning variables): should conditioning plots be shown for the corresponding conditioning variables (default `TRUE`).
col	a vector of colors to be used to plot the points. If too short, the values are recycled.
pch	a vector of plotting symbols or characters. If too short, the values are recycled.
bar.bg	a named vector with components `"num"` and `"fac"` giving the background colors for the (shingle) bars, for **num**eric and **fac**tor conditioning variables respectively.
xlab	character; labels to use for the x axis and the first conditioning variable. If only one label is given, it is used for the x axis and the default label is used for the conditioning variable.
ylab	character; labels to use for the y axis and any second conditioning variable.
subscripts	logical: if true the panel function is given an additional (third) argument `subscripts` giving the subscripts of the data passed to that panel.
axlabels	function for creating axis (tick) labels when x or y are factors.
number	integer; the number of conditioning intervals, for a and b, possibly of length 2. It is only used if the corresponding conditioning variable is not a `factor`.
overlap	numeric < 1; the fraction of overlap of the conditioning variables, possibly of length 2 for x and y direction. When overlap < 0, there will be *gaps* between the data slices.
xlim	the range for the x axis.
ylim	the range for the y axis.
...	additional arguments to the panel function.
x	a numeric vector.

Details

In the case of a single conditioning variable a, when both rows and columns are unspecified, a 'close to square' layout is chosen with columns >= rows.

In the case of multiple rows, the *order* of the panel plots is from the bottom and from the left (corresponding to increasing a, typically).

A panel function should not attempt to start a new plot, but just plot within a given coordinate system: thus plot and boxplot are not panel functions.

The rendering of arguments xlab and ylab is not controlled by par arguments cex.lab and font.lab even though they are plotted by mtext rather than title.

Value

co.intervals(., number, .) returns a (number $\times$ 2) matrix, say ci, where ci[k,] is the range of x values for the k-th interval.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Cleveland, W. S. (1993) *Visualizing Data.* New Jersey: Summit Press.

See Also

pairs, panel.smooth, points.

Examples

```
## Tonga Trench Earthquakes
coplot(lat ~ long | depth, data = quakes)
given.depth <- co.intervals(quakes$depth, number = 4, overlap = .1)
coplot(lat ~ long | depth, data = quakes, given.v = given.depth, rows = 1)

## Conditioning on 2 variables:
ll.dm <- lat ~ long | depth * mag
coplot(ll.dm, data = quakes)
coplot(ll.dm, data = quakes, number = c(4, 7), show.given = c(TRUE, FALSE))
coplot(ll.dm, data = quakes, number = c(3, 7),
       overlap = c(-.5, .1)) # negative overlap DROPS values

## given two factors
Index <- seq(length = nrow(warpbreaks)) # to get nicer default labels
coplot(breaks ~ Index | wool * tension, data = warpbreaks,
       show.given = 0:1)
coplot(breaks ~ Index | wool * tension, data = warpbreaks,
       col = "red", bg = "pink", pch = 21,
       bar.bg = c(fac = "light blue"))

## Example with empty panels:
with(data.frame(state.x77), {
coplot(Life.Exp ~ Income | Illiteracy * state.region, number = 3,
       panel = function(x, y, ...) panel.smooth(x, y, span = .8, ...))
## y ~ factor -- not really sensible, but show off:
coplot(Life.Exp ~ state.region | Income * state.division,
       panel = panel.smooth)
```

```
})
```

---

curve *Draw Function Plots*

Description

Draws a curve corresponding to a function over the interval `[from, to]`. `curve` can plot also an expression in the variable `xname`, default 'x'.

Usage

```
curve(expr, from = NULL, to = NULL, n = 101, add = FALSE,
      type = "l", xname = "x", xlab = xname, ylab = NULL,
      log = NULL, xlim = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class function
plot(x, y = 0, to = 1, from = y, xlim = NULL, ylab = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`expr`	The name of a function, or a call or an expression written as a function of `x` which will evaluate to an object of the same length as `x`.
`x`	a 'vectorizing' numeric function.
`y`	alias for `from` for compatibility with `plot`
`from, to`	the range over which the function will be plotted.
`n`	integer; the number of x values at which to evaluate.
`add`	logical; if `TRUE` add to an already existing plot; if `NA` start a new plot taking the defaults for the limits and log-scaling of the x-axis from the previous plot. Taken as `FALSE` (with a warning if a different value is supplied) if no graphics device is open.
`xlim`	`NULL` or a numeric vector of length 2; if non-`NULL` it provides the defaults for `c(from, to)` and, unless `add = TRUE`, selects the x-limits of the plot – see `plot.window`.
`type`	plot type: see `plot.default`.
`xname`	character string giving the name to be used for the x axis.
`xlab, ylab, log, ...`	labels and graphical parameters can also be specified as arguments. See 'Details' for the interpretation of the default for `log`. For the `"function"` method of `plot`, `...` can include any of the other arguments of `curve`, except `expr`.

Details

The function or expression `expr` (for `curve`) or function `x` (for `plot`) is evaluated at `n` points equally spaced over the range `[from, to]`. The points determined in this way are then plotted.

If either `from` or `to` is `NULL`, it defaults to the corresponding element of `xlim` if that is not `NULL`.

What happens when neither `from`/`to` nor `xlim` specifies both x-limits is a complex story. For `plot(<function>)` and for `curve(add = FALSE)` the defaults are $(0, 1)$. For `curve(add = NA)` and `curve(add = TRUE)` the defaults are taken from the x-limits used for the previous plot. (This differs from versions of prior to 2.14.0.)

The value of `log` is used both to specify the plot axes (unless `add = TRUE`) and how 'equally spaced' is interpreted: if the x component indicates log-scaling, the points at which the expression or function is plotted are equally spaced on log scale.

The default value of `log` is taken from the current plot when `add = TRUE`, whereas if `add = NA` the x component is taken from the existing plot (if any) and the y component defaults to linear. For `add = FALSE` the default is `""`

This used to be a quick hack which now seems to serve a useful purpose, but can give bad results for functions which are not smooth.

For expensive-to-compute expressions, you should use smarter tools.

The way `curve` handles `expr` has caused confusion. It first looks to see if `expr` is a name (also known as a symbol), in which case it is taken to be the name of a function, and `expr` is replaced by a call to `expr` with a single argument with name given by `xname`. Otherwise it checks that `expr` is either a call or an expression, and that it contains a reference to the variable given by `xname` (using `all.vars`): anything else is an error. Then `expr` is evaluated in an environment which supplies a vector of name given by `xname` of length `n`, and should evaluate to an object of length `n`. Note that this means that `curve(x, ...)` is taken as a request to plot a function named `x` (and it is used as such in the `function` method for `plot`).

The `plot` method can be called directly as `plot.function`.

Value

A list with components `x` and `y` of the points that were drawn is returned invisibly.

Warning

For historical reasons, `add` is allowed as an argument to the `"function"` method of `plot`, but its behaviour may surprise you. It is recommended to use `add` only with `curve`.

See Also

`splinefun` for spline interpolation, `lines`.

Examples

```
plot(qnorm) # default range c(0, 1) is appropriate here,
            # but end values are -/+Inf and so are omitted.
plot(qlogis, main = "The Inverse Logit : qlogis()")
abline(h = 0, v = 0:2/2, lty = 3, col = "gray")

curve(sin, -2*pi, 2*pi, xname = "t")
curve(tan, xname = "t", add = NA,
      main = "curve(tan)  --> same x-scale as previous plot")
```

```
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2))
curve(x^3 - 3*x, -2, 2)
curve(x^2 - 2, add = TRUE, col = "violet")

## simple and advanced versions, quite similar:
plot(cos, -pi,  3*pi)
curve(cos, xlim = c(-pi, 3*pi), n = 1001, col = "blue", add = TRUE)

chippy <- function(x) sin(cos(x)*exp(-x/2))
curve(chippy, -8, 7, n = 2001)
plot (chippy, -8, -5)

for(ll in c("", "x", "y", "xy"))
   curve(log(1+x), 1, 100, log = ll, sub = paste0("log = ", ll, ""))
par(op)
```

`dotchart` *Cleveland's Dot Plots*

Description

Draw a Cleveland dot plot.

Usage

```
dotchart(x, labels = NULL, groups = NULL, gdata = NULL,
         cex = par("cex"), pch = 21, gpch = 21, bg = par("bg"),
         color = par("fg"), gcolor = par("fg"), lcolor = "gray",
         xlim = range(x[is.finite(x)]),
         main = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	either a vector or matrix of numeric values (`NA`s are allowed). If `x` is a matrix the overall plot consists of juxtaposed dotplots for each row. Inputs which satisfy `is.numeric(x)` but not `is.vector(x) || is.matrix(x)` are coerced by `as.numeric`, with a warning.
`labels`	a vector of labels for each point. For vectors the default is to use `names(x)` and for matrices the row labels `dimnames(x)[[1]]`.
`groups`	an optional factor indicating how the elements of `x` are grouped. If `x` is a matrix, `groups` will default to the columns of `x`.
`gdata`	data values for the groups. This is typically a summary such as the median or mean of each group.
`cex`	the character size to be used. Setting `cex` to a value smaller than one can be a useful way of avoiding label overlap. Unlike many other graphics functions, this sets the actual size, not a multiple of `par("cex")`.
`pch`	the plotting character or symbol to be used.
`gpch`	the plotting character or symbol to be used for group values.
`bg`	the background color of plotting characters or symbols to be used; use `par(bg= *)` to set the background color of the whole plot.

color	the color(s) to be used for points and labels.
gcolor	the single color to be used for group labels and values.
lcolor	the color(s) to be used for the horizontal lines.
xlim	horizontal range for the plot, see plot.window, e.g.
main	overall title for the plot, see title.
xlab, ylab	axis annotations as in title.
...	graphical parameters can also be specified as arguments.

Value

This function is invoked for its side effect, which is to produce two variants of dotplots as described in Cleveland (1985).

Dot plots are a reasonable substitute for bar plots.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Cleveland, W. S. (1985) *The Elements of Graphing Data.* Monterey, CA: Wadsworth.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

Examples

```
dotchart(VADeaths, main = "Death Rates in Virginia - 1940")
op <- par(xaxs = "i")  # 0 -- 100%
dotchart(t(VADeaths), xlim = c(0,100),
         main = "Death Rates in Virginia - 1940")
par(op)
```

---

filled.contour *Level (Contour) Plots*

Description

This function produces a contour plot with the areas between the contours filled in solid color (Cleveland calls this a level plot). A key showing how the colors map to z values is shown to the right of the plot.

Usage

```
filled.contour(x = seq(0, 1, length.out = nrow(z)),
               y = seq(0, 1, length.out = ncol(z)),
               z,
               xlim = range(x, finite = TRUE),
               ylim = range(y, finite = TRUE),
               zlim = range(z, finite = TRUE),
               levels = pretty(zlim, nlevels), nlevels = 20,
               color.palette = cm.colors,
               col = color.palette(length(levels) - 1),
```

```
                plot.title, plot.axes, key.title, key.axes,
                asp = NA, xaxs = "i", yaxs = "i", las = 1,
                axes = TRUE, frame.plot = axes, ...)

.filled.contour(x, y, z, levels, col)
```

Arguments

x, y	locations of grid lines at which the values in z are measured. These must be in ascending order. (The rest of this description does not apply to .filled.contour.) By default, equally spaced values from 0 to 1 are used. If x is a list, its components x$x and x$y are used for x and y, respectively. If the list has component z this is used for z.
z	a numeric matrix containing the values to be plotted.. Note that x can be used instead of z for convenience.
xlim	x limits for the plot.
ylim	y limits for the plot.
zlim	z limits for the plot.
levels	a set of levels which are used to partition the range of z. Must be **strictly** increasing (and finite). Areas with z values between consecutive levels are painted with the same color.
nlevels	if levels is not specified, the range of z, values is divided into approximately this many levels.
color.palette	a color palette function to be used to assign colors in the plot.
col	an explicit set of colors to be used in the plot. This argument overrides any palette function specification. There should be one less color than levels
plot.title	statements which add titles to the main plot.
plot.axes	statements which draw axes (and a box) on the main plot. This overrides the default axes.
key.title	statements which add titles for the plot key.
key.axes	statements which draw axes on the plot key. This overrides the default axis.
asp	the y/x aspect ratio, see plot.window.
xaxs	the x axis style. The default is to use internal labeling.
yaxs	the y axis style. The default is to use internal labeling.
las	the style of labeling to be used. The default is to use horizontal labeling.
axes, frame.plot	logicals indicating if axes and a box should be drawn, as in plot.default.
...	additional graphical parameters, currently only passed to title().

Details

The values to be plotted can contain NAs. Rectangles with two or more corner values are NA are omitted entirely: where there is a single NA value the triangle opposite the NA is omitted.

Values to be plotted can be infinite: the effect is similar to that described for NA values.

.filled.contour is a 'bare bones' interface to add just the contour plot to an already-set-up plot region. It is is intended for programmatic use, and the programmer is responsible for checking the conditions on the arguments.

Note

`filled.contour` uses the `layout` function and so is restricted to a full page display.

The output produced by `filled.contour` is actually a combination of two plots; one is the filled contour and one is the legend. Two separate coordinate systems are set up for these two plots, but they are only used internally – once the function has returned these coordinate systems are lost. If you want to annotate the main contour plot, for example to add points, you can specify graphics commands in the `plot.axes` argument. See the examples.

Author(s)

Ross Ihaka and R-core.

References

Cleveland, W. S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*. Summit, New Jersey: Hobart.

See Also

`contour`, `image`, `palette`; `contourplot` and `levelplot` from package **lattice**.

Examples

```
require(grDevices) # for colours
filled.contour(volcano, color = terrain.colors, asp = 1) # simple

x <- 10*1:nrow(volcano)
y <- 10*1:ncol(volcano)
filled.contour(x, y, volcano, color = terrain.colors,
    plot.title = title(main = "The Topography of Maunga Whau",
    xlab = "Meters North", ylab = "Meters West"),
    plot.axes = { axis(1, seq(100, 800, by = 100))
                  axis(2, seq(100, 600, by = 100)) },
    key.title = title(main = "Height\n(meters)"),
    key.axes = axis(4, seq(90, 190, by = 10)))  # maybe also asp = 1
mtext(paste("filled.contour(.) from", R.version.string),
      side = 1, line = 4, adj = 1, cex = .66)

# Annotating a filled contour plot
a <- expand.grid(1:20, 1:20)
b <- matrix(a[,1] + a[,2], 20)
filled.contour(x = 1:20, y = 1:20, z = b,
               plot.axes = { axis(1); axis(2); points(10, 10) })

## Persian Rug Art:
x <- y <- seq(-4*pi, 4*pi, len = 27)
r <- sqrt(outer(x^2, y^2, "+"))
filled.contour(cos(r^2)*exp(-r/(2*pi)), axes = FALSE)
## rather, the key *should* be labeled:
filled.contour(cos(r^2)*exp(-r/(2*pi)), frame.plot = FALSE,
               plot.axes = {})
```

`fourfoldplot` *Fourfold Plots*

Description

Creates a fourfold display of a 2 by 2 by k contingency table on the current graphics device, allowing for the visual inspection of the association between two dichotomous variables in one or several populations (strata).

Usage

```
fourfoldplot(x, color = c("#99CCFF", "#6699CC"),
             conf.level = 0.95,
             std = c("margins", "ind.max", "all.max"),
             margin = c(1, 2), space = 0.2, main = NULL,
             mfrow = NULL, mfcol = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	a 2 by 2 by k contingency table in array form, or as a 2 by 2 matrix if k is 1.
`color`	a vector of length 2 specifying the colors to use for the smaller and larger diagonals of each 2 by 2 table.
`conf.level`	confidence level used for the confidence rings on the odds ratios. Must be a single nonnegative number less than 1; if set to 0, confidence rings are suppressed.
`std`	a character string specifying how to standardize the table. Must be one of `"margins"`, `"ind.max"`, or `"all.max"`, and can be abbreviated by the initial letter. If set to `"margins"`, each 2 by 2 table is standardized to equate the margins specified by `margin` while preserving the odds ratio. If `"ind.max"` or `"all.max"`, the tables are either individually or simultaneously standardized to a maximal cell frequency of 1.
`margin`	a numeric vector with the margins to equate. Must be one of `1`, `2`, or `c(1, 2)` (the default), which corresponds to standardizing the row, column, or both margins in each 2 by 2 table. Only used if `std` equals `"margins"`.
`space`	the amount of space (as a fraction of the maximal radius of the quarter circles) used for the row and column labels.
`main`	character string for the fourfold title.
`mfrow`	a numeric vector of the form `c(nr, nc)`, indicating that the displays for the 2 by 2 tables should be arranged in an `nr` by `nc` layout, filled by rows.
`mfcol`	a numeric vector of the form `c(nr, nc)`, indicating that the displays for the 2 by 2 tables should be arranged in an `nr` by `nc` layout, filled by columns.

Details

The fourfold display is designed for the display of 2 by 2 by k tables.

Following suitable standardization, the cell frequencies f_{ij} of each 2 by 2 table are shown as a quarter circle whose radius is proportional to $\sqrt{f_{ij}}$ so that its area is proportional to the cell frequency. An association (odds ratio different from 1) between the binary row and column variables is indicated by the tendency of diagonally opposite cells in one direction to differ in size from those

in the other direction; color is used to show this direction. Confidence rings for the odds ratio allow a visual test of the null of no association; the rings for adjacent quadrants overlap if and only if the observed counts are consistent with the null hypothesis.

Typically, the number k corresponds to the number of levels of a stratifying variable, and it is of interest to see whether the association is homogeneous across strata. The fourfold display visualizes the pattern of association. Note that the confidence rings for the individual odds ratios are not adjusted for multiple testing.

References

Friendly, M. (1994). A fourfold display for 2 by 2 by k tables. Technical Report 217, York University, Psychology Department. http://www.math.yorku.ca/SCS/Papers/4fold/4fold.ps.gz

See Also

mosaicplot

Examples

```
## Use the Berkeley admission data as in Friendly (1995).
x <- aperm(UCBAdmissions, c(2, 1, 3))
dimnames(x)[[2]] <- c("Yes", "No")
names(dimnames(x)) <- c("Sex", "Admit?", "Department")
stats::ftable(x)

## Fourfold display of data aggregated over departments, with
## frequencies standardized to equate the margins for admission
## and sex.
## Figure 1 in Friendly (1994).
fourfoldplot(margin.table(x, c(1, 2)))

## Fourfold display of x, with frequencies in each table
## standardized to equate the margins for admission and sex.
## Figure 2 in Friendly (1994).
fourfoldplot(x)

## Fourfold display of x, with frequencies in each table
## standardized to equate the margins for admission. but not
## for sex.
## Figure 3 in Friendly (1994).
fourfoldplot(x, margin = 2)
```

---

frame *Create / Start a New Plot Frame*

Description

This function (`frame` is an alias for `plot.new`) causes the completion of plotting in the current plot (if there is one) and an advance to a new graphics frame. This is used in all high-level plotting functions and also useful for skipping plots when a multi-figure region is in use.

Usage

```
plot.new()
frame()
```

Details

The new page is painted with the background colour (`par("bg")`), which is often transparent. For devices with a *canvas* colour (the on-screen devices `X11`, `windows` and `quartz`), the window is first painted with the canvas colour and then the background colour.

There are two hooks called `"before.plot.new"` and `"plot.new"` (see `setHook`) called immediately before and after advancing the frame. The latter is used in the testing code to annotate the new page. The hook function(s) are called with no argument. (If the value is a character string, `get` is called on it from within the **graphics** namespace.)

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (`frame`.)

See Also

`plot.window`, `plot.default`.

`grid` *Add Grid to a Plot*

Description

`grid` adds an `nx` by `ny` rectangular grid to an existing plot.

Usage

```
grid(nx = NULL, ny = nx, col = "lightgray", lty = "dotted",
     lwd = par("lwd"), equilogs = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`nx, ny`	number of cells of the grid in x and y direction. When `NULL`, as per default, the grid aligns with the tick marks on the corresponding *default* axis (i.e., tickmarks as computed by `axTicks`). When `NA`, no grid lines are drawn in the corresponding direction.
`col`	character or (integer) numeric; color of the grid lines.
`lty`	character or (integer) numeric; line type of the grid lines.
`lwd`	non-negative numeric giving line width of the grid lines.
`equilogs`	logical, only used when *log* coordinates and alignment with the axis tick marks are active. Setting `equilogs = FALSE` in that case gives *non equidistant* tick aligned grid lines.

Note

If more fine tuning is required, use `abline(h = ., v = .)` directly.

References

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`plot`, `abline`, `lines`, `points`.

Examples

```
plot(1:3)
grid(NA, 5, lwd = 2) # grid only in y-direction

## maybe change the desired number of tick marks:  par(lab = c(mx, my, 7))
op <- par(mfcol = 1:2)
with(iris,
     {
     plot(Sepal.Length, Sepal.Width, col = as.integer(Species),
          xlim = c(4, 8), ylim = c(2, 4.5), panel.first = grid(),
          main = "with(iris,  plot(...., panel.first = grid(), ..) )")
     plot(Sepal.Length, Sepal.Width, col = as.integer(Species),
          panel.first = grid(3, lty = 1, lwd = 2),
          main = "... panel.first = grid(3, lty = 1, lwd = 2), ..")
     }
    )
par(op)
```

---

hist *Histograms*

Description

The generic function `hist` computes a histogram of the given data values. If `plot = TRUE`, the resulting object of class `"histogram"` is plotted by `plot.histogram`, before it is returned.

Usage

```
hist(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
hist(x, breaks = "Sturges",
     freq = NULL, probability = !freq,
     include.lowest = TRUE, right = TRUE,
     density = NULL, angle = 45, col = NULL, border = NULL,
     main = paste("Histogram of" , xname),
     xlim = range(breaks), ylim = NULL,
     xlab = xname, ylab,
     axes = TRUE, plot = TRUE, labels = FALSE,
     nclass = NULL, warn.unused = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a vector of values for which the histogram is desired.
breaks	one of: • a vector giving the breakpoints between histogram cells, • a function to compute the vector of breakpoints, • a single number giving the number of cells for the histogram, • a character string naming an algorithm to compute the number of cells (see 'Details'), • a function to compute the number of cells. In the last three cases the number is a suggestion only; the breakpoints will be set to pretty values. If breaks is a function, the x vector is supplied to it as the only argument.
freq	logical; if TRUE, the histogram graphic is a representation of frequencies, the counts component of the result; if FALSE, probability densities, component density, are plotted (so that the histogram has a total area of one). Defaults to TRUE *if and only if* breaks are equidistant (and probability is not specified).
probability	an *alias* for !freq, for S compatibility.
include.lowest	logical; if TRUE, an x[i] equal to the breaks value will be included in the first (or last, for right = FALSE) bar. This will be ignored (with a warning) unless breaks is a vector.
right	logical; if TRUE, the histogram cells are right-closed (left open) intervals.
density	the density of shading lines, in lines per inch. The default value of NULL means that no shading lines are drawn. Non-positive values of density also inhibit the drawing of shading lines.
angle	the slope of shading lines, given as an angle in degrees (counter-clockwise).
col	a colour to be used to fill the bars. The default of NULL yields unfilled bars.
border	the color of the border around the bars. The default is to use the standard foreground color.
main, xlab, ylab	these arguments to title have useful defaults here.
xlim, ylim	the range of x and y values with sensible defaults. Note that xlim is *not* used to define the histogram (breaks), but only for plotting (when plot = TRUE).
axes	logical. If TRUE (default), axes are draw if the plot is drawn.
plot	logical. If TRUE (default), a histogram is plotted, otherwise a list of breaks and counts is returned. In the latter case, a warning is used if (typically graphical) arguments are specified that only apply to the plot = TRUE case.
labels	logical or character. Additionally draw labels on top of bars, if not FALSE; see plot.histogram.
nclass	numeric (integer). For S(-PLUS) compatibility only, nclass is equivalent to breaks for a scalar or character argument.
warn.unused	logical. If plot = FALSE and warn.unused = TRUE, a warning will be issued when graphical parameters are passed to hist.default().
...	further arguments and graphical parameters passed to plot.histogram and thence to title and axis (if plot = TRUE).

Details

The definition of *histogram* differs by source (with country-specific biases). 's default with equi-spaced breaks (also the default) is to plot the counts in the cells defined by `breaks`. Thus the height of a rectangle is proportional to the number of points falling into the cell, as is the area *provided* the breaks are equally-spaced.

The default with non-equi-spaced breaks is to give a plot of area one, in which the *area* of the rectangles is the fraction of the data points falling in the cells.

If `right = TRUE` (default), the histogram cells are intervals of the form `(a, b]`, i.e., they include their right-hand endpoint, but not their left one, with the exception of the first cell when `include.lowest` is `TRUE`.

For `right = FALSE`, the intervals are of the form `[a, b)`, and `include.lowest` means '*include highest*'.

A numerical tolerance of 10^{-7} times the median bin size is applied when counting entries on the edges of bins. This is not included in the reported `breaks` nor (as from 2.11.0) in the calculation of `density`.

The default for `breaks` is `"Sturges"`: see `nclass.Sturges`. Other names for which algorithms are supplied are `"Scott"` and `"FD"` / `"Freedman-Diaconis"` (with corresponding functions `nclass.scott` and `nclass.FD`). Case is ignored and partial matching is used. Alternatively, a function can be supplied which will compute the intended number of breaks or the actual breakpoints as a function of `x`.

Value

an object of class `"histogram"` which is a list with components:

`breaks`	the $n+1$ cell boundaries (= `breaks` if that was a vector). These are the nominal breaks, not with the boundary fuzz.
`counts`	n integers; for each cell, the number of `x[]` inside.
`density`	values $\hat{f}(x_i)$, as estimated density values. If `all(diff(breaks) == 1)`, they are the relative frequencies `counts/n` and in general satisfy $\sum_i \hat{f}(x_i)(b_{i+1} - b_i) = 1$, where b_i = `breaks[i]`.
`mids`	the n cell midpoints.
`xname`	a character string with the actual `x` argument name.
`equidist`	logical, indicating if the distances between `breaks` are all the same.

Prior to 3.0.0 there was a component `intensities`, the same as `density`, for long-term back compatibility.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley. B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Springer.

See Also

`nclass.Sturges`, `stem`, `density`, `truehist` in package **MASS**.

Typical plots with vertical bars are *not* histograms. Consider `barplot` or `plot(*, type = "h")` for such bar plots.

Examples

```
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2))
hist(islands)
utils::str(hist(islands, col = "gray", labels = TRUE))

hist(sqrt(islands), breaks = 12, col = "lightblue", border = "pink")
##-- For non-equidistant breaks, counts should NOT be graphed unscaled:
r <- hist(sqrt(islands), breaks = c(4*0:5, 10*3:5, 70, 100, 140),
          col = "blue1")
text(r$mids, r$density, r$counts, adj = c(.5, -.5), col = "blue3")
sapply(r[2:3], sum)
sum(r$density * diff(r$breaks)) # == 1
lines(r, lty = 3, border = "purple") # -> lines.histogram(*)
par(op)

require(utils) # for str
str(hist(islands, breaks = 12, plot =  FALSE)) #-> 10 (~= 12) breaks
str(hist(islands, breaks = c(12,20,36,80,200,1000,17000), plot = FALSE))

hist(islands, breaks = c(12,20,36,80,200,1000,17000), freq = TRUE,
     main = "WRONG histogram") # and warning

require(stats)
set.seed(14)
x <- rchisq(100, df = 4)

## Comparing data with a model distribution should be done with qqplot()!
qqplot(x, qchisq(ppoints(x), df = 4)); abline(0, 1, col = 2, lty = 2)

## if you really insist on using hist() ... :
hist(x, freq = FALSE, ylim = c(0, 0.2))
curve(dchisq(x, df = 4), col = 2, lty = 2, lwd = 2, add = TRUE)
```

---

hist.POSIXt *Histogram of a Date or Date-Time Object*

Description

Method for hist applied to date or date-time objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class POSIXt
hist(x, breaks, ...,
     xlab = deparse(substitute(x)),
     plot = TRUE, freq = FALSE,
     start.on.monday = TRUE, format)

## S3 method for class Date
hist(x, breaks, ...,
     xlab = deparse(substitute(x)),
     plot = TRUE, freq = FALSE,
     start.on.monday = TRUE, format)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "POSIXt" or "Date".
breaks	a vector of cut points *or* number giving the number of intervals which x is to be cut into *or* an interval specification, one of "days", "weeks", "months", "quarters" or "years", plus "secs", "mins", "hours" for date-time objects.
...	graphical parameters, or arguments to hist.default such as include.lowest, right and labels.
xlab	a character string giving the label for the x axis, if plotted.
plot	logical. If TRUE (default), a histogram is plotted, otherwise a list of breaks and counts is returned.
freq	logical; if TRUE, the histogram graphic is a representation of frequencies, i.e, the counts component of the result; if FALSE, *relative* frequencies (probabilities) are plotted.
start.on.monday	logical. If breaks = "weeks", should the week start on Mondays or Sundays?
format	for the x-axis labels. See strptime.

Details

Note that unlike the default method, breaks is a required argument.

Using breaks = "quarters" will create intervals of 3 calendar months, with the intervals beginning on January 1, April 1, July 1 or October 1, based upon min(x) as appropriate.

Value

An object of class "histogram": see hist.

See Also

seq.POSIXt, axis.POSIXct, hist

Examples

```
hist(.leap.seconds, "years", freq = TRUE)
hist(.leap.seconds,
     seq(ISOdate(1970, 1, 1), ISOdate(2015, 1, 1), "5 years"))

## 100 random dates in a 10-week period
random.dates <- as.Date("2001/1/1") + 70*stats::runif(100)
hist(random.dates, "weeks", format = "%d %b")
```

---

identify *Identify Points in a Scatter Plot*

Description

identify reads the position of the graphics pointer when the (first) mouse button is pressed. It then searches the coordinates given in x and y for the point closest to the pointer. If this point is close enough to the pointer, its index will be returned as part of the value of the call.

Usage

```
identify(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
identify(x, y = NULL, labels = seq_along(x), pos = FALSE,
         n = length(x), plot = TRUE, atpen = FALSE, offset = 0.5,
         tolerance = 0.25, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	coordinates of points in a scatter plot. Alternatively, any object which defines coordinates (a plotting structure, time series etc: see xy.coords) can be given as x, and y left missing.
labels	an optional character vector giving labels for the points. Will be coerced using as.character, and recycled if necessary to the length of x. Excess labels will be discarded, with a warning.
pos	if pos is TRUE, a component is added to the return value which indicates where text was plotted relative to each identified point: see Value.
n	the maximum number of points to be identified.
plot	logical: if plot is TRUE, the labels are printed near the points and if FALSE they are omitted.
atpen	logical: if TRUE and plot = TRUE, the lower-left corners of the labels are plotted at the points clicked rather than relative to the points.
offset	the distance (in character widths) which separates the label from identified points. Negative values are allowed. Not used if atpen = TRUE.
tolerance	the maximal distance (in inches) for the pointer to be 'close enough' to a point.
...	further arguments passed to par such as cex, col and font.

Details

identify is a generic function, and only the default method is described here.

identify is only supported on screen devices such as X11, windows and quartz. On other devices the call will do nothing.

Clicking near (as defined by tolerance) a point adds it to the list of identified points. Points can be identified only once, and if the point has already been identified or the click is not near any of the points a message is printed immediately on the console.

If plot is TRUE, the point is labelled with the corresponding element of labels. If atpen is false (the default) the labels are placed below, to the left, above or to the right of the identified point, depending on where the pointer was relative to the point. If atpen is true, the labels are placed with the bottom left of the string's box at the pointer.

For the usual X11 device the identification process is terminated by pressing any mouse button other than the first. For the quartz device the process is terminated by pressing either the pop-up menu equivalent (usually second mouse button or Ctrl-click) or the ESC key.

On most devices which support identify, successful selection of a point is indicated by a bell sound unless options(locatorBell = FALSE) has been set.

If the window is resized or hidden and then exposed before the identification process has terminated, any labels drawn by identify will disappear. These will reappear once the identification process has terminated and the window is resized or hidden and exposed again. This is because the labels

drawn by identify are not recorded in the device's display list until the identification process has terminated.

If you interrupt the identify call this leaves the graphics device in an undefined state, with points labelled but labels not recorded in the display list. Copying a device in that state will give unpredictable results.

Value

If pos is FALSE, an integer vector containing the indices of the identified points, in the order they were identified.

If pos is TRUE, a list containing a component ind, indicating which points were identified and a component pos, indicating where the labels were placed relative to the identified points (1=below, 2=left, 3=above, 4=right and 0=no offset, used if atpen = TRUE).

Technicalities

The algorithm used for placing labels is the same as used by text if pos is specified there, the difference being that the position of the pointer relative the identified point determines pos in identify.

For labels placed to the left of a point, the right-hand edge of the string's box is placed offset units to the left of the point, and analogously for points to the right. The baseline of the text is placed below the point so as to approximately centre string vertically. For labels placed above or below a point, the string is centered horizontally on the point. For labels placed above, the baseline of the text is placed offset units above the point, and for those placed below, the baseline is placed so that the top of the string's box is approximately offset units below the point. If you want more precise placement (e.g., centering) use plot = FALSE and plot via text or points: see the examples.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

locator, text.

dev.capabilities to see if it is supported.

Examples

```
## A function to use identify to select points, and overplot the
## points with another symbol as they are selected
identifyPch <- function(x, y = NULL, n = length(x), pch = 19, ...)
{
    xy <- xy.coords(x, y); x <- xy$x; y <- xy$y
    sel <- rep(FALSE, length(x)); res <- integer(0)
    while(sum(sel) < n) {
        ans <- identify(x[!sel], y[!sel], n = 1, plot = FALSE, ...)
        if(!length(ans)) break
        ans <- which(!sel)[ans]
        points(x[ans], y[ans], pch = pch)
        sel[ans] <- TRUE
        res <- c(res, ans)
    }
    res
}
```

image *Display a Color Image*

Description

Creates a grid of colored or gray-scale rectangles with colors corresponding to the values in z. This can be used to display three-dimensional or spatial data aka *images*. This is a generic function.

The functions heat.colors, terrain.colors and topo.colors create heat-spectrum (red to white) and topographical color schemes suitable for displaying ordered data, with n giving the number of colors desired.

Usage

```
image(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
image(x, y, z, zlim, xlim, ylim, col = heat.colors(12),
      add = FALSE, xaxs = "i", yaxs = "i", xlab, ylab,
      breaks, oldstyle = FALSE, useRaster, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	locations of grid lines at which the values in z are measured. These must be finite, non-missing and in (strictly) ascending order. By default, equally spaced values from 0 to 1 are used. If x is a list, its components x$x and x$y are used for x and y, respectively. If the list has component z this is used for z.
z	a numeric or logical matrix containing the values to be plotted (NAs are allowed). Note that x can be used instead of z for convenience.
zlim	the minimum and maximum z values for which colors should be plotted, defaulting to the range of the finite values of z. Each of the given colors will be used to color an equispaced interval of this range. The *midpoints* of the intervals cover the range, so that values just outside the range will be plotted.
xlim, ylim	ranges for the plotted x and y values, defaulting to the ranges of x and y.
col	a list of colors such as that generated by rainbow, heat.colors, topo.colors, terrain.colors or similar functions.
add	logical; if TRUE, add to current plot (and disregard the following four arguments). This is rarely useful because image 'paints' over existing graphics.
xaxs, yaxs	style of x and y axis. The default "i" is appropriate for images. See par.
xlab, ylab	each a character string giving the labels for the x and y axis. Default to the 'call names' of x or y, or to "" if these were unspecified.
breaks	a set of finite numeric breakpoints for the colours: must have one more breakpoint than colour and be in increasing order. Unsorted vectors will be sorted, with a warning.
oldstyle	logical. If true the midpoints of the colour intervals are equally spaced, and zlim[1] and zlim[2] were taken to be midpoints. The default is to have colour intervals of equal lengths between the limits.

useRaster — logical; if TRUE a bitmap raster is used to plot the image instead of polygons. The grid must be regular in that case, otherwise an error is raised. For the behaviour when this is not specified, see 'Details'.

... — graphical parameters for plot may also be passed as arguments to this function, as can the plot aspect ratio asp and axes (see plot.window).

Details

The length of x should be equal to the nrow(z)+1 or nrow(z). In the first case x specifies the boundaries between the cells: in the second case x specifies the midpoints of the cells. Similar reasoning applies to y. It probably only makes sense to specify the midpoints of an equally-spaced grid. If you specify just one row or column and a length-one x or y, the whole user area in the corresponding direction is filled. For logarithmic x or y axes the boundaries between cells must be specified.

Rectangles corresponding to missing values are not plotted (and so are transparent and (unless add = TRUE) the default background painted in par("bg") will show though and if that is transparent, the canvas colour will be seen).

If breaks is specified then zlim is unused and the algorithm used follows cut, so intervals are closed on the right and open on the left except for the lowest interval which is closed at both ends.

The axes (where plotted) make use of the classes of xlim and ylim (and hence by default the classes of x and y): this will mean that for example dates are labelled as such. (As from 3.0.1.)

Notice that image interprets the z matrix as a table of f(x[i], y[j]) values, so that the x axis corresponds to row number and the y axis to column number, with column 1 at the bottom, i.e. a 90 degree counter-clockwise rotation of the conventional printed layout of a matrix.

Images for large z on a regular grid are rendered more efficiently with useRaster = TRUE and can prevent rare anti-aliasing artifacts, but may not be supported by all graphics devices. Some devices (such as postscript and X11(type = "Xlib")) which do not support semi-transparent colours may emit missing values as white rather than transparent, and there may be limitations on the size of a raster image. (Problems with the rendering of raster images have been reported by users of windows() devices under Remote Desktop, at least under its default settings.)

The graphics files in PDF and PostScript can be much smaller under this option.

If useRaster is not specified, raster images are used when the getOption("preferRaster") is true, the grid is regular and either dev.capabilities("rasterImage")$rasterImage is "yes" or it is "non-missing" and there are no missing values.

Note

Originally based on a function by Thomas Lumley.

See Also

filled.contour or heatmap which can look nicer (but are less modular), contour; The **lattice** equivalent of image is levelplot.

heat.colors, topo.colors, terrain.colors, rainbow, hsv, par.

dev.capabilities to see if useRaster = TRUE is supported on the current device.

Examples

```
require(grDevices) # for colours
x <- y <- seq(-4*pi, 4*pi, len = 27)
r <- sqrt(outer(x^2, y^2, "+"))
image(z = z <- cos(r^2)*exp(-r/6), col  = gray((0:32)/32))
image(z, axes = FALSE, main = "Math can be beautiful ...",
      xlab = expression(cos(r^2) * e^{-r/6}))
contour(z, add = TRUE, drawlabels = FALSE)

# Volcano data visualized as matrix. Need to transpose and flip
# matrix horizontally.
image(t(volcano)[ncol(volcano):1,])

# A prettier display of the volcano
x <- 10*(1:nrow(volcano))
y <- 10*(1:ncol(volcano))
image(x, y, volcano, col = terrain.colors(100), axes = FALSE)
contour(x, y, volcano, levels = seq(90, 200, by = 5),
        add = TRUE, col = "peru")
axis(1, at = seq(100, 800, by = 100))
axis(2, at = seq(100, 600, by = 100))
box()
title(main = "Maunga Whau Volcano", font.main = 4)
```

`layout` *Specifying Complex Plot Arrangements*

Description

`layout` divides the device up into as many rows and columns as there are in matrix `mat`, with the column-widths and the row-heights specified in the respective arguments.

Usage

```
layout(mat, widths = rep.int(1, ncol(mat)),
       heights = rep.int(1, nrow(mat)), respect = FALSE)

layout.show(n = 1)
lcm(x)
```

Arguments

`mat`	a matrix object specifying the location of the next N figures on the output device. Each value in the matrix must be `0` or a positive integer. If N is the largest positive integer in the matrix, then the integers $\{1, \ldots, N-1\}$ must also appear at least once in the matrix.
`widths`	a vector of values for the widths of columns on the device. Relative widths are specified with numeric values. Absolute widths (in centimetres) are specified with the `lcm()` function (see examples).
`heights`	a vector of values for the heights of rows on the device. Relative and absolute heights can be specified, see `widths` above.

respect	either a logical value or a matrix object. If the latter, then it must have the same dimensions as mat and each value in the matrix must be either 0 or 1.
n	number of figures to plot.
x	a dimension to be interpreted as a number of centimetres.

Details

Figure i is allocated a region composed from a subset of these rows and columns, based on the rows and columns in which i occurs in mat.

The respect argument controls whether a unit column-width is the same physical measurement on the device as a unit row-height.

There is a limit (currently 200) for the numbers of rows and columns in the layout, and also for the total number of cells (10007).

layout.show(n) plots (part of) the current layout, namely the outlines of the next n figures.

lcm is a trivial function, to be used as *the* interface for specifying absolute dimensions for the widths and heights arguments of layout().

Value

layout returns the number of figures, N, see above.

Warnings

These functions are totally incompatible with the other mechanisms for arranging plots on a device: par(mfrow), par(mfcol) and split.screen.

Author(s)

Paul R. Murrell

References

Murrell, P. R. (1999) Layouts: A mechanism for arranging plots on a page. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, **8**, 121–134.

Chapter 5 of Paul Murrell's Ph.D. thesis.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

par with arguments mfrow, mfcol, or mfg.

Examples

```
def.par <- par(no.readonly = TRUE) # save default, for resetting...

## divide the device into two rows and two columns
## allocate figure 1 all of row 1
## allocate figure 2 the intersection of column 2 and row 2
layout(matrix(c(1,1,0,2), 2, 2, byrow = TRUE))
## show the regions that have been allocated to each plot
layout.show(2)
```

```
## divide device into two rows and two columns
## allocate figure 1 and figure 2 as above
## respect relations between widths and heights
nf <- layout(matrix(c(1,1,0,2), 2, 2, byrow = TRUE), respect = TRUE)
layout.show(nf)

## create single figure which is 5cm square
nf <- layout(matrix(1), widths = lcm(5), heights = lcm(5))
layout.show(nf)


##-- Create a scatterplot with marginal histograms -----

x <- pmin(3, pmax(-3, stats::rnorm(50)))
y <- pmin(3, pmax(-3, stats::rnorm(50)))
xhist <- hist(x, breaks = seq(-3,3,0.5), plot = FALSE)
yhist <- hist(y, breaks = seq(-3,3,0.5), plot = FALSE)
top <- max(c(xhist$counts, yhist$counts))
xrange <- c(-3, 3)
yrange <- c(-3, 3)
nf <- layout(matrix(c(2,0,1,3),2,2,byrow = TRUE), c(3,1), c(1,3), TRUE)
layout.show(nf)

par(mar = c(3,3,1,1))
plot(x, y, xlim = xrange, ylim = yrange, xlab = "", ylab = "")
par(mar = c(0,3,1,1))
barplot(xhist$counts, axes = FALSE, ylim = c(0, top), space = 0)
par(mar = c(3,0,1,1))
barplot(yhist$counts, axes = FALSE, xlim = c(0, top), space = 0, horiz = TRUE)

par(def.par)  #- reset to default
```

`legend` *Add Legends to Plots*

Description

This function can be used to add legends to plots. Note that a call to the function `locator(1)` can be used in place of the `x` and `y` arguments.

Usage

```
legend(x, y = NULL, legend, fill = NULL, col = par("col"),
       border = "black", lty, lwd, pch,
       angle = 45, density = NULL, bty = "o", bg = par("bg"),
       box.lwd = par("lwd"), box.lty = par("lty"), box.col = par("fg"),
       pt.bg = NA, cex = 1, pt.cex = cex, pt.lwd = lwd,
       xjust = 0, yjust = 1, x.intersp = 1, y.intersp = 1,
       adj = c(0, 0.5), text.width = NULL, text.col = par("col"),
       text.font = NULL, merge = do.lines && has.pch, trace = FALSE,
       plot = TRUE, ncol = 1, horiz = FALSE, title = NULL,
       inset = 0, xpd, title.col = text.col, title.adj = 0.5,
       seg.len = 2)
```

Arguments

x, y	the x and y co-ordinates to be used to position the legend. They can be specified by keyword or in any way which is accepted by xy.coords: See 'Details'.
legend	a character or expression vector of length ≥ 1 to appear in the legend. Other objects will be coerced by as.graphicsAnnot.
fill	if specified, this argument will cause boxes filled with the specified colors (or shaded in the specified colors) to appear beside the legend text.
col	the color of points or lines appearing in the legend.
border	the border color for the boxes (used only if fill is specified).
lty, lwd	the line types and widths for lines appearing in the legend. One of these two *must* be specified for line drawing.
pch	the plotting symbols appearing in the legend, as numeric vector or a vector of 1-character strings (see points). Unlike points, this can all be specified as a single multi-character string. *Must* be specified for symbol drawing.
angle	angle of shading lines.
density	the density of shading lines, if numeric and positive. If NULL or negative or NA color filling is assumed.
bty	the type of box to be drawn around the legend. The allowed values are "o" (the default) and "n".
bg	the background color for the legend box. (Note that this is only used if bty != "n".)
box.lty, box.lwd, box.col	the line type, width and color for the legend box (if bty = "o").
pt.bg	the background color for the points, corresponding to its argument bg.
cex	character expansion factor **relative** to current par("cex"). Used for text, and provides the default for pt.cex and title.cex.
pt.cex	expansion factor(s) for the points.
pt.lwd	line width for the points, defaults to the one for lines, or if that is not set, to par("lwd").
xjust	how the legend is to be justified relative to the legend x location. A value of 0 means left justified, 0.5 means centered and 1 means right justified.
yjust	the same as xjust for the legend y location.
x.intersp	character interspacing factor for horizontal (x) spacing.
y.intersp	the same for vertical (y) line distances.
adj	numeric of length 1 or 2; the string adjustment for legend text. Useful for y-adjustment when labels are plotmath expressions.
text.width	the width of the legend text in x ("user") coordinates. (Should be positive even for a reversed x axis.) Defaults to the proper value computed by strwidth(legend).
text.col	the color used for the legend text.
text.font	the font used for the legend text, see text.
merge	logical; if TRUE, merge points and lines but not filled boxes. Defaults to TRUE if there are points and lines.
trace	logical; if TRUE, shows how legend does all its magical computations.

`plot`	logical. If `FALSE`, nothing is plotted but the sizes are returned.
`ncol`	the number of columns in which to set the legend items (default is 1, a vertical legend).
`horiz`	logical; if `TRUE`, set the legend horizontally rather than vertically (specifying `horiz` overrides the `ncol` specification).
`title`	a character string or length-one expression giving a title to be placed at the top of the legend. Other objects will be coerced by `as.graphicsAnnot`.
`inset`	inset distance(s) from the margins as a fraction of the plot region when legend is placed by keyword.
`xpd`	if supplied, a value of the graphical parameter `xpd` to be used while the legend is being drawn.
`title.col`	color for `title`.
`title.adj`	horizontal adjustment for `title`: see the help for `par("adj")`.
`seg.len`	the length of lines drawn to illustrate `lty` and/or `lwd` (in units of character widths).

Details

Arguments `x`, `y`, `legend` are interpreted in a non-standard way to allow the coordinates to be specified *via* one or two arguments. If `legend` is missing and `y` is not numeric, it is assumed that the second argument is intended to be `legend` and that the first argument specifies the coordinates.

The coordinates can be specified in any way which is accepted by `xy.coords`. If this gives the coordinates of one point, it is used as the top-left coordinate of the rectangle containing the legend. If it gives the coordinates of two points, these specify opposite corners of the rectangle (either pair of corners, in any order).

The location may also be specified by setting `x` to a single keyword from the list `"bottomright"`, `"bottom"`, `"bottomleft"`, `"left"`, `"topleft"`, `"top"`, `"topright"`, `"right"` and `"center"`. This places the legend on the inside of the plot frame at the given location. Partial argument matching is used. The optional `inset` argument specifies how far the legend is inset from the plot margins. If a single value is given, it is used for both margins; if two values are given, the first is used for `x`-distance, the second for `y`-distance.

Attribute arguments such as `col`, `pch`, `lty`, etc, are recycled if necessary: `merge` is not. Set entries of `lty` to `0` or set entries of `lwd` to `NA` to suppress lines in corresponding legend entries; set `pch` values to `NA` to suppress points.

Points are drawn *after* lines in order that they can cover the line with their background color `pt.bg`, if applicable.

See the examples for how to right-justify labels.

Since they are not used for Unicode code points, values `-31:-1` are silently omitted, as are `NA` and `""` values.

Value

A list with list components

`rect`	a list with components
	`w`, `h` positive numbers giving **w**idth and **h**eight of the legend's box.
	`left`, `top` x and y coordinates of upper left corner of the box.
`text`	a list with components

`x, y` numeric vectors of length `length(legend)`, giving the x and y coordinates of the legend's text(s).

returned invisibly.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`plot`, `barplot` which uses `legend()`, and `text` for more examples of math expressions.

Examples

```
## Run the example in ?matplot or the following:
leg.txt <- c("Setosa     Petals", "Setosa     Sepals",
             "Versicolor Petals", "Versicolor Sepals")
y.leg <- c(4.5, 3, 2.1, 1.4, .7)
cexv  <- c(1.2, 1, 4/5, 2/3, 1/2)
matplot(c(1, 8), c(0, 4.5), type = "n", xlab = "Length", ylab = "Width",
        main = "Petal and Sepal Dimensions in Iris Blossoms")
for (i in seq(cexv)) {
  text  (1, y.leg[i] - 0.1, paste("cex=", formatC(cexv[i])), cex = 0.8, adj = 0)
  legend(3, y.leg[i], leg.txt, pch = "sSvV", col = c(1, 3), cex = cexv[i])
}

## merge = TRUE for merging lines & points:
x <- seq(-pi, pi, len = 65)
plot(x, sin(x), type = "l", ylim = c(-1.2, 1.8), col = 3, lty = 2)
points(x, cos(x), pch = 3, col = 4)
lines(x, tan(x), type = "b", lty = 1, pch = 4, col = 6)
title("legend(..., lty = c(2, -1, 1), pch = c(NA, 3, 4), merge = TRUE)",
      cex.main = 1.1)
legend(-1, 1.9, c("sin", "cos", "tan"), col = c(3, 4, 6),
       text.col = "green4", lty = c(2, -1, 1), pch = c(NA, 3, 4),
       merge = TRUE, bg = "gray90")

## right-justifying a set of labels: thanks to Uwe Ligges
x <- 1:5; y1 <- 1/x; y2 <- 2/x
plot(rep(x, 2), c(y1, y2), type = "n", xlab = "x", ylab = "y")
lines(x, y1); lines(x, y2, lty = 2)
temp <- legend("topright", legend = c(" ", " "),
               text.width = strwidth("1,000,000"),
               lty = 1:2, xjust = 1, yjust = 1,
               title = "Line Types")
text(temp$rect$left + temp$rect$w, temp$text$y,
     c("1,000", "1,000,000"), pos = 2)


##--- log scaled Examples ------------------------------
leg.txt <- c("a one", "a two")

par(mfrow = c(2, 2))
for(ll in c("","x","y","xy")) {
```

```
  plot(2:10, log = ll, main = paste0("log = ", ll, ""))
  abline(1, 1)
  lines(2:3, 3:4, col = 2)
  points(2, 2, col = 3)
  rect(2, 3, 3, 2, col = 4)
  text(c(3,3), 2:3, c("rect(2,3,3,2, col=4)",
                      "text(c(3,3),2:3,\"c(rect(...)\")"), adj = c(0, 0.3))
  legend(list(x = 2,y = 8), legend = leg.txt, col = 2:3, pch = 1:2,
         lty = 1, merge = TRUE)   #, trace = TRUE)
}
par(mfrow = c(1,1))

##-- Math expressions:  ------------------------------
x <- seq(-pi, pi, len = 65)
plot(x, sin(x), type = "l", col = 2, xlab = expression(phi),
     ylab = expression(f(phi)))
abline(h = -1:1, v = pi/2*(-6:6), col = "gray90")
lines(x, cos(x), col = 3, lty = 2)
ex.cs1 <- expression(plain(sin) * phi,  paste("cos", phi))  # 2 ways
utils::str(legend(-3, .9, ex.cs1, lty = 1:2, plot = FALSE,
           adj = c(0, 0.6)))  # adj y !
legend(-3, 0.9, ex.cs1, lty = 1:2, col = 2:3,  adj = c(0, 0.6))

require(stats)
x <- rexp(100, rate = .5)
hist(x, main = "Mean and Median of a Skewed Distribution")
abline(v = mean(x),   col = 2, lty = 2, lwd = 2)
abline(v = median(x), col = 3, lty = 3, lwd = 2)
ex12 <- expression(bar(x) == sum(over(x[i], n), i == 1, n),
                   hat(x) == median(x[i], i == 1, n))
utils::str(legend(4.1, 30, ex12, col = 2:3, lty = 2:3, lwd = 2))

## Filled boxes -- for more, see example(plot.factor)
op <- par(bg = "white") # to get an opaque box for the legend
plot(cut(weight, 3) ~ group, data = PlantGrowth, col = NULL,
     density = 16*(1:3))
par(op)

## Using ncol :
x <- 0:64/64
matplot(x, outer(x, 1:7, function(x, k) sin(k * pi * x)),
        type = "o", col = 1:7, ylim = c(-1, 1.5), pch = "*")
op <- par(bg = "antiquewhite1")
legend(0, 1.5, paste("sin(", 1:7, "pi * x)"), col = 1:7, lty = 1:7,
       pch = "*", ncol = 4, cex = 0.8)
legend(.8,1.2, paste("sin(", 1:7, "pi * x)"), col = 1:7, lty = 1:7,
       pch = "*", cex = 0.8)
legend(0, -.1, paste("sin(", 1:4, "pi * x)"), col = 1:4, lty = 1:4,
       ncol = 2, cex = 0.8)
legend(0, -.4, paste("sin(", 5:7, "pi * x)"), col = 4:6,  pch = 24,
       ncol = 2, cex = 1.5, lwd = 2, pt.bg = "pink", pt.cex = 1:3)
par(op)

## point covering line :
y <- sin(3*pi*x)
plot(x, y, type = "l", col = "blue",
    main = "points with bg & legend(*, pt.bg)")
```

```
points(x, y, pch = 21, bg = "white")
legend(.4,1, "sin(c x)", pch = 21, pt.bg = "white", lty = 1, col = "blue")

## legends with titles at different locations
plot(x, y, type = "n")
legend("bottomright", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "bottomright")
legend("bottom", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "bottom")
legend("bottomleft", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "bottomleft")
legend("left", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "left")
legend("topleft", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "topleft, inset = .05",
       inset = .05)
legend("top", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "top")
legend("topright", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "topright, inset = .02",
       inset = .02)
legend("right", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "right")
legend("center", "(x,y)", pch = 1, title = "center")

# using text.font (and text.col):
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), mar = rep(2.1, 4))
c6 <- terrain.colors(10)[1:6]
for(i in 1:4) {
   plot(1, type = "n", axes = FALSE, ann = FALSE); title(paste("text.font =",i))
   legend("top", legend = LETTERS[1:6], col = c6,
          ncol = 2, cex = 2, lwd = 3, text.font = i, text.col = c6)
}
par(op)
```

`lines` *Add Connected Line Segments to a Plot*

Description

A generic function taking coordinates given in various ways and joining the corresponding points with line segments.

Usage

```
lines(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
lines(x, y = NULL, type = "l", ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	coordinate vectors of points to join.
`type`	character indicating the type of plotting; actually any of the `types` as in `plot.default`.
`...`	Further graphical parameters (see `par`) may also be supplied as arguments, particularly, line type, `lty`, line width, `lwd`, color, `col` and for `type = "b"`, `pch`. Also the line characteristics `lend`, `ljoin` and `lmitre`.

Details

The coordinates can be passed in a plotting structure (a list with `x` and `y` components), a two-column matrix, a time series, ... See `xy.coords`. If supplied separately, they must be of the same length.

The coordinates can contain `NA` values. If a point contains `NA` in either its `x` or `y` value, it is omitted from the plot, and lines are not drawn to or from such points. Thus missing values can be used to achieve breaks in lines.

For `type = "h"`, `col` can be a vector and will be recycled as needed.

`lwd` can be a vector: its first element will apply to lines but the whole vector to symbols (recycled as necessary).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`lines.formula` for the formula method; `points`, particularly for `type %in% c("p","b","o")`, `plot`, and the workhorse function `plot.xy`.

`abline` for drawing (single) straight lines.

`par` for line type (`lty`) specification and how to specify colors.

Examples

```
# draw a smooth line through a scatter plot
plot(cars, main = "Stopping Distance versus Speed")
lines(stats::lowess(cars))
```

`locator` *Graphical Input*

Description

Reads the position of the graphics cursor when the (first) mouse button is pressed.

Usage

```
locator(n = 512, type = "n", ...)
```

Arguments

`n`	the maximum number of points to locate. Valid values start at 1.
`type`	One of `"n"`, `"p"`, `"l"` or `"o"`. If `"p"` or `"o"` the points are plotted; if `"l"` or `"o"` they are joined by lines.
`...`	additional graphics parameters used if `type != "n"` for plotting the locations.

Details

`locator` is only supported on screen devices such as `X11`, `windows` and `quartz`. On other devices the call will do nothing.

Unless the process is terminated prematurely by the user (see below) at most `n` positions are determined.

For the usual `X11` device the identification process is terminated by pressing any mouse button other than the first. For the `quartz` device the process is terminated by pressing the `ESC` key.

The current graphics parameters apply just as if `plot.default` has been called with the same value of `type`. The plotting of the points and lines is subject to clipping, but locations outside the current clipping rectangle will be returned.

On most devices which support `locator`, successful selection of a point is indicated by a bell sound unless `options(locatorBell = FALSE)` has been set.

If the window is resized or hidden and then exposed before the input process has terminated, any lines or points drawn by `locator` will disappear. These will reappear once the input process has terminated and the window is resized or hidden and exposed again. This is because the points and lines drawn by `locator` are not recorded in the device's display list until the input process has terminated.

Value

A list containing `x` and `y` components which are the coordinates of the identified points in the user coordinate system, i.e., the one specified by `par("usr")`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`identify`.

`dev.capabilities` to see if it is supported.

`matplot` *Plot Columns of Matrices*

Description

Plot the columns of one matrix against the columns of another.

Usage

```
matplot(x, y, type = "p", lty = 1:5, lwd = 1, lend = par("lend"),
        pch = NULL,
        col = 1:6, cex = NULL, bg = NA,
        xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL,
        ..., add = FALSE, verbose = getOption("verbose"))

matpoints(x, y, type = "p", lty = 1:5, lwd = 1, pch = NULL,
```

```
          col = 1:6, ...)

matlines (x, y, type = "l", lty = 1:5, lwd = 1, pch = NULL,
          col = 1:6, ...)
```

Arguments

x,y	vectors or matrices of data for plotting. The number of rows should match. If one of them are missing, the other is taken as y and an x vector of 1:n is used. Missing values (NAs) are allowed.
type	character string (length 1 vector) or vector of 1-character strings indicating the type of plot for each column of y, see plot for all possible types. The first character of type defines the first plot, the second character the second, etc. Characters in type are cycled through; e.g., "pl" alternately plots points and lines.
lty,lwd,lend	vector of line types, widths, and end styles. The first element is for the first column, the second element for the second column, etc., even if lines are not plotted for all columns. Line types will be used cyclically until all plots are drawn.
pch	character string or vector of 1-characters or integers for plotting characters, see points. The first character is the plotting-character for the first plot, the second for the second, etc. The default is the digits (1 through 9, 0) then the lowercase and uppercase letters.
col	vector of colors. Colors are used cyclically.
cex	vector of character expansion sizes, used cyclically. This works as a multiple of par("cex"). NULL is equivalent to 1.0.
bg	vector of background (fill) colors for the open plot symbols given by pch = 21:25 as in points. The default NA corresponds to the one of the underlying function plot.xy.
xlab, ylab	titles for x and y axes, as in plot.
xlim, ylim	ranges of x and y axes, as in plot.
...	Graphical parameters (see par) and any further arguments of plot, typically plot.default, may also be supplied as arguments to this function. Hence, the high-level graphics control arguments described under par and the arguments to title may be supplied to this function.
add	logical. If TRUE, plots are added to current one, using points and lines.
verbose	logical. If TRUE, write one line of what is done.

Details

Points involving missing values are not plotted.

The first column of x is plotted against the first column of y, the second column of x against the second column of y, etc. If one matrix has fewer columns, plotting will cycle back through the columns again. (In particular, either x or y may be a vector, against which all columns of the other argument will be plotted.)

The first element of col, cex, lty, lwd is used to plot the axes as well as the first line.

Because plotting symbols are drawn with lines and because these functions may be changing the line style, you should probably specify lty = 1 when using plotting symbols.

Side Effects

Function `matplot` generates a new plot; `matpoints` and `matlines` add to the current one.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`plot`, `points`, `lines`, `matrix`, `par`.

Examples

```
require(grDevices)
matplot((-4:5)^2, main = "Quadratic") # almost identical to plot(*)
sines <- outer(1:20, 1:4, function(x, y) sin(x / 20 * pi * y))
matplot(sines, pch = 1:4, type = "o", col = rainbow(ncol(sines)))
matplot(sines, type = "b", pch = 21:23, col = 2:5, bg = 2:5,
        main = "matplot(...., pch = 21:23, bg = 2:5)")

x <- 0:50/50
matplot(x, outer(x, 1:8, function(x, k) sin(k*pi * x)),
        ylim = c(-2,2), type = "plobcsSh",
        main= "matplot(,type = \"plobcsSh\" )")
## pch & type =  vector of 1-chars :
matplot(x, outer(x, 1:4, function(x, k) sin(k*pi * x)),
        pch = letters[1:4], type = c("b","p","o"))

lends <- c("round","butt","square")
matplot(matrix(1:12, 4), type="c", lty=1, lwd=10, lend=lends)
text(cbind(2.5, 2*c(1,3,5)-.4), lends, col= 1:3, cex = 1.5)

table(iris$Species) # is data.frame with Species factor
iS <- iris$Species == "setosa"
iV <- iris$Species == "versicolor"
op <- par(bg = "bisque")
matplot(c(1, 8), c(0, 4.5), type =  "n", xlab = "Length", ylab = "Width",
        main = "Petal and Sepal Dimensions in Iris Blossoms")
matpoints(iris[iS,c(1,3)], iris[iS,c(2,4)], pch = "sS", col = c(2,4))
matpoints(iris[iV,c(1,3)], iris[iV,c(2,4)], pch = "vV", col = c(2,4))
legend(1, 4, c("    Setosa Petals", "    Setosa Sepals",
               "Versicolor Petals", "Versicolor Sepals"),
       pch = "sSvV", col = rep(c(2,4), 2))

nam.var <- colnames(iris)[-5]
nam.spec <- as.character(iris[1+50*0:2, "Species"])
iris.S <- array(NA, dim = c(50,4,3),
                dimnames = list(NULL, nam.var, nam.spec))
for(i in 1:3) iris.S[,,i] <- data.matrix(iris[1:50+50*(i-1), -5])

matplot(iris.S[, "Petal.Length",], iris.S[, "Petal.Width",], pch = "SCV",
        col = rainbow(3, start = 0.8, end = 0.1),
        sub = paste(c("S", "C", "V"), dimnames(iris.S)[[3]],
                    sep = "=", collapse= ",  "),
        main = "Fishers Iris Data")
```

```
par(op)
```

`mosaicplot` *Mosaic Plots*

Description

Plots a mosaic on the current graphics device.

Usage

```
mosaicplot(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
mosaicplot(x, main = deparse(substitute(x)),
           sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
           sort = NULL, off = NULL, dir = NULL,
           color = NULL, shade = FALSE, margin = NULL,
           cex.axis = 0.66, las = par("las"), border = NULL,
           type = c("pearson", "deviance", "FT"), ...)

## S3 method for class formula
mosaicplot(formula, data = NULL, ...,
           main = deparse(substitute(data)), subset,
           na.action = stats::na.omit)
```

Arguments

`x`	a contingency table in array form, with optional category labels specified in the `dimnames(x)` attribute. The table is best created by the `table()` command.
`main`	character string for the mosaic title.
`sub`	character string for the mosaic sub-title (at bottom).
`xlab, ylab`	x- and y-axis labels used for the plot; by default, the first and second element of `names(dimnames(X))` (i.e., the name of the first and second variable in `X`).
`sort`	vector ordering of the variables, containing a permutation of the integers `1:length(dim(x))` (the default).
`off`	vector of offsets to determine percentage spacing at each level of the mosaic (appropriate values are between 0 and 20, and the default is 20 times the number of splits for 2-dimensional tables, and 10 otherwise. Rescaled to maximally 50, and recycled if necessary.
`dir`	vector of split directions (`"v"` for vertical and `"h"` for horizontal) for each level of the mosaic, one direction for each dimension of the contingency table. The default consists of alternating directions, beginning with a vertical split.
`color`	logical or (recycling) vector of colors for color shading, used only when `shade` is `FALSE`, or `NULL` (default). By default, grey boxes are drawn. `color = TRUE` uses a gamma-corrected grey palette. `color = FALSE` gives empty boxes with no shading.

shade	a logical indicating whether to produce extended mosaic plots, or a numeric vector of at most 5 distinct positive numbers giving the absolute values of the cut points for the residuals. By default, shade is FALSE, and simple mosaics are created. Using shade = TRUE cuts absolute values at 2 and 4.
margin	a list of vectors with the marginal totals to be fit in the log-linear model. By default, an independence model is fitted. See loglin for further information.
cex.axis	The magnification to be used for axis annotation, as a multiple of par("cex").
las	numeric; the style of axis labels, see par.
border	colour of borders of cells: see polygon.
type	a character string indicating the type of residual to be represented. Must be one of "pearson" (giving components of Pearson's χ^2), "deviance" (giving components of the likelihood ratio χ^2), or "FT" for the Freeman-Tukey residuals. The value of this argument can be abbreviated.
formula	a formula, such as y ~ x.
data	a data frame (or list), or a contingency table from which the variables in formula should be taken.
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations in the data frame to be used for plotting.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contains variables to be cross-tabulated, and these variables contain NAs. The default is to omit cases which have an NA in any variable. Since the tabulation will omit all cases containing missing values, this will only be useful if the na.action function replaces missing values.

Details

This is a generic function. It currently has a default method (mosaicplot.default) and a formula interface (mosaicplot.formula).

Extended mosaic displays visualize standardized residuals of a loglinear model for the table by color and outline of the mosaic's tiles. (Standardized residuals are often referred to a standard normal distribution.) Cells representing negative residuals are drawn in shaded of red and with broken borders; positive ones are drawn in blue with solid borders.

For the formula method, if data is an object inheriting from class "table" or class "ftable" or an array with more than 2 dimensions, it is taken as a contingency table, and hence all entries should be non-negative. In this case the left-hand side of formula should be empty and the variables on the right-hand side should be taken from the names of the dimnames attribute of the contingency table. A marginal table of these variables is computed, and a mosaic plot of that table is produced.

Otherwise, data should be a data frame or matrix, list or environment containing the variables to be cross-tabulated. In this case, after possibly selecting a subset of the data as specified by the subset argument, a contingency table is computed from the variables given in formula, and a mosaic is produced from this.

See Emerson (1998) for more information and a case study with television viewer data from Nielsen Media Research.

Missing values are not supported except via an na.action function when data contains variables to be cross-tabulated.

A more flexible and extensible implementation of mosaic plots written in the grid graphics system is provided in the function mosaic in the contributed package **vcd** (Meyer, Zeileis and Hornik, 2005).

Author(s)

S-PLUS original by John Emerson <john.emerson@yale.edu>. Originally modified and enhanced for by Kurt Hornik.

References

Hartigan, J.A., and Kleiner, B. (1984) A mosaic of television ratings. *The American Statistician*, **38**, 32–35.

Emerson, J. W. (1998) Mosaic displays in S-PLUS: A general implementation and a case study. *Statistical Computing and Graphics Newsletter (ASA)*, **9**, 1, 17–23.

Friendly, M. (1994) Mosaic displays for multi-way contingency tables. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **89**, 190–200.

Meyer, D., Zeileis, A., and Hornik, K. (2005) The strucplot framework: Visualizing multi-way contingency tables with vcd. *Report 22*, Department of Statistics and Mathematics, Wirtschaftsuniversität Wien, Research Report Series. http://epub.wu.ac.at/dyn/openURL?id=oai:epub.wu-wien.ac.at:epub-wu-01_8a1

See Also

assocplot, loglin.

Examples

```
require(stats)
mosaicplot(Titanic, main = "Survival on the Titanic", color = TRUE)
## Formula interface for tabulated data:
mosaicplot(~ Sex + Age + Survived, data = Titanic, color = TRUE)

mosaicplot(HairEyeColor, shade = TRUE)
## Independence model of hair and eye color and sex.  Indicates that
## there are more blue eyed blonde females than expected in the case
## of independence and too few brown eyed blonde females.
## The corresponding model is:
fm <- loglin(HairEyeColor, list(1, 2, 3))
pchisq(fm$pearson, fm$df, lower.tail = FALSE)

mosaicplot(HairEyeColor, shade = TRUE, margin = list(1:2, 3))
## Model of joint independence of sex from hair and eye color.  Males
## are underrepresented among people with brown hair and eyes, and are
## overrepresented among people with brown hair and blue eyes.
## The corresponding model is:
fm <- loglin(HairEyeColor, list(1:2, 3))
pchisq(fm$pearson, fm$df, lower.tail = FALSE)

## Formula interface for raw data: visualize cross-tabulation of numbers
## of gears and carburettors in Motor Trend car data.
mosaicplot(~ gear + carb, data = mtcars, color = TRUE, las = 1)
# color recycling
mosaicplot(~ gear + carb, data = mtcars, color = 2:3, las = 1)
```

mtext *Write Text into the Margins of a Plot*

Description

Text is written in one of the four margins of the current figure region or one of the outer margins of the device region.

Usage

```
mtext(text, side = 3, line = 0, outer = FALSE, at = NA,
      adj = NA, padj = NA, cex = NA, col = NA, font = NA, ...)
```

Arguments

text	a character or expression vector specifying the *text* to be written. Other objects are coerced by as.graphicsAnnot.
side	on which side of the plot (1=bottom, 2=left, 3=top, 4=right).
line	on which MARgin line, starting at 0 counting outwards.
outer	use outer margins if available.
at	give location of each string in user coordinates. If the component of at corresponding to a particular text item is not a finite value (the default), the location will be determined by adj.
adj	adjustment for each string in reading direction. For strings parallel to the axes, adj = 0 means left or bottom alignment, and adj = 1 means right or top alignment. If adj is not a finite value (the default), the value of par("las") determines the adjustment. For strings plotted parallel to the axis the default is to centre the string.
padj	adjustment for each string perpendicular to the reading direction (which is controlled by adj). For strings parallel to the axes, padj = 0 means right or top alignment, and padj = 1 means left or bottom alignment. If padj is not a finite value (the default), the value of par("las") determines the adjustment. For strings plotted perpendicular to the axis the default is to centre the string.
cex	character expansion factor. NULL and NA are equivalent to 1.0. This is an absolute measure, not scaled by par("cex") or by setting par("mfrow") or par("mfcol"). Can be a vector.
col	color to use. Can be a vector. NA values (the default) mean use par("col").
font	font for text. Can be a vector. NA values (the default) mean use par("font").
...	Further graphical parameters (see par), including family, las and xpd. (The latter defaults to the figure region unless outer = TRUE, otherwise the device region. It can only be increased.)

Details

The user coordinates in the outer margins always range from zero to one, and are not affected by the user coordinates in the figure region(s) — differs here from other implementations of S.

All of the named arguments can be vectors, and recycling will take place to plot as many strings as the longest of the vector arguments.

Note that a vector `adj` has a different meaning from `text`. `adj = 0.5` will centre the string, but for `outer = TRUE` on the device region rather than the plot region.

Parameter `las` will determine the orientation of the string(s). For strings plotted perpendicular to the axis the default justification is to place the end of the string nearest the axis on the specified line. (Note that this differs from S, which uses `srt` if `at` is supplied and `las` if it is not. Parameter `srt` is ignored in .)

Note that if the text is to be plotted perpendicular to the axis, `adj` determines the justification of the string *and* the position along the axis unless `at` is specified.

Graphics parameter `"ylbias"` (see `par`) determines how the text baseline is placed relative to the nominal line.

Side Effects

The given text is written onto the current plot.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`title`, `text`, `plot`, `par`; `plotmath` for details on mathematical annotation.

Examples

```
plot(1:10, (-4:5)^2, main = "Parabola Points", xlab = "xlab")
mtext("10 of them")
for(s in 1:4)
    mtext(paste("mtext(..., line= -1, {side, col, font} = ", s,
          ", cex = ", (1+s)/2, ")"), line = -1,
          side = s, col = s, font = s, cex = (1+s)/2)
mtext("mtext(..., line= -2)", line = -2)
mtext("mtext(..., line= -2, adj = 0)", line = -2, adj = 0)
##--- log axis :
plot(1:10, exp(1:10), log = "y", main = "log =\"y\"", xlab = "xlab")
for(s in 1:4) mtext(paste("mtext(...,side=", s ,")"), side = s)
```

---

pairs *Scatterplot Matrices*

Description

A matrix of scatterplots is produced.

Usage

```
pairs(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
pairs(formula, data = NULL, ..., subset,
      na.action = stats::na.pass)

## Default S3 method:
pairs(x, labels, panel = points, ...,
      lower.panel = panel, upper.panel = panel,
      diag.panel = NULL, text.panel = textPanel,
      label.pos = 0.5 + has.diag/3, line.main = 3,
      cex.labels = NULL, font.labels = 1,
      row1attop = TRUE, gap = 1, log = "")
```

Arguments

`x`	the coordinates of points given as numeric columns of a matrix or data frame. Logical and factor columns are converted to numeric in the same way that `data.matrix` does.
`formula`	a formula, such as `~ x + y + z`. Each term will give a separate variable in the pairs plot, so terms should be numeric vectors. (A response will be interpreted as another variable, but not treated specially, so it is confusing to use one.)
`data`	a data.frame (or list) from which the variables in `formula` should be taken.
`subset`	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used for plotting.
`na.action`	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain `NA`s. The default is to pass missing values on to the panel functions, but `na.action = na.omit` will cause cases with missing values in any of the variables to be omitted entirely.
`labels`	the names of the variables.
`panel`	`function(x, y, ...)` which is used to plot the contents of each panel of the display.
`...`	arguments to be passed to or from methods. Also, graphical parameters can be given as can arguments to `plot` such as `main`. `par("oma")` will be set appropriately unless specified.
`lower.panel, upper.panel`	separate panel functions (or `NULL`) to be used below and above the diagonal respectively.
`diag.panel`	optional `function(x, ...)` to be applied on the diagonals.
`text.panel`	optional `function(x, y, labels, cex, font, ...)` to be applied on the diagonals.
`label.pos`	`y` position of labels in the text panel.
`line.main`	if `main` is specified, `line.main` gives the `line` argument to `mtext()` which draws the title. You may want to specify `oma` when changing `line.main`.
`cex.labels, font.labels`	graphics parameters for the text panel.
`row1attop`	logical. Should the layout be matrix-like with row 1 at the top, or graph-like with row 1 at the bottom?

gap	distance between subplots, in margin lines.
log	a character string indicating if logarithmic axes are to be used: see plot.default. log = "xy" specifies logarithmic axes for all variables.

Details

The ijth scatterplot contains x[,i] plotted against x[,j]. The scatterplot can be customised by setting panel functions to appear as something completely different. The off-diagonal panel functions are passed the appropriate columns of x as x and y: the diagonal panel function (if any) is passed a single column, and the text.panel function is passed a single (x, y) location and the column name. Setting some of these panel functions to NULL is equivalent to *not* drawing anything there.

The graphical parameters pch and col can be used to specify a vector of plotting symbols and colors to be used in the plots.

The graphical parameter oma will be set by pairs.default unless supplied as an argument.

A panel function should not attempt to start a new plot, but just plot within a given coordinate system: thus plot and boxplot are not panel functions.

By default, missing values are passed to the panel functions and will often be ignored within a panel. However, for the formula method and na.action = na.omit, all cases which contain a missing values for any of the variables are omitted completely (including when the scales are selected).

Author(s)

Enhancements for 1.0.0 contributed by Dr. Jens Oehlschlaegel-Akiyoshi and R-core members.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
pairs(iris[1:4], main = "Andersons Iris Data -- 3 species",
      pch = 21, bg = c("red", "green3", "blue")[unclass(iris$Species)])

## formula method
pairs(~ Fertility + Education + Catholic, data = swiss,
      subset = Education < 20, main = "Swiss data, Education < 20")

pairs(USJudgeRatings)
## show only lower triangle (and suppress labeling for whatever reason):
pairs(USJudgeRatings, text.panel = NULL, upper.panel = NULL)

## put histograms on the diagonal
panel.hist <- function(x, ...)
{
    usr <- par("usr"); on.exit(par(usr))
    par(usr = c(usr[1:2], 0, 1.5) )
    h <- hist(x, plot = FALSE)
    breaks <- h$breaks; nB <- length(breaks)
    y <- h$counts; y <- y/max(y)
    rect(breaks[-nB], 0, breaks[-1], y, col = "cyan", ...)
}
pairs(USJudgeRatings[1:5], panel = panel.smooth,
```

```
      cex = 1.5, pch = 24, bg = "light blue",
      diag.panel = panel.hist, cex.labels = 2, font.labels = 2)

## put (absolute) correlations on the upper panels,
## with size proportional to the correlations.
panel.cor <- function(x, y, digits = 2, prefix = "", cex.cor, ...)
{
    usr <- par("usr"); on.exit(par(usr))
    par(usr = c(0, 1, 0, 1))
    r <- abs(cor(x, y))
    txt <- format(c(r, 0.123456789), digits = digits)[1]
    txt <- paste0(prefix, txt)
    if(missing(cex.cor)) cex.cor <- 0.8/strwidth(txt)
    text(0.5, 0.5, txt, cex = cex.cor * r)
}
pairs(USJudgeRatings, lower.panel = panel.smooth, upper.panel = panel.cor)

pairs(iris[-5], log = "xy") # plot all variables on log scale
pairs(iris, log = 1:4, # log the first four
      main = "Lengths and Widths in [log]", line.main=1.5, oma=c(2,2,3,2))
```

`panel.smooth` *Simple Panel Plot*

Description

An example of a simple useful `panel` function to be used as argument in e.g., `coplot` or `pairs`.

Usage

```
panel.smooth(x, y, col = par("col"), bg = NA, pch = par("pch"),
             cex = 1, col.smooth = "red", span = 2/3, iter = 3,
             ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	numeric vectors of the same length
`col, bg, pch, cex`	numeric or character codes for the color(s), point type and size of `points`; see also `par`.
`col.smooth`	color to be used by `lines` for drawing the smooths.
`span`	smoothing parameter `f` for `lowess`, see there.
`iter`	number of robustness iterations for `lowess`.
`...`	further arguments to `lines`.

See Also

`coplot` and `pairs` where `panel.smooth` is typically used; `lowess` which does the smoothing.

Examples

```
pairs(swiss, panel = panel.smooth, pch = ".")  # emphasize the smooths
pairs(swiss, panel = panel.smooth, lwd = 2, cex = 1.5, col = "blue")  # hmm...
```

`par` *Set or Query Graphical Parameters*

Description

`par` can be used to set or query graphical parameters. Parameters can be set by specifying them as arguments to `par` in `tag = value` form, or by passing them as a list of tagged values.

Usage

```
par(..., no.readonly = FALSE)

<highlevel plot> (..., <tag> = <value>)
```

Arguments

`...`	arguments in `tag = value` form, or a list of tagged values. The tags must come from the names of graphical parameters described in the 'Graphical Parameters' section.
`no.readonly`	logical; if `TRUE` and there are no other arguments, only parameters are returned which can be set by a subsequent `par()` call *on the same device*.

Details

Each device has its own set of graphical parameters. If the current device is the null device, `par` will open a new device before querying/setting parameters. (What device is controlled by `options("device")`.)

Parameters are queried by giving one or more character vectors of parameter names to `par`.

`par()` (no arguments) or `par(no.readonly = TRUE)` is used to get *all* the graphical parameters (as a named list). Their names are currently taken from the unexported variable `graphics:::.Pars`.

R.O. indicates ***read-only arguments***: These may only be used in queries and cannot be set. (`"cin"`, `"cra"`, `"csi"`, `"cxy"`, `"din"` and `"page"` are always read-only.)

Several parameters can only be set by a call to `par()`:

- `"ask"`,
- `"fig"`, `"fin"`,
- `"lheight"`,
- `"mai"`, `"mar"`, `"mex"`, `"mfcol"`, `"mfrow"`, `"mfg"`,
- `"new"`,
- `"oma"`, `"omd"`, `"omi"`,
- `"pin"`, `"plt"`, `"ps"`, `"pty"`,
- `"usr"`,
- `"xlog"`, `"ylog"`,
- `"ylbias"`

The remaining parameters can also be set as arguments (often via `...`) to high-level plot functions such as `plot.default`, `plot.window`, `points`, `lines`, `abline`, `axis`, `title`, `text`, `mtext`, `segments`, `symbols`, `arrows`, `polygon`, `rect`, `box`, `contour`, `filled.contour` and `image`. Such settings will be active during the execution of the function, only. However, see the comments on `bg`, `cex`, `col`, `lty`, `lwd` and `pch` which may be taken as *arguments* to certain plot functions rather than as graphical parameters.

The meaning of 'character size' is not well-defined: this is set up for the device taking `pointsize` into account but often not the actual font family in use. Internally the corresponding pars (`cra`, `cin`, `cxy` and `csi`) are used only to set the inter-line spacing used to convert `mar` and `oma` to physical margins. (The same inter-line spacing multiplied by `lheight` is used for multi-line strings in `text` and `strheight`.)

Note that graphical parameters are suggestions: plotting functions and devices need not make use of them (and this is particularly true of non-default methods for e.g. `plot`).

Value

When parameters are set, their previous values are returned in an invisible named list. Such a list can be passed as an argument to `par` to restore the parameter values. Use `par(no.readonly = TRUE)` for the full list of parameters that can be restored. However, restoring all of these is not wise: see the 'Note' section.

When just one parameter is queried, the value of that parameter is returned as (atomic) vector. When two or more parameters are queried, their values are returned in a list, with the list names giving the parameters.

Note the inconsistency: setting one parameter returns a list, but querying one parameter returns a vector.

Graphical Parameters

`adj` The value of `adj` determines the way in which text strings are justified in `text`, `mtext` and `title`. A value of `0` produces left-justified text, `0.5` (the default) centered text and `1` right-justified text. (Any value in $[0, 1]$ is allowed, and on most devices values outside that interval will also work.)

Note that the `adj` *argument* of `text` also allows `adj = c(x, y)` for different adjustment in x- and y- directions. Note that whereas for `text` it refers to positioning of text about a point, for `mtext` and `title` it controls placement within the plot or device region.

`ann` If set to `FALSE`, high-level plotting functions calling `plot.default` do not annotate the plots they produce with axis titles and overall titles. The default is to do annotation.

`ask` logical. If `TRUE` (and the session is interactive) the user is asked for input, before a new figure is drawn. As this applies to the device, it also affects output by packages **grid** and **lattice**. It can be set even on non-screen devices but may have no effect there.

This not really a graphics parameter, and its use is deprecated in favour of `devAskNewPage`.

`bg` The color to be used for the background of the device region. When called from `par()` it also sets `new = FALSE`. See section 'Color Specification' for suitable values. For many devices the initial value is set from the `bg` argument of the device, and for the rest it is normally `"white"`.

Note that some graphics functions such as `plot.default` and `points` have an *argument* of this name with a different meaning.

`bty` A character string which determined the type of `box` which is drawn about plots. If `bty` is one of `"o"` (the default), `"l"`, `"7"`, `"c"`, `"u"`, or `"]"` the resulting box resembles the corresponding upper case letter. A value of `"n"` suppresses the box.

`cex` A numerical value giving the amount by which plotting text and symbols should be magnified relative to the default. This starts as `1` when a device is opened, and is reset when the layout is changed, e.g. by setting `mfrow`.

Note that some graphics functions such as `plot.default` have an *argument* of this name which *multiplies* this graphical parameter, and some functions such as `points` and `text` accept a vector of values which are recycled.

`cex.axis` The magnification to be used for axis annotation relative to the current setting of `cex`.

`cex.lab` The magnification to be used for x and y labels relative to the current setting of `cex`.

`cex.main` The magnification to be used for main titles relative to the current setting of `cex`.

`cex.sub` The magnification to be used for sub-titles relative to the current setting of `cex`.

`cin` ***R.O.***; character size `(width, height)` in inches. These are the same measurements as `cra`, expressed in different units.

`col` A specification for the default plotting color. See section 'Color Specification'.

Some functions such as `lines` and `text` accept a vector of values which are recycled and may be interpreted slightly differently.

`col.axis` The color to be used for axis annotation. Defaults to `"black"`.

`col.lab` The color to be used for x and y labels. Defaults to `"black"`.

`col.main` The color to be used for plot main titles. Defaults to `"black"`.

`col.sub` The color to be used for plot sub-titles. Defaults to `"black"`.

`cra` ***R.O.***; size of default character `(width, height)` in 'rasters' (pixels). Some devices have no concept of pixels and so assume an arbitrary pixel size, usually 1/72 inch. These are the same measurements as `cin`, expressed in different units.

`crt` A numerical value specifying (in degrees) how single characters should be rotated. It is unwise to expect values other than multiples of 90 to work. Compare with `srt` which does string rotation.

`csi` ***R.O.***; height of (default-sized) characters in inches. The same as `par("cin")[2]`.

`cxy` ***R.O.***; size of default character `(width, height)` in user coordinate units. `par("cxy")` is `par("cin")/par("pin")` scaled to user coordinates. Note that `c(strwidth(ch), strheight(ch))` for a given string `ch` is usually much more precise.

`din` ***R.O.***; the device dimensions, `(width, height)`, in inches. See also `dev.size`, which is updated immediately when an on-screen device windows is re-sized.

`err` (*Unimplemented*; is silent when points outside the plot region are *not* plotted.) The degree of error reporting desired.

`family` The name of a font family for drawing text. The maximum allowed length is 200 bytes. This name gets mapped by each graphics device to a device-specific font description. The default value is `""` which means that the default device fonts will be used (and what those are should be listed on the help page for the device). Standard values are `"serif"`, `"sans"` and `"mono"`, and the Hershey font families are also available. (Different devices may define others, and some devices will ignore this setting completely.) This can be specified inline for `text`.

`fg` The color to be used for the foreground of plots. This is the default color used for things like axes and boxes around plots. When called from `par()` this also sets parameter `col` to the same value. See section 'Color Specification'. A few devices have an argument to set the initial value, which is otherwise `"black"`.

`fig` A numerical vector of the form `c(x1, x2, y1, y2)` which gives the (NDC) coordinates of the figure region in the display region of the device. If you set this, unlike S, you start a new plot, so to add to an existing plot use `new = TRUE` as well.

`fin` The figure region dimensions, `(width, height)`, in inches. If you set this, unlike S, you start a new plot.

`font` An integer which specifies which font to use for text. If possible, device drivers arrange so that 1 corresponds to plain text (the default), 2 to bold face, 3 to italic and 4 to bold italic. Also, font 5 is expected to be the symbol font, in Adobe symbol encoding. On some devices font families can be selected by `family` to choose different sets of 5 fonts.

`font.axis` The font to be used for axis annotation.

`font.lab` The font to be used for x and y labels.

`font.main` The font to be used for plot main titles.

`font.sub` The font to be used for plot sub-titles.

`lab` A numerical vector of the form `c(x, y, len)` which modifies the default way that axes are annotated. The values of `x` and `y` give the (approximate) number of tickmarks on the x and y axes and `len` specifies the label length. The default is `c(5, 5, 7)`. Note that this only affects the way the parameters `xaxp` and `yaxp` are set when the user coordinate system is set up, and is not consulted when axes are drawn. `len` *is unimplemented* in .

`las` numeric in {0,1,2,3}; the style of axis labels.

0: always parallel to the axis [*default*],

1: always horizontal,

2: always perpendicular to the axis,

3: always vertical.

Also supported by `mtext`. Note that string/character rotation *via* argument `srt` to `par` does *not* affect the axis labels.

`lend` The line end style. This can be specified as an integer or string:

`0` and `"round"` mean rounded line caps [*default*];

`1` and `"butt"` mean butt line caps;

`2` and `"square"` mean square line caps.

`lheight` The line height multiplier. The height of a line of text (used to vertically space multi-line text) is found by multiplying the character height both by the current character expansion and by the line height multiplier. Default value is 1. Used in `text` and `strheight`.

`ljoin` The line join style. This can be specified as an integer or string:

`0` and `"round"` mean rounded line joins [*default*];

`1` and `"mitre"` mean mitred line joins;

`2` and `"bevel"` mean bevelled line joins.

`lmitre` The line mitre limit. This controls when mitred line joins are automatically converted into bevelled line joins. The value must be larger than 1 and the default is 10. Not all devices will honour this setting.

`lty` The line type. Line types can either be specified as an integer (0=blank, 1=solid (default), 2=dashed, 3=dotted, 4=dotdash, 5=longdash, 6=twodash) or as one of the character strings `"blank"`, `"solid"`, `"dashed"`, `"dotted"`, `"dotdash"`, `"longdash"`, or `"twodash"`, where `"blank"` uses 'invisible lines' (i.e., does not draw them).

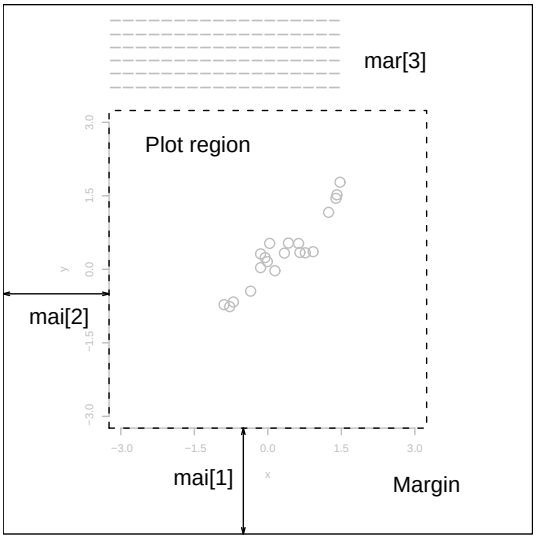
Alternatively, a string of up to 8 characters (from `c(1:9, "A":"F")`) may be given, giving the length of line segments which are alternatively drawn and skipped. See section 'Line Type Specification'.

Functions such as `lines` and `segments` accept a vector of values which are recycled.

`lwd` The line width, a *positive* number, defaulting to `1`. The interpretation is device-specific, and some devices do not implement line widths less than one. (See the help on the device for details of the interpretation.)

Functions such as `lines` and `segments` accept a vector of values which are recycled: in such uses lines corresponding to values `NA` or `NaN` are omitted. The interpretation of `0` is device-specific.

`mai` A numerical vector of the form `c(bottom, left, top, right)` which gives the margin size specified in inches.



`mar` A numerical vector of the form `c(bottom, left, top, right)` which gives the number of lines of margin to be specified on the four sides of the plot. The default is `c(5, 4, 4, 2) + 0.1`.

`mex` `mex` is a character size expansion factor which is used to describe coordinates in the margins of plots. Note that this does not change the font size, rather specifies the size of font (as a multiple of `csi`) used to convert between `mar` and `mai`, and between `oma` and `omi`.

This starts as `1` when the device is opened, and is reset when the layout is changed (alongside resetting `cex`).

`mfcol, mfrow` A vector of the form `c(nr, nc)`. Subsequent figures will be drawn in an `nr`-by-`nc` array on the device by *columns* (`mfcol`), or *rows* (`mfrow`), respectively.

In a layout with exactly two rows and columns the base value of `"cex"` is reduced by a factor of 0.83: if there are three or more of either rows or columns, the reduction factor is 0.66.

Setting a layout resets the base value of `cex` and that of `mex` to `1`.

If either of these is queried it will give the current layout, so querying cannot tell you the order in which the array will be filled.

Consider the alternatives, `layout` and `split.screen`.

`mfg` A numerical vector of the form `c(i, j)` where `i` and `j` indicate which figure in an array of figures is to be drawn next (if setting) or is being drawn (if enquiring). The array must already have been set by `mfcol` or `mfrow`.

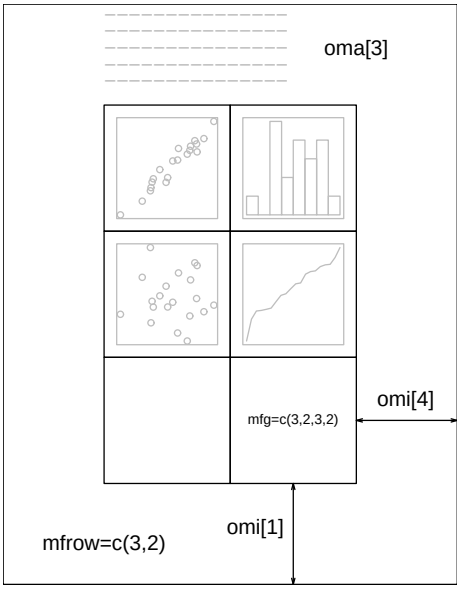
For compatibility with S, the form `c(i, j, nr, nc)` is also accepted, when `nr` and `nc` should be the current number of rows and number of columns. Mismatches will be ignored, with a warning.

`mgp` The margin line (in `mex` units) for the axis title, axis labels and axis line. Note that `mgp[1]` affects `title` whereas `mgp[2:3]` affect `axis`. The default is `c(3, 1, 0)`.

`mkh` The height in inches of symbols to be drawn when the value of `pch` is an integer. *Completely ignored in* .

`new` logical, defaulting to `FALSE`. If set to `TRUE`, the next high-level plotting command (actually `plot.new`) should *not clean* the frame before drawing *as if it were on a* **new** *device*. It is an error (ignored with a warning) to try to use `new = TRUE` on a device that does not currently contain a high-level plot.

`oma` A vector of the form `c(bottom, left, top, right)` giving the size of the outer margins in lines of text.



`omd` A vector of the form `c(x1, x2, y1, y2)` giving the region *inside* outer margins in NDC (= normalized device coordinates), i.e., as a fraction (in $[0, 1]$) of the device region.

`omi` A vector of the form `c(bottom, left, top, right)` giving the size of the outer margins in inches.

`page` ***R.O.***; A boolean value indicating whether the next call to `plot.new` is going to start a new page. This value may be `FALSE` if there are multiple figures on the page.

`pch` Either an integer specifying a symbol or a single character to be used as the default in plotting points. See `points` for possible values and their interpretation. Note that only integers and single-character strings can be set as a graphics parameter (and not `NA` nor `NULL`).

Some functions such as `points` accept a vector of values which are recycled.

`pin` The current plot dimensions, `(width, height)`, in inches.

`plt` A vector of the form `c(x1, x2, y1, y2)` giving the coordinates of the plot region as fractions of the current figure region.

`ps` integer; the point size of text (but not symbols). Unlike the `pointsize` argument of most devices, this does not change the relationship between `mar` and `mai` (nor `oma` and `omi`).

What is meant by 'point size' is device-specific, but most devices mean a multiple of 1bp, that is 1/72 of an inch.

`pty` A character specifying the type of plot region to be used; `"s"` generates a square plotting region and `"m"` generates the maximal plotting region.

`smo` (*Unimplemented*) a value which indicates how smooth circles and circular arcs should be.

`srt` The string rotation in degrees. See the comment about `crt`. Only supported by `text`.

`tck` The length of tick marks as a fraction of the smaller of the width or height of the plotting region. If `tck >= 0.5` it is interpreted as a fraction of the relevant side, so if `tck = 1` grid lines are drawn. The default setting (`tck = NA`) is to use `tcl = -0.5`.

`tcl` The length of tick marks as a fraction of the height of a line of text. The default value is `-0.5`; setting `tcl = NA` sets `tck = -0.01` which is S' default.

`usr` A vector of the form `c(x1, x2, y1, y2)` giving the extremes of the user coordinates of the plotting region. When a logarithmic scale is in use (i.e., `par("xlog")` is true, see below), then the x-limits will be `10 ^ par("usr")[1:2]`. Similarly for the y-axis.

`xaxp` A vector of the form `c(x1, x2, n)` giving the coordinates of the extreme tick marks and the number of intervals between tick-marks when `par("xlog")` is false. Otherwise, when *log* coordinates are active, the three values have a different meaning: For a small range, `n` is *negative*, and the ticks are as in the linear case, otherwise, `n` is in `1:3`, specifying a case number, and `x1` and `x2` are the lowest and highest power of 10 inside the user coordinates, `10 ^ par("usr")[1:2]`. (The `"usr"` coordinates are log10-transformed here!)

n = 1 will produce tick marks at 10^j for integer j,

n = 2 gives marks $k10^j$ with $k \in \{1, 5\}$,

n = 3 gives marks $k10^j$ with $k \in \{1, 2, 5\}$.

See `axTicks()` for a pure implementation of this.

This parameter is reset when a user coordinate system is set up, for example by starting a new page or by calling `plot.window` or setting `par("usr")`: `n` is taken from `par("lab")`. It affects the default behaviour of subsequent calls to `axis` for sides 1 or 3.

It is only relevant to default numeric axis systems, and not for example to dates.

`xaxs` The style of axis interval calculation to be used for the x-axis. Possible values are `"r"`, `"i"`, `"e"`, `"s"`, `"d"`. The styles are generally controlled by the range of data or `xlim`, if given.
Style `"r"` (regular) first extends the data range by 4 percent at each end and then finds an axis with pretty labels that fits within the extended range.
Style `"i"` (internal) just finds an axis with pretty labels that fits within the original data range.
Style `"s"` (standard) finds an axis with pretty labels within which the original data range fits.
Style `"e"` (extended) is like style `"s"`, except that it is also ensures that there is room for plotting symbols within the bounding box.
Style `"d"` (direct) specifies that the current axis should be used on subsequent plots.
(*Only* `"r"` *and* `"i"` *styles have been implemented in* .)

`xaxt` A character which specifies the x axis type. Specifying `"n"` suppresses plotting of the axis. The standard value is `"s"`: for compatibility with S values `"l"` and `"t"` are accepted but are equivalent to `"s"`: any value other than `"n"` implies plotting.

`xlog` A logical value (see `log` in `plot.default`). If `TRUE`, a logarithmic scale is in use (e.g., after `plot(*, log = "x")`). For a new device, it defaults to `FALSE`, i.e., linear scale.

`xpd` A logical value or `NA`. If `FALSE`, all plotting is clipped to the plot region, if `TRUE`, all plotting is clipped to the figure region, and if `NA`, all plotting is clipped to the device region. See also `clip`.

`yaxp` A vector of the form `c(y1, y2, n)` giving the coordinates of the extreme tick marks and the number of intervals between tick-marks unless for log coordinates, see `xaxp` above.

`yaxs` The style of axis interval calculation to be used for the y-axis. See `xaxs` above.

`yaxt` A character which specifies the y axis type. Specifying `"n"` suppresses plotting.

`ylbias` A positive real value used in the positioning of text in the margins by `axis` and `mtext`. The default is in principle device-specific, but currently `0.2` for all of 's own devices. Set this to `0.2` for compatibility with $<$ 2.14.0 on `x11` and `windows()` devices.

`ylog` A logical value; see `xlog` above.

Color Specification

Colors can be specified in several different ways. The simplest way is with a character string giving the color name (e.g., `"red"`). A list of the possible colors can be obtained with the function `colors`. Alternatively, colors can be specified directly in terms of their RGB components with a string of the form `"#RRGGBB"` where each of the pairs `RR`, `GG`, `BB` consist of two hexadecimal digits giving a value in the range `00` to `FF`. Colors can also be specified by giving an index into a small table of colors, the `palette`: indices wrap round so with the default palette of size 8, `10` is the same as `2`. This provides compatibility with S. Index `0` corresponds to the background color. Note that the palette (apart from `0` which is per-device) is a per-session setting.

Negative integer colours were accepted prior to 3.0.0, but treated inconsistently. They are now errors.

Additionally, `"transparent"` is *transparent*, useful for filled areas (such as the background!), and just invisible for things like lines or text. In most circumstances (integer) `NA` is equivalent to `"transparent"` (but not for `text` and `mtext`).

Semi-transparent colors are available for use on devices that support them.

The functions `rgb`, `hsv`, `hcl`, `gray` and `rainbow` provide additional ways of generating colors.

It was possible to specify color numbers as strings prior to 3.0.0.

Line Type Specification

Line types can either be specified by giving an index into a small built-in table of line types (1 = solid, 2 = dashed, etc, see `lty` above) or directly as the lengths of on/off stretches of line. This is done with a string of an even number (up to eight) of characters, namely *non-zero* (hexadecimal) digits which give the lengths in consecutive positions in the string. For example, the string `"33"` specifies three units on followed by three off and `"3313"` specifies three units on followed by three off followed by one on and finally three off. The 'units' here are (on most devices) proportional to `lwd`, and with `lwd = 1` are in pixels or points or 1/96 inch.

The five standard dash-dot line types (`lty = 2:6`) correspond to `c("44", "13", "1343", "73", "2262")`.

Note that `NA` is not a valid value for `lty`.

Note

The effect of restoring all the (settable) graphics parameters as in the examples is hard to predict if the device has been resized. Several of them are attempting to set the same things in different ways, and those last in the alphabet will win. In particular, the settings of `mai`, `mar`, `pin`, `plt` and `pty` interact, as do the outer margin settings, the figure layout and figure region size.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`plot.default` for some high-level plotting parameters; `colors`; `clip`; `options` for other setup parameters; graphic devices `x11`, `postscript` and setting up device regions by `layout` and `split.screen`.

Examples

```
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), # 2 x 2 pictures on one plot
          pty = "s")       # square plotting region,
                           # independent of device size

## At end of plotting, reset to previous settings:
par(op)

## Alternatively,
op <- par(no.readonly = TRUE) # the whole list of settable pars.
## do lots of plotting and par(.) calls, then reset:
par(op)
## Note this is not in general good practice

par("ylog") # FALSE
plot(1 : 12, log = "y")
par("ylog") # TRUE

plot(1:2, xaxs = "i") # inner axis w/o extra space
par(c("usr", "xaxp"))

( nr.prof <-
c(prof.pilots = 16, lawyers = 11, farmers = 10, salesmen = 9, physicians = 9,
  mechanics = 6, policemen = 6, managers = 6, engineers = 5, teachers = 4,
  housewives = 3, students = 3, armed.forces = 1))
par(las = 3)
barplot(rbind(nr.prof)) # R 0.63.2: shows alignment problem
par(las = 0)  # reset to default

require(grDevices) # for gray
## fg use:
plot(1:12, type = "b", main = "fg : axes, ticks and box in gray",
     fg = gray(0.7), bty = "7" , sub = R.version.string)

ex <- function() {
   old.par <- par(no.readonly = TRUE) # all par settings which
                                      # could be changed.
   on.exit(par(old.par))
   ## ...
   ## ... do lots of par() settings and plots
   ## ...
   invisible() #-- now,  par(old.par)  will be executed
}
ex()

## Line types
showLty <- function(ltys, xoff = 0, ...) {
   stopifnot((n <- length(ltys)) >= 1)
   op <- par(mar = rep(.5,4)); on.exit(par(op))
   plot(0:1, 0:1, type = "n", axes = FALSE, ann = FALSE)
   y <- (n:1)/(n+1)
   clty <- as.character(ltys)
   mytext <- function(x, y, txt)
      text(x, y, txt, adj = c(0, -.3), cex = 0.8, ...)
   abline(h = y, lty = ltys, ...); mytext(xoff, y, clty)
   y <- y - 1/(3*(n+1))
```

```
   abline(h = y, lty = ltys, lwd = 2, ...)
   mytext(1/8+xoff, y, paste(clty," lwd = 2"))
}
showLty(c("solid", "dashed", "dotted", "dotdash", "longdash", "twodash"))
par(new = TRUE)  # the same:
showLty(c("solid", "44", "13", "1343", "73", "2262"), xoff = .2, col = 2)
showLty(c("11", "22", "33", "44",   "12", "13", "14",   "21", "31"))
```

---

persp *Perspective Plots*

Description

This function draws perspective plots of a surface over the x–y plane. `persp` is a generic function.

Usage

```
persp(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
persp(x = seq(0, 1, length.out = nrow(z)),
      y = seq(0, 1, length.out = ncol(z)),
      z, xlim = range(x), ylim = range(y),
      zlim = range(z, na.rm = TRUE),
      xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, zlab = NULL,
      main = NULL, sub = NULL,
      theta = 0, phi = 15, r = sqrt(3), d = 1,
      scale = TRUE, expand = 1,
      col = "white", border = NULL, ltheta = -135, lphi = 0,
      shade = NA, box = TRUE, axes = TRUE, nticks = 5,
      ticktype = "simple", ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	locations of grid lines at which the values in `z` are measured. These must be in ascending order. By default, equally spaced values from 0 to 1 are used. If `x` is a `list`, its components `x$x` and `x$y` are used for `x` and `y`, respectively.
`z`	a matrix containing the values to be plotted (`NA`s are allowed). Note that `x` can be used instead of `z` for convenience.
`xlim, ylim, zlim`	x-, y- and z-limits. These should be chosen to cover the range of values of the surface: see 'Details'.
`xlab, ylab, zlab`	titles for the axes. N.B. These must be character strings; expressions are not accepted. Numbers will be coerced to character strings.
`main, sub`	main and sub title, as for `title`.
`theta, phi`	angles defining the viewing direction. `theta` gives the azimuthal direction and `phi` the colatitude.
`r`	the distance of the eyepoint from the centre of the plotting box.

d	a value which can be used to vary the strength of the perspective transformation. Values of d greater than 1 will lessen the perspective effect and values less and 1 will exaggerate it.
scale	before viewing the x, y and z coordinates of the points defining the surface are transformed to the interval [0,1]. If scale is TRUE the x, y and z coordinates are transformed separately. If scale is FALSE the coordinates are scaled so that aspect ratios are retained. This is useful for rendering things like DEM information.
expand	a expansion factor applied to the z coordinates. Often used with 0 < expand < 1 to shrink the plotting box in the z direction.
col	the color(s) of the surface facets. Transparent colours are ignored. This is recycled to the $(nx-1)(ny-1)$ facets.
border	the color of the line drawn around the surface facets. The default, NULL, corresponds to par("fg"). A value of NA will disable the drawing of borders: this is sometimes useful when the surface is shaded.
ltheta, lphi	if finite values are specified for ltheta and lphi, the surface is shaded as though it was being illuminated from the direction specified by azimuth ltheta and colatitude lphi.
shade	the shade at a surface facet is computed as ((1+d)/2)^shade, where d is the dot product of a unit vector normal to the facet and a unit vector in the direction of a light source. Values of shade close to one yield shading similar to a point light source model and values close to zero produce no shading. Values in the range 0.5 to 0.75 provide an approximation to daylight illumination.
box	should the bounding box for the surface be displayed. The default is TRUE.
axes	should ticks and labels be added to the box. The default is TRUE. If box is FALSE then no ticks or labels are drawn.
ticktype	character: "simple" draws just an arrow parallel to the axis to indicate direction of increase; "detailed" draws normal ticks as per 2D plots.
nticks	the (approximate) number of tick marks to draw on the axes. Has no effect if ticktype is "simple".
...	additional graphical parameters (see par).

Details

The plots are produced by first transforming the (x,y,z) coordinates to the interval [0,1] using the limits supplied or computed from the range of the data. The surface is then viewed by looking at the origin from a direction defined by theta and phi. If theta and phi are both zero the viewing direction is directly down the negative y axis. Changing theta will vary the azimuth and changing phi the colatitude.

There is a hook called "persp" (see setHook) called after the plot is completed, which is used in the testing code to annotate the plot page. The hook function(s) are called with no argument.

Notice that persp interprets the z matrix as a table of f(x[i], y[j]) values, so that the x axis corresponds to row number and the y axis to column number, with column 1 at the bottom, so that with the standard rotation angles, the top left corner of the matrix is displayed at the left hand side, closest to the user.

The sizes and fonts of the axis labels and the annotations for ticktype = "detailed" are controlled by graphics parameters "cex.lab"/"font.lab" and "cex.axis"/"font.axis" respectively.

The bounding box is drawn with edges of faces facing away from the viewer (and hence at the back of the box) with solid lines and other edges dashed and on top of the surface. This (and the plotting of the axes) assumes that the axis limits are chosen so that the surface is within the box, and the function will warn if this is not the case.

Value

`persp()` returns the *viewing transformation matrix*, say `VT`, a 4×4 matrix suitable for projecting 3D coordinates (x, y, z) into the 2D plane using homogeneous 4D coordinates (x, y, z, t). It can be used to superimpose additional graphical elements on the 3D plot, by `lines()` or `points()`, using the function `trans3d()`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`contour` and `image`; `trans3d`.

Rotatable 3D plots can be produced by package **rgl**: other ways to produce static perspective plots are available in packages **lattice** and **scatterplot3d**.

Examples

```
require(grDevices) # for trans3d
## More examples in  demo(persp) !!
##                   -----------

# (1) The Obligatory Mathematical surface.
#     Rotated sinc function.

x <- seq(-10, 10, length= 30)
y <- x
f <- function(x, y) { r <- sqrt(x^2+y^2); 10 * sin(r)/r }
z <- outer(x, y, f)
z[is.na(z)] <- 1
op <- par(bg = "white")
persp(x, y, z, theta = 30, phi = 30, expand = 0.5, col = "lightblue")
persp(x, y, z, theta = 30, phi = 30, expand = 0.5, col = "lightblue",
      ltheta = 120, shade = 0.75, ticktype = "detailed",
      xlab = "X", ylab = "Y", zlab = "Sinc( r )"
) -> res
round(res, 3)

# (2) Add to existing persp plot - using trans3d() :

xE <- c(-10,10); xy <- expand.grid(xE, xE)
points(trans3d(xy[,1], xy[,2], 6, pmat = res), col = 2, pch = 16)
lines (trans3d(x, y = 10, z = 6 + sin(x), pmat = res), col = 3)

phi <- seq(0, 2*pi, len = 201)
r1 <- 7.725 # radius of 2nd maximum
xr <- r1 * cos(phi)
yr <- r1 * sin(phi)
lines(trans3d(xr,yr, f(xr,yr), res), col = "pink", lwd = 2)
```

```
## (no hidden lines)

# (3) Visualizing a simple DEM model

z <- 2 * volcano        # Exaggerate the relief
x <- 10 * (1:nrow(z))   # 10 meter spacing (S to N)
y <- 10 * (1:ncol(z))   # 10 meter spacing (E to W)
## Dont draw the grid lines :  border = NA
par(bg = "slategray")
persp(x, y, z, theta = 135, phi = 30, col = "green3", scale = FALSE,
      ltheta = -120, shade = 0.75, border = NA, box = FALSE)

# (4) Surface colours corresponding to z-values

par(bg = "white")
x <- seq(-1.95, 1.95, length = 30)
y <- seq(-1.95, 1.95, length = 35)
z <- outer(x, y, function(a, b) a*b^2)
nrz <- nrow(z)
ncz <- ncol(z)
# Create a function interpolating colors in the range of specified colors
jet.colors <- colorRampPalette( c("blue", "green") )
# Generate the desired number of colors from this palette
nbcol <- 100
color <- jet.colors(nbcol)
# Compute the z-value at the facet centres
zfacet <- z[-1, -1] + z[-1, -ncz] + z[-nrz, -1] + z[-nrz, -ncz]
# Recode facet z-values into color indices
facetcol <- cut(zfacet, nbcol)
persp(x, y, z, col = color[facetcol], phi = 30, theta = -30)

par(op)
```

`pie` *Pie Charts*

Description

Draw a pie chart.

Usage

```
pie(x, labels = names(x), edges = 200, radius = 0.8,
    clockwise = FALSE, init.angle = if(clockwise) 90 else 0,
    density = NULL, angle = 45, col = NULL, border = NULL,
    lty = NULL, main = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a vector of non-negative numerical quantities. The values in `x` are displayed as the areas of pie slices.
`labels`	one or more expressions or character strings giving names for the slices. Other objects are coerced by `as.graphicsAnnot`. For empty or `NA` (after coercion to character) labels, no label nor pointing line is drawn.

edges	the circular outline of the pie is approximated by a polygon with this many edges.
radius	the pie is drawn centered in a square box whose sides range from -1 to 1. If the character strings labeling the slices are long it may be necessary to use a smaller radius.
clockwise	logical indicating if slices are drawn clockwise or counter clockwise (i.e., mathematically positive direction), the latter is default.
init.angle	number specifying the *starting angle* (in degrees) for the slices. Defaults to 0 (i.e., '3 o'clock') unless clockwise is true where init.angle defaults to 90 (degrees), (i.e., '12 o'clock').
density	the density of shading lines, in lines per inch. The default value of NULL means that no shading lines are drawn. Non-positive values of density also inhibit the drawing of shading lines.
angle	the slope of shading lines, given as an angle in degrees (counter-clockwise).
col	a vector of colors to be used in filling or shading the slices. If missing a set of 6 pastel colours is used, unless density is specified when par("fg") is used.
border, lty	(possibly vectors) arguments passed to polygon which draws each slice.
main	an overall title for the plot.
...	graphical parameters can be given as arguments to pie. They will affect the main title and labels only.

Note

Pie charts are a very bad way of displaying information. The eye is good at judging linear measures and bad at judging relative areas. A bar chart or dot chart is a preferable way of displaying this type of data.

Cleveland (1985), page 264: "Data that can be shown by pie charts always can be shown by a dot chart. This means that judgements of position along a common scale can be made instead of the less accurate angle judgements." This statement is based on the empirical investigations of Cleveland and McGill as well as investigations by perceptual psychologists.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Cleveland, W. S. (1985) *The Elements of Graphing Data*. Wadsworth: Monterey, CA, USA.

See Also

dotchart.

Examples

```
require(grDevices)
pie(rep(1, 24), col = rainbow(24), radius = 0.9)

pie.sales <- c(0.12, 0.3, 0.26, 0.16, 0.04, 0.12)
names(pie.sales) <- c("Blueberry", "Cherry",
    "Apple", "Boston Cream", "Other", "Vanilla Cream")
pie(pie.sales) # default colours
pie(pie.sales, col = c("purple", "violetred1", "green3",
```

```
                        "cornsilk", "cyan", "white"))
pie(pie.sales, col = gray(seq(0.4, 1.0, length = 6)))
pie(pie.sales, density = 10, angle = 15 + 10 * 1:6)
pie(pie.sales, clockwise = TRUE, main = "pie(*, clockwise = TRUE)")
segments(0, 0, 0, 1, col = "red", lwd = 2)
text(0, 1, "init.angle = 90", col = "red")

n <- 200
pie(rep(1, n), labels = "", col = rainbow(n), border = NA,
    main = "pie(*, labels=\"\", col=rainbow(n), border=NA,..")
```

`plot` *Generic X-Y Plotting*

Description

Generic function for plotting of objects. For more details about the graphical parameter arguments, see `par`.

For simple scatter plots, `plot.default` will be used. However, there are `plot` methods for many objects, including `function`s, `data.frame`s, `density` objects, etc. Use `methods(plot)` and the documentation for these.

Usage

```
plot(x, y, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	the coordinates of points in the plot. Alternatively, a single plotting structure, function or *any object with a* `plot` *method* can be provided.
`y`	the y coordinates of points in the plot, *optional* if `x` is an appropriate structure.
`...`	Arguments to be passed to methods, such as graphical parameters (see `par`). Many methods will accept the following arguments:

`type` what type of plot should be drawn. Possible types are

- `"p"` for **p**oints,
- `"l"` for **l**ines,
- `"b"` for **b**oth,
- `"c"` for the lines part alone of `"b"`,
- `"o"` for both '**o**verplotted',
- `"h"` for '**h**istogram' like (or 'high-density') vertical lines,
- `"s"` for stair **s**teps,
- `"S"` for other **s**teps, see 'Details' below,
- `"n"` for no plotting.

All other `type`s give a warning or an error; using, e.g., `type = "punkte"` being equivalent to `type = "p"` for S compatibility. Note that some methods, e.g. `plot.factor`, do not accept this.

`main` an overall title for the plot: see `title`.

`sub` a sub title for the plot: see `title`.

`xlab` a title for the x axis: see `title`.

`ylab` a title for the y axis: see `title`.

`asp` the y/x aspect ratio, see `plot.window`.

Details

The two step types differ in their x-y preference: Going from $(x1, y1)$ to $(x2, y2)$ with $x1 < x2$, `type = "s"` moves first horizontal, then vertical, whereas `type = "S"` moves the other way around.

See Also

`plot.default`, `plot.formula` and other methods; `points`, `lines`, `par`.

For X-Y-Z plotting see `contour`, `persp` and `image`.

Examples

```
require(stats) # for lowess, rpois, rnorm
plot(cars)
lines(lowess(cars))

plot(sin, -pi, 2*pi) # see ?plot.function

## Discrete Distribution Plot:
plot(table(rpois(100, 5)), type = "h", col = "red", lwd = 10,
     main = "rpois(100, lambda = 5)")

## Simple quantiles/ECDF, see ecdf() {library(stats)} for a better one:
plot(x <- sort(rnorm(47)), type = "s", main = "plot(x, type = \"s\")")
points(x, cex = .5, col = "dark red")
```

---

plot.data.frame *Plot Method for Data Frames*

Description

`plot.data.frame`, a method for the `plot` generic. It is designed for a quick look at numeric data frames.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class data.frame
plot(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	object of class `data.frame`.
`...`	further arguments to `stripchart`, `plot.default` or `pairs`.

Details

This is intended for data frames with *numeric* columns. For more than two columns it first calls `data.matrix` to convert the data frame to a numeric matrix and then calls `pairs` to produce a scatterplot matrix). This can fail and may well be inappropriate: for example numerical conversion of dates will lose their special meaning and a warning will be given.

For a two-column data frame it plots the second column against the first by the most appropriate method for the first column.

For a single numeric column it uses `stripchart`, and for other single-column data frames tries to find a plot method for the single column.

See Also

data.frame

Examples

```
plot(OrchardSprays[1], method = "jitter")
plot(OrchardSprays[c(4,1)])
plot(OrchardSprays)

plot(iris)
plot(iris[5:4])
plot(women)
```

---

plot.default *The Default Scatterplot Function*

Description

Draw a scatter plot with decorations such as axes and titles in the active graphics window.

Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
plot(x, y = NULL, type = "p",  xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL,
     log = "", main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
     ann = par("ann"), axes = TRUE, frame.plot = axes,
     panel.first = NULL, panel.last = NULL, asp = NA, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	the x and y arguments provide the x and y coordinates for the plot. Any reasonable way of defining the coordinates is acceptable. See the function xy.coords for details. If supplied separately, they must be of the same length.
type	1-character string giving the type of plot desired. The following values are possible, for details, see plot: "p" for points, "l" for lines, "b" for both points and lines, "c" for empty points joined by lines, "o" for overplotted points and lines, "s" and "S" for stair steps and "h" for histogram-like vertical lines. Finally, "n" does not produce any points or lines.
xlim	the x limits (x1, x2) of the plot. Note that x1 > x2 is allowed and leads to a 'reversed axis'. The default value, NULL, indicates that the range of the finite values to be plotted should be used.
ylim	the y limits of the plot.
log	a character string which contains "x" if the x axis is to be logarithmic, "y" if the y axis is to be logarithmic and "xy" or "yx" if both axes are to be logarithmic.
main	a main title for the plot, see also title.
sub	a sub title for the plot.
xlab	a label for the x axis, defaults to a description of x.
ylab	a label for the y axis, defaults to a description of y.

ann	a logical value indicating whether the default annotation (title and x and y axis labels) should appear on the plot.
axes	a logical value indicating whether both axes should be drawn on the plot. Use graphical parameter "xaxt" or "yaxt" to suppress just one of the axes.
frame.plot	a logical indicating whether a box should be drawn around the plot.
panel.first	an 'expression' to be evaluated after the plot axes are set up but before any plotting takes place. This can be useful for drawing background grids or scatterplot smooths. Note that this works by lazy evaluation: passing this argument from other plot methods may well not work since it may be evaluated too early.
panel.last	an expression to be evaluated after plotting has taken place but before the axes, title and box are added. See the comments about panel.first.
asp	the y/x aspect ratio, see plot.window.
...	other graphical parameters (see par and section 'Details' below).

Details

Commonly used graphical parameters are:

col The colors for lines and points. Multiple colors can be specified so that each point can be given its own color. If there are fewer colors than points they are recycled in the standard fashion. Lines will all be plotted in the first colour specified.

bg a vector of background colors for open plot symbols, see points. Note: this is **not** the same setting as par("bg").

pch a vector of plotting characters or symbols: see points.

cex a numerical vector giving the amount by which plotting characters and symbols should be scaled relative to the default. This works as a multiple of par("cex"). NULL and NA are equivalent to 1.0. Note that this does not affect annotation: see below.

lty a vector of line types, see par.

cex.main**,** col.lab**,** font.sub**, etc** settings for main- and sub-title and axis annotation, see title and par.

lwd a vector of line widths, see par.

Note

The presence of panel.first and panel.last is a historical anomaly: default plots do not have 'panels', unlike e.g. pairs plots. For more control, use lower-level plotting functions: plot.default calls in turn some of plot.new, plot.window, plot.xy, axis, box and title, and plots can be built up by calling these individually, or by calling plot(type = "n") and adding further elements.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Cleveland, W. S. (1985) *The Elements of Graphing Data.* Monterey, CA: Wadsworth.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

plot, plot.window, xy.coords.

Examples

```
Speed <- cars$speed
Distance <- cars$dist
plot(Speed, Distance, panel.first = grid(8, 8),
     pch = 0, cex = 1.2, col = "blue")
plot(Speed, Distance,
     panel.first = lines(stats::lowess(Speed, Distance), lty = "dashed"),
     pch = 0, cex = 1.2, col = "blue")

## Show the different plot types
x <- 0:12
y <- sin(pi/5 * x)
op <- par(mfrow = c(3,3), mar = .1+ c(2,2,3,1))
for (tp in c("p","l","b",  "c","o","h",  "s","S","n")) {
   plot(y ~ x, type = tp, main = paste0("plot(*, type = \"", tp, "\")"))
   if(tp == "S") {
      lines(x, y, type = "s", col = "red", lty = 2)
      mtext("lines(*, type = \"s\", ...)", col = "red", cex = 0.8)
   }
}
par(op)

##--- Log-Log Plot  with  custom axes
lx <- seq(1, 5, length = 41)
yl <- expression(e^{-frac(1,2) * {log[10](x)}^2})
y <- exp(-.5*lx^2)
op <- par(mfrow = c(2,1), mar = par("mar")+c(0,1,0,0))
plot(10^lx, y, log = "xy", type = "l", col = "purple",
     main = "Log-Log plot", ylab = yl, xlab = "x")
plot(10^lx, y, log = "xy", type = "o", pch = ".", col = "forestgreen",
     main = "Log-Log plot with custom axes", ylab = yl, xlab = "x",
     axes = FALSE, frame.plot = TRUE)
my.at <- 10^(1:5)
axis(1, at = my.at, labels = formatC(my.at, format = "fg"))
at.y <- 10^(-5:-1)
axis(2, at = at.y, labels = formatC(at.y, format = "fg"), col.axis = "red")
par(op)
```

---

plot.design *Plot Univariate Effects of a Design or Model*

Description

Plot univariate effects of one or more factors, typically for a designed experiment as analyzed by aov().

Usage

```
plot.design(x, y = NULL, fun = mean, data = NULL, ...,
            ylim = NULL, xlab = "Factors", ylab = NULL,
            main = NULL, ask = NULL, xaxt = par("xaxt"),
            axes = TRUE, xtick = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	either a data frame containing the design factors and optionally the response, or a formula or terms object.
y	the response, if not given in x.
fun	a function (or name of one) to be applied to each subset. It must return one number for a numeric (vector) input.
data	data frame containing the variables referenced by x when that is formula-like.
...	graphical parameters such as col, see par.
ylim	range of y values, as in plot.default.
xlab	x axis label, see title.
ylab	y axis label with a 'smart' default.
main	main title, see title.
ask	logical indicating if the user should be asked before a new page is started – in the case of multiple y's.
xaxt	character giving the type of x axis.
axes	logical indicating if axes should be drawn.
xtick	logical indicating if ticks (one per factor) should be drawn on the x axis.

Details

The supplied function will be called once for each level of each factor in the design and the plot will show these summary values. The levels of a particular factor are shown along a vertical line, and the overall value of fun() for the response is drawn as a horizontal line.

Note

A big effort was taken to make this closely compatible to the S version. However, col (and fg) specifications have different effects.

In S this was a method of the plot generic function for design objects.

Author(s)

Roberto Frisullo and Martin Maechler

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. eds (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Chapman & Hall, London, **the** *white book*, pp. 546–7 (and 163–4).

Freeny, A. E. and Landwehr, J. M. (1990) Displays for data from large designed experiments; Computer Science and Statistics: Proc.\ 22nd Symp\. Interface, 117–126, Springer Verlag.

See Also

interaction.plot for a 'standard graphic' of designed experiments.

Examples

```
require(stats)
plot.design(warpbreaks)  # automatic for data frame with one numeric var.

Form <- breaks ~ wool + tension
summary(fm1 <- aov(Form, data = warpbreaks))
plot.design(       Form, data = warpbreaks, col = 2)  # same as above

## More than one y :
utils::str(esoph)
plot.design(esoph) ## two plots; if interactive you are "ask"ed

## or rather, compare mean and median:
op <- par(mfcol = 1:2)
plot.design(ncases/ncontrols ~ ., data = esoph, ylim = c(0, 0.8))
plot.design(ncases/ncontrols ~ ., data = esoph, ylim = c(0, 0.8),
            fun = median)
par(op)
```

---

plot.factor *Plotting Factor Variables*

Description

This functions implements a scatterplot method for `factor` arguments of the *generic* `plot` function.

If `y` is missing `barplot` is produced. For numeric `y` a `boxplot` is used, and for a factor `y` a `spineplot` is shown. For any other type of `y` the next `plot` method is called, normally `plot.default`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class factor
plot(x, y, legend.text = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	numeric or factor. `y` may be missing.
`legend.text`	character vector for annotation of `y` axis in the case of a factor `y`: defaults to `levels(y)`. This sets the `yaxlabels` argument of `spineplot`.
`...`	Further arguments to `barplot`, `boxplot`, `spineplot` or `plot` as appropriate. All of these accept graphical parameters (see `par`) and annotation arguments passed to `title` and `axes = FALSE`. None accept `type`.

See Also

`plot.default`, `plot.formula`, `barplot`, `boxplot`, `spineplot`.

Examples

```
require(grDevices)


plot(weight ~ group, data = PlantGrowth)           # numeric vector ~ factor
plot(cut(weight, 2) ~ group, data = PlantGrowth)   # factor ~ factor
## passing "..." to spineplot() eventually:
plot(cut(weight, 3) ~ group, data = PlantGrowth,
     col = hcl(c(0, 120, 240), 50, 70))

plot(PlantGrowth$group, axes = FALSE, main = "no axes")  # extremely silly
```

---

plot.formula *Formula Notation for Scatterplots*

Description

Specify a scatterplot or add points, lines, or text via a formula.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class formula
plot(formula, data = parent.frame(), ..., subset,
             ylab = varnames[response], ask = dev.interactive())

## S3 method for class formula
points(formula, data = parent.frame(), ..., subset)

## S3 method for class formula
lines(formula, data = parent.frame(), ..., subset)

## S3 method for class formula
text(formula, data = parent.frame(), ..., subset)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula, such as y ~ x.
data	a data.frame (or list) from which the variables in formula should be taken. A matrix is converted to a data frame.
...	Arguments to be passed to or from other methods. horizontal = TRUE is also accepted.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.
ylab	the y label of the plot(s).
ask	logical, see par.

Details

For the lines, points and text methods the formula should be of the form y ~ x or y ~ 1 with a left-hand side and a single term on the right-hand side. The plot method accepts other forms discussed later in this section.

Both the terms in the formula and the ... arguments are evaluated in data enclosed in parent.frame() if data is a list or a data frame. The terms of the formula and those arguments in ... that are of the same length as data are subjected to the subsetting specified in subset. A plot against the running index can be specified as plot(y ~ 1).

If the formula in the plot method contains more than one term on the right-hand side, a series of plots is produced of the response against each non-response term.

For the plot method the formula can be of the form ~ z + y + z: the variables specified on the right-hand side are collected into a data frame, subsetted if specified, and displayed by plot.data.frame.

Missing values are not considered in these methods, and in particular cases with missing values are not removed.

If y is an object (i.e., has a class attribute) then plot.formula looks for a plot method for that class first. Otherwise, the class of x will determine the type of the plot. For factors this will be a parallel boxplot, and argument horizontal = TRUE can be specified (see boxplot).

Note that some arguments will need to be protected from premature evaluation by enclosing them in quote: currently this is done automatically for main, sub and xlab. For example, it is needed for the panel.first and panel.last arguments passed to plot.default.

Value

These functions are invoked for their side effect of drawing on the active graphics device.

See Also

plot.default, points, lines, plot.factor.

Examples

```
op <- par(mfrow = c(2,1))
plot(Ozone ~ Wind, data = airquality, pch = as.character(Month))
plot(Ozone ~ Wind, data = airquality, pch = as.character(Month),
     subset = Month != 7)
par(op)

## text.formula() can be very natural:
wb <- within(warpbreaks, {
    time <- seq_along(breaks); W.T <- wool:tension })
plot(breaks ~ time, data = wb, type = "b")
text(breaks ~ time, data = wb, label = W.T, col = 1+as.integer(wool))
```

plot.histogram *Plot Histograms*

Description

These are methods for objects of class "histogram", typically produced by hist.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class histogram
plot(x, freq = equidist, density = NULL, angle = 45,
               col = NULL, border = par("fg"), lty = NULL,
               main = paste("Histogram of",
                            paste(x$xname, collapse = "\n")),
               sub = NULL, xlab = x$xname, ylab,
               xlim = range(x$breaks), ylim = NULL,
               axes = TRUE, labels = FALSE, add = FALSE,
               ann = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class histogram
lines(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a histogram object, or a list with components density, mid, etc, see hist for information about the components of x.
freq	logical; if TRUE, the histogram graphic is to present a representation of frequencies, i.e, x$counts; if FALSE, *relative* frequencies (probabilities), i.e., x$density, are plotted. The default is true for equidistant breaks and false otherwise.
col	a colour to be used to fill the bars. The default of NULL yields unfilled bars.
border	the color of the border around the bars.
angle, density	select shading of bars by lines: see rect.
lty	the line type used for the bars, see also lines.
main, sub, xlab, ylab	these arguments to title have useful defaults here.
xlim, ylim	the range of x and y values with sensible defaults.
axes	logical, indicating if axes should be drawn.
labels	logical or character. Additionally draw labels on top of bars, if not FALSE; if TRUE, draw the counts or rounded densities; if labels is a character, draw itself.
add	logical. If TRUE, only the bars are added to the current plot. This is what lines.histogram(*) does.
ann	logical. Should annotations (titles and axis titles) be plotted?
...	further graphical parameters to title and axis.

Details

`lines.histogram(*)` is the same as `plot.histogram(*, add = TRUE)`.

See Also

`hist`, `stem`, `density`.

Examples

```
(wwt <- hist(women$weight, nclass = 7, plot = FALSE))
plot(wwt, labels = TRUE) # default main & xlab using wwt$xname
plot(wwt, border = "dark blue", col = "light blue",
     main = "Histogram of 15 womens weights", xlab = "weight [pounds]")

## Fake "lines" example, using non-default labels:
w2 <- wwt; w2$counts <- w2$counts - 1
lines(w2, col = "Midnight Blue", labels = ifelse(w2$counts, "> 1", "1"))
```

---

plot.table *Plot Methods for* `table` *Objects*

Description

This is a method of the generic `plot` function for (contingency) `table` objects. Whereas for two- and more dimensional tables, a `mosaicplot` is drawn, one-dimensional ones are plotted as bars.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class table
plot(x, type = "h", ylim = c(0, max(x)), lwd = 2,
     xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, frame.plot = is.num, ...)
## S3 method for class table
points(x, y = NULL, type = "h", lwd = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class table
lines(x, y = NULL, type = "h", lwd = 2, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a `table` (like) object.
`y`	Must be `NULL`: there to protect against incorrect calls.
`type`	plotting type.
`ylim`	range of y-axis.
`lwd`	line width for bars when `type = "h"` is used in the 1D case.
`xlab, ylab`	x- and y-axis labels.
`frame.plot`	logical indicating if a frame (`box`) should be drawn in the 1D case. Defaults to true when `x` has `dimnames` coerce-able to numbers.
`...`	further graphical arguments, see `plot.default`. `axes = FALSE` is accepted.

See Also

plot.factor, the plot method for factors.

Examples

```
## 1-d tables
(Poiss.tab <- table(N = stats::rpois(200, lambda = 5)))
plot(Poiss.tab, main = "plot(table(rpois(200, lambda = 5)))")

plot(table(state.division))

## 4-D :
plot(Titanic, main ="plot(Titanic, main= *)")
```

---

plot.window *Set up World Coordinates for Graphics Window*

Description

This function sets up the world coordinate system for a graphics window. It is called by higher level functions such as plot.default (*after* plot.new).

Usage

```
plot.window(xlim, ylim, log = "", asp = NA, ...)
```

Arguments

xlim, ylim	numeric vectors of length 2, giving the x and y coordinates ranges.
log	character; indicating which axes should be in log scale.
asp	numeric, giving the **asp**ect ratio y/x, see 'Details'.
...	further graphical parameters as in par. The relevant ones are xaxs, yaxs and lab.

Details

asp: If asp is a finite positive value then the window is set up so that one data unit in the x direction is equal in length to asp $\times$ one data unit in the y direction.

Note that in this case, par("usr") is no longer determined by, e.g., par("xaxs"), but rather by asp and the device's aspect ratio. (See what happens if you interactively resize the plot device after running the example below!)

The special case asp == 1 produces plots where distances between points are represented accurately on screen. Values with asp > 1 can be used to produce more accurate maps when using latitude and longitude.

Note that the coordinate ranges will be extended by 4% if the appropriate graphical parameter xaxs or yaxs has value "r" (which is the default).

To reverse an axis, use xlim or ylim of the form c(hi, lo).

The function attempts to produce a plausible set of scales if one or both of xlim and ylim is of length one or the two values given are identical, but it is better to avoid that case.

Usually, one should rather use the higher-level functions such as plot, hist, image, ..., instead and refer to their help pages for explanation of the arguments.

A side-effect of the call is to set up the usr, xaxp and yaxp graphical parameters. (It is for the latter two that lab is used.)

See Also

xy.coords, plot.xy, plot.default.

par for the graphical parameters mentioned.

Examples

```
##--- An example for the use of asp :
require(stats)  # normally loaded
loc <- cmdscale(eurodist)
rx <- range(x <- loc[,1])
ry <- range(y <- -loc[,2])
plot(x, y, type = "n", asp = 1, xlab = "", ylab = "")
abline(h = pretty(rx, 10), v = pretty(ry, 10), col = "lightgray")
text(x, y, labels(eurodist), cex = 0.8)
```

---

plot.xy *Basic Internal Plot Function*

Description

This is *the* internal function that does the basic plotting of points and lines. Usually, one should rather use the higher level functions instead and refer to their help pages for explanation of the arguments.

Usage

```
plot.xy(xy, type, pch = par("pch"), lty = par("lty"),
        col = par("col"), bg = NA,
        cex = 1, lwd = par("lwd"), ...)
```

Arguments

xy	A four-element list as results from xy.coords.
type	1 character code: see plot.default. NULL is accepted as a synonym for "p".
pch	character or integer code for kind of points, see points.default.
lty	line type code, see lines.
col	color code or name, see colors, palette. Here NULL means colour 0.
bg	background (fill) color for the open plot symbols 21:25: see points.default.
cex	character expansion.
lwd	line width, also used for (non-filled) plot symbols, see lines and points.
...	further graphical parameters such as xpd, lend, ljoin and lmitre.

Details

The arguments pch, col, bg, cex, lwd may be vectors and may be recycled, depending on type: see points and lines for specifics. In particular note that lwd is treated as a vector for points and as a single (first) value for lines.

cex is a numeric factor in addition to par("cex") which affects symbols and characters as drawn by type "p", "o", "b" and "c".

See Also

plot, plot.default, points, lines.

Examples

```
points.default # to see how it calls "plot.xy(xy.coords(x, y), ...)"
```

---

points *Add Points to a Plot*

Description

points is a generic function to draw a sequence of points at the specified coordinates. The specified character(s) are plotted, centered at the coordinates.

Usage

```
points(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
points(x, y = NULL, type = "p", ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	coordinate vectors of points to plot.
type	character indicating the type of plotting; actually any of the types as in plot.default.
...	Further graphical parameters may also be supplied as arguments. See 'Details'.

Details

The coordinates can be passed in a plotting structure (a list with x and y components), a two-column matrix, a time series, ... See xy.coords. If supplied separately, they must be of the same length.

Graphical parameters commonly used are

pch plotting 'character', i.e., symbol to use. This can either be a single character or an integer code for one of a set of graphics symbols. The full set of S symbols is available with pch = 0:18, see the examples below. (NB: uses circles instead of the octagons used in S.)

Value pch = "." (equivalently pch = 46) is handled specially. It is a rectangle of side 0.01 inch (scaled by cex). In addition, if cex = 1 (the default), each side is at least one pixel (1/72 inch on the pdf, postscript and xfig devices).

For other text symbols, cex = 1 corresponds to the default fontsize of the device, often specified by an argument pointsize. For pch in 0:25 the default size is about 75% of the character height (see par("cin")).

`col` color code or name, see `par`.

`bg` background (fill) color for the open plot symbols given by `pch = 21:25`.

`cex` character (or symbol) expansion: a numerical vector. This works as a multiple of `par("cex")`.

`lwd` line width for drawing symbols see `par`.

Others less commonly used are `lty` and `lwd` for types such as `"b"` and `"l"`.

The graphical parameters `pch`, `col`, `bg`, `cex` and `lwd` can be vectors (which will be recycled as needed) giving a value for each point plotted. If lines are to be plotted (e.g., for `type = "b"`) the first element of `lwd` is used.

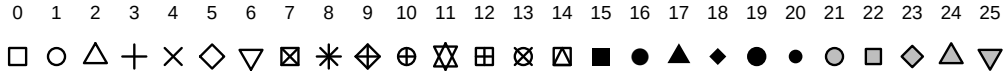
Points whose `x`, `y`, `pch`, `col` or `cex` value is `NA` are omitted from the plot.

'pch' values

Values of `pch` are stored internally as integers. The interpretation is

- `NA_integer_`: no symbol.
- `0:18`: S-compatible vector symbols.
- `19:25`: further vector symbols.
- `26:31`: unused (and ignored).
- `32:127`: ASCII characters.
- `128:255` native characters *only in a single-byte locale and for the symbol font*. (`128:159` are only used on Windows.)
- `-32 ...` Unicode code point (where supported).

Note that unlike S (which uses octagons), symbols `1`, `10`, `13` and `16` use circles. The filled shapes `15:18` do not include a border.



The following plotting symbols are can be obtained with `pch = 19:25`: those with `21:25` can be colored and filled with different colors: `col` gives the border color and `bg` the background color (which is '`"grey"`' in the figure)

- `pch = 19`: solid circle,
- `pch = 20`: bullet (smaller solid circle, 2/3 the size of `19`),
- `pch = 21`: filled circle,
- `pch = 22`: filled square,
- `pch = 23`: filled diamond,
- `pch = 24`: filled triangle point-up,
- `pch = 25`: filled triangle point down.

Note that all of these both fill the shape and draw a border. Some care in interpretation is needed when semi-transparent colours are used for both fill and border (and the result might be device-specific and even viewer-specific for `pdf`).

The difference between `pch = 16` and `pch = 19` is that the latter uses a border and so is perceptibly larger when `lwd` is large relative to `cex`.

Values pch = 26:31 are currently unused and pch = 32:127 give the ASCII characters. In a single-byte locale pch = 128:255 give the corresponding character (if any) in the locale's character set. Where supported by the OS, negative values specify a Unicode code point, so e.g. -0x2642L is a 'male sign' and -0x20ACL is the Euro.

A character string consisting of a single character is converted to an integer: 32:127 for ASCII characters, and usually to the Unicode code point otherwise. (In non-Latin-1 single-byte locales, 128:255 will be used for 8-bit characters.)

If pch supplied is a logical, integer or character NA or an empty character string the point is omitted from the plot.

If pch is NULL or otherwise of length 0, par("pch") is used.

If the symbol font (par(font = 5)) is used, numerical values should be used for pch: the range is c(32:126, 160:254) in all locales (but 240 is not defined (used for 'apple' on OS X) and 160, Euro, may not be present).

Note

A single-byte encoding may include the characters in pch = 128:255, and if it does, a font may not include all (or even any) of them.

Not all negative numbers are valid as Unicode code points, and no check is done. A display device is likely to use a rectangle for (or omit) Unicode code points which are invalid or for which it does not have a glyph in the font used.

What happens for very small or zero values of cex is device-dependent: symbols or characters may become invisible or they may be plotted at a fixed minimum size. As from 2.15.0, circles of zero radius will not be plotted.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

points.formula for the formula method; plot, lines, and the underlying workhorse function plot.xy.

Examples

```
require(stats) # for rnorm
plot(-4:4, -4:4, type = "n")  # setting up coord. system
points(rnorm(200), rnorm(200), col = "red")
points(rnorm(100)/2, rnorm(100)/2, col = "blue", cex = 1.5)

op <- par(bg = "light blue")
x <- seq(0, 2*pi, len = 51)
## something "between type=b and type=o":
plot(x, sin(x), type = "o", pch = 21, bg = par("bg"), col = "blue", cex = .6,
 main = plot(..., type="o", pch=21, bg=par("bg")))
par(op)

## Not run:
## The figure was produced by calls like
png("pch.png", height = 0.7, width = 7, res = 100, units = "in")
par(mar = rep(0,4))
```

```
plot(c(-1, 26), 0:1, type = "n", axes = FALSE)
text(0:25, 0.6, 0:25, cex = 0.5)
points(0:25, rep(0.3, 26), pch = 0:25, bg = "grey")

## End(Not run)

##-------- Showing all the extra & some char graphics symbols ---------
pchShow <-
  function(extras = c("*",".", "o","O","0","+","-","|","%","#"),
           cex = 3, ## good for both .Device=="postscript" and "x11"
           col = "red3", bg = "gold", coltext = "brown", cextext = 1.2,
           main = paste("plot symbols :  points (...  pch = *, cex =",
                        cex,")"))
  {
    nex <- length(extras)
    np  <- 26 + nex
    ipch <- 0:(np-1)
    k <- floor(sqrt(np))
    dd <- c(-1,1)/2
    rx <- dd + range(ix <- ipch %/% k)
    ry <- dd + range(iy <- 3 + (k-1)- ipch %% k)
    pch <- as.list(ipch) # list with integers & strings
    if(nex > 0) pch[26+ 1:nex] <- as.list(extras)
    plot(rx, ry, type = "n", axes  =  FALSE, xlab = "", ylab = "", main = main)
    abline(v = ix, h = iy, col = "lightgray", lty = "dotted")
    for(i in 1:np) {
      pc <- pch[[i]]
      ## col symbols with a bg-colored interior (where available) :
      points(ix[i], iy[i], pch = pc, col = col, bg = bg, cex = cex)
      if(cextext > 0)
          text(ix[i] - 0.3, iy[i], pc, col = coltext, cex = cextext)
    }
  }

pchShow()
pchShow(c("o","O","0"), cex = 2.5)
pchShow(NULL, cex = 4, cextext = 0, main = NULL)


## ------------ test code for various pch specifications -------------
# Try this in various font families (including Hershey)
# and locales.  Use sign = -1 asserts we want Latin-1.
# Standard cases in a MBCS locale will not plot the top half.
TestChars <- function(sign = 1, font = 1, ...)
{
   MB <- l10n_info()$MBCS
   r <- if(font == 5) { sign <- 1; c(32:126, 160:254)
       } else if(MB) 32:126 else 32:255
   if (sign == -1) r <- c(32:126, 160:255)
   par(pty = "s")
   plot(c(-1,16), c(-1,16), type = "n", xlab = "", ylab = "",
        xaxs = "i", yaxs = "i",
        main = sprintf("sign = %d, font = %d", sign, font))
   grid(17, 17, lty = 1) ; mtext(paste("MBCS:", MB))
   for(i in r) try(points(i%%16, i%/%16, pch = sign*i, font = font,...))
}
TestChars()
```

```
try(TestChars(sign = -1))
TestChars(font = 5)  # Euro might be at 160 (0+10*16).
                     # Mac OS has apple at 240 (0+15*16).
try(TestChars(-1, font = 2))  # bold
```

---

polygon *Polygon Drawing*

Description

polygon draws the polygons whose vertices are given in x and y.

Usage

```
polygon(x, y = NULL, density = NULL, angle = 45,
        border = NULL, col = NA, lty = par("lty"),
        ..., fillOddEven = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x, y	vectors containing the coordinates of the vertices of the polygon.
density	the density of shading lines, in lines per inch. The default value of NULL means that no shading lines are drawn. A zero value of density means no shading nor filling whereas negative values and NA suppress shading (and so allow color filling).
angle	the slope of shading lines, given as an angle in degrees (counter-clockwise).
col	the color for filling the polygon. The default, NA, is to leave polygons unfilled, unless density is specified. (For back-compatibility, NULL is equivalent to NA.) If density is specified with a positive value this gives the color of the shading lines.
border	the color to draw the border. The default, NULL, means to use par("fg"). Use border = NA to omit borders. For compatibility with S, border can also be logical, in which case FALSE is equivalent to NA (borders omitted) and TRUE is equivalent to NULL (use the foreground colour),
lty	the line type to be used, as in par.
...	graphical parameters such as xpd, lend, ljoin and lmitre can be given as arguments.
fillOddEven	logical controlling the polygon shading mode: see below for details. Default FALSE.

Details

The coordinates can be passed in a plotting structure (a list with x and y components), a two-column matrix, ... See xy.coords.

It is assumed that the polygon is to be closed by joining the last point to the first point.

The coordinates can contain missing values. The behaviour is similar to that of lines, except that instead of breaking a line into several lines, NA values break the polygon into several complete polygons (including closing the last point to the first point). See the examples below.

When multiple polygons are produced, the values of `density`, `angle`, `col`, `border`, and `lty` are recycled in the usual manner.

Shading of polygons is only implemented for linear plots: if either axis is on log scale then shading is omitted, with a warning.

Bugs

Self-intersecting polygons may be filled using either the "odd-even" or "non-zero" rule. These fill a region if the polygon border encircles it an odd or non-zero number of times, respectively. Shading lines are handled internally by according to the `fillOddEven` argument, but device-based solid fills depend on the graphics device. The `windows`, `pdf` and `postscript` devices have their own `fillOddEven` argument to control this.

Author(s)

The code implementing polygon shading was donated by Kevin Buhr <buhr@stat.wisc.edu>.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`segments` for even more flexibility, `lines`, `rect`, `box`, `abline`.

`par` for how to specify colors.

Examples

```
x <- c(1:9, 8:1)
y <- c(1, 2*(5:3), 2, -1, 17, 9, 8, 2:9)
op <- par(mfcol = c(3, 1))
for(xpd in c(FALSE, TRUE, NA)) {
  plot(1:10, main = paste("xpd =", xpd))
  box("figure", col = "pink", lwd = 3)
  polygon(x, y, xpd = xpd, col = "orange", lty = 2, lwd = 2, border = "red")
}
par(op)

n <- 100
xx <- c(0:n, n:0)
yy <- c(c(0, cumsum(stats::rnorm(n))), rev(c(0, cumsum(stats::rnorm(n)))))
plot   (xx, yy, type = "n", xlab = "Time", ylab = "Distance")
polygon(xx, yy, col = "gray", border = "red")
title("Distance Between Brownian Motions")

# Multiple polygons from NA values
# and recycling of col, border, and lty
op <- par(mfrow = c(2, 1))
plot(c(1, 9), 1:2, type = "n")
polygon(1:9, c(2,1,2,1,1,2,1,2,1),
        col = c("red", "blue"),
        border = c("green", "yellow"),
        lwd = 3, lty = c("dashed", "solid"))
```

```
plot(c(1, 9), 1:2, type = "n")
polygon(1:9, c(2,1,2,1,NA,2,1,2,1),
        col = c("red", "blue"),
        border = c("green", "yellow"),
        lwd = 3, lty = c("dashed", "solid"))
par(op)

# Line-shaded polygons
plot(c(1, 9), 1:2, type = "n")
polygon(1:9, c(2,1,2,1,NA,2,1,2,1),
        density = c(10, 20), angle = c(-45, 45))
```

`polypath` *Path Drawing*

Description

`path` draws a path whose vertices are given in `x` and `y`.

Usage

```
polypath(x, y = NULL,
         border = NULL, col = NA, lty = par("lty"),
         rule = "winding", ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	vectors containing the coordinates of the vertices of the path.
`col`	the color for filling the path. The default, `NA`, is to leave paths unfilled, unless `density` is specified. (For back-compatibility, `NULL` is equivalent to `NA`.) If `density` is specified with a positive value this gives the color of the shading lines.
`border`	the color to draw the border. The default, `NULL`, means to use `par("fg")`. Use `border = NA` to omit borders. For compatibility with S, `border` can also be logical, in which case `FALSE` is equivalent to `NA` (borders omitted) and `TRUE` is equivalent to `NULL` (use the foreground colour),
`lty`	the line type to be used, as in `par`.
`rule`	character value specifying the path fill mode: either `"winding"` or `"evenodd"`.
`...`	graphical parameters such as `xpd`, `lend`, `ljoin` and `lmitre` can be given as arguments.

Details

The coordinates can be passed in a plotting structure (a list with `x` and `y` components), a two-column matrix, ... See `xy.coords`.

It is assumed that the path is to be closed by joining the last point to the first point.

The coordinates can contain missing values. The behaviour is similar to that of `polygon`, except that instead of breaking a polygon into several polygons, `NA` values break the path into several sub-paths (including closing the last point to the first point in each sub-path). See the examples below.

The distinction between a path and a polygon is that the former can contain holes, as interpreted by the fill rule; these fill a region if the path border encircles it an odd or non-zero number of times, respectively.

Hatched shading (as implemented for `polygon()`) is not (currently) supported.

Not all graphics devices support this function: for example `xfig` and `pictex` do not.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`segments` for even more flexibility, `lines`, `rect`, `box`, `polygon`.

`par` for how to specify colors.

Examples

```
plotPath <- function(x, y, col = "grey", rule = "winding") {
    plot.new()
    plot.window(range(x, na.rm = TRUE), range(y, na.rm = TRUE))
    polypath(x, y, col = col, rule = rule)
    if (!is.na(col))
        mtext(paste("Rule:", rule), side = 1, line = 0)
}

plotRules <- function(x, y, title) {
    plotPath(x, y)
    plotPath(x, y, rule = "evenodd")
    mtext(title, side = 3, line = 0)
    plotPath(x, y, col = NA)
}

op <- par(mfrow = c(5, 3), mar = c(2, 1, 1, 1))

plotRules(c(.1, .1, .9, .9, NA, .2, .2, .8, .8),
          c(.1, .9, .9, .1, NA, .2, .8, .8, .2),
          "Nested rectangles, both clockwise")
plotRules(c(.1, .1, .9, .9, NA, .2, .8, .8, .2),
          c(.1, .9, .9, .1, NA, .2, .2, .8, .8),
          "Nested rectangles, outer clockwise, inner anti-clockwise")
plotRules(c(.1, .1, .4, .4, NA, .6, .9, .9, .6),
          c(.1, .4, .4, .1, NA, .6, .6, .9, .9),
          "Disjoint rectangles")
plotRules(c(.1, .1, .6, .6, NA, .4, .4, .9, .9),
          c(.1, .6, .6, .1, NA, .4, .9, .9, .4),
          "Overlapping rectangles, both clockwise")
plotRules(c(.1, .1, .6, .6, NA, .4, .9, .9, .4),
          c(.1, .6, .6, .1, NA, .4, .4, .9, .9),
          "Overlapping rectangles, one clockwise, other anti-clockwise")

par(op)
```

rasterImage *Draw One or More Raster Images*

Description

rasterImage draws a raster image at the given locations and sizes.

Usage

```
rasterImage(image,
            xleft, ybottom, xright, ytop,
            angle = 0, interpolate = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

image	a raster object, or an object that can be coerced to one by as.raster.
xleft	a vector (or scalar) of left x positions.
ybottom	a vector (or scalar) of bottom y positions.
xright	a vector (or scalar) of right x positions.
ytop	a vector (or scalar) of top y positions.
angle	angle of rotation (in degrees, anti-clockwise from positive x-axis, about the bottom-left corner).
interpolate	a logical vector (or scalar) indicating whether to apply linear interpolation to the image when drawing.
...	graphical parameters.

Details

The positions supplied, i.e., xleft, ..., are relative to the current plotting region. If the x-axis goes from 100 to 200 then xleft should be larger than 100 and xright should be less than 200. The position vectors will be recycled to the length of the longest.

Plotting raster images is not supported on all devices and may have limitations where supported, for example (e.g., for postscript and X11(type = "Xlib")) is restricted to opaque colors). Problems with the rendering of raster images have been reported by users of windows() devices under Remote Desktop, at least under its default settings.

You should not expect a raster image to be re-sized when an on-screen device is re-sized: whether it is is device-dependent.

See Also

rect, polygon, and segments and others for flexible ways to draw shapes.

dev.capabilities to see if it is supported.

Examples

```
require(grDevices)
## set up the plot region:
op <- par(bg = "thistle")
plot(c(100, 250), c(300, 450), type = "n", xlab = "", ylab = "")
image <- as.raster(matrix(0:1, ncol = 5, nrow = 3))
rasterImage(image, 100, 300, 150, 350, interpolate = FALSE)
rasterImage(image, 100, 400, 150, 450)
rasterImage(image, 200, 300, 200 + xinch(.5), 300 + yinch(.3),
            interpolate = FALSE)
rasterImage(image, 200, 400, 250, 450, angle = 15, interpolate = FALSE)
par(op)
```

---

rect *Draw One or More Rectangles*

Description

`rect` draws a rectangle (or sequence of rectangles) with the given coordinates, fill and border colors.

Usage

```
rect(xleft, ybottom, xright, ytop, density = NULL, angle = 45,
     col = NA, border = NULL, lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"),
     ...)
```

Arguments

`xleft`	a vector (or scalar) of left x positions.
`ybottom`	a vector (or scalar) of bottom y positions.
`xright`	a vector (or scalar) of right x positions.
`ytop`	a vector (or scalar) of top y positions.
`density`	the density of shading lines, in lines per inch. The default value of `NULL` means that no shading lines are drawn. A zero value of `density` means no shading lines whereas negative values (and `NA`) suppress shading (and so allow color filling).
`angle`	angle (in degrees) of the shading lines.
`col`	color(s) to fill or shade the rectangle(s) with. The default `NA` (or also `NULL`) means do not fill, i.e., draw transparent rectangles, unless `density` is specified.
`border`	color for rectangle border(s). The default means `par("fg")`. Use `border = NA` to omit borders. If there are shading lines, `border = TRUE` means use the same colour for the border as for the shading lines.
`lty`	line type for borders and shading; defaults to `"solid"`.
`lwd`	line width for borders and shading. Note that the use of `lwd = 0` (as in the examples) is device-dependent.
`...`	graphical parameters such as `xpd`, `lend`, `ljoin` and `lmitre` can be given as arguments.

Details

The positions supplied, i.e., `xleft, ...`, are relative to the current plotting region. If the x-axis goes from 100 to 200 then `xleft` must be larger than 100 and `xright` must be less than 200. The position vectors will be recycled to the length of the longest.

It is a graphics primitive used in `hist`, `barplot`, `legend`, etc.

See Also

`box` for the standard box around the plot; `polygon` and `segments` for flexible line drawing.

`par` for how to specify colors.

Examples

```
require(grDevices)
## set up the plot region:
op <- par(bg = "thistle")
plot(c(100, 250), c(300, 450), type = "n", xlab = "", ylab = "",
     main = "2 x 11 rectangles; rect(100+i,300+i,  150+i,380+i)")
i <- 4*(0:10)
## draw rectangles with bottom left (100, 300)+i
## and top right (150, 380)+i
rect(100+i, 300+i, 150+i, 380+i, col = rainbow(11, start = 0.7, end = 0.1))
rect(240-i, 320+i, 250-i, 410+i, col = heat.colors(11), lwd = i/5)
## Background alternating  ( transparent / "bg" ) :
j <- 10*(0:5)
rect(125+j, 360+j,   141+j, 405+j/2, col = c(NA,0),
     border = "gold", lwd = 2)
rect(125+j, 296+j/2, 141+j, 331+j/5, col = c(NA,"midnightblue"))
mtext("+  2 x 6 rect(*, col = c(NA,0)) and  col = c(NA,\"m..blue\"))")

## an example showing colouring and shading
plot(c(100, 200), c(300, 450), type= "n", xlab = "", ylab = "")
rect(100, 300, 125, 350) # transparent
rect(100, 400, 125, 450, col = "green", border = "blue") # coloured
rect(115, 375, 150, 425, col = par("bg"), border = "transparent")
rect(150, 300, 175, 350, density = 10, border = "red")
rect(150, 400, 175, 450, density = 30, col = "blue",
     angle = -30, border = "transparent")

legend(180, 450, legend = 1:4, fill = c(NA, "green", par("fg"), "blue"),
       density = c(NA, NA, 10, 30), angle = c(NA, NA, 30, -30))

par(op)
```

---

rug *Add a Rug to a Plot*

Description

Adds a *rug* representation (1-d plot) of the data to the plot.

Usage

```
rug(x, ticksize = 0.03, side = 1, lwd = 0.5, col = par("fg"),
    quiet = getOption("warn") < 0, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector
ticksize	The length of the ticks making up the 'rug'. Positive lengths give inwards ticks.
side	On which side of the plot box the rug will be plotted. Normally 1 (bottom) or 3 (top).
lwd	The line width of the ticks. Some devices will round the default width up to 1.
col	The colour the ticks are plotted in.
quiet	logical indicating if there should be a warning about clipped values.
...	further arguments, passed to axis, such as line or pos for specifying the location of the rug.

Details

Because of the way rug is implemented, only values of x that fall within the plot region are included. There will be a warning if any finite values are omitted, but non-finite values are omitted silently.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

jitter which you may want for ties in x.

Examples

```
require(stats)  # both density and its default method
with(faithful, {
    plot(density(eruptions, bw = 0.15))
    rug(eruptions)
    rug(jitter(eruptions, amount = 0.01), side = 3, col = "light blue")
})
```

---

screen *Creating and Controlling Multiple Screens on a Single Device*

Description

split.screen defines a number of regions within the current device which can, to some extent, be treated as separate graphics devices. It is useful for generating multiple plots on a single device. Screens can themselves be split, allowing for quite complex arrangements of plots.

screen is used to select which screen to draw in.

erase.screen is used to clear a single screen, which it does by filling with the background colour.

close.screen removes the specified screen definition(s).

Usage

```
split.screen(figs, screen, erase = TRUE)
screen(n = , new = TRUE)
erase.screen(n = )
close.screen(n, all.screens = FALSE)
```

Arguments

figs	A two-element vector describing the number of rows and the number of columns in a screen matrix *or* a matrix with 4 columns. If a matrix, then each row describes a screen with values for the left, right, bottom, and top of the screen (in that order) in NDC units, that is 0 at the lower left corner of the device surface, and 1 at the upper right corner.
screen	A number giving the screen to be split. It defaults to the current screen if there is one, otherwise the whole device region.
erase	logical: should be selected screen be cleared?
n	A number indicating which screen to prepare for drawing (screen), erase (erase.screen), or close (close.screen). (close.screen will accept a vector of screen numbers.)
new	A logical value indicating whether the screen should be erased as part of the preparation for drawing in the screen.
all.screens	A logical value indicating whether all of the screens should be closed.

Details

The first call to split.screen places into split-screen mode. The other split-screen functions only work within this mode. While in this mode, certain other commands should be avoided (see the Warnings section below). Split-screen mode is exited by the command close.screen(all = TRUE).

If the current screen is closed, close.screen sets the current screen to be the next larger screen number if there is one, otherwise to the first available screen.

Value

split.screen returns a vector of screen numbers for the newly-created screens. With no arguments, split.screen returns a vector of valid screen numbers.

screen invisibly returns the number of the selected screen. With no arguments, screen returns the number of the current screen.

close.screen returns a vector of valid screen numbers.

screen, erase.screen, and close.screen all return FALSE if is not in split-screen mode.

Warnings

The recommended way to use these functions is to completely draw a plot and all additions (i.e., points and lines) to the base plot, prior to selecting and plotting on another screen. The behavior associated with returning to a screen to add to an existing plot is unpredictable and may result in problems that are not readily visible.

These functions are totally incompatible with the other mechanisms for arranging plots on a device: par(mfrow), par(mfcol) and layout().

The functions are also incompatible with some plotting functions, such as coplot, which make use of these other mechanisms.

erase.screen will appear not to work if the background colour is transparent (as it is by default on most devices).

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

par, layout, Devices, dev.*

Examples

```
if (interactive()) {
par(bg = "white")           # default is likely to be transparent
split.screen(c(2, 1))       # split display into two screens
split.screen(c(1, 3), screen = 2) # now split the bottom half into 3
screen(1) # prepare screen 1 for output
plot(10:1)
screen(4) # prepare screen 4 for output
plot(10:1)
close.screen(all = TRUE)    # exit split-screen mode

split.screen(c(2, 1))       # split display into two screens
split.screen(c(1, 2), 2)    # split bottom half in two
plot(1:10)                  # screen 3 is active, draw plot
erase.screen()              # forgot label, erase and redraw
plot(1:10, ylab = "ylab 3")
screen(1)                   # prepare screen 1 for output
plot(1:10)
screen(4)                   # prepare screen 4 for output
plot(1:10, ylab = "ylab 4")
screen(1, FALSE)            # return to screen 1, but do not clear
plot(10:1, axes = FALSE, lty = 2, ylab = "")  # overlay second plot
axis(4)                     # add tic marks to right-hand axis
title("Plot 1")
close.screen(all = TRUE)    # exit split-screen mode
}
```

---

segments *Add Line Segments to a Plot*

Description

Draw line segments between pairs of points.

Usage

```
segments(x0, y0, x1 = x0, y1 = y0,
         col = par("fg"), lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"),
         ...)
```

Arguments

x0, y0	coordinates of points **from** which to draw.
x1, y1	coordinates of points **to** which to draw. At least one must be supplied.
col, lty, lwd	graphical parameters as in par, possibly vectors. NA values in col cause the segment to be omitted.
...	further graphical parameters (from par), such as xpd and the line characteristics lend, ljoin and lmitre.

Details

For each i, a line segment is drawn between the point (x0[i], y0[i]) and the point (x1[i], y1[i]). The coordinate vectors will be recycled to the length of the longest.

The graphical parameters col, lty and lwd can be vectors of length greater than one and will be recycled if necessary.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

arrows, polygon for slightly easier and less flexible line drawing, and lines for the usual polygons.

Examples

```
x <- stats::runif(12); y <- stats::rnorm(12)
i <- order(x, y); x <- x[i]; y <- y[i]
plot(x, y, main = "arrows(.) and segments(.)")
## draw arrows from point to point :
s <- seq(length(x)-1)  # one shorter than data
arrows(x[s], y[s], x[s+1], y[s+1], col= 1:3)
s <- s[-length(s)]
segments(x[s], y[s], x[s+2], y[s+2], col= pink)
```

---

smoothScatter *Scatterplots with Smoothed Densities Color Representation*

Description

smoothScatter produces a smoothed color density representation of the scatterplot, obtained through a kernel density estimate. densCols produces a vector containing colors which encode the local densities at each point in a scatterplot.

Usage

```
smoothScatter(x, y = NULL, nbin = 128, bandwidth,
              colramp = colorRampPalette(c("white", blues9)),
              nrpoints = 100, pch = ".", cex = 1, col = "black",
              transformation = function(x) x^.25,
              postPlotHook = box,
              xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, xlim, ylim,
              xaxs = par("xaxs"), yaxs = par("yaxs"), ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	the `x` and `y` arguments provide the `x` and `y` coordinates for the plot. Any reasonable way of defining the coordinates is acceptable. See the function `xy.coords` for details. If supplied separately, they must be of the same length.
`nbin`	numeric vector of length one (for both directions) or two (for x and y separately) specifying the number of equally spaced grid points for the density estimation; directly used as `gridsize` in `bkde2D()`.
`bandwidth`	numeric vector (length 1 or 2) of smoothing bandwidth(s). If missing, a more or less useful default is used. `bandwidth` is subsequently passed to function `bkde2D`.
`colramp`	function accepting an integer `n` as an argument and returning `n` colors.
`nrpoints`	number of points to be superimposed on the density image. The first `nrpoints` points from those areas of lowest regional densities will be plotted. Adding points to the plot allows for the identification of outliers. If all points are to be plotted, choose `nrpoints = Inf`.
`pch, cex, col`	arguments passed to `points`, when `nrpoints > 0`: point symbol, character expansion factor and color, see also `par`.
`transformation`	function mapping the density scale to the color scale.
`postPlotHook`	either `NULL` or a function which will be called (with no arguments) after `image`.
`xlab, ylab`	character strings to be used as axis labels, passed to `image`.
`xlim, ylim`	numeric vectors of length 2 specifying axis limits.
`xaxs, yaxs, ...`	further arguments, passed to `image`.

Details

`smoothScatter` produces a smoothed version of a scatter plot. Two dimensional (kernel density) smoothing is performed by `bkde2D` from package **KernSmooth**. See the examples for how to use this function together with `pairs`.

Author(s)

Florian Hahne at FHCRC, originally

See Also

`bkde2D` from package **KernSmooth**; `densCols` which uses the same smoothing computations and `blues9` in package **grDevices**.

`scatter.smooth` adds a `loess` regression smoother to a scatter plot.

Examples

```
## A largish data set
n <- 10000
x1  <- matrix(rnorm(n), ncol = 2)
x2  <- matrix(rnorm(n, mean = 3, sd = 1.5), ncol = 2)
x   <- rbind(x1, x2)

oldpar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2))
smoothScatter(x, nrpoints = 0)
```

```
smoothScatter(x)

## a different color scheme:
Lab.palette <- colorRampPalette(c("blue", "orange", "red"), space = "Lab")
smoothScatter(x, colramp = Lab.palette)

## somewhat similar, using identical smoothing computations,
## but considerably *less* efficient for really large data:
plot(x, col = densCols(x), pch = 20)

## use with pairs:
par(mfrow = c(1, 1))
y <- matrix(rnorm(40000), ncol = 4) + 3*rnorm(10000)
y[, c(2,4)] <-  -y[, c(2,4)]
pairs(y, panel = function(...) smoothScatter(..., nrpoints = 0, add = TRUE))

par(oldpar)
```

---

spineplot *Spine Plots and Spinograms*

Description

Spine plots are a special cases of mosaic plots, and can be seen as a generalization of stacked (or highlighted) bar plots. Analogously, spinograms are an extension of histograms.

Usage

```
spineplot(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
spineplot(x, y = NULL,
          breaks = NULL, tol.ylab = 0.05, off = NULL,
          ylevels = NULL, col = NULL,
          main = "", xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
          xaxlabels = NULL, yaxlabels = NULL,
          xlim = NULL, ylim = c(0, 1), axes = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
spineplot(formula, data = NULL,
          breaks = NULL, tol.ylab = 0.05, off = NULL,
          ylevels = NULL, col = NULL,
          main = "", xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
          xaxlabels = NULL, yaxlabels = NULL,
          xlim = NULL, ylim = c(0, 1), axes = TRUE, ...,
          subset = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	an object, the default method expects either a single variable (interpreted to be the explanatory variable) or a 2-way table. See details.
y	a "factor" interpreted to be the dependent variable

formula	a "formula" of type y ~ x with a single dependent "factor" and a single explanatory variable.
data	an optional data frame.
breaks	if the explanatory variable is numeric, this controls how it is discretized. breaks is passed to hist and can be a list of arguments.
tol.ylab	convenience tolerance parameter for y-axis annotation. If the distance between two labels drops under this threshold, they are plotted equidistantly.
off	vertical offset between the bars (in per cent). It is fixed to 0 for spinograms and defaults to 2 for spine plots.
ylevels	a character or numeric vector specifying in which order the levels of the dependent variable should be plotted.
col	a vector of fill colors of the same length as levels(y). The default is to call gray.colors.
main, xlab, ylab	character strings for annotation
xaxlabels, yaxlabels	character vectors for annotation of x and y axis. Default to levels(y) and levels(x), respectively for the spine plot. For xaxlabels in the spinogram, the breaks are used.
xlim, ylim	the range of x and y values with sensible defaults.
axes	logical. If FALSE all axes (including those giving level names) are suppressed.
...	additional arguments passed to rect.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used for plotting.

Details

spineplot creates either a spinogram or a spine plot. It can be called via spineplot(x, y) or spineplot(y ~ x) where y is interpreted to be the dependent variable (and has to be categorical) and x the explanatory variable. x can be either categorical (then a spine plot is created) or numerical (then a spinogram is plotted). Additionally, spineplot can also be called with only a single argument which then has to be a 2-way table, interpreted to correspond to table(x, y).

Both, spine plots and spinograms, are essentially mosaic plots with special formatting of spacing and shading. Conceptually, they plot $P(y|x)$ against $P(x)$. For the spine plot (where both x and y are categorical), both quantities are approximated by the corresponding empirical relative frequencies. For the spinogram (where x is numerical), x is first discretized (by calling hist with breaks argument) and then empirical relative frequencies are taken.

Thus, spine plots can also be seen as a generalization of stacked bar plots where not the heights but the widths of the bars corresponds to the relative frequencies of x. The heights of the bars then correspond to the conditional relative frequencies of y in every x group. Analogously, spinograms extend stacked histograms.

Value

The table visualized is returned invisibly.

Author(s)

Achim Zeileis <Achim.Zeileis@R-project.org>

References

Friendly, M. (1994), Mosaic displays for multi-way contingency tables. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **89**, 190–200.

Hartigan, J.A., and Kleiner, B. (1984), A mosaic of television ratings. *The American Statistician*, **38**, 32–35.

Hofmann, H., Theus, M. (2005), *Interactive graphics for visualizing conditional distributions*, Unpublished Manuscript.

Hummel, J. (1996), Linked bar charts: Analysing categorical data graphically. *Computational Statistics*, **11**, 23–33.

See Also

mosaicplot, hist, cdplot

Examples

```
## treatment and improvement of patients with rheumatoid arthritis
treatment <- factor(rep(c(1, 2), c(43, 41)), levels = c(1, 2),
                    labels = c("placebo", "treated"))
improved <- factor(rep(c(1, 2, 3, 1, 2, 3), c(29, 7, 7, 13, 7, 21)),
                   levels = c(1, 2, 3),
                   labels = c("none", "some", "marked"))

## (dependence on a categorical variable)
(spineplot(improved ~ treatment))

## applications and admissions by department at UC Berkeley
## (two-way tables)
(spineplot(margin.table(UCBAdmissions, c(3, 2)),
           main = "Applications at UCB"))
(spineplot(margin.table(UCBAdmissions, c(3, 1)),
           main = "Admissions at UCB"))

## NASA space shuttle o-ring failures
fail <- factor(c(2, 2, 2, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1,
                 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1),
               levels = c(1, 2), labels = c("no", "yes"))
temperature <- c(53, 57, 58, 63, 66, 67, 67, 67, 68, 69, 70, 70,
                 70, 70, 72, 73, 75, 75, 76, 76, 78, 79, 81)

## (dependence on a numerical variable)
(spineplot(fail ~ temperature))
(spineplot(fail ~ temperature, breaks = 3))
(spineplot(fail ~ temperature, breaks = quantile(temperature)))

## highlighting for failures
spineplot(fail ~ temperature, ylevels = 2:1)
```

---

stars *Star (Spider/Radar) Plots and Segment Diagrams*

Description

Draw star plots or segment diagrams of a multivariate data set. With one single location, also draws 'spider' (or 'radar') plots.

Usage

```
stars(x, full = TRUE, scale = TRUE, radius = TRUE,
      labels = dimnames(x)[[1]], locations = NULL,
      nrow = NULL, ncol = NULL, len = 1,
      key.loc = NULL, key.labels = dimnames(x)[[2]],
      key.xpd = TRUE,
      xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL, flip.labels = NULL,
      draw.segments = FALSE,
      col.segments = 1:n.seg, col.stars = NA, col.lines = NA,
      axes = FALSE, frame.plot = axes,
      main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = "", ylab = "",
      cex = 0.8, lwd = 0.25, lty = par("lty"), xpd = FALSE,
      mar = pmin(par("mar"),
                 1.1+ c(2*axes+ (xlab != ""),
                 2*axes+ (ylab != ""), 1, 0)),
      add = FALSE, plot = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	matrix or data frame of data. One star or segment plot will be produced for each row of x. Missing values (NA) are allowed, but they are treated as if they were 0 (after scaling, if relevant).
full	logical flag: if TRUE, the segment plots will occupy a full circle. Otherwise, they occupy the (upper) semicircle only.
scale	logical flag: if TRUE, the columns of the data matrix are scaled independently so that the maximum value in each column is 1 and the minimum is 0. If FALSE, the presumption is that the data have been scaled by some other algorithm to the range $[0, 1]$.
radius	logical flag: in TRUE, the radii corresponding to each variable in the data will be drawn.
labels	vector of character strings for labeling the plots. Unlike the S function stars, no attempt is made to construct labels if labels = NULL.
locations	Either two column matrix with the x and y coordinates used to place each of the segment plots; or numeric of length 2 when all plots should be superimposed (for a 'spider plot'). By default, locations = NULL, the segment plots will be placed in a rectangular grid.
nrow, ncol	integers giving the number of rows and columns to use when locations is NULL. By default, nrow == ncol, a square layout will be used.
len	scale factor for the length of radii or segments.
key.loc	vector with x and y coordinates of the unit key.
key.labels	vector of character strings for labeling the segments of the unit key. If omitted, the second component of dimnames(x) is used, if available.
key.xpd	clipping switch for the unit key (drawing and labeling), see par("xpd").
xlim	vector with the range of x coordinates to plot.

ylim	vector with the range of y coordinates to plot.
flip.labels	logical indicating if the label locations should flip up and down from diagram to diagram. Defaults to a somewhat smart heuristic.
draw.segments	logical. If TRUE draw a segment diagram.
col.segments	color vector (integer or character, see par), each specifying a color for one of the segments (variables). Ignored if draw.segments = FALSE.
col.stars	color vector (integer or character, see par), each specifying a color for one of the stars (cases). Ignored if draw.segments = TRUE.
col.lines	color vector (integer or character, see par), each specifying a color for one of the lines (cases). Ignored if draw.segments = TRUE.
axes	logical flag: if TRUE axes are added to the plot.
frame.plot	logical flag: if TRUE, the plot region is framed.
main	a main title for the plot.
sub	a sub title for the plot.
xlab	a label for the x axis.
ylab	a label for the y axis.
cex	character expansion factor for the labels.
lwd	line width used for drawing.
lty	line type used for drawing.
xpd	logical or NA indicating if clipping should be done, see par(xpd = .).
mar	argument to par(mar = *), typically choosing smaller margins than by default.
...	further arguments, passed to the first call of plot(), see plot.default and to box() if frame.plot is true.
add	logical, if TRUE *add* stars to current plot.
plot	logical, if FALSE, nothing is plotted.

Details

Missing values are treated as 0.

Each star plot or segment diagram represents one row of the input x. Variables (columns) start on the right and wind counterclockwise around the circle. The size of the (scaled) column is shown by the distance from the center to the point on the star or the radius of the segment representing the variable.

Only one page of output is produced.

Value

Returns the locations of the plots in a two column matrix, invisibly when plot = TRUE.

Note

This code started life as spatial star plots by David A. Andrews.

Prior to 1.4.1, scaling only shifted the maximum to 1, although documented as here.

Author(s)

Thomas S. Dye

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`symbols` for another way to draw stars and other symbols.

Examples

```
require(grDevices)
stars(mtcars[, 1:7], key.loc = c(14, 2),
      main = "Motor Trend Cars : stars(*, full = F)", full = FALSE)
stars(mtcars[, 1:7], key.loc = c(14, 1.5),
      main = "Motor Trend Cars : full stars()", flip.labels = FALSE)

## Spider or Radar plot:
stars(mtcars[, 1:7], locations = c(0, 0), radius = FALSE,
      key.loc = c(0, 0), main = "Motor Trend Cars", lty = 2)

## Segment Diagrams:
palette(rainbow(12, s = 0.6, v = 0.75))
stars(mtcars[, 1:7], len = 0.8, key.loc = c(12, 1.5),
      main = "Motor Trend Cars", draw.segments = TRUE)
stars(mtcars[, 1:7], len = 0.6, key.loc = c(1.5, 0),
      main = "Motor Trend Cars", draw.segments = TRUE,
      frame.plot = TRUE, nrow = 4, cex = .7)

## scale linearly (not affinely) to [0, 1]
USJudge <- apply(USJudgeRatings, 2, function(x) x/max(x))
Jnam <- row.names(USJudgeRatings)
Snam <- abbreviate(substring(Jnam, 1, regexpr("[,.]",Jnam) - 1), 7)
stars(USJudge, labels = Jnam, scale = FALSE,
      key.loc = c(13, 1.5), main = "Judge not ...", len = 0.8)
stars(USJudge, labels = Snam, scale = FALSE,
      key.loc = c(13, 1.5), radius = FALSE)

loc <- stars(USJudge, labels = NULL, scale = FALSE,
             radius = FALSE, frame.plot = TRUE,
             key.loc = c(13, 1.5), main = "Judge not ...", len = 1.2)
text(loc, Snam, col = "blue", cex = 0.8, xpd = TRUE)

## Segments:
stars(USJudge, draw.segments = TRUE, scale = FALSE, key.loc = c(13,1.5))

## Spider:
stars(USJudgeRatings, locations = c(0, 0), scale = FALSE, radius  =  FALSE,
      col.stars = 1:10, key.loc = c(0, 0), main = "US Judges rated")
## Same as above, but with colored lines instead of filled polygons.
stars(USJudgeRatings, locations = c(0, 0), scale = FALSE, radius  =  FALSE,
      col.lines = 1:10, key.loc = c(0, 0), main = "US Judges rated")
## Radar-Segments
stars(USJudgeRatings[1:10,], locations = 0:1, scale = FALSE,
      draw.segments = TRUE, col.segments = 0, col.stars = 1:10, key.loc =  0:1,
      main = "US Judges 1-10 ")
palette("default")
```

```
stars(cbind(1:16, 10*(16:1)), draw.segments = TRUE,
      main = "A Joke -- do *not* use symbols on 2D data!")
```

`stem` *Stem-and-Leaf Plots*

Description

`stem` produces a stem-and-leaf plot of the values in `x`. The parameter `scale` can be used to expand the scale of the plot. A value of `scale = 2` will cause the plot to be roughly twice as long as the default.

Usage

```
stem(x, scale = 1, width = 80, atom = 1e-08)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric vector.
`scale`	This controls the plot length.
`width`	The desired width of plot.
`atom`	a tolerance.

Details

Infinite and missing values in `x` are discarded.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
stem(islands)
stem(log10(islands))
```

`stripchart` *1-D Scatter Plots*

Description

`stripchart` produces one dimensional scatter plots (or dot plots) of the given data. These plots are a good alternative to `boxplot`s when sample sizes are small.

Usage

```
stripchart(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
stripchart(x, data = NULL, dlab = NULL, ...,
           subset, na.action = NULL)


## Default S3 method:
stripchart(x, method = "overplot", jitter = 0.1, offset = 1/3,
           vertical = FALSE, group.names, add = FALSE,
           at = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL,
           ylab = NULL, xlab = NULL, dlab = "", glab = "",
           log = "", pch = 0, col = par("fg"), cex = par("cex"),
           axes = TRUE, frame.plot = axes, ...)
```

Arguments

x	the data from which the plots are to be produced. In the default method the data can be specified as a single numeric vector, or as list of numeric vectors, each corresponding to a component plot. In the formula method, a symbolic specification of the form y ~ g can be given, indicating the observations in the vector y are to be grouped according to the levels of the factor g. NAs are allowed in the data.
data	a data.frame (or list) from which the variables in x should be taken.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used for plotting.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default is to ignore missing values in either the response or the group.
...	additional parameters passed to the default method, or by it to plot.window, points, axis and title to control the appearance of the plot.
method	the method to be used to separate coincident points. The default method "overplot" causes such points to be overplotted, but it is also possible to specify "jitter" to jitter the points, or "stack" have coincident points stacked. The last method only makes sense for very granular data.
jitter	when method = "jitter" is used, jitter gives the amount of jittering applied.
offset	when stacking is used, points are stacked this many line-heights (symbol widths) apart.
vertical	when vertical is TRUE the plots are drawn vertically rather than the default horizontal.
group.names	group labels which will be printed alongside (or underneath) each plot.
add	logical, if true *add* the chart to the current plot.
at	numeric vector giving the locations where the charts should be drawn, particularly when add = TRUE; defaults to 1:n where n is the number of boxes.
ylab, xlab	labels: see title.
dlab, glab	alternate way to specify axis labels: see 'Details'.
xlim, ylim	plot limits: see plot.window.
log	on which axes to use a log scale: see plot.default

`pch, col, cex` Graphical parameters: see `par`.

`axes, frame.plot`
Axis control: see `plot.default`.

Details

Extensive examples of the use of this kind of plot can be found in Box, Hunter and Hunter or Seber and Wild.

The `dlab` and `glab` labels may be used instead of `xlab` and `ylab` if those are not specified. `dlab` applies to the continuous data axis (the X axis unless `vertical` is `TRUE`), `glab` to the group axis.

Examples

```
x <- stats::rnorm(50)
xr <- round(x, 1)
stripchart(x) ; m <- mean(par("usr")[1:2])
text(m, 1.04, "stripchart(x, \"overplot\")")
stripchart(xr, method = "stack", add = TRUE, at = 1.2)
text(m, 1.35, "stripchart(round(x,1), \"stack\")")
stripchart(xr, method = "jitter", add = TRUE, at = 0.7)
text(m, 0.85, "stripchart(round(x,1), \"jitter\")")

stripchart(decrease ~ treatment,
    main = "stripchart(OrchardSprays)",
    vertical = TRUE, log = "y", data = OrchardSprays)

stripchart(decrease ~ treatment, at = c(1:8)^2,
    main = "stripchart(OrchardSprays)",
    vertical = TRUE, log = "y", data = OrchardSprays)
```

---

strwidth *Plotting Dimensions of Character Strings and Math Expressions*

Description

These functions compute the width or height, respectively, of the given strings or mathematical expressions `s[i]` on the current plotting device in *user* coordinates, *inches* or as fraction of the figure width `par("fin")`.

Usage

```
strwidth(s, units = "user", cex = NULL, font = NULL, vfont = NULL, ...)
strheight(s, units = "user", cex = NULL, font = NULL, vfont = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`s`	a character or expression vector whose dimensions are to be determined. Other objects are coerced by `as.graphicsAnnot`.
`units`	character indicating in which units `s` is measured; should be one of `"user"`, `"inches"`, `"figure"`; partial matching is performed.
`cex`	numeric **c**haracter **ex**pansion factor; multiplied by `par("cex")` yields the final character size; the default `NULL` is equivalent to `1`.

font, vfont, ...
: additional information about the font, possibly including the graphics parameter "family": see text.

Details

Note that the 'height' of a string is determined only by the number of linefeeds ("\n") it contains: it is the (number of linefeeds - 1) times the line spacing plus the height of "M" in the selected font. For an expression it is the height of the bounding box as computed by plotmath. Thus in both cases it is an estimate of how far **above** the final baseline the typeset object extends. (It may also extend below the baseline.) The inter-line spacing is controlled by cex, par("lheight") and the 'point size' (but not the actual font in use).

Measurements in "user" units (the default) are only available after plot.new has been called – otherwise an error is thrown.

Value

Numeric vector with the same length as s, giving the estimate of width or height for each s[i]. NA strings are given width and height 0 (as they are not plotted).

See Also

text, nchar

Examples

```
str.ex <- c("W","w","I",".","WwI.")
op <- par(pty = "s"); plot(1:100, 1:100, type = "n")
sw <- strwidth(str.ex); sw
all.equal(sum(sw[1:4]), sw[5])
#- since the last string contains the others

sw.i <- strwidth(str.ex, "inches"); 25.4 * sw.i  # width in [mm]
unique(sw / sw.i)
# constant factor: 1 value
mean(sw.i / strwidth(str.ex, "fig")) / par(fin)[1]  # = 1: are the same

## See how letters fall in classes
##  -- depending on graphics device and font!
all.lett <- c(letters, LETTERS)
shL <- strheight(all.lett, units = "inches") * 72  # big points
table(shL)  # all have same heights ...
mean(shL)/par("cin")[2] # around 0.6

(swL <- strwidth(all.lett, units = "inches") * 72)  # big points
split(all.lett, factor(round(swL, 2)))

sumex <- expression(sum(x[i], i=1,n), e^{i * pi} == -1)
strwidth(sumex)
strheight(sumex)

par(op)  #- reset to previous setting
```

sunflowerplot *Produce a Sunflower Scatter Plot*

Description

Multiple points are plotted as 'sunflowers' with multiple leaves ('petals') such that overplotting is visualized instead of accidental and invisible.

Usage

```
sunflowerplot(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
sunflowerplot(x, y = NULL, number, log = "", digits = 6,
              xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL,
              add = FALSE, rotate = FALSE,
              pch = 16, cex = 0.8, cex.fact = 1.5,
              col = par("col"), bg = NA, size = 1/8, seg.col = 2,
              seg.lwd = 1.5, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
sunflowerplot(formula, data = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, ...,
             subset, na.action = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector of x-coordinates of length n, say, or another valid plotting structure, as for plot.default, see also xy.coords.
y	numeric vector of y-coordinates of length n.
number	integer vector of length n. number[i] = number of replicates for (x[i], y[i]), may be 0. Default (missing(number)): compute the exact multiplicity of the points x[], y[], via xyTable().
log	character indicating log coordinate scale, see plot.default.
digits	when number is computed (i.e., not specified), x and y are rounded to digits significant digits before multiplicities are computed.
xlab, ylab	character label for x-, or y-axis, respectively.
xlim, ylim	numeric(2) limiting the extents of the x-, or y-axis.
add	logical; should the plot be added on a previous one ? Default is FALSE.
rotate	logical; if TRUE, randomly rotate the sunflowers (preventing artefacts).
pch	plotting character to be used for points (number[i]==1) and center of sunflowers.
cex	numeric; character size expansion of center points (s. pch).
cex.fact	numeric *shrinking* factor to be used for the center points *when there are flower leaves*, i.e., cex / cex.fact is used for these.
col, bg	colors for the plot symbols, passed to plot.default.

size	of sunflower leaves in inches, 1[in] := 2.54[cm]. Default: 1/8\", approximately 3.2mm.
seg.col	color to be used for the **seg**ments which make the sunflowers leaves, see par(col=); col = "gold" reminds of real sunflowers.
seg.lwd	numeric; the line width for the leaves' segments.
...	further arguments to plot [if add = FALSE], or to be passed to or from another method.
formula	a formula, such as y ~ x.
data	a data.frame (or list) from which the variables in formula should be taken.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default is to ignore case with missing values.

Details

This is a generic function with default and formula methods.

For number[i] == 1, a (slightly enlarged) usual plotting symbol (pch) is drawn. For number[i] > 1, a small plotting symbol is drawn and number[i] equi-angular 'rays' emanate from it.

If rotate = TRUE and number[i] >= 2, a random direction is chosen (instead of the y-axis) for the first ray. The goal is to jitter the orientations of the sunflowers in order to prevent artefactual visual impressions.

Value

A list with three components of same length,

x	x coordinates
y	y coordinates
number	number

Use xyTable() (from package **grDevices**) if you are only interested in this return value.

Side Effects

A scatter plot is drawn with 'sunflowers' as symbols.

Author(s)

Andreas Ruckstuhl, Werner Stahel, Martin Maechler, Tim Hesterberg, 1989–1993. Port to by Martin Maechler <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch>.

References

Chambers, J. M., Cleveland, W. S., Kleiner, B. and Tukey, P. A. (1983) *Graphical Methods for Data Analysis.* Wadsworth.

Schilling, M. F. and Watkins, A. E. (1994) A suggestion for sunflower plots. *The American Statistician*, **48**, 303–305.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

density, xyTable

Examples

```
require(stats) # for rnorm
require(grDevices)

## number is computed automatically:
sunflowerplot(iris[, 3:4])
## Imitating Chambers et al, p.109, closely:
sunflowerplot(iris[, 3:4], cex = .2, cex.fact = 1, size = .035, seg.lwd = .8)
## or
sunflowerplot(Petal.Width ~ Petal.Length, data = iris,
              cex = .2, cex.fact = 1, size = .035, seg.lwd = .8)


sunflowerplot(x = sort(2*round(rnorm(100))), y = round(rnorm(100), 0),
              main = "Sunflower Plot of Rounded N(0,1)")
## Similarly using a "xyTable" argument:
xyT <- xyTable(x = sort(2*round(rnorm(100))), y = round(rnorm(100), 0),
               digits = 3)
utils::str(xyT, vec.len = 20)
sunflowerplot(xyT, main = "2nd Sunflower Plot of Rounded N(0,1)")

## A marked point process {explicit number argument}:
sunflowerplot(rnorm(100), rnorm(100), number = rpois(n = 100, lambda = 2),
              main = "Sunflower plot (marked point process)",
              rotate = TRUE, col = "blue4")
```

---

symbols *Draw Symbols (Circles, Squares, Stars, Thermometers, Boxplots)*

Description

This function draws symbols on a plot. One of six symbols; *circles*, *squares*, *rectangles*, *stars*, *thermometers*, and *boxplots*, can be plotted at a specified set of x and y coordinates. Specific aspects of the symbols, such as relative size, can be customized by additional parameters.

Usage

```
symbols(x, y = NULL, circles, squares, rectangles, stars,
        thermometers, boxplots, inches = TRUE, add = FALSE,
        fg = par("col"), bg = NA,
        xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, main = NULL,
        xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	the x and y co-ordinates for the centres of the symbols. They can be specified in any way which is accepted by xy.coords.
circles	a vector giving the radii of the circles.

squares	a vector giving the length of the sides of the squares.
rectangles	a matrix with two columns. The first column gives widths and the second the heights of rectangles.
stars	a matrix with three or more columns giving the lengths of the rays from the center of the stars. NA values are replaced by zeroes.
thermometers	a matrix with three or four columns. The first two columns give the width and height of the thermometer symbols. If there are three columns, the third is taken as a proportion: the thermometers are filled (using colour fg) from their base to this proportion of their height. If there are four columns, the third and fourth columns are taken as proportions and the thermometers are filled between these two proportions of their heights. The part of the box not filled in fg will be filled in the background colour (default transparent) given by bg.
boxplots	a matrix with five columns. The first two columns give the width and height of the boxes, the next two columns give the lengths of the lower and upper whiskers and the fifth the proportion (with a warning if not in [0,1]) of the way up the box that the median line is drawn.
inches	TRUE, FALSE or a positive number. See 'Details'.
add	if add is TRUE, the symbols are added to an existing plot, otherwise a new plot is created.
fg	colour(s) the symbols are to be drawn in.
bg	if specified, the symbols are filled with colour(s), the vector bg being recycled to the number of symbols. The default is to leave the symbols unfilled.
xlab	the x label of the plot if add is not true. Defaults to the deparsed expression used for x.
ylab	the y label of the plot. Unused if add = TRUE.
main	a main title for the plot. Unused if add = TRUE.
xlim	numeric vector of length 2 giving the x limits for the plot. Unused if add = TRUE.
ylim	numeric vector of length 2 giving the y limits for the plot. Unused if add = TRUE.
...	graphics parameters can also be passed to this function, as can the plot aspect ratio asp (see plot.window).

Details

Observations which have missing coordinates or missing size parameters are not plotted. The exception to this is *stars*. In that case, the length of any ray which is NA is reset to zero.

Argument inches controls the sizes of the symbols. If TRUE (the default), the symbols are scaled so that the largest dimension of any symbol is one inch. If a positive number is given the symbols are scaled to make largest dimension this size in inches (so TRUE and 1 are equivalent). If inches is FALSE, the units are taken to be those of the appropriate axes. (For circles, squares and stars the units of the x axis are used. For boxplots, the lengths of the whiskers are regarded as dimensions alongside width and height when scaling by inches, and are otherwise interpreted in the units of the y axis.)

Circles of radius zero are plotted at radius one pixel (which is device-dependent). Circles of a very small non-zero radius may or may not be visible, and may be smaller than circles of radius zero. On windows devices circles are plotted at radius at least one pixel as some Windows versions omit smaller circles.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

W. S. Cleveland (1985) *The Elements of Graphing Data.* Monterey, California: Wadsworth.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`stars` for drawing *stars* with a bit more flexibility.

If you are thinking about doing 'bubble plots' by `symbols(*, circles=*)`, you should *really* consider using `sunflowerplot` instead.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(grDevices)
x <- 1:10
y <- sort(10*runif(10))
z <- runif(10)
z3 <- cbind(z, 2*runif(10), runif(10))
symbols(x, y, thermometers = cbind(.5, 1, z), inches = .5, fg = 1:10)
symbols(x, y, thermometers = z3, inches = FALSE)
text(x, y, apply(format(round(z3, digits = 2)), 1, paste, collapse = ","),
     adj = c(-.2,0), cex = .75, col = "purple", xpd = NA)

## Note that  example(trees)  shows more sensible plots!
N <- nrow(trees)
with(trees, {
## Girth is diameter in inches
symbols(Height, Volume, circles = Girth/24, inches = FALSE,
        main = "Trees Girth") # xlab and ylab automatically
## Colours too:
op <- palette(rainbow(N, end = 0.9))
symbols(Height, Volume, circles = Girth/16, inches = FALSE, bg = 1:N,
        fg = "gray30", main = "symbols(*, circles = Girth/16, bg = 1:N)")
palette(op)
})
```

`text` *Add Text to a Plot*

Description

`text` draws the strings given in the vector `labels` at the coordinates given by `x` and `y`. `y` may be missing since `xy.coords(x, y)` is used for construction of the coordinates.

Usage

```
text(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
 text(x, y = NULL, labels = seq_along(x), adj = NULL,
     pos = NULL, offset = 0.5, vfont = NULL,
     cex = 1, col = NULL, font = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	numeric vectors of coordinates where the text `labels` should be written. If the length of `x` and `y` differs, the shorter one is recycled.
`labels`	a character vector or expression specifying the *text* to be written. An attempt is made to coerce other language objects (names and calls) to expressions, and vectors and other classed objects to character vectors by `as.character`. If `labels` is longer than `x` and `y`, the coordinates are recycled to the length of `labels`.
`adj`	one or two values in $[0, 1]$ which specify the `x` (and optionally `y`) adjustment of the labels. On most devices values outside that interval will also work.
`pos`	a position specifier for the text. If specified this overrides any `adj` value given. Values of `1`, `2`, `3` and `4`, respectively indicate positions below, to the left of, above and to the right of the specified coordinates.
`offset`	when `pos` is specified, this value gives the offset of the label from the specified coordinate in fractions of a character width.
`vfont`	`NULL` for the current font family, or a character vector of length 2 for Hershey vector fonts. The first element of the vector selects a typeface and the second element selects a style. Ignored if `labels` is an expression.
`cex`	numeric **c**haracter **ex**pansion factor; multiplied by `par("cex")` yields the final character size. `NULL` and `NA` are equivalent to `1.0`.
`col, font`	the color and (if `vfont = NULL`) font to be used, possibly vectors. These default to the values of the global graphical parameters in `par()`.
`...`	further graphical parameters (from `par`), such as `srt`, `family` and `xpd`.

Details

`labels` must be of type `character` or `expression` (or be coercible to such a type). In the latter case, quite a bit of mathematical notation is available such as sub- and superscripts, greek letters, fractions, etc.

`adj` allows *adj*ustment of the text with respect to `(x, y)`. Values of 0, 0.5, and 1 specify left/bottom, middle and right/top alignment, respectively. The default is for centered text, i.e., `adj = c(0.5, NA)`. Accurate vertical centering needs character metric information on individual characters which is only available on some devices. Vertical alignment is done slightly differently for character strings and for expressions: `adj = c(0,0)` means to left-justify and to align on the baseline for strings but on the bottom of the bounding box for expressions. This also affects vertical centering: for strings the centering excludes any descenders whereas for expressions it includes them. Using `NA` for strings centers them, including descenders.

The `pos` and `offset` arguments can be used in conjunction with values returned by `identify` to recreate an interactively labelled plot.

Text can be rotated by using graphical parameters `srt` (see `par`); this rotates about the centre set by `adj`.

Graphical parameters `col`, `cex` and `font` can be vectors and will then be applied cyclically to the `labels` (and extra values will be ignored). `NA` values of `font` are replaced by `par("font")`, and similarly for `col`.

Labels whose `x`, `y` or `labels` value is `NA` are omitted from the plot.

What happens when `font = 5` (the symbol font) is selected can be both device- and locale-dependent. Most often `labels` will be interpreted in the Adobe symbol encoding, so e.g. `"d"` is delta, and `"\300"` is aleph.

Euro symbol

The Euro symbol was introduced relatively recently and may not be available in older fonts. In recent versions of Adobe symbol fonts it is character 160, so `text(x, y, "\xA0", font = 5)` may work. People using Western European locales on Unix-alikes can probably select ISO-8895-15 (Latin-9) which has the Euro as character 165: this can also be used for `postscript` and `pdf`. It is '`\u20ac`' in Unicode, which can be used in UTF-8 locales.

The Euro should be rendered correctly by `X11` in UTF-8 locales, but the corresponding single-byte encoding in `postscript` and `pdf` will need to be selected as `ISOLatin9.enc`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`text.formula` for the formula method; `mtext`, `title`, `Hershey` for details on Hershey vector fonts, `plotmath` for details and more examples on mathematical annotation.

Examples

```
plot(-1:1, -1:1, type = "n", xlab = "Re", ylab = "Im")
K <- 16; text(exp(1i * 2 * pi * (1:K) / K), col = 2)

## The following two examples use latin1 characters: these may not
## appear correctly (or be omitted entirely).
plot(1:10, 1:10, main = "text(...) examples\n~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~",
     sub = "R is GNU ©, but not ® ...")
mtext("«Latin-1 accented chars»: éè øØ å<Å æ<Æ", side = 3)
points(c(6,2), c(2,1), pch = 3, cex = 4, col = "red")
text(6, 2, "the text is CENTERED around (x,y) = (6,2) by default",
     cex = .8)
text(2, 1, "or Left/Bottom - JUSTIFIED at (2,1) by adj = c(0,0)",
     adj = c(0,0))
text(4, 9, expression(hat(beta) == (X^t * X)^{-1} * X^t * y))
text(4, 8.4, "expression(hat(beta) == (X^t * X)^{-1} * X^t * y)",
     cex = .75)
text(4, 7, expression(bar(x) == sum(frac(x[i], n), i==1, n)))

## Two more latin1 examples
text(5, 10.2,
     "Le français, cest façile: Règles, Liberté, Egalité, Fraternité...")
text(5, 9.8,
     "Jetz no chli züritüütsch: (noch ein bißchen Zürcher deutsch)")
```

`title` *Plot Annotation*

Description

This function can be used to add labels to a plot. Its first four principal arguments can also be used as arguments in most high-level plotting functions. They must be of type `character` or `expression`. In the latter case, quite a bit of mathematical notation is available such as sub- and superscripts, greek letters, fractions, etc: see plotmath

Usage

```
title(main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
      line = NA, outer = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`main`	The main title (on top) using font and size (character expansion) `par("font.main")` and color `par("col.main")`.
`sub`	Sub-title (at bottom) using font and size `par("font.sub")` and color `par("col.sub")`.
`xlab`	X axis label using font and character expansion `par("font.lab")` and color `par("col.lab")`.
`ylab`	Y axis label, same font attributes as `xlab`.
`line`	specifying a value for `line` overrides the default placement of labels, and places them this many lines outwards from the plot edge.
`outer`	a logical value. If `TRUE`, the titles are placed in the outer margins of the plot.
`...`	further graphical parameters from `par`. Use e.g., `col.main` or `cex.sub` instead of just `col` or `cex`. `adj` controls the justification of the titles. `xpd` can be used to set the clipping region: this defaults to the figure region unless `outer = TRUE`, otherwise the device region and can only be increased. `mgp` controls the default placing of the axis titles.

Details

The labels passed to `title` can be character strings or language objects (names, calls or expressions), or a list containing the string to be plotted, and a selection of the optional modifying graphical parameters `cex=`, `col=` and `font=`. Other objects will be coerced by `as.graphicsAnnot`.

The position of `main` defaults to being vertically centered in (outer) margin 3 and justified horizontally according to `par("adj")` on the plot region (device region for `outer = TRUE`).

The positions of `xlab`, `ylab` and `sub` are `line` (default for `xlab` and `ylab` being `par("mgp")[1]` and increased by 1 for `sub`) lines (of height `par("mex")`) into the appropriate margin, justified in the text direction according to `par("adj")` on the plot/device region.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`mtext`, `text`; `plotmath` for details on mathematical annotation.

Examples

```
plot(cars, main = "") # here, could use main directly
title(main = "Stopping Distance versus Speed")

plot(cars, main = "")
title(main = list("Stopping Distance versus Speed", cex = 1.5,
                  col = "red", font = 3))

## Specifying "..." :
plot(1, col.axis = "sky blue", col.lab = "thistle")
title("Main Title", sub = "sub title",
      cex.main = 2,   font.main= 4, col.main= "blue",
      cex.sub = 0.75, font.sub = 3, col.sub = "red")


x <- seq(-4, 4, len = 101)
y <- cbind(sin(x), cos(x))
matplot(x, y, type = "l", xaxt = "n",
        main = expression(paste(plain(sin) * phi, "  and  ",
                                plain(cos) * phi)),
        ylab = expression("sin" * phi, "cos" * phi), # only 1st is taken
        xlab = expression(paste("Phase Angle ", phi)),
        col.main = "blue")
axis(1, at = c(-pi, -pi/2, 0, pi/2, pi),
     labels = expression(-pi, -pi/2, 0, pi/2, pi))
abline(h = 0, v = pi/2 * c(-1,1), lty = 2, lwd = .1, col = "gray70")
```

`units` *Graphical Units*

Description

`xinch` and `yinch` convert the specified number of inches given as their arguments into the correct units for plotting with graphics functions. Usually, this only makes sense when normal coordinates are used, i.e., *no* `log` scale (see the `log` argument to `par`).

`xyinch` does the same for a pair of numbers `xy`, simultaneously.

Usage

```
xinch(x = 1, warn.log = TRUE)
yinch(y = 1, warn.log = TRUE)
xyinch(xy = 1, warn.log = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	numeric vector
`xy`	numeric of length 1 or 2.
`warn.log`	logical; if `TRUE`, a warning is printed in case of active log scale.

Examples

```
all(c(xinch(), yinch()) == xyinch()) # TRUE
xyinch()
xyinch #- to see that is really   delta{"usr"} / "pin"

## plot labels offset 0.12 inches to the right
## of plotted symbols in a plot
with(mtcars, {
    plot(mpg, disp, pch = 19, main = "Motor Trend Cars")
    text(mpg + xinch(0.12), disp, row.names(mtcars),
         adj = 0, cex = .7, col = "blue")
    })
```

---

xspline *Draw an X-spline*

Description

Draw an X-spline, a curve drawn relative to control points.

Usage

```
xspline(x, y = NULL, shape = 0, open = TRUE, repEnds = TRUE,
        draw = TRUE, border = par("fg"), col = NA, ...)
```

Arguments

x,y	vectors containing the coordinates of the vertices of the polygon. See xy.coords for alternatives.
shape	A numeric vector of values between -1 and 1, which control the shape of the spline relative to the control points.
open	A logical value indicating whether the spline is an open or a closed shape.
repEnds	For open X-splines, a logical value indicating whether the first and last control points should be replicated for drawing the curve. Ignored for closed X-splines.
draw	logical: should the X-spline be drawn? If false, a set of line segments to draw the curve is returned, and nothing is drawn.
border	the color to draw the curve. Use border = NA to omit borders.
col	the color for filling the shape. The default, NA, is to leave unfilled.
...	graphical parameters such as lty, xpd, lend, ljoin and lmitre can be given as arguments.

Details

An X-spline is a line drawn relative to control points. For each control point, the line may pass through (interpolate) the control point or it may only approach (approximate) the control point; the behaviour is determined by a shape parameter for each control point.

If the shape parameter is greater than zero, the spline approximates the control points (and is very similar to a cubic B-spline when the shape is 1). If the shape parameter is less than zero, the spline

interpolates the control points (and is very similar to a Catmull-Rom spline when the shape is -1). If the shape parameter is 0, the spline forms a sharp corner at that control point.

For open X-splines, the start and end control points must have a shape of 0 (and non-zero values are silently converted to zero).

For open X-splines, by default the start and end control points are replicated before the curve is drawn. A curve is drawn between (interpolating or approximating) the second and third of each set of four control points, so this default behaviour ensures that the resulting curve starts at the first control point you have specified and ends at the last control point. The default behaviour can be turned off via the `repEnds` argument.

Value

If `draw = TRUE`, `NULL` otherwise a list with elements `x` and `y` which could be passed to `lines`, `polygon` and so on.

Invisible in both cases.

Note

Two-dimensional splines need to be created in an isotropic coordinate system. Device coordinates are used (with an anisotropy correction if needed.)

References

Blanc, C. and Schlick, C. (1995), *X-splines : A Spline Model Designed for the End User*, in *Proceedings of SIGGRAPH 95*, pp. 377–386. http://dept-info.labri.fr/~schlick/DOC/sig1.html

See Also

`polygon`.

`par` for how to specify colors.

Examples

```
## based on examples in ?grid.xspline

xsplineTest <- function(s, open = TRUE,
                        x = c(1,1,3,3)/4,
                        y = c(1,3,3,1)/4, ...) {
    plot(c(0,1), c(0,1), type = "n", axes = FALSE, xlab = "", ylab = "")
    points(x, y, pch = 19)
    xspline(x, y, s, open, ...)
    text(x+0.05*c(-1,-1,1,1), y+0.05*c(-1,1,1,-1), s)
}
op <- par(mfrow = c(3,3), mar = rep(0,4), oma = c(0,0,2,0))
xsplineTest(c(0, -1, -1, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0, -1,  0, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0, -1,  1, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0,  0, -1, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0,  0,  0, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0,  0,  1, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0,  1, -1, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0,  1,  0, 0))
xsplineTest(c(0,  1,  1, 0))
title("Open X-splines", outer = TRUE)
```

```
par(mfrow = c(3,3), mar = rep(0,4), oma = c(0,0,2,0))
xsplineTest(c(0, -1, -1, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0, -1,  0, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0, -1,  1, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0,  0, -1, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0,  0,  0, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0,  0,  1, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0,  1, -1, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0,  1,  0, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
xsplineTest(c(0,  1,  1, 0), FALSE, col = "grey80")
title("Closed X-splines", outer = TRUE)

par(op)

x <- sort(stats::rnorm(5))
y <- sort(stats::rnorm(5))
plot(x, y, pch = 19)
res <- xspline(x, y, 1, draw = FALSE)
lines(res)
## the end points may be very close together,
## so use last few for direction
nr <- length(res$x)
arrows(res$x[1], res$y[1], res$x[4], res$y[4], code = 1, length = 0.1)
arrows(res$x[nr-3], res$y[nr-3], res$x[nr], res$y[nr], code = 2, length = 0.1)
```

Chapter 6

The grid package

grid-package *The Grid Graphics Package*

Description

A rewrite of the graphics layout capabilities, plus some support for interaction.

Details

This package contains a graphics system which supplements S-style graphics (see the **graphics** package).

Further information is available in the following vignettes:

grid	Introduction to grid (../doc/grid.pdf)
displaylist	Display Lists in grid (../doc/displaylist.pdf)
frame	Frames and packing grobs (../doc/frame.pdf)
grobs	Working with grid grobs (../doc/grobs.pdf)
interactive	Editing grid Graphics (../doc/interactive.pdf)
locndimn	Locations versus Dimensions (../doc/locndimn.pdf)
moveline	Demonstrating move-to and line-to (../doc/moveline.pdf)
nonfinite	How grid responds to non-finite values (../doc/nonfinite.pdf)
plotexample	Writing grid Code (../doc/plotexample.pdf)
rotated	Rotated Viewports (../doc/rotated.pdf)
saveload	Persistent representations (../doc/saveload.pdf)
sharing	Modifying multiple grobs simultaneously (../doc/sharing.pdf)
viewports	Working with grid viewports (../doc/viewports.pdf)

For a complete list of functions with individual help pages, use library(help="grid").

Author(s)

Paul Murrell <paul@stat.auckland.ac.nz>

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

References

Murrell, P. (2005) *R Graphics*. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

`absolute.size` *Absolute Size of a Grob*

Description

This function converts a unit object into absolute units. Absolute units are unaffected, but non-absolute units are converted into `"null"` units.

Usage

```
absolute.size(unit)
```

Arguments

`unit`	An object of class `"unit"`.

Details

Absolute units are things like `"inches"`, `"cm"`, and `"lines"`. Non-absolute units are `"npc"` and `"native"`.

This function is designed to be used in `widthDetails` and `heightDetails` methods.

Value

An object of class `"unit"`.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`widthDetails` and `heightDetails` methods.

arrow *Describe arrows to add to a line.*

Description

Produces a description of what arrows to add to a line. The result can be passed to a function that draws a line, e.g., `grid.lines`.

Usage

```
arrow(angle = 30, length = unit(0.25, "inches"),
      ends = "last", type = "open")
```

Arguments

`angle`	The angle of the arrow head in degrees (smaller numbers produce narrower, pointier arrows). Essentially describes the width of the arrow head.
`length`	A unit specifying the length of the arrow head (from tip to base).
`ends`	One of `"last"`, `"first"`, or `"both"`, indicating which ends of the line to draw arrow heads.
`type`	One of `"open"` or `"closed"` indicating whether the arrow head should be a closed triangle.

Examples

```
arrow()
```

calcStringMetric *Calculate Metric Information for Text*

Description

This function returns the ascent, descent, and width metric information for a character or expression vector.

Usage

```
calcStringMetric(text)
```

Arguments

`text`	A character or expression vector.

Value

A list with three numeric components named ascent, descent, and width. All values are in inches.

WARNING

The metric information from this function is based on the font settings that are in effect when this function is called. It will not necessarily correspond to the metric information of any text that is drawn on the page.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

stringAscent, stringDescent, grobAscent, and grobDescent.

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
grid.segments(.01, .5, .99, .5, gp=gpar(col="grey"))
metrics <- calcStringMetric(letters)
grid.rect(x=1:26/27,
          width=unit(metrics$width, "inches"),
          height=unit(metrics$ascent, "inches"),
          just="bottom",
          gp=gpar(col="red"))
grid.rect(x=1:26/27,
          width=unit(metrics$width, "inches"),
          height=unit(metrics$descent, "inches"),
          just="top",
          gp=gpar(col="red"))
grid.text(letters, x=1:26/27, just="bottom")

test <- function(x) {
    grid.text(x, just="bottom")
    metric <- calcStringMetric(x)
    if (is.character(x)) {
        grid.rect(width=unit(metric$width, "inches"),
                  height=unit(metric$ascent, "inches"),
                  just="bottom",
                  gp=gpar(col=rgb(1,0,0,.5)))
        grid.rect(width=unit(metric$width, "inches"),
                  height=unit(metric$descent, "inches"),
                  just="top",
                  gp=gpar(col=rgb(1,0,0,.5)))
    } else {
        grid.rect(width=unit(metric$width, "inches"),
                  y=unit(.5, "npc") + unit(metric[2], "inches"),
                  height=unit(metric$ascent, "inches"),
                  just="bottom",
                  gp=gpar(col=rgb(1,0,0,.5)))
        grid.rect(width=unit(metric$width, "inches"),
                  height=unit(metric$descent, "inches"),
                  just="bottom",
                  gp=gpar(col=rgb(1,0,0,.5)))
    }
}

tests <- list("t",
```

```
              "test",
              "testy",
              "test\ntwo",
              expression(x),
              expression(y),
              expression(x + y),
              expression(a + b),
              expression(atop(x + y, 2)))

grid.newpage()
nrowcol <- n2mfrow(length(tests))
pushViewport(viewport(layout=grid.layout(nrowcol[1], nrowcol[2]),
                      gp=gpar(cex=5, lwd=.5)))
for (i in 1:length(tests)) {
    col <- (i - 1) %% nrowcol[2] + 1
    row <- (i - 1) %/% nrowcol[2] + 1
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row=row, layout.pos.col=col))
    test(tests[[i]])
    popViewport()
}
```

`dataViewport` *Create a Viewport with Scales based on Data*

Description

This is a convenience function for producing a viewport with x- and/or y-scales based on numeric values passed to the function.

Usage

```
dataViewport(xData = NULL, yData = NULL, xscale = NULL,
             yscale = NULL, extension = 0.05, ...)
```

Arguments

`xData`	A numeric vector of data.
`yData`	A numeric vector of data.
`xscale`	A numeric vector (length 2).
`yscale`	A numeric vector (length 2).
`extension`	A numeric. If length greater than 1, then first value is used to extend the xscale and second value is used to extend the yscale.
`...`	All other arguments will be passed to a call to the `viewport()` function.

Details

If `xscale` is not specified then the values in `x` are used to generate an x-scale based on the range of `x`, extended by the proportion specified in `extension`. Similarly for the y-scale.

Value

A grid viewport object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`viewport` and `plotViewport`.

`depth` *Determine the number of levels in an object.*

Description

Determine the number of levels in a viewport stack or tree, in a viewport path, or in a grob path.

Usage

```
depth(x, ...)
## S3 method for class viewport
depth(x, ...)
## S3 method for class path
depth(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	Typically a viewport or viewport stack or viewport tree or viewport list, or a viewport path, or a grob path.
`...`	Arguments used by other methods.

Details

Depths of paths are pretty straightforward because they contain no branchings. The depth of a viewport stack is the sum of the depths of the components of the stack. The depth of a viewport tree is the depth of the parent plus the depth of the children. The depth of a viewport list is the depth of the last component of the list.

Value

An integer value.

See Also

`viewport`, `vpPath`, `gPath`.

Examples

```
vp <- viewport()
depth(vp)
depth(vpStack(vp, vp))
depth(vpList(vpStack(vp, vp), vp))
depth(vpPath("vp"))
depth(vpPath("vp1", "vp2"))
```

---

drawDetails *Customising grid Drawing*

Description

These generic hook functions are called whenever a grid grob is drawn. They provide an opportunity for customising the drawing of a new class derived from grob (or gTree).

Usage

```
drawDetails(x, recording)
preDrawDetails(x)
postDrawDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x	A grid grob.
recording	A logical value indicating whether a grob is being added to the display list or redrawn from the display list.

Details

These functions are called by the `grid.draw` methods for grobs and gTrees.

`preDrawDetails` is called first during the drawing of a grob. This is where any additional viewports should be pushed (see, for example, `grid:::preDrawDetails.frame`). Note that the default behaviour for grobs is to push any viewports in the `vp` slot, and for gTrees is to also push and up any viewports in the `childrenvp` slot so there is typically nothing to do here.

`drawDetails` is called next and is where any additional calculations and graphical output should occur (see, for example, `grid:::drawDetails.xaxis`. Note that the default behaviour for gTrees is to draw all grobs in the `children` slot so there is typically nothing to do here.

`postDrawDetails` is called last and should reverse anything done in `preDrawDetails` (i.e., pop or up any viewports that were pushed; again, see, for example, `grid:::postDrawDetails.frame`). Note that the default behaviour for grobs is to pop any viewports that were pushed so there is typically nothing to do here.

Note that `preDrawDetails` and `postDrawDetails` are also called in the calculation of `"grobwidth"` and `"grobheight"` units.

Value

None of these functions are expected to return a value.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.draw

`editDetails` *Customising grid Editing*

Description

This generic hook function is called whenever a grid grob is edited via `grid.edit` or `editGrob`. This provides an opportunity for customising the editing of a new class derived from grob (or gTree).

Usage

```
editDetails(x, specs)
```

Arguments

`x`	A grid grob.
`specs`	A list of named elements. The names indicate the grob slots to modify and the values are the new values for the slots.

Details

This function is called by `grid.edit` and `editGrob`. A method should be written for classes derived from grob or gTree if a change in a slot has an effect on other slots in the grob or children of a gTree (e.g., see `grid:::editDetails.xaxis`).

Note that the slot already has the new value.

Value

The function MUST return the modified grob.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.edit

explode *Explode a path into its components.*

Description

Explode a viewport path or grob path into its components.

Usage

```
explode(x)
## S3 method for class character
explode(x)
## S3 method for class path
explode(x)
```

Arguments

x	Typically a viewport path or a grob path, but a character vector containing zero or more path separators may also be given.

Value

A character vector.

See Also

vpPath, gPath.

Examples

```
explode("vp1::vp2")
explode(vpPath("vp1", "vp2"))
```

gEdit *Create and Apply Edit Objects*

Description

The functions gEdit and gEditList create objects representing an edit operation (essentially a list of arguments to editGrob).

The functions applyEdit and applyEdits apply one or more edit operations to a graphical object.

These functions are most useful for developers creating new graphical functions and objects.

Usage

```
gEdit(...)
gEditList(...)
applyEdit(x, edit)
applyEdits(x, edits)
```

Arguments

...	one or more arguments to the editGrob function (for gEdit) or one or more "gEdit" objects (for gEditList).
x	a grob (grid graphical object).
edit	a "gEdit" object.
edits	either a "gEdit" object or a "gEditList" object.

Value

gEdit returns an object of class "gEdit".

gEditList returns an object of class "gEditList".

applyEdit and applyEditList return the modified grob.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grob editGrob

Examples

```
grid.rect(gp=gpar(col="red"))
# same thing, but more verbose
grid.draw(applyEdit(rectGrob(), gEdit(gp=gpar(col="red"))))
```

---

getNames *List the names of grobs on the display list*

Description

Returns a character vector containing the names of all top-level grobs on the display list.

Usage

```
getNames()
```

Value

A character vector.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

Examples

```
grid.grill()
getNames()
```

gpar *Handling Grid Graphical Parameters*

Description

`gpar()` should be used to create a set of graphical parameter settings. It returns an object of class `"gpar"`. This is basically a list of name-value pairs.

`get.gpar()` can be used to query the current graphical parameter settings.

Usage

```
gpar(...)
get.gpar(names = NULL)
```

Arguments

`...`	Any number of named arguments.
`names`	A character vector of valid graphical parameter names.

Details

All grid viewports and (predefined) graphical objects have a slot called gp, which contains a `"gpar"` object. When a viewport is pushed onto the viewport stack and when a graphical object is drawn, the settings in the `"gpar"` object are enforced. In this way, the graphical output is modified by the gp settings until the graphical object has finished drawing, or until the viewport is popped off the viewport stack, or until some other viewport or graphical object is pushed or begins drawing.

The default parameter settings are defined by the ROOT viewport, which takes its settings from the graphics device. These defaults may differ between devices (e.g., the default `fill` setting is different for a PNG device compared to a PDF device).

Valid parameter names are:

col	Colour for lines and borders.
fill	Colour for filling rectangles, polygons, ...
alpha	Alpha channel for transparency
lty	Line type
lwd	Line width
lex	Multiplier applied to line width
lineend	Line end style (round, butt, square)
linejoin	Line join style (round, mitre, bevel)
linemitre	Line mitre limit (number greater than 1)
fontsize	The size of text (in points)
cex	Multiplier applied to fontsize
fontfamily	The font family
fontface	The font face (bold, italic, ...)
lineheight	The height of a line as a multiple of the size of text
font	Font face (alias for fontface; for backward compatibility)

For more details of many of these, see the help for the corresponding graphical parameter `par` in base graphics. (This may have a slightly different name, e.g. `lend`, `ljoin`, `lmitre`, `family`.)

Colours can be specified in one of the forms returned by rgb, as a name (see colors) or as a non-negative integer index into the current palette (with zero being taken as transparent). (Prior to 3.0.0 negative integer values were allowed and taken as transparent: they are now an error.)

The alpha setting is combined with the alpha channel for individual colours by multiplying (with both alpha settings normalised to the range 0 to 1).

The size of text is fontsize*cex. The size of a line is fontsize*cex*lineheight.

The cex setting is cumulative; if a viewport is pushed with a cex of 0.5 then another viewport is pushed with a cex of 0.5, the effective cex is 0.25.

The alpha and lex settings are also cumulative.

Changes to the fontfamily may be ignored by some devices, but is supported by PostScript, PDF, X11, Windows, and Quartz. The fontfamily may be used to specify one of the Hershey Font families (e.g., HersheySerif) and this specification will be honoured on all devices.

The specification of fontface can be an integer or a string. If an integer, then it follows the R base graphics standard: 1 = plain, 2 = bold, 3 = italic, 4 = bold italic. If a string, then valid values are: "plain", "bold", "italic", "oblique", and "bold.italic". For the special case of the HersheySerif font family, "cyrillic", "cyrillic.oblique", and "EUC" are also available.

All parameter values can be vectors of multiple values. (This will not always make sense – for example, viewports will only take notice of the first parameter value.)

The gamma parameter is defunct since 2.7.0.

get.gpar() returns all current graphical parameter settings.

Value

An object of class "gpar".

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Hershey.

Examples

```
gp <- get.gpar()
utils::str(gp)
## These *do* nothing but produce a "gpar" object:
gpar(col = "red")
gpar(col = "blue", lty = "solid", lwd = 3, fontsize = 16)
get.gpar(c("col", "lty"))
grid.newpage()
vp <- viewport(w = .8, h = .8, gp = gpar(col="blue"))
grid.draw(gTree(children=gList(rectGrob(gp = gpar(col="red")),
                      textGrob(paste("The rect is its own colour (red)",
                                     "but this text is the colour",
                                     "set by the gTree (green)",
                                     sep = "\n"))),
      gp = gpar(col="green"), vp = vp))
grid.text("This text is the colour set by the viewport (blue)",
          y = 1, just = c("center", "bottom"),
          gp = gpar(fontsize=20), vp = vp)
```

```
grid.newpage()
## example with multiple values for a parameter
pushViewport(viewport())
grid.points(1:10/11, 1:10/11, gp = gpar(col=1:10))
popViewport()
```

---

gPath *Concatenate Grob Names*

Description

This function can be used to generate a grob path for use in `grid.edit` and friends.

A grob path is a list of nested grob names.

Usage

```
gPath(...)
```

Arguments

...	Character values which are grob names.

Details

Grob names must only be unique amongst grobs which share the same parent in a gTree.

This function can be used to generate a specification for a grob that includes the grob's parent's name (and the name of its parent and so on).

For interactive use, it is possible to directly specify a path, but it is strongly recommended that this function is used otherwise in case the path separator is changed in future versions of grid.

Value

A `gPath` object.

See Also

`grob`, `editGrob`, `addGrob`, `removeGrob`, `getGrob`, `setGrob`

Examples

```
gPath("g1", "g2")
```

Grid *Grid Graphics*

Description

General information about the grid graphics package.

Details

Grid graphics provides an alternative to the standard R graphics. The user is able to define arbitrary rectangular regions (called *viewports*) on the graphics device and define a number of coordinate systems for each region. Drawing can be specified to occur in any viewport using any of the available coordinate systems.

Grid graphics and standard R graphics do not mix!

Type `library(help = grid)` to see a list of (public) Grid graphics functions.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`viewport`, `grid.layout`, and `unit`.

Examples

```
## Diagram of a simple layout
grid.show.layout(grid.layout(4,2,
                     heights=unit(rep(1, 4),
                                  c("lines", "lines", "lines", "null")),
                     widths=unit(c(1, 1), "inches")))
## Diagram of a sample viewport
grid.show.viewport(viewport(x=0.6, y=0.6,
                            w=unit(1, "inches"), h=unit(1, "inches")))
## A flash plotting example
grid.multipanel(vp=viewport(0.5, 0.5, 0.8, 0.8))
```

Grid Viewports *Create a Grid Viewport*

Description

These functions create viewports, which describe rectangular regions on a graphics device and define a number of coordinate systems within those regions.

Usage

```
viewport(x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
         width = unit(1, "npc"), height = unit(1, "npc"),
         default.units = "npc", just = "centre",
         gp = gpar(), clip = "inherit",
         xscale = c(0, 1), yscale = c(0, 1),
         angle = 0,
         layout = NULL,
         layout.pos.row = NULL, layout.pos.col = NULL,
         name = NULL)
vpList(...)
vpStack(...)
vpTree(parent, children)
```

Arguments

`x`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-location.
`y`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-location.
`width`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying width.
`height`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying height.
`default.units`	A string indicating the default units to use if `x`, `y`, `width`, or `height` are only given as numeric vectors.
`just`	A string or numeric vector specifying the justification of the viewport relative to its (x, y) location. If there are two values, the first value specifies horizontal justification and the second value specifies vertical justification. Possible string values are: `"left"`, `"right"`, `"centre"`, `"center"`, `"bottom"`, and `"top"`. For numeric values, 0 means left alignment and 1 means right alignment.
`gp`	An object of class `gpar`, typically the output from a call to the function `gpar`. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
`clip`	One of `"on"`, `"inherit"`, or `"off"`, indicating whether to clip to the extent of this viewport, inherit the clipping region from the parent viewport, or turn clipping off altogether. For back-compatibility, a logical value of `TRUE` corresponds to `"on"` and `FALSE` corresponds to `"inherit"`.
`xscale`	A numeric vector of length two indicating the minimum and maximum on the x-scale. The limits may not be identical.
`yscale`	A numeric vector of length two indicating the minimum and maximum on the y-scale. The limits may not be identical.
`angle`	A numeric value indicating the angle of rotation of the viewport. Positive values indicate the amount of rotation, in degrees, anticlockwise from the positive x-axis.
`layout`	A Grid layout object which splits the viewport into subregions.
`layout.pos.row`	A numeric vector giving the rows occupied by this viewport in its parent's layout.
`layout.pos.col`	A numeric vector giving the columns occupied by this viewport in its parent's layout.
`name`	A character value to uniquely identify the viewport once it has been pushed onto the viewport tree.
`...`	Any number of grid viewport objects.

parent	A grid viewport object.
children	A vpList object.

Details

The location and size of a viewport are relative to the coordinate systems defined by the viewport's parent (either a graphical device or another viewport). The location and size can be specified in a very flexible way by specifying them with unit objects. When specifying the location of a viewport, specifying both layout.pos.row and layout.pos.col as NULL indicates that the viewport ignores its parent's layout and specifies its own location and size (via its locn). If only one of layout.pos.row and layout.pos.col is NULL, this means occupy ALL of the appropriate row(s)/column(s). For example, layout.pos.row = 1 and layout.pos.col = NULL means occupy all of row 1. Specifying non-NULL values for both layout.pos.row and layout.pos.col means occupy the intersection of the appropriate rows and columns. If a vector of length two is specified for layout.pos.row or layout.pos.col, this indicates a range of rows or columns to occupy. For example, layout.pos.row = c(1, 3) and layout.pos.col = c(2, 4) means occupy cells in the intersection of rows 1, 2, and 3, and columns, 2, 3, and 4.

Clipping obeys only the most recent viewport clip setting. For example, if you clip to viewport1, then clip to viewport2, the clipping region is determined wholly by viewport2, the size and shape of viewport1 is irrelevant (until viewport2 is popped of course).

If a viewport is rotated (because of its own angle setting or because it is within another viewport which is rotated) then the clip flag is ignored.

Viewport names need not be unique. When pushed, viewports sharing the same parent must have unique names, which means that if you push a viewport with the same name as an existing viewport, the existing viewport will be replaced in the viewport tree. A viewport name can be any string, but grid uses the reserved name "ROOT" for the top-level viewport. Also, when specifying a viewport name in downViewport and seekViewport, it is possible to provide a viewport path, which consists of several names concatenated using the separator (currently ::). Consequently, it is not advisable to use this separator in viewport names.

The viewports in a vpList are pushed in parallel. The viewports in a vpStack are pushed in series. When a vpTree is pushed, the parent is pushed first, then the children are pushed in parallel.

Value

An R object of class viewport.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, pushViewport, popViewport, downViewport, seekViewport, upViewport, unit, grid.layout, grid.show.layout.

Examples

```
# Diagram of a sample viewport
grid.show.viewport(viewport(x=0.6, y=0.6,
                   w=unit(1, "inches"), h=unit(1, "inches")))
# Demonstrate viewport clipping
clip.demo <- function(i, j, clip1, clip2) {
```

```
  pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.col=i,
                        layout.pos.row=j))
  pushViewport(viewport(width=0.6, height=0.6, clip=clip1))
  grid.rect(gp=gpar(fill="white"))
  grid.circle(r=0.55, gp=gpar(col="red", fill="pink"))
  popViewport()
  pushViewport(viewport(width=0.6, height=0.6, clip=clip2))
  grid.polygon(x=c(0.5, 1.1, 0.6, 1.1, 0.5, -0.1, 0.4, -0.1),
               y=c(0.6, 1.1, 0.5, -0.1, 0.4, -0.1, 0.5, 1.1),
               gp=gpar(col="blue", fill="light blue"))
  popViewport(2)
}

grid.newpage()
grid.rect(gp=gpar(fill="grey"))
pushViewport(viewport(layout=grid.layout(2, 2)))
clip.demo(1, 1, FALSE, FALSE)
clip.demo(1, 2, TRUE, FALSE)
clip.demo(2, 1, FALSE, TRUE)
clip.demo(2, 2, TRUE, TRUE)
popViewport()
# Demonstrate turning clipping off
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(w=.5, h=.5, clip="on"))
grid.rect()
grid.circle(r=.6, gp=gpar(lwd=10))
pushViewport(viewport(clip="inherit"))
grid.circle(r=.6, gp=gpar(lwd=5, col="grey"))
pushViewport(viewport(clip="off"))
grid.circle(r=.6)
popViewport(3)
# Demonstrate vpList, vpStack, and vpTree
grid.newpage()
tree <- vpTree(viewport(w=0.8, h=0.8, name="A"),
               vpList(vpStack(viewport(x=0.1, y=0.1, w=0.5, h=0.5,
                                       just=c("left", "bottom"), name="B"),
                              viewport(x=0.1, y=0.1, w=0.5, h=0.5,
                                       just=c("left", "bottom"), name="C"),
                              viewport(x=0.1, y=0.1, w=0.5, h=0.5,
                                       just=c("left", "bottom"), name="D")),
                      viewport(x=0.5, w=0.4, h=0.9,
                               just="left", name="E")))
pushViewport(tree)
for (i in LETTERS[1:5]) {
  seekViewport(i)
  grid.rect()
  grid.text(current.vpTree(FALSE),
            x=unit(1, "mm"), y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "mm"),
            just=c("left", "top"),
            gp=gpar(fontsize=8))
}
```

---

grid.add *Add a Grid Graphical Object*

Description

Add a grob to a gTree or a descendant of a gTree.

Usage

```
grid.add(gPath, child, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE,
         global = FALSE, allDevices = FALSE, redraw = TRUE)

addGrob(gTree, child, gPath = NULL, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE,
        global = FALSE, warn = TRUE)

setChildren(x, children)
```

Arguments

gTree, x	A gTree object.
gPath	A gPath object. For grid.add this specifies a gTree on the display list. For addGrob this specifies a descendant of the specified gTree.
child	A grob object.
children	A gList object.
strict	A boolean indicating whether the gPath must be matched exactly.
grep	A boolean indicating whether the gPath should be treated as a regular expression. Values are recycled across elements of the gPath (e.g., c(TRUE, FALSE) means that every odd element of the gPath will be treated as a regular expression).
global	A boolean indicating whether the function should affect just the first match of the gPath, or whether all matches should be affected.
warn	A logical to indicate whether failing to find the specified gPath should trigger an error.
allDevices	A boolean indicating whether all open devices should be searched for matches, or just the current device. NOT YET IMPLEMENTED.
redraw	A logical value to indicate whether to redraw the grob.

Details

addGrob copies the specified grob and returns a modified grob.

grid.add destructively modifies a grob on the display list. If redraw is TRUE it then redraws everything to reflect the change.

setChildren is a basic function for setting all children of a gTree at once (instead of repeated calls to addGrob).

Value

addGrob returns a grob object; grid.add returns NULL.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grob, getGrob, addGrob, removeGrob.

---

grid.bezier *Draw a Bezier Curve*

Description

These functions create and draw Bezier Curves (a curve drawn relative to 4 control points).

Usage

```
grid.bezier(...)
bezierGrob(x = c(0, 0.5, 1, 0.5), y = c(0.5, 1, 0.5, 0),
           id = NULL, id.lengths = NULL,
           default.units = "npc", arrow = NULL,
           name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-locations of spline control points.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-locations of spline control points.
id	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple beziers. All locations with the same id belong to the same bezier.
id.lengths	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple bezier. Specifies consecutive blocks of locations which make up separate beziers.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x or y are only given as numeric vectors.
arrow	A list describing arrow heads to place at either end of the bezier, as produced by the arrow function.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
...	Arguments to be passed to bezierGrob.

Details

Both functions create a beziergrob (a graphical object describing a Bezier curve), but only grid.bezier draws the Bezier curve.

A Bezier curve is a line drawn relative to 4 control points.

Missing values are not allowed for x and y (i.e., it is not valid for a control point to be missing).

The curve is currently drawn using an approximation based on X-splines.

Value

A grob object.

See Also

Grid, viewport, arrow.

grid.xspline.

Examples

```
x <- c(0.2, 0.2, 0.4, 0.4)
y <- c(0.2, 0.4, 0.4, 0.2)

grid.newpage()
grid.bezier(x, y)
grid.bezier(c(x, x + .4), c(y + .4, y + .4),
            id=rep(1:2, each=4))
grid.segments(.4, .6, .6, .6)
grid.bezier(x, y,
            gp=gpar(lwd=3, fill="black"),
            arrow=arrow(type="closed"),
            vp=viewport(x=.9))
```

---

grid.cap *Capture a raster image*

Description

Capture the current contents of a graphics device as a raster (bitmap) image.

Usage

```
grid.cap()
```

Details

This function is only implemented for on-screen graphics devices.

Value

A matrix of R colour names, or NULL if not available.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.raster

dev.capabilities to see if it is supported.

Examples

```
dev.new(width=0.5, height=0.5)
grid.rect()
grid.text("hi")
cap <- grid.cap()
dev.off()

if(!is.null(cap))
    grid.raster(cap, width=0.5, height=0.5, interpolate=FALSE)
```

---

grid.circle *Draw a Circle*

Description

Functions to create and draw a circle.

Usage

```
grid.circle(x=0.5, y=0.5, r=0.5, default.units="npc", name=NULL,
            gp=gpar(), draw=TRUE, vp=NULL)
circleGrob(x=0.5, y=0.5, r=0.5, default.units="npc", name=NULL,
            gp=gpar(), vp=NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-locations.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-locations.
r	A numeric vector or unit object specifying radii.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x, y, width, or height are only given as numeric vectors.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a circle grob (a graphical object describing a circle), but only grid.circle() draws the circle (and then only if draw is TRUE).

The radius may be given in any units; if the units are *relative* (e.g., "npc" or "native") then the radius will be different depending on whether it is interpreted as a width or as a height. In such cases, the smaller of these two values will be the result. To see the effect, type grid.circle() and adjust the size of the window.

What happens for very small radii is device-dependent: the circle may become invisible or be shown at a fixed minimum size. As from 2.15.0, circles of zero radius will not be plotted.

Value

A circle grob. `grid.circle()` returns the value invisibly.

Warning

Negative values for the radius are silently converted to their absolute value.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, `viewport`

`grid.clip` *Set the Clipping Region*

Description

These functions set the clipping region within the current viewport *without* altering the current coordinate system.

Usage

```
grid.clip(...)
clipGrob(x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
         width = unit(1, "npc"), height = unit(1, "npc"),
         just = "centre", hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL,
         default.units = "npc", name = NULL, vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-location.
`y`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-location.
`width`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying width.
`height`	A numeric vector or unit object specifying height.
`just`	The justification of the clip rectangle relative to its (x, y) location. If there are two values, the first value specifies horizontal justification and the second value specifies vertical justification. Possible string values are: `"left"`, `"right"`, `"centre"`, `"center"`, `"bottom"`, and `"top"`. For numeric values, 0 means left alignment and 1 means right alignment.
`hjust`	A numeric vector specifying horizontal justification. If specified, overrides the `just` setting.
`vjust`	A numeric vector specifying vertical justification. If specified, overrides the `just` setting.
`default.units`	A string indicating the default units to use if `x`, `y`, `width`, or `height` are only given as numeric vectors.
`name`	A character identifier.
`vp`	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
`...`	Arguments passed to `clipGrob`.

Details

Both functions create a clip rectangle (a graphical object describing a clip rectangle), but only `grid.clip` enforces the clipping.

Pushing or popping a viewport *always* overrides the clip region set by a clip grob, regardless of whether that viewport explicitly enforces a clipping region.

Value

`clipGrob` returns a clip grob.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, `viewport`

Examples

```
# draw across entire viewport, but clipped
grid.clip(x = 0.3, width = 0.1)
grid.lines(gp=gpar(col="green", lwd=5))
# draw across entire viewport, but clipped (in different place)
grid.clip(x = 0.7, width = 0.1)
grid.lines(gp=gpar(col="red", lwd=5))
# Viewport sets new clip region
pushViewport(viewport(width=0.5, height=0.5, clip=TRUE))
grid.lines(gp=gpar(col="grey", lwd=3))
# Return to original viewport;  get
# clip region from previous grid.clip()
# (NOT from previous viewport clip region)
popViewport()
grid.lines(gp=gpar(col="black"))
```

---

grid.convert *Convert Between Different grid Coordinate Systems*

Description

These functions take a unit object and convert it to an equivalent unit object in a different coordinate system.

Usage

```
convertX(x, unitTo, valueOnly = FALSE)
convertY(x, unitTo, valueOnly = FALSE)
convertWidth(x, unitTo, valueOnly = FALSE)
convertHeight(x, unitTo, valueOnly = FALSE)
convertUnit(x, unitTo,
            axisFrom = "x", typeFrom = "location",
            axisTo = axisFrom, typeTo = typeFrom,
            valueOnly = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	A unit object.
unitTo	The coordinate system to convert the unit to. See the unit function for valid coordinate systems.
axisFrom	Either "x" or "y" to indicate whether the unit object represents a value in the x- or y-direction.
typeFrom	Either "location" or "dimension" to indicate whether the unit object represents a location or a length.
axisTo	Same as axisFrom, but applies to the unit object that is to be created.
typeTo	Same as typeFrom, but applies to the unit object that is to be created.
valueOnly	A logical indicating. If TRUE then the function does not return a unit object, but rather only the converted numeric values.

Details

The convertUnit function allows for general-purpose conversions. The other four functions are just more convenient front-ends to it for the most common conversions.

The conversions occur within the current viewport.

It is not currently possible to convert to all valid coordinate systems (e.g., "strwidth" or "grobwidth"). I'm not sure if all of these are impossible, they just seem implausible at this stage.

In normal usage of grid, these functions should not be necessary. If you want to express a location or dimension in inches rather than user coordinates then you should simply do something like `unit(1, "inches")` rather than something like `unit(0.134, "native")`.

In some cases, however, it is necessary for the user to perform calculations on a unit value and this function becomes necessary. In such cases, please take note of the warning below.

Value

A unit object in the specified coordinate system (unless valueOnly is TRUE in which case the returned value is a numeric).

Warning

The conversion is only valid for the current device size. If the device is resized then at least some conversions will become invalid. For example, suppose that I create a unit object as follows: `oneinch <- convertUnit(unit(1, "inches"), "native")`. Now if I resize the device, the unit object in oneinch no longer corresponds to a physical length of 1 inch.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

unit

Examples

```
## A tautology
convertX(unit(1, "inches"), "inches")
## The physical units
convertX(unit(2.54, "cm"), "inches")
convertX(unit(25.4, "mm"), "inches")
convertX(unit(72.27, "points"), "inches")
convertX(unit(1/12*72.27, "picas"), "inches")
convertX(unit(72, "bigpts"), "inches")
convertX(unit(1157/1238*72.27, "dida"), "inches")
convertX(unit(1/12*1157/1238*72.27, "cicero"), "inches")
convertX(unit(65536*72.27, "scaledpts"), "inches")
convertX(unit(1/2.54, "inches"), "cm")
convertX(unit(1/25.4, "inches"), "mm")
convertX(unit(1/72.27, "inches"), "points")
convertX(unit(1/(1/12*72.27), "inches"), "picas")
convertX(unit(1/72, "inches"), "bigpts")
convertX(unit(1/(1157/1238*72.27), "inches"), "dida")
convertX(unit(1/(1/12*1157/1238*72.27), "inches"), "cicero")
convertX(unit(1/(65536*72.27), "inches"), "scaledpts")

pushViewport(viewport(width=unit(1, "inches"),
                      height=unit(2, "inches"),
                      xscale=c(0, 1),
                      yscale=c(1, 3)))
  ## Location versus dimension
  convertY(unit(2, "native"), "inches")
  convertHeight(unit(2, "native"), "inches")
  ## From "x" to "y" (the conversion is via "inches")
  convertUnit(unit(1, "native"), "native",
              axisFrom="x", axisTo="y")
  ## Convert several values at once
  convertX(unit(c(0.5, 2.54), c("npc", "cm")),
               c("inches", "native"))
popViewport()
## Convert a complex unit
convertX(unit(1, "strwidth", "Hello"), "native")
```

`grid.copy` *Make a Copy of a Grid Graphical Object*

Description

This function is redundant and will disappear in future versions.

Usage

```
grid.copy(grob)
```

Arguments

`grob`	A grob object.

Value

A copy of the grob object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.grob.

---

grid.curve *Draw a Curve Between Locations*

Description

These functions create and draw a curve from one location to another.

Usage

```
grid.curve(...)
curveGrob(x1, y1, x2, y2, default.units = "npc",
          curvature = 1, angle = 90, ncp = 1, shape = 0.5,
          square = TRUE, squareShape = 1,
          inflect = FALSE, arrow = NULL, open = TRUE,
          debug = FALSE,
          name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
arcCurvature(theta)
```

Arguments

x1	A numeric vector or unit object specifying the x-location of the start point.
y1	A numeric vector or unit object specifying the y-location of the start point.
x2	A numeric vector or unit object specifying the x-location of the end point.
y2	A numeric vector or unit object specifying the y-location of the end point.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x1, y1, x2 or y2 are only given as numeric values.
curvature	A numeric value giving the amount of curvature. Negative values produce left-hand curves, positive values produce right-hand curves, and zero produces a straight line.
angle	A numeric value between 0 and 180, giving an amount to skew the control points of the curve. Values less than 90 skew the curve towards the start point and values greater than 90 skew the curve towards the end point.
ncp	The number of control points used to draw the curve. More control points creates a smoother curve.
shape	A numeric vector of values between -1 and 1, which control the shape of the curve relative to its control points. See grid.xspline for more details.

square	A logical value that controls whether control points for the curve are created city-block fashion or obliquely. When ncp is 1 and angle is 90, this is typically TRUE, otherwise this should probably be set to FALSE (see Examples below).
squareShape	A shape value to control the behaviour of the curve relative to any additional control point that is inserted if square is TRUE.
inflect	A logical value specifying whether the curve should be cut in half and inverted (see Examples below).
arrow	A list describing arrow heads to place at either end of the curve, as produced by the arrow function.
open	A logical value indicating whether to close the curve (connect the start and end points).
debug	A logical value indicating whether debugging information should be drawn.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
...	Arguments to be passed to curveGrob.
theta	An angle (in degrees).

Details

Both functions create a curve grob (a graphical object describing an curve), but only grid.curve draws the curve.

The arcCurvature function can be used to calculate a curvature such that control points are generated on an arc corresponding to angle theta. This is typically used in conjunction with a large ncp to produce a curve corresponding to the desired arc.

Value

A grob object.

See Also

Grid, viewport, grid.xspline, arrow

Examples

```
curveTest <- function(i, j, ...) {
  pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.col=j, layout.pos.row=i))
  do.call("grid.curve", c(list(x1=.25, y1=.25, x2=.75, y2=.75), list(...)))
  grid.text(sub("list\\((.*)\\)", "\\1",
                deparse(substitute(list(...)))),
            y=unit(1, "npc"))
  popViewport()
}
# grid.newpage()
pushViewport(plotViewport(c(0, 0, 1, 0),
                          layout=grid.layout(2, 1, heights=c(2, 1))))
pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row=1,
                      layout=grid.layout(3, 3, respect=TRUE)))
curveTest(1, 1)
```

```
curveTest(1, 2, inflect=TRUE)
curveTest(1, 3, angle=135)
curveTest(2, 1, arrow=arrow())
curveTest(2, 2, ncp=8)
curveTest(2, 3, shape=0)
curveTest(3, 1, curvature=-1)
curveTest(3, 2, square=FALSE)
curveTest(3, 3, debug=TRUE)
popViewport()
pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row=2,
                      layout=grid.layout(3, 3)))
curveTest(1, 1)
curveTest(1, 2, inflect=TRUE)
curveTest(1, 3, angle=135)
curveTest(2, 1, arrow=arrow())
curveTest(2, 2, ncp=8)
curveTest(2, 3, shape=0)
curveTest(3, 1, curvature=-1)
curveTest(3, 2, square=FALSE)
curveTest(3, 3, debug=TRUE)
popViewport(2)
```

`grid.delay` *Encapsulate calculations and generating a grob*

Description

Evaluates an expression that includes both calculations and generating a grob that depends on the calculations so that both the calculations and the grob generation will be rerun when the scene is redrawn (e.g., device resize or editing).

Intended *only* for expert use.

Usage

```
delayGrob(expr, list, name=NULL, gp=NULL, vp=NULL)
grid.delay(expr, list, name=NULL, gp=NULL, vp=NULL)
```

Arguments

`expr`	object of mode `expression` or `call` or an unevaluated expression.
`list`	a list defining the environment in which `expr` is to be evaluated.
`name`	A character identifier.
`gp`	An object of class `gpar`, typically the output from a call to the function `gpar`. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
`vp`	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

A grob is created of special class "delayedgrob" (and drawn, in the case of grid.delay). The makeContent method for this class evaluates the expression with the list as the evaluation environment (and the grid Namespace as the parent of that environment).

The expr argument should return a grob as its result.

These functions are analogues of the grid.record() and recordGrob() functions; the difference is that these functions are based on the makeContent() hook, while those functions are based on the drawDetails() hook.

Note

This function *must* be used instead of the function recordGraphics; all of the dire warnings about using recordGraphics responsibly also apply here.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

recordGraphics

Examples

```
grid.delay({
              w <- convertWidth(unit(1, "inches"), "npc")
              rectGrob(width=w)
            },
            list())
```

---

grid.display.list *Control the Grid Display List*

Description

Turn the Grid display list on or off.

Usage

```
grid.display.list(on=TRUE)
engine.display.list(on=TRUE)
```

Arguments

on	A logical value to indicate whether the display list should be on or off.

Details

All drawing and viewport-setting operations are (by default) recorded in the Grid display list. This allows redrawing to occur following an editing operation.

This display list could get very large so it may be useful to turn it off in some cases; this will of course disable redrawing.

All graphics output is also recorded on the main display list of the R graphics engine (by default). This supports redrawing following a device resize and allows copying between devices.

Turning off this display list means that grid will redraw from its own display list for device resizes and copies. This will be slower than using the graphics engine display list.

Value

None.

WARNING

Turning the display list on causes the display list to be erased!

Turning off both the grid display list and the graphics engine display list will result in no redrawing whatsoever.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

---

grid.DLapply *Modify the Grid Display List*

Description

Call a function on each element of the current display list.

Usage

```
grid.DLapply(FUN, ...)
```

Arguments

FUN	A function; the first argument to this function is passed each element of the display list.
...	Further arguments to pass to FUN .

Details

This function is insanely dangerous (for the grid display list).

Two token efforts are made to try to avoid ending up with complete garbage on the display list:

1. The display list is only replaced once all new elements have been generated (so an error during generation does not result in a half-finished display list).
2. All new elements must be either NULL or inherit from the class of the element that they are replacing.

Value

The side effect of these functions is usually to modify the grid display list.

See Also

Grid.

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
grid.rect(width=.4, height=.4, x=.25, y=.75, gp=gpar(fill="black"), name="r1")
grid.rect(width=.4, height=.4, x=.5, y=.5, gp=gpar(fill="grey"), name="r2")
grid.rect(width=.4, height=.4, x=.75, y=.25, gp=gpar(fill="white"), name="r3")
grid.DLapply(function(x) { if (is.grob(x)) x$gp <- gpar(); x })
grid.refresh()
```

---

grid.draw *Draw a grid grob*

Description

Produces graphical output from a graphical object.

Usage

```
grid.draw(x, recording=TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	An object of class "grob" or NULL.
recording	A logical value to indicate whether the drawing operation should be recorded on the Grid display list.

Details

This is a generic function with methods for grob and gTree objects.

The grob and gTree methods automatically push any viewports in a vp slot and automatically apply any gpar settings in a gp slot. In addition, the gTree method pushes and ups any viewports in a childrenvp slot and automatically calls grid.draw for any grobs in a children slot.

The methods for grob and gTree call the generic hook functions preDrawDetails, drawDetails, and postDrawDetails to allow classes derived from grob or gTree to perform additional viewport pushing/popping and produce additional output beyond the default behaviour for grobs and gTrees.

Value

None.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grob.

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
## Create a graphical object, but dont draw it
l <- linesGrob()
## Draw it
grid.draw(l)
```

`grid.edit` *Edit the Description of a Grid Graphical Object*

Description

Changes the value of one of the slots of a grob and redraws the grob.

Usage

```
grid.edit(gPath, ..., strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE,
          global = FALSE, allDevices = FALSE, redraw = TRUE)

grid.gedit(..., grep = TRUE, global = TRUE)

editGrob(grob, gPath = NULL, ..., strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE,
         global = FALSE, warn = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`grob`	A grob object.
`...`	Zero or more named arguments specifying new slot values.
`gPath`	A gPath object. For `grid.edit` this specifies a grob on the display list. For `editGrob` this specifies a descendant of the specified grob.
`strict`	A boolean indicating whether the gPath must be matched exactly.
`grep`	A boolean indicating whether the `gPath` should be treated as a regular expression. Values are recycled across elements of the `gPath` (e.g., `c(TRUE, FALSE)` means that every odd element of the `gPath` will be treated as a regular expression).
`global`	A boolean indicating whether the function should affect just the first match of the `gPath`, or whether all matches should be affected.
`warn`	A logical to indicate whether failing to find the specified gPath should trigger an error.
`allDevices`	A boolean indicating whether all open devices should be searched for matches, or just the current device. NOT YET IMPLEMENTED.
`redraw`	A logical value to indicate whether to redraw the grob.

Details

editGrob copies the specified grob and returns a modified grob.

grid.edit destructively modifies a grob on the display list. If redraw is TRUE it then redraws everything to reflect the change.

Both functions call editDetails to allow a grob to perform custom actions and validDetails to check that the modified grob is still coherent.

grid.gedit (g for global) is just a convenience wrapper for grid.edit with different defaults.

Value

editGrob returns a grob object; grid.edit returns NULL.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grob, getGrob, addGrob, removeGrob.

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
grid.xaxis(name = "xa", vp = viewport(width=.5, height=.5))
grid.edit("xa", gp = gpar(col="red"))
# wont work because no ticks (at is NULL)
try(grid.edit(gPath("xa", "ticks"), gp = gpar(col="green")))
grid.edit("xa", at = 1:4/5)
# Now it should work
try(grid.edit(gPath("xa", "ticks"), gp = gpar(col="green")))
```

---

grid.force *Force a grob into its components*

Description

Some grobs only generate their content to draw at drawing time; this function replaces such grobs with their at-drawing-time content.

Usage

```
grid.force(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
grid.force(x, redraw = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class gPath
grid.force(x, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE, global = FALSE,
                           redraw = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class grob
grid.force(x, draw = FALSE, ...)
forceGrob(x)
grid.revert(x, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class gPath
grid.revert(x, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE, global = FALSE,
                            redraw = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class grob
grid.revert(x, draw = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	For the default method, x should not be specified. Otherwise, x should be a grob or a gPath. If x is character, it is assumed to be a gPath.
strict	A boolean indicating whether the path must be matched exactly.
grep	Whether the path should be treated as a regular expression.
global	A boolean indicating whether the function should affect just the first match of the path, or whether all matches should be affected.
draw	logical value indicating whether a grob should be drawn after it is forced.
redraw	logical value indicating whether to redraw the **grid** scene after the forcing operation.
...	Further arguments for use by methods.

Details

Some grobs wait until drawing time to generate what content will actually be drawn (an axis, as produced by grid.xaxis(), with an at or NULL is a good example because it has to see what viewport it is going to be drawn in before it can decide what tick marks to draw).

The content of such grobs (e.g., the tick marks) are not usually visible to grid.ls() or accessible to grid.edit().

The grid.force() function *replaces* a grob with its at-drawing-time contents. For example, an axis will be replaced by a vanilla gTree with lines and text representing the axis tick marks that were actually drawn. This makes the tick marks visible to grid.ls() and accessible to grid.edit().

The forceGrob() function is the internal work horse for grid.force(), so will not normally be called directly by the user. It is exported so that methods can be written for custom grob classes if necessary.

The grid.revert() function reverses the effect of grid.force(), replacing forced content with the original grob.

Warning

Forcing an explicit grob produces a result as if the grob were drawn in the *current* drawing context. It may not make sense to draw the result in a different drawing context.

Note

These functions only have an effect for grobs that generate their content at drawing time using makeContext() and makeContent() methods (*not* for grobs that generate their content at drawing time using preDrawDetails() and drawDetails() methods).

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(width=.5, height=.5))
# Draw xaxis
grid.xaxis(name="xax")
grid.ls()
# Force xaxis
grid.force()
grid.ls()
# Revert xaxis
grid.revert()
grid.ls()
# Draw and force yaxis
grid.force(yaxisGrob(), draw=TRUE)
grid.ls()
# Revert yaxis
grid.revert()
grid.ls()
# Force JUST xaxis
grid.force("xax")
grid.ls()
# Force ALL
grid.force()
grid.ls()
# Revert JUST xaxis
grid.revert("xax")
grid.ls()
```

---

grid.frame *Create a Frame for Packing Objects*

Description

These functions, together with `grid.pack`, `grid.place`, `packGrob`, and `placeGrob` are part of a GUI-builder-like interface to constructing graphical images. The idea is that you create a frame with this function then use `grid.pack` or whatever to pack/place objects into the frame.

Usage

```
grid.frame(layout=NULL, name=NULL, gp=gpar(), vp=NULL, draw=TRUE)
frameGrob(layout=NULL, name=NULL, gp=gpar(), vp=NULL)
```

Arguments

`layout`	A Grid layout, or NULL. This can be used to initialise the frame with a number of rows and columns, with initial widths and heights, etc.
`name`	A character identifier.
`vp`	An object of class `viewport`, or NULL.
`gp`	An object of class `gpar`; typically the output from a call to the function `gpar`.
`draw`	Should the frame be drawn.

Details

Both functions create a frame grob (a graphical object describing a frame), but only `grid.frame()` draws the frame (and then only if `draw` is `TRUE`). Nothing will actually be drawn, but it will put the frame on the display list, which means that the output will be dynamically updated as objects are packed into the frame. Possibly useful for debugging.

Value

A frame grob. `grid.frame()` returns the value invisibly.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`grid.pack`

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
grid.frame(name="gf", draw=TRUE)
grid.pack("gf", rectGrob(gp=gpar(fill="grey")), width=unit(1, "null"))
grid.pack("gf", textGrob("hi there"), side="right")
```

---

grid.function *Draw a curve representing a function*

Description

Draw a curve representing a function.

Usage

```
grid.function(...)
functionGrob(f, n = 101, range = "x", units = "native",
             name = NULL, gp=gpar(), vp = NULL)

grid.abline(intercept, slope, ...)
```

Arguments

`f`	A function that must take a single argument and return a list with two numeric components named `x` and `y`.
`n`	The number values that will be generated as input to the function `f`.
`range`	Either `"x"`, `"y"`, or a numeric vector. See the 'Details' section.
`units`	A string indicating the units to use for the `x` and `y` values generated by the function.
`intercept`	Numeric.
`slope`	Numeric.

...	Arguments passed to grid.function()
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

n values are generated and passed to the function f and a series of lines are drawn through the resulting x and y values.

The generation of the n values depends on the value of range. In the default case, dim is "x", which means that a set of x values are generated covering the range of the current viewport scale in the x-dimension. If dim is "y" then values are generated from the current y-scale instead. If range is a numeric vector, then values are generated from that range.

grid.abline() provides a simple front-end for a straight line parameterized by intercept and slope.

Value

A functiongrob grob.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

Examples

```
# abline
# NOTE: in ROOT viewport on screen, (0, 0) at top-left
#       and "native" is pixels!
grid.function(function(x) list(x=x, y=0 + 1*x))
# a more "normal" viewport with default normalized "native" coords
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport())
grid.function(function(x) list(x=x, y=0 + 1*x))
# slightly simpler
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport())
grid.abline()
# sine curve
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale=c(0, 2*pi), yscale=c(-1, 1)))
grid.function(function(x) list(x=x, y=sin(x)))
# constrained sine curve
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale=c(0, 2*pi), yscale=c(-1, 1)))
grid.function(function(x) list(x=x, y=sin(x)),
              range=0:1)
# inverse sine curve
grid.newpage()
```

```
pushViewport(viewport(xscale=c(-1, 1), yscale=c(0, 2*pi)))
grid.function(function(y) list(x=sin(y), y=y),
              range="y")
# parametric function
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(xscale=c(-1, 1), yscale=c(-1, 1)))
grid.function(function(t) list(x=cos(t), y=sin(t)),
              range=c(0, 9*pi/5))
# physical abline
grid.newpage()
grid.function(function(x) list(x=x, y=0 + 1*x),
              units="in")
```

`grid.get` *Get a Grid Graphical Object*

Description

Retrieve a grob or a descendant of a grob.

Usage

```
grid.get(gPath, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE, global = FALSE,
         allDevices = FALSE)

grid.gget(..., grep = TRUE, global = TRUE)

getGrob(gTree, gPath, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE, global = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`gTree`	A gTree object.
`gPath`	A gPath object. For `grid.get` this specifies a grob on the display list. For `getGrob` this specifies a descendant of the specified gTree.
`strict`	A boolean indicating whether the gPath must be matched exactly.
`grep`	A boolean indicating whether the `gPath` should be treated as a regular expression. Values are recycled across elements of the `gPath` (e.g., `c(TRUE, FALSE)` means that every odd element of the `gPath` will be treated as a regular expression).
`global`	A boolean indicating whether the function should affect just the first match of the `gPath`, or whether all matches should be affected.
`allDevices`	A boolean indicating whether all open devices should be searched for matches, or just the current device. NOT YET IMPLEMENTED.
`...`	Arguments that are passed to `grid.get`.

Details

`grid.gget` (g for global) is just a convenience wrapper for `grid.get` with different defaults.

Value

A grob object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grob, getGrob, addGrob, removeGrob.

Examples

```
grid.xaxis(name="xa")
grid.get("xa")
grid.get(gPath("xa", "ticks"))

grid.draw(gTree(name="gt", children=gList(xaxisGrob(name="axis"))))
grid.get(gPath("gt", "axis", "ticks"))
```

---

grid.grab *Grab the current grid output*

Description

Creates a gTree object from the current grid display list or from a scene generated by user-specified code.

Usage

```
grid.grab(warn = 2, wrap = FALSE, ...)
grid.grabExpr(expr, warn = 2, wrap = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

expr	An expression to be evaluated. Typically, some calls to grid drawing functions.
warn	An integer specifying the amount of warnings to emit. 0 means no warnings, 1 means warn when it is certain that the grab will not faithfully represent the original scene. 2 means warn if there's any possibility that the grab will not faithfully represent the original scene.
wrap	A logical indicating how the output should be captured. If TRUE, each non-grob element on the display list is captured by wrapping it in a grob.
...	arguments passed to gTree, for example, a name and/or class for the gTree that is created.

Details

There are four ways to capture grid output as a gTree.

There are two functions for capturing output: use `grid.grab` to capture an existing drawing and `grid.grabExpr` to capture the output from an expression (without drawing anything).

For each of these functions, the output can be captured in two ways. One way tries to be clever and make a gTree with a childrenvp slot containing all viewports on the display list (including those that are popped) and every grob on the display list as a child of the new gTree; each child has a vpPath in the vp slot so that it is drawn in the appropriate viewport. In other words, the gTree contains all elements on the display list, but in a slightly altered form.

The other way, `wrap=TRUE`, is to create a grob for every element on the display list (and make all of those grobs children of the gTree).

The first approach creates a more compact and elegant gTree, which is more flexible to work with, but is not guaranteed to faithfully replicate all possible grid output. The second approach is more brute force, and harder to work with, but should always faithfully replicate the original output.

Value

A gTree object.

See Also

gTree

Examples

```
pushViewport(viewport(w=.5, h=.5))
grid.rect()
grid.points(stats::runif(10), stats::runif(10))
popViewport()
grab <- grid.grab()
grid.newpage()
grid.draw(grab)
```

---

grid.grep *Search for grobs*

Description

Given a gPath, find all matching grobs on the display list or within a given grob.

Usage

```
grid.grep(path, x = NULL, grobs = TRUE, viewports = FALSE,
          strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE, global = FALSE,
          no.match = character())
```

Arguments

path	a gPath.
x	a grob or NULL. If NULL, the display list is searched.
grobs	A logical value indicating whether to search for grobs.
viewports	A logical value indicating whether to search for viewports.
strict	A boolean indicating whether the path must be matched exactly.
grep	Whether the path should be treated as a regular expression.
global	A boolean indicating whether the function should affect just the first match of the path, or whether all matches should be affected.
no.match	The value to return if no matches are found.

Value

Either a gPath or, if global is TRUE a list of gPaths. If there are no matches, no.match is returned.

See Also

grid.ls()

Examples

```
# A gTree, called "grandparent", with child gTree,
# called "parent", with childrenvp vpStack (vp2 within vp1)
# and child grob, called "child", with vp vpPath (down to vp2)
sampleGTree <- gTree(name="grandparent",
                     children=gList(gTree(name="parent",
                          children=gList(grob(name="child", vp="vp1::vp2")),
                          childrenvp=vpStack(viewport(name="vp1"),
                                             viewport(name="vp2")))))
# Searching for grobs
grid.grep("parent", sampleGTree)
grid.grep("parent", sampleGTree, strict=TRUE)
grid.grep("grandparent", sampleGTree, strict=TRUE)
grid.grep("grandparent::parent", sampleGTree)
grid.grep("parent::child", sampleGTree)
grid.grep("[a-z]", sampleGTree, grep=TRUE)
grid.grep("[a-z]", sampleGTree, grep=TRUE, global=TRUE)
# Searching for viewports
grid.grep("vp1", sampleGTree, viewports=TRUE)
grid.grep("vp2", sampleGTree, viewports=TRUE)
grid.grep("vp", sampleGTree, viewports=TRUE, grep=TRUE)
grid.grep("vp2", sampleGTree, viewports=TRUE, strict=TRUE)
grid.grep("vp1::vp2", sampleGTree, viewports=TRUE)
# Searching for both
grid.grep("[a-z]", sampleGTree, viewports=TRUE, grep=TRUE, global=TRUE)
```

grid.grill *Draw a Grill*

Description

This function draws a grill within a Grid viewport.

Usage

```
grid.grill(h = unit(seq(0.25, 0.75, 0.25), "npc"),
           v = unit(seq(0.25, 0.75, 0.25), "npc"),
           default.units = "npc", gp=gpar(col = "grey"), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	A numeric vector or unit object indicating the horizontal location of the vertical grill lines.
v	A numeric vector or unit object indicating the vertical location of the horizontal grill lines.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if h or v are only given as numeric vectors.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object.

Value

None.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport.

grid.grob *Create Grid Graphical Objects, aka "Grob"s*

Description

Creating grid graphical objects, short ("grob"s).

grob() and gTree() are the basic creators, grobTree() and gList() take several grobs to build a new one.

Usage

```
## Grob Creation:

grob (..., name = NULL, gp = NULL, vp = NULL, cl = NULL)
gTree(..., name = NULL, gp = NULL, vp = NULL, children = NULL,
      childrenvp = NULL, cl = NULL)
grobTree(..., name = NULL, gp = NULL, vp = NULL,
         childrenvp = NULL, cl = NULL)
gList(...)

## Grob Properties:
childNames(gTree)
is.grob(x)
```

Arguments

...	For grob and gTree, the named slots describing important features of the graphical object. For gList and grobTree, a series of grob objects.
name	a character identifier for the grob. Used to find the grob on the display list and/or as a child of another grob.
children	a "gList" object.
childrenvp	a viewport object (or NULL).
gp	A gpar object, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	a viewport object (or NULL).
cl	string giving the class attribute for the new class.
gTree	a "gTree" object.
x	An object.

Details

These functions can be used to create a basic "grob", "gTree", or "gList" object, or a new class derived from one of these.

A grid graphical object ("grob") is a description of a graphical item. These basic classes provide default behaviour for validating, drawing, and modifying graphical objects. Both grob() and gTree() call the function validDetails to check that the object returned is internally coherent.

A "gTree" can have other grobs as children; when a gTree is drawn, it draws all of its children. Before drawing its children, a gTree pushes its childrenvp slot and then navigates back up (calls upViewport) so that the children can specify their location within the childrenvp via a vpPath.

Grob names need not be unique in general, but all children of a gTree must have different names. A grob name can be any string, though it is not advisable to use the gPath separator (currently ::) in grob names.

The function childNames returns the names of the grobs which are children of a gTree.

All grid primitives (grid.lines, grid.rect, ...) and some higher-level grid components (e.g., grid.xaxis and grid.yaxis) are derived from these classes.

grobTree is just a convenient wrapper for gTree when the only components of the gTree are grobs (so all unnamed arguments become children of the gTree).

The grid.grob function is defunct.

Value

An object of class "grob", a **gr**aphical **ob**ject.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.draw, grid.edit, grid.get.

---

grid.layout *Create a Grid Layout*

Description

This function returns a Grid layout, which describes a subdivision of a rectangular region.

Usage

```
grid.layout(nrow = 1, ncol = 1,
        widths = unit(rep_len(1, ncol), "null"),
        heights = unit(rep_len(1, nrow), "null"),
        default.units = "null", respect = FALSE,
        just="centre")
```

Arguments

nrow	An integer describing the number of rows in the layout.
ncol	An integer describing the number of columns in the layout.
widths	A numeric vector or unit object describing the widths of the columns in the layout.
heights	A numeric vector or unit object describing the heights of the rows in the layout.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if widths or heights are only given as numeric vectors.
respect	A logical value or a numeric matrix. If a logical, this indicates whether row heights and column widths should respect each other. If a matrix, non-zero values indicate that the corresponding row and column should be respected (see examples below).
just	A string or numeric vector specifying how the layout should be justified if it is not the same size as its parent viewport. If there are two values, the first value specifies horizontal justification and the second value specifies vertical justification. Possible string values are: "left", "right", "centre", "center", "bottom", and "top". For numeric values, 0 means left alignment and 1 means right alignment. NOTE that in this context, "left", for example, means align the left edge of the left-most layout column with the left edge of the parent viewport.

Details

The unit objects given for the `widths` and `heights` of a layout may use a special `units` that only has meaning for layouts. This is the `"null"` unit, which indicates what relative fraction of the available width/height the column/row occupies. See the reference for a better description of relative widths and heights in layouts.

Value

A Grid layout object.

WARNING

This function must NOT be confused with the base R graphics function `layout`. In particular, do not use `layout` in combination with Grid graphics. The documentation for `layout` may provide some useful information and this function should behave identically in comparable situations. The `grid.layout` function has *added* the ability to specify a broader range of units for row heights and column widths, and allows for nested layouts (see `viewport`).

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

References

Murrell, P. R. (1999), Layouts: A Mechanism for Arranging Plots on a Page, *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, **8**, 121–134.

See Also

Grid, `grid.show.layout`, `viewport`, `layout`

Examples

```
## A variety of layouts (some a bit mid-bending ...)
layout.torture()
## Demonstration of layout justification
grid.newpage()
testlay <- function(just="centre") {
  pushViewport(viewport(layout=grid.layout(1, 1, widths=unit(1, "inches"),
                          heights=unit(0.25, "npc"),
                          just=just)))
  pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.col=1, layout.pos.row=1))
  grid.rect()
  grid.text(paste(just, collapse="-"))
  popViewport(2)
}
testlay()
testlay(c("left", "top"))
testlay(c("right", "top"))
testlay(c("right", "bottom"))
testlay(c("left", "bottom"))
testlay(c("left"))
testlay(c("right"))
testlay(c("bottom"))
testlay(c("top"))
```

grid.lines *Draw Lines in a Grid Viewport*

Description

These functions create and draw a series of lines.

Usage

```
grid.lines(x = unit(c(0, 1), "npc"),
           y = unit(c(0, 1), "npc"),
           default.units = "npc",
           arrow = NULL, name = NULL,
           gp=gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)
linesGrob(x = unit(c(0, 1), "npc"),
           y = unit(c(0, 1), "npc"),
           default.units = "npc",
           arrow = NULL, name = NULL,
           gp=gpar(), vp = NULL)
grid.polyline(...)
polylineGrob(x = unit(c(0, 1), "npc"),
             y = unit(c(0, 1), "npc"),
             id=NULL, id.lengths=NULL,
             default.units = "npc",
             arrow = NULL, name = NULL,
             gp=gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-values.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-values.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x or y are only given as numeric vectors.
arrow	A list describing arrow heads to place at either end of the line, as produced by the arrow function.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
id	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple lines. All locations with the same id belong to the same line.
id.lengths	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple lines. Specifies consecutive blocks of locations which make up separate lines.
...	Arguments passed to polylineGrob.

Details

The first two functions create a lines grob (a graphical object describing lines), and `grid.lines` draws the lines (if `draw` is `TRUE`).

The second two functions create or draw a polyline grob, which is just like a lines grob, except that there can be multiple distinct lines drawn.

Value

A lines grob or a polyline grob. `grid.lines` returns a lines grob invisibly.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, `viewport`, `arrow`

Examples

```
grid.lines()
# Using id (NOTE: locations are not in consecutive blocks)
grid.newpage()
grid.polyline(x=c((0:4)/10, rep(.5, 5), (10:6)/10, rep(.5, 5)),
              y=c(rep(.5, 5), (10:6/10), rep(.5, 5), (0:4)/10),
              id=rep(1:5, 4),
              gp=gpar(col=1:5, lwd=3))
# Using id.lengths
grid.newpage()
grid.polyline(x=outer(c(0, .5, 1, .5), 5:1/5),
              y=outer(c(.5, 1, .5, 0), 5:1/5),
              id.lengths=rep(4, 5),
              gp=gpar(col=1:5, lwd=3))
```

---

grid.locator *Capture a Mouse Click*

Description

Allows the user to click the mouse once within the current graphics device and returns the location of the mouse click within the current viewport, in the specified coordinate system.

Usage

```
grid.locator(unit = "native")
```

Arguments

`unit`	The coordinate system in which to return the location of the mouse click. See the `unit` function for valid coordinate systems.

Details

This function is modal (like the graphics package function `locator`) so the command line and graphics drawing is blocked until the use has clicked the mouse in the current device.

Value

A unit object representing the location of the mouse click within the current viewport, in the specified coordinate system.

If the user did not click mouse button 1, the function (invisibly) returns `NULL`.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`viewport`, `unit`, `locator` in package **graphics**, and for an application see `trellis.focus` and `panel.identify` in package **lattice**.

Examples

```
if (interactive()) {
  ## Need to write a more sophisticated unit as.character method
  unittrim <- function(unit) {
    sub("^([0-9]+|[0-9]+[.][0-9])[0-9]*", "\\1", as.character(unit))
  }
  do.click <- function(unit) {
    click.locn <- grid.locator(unit)
    grid.segments(unit.c(click.locn$x, unit(0, "npc")),
                  unit.c(unit(0, "npc"), click.locn$y),
                  click.locn$x, click.locn$y,
                  gp=gpar(lty="dashed", col="grey"))
    grid.points(click.locn$x, click.locn$y, pch=16, size=unit(1, "mm"))
    clickx <- unittrim(click.locn$x)
    clicky <- unittrim(click.locn$y)
    grid.text(paste0("(", clickx, ", ", clicky, ")"),
              click.locn$x + unit(2, "mm"), click.locn$y,
              just="left")
  }
  do.click("inches")
  pushViewport(viewport(width=0.5, height=0.5,
                        xscale=c(0, 100), yscale=c(0, 10)))
  grid.rect()
  grid.xaxis()
  grid.yaxis()
  do.click("native")
  popViewport()
}
```

grid.ls *List the names of grobs or viewports*

Description

Return a listing of the names of grobs or viewports.

This is a generic function with methods for grobs (including gTrees) and viewports (including vpTrees).

Usage

```
grid.ls(x=NULL, grobs=TRUE, viewports=FALSE, fullNames=FALSE,
        recursive=TRUE, print=TRUE, flatten=TRUE, ...)

nestedListing(x, gindent="  ", vpindent=gindent)
pathListing(x, gvpSep=" | ", gAlign=TRUE)
grobPathListing(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A grob or viewport or NULL. If NULL, the current grid display list is listed. For print functions, this should be the result of a call to grid.ls.
grobs	A logical value indicating whether to list grobs.
viewports	A logical value indicating whether to list viewports.
fullNames	A logical value indicating whether to embellish object names with information about the object type.
recursive	A logical value indicating whether recursive structures should also list their children.
print	A logical indicating whether to print the listing or a function that will print the listing.
flatten	A logical value indicating whether to flatten the listing. Otherwise a more complex hierarchical object is produced.
gindent	The indent used to show nesting in the output for grobs.
vpindent	The indent used to show nesting in the output for viewports.
gvpSep	The string used to separate viewport paths from grob paths.
gAlign	Logical indicating whether to align the left hand edge of all grob paths.
...	Arguments passed to the print function.

Details

If the argument x is NULL, the current contents of the grid display list are listed (both viewports and grobs). In other words, all objects representing the current scene are listed.

Otherwise, x should be a grob or a viewport.

The default behaviour of this function is to print information about the grobs in the current scene. It is also possible to add information about the viewports in the scene. By default, the listing is recursive, so all children of gTrees and all nested viewports are reported.

The format of the information can be controlled via the `print` argument, which can be given a function to perform the formatting. The `nestedListing` function produces a line per grob or viewport, with indenting used to show nesting. The `pathListing` function produces a line per grob or viewport, with viewport paths and grob paths used to show nesting. The `grobPathListing` is a simple derivation that only shows lines for grobs. The user can define new functions.

Value

The result of this function is either a `"gridFlatListing"` object (if `flatten` is `TRUE`) or a `"gridListing"` object.

The former is a simple (flat) list of vectors. This is convenient, for example, for working programmatically with the list of grob and viewport names, or for writing a new display function for the listing.

The latter is a more complex hierarchical object (list of lists), but it does contain more detailed information so may be of use for more advanced customisations.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`grob` `viewport`

Examples

```
# A gTree, called "parent", with childrenvp vpTree (vp2 within vp1)
# and child grob, called "child", with vp vpPath (down to vp2)
sampleGTree <- gTree(name="parent",
                     children=gList(grob(name="child", vp="vp1::vp2")),
                     childrenvp=vpTree(parent=viewport(name="vp1"),
                                       children=vpList(viewport(name="vp2"))))
grid.ls(sampleGTree)
# Show viewports too
grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE)
# Only show viewports
grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE, grob=FALSE)
# Alternate displays
# nested listing, custom indent
grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE, print=nestedListing, gindent="--")
# path listing
grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE, print=pathListing)
# path listing, without grobs aligned
grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE, print=pathListing, gAlign=FALSE)
# grob path listing
grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE, print=grobPathListing)
# path listing, grobs only
grid.ls(sampleGTree, print=pathListing)
# path listing, viewports only
grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE, grob=FALSE, print=pathListing)
# raw flat listing
str(grid.ls(sampleGTree, view=TRUE, print=FALSE))
```

grid.move.to *Move or Draw to a Specified Position*

Description

Grid has the notion of a current location. These functions sets that location.

Usage

```
grid.move.to(x = 0, y = 0, default.units = "npc", name = NULL,
             draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)

moveToGrob(x = 0, y = 0, default.units = "npc", name = NULL,
           vp = NULL)

grid.line.to(x = 1, y = 1, default.units = "npc",
             arrow = NULL, name = NULL,
             gp = gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)

lineToGrob(x = 1, y = 1, default.units = "npc", arrow = NULL,
           name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric value or a unit object specifying an x-value.
y	A numeric value or a unit object specifying a y-value.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x or y are only given as numeric values.
arrow	A list describing arrow heads to place at either end of the line, as produced by the arrow function.
name	A character identifier.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a move.to/line.to grob (a graphical object describing a move-to/line-to), but only grid.move.to/line.to() draws the move.to/line.to (and then only if draw is TRUE).

Value

A move.to/line.to grob. grid.move.to/line.to() returns the value invisibly.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport, arrow

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
grid.move.to(0.5, 0.5)
grid.line.to(1, 1)
grid.line.to(0.5, 0)
pushViewport(viewport(x=0, y=0, w=0.25, h=0.25, just=c("left", "bottom")))
grid.rect()
grid.grill()
grid.line.to(0.5, 0.5)
popViewport()
```

---

grid.newpage *Move to a New Page on a Grid Device*

Description

This function erases the current device or moves to a new page.

Usage

```
grid.newpage(recording = TRUE)
```

Arguments

recording	A logical value to indicate whether the new-page operation should be saved onto the Grid display list.

Details

The new page is painted with the fill colour (gpar("fill")), which is often transparent. For devices with a *canvas* colour (the on-screen devices X11, windows and quartz), the page is first painted with the canvas colour and then the background colour.

There are two hooks called "before.grid.newpage" and "grid.newpage" (see setHook). The latter is used in the testing code to annotate the new page. The hook function(s) are called with no argument. (If the value is a character string, get is called on it from within the **grid** namespace.)

Value

None.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid

grid.null *Null Graphical Object*

Description

These functions create a NULL graphical object, which has zero width, zero height, and draw nothing. It can be used as a place-holder or as an invisible reference point for other drawing.

Usage

```
nullGrob(x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
         default.units = "npc",
         name = NULL, vp = NULL)
grid.null(...)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-location.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-location.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x, y, width, or height are only given as numeric vectors.
name	A character identifier.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
...	Arguments passed to nullGrob().

Value

A null grob.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
grid.null(name="ref")
grid.rect(height=grobHeight("ref"))
grid.segments(0, 0, grobX("ref", 0), grobY("ref", 0))
```

grid.pack *Pack an Object within a Frame*

Description

these functions, together with grid.frame and frameGrob are part of a GUI-builder-like interface to constructing graphical images. The idea is that you create a frame with grid.frame or frameGrob then use these functions to pack objects into the frame.

Usage

```
grid.pack(gPath, grob, redraw = TRUE, side = NULL,
          row = NULL, row.before = NULL, row.after = NULL,
          col = NULL, col.before = NULL, col.after = NULL,
          width = NULL, height = NULL,
          force.width = FALSE, force.height = FALSE, border = NULL,
          dynamic = FALSE)

packGrob(frame, grob, side = NULL,
          row = NULL, row.before = NULL, row.after = NULL,
          col = NULL, col.before = NULL, col.after = NULL,
          width = NULL, height = NULL,
          force.width = FALSE, force.height = FALSE, border = NULL,
          dynamic = FALSE)
```

Arguments

gPath	A gPath object, which specifies a frame on the display list.
frame	An object of class frame, typically the output from a call to grid.frame.
grob	An object of class grob. The object to be packed.
redraw	A boolean indicating whether the output should be updated.
side	One of "left", "top", "right", "bottom" to indicate which side to pack the object on.
row	Which row to add the object to. Must be between 1 and the-number-of-rows-currently-in-the-frame + 1, or NULL in which case the object occupies all rows.
row.before	Add the object to a new row just before this row.
row.after	Add the object to a new row just after this row.
col	Which col to add the object to. Must be between 1 and the-number-of-cols-currently-in-the-frame + 1, or NULL in which case the object occupies all cols.
col.before	Add the object to a new col just before this col.
col.after	Add the object to a new col just after this col.
width	Specifies the width of the column that the object is added to (rather than allowing the width to be taken from the object).
height	Specifies the height of the row that the object is added to (rather than allowing the height to be taken from the object).
force.width	A logical value indicating whether the width of the column that the grob is being packed into should be EITHER the width specified in the call to grid.pack OR the maximum of that width and the pre-existing width.

force.height	A logical value indicating whether the height of the column that the grob is being packed into should be EITHER the height specified in the call to grid.pack OR the maximum of that height and the pre-existing height.
border	A unit object of length 4 indicating the borders around the object.
dynamic	If the width/height is taken from the grob being packed, this boolean flag indicates whether the grobwidth/height unit refers directly to the grob, or uses a gPath to the grob. In the latter case, changes to the grob will trigger a recalculation of the width/height.

Details

packGrob modifies the given frame grob and returns the modified frame grob.

grid.pack destructively modifies a frame grob on the display list (and redraws the display list if redraw is TRUE).

These are (meant to be) very flexible functions. There are many different ways to specify where the new object is to be added relative to the objects already in the frame. The function checks that the specification is not self-contradictory.

NOTE that the width/height of the row/col that the object is added to is taken from the object itself unless the width/height is specified.

Value

packGrob returns a frame grob, but grid.pack returns NULL.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.frame, grid.place, grid.edit, and gPath.

---

grid.path *Draw a Path*

Description

These functions create and draw a path. The final point will automatically be connected to the initial point.

Usage

```
pathGrob(x, y,
         id=NULL, id.lengths=NULL,
         rule="winding",
         default.units="npc",
         name=NULL, gp=gpar(), vp=NULL)
grid.path(...)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-locations.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-locations.
id	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into sub-paths. All locations with the same id belong to the same sub-path.
id.lengths	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into sub-paths. Specifies consecutive blocks of locations which make up separate sub-paths.
rule	A character value specifying the fill rule: either "winding" or "evenodd".
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x or y are only given as numeric vectors.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
...	Arguments passed to pathGrob().

Details

Both functions create a path grob (a graphical object describing a path), but only grid.path draws the path (and then only if draw is TRUE).

A path is like a polygon except that the former can contain holes, as interpreted by the fill rule; these fill a region if the path border encircles it an odd or non-zero number of times, respectively.

Not all graphics devices support this function: for example xfig and pictex do not.

Value

A grob object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

Examples

```
pathSample <- function(x, y, rule, gp = gpar()) {
    if (is.na(rule))
        grid.path(x, y, id = rep(1:2, each = 4), gp = gp)
    else
        grid.path(x, y, id = rep(1:2, each = 4), rule = rule, gp = gp)
    if (!is.na(rule))
        grid.text(paste("Rule:", rule), y = 0, just = "bottom")
}

pathTriplet <- function(x, y, title) {
    pushViewport(viewport(height = 0.9, layout = grid.layout(1, 3),
                          gp = gpar(cex = .7)))
    grid.rect(y = 1, height = unit(1, "char"), just = "top",
```

```
              gp = gpar(col = NA, fill = "grey"))
    grid.text(title, y = 1, just = "top")
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.col = 1))
    pathSample(x, y, rule = "winding",
               gp = gpar(fill = "grey"))
    popViewport()
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.col = 2))
    pathSample(x, y, rule = "evenodd",
               gp = gpar(fill = "grey"))
    popViewport()
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.col = 3))
    pathSample(x, y, rule = NA)
    popViewport()
    popViewport()
}

pathTest <- function() {
    grid.newpage()
    pushViewport(viewport(layout = grid.layout(5, 1)))
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row = 1))
    pathTriplet(c(.1, .1, .9, .9, .2, .2, .8, .8),
                c(.1, .9, .9, .1, .2, .8, .8, .2),
                "Nested rectangles, both clockwise")
    popViewport()
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row = 2))
    pathTriplet(c(.1, .1, .9, .9, .2, .8, .8, .2),
                c(.1, .9, .9, .1, .2, .2, .8, .8),
                "Nested rectangles, outer clockwise, inner anti-clockwise")
    popViewport()
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row = 3))
    pathTriplet(c(.1, .1, .4, .4, .6, .9, .9, .6),
                c(.1, .4, .4, .1, .6, .6, .9, .9),
                "Disjoint rectangles")
    popViewport()
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row = 4))
    pathTriplet(c(.1, .1, .6, .6, .4, .4, .9, .9),
                c(.1, .6, .6, .1, .4, .9, .9, .4),
                "Overlapping rectangles, both clockwise")
    popViewport()
    pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row = 5))
    pathTriplet(c(.1, .1, .6, .6, .4, .9, .9, .4),
                c(.1, .6, .6, .1, .4, .4, .9, .9),
                "Overlapping rectangles, one clockwise, other anti-clockwise")
    popViewport()
    popViewport()
}

pathTest()
```

`grid.place` *Place an Object within a Frame*

Description

These functions provide a simpler (and faster) alternative to the `grid.pack()` and `packGrob` functions. They can be used to place objects within the existing rows and columns of a frame layout.

They do not provide the ability to add new rows and columns nor do they affect the heights and widths of the rows and columns.

Usage

```
grid.place(gPath, grob, row = 1, col = 1, redraw = TRUE)
placeGrob(frame, grob, row = NULL, col = NULL)
```

Arguments

gPath	A gPath object, which specifies a frame on the display list.
frame	An object of class frame, typically the output from a call to grid.frame.
grob	An object of class grob. The object to be placed.
row	Which row to add the object to. Must be between 1 and the-number-of-rows-currently-in-the-frame.
col	Which col to add the object to. Must be between 1 and the-number-of-cols-currently-in-the-frame.
redraw	A boolean indicating whether the output should be updated.

Details

placeGrob modifies the given frame grob and returns the modified frame grob.

grid.place destructively modifies a frame grob on the display list (and redraws the display list if redraw is TRUE).

Value

placeGrob returns a frame grob, but grid.place returns NULL.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.frame, grid.pack, grid.edit, and gPath.

---

grid.plot.and.legend *A Simple Plot and Legend Demo*

Description

This function is just a wrapper for a simple demonstration of how a basic plot and legend can be drawn from scratch using grid.

Usage

```
grid.plot.and.legend()
```

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

Examples

```
grid.plot.and.legend()
```

`grid.points` *Draw Data Symbols*

Description

These functions create and draw data symbols.

Usage

```
grid.points(x = stats::runif(10),
            y = stats::runif(10),
            pch = 1, size = unit(1, "char"),
            default.units = "native", name = NULL,
            gp = gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)
pointsGrob(x = stats::runif(10),
           y = stats::runif(10),
           pch = 1, size = unit(1, "char"),
           default.units = "native", name = NULL,
           gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric vector or unit object specifying x-values.
`y`	numeric vector or unit object specifying y-values.
`pch`	numeric or character vector indicating what sort of plotting symbol to use. See `points` for the interpretation of these values, and note `fill` below.
`size`	unit object specifying the size of the plotting symbols.
`default.units`	string indicating the default units to use if `x` or `y` are only given as numeric vectors.
`name`	character identifier.
`gp`	an object of class `gpar`, typically the output from a call to the function `gpar`. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings; note that `fill` (and not `bg` as in package **graphics** `points`) is used to "fill", i.e., color the background of symbols with `pch = 21:25`.
`draw`	logical indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
`vp`	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a points grob (a graphical object describing points), but only `grid.points` draws the points (and then only if `draw` is `TRUE`).

Value

A points grob. grid.points returns the value invisibly.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

---

grid.polygon *Draw a Polygon*

Description

These functions create and draw a polygon. The final point will automatically be connected to the initial point.

Usage

```
grid.polygon(x=c(0, 0.5, 1, 0.5), y=c(0.5, 1, 0.5, 0),
             id=NULL, id.lengths=NULL,
             default.units="npc", name=NULL,
             gp=gpar(), draw=TRUE, vp=NULL)
polygonGrob(x=c(0, 0.5, 1, 0.5), y=c(0.5, 1, 0.5, 0),
             id=NULL, id.lengths=NULL,
             default.units="npc", name=NULL,
             gp=gpar(), vp=NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-locations.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-locations.
id	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple polygons. All locations with the same id belong to the same polygon.
id.lengths	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple polygons. Specifies consecutive blocks of locations which make up separate polygons.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x, y, width, or height are only given as numeric vectors.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a polygon grob (a graphical object describing a polygon), but only grid.polygon draws the polygon (and then only if draw is TRUE).

Value

A grob object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

Examples

```
grid.polygon()
# Using id (NOTE: locations are not in consecutive blocks)
grid.newpage()
grid.polygon(x=c((0:4)/10, rep(.5, 5), (10:6)/10, rep(.5, 5)),
             y=c(rep(.5, 5), (10:6/10), rep(.5, 5), (0:4)/10),
             id=rep(1:5, 4),
             gp=gpar(fill=1:5))
# Using id.lengths
grid.newpage()
grid.polygon(x=outer(c(0, .5, 1, .5), 5:1/5),
             y=outer(c(.5, 1, .5, 0), 5:1/5),
             id.lengths=rep(4, 5),
             gp=gpar(fill=1:5))
```

---

grid.pretty *Generate a Sensible Set of Breakpoints*

Description

Produces a pretty set of breakpoints within the range given.

Usage

```
grid.pretty(range)
```

Arguments

range	A numeric vector

Value

A numeric vector of breakpoints.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

grid.raster *Render a raster object*

Description

Render a raster object (bitmap image) at the given location, size, and orientation.

Usage

```
grid.raster(image,
            x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
            width = NULL, height = NULL,
            just = "centre", hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL,
            interpolate = TRUE, default.units = "npc",
            name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)

rasterGrob(image,
           x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
           width = NULL, height = NULL,
           just = "centre", hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL,
           interpolate = TRUE, default.units = "npc",
           name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

image	Any R object that can be coerced to a raster object.
x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-location.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-location.
width	A numeric vector or unit object specifying width.
height	A numeric vector or unit object specifying height.
just	The justification of the rectangle relative to its (x, y) location. If there are two values, the first value specifies horizontal justification and the second value specifies vertical justification. Possible string values are: "left", "right", "centre", "center", "bottom", and "top". For numeric values, 0 means left alignment and 1 means right alignment.
hjust	A numeric vector specifying horizontal justification. If specified, overrides the just setting.
vjust	A numeric vector specifying vertical justification. If specified, overrides the just setting.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x, y, width, or height are only given as numeric vectors.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
interpolate	A logical value indicating whether to linearly interpolate the image (the alternative is to use nearest-neighbour interpolation, which gives a more blocky result).

Details

Neither `width` nor `height` needs to be specified, in which case, the aspect ratio of the image is preserved. If both `width` and `height` are specified, it is likely that the image will be distorted.

Not all graphics devices are capable of rendering raster images and some may not be able to produce rotated images (i.e., if a raster object is rendered within a rotated viewport). See also the comments under `rasterImage`.

All graphical parameter settings in `gp` will be ignored, including `alpha`.

Value

A rastergrob grob.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`as.raster`.

`dev.capabilities` to see if it is supported.

Examples

```
redGradient <- matrix(hcl(0, 80, seq(50, 80, 10)),
                      nrow=4, ncol=5)
# interpolated
grid.newpage()
grid.raster(redGradient)
# blocky
grid.newpage()
grid.raster(redGradient, interpolate=FALSE)
# blocky and stretched
grid.newpage()
grid.raster(redGradient, interpolate=FALSE, height=unit(1, "npc"))

# The same raster drawn several times
grid.newpage()
grid.raster(0, x=1:3/4, y=1:3/4, w=.1, interp=FALSE)
```

---

grid.record *Encapsulate calculations and drawing*

Description

Evaluates an expression that includes both calculations and drawing that depends on the calculations so that both the calculations and the drawing will be rerun when the scene is redrawn (e.g., device resize or editing).

Intended *only* for expert use.

Usage

```
recordGrob(expr, list, name=NULL, gp=NULL, vp=NULL)
grid.record(expr, list, name=NULL, gp=NULL, vp=NULL)
```

Arguments

expr	object of mode expression or call or an unevaluated expression.
list	a list defining the environment in which expr is to be evaluated.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

A grob is created of special class "recordedGrob" (and drawn, in the case of grid.record). The drawDetails method for this class evaluates the expression with the list as the evaluation environment (and the grid Namespace as the parent of that environment).

Note

This function *must* be used instead of the function recordGraphics; all of the dire warnings about using recordGraphics responsibly also apply here.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

recordGraphics

Examples

```
grid.record({
              w <- convertWidth(unit(1, "inches"), "npc")
              grid.rect(width=w)
            },
            list())
```

---

grid.rect *Draw rectangles*

Description

These functions create and draw rectangles.

Usage

```
grid.rect(x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
          width = unit(1, "npc"), height = unit(1, "npc"),
          just = "centre", hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL,
          default.units = "npc", name = NULL,
          gp=gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)
rectGrob(x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
         width = unit(1, "npc"), height = unit(1, "npc"),
         just = "centre", hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL,
         default.units = "npc", name = NULL,
         gp=gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-location.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-location.
width	A numeric vector or unit object specifying width.
height	A numeric vector or unit object specifying height.
just	The justification of the rectangle relative to its (x, y) location. If there are two values, the first value specifies horizontal justification and the second value specifies vertical justification. Possible string values are: "left", "right", "centre", "center", "bottom", and "top". For numeric values, 0 means left alignment and 1 means right alignment.
hjust	A numeric vector specifying horizontal justification. If specified, overrides the just setting.
vjust	A numeric vector specifying vertical justification. If specified, overrides the just setting.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x, y, width, or height are only given as numeric vectors.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a rect grob (a graphical object describing rectangles), but only grid.rect draws the rectangles (and then only if draw is TRUE).

Value

A rect grob. grid.rect returns the value invisibly.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

grid.refresh *Refresh the current grid scene*

Description

Replays the current grid display list.

Usage

```
grid.refresh()
```

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

grid.remove *Remove a Grid Graphical Object*

Description

Remove a grob from a gTree or a descendant of a gTree.

Usage

```
grid.remove(gPath, warn = TRUE, strict  =  FALSE, grep = FALSE,
            global = FALSE, allDevices = FALSE, redraw = TRUE)

grid.gremove(..., grep = TRUE, global = TRUE)

removeGrob(gTree, gPath, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE,
           global = FALSE, warn = TRUE)
```

Arguments

gTree	A gTree object.
gPath	A gPath object. For grid.remove this specifies a gTree on the display list. For removeGrob this specifies a descendant of the specified gTree.
strict	A boolean indicating whether the gPath must be matched exactly.
grep	A boolean indicating whether the gPath should be treated as a regular expression. Values are recycled across elements of the gPath (e.g., c(TRUE, FALSE) means that every odd element of the gPath will be treated as a regular expression).
global	A boolean indicating whether the function should affect just the first match of the gPath, or whether all matches should be affected.
allDevices	A boolean indicating whether all open devices should be searched for matches, or just the current device. NOT YET IMPLEMENTED.
warn	A logical to indicate whether failing to find the specified grob should trigger an error.
redraw	A logical value to indicate whether to redraw the grob.
...	Arguments that are passed to grid.get.

Details

removeGrob copies the specified grob and returns a modified grob.

grid.remove destructively modifies a grob on the display list. If redraw is TRUE it then redraws everything to reflect the change.

grid.gremove (g for global) is just a convenience wrapper for grid.remove with different defaults.

Value

removeGrob returns a grob object; grid.remove returns NULL.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grob, getGrob, removeGrob, removeGrob.

---

grid.reorder *Reorder the children of a gTree*

Description

Change the order in which the children of a gTree get drawn.

Usage

```
grid.reorder(gPath, order, back=TRUE, grep=FALSE, redraw=TRUE)
reorderGrob(x, order, back=TRUE)
```

Arguments

gPath	A gPath object specifying a gTree within the current scene.
x	A gTree object to be modified.
order	A character vector or a numeric vector that specifies the new drawing order for the children of the gTree. May not refer to all children of the gTree (see Details).
back	Controls what happens when the order does not specify all children of the gTree (see Details).
grep	Should the gPath be treated as a regular expression?
redraw	Should the modified scene be redrawn?

Details

In the simplest case, `order` specifies a new ordering for all of the children of the gTree. The children may be specified either by name or by existing numerical order.

If the `order` does not specify all children of the gTree then, by default, the children specified by `order` are drawn first and then all remaining children are drawn. If `back=FALSE` then the children not specified in `order` are drawn first, followed by the specified children. This makes it easy to specify a send-to-back or bring-to-front reordering. The `order` argument is *always* in back-to-front order.

It is not possible to reorder the grid display list (the top-level grobs in the current scene) because the display list is a mixture of grobs and viewports (so it is not clear what reordering even means and it would be too easy to end up with a scene that would not draw). If you want to reorder the grid display list, try `grid.grab()` to create a gTree and then reorder (and redraw) that gTree.

Value

`grid.reorder()` is called for its side-effect of modifying the current scene. `reorderGrob()` returns the modified gTree.

Warning

This function may return a gTree that will not draw. For example, a gTree has two children, A and B (in that order), and the width of child B depends on the width of child A (e.g., a box around a piece of text). Switching the order so that B is drawn before A will not allow B to be drawn. If this happens with `grid.reorder()`, the modification will not be performed. If this happens with `reorderGrob()` it should be possible simply to restore the original order.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

Examples

```
# gTree with two children, "red-rect" and "blue-rect" (in that order)
gt <- gTree(children=gList(
                rectGrob(gp=gpar(col=NA, fill="red"),
                         width=.8, height=.2, name="red-rect"),
                rectGrob(gp=gpar(col=NA, fill="blue"),
                         width=.2, height=.8, name="blue-rect")),
            name="gt")
grid.newpage()
grid.draw(gt)
# Spec entire order as numeric (blue-rect, red-rect)
grid.reorder("gt", 2:1)
# Spec entire order as character
grid.reorder("gt", c("red-rect", "blue-rect"))
# Only spec the one I want behind as character
grid.reorder("gt", "blue-rect")
# Only spec the one I want in front as character
grid.reorder("gt", "blue-rect", back=FALSE)
```

grid.segments *Draw Line Segments*

Description

These functions create and draw line segments.

Usage

```
grid.segments(x0 = unit(0, "npc"), y0 = unit(0, "npc"),
              x1 = unit(1, "npc"), y1 = unit(1, "npc"),
              default.units = "npc",
              arrow = NULL,
              name = NULL, gp = gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)
segmentsGrob(x0 = unit(0, "npc"), y0 = unit(0, "npc"),
              x1 = unit(1, "npc"), y1 = unit(1, "npc"),
              default.units = "npc",
              arrow = NULL, name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

x0	Numeric indicating the starting x-values of the line segments.
y0	Numeric indicating the starting y-values of the line segments.
x1	Numeric indicating the stopping x-values of the line segments.
y1	Numeric indicating the stopping y-values of the line segments.
default.units	A string.
arrow	A list describing arrow heads to place at either end of the line segments, as produced by the arrow function.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a segments grob (a graphical object describing segments), but only grid.segments draws the segments (and then only if draw is TRUE).

Value

A segments grob. grid.segments returns the value invisibly.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport, arrow

grid.set *Set a Grid Graphical Object*

Description

Replace a grob or a descendant of a grob.

Usage

```
grid.set(gPath, newGrob, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE,
         redraw = TRUE)

setGrob(gTree, gPath, newGrob, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE)
```

Arguments

gTree	A gTree object.
gPath	A gPath object. For grid.set this specifies a grob on the display list. For setGrob this specifies a descendant of the specified gTree.
newGrob	A grob object.
strict	A boolean indicating whether the gPath must be matched exactly.
grep	A boolean indicating whether the gPath should be treated as a regular expression. Values are recycled across elements of the gPath (e.g., c(TRUE, FALSE) means that every odd element of the gPath will be treated as a regular expression).
redraw	A logical value to indicate whether to redraw the grob.

Details

setGrob copies the specified grob and returns a modified grob.

grid.set destructively replaces a grob on the display list. If redraw is TRUE it then redraws everything to reflect the change.

These functions should not normally be called by the user.

Value

setGrob returns a grob object; grid.set returns NULL.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.grob.

`grid.show.layout` *Draw a Diagram of a Grid Layout*

Description

This function uses Grid graphics to draw a diagram of a Grid layout.

Usage

```
grid.show.layout(l, newpage=TRUE, vp.ex = 0.8, bg = "light grey",
             cell.border = "blue", cell.fill = "light blue",
             cell.label = TRUE, label.col = "blue",
             unit.col = "red", vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

`l`	A Grid layout object.
`newpage`	A logical value indicating whether to move on to a new page before drawing the diagram.
`vp.ex`	positive number, typically in $(0, 1]$, specifying the scaling of the layout.
`bg`	The colour used for the background.
`cell.border`	The colour used to draw the borders of the cells in the layout.
`cell.fill`	The colour used to fill the cells in the layout.
`cell.label`	A logical indicating whether the layout cells should be labelled.
`label.col`	The colour used for layout cell labels.
`unit.col`	The colour used for labelling the widths/heights of columns/rows.
`vp`	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

A viewport is created within `vp` to provide a margin for annotation, and the layout is drawn within that new viewport. The margin is filled with light grey, the new viewport is filled with white and framed with a black border, and the layout regions are filled with light blue and framed with a blue border. The diagram is annotated with the widths and heights (including units) of the columns and rows of the layout using red text. (All colours are defaults and may be customised via function arguments.)

Value

None.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, `viewport`, `grid.layout`

Examples

```
## Diagram of a simple layout
grid.show.layout(grid.layout(4,2,
                     heights=unit(rep(1, 4),
                                  c("lines", "lines", "lines", "null")),
                     widths=unit(c(1, 1), "inches")))
```

`grid.show.viewport` *Draw a Diagram of a Grid Viewport*

Description

This function uses Grid graphics to draw a diagram of a Grid viewport.

Usage

```
grid.show.viewport(v, parent.layout = NULL, newpage = TRUE,
                     vp.ex = 0.8, border.fill="light grey",
                     vp.col="blue", vp.fill="light blue",
                     scale.col="red",
                     vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

`v`	A Grid viewport object.
`parent.layout`	A grid layout object. If this is not NULL and the viewport given in `v` has its location specified relative to the layout, then the diagram shows the layout and which cells `v` occupies within the layout.
`newpage`	A logical value to indicate whether to move to a new page before drawing the diagram.
`vp.ex`	positive number, typically in $(0, 1]$, specifying the scaling of the layout.
`border.fill`	Colour to fill the border margin.
`vp.col`	Colour for the border of the viewport region.
`vp.fill`	Colour to fill the viewport region.
`scale.col`	Colour to draw the viewport axes.
`vp`	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

A viewport is created within `vp` to provide a margin for annotation, and the diagram is drawn within that new viewport. By default, the margin is filled with light grey, the new viewport is filled with white and framed with a black border, and the viewport region is filled with light blue and framed with a blue border. The diagram is annotated with the width and height (including units) of the viewport, the (x, y) location of the viewport, and the x- and y-scales of the viewport, using red lines and text.

Value

None.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

Examples

```
## Diagram of a sample viewport
grid.show.viewport(viewport(x=0.6, y=0.6,
                            w=unit(1, "inches"), h=unit(1, "inches")))
grid.show.viewport(viewport(layout.pos.row=2, layout.pos.col=2:3),
                   grid.layout(3, 4))
```

---

grid.text *Draw Text*

Description

These functions create and draw text and plotmath expressions.

Usage

```
grid.text(label, x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
          just = "centre", hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL, rot = 0,
          check.overlap = FALSE, default.units = "npc",
          name = NULL, gp = gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)

textGrob(label, x = unit(0.5, "npc"), y = unit(0.5, "npc"),
          just = "centre", hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL, rot = 0,
          check.overlap = FALSE, default.units = "npc",
          name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

label	A character or expression vector. Other objects are coerced by as.graphicsAnnot.
x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-values.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-values.
just	The justification of the text relative to its (x, y) location. If there are two values, the first value specifies horizontal justification and the second value specifies vertical justification. Possible string values are: "left", "right", "centre", "center", "bottom", and "top". For numeric values, 0 means left alignment and 1 means right alignment.
hjust	A numeric vector specifying horizontal justification. If specified, overrides the just setting.
vjust	A numeric vector specifying vertical justification. If specified, overrides the just setting.
rot	The angle to rotate the text.

check.overlap	A logical value to indicate whether to check for and omit overlapping text.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x or y are only given as numeric vectors.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a text grob (a graphical object describing text), but only grid.text draws the text (and then only if draw is TRUE).

If the label argument is an expression, the output is formatted as a mathematical annotation, as for base graphics text.

Value

A text grob. grid.text returns the value invisibly.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
x <- stats::runif(20)
y <- stats::runif(20)
rot <- stats::runif(20, 0, 360)
grid.text("SOMETHING NICE AND BIG", x=x, y=y, rot=rot,
          gp=gpar(fontsize=20, col="grey"))
grid.text("SOMETHING NICE AND BIG", x=x, y=y, rot=rot,
          gp=gpar(fontsize=20), check=TRUE)
grid.newpage()
draw.text <- function(just, i, j) {
  grid.text("ABCD", x=x[j], y=y[i], just=just)
  grid.text(deparse(substitute(just)), x=x[j], y=y[i] + unit(2, "lines"),
            gp=gpar(col="grey", fontsize=8))
}
x <- unit(1:4/5, "npc")
y <- unit(1:4/5, "npc")
grid.grill(h=y, v=x, gp=gpar(col="grey"))
draw.text(c("bottom"), 1, 1)
draw.text(c("left", "bottom"), 2, 1)
draw.text(c("right", "bottom"), 3, 1)
draw.text(c("centre", "bottom"), 4, 1)
draw.text(c("centre"), 1, 2)
draw.text(c("left", "centre"), 2, 2)
draw.text(c("right", "centre"), 3, 2)
```

```
draw.text(c("centre", "centre"), 4, 2)
draw.text(c("top"), 1, 3)
draw.text(c("left", "top"), 2, 3)
draw.text(c("right", "top"), 3, 3)
draw.text(c("centre", "top"), 4, 3)
draw.text(c(), 1, 4)
draw.text(c("left"), 2, 4)
draw.text(c("right"), 3, 4)
draw.text(c("centre"), 4, 4)
```

`grid.xaxis` *Draw an X-Axis*

Description

These functions create and draw an x-axis.

Usage

```
grid.xaxis(at = NULL, label = TRUE, main = TRUE,
           edits = NULL, name = NULL,
           gp = gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)

xaxisGrob(at = NULL, label = TRUE, main = TRUE,
          edits = NULL, name = NULL,
          gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

`at`	A numeric vector of x-value locations for the tick marks.
`label`	A logical value indicating whether to draw the labels on the tick marks, or an expression or character vector which specify the labels to use. If not logical, must be the same length as the `at` argument.
`main`	A logical value indicating whether to draw the axis at the bottom (`TRUE`) or at the top (`FALSE`) of the viewport.
`edits`	A gEdit or gEditList containing edit operations to apply (to the children of the axis) when the axis is first created and during redrawing whenever `at` is `NULL`.
`name`	A character identifier.
`gp`	An object of class `gpar`, typically the output from a call to the function `gpar`. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
`draw`	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
`vp`	A Grid viewport obect (or `NULL`).

Details

Both functions create an xaxis grob (a graphical object describing an xaxis), but only `grid.xaxis` draws the xaxis (and then only if `draw` is `TRUE`).

Value

An xaxis grob. `grid.xaxis` returns the value invisibly.

Children

If the at slot of an xaxis grob is not NULL then the xaxis will have the following children:

major representing the line at the base of the tick marks.

ticks representing the tick marks.

labels representing the tick labels.

If the at slot is NULL then there are no children and ticks are drawn based on the current viewport scale.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport, grid.yaxis

---

grid.xspline *Draw an Xspline*

Description

These functions create and draw an xspline, a curve drawn relative to control points.

Usage

```
grid.xspline(...)
xsplineGrob(x = c(0, 0.5, 1, 0.5), y = c(0.5, 1, 0.5, 0),
            id = NULL, id.lengths = NULL,
            default.units = "npc",
            shape = 0, open = TRUE, arrow = NULL, repEnds = TRUE,
            name = NULL, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or unit object specifying x-locations of spline control points.
y	A numeric vector or unit object specifying y-locations of spline control points.
id	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple xsplines. All locations with the same id belong to the same xspline.
id.lengths	A numeric vector used to separate locations in x and y into multiple xspline. Specifies consecutive blocks of locations which make up separate xsplines.
default.units	A string indicating the default units to use if x or y are only given as numeric vectors.
shape	A numeric vector of values between -1 and 1, which control the shape of the spline relative to the control points.
open	A logical value indicating whether the spline is a line or a closed shape.
arrow	A list describing arrow heads to place at either end of the xspline, as produced by the arrow function.

repEnds	A logical value indicating whether the first and last control points should be replicated for drawing the curve (see Details below).
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).
...	Arguments to be passed to xsplineGrob.

Details

Both functions create an xspline grob (a graphical object describing an xspline), but only grid.xspline draws the xspline.

An xspline is a line drawn relative to control points. For each control point, the line may pass through (interpolate) the control point or it may only approach (approximate) the control point; the behaviour is determined by a shape parameter for each control point.

If the shape parameter is greater than zero, the spline approximates the control points (and is very similar to a cubic B-spline when the shape is 1). If the shape parameter is less than zero, the spline interpolates the control points (and is very similar to a Catmull-Rom spline when the shape is -1). If the shape parameter is 0, the spline forms a sharp corner at that control point.

For open xsplines, the start and end control points must have a shape of 0 (and non-zero values are silently converted to zero without warning).

For open xsplines, by default the start and end control points are actually replicated before the curve is drawn. A curve is drawn between (interpolating or approximating) the second and third of each set of four control points, so this default behaviour ensures that the resulting curve starts at the first control point you have specified and ends at the last control point. The default behaviour can be turned off via the repEnds argument, in which case the curve that is drawn starts (approximately) at the second control point and ends (approximately) at the first and second-to-last control point.

The repEnds argument is ignored for closed xsplines.

Missing values are not allowed for x and y (i.e., it is not valid for a control point to be missing).

For closed xsplines, a curve is automatically drawn between the final control point and the initial control point.

Value

A grob object.

References

Blanc, C. and Schlick, C. (1995), "X-splines : A Spline Model Designed for the End User", in *Proceedings of SIGGRAPH 95*, pp. 377–386. http://dept-info.labri.fr/~schlick/DOC/sig1.html

See Also

Grid, viewport, arrow.

xspline.

Examples

```
x <- c(0.25, 0.25, 0.75, 0.75)
y <- c(0.25, 0.75, 0.75, 0.25)

xsplineTest <- function(s, i, j, open) {
  pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.col=j, layout.pos.row=i))
  grid.points(x, y, default.units="npc", pch=16, size=unit(2, "mm"))
  grid.xspline(x, y, shape=s, open=open, gp=gpar(fill="grey"))
  grid.text(s, gp=gpar(col="grey"),
            x=unit(x, "npc") + unit(c(-1, -1, 1, 1), "mm"),
            y=unit(y, "npc") + unit(c(-1, 1, 1, -1), "mm"),
            hjust=c(1, 1, 0, 0),
            vjust=c(1, 0, 0, 1))
  popViewport()
}

pushViewport(viewport(width=.5, x=0, just="left",
                      layout=grid.layout(3, 3, respect=TRUE)))
pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row=1))
grid.text("Open Splines", y=1, just="bottom")
popViewport()
xsplineTest(c(0, -1, -1, 0), 1, 1, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0, -1,  0, 0), 1, 2, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0, -1,  1, 0), 1, 3, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0,  0, -1, 0), 2, 1, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0,  0,  0, 0), 2, 2, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0,  0,  1, 0), 2, 3, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0,  1, -1, 0), 3, 1, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0,  1,  0, 0), 3, 2, TRUE)
xsplineTest(c(0,  1,  1, 0), 3, 3, TRUE)
popViewport()
pushViewport(viewport(width=.5, x=1, just="right",
                      layout=grid.layout(3, 3, respect=TRUE)))
pushViewport(viewport(layout.pos.row=1))
grid.text("Closed Splines", y=1, just="bottom")
popViewport()
xsplineTest(c(-1, -1, -1, -1), 1, 1, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c(-1, -1,  0, -1), 1, 2, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c(-1, -1,  1, -1), 1, 3, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c( 0,  0, -1,  0), 2, 1, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c( 0,  0,  0,  0), 2, 2, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c( 0,  0,  1,  0), 2, 3, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c( 1,  1, -1,  1), 3, 1, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c( 1,  1,  0,  1), 3, 2, FALSE)
xsplineTest(c( 1,  1,  1,  1), 3, 3, FALSE)
popViewport()
```

`grid.yaxis` *Draw a Y-Axis*

Description

These functions create and draw a y-axis.

Usage

```
grid.yaxis(at = NULL, label = TRUE, main = TRUE,
           edits = NULL, name = NULL,
           gp = gpar(), draw = TRUE, vp = NULL)

yaxisGrob(at = NULL, label = TRUE, main = TRUE,
          edits = NULL, name = NULL,
          gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)
```

Arguments

at	A numeric vector of y-value locations for the tick marks.
label	A logical value indicating whether to draw the labels on the tick marks, or an expression or character vector which specify the labels to use. If not logical, must be the same length as the at argument.
main	A logical value indicating whether to draw the axis at the left (TRUE) or at the right (FALSE) of the viewport.
edits	A gEdit or gEditList containing edit operations to apply (to the children of the axis) when the axis is first created and during redrawing whenever at is NULL.
name	A character identifier.
gp	An object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar. This is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
draw	A logical value indicating whether graphics output should be produced.
vp	A Grid viewport object (or NULL).

Details

Both functions create a yaxis grob (a graphical object describing a yaxis), but only grid.yaxis draws the yaxis (and then only if draw is TRUE).

Value

A yaxis grob. grid.yaxis returns the value invisibly.

Children

If the at slot of an xaxis grob is not NULL then the xaxis will have the following children:

major representing the line at the base of the tick marks.

ticks representing the tick marks.

labels representing the tick labels.

If the at slot is NULL then there are no children and ticks are drawn based on the current viewport scale.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

Grid, viewport, grid.xaxis

grobName *Generate a Name for a Grob*

Description

This function generates a unique (within-session) name for a grob, based on the grob's class.

Usage

```
grobName(grob = NULL, prefix = "GRID")
```

Arguments

grob	A grob object or NULL.
prefix	The prefix part of the name.

Value

A character string of the form `prefix.class(grob).index`

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

grobWidth *Create a Unit Describing the Width of a Grob*

Description

These functions create a unit object describing the width or height of a grob. They are generic.

Usage

```
grobWidth(x)
grobHeight(x)
grobAscent(x)
grobDescent(x)
```

Arguments

x	A grob object.

Value

A unit object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

unit and stringWidth

---

grobX *Create a Unit Describing a Grob Boundary Location*

Description

These functions create a unit object describing a location somewhere on the boundary of a grob. They are generic.

Usage

```
grobX(x, theta)
grobY(x, theta)
```

Arguments

x	A grob, or gList, or gTree, or gPath.
theta	An angle indicating where the location is on the grob boundary. Can be one of "east", "north", "west", or "south", which correspond to angles 0, 90, 180, and 270, respectively.

Details

The angle is anti-clockwise with zero corresponding to a line with an origin centred between the extreme points of the shape, and pointing at 3 o'clock.

If the grob describes a single shape, the boundary value should correspond to the exact edge of the shape.

If the grob describes multiple shapes, the boundary value will either correspond to the edge of a bounding box around all of the shapes described by the grob (for multiple rectangles, circles, xsplines, or text), or to a convex hull around all vertices of all shapes described by the grob (for multiple polygons, points, lines, polylines, and segments).

Points grobs are currently a special case because the convex hull is based on the data symbol *locations* and does not take into account the extent of the data symbols themselves.

The extents of any arrow heads are currently *not* taken into account.

Value

A unit object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

unit and grobWidth

legendGrob *Constructing a Legend Grob*

Description

Constructing a legend grob (in progress)

Usage

```
legendGrob(labels, nrow, ncol, byrow = FALSE,
           do.lines = has.lty || has.lwd, lines.first = TRUE,
           hgap = unit(1, "lines"), vgap = unit(1, "lines"),
           default.units = "lines", pch, gp = gpar(), vp = NULL)

grid.legend(..., draw=TRUE)
```

Arguments

labels	legend labels (expressions)
nrow, ncol	integer; the number of rows or columns, respectively of the legend "layout". nrow is optional and typically computed from the number of labels and ncol.
byrow	logical indicating whether rows of the legend are filled first.
do.lines	logical indicating whether legend lines are drawn.
lines.first	logical indicating whether legend lines are drawn first and hence in a plain "below" legend symbols.
hgap	horizontal space between the legend entries
vgap	vertical space between the legend entries
default.units	default units, see unit.
pch	legend symbol, numeric or character, passed to pointsGrob(); see also points for interpretation of the numeric codes.
gp	an object of class gpar, typically the output from a call to the function gpar, is basically a list of graphical parameter settings.
vp	a Grid viewport object (or NULL).
...	for grid.legend(): all the arguments above are passed to legendGrob().
draw	logical indicating whether graphics output should be produced.

Value

Both functions create a legend grob (a graphical object describing a plot legend), but only grid.legend draws it (only if draw is TRUE).

See Also

Grid, viewport; pointsGrob, linesGrob.

grid.plot.and.legend contains a simple example.

Examples

```
## Data:
n <- 10
x <- stats::runif(n) ; y1 <- stats::runif(n) ; y2 <- stats::runif(n)
## Construct the grobs :
plot <- gTree(children=gList(rectGrob(),
                pointsGrob(x, y1, pch=21, gp=gpar(col=2, fill="gray")),
                pointsGrob(x, y2, pch=22, gp=gpar(col=3, fill="gray")),
                xaxisGrob(),
                yaxisGrob()))
legd <- legendGrob(c("Girls", "Boys", "Other"), pch=21:23,
                   gp=gpar(col = 2:4, fill = "gray"))
gg <- packGrob(packGrob(frameGrob(), plot),
               legd, height=unit(1,"null"), side="right")

## Now draw it on a new device page:
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(width=0.8, height=0.8))
grid.draw(gg)
```

`makeContent` *Customised grid Grobs*

Description

These generic hook functions are called whenever a grid grob is drawn. They provide an opportunity for customising the drawing context and drawing content of a new class derived from grob (or gTree).

Usage

```
makeContext(x)
makeContent(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	A grid grob.

Details

These functions are called by the `grid.draw` methods for grobs and gTrees.

`makeContext` is called first during the drawing of a grob. This function should be used to *modify* the `vp` slot of `x` (and/or the `childrenvp` slot if `x` is a gTree). The function *must* return the modified `x`. Note that the default behaviour for grobs is to push any viewports in the `vp` slot, and for gTrees is to also push and up any viewports in the `childrenvp` slot, so this function is used to customise the drawing context for a grob or gTree.

`makeContent` is called next and is where any additional calculations should occur and graphical content should be generated (see, for example, `grid:::makeContent.xaxis`. This function should be used to *modify* the `children` of a gTree. The function *must* return the modified `x`. Note that the default behaviour for gTrees is to draw all grobs in the `children` slot, so this function is used to customise the drawing content for a gTree. It is also possible to customise the drawing content for

a simple grob, but more care needs to be taken; for example, the function should return a standard grid primitive with a `drawDetails()` method in this case.

Note that these functions should be *cumulative* in their effects, so that the `x` returned by `makeContent()` *includes* any changes made by `makeContext()`.

Note that `makeContext` is also called in the calculation of `"grobwidth"` and `"grobheight"` units.

Value

Both functions are expected to return a grob or gTree (a modified version of `x`).

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`grid.draw`

`plotViewport` *Create a Viewport with a Standard Plot Layout*

Description

This is a convenience function for producing a viewport with the common S-style plot layout – i.e., a central plot region surrounded by margins given in terms of a number of lines of text.

Usage

```
plotViewport(margins=c(5.1, 4.1, 4.1, 2.1), ...)
```

Arguments

`margins`	A numeric vector interpreted in the same way as `par(mar)` in base graphics.
`...`	All other arguments will be passed to a call to the `viewport()` function.

Value

A grid viewport object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`viewport` and `dataViewport`.

`Querying the Viewport Tree`

Get the Current Grid Viewport (Tree)

Description

`current.viewport()` returns the viewport that Grid is going to draw into.

`current.parent` returns the parent of the current viewport.

`current.vpTree` returns the entire Grid viewport tree.

`current.vpPath` returns the viewport path to the current viewport.

`current.transform` returns the transformation matrix for the current viewport.

`current.rotation` returns the (total) rotation for the current viewport.

Usage

```
current.viewport()
current.parent(n=1)
current.vpTree(all=TRUE)
current.vpPath()
current.transform()
```

Arguments

`n`	The number of generations to go up.
`all`	A logical value indicating whether the entire viewport tree should be returned.

Details

It is possible to get the grandparent of the current viewport (or higher) using the `n` argument to `current.parent()`.

The parent of the ROOT viewport is `NULL`. It is an error to request the grandparent of the ROOT viewport.

If `all` is `FALSE` then `current.vpTree` only returns the subtree below the current viewport.

Value

A Grid viewport object from `current.viewport` or `current.vpTree`.

`current.transform` returns a 4x4 transformation matrix.

The viewport path returned by `current.vpPath` is `NULL` if the current viewport is the `ROOT` viewport

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`viewport`

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(width=0.8, height=0.8, name="A"))
pushViewport(viewport(x=0.1, width=0.3, height=0.6,
  just="left", name="B"))
upViewport(1)
pushViewport(viewport(x=0.5, width=0.4, height=0.8,
  just="left", name="C"))
pushViewport(viewport(width=0.8, height=0.8, name="D"))
current.vpPath()
upViewport(1)
current.vpPath()
current.vpTree()
current.viewport()
current.vpTree(all=FALSE)
popViewport(0)
```

---

resolveRasterSize *Utility function to resolve the size of a raster grob*

Description

Determine the width and height of a raster grob when one or both are not given explicitly.

The result depends on both the aspect ratio of the raster image and the aspect ratio of the physical drawing context, so the result is only valid for the drawing context in which this function is called.

Usage

```
resolveRasterSize(x)
```

Arguments

x	A raster grob

Details

A raster grob can be specified with width and/or height of NULL, which means that the size at which the raster is drawn will be decided at drawing time.

Value

A raster grob, with explicit width and height.

See Also

grid.raster

Examples

```
# Square raster
rg <- rasterGrob(matrix(0))
# Fill the complete page (if page is square)
grid.newpage()
resolveRasterSize(rg)$height
grid.draw(rg)
# Forced to fit tall thin region
grid.newpage()
pushViewport(viewport(width=.1))
resolveRasterSize(rg)$height
grid.draw(rg)
```

---

roundrect *Draw a rectangle with rounded corners*

Description

Draw a *single* rectangle with rounded corners.

Usage

```
roundrectGrob(x=0.5, y=0.5, width=1, height=1,
              default.units="npc",
              r=unit(0.1, "snpc"),
              just="centre",
              name=NULL, gp=NULL, vp=NULL)
grid.roundrect(...)
```

Arguments

`x, y, width, height`	The location and size of the rectangle.
`default.units`	A string indicating the default units to use if `x`, `y`, `width`, or `height` are only given as numeric vectors.
`r`	The radius of the rounded corners.
`just`	The justification of the rectangle relative to its location.
`name`	A name to identify the grob.
`gp`	Graphical parameters to apply to the grob.
`vp`	A viewport object or `NULL`.
`...`	Arguments to be passed to `roundrectGrob()`.

Details

At present, this function can only be used to draw *one* rounded rectangle.

Examples

```
grid.roundrect(width=.5, height=.5, name="rr")
theta <- seq(0, 360, length=50)
for (i in 1:50)
    grid.circle(x=grobX("rr", theta[i]),
                y=grobY("rr", theta[i]),
                r=unit(1, "mm"),
                gp=gpar(fill="black"))
```

---

showGrob *Label grid grobs.*

Description

Produces a graphical display of (by default) the current grid scene, with labels showing the names of each grob in the scene. It is also possible to label only specific grobs in the scene.

Usage

```
showGrob(x = NULL,
         gPath = NULL, strict = FALSE, grep = FALSE,
         recurse = TRUE, depth = NULL,
         labelfun = grobLabel, ...)
```

Arguments

x	If NULL, the current grid scene is labelled. Otherwise, a grob (or gTree) to draw and then label.
gPath	A path identifying a subset of the current scene or grob to be labelled.
strict	Logical indicating whether the gPath is strict.
grep	Logical indicating whether the gPath is a regular expression.
recurse	Should the children of gTrees also be labelled?
depth	Only display grobs at the specified depth (may be a vector of depths).
labelfun	Function used to generate a label from each grob.
...	Arguments passed to labelfun to control fine details of the generated label.

Details

None of the labelling is recorded on the grid display list so the original scene can be reproduced by calling grid.refresh.

See Also

grob and gTree

Examples

```
        grid.newpage()
        gt <- gTree(childrenvp=vpStack(
                      viewport(x=0, width=.5, just="left", name="vp"),
                      viewport(y=.5, height=.5, just="bottom", name="vp2")),
                    children=gList(rectGrob(vp="vp::vp2", name="child")),
                    name="parent")
        grid.draw(gt)
        showGrob()
        showGrob(gPath="child")
        showGrob(recurse=FALSE)
        showGrob(depth=1)
        showGrob(depth=2)
        showGrob(depth=1:2)
        showGrob(gt)
        showGrob(gt, gPath="child")
        showGrob(just="left", gp=gpar(col="red", cex=.5), rot=45)
        showGrob(labelfun=function(grob, ...) {
            x <- grobX(grob, "west")
            y <- grobY(grob, "north")
            gTree(children=gList(rectGrob(x=x, y=y,
                    width=stringWidth(grob$name) + unit(2, "mm"),
                    height=stringHeight(grob$name) + unit(2, "mm"),
                    gp=gpar(col=NA, fill=rgb(1, 0, 0, .5)),
                    just=c("left", "top")),
                    textGrob(grob$name,
                             x=x + unit(1, "mm"), y=y - unit(1, "mm"),
                             just=c("left", "top"))))
        })

    ## Not run:
        # Examples from higher-level packages

        library(lattice)
        # Ctrl-c after first example
        example(histogram)
        showGrob()
        showGrob(gPath="plot_01.ylab")

        library(ggplot2)
        # Ctrl-c after first example
        example(qplot)
        showGrob()
        showGrob(recurse=FALSE)
        showGrob(gPath="panel-3-3")
        showGrob(gPath="axis.title", grep=TRUE)
        showGrob(depth=2)

    ## End(Not run)
```

---

showViewport *Display grid viewports.*

Description

Produces a graphical display of (by default) the current grid viewport tree. It is also possible to display only specific viewports. Each viewport is drawn as a rectangle and the leaf viewports are labelled with the viewport name.

Usage

```
showViewport(vp = NULL, recurse = TRUE, depth = NULL,
             newpage = FALSE, leaves = FALSE,
             col = rgb(0, 0, 1, 0.2), fill = rgb(0, 0, 1, 0.1),
             label = TRUE, nrow = 3, ncol = nrow)
```

Arguments

vp	If NULL, the current viewport tree is displayed. Otherwise, a viewport (or vpList, or vpStack, or vpTree) or a vpPath that specifies which viewport to display.
recurse	Should the children of the specified viewport also be displayed?
depth	Only display viewports at the specified depth (may be a vector of depths).
newpage	Start a new page for the display? Otherwise, the viewports are displayed on top of the current plot.
leaves	Produce a matrix of smaller displays, with each leaf viewport in its own display.
col	The colour used to draw the border of the rectangle for each viewport *and* to draw the label for each viewport. If a vector, then the first colour is used for the top-level viewport, the second colour is used for its children, the third colour for their children, and so on.
fill	The colour used to fill each viewport. May be a vector as per col.
label	Should the viewports be labelled (with the viewport name)?
nrow, ncol	The number of rows and columns when leaves is TRUE. Otherwise ignored.

See Also

viewport and grid.show.viewport

Examples

```
showViewport(viewport(width=.5, height=.5, name="vp"))

showViewport(vpStack(viewport(width=.5, height=.5, name="vp1"),
                     viewport(width=.5, height=.5, name="vp2")),
             newpage=TRUE)

showViewport(vpStack(viewport(width=.5, height=.5, name="vp1"),
                     viewport(width=.5, height=.5, name="vp2")),
             fill=rgb(1:0, 0:1, 0, .1),
             newpage=TRUE)
```

stringWidth — *Create a Unit Describing the Width and Height of a String or Math Expression*

Description

These functions create a unit object describing the width or height of a string.

Usage

```
stringWidth(string)
stringHeight(string)
stringAscent(string)
stringDescent(string)
```

Arguments

string	A character vector or a language object (as used for 'plotmath' calls.

Value

A unit object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

unit and grobWidth

strwidth in the **graphics** package for more details of the typographic concepts behind the computations.

unit — *Function to Create a Unit Object*

Description

This function creates a unit object — a vector of unit values. A unit value is typically just a single numeric value with an associated unit.

Usage

```
unit(x, units, data=NULL)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector.
units	A character vector specifying the units for the corresponding numeric values.
data	This argument is used to supply extra information for special unit types.

Details

Unit objects allow the user to specify locations and dimensions in a large number of different coordinate systems. All drawing occurs relative to a viewport and the `units` specifies what coordinate system to use within that viewport.

Possible `units` (coordinate systems) are:

`"npc"` Normalised Parent Coordinates (the default). The origin of the viewport is (0, 0) and the viewport has a width and height of 1 unit. For example, (0.5, 0.5) is the centre of the viewport.

`"cm"` Centimetres.

`"inches"` Inches. 1 in = 2.54 cm.

`"mm"` Millimetres. 10 mm = 1 cm.

`"points"` Points. 72.27 pt = 1 in.

`"picas"` Picas. 1 pc = 12 pt.

`"bigpts"` Big Points. 72 bp = 1 in.

`"dida"` Dida. 1157 dd = 1238 pt.

`"cicero"` Cicero. 1 cc = 12 dd.

`"scaledpts"` Scaled Points. 65536 sp = 1 pt.

`"lines"` Lines of text. Locations and dimensions are in terms of multiples of the default text size of the viewport (as specified by the viewport's `fontsize` and `lineheight`).

`"char"` Multiples of nominal font height of the viewport (as specified by the viewport's `fontsize`).

`"native"` Locations and dimensions are relative to the viewport's `xscale` and `yscale`.

`"snpc"` Square Normalised Parent Coordinates. Same as Normalised Parent Coordinates, except gives the same answer for horizontal and vertical locations/dimensions. It uses the *lesser* of npc-width and npc-height. This is useful for making things which are a proportion of the viewport, but have to be square (or have a fixed aspect ratio).

`"strwidth"` Multiples of the width of the string specified in the `data` argument. The font size is determined by the pointsize of the viewport.

`"strheight"` Multiples of the height of the string specified in the `data` argument. The font size is determined by the pointsize of the viewport.

`"grobwidth"` Multiples of the width of the grob specified in the `data` argument.

`"grobheight"` Multiples of the height of the grob specified in the `data` argument.

A number of variations are also allowed for the most common units. For example, it is possible to use `"in"` or `"inch"` instead of `"inches"` and `"centimetre"` or `"centimeter"` instead of `"cm"`.

A special `units` value of `"null"` is also allowed, but only makes sense when used in specifying widths of columns or heights of rows in grid layouts (see `grid.layout`).

The `data` argument must be a list when the `unit.length()` is greater than 1. For example,

```
unit(rep(1, 3), c("npc", "strwidth", "inches"),
data = list(NULL, "my string", NULL))
```

.

It is possible to subset unit objects in the normal way (e.g., `unit(1:5, "npc")[2:4]`), but a special function `unit.c` is provided for combining unit objects.

Certain arithmetic and summary operations are defined for unit objects. In particular, it is possible to add and subtract unit objects (e.g., `unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "inches")`), and to specify the minimum or maximum of a list of unit objects (e.g., `min(unit(0.5, "npc"), unit(1, "inches"))`).

Value

An object of class "unit".

WARNING

There is a special function unit.c for concatenating several unit objects.

The c function will not give the right answer.

There used to be "mylines", "mychar", "mystrwidth", "mystrheight" units. These will still be accepted, but work exactly the same as "lines", "char", "strwidth", "strheight".

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

unit.c

Examples

```
unit(1, "npc")
unit(1:3/4, "npc")
unit(1:3/4, "npc") + unit(1, "inches")
min(unit(0.5, "npc"), unit(1, "inches"))
unit.c(unit(0.5, "npc"), unit(2, "inches") + unit(1:3/4, "npc"),
       unit(1, "strwidth", "hi there"))
```

---

unit.c *Combine Unit Objects*

Description

This function produces a new unit object by combining the unit objects specified as arguments.

Usage

```
unit.c(...)
```

Arguments

...	An arbitrary number of unit objects.

Value

An object of class unit.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

unit.

unit.length *Length of a Unit Object*

Description

The length of a unit object is defined as the number of unit values in the unit object.

This function has been deprecated in favour of a unit method for the generic `length` function.

Usage

```
unit.length(unit)
```

Arguments

`unit`	A unit object.

Value

An integer value.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`unit`

Examples

```
length(unit(1:3, "npc"))
length(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "inches"))
length(max(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "inches")))
length(max(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "strwidth", "a"))*4)
length(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "strwidth", "a")*4)
```

unit.pmin *Parallel Unit Minima and Maxima*

Description

Returns a unit object whose i'th value is the minimum (or maximum) of the i'th values of the arguments.

Usage

```
unit.pmin(...)
unit.pmax(...)
```

Arguments

...	One or more unit objects.

Details

The length of the result is the maximum of the lengths of the arguments; shorter arguments are recycled in the usual manner.

Value

A unit object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

Examples

```
max(unit(1:3, "cm"), unit(0.5, "npc"))
unit.pmax(unit(1:3, "cm"), unit(0.5, "npc"))
```

---

unit.rep *Replicate Elements of Unit Objects*

Description

Replicates the units according to the values given in `times` and `length.out`.

This function has been deprecated in favour of a unit method for the generic `rep` function.

Usage

```
unit.rep(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	An object of class `"unit"`.
...	arguments to be passed to `rep` such as `times` and `length.out`.

Value

An object of class `"unit"`.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`rep`

Examples

```
rep(unit(1:3, "npc"), 3)
rep(unit(1:3, "npc"), 1:3)
rep(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "inches"), 3)
rep(max(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "inches")), 3)
rep(max(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "strwidth", "a"))*4, 3)
rep(unit(1:3, "npc") + unit(1, "strwidth", "a")*4, 3)
```

---

valid.just *Validate a Justification*

Description

Utility functions for determining whether a justification specification is valid and for resolving a single justification value from a combination of character and numeric values.

Usage

```
valid.just(just)
resolveHJust(just, hjust)
resolveVJust(just, vjust)
```

Arguments

just	A justification either as a character value, e.g., "left", or as a numeric value, e.g., 0.
hjust	A numeric horizontal justification
vjust	A numeric vertical justification

Details

These functions may be useful within a validDetails method when writing a new grob class.

Value

A numeric representation of the justification (e.g., "left" becomes 0, "right" becomes 1, etc, ...). An error is given if the justification is not valid.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

validDetails *Customising grid grob Validation*

Description

This generic hook function is called whenever a grid grob is created or edited via grob, gTree, grid.edit or editGrob. This provides an opportunity for customising the validation of a new class derived from grob (or gTree).

Usage

```
validDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x	A grid grob.

Details

This function is called by grob, gTree, grid.edit and editGrob. A method should be written for classes derived from grob or gTree to validate the values of slots specific to the new class. (e.g., see grid:::validDetails.axis).

Note that the standard slots for grobs and gTrees are automatically validated (e.g., vp, gp slots for grobs and, in addition, children, and childrenvp slots for gTrees) so only slots specific to a new class need to be addressed.

Value

The function MUST return the validated grob.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

grid.edit

vpPath *Concatenate Viewport Names*

Description

This function can be used to generate a viewport path for use in downViewport or seekViewport.

A viewport path is a list of nested viewport names.

Usage

```
vpPath(...)
```

Arguments

...	Character values which are viewport names.

Details

Viewport names must only be unique amongst viewports which share the same parent in the viewport tree.

This function can be used to generate a specification for a viewport that includes the viewport's parent's name (and the name of its parent and so on).

For interactive use, it is possible to directly specify a path, but it is strongly recommended that this function is used otherwise in case the path separator is changed in future versions of grid.

Value

A `vpPath` object.

See Also

`viewport`, `pushViewport`, `popViewport`, `downViewport`, `seekViewport`, `upViewport`

Examples

```
vpPath("vp1", "vp2")
```

`widthDetails` *Width and Height of a grid grob*

Description

These generic functions are used to determine the size of grid grobs.

Usage

```
widthDetails(x)
heightDetails(x)
ascentDetails(x)
descentDetails(x)
```

Arguments

x	A grid grob.

Details

These functions are called in the calculation of `"grobwidth"` and `"grobheight"` units. Methods should be written for classes derived from grob or gTree where the size of the grob can be determined (see, for example `grid:::widthDetails.frame`).

The ascent of a grob is the height of the grob by default and the descent of a grob is zero by default, except for text grobs where the label is a single character value or expression.

Value

A unit object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`absolute.size`.

`Working with Viewports`

Maintaining and Navigating the Grid Viewport Tree

Description

Grid maintains a tree of viewports — nested drawing contexts.

These functions provide ways to add or remove viewports and to navigate amongst viewports in the tree.

Usage

```
pushViewport(..., recording=TRUE)
popViewport(n = 1, recording=TRUE)
downViewport(name, strict=FALSE, recording=TRUE)
seekViewport(name, recording=TRUE)
upViewport(n = 1, recording=TRUE)
```

Arguments

`...`	One or more objects of class `"viewport"`.
`n`	An integer value indicating how many viewports to pop or navigate up. The special value `0` indicates to pop or navigate viewports right up to the root viewport.
`name`	A character value to identify a viewport in the tree.
`strict`	A boolean indicating whether the vpPath must be matched exactly.
`recording`	A logical value to indicate whether the viewport operation should be recorded on the Grid display list.

Details

Objects created by the `viewport()` function are only descriptions of a drawing context. A viewport object must be pushed onto the viewport tree before it has any effect on drawing.

The viewport tree always has a single root viewport (created by the system) which corresponds to the entire device (and default graphical parameter settings). Viewports may be added to the tree using `pushViewport()` and removed from the tree using `popViewport()`.

There is only ever one current viewport, which is the current position within the viewport tree. All drawing and viewport operations are relative to the current viewport. When a viewport is pushed it becomes the current viewport. When a viewport is popped, the parent viewport becomes the current

viewport. Use upViewport to navigate to the parent of the current viewport, without removing the current viewport from the viewport tree. Use downViewport to navigate to a viewport further down the viewport tree and seekViewport to navigate to a viewport anywhere else in the tree.

If a viewport is pushed and it has the same name as a viewport at the same level in the tree, then it replaces the existing viewport in the tree.

Value

downViewport returns the number of viewports it went down.

This can be useful for returning to your starting point by doing something like depth <- downViewport() then upViewport(depth).

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

viewport and vpPath.

Examples

```
# push the same viewport several times
grid.newpage()
vp <- viewport(width=0.5, height=0.5)
pushViewport(vp)
grid.rect(gp=gpar(col="blue"))
grid.text("Quarter of the device",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="blue"))
pushViewport(vp)
grid.rect(gp=gpar(col="red"))
grid.text("Quarter of the parent viewport",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="red"))
popViewport(2)
# push several viewports then navigate amongst them
grid.newpage()
grid.rect(gp=gpar(col="grey"))
grid.text("Top-level viewport",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="grey"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
pushViewport(viewport(width=0.8, height=0.7, name="A"))
grid.rect(gp=gpar(col="blue"))
grid.text("1. Push Viewport A",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="blue"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
pushViewport(viewport(x=0.1, width=0.3, height=0.6,
  just="left", name="B"))
grid.rect(gp=gpar(col="red"))
grid.text("2. Push Viewport B (in A)",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="red"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
upViewport(1)
grid.text("3. Up from B to A",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(2, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="blue"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
pushViewport(viewport(x=0.5, width=0.4, height=0.8,
```

```
  just="left", name="C"))
grid.rect(gp=gpar(col="green"))
grid.text("4. Push Viewport C (in A)",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="green"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
pushViewport(viewport(width=0.8, height=0.6, name="D"))
grid.rect()
grid.text("5. Push Viewport D (in C)",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
upViewport(0)
grid.text("6. Up from D to top-level",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(2, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="grey"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
downViewport("D")
grid.text("7. Down from top-level to D",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(2, "lines"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
seekViewport("B")
grid.text("8. Seek from D to B",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(2, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="red"))
pushViewport(viewport(width=0.9, height=0.5, name="A"))
grid.rect()
grid.text("9. Push Viewport A (in B)",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(1, "lines"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
seekViewport("A")
grid.text("10. Seek from B to A (in ROOT)",
  y=unit(1, "npc") - unit(3, "lines"), gp=gpar(col="blue"))
if (interactive()) Sys.sleep(1.0)
seekViewport(vpPath("B", "A"))
grid.text("11. Seek from\nA (in ROOT)\nto A (in B)")
popViewport(0)
```

`xDetails` *Boundary of a grid grob*

Description

These generic functions are used to determine a location on the boundary of a grid grob.

Usage

```
xDetails(x, theta)
yDetails(x, theta)
```

Arguments

`x`	A grid grob.
`theta`	A numeric angle, in degrees, measured anti-clockwise from the 3 o'clock *or* one of the following character strings: `"north"`, `"east"`, `"west"`, `"south"`.

Details

The location on the grob boundary is determined by taking a line from the centre of the grob at the angle `theta` and intersecting it with the convex hull of the grob (for the basic grob primitives, the centre is determined as half way between the minimum and maximum values in x and y directions).

These functions are called in the calculation of `"grobx"` and `"groby"` units as produced by the `grobX` and `grobY` functions. Methods should be written for classes derived from grob or gTree where the boundary of the grob can be determined.

Value

A unit object.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

`grobX`, `grobY`.

---

xsplinePoints *Return the points that would be used to draw an Xspline (or a Bezier curve).*

Description

Rather than drawing an Xspline (or Bezier curve), this function returns the points that would be used to draw the series of line segments for the Xspline. This may be useful to post-process the Xspline curve, for example, to clip the curve.

Usage

```
xsplinePoints(x)
bezierPoints(x)
```

Arguments

x	An Xspline grob, as produced by the `xsplineGrob()` function (or a beziergrob, as produced by the `bezierGrob()` function).

Details

The points returned by this function will only be relevant for the drawing context in force when this function was called.

Value

Depends on how many Xsplines would be drawn. If only one, then a list with two components, named x and y, both of which are unit objects (in inches). If several Xsplines would be drawn then the result of this function is a list of lists.

Author(s)

Paul Murrell

See Also

xsplineGrob and bezierGrob

Examples

```
grid.newpage()
xsg <- xsplineGrob(c(.1, .1, .9, .9), c(.1, .9, .9, .1), shape=1)
grid.draw(xsg)
trace <- xsplinePoints(xsg)
grid.circle(trace$x, trace$y, default.units="inches", r=unit(.5, "mm"))

grid.newpage()
vp <- viewport(width=.5)
xg <- xsplineGrob(x=c(0, .2, .4, .2, .5, .7, .9, .7),
                  y=c(.5, 1, .5, 0, .5, 1, .5, 0),
                  id=rep(1:2, each=4),
                  shape=1,
                  vp=vp)
grid.draw(xg)
trace <- xsplinePoints(xg)
pushViewport(vp)
invisible(lapply(trace, function(t) grid.lines(t$x, t$y, gp=gpar(col="red"))))
popViewport()

grid.newpage()
bg <- bezierGrob(c(.2, .2, .8, .8), c(.2, .8, .8, .2))
grid.draw(bg)
trace <- bezierPoints(bg)
grid.circle(trace$x, trace$y, default.units="inches", r=unit(.5, "mm"))
```

Chapter 7

The `methods` package

`methods-package` *Formal Methods and Classes*

Description

Formally defined methods and classes for R objects, plus other programming tools, as described in the references.

Details

This package provides the 'S4' or 'S version 4' approach to methods and classes in a functional language.

See the documentation entries `Classes`, `Methods`, and `GenericFunctions` for general discussion of these topics, at a fairly technical level. Links from those pages, and the documentation of `setClass` and `setMethod` cover the main programming tools needed.

For a complete list of functions and classes, use `library(help="methods")`.

Author(s)

R Core Team

Maintainer: R Core Team `<R-core@r-project.org>`

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

.BasicFunsList *List of Builtin and Special Functions*

Description

A named list providing instructions for turning builtin and special functions into generic functions.

Functions in R that are defined as `.Primitive(<name>)` are not suitable for formal methods, because they lack the basic reflectance property. You can't find the argument list for these functions by examining the function object itself.

Future versions of R may fix this by attaching a formal argument list to the corresponding function. While generally the names of arguments are not checked by the internal code implementing the function, the number of arguments frequently is.

In any case, some definition of a formal argument list is needed if users are to define methods for these functions. In particular, if methods are to be merged from multiple packages, the different sets of methods need to agree on the formal arguments.

In the absence of reflectance, this list provides the relevant information via a dummy function associated with each of the known specials for which methods are allowed.

At the same, the list flags those specials for which methods are meaningless (e.g., `for`) or just a very bad idea (e.g., `.Primitive`).

A generic function created via `setMethod`, for example, for one of these special functions will have the argument list from `.BasicFunsList`. If no entry exists, the argument list `(x, ...)` is assumed.

as *Force an Object to Belong to a Class*

Description

These functions manage the relations that allow coercing an object to a given class.

Usage

```
as(object, Class, strict=TRUE, ext)

as(object, Class) <- value

setAs(from, to, def, replace, where = topenv(parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

`object`	any object.
`Class`	the name of the class to which `object` should be coerced.
`strict`	logical flag. If `TRUE`, the returned object must be strictly from the target class (unless that class is a virtual class, in which case the object will be from the closest actual class, in particular the original object, if that class extends the virtual class directly).

If `strict = FALSE`, any simple extension of the target class will be returned, without further change. A simple extension is, roughly, one that just adds slots to an existing class.

`value` The value to use to modify `object` (see the discussion below). You should supply an object with class `Class`; some coercion is done, but you're unwise to rely on it.

`from, to` The classes between which the coerce methods `def` and `replace` perform coercion.

`def` function of one argument. It will get an object from class `from` and had better return an object of class `to`. The convention is that the name of the argument is `from`; if another argument name is used, `setAs` will attempt to substitute `from`.

`replace` if supplied, the function to use as a replacement method, when `as` is used on the left of an assignment. Should be a function of two arguments, `from, value`, although `setAs` will attempt to substitute if the arguments differ.

`where` the position or environment in which to store the resulting methods. For most applications, it is recommended to omit this argument and to include the call to `setAs` in source code that is evaluated at the top level; that is, either in an R session by something equivalent to a call to `source`, or as part of the R source code for a package.

`ext` the optional object defining how `Class` is extended by the class of the object (as returned by `possibleExtends`). This argument is used internally (to provide essential information for non-public classes), but you are unlikely to want to use it directly.

Summary of Functions

`as`**:** Returns the version of this object coerced to be the given `Class`. When used in the replacement form on the left of an assignment, the portion of the object corresponding to `Class` is replaced by `value`.

The operation of `as()` in either form depends on the definition of coerce methods. Methods are defined automatically when the two classes are related by inheritance; that is, when one of the classes is a subclass of the other. See the section on inheritance below for details.

Coerce methods are also predefined for basic classes (including all the types of vectors, functions and a few others). See `showMethods(coerce)` for a list of these.

Beyond these two sources of methods, further methods are defined by calls to the `setAs` function.

`setAs`**:** Define methods for coercing an object of class `from` to be of class `to`; the `def` argument provides for direct coercing and the `replace` argument, if included, provides for replacement. See the "How" section below for details.

`coerce`**,** `coerce<-`**:** Coerce `from` to be of the same class as `to`.

These functions should not be called explicitly. The function `setAs` creates methods for them for the `as` function to use.

Inheritance and Coercion

Objects from one class can turn into objects from another class either automatically or by an explicit call to the `as` function. Automatic conversion is special, and comes from the designer of one class of objects asserting that this class extends another class. The most common case is that one or more class names are supplied in the `contains=` argument to `setClass`, in which case the new class

extends each of the earlier classes (in the usual terminology, the earlier classes are *superclasses* of the new class and it is a *subclass* of each of them).

This form of inheritance is called *simple* inheritance in . See `setClass` for details. Inheritance can also be defined explicitly by a call to `setIs`. The two versions have slightly different implications for coerce methods. Simple inheritance implies that inherited slots behave identically in the subclass and the superclass. Whenever two classes are related by simple inheritance, corresponding coerce methods are defined for both direct and replacement use of `as`. In the case of simple inheritance, these methods do the obvious computation: they extract or replace the slots in the object that correspond to those in the superclass definition.

The implicitly defined coerce methods may be overridden by a call to `setAs`; note, however, that the implicit methods are defined for each subclass-superclass pair, so that you must override each of these explicitly, not rely on inheritance.

When inheritance is defined by a call to `setIs`, the coerce methods are provided explicitly, not generated automatically. Inheritance will apply (to the `from` argument, as described in the section below). You could also supply methods via `setAs` for non-inherited relationships, and now these also can be inherited.

For further on the distinction between simple and explicit inheritance, see `setIs`.

How Functions 'as' and 'setAs' Work

The function `as` turns `object` into an object of class `Class`. In doing so, it applies a "coerce method", using S4 classes and methods, but in a somewhat special way. Coerce methods are methods for the function `coerce` or, in the replacement case the function `coerce<-`. These functions have two arguments in method signatures, `from` and `to`, corresponding to the class of the object and the desired coerce class. These functions must not be called directly, but are used to store tables of methods for the use of `as`, directly and for replacements. In this section we will describe the direct case, but except where noted the replacement case works the same way, using `coerce<-` and the `replace` argument to `setAs`, rather than `coerce` and the `def` argument.

Assuming the `object` is not already of the desired class, `as` first looks for a method in the table of methods for the function `coerce` for the signature `c(from = class(object), to = Class)`, in the same way method selection would do its initial lookup. To be precise, this means the table of both direct and inherited methods, but inheritance is used specially in this case (see below).

If no method is found, `as` looks for one. First, if either `Class` or `class(object)` is a superclass of the other, the class definition will contain the information needed to construct a coerce method. In the usual case that the subclass contains the superclass (i.e., has all its slots), the method is constructed either by extracting or replacing the inherited slots. Non-simple extensions (the result of a call to `setIs`) will usually contain explicit methods, though possibly not for replacement.

If no subclass/superclass relationship provides a method, `as` looks for an inherited method, but applying, inheritance for the argument `from` only, not for the argument `to` (if you think about it, you'll probably agree that you wouldn't want the result to be from some class other than the `Class` specified). Thus, `selectMethod("coerce", sig, useInherited= c(from=TRUE, to= FALSE))` replicates the method selection used by `as()`.

In nearly all cases the method found in this way will be cached in the table of coerce methods (the exception being subclass relationships with a test, which are legal but discouraged). So the detailed calculations should be done only on the first occurrence of a coerce from `class(object)` to `Class`.

Note that `coerce` is not a standard generic function. It is not intended to be called directly. To prevent accidentally caching an invalid inherited method, calls are routed to an equivalent call to `as`, and a warning is issued. Also, calls to `selectMethod` for this function may not represent the method that `as` will choose. You can only trust the result if the corresponding call to `as` has occurred previously in this session.

With this explanation as background, the function setAs does a fairly obvious computation: It constructs and sets a method for the function coerce with signature c(from, to), using the def argument to define the body of the method. The function supplied as def can have one argument (interpreted as an object to be coerced) or two arguments (the from object and the to class). Either way, setAs constructs a function of two arguments, with the second defaulting to the name of the to class. The method will be called from as with the object as the from argument and no to argument, with the default for this argument being the name of the intended to class, so the method can use this information in messages.

The direct version of the as function also has a strict= argument that defaults to TRUE. Calls during the evaluation of methods for other functions will set this argument to FALSE. The distinction is relevant when the object being coerced is from a simple subclass of the to class; if strict=FALSE in this case, nothing need be done. For most user-written coerce methods, when the two classes have no subclass/superclass, the strict= argument is irrelevant.

The replace argument to setAs provides a method for coerce<-. As with all replacement methods, the last argument of the method must have the name value for the object on the right of the assignment. As with the coerce method, the first two arguments are from, to; there is no strict= option for the replace case.

The function coerce exists as a repository for such methods, to be selected as described above by the as function. Actually dispatching the methods using standardGeneric could produce incorrect inherited methods, by using inheritance on the to argument; as mentioned, this is not the logic used for as. To prevent selecting and caching invalid methods, calls to coerce are currently mapped into calls to as, with a warning message.

Basic Coercion Methods

Methods are pre-defined for coercing any object to one of the basic datatypes. For example, as(x, "numeric") uses the existing as.numeric function. These built-in methods can be listed by showMethods("coerce").

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

If you think of using try(as(x, cl)), consider canCoerce(x, cl) instead.

Examples

```
## using the definition of class "track" from \link{setClass}



setAs("track", "numeric", function(from) from@y)

t1 <- new("track", x=1:20, y=(1:20)^2)

as(t1, "numeric")

## The next example shows:
##  1. A virtual class to define setAs for several classes at once.
```

```
##  2. as() using inherited information

setClass("ca", representation(a = "character", id = "numeric"))

setClass("cb", representation(b = "character", id = "numeric"))

setClass("id")
setIs("ca", "id")
setIs("cb", "id")


setAs("id", "numeric", function(from) from@id)

CA <- new("ca", a = "A", id = 1)
CB <- new("cb", b = "B", id = 2)

setAs("cb", "ca", function(from, to )new(to, a=from@b, id = from@id))

as(CB, "numeric")
```

BasicClasses *Classes Corresponding to Basic Data Types*

Description

Formal classes exist corresponding to the basic R object types, allowing these types to be used in method signatures, as slots in class definitions, and to be extended by new classes.

Usage

```
### The following are all basic vector classes.
### They can appear as class names in method signatures,
### in calls to as(), is(), and new().
"character"
"complex"
"double"
"expression"
"integer"
"list"
"logical"
"numeric"
"single"
"raw"

### the class
"vector"
### is a virtual class, extended by all the above

### the class
"S4"
### is an object type for S4 objects that do not extend
```

```
### any of the basic vector classes.  It is a virtual class.

### The following are additional basic classes
"NULL"     #  NULL objects
"function" #  function objects, including primitives
"externalptr" # raw external pointers for use in C code

"ANY"  # virtual classes used by the methods package itself
"VIRTUAL"
"missing"

"namedList" # the alternative to "list" that preserves
            # the names attribute
```

Objects from the Classes

If a class is not virtual (see section in `Classes`), objects can be created by calls of the form `new(Class, ...)`, where `Class` is the quoted class name, and the remaining arguments if any are objects to be interpreted as vectors of this class. Multiple arguments will be concatenated.

The class `"expression"` is slightly odd, in that the ... arguments will *not* be evaluated; therefore, don't enclose them in a call to `quote()`.

Note that class `"list"` is a pure vector. Although lists with names go back to the earliest versions of S, they are an extension of the vector concept in that they have an attribute (which can now be a slot) and which is either `NULL` or a character vector of the same length as the vector. If you want to guarantee that list names are preserved, use class `"namedList"`, rather than `"list"`. Objects from this class must have a names attribute, corresponding to slot `"names"`, of type `"character"`. Internally, R treats names for lists specially, which makes it impractical to have the corresponding slot in class `"namedList"` be a union of character names and `NULL`.

Classes and Types

The basic classes include classes for the basic R types. Note that objects of these types will not usually be S4 objects (`isS4` will return `FALSE`), although objects from classes that contain the basic class will be S4 objects, still with the same type. The type as returned by `typeof` will sometimes differ from the class, either just from a choice of terminology (type `"symbol"` and class `"name"`, for example) or because there is not a one-to-one correspondence between class and type (most of the classes that inherit from class `"language"` have type `"language"`, for example).

Extends

The vector classes extend `"vector"`, directly.

Methods

coerce Methods are defined to coerce arbitrary objects to the vector classes, by calling the corresponding basic function, for example, `as(x, "numeric")` calls `as.numeric(x)`.

`callGeneric` *Call the Current Generic Function from a Method*

Description

A call to `callGeneric` can only appear inside a method definition. It then results in a call to the current generic function. The value of that call is the value of `callGeneric`. While it can be called from any method, it is useful and typically used in methods for group generic functions.

Usage

```
callGeneric(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	Optionally, the arguments to the function in its next call. If no arguments are included in the call to `callGeneric`, the effect is to call the function with the current arguments. See the detailed description for what this really means.

Details

The name and package of the current generic function is stored in the environment of the method definition object. This name is looked up and the corresponding function called.

The statement that passing no arguments to `callGeneric` causes the generic function to be called with the current arguments is more precisely as follows. Arguments that were missing in the current call are still missing (remember that `"missing"` is a valid class in a method signature). For a formal argument, say `x`, that appears in the original call, there is a corresponding argument in the generated call equivalent to `x = x`. In effect, this means that the generic function sees the same actual arguments, but arguments are evaluated only once.

Using `callGeneric` with no arguments is prone to creating infinite recursion, unless one of the arguments in the signature has been modified in the current method so that a different method is selected.

Value

The value returned by the new call.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`GroupGenericFunctions` for other information about group generic functions; Methods for the general behavior of method dispatch

Examples

```
## the method for group generic function Ops
## for signature( e1="structure", e2="vector")
function (e1, e2)
{
    value <- callGeneric(e1@.Data, e2)
    if (length(value) == length(e1)) {
        e1@.Data <- value
        e1
    }
    else value
}

## For more examples
## Not run:
showMethods("Ops", includeDefs = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

`callNextMethod` *Call an Inherited Method*

Description

A call to `callNextMethod` can only appear inside a method definition. It then results in a call to the first inherited method after the current method, with the arguments to the current method passed down to the next method. The value of that method call is the value of `callNextMethod`.

Usage

```
callNextMethod(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	Optionally, the arguments to the function in its next call (but note that the dispatch is as in the detailed description below; the arguments have no effect on selecting the next method.) If no arguments are included in the call to `callNextMethod`, the effect is to call the method with the current arguments. See the detailed description for what this really means. Calling with no arguments is often the natural way to use `callNextMethod`; see the examples.

Details

The 'next' method (i.e., the first inherited method) is defined to be that method which *would* have been called if the current method did not exist. This is more-or-less literally what happens: The current method (to be precise, the method with signature given by the `defined` slot of the method from which `callNextMethod` is called) is deleted from a copy of the methods for the current generic, and `selectMethod` is called to find the next method (the result is cached in a special object, so the search only typically happens once per session per combination of argument classes).

Note that the preceding definition means that the next method is defined uniquely when `setMethod` inserts the method containing the `callNextMethod` call, given the definitions of the classes in the signature. The choice does not depend on the path that gets us to that method (for example, through inheritance or from another `callNextMethod` call). This definition was not enforced in versions of prior to 2.3.0, where the method was selected based on the target signature, and so could vary depending on the actual arguments.

It is also legal, and often useful, for the method called by `callNextMethod` to itself have a call to `callNextMethod`. This generally works as you would expect, but for completeness be aware that it is possible to have ambiguous inheritance in the S structure, in the sense that the same two classes can appear as superclasses *in the opposite order* in two other class definitions. In this case the effect of a nested instance of `callNextMethod` is not well defined. Such inconsistent class hierarchies are both rare and nearly always the result of bad design, but they are possible, and currently undetected.

The statement that the method is called with the current arguments is more precisely as follows. Arguments that were missing in the current call are still missing (remember that `"missing"` is a valid class in a method signature). For a formal argument, say `x`, that appears in the original call, there is a corresponding argument in the next method call equivalent to `x = x`. In effect, this means that the next method sees the same actual arguments, but arguments are evaluated only once.

Value

The value returned by the selected method.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`callGeneric` to call the generic function with the current dispatch rules (typically for a group generic function); Methods for the general behavior of method dispatch.

Examples

```
## some class definitions with simple inheritance
setClass("B0" , representation(b0 = "numeric"))

setClass("B1", representation(b1 = "character"), contains = "B0")

setClass("B2", representation(b2 = "logical"), contains = "B1")

## and a rather silly function to illustrate callNextMethod

f <- function(x) class(x)

setMethod("f", "B0", function(x) c(x@b0^2, callNextMethod()))
setMethod("f", "B1", function(x) c(paste(x@b1,":"), callNextMethod()))
setMethod("f", "B2", function(x) c(x@b2, callNextMethod()))

b1 <- new("B1", b0 = 2, b1 = "Testing")

b2 <- new("B2", b2 = FALSE, b1 = "More testing", b0 = 10)
```

```
f(b2)
stopifnot(identical(f(b2), c(b2@b2, paste(b2@b1,":"), b2@b0^2, "B2")))

f(b1)

## a sneakier method: the *changed* x is used:
setMethod("f", "B2",
          function(x) {x@b0 <- 111; c(x@b2, callNextMethod())})
f(b2)
stopifnot(identical(f(b2), c(b2@b2, paste(b2@b1,":"), 111^2, "B2")))
```

---

canCoerce *Can an Object be Coerced to a Certain S4 Class?*

Description

Test if an object can be coerced to a given S4 class. Maybe useful inside `if()` to ensure that calling `as(object, Class)` will find a method.

Usage

```
canCoerce(object, Class)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object, typically of a formal S4 class.
`Class`	an S4 class (see `isClass`).

Value

a scalar logical, `TRUE` if there is a `coerce` method (as defined by `setAs`, e.g.) for the signature `(from = class(object), to = Class)`.

See Also

`as`, `setAs`, `selectMethod`, `setClass`,

Examples

```
m <- matrix(pi, 2,3)
canCoerce(m, "numeric") # TRUE
canCoerce(m, "array")   # TRUE
```

cbind2 *Combine two Objects by Columns or Rows*

Description

Combine two matrix-like objects by columns (cbind2) or rows (rbind2). These are (S4) generic functions with default methods.

Usage

```
cbind2(x, y, ...)
rbind2(x, y, ...)
```

Arguments

x	any object, typically matrix-like.
y	any object, typically similar to x, or missing completely.
...	optional arguments for methods.

Details

The main use of cbind2 (rbind2) is to be called by cbind() (rbind()) **if** these are activated. This allows cbind (rbind) to work for formally classed (aka 'S4') objects by providing S4 methods for these objects. Currently, a call
methods:::bind_activation(TRUE)
is needed to install a cbind2-calling version of cbind (into the **base** namespace) and the same for rbind.
methods:::bind_activation(FALSE) reverts to the previous internal version of cbind which does not build on cbind2, see the examples.

Value

A matrix (or matrix like object) combining the columns (or rows) of x and y.

Methods

signature(x = "ANY", y = "ANY") the default method using 's internal code.

signature(x = "ANY", y = "missing") the default method for one argument using 's internal code.

See Also

cbind, rbind; further, cBind, rBind in the **Matrix** package.

Examples

```
cbind2(1:3, 4)
m <- matrix(3:8, 2,3, dimnames=list(c("a","b"), LETTERS[1:3]))
cbind2(1:2, m) # keeps dimnames from m

### Note: Use the following activation if you want cbind() to work
### ----  on S4 objects -- be careful otherwise!
```

```
methods:::bind_activation(on = TRUE)
trace("cbind2")
cbind(a=1:3)# no call to cbind2()
cbind(a=1:3, four=4, 7:9)# calling cbind2() twice
untrace("cbind2")



cbind(m, a=1, b=3)

## turn off the special cbind() :
methods:::bind_activation(FALSE)
```

`Classes` *Class Definitions*

Description

Class definitions are objects that contain the formal definition of a class of objects, usually referred to as an S4 class, to distinguish them from the informal S3 classes. This document gives an overview of S4 classes; for details of the class representation objects, see help for the class `classRepresentation`.

Metadata Information

When a class is defined, an object is stored that contains the information about that class. The object, known as the *metadata* defining the class, is not stored under the name of the class (to allow programmers to write generating functions of that name), but under a specially constructed name. To examine the class definition, call `getClass`. The information in the metadata object includes:

Slots: The data contained in an object from an S4 class is defined by the *slots* in the class definition.

Each slot in an object is a component of the object; like components (that is, elements) of a list, these may be extracted and set, using the function `slot()` or more often the operator `"@"`. However, they differ from list components in important ways. First, slots can only be referred to by name, not by position, and there is no partial matching of names as with list elements.

All the objects from a particular class have the same set of slot names; specifically, the slot names that are contained in the class definition. Each slot in each object always is an object of the class specified for this slot in the definition of the current class. The word "is" corresponds to the function of the same name (`is`), meaning that the class of the object in the slot must be the same as the class specified in the definition, or some class that extends the one in the definition (a *subclass*).

A special slot name, `.Data`, stands for the 'data part' of the object. An object from a class with a data part is defined by specifying that the class contains one of the object types or one of the special pseudo-classes, `matrix` or `array`, usually because the definition of the class, or of one of its superclasses, has included the type or pseudo-class in its `contains` argument. A second special slot name, `.xData`, is used to enable inheritance from abnormal types such as `"environment"` See the section on inheriting from non-S4 classes for details on the representation and for the behavior of S3 methods with objects from these classes.

Some slot names correspond to attributes used in old-style S3 objects and in objects without an explicit class, for example, the `names` attribute. If you define a class for which that attribute

will be set, such as a subclass of named vectors, you should include `"names"` as a slot. See the definition of class `"namedList"` for an example. Using the `names()` assignment to set such names will generate a warning if there is no names slot and an error if the object in question is not a vector type. A slot called `"names"` can be used anywhere, but only if it is assigned as a slot, not via the default `names()` assignment.

Superclasses: The definition of a class includes the *superclasses* —the classes that this class extends. A class `Fancy`, say, extends a class `Simple` if an object from the `Fancy` class has all the capabilities of the `Simple` class (and probably some more as well). In particular, and very usefully, any method defined to work for a `Simple` object can be applied to a `Fancy` object as well.

This relationship is expressed equivalently by saying that `Simple` is a superclass of `Fancy`, or that `Fancy` is a subclass of `Simple`.

The direct superclasses of a class are those superclasses explicitly defined. Direct superclasses can be defined in three ways. Most commonly, the superclasses are listed in the `contains=` argument in the call to `setClass` that creates the subclass. In this case the subclass will contain all the slots of the superclass, and the relation between the class is called *simple*, as it in fact is. Superclasses can also be defined explicitly by a call to `setIs`; in this case, the relation requires methods to be specified to go from subclass to superclass. Thirdly, a class union is a superclass of all the members of the union. In this case too the relation is simple, but notice that the relation is defined when the superclass is created, not when the subclass is created as with the `contains=` mechanism.

The definition of a superclass will also potentially contain its own direct superclasses. These are considered (and shown) as superclasses at distance 2 from the original class; their direct superclasses are at distance 3, and so on. All these are legitimate superclasses for purposes such as method selection.

When superclasses are defined by including the names of superclasses in the `contains=` argument to `setClass`, an object from the class will have all the slots defined for its own class *and* all the slots defined for all its superclasses as well.

The information about the relation between a class and a particular superclass is encoded as an object of class `SClassExtension`. A list of such objects for the superclasses (and sometimes for the subclasses) is included in the metadata object defining the class. If you need to compute with these objects (for example, to compare the distances), call the function `extends` with argument `fullInfo=TRUE`.

Prototype: The objects from a class created by a call to `new` are defined by the *prototype* object for the class and by additional arguments in the call to `new`, which are passed to a method for that class for the function `initialize`.

Each class representation object contains a prototype object for the class (although for a virtual class the prototype may be `NULL`). The prototype object must have values for all the slots of the class. By default, these are the prototypes of the corresponding slot classes. However, the definition of the class can specify any valid object for any of the slots.

Virtual classes; Basic classes

Classes exist for which no actual objects can be created by a call to `new`, the *virtual* classes, in fact a very important programming tool. They are used to group together ordinary classes that want to share some programming behavior, without necessarily restricting how the behavior is implemented. Virtual class definitions may if you want include slots (to provide some common behavior without fully defining the object—see the class `traceable` for an example).

A simple and useful form of virtual class is the *class union*, a virtual class that is defined in a call to `setClassUnion` by listing one or more of subclasses (classes that extend the class union). Class unions can include as subclasses basic object types (whose definition is otherwise sealed).

There are a number of 'basic' classes, corresponding to the ordinary kinds of data occurring in . For example, `"numeric"` is a class corresponding to numeric vectors. The other vector basic classes are `"logical"`, `"integer"`, `"complex"`, `"character"`, `"raw"`, `"list"` and `"expression"`. The prototypes for the vector classes are vectors of length 0 of the corresponding type. Notice that basic classes are unusual in that the prototype object is from the class itself.

In addition to the vector classes there are also basic classes corresponding to objects in the language, such as `"function"` and `"call"`. These classes are subclasses of the virtual class `"language"`. Finally, there are object types and corresponding basic classes for "abnormal" objects, such as `"environment"` and `"externalptr"`. These objects do not follow the functional behavior of the language; in particular, they are not copied and so cannot have attributes or slots defined locally.

All these classes can be used as slots or as superclasses for any other class definitions, although they do not themselves come with an explicit class. For the abnormal object types, a special mechanism is used to enable inheritance as described below.

Inheriting from non-S4 Classes

A class definition can extend classes other than regular S4 classes, usually by specifying them in the `contains=` argument to `setClass`. Three groups of such classes behave distinctly:

1. S3 classes, which must have been registered by a previous call to `setOldClass` (you can check that this has been done by calling `getClass`, which should return a class that extends oldClass);
2. One of the object types, typically a vector type, which then defines the type of the S4 objects, but also a type such as `environment` that can not be used directly as a type for an S4 object. See below.
3. One of the pseudo-classes `matrix` and `array`, implying objects with arbitrary vector types plus the `dim` and `dimnames` attributes.

This section describes the approach to combining S4 computations with older S3 computations by using such classes as superclasses. The design goal is to allow the S4 class to inherit S3 methods and default computations in as consistent a form as possible.

As part of a general effort to make the S4 and S3 code in R more consistent, when objects from an S4 class are used as the first argument to a non-default S3 method, either for an S3 generic function (one that calls `UseMethod`) or for one of the primitive functions that dispatches S3 methods, an effort is made to provide a valid object for that method. In particular, if the S4 class extends an S3 class or `matrix` or `array`, and there is an S3 method matching one of these classes, the S4 object will be coerced to a valid S3 object, to the extent that is possible given that there is no formal definition of an S3 class.

For example, suppose `"myFrame"` is an S4 class that includes the S3 class `"data.frame"` in the `contains=` argument to `setClass`. If an object from this S4 class is passed to a function, say `as.matrix`, that has an S3 method for `"data.frame"`, the internal code for `UseMethod` will convert the object to a data frame; in particular, to an S3 object whose class attribute will be the vector corresponding to the S3 class (possibly containing multiple class names). Similarly for an S4 object inheriting from `"matrix"` or `"array"`, the S4 object will be converted to a valid S3 matrix or array.

Note that the conversion is *not* applied when an S4 object is passed to the default S3 method. Some S3 generics attempt to deal with general objects, including S4 objects. Also, no transformation is applied to S4 objects that do not correspond to a selected S3 method; in particular, to objects from a class that does not contain either an S3 class or one of the basic types. See `asS4` for the transformation details.

In addition to explicit S3 generic functions, S3 methods are defined for a variety of operators and functions implemented as primitives. These methods are dispatched by some internal C code that

operates partly through the same code as real S3 generic functions and partly via special considerations (for example, both arguments to a binary operator are examined when looking for methods). The same mechanism for adapting S4 objects to S3 methods has been applied to these computations as well, with a few exceptions such as generating an error if an S4 object that does not extend an appropriate S3 class or type is passed to a binary operator.

The remainder of this section discusses the mechanisms for inheriting from basic object types. See `matrix` or `array` for inhering from the matrix and array pseudo-classes, or from time-series. For the corresponding details for inheritance from S3 classes, see `setOldClass`.

An object from a class that directly and simply contains one of the basic object types in , has implicitly a corresponding `.Data` slot of that type, allowing computations to extract or replace the data part while leaving other slots unchanged. If the type is one that can accept attributes and is duplicated normally, the inheritance also determines the type of the object; if the class definition has a `.Data` slot corresponding to a normal type, the class of the slot determines the type of the object (that is, the value of `typeof(x)`). For such classes, `.Data` is a pseudo-slot; that is, extracting or setting it modifies the non-slot data in the object. The functions `getDataPart` and `setDataPart` are a cleaner, but essentially equivalent way to deal with the data part.

Extending a basic type this way allows objects to use old-style code for the corresponding type as well as S4 methods. Any basic type can be used for `.Data`, but a few types are treated differently because they do not behave like ordinary objects; for example, `"NULL"`, environments, and external pointers. Classes extend these types by having a slot, `.xData`, itself inherited from an internally defined S4 class. This slot actually contains an object of the inherited type, to protect computations from the reference semantics of the type. Coercing to the nonstandard object type then requires an actual computation, rather than the `"simple"` inclusion for other types and classes. The intent is that programmers will not need to take account of the mechanism, but one implication is that you should *not* explicitly use the type of an S4 object to detect inheritance from an arbitrary object type. Use `is` and similar functions instead.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

Chambers, John M. and Hastie, Trevor J. eds (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole (Appendix A for S3 classes.)

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (Out of print.) (The description of vectors, matrix, array and time-series objects.)

See Also

`Methods` for analogous discussion of methods, `setClass` for details of specifying class definitions, `is`, `as`, `new`, `slot`

`classesToAM` *Compute an Adjacency Matrix for Superclasses of Class Definitions*

Description

Given a vector of class names or a list of class definitions, the function returns an adjacency matrix of the superclasses of these classes; that is, a matrix with class names as the row and column names and with element [i, j] being 1 if the class in column j is a direct superclass of the class in row i, and 0 otherwise.

The matrix has the information implied by the `contains` slot of the class definitions, but in a form that is often more convenient for further analysis; for example, an adjacency matrix is used in packages and other software to construct graph representations of relationships.

Usage

```
classesToAM(classes, includeSubclasses = FALSE,
       abbreviate = 2)
```

Arguments

`classes`	Either a character vector of class names or a list, whose elements can be either class names or class definitions. The list is convenient, for example, to include the package slot for the class name. See the examples.
`includeSubclasses`	A logical flag; if `TRUE`, then the matrix will include all the known subclasses of the specified classes as well as the superclasses. The argument can also be a logical vector of the same length as `classes`, to include subclasses for some but not all the classes.
`abbreviate`	Control of the abbreviation of the row and/or column labels of the matrix returned: values 0, 1, 2, or 3 abbreviate neither, rows, columns or both. The default, 2, is useful for printing the matrix, since class names tend to be more than one character long, making for spread-out printing. Values of 0 or 3 would be appropriate for making a graph (3 avoids the tendency of some graph plotting software to produce labels in minuscule font size).

Details

For each of the classes, the calculation gets all the superclass names from the class definition, and finds the edges in those classes' definitions; that is, all the superclasses at distance 1. The corresponding elements of the adjacency matrix are set to 1.

The adjacency matrices for the individual class definitions are merged. Note two possible kinds of inconsistency, neither of which should cause problems except possibly with identically named classes from different packages. Edges are computed from each superclass definition, so that information overrides a possible inference from extension elements with distance > 1 (and it should). When matrices from successive classes in the argument are merged, the computations do not currently check for inconsistencies—this is the area where possible multiple classes with the same name could cause confusion. A later revision may include consistency checks.

Value

As described, a matrix with entries 0 or 1, non-zero values indicating that the class corresponding to the column is a direct superclass of the class corresponding to the row. The row and column names are the class names (without package slot).

See Also

`extends` and classRepresentation for the underlying information from the class definition.

Examples

```
## the super- and subclasses of "standardGeneric"
## and "derivedDefaultMethod"
am <- classesToAM(list(class(show), class(getMethod(show))), TRUE)
am

## Not run:
## the following function depends on the Bioconductor package Rgraphviz
plotInheritance <- function(classes, subclasses = FALSE, ...) {
    if(!require("Rgraphviz", quietly=TRUE))
      stop("Only implemented if Rgraphviz is available")
    mm <- classesToAM(classes, subclasses)
    classes <- rownames(mm); rownames(mm) <- colnames(mm)
    graph <-  new("graphAM", mm, "directed", ...)
    plot(graph)
    cat("Key:\n", paste(abbreviate(classes), " = ", classes, ", ",
        sep = ""),  sep = "", fill = TRUE)
    invisible(graph)
}

## The plot of the class inheritance of the package "graph"
require(graph)
plotInheritance(getClasses("package:graph"))


## End(Not run)
```

`className` *Class names including the corresponding package*

Description

The function `className()` generates a valid references to a class, including the name of the package containing the class definition. The object returned, from class `"className"`, is the unambiguous way to refer to a class, for example when calling `setMethod`, just in case multiple definitions of the class exist.

Function `"multipleClasses"` returns information about multiple definitions of classes with the same name from different packages.

Usage

```
className(class, package)

multipleClasses(details = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`class, package`	The character string name of a class and, optionally, of the package to which it belongs. If argument `package` is missing and the `class` argument has a package slot, that is used (in particular, passing in an object from class `"className"` returns itself in this case, but changes the package slot if the second argument is supplied). If there is no package argument or slot, a definition for the class must exist and will be used to define the package. If there are multiple definitions, one will be chosen and a warning printed giving the other possibilities.
`details`	If `FALSE`, the default, `multipleClasses()` returns a character vector of those classes currently known with multiple definitions. If `TRUE`, a named list of those class definitions is returned. Each element of the list is itself a list of the corresponding class definitions, with the package names as the names of the list. Note that identical class definitions will not be considered "multiple" definitions (see the discussion of the details below).

Details

The table of class definitions used internally can maintain multiple definitions for classes with the same name but coming from different packages. If identical class definitions are encountered, only one class definition is kept; this occurs most often with S3 classes that have been specified in calls to `setOldClass`. For true classes, multiple class definitions are unavoidable in general if two packages happen to have used the same name, independently.

Overriding a class definition in another package with the same name deliberately is usually a bad idea. Although attempts to keep and use the two definitions (as of version 2.14.0), ambiguities are always possible. It is more sensible to define a new class that extends an existing class but has a different name.

Value

A call to `className()` returns an object from class `"className"`.

A call to `multipleClasses()` returns either a character vector or a named list of class definitions. In either case, testing the length of the returned value for being greater than `0` is a check for the existence of multiply defined classes.

Objects from the Class

The class `"className"` extends `"character"` and has a slot `"package"`, also of class `"character"`.

Examples

```
## Not run:
className("vector") # will be found, from package "methods"
className("vector", "magic") # OK, even though the class doesnt exist


className("An unknown class") # Will cause an error

## End(Not run)
```

`classRepresentation-class` *Class Objects*

Description

These are the objects that hold the definition of classes of objects. They are constructed and stored as meta-data by calls to the function `setClass`. Don't manipulate them directly, except perhaps to look at individual slots.

Details

Class definitions are stored as metadata in various packages. Additional metadata supplies information on inheritance (the result of calls to `setIs`). Inheritance information implied by the class definition itself (because the class contains one or more other classes) is also constructed automatically.

When a class is to be used in an R session, this information is assembled to complete the class definition. The completion is a second object of class `"classRepresentation"`, cached for the session or until something happens to change the information. A call to `getClass` returns the completed definition of a class; a call to `getClassDef` returns the stored definition (uncompleted).

In particular, completion fills in the upward- and downward-pointing inheritance information for the class, in slots `contains` and `subclasses` respectively. It's in principle important to note that this information can depend on which packages are installed, since these may define additional subclasses or superclasses.

Slots

`slots`: A named list of the slots in this class; the elements of the list are the classes to which the slots must belong (or extend), and the names of the list gives the corresponding slot names.

`contains`: A named list of the classes this class 'contains'; the elements of the list are objects of `SClassExtension`. The list may be only the direct extensions or all the currently known extensions (see the details).

`virtual`: Logical flag, set to `TRUE` if this is a virtual class.

`prototype`: The object that represents the standard prototype for this class; i.e., the data and slots returned by a call to `new` for this class with no special arguments. Don't mess with the prototype object directly.

`validity`: Optionally, a function to be used to test the validity of objects from this class. See `validObject`.

`access`: Access control information. Not currently used.

`className`: The character string name of the class.

`package`: The character string name of the package to which the class belongs. Nearly always the package on which the metadata for the class is stored, but in operations such as constructing inheritance information, the internal package name rules.

`subclasses`: A named list of the classes known to extend this class'; the elements of the list are objects of class `SClassExtension`. The list is currently only filled in when completing the class definition (see the details).

`versionKey`: Object of class `"externalptr"`; eventually will perhaps hold some versioning information, but not currently used.

`sealed`: Object of class `"logical"`; is this class sealed? If so, no modifications are allowed.

See Also

See function `setClass` to supply the information in the class definition. See Classes for a more basic discussion of class information.

`Documentation` *Using and Creating On-line Documentation for Classes and Methods*

Description

Special documentation can be supplied to describe the classes and methods that are created by the software in the methods package. Techniques to access this documentation and to create it in R help files are described here.

Getting documentation on classes and methods

You can ask for on-line help for class definitions, for specific methods for a generic function, and for general discussion of methods for a generic function. These requests use the `?` operator (see `help` for a general description of the operator). Of course, you are at the mercy of the implementer as to whether there *is* any documentation on the corresponding topics.

Documentation on a class uses the argument `class` on the left of the `?`, and the name of the class on the right; for example,

```
class ? genericFunction
```

to ask for documentation on the class `"genericFunction"`.

When you want documentation for the methods defined for a particular function, you can ask either for a general discussion of the methods or for documentation of a particular method (that is, the method that would be selected for a particular set of actual arguments).

Overall methods documentation is requested by calling the `?` operator with `methods` as the left-side argument and the name of the function as the right-side argument. For example,

```
methods ? initialize
```

asks for documentation on the methods for the `initialize` function.

Asking for documentation on a particular method is done by giving a function call expression as the right-hand argument to the `"?"` operator. There are two forms, depending on whether you prefer to give the class names for the arguments or expressions that you intend to use in the actual call.

If you planned to evaluate a function call, say `myFun(x, sqrt(wt))` and wanted to find out something about the method that would be used for this call, put the call on the right of the `"?"` operator:

```
?myFun(x, sqrt(wt))
```

A method will be selected, as it would be for the call itself, and documentation for that method will be requested. If `myFun` is not a generic function, ordinary documentation for the function will be requested.

If you know the actual classes for which you would like method documentation, you can supply these explicitly in place of the argument expressions. In the example above, if you want method documentation for the first argument having class `"maybeNumber"` and the second `"logical"`, call the `"?"` operator, this time with a left-side argument `method`, and with a function call on the right using the class names as arguments:

```
method ? myFun("maybeNumber", "logical")
```

Once again, a method will be selected, this time corresponding to the specified classes, and method documentation will be requested. This version only works with generic functions.

The two forms each have advantages. The version with actual arguments doesn't require you to figure out (or guess at) the classes of the arguments. On the other hand, evaluating the arguments may take some time, depending on the example. The version with class names does require you to pick classes, but it's otherwise unambiguous. It has a subtler advantage, in that the classes supplied may be virtual classes, in which case no actual argument will have specifically this class. The class `"maybeNumber"`, for example, might be a class union (see the example for `setClassUnion`).

In either form, methods will be selected as they would be in actual computation, including use of inheritance and group generic functions. See `selectMethod` for the details, since it is the function used to find the appropriate method.

Writing Documentation for Methods

The on-line documentation for methods and classes uses some extensions to the R documentation format to implement the requests for class and method documentation described above. See the document *Writing R Extensions* for the available markup commands (you should have consulted this document already if you are at the stage of documenting your software).

In addition to the specific markup commands to be described, you can create an initial, overall file with a skeleton of documentation for the methods defined for a particular generic function:

```
promptMethods("myFun")
```

will create a file, '`myFun-methods.Rd`' with a skeleton of documentation for the methods defined for function `myFun`. The output from `promptMethods` is suitable if you want to describe all or most of the methods for the function in one file, separate from the documentation of the generic function itself. Once the file has been filled in and moved to the '`man`' subdirectory of your source package, requests for methods documentation will use that file, both for specific methods documentation as described above, and for overall documentation requested by

```
methods ? myFun
```

You are not required to use `promptMethods`, and if you do, you may not want to use the entire file created:

- If you want to document the methods in the file containing the documentation for the generic function itself, you can cut-and-paste to move the \alias lines and the `Methods` section from the file created by `promptMethods` to the existing file.
- On the other hand, if these are auxiliary methods, and you only want to document the added or modified software, you should strip out all but the relevant \alias lines for the methods of interest, and remove all but the corresponding \item entries in the `Methods` section. Note that in this case you will usually remove the first \alias line as well, since that is the marker for general methods documentation on this function (in the example, '`\alias{myfun-methods}`').

If you simply want to direct documentation for one or more methods to a particular R documentation file, insert the appropriate alias.

`dotsMethods` *The Use of . . . in Method Signatures*

Description

The "..." argument in functions is treated specially, in that it matches zero, one or more actual arguments (and so, objects). A mechanism has been added to to allow "..." as the signature of a generic function. Methods defined for such functions will be selected and called when *all* the arguments matching "..." are from the specified class or from some subclass of that class.

Using "..." in a Signature

Beginning with version 2.8.0 of , S4 methods can be dispatched (selected and called) corresponding to the special argument "...". Currently, "..." cannot be mixed with other formal arguments: either the signature of the generic function is "..." only, or it does not contain "...". (This restriction may be lifted in a future version.)

Given a suitable generic function, methods are specified in the usual way by a call to `setMethod`. The method definition must be written expecting all the arguments corresponding to "..." to be from the class specified in the method's signature, or from a class that extends that class (i.e., a subclass of that class).

Typically the methods will pass "..." down to another function or will create a list of the arguments and iterate over that. See the examples below.

When you have a computation that is suitable for more than one existing class, a convenient approach may be to define a union of these classes by a call to `setClassUnion`. See the example below.

Method Selection and Dispatch for "..."

See Methods for a general discussion. The following assumes you have read the "Method Selection and Dispatch" section of that documentation.

A method selecting on "..." is specified by a single class in the call to `setMethod`. If all the actual arguments corresponding to "..." have this class, the corresponding method is selected directly.

Otherwise, the class of each argument and that class' superclasses are computed, beginning with the first "..." argument. For the first argument, eligible methods are those for any of the classes. For each succeeding argument that introduces a class not considered previously, the eligible methods are further restricted to those matching the argument's class or superclasses. If no further eligible classes exist, the iteration breaks out and the default method, if any, is selected.

At the end of the iteration, one or more methods may be eligible. If more than one, the selection looks for the method with the least distance to the actual arguments. For each argument, any inherited method corresponds to a distance, available from the `contains` slot of the class definition. Since the same class can arise for more than one argument, there may be several distances associated with it. Combining them is inevitably arbitrary: the current computation uses the minimum distance. Thus, for example, if a method matched one argument directly, one as first generation superclass and another as a second generation superclass, the distances are 0, 1 and 2. The current selection computation would use distance 0 for this method. In particular, this selection criterion tends to use a method that matches exactly one or more of the arguments' class.

As with ordinary method selection, there may be multiple methods with the same distance. A warning message is issued and one of the methods is chosen (the first encountered, which in this case is rather arbitrary).

Notice that, while the computation examines all arguments, the essential cost of dispatch goes up with the number of *distinct* classes among the arguments, likely to be much smaller than the number of arguments when the latter is large.

Implementation Details

Methods dispatching on "..." were introduced in version 2.8.0 of . The initial implementation of the corresponding selection and dispatch is in an R function, for flexibility while the new mechanism is being studied. In this implementation, a local version of `setGeneric` is inserted in the generic function's environment. The local version selects a method according to the criteria above and calls that method, from the environment of the generic function. This is slightly different from the action taken by the C implementation when "..." is not involved. Aside from the extra computing time required, the method is evaluated in a true function call, as opposed to the special context constructed by the C version (which cannot be exactly replicated in R code.) However, situations in which different computational results would be obtained have not been encountered so far, and seem very unlikely.

Methods dispatching on arguments other than "..." are *cached* by storing the inherited method in the table of all methods, where it will be found on the next selection with the same combination of classes in the actual arguments (but not used for inheritance searches). Methods based on "..." are also cached, but not found quite as immediately. As noted, the selected method depends only on the set of classes that occur in the "..." arguments. Each of these classes can appear one or more times, so many combinations of actual argument classes will give rise to the same effective signature. The selection computation first computes and sorts the distinct classes encountered. This gives a label that will be cached in the table of all methods, avoiding any further search for inherited classes after the first occurrence. A call to `showMethods` will expose such inherited methods.

The intention is that the "..." features will be added to the standard C code when enough experience with them has been obtained. It is possible that at the same time, combinations of "..." with other arguments in signatures may be supported.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

For the general discussion of methods, see Methods and links from there.

Examples

```
cc <- function(...)c(...)

setGeneric("cc")

setMethod("cc", "character", function(...)paste(...))

setClassUnion("Number", c("numeric", "complex"))

setMethod("cc", "Number", function(...) sum(...))

setClass("cdate", contains = "character", representation(date = "Date"))

setClass("vdate", contains = "vector", representation(date = "Date"))

cd1 <- new("cdate", "abcdef", date = Sys.Date())

cd2 <- new("vdate", "abcdef", date = Sys.Date())
```

```
stopifnot(identical(cc(letters, character(), cd1),
           paste(letters, character(), cd1))) # the "character" method

stopifnot(identical(cc(letters, character(), cd2),
                    c(letters, character(), cd2)))
# the default, because "vdate" doesnt extend "character"

stopifnot(identical(cc(1:10, 1+1i), sum(1:10, 1+1i))) # the "Number" method

stopifnot(identical(cc(1:10, 1+1i, TRUE), c(1:10, 1+1i, TRUE))) # the default

stopifnot(identical(cc(), c())) # no arguments implies the default method

setGeneric("numMax", function(...)standardGeneric("numMax"))

setMethod("numMax", "numeric", function(...)max(...))
# wont work for complex data
setMethod("numMax", "Number", function(...) paste(...))
# should not be selected w/o complex args

stopifnot(identical(numMax(1:10, pi, 1+1i), paste(1:10, pi, 1+1i)))
stopifnot(identical(numMax(1:10, pi, 1), max(1:10, pi, 1)))

try(numMax(1:10, pi, TRUE)) # should be an error:  no default method

## A generic version of paste(), dispatching on the "..." argument:
setGeneric("paste", signature = "...")

setMethod("paste", "Number", function(..., sep, collapse) c(...))

stopifnot(identical(paste(1:10, pi, 1), c(1:10, pi, 1)))
```

`environment-class` *Class* `"environment"`

Description

A formal class for R environments.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("environment", ...)`. The arguments in `...`, if any, should be named and will be assigned to the newly created environment.

Methods

coerce `signature(from = "ANY", to = "environment")`: calls `as.environment`.

initialize `signature(object = "environment")`: Implements the assignments in the new environment. Note that the `object` argument is ignored; a new environment is *always* created, since environments are not protected by copying.

See Also

new.env

---

envRefClass-class *Class* "envRefClass"

Description

Support Class to Implement R Objects using Reference Semantics

NOTE:

The software described here is an initial version. The eventual goal is to support reference-style classes with software in itself or using inter-system interfaces. The current implementation (version 2.12.0) is preliminary and subject to change, and currently includes only the -only implementation. Developers are encouraged to experiment with the software, but the description here is more than usually subject to change.

Purpose of the Class

This class implements basic reference-style semantics for objects. Objects normally do not come directly from this class, but from subclasses defined by a call to setRefClass. The documentation below is technical background describing the implementation, but applications should use the interface documented under setRefClass, in particular the $ operator and field accessor functions as described there.

A Basic Reference Class

The design of reference classes for divides those classes up according to the mechanism used for implementing references, fields, and class methods. Each version of this mechanism is defined by a *basic reference class*, which must implement a set of methods and provide some further information used by setRefClass.

The required methods are for operators $ and $<- to get and set a field in an object, and for initialize to initialize objects.

To support these methods, the basic reference class needs to have some implementation mechanism to store and retrieve data from fields in the object. The mechanism needs to be consistent with reference semantics; that is, changes made to the contents of an object are global, seen by any code accessing that object, rather than only local to the function call where the change takes place. As described below, class envRefClass implements reference semantics through specialized use of environment objects. Other basic reference classes may use an interface to a language such as Java or C++ using reference semantics for classes.

Usually, the user will be able to invoke class methods on the class, using the $ operator. The basic reference class method for $ needs to make this possible. Essentially, the operator must return an function corresponding to the object and the class method name.

Class methods may include an implementation of data abstraction, in the sense that fields are accessed by "get" and "set" methods. The basic reference class provides this facility by setting the "fieldAccessorGenerator" slot in its definition to a function of one variable. This function will be called by setRefClass with the vector of field names as arguments. The generator function must return a list of defined accessor functions. An element corresponding to a get operation is invoked with no arguments and should extract the corresponding field; an element for a set operation will

be invoked with a single argument, the value to be assigned to the field. The implementation needs to supply the object, since that is not an argument in the method invocation. The mechanism used currently by `envRefClass` is described below.

Support Classes

Two virtual classes are supplied to test for reference objects: `is(x, "refClass")` tests whether `x` comes from a class defined using the reference class mechanism described here; `is(x, "refObject")` tests whether the object has reference semantics generally, including the previous classes and also classes inheriting from the types with reference semantics, such as `"environment"`.

Installed class methods are `"classMethodDefinition"` objects, with slots that identify the name of the function as a class method and the other class methods called from this method. The latter information is determined heuristically when the class is defined by using the `codetools` recommended package. This package must be installed when reference classes are defined, but is not needed in order to use existing reference classes.

Author(s)

John Chambers

`evalSource` *Use Function Definitions from a Source File without Reinstalling a Package*

Description

Definitions of functions and/or methods from a source file are inserted into a package, using the `trace` mechanism. Typically, this allows testing or debugging modified versions of a few functions without reinstalling a large package.

Usage

```
evalSource(source, package = "", lock = TRUE, cache = FALSE)

insertSource(source, package = "", functions = , methods = ,
           force = )
```

Arguments

`source`	A file to be parsed and evaluated by `evalSource` to find the new function and method definitions. The argument to `insertSource` can be an object of class `"sourceEnvironment"` returned from a previous call to `evalSource` If a file name is passed to `insertSource` it calls `evalSource` to obtain the corresponding object. See the section on the class for details.
`package`	Optionally, the name of the package to which the new code corresponds and into which it will be inserted. Although the computations will attempt to infer the package if it is omitted, the safe approach is to supply it. In the case of a package that is not attached to the search list, the package name must be supplied.

`functions, methods`
: Optionally, the character-string names of the functions to be used in the insertion. Names supplied in the `functions` argument are expected to be defined as functions in the source. For names supplied in the `methods` argument, a table of methods is expected (as generated by calls to `setMethod`, see the details section); methods from this table will be inserted by `insertSource`. In both cases, the revised function or method is inserted only if it differs from the version in the corresponding package as loaded.

  If `what` is omitted, the results of evaluating the source file will be compared to the contents of the package (see the details section).

`lock, cache`
: Optional arguments to control the actions taken by `evalSource`. If `lock` is `TRUE`, the environment in the object returned will be locked, and so will all its bindings. If `cache` is `FALSE`, the normal caching of method and class definitions will be suppressed during evaluation of the `source` file.

  The default settings are generally recommended, the `lock` to support the credibility of the object returned as a snapshot of the source file, and the second so that method definitions can be inserted later by `insertSource` using the trace mechanism.

`force`
: If `FALSE`, only functions currently in the environment will be redefined, using `trace`. If `TRUE`, other objects/functions will be simply assigned. By default, `TRUE` if neither the `functions` nor the `methods` argument is supplied.

Details

The `source` file is parsed and evaluated, suppressing by default the actual caching of method and class definitions contained in it, so that functions and methods can be tested out in a reversible way. The result, if all goes well, is an environment containing the assigned objects and metadata corresponding to method and class definitions in the source file.

From this environment, the objects are inserted into the package, into its namespace if it has one, for use during the current session or until reverting to the original version by a call to `untrace`. The insertion is done by calls to the internal version of `trace`, to make reversion possible.

Because the trace mechanism is used, only function-type objects will be inserted, functions themselves or S4 methods.

When the `functions` and `methods` arguments are both omitted, `insertSource` selects all suitable objects from the result of evaluating the `source` file.

In all cases, only objects in the source file that differ from the corresponding objects in the package are inserted. The definition of "differ" is that either the argument list (including default expressions) or the body of the function is not identical. Note that in the case of a method, there need be no specific method for the corresponding signature in the package: the comparison is made to the method that would be selected for that signature.

Nothing in the computation requires that the source file supplied be the same file as in the original package source, although that case is both likely and sensible if one is revising the package. Nothing in the computations compares source files: the objects generated by evaluating `source` are compared as objects to the content of the package.

Value

An object from class `"sourceEnvironment"`, a subclass of `"environment"` (see the section on the class) The environment contains the versions of *all* object resulting from evaluation of the source file. The class also has slots for the time of creation, the source file and the package name. Future extensions may use these objects for versioning or other code tools.

The object returned can be used in debugging (see the section on that topic) or as the source argument in a future call to insertSource. If only some of the revised functions were inserted in the first call, others can be inserted in a later call without re-evaluating the source file, by supplying the environment and optionally suitable functions and/or methods argument.

Debugging

Once a function or method has been inserted into a package by insertSource, it can be studied by the standard debugging tools; for example, debug or the various versions of trace.

Calls to trace should take the extra argument edit = env, where env is the value returned by the call to evalSource. The trace mechanism has been used to install the revised version from the source file, and supplying the argument ensures that it is this version, not the original, that will be traced. See the example below.

To turn tracing off, but retain the source version, use trace(x,edit = env) as in the example. To return to the original version from the package, use untrace(x).

Class "sourceEnvironment"

Objects from this class can be treated as environments, to extract the version of functions and methods generated by evalSource. The objects also have the following slots:

packageName: The character-string name of the package to which the source code corresponds.

dateCreated: The date and time that the source file was evaluated (usually from a call to Sys.time).

sourceFile: The character-string name of the source file used.

Note that using the environment does not change the dateCreated.

See Also

trace for the underlying mechanism, and also for the edit= argument that can be used for somewhat similar purposes; that function and also debug and setBreakpoint, for techniques more oriented to traditional debugging styles. The present function is directly intended for the case that one is modifying some of the source for an existing package, although it can be used as well by inserting debugging code in the source (more useful if the debugging involved is non-trivial). As noted in the details section, the source file need not be the same one in the original package source.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Suppose package P0 has a source file "all.R"
## First, evaluate the source, and from it
## insert the revised version of methods for summary()
  env <- insertSource("./P0/R/all.R", package = "P0",
     methods = "summary")
## now test one of the methods, tracing  the version from the source
  trace("summary", signature = "myMat", browser, edit = env)
## After testing, remove the browser() call but keep the source
  trace("summary", signature = "myMat", edit = env)
## Now insert all the (other) revised functions and methods
## without re-evaluating the source file.
## The package name is included in the object env.
  insertSource(env)

## End(Not run)
```

`findClass` *Computations with Classes*

Description

Functions to find and manipulate class definitions.

Usage

```
removeClass(Class, where)

isClass(Class, formal=TRUE, where)

getClasses(where, inherits = missing(where))

findClass(Class, where, unique = "")

resetClass(Class, classDef, where)

sealClass(Class, where)
```

Arguments

`Class`	character string name for the class. The functions will usually take a class definition instead of the string. To restrict the class to those defined in a particular package, set the `packageSlot` of the character string.
`where`	the `environment` in which to modify or remove the definition. Defaults to the top-level environment of the calling function (the global environment for ordinary computations, but the environment or namespace of a package in the source for a package). When searching for class definitions, `where` defines where to do the search, and the default is to search from the top-level environment or namespace of the caller to this function.
`unique`	if `findClass` expects a unique location for the class, `unique` is a character string explaining the purpose of the search (and is used in warning and error messages). By default, multiple locations are possible and the function always returns a list.
`inherits`	in a call to `getClasses`, should the value returned include all parent environments of `where`, or that environment only? Defaults to `TRUE` if `where` is omitted, and to `FALSE` otherwise.
`formal`	Should a formal definition be required?
`classDef`	For `removeClass`, the optional class definition (but usually it's better for `Class` to be the class definition, and to omit `classDef`).

Details

These are the functions that test and manipulate formal class definitions. Brief documentation is provided below. See the references for an introduction and for more details.

`removeClass`: Remove the definition of this class, from the environment `where` if this argument is supplied; if not, `removeClass` will search for a definition, starting in the top-level environment of the call to `removeClass`, and remove the (first) definition found.

`isClass`: Is this the name of a formally defined class? (Argument `formal` is for compatibility and is ignored.)

`getClasses`: The names of all the classes formally defined on `where`. If called with no argument, all the classes visible from the calling function (if called from the top-level, all the classes in any of the environments on the search list). The `inherits` argument can be used to search a particular environment and all its parents, but usually the default setting is what you want.

`findClass`: The list of environments or positions on the search list in which a class definition of `Class` is found. If `where` is supplied, this is an environment (or namespace) from which the search takes place; otherwise the top-level environment of the caller is used. If `unique` is supplied as a character string, `findClass` returns a single environment or position. By default, it always returns a list. The calling function should select, say, the first element as a position or environment for functions such as `get`.

If `unique` is supplied as a character string, `findClass` will warn if there is more than one definition visible (using the string to identify the purpose of the call), and will generate an error if no definition can be found.

`resetClass`: Reset the internal definition of a class. Causes the complete definition of the class to be re-computed, from the representation and superclasses specified in the original call to `setClass`.

This function is called when aspects of the class definition are changed. You would need to call it explicitly if you changed the definition of a class that this class extends (but doing that in the middle of a session is living dangerously, since it may invalidate existing objects).

`sealClass`: Seal the current definition of the specified class, to prevent further changes. It is possible to seal a class in the call to `setClass`, but sometimes further changes have to be made (e.g., by calls to `setIs`). If so, call `sealClass` after all the relevant changes have been made.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`setClassUnion`, `Methods`, `makeClassRepresentation`

`findMethods` *Description of the Methods Defined for a Generic Function*

Description

The function `findMethods` converts the methods defined in a table for a generic function (as used for selection of methods) into a list, for study or display. The list is actually from the class `listOfMethods` (see the section describing the class, below).

The list will be limited to the methods defined in environment `where` if that argument is supplied and limited to those including one or more of the specified `classes` in the method signature if that argument is supplied.

To see the actual table (an environment) used for methods dispatch, call `getMethodsForDispatch`. The names of the list returned by `findMethods` are the names of the objects in the table.

The function `findMethodSignatures` returns a character matrix whose rows are the class names from the signature of the corresponding methods; it operates either from a list returned by `findMethods`, or by computing such a list itself, given the same arguments as `findMethods` .

The function `hasMethods` returns `TRUE` or `FALSE` according to whether there is a non-empty table of methods for function `f` in the environment or search position `where` (or for the generic function generally if `where` is missing).

The deprecated function `getMethods` is an older alternative to `findMethods` , returning information in the form of an object of class `MethodsList`, previously used for method dispatch. It is not recommended, since this class of objects is deprecated generally and will disappear in a future version of R.

Usage

```
findMethods(f, where, classes = character(), inherited = FALSE,
      package = "")

findMethodSignatures(..., target = TRUE, methods = )

hasMethods(f, where, package)

### DEPRECATED
getMethods(f, where, table = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`f`	A generic function or the character-string name of one.
`where`	Optionally, an environment or position on the search list to look for methods metadata. If `where` is missing, `findMethods` uses the current table of methods in the generic function itself, and `hasMethods` looks for metadata anywhere in the search list.
`table`	If `TRUE` in a call to `getMethods` the returned value is the table used for dispatch, including inherited methods discovered to date. Used internally, but since the default result is the now unused `mlist` object, the default will likely be changed at some point.
`classes`	If supplied, only methods whose signatures contain at least one of the supplied classes will be included in the value returned.
`inherited`	Logical flag; if `TRUE`, the table of all methods, inherited or defined directly, will be used; otherwise, only the methods explicitly defined. Option `TRUE` is meaningful only if `where` is missing.
`...`	In the call to `findMethodSignatures`, any arguments that might be given to `findMethods`.
`target`	Optional flag to `findMethodSignatures`; if `TRUE`, the signatures used are the target signatures (the classes for which the method will be selected); if `FALSE`, they will be the signatures are defined. The difference is only meaningful if `inherited` is `TRUE`.

`methods` In the call to `findMethodSignatures`, an optional list of methods, presumably returned by a previous call to `findMethods`. If missing, that function will be call with the ... arguments.

`package` In a call to `hasMethods`, the package name for the generic function (e.g., `"base"` for primitives). If missing this will be inferred either from the `"package"` attribute of the function name, if any, or from the package slot of the generic function. See 'Details'.

Details

The functions obtain a table of the defined methods, either from the generic function or from the stored metadata object in the environment specified by `where`. In a call to `getMethods`, the information in the table is converted as described above to produce the returned value, except with the `table` argument.

Note that `hasMethods`, but not the other functions, can be used even if no generic function of this name is currently found. In this case `package` must either be supplied as an argument or included as an attribute of `f`, since the package name is part of the identification of the methods tables.

The Class for lists of methods

The class `"listOfMethods"` returns the methods as a named list of method definitions (or a primitive function, see the slot documentation below). The names are the strings used to store the corresponding objects in the environment from which method dispatch is computed. The current implementation uses the names of the corresponding classes in the method signature, separated by `"#"` if more than one argument is involved in the signature.

Slots

`.Data`**:** Object of class `"list"` The method definitions.

Note that these may include the primitive function itself as default method, when the generic corresponds to a primitive. (Basically, because primitive functions are abnormal R objects, which cannot currently be extended as method definitions.) Computations that use the returned list to derive other information need to take account of this possibility. See the implementation of `findMethodSignatures` for an example.

`arguments`**:** Object of class `"character"`. The names of the formal arguments in the signature of the generic function.

`signatures`**:** Object of class `"list"`. A list of the signatures of the individual methods. This is currently the result of splitting the `names` according to the `"#"` separator.

If the object has been constructed from a table, as when returned by `findMethods`, the signatures will all have the same length. However, a list rather than a character matrix is used for generality. Calling `findMethodSignatures` as in the example below will always convert to the matrix form.

`generic`**:** Object of class `"genericFunction"`. The generic function corresponding to these methods. There are plans to generalize this slot to allow reference to the function.

`names`**:** Object of class `"character"`. The names as noted are the class names separated by `"#"` .

Extends

Class `"namedList"`, directly.

Class `"list"`, by class `"namedList"`, distance 2.

Class `"vector"`, by class `"namedList"`, distance 3.

See Also

showMethods, selectMethod, Methods

Examples

```
mm <-  findMethods("Ops")
findMethodSignatures(methods = mm)
```

`fixPre1.8` *Fix Objects Saved from R Versions Previous to 1.8*

Description

Beginning with R version 1.8.0, the class of an object contains the identification of the package in which the class is defined. The function `fixPre1.8` fixes and re-assigns objects missing that information (typically because they were loaded from a file saved with a previous version of R.)

Usage

```
fixPre1.8(names, where)
```

Arguments

`names`	Character vector of the names of all the objects to be fixed and re-assigned.
`where`	The environment from which to look for the objects, and for class definitions. Defaults to the top environment of the call to `fixPre1.8`, the global environment if the function is used interactively.

Details

The named object will be saved where it was found. Its class attribute will be changed to the full form required by R 1.8; otherwise, the contents of the object should be unchanged.

Objects will be fixed and re-assigned only if all the following conditions hold:

1. The named object exists.
2. It is from a defined class (not a basic datatype which has no actual class attribute).
3. The object appears to be from an earlier version of R.
4. The class is currently defined.
5. The object is consistent with the current class definition.

If any condition except the second fails, a warning message is generated.

Note that `fixPre1.8` currently fixes *only* the change in class attributes. In particular, it will not fix binary versions of packages installed with earlier versions of R if these use incompatible features. Such packages must be re-installed from source, which is the wise approach always when major version changes occur in R.

Value

The names of all the objects that were in fact re-assigned.

genericFunction-class *Generic Function Objects*

Description

Generic functions (objects from or extending class genericFunction) are extended function objects, containing information used in creating and dispatching methods for this function. They also identify the package associated with the function and its methods.

Objects from the Class

Generic functions are created and assigned by setGeneric or setGroupGeneric and, indirectly, by setMethod.

As you might expect setGeneric and setGroupGeneric create objects of class "genericFunction" and "groupGenericFunction" respectively.

Slots

.Data: Object of class "function", the function definition of the generic, usually created automatically as a call to standardGeneric.

generic: Object of class "character", the name of the generic function.

package: Object of class "character", the name of the package to which the function definition belongs (and *not* necessarily where the generic function is stored). If the package is not specified explicitly in the call to setGeneric, it is usually the package on which the corresponding non-generic function exists.

group: Object of class "list", the group or groups to which this generic function belongs. Empty by default.

valueClass: Object of class "character"; if not an empty character vector, identifies one or more classes. It is asserted that all methods for this function return objects from these class (or from classes that extend them).

signature: Object of class "character", the vector of formal argument names that can appear in the signature of methods for this generic function. By default, it is all the formal arguments, except for .... Order matters for efficiency: the most commonly used arguments in specifying methods should come first.

default: Object of class "optionalMethod" (a union of classes "function" and "NULL"), containing the default method for this function if any. Generated automatically and used to initialize method dispatch.

skeleton: Object of class "call", a slot used internally in method dispatch. Don't expect to use it directly.

Extends

Class "function", from data part.
Class "OptionalMethods", by class "function".
Class "PossibleMethod", by class "function".

Methods

Generic function objects are used in the creation and dispatch of formal methods; information from the object is used to create methods list objects and to merge or update the existing methods for this generic.

GenericFunctions *Tools for Managing Generic Functions*

Description

The functions documented here manage collections of methods associated with a generic function, as well as providing information about the generic functions themselves.

Usage

```
isGeneric(f, where, fdef, getName = FALSE)
isGroup(f, where, fdef)
removeGeneric(f, where)

dumpMethod(f, signature, file, where, def)
findFunction(f, generic = TRUE, where = topenv(parent.frame()))
dumpMethods(f, file, signature, methods, where)
signature(...)

removeMethods(f, where = topenv(parent.frame()), all = missing(where))

setReplaceMethod(f, ..., where = topenv(parent.frame()))

getGenerics(where, searchForm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

f	The character string naming the function.
where	The environment, namespace, or search-list position from which to search for objects. By default, start at the top-level environment of the calling function, typically the global environment (i.e., use the search list), or the namespace of a package from which the call came. It is important to supply this argument when calling any of these functions indirectly. With package namespaces, the default is likely to be wrong in such calls.
signature	The class signature of the relevant method. A signature is a named or unnamed vector of character strings. If named, the names must be formal argument names for the generic function. Signatures are matched to the arguments specified in the signature slot of the generic function (see the Details section of the setMethod documentation). The signature argument to dumpMethods is ignored (it was used internally in previous implementations).
file	The file or connection on which to dump method definitions.
def	The function object defining the method; if omitted, the current method definition corresponding to the signature.

`...`	Named or unnamed arguments to form a signature.
`generic`	In testing or finding functions, should generic functions be included. Supply as `FALSE` to get only non-generic functions.
`fdef`	Optional, the generic function definition. Usually omitted in calls to `isGeneric`
`getName`	If `TRUE`, `isGeneric` returns the name of the generic. By default, it returns `TRUE`.
`methods`	The methods object containing the methods to be dumped. By default, the methods defined for this generic (optionally on the specified `where` location).
`all`	in `removeMethods`, logical indicating if all (default) or only the first method found should be removed.
`searchForm`	In `getGenerics`, if `TRUE`, the `package` slot of the returned result is in the form used by `search()`, otherwise as the simple package name (e.g, `"package:base"` vs `"base"`).

Summary of Functions

`isGeneric`**:** Is there a function named `f`, and if so, is it a generic?

The `getName` argument allows a function to find the name from a function definition. If it is `TRUE` then the name of the generic is returned, or `FALSE` if this is not a generic function definition.

The behavior of `isGeneric` and `getGeneric` for primitive functions is slightly different. These functions don't exist as formal function objects (for efficiency and historical reasons), regardless of whether methods have been defined for them. A call to `isGeneric` tells you whether methods have been defined for this primitive function, anywhere in the current search list, or in the specified position `where`. In contrast, a call to `getGeneric` will return what the generic for that function would be, even if no methods have been currently defined for it.

`removeGeneric`**,** `removeMethods`**:** Remove all the methods for the generic function of this name. In addition, `removeGeneric` removes the function itself; `removeMethods` restores the non-generic function which was the default method. If there was no default method, `removeMethods` leaves a generic function with no methods.

`standardGeneric`**:** Dispatches a method from the current function call for the generic function `f`. It is an error to call `standardGeneric` anywhere except in the body of the corresponding generic function.

Note that `standardGeneric` is a primitive function in the **base** package for efficiency reasons, but rather documented here where it belongs naturally.

`dumpMethod`**:** Dump the method for this generic function and signature.

`findFunction`**:** return a list of either the positions on the search list, or the current top-level environment, on which a function object for `name` exists. The returned value is *always* a list, use the first element to access the first visible version of the function. See the example.

NOTE: Use this rather than `find` with `mode="function"`, which is not as meaningful, and has a few subtle bugs from its use of regular expressions. Also, `findFunction` works correctly in the code for a package when attaching the package via a call to `library`.

`dumpMethods`**:** Dump all the methods for this generic.

`signature`**:** Returns a named list of classes to be matched to arguments of a generic function.

`getGenerics`**:** returns the names of the generic functions that have methods defined on `where`; this argument can be an environment or an index into the search list. By default, the whole search list is used.

The methods definitions are stored with package qualifiers; for example, methods for function "initialize" might refer to two different functions of that name, on different packages. The package names corresponding to the method list object are contained in the slot package of the returned object. The form of the returned name can be plain (e.g., "base"), or in the form used in the search list ("package:base") according to the value of searchForm

Details

setGeneric: If there is already a non-generic function of this name, it will be used to define the generic unless def is supplied, and the current function will become the default method for the generic.

If def is supplied, this defines the generic function, and no default method will exist (often a good feature, if the function should only be available for a meaningful subset of all objects).

Arguments group and valueClass are retained for consistency with S-Plus, but are currently not used.

isGeneric: If the fdef argument is supplied, take this as the definition of the generic, and test whether it is really a generic, with f as the name of the generic. (This argument is not available in S-Plus.)

removeGeneric: If where supplied, just remove the version on this element of the search list; otherwise, removes the first version encountered.

standardGeneric: Generic functions should usually have a call to standardGeneric as their entire body. They can, however, do any other computations as well.

The usual setGeneric (directly or through calling setMethod) creates a function with a call to standardGeneric.

dumpMethod: The resulting source file will recreate the method.

findFunction: If generic is FALSE, ignore generic functions.

dumpMethods: If signature is supplied only the methods matching this initial signature are dumped. (This feature is not found in S-Plus: don't use it if you want compatibility.)

signature: The advantage of using signature is to provide a check on which arguments you meant, as well as clearer documentation in your method specification. In addition, signature checks that each of the elements is a single character string.

removeMethods: Returns TRUE if f was a generic function, FALSE (silently) otherwise.

If there is a default method, the function will be re-assigned as a simple function with this definition. Otherwise, the generic function remains but with no methods (so any call to it will generate an error). In either case, a following call to setMethod will consistently re-establish the same generic function as before.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

getMethod (also for selectMethod), setGeneric, setClass, showMethods

Examples

```
require(stats) # for lm

## get the function "myFun" -- throw an error if 0 or > 1 versions visible:
findFuncStrict <- function(fName) {
  allF <- findFunction(fName)
  if(length(allF) == 0)
    stop("No versions of ",fName," visible")
  else if(length(allF) > 1)
    stop(fName," is ambiguous: ", length(allF), " versions")
  else
    get(fName, allF[[1]])
}

try(findFuncStrict("myFun"))# Error: no version
lm <- function(x) x+1
try(findFuncStrict("lm"))#    Error: 2 versions
findFuncStrict("findFuncStrict")# just 1 version
rm(lm)



## method dumping ----------------------------------

setClass("A", representation(a="numeric"))
setMethod("plot", "A", function(x,y,...){ cat("A meth\n") })
dumpMethod("plot","A", file="")
## Not run:
setMethod("plot", "A",
function (x, y, ...)
{
    cat("AAAAA\n")
}
)

## End(Not run)
tmp <- tempfile()
dumpMethod("plot","A", file=tmp)
## now remove, and see if we can parse the dump
stopifnot(removeMethod("plot", "A"))
source(tmp)
stopifnot(is(getMethod("plot", "A"), "MethodDefinition"))

## same with dumpMethods() :
setClass("B", contains="A")
setMethod("plot", "B", function(x,y,...){ cat("B ...\n") })
dumpMethods("plot", file=tmp)
stopifnot(removeMethod("plot", "A"),
          removeMethod("plot", "B"))
source(tmp)
stopifnot(is(getMethod("plot", "A"), "MethodDefinition"),
          is(getMethod("plot", "B"), "MethodDefinition"))
```

`getClass` *Get Class Definition*

Description

Get the definition of a class.

Usage

```
getClass(Class, .Force = FALSE, where)
getClassDef(Class, where, package, inherits = TRUE)
```

Arguments

Class	the character-string name of the class, often with a "package" attribute as noted below under package.
.Force	if TRUE, return NULL if the class is undefined; otherwise, an undefined class results in an error.
where	environment from which to begin the search for the definition; by default, start at the top-level (global) environment and proceed through the search list.
package	the name of the package asserted to hold the definition. If it is a non-empty string it is used instead of where, as the first place to look for the class. Note that the package must be loaded but need not be attached. By default, the package attribute of the Class argument is used, if any. There will usually be a package attribute if Class comes from class(x) for some object.
inherits	Should the class definition be retrieved from any enclosing environment and also from the cache? If FALSE only a definition in the environment where will be returned.

Details

Class definitions are stored in metadata objects in a package namespace or other environment where they are defined. When packages are loaded, the class definitions in the package are cached in an internal table. Therefore, most calls to getClassDef will find the class in the cache or fail to find it at all, unless inherits is FALSE, in which case only the environment(s) defined by package or where are searched.

The class cache allows for multiple definitions of the same class name in separate environments, with of course the limitation that the package attribute or package name must be provided in the call to

Value

The object defining the class. If the class definition is not found, getClassDef returns NULL, while getClass, which calls getClassDef, either generates an error or, if .Force is TRUE, returns a simple definition for the class. The latter case is used internally, but is not typically sensible in user code.

The non-null returned value is an object of class classRepresentation. For all reasonable purposes, use this object only to extract information, rather than trying to modify it: Use functions such as setClass and setIs to create or modify class definitions.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

Classes, setClass, isClass.

Examples

```
getClass("numeric") ## a built in class

cld <- getClass("thisIsAnUndefinedClass", .Force = TRUE)
cld ## a NULL prototype
## If you are really curious:
utils::str(cld)
## Whereas these generate errors:
try(getClass("thisIsAnUndefinedClass"))
try(getClassDef("thisIsAnUndefinedClass"))
```

---

getMethod *Get or Test for the Definition of a Method*

Description

Functions to look for a method corresponding to a given generic function and signature. The functions getMethod and selectMethod return the method; the functions existsMethod and hasMethod test for its existence. In both cases the first function only gets direct definitions and the second uses inheritance. In all cases, the search is in the generic function itself or in the package/environment specified by argument where.

The function findMethod returns the package(s) in the search list (or in the packages specified by the where argument) that contain a method for this function and signature.

Usage

```
getMethod(f, signature=character(), where, optional = FALSE,
          mlist, fdef)

existsMethod(f, signature = character(), where)

findMethod(f, signature, where)

selectMethod(f, signature, optional = FALSE, useInherited =,
             mlist = , fdef = , verbose = , doCache = )

hasMethod(f, signature=character(), where)
```

Arguments

f	A generic function or the character-string name of one.
signature	the signature of classes to match to the arguments of f. See the details below.
where	The position or environment in which to look for the method(s): by default, the table of methods defined in the generic function itself is used.

`optional` If the selection in `selectMethod` does not find a valid method an error is generated, unless this argument is `TRUE`. In that case, the value returned is `NULL` if no method matches.

`mlist, fdef, useInherited, verbose, doCache`
Optional arguments to `getMethod` and `selectMethod` for internal use. Avoid these: some will work as expected and others will not, and none of them is required for normal use of the functions.

Details

The `signature` argument specifies classes, corresponding to formal arguments of the generic function; to be precise, to the `signature` slot of the generic function object. The argument may be a vector of strings identifying classes, and may be named or not. Names, if supplied, match the names of those formal arguments included in the signature of the generic. That signature is normally all the arguments except `....` However, generic functions can be specified with only a subset of the arguments permitted, or with the signature taking the arguments in a different order.

It's a good idea to name the arguments in the signature to avoid confusion, if you're dealing with a generic that does something special with its signature. In any case, the elements of the signature are matched to the formal signature by the same rules used in matching arguments in function calls (see `match.call`).

The strings in the signature may be class names, `"missing"` or `"ANY"`. See Methods for the meaning of these in method selection. Arguments not supplied in the signature implicitly correspond to class `"ANY"`; in particular, giving an empty signature means to look for the default method.

A call to `getMethod` returns the method for a particular function and signature. As with other `get` functions, argument `where` controls where the function looks (by default anywhere in the search list) and argument `optional` controls whether the function returns `NULL` or generates an error if the method is not found. The search for the method makes no use of inheritance.

The function `selectMethod` also looks for a method given the function and signature, but makes full use of the method dispatch mechanism; i.e., inherited methods and group generics are taken into account just as they would be in dispatching a method for the corresponding signature, with the one exception that conditional inheritance is not used. Like `getMethod`, `selectMethod` returns `NULL` or generates an error if the method is not found, depending on the argument `optional`.

The functions `existsMethod` and `hasMethod` return `TRUE` or `FALSE` according to whether a method is found, the first corresponding to `getMethod` (no inheritance) and the second to `selectMethod`.

Value

The call to `selectMethod` or `getMethod` returns the selected method, if one is found. (This class extends `function`, so you can use the result directly as a function if that is what you want.) Otherwise an error is thrown if `optional` is `FALSE` and `NULL` is returned if `optional` is `TRUE`.

The returned method object is a `MethodDefinition` object, *except* that the default method for a primitive function is required to be the primitive itself. Note therefore that the only reliable test that the search failed is `is.null()`.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

Methods for the details of method selection; GenericFunctions for other functions manipulating methods and generic function objects; MethodDefinition for the class that represents method definitions.

Examples

```
setGeneric("testFun", function(x)standardGeneric("testFun"))
setMethod("testFun", "numeric", function(x)x+1)
hasMethod("testFun", "numeric")
## Not run: [1] TRUE
hasMethod("testFun", "integer") #inherited
## Not run: [1] TRUE
existsMethod("testFun", "integer")
## Not run: [1] FALSE
hasMethod("testFun") # default method
## Not run: [1] FALSE
hasMethod("testFun", "ANY")
## Not run: [1] FALSE
```

---

getPackageName *The Name associated with a Given Package*

Description

The functions below produce the package associated with a particular environment or position on the search list, or of the package containing a particular function. They are primarily used to support computations that need to differentiate objects on multiple packages.

Usage

```
getPackageName(where, create = TRUE)
setPackageName(pkg, env)

packageSlot(object)
packageSlot(object) <- value
```

Arguments

where	the environment or position on the search list associated with the desired package.
object	object providing a character string name, plus the package in which this object is to be found.
value	the name of the package.
create	flag, should a package name be created if none can be inferred? If TRUE and no non-empty package name is found, the current date and time are used as a package name, and a warning is issued. The created name is stored in the environment if that environment is not locked.
pkg, env	make the string in pkg the internal package name for all computations that set class and method definitions in environment env.

Details

Package names are normally installed during loading of the package, by the INSTALL script or by the `library` function. (Currently, the name is stored as the object `.packageName` but don't trust this for the future.)

Value

`getPackageName` returns the character-string name of the package (without the extraneous `"package:"` found in the search list).

`packageSlot` returns or sets the package name slot (currently an attribute, not a formal slot, but this may change someday).

`setPackageName` can be used to establish a package name in an environment that would otherwise not have one. This allows you to create classes and/or methods in an arbitrary environment, but it is usually preferable to create packages by the standard programming tools (`package.skeleton`, etc.)

See Also

`search`, `packageName`

Examples

```
## all the following usually return "base"
getPackageName(length(search()))
getPackageName(baseenv())
getPackageName(asNamespace("base"))
getPackageName("package:base")
```

---

hasArg *Look for an Argument in the Call*

Description

Returns `TRUE` if `name` corresponds to an argument in the call, either a formal argument to the function, or a component of `...`, and `FALSE` otherwise.

Usage

```
hasArg(name)
```

Arguments

`name`	The name of a potential argument, as an unquoted name or character string.

Details

The expression `hasArg(x)`, for example, is similar to `!missing(x)`, with two exceptions. First, `hasArg` will look for an argument named `x` in the call if `x` is not a formal argument to the calling function, but `...` is. Second, `hasArg` never generates an error if given a name as an argument, whereas `missing(x)` generates an error if `x` is not a formal argument.

Value

Always TRUE or FALSE as described above.

See Also

missing

Examples

```
ftest <- function(x1, ...) c(hasArg(x1), hasArg("y2"))

ftest(1) ## c(TRUE, FALSE)
ftest(1, 2)  ## c(TRUE, FALSE)
ftest(y2 = 2)   ## c(FALSE, TRUE)
ftest(y = 2)    ## c(FALSE, FALSE) (no partial matching)
ftest(y2 = 2, x = 1)  ## c(TRUE, TRUE) partial match x1
```

---

implicitGeneric *Manage Implicit Versions of Generic Functions*

Description

Create or access implicit generic functions, used to enforce consistent generic versions of functions that are not currently generic. Function `implicitGeneric()` returns the implicit generic version, `setGenericImplicit()` turns a generic implicit, `prohibitGeneric()` prevents your function from being made generic, and `registerImplicitGenerics()` saves a set of implicit generic definitions in the cached table of the current session.

Usage

```
implicitGeneric(name, where, generic)
setGenericImplicit(name, where, restore = TRUE)
prohibitGeneric(name, where)
registerImplicitGenerics(what, where)
```

Arguments

name	Character string name of the function.
where	Package or environment in which to register the implicit generics. When using the functions from the top level of your own package source, this argument can usually be omitted (and should be).
generic	Optionally, the generic function definition to be cached, but usually omitted. See Details section.
restore	Should the non-generic version of the function be restored after the current.
what	For `registerImplicitGenerics()`, Optional table of the implicit generics to register, but nearly always omitted. See Details section.

Details

Multiple packages may define methods for the same function, using the version of a function stored in one package. All these methods should be marshaled and dispatched consistently when a user calls the function. For consistency, the generic version of the function must have a unique definition (the same arguments allowed in methods signatures, the same values for optional slots such as the value class, and the same standard or non-standard definition of the function itself).

If the original function is already an S4 generic, there is no problem. The implicit generic mechanism enforces consistency when the version in the package owning the function is *not* generic. If a call to `setGeneric()` attempts to turn a function in another package into a generic, the mechanism compares the proposed new generic function to the implicit generic version of that function. If the two agree, all is well. If not, and if the function belongs to another package, then the new generic will not be associated with that package. Instead, a warning is issued and a separate generic function is created, with its package slot set to the current package, not the one that owns the non-generic version of the function. The effect is that the new package can still define methods for this function, but it will not share the methods in other packages, since it is forcing a different definition of the generic function.

The right way to proceed in nearly all cases is to call `setGeneric("foo")`, giving *only* the name of the function; this will automatically use the implicit generic version. If you don't like that version, the best solution is to convince the owner of the other package to agree with you and to insert code to define the non-default properties of the function (even if the owner does not want `foo()` to be a generic by default).

For any function, the implicit generic form is a standard generic in which all formal arguments, except for `...`, are allowed in the signature of methods. If that is the suitable generic for a function, no action is needed. If not, the best mechanism is to set up the generic in the code of the package owning the function, and to then call `setGenericImplicit()` to record the implicit generic and restore the non-generic version. See the example.

Note that the package can define methods for the implicit generic as well; when the implicit generic is made a real generic, those methods will be included.

Other than predefining methods, the usual reason for having a non-default implicit generic is to provide a non-default signature, and the usual reason for *that* is to allow lazy evaluation of some arguments. See the example. All arguments in the signature of a generic function must be evaluated at the time the function needs to select a method. (But those arguments can be missing, with or without a default expression being defined; you can always examine `missing(x)` even for arguments in the signature.)

If you want to completely prohibit anyone from turning your function into a generic, call `prohibitGeneric()`.

Value

Function `implicitGeneric()` returns the implicit generic definition (and caches that definition the first time if it has to construct it).

The other functions exist for their side effect and return nothing useful.

See Also

`setGeneric`

Examples

```
### How we would make the function \link{with}() into a generic:
```

```
## Since the second argument, expr is used literally, we want
## with() to only have "data" in the signature.

## Note that methods-internal code now has already extended  with()
## to do the equivalent of the following
## Not run:
setGeneric("with", signature = "data")
## Now we could predefine methods for "with" if we wanted to.

## When ready, we store the generic as implicit, and restore the original
setGenericImplicit("with")

## (This example would only work if we "owned" function with(),
##  but it is in base.)
## End(Not run)

implicitGeneric("with")
```

`inheritedSlotNames` *Names of Slots Inherited From a Super Class*

Description

For a class (or class definition, see `getClass` and the description of class `classRepresentation`), give the names which are inherited from "above", i.e., super classes, rather than by this class' definition itself.

Usage

```
inheritedSlotNames(Class, where = topenv(parent.frame()))
```

Arguments

`Class`	character string or `classRepresentation`, i.e., resulting from `getClass`.
`where`	environment, to be passed further to `isClass` and `getClass`.

Value

character vector of slot names, or `NULL`.

See Also

`slotNames`, `slot`, `setClass`, etc.

Examples

```
.srch <- search()
library(stats4)
inheritedSlotNames("mle")


## Not run:
```

```
if(require("Matrix")) {
  print( inheritedSlotNames("Matrix") ) # NULL
  ## whereas
  print( inheritedSlotNames("sparseMatrix") ) # --> Dim & Dimnames
  ##  i.e. inherited from "Matrix" class

  print( cl <- getClass("dgCMatrix") ) # six slots, etc

  print( inheritedSlotNames(cl) ) # *all* six slots are inherited
}


## detach package weve attached above:
for(n in rev(which(is.na(match(search(), .srch)))))
   try( detach(pos = n) )

## End(Not run)
```

`initialize-methods` *Methods to Initialize New Objects from a Class*

Description

The arguments to function `new` to create an object from a particular class can be interpreted specially for that class, by the definition of a method for function `initialize` for the class. This documentation describes some existing methods, and also outlines how to write new ones.

Methods

`signature(.Object = "ANY")` The default method for `initialize` takes either named or unnamed arguments. Argument names must be the names of slots in this class definition, and the corresponding arguments must be valid objects for the slot (that is, have the same class as specified for the slot, or some superclass of that class). If the object comes from a superclass, it is not coerced strictly, so normally it will retain its current class (specifically, `as(object, Class, strict = FALSE)`).

Unnamed arguments must be objects of this class, of one of its superclasses, or one of its subclasses (from the class, from a class this class extends, or from a class that extends this class). If the object is from a superclass, this normally defines some of the slots in the object. If the object is from a subclass, the new object is that argument, coerced to the current class.

Unnamed arguments are processed first, in the order they appear. Then named arguments are processed. Therefore, explicit values for slots always override any values inferred from superclass or subclass arguments.

`signature(.Object = "traceable")` Objects of a class that extends `traceable` are used to implement debug tracing (see class traceable and `trace`).

The `initialize` method for these classes takes special arguments `def, tracer, exit, at, print`. The first of these is the object to use as the original definition (e.g., a function). The others correspond to the arguments to `trace`.

`signature(.Object = "environment"), signature(.Object = ".environment")` The `initialize` method for environments takes a named list of objects to be used to initialize the environment. Subclasses of `"environment"` inherit an initialize method through `".environment"`, which has the additional effect of allocating a new environment. If you

define your own method for such a subclass, be sure either to call the existing method via `callNextMethod` or allocate an environment in your method, since environments are references and are not duplicated automatically.

`signature(.Object = "signature")` This is a method for internal use only. It takes an optional `functionDef` argument to provide a generic function with a `signature` slot to define the argument names. See Methods for details.

Writing Initialization Methods

Initialization methods provide a general mechanism corresponding to generator functions in other languages.

The arguments to `initialize` are `.Object` and `....` Nearly always, `initialize` is called from `new`, not directly. The `.Object` argument is then the prototype object from the class.

Two techniques are often appropriate for `initialize` methods: special argument names and `callNextMethod`.

You may want argument names that are more natural to your users than the (default) slot names. These will be the formal arguments to your method definition, in addition to `.Object` (always) and ... (optionally). For example, the method for class `"traceable"` documented above would be created by a call to `setMethod` of the form:

```
setMethod("initialize", "traceable",
  function(.Object, def, tracer, exit, at, print) ...
)
```

In this example, no other arguments are meaningful, and the resulting method will throw an error if other names are supplied.

When your new class extends another class, you may want to call the initialize method for this superclass (either a special method or the default). For example, suppose you want to define a method for your class, with special argument `x`, but you also want users to be able to set slots specifically. If you want `x` to override the slot information, the beginning of your method definition might look something like this:

```
function(.Object, x, ...) {
  Object <- callNextMethod(.Object, ...)
  if(!missing(x)) { # do something with x
```

You could also choose to have the inherited method override, by first interpreting `x`, and then calling the next method.

`is` *Is an Object from a Class?*

Description

Functions to test inheritance relationships between an object and a class (`is`) or between two classes (`extends`), and to establish such relationships (`setIs`, an explicit alternative to the `contains=` argument to `setClass`).

Usage

```
is(object, class2)

extends(class1, class2, maybe = TRUE, fullInfo = FALSE)

setIs(class1, class2, test=NULL, coerce=NULL, replace=NULL,
      by = character(), where = topenv(parent.frame()), classDef =,
      extensionObject = NULL, doComplete = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object.
`class1, class2`	the names of the classes between which `is` relations are to be examined defined, or (more efficiently) the class definition objects for the classes.
`maybe, fullInfo`	In a call to `extends`, `maybe` is the value returned if a relation is conditional. In a call with `class2` missing, `fullInfo` is a flag, which if `TRUE` causes a list of objects of class `classExtension` to be returned, rather than just the names of the classes.
`coerce, replace`	In a call to `setIs`, functions optionally supplied to coerce the object to `class2`, and to alter the object so that `is(object, class2)` is identical to `value`. See the details section below.
`test`	In a call to `setIs`, a *conditional* relationship is defined by supplying this function. Conditional relations are discouraged and are not included in selecting methods. See the details section below.
	The remaining arguments are for internal use and/or usually omitted.
`extensionObject`	alternative to the `test, coerce, replace, by` arguments; an object from class `SClassExtension` describing the relation. (Used in internal calls.)
`doComplete`	when `TRUE`, the class definitions will be augmented with indirect relations as well. (Used in internal calls.)
`by`	In a call to `setIs`, the name of an intermediary class. Coercion will proceed by first coercing to this class and from there to the target class. (The intermediate coercions have to be valid.)
`where`	In a call to `setIs`, where to store the metadata defining the relationship. Default is the global environment for calls from the top level of the session or a source file evaluated there. When the call occurs in the top level of a file in the source of a package, the default will be the namespace or environment of the package. Other uses are tricky and not usually a good idea, unless you really know what you are doing.
`classDef`	Optional class definition for `class` , required internally when `setIs` is called during the initial definition of the class by a call to `setClass`. *Don't* use this argument, unless you really know why you're doing so.

Summary of Functions

`is`: With two arguments, tests whether `object` can be treated as from `class2`.

With one argument, returns all the super-classes of this object's class.

`extends`**:** Does the first class extend the second class? The call returns `maybe` if the extension includes a test.

When called with one argument, the value is a vector of the superclasses of `class1`. If argument `fullInfo` is `TRUE`, the call returns a named list of objects of class `SClassExtension`; otherwise, just the names of the superclasses.

`setIs`**:** Defines `class1` to be an extension (subclass) of `class2`. If `class2` is an existing virtual class, such as a class union, then only the two classes need to be supplied in the call, if the implied inherited methods work for `class1`. See the details section below.

Alternatively, arguments `coerce` and `replace` should be supplied, defining methods to coerce to the superclass and to replace the part corresponding to the superclass. As discussed in the details and other sections below, this form is often less recommended than the corresponding call to `setAs`, to which it is an alternative.

Argument `test` allows conditional inheritance, in which the `is()` result is tested for each object rather than being determined by the class definition. This form is discouraged when it can be avoided; in particular, note that conditional inheritance is *not* used to select methods for dispatch.

Details

Arranging for a class to inherit from another class is a key tool in programming. In , there are three basic techniques, the first two providing what is called "simple" inheritance, the preferred form:

1. By the `contains=` argument in a call to `setClass`. This is and should be the most common mechanism. It arranges that the new class contains all the structure of the existing class, and in particular all the slots with the same class specified. The resulting class extension is defined to be `simple`, with important implications for method definition (see the section on this topic below).
2. Making `class1` a subclass of a virtual class either by a call to `setClassUnion` to make the subclass a member of a new class union, or by a call to `setIs` to add a class to an existing class union or as a new subclass of an existing virtual class. In either case, the implication should be that methods defined for the class union or other superclass all work correctly for the subclass. This may depend on some similarity in the structure of the subclasses or simply indicate that the superclass methods are defined in terms of generic functions that apply to all the subclasses. These relationships are also generally simple.
3. Supplying `coerce` and `replace` arguments to `setAs`. allows arbitrary inheritance relationships, using the same mechanism for defining coerce methods by a call to `setAs`. The difference between the two is simply that `setAs` will require a call to `as` for a conversion to take place, whereas after the call to `setIs`, objects will be automatically converted to the superclass.

   The automatic feature is the dangerous part, mainly because it results in the subclass potentially inheriting methods that do not work. See the section on inheritance below. If the two classes involved do not actually inherit a large collection of methods, as in the first example below, the danger may be relatively slight.

   If the superclass inherits methods where the subclass has only a default or remotely inherited method, problems are more likely. In this case, a general recommendation is to use the `setAs` mechanism instead, unless there is a strong counter reason. Otherwise, be prepared to override some of the methods inherited.

With this caution given, the rest of this section describes what happens when `coerce=` and `replace=` arguments are supplied to `setIs`.

The `coerce` and `replace` arguments are functions that define how to coerce a `class1` object to `class2`, and how to replace the part of the subclass object that corresponds to `class2`. The first of

these is a function of one argument which should be `from`, and the second of two arguments (`from`, `value`). For details, see the section on coerce functions below .

When by is specified, the coerce process first coerces to this class and then to `class2`. It's unlikely you would use the by argument directly, but it is used in defining cached information about classes.

The value returned (invisibly) by `setIs` is the revised class definition of `class1`.

Coerce, replace, and test functions

The `coerce` argument is a function that turns a `class1` object into a `class2` object. The `replace` argument is a function of two arguments that modifies a `class1` object (the first argument) to replace the part of it that corresponds to `class2` (supplied as `value`, the second argument). It then returns the modified object as the value of the call. In other words, it acts as a replacement method to implement the expression `as(object, class2) <- value`.

The easiest way to think of the `coerce` and `replace` functions is by thinking of the case that `class1` contains `class2` in the usual sense, by including the slots of the second class. (To repeat, in this situation you would not call `setIs`, but the analogy shows what happens when you do.)

The `coerce` function in this case would just make a `class2` object by extracting the corresponding slots from the `class1` object. The `replace` function would replace in the `class1` object the slots corresponding to `class2`, and return the modified object as its value.

For additional discussion of these functions, see the documentation of the `setAs` function. (Unfortunately, argument `def` to that function corresponds to argument `coerce` here.)

The inheritance relationship can also be conditional, if a function is supplied as the `test` argument. This should be a function of one argument that returns `TRUE` or `FALSE` according to whether the object supplied satisfies the relation `is(object, class2)`. Conditional relations between classes are discouraged in general because they require a per-object calculation to determine their validity. They cannot be applied as efficiently as ordinary relations and tend to make the code that uses them harder to interpret. *NOTE: conditional inheritance is not used to dispatch methods.* Methods for conditional superclasses will not be inherited. Instead, a method for the subclass should be defined that tests the conditional relationship.

Inherited methods

A method written for a particular signature (classes matched to one or more formal arguments to the function) naturally assumes that the objects corresponding to the arguments can be treated as coming from the corresponding classes. The objects will have all the slots and available methods for the classes.

The code that selects and dispatches the methods ensures that this assumption is correct. If the inheritance was "simple", that is, defined by one or more uses of the `contains=` argument in a call to `setClass`, no extra work is generally needed. Classes are inherited from the superclass, with the same definition.

When inheritance is defined by a general call to `setIs`, extra computations are required. This form of inheritance implies that the subclass does *not* just contain the slots of the superclass, but instead requires the explicit call to the coerce and/or replace method. To ensure correct computation, the inherited method is supplemented by calls to `as` before the body of the method is evaluated.

The calls to `as` generated in this case have the argument `strict = FALSE`, meaning that extra information can be left in the converted object, so long as it has all the appropriate slots. (It's this option that allows simple subclass objects to be used without any change.) When you are writing your coerce method, you may want to take advantage of that option.

Methods inherited through non-simple extensions can result in ambiguities or unexpected selections. If `class2` is a specialized class with just a few applicable methods, creating the inheritance

relation may have little effect on the behavior of `class1`. But if `class2` is a class with many methods, you may find that you now inherit some undesirable methods for `class1`, in some cases, fail to inherit expected methods. In the second example below, the non-simple inheritance from class `"factor"` might be assumed to inherit S3 methods via that class. But the S3 class is ambiguous, and in fact is `"character"` rather than `"factor"`.

For some generic functions, methods inherited by non-simple extensions are either known to be invalid or sufficiently likely to be so that the generic function has been defined to exclude such inheritance. For example `initialize` methods must return an object of the target class; this is straightforward if the extension is simple, because no change is made to the argument object, but is essentially impossible. For this reason, the generic function insists on only simple extensions for inheritance. See the `simpleInheritanceOnly` argument to `setGeneric` for the mechanism. You can use this mechanism when defining new generic functions.

If you get into problems with functions that do allow non-simple inheritance, there are two basic choices. Either back off from the `setIs` call and settle for explicit coercing defined by a call to `setAs`; or, define explicit methods involving `class1` to override the bad inherited methods. The first choice is the safer, when there are serious problems.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`inherits` is nearly always equivalent to `is`, both for S4 and non-S4 objects, and is somewhat faster. The non-equivalence applies to classes that have conditional superclasses, with a non-trivial `test=` in the relation (not common and discouraged): for these, `is` tests for the relation but `inherits` by definition ignores conditional inheritance for S4 objects.

`selectSuperClasses(cl)` has similar semantics as `extends(cl)`, typically returning subsets of the latter.

Examples

```
## Two examples of setIs() with coerce= and replace= arguments
## The first one works fairly well, because neither class has many
## inherited methods do be disturbed by the new inheritance

## The second example does NOT work well, because the new superclass,
## "factor", causes methods to be inherited that should not be.

## First example:
## a class definition (see \link{setClass} for class "track")
setClass("trackCurve", contains = "track",
         representation( smooth = "numeric"))
## A class similar to "trackCurve", but with different structure
## allowing matrices for the "y" and "smooth" slots
setClass("trackMultiCurve",
         representation(x="numeric", y="matrix", smooth="matrix"),
         prototype = structure(list(), x=numeric(), y=matrix(0,0,0),

                               smooth= matrix(0,0,0)))
## Automatically convert an object from class "trackCurve" into
## "trackMultiCurve", by making the y, smooth slots into 1-column matrices
```

```
setIs("trackCurve",
      "trackMultiCurve",
      coerce = function(obj) {
        new("trackMultiCurve",
            x = obj@x,
            y = as.matrix(obj@y),
            smooth = as.matrix(obj@smooth))
      },
      replace = function(obj, value) {
        obj@y <- as.matrix(value@y)
        obj@x <- value@x
        obj@smooth <- as.matrix(value@smooth)
        obj})



## Second Example:
## A class that adds a slot to "character"
setClass("stringsDated", contains = "character",
         representation(stamp="POSIXt"))

## Convert automatically to a factor by explicit coerce
setIs("stringsDated", "factor",
      coerce = function(from) factor(from@.Data),
      replace= function(from, value) {
                  from@.Data <- as.character(value); from })

ll <- sample(letters, 10, replace = TRUE)
ld <- new("stringsDated", ll, stamp = Sys.time())

levels(as(ld, "factor"))
levels(ld) # will be NULL--see comment in section on inheritance above.

## In contrast, a class that simply extends "factor"
## has no such ambiguities
setClass("factorDated", contains = "factor",
         representation(stamp="POSIXt"))
fd <- new("factorDated", factor(ll), stamp = Sys.time())
identical(levels(fd), levels(as(fd, "factor")))
```

`isSealedMethod` *Check for a Sealed Method or Class*

Description

These functions check for either a method or a class that has been *sealed* when it was defined, and which therefore cannot be re-defined.

Usage

```
isSealedMethod(f, signature, fdef, where)
isSealedClass(Class, where)
```

Arguments

f	The quoted name of the generic function.
signature	The class names in the method's signature, as they would be supplied to setMethod.
fdef	Optional, and usually omitted: the generic function definition for f.
Class	The quoted name of the class.
where	where to search for the method or class definition. By default, searches from the top environment of the call to isSealedMethod or isSealedClass, typically the global environment or the namespace of a package containing a call to one of the functions.

Details

In the implementation of classes and methods, it is possible to seal the definition of either a class or a method. The basic classes (numeric and other types of vectors, matrix and array data) are sealed. So also are the methods for the primitive functions on those data types. The effect is that programmers cannot re-define the meaning of these basic data types and computations. More precisely, for primitive functions that depend on only one data argument, methods cannot be specified for basic classes. For functions (such as the arithmetic operators) that depend on two arguments, methods can be specified if *one* of those arguments is a basic class, but not if both are.

Programmers can seal other class and method definitions by using the sealed argument to setClass or setMethod.

Value

The functions return FALSE if the method or class is not sealed (including the case that it is not defined); TRUE if it is.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

Examples

```
## these are both TRUE
isSealedMethod("+", c("numeric", "character"))
isSealedClass("matrix")

setClass("track",
           representation(x="numeric", y="numeric"))
## but this is FALSE
isSealedClass("track")
## and so is this
isSealedClass("A Name for an undefined Class")
## and so are these, because only one of the two arguments is basic
isSealedMethod("+", c("track", "numeric"))
isSealedMethod("+", c("numeric", "track"))
```

language-class *Classes to Represent Unevaluated Language Objects*

Description

The virtual class "language" and the specific classes that extend it represent unevaluated objects, as produced for example by the parser or by functions such as quote.

Usage

```
### each of these classes corresponds to an unevaluated object
### in the S language.
### The class name can appear in method signatures,
### and in a few other contexts (such as some calls to as()).

"("
"<-"
"call"
"for"
"if"
"repeat"
"while"
"name"
"{"

### Each of the classes above extends the virtual class
"language"
```

Objects from the Class

"language" is a virtual class; no objects may be created from it.

Objects from the other classes can be generated by a call to new(Class, ...), where Class is the quoted class name, and the ... arguments are either empty or a *single* object that is from this class (or an extension).

Methods

coerce signature(from = "ANY", to = "call"). A method exists for as(object, "call"), calling as.call().

LinearMethodsList-class *Class "LinearMethodsList"*

Description

A version of methods lists that has been 'linearized' for producing summary information. The actual objects from class "MethodsList" used for method dispatch are defined recursively over the arguments involved.

Objects from the Class

The function linearizeMlist converts an ordinary methods list object into the linearized form.

Slots

methods: Object of class "list", the method definitions.

arguments: Object of class "list", the corresponding formal arguments, namely as many of the arguments in the signature of the generic function as are active in the relevant method table.

classes: Object of class "list", the corresponding classes in the signatures.

generic: Object of class "genericFunction"; the generic function to which the methods correspond.

Future Note

The current version of linearizeMlist does not take advantage of the MethodDefinition class, and therefore does more work for less effect than it could. In particular, we may move to redefine both the function and the class to take advantage of the stored signatures. Don't write code depending precisely on the present form, although all the current information will be obtainable in the future.

See Also

Function linearizeMlist for the computation, and class MethodsList for the original, recursive form.

LocalReferenceClasses *Localized Objects based on Reference Classes*

Description

Local reference classes are modified ReferenceClasses that isolate the objects to the local frame. Therefore, they do *not* propagate changes back to the calling environment. At the same time, they use the reference field semantics locally, avoiding the automatic duplication applied to standard objects.

The current implementation has no special construction. To create a local reference class, call setRefClass() with a contains= argument that includes "localRefClass". See the example below.

Local reference classes operate essentially as do regular, functional classes in ; that is, changes are made by assignment and take place in the local frame. The essential difference is that replacement operations (like the change to the twiddle field in the example) do not cause duplication of the entire object, as would be the case for a formal class or for data with attributes or in a named list. The purpose is to allow large objects in some fields that are not changed along with potentially frequent changes to other fields, but without copying the large fields.

Usage

```
setRefClass(Class, fields = , contains = c("localRefClass",....),
     methods =, where =, ...)
```

Details

Localization of objects is only partially automated in the current implementation. Replacement expressions using the `$<-` operator are safe.

However, if reference methods for the class themselves modify fields, using `<<-`, for example, then one must ensure that the object is local to the relevant frame before any such method is called. Otherwise, standard reference class behavior still prevails.

There are two ways to ensure locality. The direct way is to invoke the special method `x$ensureLocal()` on the object. The other way is to modify a field explicitly by `x$field <- ...` It's only necessary that one or the other of these happens once for each object, in order to trigger the shallow copy that provides locality for the references. In the example below, we show both mechanisms.

However it's done, localization must occur *before* any methods make changes. (Eventually, some use of code tools should at least largely automate this process, although it may be difficult to guarantee success under arbitrary circumstances.)

Author(s)

John Chambers

Examples

```
## class "myIter" has a BigData field for the real (big) data
## and a "twiddle" field for some parameters that it twiddles
## ( for some reason)

myIter <- setRefClass("myIter", contains = "localRefClass",
  fields = list(BigData = "numeric", twiddle = "numeric"))

tw <- rnorm(3)
x1 <- myIter(BigData = rnorm(1000), twiddle = tw) # OK, not REALLY big

twiddler <- function(x, n) {
  x$ensureLocal() # see the Details.  Not really needed in this example
  for(i in seq(length = n)) {
      x$twiddle <- x$twiddle + rnorm(length(x$twiddle))
      ## then do something ....
      ## Snooping in gdb, etc will show that x$BigData is not copied
  }
  return(x)
}

x2 <- twiddler(x1, 10)

stopifnot(identical(x1$twiddle, tw), !identical(x1$twiddle, x2$twiddle))
```

`makeClassRepresentation`

Create a Class Definition

Description

Constructs an object of class `classRepresentation` to describe a particular class. Mostly a utility function, but you can call it to create a class definition without assigning it, as `setClass` would do.

Usage

```
makeClassRepresentation(name, slots=list(), superClasses=character(),
                        prototype=NULL, package, validity, access,
                        version, sealed, virtual=NA, where)
```

Arguments

`name`	character string name for the class
`slots`	named list of slot classes as would be supplied to `setClass`, but *without* the unnamed arguments for superClasses if any.
`superClasses`	what classes does this class extend
`prototype`	an object providing the default data for the class, e.g, the result of a call to `prototype`.
`package`	The character string name for the package in which the class will be stored; see `getPackageName`.
`validity`	Optional validity method. See `validObject`, and the discussion of validity methods in the reference.
`access`	Access information. Not currently used.
`version`	Optional version key for version control. Currently generated, but not used.
`sealed`	Is the class sealed? See `setClass`.
`virtual`	Is this known to be a virtual class?
`where`	The environment from which to look for class definitions needed (e.g., for slots or superclasses). See the discussion of this argument under GenericFunctions.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`setClass`

`method.skeleton` *Create a Skeleton File for a New Method*

Description

This function writes a source file containing a call to `setMethod` to define a method for the generic function and signature supplied. By default the method definition is in line in the call, but can be made an external (previously assigned) function.

Usage

```
method.skeleton(generic, signature, file, external = FALSE, where)
```

Arguments

`generic`	the character string name of the generic function, or the generic function itself. In the first case, the function need not currently be a generic, as it would not for the resulting call to `setMethod`.
`signature`	the method signature, as it would be given to `setMethod`
`file`	a character string name for the output file, or a writable connection. By default the generic function name and the classes in the signature are concatenated, with separating underscore characters. The file name should normally end in `".R"`. To write multiple method skeletons to one file, open the file connection first and then pass it to `method.skeleton()` in multiple calls.
`external`	flag to control whether the function definition for the method should be a separate external object assigned in the source file, or included in line in the call to `setMethod`. If supplied as a character string, this will be used as the name for the external function; by default the name concatenates the generic and signature names, with separating underscores.
`where`	The environment in which to look for the function; by default, the top-level environment of the call to `method.skeleton`.

Value

The `file` argument, invisibly, but the function is used for its side effect.

See Also

`setMethod`, `package.skeleton`

Examples

```
setClass("track", representation(x ="numeric", y="numeric"))
method.skeleton("show", "track")            ## writes show_track.R
method.skeleton("Ops", c("track", "track")) ## writes "Ops_track_track.R"

## write multiple method skeletons to one file
con <- file("./Math_track.R", "w")
method.skeleton("Math", "track", con)
method.skeleton("exp", "track", con)
method.skeleton("log", "track", con)
```

```
close(con)
```

`MethodDefinition-class`

Classes to Represent Method Definitions

Description

These classes extend the basic class `"function"` when functions are to be stored and used as method definitions.

Details

Method definition objects are functions with additional information defining how the function is being used as a method. The `target` slot is the class signature for which the method will be dispatched, and the `defined` slot the signature for which the method was originally specified (that is, the one that appeared in some call to `setMethod`).

Objects from the Class

The action of setting a method by a call to `setMethod` creates an object of this class. It's unwise to create them directly.

The class `"SealedMethodDefinition"` is created by a call to `setMethod` with argument `sealed = TRUE`. It has the same representation as `"MethodDefinition"`.

Slots

`.Data`**:** Object of class `"function"`; the data part of the definition.

`target`**:** Object of class `"signature"`; the signature for which the method was wanted.

`defined`**:** Object of class `"signature"`; the signature for which a method was found. If the method was inherited, this will not be identical to `target`.

`generic`**:** Object of class `"character"`; the function for which the method was created.

Extends

Class `"function"`, from data part.
Class `"PossibleMethod"`, directly.
Class `"OptionalMethods"`, by class `"function"`.

See Also

class `MethodsList` for the objects defining sets of methods associated with a particular generic function. The individual method definitions stored in these objects are from class `MethodDefinition`, or an extension. Class `MethodWithNext` for an extension used by `callNextMethod`.

`Methods` *General Information on Methods*

Description

This documentation section covers some general topics on how methods work and how the **methods** package interacts with the rest of . The information is usually not needed to get started with methods and classes, but may be helpful for moderately ambitious projects, or when something doesn't work as expected.

The section "How Methods Work" describes the underlying mechanism; "S3 Methods and Generic Functions" gives the rules applied when S4 classes and methods interact with older S3 methods; "Method Selection and Dispatch" provides more details on how class definitions determine which methods are used; "Generic Functions" discusses generic functions as objects. For additional information specifically about class definitions, see `Classes`.

How Methods Work

A generic function has associated with it a collection of other functions (the methods), all of which have the same formal arguments as the generic. See the "Generic Functions" section below for more on generic functions themselves.

Each package will include methods metadata objects corresponding to each generic function for which methods have been defined in that package. When the package is loaded into an session, the methods for each generic function are *cached*, that is, stored in the environment of the generic function along with the methods from previously loaded packages. This merged table of methods is used to dispatch or select methods from the generic, using class inheritance and possibly group generic functions (see `GroupGenericFunctions`) to find an applicable method. See the "Method Selection and Dispatch" section below. The caching computations ensure that only one version of each generic function is visible globally; although different attached packages may contain a copy of the generic function, these behave identically with respect to method selection. In contrast, it is possible for the same function name to refer to more than one generic function, when these have different `package` slots. In the latter case, considers the functions unrelated: A generic function is defined by the combination of name and package. See the "Generic Functions" section below.

The methods for a generic are stored according to the corresponding `signature` in the call to `setMethod` that defined the method. The signature associates one class name with each of a subset of the formal arguments to the generic function. Which formal arguments are available, and the order in which they appear, are determined by the `"signature"` slot of the generic function itself. By default, the signature of the generic consists of all the formal arguments except ..., in the order they appear in the function definition.

Trailing arguments in the signature of the generic will be *inactive* if no method has yet been specified that included those arguments in its signature. Inactive arguments are not needed or used in labeling the cached methods. (The distinction does not change which methods are dispatched, but ignoring inactive arguments improves the efficiency of dispatch.)

All arguments in the signature of the generic function will be evaluated when the function is called, rather than using the traditional lazy evaluation rules of S. Therefore, it's important to *exclude* from the signature any arguments that need to be dealt with symbolically (such as the first argument to function `substitute`). Note that only actual arguments are evaluated, not default expressions. A missing argument enters into the method selection as class `"missing"`.

The cached methods are stored in an environment object. The names used for assignment are a concatenation of the class names for the active arguments in the method signature.

Methods for S3 Generic Functions

S4 methods may be wanted for functions that also have S3 methods, corresponding to classes for the first formal argument of an S3 generic function–either a regular R function in which there is a call to the S3 dispatch function, `UseMethod`, or one of a fixed set of primitive functions, which are not true functions but go directly to C code. In either case S3 method dispatch looks at the class of the first argument or the class of either argument in a call to one of the primitive binary operators. S3 methods are ordinary functions with the same arguments as the generic function (for primitives the formal arguments are not actually part of the object, but are simulated when the object is printed or viewed by `args()`). The "signature" of an S3 method is identified by the name to which the method is assigned, composed of the name of the generic function, followed by `"."`, followed by the name of the class. For details, see S3Methods.

To implement a method for one of these functions corresponding to S4 classes, there are two possibilities: either an S4 method or an S3 method with the S4 class name. The S3 method is only possible if the intended signature has the first argument and nothing else. In this case, the recommended approach is to define the S3 method and also supply the identical function as the definition of the S4 method. If the S3 generic function was `f3(x, ...)` and the S4 class for the new method was `"myClass"`:

```
f3.myClass <- function(x, ...) { ..... }
setMethod("f3", "myClass", f3.myClass)
```

The reasons for defining both S3 and S4 methods are as follows:

1. An S4 method alone will not be seen if the S3 generic function is called directly. However, primitive functions and operators are exceptions: The internal C code will look for S4 methods if and only if the object is an S4 object. In the examples, the method for `[` for class `"myFrame"` will always be called for objects of this class.

   For the same reason, an S4 method defined for an S3 class will not be called from internal code for a non-S4 object. (See the example for function `Math` and class `"data.frame"` in the examples.)

2. An S3 method alone will not be called if there is *any* eligible non-default S4 method. (See the example for function `f3` and class `"classA"` in the examples.)

Details of the selection computations are given below.

When an S4 method is defined for an existing function that is not an S4 generic function (whether or not the existing function is an S3 generic), an S4 generic function will be created corresponding to the existing function and the package in which it is found (more precisely, according to the implicit generic function either specified or inferred from the ordinary function; see `implicitGeneric`). A message is printed after the initial call to `setMethod`; this is not an error, just a reminder that you have created the generic. Creating the generic explicitly by the call

```
setGeneric("f3")
```

avoids the message, but has the same effect. The existing function becomes the default method for the S4 generic function. Primitive functions work the same way, but the S4 generic function is not explicitly created (as discussed below).

S4 and S3 method selection are designed to follow compatible rules of inheritance, as far as possible. S3 classes can be used for any S4 method selection, provided that the S3 classes have been registered by a call to `setOldClass`, with that call specifying the correct S3 inheritance pattern. S4 classes can be used for any S3 method selection; when an S4 object is detected, S3 method selection uses the contents of `extends(class(x))` as the equivalent of the S3 inheritance (the inheritance is cached after the first call).

An existing S3 method may not behave as desired for an S4 subclass, in which case utilities such as `asS3` and `S3Part` may be useful. If the S3 method fails on the S4 object, `asS3(x)` may be

passed instead; if the object returned by the S3 method needs to be incorporated in the S4 object, the replacement function for `S3Part` may be useful, as in the method for class `"myFrame"` in the examples.

Here are details explaining the reasons for defining both S3 and S4 methods. Calls still accessing the S3 generic function directly will not see S4 methods, except in the case of primitive functions. This means that calls to the generic function from namespaces that import the S3 generic but not the S4 version will only see S3 methods. On the other hand, S3 methods will only be selected from the S4 generic function as part of its default (`"ANY"`) method. If there are inherited S4 non-default methods, these will be chosen in preference to *any* S3 method.

S3 generic functions implemented as primitive functions (including binary operators) are an exception to recognizing only S3 methods. These functions dispatch both S4 and S3 methods from the internal C code. There is no explicit generic function, either S3 or S4. The internal code looks for S4 methods if the first argument, or either of the arguments in the case of a binary operator, is an S4 object. If no S4 method is found, a search is made for an S3 method.

S4 methods can be defined for an S3 generic function and an S3 class, but if the function is a primitive, such methods will not be selected if the object in question is not an S4 object. In the examples below, for instance, an S4 method for signature `"data.frame"` for function `f3()` would be called for the S3 object `df1`. A similar S4 method for primitive function `[` would be ignored for that object, but would be called for the S4 object `mydf1` that inherits from `"data.frame"`. Defining both an S3 and S4 method removes this inconsistency.

Method Selection and Dispatch: Details

When a call to a generic function is evaluated, a method is selected corresponding to the classes of the actual arguments in the signature. First, the cached methods table is searched for an exact match; that is, a method stored under the signature defined by the string value of `class(x)` for each non-missing argument, and `"missing"` for each missing argument. If no method is found directly for the actual arguments in a call to a generic function, an attempt is made to match the available methods to the arguments by using the superclass information about the actual classes.

Each class definition may include a list of one or more *superclasses* of the new class. The simplest and most common specification is by the `contains=` argument in the call to `setClass`. Each class named in this argument is a superclass of the new class. Two additional mechanisms for defining superclasses exist. A call to `setClassUnion` creates a union class that is a superclass of each of the members of the union. A call to `setIs` can create an inheritance relationship that is not the simple one of containing the superclass representation in the new class. Arguments `coerce` and `replace` supply methods to convert to the superclass and to replace the part corresponding to the superclass. (In addition, a `test=` argument allows conditional inheritance; conditional inheritance is not recommended and is not used in method selection.) All three mechanisms are treated equivalently for purposes of method selection: they define the *direct* superclasses of a particular class. For more details on the mechanisms, see `Classes`.

The direct superclasses themselves may have superclasses, defined by any of the same mechanisms, and similarly through further generations. Putting all this information together produces the full list of superclasses for this class. The superclass list is included in the definition of the class that is cached during the session. Each element of the list describes the nature of the relationship (see `SClassExtension` for details). Included in the element is a `distance` slot containing the path length for the relationship: `1` for direct superclasses (regardless of which mechanism defined them), then `2` for the direct superclasses of those classes, and so on. In addition, any class implicitly has class `"ANY"` as a superclass. The distance to `"ANY"` is treated as larger than the distance to any actual class. The special class `"missing"` corresponding to missing arguments has only `"ANY"` as a superclass, while `"ANY"` has no superclasses.

When a class definition is created or modified, the superclasses are ordered, first by a stable sort of the all superclasses by distance. If the set of superclasses has duplicates (that is, if some class is inherited through more than one relationship), these are removed, if possible, so that the list of superclasses is consistent with the superclasses of all direct superclasses. See the reference on inheritance for details.

The information about superclasses is summarized when a class definition is printed.

When a method is to be selected by inheritance, a search is made in the table for all methods directly corresponding to a combination of either the direct class or one of its superclasses, for each argument in the active signature. For an example, suppose there is only one argument in the signature and that the class of the corresponding object was `"dgeMatrix"` (from the recommended package `Matrix`). This class has two direct superclasses and through these 4 additional superclasses. Method selection finds all the methods in the table of directly specified methods labeled by one of these classes, or by `"ANY"`.

When there are multiple arguments in the signature, each argument will generate a similar list of inherited classes. The possible matches are now all the combinations of classes from each argument (think of the function `outer` generating an array of all possible combinations). The search now finds all the methods matching any of this combination of classes. For each argument, the position in the list of superclasses of that argument's class defines which method or methods (if the same class appears more than once) match best. When there is only one argument, the best match is unambiguous. With more than one argument, there may be zero or one match that is among the best matches for *all* arguments.

If there is no best match, the selection is ambiguous and a message is printed noting which method was selected (the first method lexicographically in the ordering) and what other methods could have been selected. Since the ambiguity is usually nothing the end user could control, this is not a warning. Package authors should examine their package for possible ambiguous inheritance by calling `testInheritedMethods`.

When the inherited method has been selected, the selection is cached in the generic function so that future calls with the same class will not require repeating the search. Cached inherited selections are not themselves used in future inheritance searches, since that could result in invalid selections. If you want inheritance computations to be done again (for example, because a newly loaded package has a more direct method than one that has already been used in this session), call `resetGeneric`. Because classes and methods involving them tend to come from the same package, the current implementation does not reset all generics every time a new package is loaded.

Besides being initiated through calls to the generic function, method selection can be done explicitly by calling the function `selectMethod`.

Once a method has been selected, the evaluator creates a new context in which a call to the method is evaluated. The context is initialized with the arguments from the call to the generic function. These arguments are not rematched. All the arguments in the signature of the generic will have been evaluated (including any that are currently inactive); arguments that are not in the signature will obey the usual lazy evaluation rules of the language. If an argument was missing in the call, its default expression if any will *not* have been evaluated, since method dispatch always uses class `missing` for such arguments.

A call to a generic function therefore has two contexts: one for the function and a second for the method. The argument objects will be copied to the second context, but not any local objects created in a nonstandard generic function. The other important distinction is that the parent ("enclosing") environment of the second context is the environment of the method as a function, so that all programming techniques using such environments apply to method definitions as ordinary functions.

For further discussion of method selection and dispatch, see the first reference.

Generic Functions

In principle, a generic function could be any function that evaluates a call to `standardGeneric()`, the internal function that selects a method and evaluates a call to the selected method. In practice, generic functions are special objects that in addition to being from a subclass of class `"function"` also extend the class `genericFunction`. Such objects have slots to define information needed to deal with their methods. They also have specialized environments, containing the tables used in method selection.

The slots `"generic"` and `"package"` in the object are the character string names of the generic function itself and of the package from which the function is defined. As with classes, generic functions are uniquely defined in by the combination of the two names. There can be generic functions of the same name associated with different packages (although inevitably keeping such functions cleanly distinguished is not always easy). On the other hand, will enforce that only one definition of a generic function can be associated with a particular combination of function and package name, in the current session or other active version of .

Tables of methods for a particular generic function, in this sense, will often be spread over several other packages. The total set of methods for a given generic function may change during a session, as additional packages are loaded. Each table must be consistent in the signature assumed for the generic function.

distinguishes *standard* and *nonstandard* generic functions, with the former having a function body that does nothing but dispatch a method. For the most part, the distinction is just one of simplicity: knowing that a generic function only dispatches a method call allows some efficiencies and also removes some uncertainties.

In most cases, the generic function is the visible function corresponding to that name, in the corresponding package. There are two exceptions, *implicit* generic functions and the special computations required to deal with 's *primitive* functions. Packages can contain a table of implicit generic versions of functions in the package, if the package wishes to leave a function non-generic but to constrain what the function would be like if it were generic. Such implicit generic functions are created during the installation of the package, essentially by defining the generic function and possibly methods for it, and then reverting the function to its non-generic form. (See implicitGeneric for how this is done.) The mechanism is mainly used for functions in the older packages in , which may prefer to ignore S4 methods. Even in this case, the actual mechanism is only needed if something special has to be specified. All functions have a corresponding implicit generic version defined automatically (an implicit, implicit generic function one might say). This function is a standard generic with the same arguments as the non-generic function, with the non-generic version as the default (and only) method, and with the generic signature being all the formal arguments except ....

The implicit generic mechanism is needed only to override some aspect of the default definition. One reason to do so would be to remove some arguments from the signature. Arguments that may need to be interpreted literally, or for which the lazy evaluation mechanism of the language is needed, must *not* be included in the signature of the generic function, since all arguments in the signature will be evaluated in order to select a method. For example, the argument `expr` to the function `with` is treated literally and must therefore be excluded from the signature.

One would also need to define an implicit generic if the existing non-generic function were not suitable as the default method. Perhaps the function only applies to some classes of objects, and the package designer prefers to have no general default method. In the other direction, the package designer might have some ideas about suitable methods for some classes, if the function were generic. With reasonably modern packages, the simple approach in all these cases is just to define the function as a generic. The implicit generic mechanism is mainly attractive for older packages that do not want to require the methods package to be available.

Generic functions will also be defined but not obviously visible for functions implemented as *primitive* functions in the base package. Primitive functions look like ordinary functions when printed but

are in fact not function objects but objects of two types interpreted by the evaluator to call underlying C code directly. Since their entire justification is efficiency, refuses to hide primitives behind a generic function object. Methods may be defined for most primitives, and corresponding metadata objects will be created to store them. Calls to the primitive still go directly to the C code, which will sometimes check for applicable methods. The definition of "sometimes" is that methods must have been detected for the function in some package loaded in the session and `isS4(x)` is `TRUE` for the first argument (or for the second argument, in the case of binary operators). You can test whether methods have been detected by calling `isGeneric` for the relevant function and you can examine the generic function by calling `getGeneric`, whether or not methods have been detected. For more on generic functions, see the first reference and also section 2 of *R Internals*.

Method Definitions

All method definitions are stored as objects from the `MethodDefinition` class. Like the class of generic functions, this class extends ordinary functions with some additional slots: `"generic"`, containing the name and package of the generic function, and two signature slots, `"defined"` and `"target"`, the first being the signature supplied when the method was defined by a call to `setMethod`. The `"target"` slot starts off equal to the `"defined"` slot. When an inherited method is cached after being selected, as described above, a copy is made with the appropriate `"target"` signature. Output from `showMethods`, for example, includes both signatures.

Method definitions are required to have the same formal arguments as the generic function, since the method dispatch mechanism does not rematch arguments, for reasons of both efficiency and consistency.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version: see section 10.6 for method selection and section 10.5 for generic functions).

Chambers, John M.(2009) *Developments in Class Inheritance and Method Selection* http://statweb.stanford.edu/~jmc4/classInheritance.pdf.

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

For more specific information, see `setGeneric`, `setMethod`, and `setClass`.

For the use of ... in methods, see dotsMethods.

Examples

```
## A class that extends a registered S3 class inherits that class S3
## methods.

setClass("myFrame", contains = "data.frame",
    representation(timestamps = "POSIXt"))

df1 <- data.frame(x = 1:10, y = rnorm(10), z = sample(letters,10))

mydf1 <- new("myFrame", df1, timestamps = Sys.time())

## "myFrame" objects inherit "data.frame" S3 methods; e.g., for [

mydf1[1:2, ] # a data frame object (with extra attributes)
```

```
## a method explicitly for "myFrame" class


setMethod("[",
    signature(x = "myFrame"),
    function (x, i, j, ..., drop = TRUE)
    {
        S3Part(x) <- callNextMethod()
        x@timestamps <- c(Sys.time(), as.POSIXct(x@timestamps))
        x
    }
)

mydf1[1:2, ]


setClass("myDateTime", contains = "POSIXt")

now <- Sys.time() # class(now) is c("POSIXct", "POSIXt")
nowLt <- as.POSIXlt(now)# class(nowLt) is c("POSIXlt", "POSIXt")

mCt <- new("myDateTime", now)
mLt <- new("myDateTime", nowLt)

## S3 methods for an S4 object will be selected using S4 inheritance
## Objects mCt and mLt have different S3Class() values, but this is
## not used.
f3 <- function(x)UseMethod("f3") # an S3 generic to illustrate inheritance

f3.POSIXct <- function(x) "The POSIXct result"
f3.POSIXlt <- function(x) "The POSIXlt result"
f3.POSIXt <- function(x) "The POSIXt result"

stopifnot(identical(f3(mCt), f3.POSIXt(mCt)))
stopifnot(identical(f3(mLt), f3.POSIXt(mLt)))



## An S4 object selects S3 methods according to its S4 "inheritance"


setClass("classA", contains = "numeric",
   representation(realData = "numeric"))

Math.classA <- function(x) {(getFunction(.Generic))(x@realData)}
setMethod("Math", "classA", Math.classA)


x <- new("classA", log(1:10), realData = 1:10)

stopifnot(identical(abs(x), 1:10))

setClass("classB", contains = "classA")

y <- new("classB", x)

stopifnot(identical(abs(y), 1:10)) # (version 2.9.0 or earlier fails here)
```

```
## an S3 generic: just for demonstration purposes
f3 <- function(x, ...) UseMethod("f3")

f3.default <- function(x, ...) "Default f3"

## S3 method (only) for classA
f3.classA <- function(x, ...) "Class classA for f3"

## S3 and S4 method for numeric
f3.numeric <- function(x, ...) "Class numeric for f3"
setMethod("f3", "numeric", f3.numeric)

## The S3 method for classA and the closest inherited S3 method for classB
## are not found.

f3(x); f3(y) # both choose "numeric" method

## to obtain the natural inheritance, set identical S3 and S4 methods
setMethod("f3", "classA", f3.classA)

f3(x); f3(y) # now both choose "classA" method

## Need to define an S3 as well as S4 method to use on an S3 object
## or if called from a package without the S4 generic

MathFun <- function(x) { # a smarter "data.frame" method for Math group
  for (i in seq(length = ncol(x))[sapply(x, is.numeric)])
    x[, i] <- (getFunction(.Generic))(x[, i])
  x
}
setMethod("Math", "data.frame", MathFun)

## S4 method works for an S4 class containing data.frame,
## but not for data.frame objects (not S4 objects)

try(logIris <- log(iris)) #gets an error from the old method

## Define an S3 method with the same computation

Math.data.frame <- MathFun

logIris <- log(iris)
```

MethodsList-class *Class MethodsList, Deprecated Representation of Methods*

Description

This class of objects was used in the original implementation of the package to control method dispatch. Its use is now deprecated, but object appear as the default method slot in generic functions. This and any other remaining uses will be removed in the future.

For the modern alternative, see listOfMethods.

The details in this documentation are retained to allow analysis of old-style objects.

Details

Suppose a function `f` has formal arguments `x` and `y`. The methods list object for that function has the object `as.name("x")` as its `argument` slot. An element of the methods named `"track"` is selected if the actual argument corresponding to `x` is an object of class `"track"`. If there is such an element, it can generally be either a function or another methods list object.

In the first case, the function defines the method to use for any call in which `x` is of class `"track"`. In the second case, the new methods list object defines the available methods depending on the remaining formal arguments, in this example, `y`.

Each method corresponds conceptually to a *signature*; that is a named list of classes, with names corresponding to some or all of the formal arguments. In the previous example, if selecting class `"track"` for `x`, finding that the selection was another methods list and then selecting class `"numeric"` for `y` would produce a method associated with the signature `x = "track", y = "numeric"`.

Slots

`argument`**:** Object of class `"name"`. The name of the argument being used for dispatch at this level.

`methods`**:** A named list of the methods (and method lists) defined *explicitly* for this argument. The names are the names of classes, and the corresponding element defines the method or methods to be used if the corresponding argument has that class. See the details below.

`allMethods`**:** A named list, contains all the directly defined methods from the `methods` slot, plus any inherited methods. Ignored when methods tables are used for dispatch (see Methods

Extends

Class `"OptionalMethods"`, directly.

`MethodWithNext-class` *Class MethodWithNext*

Description

Class of method definitions set up for callNextMethod

Objects from the Class

Objects from this class are generated as a side-effect of calls to `callNextMethod`.

Slots

`.Data`: Object of class `"function"`; the actual function definition.

`nextMethod`: Object of class `"PossibleMethod"` the method to use in response to a `callNextMethod()` call.

`excluded`: Object of class `"list"`; one or more signatures excluded in finding the next method.

`target`: Object of class `"signature"`, from class `"MethodDefinition"`

`defined`: Object of class `"signature"`, from class `"MethodDefinition"`

`generic`: Object of class `"character"`; the function for which the method was created.

Extends

Class `"MethodDefinition"`, directly.
Class `"function"`, from data part.
Class `"PossibleMethod"`, by class `"MethodDefinition"`.
Class `"OptionalMethods"`, by class `"MethodDefinition"`.

Methods

findNextMethod `signature(method = "MethodWithNext")`: used internally by method dispatch.

loadMethod `signature(method = "MethodWithNext")`: used internally by method dispatch.

show `signature(object = "MethodWithNext")`

See Also

`callNextMethod`, and class `MethodDefinition`.

---

new *Generate an Object from a Class*

Description

Given the name or the definition of a class, plus optionally data to be included in the object, `new` returns an object from that class.

Usage

```
new(Class, ...)

initialize(.Object, ...)
```

Arguments

`Class`	either the name of a class, a `character` string, (the usual case) or the object describing the class (e.g., the value returned by `getClass`).
`...`	data to include in the new object. Named arguments correspond to slots in the class definition. Unnamed arguments must be objects from classes that this class extends.
`.Object`	An object: see the Details section.

Details

The function new begins by copying the prototype object from the class definition. Then information is inserted according to the ... arguments, if any. As of version 2.4 of R, the type of the prototype object, and therefore of all objects returned by new(), is "S4" except for classes that extend one of the basic types, where the prototype has that basic type. User functions that depend on typeof(object) should be careful to handle "S4" as a possible type.

Note that the *name* of the first argument, "Class" entails that "Class" is an undesirable slot name in any formal class: new("myClass", Class = <value>) will not work.

The interpretation of the ... arguments can be specialized to particular classes, if an appropriate method has been defined for the generic function "initialize". The new function calls initialize with the object generated from the prototype as the .Object argument to initialize.

By default, unnamed arguments in the ... are interpreted as objects from a superclass, and named arguments are interpreted as objects to be assigned into the correspondingly named slots. Thus, explicit slots override inherited information for the same slot, regardless of the order in which the arguments appear.

The initialize methods do not have to have ... as their second argument (see the examples). Initialize methods are often written when the natural parameters describing the new object are not the names of the slots. If you do define such a method, note the implications for future subclasses of your class. If these have additional slots, and your initialize method has ... as a formal argument, then your method should pass such arguments along via callNextMethod. If your method does not have this argument, then either a subclass must have its own method or else the added slots must be specified by users in some way other than as arguments to new.

For examples of initialize methods, see initialize-methods for existing methods for classes "traceable" and "environment", among others. See the comments there on subclasses of "environment"; any initialize methods for these should be sure to allocate a new environment.

Methods for initialize can be inherited only by simple inheritance, since it is a requirement that the method return an object from the target class. See the simpleInheritanceOnly argument to setGeneric and the discussion in setIs for the general concept.

Note that the basic vector classes, "numeric", etc. are implicitly defined, so one can use new for these classes.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

Classes for an overview of defining class, and setOldClass for the relation to S3 classes.

Examples

```
## using the definition of class "track" from \link{setClass}



## a new object with two slots specified
t1 <- new("track", x = seq_along(ydata), y = ydata)

# a new object including an object from a superclass, plus a slot
```

```
t2 <- new("trackCurve", t1, smooth = ysmooth)

### define a method for initialize, to ensure that new objects have
### equal-length x and y slots.

setMethod("initialize",
          "track",
          function(.Object, x = numeric(0), y = numeric(0)) {
            if(nargs() > 1) {
              if(length(x) != length(y))
                stop("specified x and y of different lengths")
              .Object@x <- x
              .Object@y <- y
            }
            .Object
          })

### the next example will cause an error (x will be numeric(0)),
### because we didnt build in defaults for x,
### although we could with a more elaborate method for initialize

try(new("track", y = sort(stats::rnorm(10))))

## a better way to implement the previous initialize method.
## Why?  By using callNextMethod to call the default initialize method
## we dont inhibit classes that extend "track" from using the general
## form of the new() function.  In the previous version, they could only
## use x and y as arguments to new, unless they wrote their own
## initialize method.

setMethod("initialize", "track", function(.Object, ...) {
    .Object <- callNextMethod()
    if(length(.Object@x) != length(.Object@y))
     stop("specified x and y of different lengths")
    .Object
  })
```

---

nonStructure-class *A non-structure S4 Class for basic types*

Description

S4 classes that are defined to extend one of the basic vector classes should contain the class structure if they behave like structures; that is, if they should retain their class behavior under math functions or operators, so long as their length is unchanged. On the other hand, if their class depends on the values in the object, not just its structure, then they should lose that class under any such transformations. In the latter case, they should be defined to contain nonStructure.

If neither of these strategies applies, the class likely needs some methods of its own for Ops, Math, and/or other generic functions. What is not usually a good idea is to allow such computations to drop down to the default, base code. This is inconsistent with most definitions of such classes.

Methods

Methods are defined for operators and math functions (groups Ops, Math and Math2. In all cases the result is an ordinary vector of the appropriate type.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer.

See Also

structure

Examples

```
setClass("NumericNotStructure", contains = c("numeric","nonStructure"))
xx <- new("NumericNotStructure", 1:10)
xx + 1 # vector
log(xx) # vector
sample(xx) # vector
```

ObjectsWithPackage-class

A Vector of Object Names, with associated Package Names

Description

This class of objects is used to represent ordinary character string object names, extended with a package slot naming the package associated with each object.

Objects from the Class

The function getGenerics returns an object of this class.

Slots

.Data: Object of class "character": the object names.

package: Object of class "character" the package names.

Extends

Class "character", from data part.
Class "vector", by class "character".

See Also

Methods for general background.

promptClass *Generate a Shell for Documentation of a Formal Class*

Description

Assembles all relevant slot and method information for a class, with minimal markup for Rd processing; no QC facilities at present.

Usage

```
promptClass(clName, filename = NULL, type = "class",
            keywords = "classes", where = topenv(parent.frame()),
            generatorName = clName)
```

Arguments

clName	a character string naming the class to be documented.
filename	usually, a connection or a character string giving the name of the file to which the documentation shell should be written. The default corresponds to a file whose name is the topic name for the class documentation, followed by ".Rd". Can also be NA (see below).
type	the documentation type to be declared in the output file.
keywords	the keywords to include in the shell of the documentation. The keyword "classes" should be one of them.
where	where to look for the definition of the class and of methods that use it.
generatorName	the name for a generator function for this class; only required if a generator function was created *and* saved under a name different from the class name.

Details

The class definition is found on the search list. Using that definition, information about classes extended and slots is determined.

In addition, the currently available generics with methods for this class are found (using getGenerics). Note that these methods need not be in the same environment as the class definition; in particular, this part of the output may depend on which packages are currently in the search list.

As with other prompt-style functions, unless filename is NA, the documentation shell is written to a file, and a message about this is given. The file will need editing to give information about the *meaning* of the class. The output of promptClass can only contain information from the metadata about the formal definition and how it is used.

If filename is NA, a list-style representation of the documentation shell is created and returned. Writing the shell to a file amounts to cat(unlist(x), file = filename, sep = "\n"), where x is the list-style representation.

If a generator function is found assigned under the class name or the optional generatorName, skeleton documentation for that function is added to the file.

Value

If filename is NA, a list-style representation of the documentation shell. Otherwise, the name of the file written to is returned invisibly.

Author(s)

VJ Carey <stvjc@channing.harvard.edu> and John Chambers

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

prompt for documentation of functions, promptMethods for documentation of method definitions.

For processing of the edited documentation, either use R CMD Rdconv, or include the edited file in the 'man' subdirectory of a package.

Examples

```
## Not run: > promptClass("track")
A shell of class documentation has been written to the
file "track-class.Rd".

## End(Not run)
```

---

promptMethods *Generate a Shell for Documentation of Formal Methods*

Description

Generates a shell of documentation for the methods of a generic function.

Usage

```
promptMethods(f, filename = NULL, methods)
```

Arguments

f	a character string naming the generic function whose methods are to be documented.
filename	usually, a connection or a character string giving the name of the file to which the documentation shell should be written. The default corresponds to the coded topic name for these methods (currently, f followed by "-methods.Rd"). Can also be FALSE or NA (see below).
methods	Optional methods list object giving the methods to be documented. By default, the first methods object for this generic is used (for example, if the current global environment has some methods for f, these would be documented). If this argument is supplied, it is likely to be getMethods(f, where), with where some package containing methods for f.

Details

If `filename` is `FALSE`, the text created is returned, presumably to be inserted some other documentation file, such as the documentation of the generic function itself (see `prompt`).

If `filename` is `NA`, a list-style representation of the documentation shell is created and returned. Writing the shell to a file amounts to `cat(unlist(x), file = filename, sep = "\n")`, where `x` is the list-style representation.

Otherwise, the documentation shell is written to the file specified by `filename`.

Value

If `filename` is `FALSE`, the text generated; if `filename` is `NA`, a list-style representation of the documentation shell. Otherwise, the name of the file written to is returned invisibly.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`prompt` and `promptClass`

`ReferenceClasses` *Objects With Fields Treated by Reference (OOP-style)*

Description

The software described here supports reference classes whose objects have fields accessed by reference in the style of "OOP" languages such as Java and C++. Computations with these objects invoke methods on them and extract or set their fields. The field and method computations potentially modify the object. All computations referring to the objects see the modifications, in contrast to the usual functional programming model in . Reference classes can be used to program in directly or in combination with an interface to an OOP-style language, allowing -written methods to extend the interface.

Usage

```
setRefClass(Class, fields = , contains = , methods =,
     where =, ...)

getRefClass(Class, where =)
```

Arguments

`Class`	character string name for the class. In the call to `getRefClass()` this argument can also be any object from the relevant class; note also the corresponding reference class methods documented in the section on "Writing Reference Methods".

`fields` either a character vector of field names or a named list of the fields. The resulting fields will be accessed with reference semantics (see the section on "Reference Objects"). If the argument is a list, the elements of the list can be the character string name of a class, in which case the field must be from that class or a subclass.

The element in the list can alternatively be an *accessor function*, a function of one argument that returns the field if called with no argument or sets it to the value of the argument otherwise. Accessor functions are used internally and for inter-system interface applications. Their definition follows the rules for writing methods for the class: they can refer to other fields and can call other methods for this class or its superclasses. See the section on "Implementation" for the internal mechanism used by accessor functions.

Note that fields are distinct from the slots, if any, in the object. Slots are, as always, handled by standard object management. It is not generally a good idea to mix slots and fields in the same class; this confuses the distinction in behavior between reference classes and regular S4 classes. See the comments in the "Implementation" section.

`contains` optional vector of superclasses for this class. If a superclass is also a reference class, the fields and class-based methods will be inherited.

`methods` a named list of function definitions that can be invoked on objects from this class. These can also be created by invoking the `$methods` method on the generator object returned. See the section on "Writing Reference Methods" for details.

Two optional method names are interpreted specially, `initialize` and `finalize`. If an `initialize` method is defined, it will be invoked when an object is generated from the class. See the discussion of method `$new(...)` in the section "Reference Object Generators".

If a `finalize` method is defined, a function will be registered to invoke it before the environment in the object is discarded by the garbage collector. See the matrix viewer example for both initialize and finalize methods.

`where` the environment in which to store the class definition (or to begin the search for it, in the case of `getRefClass()`). Defaults to the package namespace or environment for code that is part of an package, and to the global environment for code sourced directly at the session top level.

`...` other arguments to be passed to `setClass`.

Value

`setRefClass()` returns a generator function suitable for creating objects from the class, invisibly. A call to this function takes any number of arguments, which will be passed on to the initialize method. If no `initialize` method is defined for the class or one of its superclasses, the default method expects named arguments with the name of one of the fields and unnamed arguments, if any, that are objects from one of the superclasses of this class (but only superclasses that are themselves reference classes have any effect).

The generator function is similar to the S4 generator function returned by `setClass`. In addition to being a generator function, however, it is also a reference class generator object, with reference class methods for various utilities. See the section on reference class generator objects below.

If the class has a method defined for `$initialize()`, this method will be called once the reference object has been created. You should write such a method for a class that needs to do some special initialization. In particular, a reference method is recommended rather than a method for the S4 generic function `initialize()`, because some special initialization is required for reference objects

before the initialization of fields. As with S4 classes, methods are written for `$initialize()` and not for `$new()`, both for the previous reason and also because `$new()` is invoked on the generator object and would be a method for that class.

The default method for `$initialize()` is equivalent to invoking the method `$initFields(...)`. Named arguments assign initial values to the corresponding fields. Unnamed arguments must be objects from this class or a reference superclass of this class. Fields will be initialized to the contents of the fields in such objects, but named arguments override the corresponding inherited fields. Note that fields are simply assigned. If the field is itself a reference object, that object is not copied. The new and previous object will share the reference. Also, a field assigned from an unnamed argument counts as an assignment for locked fields. To override an inherited value for a locked field, the new value must be one of the named arguments in the initializing call. A later assignment of the field will result in an error.

Initialization methods need some care in design. The generator for a reference class will be called with no arguments, for example when copying the object. To ensure that these calls do not fail, the method must have defaults for all arguments or check for `missing()`. The method should include `...` as an argument and pass this on via `$callSuper()` (or `$initFields()` if you know that your superclasses have no initialization methods). This allows future class definitions that subclass this class, with additional fields.

`getRefClass()` also returns the generator function for the class. Note that the package slot in the value is the correct package from the class definition, regardless of the `where` argument, which is used only to find the class if necessary.

Reference Objects

Normal objects in are passed as arguments in function calls consistently with functional programming semantics; that is, changes made to an object passed as an argument are local to the function call. The object that supplied the argument is unchanged.

The functional model (sometimes called pass-by-value, although this is inaccurate for) is suitable for many statistical computations and is implicit, for example, in the basic software for fitting statistical models. In some other situations, one would like all the code dealing with an object to see the exact same content, so that changes made in any computation would be reflected everywhere. This is often suitable if the object has some "objective" reality, such as a window in a user interface.

In addition, commonly used languages, including Java, C++ and many others, support a version of classes and methods assuming reference semantics. The corresponding programming mechanism is to invoke a method on an object. In the syntax we use `"$"` for this operation; one invokes a method, `m1` say, on an object `x` by the expression `x$m1(...)`.

Methods in this paradigm are associated with the object, or more precisely with the class of the object, as opposed to methods in a function-based class/method system, which are fundamentally associated with the function (in , for example, a generic function in an session has a table of all its currently known methods). In this document "methods for a class" as opposed to "methods for a function" will make the distinction.

Objects in this paradigm usually have named fields on which the methods operate. In the implementation, the fields are defined when the class is created. The field itself can optionally have a specified class, meaning that only objects from this class or one of its subclasses can be assigned to the field. By default, fields have class `"ANY"`. Fields may also be defined by supplying an accessor function which will be called to get or set the field. Accessor functions are likely when reference classes are part of an inter-system interface. The interface will usually supply the accessor functions automatically based on the definition of the corresponding class in the other language.

Fields are accessed by reference. In particular, invoking a method may modify the content of the fields.

Programming for such classes involves writing new methods for a particular class. In the implementation, these methods are functions, with zero or more formal arguments. The object on which the methods are invoked is not an explicit argument to the method. Instead, fields and methods for the class can be referred to by name in the method definition. The implementation uses environments to make fields and methods available by name. Additional special fields allow reference to the complete object and to the definition of the class. See the section on "Writing Reference Methods".

The goal of the software described here is to provide a uniform programming style in for software dealing with reference classes, whether implemented directly in or through an interface to one of the OOP languages.

Writing Reference Methods

Reference methods are functions supplied as elements of a named list, either when invoking `g$methods()` on a generator object `g` or as the argument `methods` in a call to `setRefClass`. They are written as ordinary functions but have some special features and restrictions. The body of the function can contain calls to any other reference method, including those inherited from other reference classes and may refer to fields in the object by name.

Fields may be modified in a method by using the non-local assignment operator, `<<-`, as in the `$edit` and `$undo` methods in the example below. Note that non-local assignment is required: a local assignment with the `<-` operator just creates a local object in the function call, as it would in any function. When methods are installed, a heuristic check is made for local assignments to field names and a warning issued if any are detected.

Reference methods should be kept simple; if they need to do some specialized computation, that computation should use a separate function that is called from the reference method. Specifically, methods can not use special features of the enclosing environment mechanism, since the method's environment is used to access fields and other methods. In particular, methods should not use non-exported entries in the package's namespace, because the methods may be inherited by a reference class in another package.

Methods for `$initialize()` have special requirements. See the comments in the "Value" section.

Reference methods can not themselves be generic functions; if you want additional function-based method dispatch, write a separate generic function and call that from the method.

The entire object can be referred to in a method by the reserved name `.self`, as shown in the `save=` method of the example. The special object `.refClassDef` contains the definition of the class of the object. These fields are read-only (it makes no sense to modify these references), with one exception. In principal, the `.self` field can be modified in the `$initialize` method, because the object is still being created at this stage. This is definitely not recommended, unless to set some non-reference properties of the object defined for this class, which is itself not recommended if it mixes slots and fields.

The methods available include methods inherited from superclasses, as discussed in the next section.

Only methods actually used will be included in the environment corresponding to an individual object. To declare that a method requires a particular other method, the first method should include a call to `$usingMethods()` with the name of the other method as an argument. Declaring the methods this way is essential if the other method is used indirectly (e.g., via `sapply()` or `do.call()`). If it is called directly, code analysis will find it. Declaring the method is harmless in any case, however, and may aid readability of the source code.

Documentation for the methods can be obtained by the `$help` method for the generator object. Methods for classes are not documented in the `Rd` format used for functions. Instead, the `$help` method prints the calling sequence of the method, followed by self-documentation from the method definition, in the style of Python. If the first element of the body of the method is a literal character

string (possibly multi-line), that string is interpreted as documentation. See the method definitions in the example.

Inheritance

Reference classes inherit from other reference classes by using the standard inheritance; that is, by including the superclasses in the `contains=` argument when creating the new class. The names of the reference superclasses are in slot `refSuperClasses` of the class definition. Reference classes can inherit from ordinary S4 classes also, but this is usually a bad idea if it mixes reference fields and non-reference slots. See the comments in the section on "Implementation".

Class fields are inherited. A class definition can override a field of the same name in a superclass only if the overriding class is a subclass of the class of the inherited field. This ensures that a valid object in the field remains valid for the superclass as well.

Inherited methods are installed in the same way as directly specified methods. The code in a method can refer to inherited methods in the same way as directly specified methods.

A method may override a method of the same name in a superclass. The overriding method can call the superclass method by `callSuper(...)` as described below.

All reference classes inherit from the class `"envRefClass"`, which provides the following methods.

`$callSuper(...)` Calls the method inherited from a reference superclass. The call is meaningful only from within another method, and will be resolved to call the inherited method of the same name. The arguments to `$callSuper` are passed to the superclass version. See the matrix viewer class in the example.

Note that the intended arguments for the superclass method must be supplied explicitly; there is no convention for supplying the arguments automatically, in contrast to the similar mechanism for functional methods.

`$copy(shallow = FALSE)` Creates a copy of the object. With reference classes, unlike ordinary objects, merely assigning the object with a different name does not create an independent copy. If `shallow` is `FALSE`, any field that is itself a reference object will also be copied, and similarly recursively for its fields. Otherwise, while reassigning a field to a new reference object will have no side effect, modifying such a field will still be reflected in both copies of the object. The argument has no effect on non-reference objects in fields. When there are reference objects in some fields but it is asserted that they will not be modified, using `shallow = TRUE` will save some memory and time.

`$field(name, value)` With one argument, returns the field of the object with character string `name`. With two arguments, the corresponding field is assigned `value`. Assignment checks that `name` specifies a valid field, but the single-argument version will attempt to get anything of that name from the object's environment.

The `$field()` method replaces the direct use of a field name, when the name of the field must be calculated, or for looping over several fields.

`$export(Class)` Returns the result of coercing the object to `Class` (typically one of the superclasses of the object's class). Calling the method has no side effect on the object itself.

`$getRefClass();$getClass()` These return respectively the generator object and the formal class definition for the reference class of this object, efficiently.

`$import(value, Class = class(value))` Import the object `value` into the current object, replacing the corresponding fields in the current object. Object `value` must come from one of the superclasses of the current object's class. If argument `Class` is supplied, `value` is first coerced to that class.

`$initFields(...)` Initialize the fields of the object from the supplied arguments. This method is usually only called from a class with a `$initialize()` method. It corresponds to the default initialization for reference classes. If there are slots and non-reference superclasses, these may be supplied in the ... argument as well.

Typically, a specialized `$initialize()` method carries out its own computations, then invokes `$initFields()` to perform standard initialization, as shown in the `matrixViewer` class in the example below.

`$show()` This method is called when the object is printed automatically, analogously to the `show` function. A general method is defined for class `"envRefClass"`. User-defined reference classes will often define their own method: see the Example below.

Note two points in the example. As with any `show()` method, it is a good idea to print the class explicitly to allow for subclasses using the method. Second, to call the *function* `show()` from the method, as opposed to the `$show()` method itself, refer to `methods::show()` explicitly.

`$trace(what, ...)`, `$untrace(what)` Apply the tracing and debugging facilities of the `trace` function to the reference method `what`.

All the arguments of the `trace` function can be supplied, except for `signature`, which is not meaningful.

The reference method can be invoked on either an object or the generator for the class. See the section on Debugging below for details.

`$usingMethods(...)` Reference methods used by this method are named as the arguments either quoted or unquoted. In the code analysis phase of installing the the present method, the declared methods will be included. It is essential to declare any methods used in a nonstandard way (e.g., via an apply function). Methods called directly do not need to be declared, but it is harmless to do so. `$usingMethods()` does nothing at run time.

Objects also inherit two reserved fields:

`.self` a reference to the entire object;

`.refClassDef` the class definition.

The defined fields should not override these, and in general it is unwise to define a field whose name begins with `"."`, since the implementation may use such names for special purposes.

Reference Class Generators

The call to `setRefClass` defines the specified class and returns a "generator function" object for that class. This object has class `"refObjectGenerator"`; it inherits from `"function"` via `"classGeneratorFunction"` and can be called to generate new objects from the reference class.

The returned object is also a reference class object, although not of the standard construction. It can be used to invoke reference methods and access fields in the usual way, but instead of being implemented directly as an environment it has a subsidiary generator object as a slot, a standard reference object (of class `"refGeneratorSlot"`). Note that if one wanted to extend the reference class generator capability with a subclass, this should be done by subclassing `"refGeneratorSlot"`, not `"refObjectGenerator"`.

The fields are `def`, the class definition, and `className`, the character string name of the class. Methods generate objects from the class, to access help on reference methods, and to define new reference methods for the class. The currently available methods are:

`$new(...)` This method is equivalent to calling the generator function returned by `setRefClass`.

`$help(topic)` Prints brief help on the topic. The topics recognized are reference method names, quoted or not.

The information printed is the calling sequence for the method, plus self-documentation if any. Reference methods can have an initial character string or vector as the first element in the body of the function defining the method. If so, this string is taken as self-documentation for the method (see the section on "Writing Reference Methods" for details).

If no topic is given or if the topic is not a method name, the definition of the class is printed.

`$methods(...)` With no arguments, returns a list of the reference methods for this class.

Named arguments are method definitions, which will be installed in the class, as if they had been supplied in the `methods` argument to `setRefClass()`. Supplying methods in this way, rather than in the call to `setRefClass()`, is largely for the sake of clearer source code when many or large methods are being defined. All methods for a class should be defined in the source code that defines the class, typically as part of a package. In particular, methods can not be redefined in a class in an attached package with a namespace: The class method checks for a locked binding of the class definition.

The new methods can refer to any currently defined method by name (including other methods supplied in this call to `$methods()`. Note though that previously defined methods are not re-analyzed meaning that they will not call the new method (unless it redefines an existing method of the same name).

To remove a method, supply `NULL` as its new definition.

`$fields()` Returns a list of the fields, each with its corresponding class. Fields for which an accessor function was supplied in the definition have class `"activeBindingFunction"`.

`$lock(...)` The fields named in the arguments are locked; specifically, after the lock method is called, the field may be set once. Any further attempt to set it will generate an error.

If called with no arguments, the method returns the names of the locked fields.

Fields that are defined by an explicit accessor function can not be locked (on the other hand, the accessor function can be defined to generate an error if called with an argument).

All code to lock fields should normally be part of the definition of a class; that is, the read-only nature of the fields is meant to be part of the class definition, not a dynamic property added later. In particular, fields can not be locked in a class in an attached package with a namespace: The class method checks for a locked binding of the class definition. Locked fields can not be subsequently unlocked.

`$trace(what, ..., classMethod = FALSE)` Establish a traced version of method `what` for objects generated from this class. The generator object tracing works like the `$trace()` method for objects from the class, with two differences. Since it changes the method definition in the class object itself, tracing applies to all objects, not just the one on which the trace method is invoked.

Second, the optional argument `classMethod = TRUE` allows tracing on the methods of the generator object itself. By default, `what` is interpreted as the name of a method in the class for which this object is the generator.

`$accessors(...)` A number of systems using the OOP programming paradigm recommend or enforce *getter and setter methods* corresponding to each field, rather than direct access by name. If you like this style and want to extract a field named `abc` by `x$getAbc()` and assign it by `x$setAbc(value)`, the `$accessors` method is a convenience function that creates such getter and setter methods for the specified fields. Otherwise there is no reason to use this mechanism. In particular, it has nothing to do with the general ability to define fields by functions as described in the section on "Reference Objects".

Implementation

Reference classes are implemented as S4 classes with a data part of type `"environment"`. Fields correspond to named objects in the environment. A field associated with a function is implemented as an active binding. In particular, fields with a specified class are implemented as a special form of active binding to enforce valid assignment to the field. A field, say `data`, can be accessed generally by an expression of the form `x$data` for any object from the relevant class. In a method for this class, the field can be accessed by the name `data`. A field that is not locked can be set by an expression of the form `x$data <- value`. Inside a method, a field can be assigned by an expression of the form `x <<- value`. Note the non-local assignment operator. The standard interpretation of this operator works to assign it in the environment of the object. If the field has an accessor function defined, getting and setting will call that function.

When a method is invoked on an object, the function defining the method is installed in the object's environment, with the same environment as the environment of the function.

Because of the implementation, new reference classes can inherit from non-reference S4 classes as well as reference classes. This is usually a bad idea, if the slots from the non-reference class are thought of as alternatives to fields. Unless there is some special argument in favor, mixing the functional and reference paradigms for properties of the same object is conceptually unclear. In addition, the initialization method for the class will have to sort out fields from slots, with a good chance of creating anomalous behavior for subclasses of this class. Better in general to define fields analogous to the slots in the S4 class, and to initialize those from an S4 object of that class.

Inter-System Interfaces

A number of languages use a similar reference-based programming model with classes and class-based methods. Aside from differences in choice of terminology and other details, many of these languages are compatible with the programming style described here. interfaces to the languages exist in a number of packages.

The reference class definitions here provide a hook for classes in the foreign language to be exposed in . Access to fields and/or methods in the class can be implemented by defining an reference class corresponding to classes made available through the interface. Typically, the inter-system interface will take care of the details of creating the class, given a description of the foreign class (what fields and methods it has, the classes for the fields, whether any are read-only, etc.) The specifics for the fields and methods can be implemented via reference methods for the class. In particular, the use of active bindings allows field access for getting and setting, with actual access handled by the inter-system interface.

methods and/or fields can be included in the class definition as for any reference class. The methods can use or set fields and can call other methods transparently whether the field or method comes from the interface or is defined directly in .

For an inter-system interface using this approach, see the code for package `Rcpp`, version 0.8.7 or later.

Debugging

The standard debugging and tracing facilities can be applied to reference methods. Reference methods can be passed to debug and its relatives from an object to debug further method invocations on that object; for example, `debug(xx$edit)`.

Somewhat more flexible use is available for a reference method version of the `trace` function. A corresponding `$trace()` reference method is available for either an object or for the reference class generator (`xx$trace()` or `mEdit$trace()` in the example below). Using `$trace()` on an object sets up a tracing version for future invocations of the specified method for that object. Using

`$trace()` on the generator for the class sets up a tracing version for all future objects from that class (and sometimes for existing objects from the class if the method is not declared or previously invoked).

In either case, all the arguments to the standard `trace` function are available, except for `signature=` which is meaningless since reference methods can not be S4 generic functions. This includes the typical style `trace(what, browser)` for interactive debugging and `trace(what, edit = TRUE)` to edit the reference method interactively.

Author(s)

John Chambers

Examples

```
## a simple editor for matrix objects.  Method  $edit() changes some
## range of values; method $undo() undoes the last edit.
mEdit <- setRefClass("mEdit",
      fields = list( data = "matrix",
        edits = "list"),
      methods = list(
     edit = function(i, j, value) {
       ## the following string documents the edit method
       Replaces the range [i, j] of the
        object by value.

         backup <-
             list(i, j, data[i,j])
         data[i,j] <<- value
         edits <<- c(edits, list(backup))
         invisible(value)
     },
     undo = function() {
       Undoes the last edit() operation
        and update the edits field accordingly.

         prev <- edits
         if(length(prev)) prev <- prev[[length(prev)]]
         else stop("No more edits to undo")
         edit(prev[[1]], prev[[2]], prev[[3]])
         ## trim the edits list
         length(edits) <<- length(edits) - 2
         invisible(prev)
     },
     show = function() {
       Method for automatically printing matrix editors
       cat("Reference matrix editor object of class",
          classLabel(class(.self)), "\n")
       cat("Data: \n")
       methods::show(data)
       cat("Undo list is of length", length(edits), "\n")
     }
     ))

xMat <- matrix(1:12,4,3)
xx <- mEdit(data = xMat)
xx$edit(2, 2, 0)
```

```
xx
xx$undo()
mEdit$help("undo")
stopifnot(all.equal(xx$data, xMat))

utils::str(xx) # show fields and names of non-trivial methods

## add a method to save the object
mEdit$methods(
     save = function(file) {
       Save the current object on the file
        in R external object format.

         base::save(.self, file = file)
     }
)

tf <- tempfile()
xx$save(tf)


## Not run:
## Inheriting a reference class:  a matrix viewer
mv <- setRefClass("matrixViewer",
    fields = c("viewerDevice", "viewerFile"),
    contains = "mEdit",
    methods = list( view = function() {
        dd <- dev.cur(); dev.set(viewerDevice)
        devAskNewPage(FALSE)
        matplot(data, main = paste("After",length(edits),"edits"))
        dev.set(dd)},
        edit = # invoke previous method, then replot
          function(i, j, value) {
            callSuper(i, j, value)
            view()
          }))

## initialize and finalize methods
mv$methods( initialize =
  function(file = "./matrixView.pdf", ...) {
    viewerFile <<- file
    pdf(viewerFile)
    viewerDevice <<- dev.cur()
    dev.set(dev.prev())
    callSuper(...)
  },
  finalize = function() {
    dev.off(viewerDevice)
  })

## debugging an object: call browser() in method $edit()
xx$trace(edit, browser)

## debugging all objects from class mEdit in method $undo()
mEdit$trace(undo, browser)

## End(Not run)
```

`representation` *Construct a Representation or a Prototype for a Class Definition*

Description

These are old utility functions to construct, respectively a list designed to represent the slots and superclasses and a list of prototype specifications. The `representation()` function is no longer useful, since the arguments `slots` and `contains` to `setClass` are now recommended.

The `prototype()` function may still be used for the corresponding argument, but a simple list of the same arguments works as well.

Usage

```
representation(...)
prototype(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	The call to representation takes arguments that are single character strings. Unnamed arguments are classes that a newly defined class extends; named arguments name the explicit slots in the new class, and specify what class each slot should have. In the call to `prototype`, if an unnamed argument is supplied, it unconditionally forms the basis for the prototype object. Remaining arguments are taken to correspond to slots of this object. It is an error to supply more than one unnamed argument.

Details

The `representation` function applies tests for the validity of the arguments. Each must specify the name of a class.

The classes named don't have to exist when `representation` is called, but if they do, then the function will check for any duplicate slot names introduced by each of the inherited classes.

The arguments to `prototype` are usually named initial values for slots, plus an optional first argument that gives the object itself. The unnamed argument is typically useful if there is a data part to the definition (see the examples below).

Value

The value of `representation` is just the list of arguments, after these have been checked for validity.

The value of `prototype` is the object to be used as the prototype. Slots will have been set consistently with the arguments, but the construction does *not* use the class definition to test validity of the contents (it hardly can, since the prototype object is usually supplied to create the definition).

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

setClass

Examples

```
## representation for a new class with a directly define slot "smooth"
## which should be a "numeric" object, and extending class "track"
representation("track", smooth ="numeric")


setClass("Character",representation("character"))
setClass("TypedCharacter",representation("Character",type="character"),
          prototype(character(0),type="plain"))
ttt <- new("TypedCharacter", "foo", type = "character")


setClass("num1", representation(comment = "character"),
         contains = "numeric",
         prototype = prototype(pi, comment = "Start with pi"))
```

S3Part *S3-style Objects and S4-class Objects*

Description

Old-style (S3) classes may be registered as S4 classes (by calling setOldClass, and many have been. These classes can then be contained in (that is, superclasses of) regular S4 classes, allowing formal methods and slots to be added to the S3 behavior. The function S3Part extracts or replaces the S3 part of such an object. S3Class extracts or replaces the S3-style class. S3Class also applies to object from an S4 class with S3methods=TRUE in the call to setClass.

See the details below. Also discussed are S3 <-> S4 coercion; see the section "S3 and S4 objects"

Usage

```
S3Part(object, strictS3 = FALSE, S3Class)

S3Part(object, strictS3 = FALSE, needClass = ) <- value

S3Class(object)

S3Class(object) <-  value

isXS3Class(classDef)
```

```
slotsFromS3(object)
```

Arguments

object	An object from some class that extends a registered S3 class, usually because the class has as one of its superclasses an S3 class registered by a call to setOldClass, or from a class that extends a basic vector, matrix or array object type. See the details. For most of the functions, an S3 object can also be supplied, with the interpretation that it is its own S3 part.
strictS3	If TRUE, the value returned by S3Part will be an S3 object, with all the S4 slots removed. Otherwise, an S4 object will always be returned; for example, from the S4 class created by setOldClass as a proxy for an S3 class, rather than the underlying S3 object.
S3Class	The character vector to be stored as the S3 class slot in the object. Usually, and by default, retains the slot from object.
needClass	Require that the replacement value be this class or a subclass of it.
value	For S3Part<-, the replacement value for the S3 part of the object. This does *not* need to be an S4 object; in fact, the usual way to create objects from these classes is by giving an S3 object of the right class as an argument to new. For S3Class<-, the character vector that will be used as a proxy for class(x) in S3 method dispatch. This replacement function can be used to control S3 per-object method selection.
classDef	A class definition object, as returned by getClass.

Details

Classes that register S3 classes by a call to setOldClass have slot ".S3Class" to hold the corresponding S3 vector of class strings. The prototype of such a class has the value for this slot determined by the argument to setOldClass. Other S4 classes will have the same slot if the argument S3methods = TRUE is supplied to setClass; in this case, the slot is set to the S4 inheritance of the class.

New S4 classes that extend (contain) such classes also have the same slot, and by default the prototype has the value determined by the contains= argument to setClass. Individual objects from the S4 class may have an S3 class corresponding to the value in the prototype or to an (S3) subclass of that value. See the examples below.

S3Part() with strictS3 = TRUE constructs the underlying S3 object by eliminating all the formally defined slots and turning off the S4 bit of the object. With strictS3 = FALSE the object returned is from the corresponding S4 class. For consistency and generality, S3Part() works also for classes that extend the basic vector, matrix and array classes. Since is somewhat arbitrary about what it treats as an S3 class ("ts" is, but "matrix" is not), S3Part() tries to return an S3 (that is, non-S4) object whenever the S4 class has a suitable superclass, of either S3 or basic object type.

One general application that relies on this generality is to use S3Part() to get a superclass object that is guaranteed not to be an S4 object. If you are calling some function that checks for S4 objects, you need to be careful not to end up in a closed loop (fooS4 calls fooS3, which checks for an S4 object and calls fooS4 again, maybe indirectly). Using S3Part() with strictS3 = TRUE is a mechanism to avoid such loops.

Because the contents of S3 class objects have no definition or guarantee, the computations involving S3 parts do *not* check for slot validity. Slots are implemented internally in as attributes, which are copied when present in the S3 part. Grave problems can occur if an S4 class extending an S3 class uses the name of an S3 attribute as the name of an S4 slot, and S3 code sets the attribute to an object from an invalid class according to the S4 definition.

Frequently, `S3Part` can and should be avoided by simply coercing objects to the desired class; methods are automatically defined to deal correctly with the slots when `as` is called to extract or replace superclass objects.

The function `slotsFromS3()` is a generic function used internally to access the slots associated with the S3 part of the object. Methods for this function are created automatically when `setOldClass` is called with the `S4Class` argument. Usually, there is only one S3 slot, containing the S3 class, but the `S4Class` argument may provide additional slots, in the case that the S3 class has some guaranteed attributes that can be used as formal S4 slots. See the corresponding section in the documentation of `setOldClass`.

Value

`S3Part`: Returns or sets the S3 information (and possibly some S4 slots as well, depending on arguments `S3Class` and `keepSlots`). See the discussion of argument `strict` above. If it is `TRUE` the value returned is an S3 object.

`S3Class`: Returns or sets the character vector of S3 class(es) stored in the object, if the class has the corresponding `.S3Class` slot. Currently, the function defaults to `class` otherwise.

`isXS3Class`: Returns `TRUE` or `FALSE` according to whether the class defined by `ClassDef` extends S3 classes (specifically, whether it has the slot for holding the S3 class).

`slotsFromS3`: returns a list of the relevant slot classes, or an empty list for any other object.

S3 and S4 Objects: Conversion Mechanisms

Objects in have an internal bit that indicates whether or not to treat the object as coming from an S4 class. This bit is tested by `isS4` and can be set on or off by `asS4`. The latter function, however, does no checking or interpretation; you should only use it if you are very certain every detail has been handled correctly.

As a friendlier alternative, methods have been defined for coercing to the virtual classes `"S3"` and `"S4"`. The expressions `as(object, "S3")` and `as(object, "S4")` return S3 and S4 objects, respectively. In addition, they attempt to do conversions in a valid way, and also check validity when coercing to S4.

The expression `as(object, "S3")` can be used in two ways. For objects from one of the registered S3 classes, the expression will ensure that the class attribute is the full multi-string S3 class implied by `class(object)`. If the registered class has known attribute/slots, these will also be provided.

Another use of `as(object, "S3")` is to take an S4 object and turn it into an S3 object with corresponding attributes. This is only meaningful with S4 classes that have a data part. If you want to operate on the object without invoking S4 methods, this conversion is usually the safest way.

The expression `as(object, "S4")` will use the attributes in the object to create an object from the S4 definition of `class(object)`. This is a general mechanism to create partially defined version of S4 objects via S3 computations (not much different from invoking `new` with corresponding arguments, but usable in this form even if the S4 object has an initialize method with different arguments).

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version).

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

setOldClass

Examples

```
## two examples extending S3 class "lm", class "xlm" directly
## and "ylm" indirectly
setClass("xlm", representation(eps = "numeric"), contains = "lm")
setClass("ylm", representation(header = "character"), contains = "xlm")

## lm.D9 is as computed in the example for stats::lm
y1 = new("ylm", lm.D9, header = "test", eps = .1)
xx = new("xlm", lm.D9, eps =.1)
y2 = new("ylm", xx, header = "test")
stopifnot(inherits(y2, "lm"))
stopifnot(identical(y1, y2))
stopifnot(identical(S3Part(y1, strict = TRUE), lm.D9))

## note the these classes can insert an S3 subclass of "lm" as the S3 part:
myData <- data.frame(time = 1:10, y = (1:10)^.5)
myLm <- lm(cbind(y, y^3)  ~ time, myData) # S3 class: c("mlm", "lm")
ym1 = new("ylm", myLm, header = "Example", eps = 0.)

##similar classes to "xlm" and "ylm", but extending S3 class c("mlm", "lm")
setClass("xmm", representation(eps = "numeric"), contains = "mlm")
setClass("ymm", representation(header="character"), contains = "xmm")

ym2 <- new("ymm", myLm, header = "Example2", eps = .001)

# but for class "ymm", an S3 part of class "lm" is an error:
try(new("ymm", lm.D9, header = "Example2", eps = .001))

setClass("dataFrameD", representation(date = "Date"),
         contains = "data.frame")
myDD <- new("dataFrameD", myData, date = Sys.Date())

## S3Part() applied to classes with a data part (.Data slot)

setClass("NumX", contains="numeric", representation(id="character"))
nn = new("NumX", 1:10, id="test")
stopifnot(identical(1:10, S3Part(nn, strict = TRUE)))

m1 = cbind(group, weight)
setClass("MatX", contains = "matrix", representation(date = "Date"))
mx1 = new("MatX", m1, date = Sys.Date())
stopifnot(identical(m1, S3Part(mx1, strict = TRUE)))
```

S4groupGeneric *S4 Group Generic Functions*

Description

Methods can be defined for *group generic functions*. Each group generic function has a number of *member* generic functions associated with it.

Methods defined for a group generic function cause the same method to be defined for each member of the group, but a method explicitly defined for a member of the group takes precedence over a method defined, with the same signature, for the group generic.

The functions shown in this documentation page all reside in the **methods** package, but the mechanism is available to any programmer, by calling `setGroupGeneric` (provided package **methods** is attached).

Usage

```
## S4 group generics:
Arith(e1, e2)
Compare(e1, e2)
Ops(e1, e2)
Logic(e1, e2)
Math(x)
Math2(x, digits)
Summary(x, ..., na.rm = FALSE)
Complex(z)
```

Arguments

`x, z, e1, e2`	objects.
`digits`	number of digits to be used in `round` or `signif`.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from methods.
`na.rm`	logical: should missing values be removed?

Details

Methods can be defined for the group generic functions by calls to `setMethod` in the usual way. Note that the group generic functions should never be called directly – a suitable error message will result if they are. When metadata for a group generic is loaded, the methods defined become methods for the members of the group, but only if no method has been specified directly for the member function for the same signature. The effect is that group generic definitions are selected before inherited methods but after directly specified methods. For more on method selection, see `Methods`.

There are also S3 groups `Math`, `Ops`, `Summary` and `Complex`, see `?S3groupGeneric`, with no corresponding objects, but these are irrelevant for S4 group generic functions.

The members of the group defined by a particular generic can be obtained by calling `getGroupMembers`. For the group generic functions currently defined in this package the members are as follows:

`Arith` `"+"`, `"-"`, `"*"`, `"^"`, `"%%"`, `"%/%"`, `"/"`

`Compare` "==", ">", "<", "!=", "<=", ">="

`Logic` "&", "|".

`Ops` "Arith", "Compare", "Logic"

`Math` "abs", "sign", "sqrt", "ceiling", "floor", "trunc", "cummax", "cummin", "cumprod", "cumsum", "log", "log10", "log2", "log1p", "acos", "acosh", "asin", "asinh", "atan", "atanh", "exp", "expm1", "cos", "cosh", "cospi", "sin", "sinh", "sinpi", "tan", "tanh", "tanpi", "gamma", "lgamma", "digamma", "trigamma"

`Math2` "round", "signif"

`Summary` "max", "min", "range", "prod", "sum", "any", "all"

`Complex` "Arg", "Conj", "Im", "Mod", "Re"

Note that `Ops` merely consists of three sub groups.

All the functions in these groups (other than the group generics themselves) are basic functions in . They are not by default S4 generic functions, and many of them are defined as primitives. However, you can still define formal methods for them, both individually and via the group generics. It all works more or less as you might expect, admittedly via a bit of trickery in the background. See Methods for details.

Note that two members of the `Math` group, `log` and `trunc`, have ... as an extra formal argument. Since methods for `Math` will have only one formal argument, you must set a specific method for these functions in order to call them with the extra argument(s).

For further details about group generic functions see section 10.5 of *Software for Data Analysis*.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version).

See Also

The function `callGeneric` is nearly always relevant when writing a method for a group generic. See the examples below and in section 10.5 of *Software for Data Analysis*.

See S3groupGeneric for S3 group generics.

Examples

```
setClass("testComplex", representation(zz = "complex"))
## method for whole group "Complex"
setMethod("Complex", "testComplex",
          function(z) c("groupMethod", callGeneric(z@zz)))
## exception for Arg() :
setMethod("Arg", "testComplex",
          function(z) c("ArgMethod", Arg(z@zz)))
z1 <- 1+2i
z2 <- new("testComplex", zz = z1)
stopifnot(identical(Mod(z2), c("groupMethod", Mod(z1))))
stopifnot(identical(Arg(z2), c("ArgMethod", Arg(z1))))
```

SClassExtension-class *Class to Represent Inheritance (Extension) Relations*

Description

An object from this class represents a single 'is' relationship; lists of these objects are used to represent all the extensions (superclasses) and subclasses for a given class. The object contains information about how the relation is defined and methods to coerce, test, and replace correspondingly.

Objects from the Class

Objects from this class are generated by `setIs`, from direct calls and from the `contains=` information in a call to `setClass`, and from class unions created by `setClassUnion`. In the last case, the information is stored in defining the *subclasses* of the union class (allowing unions to contain sealed classes).

Slots

`subClass`, `superClass`: The classes being extended: corresponding to the `from`, and `to` arguments to `setIs`.

`package`: The package to which that class belongs.

`coerce`: A function to carry out the as() computation implied by the relation. Note that these functions should *not* be used directly. They only deal with the `strict=TRUE` calls to the `as` function, with the full method constructed from this mechanically.

`test`: The function that would test whether the relation holds. Except for explicitly specified `test` arguments to `setIs`, this function is trivial.

`replace`: The method used to implement `as(x, Class) <- value`.

`simple`: A `"logical"` flag, `TRUE` if this is a simple relation, either because one class is contained in the definition of another, or because a class has been explicitly stated to extend a virtual class. For simple extensions, the three methods are generated automatically.

`by`: If this relation has been constructed transitively, the first intermediate class from the subclass.

`dataPart`: A `"logical"` flag, `TRUE` if the extended class is in fact the data part of the subclass. In this case the extended class is a basic class (i.e., a type).

`distance`: The distance between the two classes, 1 for directly contained classes, plus the number of generations between otherwise.

Methods

No methods defined with class `"SClassExtension"` in the signature.

See Also

`is`, `as`, and the `classRepresentation` class.

`selectSuperClasses` *Super Classes (of Specific Kinds) of a Class*

Description

Return superclasses of `ClassDef`, possibly only non-virtual or direct or simple ones.

These functions are designed to be fast, and consequently only work with the `contains` slot of the corresponding class definitions.

Usage

```
selectSuperClasses(Class, dropVirtual = FALSE, namesOnly = TRUE,
                   directOnly = TRUE, simpleOnly = directOnly,
                   where = topenv(parent.frame()))

.selectSuperClasses(ext, dropVirtual = FALSE, namesOnly = TRUE,
                    directOnly = TRUE, simpleOnly = directOnly)
```

Arguments

`Class`	name of the class or (more efficiently) the class definition object (see `getClass`).
`dropVirtual`	logical indicating if only non-virtual superclasses should be returned.
`namesOnly`	logical indicating if only a vector names instead of a named list class-extensions should be returned.
`directOnly`	logical indicating if only a *direct* super classes should be returned.
`simpleOnly`	logical indicating if only simple class extensions should be returned.
`where`	(only used when `Class` is not a class definition) environment where the class definition of `Class` is found.
`ext`	for `.selectSuperClasses()` only, a `list` of class extensions, typically `getClassDef(..)@contains`.

Value

a `character` vector (if `namesOnly` is true, as per default) or a list of class extensions (as the `contains` slot in the result of `getClass`).

Note

The typical user level function is `selectSuperClasses()` which calls `.selectSuperClasses()`; i.e., the latter should only be used for efficiency reasons by experienced useRs.

See Also

`is`, `getClass`; further, the more technical class `classRepresentation` documentation.

Examples

```
setClass("Root")
setClass("Base", contains = "Root", representation(length = "integer"))
setClass("A", contains = "Base", representation(x = "numeric"))
setClass("B", contains = "Base", representation(y = "character"))
setClass("C", contains = c("A", "B"))

extends("C")   #-->  "C"  "A" "B"  "Base" "Root"
selectSuperClasses("C") # "A" "B"
selectSuperClasses("C", direct=FALSE) # "A" "B"  "Base"  "Root"
selectSuperClasses("C", dropVirt = TRUE, direct=FALSE)# ditto w/o "Root"
```

`setClass` *Create a Class Definition*

Description

Create a class definition, specifying the representation (the slots) and/or the classes contained in this one (the superclasses), plus other optional details. As a side effect, the class definition is stored in the specified environment. A generator function is returned as the value of `setClass()`, suitable for creating objects from the class if the class is not virtual. Of the many arguments to the function only `Class`, `slots=` and `contains=` are usually needed.

Usage

```
setClass(Class, representation, prototype, contains=character(),
         validity, access, where, version, sealed, package,
         S3methods = FALSE, slots)
```

Arguments

`Class`	character string name for the class.
`slots`	a named list or named character vector. The names are the names of the slots in the new class and the elements are the character string names of the corresponding classes. In rare cases where there is ambiguity about the class of a slot, because two classes of the same name are imported from different packages, the corresponding element of the argument must have a `"package"` attribute to disambiguate the choice. It is allowed to provide an unnamed character vector as a limiting case, with the elements taken as slot names and all slots having the unrestricted class `"ANY"`.
`contains`	the names (and optionally package slots) for the *superclasses* of this class. The special superclass `"VIRTUAL"` causes the new class to be created as a virtual class; see the section on virtual classes in Classes.
`prototype`	an object providing the default data for the slots in this class. By default, each will be the prototype object for the superclass. If provided, using a call to `prototype` will carry out some checks.
`where`	the environment in which to store the definition. Should not be supplied in standard use. For calls to `setClass()` appearing in the source code for a package, will default to the namespace of the package. For calls typed or sourced at the top level in a session, will default to the global environment.

`validity` if supplied, should be a validity-checking method for objects from this class (a function that returns `TRUE` if its argument is a valid object of this class and one or more strings describing the failures otherwise). See `validObject` for details.

`S3methods, representation, access, version`
All these arguments are deprecated from version 3.0.0 of and should be avoided.

`S3methods` is a flag indicating that old-style methods will be written involving this class. Modern versions of attempt to match formal and old-style methods consistently, so this argument is largely irrelevant.

`representation` is an argument inherited from S that included both `slots` and `contains`, but the use of the latter two arguments is clearer and recommended.

`access` and `version` are included for historical compatibility with S-Plus, but ignored.

`sealed` if `TRUE`, the class definition will be sealed, so that another call to `setClass` will fail on this class name.

`package` an optional package name for the class. Should very rarely be used. By default the name of the package in which the class definition is assigned.

Value

A generator function suitable for creating objects from the class is returned, invisibly. A call to this function generates a call to `new` for the class. The call takes any number of arguments, which will be passed on to the initialize method. If no `initialize` method is defined for the class or one of its superclasses, the default method expects named arguments with the name of one of the slots.

Typically the generator function is assigned the name of the class, for programming clarity. This is not a requirement and objects from the class can also be generated directly from `new`. The advantages of the generator function are a slightly simpler and clearer call, and that the call will contain the package name of the class (eliminating any ambiguity if two classes from different packages have the same name).

If the class is virtual, an attempt to generate an object from either the generator or `new()` will result in an error.

Basic Use: Slots and Inheritance

The two essential arguments other than the class name are `slots` and `contains`, defining the explicit slots and the inheritance (superclasses). Together, these arguments define all the information in an object from this class; that is, the names of all the slots and the classes required for each of them.

The name of the class determines which methods apply directly to objects from this class. The inheritance information specifies which methods apply indirectly, through inheritance. See Methods.

The slots in a class definition will be the union of all the slots specified directly by `slots` and all the slots in all the contained classes. There can only be one slot with a given name; specifically, the direct and inherited slot names must be unique. That does not, however, prevent the same class from being inherited via more than one path.

One kind of element in the `contains=` argument is special, specifying one of the object types or one of a few other special types (`matrix` and `array`). See the section on inheriting from object types, below.

Slot names `"class"` and `"Class"` are not allowed. There are other slot names with a special meaning; these names start with the `"."` character. To be safe, you should define all of your own slots with names starting with an alphabetic character.

Inheriting from Object Types

In addition to containing other S4 classes, a class definition can contain either an S3 class (see the next section) or a built-in R pseudo-class—one of the object types or one of the special pseudo-classes `"matrix"` and `"array"`. A class can contain at most one of the object types, directly or indirectly. When it does, that contained class determines the "data part" of the class.

Objects from the new class try to inherit the built in behavior of the contained type. In the case of normal data types, including vectors, functions and expressions, the implementation is relatively straightforward. For any object `x` from the class, `typeof(x)` will be the contained basic type; and a special pseudo-slot, `.Data`, will be shown with the corresponding class. See the `"numWithId"` example below.

Classes may also inherit from `"vector"`, `"matrix"` or `"array"`. The data part of these objects can be any vector data type.

For an object from any class that does *not* contain one of these types or classes, `typeof(x)` will be `"S4"`.

Some data types do not behave normally, in the sense that they are non-local references or other objects that are not duplicated. Examples include those corresponding to classes `"environment"`, `"externalptr"`, and `"name"`. These can not be the types for objects with user-defined classes (either S4 or S3) because setting an attribute overwrites the object in all contexts. It is possible to define a class that inherits from such types, through an indirect mechanism that stores the inherited object in a reserved slot. See the example for class `"stampedEnv"` below. S3 method dispatch and the relevant `as.`*`type`*`()` functions should behave correctly, but code that uses the type of the object directly will not.

Also, keep in mind that the object passed to low-level computations will be the underlying object type, *without* any of the slots defined in the class. To return the full information, you will usually have to define a method that sets the data part.

Inheriting from S3 Classes

Old-style S3 classes have no formal definition. Objects are "from" the class when their class attribute contains the character string considered to be the class name.

Using such classes with formal classes and methods is necessarily a risky business, since there are no guarantees about the content of the objects or about consistency of inherited methods. Given that, it is still possible to define a class that inherits from an S3 class, providing that class has been registered as an old class (see `setOldClass`).

Broadly speaking, both S3 and S4 method dispatch try to behave sensibly with respect to inheritance in either system. Given an S4 object, S3 method dispatch and the `inherits` function should use the S4 inheritance information. Given an S3 object, an S4 generic function will dispatch S4 methods using the S3 inheritance, provided that inheritance has been declared via `setOldClass`.

Classes and Packages

Class definitions normally belong to packages (but can be defined in the global environment as well, by evaluating the expression on the command line or in a file sourced from the command line). The corresponding package name is part of the class definition; that is, part of the `classRepresentation` object holding that definition. Thus, two classes with the same name can exist in different packages, for most purposes.

When a class name is supplied for a slot or a superclass in a call to `setClass`, a corresponding class definition will be found, looking from the namespace of the current package, assuming the call in question appears directly in the source for the package, as it should to avoid ambiguity. The class definition must be found in the namespace of the current package, in the imports for that namespace

or in the basic classes defined by the methods package. (The methods package must be included in the Depends directive of the package's "DESCRIPTION" file in order for the "CMD check" utility to find these classes.)

When this rule does not identify a class uniquely (because it appears in more than one imported package) then the packageSlot of the character string name needs to be supplied with the name. This should be a rare occurrence.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

Classes for a general discussion of classes, Methods for an analogous discussion of methods, makeClassRepresentation

Examples

```
## A simple class with two slots
track <- setClass("track",
         slots = c(x="numeric", y="numeric"))
## an object from the class
t1 <- track(x = 1:10, y = 1:10 + rnorm(10))

## A class extending the previous, adding one more slot
trackCurve <- setClass("trackCurve",
    slots = c(smooth = "numeric"),
    contains = "track")

## an object containing a superclass object
t1s <- trackCurve(t1, smooth = 1:10)

## A class similar to "trackCurve", but with different structure
## allowing matrices for the "y" and "smooth" slots
setClass("trackMultiCurve",
         slots = c(x="numeric", y="matrix", smooth="matrix"),
         prototype = list(x=numeric(), y=matrix(0,0,0),
                          smooth= matrix(0,0,0)))
## See ?setIs for further examples using these classes

## A class that extends the built-in data type "numeric"

numWithId <- setClass("numWithId", slots = c(id = "character"),
         contains = "numeric")

numWithId(1:3, id = "An Example")

## inherit from reference object of type "environment"
stampedEnv <-setClass("stampedEnv", contains = "environment",
      slots = c(update = "POSIXct"))
setMethod("[[<-", c("stampedEnv", "character", "missing"),
   function(x, i, j, ..., value) {
       ev <- as(x, "environment")
```

```
        ev[[i]] <- value  #update the object in the environment
        x@update <- Sys.time() # and the update time
        x})


e1 <- stampedEnv(update = Sys.time())

e1[["noise"]] <- rnorm(10)
```

`setClassUnion` *Classes Defined as the Union of Other Classes*

Description

A class may be defined as the *union* of other classes; that is, as a virtual class defined as a superclass of several other classes. Class unions are useful in method signatures or as slots in other classes, when we want to allow one of several classes to be supplied.

Usage

```
setClassUnion(name, members, where)
isClassUnion(Class)
```

Arguments

`name`	the name for the new union class.
`members`	the classes that should be members of this union.
`where`	where to save the new class definition; by default, the environment of the package in which the `setClassUnion` call appears, or the global environment if called outside of the source of a package.
`Class`	the name or definition of a class.

Details

The classes in `members` must be defined before creating the union. However, members can be added later on to an existing union, as shown in the example below. Class unions can be members of other class unions.

The prototype object in the class union definition will be `NULL` if class `"NULL"` is a member of the union and the prototype object of the first member class otherwise (as of version 2.15.0 of R; earlier versions had a `NULL` prototype even if that was not valid).

Class unions are the only way to create a class that is extended by a class whose definition is sealed (for example, the basic datatypes or other classes defined in the base or methods package in R are sealed). You cannot say `setIs("function", "other")` unless `"other"` is a class union. In general, a `setIs` call of this form changes the definition of the first class mentioned (adding `"other"` to the list of superclasses contained in the definition of `"function"`).

Class unions get around this by not modifying the first class definition, relying instead on storing information in the subclasses slot of the class union. In order for this technique to work, the internal computations for expressions such as `extends(class1, class2)` work differently for class

unions than for regular classes; specifically, they test whether any class is in common between the superclasses of `class1` and the subclasses of `class2`.

The different behavior for class unions is made possible because the class definition object for class unions has itself a special class, `"ClassUnionRepresentation"`, an extension of class `classRepresentation`.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

Examples

```
## a class for either numeric or logical data
setClassUnion("maybeNumber", c("numeric", "logical"))

## use the union as the data part of another class
setClass("withId", representation("maybeNumber", id = "character"))

w1 <- new("withId", 1:10, id = "test 1")
w2 <- new("withId", sqrt(w1)%%1 < .01, id = "Perfect squares")

## add class "complex" to the union "maybeNumber"
setIs("complex", "maybeNumber")

w3 <- new("withId", complex(real = 1:10, imaginary = sqrt(1:10)))

## a class union containing the existing class  union "OptionalFunction"
setClassUnion("maybeCode",
    c("expression", "language", "OptionalFunction"))

is(quote(sqrt(1:10)), "maybeCode")  ## TRUE
```

---

setGeneric *Define a New Generic Function*

Description

Create a new generic function of the given name, that is, a function that dispatches methods according to the classes of the arguments, from among the formal methods defined for this function.

Usage

```
setGeneric(name, def= , group=list(), valueClass=character(),
           where= , package= , signature= , useAsDefault= ,
           genericFunction= , simpleInheritanceOnly = )

setGroupGeneric(name, def= , group=list(), valueClass=character(),
                knownMembers=list(), package= , where= )
```

Arguments

name	The character string name of the generic function. The simplest (and recommended) call, setGeneric(name), looks for a function with this name and creates a corresponding generic function, if the function found was not generic. In the latter case, the existing function becomes the default method.
def	An optional function object, defining the generic. Don't supply this argument if you want to turn an existing non-generic function into a generic. In this case, you usually want to use the simple call with one argument. Do supply def if there is no current function of this name or for some reason you do not want to use that function to define the generic. In that case, the formal arguments and default values for the generic are taken from def. In most cases, the body of def will then define the default method, as the existing function did in the one-argument call. If you want to create a new generic function with *no* default method, then def should be only a call to standardGeneric with the same character string as name.
group	Optionally, a character string giving the name of the group generic function to which this function belongs. See Methods for details of group generic functions in method selection.
valueClass	An optional character vector of one or more class names. The value returned by the generic function must have (or extend) this class, or one of the classes; otherwise, an error is generated.
package	The name of the package with which this function is associated. Usually determined automatically (as the package containing the non-generic version if there is one, or else the package where this generic is to be saved).
where	Where to store the resulting initial methods definition, and possibly the generic function; by default, stored into the top-level environment.
signature	Optionally, the vector of names, from among the formal arguments to the function, that can appear in the signature of methods for this function, in calls to setMethod. If ... is one of the formal arguments, it is treated specially. Starting with version 2.8.0 of , ... may be signature of the generic function. Methods will then be selected if their signature matches all the ... arguments. See the documentation for topic dotsMethods for details. In the present version, it is not possible to mix ... and other arguments in the signature (this restriction may be lifted in later versions). By default, the signature is inferred from the implicit generic function corresponding to a non-generic function. If no implicit generic function has been defined, the default is all the formal arguments except ..., in the order they appear in the function definition. In the case that ... is the only formal argument, that is also the default signature. To use ... as the signature in a function that has any other arguments, you must supply the signature argument explicitly. See the "Implicit Generic" section below for more details.
useAsDefault	Override the usual choice of default argument. Argument useAsDefault can be supplied, either as a function to use for the default, or as a logical value. This argument is now rarely needed. See the section on details.
simpleInheritanceOnly	Supply this argument as TRUE to require that methods selected be inherited through simple inheritance only; that is, from superclasses specified in the contains= argument to setClass, or by simple inheritance to a class union

or other virtual class. Generic functions should require simple inheritance if they need to be assured that they get the complete original object, not one that has been transformed. Examples of functions requiring simple inheritance are initialize, because by definition it must return an object from the same class as its argument, and show, because it claims to give a full description of the object provided as its argument.

genericFunction

Don't use; for (possible) internal use only.

knownMembers (For setGroupGeneric only.) The names of functions that are known to be members of this group. This information is used to reset cached definitions of the member generics when information about the group generic is changed.

Value

The setGeneric function exists for its side effect: saving the generic function to allow methods to be specified later. It returns name.

Basic Use

The setGeneric function is called to initialize a generic function as preparation for defining some methods for that function.

The simplest and most common situation is that name is already an ordinary non-generic non-primitive function, and you now want to turn this function into a generic. In this case you will most often supply only name, for example:

```
setGeneric("colSums")
```

There must be an existing function of this name, on some attached package (in this case package "base"). A generic version of this function will be created in the current package (or in the global environment if the call to setGeneric() is from an ordinary source file or is entered on the command line). The existing function becomes the default method, and the package slot of the new generic function is set to the location of the original function ("base" in the example). It's an important feature that the same generic function definition is created each time, depending in the example only on the definition of print and where it is found. The signature of the generic function, defining which of the formal arguments can be used in specifying methods, is set by default to all the formal arguments except ....

Note that calling setGeneric() in this form is not strictly necessary before calling setMethod() for the same function. If the function specified in the call to setMethod is not generic, setMethod will execute the call to setGeneric itself. Declaring explicitly that you want the function to be generic can be considered better programming style; the only difference in the result, however, is that not doing so produces a message noting the creation of the generic function.

You cannot (and never need to) create an explicit generic version of the primitive functions in the base package. Those which can be treated as generic functions have methods selected and dispatched from the internal C code, to satisfy concerns for efficiency, and the others cannot be made generic. See the section on Primitive Functions below.

The description above is the effect when the package that owns the non-generic function has not created an implicit generic version. Otherwise, it is this implicit generic function that is used. See the section on Implicit Generic Functions below. Either way, the essential result is that the *same* version of the generic function will be created each time.

The second common use of setGeneric() is to create a new generic function, unrelated to any existing function, and frequently having no default method. In this case, you need to supply a skeleton of the function definition, to define the arguments for the function. The body of a generic

function is usually a standard form, `standardGeneric(name)` where `name` is the quoted name of the generic function. When calling `setGeneric` in this form, you would normally supply the `def` argument as a function of this form. See the second and third examples below.

The `useAsDefault` argument controls the default method for the new generic. If not told otherwise, `setGeneric` will try to find a non-generic version of the function to use as a default. So, if you do have a suitable default method, it is often simpler to first set this up as a non-generic function, and then use the one-argument call to `setGeneric` at the beginning of this section. See the first example in the Examples section below.

If you *don't* want the existing function to be taken as default, supply the argument `useAsDefault`. That argument can be the function you want to be the default method, or `FALSE` to force no default (i.e., to cause an error if there is no direct or inherited method selected for a call to the function).

Details

The great majority of calls to `setGeneric()` should either have one argument to ensure that an existing function can have methods, or arguments `name` and `def` to create a new generic function and optionally a default method. If that's not what you plan to do, read on.

If you want to change the behavior of an existing function (typically, one in another package) when you create a generic version, you must supply arguments to `setGeneric` correspondingly. Whatever changes are made, the new generic function will be assigned with a package slot set to the *current* package, not the one in which the non-generic version of the function is found. This step is required because the version you are creating is no longer the same as that implied by the function in the other package. A message will be printed to indicate that this has taken place and noting one of the differences between the two functions. It tends to be a bad idea, because the two versions are now competing for methods, with many chances for mistakes in programming.

The body of a generic function usually does nothing except for dispatching methods by a call to `standardGeneric`. Under some circumstances you might just want to do some additional computation in the generic function itself. As long as your function eventually calls `standardGeneric` that is permissible (though perhaps not a good idea, in that it may make the behavior of your function less easy to understand). If your explicit definition of the generic function does *not* call `standardGeneric` you are in trouble, because none of the methods for the function will ever be dispatched.

By default, the generic function can return any object. If `valueClass` is supplied, it should be a vector of class names; the value returned by a method is then required to satisfy `is(object, Class)` for one of the specified classes. An empty (i.e., zero length) vector of classes means anything is allowed. Note that more complicated requirements on the result can be specified explicitly, by defining a non-standard generic function.

The `setGroupGeneric` function behaves like `setGeneric` except that it constructs a group generic function, differing in two ways from an ordinary generic function. First, this function cannot be called directly, and the body of the function created will contain a stop call with this information. Second, the group generic function contains information about the known members of the group, used to keep the members up to date when the group definition changes, through changes in the search list or direct specification of methods, etc.

Implicit Generic Functions

Saying that a non-generic function "is converted to a generic" is more precisely state that the function is converted to the corresponding *implicit* generic function. If no special action has been taken, any function corresponds implicitly to a generic function with the same arguments, in which all arguments other than ... can be used. The signature of this generic function is the vector of formal arguments, in order, except for ....

The source code for a package can define an implicit generic function version of any function in that package (see implicitGeneric for the mechanism). You can not, generally, define an implicit generic function in someone else's package. The usual reason for defining an implicit generic is to prevent certain arguments from appearing in the signature, which you must do if you want the arguments to be used literally or if you want to enforce lazy evaluation for any reason. An implicit generic can also contain some methods that you want to be predefined; in fact, the implicit generic can be any generic version of the non-generic function. The implicit generic mechanism can also be used to prohibit a generic version (see `prohibitGeneric`).

Whether defined or inferred automatically, the implicit generic will be compared with the generic function that `setGeneric` creates, when the implicit generic is in another package. If the two functions are identical, then the `package` slot of the created generic will have the name of the package containing the implicit generic. Otherwise, the slot will be the name of the package in which the generic is assigned.

The purpose of this rule is to ensure that all methods defined for a particular combination of generic function and package names correspond to a single, consistent version of the generic function. Calling `setGeneric` with only `name` and possibly `package` as arguments guarantees getting the implicit generic version, if one exists.

Including any of the other arguments can force a new, local version of the generic function. If you don't want to create a new version, don't use the extra arguments.

Generic Functions and Primitive Functions

A number of the basic functions are specially implemented as primitive functions, to be evaluated directly in the underlying C code rather than by evaluating an language definition. Most have implicit generics (see `implicitGeneric`), and become generic as soon as methods (including group methods) are defined on them. Others cannot be made generic.

Even when methods are defined for such functions, the generic version is not visible on the search list, in order that the C version continues to be called. Method selection will be initiated in the C code. Note, however, that the result is to restrict methods for primitive functions to signatures in which at least one of the classes in the signature is a formal S4 class.

To see the generic version of a primitive function, use `getGeneric(name)`. The function `isGeneric` will tell you whether methods are defined for the function in the current session.

Note that S4 methods can only be set on those primitives which are 'internal generic', plus `%*%`.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`Methods` and the links there for a general discussion, `dotsMethods` for methods that dispatch on "...", and `setMethod` for method definitions.

Examples

```
## create a new generic function, with a default method
setGeneric("props", function(object) attributes(object))

## A new generic function with no default method
```

```
setGeneric("increment",
  function(object, step, ...)
    standardGeneric("increment")
)


###   A non-standard generic function.  It insists that the methods
###   return a non-empty character vector (a stronger requirement than
###    valueClass = "character" in the call to setGeneric)

setGeneric("authorNames",
    function(text) {
      value <- standardGeneric("authorNames")
      if(!(is(value, "character") && any(nchar(value)>0)))
        stop("authorNames methods must return non-empty strings")
      value
      })



## An example of group generic methods, using the class
## "track"; see the documentation of \link{setClass} for its definition

## define a method for the Arith group

setMethod("Arith", c("track", "numeric"),
 function(e1, e2) {
  e1@y <- callGeneric(e1@y , e2)
  e1
})

setMethod("Arith", c("numeric", "track"),
 function(e1, e2) {
  e2@y <- callGeneric(e1, e2@y)
  e2
})

## now arithmetic operators  will dispatch methods:

t1 <- new("track", x=1:10, y=sort(stats::rnorm(10)))

t1 - 100
1/t1
```

`setLoadActions` *Set Actions For Package Loading*

Description

These functions provide a mechanism for packages to specify computations to be done during the loading of a package namespace. Such actions are a flexible way to provide information only available at load time (such as locations in a dynamically linked library).

A call to setLoadAction() or setLoadActions() specifies one or more functions to be called when the corresponding namespace is loaded, with the ... argument names being used as identifying names for the actions.

getLoadActions reports the currently defined load actions, given a package's namespace as its argument.

hasLoadAction returns TRUE if a load action corresponding to the given name has previously been set for the where namespace.

evalOnLoad() and evalqOnLoad() schedule a specific expression for evaluation at load time.

Usage

```
setLoadAction(action, aname=, where=)

setLoadActions(..., .where=)

getLoadActions(where=)

hasLoadAction(aname, where=)

evalOnLoad(expr, where=, aname=)

evalqOnLoad(expr, where=, aname=)
```

Arguments

action, ...	functions of one or more arguments, to be called when this package is loaded. The functions will be called with one argument (the package namespace) so all following arguments must have default values. If the elements of ... are named, these names will be used for the corresponding load metadata.
where, .where	the namespace of the package for which the list of load actions are defined. This argument is normally omitted if the call comes from the source code for the package itself, but will be needed if a package supplies load actions for another package.
aname	the name for the action. If an action is set without supplying a name, the default uses the position in the sequence of actions specified (".1", etc.).
expr	an expression to be evaluated in a load action in environment where. In the case of evalqOnLoad(), the expression is interpreted literally, in that of evalOnLoad() it must be precomputed, typically as an object of type "language".

Details

The evalOnLoad() and evalqOnLoad() functions are for convenience. They construct a function to evaluate the expression and call setLoadAction() to schedule a call to that function.

Each of the functions supplied as an argument to setLoadAction() or setLoadActions() is saved as metadata in the namespace, typically that of the package containing the call to setLoadActions(). When this package's namespace is loaded, each of these functions will be called. Action functions are called in the order they are supplied to setLoadActions(). The objects assigned have metadata names constructed from the names supplied in the call; unnamed arguments are taken to be named by their position in the list of actions (".1", etc.).

Multiple calls to `setLoadAction()` or `setLoadActions()` can be used in a package's code; the actions will be scheduled after any previously specified, except if the name given to `setLoadAction()` is that of an existing action. In typical applications, `setLoadActions()` is more convenient when calling from the package's own code to set several actions. Calls to `setLoadAction()` are more convenient if the action name is to be constructed, which is more typical when one package constructs load actions for another package.

Actions can be revised by assigning with the same name, actual or constructed, in a subsequent call. The replacement must still be a valid function, but can of course do nothing if the intention was to remove a previously specified action.

The functions must have at least one argument. They will be called with one argument, the namespace of the package. The functions will be called at the end of processing of S4 metadata, after dynamically linking any compiled code, the call to `.onLoad()`, if any, and caching method and class definitions, but before the namespace is sealed. (Load actions are only called if methods dispatch is on.)

Functions may therefore assign or modify objects in the namespace supplied as the argument in the call. The mechanism allows packages to save information not available until load time, such as values obtained from a dynamically linked library.

Load actions should be contrasted with user load hooks supplied by `setHook()`. User hooks are generally provided from outside the package and are run after the namespace has been sealed. Load actions are normally part of the package code, and the list of actions is normally established when the package is installed.

Load actions can be supplied directly in the source code for a package. It is also possible and useful to provide facilities in one package to create load actions in another package. The software needs to be careful to assign the action functions in the correct environment, namely the namespace of the target package.

Value

`setLoadAction()` and `setLoadActions()` are called for their side effect and return no useful value.

`getLoadActions()` returns a named list of the actions in the supplied namespace.

`hasLoadAction()` returns `TRUE` if the specified action name appears in the actions for this package.

See Also

`setHook` for safer (since they are run after the namespace is sealed) and more comprehensive versions in the base package.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## in the code for some package

## ... somewhere else
setLoadActions(function(ns)
   cat("Loaded package", sQuote(getNamespaceName(ns)),
       "at", format(Sys.time()), "\n"),
  setCount = function(ns) assign("myCount", 1, envir = ns),
  function(ns) assign("myPointer", getMyExternalPointer(), envir = ns))
  ... somewhere later
if(countShouldBe0)
  setLoadAction(function(ns) assign("myCount", 0, envir = ns), "setCount")
```

```
## End(Not run)
```

`setMethod` *Create and Save a Method*

Description

Create and save a formal method for a given function and list of classes.

Usage

```
setMethod(f, signature=character(), definition,
          where = topenv(parent.frame()),
          valueClass = NULL, sealed = FALSE)

removeMethod(f, signature, where)
```

Arguments

`f`	A generic function or the character-string name of the function.
`signature`	A match of formal argument names for `f` with the character-string names of corresponding classes. See the details below; however, if the signature is not trivial, you should use `method.skeleton` to generate a valid call to `setMethod`.
`definition`	A function definition, which will become the method called when the arguments in a call to `f` match the classes in `signature`, directly or through inheritance.
`where`	the environment in which to store the definition of the method. For `setMethod`, it is recommended to omit this argument and to include the call in source code that is evaluated at the top level; that is, either in an R session by something equivalent to a call to `source`, or as part of the R source code for a package. For `removeMethod`, the default is the location of the (first) instance of the method for this signature.
`valueClass`	Obsolete and unused, but see the same argument for `setGeneric`.
`sealed`	If `TRUE`, the method so defined cannot be redefined by another call to `setMethod` (although it can be removed and then re-assigned).

Details

The call to `setMethod` stores the supplied method definition in the metadata table for this generic function in the environment, typically the global environment or the namespace of a package. In the case of a package, the table object becomes part of the namespace or environment of the package. When the package is loaded into a later session, the methods will be merged into the table of methods in the corresponding generic function object.

Generic functions are referenced by the combination of the function name and the package name; for example, the function `"show"` from the package `"methods"`. Metadata for methods is identified by the two strings; in particular, the generic function object itself has slots containing its name and its package name. The package name of a generic is set according to the package from which it originally comes; in particular, and frequently, the package where a non-generic version of the function originated. For example, generic functions for all the functions in package **base** will have `"base"` as the package name, although none of them is an S4 generic on that package. These include

most of the base functions that are primitives, rather than true functions; see the section on primitive functions in the documentation for `setGeneric` for details.

Multiple packages can have methods for the same generic function; that is, for the same combination of generic function name and package name. Even though the methods are stored in separate tables in separate environments, loading the corresponding packages adds the methods to the table in the generic function itself, for the duration of the session.

The class names in the signature can be any formal class, including basic classes such as `"numeric"`, `"character"`, and `"matrix"`. Two additional special class names can appear: `"ANY"`, meaning that this argument can have any class at all; and `"missing"`, meaning that this argument *must not* appear in the call in order to match this signature. Don't confuse these two: if an argument isn't mentioned in a signature, it corresponds implicitly to class `"ANY"`, not to `"missing"`. See the example below. Old-style ('S3') classes can also be used, if you need compatibility with these, but you should definitely declare these classes by calling `setOldClass` if you want S3-style inheritance to work.

Method definitions can have default expressions for arguments, but a current limitation is that the generic function must have *some* default expression for the same argument in order for the method's defaults to be used. If so, and if the corresponding argument is missing in the call to the generic function, the default expression in the method is used. If the method definition has no default for the argument, then the expression supplied in the definition of the generic function itself is used, but note that this expression will be evaluated using the enclosing environment of the method, not of the generic function. Note also that specifying class `"missing"` in the signature does not require any default expressions, and method selection does not evaluate default expressions. All actual (non-missing) arguments in the signature of the generic function will be evaluated when a method is selected—when the call to `standardGeneric(f)` occurs.

It is possible to have some differences between the formal arguments to a method supplied to `setMethod` and those of the generic. Roughly, if the generic has `...` as one of its arguments, then the method may have extra formal arguments, which will be matched from the arguments matching `...` in the call to `f`. (What actually happens is that a local function is created inside the method, with the modified formal arguments, and the method is re-defined to call that local function.)

Method dispatch tries to match the class of the actual arguments in a call to the available methods collected for `f`. If there is a method defined for the exact same classes as in this call, that method is used. Otherwise, all possible signatures are considered corresponding to the actual classes or to superclasses of the actual classes (including `"ANY"`). The method having the least distance from the actual classes is chosen; if more than one method has minimal distance, one is chosen (the lexicographically first in terms of superclasses) but a warning is issued. All inherited methods chosen are stored in another table, so that the inheritance calculations only need to be done once per session per sequence of actual classes. See Methods for more details.

The function `removeMethod` removes the specified method from the metadata table in the corresponding environment. It's not a function that is used much, since one normally wants to redefine a method rather than leave no definition.

Value

These functions exist for their side-effect, in setting or removing a method in the object defining methods for the specified generic.

The value returned by `removeMethod` is `TRUE` if a method was found to be removed.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

method.skeleton, which is the recommended way to generate a skeleton of the call to setMethod, with the correct formal arguments and other details.

Methods and the links there for a general discussion, dotsMethods for methods that dispatch on "...", and setGeneric for generic functions.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
## methods for plotting track objects (see the example for \link{setClass})
##
## First, with only one object as argument:
setMethod("plot", signature(x="track", y="missing"),
  function(x,  y, ...) plot(slot(x, "x"), slot(x, "y"), ...)
)
## Second, plot the data from the track on the y-axis against anything
## as the x data.
setMethod("plot", signature(y = "track"),
 function(x, y, ...) plot(x, slot(y, "y"), ...)
)
## and similarly with the track on the x-axis (using the short form of
## specification for signatures)
setMethod("plot", "track",
 function(x, y, ...) plot(slot(x, "y"), y,  ...)
)
t1 <- new("track", x=1:20, y=(1:20)^2)
tc1 <- new("trackCurve", t1)
slot(tc1, "smooth") <- smooth.spline(slot(tc1, "x"), slot(tc1, "y"))$y #$
plot(t1)
plot(qnorm(ppoints(20)), t1)
## An example of inherited methods, and of conforming method arguments
## (note the dotCurve argument in the method, which will be pulled out
## of ... in the generic.
setMethod("plot", c("trackCurve", "missing"),
function(x, y, dotCurve = FALSE, ...) {
  plot(as(x, "track"))
  if(length(slot(x, "smooth") > 0))
    lines(slot(x, "x"), slot(x, "smooth"),
          lty = if(dotCurve) 2 else 1)
  }
)
## the plot of tc1 alone has an added curve; other uses of tc1
## are treated as if it were a "track" object.
plot(tc1, dotCurve = TRUE)
plot(qnorm(ppoints(20)), tc1)

## defining methods for a special function.
## Although "[" and "length" are not ordinary functions
## methods can be defined for them.
setMethod("[", "track",
  function(x, i, j, ..., drop) {
    x@x <- x@x[i]; x@y <- x@y[i]
    x
  })
plot(t1[1:15])
```

```
setMethod("length", "track", function(x)length(x@y))
length(t1)

## methods can be defined for missing arguments as well
setGeneric("summary") ## make the function into a generic

## A method for summary()
## The method definition can include the arguments, but
## if theyre omitted, class "missing" is assumed.

setMethod("summary", "missing", function() "<No Object>")
```

`setOldClass` *Register Old-Style (S3) Classes and Inheritance*

Description

Register an old-style (a.k.a. 'S3') class as a formally defined class. The `Classes` argument is the character vector used as the `class` attribute; in particular, if there is more than one string, old-style class inheritance is mimicked. Registering via `setOldClass` allows S3 classes to appear in method signatures, as a slot in an S4 class, or as a superclass of an S4 class.

Usage

```
setOldClass(Classes, prototype, where, test = FALSE, S4Class)
```

Arguments

`Classes`	A character vector, giving the names for S3 classes, as they would appear on the right side of an assignment of the `class` attribute in S3 computations. In addition to S3 classes, an object type or other valid data part can be specified, if the S3 class is known to require its data to be of that form.
`prototype`	An optional object to use as the prototype. This should be provided as the default S3 object for the class. If omitted, the S4 class created to register the S3 class is `VIRTUAL`. See the details.
`where`	Where to store the class definitions, the global or top-level environment by default. (When either function is called in the source for a package, the class definitions will be included in the package's environment by default.)
`test`	flag, if `TRUE`, arrange to test inheritance explicitly for each object, needed if the S3 class can have a different set of class strings, with the same first string. This is a different mechanism in implementation and should be specified separately for each pair of classes that have an optional inheritance. See the 'Details'.
`S4Class`	optionally, the class definition or the class name of an S4 class. The new class will have all the slots and other properties of this class, plus its S3 inheritance as defined by the `Classses` argument. Arguments `prototype` and `test` must not be supplied in this case. See the section on "S3 classes with known attributes" below.

Details

Each of the names will be defined as an S4 class, extending the remaining classes in `Classes`, and the class `oldClass`, which is the 'root' of all old-style classes. S3 classes have no formal definition, and therefore no formally defined slots. If a `prototype` argument is supplied in the call to `setOldClass()`, objects from the class can be generated, by a call to new; however, this usually not as relevant as generating objects from subclasses (see the section on extending S3 classes below). If a prototype is not provided, the class will be created as a virtual S4 class. The main disadvantage is that the prototype object in an S4 class that uses this class as a slot will have a `NULL` object in that slot, which can sometimes lead to confusion.

Beginning with version 2.8.0 of , support is provided for using a (registered) S3 class as a superclass of a new S4 class. See the section on extending S3 classes below, and the examples.

See Methods for the details of method dispatch and inheritance.

Some S3 classes cannot be represented as an ordinary combination of S4 classes and superclasses, because objects from the S3 class can have a variable set of strings in the class. It is still possible to register such classes as S4 classes, but now the inheritance has to be verified for each object, and you must call `setOldClass` with argument `test=TRUE` once for each superclass.

For example, ordered factors *always* have the S3 class `c("ordered", "factor")`. This is proper behavior, and maps simply into two S4 classes, with `"ordered"` extending `"factor"`.

But objects whose class attribute has `"POSIXt"` as the first string may have either (or neither) of `"POSIXct"` or `"POSIXlt"` as the second string. This behavior can be mapped into S4 classes but now to evaluate `is(x, "POSIXlt")`, for example, requires checking the S3 class attribute on each object. Supplying the `test=TRUE` argument to `setOldClass` causes an explicit test to be included in the class definitions. It's never wrong to have this test, but since it adds significant overhead to methods defined for the inherited classes, you should only supply this argument if it's known that object-specific tests are needed.

The list `.OldClassesList` contains the old-style classes that are defined by the methods package. Each element of the list is a character vector, with multiple strings if inheritance is included. Each element of the list was passed to `setOldClass` when creating the **methods** package; therefore, these classes can be used in `setMethod` calls, with the inheritance as implied by the list.

Extending S3 classes

A call to `setOldClass` creates formal classes corresponding to S3 classes, allows these to be used as slots in other classes or in a signature in `setMethod`, and mimics the S3 inheritance.

In documentation for the initial implementation of S4 classes in , users were warned against defining S4 classes that contained S3 classes, even if those had been registered. The warning was based mainly on two points. 1: The S3 behavior of the objects would fail because the S3 class would not be visible, for example, when S3 methods are dispatched. 2: Because S3 classes have no formal definition, nothing can be asserted in general about the S3 part of an object from such a class. (The warning was repeated as recently as the first reference below.)

Nevertheless, defining S4 classes to contain an S3 class and extend its behavior is attractive in many applications. The alternative is to be stuck with S3 programming, without the flexibility and security of formal class and method definitions.

Beginning with version 2.8.0, provides support for extending registered S3 classes; that is, for new classes defined by a call to `setClass` in which the `contains=` argument includes an S3 class. See the examples below. The support is aimed primarily at providing the S3 class information for all classes that extend class oldClass, in particular by ensuring that all objects from such classes contain the S3 class in a special slot.

There are three different ways to indicate an extension to an existing S3 class: `setOldClass()`, `setClass()` and `setIs()`. In most cases, calling `setOldClass` is the best approach, but the alternatives may be preferred in the special circumstances described below.

Suppose `"A"` is any class extending `"oldClass"`. then

```
setOldClass(c("B", "A"))
```

creates a new class `"B"` whose S3 class concatenates `"B"` with `S3Class("A")`. The new class is a virtual class. If `"A"` was defined with known attribute/slots, then `"B"` has these slots also; therefore, you must believe that the corresponding S3 objects from class `"B"` do indeed have the claimed attributes. Notice that you can supply an S4 definition for the new class to specify additional attributes (as described in the next section.) The first alternative call produces a non-virtual class.

```
setClass("B", contains = "A")
```

This creates a non-virtual class with the same slots and superclasses as class `"A"`. However, class `"B"` is not included in the S3 class slot of the new class, unless you provide it explicitly in the prototype.

```
setClass("B"); setIs("B", "A", .....)
```

This creates a virtual class that extends `"A"`, but does not contain the slots of `"A"`. The additional arguments to `setIs` should provide a coerce and replacement method. In order for the new class to inherit S3 methods, the coerce method must ensure that the class `"A"` object produced has a suitable S3 class. The only likely reason to prefer this third approach is that class `"B"` is not consistent with known attributes in class `"A"`.

Beginning with version 2.9.0 of , objects from a class extending an S3 class will be converted to the corresponding S3 class when being passed to an S3 method defined for that class (that is, for one of the strings in the S3 class attribute). This is intended to ensure, as far as possible, that such methods will work if they work for ordinary S3 objects. See `Classes` for details.

S3 Classes with known attributes

A further specification of an S3 class can be made *if* the class is guaranteed to have some attributes of known class (where as with slots, "known" means that the attribute is an object of a specified class, or a subclass of that class).

In this case, the call to `setOldClass()` can supply an S4 class definition representing the known structure. Since S4 slots are implemented as attributes (largely for just this reason), the know attributes can be specified in the representation of the S4 class. The usual technique will be to create an S4 class with the desired structure, and then supply the class name or definition as the argument `S4Class` to `setOldClass()`.

See the definition of class `"ts"` in the examples below. The call to `setClass` to create the S4 class can use the same class name, as here, so long as the class definition is not sealed. In the example, we define `"ts"` as a vector structure with a numeric slot for `"tsp"`. The validity of this definition relies on an assertion that all the S3 code for this class is consistent with that definition; specifically, that all `"ts"` objects will behave as vector structures and will have a numeric `"tsp"` attribute. We believe this to be true of all the base code in , but as always with S3 classes, no guarantee is possible.

The S4 class definition can have virtual superclasses (as in the `"ts"` case) if the S3 class is asserted to behave consistently with these (in the example, time-series objects are asserted to be consistent with the structure class).

For another example, look at the S4 class definition for `"data.frame"`.

Be warned that failures of the S3 class to live up to its asserted behavior will usually go uncorrected, since S3 classes inherently have no definition, and the resulting invalid S4 objects can cause all sorts of grief. Many S3 classes are not candidates for known slots, either because the presence or class of the attributes are not guaranteed (e.g., `dimnames` in arrays, although these are not even S3 classes),

or because the class uses named components of a list rather than attributes (e.g., "lm"). An attribute that is sometimes missing cannot be represented as a slot, not even by pretending that it is present with class "NULL", because attributes unlike slots can not have value NULL.

One irregularity that is usually tolerated, however, is to optionally add other attributes to those guaranteed to exist (for example, "terms" in "data.frame" objects returned by model.frame). As of version 2.8.0, validity checks by validObject ignore extra attributes; even if this check is tightened in the future, classes extending S3 classes would likely be exempted because extra attributes are so common.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version: see section 10.6 for method selection and section 13.4 for generic functions).

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

setClass, setMethod

Examples

```
require(stats)
setOldClass(c("mlm", "lm"))
setGeneric("dfResidual", function(model)standardGeneric("dfResidual"))
setMethod("dfResidual", "lm", function(model)model$df.residual)

## dfResidual will work on mlm objects as well as lm objects
myData <- data.frame(time = 1:10, y = (1:10)^.5)
myLm <- lm(cbind(y, y^3)  ~ time, myData)

showClass("data.frame")# to see the predefined S4 "oldClass"

## two examples extending S3 class "lm", class "xlm" directly
## and "ylm" indirectly
setClass("xlm", representation(eps = "numeric"), contains = "lm")
setClass("ylm", representation(header = "character"), contains = "xlm")
ym1 = new("ylm", myLm, header = "Example", eps = 0.)
## for more examples, see ?\link{S3Class}.

utils::str(.OldClassesList)



## Examples of S3 classes with guaranteed attributes
## an S3 class "stamped" with a vector and  a "date" attribute
## Here is a generator function and an S3 print method.
## NOTE:  its essential that the generator checks the attribute classes
stamped <- function(x, date = Sys.time()) {
    if(!inherits(date, "POSIXt"))
      stop("bad date argument")
    if(!is.vector(x))
      stop("x must be a vector")
    attr(x, "date") <- date
    class(x) <- "stamped"
    x
```

```
}

print.stamped <- function(x, ...) {
    print(as.vector(x))
    cat("Date: ",  format(attr(x,"date")), "\n")
}

## Now, an S4 class with the same structure:
setClass("stamped4", contains = "vector", representation(date = "POSIXt"))

## We can use the S4 class to register "stamped", with its attributes:
setOldClass("stamped", S4Class = "stamped4")
selectMethod("show", "stamped")
## and then remove "stamped4" to clean up
removeClass("stamped4")

someLetters <- stamped(sample(letters, 10),
                       ISOdatetime(2008, 10, 15, 12, 0, 0))

st <- new("stamped", someLetters)
st
# show() method prints the objects class, then calls the S3 print method.

stopifnot(identical(S3Part(st, TRUE), someLetters))

# creating the S4 object directly from its data part and slots
new("stamped", 1:10, date = ISOdatetime(1976, 5, 5, 15, 10, 0))

## Not run:
## The code in R that defines "ts" as an S4 class
setClass("ts", contains = "structure",
      representation(tsp = "numeric"),
      prototype(NA, tsp = rep(1,3)))
# prototype to be a legal S3 time-series
## and now registers it as an S3 class
    setOldClass("ts", S4Class = "ts", where = envir)

## End(Not run)
```

---

show *Show an Object*

Description

Display the object, by printing, plotting or whatever suits its class. This function exists to be specialized by methods. The default method calls `showDefault`.

Formal methods for `show` will usually be invoked for automatic printing (see the details).

Usage

```
show(object)
```

Arguments

object	Any R object

Details

Objects from an S4 class (a class defined by a call to setClass) will be displayed automatically is if by a call to show. S4 objects that occur as attributes of S3 objects will also be displayed in this form; conversely, S3 objects encountered as slots in S4 objects will be printed using the S3 convention, as if by a call to print.

Methods defined for show will only be inherited by simple inheritance, since otherwise the method would not receive the complete, original object, with misleading results. See the simpleInheritanceOnly argument to setGeneric and the discussion in setIs for the general concept.

Value

show returns an invisible NULL.

See Also

showMethods prints all the methods for one or more functions.

Examples

```
## following the example shown in the setMethod documentation ...
setClass("track",
         representation(x="numeric", y="numeric"))
setClass("trackCurve",
         representation("track", smooth = "numeric"))

t1 <- new("track", x=1:20, y=(1:20)^2)

tc1 <- new("trackCurve", t1)

setMethod("show", "track",
  function(object)print(rbind(x = object@x, y=object@y))
)
## The method will now be used for automatic printing of t1

t1

## Not run:   [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4] [,5] [,6] [,7] [,8] [,9] [,10] [,11] [,12]
x    1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9    10    11    12
y    1    4    9   16   25   36   49   64   81   100   121   144
  [,13] [,14] [,15] [,16] [,17] [,18] [,19] [,20]
x    13    14    15    16    17    18    19    20
y   169   196   225   256   289   324   361   400

## End(Not run)
## and also for tc1, an object of a class that extends "track"
tc1

## Not run:   [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4] [,5] [,6] [,7] [,8] [,9] [,10] [,11] [,12]
x    1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9    10    11    12
y    1    4    9   16   25   36   49   64   81   100   121   144
```

```
  [,13] [,14] [,15] [,16] [,17] [,18] [,19] [,20]
x    13    14    15    16    17    18    19    20
y   169   196   225   256   289   324   361   400

## End(Not run)
```

---

showMethods *Show all the methods for the specified function(s)*

Description

Show a summary of the methods for one or more generic functions, possibly restricted to those involving specified classes.

Usage

```
showMethods(f = character(), where = topenv(parent.frame()),
            classes = NULL, includeDefs = FALSE,
            inherited = !includeDefs,
            showEmpty, printTo = stdout(), fdef)
```

Arguments

f	one or more function names. If omitted, all functions will be shown that match the other arguments. The argument can also be an expression that evaluates to a single generic function, in which case argument fdef is ignored. Providing an expression for the function allows examination of hidden or anonymous functions; see the example for isDiagonal().
where	Where to find the generic function, if not supplied as an argument. When f is missing, or length 0, this also determines which generic functions to examine. If where is supplied, only the generic functions returned by getGenerics(where) are eligible for printing. If where is also missing, all the cached generic functions are considered.
classes	If argument classes is supplied, it is a vector of class names that restricts the displayed results to those methods whose signatures include one or more of those classes.
includeDefs	If includeDefs is TRUE, include the definitions of the individual methods in the printout.
inherited	logical indicating if methods that have been found by inheritance, so far in the session, will be included and marked as inherited. Note that an inherited method will not usually appear until it has been used in this session. See selectMethod if you want to know what method would be dispatched for particular classes of arguments.
showEmpty	logical indicating whether methods with no defined methods matching the other criteria should be shown at all. By default, TRUE if and only if argument f is not missing.
printTo	The connection on which the information will be shown; by default, on standard output.
fdef	Optionally, the generic function definition to use; if missing, one is found, looking in where if that is specified. See also comment in 'Details'.

Details

The name and package of the generic are followed by the list of signatures for which methods are currently defined, according to the criteria determined by the various arguments. Note that the package refers to the source of the generic function. Individual methods for that generic can come from other packages as well.

When more than one generic function is involved, either as specified or because `f` was missing, the functions are found and `showMethods` is recalled for each, including the generic as the argument `fdef`. In complicated situations, this can avoid some anomalous results.

Value

If `printTo` is `FALSE`, the character vector that would have been printed is returned; otherwise the value is the connection or filename, via `invisible`.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`setMethod`, and `GenericFunctions` for other tools involving methods; `selectMethod` will show you the method dispatched for a particular function and signature of classes for the arguments.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Assuming the methods for plot
## are set up as in the example of help(setMethod),
## print (without definitions) the methods that involve class "track":
showMethods("plot", classes = "track")
## Not run:
# Function "plot":
# x = ANY, y = track
# x = track, y = missing
# x = track, y = ANY

require("Matrix")
showMethods("%*%")# many!
    methods(class = "Matrix")# nothing
showMethods(class = "Matrix")# everything
showMethods(Matrix:::isDiagonal) # a non-exported generic

## End(Not run)



not.there <- !any("package:stats4" == search())
if(not.there) library(stats4)
showMethods(classes = "mle")
if(not.there) detach("package:stats4")
```

signature-class *Class "signature" For Method Definitions*

Description

This class represents the mapping of some of the formal arguments of a function onto the corresponding classes. It is used for two slots in the MethodDefinition class.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("signature", functionDef, ...). The functionDef argument, if it is supplied as a function object, defines the formal names. The other arguments define the classes. More typically, the objects are created as side effects of defining methods. Either way, note that the classes are expected to be well defined, usually because the corresponding class definitions exist. See the comment on the package slot.

Slots

.Data: Object of class "character" the class names.

names: Object of class "character" the corresponding argument names.

package: Object of class "character" the names of the packages corresponding to the class names. The combination of class name and package uniquely defines the class. In principle, the same class name could appear in more than one package, in which case the package information is required for the signature to be well defined.

Extends

Class "character", from data part. Class "vector", by class "character".

Methods

initialize signature(object = "signature"): see the discussion of objects from the class, above.

See Also

class MethodDefinition for the use of this class.

slot *The Slots in an Object from a Formal Class*

Description

These functions return or set information about the individual slots in an object.

Usage

```
object@name
object@name <- value

slot(object, name)
slot(object, name, check = TRUE) <- value
.hasSlot(object, name)

slotNames(x)
getSlots(x)
```

Arguments

object	An object from a formally defined class.
name	The name of the slot. The operator takes a fixed name, which can be unquoted if it is syntactically a name in the language. A slot name can be any non-empty string, but if the name is not made up of letters, numbers, and ., it needs to be quoted (by backticks or single or double quotes). In the case of the slot function, name can be any expression that evaluates to a valid slot in the class definition. Generally, the only reason to use the functional form rather than the simpler operator is *because* the slot name has to be computed.
value	A new value for the named slot. The value must be valid for this slot in this object's class.
check	In the replacement version of slot, a flag. If TRUE, check the assigned value for validity as the value of this slot. User's coded should not set this to FALSE in normal use, since the resulting object can be invalid.
x	either the name of a class (as character string), or a class definition. If given an argument that is neither a character string nor a class definition, slotNames (only) uses class(x) instead.

Details

The definition of the class specifies all slots directly and indirectly defined for that class. Each slot has a name and an associated class. Extracting a slot returns an object from that class. Setting a slot first coerces the value to the specified slot and then stores it.

Unlike general attributes, slots are not partially matched, and asking for (or trying to set) a slot with an invalid name for that class generates an error.

The @ extraction operator and slot function themselves do no checking against the class definition, simply matching the name in the object itself. The replacement forms do check (except for slot in the case check=FALSE). So long as slots are set without cheating, the extracted slots will be valid.

Be aware that there are two ways to cheat, both to be avoided but with no guarantees. The obvious way is to assign a slot with check=FALSE. Also, slots in are implemented as attributes, for the sake of some back compatibility. The current implementation does not prevent attributes being assigned, via attr<-, and such assignments are not checked for legitimate slot names.

Note that the "@" operators for extraction and (since 3.0.0) replacement are primitive and actually reside in the **base** package.

The replacement versions of "@" and slot() differ in the computations done to coerce the right side of the assignment to the declared class of the slot. Both verify that the value provided is from a

subclass of the declared slot class. The `slot()` version will go on to call the coerce method if there is one, in effect doing the computation `as(value, slotClass, strict = FALSE)`. The `"@"` version just verifies the relation, leaving any coerce to be done later (e.g., when a relevant method is dispatched).

In most uses the result is equivalent, and the `"@"` version saves an extra function call, but if empirical evidence shows that a conversion is needed, either call `as()` before the replacement or use the replacement version of `slot()`.

Value

The `"@"` operator and the `slot` function extract or replace the formally defined slots for the object.

Functions `slotNames` and `getSlots` return respectively the names of the slots and the classes associated with the slots in the specified class definition. Except for its extended interpretation of `x` (above), `slotNames(x)` is just `names(getSlots(x))`.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`@`, `Classes`, `Methods`, `getClass`, `names`.

Examples

```
setClass("track", representation(x="numeric", y="numeric"))
myTrack <- new("track", x = -4:4, y = exp(-4:4))
slot(myTrack, "x")
slot(myTrack, "y") <- log(slot(myTrack, "y"))
utils::str(myTrack)

getSlots("track") # or
getSlots(getClass("track"))
slotNames(class(myTrack)) # is the same as
slotNames(myTrack)
```

StructureClasses *Classes Corresponding to Basic Structures*

Description

The virtual class `structure` and classes that extend it are formal classes analogous to S language structures such as arrays and time-series.

Usage

```
## The following class names can appear in method signatures,
## as the class in as() and is() expressions, and, except for
## the classes commented as VIRTUAL, in calls to new()

"matrix"
"array"
"ts"

"structure" ## VIRTUAL
```

Objects from the Classes

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new(Class, ...)`, where `Class` is the quoted name of the specific class (e.g., `"matrix"`), and the other arguments, if any, are interpreted as arguments to the corresponding function, e.g., to function `matrix()`. There is no particular advantage over calling those functions directly, unless you are writing software designed to work for multiple classes, perhaps with the class name and the arguments passed in.

Objects created from the classes `"matrix"` and `"array"` are unusual, to put it mildly, and have been for some time. Although they may appear to be objects from these classes, they do not have the internal structure of either an S3 or S4 class object. In particular, they have no `"class"` attribute and are not recognized as objects with classes (that is, both `is.object` and `isS4` will return `FALSE` for such objects). However, methods (both S4 and S3) can be defined for these pseudo-classes and new classes (both S4 and S3) can inherit from them.

That the objects still behave as if they came from the corresponding class (most of the time, anyway) results from special code recognizing such objects being built into the base code of . For most purposes, treating the classes in the usual way will work, fortunately. One consequence of the special treatment is that these two classes*may* be used as the data part of an S4 class; for example, you can get away with `contains = "matrix"` in a call to `setGeneric` to create an S4 class that is a subclass of `"matrix"`. There is no guarantee that everything will work perfectly, but a number of classes have been written in this form successfully.

Note that a class containing `"matrix"` or `"array"` will have a `.Data` slot with that class. This is the only use of `.Data` other than as a pseudo-class indicating the type of the object. In this case the type of the object will be the type of the contained matrix or array. See `Classes` for a general discussion.

The class `"ts"` is basically an S3 class that has been registered with S4, using the `setOldClass` mechanism. Versions of through 2.7.0 treated this class as a pure S4 class, which was in principal a good idea, but in practice did not allow subclasses to be defined and had other intrinsic problems. (For example, setting the `"tsp"` parameters as a slot often fails because the built-in implementation does not allow the slot to be temporarily inconsistent with the length of the data. Also, the S4 class prevented the correct specification of the S3 inheritance for class `"mts"`.)

Time-series objects, in contrast to matrices and arrays, have a valid S3 class, `"ts"`, registered using an S4-style definition (see the documentation for `setOldClass` in the examples section for an abbreviated listing of how this is done. The S3 inheritance of `"mts"` in package **stats** is also registered. These classes, as well as `"matrix"` and `"array"` should be valid in most examples as superclasses for new S4 class definitions.

All of these classes have special S4 methods for `initialize` that accept the same arguments as the basic generator functions, `matrix`, `array`, and `ts`, in so far as possible. The limitation is that a class that has more than one non-virtual superclass must accept objects from that superclass in the call to `new`; therefore, a such a class (what is called a "mixin" in some languages) uses the default method for `initialize`, with no special arguments.

Extends

The specific classes all extend class "structure", directly, and class "vector", by class "structure".

Methods

coerce Methods are defined to coerce arbitrary objects to these classes, by calling the corresponding basic function, for example, `as(x, "matrix")` calls `as.matrix(x)`. If `strict = TRUE` in the call to `as()`, the method goes on to delete all other slots and attributes other than the `dim` and `dimnames`.

Ops Group methods (see, e.g., `S4groupGeneric`) are defined for combinations of structures and vectors (including special cases for array and matrix), implementing the concept of vector structures as in the reference. Essentially, structures combined with vectors retain the structure as long as the resulting object has the same length. Structures combined with other structures remove the structure, since there is no automatic way to determine what should happen to the slots defining the structure.

Note that these methods will be activated when a package is loaded containing a class that inherits from any of the structure classes or class "vector".

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole (for the original vector structures).

See Also

Class nonStructure, which enforces the alternative model, in which all slots are dropped if any math transformation or operation is applied to an object from a class extending one of the basic classes.

Examples

```
showClass("structure")

## explore a bit :
showClass("ts")
(ts0 <- new("ts"))
str(ts0)

showMethods("Ops") # six methods from these classes, but maybe many more
```

---

testInheritedMethods *Test for and Report about Selection of Inherited Methods*

Description

A set of distinct inherited signatures is generated to test inheritance for all the methods of a specified generic function. If method selection is ambiguous for some of these, a summary of the ambiguities is attached to the returned object. This test should be performed by package authors *before* releasing a package.

Usage

```
testInheritedMethods(f, signatures, test = TRUE, virtual = FALSE,
                     groupMethods = TRUE, where = .GlobalEnv)
```

Arguments

f	a generic function or the character string name of one. By default, all currently defined subclasses of all the method signatures for this generic will be examined. The other arguments are mainly options to modify which inheritance patterns will be examined.
signatures	An optional set of subclass signatures to use instead of the relevant subclasses computed by testInheritedMethods. See the Details for how this is done. This argument might be supplied after a call with test = FALSE, to test selection in batches.
test	optional flag to control whether method selection is actually tested. If FALSE, returns just the list of relevant signatures for subclasses, without calling selectMethod for each signature. If there are a very large number of signatures, you may want to collect the full list and then test them in batches.
virtual	should virtual classes be included in the relevant subclasses. Normally not, since only the classes of actual arguments will trigger the inheritance calculation in a call to the generic function. Including virtual classes may be useful if the class has no current non-virtual subclasses but you anticipate your users may define such classes in the future.
groupMethods	should methods for the group generic function be included?
where	the environment in which to look for class definitions. Nearly always, use the default global environment after attaching all the packages with relevant methods and/or class definitions.

Details

The following description applies when the optional arguments are omitted, the usual case. First, the defining signatures for all methods are computed by calls to findMethodSignatures. From these all the known non-virtual subclasses are found for each class that appears in the signature of some method. These subclasses are split into groups according to which class they inherit from, and only one subclass from each group is retained (for each argument in the generic signature). So if a method was defined with class "vector" for some argument, one actual vector class is chosen arbitrarily. The case of "ANY" is dealt with specially, since all classes extend it. A dummy, nonvirtual class, ".Other", is used to correspond to all classes that have no superclasses among those being tested.

All combinations of retained subclasses for the arguments in the generic signature are then computed. Each row of the resulting matrix is a signature to be tested by a call to selectMethod. To collect information on ambiguous selections, testInheritedMethods establishes a calling handler for the special signal "ambiguousMethodSelection", by setting the corresponding option.

Value

An object of class "methodSelectionReport". The details of this class are currently subject to change. It has slots "target", "selected", "candidates", and "note", all referring to the ambiguous cases (and so of length 0 if there were none). These slots are intended to be examined by the programmer to detect and preferably fix ambiguous method selections. The object contains

in addition slots "generic", the name of the generic function, and "allSelections", giving the vector of labels for all the signatures tested.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (Section 10.6 for basics of method selection.)

Chambers, John M. (2009) *Class Inheritance in R* http://statweb.stanford.edu/~jmc4/classInheritance.pdf.

Examples

```
## if no other attached packages have methods for + or its group
## generic functions, this returns a 16 by 2 matrix of selection
## patterns (in R 2.9.0)
testInheritedMethods("+")
```

TraceClasses *Classes Used Internally to Control Tracing*

Description

The classes described here are used by the R function trace to create versions of functions and methods including browser calls, etc., and also to untrace the same objects.

Usage

```
### Objects from the following classes are generated
### by calling trace() on an object from the corresponding
### class without the "WithTrace" in the name.

"functionWithTrace"
"MethodDefinitionWithTrace"
"MethodWithNextWithTrace"
"genericFunctionWithTrace"
"groupGenericFunctionWithTrace"

### the following is a virtual class extended by each of the
### classes above

"traceable"
```

Objects from the Class

Objects will be created from these classes by calls to trace. (There is an initialize method for class "traceable", but you are unlikely to need it directly.)

Slots

.Data: The data part, which will be "function" for class "functionWithTrace", and similarly for the other classes.

original: Object of the original class; e.g., "function" for class "functionWithTrace".

Extends

Each of the classes extends the corresponding untraced class, from the data part; e.g., "functionWithTrace" extends "function". Each of the specific classes extends "traceable", directly, and class "VIRTUAL", by class "traceable".

Methods

The point of the specific classes is that objects generated from them, by function trace(), remain callable or dispatchable, in addition to their new trace information.

See Also

function trace

---

validObject *Test the Validity of an Object*

Description

The validity of object related to its class definition is tested. If the object is valid, TRUE is returned; otherwise, either a vector of strings describing validity failures is returned, or an error is generated (according to whether test is TRUE). Optionally, all slots in the object can also be validated.

The function setValidity sets the validity method of a class (but more normally, this method will be supplied as the validity argument to setClass). The method should be a function of one object that returns TRUE or a description of the non-validity.

Usage

```
validObject(object, test = FALSE, complete = FALSE)

setValidity(Class, method, where = topenv(parent.frame()) )

getValidity(ClassDef)
```

Arguments

object	any object, but not much will happen unless the object's class has a formal definition.
test	logical; if TRUE and validity fails, the function returns a vector of strings describing the problems. If test is FALSE (the default) validity failure generates an error.
complete	logical; if TRUE, validity methods will be applied recursively to any of the slots that have such methods.
Class	the name or class definition of the class whose validity method is to be set.
ClassDef	a class definition object, as from getClassDef.
method	a validity method; that is, either NULL or a function of one argument (object). Like validObject, the function should return TRUE if the object is valid, and one or more descriptive strings if any problems are found. Unlike validObject, it should never generate an error.

where — the modified class definition will be stored in this environment.

Note that validity methods do not have to check validity of superclasses: the logic of `validObject` ensures these tests are done once only. As a consequence, if one validity method wants to use another, it should extract and call the method from the other definition of the other class by calling `getValidity()`: it should *not* call `validObject`.

Details

Validity testing takes place 'bottom up': Optionally, if `complete=TRUE`, the validity of the object's slots, if any, is tested. Then, in all cases, for each of the classes that this class extends (the 'superclasses'), the explicit validity method of that class is called, if one exists. Finally, the validity method of `object`'s class is called, if there is one.

Testing generally stops at the first stage of finding an error, except that all the slots will be examined even if a slot has failed its validity test.

The standard validity test (with `complete=FALSE`) is applied when an object is created via `new` with any optional arguments (without the extra arguments the result is just the class prototype object).

An attempt is made to fix up the definition of a validity method if its argument is not `object`.

Value

`validObject` returns `TRUE` if the object is valid. Otherwise a vector of strings describing problems found, except that if `test` is `FALSE`, validity failure generates an error, with the corresponding strings in the error message.

References

Chambers, John M. (2008) *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R* Springer. (For the R version.)

Chambers, John M. (1998) *Programming with Data* Springer (For the original S4 version.)

See Also

`setClass`; class `classRepresentation`.

Examples

```
setClass("track",
         representation(x="numeric", y = "numeric"))
t1 <- new("track", x=1:10, y=sort(stats::rnorm(10)))
## A valid "track" object has the same number of x, y values
validTrackObject <- function(object) {
    if(length(object@x) == length(object@y)) TRUE
    else paste("Unequal x,y lengths: ", length(object@x), ", ",
               length(object@y), sep="")
}
## assign the function as the validity method for the class
setValidity("track", validTrackObject)
## t1 should be a valid "track" object
validObject(t1)
## Now we do something bad
t2 <- t1
t2@x <- 1:20
## This should generate an error
```

```
## Not run: try(validObject(t2))


setClass("trackCurve",
         representation("track", smooth = "numeric"))

## all superclass validity methods are used when validObject
## is called from initialize() with arguments, so this fails
## Not run: trynew("trackCurve", t2)


setClass("twoTrack", representation(tr1 = "track", tr2 ="track"))

## validity tests are not applied recursively by default,
## so this object is created (invalidly)
tT  <- new("twoTrack", tr2 = t2)

## A stricter test detects the problem
## Not run: try(validObject(tT, complete = TRUE))
```

Chapter 8

The `parallel` package

`parallel-package` *Support for Parallel Computation*

Description

Support for parallel computation, including random-number generation.

Details

This package is under development: a first version was released with 2.14.0.

There is support for multiple RNG streams with the '`"LEcuyer-CMRG"`' RNG: see `nextRNGStream`.

It contains functionality derived from and pretty much equivalent to that contained in packages **multicore** (with some low-level functions renamed and not exported) and **snow** (for socket clusters only, but MPI and NWS clusters generated by **snow** are also supported). This package also provides `makeForkCluster`.

For a complete list of exported functions, use `library(help = "parallel")`.

Author(s)

Brian Ripley, Luke Tierney and Simon Urbanek

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

See Also

Parallel computation involves launching worker processes: functions `psnice` and `pskill` in package **tools** provide means to manage such processes.

clusterApply *Apply Operations using Clusters*

Description

These functions provide several ways to parallelize computations using a cluster.

Usage

```
clusterCall(cl = NULL, fun, ...)
clusterApply(cl = NULL, x, fun, ...)
clusterApplyLB(cl = NULL, x, fun, ...)
clusterEvalQ(cl = NULL, expr)
clusterExport(cl = NULL, varlist, envir = .GlobalEnv)
clusterMap(cl = NULL, fun, ..., MoreArgs = NULL, RECYCLE = TRUE,
           SIMPLIFY = FALSE, USE.NAMES = TRUE,
           .scheduling = c("static", "dynamic"))
clusterSplit(cl = NULL, seq)

parLapply(cl = NULL, X, fun, ...)
parSapply(cl = NULL, X, FUN, ..., simplify = TRUE,
          USE.NAMES = TRUE)
parApply(cl = NULL, X, MARGIN, FUN, ...)
parRapply(cl = NULL, x, FUN, ...)
parCapply(cl = NULL, x, FUN, ...)

parLapplyLB(cl = NULL, X, fun, ...)
parSapplyLB(cl = NULL, X, FUN, ..., simplify = TRUE,
            USE.NAMES = TRUE)
```

Arguments

cl	a cluster object, created by this package or by package **snow**. If NULL, use the registered default cluster.
fun, FUN	function or character string naming a function.
expr	expression to evaluate.
seq	vector to split.
varlist	character vector of names of objects to export.
envir	environment from which t export variables
x	a vector for clusterApply and clusterApplyLB, a matrix for parRapply and parCapply.
...	additional arguments to pass to fun or FUN: beware of partial matching to earlier arguments.
MoreArgs	additional arguments for fun.
RECYCLE	logical; if true shorter arguments are recycled.
X	A vector (atomic or list) for parLapply and parSapply, an array for parApply.
MARGIN	vector specifying the dimensions to use.

simplify, USE.NAMES
: logical; see sapply.

SIMPLIFY
: logical; see mapply.

.scheduling
: should tasks be statically allocated to nodes or dynamic load-balancing used?

Details

clusterCall calls a function fun with identical arguments ... on each node.

clusterEvalQ evaluates a literal expression on each cluster node. It is a parallel version of evalq, and is a convenience function invoking clusterCall.

clusterApply calls fun on the first node with arguments seq[[1]] and ..., on the second node with seq[[2]] and ..., and so on, recycling nodes as needed.

clusterApplyLB is a load balancing version of clusterApply. If the length p of seq is not greater than the number of nodes n, then a job is sent to p nodes. Otherwise the first n jobs are placed in order on the n nodes. When the first job completes, the next job is placed on the node that has become free; this continues until all jobs are complete. Using clusterApplyLB can result in better cluster utilization than using clusterApply, but increased communication can reduce performance. Furthermore, the node that executes a particular job is non-deterministic.

clusterMap is a multi-argument version of clusterApply, analogous to mapply and Map. If RECYCLE is true shorter arguments are recycled (and either none or all must be of length zero); otherwise, the result length is the length of the shortest argument. Nodes are recycled if the length of the result is greater than the number of nodes. (mapply always uses RECYCLE = TRUE, and has argument SIMPLIFY = TRUE. Map always uses RECYCLE = TRUE.)

clusterExport assigns the values on the master process of the variables named in varlist to variables of the same names in the global environment (aka 'workspace') of each node. The environment on the master from which variables are exported defaults to the global environment.

clusterSplit splits seq into a consecutive piece for each cluster and returns the result as a list with length equal to the number of nodes. Currently the pieces are chosen to be close to equal in length: the computation is done on the master.

parLapply, parSapply, and parApply are parallel versions of lapply, sapply and apply. parLapplyLB, parSapplyLB are load-balancing versions, intended for use when applying FUN to different elements of X takes quite variable amounts of time, and either the function is deterministic or reproducible results are not required.

parRapply and parCapply are parallel row and column apply functions for a matrix x; they may be slightly more efficient than parApply but do less post-processing of the result.

Value

For clusterCall, clusterEvalQ and clusterSplit, a list with one element per node.

For clusterApply and clusterApplyLB, a list the same length as seq.

clusterMap follows mapply.

clusterExport returns nothing.

parLapply returns a list the length of X.

parSapply and parApply follow sapply and apply respectively.

parRapply and parCapply always return a vector. If FUN always returns a scalar result this will be of length the number of rows or columns: otherwise it will be the concatenation of the returned values.

An error is signalled on the master if any of the workers produces an error.

Note

These functions are almost identical to those in package **snow**.

Two exceptions: `parLapply` has argument `X` not `x` for consistency with `lapply`, and `parSapply` has been updated to match `sapply`.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney and R Core.

Derived from the **snow** package.

Examples

```
## Use option cl.cores to choose an appropriate cluster size.
cl <- makeCluster(getOption("cl.cores", 2))

clusterApply(cl, 1:2, get("+"), 3)
xx <- 1
clusterExport(cl, "xx")
clusterCall(cl, function(y) xx + y, 2)

## Use clusterMap like an mapply example
clusterMap(cl, function(x, y) seq_len(x) + y,
          c(a =  1, b = 2, c = 3), c(A = 10, B = 0, C = -10))


parSapply(cl, 1:20, get("+"), 3)

## A bootstrapping example, which can be done in many ways:
clusterEvalQ(cl, {
  ## set up each worker.  Could also use clusterExport()
  library(boot)
  cd4.rg <- function(data, mle) MASS::mvrnorm(nrow(data), mle$m, mle$v)
  cd4.mle <- list(m = colMeans(cd4), v = var(cd4))
  NULL
})
res <- clusterEvalQ(cl, boot(cd4, corr, R = 100,
                    sim = "parametric", ran.gen = cd4.rg, mle = cd4.mle))
library(boot)
cd4.boot <- do.call(c, res)
boot.ci(cd4.boot,  type = c("norm", "basic", "perc"),
        conf = 0.9, h = atanh, hinv = tanh)
stopCluster(cl)

## or
library(boot)
run1 <- function(...) {
   library(boot)
   cd4.rg <- function(data, mle) MASS::mvrnorm(nrow(data), mle$m, mle$v)
   cd4.mle <- list(m = colMeans(cd4), v = var(cd4))
   boot(cd4, corr, R = 500, sim = "parametric",
        ran.gen = cd4.rg, mle = cd4.mle)
}
cl <- makeCluster(mc <- getOption("cl.cores", 2))
## to make this reproducible
clusterSetRNGStream(cl, 123)
```

```
cd4.boot <- do.call(c, parLapply(cl, seq_len(mc), run1))
boot.ci(cd4.boot,  type = c("norm", "basic", "perc"),
        conf = 0.9, h = atanh, hinv = tanh)
stopCluster(cl)
```

`detectCores` *Detect the Number of CPU Cores*

Description

Attempt to detect the number of CPU cores on the current host.

Usage

```
detectCores(all.tests = FALSE, logical = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`all.tests`	Logical: if true apply all known tests.
`logical`	Logical: if possible, use the number of physical CPUs/cores (if `FALSE`) or logical CPUs (if `TRUE`).

Details

This attempts to detect the number of CPU cores in the current machine.

It has methods to do so for Linux, OS X, FreeBSD, Solaris, Irix and Windows. `detectCores(TRUE)` could be tried on other Unix-alike systems.

Value

An integer, `NA` if the answer is unknown.

Exactly what this represents is OS-dependent: where possible by default it represents physical cores and not logical (e.g., hyperthreaded) CPUs.

On Windows the default is the number of logical CPUs.

Currently `logical` makes a difference on Sparc Solaris: there `logical = FALSE` returns the number of physical cores and `logical = TRUE` returns the number of available hardware threads. (Some Sparc CPUs which do have multiple cores per CPU, others have multiple threads per core and some have both.) For example, the UltraSparc T2 CPU in the CRAN check server is a single physical CPU with 8 cores, and each core supports 8 hardware threads. So `detectCores(logical = FALSE)` returns 8, and `detectCores(logical = TRUE)` returns 64.

Where virtual machines are in use, one would hope that the result represents the number of CPUs available (or potentially available) to that particular VM.

Note

This is not suitable for use directly for the `mc.cores` argument of `mclapply` nor specifying the number of cores in `makeCluster`. First because it may return `NA`, and second because it does not give the number of *allowed* cores.

Author(s)

Simon Urbanek and Brian Ripley

Examples

```
detectCores()
detectCores(logical = TRUE)
```

---

makeCluster *Create a Parallel Socket Cluster*

Description

Creates a set of copies of running in parallel and communicating over sockets.

Usage

```
makeCluster(spec, type, ...)
makePSOCKcluster(names, ...)
makeForkCluster(nnodes = getOption("mc.cores", 2L), ...)

stopCluster(cl = NULL)

setDefaultCluster(cl = NULL)
```

Arguments

spec	A specification appropriate to the type of cluster.
names	Either a character vector of host names on which to run the worker copies of , or a positive integer (in which case that number of copies is run on 'localhost').
nnodes	The number of nodes to be forked.
type	One of the supported types: see 'Details'.
...	Options to be passed to the function spawning the workers. See 'Details'.
cl	an object of class "cluster".

Details

makeCluster creates a cluster of one of the supported types. The default type, "PSOCK", calls makePSOCKcluster. Type "FORK" calls makeForkCluster. Other types are passed to package **snow**.

makePSOCKcluster is an enhanced version of makeSOCKcluster in package **snow**. It runs Rscript on the specified host(s) to set up a worker process which listens on a socket for expressions to evaluate, and returns the results (as serialized objects).

makeForkCluster is merely a stub on Windows. On Unix-alike platforms it creates the worker process by forking.

The workers are most often running on the same host as the master, when no options need be set.

Several options are supported (mainly for makePSOCKcluster):

`master` The host name of the master, as known to the workers. This may not be the same as it is known to the master, and on private subnets it may be necessary to specify this as a numeric IP address. For example, OS X is likely to detect a machine as '`somename.local`', a name known only to itself.

`port` The port number for the socket connection, default taken from the environment variable `R_PARALLEL_PORT`, then a randomly chosen port in the range `11000:11999`.

`timeout` The timeout in seconds for that port. Default 30 days (and the POSIX standard only requires values up to 31 days to be supported).

`outfile` Where to direct the `stdout` and `stderr` connection output from the workers. `""` indicates no redirection (which may only be useful for workers on the local machine). Defaults to '`/dev/null`' ('`nul:`' on Windows). The other possibility is a file path on the worker's host. Files will be opened in append mode, as all workers log to the same file.

`homogeneous` Logical. Are all the hosts running identical setups, so `Rscript` can be launched using the same path on each? Otherwise `Rscript` has to be in the default path on the workers.

`rscript` The path to `Rscript` on the workers, used if `homogeneous` is true. Defaults to the full path on the master.

`rscript_args` Character vector of additional arguments for `Rscript` such as '`--no-environ`'.

`renice` A numerical 'niceness' to set for the worker processes, e.g. `15` for a low priority. OS-dependent: see `psnice` for details.

`rshcmd` The command to be run on the master to launch a process on another host. Defaults to `ssh`.

`user` The user name to be used when communicating with another host.

`manual` Logical. If true the workers will need to be run manually.

`methods` Logical. If true (default) the workers will load the **methods** package: not loading it saves ca 30% of the startup CPU time of the cluster.

`useXDR` Logical. If true (default) serialization will use XDR: where large amounts of data are to be transferred and all the nodes are little-endian, communication may be substantially faster if this is set to false.

Function `makeForkCluster` creates a socket cluster by forking (and hence is not available on Windows). It supports options `port`, `timeout` and `outfile`, and always uses `useXDR = FALSE`.

It is good practice to shut down the workers by calling `stopCluster`: however the workers will terminate themselves once the socket on which they are listening for commands becomes unavailable, which it should if the master session is completed (or its process dies).

Function `setDefaultCluster` registers a cluster as the default one for the current session. Using `setDefaultCluster(NULL)` removes the registered cluster, as does stopping that cluster.

Value

An object of class `c("SOCKcluster", "cluster")`.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney and R Core.

Derived from the **snow** package.

`mcaffinity` *Get or Set CPU Affinity Mask of the Current Process*

Description

`mcaffinity` retrieves or sets the CPU affinity mask of the current process, i.e., the set of CPUs the process is allowed to be run on. (CPU here means logical CPU which can be CPU, core or hyperthread unit.)

Usage

```
mcaffinity(affinity = NULL)
```

Arguments

`affinity`	specification of the CPUs to lock this process to (numeric vector) or `NULL` if no change is requested

Details

`mcaffinity` can be used to obtain (`affinity = NULL`) or set the CPU affinity mask of the current process. The affinity mask is a list of integer CPU identifiers (starting from 1) that this process is allowed to run on. Not all systems provide user access to the process CPU affinity, in cases where no support is present at all `mcaffinity()` will return `NULL`. Some systems may take into account only the number of CPUs present in the mask.

Typically, it is legal to specify larger set than the number of logical CPUs (but at most as many as the OS can handle) and the system will return back the actually present set.

Value

`NULL` if CPU affinity is not supported by the system or an integer vector with the set of CPUs in the active affinity mask for this process (this may be different than `affinity`).

Author(s)

Simon Urbanek.

See Also

`mcparallel`

mcchildren *Low-level Functions for Management of Forked Processes*

Description

These are low-level support functions for the forking approach.

They are not available on Windows, and not exported from the namespace.

Usage

```
children(select)
readChild(child)
readChildren(timeout = 0)
selectChildren(children = NULL, timeout = 0)
sendChildStdin(child, what)
sendMaster(what)

mckill(process, signal = 2L)
```

Arguments

select	if omitted, all active children are returned, otherwise select should be a list of processes and only those from the list that are active will be returned.
child	child process (object of the class "childProcess") or a process ID (pid). See also 'Details'.
timeout	timeout (in seconds, fractions supported) to wait for a response before giving up.
children	list of child processes or a single child process object or a vector of process IDs or NULL. If NULL behaves as if all currently known children were supplied.
what	For sendChildStdin: Character or raw vector. In the former case elements are collapsed using the newline character. (But no trailing newline is added at the end!) For sendMaster: Data to send to the master process. If what is not a raw vector, it will be serialized into a raw vector. Do NOT send an empty raw vector – that is reserved for internal use.
process	process (object of the class process) or a process ID (pid)
signal	integer: signal to send. Values of 2 (SIGINT), 9 (SIGKILL) and 15 (SIGTERM) are pretty much portable, but for maximal portability use tools::SIGTERM and so on.

Details

children returns currently active children.

readChild reads data from a given child process.

selectChildren checks children for available data.

readChildren checks all children for available data and reads from the first child that has available data.

`sendChildStdin` sends a string (or data) to one or more child's standard input. Note that if the master session was interactive, it will also be echoed on the standard output of the master process (unless disabled). The function is vector-compatible, so you can specify `child` as a list or a vector of process IDs.

`sendMaster` sends data from the child to the master process.

`mckill` sends a signal to a child process: it is equivalent to `pskill` in package **tools**.

Value

`children` returns a (possibly empty) list of objects of class `"process"`, the process ID.

`readChild` and `readChildren` return a raw vector with a `"pid"` attribute if data were available, an integer vector of length one with the process ID if a child terminated or `NULL` if the child no longer exists (no children at all for `readChildren`).

`selectChildren` returns `TRUE` is the timeout was reached, `FALSE` if an error occurred (e.g., if the master process was interrupted) or an integer vector of process IDs with children that have data available, or `NULL` if there are no children.

`sendChildStdin` returns a vector of `TRUE` values (one for each member of `child`) or throws an error.

`sendMaster` returns `TRUE` or throws an error.

`mckill` returns `TRUE`.

Warning

This is a very low-level API for expert use only.

Author(s)

Simon Urbanek and R Core.

Derived from the **multicore** package.

See Also

`mcfork`, `sendMaster`, `mcparallel`

Examples

```
## Not run:
p  <- mcparallel(scan(n = 1, quiet = TRUE))
sendChildStdin(p, "17.4\n")
mccollect(p)[[1]]

## End(Not run)
```

mcfork *Fork a Copy of the Current R Process*

Description

These are low-level functions, not available on Windows, and not exported from the namespace.

`mcfork` creates a new child process as a copy of the current process.

`mcexit` closes the current child process, informing the master process as necessary.

Usage

```
mcfork(estranged = FALSE)

mcexit(exit.code = 0L, send = NULL)
```

Arguments

`estranged`	logical, if `TRUE` then the new process has no ties to the parent process, will not show in the list of children and will not be killed on exit.
`exit.code`	process exit code. By convention `0L` signifies a clean exit, `1L` an error.
`send`	if not `NULL` send this data before exiting (equivalent to using `sendMaster`).

Details

The `mcfork` function provides an interface to the `fork` system call. In addition it sets up a pipe between the master and child process that can be used to send data from the child process to the master (see `sendMaster`) and child's '`stdin`' is re-mapped to another pipe held by the master process (see `sendChildStdin`).

If you are not familiar with the `fork` system call, do not use this function directly as it leads to very complex inter-process interactions amongst the processes involved.

In a nutshell `fork` spawns a copy (child) of the current process, that can work in parallel to the master (parent) process. At the point of forking both processes share exactly the same state including the workspace, global options, loaded packages etc. Forking is relatively cheap in modern operating systems and no real copy of the used memory is created, instead both processes share the same memory and only modified parts are copied. This makes `mcfork` an ideal tool for parallel processing since there is no need to setup the parallel working environment, data and code is shared automatically from the start.

`mcexit` is to be run in the child process. It sends `send` to the master (unless `NULL`) and then shuts down the child process. The child can also be shut down by sending it the signal `SIGUSR1`, as is done by the unexported function `parallel:::rmChild`.

Value

`mcfork` returns an object of the class `"childProcess"` to the master and of class `"masterProcess"` to the child: both the classes inherit from class `"process"`. If `estranged` is set to `TRUE` then the child process will be of the class `"estrangedProcess"` and cannot communicate with the master process nor will it show up on the list of children. These are lists with components `pid` (the process id of the *other* process) and a vector `fd` of the two file descriptor numbers for ends in the current process of the inter-process pipes.

`mcexit` never returns.

GUI/embedded environments

It is *strongly discouraged* to use `mcfork` and the higher-level functions which rely on it (e.g., `mcparallel`, `mclapply` and `pvec`) in GUI or embedded environments, because it leads to several processes sharing the same GUI which will likely cause chaos (and possibly crashes). Child processes should never use on-screen graphics devices. Some precautions have been taken to make this usable in `R.app` on OS X, but users of third-party front-ends should consult their documentation.

This can also apply to other connections (e.g., to an X server) created before forking, and to files opened by e.g. graphics devices.

Note that **tcltk** counts as a GUI for these purposes since `Tcl` runs an event loop. That event loop is inhibited in a child process but there could still be problems with Tk graphical connections.

Warning

This is a very low-level API for expert use only.

Author(s)

Simon Urbanek and R Core.

Derived from the **multicore** package.

See Also

`mcparallel`, `sendMaster`

Examples

```
## This will work when run as an example, but not when pasted in.
p <- parallel:::mcfork()
if (inherits(p, "masterProcess")) {
    cat("Im a child! ", Sys.getpid(), "\n")
    parallel:::mcexit(,"I was a child")
}
cat("Im the master\n")
unserialize(parallel:::readChildren(1.5))
```

`mclapply` *Parallel Versions of* `lapply` *and* `mapply` *using Forking*

Description

`mclapply` is a parallelized version of `lapply`, it returns a list of the same length as `X`, each element of which is the result of applying `FUN` to the corresponding element of `X`.

It relies on forking and hence is not available on Windows unless `mc.cores = 1`.

`mcmapply` is a parallelized version of `mapply`, and `mcMap` corresponds to `Map`.

Usage

```
mclapply(X, FUN, ...,
         mc.preschedule = TRUE, mc.set.seed = TRUE,
         mc.silent = FALSE, mc.cores = getOption("mc.cores", 2L),
         mc.cleanup = TRUE, mc.allow.recursive = TRUE)

mcmapply(FUN, ...,
         MoreArgs = NULL, SIMPLIFY = TRUE, USE.NAMES = TRUE,
         mc.preschedule = TRUE, mc.set.seed = TRUE,
         mc.silent = FALSE, mc.cores = getOption("mc.cores", 2L),
         mc.cleanup = TRUE)

mcMap(f, ...)
```

Arguments

X	a vector (atomic or list) or an expressions vector. Other objects (including classed objects) will be coerced by as.list.
FUN	the function to be applied to (mclapply) each element of X or (mcmapply) in parallel to ....
f	the function to be applied in parallel to ....
...	For mclapply, optional arguments to FUN. For mcmapply and mcMap, vector or list inputs: see mapply.
MoreArgs, SIMPLIFY, USE.NAMES	see mapply.
mc.preschedule	if set to TRUE then the computation is first divided to (at most) as many jobs are there are cores and then the jobs are started, each job possibly covering more than one value. If set to FALSE then one job is forked for each value of X. The former is better for short computations or large number of values in X, the latter is better for jobs that have high variance of completion time and not too many values of X compared to mc.cores.
mc.set.seed	See mcparallel.
mc.silent	if set to TRUE then all output on 'stdout' will be suppressed for all parallel processes forked ('stderr' is not affected).
mc.cores	The number of cores to use, i.e. at most how many child processes will be run simultaneously. The option is initialized from environment variable MC_CORES if set. Must be at least one, and parallelization requires at least two cores.
mc.cleanup	if set to TRUE then all children that have been forked by this function will be killed (by sending SIGTERM) before this function returns. Under normal circumstances mclapply waits for the children to deliver results, so this option usually has only effect when mclapply is interrupted. If set to FALSE then child processes are collected, but not forcefully terminated. As a special case this argument can be set to the number of the signal that should be used to kill the children instead of SIGTERM.
mc.allow.recursive	Unless true, calling mclapply in a child process will use the child and not fork again.

Details

mclapply is a parallelized version of lapply, provided mc.cores > 1: for mc.cores == 1 it simply calls lapply.

By default (mc.preschedule = TRUE) the input X is split into as many parts as there are cores (currently the values are spread across the cores sequentially, i.e. first value to core 1, second to core 2, ... (core + 1)-th value to core 1 etc.) and then one process is forked to each core and the results are collected.

Without prescheduling, a separate job is forked for each value of X. To ensure that no more than mc.cores jobs are running at once, once that number has been forked the master process waits for a child to complete before the next fork.

Due to the parallel nature of the execution random numbers are not sequential (in the random number sequence) as they would be when using lapply. They are sequential for each forked process, but not all jobs as a whole. See mcparallel or the package's vignette for ways to make the results reproducible with mc.preschedule = TRUE.

Note: the number of file descriptors (and processes) is usually limited by the operating system, so you may have trouble using more than 100 cores or so (see ulimit -n or similar in your OS documentation) unless you raise the limit of permissible open file descriptors (fork will fail with error "unable to create a pipe").

Value

For mclapply, a list of the same length as X and named by X.

For mcmapply, a list, vector or array: see mapply.

For mcMap, a list.

Each forked process runs its job inside try(..., silent = TRUE) so if errors occur they will be stored as class "try-error" objects in the return value and a warning will be given. Note that the job will typically involve more than one value of X and hence a "try-error" object will be returned for all the values involved in the failure, even if not all of them failed.

Warning

It is *strongly discouraged* to use these functions in GUI or embedded environments, because it leads to several processes sharing the same GUI which will likely cause chaos (and possibly crashes). Child processes should never use on-screen graphics devices.

Some precautions have been taken to make this usable in R.app on OS X, but users of third-party front-ends should consult their documentation.

Note that **tcltk** counts as a GUI for these purposes since Tcl runs an event loop. That event loop is inhibited in a child process but there could still be problems with Tk graphical connections.

Author(s)

Simon Urbanek and R Core.

Derived from the **multicore** package.

See Also

mcparallel, pvec, parLapply, clusterMap.

simplify2array for results like sapply.

Examples

```
simplify2array(mclapply(rep(4, 5), rnorm))
# use the same random numbers for all values
set.seed(1)
simplify2array(mclapply(rep(4, 5), rnorm, mc.preschedule = FALSE,
                mc.set.seed = FALSE))

## Contrast this with the examples for clusterCall
library(boot)
cd4.rg <- function(data, mle) MASS::mvrnorm(nrow(data), mle$m, mle$v)
cd4.mle <- list(m = colMeans(cd4), v = var(cd4))
mc <- getOption("mc.cores", 2)
run1 <- function(...) boot(cd4, corr, R = 500, sim = "parametric",
                           ran.gen = cd4.rg, mle = cd4.mle)
## To make this reproducible:
set.seed(123, "LEcuyer")
res <- mclapply(seq_len(mc), run1)
cd4.boot <- do.call(c, res)
boot.ci(cd4.boot,  type = c("norm", "basic", "perc"),
        conf = 0.9, h = atanh, hinv = tanh)
```

`mcparallel` *Evaluate an Expression Asynchronously in a Separate Process*

Description

These functions are based on forking and so are not available on Windows.

`mcparallel` starts a parallel process which evaluates the given expression.

`mccollect` collects results from one or more parallel processes.

Usage

```
mcparallel(expr, name, mc.set.seed = TRUE, silent = FALSE,
           mc.affinity = NULL, mc.interactive = FALSE,
   detached = FALSE)

mccollect(jobs, wait = TRUE, timeout = 0, intermediate = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`expr`	expression to evaluate (do *not* use any on-screen devices or GUI elements in this code).
`name`	an optional name (character vector of length one) that can be associated with the job.
`mc.set.seed`	logical: see section 'Random numbers'.
`silent`	if set to `TRUE` then all output on stdout will be suppressed (stderr is not affected).
`mc.affinity`	either a numeric vector specifying CPUs to restrict the child process to (1-based) or `NULL` to not modify the CPU affinity
`mc.interactive`	logical, if `TRUE` or `FALSE` then the child process will be set as interactive or non-interactive respectively. If `NA` then the child process will inherit the interactive flag from the parent.

detached	logical, if TRUE then the job is detached from the current session and cannot deliver any results back - it is used for the code side-effect only.
jobs	list of jobs (or a single job) to collect results for. Alternatively jobs can also be an integer vector of process IDs. If omitted collect will wait for all currently existing children.
wait	if set to FALSE it checks for any results that are available within timeout seconds from now, otherwise it waits for all specified jobs to finish.
timeout	timeout (in seconds) to check for job results – applies only if wait is FALSE.
intermediate	FALSE or a function which will be called while collect waits for results. The function will be called with one parameter which is the list of results received so far.

Details

mcparallel evaluates the expr expression in parallel to the current process. Everything is shared read-only (or in fact copy-on-write) between the parallel process and the current process, i.e. no side-effects of the expression affect the main process. The result of the parallel execution can be collected using mccollect function.

mccollect function collects any available results from parallel jobs (or in fact any child process). If wait is TRUE then collect waits for all specified jobs to finish before returning a list containing the last reported result for each job. If wait is FALSE then mccollect merely checks for any results available at the moment and will not wait for jobs to finish. If jobs is specified, jobs not listed there will not be affected or acted upon.

Note: If expr uses low-level multicore functions such as sendMaster a single job can deliver results multiple times and it is the responsibility of the user to interpret them correctly. mccollect will return NULL for a terminating job that has sent its results already after which the job is no longer available.

The mc.affinity parameter can be used to try to restrict the child process to specific CPUs. The availability and the extent of this feature is system-dependent (e.g., some systems will only consider the CPU count, others will ignore it completely).

Value

mcparallel returns an object of the class "parallelJob" which inherits from "childProcess" (see the 'Value' section of the help for mcfork). If argument name was supplied this will have an additional component name.

mccollect returns any results that are available in a list. The results will have the same order as the specified jobs. If there are multiple jobs and a job has a name it will be used to name the result, otherwise its process ID will be used. If none of the specified children are still running, it returns NULL.

Random numbers

If mc.set.seed = FALSE, the child process has the same initial random number generator (RNG) state as the current session. If the RNG has been used (or .Random.seed was restored from a saved workspace), the child will start drawing random numbers at the same point as the current session. If the RNG has not yet been used, the child will set a seed based on the time and process ID when it first uses the RNG: this is pretty much guaranteed to give a different random-number stream from the current session and any other child process.

The behaviour with mc.set.seed = TRUE is different only if RNGkind("LEcuyer-CMRG") has been selected. Then each time a child is forked it is given the next stream (see nextRNGStream). So if you

select that generator, set a seed and call `mc.reset.stream` just before the first use of `mcparallel` the results of simulations will be reproducible provided the same tasks are given to the first, second, ... forked process.

Note

Package **multicore** also exported functions `collect` and `parallel`. These names are easily masked (for example package **lattice** also has a function `parallel`) and they are not supplied in this package.

Author(s)

Simon Urbanek and R Core.

Derived from the **multicore** package (but with different handling of the RNG stream).

See Also

`pvec`, `mclapply`

Examples

```
p <- mcparallel(1:10)
q <- mcparallel(1:20)
# wait for both jobs to finish and collect all results
res <- mccollect(list(p, q))

p <- mcparallel(1:10)
mccollect(p, wait = FALSE, 10) # will retrieve the result (since its fast)
mccollect(p, wait = FALSE)     # will signal the job as terminating
mccollect(p, wait = FALSE)     # there is no longer such a job


# a naive parallel lapply can be created using mcparallel alone:
jobs <- lapply(1:10, function(x) mcparallel(rnorm(x), name = x))
mccollect(jobs)
```

---

pvec *Parallelize a Vector Map Function using Forking*

Description

`pvec` parellelizes the execution of a function on vector elements by splitting the vector and submitting each part to one core. The function must be a vectorized map, i.e. it takes a vector input and creates a vector output of exactly the same length as the input which doesn't depend on the partition of the vector.

It relies on forking and hence is not available on Windows unless `mc.cores = 1`.

Usage

```
pvec(v, FUN, ..., mc.set.seed = TRUE, mc.silent = FALSE,
     mc.cores = getOption("mc.cores", 2L), mc.cleanup = TRUE)
```

Arguments

v	vector to operate on
FUN	function to call on each part of the vector
...	any further arguments passed to FUN after the vector
mc.set.seed	See mcparallel.
mc.silent	if set to TRUE then all output on 'stdout' will be suppressed for all parallel processes forked ('stderr' is not affected).
mc.cores	The number of cores to use, i.e. at most how many child processes will be run simultaneously. Must be at least one, and at least two for parallel operation. The option is initialized from environment variable MC_CORES if set.
mc.cleanup	See the description of this argument in mclapply.

Details

pvec parallelizes FUN(x, ...) where FUN is a function that returns a vector of the same length as x. FUN must also be pure (i.e., without side-effects) since side-effects are not collected from the parallel processes. The vector is split into nearly identically sized subvectors on which FUN is run. Although it is in principle possible to use functions that are not necessarily maps, the interpretation would be case-specific as the splitting is in theory arbitrary (a warning is given in such cases).

The major difference between pvec and mclapply is that mclapply will run FUN on each element separately whereas pvec assumes that c(FUN(x[1]), FUN(x[2])) is equivalent to FUN(x[1:2]) and thus will split into as many calls to FUN as there are cores (or elements, if fewer), each handling a subset vector. This makes it more efficient than mclapply but requires the above assumption on FUN.

If mc.cores == 1 this evaluates FUN(v, ...) in the current process.

Value

The result of the computation – in a successful case it should be of the same length as v. If an error occurred or the function was not a map the result may be shorter or longer, and a warning is given.

Note

Due to the nature of the parallelization, error handling does not follow the usual rules since errors will be returned as strings and results from killed child processes will show up simply as non-existent data. Therefore it is the responsibility of the user to check the length of the result to make sure it is of the correct size. pvec raises a warning if that is the case since it does not know whether such an outcome is intentional or not.

See mcfork for the inadvisability of using this with GUI front-ends.

Author(s)

Simon Urbanek and R Core.

Derived from the **multicore** package.

See Also

mcparallel, mclapply, parLapply, clusterMap.

Examples

```
x <- pvec(1:1000, sqrt)
stopifnot(all(x == sqrt(1:1000)))


# One use is to convert date strings to unix time in large datasets
# as that is a relatively slow operation.
# So lets get some random dates first
# (A small test only with 2 cores: set options("mc.cores")
# and increase N for a larger-scale test.)
N <- 1e5
dates <- sprintf(%04d-%02d-%02d, as.integer(2000+rnorm(N)),
                 as.integer(runif(N, 1, 12)), as.integer(runif(N, 1, 28)))

system.time(a <- as.POSIXct(dates))

# But specifying the format is faster
system.time(a <- as.POSIXct(dates, format = "%Y-%m-%d"))

# pvec ought to be faster, but system overhead can be high
system.time(b <- pvec(dates, as.POSIXct, format = "%Y-%m-%d"))
stopifnot(all(a == b))

# using mclapply for this would much slower because each value
# will require a separate call to as.POSIXct()
# as lapply(dates, as.POSIXct) does
system.time(c <- unlist(mclapply(dates, as.POSIXct,  format = "%Y-%m-%d")))
stopifnot(all(a == c))
```

RNGstreams *Implementation of Pierre L'Ecuyer's RngStreams*

Description

This is an re-implementation of Pierre L'Ecuyer's 'RngStreams' multiple streams of pseudo-random numbers.

Usage

```
nextRNGStream(seed)
nextRNGSubStream(seed)

clusterSetRNGStream(cl = NULL, iseed)
mc.reset.stream()
```

Arguments

seed	An integer vector of length 7 as given by .Random.seed when the '"LEcuyer-CMRG"' RNG is in use. See RNG for the valid values.
cl	A cluster from this package or package **snow**, or (if NULL) the registered cluster.
iseed	An integer to be supplied to set.seed, or NULL not to set reproducible seeds.

Details

The 'RngStream' interface works with (potentially) multiple streams of pseudo-random numbers: this is particularly suitable for working with parallel computations since each task can be assigned a separate RNG stream.

This uses as its underlying generator `RNGkind("LEcuyer-CMRG")`, of L'Ecuyer (1999), which has a seed vector of 6 (signed) integers and a period of around 2^{191}. Each 'stream' is a subsequence of the period of length 2^{127} which is in turn divided into 'substreams' of length 2^{76}.

The idea of L'Ecuyer *et al* (2002) is to use a separate stream for each of the parallel computations (which ensures that the random numbers generated never get into to sync) and the parallel computations can themselves use substreams if required. The original interface stores the original seed of the first stream, the original seed of the current stream and the current seed: this could be implemented in , but it is as easy to work by saving the relevant values of `.Random.seed`: see the examples.

`clusterSetRNGStream` selects the `"LEcuyer-CMRG"` RNG and then distributes streams to the members of a cluster, optionally setting the seed of the streams by `set.seed(iseed)` (otherwise they are set from the current seed of the master process: after selecting the L'Ecuyer generator).

Calling `mc.reset.stream()` after setting the L'Ecuyer random number generator and seed makes runs from `mcparallel(mc.set.seed = TRUE)` reproducible. This is done internally in `mclapply` and `pvec`. (Note that it does not set the seed in the master process, so does not affect the fallback-to-serial versions of these functions.)

Value

For `nextRNGStream` and `nextRNGSubStream`, a value which can be assigned to `.Random.seed`.

Note

Interfaces to L'Ecuyer's C code are available in CRAN packages **rlecuyer** and **rstream**.

Author(s)

Brian Ripley

References

L'Ecuyer, P. (1999) Good parameters and implementations for combined multiple recursive random number generators. *Operations Research* **47**, 159–164.

L'Ecuyer, P., Simard, R., Chen, E. J. and Kelton, W. D. (2002) An object-oriented random-number package with many long streams and substreams. *Operations Research* **50** 1073–5.

See Also

`RNG` for fuller details of 's built-in random number generators.

The vignette for package **parallel**.

Examples

```
RNGkind("LEcuyer-CMRG")
set.seed(123)
(s <- .Random.seed)
## do some work involving random numbers.
nextRNGStream(s)
nextRNGSubStream(s)
```

splitIndices *Divide Tasks for Distribution in a Cluster*

Description

This divides up `1:nx` into `ncl` lists of approximately equal size, as a way to allocate tasks to nodes in a cluster.

It is mainly for internal use, but some package authors have found it useful.

Usage

```
splitIndices(nx, ncl)
```

Arguments

`nx`	Number of tasks.
`ncl`	Number of cluster nodes.

Value

A list of length `ncl`, each element being an integer vector.

Examples

```
splitIndices(20, 3)
```

Chapter 9

The splines package

---

splines-package *Regression Spline Functions and Classes*

Description

Regression spline functions and classes.

Details

This package provides functions for working with regression splines using the B-spline basis, bs, and the natural cubic spline basis, ns.

For a complete list of functions, use library(help = "splines").

Author(s)

Douglas M. Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu> and William N. Venables <Bill.Venables@csiro.au>

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

---

asVector *Coerce an Object to a Vector*

Description

This is a generic function. Methods for this function coerce objects of given classes to vectors.

Usage

```
asVector(object)
```

Arguments

object	An object.

Details

Methods for vector coercion in new classes must be created for the `asVector` generic instead of `as.vector`. The `as.vector` function is internal and not easily extended. Currently the only class with an `asVector` method is the `xyVector` class.

Value

a vector

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

See Also

`xyVector`

Examples

```
require(stats)
ispl <- interpSpline( weight ~ height,  women )
pred <- predict(ispl)
class(pred)
utils::str(pred)
asVector(pred)
```

---

backSpline *Monotone Inverse Spline*

Description

Create a monotone inverse of a monotone natural spline.

Usage

```
backSpline(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object that inherits from class `nbSpline` or `npolySpline`. That is, the object must represent a natural interpolation spline but it can be either in the B-spline representation or the piecewise polynomial one. The spline is checked to see if it represents a monotone function.

Value

An object of class `polySpline` that contains the piecewise polynomial representation of a function that has the appropriate values and derivatives at the knot positions to be an inverse of the spline represented by `object`. Technically this object is not a spline because the second derivative is not constrained to be continuous at the knot positions. However, it is often a much better approximation to the inverse than fitting an interpolation spline to the y/x pairs.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

See Also

interpSpline

Examples

```
require(graphics)
ispl <- interpSpline( women$height, women$weight )
bspl <- backSpline( ispl )
plot( bspl )                    # plots over the range of the knots
points( women$weight, women$height )
```

---

bs *B-Spline Basis for Polynomial Splines*

Description

Generate the B-spline basis matrix for a polynomial spline.

Usage

```
bs(x, df = NULL, knots = NULL, degree = 3, intercept = FALSE,
   Boundary.knots = range(x))
```

Arguments

x	the predictor variable. Missing values are allowed.
df	degrees of freedom; one can specify df rather than knots; bs() then chooses df-degree (minus one if there is an intercept) knots at suitable quantiles of x (which will ignore missing values). The default, NULL, corresponds to *no* inner knots, i.e., degree - intercept.
knots	the *internal* breakpoints that define the spline. The default is NULL, which results in a basis for ordinary polynomial regression. Typical values are the mean or median for one knot, quantiles for more knots. See also Boundary.knots.
degree	degree of the piecewise polynomial—default is 3 for cubic splines.
intercept	if TRUE, an intercept is included in the basis; default is FALSE.
Boundary.knots	boundary points at which to anchor the B-spline basis (default the range of the data). If both knots and Boundary.knots are supplied, the basis parameters do not depend on x. Data can extend beyond Boundary.knots.

Details

bs is based on the function spline.des. It generates a basis matrix for representing the family of piecewise polynomials with the specified interior knots and degree, evaluated at the values of x. A primary use is in modeling formulas to directly specify a piecewise polynomial term in a model.

Value

A matrix of dimension `c(length(x), df)`, where either `df` was supplied or if `knots` were supplied, `df = length(knots) + degree` plus one if there is an intercept. Attributes are returned that correspond to the arguments to `bs`, and explicitly give the `knots`, `Boundary.knots` etc for use by `predict.bs()`.

References

Hastie, T. J. (1992) Generalized additive models. Chapter 7 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`ns`, `poly`, `smooth.spline`, `predict.bs`, `SafePrediction`

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
bs(women$height, df = 5)
summary(fm1 <- lm(weight ~ bs(height, df = 5), data = women))

## example of safe prediction
plot(women, xlab = "Height (in)", ylab = "Weight (lb)")
ht <- seq(57, 73, length.out = 200)
lines(ht, predict(fm1, data.frame(height = ht)))
```

---

interpSpline *Create an Interpolation Spline*

Description

Create an interpolation spline, either from `x` and `y` vectors, or from a formula/data.frame combination.

Usage

```
interpSpline(obj1, obj2, bSpline = FALSE, period = NULL,
             na.action = na.fail)
```

Arguments

`obj1`	Either a numeric vector of `x` values or a formula.
`obj2`	If `obj1` is numeric this should be a numeric vector of the same length. If `obj1` is a formula this can be an optional data frame in which to evaluate the names in the formula.
`bSpline`	If `TRUE` the b-spline representation is returned, otherwise the piecewise polynomial representation is returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`period`	An optional positive numeric value giving a period for a periodic interpolation spline.
`na.action`	a optional function which indicates what should happen when the data contain `NA`s. The default action (`na.omit`) is to omit any incomplete observations. The alternative action `na.fail` causes `interpSpline` to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.

Value

An object that inherits from class `spline`. The object can be in the B-spline representation, in which case it will be of class `nbSpline` for natural B-spline, or in the piecewise polynomial representation, in which case it will be of class `npolySpline`.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

See Also

`splineKnots`, `splineOrder`, `periodicSpline`.

Examples

```
require(graphics); require(stats)
ispl <- interpSpline( women$height, women$weight )
ispl2 <- interpSpline( weight ~ height,  women )
# ispl and ispl2 should be the same
plot( predict( ispl, seq( 55, 75, length.out = 51 ) ), type = "l" )
points( women$height, women$weight )
plot( ispl )    # plots over the range of the knots
points( women$height, women$weight )
splineKnots( ispl )
```

---

ns *Generate a Basis Matrix for Natural Cubic Splines*

Description

Generate the B-spline basis matrix for a natural cubic spline.

Usage

```
ns(x, df = NULL, knots = NULL, intercept = FALSE,
   Boundary.knots = range(x))
```

Arguments

`x`	the predictor variable. Missing values are allowed.
`df`	degrees of freedom. One can supply `df` rather than knots; `ns()` then chooses `df - 1 - intercept` knots at suitably chosen quantiles of `x` (which will ignore missing values). The default, `df = 1`, corresponds to *no* knots.
`knots`	breakpoints that define the spline. The default is no knots; together with the natural boundary conditions this results in a basis for linear regression on `x`. Typical values are the mean or median for one knot, quantiles for more knots. See also `Boundary.knots`.
`intercept`	if `TRUE`, an intercept is included in the basis; default is `FALSE`.
`Boundary.knots`	boundary points at which to impose the natural boundary conditions and anchor the B-spline basis (default the range of the data). If both `knots` and `Boundary.knots` are supplied, the basis parameters do not depend on `x`. Data can extend beyond `Boundary.knots`

Details

ns is based on the function spline.des. It generates a basis matrix for representing the family of piecewise-cubic splines with the specified sequence of interior knots, and the natural boundary conditions. These enforce the constraint that the function is linear beyond the boundary knots, which can either be supplied or default to the extremes of the data.

A primary use is in modeling formula to directly specify a natural spline term in a model: see the examples.

Value

A matrix of dimension length(x) * df where either df was supplied or if knots were supplied, df = length(knots) + 1 + intercept. Attributes are returned that correspond to the arguments to ns, and explicitly give the knots, Boundary.knots etc for use by predict.ns().

References

Hastie, T. J. (1992) Generalized additive models. Chapter 7 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

bs, predict.ns, SafePrediction

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
ns(women$height, df = 5)
summary(fm1 <- lm(weight ~ ns(height, df = 5), data = women))

## To see what knots were selected
attr(terms(fm1), "predvars")

## example of safe prediction
plot(women, xlab = "Height (in)", ylab = "Weight (lb)")
ht <- seq(57, 73, length.out = 200)
lines(ht, predict(fm1, data.frame(height = ht)))
```

---

periodicSpline *Create a Periodic Interpolation Spline*

Description

Create a periodic interpolation spline, either from x and y vectors, or from a formula/data.frame combination.

Usage

```
periodicSpline(obj1, obj2, knots, period = 2*pi, ord = 4)
```

Arguments

obj1	either a numeric vector of x values or a formula.
obj2	if obj1 is numeric this should be a numeric vector of the same length. If obj1 is a formula this can be an optional data frame in which to evaluate the names in the formula.
knots	optional numeric vector of knot positions.
period	positive numeric value giving the period for the periodic spline. Defaults to 2 * pi.
ord	integer giving the order of the spline, at least 2. Defaults to 4. See splineOrder for a definition of the order of a spline.

Value

An object that inherits from class spline. The object can be in the B-spline representation, in which case it will be a pbSpline object, or in the piecewise polynomial representation (a ppolySpline object).

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

See Also

splineKnots, interpSpline

Examples

```
require(graphics); require(stats)
xx <- seq( -pi, pi, length.out = 16 )[-1]
yy <- sin( xx )
frm <- data.frame( xx, yy )
pispl <- periodicSpline( xx, yy, period = 2 * pi)
pispl
pispl2 <- periodicSpline( yy ~ xx, frm, period = 2 * pi )
stopifnot(all.equal(pispl, pispl2))  # pispl and pispl2 are the same

plot( pispl )          # displays over one period
points( yy ~ xx, col = "brown")
plot( predict( pispl, seq(-3*pi, 3*pi, length.out = 101) ), type = "l" )
```

---

polySpline *Piecewise Polynomial Spline Representation*

Description

Create the piecewise polynomial representation of a spline object.

Usage

```
polySpline(object, ...)
as.polySpline(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	An object that inherits from class spline.
...	Optional additional arguments. At present no additional arguments are used.

Value

An object that inherits from class polySpline. This is the piecewise polynomial representation of a univariate spline function. It is defined by a set of distinct numeric values called knots. The spline function is a polynomial function between each successive pair of knots. At each interior knot the polynomial segments on each side are constrained to have the same value of the function and some of its derivatives.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

See Also

interpSpline, periodicSpline, splineKnots, splineOrder

Examples

```
require(graphics)
ispl <- polySpline(interpSpline( weight ~ height,  women, bSpline = TRUE))
print( ispl )   # print the piecewise polynomial representation
plot( ispl )    # plots over the range of the knots
points( women$height, women$weight )
```

---

predict.bs *Evaluate a Spline Basis*

Description

Evaluate a predefined spline basis at given values.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class bs
predict(object, newx, ...)

## S3 method for class ns
predict(object, newx, ...)
```

Arguments

object	the result of a call to bs or ns having attributes describing knots, degree, etc.
newx	the x values at which evaluations are required.
...	Optional additional arguments. At present no additional arguments are used.

Value

An object just like `object`, except evaluated at the new values of `x`.

These are methods for the generic function `predict` for objects inheriting from classes `"bs"` or `"ns"`. See `predict` for the general behavior of this function.

See Also

`bs`, `ns`, `poly`.

Examples

```
require(stats)
basis <- ns(women$height, df = 5)
newX <- seq(58, 72, length.out = 51)
# evaluate the basis at the new data
predict(basis, newX)
```

---

predict.bSpline *Evaluate a Spline at New Values of x*

Description

The `predict` methods for the classes that inherit from the virtual classes `bSpline` and `polySpline` are used to evaluate the spline or its derivatives. The `plot` method for a spline object first evaluates `predict` with the `x` argument missing, then plots the resulting `xyVector` with `type = "l"`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class bSpline
predict(object, x, nseg = 50, deriv = 0, ...)
## S3 method for class nbSpline
predict(object, x, nseg = 50, deriv = 0, ...)
## S3 method for class pbSpline
predict(object, x, nseg = 50, deriv = 0, ...)
## S3 method for class npolySpline
predict(object, x, nseg = 50, deriv = 0, ...)
## S3 method for class ppolySpline
predict(object, x, nseg = 50, deriv = 0, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object that inherits from the `bSpline` or the `polySpline` class.
`x`	A numeric vector of `x` values at which to evaluate the spline. If this argument is missing a suitable set of `x` values is generated as a sequence of `nseg` segments spanning the range of the knots.
`nseg`	A positive integer giving the number of segments in a set of equally-spaced `x` values spanning the range of the knots in `object`. This value is only used if `x` is missing.
`deriv`	An integer between 0 and `splineOrder(object) - 1` specifying the derivative to evaluate.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

an xyVector with components

x	the supplied or inferred numeric vector of x values
y	the value of the spline (or its deriv'th derivative) at the x vector

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

See Also

xyVector, interpSpline, periodicSpline

Examples

```
require(graphics); require(stats)
ispl <- interpSpline( weight ~ height,  women )
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2, 2), las = 1)
plot(predict(ispl, nseg = 201),     # plots over the range of the knots
     main = "Original data with interpolating spline", type = "l",
     xlab = "height", ylab = "weight")
points(women$height, women$weight, col = 4)
plot(predict(ispl, nseg = 201, deriv = 1),
     main = "First derivative of interpolating spline", type = "l",
     xlab = "height", ylab = "weight")
plot(predict(ispl, nseg = 201, deriv = 2),
     main = "Second derivative of interpolating spline", type = "l",
     xlab = "height", ylab = "weight")
plot(predict(ispl, nseg = 401, deriv = 3),
     main = "Third derivative of interpolating spline", type = "l",
     xlab = "height", ylab = "weight")
par(opar)
```

---

splineDesign *Design Matrix for B-splines*

Description

Evaluate the design matrix for the B-splines defined by knots at the values in x.

Usage

```
splineDesign(knots, x, ord = 4, derivs, outer.ok = FALSE,
             sparse = FALSE)
spline.des  (knots, x, ord = 4, derivs, outer.ok = FALSE,
             sparse = FALSE)
```

Arguments

knots	a numeric vector of knot positions with non-decreasing values.
x	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the B-spline functions or derivatives. Unless outer.ok is true, the values in x must be between knots[ord] and knots[length(knots) + 1 - ord].
ord	a positive integer giving the order of the spline function. This is the number of coefficients in each piecewise polynomial segment, thus a cubic spline has order 4. Defaults to 4.
derivs	an integer vector of the same length as x and with values between 0 and ord - 1. The derivative of the given order is evaluated at the x positions. Defaults to a vector of zeroes of the same length as x.
outer.ok	logical indicating if x should be allowed outside the *inner* knots, see the x argument.
sparse	logical indicating if the result should inherit from class sparseMatrix (package **Matrix**).

Value

A matrix with length(x) rows and length(knots) - ord columns. The i'th row of the matrix contains the coefficients of the B-splines (or the indicated derivative of the B-splines) defined by the knot vector and evaluated at the i'th value of x. Each B-spline is defined by a set of ord successive knots so the total number of B-splines is length(knots)-ord.

Note

The older spline.des function takes the same arguments but returns a list with several components including knots, ord, derivs, and design. The design component is the same as the value of the splineDesign function.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

Examples

```
require(graphics)
splineDesign(knots = 1:10, x = 4:7)
## visualize band structure
Matrix::drop0(zapsmall(6*splineDesign(knots = 1:40, x = 4:37, sparse = TRUE)))

knots <- c(1,1.8,3:5,6.5,7,8.1,9.2,10)  # 10 => 10-4 = 6 Basis splines
x <- seq(min(knots)-1, max(knots)+1, length.out = 501)
bb <- splineDesign(knots, x = x, outer.ok = TRUE)

plot(range(x), c(0,1), type = "n", xlab = "x", ylab = "",
     main =  "B-splines - sum to 1 inside inner knots")
mtext(expression(B[j](x) *"  and "* sum(B[j](x), j == 1, 6)), adj = 0)
abline(v = knots, lty = 3, col = "light gray")
abline(v = knots[c(4,length(knots)-3)], lty = 3, col = "gray10")
lines(x, rowSums(bb), col = "gray", lwd = 2)
matlines(x, bb, ylim = c(0,1), lty = 1)
```

splineKnots *Knot Vector from a Spline*

Description

Return the knot vector corresponding to a spline object.

Usage

```
splineKnots(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object that inherits from class "spline".

Value

A non-decreasing numeric vector of knot positions.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

Examples

```
ispl <- interpSpline( weight ~ height, women )
splineKnots( ispl )
```

splineOrder *Determine the Order of a Spline*

Description

Return the order of a spline object.

Usage

```
splineOrder(object)
```

Arguments

object	An object that inherits from class "spline".

Details

The order of a spline is the number of coefficients in each piece of the piecewise polynomial representation. Thus a cubic spline has order 4.

Value

A positive integer.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

See Also

splineKnots, interpSpline, periodicSpline

Examples

```
splineOrder( interpSpline( weight ~ height, women ) )
```

---

xyVector *Construct an* xyVector *Object*

Description

Create an object to represent a set of x-y pairs. The resulting object can be treated as a matrix or as a data frame or as a vector. When treated as a vector it reduces to the y component only.

The result of functions such as predict.spline is returned as an xyVector object so the x-values used to generate the y-positions are retained, say for purposes of generating plots.

Usage

```
xyVector(x, y)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector
y	a numeric vector of the same length as x

Value

An object of class xyVector with components

x	a numeric vector
y	a numeric vector of the same length as x

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Bill Venables

Examples

```
require(stats); require(graphics)
ispl <- interpSpline( weight ~ height, women )
weights <- predict( ispl, seq( 55, 75, length.out = 51 ))
class( weights )
plot( weights, type = "l", xlab = "height", ylab = "weight" )
points( women$height, women$weight )
weights
```

Chapter 10

The `stats` package

`stats-package` *The R Stats Package*

Description

R statistical functions

Details

This package contains functions for statistical calculations and random number generation.

For a complete list of functions, use `library(help = "stats")`.

Author(s)

R Core Team and contributors worldwide

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

`.checkMFClasses` *Functions to Check the Type of Variables passed to Model Frames*

Description

`.checkMFClasses` checks if the variables used in a predict method agree in type with those used for fitting.

`.MFclass` categorizes variables for this purpose.

Usage

```
.checkMFClasses(cl, m, ordNotOK = FALSE)
.MFclass(x)
.getXlevels(Terms, m)
```

Arguments

cl	a character vector of class descriptions to match.
m	a model frame.
x	any object.
ordNotOK	logical: are ordered factors different?
Terms	a terms object.

Details

For applications involving model.matrix such as linear models we do not need to differentiate between ordered factors and factors as although these affect the coding, the coding used in the fit is already recorded and imposed during prediction. However, other applications may treat ordered factors differently: rpart does, for example.

Value

.MFclass returns a character string, one of "logical", "ordered", "factor", "numeric", "nmatrix.*" (a numeric matrix with a number of columns appended) or "other".

.getXlevels returns a named character vector, or NULL.

---

acf *Auto- and Cross- Covariance and -Correlation Function Estimation*

Description

The function acf computes (and by default plots) estimates of the autocovariance or autocorrelation function. Function pacf is the function used for the partial autocorrelations. Function ccf computes the cross-correlation or cross-covariance of two univariate series.

Usage

```
acf(x, lag.max = NULL,
    type = c("correlation", "covariance", "partial"),
    plot = TRUE, na.action = na.fail, demean = TRUE, ...)

pacf(x, lag.max, plot, na.action, ...)

## Default S3 method:
pacf(x, lag.max = NULL, plot = TRUE, na.action = na.fail,
    ...)

ccf(x, y, lag.max = NULL, type = c("correlation", "covariance"),
    plot = TRUE, na.action = na.fail, ...)

## S3 method for class acf
x[i, j]
```

Arguments

x, y	a univariate or multivariate (not ccf) numeric time series object or a numeric vector or matrix, or an "acf" object.
lag.max	maximum lag at which to calculate the acf. Default is $10\log_{10}(N/m)$ where N is the number of observations and m the number of series. Will be automatically limited to one less than the number of observations in the series.
type	character string giving the type of acf to be computed. Allowed values are "correlation" (the default), "covariance" or "partial".
plot	logical. If TRUE (the default) the acf is plotted.
na.action	function to be called to handle missing values. na.pass can be used.
demean	logical. Should the covariances be about the sample means?
...	further arguments to be passed to plot.acf.
i	a set of lags (time differences) to retain.
j	a set of series (names or numbers) to retain.

Details

For type = "correlation" and "covariance", the estimates are based on the sample covariance. (The lag 0 autocorrelation is fixed at 1 by convention.)

By default, no missing values are allowed. If the na.action function passes through missing values (as na.pass does), the covariances are computed from the complete cases. This means that the estimate computed may well not be a valid autocorrelation sequence, and may contain missing values. Missing values are not allowed when computing the PACF of a multivariate time series.

The partial correlation coefficient is estimated by fitting autoregressive models of successively higher orders up to lag.max.

The generic function plot has a method for objects of class "acf".

The lag is returned and plotted in units of time, and not numbers of observations.

There are print and subsetting methods for objects of class "acf".

Value

An object of class "acf", which is a list with the following elements:

lag	A three dimensional array containing the lags at which the acf is estimated.
acf	An array with the same dimensions as lag containing the estimated acf.
type	The type of correlation (same as the type argument).
n.used	The number of observations in the time series.
series	The name of the series x.
snames	The series names for a multivariate time series.

The lag k value returned by ccf(x, y) estimates the correlation between x[t+k] and y[t].

The result is returned invisibly if plot is TRUE.

Author(s)

Original: Paul Gilbert, Martyn Plummer. Extensive modifications and univariate case of pacf by B. D. Ripley.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth Edition. Springer-Verlag.

(This contains the exact definitions used.)

See Also

`plot.acf`, `ARMAacf` for the exact autocorrelations of a given ARMA process.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Examples from Venables & Ripley
acf(lh)
acf(lh, type = "covariance")
pacf(lh)

acf(ldeaths)
acf(ldeaths, ci.type = "ma")
acf(ts.union(mdeaths, fdeaths))
ccf(mdeaths, fdeaths, ylab = "cross-correlation")
# (just the cross-correlations)

presidents # contains missing values
acf(presidents, na.action = na.pass)
pacf(presidents, na.action = na.pass)
```

`acf2AR` *Compute an AR Process Exactly Fitting an ACF*

Description

Compute an AR process exactly fitting an autocorrelation function.

Usage

```
acf2AR(acf)
```

Arguments

`acf`	An autocorrelation or autocovariance sequence.

Value

A matrix, with one row for the computed AR(p) coefficients for `1 <= p <= length(acf)`.

See Also

`ARMAacf`, `ar.yw` which does this from an empirical ACF.

Examples

```
(Acf <- ARMAacf(c(0.6, 0.3, -0.2)))
acf2AR(Acf)
```

---

add1 *Add or Drop All Possible Single Terms to a Model*

Description

Compute all the single terms in the scope argument that can be added to or dropped from the model, fit those models and compute a table of the changes in fit.

Usage

```
add1(object, scope, ...)

## Default S3 method:
add1(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq"),
     k = 2, trace = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
add1(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq", "F"),
     x = NULL, k = 2, ...)

## S3 method for class glm
add1(object, scope, scale = 0,
     test = c("none", "Rao", "LRT", "Chisq", "F"),
     x = NULL, k = 2, ...)

drop1(object, scope, ...)

## Default S3 method:
drop1(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq"),
      k = 2, trace = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
drop1(object, scope, scale = 0, all.cols = TRUE,
      test = c("none", "Chisq", "F"), k = 2, ...)

## S3 method for class glm
drop1(object, scope, scale = 0,
      test = c("none", "Rao", "LRT", "Chisq", "F"),
      k = 2, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted model object.
scope	a formula giving the terms to be considered for adding or dropping.
scale	an estimate of the residual mean square to be used in computing C_p. Ignored if 0 or NULL.

test	should the results include a test statistic relative to the original model? The F test is only appropriate for lm and aov models or perhaps for glm fits with estimated dispersion. The χ^2 test can be an exact test (lm models with known scale) or a likelihood-ratio test or a test of the reduction in scaled deviance depending on the method. For glm fits, you can also choose "LRT" and "Rao" for likelihood ratio tests and Rao's efficient score test. The former is synonymous with "Chisq" (although both have an asymptotic chi-square distribution).
k	the penalty constant in AIC / C_p.
trace	if TRUE, print out progress reports.
x	a model matrix containing columns for the fitted model and all terms in the upper scope. Useful if add1 is to be called repeatedly. **Warning:** no checks are done on its validity.
all.cols	(Provided for compatibility with S.) Logical to specify whether all columns of the design matrix should be used. If FALSE then non-estimable columns are dropped, but the result is not usually statistically meaningful.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

For drop1 methods, a missing scope is taken to be all terms in the model. The hierarchy is respected when considering terms to be added or dropped: all main effects contained in a second-order interaction must remain, and so on.

In a scope formula . means 'what is already there'.

The methods for lm and glm are more efficient in that they do not recompute the model matrix and call the fit methods directly.

The default output table gives AIC, defined as minus twice log likelihood plus $2p$ where p is the rank of the model (the number of effective parameters). This is only defined up to an additive constant (like log-likelihoods). For linear Gaussian models with fixed scale, the constant is chosen to give Mallows' C_p, $RSS/scale + 2p - n$. Where C_p is used, the column is labelled as Cp rather than AIC.

The F tests for the "glm" methods are based on analysis of deviance tests, so if the dispersion is estimated it is based on the residual deviance, unlike the F tests of anova.glm.

Value

An object of class "anova" summarizing the differences in fit between the models.

Warning

The model fitting must apply the models to the same dataset. Most methods will attempt to use a subset of the data with no missing values for any of the variables if na.action = na.omit, but this may give biased results. Only use these functions with data containing missing values with great care.

The default methods make calls to the function nobs to check that the number of observations involved in the fitting process remained unchanged.

Note

These are not fully equivalent to the functions in S. There is no keep argument, and the methods used are not quite so computationally efficient.

Their authors' definitions of Mallows' C_p and Akaike's AIC are used, not those of the authors of the models chapter of S.

Author(s)

The design was inspired by the S functions of the same names described in Chambers (1992).

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models.* Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

step, aov, lm, extractAIC, anova

Examples

```
require(graphics); require(utils)
## following example(swiss)
lm1 <- lm(Fertility ~ ., data = swiss)
add1(lm1, ~ I(Education^2) + .^2)
drop1(lm1, test = "F")  # So called type II anova

## following example(glm)

drop1(glm.D93, test = "Chisq")
drop1(glm.D93, test = "F")
add1(glm.D93, scope = ~outcome*treatment, test = "Rao") ## Pearson Chi-square
```

---

addmargins *Puts Arbitrary Margins on Multidimensional Tables or Arrays*

Description

For a given table one can specify which of the classifying factors to expand by one or more levels to hold margins to be calculated. One may for example form sums and means over the first dimension and medians over the second. The resulting table will then have two extra levels for the first dimension and one extra level for the second. The default is to sum over all margins in the table. Other possibilities may give results that depend on the order in which the margins are computed. This is flagged in the printed output from the function.

Usage

```
addmargins(A, margin = seq_along(dim(A)), FUN = sum, quiet = FALSE)
```

Arguments

A	table or array. The function uses the presence of the "dim" and "dimnames" attributes of A.
margin	vector of dimensions over which to form margins. Margins are formed in the order in which dimensions are specified in margin.
FUN	list of the same length as margin, each element of the list being either a function or a list of functions. Names of the list elements will appear as levels in dimnames of the result. Unnamed list elements will have names constructed: the name of a function or a constructed name based on the position in the table.
quiet	logical which suppresses the message telling the order in which the margins were computed.

Details

If the functions used to form margins are not commutative the result depends on the order in which margins are computed. Annotation of margins is done via naming the FUN list.

Value

A table or array with the same number of dimensions as A, but with extra levels of the dimensions mentioned in margin. The number of levels added to each dimension is the length of the entries in FUN. A message with the order of computation of margins is printed.

Author(s)

Bendix Carstensen, Steno Diabetes Center & Department of Biostatistics, University of Copenhagen, http://www.biostat.ku.dk/~bxc, autumn 2003. Margin naming enhanced by Duncan Murdoch.

See Also

table, ftable, margin.table.

Examples

```
Aye <- sample(c("Yes", "Si", "Oui"), 177, replace = TRUE)
Bee <- sample(c("Hum", "Buzz"), 177, replace = TRUE)
Sea <- sample(c("White", "Black", "Red", "Dead"), 177, replace = TRUE)
(A <- table(Aye, Bee, Sea))
addmargins(A)

ftable(A)
ftable(addmargins(A))

# Non-commutative functions - note differences between resulting tables:
ftable(addmargins(A, c(1, 3),
       FUN = list(Sum = sum, list(Min = min, Max = max))))
ftable(addmargins(A, c(3, 1),
       FUN = list(list(Min = min, Max = max), Sum = sum)))

# Weird function needed to return the N when computing percentages
sqsm <- function(x) sum(x)^2/100
B <- table(Sea, Bee)
round(sweep(addmargins(B, 1, list(list(All = sum, N = sqsm))), 2,
```

```
            apply(B, 2, sum)/100, "/"), 1)
round(sweep(addmargins(B, 2, list(list(All = sum, N = sqsm))), 1,
            apply(B, 1, sum)/100, "/"), 1)

# A total over Bee requires formation of the Bee-margin first:
mB <-  addmargins(B, 2, FUN = list(list(Total = sum)))
round(ftable(sweep(addmargins(mB, 1, list(list(All = sum, N = sqsm))), 2,
                   apply(mB, 2, sum)/100, "/")), 1)

## Zero.Printing table+margins:
set.seed(1)
x <- sample( 1:7, 20, replace = TRUE)
y <- sample( 1:7, 20, replace = TRUE)
tx <- addmargins( table(x, y) )
print(tx, zero.print = ".")
```

---

aggregate *Compute Summary Statistics of Data Subsets*

Description

Splits the data into subsets, computes summary statistics for each, and returns the result in a convenient form.

Usage

```
aggregate(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
aggregate(x, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
aggregate(x, by, FUN, ..., simplify = TRUE)

## S3 method for class formula
aggregate(formula, data, FUN, ...,
          subset, na.action = na.omit)

## S3 method for class ts
aggregate(x, nfrequency = 1, FUN = sum, ndeltat = 1,
          ts.eps = getOption("ts.eps"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	an R object.
by	a list of grouping elements, each as long as the variables in the data frame x. The elements are coerced to factors before use.
FUN	a function to compute the summary statistics which can be applied to all data subsets.
simplify	a logical indicating whether results should be simplified to a vector or matrix if possible.

formula	a formula, such as y ~ x or cbind(y1, y2) ~ x1 + x2, where the y variables are numeric data to be split into groups according to the grouping x variables (usually factors).
data	a data frame (or list) from which the variables in formula should be taken.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NA values. The default is to ignore missing values in the given variables.
nfrequency	new number of observations per unit of time; must be a divisor of the frequency of x.
ndeltat	new fraction of the sampling period between successive observations; must be a divisor of the sampling interval of x.
ts.eps	tolerance used to decide if nfrequency is a sub-multiple of the original frequency.
...	further arguments passed to or used by methods.

Details

aggregate is a generic function with methods for data frames and time series.

The default method, aggregate.default, uses the time series method if x is a time series, and otherwise coerces x to a data frame and calls the data frame method.

aggregate.data.frame is the data frame method. If x is not a data frame, it is coerced to one, which must have a non-zero number of rows. Then, each of the variables (columns) in x is split into subsets of cases (rows) of identical combinations of the components of by, and FUN is applied to each such subset with further arguments in ... passed to it. The result is reformatted into a data frame containing the variables in by and x. The ones arising from by contain the unique combinations of grouping values used for determining the subsets, and the ones arising from x the corresponding summaries for the subset of the respective variables in x. If simplify is true, summaries are simplified to vectors or matrices if they have a common length of one or greater than one, respectively; otherwise, lists of summary results according to subsets are obtained. Rows with missing values in any of the by variables will be omitted from the result. (Note that versions of prior to 2.11.0 required FUN to be a scalar function.)

aggregate.formula is a standard formula interface to aggregate.data.frame.

aggregate.ts is the time series method, and requires FUN to be a scalar function. If x is not a time series, it is coerced to one. Then, the variables in x are split into appropriate blocks of length frequency(x) / nfrequency, and FUN is applied to each such block, with further (named) arguments in ... passed to it. The result returned is a time series with frequency nfrequency holding the aggregated values. Note that this make most sense for a quarterly or yearly result when the original series covers a whole number of quarters or years: in particular aggregating a monthly series to quarters starting in February does not give a conventional quarterly series.

FUN is passed to match.fun, and hence it can be a function or a symbol or character string naming a function.

Value

For the time series method, a time series of class "ts" or class c("mts", "ts").

For the data frame method, a data frame with columns corresponding to the grouping variables in by followed by aggregated columns from x. If the by has names, the non-empty times are used to label the columns in the results, with unnamed grouping variables being named Group.*i* for by[[*i*]].

Author(s)

Kurt Hornik, with contributions by Arni Magnusson.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

apply, lapply, tapply.

Examples

```
## Compute the averages for the variables in state.x77, grouped
## according to the region (Northeast, South, North Central, West) that
## each state belongs to.
aggregate(state.x77, list(Region = state.region), mean)

## Compute the averages according to region and the occurrence of more
## than 130 days of frost.
aggregate(state.x77,
          list(Region = state.region,
               Cold = state.x77[,"Frost"] > 130),
          mean)
## (Note that no state in South is THAT cold.)


## example with character variables and NAs
testDF <- data.frame(v1 = c(1,3,5,7,8,3,5,NA,4,5,7,9),
                     v2 = c(11,33,55,77,88,33,55,NA,44,55,77,99) )
by1 <- c("red", "blue", 1, 2, NA, "big", 1, 2, "red", 1, NA, 12)
by2 <- c("wet", "dry", 99, 95, NA, "damp", 95, 99, "red", 99, NA, NA)
aggregate(x = testDF, by = list(by1, by2), FUN = "mean")

# and if you want to treat NAs as a group
fby1 <- factor(by1, exclude = "")
fby2 <- factor(by2, exclude = "")
aggregate(x = testDF, by = list(fby1, fby2), FUN = "mean")


## Formulas, one ~ one, one ~ many, many ~ one, and many ~ many:
aggregate(weight ~ feed, data = chickwts, mean)
aggregate(breaks ~ wool + tension, data = warpbreaks, mean)
aggregate(cbind(Ozone, Temp) ~ Month, data = airquality, mean)
aggregate(cbind(ncases, ncontrols) ~ alcgp + tobgp, data = esoph, sum)

## Dot notation:
aggregate(. ~ Species, data = iris, mean)
aggregate(len ~ ., data = ToothGrowth, mean)

## Often followed by xtabs():
ag <- aggregate(len ~ ., data = ToothGrowth, mean)
xtabs(len ~ ., data = ag)
```

```
## Compute the average annual approval ratings for American presidents.
aggregate(presidents, nfrequency = 1, FUN = mean)
## Give the summer less weight.
aggregate(presidents, nfrequency = 1,
          FUN = weighted.mean, w = c(1, 1, 0.5, 1))
```

AIC *Akaike's An Information Criterion*

Description

Generic function calculating Akaike's 'An Information Criterion' for one or several fitted model objects for which a log-likelihood value can be obtained, according to the formula -2log-likelihood$+ kn_{par}$, where n_{par} represents the number of parameters in the fitted model, and $k = 2$ for the usual AIC, or $k = \log(n)$ (n being the number of observations) for the so-called BIC or SBC (Schwarz's Bayesian criterion).

Usage

```
AIC(object, ..., k = 2)

BIC(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a fitted model object for which there exists a `logLik` method to extract the corresponding log-likelihood, or an object inheriting from class `logLik`.
`...`	optionally more fitted model objects.
`k`	numeric, the *penalty* per parameter to be used; the default `k = 2` is the classical AIC.

Details

When comparing models fitted by maximum likelihood to the same data, the smaller the AIC or BIC, the better the fit.

The theory of AIC requires that the log-likelihood has been maximized: whereas AIC can be computed for models not fitted by maximum likelihood, their AIC values should not be compared.

Examples of models not 'fitted to the same data' are where the response is transformed (accelerated-life models are fitted to log-times) and where contingency tables have been used to summarize data.

These are generic functions (with S4 generics defined in package **stats4**): however methods should be defined for the log-likelihood function `logLik` rather than these functions: the action of their default methods is to call `logLik` on all the supplied objects and assemble the results. Note that in several common cases `logLik` does not return the value at the MLE: see its help page.

The log-likelihood and hence the AIC/BIC is only defined up to an additive constant. Different constants have conventionally been used for different purposes and so `extractAIC` and `AIC` may give different values (and do for models of class `"lm"`: see the help for `extractAIC`). Particular care is needed when comparing fits of different classes (with, for example, a comparison of a Poisson and gamma GLM being meaningless since one has a discrete response, the other continuous).

`BIC` is defined as `AIC(object, ..., k = log(nobs(object)))`. This needs the number of observations to be known: the default method looks first for a `"nobs"` attribute on the return value from the `logLik` method, then tries the `nobs` generic, and if neither succeed returns BIC as `NA`.

Value

If just one object is provided, a numeric value with the corresponding AIC (or BIC, or ..., depending on k).

If multiple objects are provided, a data.frame with rows corresponding to the objects and columns representing the number of parameters in the model (df) and the AIC or BIC.

Author(s)

Originally by José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates, more recent revisions by R-core.

References

Sakamoto, Y., Ishiguro, M., and Kitagawa G. (1986). *Akaike Information Criterion Statistics*. D. Reidel Publishing Company.

See Also

extractAIC, logLik, nobs.

Examples

```
lm1 <- lm(Fertility ~ . , data = swiss)
AIC(lm1)
stopifnot(all.equal(AIC(lm1),
                    AIC(logLik(lm1))))
BIC(lm1)

lm2 <- update(lm1, . ~ . -Examination)
AIC(lm1, lm2)
BIC(lm1, lm2)
```

---

alias *Find Aliases (Dependencies) in a Model*

Description

Find aliases (linearly dependent terms) in a linear model specified by a formula.

Usage

```
alias(object, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
alias(object, data, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
alias(object, complete = TRUE, partial = FALSE,
      partial.pattern = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	A fitted model object, for example from lm or aov, or a formula for alias.formula.
data	Optionally, a data frame to search for the objects in the formula.
complete	Should information on complete aliasing be included?
partial	Should information on partial aliasing be included?
partial.pattern	Should partial aliasing be presented in a schematic way? If this is done, the results are presented in a more compact way, usually giving the deciles of the coefficients.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Although the main method is for class "lm", alias is most useful for experimental designs and so is used with fits from aov. Complete aliasing refers to effects in linear models that cannot be estimated independently of the terms which occur earlier in the model and so have their coefficients omitted from the fit. Partial aliasing refers to effects that can be estimated less precisely because of correlations induced by the design.

Some parts of the "lm" method require recommended package **MASS** to be installed.

Value

A list (of class "listof") containing components

Model	Description of the model; usually the formula.
Complete	A matrix with columns corresponding to effects that are linearly dependent on the rows.
Partial	The correlations of the estimable effects, with a zero diagonal. An object of class "mtable" which has its own print method.

Note

The aliasing pattern may depend on the contrasts in use: Helmert contrasts are probably most useful.

The defaults are different from those in S.

Author(s)

The design was inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers *et al* (1992).

References

Chambers, J. M., Freeny, A and Heiberger, R. M. (1992) *Analysis of variance; designed experiments.* Chapter 5 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
op <- options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))
npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk)
alias(npk.aov)
options(op)  # reset
```

anova *Anova Tables*

Description

Compute analysis of variance (or deviance) tables for one or more fitted model objects.

Usage

```
anova(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object containing the results returned by a model fitting function (e.g., `lm` or `glm`).
`...`	additional objects of the same type.

Value

This (generic) function returns an object of class `anova`. These objects represent analysis-of-variance and analysis-of-deviance tables. When given a single argument it produces a table which tests whether the model terms are significant.

When given a sequence of objects, `anova` tests the models against one another in the order specified.

The print method for `anova` objects prints tables in a 'pretty' form.

Warning

The comparison between two or more models will only be valid if they are fitted to the same dataset. This may be a problem if there are missing values and 's default of `na.action = na.omit` is used.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`coefficients`, `effects`, `fitted.values`, `residuals`, `summary`, `drop1`, `add1`.

anova.glm *Analysis of Deviance for Generalized Linear Model Fits*

Description

Compute an analysis of deviance table for one or more generalized linear model fits.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glm
anova(object, ..., dispersion = NULL, test = NULL)
```

Arguments

object, ...	objects of class glm, typically the result of a call to glm, or a list of objects for the "glmlist" method.
dispersion	the dispersion parameter for the fitting family. By default it is obtained from the object(s).
test	a character string, (partially) matching one of "Chisq", "LRT", "Rao", "F" or "Cp". See stat.anova.

Details

Specifying a single object gives a sequential analysis of deviance table for that fit. That is, the reductions in the residual deviance as each term of the formula is added in turn are given in as the rows of a table, plus the residual deviances themselves.

If more than one object is specified, the table has a row for the residual degrees of freedom and deviance for each model. For all but the first model, the change in degrees of freedom and deviance is also given. (This only makes statistical sense if the models are nested.) It is conventional to list the models from smallest to largest, but this is up to the user.

The table will optionally contain test statistics (and P values) comparing the reduction in deviance for the row to the residuals. For models with known dispersion (e.g., binomial and Poisson fits) the chi-squared test is most appropriate, and for those with dispersion estimated by moments (e.g., gaussian, quasibinomial and quasipoisson fits) the F test is most appropriate. Mallows' C_p statistic is the residual deviance plus twice the estimate of σ^2 times the residual degrees of freedom, which is closely related to AIC (and a multiple of it if the dispersion is known). You can also choose "LRT" and "Rao" for likelihood ratio tests and Rao's efficient score test. The former is synonymous with "Chisq" (although both have an asymptotic chi-square distribution).

The dispersion estimate will be taken from the largest model, using the value returned by summary.glm. As this will in most cases use a Chisquared-based estimate, the F tests are not based on the residual deviance in the analysis of deviance table shown.

Value

An object of class "anova" inheriting from class "data.frame".

Warning

The comparison between two or more models will only be valid if they are fitted to the same dataset. This may be a problem if there are missing values and 's default of na.action = na.omit is used, and anova will detect this with an error.

References

Hastie, T. J. and Pregibon, D. (1992) *Generalized linear models.* Chapter 6 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

glm, anova.

drop1 for so-called 'type II' anova where each term is dropped one at a time respecting their hierarchy.

Examples

```
## --- Continuing the Example from  ?glm:

anova(glm.D93)
anova(glm.D93, test = "Cp")
anova(glm.D93, test = "Chisq")
glm.D93a <-
   update(glm.D93, ~treatment*outcome) # equivalent to Pearson Chi-square
anova(glm.D93, glm.D93a, test = "Rao")
```

---

anova.lm *ANOVA for Linear Model Fits*

Description

Compute an analysis of variance table for one or more linear model fits.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lm
anova(object, ...)

## S3 method for class lmlist
anova(object, ..., scale = 0, test = "F")
```

Arguments

`object, ...`	objects of class `lm`, usually, a result of a call to `lm`.
`test`	a character string specifying the test statistic to be used. Can be one of `"F"`, `"Chisq"` or `"Cp"`, with partial matching allowed, or `NULL` for no test.
`scale`	numeric. An estimate of the noise variance σ^2. If zero this will be estimated from the largest model considered.

Details

Specifying a single object gives a sequential analysis of variance table for that fit. That is, the reductions in the residual sum of squares as each term of the formula is added in turn are given in as the rows of a table, plus the residual sum of squares.

The table will contain F statistics (and P values) comparing the mean square for the row to the residual mean square.

If more than one object is specified, the table has a row for the residual degrees of freedom and sum of squares for each model. For all but the first model, the change in degrees of freedom and sum of squares is also given. (This only make statistical sense if the models are nested.) It is conventional to list the models from smallest to largest, but this is up to the user.

Optionally the table can include test statistics. Normally the F statistic is most appropriate, which compares the mean square for a row to the residual sum of squares for the largest model considered. If `scale` is specified chi-squared tests can be used. Mallows' C_p statistic is the residual sum of squares plus twice the estimate of σ^2 times the residual degrees of freedom.

Value

An object of class "anova" inheriting from class "data.frame".

Warning

The comparison between two or more models will only be valid if they are fitted to the same dataset. This may be a problem if there are missing values and 's default of `na.action = na.omit` is used, and `anova.lmlist` will detect this with an error.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models.* Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

The model fitting function `lm`, `anova`.

`drop1` for so-called 'type II' anova where each term is dropped one at a time respecting their hierarchy.

Examples

```
## sequential table
fit <- lm(sr ~ ., data = LifeCycleSavings)
anova(fit)

## same effect via separate models
fit0 <- lm(sr ~ 1, data = LifeCycleSavings)
fit1 <- update(fit0, . ~ . + pop15)
fit2 <- update(fit1, . ~ . + pop75)
fit3 <- update(fit2, . ~ . + dpi)
fit4 <- update(fit3, . ~ . + ddpi)
anova(fit0, fit1, fit2, fit3, fit4, test = "F")

anova(fit4, fit2, fit0, test = "F") # unconventional order
```

---

anova.mlm *Comparisons between Multivariate Linear Models*

Description

Compute a (generalized) analysis of variance table for one or more multivariate linear models.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class mlm
anova(object, ...,
      test = c("Pillai", "Wilks", "Hotelling-Lawley", "Roy",
               "Spherical"),
      Sigma = diag(nrow = p), T = Thin.row(proj(M) - proj(X)),
      M = diag(nrow = p), X = ~0,
      idata = data.frame(index = seq_len(p)), tol = 1e-7)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class "mlm".
...	further objects of class "mlm".
test	choice of test statistic (see below).
Sigma	(only relevant if test == "Spherical"). Covariance matrix assumed proportional to Sigma.
T	transformation matrix. By default computed from M and X.
M	formula or matrix describing the outer projection (see below).
X	formula or matrix describing the inner projection (see below).
idata	data frame describing intra-block design.
tol	tolerance to be used in deciding if the residuals are rank-deficient: see qr.

Details

The anova.mlm method uses either a multivariate test statistic for the summary table, or a test based on sphericity assumptions (i.e. that the covariance is proportional to a given matrix).

For the multivariate test, Wilks' statistic is most popular in the literature, but the default Pillai–Bartlett statistic is recommended by Hand and Taylor (1987). See summary.manova for further details.

For the "Spherical" test, proportionality is usually with the identity matrix but a different matrix can be specified using Sigma). Corrections for asphericity known as the Greenhouse–Geisser, respectively Huynh–Feldt, epsilons are given and adjusted F tests are performed.

It is common to transform the observations prior to testing. This typically involves transformation to intra-block differences, but more complicated within-block designs can be encountered, making more elaborate transformations necessary. A transformation matrix T can be given directly or specified as the difference between two projections onto the spaces spanned by M and X, which in turn can be given as matrices or as model formulas with respect to idata (the tests will be invariant to parametrization of the quotient space M/X).

As with anova.lm, all test statistics use the SSD matrix from the largest model considered as the (generalized) denominator.

Contrary to other anova methods, the intercept is not excluded from the display in the single-model case. When contrast transformations are involved, it often makes good sense to test for a zero intercept.

Value

An object of class "anova" inheriting from class "data.frame"

Note

The Huynh–Feldt epsilon differs from that calculated by SAS (as of v. 8.2) except when the DF is equal to the number of observations minus one. This is believed to be a bug in SAS, not in .

References

Hand, D. J. and Taylor, C. C. (1987) *Multivariate Analysis of Variance and Repeated Measures.* Chapman and Hall.

See Also

summary.manova

Examples

```
require(graphics)
utils::example(SSD) # Brings in the mlmfit and reacttime objects

mlmfit0 <- update(mlmfit, ~0)

### Traditional tests of intrasubj. contrasts
## Using MANOVA techniques on contrasts:
anova(mlmfit, mlmfit0, X = ~1)

## Assuming sphericity
anova(mlmfit, mlmfit0, X = ~1, test = "Spherical")


### tests using intra-subject 3x2 design
idata <- data.frame(deg = gl(3, 1, 6, labels = c(0, 4, 8)),
                    noise = gl(2, 3, 6, labels = c("A", "P")))

anova(mlmfit, mlmfit0, X = ~ deg + noise,
      idata = idata, test = "Spherical")
anova(mlmfit, mlmfit0, M = ~ deg + noise, X = ~ noise,
      idata = idata, test = "Spherical" )
anova(mlmfit, mlmfit0, M = ~ deg + noise, X = ~ deg,
      idata = idata, test = "Spherical" )

f <- factor(rep(1:2, 5)) # bogus, just for illustration
mlmfit2 <- update(mlmfit, ~f)
anova(mlmfit2, mlmfit, mlmfit0, X = ~1, test = "Spherical")
anova(mlmfit2, X = ~1, test = "Spherical")
# one-model form, eqiv. to previous

### There seems to be a strong interaction in these data
plot(colMeans(reacttime))
```

---

ansari.test *Ansari-Bradley Test*

Description

Performs the Ansari-Bradley two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters.

Usage

```
ansari.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
ansari.test(x, y,
            alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
            exact = NULL, conf.int = FALSE, conf.level = 0.95,
```

```
            ...)

## S3 method for class formula
ansari.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector of data values.
y	numeric vector of data values.
alternative	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of "two.sided", "greater" or "less". You can specify just the initial letter.
exact	a logical indicating whether an exact p-value should be computed.
conf.int	a logical,indicating whether a confidence interval should be computed.
conf.level	confidence level of the interval.
formula	a formula of the form lhs ~ rhs where lhs is a numeric variable giving the data values and rhs a factor with two levels giving the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

Suppose that x and y are independent samples from distributions with densities $f((t-m)/s)/s$ and $f(t-m)$, respectively, where m is an unknown nuisance parameter and s, the ratio of scales, is the parameter of interest. The Ansari-Bradley test is used for testing the null that s equals 1, the two-sided alternative being that $s \neq 1$ (the distributions differ only in variance), and the one-sided alternatives being $s > 1$ (the distribution underlying x has a larger variance, "greater") or $s < 1$ ("less").

By default (if exact is not specified), an exact p-value is computed if both samples contain less than 50 finite values and there are no ties. Otherwise, a normal approximation is used.

Optionally, a nonparametric confidence interval and an estimator for s are computed. If exact p-values are available, an exact confidence interval is obtained by the algorithm described in Bauer (1972), and the Hodges-Lehmann estimator is employed. Otherwise, the returned confidence interval and point estimate are based on normal approximations.

Note that mid-ranks are used in the case of ties rather than average scores as employed in Hollander & Wolfe (1973). See, e.g., Hajek, Sidak and Sen (1999), pages 131ff, for more information.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the Ansari-Bradley test statistic.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
null.value	the ratio of scales s under the null, 1.
alternative	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.

`method`	the string `"Ansari-Bradley test"`.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.
`conf.int`	a confidence interval for the scale parameter. (Only present if argument `conf.int = TRUE`.)
`estimate`	an estimate of the ratio of scales. (Only present if argument `conf.int = TRUE`.)

Note

To compare results of the Ansari-Bradley test to those of the F test to compare two variances (under the assumption of normality), observe that s is the ratio of scales and hence s^2 is the ratio of variances (provided they exist), whereas for the F test the ratio of variances itself is the parameter of interest. In particular, confidence intervals are for s in the Ansari-Bradley test but for s^2 in the F test.

References

David F. Bauer (1972), Constructing confidence sets using rank statistics. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **67**, 687–690.

Jaroslav Hajek, Zbynek Sidak and Pranab K. Sen (1999), *Theory of Rank Tests*. San Diego, London: Academic Press.

Myles Hollander and Douglas A. Wolfe (1973), *Nonparametric Statistical Methods.* New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 83–92.

See Also

`fligner.test` for a rank-based (nonparametric) k-sample test for homogeneity of variances; `mood.test` for another rank-based two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters; `var.test` and `bartlett.test` for parametric tests for the homogeneity in variance.

`ansari_test` in package **coin** for exact and approximate *conditional* p-values for the Ansari-Bradley test, as well as different methods for handling ties.

Examples

```
## Hollander & Wolfe (1973, p. 86f):
## Serum iron determination using Hyland control sera
ramsay <- c(111, 107, 100, 99, 102, 106, 109, 108, 104, 99,
            101, 96, 97, 102, 107, 113, 116, 113, 110, 98)
jung.parekh <- c(107, 108, 106, 98, 105, 103, 110, 105, 104,
            100, 96, 108, 103, 104, 114, 114, 113, 108, 106, 99)
ansari.test(ramsay, jung.parekh)

ansari.test(rnorm(10), rnorm(10, 0, 2), conf.int = TRUE)

## try more points - failed in 2.4.1
ansari.test(rnorm(100), rnorm(100, 0, 2), conf.int = TRUE)
```

aov *Fit an Analysis of Variance Model*

Description

Fit an analysis of variance model by a call to `lm` for each stratum.

Usage

```
aov(formula, data = NULL, projections = FALSE, qr = TRUE,
    contrasts = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	A formula specifying the model.
`data`	A data frame in which the variables specified in the formula will be found. If missing, the variables are searched for in the standard way.
`projections`	Logical flag: should the projections be returned?
`qr`	Logical flag: should the QR decomposition be returned?
`contrasts`	A list of contrasts to be used for some of the factors in the formula. These are not used for any `Error` term, and supplying contrasts for factors only in the `Error` term will give a warning.
`...`	Arguments to be passed to `lm`, such as `subset` or `na.action`. See 'Details' about `weights`.

Details

This provides a wrapper to `lm` for fitting linear models to balanced or unbalanced experimental designs.

The main difference from `lm` is in the way `print`, `summary` and so on handle the fit: this is expressed in the traditional language of the analysis of variance rather than that of linear models.

If the formula contains a single `Error` term, this is used to specify error strata, and appropriate models are fitted within each error stratum.

The formula can specify multiple responses.

Weights can be specified by a `weights` argument, but should not be used with an `Error` term, and are incompletely supported (e.g., not by `model.tables`).

Value

An object of class `c("aov", "lm")` or for multiple responses of class `c("maov", "aov", "mlm", "lm")` or for multiple error strata of class `c("aovlist", "listof")`. There are `print` and `summary` methods available for these.

Note

aov is designed for balanced designs, and the results can be hard to interpret without balance: beware that missing values in the response(s) will likely lose the balance. If there are two or more error strata, the methods used are statistically inefficient without balance, and it may be better to use lme in package **nlme**.

Balance can be checked with the replications function.

The default 'contrasts' in are not orthogonal contrasts, and aov and its helper functions will work better with such contrasts: see the examples for how to select these.

Author(s)

The design was inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers *et al* (1992).

References

Chambers, J. M., Freeny, A and Heiberger, R. M. (1992) *Analysis of variance; designed experiments.* Chapter 5 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

lm, summary.aov, replications, alias, proj, model.tables, TukeyHSD

Examples

```
## From Venables and Ripley (2002) p.165.

## Set orthogonal contrasts.
op <- options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))
( npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk) )
summary(npk.aov)
coefficients(npk.aov)

## to show the effects of re-ordering terms contrast the two fits
aov(yield ~ block + N * P + K, npk)
aov(terms(yield ~ block + N * P + K, keep.order = TRUE), npk)


## as a test, not particularly sensible statistically
npk.aovE <- aov(yield ~  N*P*K + Error(block), npk)
npk.aovE
summary(npk.aovE)
options(op)  # reset to previous
```

---

approxfun *Interpolation Functions*

Description

Return a list of points which linearly interpolate given data points, or a function performing the linear (or constant) interpolation.

Usage

```
approx   (x, y = NULL, xout, method = "linear", n = 50,
          yleft, yright, rule = 1, f = 0, ties = mean)

approxfun(x, y = NULL,       method = "linear",
          yleft, yright, rule = 1, f = 0, ties = mean)
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric vectors giving the coordinates of the points to be interpolated. Alternatively a single plotting structure can be specified: see xy.coords.
xout	an optional set of numeric values specifying where interpolation is to take place.
method	specifies the interpolation method to be used. Choices are "linear" or "constant".
n	If xout is not specified, interpolation takes place at n equally spaced points spanning the interval [min(x), max(x)].
yleft	the value to be returned when input x values are less than min(x). The default is defined by the value of rule given below.
yright	the value to be returned when input x values are greater than max(x). The default is defined by the value of rule given below.
rule	an integer (of length 1 or 2) describing how interpolation is to take place outside the interval [min(x), max(x)]. If rule is 1 then NAs are returned for such points and if it is 2, the value at the closest data extreme is used. Use, e.g., rule = 2:1, if the left and right side extrapolation should differ.
f	for method = "constant" a number between 0 and 1 inclusive, indicating a compromise between left- and right-continuous step functions. If y0 and y1 are the values to the left and right of the point then the value is y0 if f == 0, y1 if f == 1, and y0*(1-f)+y1*f for intermediate values. In this way the result is right-continuous for f == 0 and left-continuous for f == 1, even for non-finite y values.
ties	Handling of tied x values. Either a function with a single vector argument returning a single number result or the string "ordered".

Details

The inputs can contain missing values which are deleted, so at least two complete (x, y) pairs are required (for method = "linear", one otherwise). If there are duplicated (tied) x values and ties is a function it is applied to the y values for each distinct x value. Useful functions in this context include mean, min, and max. If ties = "ordered" the x values are assumed to be already ordered. The first y value will be used for interpolation to the left and the last one for interpolation to the right.

Value

approx returns a list with components x and y, containing n coordinates which interpolate the given data points according to the method (and rule) desired.

The function approxfun returns a function performing (linear or constant) interpolation of the given data points. For a given set of x values, this function will return the corresponding interpolated values. It uses data stored in its environment when it was created, the details of which are subject to change.

Warning

The value returned by approxfun contains references to the code in the current version of : it is not intended to be saved and loaded into a different session. This is safer for >= 3.0.0.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

spline and splinefun for spline interpolation.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

x <- 1:10
y <- rnorm(10)
par(mfrow = c(2,1))
plot(x, y, main = "approx(.) and approxfun(.)")
points(approx(x, y), col = 2, pch = "*")
points(approx(x, y, method = "constant"), col = 4, pch = "*")

f <- approxfun(x, y)
curve(f(x), 0, 11, col = "green2")
points(x, y)
is.function(fc <- approxfun(x, y, method = "const")) # TRUE
curve(fc(x), 0, 10, col = "darkblue", add = TRUE)
## different extrapolation on left and right side :
plot(approxfun(x, y, rule = 2:1), 0, 11,
     col = "tomato", add = TRUE, lty = 3, lwd = 2)

## Show treatment of ties :

x <- c(2,2:4,4,4,5,5,7,7,7)
y <- c(1:6, 5:4, 3:1)
approx(x, y, xout = x)$y # warning
(ay <- approx(x, y, xout = x, ties = "ordered")$y)
stopifnot(ay == c(2,2,3,6,6,6,4,4,1,1,1))
approx(x, y, xout = x, ties = min)$y
approx(x, y, xout = x, ties = max)$y
```

---

ar *Fit Autoregressive Models to Time Series*

Description

Fit an autoregressive time series model to the data, by default selecting the complexity by AIC.

Usage

```
ar(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL,
   method = c("yule-walker", "burg", "ols", "mle", "yw"),
   na.action, series, ...)

ar.burg(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
ar.burg(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL,
        na.action = na.fail, demean = TRUE, series,
        var.method = 1, ...)
## S3 method for class mts
ar.burg(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL,
        na.action = na.fail, demean = TRUE, series,
        var.method = 1, ...)

ar.yw(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
ar.yw(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL,
      na.action = na.fail, demean = TRUE, series, ...)
## S3 method for class mts
ar.yw(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL,
      na.action = na.fail, demean = TRUE, series,
      var.method = 1, ...)

ar.mle(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL, na.action = na.fail,
       demean = TRUE, series, ...)

## S3 method for class ar
predict(object, newdata, n.ahead = 1, se.fit = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A univariate or multivariate time series.
aic	Logical flag. If TRUE then the Akaike Information Criterion is used to choose the order of the autoregressive model. If FALSE, the model of order order.max is fitted.
order.max	Maximum order (or order) of model to fit. Defaults to the smaller of $N - 1$ and $10 \log_{10}(N)$ where N is the number of observations except for method = "mle" where it is the minimum of this quantity and 12.
method	Character string giving the method used to fit the model. Must be one of the strings in the default argument (the first few characters are sufficient). Defaults to "yule-walker".
na.action	function to be called to handle missing values.
demean	should a mean be estimated during fitting?
series	names for the series. Defaults to deparse(substitute(x)).
var.method	the method to estimate the innovations variance (see 'Details').
...	additional arguments for specific methods.
object	a fit from ar.
newdata	data to which to apply the prediction.

n.ahead	number of steps ahead at which to predict.
se.fit	logical: return estimated standard errors of the prediction error?

Details

For definiteness, note that the AR coefficients have the sign in

$$x_t - \mu = a_1(x_{t-1} - \mu) + \cdots + a_p(x_{t-p} - \mu) + e_t$$

ar is just a wrapper for the functions ar.yw, ar.burg, ar.ols and ar.mle.

Order selection is done by AIC if aic is true. This is problematic, as of the methods here only ar.mle performs true maximum likelihood estimation. The AIC is computed as if the variance estimate were the MLE, omitting the determinant term from the likelihood. Note that this is not the same as the Gaussian likelihood evaluated at the estimated parameter values. In ar.yw the variance matrix of the innovations is computed from the fitted coefficients and the autocovariance of x.

ar.burg allows two methods to estimate the innovations variance and hence AIC. Method 1 is to use the update given by the Levinson-Durbin recursion (Brockwell and Davis, 1991, (8.2.6) on page 242), and follows S-PLUS. Method 2 is the mean of the sum of squares of the forward and backward prediction errors (as in Brockwell and Davis, 1996, page 145). Percival and Walden (1998) discuss both. In the multivariate case the estimated coefficients will depend (slightly) on the variance estimation method.

Remember that ar includes by default a constant in the model, by removing the overall mean of x before fitting the AR model, or (ar.mle) estimating a constant to subtract.

Value

For ar and its methods a list of class "ar" with the following elements:

order	The order of the fitted model. This is chosen by minimizing the AIC if aic = TRUE, otherwise it is order.max.
ar	Estimated autoregression coefficients for the fitted model.
var.pred	The prediction variance: an estimate of the portion of the variance of the time series that is not explained by the autoregressive model.
x.mean	The estimated mean of the series used in fitting and for use in prediction.
x.intercept	(ar.ols only.) The intercept in the model for x - x.mean.
aic	The differences in AIC between each model and the best-fitting model. Note that the latter can have an AIC of -Inf.
n.used	The number of observations in the time series.
order.max	The value of the order.max argument.
partialacf	The estimate of the partial autocorrelation function up to lag order.max.
resid	residuals from the fitted model, conditioning on the first order observations. The first order residuals are set to NA. If x is a time series, so is resid.
method	The value of the method argument.
series	The name(s) of the time series.
frequency	The frequency of the time series.
call	The matched call.
asy.var.coef	(univariate case, order > 0.) The asymptotic-theory variance matrix of the coefficient estimates.

For predict.ar, a time series of predictions, or if se.fit = TRUE, a list with components pred, the predictions, and se, the estimated standard errors. Both components are time series.

Note

Only the univariate case of `ar.mle` is implemented.

Fitting by `method="mle"` to long series can be very slow.

Author(s)

Martyn Plummer. Univariate case of `ar.yw`, `ar.mle` and C code for univariate case of `ar.burg` by B. D. Ripley.

References

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1991) *Time Series and Forecasting Methods.* Second edition. Springer, New York. Section 11.4.

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1996) *Introduction to Time Series and Forecasting.* Springer, New York. Sections 5.1 and 7.6.

Percival, D. P. and Walden, A. T. (1998) *Spectral Analysis for Physical Applications.* Cambridge University Press.

Whittle, P. (1963) On the fitting of multivariate autoregressions and the approximate canonical factorization of a spectral density matrix. *Biometrika* **40**, 129–134.

See Also

`ar.ols`, `arima` for ARMA models; `acf2AR`, for AR construction from the ACF.

`arima.sim` for simulation of AR processes.

Examples

```
ar(lh)
ar(lh, method = "burg")
ar(lh, method = "ols")
ar(lh, FALSE, 4) # fit ar(4)

(sunspot.ar <- ar(sunspot.year))
predict(sunspot.ar, n.ahead = 25)
## try the other methods too

ar(ts.union(BJsales, BJsales.lead))
## Burg is quite different here, as is OLS (see ar.ols)
ar(ts.union(BJsales, BJsales.lead), method = "burg")
```

`ar.ols` *Fit Autoregressive Models to Time Series by OLS*

Description

Fit an autoregressive time series model to the data by ordinary least squares, by default selecting the complexity by AIC.

Usage

```
ar.ols(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL, na.action = na.fail,
       demean = TRUE, intercept = demean, series, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A univariate or multivariate time series.
aic	Logical flag. If TRUE then the Akaike Information Criterion is used to choose the order of the autoregressive model. If FALSE, the model of order order.max is fitted.
order.max	Maximum order (or order) of model to fit. Defaults to $10\log_{10}(N)$ where N is the number of observations.
na.action	function to be called to handle missing values.
demean	should the AR model be for x minus its mean?
intercept	should a separate intercept term be fitted?
series	names for the series. Defaults to deparse(substitute(x)).
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

ar.ols fits the general AR model to a possibly non-stationary and/or multivariate system of series x. The resulting unconstrained least squares estimates are consistent, even if some of the series are non-stationary and/or co-integrated. For definiteness, note that the AR coefficients have the sign in

$$x_t - \mu = a_0 + a_1(x_{t-1} - \mu) + \cdots + a_p(x_{t-p} - \mu) + e_t$$

where a_0 is zero unless intercept is true, and μ is the sample mean if demean is true, zero otherwise.

Order selection is done by AIC if aic is true. This is problematic, as ar.ols does not perform true maximum likelihood estimation. The AIC is computed as if the variance estimate (computed from the variance matrix of the residuals) were the MLE, omitting the determinant term from the likelihood. Note that this is not the same as the Gaussian likelihood evaluated at the estimated parameter values.

Some care is needed if intercept is true and demean is false. Only use this is the series are roughly centred on zero. Otherwise the computations may be inaccurate or fail entirely.

Value

A list of class "ar" with the following elements:

order	The order of the fitted model. This is chosen by minimizing the AIC if aic = TRUE, otherwise it is order.max.
ar	Estimated autoregression coefficients for the fitted model.
var.pred	The prediction variance: an estimate of the portion of the variance of the time series that is not explained by the autoregressive model.
x.mean	The estimated mean (or zero if demean is false) of the series used in fitting and for use in prediction.
x.intercept	The intercept in the model for x - x.mean, or zero if intercept is false.

aic	The differences in AIC between each model and the best-fitting model. Note that the latter can have an AIC of -Inf.
n.used	The number of observations in the time series.
order.max	The value of the order.max argument.
partialacf	NULL. For compatibility with ar.
resid	residuals from the fitted model, conditioning on the first order observations. The first order residuals are set to NA. If x is a time series, so is resid.
method	The character string "Unconstrained LS".
series	The name(s) of the time series.
frequency	The frequency of the time series.
call	The matched call.
asy.se.coef	The asymptotic-theory standard errors of the coefficient estimates.

Author(s)

Adrian Trapletti, Brian Ripley.

References

Luetkepohl, H. (1991): *Introduction to Multiple Time Series Analysis.* Springer Verlag, NY, pp. 368–370.

See Also

ar

Examples

```
ar(lh, method = "burg")
ar.ols(lh)
ar.ols(lh, FALSE, 4) # fit ar(4)

ar.ols(ts.union(BJsales, BJsales.lead))

x <- diff(log(EuStockMarkets))
ar.ols(x, order.max = 6, demean = FALSE, intercept = TRUE)
```

---

arima *ARIMA Modelling of Time Series*

Description

Fit an ARIMA model to a univariate time series.

Usage

```
arima(x, order = c(0L, 0L, 0L),
      seasonal = list(order = c(0L, 0L, 0L), period = NA),
      xreg = NULL, include.mean = TRUE,
      transform.pars = TRUE,
      fixed = NULL, init = NULL,
      method = c("CSS-ML", "ML", "CSS"), n.cond,
      SSinit = c("Gardner1980", "Rossignol2011"),
      optim.method = "BFGS",
      optim.control = list(), kappa = 1e6)
```

Arguments

x	a univariate time series
order	A specification of the non-seasonal part of the ARIMA model: the three integer components (p, d, q) are the AR order, the degree of differencing, and the MA order.
seasonal	A specification of the seasonal part of the ARIMA model, plus the period (which defaults to frequency(x)). This should be a list with components order and period, but a specification of just a numeric vector of length 3 will be turned into a suitable list with the specification as the order.
xreg	Optionally, a vector or matrix of external regressors, which must have the same number of rows as x.
include.mean	Should the ARMA model include a mean/intercept term? The default is TRUE for undifferenced series, and it is ignored for ARIMA models with differencing.
transform.pars	logical; if true, the AR parameters are transformed to ensure that they remain in the region of stationarity. Not used for method = "CSS". For method = "ML", it has been advantageous to set transform.pars = FALSE in some cases, see also fixed.
fixed	optional numeric vector of the same length as the total number of parameters. If supplied, only NA entries in fixed will be varied. transform.pars = TRUE will be overridden (with a warning) if any AR parameters are fixed. It may be wise to set transform.pars = FALSE when fixing MA parameters, especially near non-invertibility.
init	optional numeric vector of initial parameter values. Missing values will be filled in, by zeroes except for regression coefficients. Values already specified in fixed will be ignored.
method	fitting method: maximum likelihood or minimize conditional sum-of-squares. The default (unless there are missing values) is to use conditional-sum-of-squares to find starting values, then maximum likelihood.
n.cond	only used if fitting by conditional-sum-of-squares: the number of initial observations to ignore. It will be ignored if less than the maximum lag of an AR term.
SSinit	a string specifying the algorithm to compute the state-space initialization of the likelihood; see KalmanLike for details.
optim.method	The value passed as the method argument to optim.
optim.control	List of control parameters for optim.
kappa	the prior variance (as a multiple of the innovations variance) for the past observations in a differenced model. Do not reduce this.

Details

Different definitions of ARMA models have different signs for the AR and/or MA coefficients. The definition used here has

$$X_t = a_1 X_{t-1} + \cdots + a_p X_{t-p} + e_t + b_1 e_{t-1} + \cdots + b_q e_{t-q}$$

and so the MA coefficients differ in sign from those of S-PLUS. Further, if `include.mean` is true (the default for an ARMA model), this formula applies to $X - m$ rather than X. For ARIMA models with differencing, the differenced series follows a zero-mean ARMA model. If am `xreg` term is included, a linear regression (with a constant term if `include.mean` is true and there is no differencing) is fitted with an ARMA model for the error term.

The variance matrix of the estimates is found from the Hessian of the log-likelihood, and so may only be a rough guide.

Optimization is done by `optim`. It will work best if the columns in `xreg` are roughly scaled to zero mean and unit variance, but does attempt to estimate suitable scalings.

Value

A list of class `"Arima"` with components:

`coef`	a vector of AR, MA and regression coefficients, which can be extracted by the `coef` method.
`sigma2`	the MLE of the innovations variance.
`var.coef`	the estimated variance matrix of the coefficients `coef`, which can be extracted by the `vcov` method.
`loglik`	the maximized log-likelihood (of the differenced data), or the approximation to it used.
`arma`	A compact form of the specification, as a vector giving the number of AR, MA, seasonal AR and seasonal MA coefficients, plus the period and the number of non-seasonal and seasonal differences.
`aic`	the AIC value corresponding to the log-likelihood. Only valid for `method = "ML"` fits.
`residuals`	the fitted innovations.
`call`	the matched call.
`series`	the name of the series `x`.
`code`	the convergence value returned by `optim`.
`n.cond`	the number of initial observations not used in the fitting.
`model`	A list representing the Kalman Filter used in the fitting. See `KalmanLike`.

Fitting methods

The exact likelihood is computed via a state-space representation of the ARIMA process, and the innovations and their variance found by a Kalman filter. The initialization of the differenced ARMA process uses stationarity and is based on Gardner *et al* (1980). For a differenced process the non-stationary components are given a diffuse prior (controlled by `kappa`). Observations which are still controlled by the diffuse prior (determined by having a Kalman gain of at least `1e4`) are excluded from the likelihood calculations. (This gives comparable results to `arima0` in the absence of missing values, when the observations excluded are precisely those dropped by the differencing.)

Missing values are allowed, and are handled exactly in method "ML".

If transform.pars is true, the optimization is done using an alternative parametrization which is a variation on that suggested by Jones (1980) and ensures that the model is stationary. For an AR(p) model the parametrization is via the inverse tanh of the partial autocorrelations: the same procedure is applied (separately) to the AR and seasonal AR terms. The MA terms are not constrained to be invertible during optimization, but they will be converted to invertible form after optimization if transform.pars is true.

Conditional sum-of-squares is provided mainly for expositional purposes. This computes the sum of squares of the fitted innovations from observation n.cond on, (where n.cond is at least the maximum lag of an AR term), treating all earlier innovations to be zero. Argument n.cond can be used to allow comparability between different fits. The 'part log-likelihood' is the first term, half the log of the estimated mean square. Missing values are allowed, but will cause many of the innovations to be missing.

When regressors are specified, they are orthogonalized prior to fitting unless any of the coefficients is fixed. It can be helpful to roughly scale the regressors to zero mean and unit variance.

Note

The results are likely to be different from S-PLUS's arima.mle, which computes a conditional likelihood and does not include a mean in the model. Further, the convention used by arima.mle reverses the signs of the MA coefficients.

arima is very similar to arima0 for ARMA models or for differenced models without missing values, but handles differenced models with missing values exactly. It is somewhat slower than arima0, particularly for seasonally differenced models.

References

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1996) *Introduction to Time Series and Forecasting.* Springer, New York. Sections 3.3 and 8.3.

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press.

Gardner, G, Harvey, A. C. and Phillips, G. D. A. (1980) Algorithm AS154. An algorithm for exact maximum likelihood estimation of autoregressive-moving average models by means of Kalman filtering. *Applied Statistics* **29**, 311–322.

Harvey, A. C. (1993) *Time Series Models*, 2nd Edition, Harvester Wheatsheaf, sections 3.3 and 4.4.

Jones, R. H. (1980) Maximum likelihood fitting of ARMA models to time series with missing observations. *Technometrics* **22** 389–395.

Ripley, B. D. (2002) Time series in 1.5.0. *R News*, **2/2**, 2–7. http://www.r-project.org/doc/Rnews/Rnews_2002-2.pdf

See Also

predict.Arima, arima.sim for simulating from an ARIMA model, tsdiag, arima0, ar

Examples

```
arima(lh, order = c(1,0,0))
arima(lh, order = c(3,0,0))
arima(lh, order = c(1,0,1))

arima(lh, order = c(3,0,0), method = "CSS")
```

```
arima(USAccDeaths, order = c(0,1,1), seasonal = list(order = c(0,1,1)))
arima(USAccDeaths, order = c(0,1,1), seasonal = list(order = c(0,1,1)),
      method = "CSS") # drops first 13 observations.
# for a model with as few years as this, we want full ML

arima(LakeHuron, order = c(2,0,0), xreg = time(LakeHuron) - 1920)

## presidents contains NAs
## graphs in example(acf) suggest order 1 or 3
require(graphics)
(fit1 <- arima(presidents, c(1, 0, 0)))
tsdiag(fit1)
(fit3 <- arima(presidents, c(3, 0, 0)))  # smaller AIC
tsdiag(fit3)

## An example of ARIMA forecasting:
predict(fit3, 3)
```

`arima.sim` *Simulate from an ARIMA Model*

Description

Simulate from an ARIMA model.

Usage

```
arima.sim(model, n, rand.gen = rnorm, innov = rand.gen(n, ...),
          n.start = NA, start.innov = rand.gen(n.start, ...),
          ...)
```

Arguments

`model`	A list with component `ar` and/or `ma` giving the AR and MA coefficients respectively. Optionally a component `order` can be used. An empty list gives an ARIMA(0, 0, 0) model, that is white noise.
`n`	length of output series, before un-differencing. A strictly positive integer.
`rand.gen`	optional: a function to generate the innovations.
`innov`	an optional times series of innovations. If not provided, `rand.gen` is used.
`n.start`	length of 'burn-in' period. If `NA`, the default, a reasonable value is computed.
`start.innov`	an optional times series of innovations to be used for the burn-in period. If supplied there must be at least `n.start` values (and `n.start` is by default computed inside the function).
`...`	additional arguments for `rand.gen`. Most usefully, the standard deviation of the innovations generated by `rnorm` can be specified by `sd`.

Details

See arima for the precise definition of an ARIMA model.

The ARMA model is checked for stationarity.

ARIMA models are specified via the order component of model, in the same way as for arima. Other aspects of the order component are ignored, but inconsistent specifications of the MA and AR orders are detected. The un-differencing assumes previous values of zero, and to remind the user of this, those values are returned.

Random inputs for the 'burn-in' period are generated by calling rand.gen.

Value

A time-series object of class "ts".

See Also

arima

Examples

```
require(graphics)

arima.sim(n = 63, list(ar = c(0.8897, -0.4858), ma = c(-0.2279, 0.2488)),
          sd = sqrt(0.1796))
# mildly long-tailed
arima.sim(n = 63, list(ar = c(0.8897, -0.4858), ma = c(-0.2279, 0.2488)),
          rand.gen = function(n, ...) sqrt(0.1796) * rt(n, df = 5))

# An ARIMA simulation
ts.sim <- arima.sim(list(order = c(1,1,0), ar = 0.7), n = 200)
ts.plot(ts.sim)
```

---

arima0 *ARIMA Modelling of Time Series – Preliminary Version*

Description

Fit an ARIMA model to a univariate time series, and forecast from the fitted model.

Usage

```
arima0(x, order = c(0, 0, 0),
       seasonal = list(order = c(0, 0, 0), period = NA),
       xreg = NULL, include.mean = TRUE, delta = 0.01,
       transform.pars = TRUE, fixed = NULL, init = NULL,
       method = c("ML", "CSS"), n.cond, optim.control = list())

## S3 method for class arima0
predict(object, n.ahead = 1, newxreg, se.fit = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a univariate time series
order	A specification of the non-seasonal part of the ARIMA model: the three components (p, d, q) are the AR order, the degree of differencing, and the MA order.
seasonal	A specification of the seasonal part of the ARIMA model, plus the period (which defaults to frequency(x)). This should be a list with components order and period, but a specification of just a numeric vector of length 3 will be turned into a suitable list with the specification as the order.
xreg	Optionally, a vector or matrix of external regressors, which must have the same number of rows as x.
include.mean	Should the ARIMA model include a mean term? The default is TRUE for undifferenced series, FALSE for differenced ones (where a mean would not affect the fit nor predictions).
delta	A value to indicate at which point 'fast recursions' should be used. See the 'Details' section.
transform.pars	Logical. If true, the AR parameters are transformed to ensure that they remain in the region of stationarity. Not used for method = "CSS".
fixed	optional numeric vector of the same length as the total number of parameters. If supplied, only NA entries in fixed will be varied. transform.pars = TRUE will be overridden (with a warning) if any ARMA parameters are fixed.
init	optional numeric vector of initial parameter values. Missing values will be filled in, by zeroes except for regression coefficients. Values already specified in fixed will be ignored.
method	Fitting method: maximum likelihood or minimize conditional sum-of-squares.
n.cond	Only used if fitting by conditional-sum-of-squares: the number of initial observations to ignore. It will be ignored if less than the maximum lag of an AR term.
optim.control	List of control parameters for optim.
object	The result of an arima0 fit.
newxreg	New values of xreg to be used for prediction. Must have at least n.ahead rows.
n.ahead	The number of steps ahead for which prediction is required.
se.fit	Logical: should standard errors of prediction be returned?
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Different definitions of ARMA models have different signs for the AR and/or MA coefficients. The definition here has

$$X_t = a_1 X_{t-1} + \cdots + a_p X_{t-p} + e_t + b_1 e_{t-1} + \ldots + b_q e_{t-q}$$

and so the MA coefficients differ in sign from those of S-PLUS. Further, if include.mean is true, this formula applies to $X - m$ rather than X. For ARIMA models with differencing, the differenced series follows a zero-mean ARMA model.

The variance matrix of the estimates is found from the Hessian of the log-likelihood, and so may only be a rough guide, especially for fits close to the boundary of invertibility.

Optimization is done by optim. It will work best if the columns in xreg are roughly scaled to zero mean and unit variance, but does attempt to estimate suitable scalings.

Finite-history prediction is used. This is only statistically efficient if the MA part of the fit is invertible, so predict.arima0 will give a warning for non-invertible MA models.

Value

For arima0, a list of class "arima0" with components:

coef	a vector of AR, MA and regression coefficients,
sigma2	the MLE of the innovations variance.
var.coef	the estimated variance matrix of the coefficients coef.
loglik	the maximized log-likelihood (of the differenced data), or the approximation to it used.
arma	A compact form of the specification, as a vector giving the number of AR, MA, seasonal AR and seasonal MA coefficients, plus the period and the number of non-seasonal and seasonal differences.
aic	the AIC value corresponding to the log-likelihood. Only valid for method = "ML" fits.
residuals	the fitted innovations.
call	the matched call.
series	the name of the series x.
convergence	the value returned by optim.
n.cond	the number of initial observations not used in the fitting.

For predict.arima0, a time series of predictions, or if se.fit = TRUE, a list with components pred, the predictions, and se, the estimated standard errors. Both components are time series.

Fitting methods

The exact likelihood is computed via a state-space representation of the ARMA process, and the innovations and their variance found by a Kalman filter based on Gardner *et al* (1980). This has the option to switch to 'fast recursions' (assume an effectively infinite past) if the innovations variance is close enough to its asymptotic bound. The argument delta sets the tolerance: at its default value the approximation is normally negligible and the speed-up considerable. Exact computations can be ensured by setting delta to a negative value.

If transform.pars is true, the optimization is done using an alternative parametrization which is a variation on that suggested by Jones (1980) and ensures that the model is stationary. For an AR(p) model the parametrization is via the inverse tanh of the partial autocorrelations: the same procedure is applied (separately) to the AR and seasonal AR terms. The MA terms are also constrained to be invertible during optimization by the same transformation if transform.pars is true. Note that the MLE for MA terms does sometimes occur for MA polynomials with unit roots: such models can be fitted by using transform.pars = FALSE and specifying a good set of initial values (often obtainable from a fit with transform.pars = TRUE).

Missing values are allowed, but any missing values will force delta to be ignored and full recursions used. Note that missing values will be propagated by differencing, so the procedure used in this function is not fully efficient in that case.

Conditional sum-of-squares is provided mainly for expositional purposes. This computes the sum of squares of the fitted innovations from observation n.cond on, (where n.cond is at least the

maximum lag of an AR term), treating all earlier innovations to be zero. Argument `n.cond` can be used to allow comparability between different fits. The 'part log-likelihood' is the first term, half the log of the estimated mean square. Missing values are allowed, but will cause many of the innovations to be missing.

When regressors are specified, they are orthogonalized prior to fitting unless any of the coefficients is fixed. It can be helpful to roughly scale the regressors to zero mean and unit variance.

Note

This is a preliminary version, and will be replaced by `arima`.

The standard errors of prediction exclude the uncertainty in the estimation of the ARMA model and the regression coefficients.

The results are likely to be different from S-PLUS's `arima.mle`, which computes a conditional likelihood and does not include a mean in the model. Further, the convention used by `arima.mle` reverses the signs of the MA coefficients.

References

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1996) *Introduction to Time Series and Forecasting.* Springer, New York. Sections 3.3 and 8.3.

Gardner, G, Harvey, A. C. and Phillips, G. D. A. (1980) Algorithm AS154. An algorithm for exact maximum likelihood estimation of autoregressive-moving average models by means of Kalman filtering. *Applied Statistics* **29**, 311–322.

Harvey, A. C. (1993) *Time Series Models*, 2nd Edition, Harvester Wheatsheaf, sections 3.3 and 4.4.

Harvey, A. C. and McKenzie, C. R. (1982) Algorithm AS182. An algorithm for finite sample prediction from ARIMA processes. *Applied Statistics* **31**, 180–187.

Jones, R. H. (1980) Maximum likelihood fitting of ARMA models to time series with missing observations. *Technometrics* **22** 389–395.

See Also

`arima`, `ar`, `tsdiag`

Examples

```
## Not run: arima0(lh, order = c(1,0,0))
arima0(lh, order = c(3,0,0))
arima0(lh, order = c(1,0,1))
predict(arima0(lh, order = c(3,0,0)), n.ahead = 12)

arima0(lh, order = c(3,0,0), method = "CSS")

# for a model with as few years as this, we want full ML
(fit <- arima0(USAccDeaths, order = c(0,1,1),
               seasonal = list(order=c(0,1,1)), delta = -1))
predict(fit, n.ahead = 6)

arima0(LakeHuron, order = c(2,0,0), xreg = time(LakeHuron)-1920)
## Not run:
## presidents contains NAs
## graphs in example(acf) suggest order 1 or 3
(fit1 <- arima0(presidents, c(1, 0, 0), delta = -1))  # avoid warning
tsdiag(fit1)
```

```
(fit3 <- arima0(presidents, c(3, 0, 0), delta = -1))  # smaller AIC
tsdiag(fit3)
## End(Not run)
```

ARMAacf *Compute Theoretical ACF for an ARMA Process*

Description

Compute the theoretical autocorrelation function or partial autocorrelation function for an ARMA process.

Usage

```
ARMAacf(ar = numeric(), ma = numeric(), lag.max = r, pacf = FALSE)
```

Arguments

ar	numeric vector of AR coefficients
ma	numeric vector of MA coefficients
lag.max	integer. Maximum lag required. Defaults to max(p, q+1), where p, q are the numbers of AR and MA terms respectively.
pacf	logical. Should the partial autocorrelations be returned?

Details

The methods used follow Brockwell & Davis (1991, section 3.3). Their equations (3.3.8) are solved for the autocovariances at lags $0, \ldots, \max(p, q+1)$, and the remaining autocorrelations are given by a recursive filter.

Value

A vector of (partial) autocorrelations, named by the lags.

References

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1991) *Time Series: Theory and Methods*, Second Edition. Springer.

See Also

arima, ARMAtoMA, acf2AR for inverting part of ARMAacf; further filter.

Examples

```
ARMAacf(c(1.0, -0.25), 1.0, lag.max = 10)

## Example from Brockwell & Davis (1991, pp.92-4)
## answer 2^(-n) * (32/3 + 8 * n) /(32/3)
n <- 1:10; 2^(-n) * (32/3 + 8 * n) /(32/3)
ARMAacf(c(1.0, -0.25), 1.0, lag.max = 10, pacf = TRUE)
zapsmall(ARMAacf(c(1.0, -0.25), lag.max = 10, pacf = TRUE))

## Cov-Matrix of length-7 sub-sample of AR(1) example:
toeplitz(ARMAacf(0.8, lag.max = 7))
```

ARMAtoMA *Convert ARMA Process to Infinite MA Process*

Description

Convert ARMA process to infinite MA process.

Usage

```
ARMAtoMA(ar = numeric(), ma = numeric(), lag.max)
```

Arguments

`ar`	numeric vector of AR coefficients
`ma`	numeric vector of MA coefficients
`lag.max`	Largest MA(Inf) coefficient required.

Value

A vector of coefficients.

References

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1991) *Time Series: Theory and Methods*, Second Edition. Springer.

See Also

`arima`, `ARMAacf`.

Examples

```
ARMAtoMA(c(1.0, -0.25), 1.0, 10)
## Example from Brockwell & Davis (1991, p.92)
## answer (1 + 3*n)*2^(-n)
n <- 1:10; (1 + 3*n)*2^(-n)
```

`as.hclust` *Convert Objects to Class hclust*

Description

Converts objects from other hierarchical clustering functions to class `"hclust"`.

Usage

```
as.hclust(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	Hierarchical clustering object
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Currently there is only support for converting objects of class `"twins"` as produced by the functions `diana` and `agnes` from the package **cluster**. The default method throws an error unless passed an `"hclust"` object.

Value

An object of class `"hclust"`.

See Also

`hclust`, and from package **cluster**, `diana` and `agnes`

Examples

```
x <- matrix(rnorm(30), ncol = 3)
hc <- hclust(dist(x), method = "complete")

if(require("cluster", quietly = TRUE)) {# is a recommended package
  ag <- agnes(x, method = "complete")
  hcag <- as.hclust(ag)
  ## The dendrograms order slightly differently:
  op <- par(mfrow = c(1,2))
  plot(hc) ;  mtext("hclust", side = 1)
  plot(hcag); mtext("agnes",  side = 1)
  detach("package:cluster")
}
```

asOneSidedFormula *Convert to One-Sided Formula*

Description

Names, expressions, numeric values, and character strings are converted to one-sided formulae. If `object` is a formula, it must be one-sided, in which case it is returned unaltered.

Usage

```
asOneSidedFormula(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	a one-sided formula, an expression, a numeric value, or a character string.

Value

a one-sided formula representing `object`

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`formula`

Examples

```
asOneSidedFormula("age")
asOneSidedFormula(~ age)
```

ave *Group Averages Over Level Combinations of Factors*

Description

Subsets of `x[]` are averaged, where each subset consist of those observations with the same factor levels.

Usage

```
ave(x, ..., FUN = mean)
```

Arguments

`x`	A numeric.
`...`	Grouping variables, typically factors, all of the same `length` as `x`.
`FUN`	Function to apply for each factor level combination.

Value

A numeric vector, say y of length length(x). If ... is g1, g2, e.g., y[i] is equal to FUN(x[j], for all j with g1[j] == g1[i] and g2[j] == g2[i]).

See Also

mean, median.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

ave(1:3)  # no grouping -> grand mean

attach(warpbreaks)
ave(breaks, wool)
ave(breaks, tension)
ave(breaks, tension, FUN = function(x) mean(x, trim = 0.1))
plot(breaks, main =
     "ave( Warpbreaks )  for   wool  x  tension  combinations")
lines(ave(breaks, wool, tension             ), type = "s", col = "blue")
lines(ave(breaks, wool, tension, FUN = median), type = "s", col = "green")
legend(40, 70, c("mean", "median"), lty = 1,
      col = c("blue","green"), bg = "gray90")
detach()
```

---

bandwidth *Bandwidth Selectors for Kernel Density Estimation*

Description

Bandwidth selectors for Gaussian kernels in density.

Usage

```
bw.nrd0(x)

bw.nrd(x)

bw.ucv(x, nb = 1000, lower = 0.1 * hmax, upper = hmax,
       tol = 0.1 * lower)

bw.bcv(x, nb = 1000, lower = 0.1 * hmax, upper = hmax,
       tol = 0.1 * lower)

bw.SJ(x, nb = 1000, lower = 0.1 * hmax, upper = hmax,
      method = c("ste", "dpi"), tol = 0.1 * lower)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector.
nb	number of bins to use.
lower, upper	range over which to minimize. The default is almost always satisfactory. hmax is calculated internally from a normal reference bandwidth.
method	either "ste" ("solve-the-equation") or "dpi" ("direct plug-in").
tol	for method "ste", the convergence tolerance for uniroot. The default leads to bandwidth estimates with only slightly more than one digit accuracy, which is sufficient for practical density estimation, but possibly not for theoretical simulation studies.

Details

bw.nrd0 implements a rule-of-thumb for choosing the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator. It defaults to 0.9 times the minimum of the standard deviation and the interquartile range divided by 1.34 times the sample size to the negative one-fifth power (= Silverman's 'rule of thumb', Silverman (1986, page 48, eqn (3.31)) *unless* the quartiles coincide when a positive result will be guaranteed.

bw.nrd is the more common variation given by Scott (1992), using factor 1.06.

bw.ucv and bw.bcv implement unbiased and biased cross-validation respectively.

bw.SJ implements the methods of Sheather & Jones (1991) to select the bandwidth using pilot estimation of derivatives.
The algorithm for method "ste" solves an equation (via uniroot) and because of that, enlarges the interval c(lower, upper) when the boundaries were not user-specified and do not bracket the root.

Value

A bandwidth on a scale suitable for the bw argument of density.

References

Scott, D. W. (1992) *Multivariate Density Estimation: Theory, Practice, and Visualization.* Wiley.

Sheather, S. J. and Jones, M. C. (1991) A reliable data-based bandwidth selection method for kernel density estimation. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society series B*, **53**, 683–690.

Silverman, B. W. (1986) *Density Estimation.* London: Chapman and Hall.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Springer.

See Also

density.

bandwidth.nrd, ucv, bcv and width.SJ in package **MASS**, which are all scaled to the width argument of density and so give answers four times as large.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(density(precip, n = 1000))
rug(precip)
lines(density(precip, bw = "nrd"), col = 2)
lines(density(precip, bw = "ucv"), col = 3)
lines(density(precip, bw = "bcv"), col = 4)
lines(density(precip, bw = "SJ-ste"), col = 5)
lines(density(precip, bw = "SJ-dpi"), col = 6)
legend(55, 0.035,
       legend = c("nrd0", "nrd", "ucv", "bcv", "SJ-ste", "SJ-dpi"),
       col = 1:6, lty = 1)
```

---

bartlett.test *Bartlett Test of Homogeneity of Variances*

Description

Performs Bartlett's test of the null that the variances in each of the groups (samples) are the same.

Usage

```
bartlett.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
bartlett.test(x, g, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
bartlett.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector of data values, or a list of numeric data vectors representing the respective samples, or fitted linear model objects (inheriting from class "lm").
g	a vector or factor object giving the group for the corresponding elements of x. Ignored if x is a list.
formula	a formula of the form lhs ~ rhs where lhs gives the data values and rhs the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

If x is a list, its elements are taken as the samples or fitted linear models to be compared for homogeneity of variances. In this case, the elements must either all be numeric data vectors or fitted linear model objects, g is ignored, and one can simply use `bartlett.test(x)` to perform the test. If the samples are not yet contained in a list, use `bartlett.test(list(x, ...))`.

Otherwise, x must be a numeric data vector, and g must be a vector or factor object of the same length as x giving the group for the corresponding elements of x.

Value

A list of class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	Bartlett's K-squared test statistic.
`parameter`	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic.
`p.value`	the p-value of the test.
`method`	the character string `"Bartlett test of homogeneity of variances"`.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

Bartlett, M. S. (1937). Properties of sufficiency and statistical tests. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series A* **160**, 268–282.

See Also

`var.test` for the special case of comparing variances in two samples from normal distributions; `fligner.test` for a rank-based (nonparametric) k-sample test for homogeneity of variances; `ansari.test` and `mood.test` for two rank based two-sample tests for difference in scale.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays)
bartlett.test(InsectSprays$count, InsectSprays$spray)
bartlett.test(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays)
```

Beta *The Beta Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the Beta distribution with parameters shape1 and shape2 (and optional non-centrality parameter ncp).

Usage

```
dbeta(x, shape1, shape2, ncp = 0, log = FALSE)
pbeta(q, shape1, shape2, ncp = 0, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qbeta(p, shape1, shape2, ncp = 0, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rbeta(n, shape1, shape2, ncp = 0)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`shape1, shape2`	non-negative parameters of the Beta distribution.
`ncp`	non-centrality parameter.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \le x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The Beta distribution with parameters `shape1` $= a$ and `shape2` $= b$ has density

$$f(x) = \frac{\Gamma(a+b)}{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b)} x^{a-1}(1-x)^{b-1}$$

for $a > 0$, $b > 0$ and $0 \le x \le 1$ where the boundary values at $x = 0$ or $x = 1$ are defined as by continuity (as limits).
The mean is $a/(a+b)$ and the variance is $ab/((a+b)^2(a+b+1))$. These moments and all distributional properties can be defined as limits (leading to point masses at 0, 1/2, or 1) when a or b are zero or infinite, and the corresponding `[dpqr]beta()` functions are defined correspondingly.

`pbeta` is closely related to the incomplete beta function. As defined by Abramowitz and Stegun 6.6.1

$$B_x(a,b) = \int_0^x t^{a-1}(1-t)^{b-1} dt,$$

and 6.6.2 $I_x(a,b) = B_x(a,b)/B(a,b)$ where $B(a,b) = B_1(a,b)$ is the Beta function (`beta`).

$I_x(a,b)$ is `pbeta(x, a, b)`.

The noncentral Beta distribution (with `ncp` $= \lambda$) is defined (Johnson *et al*, 1995, pp. 502) as the distribution of $X/(X+Y)$ where $X \sim \chi^2_{2a}(\lambda)$ and $Y \sim \chi^2_{2b}$.

Value

`dbeta` gives the density, `pbeta` the distribution function, `qbeta` the quantile function, and `rbeta` generates random deviates.

Invalid arguments will result in return value `NaN`, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rbeta`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

Supplying `ncp = 0` uses the algorithm for the non-central distribution, which is not the same algorithm used if `ncp` is omitted. This is to give consistent behaviour in extreme cases with values of `ncp` very near zero.

Source

The central dbeta is based on a binomial probability, using code contributed by Catherine Loader (see dbinom) if either shape parameter is larger than one, otherwise directly from the definition. The non-central case is based on the derivation as a Poisson mixture of betas (Johnson *et al*, 1995, pp. 502–3).

The central pbeta uses a C translation (and enhancement for log_p = TRUE) of

Didonato, A. and Morris, A., Jr, (1992) Algorithm 708: Significant digit computation of the incomplete beta function ratios, *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **18**, 360–373. (See also Brown, B. and Lawrence Levy, L. (1994) Certification of algorithm 708: Significant digit computation of the incomplete beta, *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **20**, 393–397.)

The non-central pbeta uses a C translation of

Lenth, R. V. (1987) Algorithm AS226: Computing noncentral beta probabilities. *Appl. Statist*, **36**, 241–244, incorporating
Frick, H. (1990)'s AS R84, *Appl. Statist*, **39**, 311–2, and
Lam, M.L. (1995)'s AS R95, *Appl. Statist*, **44**, 551–2.

This computes the lower tail only, so the upper tail suffers from cancellation and a warning will be given when this is likely to be significant.

The central case of qbeta is based on a C translation of

Cran, G. W., K. J. Martin and G. E. Thomas (1977). Remark AS R19 and Algorithm AS 109, *Applied Statistics*, **26**, 111–114, and subsequent remarks (AS83 and correction).

The central case of rbeta is based on a C translation of

R. C. H. Cheng (1978). Generating beta variates with nonintegral shape parameters. *Communications of the ACM*, **21**, 317–322.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Abramowitz, M. and Stegun, I. A. (1972) *Handbook of Mathematical Functions.* New York: Dover. Chapter 6: Gamma and Related Functions.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 2, especially chapter 25. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions.

beta for the Beta function.

Examples

```
x <- seq(0, 1, length = 21)
dbeta(x, 1, 1)
pbeta(x, 1, 1)

## Visualization, including limit cases:
pl.beta <- function(a,b, asp = if(isLim) 1, ylim = if(isLim) c(0,1.1)) {
  if(isLim <- a == 0 || b == 0 || a == Inf || b == Inf) {
    eps <- 1e-10
    x <- c(0, eps, (1:7)/16, 1/2+c(-eps,0,eps), (9:15)/16, 1-eps, 1)
  } else {
```

```
    x <- seq(0, 1, length = 1025)
  }
  fx <- cbind(dbeta(x, a,b), pbeta(x, a,b), qbeta(x, a,b))
  f <- fx; f[fx == Inf] <- 1e100
  matplot(x, f, ylab="", type="l", ylim=ylim, asp=asp,
          main = sprintf("[dpq]beta(x, a=%g, b=%g)", a,b))
  abline(0,1,     col="gray", lty=3)
  abline(h = 0:1, col="gray", lty=3)
  legend("top", paste0(c("d","p","q"), "beta(x, a,b)"),
         col=1:3, lty=1:3, bty = "n")
  invisible(cbind(x, fx))
}
pl.beta(3,1)

pl.beta(2, 4)
pl.beta(3, 7)
pl.beta(3, 7, asp=1)

pl.beta(0, 0)   ## point masses at  {0, 1}

pl.beta(0, 2)   ## point mass at 0 ; the same as
pl.beta(1, Inf)

pl.beta(Inf, 2) ## point mass at 1 ; the same as
pl.beta(3, 0)

pl.beta(Inf, Inf)# point mass at 1/2
```

`binom.test` *Exact Binomial Test*

Description

Performs an exact test of a simple null hypothesis about the probability of success in a Bernoulli experiment.

Usage

```
binom.test(x, n, p = 0.5,
           alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
           conf.level = 0.95)
```

Arguments

`x`	number of successes, or a vector of length 2 giving the numbers of successes and failures, respectively.
`n`	number of trials; ignored if `x` has length 2.
`p`	hypothesized probability of success.
`alternative`	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of `"two.sided"`, `"greater"` or `"less"`. You can specify just the initial letter.
`conf.level`	confidence level for the returned confidence interval.

Details

Confidence intervals are obtained by a procedure first given in Clopper and Pearson (1934). This guarantees that the confidence level is at least `conf.level`, but in general does not give the shortest-length confidence intervals.

Value

A list with class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	the number of successes.
`parameter`	the number of trials.
`p.value`	the p-value of the test.
`conf.int`	a confidence interval for the probability of success.
`estimate`	the estimated probability of success.
`null.value`	the probability of success under the null, `p`.
`alternative`	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
`method`	the character string `"Exact binomial test"`.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

Clopper, C. J. & Pearson, E. S. (1934). The use of confidence or fiducial limits illustrated in the case of the binomial. *Biometrika*, **26**, 404–413.

William J. Conover (1971), *Practical nonparametric statistics*. New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 97–104.

Myles Hollander & Douglas A. Wolfe (1973), *Nonparametric Statistical Methods.* New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 15–22.

See Also

`prop.test` for a general (approximate) test for equal or given proportions.

Examples

```
## Conover (1971), p. 97f.
## Under (the assumption of) simple Mendelian inheritance, a cross
##  between plants of two particular genotypes produces progeny 1/4 of
##  which are "dwarf" and 3/4 of which are "giant", respectively.
##  In an experiment to determine if this assumption is reasonable, a
##  cross results in progeny having 243 dwarf and 682 giant plants.
##  If "giant" is taken as success, the null hypothesis is that p =
##  3/4 and the alternative that p != 3/4.
binom.test(c(682, 243), p = 3/4)
binom.test(682, 682 + 243, p = 3/4)   # The same.
## => Data are in agreement with the null hypothesis.
```

`Binomial` *The Binomial Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the binomial distribution with parameters `size` and `prob`.

This is conventionally interpreted as the number of 'successes' in `size` trials.

Usage

```
dbinom(x, size, prob, log = FALSE)
pbinom(q, size, prob, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qbinom(p, size, prob, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rbinom(n, size, prob)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`size`	number of trials (zero or more).
`prob`	probability of success on each trial.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The binomial distribution with `size` $= n$ and `prob` $= p$ has density

$$p(x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$$

for $x = 0, \ldots, n$. Note that binomial *coefficients* can be computed by `choose` in .

If an element of `x` is not integer, the result of `dbinom` is zero, with a warning.

$p(x)$ is computed using Loader's algorithm, see the reference below.

The quantile is defined as the smallest value x such that $F(x) \geq p$, where F is the distribution function.

Value

`dbinom` gives the density, `pbinom` gives the distribution function, `qbinom` gives the quantile function and `rbinom` generates random deviates.

If `size` is not an integer, `NaN` is returned.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rbinom`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Source

For `dbinom` a saddle-point expansion is used: see

Catherine Loader (2000). *Fast and Accurate Computation of Binomial Probabilities*; available from `http://www.herine.net/stat/software/dbinom.html`.

`pbinom` uses `pbeta`.

`qbinom` uses the Cornish–Fisher Expansion to include a skewness correction to a normal approximation, followed by a search.

`rbinom` (for `size < .Machine$integer.max`) is based on

Kachitvichyanukul, V. and Schmeiser, B. W. (1988) Binomial random variate generation. *Communications of the ACM*, **31**, 216–222.

For larger values it uses inversion.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including `dnbinom` for the negative binomial, and `dpois` for the Poisson distribution.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
# Compute P(45 < X < 55) for X Binomial(100,0.5)
sum(dbinom(46:54, 100, 0.5))

## Using "log = TRUE" for an extended range :
n <- 2000
k <- seq(0, n, by = 20)
plot (k, dbinom(k, n, pi/10, log = TRUE), type = "l", ylab = "log density",
      main = "dbinom(*, log=TRUE) is better than  log(dbinom(*))")
lines(k, log(dbinom(k, n, pi/10)), col = "red", lwd = 2)
## extreme points are omitted since dbinom gives 0.
mtext("dbinom(k, log=TRUE)", adj = 0)
mtext("extended range", adj = 0, line = -1, font = 4)
mtext("log(dbinom(k))", col = "red", adj = 1)
```

`biplot` *Biplot of Multivariate Data*

Description

Plot a biplot on the current graphics device.

Usage

```
biplot(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
biplot(x, y, var.axes = TRUE, col, cex = rep(par("cex"), 2),
       xlabs = NULL, ylabs = NULL, expand = 1,
       xlim  = NULL, ylim  = NULL, arrow.len = 0.1,
       main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	The biplot, a fitted object. For biplot.default, the first set of points (a two-column matrix), usually associated with observations.
y	The second set of points (a two-column matrix), usually associated with variables.
var.axes	If TRUE the second set of points have arrows representing them as (unscaled) axes.
col	A vector of length 2 giving the colours for the first and second set of points respectively (and the corresponding axes). If a single colour is specified it will be used for both sets. If missing the default colour is looked for in the palette: if there it and the next colour as used, otherwise the first two colours of the palette are used.
cex	The character expansion factor used for labelling the points. The labels can be of different sizes for the two sets by supplying a vector of length two.
xlabs	A vector of character strings to label the first set of points: the default is to use the row dimname of x, or 1:n if the dimname is NULL.
ylabs	A vector of character strings to label the second set of points: the default is to use the row dimname of y, or 1:n if the dimname is NULL.
expand	An expansion factor to apply when plotting the second set of points relative to the first. This can be used to tweak the scaling of the two sets to a physically comparable scale.
arrow.len	The length of the arrow heads on the axes plotted in var.axes is true. The arrow head can be suppressed by arrow.len = 0.
xlim, ylim	Limits for the x and y axes in the units of the first set of variables.
main, sub, xlab, ylab, ...	graphical parameters.

Details

A biplot is plot which aims to represent both the observations and variables of a matrix of multivariate data on the same plot. There are many variations on biplots (see the references) and perhaps the most widely used one is implemented by biplot.princomp. The function biplot.default merely provides the underlying code to plot two sets of variables on the same figure.

Graphical parameters can also be given to biplot: the size of xlabs and ylabs is controlled by cex.

Side Effects

a plot is produced on the current graphics device.

References

K. R. Gabriel (1971). The biplot graphical display of matrices with application to principal component analysis. *Biometrika* **58**, 453–467.

J.C. Gower and D. J. Hand (1996). *Biplots*. Chapman & Hall.

See Also

biplot.princomp, also for examples.

`biplot.princomp` *Biplot for Principal Components*

Description

Produces a biplot (in the strict sense) from the output of `princomp` or `prcomp`

Usage

```
## S3 method for class prcomp
biplot(x, choices = 1:2, scale = 1, pc.biplot = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class princomp
biplot(x, choices = 1:2, scale = 1, pc.biplot = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `"princomp"`.
`choices`	length 2 vector specifying the components to plot. Only the default is a biplot in the strict sense.
`scale`	The variables are scaled by `lambda ^ scale` and the observations are scaled by `lambda ^ (1-scale)` where `lambda` are the singular values as computed by `princomp`. Normally `0 <= scale <= 1`, and a warning will be issued if the specified `scale` is outside this range.
`pc.biplot`	If true, use what Gabriel (1971) refers to as a "principal component biplot", with `lambda = 1` and observations scaled up by sqrt(n) and variables scaled down by sqrt(n). Then inner products between variables approximate covariances and distances between observations approximate Mahalanobis distance.
`...`	optional arguments to be passed to `biplot.default`.

Details

This is a method for the generic function `biplot`. There is considerable confusion over the precise definitions: those of the original paper, Gabriel (1971), are followed here. Gabriel and Odoroff (1990) use the same definitions, but their plots actually correspond to `pc.biplot = TRUE`.

Side Effects

a plot is produced on the current graphics device.

References

Gabriel, K. R. (1971). The biplot graphical display of matrices with applications to principal component analysis. *Biometrika*, **58**, 453–467.

Gabriel, K. R. and Odoroff, C. L. (1990). Biplots in biomedical research. *Statistics in Medicine*, **9**, 469–485.

See Also

`biplot`, `princomp`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
biplot(princomp(USArrests))
```

`birthday` *Probability of coincidences*

Description

Computes answers to a generalised *birthday paradox* problem. `pbirthday` computes the probability of a coincidence and `qbirthday` computes the smallest number of observations needed to have at least a specified probability of coincidence.

Usage

```
qbirthday(prob = 0.5, classes = 365, coincident = 2)
pbirthday(n, classes = 365, coincident = 2)
```

Arguments

`classes`	How many distinct categories the people could fall into
`prob`	The desired probability of coincidence
`n`	The number of people
`coincident`	The number of people to fall in the same category

Details

The birthday paradox is that a very small number of people, 23, suffices to have a 50–50 chance that two or more of them have the same birthday. This function generalises the calculation to probabilities other than 0.5, numbers of coincident events other than 2, and numbers of classes other than 365.

The formula used is approximate for `coincident > 2`. The approximation is very good for moderate values of `prob` but less good for very small probabilities.

Value

`qbirthday`	Minimum number of people needed for a probability of at least `prob` that `k` or more of them have the same one out of `classes` equiprobable labels.
`pbirthday`	Probability of the specified coincidence.

References

Diaconis, P. and Mosteller F. (1989) Methods for studying coincidences. *J. American Statistical Association*, **84**, 853–861.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## the standard version
qbirthday() # 23
## probability of > 2 people with the same birthday
pbirthday(23, coincident = 3)

## examples from Diaconis & Mosteller p. 858.
## coincidence is that husband, wife, daughter all born on the 16th
qbirthday(classes = 30, coincident = 3) # approximately 18
qbirthday(coincident = 4)  # exact value 187
qbirthday(coincident = 10) # exact value 1181

## same 4-digit PIN number
qbirthday(classes = 10^4)

## 0.9 probability of three or more coincident birthdays
qbirthday(coincident = 3, prob = 0.9)

## Chance of 4 or more coincident birthdays in 150 people
pbirthday(150, coincident = 4)

## 100 or more coincident birthdays in 1000 people: very rare
pbirthday(1000, coincident = 100)
```

`Box.test` *Box-Pierce and Ljung-Box Tests*

Description

Compute the Box–Pierce or Ljung–Box test statistic for examining the null hypothesis of independence in a given time series. These are sometimes known as 'portmanteau' tests.

Usage

```
Box.test(x, lag = 1, type = c("Box-Pierce", "Ljung-Box"), fitdf = 0)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric vector or univariate time series.
`lag`	the statistic will be based on `lag` autocorrelation coefficients.
`type`	test to be performed: partial matching is used.
`fitdf`	number of degrees of freedom to be subtracted if `x` is a series of residuals.

Details

These tests are sometimes applied to the residuals from an `ARMA(p, q)` fit, in which case the references suggest a better approximation to the null-hypothesis distribution is obtained by setting `fitdf = p+q`, provided of course that `lag > fitdf`.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the test statistic.
parameter	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic (taking fitdf into account.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
method	a character string indicating which type of test was performed.
data.name	a character string giving the name of the data.

Note

Missing values are not handled.

Author(s)

A. Trapletti

References

Box, G. E. P. and Pierce, D. A. (1970), Distribution of residual correlations in autoregressive-integrated moving average time series models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **65**, 1509–1526.

Ljung, G. M. and Box, G. E. P. (1978), On a measure of lack of fit in time series models. *Biometrika* **65**, 297–303.

Harvey, A. C. (1993) *Time Series Models*. 2nd Edition, Harvester Wheatsheaf, NY, pp. 44, 45.

Examples

```
x <- rnorm (100)
Box.test (x, lag = 1)
Box.test (x, lag = 1, type = "Ljung")
```

C *Sets Contrasts for a Factor*

Description

Sets the "contrasts" attribute for the factor.

Usage

```
C(object, contr, how.many, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a factor or ordered factor
contr	which contrasts to use. Can be a matrix with one row for each level of the factor or a suitable function like contr.poly or a character string giving the name of the function
how.many	the number of contrasts to set, by default one less than nlevels(object).
...	additional arguments for the function contr.

Details

For compatibility with S, `contr` can be `treatment`, `helmert`, `sum` or `poly` (without quotes) as shorthand for `contr.treatment` and so on.

Value

The factor `object` with the `"contrasts"` attribute set.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical models.* Chapter 2 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`contrasts`, `contr.sum`, etc.

Examples

```
## reset contrasts to defaults
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
tens <- with(warpbreaks, C(tension, poly, 1))
attributes(tens)
## tension SHOULD be an ordered factor, but as it is not we can use
aov(breaks ~ wool + tens + tension, data = warpbreaks)

## show the use of ...  The default contrast is contr.treatment here
summary(lm(breaks ~ wool + C(tension, base = 2), data = warpbreaks))


# following on from help(esoph)
model3 <- glm(cbind(ncases, ncontrols) ~ agegp + C(tobgp, , 1) +
     C(alcgp, , 1), data = esoph, family = binomial())
summary(model3)
```

---

cancor *Canonical Correlations*

Description

Compute the canonical correlations between two data matrices.

Usage

```
cancor(x, y, xcenter = TRUE, ycenter = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric matrix ($n \times p_1$), containing the x coordinates.
y	numeric matrix ($n \times p_2$), containing the y coordinates.

xcenter	logical or numeric vector of length p_1, describing any centering to be done on the x values before the analysis. If TRUE (default), subtract the column means. If FALSE, do not adjust the columns. Otherwise, a vector of values to be subtracted from the columns.
ycenter	analogous to xcenter, but for the y values.

Details

The canonical correlation analysis seeks linear combinations of the y variables which are well explained by linear combinations of the x variables. The relationship is symmetric as 'well explained' is measured by correlations.

Value

A list containing the following components:

cor	correlations.
xcoef	estimated coefficients for the x variables.
ycoef	estimated coefficients for the y variables.
xcenter	the values used to adjust the x variables.
ycenter	the values used to adjust the x variables.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Hotelling H. (1936). Relations between two sets of variables. *Biometrika*, **28**, 321–327.

Seber, G. A. F. (1984). *Multivariate Observations*. New York: Wiley, p. 506f.

See Also

qr, svd.

Examples

```
## signs of results are random
pop <- LifeCycleSavings[, 2:3]
oec <- LifeCycleSavings[, -(2:3)]
cancor(pop, oec)

x <- matrix(rnorm(150), 50, 3)
y <- matrix(rnorm(250), 50, 5)
(cxy <- cancor(x, y))
all(abs(cor(x %*% cxy$xcoef,
            y %*% cxy$ycoef)[,1:3] - diag(cxy $ cor)) < 1e-15)
all(abs(cor(x %*% cxy$xcoef) - diag(3)) < 1e-15)
all(abs(cor(y %*% cxy$ycoef) - diag(5)) < 1e-15)
```

case+variable.names *Case and Variable Names of Fitted Models*

Description

Simple utilities returning (non-missing) case names, and (non-eliminated) variable names.

Usage

```
case.names(object, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
case.names(object, full = FALSE, ...)

variable.names(object, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
variable.names(object, full = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object, typically a fitted model.
full	logical; if TRUE, all names (including zero weights, ...) are returned.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

A character vector.

See Also

lm; further, all.names, all.vars for functions with a similar name but only slightly related purpose.

Examples

```
x <- 1:20
y <-  setNames(x + (x/4 - 2)^3 + rnorm(20, sd = 3),
               paste("O", x, sep = "."))
ww <- rep(1, 20); ww[13] <- 0
summary(lmxy <- lm(y ~ x + I(x^2)+I(x^3) + I((x-10)^2), weights = ww),
        cor = TRUE)
variable.names(lmxy)
variable.names(lmxy, full = TRUE)  # includes the last
case.names(lmxy)
case.names(lmxy, full = TRUE)      # includes the 0-weight case
```

Cauchy *The Cauchy Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the Cauchy distribution with location parameter `location` and scale parameter `scale`.

Usage

```
dcauchy(x, location = 0, scale = 1, log = FALSE)
pcauchy(q, location = 0, scale = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qcauchy(p, location = 0, scale = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rcauchy(n, location = 0, scale = 1)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`location, scale`	location and scale parameters.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

If `location` or `scale` are not specified, they assume the default values of `0` and `1` respectively.

The Cauchy distribution with location l and scale s has density

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi s}\left(1 + \left(\frac{x-l}{s}\right)^2\right)^{-1}$$

for all x.

Value

`dcauchy`, `pcauchy`, and `qcauchy` are respectively the density, distribution function and quantile function of the Cauchy distribution. `rcauchy` generates random deviates from the Cauchy.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rcauchy`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Source

`dcauchy`, `pcauchy` and `qcauchy` are all calculated from numerically stable versions of the definitions.

`rcauchy` uses inversion.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 1, chapter 16. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including `dt` for the t distribution which generalizes `dcauchy(*, l = 0, s = 1)`.

Examples

```
dcauchy(-1:4)
```

`chisq.test` *Pearson's Chi-squared Test for Count Data*

Description

`chisq.test` performs chi-squared contingency table tests and goodness-of-fit tests.

Usage

```
chisq.test(x, y = NULL, correct = TRUE,
           p = rep(1/length(x), length(x)), rescale.p = FALSE,
           simulate.p.value = FALSE, B = 2000)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric vector or matrix. `x` and `y` can also both be factors.
`y`	a numeric vector; ignored if `x` is a matrix. If `x` is a factor, `y` should be a factor of the same length.
`correct`	a logical indicating whether to apply continuity correction when computing the test statistic for 2 by 2 tables: one half is subtracted from all $\|O - E\|$ differences; however, the correction will not be bigger than the differences themselves. No correction is done if `simulate.p.value = TRUE`.
`p`	a vector of probabilities of the same length of `x`. An error is given if any entry of `p` is negative.
`rescale.p`	a logical scalar; if TRUE then `p` is rescaled (if necessary) to sum to 1. If `rescale.p` is FALSE, and `p` does not sum to 1, an error is given.
`simulate.p.value`	a logical indicating whether to compute p-values by Monte Carlo simulation.
`B`	an integer specifying the number of replicates used in the Monte Carlo test.

Details

If x is a matrix with one row or column, or if x is a vector and y is not given, then a *goodness-of-fit test* is performed (x is treated as a one-dimensional contingency table). The entries of x must be non-negative integers. In this case, the hypothesis tested is whether the population probabilities equal those in p, or are all equal if p is not given.

If x is a matrix with at least two rows and columns, it is taken as a two-dimensional contingency table: the entries of x must be non-negative integers. Otherwise, x and y must be vectors or factors of the same length; cases with missing values are removed, the objects are coerced to factors, and the contingency table is computed from these. Then Pearson's chi-squared test is performed of the null hypothesis that the joint distribution of the cell counts in a 2-dimensional contingency table is the product of the row and column marginals.

If `simulate.p.value` is `FALSE`, the p-value is computed from the asymptotic chi-squared distribution of the test statistic; continuity correction is only used in the 2-by-2 case (if `correct` is `TRUE`, the default). Otherwise the p-value is computed for a Monte Carlo test (Hope, 1968) with `B` replicates.

In the contingency table case simulation is done by random sampling from the set of all contingency tables with given marginals, and works only if the marginals are strictly positive. Continuity correction is never used, and the statistic is quoted without it. Note that this is not the usual sampling situation assumed for the chi-squared test but rather that for Fisher's exact test.

In the goodness-of-fit case simulation is done by random sampling from the discrete distribution specified by p, each sample being of size `n = sum(x)`. This simulation is done in and may be slow.

Value

A list with class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	the value the chi-squared test statistic.
`parameter`	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic, `NA` if the p-value is computed by Monte Carlo simulation.
`p.value`	the p-value for the test.
`method`	a character string indicating the type of test performed, and whether Monte Carlo simulation or continuity correction was used.
`data.name`	a character string giving the name(s) of the data.
`observed`	the observed counts.
`expected`	the expected counts under the null hypothesis.
`residuals`	the Pearson residuals, `(observed - expected) / sqrt(expected)`.
`stdres`	standardized residuals, `(observed - expected) / sqrt(V)`, where `V` is the residual cell variance (Agresti, 2007, section 2.4.5 for the case where `x` is a matrix, `n * p * (1 - p)` otherwise).

Source

The code for Monte Carlo simulation is a C translation of the Fortran algorithm of Patefield (1981).

References

Hope, A. C. A. (1968) A simplified Monte Carlo significance test procedure. *J. Roy, Statist. Soc. B* **30**, 582–598.

Patefield, W. M. (1981) Algorithm AS159. An efficient method of generating r x c tables with given row and column totals. *Applied Statistics* **30**, 91–97.

Agresti, A. (2007) *An Introduction to Categorical Data Analysis, 2nd ed.*, New York: John Wiley & Sons. Page 38.

See Also

For goodness-of-fit testing, notably of continuous distributions, `ks.test`.

Examples

```
## From Agresti(2007) p.39
M <- as.table(rbind(c(762, 327, 468), c(484, 239, 477)))
dimnames(M) <- list(gender = c("F", "M"),
                    party = c("Democrat","Independent", "Republican"))
(Xsq <- chisq.test(M))  # Prints test summary
Xsq$observed   # observed counts (same as M)
Xsq$expected   # expected counts under the null
Xsq$residuals  # Pearson residuals
Xsq$stdres     # standardized residuals


## Effect of simulating p-values
x <- matrix(c(12, 5, 7, 7), ncol = 2)
chisq.test(x)$p.value           # 0.4233
chisq.test(x, simulate.p.value = TRUE, B = 10000)$p.value
                                # around 0.29!

## Testing for population probabilities
## Case A. Tabulated data
x <- c(A = 20, B = 15, C = 25)
chisq.test(x)
chisq.test(as.table(x))             # the same
x <- c(89,37,30,28,2)
p <- c(40,20,20,15,5)
try(
chisq.test(x, p = p)                # gives an error
)
chisq.test(x, p = p, rescale.p = TRUE)
                                # works
p <- c(0.40,0.20,0.20,0.19,0.01)
                                # Expected count in category 5
                                # is 1.86 < 5 ==> chi square approx.
chisq.test(x, p = p)            #               maybe doubtful, but is ok!
chisq.test(x, p = p, simulate.p.value = TRUE)

## Case B. Raw data
x <- trunc(5 * runif(100))
chisq.test(table(x))            # NOT chisq.test(x)!
```

`Chisquare` *The (non-central) Chi-Squared Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the chi-squared (χ^2) distribution with `df` degrees of freedom and optional non-centrality parameter `ncp`.

Usage

```
dchisq(x, df, ncp = 0, log = FALSE)
pchisq(q, df, ncp = 0, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qchisq(p, df, ncp = 0, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rchisq(n, df, ncp = 0)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`df`	degrees of freedom (non-negative, but can be non-integer).
`ncp`	non-centrality parameter (non-negative).
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The chi-squared distribution with `df`$= n \geq 0$ degrees of freedom has density

$$f_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^{n/2}\Gamma(n/2)} x^{n/2-1} e^{-x/2}$$

for $x > 0$. The mean and variance are n and $2n$.

The non-central chi-squared distribution with `df`$= n$ degrees of freedom and non-centrality parameter `ncp` $= \lambda$ has density

$$f(x) = e^{-\lambda/2} \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \frac{(\lambda/2)^r}{r!} f_{n+2r}(x)$$

for $x \geq 0$. For integer n, this is the distribution of the sum of squares of n normals each with variance one, λ being the sum of squares of the normal means; further,
$E(X) = n + \lambda$, $Var(X) = 2(n + 2 * \lambda)$, and $E((X - E(X))^3) = 8(n + 3 * \lambda)$.

Note that the degrees of freedom `df`$= n$, can be non-integer, and also $n = 0$ which is relevant for non-centrality $\lambda > 0$, see Johnson *et al* (1995, chapter 29).

Note that `ncp` values larger than about 1e5 may give inaccurate results with many warnings for `pchisq` and `qchisq`.

Value

`dchisq` gives the density, `pchisq` gives the distribution function, `qchisq` gives the quantile function, and `rchisq` generates random deviates.

Invalid arguments will result in return value `NaN`, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rchisq`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

Supplying `ncp = 0` uses the algorithm for the non-central distribution, which is not the same algorithm used if `ncp` is omitted. This is to give consistent behaviour in extreme cases with values of `ncp` very near zero.

The code for non-zero `ncp` is principally intended to be used for moderate values of `ncp`: it will not be highly accurate, especially in the tails, for large values.

Source

The central cases are computed via the gamma distribution.

The non-central `dchisq` and `rchisq` are computed as a Poisson mixture central of chi-squares (Johnson *et al*, 1995, p.436).

The non-central `pchisq` is for `ncp < 80` computed from the Poisson mixture of central chi-squares and for larger `ncp` *via* a C translation of

Ding, C. G. (1992) Algorithm AS275: Computing the non-central chi-squared distribution function. *Appl.Statist.*, **41** 478–482.

which computes the lower tail only (so the upper tail suffers from cancellation and a warning will be given when this is likely to be significant).

The non-central `qchisq` is based on inversion of `pchisq`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, chapters 18 (volume 1) and 29 (volume 2). Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions.

A central chi-squared distribution with n degrees of freedom is the same as a Gamma distribution with `shape` $\alpha = n/2$ and `scale` $\sigma = 2$. Hence, see `dgamma` for the Gamma distribution.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

dchisq(1, df = 1:3)
pchisq(1, df =  3)
pchisq(1, df =  3, ncp = 0:4)  # includes the above

x <- 1:10
## Chi-squared(df = 2) is a special exponential distribution
all.equal(dchisq(x, df = 2), dexp(x, 1/2))
all.equal(pchisq(x, df = 2), pexp(x, 1/2))

## non-central RNG -- df = 0 with ncp > 0:  Z0 has point mass at 0!
Z0 <- rchisq(100, df = 0, ncp = 2.)
graphics::stem(Z0)

## visual testing
## do P-P plots for 1000 points at various degrees of freedom
```

```
L <- 1.2; n <- 1000; pp <- ppoints(n)
op <- par(mfrow = c(3,3), mar = c(3,3,1,1)+.1, mgp = c(1.5,.6,0),
          oma = c(0,0,3,0))
for(df in 2^(4*rnorm(9))) {
  plot(pp, sort(pchisq(rr <- rchisq(n, df = df, ncp = L), df = df, ncp = L)),
       ylab = "pchisq(rchisq(.),.)", pch = ".")
  mtext(paste("df = ", formatC(df, digits = 4)), line =  -2, adj = 0.05)
  abline(0, 1, col = 2)
}
mtext(expression("P-P plots : Noncentral  "*
                 chi^2 *"(n=1000, df=X, ncp= 1.2)"),
      cex = 1.5, font = 2, outer = TRUE)
par(op)

## "analytical" test
lam <- seq(0, 100, by = .25)
p00 <- pchisq(0,      df = 0, ncp = lam)
p.0 <- pchisq(1e-300, df = 0, ncp = lam)
stopifnot(all.equal(p00, exp(-lam/2)),
          all.equal(p.0, exp(-lam/2)))
```

`cmdscale` *Classical (Metric) Multidimensional Scaling*

Description

Classical multidimensional scaling of a data matrix. Also known as *principal coordinates analysis* (Gower, 1966).

Usage

```
cmdscale(d, k = 2, eig = FALSE, add = FALSE, x.ret = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`d`	a distance structure such as that returned by `dist` or a full symmetric matrix containing the dissimilarities.
`k`	the maximum dimension of the space which the data are to be represented in; must be in $\{1, 2, \ldots, n-1\}$.
`eig`	indicates whether eigenvalues should be returned.
`add`	logical indicating if an additive constant $c*$ should be computed, and added to the non-diagonal dissimilarities such that the modified dissimilarities are Euclidean.
`x.ret`	indicates whether the doubly centred symmetric distance matrix should be returned.

Details

Multidimensional scaling takes a set of dissimilarities and returns a set of points such that the distances between the points are approximately equal to the dissimilarities. (It is a major part of what ecologists call 'ordination'.)

A set of Euclidean distances on n points can be represented exactly in at most $n - 1$ dimensions. `cmdscale` follows the analysis of Mardia (1978), and returns the best-fitting k-dimensional representation, where k may be less than the argument `k`.

The representation is only determined up to location (`cmdscale` takes the column means of the configuration to be at the origin), rotations and reflections. The configuration returned is given in principal-component axes, so the reflection chosen may differ between platforms (see `prcomp`).

When `add = TRUE`, a minimal additive constant $c*$ is computed such that the the dissimilarities $d_{ij} + c*$ are Euclidean and hence can be represented in `n - 1` dimensions. Whereas S (Becker *et al*, 1988) computes this constant using an approximation suggested by Torgerson, uses the analytical solution of Cailliez (1983), see also Cox and Cox (2001). Note that because of numerical errors the computed eigenvalues need not all be non-negative, and even theoretically the representation could be in fewer than `n - 1` dimensions.

Value

If `eig = FALSE`, `add = FALSE` and `x.ret = FALSE` (default), a matrix with `k` columns whose rows give the coordinates of the points chosen to represent the dissimilarities.

Otherwise, a list containing the following components.

`points`	a matrix with up to `k` columns whose rows give the coordinates of the points chosen to represent the dissimilarities.
`eig`	the n eigenvalues computed during the scaling process if `eig` is true. **NB**: versions of before 2.12.1 returned only `k` but were documented to return $n - 1$.
`x`	the doubly centered distance matrix if `x.ret` is true.
`ac`	the additive constant $c*$, `0` if `add = FALSE`.
`GOF`	a numeric vector of length 2, equal to say (g_1, g_2), where $g_i = (\sum_{j=1}^{k} \lambda_j)/(\sum_{j=1}^{n} T_i(\lambda_j))$, where λ_j are the eigenvalues (sorted in decreasing order), $T_1(v) = \lvert v \rvert$, and $T_2(v) = max(v, 0)$.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Cailliez, F. (1983) The analytical solution of the additive constant problem. *Psychometrika* **48**, 343–349.

Cox, T. F. and Cox, M. A. A. (2001) *Multidimensional Scaling*. Second edition. Chapman and Hall.

Gower, J. C. (1966) Some distance properties of latent root and vector methods used in multivariate analysis. *Biometrika* **53**, 325–328.

Krzanowski, W. J. and Marriott, F. H. C. (1994) *Multivariate Analysis. Part I. Distributions, Ordination and Inference.* London: Edward Arnold. (Especially pp. 108–111.)

Mardia, K.V. (1978) Some properties of classical multidimensional scaling. *Communications on Statistics – Theory and Methods*, **A7**, 1233–41.

Mardia, K. V., Kent, J. T. and Bibby, J. M. (1979). Chapter 14 of *Multivariate Analysis*, London: Academic Press.

Seber, G. A. F. (1984). *Multivariate Observations*. New York: Wiley.

Torgerson, W. S. (1958). *Theory and Methods of Scaling*. New York: Wiley.

See Also

dist.

isoMDS and sammon in package **MASS** provide alternative methods of multidimensional scaling.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

loc <- cmdscale(eurodist)
x <- loc[, 1]
y <- -loc[, 2] # reflect so North is at the top
## note asp = 1, to ensure Euclidean distances are represented correctly
plot(x, y, type = "n", xlab = "", ylab = "", asp = 1, axes = FALSE,
     main = "cmdscale(eurodist)")
text(x, y, rownames(loc), cex = 0.6)
```

---

coef *Extract Model Coefficients*

Description

coef is a generic function which extracts model coefficients from objects returned by modeling functions. coefficients is an *alias* for it.

Usage

```
coef(object, ...)
coefficients(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object for which the extraction of model coefficients is meaningful.
...	other arguments.

Details

All object classes which are returned by model fitting functions should provide a coef method or use the default one. (Note that the method is for coef and not coefficients.)

Class "aov" has a coef method that does not report aliased coefficients (see alias).

Value

Coefficients extracted from the model object object.

For standard model fitting classes this will be a named numeric vector.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

fitted.values and residuals for related methods; glm, lm for model fitting.

Examples

```
x <- 1:5; coef(lm(c(1:3, 7, 6) ~ x))
```

---

complete.cases *Find Complete Cases*

Description

Return a logical vector indicating which cases are complete, i.e., have no missing values.

Usage

```
complete.cases(...)
```

Arguments

...	a sequence of vectors, matrices and data frames.

Value

A logical vector specifying which observations/rows have no missing values across the entire sequence.

See Also

is.na, na.omit, na.fail.

Examples

```
x <- airquality[, -1] # x is a regression design matrix
y <- airquality[,  1] # y is the corresponding response

stopifnot(complete.cases(y) != is.na(y))
ok <- complete.cases(x, y)
sum(!ok) # how many are not "ok" ?
x <- x[ok,]
y <- y[ok]
```

---

confint *Confidence Intervals for Model Parameters*

Description

Computes confidence intervals for one or more parameters in a fitted model. There is a default and a method for objects inheriting from class "lm".

Usage

```
confint(object, parm, level = 0.95, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted model object.
parm	a specification of which parameters are to be given confidence intervals, either a vector of numbers or a vector of names. If missing, all parameters are considered.
level	the confidence level required.
...	additional argument(s) for methods.

Details

confint is a generic function. The default method assumes asymptotic normality, and needs suitable coef and vcov methods to be available. The default method can be called directly for comparison with other methods.

For objects of class "lm" the direct formulae based on t values are used.

There are stub methods for classes "glm" and "nls" which invoke those in package **MASS** which are based on profile likelihoods.

Value

A matrix (or vector) with columns giving lower and upper confidence limits for each parameter. These will be labelled as (1-level)/2 and 1 - (1-level)/2 in % (by default 2.5% and 97.5%).

See Also

confint.glm and confint.nls in package **MASS**.

Examples

```
fit <- lm(100/mpg ~ disp + hp + wt + am, data = mtcars)
confint(fit)
confint(fit, "wt")

## from example(glm)
counts <- c(18,17,15,20,10,20,25,13,12)
outcome <- gl(3, 1, 9); treatment <- gl(3, 3)
glm.D93 <- glm(counts ~ outcome + treatment, family = poisson())
confint(glm.D93) # needs MASS to be present on the system
confint.default(glm.D93)  # based on asymptotic normality
```

---

constrOptim *Linearly Constrained Optimization*

Description

Minimise a function subject to linear inequality constraints using an adaptive barrier algorithm.

Usage

```
constrOptim(theta, f, grad, ui, ci, mu = 1e-04, control = list(),
            method = if(is.null(grad)) "Nelder-Mead" else "BFGS",
            outer.iterations = 100, outer.eps = 1e-05, ...,
            hessian = FALSE)
```

Arguments

theta	numeric (vector) starting value (of length p): must be in the feasible region.
f	function to minimise (see below).
grad	gradient of f (a function as well), or NULL (see below).
ui	constraint matrix ($k \times p$), see below.
ci	constraint vector of length k (see below).
mu	(Small) tuning parameter.
control, method, hessian	passed to optim.
outer.iterations	iterations of the barrier algorithm.
outer.eps	non-negative number; the relative convergence tolerance of the barrier algorithm.
...	Other named arguments to be passed to f and grad: needs to be passed through optim so should not match its argument names.

Details

The feasible region is defined by `ui %*% theta - ci >= 0`. The starting value must be in the interior of the feasible region, but the minimum may be on the boundary.

A logarithmic barrier is added to enforce the constraints and then optim is called. The barrier function is chosen so that the objective function should decrease at each outer iteration. Minima in the interior of the feasible region are typically found quite quickly, but a substantial number of outer iterations may be needed for a minimum on the boundary.

The tuning parameter mu multiplies the barrier term. Its precise value is often relatively unimportant. As mu increases the augmented objective function becomes closer to the original objective function but also less smooth near the boundary of the feasible region.

Any optim method that permits infinite values for the objective function may be used (currently all but "L-BFGS-B").

The objective function f takes as first argument the vector of parameters over which minimisation is to take place. It should return a scalar result. Optional arguments ... will be passed to optim and then (if not used by optim) to f. As with optim, the default is to minimise, but maximisation can be performed by setting control$fnscale to a negative value.

The gradient function grad must be supplied except with `method = "Nelder-Mead"`. It should take arguments matching those of f and return a vector containing the gradient.

Value

As for optim, but with two extra components: barrier.value giving the value of the barrier function at the optimum and outer.iterations gives the number of outer iterations (calls to optim). The counts component contains the *sum* of all optim()$counts.

References

K. Lange *Numerical Analysis for Statisticians.* Springer 2001, p185ff

See Also

optim, especially `method = "L-BFGS-B"` which does box-constrained optimisation.

Examples

```
## from optim
fr <- function(x) {   ## Rosenbrock Banana function
    x1 <- x[1]
    x2 <- x[2]
    100 * (x2 - x1 * x1)^2 + (1 - x1)^2
}
grr <- function(x) { ## Gradient of fr
    x1 <- x[1]
    x2 <- x[2]
    c(-400 * x1 * (x2 - x1 * x1) - 2 * (1 - x1),
       200 *      (x2 - x1 * x1))
}

optim(c(-1.2,1), fr, grr)
#Box-constraint, optimum on the boundary
constrOptim(c(-1.2,0.9), fr, grr, ui = rbind(c(-1,0), c(0,-1)), ci = c(-1,-1))
#  x <= 0.9,  y - x > 0.1
constrOptim(c(.5,0), fr, grr, ui = rbind(c(-1,0), c(1,-1)), ci = c(-0.9,0.1))


## Solves linear and quadratic programming problems
## but needs a feasible starting value
#
# from example(solve.QP) in quadprog
# no derivative
fQP <- function(b) {-sum(c(0,5,0)*b)+0.5*sum(b*b)}
Amat       <- matrix(c(-4,-3,0,2,1,0,0,-2,1), 3, 3)
bvec       <- c(-8, 2, 0)
constrOptim(c(2,-1,-1), fQP, NULL, ui = t(Amat), ci = bvec)
# derivative
gQP <- function(b) {-c(0, 5, 0) + b}
constrOptim(c(2,-1,-1), fQP, gQP, ui = t(Amat), ci = bvec)

## Now with maximisation instead of minimisation
hQP <- function(b) {sum(c(0,5,0)*b)-0.5*sum(b*b)}
constrOptim(c(2,-1,-1), hQP, NULL, ui = t(Amat), ci = bvec,
            control = list(fnscale = -1))
```

`contrast` *(Possibly Sparse) Contrast Matrices*

Description

Return a matrix of contrasts.

Usage

```
contr.helmert(n, contrasts = TRUE, sparse = FALSE)
contr.poly(n, scores = 1:n, contrasts = TRUE, sparse = FALSE)
contr.sum(n, contrasts = TRUE, sparse = FALSE)
contr.treatment(n, base = 1, contrasts = TRUE, sparse = FALSE)
contr.SAS(n, contrasts = TRUE, sparse = FALSE)
```

Arguments

n	a vector of levels for a factor, or the number of levels.
contrasts	a logical indicating whether contrasts should be computed.
sparse	logical indicating if the result should be sparse (of class dgCMatrix), using package **Matrix**.
scores	the set of values over which orthogonal polynomials are to be computed.
base	an integer specifying which group is considered the baseline group. Ignored if contrasts is FALSE.

Details

These functions are used for creating contrast matrices for use in fitting analysis of variance and regression models. The columns of the resulting matrices contain contrasts which can be used for coding a factor with n levels. The returned value contains the computed contrasts. If the argument contrasts is FALSE a square indicator matrix (the dummy coding) is returned **except** for contr.poly (which includes the 0-degree, i.e. constant, polynomial when contrasts = FALSE).

contr.helmert returns Helmert contrasts, which contrast the second level with the first, the third with the average of the first two, and so on. contr.poly returns contrasts based on orthogonal polynomials. contr.sum uses 'sum to zero contrasts'.

contr.treatment contrasts each level with the baseline level (specified by base): the baseline level is omitted. Note that this does not produce 'contrasts' as defined in the standard theory for linear models as they are not orthogonal to the intercept.

contr.SAS is a wrapper for contr.treatment that sets the base level to be the last level of the factor. The coefficients produced when using these contrasts should be equivalent to those produced by many (but not all) SAS procedures.

For consistency, sparse is an argument to all these contrast functions, however sparse = TRUE for contr.poly is typically pointless and is rarely useful for contr.helmert.

Value

A matrix with n rows and k columns, with k=n-1 if contrasts is TRUE and k=n if contrasts is FALSE.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical models.* Chapter 2 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

contrasts, C, and aov, glm, lm.

Examples

```
(cH <- contr.helmert(4))
apply(cH, 2, sum) # column sums are 0
crossprod(cH) # diagonal -- columns are orthogonal
contr.helmert(4, contrasts = FALSE) # just the 4 x 4 identity matrix

(cT <- contr.treatment(5))
all(crossprod(cT) == diag(4)) # TRUE: even orthonormal
```

```
(cT. <- contr.SAS(5))
all(crossprod(cT.) == diag(4)) # TRUE

zapsmall(cP <- contr.poly(3)) # Linear and Quadratic
zapsmall(crossprod(cP), digits = 15) # orthonormal up to fuzz
```

`contrasts` *Get and Set Contrast Matrices*

Description

Set and view the contrasts associated with a factor.

Usage

```
contrasts(x, contrasts = TRUE, sparse = FALSE)
contrasts(x, how.many) <- value
```

Arguments

`x`	a factor or a logical variable.
`contrasts`	logical. See 'Details'.
`sparse`	logical indicating if the result should be sparse (of class `dgCMatrix`), using package **Matrix**.
`how.many`	How many contrasts should be made. Defaults to one less than the number of levels of `x`. This need not be the same as the number of columns of `value`.
`value`	either a numeric matrix (or a sparse or dense matrix of a class extending `dMatrix` from package **Matrix**) whose columns give coefficients for contrasts in the levels of `x`, or the (quoted) name of a function which computes such matrices.

Details

If contrasts are not set for a factor the default functions from `options("contrasts")` are used.

A logical vector `x` is converted into a two-level factor with levels `c(FALSE, TRUE)` (regardless of which levels occur in the variable).

The argument `contrasts` is ignored if `x` has a matrix `contrasts` attribute set. Otherwise if `contrasts = TRUE` it is passed to a contrasts function such as `contr.treatment` and if `contrasts = FALSE` an identity matrix is returned. Suitable functions have a first argument which is the character vector of levels, a named argument `contrasts` (always called with `contrasts = TRUE`) and optionally a logical argument `sparse`.

If `value` supplies more than `how.many` contrasts, the first `how.many` are used. If too few are supplied, a suitable contrast matrix is created by extending `value` after ensuring its columns are contrasts (orthogonal to the constant term) and not collinear.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical models.* Chapter 2 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

C, contr.helmert, contr.poly, contr.sum, contr.treatment; glm, aov, lm.

Examples

```
utils::example(factor)
fff <- ff[, drop = TRUE]  # reduce to 5 levels.
contrasts(fff) # treatment contrasts by default
contrasts(C(fff, sum))
contrasts(fff, contrasts = FALSE) # the 5x5 identity matrix

contrasts(fff) <- contr.sum(5); contrasts(fff)  # set sum contrasts
contrasts(fff, 2) <- contr.sum(5); contrasts(fff)  # set 2 contrasts
# supply 2 contrasts, compute 2 more to make full set of 4.
contrasts(fff) <- contr.sum(5)[, 1:2]; contrasts(fff)

## using sparse contrasts: % useful, once model.matrix() works with these :
ffs <- fff
contrasts(ffs) <- contr.sum(5, sparse = TRUE)[, 1:2]; contrasts(ffs)
stopifnot(all.equal(ffs, fff))
contrasts(ffs) <- contr.sum(5, sparse = TRUE); contrasts(ffs)
```

---

convolve *Convolution of Sequences via FFT*

Description

Use the Fast Fourier Transform to compute the several kinds of convolutions of two sequences.

Usage

```
convolve(x, y, conj = TRUE, type = c("circular", "open", "filter"))
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric sequences *of the same length* to be convolved.
conj	logical; if TRUE, take the complex *conjugate* before back-transforming (default, and used for usual convolution).
type	character; one of "circular", "open", "filter" (beginning of word is ok). For circular, the two sequences are treated as *circular*, i.e., periodic. For open and filter, the sequences are padded with 0s (from left and right) first; "filter" returns the middle sub-vector of "open", namely, the result of running a weighted mean of x with weights y.

Details

The Fast Fourier Transform, fft, is used for efficiency.

The input sequences x and y must have the same length if circular is true.

Note that the usual definition of convolution of two sequences x and y is given by convolve(x, rev(y), type = "o").

Value

If `r <- convolve(x, y, type = "open")` and `n <- length(x)`, `m <- length(y)`, then

$$r_k = \sum_i x_{k-m+i} y_i$$

where the sum is over all valid indices i, for $k = 1, \ldots, n + m - 1$.

If `type == "circular"`, $n = m$ is required, and the above is true for $i, k = 1, \ldots, n$ when $x_j := x_{n+j}$ for $j < 1$.

References

Brillinger, D. R. (1981) *Time Series: Data Analysis and Theory*, Second Edition. San Francisco: Holden-Day.

See Also

`fft`, `nextn`, and particularly `filter` (from the **stats** package) which may be more appropriate.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

x <- c(0,0,0,100,0,0,0)
y <- c(0,0,1, 2 ,1,0,0)/4
zapsmall(convolve(x, y))         #  *NOT* what you first thought.
zapsmall(convolve(x, y[3:5], type = "f")) # rather
x <- rnorm(50)
y <- rnorm(50)
# Circular convolution *has* this symmetry:
all.equal(convolve(x, y, conj = FALSE), rev(convolve(rev(y),x)))

n <- length(x <- -20:24)
y <- (x-10)^2/1000 + rnorm(x)/8

Han <- function(y) # Hanning
       convolve(y, c(1,2,1)/4, type = "filter")

plot(x, y, main = "Using  convolve(.) for Hanning filters")
lines(x[-c(1  , n)      ], Han(y), col = "red")
lines(x[-c(1:2, (n-1):n)], Han(Han(y)), lwd = 2, col = "dark blue")
```

---

cophenetic *Cophenetic Distances for a Hierarchical Clustering*

Description

Computes the cophenetic distances for a hierarchical clustering.

Usage

```
cophenetic(x)
## Default S3 method:
cophenetic(x)
## S3 method for class dendrogram
cophenetic(x)
```

Arguments

x	an R object representing a hierarchical clustering. For the default method, an object of class "hclust" or with a method for as.hclust() such as "agnes" in package **cluster**.

Details

The cophenetic distance between two observations that have been clustered is defined to be the intergroup dissimilarity at which the two observations are first combined into a single cluster. Note that this distance has many ties and restrictions.

It can be argued that a dendrogram is an appropriate summary of some data if the correlation between the original distances and the cophenetic distances is high. Otherwise, it should simply be viewed as the description of the output of the clustering algorithm.

cophenetic is a generic function. Support for classes which represent hierarchical clusterings (total indexed hierarchies) can be added by providing an as.hclust() or, more directly, a cophenetic() method for such a class.

The method for objects of class "dendrogram" requires that all leaves of the dendrogram object have non-null labels.

Value

An object of class "dist".

Author(s)

Robert Gentleman

References

Sneath, P.H.A. and Sokal, R.R. (1973) *Numerical Taxonomy: The Principles and Practice of Numerical Classification*, p. 278 ff; Freeman, San Francisco.

See Also

dist, hclust

Examples

```
require(graphics)

d1 <- dist(USArrests)
hc <- hclust(d1, "ave")
d2 <- cophenetic(hc)
cor(d1, d2) # 0.7659
```

```
## Example from Sneath & Sokal, Fig. 5-29, p.279
d0 <- c(1,3.8,4.4,5.1, 4,4.2,5, 2.6,5.3, 5.4)
attributes(d0) <- list(Size = 5, diag = TRUE)
class(d0) <- "dist"
names(d0) <- letters[1:5]
d0
utils::str(upgma <- hclust(d0, method = "average"))
plot(upgma, hang = -1)
#
(d.coph <- cophenetic(upgma))
cor(d0, d.coph) # 0.9911
```

---

cor *Correlation, Variance and Covariance (Matrices)*

Description

var, cov and cor compute the variance of x and the covariance or correlation of x and y if these are vectors. If x and y are matrices then the covariances (or correlations) between the columns of x and the columns of y are computed.

cov2cor scales a covariance matrix into the corresponding correlation matrix *efficiently*.

Usage

```
var(x, y = NULL, na.rm = FALSE, use)

cov(x, y = NULL, use = "everything",
    method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"))

cor(x, y = NULL, use = "everything",
    method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"))

cov2cor(V)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector, matrix or data frame.
y	NULL (default) or a vector, matrix or data frame with compatible dimensions to x. The default is equivalent to y = x (but more efficient).
na.rm	logical. Should missing values be removed?
use	an optional character string giving a method for computing covariances in the presence of missing values. This must be (an abbreviation of) one of the strings "everything", "all.obs", "complete.obs", "na.or.complete", or "pairwise.complete.obs".
method	a character string indicating which correlation coefficient (or covariance) is to be computed. One of "pearson" (default), "kendall", or "spearman", can be abbreviated.
V	symmetric numeric matrix, usually positive definite such as a covariance matrix.

Details

For cov and cor one must *either* give a matrix or data frame for x *or* give both x and y.

The inputs must be numeric (as determined by is.numeric: logical values are also allowed for historical compatibility): the "kendall" and "spearman" methods make sense for ordered inputs but xtfrm can be used to find a suitable prior transformation to numbers.

var is just another interface to cov, where na.rm is used to determine the default for use when that is unspecified. If na.rm is TRUE then the complete observations (rows) are used (use = "na.or.complete") to compute the variance. Otherwise, by default use = "everything".

If use is "everything", NAs will propagate conceptually, i.e., a resulting value will be NA whenever one of its contributing observations is NA.
If use is "all.obs", then the presence of missing observations will produce an error. If use is "complete.obs" then missing values are handled by casewise deletion (and if there are no complete cases, that gives an error).
"na.or.complete" is the same unless there are no complete cases, that gives NA. Finally, if use has the value "pairwise.complete.obs" then the correlation or covariance between each pair of variables is computed using all complete pairs of observations on those variables. This can result in covariance or correlation matrices which are not positive semi-definite, as well as NA entries if there are no complete pairs for that pair of variables. For cov and var, "pairwise.complete.obs" only works with the "pearson" method. Note that (the equivalent of) var(double(0), use = *) gives NA for use = "everything" and "na.or.complete", and gives an error in the other cases.

The denominator $n - 1$ is used which gives an unbiased estimator of the (co)variance for i.i.d. observations. These functions return NA when there is only one observation (whereas S-PLUS has been returning NaN), and fail if x has length zero.

For cor(), if method is "kendall" or "spearman", Kendall's τ or Spearman's ρ statistic is used to estimate a rank-based measure of association. These are more robust and have been recommended if the data do not necessarily come from a bivariate normal distribution.
For cov(), a non-Pearson method is unusual but available for the sake of completeness. Note that "spearman" basically computes cor(R(x), R(y)) (or cov(., .)) where R(u) := rank(u, na.last = "keep"). In the case of missing values, the ranks are calculated depending on the value of use, either based on complete observations, or based on pairwise completeness with reranking for each pair.

Scaling a covariance matrix into a correlation one can be achieved in many ways, mathematically most appealing by multiplication with a diagonal matrix from left and right, or more efficiently by using sweep(.., FUN = "/") twice. The cov2cor function is even a bit more efficient, and provided mostly for didactical reasons.

Value

For r <- cor(*, use = "all.obs"), it is now guaranteed that all(r <= 1).

Note

Some people have noted that the code for Kendall's tau is slow for very large datasets (many more than 1000 cases). It rarely makes sense to do such a computation, but see function cor.fk in package **pcaPP**.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

cor.test for confidence intervals (and tests).

cov.wt for *weighted* covariance computation.

sd for standard deviation (vectors).

Examples

```
var(1:10)  # 9.166667

var(1:5, 1:5) # 2.5

## Two simple vectors
cor(1:10, 2:11) # == 1

## Correlation Matrix of Multivariate sample:
(Cl <- cor(longley))
## Graphical Correlation Matrix:
symnum(Cl) # highly correlated

## Spearmans rho  and  Kendalls tau
symnum(clS <- cor(longley, method = "spearman"))
symnum(clK <- cor(longley, method = "kendall"))
## How much do they differ?
i <- lower.tri(Cl)
cor(cbind(P = Cl[i], S = clS[i], K = clK[i]))


## cov2cor() scales a covariance matrix by its diagonal
##           to become the correlation matrix.
cov2cor # see the function definition {and learn ..}
stopifnot(all.equal(Cl, cov2cor(cov(longley))),
          all.equal(cor(longley, method = "kendall"),
            cov2cor(cov(longley, method = "kendall"))))

##--- Missing value treatment:

C1 <- cov(swiss)
range(eigen(C1, only.values = TRUE)$values) # 6.19        1921

## swM := "swiss" with  3 "missing"s :
swM <- swiss
colnames(swM) <- abbreviate(colnames(swiss), min=6)
swM[1,2] <- swM[7,3] <- swM[25,5] <- NA # create 3 "missing"

## Consider all 5 "use" cases :
(C. <- cov(swM)) # use="everything"  quite a few NAs in cov.matrix
try(cov(swM, use = "all")) # Error: missing obs...
C2 <- cov(swM, use = "complete")
stopifnot(identical(C2, cov(swM, use = "na.or.complete")))
range(eigen(C2, only.values = TRUE)$values) # 6.46   1930
C3 <- cov(swM, use = "pairwise")
range(eigen(C3, only.values = TRUE)$values) # 6.19   1938

## Kendalls tau doesnt change much:
symnum(Rc <- cor(swM, method = "kendall", use = "complete"))
symnum(Rp <- cor(swM, method = "kendall", use = "pairwise"))
```

```
symnum(R. <- cor(swiss, method = "kendall"))

## "pairwise" is closer componentwise,
summary(abs(c(1 - Rp/R.)))
summary(abs(c(1 - Rc/R.)))

## but "complete" is closer in Eigen space:
EV <- function(m) eigen(m, only.values=TRUE)$values
summary(abs(1 - EV(Rp)/EV(R.)) / abs(1 - EV(Rc)/EV(R.)))
```

`cor.test` *Test for Association/Correlation Between Paired Samples*

Description

Test for association between paired samples, using one of Pearson's product moment correlation coefficient, Kendall's τ or Spearman's ρ.

Usage

```
cor.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
cor.test(x, y,
         alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
         method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"),
         exact = NULL, conf.level = 0.95, continuity = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
cor.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	numeric vectors of data values. `x` and `y` must have the same length.
`alternative`	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of `"two.sided"`, `"greater"` or `"less"`. You can specify just the initial letter. `"greater"` corresponds to positive association, `"less"` to negative association.
`method`	a character string indicating which correlation coefficient is to be used for the test. One of `"pearson"`, `"kendall"`, or `"spearman"`, can be abbreviated.
`exact`	a logical indicating whether an exact p-value should be computed. Used for Kendall's τ and Spearman's ρ. See 'Details' for the meaning of `NULL` (the default).
`conf.level`	confidence level for the returned confidence interval. Currently only used for the Pearson product moment correlation coefficient if there are at least 4 complete pairs of observations.
`continuity`	logical: if true, a continuity correction is used for Kendall's τ and Spearman's ρ when not computed exactly.
`formula`	a formula of the form `~ u + v`, where each of `u` and `v` are numeric variables giving the data values for one sample. The samples must be of the same length.

data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

The three methods each estimate the association between paired samples and compute a test of the value being zero. They use different measures of association, all in the range $[-1, 1]$ with 0 indicating no association. These are sometimes referred to as tests of no *correlation*, but that term is often confined to the default method.

If method is "pearson", the test statistic is based on Pearson's product moment correlation coefficient cor(x, y) and follows a t distribution with length(x)-2 degrees of freedom if the samples follow independent normal distributions. If there are at least 4 complete pairs of observation, an asymptotic confidence interval is given based on Fisher's Z transform.

If method is "kendall" or "spearman", Kendall's τ or Spearman's ρ statistic is used to estimate a rank-based measure of association. These tests may be used if the data do not necessarily come from a bivariate normal distribution.

For Kendall's test, by default (if exact is NULL), an exact p-value is computed if there are less than 50 paired samples containing finite values and there are no ties. Otherwise, the test statistic is the estimate scaled to zero mean and unit variance, and is approximately normally distributed.

For Spearman's test, p-values are computed using algorithm AS 89 for $n < 1290$ and exact = TRUE, otherwise via the asymptotic t approximation. Note that these are 'exact' for $n < 10$, and use an Edgeworth series approximation for larger sample sizes (the cutoff has been changed from the original paper).

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the test statistic.
parameter	the degrees of freedom of the test statistic in the case that it follows a t distribution.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
estimate	the estimated measure of association, with name "cor", "tau", or "rho" corresponding to the method employed.
null.value	the value of the association measure under the null hypothesis, always 0.
alternative	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
method	a character string indicating how the association was measured.
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.
conf.int	a confidence interval for the measure of association. Currently only given for Pearson's product moment correlation coefficient in case of at least 4 complete pairs of observations.

References

D. J. Best & D. E. Roberts (1975), Algorithm AS 89: The Upper Tail Probabilities of Spearman's ρ. *Applied Statistics*, **24**, 377–379.

Myles Hollander & Douglas A. Wolfe (1973), *Nonparametric Statistical Methods.* New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 185–194 (Kendall and Spearman tests).

See Also

`Kendall` in package **Kendall**.

`pKendall` and `pSpearman` in package **SuppDists**, `spearman.test` in package **pspearman**, which supply different (and often more accurate) approximations.

Examples

```
## Hollander & Wolfe (1973), p. 187f.
## Assessment of tuna quality.  We compare the Hunter L measure of
##  lightness to the averages of consumer panel scores (recoded as
##  integer values from 1 to 6 and averaged over 80 such values) in
##  9 lots of canned tuna.

x <- c(44.4, 45.9, 41.9, 53.3, 44.7, 44.1, 50.7, 45.2, 60.1)
y <- c( 2.6,  3.1,  2.5,  5.0,  3.6,  4.0,  5.2,  2.8,  3.8)

##  The alternative hypothesis of interest is that the
##  Hunter L value is positively associated with the panel score.

cor.test(x, y, method = "kendall", alternative = "greater")
## => p=0.05972

cor.test(x, y, method = "kendall", alternative = "greater",
         exact = FALSE) # using large sample approximation
## => p=0.04765

## Compare this to
cor.test(x, y, method = "spearm", alternative = "g")
cor.test(x, y,                    alternative = "g")

## Formula interface.
require(graphics)
pairs(USJudgeRatings)
cor.test(~ CONT + INTG, data = USJudgeRatings)
```

`cov.wt` *Weighted Covariance Matrices*

Description

Returns a list containing estimates of the weighted covariance matrix and the mean of the data, and optionally of the (weighted) correlation matrix.

Usage

```
cov.wt(x, wt = rep(1/nrow(x), nrow(x)), cor = FALSE, center = TRUE,
       method = c("unbiased", "ML"))
```

Arguments

x	a matrix or data frame. As usual, rows are observations and columns are variables.
wt	a non-negative and non-zero vector of weights for each observation. Its length must equal the number of rows of x.
cor	a logical indicating whether the estimated correlation weighted matrix will be returned as well.
center	either a logical or a numeric vector specifying the centers to be used when computing covariances. If TRUE, the (weighted) mean of each variable is used, if FALSE, zero is used. If center is numeric, its length must equal the number of columns of x.
method	string specifying how the result is scaled, see 'Details' below.

Details

By default, method = "unbiased", The covariance matrix is divided by one minus the sum of squares of the weights, so if the weights are the default $(1/n)$ the conventional unbiased estimate of the covariance matrix with divisor $(n - 1)$ is obtained. This differs from the behaviour in S-PLUS which corresponds to method = "ML" and does not divide.

Value

A list containing the following named components:

cov	the estimated (weighted) covariance matrix
center	an estimate for the center (mean) of the data.
n.obs	the number of observations (rows) in x.
wt	the weights used in the estimation. Only returned if given as an argument.
cor	the estimated correlation matrix. Only returned if cor is TRUE.

See Also

cov and var.

Examples

```
(xy <- cbind(x = 1:10, y = c(1:3, 8:5, 8:10)))
w1 <- c(0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,0,0)
cov.wt(xy, wt = w1) # i.e. method = "unbiased"
cov.wt(xy, wt = w1, method = "ML", cor = TRUE)
```

`cpgram` *Plot Cumulative Periodogram*

Description

Plots a cumulative periodogram.

Usage

```
cpgram(ts, taper = 0.1,
       main = paste("Series: ", deparse(substitute(ts))),
       ci.col = "blue")
```

Arguments

`ts`	a univariate time series
`taper`	proportion tapered in forming the periodogram
`main`	main title
`ci.col`	colour for confidence band.

Value

None.

Side Effects

Plots the cumulative periodogram in a square plot.

Note

From package **MASS**.

Author(s)

B.D. Ripley

Examples

```
require(graphics)

par(pty = "s", mfrow = c(1,2))
cpgram(lh)
lh.ar <- ar(lh, order.max = 9)
cpgram(lh.ar$resid, main = "AR(3) fit to lh")

cpgram(ldeaths)
```

cutree *Cut a Tree into Groups of Data*

Description

Cuts a tree, e.g., as resulting from hclust, into several groups either by specifying the desired number(s) of groups or the cut height(s).

Usage

```
cutree(tree, k = NULL, h = NULL)
```

Arguments

tree	a tree as produced by hclust. cutree() only expects a list with components merge, height, and labels, of appropriate content each.
k	an integer scalar or vector with the desired number of groups
h	numeric scalar or vector with heights where the tree should be cut. At least one of k or h must be specified, k overrides h if both are given.

Details

Cutting trees at a given height is only possible for ultrametric trees (with monotone clustering heights).

Value

cutree returns a vector with group memberships if k or h are scalar, otherwise a matrix with group memberships is returned where each column corresponds to the elements of k or h, respectively (which are also used as column names).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

hclust, dendrogram for cutting trees themselves.

Examples

```
hc <- hclust(dist(USArrests))

cutree(hc, k = 1:5) #k = 1 is trivial
cutree(hc, h = 250)

## Compare the 2 and 4 grouping:
g24 <- cutree(hc, k = c(2,4))
table(grp2 = g24[,"2"], grp4 = g24[,"4"])
```

`decompose` *Classical Seasonal Decomposition by Moving Averages*

Description

Decompose a time series into seasonal, trend and irregular components using moving averages. Deals with additive or multiplicative seasonal component.

Usage

```
decompose(x, type = c("additive", "multiplicative"), filter = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	A time series.
`type`	The type of seasonal component. Can be abbreviated.
`filter`	A vector of filter coefficients in reverse time order (as for AR or MA coefficients), used for filtering out the seasonal component. If `NULL`, a moving average with symmetric window is performed.

Details

The additive model used is:

$$Y_t = T_t + S_t + e_t$$

The multiplicative model used is:

$$Y_t = T_t \, S_t \, e_t$$

The function first determines the trend component using a moving average (if `filter` is `NULL`, a symmetric window with equal weights is used), and removes it from the time series. Then, the seasonal figure is computed by averaging, for each time unit, over all periods. The seasonal figure is then centered. Finally, the error component is determined by removing trend and seasonal figure (recycled as needed) from the original time series.

This only works well if `x` covers an integer number of complete periods.

Value

An object of class `"decomposed.ts"` with following components:

`x`	The original series. (Only since 2.14.0.)
`seasonal`	The seasonal component (i.e., the repeated seasonal figure).
`figure`	The estimated seasonal figure only.
`trend`	The trend component.
`random`	The remainder part.
`type`	The value of `type`.

Note

The function `stl` provides a much more sophisticated decomposition.

Author(s)

David Meyer <David.Meyer@wu.ac.at>

References

M. Kendall and A. Stuart (1983) *The Advanced Theory of Statistics*, Vol.3, Griffin. pp. 410–414.

See Also

stl

Examples

```
require(graphics)

m <- decompose(co2)
m$figure
plot(m)

## example taken from Kendall/Stuart
x <- c(-50, 175, 149, 214, 247, 237, 225, 329, 729, 809,
       530, 489, 540, 457, 195, 176, 337, 239, 128, 102, 232, 429, 3,
       98, 43, -141, -77, -13, 125, 361, -45, 184)
x <- ts(x, start = c(1951, 1), end = c(1958, 4), frequency = 4)
m <- decompose(x)
## seasonal figure: 6.25, 8.62, -8.84, -6.03
round(decompose(x)$figure / 10, 2)
```

---

delete.response *Modify Terms Objects*

Description

delete.response returns a terms object for the same model but with no response variable.

drop.terms removes variables from the right-hand side of the model. There is also a "[.terms" method to perform the same function (with keep.response = TRUE).

reformulate creates a formula from a character vector.

Usage

```
delete.response(termobj)

reformulate(termlabels, response = NULL, intercept = TRUE)

drop.terms(termobj, dropx = NULL, keep.response = FALSE)
```

Arguments

termobj	A terms object
termlabels	character vector giving the right-hand side of a model formula. Cannot be zero-length.
response	character string, symbol or call giving the left-hand side of a model formula, or NULL.
intercept	logical: should the formula have an intercept?
dropx	vector of positions of variables to drop from the right-hand side of the model.
keep.response	Keep the response in the resulting object?

Value

delete.response and drop.terms return a terms object.

reformulate returns a formula.

See Also

terms

Examples

```
ff <- y ~ z + x + w
tt <- terms(ff)
tt
delete.response(tt)
drop.terms(tt, 2:3, keep.response = TRUE)
tt[-1]
tt[2:3]
reformulate(attr(tt, "term.labels"))

## keep LHS :
reformulate("x*w", ff[[2]])
fS <- surv(ft, case) ~ a + b
reformulate(c("a", "b*f"), fS[[2]])

## using non-syntactic names:
reformulate(c("P/E", "% Growth"), response = as.name("+-"))

stopifnot(identical(      ~ var, reformulate("var")),
          identical(~ a + b + c, reformulate(letters[1:3])),
          identical(  y ~ a + b, reformulate(letters[1:2], "y"))
         )
```

---

dendrapply *Apply a Function to All Nodes of a Dendrogram*

Description

Apply function FUN to each node of a dendrogram recursively. When y <- dendrapply(x, fn), then y is a dendrogram of the same graph structure as x and for each node, y.node[j] <- FUN(x.node[j], ...) (where y.node[j] is an (invalid!) notation for the j-th node of y.

Usage

```
dendrapply(X, FUN, ...)
```

Arguments

X	an object of class "dendrogram".
FUN	an function to be applied to each dendrogram node, typically working on its attributes alone, returning an altered version of the same node.
...	potential further arguments passed to FUN.

Value

Usually a dendrogram of the same (graph) structure as X. For that, the function must be conceptually of the form `FUN <- function(X) { attributes(X) <- .....; X }`, i.e., returning the node with some attributes added or changed.

Note

this is still somewhat experimental, and suggestions for enhancements (or nice examples of usage) are very welcome.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

as.dendrogram, lapply for applying a function to each component of a list, rapply for doing so to each non-list component of a nested list.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## a smallish simple dendrogram
dhc <- as.dendrogram(hc <- hclust(dist(USArrests), "ave"))
(dhc21 <- dhc[[2]][[1]])

## too simple:
dendrapply(dhc21, function(n) utils::str(attributes(n)))

## toy example to set colored leaf labels :
local({
  colLab <<- function(n) {
      if(is.leaf(n)) {
        a <- attributes(n)
        i <<- i+1
        attr(n, "nodePar") <-
            c(a$nodePar, list(lab.col = mycols[i], lab.font = i%%3))
      }
      n
  }
  mycols <- grDevices::rainbow(attr(dhc21,"members"))
  i <- 0
 })
```

```
dL <- dendrapply(dhc21, colLab)
op <- par(mfrow = 2:1)
 plot(dhc21)
 plot(dL) ## --> colored labels!
par(op)
```

---

dendrogram *General Tree Structures*

Description

Class "dendrogram" provides general functions for handling tree-like structures. It is intended as a replacement for similar functions in hierarchical clustering and classification/regression trees, such that all of these can use the same engine for plotting or cutting trees.

Usage

```
as.dendrogram(object, ...)
## S3 method for class hclust
as.dendrogram(object, hang = -1, check = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
as.hclust(x, ...)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
plot(x, type = c("rectangle", "triangle"),
      center = FALSE,
      edge.root = is.leaf(x) || !is.null(attr(x,"edgetext")),
      nodePar = NULL, edgePar = list(),
      leaflab = c("perpendicular", "textlike", "none"),
      dLeaf = NULL, xlab = "", ylab = "", xaxt = "n", yaxt = "s",
      horiz = FALSE, frame.plot = FALSE, xlim, ylim, ...)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
cut(x, h, ...)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
merge(x, y, ..., height,
      adjust = c("auto", "add.max", "none"))

## S3 method for class dendrogram
nobs(object, ...)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
print(x, digits, ...)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
rev(x)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
str(object, max.level = NA, digits.d = 3,
```

```
    give.attr = FALSE, wid = getOption("width"),
    nest.lev = 0, indent.str = "",
    last.str = getOption("str.dendrogram.last"), stem = "--",
    ...)

is.leaf(object)
```

Arguments

object	any object that can be made into one of class "dendrogram".
x, y	object(s) of class "dendrogram".
hang	numeric scalar indicating how the *height* of leaves should be computed from the heights of their parents; see plot.hclust.
check	logical indicating if object should be checked for validity. This check is not necessary when x is known to be valid such as when it is the direct result of hclust(). The default is check=TRUE, e.g. for protecting against memory explosion with invalid inputs.
type	type of plot.
center	logical; if TRUE, nodes are plotted centered with respect to the leaves in the branch. Otherwise (default), plot them in the middle of all direct child nodes.
edge.root	logical; if true, draw an edge to the root node.
nodePar	a list of plotting parameters to use for the nodes (see points) or NULL by default which does not draw symbols at the nodes. The list may contain components named pch, cex, col, xpd, and/or bg each of which can have length two for specifying separate attributes for *inner* nodes and *leaves*. Note that the default of pch is 1:2, so you may want to use pch = NA if you specify nodePar.
edgePar	a list of plotting parameters to use for the edge segments and labels (if there's an edgetext). The list may contain components named col, lty and lwd (for the segments), p.col, p.lwd, and p.lty (for the polygon around the text) and t.col for the text color. As with nodePar, each can have length two for differentiating leaves and inner nodes.
leaflab	a string specifying how leaves are labeled. The default "perpendicular" write text vertically (by default). "textlike" writes text horizontally (in a rectangle), and "none" suppresses leaf labels.
dLeaf	a number specifying the **d**istance in user coordinates between the tip of a leaf and its label. If NULL as per default, 3/4 of a letter width or height is used.
horiz	logical indicating if the dendrogram should be drawn *horizontally* or not.
frame.plot	logical indicating if a box around the plot should be drawn, see plot.default.
h	height at which the tree is cut.
height	height at which the two dendrograms should be merged. If not specified (or NULL), the default is ten percent larger than the (larger of the) two component heights.
adjust	a string determining if the leaf values should be adjusted. The default, "auto", checks if the (first) two dendrograms both start at 1; if they do, code"add.max" is chosen, which adds the maximum of the previous dendrogram leaf values to each leaf of the "next" dendrogram. Specifying adjust to another value skips the check and hence is a tad more efficient.

`xlim, ylim` optional x- and y-limits of the plot, passed to `plot.default`. The defaults for these show the full dendrogram.

`..., xlab, ylab, xaxt, yaxt` graphical parameters, or arguments for other methods.

`digits` integer specifying the precision for printing, see `print.default`.

`max.level, digits.d, give.attr, wid, nest.lev, indent.str` arguments to `str`, see `str.default()`. Note that `give.attr = FALSE` still shows `height` and `members` attributes for each node.

`last.str, stem` strings used for `str()` specifying how the last branch (at each level) should start and the *stem* to use for each dendrogram branch. In some environments, using `last.str = ""` will provide much nicer looking output, than the historical default `last.str = "`".

Details

The dendrogram is directly represented as a nested list where each component corresponds to a branch of the tree. Hence, the first branch of tree `z` is `z[[1]]`, the second branch of the corresponding subtree is `z[[1]][[2]]`, or shorter `z[[c(1,2)]]`, etc.. Each node of the tree carries some information needed for efficient plotting or cutting as attributes, of which only `members`, `height` and `leaf` for leaves are compulsory:

`members` total number of leaves in the branch

`height` numeric non-negative height at which the node is plotted.

`midpoint` numeric horizontal distance of the node from the left border (the leftmost leaf) of the branch (unit 1 between all leaves). This is used for `plot(*, center = FALSE)`.

`label` character; the label of the node

`x.member` for `cut()$upper`, the number of *former* members; more generally a substitute for the `members` component used for 'horizontal' (when `horiz = FALSE`, else 'vertical') alignment.

`edgetext` character; the label for the edge leading to the node

`nodePar` a named list (of length-1 components) specifying node-specific attributes for `points` plotting, see the `nodePar` argument above.

`edgePar` a named list (of length-1 components) specifying attributes for `segments` plotting of the edge leading to the node, and drawing of the `edgetext` if available, see the `edgePar` argument above.

`leaf` logical, if `TRUE`, the node is a leaf of the tree.

`cut.dendrogram()` returns a list with components `$upper` and `$lower`, the first is a truncated version of the original tree, also of class `dendrogram`, the latter a list with the branches obtained from cutting the tree, each a `dendrogram`.

There are `[[`, `print`, and `str` methods for `"dendrogram"` objects where the first one (extraction) ensures that selecting sub-branches keeps the class, i.e., returns a dendrogram even if only a leaf. On the other hand, `[` (*single* bracket) extraction returns the underlying list structure.

Objects of class `"hclust"` can be converted to class `"dendrogram"` using method `as.dendrogram()`, and since R 2.13.0, there is also a `as.hclust()` method as an inverse.

`rev.dendrogram` simply returns the dendrogram `x` with reversed nodes, see also `reorder.dendrogram`.

The `merge(x, y, ...)` method merges two or more dendrograms into a new one which has `x` and `y` (and optional further arguments) as branches. Note that before 3.1.2, `adjust = "none"` was used implicitly, which is invalid when, e.g., the dendrograms are from `as.dendrogram(hclust(..))`.

`nobs(object)` returns the total number of leaves (the `members` attribute, see above).

`is.leaf(object)` returns logical indicating if `object` is a leaf (the most simple dendrogram).

`plotNode()` and `plotNodeLimit()` are helper functions.

Warning

Some operations on dendrograms (including plotting) make use of recursion. For very deep trees It may be necessary to increase `options("expressions")`: if you do you are likely to need to set the C stack size larger than the default where possible.

Note

`plot()`: When using `type = "triangle"`, `center = TRUE` often looks better.

`str(d)`: If you really want to see the *internal* structure, use `str(unclass(d))` instead.

See Also

`dendrapply` for applying a function to *each* node. `order.dendrogram` and `reorder.dendrogram`; further, the `labels` method.

Examples

```
require(graphics); require(utils)

hc <- hclust(dist(USArrests), "ave")
(dend1 <- as.dendrogram(hc)) # "print()" method
str(dend1)          # "str()" method
str(dend1, max = 2, last.str =  "") # only the first two sub-levels
oo <- options(str.dendrogram.last = "\\") # yet another possibility
str(dend1, max = 2) # only the first two sub-levels
options(oo)  # .. resetting them

op <- par(mfrow =  c(2,2), mar = c(5,2,1,4))
plot(dend1)
## "triangle" type and show inner nodes:
plot(dend1, nodePar = list(pch = c(1,NA), cex = 0.8, lab.cex = 0.8),
      type = "t", center = TRUE)
plot(dend1, edgePar = list(col = 1:2, lty = 2:3),
     dLeaf = 1, edge.root = TRUE)
plot(dend1, nodePar = list(pch = 2:1, cex = .4*2:1, col = 2:3),
     horiz = TRUE)

## simple test for as.hclust() as the inverse of as.dendrogram():
stopifnot(identical(as.hclust(dend1)[1:4], hc[1:4]))

dend2 <- cut(dend1, h = 70)
plot(dend2$upper)
## leaves are wrong horizontally:
plot(dend2$upper, nodePar = list(pch = c(1,7), col = 2:1))
##  dend2$lower is *NOT* a dendrogram, but a list of .. :
plot(dend2$lower[[3]], nodePar = list(col = 4), horiz = TRUE, type = "tr")
## "inner" and "leaf" edges in different type & color :
plot(dend2$lower[[2]], nodePar = list(col = 1),   # non empty list
     edgePar = list(lty = 1:2, col = 2:1), edge.root = TRUE)
par(op)
```

```
d3 <- dend2$lower[[2]][[2]][[1]]
stopifnot(identical(d3, dend2$lower[[2]][[c(2,1)]]))
str(d3, last.str = "")

## to peek at the inner structure "if you must", use [..] indexing :
str(d3[2][[1]]) ## or the full
str(d3[])

## merge() to join dendrograms:
(d13 <- merge(dend2$lower[[1]], dend2$lower[[3]]))
## merge() all parts back (using default height instead of original one):
den.1 <- Reduce(merge, dend2$lower)
## or merge() all four parts at same height --> 4 branches (!)
d. <- merge(dend2$lower[[1]], dend2$lower[[2]], dend2$lower[[3]],
            dend2$lower[[4]])
## (with a warning) or the same using  do.call :
stopifnot(identical(d., do.call(merge, dend2$lower)))
plot(d., main = "merge(d1, d2, d3, d4)  |->  dendrogram with a 4-split")

## "Zoom" in to the first dendrogram :
plot(dend1, xlim = c(1,20), ylim = c(1,50))

nP <- list(col = 3:2, cex = c(2.0, 0.75), pch =  21:22,
           bg =  c("light blue", "pink"),
           lab.cex = 0.75, lab.col = "tomato")
plot(d3, nodePar= nP, edgePar = list(col = "gray", lwd = 2), horiz = TRUE)

addE <- function(n) {
      if(!is.leaf(n)) {
        attr(n, "edgePar") <- list(p.col = "plum")
        attr(n, "edgetext") <- paste(attr(n,"members"),"members")
      }
      n
}
d3e <- dendrapply(d3, addE)
plot(d3e, nodePar =  nP)
plot(d3e, nodePar =  nP, leaflab = "textlike")
```

`density` *Kernel Density Estimation*

Description

The (S3) generic function `density` computes kernel density estimates. Its default method does so with the given kernel and bandwidth for univariate observations.

Usage

```
density(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
density(x, bw = "nrd0", adjust = 1,
```

```
kernel = c("gaussian", "epanechnikov", "rectangular",
           "triangular", "biweight",
           "cosine", "optcosine"),
weights = NULL, window = kernel, width,
give.Rkern = FALSE,
n = 512, from, to, cut = 3, na.rm = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	the data from which the estimate is to be computed.
bw	the smoothing bandwidth to be used. The kernels are scaled such that this is the standard deviation of the smoothing kernel. (Note this differs from the reference books cited below, and from S-PLUS.) bw can also be a character string giving a rule to choose the bandwidth. See bw.nrd. The default, "nrd0", has remained the default for historical and compatibility reasons, rather than as a general recommendation, where e.g., "SJ" would rather fit, see also Venables and Ripley (2002). The specified (or computed) value of bw is multiplied by adjust.
adjust	the bandwidth used is actually adjust*bw. This makes it easy to specify values like 'half the default' bandwidth.
kernel, window	a character string giving the smoothing kernel to be used. This must be one of "gaussian", "rectangular", "triangular", "epanechnikov", "biweight", "cosine" or "optcosine", with default "gaussian", and may be abbreviated to a unique prefix (single letter). "cosine" is smoother than "optcosine", which is the usual 'cosine' kernel in the literature and almost MSE-efficient. However, "cosine" is the version used by S.
weights	numeric vector of non-negative observation weights, hence of same length as x. The default NULL is equivalent to weights = rep(1/nx, nx) where nx is the length of (the finite entries of) x[].
width	this exists for compatibility with S; if given, and bw is not, will set bw to width if this is a character string, or to a kernel-dependent multiple of width if this is numeric.
give.Rkern	logical; if true, *no* density is estimated, and the 'canonical bandwidth' of the chosen kernel is returned instead.
n	the number of equally spaced points at which the density is to be estimated. When n > 512, it is rounded up to a power of 2 during the calculations (as fft is used) and the final result is interpolated by approx. So it almost always makes sense to specify n as a power of two.
from,to	the left and right-most points of the grid at which the density is to be estimated; the defaults are cut * bw outside of range(x).
cut	by default, the values of from and to are cut bandwidths beyond the extremes of the data. This allows the estimated density to drop to approximately zero at the extremes.
na.rm	logical; if TRUE, missing values are removed from x. If FALSE any missing values cause an error.
...	further arguments for (non-default) methods.

Details

The algorithm used in `density.default` disperses the mass of the empirical distribution function over a regular grid of at least 512 points and then uses the fast Fourier transform to convolve this approximation with a discretized version of the kernel and then uses linear approximation to evaluate the density at the specified points.

The statistical properties of a kernel are determined by $\sigma_K^2 = \int t^2 K(t)dt$ which is always $= 1$ for our kernels (and hence the bandwidth `bw` is the standard deviation of the kernel) and $R(K) = \int K^2(t)dt$.
MSE-equivalent bandwidths (for different kernels) are proportional to $\sigma_K R(K)$ which is scale invariant and for our kernels equal to $R(K)$. This value is returned when `give.Rkern = TRUE`. See the examples for using exact equivalent bandwidths.

Infinite values in `x` are assumed to correspond to a point mass at `+/-Inf` and the density estimate is of the sub-density on `(-Inf, +Inf)`.

Value

If `give.Rkern` is true, the number $R(K)$, otherwise an object with class `"density"` whose underlying structure is a list containing the following components.

`x`	the `n` coordinates of the points where the density is estimated.
`y`	the estimated density values. These will be non-negative, but can be zero.
`bw`	the bandwidth used.
`n`	the sample size after elimination of missing values.
`call`	the call which produced the result.
`data.name`	the deparsed name of the `x` argument.
`has.na`	logical, for compatibility (always `FALSE`).

The `print` method reports `summary` values on the `x` and `y` components.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole (for S version).

Scott, D. W. (1992) *Multivariate Density Estimation. Theory, Practice and Visualization*. New York: Wiley.

Sheather, S. J. and Jones M. C. (1991) A reliable data-based bandwidth selection method for kernel density estimation. *J. Roy. Statist. Soc.* **B**, 683–690.

Silverman, B. W. (1986) *Density Estimation*. London: Chapman and Hall.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. New York: Springer.

See Also

`bw.nrd`, `plot.density`, `hist`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(density(c(-20, rep(0,98), 20)), xlim = c(-4, 4))  # IQR = 0

# The Old Faithful geyser data
d <- density(faithful$eruptions, bw = "sj")
d
plot(d)

plot(d, type = "n")
polygon(d, col = "wheat")

## Missing values:
x <- xx <- faithful$eruptions
x[i.out <- sample(length(x), 10)] <- NA
doR <- density(x, bw = 0.15, na.rm = TRUE)
lines(doR, col = "blue")
points(xx[i.out], rep(0.01, 10))

## Weighted observations:
fe <- sort(faithful$eruptions) # has quite a few non-unique values
## use counts / n as weights:
dw <- density(unique(fe), weights = table(fe)/length(fe), bw = d$bw)
utils::str(dw) ## smaller n: only 126, but identical estimate:
stopifnot(all.equal(d[1:3], dw[1:3]))

## simulation from a density() fit:
# a kernel density fit is an equally-weighted mixture.
fit <- density(xx)
N <- 1e6
x.new <- rnorm(N, sample(xx, size = N, replace = TRUE), fit$bw)
plot(fit)
lines(density(x.new), col = "blue")


(kernels <- eval(formals(density.default)$kernel))

## show the kernels in the R parametrization
plot (density(0, bw = 1), xlab = "",
      main = "Rs density() kernels with bw = 1")
for(i in 2:length(kernels))
   lines(density(0, bw = 1, kernel =  kernels[i]), col = i)
legend(1.5,.4, legend = kernels, col = seq(kernels),
       lty = 1, cex = .8, y.intersp = 1)

## show the kernels in the S parametrization
plot(density(0, from = -1.2, to = 1.2, width = 2, kernel = "gaussian"),
     type = "l", ylim = c(0, 1), xlab = "",
     main = "Rs density() kernels with width = 1")
for(i in 2:length(kernels))
   lines(density(0, width = 2, kernel =  kernels[i]), col = i)
legend(0.6, 1.0, legend = kernels, col = seq(kernels), lty = 1)

##-------- Semi-advanced theoretic from here on -------------
```

```
(RKs <- cbind(sapply(kernels,
                     function(k) density(kernel = k, give.Rkern = TRUE))))
100*round(RKs["epanechnikov",]/RKs, 4) ## Efficiencies

bw <- bw.SJ(precip) ## sensible automatic choice
plot(density(precip, bw = bw),
     main = "same sd bandwidths, 7 different kernels")
for(i in 2:length(kernels))
   lines(density(precip, bw = bw, kernel = kernels[i]), col = i)

## Bandwidth Adjustment for "Exactly Equivalent Kernels"
h.f <- sapply(kernels, function(k)density(kernel = k, give.Rkern = TRUE))
(h.f <- (h.f["gaussian"] / h.f)^ .2)
## -> 1, 1.01, .995, 1.007,... close to 1 => adjustment barely visible..

plot(density(precip, bw = bw),
     main = "equivalent bandwidths, 7 different kernels")
for(i in 2:length(kernels))
   lines(density(precip, bw = bw, adjust = h.f[i], kernel = kernels[i]),
         col = i)
legend(55, 0.035, legend = kernels, col = seq(kernels), lty = 1)
```

---

deriv *Symbolic and Algorithmic Derivatives of Simple Expressions*

Description

Compute derivatives of simple expressions, symbolically.

Usage

```
    D (expr, name)
 deriv(expr, ...)
deriv3(expr, ...)

 ## Default S3 method:
deriv(expr, namevec, function.arg = NULL, tag = ".expr",
       hessian = FALSE, ...)
 ## S3 method for class formula
deriv(expr, namevec, function.arg = NULL, tag = ".expr",
       hessian = FALSE, ...)

## Default S3 method:
deriv3(expr, namevec, function.arg = NULL, tag = ".expr",
       hessian = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class formula
deriv3(expr, namevec, function.arg = NULL, tag = ".expr",
       hessian = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

expr	A expression or call or (except D) a formula with no lhs.
name,namevec	character vector, giving the variable names (only one for D()) with respect to which derivatives will be computed.
function.arg	If specified and non-NULL, a character vector of arguments for a function return, or a function (with empty body) or TRUE, the latter indicating that a function with argument names namevec should be used.
tag	character; the prefix to be used for the locally created variables in result.
hessian	a logical value indicating whether the second derivatives should be calculated and incorporated in the return value.
...	arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

D is modelled after its S namesake for taking simple symbolic derivatives.

deriv is a *generic* function with a default and a formula method. It returns a call for computing the expr and its (partial) derivatives, simultaneously. It uses so-called *algorithmic derivatives*. If function.arg is a function, its arguments can have default values, see the fx example below.

Currently, deriv.formula just calls deriv.default after extracting the expression to the right of ~.

deriv3 and its methods are equivalent to deriv and its methods except that hessian defaults to TRUE for deriv3.

The internal code knows about the arithmetic operators +, -, *, / and ^, and the single-variable functions exp, log, sin, cos, tan, sinh, cosh, sqrt, pnorm, dnorm, asin, acos, atan, gamma, lgamma, digamma and trigamma, as well as psigamma for one or two arguments (but derivative only with respect to the first). (Note that only the standard normal distribution is considered.)

Value

D returns a call and therefore can easily be iterated for higher derivatives.

deriv and deriv3 normally return an expression object whose evaluation returns the function values with a "gradient" attribute containing the gradient matrix. If hessian is TRUE the evaluation also returns a "hessian" attribute containing the Hessian array.

If function.arg is not NULL, deriv and deriv3 return a function with those arguments rather than an expression.

References

Griewank, A. and Corliss, G. F. (1991) *Automatic Differentiation of Algorithms: Theory, Implementation, and Application*. SIAM proceedings, Philadelphia.

Bates, D. M. and Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Nonlinear models.* Chapter 10 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

nlm and optim for numeric minimization which could make use of derivatives,

Examples

```
## formula argument :
dx2x <- deriv(~ x^2, "x") ; dx2x
## Not run: expression({
         .value <- x^2
         .grad <- array(0, c(length(.value), 1), list(NULL, c("x")))
         .grad[, "x"] <- 2 * x
         attr(.value, "gradient") <- .grad
         .value
})
## End(Not run)
mode(dx2x)
x <- -1:2
eval(dx2x)

## Something tougher:
trig.exp <- expression(sin(cos(x + y^2)))
( D.sc <- D(trig.exp, "x") )
all.equal(D(trig.exp[[1]], "x"), D.sc)

( dxy <- deriv(trig.exp, c("x", "y")) )
y <- 1
eval(dxy)
eval(D.sc)

## function returned:
deriv((y ~ sin(cos(x) * y)), c("x","y"), func = TRUE)

## function with defaulted arguments:
(fx <- deriv(y ~ b0 + b1 * 2^(-x/th), c("b0", "b1", "th"),
             function(b0, b1, th, x = 1:7){} ) )
fx(2, 3, 4)

## Higher derivatives
deriv3(y ~ b0 + b1 * 2^(-x/th), c("b0", "b1", "th"),
     c("b0", "b1", "th", "x") )

## Higher derivatives:
DD <- function(expr, name, order = 1) {
   if(order < 1) stop("order must be >= 1")
   if(order == 1) D(expr, name)
   else DD(D(expr, name), name, order - 1)
}
DD(expression(sin(x^2)), "x", 3)
## showing the limits of the internal "simplify()" :
## Not run:
-sin(x^2) * (2 * x) * 2 + ((cos(x^2) * (2 * x) * (2 * x) + sin(x^2) *
    2) * (2 * x) + sin(x^2) * (2 * x) * 2)

## End(Not run)
```

---

deviance *Model Deviance*

Description

Returns the deviance of a fitted model object.

Usage

```
deviance(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object for which the deviance is desired.
`...`	additional optional argument.

Details

This is a generic function which can be used to extract deviances for fitted models. Consult the individual modeling functions for details on how to use this function.

Value

The value of the deviance extracted from the object `object`.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`df.residual`, `extractAIC`, `glm`, `lm`.

`df.residual` *Residual Degrees-of-Freedom*

Description

Returns the residual degrees-of-freedom extracted from a fitted model object.

Usage

```
df.residual(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object for which the degrees-of-freedom are desired.
`...`	additional optional arguments.

Details

This is a generic function which can be used to extract residual degrees-of-freedom for fitted models. Consult the individual modeling functions for details on how to use this function.

The default method just extracts the `df.residual` component.

Value

The value of the residual degrees-of-freedom extracted from the object x.

See Also

deviance, glm, lm.

---

diffinv *Discrete Integration: Inverse of Differencing*

Description

Computes the inverse function of the lagged differences function diff.

Usage

```
diffinv(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
diffinv(x, lag = 1, differences = 1, xi, ...)
## S3 method for class ts
diffinv(x, lag = 1, differences = 1, xi, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector, matrix, or time series.
lag	a scalar lag parameter.
differences	an integer representing the order of the difference.
xi	a numeric vector, matrix, or time series containing the initial values for the integrals. If missing, zeros are used.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

diffinv is a generic function with methods for class "ts" and default for vectors and matrices.

Missing values are not handled.

Value

A numeric vector, matrix, or time series (the latter for the "ts" method) representing the discrete integral of x.

Author(s)

A. Trapletti

See Also

diff

Examples

```
s <- 1:10
d <- diff(s)
diffinv(d, xi = 1)
```

`dist` *Distance Matrix Computation*

Description

This function computes and returns the distance matrix computed by using the specified distance measure to compute the distances between the rows of a data matrix.

Usage

```
dist(x, method = "euclidean", diag = FALSE, upper = FALSE, p = 2)

as.dist(m, diag = FALSE, upper = FALSE)
## Default S3 method:
as.dist(m, diag = FALSE, upper = FALSE)

## S3 method for class dist
print(x, diag = NULL, upper = NULL,
      digits = getOption("digits"), justify = "none",
      right = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class dist
as.matrix(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric matrix, data frame or `"dist"` object.
`method`	the distance measure to be used. This must be one of `"euclidean"`, `"maximum"`, `"manhattan"`, `"canberra"`, `"binary"` or `"minkowski"`. Any unambiguous substring can be given.
`diag`	logical value indicating whether the diagonal of the distance matrix should be printed by `print.dist`.
`upper`	logical value indicating whether the upper triangle of the distance matrix should be printed by `print.dist`.
`p`	The power of the Minkowski distance.
`m`	An object with distance information to be converted to a `"dist"` object. For the default method, a `"dist"` object, or a matrix (of distances) or an object which can be coerced to such a matrix using `as.matrix()`. (Only the lower triangle of the matrix is used, the rest is ignored).
`digits, justify`	passed to `format` inside of `print()`.
`right, ...`	further arguments, passed to other methods.

Details

Available distance measures are (written for two vectors x and y):

`euclidean`: Usual distance between the two vectors (2 norm aka L_2), $\sqrt{\sum_i (x_i - y_i)^2}$.

`maximum`: Maximum distance between two components of x and y (supremum norm)

`manhattan`: Absolute distance between the two vectors (1 norm aka L_1).

`canberra`: $\sum_i |x_i - y_i| / |x_i + y_i|$. Terms with zero numerator and denominator are omitted from the sum and treated as if the values were missing.

This is intended for non-negative values (e.g., counts): taking the absolute value of the denominator is a 1998 modification to avoid negative distances.

`binary`: (aka *asymmetric binary*): The vectors are regarded as binary bits, so non-zero elements are 'on' and zero elements are 'off'. The distance is the *proportion* of bits in which only one is on amongst those in which at least one is on.

`minkowski`: The p norm, the pth root of the sum of the pth powers of the differences of the components.

Missing values are allowed, and are excluded from all computations involving the rows within which they occur. Further, when `Inf` values are involved, all pairs of values are excluded when their contribution to the distance gave `NaN` or `NA`. If some columns are excluded in calculating a Euclidean, Manhattan, Canberra or Minkowski distance, the sum is scaled up proportionally to the number of columns used. If all pairs are excluded when calculating a particular distance, the value is `NA`.

The `"dist"` method of `as.matrix()` and `as.dist()` can be used for conversion between objects of class `"dist"` and conventional distance matrices.

`as.dist()` is a generic function. Its default method handles objects inheriting from class `"dist"`, or coercible to matrices using `as.matrix()`. Support for classes representing distances (also known as dissimilarities) can be added by providing an `as.matrix()` or, more directly, an `as.dist` method for such a class.

Value

`dist` returns an object of class `"dist"`.

The lower triangle of the distance matrix stored by columns in a vector, say `do`. If `n` is the number of observations, i.e., `n <- attr(do, "Size")`, then for $i < j \le n$, the dissimilarity between (row) i and `j` is `do[n*(i-1) - i*(i-1)/2 + j-i]`. The length of the vector is $n * (n-1)/2$, i.e., of order n^2.

The object has the following attributes (besides `"class"` equal to `"dist"`):

`Size`	integer, the number of observations in the dataset.
`Labels`	optionally, contains the labels, if any, of the observations of the dataset.
`Diag, Upper`	logicals corresponding to the arguments `diag` and `upper` above, specifying how the object should be printed.
`call`	optionally, the `call` used to create the object.
`method`	optionally, the distance method used; resulting from `dist()`, the (`match.arg()`ed) `method` argument.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Mardia, K. V., Kent, J. T. and Bibby, J. M. (1979) *Multivariate Analysis.* Academic Press.

Borg, I. and Groenen, P. (1997) *Modern Multidimensional Scaling. Theory and Applications.* Springer.

See Also

daisy in the **cluster** package with more possibilities in the case of *mixed* (continuous / categorical) variables. hclust.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

x <- matrix(rnorm(100), nrow = 5)
dist(x)
dist(x, diag = TRUE)
dist(x, upper = TRUE)
m <- as.matrix(dist(x))
d <- as.dist(m)
stopifnot(d == dist(x))

## Use correlations between variables "as distance"
dd <- as.dist((1 - cor(USJudgeRatings))/2)
round(1000 * dd) # (prints more nicely)
plot(hclust(dd)) # to see a dendrogram of clustered variables

## example of binary and canberra distances.
x <- c(0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1)
y <- c(1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1)
dist(rbind(x, y), method = "binary")
## answer 0.4 = 2/5
dist(rbind(x, y), method = "canberra")
## answer 2 * (6/5)

## To find the names
labels(eurodist)

## Examples involving "Inf" :
## 1)
x[6] <- Inf
(m2 <- rbind(x, y))
dist(m2, method = "binary")   # warning, answer 0.5 = 2/4
## These all give "Inf":
stopifnot(Inf == dist(m2, method =  "euclidean"),
          Inf == dist(m2, method =  "maximum"),
          Inf == dist(m2, method =  "manhattan"))
##  "Inf" is same as very large number:
x1 <- x; x1[6] <- 1e100
stopifnot(dist(cbind(x, y), method = "canberra") ==
    print(dist(cbind(x1, y), method = "canberra")))

## 2)
```

```
y[6] <- Inf #-> 6-th pair is excluded
dist(rbind(x, y), method = "binary"  )   # warning; 0.5
dist(rbind(x, y), method = "canberra"  ) # 3
dist(rbind(x, y), method = "maximum")    # 1
dist(rbind(x, y), method = "manhattan")  # 2.4
```

`Distributions` *Distributions in the stats package*

Description

Density, cumulative distribution function, quantile function and random variate generation for many standard probability distributions are available in the **stats** package.

Details

The functions for the density/mass function, cumulative distribution function, quantile function and random variate generation are named in the form `dxxx`, `pxxx`, `qxxx` and `rxxx` respectively.

For the beta distribution see `dbeta`.

For the binomial (including Bernoulli) distribution see `dbinom`.

For the Cauchy distribution see `dcauchy`.

For the chi-squared distribution see `dchisq`.

For the exponential distribution see `dexp`.

For the F distribution see `df`.

For the gamma distribution see `dgamma`.

For the geometric distribution see `dgeom`. (This is also a special case of the negative binomial.)

For the hypergeometric distribution see `dhyper`.

For the log-normal distribution see `dlnorm`.

For the multinomial distribution see `dmultinom`.

For the negative binomial distribution see `dnbinom`.

For the normal distribution see `dnorm`.

For the Poisson distribution see `dpois`.

For the Student's t distribution see `dt`.

For the uniform distribution see `dunif`.

For the Weibull distribution see `dweibull`.

For less common distributions of test statistics see `pbirthday`, `dsignrank`, `ptukey` and `dwilcox` (and see the 'See Also' section of `cor.test`).

See Also

`RNG` about random number generation in .

The CRAN task view on distributions, `http://cran.r-project.org/web/views/Distributions.html`, mentioning several CRAN packages for additional distributions.

dummy.coef *Extract Coefficients in Original Coding*

Description

This extracts coefficients in terms of the original levels of the coefficients rather than the coded variables.

Usage

```
dummy.coef(object, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
dummy.coef(object, use.na = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class aovlist
dummy.coef(object, use.na = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a linear model fit.
use.na	logical flag for coefficients in a singular model. If use.na is true, undetermined coefficients will be missing; if false they will get one possible value.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

A fitted linear model has coefficients for the contrasts of the factor terms, usually one less in number than the number of levels. This function re-expresses the coefficients in the original coding; as the coefficients will have been fitted in the reduced basis, any implied constraints (e.g., zero sum for contr.helmert or contr.sum) will be respected. There will be little point in using dummy.coef for contr.treatment contrasts, as the missing coefficients are by definition zero.

The method used has some limitations, and will give incomplete results for terms such as poly(x, 2). However, it is adequate for its main purpose, aov models.

Value

A list giving for each term the values of the coefficients. For a multistratum aov model, such a list for each stratum.

Warning

This function is intended for human inspection of the output: it should not be used for calculations. Use coded variables for all calculations.

The results differ from S for singular values, where S can be incorrect.

See Also

aov, model.tables

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))
## From Venables and Ripley (2002) p.165.
npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk)
dummy.coef(npk.aov)

npk.aovE <- aov(yield ~  N*P*K + Error(block), npk)
dummy.coef(npk.aovE)
```

---

ecdf *Empirical Cumulative Distribution Function*

Description

Compute an empirical cumulative distribution function, with several methods for plotting, printing and computing with such an "ecdf" object.

Usage

```
ecdf(x)

## S3 method for class ecdf
plot(x, ..., ylab="Fn(x)", verticals = FALSE,
     col.01line = "gray70", pch = 19)

## S3 method for class ecdf
print(x, digits= getOption("digits") - 2, ...)

## S3 method for class ecdf
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class ecdf
quantile(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, object`	numeric vector of the observations for `ecdf`; for the methods, an object inheriting from class `"ecdf"`.
`...`	arguments to be passed to subsequent methods, e.g., `plot.stepfun` for the `plot` method.
`ylab`	label for the y-axis.
`verticals`	see `plot.stepfun`.
`col.01line`	numeric or character specifying the color of the horizontal lines at y = 0 and 1, see `colors`.
`pch`	plotting character.
`digits`	number of significant digits to use, see `print`.

Details

The e.c.d.f. (empirical cumulative distribution function) F_n is a step function with jumps i/n at observation values, where i is the number of tied observations at that value. Missing values are ignored.

For observations x= $(x_1, x_2, \ldots x_n)$, F_n is the fraction of observations less or equal to t, i.e.,

$$F_n(t) = \#\{x_i \le t\}\ /n = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathbf{1}_{[x_i \le t]}.$$

The function `plot.ecdf` which implements the `plot` method for `ecdf` objects, is implemented via a call to `plot.stepfun`; see its documentation.

Value

For `ecdf`, a function of class `"ecdf"`, inheriting from the `"stepfun"` class, and hence inheriting a `knots()` method.

For the `summary` method, a summary of the knots of `object` with a `"header"` attribute.

The `quantile(obj, ...)` method computes the same quantiles as `quantile(x, ...)` would where `x` is the original sample.

Note

The objects of class `"ecdf"` are not intended to be used for permanent storage and may change structure between versions of (and did at 3.0.0). They can usually be re-created by

```
eval(attr(old_obj, "call"), environment(old_obj))
```

since the data used is stored as part of the object's environment.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler; fixes and new features by other R-core members.

See Also

`stepfun`, the more general class of step functions, `approxfun` and `splinefun`.

Examples

```
##-- Simple didactical  ecdf  example :
x <- rnorm(12)
Fn <- ecdf(x)
Fn     # a *function*
Fn(x)  # returns the percentiles for x
tt <- seq(-2, 2, by = 0.1)
12 * Fn(tt) # Fn is a simple function {with values k/12}
summary(Fn)
##--> see below for graphics
knots(Fn)  # the unique data values {12 of them if there were no ties}

y <- round(rnorm(12), 1); y[3] <- y[1]
Fn12 <- ecdf(y)
Fn12
```

```
knots(Fn12) # unique values (always less than 12!)
summary(Fn12)
summary.stepfun(Fn12)

## Advanced: Whats inside the function closure?
print(ls.Fn12 <- ls(environment(Fn12)))
##[1] "f"  "method"  "n"  "x"  "y"  "yleft"  "yright"
utils::ls.str(environment(Fn12))
stopifnot(all.equal(quantile(Fn12), quantile(y)))

###----------------- Plotting -------------------------
require(graphics)

op <- par(mfrow = c(3, 1), mgp = c(1.5, 0.8, 0), mar =  .1+c(3,3,2,1))

F10 <- ecdf(rnorm(10))
summary(F10)

plot(F10)
plot(F10, verticals = TRUE, do.points = FALSE)

plot(Fn12 , lwd = 2) ; mtext("lwd = 2", adj = 1)
xx <- unique(sort(c(seq(-3, 2, length = 201), knots(Fn12))))
lines(xx, Fn12(xx), col = "blue")
abline(v = knots(Fn12), lty = 2, col = "gray70")

plot(xx, Fn12(xx), type = "o", cex = .1)  #- plot.default {ugly}
plot(Fn12, col.hor = "red", add =  TRUE)  #- plot method
abline(v = knots(Fn12), lty = 2, col = "gray70")
## luxury plot
plot(Fn12, verticals = TRUE, col.points = "blue",
     col.hor = "red", col.vert = "bisque")

##-- this works too (automatic call to  ecdf(.)):
plot.ecdf(rnorm(24))
title("via  simple  plot.ecdf(x)", adj = 1)

par(op)
```

`eff.aovlist` *Compute Efficiencies of Multistratum Analysis of Variance*

Description

Computes the efficiencies of fixed-effect terms in an analysis of variance model with multiple strata.

Usage

```
eff.aovlist(aovlist)
```

Arguments

`aovlist`	The result of a call to `aov` with an `Error` term.

Details

Fixed-effect terms in an analysis of variance model with multiple strata may be estimable in more than one stratum, in which case there is less than complete information in each. The efficiency for a term is the fraction of the maximum possible precision (inverse variance) obtainable by estimating in just that stratum. Under the assumption of balance, this is the same for all contrasts involving that term.

This function is used to pick strata in which to estimate terms in `model.tables.aovlist` and `se.contrast.aovlist`.

In many cases terms will only occur in one stratum, when all the efficiencies will be one: this is detected and no further calculations are done.

The calculation used requires orthogonal contrasts for each term, and will throw an error if non-orthogonal contrasts (e.g., treatment contrasts or an unbalanced design) are detected.

Value

A matrix giving for each non-pure-error stratum (row) the efficiencies for each fixed-effect term in the model.

References

Heiberger, R. M. (1989) *Computation for the Analysis of Designed Experiments*. Wiley.

See Also

`aov`, `model.tables.aovlist`, `se.contrast.aovlist`

Examples

```
## An example from Yates (1932),
## a 2^3 design in 2 blocks replicated 4 times

Block <- gl(8, 4)
A <- factor(c(0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,
              0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1))
B <- factor(c(0,0,1,1,0,0,1,1,0,1,0,1,1,0,1,0,0,0,1,1,
              0,0,1,1,0,0,1,1,0,0,1,1))
C <- factor(c(0,1,1,0,1,0,0,1,0,0,1,1,0,0,1,1,0,1,0,1,
              1,0,1,0,0,0,1,1,1,1,0,0))
Yield <- c(101, 373, 398, 291, 312, 106, 265, 450, 106, 306, 324, 449,
           272, 89, 407, 338, 87, 324, 279, 471, 323, 128, 423, 334,
           131, 103, 445, 437, 324, 361, 302, 272)
aovdat <- data.frame(Block, A, B, C, Yield)

old <- getOption("contrasts")
options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))
(fit <- aov(Yield ~ A*B*C + Error(Block), data = aovdat))
eff.aovlist(fit)
options(contrasts = old)
```

`effects` *Effects from Fitted Model*

Description

Returns (orthogonal) effects from a fitted model, usually a linear model. This is a generic function, but currently only has a methods for objects inheriting from classes `"lm"` and `"glm"`.

Usage

```
effects(object, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
effects(object, set.sign = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object; typically, the result of a model fitting function such as `lm`.
`set.sign`	logical. If `TRUE`, the sign of the effects corresponding to coefficients in the model will be set to agree with the signs of the corresponding coefficients, otherwise the sign is arbitrary.
`...`	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

For a linear model fitted by `lm` or `aov`, the effects are the uncorrelated single-degree-of-freedom values obtained by projecting the data onto the successive orthogonal subspaces generated by the QR decomposition during the fitting process. The first r (the rank of the model) are associated with coefficients and the remainder span the space of residuals (but are not associated with particular residuals).

Empty models do not have effects.

Value

A (named) numeric vector of the same length as `residuals`, or a matrix if there were multiple responses in the fitted model, in either case of class `"coef"`.

The first r rows are labelled by the corresponding coefficients, and the remaining rows are unlabelled. Note that in rank-deficient models the corresponding coefficients will be in a different order if pivoting occurred.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`coef`

Examples

```
y <- c(1:3, 7, 5)
x <- c(1:3, 6:7)
( ee <- effects(lm(y ~ x)) )
c( round(ee - effects(lm(y+10 ~ I(x-3.8))), 3) )
# just the first is different
```

`embed` *Embedding a Time Series*

Description

Embeds the time series `x` into a low-dimensional Euclidean space.

Usage

```
embed (x, dimension = 1)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric vector, matrix, or time series.
`dimension`	a scalar representing the embedding dimension.

Details

Each row of the resulting matrix consists of sequences `x[t]`, `x[t-1]`, ..., `x[t-dimension+1]`, where `t` is the original index of `x`. If `x` is a matrix, i.e., `x` contains more than one variable, then `x[t]` consists of the `t`th observation on each variable.

Value

A matrix containing the embedded time series `x`.

Author(s)

A. Trapletti, B.D. Ripley

Examples

```
x <- 1:10
embed (x, 3)
```

`expand.model.frame` *Add new variables to a model frame*

Description

Evaluates new variables as if they had been part of the formula of the specified model. This ensures that the same `na.action` and `subset` arguments are applied and allows, for example, `x` to be recovered for a model using `sin(x)` as a predictor.

Usage

```
expand.model.frame(model, extras,
                   envir = environment(formula(model)),
                   na.expand = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`model`	a fitted model
`extras`	one-sided formula or vector of character strings describing new variables to be added
`envir`	an environment to evaluate things in
`na.expand`	logical; see below

Details

If `na.expand = FALSE` then `NA` values in the extra variables will be passed to the `na.action` function used in `model`. This may result in a shorter data frame (with `na.omit`) or an error (with `na.fail`). If `na.expand = TRUE` the returned data frame will have precisely the same rows as `model.frame(model)`, but the columns corresponding to the extra variables may contain `NA`.

Value

A data frame.

See Also

`model.frame`, `predict`

Examples

```
model <- lm(log(Volume) ~ log(Girth) + log(Height), data = trees)
expand.model.frame(model, ~ Girth) # prints data.frame like

dd <- data.frame(x = 1:5, y = rnorm(5), z = c(1,2,NA,4,5))
model <- glm(y ~ x, data = dd, subset = 1:4, na.action = na.omit)
expand.model.frame(model, "z", na.expand = FALSE) # = default
expand.model.frame(model, "z", na.expand = TRUE)
```

Exponential *The Exponential Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the exponential distribution with rate `rate` (i.e., mean `1/rate`).

Usage

```
dexp(x, rate = 1, log = FALSE)
pexp(q, rate = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qexp(p, rate = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rexp(n, rate = 1)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`rate`	vector of rates.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

If `rate` is not specified, it assumes the default value of `1`.

The exponential distribution with rate λ has density

$$f(x) = \lambda e^{-\lambda x}$$

for $x \geq 0$.

Value

`dexp` gives the density, `pexp` gives the distribution function, `qexp` gives the quantile function, and `rexp` generates random deviates.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rexp`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

The cumulative hazard $H(t) = -\log(1 - F(t))$ is `-pexp(t, r, lower = FALSE, log = TRUE)`.

Source

dexp, pexp and qexp are all calculated from numerically stable versions of the definitions.

rexp uses

Ahrens, J. H. and Dieter, U. (1972). Computer methods for sampling from the exponential and normal distributions. *Communications of the ACM*, **15**, 873–882.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 1, chapter 19. Wiley, New York.

See Also

exp for the exponential function.

Distributions for other standard distributions, including dgamma for the gamma distribution and dweibull for the Weibull distribution, both of which generalize the exponential.

Examples

```
dexp(1) - exp(-1) #-> 0

## a fast way to generate *sorted*  U[0,1]  random numbers:
rsunif <- function(n) { n1 <- n+1
   cE <- cumsum(rexp(n1)); cE[seq_len(n)]/cE[n1] }
plot(rsunif(1000), ylim=0:1, pch=".")
abline(0,1/(1000+1), col=adjustcolor(1, 0.5))
```

---

extractAIC *Extract AIC from a Fitted Model*

Description

Computes the (generalized) Akaike **A**n **I**nformation **C**riterion for a fitted parametric model.

Usage

```
extractAIC(fit, scale, k = 2, ...)
```

Arguments

fit	fitted model, usually the result of a fitter like lm.
scale	optional numeric specifying the scale parameter of the model, see scale in step. Currently only used in the "lm" method, where scale specifies the estimate of the error variance, and scale = 0 indicates that it is to be estimated by maximum likelihood.
k	numeric specifying the 'weight' of the *equivalent degrees of freedom* (≡ edf) part in the AIC formula.
...	further arguments (currently unused in base).

Details

This is a generic function, with methods in base for classes "aov", "glm" and "lm" as well as for "negbin" (package **MASS**) and "coxph" and "survreg" (package **survival**).

The criterion used is

$$AIC = -2 \log L + k \times \text{edf},$$

where L is the likelihood and edf the equivalent degrees of freedom (i.e., the number of free parameters for usual parametric models) of fit.

For linear models with unknown scale (i.e., for lm and aov), $-2 \log L$ is computed from the *deviance* and uses a different additive constant to logLik and hence AIC. If RSS denotes the (weighted) residual sum of squares then extractAIC uses for $-2 \log L$ the formulae $RSS/s - n$ (corresponding to Mallows' C_p) in the case of known scale s and $n \log(RSS/n)$ for unknown scale. AIC only handles unknown scale and uses the formula $n \log(RSS/n) + n + n \log 2\pi - \sum \log w$ where w are the weights. Further AIC counts the scale estimation as a parameter in the edf and extractAIC does not.

For glm fits the family's aic() function is used to compute the AIC: see the note under logLik about the assumptions this makes.

k = 2 corresponds to the traditional AIC, using k = log(n) provides the BIC (Bayesian IC) instead.

Note that the methods for this function may differ in their assumptions from those of methods for AIC (usually *via* a method for logLik). We have already mentioned the case of "lm" models with estimated scale, and there are similar issues in the "glm" and "negbin" methods where the dispersion parameter may or may not be taken as 'free'. This is immaterial as extractAIC is only used to compare models of the same class (where only differences in AIC values are considered).

Value

A numeric vector of length 2, with first and second elements giving

edf	the '**e**quivalent **d**egrees of **f**reedom' for the fitted model fit.
AIC	the (generalized) Akaike Information Criterion for fit.

Note

This function is used in add1, drop1 and step and the similar functions in package **MASS** from which it was adopted.

Author(s)

B. D. Ripley

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* New York: Springer (4th ed).

See Also

AIC, deviance, add1, step

Examples

```
utils::example(glm)
extractAIC(glm.D93)  #>>  5  15.129
```

`factanal` *Factor Analysis*

Description

Perform maximum-likelihood factor analysis on a covariance matrix or data matrix.

Usage

```
factanal(x, factors, data = NULL, covmat = NULL, n.obs = NA,
         subset, na.action, start = NULL,
         scores = c("none", "regression", "Bartlett"),
         rotation = "varimax", control = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	A formula or a numeric matrix or an object that can be coerced to a numeric matrix.
`factors`	The number of factors to be fitted.
`data`	An optional data frame (or similar: see `model.frame`), used only if `x` is a formula. By default the variables are taken from `environment(formula)`.
`covmat`	A covariance matrix, or a covariance list as returned by `cov.wt`. Of course, correlation matrices are covariance matrices.
`n.obs`	The number of observations, used if `covmat` is a covariance matrix.
`subset`	A specification of the cases to be used, if `x` is used as a matrix or formula.
`na.action`	The `na.action` to be used if `x` is used as a formula.
`start`	`NULL` or a matrix of starting values, each column giving an initial set of uniquenesses.
`scores`	Type of scores to produce, if any. The default is none, `"regression"` gives Thompson's scores, `"Bartlett"` given Bartlett's weighted least-squares scores. Partial matching allows these names to be abbreviated.
`rotation`	character. `"none"` or the name of a function to be used to rotate the factors: it will be called with first argument the loadings matrix, and should return a list with component `loadings` giving the rotated loadings, or just the rotated loadings.
`control`	A list of control values, **nstart** The number of starting values to be tried if `start = NULL`. Default 1. **trace** logical. Output tracing information? Default `FALSE`. **lower** The lower bound for uniquenesses during optimization. Should be > 0. Default 0.005. **opt** A list of control values to be passed to `optim`'s `control` argument. **rotate** a list of additional arguments for the rotation function.
`...`	Components of `control` can also be supplied as named arguments to `factanal`.

Details

The factor analysis model is

$$x = \Lambda f + e$$

for a p–element row-vector x, a $p \times k$ matrix Λ of *loadings*, a k–element vector f of *scores* and a p–element vector $e$of errors. None of the components other than x is observed, but the major restriction is that the scores be uncorrelated and of unit variance, and that the errors be independent with variances Ψ, the *uniquenesses*. It is also common to scale the observed variables to unit variance, and done in this function.

Thus factor analysis is in essence a model for the correlation matrix of x,

$$\Sigma = \Lambda'\Lambda + \Psi$$

There is still some indeterminacy in the model for it is unchanged if Λ is replaced by $G\Lambda$ for any orthogonal matrix G. Such matrices G are known as *rotations* (although the term is applied also to non-orthogonal invertible matrices).

If `covmat` is supplied it is used. Otherwise `x` is used if it is a matrix, or a formula `x` is used with `data` to construct a model matrix, and that is used to construct a covariance matrix. (It makes no sense for the formula to have a response, and all the variables must be numeric.) Once a covariance matrix is found or calculated from `x`, it is converted to a correlation matrix for analysis. The correlation matrix is returned as component `correlation` of the result.

The fit is done by optimizing the log likelihood assuming multivariate normality over the uniquenesses. (The maximizing loadings for given uniquenesses can be found analytically: Lawley & Maxwell (1971, p. 27).) All the starting values supplied in `start` are tried in turn and the best fit obtained is used. If `start = NULL` then the first fit is started at the value suggested by Jöreskog (1963) and given by Lawley & Maxwell (1971, p. 31), and then `control$nstart - 1` other values are tried, randomly selected as equal values of the uniquenesses.

The uniquenesses are technically constrained to lie in $[0, 1]$, but near-zero values are problematical, and the optimization is done with a lower bound of `control$lower`, default 0.005 (Lawley & Maxwell, 1971, p. 32).

Scores can only be produced if a data matrix is supplied and used. The first method is the regression method of Thomson (1951), the second the weighted least squares method of Bartlett (1937, 8). Both are estimates of the unobserved scores f. Thomson's method regresses (in the population) the unknown f on x to yield

$$\hat{f} = \Lambda'\Sigma^{-1}x$$

and then substitutes the sample estimates of the quantities on the right-hand side. Bartlett's method minimizes the sum of squares of standardized errors over the choice of f, given (the fitted) Λ.

If `x` is a formula then the standard `NA`-handling is applied to the scores (if requested): see `napredict`.

The `print` method (documented under `loadings`) follows the factor analysis convention of drawing attention to the patterns of the results, so the default precision is three decimal places, and small loadings are suppressed.

Value

An object of class `"factanal"` with components

`loadings`	A matrix of loadings, one column for each factor. The factors are ordered in decreasing order of sums of squares of loadings, and given the sign that will make the sum of the loadings positive. This is of class `"loadings"`: see `loadings` for its `print` method.
`uniquenesses`	The uniquenesses computed.

correlation	The correlation matrix used.
criteria	The results of the optimization: the value of the negative log-likelihood and information on the iterations used.
factors	The argument factors.
dof	The number of degrees of freedom of the factor analysis model.
method	The method: always "mle".
rotmat	The rotation matrix if relevant.
scores	If requested, a matrix of scores. napredict is applied to handle the treatment of values omitted by the na.action.
n.obs	The number of observations if available, or NA.
call	The matched call.
na.action	If relevant.
STATISTIC, PVAL	The significance-test statistic and P value, if it can be computed.

Note

There are so many variations on factor analysis that it is hard to compare output from different programs. Further, the optimization in maximum likelihood factor analysis is hard, and many other examples we compared had less good fits than produced by this function. In particular, solutions which are 'Heywood cases' (with one or more uniquenesses essentially zero) are much more common than most texts and some other programs would lead one to believe.

References

Bartlett, M. S. (1937) The statistical conception of mental factors. *British Journal of Psychology*, **28**, 97–104.

Bartlett, M. S. (1938) Methods of estimating mental factors. *Nature*, **141**, 609–610.

Jöreskog, K. G. (1963) *Statistical Estimation in Factor Analysis.* Almqvist and Wicksell.

Lawley, D. N. and Maxwell, A. E. (1971) *Factor Analysis as a Statistical Method.* Second edition. Butterworths.

Thomson, G. H. (1951) *The Factorial Analysis of Human Ability.* London University Press.

See Also

loadings (which explains some details of the print method), varimax, princomp, ability.cov, Harman23.cor, Harman74.cor.

Other rotation methods are available in various contributed packages, including **GPArotation** and **psych**.

Examples

```
# A little demonstration, v2 is just v1 with noise,
# and same for v4 vs. v3 and v6 vs. v5
# Last four cases are there to add noise
# and introduce a positive manifold (g factor)
v1 <- c(1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,3,3,3,3,3,4,5,6)
v2 <- c(1,2,1,1,1,1,2,1,2,1,3,4,3,3,3,4,6,5)
v3 <- c(3,3,3,3,3,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,5,4,6)
v4 <- c(3,3,4,3,3,1,1,2,1,1,1,1,2,1,1,5,6,4)
```

```
v5 <- c(1,1,1,1,1,3,3,3,3,3,1,1,1,1,1,6,4,5)
v6 <- c(1,1,1,2,1,3,3,3,4,3,1,1,1,2,1,6,5,4)
m1 <- cbind(v1,v2,v3,v4,v5,v6)
cor(m1)
factanal(m1, factors = 3) # varimax is the default
factanal(m1, factors = 3, rotation = "promax")
# The following shows the g factor as PC1
prcomp(m1) # signs may depend on platform

## formula interface
factanal(~v1+v2+v3+v4+v5+v6, factors = 3,
         scores = "Bartlett")$scores

## a realistic example from Bartholomew (1987, pp. 61-65)
utils::example(ability.cov)
```

`factor.scope` *Compute Allowed Changes in Adding to or Dropping from a Formula*

Description

`add.scope` and `drop.scope` compute those terms that can be individually added to or dropped from a model while respecting the hierarchy of terms.

Usage

```
add.scope(terms1, terms2)

drop.scope(terms1, terms2)

factor.scope(factor, scope)
```

Arguments

`terms1`	the terms or formula for the base model.
`terms2`	the terms or formula for the upper (`add.scope`) or lower (`drop.scope`) scope. If missing for `drop.scope` it is taken to be the null formula, so all terms (except any intercept) are candidates to be dropped.
`factor`	the `"factor"` attribute of the terms of the base object.
`scope`	a list with one or both components `drop` and `add` giving the `"factor"` attribute of the lower and upper scopes respectively.

Details

`factor.scope` is not intended to be called directly by users.

Value

For `add.scope` and `drop.scope` a character vector of terms labels. For `factor.scope`, a list with components `drop` and `add`, character vectors of terms labels.

See Also

add1, drop1, aov, lm

Examples

```
add.scope( ~ a + b + c + a:b,  ~ (a + b + c)^3)
# [1] "a:c" "b:c"
drop.scope( ~ a + b + c + a:b)
# [1] "c"   "a:b"
```

---

family *Family Objects for Models*

Description

Family objects provide a convenient way to specify the details of the models used by functions such as glm. See the documentation for glm for the details on how such model fitting takes place.

Usage

```
family(object, ...)

binomial(link = "logit")
gaussian(link = "identity")
Gamma(link = "inverse")
inverse.gaussian(link = "1/mu^2")
poisson(link = "log")
quasi(link = "identity", variance = "constant")
quasibinomial(link = "logit")
quasipoisson(link = "log")
```

Arguments

link	a specification for the model link function. This can be a name/expression, a literal character string, a length-one character vector or an object of class "link-glm" (such as generated by make.link) provided it is not specified *via* one of the standard names given next. The gaussian family accepts the links (as names) identity, log and inverse; the binomial family the links logit, probit, cauchit, (corresponding to logistic, normal and Cauchy CDFs respectively) log and cloglog (complementary log-log); the Gamma family the links inverse, identity and log; the poisson family the links log, identity, and sqrt and the inverse.gaussian family the links 1/mu^2, inverse, identity and log. The quasi family accepts the links logit, probit, cloglog, identity, inverse, log, 1/mu^2 and sqrt, and the function power can be used to create a power link function.
variance	for all families other than quasi, the variance function is determined by the family. The quasi family will accept the literal character string (or unquoted as a name/expression) specifications "constant", "mu(1-mu)", "mu", "mu^2" and "mu^3", a length-one character vector taking one of those values, or a list containing components varfun, validmu, dev.resids, initialize and name.

object	the function family accesses the family objects which are stored within objects created by modelling functions (e.g., glm).
...	further arguments passed to methods.

Details

family is a generic function with methods for classes "glm" and "lm" (the latter returning gaussian()).

For the binomial and quasibinomial families the response can be specified in one of three ways:

1. As a factor: 'success' is interpreted as the factor not having the first level (and hence usually of having the second level).
2. As a numerical vector with values between 0 and 1, interpreted as the proportion of successful cases (with the total number of cases given by the weights).
3. As a two-column integer matrix: the first column gives the number of successes and the second the number of failures.

The quasibinomial and quasipoisson families differ from the binomial and poisson families only in that the dispersion parameter is not fixed at one, so they can model over-dispersion. For the binomial case see McCullagh and Nelder (1989, pp. 124–8). Although they show that there is (under some restrictions) a model with variance proportional to mean as in the quasi-binomial model, note that glm does not compute maximum-likelihood estimates in that model. The behaviour of S is closer to the quasi- variants.

Value

An object of class "family" (which has a concise print method). This is a list with elements

family	character: the family name.
link	character: the link name.
linkfun	function: the link.
linkinv	function: the inverse of the link function.
variance	function: the variance as a function of the mean.
dev.resids	function giving the deviance residuals as a function of (y, mu, wt).
aic	function giving the AIC value if appropriate (but NA for the quasi- families). See logLik for the assumptions made about the dispersion parameter.
mu.eta	function: derivative function(eta) $d\mu/d\eta$.
initialize	expression. This needs to set up whatever data objects are needed for the family as well as n (needed for AIC in the binomial family) and mustart (see glm.
valid.mu	logical function. Returns TRUE if a mean vector mu is within the domain of variance.
valid.eta	logical function. Returns TRUE if a linear predictor eta is within the domain of linkinv.
simulate	(optional) function simulate(object, nsim) to be called by the "lm" method of simulate. It will normally return a matrix with nsim columns and one row for each fitted value, but it can also return a list of length nsim. Clearly this will be missing for 'quasi-' families.

Note

The `link` and `variance` arguments have rather awkward semantics for back-compatibility. The recommended way is to supply them is as quoted character strings, but they can also be supplied unquoted (as names or expressions). In addition, they can also be supplied as a length-one character vector giving the name of one of the options, or as a list (for `link`, of class `"link-glm"`). The restrictions apply only to links given as names: when given as a character string all the links known to `make.link` are accepted.

This is potentially ambiguous: supplying `link = logit` could mean the unquoted name of a link or the value of object `logit`. It is interpreted if possible as the name of an allowed link, then as an object. (You can force the interpretation to always be the value of an object via `logit[1]`.)

Author(s)

The design was inspired by S functions of the same names described in Hastie & Pregibon (1992) (except `quasibinomial` and `quasipoisson`).

References

McCullagh P. and Nelder, J. A. (1989) *Generalized Linear Models.* London: Chapman and Hall.

Dobson, A. J. (1983) *An Introduction to Statistical Modelling.* London: Chapman and Hall.

Cox, D. R. and Snell, E. J. (1981). *Applied Statistics; Principles and Examples.* London: Chapman and Hall.

Hastie, T. J. and Pregibon, D. (1992) *Generalized linear models.* Chapter 6 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`glm`, `power`, `make.link`.

For binomial *coefficients*, `choose`; the binomial and negative binomial *distributions*, `Binomial`, and `NegBinomial`.

Examples

```
require(utils) # for str

nf <- gaussian()  # Normal family
nf
str(nf)

gf <- Gamma()
gf
str(gf)
gf$linkinv
gf$variance(-3:4) #- == (.)^2


## quasipoisson. compare with example(glm)
counts <- c(18,17,15,20,10,20,25,13,12)
outcome <- gl(3,1,9)
treatment <- gl(3,3)
d.AD <- data.frame(treatment, outcome, counts)
glm.qD93 <- glm(counts ~ outcome + treatment, family = quasipoisson())
```

```
glm.qD93
anova(glm.qD93, test = "F")
summary(glm.qD93)
## for Poisson results use
anova(glm.qD93, dispersion = 1, test = "Chisq")
summary(glm.qD93, dispersion = 1)


## Example of user-specified link, a logit model for p^days
## See Shaffer, T.  2004. Auk 121(2): 526-540.
logexp <- function(days = 1)
{
    linkfun <- function(mu) qlogis(mu^(1/days))
    linkinv <- function(eta) plogis(eta)^days
    mu.eta <- function(eta) days * plogis(eta)^(days-1) * binomial()$mu_eta
    valideta <- function(eta) TRUE
    link <- paste0("logexp(", days, ")")
    structure(list(linkfun = linkfun, linkinv = linkinv,
                   mu.eta = mu.eta, valideta = valideta, name = link),
              class = "link-glm")
}
binomial(logexp(3))
## in practice this would be used with a vector of days, in
## which case use an offset of 0 in the corresponding formula
## to get the null deviance right.

## Binomial with identity link: often not a good idea.
## Not run: binomial(link = make.link("identity"))

## tests of quasi
x <- rnorm(100)
y <- rpois(100, exp(1+x))
glm(y ~ x, family = quasi(variance = "mu", link = "log"))
# which is the same as
glm(y ~ x, family = poisson)
glm(y ~ x, family = quasi(variance = "mu^2", link = "log"))
## Not run: glm(y ~ x, family = quasi(variance = "mu^3", link = "log")) # fails
y <- rbinom(100, 1, plogis(x))
# needs to set a starting value for the next fit
glm(y ~ x, family = quasi(variance = "mu(1-mu)", link = "logit"), start = c(0,1))
```

FDist *The F Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the F distribution with df1 and df2 degrees of freedom (and optional non-centrality parameter ncp).

Usage

```
df(x, df1, df2, ncp, log = FALSE)
pf(q, df1, df2, ncp, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qf(p, df1, df2, ncp, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rf(n, df1, df2, ncp)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`df1, df2`	degrees of freedom. `Inf` is allowed.
`ncp`	non-centrality parameter. If omitted the central F is assumed.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The F distribution with `df1` $= n_1$ and `df2` $= n_2$ degrees of freedom has density

$$f(x) = \frac{\Gamma(n_1/2 + n_2/2)}{\Gamma(n_1/2)\Gamma(n_2/2)} \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^{n_1/2} x^{n_1/2-1} \left(1 + \frac{n_1 x}{n_2}\right)^{-(n_1+n_2)/2}$$

for $x > 0$.

It is the distribution of the ratio of the mean squares of n_1 and n_2 independent standard normals, and hence of the ratio of two independent chi-squared variates each divided by its degrees of freedom. Since the ratio of a normal and the root mean-square of m independent normals has a Student's t_m distribution, the square of a t_m variate has a F distribution on 1 and m degrees of freedom.

The non-central F distribution is again the ratio of mean squares of independent normals of unit variance, but those in the numerator are allowed to have non-zero means and `ncp` is the sum of squares of the means. See Chisquare for further details on non-central distributions.

Value

`df` gives the density, `pf` gives the distribution function `qf` gives the quantile function, and `rf` generates random deviates.

Invalid arguments will result in return value `NaN`, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rf`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

Supplying `ncp = 0` uses the algorithm for the non-central distribution, which is not the same algorithm used if `ncp` is omitted. This is to give consistent behaviour in extreme cases with values of `ncp` very near zero.

The code for non-zero `ncp` is principally intended to be used for moderate values of `ncp`: it will not be highly accurate, especially in the tails, for large values.

Source

For the central case of `df`, computed *via* a binomial probability, code contributed by Catherine Loader (see `dbinom`); for the non-central case computed *via* `dbeta`, code contributed by Peter Ruckdeschel.

For `pf`, *via* `pbeta` (or for large `df2`, *via* `pchisq`).

For `qf`, *via* `qchisq` for large `df2`, else *via* `qbeta`.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 2, chapters 27 and 30. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including `dchisq` for chi-squared and `dt` for Student's t distributions.

Examples

```
## Equivalence of pt(.,nu) with pf(.^2, 1,nu):
x <- seq(0.001, 5, len = 100)
nu <- 4
stopifnot(all.equal(2*pt(x,nu) - 1, pf(x^2, 1,nu)),
          ## upper tails:
    all.equal(2*pt(x,     nu, lower=FALSE),
      pf(x^2, 1,nu, lower=FALSE)))

## the density of the square of a t_m is 2*dt(x, m)/(2*x)
# check this is the same as the density of F_{1,m}
all.equal(df(x^2, 1, 5), dt(x, 5)/x)

## Identity:  qf(2*p - 1, 1, df)) == qt(p, df)^2)  for  p >= 1/2
p <- seq(1/2, .99, length = 50); df <- 10
rel.err <- function(x, y) ifelse(x == y, 0, abs(x-y)/mean(abs(c(x,y))))
quantile(rel.err(qf(2*p - 1, df1 = 1, df2 = df), qt(p, df)^2), .90)  # ~= 7e-9
```

`fft` *Fast Discrete Fourier Transform*

Description

Performs the Fast Fourier Transform of an array.

Usage

```
fft(z, inverse = FALSE)
mvfft(z, inverse = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`z`	a real or complex array containing the values to be transformed.
`inverse`	if `TRUE`, the unnormalized inverse transform is computed (the inverse has a `+` in the exponent of e, but here, we do *not* divide by `1/length(x)`).

Value

When `z` is a vector, the value computed and returned by `fft` is the unnormalized univariate Fourier transform of the sequence of values in `z`.

When `z` contains an array, `fft` computes and returns the multivariate (spatial) transform. If `inverse` is `TRUE`, the (unnormalized) inverse Fourier transform is returned, i.e., if `y <- fft(z)`, then `z` is `fft(y, inverse = TRUE) / length(y)`.

By contrast, `mvfft` takes a real or complex matrix as argument, and returns a similar shaped matrix, but with each column replaced by its discrete Fourier transform. This is useful for analyzing vector-valued series.

The FFT is fastest when the length of the series being transformed is highly composite (i.e., has many factors). If this is not the case, the transform may take a long time to compute and will use a large amount of memory.

Source

Uses C translation of Fortran code in Singleton (1979).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Singleton, R. C. (1979) Mixed Radix Fast Fourier Transforms, in *Programs for Digital Signal Processing*, IEEE Digital Signal Processing Committee eds. IEEE Press.

See Also

`convolve`, `nextn`.

Examples

```
x <- 1:4
fft(x)
fft(fft(x), inverse = TRUE)/length(x)
```

`filter` *Linear Filtering on a Time Series*

Description

Applies linear filtering to a univariate time series or to each series separately of a multivariate time series.

Usage

```
filter(x, filter, method = c("convolution", "recursive"),
       sides = 2, circular = FALSE, init)
```

Arguments

x	a univariate or multivariate time series.
filter	a vector of filter coefficients in reverse time order (as for AR or MA coefficients).
method	Either "convolution" or "recursive" (and can be abbreviated). If "convolution" a moving average is used: if "recursive" an autoregression is used.
sides	for convolution filters only. If sides = 1 the filter coefficients are for past values only; if sides = 2 they are centred around lag 0. In this case the length of the filter should be odd, but if it is even, more of the filter is forward in time than backward.
circular	for convolution filters only. If TRUE, wrap the filter around the ends of the series, otherwise assume external values are missing (NA).
init	for recursive filters only. Specifies the initial values of the time series just prior to the start value, in reverse time order. The default is a set of zeros.

Details

Missing values are allowed in x but not in filter (where they would lead to missing values everywhere in the output).

Note that there is an implied coefficient 1 at lag 0 in the recursive filter, which gives

$$y_i = x_i + f_1 y_{i-1} + \cdots + f_p y_{i-p}$$

No check is made to see if recursive filter is invertible: the output may diverge if it is not.

The convolution filter is

$$y_i = f_1 x_{i+o} + \cdots + f_p x_{i+o-(p-1)}$$

where o is the offset: see sides for how it is determined.

Value

A time series object.

Note

convolve(, type = "filter") uses the FFT for computations and so *may* be faster for long filters on univariate series, but it does not return a time series (and so the time alignment is unclear), nor does it handle missing values. filter is faster for a filter of length 100 on a series of length 1000, for example.

See Also

convolve, arima.sim

Examples

```
x <- 1:100
filter(x, rep(1, 3))
filter(x, rep(1, 3), sides = 1)
filter(x, rep(1, 3), sides = 1, circular = TRUE)

filter(presidents, rep(1, 3))
```

`fisher.test` *Fisher's Exact Test for Count Data*

Description

Performs Fisher's exact test for testing the null of independence of rows and columns in a contingency table with fixed marginals.

Usage

```
fisher.test(x, y = NULL, workspace = 200000, hybrid = FALSE,
            control = list(), or = 1, alternative = "two.sided",
            conf.int = TRUE, conf.level = 0.95,
            simulate.p.value = FALSE, B = 2000)
```

Arguments

`x`	either a two-dimensional contingency table in matrix form, or a factor object.
`y`	a factor object; ignored if `x` is a matrix.
`workspace`	an integer specifying the size of the workspace used in the network algorithm. In units of 4 bytes. Only used for non-simulated p-values larger than 2×2 tables.
`hybrid`	a logical. Only used for larger than 2×2 tables, in which cases it indicates whether the exact probabilities (default) or a hybrid approximation thereof should be computed. See 'Details'.
`control`	a list with named components for low level algorithm control. At present the only one used is `"mult"`, a positive integer ≥ 2 with default 30 used only for larger than 2×2 tables. This says how many times as much space should be allocated to paths as to keys: see file '`fexact.c`' in the sources of this package.
`or`	the hypothesized odds ratio. Only used in the 2×2 case.
`alternative`	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of `"two.sided"`, `"greater"` or `"less"`. You can specify just the initial letter. Only used in the 2×2 case.
`conf.int`	logical indicating if a confidence interval for the odds ratio in a 2×2 table should be computed (and returned).
`conf.level`	confidence level for the returned confidence interval. Only used in the 2×2 case and if `conf.int = TRUE`.
`simulate.p.value`	a logical indicating whether to compute p-values by Monte Carlo simulation, in larger than 2×2 tables.
`B`	an integer specifying the number of replicates used in the Monte Carlo test.

Details

If `x` is a matrix, it is taken as a two-dimensional contingency table, and hence its entries should be nonnegative integers. Otherwise, both `x` and `y` must be vectors of the same length. Incomplete cases are removed, the vectors are coerced into factor objects, and the contingency table is computed from these.

For 2×2 cases, p-values are obtained directly using the (central or non-central) hypergeometric distribution. Otherwise, computations are based on a C version of the FORTRAN subroutine FEXACT which implements the network developed by Mehta and Patel (1986) and improved by Clarkson, Fan and Joe (1993). The FORTRAN code can be obtained from http://www.netlib.org/toms/643. Note this fails (with an error message) when the entries of the table are too large. (It transposes the table if necessary so it has no more rows than columns. One constraint is that the product of the row marginals be less than $2^{31} - 1$.)

For 2×2 tables, the null of conditional independence is equivalent to the hypothesis that the odds ratio equals one. 'Exact' inference can be based on observing that in general, given all marginal totals fixed, the first element of the contingency table has a non-central hypergeometric distribution with non-centrality parameter given by the odds ratio (Fisher, 1935). The alternative for a one-sided test is based on the odds ratio, so `alternative = "greater"` is a test of the odds ratio being bigger than `or`.

Two-sided tests are based on the probabilities of the tables, and take as 'more extreme' all tables with probabilities less than or equal to that of the observed table, the p-value being the sum of such probabilities.

For larger than 2×2 tables and `hybrid = TRUE`, asymptotic chi-squared probabilities are only used if the 'Cochran conditions' are satisfied, that is if no cell has count zero, and more than 80% of the cells have counts at least 5: otherwise the exact calculation is used.

Simulation is done conditional on the row and column marginals, and works only if the marginals are strictly positive. (A C translation of the algorithm of Patefield (1981) is used.)

Value

A list with class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`p.value`	the p-value of the test.
`conf.int`	a confidence interval for the odds ratio. Only present in the 2×2 case and if argument `conf.int = TRUE`.
`estimate`	an estimate of the odds ratio. Note that the *conditional* Maximum Likelihood Estimate (MLE) rather than the unconditional MLE (the sample odds ratio) is used. Only present in the 2×2 case.
`null.value`	the odds ratio under the null, `or`. Only present in the 2×2 case.
`alternative`	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
`method`	the character string `"Fishers Exact Test for Count Data"`.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

Agresti, A. (1990) *Categorical data analysis*. New York: Wiley. Pages 59–66.

Agresti, A. (2002) *Categorical data analysis*. Second edition. New York: Wiley. Pages 91–101.

Fisher, R. A. (1935) The logic of inductive inference. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series A* **98**, 39–54.

Fisher, R. A. (1962) Confidence limits for a cross-product ratio. *Australian Journal of Statistics* **4**, 41.

Fisher, R. A. (1970) *Statistical Methods for Research Workers.* Oliver & Boyd.

Mehta, C. R. and Patel, N. R. (1986) Algorithm 643. FEXACT: A Fortran subroutine for Fisher's exact test on unordered $r * c$ contingency tables. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **12**, 154–161.

Clarkson, D. B., Fan, Y. and Joe, H. (1993) A Remark on Algorithm 643: FEXACT: An Algorithm for Performing Fisher's Exact Test in $r \times c$ Contingency Tables. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **19**, 484–488.

Patefield, W. M. (1981) Algorithm AS159. An efficient method of generating r x c tables with given row and column totals. *Applied Statistics* **30**, 91–97.

See Also

`chisq.test`

`fisher.exact` in package **exact2x2** for alternative interpretations of two-sided tests and confidence intervals for 2×2 tables.

Examples

```
## Agresti (1990, p. 61f; 2002, p. 91) Fishers Tea Drinker
## A British woman claimed to be able to distinguish whether milk or
##  tea was added to the cup first.  To test, she was given 8 cups of
##  tea, in four of which milk was added first.  The null hypothesis
##  is that there is no association between the true order of pouring
##  and the womans guess, the alternative that there is a positive
##  association (that the odds ratio is greater than 1).
TeaTasting <-
matrix(c(3, 1, 1, 3),
       nrow = 2,
       dimnames = list(Guess = c("Milk", "Tea"),
                       Truth = c("Milk", "Tea")))
fisher.test(TeaTasting, alternative = "greater")
## => p = 0.2429, association could not be established

## Fisher (1962, 1970), Criminal convictions of like-sex twins
Convictions <-
matrix(c(2, 10, 15, 3),
       nrow = 2,
       dimnames =
       list(c("Dizygotic", "Monozygotic"),
            c("Convicted", "Not convicted")))
Convictions
fisher.test(Convictions, alternative = "less")
fisher.test(Convictions, conf.int = FALSE)
fisher.test(Convictions, conf.level = 0.95)$conf.int
fisher.test(Convictions, conf.level = 0.99)$conf.int

## A r x c table  Agresti (2002, p. 57) Job Satisfaction
Job <- matrix(c(1,2,1,0, 3,3,6,1, 10,10,14,9, 6,7,12,11), 4, 4,
dimnames = list(income = c("< 15k", "15-25k", "25-40k", "> 40k"),
                satisfaction = c("VeryD", "LittleD", "ModerateS", "VeryS")))
fisher.test(Job)
fisher.test(Job, simulate.p.value = TRUE, B = 1e5)
```

`fitted` *Extract Model Fitted Values*

Description

`fitted` is a generic function which extracts fitted values from objects returned by modeling functions. `fitted.values` is an alias for it.

All object classes which are returned by model fitting functions should provide a `fitted` method. (Note that the generic is `fitted` and not `fitted.values`.)

Methods can make use of `napredict` methods to compensate for the omission of missing values. The default and `nls` methods do.

Usage

```
fitted(object, ...)
fitted.values(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object for which the extraction of model fitted values is meaningful.
`...`	other arguments.

Value

Fitted values extracted from the object `object`.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`coefficients`, `glm`, `lm`, `residuals`.

`fivenum` *Tukey Five-Number Summaries*

Description

Returns Tukey's five number summary (minimum, lower-hinge, median, upper-hinge, maximum) for the input data.

Usage

```
fivenum(x, na.rm = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric, maybe including `NA`s and $\pm$`Inf`s.
`na.rm`	logical; if `TRUE`, all `NA` and `NaN`s are dropped, before the statistics are computed.

Value

A numeric vector of length 5 containing the summary information. See `boxplot.stats` for more details.

See Also

IQR, boxplot.stats, median, quantile, range.

Examples

```
fivenum(c(rnorm(100), -1:1/0))
```

`fligner.test` *Fligner-Killeen Test of Homogeneity of Variances*

Description

Performs a Fligner-Killeen (median) test of the null that the variances in each of the groups (samples) are the same.

Usage

```
fligner.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
fligner.test(x, g, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
fligner.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric vector of data values, or a list of numeric data vectors.
`g`	a vector or factor object giving the group for the corresponding elements of `x`. Ignored if `x` is a list.
`formula`	a formula of the form `lhs ~ rhs` where `lhs` gives the data values and `rhs` the corresponding groups.
`data`	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see `model.frame`) containing the variables in the formula `formula`. By default the variables are taken from `environment(formula)`.
`subset`	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
`na.action`	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain `NA`s. Defaults to `getOption("na.action")`.
`...`	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

If `x` is a list, its elements are taken as the samples to be compared for homogeneity of variances, and hence have to be numeric data vectors. In this case, `g` is ignored, and one can simply use `fligner.test(x)` to perform the test. If the samples are not yet contained in a list, use `fligner.test(list(x, ...))`.

Otherwise, `x` must be a numeric data vector, and `g` must be a vector or factor object of the same length as `x` giving the group for the corresponding elements of `x`.

The Fligner-Killeen (median) test has been determined in a simulation study as one of the many tests for homogeneity of variances which is most robust against departures from normality, see Conover, Johnson & Johnson (1981). It is a k-sample simple linear rank which uses the ranks of the absolute values of the centered samples and weights $a(i) = \mathrm{qnorm}((1+i/(n+1))/2)$. The version implemented here uses median centering in each of the samples (F-K:med X^2 in the reference).

Value

A list of class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	the Fligner-Killeen:med X^2 test statistic.
`parameter`	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic.
`p.value`	the p-value of the test.
`method`	the character string `"Fligner-Killeen test of homogeneity of variances"`.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

William J. Conover, Mark E. Johnson and Myrle M. Johnson (1981). A comparative study of tests for homogeneity of variances, with applications to the outer continental shelf bidding data. *Technometrics* **23**, 351–361.

See Also

`ansari.test` and `mood.test` for rank-based two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters; `var.test` and `bartlett.test` for parametric tests for the homogeneity of variances.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays)
fligner.test(InsectSprays$count, InsectSprays$spray)
fligner.test(count ~ spray, data = InsectSprays)
## Compare this to bartlett.test()
```

`formula` *Model Formulae*

Description

The generic function `formula` and its specific methods provide a way of extracting formulae which have been included in other objects.

`as.formula` is almost identical, additionally preserving attributes when `object` already inherits from `"formula"`.

Usage

```
formula(x, ...)
as.formula(object, env = parent.frame())

## S3 method for class formula
print(x, showEnv = !identical(e, .GlobalEnv), ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	object.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
env	the environment to associate with the result, if not already a formula.
showEnv	logical indicating if the environment should be printed as well.

Details

The models fit by, e.g., the lm and glm functions are specified in a compact symbolic form. The ~ operator is basic in the formation of such models. An expression of the form y ~ model is interpreted as a specification that the response y is modelled by a linear predictor specified symbolically by model. Such a model consists of a series of terms separated by + operators. The terms themselves consist of variable and factor names separated by : operators. Such a term is interpreted as the interaction of all the variables and factors appearing in the term.

In addition to + and :, a number of other operators are useful in model formulae. The * operator denotes factor crossing: a*b interpreted as a+b+a:b. The ^ operator indicates crossing to the specified degree. For example (a+b+c)^2 is identical to (a+b+c)*(a+b+c) which in turn expands to a formula containing the main effects for a, b and c together with their second-order interactions. The %in% operator indicates that the terms on its left are nested within those on the right. For example a + b %in% a expands to the formula a + a:b. The - operator removes the specified terms, so that (a+b+c)^2 - a:b is identical to a + b + c + b:c + a:c. It can also used to remove the intercept term: when fitting a linear model y ~ x - 1 specifies a line through the origin. A model with no intercept can be also specified as y ~ x + 0 or y ~ 0 + x.

While formulae usually involve just variable and factor names, they can also involve arithmetic expressions. The formula log(y) ~ a + log(x) is quite legal. When such arithmetic expressions involve operators which are also used symbolically in model formulae, there can be confusion between arithmetic and symbolic operator use.

To avoid this confusion, the function I() can be used to bracket those portions of a model formula where the operators are used in their arithmetic sense. For example, in the formula y ~ a + I(b+c), the term b+c is to be interpreted as the sum of b and c.

Variable names can be quoted by backticks like this in formulae, although there is no guarantee that all code using formulae will accept such non-syntactic names.

Most model-fitting functions accept formulae with right-hand-side including the function offset to indicate terms with a fixed coefficient of one. Some functions accept other 'specials' such as strata or cluster (see the specials argument of terms.formula).

There are two special interpretations of . in a formula. The usual one is in the context of a data argument of model fitting functions and means 'all columns not otherwise in the formula': see terms.formula. In the context of update.formula, **only**, it means 'what was previously in this part of the formula'.

When formula is called on a fitted model object, either a specific method is used (such as that for class "nls") or the default method. The default first looks for a "formula" component of the object

(and evaluates it), then a "terms" component, then a formula parameter of the call (and evaluates its value) and finally a "formula" attribute.

There is a formula method for data frames. If there is only one column this forms the RHS with an empty LHS. For more columns, the first column is the LHS of the formula and the remaining columns separated by + form the RHS.

Value

All the functions above produce an object of class "formula" which contains a symbolic model formula.

Environments

A formula object has an associated environment, and this environment (rather than the parent environment) is used by model.frame to evaluate variables that are not found in the supplied data argument.

Formulas created with the ~ operator use the environment in which they were created. Formulas created with as.formula will use the env argument for their environment.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical models.* Chapter 2 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

I, offset.

For formula manipulation: terms, and all.vars; for typical use: lm, glm, and coplot.

Examples

```
class(fo <- y ~ x1*x2) # "formula"
fo
typeof(fo)  # R internal : "language"
terms(fo)

environment(fo)
environment(as.formula("y ~ x"))
environment(as.formula("y ~ x", env = new.env()))


## Create a formula for a model with a large number of variables:
xnam <- paste0("x", 1:25)
(fmla <- as.formula(paste("y ~ ", paste(xnam, collapse= "+"))))
```

formula.nls *Extract Model Formula from nls Object*

Description

Returns the model used to fit `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nls
formula(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"nls"`, representing a nonlinear least squares fit.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

a formula representing the model used to obtain `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`nls`, `formula`

Examples

```
fm1 <- nls(circumference ~ A/(1+exp((B-age)/C)), Orange,
           start = list(A = 160, B = 700, C = 350))
formula(fm1)
```

friedman.test *Friedman Rank Sum Test*

Description

Performs a Friedman rank sum test with unreplicated blocked data.

Usage

```
friedman.test(y, ...)

## Default S3 method:
friedman.test(y, groups, blocks, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
friedman.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

y	either a numeric vector of data values, or a data matrix.
groups	a vector giving the group for the corresponding elements of y if this is a vector; ignored if y is a matrix. If not a factor object, it is coerced to one.
blocks	a vector giving the block for the corresponding elements of y if this is a vector; ignored if y is a matrix. If not a factor object, it is coerced to one.
formula	a formula of the form a ~ b | c, where a, b and c give the data values and corresponding groups and blocks, respectively.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

friedman.test can be used for analyzing unreplicated complete block designs (i.e., there is exactly one observation in y for each combination of levels of groups and blocks) where the normality assumption may be violated.

The null hypothesis is that apart from an effect of blocks, the location parameter of y is the same in each of the groups.

If y is a matrix, groups and blocks are obtained from the column and row indices, respectively. NA's are not allowed in groups or blocks; if y contains NA's, corresponding blocks are removed.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of Friedman's chi-squared statistic.
parameter	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
method	the character string "Friedman rank sum test".
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

Myles Hollander and Douglas A. Wolfe (1973), *Nonparametric Statistical Methods.* New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 139–146.

See Also

quade.test.

Examples

```
## Hollander & Wolfe (1973), p. 140ff.
## Comparison of three methods ("round out", "narrow angle", and
##  "wide angle") for rounding first base.  For each of 18 players
##  and the three method, the average time of two runs from a point on
##  the first base line 35ft from home plate to a point 15ft short of
##  second base is recorded.
RoundingTimes <-
matrix(c(5.40, 5.50, 5.55,
         5.85, 5.70, 5.75,
         5.20, 5.60, 5.50,
         5.55, 5.50, 5.40,
         5.90, 5.85, 5.70,
         5.45, 5.55, 5.60,
         5.40, 5.40, 5.35,
         5.45, 5.50, 5.35,
         5.25, 5.15, 5.00,
         5.85, 5.80, 5.70,
         5.25, 5.20, 5.10,
         5.65, 5.55, 5.45,
         5.60, 5.35, 5.45,
         5.05, 5.00, 4.95,
         5.50, 5.50, 5.40,
         5.45, 5.55, 5.50,
         5.55, 5.55, 5.35,
         5.45, 5.50, 5.55,
         5.50, 5.45, 5.25,
         5.65, 5.60, 5.40,
         5.70, 5.65, 5.55,
         6.30, 6.30, 6.25),
       nrow = 22,
       byrow = TRUE,
       dimnames = list(1 : 22,
                       c("Round Out", "Narrow Angle", "Wide Angle")))
friedman.test(RoundingTimes)
## => strong evidence against the null that the methods are equivalent
##    with respect to speed

wb <- aggregate(warpbreaks$breaks,
                by = list(w = warpbreaks$wool,
                          t = warpbreaks$tension),
                FUN = mean)
wb
friedman.test(wb$x, wb$w, wb$t)
friedman.test(x ~ w | t, data = wb)
```

`ftable` *Flat Contingency Tables*

Description

Create 'flat' contingency tables.

Usage

```
ftable(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
ftable(..., exclude = c(NA, NaN), row.vars = NULL,
       col.vars = NULL)
```

Arguments

x, ...	objects which can be interpreted as factors (including character strings), or a list (or data frame) whose components can be so interpreted, or a contingency table object of class "table" or "ftable".
exclude	values to use in the exclude argument of factor when interpreting non-factor objects.
row.vars	a vector of integers giving the numbers of the variables, or a character vector giving the names of the variables to be used for the rows of the flat contingency table.
col.vars	a vector of integers giving the numbers of the variables, or a character vector giving the names of the variables to be used for the columns of the flat contingency table.

Details

ftable creates 'flat' contingency tables. Similar to the usual contingency tables, these contain the counts of each combination of the levels of the variables (factors) involved. This information is then re-arranged as a matrix whose rows and columns correspond to unique combinations of the levels of the row and column variables (as specified by row.vars and col.vars, respectively). The combinations are created by looping over the variables in reverse order (so that the levels of the left-most variable vary the slowest). Displaying a contingency table in this flat matrix form (via print.ftable, the print method for objects of class "ftable") is often preferable to showing it as a higher-dimensional array.

ftable is a generic function. Its default method, ftable.default, first creates a contingency table in array form from all arguments except row.vars and col.vars. If the first argument is of class "table", it represents a contingency table and is used as is; if it is a flat table of class "ftable", the information it contains is converted to the usual array representation using as.ftable. Otherwise, the arguments should be objects which can be interpreted as factors (including character strings), or a list (or data frame) whose components can be so interpreted, which are cross-tabulated using table. Then, the arguments row.vars and col.vars are used to collapse the contingency table into flat form. If neither of these two is given, the last variable is used for the columns. If both are given and their union is a proper subset of all variables involved, the other variables are summed out.

When the arguments are expressions interpreted as factors, additional arguments will be passed to table to control how the variable names are displayed; see the last example below.

Function ftable.formula provides a formula method for creating flat contingency tables.

There are methods for as.table, as.matrix and as.data.frame.

Value

ftable returns an object of class "ftable", which is a matrix with counts of each combination of the levels of variables with information on the names and levels of the (row and columns) variables stored as attributes "row.vars" and "col.vars".

See Also

ftable.formula for the formula interface (which allows a data = . argument); read.ftable for information on reading, writing and coercing flat contingency tables; table for ordinary cross-tabulation; xtabs for formula-based cross-tabulation.

Examples

```
## Start with a contingency table.
ftable(Titanic, row.vars = 1:3)
ftable(Titanic, row.vars = 1:2, col.vars = "Survived")
ftable(Titanic, row.vars = 2:1, col.vars = "Survived")

## Start with a data frame.
x <- ftable(mtcars[c("cyl", "vs", "am", "gear")])
x
ftable(x, row.vars = c(2, 4))

## Start with expressions, use table()s "dnn" to change labels
ftable(mtcars$cyl, mtcars$vs, mtcars$am, mtcars$gear, row.vars = c(2, 4),
       dnn = c("Cylinders", "V/S", "Transmission", "Gears"))
```

---

ftable.formula *Formula Notation for Flat Contingency Tables*

Description

Produce or manipulate a flat contingency table using formula notation.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class formula
ftable(formula, data = NULL, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula object with both left and right hand sides specifying the column and row variables of the flat table.
data	a data frame, list or environment (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables to be cross-tabulated, or a contingency table (see below).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used. Ignored if data is a contingency table.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Ignored if data is a contingency table.
...	further arguments to the default ftable method may also be passed as arguments, see ftable.default.

Details

This is a method of the generic function ftable.

The left and right hand side of formula specify the column and row variables, respectively, of the flat contingency table to be created. Only the + operator is allowed for combining the variables. A . may be used once in the formula to indicate inclusion of all the remaining variables.

If data is an object of class "table" or an array with more than 2 dimensions, it is taken as a contingency table, and hence all entries should be nonnegative. Otherwise, if it is not a flat contingency table (i.e., an object of class "ftable"), it should be a data frame or matrix, list or environment containing the variables to be cross-tabulated. In this case, na.action is applied to the data to handle missing values, and, after possibly selecting a subset of the data as specified by the subset argument, a contingency table is computed from the variables.

The contingency table is then collapsed to a flat table, according to the row and column variables specified by formula.

Value

A flat contingency table which contains the counts of each combination of the levels of the variables, collapsed into a matrix for suitably displaying the counts.

See Also

ftable, ftable.default; table.

Examples

```
Titanic
x <- ftable(Survived ~ ., data = Titanic)
x
ftable(Sex ~ Class + Age, data = x)
```

GammaDist *The Gamma Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the Gamma distribution with parameters shape and scale.

Usage

```
dgamma(x, shape, rate = 1, scale = 1/rate, log = FALSE)
pgamma(q, shape, rate = 1, scale = 1/rate, lower.tail = TRUE,
       log.p = FALSE)
qgamma(p, shape, rate = 1, scale = 1/rate, lower.tail = TRUE,
       log.p = FALSE)
rgamma(n, shape, rate = 1, scale = 1/rate)
```

Arguments

x, q	vector of quantiles.
p	vector of probabilities.
n	number of observations. If length(n) > 1, the length is taken to be the number required.
rate	an alternative way to specify the scale.
shape, scale	shape and scale parameters. Must be positive, scale strictly.
log, log.p	logical; if TRUE, probabilities/densities p are returned as $log(p)$.
lower.tail	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

If scale is omitted, it assumes the default value of 1.

The Gamma distribution with parameters shape $= \alpha$ and scale $= \sigma$ has density

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma^\alpha \Gamma(\alpha)} x^{\alpha-1} e^{-x/\sigma}$$

for $x \geq 0$, $\alpha > 0$ and $\sigma > 0$. (Here $\Gamma(\alpha)$ is the function implemented by 's gamma() and defined in its help. Note that $a = 0$ corresponds to the trivial distribution with all mass at point 0.)

The mean and variance are $E(X) = \alpha\sigma$ and $Var(X) = \alpha\sigma^2$.

The cumulative hazard $H(t) = -\log(1 - F(t))$ is

```
-pgamma(t, ..., lower = FALSE, log = TRUE)
```

Note that for smallish values of shape (and moderate scale) a large parts of the mass of the Gamma distribution is on values of x so near zero that they will be represented as zero in computer arithmetic. So rgamma may well return values which will be represented as zero. (This will also happen for very large values of scale since the actual generation is done for scale = 1.)

Value

dgamma gives the density, pgamma gives the distribution function, qgamma gives the quantile function, and rgamma generates random deviates.

Invalid arguments will result in return value NaN, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by n for rgamma, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than n are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

The S (Becker *et al* (1988) parametrization was via shape and rate: S had no scale parameter. In 2.x.y scale took precedence over rate, but now it is an error to supply both.

pgamma is closely related to the incomplete gamma function. As defined by Abramowitz and Stegun 6.5.1 (and by 'Numerical Recipes') this is

$$P(a, x) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(a)} \int_0^x t^{a-1} e^{-t} dt$$

$P(a, x)$ is `pgamma(x, a)`. Other authors (for example Karl Pearson in his 1922 tables) omit the normalizing factor, defining the incomplete gamma function $\gamma(a, x)$ as $\gamma(a, x) = \int_0^x t^{a-1} e^{-t} dt$, i.e., `pgamma(x, a) * gamma(a)`. Yet other use the 'upper' incomplete gamma function,

$$\Gamma(a, x) = \int_x^\infty t^{a-1} e^{-t} dt,$$

which can be computed by `pgamma(x, a, lower = FALSE) * gamma(a)`.

Note however that `pgamma(x, a, ..)` currently requires $a > 0$, whereas the incomplete gamma function is also defined for negative a. In that case, you can use `gamma_inc(a,x)` (for $\Gamma(a, x)$) from package **gsl**.

See also http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Incomplete_gamma_function, or http://dlmf.nist.gov/8.2#i.

Source

`dgamma` is computed via the Poisson density, using code contributed by Catherine Loader (see `dbinom`).

`pgamma` uses an unpublished (and not otherwise documented) algorithm 'mainly by Morten Welinder'.

`qgamma` is based on a C translation of

Best, D. J. and D. E. Roberts (1975). Algorithm AS91. Percentage points of the chi-squared distribution. *Applied Statistics*, **24**, 385–388.

plus a final Newton step to improve the approximation.

`rgamma` for `shape >= 1` uses

Ahrens, J. H. and Dieter, U. (1982). Generating gamma variates by a modified rejection technique. *Communications of the ACM*, **25**, 47–54,

and for `0 < shape < 1` uses

Ahrens, J. H. and Dieter, U. (1974). Computer methods for sampling from gamma, beta, Poisson and binomial distributions. *Computing*, **12**, 223–246.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Shea, B. L. (1988) Algorithm AS 239, Chi-squared and incomplete Gamma integral, *Applied Statistics (JRSS C)* **37**, 466–473.

Abramowitz, M. and Stegun, I. A. (1972) *Handbook of Mathematical Functions.* New York: Dover. Chapter 6: Gamma and Related Functions.

NIST Digital Library of Mathematical Functions. http://dlmf.nist.gov/, section 8.2.

See Also

`gamma` for the gamma function.

Distributions for other standard distributions, including `dbeta` for the Beta distribution and `dchisq` for the chi-squared distribution which is a special case of the Gamma distribution.

Examples

```
-log(dgamma(1:4, shape = 1))
p <- (1:9)/10
pgamma(qgamma(p, shape = 2), shape = 2)
1 - 1/exp(qgamma(p, shape = 1))

# even for shape = 0.001 about half the mass is on numbers
# that cannot be represented accurately (and most of those as zero)
pgamma(.Machine$double.xmin, 0.001)
pgamma(5e-324, 0.001)  # on most machines 5e-324 is the smallest
                       # representable non-zero number
table(rgamma(1e4, 0.001) == 0)/1e4
```

Geometric *The Geometric Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the geometric distribution with parameter prob.

Usage

```
dgeom(x, prob, log = FALSE)
pgeom(q, prob, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qgeom(p, prob, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rgeom(n, prob)
```

Arguments

x, q	vector of quantiles representing the number of failures in a sequence of Bernoulli trials before success occurs.
p	vector of probabilities.
n	number of observations. If length(n) > 1, the length is taken to be the number required.
prob	probability of success in each trial. 0 < prob <= 1.
log, log.p	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
lower.tail	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The geometric distribution with prob $= p$ has density

$$p(x) = p(1-p)^x$$

for $x = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, $0 < p \leq 1$.

If an element of x is not integer, the result of dgeom is zero, with a warning.

The quantile is defined as the smallest value x such that $F(x) \geq p$, where F is the distribution function.

Value

dgeom gives the density, pgeom gives the distribution function, qgeom gives the quantile function, and rgeom generates random deviates.

Invalid prob will result in return value NaN, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by n for rgeom, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than n are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Source

dgeom computes via dbinom, using code contributed by Catherine Loader (see dbinom).

pgeom and qgeom are based on the closed-form formulae.

rgeom uses the derivation as an exponential mixture of Poissons, see

Devroye, L. (1986) *Non-Uniform Random Variate Generation.* Springer-Verlag, New York. Page 480.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including dnbinom for the negative binomial which generalizes the geometric distribution.

Examples

```
qgeom((1:9)/10, prob = .2)
Ni <- rgeom(20, prob = 1/4); table(factor(Ni, 0:max(Ni)))
```

---

getInitial *Get Initial Parameter Estimates*

Description

This function evaluates initial parameter estimates for a nonlinear regression model. If data is a parameterized data frame or pframe object, its parameters attribute is returned. Otherwise the object is examined to see if it contains a call to a selfStart object whose initial attribute can be evaluated.

Usage

```
getInitial(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a formula or a selfStart model that defines a nonlinear regression model
data	a data frame in which the expressions in the formula or arguments to the selfStart model can be evaluated
...	optional additional arguments

Value

A named numeric vector or list of starting estimates for the parameters. The construction of many `selfStart` models is such that these "starting" estimates are, in fact, the converged parameter estimates.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`nls`, `selfStart`, `selfStart.default`, `selfStart.formula`

Examples

```
PurTrt <- Puromycin[ Puromycin$state == "treated", ]
print(getInitial( rate ~ SSmicmen( conc, Vm, K ), PurTrt ), digits = 3)
```

---

glm *Fitting Generalized Linear Models*

Description

`glm` is used to fit generalized linear models, specified by giving a symbolic description of the linear predictor and a description of the error distribution.

Usage

```
glm(formula, family = gaussian, data, weights, subset,
    na.action, start = NULL, etastart, mustart, offset,
    control = list(...), model = TRUE, method = "glm.fit",
    x = FALSE, y = TRUE, contrasts = NULL, ...)

glm.fit(x, y, weights = rep(1, nobs),
        start = NULL, etastart = NULL, mustart = NULL,
        offset = rep(0, nobs), family = gaussian(),
        control = list(), intercept = TRUE)

## S3 method for class glm
weights(object, type = c("prior", "working"), ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	an object of class "`formula`" (or one that can be coerced to that class): a symbolic description of the model to be fitted. The details of model specification are given under 'Details'.
`family`	a description of the error distribution and link function to be used in the model. For `glm` this can be a character string naming a family function, a family function or the result of a call to a family function. For `glm.fit` only the third option is supported. (See `family` for details of family functions.)

data	an optional data frame, list or environment (or object coercible by as.data.frame to a data frame) containing the variables in the model. If not found in data, the variables are taken from environment(formula), typically the environment from which glm is called.
weights	an optional vector of 'prior weights' to be used in the fitting process. Should be NULL or a numeric vector.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default is set by the na.action setting of options, and is na.fail if that is unset. The 'factory-fresh' default is na.omit. Another possible value is NULL, no action. Value na.exclude can be useful.
start	starting values for the parameters in the linear predictor.
etastart	starting values for the linear predictor.
mustart	starting values for the vector of means.
offset	this can be used to specify an *a priori* known component to be included in the linear predictor during fitting. This should be NULL or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of cases. One or more offset terms can be included in the formula instead or as well, and if more than one is specified their sum is used. See model.offset.
control	a list of parameters for controlling the fitting process. For glm.fit this is passed to glm.control.
model	a logical value indicating whether *model frame* should be included as a component of the returned value.
method	the method to be used in fitting the model. The default method "glm.fit" uses iteratively reweighted least squares (IWLS): the alternative "model.frame" returns the model frame and does no fitting. User-supplied fitting functions can be supplied either as a function or a character string naming a function, with a function which takes the same arguments as glm.fit. If specified as a character string it is looked up from within the **stats** namespace.
x, y	For glm: logical values indicating whether the response vector and model matrix used in the fitting process should be returned as components of the returned value. For glm.fit: x is a design matrix of dimension n * p, and y is a vector of observations of length n.
contrasts	an optional list. See the contrasts.arg of model.matrix.default.
intercept	logical. Should an intercept be included in the *null* model?
object	an object inheriting from class "glm".
type	character, partial matching allowed. Type of weights to extract from the fitted model object.
...	For glm: arguments to be used to form the default control argument if it is not supplied directly. For weights: further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

A typical predictor has the form `response ~ terms` where `response` is the (numeric) response vector and `terms` is a series of terms which specifies a linear predictor for `response`. For `binomial` and `quasibinomial` families the response can also be specified as a `factor` (when the first level denotes failure and all others success) or as a two-column matrix with the columns giving the numbers of successes and failures. A terms specification of the form `first + second` indicates all the terms in `first` together with all the terms in `second` with any duplicates removed.

A specification of the form `first:second` indicates the the set of terms obtained by taking the interactions of all terms in `first` with all terms in `second`. The specification `first*second` indicates the *cross* of `first` and `second`. This is the same as `first + second + first:second`.

The terms in the formula will be re-ordered so that main effects come first, followed by the interactions, all second-order, all third-order and so on: to avoid this pass a `terms` object as the formula.

Non-`NULL` `weights` can be used to indicate that different observations have different dispersions (with the values in `weights` being inversely proportional to the dispersions); or equivalently, when the elements of `weights` are positive integers w_i, that each response y_i is the mean of w_i unit-weight observations. For a binomial GLM prior weights are used to give the number of trials when the response is the proportion of successes: they would rarely be used for a Poisson GLM.

`glm.fit` is the workhorse function: it is not normally called directly but can be more efficient where the response vector, design matrix and family have already been calculated.

If more than one of `etastart`, `start` and `mustart` is specified, the first in the list will be used. It is often advisable to supply starting values for a `quasi` family, and also for families with unusual links such as `gaussian("log")`.

All of `weights`, `subset`, `offset`, `etastart` and `mustart` are evaluated in the same way as variables in `formula`, that is first in `data` and then in the environment of `formula`.

For the background to warning messages about 'fitted probabilities numerically 0 or 1 occurred' for binomial GLMs, see Venables & Ripley (2002, pp. 197–8).

Value

`glm` returns an object of class inheriting from `"glm"` which inherits from the class `"lm"`. See later in this section. If a non-standard `method` is used, the object will also inherit from the class (if any) returned by that function.

The function `summary` (i.e., `summary.glm`) can be used to obtain or print a summary of the results and the function `anova` (i.e., `anova.glm`) to produce an analysis of variance table.

The generic accessor functions `coefficients`, `effects`, `fitted.values` and `residuals` can be used to extract various useful features of the value returned by `glm`.

`weights` extracts a vector of weights, one for each case in the fit (after subsetting and `na.action`).

An object of class `"glm"` is a list containing at least the following components:

`coefficients`	a named vector of coefficients
`residuals`	the *working* residuals, that is the residuals in the final iteration of the IWLS fit. Since cases with zero weights are omitted, their working residuals are `NA`.
`fitted.values`	the fitted mean values, obtained by transforming the linear predictors by the inverse of the link function.
`rank`	the numeric rank of the fitted linear model.
`family`	the `family` object used.
`linear.predictors`	the linear fit on link scale.

`deviance`	up to a constant, minus twice the maximized log-likelihood. Where sensible, the constant is chosen so that a saturated model has deviance zero.
`aic`	A version of Akaike's *An Information Criterion*, minus twice the maximized log-likelihood plus twice the number of parameters, computed by the `aic` component of the family. For binomial and Poison families the dispersion is fixed at one and the number of parameters is the number of coefficients. For gaussian, Gamma and inverse gaussian families the dispersion is estimated from the residual deviance, and the number of parameters is the number of coefficients plus one. For a gaussian family the MLE of the dispersion is used so this is a valid value of AIC, but for Gamma and inverse gaussian families it is not. For families fitted by quasi-likelihood the value is `NA`.
`null.deviance`	The deviance for the null model, comparable with `deviance`. The null model will include the offset, and an intercept if there is one in the model. Note that this will be incorrect if the link function depends on the data other than through the fitted mean: specify a zero offset to force a correct calculation.
`iter`	the number of iterations of IWLS used.
`weights`	the *working* weights, that is the weights in the final iteration of the IWLS fit.
`prior.weights`	the weights initially supplied, a vector of `1`s if none were.
`df.residual`	the residual degrees of freedom.
`df.null`	the residual degrees of freedom for the null model.
`y`	if requested (the default) the `y` vector used. (It is a vector even for a binomial model.)
`x`	if requested, the model matrix.
`model`	if requested (the default), the model frame.
`converged`	logical. Was the IWLS algorithm judged to have converged?
`boundary`	logical. Is the fitted value on the boundary of the attainable values?
`call`	the matched call.
`formula`	the formula supplied.
`terms`	the `terms` object used.
`data`	the `data argument`.
`offset`	the offset vector used.
`control`	the value of the `control` argument used.
`method`	the name of the fitter function used, currently always `"glm.fit"`.
`contrasts`	(where relevant) the contrasts used.
`xlevels`	(where relevant) a record of the levels of the factors used in fitting.
`na.action`	(where relevant) information returned by `model.frame` on the special handling of `NA`s.

In addition, non-empty fits will have components `qr`, `R` and `effects` relating to the final weighted linear fit.

Objects of class `"glm"` are normally of class `c("glm", "lm")`, that is inherit from class `"lm"`, and well-designed methods for class `"lm"` will be applied to the weighted linear model at the final iteration of IWLS. However, care is needed, as extractor functions for class `"glm"` such as `residuals` and `weights` do **not** just pick out the component of the fit with the same name.

If a `binomial` `glm` model was specified by giving a two-column response, the weights returned by `prior.weights` are the total numbers of cases (factored by the supplied case weights) and the component `y` of the result is the proportion of successes.

Fitting functions

The argument `method` serves two purposes. One is to allow the model frame to be recreated with no fitting. The other is to allow the default fitting function `glm.fit` to be replaced by a function which takes the same arguments and uses a different fitting algorithm. If `glm.fit` is supplied as a character string it is used to search for a function of that name, starting in the **stats** namespace.

The class of the object return by the fitter (if any) will be prepended to the class returned by `glm`.

Author(s)

The original implementation of `glm` was written by Simon Davies working for Ross Ihaka at the University of Auckland, but has since been extensively re-written by members of the R Core team.

The design was inspired by the S function of the same name described in Hastie & Pregibon (1992).

References

Dobson, A. J. (1990) *An Introduction to Generalized Linear Models.* London: Chapman and Hall.

Hastie, T. J. and Pregibon, D. (1992) *Generalized linear models.* Chapter 6 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

McCullagh P. and Nelder, J. A. (1989) *Generalized Linear Models.* London: Chapman and Hall.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* New York: Springer.

See Also

`anova.glm`, `summary.glm`, etc. for `glm` methods, and the generic functions `anova`, `summary`, `effects`, `fitted.values`, and `residuals`.

`lm` for non-generalized *linear* models (which SAS calls GLMs, for 'general' linear models).

`loglin` and `loglm` (package **MASS**) for fitting log-linear models (which binomial and Poisson GLMs are) to contingency tables.

`bigglm` in package **biglm** for an alternative way to fit GLMs to large datasets (especially those with many cases).

`esoph`, `infert` and `predict.glm` have examples of fitting binomial glms.

Examples

```
## Dobson (1990) Page 93: Randomized Controlled Trial :
counts <- c(18,17,15,20,10,20,25,13,12)
outcome <- gl(3,1,9)
treatment <- gl(3,3)
print(d.AD <- data.frame(treatment, outcome, counts))
glm.D93 <- glm(counts ~ outcome + treatment, family = poisson())
anova(glm.D93)
summary(glm.D93)

if(length(find.package("MASS", quiet = TRUE))) {
## an example with offsets from Venables & Ripley (2002, p.189)
utils::data(anorexia, package = "MASS")

anorex.1 <- glm(Postwt ~ Prewt + Treat + offset(Prewt),
                family = gaussian, data = anorexia)
summary(anorex.1)
}
```

```
# A Gamma example, from McCullagh & Nelder (1989, pp. 300-2)
clotting <- data.frame(
    u = c(5,10,15,20,30,40,60,80,100),
    lot1 = c(118,58,42,35,27,25,21,19,18),
    lot2 = c(69,35,26,21,18,16,13,12,12))
summary(glm(lot1 ~ log(u), data = clotting, family = Gamma))
summary(glm(lot2 ~ log(u), data = clotting, family = Gamma))

## Not run:
## for an example of the use of a terms object as a formula
demo(glm.vr)

## End(Not run)
```

`glm.control` *Auxiliary for Controlling GLM Fitting*

Description

Auxiliary function for `glm` fitting. Typically only used internally by `glm.fit`, but may be used to construct a `control` argument to either function.

Usage

```
glm.control(epsilon = 1e-8, maxit = 25, trace = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`epsilon`	positive convergence tolerance ϵ; the iterations converge when $\|dev - dev_{old}\|/(\|dev\| + 0.1) < \epsilon$.
`maxit`	integer giving the maximal number of IWLS iterations.
`trace`	logical indicating if output should be produced for each iteration.

Details

The `control` argument of `glm` is by default passed to the `control` argument of `glm.fit`, which uses its elements as arguments to `glm.control`: the latter provides defaults and sanity checking.

If `epsilon` is small (less than 10^{-10}) it is also used as the tolerance for the detection of collinearity in the least squares solution.

When `trace` is true, calls to `cat` produce the output for each IWLS iteration. Hence, `options(digits = *)` can be used to increase the precision, see the example.

Value

A list with components named as the arguments.

References

Hastie, T. J. and Pregibon, D. (1992) *Generalized linear models.* Chapter 6 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

glm.fit, the fitting procedure used by glm.

Examples

```
### A variation on  example(glm) :

## Annette Dobsons example ...
counts <- c(18,17,15,20,10,20,25,13,12)
outcome <- gl(3,1,9)
treatment <- gl(3,3)
oo <- options(digits = 12) # to see more when tracing :
glm.D93X <- glm(counts ~ outcome + treatment, family = poisson(),
                trace = TRUE, epsilon = 1e-14)
options(oo)
coef(glm.D93X) # the last two are closer to 0 than in ?glms  glm.D93
```

---

glm.summaries *Accessing Generalized Linear Model Fits*

Description

These functions are all methods for class glm or summary.glm objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glm
family(object, ...)

## S3 method for class glm
residuals(object, type = c("deviance", "pearson", "working",
                           "response", "partial"), ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class glm, typically the result of a call to glm.
type	the type of residuals which should be returned. The alternatives are: "deviance" (default), "pearson", "working", "response", and "partial".
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The references define the types of residuals: Davison & Snell is a good reference for the usages of each.

The partial residuals are a matrix of working residuals, with each column formed by omitting a term from the model.

How residuals treats cases with missing values in the original fit is determined by the na.action argument of that fit. If na.action = na.omit omitted cases will not appear in the residuals, whereas if na.action = na.exclude they will appear, with residual value NA. See also naresid.

For fits done with y = FALSE the response values are computed from other components.

References

Davison, A. C. and Snell, E. J. (1991) *Residuals and diagnostics.* In: Statistical Theory and Modelling. In Honour of Sir David Cox, FRS, eds. Hinkley, D. V., Reid, N. and Snell, E. J., Chapman & Hall.

Hastie, T. J. and Pregibon, D. (1992) *Generalized linear models.* Chapter 6 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

McCullagh P. and Nelder, J. A. (1989) *Generalized Linear Models.* London: Chapman and Hall.

See Also

`glm` for computing `glm.obj`, `anova.glm`; the corresponding *generic* functions, `summary.glm`, `coef`, `deviance`, `df.residual`, `effects`, `fitted`, `residuals`.

influence.measures for deletion diagnostics, including standardized (`rstandard`) and studentized (`rstudent`) residuals.

---

hclust *Hierarchical Clustering*

Description

Hierarchical cluster analysis on a set of dissimilarities and methods for analyzing it.

Usage

```
hclust(d, method = "complete", members = NULL)

## S3 method for class hclust
plot(x, labels = NULL, hang = 0.1, check = TRUE,
     axes = TRUE, frame.plot = FALSE, ann = TRUE,
     main = "Cluster Dendrogram",
     sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = "Height", ...)
```

Arguments

`d`	a dissimilarity structure as produced by `dist`.
`method`	the agglomeration method to be used. This should be (an unambiguous abbreviation of) one of `"ward.D"`, `"ward.D2"`, `"single"`, `"complete"`, `"average"` (= UPGMA), `"mcquitty"` (= WPGMA), `"median"` (= WPGMC) or `"centroid"` (= UPGMC).
`members`	`NULL` or a vector with length size of `d`. See the 'Details' section.
`x`	an object of the type produced by `hclust`.
`hang`	The fraction of the plot height by which labels should hang below the rest of the plot. A negative value will cause the labels to hang down from 0.
`check`	logical indicating if the `x` object should be checked for validity. This check is not necessary when `x` is known to be valid such as when it is the direct result of `hclust()`. The default is `check=TRUE`, as invalid inputs may crash due to memory violation in the internal C plotting code.

`labels` A character vector of labels for the leaves of the tree. By default the row names or row numbers of the original data are used. If `labels = FALSE` no labels at all are plotted.

`axes, frame.plot, ann`
logical flags as in `plot.default`.

`main, sub, xlab, ylab`
character strings for `title`. `sub` and `xlab` have a non-NULL default when there's a `tree$call`.

`...` Further graphical arguments. E.g., `cex` controls the size of the labels (if plotted) in the same way as `text`.

Details

This function performs a hierarchical cluster analysis using a set of dissimilarities for the n objects being clustered. Initially, each object is assigned to its own cluster and then the algorithm proceeds iteratively, at each stage joining the two most similar clusters, continuing until there is just a single cluster. At each stage distances between clusters are recomputed by the Lance–Williams dissimilarity update formula according to the particular clustering method being used.

A number of different clustering methods are provided. *Ward's* minimum variance method aims at finding compact, spherical clusters. The *complete linkage* method finds similar clusters. The *single linkage* method (which is closely related to the minimal spanning tree) adopts a 'friends of friends' clustering strategy. The other methods can be regarded as aiming for clusters with characteristics somewhere between the single and complete link methods. Note however, that methods `"median"` and `"centroid"` are *not* leading to a *monotone distance* measure, or equivalently the resulting dendrograms can have so called *inversions* or *reversals* which are hard to interpret, but note the trichotomies in Legendre and Legendre (2012).

Two different algorithms are found in the literature for Ward clustering. The one used by option `"ward.D"` (equivalent to the only Ward option `"ward"` in versions $\leq$ 3.0.3) *does not* implement Ward's (1963) clustering criterion, whereas option `"ward.D2"` implements that criterion (Murtagh and Legendre 2014). With the latter, the dissimilarities are *squared* before cluster updating. Note that `agnes(*, method="ward")` corresponds to `hclust(*, "ward.D2")`.

If `members != NULL`, then `d` is taken to be a dissimilarity matrix between clusters instead of dissimilarities between singletons and `members` gives the number of observations per cluster. This way the hierarchical cluster algorithm can be 'started in the middle of the dendrogram', e.g., in order to reconstruct the part of the tree above a cut (see examples). Dissimilarities between clusters can be efficiently computed (i.e., without `hclust` itself) only for a limited number of distance/linkage combinations, the simplest one being *squared* Euclidean distance and centroid linkage. In this case the dissimilarities between the clusters are the squared Euclidean distances between cluster means.

In hierarchical cluster displays, a decision is needed at each merge to specify which subtree should go on the left and which on the right. Since, for n observations there are $n - 1$ merges, there are $2^{(n-1)}$ possible orderings for the leaves in a cluster tree, or dendrogram. The algorithm used in `hclust` is to order the subtree so that the tighter cluster is on the left (the last, i.e., most recent, merge of the left subtree is at a lower value than the last merge of the right subtree). Single observations are the tightest clusters possible, and merges involving two observations place them in order by their observation sequence number.

Value

An object of class **hclust** which describes the tree produced by the clustering process. The object is a list with components:

`merge`	an $n-1$ by 2 matrix. Row i of `merge` describes the merging of clusters at step i of the clustering. If an element j in the row is negative, then observation $-j$ was merged at this stage. If j is positive then the merge was with the cluster formed at the (earlier) stage j of the algorithm. Thus negative entries in `merge` indicate agglomerations of singletons, and positive entries indicate agglomerations of non-singletons.
`height`	a set of $n-1$ real values (non-decreasing for ultrametric trees). The clustering *height*: that is, the value of the criterion associated with the clustering `method` for the particular agglomeration.
`order`	a vector giving the permutation of the original observations suitable for plotting, in the sense that a cluster plot using this ordering and matrix `merge` will not have crossings of the branches.
`labels`	labels for each of the objects being clustered.
`call`	the call which produced the result.
`method`	the cluster method that has been used.
`dist.method`	the distance that has been used to create `d` (only returned if the distance object has a `"method"` attribute).

There are `print`, `plot` and `identify` (see `identify.hclust`) methods and the `rect.hclust()` function for `hclust` objects.

Note

Method `"centroid"` is typically meant to be used with *squared* Euclidean distances.

Author(s)

The `hclust` function is based on Fortran code contributed to STATLIB by F. Murtagh.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (S version.)

Everitt, B. (1974). *Cluster Analysis*. London: Heinemann Educ. Books.

Hartigan, J.A. (1975). *Clustering Algorithms*. New York: Wiley.

Sneath, P. H. A. and R. R. Sokal (1973). *Numerical Taxonomy*. San Francisco: Freeman.

Anderberg, M. R. (1973). *Cluster Analysis for Applications*. Academic Press: New York.

Gordon, A. D. (1999). *Classification*. Second Edition. London: Chapman and Hall / CRC

Murtagh, F. (1985). "Multidimensional Clustering Algorithms", in *COMPSTAT Lectures 4*. Wuerzburg: Physica-Verlag (for algorithmic details of algorithms used).

McQuitty, L.L. (1966). Similarity Analysis by Reciprocal Pairs for Discrete and Continuous Data. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, **26**, 825–831.

Legendre, P. and L. Legendre (2012). *Numerical Ecology*, 3rd English ed. Amsterdam: Elsevier Science BV.

Murtagh, Fionn and Legendre, Pierre (2014). Ward's hierarchical agglomerative clustering method: which algorithms implement Ward's criterion? *Journal of Classification* **31** (forthcoming).

See Also

identify.hclust, rect.hclust, cutree, dendrogram, kmeans.

For the Lance–Williams formula and methods that apply it generally, see agnes from package **cluster**.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

### Example 1: Violent crime rates by US state

hc <- hclust(dist(USArrests), "ave")
plot(hc)
plot(hc, hang = -1)

## Do the same with centroid clustering and *squared* Euclidean distance,
## cut the tree into ten clusters and reconstruct the upper part of the
## tree from the cluster centers.
hc <- hclust(dist(USArrests)^2, "cen")
memb <- cutree(hc, k = 10)
cent <- NULL
for(k in 1:10){
  cent <- rbind(cent, colMeans(USArrests[memb == k, , drop = FALSE]))
}
hc1 <- hclust(dist(cent)^2, method = "cen", members = table(memb))
opar <- par(mfrow = c(1, 2))
plot(hc,  labels = FALSE, hang = -1, main = "Original Tree")
plot(hc1, labels = FALSE, hang = -1, main = "Re-start from 10 clusters")
par(opar)
```

---

heatmap *Draw a Heat Map*

Description

A heat map is a false color image (basically image(t(x))) with a dendrogram added to the left side and to the top. Typically, reordering of the rows and columns according to some set of values (row or column means) within the restrictions imposed by the dendrogram is carried out.

Usage

```
heatmap(x, Rowv = NULL, Colv = if(symm)"Rowv" else NULL,
        distfun = dist, hclustfun = hclust,
        reorderfun = function(d, w) reorder(d, w),
        add.expr, symm = FALSE, revC = identical(Colv, "Rowv"),
        scale = c("row", "column", "none"), na.rm = TRUE,
        margins = c(5, 5), ColSideColors, RowSideColors,
        cexRow = 0.2 + 1/log10(nr), cexCol = 0.2 + 1/log10(nc),
        labRow = NULL, labCol = NULL, main = NULL,
        xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
        keep.dendro = FALSE, verbose = getOption("verbose"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric matrix of the values to be plotted.
Rowv	determines if and how the *row* dendrogram should be computed and reordered. Either a dendrogram or a vector of values used to reorder the row dendrogram or NA to suppress any row dendrogram (and reordering) or by default, NULL, see 'Details' below.
Colv	determines if and how the *column* dendrogram should be reordered. Has the same options as the Rowv argument above and *additionally* when x is a square matrix, Colv = "Rowv" means that columns should be treated identically to the rows (and so if there is to be no row dendrogram there will not be a column one either).
distfun	function used to compute the distance (dissimilarity) between both rows and columns. Defaults to dist.
hclustfun	function used to compute the hierarchical clustering when Rowv or Colv are not dendrograms. Defaults to hclust. Should take as argument a result of distfun and return an object to which as.dendrogram can be applied.
reorderfun	function(d, w) of dendrogram and weights for reordering the row and column dendrograms. The default uses reorder.dendrogram.
add.expr	expression that will be evaluated after the call to image. Can be used to add components to the plot.
symm	logical indicating if x should be treated **symm**etrically; can only be true when x is a square matrix.
revC	logical indicating if the column order should be reversed for plotting, such that e.g., for the symmetric case, the symmetry axis is as usual.
scale	character indicating if the values should be centered and scaled in either the row direction or the column direction, or none. The default is "row" if symm false, and "none" otherwise.
na.rm	logical indicating whether NA's should be removed.
margins	numeric vector of length 2 containing the margins (see par(mar = *)) for column and row names, respectively.
ColSideColors	(optional) character vector of length ncol(x) containing the color names for a horizontal side bar that may be used to annotate the columns of x.
RowSideColors	(optional) character vector of length nrow(x) containing the color names for a vertical side bar that may be used to annotate the rows of x.
cexRow, cexCol	positive numbers, used as cex.axis in for the row or column axis labeling. The defaults currently only use number of rows or columns, respectively.
labRow, labCol	character vectors with row and column labels to use; these default to rownames(x) or colnames(x), respectively.
main, xlab, ylab	main, x- and y-axis titles; defaults to none.
keep.dendro	logical indicating if the dendrogram(s) should be kept as part of the result (when Rowv and/or Colv are not NA).
verbose	logical indicating if information should be printed.
...	additional arguments passed on to image, e.g., col specifying the colors.

Details

If either Rowv or Colv are dendrograms they are honored (and not reordered). Otherwise, dendrograms are computed as dd <- as.dendrogram(hclustfun(distfun(X))) where X is either x or t(x).

If either is a vector (of 'weights') then the appropriate dendrogram is reordered according to the supplied values subject to the constraints imposed by the dendrogram, by reorder(dd, Rowv), in the row case. If either is missing, as by default, then the ordering of the corresponding dendrogram is by the mean value of the rows/columns, i.e., in the case of rows, Rowv <- rowMeans(x, na.rm = na.rm). If either is NA, *no reordering* will be done for the corresponding side.

By default (scale = "row") the rows are scaled to have mean zero and standard deviation one. There is some empirical evidence from genomic plotting that this is useful.

The default colors are not pretty. Consider using enhancements such as the **RColorBrewer** package.

Value

Invisibly, a list with components

rowInd	**r**ow index permutation vector as returned by order.dendrogram.
colInd	**c**olumn index permutation vector.
Rowv	the row dendrogram; only if input Rowv was not NA and keep.dendro is true.
Colv	the column dendrogram; only if input Colv was not NA and keep.dendro is true.

Note

Unless Rowv = NA (or Colw = NA), the original rows and columns are reordered *in any case* to match the dendrogram, e.g., the rows by order.dendrogram(Rowv) where Rowv is the (possibly reorder()ed) row dendrogram.

heatmap() uses layout and draws the image in the lower right corner of a 2x2 layout. Consequentially, it can **not** be used in a multi column/row layout, i.e., when par(mfrow = *) or (mfcol = *) has been called.

Author(s)

Andy Liaw, original; R. Gentleman, M. Maechler, W. Huber, revisions.

See Also

image, hclust

Examples

```
require(graphics); require(grDevices)
x  <- as.matrix(mtcars)
rc <- rainbow(nrow(x), start = 0, end = .3)
cc <- rainbow(ncol(x), start = 0, end = .3)
hv <- heatmap(x, col = cm.colors(256), scale = "column",
              RowSideColors = rc, ColSideColors = cc, margins = c(5,10),
              xlab = "specification variables", ylab =  "Car Models",
              main = "heatmap(<Mtcars data>, ..., scale = \"column\")")
```

```
utils::str(hv) # the two re-ordering index vectors

## no column dendrogram (nor reordering) at all:
heatmap(x, Colv = NA, col = cm.colors(256), scale = "column",
        RowSideColors = rc, margins = c(5,10),
        xlab = "specification variables", ylab =  "Car Models",
        main = "heatmap(<Mtcars data>, ..., scale = \"column\")")

## "no nothing"
heatmap(x, Rowv = NA, Colv = NA, scale = "column",
        main = "heatmap(*, NA, NA) ~= image(t(x))")


round(Ca <- cor(attitude), 2)
symnum(Ca) # simple graphic
heatmap(Ca,               symm = TRUE, margins = c(6,6)) # with reorder()
heatmap(Ca, Rowv = FALSE, symm = TRUE, margins = c(6,6)) # _NO_ reorder()
## slightly artificial with color bar, without and with ordering:
cc <- rainbow(nrow(Ca))
heatmap(Ca, Rowv = FALSE, symm = TRUE, RowSideColors = cc, ColSideColors = cc,
margins = c(6,6))
heatmap(Ca,symm = TRUE, RowSideColors = cc, ColSideColors = cc,
margins = c(6,6))

## For variable clustering, rather use distance based on cor():
symnum( cU <- cor(USJudgeRatings) )

hU <- heatmap(cU, Rowv = FALSE, symm = TRUE, col = topo.colors(16),
             distfun = function(c) as.dist(1 - c), keep.dendro = TRUE)
## The Correlation matrix with same reordering:
round(100 * cU[hU[[1]], hU[[2]]])
## The column dendrogram:
utils::str(hU$Colv)
```

`HoltWinters` *Holt-Winters Filtering*

Description

Computes Holt-Winters Filtering of a given time series. Unknown parameters are determined by minimizing the squared prediction error.

Usage

```
HoltWinters(x, alpha = NULL, beta = NULL, gamma = NULL,
            seasonal = c("additive", "multiplicative"),
            start.periods = 2, l.start = NULL, b.start = NULL,
            s.start = NULL,
            optim.start = c(alpha = 0.3, beta = 0.1, gamma = 0.1),
            optim.control = list())
```

Arguments

x	An object of class ts
alpha	$alpha$ parameter of Holt-Winters Filter.
beta	$beta$ parameter of Holt-Winters Filter. If set to FALSE, the function will do exponential smoothing.
gamma	$gamma$ parameter used for the seasonal component. If set to FALSE, an non-seasonal model is fitted.
seasonal	Character string to select an "additive" (the default) or "multiplicative" seasonal model. The first few characters are sufficient. (Only takes effect if gamma is non-zero).
start.periods	Start periods used in the autodetection of start values. Must be at least 2.
l.start	Start value for level (a[0]).
b.start	Start value for trend (b[0]).
s.start	Vector of start values for the seasonal component ($s_1[0] \ldots s_p[0]$)
optim.start	Vector with named components alpha, beta, and gamma containing the starting values for the optimizer. Only the values needed must be specified. Ignored in the one-parameter case.
optim.control	Optional list with additional control parameters passed to optim if this is used. Ignored in the one-parameter case.

Details

The additive Holt-Winters prediction function (for time series with period length p) is

$$\hat{Y}[t+h] = a[t] + hb[t] + s[t-p+1+(h-1) \bmod p],$$

where $a[t]$, $b[t]$ and $s[t]$ are given by

$$a[t] = \alpha(Y[t] - s[t-p]) + (1-\alpha)(a[t-1] + b[t-1])$$
$$b[t] = \beta(a[t] - a[t-1]) + (1-\beta)b[t-1]$$
$$s[t] = \gamma(Y[t] - a[t]) + (1-\gamma)s[t-p]$$

The multiplicative Holt-Winters prediction function (for time series with period length p) is

$$\hat{Y}[t+h] = (a[t] + hb[t]) \times s[t-p+1+(h-1) \bmod p].$$

where $a[t]$, $b[t]$ and $s[t]$ are given by

$$a[t] = \alpha(Y[t]/s[t-p]) + (1-\alpha)(a[t-1] + b[t-1])$$
$$b[t] = \beta(a[t] - a[t-1]) + (1-\beta)b[t-1]$$
$$s[t] = \gamma(Y[t]/a[t]) + (1-\gamma)s[t-p]$$

The data in x are required to be non-zero for a multiplicative model, but it makes most sense if they are all positive.

The function tries to find the optimal values of α and/or β and/or γ by minimizing the squared one-step prediction error if they are NULL (the default). optimize will be used for the single-parameter case, and optim otherwise.

For seasonal models, start values for a, b and s are inferred by performing a simple decomposition in trend and seasonal component using moving averages (see function decompose) on the start.periods first periods (a simple linear regression on the trend component is used for starting level and trend). For level/trend-models (no seasonal component), start values for a and b are x[2] and x[2] - x[1], respectively. For level-only models (ordinary exponential smoothing), the start value for a is x[1].

Value

An object of class "HoltWinters", a list with components:

fitted	A multiple time series with one column for the filtered series as well as for the level, trend and seasonal components, estimated contemporaneously (that is at time t and not at the end of the series).
x	The original series
alpha	alpha used for filtering
beta	beta used for filtering
gamma	gamma used for filtering
coefficients	A vector with named components a, b, s1, ..., sp containing the estimated values for the level, trend and seasonal components
seasonal	The specified seasonal parameter
SSE	The final sum of squared errors achieved in optimizing
call	The call used

Author(s)

David Meyer <David.Meyer@wu.ac.at>

References

C. C. Holt (1957) Forecasting trends and seasonals by exponentially weighted moving averages, *ONR Research Memorandum, Carnegie Institute of Technology* **52**.

P. R. Winters (1960) Forecasting sales by exponentially weighted moving averages, *Management Science* **6**, 324–342.

See Also

predict.HoltWinters, optim.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Seasonal Holt-Winters
(m <- HoltWinters(co2))
plot(m)
plot(fitted(m))

(m <- HoltWinters(AirPassengers, seasonal = "mult"))
plot(m)

## Non-Seasonal Holt-Winters
x <- uspop + rnorm(uspop, sd = 5)
m <- HoltWinters(x, gamma = FALSE)
plot(m)

## Exponential Smoothing
m2 <- HoltWinters(x, gamma = FALSE, beta = FALSE)
lines(fitted(m2)[,1], col = 3)
```

`Hypergeometric` *The Hypergeometric Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the hypergeometric distribution.

Usage

```
dhyper(x, m, n, k, log = FALSE)
phyper(q, m, n, k, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qhyper(p, m, n, k, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rhyper(nn, m, n, k)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles representing the number of white balls drawn without replacement from an urn which contains both black and white balls.
`m`	the number of white balls in the urn.
`n`	the number of black balls in the urn.
`k`	the number of balls drawn from the urn.
`p`	probability, it must be between 0 and 1.
`nn`	number of observations. If `length(nn) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The hypergeometric distribution is used for sampling *without* replacement. The density of this distribution with parameters `m`, `n` and `k` (named Np, $N - Np$, and n, respectively in the reference below) is given by

$$p(x) = \binom{m}{x}\binom{n}{k-x} \Big/ \binom{m+n}{k}$$

for $x = 0, \ldots, k$.

The quantile is defined as the smallest value x such that $F(x) \geq p$, where F is the distribution function.

Value

`dhyper` gives the density, `phyper` gives the distribution function, `qhyper` gives the quantile function, and `rhyper` generates random deviates.

Invalid arguments will result in return value `NaN`, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rhyper`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Source

dhyper computes via binomial probabilities, using code contributed by Catherine Loader (see dbinom).

phyper is based on calculating dhyper and phyper(...)/dhyper(...) (as a summation), based on ideas of Ian Smith and Morten Welinder.

qhyper is based on inversion.

rhyper is based on a corrected version of

Kachitvichyanukul, V. and Schmeiser, B. (1985). Computer generation of hypergeometric random variates. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, **22**, 127–145.

References

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S., and Kemp, A. W. (1992) *Univariate Discrete Distributions*, Second Edition. New York: Wiley.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions.

Examples

```
m <- 10; n <- 7; k <- 8
x <- 0:(k+1)
rbind(phyper(x, m, n, k), dhyper(x, m, n, k))
all(phyper(x, m, n, k) == cumsum(dhyper(x, m, n, k)))  # FALSE
## but error is very small:
signif(phyper(x, m, n, k) - cumsum(dhyper(x, m, n, k)), digits = 3)
```

---

identify.hclust *Identify Clusters in a Dendrogram*

Description

identify.hclust reads the position of the graphics pointer when the (first) mouse button is pressed. It then cuts the tree at the vertical position of the pointer and highlights the cluster containing the horizontal position of the pointer. Optionally a function is applied to the index of data points contained in the cluster.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class hclust
identify(x, FUN = NULL, N = 20, MAXCLUSTER = 20, DEV.FUN = NULL,
         ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of the type produced by hclust.
FUN	(optional) function to be applied to the index numbers of the data points in a cluster (see 'Details' below).
N	the maximum number of clusters to be identified.
MAXCLUSTER	the maximum number of clusters that can be produced by a cut (limits the effective vertical range of the pointer).
DEV.FUN	(optional) integer scalar. If specified, the corresponding graphics device is made active before FUN is applied.
...	further arguments to FUN.

Details

By default clusters can be identified using the mouse and an invisible list of indices of the respective data points is returned.

If FUN is not NULL, then the index vector of data points is passed to this function as first argument, see the examples below. The active graphics device for FUN can be specified using DEV.FUN.

The identification process is terminated by pressing any mouse button other than the first, see also identify.

Value

Either a list of data point index vectors or a list of return values of FUN.

See Also

hclust, rect.hclust

Examples

```
## Not run:
require(graphics)

hca <- hclust(dist(USArrests))
plot(hca)
(x <- identify(hca)) ##  Terminate with 2nd mouse button !!

hci <- hclust(dist(iris[,1:4]))
plot(hci)
identify(hci, function(k) print(table(iris[k,5])))

# open a new device (one for dendrogram, one for bars):
dev.new() # << make that narrow (& small)
          # and *beside* 1st one
nD <- dev.cur()            # to be for the barplot
dev.set(dev.prev())  # old one for dendrogram
plot(hci)
## select subtrees in dendrogram and "see" the species distribution:
identify(hci, function(k) barplot(table(iris[k,5]), col = 2:4), DEV.FUN = nD)

## End(Not run)
```

`influence.measures` *Regression Deletion Diagnostics*

Description

This suite of functions can be used to compute some of the regression (leave-one-out deletion) diagnostics for linear and generalized linear models discussed in Belsley, Kuh and Welsch (1980), Cook and Weisberg (1982), etc.

Usage

```
influence.measures(model)

rstandard(model, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
rstandard(model, infl = lm.influence(model, do.coef = FALSE),
          sd = sqrt(deviance(model)/df.residual(model)), ...)
## S3 method for class glm
rstandard(model, infl = influence(model, do.coef = FALSE),
          type = c("deviance", "pearson"), ...)

rstudent(model, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
rstudent(model, infl = lm.influence(model, do.coef = FALSE),
         res = infl$wt.res, ...)
## S3 method for class glm
rstudent(model, infl = influence(model, do.coef = FALSE), ...)

dffits(model, infl = , res = )

dfbeta(model, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
dfbeta(model, infl = lm.influence(model, do.coef = TRUE), ...)

dfbetas(model, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
dfbetas(model, infl = lm.influence(model, do.coef = TRUE), ...)

covratio(model, infl = lm.influence(model, do.coef = FALSE),
         res = weighted.residuals(model))

cooks.distance(model, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
cooks.distance(model, infl = lm.influence(model, do.coef = FALSE),
               res = weighted.residuals(model),
               sd = sqrt(deviance(model)/df.residual(model)),
               hat = infl$hat, ...)
## S3 method for class glm
cooks.distance(model, infl = influence(model, do.coef = FALSE),
               res = infl$pear.res,
               dispersion = summary(model)$dispersion,
```

```
                hat = infl$hat, ...)

hatvalues(model, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
hatvalues(model, infl = lm.influence(model, do.coef = FALSE), ...)

hat(x, intercept = TRUE)
```

Arguments

model	an object, typically returned by lm or glm.
infl	influence structure as returned by lm.influence or influence (the latter only for the glm method of rstudent and cooks.distance).
res	(possibly weighted) residuals, with proper default.
sd	standard deviation to use, see default.
dispersion	dispersion (for glm objects) to use, see default.
hat	hat values H_{ii}, see default.
type	type of residuals for glm method for rstandard.
x	the X or design matrix.
intercept	should an intercept column be prepended to x?
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The primary high-level function is influence.measures which produces a class "infl" object tabular display showing the DFBETAS for each model variable, DFFITS, covariance ratios, Cook's distances and the diagonal elements of the hat matrix. Cases which are influential with respect to any of these measures are marked with an asterisk.

The functions dfbetas, dffits, covratio and cooks.distance provide direct access to the corresponding diagnostic quantities. Functions rstandard and rstudent give the standardized and Studentized residuals respectively. (These re-normalize the residuals to have unit variance, using an overall and leave-one-out measure of the error variance respectively.)

Values for generalized linear models are approximations, as described in Williams (1987) (except that Cook's distances are scaled as F rather than as chi-square values). The approximations can be poor when some cases have large influence.

The optional infl, res and sd arguments are there to encourage the use of these direct access functions, in situations where, e.g., the underlying basic influence measures (from lm.influence or the generic influence) are already available.

Note that cases with weights == 0 are *dropped* from all these functions, but that if a linear model has been fitted with na.action = na.exclude, suitable values are filled in for the cases excluded during fitting.

The function hat() exists mainly for S (version 2) compatibility; we recommend using hatvalues() instead.

Note

For hatvalues, dfbeta, and dfbetas, the method for linear models also works for generalized linear models.

Author(s)

Several R core team members and John Fox, originally in his 'car' package.

References

Belsley, D. A., Kuh, E. and Welsch, R. E. (1980) *Regression Diagnostics*. New York: Wiley.

Cook, R. D. and Weisberg, S. (1982) *Residuals and Influence in Regression*. London: Chapman and Hall.

Williams, D. A. (1987) Generalized linear model diagnostics using the deviance and single case deletions. *Applied Statistics* **36**, 181–191.

Fox, J. (1997) *Applied Regression, Linear Models, and Related Methods*. Sage.

Fox, J. (2002) *An R and S-Plus Companion to Applied Regression*. Sage Publ.

Fox, J. and Weisberg, S. (2011) *An R Companion to Applied Regression*, second edition. Sage Publ; http://socserv.mcmaster.ca/jfox/Books/Companion/index.html.

See Also

`influence` (containing `lm.influence`).

'plotmath' for the use of `hat` in plot annotation.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Analysis of the life-cycle savings data
## given in Belsley, Kuh and Welsch.
lm.SR <- lm(sr ~ pop15 + pop75 + dpi + ddpi, data = LifeCycleSavings)

inflm.SR <- influence.measures(lm.SR)
which(apply(inflm.SR$is.inf, 1, any))
# which observations are influential
summary(inflm.SR) # only these
inflm.SR          # all
plot(rstudent(lm.SR) ~ hatvalues(lm.SR)) # recommended by some

## The infl argument is not needed, but avoids recomputation:
rs <- rstandard(lm.SR)
iflSR <- influence(lm.SR)
identical(rs, rstandard(lm.SR, infl = iflSR))
## to "see" the larger values:
1000 * round(dfbetas(lm.SR, infl = iflSR), 3)

## Hubers data [Atkinson 1985]
xh <- c(-4:0, 10)
yh <- c(2.48, .73, -.04, -1.44, -1.32, 0)
summary(lmH <- lm(yh ~ xh))
(im <- influence.measures(lmH))
plot(xh,yh, main = "Hubers data: L.S. line and influential obs.")
abline(lmH); points(xh[im$is.inf], yh[im$is.inf], pch = 20, col = 2)

## Irwins data [Williams 1987]
xi <- 1:5
yi <- c(0,2,14,19,30)    # number of mice responding to dose xi
```

```
mi <- rep(40, 5)         # number of mice exposed
summary(lmI <- glm(cbind(yi, mi -yi) ~ xi, family = binomial))
signif(cooks.distance(lmI), 3)   # ~= Ci in Table 3, p.184
(imI <- influence.measures(lmI))
stopifnot(all.equal(imI$infmat[,"cook.d"],
          cooks.distance(lmI)))
```

`integrate` *Integration of One-Dimensional Functions*

Description

Adaptive quadrature of functions of one variable over a finite or infinite interval.

Usage

```
integrate(f, lower, upper, ..., subdivisions = 100L,
          rel.tol = .Machine$double.eps^0.25, abs.tol = rel.tol,
          stop.on.error = TRUE, keep.xy = FALSE, aux = NULL)
```

Arguments

`f`	an function taking a numeric first argument and returning a numeric vector of the same length. Returning a non-finite element will generate an error.
`lower, upper`	the limits of integration. Can be infinite.
`...`	additional arguments to be passed to `f`.
`subdivisions`	the maximum number of subintervals.
`rel.tol`	relative accuracy requested.
`abs.tol`	absolute accuracy requested.
`stop.on.error`	logical. If true (the default) an error stops the function. If false some errors will give a result with a warning in the `message` component.
`keep.xy`	unused. For compatibility with S.
`aux`	unused. For compatibility with S.

Details

Note that arguments after `...` must be matched exactly.

If one or both limits are infinite, the infinite range is mapped onto a finite interval.

For a finite interval, globally adaptive interval subdivision is used in connection with extrapolation by Wynn's Epsilon algorithm, with the basic step being Gauss–Kronrod quadrature.

`rel.tol` cannot be less than `max(50*.Machine$double.eps, 0.5e-28)` if `abs.tol <= 0`.

Value

A list of class `"integrate"` with components

`value`	the final estimate of the integral.
`abs.error`	estimate of the modulus of the absolute error.
`subdivisions`	the number of subintervals produced in the subdivision process.
`message`	`"OK"` or a character string giving the error message.
`call`	the matched call.

Note

Like all numerical integration routines, these evaluate the function on a finite set of points. If the function is approximately constant (in particular, zero) over nearly all its range it is possible that the result and error estimate may be seriously wrong.

When integrating over infinite intervals do so explicitly, rather than just using a large number as the endpoint. This increases the chance of a correct answer – any function whose integral over an infinite interval is finite must be near zero for most of that interval.

For values at a finite set of points to be a fair reflection of the behaviour of the function elsewhere, the function needs to be well-behaved, for example differentiable except perhaps for a small number of jumps or integrable singularities.

`f` must accept a vector of inputs and produce a vector of function evaluations at those points. The `Vectorize` function may be helpful to convert `f` to this form.

Source

Based on QUADPACK routines `dqags` and `dqagi` by R. Piessens and E. deDoncker–Kapenga, available from Netlib.

References

R. Piessens, E. deDoncker–Kapenga, C. Uberhuber, D. Kahaner (1983) *Quadpack: a Subroutine Package for Automatic Integration*; Springer Verlag.

Examples

```
integrate(dnorm, -1.96, 1.96)
integrate(dnorm, -Inf, Inf)

## a slowly-convergent integral
integrand <- function(x) {1/((x+1)*sqrt(x))}
integrate(integrand, lower = 0, upper = Inf)

## dont do this if you really want the integral from 0 to Inf
integrate(integrand, lower = 0, upper = 10)
integrate(integrand, lower = 0, upper = 100000)
integrate(integrand, lower = 0, upper = 1000000, stop.on.error = FALSE)

## some functions do not handle vector input properly
f <- function(x) 2.0
try(integrate(f, 0, 1))
integrate(Vectorize(f), 0, 1)  ## correct
integrate(function(x) rep(2.0, length(x)), 0, 1)  ## correct

## integrate can fail if misused
integrate(dnorm, 0, 2)
integrate(dnorm, 0, 20)
integrate(dnorm, 0, 200)
integrate(dnorm, 0, 2000)
integrate(dnorm, 0, 20000) ## fails on many systems
integrate(dnorm, 0, Inf)   ## works
```

`interaction.plot` *Two-way Interaction Plot*

Description

Plots the mean (or other summary) of the response for two-way combinations of factors, thereby illustrating possible interactions.

Usage

```
interaction.plot(x.factor, trace.factor, response, fun = mean,
                 type = c("l", "p", "b", "o", "c"), legend = TRUE,
                 trace.label = deparse(substitute(trace.factor)),
                 fixed = FALSE,
                 xlab = deparse(substitute(x.factor)),
                 ylab = ylabel,
                 ylim = range(cells, na.rm = TRUE),
                 lty = nc:1, col = 1, pch = c(1:9, 0, letters),
                 xpd = NULL, leg.bg = par("bg"), leg.bty = "n",
                 xtick = FALSE, xaxt = par("xaxt"), axes = TRUE,
                 ...)
```

Arguments

`x.factor`	a factor whose levels will form the x axis.
`trace.factor`	another factor whose levels will form the traces.
`response`	a numeric variable giving the response
`fun`	the function to compute the summary. Should return a single real value.
`type`	the type of plot (see `plot.default`): lines or points or both.
`legend`	logical. Should a legend be included?
`trace.label`	overall label for the legend.
`fixed`	logical. Should the legend be in the order of the levels of `trace.factor` or in the order of the traces at their right-hand ends?
`xlab,ylab`	the x and y label of the plot each with a sensible default.
`ylim`	numeric of length 2 giving the y limits for the plot.
`lty`	line type for the lines drawn, with sensible default.
`col`	the color to be used for plotting.
`pch`	a vector of plotting symbols or characters, with sensible default.
`xpd`	determines clipping behaviour for the `legend` used, see `par(xpd)`. Per default, the legend is *not* clipped at the figure border.
`leg.bg, leg.bty`	arguments passed to `legend()`.
`xtick`	logical. Should tick marks be used on the x axis?
`xaxt, axes, ...`	graphics parameters to be passed to the plotting routines.

Details

By default the levels of `x.factor` are plotted on the x axis in their given order, with extra space left at the right for the legend (if specified). If `x.factor` is an ordered factor and the levels are numeric, these numeric values are used for the x axis.

The response and hence its summary can contain missing values. If so, the missing values and the line segments joining them are omitted from the plot (and this can be somewhat disconcerting).

The graphics parameters `xlab`, `ylab`, `ylim`, `lty`, `col` and `pch` are given suitable defaults (and `xlim` and `xaxs` are set and cannot be overridden). The defaults are to cycle through the line types, use the foreground colour, and to use the symbols 1:9, 0, and the capital letters to plot the traces.

Note

Some of the argument names and the precise behaviour are chosen for S-compatibility.

References

Chambers, J. M., Freeny, A and Heiberger, R. M. (1992) *Analysis of variance; designed experiments.* Chapter 5 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

with(ToothGrowth, {
interaction.plot(dose, supp, len, fixed = TRUE)
dose <- ordered(dose)
interaction.plot(dose, supp, len, fixed = TRUE, col = 2:3, leg.bty = "o")
interaction.plot(dose, supp, len, fixed = TRUE, col = 2:3, type = "p")
})

with(OrchardSprays, {
  interaction.plot(treatment, rowpos, decrease)
  interaction.plot(rowpos, treatment, decrease, cex.axis = 0.8)
  ## order the rows by their mean effect
  rowpos <- factor(rowpos,
                   levels = sort.list(tapply(decrease, rowpos, mean)))
  interaction.plot(rowpos, treatment, decrease, col = 2:9, lty = 1)
})

with(esoph, {
  interaction.plot(agegp, alcgp, ncases/ncontrols, main = "esoph Data")
  interaction.plot(agegp, tobgp, ncases/ncontrols, trace.label = "tobacco",
                   fixed = TRUE, xaxt = "n")
})
## deal with NAs:
esoph[66,] # second to last age group: 65-74
esophNA <- esoph; esophNA$ncases[66] <- NA
with(esophNA, {
  interaction.plot(agegp, alcgp, ncases/ncontrols, col = 2:5)
                                # doesnt show *last* group either
  interaction.plot(agegp, alcgp, ncases/ncontrols, col = 2:5, type = "b")
  ## alternative take non-NAs  {"cheating"}
  interaction.plot(agegp, alcgp, ncases/ncontrols, col = 2:5,
                   fun = function(x) mean(x, na.rm = TRUE),
```

```
                    sub = "function(x) mean(x, na.rm=TRUE)")
})
rm(esophNA) # to clear up
```

IQR *The Interquartile Range*

Description

computes interquartile range of the x values.

Usage

```
IQR(x, na.rm = FALSE, type = 7)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector.
na.rm	logical. Should missing values be removed?
type	an integer selecting one of the many quantile algorithms, see quantile.

Details

Note that this function computes the quartiles using the quantile function rather than following Tukey's recommendations, i.e., IQR(x) = quantile(x, 3/4) - quantile(x, 1/4).

For normally $N(m, 1)$ distributed X, the expected value of IQR(X) is 2*qnorm(3/4) = 1.3490, i.e., for a normal-consistent estimate of the standard deviation, use IQR(x) / 1.349.

References

Tukey, J. W. (1977). *Exploratory Data Analysis.* Reading: Addison-Wesley.

See Also

fivenum, mad which is more robust, range, quantile.

Examples

```
IQR(rivers)
```

is.empty.model *Test if a Model's Formula is Empty*

Description

's formula notation allows models with no intercept and no predictors. These require special handling internally. `is.empty.model()` checks whether an object describes an empty model.

Usage

```
is.empty.model(x)
```

Arguments

x	A `terms` object or an object with a `terms` method.

Value

`TRUE` if the model is empty

See Also

`lm`, `glm`

Examples

```
y <- rnorm(20)
is.empty.model(y ~ 0)
is.empty.model(y ~ -1)
is.empty.model(lm(y ~ 0))
```

isoreg *Isotonic / Monotone Regression*

Description

Compute the isotonic (monotonely increasing nonparametric) least squares regression which is piecewise constant.

Usage

```
isoreg(x, y = NULL)
```

Arguments

x, y	coordinate vectors of the regression points. Alternatively a single plotting structure can be specified: see `xy.coords`.

Details

The algorithm determines the convex minorant $m(x)$ of the *cumulative* data (i.e., `cumsum(y)`) which is piecewise linear and the result is $m'(x)$, a step function with level changes at locations where the convex $m(x)$ touches the cumulative data polygon and changes slope.
`as.stepfun()` returns a `stepfun` object which can be more parsimonious.

Value

`isoreg()` returns an object of class `isoreg` which is basically a list with components

`x`	original (constructed) abscissa values `x`.
`y`	corresponding y values.
`yf`	fitted values corresponding to *ordered* x values.
`yc`	cumulative y values corresponding to *ordered* x values.
`iKnots`	integer vector giving indices where the fitted curve jumps, i.e., where the convex minorant has kinks.
`isOrd`	logical indicating if original x values were ordered increasingly already.
`ord`	`if(!isOrd)`: integer permutation `order(x)` of *original* `x`.
`call`	the `call` to `isoreg()` used.

Note

The code should be improved to accept *weights* additionally and solve the corresponding weighted least squares problem.
'Patches are welcome!'

References

Barlow, R. E., Bartholomew, D. J., Bremner, J. M., and Brunk, H. D. (1972) *Statistical inference under order restrictions*; Wiley, London.

Robertson, T., Wright, F. T. and Dykstra, R. L. (1988) *Order Restricted Statistical Inference*; Wiley, New York.

See Also

the plotting method `plot.isoreg` with more examples; `isoMDS()` from the **MASS** package internally uses isotonic regression.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

(ir <- isoreg(c(1,0,4,3,3,5,4,2,0)))
plot(ir, plot.type = "row")

(ir3 <- isoreg(y3 <- c(1,0,4,3,3,5,4,2, 3))) # last "3", not "0"
(fi3 <- as.stepfun(ir3))
(ir4 <- isoreg(1:10, y4 <- c(5, 9, 1:2, 5:8, 3, 8)))
cat(sprintf("R^2 = %.2f\n",
            1 - sum(residuals(ir4)^2) / ((10-1)*var(y4))))

## If you are interested in the knots alone :
```

```
with(ir4, cbind(iKnots, yf[iKnots]))

## Example of unordered x[] with ties:
x <- sample((0:30)/8)
y <- exp(x)
x. <- round(x) # ties!
plot(m <- isoreg(x., y))
stopifnot(all.equal(with(m, yf[iKnots]),
                    as.vector(tapply(y, x., mean))))
```

KalmanLike *Kalman Filtering*

Description

Use Kalman Filtering to find the (Gaussian) log-likelihood, or for forecasting or smoothing.

Usage

```
KalmanLike(y, mod, nit = 0L, update = FALSE)
KalmanRun(y, mod, nit = 0L, update = FALSE)
KalmanSmooth(y, mod, nit = 0L)
KalmanForecast(n.ahead = 10L, mod, update = FALSE)

makeARIMA(phi, theta, Delta, kappa = 1e6,
          SSinit = c("Gardner1980", "Rossignol2011"),
          tol = .Machine$double.eps)
```

Arguments

y	a univariate time series.
mod	a list describing the state-space model: see 'Details'.
nit	the time at which the initialization is computed. `nit = 0L` implies that the initialization is for a one-step prediction, so `Pn` should not be computed at the first step.
update	if `TRUE` the update `mod` object will be returned as attribute `"mod"` of the result.
n.ahead	the number of steps ahead for which prediction is required.
phi, theta	numeric vectors of length ≥ 0 giving AR and MA parameters.
Delta	vector of differencing coefficients, so an ARMA model is fitted to `y[t] - Delta[1]*y[t-1] - ...`.
kappa	the prior variance (as a multiple of the innovations variance) for the past observations in a differenced model.
SSinit	a string specifying the algorithm to compute the `Pn` part of the state-space initialization; see 'Details'.
tol	tolerance eventually passed to `solve.default` when `SSinit = "Rossignol2011"`.

Details

These functions work with a general univariate state-space model with state vector 'a', transitions 'a <- T a + R e', $e \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \kappa Q)$ and observation equation 'y = Za + eta', $(eta \equiv \eta), \eta \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \kappa h)$. The likelihood is a profile likelihood after estimation of κ.

The model is specified as a list with at least components

`T` the transition matrix

`Z` the observation coefficients

`h` the observation variance

`V` 'RQR'

`a` the current state estimate

`P` the current estimate of the state uncertainty matrix Q

`Pn` the estimate at time $t-1$ of the state uncertainty matrix Q (not updated by `KalmanForecast`.

`KalmanSmooth` is the workhorse function for `tsSmooth`.

`makeARIMA` constructs the state-space model for an ARIMA model, see also `arima`.

The state-space initialization has used Gardner *et al*'s method (`SSinit = "Gardner1980"`), as only method for years. However, that suffers sometimes from deficiencies when close to non-stationarity. For this reason, it may be replaced as default in the future and only kept for reproducibility reasons. Explicit specification of `SSinit` is therefore recommended, notably also in `arima()`. The `"Rossignol2011"` method has been proposed and partly documented by Raphael Rossignol, Univ. Grenoble, on 2011-09-20 (see PR#14682, below), and later been ported to C by Matwey V. Kornilov. It computes the covariance matrix of $(X_{t-1}, ..., X_{t-p}, Z_t, ..., Z_{t-q})$ by the method of difference equations (page 93 of Brockwell and Davis), apparently suggested by a referee of Gardner *et al* (see p.314 of their paper).

Value

For `KalmanLike`, a list with components `Lik` (the log-likelihood less some constants) and `s2`, the estimate of κ.

For `KalmanRun`, a list with components `values`, a vector of length 2 giving the output of `KalmanLike`, `resid` (the residuals) and `states`, the contemporaneous state estimates, a matrix with one row for each observation time.

For `KalmanSmooth`, a list with two components. Component `smooth` is a `n` by `p` matrix of state estimates based on all the observations, with one row for each time. Component `var` is a `n` by `p` by `p` array of variance matrices.

For `KalmanForecast`, a list with components `pred`, the predictions, and `var`, the unscaled variances of the prediction errors (to be multiplied by `s2`).

For `makeARIMA`, a model list including components for its arguments.

Warning

These functions are designed to be called from other functions which check the validity of the arguments passed, so very little checking is done.

References

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press.

Gardner, G, Harvey, A. C. and Phillips, G. D. A. (1980) Algorithm AS154. An algorithm for exact maximum likelihood estimation of autoregressive-moving average models by means of Kalman filtering. *Applied Statistics* **29**, 311–322.

R bug report PR#14682 (2011-2013) https://bugs.r-project.org/bugzilla3/show_bug.cgi?id=14682.

See Also

arima, StructTS. tsSmooth.

Examples

```
## an ARIMA fit
fit3 <- arima(presidents, c(3, 0, 0))
predict(fit3, 12)
## reconstruct this
pr <- KalmanForecast(12, fit3$model)
pr$pred + fit3$coef[4]
sqrt(pr$var * fit3$sigma2)
## and now do it year by year
mod <- fit3$model
for(y in 1:3) {
  pr <- KalmanForecast(4, mod, TRUE)
  print(list(pred = pr$pred + fit3$coef["intercept"],
             se = sqrt(pr$var * fit3$sigma2)))
  mod <- attr(pr, "mod")
}
```

---

kernapply *Apply Smoothing Kernel*

Description

kernapply computes the convolution between an input sequence and a specific kernel.

Usage

```
kernapply(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
kernapply(x, k, circular = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class ts
kernapply(x, k, circular = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class vector
kernapply(x, k, circular = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class tskernel
kernapply(x, k, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an input vector, matrix, time series or kernel to be smoothed.
k	smoothing "tskernel" object.
circular	a logical indicating whether the input sequence to be smoothed is treated as circular, i.e., periodic.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

A smoothed version of the input sequence.

Note

This uses fft to perform the convolution, so is fastest when NROW(x) is a power of 2 or some other highly composite integer.

Author(s)

A. Trapletti

See Also

kernel, convolve, filter, spectrum

Examples

```
## see kernel for examples
```

---

kernel *Smoothing Kernel Objects*

Description

The "tskernel" class is designed to represent discrete symmetric normalized smoothing kernels. These kernels can be used to smooth vectors, matrices, or time series objects.

There are print, plot and [methods for these kernel objects.

Usage

```
kernel(coef, m = 2, r, name)

df.kernel(k)
bandwidth.kernel(k)
is.tskernel(k)

## S3 method for class tskernel
plot(x, type = "h", xlab = "k", ylab = "W[k]",
     main = attr(x,"name"), ...)
```

Arguments

coef	the upper half of the smoothing kernel coefficients (including coefficient zero) *or* the name of a kernel (currently "daniell", "dirichlet", "fejer" or "modified.daniell".
m	the kernel dimension(s) if coef is a name. When m has length larger than one, it means the convolution of kernels of dimension m[j], for j in 1:length(m). Currently this is supported only for the named "*daniell" kernels.
name	the name the kernel will be called.
r	the kernel order for a Fejer kernel.
k, x	a "tskernel" object.
type, xlab, ylab, main, ...	arguments passed to plot.default.

Details

kernel is used to construct a general kernel or named specific kernels. The modified Daniell kernel halves the end coefficients (as used by S-PLUS).

The [method allows natural indexing of kernel objects with indices in (-m) : m. The normalization is such that for k <- kernel(*), sum(k[-k$m : k$m]) is one.

df.kernel returns the 'equivalent degrees of freedom' of a smoothing kernel as defined in Brockwell and Davis (1991), page 362, and bandwidth.kernel returns the equivalent bandwidth as defined in Bloomfield (1976), p. 201, with a continuity correction.

Value

kernel() returns an object of class "tskernel" which is basically a list with the two components coef and the kernel dimension m. An additional attribute is "name".

Author(s)

A. Trapletti; modifications by B.D. Ripley

References

Bloomfield, P. (1976) *Fourier Analysis of Time Series: An Introduction.* Wiley.

Brockwell, P.J. and Davis, R.A. (1991) *Time Series: Theory and Methods.* Second edition. Springer, pp. 350–365.

See Also

kernapply

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Demonstrate a simple trading strategy for the
## financial time series German stock index DAX.
x <- EuStockMarkets[,1]
k1 <- kernel("daniell", 50)  # a long moving average
k2 <- kernel("daniell", 10)  # and a short one
```

```
plot(k1)
plot(k2)
x1 <- kernapply(x, k1)
x2 <- kernapply(x, k2)
plot(x)
lines(x1, col = "red")    # go long if the short crosses the long upwards
lines(x2, col = "green")  # and go short otherwise

## More interesting kernels
kd <- kernel("daniell", c(3, 3))
kd # note the unusual indexing
kd[-2:2]
plot(kernel("fejer", 100, r = 6))
plot(kernel("modified.daniell", c(7,5,3)))

# Reproduce example 10.4.3 from Brockwell and Davis (1991)
spectrum(sunspot.year, kernel = kernel("daniell", c(11,7,3)), log = "no")
```

---

kmeans *K-Means Clustering*

Description

Perform k-means clustering on a data matrix.

Usage

```
kmeans(x, centers, iter.max = 10, nstart = 1,
       algorithm = c("Hartigan-Wong", "Lloyd", "Forgy",
                     "MacQueen"), trace=FALSE)
## S3 method for class kmeans
fitted(object, method = c("centers", "classes"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric matrix of data, or an object that can be coerced to such a matrix (such as a numeric vector or a data frame with all numeric columns).
centers	either the number of clusters, say k, or a set of initial (distinct) cluster centres. If a number, a random set of (distinct) rows in x is chosen as the initial centres.
iter.max	the maximum number of iterations allowed.
nstart	if centers is a number, how many random sets should be chosen?
algorithm	character: may be abbreviated. Note that "Lloyd" and "Forgy" are alternative names for one algorithm.
object	an object of class "kmeans", typically the result ob of ob <- kmeans(..).
method	character: may be abbreviated. "centers" causes fitted to return cluster centers (one for each input point) and "classes" causes fitted to return a vector of class assignments.
trace	logical or integer number, currently only used in the default method ("Hartigan-Wong"): if positive (or true), tracing information on the progress of the algorithm is produced. Higher values may produce more tracing information.
...	not used.

Details

The data given by x are clustered by the k-means method, which aims to partition the points into k groups such that the sum of squares from points to the assigned cluster centres is minimized. At the minimum, all cluster centres are at the mean of their Voronoi sets (the set of data points which are nearest to the cluster centre).

The algorithm of Hartigan and Wong (1979) is used by default. Note that some authors use k-means to refer to a specific algorithm rather than the general method: most commonly the algorithm given by MacQueen (1967) but sometimes that given by Lloyd (1957) and Forgy (1965). The Hartigan–Wong algorithm generally does a better job than either of those, but trying several random starts (nstart>1) is often recommended. In rare cases, when some of the points (rows of x) are extremely close, the algorithm may not converge in the "Quick-Transfer" stage, signalling a warning (and returning ifault = 4). Slight rounding of the data may be advisable in that case.

For ease of programmatic exploration, $k = 1$ is allowed, notably returning the center and withinss.

Except for the Lloyd–Forgy method, k clusters will always be returned if a number is specified. If an initial matrix of centres is supplied, it is possible that no point will be closest to one or more centres, which is currently an error for the Hartigan–Wong method.

Value

kmeans returns an object of class "kmeans" which has a print and a fitted method. It is a list with at least the following components:

cluster	A vector of integers (from 1:k) indicating the cluster to which each point is allocated.
centers	A matrix of cluster centres.
totss	The total sum of squares.
withinss	Vector of within-cluster sum of squares, one component per cluster.
tot.withinss	Total within-cluster sum of squares, i.e. sum(withinss).
betweenss	The between-cluster sum of squares, i.e. totss-tot.withinss.
size	The number of points in each cluster.
iter	The number of (outer) iterations.
ifault	integer: indicator of a possible algorithm problem – for experts.

References

Forgy, E. W. (1965) Cluster analysis of multivariate data: efficiency vs interpretability of classifications. *Biometrics* **21**, 768–769.

Hartigan, J. A. and Wong, M. A. (1979). A K-means clustering algorithm. *Applied Statistics* **28**, 100–108.

Lloyd, S. P. (1957, 1982) Least squares quantization in PCM. Technical Note, Bell Laboratories. Published in 1982 in *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory* **28**, 128–137.

MacQueen, J. (1967) Some methods for classification and analysis of multivariate observations. In *Proceedings of the Fifth Berkeley Symposium on Mathematical Statistics and Probability*, eds L. M. Le Cam & J. Neyman, **1**, pp. 281–297. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

# a 2-dimensional example
x <- rbind(matrix(rnorm(100, sd = 0.3), ncol = 2),
           matrix(rnorm(100, mean = 1, sd = 0.3), ncol = 2))
colnames(x) <- c("x", "y")
(cl <- kmeans(x, 2))
plot(x, col = cl$cluster)
points(cl$centers, col = 1:2, pch = 8, cex = 2)

# sum of squares
ss <- function(x) sum(scale(x, scale = FALSE)^2)

## cluster centers "fitted" to each obs.:
fitted.x <- fitted(cl);  head(fitted.x)
resid.x <- x - fitted(cl)

## Equalities : ----------------------------------
cbind(cl[c("betweenss", "tot.withinss", "totss")], # the same two columns
         c(ss(fitted.x), ss(resid.x),    ss(x)))
stopifnot(all.equal(cl$ totss,        ss(x)),
  all.equal(cl$ tot.withinss, ss(resid.x)),
  ## these three are the same:
  all.equal(cl$ betweenss,    ss(fitted.x)),
  all.equal(cl$ betweenss, cl$totss - cl$tot.withinss),
  ## and hence also
  all.equal(ss(x), ss(fitted.x) + ss(resid.x))
  )

kmeans(x,1)$withinss # trivial one-cluster, (its W.SS == ss(x))

## random starts do help here with too many clusters
## (and are often recommended anyway!):
(cl <- kmeans(x, 5, nstart = 25))
plot(x, col = cl$cluster)
points(cl$centers, col = 1:5, pch = 8)
```

---

kruskal.test *Kruskal-Wallis Rank Sum Test*

Description

Performs a Kruskal-Wallis rank sum test.

Usage

```
kruskal.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
kruskal.test(x, g, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
kruskal.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector of data values, or a list of numeric data vectors. Non-numeric elements of a list will be coerced, with a warning.
g	a vector or factor object giving the group for the corresponding elements of x. Ignored with a warning if x is a list.
formula	a formula of the form response ~ group where response gives the data values and group a vector or factor of the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

kruskal.test performs a Kruskal-Wallis rank sum test of the null that the location parameters of the distribution of x are the same in each group (sample). The alternative is that they differ in at least one.

If x is a list, its elements are taken as the samples to be compared, and hence have to be numeric data vectors. In this case, g is ignored, and one can simply use kruskal.test(x) to perform the test. If the samples are not yet contained in a list, use kruskal.test(list(x, ...)).

Otherwise, x must be a numeric data vector, and g must be a vector or factor object of the same length as x giving the group for the corresponding elements of x.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the Kruskal-Wallis rank sum statistic.
parameter	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
method	the character string "Kruskal-Wallis rank sum test".
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

Myles Hollander and Douglas A. Wolfe (1973), *Nonparametric Statistical Methods.* New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 115–120.

See Also

The Wilcoxon rank sum test (wilcox.test) as the special case for two samples; lm together with anova for performing one-way location analysis under normality assumptions; with Student's t test (t.test) as the special case for two samples.

wilcox_test in package **coin** for exact, asymptotic and Monte Carlo *conditional* p-values, including in the presence of ties.

Examples

```
## Hollander & Wolfe (1973), 116.
## Mucociliary efficiency from the rate of removal of dust in normal
##  subjects, subjects with obstructive airway disease, and subjects
##  with asbestosis.
x <- c(2.9, 3.0, 2.5, 2.6, 3.2) # normal subjects
y <- c(3.8, 2.7, 4.0, 2.4)      # with obstructive airway disease
z <- c(2.8, 3.4, 3.7, 2.2, 2.0) # with asbestosis
kruskal.test(list(x, y, z))
## Equivalently,
x <- c(x, y, z)
g <- factor(rep(1:3, c(5, 4, 5)),
            labels = c("Normal subjects",
                       "Subjects with obstructive airway disease",
                       "Subjects with asbestosis"))
kruskal.test(x, g)

## Formula interface.
require(graphics)
boxplot(Ozone ~ Month, data = airquality)
kruskal.test(Ozone ~ Month, data = airquality)
```

---

ks.test *Kolmogorov-Smirnov Tests*

Description

Perform a one- or two-sample Kolmogorov-Smirnov test.

Usage

```
ks.test(x, y, ...,
        alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
        exact = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector of data values.
y	either a numeric vector of data values, or a character string naming a cumulative distribution function or an actual cumulative distribution function such as pnorm. Only continuous CDFs are valid.
...	parameters of the distribution specified (as a character string) by y.
alternative	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of "two.sided" (default), "less", or "greater". You can specify just the initial letter of the value, but the argument name must be give in full. See 'Details' for the meanings of the possible values.
exact	NULL or a logical indicating whether an exact p-value should be computed. See 'Details' for the meaning of NULL. Not available in the two-sample case for a one-sided test or if ties are present.

Details

If y is numeric, a two-sample test of the null hypothesis that x and y were drawn from the same *continuous* distribution is performed.

Alternatively, y can be a character string naming a continuous (cumulative) distribution function, or such a function. In this case, a one-sample test is carried out of the null that the distribution function which generated x is distribution y with parameters specified by ....

The presence of ties always generates a warning, since continuous distributions do not generate them. If the ties arose from rounding the tests may be approximately valid, but even modest amounts of rounding can have a significant effect on the calculated statistic.

Missing values are silently omitted from x and (in the two-sample case) y.

The possible values "two.sided", "less" and "greater" of alternative specify the null hypothesis that the true distribution function of x is equal to, not less than or not greater than the hypothesized distribution function (one-sample case) or the distribution function of y (two-sample case), respectively. This is a comparison of cumulative distribution functions, and the test statistic is the maximum difference in value, with the statistic in the "greater" alternative being $D^+ = \max_u[F_x(u) - F_y(u)]$. Thus in the two-sample case alternative = "greater" includes distributions for which x is stochastically *smaller* than y (the CDF of x lies above and hence to the left of that for y), in contrast to t.test or wilcox.test.

Exact p-values are not available for the two-sample case if one-sided or in the presence of ties. If exact = NULL (the default), an exact p-value is computed if the sample size is less than 100 in the one-sample case *and there are no ties*, and if the product of the sample sizes is less than 10000 in the two-sample case. Otherwise, asymptotic distributions are used whose approximations may be inaccurate in small samples. In the one-sample two-sided case, exact p-values are obtained as described in Marsaglia, Tsang & Wang (2003) (but not using the optional approximation in the right tail, so this can be slow for small p-values). The formula of Birnbaum & Tingey (1951) is used for the one-sample one-sided case.

If a single-sample test is used, the parameters specified in ... must be pre-specified and not estimated from the data. There is some more refined distribution theory for the KS test with estimated parameters (see Durbin, 1973), but that is not implemented in ks.test.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the test statistic.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
alternative	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
method	a character string indicating what type of test was performed.
data.name	a character string giving the name(s) of the data.

Source

The two-sided one-sample distribution comes *via* Marsaglia, Tsang and Wang (2003).

References

Z. W. Birnbaum and Fred H. Tingey (1951), One-sided confidence contours for probability distribution functions. *The Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, **22**/4, 592–596.

William J. Conover (1971), *Practical Nonparametric Statistics*. New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 295–301 (one-sample Kolmogorov test), 309–314 (two-sample Smirnov test).

Durbin, J. (1973), *Distribution theory for tests based on the sample distribution function*. SIAM.

George Marsaglia, Wai Wan Tsang and Jingbo Wang (2003), Evaluating Kolmogorov's distribution. *Journal of Statistical Software*, **8**/18. http://www.jstatsoft.org/v08/i18/.

See Also

`shapiro.test` which performs the Shapiro-Wilk test for normality.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

x <- rnorm(50)
y <- runif(30)
# Do x and y come from the same distribution?
ks.test(x, y)
# Does x come from a shifted gamma distribution with shape 3 and rate 2?
ks.test(x+2, "pgamma", 3, 2) # two-sided, exact
ks.test(x+2, "pgamma", 3, 2, exact = FALSE)
ks.test(x+2, "pgamma", 3, 2, alternative = "gr")

# test if x is stochastically larger than x2
x2 <- rnorm(50, -1)
plot(ecdf(x), xlim = range(c(x, x2)))
plot(ecdf(x2), add = TRUE, lty = "dashed")
t.test(x, x2, alternative = "g")
wilcox.test(x, x2, alternative = "g")
ks.test(x, x2, alternative = "l")
```

---

ksmooth *Kernel Regression Smoother*

Description

The Nadaraya–Watson kernel regression estimate.

Usage

```
ksmooth(x, y, kernel = c("box", "normal"), bandwidth = 0.5,
        range.x = range(x),
        n.points = max(100L, length(x)), x.points)
```

Arguments

`x`	input x values. Long vectors are supported.
`y`	input y values. Long vectors are supported.
`kernel`	the kernel to be used.
`bandwidth`	the bandwidth. The kernels are scaled so that their quartiles (viewed as probability densities) are at $\pm$ `0.25*bandwidth`.
`range.x`	the range of points to be covered in the output.
`n.points`	the number of points at which to evaluate the fit.
`x.points`	points at which to evaluate the smoothed fit. If missing, `n.points` are chosen uniformly to cover `range.x`. Long vectors are supported.

Value

A list with components

x	values at which the smoothed fit is evaluated. Guaranteed to be in increasing order.
y	fitted values corresponding to x.

Note

This function was implemented for compatibility with S, although it is nowhere near as slow as the S function. Better kernel smoothers are available in other packages such as **KernSmooth**.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

with(cars, {
    plot(speed, dist)
    lines(ksmooth(speed, dist, "normal", bandwidth = 2), col = 2)
    lines(ksmooth(speed, dist, "normal", bandwidth = 5), col = 3)
})
```

---

lag *Lag a Time Series*

Description

Compute a lagged version of a time series, shifting the time base back by a given number of observations.

lag is a generic function; this page documents its default method.

Usage

```
lag(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
lag(x, k = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A vector or matrix or univariate or multivariate time series
k	The number of lags (in units of observations).
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

Vector or matrix arguments x are given a tsp attribute *via* hasTsp.

Value

A time series object with the same class as x.

Note

Note the sign of k: a series lagged by a positive k starts *earlier*.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

diff, deltat

Examples

```
lag(ldeaths, 12) # starts one year earlier
```

---

lag.plot *Time Series Lag Plots*

Description

Plot time series against lagged versions of themselves. Helps visualizing 'auto-dependence' even when auto-correlations vanish.

Usage

```
lag.plot(x, lags = 1, layout = NULL, set.lags = 1:lags,
         main = NULL, asp = 1,
         diag = TRUE, diag.col = "gray", type = "p", oma = NULL,
         ask = NULL, do.lines = (n <= 150), labels = do.lines,
         ...)
```

Arguments

x	time-series (univariate or multivariate)
lags	number of lag plots desired, see arg set.lags.
layout	the layout of multiple plots, basically the mfrow par() argument. The default uses about a square layout (see n2mfrow such that all plots are on one page.
set.lags	vector of positive integers allowing specification of the set of lags used; defaults to 1:lags.
main	character with a main header title to be done on the top of each page.
asp	Aspect ratio to be fixed, see plot.default.
diag	logical indicating if the x=y diagonal should be drawn.
diag.col	color to be used for the diagonal if(diag).
type	plot type to be used, but see plot.ts about its restricted meaning.
oma	outer margins, see par.
ask	logical or NULL; if true, the user is asked to confirm before a new page is started.
do.lines	logical indicating if lines should be drawn.

`labels`	logical indicating if labels should be used.
`...`	Further arguments to `plot.ts`. Several graphical parameters are set in this function and so cannot be changed: these include `xlab`, `ylab`, `mgp`, `col.lab` and `font.lab`: this also applies to the arguments `xy.labels` and `xy.lines`.

Details

If just one plot is produced, this is a conventional plot. If more than one plot is to be produced, `par(mfrow)` and several other graphics parameters will be set, so it is not (easily) possible to mix such lag plots with other plots on the same page.

If `ask = NULL`, `par(ask = TRUE)` will be called if more than one page of plots is to be produced and the device is interactive.

Note

It is more flexible and has different default behaviour than the S version. We use `main =` instead of `head =` for internal consistency.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

`plot.ts` which is the basic work horse.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

lag.plot(nhtemp, 8, diag.col = "forest green")
lag.plot(nhtemp, 5, main = "Average Temperatures in New Haven")
## ask defaults to TRUE when we have more than one page:
lag.plot(nhtemp, 6, layout = c(2,1), asp = NA,
         main = "New Haven Temperatures", col.main = "blue")

## Multivariate (but non-stationary! ...)
lag.plot(freeny.x, lags = 3)

## no lines for long series :
lag.plot(sqrt(sunspots), set = c(1:4, 9:12), pch = ".", col = "gold")
```

`line` *Robust Line Fitting*

Description

Fit a line robustly as recommended in *Exploratory Data Analysis*.

Usage

```
line(x, y)
```

Arguments

x, y	the arguments can be any way of specifying x-y pairs. See xy.coords.

Details

Cases with missing values are omitted.

Long vectors are not supported.

Value

An object of class "tukeyline".

Methods are available for the generic functions coef, residuals, fitted, and print.

References

Tukey, J. W. (1977). *Exploratory Data Analysis*, Reading Massachusetts: Addison-Wesley.

See Also

lm.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(cars)
(z <- line(cars))
abline(coef(z))
## Tukey-Anscombe Plot :
plot(residuals(z) ~ fitted(z), main = deparse(z$call))
```

---

listof *A Class for Lists of (Parts of) Model Fits*

Description

Class "listof" is used by aov and the "lm" method of alias for lists of model fits or parts thereof. It is simply a list with an assigned class to control the way methods, especially printing, act on it.

It has a coef method in this package (which returns an object of this class), and [and print methods in package **base**.

lm *Fitting Linear Models*

Description

lm is used to fit linear models. It can be used to carry out regression, single stratum analysis of variance and analysis of covariance (although aov may provide a more convenient interface for these).

Usage

```
lm(formula, data, subset, weights, na.action,
   method = "qr", model = TRUE, x = FALSE, y = FALSE, qr = TRUE,
   singular.ok = TRUE, contrasts = NULL, offset, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	an object of class "formula" (or one that can be coerced to that class): a symbolic description of the model to be fitted. The details of model specification are given under 'Details'.
data	an optional data frame, list or environment (or object coercible by as.data.frame to a data frame) containing the variables in the model. If not found in data, the variables are taken from environment(formula), typically the environment from which lm is called.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.
weights	an optional vector of weights to be used in the fitting process. Should be NULL or a numeric vector. If non-NULL, weighted least squares is used with weights weights (that is, minimizing sum(w*e^2)); otherwise ordinary least squares is used. See also 'Details',
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default is set by the na.action setting of options, and is na.fail if that is unset. The 'factory-fresh' default is na.omit. Another possible value is NULL, no action. Value na.exclude can be useful.
method	the method to be used; for fitting, currently only method = "qr" is supported; method = "model.frame" returns the model frame (the same as with model = TRUE, see below).
model, x, y, qr	logicals. If TRUE the corresponding components of the fit (the model frame, the model matrix, the response, the QR decomposition) are returned.
singular.ok	logical. If FALSE (the default in S but not in) a singular fit is an error.
contrasts	an optional list. See the contrasts.arg of model.matrix.default.
offset	this can be used to specify an *a priori* known component to be included in the linear predictor during fitting. This should be NULL or a numeric vector of length equal to the number of cases. One or more offset terms can be included in the formula instead or as well, and if more than one are specified their sum is used. See model.offset.
...	additional arguments to be passed to the low level regression fitting functions (see below).

Details

Models for lm are specified symbolically. A typical model has the form response ~ terms where response is the (numeric) response vector and terms is a series of terms which specifies a linear predictor for response. A terms specification of the form first + second indicates all the terms in first together with all the terms in second with duplicates removed. A specification of the form first:second indicates the set of terms obtained by taking the interactions of all terms in first with all terms in second. The specification first*second indicates the *cross* of first and second. This is the same as first + second + first:second.

If the formula includes an offset, this is evaluated and subtracted from the response.

If response is a matrix a linear model is fitted separately by least-squares to each column of the matrix.

See model.matrix for some further details. The terms in the formula will be re-ordered so that main effects come first, followed by the interactions, all second-order, all third-order and so on: to avoid this pass a terms object as the formula (see aov and demo(glm.vr) for an example).

A formula has an implied intercept term. To remove this use either y ~ x - 1 or y ~ 0 + x. See formula for more details of allowed formulae.

Non-NULL weights can be used to indicate that different observations have different variances (with the values in weights being inversely proportional to the variances); or equivalently, when the elements of weights are positive integers w_i, that each response y_i is the mean of w_i unit-weight observations (including the case that there are w_i observations equal to y_i and the data have been summarized).

lm calls the lower level functions lm.fit, etc, see below, for the actual numerical computations. For programming only, you may consider doing likewise.

All of weights, subset and offset are evaluated in the same way as variables in formula, that is first in data and then in the environment of formula.

Value

lm returns an object of class "lm" or for multiple responses of class c("mlm", "lm").

The functions summary and anova are used to obtain and print a summary and analysis of variance table of the results. The generic accessor functions coefficients, effects, fitted.values and residuals extract various useful features of the value returned by lm.

An object of class "lm" is a list containing at least the following components:

coefficients	a named vector of coefficients
residuals	the residuals, that is response minus fitted values.
fitted.values	the fitted mean values.
rank	the numeric rank of the fitted linear model.
weights	(only for weighted fits) the specified weights.
df.residual	the residual degrees of freedom.
call	the matched call.
terms	the terms object used.
contrasts	(only where relevant) the contrasts used.
xlevels	(only where relevant) a record of the levels of the factors used in fitting.
offset	the offset used (missing if none were used).
y	if requested, the response used.

x	if requested, the model matrix used.
model	if requested (the default), the model frame used.
na.action	(where relevant) information returned by model.frame on the special handling of NAs.

In addition, non-null fits will have components assign, effects and (unless not requested) qr relating to the linear fit, for use by extractor functions such as summary and effects.

Using time series

Considerable care is needed when using lm with time series.

Unless na.action = NULL, the time series attributes are stripped from the variables before the regression is done. (This is necessary as omitting NAs would invalidate the time series attributes, and if NAs are omitted in the middle of the series the result would no longer be a regular time series.)

Even if the time series attributes are retained, they are not used to line up series, so that the time shift of a lagged or differenced regressor would be ignored. It is good practice to prepare a data argument by ts.intersect(..., dframe = TRUE), then apply a suitable na.action to that data frame and call lm with na.action = NULL so that residuals and fitted values are time series.

Note

Offsets specified by offset will not be included in predictions by predict.lm, whereas those specified by an offset term in the formula will be.

Author(s)

The design was inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers (1992). The implementation of model formula by Ross Ihaka was based on Wilkinson & Rogers (1973).

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models.* Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Wilkinson, G. N. and Rogers, C. E. (1973) Symbolic descriptions of factorial models for analysis of variance. *Applied Statistics*, **22**, 392–9.

See Also

summary.lm for summaries and anova.lm for the ANOVA table; aov for a different interface.

The generic functions coef, effects, residuals, fitted, vcov.

predict.lm (via predict) for prediction, including confidence and prediction intervals; confint for confidence intervals of *parameters*.

lm.influence for regression diagnostics, and glm for **generalized** linear models.

The underlying low level functions, lm.fit for plain, and lm.wfit for weighted regression fitting.

More lm() examples are available e.g., in anscombe, attitude, freeny, LifeCycleSavings, longley, stackloss, swiss.

biglm in package **biglm** for an alternative way to fit linear models to large datasets (especially those with many cases).

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Annette Dobson (1990) "An Introduction to Generalized Linear Models".
## Page 9: Plant Weight Data.
ctl <- c(4.17,5.58,5.18,6.11,4.50,4.61,5.17,4.53,5.33,5.14)
trt <- c(4.81,4.17,4.41,3.59,5.87,3.83,6.03,4.89,4.32,4.69)
group <- gl(2, 10, 20, labels = c("Ctl","Trt"))
weight <- c(ctl, trt)
lm.D9 <- lm(weight ~ group)
lm.D90 <- lm(weight ~ group - 1) # omitting intercept

anova(lm.D9)
summary(lm.D90)

opar <- par(mfrow = c(2,2), oma = c(0, 0, 1.1, 0))
plot(lm.D9, las = 1)      # Residuals, Fitted, ...
par(opar)

### less simple examples in "See Also" above
```

---

lm.fit *Fitter Functions for Linear Models*

Description

These are the basic computing engines called by lm used to fit linear models. These should usually *not* be used directly unless by experienced users. .lm.fit() is bare bone wrapper to the innermost QR-based C code, on which glm.fit and lsfit are based as well, for even more experienced users.

Usage

```
lm.fit (x, y,    offset = NULL, method = "qr", tol = 1e-7,
       singular.ok = TRUE, ...)

lm.wfit(x, y, w, offset = NULL, method = "qr", tol = 1e-7,
        singular.ok = TRUE, ...)

.lm.fit(x, y, tol = 1e-7)
```

Arguments

x	design matrix of dimension n * p.
y	vector of observations of length n, or a matrix with n rows.
w	vector of weights (length n) to be used in the fitting process for the wfit functions. Weighted least squares is used with weights w, i.e., sum(w * e^2) is minimized.
offset	numeric of length n). This can be used to specify an *a priori* known component to be included in the linear predictor during fitting.
method	currently, only method = "qr" is supported.
tol	tolerance for the qr decomposition. Default is 1e-7.

singular.ok	logical. If FALSE, a singular model is an error.
...	currently disregarded.

Value

a list with components (for lm.fit and lm.wfit)

coefficients	p vector
residuals	n vector or matrix
fitted.values	n vector or matrix
effects	n vector of orthogonal single-df effects. The first rank of them correspond to non-aliased coefficients, and are named accordingly.
weights	n vector — *only* for the *wfit* functions.
rank	integer, giving the rank
df.residual	degrees of freedom of residuals
qr	the QR decomposition, see qr.

Fits without any columns or non-zero weights do not have the effects and qr components.

.lm.fit() returns a subset of the above, the qr part unwrapped, plus a logical component pivoted indicating if the underlying QR algorithm did pivot.

See Also

lm which you should use for linear least squares regression, unless you know better.

Examples

```
require(utils)

set.seed(129)

n <- 7 ; p <- 2
X <- matrix(rnorm(n * p), n, p) # no intercept!
y <- rnorm(n)
w <- rnorm(n)^2

str(lmw <- lm.wfit(x = X, y = y, w = w))

str(lm. <- lm.fit (x = X, y = y))


if(require("microbenchmark")) {
  mb <- microbenchmark(lm(y~X), lm.fit(X,y), .lm.fit(X,y))
  print(mb)
  boxplot(mb, notch=TRUE)
}
```

`lm.influence` *Regression Diagnostics*

Description

This function provides the basic quantities which are used in forming a wide variety of diagnostics for checking the quality of regression fits.

Usage

```
influence(model, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
influence(model, do.coef = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class glm
influence(model, do.coef = TRUE, ...)

lm.influence(model, do.coef = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`model`	an object as returned by `lm` or `glm`.
`do.coef`	logical indicating if the changed `coefficients` (see below) are desired. These need $O(n^2p)$ computing time.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The `influence.measures()` and other functions listed in **See Also** provide a more user oriented way of computing a variety of regression diagnostics. These all build on `lm.influence`. Note that for GLMs (other than the Gaussian family with identity link) these are based on one-step approximations which may be inadequate if a case has high influence.

An attempt is made to ensure that computed hat values that are probably one are treated as one, and the corresponding rows in `sigma` and `coefficients` are `NaN`. (Dropping such a case would normally result in a variable being dropped, so it is not possible to give simple drop-one diagnostics.)

`naresid` is applied to the results and so will fill in with `NA`s it the fit had `na.action = na.exclude`.

Value

A list containing the following components of the same length or number of rows n, which is the number of non-zero weights. Cases omitted in the fit are omitted unless a `na.action` method was used (such as `na.exclude`) which restores them.

`hat`	a vector containing the diagonal of the 'hat' matrix.
`coefficients`	(unless `do.coef` is false) a matrix whose i-th row contains the change in the estimated coefficients which results when the i-th case is dropped from the regression. Note that aliased coefficients are not included in the matrix.
`sigma`	a vector whose i-th element contains the estimate of the residual standard deviation obtained when the i-th case is dropped from the regression. (The approximations needed for GLMs can result in this being `NaN`.)
`wt.res`	a vector of *weighted* (or for class `glm` rather *deviance*) residuals.

Note

The `coefficients` returned by the version of `lm.influence` differ from those computed by S. Rather than returning the coefficients which result from dropping each case, we return the changes in the coefficients. This is more directly useful in many diagnostic measures.
Since these need $O(n^2p)$ computing time, they can be omitted by `do.coef = FALSE`.

Note that cases with `weights == 0` are *dropped* (contrary to the situation in S).

If a model has been fitted with `na.action = na.exclude` (see `na.exclude`), cases excluded in the fit *are* considered here.

References

See the list in the documentation for `influence.measures`.

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models.* Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`summary.lm` for `summary` and related methods;
`influence.measures`,
`hat` for the hat matrix diagonals,
`dfbetas`, `dffits`, `covratio`, `cooks.distance`, `lm`.

Examples

```
## Analysis of the life-cycle savings data
## given in Belsley, Kuh and Welsch.
summary(lm.SR <- lm(sr ~ pop15 + pop75 + dpi + ddpi,
                    data = LifeCycleSavings),
        corr = TRUE)
utils::str(lmI <- lm.influence(lm.SR))

## For more "user level" examples, use example(influence.measures)
```

`lm.summaries` *Accessing Linear Model Fits*

Description

All these functions are `methods` for class `"lm"` objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lm
family(object, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
formula(x, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
residuals(object,
          type = c("working", "response", "deviance", "pearson",
```

```
                    "partial"),
          ...)

## S3 method for class lm
labels(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object, x	an object inheriting from class lm, usually the result of a call to lm or aov.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
type	the type of residuals which should be returned.

Details

The generic accessor functions coef, effects, fitted and residuals can be used to extract various useful features of the value returned by lm.

The working and response residuals are 'observed - fitted'. The deviance and pearson residuals are weighted residuals, scaled by the square root of the weights used in fitting. The partial residuals are a matrix with each column formed by omitting a term from the model. In all these, zero weight cases are never omitted (as opposed to the standardized rstudent residuals, and the weighted.residuals).

How residuals treats cases with missing values in the original fit is determined by the na.action argument of that fit. If na.action = na.omit omitted cases will not appear in the residuals, whereas if na.action = na.exclude they will appear, with residual value NA. See also naresid.

The "lm" method for generic labels returns the term labels for estimable terms, that is the names of the terms with an least one estimable coefficient.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models.* Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

The model fitting function lm, anova.lm.

coef, deviance, df.residual, effects, fitted, glm for **generalized** linear models, influence (etc on that page) for regression diagnostics, weighted.residuals, residuals, residuals.glm, summary.lm, weights.

influence.measures for deletion diagnostics, including standardized (rstandard) and studentized (rstudent) residuals.

Examples

```
##-- Continuing the  lm(.) example:
coef(lm.D90) # the bare coefficients

## The 2 basic regression diagnostic plots [plot.lm(.) is preferred]
plot(resid(lm.D90), fitted(lm.D90)) # Tukey-Anscombes
abline(h = 0, lty = 2, col = "gray")

qqnorm(residuals(lm.D90))
```

`loadings` *Print Loadings in Factor Analysis*

Description

Extract or print loadings in factor analysis (or principal components analysis).

Usage

```
loadings(x, ...)

## S3 method for class loadings
print(x, digits = 3, cutoff = 0.1, sort = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class factanal
print(x, digits = 3, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `"factanal"` or `"princomp"` or the `loadings` component of such an object.
`digits`	number of decimal places to use in printing uniquenesses and loadings.
`cutoff`	loadings smaller than this (in absolute value) are suppressed.
`sort`	logical. If true, the variables are sorted by their importance on each factor. Each variable with any loading larger than 0.5 (in modulus) is assigned to the factor with the largest loading, and the variables are printed in the order of the factor they are assigned to, then those unassigned.
`...`	further arguments for other methods, ignored for `loadings`.

Details

'Loadings' is a term from *factor analysis*, but because factor analysis and principal component analysis (PCA) are often conflated in the social science literature, it was used for PCA by SPSS and hence by `princomp` in S-PLUS to help SPSS users.

Small loadings are conventionally not printed (replaced by spaces), to draw the eye to the pattern of the larger loadings.

The `print` method for class `"factanal"` calls the `"loadings"` method to print the loadings, and so passes down arguments such as `cutoff` and `sort`.

The signs of the loadings vectors are arbitrary for both factor analysis and PCA.

Note

There are other functions called `loadings` in contributed packages which are S3 or S4 generic: the `...` argument is to make it easier for this one to become a default method.

See Also

`factanal`, `princomp`

`loess` *Local Polynomial Regression Fitting*

Description

Fit a polynomial surface determined by one or more numerical predictors, using local fitting.

Usage

```
loess(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, model = FALSE,
      span = 0.75, enp.target, degree = 2,
      parametric = FALSE, drop.square = FALSE, normalize = TRUE,
      family = c("gaussian", "symmetric"),
      method = c("loess", "model.frame"),
      control = loess.control(...), ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	a formula specifying the numeric response and one to four numeric predictors (best specified via an interaction, but can also be specified additively). Will be coerced to a formula if necessary.
`data`	an optional data frame, list or environment (or object coercible by `as.data.frame` to a data frame) containing the variables in the model. If not found in `data`, the variables are taken from `environment(formula)`, typically the environment from which `loess` is called.
`weights`	optional weights for each case.
`subset`	an optional specification of a subset of the data to be used.
`na.action`	the action to be taken with missing values in the response or predictors. The default is given by `getOption("na.action")`.
`model`	should the model frame be returned?
`span`	the parameter α which controls the degree of smoothing.
`enp.target`	an alternative way to specify `span`, as the approximate equivalent number of parameters to be used.
`degree`	the degree of the polynomials to be used, normally 1 or 2. (Degree 0 is also allowed, but see the 'Note'.)
`parametric`	should any terms be fitted globally rather than locally? Terms can be specified by name, number or as a logical vector of the same length as the number of predictors.
`drop.square`	for fits with more than one predictor and `degree = 2`, should the quadratic term be dropped for particular predictors? Terms are specified in the same way as for `parametric`.
`normalize`	should the predictors be normalized to a common scale if there is more than one? The normalization used is to set the 10% trimmed standard deviation to one. Set to false for spatial coordinate predictors and others know to be a common scale.
`family`	if `"gaussian"` fitting is by least-squares, and if `"symmetric"` a re-descending M estimator is used with Tukey's biweight function.
`method`	fit the model or just extract the model frame.
`control`	control parameters: see `loess.control`.
`...`	control parameters can also be supplied directly.

Details

Fitting is done locally. That is, for the fit at point x, the fit is made using points in a neighbourhood of x, weighted by their distance from x (with differences in 'parametric' variables being ignored when computing the distance). The size of the neighbourhood is controlled by α (set by `span` or `enp.target`). For $\alpha < 1$, the neighbourhood includes proportion α of the points, and these have tricubic weighting (proportional to $(1 - (\text{dist}/\text{maxdist})^3)^3$). For $\alpha > 1$, all points are used, with the 'maximum distance' assumed to be $\alpha^{1/p}$ times the actual maximum distance for p explanatory variables.

For the default family, fitting is by (weighted) least squares. For `family="symmetric"` a few iterations of an M-estimation procedure with Tukey's biweight are used. Be aware that as the initial value is the least-squares fit, this need not be a very resistant fit.

It can be important to tune the control list to achieve acceptable speed. See `loess.control` for details.

Value

An object of class `"loess"`.

Note

As this is based on `cloess`, it is similar to but not identical to the `loess` function of S. In particular, conditioning is not implemented.

The memory usage of this implementation of `loess` is roughly quadratic in the number of points, with 1000 points taking about 10Mb.

`degree = 0`, local constant fitting, is allowed in this implementation but not documented in the reference. It seems very little tested, so use with caution.

Author(s)

B. D. Ripley, based on the `cloess` package of Cleveland, Grosse and Shyu.

Source

The 1998 version of `cloess` package of Cleveland, Grosse and Shyu. A later version is available as `dloess` at http://www.netlib.org/a.

References

W. S. Cleveland, E. Grosse and W. M. Shyu (1992) Local regression models. Chapter 8 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J.M. Chambers and T.J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`loess.control`, `predict.loess`.

`lowess`, the ancestor of `loess` (with different defaults!).

Examples

```
cars.lo <- loess(dist ~ speed, cars)
predict(cars.lo, data.frame(speed = seq(5, 30, 1)), se = TRUE)
# to allow extrapolation
cars.lo2 <- loess(dist ~ speed, cars,
```

```
  control = loess.control(surface = "direct"))
predict(cars.lo2, data.frame(speed = seq(5, 30, 1)), se = TRUE)
```

`loess.control` *Set Parameters for Loess*

Description

Set control parameters for `loess` fits.

Usage

```
loess.control(surface = c("interpolate", "direct"),
              statistics = c("approximate", "exact"),
              trace.hat = c("exact", "approximate"),
              cell = 0.2, iterations = 4, ...)
```

Arguments

`surface`	should the fitted surface be computed exactly or via interpolation from a kd tree?
`statistics`	should the statistics be computed exactly or approximately? Exact computation can be very slow.
`trace.hat`	should the trace of the smoother matrix be computed exactly or approximately? It is recommended to use the approximation for more than about 1000 data points.
`cell`	if interpolation is used this controls the accuracy of the approximation via the maximum number of points in a cell in the kd tree. Cells with more than `floor(n*span*cell)` points are subdivided.
`iterations`	the number of iterations used in robust fitting.
`...`	further arguments which are ignored.

Value

A list with components

`surface`

`statistics`

`trace.hat`

`cell`

`iterations`

with meanings as explained under 'Arguments'.

See Also

`loess`

`Logistic` *The Logistic Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the logistic distribution with parameters `location` and `scale`.

Usage

```
dlogis(x, location = 0, scale = 1, log = FALSE)
plogis(q, location = 0, scale = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qlogis(p, location = 0, scale = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rlogis(n, location = 0, scale = 1)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`location, scale`	location and scale parameters.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

If `location` or `scale` are omitted, they assume the default values of `0` and `1` respectively.

The Logistic distribution with `location` $= \mu$ and `scale` $= \sigma$ has distribution function

$$F(x) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(x-\mu)/\sigma}}$$

and density

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma} \frac{e^{(x-\mu)/\sigma}}{(1 + e^{(x-\mu)/\sigma})^2}$$

It is a long-tailed distribution with mean μ and variance $\pi^2/3\sigma^2$.

Value

`dlogis` gives the density, `plogis` gives the distribution function, `qlogis` gives the quantile function, and `rlogis` generates random deviates.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rlogis`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

`qlogis(p)` is the same as the well known '*logit*' function, $logit(p) = \log p/(1-p)$, and `plogis(x)` has consequently been called the 'inverse logit'.

The distribution function is a rescaled hyperbolic tangent, `plogis(x) == (1+ tanh(x/2))/2`, and it is called a *sigmoid function* in contexts such as neural networks.

Source

`[dpq]logis` are calculated directly from the definitions.

`rlogis` uses inversion.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 2, chapter 23. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions.

Examples

```
var(rlogis(4000, 0, scale = 5))  # approximately (+/- 3)
pi^2/3 * 5^2
```

---

logLik *Extract Log-Likelihood*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which have methods for this function include: `"glm"`, `"lm"`, `"nls"` and `"Arima"`. Packages contain methods for other classes, such as `"fitdistr"`, `"negbin"` and `"polr"` in package **MASS**, `"multinom"` in package **nnet** and `"gls"`, `"gnls"` `"lme"` and others in package **nlme**.

Usage

```
logLik(object, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
logLik(object, REML = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object from which a log-likelihood value, or a contribution to a log-likelihood value, can be extracted.
`...`	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.
`REML`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE` the restricted log-likelihood is returned, else, if `FALSE`, the log-likelihood is returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.

Details

logLik is most commonly used for a model fitted by maximum likelihood, and some uses, e.g. by AIC, assume this. So care is needed where other fit criteria have been used, for example REML (the default for "lme").

For a "glm" fit the family does not have to specify how to calculate the log-likelihood, so this is based on using the family's aic() function to compute the AIC. For the gaussian, Gamma and inverse.gaussian families it assumed that the dispersion of the GLM is estimated and has been counted as a parameter in the AIC value, and for all other families it is assumed that the dispersion is known. Note that this procedure does not give the maximized likelihood for "glm" fits from the Gamma and inverse gaussian families, as the estimate of dispersion used is not the MLE.

For "lm" fits it is assumed that the scale has been estimated (by maximum likelihood or REML), and all the constants in the log-likelihood are included. That method is only applicable to single-response fits.

Value

Returns an object of class logLik. This is a number with at least one attribute, "df" (**d**egrees of **f**reedom), giving the number of (estimated) parameters in the model.

There is a simple print method for "logLik" objects.

There may be other attributes depending on the method used: see the appropriate documentation. One that is used by several methods is "nobs", the number of observations used in estimation (after the restrictions if REML = TRUE).

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

References

For logLik.lm:

Harville, D.A. (1974). Bayesian inference for variance components using only error contrasts. *Biometrika*, **61**, 383–385.

See Also

logLik.gls, logLik.lme, in package **nlme**, etc.

AIC

Examples

```
x <- 1:5
lmx <- lm(x ~ 1)
logLik(lmx) # using print.logLik() method
utils::str(logLik(lmx))

## lm method
(fm1 <- lm(rating ~ ., data = attitude))
logLik(fm1)
logLik(fm1, REML = TRUE)

utils::data(Orthodont, package = "nlme")
fm1 <- lm(distance ~ Sex * age, Orthodont)
```

```
logLik(fm1)
logLik(fm1, REML = TRUE)
```

`loglin` *Fitting Log-Linear Models*

Description

`loglin` is used to fit log-linear models to multidimensional contingency tables by Iterative Proportional Fitting.

Usage

```
loglin(table, margin, start = rep(1, length(table)), fit = FALSE,
       eps = 0.1, iter = 20, param = FALSE, print = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`table`	a contingency table to be fit, typically the output from `table`.
`margin`	a list of vectors with the marginal totals to be fit. (Hierarchical) log-linear models can be specified in terms of these marginal totals which give the 'maximal' factor subsets contained in the model. For example, in a three-factor model, `list(c(1, 2), c(1, 3))` specifies a model which contains parameters for the grand mean, each factor, and the 1-2 and 1-3 interactions, respectively (but no 2-3 or 1-2-3 interaction), i.e., a model where factors 2 and 3 are independent conditional on factor 1 (sometimes represented as '[12][13]'). The names of factors (i.e., `names(dimnames(table))`) may be used rather than numeric indices.
`start`	a starting estimate for the fitted table. This optional argument is important for incomplete tables with structural zeros in `table` which should be preserved in the fit. In this case, the corresponding entries in `start` should be zero and the others can be taken as one.
`fit`	a logical indicating whether the fitted values should be returned.
`eps`	maximum deviation allowed between observed and fitted margins.
`iter`	maximum number of iterations.
`param`	a logical indicating whether the parameter values should be returned.
`print`	a logical. If `TRUE`, the number of iterations and the final deviation are printed.

Details

The Iterative Proportional Fitting algorithm as presented in Haberman (1972) is used for fitting the model. At most `iter` iterations are performed, convergence is taken to occur when the maximum deviation between observed and fitted margins is less than `eps`. All internal computations are done in double precision; there is no limit on the number of factors (the dimension of the table) in the model.

Assuming that there are no structural zeros, both the Likelihood Ratio Test and Pearson test statistics have an asymptotic chi-squared distribution with `df` degrees of freedom.

Note that the IPF steps are applied to the factors in the order given in `margin`. Hence if the model is decomposable and the order given in `margin` is a running intersection property ordering then IPF will converge in one iteration.

Package **MASS** contains `loglm`, a front-end to `loglin` which allows the log-linear model to be specified and fitted in a formula-based manner similar to that of other fitting functions such as `lm` or `glm`.

Value

A list with the following components.

`lrt`	the Likelihood Ratio Test statistic.
`pearson`	the Pearson test statistic (X-squared).
`df`	the degrees of freedom for the fitted model. There is no adjustment for structural zeros.
`margin`	list of the margins that were fit. Basically the same as the input `margin`, but with numbers replaced by names where possible.
`fit`	An array like `table` containing the fitted values. Only returned if `fit` is `TRUE`.
`param`	A list containing the estimated parameters of the model. The 'standard' constraints of zero marginal sums (e.g., zero row and column sums for a two factor parameter) are employed. Only returned if `param` is `TRUE`.

Author(s)

Kurt Hornik

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Haberman, S. J. (1972) Log-linear fit for contingency tables—Algorithm AS51. *Applied Statistics*, **21**, 218–225.

Agresti, A. (1990) *Categorical data analysis*. New York: Wiley.

See Also

`table`.

`loglm` in package **MASS** for a user-friendly wrapper.

`glm` for another way to fit log-linear models.

Examples

```
## Model of joint independence of sex from hair and eye color.
fm <- loglin(HairEyeColor, list(c(1, 2), c(1, 3), c(2, 3)))
fm
1 - pchisq(fm$lrt, fm$df)
## Model with no three-factor interactions fits well.
```

Lognormal *The Log Normal Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the log normal distribution whose logarithm has mean equal to `meanlog` and standard deviation equal to `sdlog`.

Usage

```
dlnorm(x, meanlog = 0, sdlog = 1, log = FALSE)
plnorm(q, meanlog = 0, sdlog = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qlnorm(p, meanlog = 0, sdlog = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rlnorm(n, meanlog = 0, sdlog = 1)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`meanlog, sdlog`	mean and standard deviation of the distribution on the log scale with default values of `0` and `1` respectively.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The log normal distribution has density

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma x} e^{-(\log(x)-\mu)^2/2\sigma^2}$$

where μ and σ are the mean and standard deviation of the logarithm. The mean is $E(X) = exp(\mu + 1/2\sigma^2)$, the median is $med(X) = exp(\mu)$, and the variance $Var(X) = exp(2\mu+\sigma^2)(exp(\sigma^2)-1)$ and hence the coefficient of variation is $\sqrt{exp(\sigma^2) - 1}$ which is approximately σ when that is small (e.g., $\sigma < 1/2$).

Value

`dlnorm` gives the density, `plnorm` gives the distribution function, `qlnorm` gives the quantile function, and `rlnorm` generates random deviates.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rlnorm`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

The cumulative hazard $H(t) = -\log(1-F(t))$ is `-plnorm(t, r, lower = FALSE, log = TRUE)`.

Source

dlnorm is calculated from the definition (in 'Details'). [pqr]lnorm are based on the relationship to the normal.

Consequently, they model a single point mass at exp(meanlog) for the boundary case sdlog = 0.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 1, chapter 14. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including dnorm for the normal distribution.

Examples

```
dlnorm(1) == dnorm(0)
```

---

lowess *Scatter Plot Smoothing*

Description

This function performs the computations for the *LOWESS* smoother which uses locally-weighted polynomial regression (see the references).

Usage

```
lowess(x, y = NULL, f = 2/3, iter = 3, delta = 0.01 * diff(range(x)))
```

Arguments

x, y	vectors giving the coordinates of the points in the scatter plot. Alternatively a single plotting structure can be specified – see xy.coords.
f	the smoother span. This gives the proportion of points in the plot which influence the smooth at each value. Larger values give more smoothness.
iter	the number of 'robustifying' iterations which should be performed. Using smaller values of iter will make lowess run faster.
delta	See 'Details'. Defaults to 1/100th of the range of x.

Details

lowess is defined by a complex algorithm, the Ratfor original of which (by W. S. Cleveland) can be found in the sources as file 'src/appl/lowess.doc'. Normally a local linear polynomial fit is used, but under some circumstances (see the file) a local constant fit can be used. 'Local' is defined by the distance to the floor(f*n)th nearest neighbour, and tricubic weighting is used for x which fall within the neighbourhood.

The initial fit is done using weighted least squares. If iter > 0, further weighted fits are done using the product of the weights from the proximity of the x values and case weights derived from the residuals at the previous iteration. Specifically, the case weight is Tukey's biweight, with cutoff 6 times the MAD of the residuals. (The current implementation differs from the original in stopping iteration if the MAD is effectively zero since the algorithm is highly unstable in that case.)

delta is used to speed up computation: instead of computing the local polynomial fit at each data point it is not computed for points within delta of the last computed point, and linear interpolation is used to fill in the fitted values for the skipped points.

Value

lowess returns a list containing components x and y which give the coordinates of the smooth. The smooth can be added to a plot of the original points with the function lines: see the examples.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Cleveland, W. S. (1979) Robust locally weighted regression and smoothing scatterplots. *J. American Statistical Association* **74**, 829–836.

Cleveland, W. S. (1981) LOWESS: A program for smoothing scatterplots by robust locally weighted regression. *The American Statistician* **35**, 54.

See Also

loess, a newer formula based version of lowess (with different defaults!).

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(cars, main = "lowess(cars)")
lines(lowess(cars), col = 2)
lines(lowess(cars, f = .2), col = 3)
legend(5, 120, c(paste("f = ", c("2/3", ".2"))), lty = 1, col = 2:3)
```

---

ls.diag *Compute Diagnostics for* lsfit *Regression Results*

Description

Computes basic statistics, including standard errors, t- and p-values for the regression coefficients.

Usage

```
ls.diag(ls.out)
```

Arguments

ls.out	Typically the result of lsfit()

Value

A list with the following numeric components.

std.dev	The standard deviation of the errors, an estimate of σ.
hat	diagonal entries h_{ii} of the hat matrix H
std.res	standardized residuals
stud.res	studentized residuals
cooks	Cook's distances
dfits	DFITS statistics
correlation	correlation matrix
std.err	standard errors of the regression coefficients
cov.scaled	Scaled covariance matrix of the coefficients
cov.unscaled	Unscaled covariance matrix of the coefficients

References

Belsley, D. A., Kuh, E. and Welsch, R. E. (1980) *Regression Diagnostics.* New York: Wiley.

See Also

hat for the hat matrix diagonals, ls.print, lm.influence, summary.lm, anova.

Examples

```
##-- Using the same data as the lm(.) example:
lsD9 <- lsfit(x = as.numeric(gl(2, 10, 20)), y = weight)
dlsD9 <- ls.diag(lsD9)
utils::str(dlsD9, give.attr = FALSE)
abs(1 - sum(dlsD9$hat) / 2) < 10*.Machine$double.eps # sum(h.ii) = p
plot(dlsD9$hat, dlsD9$stud.res, xlim = c(0, 0.11))
abline(h = 0, lty = 2, col = "lightgray")
```

ls.print *Print* lsfit *Regression Results*

Description

Computes basic statistics, including standard errors, t- and p-values for the regression coefficients and prints them if `print.it` is `TRUE`.

Usage

```
ls.print(ls.out, digits = 4, print.it = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`ls.out`	Typically the result of `lsfit()`
`digits`	The number of significant digits used for printing
`print.it`	a logical indicating whether the result should also be printed

Value

A list with the components

`summary`	The ANOVA table of the regression
`coef.table`	matrix with regression coefficients, standard errors, t- and p-values

Note

Usually you would use `summary(lm(...))` and `anova(lm(...))` to obtain similar output.

See Also

`ls.diag`, `lsfit`, also for examples; `lm`, `lm.influence` which usually are preferable.

lsfit *Find the Least Squares Fit*

Description

The least squares estimate of β in the model

$$\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$$

is found.

Usage

```
lsfit(x, y, wt = NULL, intercept = TRUE, tolerance = 1e-07,
      yname = NULL)
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix whose rows correspond to cases and whose columns correspond to variables.
`y`	the responses, possibly a matrix if you want to fit multiple left hand sides.
`wt`	an optional vector of weights for performing weighted least squares.
`intercept`	whether or not an intercept term should be used.
`tolerance`	the tolerance to be used in the matrix decomposition.
`yname`	names to be used for the response variables.

Details

If weights are specified then a weighted least squares is performed with the weight given to the *j*th case specified by the *j*th entry in `wt`.

If any observation has a missing value in any field, that observation is removed before the analysis is carried out. This can be quite inefficient if there is a lot of missing data.

The implementation is via a modification of the LINPACK subroutines which allow for multiple left-hand sides.

Value

A list with the following named components:

`coef`	the least squares estimates of the coefficients in the model (β as stated above).
`residuals`	residuals from the fit.
`intercept`	indicates whether an intercept was fitted.
`qr`	the QR decomposition of the design matrix.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`lm` which usually is preferable; `ls.print`, `ls.diag`.

Examples

```
##-- Using the same data as the lm(.) example:
lsD9 <- lsfit(x = unclass(gl(2, 10)), y = weight)
ls.print(lsD9)
```

mad *Median Absolute Deviation*

Description

Compute the median absolute deviation, i.e., the (lo-/hi-) median of the absolute deviations from the median, and (by default) adjust by a factor for asymptotically normal consistency.

Usage

```
mad(x, center = median(x), constant = 1.4826, na.rm = FALSE,
    low = FALSE, high = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector.
center	Optionally, the centre: defaults to the median.
constant	scale factor.
na.rm	if TRUE then NA values are stripped from x before computation takes place.
low	if TRUE, compute the 'lo-median', i.e., for even sample size, do not average the two middle values, but take the smaller one.
high	if TRUE, compute the 'hi-median', i.e., take the larger of the two middle values for even sample size.

Details

The actual value calculated is `constant * cMedian(abs(x - center))` with the default value of `center` being `median(x)`, and `cMedian` being the usual, the 'low' or 'high' median, see the arguments description for `low` and `high` above.

The default `constant = 1.4826` (approximately $1/\Phi^{-1}(\frac{3}{4}) =$ `1/qnorm(3/4)`) ensures consistency, i.e.,

$$E[mad(X_1, \ldots, X_n)] = \sigma$$

for X_i distributed as $N(\mu, \sigma^2)$ and large n.

If `na.rm` is TRUE then NA values are stripped from `x` before computation takes place. If this is not done then an NA value in `x` will cause `mad` to return NA.

See Also

IQR which is simpler but less robust, median, var.

Examples

```
mad(c(1:9))
print(mad(c(1:9),     constant = 1)) ==
      mad(c(1:8, 100), constant = 1)       # = 2 ; TRUE
x <- c(1,2,3,5,7,8)
sort(abs(x - median(x)))
c(mad(x, constant = 1),
  mad(x, constant = 1, low = TRUE),
  mad(x, constant = 1, high = TRUE))
```

`mahalanobis` *Mahalanobis Distance*

Description

Returns the squared Mahalanobis distance of all rows in `x` and the vector μ = `center` with respect to Σ = `cov`. This is (for vector `x`) defined as

$$D^2 = (x - \mu)' \Sigma^{-1} (x - \mu)$$

Usage

```
mahalanobis(x, center, cov, inverted = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	vector or matrix of data with, say, p columns.
`center`	mean vector of the distribution or second data vector of length p.
`cov`	covariance matrix ($p \times p$) of the distribution.
`inverted`	logical. If `TRUE`, `cov` is supposed to contain the *inverse* of the covariance matrix.
`...`	passed to `solve` for computing the inverse of the covariance matrix (if `inverted` is false).

See Also

`cov`, `var`

Examples

```
require(graphics)

ma <- cbind(1:6, 1:3)
(S <-  var(ma))
mahalanobis(c(0, 0), 1:2, S)

x <- matrix(rnorm(100*3), ncol = 3)
stopifnot(mahalanobis(x, 0, diag(ncol(x))) == rowSums(x*x))
        ##- Here, D^2 = usual squared Euclidean distances

Sx <- cov(x)
D2 <- mahalanobis(x, colMeans(x), Sx)
plot(density(D2, bw = 0.5),
     main="Squared Mahalanobis distances, n=100, p=3") ; rug(D2)
qqplot(qchisq(ppoints(100), df = 3), D2,
       main = expression("Q-Q plot of Mahalanobis" * ~D^2 *
                         " vs. quantiles of" * ~ chi[3]^2))
abline(0, 1, col = gray)
```

make.link *Create a Link for GLM Families*

Description

This function is used with the family functions in glm(). Given the name of a link, it returns a link function, an inverse link function, the derivative $d\mu/d\eta$ and a function for domain checking.

Usage

```
make.link(link)
```

Arguments

link	character; one of "logit", "probit", "cauchit", "cloglog", "identity", "log", "sqrt", "1/mu^2", "inverse".

Value

A object of class "link-glm", a list with components

linkfun	Link function function(mu)
linkinv	Inverse link function function(eta)
mu.eta	Derivative function(eta) $d\mu/d\eta$
valideta	function(eta){ TRUE if eta is in the domain of linkinv }.
name	a name to be used for the link

.

See Also

power, glm, family.

Examples

```
utils::str(make.link("logit"))
```

makepredictcall *Utility Function for Safe Prediction*

Description

A utility to help model.frame.default create the right matrices when predicting from models with terms like (univariate) poly or ns.

Usage

```
makepredictcall(var, call)
```

Arguments

var	A variable.
call	The term in the formula, as a call.

Details

This is a generic function with methods for poly, bs and ns: the default method handles scale. If model.frame.default encounters such a term when creating a model frame, it modifies the predvars attribute of the terms supplied by replacing the term with one which will work for predicting new data. For example makepredictcall.ns adds arguments for the knots and intercept.

To make use of this, have your model-fitting function return the terms attribute of the model frame, or copy the predvars attribute of the terms attribute of the model frame to your terms object.

To extend this, make sure the term creates variables with a class, and write a suitable method for that class.

Value

A replacement for call for the predvars attribute of the terms.

See Also

model.frame, poly, scale; bs and ns in package **splines**.

cars for an example of prediction from a polynomial fit.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## using poly: this did not work in R < 1.5.0
fm <- lm(weight ~ poly(height, 2), data = women)
plot(women, xlab = "Height (in)", ylab = "Weight (lb)")
ht <- seq(57, 73, len = 200)
lines(ht, predict(fm, data.frame(height = ht)))

## see also example(cars)

## see bs and ns for spline examples.
```

---

manova *Multivariate Analysis of Variance*

Description

A class for the multivariate analysis of variance.

Usage

```
manova(...)
```

Arguments

...	Arguments to be passed to aov.

Details

Class "manova" differs from class "aov" in selecting a different summary method. Function manova calls aov and then add class "manova" to the result object for each stratum.

Value

See aov and the comments in 'Details' here.

References

Krzanowski, W. J. (1988) *Principles of Multivariate Analysis. A User's Perspective.* Oxford.

Hand, D. J. and Taylor, C. C. (1987) *Multivariate Analysis of Variance and Repeated Measures.* Chapman and Hall.

See Also

aov, summary.manova, the latter containing examples.

Examples

```
## Set orthogonal contrasts.
op <- options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))

## Fake a 2nd response variable
npk2 <- within(npk, foo <- rnorm(24))
( npk2.aov <- manova(cbind(yield, foo) ~ block + N*P*K, npk2) )
summary(npk2.aov)

( npk2.aovE <- manova(cbind(yield, foo) ~  N*P*K + Error(block), npk2) )
summary(npk2.aovE)
```

---

mantelhaen.test *Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel Chi-Squared Test for Count Data*

Description

Performs a Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel chi-squared test of the null that two nominal variables are conditionally independent in each stratum, assuming that there is no three-way interaction.

Usage

```
mantelhaen.test(x, y = NULL, z = NULL,
                alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
                correct = TRUE, exact = FALSE, conf.level = 0.95)
```

Arguments

x	either a 3-dimensional contingency table in array form where each dimension is at least 2 and the last dimension corresponds to the strata, or a factor object with at least 2 levels.
y	a factor object with at least 2 levels; ignored if x is an array.
z	a factor object with at least 2 levels identifying to which stratum the corresponding elements in x and y belong; ignored if x is an array.
alternative	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of "two.sided", "greater" or "less". You can specify just the initial letter. Only used in the 2 by 2 by K case.
correct	a logical indicating whether to apply continuity correction when computing the test statistic. Only used in the 2 by 2 by K case.
exact	a logical indicating whether the Mantel-Haenszel test or the exact conditional test (given the strata margins) should be computed. Only used in the 2 by 2 by K case.
conf.level	confidence level for the returned confidence interval. Only used in the 2 by 2 by K case.

Details

If x is an array, each dimension must be at least 2, and the entries should be nonnegative integers. NA's are not allowed. Otherwise, x, y and z must have the same length. Triples containing NA's are removed. All variables must take at least two different values.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	Only present if no exact test is performed. In the classical case of a 2 by 2 by K table (i.e., of dichotomous underlying variables), the Mantel-Haenszel chi-squared statistic; otherwise, the generalized Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel statistic.
parameter	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic (1 in the classical case). Only present if no exact test is performed.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
conf.int	a confidence interval for the common odds ratio. Only present in the 2 by 2 by K case.
estimate	an estimate of the common odds ratio. If an exact test is performed, the conditional Maximum Likelihood Estimate is given; otherwise, the Mantel-Haenszel estimate. Only present in the 2 by 2 by K case.
null.value	the common odds ratio under the null of independence, 1. Only present in the 2 by 2 by K case.
alternative	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis. Only present in the 2 by 2 by K case.
method	a character string indicating the method employed, and whether or not continuity correction was used.
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.

Note

The asymptotic distribution is only valid if there is no three-way interaction. In the classical 2 by 2 by K case, this is equivalent to the conditional odds ratios in each stratum being identical. Currently, no inference on homogeneity of the odds ratios is performed.

See also the example below.

References

Alan Agresti (1990). *Categorical data analysis*. New York: Wiley. Pages 230–235.

Alan Agresti (2002). *Categorical data analysis* (second edition). New York: Wiley.

Examples

```
## Agresti (1990), pages 231--237, Penicillin and Rabbits
## Investigation of the effectiveness of immediately injected or 1.5
##  hours delayed penicillin in protecting rabbits against a lethal
##  injection with beta-hemolytic streptococci.
Rabbits <-
array(c(0, 0, 6, 5,
        3, 0, 3, 6,
        6, 2, 0, 4,
        5, 6, 1, 0,
        2, 5, 0, 0),
      dim = c(2, 2, 5),
      dimnames = list(
          Delay = c("None", "1.5h"),
          Response = c("Cured", "Died"),
          Penicillin.Level = c("1/8", "1/4", "1/2", "1", "4")))
Rabbits
## Classical Mantel-Haenszel test
mantelhaen.test(Rabbits)
## => p = 0.047, some evidence for higher cure rate of immediate
##               injection
## Exact conditional test
mantelhaen.test(Rabbits, exact = TRUE)
## => p - 0.040
## Exact conditional test for one-sided alternative of a higher
## cure rate for immediate injection
mantelhaen.test(Rabbits, exact = TRUE, alternative = "greater")
## => p = 0.020

## UC Berkeley Student Admissions
mantelhaen.test(UCBAdmissions)
## No evidence for association between admission and gender
## when adjusted for department.  However,
apply(UCBAdmissions, 3, function(x) (x[1,1]*x[2,2])/(x[1,2]*x[2,1]))
## This suggests that the assumption of homogeneous (conditional)
## odds ratios may be violated.  The traditional approach would be
## using the Woolf test for interaction:
woolf <- function(x) {
  x <- x + 1 / 2
  k <- dim(x)[3]
  or <- apply(x, 3, function(x) (x[1,1]*x[2,2])/(x[1,2]*x[2,1]))
  w <-  apply(x, 3, function(x) 1 / sum(1 / x))
  1 - pchisq(sum(w * (log(or) - weighted.mean(log(or), w)) ^ 2), k - 1)
```

```
}
woolf(UCBAdmissions)
## => p = 0.003, indicating that there is significant heterogeneity.
## (And hence the Mantel-Haenszel test cannot be used.)

## Agresti (2002), p. 287f and p. 297.
## Job Satisfaction example.
Satisfaction <-
    as.table(array(c(1, 2, 0, 0, 3, 3, 1, 2,
                     11, 17, 8, 4, 2, 3, 5, 2,
                     1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 3, 0, 1,
                     2, 5, 7, 9, 1, 1, 3, 6),
                   dim = c(4, 4, 2),
                   dimnames =
                   list(Income =
                        c("<5000", "5000-15000",
                          "15000-25000", ">25000"),
                        "Job Satisfaction" =
                        c("V_D", "L_S", "M_S", "V_S"),
                        Gender = c("Female", "Male"))))
## (Satisfaction categories abbreviated for convenience.)
ftable(. ~ Gender + Income, Satisfaction)
## Table 7.8 in Agresti (2002), p. 288.
mantelhaen.test(Satisfaction)
## See Table 7.12 in Agresti (2002), p. 297.
```

`mauchly.test` *Mauchly's Test of Sphericity*

Description

Tests whether a Wishart-distributed covariance matrix (or transformation thereof) is proportional to a given matrix.

Usage

```
mauchly.test(object, ...)
## S3 method for class mlm
mauchly.test(object, ...)
## S3 method for class SSD
mauchly.test(object, Sigma = diag(nrow = p),
   T = Thin.row(proj(M) - proj(X)), M = diag(nrow = p), X = ~0,
   idata = data.frame(index = seq_len(p)), ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	object of class `SSD` or `mlm`.
`Sigma`	matrix to be proportional to.
`T`	transformation matrix. By default computed from `M` and `X`.
`M`	formula or matrix describing the outer projection (see below).
`X`	formula or matrix describing the inner projection (see below).
`idata`	data frame describing intra-block design.
`...`	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

Mauchly's test test for whether a covariance matrix can be assumed to be proportional to a given matrix.

This is a generic function with methods for classes "mlm" and "SSD".

The basic method is for objects of class SSD the method for mlm objects just extracts the SSD matrix and invokes the corresponding method with the same options and arguments.

The T argument is used to transform the observations prior to testing. This typically involves transformation to intra-block differences, but more complicated within-block designs can be encountered, making more elaborate transformations necessary. A matrix T can be given directly or specified as the difference between two projections onto the spaces spanned by M and X, which in turn can be given as matrices or as model formulas with respect to idata (the tests will be invariant to parametrization of the quotient space M/X).

The common use of this test is in repeated measurements designs, with X = ~1. This is almost, but not quite the same as testing for compound symmetry in the untransformed covariance matrix.

Notice that the defaults involve p, which is calculated internally as the dimension of the SSD matrix, and a couple of hidden functions in the **stats** namespace, namely proj which calculates projection matrices from design matrices or model formulas and Thin.row which removes linearly dependent rows from a matrix until it has full row rank.

Value

An object of class "htest"

Note

The p-value differs slightly from that of SAS because a second order term is included in the asymptotic approximation in .

References

T. W. Anderson (1958). *An Introduction to Multivariate Statistical Analysis.* Wiley.

See Also

SSD, anova.mlm, rWishart

Examples

```
utils::example(SSD) # Brings in the mlmfit and reacttime objects

### traditional test of intrasubj. contrasts
mauchly.test(mlmfit, X = ~1)

### tests using intra-subject 3x2 design
idata <- data.frame(deg = gl(3, 1, 6, labels = c(0,4,8)),
                    noise = gl(2, 3, 6, labels = c("A","P")))
mauchly.test(mlmfit, X = ~ deg + noise, idata = idata)
mauchly.test(mlmfit, M = ~ deg + noise, X = ~ noise, idata = idata)
```

`mcnemar.test` *McNemar's Chi-squared Test for Count Data*

Description

Performs McNemar's chi-squared test for symmetry of rows and columns in a two-dimensional contingency table.

Usage

```
mcnemar.test(x, y = NULL, correct = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	either a two-dimensional contingency table in matrix form, or a factor object.
`y`	a factor object; ignored if `x` is a matrix.
`correct`	a logical indicating whether to apply continuity correction when computing the test statistic.

Details

The null is that the probabilities of being classified into cells `[i,j]` and `[j,i]` are the same.

If `x` is a matrix, it is taken as a two-dimensional contingency table, and hence its entries should be nonnegative integers. Otherwise, both `x` and `y` must be vectors or factors of the same length. Incomplete cases are removed, vectors are coerced into factors, and the contingency table is computed from these.

Continuity correction is only used in the 2-by-2 case if `correct` is `TRUE`.

Value

A list with class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	the value of McNemar's statistic.
`parameter`	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic.
`p.value`	the p-value of the test.
`method`	a character string indicating the type of test performed, and whether continuity correction was used.
`data.name`	a character string giving the name(s) of the data.

References

Alan Agresti (1990). *Categorical data analysis*. New York: Wiley. Pages 350–354.

Examples

```
## Agresti (1990), p. 350.
## Presidential Approval Ratings.
##  Approval of the Presidents performance in office in two surveys,
##  one month apart, for a random sample of 1600 voting-age Americans.
Performance <-
matrix(c(794, 86, 150, 570),
       nrow = 2,
       dimnames = list("1st Survey" = c("Approve", "Disapprove"),
                       "2nd Survey" = c("Approve", "Disapprove")))
Performance
mcnemar.test(Performance)
## => significant change (in fact, drop) in approval ratings
```

`median` *Median Value*

Description

Compute the sample median.

Usage

```
median(x, na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object for which a method has been defined, or a numeric vector containing the values whose median is to be computed.
`na.rm`	a logical value indicating whether `NA` values should be stripped before the computation proceeds.

Details

This is a generic function for which methods can be written. However, the default method makes use of `is.na`, `sort` and `mean` from package **base** all of which are generic, and so the default method will work for most classes (e.g., "`Date`") for which a median is a reasonable concept.

Value

The default method returns a length-one object of the same type as `x`, except when `x` is integer of even length, when the result will be double.

If there are no values or if `na.rm = FALSE` and there are `NA` values the result is `NA` of the same type as `x` (or more generally the result of `x[FALSE][NA]`).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`quantile` for general quantiles.

Examples

```
median(1:4)               # = 2.5 [even number]
median(c(1:3, 100, 1000))  # = 3 [odd, robust]
```

`medpolish` *Median Polish of a Matrix*

Description

Fits an additive model using Tukey's *median polish* procedure.

Usage

```
medpolish(x, eps = 0.01, maxiter = 10, trace.iter = TRUE,
          na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric matrix.
`eps`	real number greater than 0. A tolerance for convergence: see 'Details'.
`maxiter`	the maximum number of iterations
`trace.iter`	logical. Should progress in convergence be reported?
`na.rm`	logical. Should missing values be removed?

Details

The model fitted is additive (constant + rows + columns). The algorithm works by alternately removing the row and column medians, and continues until the proportional reduction in the sum of absolute residuals is less than `eps` or until there have been `maxiter` iterations. The sum of absolute residuals is printed at each iteration of the fitting process, if `trace.iter` is `TRUE`. If `na.rm` is `FALSE` the presence of any `NA` value in `x` will cause an error, otherwise `NA` values are ignored.

`medpolish` returns an object of class `medpolish` (see below). There are printing and plotting methods for this class, which are invoked via by the generics `print` and `plot`.

Value

An object of class `medpolish` with the following named components:

`overall`	the fitted constant term.
`row`	the fitted row effects.
`col`	the fitted column effects.
`residuals`	the residuals.
`name`	the name of the dataset.

References

Tukey, J. W. (1977). *Exploratory Data Analysis*, Reading Massachusetts: Addison-Wesley.

See Also

median; aov for a *mean* instead of *median* decomposition.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Deaths from sport parachuting;  from ABC of EDA, p.224:
deaths <-
    rbind(c(14,15,14),
          c( 7, 4, 7),
          c( 8, 2,10),
          c(15, 9,10),
          c( 0, 2, 0))
dimnames(deaths) <- list(c("1-24", "25-74", "75-199", "200++", "NA"),
                         paste(1973:1975))
deaths
(med.d <- medpolish(deaths))
plot(med.d)
## Check decomposition:
all(deaths ==
    med.d$overall + outer(med.d$row,med.d$col, "+") + med.d$residuals)
```

---

model.extract *Extract Components from a Model Frame*

Description

Returns the response, offset, subset, weights or other special components of a model frame passed as optional arguments to model.frame.

Usage

```
model.extract(frame, component)
model.offset(x)
model.response(data, type = "any")
model.weights(x)
```

Arguments

frame, x, data	A model frame.
component	literal character string or name. The name of a component to extract, such as "weights", "subset".
type	One of "any", "numeric", "double". Using either of latter two coerces the result to have storage mode "double".

Details

`model.extract` is provided for compatibility with S, which does not have the more specific functions. It is also useful to extract e.g. the `etastart` and `mustart` components of a `glm` fit.

`model.offset` and `model.response` are equivalent to `model.extract(, "offset")` and `model.extract(, "response")` respectively. `model.offset` sums any terms specified by `offset` terms in the formula or by `offset` arguments in the call producing the model frame: it does check that the offset is numeric.

`model.weights` is slightly different from `model.frame(, "weights")` in not naming the vector it returns.

Value

The specified component of the model frame, usually a vector.

See Also

`model.frame`, `offset`

Examples

```
a <- model.frame(cbind(ncases,ncontrols) ~ agegp + tobgp + alcgp, data = esoph)
model.extract(a, "response")
stopifnot(model.extract(a, "response") == model.response(a))

a <- model.frame(ncases/(ncases+ncontrols) ~ agegp + tobgp + alcgp,
                 data = esoph, weights = ncases+ncontrols)
model.response(a)
model.extract(a, "weights")

a <- model.frame(cbind(ncases,ncontrols) ~ agegp,
                 something = tobgp, data = esoph)
names(a)
stopifnot(model.extract(a, "something") == esoph$tobgp)
```

---

model.frame *Extracting the Model Frame from a Formula or Fit*

Description

`model.frame` (a generic function) and its methods return a `data.frame` with the variables needed to use `formula` and any `...` arguments.

Usage

```
model.frame(formula, ...)

## Default S3 method:
model.frame(formula, data = NULL,
            subset = NULL, na.action = na.fail,
            drop.unused.levels = FALSE, xlev = NULL, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class aovlist
model.frame(formula, data = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class glm
model.frame(formula, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
model.frame(formula, ...)

get_all_vars(formula, data, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a model formula or terms object or an object.
data	a data.frame, list or environment (or object coercible by as.data.frame to a data.frame), containing the variables in formula. Neither a matrix nor an array will be accepted.
subset	a specification of the rows to be used: defaults to all rows. This can be any valid indexing vector (see [.data.frame) for the rows of data or if that is not supplied, a data frame made up of the variables used in formula.
na.action	how NAs are treated. The default is first, any na.action attribute of data, second a na.action setting of options, and third na.fail if that is unset. The 'factory-fresh' default is na.omit. Another possible value is NULL.
drop.unused.levels	should factors have unused levels dropped? Defaults to FALSE.
xlev	a named list of character vectors giving the full set of levels to be assumed for each factor.
...	further arguments such as data, na.action, subset. Any additional arguments such as offset and weights which reach the default method are used to create further columns in the model frame, with parenthesised names such as "(offset)".

Details

Exactly what happens depends on the class and attributes of the object formula. If this is an object of fitted-model class such as "lm", the method will either return the saved model frame used when fitting the model (if any, often selected by argument model = TRUE) or pass the call used when fitting on to the default method. The default method itself can cope with rather standard model objects such as those of class "lqs" from package **MASS** if no other arguments are supplied.

The rest of this section applies only to the default method.

If either formula or data is already a model frame (a data frame with a "terms" attribute) and the other is missing, the model frame is returned. Unless formula is a terms object, as.formula and then terms is called on it. (If you wish to use the keep.order argument of terms.formula, pass a terms object rather than a formula.)

Row names for the model frame are taken from the data argument if present, then from the names of the response in the formula (or rownames if it is a matrix), if there is one.

All the variables in formula, subset and in ... are looked for first in data and then in the environment of formula (see the help for formula() for further details) and collected into a data frame. Then the subset expression is evaluated, and it is used as a row index to the data frame. Then the na.action function is applied to the data frame (and may well add attributes). The

levels of any factors in the data frame are adjusted according to the `drop.unused.levels` and `xlev` arguments: if `xlev` specifies a factor and a character variable is found, it is converted to a factor (as from 2.10.0).

Unless `na.action = NULL`, time-series attributes will be removed from the variables found (since they will be wrong if NAs are removed).

Note that *all* the variables in the formula are included in the data frame, even those preceded by `-`.

Only variables whose type is raw, logical, integer, real, complex or character can be included in a model frame: this includes classed variables such as factors (whose underlying type is integer), but excludes lists.

`get_all_vars` returns a `data.frame` containing the variables used in `formula` plus those specified `....` Unlike `model.frame.default`, it returns the input variables and not those resulting from function calls in `formula`.

Value

A `data.frame` containing the variables used in `formula` plus those specified in `....` It will have additional attributes, including `"terms"` for an object of class `"terms"` derived from `formula`, and possibly `"na.action"` giving information on the handling of NAs (which will not be present if no special handling was done, e.g. by `na.pass`).

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`model.matrix` for the 'design matrix', `formula` for formulas and `expand.model.frame` for model.frame manipulation.

Examples

```
data.class(model.frame(dist ~ speed, data = cars))
```

`model.matrix` *Construct Design Matrices*

Description

`model.matrix` creates a design (or model) matrix.

Usage

```
model.matrix(object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
model.matrix(object, data = environment(object),
             contrasts.arg = NULL, xlev = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of an appropriate class. For the default method, a model formula or a terms object.
data	a data frame created with model.frame. If another sort of object, model.frame is called first.
contrasts.arg	A list, whose entries are values (numeric matrices or character strings naming functions) to be used as replacement values for the contrasts replacement function and whose names are the names of columns of data containing factors.
xlev	to be used as argument of model.frame if data is such that model.frame is called.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

model.matrix creates a design matrix from the description given in terms(object), using the data in data which must supply variables with the same names as would be created by a call to model.frame(object) or, more precisely, by evaluating attr(terms(object), "variables"). If data is a data frame, there may be other columns and the order of columns is not important. Any character variables are coerced to factors. After coercion, all the variables used on the right-hand side of the formula must be logical, integer, numeric or factor.

If contrasts.arg is specified for a factor it overrides the default factor coding for that variable and any "contrasts" attribute set by C or contrasts.

In an interaction term, the variable whose levels vary fastest is the first one to appear in the formula (and not in the term), so in ~ a + b + b:a the interaction will have a varying fastest.

By convention, if the response variable also appears on the right-hand side of the formula it is dropped (with a warning), although interactions involving the term are retained.

Value

The design matrix for a regression-like model with the specified formula and data.

There is an attribute "assign", an integer vector with an entry for each column in the matrix giving the term in the formula which gave rise to the column. Value 0 corresponds to the intercept (if any), and positive values to terms in the order given by the term.labels attribute of the terms structure corresponding to object.

If there are any factors in terms in the model, there is an attribute "contrasts", a named list with an entry for each factor. This specifies the contrasts that would be used in terms in which the factor is coded by contrasts (in some terms dummy coding may be used), either as a character vector naming a function or as a numeric matrix.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

model.frame, model.extract, terms

Examples

```
ff <- log(Volume) ~ log(Height) + log(Girth)
utils::str(m <- model.frame(ff, trees))
mat <- model.matrix(ff, m)

dd <- data.frame(a = gl(3,4), b = gl(4,1,12)) # balanced 2-way
options("contrasts")
model.matrix(~ a + b, dd)
model.matrix(~ a + b, dd, contrasts = list(a = "contr.sum"))
model.matrix(~ a + b, dd, contrasts = list(a = "contr.sum", b = "contr.poly"))
m.orth <- model.matrix(~a+b, dd, contrasts = list(a = "contr.helmert"))
crossprod(m.orth) # m.orth is  ALMOST  orthogonal
```

---

model.tables *Compute Tables of Results from an Aov Model Fit*

Description

Computes summary tables for model fits, especially complex aov fits.

Usage

```
model.tables(x, ...)

## S3 method for class aov
model.tables(x, type = "effects", se = FALSE, cterms, ...)

## S3 method for class aovlist
model.tables(x, type = "effects", se = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a model object, usually produced by aov
type	type of table: currently only "effects" and "means" are implemented.
se	should standard errors be computed?
cterms	A character vector giving the names of the terms for which tables should be computed. The default is all tables.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

For type = "effects" give tables of the coefficients for each term, optionally with standard errors.

For type = "means" give tables of the mean response for each combinations of levels of the factors in a term.

The "aov" method cannot be applied to components of a "aovlist" fit.

Value

An object of class "tables.aov", as list which may contain components

tables	A list of tables for each requested term.
n	The replication information for each term.
se	Standard error information.

Warning

The implementation is incomplete, and only the simpler cases have been tested thoroughly.

Weighted aov fits are not supported.

See Also

aov, proj, replications, TukeyHSD, se.contrast

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.treatment"))
npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk)
model.tables(npk.aov, "means", se = TRUE)

## as a test, not particularly sensible statistically
npk.aovE <- aov(yield ~  N*P*K + Error(block), npk)
model.tables(npk.aovE, se = TRUE)
model.tables(npk.aovE, "means")
```

---

monthplot *Plot a Seasonal or other Subseries from a Time Series*

Description

These functions plot seasonal (or other) subseries of a time series. For each season (or other category), a time series is plotted.

Usage

```
monthplot(x, ...)

## S3 method for class stl
monthplot(x, labels = NULL, ylab = choice, choice = "seasonal",
          ...)

## S3 method for class StructTS
monthplot(x, labels = NULL, ylab = choice, choice = "sea", ...)

## S3 method for class ts
monthplot(x, labels = NULL, times = time(x), phase = cycle(x),
             ylab = deparse(substitute(x)), ...)

## Default S3 method:
```

```
monthplot(x, labels = 1L:12L,
          ylab = deparse(substitute(x)),
          times = seq_along(x),
          phase = (times - 1L)%%length(labels) + 1L, base = mean,
          axes = TRUE, type = c("l", "h"), box = TRUE,
          add = FALSE,
          col = par("col"), lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"),
          col.base = col, lty.base = lty, lwd.base = lwd, ...)
```

Arguments

x	Time series or related object.
labels	Labels to use for each 'season'.
ylab	y label.
times	Time of each observation.
phase	Indicator for each 'season'.
base	Function to use for reference line for subseries.
choice	Which series of an stl or StructTS object?
...	Arguments to be passed to the default method or graphical parameters.
axes	Should axes be drawn (ignored if add = TRUE)?
type	Type of plot. The default is to join the points with lines, and "h" is for histogram-like vertical lines.
box	Should a box be drawn (ignored if add = TRUE?
add	Should thus just add on an existing plot.
col, lty, lwd	Graphics parameters for the series.
col.base, lty.base, lwd.base	Graphics parameters for the segments used for the reference lines.

Details

These functions extract subseries from a time series and plot them all in one frame. The ts, stl, and StructTS methods use the internally recorded frequency and start and finish times to set the scale and the seasons. The default method assumes observations come in groups of 12 (though this can be changed).

If the labels are not given but the phase is given, then the labels default to the unique values of the phase. If both are given, then the phase values are assumed to be indices into the labels array, i.e., they should be in the range from 1 to length(labels).

Value

These functions are executed for their side effect of drawing a seasonal subseries plot on the current graphical window.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

ts, stl, StructTS

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## The CO2 data
fit <- stl(log(co2), s.window = 20, t.window = 20)
plot(fit)
op <- par(mfrow = c(2,2))
monthplot(co2, ylab = "data", cex.axis = 0.8)
monthplot(fit, choice = "seasonal", cex.axis = 0.8)
monthplot(fit, choice = "trend", cex.axis = 0.8)
monthplot(fit, choice = "remainder", type = "h", cex.axis = 0.8)
par(op)

## The CO2 data, grouped quarterly
quarter <- (cycle(co2) - 1) %/% 3
monthplot(co2, phase = quarter)

## see also JohnsonJohnson
```

---

mood.test *Mood Two-Sample Test of Scale*

Description

Performs Mood's two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters.

Usage

```
mood.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
mood.test(x, y,
          alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"), ...)

## S3 method for class formula
mood.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric vectors of data values.
alternative	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of "two.sided" (default), "greater" or "less" all of which can be abbreviated.
formula	a formula of the form lhs ~ rhs where lhs is a numeric variable giving the data values and rhs a factor with two levels giving the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).

subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

The underlying model is that the two samples are drawn from $f(x - l)$ and $f((x - l)/s)/s$, respectively, where l is a common location parameter and s is a scale parameter.

The null hypothesis is $s = 1$.

There are more useful tests for this problem.

In the case of ties, the formulation of Mielke (1967) is employed.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the test statistic.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
alternative	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
method	the character string "Mood two-sample test of scale".
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

William J. Conover (1971), *Practical nonparametric statistics*. New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 234f.

Paul W. Mielke, Jr. (1967), Note on some squared rank tests with existing ties. *Technometrics*, **9**/2, 312–314.

See Also

fligner.test for a rank-based (nonparametric) k-sample test for homogeneity of variances; ansari.test for another rank-based two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters; var.test and bartlett.test for parametric tests for the homogeneity in variance.

Examples

```
## Same data as for the Ansari-Bradley test:
## Serum iron determination using Hyland control sera
ramsay <- c(111, 107, 100, 99, 102, 106, 109, 108, 104, 99,
            101, 96, 97, 102, 107, 113, 116, 113, 110, 98)
jung.parekh <- c(107, 108, 106, 98, 105, 103, 110, 105, 104,
            100, 96, 108, 103, 104, 114, 114, 113, 108, 106, 99)
mood.test(ramsay, jung.parekh)
## Compare this to ansari.test(ramsay, jung.parekh)
```

`Multinom` *The Multinomial Distribution*

Description

Generate multinomially distributed random number vectors and compute multinomial probabilities.

Usage

```
rmultinom(n, size, prob)
dmultinom(x, size = NULL, prob, log = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	vector of length K of integers in `0:size`.
`n`	number of random vectors to draw.
`size`	integer, say N, specifying the total number of objects that are put into K boxes in the typical multinomial experiment. For `dmultinom`, it defaults to `sum(x)`.
`prob`	numeric non-negative vector of length K, specifying the probability for the K classes; is internally normalized to sum 1. Infinite and missing values are not allowed.
`log`	logical; if TRUE, log probabilities are computed.

Details

If `x` is a K-component vector, `dmultinom(x, prob)` is the probability

$$P(X_1 = x_1, \ldots, X_K = x_k) = C \times \prod_{j=1}^{K} \pi_j^{x_j}$$

where C is the 'multinomial coefficient' $C = N!/(x_1! \cdots x_K!)$ and $N = \sum_{j=1}^{K} x_j$.
By definition, each component X_j is binomially distributed as `Bin(size, prob[j])` for $j = 1, \ldots, K$.

The `rmultinom()` algorithm draws binomials X_j from $Bin(n_j, P_j)$ sequentially, where $n_1 = N$ (N := `size`), $P_1 = \pi_1$ (π is `prob` scaled to sum 1), and for $j \geq 2$, recursively, $n_j = N - \sum_{k=1}^{j-1} X_k$ and $P_j = \pi_j/(1 - \sum_{k=1}^{j-1} \pi_k)$.

Value

For `rmultinom()`, an integer $K \times n$ matrix where each column is a random vector generated according to the desired multinomial law, and hence summing to `size`. Whereas the *transposed* result would seem more natural at first, the returned matrix is more efficient because of columnwise storage.

Note

`dmultinom` is currently *not vectorized* at all and has no C interface (API); this may be amended in the future.

See Also

Distributions for standard distributions, including dbinom which is a special case conceptually.

Examples

```
rmultinom(10, size = 12, prob = c(0.1,0.2,0.8))

pr <- c(1,3,6,10) # normalization not necessary for generation
rmultinom(10, 20, prob = pr)

## all possible outcomes of Multinom(N = 3, K = 3)
X <- t(as.matrix(expand.grid(0:3, 0:3))); X <- X[, colSums(X) <= 3]
X <- rbind(X, 3:3 - colSums(X)); dimnames(X) <- list(letters[1:3], NULL)
X
round(apply(X, 2, function(x) dmultinom(x, prob = c(1,2,5))), 3)
```

---

na.action *NA Action*

Description

Extract information on the NA action used to create an object.

Usage

```
na.action(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any object whose NA action is given.
...	further arguments special methods could require.

Details

na.action is a generic function, and na.action.default its default method. The latter extracts the "na.action" component of a list if present, otherwise the "na.action" attribute.

When model.frame is called, it records any information on NA handling in a "na.action" attribute. Most model-fitting functions return this as a component of their result.

Value

Information from the action which was applied to object if NAs were handled specially, or NULL.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

options("na.action"), na.omit, na.fail, also for na.exclude, na.pass.

Examples

```
na.action(na.omit(c(1, NA)))
```

na.contiguous *Find Longest Contiguous Stretch of non-NAs*

Description

Find the longest consecutive stretch of non-missing values in a time series object. (In the event of a tie, the first such stretch.)

Usage

```
na.contiguous(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a univariate or multivariate time series.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

A time series without missing values. The class of `object` will be preserved.

See Also

`na.omit` and `na.omit.ts`; `na.fail`

Examples

```
na.contiguous(presidents)
```

na.fail *Handle Missing Values in Objects*

Description

These generic functions are useful for dealing with NAs in e.g., data frames. `na.fail` returns the object if it does not contain any missing values, and signals an error otherwise. `na.omit` returns the object with incomplete cases removed. `na.pass` returns the object unchanged.

Usage

```
na.fail(object, ...)
na.omit(object, ...)
na.exclude(object, ...)
na.pass(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object, typically a data frame
...	further arguments special methods could require.

Details

At present these will handle vectors, matrices and data frames comprising vectors and matrices (only).

If `na.omit` removes cases, the row numbers of the cases form the `"na.action"` attribute of the result, of class `"omit"`.

`na.exclude` differs from `na.omit` only in the class of the `"na.action"` attribute of the result, which is `"exclude"`. This gives different behaviour in functions making use of `naresid` and `napredict`: when `na.exclude` is used the residuals and predictions are padded to the correct length by inserting `NA`s for cases omitted by `na.exclude`.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`na.action`; `options` with argument `na.action` for setting NA actions; and `lm` and `glm` for functions using these. `na.contiguous` as alternative for time series.

Examples

```
DF <- data.frame(x = c(1, 2, 3), y = c(0, 10, NA))
na.omit(DF)
m <- as.matrix(DF)
na.omit(m)
stopifnot(all(na.omit(1:3) == 1:3))  # does not affect objects with no NAs
try(na.fail(DF))   #> Error: missing values in ...

options("na.action")
```

---

naprint *Adjust for Missing Values*

Description

Use missing value information to report the effects of an `na.action`.

Usage

```
naprint(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object produced by an `na.action` function.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This is a generic function, and the exact information differs by method. `naprint.omit` reports the number of rows omitted: `naprint.default` reports an empty string.

Value

A character string providing information on missing values, for example the number.

`naresid` *Adjust for Missing Values*

Description

Use missing value information to adjust residuals and predictions.

Usage

```
naresid(omit, x, ...)
napredict(omit, x, ...)
```

Arguments

`omit`	an object produced by an `na.action` function, typically the `"na.action"` attribute of the result of `na.omit` or `na.exclude`.
`x`	a vector, data frame, or matrix to be adjusted based upon the missing value information.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

These are utility functions used to allow `predict`, `fitted` and `residuals` methods for modelling functions to compensate for the removal of NAs in the fitting process. They are used by the default, `"lm"`, `"glm"` and `"nls"` methods, and by further methods in packages **MASS**, **rpart** and **survival**. Also used for the scores returned by `factanal`, `prcomp` and `princomp`.

The default methods do nothing. The default method for the `na.exclude` action is to pad the object with NAs in the correct positions to have the same number of rows as the original data frame.

Currently `naresid` and `napredict` are identical, but future methods need not be. `naresid` is used for residuals, and `napredict` for fitted values, predictions and `weights`.

Value

These return a similar object to `x`.

Note

In the early 2000s, packages **rpart** and **survival5** contained versions of these functions that had an `na.omit` action equivalent to that now used for `na.exclude`.

NegBinomial *The Negative Binomial Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the negative binomial distribution with parameters `size` and `prob`.

Usage

```
dnbinom(x, size, prob, mu, log = FALSE)
pnbinom(q, size, prob, mu, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qnbinom(p, size, prob, mu, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rnbinom(n, size, prob, mu)
```

Arguments

`x`	vector of (non-negative integer) quantiles.
`q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`size`	target for number of successful trials, or dispersion parameter (the shape parameter of the gamma mixing distribution). Must be strictly positive, need not be integer.
`prob`	probability of success in each trial. `0 < prob <= 1`.
`mu`	alternative parametrization via mean: see 'Details'.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The negative binomial distribution with `size` $= n$ and `prob` $= p$ has density

$$p(x) = \frac{\Gamma(x+n)}{\Gamma(n)x!}p^n(1-p)^x$$

for $x = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, $n > 0$ and $0 < p \leq 1$.

This represents the number of failures which occur in a sequence of Bernoulli trials before a target number of successes is reached. The mean is $n(1-p)/p$ and variance $n(1-p)/p^2$.

A negative binomial distribution can also arise as a mixture of Poisson distributions with mean distributed as a gamma distribution (see `pgamma`) with scale parameter `(1 - prob)/prob` and shape parameter `size`. (This definition allows non-integer values of `size`.)

An alternative parametrization (often used in ecology) is by the *mean* `mu`, and `size`, the *dispersion parameter*, where `prob = size/(size+mu)`. The variance is `mu + mu^2/size` in this parametrization.

If an element of `x` is not integer, the result of `dnbinom` is zero, with a warning.

The case `size == 0` is the distribution concentrated at zero. This is the limiting distribution for `size` approaching zero, even if `mu` rather than `prob` is held constant. Notice though, that the mean of the limit distribution is 0, whatever the value of `mu`.

The quantile is defined as the smallest value x such that $F(x) \geq p$, where F is the distribution function.

Value

`dnbinom` gives the density, `pnbinom` gives the distribution function, `qnbinom` gives the quantile function, and `rnbinom` generates random deviates.

Invalid `size` or `prob` will result in return value `NaN`, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rnbinom`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Source

`dnbinom` computes via binomial probabilities, using code contributed by Catherine Loader (see `dbinom`).

`pnbinom` uses `pbeta`.

`qnbinom` uses the Cornish–Fisher Expansion to include a skewness correction to a normal approximation, followed by a search.

`rnbinom` uses the derivation as a gamma mixture of Poissons, see

Devroye, L. (1986) *Non-Uniform Random Variate Generation.* Springer-Verlag, New York. Page 480.

See Also

Distributions for standard distributions, including `dbinom` for the binomial, `dpois` for the Poisson and `dgeom` for the geometric distribution, which is a special case of the negative binomial.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
x <- 0:11
dnbinom(x, size = 1, prob = 1/2) * 2^(1 + x) # == 1
126 /  dnbinom(0:8, size  = 2, prob  = 1/2) #- theoretically integer

## Cumulative (p) = Sum of discrete prob.s (d);  Relative error :
summary(1 - cumsum(dnbinom(x, size = 2, prob = 1/2)) /
                  pnbinom(x, size  = 2, prob = 1/2))

x <- 0:15
size <- (1:20)/4
persp(x, size, dnb <- outer(x, size, function(x,s) dnbinom(x, s, prob = 0.4)),
      xlab = "x", ylab = "s", zlab = "density", theta = 150)
title(tit <- "negative binomial density(x,s, pr = 0.4)  vs.  x & s")

image  (x, size, log10(dnb), main = paste("log [", tit, "]"))
contour(x, size, log10(dnb), add = TRUE)
```

```
## Alternative parametrization
x1 <- rnbinom(500, mu = 4, size = 1)
x2 <- rnbinom(500, mu = 4, size = 10)
x3 <- rnbinom(500, mu = 4, size = 100)
h1 <- hist(x1, breaks = 20, plot = FALSE)
h2 <- hist(x2, breaks = h1$breaks, plot = FALSE)
h3 <- hist(x3, breaks = h1$breaks, plot = FALSE)
barplot(rbind(h1$counts, h2$counts, h3$counts),
        beside = TRUE, col = c("red","blue","cyan"),
        names.arg = round(h1$breaks[-length(h1$breaks)]))
```

---

nextn *Highly Composite Numbers*

Description

`nextn` returns the smallest integer, greater than or equal to `n`, which can be obtained as a product of powers of the values contained in `factors`. `nextn` is intended to be used to find a suitable length to zero-pad the argument of `fft` to so that the transform is computed quickly. The default value for `factors` ensures this.

Usage

```
nextn(n, factors = c(2,3,5))
```

Arguments

`n`	an integer.
`factors`	a vector of positive integer factors.

See Also

`convolve`, `fft`.

Examples

```
nextn(1001) # 1024
table(sapply(599:630, nextn))
```

---

nlm *Non-Linear Minimization*

Description

This function carries out a minimization of the function `f` using a Newton-type algorithm. See the references for details.

Usage

```
nlm(f, p, ..., hessian = FALSE, typsize = rep(1, length(p)),
    fscale = 1, print.level = 0, ndigit = 12, gradtol = 1e-6,
    stepmax = max(1000 * sqrt(sum((p/typsize)^2)), 1000),
    steptol = 1e-6, iterlim = 100, check.analyticals = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`f`	the function to be minimized, returning a single numeric value. This should be a function with first argument a vector of the length of `p` followed by any other arguments specified by the `...` argument. If the function value has an attribute called `gradient` or both `gradient` and `hessian` attributes, these will be used in the calculation of updated parameter values. Otherwise, numerical derivatives are used. `deriv` returns a function with suitable `gradient` attribute and optionally a `hessian` attribute.
`p`	starting parameter values for the minimization.
`...`	additional arguments to be passed to `f`.
`hessian`	if `TRUE`, the hessian of `f` at the minimum is returned.
`typsize`	an estimate of the size of each parameter at the minimum.
`fscale`	an estimate of the size of `f` at the minimum.
`print.level`	this argument determines the level of printing which is done during the minimization process. The default value of `0` means that no printing occurs, a value of `1` means that initial and final details are printed and a value of 2 means that full tracing information is printed.
`ndigit`	the number of significant digits in the function `f`.
`gradtol`	a positive scalar giving the tolerance at which the scaled gradient is considered close enough to zero to terminate the algorithm. The scaled gradient is a measure of the relative change in `f` in each direction `p[i]` divided by the relative change in `p[i]`.
`stepmax`	a positive scalar which gives the maximum allowable scaled step length. `stepmax` is used to prevent steps which would cause the optimization function to overflow, to prevent the algorithm from leaving the area of interest in parameter space, or to detect divergence in the algorithm. `stepmax` would be chosen small enough to prevent the first two of these occurrences, but should be larger than any anticipated reasonable step.
`steptol`	A positive scalar providing the minimum allowable relative step length.
`iterlim`	a positive integer specifying the maximum number of iterations to be performed before the program is terminated.
`check.analyticals`	a logical scalar specifying whether the analytic gradients and Hessians, if they are supplied, should be checked against numerical derivatives at the initial parameter values. This can help detect incorrectly formulated gradients or Hessians.

Details

Note that arguments after `...` must be matched exactly.

If a gradient or hessian is supplied but evaluates to the wrong mode or length, it will be ignored if `check.analyticals = TRUE` (the default) with a warning. The hessian is not even checked unless the gradient is present and passes the sanity checks.

From the three methods available in the original source, we always use method "1" which is line search.

The functions supplied should always return finite (including not `NA` and not `NaN`) values: for the function value itself non-finite values are replaced by the maximum positive value with a warning.

Value

A list containing the following components:

`minimum` the value of the estimated minimum of `f`.

`estimate` the point at which the minimum value of `f` is obtained.

`gradient` the gradient at the estimated minimum of `f`.

`hessian` the hessian at the estimated minimum of `f` (if requested).

`code` an integer indicating why the optimization process terminated.

- **1:** relative gradient is close to zero, current iterate is probably solution.
- **2:** successive iterates within tolerance, current iterate is probably solution.
- **3:** last global step failed to locate a point lower than `estimate`. Either `estimate` is an approximate local minimum of the function or `steptol` is too small.
- **4:** iteration limit exceeded.
- **5:** maximum step size `stepmax` exceeded five consecutive times. Either the function is unbounded below, becomes asymptotic to a finite value from above in some direction or `stepmax` is too small.

`iterations` the number of iterations performed.

Source

The current code is by Saikat DebRoy and the R Core team, using a C translation of Fortran code by Richard H. Jones.

References

Dennis, J. E. and Schnabel, R. B. (1983) *Numerical Methods for Unconstrained Optimization and Nonlinear Equations.* Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Schnabel, R. B., Koontz, J. E. and Weiss, B. E. (1985) A modular system of algorithms for unconstrained minimization. *ACM Trans. Math. Software*, **11**, 419–440.

See Also

`optim` and `nlminb`.

`constrOptim` for constrained optimization, `optimize` for one-dimensional minimization and `uniroot` for root finding. `deriv` to calculate analytical derivatives.

For nonlinear regression, `nls` may be better.

Examples

```
f <- function(x) sum((x-1:length(x))^2)
nlm(f, c(10,10))
nlm(f, c(10,10), print.level = 2)
utils::str(nlm(f, c(5), hessian = TRUE))

f <- function(x, a) sum((x-a)^2)
nlm(f, c(10,10), a = c(3,5))
f <- function(x, a)
{
    res <- sum((x-a)^2)
    attr(res, "gradient") <- 2*(x-a)
    res
}
nlm(f, c(10,10), a = c(3,5))

## more examples, including the use of derivatives.
## Not run: demo(nlm)
```

---

nlminb *Optimization using PORT routines*

Description

Unconstrained and box-constrained optimization using PORT routines.

For historical compatibility.

Usage

```
nlminb(start, objective, gradient = NULL, hessian = NULL, ...,
       scale = 1, control = list(), lower = -Inf, upper = Inf)
```

Arguments

`start`	numeric vector, initial values for the parameters to be optimized.
`objective`	Function to be minimized. Must return a scalar value. The first argument to `objective` is the vector of parameters to be optimized, whose initial values are supplied through `start`. Further arguments (fixed during the course of the optimization) to `objective` may be specified as well (see `...`).
`gradient`	Optional function that takes the same arguments as `objective` and evaluates the gradient of `objective` at its first argument. Must return a vector as long as `start`.
`hessian`	Optional function that takes the same arguments as `objective` and evaluates the hessian of `objective` at its first argument. Must return a square matrix of order `length(start)`. Only the lower triangle is used.
`...`	Further arguments to be supplied to `objective`.
`scale`	See PORT documentation (or leave alone).
`control`	A list of control parameters. See below for details.
`lower, upper`	vectors of lower and upper bounds, replicated to be as long as `start`. If unspecified, all parameters are assumed to be unconstrained.

Details

Any names of `start` are passed on to `objective` and where applicable, `gradient` and `hessian`. The parameter vector will be coerced to double.

The PORT documentation is at http://netlib.bell-labs.com/cm/cs/cstr/153.pdf.

The parameter vector passed to `objective`, `gradient` and `hessian` had special semantics prior to 3.1.0 and was shared between calls. The functions should not copy it.

If any of the functions returns `NA` or `NaN` the internal code could infinite-loop in prior to 2.15.2: this is now an error for the gradient and Hessian, and such values for function evaluation are replaced by `+Inf` with a warning.

Value

A list with components:

`par`	The best set of parameters found.
`objective`	The value of `objective` corresponding to `par`.
`convergence`	An integer code. `0` indicates successful convergence.
`message`	A character string giving any additional information returned by the optimizer, or `NULL`. For details, see PORT documentation.
`iterations`	Number of iterations performed.
`evaluations`	Number of objective function and gradient function evaluations

Control parameters

Possible names in the `control` list and their default values are:

`eval.max` Maximum number of evaluations of the objective function allowed. Defaults to 200.

`iter.max` Maximum number of iterations allowed. Defaults to 150.

`trace` The value of the objective function and the parameters is printed every trace'th iteration. Defaults to 0 which indicates no trace information is to be printed.

`abs.tol` Absolute tolerance. Defaults to 0 so the absolute convergence test is not used. If the objective function is known to be non-negative, the previous default of `1e-20` would be more appropriate.

`rel.tol` Relative tolerance. Defaults to `1e-10`.

`x.tol` X tolerance. Defaults to `1.5e-8`.

`xf.tol` false convergence tolerance. Defaults to `2.2e-14`.

`step.min, step.max` Minimum and maximum step size. Both default to `1.`.

sing.tol singular convergence tolerance; defaults to `rel.tol`.

scale.init ...

diff.g an estimated bound on the relative error in the objective function value.

Author(s)

port: Douglas Bates and Deepayan Sarkar.

Underlying Fortran code by David M. Gay

Source

http://netlib.bell-labs.com/netlib/port/

See Also

optim (which is preferred) and nlm.

optimize for one-dimensional minimization and constrOptim for constrained optimization.

Examples

```
x <- rnbinom(100, mu = 10, size = 10)
hdev <- function(par)
    -sum(dnbinom(x, mu = par[1], size = par[2], log = TRUE))
nlminb(c(9, 12), hdev)
nlminb(c(20, 20), hdev, lower = 0, upper = Inf)
nlminb(c(20, 20), hdev, lower = 0.001, upper = Inf)

## slightly modified from the S-PLUS help page for nlminb
# this example minimizes a sum of squares with known solution y
sumsq <- function( x, y) {sum((x-y)^2)}
y <- rep(1,5)
x0 <- rnorm(length(y))
nlminb(start = x0, sumsq, y = y)
# now use bounds with a y that has some components outside the bounds
y <- c( 0, 2, 0, -2, 0)
nlminb(start = x0, sumsq, lower = -1, upper = 1, y = y)
# try using the gradient
sumsq.g <- function(x, y) 2*(x-y)
nlminb(start = x0, sumsq, sumsq.g,
       lower = -1, upper = 1, y = y)
# now use the hessian, too
sumsq.h <- function(x, y) diag(2, nrow = length(x))
nlminb(start = x0, sumsq, sumsq.g, sumsq.h,
       lower = -1, upper = 1, y = y)

## Rest lifted from optim help page

fr <- function(x) {   ## Rosenbrock Banana function
    x1 <- x[1]
    x2 <- x[2]
    100 * (x2 - x1 * x1)^2 + (1 - x1)^2
}
grr <- function(x) { ## Gradient of fr
    x1 <- x[1]
    x2 <- x[2]
    c(-400 * x1 * (x2 - x1 * x1) - 2 * (1 - x1),
       200 *      (x2 - x1 * x1))
}
nlminb(c(-1.2,1), fr)
nlminb(c(-1.2,1), fr, grr)


flb <- function(x)
    { p <- length(x); sum(c(1, rep(4, p-1)) * (x - c(1, x[-p])^2)^2) }
## 25-dimensional box constrained
## par[24] is *not* at boundary
```

```
nlminb(rep(3, 25), flb, lower = rep(2, 25), upper = rep(4, 25))
## trying to use a too small tolerance:
r <- nlminb(rep(3, 25), flb, control = list(rel.tol = 1e-16))
stopifnot(grepl("rel.tol", r$message))
```

---

nls *Nonlinear Least Squares*

Description

Determine the nonlinear (weighted) least-squares estimates of the parameters of a nonlinear model.

Usage

```
nls(formula, data, start, control, algorithm,
    trace, subset, weights, na.action, model,
    lower, upper, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a nonlinear model formula including variables and parameters. Will be coerced to a formula if necessary.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables in formula and weights. Can also be a list or an environment, but not a matrix.
start	a named list or named numeric vector of starting estimates. When start is missing, a very cheap guess for start is tried (if algorithm != "plinear").
control	an optional list of control settings. See nls.control for the names of the settable control values and their effect.
algorithm	character string specifying the algorithm to use. The default algorithm is a Gauss-Newton algorithm. Other possible values are "plinear" for the Golub-Pereyra algorithm for partially linear least-squares models and "port" for the 'nl2sol' algorithm from the Port library – see the references.
trace	logical value indicating if a trace of the iteration progress should be printed. Default is FALSE. If TRUE the residual (weighted) sum-of-squares and the parameter values are printed at the conclusion of each iteration. When the "plinear" algorithm is used, the conditional estimates of the linear parameters are printed after the nonlinear parameters. When the "port" algorithm is used the objective function value printed is half the residual (weighted) sum-of-squares.
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.
weights	an optional numeric vector of (fixed) weights. When present, the objective function is weighted least squares.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default is set by the na.action setting of options, and is na.fail if that is unset. The 'factory-fresh' default is na.omit. Value na.exclude can be useful.
model	logical. If true, the model frame is returned as part of the object. Default is FALSE.

`lower, upper` vectors of lower and upper bounds, replicated to be as long as `start`. If unspecified, all parameters are assumed to be unconstrained. Bounds can only be used with the `"port"` algorithm. They are ignored, with a warning, if given for other algorithms.

`...` Additional optional arguments. None are used at present.

Details

An `nls` object is a type of fitted model object. It has methods for the generic functions `anova`, `coef`, `confint`, `deviance`, `df.residual`, `fitted`, `formula`, `logLik`, `predict`, `print`, `profile`, `residuals`, `summary`, `vcov` and `weights`.

Variables in `formula` (and `weights` if not missing) are looked for first in `data`, then the environment of `formula` and finally along the search path. Functions in `formula` are searched for first in the environment of `formula` and then along the search path.

Arguments `subset` and `na.action` are supported only when all the variables in the formula taken from `data` are of the same length: other cases give a warning.

Note that the `anova` method does not check that the models are nested: this cannot easily be done automatically, so use with care.

Value

A list of

`m` an `nlsModel` object incorporating the model.

`data` the expression that was passed to `nls` as the data argument. The actual data values are present in the environment of the `m` component.

`call` the matched call with several components, notably `algorithm`.

`na.action` the `"na.action"` attribute (if any) of the model frame.

`dataClasses` the `"dataClasses"` attribute (if any) of the `"terms"` attribute of the model frame.

`model` if `model = TRUE`, the model frame.

`weights` if `weights` is supplied, the weights.

`convInfo` a list with convergence information.

`control` the control `list` used, see the `control` argument.

`convergence, message`
for an `algorithm = "port"` fit only, a convergence code (`0` for convergence) and message.
To use these is *deprecated*, as they are available from `convInfo` now.

Warning

Do not use `nls` on artificial "zero-residual" data.

The `nls` function uses a relative-offset convergence criterion that compares the numerical imprecision at the current parameter estimates to the residual sum-of-squares. This performs well on data of the form

$$y = f(x, \theta) + \epsilon$$

(with `var(eps) > 0`). It fails to indicate convergence on data of the form

$$y = f(x, \theta)$$

because the criterion amounts to comparing two components of the round-off error. If you wish to test `nls` on artificial data please add a noise component, as shown in the example below.

The `algorithm = "port"` code appears unfinished, and does not even check that the starting value is within the bounds. Use with caution, especially where bounds are supplied.

Note

Setting `warnOnly = TRUE` in the `control` argument (see `nls.control`) returns a non-converged object (since version 2.5.0) which might be useful for further convergence analysis, *but* ***not*** *for inference*.

Author(s)

Douglas M. Bates and Saikat DebRoy: David M. Gay for the Fortran code used by `algorithm = "port"`.

References

Bates, D. M. and Watts, D. G. (1988) *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley

Bates, D. M. and Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Nonlinear models.* Chapter 10 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

http://www.netlib.org/port/ for the Port library documentation.

See Also

`summary.nls`, `predict.nls`, `profile.nls`.

Self starting models (with 'automatic initial values'): `selfStart`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

DNase1 <- subset(DNase, Run == 1)

## using a selfStart model
fm1DNase1 <- nls(density ~ SSlogis(log(conc), Asym, xmid, scal), DNase1)
summary(fm1DNase1)
## the coefficients only:
coef(fm1DNase1)
## including their SE, etc:
coef(summary(fm1DNase1))

## using conditional linearity
fm2DNase1 <- nls(density ~ 1/(1 + exp((xmid - log(conc))/scal)),
                 data = DNase1,
                 start = list(xmid = 0, scal = 1),
                 algorithm = "plinear")
summary(fm2DNase1)

## without conditional linearity
fm3DNase1 <- nls(density ~ Asym/(1 + exp((xmid - log(conc))/scal)),
                 data = DNase1,
                 start = list(Asym = 3, xmid = 0, scal = 1))
summary(fm3DNase1)
```

```
## using Ports nl2sol algorithm
fm4DNase1 <- nls(density ~ Asym/(1 + exp((xmid - log(conc))/scal)),
                 data = DNase1,
                 start = list(Asym = 3, xmid = 0, scal = 1),
                 algorithm = "port")
summary(fm4DNase1)

## weighted nonlinear regression
Treated <- Puromycin[Puromycin$state == "treated", ]
weighted.MM <- function(resp, conc, Vm, K)
{
    ## Purpose: exactly as white book p. 451 -- RHS for nls()
    ##  Weighted version of Michaelis-Menten model
    ## ------------------------------------------------------------
    ## Arguments: y, x and the two parameters (see book)
    ## ------------------------------------------------------------
    ## Author: Martin Maechler, Date: 23 Mar 2001

    pred <- (Vm * conc)/(K + conc)
    (resp - pred) / sqrt(pred)
}

Pur.wt <- nls( ~ weighted.MM(rate, conc, Vm, K), data = Treated,
              start = list(Vm = 200, K = 0.1))
summary(Pur.wt)

## Passing arguments using a list that can not be coerced to a data.frame
lisTreat <- with(Treated,
                 list(conc1 = conc[1], conc.1 = conc[-1], rate = rate))

weighted.MM1 <- function(resp, conc1, conc.1, Vm, K)
{
     conc <- c(conc1, conc.1)
     pred <- (Vm * conc)/(K + conc)
    (resp - pred) / sqrt(pred)
}
Pur.wt1 <- nls( ~ weighted.MM1(rate, conc1, conc.1, Vm, K),
               data = lisTreat, start = list(Vm = 200, K = 0.1))
stopifnot(all.equal(coef(Pur.wt), coef(Pur.wt1)))

## Chambers and Hastie (1992) Statistical Models in S  (p. 537):
## If the value of the right side [of formula] has an attribute called
## gradient this should be a matrix with the number of rows equal
## to the length of the response and one column for each parameter.

weighted.MM.grad <- function(resp, conc1, conc.1, Vm, K)
{
  conc <- c(conc1, conc.1)

  K.conc <- K+conc
  dy.dV <- conc/K.conc
  dy.dK <- -Vm*dy.dV/K.conc
  pred <- Vm*dy.dV
  pred.5 <- sqrt(pred)
  dev <- (resp - pred) / pred.5
  Ddev <- -0.5*(resp+pred)/(pred.5*pred)
```

```
  attr(dev, "gradient") <- Ddev * cbind(Vm = dy.dV, K = dy.dK)
  dev
}

Pur.wt.grad <- nls( ~ weighted.MM.grad(rate, conc1, conc.1, Vm, K),
                   data = lisTreat, start = list(Vm = 200, K = 0.1))

rbind(coef(Pur.wt), coef(Pur.wt1), coef(Pur.wt.grad))

## In this example, there seems no advantage to providing the gradient.
## In other cases, there might be.


## The two examples below show that you can fit a model to
## artificial data with noise but not to artificial data
## without noise.
x <- 1:10
y <- 2*x + 3                            # perfect fit
yeps <- y + rnorm(length(y), sd = 0.01) # added noise
nls(yeps ~ a + b*x, start = list(a = 0.12345, b = 0.54321))
## terminates in an error, because convergence cannot be confirmed:
try(nls(y ~ a + b*x, start = list(a = 0.12345, b = 0.54321)))

## the nls() internal cheap guess for starting values can be sufficient:

x <- -(1:100)/10
y <- 100 + 10 * exp(x / 2) + rnorm(x)/10
nlmod <- nls(y ~  Const + A * exp(B * x))

plot(x,y, main = "nls(*), data, true function and fit, n=100")
curve(100 + 10 * exp(x / 2), col = 4, add = TRUE)
lines(x, predict(nlmod), col = 2)



## The muscle dataset in MASS is from an experiment on muscle
## contraction on 21 animals.  The observed variables are Strip
## (identifier of muscle), Conc (Cacl concentration) and Length
## (resulting length of muscle section).
utils::data(muscle, package = "MASS")

## The non linear model considered is
##       Length = alpha + beta*exp(-Conc/theta) + error
## where theta is constant but alpha and beta may vary with Strip.

with(muscle, table(Strip)) # 2, 3 or 4 obs per strip

## We first use the plinear algorithm to fit an overall model,
## ignoring that alpha and beta might vary with Strip.

musc.1 <- nls(Length ~ cbind(1, exp(-Conc/th)), muscle,
              start = list(th = 1), algorithm = "plinear")
summary(musc.1)

## Then we use nls indexing feature for parameters in non-linear
## models to use the conventional algorithm to fit a model in which
## alpha and beta vary with Strip.  The starting values are provided
```

```
## by the previously fitted model.
## Note that with indexed parameters, the starting values must be
## given in a list (with names):
b <- coef(musc.1)
musc.2 <- nls(Length ~ a[Strip] + b[Strip]*exp(-Conc/th), muscle,
              start = list(a = rep(b[2], 21), b = rep(b[3], 21), th = b[1]))
summary(musc.2)
```

`nls.control` *Control the Iterations in nls*

Description

Allow the user to set some characteristics of the `nls` nonlinear least squares algorithm.

Usage

```
nls.control(maxiter = 50, tol = 1e-05, minFactor = 1/1024,
            printEval = FALSE, warnOnly = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`maxiter`	A positive integer specifying the maximum number of iterations allowed.
`tol`	A positive numeric value specifying the tolerance level for the relative offset convergence criterion.
`minFactor`	A positive numeric value specifying the minimum step-size factor allowed on any step in the iteration. The increment is calculated with a Gauss-Newton algorithm and successively halved until the residual sum of squares has been decreased or until the step-size factor has been reduced below this limit.
`printEval`	a logical specifying whether the number of evaluations (steps in the gradient direction taken each iteration) is printed.
`warnOnly`	a logical specifying whether `nls()` should return instead of signalling an error in the case of termination before convergence. Termination before convergence happens upon completion of `maxiter` iterations, in the case of a singular gradient, and in the case that the step-size factor is reduced below `minFactor`.

Value

A `list` with exactly five components:

`maxiter`

`tol`

`minFactor`

`printEval`

`warnOnly`

with meanings as explained under 'Arguments'.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and Saikat DebRoy

References

Bates, D. M. and Watts, D. G. (1988), *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley.

See Also

`nls`

Examples

```
nls.control(minFactor = 1/2048)
```

NLSstAsymptotic *Fit the Asymptotic Regression Model*

Description

Fits the asymptotic regression model, in the form `b0 + b1*(1-exp(-exp(lrc) * x)` to the `xy` data. This can be used as a building block in determining starting estimates for more complicated models.

Usage

```
NLSstAsymptotic(xy)
```

Arguments

`xy`	a `sortedXyData` object

Value

A numeric value of length 3 with components labelled `b0`, `b1`, and `lrc`. `b0` is the estimated intercept on the `y`-axis, `b1` is the estimated difference between the asymptote and the `y`-intercept, and `lrc` is the estimated logarithm of the rate constant.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`SSasymp`

Examples

```
Lob.329 <- Loblolly[ Loblolly$Seed == "329", ]
print(NLSstAsymptotic(sortedXyData(expression(age),
                                   expression(height),
                                   Lob.329)), digits = 3)
```

NLSstClosestX *Inverse Interpolation*

Description

Use inverse linear interpolation to approximate the x value at which the function represented by xy is equal to yval.

Usage

```
NLSstClosestX(xy, yval)
```

Arguments

xy	a sortedXyData object
yval	a numeric value on the y scale

Value

A single numeric value on the x scale.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

sortedXyData, NLSstLfAsymptote, NLSstRtAsymptote, selfStart

Examples

```
DNase.2 <- DNase[ DNase$Run == "2", ]
DN.srt <- sortedXyData(expression(log(conc)), expression(density), DNase.2)
NLSstClosestX(DN.srt, 1.0)
```

NLSstLfAsymptote *Horizontal Asymptote on the Left Side*

Description

Provide an initial guess at the horizontal asymptote on the left side (i.e., small values of x) of the graph of y versus x from the xy object. Primarily used within initial functions for self-starting nonlinear regression models.

Usage

```
NLSstLfAsymptote(xy)
```

Arguments

xy	a sortedXyData object

Value

A single numeric value estimating the horizontal asymptote for small x.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

sortedXyData, NLSstClosestX, NLSstRtAsymptote, selfStart

Examples

```
DNase.2 <- DNase[ DNase$Run == "2", ]
DN.srt <- sortedXyData( expression(log(conc)), expression(density), DNase.2 )
NLSstLfAsymptote( DN.srt )
```

NLSstRtAsymptote *Horizontal Asymptote on the Right Side*

Description

Provide an initial guess at the horizontal asymptote on the right side (i.e., large values of x) of the graph of y versus x from the xy object. Primarily used within initial functions for self-starting nonlinear regression models.

Usage

```
NLSstRtAsymptote(xy)
```

Arguments

xy	a sortedXyData object

Value

A single numeric value estimating the horizontal asymptote for large x.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

sortedXyData, NLSstClosestX, NLSstRtAsymptote, selfStart

Examples

```
DNase.2 <- DNase[ DNase$Run == "2", ]
DN.srt <- sortedXyData( expression(log(conc)), expression(density), DNase.2 )
NLSstRtAsymptote( DN.srt )
```

nobs *Extract the Number of Observations from a Fit.*

Description

Extract the number of 'observations' from a model fit. This is principally intended to be used in computing BIC (see AIC).

Usage

```
nobs(object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
nobs(object, use.fallback = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	A fitted model object.
use.fallback	logical: should fallback methods be used to try to guess the value?
...	Further arguments to be passed to methods.

Details

This is a generic function, with an S4 generic in package **stats4**. There are methods in this package for objects of classes "lm", "glm", "nls" and "logLik", as well as a default method (which throws an error, unless use.fallback = TRUE when it looks for weights and residuals components – use with care!).

The main usage is in determining the appropriate penalty for BIC, but nobs is also used by the stepwise fitting methods step, add1 and drop1 as a quick check that different fits have been fitted to the same set of data (and not, say, that further rows have been dropped because of NAs in the new predictors).

For lm, glm and nls fits, observations with zero weight are not included.

Value

A single number, normally an integer. Could be NA.

See Also

AIC.

Normal *The Normal Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the normal distribution with mean equal to mean and standard deviation equal to sd.

Usage

```
dnorm(x, mean = 0, sd = 1, log = FALSE)
pnorm(q, mean = 0, sd = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qnorm(p, mean = 0, sd = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rnorm(n, mean = 0, sd = 1)
```

Arguments

x, q	vector of quantiles.
p	vector of probabilities.
n	number of observations. If length(n) > 1, the length is taken to be the number required.
mean	vector of means.
sd	vector of standard deviations.
log, log.p	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
lower.tail	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$ otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

If mean or sd are not specified they assume the default values of 0 and 1, respectively.

The normal distribution has density

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-(x-\mu)^2/2\sigma^2}$$

where μ is the mean of the distribution and σ the standard deviation.

Value

dnorm gives the density, pnorm gives the distribution function, qnorm gives the quantile function, and rnorm generates random deviates.

The length of the result is determined by n for rnorm, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than n are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

For sd = 0 this gives the limit as sd decreases to 0, a point mass at mu. sd < 0 is an error and returns NaN.

Source

For pnorm, based on

Cody, W. D. (1993) Algorithm 715: SPECFUN – A portable FORTRAN package of special function routines and test drivers. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software* **19**, 22–32.

For qnorm, the code is a C translation of

Wichura, M. J. (1988) Algorithm AS 241: The percentage points of the normal distribution. *Applied Statistics*, **37**, 477–484.

which provides precise results up to about 16 digits.

For rnorm, see RNG for how to select the algorithm and for references to the supplied methods.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 1, chapter 13. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including dlnorm for the *Log*normal distribution.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

dnorm(0) == 1/sqrt(2*pi)
dnorm(1) == exp(-1/2)/sqrt(2*pi)
dnorm(1) == 1/sqrt(2*pi*exp(1))

## Using "log = TRUE" for an extended range :
par(mfrow = c(2,1))
plot(function(x) dnorm(x, log = TRUE), -60, 50,
     main = "log { Normal density }")
curve(log(dnorm(x)), add = TRUE, col = "red", lwd = 2)
mtext("dnorm(x, log=TRUE)", adj = 0)
mtext("log(dnorm(x))", col = "red", adj = 1)

plot(function(x) pnorm(x, log.p = TRUE), -50, 10,
     main = "log { Normal Cumulative }")
curve(log(pnorm(x)), add = TRUE, col = "red", lwd = 2)
mtext("pnorm(x, log=TRUE)", adj = 0)
mtext("log(pnorm(x))", col = "red", adj = 1)

## if you want the so-called error function
erf <- function(x) 2 * pnorm(x * sqrt(2)) - 1
## (see Abramowitz and Stegun 29.2.29)
## and the so-called complementary error function
erfc <- function(x) 2 * pnorm(x * sqrt(2), lower = FALSE)
## and the inverses
erfinv <- function (x) qnorm((1 + x)/2)/sqrt(2)
erfcinv <- function (x) qnorm(x/2, lower = FALSE)/sqrt(2)
```

numericDeriv *Evaluate Derivatives Numerically*

Description

numericDeriv numerically evaluates the gradient of an expression.

Usage

```
numericDeriv(expr, theta, rho = parent.frame(), dir = 1.0)
```

Arguments

expr	The expression to be differentiated. The value of this expression should be a numeric vector.
theta	A character vector of names of numeric variables used in expr.
rho	An environment containing all the variables needed to evaluate expr.
dir	A numeric vector of directions to use for the finite differences.

Details

This is a front end to the C function numeric_deriv, which is described in *Writing R Extensions*.

The numeric variables must be of type real and not integer.

Value

The value of eval(expr, envir = rho) plus a matrix attribute called gradient. The columns of this matrix are the derivatives of the value with respect to the variables listed in theta.

Author(s)

Saikat DebRoy <saikat@stat.wisc.edu>

Examples

```
myenv <- new.env()
assign("mean", 0., envir = myenv)
assign("sd", 1., envir = myenv)
assign("x", seq(-3., 3., len = 31), envir = myenv)
numericDeriv(quote(pnorm(x, mean, sd)), c("mean", "sd"), myenv)
```

offset *Include an Offset in a Model Formula*

Description

An offset is a term to be added to a linear predictor, such as in a generalised linear model, with known coefficient 1 rather than an estimated coefficient.

Usage

```
offset(object)
```

Arguments

object	An offset to be included in a model frame

Details

There can be more than one offset in a model formula, but - is not supported for `offset` terms (and is equivalent to +).

Value

The input value.

See Also

`model.offset`, `model.frame`.

For examples see `glm` and `Insurance` in package **MASS**.

oneway.test *Test for Equal Means in a One-Way Layout*

Description

Test whether two or more samples from normal distributions have the same means. The variances are not necessarily assumed to be equal.

Usage

```
oneway.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, var.equal = FALSE)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula of the form lhs ~ rhs where lhs gives the sample values and rhs the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
var.equal	a logical variable indicating whether to treat the variances in the samples as equal. If TRUE, then a simple F test for the equality of means in a one-way analysis of variance is performed. If FALSE, an approximate method of Welch (1951) is used, which generalizes the commonly known 2-sample Welch test to the case of arbitrarily many samples.

Details

If the right-hand side of the formula contains more than one term, their interaction is taken to form the grouping.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the test statistic.
parameter	the degrees of freedom of the exact or approximate F distribution of the test statistic.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
method	a character string indicating the test performed.
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

B. L. Welch (1951), On the comparison of several mean values: an alternative approach. *Biometrika*, **38**, 330–336.

See Also

The standard t test (t.test) as the special case for two samples; the Kruskal-Wallis test kruskal.test for a nonparametric test for equal location parameters in a one-way layout.

Examples

```
## Not assuming equal variances
oneway.test(extra ~ group, data = sleep)
## Assuming equal variances
oneway.test(extra ~ group, data = sleep, var.equal = TRUE)
## which gives the same result as
anova(lm(extra ~ group, data = sleep))
```

optim *General-purpose Optimization*

Description

General-purpose optimization based on Nelder–Mead, quasi-Newton and conjugate-gradient algorithms. It includes an option for box-constrained optimization and simulated annealing.

Usage

```
optim(par, fn, gr = NULL, ...,
      method = c("Nelder-Mead", "BFGS", "CG", "L-BFGS-B", "SANN",
                 "Brent"),
      lower = -Inf, upper = Inf,
      control = list(), hessian = FALSE)

optimHess(par, fn, gr = NULL, ..., control = list())
```

Arguments

par	Initial values for the parameters to be optimized over.
fn	A function to be minimized (or maximized), with first argument the vector of parameters over which minimization is to take place. It should return a scalar result.
gr	A function to return the gradient for the "BFGS", "CG" and "L-BFGS-B" methods. If it is NULL, a finite-difference approximation will be used. For the "SANN" method it specifies a function to generate a new candidate point. If it is NULL a default Gaussian Markov kernel is used.
...	Further arguments to be passed to fn and gr.
method	The method to be used. See 'Details'.
lower, upper	Bounds on the variables for the "L-BFGS-B" method, or bounds in which to *search* for method "Brent".
control	A list of control parameters. See 'Details'.
hessian	Logical. Should a numerically differentiated Hessian matrix be returned?

Details

Note that arguments after ... must be matched exactly.

By default optim performs minimization, but it will maximize if control$fnscale is negative. optimHess is an auxiliary function to compute the Hessian at a later stage if hessian = TRUE was forgotten.

The default method is an implementation of that of Nelder and Mead (1965), that uses only function values and is robust but relatively slow. It will work reasonably well for non-differentiable functions.

Method "BFGS" is a quasi-Newton method (also known as a variable metric algorithm), specifically that published simultaneously in 1970 by Broyden, Fletcher, Goldfarb and Shanno. This uses function values and gradients to build up a picture of the surface to be optimized.

Method "CG" is a conjugate gradients method based on that by Fletcher and Reeves (1964) (but with the option of Polak–Ribiere or Beale–Sorenson updates). Conjugate gradient methods will generally be more fragile than the BFGS method, but as they do not store a matrix they may be successful in much larger optimization problems.

Method "L-BFGS-B" is that of Byrd *et. al.* (1995) which allows *box constraints*, that is each variable can be given a lower and/or upper bound. The initial value must satisfy the constraints. This uses a limited-memory modification of the BFGS quasi-Newton method. If non-trivial bounds are supplied, this method will be selected, with a warning.

Nocedal and Wright (1999) is a comprehensive reference for the previous three methods.

Method "SANN" is by default a variant of simulated annealing given in Belisle (1992). Simulated-annealing belongs to the class of stochastic global optimization methods. It uses only function values but is relatively slow. It will also work for non-differentiable functions. This implementation uses the Metropolis function for the acceptance probability. By default the next candidate point is generated from a Gaussian Markov kernel with scale proportional to the actual temperature. If a function to generate a new candidate point is given, method "SANN" can also be used to solve combinatorial optimization problems. Temperatures are decreased according to the logarithmic cooling schedule as given in Belisle (1992, p. 890); specifically, the temperature is set to `temp / log(((t-1) %/% tmax)*tmax + exp(1))`, where `t` is the current iteration step and `temp` and `tmax` are specifiable via `control`, see below. Note that the "SANN" method depends critically on the settings of the control parameters. It is not a general-purpose method but can be very useful in getting to a good value on a very rough surface.

Method "Brent" is for one-dimensional problems only, using `optimize()`. It can be useful in cases where `optim()` is used inside other functions where only `method` can be specified, such as in `mle` from package **stats4**.

Function `fn` can return `NA` or `Inf` if the function cannot be evaluated at the supplied value, but the initial value must have a computable finite value of `fn`. (Except for method "L-BFGS-B" where the values should always be finite.)

`optim` can be used recursively, and for a single parameter as well as many. It also accepts a zero-length `par`, and just evaluates the function with that argument.

The `control` argument is a list that can supply any of the following components:

`trace` Non-negative integer. If positive, tracing information on the progress of the optimization is produced. Higher values may produce more tracing information: for method "L-BFGS-B" there are six levels of tracing. (To understand exactly what these do see the source code: higher levels give more detail.)

`fnscale` An overall scaling to be applied to the value of `fn` and `gr` during optimization. If negative, turns the problem into a maximization problem. Optimization is performed on `fn(par)/fnscale`.

`parscale` A vector of scaling values for the parameters. Optimization is performed on `par/parscale` and these should be comparable in the sense that a unit change in any element produces about a unit change in the scaled value. Not used (nor needed) for `method = "Brent"`.

`ndeps` A vector of step sizes for the finite-difference approximation to the gradient, on `par/parscale` scale. Defaults to `1e-3`.

`maxit` The maximum number of iterations. Defaults to `100` for the derivative-based methods, and `500` for "Nelder-Mead".

For "SANN" `maxit` gives the total number of function evaluations: there is no other stopping criterion. Defaults to `10000`.

`abstol` The absolute convergence tolerance. Only useful for non-negative functions, as a tolerance for reaching zero.

`reltol` Relative convergence tolerance. The algorithm stops if it is unable to reduce the value by a factor of `reltol * (abs(val) + reltol)` at a step. Defaults to `sqrt(.Machine$double.eps)`, typically about `1e-8`.

`alpha`, `beta`, `gamma` Scaling parameters for the `"Nelder-Mead"` method. `alpha` is the reflection factor (default 1.0), `beta` the contraction factor (0.5) and `gamma` the expansion factor (2.0).

`REPORT` The frequency of reports for the `"BFGS"`, `"L-BFGS-B"` and `"SANN"` methods if `control$trace` is positive. Defaults to every 10 iterations for `"BFGS"` and `"L-BFGS-B"`, or every 100 temperatures for `"SANN"`.

`type` for the conjugate-gradients method. Takes value `1` for the Fletcher–Reeves update, `2` for Polak–Ribiere and `3` for Beale–Sorenson.

`lmm` is an integer giving the number of BFGS updates retained in the `"L-BFGS-B"` method, It defaults to `5`.

`factr` controls the convergence of the `"L-BFGS-B"` method. Convergence occurs when the reduction in the objective is within this factor of the machine tolerance. Default is `1e7`, that is a tolerance of about `1e-8`.

`pgtol` helps control the convergence of the `"L-BFGS-B"` method. It is a tolerance on the projected gradient in the current search direction. This defaults to zero, when the check is suppressed.

`temp` controls the `"SANN"` method. It is the starting temperature for the cooling schedule. Defaults to `10`.

`tmax` is the number of function evaluations at each temperature for the `"SANN"` method. Defaults to `10`.

Any names given to `par` will be copied to the vectors passed to `fn` and `gr`. Note that no other attributes of `par` are copied over.

The parameter vector passed to `fn` has special semantics and may be shared between calls: the function should not change or copy it.

Value

For `optim`, a list with components:

`par`	The best set of parameters found.
`value`	The value of `fn` corresponding to `par`.
`counts`	A two-element integer vector giving the number of calls to `fn` and `gr` respectively. This excludes those calls needed to compute the Hessian, if requested, and any calls to `fn` to compute a finite-difference approximation to the gradient.
`convergence`	An integer code. `0` indicates successful completion (which is always the case for `"SANN"` and `"Brent"`). Possible error codes are `1` indicates that the iteration limit `maxit` had been reached. `10` indicates degeneracy of the Nelder–Mead simplex. `51` indicates a warning from the `"L-BFGS-B"` method; see component `message` for further details. `52` indicates an error from the `"L-BFGS-B"` method; see component `message` for further details.
`message`	A character string giving any additional information returned by the optimizer, or `NULL`.
`hessian`	Only if argument `hessian` is true. A symmetric matrix giving an estimate of the Hessian at the solution found. Note that this is the Hessian of the unconstrained problem even if the box constraints are active.

For `optimHess`, the description of the `hessian` component applies.

Note

optim will work with one-dimensional pars, but the default method does not work well (and will warn). Method "Brent" uses optimize and needs bounds to be available; "BFGS" often works well enough if not.

Source

The code for methods "Nelder-Mead", "BFGS" and "CG" was based originally on Pascal code in Nash (1990) that was translated by p2c and then hand-optimized. Dr Nash has agreed that the code can be made freely available.

The code for method "L-BFGS-B" is based on Fortran code by Zhu, Byrd, Lu-Chen and Nocedal obtained from Netlib (file 'opt/lbfgs_bcm.shar': another version is in 'toms/778').

The code for method "SANN" was contributed by A. Trapletti.

References

Belisle, C. J. P. (1992) Convergence theorems for a class of simulated annealing algorithms on R^d. *J. Applied Probability*, **29**, 885–895.

Byrd, R. H., Lu, P., Nocedal, J. and Zhu, C. (1995) A limited memory algorithm for bound constrained optimization. *SIAM J. Scientific Computing*, **16**, 1190–1208.

Fletcher, R. and Reeves, C. M. (1964) Function minimization by conjugate gradients. *Computer Journal* **7**, 148–154.

Nash, J. C. (1990) *Compact Numerical Methods for Computers. Linear Algebra and Function Minimisation.* Adam Hilger.

Nelder, J. A. and Mead, R. (1965) A simplex algorithm for function minimization. *Computer Journal* **7**, 308–313.

Nocedal, J. and Wright, S. J. (1999) *Numerical Optimization*. Springer.

See Also

nlm, nlminb.

optimize for one-dimensional minimization and constrOptim for constrained optimization.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

fr <- function(x) {   ## Rosenbrock Banana function
    x1 <- x[1]
    x2 <- x[2]
    100 * (x2 - x1 * x1)^2 + (1 - x1)^2
}
grr <- function(x) { ## Gradient of fr
    x1 <- x[1]
    x2 <- x[2]
    c(-400 * x1 * (x2 - x1 * x1) - 2 * (1 - x1),
       200 *      (x2 - x1 * x1))
}
optim(c(-1.2,1), fr)
(res <- optim(c(-1.2,1), fr, grr, method = "BFGS"))
optimHess(res$par, fr, grr)
optim(c(-1.2,1), fr, NULL, method = "BFGS", hessian = TRUE)
```

```
## These do not converge in the default number of steps
optim(c(-1.2,1), fr, grr, method = "CG")
optim(c(-1.2,1), fr, grr, method = "CG", control = list(type = 2))
optim(c(-1.2,1), fr, grr, method = "L-BFGS-B")

flb <- function(x)
    { p <- length(x); sum(c(1, rep(4, p-1)) * (x - c(1, x[-p])^2)^2) }
## 25-dimensional box constrained
optim(rep(3, 25), flb, NULL, method = "L-BFGS-B",
      lower = rep(2, 25), upper = rep(4, 25)) # par[24] is *not* at boundary

## "wild" function , global minimum at about -15.81515
fw <- function (x)
    10*sin(0.3*x)*sin(1.3*x^2) + 0.00001*x^4 + 0.2*x+80
plot(fw, -50, 50, n = 1000, main = "optim() minimising wild function")

res <- optim(50, fw, method = "SANN",
             control = list(maxit = 20000, temp = 20, parscale = 20))
res
## Now improve locally {typically only by a small bit}:
(r2 <- optim(res$par, fw, method = "BFGS"))
points(r2$par, r2$value, pch = 8, col = "red", cex = 2)

## Combinatorial optimization: Traveling salesman problem
library(stats) # normally loaded

eurodistmat <- as.matrix(eurodist)

distance <- function(sq) {  # Target function
    sq2 <- embed(sq, 2)
    sum(eurodistmat[cbind(sq2[,2], sq2[,1])])
}

genseq <- function(sq) {  # Generate new candidate sequence
    idx <- seq(2, NROW(eurodistmat)-1)
    changepoints <- sample(idx, size = 2, replace = FALSE)
    tmp <- sq[changepoints[1]]
    sq[changepoints[1]] <- sq[changepoints[2]]
    sq[changepoints[2]] <- tmp
    sq
}

sq <- c(1:nrow(eurodistmat), 1)  # Initial sequence: alphabetic
distance(sq)
# rotate for conventional orientation
loc <- -cmdscale(eurodist, add = TRUE)$points
x <- loc[,1]; y <- loc[,2]
s <- seq_len(nrow(eurodistmat))
tspinit <- loc[sq,]

plot(x, y, type = "n", asp = 1, xlab = "", ylab = "",
     main = "initial solution of traveling salesman problem", axes = FALSE)
arrows(tspinit[s,1], tspinit[s,2], tspinit[s+1,1], tspinit[s+1,2],
       angle = 10, col = "green")
text(x, y, labels(eurodist), cex = 0.8)

set.seed(123) # chosen to get a good soln relatively quickly
```

```
res <- optim(sq, distance, genseq, method = "SANN",
             control = list(maxit = 30000, temp = 2000, trace = TRUE,
                            REPORT = 500))
res  # Near optimum distance around 12842

tspres <- loc[res$par,]
plot(x, y, type = "n", asp = 1, xlab = "", ylab = "",
     main = "optim() solving traveling salesman problem", axes = FALSE)
arrows(tspres[s,1], tspres[s,2], tspres[s+1,1], tspres[s+1,2],
       angle = 10, col = "red")
text(x, y, labels(eurodist), cex = 0.8)
```

`optimize` *One Dimensional Optimization*

Description

The function `optimize` searches the interval from `lower` to `upper` for a minimum or maximum of the function `f` with respect to its first argument.

`optimise` is an alias for `optimize`.

Usage

```
optimize(f = , interval = ,  ..., lower = min(interval),
         upper = max(interval), maximum = FALSE,
         tol = .Machine$double.eps^0.25)
optimise(f = , interval = ,  ..., lower = min(interval),
         upper = max(interval), maximum = FALSE,
         tol = .Machine$double.eps^0.25)
```

Arguments

`f`	the function to be optimized. The function is either minimized or maximized over its first argument depending on the value of `maximum`.
`interval`	a vector containing the end-points of the interval to be searched for the minimum.
`...`	additional named or unnamed arguments to be passed to `f`.
`lower`	the lower end point of the interval to be searched.
`upper`	the upper end point of the interval to be searched.
`maximum`	logical. Should we maximize or minimize (the default)?
`tol`	the desired accuracy.

Details

Note that arguments after `...` must be matched exactly.

The method used is a combination of golden section search and successive parabolic interpolation, and was designed for use with continuous functions. Convergence is never much slower than that for a Fibonacci search. If `f` has a continuous second derivative which is positive at the minimum (which is not at `lower` or `upper`), then convergence is superlinear, and usually of the order of about 1.324.

The function f is never evaluated at two points closer together than $\epsilon|x_0| + (tol/3)$, where ϵ is approximately sqrt(.Machine$double.eps) and x_0 is the final abscissa optimize()$minimum.
If f is a unimodal function and the computed values of f are always unimodal when separated by at least $\epsilon\,|x| + (tol/3)$, then x_0 approximates the abscissa of the global minimum of f on the interval lower,upper with an error less than $\epsilon|x_0| + tol$.
If f is not unimodal, then optimize() may approximate a local, but perhaps non-global, minimum to the same accuracy.

The first evaluation of f is always at $x_1 = a + (1 - \phi)(b - a)$ where (a,b) = (lower, upper) and $\phi = (\sqrt{5} - 1)/2 = 0.61803..$ is the golden section ratio. Almost always, the second evaluation is at $x_2 = a + \phi(b - a)$. Note that a local minimum inside $[x_1, x_2]$ will be found as solution, even when f is constant in there, see the last example.

f will be called as f(x, ...) for a numeric value of x.

The argument passed to f has special semantics and used to be shared between calls. The function should not copy it.

Value

A list with components minimum (or maximum) and objective which give the location of the minimum (or maximum) and the value of the function at that point.

Source

A C translation of Fortran code http://www.netlib.org/fmm/fmin.f (author(s) unstated) based on the Algol 60 procedure localmin given in the reference.

References

Brent, R. (1973) *Algorithms for Minimization without Derivatives.* Englewood Cliffs N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

See Also

nlm, uniroot.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

f <- function (x, a) (x - a)^2
xmin <- optimize(f, c(0, 1), tol = 0.0001, a = 1/3)
xmin

## See where the function is evaluated:
optimize(function(x) x^2*(print(x)-1), lower = 0, upper = 10)

## "wrong" solution with unlucky interval and piecewise constant f():
f  <- function(x) ifelse(x > -1, ifelse(x < 4, exp(-1/abs(x - 1)), 10), 10)
fp <- function(x) { print(x); f(x) }

plot(f, -2,5, ylim = 0:1, col = 2)
optimize(fp, c(-4, 20))   # doesnt see the minimum
optimize(fp, c(-7, 20))   # ok
```

order.dendrogram *Ordering or Labels of the Leaves in a Dendrogram*

Description

Theses functions return the order (index) or the "label" attribute for the leaves in a dendrogram. These indices can then be used to access the appropriate components of any additional data.

Usage

```
order.dendrogram(x)

## S3 method for class dendrogram
labels(object, ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	a dendrogram (see as.dendrogram).
...	additional arguments

Details

The indices or labels for the leaves in left to right order are retrieved.

Value

A vector with length equal to the number of leaves in the dendrogram is returned. From r <- order.dendrogram(), each element is the index into the original data (from which the dendrogram was computed).

Author(s)

R. Gentleman (order.dendrogram) and Martin Maechler (labels.dendrogram).

See Also

reorder, dendrogram.

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
x <- rnorm(10)
hc <- hclust(dist(x))
hc$order
dd <- as.dendrogram(hc)
order.dendrogram(dd) ## the same :
stopifnot(hc$order == order.dendrogram(dd))

d2 <- as.dendrogram(hclust(dist(USArrests)))
labels(d2) ## in this case the same as
stopifnot(identical(labels(d2),
   rownames(USArrests)[order.dendrogram(d2)]))
```

`p.adjust` *Adjust P-values for Multiple Comparisons*

Description

Given a set of p-values, returns p-values adjusted using one of several methods.

Usage

```
p.adjust(p, method = p.adjust.methods, n = length(p))

p.adjust.methods
# c("holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "bonferroni", "BH", "BY",
#   "fdr", "none")
```

Arguments

`p`	numeric vector of p-values (possibly with `NA`s). Any other is coerced by `as.numeric`.
`method`	correction method
`n`	number of comparisons, must be at least `length(p)`; only set this (to non-default) when you know what you are doing!

Details

The adjustment methods include the Bonferroni correction (`"bonferroni"`) in which the p-values are multiplied by the number of comparisons. Less conservative corrections are also included by Holm (1979) (`"holm"`), Hochberg (1988) (`"hochberg"`), Hommel (1988) (`"hommel"`), Benjamini & Hochberg (1995) (`"BH"` or its alias `"fdr"`), and Benjamini & Yekutieli (2001) (`"BY"`), respectively. A pass-through option (`"none"`) is also included. The set of methods are contained in the `p.adjust.methods` vector for the benefit of methods that need to have the method as an option and pass it on to `p.adjust`.

The first four methods are designed to give strong control of the family-wise error rate. There seems no reason to use the unmodified Bonferroni correction because it is dominated by Holm's method, which is also valid under arbitrary assumptions.

Hochberg's and Hommel's methods are valid when the hypothesis tests are independent or when they are non-negatively associated (Sarkar, 1998; Sarkar and Chang, 1997). Hommel's method is more powerful than Hochberg's, but the difference is usually small and the Hochberg p-values are faster to compute.

The `"BH"` (aka `"fdr"`) and `"BY"` method of Benjamini, Hochberg, and Yekutieli control the false discovery rate, the expected proportion of false discoveries amongst the rejected hypotheses. The false discovery rate is a less stringent condition than the family-wise error rate, so these methods are more powerful than the others.

Note that you can set `n` larger than `length(p)` which means the unobserved p-values are assumed to be greater than all the observed p for `"bonferroni"` and `"holm"` methods and equal to 1 for the other methods.

Value

A numeric vector of corrected p-values (of the same length as `p`, with names copied from `p`).

References

Benjamini, Y., and Hochberg, Y. (1995). Controlling the false discovery rate: a practical and powerful approach to multiple testing. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B* **57**, 289–300.

Benjamini, Y., and Yekutieli, D. (2001). The control of the false discovery rate in multiple testing under dependency. *Annals of Statistics* **29**, 1165–1188.

Holm, S. (1979). A simple sequentially rejective multiple test procedure. *Scandinavian Journal of Statistics* **6**, 65–70.

Hommel, G. (1988). A stagewise rejective multiple test procedure based on a modified Bonferroni test. *Biometrika* **75**, 383–386.

Hochberg, Y. (1988). A sharper Bonferroni procedure for multiple tests of significance. *Biometrika* **75**, 800–803.

Shaffer, J. P. (1995). Multiple hypothesis testing. *Annual Review of Psychology* **46**, 561–576. (An excellent review of the area.)

Sarkar, S. (1998). Some probability inequalities for ordered MTP2 random variables: a proof of Simes conjecture. *Annals of Statistics* **26**, 494–504.

Sarkar, S., and Chang, C. K. (1997). Simes' method for multiple hypothesis testing with positively dependent test statistics. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **92**, 1601–1608.

Wright, S. P. (1992). Adjusted P-values for simultaneous inference. *Biometrics* **48**, 1005–1013. (Explains the adjusted P-value approach.)

See Also

`pairwise.*` functions such as `pairwise.t.test`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

set.seed(123)
x <- rnorm(50, mean = c(rep(0, 25), rep(3, 25)))
p <- 2*pnorm(sort(-abs(x)))

round(p, 3)
round(p.adjust(p), 3)
round(p.adjust(p, "BH"), 3)

## or all of them at once (dropping the "fdr" alias):
p.adjust.M <- p.adjust.methods[p.adjust.methods != "fdr"]
p.adj    <- sapply(p.adjust.M, function(meth) p.adjust(p, meth))
p.adj.60 <- sapply(p.adjust.M, function(meth) p.adjust(p, meth, n = 60))
stopifnot(identical(p.adj[,"none"], p), p.adj <= p.adj.60)
round(p.adj, 3)
## or a bit nicer:
noquote(apply(p.adj, 2, format.pval, digits = 3))


## and a graphic:
matplot(p, p.adj, ylab="p.adjust(p, meth)", type = "l", asp = 1, lty = 1:6,
        main = "P-value adjustments")
legend(0.7, 0.6, p.adjust.M, col = 1:6, lty = 1:6)

## Can work with NAs:
```

```
pN <- p; iN <- c(46, 47); pN[iN] <- NA
pN.a <- sapply(p.adjust.M, function(meth) p.adjust(pN, meth))
## The smallest 20 P-values all affected by the NAs :
round((pN.a / p.adj)[1:20, ] , 4)
```

`pairwise.prop.test` *Pairwise comparisons for proportions*

Description

Calculate pairwise comparisons between pairs of proportions with correction for multiple testing

Usage

```
pairwise.prop.test(x, n, p.adjust.method = p.adjust.methods, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	Vector of counts of successes or a matrix with 2 columns giving the counts of successes and failures, respectively.
`n`	Vector of counts of trials; ignored if `x` is a matrix.
`p.adjust.method`	Method for adjusting p values (see `p.adjust`)
`...`	Additional arguments to pass to `prop.test`

Value

Object of class `"pairwise.htest"`

See Also

`prop.test`, `p.adjust`

Examples

```
smokers  <- c( 83, 90, 129, 70 )
patients <- c( 86, 93, 136, 82 )
pairwise.prop.test(smokers, patients)
```

`pairwise.t.test` *Pairwise t tests*

Description

Calculate pairwise comparisons between group levels with corrections for multiple testing

Usage

```
pairwise.t.test(x, g, p.adjust.method = p.adjust.methods,
                pool.sd = !paired, paired = FALSE,
                alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
                ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	response vector.
`g`	grouping vector or factor.
`p.adjust.method`	Method for adjusting p values (see `p.adjust`).
`pool.sd`	switch to allow/disallow the use of a pooled SD
`paired`	a logical indicating whether you want paired t-tests.
`alternative`	a character string specifying the alternative hypothesis, must be one of `"two.sided"` (default), `"greater"` or `"less"`.
`...`	additional arguments to pass to `t.test`.

Details

The `pool.sd` switch calculates a common SD for all groups and uses that for all comparisons (this can be useful if some groups are small). This method does not actually call `t.test`, so extra arguments are ignored. Pooling does not generalize to paired tests so `pool.sd` and `paired` cannot both be `TRUE`.

Only the lower triangle of the matrix of possible comparisons is being calculated, so setting `alternative` to anything other than `"two.sided"` requires that the levels of `g` are ordered sensibly.

Value

Object of class `"pairwise.htest"`

See Also

`t.test`, `p.adjust`

Examples

```
attach(airquality)
Month <- factor(Month, labels = month.abb[5:9])
pairwise.t.test(Ozone, Month)
pairwise.t.test(Ozone, Month, p.adj = "bonf")
pairwise.t.test(Ozone, Month, pool.sd = FALSE)
detach()
```

pairwise.table *Tabulate p values for pairwise comparisons*

Description

Creates table of p values for pairwise comparisons with corrections for multiple testing.

Usage

```
pairwise.table(compare.levels, level.names, p.adjust.method)
```

Arguments

compare.levels	Function to compute (raw) p value given indices i and j
level.names	Names of the group levels
p.adjust.method	Method for multiple testing adjustment

Details

Functions that do multiple group comparisons create separate compare.levels functions (assumed to be symmetrical in i and j) and passes them to this function.

Value

Table of p values in lower triangular form.

See Also

pairwise.t.test

pairwise.wilcox.test *Pairwise Wilcoxon Rank Sum Tests*

Description

Calculate pairwise comparisons between group levels with corrections for multiple testing.

Usage

```
pairwise.wilcox.test(x, g, p.adjust.method = p.adjust.methods,
                     paired = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	response vector.
g	grouping vector or factor.
p.adjust.method	method for adjusting p values (see p.adjust).
paired	a logical indicating whether you want a paired test.
...	additional arguments to pass to wilcox.test.

Details

Extra arguments that are passed on to `wilcox.test` may or may not be sensible in this context. In particular, only the lower triangle of the matrix of possible comparisons is being calculated, so setting `alternative` to anything other than `"two.sided"` requires that the levels of `g` are ordered sensibly.

Value

Object of class `"pairwise.htest"`

See Also

`wilcox.test`, `p.adjust`

Examples

```
attach(airquality)
Month <- factor(Month, labels = month.abb[5:9])
## These give warnings because of ties :
pairwise.wilcox.test(Ozone, Month)
pairwise.wilcox.test(Ozone, Month, p.adj = "bonf")
detach()
```

`plot.acf` *Plot Autocovariance and Autocorrelation Functions*

Description

Plot method for objects of class `"acf"`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class acf
plot(x, ci = 0.95, type = "h", xlab = "Lag", ylab = NULL,
     ylim = NULL, main = NULL,
     ci.col = "blue", ci.type = c("white", "ma"),
     max.mfrow = 6, ask = Npgs > 1 && dev.interactive(),
     mar = if(nser > 2) c(3,2,2,0.8) else par("mar"),
     oma = if(nser > 2) c(1,1.2,1,1) else par("oma"),
     mgp = if(nser > 2) c(1.5,0.6,0) else par("mgp"),
     xpd = par("xpd"),
     cex.main = if(nser > 2) 1 else par("cex.main"),
     verbose = getOption("verbose"),
     ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `"acf"`.
`ci`	coverage probability for confidence interval. Plotting of the confidence interval is suppressed if `ci` is zero or negative.
`type`	the type of plot to be drawn, default to histogram like vertical lines.

xlab	the x label of the plot.
ylab	the y label of the plot.
ylim	numeric of length 2 giving the y limits for the plot.
main	overall title for the plot.
ci.col	colour to plot the confidence interval lines.
ci.type	should the confidence limits assume a white noise input or for lag k an MA($k-1$) input?
max.mfrow	positive integer; for multivariate x indicating how many rows and columns of plots should be put on one page, using par(mfrow = c(m,m)).
ask	logical; if TRUE, the user is asked before a new page is started.
mar, oma, mgp, xpd, cex.main	graphics parameters as in par(*), by default adjusted to use smaller than default margins for multivariate x only.
verbose	logical. Should report extra information on progress?
...	graphics parameters to be passed to the plotting routines.

Note

The confidence interval plotted in plot.acf is based on an *uncorrelated* series and should be treated with appropriate caution. Using ci.type = "ma" may be less potentially misleading.

See Also

acf which calls plot.acf by default.

Examples

```
require(graphics)


z4  <- ts(matrix(rnorm(400), 100, 4), start = c(1961, 1), frequency = 12)
z7  <- ts(matrix(rnorm(700), 100, 7), start = c(1961, 1), frequency = 12)
acf(z4)
acf(z7, max.mfrow = 7)   # squeeze onto 1 page
acf(z7) # multi-page
```

---

plot.density *Plot Method for Kernel Density Estimation*

Description

The plot method for density objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class density
plot(x, main = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = "Density", type = "l",
     zero.line = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a "density" object.
main, xlab, ylab, type	plotting parameters with useful defaults.
...	further plotting parameters.
zero.line	logical; if TRUE, add a base line at $y = 0$

Value

None.

See Also

density.

---

plot.HoltWinters *Plot function for HoltWinters objects*

Description

Produces a chart of the original time series along with the fitted values. Optionally, predicted values (and their confidence bounds) can also be plotted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class HoltWinters
plot(x, predicted.values = NA, intervals = TRUE,
        separator = TRUE, col = 1, col.predicted = 2,
        col.intervals = 4, col.separator = 1, lty = 1,
        lty.predicted = 1, lty.intervals = 1, lty.separator = 3,
        ylab = "Observed / Fitted",
        main = "Holt-Winters filtering",
        ylim = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	Object of class "HoltWinters"
predicted.values	Predicted values as returned by predict.HoltWinters
intervals	If TRUE, the prediction intervals are plotted (default).
separator	If TRUE, a separating line between fitted and predicted values is plotted (default).
col, lty	Color/line type of original data (default: black solid).
col.predicted, lty.predicted	Color/line type of fitted and predicted values (default: red solid).
col.intervals, lty.intervals	Color/line type of prediction intervals (default: blue solid).
col.separator, lty.separator	Color/line type of observed/predicted values separator (default: black dashed).

ylab	Label of the y-axis.
main	Main title.
ylim	Limits of the y-axis. If NULL, the range is chosen such that the plot contains the original series, the fitted values, and the predicted values if any.
...	Other graphics parameters.

Author(s)

David Meyer <David.Meyer@wu.ac.at>

References

C. C. Holt (1957) Forecasting trends and seasonals by exponentially weighted moving averages, *ONR Research Memorandum, Carnegie Institute of Technology* **52**.

P. R. Winters (1960) Forecasting sales by exponentially weighted moving averages, *Management Science* **6**, 324–342.

See Also

HoltWinters, predict.HoltWinters

---

plot.isoreg *Plot Method for isoreg Objects*

Description

The plot and lines method for objects of class isoreg.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class isoreg
plot(x, plot.type = c("single", "row.wise", "col.wise"),
      main = paste("Isotonic regression", deparse(x$call)),
      main2 = "Cumulative Data and Convex Minorant",
      xlab = "x0", ylab = "x$y",
      par.fit = list(col = "red", cex = 1.5, pch = 13, lwd = 1.5),
      mar = if (both) 0.1 + c(3.5, 2.5, 1, 1) else par("mar"),
      mgp = if (both) c(1.6, 0.7, 0) else par("mgp"),
      grid = length(x$x) < 12, ...)

## S3 method for class isoreg
lines(x, col = "red", lwd = 1.5,
       do.points = FALSE, cex = 1.5, pch = 13, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an isoreg object.
plot.type	character indicating which type of plot is desired. The first (default) only draws the data and the fit, where the others add a plot of the cumulative data and fit.
main	main title of plot, see title.
main2	title for second (cumulative) plot.
xlab, ylab	x- and y- axis annotation.
par.fit	a list of arguments (for points and lines) for drawing the fit.
mar, mgp	graphical parameters, see par, mainly for the case of two plots.
grid	logical indicating if grid lines should be drawn. If true, grid() is used for the first plot, where as vertical lines are drawn at 'touching' points for the cumulative plot.
do.points	for lines(): logical indicating if the step points should be drawn as well (and as they are drawn in plot()).
col, lwd, cex, pch	graphical arguments for lines(), where cex and pch are only used when do.points is TRUE.
...	further arguments passed to and from methods.

See Also

isoreg for computation of isoreg objects.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

utils::example(isoreg) # for the examples there

plot(y3, main = "simple plot(.)  +  lines(<isoreg>)")
lines(ir3)

## same plot as above, "proving" that only ranks of x are important
plot(isoreg(2^(1:9), c(1,0,4,3,3,5,4,2,0)), plot.type = "row", log = "x")

plot(ir3, plot.type = "row", ylab = "y3")
plot(isoreg(y3 - 4), plot.t="r", ylab = "y3 - 4")
plot(ir4, plot.type = "ro",  ylab = "y4", xlab = "x = 1:n")

## experiment a bit with these (C-c C-j):
plot(isoreg(sample(9),  y3), plot.type = "row")
plot(isoreg(sample(9),  y3), plot.type = "col.wise")

plot(ir <- isoreg(sample(10), sample(10, replace = TRUE)),
                  plot.type = "r")
```

plot.lm *Plot Diagnostics for an lm Object*

Description

Six plots (selectable by which) are currently available: a plot of residuals against fitted values, a Scale-Location plot of $\sqrt{|residuals|}$ against fitted values, a Normal Q-Q plot, a plot of Cook's distances versus row labels, a plot of residuals against leverages, and a plot of Cook's distances against leverage/(1-leverage). By default, the first three and 5 are provided.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lm
plot(x, which = c(1:3, 5),
     caption = list("Residuals vs Fitted", "Normal Q-Q",
       "Scale-Location", "Cooks distance",
       "Residuals vs Leverage",
       expression("Cooks dist vs Leverage  " * h[ii] / (1 - h[ii]))),
     panel = if(add.smooth) panel.smooth else points,
     sub.caption = NULL, main = "",
     ask = prod(par("mfcol")) < length(which) && dev.interactive(),
     ...,
     id.n = 3, labels.id = names(residuals(x)), cex.id = 0.75,
     qqline = TRUE, cook.levels = c(0.5, 1.0),
     add.smooth = getOption("add.smooth"), label.pos = c(4,2),
     cex.caption = 1)
```

Arguments

x	lm object, typically result of lm or glm.
which	if a subset of the plots is required, specify a subset of the numbers 1:6.
caption	captions to appear above the plots; character vector or list of valid graphics annotations, see as.graphicsAnnot. Can be set to "" or NA to suppress all captions.
panel	panel function. The useful alternative to points, panel.smooth can be chosen by add.smooth = TRUE.
sub.caption	common title—above the figures if there are more than one; used as sub (s.title) otherwise. If NULL, as by default, a possible abbreviated version of deparse(x$call) is used.
main	title to each plot—in addition to caption.
ask	logical; if TRUE, the user is *ask*ed before each plot, see par(ask=.).
...	other parameters to be passed through to plotting functions.
id.n	number of points to be labelled in each plot, starting with the most extreme.
labels.id	vector of labels, from which the labels for extreme points will be chosen. NULL uses observation numbers.
cex.id	magnification of point labels.
qqline	logical indicating if a qqline() should be added to the normal Q-Q plot.

`cook.levels`	levels of Cook's distance at which to draw contours.
`add.smooth`	logical indicating if a smoother should be added to most plots; see also `panel` above.
`label.pos`	positioning of labels, for the left half and right half of the graph respectively, for plots 1-3.
`cex.caption`	controls the size of `caption`.

Details

`sub.caption`—by default the function call—is shown as a subtitle (under the x-axis title) on each plot when plots are on separate pages, or as a subtitle in the outer margin (if any) when there are multiple plots per page.

The 'Scale-Location' plot, also called 'Spread-Location' or 'S-L' plot, takes the square root of the absolute residuals in order to diminish skewness ($\sqrt{|E|}$) is much less skewed than $|E|$ for Gaussian zero-mean E).

The 'S-L', the Q-Q, and the Residual-Leverage plot, use *standardized* residuals which have identical variance (under the hypothesis). They are given as $R_i/(s \times \sqrt{1 - h_{ii}})$ where h_{ii} are the diagonal entries of the hat matrix, `influence()$hat` (see also `hat`), and where the Residual-Leverage plot uses standardized Pearson residuals (`residuals.glm(type = "pearson")`) for $R[i]$.

The Residual-Leverage plot shows contours of equal Cook's distance, for values of `cook.levels` (by default 0.5 and 1) and omits cases with leverage one with a warning. If the leverages are constant (as is typically the case in a balanced `aov` situation) the plot uses factor level combinations instead of the leverages for the x-axis. (The factor levels are ordered by mean fitted value.)

In the Cook's distance vs leverage/(1-leverage) plot, contours of standardized residuals that are equal in magnitude are lines through the origin. The contour lines are labelled with the magnitudes.

Author(s)

John Maindonald and Martin Maechler.

References

Belsley, D. A., Kuh, E. and Welsch, R. E. (1980) *Regression Diagnostics.* New York: Wiley.

Cook, R. D. and Weisberg, S. (1982) *Residuals and Influence in Regression.* London: Chapman and Hall.

Firth, D. (1991) Generalized Linear Models. In Hinkley, D. V. and Reid, N. and Snell, E. J., eds: Pp. 55-82 in Statistical Theory and Modelling. In Honour of Sir David Cox, FRS. London: Chapman and Hall.

Hinkley, D. V. (1975) On power transformations to symmetry. *Biometrika* **62**, 101–111.

McCullagh, P. and Nelder, J. A. (1989) *Generalized Linear Models.* London: Chapman and Hall.

See Also

`termplot`, `lm.influence`, `cooks.distance`, `hatvalues`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Analysis of the life-cycle savings data
## given in Belsley, Kuh and Welsch.
lm.SR <- lm(sr ~ pop15 + pop75 + dpi + ddpi, data = LifeCycleSavings)
plot(lm.SR)

## 4 plots on 1 page;
## allow room for printing model formula in outer margin:
par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 2, 0))
plot(lm.SR)
plot(lm.SR, id.n = NULL)                # no ids
plot(lm.SR, id.n = 5, labels.id = NULL)  # 5 id numbers

## Was default in R <= 2.1.x:
## Cooks distances instead of Residual-Leverage plot
plot(lm.SR, which = 1:4)

## Fit a smooth curve, where applicable:
plot(lm.SR, panel = panel.smooth)
## Gives a smoother curve
plot(lm.SR, panel = function(x, y) panel.smooth(x, y, span = 1))

par(mfrow = c(2,1))  # same oma as above
plot(lm.SR, which = 1:2, sub.caption = "Saving Rates, n=50, p=5")
```

---

plot.ppr *Plot Ridge Functions for Projection Pursuit Regression Fit*

Description

Plot ridge functions for projection pursuit regression fit.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ppr
plot(x, ask, type = "o", ...)
```

Arguments

x	A fit of class "ppr" as produced by a call to ppr.
ask	the graphics parameter ask: see par for details. If set to TRUE will ask between the plot of each cross-section.
type	the type of line to draw
...	further graphical parameters

Value

None

Side Effects

A series of plots are drawn on the current graphical device, one for each term in the fit.

See Also

ppr, par

Examples

```
require(graphics)

with(rock, {
area1 <- area/10000; peri1 <- peri/10000
par(mfrow = c(3,2)) # maybe: , pty = "s")
rock.ppr <- ppr(log(perm) ~ area1 + peri1 + shape,
                data = rock, nterms = 2, max.terms = 5)
plot(rock.ppr, main = "ppr(log(perm)~ ., nterms=2, max.terms=5)")
plot(update(rock.ppr, bass = 5), main = "update(..., bass = 5)")
plot(update(rock.ppr, sm.method = "gcv", gcvpen = 2),
     main = "update(..., sm.method=\"gcv\", gcvpen=2)")
})
```

---

plot.profile.nls *Plot a profile.nls Object*

Description

Displays a series of plots of the profile t function and interpolated confidence intervals for the parameters in a nonlinear regression model that has been fit with nls and profiled with profile.nls.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class profile.nls
plot(x, levels, conf = c(99, 95, 90, 80, 50)/100,
     absVal = TRUE, ylab = NULL, lty = 2, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "profile.nls"
levels	levels, on the scale of the absolute value of a t statistic, at which to interpolate intervals. Usually conf is used instead of giving levels explicitly.
conf	a numeric vector of confidence levels for profile-based confidence intervals on the parameters. Defaults to c(0.99, 0.95, 0.90, 0.80, 0.50).
absVal	a logical value indicating whether or not the plots should be on the scale of the absolute value of the profile t. Defaults to TRUE.
lty	the line type to be used for axis and dropped lines.
ylab, ...	other arguments to the plot.default function can be passed here (but not xlab, xlim, ylim nor type).

Details

The plots are produced in a set of hard-coded colours, but as these are coded by number their effect can be changed by setting the palette. Colour 1 is used for the axes and 4 for the profile itself. Colours 3 and 6 are used for the axis line at zero and the horizontal/vertical lines dropping to the axes.

Author(s)

Douglas M. Bates and Saikat DebRoy

References

Bates, D.M. and Watts, D.G. (1988), *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley (chapter 6)

See Also

nls, profile, profile.nls

Examples

```
require(graphics)

# obtain the fitted object
fm1 <- nls(demand ~ SSasympOrig(Time, A, lrc), data = BOD)
# get the profile for the fitted model
pr1 <- profile(fm1, alpha = 0.05)
opar <- par(mfrow = c(2,2), oma = c(1.1, 0, 1.1, 0), las = 1)
plot(pr1, conf = c(95, 90, 80, 50)/100)
plot(pr1, conf = c(95, 90, 80, 50)/100, absVal = FALSE)
mtext("Confidence intervals based on the profile sum of squares",
      side = 3, outer = TRUE)
mtext("BOD data - confidence levels of 50%, 80%, 90% and 95%",
      side = 1, outer = TRUE)
par(opar)
```

---

plot.spec *Plotting Spectral Densities*

Description

Plotting method for objects of class "spec". For multivariate time series it plots the marginal spectra of the series or pairs plots of the coherency and phase of the cross-spectra.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class spec
plot(x, add = FALSE, ci = 0.95, log = c("yes", "dB", "no"),
     xlab = "frequency", ylab = NULL, type = "l",
     ci.col = "blue", ci.lty = 3,
     main = NULL, sub = NULL,
     plot.type = c("marginal", "coherency", "phase"),
```

```
     ...)

plot.spec.phase(x, ci = 0.95,
                xlab = "frequency", ylab = "phase",
                ylim = c(-pi, pi), type = "l",
                main = NULL, ci.col = "blue", ci.lty = 3, ...)

plot.spec.coherency(x, ci = 0.95,
                    xlab = "frequency",
                    ylab = "squared coherency",
                    ylim = c(0, 1), type = "l",
                    main = NULL, ci.col = "blue", ci.lty = 3, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "spec".
add	logical. If TRUE, add to already existing plot. Only valid for plot.type = "marginal".
ci	coverage probability for confidence interval. Plotting of the confidence bar/limits is omitted unless ci is strictly positive.
log	If "dB", plot on log10 (decibel) scale (as S-PLUS), otherwise use conventional log scale or linear scale. Logical values are also accepted. The default is "yes" unless options(ts.S.compat = TRUE) has been set, when it is "dB". Only valid for plot.type = "marginal".
xlab	the x label of the plot.
ylab	the y label of the plot. If missing a suitable label will be constructed.
type	the type of plot to be drawn, defaults to lines.
ci.col	colour for plotting confidence bar or confidence intervals for coherency and phase.
ci.lty	line type for confidence intervals for coherency and phase.
main	overall title for the plot. If missing, a suitable title is constructed.
sub	a sub title for the plot. Only used for plot.type = "marginal". If missing, a description of the smoothing is used.
plot.type	For multivariate time series, the type of plot required. Only the first character is needed.
ylim, ...	Graphical parameters.

See Also

spectrum

plot.stepfun *Plot Step Functions*

Description

Method of the generic plot for stepfun objects and utility for plotting piecewise constant functions.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class stepfun
plot(x, xval, xlim, ylim = range(c(y, Fn.kn)),
     xlab = "x", ylab = "f(x)", main = NULL,
     add = FALSE, verticals = TRUE, do.points = (n < 1000),
     pch = par("pch"), col = par("col"),
     col.points = col, cex.points = par("cex"),
     col.hor = col, col.vert = col,
     lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"), ...)

## S3 method for class stepfun
lines(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from "stepfun".
xval	numeric vector of abscissa values at which to evaluate x. Defaults to knots(x) restricted to xlim.
xlim, ylim	limits for the plot region: see plot.window. Both have sensible defaults if omitted.
xlab, ylab	labels for x and y axis.
main	main title.
add	logical; if TRUE only *add* to an existing plot.
verticals	logical; if TRUE, draw vertical lines at steps.
do.points	logical; if TRUE, also draw points at the (xlim restricted) knot locations. Default is true, for sample size < 1000.
pch	character; point character if do.points.
col	default color of all points and lines.
col.points	character or integer code; color of points if do.points.
cex.points	numeric; character expansion factor if do.points.
col.hor	color of horizontal lines.
col.vert	color of vertical lines.
lty, lwd	line type and thickness for all lines.
...	further arguments of plot(.), or if(add) segments(.).

Value

A list with two components

t	abscissa (x) values, including the two outermost ones.
y	y values 'in between' the t[].

Author(s)

Martin Maechler <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch>, 1990, 1993; ported to , 1997.

See Also

ecdf for empirical distribution functions as special step functions, approxfun and splinefun.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

y0 <- c(1,2,4,3)
sfun0  <- stepfun(1:3, y0, f = 0)
sfun.2 <- stepfun(1:3, y0, f = .2)
sfun1  <- stepfun(1:3, y0, right = TRUE)

tt <- seq(0, 3, by = 0.1)
op <- par(mfrow = c(2,2))
plot(sfun0); plot(sfun0, xval = tt, add = TRUE, col.hor = "bisque")
plot(sfun.2);plot(sfun.2, xval = tt, add = TRUE, col = "orange") # all colors
plot(sfun1);lines(sfun1, xval = tt, col.hor = "coral")
##-- This is  revealing :
plot(sfun0, verticals = FALSE,
     main = "stepfun(x, y0, f=f)  for f = 0, .2, 1")
for(i in 1:3)
  lines(list(sfun0, sfun.2, stepfun(1:3, y0, f = 1))[[i]], col = i)
legend(2.5, 1.9, paste("f =", c(0, 0.2, 1)), col = 1:3, lty = 1, y.intersp = 1)
par(op)

# Extend and/or restrict viewport:
plot(sfun0, xlim = c(0,5), ylim = c(0, 3.5),
     main = "plot(stepfun(*), xlim= . , ylim = .)")

##-- this works too (automatic call to  ecdf(.)):
plot.stepfun(rt(50, df = 3), col.vert = "gray20")
```

---

plot.ts *Plotting Time-Series Objects*

Description

Plotting method for objects inheriting from class "ts".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ts
plot(x, y = NULL, plot.type = c("multiple", "single"),
        xy.labels, xy.lines, panel = lines, nc, yax.flip = FALSE,
        mar.multi = c(0, 5.1, 0, if(yax.flip) 5.1 else 2.1),
        oma.multi = c(6, 0, 5, 0), axes = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class ts
lines(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	time series objects, usually inheriting from class `"ts"`.
`plot.type`	for multivariate time series, should the series by plotted separately (with a common time axis) or on a single plot?
`xy.labels`	logical, indicating if `text()` labels should be used for an x-y plot, *or* character, supplying a vector of labels to be used. The default is to label for up to 150 points, and not for more.
`xy.lines`	logical, indicating if `lines` should be drawn for an x-y plot. Defaults to the value of `xy.labels` if that is logical, otherwise to `TRUE`.
`panel`	a `function(x, col, bg, pch, type, ...)` which gives the action to be carried out in each panel of the display for `plot.type = "multiple"`. The default is `lines`.
`nc`	the number of columns to use when `type = "multiple"`. Defaults to 1 for up to 4 series, otherwise to 2.
`yax.flip`	logical indicating if the y-axis (ticks and numbering) should flip from side 2 (left) to 4 (right) from series to series when `type = "multiple"`.
`mar.multi, oma.multi`	the (default) `par` settings for `plot.type = "multiple"`. Modify with care!
`axes`	logical indicating if x- and y- axes should be drawn.
`...`	additional graphical arguments, see `plot`, `plot.default` and `par`.

Details

If `y` is missing, this function creates a time series plot, for multivariate series of one of two kinds depending on `plot.type`.

If `y` is present, both `x` and `y` must be univariate, and a scatter plot `y ~ x` will be drawn, enhanced by using `text` if `xy.labels` is `TRUE` or `character`, and `lines` if `xy.lines` is `TRUE`.

See Also

`ts` for basic time series construction and access functionality.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Multivariate
z <- ts(matrix(rt(200 * 8, df = 3), 200, 8),
        start = c(1961, 1), frequency = 12)
```

```
plot(z, yax.flip = TRUE)
plot(z, axes = FALSE, ann = FALSE, frame.plot = TRUE,
     mar.multi = c(0,0,0,0), oma.multi = c(1,1,5,1))
title("plot(ts(..), axes=FALSE, ann=FALSE, frame.plot=TRUE, mar..., oma...)")

z <- window(z[,1:3], end = c(1969,12))
plot(z, type = "b")    # multiple
plot(z, plot.type = "single", lty = 1:3, col = 4:2)

## A phase plot:
plot(nhtemp, lag(nhtemp, 1), cex = .8, col = "blue",
     main = "Lag plot of New Haven temperatures")

## xy.lines and xy.labels are FALSE for large series:
plot(lag(sunspots, 1), sunspots, pch = ".")

SMI <- EuStockMarkets[, "SMI"]
plot(lag(SMI,  1), SMI, pch = ".")
plot(lag(SMI, 20), SMI, pch = ".", log = "xy",
     main = "4 weeks lagged SMI stocks -- log scale", xy.lines =  TRUE)
```

`Poisson` *The Poisson Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the Poisson distribution with parameter `lambda`.

Usage

```
dpois(x, lambda, log = FALSE)
ppois(q, lambda, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qpois(p, lambda, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rpois(n, lambda)
```

Arguments

`x`	vector of (non-negative integer) quantiles.
`q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of random values to return.
`lambda`	vector of (non-negative) means.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The Poisson distribution has density

$$p(x) = \frac{\lambda^x e^{-\lambda}}{x!}$$

for $x = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. The mean and variance are $E(X) = Var(X) = \lambda$.

If an element of `x` is not integer, the result of `dpois` is zero, with a warning. $p(x)$ is computed using Loader's algorithm, see the reference in `dbinom`.

The quantile is right continuous: `qpois(p, lambda)` is the smallest integer x such that $P(X \leq x) \geq p$.

Setting `lower.tail = FALSE` allows to get much more precise results when the default, `lower.tail = TRUE` would return 1, see the example below.

Value

`dpois` gives the (log) density, `ppois` gives the (log) distribution function, `qpois` gives the quantile function, and `rpois` generates random deviates.

Invalid `lambda` will result in return value `NaN`, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rpois`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Source

`dpois` uses C code contributed by Catherine Loader (see `dbinom`).

`ppois` uses `pgamma`.

`qpois` uses the Cornish–Fisher Expansion to include a skewness correction to a normal approximation, followed by a search.

`rpois` uses

Ahrens, J. H. and Dieter, U. (1982). Computer generation of Poisson deviates from modified normal distributions. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **8**, 163–179.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including `dbinom` for the binomial and `dnbinom` for the negative binomial distribution.

`poisson.test`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

-log(dpois(0:7, lambda = 1) * gamma(1+ 0:7)) # == 1
Ni <- rpois(50, lambda = 4); table(factor(Ni, 0:max(Ni)))

1 - ppois(10*(15:25), lambda = 100)  # becomes 0 (cancellation)
    ppois(10*(15:25), lambda = 100, lower.tail = FALSE)  # no cancellation
```

```
par(mfrow = c(2, 1))
x <- seq(-0.01, 5, 0.01)
plot(x, ppois(x, 1), type = "s", ylab = "F(x)", main = "Poisson(1) CDF")
plot(x, pbinom(x, 100, 0.01), type = "s", ylab = "F(x)",
     main = "Binomial(100, 0.01) CDF")
```

`poisson.test` *Exact Poisson tests*

Description

Performs an exact test of a simple null hypothesis about the rate parameter in Poisson distribution, or for the ratio between two rate parameters.

Usage

```
poisson.test(x, T = 1, r = 1,
    alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
    conf.level = 0.95)
```

Arguments

`x`	number of events. A vector of length one or two.
`T`	time base for event count. A vector of length one or two.
`r`	hypothesized rate or rate ratio
`alternative`	indicates the alternative hypothesis and must be one of `"two.sided"`, `"greater"` or `"less"`. You can specify just the initial letter.
`conf.level`	confidence level for the returned confidence interval.

Details

Confidence intervals are computed similarly to those of `binom.test` in the one-sample case, and using `binom.test` in the two sample case.

Value

A list with class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	the number of events (in the first sample if there are two.)
`parameter`	the corresponding expected count
`p.value`	the p-value of the test.
`conf.int`	a confidence interval for the rate or rate ratio.
`estimate`	the estimated rate or rate ratio.
`null.value`	the rate or rate ratio under the null, `r`.
`alternative`	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
`method`	the character string `"Exact Poisson test"` or `"Comparison of Poisson rates"` as appropriate.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.

Note

The rate parameter in Poisson data is often given based on a "time on test" or similar quantity (person-years, population size, or expected number of cases from mortality tables). This is the role of the T argument.

The one-sample case is effectively the binomial test with a very large n. The two sample case is converted to a binomial test by conditioning on the total event count, and the rate ratio is directly related to the odds in that binomial distribution.

See Also

binom.test

Examples

```
### These are paraphrased from data sets in the ISwR package

## SMR, Welsh Nickel workers
poisson.test(137, 24.19893)

## eba1977, compare Fredericia to other three cities for ages 55-59
poisson.test(c(11, 6+8+7), c(800, 1083+1050+878))
```

---

poly *Compute Orthogonal Polynomials*

Description

Returns or evaluates orthogonal polynomials of degree 1 to degree over the specified set of points x: these are all orthogonal to the constant polynomial of degree 0. Alternatively, evaluate raw polynomials.

Usage

```
poly(x, ..., degree = 1, coefs = NULL, raw = FALSE)
polym(..., degree = 1, raw = FALSE)

## S3 method for class poly
predict(object, newdata, ...)
```

Arguments

x, newdata	a numeric vector at which to evaluate the polynomial. x can also be a matrix. Missing values are not allowed in x.
degree	the degree of the polynomial. Must be less than the number of unique points if raw = TRUE.
coefs	for prediction, coefficients from a previous fit.
raw	if true, use raw and not orthogonal polynomials.
object	an object inheriting from class "poly", normally the result of a call to poly with a single vector argument.
...	poly, polym: further vectors. predict.poly: arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

Although formally degree should be named (as it follows ...), an unnamed second argument of length 1 will be interpreted as the degree.

The orthogonal polynomial is summarized by the coefficients, which can be used to evaluate it via the three-term recursion given in Kennedy & Gentle (1980, pp. 343–4), and used in the predict part of the code.

poly using ... is just a convenience wrapper for polym: coef is ignored. Conversely, if polym is called with a single argument in ... it is a wrapper for poly.

Value

For poly with a single vector argument:
A matrix with rows corresponding to points in x and columns corresponding to the degree, with attributes "degree" specifying the degrees of the columns and (unless raw = TRUE) "coefs" which contains the centering and normalization constants used in constructing the orthogonal polynomials. The matrix has given class c("poly", "matrix").

For poly and polym with more than one input, and predict.poly: a matrix.

Note

This routine is intended for statistical purposes such as contr.poly: it does not attempt to orthogonalize to machine accuracy.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Kennedy, W. J. Jr and Gentle, J. E. (1980) *Statistical Computing* Marcel Dekker.

See Also

contr.poly.

cars for an example of polynomial regression.

Examples

```
od <- options(digits = 3) # avoid too much visual clutter
(z <- poly(1:10, 3))
predict(z, seq(2, 4, 0.5))
zapsmall(poly(seq(4, 6, 0.5), 3, coefs = attr(z, "coefs")))

zapsmall(polym(1:4, c(1, 4:6), degree = 3)) # or just poly()
zapsmall(poly(cbind(1:4, c(1, 4:6)), degree = 3))
options(od)
```

power *Create a Power Link Object*

Description

Creates a link object based on the link function $\eta = \mu^\lambda$.

Usage

```
power(lambda = 1)
```

Arguments

lambda	a real number.

Details

If `lambda` is non-positive, it is taken as zero, and the log link is obtained. The default `lambda = 1` gives the identity link.

Value

A list with components `linkfun`, `linkinv`, `mu.eta`, and `valideta`. See `make.link` for information on their meaning.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S.* Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`make.link`, `family`

To raise a number to a power, see `Arithmetic`.

To calculate the power of a test, see various functions in the **stats** package, e.g., `power.t.test`.

Examples

```
power()
quasi(link = power(1/3))[c("linkfun", "linkinv")]
```

power.anova.test *Power Calculations for Balanced One-Way Analysis of Variance Tests*

Description

Compute power of test or determine parameters to obtain target power.

Usage

```
power.anova.test(groups = NULL, n = NULL,
                 between.var = NULL, within.var = NULL,
                 sig.level = 0.05, power = NULL)
```

Arguments

groups	Number of groups
n	Number of observations (per group)
between.var	Between group variance
within.var	Within group variance
sig.level	Significance level (Type I error probability)
power	Power of test (1 minus Type II error probability)

Details

Exactly one of the parameters groups, n, between.var, power, within.var, and sig.level must be passed as NULL, and that parameter is determined from the others. Notice that sig.level has non-NULL default so NULL must be explicitly passed if you want it computed.

Value

Object of class "power.htest", a list of the arguments (including the computed one) augmented with method and note elements.

Note

uniroot is used to solve power equation for unknowns, so you may see errors from it, notably about inability to bracket the root when invalid arguments are given.

Author(s)

Claus Ekstrøm

See Also

anova, lm, uniroot

Examples

```
power.anova.test(groups = 4, n = 5, between.var = 1, within.var = 3)
# Power = 0.3535594

power.anova.test(groups = 4, between.var = 1, within.var = 3,
                 power = .80)
# n = 11.92613

## Assume we have prior knowledge of the group means:
groupmeans <- c(120, 130, 140, 150)
power.anova.test(groups = length(groupmeans),
                 between.var = var(groupmeans),
                 within.var = 500, power = .90) # n = 15.18834
```

`power.prop.test` *Power Calculations for Two-Sample Test for Proportions*

Description

Compute the power of the two-sample test for proportions, or determine parameters to obtain a target power.

Usage

```
power.prop.test(n = NULL, p1 = NULL, p2 = NULL, sig.level = 0.05,
                power = NULL,
                alternative = c("two.sided", "one.sided"),
                strict = FALSE, tol = .Machine$double.eps^0.25)
```

Arguments

`n`	number of observations (per group)
`p1`	probability in one group
`p2`	probability in other group
`sig.level`	significance level (Type I error probability)
`power`	power of test (1 minus Type II error probability)
`alternative`	one- or two-sided test
`strict`	use strict interpretation in two-sided case
`tol`	numerical tolerance used in root finding, the default providing (at least) four significant digits.

Details

Exactly one of the parameters `n`, `p1`, `p2`, `power`, and `sig.level` must be passed as NULL, and that parameter is determined from the others. Notice that `sig.level` has a non-NULL default so NULL must be explicitly passed if you want it computed.

If `strict = TRUE` is used, the power will include the probability of rejection in the opposite direction of the true effect, in the two-sided case. Without this the power will be half the significance level if the true difference is zero.

Value

Object of class "power.htest", a list of the arguments (including the computed one) augmented with method and note elements.

Note

uniroot is used to solve power equation for unknowns, so you may see errors from it, notably about inability to bracket the root when invalid arguments are given. If one of them is computed p1 < p2 will hold, although this is not enforced when both are specified.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard. Based on previous work by Claus Ekstrøm

See Also

prop.test, uniroot

Examples

```
power.prop.test(n = 50, p1 = .50, p2 = .75)      ## => power = 0.740
power.prop.test(p1 = .50, p2 = .75, power = .90) ## =>     n = 76.7
power.prop.test(n = 50, p1 = .5, power = .90)    ## =>    p2 = 0.8026
power.prop.test(n = 50, p1 = .5, p2 = 0.9, power = .90, sig.level=NULL)
                                                 ## => sig.l = 0.00131
power.prop.test(p1 = .5, p2 = 0.501, sig.level=.001, power=0.90)
                                                 ## => n = 10451937
```

---

power.t.test *Power calculations for one and two sample t tests*

Description

Compute the power of the one- or two- sample t test, or determine parameters to obtain a target power.

Usage

```
power.t.test(n = NULL, delta = NULL, sd = 1, sig.level = 0.05,
             power = NULL,
             type = c("two.sample", "one.sample", "paired"),
             alternative = c("two.sided", "one.sided"),
             strict = FALSE, tol = .Machine$double.eps^0.25)
```

Arguments

n	number of observations (per group)
delta	true difference in means
sd	standard deviation
sig.level	significance level (Type I error probability)
power	power of test (1 minus Type II error probability)

type	string specifying the type of t test
alternative	one- or two-sided test
strict	use strict interpretation in two-sided case
tol	numerical tolerance used in root finding, the default providing (at least) four significant digits.

Details

Exactly one of the parameters n, delta, power, sd, and sig.level must be passed as NULL, and that parameter is determined from the others. Notice that the last two have non-NULL defaults, so NULL must be explicitly passed if you want to compute them.

If strict = TRUE is used, the power will include the probability of rejection in the opposite direction of the true effect, in the two-sided case. Without this the power will be half the significance level if the true difference is zero.

Value

Object of class "power.htest", a list of the arguments (including the computed one) augmented with method and note elements.

Note

uniroot is used to solve the power equation for unknowns, so you may see errors from it, notably about inability to bracket the root when invalid arguments are given.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard. Based on previous work by Claus Ekstrøm

See Also

t.test, uniroot

Examples

```
power.t.test(n = 20, delta = 1)
power.t.test(power = .90, delta = 1)
power.t.test(power = .90, delta = 1, alternative = "one.sided")
```

PP.test *Phillips-Perron Test for Unit Roots*

Description

Computes the Phillips-Perron test for the null hypothesis that x has a unit root against a stationary alternative.

Usage

```
PP.test(x, lshort = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector or univariate time series.
lshort	a logical indicating whether the short or long version of the truncation lag parameter is used.

Details

The general regression equation which incorporates a constant and a linear trend is used and the corrected t-statistic for a first order autoregressive coefficient equals one is computed. To estimate sigma^2 the Newey-West estimator is used. If lshort is TRUE, then the truncation lag parameter is set to trunc(4*(n/100)^0.25), otherwise trunc(12*(n/100)^0.25) is used. The p-values are interpolated from Table 4.2, page 103 of Banerjee *et al* (1993).

Missing values are not handled.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the test statistic.
parameter	the truncation lag parameter.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
method	a character string indicating what type of test was performed.
data.name	a character string giving the name of the data.

Author(s)

A. Trapletti

References

A. Banerjee, J. J. Dolado, J. W. Galbraith, and D. F. Hendry (1993) *Cointegration, Error Correction, and the Econometric Analysis of Non-Stationary Data*, Oxford University Press, Oxford.

P. Perron (1988) Trends and random walks in macroeconomic time series. *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control* **12**, 297–332.

Examples

```
x <- rnorm(1000)
PP.test(x)
y <- cumsum(x) # has unit root
PP.test(y)
```

ppoints *Ordinates for Probability Plotting*

Description

Generates the sequence of probability points `(1:m - a)/(m + (1-a)-a)` where `m` is either `n`, if `length(n)==1`, or `length(n)`.

Usage

```
ppoints(n, a = ifelse(n <= 10, 3/8, 1/2))
```

Arguments

`n`	either the number of points generated or a vector of observations.
`a`	the offset fraction to be used; typically in $(0, 1)$.

Details

If $0 < a < 1$, the resulting values are within $(0, 1)$ (excluding boundaries). In any case, the resulting sequence is symmetric in $[0, 1]$, i.e., `p + rev(p) == 1`.

`ppoints()` is used in `qqplot` and `qqnorm` to generate the set of probabilities at which to evaluate the inverse distribution.

The choice of `a` follows the documentation of the function of the same name in Becker *et al* (1988), and appears to have been motivated by results from Blom (1958) on approximations to expect normal order statistics (see also `quantile`).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Blom, G. (1958) *Statistical Estimates and Transformed Beta Variables.* Wiley

See Also

`qqplot`, `qqnorm`.

Examples

```
ppoints(4) # the same as  ppoints(1:4)
ppoints(10)
ppoints(10, a = 1/2)
```

ppr *Projection Pursuit Regression*

Description

Fit a projection pursuit regression model.

Usage

```
ppr(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
ppr(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
    contrasts = NULL, ..., model = FALSE)

## Default S3 method:
ppr(x, y, weights = rep(1, n),
    ww = rep(1, q), nterms, max.terms = nterms, optlevel = 2,
    sm.method = c("supsmu", "spline", "gcvspline"),
    bass = 0, span = 0, df = 5, gcvpen = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula specifying one or more numeric response variables and the explanatory variables.
x	numeric matrix of explanatory variables. Rows represent observations, and columns represent variables. Missing values are not accepted.
y	numeric matrix of response variables. Rows represent observations, and columns represent variables. Missing values are not accepted.
nterms	number of terms to include in the final model.
data	a data frame (or similar: see model.frame) from which variables specified in formula are preferentially to be taken.
weights	a vector of weights w_i for each *case*.
ww	a vector of weights for each *response*, so the fit criterion is the sum over case i and responses j of w_i ww_j (y_ij - fit_ij)^2 divided by the sum of w_i.
subset	an index vector specifying the cases to be used in the training sample. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
na.action	a function to specify the action to be taken if NAs are found. The default action is given by getOption("na.action"). (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
contrasts	the contrasts to be used when any factor explanatory variables are coded.
max.terms	maximum number of terms to choose from when building the model.
optlevel	integer from 0 to 3 which determines the thoroughness of an optimization routine in the SMART program. See the 'Details' section.
sm.method	the method used for smoothing the ridge functions. The default is to use Friedman's super smoother supsmu. The alternatives are to use the smoothing spline code underlying smooth.spline, either with a specified (equivalent) degrees of freedom for each ridge functions, or to allow the smoothness to be chosen by GCV.

bass	super smoother bass tone control used with automatic span selection (see supsmu); the range of values is 0 to 10, with larger values resulting in increased smoothing.
span	super smoother span control (see supsmu). The default, 0, results in automatic span selection by local cross validation. span can also take a value in (0, 1].
df	if sm.method is "spline" specifies the smoothness of each ridge term via the requested equivalent degrees of freedom.
gcvpen	if sm.method is "gcvspline" this is the penalty used in the GCV selection for each degree of freedom used.
...	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.
model	logical. If true, the model frame is returned.

Details

The basic method is given by Friedman (1984), and is essentially the same code used by S-PLUS's ppreg. This code is extremely sensitive to the compiler used.

The algorithm first adds up to max.terms ridge terms one at a time; it will use less if it is unable to find a term to add that makes sufficient difference. It then removes the least important term at each step until nterms terms are left.

The levels of optimization (argument optlevel) differ in how thoroughly the models are refitted during this process. At level 0 the existing ridge terms are not refitted. At level 1 the projection directions are not refitted, but the ridge functions and the regression coefficients are.

Levels 2 and 3 refit all the terms and are equivalent for one response; level 3 is more careful to re-balance the contributions from each regressor at each step and so is a little less likely to converge to a saddle point of the sum of squares criterion.

Value

A list with the following components, many of which are for use by the method functions.

call	the matched call
p	the number of explanatory variables (after any coding)
q	the number of response variables
mu	the argument nterms
ml	the argument max.terms
gof	the overall residual (weighted) sum of squares for the selected model
gofn	the overall residual (weighted) sum of squares against the number of terms, up to max.terms. Will be invalid (and zero) for less than nterms.
df	the argument df
edf	if sm.method is "spline" or "gcvspline" the equivalent number of degrees of freedom for each ridge term used.
xnames	the names of the explanatory variables
ynames	the names of the response variables
alpha	a matrix of the projection directions, with a column for each ridge term
beta	a matrix of the coefficients applied for each response to the ridge terms: the rows are the responses and the columns the ridge terms
yb	the weighted means of each response

`ys`	the overall scale factor used: internally the responses are divided by `ys` to have unit total weighted sum of squares.
`fitted.values`	the fitted values, as a matrix if `q > 1`.
`residuals`	the residuals, as a matrix if `q > 1`.
`smod`	internal work array, which includes the ridge functions evaluated at the training set points.
`model`	(only if `model = TRUE`) the model frame.

Source

Friedman (1984): converted to double precision and added interface to smoothing splines by B. D. Ripley, originally for the **MASS** package.

References

Friedman, J. H. and Stuetzle, W. (1981) Projection pursuit regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **76**, 817–823.

Friedman, J. H. (1984) SMART User's Guide. Laboratory for Computational Statistics, Stanford University Technical Report No. 1.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Springer.

See Also

`plot.ppr`, `supsmu`, `smooth.spline`

Examples

```
require(graphics)

# Note: your numerical values may differ
attach(rock)
area1 <- area/10000; peri1 <- peri/10000
rock.ppr <- ppr(log(perm) ~ area1 + peri1 + shape,
                data = rock, nterms = 2, max.terms = 5)
rock.ppr
# Call:
# ppr.formula(formula = log(perm) ~ area1 + peri1 + shape, data = rock,
#     nterms = 2, max.terms = 5)
#
# Goodness of fit:
#  2 terms  3 terms  4 terms  5 terms
# 8.737806 5.289517 4.745799 4.490378

summary(rock.ppr)
# .....  (same as above)
# .....
#
# Projection direction vectors:
#       term 1      term 2
# area1  0.34357179  0.37071027
# peri1 -0.93781471 -0.61923542
# shape  0.04961846  0.69218595
#
# Coefficients of ridge terms:
```

```
#    term 1    term 2
# 1.6079271 0.5460971

par(mfrow = c(3,2))   # maybe: , pty = "s")
plot(rock.ppr, main = "ppr(log(perm)~ ., nterms=2, max.terms=5)")
plot(update(rock.ppr, bass = 5), main = "update(..., bass = 5)")
plot(update(rock.ppr, sm.method = "gcv", gcvpen = 2),
     main = "update(..., sm.method=\"gcv\", gcvpen=2)")
cbind(perm = rock$perm, prediction = round(exp(predict(rock.ppr)), 1))
detach()
```

---

prcomp *Principal Components Analysis*

Description

Performs a principal components analysis on the given data matrix and returns the results as an object of class prcomp.

Usage

```
prcomp(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
prcomp(formula, data = NULL, subset, na.action, ...)

## Default S3 method:
prcomp(x, retx = TRUE, center = TRUE, scale. = FALSE,
       tol = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class prcomp
predict(object, newdata, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula with no response variable, referring only to numeric variables.
data	an optional data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector used to select rows (observations) of the data matrix x.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default is set by the na.action setting of options, and is na.fail if that is unset. The 'factory-fresh' default is na.omit.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods. If x is a formula one might specify scale. or tol.
x	a numeric or complex matrix (or data frame) which provides the data for the principal components analysis.
retx	a logical value indicating whether the rotated variables should be returned.
center	a logical value indicating whether the variables should be shifted to be zero centered. Alternately, a vector of length equal the number of columns of x can be supplied. The value is passed to scale.

scale.	a logical value indicating whether the variables should be scaled to have unit variance before the analysis takes place. The default is FALSE for consistency with S, but in general scaling is advisable. Alternatively, a vector of length equal the number of columns of x can be supplied. The value is passed to scale.
tol	a value indicating the magnitude below which components should be omitted. (Components are omitted if their standard deviations are less than or equal to tol times the standard deviation of the first component.) With the default null setting, no components are omitted. Other settings for tol could be tol = 0 or tol = sqrt(.Machine$double.eps), which would omit essentially constant components.
object	Object of class inheriting from "prcomp"
newdata	An optional data frame or matrix in which to look for variables with which to predict. If omitted, the scores are used. If the original fit used a formula or a data frame or a matrix with column names, newdata must contain columns with the same names. Otherwise it must contain the same number of columns, to be used in the same order.

Details

The calculation is done by a singular value decomposition of the (centered and possibly scaled) data matrix, not by using eigen on the covariance matrix. This is generally the preferred method for numerical accuracy. The print method for these objects prints the results in a nice format and the plot method produces a scree plot.

Unlike princomp, variances are computed with the usual divisor $N - 1$.

Note that scale = TRUE cannot be used if there are zero or constant (for center = TRUE) variables.

Value

prcomp returns a list with class "prcomp" containing the following components:

sdev	the standard deviations of the principal components (i.e., the square roots of the eigenvalues of the covariance/correlation matrix, though the calculation is actually done with the singular values of the data matrix).
rotation	the matrix of variable loadings (i.e., a matrix whose columns contain the eigenvectors). The function princomp returns this in the element loadings.
x	if retx is true the value of the rotated data (the centred (and scaled if requested) data multiplied by the rotation matrix) is returned. Hence, cov(x) is the diagonal matrix diag(sdev^2). For the formula method, napredict() is applied to handle the treatment of values omitted by the na.action.
center, scale	the centering and scaling used, or FALSE.

Note

The signs of the columns of the rotation matrix are arbitrary, and so may differ between different programs for PCA, and even between different builds of .

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Mardia, K. V., J. T. Kent, and J. M. Bibby (1979) *Multivariate Analysis*, London: Academic Press.

Venables, W. N. and B. D. Ripley (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

biplot.prcomp, screeplot, princomp, cor, cov, svd, eigen.

Examples

```
## signs are random
require(graphics)

## the variances of the variables in the
## USArrests data vary by orders of magnitude, so scaling is appropriate
prcomp(USArrests)  # inappropriate
prcomp(USArrests, scale = TRUE)
prcomp(~ Murder + Assault + Rape, data = USArrests, scale = TRUE)
plot(prcomp(USArrests))
summary(prcomp(USArrests, scale = TRUE))
biplot(prcomp(USArrests, scale = TRUE))
```

---

predict *Model Predictions*

Description

predict is a generic function for predictions from the results of various model fitting functions. The function invokes particular *methods* which depend on the class of the first argument.

Usage

```
predict (object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a model object for which prediction is desired.
...	additional arguments affecting the predictions produced.

Details

Most prediction methods which are similar to those for linear models have an argument newdata specifying the first place to look for explanatory variables to be used for prediction. Some considerable attempts are made to match up the columns in newdata to those used for fitting, for example that they are of comparable types and that any factors have the same level set in the same order (or can be transformed to be so).

Time series prediction methods in package **stats** have an argument n.ahead specifying how many time steps ahead to predict.

Many methods have a logical argument se.fit saying if standard errors are to returned.

Value

The form of the value returned by predict depends on the class of its argument. See the documentation of the particular methods for details of what is produced by that method.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

predict.glm, predict.lm, predict.loess, predict.nls, predict.poly, predict.princomp, predict.smooth.spline.

SafePrediction for prediction from (univariable) polynomial and spline fits.

For time-series prediction, predict.ar, predict.Arima, predict.arima0, predict.HoltWinters, predict.StructTS.

Examples

```
require(utils)

## All the "predict" methods found
## NB most of the methods in the standard packages are hidden.
for(fn in methods("predict"))
   try({
       f <- eval(substitute(getAnywhere(fn)$objs[[1]], list(fn = fn)))
       cat(fn, ":\n\t", deparse(args(f)), "\n")
       }, silent = TRUE)
```

---

predict.Arima *Forecast from ARIMA fits*

Description

Forecast from models fitted by arima.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class Arima
predict(object, n.ahead = 1, newxreg = NULL,
        se.fit = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	The result of an arima fit.
n.ahead	The number of steps ahead for which prediction is required.
newxreg	New values of xreg to be used for prediction. Must have at least n.ahead rows.
se.fit	Logical: should standard errors of prediction be returned?
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Finite-history prediction is used, via KalmanForecast. This is only statistically efficient if the MA part of the fit is invertible, so predict.Arima will give a warning for non-invertible MA models.

The standard errors of prediction exclude the uncertainty in the estimation of the ARMA model and the regression coefficients. According to Harvey (1993, pp. 58–9) the effect is small.

Value

A time series of predictions, or if `se.fit = TRUE`, a list with components `pred`, the predictions, and `se`, the estimated standard errors. Both components are time series.

References

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press.

Harvey, A. C. and McKenzie, C. R. (1982) Algorithm AS182. An algorithm for finite sample prediction from ARIMA processes. *Applied Statistics* **31**, 180–187.

Harvey, A. C. (1993) *Time Series Models*, 2nd Edition, Harvester Wheatsheaf, sections 3.3 and 4.4.

See Also

`arima`

Examples

```
od <- options(digits = 5) # avoid too much spurious accuracy
predict(arima(lh, order = c(3,0,0)), n.ahead = 12)

(fit <- arima(USAccDeaths, order = c(0,1,1),
              seasonal = list(order = c(0,1,1))))
predict(fit, n.ahead = 6)
options(od)
```

---

predict.glm *Predict Method for GLM Fits*

Description

Obtains predictions and optionally estimates standard errors of those predictions from a fitted generalized linear model object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glm
predict(object, newdata = NULL,
            type = c("link", "response", "terms"),
            se.fit = FALSE, dispersion = NULL, terms = NULL,
            na.action = na.pass, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a fitted object of class inheriting from `"glm"`.
`newdata`	optionally, a data frame in which to look for variables with which to predict. If omitted, the fitted linear predictors are used.

type	the type of prediction required. The default is on the scale of the linear predictors; the alternative "response" is on the scale of the response variable. Thus for a default binomial model the default predictions are of log-odds (probabilities on logit scale) and type = "response" gives the predicted probabilities. The "terms" option returns a matrix giving the fitted values of each term in the model formula on the linear predictor scale. The value of this argument can be abbreviated.
se.fit	logical switch indicating if standard errors are required.
dispersion	the dispersion of the GLM fit to be assumed in computing the standard errors. If omitted, that returned by summary applied to the object is used.
terms	with type = "terms" by default all terms are returned. A character vector specifies which terms are to be returned
na.action	function determining what should be done with missing values in newdata. The default is to predict NA.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

If newdata is omitted the predictions are based on the data used for the fit. In that case how cases with missing values in the original fit is determined by the na.action argument of that fit. If na.action = na.omit omitted cases will not appear in the residuals, whereas if na.action = na.exclude they will appear (in predictions and standard errors), with residual value NA. See also napredict.

Value

If se.fit = FALSE, a vector or matrix of predictions. For type = "terms" this is a matrix with a column per term, and may have an attribute "constant".

If se.fit = TRUE, a list with components

fit	Predictions, as for se.fit = FALSE.
se.fit	Estimated standard errors.
residual.scale	A scalar giving the square root of the dispersion used in computing the standard errors.

Note

Variables are first looked for in newdata and then searched for in the usual way (which will include the environment of the formula used in the fit). A warning will be given if the variables found are not of the same length as those in newdata if it was supplied.

See Also

glm, SafePrediction

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## example from Venables and Ripley (2002, pp. 190-2.)
ldose <- rep(0:5, 2)
numdead <- c(1, 4, 9, 13, 18, 20, 0, 2, 6, 10, 12, 16)
```

```
sex <- factor(rep(c("M", "F"), c(6, 6)))
SF <- cbind(numdead, numalive = 20-numdead)
budworm.lg <- glm(SF ~ sex*ldose, family = binomial)
summary(budworm.lg)

plot(c(1,32), c(0,1), type = "n", xlab = "dose",
     ylab = "prob", log = "x")
text(2^ldose, numdead/20, as.character(sex))
ld <- seq(0, 5, 0.1)
lines(2^ld, predict(budworm.lg, data.frame(ldose = ld,
   sex = factor(rep("M", length(ld)), levels = levels(sex))),
   type = "response"))
lines(2^ld, predict(budworm.lg, data.frame(ldose = ld,
   sex = factor(rep("F", length(ld)), levels = levels(sex))),
   type = "response"))
```

`predict.HoltWinters` *Prediction Function for Fitted Holt-Winters Models*

Description

Computes predictions and prediction intervals for models fitted by the Holt-Winters method.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class HoltWinters
predict(object, n.ahead = 1, prediction.interval = FALSE,
       level = 0.95, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object of class `HoltWinters`.
`n.ahead`	Number of future periods to predict.
`prediction.interval`	logical. If `TRUE`, the lower and upper bounds of the corresponding prediction intervals are computed.
`level`	Confidence level for the prediction interval.
`...`	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

A time series of the predicted values. If prediction intervals are requested, a multiple time series is returned with columns `fit`, `lwr` and `upr` for the predicted values and the lower and upper bounds respectively.

Author(s)

David Meyer <David.Meyer@wu.ac.at>

References

C. C. Holt (1957) Forecasting trends and seasonals by exponentially weighted moving averages, *ONR Research Memorandum, Carnegie Institute of Technology* **52**.

P. R. Winters (1960) Forecasting sales by exponentially weighted moving averages, *Management Science* **6**, 324–342.

See Also

`HoltWinters`

Examples

```
require(graphics)

m <- HoltWinters(co2)
p <- predict(m, 50, prediction.interval = TRUE)
plot(m, p)
```

---

predict.lm *Predict method for Linear Model Fits*

Description

Predicted values based on linear model object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lm
predict(object, newdata, se.fit = FALSE, scale = NULL, df = Inf,
        interval = c("none", "confidence", "prediction"),
        level = 0.95, type = c("response", "terms"),
        terms = NULL, na.action = na.pass,
        pred.var = res.var/weights, weights = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	Object of class inheriting from `"lm"`
`newdata`	An optional data frame in which to look for variables with which to predict. If omitted, the fitted values are used.
`se.fit`	A switch indicating if standard errors are required.
`scale`	Scale parameter for std.err. calculation.
`df`	Degrees of freedom for scale.
`interval`	Type of interval calculation.
`level`	Tolerance/confidence level.
`type`	Type of prediction (response or model term).
`terms`	If `type = "terms"`, which terms (default is all terms), a `character` vector.
`na.action`	function determining what should be done with missing values in `newdata`. The default is to predict `NA`.

pred.var	the variance(s) for future observations to be assumed for prediction intervals. See 'Details'.
weights	variance weights for prediction. This can be a numeric vector or a one-sided model formula. In the latter case, it is interpreted as an expression evaluated in newdata.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

predict.lm produces predicted values, obtained by evaluating the regression function in the frame newdata (which defaults to model.frame(object). If the logical se.fit is TRUE, standard errors of the predictions are calculated. If the numeric argument scale is set (with optional df), it is used as the residual standard deviation in the computation of the standard errors, otherwise this is extracted from the model fit. Setting intervals specifies computation of confidence or prediction (tolerance) intervals at the specified level, sometimes referred to as narrow vs. wide intervals.

If the fit is rank-deficient, some of the columns of the design matrix will have been dropped. Prediction from such a fit only makes sense if newdata is contained in the same subspace as the original data. That cannot be checked accurately, so a warning is issued.

If newdata is omitted the predictions are based on the data used for the fit. In that case how cases with missing values in the original fit are handled is determined by the na.action argument of that fit. If na.action = na.omit omitted cases will not appear in the predictions, whereas if na.action = na.exclude they will appear (in predictions, standard errors or interval limits), with value NA. See also napredict.

The prediction intervals are for a single observation at each case in newdata (or by default, the data used for the fit) with error variance(s) pred.var. This can be a multiple of res.var, the estimated value of σ^2: the default is to assume that future observations have the same error variance as those used for fitting. If weights is supplied, the inverse of this is used as a scale factor. For a weighted fit, if the prediction is for the original data frame, weights defaults to the weights used for the model fit, with a warning since it might not be the intended result. If the fit was weighted and newdata is given, the default is to assume constant prediction variance, with a warning.

Value

predict.lm produces a vector of predictions or a matrix of predictions and bounds with column names fit, lwr, and upr if interval is set. For type = "terms" this is a matrix with a column per term and may have an attribute "constant".

If se.fit is TRUE, a list with the following components is returned:

fit	vector or matrix as above
se.fit	standard error of predicted means
residual.scale	residual standard deviations
df	degrees of freedom for residual

Note

Variables are first looked for in newdata and then searched for in the usual way (which will include the environment of the formula used in the fit). A warning will be given if the variables found are not of the same length as those in newdata if it was supplied.

Notice that prediction variances and prediction intervals always refer to *future* observations, possibly corresponding to the same predictors as used for the fit. The variance of the *residuals* will be smaller.

Strictly speaking, the formula used for prediction limits assumes that the degrees of freedom for the fit are the same as those for the residual variance. This may not be the case if `res.var` is not obtained from the fit.

See Also

The model fitting function `lm`, `predict`.

SafePrediction for prediction from (univariable) polynomial and spline fits.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Predictions
x <- rnorm(15)
y <- x + rnorm(15)
predict(lm(y ~ x))
new <- data.frame(x = seq(-3, 3, 0.5))
predict(lm(y ~ x), new, se.fit = TRUE)
pred.w.plim <- predict(lm(y ~ x), new, interval = "prediction")
pred.w.clim <- predict(lm(y ~ x), new, interval = "confidence")
matplot(new$x, cbind(pred.w.clim, pred.w.plim[,-1]),
        lty = c(1,2,2,3,3), type = "l", ylab = "predicted y")

## Prediction intervals, special cases
##  The first three of these throw warnings
w <- 1 + x^2
fit <- lm(y ~ x)
wfit <- lm(y ~ x, weights = w)
predict(fit, interval = "prediction")
predict(wfit, interval = "prediction")
predict(wfit, new, interval = "prediction")
predict(wfit, new, interval = "prediction", weights = (new$x)^2)
predict(wfit, new, interval = "prediction", weights = ~x^2)

##-- From  aov(.) example ---- predict(.. terms)
npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk)
(termL <- attr(terms(npk.aov), "term.labels"))
(pt <- predict(npk.aov, type = "terms"))
pt. <- predict(npk.aov, type = "terms", terms = termL[1:4])
stopifnot(all.equal(pt[,1:4], pt.,
                    tolerance = 1e-12, check.attributes = FALSE))
```

`predict.loess` *Predict Loess Curve or Surface*

Description

Predictions from a `loess` fit, optionally with standard errors.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class loess
predict(object, newdata = NULL, se = FALSE,
        na.action = na.pass, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object fitted by loess.
newdata	an optional data frame in which to look for variables with which to predict, or a matrix or vector containing exactly the variables needs for prediction. If missing, the original data points are used.
se	should standard errors be computed?
na.action	function determining what should be done with missing values in data frame newdata. The default is to predict NA.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The standard errors calculation is slower than prediction.

When the fit was made using surface = "interpolate" (the default), predict.loess will not extrapolate – so points outside an axis-aligned hypercube enclosing the original data will have missing (NA) predictions and standard errors.

Value

If se = FALSE, a vector giving the prediction for each row of newdata (or the original data). If se = TRUE, a list containing components

fit	the predicted values.
se	an estimated standard error for each predicted value.
residual.scale	the estimated scale of the residuals used in computing the standard errors.
df	an estimate of the effective degrees of freedom used in estimating the residual scale, intended for use with t-based confidence intervals.

If newdata was the result of a call to expand.grid, the predictions (and s.e.'s if requested) will be an array of the appropriate dimensions.

Predictions from infinite inputs will be NA since loess does not support extrapolation.

Note

Variables are first looked for in newdata and then searched for in the usual way (which will include the environment of the formula used in the fit). A warning will be given if the variables found are not of the same length as those in newdata if it was supplied.

Author(s)

B. D. Ripley, based on the cloess package of Cleveland, Grosse and Shyu.

See Also

loess

Examples

```
cars.lo <- loess(dist ~ speed, cars)
predict(cars.lo, data.frame(speed = seq(5, 30, 1)), se = TRUE)
# to get extrapolation
cars.lo2 <- loess(dist ~ speed, cars,
  control = loess.control(surface = "direct"))
predict(cars.lo2, data.frame(speed = seq(5, 30, 1)), se = TRUE)
```

---

predict.nls *Predicting from Nonlinear Least Squares Fits*

Description

`predict.nls` produces predicted values, obtained by evaluating the regression function in the frame `newdata`. If the logical `se.fit` is `TRUE`, standard errors of the predictions are calculated. If the numeric argument `scale` is set (with optional `df`), it is used as the residual standard deviation in the computation of the standard errors, otherwise this is extracted from the model fit. Setting `intervals` specifies computation of confidence or prediction (tolerance) intervals at the specified `level`.

At present `se.fit` and `interval` are ignored.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nls
predict(object, newdata , se.fit = FALSE, scale = NULL, df = Inf,
        interval = c("none", "confidence", "prediction"),
        level = 0.95, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object that inherits from class `nls`.
`newdata`	A named list or data frame in which to look for variables with which to predict. If `newdata` is missing the fitted values at the original data points are returned.
`se.fit`	A logical value indicating if the standard errors of the predictions should be calculated. Defaults to `FALSE`. At present this argument is ignored.
`scale`	A numeric scalar. If it is set (with optional `df`), it is used as the residual standard deviation in the computation of the standard errors, otherwise this information is extracted from the model fit. At present this argument is ignored.
`df`	A positive numeric scalar giving the number of degrees of freedom for the `scale` estimate. At present this argument is ignored.
`interval`	A character string indicating if prediction intervals or a confidence interval on the mean responses are to be calculated. At present this argument is ignored.
`level`	A numeric scalar between 0 and 1 giving the confidence level for the intervals (if any) to be calculated. At present this argument is ignored.
`...`	Additional optional arguments. At present no optional arguments are used.

Value

`predict.nls` produces a vector of predictions. When implemented, `interval` will produce a matrix of predictions and bounds with column names `fit`, `lwr`, and `upr`. When implemented, if `se.fit` is `TRUE`, a list with the following components will be returned:

`fit`	vector or matrix as above
`se.fit`	standard error of predictions
`residual.scale`	residual standard deviations
`df`	degrees of freedom for residual

Note

Variables are first looked for in `newdata` and then searched for in the usual way (which will include the environment of the formula used in the fit). A warning will be given if the variables found are not of the same length as those in `newdata` if it was supplied.

See Also

The model fitting function `nls`, `predict`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

fm <- nls(demand ~ SSasympOrig(Time, A, lrc), data = BOD)
predict(fm)              # fitted values at observed times
## Form data plot and smooth line for the predictions
opar <- par(las = 1)
plot(demand ~ Time, data = BOD, col = 4,
     main = "BOD data and fitted first-order curve",
     xlim = c(0,7), ylim = c(0, 20) )
tt <- seq(0, 8, length = 101)
lines(tt, predict(fm, list(Time = tt)))
par(opar)
```

`predict.smooth.spline` *Predict from Smoothing Spline Fit*

Description

Predict a smoothing spline fit at new points, return the derivative if desired. The predicted fit is linear beyond the original data.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class smooth.spline
predict(object, x, deriv = 0, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fit from smooth.spline.
x	the new values of x.
deriv	integer; the order of the derivative required.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

A list with components

x	The input x.
y	The fitted values or derivatives at x.

See Also

smooth.spline

Examples

```
require(graphics)

attach(cars)
cars.spl <- smooth.spline(speed, dist, df = 6.4)


## "Proof" that the derivatives are okay, by comparing with approximation
diff.quot <- function(x, y) {
  ## Difference quotient (central differences where available)
  n <- length(x); i1 <- 1:2; i2 <- (n-1):n
  c(diff(y[i1]) / diff(x[i1]), (y[-i1] - y[-i2]) / (x[-i1] - x[-i2]),
    diff(y[i2]) / diff(x[i2]))
}

xx <- unique(sort(c(seq(0, 30, by = .2), kn <- unique(speed))))
i.kn <- match(kn, xx)   # indices of knots within xx
op <- par(mfrow = c(2,2))
plot(speed, dist, xlim = range(xx), main = "Smooth.spline & derivatives")
lines(pp <- predict(cars.spl, xx), col = "red")
points(kn, pp$y[i.kn], pch = 3, col = "dark red")
mtext("s(x)", col = "red")
for(d in 1:3){
  n <- length(pp$x)
  plot(pp$x, diff.quot(pp$x,pp$y), type = "l", xlab = "x", ylab = "",
       col = "blue", col.main = "red",
       main = paste0("s" ,paste(rep("", d), collapse = ""), "(x)"))
  mtext("Difference quotient approx.(last)", col = "blue")
  lines(pp <- predict(cars.spl, xx, deriv = d), col = "red")

  points(kn, pp$y[i.kn], pch = 3, col = "dark red")
  abline(h = 0, lty = 3, col = "gray")
}
detach(); par(op)
```

preplot *Pre-computations for a Plotting Object*

Description

Compute an object to be used for plots relating to the given model object.

Usage

```
preplot(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted model object.
...	additional arguments for specific methods.

Details

Only the generic function is currently provided in base , but some add-on packages have methods. Principally here for S compatibility.

Value

An object set up to make a plot that describes object.

princomp *Principal Components Analysis*

Description

princomp performs a principal components analysis on the given numeric data matrix and returns the results as an object of class princomp.

Usage

```
princomp(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
princomp(formula, data = NULL, subset, na.action, ...)

## Default S3 method:
princomp(x, cor = FALSE, scores = TRUE, covmat = NULL,
         subset = rep_len(TRUE, nrow(as.matrix(x))), ...)

## S3 method for class princomp
predict(object, newdata, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula with no response variable, referring only to numeric variables.
data	an optional data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector used to select rows (observations) of the data matrix x.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default is set by the na.action setting of options, and is na.fail if that is unset. The 'factory-fresh' default is na.omit.
x	a numeric matrix or data frame which provides the data for the principal components analysis.
cor	a logical value indicating whether the calculation should use the correlation matrix or the covariance matrix. (The correlation matrix can only be used if there are no constant variables.)
scores	a logical value indicating whether the score on each principal component should be calculated.
covmat	a covariance matrix, or a covariance list as returned by cov.wt (and cov.mve or cov.mcd from package **MASS**). If supplied, this is used rather than the covariance matrix of x.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods. If x is a formula one might specify cor or scores.
object	Object of class inheriting from "princomp"
newdata	An optional data frame or matrix in which to look for variables with which to predict. If omitted, the scores are used. If the original fit used a formula or a data frame or a matrix with column names, newdata must contain columns with the same names. Otherwise it must contain the same number of columns, to be used in the same order.

Details

princomp is a generic function with "formula" and "default" methods.

The calculation is done using eigen on the correlation or covariance matrix, as determined by cor. This is done for compatibility with the S-PLUS result. A preferred method of calculation is to use svd on x, as is done in prcomp.

Note that the default calculation uses divisor N for the covariance matrix.

The print method for these objects prints the results in a nice format and the plot method produces a scree plot (screeplot). There is also a biplot method.

If x is a formula then the standard NA-handling is applied to the scores (if requested): see napredict.

princomp only handles so-called R-mode PCA, that is feature extraction of variables. If a data matrix is supplied (possibly via a formula) it is required that there are at least as many units as variables. For Q-mode PCA use prcomp.

Value

princomp returns a list with class "princomp" containing the following components:

sdev	the standard deviations of the principal components.

loadings	the matrix of variable loadings (i.e., a matrix whose columns contain the eigenvectors). This is of class "loadings": see loadings for its print method.
center	the means that were subtracted.
scale	the scalings applied to each variable.
n.obs	the number of observations.
scores	if scores = TRUE, the scores of the supplied data on the principal components. These are non-null only if x was supplied, and if covmat was also supplied if it was a covariance list. For the formula method, napredict() is applied to handle the treatment of values omitted by the na.action.
call	the matched call.
na.action	If relevant.

Note

The signs of the columns of the loadings and scores are arbitrary, and so may differ between different programs for PCA, and even between different builds of .

References

Mardia, K. V., J. T. Kent and J. M. Bibby (1979). *Multivariate Analysis*, London: Academic Press.

Venables, W. N. and B. D. Ripley (2002). *Modern Applied Statistics with S*, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

summary.princomp, screeplot, biplot.princomp, prcomp, cor, cov, eigen.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## The variances of the variables in the
## USArrests data vary by orders of magnitude, so scaling is appropriate
(pc.cr <- princomp(USArrests))  # inappropriate
princomp(USArrests, cor = TRUE) # =^= prcomp(USArrests, scale=TRUE)
## Similar, but different:
## The standard deviations differ by a factor of sqrt(49/50)

summary(pc.cr <- princomp(USArrests, cor = TRUE))
loadings(pc.cr)  # note that blank entries are small but not zero
## The signs of the columns are arbitrary
plot(pc.cr) # shows a screeplot.
biplot(pc.cr)

## Formula interface
princomp(~ ., data = USArrests, cor = TRUE)

## NA-handling
USArrests[1, 2] <- NA
pc.cr <- princomp(~ Murder + Assault + UrbanPop,
                  data = USArrests, na.action = na.exclude, cor = TRUE)
pc.cr$scores[1:5, ]

## (Simple) Robust PCA:
```

```
## Classical:
(pc.cl  <- princomp(stackloss))
## Robust:
(pc.rob <- princomp(stackloss, covmat = MASS::cov.rob(stackloss)))
```

`print.power.htest` *Print method for power calculation object*

Description

Print object of class `"power.htest"` in nice layout.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class power.htest
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	Object of class `"power.htest"`.
`...`	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

A `power.htest` object is just a named list of numbers and character strings, supplemented with `method` and `note` elements. The `method` is displayed as a title, the `note` as a footnote, and the remaining elements are given in an aligned 'name = value' format.

Value

none

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

See Also

`power.t.test`, `power.prop.test`

print.ts *Printing and Formatting of Time-Series Objects*

Description

Notably for calendar related time series objects, `format` and `print` methods showing years, months and or quarters respectively.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ts
print(x, calendar, ...)
.preformat.ts(x, calendar, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a time series object.
`calendar`	enable/disable the display of information about month names, quarter names or year when printing. The default is `TRUE` for a frequency of 4 or 12, `FALSE` otherwise.
`...`	additional arguments to `print` (or `format` methods).

Details

The `print` method for `"ts"` objects prints a header (basically of `tsp(x)`), if `calendar` is false, and then prints the result of `.preformat.ts(x, *)`, which is typically a `matrix` with `rownames` built from the calendar times where applicable.

See Also

`print`, `ts`.

Examples

```
print(ts(1:10, frequency = 7, start = c(12, 2)), calendar = TRUE)

print(sunsp.1 <- window(sunspot.month, end=c(1756, 12)))
m <- .preformat.ts(sunsp.1) # a character matrix
```

printCoefmat *Print Coefficient Matrices*

Description

Utility function to be used in higher-level `print` methods, such as those for `summary.lm`, `summary.glm` and `anova`. The goal is to provide a flexible interface with smart defaults such that often, only `x` needs to be specified.

Usage

```
printCoefmat(x, digits = max(3, getOption("digits") - 2),
             signif.stars = getOption("show.signif.stars"),
             signif.legend = signif.stars,
             dig.tst = max(1, min(5, digits - 1)),
             cs.ind = 1L:k, tst.ind = k + 1L,
             zap.ind = integer(), P.values = NULL,
             has.Pvalue = nc >= 4L &&
                          substr(colnames(x)[nc], 1L, 3L) == "Pr(",
             eps.Pvalue = .Machine$double.eps,
             na.print = "NA", ...)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric matrix like object, to be printed.
digits	minimum number of significant digits to be used for most numbers.
signif.stars	logical; if TRUE, P-values are additionally encoded visually as 'significance stars' in order to help scanning of long coefficient tables. It defaults to the show.signif.stars slot of options.
signif.legend	logical; if TRUE, a legend for the 'significance stars' is printed provided signif.stars = TRUE.
dig.tst	minimum number of significant digits for the test statistics, see tst.ind.
cs.ind	indices (integer) of column numbers which are (like) **c**oefficients and **s**tandard errors to be formatted together.
tst.ind	indices (integer) of column numbers for test statistics.
zap.ind	indices (integer) of column numbers which should be formatted by zapsmall, i.e., by 'zapping' values close to 0.
P.values	logical or NULL; if TRUE, the last column of x is formatted by format.pval as P values. If P.values = NULL, the default, it is set to TRUE only if options("show.coef.Pvalue") is TRUE *and* x has at least 4 columns *and* the last column name of x starts with "Pr(".
has.Pvalue	logical; if TRUE, the last column of x contains P values; in that case, it is printed if and only if P.values (above) is true.
eps.Pvalue	number, ..
na.print	a character string to code NA values in printed output.
...	further arguments for print.

Value

Invisibly returns its argument, x.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

print.summary.lm, format.pval, format.

Examples

```
cmat <- cbind(rnorm(3, 10), sqrt(rchisq(3, 12)))
cmat <- cbind(cmat, cmat[, 1]/cmat[, 2])
cmat <- cbind(cmat, 2*pnorm(-cmat[, 3]))
colnames(cmat) <- c("Estimate", "Std.Err", "Z value", "Pr(>z)")
printCoefmat(cmat[, 1:3])
printCoefmat(cmat)
op <- options(show.coef.Pvalues = FALSE)
printCoefmat(cmat, digits = 2)
printCoefmat(cmat, digits = 2, P.values = TRUE)
options(op) # restore
```

`profile` *Generic Function for Profiling Models*

Description

Investigates behavior of objective function near the solution represented by `fitted`.

See documentation on method functions for further details.

Usage

```
profile(fitted, ...)
```

Arguments

`fitted`	the original fitted model object.
`...`	additional parameters. See documentation on individual methods.

Value

A list with an element for each parameter being profiled. See the individual methods for further details.

See Also

`profile.nls`, `profile.glm` in package **MASS**, ...

For profiling R code, see `Rprof`.

`profile.nls` *Method for Profiling nls Objects*

Description

Investigates the profile log-likelihood function for a fitted model of class `"nls"`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nls
profile(fitted, which = 1:npar, maxpts = 100, alphamax = 0.01,
        delta.t = cutoff/5, ...)
```

Arguments

`fitted`	the original fitted model object.
`which`	the original model parameters which should be profiled. This can be a numeric or character vector. By default, all non-linear parameters are profiled.
`maxpts`	maximum number of points to be used for profiling each parameter.
`alphamax`	highest significance level allowed for the profile t-statistics.
`delta.t`	suggested change on the scale of the profile t-statistics. Default value chosen to allow profiling at about 10 parameter values.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The profile t-statistics is defined as the square root of change in sum-of-squares divided by residual standard error with an appropriate sign.

Value

A list with an element for each parameter being profiled. The elements are data-frames with two variables

`par.vals`	a matrix of parameter values for each fitted model.
`tau`	the profile t-statistics.

Author(s)

Of the original version, Douglas M. Bates and Saikat DebRoy

References

Bates, D. M. and Watts, D. G. (1988), *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley (chapter 6).

See Also

`nls`, `profile`, `plot.profile.nls`

Examples

```
# obtain the fitted object
fm1 <- nls(demand ~ SSasympOrig(Time, A, lrc), data = BOD)
# get the profile for the fitted model: default level is too extreme
pr1 <- profile(fm1, alpha = 0.05)
# profiled values for the two parameters
pr1$A
pr1$lrc
# see also example(plot.profile.nls)
```

`proj` *Projections of Models*

Description

`proj` returns a matrix or list of matrices giving the projections of the data onto the terms of a linear model. It is most frequently used for `aov` models.

Usage

```
proj(object, ...)

## S3 method for class aov
proj(object, onedf = FALSE, unweighted.scale = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class aovlist
proj(object, onedf = FALSE, unweighted.scale = FALSE, ...)

## Default S3 method:
proj(object, onedf = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
proj(object, onedf = FALSE, unweighted.scale = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object of class `"lm"` or a class inheriting from it, or an object with a similar structure including in particular components `qr` and `effects`.
`onedf`	A logical flag. If `TRUE`, a projection is returned for all the columns of the model matrix. If `FALSE`, the single-column projections are collapsed by terms of the model (as represented in the analysis of variance table).
`unweighted.scale`	If the fit producing `object` used weights, this determines if the projections correspond to weighted or unweighted observations.
`...`	Swallow and ignore any other arguments.

Details

A projection is given for each stratum of the object, so for `aov` models with an `Error` term the result is a list of projections.

Value

A projection matrix or (for multi-stratum objects) a list of projection matrices.

Each projection is a matrix with a row for each observations and either a column for each term (`onedf = FALSE`) or for each coefficient (`onedf = TRUE`). Projection matrices from the default method have orthogonal columns representing the projection of the response onto the column space of the Q matrix from the QR decomposition. The fitted values are the sum of the projections, and the sum of squares for each column is the reduction in sum of squares from fitting that column (after those to the left of it).

The methods for `lm` and `aov` models add a column to the projection matrix giving the residuals (the projection of the data onto the orthogonal complement of the model space).

Strictly, when `onedf = FALSE` the result is not a projection, but the columns represent sums of projections onto the columns of the model matrix corresponding to that term. In this case the matrix does not depend on the coding used.

Author(s)

The design was inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers *et al* (1992).

References

Chambers, J. M., Freeny, A and Heiberger, R. M. (1992) *Analysis of variance; designed experiments.* Chapter 5 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`aov`, `lm`, `model.tables`

Examples

```
N <- c(0,1,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,1,1,0,0)
P <- c(1,1,0,0,0,1,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,1,0)
K <- c(1,0,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,0,1,1,1,0,1,0)
yield <- c(49.5,62.8,46.8,57.0,59.8,58.5,55.5,56.0,62.8,55.8,69.5,
55.0, 62.0,48.8,45.5,44.2,52.0,51.5,49.8,48.8,57.2,59.0,53.2,56.0)

npk <- data.frame(block = gl(6,4), N = factor(N), P = factor(P),
                  K = factor(K), yield = yield)
npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk)
proj(npk.aov)

## as a test, not particularly sensible
options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.treatment"))
npk.aovE <- aov(yield ~  N*P*K + Error(block), npk)
proj(npk.aovE)
```

`prop.test` *Test of Equal or Given Proportions*

Description

`prop.test` can be used for testing the null that the proportions (probabilities of success) in several groups are the same, or that they equal certain given values.

Usage

```
prop.test(x, n, p = NULL,
          alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
          conf.level = 0.95, correct = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a vector of counts of successes, a one-dimensional table with two entries, or a two-dimensional table (or matrix) with 2 columns, giving the counts of successes and failures, respectively.
`n`	a vector of counts of trials; ignored if `x` is a matrix or a table.
`p`	a vector of probabilities of success. The length of `p` must be the same as the number of groups specified by `x`, and its elements must be greater than 0 and less than 1.
`alternative`	a character string specifying the alternative hypothesis, must be one of `"two.sided"` (default), `"greater"` or `"less"`. You can specify just the initial letter. Only used for testing the null that a single proportion equals a given value, or that two proportions are equal; ignored otherwise.
`conf.level`	confidence level of the returned confidence interval. Must be a single number between 0 and 1. Only used when testing the null that a single proportion equals a given value, or that two proportions are equal; ignored otherwise.
`correct`	a logical indicating whether Yates' continuity correction should be applied where possible.

Details

Only groups with finite numbers of successes and failures are used. Counts of successes and failures must be nonnegative and hence not greater than the corresponding numbers of trials which must be positive. All finite counts should be integers.

If `p` is `NULL` and there is more than one group, the null tested is that the proportions in each group are the same. If there are two groups, the alternatives are that the probability of success in the first group is less than, not equal to, or greater than the probability of success in the second group, as specified by `alternative`. A confidence interval for the difference of proportions with confidence level as specified by `conf.level` and clipped to $[-1, 1]$ is returned. Continuity correction is used only if it does not exceed the difference of the sample proportions in absolute value. Otherwise, if there are more than 2 groups, the alternative is always `"two.sided"`, the returned confidence interval is `NULL`, and continuity correction is never used.

If there is only one group, then the null tested is that the underlying probability of success is `p`, or .5 if `p` is not given. The alternative is that the probability of success is less than, not equal to, or greater than `p` or 0.5, respectively, as specified by `alternative`. A confidence interval for the

underlying proportion with confidence level as specified by `conf.level` and clipped to $[0, 1]$ is returned. Continuity correction is used only if it does not exceed the difference between sample and null proportions in absolute value. The confidence interval is computed by inverting the score test.

Finally, if `p` is given and there are more than 2 groups, the null tested is that the underlying probabilities of success are those given by `p`. The alternative is always `"two.sided"`, the returned confidence interval is `NULL`, and continuity correction is never used.

Value

A list with class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	the value of Pearson's chi-squared test statistic.
`parameter`	the degrees of freedom of the approximate chi-squared distribution of the test statistic.
`p.value`	the p-value of the test.
`estimate`	a vector with the sample proportions `x/n`.
`conf.int`	a confidence interval for the true proportion if there is one group, or for the difference in proportions if there are 2 groups and `p` is not given, or `NULL` otherwise. In the cases where it is not `NULL`, the returned confidence interval has an asymptotic confidence level as specified by `conf.level`, and is appropriate to the specified alternative hypothesis.
`null.value`	the value of `p` if specified by the null, or `NULL` otherwise.
`alternative`	a character string describing the alternative.
`method`	a character string indicating the method used, and whether Yates' continuity correction was applied.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

Wilson, E.B. (1927) Probable inference, the law of succession, and statistical inference. *J. Am. Stat. Assoc.*, **22**, 209–212.

Newcombe R.G. (1998) Two-Sided Confidence Intervals for the Single Proportion: Comparison of Seven Methods. *Statistics in Medicine* **17**, 857–872.

Newcombe R.G. (1998) Interval Estimation for the Difference Between Independent Proportions: Comparison of Eleven Methods. *Statistics in Medicine* **17**, 873–890.

See Also

`binom.test` for an *exact* test of a binomial hypothesis.

Examples

```
heads <- rbinom(1, size = 100, prob = .5)
prop.test(heads, 100)          # continuity correction TRUE by default
prop.test(heads, 100, correct = FALSE)

## Data from Fleiss (1981), p. 139.
## H0: The null hypothesis is that the four populations from which
##     the patients were drawn have the same true proportion of smokers.
## A:  The alternative is that this proportion is different in at
##     least one of the populations.
```

```
smokers  <- c( 83, 90, 129, 70 )
patients <- c( 86, 93, 136, 82 )
prop.test(smokers, patients)
```

`prop.trend.test` *Test for trend in proportions*

Description

Performs chi-squared test for trend in proportions, i.e., a test asymptotically optimal for local alternatives where the log odds vary in proportion with `score`. By default, `score` is chosen as the group numbers.

Usage

```
prop.trend.test(x, n, score = seq_along(x))
```

Arguments

`x`	Number of events
`n`	Number of trials
`score`	Group score

Value

An object of class `"htest"` with title, test statistic, p-value, etc.

Note

This really should get integrated with `prop.test`

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

See Also

`prop.test`

Examples

```
smokers  <- c( 83, 90, 129, 70 )
patients <- c( 86, 93, 136, 82 )
prop.test(smokers, patients)
prop.trend.test(smokers, patients)
prop.trend.test(smokers, patients, c(0,0,0,1))
```

qqnorm *Quantile-Quantile Plots*

Description

qqnorm is a generic function the default method of which produces a normal QQ plot of the values in y. qqline adds a line to a "theoretical", by default normal, quantile-quantile plot which passes through the probs quantiles, by default the first and third quartiles.

qqplot produces a QQ plot of two datasets.

Graphical parameters may be given as arguments to qqnorm, qqplot and qqline.

Usage

```
qqnorm(y, ...)
## Default S3 method:
qqnorm(y, ylim, main = "Normal Q-Q Plot",
       xlab = "Theoretical Quantiles", ylab = "Sample Quantiles",
       plot.it = TRUE, datax = FALSE, ...)

qqline(y, datax = FALSE, distribution = qnorm,
       probs = c(0.25, 0.75), qtype = 7, ...)

qqplot(x, y, plot.it = TRUE, xlab = deparse(substitute(x)),
       ylab = deparse(substitute(y)), ...)
```

Arguments

x	The first sample for qqplot.
y	The second or only data sample.
xlab, ylab, main	plot labels. The xlab and ylab refer to the y and x axes respectively if datax = TRUE.
plot.it	logical. Should the result be plotted?
datax	logical. Should data values be on the x-axis?
distribution	quantile function for reference theoretical distribution.
probs	numeric vector of length two, representing probabilities. Corresponding quantile pairs define the line drawn.
qtype	the type of quantile computation used in quantile.
ylim, ...	graphical parameters.

Value

For qqnorm and qqplot, a list with components

x	The x coordinates of the points that were/would be plotted
y	The original y vector, i.e., the corresponding y coordinates *including* NA*s*.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

ppoints, used by qqnorm to generate approximations to expected order statistics for a normal distribution.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

y <- rt(200, df = 5)
qqnorm(y); qqline(y, col = 2)
qqplot(y, rt(300, df = 5))

qqnorm(precip, ylab = "Precipitation [in/yr] for 70 US cities")

## "QQ-Chisquare" : --------------------------
y <- rchisq(500, df = 3)
## Q-Q plot for Chi^2 data against true theoretical distribution:
qqplot(qchisq(ppoints(500), df = 3), y,
       main = expression("Q-Q plot for" ~~ {chi^2}[nu == 3]))
qqline(y, distribution = function(p) qchisq(p, df = 3),
       prob = c(0.1, 0.6), col = 2)
mtext("qqline(*, dist = qchisq(., df=3), prob = c(0.1, 0.6))")
```

---

quade.test *Quade Test*

Description

Performs a Quade test with unreplicated blocked data.

Usage

```
quade.test(y, ...)

## Default S3 method:
quade.test(y, groups, blocks, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
quade.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

y	either a numeric vector of data values, or a data matrix.
groups	a vector giving the group for the corresponding elements of y if this is a vector; ignored if y is a matrix. If not a factor object, it is coerced to one.
blocks	a vector giving the block for the corresponding elements of y if this is a vector; ignored if y is a matrix. If not a factor object, it is coerced to one.

formula	a formula of the form a ~ b | c, where a, b and c give the data values and corresponding groups and blocks, respectively.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

quade.test can be used for analyzing unreplicated complete block designs (i.e., there is exactly one observation in y for each combination of levels of groups and blocks) where the normality assumption may be violated.

The null hypothesis is that apart from an effect of blocks, the location parameter of y is the same in each of the groups.

If y is a matrix, groups and blocks are obtained from the column and row indices, respectively. NA's are not allowed in groups or blocks; if y contains NA's, corresponding blocks are removed.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of Quade's F statistic.
parameter	a vector with the numerator and denominator degrees of freedom of the approximate F distribution of the test statistic.
p.value	the p-value of the test.
method	the character string "Quade test".
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.

References

D. Quade (1979), Using weighted rankings in the analysis of complete blocks with additive block effects. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **74**, 680–683.

William J. Conover (1999), *Practical nonparametric statistics*. New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 373–380.

See Also

friedman.test.

Examples

```
## Conover (1999, p. 375f):
## Numbers of five brands of a new hand lotion sold in seven stores
## during one week.
y <- matrix(c( 5,  4,  7, 10, 12,
               1,  3,  1,  0,  2,
              16, 12, 22, 22, 35,
               5,  4,  3,  5,  4,
```

```
              10,  9,  7, 13, 10,
              19, 18, 28, 37, 58,
              10,  7,  6,  8,  7),
            nrow = 7, byrow = TRUE,
            dimnames =
            list(Store = as.character(1:7),
                 Brand = LETTERS[1:5]))
y
quade.test(y)
```

---

quantile *Sample Quantiles*

Description

The generic function quantile produces sample quantiles corresponding to the given probabilities. The smallest observation corresponds to a probability of 0 and the largest to a probability of 1.

Usage

```
quantile(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
quantile(x, probs = seq(0, 1, 0.25), na.rm = FALSE,
         names = TRUE, type = 7, ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector whose sample quantiles are wanted, or an object of a class for which a method has been defined (see also 'details'). NA and NaN values are not allowed in numeric vectors unless na.rm is TRUE.
probs	numeric vector of probabilities with values in $[0, 1]$. (Values up to '2e-14' outside that range are accepted and moved to the nearby endpoint.)
na.rm	logical; if true, any NA and NaN's are removed from x before the quantiles are computed.
names	logical; if true, the result has a names attribute. Set to FALSE for speedup with many probs.
type	an integer between 1 and 9 selecting one of the nine quantile algorithms detailed below to be used.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

A vector of length length(probs) is returned; if names = TRUE, it has a names attribute.

NA and NaN values in probs are propagated to the result.

The default method works with classed objects sufficiently like numeric vectors that sort and (not needed by types 1 and 3) addition of elements and multiplication by a number work correctly. Note that as this is in a namespace, the copy of sort in **base** will be used, not some S4 generic of that name. Also note that that is no check on the 'correctly', and so e.g. quantile can be applied to complex vectors which (apart from ties) will be ordered on their real parts.

There is a method for the date-time classes (see "POSIXt"). Types 1 and 3 can be used for class "Date" and for ordered factors.

Types

`quantile` returns estimates of underlying distribution quantiles based on one or two order statistics from the supplied elements in `x` at probabilities in `probs`. One of the nine quantile algorithms discussed in Hyndman and Fan (1996), selected by `type`, is employed.

All sample quantiles are defined as weighted averages of consecutive order statistics. Sample quantiles of type i are defined by:

$$Q_i(p) = (1 - \gamma)x_j + \gamma x_{j+1}$$

where $1 \leq i \leq 9$, $\frac{j-m}{n} \leq p < \frac{j-m+1}{n}$, x_j is the jth order statistic, n is the sample size, the value of γ is a function of $j = \lfloor np + m \rfloor$ and $g = np + m - j$, and m is a constant determined by the sample quantile type.

Discontinuous sample quantile types 1, 2, and 3

For types 1, 2 and 3, $Q_i(p)$ is a discontinuous function of p, with $m = 0$ when $i = 1$ and $i = 2$, and $m = -1/2$ when $i = 3$.

Type 1 Inverse of empirical distribution function. $\gamma = 0$ if $g = 0$, and 1 otherwise.

Type 2 Similar to type 1 but with averaging at discontinuities. $\gamma = 0.5$ if $g = 0$, and 1 otherwise.

Type 3 SAS definition: nearest even order statistic. $\gamma = 0$ if $g = 0$ and j is even, and 1 otherwise.

Continuous sample quantile types 4 through 9

For types 4 through 9, $Q_i(p)$ is a continuous function of p, with $\gamma = g$ and m given below. The sample quantiles can be obtained equivalently by linear interpolation between the points (p_k, x_k) where x_k is the kth order statistic. Specific expressions for p_k are given below.

Type 4 $m = 0$. $p_k = \frac{k}{n}$. That is, linear interpolation of the empirical cdf.

Type 5 $m = 1/2$. $p_k = \frac{k-0.5}{n}$. That is a piecewise linear function where the knots are the values midway through the steps of the empirical cdf. This is popular amongst hydrologists.

Type 6 $m = p$. $p_k = \frac{k}{n+1}$. Thus $p_k = \mathrm{E}[F(x_k)]$. This is used by Minitab and by SPSS.

Type 7 $m = 1 - p$. $p_k = \frac{k-1}{n-1}$. In this case, $p_k = \mathrm{mode}[F(x_k)]$. This is used by S.

Type 8 $m = (p + 1)/3$. $p_k = \frac{k-1/3}{n+1/3}$. Then $p_k \approx \mathrm{median}[F(x_k)]$. The resulting quantile estimates are approximately median-unbiased regardless of the distribution of `x`.

Type 9 $m = p/4 + 3/8$. $p_k = \frac{k-3/8}{n+1/4}$. The resulting quantile estimates are approximately unbiased for the expected order statistics if `x` is normally distributed.

Further details are provided in Hyndman and Fan (1996) who recommended type 8. The default method is type 7, as used by S and by < 2.0.0.

Author(s)

of the version used in >= 2.0.0, Ivan Frohne and Rob J Hyndman.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Hyndman, R. J. and Fan, Y. (1996) Sample quantiles in statistical packages, *American Statistician* **50**, 361–365.

See Also

ecdf for empirical distributions of which quantile is an inverse; boxplot.stats and fivenum for computing other versions of quartiles, etc.

Examples

```
quantile(x <- rnorm(1001)) # Extremes & Quartiles by default
quantile(x,  probs = c(0.1, 0.5, 1, 2, 5, 10, 50, NA)/100)

### Compare different types
p <- c(0.1, 0.5, 1, 2, 5, 10, 50)/100
res <- matrix(as.numeric(NA), 9, 7)
for(type in 1:9) res[type, ] <- y <- quantile(x,  p, type = type)
dimnames(res) <- list(1:9, names(y))
round(res, 3)
```

---

r2dtable *Random 2-way Tables with Given Marginals*

Description

Generate random 2-way tables with given marginals using Patefield's algorithm.

Usage

```
r2dtable(n, r, c)
```

Arguments

n	a non-negative numeric giving the number of tables to be drawn.
r	a non-negative vector of length at least 2 giving the row totals, to be coerced to integer. Must sum to the same as c.
c	a non-negative vector of length at least 2 giving the column totals, to be coerced to integer.

Value

A list of length n containing the generated tables as its components.

References

Patefield, W. M. (1981) Algorithm AS159. An efficient method of generating r x c tables with given row and column totals. *Applied Statistics* **30**, 91–97.

Examples

```
## Fishers Tea Drinker data.
TeaTasting <-
matrix(c(3, 1, 1, 3),
       nrow = 2,
       dimnames = list(Guess = c("Milk", "Tea"),
                       Truth = c("Milk", "Tea")))
## Simulate permutation test for independence based on the maximum
## Pearson residuals (rather than their sum).
rowTotals <- rowSums(TeaTasting)
colTotals <- colSums(TeaTasting)
nOfCases <- sum(rowTotals)
expected <- outer(rowTotals, colTotals, "*") / nOfCases
maxSqResid <- function(x) max((x - expected) ^ 2 / expected)
simMaxSqResid <-
    sapply(r2dtable(1000, rowTotals, colTotals), maxSqResid)
sum(simMaxSqResid >= maxSqResid(TeaTasting)) / 1000
## Fishers exact test gives p = 0.4857 ...
```

`read.ftable` *Manipulate Flat Contingency Tables*

Description

Read, write and coerce 'flat' contingency tables.

Usage

```
read.ftable(file, sep = "", quote = "\"",
            row.var.names, col.vars, skip = 0)

write.ftable(x, file = "", quote = TRUE, append = FALSE,
             digits = getOption("digits"), ...)

## S3 method for class ftable
format(x, quote = TRUE, digits = getOption("digits"),
                        method = c("non.compact", "row.compact",
                                   "col.compact", "compact"),
                        lsep = " | ", ...)
## S3 method for class ftable
print(x, digits = getOption("digits"), ...)
```

Arguments

`file`	either a character string naming a file or a connection which the data are to be read from or written to. `""` indicates input from the console for reading and output to the console for writing.
`sep`	the field separator string. Values on each line of the file are separated by this string.
`quote`	a character string giving the set of quoting characters for `read.ftable`; to disable quoting altogether, use `quote=""`. For `write.table`, a logical indicating whether strings in the data will be surrounded by double quotes.

row.var.names	a character vector with the names of the row variables, in case these cannot be determined automatically.
col.vars	a list giving the names and levels of the column variables, in case these cannot be determined automatically.
skip	the number of lines of the data file to skip before beginning to read data.
x	an object of class "ftable".
append	logical. If TRUE and file is the name of a file (and not a connection or "|cmd"), the output from write.ftable is appended to the file. If FALSE, the contents of file will be overwritten.
digits	an integer giving the number of significant digits to use for (the cell entries of) x.
method	string specifying how the "ftable" object is formatted (and printed if used as in write.ftable() or the print method). Available methods are (see the examples): **"non.compact"** the default representation of an "ftable" object. **"row.compact"** a row-compact version without empty cells below the column labels. **"col.compact"** a column-compact version without empty cells to the right of the row labels. **"compact"** a row- and column-compact version. This may imply a row and a column label sharing the same cell. They are then separated by the string lsep.
lsep	only for method = "compact", the separation string for row and column labels.
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods; for write() and print(), notably arguments such as method, passed to format().

Details

read.ftable reads in a flat-like contingency table from a file. If the file contains the written representation of a flat table (more precisely, a header with all information on names and levels of column variables, followed by a line with the names of the row variables), no further arguments are needed. Similarly, flat tables with only one column variable the name of which is the only entry in the first line are handled automatically. Other variants can be dealt with by skipping all header information using skip, and providing the names of the row variables and the names and levels of the column variable using row.var.names and col.vars, respectively. See the examples below.

Note that flat tables are characterized by their 'ragged' display of row (and maybe also column) labels. If the full grid of levels of the row variables is given, one should instead use read.table to read in the data, and create the contingency table from this using xtabs.

write.ftable writes a flat table to a file, which is useful for generating 'pretty' ASCII representations of contingency tables. Different versions are available via the method argument, which may be useful, for example, for constructing LaTeX tables.

References

Agresti, A. (1990) *Categorical data analysis*. New York: Wiley.

See Also

ftable for more information on flat contingency tables.

Examples

```
## Agresti (1990), page 157, Table 5.8.
## Not in ftable standard format, but o.k.
file <- tempfile()
cat("             Intercourse\n",
    "Race  Gender     Yes  No\n",
    "White Male        43 134\n",
    "      Female      26 149\n",
    "Black Male        29  23\n",
    "      Female      22  36\n",
    file = file)
file.show(file)
ft1 <- read.ftable(file)
ft1
unlink(file)

## Agresti (1990), page 297, Table 8.16.
## Almost o.k., but misses the name of the row variable.
file <- tempfile()
cat("                      \"Tonsil Size\"\n",
    "            \"Not Enl.\" \"Enl.\" \"Greatly Enl.\"\n",
    "Noncarriers       497     560           269\n",
    "Carriers           19      29            24\n",
    file = file)
file.show(file)
ft <- read.ftable(file, skip = 2,
                  row.var.names = "Status",
                  col.vars = list("Tonsil Size" =
                      c("Not Enl.", "Enl.", "Greatly Enl.")))
ft
unlink(file)

ft22 <- ftable(Titanic, row.vars = 2:1, col.vars = 4:3)
write.ftable(ft22, quote = FALSE)
write.ftable(ft22, quote = FALSE, method="row.compact")
write.ftable(ft22, quote = FALSE, method="col.compact")
write.ftable(ft22, quote = FALSE, method="compact")
```

`rect.hclust` *Draw Rectangles Around Hierarchical Clusters*

Description

Draws rectangles around the branches of a dendrogram highlighting the corresponding clusters. First the dendrogram is cut at a certain level, then a rectangle is drawn around selected branches.

Usage

```
rect.hclust(tree, k = NULL, which = NULL, x = NULL, h = NULL,
            border = 2, cluster = NULL)
```

Arguments

tree	an object of the type produced by hclust.
k, h	Scalar. Cut the dendrogram such that either exactly k clusters are produced or by cutting at height h.
which, x	A vector selecting the clusters around which a rectangle should be drawn. which selects clusters by number (from left to right in the tree), x selects clusters containing the respective horizontal coordinates. Default is which = 1:k.
border	Vector with border colors for the rectangles.
cluster	Optional vector with cluster memberships as returned by cutree(hclust.obj, k = k), can be specified for efficiency if already computed.

Value

(Invisibly) returns a list where each element contains a vector of data points contained in the respective cluster.

See Also

hclust, identify.hclust.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

hca <- hclust(dist(USArrests))
plot(hca)
rect.hclust(hca, k = 3, border = "red")
x <- rect.hclust(hca, h = 50, which = c(2,7), border = 3:4)
x
```

---

relevel *Reorder Levels of Factor*

Description

The levels of a factor are re-ordered so that the level specified by ref is first and the others are moved down. This is useful for contr.treatment contrasts which take the first level as the reference.

Usage

```
relevel(x, ref, ...)
```

Arguments

x	An unordered factor.
ref	The reference level.
...	Additional arguments for future methods.

Value

A factor of the same length as x.

See Also

factor, contr.treatment, levels, reorder.

Examples

```
warpbreaks$tension <- relevel(warpbreaks$tension, ref = "M")
summary(lm(breaks ~ wool + tension, data = warpbreaks))
```

---

reorder.default *Reorder Levels of a Factor*

Description

reorder is a generic function. The "default" method treats its first argument as a categorical variable, and reorders its levels based on the values of a second variable, usually numeric.

Usage

```
reorder(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
reorder(x, X, FUN = mean, ...,
        order = is.ordered(x))
```

Arguments

x	An atomic vector, usually a factor (possibly ordered). The vector is treated as a categorical variable whose levels will be reordered. If x is not a factor, its unique values will be used as the implicit levels.
X	a vector of the same length as x, whose subset of values for each unique level of x determines the eventual order of that level.
FUN	a function whose first argument is a vector and returns a scalar, to be applied to each subset of X determined by the levels of x.
...	optional: extra arguments supplied to FUN
order	logical, whether return value will be an ordered factor rather than a factor.

Value

A factor or an ordered factor (depending on the value of order), with the order of the levels determined by FUN applied to X grouped by x. The levels are ordered such that the values returned by FUN are in increasing order. Empty levels will be dropped.

Additionally, the values of FUN applied to the subsets of X (in the original order of the levels of x) is returned as the "scores" attribute.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <deepayan.sarkar@r-project.org>

See Also

reorder.dendrogram, levels, relevel.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

bymedian <- with(InsectSprays, reorder(spray, count, median))
boxplot(count ~ bymedian, data = InsectSprays,
        xlab = "Type of spray", ylab = "Insect count",
        main = "InsectSprays data", varwidth = TRUE,
        col = "lightgray")
```

---

reorder.dendrogram *Reorder a Dendrogram*

Description

A method for the generic function reorder.

There are many different orderings of a dendrogram that are consistent with the structure imposed. This function takes a dendrogram and a vector of values and reorders the dendrogram in the order of the supplied vector, maintaining the constraints on the dendrogram.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class dendrogram
reorder(x, wts, agglo.FUN = sum, ...)
```

Arguments

x	the (dendrogram) object to be reordered
wts	numeric weights (arbitrary values) for reordering.
agglo.FUN	a function for weights agglomeration, see below.
...	additional arguments

Details

Using the weights wts, the leaves of the dendrogram are reordered so as to be in an order as consistent as possible with the weights. At each node, the branches are ordered in increasing weights where the weight of a branch is defined as $f(w_j)$ where f is agglo.FUN and w_j is the weight of the j-th sub branch).

Value

A dendrogram where each node has a further attribute value with its corresponding weight.

Author(s)

R. Gentleman and M. Maechler

See Also

reorder.

rev.dendrogram which simply reverses the nodes' order; heatmap, cophenetic.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

set.seed(123)
x <- rnorm(10)
hc <- hclust(dist(x))
dd <- as.dendrogram(hc)
dd.reorder <- reorder(dd, 10:1)
plot(dd, main = "random dendrogram dd")

op <- par(mfcol = 1:2)
plot(dd.reorder, main = "reorder(dd, 10:1)")
plot(reorder(dd, 10:1, agglo.FUN = mean), main = "reorder(dd, 10:1, mean)")
par(op)
```

---

replications *Number of Replications of Terms*

Description

Returns a vector or a list of the number of replicates for each term in the formula.

Usage

```
replications(formula, data = NULL, na.action)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula or a terms object or a data frame.
data	a data frame used to find the objects in formula.
na.action	function for handling missing values. Defaults to a na.action attribute of data, then a setting of the option na.action, or na.fail if that is not set.

Details

If formula is a data frame and data is missing, formula is used for data with the formula ~ ..

Any character vectors in the formula are coerced to factors.

Value

A vector or list with one entry for each term in the formula giving the number(s) of replications for each level. If all levels are balanced (have the same number of replications) the result is a vector, otherwise it is a list with a component for each terms, as a vector, matrix or array as required.

A test for balance is `!is.list(replications(formula,data))`.

Author(s)

The design was inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers *et al* (1992).

References

Chambers, J. M., Freeny, A and Heiberger, R. M. (1992) *Analysis of variance; designed experiments.* Chapter 5 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`model.tables`

Examples

```
## From Venables and Ripley (2002) p.165.
N <- c(0,1,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,1,1,0,0)
P <- c(1,1,0,0,0,1,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,1,0)
K <- c(1,0,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,0,1,1,1,0,1,0)
yield <- c(49.5,62.8,46.8,57.0,59.8,58.5,55.5,56.0,62.8,55.8,69.5,
55.0, 62.0,48.8,45.5,44.2,52.0,51.5,49.8,48.8,57.2,59.0,53.2,56.0)

npk <- data.frame(block = gl(6,4), N = factor(N), P = factor(P),
                  K = factor(K), yield = yield)
replications(~ . - yield, npk)
```

---

reshape *Reshape Grouped Data*

Description

This function reshapes a data frame between 'wide' format with repeated measurements in separate columns of the same record and 'long' format with the repeated measurements in separate records.

Usage

```
reshape(data, varying = NULL, v.names = NULL, timevar = "time",
        idvar = "id", ids = 1:NROW(data),
        times = seq_along(varying[[1]]),
        drop = NULL, direction, new.row.names = NULL,
        sep = ".",
        split = if (sep == "") {
            list(regexp = "[A-Za-z][0-9]", include = TRUE)
        } else {
            list(regexp = sep, include = FALSE, fixed = TRUE)}
```

```
)
```

Arguments

data	a data frame
varying	names of sets of variables in the wide format that correspond to single variables in long format ('time-varying'). This is canonically a list of vectors of variable names, but it can optionally be a matrix of names, or a single vector of names. In each case, the names can be replaced by indices which are interpreted as referring to `names(data)`. See 'Details' for more details and options.
v.names	names of variables in the long format that correspond to multiple variables in the wide format. See 'Details'.
timevar	the variable in long format that differentiates multiple records from the same group or individual. If more than one record matches, the first will be taken (with a warning).
idvar	Names of one or more variables in long format that identify multiple records from the same group/individual. These variables may also be present in wide format.
ids	the values to use for a newly created `idvar` variable in long format.
times	the values to use for a newly created `timevar` variable in long format. See 'Details'.
drop	a vector of names of variables to drop before reshaping.
direction	character string, either `"wide"` to reshape to wide format, or `"long"` to reshape to long format.
new.row.names	character or `NULL`: a non-null value will be used for the row names of the result.
sep	A character vector of length 1, indicating a separating character in the variable names in the wide format. This is used for guessing `v.names` and `times` arguments based on the names in `varying`. If `sep == ""`, the split is just before the first numeral that follows an alphabetic character. This is also used to create variable names when reshaping to wide format.
split	A list with three components, `regexp`, `include`, and (optionally) `fixed`. This allows an extended interface to variable name splitting. See 'Details'.

Details

The arguments to this function are described in terms of longitudinal data, as that is the application motivating the functions. A 'wide' longitudinal dataset will have one record for each individual with some time-constant variables that occupy single columns and some time-varying variables that occupy a column for each time point. In 'long' format there will be multiple records for each individual, with some variables being constant across these records and others varying across the records. A 'long' format dataset also needs a 'time' variable identifying which time point each record comes from and an 'id' variable showing which records refer to the same person.

If the data frame resulted from a previous `reshape` then the operation can be reversed simply by `reshape(a)`. The `direction` argument is optional and the other arguments are stored as attributes on the data frame.

If `direction = "wide"` and no `varying` or `v.names` arguments are supplied it is assumed that all variables except `idvar` and `timevar` are time-varying. They are all expanded into multiple variables in wide format.

If direction = "long" the varying argument can be a vector of column names (or a corresponding index). The function will attempt to guess the v.names and times from these names. The default is variable names like x.1, x.2, where sep = "." specifies to split at the dot and drop it from the name. To have alphabetic followed by numeric times use sep = "".

Variable name splitting as described above is only attempted in the case where varying is an atomic vector, if it is a list or a matrix, v.names and times will generally need to be specified, although they will default to, respectively, the first variable name in each set, and sequential times.

Also, guessing is not attempted if v.names is given explicitly. Notice that the order of variables in varying is like x.1,y.1,x.2,y.2.

The split argument should not usually be necessary. The split$regexp component is passed to either strsplit or regexpr, where the latter is used if split$include is TRUE, in which case the splitting occurs after the first character of the matched string. In the strsplit case, the separator is not included in the result, and it is possible to specify fixed-string matching using split$fixed.

Value

The reshaped data frame with added attributes to simplify reshaping back to the original form.

See Also

stack, aperm; relist for reshaping the result of unlist.

Examples

```
summary(Indometh)
wide <- reshape(Indometh, v.names = "conc", idvar = "Subject",
                timevar = "time", direction = "wide")
wide

reshape(wide, direction = "long")
reshape(wide, idvar = "Subject", varying = list(2:12),
        v.names = "conc", direction = "long")

## times need not be numeric
df <- data.frame(id = rep(1:4, rep(2,4)),
                 visit = I(rep(c("Before","After"), 4)),
                 x = rnorm(4), y = runif(4))
df
reshape(df, timevar = "visit", idvar = "id", direction = "wide")
## warns that y is really varying
reshape(df, timevar = "visit", idvar = "id", direction = "wide", v.names = "x")


##  unbalanced long data leads to NA fill in wide form
df2 <- df[1:7, ]
df2
reshape(df2, timevar = "visit", idvar = "id", direction = "wide")

## Alternative regular expressions for guessing names
df3 <- data.frame(id = 1:4, age = c(40,50,60,50), dose1 = c(1,2,1,2),
                  dose2 = c(2,1,2,1), dose4 = c(3,3,3,3))
reshape(df3, direction = "long", varying = 3:5, sep = "")


## an example that isnt longitudinal data
```

```
state.x77 <- as.data.frame(state.x77)
long <- reshape(state.x77, idvar = "state", ids = row.names(state.x77),
                times = names(state.x77), timevar = "Characteristic",
                varying = list(names(state.x77)), direction = "long")

reshape(long, direction = "wide")

reshape(long, direction = "wide", new.row.names = unique(long$state))

## multiple id variables
df3 <- data.frame(school = rep(1:3, each = 4), class = rep(9:10, 6),
                  time = rep(c(1,1,2,2), 3), score = rnorm(12))
wide <- reshape(df3, idvar = c("school","class"), direction = "wide")
wide
## transform back
reshape(wide)
```

`residuals` *Extract Model Residuals*

Description

`residuals` is a generic function which extracts model residuals from objects returned by modeling functions.

The abbreviated form `resid` is an alias for `residuals`. It is intended to encourage users to access object components through an accessor function rather than by directly referencing an object slot.

All object classes which are returned by model fitting functions should provide a `residuals` method. (Note that the method is for '`residuals`' and not '`resid`'.)

Methods can make use of `naresid` methods to compensate for the omission of missing values. The default, `nls` and `smooth.spline` methods do.

Usage

```
residuals(object, ...)
resid(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object for which the extraction of model residuals is meaningful.
`...`	other arguments.

Value

Residuals extracted from the object `object`.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

coefficients, fitted.values, glm, lm.

influence.measures for standardized (rstandard) and studentized (rstudent) residuals.

---

runmed *Running Medians – Robust Scatter Plot Smoothing*

Description

Compute running medians of odd span. This is the 'most robust' scatter plot smoothing possible. For efficiency (and historical reason), you can use one of two different algorithms giving identical results.

Usage

```
runmed(x, k, endrule = c("median", "keep", "constant"),
       algorithm = NULL, print.level = 0)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector, the 'dependent' variable to be smoothed.
k	integer width of median window; must be odd. Turlach had a default of `k <- 1 + 2 * min((n-1)%/% 2, ceiling(0.1*n))`. Use `k = 3` for 'minimal' robust smoothing eliminating isolated outliers.
endrule	character string indicating how the values at the beginning and the end (of the data) should be treated.
	`"keep"` keeps the first and last k_2 values at both ends, where k_2 is the half-bandwidth `k2 = k %/% 2`, i.e., `y[j] = x[j]` for $j \in \{1, \ldots, k_2; n - k_2 + 1, \ldots, n\}$;
	`"constant"` copies `median(y[1:k2])` to the first values and analogously for the last ones making the smoothed ends *constant*;
	`"median"` the default, smooths the ends by using symmetrical medians of subsequently smaller bandwidth, but for the very first and last value where Tukey's robust end-point rule is applied, see smoothEnds.
algorithm	character string (partially matching `"Turlach"` or `"Stuetzle"`) or the default `NULL`, specifying which algorithm should be applied. The default choice depends on `n = length(x)` and k where `"Turlach"` will be used for larger problems.
print.level	integer, indicating verboseness of algorithm; should rarely be changed by average users.

Details

Apart from the end values, the result `y = runmed(x, k)` simply has `y[j] = median(x[(j-k2):(j+k2)])` (`k = 2*k2+1`), computed very efficiently.

The two algorithms are internally entirely different:

`"Turlach"` is the Härdle–Steiger algorithm (see Ref.) as implemented by Berwin Turlach. A tree algorithm is used, ensuring performance $O(n \log k)$ where `n = length(x)` which is asymptotically optimal.

`"Stuetzle"` is the (older) Stuetzle–Friedman implementation which makes use of median *updating* when one observation enters and one leaves the smoothing window. While this performs as $O(n \times k)$ which is slower asymptotically, it is considerably faster for small k or n.

Currently long vectors are only supported for `algorithm = "Steutzle"`.

Value

vector of smoothed values of the same length as `x` with an `attr`ibute `k` containing (the 'oddified') `k`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch>, based on Fortran code from Werner Stuetzle and S-PLUS and C code from Berwin Turlach.

References

Härdle, W. and Steiger, W. (1995) [Algorithm AS 296] Optimal median smoothing, *Applied Statistics* **44**, 258–264.

Jerome H. Friedman and Werner Stuetzle (1982) *Smoothing of Scatterplots*; Report, Dep. Statistics, Stanford U., Project Orion 003.

Martin Maechler (2003) Fast Running Medians: Finite Sample and Asymptotic Optimality; working paper available from the author.

See Also

`smoothEnds` which implements Tukey's end point rule and is called by default from `runmed(*, endrule = "median")`. `smooth` uses running medians of 3 for its compound smoothers.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

utils::example(nhtemp)
myNHT <- as.vector(nhtemp)
myNHT[20] <- 2 * nhtemp[20]
plot(myNHT, type = "b", ylim = c(48, 60), main = "Running Medians Example")
lines(runmed(myNHT, 7), col = "red")

## special: multiple y values for one x
plot(cars, main = "cars data and runmed(dist, 3)")
lines(cars, col = "light gray", type = "c")
with(cars, lines(speed, runmed(dist, k = 3), col = 2))


## nice quadratic with a few outliers
y <- ys <- (-20:20)^2
y [c(1,10,21,41)] <- c(150, 30, 400, 450)
all(y == runmed(y, 1)) # 1-neighbourhood <==> interpolation
plot(y) ## lines(y, lwd = .1, col = "light gray")
lines(lowess(seq(y), y, f = 0.3), col = "brown")
lines(runmed(y, 7), lwd = 2, col = "blue")
lines(runmed(y, 11), lwd = 2, col = "red")
```

```
## Lowess is not robust
y <- ys ; y[21] <- 6666 ; x <- seq(y)
col <- c("black", "brown","blue")
plot(y, col = col[1])
lines(lowess(x, y, f = 0.3), col = col[2])


lines(runmed(y, 7),      lwd = 2, col = col[3])
legend(length(y),max(y), c("data", "lowess(y, f = 0.3)", "runmed(y, 7)"),
       xjust = 1, col = col, lty = c(0, 1, 1), pch = c(1,NA,NA))
```

`rWishart` *Random Wishart Distributed Matrices*

Description

Generate `n` random matrices, distributed according to the Wishart distribution with parameters `Sigma` and `df`, $W_p(\Sigma, m),\ m =$ `df`, $\Sigma =$ `Sigma`.

Usage

```
rWishart(n, df, Sigma)
```

Arguments

`n`	integer sample size.
`df`	numeric parameter, "degrees of freedom".
`Sigma`	positive definite ($p \times p$) "scale" matrix, the matrix parameter of the distribution.

Details

If $X_1, \ldots, X_m,\ X_i \in \mathbf{R}^p$ is a sample of m independent multivariate Gaussians with mean (vector) 0, and covariance matrix Σ, the distribution of $M = X'X$ is $W_p(\Sigma, m)$.

Consequently, the expectation of M is

$$E[M] = m \times \Sigma.$$

Further, if `Sigma` is scalar ($p = 1$), the Wishart distribution is a scaled chi-squared (χ^2) distribution with `df` degrees of freedom, $W_1(\sigma^2, m) = \sigma^2 \chi^2_m$.

The component wise variance is

$$\mathrm{Var}(M_{ij}) = m(\Sigma^2_{ij} + \Sigma_{ii}\Sigma_{jj}).$$

Value

a numeric `array`, say `R`, of dimension $p \times p \times n$, where each `R[, , i]` is a positive definite matrix, a realization of the Wishart distribution $W_p(\Sigma, m),\ \ m =$ `df`, $\Sigma =$ `Sigma`.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates

References

Mardia, K. V., J. T. Kent, and J. M. Bibby (1979) *Multivariate Analysis*, London: Academic Press.

See Also

cov, rnorm, rchisq.

Examples

```
## Artificial
S <- toeplitz((10:1)/10)
set.seed(11)
R <- rWishart(1000, 20, S)
dim(R)  #  10 10  1000
mR <- apply(R, 1:2, mean)  # ~= E[ Wish(S, 20) ] = 20 * S
stopifnot(all.equal(mR, 20*S, tolerance = .009))

## See Details, the variance is
Va <- 20*(S^2 + tcrossprod(diag(S)))
vR <- apply(R, 1:2, var)
stopifnot(all.equal(vR, Va, tolerance = 1/16))
```

---

scatter.smooth *Scatter Plot with Smooth Curve Fitted by Loess*

Description

Plot and add a smooth curve computed by loess to a scatter plot.

Usage

```
scatter.smooth(x, y = NULL, span = 2/3, degree = 1,
    family = c("symmetric", "gaussian"),
    xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
    ylim = range(y, pred$y, na.rm = TRUE),
    evaluation = 50, ..., lpars = list())

loess.smooth(x, y, span = 2/3, degree = 1,
    family = c("symmetric", "gaussian"), evaluation = 50, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	the x and y arguments provide the x and y coordinates for the plot. Any reasonable way of defining the coordinates is acceptable. See the function xy.coords for details.
span	smoothness parameter for loess.
degree	degree of local polynomial used.
family	if "gaussian" fitting is by least-squares, and if family = "symmetric" a redescending M estimator is used.
xlab	label for x axis.

ylab	label for y axis.
ylim	the y limits of the plot.
evaluation	number of points at which to evaluate the smooth curve.
...	For scatter.smooth(), graphical parameters, passed to plot() only. For loess.smooth, control parameters passed to loess.control.
lpars	a list of arguments to be passed to lines().

Details

loess.smooth is an auxiliary function which evaluates the loess smooth at evaluation equally spaced points covering the range of x.

Value

For scatter.smooth, none.

For loess.smooth, a list with two components, x (the grid of evaluation points) and y (the smoothed values at the grid points).

See Also

loess; smoothScatter for scatter plots with smoothed *density* color representation.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

with(cars, scatter.smooth(speed, dist))
## or with dotted thick smoothed line results :
with(cars, scatter.smooth(speed, dist, lpars =
                   list(col = "red", lwd = 3, lty = 3)))
```

---

screeplot *Screeplots*

Description

screeplot.default plots the variances against the number of the principal component. This is also the plot method for classes "princomp" and "prcomp".

Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
screeplot(x, npcs = min(10, length(x$sdev)),
          type = c("barplot", "lines"),
          main = deparse(substitute(x)), ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object containing a sdev component, such as that returned by princomp() and prcomp().
npcs	the number of components to be plotted.
type	the type of plot.
main, ...	graphics parameters.

References

Mardia, K. V., J. T. Kent and J. M. Bibby (1979). *Multivariate Analysis*, London: Academic Press.

Venables, W. N. and B. D. Ripley (2002). *Modern Applied Statistics with S*, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

princomp and prcomp.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## The variances of the variables in the
## USArrests data vary by orders of magnitude, so scaling is appropriate
(pc.cr <- princomp(USArrests, cor = TRUE))  # inappropriate
screeplot(pc.cr)

fit <- princomp(covmat = Harman74.cor)
screeplot(fit)
screeplot(fit, npcs = 24, type = "lines")
```

---

sd *Standard Deviation*

Description

This function computes the standard deviation of the values in x. If na.rm is TRUE then missing values are removed before computation proceeds.

Usage

```
sd(x, na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector or an object which is coercible to one by as.vector(x, "numeric").
na.rm	logical. Should missing values be removed?

Details

Like var this uses denominator $n - 1$.

The standard deviation of a zero-length vector (after removal of NAs if na.rm = TRUE) is not defined and gives an error. The standard deviation of a length-one vector is NA.

See Also

`var` for its square, and `mad`, the most robust alternative.

Examples

```
sd(1:2) ^ 2
```

`se.contrast` *Standard Errors for Contrasts in Model Terms*

Description

Returns the standard errors for one or more contrasts in an `aov` object.

Usage

```
se.contrast(object, ...)
## S3 method for class aov
se.contrast(object, contrast.obj,
            coef = contr.helmert(ncol(contrast))[, 1],
            data = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	A suitable fit, usually from `aov`.
`contrast.obj`	The contrasts for which standard errors are requested. This can be specified via a list or via a matrix. A single contrast can be specified by a list of logical vectors giving the cells to be contrasted. Multiple contrasts should be specified by a matrix, each column of which is a numerical contrast vector (summing to zero).
`coef`	used when `contrast.obj` is a list; it should be a vector of the same length as the list with zero sum. The default value is the first Helmert contrast, which contrasts the first and second cell means specified by the list.
`data`	The data frame used to evaluate `contrast.obj`.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Contrasts are usually used to test if certain means are significantly different; it can be easier to use `se.contrast` than compute them directly from the coefficients.

In multistratum models, the contrasts can appear in more than one stratum, in which case the standard errors are computed in the lowest stratum and adjusted for efficiencies and comparisons between strata. (See the comments in the note in the help for `aov` about using orthogonal contrasts.) Such standard errors are often conservative.

Suitable matrices for use with `coef` can be found by calling `contrasts` and indexing the columns by a factor.

Value

A vector giving the standard errors for each contrast.

See Also

contrasts, model.tables

Examples

```
## From Venables and Ripley (2002) p.165.
N <- c(0,1,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,1,1,0,0)
P <- c(1,1,0,0,0,1,0,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,1,0)
K <- c(1,0,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0,1,1,0,0,0,1,1,1,0,1,0)
yield <- c(49.5,62.8,46.8,57.0,59.8,58.5,55.5,56.0,62.8,55.8,69.5,
55.0, 62.0,48.8,45.5,44.2,52.0,51.5,49.8,48.8,57.2,59.0,53.2,56.0)

npk <- data.frame(block = gl(6,4), N = factor(N), P = factor(P),
                  K = factor(K), yield = yield)
## Set suitable contrasts.
options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))
npk.aov1 <- aov(yield ~ block + N + K, data = npk)
se.contrast(npk.aov1, list(N == "0", N == "1"), data = npk)
# or via a matrix
cont <- matrix(c(-1,1), 2, 1, dimnames = list(NULL, "N"))
se.contrast(npk.aov1, cont[N, , drop = FALSE]/12, data = npk)

## test a multi-stratum model
npk.aov2 <- aov(yield ~ N + K + Error(block/(N + K)), data = npk)
se.contrast(npk.aov2, list(N == "0", N == "1"))


## an example looking at an interaction contrast
## Dataset from R.E. Kirk (1995)
## Experimental Design: procedures for the behavioral sciences
score <- c(12, 8,10, 6, 8, 4,10,12, 8, 6,10,14, 9, 7, 9, 5,11,12,
           7,13, 9, 9, 5,11, 8, 7, 3, 8,12,10,13,14,19, 9,16,14)
A <- gl(2, 18, labels = c("a1", "a2"))
B <- rep(gl(3, 6, labels = c("b1", "b2", "b3")), 2)
fit <- aov(score ~ A*B)
cont <- c(1, -1)[A] * c(1, -1, 0)[B]
sum(cont)       # 0
sum(cont*score) # value of the contrast
se.contrast(fit, as.matrix(cont))
(t.stat <- sum(cont*score)/se.contrast(fit, as.matrix(cont)))
summary(fit, split = list(B = 1:2), expand.split = TRUE)
## t.stat^2 is the F value on the A:B: C1 line (with Helmert contrasts)
## Now look at all three interaction contrasts
cont <- c(1, -1)[A] * cbind(c(1, -1, 0), c(1, 0, -1), c(0, 1, -1))[B,]
se.contrast(fit, cont)  # same, due to balance.
rm(A, B, score)


## multi-stratum example where efficiencies play a role
utils::example(eff.aovlist)
fit <- aov(Yield ~ A + B * C + Error(Block), data = aovdat)
cont1 <- c(-1, 1)[A]/32  # Helmert contrasts
cont2 <- c(-1, 1)[B] * c(-1, 1)[C]/32
cont <- cbind(A = cont1, BC = cont2)
colSums(cont*Yield) # values of the contrasts
se.contrast(fit, as.matrix(cont))
```

```
# comparison with lme
library(nlme)
fit2 <- lme(Yield ~ A + B*C, random = ~1 | Block, data = aovdat)
summary(fit2)$tTable # same estimates, similar (but smaller) ses.
```

`selfStart` *Construct Self-starting Nonlinear Models*

Description

Construct self-starting nonlinear models.

Usage

```
selfStart(model, initial, parameters, template)
```

Arguments

`model`	a function object defining a nonlinear model or a nonlinear formula object of the form `~expression`.
`initial`	a function object, taking three arguments: `mCall`, `data`, and `LHS`, representing, respectively, a matched call to the function `model`, a data frame in which to interpret the variables in `mCall`, and the expression from the left-hand side of the model formula in the call to `nls`. This function should return initial values for the parameters in `model`.
`parameters`	a character vector specifying the terms on the right hand side of `model` for which initial estimates should be calculated. Passed as the `namevec` argument to the `deriv` function.
`template`	an optional prototype for the calling sequence of the returned object, passed as the `function.arg` argument to the `deriv` function. By default, a template is generated with the covariates in `model` coming first and the parameters in `model` coming last in the calling sequence.

Details

This function is generic; methods functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects.

Value

a function object of class `"selfStart"`, for the `formula` method obtained by applying `deriv` to the right hand side of the `model` formula. An `initial` attribute (defined by the `initial` argument) is added to the function to calculate starting estimates for the parameters in the model automatically.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`nls`, `getInitial`. Each of the following are `"selfStart"` models (with examples) `SSasymp`, `SSasympOff`, `SSasympOrig`, `SSbiexp`, `SSfol`, `SSfpl`, `SSgompertz`, `SSlogis`, `SSmicmen`, `SSweibull`

Examples

```
## self-starting logistic model

SSlogis <- selfStart(~ Asym/(1 + exp((xmid - x)/scal)),
  function(mCall, data, LHS)
  {
    xy <- sortedXyData(mCall[["x"]], LHS, data)
    if(nrow(xy) < 4) {
      stop("Too few distinct x values to fit a logistic")
    }
    z <- xy[["y"]]
    if (min(z) <= 0) { z <- z + 0.05 * max(z) } # avoid zeroes
    z <- z/(1.05 * max(z))              # scale to within unit height
    xy[["z"]] <- log(z/(1 - z))         # logit transformation
    aux <- coef(lm(x ~ z, xy))
    parameters(xy) <- list(xmid = aux[1], scal = aux[2])
    pars <- as.vector(coef(nls(y ~ 1/(1 + exp((xmid - x)/scal)),
                               data = xy, algorithm = "plinear")))
    setNames(c(pars[3], pars[1], pars[2]),
             mCall[c("Asym", "xmid", "scal")])
  }, c("Asym", "xmid", "scal"))

# first.order.log.model is a function object defining a first order
# compartment model
# first.order.log.initial is a function object which calculates initial
# values for the parameters in first.order.log.model

# self-starting first order compartment model
## Not run:
SSfol <- selfStart(first.order.log.model, first.order.log.initial)

## End(Not run)

## Explore the self-starting models already available in Rs  "stats":
pos.st <- which("package:stats" == search())
mSS <- apropos("^SS..", where = TRUE, ignore.case = FALSE)
(mSS <- unname(mSS[names(mSS) == pos.st]))
fSS <- sapply(mSS, get, pos = pos.st, mode = "function")
all(sapply(fSS, inherits, "selfStart"))  # -> TRUE

## Show the argument list of each self-starting function:
str(fSS, give.attr = FALSE)
```

`setNames` *Set the Names in an Object*

Description

This is a convenience function that sets the names on an object and returns the object. It is most useful at the end of a function definition where one is creating the object to be returned and would prefer not to store it under a name just so the names can be assigned.

Usage

```
setNames(object = nm, nm)
```

Arguments

object	an object for which a names attribute will be meaningful
nm	a character vector of names to assign to the object

Value

An object of the same sort as object with the new names assigned.

Author(s)

Douglas M. Bates and Saikat DebRoy

See Also

unname for removing names.

Examples

```
setNames( 1:3, c("foo", "bar", "baz") )
# this is just a short form of
tmp <- 1:3
names(tmp) <-  c("foo", "bar", "baz")
tmp

## special case of character vector, using default
setNames(nm = c("First", "2nd"))
```

---

shapiro.test *Shapiro-Wilk Normality Test*

Description

Performs the Shapiro-Wilk test of normality.

Usage

```
shapiro.test(x)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector of data values. Missing values are allowed, but the number of non-missing values must be between 3 and 5000.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the Shapiro-Wilk statistic.
p.value	an approximate p-value for the test. This is said in Royston (1995) to be adequate for p.value < 0.1.
method	the character string "Shapiro-Wilk normality test".
data.name	a character string giving the name(s) of the data.

Source

The algorithm used is a C translation of the Fortran code described in Royston (1995) and found at http://lib.stat.cmu.edu/apstat/R94. The calculation of the p value is exact for $n = 3$, otherwise approximations are used, separately for $4 \leq n \leq 11$ and $n \geq 12$.

References

Patrick Royston (1982) An extension of Shapiro and Wilk's W test for normality to large samples. *Applied Statistics*, **31**, 115–124.

Patrick Royston (1982) Algorithm AS 181: The W test for Normality. *Applied Statistics*, **31**, 176–180.

Patrick Royston (1995) Remark AS R94: A remark on Algorithm AS 181: The W test for normality. *Applied Statistics*, **44**, 547–551.

See Also

qqnorm for producing a normal quantile-quantile plot.

Examples

```
shapiro.test(rnorm(100, mean = 5, sd = 3))
shapiro.test(runif(100, min = 2, max = 4))
```

SignRank *Distribution of the Wilcoxon Signed Rank Statistic*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the distribution of the Wilcoxon Signed Rank statistic obtained from a sample with size n.

Usage

```
dsignrank(x, n, log = FALSE)
psignrank(q, n, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qsignrank(p, n, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rsignrank(nn, n)
```

Arguments

x, q	vector of quantiles.
p	vector of probabilities.
nn	number of observations. If length(nn) > 1, the length is taken to be the number required.
n	number(s) of observations in the sample(s). A positive integer, or a vector of such integers.
log, log.p	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
lower.tail	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

This distribution is obtained as follows. Let `x` be a sample of size `n` from a continuous distribution symmetric about the origin. Then the Wilcoxon signed rank statistic is the sum of the ranks of the absolute values `x[i]` for which `x[i]` is positive. This statistic takes values between 0 and $n(n+1)/2$, and its mean and variance are $n(n+1)/4$ and $n(n+1)(2n+1)/24$, respectively.

If either of the first two arguments is a vector, the recycling rule is used to do the calculations for all combinations of the two up to the length of the longer vector.

Value

`dsignrank` gives the density, `psignrank` gives the distribution function, `qsignrank` gives the quantile function, and `rsignrank` generates random deviates.

The length of the result is determined by `nn` for `rsignrank`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `nn` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Author(s)

Kurt Hornik; efficiency improvement by Ivo Ugrina.

See Also

`wilcox.test` to calculate the statistic from data, find p values and so on.

Distributions for standard distributions, including `dwilcox` for the distribution of *two-sample* Wilcoxon rank sum statistic.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

par(mfrow = c(2,2))
for(n in c(4:5,10,40)) {
  x <- seq(0, n*(n+1)/2, length = 501)
  plot(x, dsignrank(x, n = n), type = "l",
       main = paste0("dsignrank(x, n = ", n, ")"))
}
```

---

simulate *Simulate Responses*

Description

Simulate one or more responses from the distribution corresponding to a fitted model object.

Usage

```
simulate(object, nsim = 1, seed = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object representing a fitted model.
nsim	number of response vectors to simulate. Defaults to 1.
seed	an object specifying if and how the random number generator should be initialized ('seeded'). For the "lm" method, either NULL or an integer that will be used in a call to set.seed before simulating the response vectors. If set, the value is saved as the "seed" attribute of the returned value. The default, NULL will not change the random generator state, and return .Random.seed as the "seed" attribute, see 'Value'.
...	additional optional arguments.

Details

This is a generic function. Consult the individual modeling functions for details on how to use this function.

Package **stats** has a method for "lm" objects which is used for lm and glm fits. There is a method for fits from glm.nb in package **MASS**, and hence the case of negative binomial families is not covered by the "lm" method.

The methods for linear models fitted by lm or glm(family = "gaussian") assume that any weights which have been supplied are inversely proportional to the error variance. For other GLMs the (optional) simulate component of the family object is used—there is no appropriate simulation method for 'quasi' models as they are specified only up to two moments.

For binomial and Poisson GLMs the dispersion is fixed at one. Integer prior weights w_i can be interpreted as meaning that observation i is an average of w_i observations, which is natural for binomials specified as proportions but less so for a Poisson, for which prior weights are ignored with a warning.

For a gamma GLM the shape parameter is estimated by maximum likelihood (using function gamma.shape in package **MASS**). The interpretation of weights is as multipliers to a basic shape parameter, since dispersion is inversely proportional to shape.

For an inverse gaussian GLM the model assumed is $IG(\mu_i, \lambda w_i)$ (see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inverse_Gaussian_distribution) where λ is estimated by the inverse of the dispersion estimate for the fit. The variance is $\mu_i^3/(\lambda w_i)$ and hence inversely proportional to the prior weights. The simulation is done by function rinvGauss from the **SuppDists** package, which must be installed.

Value

Typically, a list of length nsim of simulated responses. Where appropriate the result can be a data frame (which is a special type of list).

For the "lm" method, the result is a data frame with an attribute "seed". If argument seed is NULL, the attribute is the value of .Random.seed before the simulation was started; otherwise it is the value of the argument with a "kind" attribute with value as.list(RNGkind()).

See Also

RNG about random number generation in , fitted.values and residuals for related methods; glm, lm for model fitting.

There are further examples in the 'simulate.R' tests file in the sources for package **stats**.

Examples

```
x <- 1:5
mod1 <- lm(c(1:3, 7, 6) ~ x)
S1 <- simulate(mod1, nsim = 4)
## repeat the simulation:
.Random.seed <- attr(S1, "seed")
identical(S1, simulate(mod1, nsim = 4))

S2 <- simulate(mod1, nsim = 200, seed = 101)
rowMeans(S2) # should be about the same as
fitted(mod1)

## repeat identically:
(sseed <- attr(S2, "seed")) # seed; RNGkind as attribute
stopifnot(identical(S2, simulate(mod1, nsim = 200, seed = sseed)))

## To be sure about the proper RNGkind, e.g., after
RNGversion("2.7.0")
## first set the RNG kind, then simulate
do.call(RNGkind, attr(sseed, "kind"))
identical(S2, simulate(mod1, nsim = 200, seed = sseed))

## Binomial GLM examples
yb1 <- matrix(c(4, 4, 5, 7, 8, 6, 6, 5, 3, 2), ncol = 2)
modb1 <- glm(yb1 ~ x, family = binomial)
S3 <- simulate(modb1, nsim = 4)
# each column of S3 is a two-column matrix.

x2 <- sort(runif(100))
yb2 <- rbinom(100, prob = plogis(2*(x2-1)), size = 1)
yb2 <- factor(1 + yb2, labels = c("failure", "success"))
modb2 <- glm(yb2 ~ x2, family = binomial)
S4 <- simulate(modb2, nsim = 4)
# each column of S4 is a factor
```

---

smooth *Tukey's (Running Median) Smoothing*

Description

Tukey's smoothers, *3RS3R*, *3RSS*, *3R*, etc.

Usage

```
smooth(x, kind = c("3RS3R", "3RSS", "3RSR", "3R", "3", "S"),
       twiceit = FALSE, endrule = "Tukey", do.ends = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a vector or time series
kind	a character string indicating the kind of smoother required; defaults to "3RS3R".

twiceit	logical, indicating if the result should be 'twiced'. Twicing a smoother $S(y)$ means $S(y) + S(y - S(y))$, i.e., adding smoothed residuals to the smoothed values. This decreases bias (increasing variance).
endrule	a character string indicating the rule for smoothing at the boundary. Either "Tukey" (default) or "copy".
do.ends	logical, indicating if the 3-splitting of ties should also happen at the boundaries (ends). This is only used for kind = "S".

Details

3 is Tukey's short notation for running medians of length **3**,
3R stands for **R**epeated 3 until convergence, and
S for **S**plitting of horizontal stretches of length 2 or 3.

Hence, 3RS3R is a concatenation of 3R, S and 3R, 3RSS similarly, whereas 3RSR means first 3R and then (S and 3) **R**epeated until convergence – which can be bad.

Value

An object of class "tukeysmooth" (which has print and summary methods) and is a vector or time series containing the smoothed values with additional attributes.

Note

S and S-PLUS use a different (somewhat better) Tukey smoother in smooth(*). Note that there are other smoothing methods which provide rather better results. These were designed for hand calculations and may be used mainly for didactical purposes.

Since version 1.2, smooth *does* really implement Tukey's end-point rule correctly (see argument endrule).

kind = "3RSR" has been the default till -1.1, but it can have very bad properties, see the examples.

Note that repeated application of smooth(*) *does* smooth more, for the "3RS*" kinds.

References

Tukey, J. W. (1977). *Exploratory Data Analysis*, Reading Massachusetts: Addison-Wesley.

See Also

runmed for running medians; lowess and loess; supsmu and smooth.spline.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## see also   demo(smooth) !

x1 <- c(4, 1, 3, 6, 6, 4, 1, 6, 2, 4, 2) # very artificial
(x3R <- smooth(x1, "3R")) # 2 iterations of "3"
smooth(x3R, kind = "S")

sm.3RS <- function(x, ...)
   smooth(smooth(x, "3R", ...), "S", ...)

y <- c(1, 1, 19:1)
```

```
plot(y, main = "misbehaviour of \"3RSR\"", col.main = 3)
lines(sm.3RS(y))
lines(smooth(y))
lines(smooth(y, "3RSR"), col = 3, lwd = 2)  # the horror

x <- c(8:10, 10, 0, 0, 9, 9)
plot(x, main = "breakdown of  3R  and  S  and hence  3RSS")
matlines(cbind(smooth(x, "3R"), smooth(x, "S"), smooth(x, "3RSS"), smooth(x)))

presidents[is.na(presidents)] <- 0 # silly
summary(sm3 <- smooth(presidents, "3R"))
summary(sm2 <- smooth(presidents,"3RSS"))
summary(sm  <- smooth(presidents))

all.equal(c(sm2), c(smooth(smooth(sm3, "S"), "S")))  # 3RSS  === 3R S S
all.equal(c(sm),  c(smooth(smooth(sm3, "S"), "3R"))) # 3RS3R === 3R S 3R

plot(presidents, main = "smooth(presidents0, *) :  3R and default 3RS3R")
lines(sm3, col = 3, lwd = 1.5)
lines(sm, col = 2, lwd = 1.25)
```

`smooth.spline` *Fit a Smoothing Spline*

Description

Fits a cubic smoothing spline to the supplied data.

Usage

```
smooth.spline(x, y = NULL, w = NULL, df, spar = NULL, cv = FALSE,
              all.knots = FALSE, nknots = .nknots.smspl,
              keep.data = TRUE, df.offset = 0, penalty = 1,
              control.spar = list(), tol = 1e-6 * IQR(x))
```

Arguments

`x`	a vector giving the values of the predictor variable, or a list or a two-column matrix specifying x and y.
`y`	responses. If `y` is missing or `NULL`, the responses are assumed to be specified by `x`, with `x` the index vector.
`w`	optional vector of weights of the same length as `x`; defaults to all 1.
`df`	the desired equivalent number of degrees of freedom (trace of the smoother matrix).
`spar`	smoothing parameter, typically (but not necessarily) in $(0, 1]$. The coefficient λ of the integral of the squared second derivative in the fit (penalized log likelihood) criterion is a monotone function of `spar`, see the details below.
`cv`	ordinary (`TRUE`) or 'generalized' cross-validation (GCV) when `FALSE`; setting it to `NA` skips the evaluation of leverages and any score.
`all.knots`	if `TRUE`, all distinct points in `x` are used as knots. If `FALSE` (default), a subset of `x[]` is used, specifically `x[j]` where the `nknots` indices are evenly spaced in `1:n`, see also the next argument `nknots`.

`nknots` integer or function giving the number of knots to use when `all.knots = FALSE`. If a function (as by default), the number of knots is `nknots(nx)`. By default for $n_x > 49$ this is less than n_x, the number of unique `x` values, see the Note.

`keep.data` logical specifying if the input data should be kept in the result. If `TRUE` (as per default), fitted values and residuals are available from the result.

`df.offset` allows the degrees of freedom to be increased by `df.offset` in the GCV criterion.

`penalty` the coefficient of the penalty for degrees of freedom in the GCV criterion.

`control.spar` optional list with named components controlling the root finding when the smoothing parameter `spar` is computed, i.e., missing or `NULL`, see below.

Note that this is partly *experimental* and may change with general spar computation improvements!

low: lower bound for `spar`; defaults to -1.5 (used to implicitly default to 0 in versions earlier than 1.4).

high: upper bound for `spar`; defaults to +1.5.

tol: the absolute precision (**tol**erance) used; defaults to 1e-4 (formerly 1e-3).

eps: the relative precision used; defaults to 2e-8 (formerly 0.00244).

trace: logical indicating if iterations should be traced.

maxit: integer giving the maximal number of iterations; defaults to 500.

Note that `spar` is only searched for in the interval $[low, high]$.

`tol` a tolerance for same-ness or uniqueness of the `x` values. The values are binned into bins of size `tol` and values which fall into the same bin are regarded as the same. Must be strictly positive (and finite).

Details

Neither `x` nor `y` are allowed to containing missing or infinite values.

The `x` vector should contain at least four distinct values. 'Distinct' here is controlled by `tol`: values which are regarded as the same are replaced by the first of their values and the corresponding `y` and `w` are pooled accordingly.

The computational λ used (as a function of $s = spar$) is $\lambda = r * 256^{3s-1}$ where $r = tr(X'WX)/tr(\Sigma)$, Σ is the matrix given by $\Sigma_{ij} = \int B_i''(t)B_j''(t)dt$, X is given by $X_{ij} = B_j(x_i)$, W is the diagonal matrix of weights (scaled such that its trace is n, the original number of observations) and $B_k(.)$ is the k-th B-spline.

Note that with these definitions, $f_i = f(x_i)$, and the B-spline basis representation $f = Xc$ (i.e., c is the vector of spline coefficients), the penalized log likelihood is $L = (y - f)'W(y - f) + \lambda c'\Sigma c$, and hence c is the solution of the (ridge regression) $(X'WX + \lambda\Sigma)c = X'Wy$.

If `spar` is missing or `NULL`, the value of `df` is used to determine the degree of smoothing. If both are missing, leave-one-out cross-validation (ordinary or 'generalized' as determined by `cv`) is used to determine λ. Note that from the above relation,

`spar` is $s = s0 + 0.0601 * \log \lambda$, which is intentionally *different* from the S-PLUS implementation of `smooth.spline` (where `spar` is proportional to λ). In 's ($\log \lambda$) scale, it makes more sense to vary `spar` linearly.

Note however that currently the results may become very unreliable for `spar` values smaller than about -1 or -2. The same may happen for values larger than 2 or so. Don't think of setting `spar` or the controls `low` and `high` outside such a safe range, unless you know what you are doing!

The 'generalized' cross-validation method will work correctly when there are duplicated points in x. However, it is ambiguous what leave-one-out cross-validation means with duplicated points, and the internal code uses an approximation that involves leaving out groups of duplicated points. cv = TRUE is best avoided in that case.

Value

An object of class "smooth.spline" with components

x	the *distinct* x values in increasing order, see the 'Details' above.
y	the fitted values corresponding to x.
w	the weights used at the unique values of x.
yin	the y values used at the unique y values.
data	only if keep.data = TRUE: itself a list with components x, y and w of the same length. These are the original $(x_i, y_i, w_i), i = 1, \ldots, n$, values where data$x may have repeated values and hence be longer than the above x component; see details.
lev	(when cv was not NA) leverages, the diagonal values of the smoother matrix.
cv.crit	cross-validation score, 'generalized' or true, depending on cv.
pen.crit	penalized criterion
crit	the criterion value minimized in the underlying .Fortran routine 'sslvrg'.
df	equivalent degrees of freedom used. Note that (currently) this value may become quite imprecise when the true df is between and 1 and 2.
spar	the value of spar computed or given.
lambda	the value of λ corresponding to spar, see the details above.
iparms	named integer(3) vector where ..$ipars["iter"] gives number of spar computing iterations used.
fit	list for use by predict.smooth.spline, with components **knot:** the knot sequence (including the repeated boundary knots). **nk:** number of coefficients or number of 'proper' knots plus 2. **coef:** coefficients for the spline basis used. **min, range:** numbers giving the corresponding quantities of x.
call	the matched call.

Note

The number of unique x values, nx $= n_x$, are determined by the tol argument, equivalently to

```
nx <- length(x)  -  sum(duplicated( round((x - mean(x)) / tol) ))
```

The default all.knots = FALSE and nknots = .nknots.smspl, entails using only $O({n_x}^{0.2})$ knots instead of n_x for $n_x > 49$. This cuts speed and memory requirements, but not drastically anymore since version 1.5.1 where it is only $O(n_k) + O(n)$ where n_k is the number of knots.

In this case where not all unique x values are used as knots, the result is not a smoothing spline in the strict sense, but very close unless a small smoothing parameter (or large df) is used.

Author(s)

implementation by B. D. Ripley and Martin Maechler (spar/lambda, etc).

Source

This function is based on code in the GAMFIT Fortran program by T. Hastie and R. Tibshirani (http://lib.stat.cmu.edu/general/), which makes use of spline code by Finbarr O'Sullivan. Its design parallels the smooth.spline function of Chambers & Hastie (1992).

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Green, P. J. and Silverman, B. W. (1994) *Nonparametric Regression and Generalized Linear Models: A Roughness Penalty Approach.* Chapman and Hall.

Hastie, T. J. and Tibshirani, R. J. (1990) *Generalized Additive Models.* Chapman and Hall.

See Also

predict.smooth.spline for evaluating the spline and its derivatives.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

attach(cars)
plot(speed, dist, main = "data(cars)  &  smoothing splines")
cars.spl <- smooth.spline(speed, dist)
(cars.spl)
## This example has duplicate points, so avoid cv = TRUE

lines(cars.spl, col = "blue")
lines(smooth.spline(speed, dist, df = 10), lty = 2, col = "red")
legend(5,120,c(paste("default [C.V.] => df =",round(cars.spl$df,1)),
               "s( * , df = 10)"), col = c("blue","red"), lty = 1:2,
       bg = bisque)
detach()


## Residual (Tukey Anscombe) plot:
plot(residuals(cars.spl) ~ fitted(cars.spl))
abline(h = 0, col = "gray")

## consistency check:
stopifnot(all.equal(cars$dist,
                    fitted(cars.spl) + residuals(cars.spl)))

## Visualize the behavior of  .nknots.smspl()
nKnots <- Vectorize(.nknots.smspl) ; c.. <- adjustcolor("gray20",.5)
curve(nKnots, 1, 250, n=250)
abline(0,1, lty=2, col=c..); text(90,90,"y = x", col=c.., adj=-.25)
abline(h=100,lty=2); abline(v=200, lty=2)

n <- c(1:799, seq(800, 3490, by=10), seq(3500, 10000, by = 50))
plot(n, nKnots(n), type="l", main = "Vectorize(.nknots.smspl) (n)")
abline(0,1, lty=2, col=c..); text(180,180,"y = x", col=c..)
n0 <- c(50, 200, 800, 3200); c0 <- adjustcolor("blue3", .5)
lines(n0, nKnots(n0), type="h", col=c0)
axis(1, at=n0, line=-2, col.ticks=c0, col=NA, col.axis=c0)
axis(4, at=.nknots.smspl(10000), line=-.5, col=c..,col.axis=c.., las=1)
```

```
##-- artificial example
y18 <- c(1:3, 5, 4, 7:3, 2*(2:5), rep(10, 4))
xx  <- seq(1, length(y18), len = 201)
(s2  <- smooth.spline(y18)) # GCV
(s02  <- smooth.spline(y18, spar = 0.2))
(s02. <- smooth.spline(y18, spar = 0.2, cv = NA))
plot(y18, main = deparse(s2$call), col.main = 2)
lines(s2, col = "gray"); lines(predict(s2, xx), col = 2)
lines(predict(s02, xx), col = 3); mtext(deparse(s02$call), col = 3)



## The following shows the problematic behavior of spar searching:
(s2  <- smooth.spline(y18, control =
                      list(trace = TRUE, tol = 1e-6, low = -1.5)))
(s2m <- smooth.spline(y18, cv = TRUE, control =
                      list(trace = TRUE, tol = 1e-6, low = -1.5)))
## both above do quite similarly (Df = 8.5 +- 0.2)
```

`smoothEnds` *End Points Smoothing (for Running Medians)*

Description

Smooth end points of a vector `y` using subsequently smaller medians and Tukey's end point rule at the very end. (of odd span),

Usage

```
smoothEnds(y, k = 3)
```

Arguments

`y`	dependent variable to be smoothed (vector).
`k`	width of largest median window; must be odd.

Details

`smoothEnds` is used to only do the 'end point smoothing', i.e., change at most the observations closer to the beginning/end than half the window `k`. The first and last value are computed using *Tukey's end point rule*, i.e., `sm[1] = median(y[1], sm[2], 3*sm[2] - 2*sm[3])`.

Value

vector of smoothed values, the same length as `y`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

References

John W. Tukey (1977) *Exploratory Data Analysis*, Addison.

Velleman, P.F., and Hoaglin, D.C. (1981) *ABC of EDA (Applications, Basics, and Computing of Exploratory Data Analysis)*; Duxbury.

See Also

`runmed(*, endrule = "median")` which calls `smoothEnds()`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

y <- ys <- (-20:20)^2
y [c(1,10,21,41)] <-  c(100, 30, 400, 470)
s7k <- runmed(y, 7, endrule = "keep")
s7. <- runmed(y, 7, endrule = "const")
s7m <- runmed(y, 7)
col3 <- c("midnightblue","blue","steelblue")
plot(y, main = "Running Medians -- runmed(*, k=7, end.rule = X)")
lines(ys, col = "light gray")
matlines(cbind(s7k, s7.,s7m), lwd = 1.5, lty = 1, col = col3)
legend(1, 470, paste("endrule", c("keep","constant","median"), sep = " = "),
       col = col3, lwd = 1.5, lty = 1)

stopifnot(identical(s7m, smoothEnds(s7k, 7)))
```

---

sortedXyData *Create a* `sortedXyData` *Object*

Description

This is a constructor function for the class of `sortedXyData` objects. These objects are mostly used in the `initial` function for a self-starting nonlinear regression model, which will be of the `selfStart` class.

Usage

```
sortedXyData(x, y, data)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric vector or an expression that will evaluate in `data` to a numeric vector
`y`	a numeric vector or an expression that will evaluate in `data` to a numeric vector
`data`	an optional data frame in which to evaluate expressions for `x` and `y`, if they are given as expressions

Value

A `sortedXyData` object. This is a data frame with exactly two numeric columns, named `x` and `y`. The rows are sorted so the `x` column is in increasing order. Duplicate `x` values are eliminated by averaging the corresponding `y` values.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

selfStart, NLSstClosestX, NLSstLfAsymptote, NLSstRtAsymptote

Examples

```
DNase.2 <- DNase[ DNase$Run == "2", ]
sortedXyData( expression(log(conc)), expression(density), DNase.2 )
```

---

spec.ar *Estimate Spectral Density of a Time Series from AR Fit*

Description

Fits an AR model to x (or uses the existing fit) and computes (and by default plots) the spectral density of the fitted model.

Usage

```
spec.ar(x, n.freq, order = NULL, plot = TRUE, na.action = na.fail,
        method = "yule-walker", ...)
```

Arguments

x	A univariate (not yet:or multivariate) time series or the result of a fit by ar.
n.freq	The number of points at which to plot.
order	The order of the AR model to be fitted. If omitted, the order is chosen by AIC.
plot	Plot the periodogram?
na.action	NA action function.
method	method for ar fit.
...	Graphical arguments passed to plot.spec.

Value

An object of class "spec". The result is returned invisibly if plot is true.

Warning

Some authors, for example Thomson (1990), warn strongly that AR spectra can be misleading.

Note

The multivariate case is not yet implemented.

References

Thompson, D.J. (1990) Time series analysis of Holocene climate data. *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc. A* **330**, 601–616.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer. (Especially page 402.)

See Also

ar, spectrum.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

spec.ar(lh)

spec.ar(ldeaths)
spec.ar(ldeaths, method = "burg")

spec.ar(log(lynx))
spec.ar(log(lynx), method = "burg", add = TRUE, col = "purple")
spec.ar(log(lynx), method = "mle", add = TRUE, col = "forest green")
spec.ar(log(lynx), method = "ols", add = TRUE, col = "blue")
```

---

spec.pgram — *Estimate Spectral Density of a Time Series by a Smoothed Periodogram*

Description

spec.pgram calculates the periodogram using a fast Fourier transform, and optionally smooths the result with a series of modified Daniell smoothers (moving averages giving half weight to the end values).

Usage

```
spec.pgram(x, spans = NULL, kernel, taper = 0.1,
           pad = 0, fast = TRUE, demean = FALSE, detrend = TRUE,
           plot = TRUE, na.action = na.fail, ...)
```

Arguments

x	univariate or multivariate time series.
spans	vector of odd integers giving the widths of modified Daniell smoothers to be used to smooth the periodogram.
kernel	alternatively, a kernel smoother of class "tskernel".
taper	specifies the proportion of data to taper. A split cosine bell taper is applied to this proportion of the data at the beginning and end of the series.
pad	proportion of data to pad. Zeros are added to the end of the series to increase its length by the proportion pad.

fast	logical; if TRUE, pad the series to a highly composite length.
demean	logical. If TRUE, subtract the mean of the series.
detrend	logical. If TRUE, remove a linear trend from the series. This will also remove the mean.
plot	plot the periodogram?
na.action	NA action function.
...	graphical arguments passed to plot.spec.

Details

The raw periodogram is not a consistent estimator of the spectral density, but adjacent values are asymptotically independent. Hence a consistent estimator can be derived by smoothing the raw periodogram, assuming that the spectral density is smooth.

The series will be automatically padded with zeros until the series length is a highly composite number in order to help the Fast Fourier Transform. This is controlled by the fast and not the pad argument.

The periodogram at zero is in theory zero as the mean of the series is removed (but this may be affected by tapering): it is replaced by an interpolation of adjacent values during smoothing, and no value is returned for that frequency.

Value

A list object of class "spec" (see spectrum) with the following additional components:

kernel	The kernel argument, or the kernel constructed from spans.
df	The distribution of the spectral density estimate can be approximated by a (scaled) chi square distribution with df degrees of freedom.
bandwidth	The equivalent bandwidth of the kernel smoother as defined by Bloomfield (1976, page 201).
taper	The value of the taper argument.
pad	The value of the pad argument.
detrend	The value of the detrend argument.
demean	The value of the demean argument.

The result is returned invisibly if plot is true.

Author(s)

Originally Martyn Plummer; kernel smoothing by Adrian Trapletti, synthesis by B.D. Ripley

References

Bloomfield, P. (1976) *Fourier Analysis of Time Series: An Introduction.* Wiley.

Brockwell, P.J. and Davis, R.A. (1991) *Time Series: Theory and Methods.* Second edition. Springer.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer. (Especially pp. 392–7.)

See Also

spectrum, spec.taper, plot.spec, fft

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Examples from Venables & Ripley
spectrum(ldeaths)
spectrum(ldeaths, spans = c(3,5))
spectrum(ldeaths, spans = c(5,7))
spectrum(mdeaths, spans = c(3,3))
spectrum(fdeaths, spans = c(3,3))

## bivariate example
mfdeaths.spc <- spec.pgram(ts.union(mdeaths, fdeaths), spans = c(3,3))
# plots marginal spectra: now plot coherency and phase
plot(mfdeaths.spc, plot.type = "coherency")
plot(mfdeaths.spc, plot.type = "phase")

## now impose a lack of alignment
mfdeaths.spc <- spec.pgram(ts.intersect(mdeaths, lag(fdeaths, 4)),
   spans = c(3,3), plot = FALSE)
plot(mfdeaths.spc, plot.type = "coherency")
plot(mfdeaths.spc, plot.type = "phase")

stocks.spc <- spectrum(EuStockMarkets, kernel("daniell", c(30,50)),
                       plot = FALSE)
plot(stocks.spc, plot.type = "marginal") # the default type
plot(stocks.spc, plot.type = "coherency")
plot(stocks.spc, plot.type = "phase")

sales.spc <- spectrum(ts.union(BJsales, BJsales.lead),
                      kernel("modified.daniell", c(5,7)))
plot(sales.spc, plot.type = "coherency")
plot(sales.spc, plot.type = "phase")
```

---

spec.taper *Taper a Time Series by a Cosine Bell*

Description

Apply a cosine-bell taper to a time series.

Usage

```
spec.taper(x, p = 0.1)
```

Arguments

x	A univariate or multivariate time series
p	The proportion to be tapered at each end of the series, either a scalar (giving the proportion for all series) or a vector of the length of the number of series (giving the proportion for each series..

Details

The cosine-bell taper is applied to the first and last `p[i]` observations of time series `x[, i]`.

Value

A new time series object.

See Also

spec.pgram, cpgram

---

spectrum *Spectral Density Estimation*

Description

The spectrum function estimates the spectral density of a time series.

Usage

```
spectrum(x, ..., method = c("pgram", "ar"))
```

Arguments

x	A univariate or multivariate time series.
method	String specifying the method used to estimate the spectral density. Allowed methods are "pgram" (the default) and "ar".
...	Further arguments to specific spec methods or plot.spec.

Details

spectrum is a wrapper function which calls the methods spec.pgram and spec.ar.

The spectrum here is defined with scaling 1/frequency(x), following S-PLUS. This makes the spectral density a density over the range (-frequency(x)/2, +frequency(x)/2], whereas a more common scaling is 2π and range $(-0.5, 0.5]$ (e.g., Bloomfield) or 1 and range $(-\pi, \pi]$.

If available, a confidence interval will be plotted by plot.spec: this is asymmetric, and the width of the centre mark indicates the equivalent bandwidth.

Value

An object of class "spec", which is a list containing at least the following components:

freq	vector of frequencies at which the spectral density is estimated. (Possibly approximate Fourier frequencies.) The units are the reciprocal of cycles per unit time (and not per observation spacing): see 'Details' below.
spec	Vector (for univariate series) or matrix (for multivariate series) of estimates of the spectral density at frequencies corresponding to freq.
coh	NULL for univariate series. For multivariate time series, a matrix containing the *squared* coherency between different series. Column $i + (j-1) * (j-2)/2$ of coh contains the squared coherency between columns i and j of x, where $i < j$.
phase	NULL for univariate series. For multivariate time series a matrix containing the cross-spectrum phase between different series. The format is the same as coh.
series	The name of the time series.

snames	For multivariate input, the names of the component series.
method	The method used to calculate the spectrum.

The result is returned invisibly if plot is true.

Note

The default plot for objects of class "spec" is quite complex, including an error bar and default title, subtitle and axis labels. The defaults can all be overridden by supplying the appropriate graphical parameters.

Author(s)

Martyn Plummer, B.D. Ripley

References

Bloomfield, P. (1976) *Fourier Analysis of Time Series: An Introduction.* Wiley.

Brockwell, P. J. and Davis, R. A. (1991) *Time Series: Theory and Methods.* Second edition. Springer.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Fourth edition. Springer. (Especially pages 392–7.)

See Also

spec.ar, spec.pgram; plot.spec.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

## Examples from Venables & Ripley
## spec.pgram
par(mfrow = c(2,2))
spectrum(lh)
spectrum(lh, spans = 3)
spectrum(lh, spans = c(3,3))
spectrum(lh, spans = c(3,5))

spectrum(ldeaths)
spectrum(ldeaths, spans = c(3,3))
spectrum(ldeaths, spans = c(3,5))
spectrum(ldeaths, spans = c(5,7))
spectrum(ldeaths, spans = c(5,7), log = "dB", ci = 0.8)

# for multivariate examples see the help for spec.pgram

## spec.ar
spectrum(lh, method = "ar")
spectrum(ldeaths, method = "ar")
```

splinefun *Interpolating Splines*

Description

Perform cubic (or Hermite) spline interpolation of given data points, returning either a list of points obtained by the interpolation or a *function* performing the interpolation.

Usage

```
splinefun(x, y = NULL,
          method = c("fmm", "periodic", "natural", "monoH.FC", "hyman"),
          ties = mean)

spline(x, y = NULL, n = 3*length(x), method = "fmm",
       xmin = min(x), xmax = max(x), xout, ties = mean)

splinefunH(x, y, m)
```

Arguments

x, y	vectors giving the coordinates of the points to be interpolated. Alternatively a single plotting structure can be specified: see xy.coords. y must be increasing or decreasing for method = "hyman".
m	(for splinefunH()): vector of *slopes* m_i at the points (x_i, y_i); these together determine the **H**ermite "spline" which is piecewise cubic, (only) *once* differentiable continuously.
method	specifies the type of spline to be used. Possible values are "fmm", "natural", "periodic", "monoH.FC" and "hyman".
n	if xout is left unspecified, interpolation takes place at n equally spaced points spanning the interval [xmin, xmax].
xmin, xmax	left-hand and right-hand endpoint of the interpolation interval (when xout is unspecified).
xout	an optional set of values specifying where interpolation is to take place.
ties	Handling of tied x values. Either a function with a single vector argument returning a single number result or the string "ordered".

Details

The inputs can contain missing values which are deleted, so at least one complete (x, y) pair is required. If method = "fmm", the spline used is that of Forsythe, Malcolm and Moler (an exact cubic is fitted through the four points at each end of the data, and this is used to determine the end conditions). Natural splines are used when method = "natural", and periodic splines when method = "periodic".

The method "monoH.FC" computes a *monotone* Hermite spline according to the method of Fritsch and Carlson. It does so by determining slopes such that the Hermite spline, determined by (x_i, y_i, m_i), is monotone (increasing or decreasing) **iff** the data are.

Method "hyman" computes a *monotone* cubic spline using Hyman filtering of an method = "fmm" fit for strictly monotonic inputs. (Added in 2.15.2.)

These interpolation splines can also be used for extrapolation, that is prediction at points outside the range of `x`. Extrapolation makes little sense for `method = "fmm"`; for natural splines it is linear using the slope of the interpolating curve at the nearest data point.

Value

`spline` returns a list containing components `x` and `y` which give the ordinates where interpolation took place and the interpolated values.

`splinefun` returns a function with formal arguments `x` and `deriv`, the latter defaulting to zero. This function can be used to evaluate the interpolating cubic spline (`deriv` = 0), or its derivatives (`deriv` = 1, 2, 3) at the points `x`, where the spline function interpolates the data points originally specified. It uses data stored in its environment when it was created, the details of which are subject to change.

Warning

The value returned by `splinefun` contains references to the code in the current version of : it is not intended to be saved and loaded into a different session. This is safer in >= 3.0.0.

Author(s)

R Core Team.

Simon Wood for the original code for Hyman filtering.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Dougherty, R. L., Edelman, A. and Hyman, J. M. (1989) Positivity-, monotonicity-, or convexity-preserving cubic and quintic Hermite interpolation. *Mathematics of Computation* **52**, 471–494.

Forsythe, G. E., Malcolm, M. A. and Moler, C. B. (1977) *Computer Methods for Mathematical Computations*. Wiley.

Fritsch, F. N. and Carlson, R. E. (1980) Monotone piecewise cubic interpolation, *SIAM Journal on Numerical Analysis* **17**, 238–246.

Hyman, J. M. (1983) Accurate monotonicity preserving cubic interpolation. *SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput.* **4**, 645–654.

See Also

`approx` and `approxfun` for constant and linear interpolation.

Package **splines**, especially `interpSpline` and `periodicSpline` for interpolation splines. That package also generates spline bases that can be used for regression splines.

`smooth.spline` for smoothing splines.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

op <- par(mfrow = c(2,1), mgp = c(2,.8,0), mar = 0.1+c(3,3,3,1))
n <- 9
x <- 1:n
y <- rnorm(n)
plot(x, y, main = paste("spline[fun](.) through", n, "points"))
```

```
lines(spline(x, y))
lines(spline(x, y, n = 201), col = 2)

y <- (x-6)^2
plot(x, y, main = "spline(.) -- 3 methods")
lines(spline(x, y, n = 201), col = 2)
lines(spline(x, y, n = 201, method = "natural"), col = 3)
lines(spline(x, y, n = 201, method = "periodic"), col = 4)
legend(6, 25, c("fmm","natural","periodic"), col = 2:4, lty = 1)

y <- sin((x-0.5)*pi)
f <- splinefun(x, y)
ls(envir = environment(f))
splinecoef <- get("z", envir = environment(f))
curve(f(x), 1, 10, col = "green", lwd = 1.5)
points(splinecoef, col = "purple", cex = 2)
curve(f(x, deriv = 1), 1, 10, col = 2, lwd = 1.5)
curve(f(x, deriv = 2), 1, 10, col = 2, lwd = 1.5, n = 401)
curve(f(x, deriv = 3), 1, 10, col = 2, lwd = 1.5, n = 401)
par(op)

## Manual spline evaluation --- demo the coefficients :
.x <- splinecoef$x
u <- seq(3, 6, by = 0.25)
(ii <- findInterval(u, .x))
dx <- u - .x[ii]
f.u <- with(splinecoef,
            y[ii] + dx*(b[ii] + dx*(c[ii] + dx* d[ii])))
stopifnot(all.equal(f(u), f.u))

## An example with ties (non-unique  x values):
set.seed(1); x <- round(rnorm(30), 1); y <- sin(pi * x) + rnorm(30)/10
plot(x, y, main = "spline(x,y)  when x has ties")
lines(spline(x, y, n = 201), col = 2)
## visualizes the non-unique ones:
tx <- table(x); mx <- as.numeric(names(tx[tx > 1]))
ry <- matrix(unlist(tapply(y, match(x, mx), range, simplify = FALSE)),
             ncol = 2, byrow = TRUE)
segments(mx, ry[, 1], mx, ry[, 2], col = "blue", lwd = 2)

## An example of monotone interpolation
n <- 20
set.seed(11)
x. <- sort(runif(n)) ; y. <- cumsum(abs(rnorm(n)))
plot(x., y.)
curve(splinefun(x., y.)(x), add = TRUE, col = 2, n = 1001)
curve(splinefun(x., y., method = "monoH.FC")(x), add = TRUE, col = 3, n = 1001)
curve(splinefun(x., y., method = "hyman")   (x), add = TRUE, col = 4, n = 1001)
legend("topleft",
       paste0("splinefun( \"", c("fmm", "monoH.FC", "hyman"), "\" )"),
       col = 2:4, lty = 1, bty = "n")

## and one from Fritsch and Carlson (1980), Dougherty et al (1989)
x. <- c(7.09, 8.09, 8.19, 8.7, 9.2, 10, 12, 15, 20)
f <- c(0, 2.76429e-5, 4.37498e-2, 0.169183, 0.469428, 0.943740,
       0.998636, 0.999919, 0.999994)
s0 <- splinefun(x., f)
```

```
s1 <- splinefun(x., f, method = "monoH.FC")
s2 <- splinefun(x., f, method = "hyman")
plot(x., f, ylim = c(-0.2, 1.2))
curve(s0(x), add = TRUE, col = 2, n = 1001) -> m0
curve(s1(x), add = TRUE, col = 3, n = 1001)
curve(s2(x), add = TRUE, col = 4, n = 1001)
legend("right",
       paste0("splinefun( \"", c("fmm", "monoH.FC", "hyman"), "\" )"),
       col = 2:4, lty = 1, bty = "n")

## they seem identical, but are not quite:
xx <- m0$x
plot(xx, s1(xx) - s2(xx), type = "l",  col = 2, lwd = 2,
     main = "Difference   monoH.FC - hyman"); abline(h = 0, lty = 3)

x <- xx[xx < 10.2] ## full range: x <- xx .. does not show enough
ccol <- adjustcolor(2:4, 0.8)
matplot(x, cbind(s0(x, deriv = 2), s1(x, deriv = 2), s2(x, deriv = 2))^2,
        lwd = 2, col = ccol, type = "l", ylab = quote({{f*second}(x)}^2),
        main = expression({{f*second}(x)}^2 ~" for the three splines"))
legend("topright",
       paste0("splinefun( \"", c("fmm", "monoH.FC", "hyman"), "\" )"),
       lwd = 2, col  =  ccol, lty = 1:3, bty = "n")
## --> "hyman" has slightly smaller  Integral f(x)^2 dx  than "FC",
## here, and both are much worse than the regular fmm spline.
```

SSasymp *Self-Starting Nls Asymptotic Regression Model*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates the asymptotic regression function and its gradient. It has an initial attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters Asym, R0, and lrc for a given set of data.

Usage

```
SSasymp(input, Asym, R0, lrc)
```

Arguments

input	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
Asym	a numeric parameter representing the horizontal asymptote on the right side (very large values of input).
R0	a numeric parameter representing the response when input is zero.
lrc	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the rate constant.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as input. It is the value of the expression Asym+(R0-Asym)*exp(-exp(lrc)*input). If all of the arguments Asym, R0, and lrc are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named gradient.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

nls, selfStart

Examples

```
Lob.329 <- Loblolly[ Loblolly$Seed == "329", ]
SSasymp( Lob.329$age, 100, -8.5, -3.2 )  # response only
Asym <- 100
resp0 <- -8.5
lrc <- -3.2
SSasymp( Lob.329$age, Asym, resp0, lrc ) # response and gradient
getInitial(height ~ SSasymp( age, Asym, resp0, lrc), data = Lob.329)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(height ~ SSasymp( age, Asym, resp0, lrc), data = Lob.329)
summary(fm1)
```

SSasympOff *Self-Starting Nls Asymptotic Regression Model with an Offset*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates an alternative parametrization of the asymptotic regression function and the gradient with respect to those parameters. It has an initial attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters Asym, lrc, and c0.

Usage

```
SSasympOff(input, Asym, lrc, c0)
```

Arguments

input	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
Asym	a numeric parameter representing the horizontal asymptote on the right side (very large values of input).
lrc	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the rate constant.
c0	a numeric parameter representing the input for which the response is zero.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as input. It is the value of the expression Asym*(1 - exp(-exp(lrc)*(input - c0))). If all of the arguments Asym, lrc, and c0 are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named gradient.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

nls, selfStart; example(SSasympOff) gives graph showing the SSasympOff parametrization, where ϕ_1 is Asymp, ϕ_3 is c0.

Examples

```
CO2.Qn1 <- CO2[CO2$Plant == "Qn1", ]
SSasympOff(CO2.Qn1$conc, 32, -4, 43)  # response only
Asym <- 32; lrc <- -4; c0 <- 43
SSasympOff(CO2.Qn1$conc, Asym, lrc, c0) # response and gradient
getInitial(uptake ~ SSasympOff(conc, Asym, lrc, c0), data = CO2.Qn1)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(uptake ~ SSasympOff(conc, Asym, lrc, c0), data = CO2.Qn1)
summary(fm1)
```

SSasympOrig *Self-Starting Nls Asymptotic Regression Model through the Origin*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates the asymptotic regression function through the origin and its gradient. It has an initial attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters Asym and lrc for a given set of data.

Usage

```
SSasympOrig(input, Asym, lrc)
```

Arguments

input	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
Asym	a numeric parameter representing the horizontal asymptote.
lrc	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the rate constant.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as input. It is the value of the expression Asym*(1 - exp(-exp(lrc)*input)). If all of the arguments Asym and lrc are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named gradient.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

nls, selfStart

Examples

```
Lob.329 <- Loblolly[ Loblolly$Seed == "329", ]
SSasympOrig(Lob.329$age, 100, -3.2)  # response only
Asym <- 100; lrc <- -3.2
SSasympOrig(Lob.329$age, Asym, lrc) # response and gradient
getInitial(height ~ SSasympOrig(age, Asym, lrc), data = Lob.329)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(height ~ SSasympOrig(age, Asym, lrc), data = Lob.329)
summary(fm1)
```

SSbiexp *Self-Starting Nls Biexponential model*

Description

This `selfStart` model evaluates the biexponential model function and its gradient. It has an `initial` attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters `A1`, `lrc1`, `A2`, and `lrc2`.

Usage

```
SSbiexp(input, A1, lrc1, A2, lrc2)
```

Arguments

`input`	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
`A1`	a numeric parameter representing the multiplier of the first exponential.
`lrc1`	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the rate constant of the first exponential.
`A2`	a numeric parameter representing the multiplier of the second exponential.
`lrc2`	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the rate constant of the second exponential.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as `input`. It is the value of the expression `A1*exp(-exp(lrc1)*input)+A2*exp(-exp(lrc2)*input)`. If all of the arguments `A1`, `lrc1`, `A2`, and `lrc2` are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named `gradient`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`nls`, `selfStart`

Examples

```
Indo.1 <- Indometh[Indometh$Subject == 1, ]
SSbiexp( Indo.1$time, 3, 1, 0.6, -1.3 )  # response only
A1 <- 3; lrc1 <- 1; A2 <- 0.6; lrc2 <- -1.3
SSbiexp( Indo.1$time, A1, lrc1, A2, lrc2 ) # response and gradient
print(getInitial(conc ~ SSbiexp(time, A1, lrc1, A2, lrc2), data = Indo.1),
      digits = 5)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(conc ~ SSbiexp(time, A1, lrc1, A2, lrc2), data = Indo.1)
summary(fm1)

## Show the model components visually
  require(graphics)

  xx <- seq(0, 5, len = 101)
  y1 <- 3.5 * exp(-4*xx)
  y2 <- 1.5 * exp(-xx)
  plot(xx, y1 + y2, type = "l", lwd=2, ylim = c(-0.2,6), xlim = c(0, 5),
       main = "Components of the SSbiexp model")
  lines(xx, y1, lty = 2, col="tomato"); abline(v=0, h=0, col="gray40")
  lines(xx, y2, lty = 3, col="blue2" )
  legend("topright", c("y1+y2", "y1 = 3.5 * exp(-4*x)", "y2 = 1.5 * exp(-x)"),
         lty=1:3, col=c("black","tomato","blue2"), bty="n")
  axis(2, pos=0, at = c(3.5, 1.5), labels = c("A1","A2"), las=2)

## and how you could have got their sum via SSbiexp():
  ySS <- SSbiexp(xx, 3.5, log(4), 1.5, log(1))
  ##                       ---          ---
  stopifnot(all.equal(y1+y2, ySS, tolerance = 1e-15))
```

SSD *SSD Matrix and Estimated Variance Matrix in Multivariate Models*

Description

Functions to compute matrix of residual sums of squares and products, or the estimated variance matrix for multivariate linear models.

Usage

```
# S3 method for class mlm
SSD(object, ...)

# S3 methods for class SSD and mlm
estVar(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	object of class "mlm", or "SSD" in the case of estVar.
...	Unused

Value

SSD() returns a list of class "SSD" containing the following components

SSD	The residual sums of squares and products matrix
df	Degrees of freedom
call	Copied from object

estVar returns a matrix with the estimated variances and covariances.

See Also

mauchly.test, anova.mlm

Examples

```
# Lifted from Baron+Li:
# "Notes on the use of R for psychology experiments and questionnaires"
# Maxwell and Delaney, p. 497
reacttime <- matrix(c(
420, 420, 480, 480, 600, 780,
420, 480, 480, 360, 480, 600,
480, 480, 540, 660, 780, 780,
420, 540, 540, 480, 780, 900,
540, 660, 540, 480, 660, 720,
360, 420, 360, 360, 480, 540,
480, 480, 600, 540, 720, 840,
480, 600, 660, 540, 720, 900,
540, 600, 540, 480, 720, 780,
480, 420, 540, 540, 660, 780),
ncol = 6, byrow = TRUE,
dimnames = list(subj = 1:10,
              cond = c("deg0NA", "deg4NA", "deg8NA",
                       "deg0NP", "deg4NP", "deg8NP")))

mlmfit <- lm(reacttime ~ 1)
SSD(mlmfit)
estVar(mlmfit)
```

SSfol *Self-Starting Nls First-order Compartment Model*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates the first-order compartment function and its gradient. It has an initial attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters lKe, lKa, and lCl.

Usage

```
SSfol(Dose, input, lKe, lKa, lCl)
```

Arguments

Dose	a numeric value representing the initial dose.
input	a numeric vector at which to evaluate the model.
lKe	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the elimination rate constant.
lKa	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the absorption rate constant.
lCl	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the clearance.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as input, which is the value of the expression

```
Dose * exp(lKe+lKa-lCl) * (exp(-exp(lKe)*input) - exp(-exp(lKa)*input))
    / (exp(lKa) - exp(lKe))
```

If all of the arguments lKe, lKa, and lCl are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named gradient.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

nls, selfStart

Examples

```
Theoph.1 <- Theoph[ Theoph$Subject == 1, ]
SSfol(Theoph.1$Dose, Theoph.1$Time, -2.5, 0.5, -3) # response only
lKe <- -2.5; lKa <- 0.5; lCl <- -3
SSfol(Theoph.1$Dose, Theoph.1$Time, lKe, lKa, lCl) # response and gradient
getInitial(conc ~ SSfol(Dose, Time, lKe, lKa, lCl), data = Theoph.1)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(conc ~ SSfol(Dose, Time, lKe, lKa, lCl), data = Theoph.1)
summary(fm1)
```

SSfpl *Self-Starting Nls Four-Parameter Logistic Model*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates the four-parameter logistic function and its gradient. It has an initial attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters A, B, xmid, and scal for a given set of data.

Usage

```
SSfpl(input, A, B, xmid, scal)
```

Arguments

input	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
A	a numeric parameter representing the horizontal asymptote on the left side (very small values of input).
B	a numeric parameter representing the horizontal asymptote on the right side (very large values of input).
xmid	a numeric parameter representing the input value at the inflection point of the curve. The value of SSfpl will be midway between A and B at xmid.
scal	a numeric scale parameter on the input axis.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as input. It is the value of the expression A+(B-A)/(1+exp((xmid-input)/scal)). If all of the arguments A, B, xmid, and scal are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named gradient.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

nls, selfStart

Examples

```
Chick.1 <- ChickWeight[ChickWeight$Chick == 1, ]
SSfpl(Chick.1$Time, 13, 368, 14, 6)  # response only
A <- 13; B <- 368; xmid <- 14; scal <- 6
SSfpl(Chick.1$Time, A, B, xmid, scal) # response and gradient
print(getInitial(weight ~ SSfpl(Time, A, B, xmid, scal), data = Chick.1),
      digits = 5)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(weight ~ SSfpl(Time, A, B, xmid, scal), data = Chick.1)
summary(fm1)
```

SSgompertz *Self-Starting Nls Gompertz Growth Model*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates the Gompertz growth model and its gradient. It has an initial attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters Asym, b2, and b3.

Usage

```
SSgompertz(x, Asym, b2, b3)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
Asym	a numeric parameter representing the asymptote.
b2	a numeric parameter related to the value of the function at x = 0
b3	a numeric parameter related to the scale the x axis.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as input. It is the value of the expression Asym*exp(-b2*b3^x). If all of the arguments Asym, b2, and b3 are names of objects the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named gradient.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates

See Also

nls, selfStart

Examples

```
DNase.1 <- subset(DNase, Run == 1)
SSgompertz(log(DNase.1$conc), 4.5, 2.3, 0.7)   # response only
Asym <- 4.5; b2 <- 2.3; b3 <- 0.7
SSgompertz(log(DNase.1$conc), Asym, b2, b3) # response and gradient
print(getInitial(density ~ SSgompertz(log(conc), Asym, b2, b3),
                 data = DNase.1), digits = 5)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(density ~ SSgompertz(log(conc), Asym, b2, b3),
           data = DNase.1)
summary(fm1)
```

SSlogis *Self-Starting Nls Logistic Model*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates the logistic function and its gradient. It has an initial attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters Asym, xmid, and scal.

Usage

```
SSlogis(input, Asym, xmid, scal)
```

Arguments

input	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
Asym	a numeric parameter representing the asymptote.
xmid	a numeric parameter representing the x value at the inflection point of the curve. The value of SSlogis will be Asym/2 at xmid.
scal	a numeric scale parameter on the input axis.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as `input`. It is the value of the expression `Asym/(1+exp((xmid-input)/scal))`. If all of the arguments `Asym`, `xmid`, and `scal` are names of objects the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named `gradient`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`nls`, `selfStart`

Examples

```
Chick.1 <- ChickWeight[ChickWeight$Chick == 1, ]
SSlogis(Chick.1$Time, 368, 14, 6)  # response only
Asym <- 368; xmid <- 14; scal <- 6
SSlogis(Chick.1$Time, Asym, xmid, scal) # response and gradient
getInitial(weight ~ SSlogis(Time, Asym, xmid, scal), data = Chick.1)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(weight ~ SSlogis(Time, Asym, xmid, scal), data = Chick.1)
summary(fm1)
```

SSmicmen *Self-Starting Nls Michaelis-Menten Model*

Description

This `selfStart` model evaluates the Michaelis-Menten model and its gradient. It has an `initial` attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters `Vm` and `K`

Usage

```
SSmicmen(input, Vm, K)
```

Arguments

`input`	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
`Vm`	a numeric parameter representing the maximum value of the response.
`K`	a numeric parameter representing the `input` value at which half the maximum response is attained. In the field of enzyme kinetics this is called the Michaelis parameter.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as `input`. It is the value of the expression `Vm*input/(K+input)`. If both the arguments `Vm` and `K` are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named `gradient`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

nls, selfStart

Examples

```
PurTrt <- Puromycin[ Puromycin$state == "treated", ]
SSmicmen(PurTrt$conc, 200, 0.05)  # response only
Vm <- 200; K <- 0.05
SSmicmen(PurTrt$conc, Vm, K)      # response and gradient
print(getInitial(rate ~ SSmicmen(conc, Vm, K), data = PurTrt), digits = 3)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(rate ~ SSmicmen(conc, Vm, K), data = PurTrt)
summary(fm1)
## Alternative call using the subset argument
fm2 <- nls(rate ~ SSmicmen(conc, Vm, K), data = Puromycin,
           subset = state == "treated")
summary(fm2)
```

SSweibull *Self-Starting Nls Weibull Growth Curve Model*

Description

This selfStart model evaluates the Weibull model for growth curve data and its gradient. It has an initial attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters Asym, Drop, lrc, and pwr for a given set of data.

Usage

```
SSweibull(x, Asym, Drop, lrc, pwr)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector of values at which to evaluate the model.
Asym	a numeric parameter representing the horizontal asymptote on the right side (very small values of x).
Drop	a numeric parameter representing the change from Asym to the y intercept.
lrc	a numeric parameter representing the natural logarithm of the rate constant.
pwr	a numeric parameter representing the power to which x is raised.

Details

This model is a generalization of the SSasymp model in that it reduces to SSasymp when pwr is unity.

Value

a numeric vector of the same length as `x`. It is the value of the expression `Asym-Drop*exp(-exp(lrc)*x^pwr)`. If all of the arguments `Asym`, `Drop`, `lrc`, and `pwr` are names of objects, the gradient matrix with respect to these names is attached as an attribute named `gradient`.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates

References

Ratkowsky, David A. (1983), *Nonlinear Regression Modeling*, Dekker. (section 4.4.5)

See Also

`nls`, `selfStart`, `SSasymp`

Examples

```
Chick.6 <- subset(ChickWeight, (Chick == 6) & (Time > 0))
SSweibull(Chick.6$Time, 160, 115, -5.5, 2.5)   # response only
Asym <- 160; Drop <- 115; lrc <- -5.5; pwr <- 2.5
SSweibull(Chick.6$Time, Asym, Drop, lrc, pwr)  # response and gradient
getInitial(weight ~ SSweibull(Time, Asym, Drop, lrc, pwr), data = Chick.6)
## Initial values are in fact the converged values
fm1 <- nls(weight ~ SSweibull(Time, Asym, Drop, lrc, pwr), data = Chick.6)
summary(fm1)
```

---

start *Encode the Terminal Times of Time Series*

Description

Extract and encode the times the first and last observations were taken. Provided only for compatibility with S version 2.

Usage

```
start(x, ...)
end(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a univariate or multivariate time-series, or a vector or matrix.
`...`	extra arguments for future methods.

Details

These are generic functions, which will use the `tsp` attribute of `x` if it exists. Their default methods decode the start time from the original time units, so that for a monthly series `1995.5` is represented as `c(1995, 7)`. For a series of frequency `f`, time `n+i/f` is presented as `c(n, i+1)` (even for `i = 0` and `f = 1`).

Warning

The representation used by `start` and `end` has no meaning unless the frequency is supplied.

See Also

`ts`, `time`, `tsp`.

`stat.anova` *GLM Anova Statistics*

Description

This is a utility function, used in `lm` and `glm` methods for `anova(..., test != NULL)` and should not be used by the average user.

Usage

```
stat.anova(table, test = c("Rao","LRT", "Chisq", "F", "Cp"),
           scale, df.scale, n)
```

Arguments

`table`	numeric matrix as results from `anova.glm(..., test = NULL)`.
`test`	a character string, matching one of `"Rao"`, `"LRT"`, `"Chisq"`, `"F"` or `"Cp"`.
`scale`	a residual mean square or other scale estimate to be used as the denominator in an F test.
`df.scale`	degrees of freedom corresponding to `scale`.
`n`	number of observations.

Value

A matrix which is the original `table`, augmented by a column of test statistics, depending on the `test` argument.

References

Hastie, T. J. and Pregibon, D. (1992) *Generalized linear models.* Chapter 6 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`anova.lm`, `anova.glm`.

Examples

```
##-- Continued from ?glm:

print(ag <- anova(glm.D93))
stat.anova(ag$table, test = "Cp",
           scale = sum(resid(glm.D93, "pearson")^2)/4,
           df.scale = 4, n = 9)
```

stats-deprecated *Deprecated Functions in Package* **stats**

Description

These functions are provided for compatibility with older versions of only, and may be defunct as soon as the next release.

Usage

```
plclust(tree, hang = 0.1, unit = FALSE, level = FALSE, hmin = 0,
        square = TRUE, labels = NULL, plot. = TRUE,
        axes = TRUE, frame.plot = FALSE, ann = TRUE,
        main = "", sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = "Height")
```

Arguments

`tree`	an object of the type produced by `hclust`.
`hang`	The fraction of the plot height by which labels should hang below the rest of the plot. A negative value will cause the labels to hang down from 0.
`unit`	logical. If true, the splits are plotted at equally-spaced heights rather than at the height in the object.
`labels`	A character vector of labels for the leaves of the tree. By default the row names or row numbers of the original data are used. If `labels = FALSE` no labels at all are plotted.
`axes, frame.plot, ann`	logical flags as in `plot.default`.
`main, sub, xlab, ylab`	character strings for `title`. `sub` and `xlab` have a non-NULL default when there's a `tree$call`.
`...`	Further graphical arguments. E.g., `cex` controls the size of the labels (if plotted) in the same way as `text`.
`hmin`	numeric. All heights less than `hmin` are regarded as being `hmin`: this can be used to suppress detail at the bottom of the tree.
`level, square, plot.`	unimplemented arguments for S-PLUS compatibility.

Details

`plcust` is a deprecated wrapper for the `plot` method for `hclust`, provided long ago for S-PLUS compatibility.

See Also

`Deprecated`

step *Choose a model by AIC in a Stepwise Algorithm*

Description

Select a formula-based model by AIC.

Usage

```
step(object, scope, scale = 0,
     direction = c("both", "backward", "forward"),
     trace = 1, keep = NULL, steps = 1000, k = 2, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object representing a model of an appropriate class (mainly "lm" and "glm"). This is used as the initial model in the stepwise search.
scope	defines the range of models examined in the stepwise search. This should be either a single formula, or a list containing components upper and lower, both formulae. See the details for how to specify the formulae and how they are used.
scale	used in the definition of the AIC statistic for selecting the models, currently only for lm, aov and glm models. The default value, 0, indicates the scale should be estimated: see extractAIC.
direction	the mode of stepwise search, can be one of "both", "backward", or "forward", with a default of "both". If the scope argument is missing the default for direction is "backward".
trace	if positive, information is printed during the running of step. Larger values may give more detailed information.
keep	a filter function whose input is a fitted model object and the associated AIC statistic, and whose output is arbitrary. Typically keep will select a subset of the components of the object and return them. The default is not to keep anything.
steps	the maximum number of steps to be considered. The default is 1000 (essentially as many as required). It is typically used to stop the process early.
k	the multiple of the number of degrees of freedom used for the penalty. Only k = 2 gives the genuine AIC: k = log(n) is sometimes referred to as BIC or SBC.
...	any additional arguments to extractAIC.

Details

step uses add1 and drop1 repeatedly; it will work for any method for which they work, and that is determined by having a valid method for extractAIC. When the additive constant can be chosen so that AIC is equal to Mallows' C_p, this is done and the tables are labelled appropriately.

The set of models searched is determined by the scope argument. The right-hand-side of its lower component is always included in the model, and right-hand-side of the model is included in the upper component. If scope is a single formula, it specifies the upper component, and the lower model is empty. If scope is missing, the initial model is used as the upper model.

Models specified by `scope` can be templates to update `object` as used by `update.formula`. So using `.` in a `scope` formula means 'what is already there', with `.^2` indicating all interactions of existing terms.

There is a potential problem in using `glm` fits with a variable `scale`, as in that case the deviance is not simply related to the maximized log-likelihood. The `"glm"` method for function `extractAIC` makes the appropriate adjustment for a `gaussian` family, but may need to be amended for other cases. (The `binomial` and `poisson` families have fixed `scale` by default and do not correspond to a particular maximum-likelihood problem for variable `scale`.)

Value

the stepwise-selected model is returned, with up to two additional components. There is an `"anova"` component corresponding to the steps taken in the search, as well as a `"keep"` component if the `keep=` argument was supplied in the call. The `"Resid. Dev"` column of the analysis of deviance table refers to a constant minus twice the maximized log likelihood: it will be a deviance only in cases where a saturated model is well-defined (thus excluding `lm`, `aov` and `survreg` fits, for example).

Warning

The model fitting must apply the models to the same dataset. This may be a problem if there are missing values and 's default of `na.action = na.omit` is used. We suggest you remove the missing values first.

Calls to the function `nobs` are used to check that the number of observations involved in the fitting process remains unchanged.

Note

This function differs considerably from the function in S, which uses a number of approximations and does not in general compute the correct AIC.

This is a minimal implementation. Use `stepAIC` in package **MASS** for a wider range of object classes.

Author(s)

B. D. Ripley: `step` is a slightly simplified version of `stepAIC` in package **MASS** (Venables & Ripley, 2002 and earlier editions).

The idea of a `step` function follows that described in Hastie & Pregibon (1992); but the implementation in is more general.

References

Hastie, T. J. and Pregibon, D. (1992) *Generalized linear models.* Chapter 6 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* New York: Springer (4th ed).

See Also

`stepAIC` in **MASS**, `add1`, `drop1`

Examples

```
## following on from example(lm)

step(lm.D9)

summary(lm1 <- lm(Fertility ~ ., data = swiss))
slm1 <- step(lm1)
summary(slm1)
slm1$anova
```

---

stepfun *Step Functions - Creation and Class*

Description

Given the vectors $(x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ and $(y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n)$ (one value more!), `stepfun(x, y, ...)` returns an interpolating 'step' function, say `fn`. I.e., $fn(t) = c_i$ (constant) for $t \in (x_i, x_{i+1})$ and at the abscissa values, if (by default) `right = FALSE`, $fn(x_i) = y_i$ and for `right = TRUE`, $fn(x_i) = y_{i-1}$, for $i = 1, \ldots, n$.

The value of the constant c_i above depends on the 'continuity' parameter `f`. For the default, `right = FALSE, f = 0`, `fn` is a *cadlag* function, i.e., continuous from the right, limits from the left, so that the function is piecewise constant on intervals that include their *left* endpoint. In general, c_i is interpolated in between the neighbouring y values, $c_i = (1 - f)y_i + f \cdot y_{i+1}$. Therefore, for non-0 values of `f`, `fn` may no longer be a proper step function, since it can be discontinuous from both sides, unless `right = TRUE, f = 1` which is left-continuous (i.e., constant pieces contain their right endpoint).

Usage

```
stepfun(x, y, f = as.numeric(right), ties = "ordered",
        right = FALSE)

is.stepfun(x)
knots(Fn, ...)
as.stepfun(x, ...)

## S3 method for class stepfun
print(x, digits = getOption("digits") - 2, ...)

## S3 method for class stepfun
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric vector giving the knots or jump locations of the step function for `stepfun()`. For the other functions, `x` is as `object` below.
`y`	numeric vector one longer than `x`, giving the heights of the function values *between* the x values.
`f`	a number between 0 and 1, indicating how interpolation outside the given x values should happen. See `approxfun`.

ties	Handling of tied x values. Either a function or the string "ordered". See approxfun.
right	logical, indicating if the intervals should be closed on the right (and open on the left) or vice versa.
Fn, object	an object inheriting from "stepfun".
digits	number of significant digits to use, see print.
...	potentially further arguments (required by the generic).

Value

A function of class "stepfun", say fn.

There are methods available for summarizing ("summary(.)"), representing ("print(.)") and plotting ("plot(.)", see plot.stepfun) "stepfun" objects.

The environment of fn contains all the information needed;

"x","y"	the original arguments
"n"	number of knots (x values)
"f"	continuity parameter
"yleft", "yright"	the function values *outside* the knots
"method"	(always == "constant", from approxfun(.)).

The knots are also available via knots(fn).

Note

The objects of class "stepfun" are not intended to be used for permanent storage and may change structure between versions of (and did at 3.0.0). They can usually be re-created by

```
eval(attr(old_obj, "call"), environment(old_obj))
```

since the data used is stored as part of the object's environment.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler, <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch> with some basic code from Thomas Lumley.

See Also

ecdf for empirical distribution functions as special step functions and plot.stepfun for *plotting* step functions.

approxfun and splinefun.

Examples

```
y0 <- c(1., 2., 4., 3.)
sfun0  <- stepfun(1:3, y0, f = 0)
sfun.2 <- stepfun(1:3, y0, f = 0.2)
sfun1  <- stepfun(1:3, y0, f = 1)
sfun1c <- stepfun(1:3, y0, right = TRUE) # hence f=1
sfun0
summary(sfun0)
```

```
summary(sfun.2)

## look at the internal structure:
unclass(sfun0)
ls(envir = environment(sfun0))

x0 <- seq(0.5, 3.5, by = 0.25)
rbind(x = x0, f.f0 = sfun0(x0), f.f02 = sfun.2(x0),
      f.f1 = sfun1(x0), f.f1c = sfun1c(x0))
## Identities :
stopifnot(identical(y0[-1], sfun0 (1:3)), # right = FALSE
          identical(y0[-4], sfun1c(1:3))) # right = TRUE
```

`stl` *Seasonal Decomposition of Time Series by Loess*

Description

Decompose a time series into seasonal, trend and irregular components using `loess`, acronym STL.

Usage

```
stl(x, s.window, s.degree = 0,
    t.window = NULL, t.degree = 1,
    l.window = nextodd(period), l.degree = t.degree,
    s.jump = ceiling(s.window/10),
    t.jump = ceiling(t.window/10),
    l.jump = ceiling(l.window/10),
    robust = FALSE,
    inner = if(robust)  1 else 2,
    outer = if(robust) 15 else 0,
    na.action = na.fail)
```

Arguments

`x`	univariate time series to be decomposed. This should be an object of class `"ts"` with a frequency greater than one.
`s.window`	either the character string `"periodic"` or the span (in lags) of the loess window for seasonal extraction, which should be odd. This has no default.
`s.degree`	degree of locally-fitted polynomial in seasonal extraction. Should be zero or one.
`t.window`	the span (in lags) of the loess window for trend extraction, which should be odd. If `NULL`, the default, `nextodd(ceiling((1.5*period) / (1-(1.5/s.window))))`, is taken.
`t.degree`	degree of locally-fitted polynomial in trend extraction. Should be zero or one.
`l.window`	the span (in lags) of the loess window of the low-pass filter used for each subseries. Defaults to the smallest odd integer greater than or equal to `frequency(x)` which is recommended since it prevents competition between the trend and seasonal components. If not an odd integer its given value is increased to the next odd one.

`l.degree`	degree of locally-fitted polynomial for the subseries low-pass filter. Must be 0 or 1.
`s.jump, t.jump, l.jump`	integers at least one to increase speed of the respective smoother. Linear interpolation happens between every `*.jump`th value.
`robust`	logical indicating if robust fitting be used in the `loess` procedure.
`inner`	integer; the number of 'inner' (backfitting) iterations; usually very few (2) iterations suffice.
`outer`	integer; the number of 'outer' robustness iterations.
`na.action`	action on missing values.

Details

The seasonal component is found by *loess* smoothing the seasonal sub-series (the series of all January values, ...); if `s.window = "periodic"` smoothing is effectively replaced by taking the mean. The seasonal values are removed, and the remainder smoothed to find the trend. The overall level is removed from the seasonal component and added to the trend component. This process is iterated a few times. The `remainder` component is the residuals from the seasonal plus trend fit.

Several methods for the resulting class `"stl"` objects, see, `plot.stl`.

Value

`stl` returns an object of class `"stl"` with components

`time.series`	a multiple time series with columns `seasonal`, `trend` and `remainder`.
`weights`	the final robust weights (all one if fitting is not done robustly).
`call`	the matched call.
`win`	integer (length 3 vector) with the spans used for the `"s"`, `"t"`, and `"l"` smoothers.
`deg`	integer (length 3) vector with the polynomial degrees for these smoothers.
`jump`	integer (length 3) vector with the 'jumps' (skips) used for these smoothers.
`ni`	number of **i**nner iterations
`no`	number of **o**uter robustness iterations

Note

This is similar to but not identical to the `stl` function in S-PLUS. The `remainder` component given by S-PLUS is the sum of the `trend` and `remainder` series from this function.

Author(s)

B.D. Ripley; Fortran code by Cleveland *et al* (1990) from 'netlib'.

References

R. B. Cleveland, W. S. Cleveland, J.E. McRae, and I. Terpenning (1990) STL: A Seasonal-Trend Decomposition Procedure Based on Loess. *Journal of Official Statistics*, **6**, 3–73.

See Also

plot.stl for stl methods; loess in package **stats** (which is not actually used in stl).

StructTS for different kind of decomposition.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

plot(stl(nottem, "per"))
plot(stl(nottem, s.window = 4, t.window = 50, t.jump = 1))

plot(stllc <- stl(log(co2), s.window = 21))
summary(stllc)
## linear trend, strict period.
plot(stl(log(co2), s.window = "per", t.window = 1000))

## Two STL plotted side by side :
        stmd <- stl(mdeaths, s.window = "per") # non-robust
summary(stmR <- stl(mdeaths, s.window = "per", robust = TRUE))
op <- par(mar = c(0, 4, 0, 3), oma = c(5, 0, 4, 0), mfcol = c(4, 2))
plot(stmd, set.pars = NULL, labels  =  NULL,
     main = "stl(mdeaths, s.w = \"per\",  robust = FALSE / TRUE )")
plot(stmR, set.pars = NULL)
# mark the outliers :
(iO <- which(stmR $ weights  < 1e-8)) # 10 were considered outliers
sts <- stmR$time.series
points(time(sts)[iO], 0.8* sts[,"remainder"][iO], pch = 4, col = "red")
par(op)   # reset
```

---

stlmethods *Methods for STL Objects*

Description

Methods for objects of class stl, typically the result of stl. The plot method does a multiple figure plot with some flexibility.

There are also (non-visible) print and summary methods.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class stl
plot(x, labels = colnames(X),
     set.pars = list(mar = c(0, 6, 0, 6), oma = c(6, 0, 4, 0),
                     tck = -0.01, mfrow = c(nplot, 1)),
     main = NULL, range.bars = TRUE, ...,
     col.range = "light gray")
```

Arguments

x	stl object.
labels	character of length 4 giving the names of the component time-series.

set.pars	settings for par(.) when setting up the plot.
main	plot main title.
range.bars	logical indicating if each plot should have a bar at its right side which are of equal heights in user coordinates.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
col.range	colour to be used for the range bars, if plotted. Note this appears after ... and so cannot be abbreviated.

See Also

plot.ts and stl, particularly for examples.

StructTS *Fit Structural Time Series*

Description

Fit a structural model for a time series by maximum likelihood.

Usage

```
StructTS(x, type = c("level", "trend", "BSM"), init = NULL,
         fixed = NULL, optim.control = NULL)
```

Arguments

x	a univariate numeric time series. Missing values are allowed.
type	the class of structural model. If omitted, a BSM is used for a time series with frequency(x) > 1, and a local trend model otherwise.
init	initial values of the variance parameters.
fixed	optional numeric vector of the same length as the total number of parameters. If supplied, only NA entries in fixed will be varied. Probably most useful for setting variances to zero.
optim.control	List of control parameters for optim. Method "L-BFGS-B" is used.

Details

Structural time series models are (linear Gaussian) state-space models for (univariate) time series based on a decomposition of the series into a number of components. They are specified by a set of error variances, some of which may be zero.

The simplest model is the *local level* model specified by type = "level". This has an underlying level μ_t which evolves by

$$\mu_{t+1} = \mu_t + \xi_t, \qquad \xi_t \sim N(0, \sigma_\xi^2)$$

The observations are

$$x_t = \mu_t + \epsilon_t, \qquad \epsilon_t \sim N(0, \sigma_\epsilon^2)$$

There are two parameters, σ_ξ^2 and σ_ϵ^2. It is an ARIMA(0,1,1) model, but with restrictions on the parameter set.

The *local linear trend model*, `type = "trend"`, has the same measurement equation, but with a time-varying slope in the dynamics for μ_t, given by

$$\mu_{t+1} = \mu_t + \nu_t + \xi_t, \qquad \xi_t \sim N(0, \sigma_\xi^2)$$

$$\nu_{t+1} = \nu_t + \zeta_t, \qquad \zeta_t \sim N(0, \sigma_\zeta^2)$$

with three variance parameters. It is not uncommon to find $\sigma_\zeta^2 = 0$ (which reduces to the local level model) or $\sigma_\xi^2 = 0$, which ensures a smooth trend. This is a restricted ARIMA(0,2,2) model.

The *basic structural model*, `type = "BSM"`, is a local trend model with an additional seasonal component. Thus the measurement equation is

$$x_t = \mu_t + \gamma_t + \epsilon_t, \qquad \epsilon_t \sim N(0, \sigma_\epsilon^2)$$

where γ_t is a seasonal component with dynamics

$$\gamma_{t+1} = -\gamma_t + \cdots + \gamma_{t-s+2} + \omega_t, \qquad \omega_t \sim N(0, \sigma_\omega^2)$$

The boundary case $\sigma_\omega^2 = 0$ corresponds to a deterministic (but arbitrary) seasonal pattern. (This is sometimes known as the 'dummy variable' version of the BSM.)

Value

A list of class `"StructTS"` with components:

`coef`	the estimated variances of the components.
`loglik`	the maximized log-likelihood. Note that as all these models are non-stationary this includes a diffuse prior for some observations and hence is not comparable to `arima` nor different types of structural models.
`loglik0`	the maximized log-likelihood with the constant used prior to 3.0.0, for backwards compatibility.
`data`	the time series `x`.
`residuals`	the standardized residuals.
`fitted`	a multiple time series with one component for the level, slope and seasonal components, estimated contemporaneously (that is at time t and not at the end of the series).
`call`	the matched call.
`series`	the name of the series `x`.
`code`	the `convergence` code returned by `optim`.
`model, model0`	Lists representing the Kalman Filter used in the fitting. See `KalmanLike`. `model0` is the initial state of the filter, `model` its final state.
`xtsp`	the `tsp` attributes of `x`.

Note

Optimization of structural models is a lot harder than many of the references admit. For example, the `AirPassengers` data are considered in Brockwell & Davis (1996): their solution appears to be a local maximum, but nowhere near as good a fit as that produced by `StructTS`. It is quite common to find fits with one or more variances zero, and this can include σ_ϵ^2.

References

Brockwell, P. J. & Davis, R. A. (1996). *Introduction to Time Series and Forecasting*. Springer, New York. Sections 8.2 and 8.5.

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press.

Harvey, A. C. (1989) *Forecasting, Structural Time Series Models and the Kalman Filter*. Cambridge University Press.

Harvey, A. C. (1993) *Time Series Models*. 2nd Edition, Harvester Wheatsheaf.

See Also

`KalmanLike`, `tsSmooth`; `stl` for different kind of (seasonal) decomposition.

Examples

```
## see also JohnsonJohnson, Nile and AirPassengers
require(graphics)

trees <- window(treering, start = 0)
(fit <- StructTS(trees, type = "level"))
plot(trees)
lines(fitted(fit), col = "green")
tsdiag(fit)

(fit <- StructTS(log10(UKgas), type = "BSM"))
par(mfrow = c(4, 1)) # to give appropriate aspect ratio for next plot.
plot(log10(UKgas))
plot(cbind(fitted(fit), resids=resid(fit)), main = "UK gas consumption")

## keep some parameters fixed; trace optimizer:
StructTS(log10(UKgas), type = "BSM", fixed = c(0.1,0.001,NA,NA),
         optim.control = list(trace = TRUE))
```

`summary.aov` *Summarize an Analysis of Variance Model*

Description

Summarize an analysis of variance model.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class aov
summary(object, intercept = FALSE, split,
        expand.split = TRUE, keep.zero.df = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class aovlist
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	An object of class "aov" or "aovlist".
intercept	logical: should intercept terms be included?
split	an optional named list, with names corresponding to terms in the model. Each component is itself a list with integer components giving contrasts whose contributions are to be summed.
expand.split	logical: should the split apply also to interactions involving the factor?
keep.zero.df	logical: should terms with no degrees of freedom be included?
...	Arguments to be passed to or from other methods, for summary.aovlist including those for summary.aov.

Value

An object of class c("summary.aov", "listof") or "summary.aovlist" respectively.

For fits with a single stratum the result will be a list of ANOVA tables, one for each response (even if there is only one response): the tables are of class "anova" inheriting from class "data.frame". They have columns "Df", "Sum Sq", "Mean Sq", as well as "F value" and "Pr(>F)" if there are non-zero residual degrees of freedom. There is a row for each term in the model, plus one for "Residuals" if there are any.

For multistratum fits the return value is a list of such summaries, one for each stratum.

Note

The use of expand.split = TRUE is little tested: it is always possible to set it to FALSE and specify exactly all the splits required.

See Also

aov, summary, model.tables, TukeyHSD

Examples

```
## For a simple example see example(aov)

# Cochran and Cox (1957, p.164)
# 3x3 factorial with ordered factors, each is average of 12.
CC <- data.frame(
    y = c(449, 413, 326, 409, 358, 291, 341, 278, 312)/12,
    P = ordered(gl(3, 3)), N = ordered(gl(3, 1, 9))
)
CC.aov <- aov(y ~ N * P, data = CC , weights = rep(12, 9))
summary(CC.aov)

# Split both main effects into linear and quadratic parts.
summary(CC.aov, split = list(N = list(L = 1, Q = 2),
                             P = list(L = 1, Q = 2)))

# Split only the interaction
summary(CC.aov, split = list("N:P" = list(L.L = 1, Q = 2:4)))

# split on just one var
summary(CC.aov, split = list(P = list(lin = 1, quad = 2)))
```

```
summary(CC.aov, split = list(P = list(lin = 1, quad = 2)),
        expand.split = FALSE)
```

---

summary.glm *Summarizing Generalized Linear Model Fits*

Description

These functions are all methods for class glm or summary.glm objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glm
summary(object, dispersion = NULL, correlation = FALSE,
        symbolic.cor = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class summary.glm
print(x, digits = max(3, getOption("digits") - 3),
      symbolic.cor = x$symbolic.cor,
      signif.stars = getOption("show.signif.stars"), ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class "glm", usually, a result of a call to glm.
x	an object of class "summary.glm", usually, a result of a call to summary.glm.
dispersion	the dispersion parameter for the family used. Either a single numerical value or NULL (the default), when it is inferred from object (see 'Details').
correlation	logical; if TRUE, the correlation matrix of the estimated parameters is returned and printed.
digits	the number of significant digits to use when printing.
symbolic.cor	logical. If TRUE, print the correlations in a symbolic form (see symnum) rather than as numbers.
signif.stars	logical. If TRUE, 'significance stars' are printed for each coefficient.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

print.summary.glm tries to be smart about formatting the coefficients, standard errors, etc. and additionally gives 'significance stars' if signif.stars is TRUE. The coefficients component of the result gives the estimated coefficients and their estimated standard errors, together with their ratio. This third column is labelled t ratio if the dispersion is estimated, and z ratio if the dispersion is known (or fixed by the family). A fourth column gives the two-tailed p-value corresponding to the t or z ratio based on a Student t or Normal reference distribution. (It is possible that the dispersion is not known and there are no residual degrees of freedom from which to estimate it. In that case the estimate is NaN.)

Aliased coefficients are omitted in the returned object but restored by the print method.

Correlations are printed to two decimal places (or symbolically): to see the actual correlations print summary(object)$correlation directly.

The dispersion of a GLM is not used in the fitting process, but it is needed to find standard errors. If dispersion is not supplied or NULL, the dispersion is taken as 1 for the binomial and Poisson families, and otherwise estimated by the residual Chisquared statistic (calculated from cases with non-zero weights) divided by the residual degrees of freedom.

summary can be used with Gaussian glm fits to handle the case of a linear regression with known error variance, something not handled by summary.lm.

Value

summary.glm returns an object of class "summary.glm", a list with components

call	the component from object.
family	the component from object.
deviance	the component from object.
contrasts	the component from object.
df.residual	the component from object.
null.deviance	the component from object.
df.null	the component from object.
deviance.resid	the deviance residuals: see residuals.glm.
coefficients	the matrix of coefficients, standard errors, z-values and p-values. Aliased coefficients are omitted.
aliased	named logical vector showing if the original coefficients are aliased.
dispersion	either the supplied argument or the inferred/estimated dispersion if the latter is NULL.
df	a 3-vector of the rank of the model and the number of residual degrees of freedom, plus number of coefficients (including aliased ones).
cov.unscaled	the unscaled (dispersion = 1) estimated covariance matrix of the estimated coefficients.
cov.scaled	ditto, scaled by dispersion.
correlation	(only if correlation is true.) The estimated correlations of the estimated coefficients.
symbolic.cor	(only if correlation is true.) The value of the argument symbolic.cor.

See Also

glm, summary.

Examples

```
## For examples see example(glm)
```

summary.lm *Summarizing Linear Model Fits*

Description

summary method for class "lm".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lm
summary(object, correlation = FALSE, symbolic.cor = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class summary.lm
print(x, digits = max(3, getOption("digits") - 3),
      symbolic.cor = x$symbolic.cor,
      signif.stars = getOption("show.signif.stars"), ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class "lm", usually, a result of a call to lm.
x	an object of class "summary.lm", usually, a result of a call to summary.lm.
correlation	logical; if TRUE, the correlation matrix of the estimated parameters is returned and printed.
digits	the number of significant digits to use when printing.
symbolic.cor	logical. If TRUE, print the correlations in a symbolic form (see symnum) rather than as numbers.
signif.stars	logical. If TRUE, 'significance stars' are printed for each coefficient.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

print.summary.lm tries to be smart about formatting the coefficients, standard errors, etc. and additionally gives 'significance stars' if signif.stars is TRUE.

Aliased coefficients are omitted in the returned object but restored by the print method.

Correlations are printed to two decimal places (or symbolically): to see the actual correlations print summary(object)$correlation directly.

Value

The function summary.lm computes and returns a list of summary statistics of the fitted linear model given in object, using the components (list elements) "call" and "terms" from its argument, plus

residuals	the *weighted* residuals, the usual residuals rescaled by the square root of the weights specified in the call to lm.
coefficients	a $p \times 4$ matrix with columns for the estimated coefficient, its standard error, t-statistic and corresponding (two-sided) p-value. Aliased coefficients are omitted.
aliased	named logical vector showing if the original coefficients are aliased.

`sigma` the square root of the estimated variance of the random error

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{n-p}\sum_i w_i R_i^2,$$

where R_i is the i-th residual, `residuals[i]`.

`df` degrees of freedom, a 3-vector $(p, n-p, p*)$, the first being the number of non-aliased coefficients, the last being the total number of coefficients.

`fstatistic` (for models including non-intercept terms) a 3-vector with the value of the F-statistic with its numerator and denominator degrees of freedom.

`r.squared` R^2, the 'fraction of variance explained by the model',

$$R^2 = 1 - \frac{\sum_i R_i^2}{\sum_i (y_i - y^*)^2},$$

where y^* is the mean of y_i if there is an intercept and zero otherwise.

`adj.r.squared` the above R^2 statistic '*adjusted*', penalizing for higher p.

`cov.unscaled` a $p \times p$ matrix of (unscaled) covariances of the $\hat{\beta}_j$, $j = 1, \ldots, p$.

`correlation` the correlation matrix corresponding to the above `cov.unscaled`, if `correlation = TRUE` is specified.

`symbolic.cor` (only if `correlation` is true.) The value of the argument `symbolic.cor`.

`na.action` from `object`, if present there.

See Also

The model fitting function `lm`, `summary`.

Function `coef` will extract the matrix of coefficients with standard errors, t-statistics and p-values.

Examples

```
##-- Continuing the  lm(.) example:
coef(lm.D90)  # the bare coefficients
sld90 <- summary(lm.D90 <- lm(weight ~ group -1))  # omitting intercept
sld90
coef(sld90)  # much more

## model with *aliased* coefficient:
lm.D9. <- lm(weight ~ group + I(group != "Ctl"))
Sm.D9. <- summary(lm.D9.)
Sm.D9. #  shows the NA NA NA NA  line
stopifnot(length(cc <- coef(lm.D9.)) == 3, is.na(cc[3]),
          dim(coef(Sm.D9.)) == c(2,4), Sm.D9.$df == c(2, 18, 3))
```

summary.manova *Summary Method for Multivariate Analysis of Variance*

Description

A summary method for class "manova".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class manova
summary(object,
        test = c("Pillai", "Wilks", "Hotelling-Lawley", "Roy"),
        intercept = FALSE, tol = 1e-7, ...)
```

Arguments

object	An object of class "manova" or an aov object with multiple responses.
test	The name of the test statistic to be used. Partial matching is used so the name can be abbreviated.
intercept	logical. If TRUE, the intercept term is included in the table.
tol	tolerance to be used in deciding if the residuals are rank-deficient: see qr.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The summary.manova method uses a multivariate test statistic for the summary table. Wilks' statistic is most popular in the literature, but the default Pillai–Bartlett statistic is recommended by Hand and Taylor (1987).

The table gives a transformation of the test statistic which has approximately an F distribution. The approximations used follow S-PLUS and SAS (the latter apart from some cases of the Hotelling–Lawley statistic), but many other distributional approximations exist: see Anderson (1984) and Krzanowski and Marriott (1994) for further references. All four approximate F statistics are the same when the term being tested has one degree of freedom, but in other cases that for the Roy statistic is an upper bound.

The tolerance tol is applied to the QR decomposition of the residual correlation matrix (unless some response has essentially zero residuals, when it is unscaled). Thus the default value guards against very highly correlated responses: it can be reduced but doing so will allow rather inaccurate results and it will normally be better to transform the responses to remove the high correlation.

Value

An object of class "summary.manova". If there is a positive residual degrees of freedom, this is a list with components

row.names	The names of the terms, the row names of the stats table if present.
SS	A named list of sums of squares and product matrices.
Eigenvalues	A matrix of eigenvalues.
stats	A matrix of the statistics, approximate F value, degrees of freedom and P value.

otherwise components row.names, SS and Df (degrees of freedom) for the terms (and not the residuals).

References

Anderson, T. W. (1994) *An Introduction to Multivariate Statistical Analysis.* Wiley.

Hand, D. J. and Taylor, C. C. (1987) *Multivariate Analysis of Variance and Repeated Measures.* Chapman and Hall.

Krzanowski, W. J. (1988) *Principles of Multivariate Analysis. A User's Perspective.* Oxford.

Krzanowski, W. J. and Marriott, F. H. C. (1994) *Multivariate Analysis. Part I: Distributions, Ordination and Inference.* Edward Arnold.

See Also

manova, aov

Examples

```
## Example on producing plastic film from Krzanowski (1998, p. 381)
tear <- c(6.5, 6.2, 5.8, 6.5, 6.5, 6.9, 7.2, 6.9, 6.1, 6.3,
          6.7, 6.6, 7.2, 7.1, 6.8, 7.1, 7.0, 7.2, 7.5, 7.6)
gloss <- c(9.5, 9.9, 9.6, 9.6, 9.2, 9.1, 10.0, 9.9, 9.5, 9.4,
           9.1, 9.3, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5, 9.2, 8.8, 9.7, 10.1, 9.2)
opacity <- c(4.4, 6.4, 3.0, 4.1, 0.8, 5.7, 2.0, 3.9, 1.9, 5.7,
             2.8, 4.1, 3.8, 1.6, 3.4, 8.4, 5.2, 6.9, 2.7, 1.9)
Y <- cbind(tear, gloss, opacity)
rate <- factor(gl(2,10), labels = c("Low", "High"))
additive <- factor(gl(2, 5, length = 20), labels = c("Low", "High"))

fit <- manova(Y ~ rate * additive)
summary.aov(fit)             # univariate ANOVA tables
summary(fit, test = "Wilks") # ANOVA table of Wilks lambda
summary(fit)                # same F statistics as single-df terms
```

---

summary.nls *Summarizing Non-Linear Least-Squares Model Fits*

Description

summary method for class "nls".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nls
summary(object, correlation = FALSE, symbolic.cor = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class summary.nls
print(x, digits = max(3, getOption("digits") - 3),
      symbolic.cor = x$symbolic.cor,
      signif.stars = getOption("show.signif.stars"), ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class "nls".
x	an object of class "summary.nls", usually the result of a call to summary.nls.
correlation	logical; if TRUE, the correlation matrix of the estimated parameters is returned and printed.
digits	the number of significant digits to use when printing.
symbolic.cor	logical. If TRUE, print the correlations in a symbolic form (see symnum) rather than as numbers.
signif.stars	logical. If TRUE, 'significance stars' are printed for each coefficient.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The distribution theory used to find the distribution of the standard errors and of the residual standard error (for t ratios) is based on linearization and is approximate, maybe very approximate.

print.summary.nls tries to be smart about formatting the coefficients, standard errors, etc. and additionally gives 'significance stars' if signif.stars is TRUE.

Correlations are printed to two decimal places (or symbolically): to see the actual correlations print summary(object)$correlation directly.

Value

The function summary.nls computes and returns a list of summary statistics of the fitted model given in object, using the component "formula" from its argument, plus

residuals	the *weighted* residuals, the usual residuals rescaled by the square root of the weights specified in the call to nls.
coefficients	a $p \times 4$ matrix with columns for the estimated coefficient, its standard error, t-statistic and corresponding (two-sided) p-value.
sigma	the square root of the estimated variance of the random error $$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{n-p}\sum_i R_i^2,$$ where R_i is the i-th weighted residual.
df	degrees of freedom, a 2-vector $(p, n-p)$. (Here and elsewhere n omits observations with zero weights.)
cov.unscaled	a $p \times p$ matrix of (unscaled) covariances of the parameter estimates.
correlation	the correlation matrix corresponding to the above cov.unscaled, if correlation = TRUE is specified and there are a non-zero number of residual degrees of freedom.
symbolic.cor	(only if correlation is true.) The value of the argument symbolic.cor.

See Also

The model fitting function nls, summary.

Function coef will extract the matrix of coefficients with standard errors, t-statistics and p-values.

summary.princomp *Summary method for Principal Components Analysis*

Description

The summary method for class "princomp".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class princomp
summary(object, loadings = FALSE, cutoff = 0.1, ...)

## S3 method for class summary.princomp
print(x, digits = 3, loadings = x$print.loadings,
      cutoff = x$cutoff, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class "princomp", as from princomp().
loadings	logical. Should loadings be included?
cutoff	numeric. Loadings below this cutoff in absolute value are shown as blank in the output.
x	an object of class "summary.princomp".
digits	the number of significant digits to be used in listing loadings.
...	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Value

object with additional components cutoff and print.loadings.

See Also

princomp

Examples

```
summary(pc.cr <- princomp(USArrests, cor = TRUE))
## The signs of the loading columns are arbitrary
print(summary(princomp(USArrests, cor = TRUE),
              loadings = TRUE, cutoff = 0.2), digits = 2)
```

supsmu *Friedman's SuperSmoother*

Description

Smooth the (x, y) values by Friedman's 'super smoother'.

Usage

```
supsmu(x, y, wt, span = "cv", periodic = FALSE, bass = 0)
```

Arguments

x	x values for smoothing
y	y values for smoothing
wt	case weights, by default all equal
span	the fraction of the observations in the span of the running lines smoother, or "cv" to choose this by leave-one-out cross-validation.
periodic	if TRUE, the x values are assumed to be in [0, 1] and of period 1.
bass	controls the smoothness of the fitted curve. Values of up to 10 indicate increasing smoothness.

Details

supsmu is a running lines smoother which chooses between three spans for the lines. The running lines smoothers are symmetric, with k/2 data points each side of the predicted point, and values of k as 0.5 * n, 0.2 * n and 0.05 * n, where n is the number of data points. If span is specified, a single smoother with span span * n is used.

The best of the three smoothers is chosen by cross-validation for each prediction. The best spans are then smoothed by a running lines smoother and the final prediction chosen by linear interpolation.

The FORTRAN code says: "For small samples (n < 40) or if there are substantial serial correlations between observations close in x-value, then a pre-specified fixed span smoother (span > 0) should be used. Reasonable span values are 0.2 to 0.4."

Cases with non-finite values of x, y or wt are dropped, with a warning.

Value

A list with components

x	the input values in increasing order with duplicates removed.
y	the corresponding y values on the fitted curve.

References

Friedman, J. H. (1984) SMART User's Guide. Laboratory for Computational Statistics, Stanford University Technical Report No. 1.

Friedman, J. H. (1984) A variable span scatterplot smoother. Laboratory for Computational Statistics, Stanford University Technical Report No. 5.

See Also

ppr

Examples

```
require(graphics)

with(cars, {
    plot(speed, dist)
    lines(supsmu(speed, dist))
    lines(supsmu(speed, dist, bass = 7), lty = 2)
    })
```

---

symnum *Symbolic Number Coding*

Description

Symbolically encode a given numeric or logical vector or array. Particularly useful for visualization of structured matrices, e.g., correlation, sparse, or logical ones.

Usage

```
symnum(x, cutpoints = c(0.3, 0.6, 0.8, 0.9, 0.95),
       symbols = if(numeric.x) c(" ", ".", ",", "+", "*", "B")
                 else c(".", "|"),
       legend = length(symbols) >= 3,
       na = "?", eps = 1e-5, numeric.x = is.numeric(x),
       corr = missing(cutpoints) && numeric.x,
       show.max = if(corr) "1", show.min = NULL,
       abbr.colnames = has.colnames,
       lower.triangular = corr && is.numeric(x) && is.matrix(x),
       diag.lower.tri   = corr && !is.null(show.max))
```

Arguments

x	numeric or logical vector or array.
cutpoints	numeric vector whose values cutpoints[j] $= c_j$ (*after* augmentation, see corr below) are used for intervals.
symbols	character vector, one shorter than (the *augmented*, see corr below) cutpoints. symbols[j]$= s_j$ are used as 'code' for the (half open) interval $(c_j, c_{j+1}]$. When numeric.x is FALSE, i.e., by default when argument x is logical, the default is c(".","|") (graphical 0 / 1 s).
legend	logical indicating if a "legend" attribute is desired.
na	character or logical. How NAs are coded. If na == FALSE, NAs are coded invisibly, *including* the "legend" attribute below, which otherwise mentions NA coding.
eps	absolute precision to be used at left and right boundary.
numeric.x	logical indicating if x should be treated as numbers, otherwise as logical.

corr	logical. If TRUE, x contains correlations. The cutpoints are augmented by 0 and 1 and abs(x) is coded.
show.max	if TRUE, or of mode character, the maximal cutpoint is coded especially.
show.min	if TRUE, or of mode character, the minimal cutpoint is coded especially.
abbr.colnames	logical, integer or NULL indicating how column names should be abbreviated (if they are); if NULL (or FALSE and x has no column names), the column names will all be empty, i.e., ""; otherwise if abbr.colnames is false, they are left unchanged. If TRUE or integer, existing column names will be abbreviated to abbreviate(*, minlength = abbr.colnames).
lower.triangular	logical. If TRUE and x is a matrix, only the *lower triangular* part of the matrix is coded as non-blank.
diag.lower.tri	logical. If lower.triangular *and* this are TRUE, the *diagonal* part of the matrix is shown.

Value

An atomic character object of class noquote and the same dimensions as x.

If legend is TRUE (as by default when there are more than two classes), the result has an attribute "legend" containing a legend of the returned character codes, in the form

$$c_1 s_1 c_2 s_2 \ldots s_n c_{n+1}$$

where c_j = cutpoints[j] and s_j = symbols[j].

Note

The optional (mostly logical) arguments all try to use smart defaults. Specifying them explicitly may lead to considerably improved output in many cases.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch>

See Also

as.character; image

Examples

```
ii <- setNames(0:8, 0:8)
symnum(ii, cut =  2*(0:4), sym = c(".", "-", "+", "$"))
symnum(ii, cut =  2*(0:4), sym = c(".", "-", "+", "$"), show.max = TRUE)

symnum(1:12 %% 3 == 0)  # --> "|" = TRUE, "." = FALSE  for logical

## Pascals Triangle modulo 2 -- odd and even numbers:
N <- 38
pascal <- t(sapply(0:N, function(n) round(choose(n, 0:N - (N-n)%/%2))))
rownames(pascal) <- rep("", 1+N) # <-- to improve "graphic"
symnum(pascal %% 2, symbols = c(" ", "A"), numeric = FALSE)

##-- Symbolic correlation matrices:
```

```
symnum(cor(attitude), diag = FALSE)
symnum(cor(attitude), abbr. = NULL)
symnum(cor(attitude), abbr. = FALSE)
symnum(cor(attitude), abbr. = 2)

symnum(cor(rbind(1, rnorm(25), rnorm(25)^2)))
symnum(cor(matrix(rexp(30, 1), 5, 18))) # <<-- PATTERN ! --
symnum(cm1 <- cor(matrix(rnorm(90) ,  5, 18))) # < White Noise SMALL n
symnum(cm1, diag = FALSE)
symnum(cm2 <- cor(matrix(rnorm(900), 50, 18))) # < White Noise "BIG" n
symnum(cm2, lower = FALSE)

## NAs:
Cm <- cor(matrix(rnorm(60),  10, 6)); Cm[c(3,6), 2] <- NA
symnum(Cm, show.max = NULL)

## Graphical P-values (aka "significance stars"):
pval <- rev(sort(c(outer(1:6, 10^-(1:3)))))
symp <- symnum(pval, corr = FALSE,
               cutpoints = c(0,  .001,.01,.05, .1, 1),
               symbols = c("***","**","*",".","  "))
noquote(cbind(P.val = format(pval), Signif = symp))
```

`t.test` *Student's t-Test*

Description

Performs one and two sample t-tests on vectors of data.

Usage

```
t.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
t.test(x, y = NULL,
       alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
       mu = 0, paired = FALSE, var.equal = FALSE,
       conf.level = 0.95, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
t.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a (non-empty) numeric vector of data values.
`y`	an optional (non-empty) numeric vector of data values.
`alternative`	a character string specifying the alternative hypothesis, must be one of `"two.sided"` (default), `"greater"` or `"less"`. You can specify just the initial letter.
`mu`	a number indicating the true value of the mean (or difference in means if you are performing a two sample test).

paired	a logical indicating whether you want a paired t-test.
var.equal	a logical variable indicating whether to treat the two variances as being equal. If TRUE then the pooled variance is used to estimate the variance otherwise the Welch (or Satterthwaite) approximation to the degrees of freedom is used.
conf.level	confidence level of the interval.
formula	a formula of the form lhs ~ rhs where lhs is a numeric variable giving the data values and rhs a factor with two levels giving the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

The formula interface is only applicable for the 2-sample tests.

alternative = "greater" is the alternative that x has a larger mean than y.

If paired is TRUE then both x and y must be specified and they must be the same length. Missing values are silently removed (in pairs if paired is TRUE). If var.equal is TRUE then the pooled estimate of the variance is used. By default, if var.equal is FALSE then the variance is estimated separately for both groups and the Welch modification to the degrees of freedom is used.

If the input data are effectively constant (compared to the larger of the two means) an error is generated.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the t-statistic.
parameter	the degrees of freedom for the t-statistic.
p.value	the p-value for the test.
conf.int	a confidence interval for the mean appropriate to the specified alternative hypothesis.
estimate	the estimated mean or difference in means depending on whether it was a one-sample test or a two-sample test.
null.value	the specified hypothesized value of the mean or mean difference depending on whether it was a one-sample test or a two-sample test.
alternative	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
method	a character string indicating what type of t-test was performed.
data.name	a character string giving the name(s) of the data.

See Also

prop.test

Examples

```
require(graphics)

t.test(1:10, y = c(7:20))      # P = .00001855
t.test(1:10, y = c(7:20, 200)) # P = .1245    -- NOT significant anymore

## Classical example: Students sleep data
plot(extra ~ group, data = sleep)
## Traditional interface
with(sleep, t.test(extra[group == 1], extra[group == 2]))
## Formula interface
t.test(extra ~ group, data = sleep)
```

TDist *The Student t Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the t distribution with `df` degrees of freedom (and optional non-centrality parameter `ncp`).

Usage

```
dt(x, df, ncp, log = FALSE)
pt(q, df, ncp, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qt(p, df, ncp, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rt(n, df, ncp)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`df`	degrees of freedom (> 0, maybe non-integer). `df = Inf` is allowed.
`ncp`	non-centrality parameter δ; currently except for `rt()`, only for `abs(ncp) <= 37.62`. If omitted, use the central t distribution.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \le x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The t distribution with `df` $= \nu$ degrees of freedom has density

$$f(x) = \frac{\Gamma((\nu+1)/2)}{\sqrt{\pi\nu}\,\Gamma(\nu/2)}(1 + x^2/\nu)^{-(\nu+1)/2}$$

for all real x. It has mean 0 (for $\nu > 1$) and variance $\frac{\nu}{\nu-2}$ (for $\nu > 2$).

The general *non-central* t with parameters (ν, δ) `= (df, ncp)` is defined as the distribution of $T_\nu(\delta) := (U + \delta)/\sqrt{V/\nu}$ where U and V are independent random variables, $U \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ and $V \sim \chi^2_\nu$ (see Chisquare).

The most used applications are power calculations for t-tests:
Let $T = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{S/\sqrt{n}}$ where $\bar{X}$ is the `mean` and S the sample standard deviation (`sd`) of $X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_n$ which are i.i.d. $\mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ Then T is distributed as non-central t with `df` $= n - 1$ degrees of freedom and **n**on-**c**entrality **p**arameter `ncp` $= (\mu - \mu_0)\sqrt{n}/\sigma$.

Value

`dt` gives the density, `pt` gives the distribution function, `qt` gives the quantile function, and `rt` generates random deviates.

Invalid arguments will result in return value `NaN`, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `rt`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

Supplying `ncp = 0` uses the algorithm for the non-central distribution, which is not the same algorithm used if `ncp` is omitted. This is to give consistent behaviour in extreme cases with values of `ncp` very near zero.

The code for non-zero `ncp` is principally intended to be used for moderate values of `ncp`: it will not be highly accurate, especially in the tails, for large values.

Source

The central `dt` is computed via an accurate formula provided by Catherine Loader (see the reference in `dbinom`).

For the non-central case of `dt`, C code contributed by Claus Ekstrøm based on the relationship (for $x \neq 0$) to the cumulative distribution.

For the central case of `pt`, a normal approximation in the tails, otherwise via `pbeta`.

For the non-central case of `pt` based on a C translation of

Lenth, R. V. (1989). *Algorithm AS 243* — Cumulative distribution function of the non-central t distribution, *Applied Statistics* **38**, 185–189.

This computes the lower tail only, so the upper tail suffers from cancellation and a warning will be given when this is likely to be significant.

For central `qt`, a C translation of

Hill, G. W. (1970) Algorithm 396: Student's t-quantiles. *Communications of the ACM*, **13(10)**, 619–620.

altered to take account of

Hill, G. W. (1981) Remark on Algorithm 396, *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, **7**, 250–1.

The non-central case is done by inversion.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole. (Except non-central versions.)

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 2, chapters 28 and 31. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including df for the F distribution.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

1 - pt(1:5, df = 1)
qt(.975, df = c(1:10,20,50,100,1000))

tt <- seq(0, 10, len = 21)
ncp <- seq(0, 6, len = 31)
ptn <- outer(tt, ncp, function(t, d) pt(t, df = 3, ncp = d))
t.tit <- "Non-central t - Probabilities"
image(tt, ncp, ptn, zlim = c(0,1), main = t.tit)
persp(tt, ncp, ptn, zlim = 0:1, r = 2, phi = 20, theta = 200, main = t.tit,
      xlab = "t", ylab = "non-centrality parameter",
      zlab = "Pr(T <= t)")

plot(function(x) dt(x, df = 3, ncp = 2), -3, 11, ylim = c(0, 0.32),
     main = "Non-central t - Density", yaxs = "i")
```

---

termplot *Plot Regression Terms*

Description

Plots regression terms against their predictors, optionally with standard errors and partial residuals added.

Usage

```
termplot(model, data = NULL, envir = environment(formula(model)),
         partial.resid = FALSE, rug = FALSE,
         terms = NULL, se = FALSE,
         xlabs = NULL, ylabs = NULL, main = NULL,
         col.term = 2, lwd.term = 1.5,
         col.se = "orange", lty.se = 2, lwd.se = 1,
         col.res = "gray", cex = 1, pch = par("pch"),
         col.smth = "darkred", lty.smth = 2, span.smth = 2/3,
         ask = dev.interactive() && nb.fig < n.tms,
         use.factor.levels = TRUE, smooth = NULL, ylim = "common",
         plot = TRUE, transform.x = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

model	fitted model object
data	data frame in which variables in model can be found
envir	environment in which variables in model can be found
partial.resid	logical; should partial residuals be plotted?
rug	add rugplots (jittered 1-d histograms) to the axes?

terms — which terms to plot (default NULL means all terms); a vector passed to predict(.., type = "terms", terms = *).

se — plot pointwise standard errors?

xlabs — vector of labels for the x axes

ylabs — vector of labels for the y axes

main — logical, or vector of main titles; if TRUE, the model's call is taken as main title, NULL or FALSE mean no titles.

col.term, lwd.term — color and line width for the 'term curve', see lines.

col.se, lty.se, lwd.se — color, line type and line width for the 'twice-standard-error curve' when se = TRUE.

col.res, cex, pch — color, plotting character expansion and type for partial residuals, when partial.resid = TRUE, see points.

ask — logical; if TRUE, the user is *ask*ed before each plot, see par(ask=.).

use.factor.levels — Should x-axis ticks use factor levels or numbers for factor terms?

smooth — NULL or a function with the same arguments as panel.smooth to draw a smooth through the partial residuals for non-factor terms

lty.smth, col.smth, span.smth — Passed to smooth

ylim — an optional range for the y axis, or "common" when a range sufficient for all the plot will be computed, or "free" when limits are computed for each plot.

plot — if set to FALSE plots are not produced: instead a list is returned containing the data that would have been plotted.

transform.x — logical vector; if an element (recycled as necessary) is TRUE, partial residuals for the corresponding term are plotted against transformed values. The model response is then a straight line, allowing a ready comparison against the data or against the curve obtained from smooth-panel.smooth.

... — other graphical parameters.

Details

The model object must have a predict method that accepts type = "terms", e.g., glm in the **stats** package, coxph and survreg in the **survival** package.

For the partial.resid = TRUE option model must have a residuals method that accepts type = "partial", which lm and glm do.

The data argument should rarely be needed, but in some cases termplot may be unable to reconstruct the original data frame. Using na.action=na.exclude makes these problems less likely.

Nothing sensible happens for interaction terms, and they may cause errors.

The plot = FALSE option is useful when some special action is needed, e.g. to overlay the results of two different models or to plot confidence bands.

Value

For `plot = FALSE`, a list with one element for each plot which would have been produced. Each element of the list is a data frame with variables `x`, `y`, and optionally the pointwise standard errors `se`. For continuous predictors `x` will contain the ordered unique values and for a factor it will be a factor containing one instance of each level. The list has attribute `"constant"` copied from the predicted terms object.

Otherwise, the number of terms, invisibly.

See Also

For (generalized) linear models, `plot.lm` and `predict.glm`.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

had.splines <- "package:splines" %in% search()
if(!had.splines) rs <- require(splines)
x <- 1:100
z <- factor(rep(LETTERS[1:4], 25))
y <- rnorm(100, sin(x/10)+as.numeric(z))
model <- glm(y ~ ns(x, 6) + z)

par(mfrow = c(2,2)) ## 2 x 2 plots for same model :
termplot(model, main = paste("termplot( ", deparse(model$call)," ...)"))
termplot(model, rug = TRUE)
termplot(model, partial.resid = TRUE, se = TRUE, main = TRUE)
termplot(model, partial.resid = TRUE, smooth = panel.smooth, span.smth = 1/4)
if(!had.splines && rs) detach("package:splines")

if (require(MASS)) {
    hills.lm <- lm(log(time) ~ log(climb)+log(dist), data=hills)
    termplot(hills.lm, partial.resid = TRUE, smooth = panel.smooth,
             terms = "log(dist)", main = "Original")
    termplot(hills.lm, transform.x = TRUE, partial.resid = TRUE,
     terms = "log(dist)", main = "Transformed",
     smooth=panel.smooth)
}
```

---

terms *Model Terms*

Description

The function `terms` is a generic function which can be used to extract *terms* objects from various kinds of data objects.

Usage

```
terms(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	object used to select a method to dispatch.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

There are methods for classes "aovlist", and "terms" "formula" (see terms.formula): the default method just extracts the terms component of the object, or failing that a "terms" attribute (as used by model.frame).

There are print and labels methods for class "terms": the latter prints the term labels (see terms.object).

Value

An object of class c("terms", "formula") which contains the *terms* representation of a symbolic model. See terms.object for its structure.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical models.* Chapter 2 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

terms.object, terms.formula, lm, glm, formula.

---

terms.formula *Construct a terms Object from a Formula*

Description

This function takes a formula and some optional arguments and constructs a terms object. The terms object can then be used to construct a model.matrix.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class formula
terms(x, specials = NULL, abb = NULL, data = NULL, neg.out = TRUE,
      keep.order = FALSE, simplify = FALSE, ...,
      allowDotAsName = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a formula.
specials	which functions in the formula should be marked as special in the terms object? A character vector or NULL.
abb	Not implemented in .
data	a data frame from which the meaning of the special symbol . can be inferred. It is unused if there is no . in the formula.
neg.out	Not implemented in .

keep.order	a logical value indicating whether the terms should keep their positions. If FALSE the terms are reordered so that main effects come first, followed by the interactions, all second-order, all third-order and so on. Effects of a given order are kept in the order specified.
simplify	should the formula be expanded and simplified, the pre-1.7.0 behaviour?
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
allowDotAsName	normally . in a formula refers to the remaining variables contained in data. Exceptionally, . can be treated as a name for non-standard uses of formulae.

Details

Not all of the options work in the same way that they do in S and not all are implemented.

Value

A terms.object object is returned. The object itself is the re-ordered (unless keep.order = TRUE) formula. In all cases variables within an interaction term in the formula are re-ordered by the ordering of the "variables" attribute, which is the order in which the variables occur in the formula.

See Also

terms, terms.object

---

terms.object *Description of Terms Objects*

Description

An object of class terms holds information about a model. Usually the model was specified in terms of a formula and that formula was used to determine the terms object.

Value

The object itself is simply the formula supplied to the call of terms.formula. The object has a number of attributes and they are used to construct the model frame:

factors	A matrix of variables by terms showing which variables appear in which terms. The entries are 0 if the variable does not occur in the term, 1 if it does occur and should be coded by contrasts, and 2 if it occurs and should be coded via dummy variables for all levels (as when a lower-order term is missing). Note that variables in main effects always receive 1, even if the intercept is missing (in which case the first one should be coded with dummy variables). If there are no terms other than an intercept and offsets, this is numeric(0).
term.labels	A character vector containing the labels for each of the terms in the model, except for offsets. Note that these are after possible re-ordering of terms. Non-syntactic names will be quoted by backticks: this makes it easier to reconstruct the formula from the term labels.
variables	A call to list of the variables in the model.
intercept	Either 0, indicating no intercept is to be fit, or 1 indicating that an intercept is to be fit.

order	A vector of the same length as term.labels indicating the order of interaction for each term.
response	The index of the variable (in variables) of the response (the left hand side of the formula). Zero, if there is no response.
offset	If the model contains offset terms there is an offset attribute indicating which variable(s) are offsets
specials	If a specials argument was given to terms.formula there is a specials attribute, a pairlist of vectors (one for each specified special function) giving numeric indices of the arguments of the list returned as the variables attribute which contain these special functions.
dataClasses	optional. A named character vector giving the classes (as given by .MFclass) of the variables used in a fit.
predvars	optional. An expression to help in computing predictions at new covariate values; see makepredictcall.

The object has class c("terms", "formula").

Note

These objects are different from those found in S. In particular there is no formula attribute: instead the object is itself a formula. (Thus, the mode of a terms object is different.)

Examples of the specials argument can be seen in the aov and coxph functions, the latter from package **survival**.

See Also

terms, formula.

Examples

```
## use of specials (as used for gam() in packages mgcv and gam)
(tf <- terms(y ~ x + x:z + s(x), specials = "s"))
## Note that the "factors" attribute has variables as row names
## and term labels as column names, both as character vectors.
attr(tf, "specials")    # index s variable(s)
rownames(attr(tf, "factors"))[attr(tf, "specials")$s]

## we can keep the order by
terms(y ~ x + x:z + s(x), specials = "s", keep.order = TRUE)
```

---

time *Sampling Times of Time Series*

Description

time creates the vector of times at which a time series was sampled.

cycle gives the positions in the cycle of each observation.

frequency returns the number of samples per unit time and deltat the time interval between observations (see ts).

Usage

```
time(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
time(x, offset = 0, ...)

cycle(x, ...)
frequency(x, ...)
deltat(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a univariate or multivariate time-series, or a vector or matrix.
offset	can be used to indicate when sampling took place in the time unit. 0 (the default) indicates the start of the unit, 0.5 the middle and 1 the end of the interval.
...	extra arguments for future methods.

Details

These are all generic functions, which will use the tsp attribute of x if it exists. time and cycle have methods for class ts that coerce the result to that class.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

ts, start, tsp, window.

date for clock time, system.time for CPU usage.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

cycle(presidents)
# a simple series plot
plot(as.vector(time(presidents)), as.vector(presidents), type = "l")
```

---

toeplitz *Form Symmetric Toeplitz Matrix*

Description

Forms a symmetric Toeplitz matrix given its first row.

Usage

```
toeplitz(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	the first row to form the Toeplitz matrix.
...	potential further arguments (for methods); none here.

Value

The Toeplitz matrix.

Author(s)

A. Trapletti

Examples

```
x <- 1:5
toeplitz (x)
```

---

ts *Time-Series Objects*

Description

The function ts is used to create time-series objects.

as.ts and is.ts coerce an object to a time-series and test whether an object is a time series.

Usage

```
ts(data = NA, start = 1, end = numeric(), frequency = 1,
   deltat = 1, ts.eps = getOption("ts.eps"), class = , names = )
as.ts(x, ...)
is.ts(x)
```

Arguments

data	a vector or matrix of the observed time-series values. A data frame will be coerced to a numeric matrix via data.matrix. (See also 'Details'.)
start	the time of the first observation. Either a single number or a vector of two integers, which specify a natural time unit and a (1-based) number of samples into the time unit. See the examples for the use of the second form.
end	the time of the last observation, specified in the same way as start.
frequency	the number of observations per unit of time.
deltat	the fraction of the sampling period between successive observations; e.g., 1/12 for monthly data. Only one of frequency or deltat should be provided.
ts.eps	time series comparison tolerance. Frequencies are considered equal if their absolute difference is less than ts.eps.
class	class to be given to the result, or none if NULL or "none". The default is "ts" for a single series, c("mts", "ts", "matrix") for multiple series.
names	a character vector of names for the series in a multiple series: defaults to the colnames of data, or Series 1, Series 2, ...
x	an arbitrary object.
...	arguments passed to methods (unused for the default method).

Details

The function ts is used to create time-series objects. These are vector or matrices with class of "ts" (and additional attributes) which represent data which has been sampled at equispaced points in time. In the matrix case, each column of the matrix data is assumed to contain a single (univariate) time series. Time series must have at least one observation, and although they need not be numeric there is very limited support for non-numeric series.

Class "ts" has a number of methods. In particular arithmetic will attempt to align time axes, and subsetting to extract subsets of series can be used (e.g., EuStockMarkets[, "DAX"]). However, subsetting the first (or only) dimension will return a matrix or vector, as will matrix subsetting. Subassignment can be used to replace values but not to extend a series (see window). There is a method for t that transposes the series as a matrix (a one-column matrix if a vector) and hence returns a result that does not inherit from class "ts".

The value of argument frequency is used when the series is sampled an integral number of times in each unit time interval. For example, one could use a value of 7 for frequency when the data are sampled daily, and the natural time period is a week, or 12 when the data are sampled monthly and the natural time period is a year. Values of 4 and 12 are assumed in (e.g.) print methods to imply a quarterly and monthly series respectively.

as.ts is generic. Its default method will use the tsp attribute of the object if it has one to set the start and end times and frequency.

is.ts tests if an object is a time series. It is generic: you can write methods to handle specific classes of objects, see InternalMethods.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

tsp, frequency, start, end, time, window; print.ts, the print method for time series objects; plot.ts, the plot method for time series objects.

For other definitions of 'time series' (e.g., time-ordered observations) see the CRAN task view at http://cran.r-project.org/web/views/TimeSeries.html.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

ts(1:10, frequency = 4, start = c(1959, 2)) # 2nd Quarter of 1959
print( ts(1:10, frequency = 7, start = c(12, 2)), calendar = TRUE)
# print.ts(.)
## Using July 1954 as start date:
gnp <- ts(cumsum(1 + round(rnorm(100), 2)),
          start = c(1954, 7), frequency = 12)
plot(gnp) # using plot.ts for time-series plot

## Multivariate
z <- ts(matrix(rnorm(300), 100, 3), start = c(1961, 1), frequency = 12)
class(z)
head(z) # as "matrix"
plot(z)
plot(z, plot.type = "single", lty = 1:3)
```

```
## A phase plot:
plot(nhtemp, lag(nhtemp, 1), cex = .8, col = "blue",
     main = "Lag plot of New Haven temperatures")
```

`ts-methods` *Methods for Time Series Objects*

Description

Methods for objects of class `"ts"`, typically the result of `ts`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ts
diff(x, lag = 1, differences = 1, ...)

## S3 method for class ts
na.omit(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `"ts"` containing the values to be differenced.
`lag`	an integer indicating which lag to use.
`differences`	an integer indicating the order of the difference.
`object`	a univariate or multivariate time series.
`...`	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

The `na.omit` method omits initial and final segments with missing values in one or more of the series. 'Internal' missing values will lead to failure.

Value

For the `na.omit` method, a time series without missing values. The class of `object` will be preserved.

See Also

`diff`; `na.omit`, `na.fail`, `na.contiguous`.

ts.plot *Plot Multiple Time Series*

Description

Plot several time series on a common plot. Unlike plot.ts the series can have a different time bases, but they should have the same frequency.

Usage

```
ts.plot(..., gpars = list())
```

Arguments

...	one or more univariate or multivariate time series.
gpars	list of named graphics parameters to be passed to the plotting functions. Those commonly used can be supplied directly in ....

Value

None.

Note

Although this can be used for a single time series, plot is easier to use and is preferred.

See Also

plot.ts

Examples

```
require(graphics)

ts.plot(ldeaths, mdeaths, fdeaths,
        gpars=list(xlab="year", ylab="deaths", lty=c(1:3)))
```

ts.union *Bind Two or More Time Series*

Description

Bind time series which have a common frequency. ts.union pads with NAs to the total time coverage, ts.intersect restricts to the time covered by all the series.

Usage

```
ts.intersect(..., dframe = FALSE)
ts.union(..., dframe = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	two or more univariate or multivariate time series, or objects which can coerced to time series.
dframe	logical; if TRUE return the result as a data frame.

Details

As a special case, ... can contain vectors or matrices of the same length as the combined time series of the time series present, as well as those of a single row.

Value

A time series object if dframe is FALSE, otherwise a data frame.

See Also

cbind.

Examples

```
ts.union(mdeaths, fdeaths)
cbind(mdeaths, fdeaths) # same as the previous line
ts.intersect(window(mdeaths, 1976), window(fdeaths, 1974, 1978))

sales1 <- ts.union(BJsales, lead = BJsales.lead)
ts.intersect(sales1, lead3 = lag(BJsales.lead, -3))
```

---

tsdiag *Diagnostic Plots for Time-Series Fits*

Description

A generic function to plot time-series diagnostics.

Usage

```
tsdiag(object, gof.lag, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted time-series model
gof.lag	the maximum number of lags for a Portmanteau goodness-of-fit test
...	further arguments to be passed to particular methods

Details

This is a generic function. It will generally plot the residuals, often standardized, the autocorrelation function of the residuals, and the p-values of a Portmanteau test for all lags up to gof.lag.

The methods for arima and StructTS objects plots residuals scaled by the estimate of their (individual) variance, and use the Ljung–Box version of the portmanteau test.

Value

None. Diagnostics are plotted.

See Also

arima, StructTS, Box.test

Examples

```
require(graphics)

fit <- arima(lh, c(1,0,0))
tsdiag(fit)

## see also examples(arima)

(fit <- StructTS(log10(JohnsonJohnson), type = "BSM"))
tsdiag(fit)
```

---

tsp *Tsp Attribute of Time-Series-like Objects*

Description

tsp returns the tsp attribute (or NULL). It is included for compatibility with S version 2. tsp<- sets the tsp attribute. hasTsp ensures x has a tsp attribute, by adding one if needed.

Usage

```
tsp(x)
tsp(x) <- value
hasTsp(x)
```

Arguments

x	a vector or matrix or univariate or multivariate time-series.
value	a numeric vector of length 3 or NULL.

Details

The tsp attribute gives the start time *in time units*, the end time and the frequency (the number of observations per unit of time, e.g. 12 for a monthly series).

Assignments are checked for consistency.

Assigning NULL which removes the tsp attribute *and* any "ts" (or "mts") class of x.

Value

An object which differs from x only in the tsp attribute (unless NULL is assigned).

hasTsp adds, if needed, an attribute with a start time and frequency of 1 and end time NROW(x).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

ts, time, start.

`tsSmooth` *Use Fixed-Interval Smoothing on Time Series*

Description

Performs fixed-interval smoothing on a univariate time series via a state-space model. Fixed-interval smoothing gives the best estimate of the state at each time point based on the whole observed series.

Usage

```
tsSmooth(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a time-series fit. Currently only class "StructTS" is supported
`...`	possible arguments for future methods.

Value

A time series, with as many dimensions as the state space and results at each time point of the original series. (For seasonal models, only the current seasonal component is returned.)

Author(s)

B. D. Ripley

References

Durbin, J. and Koopman, S. J. (2001) *Time Series Analysis by State Space Methods.* Oxford University Press.

See Also

KalmanSmooth, StructTS.

For examples consult AirPassengers, JohnsonJohnson and Nile.

Tukey *The Studentized Range Distribution*

Description

Functions of the distribution of the studentized range, R/s, where R is the range of a standard normal sample and $df \times s^2$ is independently distributed as chi-squared with df degrees of freedom, see pchisq.

Usage

```
ptukey(q, nmeans, df, nranges = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qtukey(p, nmeans, df, nranges = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
```

Arguments

q	vector of quantiles.
p	vector of probabilities.
nmeans	sample size for range (same for each group).
df	degrees of freedom for s (see below).
nranges	number of *groups* whose **maximum** range is considered.
log.p	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
lower.tail	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

If $n_g =$nranges is greater than one, R is the *maximum* of n_g groups of nmeans observations each.

Value

ptukey gives the distribution function and qtukey its inverse, the quantile function.

The length of the result is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments. The other numerical arguments are recycled to that length. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

A Legendre 16-point formula is used for the integral of ptukey. The computations are relatively expensive, especially for qtukey which uses a simple secant method for finding the inverse of ptukey. qtukey will be accurate to the 4th decimal place.

Source

qtukey is in part adapted from Odeh and Evans (1974).

References

Copenhaver, Margaret Diponzio and Holland, Burt S. (1988) Multiple comparisons of simple effects in the two-way analysis of variance with fixed effects. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, **30**, 1–15.

Odeh, R. E. and Evans, J. O. (1974) Algorithm AS 70: Percentage Points of the Normal Distribution. *Applied Statistics* **23**, 96–97.

See Also

Distributions for standard distributions, including `pnorm` and `qnorm` for the corresponding functions for the normal distribution.

Examples

```
if(interactive())
  curve(ptukey(x, nm = 6, df = 5), from = -1, to = 8, n = 101)
(ptt <- ptukey(0:10, 2, df =  5))
(qtt <- qtukey(.95, 2, df =  2:11))
## The precision may be not much more than about 8 digits:
summary(abs(.95 - ptukey(qtt, 2, df = 2:11)))
```

`TukeyHSD` *Compute Tukey Honest Significant Differences*

Description

Create a set of confidence intervals on the differences between the means of the levels of a factor with the specified family-wise probability of coverage. The intervals are based on the Studentized range statistic, Tukey's 'Honest Significant Difference' method.

Usage

```
TukeyHSD(x, which, ordered = FALSE, conf.level = 0.95, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	A fitted model object, usually an `aov` fit.
`which`	A character vector listing terms in the fitted model for which the intervals should be calculated. Defaults to all the terms.
`ordered`	A logical value indicating if the levels of the factor should be ordered according to increasing average in the sample before taking differences. If `ordered` is true then the calculated differences in the means will all be positive. The significant differences will be those for which the `lwr` end point is positive.
`conf.level`	A numeric value between zero and one giving the family-wise confidence level to use.
`...`	Optional additional arguments. None are used at present.

Details

When comparing the means for the levels of a factor in an analysis of variance, a simple comparison using t-tests will inflate the probability of declaring a significant difference when it is not in fact present. This because the intervals are calculated with a given coverage probability for each interval but the interpretation of the coverage is usually with respect to the entire family of intervals.

John Tukey introduced intervals based on the range of the sample means rather than the individual differences. The intervals returned by this function are based on this Studentized range statistics.

The intervals constructed in this way would only apply exactly to balanced designs where there are the same number of observations made at each level of the factor. This function incorporates an adjustment for sample size that produces sensible intervals for mildly unbalanced designs.

If `which` specifies non-factor terms these will be dropped with a warning: if no terms are left this is a an error.

In 2.15.2 and earlier the results were `NA` for fits with `na.action` methods such as `na.exclude`.

Value

A list of class `c("multicomp", "TukeyHSD")`, with one component for each term requested in `which`. Each component is a matrix with columns `diff` giving the difference in the observed means, `lwr` giving the lower end point of the interval, `upr` giving the upper end point and `p adj` giving the p-value after adjustment for the multiple comparisons.

There are `print` and `plot` methods for class `"TukeyHSD"`. The `plot` method does not accept `xlab`, `ylab` or `main` arguments and creates its own values for each plot.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates

References

Miller, R. G. (1981) *Simultaneous Statistical Inference*. Springer.

Yandell, B. S. (1997) *Practical Data Analysis for Designed Experiments*. Chapman & Hall.

See Also

`aov`, `qtukey`, `model.tables`, `glht` in package **multcomp**.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

summary(fm1 <- aov(breaks ~ wool + tension, data = warpbreaks))
TukeyHSD(fm1, "tension", ordered = TRUE)
plot(TukeyHSD(fm1, "tension"))
```

`Uniform` *The Uniform Distribution*

Description

These functions provide information about the uniform distribution on the interval from `min` to `max`. `dunif` gives the density, `punif` gives the distribution function `qunif` gives the quantile function and `runif` generates random deviates.

Usage

```
dunif(x, min = 0, max = 1, log = FALSE)
punif(q, min = 0, max = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qunif(p, min = 0, max = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
runif(n, min = 0, max = 1)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`min, max`	lower and upper limits of the distribution. Must be finite.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

If `min` or `max` are not specified they assume the default values of `0` and `1` respectively.

The uniform distribution has density

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{max - min}$$

for $min \leq x \leq max$.

For the case of $u := min == max$, the limit case of $X \equiv u$ is assumed, although there is no density in that case and `dunif` will return `NaN` (the error condition).

`runif` will not generate either of the extreme values unless `max = min` or `max-min` is small compared to `min`, and in particular not for the default arguments.

Value

`dunif` gives the density, `punif` gives the distribution function, `qunif` gives the quantile function, and `runif` generates random deviates.

The length of the result is determined by `n` for `runif`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `n` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

The characteristics of output from pseudo-random number generators (such as precision and periodicity) vary widely. See .Random.seed for more information on 's random number generation algorithms.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

RNG about random number generation in .

Distributions for other standard distributions.

Examples

```
u <- runif(20)

## The following relations always hold :
punif(u) == u
dunif(u) == 1

var(runif(10000))  #- ~ = 1/12 = .08333
```

---

uniroot — *One Dimensional Root (Zero) Finding*

Description

The function uniroot searches the interval from lower to upper for a root (i.e., zero) of the function f with respect to its first argument.

Setting extendInt to a non-"no" string, means searching for the correct interval = c(lower,upper) if sign(f(x)) does not satisfy the requirements at the interval end points; see the 'Details' section.

Usage

```
uniroot(f, interval, ...,
        lower = min(interval), upper = max(interval),
        f.lower = f(lower, ...), f.upper = f(upper, ...),
        extendInt = c("no", "yes", "downX", "upX"), check.conv = FALSE,
        tol = .Machine$double.eps^0.25, maxiter = 1000, trace = 0)
```

Arguments

f	the function for which the root is sought.
interval	a vector containing the end-points of the interval to be searched for the root.
...	additional named or unnamed arguments to be passed to f
lower, upper	the lower and upper end points of the interval to be searched.

`f.lower, f.upper`
: the same as `f(upper)` and `f(lower)`, respectively. Passing these values from the caller where they are often known is more economical as soon as `f()` contains non-trivial computations.

`extendInt`
: character string specifying if the interval `c(lower,upper)` should be extended or directly produce an error when `f()` does not have differing signs at the endpoints. The default, `"no"`, keeps the search interval and hence produces an error.

`check.conv`
: logical indicating whether a convergence warning of the underlying `uniroot` should be caught as an error and if non-convergence in `maxiter` iterations should be an error instead of a warning.

`tol`
: the desired accuracy (convergence tolerance).

`maxiter`
: the maximum number of iterations.

`trace`
: integer number; if positive, tracing information is produced. Higher values giving more details.

Details

Note that arguments after `...` must be matched exactly.

Either `interval` or both `lower` and `upper` must be specified: the upper endpoint must be strictly larger than the lower endpoint. The function values at the endpoints must be of opposite signs (or zero), for `extendInt="no"`, the default. Otherwise, if `extendInt="yes"`, the interval is extended on both sides, in search of a sign change, i.e., until the search interval $[l, u]$ satisfies $f(l) \cdot f(u) \leq 0$.

If it is *known how* f changes sign at the root x_0, that is, if the function is increasing or decreasing there, `extendInt` can (and typically should) be specified as `"upX"` (for "upward crossing") or `"downX"`, respectively. Equivalently, define $S := \pm 1$, to require $S = \text{sign}(f(x_0 + \epsilon))$ at the solution. In that case, the search interval $[l, u]$ possibly is extended to be such that $S \cdot f(l) \leq 0$ and $S \cdot f(u) \geq 0$.

`uniroot()` uses Fortran subroutine '`"zeroin"`' (from Netlib) based on algorithms given in the reference below. They assume a continuous function (which then is known to have at least one root in the interval).

Convergence is declared either if `f(x) == 0` or the change in `x` for one step of the algorithm is less than `tol` (plus an allowance for representation error in `x`).

If the algorithm does not converge in `maxiter` steps, a warning is printed and the current approximation is returned.

`f` will be called as `f(x, ...)` for a numeric value of `x`.

The argument passed to `f` has special semantics and used to be shared between calls. The function should not copy it.

Value

A list with at least four components: `root` and `f.root` give the location of the root and the value of the function evaluated at that point. `iter` and `estim.prec` give the number of iterations used and an approximate estimated precision for `root`. (If the root occurs at one of the endpoints, the estimated precision is `NA`.)

Further components may be added in future: component `init.it` was added in 3.1.0.

Source

Based on '`zeroin.c`' in `http://www.netlib.org/c/brent.shar`.

References

Brent, R. (1973) *Algorithms for Minimization without Derivatives.* Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

See Also

`polyroot` for all complex roots of a polynomial; `optimize`, `nlm`.

Examples

```
require(utils) # for str

## some platforms hit zero exactly on the first step:
## if so the estimated precision is 2/3.
f <- function (x, a) x - a
str(xmin <- uniroot(f, c(0, 1), tol = 0.0001, a = 1/3))

## handheld calculator example: fixed point of cos(.):
uniroot(function(x) cos(x) - x, lower = -pi, upper = pi, tol = 1e-9)$root

str(uniroot(function(x) x*(x^2-1) + .5, lower = -2, upper = 2,
            tol = 0.0001))
str(uniroot(function(x) x*(x^2-1) + .5, lower = -2, upper = 2,
            tol = 1e-10))

## Find the smallest value x for which exp(x) > 0 (numerically):
r <- uniroot(function(x) 1e80*exp(x) - 1e-300, c(-1000, 0), tol = 1e-15)
str(r, digits.d = 15) # around -745, depending on the platform.

exp(r$root)     # = 0, but not for r$root * 0.999...
minexp <- r$root * (1 - 10*.Machine$double.eps)
exp(minexp)     # typically denormalized


##--- uniroot() with new interval extension + checking features: --------------

f1 <- function(x) (121 - x^2)/(x^2+1)
f2 <- function(x) exp(-x)*(x - 12)

try(uniroot(f1, c(0,10)))
try(uniroot(f2, c(0, 2)))
##--> error: f() .. end points not of opposite sign

## where as  extendInt="yes"  simply first enlarges the search interval:
u1 <- uniroot(f1, c(0,10),extendInt="yes", trace=1)
u2 <- uniroot(f2, c(0,2), extendInt="yes", trace=2)
stopifnot(all.equal(u1$root, 11, tolerance = 1e-5),
          all.equal(u2$root, 12, tolerance = 6e-6))

## The *danger* of interval extension:
## No way to find a zero of a positive function, but
## numerically, f(-|M|) becomes zero :
u3 <- uniroot(exp, c(0,2), extendInt="yes", trace=TRUE)

## Nonsense example (must give an error):
tools::assertCondition( uniroot(function(x) 1, 0:1, extendInt="yes"),
```

```
                        "error", verbose=TRUE)

## Convergence checking :
sinc <- function(x) ifelse(x == 0, 1, sin(x)/x)
curve(sinc, -6,18); abline(h=0,v=0, lty=3, col=adjustcolor("gray", 0.8))

uniroot(sinc, c(0,5), extendInt="yes", maxiter=4) #-> "just" a warning


## now with  check.conv=TRUE, must signal a convergence error :

uniroot(sinc, c(0,5), extendInt="yes", maxiter=4, check.conv=TRUE)


### Weibull cumulative hazard (example origin, Ravi Varadhan):
cumhaz <- function(t, a, b) b * (t/b)^a
froot <- function(x, u, a, b) cumhaz(x, a, b) - u

n <- 1000
u <- -log(runif(n))
a <- 1/2
b <- 1
## Find failure times
ru <- sapply(u, function(x)
   uniroot(froot, u=x, a=a, b=b, interval= c(1.e-14, 1e04),
           extendInt="yes")$root)
ru2 <- sapply(u, function(x)
   uniroot(froot, u=x, a=a, b=b, interval= c(0.01,  10),
           extendInt="yes")$root)
stopifnot(all.equal(ru, ru2, tolerance = 6e-6))

r1 <- uniroot(froot, u= 0.99, a=a, b=b, interval= c(0.01, 10),
              extendInt="up")
stopifnot(all.equal(0.99, cumhaz(r1$root, a=a, b=b)))

## An error if extendInt assumes "wrong zero-crossing direction":

uniroot(froot, u= 0.99, a=a, b=b, interval= c(0.1, 10), extendInt="down")
```

---

update *Update and Re-fit a Model Call*

Description

update will update and (by default) re-fit a model. It does this by extracting the call stored in the object, updating the call and (by default) evaluating that call. Sometimes it is useful to call update with only one argument, for example if the data frame has been corrected.

"Extracting the call" in update() and similar functions uses getCall() which itself is a (S3) generic function with a default method that simply gets x$call.

Because of this, update() will often work (via its default method) on new model classes, either automatically, or by providing a simple getCall() method for that class.

Usage

```
update(object, ...)
## Default S3 method:
update(object, formula., ..., evaluate = TRUE)

getCall(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`object, x`	An existing fit from a model function such as `lm`, `glm` and many others.
`formula.`	Changes to the formula – see `update.formula` for details.
`...`	Additional arguments to the call, or arguments with changed values. Use `name = NULL` to remove the argument `name`.
`evaluate`	If true evaluate the new call else return the call.

Value

If `evaluate = TRUE` the fitted object, otherwise the updated call.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Linear models.* Chapter 4 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`update.formula`

Examples

```
oldcon <- options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
## Annette Dobson (1990) "An Introduction to Generalized Linear Models".
## Page 9: Plant Weight Data.
ctl <- c(4.17,5.58,5.18,6.11,4.50,4.61,5.17,4.53,5.33,5.14)
trt <- c(4.81,4.17,4.41,3.59,5.87,3.83,6.03,4.89,4.32,4.69)
group <- gl(2, 10, 20, labels = c("Ctl", "Trt"))
weight <- c(ctl, trt)
lm.D9 <- lm(weight ~ group)
lm.D9
summary(lm.D90 <- update(lm.D9, . ~ . - 1))
options(contrasts = c("contr.helmert", "contr.poly"))
update(lm.D9)
getCall(lm.D90)  # "through the origin"

options(oldcon)
```

`update.formula` *Model Updating*

Description

`update.formula` is used to update model formulae. This typically involves adding or dropping terms, but updates can be more general.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class formula
update(old, new, ...)
```

Arguments

`old`	a model formula to be updated.
`new`	a formula giving a template which specifies how to update.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Either or both of `old` and `new` can be objects such as length-one character vectors which can be coerced to a formula via `as.formula`.

The function works by first identifying the *left-hand side* and *right-hand side* of the `old` formula. It then examines the `new` formula and substitutes the *lhs* of the `old` formula for any occurrence of '.' on the left of `new`, and substitutes the *rhs* of the `old` formula for any occurrence of '.' on the right of `new`. The result is then simplified *via* `terms.formula(simplify = TRUE)`.

Value

The updated formula is returned. The environment of the result is that of `old`.

See Also

`terms`, `model.matrix`.

Examples

```
update(y ~ x,    ~ . + x2) #> y ~ x + x2
update(y ~ x, log(.) ~ . ) #> log(y) ~ x
```

var.test *F Test to Compare Two Variances*

Description

Performs an F test to compare the variances of two samples from normal populations.

Usage

```
var.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
var.test(x, y, ratio = 1,
         alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
         conf.level = 0.95, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
var.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric vectors of data values, or fitted linear model objects (inheriting from class "lm").
ratio	the hypothesized ratio of the population variances of x and y.
alternative	a character string specifying the alternative hypothesis, must be one of "two.sided" (default), "greater" or "less". You can specify just the initial letter.
conf.level	confidence level for the returned confidence interval.
formula	a formula of the form lhs ~ rhs where lhs is a numeric variable giving the data values and rhs a factor with two levels giving the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

The null hypothesis is that the ratio of the variances of the populations from which x and y were drawn, or in the data to which the linear models x and y were fitted, is equal to ratio.

Value

A list with class "htest" containing the following components:

statistic	the value of the F test statistic.
parameter	the degrees of the freedom of the F distribution of the test statistic.

p.value	the p-value of the test.
conf.int	a confidence interval for the ratio of the population variances.
estimate	the ratio of the sample variances of x and y.
null.value	the ratio of population variances under the null.
alternative	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
method	the character string "F test to compare two variances".
data.name	a character string giving the names of the data.

See Also

bartlett.test for testing homogeneity of variances in more than two samples from normal distributions; ansari.test and mood.test for two rank based (nonparametric) two-sample tests for difference in scale.

Examples

```
x <- rnorm(50, mean = 0, sd = 2)
y <- rnorm(30, mean = 1, sd = 1)
var.test(x, y)                  # Do x and y have the same variance?
var.test(lm(x ~ 1), lm(y ~ 1))  # The same.
```

---

varimax *Rotation Methods for Factor Analysis*

Description

These functions 'rotate' loading matrices in factor analysis.

Usage

```
varimax(x, normalize = TRUE, eps = 1e-5)
promax(x, m = 4)
```

Arguments

x	A loadings matrix, with p rows and $k < p$ columns
m	The power used the target for promax. Values of 2 to 4 are recommended.
normalize	logical. Should Kaiser normalization be performed? If so the rows of x are re-scaled to unit length before rotation, and scaled back afterwards.
eps	The tolerance for stopping: the relative change in the sum of singular values.

Details

These seek a 'rotation' of the factors x %*% T that aims to clarify the structure of the loadings matrix. The matrix T is a rotation (possibly with reflection) for varimax, but a general linear transformation for promax, with the variance of the factors being preserved.

Value

A list with components

`loadings`	The 'rotated' loadings matrix, `x %*% rotmat`, of class `"loadings"`.
`rotmat`	The 'rotation' matrix.

References

Hendrickson, A. E. and White, P. O. (1964) Promax: a quick method for rotation to orthogonal oblique structure. *British Journal of Statistical Psychology*, **17**, 65–70.

Horst, P. (1965) *Factor Analysis of Data Matrices.* Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Chapter 10.

Kaiser, H. F. (1958) The varimax criterion for analytic rotation in factor analysis. *Psychometrika* **23**, 187–200.

Lawley, D. N. and Maxwell, A. E. (1971) *Factor Analysis as a Statistical Method*. Second edition. Butterworths.

See Also

`factanal`, `Harman74.cor`.

Examples

```
## varimax with normalize = TRUE is the default
fa <- factanal( ~., 2, data = swiss)
varimax(loadings(fa), normalize = FALSE)
promax(loadings(fa))
```

---

vcov *Calculate Variance-Covariance Matrix for a Fitted Model Object*

Description

Returns the variance-covariance matrix of the main parameters of a fitted model object.

Usage

```
vcov(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a fitted model object, typically. Sometimes also a `summary()` object of such a fitted model.
`...`	additional arguments for method functions. For the `glm` method this can be used to pass a `dispersion` parameter.

Details

This is a generic function. Functions with names beginning in `vcov.` will be methods for this function. Classes with methods for this function include: `lm`, `mlm`, `glm`, `nls`, `summary.lm`, `summary.glm`, `negbin`, `polr`, `rlm` (in package **MASS**), `multinom` (in package **nnet**) `gls`, `lme` (in package **nlme**), `coxph` and `survreg` (in package **survival**).

(`vcov()` methods for summary objects allow more efficient and still encapsulated access when both `summary(mod)` and `vcov(mod)` are needed.)

Value

A matrix of the estimated covariances between the parameter estimates in the linear or non-linear predictor of the model. This should have row and column names corresponding to the parameter names given by the `coef` method.

`Weibull` *The Weibull Distribution*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the Weibull distribution with parameters `shape` and `scale`.

Usage

```
dweibull(x, shape, scale = 1, log = FALSE)
pweibull(q, shape, scale = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qweibull(p, shape, scale = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rweibull(n, shape, scale = 1)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`n`	number of observations. If `length(n) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`shape, scale`	shape and scale parameters, the latter defaulting to 1.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

The Weibull distribution with `shape` parameter a and `scale` parameter σ has density given by

$$f(x) = (a/\sigma)(x/\sigma)^{a-1} \exp(-(x/\sigma)^a)$$

for $x > 0$. The cumulative distribution function is $F(x) = 1 - \exp(-(x/\sigma)^a)$ on $x > 0$, the mean is $E(X) = \sigma\Gamma(1 + 1/a)$, and the $Var(X) = \sigma^2(\Gamma(1 + 2/a) - (\Gamma(1 + 1/a))^2)$.

Value

dweibull gives the density, pweibull gives the distribution function, qweibull gives the quantile function, and rweibull generates random deviates.

Invalid arguments will result in return value NaN, with a warning.

The length of the result is determined by n for rweibull, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than n are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Note

The cumulative hazard $H(t) = -\log(1 - F(t))$ is

```
-pweibull(t, a, b, lower = FALSE, log = TRUE)
```

which is just $H(t) = (t/b)^a$.

Source

[dpq]weibull are calculated directly from the definitions. rweibull uses inversion.

References

Johnson, N. L., Kotz, S. and Balakrishnan, N. (1995) *Continuous Univariate Distributions*, volume 1, chapter 21. Wiley, New York.

See Also

Distributions for other standard distributions, including the Exponential which is a special case of the Weibull distribution.

Examples

```
x <- c(0, rlnorm(50))
all.equal(dweibull(x, shape = 1), dexp(x))
all.equal(pweibull(x, shape = 1, scale = pi), pexp(x, rate = 1/pi))
## Cumulative hazard H():
all.equal(pweibull(x, 2.5, pi, lower.tail = FALSE, log.p = TRUE),
          -(x/pi)^2.5, tolerance = 1e-15)
all.equal(qweibull(x/11, shape = 1, scale = pi), qexp(x/11, rate = 1/pi))
```

---

weighted.mean *Weighted Arithmetic Mean*

Description

Compute a weighted mean.

Usage

```
weighted.mean(x, w, ...)

## Default S3 method:
weighted.mean(x, w, ..., na.rm = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	an object containing the values whose weighted mean is to be computed.
w	a numerical vector of weights the same length as x giving the weights to use for elements of x.
...	arguments to be passed to or from methods.
na.rm	a logical value indicating whether NA values in x should be stripped before the computation proceeds.

Details

This is a generic function and methods can be defined for the first argument x: apart from the default methods there are methods for the date-time classes "POSIXct", "POSIXlt", "difftime" and "Date". The default method will work for any numeric-like object for which [, multiplication, division and sum have suitable methods, including complex vectors.

If w is missing then all elements of x are given the same weight, otherwise the weights coerced to numeric by as.numeric and normalized to sum to one (if possible: if their sum is zero or infinite the value is likely to be NaN).

Missing values in w are not handled specially and so give a missing value as the result. However, zero weights *are* handled specially and the corresponding x values are omitted from the sum.

Value

For the default method, a length-one numeric vector.

See Also

mean

Examples

```
## GPA from Siegel 1994
wt <- c(5,  5,  4,  1)/15
x <- c(3.7,3.3,3.5,2.8)
xm <- weighted.mean(x, wt)
```

`weighted.residuals` *Compute Weighted Residuals*

Description

Computed weighted residuals from a linear model fit.

Usage

```
weighted.residuals(obj, drop0 = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`obj`	object, typically of class `lm` or `glm`.
`drop0`	logical. If `TRUE`, drop all cases with `weights == 0`.

Details

Weighted residuals are based on the deviance residuals, which for a `lm` fit are the raw residuals R_i multiplied by $\sqrt{w_i}$, where w_i are the `weights` as specified in `lm`'s call.

Dropping cases with weights zero is compatible with `influence` and related functions.

Value

Numeric vector of length n', where n' is the number of of non-0 weights (`drop0 = TRUE`) or the number of observations, otherwise.

See Also

`residuals`, `lm.influence`, etc.

Examples

```
## following on from example(lm)

all.equal(weighted.residuals(lm.D9),
          residuals(lm.D9))
x <- 1:10
w <- 0:9
y <- rnorm(x)
weighted.residuals(lmxy <- lm(y ~ x, weights = w))
weighted.residuals(lmxy, drop0 = FALSE)
```

weights *Extract Model Weights*

Description

`weights` is a generic function which extracts fitting weights from objects returned by modeling functions.

Methods can make use of `napredict` methods to compensate for the omission of missing values. The default methods does so.

Usage

```
weights(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object for which the extraction of model weights is meaningful.
`...`	other arguments passed to methods.

Value

Weights extracted from the object `object`: the default method looks for component `"weights"` and if not `NULL` calls `napredict` on it.

References

Chambers, J. M. and Hastie, T. J. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`weights.glm`

wilcox.test *Wilcoxon Rank Sum and Signed Rank Tests*

Description

Performs one- and two-sample Wilcoxon tests on vectors of data; the latter is also known as 'Mann-Whitney' test.

Usage

```
wilcox.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
wilcox.test(x, y = NULL,
            alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
            mu = 0, paired = FALSE, exact = NULL, correct = TRUE,
            conf.int = FALSE, conf.level = 0.95, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
wilcox.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector of data values. Non-finite (e.g., infinite or missing) values will be omitted.
y	an optional numeric vector of data values: as with x non-finite values will be omitted.
alternative	a character string specifying the alternative hypothesis, must be one of "two.sided" (default), "greater" or "less". You can specify just the initial letter.
mu	a number specifying an optional parameter used to form the null hypothesis. See 'Details'.
paired	a logical indicating whether you want a paired test.
exact	a logical indicating whether an exact p-value should be computed.
correct	a logical indicating whether to apply continuity correction in the normal approximation for the p-value.
conf.int	a logical indicating whether a confidence interval should be computed.
conf.level	confidence level of the interval.
formula	a formula of the form lhs ~ rhs where lhs is a numeric variable giving the data values and rhs a factor with two levels giving the corresponding groups.
data	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see model.frame) containing the variables in the formula formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. Defaults to getOption("na.action").
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

The formula interface is only applicable for the 2-sample tests.

If only x is given, or if both x and y are given and paired is TRUE, a Wilcoxon signed rank test of the null that the distribution of x (in the one sample case) or of x - y (in the paired two sample case) is symmetric about mu is performed.

Otherwise, if both x and y are given and paired is FALSE, a Wilcoxon rank sum test (equivalent to the Mann-Whitney test: see the Note) is carried out. In this case, the null hypothesis is that the distributions of x and y differ by a location shift of mu and the alternative is that they differ by some other location shift (and the one-sided alternative "greater" is that x is shifted to the right of y).

By default (if exact is not specified), an exact p-value is computed if the samples contain less than 50 finite values and there are no ties. Otherwise, a normal approximation is used.

Optionally (if argument conf.int is true), a nonparametric confidence interval and an estimator for the pseudomedian (one-sample case) or for the difference of the location parameters x-y is computed. (The pseudomedian of a distribution F is the median of the distribution of $(u + v)/2$, where u and v are independent, each with distribution F. If F is symmetric, then the pseudomedian and median coincide. See Hollander & Wolfe (1973), page 34.) Note that in the two-sample case the estimator for the difference in location parameters does **not** estimate the difference in medians (a common misconception) but rather the median of the difference between a sample from x and a sample from y.

If exact p-values are available, an exact confidence interval is obtained by the algorithm described in Bauer (1972), and the Hodges-Lehmann estimator is employed. Otherwise, the returned confidence interval and point estimate are based on normal approximations. These are continuity-corrected for the interval but *not* the estimate (as the correction depends on the `alternative`).

With small samples it may not be possible to achieve very high confidence interval coverages. If this happens a warning will be given and an interval with lower coverage will be substituted.

Value

A list with class `"htest"` containing the following components:

`statistic`	the value of the test statistic with a name describing it.
`parameter`	the parameter(s) for the exact distribution of the test statistic.
`p.value`	the p-value for the test.
`null.value`	the location parameter `mu`.
`alternative`	a character string describing the alternative hypothesis.
`method`	the type of test applied.
`data.name`	a character string giving the names of the data.
`conf.int`	a confidence interval for the location parameter. (Only present if argument `conf.int = TRUE`.)
`estimate`	an estimate of the location parameter. (Only present if argument `conf.int = TRUE`.)

Warning

This function can use large amounts of memory and stack (and even crash if the stack limit is exceeded) if `exact = TRUE` and one sample is large (several thousands or more).

Note

The literature is not unanimous about the definitions of the Wilcoxon rank sum and Mann-Whitney tests. The two most common definitions correspond to the sum of the ranks of the first sample with the minimum value subtracted or not: subtracts and S-PLUS does not, giving a value which is larger by $m(m+1)/2$ for a first sample of size m. (It seems Wilcoxon's original paper used the unadjusted sum of the ranks but subsequent tables subtracted the minimum.)

's value can also be computed as the number of all pairs `(x[i], y[j])` for which `y[j]` is not greater than `x[i]`, the most common definition of the Mann-Whitney test.

References

David F. Bauer (1972), Constructing confidence sets using rank statistics. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **67**, 687–690.

Myles Hollander and Douglas A. Wolfe (1973), *Nonparametric Statistical Methods.* New York: John Wiley & Sons. Pages 27–33 (one-sample), 68–75 (two-sample).
Or second edition (1999).

See Also

psignrank, pwilcox.

wilcox_test in package **coin** for exact, asymptotic and Monte Carlo *conditional* p-values, including in the presence of ties.

kruskal.test for testing homogeneity in location parameters in the case of two or more samples; t.test for an alternative under normality assumptions [or large samples]

Examples

```
require(graphics)
## One-sample test.
## Hollander & Wolfe (1973), 29f.
## Hamilton depression scale factor measurements in 9 patients with
##  mixed anxiety and depression, taken at the first (x) and second
##  (y) visit after initiation of a therapy (administration of a
##  tranquilizer).
x <- c(1.83,  0.50,  1.62,  2.48, 1.68, 1.88, 1.55, 3.06, 1.30)
y <- c(0.878, 0.647, 0.598, 2.05, 1.06, 1.29, 1.06, 3.14, 1.29)
wilcox.test(x, y, paired = TRUE, alternative = "greater")
wilcox.test(y - x, alternative = "less")    # The same.
wilcox.test(y - x, alternative = "less",
            exact = FALSE, correct = FALSE) # H&W large sample
                                            # approximation

## Two-sample test.
## Hollander & Wolfe (1973), 69f.
## Permeability constants of the human chorioamnion (a placental
##  membrane) at term (x) and between 12 to 26 weeks gestational
##  age (y).  The alternative of interest is greater permeability
##  of the human chorioamnion for the term pregnancy.
x <- c(0.80, 0.83, 1.89, 1.04, 1.45, 1.38, 1.91, 1.64, 0.73, 1.46)
y <- c(1.15, 0.88, 0.90, 0.74, 1.21)
wilcox.test(x, y, alternative = "g")        # greater
wilcox.test(x, y, alternative = "greater",
            exact = FALSE, correct = FALSE) # H&W large sample
                                            # approximation

wilcox.test(rnorm(10), rnorm(10, 2), conf.int = TRUE)

## Formula interface.
boxplot(Ozone ~ Month, data = airquality)
wilcox.test(Ozone ~ Month, data = airquality,
            subset = Month %in% c(5, 8))
```

Wilcoxon *Distribution of the Wilcoxon Rank Sum Statistic*

Description

Density, distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the distribution of the Wilcoxon rank sum statistic obtained from samples with size m and n, respectively.

Usage

```
dwilcox(x, m, n, log = FALSE)
pwilcox(q, m, n, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
qwilcox(p, m, n, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
rwilcox(nn, m, n)
```

Arguments

`x, q`	vector of quantiles.
`p`	vector of probabilities.
`nn`	number of observations. If `length(nn) > 1`, the length is taken to be the number required.
`m, n`	numbers of observations in the first and second sample, respectively. Can be vectors of positive integers.
`log, log.p`	logical; if TRUE, probabilities p are given as log(p).
`lower.tail`	logical; if TRUE (default), probabilities are $P[X \leq x]$, otherwise, $P[X > x]$.

Details

This distribution is obtained as follows. Let `x` and `y` be two random, independent samples of size `m` and `n`. Then the Wilcoxon rank sum statistic is the number of all pairs `(x[i], y[j])` for which `y[j]` is not greater than `x[i]`. This statistic takes values between `0` and `m * n`, and its mean and variance are `m * n / 2` and `m * n * (m + n + 1) / 12`, respectively.

If any of the first three arguments are vectors, the recycling rule is used to do the calculations for all combinations of the three up to the length of the longest vector.

Value

`dwilcox` gives the density, `pwilcox` gives the distribution function, `qwilcox` gives the quantile function, and `rwilcox` generates random deviates.

The length of the result is determined by `nn` for `rwilcox`, and is the maximum of the lengths of the numerical arguments for the other functions.

The numerical arguments other than `nn` are recycled to the length of the result. Only the first elements of the logical arguments are used.

Warning

These functions can use large amounts of memory and stack (and even crash if the stack limit is exceeded and stack-checking is not in place) if one sample is large (several thousands or more).

Note

S-PLUS uses a different (but equivalent) definition of the Wilcoxon statistic: see `wilcox.test` for details.

Author(s)

Kurt Hornik

Source

These are calculated via recursion, based on `cwilcox(k, m, n)`, the number of choices with statistic `k` from samples of size `m` and `n`, which is itself calculated recursively and the results cached. Then `dwilcox` and `pwilcox` sum appropriate values of `cwilcox`, and `qwilcox` is based on inversion.

`rwilcox` generates a random permutation of ranks and evaluates the statistic.

See Also

`wilcox.test` to calculate the statistic from data, find p values and so on.

Distributions for standard distributions, including `dsignrank` for the distribution of the *one-sample* Wilcoxon signed rank statistic.

Examples

```
require(graphics)

x <- -1:(4*6 + 1)
fx <- dwilcox(x, 4, 6)
Fx <- pwilcox(x, 4, 6)

layout(rbind(1,2), widths = 1, heights = c(3,2))
plot(x, fx, type = "h", col = "violet",
     main =  "Probabilities (density) of Wilcoxon-Statist.(n=6, m=4)")
plot(x, Fx, type = "s", col = "blue",
     main =  "Distribution of Wilcoxon-Statist.(n=6, m=4)")
abline(h = 0:1, col = "gray20", lty = 2)
layout(1) # set back

N <- 200
hist(U <- rwilcox(N, m = 4,n = 6), breaks = 0:25 - 1/2,
     border = "red", col = "pink", sub = paste("N =",N))
mtext("N * f(x),  f() = true \"density\"", side = 3, col = "blue")
 lines(x, N*fx, type = "h", col = "blue", lwd = 2)
points(x, N*fx, cex = 2)

## Better is a Quantile-Quantile Plot
qqplot(U, qw <- qwilcox((1:N - 1/2)/N, m = 4, n = 6),
       main = paste("Q-Q-Plot of empirical and theoretical quantiles",
                    "Wilcoxon Statistic,  (m=4, n=6)", sep = "\n"))
n <- as.numeric(names(print(tU <- table(U))))
text(n+.2, n+.5, labels = tU, col = "red")
```

`window` *Time Windows*

Description

`window` is a generic function which extracts the subset of the object `x` observed between the times `start` and `end`. If a frequency is specified, the series is then re-sampled at the new frequency.

Usage

```
window(x, ...)
## S3 method for class ts
window(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
window(x, start = NULL, end = NULL,
       frequency = NULL, deltat = NULL, extend = FALSE, ...)

window(x, ...) <- value
## S3 replacement method for class ts
window(x, start, end, frequency, deltat, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

x	a time-series (or other object if not replacing values).
start	the start time of the period of interest.
end	the end time of the period of interest.
frequency, deltat	the new frequency can be specified by either (or both if they are consistent).
extend	logical. If true, the start and end values are allowed to extend the series. If false, attempts to extend the series give a warning and are ignored.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
value	replacement values.

Details

The start and end times can be specified as for ts. If there is no observation at the new start or end, the immediately following (start) or preceding (end) observation time is used.

The replacement function has a method for ts objects, and is allowed to extend the series (with a warning). There is no default method.

Value

The value depends on the method. window.default will return a vector or matrix with an appropriate tsp attribute.

window.ts differs from window.default only in ensuring the result is a ts object.

If extend = TRUE the series will be padded with NAs if needed.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

time, ts.

Examples

```
window(presidents, 1960, c(1969,4)) # values in the 1960s
window(presidents, deltat = 1)  # All Qtr1s
window(presidents, start = c(1945,3), deltat = 1)  # All Qtr3s
window(presidents, 1944, c(1979,2), extend = TRUE)

pres <- window(presidents, 1945, c(1949,4)) # values in the 1940s
window(pres, 1945.25, 1945.50) <- c(60, 70)
window(pres, 1944, 1944.75) <- 0 # will generate a warning
window(pres, c(1945,4), c(1949,4), frequency = 1) <- 85:89
pres
```

---

xtabs *Cross Tabulation*

Description

Create a contingency table (optionally a sparse matrix) from cross-classifying factors, usually contained in a data frame, using a formula interface.

Usage

```
xtabs(formula = ~., data = parent.frame(), subset, sparse = FALSE,
      na.action, exclude = c(NA, NaN), drop.unused.levels = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`formula`	a formula object with the cross-classifying variables (separated by +) on the right hand side (or an object which can be coerced to a formula). Interactions are not allowed. On the left hand side, one may optionally give a vector or a matrix of counts; in the latter case, the columns are interpreted as corresponding to the levels of a variable. This is useful if the data have already been tabulated, see the examples below.
`data`	an optional matrix or data frame (or similar: see `model.frame`) containing the variables in the formula `formula`. By default the variables are taken from `environment(formula)`.
`subset`	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used.
`sparse`	logical specifying if the result should be a *sparse* matrix, i.e., inheriting from `sparseMatrix` Only works for two factors (since there are no higher-order sparse array classes yet).
`na.action`	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain `NA`s.
`exclude`	a vector of values to be excluded when forming the set of levels of the classifying factors.
`drop.unused.levels`	a logical indicating whether to drop unused levels in the classifying factors. If this is `FALSE` and there are unused levels, the table will contain zero marginals, and a subsequent chi-squared test for independence of the factors will not work.

Details

There is a summary method for contingency table objects created by table or xtabs(*, sparse = FALSE), which gives basic information and performs a chi-squared test for independence of factors (note that the function chisq.test currently only handles 2-d tables).

If a left hand side is given in formula, its entries are simply summed over the cells corresponding to the right hand side; this also works if the lhs does not give counts.

For variables in formula which are factors, exclude must be specified explicitly; the default exclusions will not be used.

Value

By default, when sparse = FALSE, a contingency table in array representation of S3 class c("xtabs", "table"), with a "call" attribute storing the matched call.

When sparse = TRUE, a sparse numeric matrix, specifically an object of S4 class dgTMatrix from package **Matrix**.

See Also

table for traditional cross-tabulation, and as.data.frame.table which is the inverse operation of xtabs (see the DF example below).

sparseMatrix on sparse matrices in package **Matrix**.

Examples

```
## esoph has the frequencies of cases and controls for all levels of
## the variables agegp, alcgp, and tobgp.
xtabs(cbind(ncases, ncontrols) ~ ., data = esoph)
## Output is not really helpful ... flat tables are better:
ftable(xtabs(cbind(ncases, ncontrols) ~ ., data = esoph))
## In particular if we have fewer factors ...
ftable(xtabs(cbind(ncases, ncontrols) ~ agegp, data = esoph))

## This is already a contingency table in array form.
DF <- as.data.frame(UCBAdmissions)
## Now DF is a data frame with a grid of the factors and the counts
## in variable Freq.
DF
## Nice for taking margins ...
xtabs(Freq ~ Gender + Admit, DF)
## And for testing independence ...
summary(xtabs(Freq ~ ., DF))

## Create a nice display for the warp break data.
warpbreaks$replicate <- rep(1:9, len = 54)
ftable(xtabs(breaks ~ wool + tension + replicate, data = warpbreaks))

### ---- Sparse Examples ----

if(require("Matrix")) {
 ## similar to "nlme"s  ergoStool :
 d.ergo <- data.frame(Type = paste0("T", rep(1:4, 9*4)),
                      Subj = gl(9, 4, 36*4))
 print(xtabs(~ Type + Subj, data = d.ergo)) # 4 replicates each
```

```
 set.seed(15) # a subset of cases:
 print(xtabs(~ Type + Subj, data = d.ergo[sample(36, 10), ], sparse = TRUE))

 ## Hypothetical two level setup:
 inner <- factor(sample(letters[1:25], 100, replace = TRUE))
 inout <- factor(sample(LETTERS[1:5], 25, replace = TRUE))
 fr <- data.frame(inner = inner, outer = inout[as.integer(inner)])
 print(xtabs(~ inner + outer, fr, sparse = TRUE))
}
```

Chapter 11

The stats4 package

---

stats4-package *Statistical Functions using S4 Classes*

Description

Statistical Functions using S4 classes.

Details

This package contains functions and classes for statistics using the S version 4 class system.

The methods currently support maximum likelihood (function mle() returning class "mle"), including methods for logLik for use with AIC.

Author(s)

R Core Team and contributors worldwide

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

---

coef-methods *Methods for Function* coef *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Extract the coefficient vector from "mle" objects.

Methods

signature(object = "ANY") Generic function: see coef.

signature(object = "mle") Extract the full coefficient vector (including any fixed coefficients) from the fit.

signature(object = "summary.mle") Extract the coefficient vector and standard errors from the summary of the fit.

confint-methods *Methods for Function* confint *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Generate confidence intervals

Methods

`signature(object = "ANY")` Generic function: see confint.

`signature(object = "mle")` First generate profile and then confidence intervals from the profile.

`signature(object = "profile.mle")` Generate confidence intervals based on likelihood profile.

logLik-methods *Methods for Function* logLik *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Extract the maximized log-likelihood from "mle" objects.

Methods

`signature(object = "ANY")` Generic function: see logLik.

`signature(object = "mle")` Extract log-likelihood from the fit.

Note

The mle method does not know about the number of observations unless nobs was specified on the call and so may not be suitable for use with BIC.

mle *Maximum Likelihood Estimation*

Description

Estimate parameters by the method of maximum likelihood.

Usage

```
mle(minuslogl, start = formals(minuslogl), method = "BFGS",
    fixed = list(), nobs, ...)
```

Arguments

minuslogl	Function to calculate negative log-likelihood.
start	Named list. Initial values for optimizer.
method	Optimization method to use. See optim.
fixed	Named list. Parameter values to keep fixed during optimization.
nobs	optional integer: the number of observations, to be used for e.g. computing BIC.
...	Further arguments to pass to optim.

Details

The optim optimizer is used to find the minimum of the negative log-likelihood. An approximate covariance matrix for the parameters is obtained by inverting the Hessian matrix at the optimum.

Value

An object of class mle-class.

Note

Be careful to note that the argument is -log L (not -2 log L). It is for the user to ensure that the likelihood is correct, and that asymptotic likelihood inference is valid.

See Also

mle-class

Examples

```
## Avoid printing to unwarranted accuracy
od <- options(digits = 5)
x <- 0:10
y <- c(26, 17, 13, 12, 20, 5, 9, 8, 5, 4, 8)

## Easy one-dimensional MLE:
nLL <- function(lambda) -sum(stats::dpois(y, lambda, log = TRUE))
fit0 <- mle(nLL, start = list(lambda = 5), nobs = NROW(y))
# For 1D, this is preferable:
fit1 <- mle(nLL, start = list(lambda = 5), nobs = NROW(y),
            method = "Brent", lower = 1, upper = 20)
stopifnot(nobs(fit0) == length(y))

## This needs a constrained parameter space: most methods will accept NA
ll <- function(ymax = 15, xhalf = 6) {
    if(ymax > 0 && xhalf > 0)
      -sum(stats::dpois(y, lambda = ymax/(1+x/xhalf), log = TRUE))
    else NA
}
(fit <- mle(ll, nobs = length(y)))
mle(ll, fixed = list(xhalf = 6))
## alternative using bounds on optimization
ll2 <- function(ymax = 15, xhalf = 6)
    -sum(stats::dpois(y, lambda = ymax/(1+x/xhalf), log = TRUE))
mle(ll2, method = "L-BFGS-B", lower = rep(0, 2))
```

```
AIC(fit)
BIC(fit)

summary(fit)
logLik(fit)
vcov(fit)
plot(profile(fit), absVal = FALSE)
confint(fit)

## Use bounded optimization
## The lower bounds are really > 0,
## but we use >=0 to stress-test profiling
(fit2 <- mle(ll, method = "L-BFGS-B", lower = c(0, 0)))
plot(profile(fit2), absVal = FALSE)

## a better parametrization:
ll3 <- function(lymax = log(15), lxhalf = log(6))
    -sum(stats::dpois(y, lambda = exp(lymax)/(1+x/exp(lxhalf)), log = TRUE))
(fit3 <- mle(ll3))
plot(profile(fit3), absVal = FALSE)
exp(confint(fit3))

options(od)
```

`mle-class` *Class* "mle" *for Results of Maximum Likelihood Estimation*

Description

This class encapsulates results of a generic maximum likelihood procedure.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("mle", ...)`, but most often as the result of a call to `mle`.

Slots

`call`: Object of class "language". The call to `mle`.

`coef`: Object of class "numeric". Estimated parameters.

`fullcoef`: Object of class "numeric". Fixed and estimated parameters.

`vcov`: Object of class "matrix". Approximate variance-covariance matrix.

`min`: Object of class "numeric". Minimum value of objective function.

`details`: a "list", as returned from `optim`.

`minuslogl`: Object of class "function". The negative loglikelihood function.

`nobs`: "integer" of length one. The number of observations (often NA, when not set in call explicitly).

`method`: Object of class "character". The optimization method used.

Methods

confint `signature(object = "mle")`: Confidence intervals from likelihood profiles.

logLik `signature(object = "mle")`: Extract maximized log-likelihood.

profile `signature(fitted = "mle")`: Likelihood profile generation.

nobs `signature(object = "mle")`: Number of observations, here simply accessing the `nobs` slot mentioned above.

show `signature(object = "mle")`: Display object briefly.

summary `signature(object = "mle")`: Generate object summary.

update `signature(object = "mle")`: Update fit.

vcov `signature(object = "mle")`: Extract variance-covariance matrix.

`plot-methods` *Methods for Function* `plot` *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Plot profile likelihoods for `"mle"` objects.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature profile.mle,missing
plot(x, levels, conf = c(99, 95, 90, 80, 50)/100, nseg = 50,
     absVal = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `"profile.mle"`
`levels`	levels, on the scale of the absolute value of a t statistic, at which to interpolate intervals. Usually `conf` is used instead of giving `levels` explicitly.
`conf`	a numeric vector of confidence levels for profile-based confidence intervals on the parameters.
`nseg`	an integer value giving the number of segments to use in the spline interpolation of the profile t curves.
`absVal`	a logical value indicating whether or not the plots should be on the scale of the absolute value of the profile t. Defaults to `TRUE`.
`...`	other arguments to the `plot` function can be passed here.

Methods

`signature(x = "ANY", y = "ANY")` Generic function: see `plot`.

`signature(x = "profile.mle", y = "missing")` Plot likelihood profiles for `x`.

profile-methods *Methods for Function* profile *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Profile likelihood for "mle" objects.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature mle
profile(fitted, which = 1:p, maxsteps = 100, alpha = 0.01,
        zmax = sqrt(qchisq(1 - alpha, 1L)), del = zmax/5,
        trace = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

fitted	Object to be profiled
which	Optionally select subset of parameters to profile.
maxsteps	Maximum number of steps to bracket zmax.
alpha	Significance level corresponding to zmax, based on a Scheffe-style multiple testing interval. Ignored if zmax is specified.
zmax	Cutoff for the profiled value of the signed root-likelihood.
del	Initial stepsize on root-likelihood scale.
trace	Logical. Print intermediate results.
...	Currently unused.

Details

The profiling algorithm tries to find an approximately evenly spaced set of at least five parameter values (in each direction from the optimum) to cover the root-likelihood function. Some care is taken to try and get sensible results in cases of high parameter curvature. Notice that it may not always be possible to obtain the cutoff value, since the likelihood might level off.

Value

An object of class "profile.mle", see "profile.mle-class".

Methods

signature(fitted = "ANY") Generic function: see profile.

signature(fitted = "mle") Profile the likelihood in the vicinity of the optimum of an "mle" object.

profile.mle-class *Class "profile.mle"; Profiling information for "mle" object*

Description

Likelihood profiles along each parameter of likelihood function

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("profile.mle", ...)`, but most often by invoking `profile` on an "mle" object.

Slots

`profile`**:** Object of class `"list"`. List of profiles, one for each requested parameter. Each profile is a data frame with the first column called `z` being the signed square root of the -2 log likelihood ratio, and the others being the parameters with names prefixed by `par.vals`.

`summary`**:** Object of class `"summary.mle"`. Summary of object being profiled.

Methods

confint `signature(object = "profile.mle")`: Use profile to generate approximate confidence intervals for parameters.

plot `signature(x = "profile.mle", y = "missing")`: Plot profiles for each parameter.

See Also

`mle`, `mle-class`, `summary.mle-class`

show-methods *Methods for Function* show *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Show objects of classes `mle` and `summary.mle`

Methods

`signature(object = "mle")` Print simple summary of `mle` object. Just the coefficients and the call.

`signature(object = "summary.mle")` Shows call, table of coefficients and standard errors, and $-2 \log L$.

summary-methods *Methods for Function* summary *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Summarize objects

Methods

signature(object = "ANY") Generic function

signature(object = "mle") Generate a summary as an object of class "summary.mle", containing estimates, asymptotic SE, and value of $-2 \log L$.

summary.mle-class *Class* "summary.mle", *Summary of* "mle" *Objects*

Description

Extract of "mle" object

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("summary.mle", ...), but most often by invoking summary on an "mle" object. They contain values meant for printing by show.

Slots

call: Object of class "language" The call that generated the "mle" object.

coef: Object of class "matrix". Estimated coefficients and standard errors

m2logL: Object of class "numeric". Minus twice the log likelihood.

Methods

show signature(object = "summary.mle"): Pretty-prints object

coef signature(object = "summary.mle"): Extracts the contents of the coef slot

See Also

summary, mle, mle-class

update-methods *Methods for Function* update *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Update "mle" objects.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature mle
update(object, ..., evaluate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

object	An existing fit.
...	Additional arguments to the call, or arguments with changed values. Use name = NULL to remove the argument name.
evaluate	If true evaluate the new call else return the call.

Methods

signature(object = "ANY") Generic function: see update.

signature(object = "mle") Update a fit.

Examples

```
x <- 0:10
y <- c(26, 17, 13, 12, 20, 5, 9, 8, 5, 4, 8)
ll <- function(ymax = 15, xhalf = 6)
    -sum(stats::dpois(y, lambda = ymax/(1+x/xhalf), log = TRUE))
fit <- mle(ll)
## note the recorded call contains ..1, a problem with S4 dispatch
update(fit, fixed = list(xhalf = 3))
```

vcov-methods *Methods for Function* vcov *in Package* **stats4**

Description

Extract the approximate variance-covariance matrix from "mle" objects.

Methods

signature(object = "ANY") Generic function: see vcov.

signature(object = "mle") Extract the estimated variance-covariance matrix for the estimated parameters (if any).

Chapter 12

The `tcltk` package

`tcltk-package` *Tcl/Tk Interface*

Description

Interface and language bindings to Tcl/Tk GUI elements.

Details

This package provides access to the platform-independent Tcl scripting language and Tk GUI elements. See TkWidgets for a list of supported widgets, TkWidgetcmds for commands to work with them, and references in those files for more.

The Tcl/Tk documentation is in the system man pages.

For a complete list of functions, use `ls("package:tcltk")`.

Note that Tk will not be initialized if there is no `DISPLAY` variable set, but Tcl can still be used. This is most useful to allow the loading of a package which depends on **tcltk** in a session that does not actually use it (e.g., during installation).

Author(s)

R Core Team

Maintainer: R Core Team `<R-core@r-project.org>`

`TclInterface` *Low-level Tcl/Tk Interface*

Description

These functions and variables provide the basic glue between and the Tcl interpreter and Tk GUI toolkit. Tk windows may be represented via objects. Tcl variables can be accessed via objects of class `tclVar` and the C level interface to Tcl objects is accessed via objects of class `tclObj`.

Usage

```
.Tcl(...)
.Tcl.objv(objv)
.Tcl.args(...)
.Tcl.args.objv(...)
.Tcl.callback(...)
.Tk.ID(win)
.Tk.newwin(ID)
.Tk.subwin(parent)
.TkRoot

tkdestroy(win)
is.tkwin(x)

tclvalue(x)
tclvalue(x) <- value

tclVar(init = "")
## S3 method for class tclVar
as.character(x, ...)
## S3 method for class tclVar
tclvalue(x)
## S3 replacement method for class tclVar
tclvalue(x) <- value

tclArray()
## S3 method for class tclArray
x[[...]]
## S3 replacement method for class tclArray
x[[...]] <- value
## S3 method for class tclArray
x$i
## S3 replacement method for class tclArray
x$i <- value

## S3 method for class tclArray
names(x)
## S3 method for class tclArray
length(x)

tclObj(x)
tclObj(x) <- value
## S3 method for class tclVar
tclObj(x)
## S3 replacement method for class tclVar
tclObj(x) <- value

as.tclObj(x, drop = FALSE)
is.tclObj(x)

## S3 method for class tclObj
as.character(x, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class tclObj
as.integer(x, ...)
## S3 method for class tclObj
as.double(x, ...)
## S3 method for class tclObj
as.logical(x, ...)
## S3 method for class tclObj
as.raw(x, ...)
## S3 method for class tclObj
tclvalue(x)

## Default S3 method:
tclvalue(x)
## Default S3 replacement method:
tclvalue(x) <- value


addTclPath(path = ".")
tclRequire(package, warn = TRUE)
```

Arguments

objv	a named vector of Tcl objects
win	a window structure
x	an object
i	character or (unquoted) name
drop	logical. Indicates whether a single-element vector should be made into a simple Tcl object or a list of length one
value	For tclvalue assignments, a character string. For tclObj assignments, an object of class tclObj
ID	a window ID
parent	a window which becomes the parent of the resulting window
path	path to a directory containing Tcl packages
package	a Tcl package name
warn	logical. Warn if not found?
...	Additional arguments. See below.
init	initialization value

Details

Many of these functions are not intended for general use but are used internally by the commands that create and manipulate Tk widgets and Tcl objects. At the lowest level .Tcl sends a command as a text string to the Tcl interpreter and returns the result as an object of class tclObj (see below). A newer variant .Tcl.objv accepts arguments in the form of a named list of tclObj objects.

.Tcl.args converts an R argument list of tag = value pairs to the Tcl -option value style, thus enabling a simple translation between the two languages. To send a value with no preceding option flag to Tcl, just use an untagged argument. In the rare case one needs an option with no subsequent value tag = NULL can be used. Most values are just converted to character mode and inserted in

the command string, but window objects are passed using their ID string, and callbacks are passed via the result of .Tcl.callback. Tags are converted to option flags simply by prepending a -

.Tcl.args.objv serves a similar purpose as .Tcl.args but produces a list of tclObj objects suitable for passing to .Tcl.objv. The names of the list are converted to Tcl option style internally by .Tcl.objv.

Callbacks can be either *atomic callbacks* handled by .Tcl.callback or expressions. An expression is treated as a list of atomic callbacks, with the following exceptions: if an element is a name, it is first evaluated in the callers frame, and likewise if it is an explicit function definition; the break expression is translated directly to the Tcl counterpart. .Tcl.callback converts functions and unevaluated calls to Tcl command strings. The argument must be either a function closure or an object of mode "call" followed by an environment. The return value in the first case is of the form R_call 0x408b94d4 in which the hexadecimal number is the memory address of the function. In the second case it will be of the form R_call_lang 0x8a95904 0x819bfd0. For expressions, a sequence of similar items is generated, separated by semicolons. .Tcl.args takes special precautions to ensure that functions or calls will continue to exist at the specified address by assigning the callback into the relevant window environment (see below).

Tk windows are represented as objects of class tkwin which are lists containing a ID field and an env field which is an environments, enclosed in the global environment. The value of the ID field is identical to the Tk window name. The env environment contains a parent variable and a num.subwin variable. If the window obtains sub-windows and callbacks, they are added as variables to the environment. .TkRoot is the top window with ID "."; this window is not displayed in order to avoid ill effects of closing it via window manager controls. The parent variable is undefined for .TkRoot.

.Tk.ID extracts the ID of a window, .Tk.newwin creates a new window environment with a given ID and .Tk.subwin creates a new window which is a sub-window of a given parent window.

tkdestroy destroys a window and also removes the reference to a window from its parent.

is.tkwin can be used to test whether a given object is a window environment.

tclVar creates a new Tcl variable and initializes it to init. An R object of class tclVar is created to represent it. Using as.character on the object returns the Tcl variable name. Accessing the Tcl variable from R is done using the tclvalue function, which can also occur on the left-hand side of assignments. If tclvalue is passed an argument which is not a tclVar object, then it will assume that it is a character string explicitly naming global Tcl variable. Tcl variables created by tclVar are uniquely named and automatically unset by the garbage collector when the representing object is no longer in use.

tclArray creates a new Tcl array and initializes it to the empty array. An R object of class tclArray and inheriting from class tclVar is created to represent it. You can access elements of the Tcl array using indexing with [[or $, which also allow replacement forms. Notice that Tcl arrays are associative by nature and hence unordered; indexing with a numeric index i refers to the element with the *name* as.character(i). Multiple indices are pasted together separated by commas to form a single name. You can query the length and the set of names in an array using methods for length and names, respectively; these cannot meaningfully be set so assignment forms exist only to print an error message.

It is possible to access Tcl's 'dual-ported' objects directly, thus avoiding parsing and deparsing of their string representation. This works by using objects of class tclObj. The string representation of such objects can be extracted (but not set) using tclvalue and conversion to vectors of mode "character", "double", "integer", "logical", and "raw" is performed using the standard coercion functions as.character, etc. Conversely, such vectors can be converted using as.tclObj. There is an ambiguity as to what should happen for length one vectors, controlled by the drop argument; there are cases where the distinction matters to Tcl, although mostly it treats them equivalently. Notice that tclvalue and as.character differ on an object whose string representation

has embedded spaces, the former is sometimes to be preferred, in particular when applied to the result of `tclread`, `tkgetOpenFile`, and similar functions. The `as.raw` method returns a raw vector or a list of raw vectors and can be used to return binary data from Tcl.

The object behind a `tclVar` object is extracted using `tclObj(x)` which also allows an assignment form, in which the right hand side of the assignment is automatically converted using `as.tclObj`. There is a print method for `tclObj` objects; it prints `<Tcl>` followed by the string representation of the object. Notice that `as.character` on a `tclVar` object is the *name* of the corresponding Tcl variable and not the value.

Tcl packages can be loaded with `tclRequire`; it may be necessary to add the directory where they are found to the Tcl search path with `addTclPath`. The return value is a class `"tclObj"` object if it succeeds, or `FALSE` if it fails (when a warning is issued). To see the current search path as an character vector, use

```
strsplit(tclvalue(auto_path), " ")[[1]]
```

.

Note

Strings containing unbalanced braces are currently not handled well in many circumstances.

See Also

TkWidgets, TkCommands, TkWidgetcmds.

capabilities("tcltk") to see if Tcl/Tk support was compiled into this build of .

Examples

```
## Not run:
## These cannot be run by example() but should be OK when pasted
## into an interactive R session with the tcltk package loaded
.Tcl("format \"%s\n\" \"Hello, World!\"")
f <- function()cat("HI!\n")
.Tcl.callback(f)
.Tcl.args(text = "Push!", command = f) # NB: Different address

xyzzy <- tclVar(7913)
tclvalue(xyzzy)
tclvalue(xyzzy) <- "foo"
as.character(xyzzy)
tcl("set", as.character(xyzzy))

top <- tktoplevel() # a Tk widget, see Tk-widgets
ls(envir = top$env, all = TRUE)
ls(envir = .TkRoot$env, all = TRUE) # .Tcl.args put a callback ref in here

## End(Not run)
```

tclServiceMode *Allow Tcl events to be serviced or not*

Description

This function controls or reports on the Tcl service mode, i.e., whether Tcl will respond to events.

Usage

```
tclServiceMode(on = NULL)
```

Arguments

on	(logical) Whether event servicing is turned on.

Details

If called with `on == NULL` (the default), no change is made.

Note that this blocks all Tcl/Tk activity, including for widgets from other packages. It may be better to manage mapping of windows individually.

Value

The value of the Tcl service mode before the call.

Examples

```
## see demo(tkcanvas) for an example
## Not run:
oldmode <- tclServiceMode(FALSE)
# Do some work to create a nice picture.
# Nothing will be displayed until...
tclServiceMode(oldmode)

## End(Not run)
## another idea is to use tkwm.withdraw() ... tkwm.deiconify()
```

TkCommands *Tk non-widget commands*

Description

These functions interface to Tk non-widget commands, such as the window manager interface commands and the geometry managers.

Usage

```
tcl(...)
tktitle(x)

tktitle(x) <- value

tkbell(...)
tkbind(...)
tkbindtags(...)
tkfocus(...)
tklower(...)
tkraise(...)

tkclipboard.append(...)
tkclipboard.clear(...)

tkevent.add(...)
tkevent.delete(...)
tkevent.generate(...)
tkevent.info(...)

tkfont.actual(...)
tkfont.configure(...)
tkfont.create(...)
tkfont.delete(...)
tkfont.families(...)
tkfont.measure(...)
tkfont.metrics(...)
tkfont.names(...)

tkgrab(...)
tkgrab.current(...)
tkgrab.release(...)
tkgrab.set(...)
tkgrab.status(...)

tkimage.cget(...)
tkimage.configure(...)
tkimage.create(...)
tkimage.names(...)

## NB: some widgets also have a selection.clear command,
## hence the "X".

tkXselection.clear(...)
tkXselection.get(...)
tkXselection.handle(...)
tkXselection.own(...)

tkwait.variable(...)
tkwait.visibility(...)
tkwait.window(...)
```

```
## winfo actually has a large number of subcommands,
## but its rarely used,
## so use tkwinfo("atom", ...) etc. instead.

tkwinfo(...)

# Window manager interface

tkwm.aspect(...)
tkwm.client(...)
tkwm.colormapwindows(...)
tkwm.command(...)
tkwm.deiconify(...)
tkwm.focusmodel(...)
tkwm.frame(...)
tkwm.geometry(...)
tkwm.grid(...)
tkwm.group(...)
tkwm.iconbitmap(...)
tkwm.iconify(...)
tkwm.iconmask(...)
tkwm.iconname(...)
tkwm.iconposition(...)
tkwm.iconwindow(...)
tkwm.maxsize(...)
tkwm.minsize(...)
tkwm.overrideredirect(...)
tkwm.positionfrom(...)
tkwm.protocol(...)
tkwm.resizable(...)
tkwm.sizefrom(...)
tkwm.state(...)
tkwm.title(...)
tkwm.transient(...)
tkwm.withdraw(...)


### Geometry managers

tkgrid(...)
tkgrid.bbox(...)
tkgrid.columnconfigure(...)
tkgrid.configure(...)
tkgrid.forget(...)
tkgrid.info(...)
tkgrid.location(...)
tkgrid.propagate(...)
tkgrid.rowconfigure(...)
tkgrid.remove(...)
tkgrid.size(...)
tkgrid.slaves(...)
```

```
tkpack(...)
tkpack.configure(...)
tkpack.forget(...)
tkpack.info(...)
tkpack.propagate(...)
tkpack.slaves(...)

tkplace(...)
tkplace.configure(...)
tkplace.forget(...)
tkplace.info(...)
tkplace.slaves(...)

## Standard dialogs
tkgetOpenFile(...)
tkgetSaveFile(...)
tkchooseDirectory(...)
tkmessageBox(...)
tkdialog(...)
tkpopup(...)


## File handling functions
tclfile.tail(...)
tclfile.dir(...)
tclopen(...)
tclclose(...)
tclputs(...)
tclread(...)
```

Arguments

x	A window object
value	For `tktitle` assignments, a character string.
...	Handled via `.Tcl.args`

Details

`tcl` provides a generic interface to calling any Tk or Tcl command by simply running `.Tcl.args.objv` on the argument list and passing the result to `.Tcl.objv`. Most of the other commands simply call `tcl` with a particular first argument and sometimes also a second argument giving the subcommand.

`tktitle` and its assignment form provides an alternate interface to Tk's `wm title`

There are far too many of these commands to describe them and their arguments in full. Please refer to the Tcl/Tk documentation for details. With a few exceptions, the pattern is that Tk subcommands like `pack configure` are converted to function names like `tkpack.configure`, and Tcl subcommands are like `tclfile.dir`.

See Also

TclInterface, TkWidgets, TkWidgetcmds

Examples

```
## Not run:
## These cannot be run by examples() but should be OK when pasted
## into an interactive R session with the tcltk package loaded

tt <- tktoplevel()
tkpack(l1 <- tklabel(tt, text = "Heave"), l2< - tklabel(tt, text = "Ho"))
tkpack.configure(l1, side = "left")

## Try stretching the window and then

tkdestroy(tt)

## End(Not run)
```

---

tkpager *Page file using Tk text widget*

Description

This plugs into `file.show`, showing files in separate windows.

Usage

```
tkpager(file, header, title, delete.file)
```

Arguments

`file`	character vector containing the names of the files to be displayed
`header`	headers to use for each file
`title`	common title to use for the window(s). Pasted together with the `header` to form actual window title.
`delete.file`	logical. Should file(s) be deleted after display?

Note

The `"\b_"` string used for underlining is currently quietly removed. The font and background colour are currently hardcoded to Courier and gray90.

See Also

`file.show`

tkProgressBar *Progress Bars via Tk*

Description

Put up a Tk progress bar widget.

Usage

```
tkProgressBar(title = "R progress bar", label = "",
              min = 0, max = 1, initial = 0, width = 300)

getTkProgressBar(pb)
setTkProgressBar(pb, value, title = NULL, label = NULL)
## S3 method for class tkProgressBar
close(con, ...)
```

Arguments

`title, label`	character strings, giving the window title and the label on the dialog box respectively.
`min, max`	(finite) numeric values for the extremes of the progress bar.
`initial, value`	initial or new value for the progress bar.
`width`	the width of the progress bar in pixels: the dialog box will be 40 pixels wider (plus frame).
`pb, con`	an object of class `"tkProgressBar"`.
`...`	for consistency with the generic.

Details

`tkProgressBar` will display a widget containing a label and progress bar.

`setTkProgessBar` will update the value and for non-`NULL` values, the title and label (provided there was one when the widget was created). Missing (`NA`) and out-of-range values of `value` will be (silently) ignored.

The progress bar should be `close`d when finished with.

This will use the `ttk::progressbar` widget for Tk version 8.5 or later, otherwise 's copy of BWidget's `progressbar`.

Value

For `tkProgressBar` an object of class `"tkProgressBar"`.

For `getTkProgressBar` and `setTkProgressBar`, a length-one numeric vector giving the previous value (invisibly for `setTkProgressBar`).

See Also

`txtProgressBar`

Examples

```
pb <- tkProgressBar("test progress bar", "Some information in %",
                    0, 100, 50)
Sys.sleep(0.5)
u <- c(0, sort(runif(20, 0, 100)), 100)
for(i in u) {
    Sys.sleep(0.1)
    info <- sprintf("%d%% done", round(i))
    setTkProgressBar(pb, i, sprintf("test (%s)", info), info)
}
Sys.sleep(5)
close(pb)
```

---

tkStartGUI *Tcl/Tk GUI startup*

Description

Starts up the Tcl/Tk GUI

Usage

```
tkStartGUI()
```

Details

Starts a GUI console implemented via a Tk text widget. This should probably be called at most once per session. Also redefines the file pager (as used by `help()`) to be the Tk pager.

Note

`tkStartGUI()` saves its evaluation environment as `.GUIenv`. This means that the user interface elements can be accessed in order to extend the interface. The three main objects are named `Term`, `Menu`, and `Toolbar`, and the various submenus and callback functions can be seen with `ls(envir = .GUIenv)`.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

TkWidgetcmds *Tk widget commands*

Description

These functions interface to Tk widget commands.

Usage

```
tkactivate(widget, ...)
tkadd(widget, ...)
tkaddtag(widget, ...)
tkbbox(widget, ...)
tkcanvasx(widget, ...)
tkcanvasy(widget, ...)
tkcget(widget, ...)
tkcompare(widget, ...)
tkconfigure(widget, ...)
tkcoords(widget, ...)
tkcreate(widget, ...)
tkcurselection(widget, ...)
tkdchars(widget, ...)
tkdebug(widget, ...)
tkdelete(widget, ...)
tkdelta(widget, ...)
tkdeselect(widget, ...)
tkdlineinfo(widget, ...)
tkdtag(widget, ...)
tkdump(widget, ...)
tkentrycget(widget, ...)
tkentryconfigure(widget, ...)
tkfind(widget, ...)
tkflash(widget, ...)
tkfraction(widget, ...)
tkget(widget, ...)
tkgettags(widget, ...)
tkicursor(widget, ...)
tkidentify(widget, ...)
tkindex(widget, ...)
tkinsert(widget, ...)
tkinvoke(widget, ...)
tkitembind(widget, ...)
tkitemcget(widget, ...)
tkitemconfigure(widget, ...)
tkitemfocus(widget, ...)
tkitemlower(widget, ...)
tkitemraise(widget, ...)
tkitemscale(widget, ...)
tkmark.gravity(widget, ...)
tkmark.names(widget, ...)
tkmark.next(widget, ...)
tkmark.previous(widget, ...)
tkmark.set(widget, ...)
tkmark.unset(widget, ...)
tkmove(widget, ...)
tknearest(widget, ...)
tkpost(widget, ...)
tkpostcascade(widget, ...)
tkpostscript(widget, ...)
tkscan.mark(widget, ...)
```

```
tkscan.dragto(widget, ...)
tksearch(widget, ...)
tksee(widget, ...)
tkselect(widget, ...)
tkselection.adjust(widget, ...)
tkselection.anchor(widget, ...)
tkselection.clear(widget, ...)
tkselection.from(widget, ...)
tkselection.includes(widget, ...)
tkselection.present(widget, ...)
tkselection.range(widget, ...)
tkselection.set(widget, ...)
tkselection.to(widget, ...)
tkset(widget, ...)
tksize(widget, ...)
tktoggle(widget, ...)
tktag.add(widget, ...)
tktag.bind(widget, ...)
tktag.cget(widget, ...)
tktag.configure(widget, ...)
tktag.delete(widget, ...)
tktag.lower(widget, ...)
tktag.names(widget, ...)
tktag.nextrange(widget, ...)
tktag.prevrange(widget, ...)
tktag.raise(widget, ...)
tktag.ranges(widget, ...)
tktag.remove(widget, ...)
tktype(widget, ...)
tkunpost(widget, ...)
tkwindow.cget(widget, ...)
tkwindow.configure(widget, ...)
tkwindow.create(widget, ...)
tkwindow.names(widget, ...)
tkxview(widget, ...)
tkxview.moveto(widget, ...)
tkxview.scroll(widget, ...)
tkyposition(widget, ...)
tkyview(widget, ...)
tkyview.moveto(widget, ...)
tkyview.scroll(widget, ...)
```

Arguments

`widget`	The widget this applies to
`...`	Handled via `.Tcl.args`

Details

There are far too many of these commands to describe them and their arguments in full. Please refer to the Tcl/Tk documentation for details. Except for a few exceptions, the pattern is that Tcl widget commands possibly with subcommands like `.a.b selection clear` are converted to function names like `tkselection.clear` and the widget is given as the first argument.

See Also

TclInterface, TkWidgets, TkCommands

Examples

```
## Not run:
## These cannot be run by examples() but should be OK when pasted
## into an interactive R session with the tcltk package loaded

tt <- tktoplevel()
tkpack(txt.w <- tktext(tt))
tkinsert(txt.w, "0.0", "plot(1:10)")

# callback function
eval.txt <- function()
   eval(parse(text = tclvalue(tkget(txt.w, "0.0", "end"))))
tkpack(but.w <- tkbutton(tt, text = "Submit", command = eval.txt))

## Try pressing the button, edit the text and when finished:

tkdestroy(tt)

## End(Not run)
```

TkWidgets *Tk widgets*

Description

Create Tk widgets and associated objects.

Usage

```
tkwidget(parent, type, ...)

tkbutton(parent, ...)
tkcanvas(parent, ...)
tkcheckbutton(parent, ...)
tkentry(parent, ...)
ttkentry(parent, ...)
tkframe(parent, ...)
tklabel(parent, ...)
tklistbox(parent, ...)
tkmenu(parent, ...)
tkmenubutton(parent, ...)
tkmessage(parent, ...)
tkradiobutton(parent, ...)
tkscale(parent, ...)
tkscrollbar(parent, ...)
tktext(parent, ...)
tktoplevel(parent = .TkRoot, ...)
```

```
ttkbutton(parent, ...)
ttkcheckbutton(parent, ...)
ttkcombobox(parent, ...)
ttkframe(parent, ...)
ttkimage(parent, ...)
ttklabel(parent, ...)
ttklabelframe(parent, ...)
ttkmenubutton(parent, ...)
ttknotebook(parent, ...)
ttkpanedwindow(parent, ...)
ttkprogressbar(parent, ...)
ttkradiobutton(parent, ...)
ttkscrollbar(parent, ...)
ttkseparator(parent, ...)
ttksizegrip(parent, ...)
ttktreeview(parent, ...)
```

Arguments

parent	Parent of widget window.
type	string describing the type of widget desired.
...	handled via .Tcl.args.

Details

These functions create Tk widgets. tkwidget creates a widget of a given type, the others simply call tkwidget with the respective type argument.

The functions starting ttk are for the themed widget set for Tk 8.5 or later. A tutorial can be found at http://www.tkdocs.com.

It is not possible to describe the widgets and their arguments in full. Please refer to the Tcl/Tk documentation.

See Also

TclInterface, TkCommands, TkWidgetcmds

Examples

```
## Not run:
## These cannot be run by examples() but should be OK when pasted
## into an interactive R session with the tcltk package loaded

tt <- tktoplevel()
label.widget <- tklabel(tt, text = "Hello, World!")
button.widget <- tkbutton(tt, text = "Push",
                          command = function()cat("OW!\n"))
tkpack(label.widget, button.widget) # geometry manager
                                    # see Tk-commands

## Push the button and then...

tkdestroy(tt)
```

```
## test for themed widgets
if(as.character(tcl("info", "tclversion")) >= "8.5") {
  # make use of themed widgets
  # list themes
  as.character(tcl("ttk::style", "theme", "names"))
  # select a theme -- here pre-XP windows
  tcl("ttk::style", "theme use", "winnative")
} else {
  # use Tk 8.0 widgets
}

## End(Not run)
```

---

tk_choose.dir *Choose a Folder Interactively*

Description

Use a Tk widget to choose a directory interactively.

Usage

```
tk_choose.dir(default = "", caption = "Select directory")
```

Arguments

default	which directory to show initially.
caption	the caption on the selection dialog.

Value

A length-one character vector, character NA if 'Cancel' was selected.

See Also

tk_choose.files

Examples

```
## Not run:
tk_choose.dir(getwd(), "Choose a suitable folder")

## End(Not run)
```

`tk_choose.files` *Choose a List of Files Interactively*

Description

Use a Tk file dialog to choose a list of zero or more files interactively.

Usage

```
tk_choose.files(default = "", caption = "Select files",
                multi = TRUE, filters = NULL, index = 1)
```

Arguments

`default`	which filename to show initially.
`caption`	the caption on the file selection dialog.
`multi`	whether to allow multiple files to be selected.
`filters`	two-column character matrix of filename filters.
`index`	unused.

Details

Unlike `file.choose`, `tk_choose.files` will always attempt to return a character vector giving a list of files. If the user cancels the dialog, then zero files are returned, whereas `file.choose` would signal an error.

The format of `filters` can be seen from the example. File patterns are specified via extensions, with `"*"` meaning any file, and `""` any file without an extension (a filename not containing a period). (Other forms may work on specific platforms.) Note that the way to have multiple extensions for one file type is to have multiple rows with the same name in the first column, and that whether the extensions are named in file chooser widget is platform-specific. **The format may change before release.**

Value

A character vector giving zero or more file paths.

Note

A bug in Tk 8.5.0–8.5.4 prevented multiple selections being used.

See Also

`file.choose`, `tk_choose.dir`

Examples

```
Filters <- matrix(c("R code", ".R", "R code", ".s",
                    "Text", ".txt", "All files", "*"),
                  4, 2, byrow = TRUE)
Filters
if(interactive()) tk_choose.files(filter = Filters)
```

tk_messageBox *Tk Message Box*

Description

An implementation of a generic message box using Tk

Usage

```
tk_messageBox(type = c("ok", "okcancel", "yesno", "yesnocancel",
                       "retrycancel", "aburtretrycancel"),
              message, caption = "", default = "", ...)
```

Arguments

type	character. The type of dialog box. It will have the buttons implied by its name.
message	character. The information field of the dialog box.
caption	the caption on the widget displayed.
default	character. The name of the button to be used as the default.
...	additional named arguments to be passed to the Tk function of this name. An example is `icon = "warning"`.

Value

A character string giving the name of the button pressed.

See Also

tkmessageBox for a 'raw' interface.

tk_select.list *Select Items from a List*

Description

Select item(s) from a character vector using a Tk listbox.

Usage

```
tk_select.list(choices, preselect = NULL, multiple = FALSE,
               title = NULL)
```

Arguments

choices	a character vector of items.
preselect	a character vector, or NULL. If non-null and if the string(s) appear in the list, the item(s) are selected initially.
multiple	logical: can more than one item be selected?
title	optional character string for window title, or NULL for no title.

Details

This is a version of `select.list` implemented as a Tk list box plus `OK` and `Cancel` buttons. There will be a scrollbar if the list is too long to fit comfortably on the screen.

The dialog box is *modal*, so a selection must be made or cancelled before the session can proceed. Double-clicking on an item is equivalent to selecting it and then clicking `OK`.

If Tk is version 8.5 or later, themed widgets will be used.

Value

A character vector of selected items. If `multiple` is false and no item was selected (or `Cancel` was used), `""` is returned. If `multiple` is true and no item was selected (or `Cancel` was used) then a character vector of length 0 is returned.

See Also

`select.list` (a text version except on Windows and the OS X GUI), `menu` (whose `graphics = TRUE` mode uses this on most Unix-alikes).

Chapter 13

The `tools` package

`tools-package` *Tools for Package Development*

Description

Tools for package development, administration and documentation.

Details

This package contains tools for manipulating R packages and their documentation.

For a complete list of functions, use `library(help = "tools")`.

Author(s)

Kurt Hornik and Friedrich Leisch

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

`.print.via.format` *Printing Utilities*

Description

`.print.via.format` is a "prototype" `print()` method, useful, at least as a start, by a simple

```
print.<myS3class>  <-  .print.via.format
```

Usage

```
.print.via.format(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	object to be printed.
`...`	optional further arguments, passed to `format`.

Value

x, invisibly (by invisible()), as print methods should.

See Also

The print generic; its default method print.default (used for many basic implicit classes such as "numeric", "character" and arrays of them, lists etc).

Examples

```
## The function is simply defined as
 function (x, ...) {
    writeLines(format(x, ...))
    invisible(x)
 }

## is used for simple print methods in R, and as prototype for new methods.
```

---

add_datalist *Add a 'datalist' File to a Package*

Description

The data() command with no arguments lists all the datasets available via data in attached packages, and to do so a per-package list is installed. Creating that list at install time can be slow for packages with huge datasets, and can be expedited by a supplying 'data/datalist' file.

Usage

```
add_datalist(pkgpath, force = FALSE)
```

Arguments

pkgpath	The path to a (source) package.
force	logical: can an existing 'data/datalist' file be over-written?

Details

R CMD build will call this function to add a data list to packages with 1MB or more of data.

It is also helpful to give a 'data/datalist' file in packages whose datasets have many dependencies, including loading the packages itself (and maybe others).

See Also

data.

The 'Writing R Extensions' manual.

`assertCondition` *Asserting Error Conditions*

Description

When testing code, it is not sufficient to check that results are correct, but also that errors or warnings are signalled in appropriate situations. The functions described here provide a convenient facility for doing so. The three functions check that evaluating the supplied expression produces an error, a warning or one of a specified list of conditions, respectively. If the assertion fails, an error is signalled.

Usage

```
assertError(expr, verbose = FALSE)
assertWarning(expr, verbose = FALSE)
assertCondition(expr, ..., .exprString = , verbose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`expr`	an unevaluated expression which will be evaluated via `tryCatch(expr, ..)`.
`...`	`character` strings corresponding to the classes of the conditions that would satisfy the assertion; e.g., `"error"` or `"warning"`. If none are specified, any condition will satisfy the assertion. See the details section.
`.exprString`	The string to be printed corresponding to `expr`. By default, the actual `expr` will be deparsed. Will be omitted if the function is supplied with the actual expression to be tested. If `assertCondition()` is called from another function, with the actual expression passed as an argument to that function, supply the deparsed version.
`verbose`	If `TRUE`, a message is printed when the condition is satisfied.

Details

`assertCondition()` uses the general condition mechanism to check all the conditions generated in evaluating `expr`. The occurrence of any of the supplied condition classes among these satisfies the assertion regardless of what other conditions may be signalled.

`assertError()` is a convenience function for asserting errors; it calls `assertCondition()`.

`assertWarning()` asserts that a warning will be signalled, but *not* an error, whereas `assertCondition(expr, "warning")` will be satisfied even if an error follows the warning. See the examples.

Value

If the assertion is satisfied, a list of all the condition objects signalled is returned, invisibly. See `conditionMessage` for the interpretation of these objects. Note that *all* conditions signalled during the evaluation are returned, whether or not they were among the requirements.

Author(s)

John Chambers and Martin Maechler

See Also

stop, warning; signalCondition, tryCatch.

Examples

```
  assertError(sqrt("abc"))
  assertWarning(matrix(1:8, 4,3))

  assertCondition( ""-1 ) # ok, any condition would satisfy this

try( assertCondition(sqrt(2), "warning") )
## .. Failed to get warning in evaluating sqrt(2)
     assertCondition(sqrt("abc"), "error")   # ok
try( assertCondition(sqrt("abc"), "warning") )# -> error: had no warning
     assertCondition(sqrt("abc"), "error")
  ## identical to assertError() call above

assertCondition(matrix(1:5, 2,3), "warning")
try( assertCondition(matrix(1:8, 4,3), "error") )
## .. Failed to get expected error ....

## either warning or worse:
assertCondition(matrix(1:8, 4,3), "error","warning") # OK
assertCondition(matrix(1:8, 4, 3), "warning") # OK

## when both are signalled:
ff <- function() { warning("my warning"); stop("my error") }
    assertCondition(ff(), "warning")
## but assertWarning does not allow an error to follow
try(assertWarning(ff()))
    assertCondition(ff(), "error")          # ok
assertCondition(ff(), "error", "warning") # ok (quietly, catching warning)

## assert that assertC..() does not assert [and use *one* argument only]
assertCondition( assertCondition(sqrt( 2   ), "warning") )
assertCondition( assertCondition(sqrt("abc"), "warning"), "error")
assertCondition( assertCondition(matrix(1:8, 4,3), "error"),
                "error")
```

---

bibstyle *Select or define a bibliography style.*

Description

This function defines and registers styles for rendering bibentry objects into 'Rd' format, for later conversion to text, HTML, etc.

Usage

```
bibstyle(style, envir, ..., .init = FALSE, .default = TRUE)
getBibstyle(all = FALSE)
```

Arguments

style	A character string naming the style.
envir	(optional) An environment holding the functions to implement the style.
...	Named arguments to add to the environment.
.init	Whether to initialize the environment from the default style "JSS".
.default	Whether to set the specified style as the default style.
all	Whether to return the names of all registered styles.

Details

Rendering of bibentry objects may be done using routines modelled after those used by BibTeX. This function allows environments to be created and manipulated to contain those routines.

There are two ways to create a new style environment. The easiest is to set .init = TRUE, in which case the environment will be initialized with a copy of the default "JSS" environment. (This style is modelled after the 'jss.bst' style used by the *Journal of Statistical Software*.) Alternatively, the envir argument can be used to specify a completely new style environment.

To find the name of the default style, use getBibstyle(). To retrieve an existing style without setting it as the default, use bibstyle(style, .default = FALSE). To modify an existing style, specify style and some named entries via .... (Modifying the default "JSS" style is discouraged.) Setting style to NULL or leaving it missing will retrieve the default style, but modifications will not be allowed.

At a minimum, the environment should contain routines to render each of the 12 types of bibliographic entry supported by bibentry as well as several other routines described below. The former must be named formatArticle, formatBook, formatInbook, formatIncollection, formatInProceedings, formatManual, formatMastersthesis, formatMisc, formatPhdthesis, formatProceedings, formatTechreport and formatUnpublished. Each of these takes one argument, a single unclass'ed entry from the bibentry vector passed to the renderer, and should produce a single element character vector (possibly containing newlines).

The other routines are as follows. sortKeys, a function to produce a sort key to sort the entries, is passed the original bibentry vector and should produce a sortable vector of the same length to define the sort order. Finally, the optional function cite should have the same argument list as utils::cite, and should produce a citation to be used in text.

The format method for "bibentry" objects adds a field named ".index" to each entry after sorting and before formatting. This is a 1-based index within the complete object that can be used in styles that require numbering. Although the "JSS" style doesn't use numbers, it includes a fmtPrefix() stub function that may be used to display them. See the example below.

Value

bibstyle returns the environment which has been selected or created.

getBibstyle returns the name of the default style, or all style names.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

See Also

bibentry

Examples

```
refs <-
c(bibentry(bibtype = "manual",
    title = "R: A Language and Environment for Statistical Computing",
    author = person("R Core Team"),
    organization = "R Foundation for Statistical Computing",
    address = "Vienna, Austria",
    year = 2013,
    url = "http://www.R-project.org"),
  bibentry(bibtype = "article",
    author = c(person(c("George", "E.", "P."), "Box"),
               person(c("David",  "R."),      "Cox")),
    year = 1964,
    title = "An Analysis of Transformations",
    journal = "Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B",
    volume = 26,
    pages = "211-252"))

bibstyle("unsorted", sortKeys = function(refs) seq_along(refs),
    fmtPrefix = function(paper) paste0("[", paper$.index, "]"),
       .init = TRUE)
print(refs, .bibstyle = "unsorted")
```

`buildVignette` *Build one vignette*

Description

Run `Sweave` (or other custom weave function) `texi2dvi`, and/or `Stangle` (or other custom tangle function) on one vignette.

This is the workhorse of `R CMD Sweave`.

Usage

```
buildVignette(file, dir = ".", weave = TRUE, latex = TRUE, tangle = TRUE,
              quiet = TRUE, clean = TRUE, keep = character(),
              engine = NULL, buildPkg = NULL, encoding, ...)
```

Arguments

`file`	character; the vignette source file
`dir`	character; the working directory in which the intermediate and output files will be produced
`weave`	logical; should weave be run?
`latex`	logical; texi2pdf be run if weaving produces a '`.tex`' file?
`tangle`	logical; should tangle be run?
`quiet`	logical; run in quiet mode?
`clean`	logical; whether to remove some newly created, often intermediate, files. See details below.

keep	a list of file names to keep in any case when cleaning. Note that "target" files are kept anyway.
engine	NULL or character; name of vignette engine to use. Overrides any \VignetteEngine{} markup in the vignette.
buildPkg	NULL or character; an optional package in which to find the vignette engine.
encoding	the encoding to assume for the file. If not specified, it will be inferred from the file contents.
...	Additional arguments passed to weave and tangle.

Details

This function determines the vignette engine for the vignette (default utils::Sweave), then weaves and/or tangles the vignette using that engine. Finally, if clean is TRUE, newly created intermediate files (non "targets", where these depend on the engine, etc, and not any in keep) will be deleted. If clean is NA, and weave is true, newly created intermediate output files (e.g., '.tex') will not be deleted even if a '.pdf' file has been produced from them.

If buildPkg is specified, it will be loaded before the vignette is processed, and will be used as the default package in the search for a vignette engine, but an explicitly specified package in the vignette source (e.g., using \VignetteEngine{utils::Sweave} to specify the Sweave engine in the **utils** package) will override it. In contrast, if the engine argument is given, it will override the vignette source.

Value

A character vector naming the files that have been produced.

Author(s)

Henrik Bengtsson and Duncan Murdoch

See Also

buildVignettes for building all vignettes in a package.

---

buildVignettes *List and Build Package Vignettes*

Description

Run Sweave (or other custom weave function) and texi2dvi on all vignettes of a package.

Usage

```
buildVignettes(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL, quiet = TRUE,
               clean = TRUE, tangle = FALSE)

pkgVignettes(package, dir, subdirs = NULL, lib.loc = NULL,
     output = FALSE, source = FALSE, check = FALSE)
```

Arguments

package	a character string naming an installed package. If given, vignette source files are by default looked for in subdirectory 'doc'.
dir	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This subdirectory 'vignettes' (or if it does not exist 'inst/doc') is searched for vignette source files.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for package.
quiet	logical. Weave and run texi2pdf in quiet mode.
clean	Remove all files generated by the build, even if there were copies there before.
tangle	logical. Do tangling as well as weaving.
subdirs	a character vector of subdirectories of dir in which to look for vignettes. The first which exists is used. Defaults to "doc" if package is supplied, otherwise "vignettes".
output	logical indicating if the output filenames for each vignette should be returned (in component outputs).
source	logical indicating if the *tangled* output filenames for each vignette should be returned (in component sources).
check	logical. If TRUE, check whether all files that have vignette-like filenames have an identifiable vignette engine. This may be a false positive if a file is not a vignette but has a filename matching a pattern defined by one of the vignette engines.

Details

buildVignettes is used by R CMD build and R CMD check to (re-)build vignette PDFs from their sources.

Value

buildVignettes is called for its side effect of creating the PDF versions of all vignettes, and if tangle = TRUE, extracting the code.

pkgVignettes returns an object of class "pkgVignettes" if a vignette directory is found, otherwise NULL.

Examples

```
gVigns <- pkgVignettes("grid")
str(gVigns)
```

---

charsets *Conversion Tables between Character Sets*

Description

charset_to_Unicode is a matrix of Unicode code points with columns for the common 8-bit encodings.

Adobe_glyphs is a data frame which gives Adobe glyph names for Unicode code points. It has two character columns, "adobe" and "unicode" (a 4-digit hex representation).

Usage

```
charset_to_Unicode

Adobe_glyphs
```

Details

`charset_to_Unicode` is an integer matrix of class `c("noquote", "hexmode")` so prints in hexadecimal. The mappings are those used by `libiconv`: there are differences in the way quotes and minus/hyphen are mapped between sources (and the postscript encoding files use a different mapping).

`Adobe_glyphs` includes all the Adobe glyph names which correspond to single Unicode characters. It is sorted by Unicode code point and within a point alphabetically on the glyph (there can be more than one name for a Unicode code point). The data are in the file '*R_HOME*`/share/encodings/Adobe_glyphlist`'.

Source

http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/opentype/glyphlist.txt

Examples

```
## find Adobe names for ISOLatin2 chars.
latin2 <- charset_to_Unicode[, "ISOLatin2"]
aUnicode <- as.numeric(paste0("0x", Adobe_glyphs$unicode))
keep <- aUnicode %in% latin2
aUnicode <- aUnicode[keep]
aAdobe <- Adobe_glyphs[keep, 1]
## first match
aLatin2 <- aAdobe[match(latin2, aUnicode)]
## all matches
bLatin2 <- lapply(1:256, function(x) aAdobe[aUnicode == latin2[x]])
format(bLatin2, justify = "none")
```

---

checkFF *Check Foreign Function Calls*

Description

Performs checks on calls to compiled code from R code. Currently only checks whether the interface functions such as `.C` and `.Fortran` are called with a `"NativeSymbolInfo"` first argument or with argument `PACKAGE` specified, which is highly recommended to avoid name clashes in foreign function calls.

Usage

```
checkFF(package, dir, file, lib.loc = NULL,
        registration = FALSE, check_DUP = FALSE,
        verbose = getOption("verbose"))
```

Arguments

package	a character string naming an installed package. If given, the installed R code of the package is checked.
dir	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This should contain the subdirectory 'R' (for R code). Only used if package is not given.
file	the name of a file containing R code to be checked. Used if neither package nor dir are given.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for package.
registration	a logical. If TRUE, checks the registration information on the call (if available).
check_DUP	a logical. If TRUE, .C and .Fortran calls with DUP = FALSE are reported.
verbose	a logical. If TRUE, additional diagnostics are printed (and the result is returned invisibly).

Details

Note that we can only check if the name argument is a symbol or a character string, not what class of object the symbol resolves to at run-time.

If the package has a namespace which contains a useDynLib directive, calls in top-level functions in the package are not reported as their symbols will be preferentially looked up in the DLL named in the first useDynLib directive.

This checks that calls with PACKAGE specified are to the same package, and reports separately those which are in base packages and those which are in other packages (and if those packages are specified in the 'DESCRIPTION' file).

Value

An object of class "checkFF".

There are format and print methods to display the information contained in such objects.

See Also

.C, .Fortran; Foreign.

Examples

```
 # order is pretty much random
checkFF(package = "stats", verbose = TRUE)
```

checkMD5sums *Check and Create MD5 Checksum Files*

Description

checkMD5sums checks the files against a file 'MD5'.

Usage

```
checkMD5sums(package, dir)
```

Arguments

package	the name of an installed package
dir	the path to the top-level directory of an installed package.

Details

The file 'MD5' which is created is in a format which can be checked by md5sum -c MD5 if a suitable command-line version of md5sum is available. (For Windows, one is supplied in the bundle at http://cran.r-project.org/bin/windows/Rtools.)

If dir is missing, an installed package of name package is searched for.

The private function tools:::.installMD5sums is used to create MD5 files in the Windows build.

Value

checkMD5sums returns a logical, NA if there is no 'MD5' file to be checked.

See Also

md5sum

checkPoFiles *Check translation files for inconsistent format strings.*

Description

These functions compare formats embedded in English messages with translated strings to check for consistency. checkPoFile checks one file, while checkPoFiles checks all files for a specified language.

Usage

```
checkPoFile(f, strictPlural = FALSE)
checkPoFiles(language, dir = ".")
```

Arguments

f	a character string giving a single filepath.
strictPlural	whether to compare formats of singular and plural forms in a strict way.
language	a character string giving a language code.
dir	a path to a directory in which to check files.

Details

Part of 's internationalization depends on translations of messages in '.po' files. In these files an 'English' message taken from the sources is followed by a translation into another language. Many of these messages are format strings for C or sprintf and related functions. In these cases, the translation must give a compatible format or an error will be generated when the message is displayed.

The rules for compatibility differ between C and in several ways. C supports several conversions not supported by , namely c, u, p, n. It is allowed in C's sprintf() function to have more arguments than are needed by the format string, but in the counts must match exactly. requires types of arguments to match, whereas C will do the display whether it makes sense or not.

These functions compromise on the testing as follows. The additional formats allowed in C are accepted, and all differences in argument type or count are reported. As a consequence some reported differences are not errors.

If the strictPlural argument is TRUE, then argument lists must agree exactly between singular and plural forms of messages; if FALSE, then translations only need to match one or the other of the two forms. When checkPoFiles calls checkPoFile, the strictPlural argument is set to TRUE for files with names starting 'R-', and to FALSE otherwise.

Items marked as 'fuzzy' in the '.po' file are not processed (as they are ignored by the message compiler).

If a difference is found, the translated string is checked for variant percent signs (e.g., the wide percent sign "\uFF05"). Such signs will not be recognized as format specifiers, and are likely to be errors.

Value

Both functions return an object of S3 class "check_po_files". A print method is defined for this class to display a report on the differences.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

References

See the GNU gettext manual for the '.po' file format:
http://www.gnu.org/software/gettext/manual/gettext.html.

See Also

update_pkg_po() which calls checkPoFile(); xgettext, sprintf.

Examples

```
## Not run:
checkPoFiles("de", "/path/to/R/src/directory")

## End(Not run)
```

---

checkRd *Check an Rd Object*

Description

Check an help file or the output of the parse_Rd function.

Usage

```
checkRd(Rd, defines = .Platform$OS.type, stages = "render",
        unknownOK = TRUE, listOK = TRUE, ..., def_enc = FALSE)
```

Arguments

Rd	a filename or Rd object to use as input.
defines	string(s) to use in #ifdef tests.
stages	at which stage ("build", "install", or "render") should \Sexpr macros be executed? See the notes below.
unknownOK	unrecognized macros are treated as errors if FALSE, otherwise warnings.
listOK	unnecessary non-empty braces (e.g., around text, not as an argument) are treated as errors if FALSE, otherwise warnings.
...	additional parameters to pass to parse_Rd when Rd is a filename. One that is often useful is encoding.
def_enc	logical: has the package declared an encoding, so tests for non-ASCII text are suppressed?

Details

checkRd performs consistency checks on an Rd file, confirming that required sections are present, etc.

It accepts a filename for an Rd file, and will use parse_Rd to parse it before applying the checks. If so, warnings from parse_Rd are collected, together with those from the internal function prepare_Rd, which does the #ifdef and \Sexpr processing, drops sections that would not be rendered or are duplicated (and should not be) and removes empty sections.

An Rd object is passed through prepare_Rd, but it may already have been (and installed Rd objects have).

Warnings are given a 'level': those from prepare_Rd have level 0. These include

All text must be in a section
Only one *tag name* section is allowed: the first will be used
Section *name* is unrecognized and will be dropped
Dropping empty section *name*

checkRd itself can show

7	Tag *tag name* not recognized
7	\tabular format must be simple text
7	Unrecognized \tabular format: ...
7	Only *n* columns allowed in this table
7	Must have a *tag name*
7	Only one *tag name* is allowed
7	Tag *tag name* must not be empty
7	\docType must be plain text
5	Tag \method is only valid in \usage
5	Tag \dontrun is only valid in \examples
5	Tag *tag name* is invalid in a *block name* block
5	Title of \section must be non-empty plain text
5	\title content must be plain text
3	Empty section *tag name*
-1	Non-ASCII contents without declared encoding
-1	Non-ASCII contents in second part of \enc
-3	Tag ... is not valid in a code block
-3	Apparent non-ASCII contents without declared encoding
-3	Apparent non-ASCII contents in second part of \enc
-3	Unnecessary braces at ...
-3	\method not valid outside a code block

and variations with \method replaced by \S3method or \S4method.

Note that both `prepare_Rd` and `checkRd` have tests for an empty section: that in `checkRd` is stricter (essentially that nothing is output).

Value

This may fail through an error, but otherwise warnings are collected as returned as an object of class `"checkRd"`, a character vector of messages. This class has a `print` method which only prints unique messages, and has argument `minlevel` that can be used to select only more serious messages. (This is set to `-1` in `R CMD check`.)

Possible fatal errors are those from running the parser (e.g., a non-existent file, unclosed quoted string, non-ASCII input without a specified encoding) or from `prepare_Rd` (multiple \Rdversion declarations, invalid \encoding or \docType or \name sections, and missing or duplicate \name or \title sections).

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch, Brian Ripley

See Also

`parse_Rd`, `Rd2HTML`.

checkRdaFiles *Report on Details of Saved Images or Re-saves them*

Description

This reports for each of the files produced by save the size, if it was saved in ASCII or XDR binary format, and if it was compressed (and if so in what format).

Usually such files have extension '.rda' or '.RData', hence the name of the function.

Usage

```
checkRdaFiles(paths)
resaveRdaFiles(paths, compress = c("auto", "gzip", "bzip2", "xz"),
               compression_level)
```

Arguments

paths	A character vector of paths to save files. If this specifies a single directory, it is taken to refer to all '.rda' and '.RData' files in that directory.
compress, compression_level	type and level of compression: see save.

Details

compress = "auto" asks to choose the compression and ignores compression_level. It will try "gzip", "bzip2" and if the "gzip" compressed size is over 10Kb, "xz" and choose the smallest compressed file (but with a 10% bias towards "gzip"). This can be slow.

Value

For checkRdaFiles, a data frame with rows names paths and columns

size	numeric: file size in bytes, NA if the file does not exist.
ASCII	logical: true for save(ASCII = TRUE), NA if the format is not that of an save file.
compress	character: type of compression. One of "gzip", "bzip2", "xz", "none" or "unknown" (which means that if this is an save file it is from a later version of).
version	integer: the version of the save – usually 2 but 1 for very old files, and NA for other files.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## from a package top-level source directory
paths <- sort(Sys.glob(c("data/*.rda", "data/*.RData")))
(res <- checkRdaFiles(paths))
## pick out some that may need attention
bad <- is.na(res$ASCII) | res$ASCII | (res$size > 1e4 & res$compress == "none")
res[bad, ]

## End(Not run)
```

checkTnF *Check R Packages or Code for T/F*

Description

Checks the specified R package or code file for occurrences of `T` or `F`, and gathers the expression containing these. This is useful as in R `T` and `F` are just variables which are set to the logicals `TRUE` and `FALSE` by default, but are not reserved words and hence can be overwritten by the user. Hence, one should always use `TRUE` and `FALSE` for the logicals.

Usage

```
checkTnF(package, dir, file, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

`package`	a character string naming an installed package. If given, the installed R code and the examples in the documentation files of the package are checked. R code installed as an image file cannot be checked.
`dir`	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This must contain the subdirectory '`R`' (for R code), and should also contain '`man`' (for documentation). Only used if `package` is not given. If used, the R code files and the examples in the documentation files are checked.
`file`	the name of a file containing R code to be checked. Used if neither `package` nor `dir` are given.
`lib.loc`	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or `NULL`. The default value of `NULL` corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for `package`.

Value

An object of class `"checkTnF"` which is a list containing, for each file where occurrences of `T` or `F` were found, a list with the expressions containing these occurrences. The names of the list are the corresponding file names.

There is a `print` method for nicely displaying the information contained in such objects.

checkVignettes *Check Package Vignettes*

Description

Check all `Sweave` files of a package by running `Sweave` and/or `Stangle` on them. All R source code files found after the tangling step are `source`ed to check whether all code can be executed without errors.

Usage

```
checkVignettes(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL,
               tangle = TRUE, weave = TRUE, latex = FALSE,
               workdir = c("tmp", "src", "cur"),
               keepfiles = FALSE)
```

Arguments

package	a character string naming an installed package. If given, Sweave files are searched in subdirectory 'doc'.
dir	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This subdirectory 'inst/doc' is searched for Sweave files.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for package.
tangle	Perform a tangle and source the extracted code?
weave	Perform a weave?
latex	logical: if weave and latex are TRUE and there is no 'Makefile' in the vignettes directory, run the weaved files through pdflatex.
workdir	Directory used as working directory while checking the vignettes. If "tmp" then a temporary directory is created, this is the default. If "src" then the directory containing the vignettes itself is used, if "cur" then the current working directory of is used.
keepfiles	Delete files in the temporary directory? This option is ignored when workdir != "tmp".

Details

A 'vignette' is a file in the package's 'inst/doc' directory with extension '.Rnw' (preferred), '.Snw', '.Rtex' or '.Stex' (and lower-case versions are also accepted).

If tangle is true, this function runs Stangle to produce (one or more) code files from each vignette, then sources each code file in turn.

If weave is true, the vignettes are run through Sweave, which will produce a '.tex' file for each vignette. If latex is also true, texi2pdf is run on the '.tex' files from those vignettes which did not give errors in the previous steps.

Value

An object of class "checkVignettes", which is a list with the error messages found during the tangle, source, weave and latex steps. There is a print method for displaying the information contained in such objects.

check_packages_in_dir *Check Source Packages and Their Reverse Dependencies*

Description

Check source packages in a given directory, optionally with their reverse dependencies.

Usage

```
check_packages_in_dir(dir,
                      check_args = character(),
                      check_args_db = list(),
                      reverse = NULL,
                      check_env = character(),
                      xvfb = FALSE,
                      Ncpus = getOption("Ncpus", 1L),
                      clean = TRUE,
                      ...)

summarize_check_packages_in_dir_results(dir, all = TRUE,
                                        full = FALSE)
summarize_check_packages_in_dir_timings(dir, all = FALSE,
                                        full = FALSE)
summarize_check_packages_in_dir_depends(dir, all = FALSE)
```

Arguments

dir	a character string giving the path to the directory with the source '.tar.gz' files to be checked.
check_args	a character vector with arguments to be passed to R CMD check, or a list of length two of such character vectors to be used for checking packages and reverse dependencies, respectively.
check_args_db	a named list of character vectors with arguments to be passed to R CMD check, with names the respective package names.
reverse	a list with names partially matching "repos", "which", or "recursive", giving the repositories to use for locating reverse dependencies (default: getOption("repos")), the types of reverse dependencies (default: c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo")), and indicating whether to also check reverse dependencies of reverse dependencies (and so on), or NULL (default), in which case no reverse dependencies are checked.
check_env	a character vector of name=value strings to set environment variables for checking, or a list of length two of such character vectors to be used for checking packages and reverse dependencies, respectively.
xvfb	a logical indicating whether to perform checking inside a virtual framebuffer X server (Unix only), or a character vector of Xvfb options for doing so.
Ncpus	the number of parallel processes to use for parallel installation and checking.
clean	a logical indicating whether to remove the downloaded reverse dependency sources.
...	currently not used.

`all` a logical indicating whether to also summarize the reverse dependencies checked.

`full` a logical indicating whether to also give details for checks with non-ok results, or summarize check example timings (if available).

Details

`check_packages_in_dir` allows to conveniently check source package '`.tar.gz`' files in the given directory `dir`, along with their reverse dependencies as controlled by `reverse`.

The `"which"` component of `reverse` can also be a list, in which case reverse dependencies are obtained for each element of the list and the corresponding element of the `"recursive"` component of `reverse` (which is recycled as needed).

If needed, the source '`.tar.gz`' files of the reverse dependencies to be checked as well are downloaded into `dir` (and removed at the end if `clean` is true). Next, all packages (additionally) needed for checking are installed to the '`Library`' subdirectory of `dir`. Then, all '`.tar.gz`' files are checked using the given arguments and environment variables, with outputs and messages to files in the '`Outputs`' subdirectory of `dir`. The '`*.Rcheck`' directories with the check results of the reverse dependencies are renamed by prefixing their base names with '`rdepends_`'.

Results and timings can conveniently be summarized using `summarize_check_packages_in_dir_results` and `summarize_check_packages_in_dir_timings`, respectively.

Installation and checking is performed in parallel if `Ncpus` is greater than one: this will use `mclapply` on Unix and `parLapply` on Windows.

Note

This functionality is still experimental: interfaces may change in future versions.

---

codoc *Check Code/Documentation Consistency*

Description

Find inconsistencies between actual and documented 'structure' of objects in a package. `codoc` compares names and optionally also corresponding positions and default values of the arguments of functions. `codocClasses` and `codocData` compare slot names of S4 classes and variable names of data sets, respectively.

Usage

```
codoc(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL,
      use.values = NULL, verbose = getOption("verbose"))
codocClasses(package, lib.loc = NULL)
codocData(package, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

package	a character string naming an installed package.
dir	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This must contain the subdirectories 'man' with documentation sources (in Rd format) and 'R' with code. Only used if package is not given.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for package.
use.values	if FALSE, do not use function default values when comparing code and docs. Otherwise, compare *all* default values if TRUE, and only the ones documented in the usage otherwise (default).
verbose	a logical. If TRUE, additional diagnostics are printed.

Details

The purpose of codoc is to check whether the documented usage of function objects agrees with their formal arguments as defined in the code. This is not always straightforward, in particular as the usage information for methods to generic functions often employs the name of the generic rather than the method.

The following algorithm is used. If an installed package is used, it is loaded (unless it is the **base** package), after possibly detaching an already loaded version of the package. Otherwise, if the sources are used, the code files of the package are collected and sourced in a new environment. Then, the usage sections of the Rd files are extracted and parsed 'as much as possible' to give the formals documented. For interpreted functions in the code environment, the formals are compared between code and documentation according to the values of the argument use.values. Synopsis sections are used if present; their occurrence is reported if verbose is true.

If a package has a namespace both exported and unexported objects are checked, as well as registered S3 methods. (In the unlikely event of differences the order is exported objects in the package, registered S3 methods and finally objects in the namespace and only the first found is checked.)

Currently, the R documentation format has no high-level markup for the basic 'structure' of classes and data sets (similar to the usage sections for function synopses). Variable names for data frames in documentation objects obtained by suitably editing 'templates' created by prompt are recognized by codocData and used provided that the documentation object is for a single data frame (i.e., only has one alias). codocClasses analogously handles slot names for classes in documentation objects obtained by editing shells created by promptClass.

Help files named '*pkgname*-defunct.Rd' for the appropriate *pkgname* are checked more loosely, as they may have undocumented arguments.

Value

codoc returns an object of class "codoc". Currently, this is a list which, for each Rd object in the package where an inconsistency was found, contains an element with a list of the mismatches (which in turn are lists with elements code and docs, giving the corresponding arguments obtained from the function's code and documented usage).

codocClasses and codocData return objects of class "codocClasses" and "codocData", respectively, with a structure similar to class "codoc".

There are print methods for nicely displaying the information contained in such objects.

Note

The default for `use.values` has been changed from `FALSE` to `NULL`, for versions 1.9.0 and later.

See Also

undoc, QC

`compactPDF` *Compact PDF Files*

Description

Re-save PDF files (especially vignettes) more compactly. Support function for `R CMD build --compact-vignettes`.

Usage

```
compactPDF(paths,
           qpdf = Sys.which(Sys.getenv("R_QPDF", "qpdf")),
           gs_cmd = Sys.getenv("R_GSCMD", ""),
           gs_quality = Sys.getenv("GS_QUALITY", "none"),
           gs_extras = character())

## S3 method for class compactPDF
format(x, ratio = 0.9, diff = 1e4, ...)
```

Arguments

`paths`	A character vector of paths to PDF files, or a length-one character vector naming a directory, when all '`.pdf`' files in that directory will be used.
`qpdf`	Character string giving the path to the `qpdf` command. If empty, `qpdf` will not be used.
`gs_cmd`	Character string giving the path to the GhostScript executable, if that is to be used. On Windows this is the path to '`gswin32c.exe`' or '`gswin64c.exe`'. If `""` (the default), the function will try to find a platform-specific path to GhostScript where required.
`gs_quality`	A character string indicating the quality required: the options are `"none"` (so GhostScript is not used), `"printer"` (300dpi), `"ebook"` (150dpi) and `"screen"` (72dpi).
`gs_extras`	An optional character vector of further options to be passed to GhostScript.
`x`	An object of class `"compactPDF"`.
`ratio, diff`	Limits for reporting: files are only reported whose sizes are reduced both by a factor of `ratio` and by `diff` bytes.
`...`	Further arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

This by default makes use of qpdf, available from http://qpdf.sourceforge.net/ (including as a Windows binary) and included with the CRAN OS X distribution of . If gs_cmd is non-empty and gs_quality != "none", GhostScript will used first, then qpdf if it is available. If gs_quality != "none" and gs_cmd is "", an attempt will be made to find a GhostScript executable.

qpdf and/or gs_cmd are run on all PDF files found, and those which are reduced in size by at least 10% and 10Kb are replaced.

The strategy of our use of qpdf is to (losslessly) compress both PDF streams and objects. GhostScript compresses streams and more (including downsampling and compressing embedded images) and consequently is much slower and may lose quality (but can also produce much smaller PDF files). However, quality "ebook" is perfectly adequate for screen viewing and printing on laser printers.

Where PDF files are changed they will become PDF version 1.5 files: these have been supported by Acrobat Reader since version 6 in 2003, so this is very unlikely to cause difficulties.

Stream compression is what most often has large gains. Most PDF documents are generated with object compression, but this does not seem to be the default for MiKTeX's pdflatex. For some PDF files (and especially package vignettes), using GhostScript can dramatically reduce the space taken by embedded images (often screenshots).

Where both GhostScript and qpdf are selected (when gs_quality != "none" and both executables are found), they are run in that order and the size reductions apply to the total compression achieved.

Value

An object of class c("compactPDF", "data.frame"). This has two columns, the old and new sizes in bytes for the files that were changed.

There are format and print methods: the latter passes ... to the format method, so will accept ratio and diff arguments.

Note

The external tools used may change in future releases.

Versions of GhostScript 9.06 and later give several times better compression than 9.05 on some vignettes in CRAN packages.

See Also

resaveRdaFiles.

Many other (and sometimes more effective) tools to compact PDF files are available, including Adobe Acrobat (not Reader). See the 'Writing R Extensions' manual.

---

delimMatch *Delimited Pattern Matching*

Description

Match delimited substrings in a character vector, with proper nesting.

Usage

```
delimMatch(x, delim = c("{", "}"), syntax = "Rd")
```

Arguments

x	a character vector.
delim	a character vector of length 2 giving the start and end delimiters. Future versions might allow for arbitrary regular expressions.
syntax	currently, always the string "Rd" indicating Rd syntax (i.e., '%' starts a comment extending till the end of the line, and '\' escapes). Future versions might know about other syntax, perhaps via 'syntax tables' allowing to flexibly specify comment, escape, and quote characters.

Value

An integer vector of the same length as x giving the starting position (in characters) of the first match, or -1 if there is none, with attribute "match.length" giving the length (in characters) of the matched text (or -1 for no match).

See Also

regexpr for 'simple' pattern matching.

Examples

```
x <- c("\\value{foo}", "function(bar)")
delimMatch(x)
delimMatch(x, c("(", ")"))
```

---

dependsOnPkgs *Find Reverse Dependencies*

Description

Find 'reverse' dependencies of packages, that is those packages which depend on this one, and (optionally) so on recursively.

Usage

```
dependsOnPkgs(pkgs,
              dependencies = c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo"),
              recursive = TRUE, lib.loc = NULL,
              installed =
              installed.packages(lib.loc, fields = "Enhances"))
```

Arguments

pkgs	a character vector of package names.
dependencies	a character vector listing the types of dependencies, a subset of c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo", "Suggests", "Enhances"). Character string "all" is shorthand for that vector.
recursive	logical: should reverse dependencies of reverse dependencies (and so on) be included?
lib.loc	a character vector of library trees, or NULL for all known trees (see .libPaths).
installed	a result of calling installed.packages.

Value

A character vector of package names, which does not include any from pkgs.

Examples

```
## there are few dependencies in a vanilla R installation:
## lattice may not be installed
dependsOnPkgs("lattice")
```

---

encoded_text_to_latex *Translate non-ASCII Text to LaTeX Escapes*

Description

Translate non-ASCII characters in text to LaTeX escape sequences.

Usage

```
encoded_text_to_latex(x,
                      encoding = c("latin1", "latin2", "latin9",
                                   "UTF-8", "utf8"))
```

Arguments

x	a character vector.
encoding	the encoding to be assumed. "latin9" is officially ISO-8859-15 or Latin-9, but known as latin9 to LaTeX's inputenc package.

Details

Non-ASCII characters in x are replaced by an appropriate LaTeX escape sequence, or '?' if there is no appropriate sequence.

Even if there is an appropriate sequence, it may not be supported by the font in use. Hyphen is mapped to '\-'.

Value

A character vector of the same length as x.

See Also

iconv

Examples

```
x <- "fa\xE7ile"
encoded_text_to_latex(x, "latin1")
## Not run:
## create a tex file to show the upper half of 8-bit charsets
x <- rawToChar(as.raw(160:255), multiple = TRUE)
(x <- matrix(x, ncol = 16, byrow = TRUE))
xx <- x
xx[] <- encoded_text_to_latex(x, "latin1") # or latin2 or latin9
xx <- apply(xx, 1, paste, collapse = "&")
con <- file("test-encoding.tex", "w")
header <- c(
"\\documentclass{article}",
"\\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}",
"\\usepackage{Rd}",
"\\begin{document}",
"\\HeaderA{test}{}{test}",
"\\begin{Details}\relax",
"\\Tabular{ccccccccccccccc}{")
trailer <- c("}", "\\end{Details}", "\\end{document}")
writeLines(header, con)
writeLines(paste0(xx, "\\"), con)
writeLines(trailer, con)
close(con)
## and some UTF_8 chars
x <- intToUtf8(as.integer(
    c(160:383,0x0192,0x02C6,0x02C7,0x02CA,0x02D8,
      0x02D9, 0x02DD, 0x200C, 0x2018, 0x2019, 0x201C,
      0x201D, 0x2020, 0x2022, 0x2026, 0x20AC)),
               multiple = TRUE)
x <- matrix(x, ncol = 16, byrow = TRUE)
xx <- x
xx[] <- encoded_text_to_latex(x, "UTF-8")
xx <- apply(xx, 1, paste, collapse = "&")
con <- file("test-utf8.tex", "w")
writeLines(header, con)
writeLines(paste(xx, "\\", sep = ""), con)
writeLines(trailer, con)
close(con)

## End(Not run)
```

---

fileutils *File Utilities*

Description

Utilities for listing files, and manipulating file paths.

Usage

```
file_ext(x)
file_path_as_absolute(x)
file_path_sans_ext(x, compression = FALSE)

list_files_with_exts(dir, exts, all.files = FALSE,
                     full.names = TRUE)
list_files_with_type(dir, type, all.files = FALSE,
                     full.names = TRUE, OS_subdirs = .OStype())
```

Arguments

x	character vector giving file paths.
compression	logical: should compression extension '.gz', '.bz2' or '.xz' be removed first?
dir	a character string with the path name to a directory.
exts	a character vector of possible file extensions (excluding the leading dot).
all.files	a logical. If FALSE (default), only visible files are considered; if TRUE, all files are used.
full.names	a logical indicating whether the full paths of the files found are returned (default), or just the file names.
type	a character string giving the 'type' of the files to be listed, as characterized by their extensions. Currently, possible values are "code" (R code), "data" (data sets), "demo" (demos), "docs" (R documentation), and "vignette" (vignettes).
OS_subdirs	a character vector with the names of OS-specific subdirectories to possibly include in the listing of R code and documentation files. By default, the value of the environment variable R_OSTYPE, or if this is empty, the value of .Platform$OS.type, is used.

Details

file_ext returns the file (name) extensions (excluding the leading dot). (Only purely alphanumeric extensions are recognized.)

file_path_as_absolute turns a possibly relative file path absolute, performing tilde expansion if necessary. This is a wrapper for normalizePath. Currently, x must be a single existing path.

file_path_sans_ext returns the file paths without extensions (and the leading dot). (Only purely alphanumeric extensions are recognized.)

list_files_with_exts returns the paths or names of the files in directory dir with extension matching one of the elements of exts. Note that by default, full paths are returned, and that only visible files are used.

list_files_with_type returns the paths of the files in dir of the given 'type', as determined by the extensions recognized by . When listing R code and documentation files, files in OS-specific subdirectories are included if present according to the value of OS_subdirs. Note that by default, full paths are returned, and that only visible files are used.

See Also

file.path, file.info, list.files

Examples

```
dir <- file.path(R.home(), "library", "stats")
list_files_with_exts(file.path(dir, "demo"), "R")
list_files_with_type(file.path(dir, "demo"), "demo") # the same
file_path_sans_ext(list.files(file.path(R.home("modules"))))
```

`find_gs_cmd` *Find a GhostScript Executable*

Description

Find a GhostScript executable in a cross-platform way.

Usage

```
find_gs_cmd(gs_cmd = "")
```

Arguments

`gs_cmd`	The name, full or partial path of a GhostScript executable.

Details

The details differ by platform.

On a Unix-alike, the GhostScript executable is usually called `gs`. The name (and possibly path) of the command is taken first from argument `gs_cmd` then from the environment variable `R_GSCMD` and default `gs`. This is then looked for on the system path and the value returned if a match is found.

On Windows, the name of the command is taken from argument `gs_cmd` then from the environment variables `R_GSCMD` and `GSC`. If neither of those produces a suitable command name, `gswin64c` and `gswin32c` are tried in turn. In all cases the command is looked for on the system `PATH`.

Note that on Windows (and some other OSes) there are separate GhostScript executables to display Postscript/PDF files and to manipulate them: this function looks for the latter.

Value

A character string giving the full path to a GhostScript executable if one was found, otherwise an empty string.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Suppose a Solaris system has GhostScript 9.00 on the path and
## 9.07 in /opt/csw/bin.  Then one might set
Sys.setenv(R_GSCMD = "/opt/csw/bin/gs")

## End(Not run)
```

getDepList *Functions to Retrieve Dependency Information*

Description

Given a dependency matrix, will create a DependsList object for that package which will include the dependencies for that matrix, which ones are installed, which unresolved dependencies were found online, which unresolved dependencies were not found online, and any R dependencies.

Usage

```
getDepList(depMtrx, instPkgs, recursive = TRUE, local = TRUE,
           reduce = TRUE, lib.loc = NULL)

pkgDepends(pkg, recursive = TRUE, local = TRUE, reduce = TRUE,
           lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

depMtrx	A dependency matrix as from package.dependencies
pkg	The name of the package
instPkgs	A matrix specifying all packages installed on the local system, as from installed.packages
recursive	Whether or not to include indirect dependencies
local	Whether or not to search only locally
reduce	Whether or not to collapse all sets of dependencies to a minimal value
lib.loc	What libraries to use when looking for installed packages. NULL indicates all library directories in the user's .libPaths().

Details

The function pkgDepends is a convenience function which wraps getDepList and takes as input a package name. It will then query installed.packages and also generate a dependency matrix, calling getDepList with this information and returning the result.

These functions will retrieve information about the dependencies of the matrix, resulting in a DependsList object. This is a list with four elements:

Depends A vector of the dependencies for this package.

Installed A vector of the dependencies which have been satisfied by the currently installed packages.

Found A list representing the dependencies which are not in Installed but were found online. This list has element names which are the URLs for the repositories in which packages were found and the elements themselves are vectors of package names which were found in the respective repositories. If local = TRUE, the Found element will always be empty.

R Any R version dependencies.

If recursive is TRUE, any package that is specified as a dependency will in turn have its dependencies included (and so on), these are known as indirect dependencies. If recursive is FALSE, only the dependencies directly stated by the package will be used.

If local is TRUE, the system will only look at the user's local install and not online to find unresolved dependencies.

If reduce is TRUE, the system will collapse the fields in the DependsList object such that a minimal set of dependencies are specified (for instance if there was 'foo, foo (>= 1.0.0), foo (>= 1.3.0)', it would only return 'foo (>= 1.3.0)').

Value

An object of class "DependsList".

Author(s)

Jeff Gentry

See Also

installFoundDepends

Examples

```
pkgDepends("tools", local = FALSE)
```

---

getVignetteInfo *Get information on installed vignettes.*

Description

This function gets information on installed vignettes.

Usage

```
getVignetteInfo(package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL, all = TRUE)
```

Arguments

package	Which package to look in, or NULL for all packages.
lib.loc	Which library to look in.
all	Whether to search all installed packages, or just attached packages.

Value

A matrix with columns

Package	the name of the package
Dir	the directory where the package is installed
Topic	the name of the vignette
File	the base filename of the source of the vignette
Title	the title of the vignette
R	the tangled R source from the vignette
PDF	the PDF or HTML file for display

Note

The last column of the result is named `PDF` for historical reasons, but it may contain a filename of a PDF or HTML document.

See Also

`pkgVignettes` is a similar function that can work on an uninstalled package.

Examples

```
getVignetteInfo("grid")
```

HTMLheader *Generate a standard HTML header for R help*

Description

This function generates the standard HTML header used on R help pages.

Usage

```
HTMLheader(title = "R", logo = TRUE, up = NULL,
           top = file.path(Rhome, "doc/html/index.html"),
           Rhome = "",
           css = file.path(Rhome, "doc/html/R.css"),
           headerTitle = paste("R:", title),
           outputEncoding = "UTF-8")
```

Arguments

`title`	The title to display and use in the HTML headers. Should have had any HTML escaping already done.
`logo`	Whether to display the logo after the title.
`up`	Which page (if any) to link to on the "up" button.
`top`	Which page (if any) to link to on the "top" button.
`Rhome`	A **relative** path to the R home directory. See the 'Details'.
`css`	The relative URL for the Cascading Style Sheet.
`headerTitle`	The title used in the headers.
`outputEncoding`	The declared encoding for the whole page.

Details

The `up` and `top` links should be relative to the current page. The `Rhome` path default works with dynamic help; for static help, a relative path (e.g., '`../..`') to it should be used.

Value

A character vector containing the lines of an HTML header which can be used to start a page in the R help system.

Examples

```
cat(HTMLheader("This is a sample header"), sep="\n")
```

`HTMLlinks` *Collect HTML Links from Package Documentation*

Description

Compute relative file paths for URLs to other package's installed HTML documentation.

Usage

```
findHTMLlinks(pkgDir = "", lib.loc = NULL, level = 0:2)
```

Arguments

`pkgDir`	the top-level directory of an installed package. The default indicates no package.
`lib.loc`	character vector describing the location of library trees to scan: the default indicates `.libPaths()`.
`level`	Which level(s) to include.

Details

`findHTMLlinks` tries to resolve links from one help page to another. It uses in decreasing priority

- The package in `pkgDir`: this is used when converting HTML help for that package (level 0).
- The base and recommended packages (level 1).
- Other packages found in the library trees specified by `lib.loc` in the order of the trees and alphabetically within a library tree (level 2).

Value

A named character vector of file paths, relative to the '`html`' directory of an installed package. So these are of the form '`"../../somepkg/html/sometopic.html"`'.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch, Brian Ripley

`installFoundDepends` *A function to install unresolved dependencies*

Description

This function will take the `Found` element of a `pkgDependsList` object and attempt to install all of the listed packages from the specified repositories.

Usage

```
installFoundDepends(depPkgList, ...)
```

Arguments

`depPkgList`	A `Found` element from a `pkgDependsList` object
`...`	Arguments to pass on to `install.packages`

Details

This function takes as input the `Found` list from a `pkgDependsList` object. This list will have element names being URLs corresponding to repositories and the elements will be vectors of package names. For each element, `install.packages` is called for that URL to install all packages listed in the vector.

Author(s)

Jeff Gentry

See Also

`pkgDepends`, `install.packages`

Examples

```
## Set up a temporary directory to install packages to
tmp <- tempfile()
dir.create(tmp)

pDL <- pkgDepends("tools", local = FALSE)
installFoundDepends(pDL$Found, destdir = tmp)
```

make_translations_pkg *Package the Current Translations in the sources*

Description

A utility for R Core members to prepare a package of updated translations.

Usage

```
make_translations_pkg(srcdir, outDir = ".", append = "-1")
```

Arguments

srcdir	The source directory.
outDir	The directory into which to place the prepared package.
append	The suffix for the package version number, e.g. `3.0.0-1` will be the default in 3.0.0.

Details

This extracts the translations in a current source distribution and packages them as a source package called **translations** which can be distributed on CRAN and installed by `update.packages`. This allows e.g. the translations shipped in 3.x.y to be updated to those currently in '`R-patched`', even by a user without administrative privileges.

The package has a '`Depends`' field which restricts it to versions `3.x.*` for a single `x`.

md5sum *Compute MD5 Checksums*

Description

Compute the 32-byte MD5 hashes of one or more files.

Usage

```
md5sum(files)
```

Arguments

files	character. The paths of file(s) whose contents are to be hashed.

Details

A MD5 'hash' or 'checksum' or 'message digest' is a 128-bit summary of the file contents represented by 32 hexadecimal digits. Files with different MD5 sums are different: only very exceptionally (and usually with the intent to deceive) are those with the same sums different.

On Windows all files are read in binary mode (as the `md5sum` utilities there do): on other OSes the files are read in the default mode (almost always text mode where there is more than one).

MD5 sums are used as a check that packages have been unpacked correctly and not subsequently modified.

Value

A character vector of the same length as `files`, with names equal to `files`. The elements will be `NA` for non-existent or unreadable files, otherwise a 32-character string of hexadecimal digits.

Source

The underlying C code was written by Ulrich Drepper and extracted from a 2001 release of `glibc`.

See Also

`checkMD5sums`

Examples

```
as.vector(md5sum(dir(R.home(), pattern = "^COPY", full.names = TRUE)))
```

---

package.dependencies *Check Package Dependencies*

Description

Parses and checks the dependencies of a package against the currently installed version of R (and other packages).

Usage

```
package.dependencies(x, check = FALSE,
                     depLevel =
                     c("Depends", "Imports", "Suggests"))
```

Arguments

`x`	A matrix of package descriptions as returned by `available.packages`.
`check`	If `TRUE`, return logical vector of check results. If `FALSE`, return parsed list of dependencies.
`depLevel`	Whether to look for `Depends` or `Suggests` level dependencies.

Details

Currently we only check if the package conforms with the currently running version of R. In the future we might add checks for inter-package dependencies.

See Also

`update.packages`

package_dependencies *Computations on the Dependency Hierarchy of Packages*

Description

Find (recursively) dependencies or reverse dependencies of packages.

Usage

```
package_dependencies(packages = NULL, db,
        which = c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo"),
recursive = FALSE, reverse = FALSE)
```

Arguments

packages	a character vector of package names.
db	character matrix as from available.packages(), or data frame variants thereof. Alternatively, a package database like the one available from http://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/packages.rds.
which	a character vector listing the types of dependencies, a subset of c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo", "Suggests", "Enhances"). Character string "all" is shorthand for that vector, character string "most" for the same vector without "Enhances".
recursive	logical: should (reverse) dependencies of (reverse) dependencies (and so on) be included?
reverse	logical: if FALSE (default), regular dependencies are calculated, otherwise reverse dependencies.

Value

Named list with one element for each package in argument packages, each consists of a character vector naming the (recursive) (reverse) dependencies of that package.

For given packages which are not found in the db, NULL entries are returned, as opposed to character(0) entries which indicate no dependencies.

See Also

dependsOnPkgs, and package.dependencies for checking dependencies

Examples

```
## Not run:
pdb <- available.packages()
deps <- package_dependencies(packages = "MASS", pdb,
                    which = c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo", "Suggests"),
                    recursive = TRUE, reverse = TRUE)
length(deps$MASS)

## End(Not run)
```

parseLatex *These experimental functions work with a subset of LaTeX code.*

Description

The parseLatex function parses LaTeX source, producing a structured object; deparseLatex reverses the process. The latexToUtf8 function takes a LaTeX object, and processes a number of different macros to convert them into the corresponding UTF-8 characters.

Usage

```
parseLatex(text, filename = deparse(substitute(text)),
           verbose = FALSE,
           verbatim = c("verbatim", "verbatim*",
                        "Sinput", "Soutput"))
deparseLatex(x, dropBraces = FALSE)
latexToUtf8(x)
```

Arguments

text	A character vector containing LaTeX source code.
filename	A filename to use in syntax error messages.
verbose	If TRUE, print debug error messages.
verbatim	A character vector containing the names of LaTeX environments holding verbatim text.
x	A "LaTeX" object.
dropBraces	Drop unnecessary braces when displaying a "LaTeX" object.

Details

The parser does not recognize all legal LaTeX code, only relatively simple examples. It does not associate arguments with macros, that needs to be done after parsing, with knowledge of the definitions of each macro. The main intention for this function is to process simple LaTeX code used in bibliographic references, not fully general LaTeX documents.

Verbose text is allowed in two forms: the \verb macro (with single character delimiters), and environments whose names are listed in the verbatim argument.

Value

The parseLatex() function returns a recursive object of class "LaTeX". Each of the entries in this object will have a "latex_tag" attribute identifying its syntactic role.

The deparseLatex() function returns a single element character vector, possibly containing embedded newlines.

The latexToUtf8() function returns a modified version of the "LaTeX" object that was passed to it.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

Examples

```
latex <- parseLatex("fa\\c{c}ile")
deparseLatex(latexToUtf8(latex))
```

---

parse_Rd *Parse an Rd file*

Description

This function reads an R documentation (Rd) file and parses it, for processing by other functions.

Usage

```
parse_Rd(file, srcfile = NULL, encoding = "unknown",
         verbose = FALSE, fragment = FALSE, warningCalls = TRUE)
## S3 method for class Rd
print(x, deparse = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class Rd
as.character(x, deparse = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

file	A filename or text-mode connection. At present filenames work best.
srcfile	NULL, or a "srcfile" object. See the 'Details' section.
encoding	Encoding to be assumed for input strings.
verbose	Logical indicating whether detailed parsing information should be printed.
fragment	Logical indicating whether file represents a complete Rd file, or a fragment.
warningCalls	Logical: should parser warnings include the call?
x	An object of class Rd.
deparse	If TRUE, attempt to reinstate the escape characters so that the resulting characters will parse to the same object.
...	Further arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function parses 'Rd' files according to the specification given in http://developer.r-project.org/parseRd.pdf.

It generates a warning for each parse error and attempts to continue parsing. In order to continue, it is generally necessary to drop some parts of the file, so such warnings should not be ignored.

Files without a marked encoding are by default assumed to be in the native encoding. An alternate default can be set using the encoding argument. All text in files is translated to the UTF-8 encoding in the parsed object.

Value

parse_Rd returns an object of class "Rd". The internal format of this object is subject to change. The as.character() and print() methods defined for the class return character vectors and print them, respectively.

Files without a marked encoding are by default assumed to be in the native encoding. An alternate default can be set using the encoding argument. All text in files is translated to the UTF-8 encoding in the parsed object.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

References

http://developer.r-project.org/parseRd.pdf

See Also

Rd2HTML for the converters that use the output of parse_Rd().

---

pskill *Kill a Process*

Description

pskill sends a signal to a process, usually to terminate it.

Usage

```
pskill(pid, signal = SIGTERM)

SIGHUP
SIGINT
SIGQUIT
SIGKILL
SIGTERM
SIGSTOP
SIGTSTP
SIGCHLD
SIGUSR1
SIGUSR2
```

Arguments

pid	positive integers: one or more process IDs as returned by Sys.getpid.
signal	integer, most often one of the symbolic constants.

Details

Signals are a C99 concept, but only a small number are required to be supported (of those listed, only SIGINT and SIGTERM). They are much more widely used on POSIX operating systems (which should define all of those listed here), which also support a kill system call to send a signal to a process, most often to terminate it. Function pskill provides a wrapper: it silently ignores invalid values of its arguments, including zero or negative pids.

In normal use on a Unix-alike, Ctrl-C sends SIGINT, Ctrl-\ sends SIGQUIT and Ctrl-Z sends SIGTSTP: that and SIGSTOP suspend a process which can be resumed by SIGCONT.

The signals are small integers, but the actual numeric values are not standardized (and most do differ between OSes). The SIG* objects contain the appropriate integer values for the current platform (or NA_INTEGER_ if the signal is not defined).

Only SIGINT and SIGKILL will be defined on Windows, and pskill will always use the Windows system call TerminateProcess.

Value

A logical vector of the same length as pid, TRUE (for success) or FALSE, invisibly.

See Also

Package **parallel** has several means to launch child processes which record the process IDs.

psnice

Examples

```
## Not run:
pskill(c(237, 245), SIGKILL)

## End(Not run)
```

---

psnice *Get or Set the Priority (Niceness) of a Process*

Description

Get or set the 'niceness' of the current process, or one or more other processes.

Usage

```
psnice(pid = Sys.getpid(), value = NA_integer_)
```

Arguments

pid	positive integers: the process IDs of one of more processes: defaults to the session process.
value	The niceness to be set, or NA for an enquiry.

Details

POSIX operating systems have a concept of process priorities, usually from 0 to 39 (or 40) with 20 being a normal priority and (somewhat confusingly) larger numeric values denoting lower priority. To add to the confusion, there is a 'niceness' value, the amount by which the priority numerically exceeds 20 (which can be negative). Processes with high niceness will receive less CPU time than those with normal priority. On some OSes, processes with niceness `+19` are only run when the system would otherwise be idle.

On many OSes utilities such as `top` report the priority and not the niceness. Niceness is used by the utility '`/usr/bin/renice`': '`/usr/bin/nice`' (and `/usr/bin/renice -n`) specifies an *increment* in niceness.

Only privileged users (usually super-users) can lower the niceness.

Windows has a slightly different concept of 'priority classes'. We have mapped the idle priority to niceness `19`, 'below normal' to `15`, normal to `0`, 'above normal' to `-5` and 'realtime' to `-10`. Unlike Unix-alikes, a non-privileged user can increase the priority class on Windows (but using 'realtime' is inadvisable).

Value

An integer vector of *previous* niceness values, `NA` if unknown for any reason.

See Also

Various functions in package **parallel** create child processes whose priority may need to be changed.

`pskill`.

`QC` *QC Checks for R Code and/or Documentation*

Description

Functions for performing various quality checks.

Usage

```
checkDocFiles(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL)
checkDocStyle(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL)
checkReplaceFuns(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL)
checkS3methods(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

`package`	a character string naming an installed package.
`dir`	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This should contain the subdirectories '`R`' (for R code) and '`man`' with documentation sources (in Rd format). Only used if `package` is not given.
`lib.loc`	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or `NULL`. The default value of `NULL` corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for `package`.

Details

`checkDocFiles` checks, for all Rd files in a package, whether all arguments shown in the usage sections of the Rd file are documented in its arguments section. It also reports duplicated entries in the arguments section, and 'over-documented' arguments which are given in the arguments section but not in the usage. Note that the match is for the usage section and not a possibly existing synopsis section, as the usage is what gets displayed.

`checkDocStyle` investigates how (S3) methods are shown in the usages of the Rd files in a package. It reports the methods shown by their full name rather than using the Rd \method markup for indicating S3 methods. Earlier versions of also reported about methods shown along with their generic, which typically caused problems for the documentation of the primary argument in the generic and its methods. With \method now being expanded in a way that class information is preserved, joint documentation is no longer necessarily a problem. (The corresponding information is still contained in the object returned by `checkDocStyle`.)

`checkReplaceFuns` checks whether replacement functions or S3/S4 replacement methods in the package R code have their final argument named `value`.

`checkS3methods` checks whether all S3 methods defined in the package R code have all arguments of the corresponding generic, with positional arguments of the generics in the same positions for the method. As an exception, the first argument of a formula method *may* be called `formula` even if this is not the name used by the generic. The rules when `...` is involved are subtle: see the source code. Functions recognized as S3 generics are those with a call to `UseMethod` in their body, internal S3 generics (see InternalMethods), and S3 group generics (see `Math`). Possible dispatch under a different name is not taken into account. The generics are sought first in the given package, then in the **base** package and (currently) the packages **graphics**, **stats**, and **utils** added in R 1.9.0 by splitting the former **base**, and, if an installed package is tested, also in the loaded namespaces/packages listed in the package's 'DESCRIPTION' Depends field.

If using an installed package, the checks needing access to all R objects of the package will load the package (unless it is the **base** package), after possibly detaching an already loaded version of the package.

Value

The functions return objects of class the same as the respective function names containing the information about problems detected. There are `print` methods for nicely displaying the information contained in such objects.

`Rd2HTML` *Rd Converters*

Description

These functions take the output of the `parse_Rd` function and produce a help page from it. As they are mainly intended for internal use, their interfaces are subject to change.

Usage

```
Rd2HTML(Rd, out = "", package = "", defines = .Platform$OS.type,
        Links = NULL, Links2 = NULL,
        stages = "render", outputEncoding = "UTF-8",
        dynamic = FALSE, no_links = FALSE, fragment = FALSE,
```

```
        stylesheet = "R.css", ...)

Rd2txt(Rd, out = "", package = "", defines = .Platform$OS.type,
       stages = "render", outputEncoding = "",
       fragment = FALSE, options, ...)

Rd2latex(Rd, out = "", defines = .Platform$OS.type,
         stages = "render", outputEncoding = "ASCII",
         fragment = FALSE, ..., writeEncoding = TRUE)

Rd2ex(Rd, out = "", defines = .Platform$OS.type,
      stages = "render", outputEncoding = "UTF-8",
      commentDontrun = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`Rd`	a filename or Rd object to use as input.
`out`	a filename or connection object to which to write the output.
`package`	the package to list in the output.
`defines`	string(s) to use in #ifdef tests.
`stages`	at which stage (`"build"`, `"install"`, or `"render"`) should \Sexpr macros be executed? See the notes below.
`outputEncoding`	see the 'Encodings' section below.
`dynamic`	logical: set links for render-time resolution by dynamic help system.
`no_links`	logical: suppress hyperlinks to other help topics. Used by `R CMD Rdconv`.
`fragment`	logical: should fragments of Rd files be accepted? See the notes below.
`stylesheet`	character: a URL for a stylesheet to be used in the header of the HTML output page.
`Links, Links2`	`NULL` or a named (by topics) character vector of links, as returned by `findHTMLlinks`.
`options`	An optional named list of options to pass to `Rd2txt_options`.
`...`	additional parameters to pass to `parse_Rd` when `Rd` is a filename.
`writeEncoding`	should \inputencoding lines be written in the file for non-ASCII encodings?
`commentDontrun`	should \dontrun sections be commented out?

Details

These functions convert help documents: `Rd2HTML` produces HTML, `Rd2txt` produces plain text, `Rd2latex` produces LaTeX. `Rd2ex` extracts the examples in the format used by `example` and utilities.

Each of the functions accepts a filename for an Rd file, and will use `parse_Rd` to parse it before applying the conversions or checks.

The difference between arguments `Link` and `Link2` is that links are looked in them in turn, so lazy-evaluation can be used to only do a second-level search for links if required.

Note that the default for `Rd2latex` is to output ASCII, including using the second option of \enc markup. This was chosen because use of UTF-8 in LaTeX requires version '2005/12/01' or later, and even with that version the coverage of UTF-8 glyphs is not extensive (and not even as complete as Latin-1).

`Rd2txt` will format text paragraphs to a width determined by `width`, with appropriate margins. The default is to be close to the rendering in versions of $< 2.10.0$.

`Rd2txt` will use directional quotes (see `sQuote`) if option `"useFancyQuotes"` is true (the default) and the current encoding is UTF-8.

Various aspects of formatting by `Rd2txt` are controlled by the `options` argument, documented with the `Rd2txt_options` function. Changes made using `options` are temporary, those made with `Rd2txt_options` are persistent.

When `fragment = TRUE`, the `Rd` file will be rendered with no processing of \Sexpr elements or conditional defines using #ifdef or #ifndef. Normally a fragment represents text within a section, but if the first element of the fragment is a section macro, the whole fragment will be rendered as a series of sections, without the usual sorting.

Value

These functions are executed mainly for the side effect of writing the converted help page. Their value is the name of the output file (invisibly). For `Rd2latex`, the output name is given an attribute `"latexEncoding"` giving the encoding of the file in a form suitable for use with the LaTeX '`inputenc`' package.

Encodings

Rd files are normally intended to be rendered on a wide variety of systems, so care must be taken in the encoding of non-ASCII characters. In general, any such encoding should be declared using the '`encoding`' section for there to be any hope of correct rendering.

For output, the `outputEncoding` argument will be used: `outputEncoding = ""` will choose the native encoding for the current system.

If the text cannot be converted to the `outputEncoding`, byte substitution will be used (see `iconv`): `Rd2latex` and `Rd2ex` give a warning.

Note

The \Sexpr macro is a new addition to Rd files. It includes code that will be executed at one of three times: *build* time (when a package's source code is built into a tarball), *install* time (when the package is installed or built into a binary package), and *render* time (when the man page is converted to a readable format).

For example, this man page was:

1. built on 2015-03-11 at 11:43:55,
2. installed on 2015-03-11 at 11:43:55, and
3. rendered on 2015-03-11 at 11:55:04.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch, Brian Ripley

References

`http://developer.r-project.org/parseRd.pdf`

See Also

`parse_Rd`, `checkRd`, `findHTMLlinks`, `Rd2txt_options`.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Simulate install and rendering of this page in HTML and text format:

Rd <- file.path("src/library/tools/man/Rd2HTML.Rd")

outfile <- tempfile(fileext = ".html")
browseURL(Rd2HTML(Rd, outfile, package = "tools",
          stages = c("install", "render")))

outfile <- tempfile(fileext = ".txt")
file.show(Rd2txt(Rd, outfile, package = "tools",
          stages = c("install", "render")))

checkRd(Rd) # A stricter test than Rd2HTML uses

## End(Not run)
```

Rd2txt_options *Set formatting options for text help*

Description

This function sets various options for displaying text help.

Usage

```
Rd2txt_options(...)
```

Arguments

...	A list containing named options, or options passed as individual named arguments. See below for currently defined ones.

Details

This function persistently sets various formatting options for the Rd2txt function which is used in displaying text format help. Currently defined options are:

width (default 80): The width of the output page.

minIndent (default 10): The minimum indent to use in a list.

extraIndent (default 4): The extra indent to use in each level of nested lists.

sectionIndent (default 5): The indent level for a section.

sectionExtra (default 2): The extra indentation for each nested section level.

itemBullet (default `"* "`, with the asterisk replaced by a Unicode bullet in UTF-8 and most Windows locales): The symbol to use as a bullet in itemized lists.

enumFormat : A function to format item numbers in enumerated lists.

showURLs (default FALSE): Whether to show URLs when expanding \href tags.

code_quote (default TRUE): Whether to render \code and similar with single quotes.

underline_titles default TRUE): Whether to render section titles with underlines (via backspacing).

Value

If called with no arguments, returns all option settings in a list. Otherwise, it changes the named settings and invisibly returns their previous values.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

See Also

Rd2txt

Examples

```
# The itemBullet is locale-specific
saveOpts <- Rd2txt_options()
saveOpts
Rd2txt_options(minIndent = 4)
Rd2txt_options()
Rd2txt_options(saveOpts)
Rd2txt_options()
```

Rdiff *Difference R Output Files*

Description

Given two output files, compute differences ignoring headers, footers and some other differences.

Usage

```
Rdiff(from, to, useDiff = FALSE, forEx = FALSE,
      nullPointers = TRUE, Log = FALSE)
```

Arguments

from, to	filepaths to be compared
useDiff	should diff always be used to compare results?
forEx	logical: extra pruning for '-Ex.Rout' files to exclude the header.
nullPointers	logical: should the displayed addresses of pointers be set to 0x00000000 before comparison?
Log	logical: should the returned value include a log of differences found?

Details

The startup banner and any timing information from `R CMD BATCH` are removed from both files, together with lines about loading packages. UTF-8 fancy quotes (see `sQuote`) and on Windows, Windows' so-called 'smart quotes', are mapped to a simple quote. Addresses of environments, compiled bytecode and other exotic types expressed as hex addresses (e.g., `<environment: 0x12345678>`) are mapped to `0x00000000`. The files are then compared line-by-line. If there are the same number of lines and `useDiff` is false, a simple `diff -b` -like display of differences is printed (which ignores trailing spaces and differences in numbers of consecutive spaces), otherwise `diff -bw` is called on the edited files. (This tries to ignore all differences in whitespace: note that flag '`-w`' is not required by POSIX but is supported by GNU, Solaris and FreeBSD versions.)

This can compare uncompressed PDF files, ignoring differences in creation and modification dates.

Value

If `Log` is true, a list with components `status` (see below) and `out`, a character vector of descriptions of differences, possibly of zero length.

Otherwise, a status indicator, `0L` if and only if no differences were found.

See Also

The shell script run as `R CMD Rdiff`.

Rdindex *Generate Index from Rd Files*

Description

Print a 2-column index table with names and titles from given R documentation files to a given output file or connection. The titles are nicely formatted between two column positions (typically 25 and 72, respectively).

Usage

```
Rdindex(RdFiles, outFile = "", type = NULL,
        width = 0.9 * getOption("width"), indent = NULL)
```

Arguments

`RdFiles`	a character vector specifying the Rd files to be used for creating the index, either by giving the paths to the files, or the path to a single directory with the sources of a package.
`outFile`	a connection, or a character string naming the output file to print to. `""` (the default) indicates output to the console.
`type`	a character string giving the documentation type of the Rd files to be included in the index, or `NULL` (the default). The type of an Rd file is typically specified via the \docType tag; if `type` is `"data"`, Rd files whose *only* keyword is `datasets` are included as well.
`width`	a positive integer giving the target column for wrapping lines in the output.
`indent`	a positive integer specifying the indentation of the second column. Must not be greater than `width/2`, and defaults to `width/3`.

Details

If a name is not a valid alias, the first alias (or the empty string if there is none) is used instead.

`RdTextFilter` *Select text in an Rd file.*

Description

This function blanks out all non-text in an Rd file, for spell checking or other uses.

Usage

```
RdTextFilter(ifile, encoding = "unknown", keepSpacing = TRUE,
             drop = character(), keep = character())
```

Arguments

`ifile`	An input file specified as a filename or connection, or an `"Rd"` object from `parse_Rd`.
`encoding`	An encoding name to pass to `parse_Rd`.
`keepSpacing`	Whether to try to leave the text in the same lines and columns as in the original file.
`drop`	Additional sections of the Rd to drop.
`keep`	Sections of the Rd file to keep.

Details

This function parses the Rd file, then walks through it, element by element. Items with tag `"TEXT"` are kept in the same position as they appeared in the original file, while other parts of the file are replaced with blanks, so a spell checker such as `aspell` can check only the text and report the position in the original file. (If `keepSpacing` is `FALSE`, blank filling will not occur, and text will not be output in its original location.)

By default, the tags \S3method, \S4method, \command, \docType, \email, \encoding, \file, \keyword, \link, \linkS4class, \method, \pkg, and \var are skipped. Additional tags can be skipped by listing them in the `drop` argument; listing tags in the `keep` argument will stop them from being skipped. It is also possible to `keep` any of the `c("RCODE", "COMMENT", "VERB")` tags, which correspond to R-like code, comments, and verbatim text respectively, or to drop `"TEXT"`.

Value

A character vector which if written to a file, one element per line, would duplicate the text elements of the original Rd file.

Note

The filter attempts to merge text elements into single words when markup in the Rd file is used to highlight just the start of a word.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

See Also

aspell, for which this is an acceptable filter.

Rdutils *Rd Utilities*

Description

Utilities for computing on the information in Rd objects.

Usage

```
Rd_db(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

package	a character string naming an installed package.
dir	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This should contain the subdirectory 'man' with documentation sources (in Rd format). Only used if package is not given.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for package.

Details

Rd_db builds a simple database of all Rd objects in a package, as a list of the results of running parse_Rd on the Rd source files in the package and processing platform conditionals.

See Also

parse_Rd

Examples

```
## Build the Rd db for the (installed) base package.
db <- Rd_db("base")

## Keyword metadata per Rd object.
keywords <- lapply(db, tools:::.Rd_get_metadata, "keyword")
## Tabulate the keyword entries.
kw_table <- sort(table(unlist(keywords)))
## The 5 most frequent ones:
rev(kw_table)[1 : 5]
## The "most informative" ones:
kw_table[kw_table == 1]

## Concept metadata per Rd file.
concepts <- lapply(db, tools:::.Rd_get_metadata, "concept")
## How many files already have \concept metadata?
sum(sapply(concepts, length) > 0)
## How many concept entries altogether?
length(unlist(concepts))
```

read.00Index *Read 00Index-style Files*

Description

Read item/description information from '00Index'-like files. Such files are description lists rendered in tabular form, and currently used for the 'INDEX' and 'demo/00Index' files of add-on packages.

Usage

```
read.00Index(file)
```

Arguments

file	the name of a file to read data values from. If the specified file is "", then input is taken from the keyboard (in this case input can be terminated by a blank line). Alternatively, file can be a connection, which will be opened if necessary, and if so closed at the end of the function call.

Value

A character matrix with 2 columns named "Item" and "Description" which hold the items and descriptions.

See Also

formatDL for the inverse operation of creating a 00Index-style file from items and their descriptions.

showNonASCII *Pick Out Non-ASCII Characters*

Description

This function prints elements of a character vector which contain non-ASCII bytes, printing such bytes as a escape like '<fc>'.

Usage

```
showNonASCII(x)

showNonASCIIfile(file)
```

Arguments

x	a character vector.
file	path to a file.

Details

This was originally written to help detect non-portable text in files in packages.

It prints all element of x which contain non-ASCII characters, preceded by the element number and with non-ASCII bytes highlighted *via* `iconv(sub = "byte")`.

Value

The elements of x containing non-ASCII characters will be returned invisibly.

Examples

```
out <- c(
"fa\xE7ile test of showNonASCII():",
"\\details{",
"   This is a good line",
"   This has an \xfcmlaut in it.",
"   OK again.",
"}")
f <- tempfile()
cat(out, file = f, sep = "\n")

showNonASCIIfile(f)
unlink(f)
```

---

startDynamicHelp *Start the Dynamic HTML Help System*

Description

This function starts the internal help server, so that HTML help pages are rendered when requested.

Usage

```
startDynamicHelp(start = TRUE)
```

Arguments

start	logical: whether to start or shut down the dynamic help system.

Details

This function starts the internal HTTP server, which runs on the loopback interface (`127.0.0.1`). If `options("help.ports")` is set to a vector of integer values, `startDynamicHelp` will try those ports in order; otherwise, it tries up to 10 random ports to find one not in use. It can be disabled by setting the environment variable `R_DISABLE_HTTPD` to a non-empty value.

`startDynamicHelp` is called by functions that need to use the server, so would rarely be called directly by a user.

Note that `options(help_type = "html")` must be set to actually make use of HTML help, although it might be the default for an installation.

If the server cannot be started or is disabled, `help.start` will be unavailable and requests for HTML help will give text help (with a warning).

The browser in use does need to be able to connect to the loopback interface: occasionally it is set to use a proxy for HTTP on all interfaces, which will not work – the solution is to add an exception for `127.0.0.1`.

Value

The chosen port number is returned invisibly (which will be `0` if the server has been stopped).

See Also

`help.start` and `help(help_type = "html")` will attempt to start the HTTP server if required

`Rd2HTML` is used to render the package help pages.

SweaveTeXFilter *Strip R code out of Sweave file*

Description

This function blanks out code chunks and Noweb markup in an Sweave input file, for spell checking or other uses.

Usage

```
SweaveTeXFilter(ifile, encoding = "unknown")
```

Arguments

`ifile`	Input file or connection.
`encoding`	Text encoding to pass to `readLines`.

Details

This function blanks out all Noweb markup and code chunks from an Sweave input file, leaving behind the LaTeX source, so that a LaTeX-aware spelling checker can check it and report errors in their original locations.

Value

A character vector which if written to a file, one element per line, would duplicate the text elements of the original Sweave input file.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

See Also

`aspell`, for which this is used with `filter = "Sweave"`.

`testInstalledPackage` *Test Installed Packages*

Description

These functions allow an installed package to be tested, or all base and recommended packages.

Usage

```
testInstalledPackage(pkg, lib.loc = NULL, outDir = ".",
                     types = c("examples", "tests", "vignettes"),
                     srcdir = NULL, Ropts = "")

testInstalledPackages(outDir = ".", errorsAreFatal = TRUE,
                      scope = c("both", "base", "recommended"),
                      types = c("examples", "tests", "vignettes"),
                      srcdir = NULL, Ropts = "")

testInstalledBasic(scope = c("basic", "devel", "both"))
```

Arguments

`pkg`	name of an installed package.
`lib.loc`	library path(s) in which to look for the package. See `library`.
`outDir`	the directory into which to write the output files: this should already exist.
`types`	type(s) of tests to be done.
`errorsAreFatal`	logical: should testing terminate at the first error?
`srcdir`	Optional directory to look for `.save` files.
`Ropts`	Additional options such as '`-d valgrind`' to be passed to `R CMD BATCH` when running examples or tests.
`...`	additional arguments use when preparing the files to be run, e.g. `commentDontrun` and `commentDonttest`.
`scope`	Which set(s) should be tested?

Details

These tests depend on having the package example files installed (which is the default). If package-specific tests are found in a '`tests`' directory they can be tested: these are not installed by default, but will be if `R CMD INSTALL --install-tests` was used. Finally, the code in any vignettes can be extracted and tested.

Package tests are run in a '*pkg*`-tests`' subdirectory of '`outDir`', and leave their output there.

`testInstalledBasic` runs the basic tests, if installed. This should be run with `LC_COLLATE=C` set: the function tries to set this by it may not work on all OSes. For non-English locales it may be desirable to set environment variables `LANGUAGE` to '`en`' and `LC_TIME` to '`C`' to reduce the number of differences from reference results.

Except on Windows, if the environment variable `TEST_MC_CORES` is set to an integer greater than one, `testInstalledPackages` will run the package tests in parallel using its value as the maximum number of parallel processes.

The package-specific tests for the base and recommended packages are not normally installed, but `make install-tests` is provided to do so (as well as the basic tests).

Value

Invisibly `0L` for success, `1L` for failure.

`texi2dvi` *Compile LaTeX Files*

Description

Run `latex` and `bibtex` until all cross-references are resolved and create either a dvi or a PDF file.

Usage

```
texi2dvi(file, pdf = FALSE, clean = FALSE, quiet = TRUE,
         texi2dvi = getOption("texi2dvi"),
         texinputs = NULL, index = TRUE)

texi2pdf(file, clean = FALSE, quiet = TRUE,
         texi2dvi = getOption("texi2dvi"),
         texinputs = NULL, index = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`file`	character. Name of LaTeX source file.
`pdf`	logical. If `TRUE`, a PDF file is produced instead of the default dvi file (`texi2dvi` command line option '`--pdf`').
`clean`	logical. If `TRUE`, all auxiliary files created during the conversion are removed.
`quiet`	logical. No output unless an error occurs. Ignored if emulation (see the `texi2dvi` argument) is used.
`texi2dvi`	character (or `NULL`). Script or program used to compile a TeX file to dvi or PDF, respectively. The default (selected by `""` or `NULL`) is to look for an executable on the path and otherwise emulate the script with `system` calls.
`texinputs`	`NULL` or a character vector of paths to add to the LaTeX and bibtex input search paths.
`index`	logical: should indices be prepared?

Details

`texi2pdf` is a wrapper for the common case of `texi2dvi(pdf = TRUE)`.

Despite the name, this is used in to compile LaTeX files, specifically those generated from vignettes. It ensures that the '*R_HOME*`/share/texmf`' directory is in the `TEXINPUTS` path, so style files such as '`Sweave`' and '`Rd`' will be found. The TeX search path used is first the existing `TEXINPUTS` setting (or the current directory if unset), then elements of `texinputs`, then '*R_HOME*`/share/texmf`' and finally the default path. Analogous changes are made to `BIBINPUTS` and `BSTINPUTS` settings.

MiKTeX has a `texi2dvi` executable but no other Windows TeX installation that we know of does, so emulation is used on e.g. TeXLive installations on Windows.

Occasionally indices contain special characters which cause indexing to fail (particularly when using the 'hyperref' LaTeX package) even on valid input. The argument `index = FALSE` is provided to allow package manuals to be made when this happens: it uses emulation.

Value

Invisible `NULL`. Used for the side effect of creating a dvi or PDF file in the current working directory (and maybe other files, especially if `clean = FALSE`).

Note

There are various versions of the `texi2dvi` script on Unix-alikes and quite a number of bugs have been seen, some of which this wrapper works around.

One that was present with `texi2dvi` version `4.8` (as supplied on OS X) is that it will not work correctly for paths which contain spaces, nor if the absolute path to a file would contain spaces.

The three possible approaches all have their quirks. For example the Unix-alike `texi2dvi` script removes ancillary files that already exist but the other two approaches do not (and may get confused by such files).

Where supported (`texi2dvi` 5.x and `texify`), option '`--max-iterations=20`' is used to avoid infinite retries.

Author(s)

Originally Achim Zeileis but largely rewritten by R-core.

---

toHTML *Display an object in HTML.*

Description

This generic function generates a complete HTML page from an object.

Usage

```
toHTML(x, ...)
## S3 method for class packageIQR
toHTML(x, ...)
## S3 method for class news_db
toHTML(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object to display.
`...`	Optional parameters for methods; the `"packageIQR"` and `"news_db"` methods pass these to `HTMLheader`.

Value

A character vector to display the object `x`. The `"packageIQR"` method is designed to display lists in the help system.

See Also

HTMLheader

Examples

```
cat(toHTML(demo(package = "base")), sep = "\n")
```

---

tools-deprecated *Deprecated Objects in Package* **tools**

Description

The functions or variables listed here are provided for compatibility with older versions of only, and may be defunct as soon as of the next release.

See Also

Deprecated, Defunct

---

toRd *Generic function to convert object to a fragment of Rd code.*

Description

Methods for this function render their associated classes as a fragment of Rd code, which can then be rendered into text, HTML, or LaTeX.

Usage

```
toRd(obj, ...)
## S3 method for class bibentry
toRd(obj, style = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

obj	The object to be rendered.
style	The style to be used in converting a bibentry object.
...	Additional arguments used by methods.

Details

See bibstyle for a discussion of styles. The default style = NULL value gives the default style.

Value

Returns a character vector containing a fragment of Rd code that could be parsed and rendered. The default method converts obj to mode character, then escapes any Rd markup within it. The bibentry method converts an object of that class to markup appropriate for use in a bibliography.

undoc *Find Undocumented Objects*

Description

Finds the objects in a package which are undocumented, in the sense that they are visible to the user (or data objects or S4 classes provided by the package), but no documentation entry exists.

Usage

```
undoc(package, dir, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

package	a character string naming an installed package.
dir	a character string specifying the path to a package's root source directory. This must contain the subdirectory 'man' with documentation sources (in Rd format), and at least one of the 'R' or 'data' subdirectories with code or data objects, respectively.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. The specified library trees are used to search for package.

Details

This function is useful for package maintainers mostly. In principle, *all* user-level objects should be documented.

The **base** package is special as it contains the primitives and these do not have definitions available at code level. We provide equivalent closures in environments .ArgsEnv and .GenericArgsEnv in the **base** package that are used for various purposes: undoc("base") checks that all the primitives that are not language constructs are prototyped in those environments and no others are.

Value

An object of class "undoc" which is a list of character vectors containing the names of the undocumented objects split according to documentation type.

There is a print method for nicely displaying the information contained in such objects.

See Also

codoc, QC

Examples

```
undoc("tools")                # Undocumented objects in tools
```

update_pkg_po *Prepare Translations for a Package*

Description

Prepare the 'po' directory of a package and compile and install the translations.

Usage

```
update_pkg_po(pkgdir, pkg = NULL, version = NULL, copyright, bugs)
```

Arguments

pkgdir	The path to the package directory.
pkg	The package name: if NULL it is read from the package's 'DESCRIPTION' file.
version	The package version: if NULL it is read from the package's 'DESCRIPTION' file.
copyright, bugs	optional character strings for the 'Copyright' and 'Report-Msgid-Bugs-To' details in the template files.

Details

This performs a series of steps to prepare or update messages in the package.

- If the package sources do not already have a 'po' directory, one is created.
- xgettext2pot is called to create/update a file 'po/R-*pkgname*.pot' containing the translatable messages in the package.
- All existing files in directory po with names 'R-*lang*.po' are updated from 'R-*pkgname*.pot', checkPoFile is called on the updated file, and if there are no problems the file is compiled and installed under 'inst/po'.
- In a UTF-8 locale, a 'translation' 'R-en@quot.po' is created with UTF-8 directional quotes, compiled and installed under 'inst/po'.
- The remaining steps are done only if file 'po/*pkgname*.pot' already exists. The 'src/*.{c,cc,cpp,m,mm}' files in the package are examined to create a file 'po/*pkgname*.pot' containing the translatable messages in the C/C++ files. If there is a src/windows directory, files within it are also examined.
- All existing files in directory po with names '*lang*.po' are updated from '*pkgname*.pot', checkPoFile is called on the updated file, and if there are no problems the file is compiled and installed under 'inst/po'.
- In a UTF-8 locale, a 'translation' 'en@quot.po' is created with UTF-8 directional quotes, compiled and installed under 'inst/po'.

Note that C/C++ messages are not automatically prepared for translation as they need to be explicitly marked for translation in the source files. Once that has been done, create an empty file 'po/*pkgname*.pot' in the package sources and run this function again.

pkg = "base" is special (and for use by developers only): the C files are not in the package directory but in the main sources.

System requirements

This function requires the following tools from the GNU gettext-tools: xgettext, msgmerge, msgfmt, msginit and msgconv. These are part of most Linux distributions and easily compiled from the sources on Unix-alikes (including OS X). Pre-compiled versions for Windows are available in http://www.stats.ox.ac.uk/pub/Rtools/goodies/gettext-tools.zip.

It will probably not work correctly for en@quot translations except in a UTF-8 locale, so these are skipped elsewhere.

See Also

xgettext2pot.

---

vignetteDepends *Retrieve Dependency Information for a Vignette*

Description

Given a vignette name, will create a DependsList object that reports information about the packages the vignette depends on.

Usage

```
vignetteDepends(vignette, recursive = TRUE, reduce = TRUE,
                local = TRUE, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

vignette	The path to the vignette source
recursive	Whether or not to include indirect dependencies
reduce	Whether or not to collapse all sets of dependencies to a minimal value
local	Whether or not to search only locally
lib.loc	What libraries to search in locally

Details

If recursive is TRUE, any package that is specified as a dependency will in turn have its dependencies included (and so on), these are known as indirect dependencies. If recursive is FALSE, only the dependencies directly named by the vignette will be used.

If local is TRUE, the system will only look at the user's local machine and not online to find dependencies.

If reduce is TRUE, the system will collapse the fields in the DependsList object such that a minimal set of dependencies are specified (for instance if there was 'foo, foo (>= 1.0.0), foo (>= 1.3.0', it would only return 'foo (>= 1.3.0)').

Value

An object of class "DependsList".

Author(s)

Jeff Gentry

See Also

pkgDepends

Examples

```
## This may not be installed
gridEx <- system.file("doc", "grid.Rnw", package = "grid")
vignetteDepends(gridEx)
```

---

vignetteEngine *Set or Get a Vignette Processing Engine*

Description

Vignettes are normally processed by Sweave, but package writers may choose to use a different engine (e.g., one provided by the **knitr**, **noweb** or **R.rsp** packages). This function is used by those packages to register their engines, and internally by to retrieve them.

Usage

```
vignetteEngine(name, weave, tangle, pattern = NULL,
       package = NULL, aspell = list())
```

Arguments

name	the name of the engine.
weave	a function to convert vignette source files to LaTeX output.
tangle	a function to convert vignette source files to code.
pattern	a regular expression pattern for the filenames handled by this engine, or NULL for the default pattern.
package	the package registering the engine. By default, this is the package calling vignetteEngine.
aspell	a list with element names filter and/or control giving the respective arguments to be used when spell checking the text in the vignette source file with aspell.

Details

If weave is missing, vignetteEngine will return the currently registered engine matching name and package.

If weave is NULL, the specified engine will be deleted.

Other settings define a new engine. The weave and tangle functions must be defined with argument lists compatible with function(file, ...). Currently the ... arguments may include logical argument quiet and character argument encoding; others may be added in future. These are described in the documentation for Sweave and Stangle.

The weave and tangle functions should return the filename of the output file that has been produced. Currently the weave function, when operating on a file named '<name> <pattern>' must produce a file named '<name>[.](tex|pdf|html)'. The '.tex' files will be processed by pdflatex to produce '.pdf' output for display to the user; the others will be displayed as produced. The tangle function must produce a file named '<name>[.][rRsS]' containing the executable code from the vignette. The tangle function may support a split = TRUE argument, and then it should produce files named '<name>.*[.][rRsS]'.

The pattern argument gives a regular expression to match the extensions of files which are to be processed as vignette input files. If set to NULL, the default pattern "[.][RrSs](nw|tex)$" is used.

Value

If the engine is being deleted, NULL. Otherwise a list containing components

name	The name of the engine
package	The name of its package
pattern	The pattern for vignette input files
weave	The weave function
tangle	The tangle function

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch and Henrik Bengtsson.

See Also

Sweave and the 'Writing R Extensions' manual.

Examples

```
str(vignetteEngine("Sweave"))
```

---

write_PACKAGES *Generate PACKAGES files*

Description

Generate 'PACKAGES' and 'PACKAGES.gz' files for a repository of source or Mac/Windows binary packages.

Usage

```
write_PACKAGES(dir = ".", fields = NULL,
               type = c("source", "mac.binary", "win.binary"),
               verbose = FALSE, unpacked = FALSE, subdirs = FALSE,
               latestOnly = TRUE, addFiles = FALSE)
```

Arguments

dir	Character vector describing the location of the repository (directory including source or binary packages) to generate the 'PACKAGES' and 'PACKAGES.gz' files from and write them to.
fields	a character vector giving the fields to be used in the 'PACKAGES' and 'PACKAGES.gz' files in addition to the default ones, or NULL (default). The default corresponds to the fields needed by available.packages: "Package", "Version", "Priority", "Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo", "Suggests", "Enhances", "OS_type", "License" and "Archs", and those fields will always be included, plus the file name in field "File" if addFile = TRUE and the path to the subdirectory in field "Path" if subdirectories are used.
type	Type of packages: currently source '.tar.{gz,bz2,xz}' archives, and OS X or Windows binary ('.tgz' or '.zip', respectively) packages are supported. Defaults to "win.binary" on Windows and to "source" otherwise.
verbose	logical. Should packages be listed as they are processed?
unpacked	a logical indicating whether the package contents are available in unpacked form or not (default).
subdirs	either logical (to indicate if subdirectories should be included, recursively) or a character vector of name of subdirectories to include.
latestOnly	logical: if multiple versions of a package are available should only the latest version be included?
addFiles	logical: should the filenames be included as field 'File' in the 'PACKAGES' file.

Details

write_PACKAGES scans the named directory for R packages, extracts information from each package's 'DESCRIPTION' file, and writes this information into the 'PACKAGES' and 'PACKAGES.gz' files.

Including non-latest versions of packages is only useful if they have less constraining version requirements, so for example latestOnly = FALSE could be used for a source repository when 'foo_1.0' depends on 'R >= 2.15.0' but 'foo_0.9' is available which depends on 'R >= 2.11.0'.

Support for repositories with subdirectories and hence for subdirs != FALSE depends on recording a "Path" field in the 'PACKAGES' file.

Support for more general file names (e.g., other types of compression) *via* a "File" field in the 'PACKAGES' file can be used by download.packages. If the file names are not of the standard form, use addFiles = TRUE.

type = "win.binary" uses unz connections to read all 'DESCRIPTION' files contained in the (zipped) binary packages for Windows in the given directory dir, and builds files 'PACKAGES' and 'PACKAGES.gz' files from this information.

Value

Invisibly returns the number of packages described in the resulting 'PACKAGES' and 'PACKAGES.gz' files. If 0, no packages were found and no files were written.

Note

Processing '.tar.gz' archives to extract the 'DESCRIPTION' files is quite slow.

This function can be useful on other OSes to prepare a repository to be accessed by Windows machines, so type = "win.binary" should work on all OSes.

Author(s)

Uwe Ligges and R-core.

See Also

See `read.dcf` and `write.dcf` for reading 'DESCRIPTION' files and writing the 'PACKAGES' and 'PACKAGES.gz' files.

Examples

```
## Not run:
write_PACKAGES("c:/myFolder/myRepository")  # on Windows
write_PACKAGES("/pub/RWin/bin/windows/contrib/2.9",
               type = "win.binary")  # on Linux

## End(Not run)
```

---

xgettext *Extract Translatable Messages from R Files in a Package*

Description

For each file in the 'R' directory (including system-specific subdirectories) of a package, extract the unique arguments passed to `stop`, `warning`, `message`, `gettext` and `gettextf`, or to `ngettext`.

Usage

```
xgettext(dir, verbose = FALSE, asCall = TRUE)

xngettext(dir, verbose = FALSE)

xgettext2pot(dir, potFile, name = "R", version, bugs)
```

Arguments

`dir`	the directory of a source package.
`verbose`	logical: should each file be listed as it is processed?
`asCall`	logical: if `TRUE` each argument is returned whole, otherwise the strings within each argument are extracted.
`potFile`	name of po template file to be produced. Defaults to 'R-*pkgname*.pot' where *pkgname* is the basename of 'dir'.
`name, version, bugs`	as recorded in the template file: `version` defaults the version number of the currently running , and `bugs` to `"bugs.r-project.org"`.

Details

Leading and trailing white space (space, tab and linefeed) is removed for calls to `gettext`, `gettextf`, `stop`, `warning`, and `message`, as it is by the internal code that passes strings for translation.

We look to see if these functions were called with `domain = NA` and if so omit the call if `asCall = TRUE`: note that the call might contain a call to `gettext` which would be visible if `asCall = FALSE`.

`xgettext2pot` calls `xgettext` and then `xngettext`, and writes a PO template file for use with the **GNU Gettext** tools. This ensures that the strings for simple translation are unique in the file (as **GNU Gettext** requires), but does not do so for `ngettext` calls (and the rules are not stated in the Gettext manual, but `msgfmt` complains if there is duplication between the sets.).

If applied to the **base** package, this also looks in the '`.R`' files in '*R_HOME*`/share/R`'.

Value

For `xgettext`, a list of objects of class `"xgettext"` (which has a `print` method), one per source file that potentially contains translatable strings.

For `xngettext`, a list of objects of class `"xngettext"`, which are themselves lists of length-2 character strings.

See Also

`update_pkg_po()` which calls `xgettext2pot()`.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## in a source-directory build of R:
xgettext(file.path(R.home(), "src", "library", "splines"))

## End(Not run)
```

Chapter 14

The `utils` package

`utils-package` *The R Utils Package*

Description

R utility functions

Details

This package contains a collection of utility functions.

For a complete list, use `library(help = "utils")`.

Author(s)

R Core Team and contributors worldwide

Maintainer: R Core Team <R-core@r-project.org>

`adist` *Approximate String Distances*

Description

Compute the approximate string distance between character vectors. The distance is a generalized Levenshtein (edit) distance, giving the minimal possibly weighted number of insertions, deletions and substitutions needed to transform one string into another.

Usage

```
adist(x, y = NULL, costs = NULL, counts = FALSE, fixed = TRUE,
      partial = !fixed, ignore.case = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a character vector. Long vectors are not supported.
y	a character vector, or NULL (default) indicating taking x as y.
costs	a numeric vector or list with names partially matching 'insertions', 'deletions' and 'substitutions' giving the respective costs for computing the Levenshtein distance, or NULL (default) indicating using unit cost for all three possible transformations.
counts	a logical indicating whether to optionally return the transformation counts (numbers of insertions, deletions and substitutions) as the "counts" attribute of the return value.
fixed	a logical. If TRUE (default), the x elements are used as string literals. Otherwise, they are taken as regular expressions and partial = TRUE is implied (corresponding to the approximate string distance used by agrep with fixed = FALSE.
partial	a logical indicating whether the transformed x elements must exactly match the complete y elements, or only substrings of these. The latter corresponds to the approximate string distance used by agrep (by default).
ignore.case	a logical. If TRUE, case is ignored for computing the distances.
useBytes	a logical. If TRUE distance computations are done byte-by-byte rather than character-by-character.

Details

The (generalized) Levenshtein (or edit) distance between two strings s and t is the minimal possibly weighted number of insertions, deletions and substitutions needed to transform s into t (so that the transformation exactly matches t). This distance is computed for partial = FALSE, currently using a dynamic programming algorithm (see, e.g., http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Levenshtein_distance) with space and time complexity $O(mn)$, where m and n are the lengths of s and t, respectively. Additionally computing the transformation sequence and counts is $O(\max(m, n))$.

The generalized Levenshtein distance can also be used for approximate (fuzzy) string matching, in which case one finds the substring of t with minimal distance to the pattern s (which could be taken as a regular expression, in which case the principle of using the leftmost and longest match applies), see, e.g., http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Approximate_string_matching. This distance is computed for partial = TRUE using 'tre' by Ville Laurikari (http://laurikari.net/tre/) and corresponds to the distance used by agrep. In this case, the given cost values are coerced to integer.

Note that the costs for insertions and deletions can be different, in which case the distance between s and t can be different from the distance between t and s.

Value

A matrix with the approximate string distances of the elements of x and y, with rows and columns corresponding to x and y, respectively.

If counts is TRUE, the transformation counts are returned as the "counts" attribute of this matrix, as a 3-dimensional array with dimensions corresponding to the elements of x, the elements of y, and the type of transformation (insertions, deletions and substitutions), respectively. Additionally, if partial = FALSE, the transformation sequences are returned as the "trafos" attribute of the return value, as character strings with elements 'M', 'I', 'D' and 'S' indicating a match, insertion, deletion and substitution, respectively. If partial = TRUE, the offsets (positions of the first and

last element) of the matched substrings are returned as the "offsets" attribute of the return value (with both offsets -1 in case of no match).

See Also

agrep for approximate string matching (fuzzy matching) using the generalized Levenshtein distance.

Examples

```
## Cf. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Levenshtein_distance
adist("kitten", "sitting")
## To see the transformation counts for the Levenshtein distance:
drop(attr(adist("kitten", "sitting", counts = TRUE), "counts"))
## To see the transformation sequences:
attr(adist(c("kitten", "sitting"), counts = TRUE), "trafos")

## Cf. the examples for agrep:
adist("lasy", "1 lazy 2")
## For a "partial approximate match" (as used for agrep):
adist("lasy", "1 lazy 2", partial = TRUE)
```

---

alarm *Alert the User*

Description

Gives an audible or visual signal to the user.

Usage

```
alarm()
```

Details

alarm() works by sending a "\a" character to the console. On most platforms this will ring a bell, beep, or give some other signal to the user (unless standard output has been redirected).

It attempts to flush the console (see flush.console).

Value

No useful value is returned.

Examples

```
alarm()
```

apropos *Find Objects by (Partial) Name*

Description

`apropos()` returns a character vector giving the names of all objects in the search list matching `what`.

`find()` is a different user interface to the same task.

Usage

```
apropos(what, where = FALSE, ignore.case = TRUE, mode = "any")

find(what, mode = "any", numeric = FALSE, simple.words = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`what`	character string with name of an object, or more generally a regular expression to match against.
`where, numeric`	a logical indicating whether positions in the search list should also be returned
`ignore.case`	logical indicating if the search should be case-insensitive, `TRUE` by default. Note that in versions prior to 2.5.0, the default was implicitly `ignore.case = FALSE`.
`mode`	character; if not `"any"`, only objects whose `mode` equals `mode` are searched.
`simple.words`	logical; if `TRUE`, the `what` argument is only searched as whole word.

Details

If `mode != "any"` only those objects which are of mode `mode` are considered. If `where` is `TRUE`, the positions in the search list are returned as the names attribute.

`find` is a different user interface for the same task as `apropos`. However, by default (`simple.words == TRUE`), only full words are searched with `grep(fixed = TRUE)`.

Value

For `apropos` character vector, sorted by name, possibly with names giving the (numerical) positions on the search path.

For `find`, either a character vector of environment names, or for `numeric = TRUE`, a numerical vector of positions on the search path, with names giving the names of the corresponding environments.

Author(s)

Kurt Hornik and Martin Maechler (May 1997).

See Also

`glob2rx` to convert wildcard patterns to regular expressions.

`objects` for listing objects from one place, `help.search` for searching the help system, `search` for the search path.

Examples

```
require(stats)


## Not run: apropos("lm")
apropos("GLM")                      # more than a dozen
## that may include internal objects starting .__C__ if
## methods is attached
apropos("GLM", ignore.case = FALSE) # not one
apropos("lq")

cor <- 1:pi
find("cor")                         #> ".GlobalEnv"   "package:stats"
find("cor", numeric = TRUE)                     # numbers with these names
find("cor", numeric = TRUE, mode = "function")  # only the second one
rm(cor)

## Not run: apropos(".", mode="list")  # a long list

# need a DOUBLE backslash \\ (in case you dont see it anymore)
apropos("\\[")

# everything % not diff-able
length(apropos("."))

# those starting with pr
apropos("^pr")

# the 1-letter things
apropos("^.$")
# the 1-2-letter things
apropos("^..?$")
# the 2-to-4 letter things
apropos("^.{2,4}$")

# the 8-and-more letter things
apropos("^.{8,}$")
table(nchar(apropos("^.{8,}$")))
```

---

aregexec *Approximate String Match Positions*

Description

Determine positions of approximate string matches.

Usage

```
aregexec(pattern, text, max.distance = 0.1, costs = NULL,
         ignore.case = FALSE, fixed = FALSE, useBytes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

pattern	a non-empty character string or a character string containing a regular expression (for fixed = FALSE) to be matched. Coerced by as.character to a string if possible.
text	character vector where matches are sought. Coerced by as.character to a character vector if possible.
max.distance	maximum distance allowed for a match. See agrep.
costs	cost of transformations. See agrep.
ignore.case	a logical. If TRUE, case is ignored for computing the distances.
fixed	If TRUE, the pattern is matched literally (as is). Otherwise (default), it is matched as a regular expression.
useBytes	a logical. If TRUE comparisons are byte-by-byte rather than character-by-character.

Details

aregexec provides a different interface to approximate string matching than agrep (along the lines of the interfaces to exact string matching provided by regexec and grep).

Note that by default, agrep performs literal matches, whereas aregexec performs regular expression matches.

See agrep and adist for more information about approximate string matching and distances.

Comparisons are byte-by-byte if pattern or any element of text is marked as "bytes".

Value

A list of the same length as text, each element of which is either -1 if there is no match, or a sequence of integers with the starting positions of the match and all substrings corresponding to parenthesized subexpressions of pattern, with attribute "match.length" an integer vector giving the lengths of the matches (or -1 for no match).

See Also

regmatches for extracting the matched substrings.

Examples

```
## Cf. the examples for agrep.
x <- c("1 lazy", "1", "1 LAZY")
aregexec("laysy", x, max.distance = 2)
aregexec("(lay)(sy)", x, max.distance = 2)
aregexec("(lay)(sy)", x, max.distance = 2, ignore.case = TRUE)
m <- aregexec("(lay)(sy)", x, max.distance = 2)
regmatches(x, m)
```

aspell *Spell Check Interface*

Description

Spell check given files via Aspell, Hunspell or Ispell.

Usage

```
aspell(files, filter, control = list(), encoding = "unknown",
       program = NULL, dictionaries = character())
```

Arguments

files	a character vector with the names of files to be checked.
filter	an optional filter for processing the files before spell checking, given as either a function (with formals ifile and encoding), or a character string specifying a built-in filter, or a list with the name of a built-in filter and additional arguments to be passed to it. See **Details** for available filters. If missing or NULL, no filtering is performed.
control	a list or character vector of control options for the spell checker.
encoding	the encoding of the files. Recycled as needed.
program	a character string giving the name (if on the system path) or full path of the spell check program to be used, or NULL (default). By default, the system path is searched for aspell, hunspell and ispell (in that order), and the first one found is used.
dictionaries	a character vector of names or file paths of additional R level dictionaries to use. Elements with no path separator specify R system dictionaries (in subdirectory 'share/dictionaries' of the R home directory). The file extension (currently, only '.rds') can be omitted.

Details

The spell check programs employed must support the so-called Ispell pipe interface activated via command line option '-a'. In addition to the programs, suitable dictionaries need to be available. See http://aspell.net, http://hunspell.sourceforge.net/ and http://lasr.cs.ucla.edu/geoff/ispell.html, respectively, for obtaining the Aspell, Hunspell and (International) Ispell programs and dictionaries.

The currently available built-in filters are "Rd" (corresponding to RdTextFilter), "Sweave" (corresponding to SweaveTeXFilter), "R", "pot" and "dcf".

Filter "R" is for R code and extracts the message string constants in calls to message, warning, stop, packageStartupMessage, gettext, gettextf, and ngettext (the unnamed string constants for the first five, and fmt and msg1/msg2 string constants, respectively, for the latter two). Filter "pot" is for message string catalog '.pot' files. Both have an argument ignore allowing to give regular expressions for parts of message strings to be ignored for spell checking: e.g., using "[\t][^]*[\t[:punct:]]" ignores all text inside single quotes.

Filter "dcf" is for files in Debian Control File format. The fields to keep can be controlled by argument keep (a character vector with the respective field names). By default, 'Title' and 'Description' fields are kept.

The print method has for the objects returned by `aspell` has an `indent` argument controlling the indentation of the positions of possibly mis-spelled words. The default is 2; Emacs users may find it useful to use an indentation of 0 and visit output in grep-mode. It also has a `verbose` argument: when this is true, suggestions for replacements are shown as well.

It is possible to employ additional R level dictionaries. Currently, these are files with extension '`.rds`' obtained by serializing character vectors of word lists using `saveRDS`. If such dictionaries are employed, they are combined into a single word list file which is then used as the spell checker's personal dictionary (option '`-p`'): hence, the default personal dictionary is not used in this case.

Value

A data frame inheriting from `aspell` (which has a useful print method) with the information about possibly mis-spelled words.

References

Kurt Hornik and Duncan Murdoch (2011), Watch your spelling! *The R Journal* **3**(2), 22–28. http://journal.r-project.org/archive/2011-2/RJournal_2011-2_Hornik+Murdoch.pdf.

See Also

aspell-utils for utilities for spell checking packages.

Package **Aspell** on Omegahat (`http://www.omegahat.org/Aspell`) for a fine-grained R interface to the Aspell library.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## To check all Rd files in a directory, (additonally) skipping the
## \references sections.
files <- Sys.glob("*.Rd")
aspell(files, filter = list("Rd", drop = "\references"))

## To check all Sweave files
files <- Sys.glob(c("*.Rnw", "*.Snw", "*.rnw", "*.snw"))
aspell(files, filter = "Sweave", control = "-t")

## To check all Texinfo files (Aspell only)
files <- Sys.glob("*.texi")
aspell(files, control = "--mode=texinfo")

## End(Not run)

## List the available R system dictionaries.
Sys.glob(file.path(R.home("share"), "dictionaries", "*.rds"))
```

`aspell-utils` *Spell Check Utilities*

Description

Utilities for spell checking packages via Aspell, Hunspell or Ispell.

Usage

```
aspell_package_Rd_files(dir, drop = c("\\author", "\\references"),
                        control = list(), program = NULL,
                        dictionaries = character())
aspell_package_vignettes(dir,
                         control = list(), program = NULL,
                         dictionaries = character())
aspell_package_R_files(dir, ignore = character(), control = list(),
                       program = NULL, dictionaries = character())
aspell_package_C_files(dir, ignore = character(), control = list(),
                       program = NULL, dictionaries = character())

aspell_write_personal_dictionary_file(x, out, language = "en",
                                      program = NULL)
```

Arguments

dir	a character string specifying the path to a package's root directory.
drop	a character vector naming additional Rd sections to drop when selecting text via RdTextFilter.
control	a list or character vector of control options for the spell checker.
program	a character string giving the name (if on the system path) or full path of the spell check program to be used, or NULL (default). By default, the system path is searched for aspell, hunspell and ispell (in that order), and the first one found is used.
dictionaries	a character vector of names or file paths of additional R level dictionaries to use. See aspell.
ignore	a character vector with regular expressions to be replaced by blanks when filtering the message strings.
x	a character vector, or the result of a call to aspell().
out	a character string naming the personal dictionary file to write to.
language	a character string indicating a language as used by Aspell.

Details

Functions aspell_package_Rd_files, aspell_package_vignettes, aspell_package_R_files and aspell_package_C_files perform spell checking on the Rd files, vignettes, R files, and C-level messages of the package with root directory dir. They determine the respective files, apply the appropriate filters, and run the spell checker.

See aspell for details on filters.

The C-level message string are obtained from the 'po/*PACKAGE*.pot' message catalog file, with *PACKAGE* the basename of dir. See the section on "C-level messages" in "Writing Extensions" for more information.

When using Aspell, the vignette checking skips parameters and/or options of commands \Sexpr, \citep, \code, \pkg, \proglang and \samp. Further commands can be skipped by adding --add-tex-command options to the control argument. E.g., to skip both option and parameter of \mycmd, add --add-tex-command='mycmd op'.

Suitable values for control, program, dictionaries, drop and ignore can also be specified using a package defaults file which should go as 'defaults.R' into the '.aspell' subdirectory of dir, and provides defaults via assignments of suitable named lists, e.g.,

```
vignettes <- list(control = "--add-tex-command=mycmd op")
```

for vignettes (when using Aspell) and similarly assigning to `Rd_files`, `R_files` and `C_files` for Rd files, R files and C level message defaults.

Maintainers of packages using both English and American spelling will find it convenient to pass control options '`--master=en_US`' and '`--add-extra-dicts=en_GB`' to Aspell and control options '`-d en_US,en_GB`' to Hunspell (provided that the corresponding dictionaries are installed).

Older versions of had no support for R level dictionaries, and hence provided the function `aspell_write_personal_dictionary_file` to create (spell check) program-specific personal dictionary files from words to be accepted. The new mechanism is to use R level dictionaries, i.e., '`.rds`' files obtained by serializing character vectors of such words using `saveRDS`. For such dictionaries specified via the package defaults mechanism, elements with no path separator can be R system dictionaries or dictionaries in the '`.aspell`' subdirectory.

See Also

`aspell`

---

available.packages *List Available Packages at CRAN-like Repositories*

Description

`available.packages` returns a matrix of details corresponding to packages currently available at one or more repositories. The current list of packages is downloaded over the internet (or copied from a local mirror).

Usage

```
available.packages(contriburl =
                   contrib.url(getOption("repos"), type),
                   method, fields = NULL,
                   type = getOption("pkgType"),
                   filters = NULL)
```

Arguments

`contriburl`	URL(s) of the '`contrib`' sections of the repositories. Specify this argument only if your repository mirror is incomplete, e.g., because you burned only the '`contrib`' section on a CD.
`method`	download method, see `download.file`.
`type`	character string, indicate which type of packages: see `install.packages`. If `type = "both"` this will use the source repository.
`fields`	a character vector giving the fields to extract from the '`PACKAGES`' file(s) in addition to the default ones, or `NULL` (default). Unavailable fields result in `NA` values.
`filters`	a character vector or list or `NULL` (default). See 'Details'.

Details

The list of packages is either copied from a local mirror (specified by a 'file://' URI) or downloaded. If downloaded, the list is cached for the session in a per-repository file in tempdir() with a name like

```
repos_http%3a%2f%2fcran.r-project.org%2fsrc%2fcontrib.rds
```

By default, the return value includes only packages whose version and OS requirements are met by the running version of , and only gives information on the latest versions of packages.

Argument filters can be used to select which of the packages on the repositories are reported. It is called with its default value (NULL) by functions such as install.packages: this value corresponds to getOption("available_packages_filters") and to c("R_version", "OS_type", "subarch", "duplicates") if that is unset or set to NULL.

The built-in filters are

"R_version" Exclude packages whose version requirements are not met.

"OS_type" Exclude packages whose OS requirement is incompatible with this version of : that is exclude Windows-only packages on a Unix-alike platform and *vice versa*.

"subarch" For binary packages, exclude those with compiled code that is not available for the current sub-architecture, e.g. exclude packages only compiled for 32-bit Windows on a 64-bit Windows .

"duplicates" Only report the latest version where more than one version is available, and only report the first-named repository (in contriburl) with the latest version if that is in more than one repository.

"license/FOSS" Include only packages for which installation can proceed solely based on packages which can be verified as Free or Open Source Software (FOSS, e.g., http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FOSS) employing the available license specifications. Thus both the package and any packages that it depends on to load need to be *known to be* FOSS.

Note that this does depend on the repository supplying license information.

"license/restricts_use" Include only packages for which installation can proceed solely based on packages which are known not to restrict use.

"CRAN" Use CRAN versions in preference to versions from other repositories (even if these have a higher version number). This needs to be applied *before* the default "duplicates" filter, so cannot be used with add = TRUE.

If all the filters are from this set, then they can be specified as a character vector; otherwise filters should be a list with elements which are character strings, user-defined functions or add = TRUE (see below).

User-defined filters are functions which take a single argument, a matrix of the form returned by available.packages, and return a matrix consisting of a subset of the rows of the argument.

The special 'filter' add = TRUE appends the other elements of the filter list to the default filters.

Value

A matrix with one row per package, row names the package names and column names including "Package", "Version", "Priority", "Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo", "Suggests", "Enhances", "File" and "Repository". Additional columns can be specified using the fields argument.

Where provided by the repository, fields "OS_type", "License", "License_is_FOSS", "License_restricts_use", "Archs", "MD5sum" and "NeedsCompilation" are reported for use by the filters and package management tools, including install.packages.

See Also

install.packages, download.packages, contrib.url.

The 'R Installation and Administration' manual for how to set up a repository.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Restrict install.packages() (etc) to known-to-be-FOSS packages
options(available_packages_filters =
  c("R_version", "OS_type", "subarch", "duplicates", "license/FOSS"))
## or
options(available_packages_filters = list(add = TRUE, "license/FOSS"))

## Give priority to released versions on CRAN, rather than development
## versions on Omegahat, R-Forge etc.
options(available_packages_filters =
     c("R_version", "OS_type", "subarch", "CRAN", "duplicates"))

## End(Not run)
```

BATCH *Batch Execution of R*

Description

Run non-interactively with input from `infile` and send output (stdout/stderr) to another file.

Usage

```
R CMD BATCH [options] infile [outfile]
```

Arguments

`infile`	the name of a file with code to be executed.
`options`	a list of command line options, e.g., for setting the amount of memory available and controlling the load/save process. If `infile` starts with a '`-`', use '`--`' as the final option. The default options are '`--restore --save --no-readline`'. (Without '`--no-readline`' on Windows.)
`outfile`	the name of a file to which to write output. If not given, the name used is that of `infile`, with a possible '`.R`' extension stripped, and '`.Rout`' appended.

Details

Use `R CMD BATCH --help` to be reminded of the usage.

By default, the input commands are printed along with the output. To suppress this behavior, add `options(echo = FALSE)` at the beginning of `infile`, or use option '`--slave`'.

The `infile` can have end of line marked by LF or CRLF (but not just CR), and files with an incomplete last line (missing end of line (EOL) mark) are processed correctly.

A final expression '`proc.time()`' will be executed after the input script unless the latter calls `q(runLast = FALSE)` or is aborted. This can be suppressed by the option '`--no-timing`'.

Additional options can be set by the environment variable R_BATCH_OPTIONS: these come after the default options (see the description of the options argument) and before any options given on the command line.

Note

Unlike Splus BATCH on a Unix-alike, this does not run the process in the background. In most shells,

```
R CMD BATCH [options] infile [outfile] &
```

will do so.

---

bibentry *Bibliography Entries*

Description

Functionality for representing and manipulating bibliographic information in enhanced BibTeX style.

Usage

```
bibentry(bibtype, textVersion = NULL, header = NULL, footer = NULL,
         key = NULL, ..., other = list(),
         mheader = NULL, mfooter = NULL)
## S3 method for class bibentry
print(x, style = "text", .bibstyle, ...)
```

Arguments

bibtype	a character string with a BibTeX entry type. See **Entry Types** for details.
textVersion	a character string with a text representation of the reference to optionally be employed for printing.
header	a character string with optional header text.
footer	a character string with optional footer text.
key	a character string giving the citation key for the entry.
...	for bibentry: arguments of the form *tag=value* giving the fields of the entry, with *tag* and *value* the name and value of the field, respectively. Arguments with empty values are dropped. See **Entry Fields** for details. For the print method, extra parameters to pass to the renderer.
other	a list of arguments as in ... (useful in particular for fields named the same as formals of bibentry).
mheader	a character string with optional "outer" header text.
mfooter	a character string with optional "outer" footer text.
x	an object inheriting from class "bibentry".
style	an optional character string specifying the print style. If present, must be a unique abbreviation (with case ignored) of the available styles, see **Details**.
.bibstyle	a character string naming a bibliography style.

Details

The bibentry objects created by `bibentry` can represent an arbitrary positive number of references. One can use `c()` to combine bibentry objects, and hence in particular build a multiple reference object from single reference ones. Alternatively, one can use `bibentry` to directly create a multiple reference object by "vectorizing" the given arguments, i.e., use character vectors instead of character strings.

The `print` method for bibentry objects provides a choice between seven different styles: plain text (style `"text"`), BibTeX (`"Bibtex"`), a mixture of plain text and BibTeX as traditionally used for citations (`"citation"`), HTML (`"html"`), LaTeX (`"latex"`), R code (`"R"`), and a simple copy of the `textVersion` elements (style `"textVersion"`). The `"text"`, `"html"` and `"latex"` styles make use of the `.bibstyle` argument using the `bibstyle` function. When printing bibentry objects in citation style, a `header`/`footer` for each item can be displayed as well as a `mheader`/`mfooter` for the whole vector of references.

The `print` method is based on a `format` method which provides the same styles, and for formatting as R code a choice between giving a character vector with one `bibentry()` call for each bibentry (as commonly used in '`CITATION`' files), or a character string with one collapsed call, obtained by combining the individual calls with `c()` if there is more than one bibentry. This can be controlled by setting the option `collapse` to `FALSE` (default) or `TRUE`, respectively. (Printing in R style always collapses to a single call.) Further, for the `"citation"` style, `format()`'s optional argument `citation.bibtex.max` (with default `getOption("citation.bibtex.max")` which defaults to 1) determines for up to how many citation bibentries text style is shown together with with bibtex, automatically.

It is possible to subscript bibentry objects by their keys (which are used for character subscripts if the names are `NULL`).

There is also a `toBibtex` method for direct conversion to BibTeX.

Value

`bibentry` produces an object of class `"bibentry"`.

Entry Types

`bibentry` creates `"bibentry"` objects, which are modeled after BibTeX entries. The entry should be a valid BibTeX entry type, e.g.,

Article: An article from a journal or magazine.

Book: A book with an explicit publisher.

InBook: A part of a book, which may be a chapter (or section or whatever) and/or a range of pages.

InCollection: A part of a book having its own title.

InProceedings: An article in a conference proceedings.

Manual: Technical documentation like a software manual.

MastersThesis: A Master's thesis.

Misc: Use this type when nothing else fits.

PhdThesis: A PhD thesis.

Proceedings: The proceedings of a conference.

TechReport: A report published by a school or other institution, usually numbered within a series.

Unpublished: A document having an author and title, but not formally published.

Entry Fields

The ... argument of bibentry can be any number of BibTeX fields, including

address: The address of the publisher or other type of institution.

author: The name(s) of the author(s), either as a character string in the format described in the LaTeX book, or a person object.

booktitle: Title of a book, part of which is being cited.

chapter: A chapter (or section or whatever) number.

editor: Name(s) of editor(s), same format as author.

institution: The publishing institution of a technical report.

journal: A journal name.

note: Any additional information that can help the reader. The first word should be capitalized.

number: The number of a journal, magazine, technical report, or of a work in a series.

pages: One or more page numbers or range of numbers.

publisher: The publisher's name.

school: The name of the school where a thesis was written.

series: The name of a series or set of books.

title: The work's title.

volume: The volume of a journal or multi-volume book.

year: The year of publication.

See Also

person

Examples

```
## R reference
rref <- bibentry(
   bibtype = "Manual",
   title = "R: A Language and Environment for Statistical Computing",
   author = person("R Core Team"),
   organization = "R Foundation for Statistical Computing",
   address = "Vienna, Austria",
   year = 2014,
   url = "http://www.R-project.org/")

## Different printing styles
print(rref)
print(rref, style = "Bibtex")
print(rref, style = "citation")
print(rref, style = "html")
print(rref, style = "latex")
print(rref, style = "R")

## References for boot package and associated book
bref <- c(
   bibentry(
     bibtype = "Manual",
     title = "boot: Bootstrap R (S-PLUS) Functions",
```

```
      author = c(
        person("Angelo", "Canty", role = "aut",
          comment = "S original"),
        person(c("Brian", "D."), "Ripley", role = c("aut", "trl", "cre"),
          comment = "R port, author of parallel support",
          email = "ripley@stats.ox.ac.uk")
      ),
      year = "2012",
      note = "R package version 1.3-4",
      url = "http://CRAN.R-project.org/package=boot",
      key = "boot-package"
    ),

    bibentry(
      bibtype = "Book",
      title = "Bootstrap Methods and Their Applications",
      author = as.person("Anthony C. Davison [aut], David V. Hinkley [aut]"),
      year = "1997",
      publisher = "Cambridge University Press",
      address = "Cambridge",
      isbn = "0-521-57391-2",
      url = "http://statwww.epfl.ch/davison/BMA/",
      key = "boot-book"
    )
)

## Combining and subsetting
c(rref, bref)
bref[2]
bref["boot-book"]

## Extracting fields
bref$author
bref[1]$author
bref[1]$author[2]$email

## Convert to BibTeX
toBibtex(bref)

## Format in R style
## One bibentry() call for each bibentry:
writeLines(paste(format(bref, "R"), collapse = "\n\n"))
## One collapsed call:
writeLines(format(bref, "R", collapse = TRUE))
```

`browseEnv` *Browse Objects in Environment*

Description

The `browseEnv` function opens a browser with list of objects currently in `sys.frame()` environment.

Usage

```
browseEnv(envir = .GlobalEnv, pattern,
          excludepatt = "^last\\.warning",
          html = .Platform$GUI != "AQUA",
          expanded = TRUE, properties = NULL,
          main = NULL, debugMe = FALSE)
```

Arguments

envir	an environment the objects of which are to be browsed.
pattern	a regular expression for object subselection is passed to the internal ls() call.
excludepatt	a regular expression for *dropping* objects with matching names.
html	is used to display the workspace on a HTML page in your favorite browser. The default except when running from R.app on OS X.
expanded	whether to show one level of recursion. It can be useful to switch it to FALSE if your workspace is large. This option is ignored if html is set to FALSE.
properties	a named list of global properties (of the objects chosen) to be showed in the browser; when NULL (as per default), user, date, and machine information is used.
main	a title string to be used in the browser; when NULL (as per default) a title is constructed.
debugMe	logical switch; if true, some diagnostic output is produced.

Details

Very experimental code: displays a static HTML page on all platforms except R.app on OS X.

Only allows one level of recursion into object structures.

It can be generalized. See sources for details. Most probably, this should rather work through using the 'tkWidget' package (from http://www.bioconductor.org).

See Also

str, ls.

Examples

```
if(interactive()) {
   ## create some interesting objects :
   ofa <- ordered(4:1)
   ex1 <- expression(1+ 0:9)
   ex3 <- expression(u, v, 1+ 0:9)
   example(factor, echo = FALSE)
   example(table, echo = FALSE)
   example(ftable, echo = FALSE)
   example(lm, echo = FALSE, ask = FALSE)
   example(str, echo = FALSE)

   ## and browse them:
   browseEnv()

   ## a (simple) functions environment:
```

```
  af12 <- approxfun(1:2, 1:2, method = "const")
  browseEnv(envir = environment(af12))
}
```

`browseURL` *Load URL into a WWW Browser*

Description

Load a given URL into a WWW browser.

Usage

```
browseURL(url, browser = getOption("browser"),
          encodeIfNeeded = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`url`	a non-empty character string giving the URL to be loaded.
`browser`	a non-empty character string giving the name of the program to be used as hypertext browser. It should be in the PATH, or a full path specified. Alternatively, an function to be called to invoke the browser. Under Windows `NULL` is also allowed (and is the default), and implies that the file association mechanism will be used.
`encodeIfNeeded`	Should the URL be encoded by `URLencode` before passing to the browser? This is not needed (and might be harmful) if the `browser` program/function itself does encoding, and can be harmful for '`file://`' URLs on some systems and for '`http://`' URLs passed to some CGI applications. Fortunately, most URLs do not need encoding.

Details

The default browser is set by option `"browser"`, in turn set by the environment variable `R_BROWSER` which is by default set in file '*R_HOME*`/etc/Renviron`' to a choice made manually or automatically when was configured. (See `Startup` for where to override that default value.) To suppress showing URLs altogether, use the value `"false"`.

On many platforms it is best to set option `"browser"` to a generic program/script and let that invoke the user's choice of browser. For example, on OS X use `open` and on many other Unix-alikes use `xdg-open`.

If `browser` supports remote control and knows how to perform it, the URL is opened in any already-running browser or a new one if necessary. This mechanism currently is available for browsers which support the `"-remote openURL(...)"` interface (which includes Mozilla and Opera), Galeon, KDE konqueror (*via* kfmclient) and the GNOME interface to Mozilla. (Firefox has droppped support, but defaults to using an already-running browser.) Note that the type of browser is determined from its name, so this mechanism will only be used if the browser is installed under its canonical name.

Because `"-remote"` will use any browser displaying on the X server (whatever machine it is running on), the remote control mechanism is only used if `DISPLAY` points to the local host. This may not allow displaying more than one URL at a time from a remote host.

It is the caller's responsibility to encode `url` if necessary (see `URLencode`). This can be tricky for file URLs, where the format accepted can depend on both browser and OS.

To suppress showing URLs altogether, set `browser = "false"`.

The behaviour for arguments `url` which are not URLs is platform-dependent. Some platforms accept absolute file paths; fewer accept relative file paths.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## for KDE users who want to open files in a new tab
options(browser = "kfmclient newTab")
browseURL("http://www.r-project.org")

## End(Not run)
```

`browseVignettes` *List Vignettes in an HTML Browser*

Description

List available vignettes in an HTML browser with links to PDF, LaTeX/noweb source, and (tangled) R code (if available).

Usage

```
browseVignettes(package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL, all = TRUE)

## S3 method for class browseVignettes
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`package`	a character vector with the names of packages to search through, or `NULL` in which "all" packages (as defined by argument `all`) are searched.
`lib.loc`	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or `NULL`. The default value of `NULL` corresponds to all libraries currently known.
`all`	logical; if `TRUE` search all available packages in the library trees specified by `lib.loc`, and if `FALSE`, search only attached packages.
`x`	Object of class `browseVignettes`.
`...`	Further arguments, ignored by the `print` method.

Details

Function `browseVignettes` returns an object of the same class; the print method displays it as an HTML page in a browser (using `browseURL`).

See Also

`browseURL`, `vignette`

Examples

```
## List vignettes from all *attached* packages
browseVignettes(all = FALSE)

## List vignettes from a specific package
browseVignettes("grid")
```

---

bug.report *Send a Bug Report*

Description

Invokes an editor or email program to write a bug report or opens a web page for bug submission. Some standard information on the current version and configuration of are included automatically.

Usage

```
bug.report(subject = "",  address,
           file = "R.bug.report", package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL,
           ...)
```

Arguments

subject	Subject of the email.
address	Recipient's email address, where applicable: for package bug reports sent by email this defaults to the address of the package maintainer (the first if more than one is listed).
file	filename to use (if needed) for setting up the email.
package	Optional character vector naming a single package which is the subject of the bug report.
lib.loc	A character vector describing the location of library trees in which to search for the package, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known.
...	additional named arguments such as method and ccaddress to pass to create.post.

Details

If package is NULL or a base package, this opens the R bugs tracker at http://bugs.r-project.org/.

If package is specified, it is assumed that the bug report is about that package, and parts of its 'DESCRIPTION' file are added to the standard information. If the package has a BugReports field in the 'DESCRIPTION' file, that URL will be opened using browseURL, otherwise an email directed to the package maintainer will be generated using create.post.

Value

Nothing useful.

When is there a bug?

If executes an illegal instruction, or dies with an operating system error message that indicates a problem in the program (as opposed to something like "disk full"), then it is certainly a bug.

Taking forever to complete a command can be a bug, but you must make certain that it was really 's fault. Some commands simply take a long time. If the input was such that you KNOW it should have been processed quickly, report a bug. If you don't know whether the command should take a long time, find out by looking in the manual or by asking for assistance.

If a command you are familiar with causes an error message in a case where its usual definition ought to be reasonable, it is probably a bug. If a command does the wrong thing, that is a bug. But be sure you know for certain what it ought to have done. If you aren't familiar with the command, or don't know for certain how the command is supposed to work, then it might actually be working right. Rather than jumping to conclusions, show the problem to someone who knows for certain.

Finally, a command's intended definition may not be best for statistical analysis. This is a very important sort of problem, but it is also a matter of judgement. Also, it is easy to come to such a conclusion out of ignorance of some of the existing features. It is probably best not to complain about such a problem until you have checked the documentation in the usual ways, feel confident that you understand it, and know for certain that what you want is not available. The mailing list `r-devel@r-project.org` is a better place for discussions of this sort than the bug list.

If you are not sure what the command is supposed to do after a careful reading of the manual this indicates a bug in the manual. The manual's job is to make everything clear. It is just as important to report documentation bugs as program bugs.

If the online argument list of a function disagrees with the manual, one of them must be wrong, so report the bug.

How to report a bug

When you decide that there is a bug, it is important to report it and to report it in a way which is useful. What is most useful is an exact description of what commands you type, from when you start until the problem happens. Always include the version of , machine, and operating system that you are using; type `version` in to print this. To help us keep track of which bugs have been fixed and which are still open please send a separate report for each bug.

The most important principle in reporting a bug is to report FACTS, not hypotheses or categorizations. It is always easier to report the facts, but people seem to prefer to strain to posit explanations and report them instead. If the explanations are based on guesses about how is implemented, they will be useless; we will have to try to figure out what the facts must have been to lead to such speculations. Sometimes this is impossible. But in any case, it is unnecessary work for us.

For example, suppose that on a data set which you know to be quite large the command `data.frame(x, y, z, monday, tuesday)` never returns. Do not report that `data.frame()` fails for large data sets. Perhaps it fails when a variable name is a day of the week. If this is so then when we got your report we would try out the `data.frame()` command on a large data set, probably with no day of the week variable name, and not see any problem. There is no way in the world that we could guess that we should try a day of the week variable name.

Or perhaps the command fails because the last command you used was a `[` method that had a bug causing 's internal data structures to be corrupted and making the `data.frame()` command fail from then on. This is why we need to know what other commands you have typed (or read from your startup file).

It is very useful to try and find simple examples that produce apparently the same bug, and somewhat useful to find simple examples that might be expected to produce the bug but actually do not. If you want to debug the problem and find exactly what caused it, that is wonderful. You should still report the facts as well as any explanations or solutions.

Invoking with the '--vanilla' option may help in isolating a bug. This ensures that the site profile and saved data files are not read.

A bug report can be generated using the function bug.report(). For reports on this will open the Web page at http://bugs.r-project.org/: for a contributed package it will open the package's bug tracker Web page or help you compose an email to the maintainer.

Bug reports on **contributed packages** should not be sent to the R bug tracker: rather make use of the package argument.

Author(s)

This help page is adapted from the Emacs manual and the R FAQ

See Also

help.request which you possibly should try *before* bug.report.

create.post, which handles emailing reports.

The R FAQ, also sessionInfo() from which you may add to the bug report.

---

capture.output *Send Output to a Character String or File*

Description

Evaluates its arguments with the output being returned as a character string or sent to a file. Related to sink in the same way that with is related to attach.

Usage

```
capture.output(..., file = NULL, append = FALSE)
```

Arguments

...	Expressions to be evaluated.
file	A file name or a connection, or NULL to return the output as a character vector. If the connection is not open, it will be opened initially and closed on exit.
append	logical. If file a file name or unopened connection, append or overwrite?

Details

An attempt is made to write output as far as possible to file if there is an error in evaluating the expressions, but for file = NULL all output will be lost.

Value

A character string (if file = NULL), or invisible NULL.

See Also

sink, textConnection

Examples

```
require(stats)
glmout <- capture.output(example(glm))
glmout[1:5]
capture.output(1+1, 2+2)
capture.output({1+1; 2+2})
## Not run:
## on Unix with enscript available
ps <- pipe("enscript -o tempout.ps","w")
capture.output(example(glm), file = ps)
close(ps)

## End(Not run)
```

---

changedFiles *Detect which files have changed*

Description

`fileSnapshot` takes a snapshot of a selection of files, recording summary information about each. `changedFiles` compares two snapshots, or compares one snapshot to the current state of the file system. The snapshots need not be the same directory; this could be used to compare two directories.

Usage

```
fileSnapshot(path = ".", file.info = TRUE, timestamp = NULL,
    md5sum = FALSE, digest = NULL, full.names = length(path) > 1,
    ...)

changedFiles(before, after, path = before$path, timestamp = before$timestamp,
    check.file.info = c("size", "isdir", "mode", "mtime"),
    md5sum = before$md5sum, digest = before$digest,
    full.names = before$full.names, ...)

## S3 method for class fileSnapshot
print(x, verbose = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class changedFiles
print(x, verbose = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`path`	character vector; the path(s) to record.
`file.info`	logical; whether to record `file.info` values for each file.
`timestamp`	character string or `NULL`; the name of a file to write at the time the snapshot is taken. This gives a quick test for modification, but may be unreliable; see the Details.
`md5sum`	logical; whether MD5 summaries of each file should be taken as part of the snapshot.

digest — a function or NULL; a function with header function(filename) which will take a vector of filenames and produce a vector of values of the same length, or a matrix with that number of rows.

full.names — logical; whether full names (as in list.files) should be recorded. Must be TRUE if length(path) > 1.

... — additional parameters to pass to list.files to control the set of files in the snapshots.

before, after — objects produced by fileSnapshot; two snapshots to compare. If after is missing, a new snapshot of the current file system will be produced for comparison, using arguments recorded in before as defaults.

check.file.info — character vector; which columns from file.info should be compared.

x — the object to print.

verbose — logical; whether to list all data when printing.

Details

The fileSnapshot function uses list.files to obtain a list of files, and depending on the file.info, md5sum, and digest arguments, records information about each file.

The changedFiles function compares two snapshots.

If the timestamp argument to fileSnapshot is length 1, a file with that name is created. If it is length 1 in changedFiles, the file_test function is used to compare the age of all files common to both before and after to it. This test may be unreliable: it compares the current modification time of the after files to the timestamp; that may not be the same as the modification time when the after snapshot was taken. It may also give incorrect results if the clock on the file system holding the timestamp differs from the one holding the snapshot files.

If the check.file.info argument contains a non-empty character vector, the indicated columns from the result of a call to file.info will be compared.

If md5sum is TRUE, fileSnapshot will call the tools::md5sum function to record the 32 byte MD5 checksum for each file, and changedFiles will compare the values. The digest argument allows users to provide their own digest function.

Value

fileSnapshot returns an object of class "fileSnapshot". This is a list containing the fields

info — a data frame whose rownames are the filenames, and whose columns contain the requested snapshot data

path — the normalized path from the call

timestamp, file.info, md5sum, digest, full.names — a record of the other arguments from the call

args — other arguments passed via ... to list.files.

changedFiles produces an object of class "changedFiles". This is a list containing

added, deleted, changed, unchanged — character vectors of filenames from the before and after snapshots, with obvious meanings

changes — a logical matrix with a row for each common file, and a column for each comparison test. TRUE indicates a change in that test.

print methods are defined for each of these types. The print method for "fileSnapshot" objects displays the arguments used to produce them, while the one for "changedFiles" displays the added, deleted and changed fields if non-empty, and a submatrix of the changes matrix containing all of the TRUE values.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch, using suggestions from Karl Millar and others.

See Also

file.info, file_test, md5sum.

Examples

```
# Create some files in a temporary directory
dir <- tempfile()
dir.create(dir)
writeBin(1L, file.path(dir, "file1"))
writeBin(2L, file.path(dir, "file2"))
dir.create(file.path(dir, "dir"))

# Take a snapshot
snapshot <- fileSnapshot(dir, timestamp = tempfile("timestamp"), md5sum=TRUE)

# Change one of the files.
writeBin(3L:4L, file.path(dir, "file2"))

# Display the detected changes.  We may or may not see mtime change...
changedFiles(snapshot)
changedFiles(snapshot)$changes
```

---

chooseBioCmirror *Select a Bioconductor Mirror*

Description

Interact with the user to choose a Bioconductor mirror.

Usage

```
chooseBioCmirror(graphics = getOption("menu.graphics"), ind = NULL)
```

Arguments

graphics	logical. If true, use a graphical list: on Windows or the OS X GUI use a list box, and on a Unix-alike if package **tcltk** and an X server are available, use a Tk widget. Otherwise use a text menu.
ind	Optional numeric value giving which entry to select.

Details

This sets the option "BioC_mirror": it needs to be used before a call to setRepositories.

In addition to the Bioconductor master site (in Seattle, USA), there currently are mirrors in Bethesda (USA), Dortmund (Germany), Bergen (Norway) and Cambridge (UK).

Value

None: this function is invoked for its side effect of updating options("BioC_mirror").

See Also

setRepositories, chooseCRANmirror.

---

chooseCRANmirror *Select a CRAN Mirror*

Description

Interact with the user to choose a CRAN mirror.

Usage

```
chooseCRANmirror(graphics = getOption("menu.graphics"), ind = NULL)

getCRANmirrors(all = FALSE, local.only = FALSE)
```

Arguments

graphics	Logical. If true, use a graphical list: on Windows or the OS X GUI use a list box, and on a Unix-alike if package **tcltk** and an X server are available, use a Tk widget. Otherwise use a text menu.
ind	Optional numeric value giving which entry to select.
all	Logical, get all known mirrors or only the ones flagged as OK.
local.only	Logical, try to get most recent list from CRAN or use file on local disk only.

Details

A list of mirrors is stored in file '*R_HOME*/doc/CRAN_mirrors.csv', but first an on-line list of current mirrors is consulted, and the file copy used only if the on-line list is inaccessible.

This function was originally written to support a Windows GUI menu item, but is also called by contrib.url if it finds the initial dummy value of options("repos").

Value

None for chooseCRANmirror(), this function is invoked for its side effect of updating options("repos").

getCRANmirrors() returns a data frame with mirror information.

See Also

setRepositories, chooseBioCmirror, contrib.url.

`citation` *Citing R and R Packages in Publications*

Description

How to cite and packages in publications.

Usage

```
citation(package = "base", lib.loc = NULL, auto = NULL)
readCitationFile(file, meta = NULL)
```

Arguments

`package`	a character string with the name of a single package. An error occurs if more than one package name is given.
`lib.loc`	a character vector with path names of libraries, or `NULL`. The default value of `NULL` corresponds to all libraries currently known. If the default is used, the loaded packages are searched before the libraries.
`auto`	a logical indicating whether the default citation auto-generated from the package 'DESCRIPTION' metadata should be used or not, or `NULL` (default), indicating that a 'CITATION' file is used if it exists, or an object of class "packageDescription" with package metadata (see below).
`file`	a file name.
`meta`	a list of package metadata as obtained by `packageDescription`, or `NULL` (the default).

Details

The core development team and the very active community of package authors have invested a lot of time and effort in creating as it is today. Please give credit where credit is due and cite and packages when you use them for data analysis.

Execute function `citation()` for information on how to cite the base R system in publications. If the name of a non-base package is given, the function either returns the information contained in the 'CITATION' file of the package or auto-generates citation information. In the latter case the package 'DESCRIPTION' file is parsed, the resulting citation object may be arbitrarily bad, but is quite useful (at least as a starting point) in most cases.

In >= 2.14.0, one can use a 'Authors@R' field in 'DESCRIPTION' to provide (code giving) a `person` object with a refined, machine-readable description of the package "authors" (in particular specifying their precise roles). Only those with an author role will be included in the auto-generated citation.

If only one reference is given, the print method for the object returned by `citation()` shows both a text version and a BibTeX entry for it, if a package has more than one reference then only the text versions are shown. The BibTeX versions can be obtained using function `toBibtex()` (see the examples below).

The 'CITATION' file of an R package should be placed in the 'inst' subdirectory of the package source. The file is an R source file and may contain arbitrary R commands including conditionals

and computations. Function readCitationFile() is used by citation() to extract the information in 'CITATION' files. The file is source()ed by the R parser in a temporary environment and all resulting bibliographic objects (specifically, of class "bibentry") are collected.

Traditionally, the 'CITATION' file contained zero or more calls to citHeader, then one or more calls to citEntry, and finally zero or more calls to citFooter, where in fact citHeader and citFooter are simply wrappers to paste, with their ... argument passed on to paste as is. The "bibentry" class makes for improved representation and manipulation of bibliographic information (in fact, the old mechanism is implemented using the new one), and one can write 'CITATION' files using the unified bibentry interface.

One can include an auto-generated package citation in the 'CITATION' file via citation(auto = meta).

readCitationFile makes use of the Encoding element (if any) of meta to determine the encoding of the file.

Value

An object inheriting from class "bibentry".

See Also

bibentry

Examples

```
## the basic R reference
citation()

## references for a package -- might not have these installed
if(nchar(system.file(package = "lattice"))) citation("lattice")
if(nchar(system.file(package = "foreign"))) citation("foreign")

## extract the bibtex entry from the return value
x <- citation()
toBibtex(x)
```

---

cite *Cite a bibliography entry.*

Description

Cite a bibentry object in text. The cite() function uses the cite() function from the default bibstyle if present, or citeNatbib() if not. citeNatbib() uses a style similar to that used by the LaTeX package **natbib**.

Usage

```
cite(keys, bib, ...)
citeNatbib(keys, bib, textual = FALSE, before = NULL, after = NULL,
           mode = c("authoryear", "numbers", "super"),
           abbreviate = TRUE, longnamesfirst = TRUE,
           bibpunct = c("(", ")", ";", "a", "", ","), previous)
```

Arguments

keys	A character vector of keys of entries to cite. May contain multiple keys in a single entry, separated by commas.
bib	A "bibentry" object containing the list of documents in which to find the keys.
...	Additional arguments to pass to the cite() function for the default style.
textual	Produce a "textual" style of citation, i.e. what \citet would produce in LaTeX.
before	Optional text to display before the citation.
after	Optional text to display after the citation.
mode	The "mode" of citation.
abbreviate	Whether to abbreviate long author lists.
longnamesfirst	If abbreviate == TRUE, whether to leave the first citation long.
bibpunct	A vector of punctuation to use in the citation, as used in **natbib**. See the Details section.
previous	A list of keys that have been previously cited, to be used when abbreviate == TRUE and longnamesfirst == TRUE

Details

Argument names are chosen based on the documentation for the LaTeX **natbib** package. See that documentation for the interpretation of the bibpunct entries.

The entries in bibpunct are as follows:

1. The left delimiter.
2. The right delimiter.
3. The separator between references within a citation.
4. An indicator of the "mode": "n" for numbers, "s" for superscripts, anything else for author-year.
5. Punctuation to go between the author and year.
6. Punctuation to go between years when authorship is suppressed.

Note that if mode is specified, it overrides the mode specification in bibpunct[4]. Partial matching is used for mode.

The defaults for citeNatbib have been chosen to match the JSS style, and by default these are used in cite. See bibstyle for how to set a different default style.

Value

A single element character string is returned, containing the citation.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

Examples

```
## R reference
rref <- bibentry(
   bibtype = "Manual",
   title = "R: A Language and Environment for Statistical Computing",
   author = person("R Core Team"),
   organization = "R Foundation for Statistical Computing",
   address = "Vienna, Austria",
   year = 2013,
   url = "http://www.R-project.org/",
   key = "R")

## References for boot package and associated book
bref <- c(
   bibentry(
     bibtype = "Manual",
     title = "boot: Bootstrap R (S-PLUS) Functions",
     author = c(
       person("Angelo", "Canty", role = "aut",
         comment = "S original"),
       person(c("Brian", "D."), "Ripley", role = c("aut", "trl", "cre"),
         comment = "R port, author of parallel support",
         email = "ripley@stats.ox.ac.uk")
     ),
     year = "2012",
     note = "R package version 1.3-4",
     url = "http://CRAN.R-project.org/package=boot",
     key = "boot-package"
   ),

   bibentry(
     bibtype = "Book",
     title = "Bootstrap Methods and Their Applications",
     author = as.person("Anthony C. Davison [aut], David V. Hinkley [aut]"),
     year = "1997",
     publisher = "Cambridge University Press",
     address = "Cambridge",
     isbn = "0-521-57391-2",
     url = "http://statwww.epfl.ch/davison/BMA/",
     key = "boot-book"
   )
)

## Combine and cite
refs <- c(rref, bref)
cite("R, boot-package", refs)

## Cite numerically
savestyle <- tools::getBibstyle()
tools::bibstyle("JSSnumbered", .init = TRUE,
         fmtPrefix = function(paper) paste0("[", paper$.index, "]"),
         cite = function(key, bib, ...)
          citeNatbib(key, bib, mode = "numbers",
              bibpunct = c("[", "]", ";", "n", "", ","), ...)
         )
cite("R, boot-package", refs, textual = TRUE)
```

```
refs

## restore the old style
tools::bibstyle(savestyle, .default = TRUE)
```

`citEntry` *Bibliography Entries (Older Interface)*

Description

Functionality for specifying bibliographic information in enhanced BibTeX style.

Usage

```
citEntry(entry, textVersion, header = NULL, footer = NULL, ...)
citHeader(...)
citFooter(...)
```

Arguments

`entry`	a character string with a BibTeX entry type. See section **Entry Types** in `bibentry` for details.
`textVersion`	a character string with a text representation of the reference.
`header`	a character string with optional header text.
`footer`	a character string with optional footer text.
`...`	for `citEntry`, arguments of the form *tag=value* giving the fields of the entry, with *tag* and *value* the name and value of the field, respectively. See section **Entry Fields** in `bibentry` for details. For `citHeader` and `citFooter`, character strings.

Value

`citEntry` produces an object of class `"bibentry"`.

See Also

`citation` for more information about citing R and R packages and 'CITATION' files; `bibentry` for the newer functionality for representing and manipulating bibliographic information.

close.socket *Close a Socket*

Description

Closes the socket and frees the space in the file descriptor table. The port may not be freed immediately.

Usage

```
close.socket(socket, ...)
```

Arguments

socket	A socket object
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

logical indicating success or failure

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley

See Also

make.socket, read.socket

combn *Generate All Combinations of n Elements, Taken m at a Time*

Description

Generate all combinations of the elements of x taken m at a time. If x is a positive integer, returns all combinations of the elements of seq(x) taken m at a time. If argument FUN is not NULL, applies a function given by the argument to each point. If simplify is FALSE, returns a list; otherwise returns an array, typically a matrix. ... are passed unchanged to the FUN function, if specified.

Usage

```
combn(x, m, FUN = NULL, simplify = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	vector source for combinations, or integer n for x <- seq_len(n).
m	number of elements to choose.
FUN	function to be applied to each combination; default NULL means the identity, i.e., to return the combination (vector of length m).
simplify	logical indicating if the result should be simplified to an array (typically a matrix); if FALSE, the function returns a list. Note that when simplify = TRUE as by default, the dimension of the result is simply determined from FUN(*1st combination*) (for efficiency reasons). This will badly fail if FUN(u) is not of constant length.
...	optionally, further arguments to FUN.

Details

Factors x are accepted from 3.1.0 (although coincidentally they worked for simplify = FALSE in earlier versions).

Value

a list or array, see the simplify argument above. In the latter case, the identity dim(combn(n, m)) == c(m, choose(n, m)) holds.

Author(s)

Scott Chasalow wrote the original in 1994 for S; R package **combinat** and documentation by Vince Carey <stvjc@channing.harvard.edu>; small changes by the R core team, notably to return an array in all cases of simplify = TRUE, e.g., for combn(5,5).

References

Nijenhuis, A. and Wilf, H.S. (1978) *Combinatorial Algorithms for Computers and Calculators*; Academic Press, NY.

See Also

choose for fast computation of the *number* of combinations. expand.grid for creating a data frame from all combinations of factors or vectors.

Examples

```
combn(letters[1:4], 2)
(m <- combn(10, 5, min))   # minimum value in each combination
mm <- combn(15, 6, function(x) matrix(x, 2, 3))
stopifnot(round(choose(10, 5)) == length(m),
          c(2,3, round(choose(15, 6))) == dim(mm))

## Different way of encoding points:
combn(c(1,1,1,1,2,2,2,3,3,4), 3, tabulate, nbins = 4)

## Compute support points and (scaled) probabilities for a
## Multivariate-Hypergeometric(n = 3, N = c(4,3,2,1)) p.f.:
# table.mat(t(combn(c(1,1,1,1,2,2,2,3,3,4), 3, tabulate, nbins = 4)))
```

```
## Assuring the identity
for(n in 1:7)
 for(m in 0:n) stopifnot(is.array(cc <- combn(n, m)),
                         dim(cc) == c(m, choose(n, m)))
```

`compareVersion` *Compare Two Package Version Numbers*

Description

Compare two package version numbers to see which is later.

Usage

```
compareVersion(a, b)
```

Arguments

`a, b`	Character strings representing package version numbers.

Details

package version numbers are of the form `x.y-z` for integers `x`, `y` and `z`, with components after `x` optionally missing (in which case the version number is older than those with the components present).

Value

`0` if the numbers are equal, `-1` if `b` is later and `1` if `a` is later (analogous to the C function `strcmp`).

See Also

`package_version`, `library`, `packageStatus`.

Examples

```
compareVersion("1.0", "1.0-1")
compareVersion("7.2-0","7.1-12")
```

COMPILE *Compile Files for Use with R*

Description

Compile given source files so that they can subsequently be collected into a shared object using `R CMD SHLIB` or an executable program using `R CMD LINK`.

Usage

```
R CMD COMPILE [options] srcfiles
```

Arguments

`srcfiles`	A list of the names of source files to be compiled. Currently, C, C++, Objective C, Objective C++ and Fortran are supported; the corresponding files should have the extensions '`.c`', '`.cc`' (or '`.cpp`'), '`.m`', '`.mm`' (or '`.M`'), '`.f`' and '`.f90`' or '`.f95`', respectively.
`options`	A list of compile-relevant settings, or for obtaining information about usage and version of the utility.

Details

`R CMD SHLIB` can both compile and link files into a shared object: since it knows what run-time libraries are needed when passed C++, Fortran and Objective C(++) sources, passing source files to `R CMD SHLIB` is more reliable.

Ratfor is not supported. If you have Ratfor source code, you need to convert it to FORTRAN. (On some Solaris systems mixing Ratfor and FORTRAN code will work.)

Objective C and Objective C++ support is optional and will work only if the corresponding compilers were available at configure time: their main usage is on OS X.

Compilation arranges to include the paths to the public C/C++ headers.

As this compiles code suitable for incorporation into a shared object, it generates PIC code: that might occasionally be undesirable for the main code of an executable program.

This is a `make`-based facility, so will not compile a source file if a newer corresponding '`.o`' file is present.

Note

Some binary distributions of have `COMPILE` in a separate bundle, e.g. an `R-devel` RPM.

This is not available on Windows.

See Also

`LINK`, `SHLIB`, `dyn.load`; the section on "Customizing compilation under Unix" in "R Administration and Installation" (see the '`doc/manual`' subdirectory of the source tree).

contrib.url *Find Appropriate Paths in CRAN-like Repositories*

Description

contrib.url adds the appropriate type-specific path within a repository to each URL in repos.

Usage

```
contrib.url(repos, type = getOption("pkgType"))
```

Arguments

repos	character vector, the base URL(s) of the repositories to use.
type	character string, indicating which type of packages: see install.packages.

Details

If type = "both" this will use the source repository.

Value

A character vector of the same length as repos.

See Also

setRepositories to set options("repos"), the most common value used for argument repos.

available.packages, download.packages, install.packages.

The 'R Installation and Administration' manual for how to set up a repository.

count.fields *Count the Number of Fields per Line*

Description

count.fields counts the number of fields, as separated by sep, in each of the lines of file read.

Usage

```
count.fields(file, sep = "", quote = "\"", skip = 0,
             blank.lines.skip = TRUE, comment.char = "#")
```

Arguments

file	a character string naming an ASCII data file, or a connection, which will be opened if necessary, and if so closed at the end of the function call.
sep	the field separator character. Values on each line of the file are separated by this character. By default, arbitrary amounts of whitespace can separate fields.
quote	the set of quoting characters
skip	the number of lines of the data file to skip before beginning to read data.
blank.lines.skip	logical: if TRUE blank lines in the input are ignored.
comment.char	character: a character vector of length one containing a single character or an empty string.

Details

This used to be used by read.table and can still be useful in discovering problems in reading a file by that function.

For the handling of comments, see scan.

Consistent with scan, count.fields allows quoted strings to contain newline characters. In such a case the starting line will have the field count recorded as NA, and the ending line will include the count of all fields from the beginning of the record.

Value

A vector with the numbers of fields found.

See Also

read.table

Examples

```
cat("NAME", "1:John", "2:Paul", file = "foo", sep = "\n")
count.fields("foo", sep = ":")
unlink("foo")
```

---

create.post *Ancillary Function for Preparing Emails and Postings*

Description

An ancillary function used by bug.report and help.request to prepare emails for submission to package maintainers or to mailing lists.

Usage

```
create.post(instructions = character(), description = "post",
            subject = "",
            method = getOption("mailer"),
            address = "the relevant mailing list",
            ccaddress = getOption("ccaddress", ""),
            filename = "R.post", info = character())
```

Arguments

instructions	Character vector of instructions to put at the top of the template email.
description	Character string: a description to be incorporated into messages.
subject	Subject of the email. Optional except for the "mailx" method.
method	Submission method, one of "none", "mailto", "gnudoit", "ess" or (Unix only) "mailx". See 'Details'.
address	Recipient's email address, where applicable: for package bug reports sent by email this defaults to the address of the package maintainer (the first if more than one is listed).
ccaddress	Optional email address for copies with the "mailx" and "mailto" methods. Use ccaddress = "" for no copy.
filename	Filename to use for setting up the email (or storing it when method is "none" or sending mail fails).
info	character vector of information to include in the template email below the 'please do not edit the information below' line.

Details

What this does depends on the method. The function first creates a template email body.

none A file editor (see file.edit) is opened with instructions and the template email. When this returns, the completed email is in file file ready to be read/pasted into an email program.

mailto This opens the default email program with a template email (including address, Cc: address and subject) for you to edit and send.

This works where default mailers are set up (usual on OS X and Windows, and where xdg-open is available and configured on other Unix-alikes: if that fails it tries the browser set by R_BROWSER).

This is the 'factory-fresh' default method.

mailx (Unix-alikes only.) A file editor (see file.edit) is opened with instructions and the template email. When this returns, it is mailed using a Unix command line mail utility such as mailx, to the address (and optionally, the Cc: address) given.

gnudoit An (X)emacs mail buffer is opened for the email to be edited and sent: this requires the gnudoit program to be available. Currently subject is ignored.

ess The body of the template email is sent to stdout.

Value

Invisible NULL.

See Also

bug.report, help.request.

`data` *Data Sets*

Description

Loads specified data sets, or list the available data sets.

Usage

```
data(..., list = character(), package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL,
     verbose = getOption("verbose"), envir = .GlobalEnv)
```

Arguments

`...`	literal character strings or names.
`list`	a character vector.
`package`	a character vector giving the package(s) to look in for data sets, or `NULL`. By default, all packages in the search path are used, then the '`data`' subdirectory (if present) of the current working directory.
`lib.loc`	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or `NULL`. The default value of `NULL` corresponds to all libraries currently known.
`verbose`	a logical. If `TRUE`, additional diagnostics are printed.
`envir`	the environment where the data should be loaded.

Details

Currently, four formats of data files are supported:

1. files ending '`.R`' or '`.r`' are `source()`d in, with the working directory changed temporarily to the directory containing the respective file. (`data` ensures that the **utils** package is attached, in case it had been run *via* `utils::data`.)
2. files ending '`.RData`' or '`.rda`' are `load()`ed.
3. files ending '`.tab`', '`.txt`' or '`.TXT`' are read using `read.table(..., header = TRUE)`, and hence result in a data frame.
4. files ending '`.csv`' or '`.CSV`' are read using `read.table(..., header = TRUE, sep = ";")`, and also result in a data frame.

If more than one matching file name is found, the first on this list is used. (Files with extensions '`.txt`', '`.tab`' or '`.csv`' can be compressed, with or without further extension '`.gz`', '`.bz2`' or '`.xz`'.)

The data sets to be loaded can be specified as a set of character strings or names, or as the character vector `list`, or as both.

For each given data set, the first two types ('`.R`' or '`.r`', and '`.RData`' or '`.rda`' files) can create several variables in the load environment, which might all be named differently from the data set. The third and fourth types will always result in the creation of a single variable with the same name (without extension) as the data set.

If no data sets are specified, `data` lists the available data sets. It looks for a new-style data index in the '`Meta`' or, if this is not found, an old-style '`00Index`' file in the '`data`' directory of each

specified package, and uses these files to prepare a listing. If there is a 'data' area but no index, available data files for loading are computed and included in the listing, and a warning is given: such packages are incomplete. The information about available data sets is returned in an object of class "packageIQR". The structure of this class is experimental. Where the datasets have a different name from the argument that should be used to retrieve them the index will have an entry like beaver1 (beavers) which tells us that dataset beaver1 can be retrieved by the call data(beaver).

If lib.loc and package are both NULL (the default), the data sets are searched for in all the currently loaded packages then in the 'data' directory (if any) of the current working directory.

If lib.loc = NULL but package is specified as a character vector, the specified package(s) are searched for first amongst loaded packages and then in the default library/ies (see .libPaths).

If lib.loc *is* specified (and not NULL), packages are searched for in the specified library/ies, even if they are already loaded from another library.

To just look in the 'data' directory of the current working directory, set package = character(0) (and lib.loc = NULL, the default).

Value

A character vector of all data sets specified, or information about all available data sets in an object of class "packageIQR" if none were specified.

Good practice

data() was originally intended to allow users to load datasets from packages for use in their examples, and as such it loaded the datasets into the workspace .GlobalEnv. This avoided having large datasets in memory when not in use. That need has been almost entirely superseded by lazy-loading of datasets.

The ability to specify a dataset by name (without quotes) is a convenience: in programming the datasets should be specified by character strings (with quotes).

Use of data within a function without an envir argument has the almost always undesirable side-effect of putting an object in the user's workspace (and indeed, of replacing any object of that name already there). It would almost always be better to put the object in the current evaluation environment by data(..., envir = environment()). However, two alternatives are usually preferable, both described in the 'Writing R Extensions' manual.

- For sets of data, set up a package to use lazy-loading of data.
- For objects which are system data, for example lookup tables used in calculations within the function, use a file 'R/sysdata.rda' in the package sources or create the objects by code at package installation time.

A sometimes important distinction is that the second approach places objects in the namespace but the first does not. So if it is important that the function sees mytable as an object from the package, it is system data and the second approach should be used. In the unusual case that a package uses a lazy-loaded dataset as a default argument to a function, that needs to be specified by ::, e.g., survival::survexp.us.

Note

One can take advantage of the search order and the fact that a '.R' file will change directory. If raw data are stored in 'mydata.txt' then one can set up 'mydata.R' to read 'mydata.txt' and pre-process it, e.g., using transform. For instance one can convert numeric vectors to factors with the appropriate labels. Thus, the '.R' file can effectively contain a metadata specification for the plaintext formats.

See Also

help for obtaining documentation on data sets, save for *creating* the second ('.rda') kind of data, typically the most efficient one.

The 'Writing R Extensions' for considerations in preparing the 'data' directory of a package.

Examples

```
require(utils)
data()                          # list all available data sets
try(data(package = "rpart") )  # list the data sets in the rpart package
data(USArrests, "VADeaths")    # load the data sets USArrests and VADeaths
## Not run: ## Alternatively
ds <- c("USArrests", "VADeaths"); data(list = ds)
## End(Not run)
help(USArrests)                # give information on data set USArrests
```

---

dataentry *Spreadsheet Interface for Entering Data*

Description

A spreadsheet-like editor for entering or editing data.

Usage

```
data.entry(..., Modes = NULL, Names = NULL)
dataentry(data, modes)
de(..., Modes = list(), Names = NULL)
```

Arguments

...	A list of variables: currently these should be numeric or character vectors or list containing such vectors.
Modes	The modes to be used for the variables.
Names	The names to be used for the variables.
data	A list of numeric and/or character vectors.
modes	A list of length up to that of data giving the modes of (some of) the variables. list() is allowed.

Details

The data entry editor is only available on some platforms and GUIs. Where available it provides a means to visually edit a matrix or a collection of variables (including a data frame) as described in the Notes section.

data.entry has side effects, any changes made in the spreadsheet are reflected in the variables. The functions de, de.ncols, de.setup and de.restore are designed to help achieve these side effects. If the user passes in a matrix, X say, then the matrix is broken into columns before dataentry is called. Then on return the columns are collected and glued back together and the result assigned to the variable X. If you don't want this behaviour use dataentry directly.

The primitive function is `dataentry`. It takes a list of vectors of possibly different lengths and modes (the second argument) and opens a spreadsheet with these variables being the columns. The columns of the dataentry window are returned as vectors in a list when the spreadsheet is closed.

`de.ncols` counts the number of columns which are supplied as arguments to `data.entry`. It attempts to count columns in lists, matrices and vectors. `de.setup` sets things up so that on return the columns can be regrouped and reassigned to the correct name. This is handled by `de.restore`.

Value

`de` and `dataentry` return the edited value of their arguments. `data.entry` invisibly returns a vector of variable names but its main value is its side effect of assigning new version of those variables in the user's workspace.

Resources

The data entry window responds to X resources of class `R_dataentry`. Resources `foreground`, `background` and `geometry` are utilized.

Note

The details of interface to the data grid may differ by platform and GUI. The following description applies to the X11-based implementation under Unix.

You can navigate around the grid using the cursor keys or by clicking with the (left) mouse button on any cell. The active cell is highlighted by thickening the surrounding rectangle. Moving to the right or down will scroll the grid as needed: there is no constraint to the rows or columns currently in use.

There are alternative ways to navigate using the keys. Return and (keypad) Enter and LineFeed all move down. Tab moves right and Shift-Tab move left. Home moves to the top left.

PageDown or Control-F moves down a page, and PageUp or Control-B up by a page. End will show the last used column and the last few rows used (in any column).

Using any other key starts an editing process on the currently selected cell: moving away from that cell enters the edited value whereas Esc cancels the edit and restores the previous value. When the editing process starts the cell is cleared. In numerical columns (the default) only letters making up a valid number (including `-.eE`) are accepted, and entering an invalid edited value (such as blank) enters `NA` in that cell. The last entered value can be deleted using the BackSpace or Del(ete) key. Only a limited number of characters (currently 29) can be entered in a cell, and if necessary only the start or end of the string will be displayed, with the omissions indicated by > or <. (The start is shown except when editing.)

Entering a value in a cell further down a column than the last used cell extends the variable and fills the gap (if any) by `NA`s (not shown on screen).

The column names can only be selected by clicking in them. This gives a popup menu to select the column type (currently Real (numeric) or Character) or to change the name. Changing the type converts the current contents of the column (and converting from Character to Real may generate `NA`s.) If changing the name is selected the header cell becomes editable (and is cleared). As with all cells, the value is entered by moving away from the cell by clicking elsewhere or by any of the keys for moving down (only).

New columns are created by entering values in them (and not by just assigning a new name). The mode of the column is auto-detected from the first value entered: if this is a valid number it gives a numeric column. Unused columns are ignored, so adding data in `var5` to a three-column grid adds one extra variable, not two.

The Copy button copies the currently selected cell: paste copies the last copied value to the current cell, and right-clicking selects a cell *and* copies in the value. Initially the value is blank, and attempts to paste a blank value will have no effect.

Control-L will refresh the display, recalculating field widths to fit the current entries.

In the default mode the column widths are chosen to fit the contents of each column, with a default of 10 characters for empty columns. you can specify fixed column widths by setting option de.cellwidth to the required fixed width (in characters). (set it to zero to return to variable widths). The displayed width of any field is limited to 600 pixels (and by the window width).

See Also

vi, edit: edit uses dataentry to edit data frames.

Examples

```
# call data entry with variables x and y
## Not run: data.entry(x, y)
```

---

debugger *Post-Mortem Debugging*

Description

Functions to dump the evaluation environments (frames) and to examine dumped frames.

Usage

```
dump.frames(dumpto = "last.dump", to.file = FALSE)
debugger(dump = last.dump)
```

Arguments

dumpto	a character string. The name of the object or file to dump to.
to.file	logical. Should the dump be to an object or to a file?
dump	An dump object created by dump.frames.

Details

To use post-mortem debugging, set the option error to be a call to dump.frames. By default this dumps to an object last.dump in the workspace, but it can be set to dump to a file (a dump of the object produced by a call to save). The dumped object contain the call stack, the active environments and the last error message as returned by geterrmessage.

When dumping to file, dumpto gives the name of the dumped object and the file name has '.rda' appended.

A dump object of class "dump.frames" can be examined by calling debugger. This will give the error message and a list of environments from which to select repeatedly. When an environment is selected, it is copied and the browser called from within the copy. Note that not all the information in the original frame will be available, e.g. promises which have not yet been evaluated and the contents of any ... argument.

If dump.frames is installed as the error handler, execution will continue even in non-interactive sessions. See the examples for how to dump and then quit.

Value

Invisible NULL.

Note

Functions such as sys.parent and environment applied to closures will not work correctly inside debugger.

If the error occurred when computing the default value of a formal argument the debugger will report "recursive default argument reference" when trying to examine that environment.

Of course post-mortem debugging will not work if is too damaged to produce and save the dump, for example if it has run out of workspace.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

browser for the actions available at the Browse prompt.

options for setting error options; recover is an interactive debugger working similarly to debugger but directly after the error occurs.

Examples

```
## Not run:
options(error = quote(dump.frames("testdump", TRUE)))

f <- function() {
    g <- function() stop("test dump.frames")
    g()
}
f()   # will generate a dump on file "testdump.rda"
options(error = NULL)

## possibly in another R session
load("testdump.rda")
debugger(testdump)
Available environments had calls:
1: f()
2: g()
3: stop("test dump.frames")

Enter an environment number, or 0 to exit
Selection: 1
Browsing in the environment with call:
f()
Called from: debugger.look(ind)
Browse[1]> ls()
[1] "g"
Browse[1]> g
function() stop("test dump.frames")
<environment: 759818>
Browse[1]>
```

```
Available environments had calls:
1: f()
2: g()
3: stop("test dump.frames")

Enter an environment number, or 0 to exit
Selection: 0

## A possible setting for non-interactive sessions
options(error = quote({dump.frames(to.file = TRUE); q(status = 1)}))

## End(Not run)
```

---

demo *Demonstrations of R Functionality*

Description

demo is a user-friendly interface to running some demonstration scripts. demo() gives the list of available topics.

Usage

```
demo(topic, package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL,
     character.only = FALSE, verbose = getOption("verbose"),
     echo = TRUE, ask = getOption("demo.ask"),
     encoding = getOption("encoding"))
```

Arguments

topic	the topic which should be demonstrated, given as a name or literal character string, or a character string, depending on whether character.only is FALSE (default) or TRUE. If omitted, the list of available topics is displayed.
package	a character vector giving the packages to look into for demos, or NULL. By default, all packages in the search path are used.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. If the default is used, the loaded packages are searched before the libraries.
character.only	logical; if TRUE, use topic as character string.
verbose	a logical. If TRUE, additional diagnostics are printed.
echo	a logical. If TRUE, show the input when sourcing.
ask	a logical (or "default") indicating if devAskNewPage(ask = TRUE) should be called before graphical output happens from the demo code. The value "default" (the factory-fresh default) means to ask if echo == TRUE and the graphics device appears to be interactive. This parameter applies both to any currently opened device and to any devices opened by the demo code. If this is evaluated to TRUE and the session is interactive, the user is asked to press RETURN to start.
encoding	See source. If the package has a declared encoding, that takes preference.

Details

If no topics are given, demo lists the available demos. The corresponding information is returned in an object of class "packageIQR".

See Also

source and devAskNewPage which are called by demo.

Examples

```
demo() # for attached packages

## All available demos:
demo(package = .packages(all.available = TRUE))


## Display a demo, pausing between pages
demo(lm.glm, package = "stats", ask = TRUE)

## Display it without pausing
demo(lm.glm, package = "stats", ask = FALSE)


## Not run:
 ch <- "scoping"
 demo(ch, character = TRUE)

## End(Not run)

## Find the location of a demo
system.file("demo", "lm.glm.R", package = "stats")
```

---

download.file *Download File from the Internet*

Description

This function can be used to download a file from the Internet.

Usage

```
download.file(url, destfile, method, quiet = FALSE, mode = "w",
              cacheOK = TRUE,
              extra = getOption("download.file.extra"))
```

Arguments

url	A character string naming the URL of a resource to be downloaded.
destfile	A character string with the name where the downloaded file is saved. Tilde-expansion is performed.

method	Method to be used for downloading files. Currently download methods "internal", "wget", "curl" and "lynx" (deprecated) are available, and there is a value "auto": see 'Details' and 'Note'. The method can also be set through the option "download.file.method": see options().
quiet	If TRUE, suppress status messages (if any), and the progress bar.
mode	character. The mode with which to write the file. Useful values are "w", "wb" (binary), "a" (append) and "ab". Only used for the "internal" method.
cacheOK	logical. Is a server-side cached value acceptable? Implemented for the "internal", "wget" and "curl" methods.
extra	character vector of additional command-line arguments for the "wget", "curl" and "lynx" methods.

Details

The function download.file can be used to download a single file as described by url from the internet and store it in destfile. The url must start with a scheme such as 'http://', 'ftp://' or 'file://'.

If method = "auto" is chosen (the default), the internal method is chosen for 'file://' URLs, and for the others provided capabilities("http/ftp") is true (which it almost always is). Otherwise methods "wget", "curl" and "lynx" are tried in turn.

For methods "wget", "curl" and "lynx" a system call is made to the tool given by method, and the respective program must be installed on your system and be in the search path for executables. They will block all other activity on the process until they complete: this may make a GUI unresponsive.

cacheOK = FALSE is useful for 'http://' URLs, and will attempt to get a copy directly from the site rather than from an intermediate cache. It is used by available.packages.

The remaining details apply to method "internal" only.

Note that 'https://' URLs are not supported by the internal method.

See url for how 'file://' URLs are interpreted, especially on Windows. This function does decode encoded URLs.

The timeout for many parts of the transfer can be set by the option timeout which defaults to 60 seconds.

The level of detail provided during transfer can be set by the quiet argument and the internet.info option. The details depend on the platform and scheme, but setting internet.info to 0 gives all available details, including all server responses. Using 2 (the default) gives only serious messages, and 3 or more suppresses all messages.

A progress bar tracks the transfer. If the file length is known, an equals sign represents 2% of the transfer completed: otherwise a dot represents 10Kb.

Code written to download binary files must use mode = "wb", but the problems incurred by a text transfer will only be seen on Windows.

Value

An (invisible) integer code, 0 for success and non-zero for failure. For the "wget" and "curl" methods this is the status code returned by the external program. The "internal" method can return 1, but will in most cases throw an error.

Setting Proxies

This applies to the internal code only.

Proxies can be specified via environment variables. Setting "no_proxy" to "*" stops any proxy being tried. Otherwise the setting of "http_proxy" or "ftp_proxy" (or failing that, the all upper-case version) is consulted and if non-empty used as a proxy site. For FTP transfers, the username and password on the proxy can be specified by "ftp_proxy_user" and "ftp_proxy_password". The form of "http_proxy" should be "http://proxy.dom.com/" or "http://proxy.dom.com:8080/" where the port defaults to 80 and the trailing slash may be omitted. For "ftp_proxy" use the form "ftp://proxy.dom.com:3128/" where the default port is 21. These environment variables must be set before the download code is first used: they cannot be altered later by calling Sys.setenv.

Usernames and passwords can be set for HTTP proxy transfers via environment variable http_proxy_user in the form user:passwd. Alternatively, http_proxy can be of the form "http://user:pass@proxy.dom.com:8080/" for compatibility with wget. Only the HTTP/1.0 basic authentication scheme is supported.

Note

Files of more than 2GB are supported on 64-bit builds of ; they may be truncated on some 32-bit builds.

Method "wget" is mainly for historical compatibility, but it and "curl" can be used for URLs (e.g., 'https://' URLs or those that use cookies) which the internal method does not support.

Method "wget" can be used with proxy firewalls which require user/password authentication if proper values are stored in the configuration file for wget.

wget (http://www.gnu.org/software/wget/) is commonly installed on Unix-alikes (but not OS X). Windows binaries are available from Cygwin, gnuwin32 and elsewhere.

curl (http://curl.haxx.se/) is installed on OS X and commonly on Unix-alikes. Windows binaries are available at that URL.

Use of lynx (http://lynx.browser.org/ is of historical interest and now deprecated.

See Also

options to set the HTTPUserAgent, timeout and internet.info options.

url for a finer-grained way to read data from URLs.

url.show, available.packages, download.packages for applications.

Contributed package **RCurl** provides more comprehensive facilities to download from URLs.

---

download.packages *Download Packages from CRAN-like Repositories*

Description

These functions can be used to automatically compare the version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.

Usage

```
download.packages(pkgs, destdir, available = NULL,
                  repos = getOption("repos"),
                  contriburl = contrib.url(repos, type),
                  method, type = getOption("pkgType"), ...)
```

Arguments

pkgs	character vector of the names of packages whose latest available versions should be downloaded from the repositories.
destdir	directory where downloaded packages are to be stored.
available	an object as returned by available.packages listing packages available at the repositories, or NULL which makes an internal call to available.packages.
repos	character vector, the base URL(s) of the repositories to use, i.e., the URL of the CRAN master such as "http://cran.r-project.org" or its Statlib mirror, "http://lib.stat.cmu.edu/R/CRAN".
contriburl	URL(s) of the contrib sections of the repositories. Use this argument only if your repository mirror is incomplete, e.g., because you burned only the 'contrib' section on a CD. Overrides argument repos.
method	Download method, see download.file.
type	character string, indicate which type of packages: see install.packages.
...	additional arguments to be passed to download.file.

Details

download.packages takes a list of package names and a destination directory, downloads the newest versions and saves them in destdir. If the list of available packages is not given as argument, it is obtained from repositories. If a repository is local, i.e. the URL starts with "file:", then the packages are not downloaded but used directly. Both "file:" and "file:///" are allowed as prefixes to a file path. Use the latter only for URLs: see url for their interpretation. (Other forms of 'file://' URLs are not supported.)

Value

A two-column matrix of names and destination file names of those packages successfully downloaded. If packages are not available or there is a problem with the download, suitable warnings are given.

See Also

available.packages, contrib.url.

The main use is by install.packages.

See download.file for how to handle proxies and other options to monitor file transfers.

The 'R Installation and Administration' manual for how to set up a repository.

edit *Invoke a Text Editor*

Description

Invoke a text editor on an object.

Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
edit(name = NULL, file = "", title = NULL,
     editor = getOption("editor"), ...)

vi(name = NULL, file = "")
emacs(name = NULL, file = "")
pico(name = NULL, file = "")
xemacs(name = NULL, file = "")
xedit(name = NULL, file = "")
```

Arguments

name	a named object that you want to edit. If name is missing then the file specified by file is opened for editing.
file	a string naming the file to write the edited version to.
title	a display name for the object being edited.
editor	usually a string naming the text editor you want to use. On Unix the default is set from the environment variables EDITOR or VISUAL if either is set, otherwise vi is used. On Windows it defaults to "internal", the script editor. On the OS X GUI the argument is ignored and the document editor is always used. editor can also be a function, in which case it is called with the arguments name, file, and title. Note that such a function will need to independently implement all desired functionality.
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Details

edit invokes the text editor specified by editor with the object name to be edited. It is a generic function, currently with a default method and one for data frames and matrices.

data.entry can be used to edit data, and is used by edit to edit matrices and data frames on systems for which data.entry is available.

It is important to realize that edit does not change the object called name. Instead, a copy of name is made and it is that copy which is changed. Should you want the changes to apply to the object name you must assign the result of edit to name. (Try fix if you want to make permanent changes to an object.)

In the form edit(name), edit deparses name into a temporary file and invokes the editor editor on this file. Quitting from the editor causes file to be parsed and that value returned. Should an error occur in parsing, possibly due to incorrect syntax, no value is returned. Calling edit(), with no arguments, will result in the temporary file being reopened for further editing.

Note that deparsing is not perfect, and the object recreated after editing can differ in subtle ways from that deparsed: see dput and .deparseOpts. (The deparse options used are the same as the defaults for dump.) Editing a function will preserve its environment. See edit.data.frame for further changes that can occur when editing a data frame or matrix.

Currently only the internal editor in Windows makes use of the title option; it displays the given name in the window header.

Note

The functions vi, emacs, pico, xemacs, xedit rely on the corresponding editor being available and being on the path. This is system-dependent.

See Also

edit.data.frame, data.entry, fix.

Examples

```
## Not run:
# use xedit on the function mean and assign the changes
mean <- edit(mean, editor = "xedit")

# use vi on mean and write the result to file mean.out
vi(mean, file = "mean.out")

## End(Not run)
```

---

edit.data.frame *Edit Data Frames and Matrices*

Description

Use data editor on data frame or matrix contents.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class data.frame
edit(name, factor.mode = c("character", "numeric"),
     edit.row.names = any(row.names(name) != 1:nrow(name)), ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
edit(name, edit.row.names = !is.null(dn[[1]]), ...)
```

Arguments

name	A data frame or (numeric, logical or character) matrix.
factor.mode	How to handle factors (as integers or using character levels) in a data frame.
edit.row.names	logical. Show the row names (if they exist) be displayed as a separate editable column? It is an error to ask for this on a matrix with NULL row names.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

At present, this only works on simple data frames containing numeric, logical or character vectors and factors, and numeric, logical or character matrices. Any other mode of matrix will give an error, and a warning is given when the matrix has a class (which will be discarded).

Data frame columns are coerced on input to *character* unless numeric (in the sense of `is.numeric`), logical or factor. A warning is given when classes are discarded. Special characters (tabs, non-printing ASCII, etc.) will be displayed as escape sequences.

Factors columns are represented in the spreadsheet as either numeric vectors (which are more suitable for data entry) or character vectors (better for browsing). After editing, vectors are padded with `NA` to have the same length and factor attributes are restored. The set of factor levels can not be changed by editing in numeric mode; invalid levels are changed to `NA` and a warning is issued. If new factor levels are introduced in character mode, they are added at the end of the list of levels in the order in which they encountered.

It is possible to use the data-editor's facilities to select the mode of columns to swap between numerical and factor columns in a data frame. Changing any column in a numerical matrix to character will cause the result to be coerced to a character matrix. Changing the mode of logical columns is not supported.

For a data frame, the row names will be taken from the original object if `edit.row.names = FALSE` and the number of rows is unchanged, and from the edited output if `edit.row.names = TRUE` and there are no duplicates. (If the `row.names` column is incomplete, it is extended by entries like `row223`.) In all other cases the row names are replaced by `seq(length = nrows)`.

For a matrix, colnames will be added (of the form `col7`) if needed. The rownames will be taken from the original object if `edit.row.names = FALSE` and the number of rows is unchanged (otherwise `NULL`), and from the edited output if `edit.row.names = TRUE`. (If the `row.names` column is incomplete, it is extended by entries like `row223`.)

Editing a matrix or data frame will lose all attributes apart from the row and column names.

Value

The edited data frame or matrix.

Note

`fix(dataframe)` works for in-place editing by calling this function.

If the data editor is not available, a dump of the object is presented for editing using the default method of `edit`.

At present the data editor is limited to 65535 rows.

Author(s)

Peter Dalgaard

See Also

`data.entry`, `edit`

Examples

```
## Not run:
edit(InsectSprays)
edit(InsectSprays, factor.mode = "numeric")

## End(Not run)
```

---

example *Run an Examples Section from the Online Help*

Description

Run all the code from the **Examples** part of 's online help topic `topic` with two possible exceptions, `dontrun` and `dontshow`, see 'Details' below.

Usage

```
example(topic, package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL,
        character.only = FALSE, give.lines = FALSE, local = FALSE,
        echo = TRUE, verbose = getOption("verbose"),
        setRNG = FALSE, ask = getOption("example.ask"),
        prompt.prefix = abbreviate(topic, 6),
        run.dontrun = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`topic`	name or literal character string: the online `help` topic the examples of which should be run.
`package`	a character vector giving the package names to look into for the topic, or `NULL` (the default), when all packages on the search path are used.
`lib.loc`	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or `NULL`. The default value of `NULL` corresponds to all libraries currently known. If the default is used, the loaded packages are searched before the libraries.
`character.only`	a logical indicating whether `topic` can be assumed to be a character string.
`give.lines`	logical: if true, the *lines* of the example source code are returned as a character vector.
`local`	logical: if `TRUE` evaluate locally, if `FALSE` evaluate in the workspace.
`echo`	logical; if `TRUE`, show the input when sourcing.
`verbose`	logical; if `TRUE`, show even more when running example code.
`setRNG`	logical or expression; if not `FALSE`, the random number generator state is saved, then initialized to a specified state, the example is run and the (saved) state is restored. `setRNG = TRUE` sets the same state as `R CMD check` does for running a package's examples. This is currently equivalent to `setRNG = {RNGkind("default", "default"); set.seed(1)}`.
`ask`	logical (or `"default"`) indicating if `devAskNewPage(ask = TRUE)` should be called before graphical output happens from the example code. The value `"default"` (the factory-fresh default) means to ask if `echo == TRUE` and the graphics device appears to be interactive. This parameter applies both to any currently opened device and to any devices opened by the example code.

`prompt.prefix`	character; prefixes the prompt to be used if `echo = TRUE`.
`run.dontrun`	logical indicating that \dontrun should be ignored.

Details

If `lib.loc` is not specified, the packages are searched for amongst those already loaded, then in the libraries given by `.libPaths()`. If `lib.loc` is specified, packages are searched for only in the specified libraries, even if they are already loaded from another library. The search stops at the first package found that has help on the topic.

An attempt is made to load the package before running the examples, but this will not replace a package loaded from another location.

If `local = TRUE` objects are not created in the workspace and so not available for examination after `example` completes: on the other hand they cannot overwrite objects of the same name in the workspace.

As detailed in the manual *Writing Extensions*, the author of the help page can markup parts of the examples for two exception rules

`dontrun` encloses code that should not be run.

`dontshow` encloses code that is invisible on help pages, but will be run both by the package checking tools, and the `example()` function. This was previously `testonly`, and that form is still accepted.

Value

The value of the last evaluated expression, unless `give.lines` is true, where a `character` vector is returned.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler and others

See Also

`demo`

Examples

```
example(InsectSprays)
## force use of the standard package stats:
example("smooth", package = "stats", lib.loc = .Library)

## set RNG *before* example as when R CMD check is run:

r1 <- example(quantile, setRNG = TRUE)
x1 <- rnorm(1)
u <- runif(1)
## identical random numbers
r2 <- example(quantile, setRNG = TRUE)
x2 <- rnorm(1)
stopifnot(identical(r1, r2))
## but x1 and x2 differ since the RNG state from before example()
## differs and is restored!
x1; x2
```

```
## Exploring examples code:
## How large are the examples of "lm...()" functions?
lmex <- sapply(apropos("^lm", mode = "function"),
               example, character.only = TRUE, give.lines = TRUE)
sapply(lmex, length)
```

`file.edit` *Edit One or More Files*

Description

Edit one or more files in a text editor.

Usage

```
file.edit(..., title = file, editor = getOption("editor"),
          fileEncoding = "")
```

Arguments

`...`	one or more character vectors containing the names of the files to be displayed. These will be tilde-expanded: see `path.expand`.
`title`	the title to use in the editor; defaults to the filename.
`editor`	the text editor to be used. See 'Details'.
`fileEncoding`	the encoding to assume for the file: the default is to assume the native encoding. See the 'Encoding' section of the help for `file`.

Details

The behaviour of this function is very system dependent. Currently files can be opened only one at a time on Unix; on Windows, the internal editor allows multiple files to be opened, but has a limit of 50 simultaneous edit windows.

The `title` argument is used for the window caption in Windows, and is currently ignored on other platforms.

Any error in re-encoding the files to the native encoding will cause the function to fail.

The default for `editor` is system-dependent. On Windows it defaults to `"internal"`, the script editor, and in the OS X GUI the document editor is used whatever the value of `editor`. On Unix the default is set from the environment variables `EDITOR` or `VISUAL` if either is set, otherwise `vi` is used.

See Also

`files`, `file.show`, `edit`, `fix`,

Examples

```
## Not run:
# open two R scripts for editing
file.edit("script1.R", "script2.R")

## End(Not run)
```

file_test *Shell-style Tests on Files*

Description

Utility for shell-style file tests.

Usage

```
file_test(op, x, y)
```

Arguments

op	a character string specifying the test to be performed. Unary tests (only x is used) are "-f" (existence and not being a directory), "-d" (existence and directory) and "-x" (executable as a file or searchable as a directory). Binary tests are "-nt" (strictly newer than, using the modification dates) and "-ot" (strictly older than): in both cases the test is false unless both files exist.
x, y	character vectors giving file paths.

Details

'Existence' here means being on the file system and accessible by the `stat` system call (or a 64-bit extension) – on a Unix-alike this requires execute permission on all of the directories in the path that leads to the file, but no permissions on the file itself.

For the meaning of "-x" on Windows see `file.access`.

See Also

`file.exists` which only tests for existence (`test -e` on some systems) but not for not being a directory.

`file.path`, `file.info`

Examples

```
dir <- file.path(R.home(), "library", "stats")
file_test("-d", dir)
file_test("-nt", file.path(dir, "R"), file.path(dir, "demo"))
```

findLineNum *Find the Location of a Line of Source Code, or Set a Breakpoint There.*

Description

These functions locate objects containing particular lines of source code, using the information saved when the code was parsed with `keep.source = TRUE`.

Usage

```
findLineNum(srcfile, line, nameonly = TRUE,
            envir = parent.frame(), lastenv)

setBreakpoint(srcfile, line, nameonly = TRUE,
              envir = parent.frame(), lastenv, verbose = TRUE,
              tracer, print = FALSE, clear = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

srcfile	The name of the file containing the source code.
line	The line number within the file. See Details for an alternate way to specify this.
nameonly	If TRUE (the default), we require only a match to basename(srcfile), not to the full path.
envir	Where do we start looking for function objects?
lastenv	Where do we stop? See the Details.
verbose	Should we print information on where breakpoints were set?
tracer	An optional tracer function to pass to trace. By default, a call to browser is inserted.
print	The print argument to pass to trace.
clear	If TRUE, call untrace rather than trace.
...	Additional arguments to pass to trace.

Details

The findLineNum function searches through all objects in environment envir, its parent, grandparent, etc., all the way back to lastenv.

lastenv defaults to the global environment if envir is not specified, and to the root environment emptyenv() if envir is specified. (The first default tends to be quite fast, and will usually find all user code other than S4 methods; the second one is quite slow, as it will typically search all attached system libraries.)

For convenience, envir may be specified indirectly: if it is not an environment, it will be replaced with environment(envir).

setBreakpoint is a simple wrapper function for trace and untrace. It will set or clear breakpoints at the locations found by findLineNum.

The srcfile is normally a filename entered as a character string, but it may be a "srcfile" object, or it may include a suffix like "filename.R#nn", in which case the number nn will be used as a default value for line.

As described in the description of the where argument on the man page for trace, the package system uses a complicated scheme that may include more than one copy of a function in a package. The user will typically see the public one on the search path, while code in the package will see a private one in the package NAMESPACE. If you set envir to the environment of a function in the package, by default findLineNum will find both versions, and setBreakpoint will set the breakpoint in both. (This can be controlled using lastenv; e.g., envir = environment(foo), lastenv = globalenv() will find only the private copy, as the search is stopped before seeing the public copy.)

S version 4 methods are also somewhat tricky to find. They are stored with the generic function, which may be in the **base** or other package, so it is usually necessary to have

`lastenv = emptyenv()` in order to find them. In some cases transformations are done by when storing them and `findLineNum` may not be able to find the original code. Many special cases, e.g. methods on primitive generics, are not yet supported.

Value

`fineLineNum` returns a list of objects containing location information. A `print` method is defined for them.

`setBreakpoint` has no useful return value; it is called for the side effect of calling `trace` or `untrace`.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

See Also

`trace`

Examples

```
## Not run:
# Find what function was defined in the file mysource.R at line 100:
findLineNum("mysource.R#100")

# Set a breakpoint in both copies of that function, assuming one is in the
# same namespace as myfunction and the other is on the search path
setBreakpoint("mysource.R#100", envir = myfunction)

## End(Not run)
```

`fix` *Fix an Object*

Description

`fix` invokes `edit` on `x` and then assigns the new (edited) version of `x` in the user's workspace.

Usage

```
fix(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	the name of an object, as a name or a character string.
`...`	arguments to pass to editor: see `edit`.

Details

The name supplied as `x` need not exist as an object, in which case a function with no arguments and an empty body is supplied for editing.

Editing an object may change it in ways other than are obvious: see the comment under `edit`. See `edit.data.frame` for changes that can occur when editing a data frame or matrix.

See Also

edit, edit.data.frame

Examples

```
## Not run:
 ## Assume my.fun is a user defined function :
 fix(my.fun)
 ## now my.fun is changed
 ## Also,
 fix(my.data.frame) # calls up data editor
 fix(my.data.frame, factor.mode="char") # use of ...

## End(Not run)
```

---

flush.console *Flush Output to A Console*

Description

This does nothing except on console-based versions of . On the OS X and Windows GUIs, it ensures that the display of output in the console is current, even if output buffering is on.

Usage

```
flush.console()
```

---

format *Format Unordered and Ordered Lists*

Description

Format unordered (itemize) and ordered (enumerate) lists.

Usage

```
formatUL(x, label = "*", offset = 0,
         width = 0.9 * getOption("width"))
formatOL(x, type = "arabic", offset = 0, start = 1,
         width = 0.9 * getOption("width"))
```

Arguments

x	a character vector of list items.
label	a character string used for labelling the items.
offset	a non-negative integer giving the offset (indentation) of the list.
width	a positive integer giving the target column for wrapping lines in the output.

type	a character string specifying the 'type' of the labels in the ordered list. If "arabic" (default), arabic numerals are used. For "Alph" or "alph", single upper or lower case letters are employed (in this case, the number of the last item must not exceed 26. Finally, for "Roman" or "roman", the labels are given as upper or lower case roman numerals (with the number of the last item maximally 3899). type can be given as a unique abbreviation of the above, or as one of the HTML style tokens "1" (arabic), "A"/"a" (alphabetic), or "I"/"i" (roman), respectively.
start	a positive integer specifying the starting number of the first item in an ordered list.

Value

A character vector with the formatted entries.

See Also

formatDL for formatting description lists.

Examples

```
## A simpler recipe.
x <- c("Mix dry ingredients thoroughly.",
       "Pour in wet ingredients.",
       "Mix for 10 minutes.",
       "Bake for one hour at 300 degrees.")
## Format and output as an unordered list.
writeLines(formatUL(x))
## Format and output as an ordered list.
writeLines(formatOL(x))
## Ordered list using lower case roman numerals.
writeLines(formatOL(x, type = "i"))
## Ordered list using upper case letters and some offset.
writeLines(formatOL(x, type = "A", offset = 5))
```

---

getAnywhere *Retrieve an R Object, Including from a Namespace*

Description

These functions locate all objects with name matching their argument, whether visible on the search path, registered as an S3 method or in a namespace but not exported. getAnywhere() returns the objects and argsAnywhere() returns the arguments of any objects that are functions.

Usage

```
getAnywhere(x)
argsAnywhere(x)
```

Arguments

x	a character string or name.

Details

These functions look at all loaded namespaces, whether or not they are associated with a package on the search list.

They do not search literally "anywhere": for example, local evaluation frames and namespaces that are not loaded will not be searched.

Where functions are found as registered S3 methods, an attempt is made to find which namespace registered them. This may not be correct, especially if namespaces have been unloaded.

Value

For `getAnywhere()` an object of class `"getAnywhere"`. This is a list with components

`name`	the name searched for
`objs`	a list of objects found
`where`	a character vector explaining where the object(s) were found
`visible`	logical: is the object visible
`dups`	logical: is the object identical to one earlier in the list.

In computing whether objects are identical, their environments are ignored.

Normally the structure will be hidden by the `print` method. There is a `[` method to extract one or more of the objects found.

For `argsAnywhere()` one or more argument lists as returned by `args`.

See Also

`getS3method` to find the method which would be used: this might not be the one of those returned by `getAnywhere` since it might have come from a namespace which was unloaded or be registered under another name.

`get`, `getFromNamespace`, `args`

Examples

```
getAnywhere("format.dist")
getAnywhere("simpleLoess") # not exported from stats
argsAnywhere(format.dist)
```

---

getFromNamespace *Utility functions for Developing Namespaces*

Description

Utility functions to access and replace the non-exported functions in a namespace, for use in developing packages with namespaces.

They should not be used in production code (except perhaps `assignInMyNamespace`, but see the 'Note').

Usage

```
getFromNamespace(x, ns, pos = -1, envir = as.environment(pos))

assignInNamespace(x, value, ns, pos = -1,
                  envir = as.environment(pos))

assignInMyNamespace(x, value)

fixInNamespace(x, ns, pos = -1, envir = as.environment(pos), ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object name (given as a character string).
value	an object.
ns	a namespace, or character string giving the namespace.
pos	where to look for the object: see get.
envir	an alternative way to specify an environment to look in.
...	arguments to pass to the editor: see edit.

Details

assignInMyNamespace is intended to be called from functions within a package, and chooses the namespace as the environment of the function calling it.

The namespace can be specified in several ways. Using, for example, ns = "stats" is the most direct, but a loaded package can be specified via any of the methods used for get: ns can also be the environment printed as <namespace:foo>.

getFromNamespace is similar to (but predates) the ::: operator: it is more flexible in how the namespace is specified.

fixInNamespace invokes edit on the object named x and assigns the revised object in place of the original object. For compatibility with fix, x can be unquoted.

Value

getFromNamespace returns the object found (or gives an error).

assignInNamespace, assignInMyNamespace and fixInNamespace are invoked for their side effect of changing the object in the namespace.

Warning

assignInNamespace should not be used in final code, and will in future throw an error if called from a package. Already certain uses are disallowed.

Note

assignInNamespace, assignInMyNamespace and fixInNamespace change the copy in the namespace, but not any copies already exported from the namespace, in particular an object of that name in the package (if already attached) and any copies already imported into other namespaces. They are really intended to be used *only* for objects which are not exported from the namespace. They do attempt to alter a copy registered as an S3 method if one is found.

They can only be used to change the values of objects in the namespace, not to create new objects.

See Also

get, fix, getS3method

Examples

```
getFromNamespace("findGeneric", "utils")
## Not run:
fixInNamespace("predict.ppr", "stats")
stats:::predict.ppr
getS3method("predict", "ppr")
## alternatively
fixInNamespace("predict.ppr", pos = 3)
fixInNamespace("predict.ppr", pos = "package:stats")

## End(Not run)
```

---

getParseData *Get detailed parse information from object.*

Description

If the "keep.source" option is TRUE, 's parser will attach detailed information on the object it has parsed. These functions retrieve that information.

Usage

```
getParseData(x, includeText = NA)
getParseText(parseData, id)
```

Arguments

x	an expression returned from parse, or a function or other object with source reference information
includeText	logical; whether to include the text of parsed items in the result
parseData	a data frame returned from getParseData
id	a vector of item identifiers whose text is to be retrieved

Details

In version 3.0.0, the parser was modified to include code written by Romain Francois in his **parser** package. This constructs a detailed table of information about every token and higher level construct in parsed code. This table is stored in the srcfile record associated with source references in the parsed code, and retrieved by the getParseData function.

Value

For getParseData:
If parse data is not present, NULL. Otherwise a data frame is returned, containing the following columns:

line1	integer. The line number where the item starts. This is the parsed line number called "parse" in getSrcLocation, which ignores #line directives.

col1	integer. The column number where the item starts. The first character is column 1. This corresponds to "column" in getSrcLocation.
line2	integer. The line number where the item ends.
col2	integer. The column number where the item ends.
id	integer. An identifier associated with this item.
parent	integer. The id of the parent of this item.
token	character. The type of the token.
terminal	logical. Whether the token is "terminal", i.e. a leaf in the parse tree.
text	character. If includeText is TRUE, the text of all tokens; if it is NA (the default), the text of terminal tokens. If includeText == FALSE, this column is not included.

The rownames of the data frame will be equal to the id values, and the data frame will have a "srcfile" attribute containing the srcfile record which was used. The rows will be ordered by starting position within the source file, with parent items occurring before their children.

For getParseText:
A character vector of the same length as id containing the associated text items. If they are not included in parseData, they will be retrieved from the original file.

Note

There are a number of differences in the results returned by getParseData relative to those in the original **parser** code:

- Fewer columns are kept.
- The internal token number is not returned.
- col1 starts counting at 1, not 0.
- The id values are not attached to the elements of the parse tree, they are only retained in the table returned by getParseData.
- #line directives are identified, but other comment markup (e.g., **roxygen** comments) are not.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

References

Romain Francois (2012). parser: Detailed R source code parser. R package version 0.0-16. https://github.com/halpo/parser.

See Also

parse, srcref

Examples

```
fn <- function(x) {
  x + 1 # A comment, kept as part of the source
}

d <- getParseData(fn)
```

```
if (!is.null(d)) {
  plus <- which(d$token == "+")
  sum <- d$parent[plus]
  print(d[as.character(sum),])
  print(getParseText(d, sum))
}
```

---

getS3method *Get An S3 Method*

Description

Get a method for an S3 generic, possibly from a namespace or the generic's registry.

Usage

```
getS3method(f, class, optional = FALSE)
```

Arguments

f	character: name of the generic.
class	character: name of the class.
optional	logical: should failure to find the generic or a method be allowed?

Details

S3 methods may be hidden in namespaces, and will not then be found by get: this function can retrieve such functions, primarily for debugging purposes.

Further, S3 methods can be registered on the generic when a namespace is loaded, and the registered method will be used if none is visible (using namespace scoping rules).

It is possible that which S3 method will be used may depend on where the generic f is called from: getS3method returns the method found if f were called from the same environment.

Value

The function found, or NULL if no function is found and optional = TRUE.

See Also

methods, get, getAnywhere

Examples

```
require(stats)
exists("predict.ppr") # false
getS3method("predict", "ppr")
```

glob2rx *Change Wildcard or Globbing Pattern into Regular Expression*

Description

Change *wildcard* aka *globbing* patterns into the corresponding regular expressions (regexp).

Usage

```
glob2rx(pattern, trim.head = FALSE, trim.tail = TRUE)
```

Arguments

pattern	character vector
trim.head	logical specifying if leading "^.*" should be trimmed from the result.
trim.tail	logical specifying if trailing ".*$" should be trimmed from the result.

Details

This takes a wildcard as used by most shells and returns an equivalent regular expression. ? is mapped to . (match a single character), * to .* (match any string, including an empty one), and the pattern is anchored (it must start at the beginning and end at the end). Optionally, the resulting regexp is simplified.

Note that now even (, [and { can be used in pattern, but glob2rx() may not work correctly with arbitrary characters in pattern.

Value

A character vector of the same length as the input pattern where each wildcard is translated to the corresponding regular expression.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler, Unix/sed based version, 1991; current: 2004

See Also

regexp about regular expression, sub, etc about substitutions using regexps.

Examples

```
stopifnot(glob2rx("abc.*") == "^abc\\.",
          glob2rx("a?b.*") == "^a.b\\.",
          glob2rx("a?b.*", trim.tail = FALSE) == "^a.b\\..*$",
          glob2rx("*.doc") == "^.*\\.doc$",
          glob2rx("*.doc", trim.head = TRUE) == "\\.doc$",
          glob2rx("*.t*")  == "^.*\\.t",
          glob2rx("*.t??") == "^.*\\.t..$",
          glob2rx("*[*")  == "^.*\\["
)
```

`globalVariables` *Declarations Used in Checking a Package*

Description

For `globalVariables`, the names supplied are of functions or other objects that should be regarded as defined globally when the `check` tool is applied to this package. The call to `globalVariables` will be included in the package's source. Repeated calls in the same package accumulate the names of the global variables.

Typical examples are the fields and methods in reference classes, which appear to be global objects to `codetools`. (This case is handled automatically by `setRefClass()` and friends, using the supplied field and method names.)

For `suppressForeignCheck`, the names supplied are of variables used as `.NAME` in foreign function calls which should not be checked by `checkFF(registration = TRUE)`. Without this declaration, expressions other than simple character strings are assumed to evaluate to registered native symbol objects. The type of call (`.Call`, `.External`, etc.) and argument counts will be checked. With this declaration, checks on those names will usually be suppressed. (If the code uses an expression that should only be evaluated at runtime, the message can be suppressed by wrapping it in a `dontCheck` function call, or by saving it to a local variable, and suppressing messages about that variable. See the example below.)

Usage

```
globalVariables(names, package, add = TRUE)
suppressForeignCheck(names, package, add = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`names`	The character vector of object names. If omitted, the current list of global variables declared in the package will be returned, unchanged.
`package`	The relevant package, usually the character string name of the package but optionally its corresponding namespace environment. When the call to `globalVariables` or `suppressForeignCheck` comes in the package's source file, the argument is normally omitted, as in the example below.
`add`	Should the contents of `names` be added to the current global variables or replace it?

Details

The lists of declared global variables and native symbol objects are stored in a metadata object in the package's namespace, assuming the `globalVariables` or `suppressForeignCheck` call(s) occur as top-level calls in the package's source code.

The check command, as implemented in package `tools`, queries the list before checking the source code in the package for possible problems.

`globalVariables` was introduced in 2.15.1 and `suppressForeignCheck` was introduced in 3.1.0 so both should be used conditionally: see the example.

Value

globalVariables returns the current list of declared global variables, possibly modified by this call.

suppressForeignCheck returns the current list of native symbol objects which are not to be checked.

Note

The global variables list really belongs to a restricted scope (a function or a group of method definitions, for example) rather than the package as a whole. However, implementing finer control would require changes in check and/or in codetools, so in this version the information is stored at the package level.

Author(s)

John Chambers and Duncan Murdoch

See Also

dontCheck.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## assume your package has some code that assigns ".obj1" and ".obj2"
## but not in a way that codetools can find.
## In the same source file (to remind you that you did it) add:
if(getRversion() >= "2.15.1")  utils::globalVariables(c(".obj1", "obj2"))

## To suppress messages about a run-time calculated native symbol,
## save it to a local variable.

## At top level, put this:
if(getRversion() >= "3.1.0") utils::suppressForeignCheck("localvariable")

## Within your function, do the call like this:
localvariable <- if (condition) entry1 else entry2
.Call(localvariable, 1, 2, 3)

## Alternatively, like this:
if(getRversion() < "3.1.0") dontCheck <- identity
.Call(dontCheck(if (condition) entry1 else entry2), 1, 2, 3)

## HOWEVER, it is much better practice to write code
## that can be checked thoroughly, e.g.
if(condition) .Call(entry1, 1, 2, 3) else .Call(entry2, 1, 2, 3)

## End(Not run)
```

head *Return the First or Last Part of an Object*

Description

Returns the first or last parts of a vector, matrix, table, data frame or function. Since `head()` and `tail()` are generic functions, they may also have been extended to other classes.

Usage

```
head(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
head(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class data.frame
head(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class matrix
head(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class ftable
head(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class table
head(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class function
head(x, n = 6L, ...)

tail(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
tail(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class data.frame
tail(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class matrix
tail(x, n = 6L, addrownums = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class ftable
tail(x, n = 6L, addrownums = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class table
tail(x, n = 6L, addrownums = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class function
tail(x, n = 6L, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object
`n`	a single integer. If positive, size for the resulting object: number of elements for a vector (including lists), rows for a matrix or data frame or lines for a function. If negative, all but the `n` last/first number of elements of `x`.
`addrownums`	if there are no row names, create them from the row numbers.
`...`	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

For matrices, 2-dim tables and data frames, `head()` (`tail()`) returns the first (last) `n` rows when `n > 0` or all but the last (first) `n` rows when `n < 0`. `head.matrix()` and `tail.matrix()` are exported. For functions, the lines of the deparsed function are returned as character strings.

If a matrix has no row names, then `tail()` will add row names of the form `"[n,]"` to the result, so that it looks similar to the last lines of `x` when printed. Setting `addrownums = FALSE` suppresses this behaviour.

Value

An object (usually) like `x` but generally smaller. For `ftable` objects `x`, a transformed `format(x)`.

Author(s)

Patrick Burns, improved and corrected by R-Core. Negative argument added by Vincent Goulet.

Examples

```
head(letters)
head(letters, n = -6L)

head(freeny.x, n = 10L)
head(freeny.y)

tail(letters)
tail(letters, n = -6L)

tail(freeny.x)
tail(freeny.y)

tail(library)

head(stats::ftable(Titanic))
```

`help` *Documentation*

Description

`help` is the primary interface to the help systems.

Usage

```
help(topic, package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL,
     verbose = getOption("verbose"),
     try.all.packages = getOption("help.try.all.packages"),
     help_type = getOption("help_type"))
```

Arguments

topic	usually, a name or character string specifying the topic for which help is sought. A character string (enclosed in explicit single or double quotes) is always taken as naming a topic. If the value of topic is a length-one character vector the topic is taken to be the value of the only element. Otherwise topic must be a name or a reserved word (if syntactically valid) or character string. See 'Details' for what happens if this is omitted.
package	a name or character vector giving the packages to look into for documentation, or NULL. By default, all packages whose namespaces are loaded are used. To avoid a name being deparsed use e.g. (pkg_ref) (see the examples).
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. If the default is used, the loaded packages are searched before the libraries. This is not used for HTML help (see 'Details'.
verbose	logical; if TRUE, the file name is reported.
try.all.packages	logical; see Note.
help_type	character string: the type of help required. Possible values are "text", "html" and "pdf". Case is ignored, and partial matching is allowed.

Details

The following types of help are available:

- Plain text help
- HTML help pages with hyperlinks to other topics, shown in a browser by browseURL. (Where possible an existing browser window is re-used: the OS X GUI uses its own browser window.) If for some reason HTML help is unavailable (see startDynamicHelp), plain text help will be used instead.
- For help only, typeset as PDF – see the section on 'Offline help'.

The 'factory-fresh' default is text help except from the OS X GUI, which uses HTML help displayed in its own browser window.

The rendering of text help will use directional quotes in suitable locales (UTF-8 and single-byte Windows locales): sometimes the fonts used do not support these quotes so this can be turned off by setting options(useFancyQuotes = FALSE).

topic is not optional: if it is omitted will give

- If a package is specified, (text or, in interactive use only, HTML) information on the package, including hints/links to suitable help topics.
- If lib.loc only is specified, a (text) list of available packages.
- Help on help itself if none of the first three arguments is specified.

Some topics need to be quoted (by backticks) or given as a character string. These include those which cannot syntactically appear on their own such as unary and binary operators, function and control-flow reserved words (including if, else for, in, repeat, while, break and next). The other reserved words can be used as if they were names, for example TRUE, NA and Inf.

If multiple help files matching topic are found, in interactive use a menu is presented for the user to choose one: in batch use the first on the search path is used. (For HTML help the menu will be

an HTML page, otherwise a graphical menu if possible if `getOption("menu.graphics")` is true, the default.)

Note that HTML help does not make use of `lib.loc`: it will always look first in the loaded packages and then along `.libPaths()`.

Offline help

Typeset documentation is produced by running the LaTeX version of the help page through `pdflatex`: this will produce a PDF file.

The appearance of the output can be customized through a file '`Rhelp.cfg`' somewhere in your LaTeX search path: this will be input as a LaTeX style file after `Rd.sty`. Some environment variables are consulted, notably `R_PAPERSIZE` (*via* `getOption("papersize")`) and `R_RD4PDF` (see 'Making manuals' in the 'R Installation and Administration Manual').

If there is a function `offline_help_helper` in the workspace or further down the search path it is used to do the typesetting, otherwise the function of that name in the `utils` namespace (to which the first paragraph applies). It should accept at least two arguments, the name of the LaTeX file to be typeset and the type (which is nowadays ignored). It accepts a third argument, `texinputs`, which will give the graphics path when the help document contains figures, and will otherwise not be supplied.

Note

Unless `lib.loc` is specified explicitly, the loaded packages are searched before those in the specified libraries. This ensures that if a library is loaded from a library not in the known library trees, then the help from the loaded library is used. If `lib.loc` is specified explicitly, the loaded packages are *not* searched.

If this search fails and argument `try.all.packages` is `TRUE` and neither `packages` nor `lib.loc` is specified, then all the packages in the known library trees are searched for help on `topic` and a list of (any) packages where help may be found is displayed (with hyperlinks for `help_type = "html"`). **NB:** searching all packages can be slow, especially the first time (caching of files by the OS can expedite subsequent searches dramatically).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`?` for shortcuts to help topics.

`help.search()` or `??` for finding help pages on a vague topic; `help.start()` which opens the HTML version of the help pages; `library()` for listing available packages and the help objects they contain; `data()` for listing available data sets; `methods()`.

Use `prompt()` to get a prototype for writing `help` pages of your own package.

Examples

```
help()
help(help)              # the same

help(lapply)
```

```
help("for")             # or ?"for", but quotes/backticks are needed

try({# requires working TeX installation:
 help(dgamma, help_type = "pdf")
 ## -> nicely formatted pdf -- including math formula -- for help(dgamma):
 system2(getOption("pdfviewer"), "dgamma.pdf", wait = FALSE)
})

help(package = "splines") # get help even when package is not loaded

topi <- "women"
help(topi)

try(help("bs", try.all.packages = FALSE)) # reports not found (an error)
help("bs", try.all.packages = TRUE)       # reports can be found
                                          # in package splines

## For programmatic use:
topic <- "family"; pkg_ref <- "stats"
help((topic), (pkg_ref))
```

`help.request` *Send a Post to R-help*

Description

Prompts the user to check they have done all that is expected of them before sending a post to the R-help mailing list, provides a template for the post with session information included and optionally sends the email (on Unix systems).

Usage

```
help.request(subject = "",
             address = "r-help@R-project.org",
             file = "R.help.request", ...)
```

Arguments

`subject`	subject of the email. Please do not use single quotes (') in the subject! Post separate help requests for multiple queries.
`address`	recipient's email address.
`file`	filename to use (if needed) for setting up the email.
`...`	additional named arguments such as `method` and `ccaddress` to pass to `create.post`.

Details

This function is not intended to replace the posting guide. Please read the guide before posting to R-help or using this function (see http://www.r-project.org/posting-guide.html).

The `help.request` function:

- asks whether the user has consulted relevant resources, stopping and opening the relevant URL if a negative response if given.

- checks whether the current version of is being used and whether the add-on packages are up-to-date, giving the option of updating where necessary.
- asks whether the user has prepared appropriate (minimal, reproducible, self-contained, commented) example code ready to paste into the post.

Once this checklist has been completed a template post is prepared including current session information, and passed to `create.post`.

Value

Nothing useful.

Author(s)

Heather Turner, based on the then current code and help page of `bug.report()`.

See Also

The posting guide (`http://www.r-project.org/posting-guide.html`), also `sessionInfo()` from which you may add to the help request.

`create.post`.

`help.search` *Search the Help System*

Description

Allows for searching the help system for documentation matching a given character string in the (file) name, alias, title, concept or keyword entries (or any combination thereof), using either fuzzy matching or regular expression matching. Names and titles of the matched help entries are displayed nicely formatted.

Vignette names, titles and keywords and demo names and titles may also be searched.

Usage

```
help.search(pattern, fields = c("alias", "concept", "title"),
            apropos, keyword, whatis, ignore.case = TRUE,
            package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL,
            help.db = getOption("help.db"),
            verbose = getOption("verbose"),
            rebuild = FALSE, agrep = NULL, use_UTF8 = FALSE,
            types = getOption("help.search.types"))
??pattern
field??pattern
```

Arguments

pattern	a character string to be matched in the specified fields. If this is given, the arguments apropos, keyword, and whatis are ignored.
fields	a character vector specifying the fields of the help database to be searched. The entries must be abbreviations of "name", "title", "alias", "concept", and "keyword", corresponding to the help page's (file) name, its title, the topics and concepts it provides documentation for, and the keywords it can be classified to. See below for how vignettes and demos are searched.
apropos	a character string to be matched in the help page topics and title.
keyword	a character string to be matched in the help page 'keywords'. 'Keywords' are really categories: the standard categories are listed in file 'R.home("doc")/KEYWORDS' (see also the example) and some package writers have defined their own. If keyword is specified, agrep defaults to FALSE.
whatis	a character string to be matched in the help page topics.
ignore.case	a logical. If TRUE, case is ignored during matching; if FALSE, pattern matching is case sensitive.
package	a character vector with the names of packages to search through, or NULL in which case *all* available packages in the library trees specified by lib.loc are searched.
lib.loc	a character vector describing the location of library trees to search through, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known.
help.db	a character string giving the file path to a previously built and saved help database, or NULL.
verbose	logical; if TRUE, the search process is traced. Integer values are also accepted, with TRUE being equivalent to 2, and 1 being less verbose. On Windows a progress bar is shown during rebuilding, and on Unix a heartbeat is shown for verbose = 1 and a package-by-package list for verbose >= 2.
rebuild	a logical indicating whether the help database should be rebuilt. This will be done automatically if lib.loc or the search path is changed, or if package is used and a value is not found.
agrep	if NULL (the default unless keyword is used) and the character string to be matched consists of alphanumeric characters, whitespace or a dash only, approximate (fuzzy) matching via agrep is used unless the string has fewer than 5 characters; otherwise, it is taken to contain a regular expression to be matched via grep. If FALSE, approximate matching is not used. Otherwise, one can give a numeric or a list specifying the maximal distance for the approximate match, see argument max.distance in the documentation for agrep.
use_UTF8	logical: should be results be given in UTF-8 encoding? Also changes the meaning of regexps in agrep to be Perl regexps.
types	a character vector listing the types of documentation to search. The entries must be abbreviations of "vignette" "help" or "demo". Results will be presented in the order specified.
field	a single value of fields to search.

Details

Upon installation of a package, a pre-built help.search index is serialized as 'hsearch.rds' in the 'Meta' directory (provided the package has any help pages). Vignettes are also indexed in the 'Meta/vignette.rds' file. These files are used to create the help search database.

The arguments apropos and whatis play a role similar to the Unix commands with the same names.

Searching with agrep = FALSE will be several times faster than the default (once the database is built). However, approximate searches should be fast enough (around a second with 5000 packages installed).

If possible, the help database is saved in memory for use by subsequent calls in the session.

Note that currently the aliases in the matching help files are not displayed.

As with ?, in ?? the pattern may be prefixed with a package name followed by :: or ::: to limit the search to that package.

Vignettes are searched as follows. The "name" and "alias" are both the base of the vignette filename, and the "concept" entries are taken from the \VignetteKeywords entries. Vignettes are not classified using the help system "keyword" classifications. Demos are handled similarly to vignettes, without the "concept" search.

Value

The results are returned in a list object of class "hsearch", which has a print method for nicely formatting the results of the query. This mechanism is experimental, and may change in future versions of .

In R.app on OS X, this will show up a browser with selectable items. On exiting this browser, the help pages for the selected items will be shown in separate help windows.

The internal format of the class is undocumented and subject to change.

See Also

help; help.start for starting the hypertext (currently HTML) version of 's online documentation, which offers a similar search mechanism.

RSiteSearch to access an on-line search of resources.

apropos uses regexps and has nice examples.

Examples

```
help.search("linear models")    # In case you forgot how to fit linear
                                # models
help.search("non-existent topic")

??utils::help  # All the topics matching "help" in the utils package


help.search("print")            # All help pages with topics or title
                                # matching print
help.search(apropos = "print")  # The same

help.search(keyword = "hplot")  # All help pages documenting high-level
                                # plots.
file.show(file.path(R.home("doc"), "KEYWORDS"))  # show all keywords

## Help pages with documented topics starting with try.
help.search("\\btry", fields = "alias")
```

help.start *Hypertext Documentation*

Description

Start the hypertext (currently HTML) version of 's online documentation.

Usage

```
help.start(update = FALSE, gui = "irrelevant",
           browser = getOption("browser"), remote = NULL)
```

Arguments

update	logical: should this attempt to update the package index to reflect the currently available packages. (Not attempted if remote is non-NULL.)
gui	just for compatibility with S-PLUS.
browser	the name of the program to be used as hypertext browser. It should be in the PATH, or a full path specified. Alternatively, it can be an function which will be called with a URL as its only argument. This option is normally unset on Windows, when the file-association mechanism will be used.
remote	A character string giving a valid URL for the '*R_HOME*' directory on a remote location.

Details

Unless remote is specified this requires the HTTP server to be available (it will be started if possible: see startDynamicHelp).

One of the links on the index page is the HTML package index, 'R.home("docs")/html/packages.html', which can be remade by make.packages.html(). For local operation, the HTTP server will remake a temporary version of this list when the link is first clicked, and each time thereafter check if updating is needed (if .libPaths has changed or any of the directories has been changed). This can be slow, and using update = TRUE will ensure that the packages list is updated before launching the index page.

Argument remote can be used to point to HTML help published by another installation: it will typically only show packages from the main library of that installation.

See Also

help() for on- and off-line help in other formats.

browseURL for how the help file is displayed.

RSiteSearch to access an on-line search of resources.

Examples

```
help.start()
## Not run:
## the remote arg can be tested by
help.start(remote = paste0("file://", R.home()))

## End(Not run)
```

INSTALL *Install Add-on Packages*

Description

Utility for installing add-on packages.

Usage

```
R CMD INSTALL [options] [-l lib] pkgs
```

Arguments

pkgs	a space-separated list with the path names of the packages to be installed. See 'Details'.
lib	the path name of the library tree to install to. Also accepted in the form '--library=lib'. Paths including spaces should be quoted, using the conventions for the shell in use.
options	a space-separated list of options through which in particular the process for building the help files can be controlled. Use R CMD INSTALL --help for the full current list of options.

Details

This will stop at the first error, so if you want all the pkgs to be tried, call this via a shell loop.

If used as R CMD INSTALL pkgs without explicitly specifying lib, packages are installed into the library tree rooted at the first directory in the library path which would be used by run in the current environment.

To install into the library tree *lib*, use R CMD INSTALL -l *lib pkgs*. This prepends lib to the library path for duration of the install, so required packages in the installation directory will be found (and used in preference to those in other libraries).

Both lib and the elements of pkgs may be absolute or relative path names of directories. pkgs may also contain names of package archive files: these are then extracted to a temporary directory. These are tarballs containing a single directory, optionally compressed by gzip, bzip2, xz or compress. Finally, binary package archive files (as created by R CMD INSTALL --build) can be supplied.

Tarballs are by default unpackaged by the internal untar function: if needed an external tar command can be specified by the environment variable R_INSTALL_TAR: please ensure that it can handle the type of compression used on the tarball. (This is sometimes needed for tarballs containing invalid or unsupported sections, and can be faster on very large tarballs. Setting R_INSTALL_TAR to 'tar.exe' has been needed to overcome permissions issues on some Windows systems.)

The package sources can be cleaned up prior to installation by '--preclean' or after by '--clean': cleaning is essential if the sources are to be used with more than one architecture or platform.

Some package sources contain a 'configure' script that can be passed arguments or variables via the option '--configure-args' and '--configure-vars', respectively, if necessary. The latter is useful in particular if libraries or header files needed for the package are in non-system directories. In this case, one can use the configure variables LIBS and CPPFLAGS to specify these locations (and set these via '--configure-vars'), see section "Configuration variables" in "R Installation and Administration" for more information. (If these are used more than once on the command line they are concatenated.) The configure mechanism can be bypassed using the option '--no-configure'.

If the attempt to install the package fails, leftovers are removed. If the package was already installed, the old version is restored. This happens either if a command encounters an error or if the install is interrupted from the keyboard: after cleaning up the script terminates.

For details of the locking which is done, see the section 'Locking' in the help for `install.packages`.

Option '`--build`' can be used to tar up the installed package for distribution as a binary package (as used on OS X). This is done by `utils::tar` unless environment variable `R_INSTALL_TAR` is set.

By default a package is installed with static HTML help pages if and only if was: use options '`--html`' and '`--no-html`' to override this.

Packages are not by default installed keeping the source formatting (see the `keep.source` argument to `source`): this can be enabled by the option '`--with-keep.source`' or by setting environment variable `R_KEEP_PKG_SOURCE` to `yes`.

Use `R CMD INSTALL --help` for concise usage information, including all the available options.

Sub-architectures

An installation can support more than one sub-architecture: currently this is most commonly used for 32- and 64-bit builds on Windows.

For such installations, the default behaviour is to try to install source packages for all installed sub-architectures unless the package has a configure script or a '`src/Makefile`' (or '`src/Makefile.win`' on Windows), when only compiled code for the sub-architecture running `R CMD INSTALL` is installed.

To install a source package with compiled code only for the sub-architecture used by `R CMD INSTALL`, use '`--no-multiarch`'. To install just the compiled code for another sub-architecture, use '`--libs-only`'.

There are two ways to install for all available sub-architectures. If the configure script is known to work for both Windows architectures, use flag '`--force-biarch`' (and packages can specify this *via* a '`Biarch`' field in their `DESCRIPTION` files). Second, a single tarball can be installed with

```
R CMD INSTALL --merge-multiarch mypkg_version.tar.gz
```

Note

The options do not have to precede '`pkgs`' on the command line, although it will be more legible if they do. All the options are processed before any packages, and where options have conflicting effects the last one will win.

Some parts of the operation of `INSTALL` depend on the temporary directory (see `tempdir`, usually under '`/tmp`') having both write and execution access to the account running . This is usually the case, but if '`/tmp`' has been mounted as `noexec`, environment variable `TMPDIR` may need to be set to a directory from which execution is allowed.

See Also

`REMOVE`; `.libPaths` for information on using several library trees; `install.packages` for -level installation of packages; `update.packages` for automatic update of packages using the Internet or a local repository.

The section on "Add-on packages" in "R Installation and Administration" and the chapter on "Creating R packages" in "Writing Extensions" `RShowDoc` and the '`doc/manual`' subdirectory of the source tree).

`install.packages` *Install Packages from Repositories or Local Files*

Description

Download and install packages from CRAN-like repositories or from local files.

Usage

```
install.packages(pkgs, lib, repos = getOption("repos"),
                 contriburl = contrib.url(repos, type),
                 method, available = NULL, destdir = NULL,
                 dependencies = NA, type = getOption("pkgType"),
                 configure.args = getOption("configure.args"),
                 configure.vars = getOption("configure.vars"),
                 clean = FALSE, Ncpus = getOption("Ncpus", 1L),
                 verbose = getOption("verbose"),
                 libs_only = FALSE, INSTALL_opts, quiet = FALSE,
                 keep_outputs = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`pkgs`	character vector of the names of packages whose current versions should be downloaded from the repositories. If `repos = NULL`, a character vector of file paths. These can be source directories or archives or binary package archive files (as created by `R CMD build --binary`). (`http://` and `file://` URLs are also accepted and the files will be downloaded and installed from local copies.) On a CRAN build of for OS X these can be '`.tgz`' files containing binary package archives. Tilde-expansion will be done on file paths. If this is missing or a zero-length character vector, a listbox of available packages is presented where possible in an interactive session.
`lib`	character vector giving the library directories where to install the packages. Recycled as needed. If missing, defaults to the first element of `.libPaths()`.
`repos`	character vector, the base URL(s) of the repositories to use, e.g., the URL of a CRAN mirror such as `"http://cran.us.r-project.org"`. For more details on supported URL schemes see `url`. Can be `NULL` to install from local files, directories or URLs: this will be inferred by extension from `pkgs` if of length one.
`contriburl`	URL(s) of the contrib sections of the repositories. Use this argument if your repository mirror is incomplete, e.g., because you burned only the '`contrib`' section on a CD, or only have binary packages. Overrides argument `repos`. Incompatible with `type = "both"`.
`method`	download method, see `download.file`. Unused if a non-`NULL` `available` is supplied.
`available`	a matrix as returned by `available.packages` listing packages available at the repositories, or `NULL` when the function makes an internal call to `available.packages`. Incompatible with `type = "both"`.

destdir — directory where downloaded packages are stored. If it is NULL (the default) a subdirectory downloaded_packages of the session temporary directory will be used (and the files will be deleted at the end of the session).

dependencies — logical indicating whether to also install uninstalled packages which these packages depend on/link to/import/suggest (and so on recursively). Not used if repos = NULL. Can also be a character vector, a subset of c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo", "Suggests", "Enhances").

Only supported if lib is of length one (or missing), so it is unambiguous where to install the dependent packages. If this is not the case it is ignored, with a warning.

The default, NA, means c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo").

TRUE means to use c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo", "Suggests") for pkgs and c("Depends", "Imports", "LinkingTo") for added dependencies: this installs all the packages needed to run pkgs, their examples, tests and vignettes (if the package author specified them correctly).

In all of these, "LinkingTo" is omitted for binary packages.

type — character, indicating the type of package to download and install.

Possible values are (currently) "source", "mac.binary", "mac.binary.mavericks" and "win.binary": the binary types can be listed and downloaded but not installed on other platforms.

The default is the appropriate binary type on Windows and on the CRAN binary OS X distributions, otherwise "source". Where there is binary type, it can also be selected as "binary".

For the platforms where binary packages are the default, an alternative is "both" which means 'try binary if available and current, otherwise try source'. (This will only prefer the binary version of a package if its version number is no older than the source version. In interactive use it will ask before attempting to install source packages which may contain compiled code.)

type = "both" will be silently changed to the appropriate binary type if either contriburl or available is specified.

configure.args — (Used only for source installs.) A character vector or a named list. If a character vector with no names is supplied, the elements are concatenated into a single string (separated by a space) and used as the value for the '--configure-args' flag in the call to R CMD INSTALL. If the character vector has names these are assumed to identify values for '--configure-args' for individual packages. This allows one to specify settings for an entire collection of packages which will be used if any of those packages are to be installed. (These settings can therefore be re-used and act as default settings.)

A named list can be used also to the same effect, and that allows multi-element character strings for each package which are concatenated to a single string to be used as the value for '--configure-args'.

configure.vars — (Used only for source installs.) Analogous to configure.args for flag '--configure-vars', which is used to set environment variables for the configure run.

clean — a logical value indicating whether to add the '--clean' flag to the call to R CMD INSTALL. This is sometimes used to perform additional operations at the end of the package installation in addition to removing intermediate files.

Ncpus — the number of parallel processes to use for a parallel install of more than one source package. Values greater than one are supported if the make command

specified by `Sys.getenv("MAKE", "make")` accepts argument `-k -j` *Ncpus*.

`verbose` a logical indicating if some "progress report" should be given.

`libs_only` a logical value: should the '`--libs-only`' option be used to install only additional sub-architectures for source installs? (See also `INSTALL_opts`.) This can also be used on Windows to install just the DLL(s) from a binary package, e.g. to add 64-bit DLLs to a 32-bit install.

`INSTALL_opts` an optional character vector of additional option(s) to be passed to `R CMD INSTALL` for a source package install. E.g., `c("--html", "--no-multiarch")`.

Can also be a named list of character vectors to be used as additional options, with names the respective package names.

`quiet` logical: if true, reduce the amount of output.

`keep_outputs` a logical: if true, keep the outputs from installing source packages in the current working directory, with the names of the output files the package names with '`.out`' appended. Alternatively, a character string giving the directory in which to save the outputs. Ignored when installing from local files.

`...` Arguments to be passed to `download.file` or to the functions for binary installs on OS X and Windows (which accept an argument `"lock"`: see the section on 'Locking').

Details

packages are primarily distributed as *source* packages, but *binary* packages (a packaging up of the installed package) are also supported, and the type most commonly used on Windows and by the CRAN distributions for OS X. This function can install either type where supported, either by downloading a file from a repository or from a local file. The default type is given by `getOption("pkgType")`: this defaults to `"source"` apart from under Windows or a CRAN binary distribution for OS X.

This is the main function to install packages. It takes a vector of names and a destination library, downloads the packages from the repositories and installs them. (If the library is omitted it defaults to the first directory in `.libPaths()`, with a message if there is more than one.) If `lib` is omitted or is of length one and is not a (group) writable directory, in interactive use the code offers to create a personal library tree (the first element of `Sys.getenv("R_LIBS_USER")`) and install there.

For source packages from a repository an attempt is made to install the packages in an order that respects their dependencies. This does assume that all the entries in `lib` are on the default library path for installs (set by `R_LIBS`).

You are advised to run `update.packages` before `install.packages` to ensure that any already installed dependencies have their latest versions.

For binary installs, the function also checks for the availability of a source package on the same repository, and reports if the source package has a later version, or is available but no binary version is. This check can be suppressed by

```
options(install.packages.check.source = "no")
```

and should be if there is a partial repository containing only binary files.

Value

Invisible `NULL`.

Locking

There are various options for locking: these differ between source and binary installs.

By default for a source install, the library directory is 'locked' by creating a directory '00LOCK' within it. This has two purposes: it prevents any other process installing into that library concurrently, and is used to store any previous version of the package to restore on error. A finer-grained locking is provided by the option '--pkglock' which creates a separate lock for each package: this allows enough freedom for parallel installation. Per-package locking is the default when installing a single package, and for multiple packages when `Ncpus > 1L`. Finally locking (and restoration on error) can be suppressed by '--no-lock'.

For an OS X or Windows binary install, no locking is done by default. Setting argument `lock` to `TRUE` (it defaults to the value of `getOption("install.lock", FALSE)`) will use per-directory locking as described for source installs: if the value is `"pkglock"` per-package locking will be used.

If package locking is used on Windows with `libs_only = TRUE` and the installation fails, the package will be restored to its previous state.

Note that it is possible for the package installation to fail so badly that the lock directory is not removed: this inhibits any further installs to the library directory (or for `--pkglock`, of the package) until the lock directory is removed manually.

Parallel installs

Parallel installs are attempted if `pkgs` has length greater than one and `Ncpus > 1`. It makes use of a parallel `make`, so the `make` specified (default `make`) when was built must be capable of supporting `make -j n`: GNU make, `dmake` and `pmake` do, but Solaris `make` and older FreeBSD `make` do not: if necessary environment variable `MAKE` can be set for the current session to select a suitable `make`.

`install.packages` needs to be able to compute all the dependencies of `pkgs` from `available`, including if one element of `pkgs` depends indirectly on another. This means that if for example you are installing CRAN packages which depend on Bioconductor packages which in turn depend on CRAN packages, `available` needs to cover both CRAN and Bioconductor packages.

Note

Some binary distributions of have `INSTALL` in a separate bundle, e.g. an `R-devel` RPM. `install.packages` will give an error if called with `type = "source"` on such a system.

Some binary Linux distributions of can be installed on a machine without the tools needed to install packages: a possible remedy is to do a complete install of which should bring in all those tools as dependencies.

See Also

`update.packages`, `available.packages`, `download.packages`, `installed.packages`, `contrib.url`.

See `download.file` for how to handle proxies and other options to monitor file transfers.

`INSTALL`, `REMOVE`, `remove.packages`, `library`, `.packages`, `read.dcf`

The 'R Installation and Administration' manual for how to set up a repository.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## A Linux example for Fedoras layout of udunits2 headers.
install.packages(c("ncdf4", "RNetCDF"),
```

```
  configure.args = c(RNetCDF = "--with-netcdf-include=/usr/include/udunits2"))

## End(Not run)
```

`installed.packages` *Find Installed Packages*

Description

Find (or retrieve) details of all packages installed in the specified libraries.

Usage

```
installed.packages(lib.loc = NULL, priority = NULL,
                   noCache = FALSE, fields = NULL,
                   subarch = .Platform$r_arch)
```

Arguments

`lib.loc`	character vector describing the location of library trees to search through, or `NULL` for all known trees (see `.libPaths`).
`priority`	character vector or `NULL` (default). If non-null, used to select packages; `"high"` is equivalent to `c("base", "recommended")`. To select all packages without an assigned priority use `priority = "NA"`.
`noCache`	Do not use cached information, nor cache it.
`fields`	a character vector giving the fields to extract from each package's `DESCRIPTION` file in addition to the default ones, or `NULL` (default). Unavailable fields result in `NA` values.
`subarch`	character string or `NULL`. If non-null and non-empty, used to select packages which are installed for that sub-architecture.

Details

`installed.packages` scans the 'DESCRIPTION' files of each package found along `lib.loc` and returns a matrix of package names, library paths and version numbers.

The information found is cached (by library) for the session and specified `fields` argument, and updated only if the top-level library directory has been altered, for example by installing or removing a package. If the cached information becomes confused, it can be refreshed by running `installed.packages(noCache = TRUE)`.

Value

A matrix with one row per package, row names the package names and column names (currently) `"Package"`, `"LibPath"`, `"Version"`, `"Priority"`, `"Depends"`, `"Imports"`, `"LinkingTo"`, `"Suggests"`, `"Enhances"`, `"OS_type"`, `"License"` and `"Built"` (the version the package was built under). Additional columns can be specified using the `fields` argument.

Note

This can be slow when thousands of packages are installed, so do not use this to find out if a named package is installed (use `system.file` or `find.package`) nor to find out if a package is usable (call `require` and check the return value) nor to find details of a small number of packages (use `packageDescription`). It needs to read several files per installed package, which will be slow on Windows and on some network-mounted file systems.

See Also

`update.packages`, `install.packages`, `INSTALL`, `REMOVE`.

Examples

```
## confine search to .Library for speed
str(ip <- installed.packages(.Library, priority = "high"))
ip[, c(1,3:5)]
plic <- installed.packages(.Library, priority = "high", fields = "License")
## what licenses are there:
table( plic[, "License"] )
```

LINK *Create Executable Programs*

Description

Front-end for creating executable programs.

Usage

```
R CMD LINK [options] linkcmd
```

Arguments

`linkcmd`	a list of commands to link together suitable object files (include library objects) to create the executable program.
`options`	further options to control the linking, or for obtaining information about usage and version.

Details

The linker front-end is useful in particular when linking against the shared or static library: see the examples.

The actual linking command is constructed by the version of `libtool` installed at '`R_HOME/bin`'.

`R CMD LINK --help` gives usage information.

Note

Some binary distributions of have `LINK` in a separate bundle, e.g. an `R-devel` RPM.

This is not available on Windows.

See Also

COMPILE.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## examples of front-ends linked against R.
## First a C program
CC=R CMD config CC
R CMD LINK $CC -o foo foo.o R CMD config --ldflags

## if Fortran code has been compiled into ForFoo.o
FLIBS=R CMD config FLIBS
R CMD LINK $CC -o foo foo.o ForFoo.o R CMD config --ldflags $FLIBS

## And for a C++ front-end
CXX=R CMD config CXX
R CMD COMPILE foo.cc
R CMD LINK $CXX -o foo foo.o R CMD config --ldflags

## End(Not run)
```

---

localeToCharset *Select a Suitable Encoding Name from a Locale Name*

Description

This functions aims to find a suitable coding for the locale named, by default the current locale, and if it is a UTF-8 locale a suitable single-byte encoding.

Usage

```
localeToCharset(locale = Sys.getlocale("LC_CTYPE"))
```

Arguments

locale	character string naming a locale.

Details

The operation differs by OS. Locale names are normally like `es_MX.iso88591`. If final component indicates an encoding and it is not `utf8` we just need to look up the equivalent encoding name. Otherwise, the language (here `es`) is used to choose a primary or fallback encoding.

In the `C` locale the answer will be `"ASCII"`.

Value

A character vector naming an encoding and possibly a fallback single-encoding, `NA` if unknown.

Note

The encoding names are those used by `libiconv`, and ought also to work with `glibc` but maybe not with commercial Unixen.

See Also

Sys.getlocale, iconv.

Examples

```
localeToCharset()
```

---

ls.str *List Objects and their Structure*

Description

ls.str and lsf.str are variations of ls applying str() to each matched name: see section Value.

Usage

```
ls.str(pos = -1, name, envir, all.names = FALSE,
       pattern, mode = "any")

lsf.str(pos = -1, envir, ...)

## S3 method for class ls_str
print(x, max.level = 1, give.attr = FALSE, ...,
      digits = max(1, getOption("str")$digits.d))
```

Arguments

pos	integer indicating search path position, or -1 for the current environment.
name	optional name indicating search path position, see ls.
envir	environment to use, see ls.
all.names	logical indicating if names which begin with a . are omitted; see ls.
pattern	a regular expression passed to ls. Only names matching pattern are considered.
max.level	maximal level of nesting which is applied for displaying nested structures, e.g., a list containing sub lists. Default 1: Display only the first nested level.
give.attr	logical; if TRUE (default), show attributes as sub structures.
mode	character specifying the mode of objects to consider. Passed to exists and get.
x	an object of class "ls_str".
...	further arguments to pass. lsf.str passes them to ls.str which passes them on to ls. The (non-exported) print method print.ls_str passes them to str.
digits	the number of significant digits to use for printing.

Value

ls.str and lsf.str return an object of class "ls_str", basically the character vector of matching names (functions only for lsf.str), similarly to ls, with a print() method that calls str() on each object.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

str, summary, args.

Examples

```
require(stats)

lsf.str()  #- how do the functions look like which I am using?
ls.str(mode = "list")   #- what are the structured objects I have defined?

## create a few objects
example(glm, echo = FALSE)
ll <- as.list(LETTERS)
print(ls.str(), max.level = 0)# dont show details

## which base functions have "file" in their name ?
lsf.str(pos = length(search()), pattern = "file")

## demonstrating that  ls.str() works inside functions
## ["browser/debug mode"]:
tt <- function(x, y = 1) { aa <- 7; r <- x + y; ls.str() }
(nms <- sapply(strsplit(capture.output(tt(2))," *: *"), [, 1))
stopifnot(nms == c("aa", "r","x","y"))
```

---

maintainer *Show Package Maintainer*

Description

Show the name and email address of the maintainer of a package.

Usage

```
maintainer(pkg)
```

Arguments

pkg	Character string. The name of a single package.

Details

Accesses the package description to return the name and email address of the maintainer.

Questions about contributed packages should often be addressed to the package maintainer; questions about base packages should usually be addressed to the R-help or R-devel mailing lists. Bug reports should be submitted using the bug.report function.

Value

A character string giving the name and email address of the maintainer of the package, or NA if no such package is installed.

Author(s)

David Scott <d.scott@auckland.ac.nz> from code on R-help originally due to Charlie Sharpsteen <source@sharpsteen.net>; multiple corrections by R-core.

References

https://stat.ethz.ch/pipermail/r-help/2010-February/230027.html

See Also

packageDescription, bug.report

Examples

```
maintainer("MASS")
```

---

make.packages.html *Update HTML Package List*

Description

Re-create the HTML list of packages.

Usage

```
make.packages.html(lib.loc = .libPaths(), temp = FALSE,
                   verbose = TRUE, docdir = R.home("doc"))
```

Arguments

lib.loc	character vector. List of libraries to be included.
temp	logical: should the package indices be created in a temporary location for use by the HTTP server?
verbose	logical. If true, print out a message.
docdir	If temp is false, directory in whose 'html' directory the 'packages.html' file is to be created/updated.

Details

This creates the 'packages.html' file, either a temporary copy for use by help.start, or the copy in 'R.home("doc")/html' (for which you will need write permission).

It can be very slow, as all the package 'DESCRIPTION' files in all the library trees are read.

For temp = TRUE there is some caching of information, so the file will only be re-created if lib.loc or any of the directories it lists have been changed.

Value

Invisible logical, with FALSE indicating a failure to create the file, probably due to lack of suitable permissions.

See Also

help.start

Examples

```
## Not run:
make.packages.html()
# this can be slow for large numbers of installed packages.

## End(Not run)
```

---

make.socket *Create a Socket Connection*

Description

With server = FALSE attempts to open a client socket to the specified port and host. With server = TRUE the process listens on the specified port for a connection and then returns a server socket. It is a good idea to use on.exit to ensure that a socket is closed, as you only get 64 of them.

Usage

```
make.socket(host = "localhost", port, fail = TRUE, server = FALSE)
```

Arguments

host	name of remote host
port	port to connect to/listen on
fail	failure to connect is an error?
server	a server socket?

Value

An object of class "socket", a list with components:

socket	socket number. This is for internal use. On a Unix-alike it is a file descriptor.
port	port number of the connection.
host	name of remote computer.

Warning

I don't know if the connecting host name returned when server = TRUE can be trusted. I suspect not.

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley

References

Adapted from Luke Tierney's code for XLISP-Stat, in turn based on code from Robbins and Robbins "Practical UNIX Programming".

See Also

close.socket, read.socket

Examples

```
daytime <- function(host = "localhost"){
    a <- make.socket(host, 13)
    on.exit(close.socket(a))
    read.socket(a)
}
## Official time (UTC) from US Naval Observatory
## Not run: daytime("tick.usno.navy.mil")
```

---

memory.size *Report on Memory Allocation*

Description

memory.size and memory.limit are used to manage the total memory allocation on Windows. On other platforms these are stubs which report infinity with a warning.

Usage

```
memory.size(max = FALSE)

memory.limit(size = NA)
```

Arguments

max	logical. If true the maximum amount of memory obtained from the OS is reported, otherwise the amount currently in use.
size	numeric. If NA report the memory size, otherwise request a new limit, in Mb.

Details

To restrict memory usage on a Unix-alike use the facilities of the shell used to launch , e.g. limit or ulimit.

Value

Size in bytes: always Inf.

See Also

Memory-limits for other limits.

menu *Menu Interaction Function*

Description

menu presents the user with a menu of choices labelled from 1 to the number of choices. To exit without choosing an item one can select '0'.

Usage

```
menu(choices, graphics = FALSE, title = NULL)
```

Arguments

choices	a character vector of choices
graphics	a logical indicating whether a graphics menu should be used if available.
title	a character string to be used as the title of the menu. NULL is also accepted.

Details

If graphics = TRUE and a windowing system is available (Windows, OS X or X11 *via* Tcl/Tk) a listbox widget is used, otherwise a text menu. It is an error to use menu in a non-interactive session.

Ten or fewer items will be displayed in a single column, more in multiple columns if possible within the current display width.

No title is displayed if title is NULL or "".

Value

The number corresponding to the selected item, or 0 if no choice was made.

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

select.list, which is used to implement the graphical menu, and allows multiple selections.

Examples

```
## Not run:
switch(menu(c("List letters", "List LETTERS")) + 1,
       cat("Nothing done\n"), letters, LETTERS)

## End(Not run)
```

`methods` *List Methods for S3 Generic Functions or Classes*

Description

List all available methods for an S3 generic function, or all methods for a class.

Usage

```
methods(generic.function, class)
```

Arguments

`generic.function`	a generic function, or a character string naming a generic function.
`class`	a symbol or character string naming a class: only used if `generic.function` is not supplied.

Details

Function `methods` can be used to find out about the methods for a particular generic function or class. The functions listed are those which *are named like methods* and may not actually be methods (known exceptions are discarded in the code). Note that the listed methods may not be user-visible objects, but often help will be available for them.

If `class` is used, we check that a matching generic can be found for each user-visible object named. If `generic.function` is given, there is a warning if it appears not to be a generic function. (The check for being generic used can be fooled.)

Value

An object of class `"MethodsFunction"`, a character vector of function names with an `"info"` attribute. There is a `print` method which marks with an asterisk any methods which are not visible: such functions can be examined by `getS3method` or `getAnywhere`.

The `"info"` attribute is a data frame, currently with a logical column, `visible` and a factor column `from` (indicating where the methods were found).

Note

This scheme is called *S3* (S version 3). For new projects, it is recommended to use the more flexible and robust *S4* scheme provided in the **methods** package. Functions can have both S3 and S4 methods, and function `showMethods` will list the S4 methods (possibly none).

The original `methods` function was written by Martin Maechler.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Classes and methods: object-oriented programming in S.* Appendix A of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

S3Methods, class, getS3method.

For S4, showMethods, Methods.

Examples

```
require(stats)

methods(summary)
methods(class = "aov")
methods("[[")    # uses C-internal dispatching
methods("$")
methods("$<-")   # replacement function
methods("+")     # binary operator
methods("Math")  # group generic
require(graphics)
methods("axis")  # looks like it has methods, but not generic
## Not run:
methods(print)   # over 100

## End(Not run)
## --> help(showMethods) for related examples
```

---

mirrorAdmin *Managing Repository Mirrors*

Description

Functions helping to maintain CRAN, some of them may also be useful for administrators of other repository networks.

Usage

```
mirror2html(mirrors = NULL, file = "mirrors.html",
  head = "mirrors-head.html", foot = "mirrors-foot.html")
checkCRAN(method)
```

Arguments

mirrors	A data frame, by default the CRAN list of mirrors is used.
file	A connection or a character string.
head	Name of optional header file.
foot	Name of optional footer file.
method	Download method, see download.file.

Details

mirror2html creates the HTML file for the CRAN list of mirrors and invisibly returns the HTML text.

checkCRAN performs a sanity checks on all CRAN mirrors.

modifyList *Recursively Modify Elements of a List*

Description

Modifies a possibly nested list recursively by changing a subset of elements at each level to match a second list.

Usage

```
modifyList(x, val, keep.null = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	A named list, possibly empty.
val	A named list with components to replace corresponding components in x.
keep.null	If TRUE, NULL elements in val become NULL elements in x. Otherwise, the corresponding element, if present, is deleted from x.

Value

A modified version of x, with the modifications determined as follows (here, list elements are identified by their names). Elements in val which are missing from x are added to x. For elements that are common to both but are not both lists themselves, the component in x is replaced (or possibly deleted, depending on the value of keep.null) by the one in val. For common elements that are in both lists, x[[name]] is replaced by modifyList(x[[name]], val[[name]]).

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

Examples

```
foo <- list(a = 1, b = list(c = "a", d = FALSE))
bar <- modifyList(foo, list(e = 2, b = list(d = TRUE)))
str(foo)
str(bar)
```

news *Build and Query R or Package News Information*

Description

Build and query the news for R or add-on packages.

Usage

```
news(query, package = "R", lib.loc = NULL, format = NULL,
     reader = NULL, db = NULL)
```

Arguments

query	an expression for selecting news entries
package	a character string giving the name of an installed add-on package, or "R".
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of R libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known.
format	Not yet used.
reader	Not yet used.
db	a news db obtained from news().

Details

If package is "R" (default), a news db is built with the news since the 3.0.0 release of R (corresponding to R's top-level 'NEWS' file). Otherwise, if the given add-on package can be found in the given libraries, it is attempted to read its news in structured form from files 'inst/NEWS.Rd', 'NEWS' or 'inst/NEWS' (in that order).

File 'inst/NEWS.Rd' should be an Rd file given the entries as Rd \itemize lists, grouped according to version using section elements with names starting with a suitable prefix (e.g, "Changes in version" followed by a space and the version number, and optionally followed by a space and a parenthesized ISO 8601 (%Y-%m-%d, see strptime) format date, and possibly further grouped according to categories using \subsection elements named as the categories.

The plain text 'NEWS' files in add-on packages use a variety of different formats; the default news reader should be capable to extract individual news entries from a majority of packages from the standard repositories, which use (slight variations of) the following format:

- Entries are grouped according to version, with version header "Changes in version" at the beginning of a line, followed by a version number, optionally followed by an ISO 8601 format date, possibly parenthesized.
- Entries may be grouped according to category, with a category header (different from a version header) starting at the beginning of a line.
- Entries are written as itemize-type lists, using one of 'o', '*', '-' or '+' as item tag. Entries must be indented, and ideally use a common indentation for the item texts.

Additional formats and readers may be supported in the future.

Package **tools** provides an (internal) utility function news2Rd to convert plain text 'NEWS' files to Rd. For 'NEWS' files in a format which can successfully be handled by the default reader, package maintainers can use tools:::news2Rd(dir, "NEWS.Rd"), possibly with additional argument codify = TRUE, with dir a character string specifying the path to a package's root directory. Upon success, the 'NEWS.Rd' file can further be improved and then be moved to the 'inst' subdirectory of the package source directory.

The news db built is a character data frame inheriting from "news_db" with variables Version, Category, Date and Text, where the last contains the entry texts read, and the other variables may be NA if they were missing or could not be determined.

Using query, one can select news entries from the db. If missing or NULL, the complete db is returned. Otherwise, query should be an expression involving (a subset of) the variables Version, Category, Date and Text, and when evaluated within the db returning a logical vector with length the number of entries in the db. The entries for which evaluation gave TRUE are selected. When evaluating, Version and Date are coerced to numeric_version and Date objects, respectively, so that the comparison operators for these classes can be employed.

Value

An data frame inheriting from class "news_db".

Examples

```
## Build a db of all R news entries.
db <- news()


## Bug fixes with PR number in 3.0.1.
news(Version == "3.0.1" & grepl("^BUG", Category) & grepl("PR#", Text),
     db = db)
## Which categories have been in use? % R-core maybe should standardize a bit more
sort(table(db[, "Category"]), decreasing = TRUE)
## Entries with version >= 3.0.0 (including "3.0.0 patched"):
table(news(Version >= "3.0.0", db = db)$Version)
```

---

nsl *Look up the IP Address by Hostname*

Description

Interface to gethostbyname.

Usage

```
nsl(hostname)
```

Arguments

hostname	the name of the host.

Details

This was included as a test of internet connectivity, to fail if the node running is not connected. It will also return NULL if BSD networking is not supported, including the header file 'arpa/inet.h'.

This function is not available on Windows.

Value

The IP address, as a character string, or NULL if the call fails.

Examples

```
## Not run: nsl("www.r-project.org")
```

`object.size` *Report the Space Allocated for an Object*

Description

Provides an estimate of the memory that is being used to store an object.

Usage

```
object.size(x)

## S3 method for class object_size
format(x, units = "b", ...)
## S3 method for class object_size
print(x, quote = FALSE, units = "b", ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object.
`quote`	logical, indicating whether or not the result should be printed with surrounding quotes.
`units`	The units to be used in printing the size. Allowed values are `"b"`, `"Kb"`, `"Mb"`, `"Gb"`, `"B"`, `"KB"`, `"MB"`, `"GB"`, and `"auto"` (see 'Details').
`...`	Arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

Exactly which parts of the memory allocation should be attributed to which object is not clear-cut. This function merely provides a rough indication: it should be reasonably accurate for atomic vectors, but does not detect if elements of a list are shared, for example. (Sharing amongst elements of a character vector is taken into account, but not that between character vectors in a single object.)

The calculation is of the size of the object, and excludes the space needed to store its name in the symbol table.

Associated space (e.g., the environment of a function and what the pointer in a `EXTPTRSXP` points to) is not included in the calculation.

Object sizes are larger on 64-bit builds than 32-bit ones, but will very likely be the same on different platforms with the same word length and pointer size.

`units = "auto"` in the `format` and `print` methods chooses the largest units in which the result is one or more (before rounding). Values in kilobytes, megabytes or gigabytes are rounded to the nearest `0.1`.

Value

An object of class `"object_size"` with a length-one double value, an estimate of the memory allocation attributable to the object in bytes.

See Also

`Memory-limits` for the design limitations on object size.

Examples

```
object.size(letters)
object.size(ls)
format(object.size(library), units = "auto")
## find the 10 largest objects in the base package
z <- sapply(ls("package:base"), function(x)
            object.size(get(x, envir = baseenv())))
as.matrix(rev(sort(z))[1:10])
```

`package.skeleton` *Create a Skeleton for a New Source Package*

Description

`package.skeleton` automates some of the setup for a new source package. It creates directories, saves functions, data, and R code files to appropriate places, and creates skeleton help files and a 'Read-and-delete-me' file describing further steps in packaging.

Usage

```
package.skeleton(name = "anRpackage", list,
                 environment = .GlobalEnv,
                 path = ".", force = FALSE,
                 code_files = character())
```

Arguments

`name`	character string: the package name and directory name for your package.
`list`	character vector naming the objects to put in the package. Usually, at most one of `list`, `environment`, or `code_files` will be supplied. See 'Details'.
`environment`	an environment where objects are looked for. See 'Details'.
`path`	path to put the package directory in.
`force`	If `FALSE` will not overwrite an existing directory.
`code_files`	a character vector with the paths to R code files to build the package around. See 'Details'.

Details

The arguments `list`, `environment`, and `code_files` provide alternative ways to initialize the package. If `code_files` is supplied, the files so named will be sourced to form the environment, then used to generate the package skeleton. Otherwise `list` defaults to the objects in `environment` (including those whose names start with `.`), but can be supplied to select a subset of the objects in that environment.

Stubs of help files are generated for functions, data objects, and S4 classes and methods, using the `prompt`, `promptClass`, and `promptMethods` functions. If an object from another package is intended to be imported and re-exported without changes, the `promptImport` function should be used after `package.skeleton` to generate a simple help file linking to the original one.

The package sources are placed in subdirectory `name` of `path`. If `code_files` is supplied, these files are copied; otherwise, objects will be dumped into individual source files. The file names in `code_files` should have suffix `".R"` and be in the current working directory.

The filenames created for source and documentation try to be valid for all OSes known to run . Invalid characters are replaced by '_', invalid names are preceded by 'zz', names are converted to lower case (to avoid case collisions on case-insensitive file systems) and finally the converted names are made unique by `make.unique(sep = "_")`. This can be done for code and help files but not data files (which are looked for by name). Also, the code and help files should have names starting with an ASCII letter or digit, and this is checked and if necessary z prepended.

Functions with names starting with a dot are placed in file 'R/*name*-internal.R'.

When you are done, delete the 'Read-and-delete-me' file, as it should not be distributed.

Value

Used for its side-effects.

References

Read the 'Writing R Extensions' manual for more details.

Once you have created a *source* package you need to install it: see the 'R Installation and Administration' manual, `INSTALL` and `install.packages`.

See Also

`prompt`, `promptClass`, and `promptMethods`.

Examples

```
require(stats)
## two functions and two "data sets" :
f <- function(x, y) x+y
g <- function(x, y) x-y
d <- data.frame(a = 1, b = 2)
e <- rnorm(1000)

package.skeleton(list = c("f","g","d","e"), name = "mypkg")
```

---

packageDescription *Package Description*

Description

Parses and returns the 'DESCRIPTION' file of a package.

Usage

```
packageDescription(pkg, lib.loc = NULL, fields = NULL,
                   drop = TRUE, encoding = "")
packageVersion(pkg, lib.loc = NULL)
```

Arguments

pkg	a character string with the package name.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. If the default is used, the loaded packages and namespaces are searched before the libraries.
fields	a character vector giving the tags of fields to return (if other fields occur in the file they are ignored).
drop	If TRUE and the length of fields is 1, then a single character string with the value of the respective field is returned instead of an object of class "packageDescription".
encoding	If there is an Encoding field, to what encoding should re-encoding be attempted? If NA, no re-encoding. The other values are as used by iconv, so the default "" indicates the encoding of the current locale.

Details

A package will not be 'found' unless it has a 'DESCRIPTION' file which contains a valid Version field. Different warnings are given when no package directory is found and when there is a suitable directory but no valid 'DESCRIPTION' file.

An attached environment named to look like a package (e.g., package:utils2) will be ignored.

packageVersion() is a convenience shortcut, allowing things like if (packageVersion("MASS") < "7.3") { do.things } .

Value

If a 'DESCRIPTION' file for the given package is found and can successfully be read, packageDescription returns an object of class "packageDescription", which is a named list with the values of the (given) fields as elements and the tags as names, unless drop = TRUE.

If parsing the 'DESCRIPTION' file was not successful, it returns a named list of NAs with the field tags as names if fields is not null, and NA otherwise.

packageVersion() returns a (length-one) object of class "package_version".

See Also

read.dcf

Examples

```
packageDescription("stats")
packageDescription("stats", fields = c("Package", "Version"))

packageDescription("stats", fields = "Version")
packageDescription("stats", fields = "Version", drop = FALSE)

if(packageVersion("MASS") < "7.3.29")
  message("you need to update MASS")
```

packageName *Find package associated with an environment.*

Description

Many environments are associated with a package; this function attempts to determine that package.

Usage

```
packageName(env = parent.frame())
```

Arguments

env	The environment whose name we seek.

Details

Environment env would be associated with a package if topenv(env) is the namespace environment for that package. Thus when env is the environment associated with functions inside a package, or local functions defined within them, packageName will normally return the package name.

Not all environments are associated with a package: for example, the global environment, or the evaluation frames of functions defined there. packageName will return NULL in these cases.

Value

A length one character vector containing the name of the package, or NULL if there is no name.

See Also

getPackageName is a more elaborate function that can construct a name if none is found.

Examples

```
packageName()
packageName(environment(mean))
```

packageStatus *Package Management Tools*

Description

Summarize information about installed packages and packages available at various repositories, and automatically upgrade outdated packages.

Usage

```
packageStatus(lib.loc = NULL, repositories = NULL, method,
              type = getOption("pkgType"))

## S3 method for class packageStatus
summary(object, ...)

## S3 method for class packageStatus
update(object, lib.loc = levels(object$inst$LibPath),
       repositories = levels(object$avail$Repository), ...)

## S3 method for class packageStatus
upgrade(object, ask = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

lib.loc	a character vector describing the location of library trees to search through, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known.
repositories	a character vector of URLs describing the location of package repositories on the Internet or on the local machine.
method	Download method, see download.file.
type	type of package distribution: see install.packages.
object	an object of class "packageStatus" as returned by packageStatus.
ask	if TRUE, the user is prompted which packages should be upgraded and which not.
...	currently not used.

Details

The URLs in repositories should be full paths to the appropriate contrib sections of the repositories. The default is contrib.url(getOption("repos")).

There are print and summary methods for the "packageStatus" objects: the print method gives a brief tabular summary and the summary method prints the results.

The update method updates the "packageStatus" object. The upgrade method is similar to update.packages: it offers to install the current versions of those packages which are not currently up-to-date.

Value

An object of class "packageStatus". This is a list with two components

inst	a data frame with columns as the *matrix* returned by installed.packages plus "Status", a factor with levels c("ok", "upgrade"). Only the newest version of each package is reported, in the first repository in which it appears.
avail	a data frame with columns as the *matrix* returned by available.packages plus "Status", a factor with levels c("installed", "not installed", "unavailable")..

For the summary method the result is also of class "summary.packageStatus" with additional components

Libs	a list with one element for each library
Repos	a list with one element for each repository

with the elements being lists of character vectors of package name for each status.

See Also

installed.packages, available.packages

Examples

```
## Not run:
x <- packageStatus()
print(x)
summary(x)
upgrade(x)
x <- update(x)
print(x)

## End(Not run)
```

---

page *Invoke a Pager on an R Object*

Description

Displays a representation of the object named by x in a pager *via* file.show.

Usage

```
page(x, method = c("dput", "print"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	An object, or a character string naming an object.
method	The default method is to dump the object *via* dput. An alternative is to use print and capture the output to be shown in the pager.
...	additional arguments for dput, print or file.show (such as title).

Details

If x is a length-one character vector, it is used as the name of an object to look up in the environment from which page is called. All other objects are displayed directly.

A default value of title is passed to file.show if one is not supplied in ....

See Also

file.show, edit, fix.

To go to a new page when graphing, see frame.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## four ways to look at the code of page
page(page)             # as an object
page("page")           # a character string
v <- "page"; page(v)   # a length-one character vector
page(utils::page)      # a call

## End(Not run)
```

`person` *Persons*

Description

A class and utility methods for holding information about persons like name and email address.

Usage

```
person(given = NULL, family = NULL, middle = NULL,
       email = NULL, role = NULL, comment = NULL,
       first = NULL, last = NULL)
## Default S3 method:
as.person(x)
## S3 method for class person
format(x,
       include = c("given", "family", "email", "role", "comment"),
       braces = list(given = "", family = "", email = c("<", ">"),
                     role = c("[", "]"), comment = c("(", ")")),
       collapse = list(given = " ", family = " ", email = ", ",
                       role = ", ", comment = ", "),
       ...
       )
```

Arguments

`given`	a character vector with the *given* names, or a list thereof.
`family`	a character string with the *family* name, or a list thereof.
`middle`	a character string with the collapsed middle name(s). Deprecated, see **Details**.
`email`	a character string giving the email address, or a list thereof.
`role`	a character string specifying the role of the person (see **Details**), or a list thereof.
`comment`	a character string providing a comment, or a list thereof.
`first`	a character string giving the first name. Deprecated, see **Details**.
`last`	a character string giving the last name. Deprecated, see **Details**.
`x`	a character string for the `as.person` default method; an object of class `"person"` otherwise.
`include`	a character vector giving the fields to be included when formatting.
`braces`	a list of characters (see **Details**).
`collapse`	a list of characters (see **Details**).
`...`	currently not used.

Details

Objects of class "person" can hold information about an arbitrary positive number of persons. These can be obtained by one call to person() with list arguments, or by first creating objects representing single persons and combining these via c().

The format() method collapses information about persons into character vectors (one string for each person): the fields in include are selected, each collapsed to a string using the respective element of collapse and subsequently "embraced" using the respective element of braces, and finally collapsed into one string separated by white space. If braces and/or collapse do not specify characters for all fields, the defaults shown in the usage are imputed. The print() method calls the format() method and prints the result, the toBibtex() method creates a suitable BibTeX representation.

Person objects can be subscripted by fields (using $) or by position (using [).

as.person() is a generic function. Its default method tries to reverse the default person formatting, and can also handle formatted person entries collapsed by comma or "and" (with appropriate white space).

Personal names are rather tricky, e.g., http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Personal_name.

The current implementation (starting from R 2.12.0) of the "person" class uses the notions of *given* (including middle names) and *family* names, as specified by given and family respectively. Earlier versions used a scheme based on first, middle and last names, as appropriate for most of Western culture where the given name precedes the family name, but not universal, as some other cultures place it after the family name, or use no family name. To smooth the transition to the new scheme, arguments first, middle and last are still supported, but their use is deprecated and they must not be given in combination with the corresponding new style arguments.

The new scheme also adds the possibility of specifying *roles* based on a subset of the MARC Value List for Relators and Roles (http://www.loc.gov/standards/sourcelist/relator-role.html). When giving the roles of persons in the context of authoring packages, the following usage is suggested.

"aut" (Author) Use for full authors who have made substantial contributions to the package and should show up in the package citation.

"com" (Compiler) Use for persons who collected code (potentially in other languages) but did not make further substantial contributions to the package.

"ctb" (Contributor) Use for authors who have made smaller contributions (such as code patches etc.) but should not show up in the package citation.

"cph" (Copyright holder) Use for all copyright holders.

"cre" (Creator) Use for the package maintainer.

"ths" (Thesis advisor) If the package is part of a thesis, use for the thesis advisor.

"trl" (Translator) If the R code is a translation from another language (typically S), use for the translator to R.

In the old scheme, person objects were used for single persons, and a separate "personList" class with corresponding creator personList() for collections of these. The new scheme employs a single class for information about an arbitrary positive number of persons, eliminating the need for the personList mechanism.

Value

person() and as.person() return objects of class "person".

See Also

citation

Examples

```
## Create a person object directly ...
p1 <- person("Karl", "Pearson", email = "pearson@stats.heaven")

## ... or convert a string.
p2 <- as.person("Ronald Aylmer Fisher")

## Combining and subsetting.
p <- c(p1, p2)
p[1]
p[-1]

## Extracting fields.
p$family
p$email
p[1]$email

## Specifying package authors, example from "boot":
## AC is the first author [aut] who wrote the S original.
## BR is the second author [aut], who translated the code to R [trl],
## and maintains the package [cre].
b <- c(person("Angelo", "Canty", role = "aut", comment =
         "S original, http://statwww.epfl.ch/davison/BMA/library.html"),
       person(c("Brian", "D."), "Ripley", role = c("aut", "trl", "cre"),
              comment = "R port", email = "ripley@stats.ox.ac.uk")
     )
b

## Formatting.
format(b)
format(b, include = c("family", "given", "role"),
   braces = list(family = c("", ","), role = c("(Role(s): ", ")")))

## Conversion to BibTeX author field.
paste(format(b, include = c("given", "family")), collapse = " and ")
toBibtex(b)
```

PkgUtils *Utilities for Building and Checking Add-on Packages*

Description

Utilities for checking whether the sources of an add-on package work correctly, and for building a source package from them.

Usage

```
R CMD check [options] pkgdirs
R CMD build [options] pkgdirs
```

Arguments

pkgdirs	a list of names of directories with sources of add-on packages. For check these can also be the filenames of compressed tar archives with extension '.tar.gz', '.tgz', '.tar.bz2' or '.tar.xz'.
options	further options to control the processing, or for obtaining information about usage and version of the utility.

Details

R CMD check checks add-on packages from their sources, performing a wide variety of diagnostic checks.

R CMD build builds source tarballs. The name(s) of the packages are taken from the 'DESCRIPTION' files and not from the directory names. This works entirely on a copy of the supplied source directories.

Use R CMD *foo* --help to obtain usage information on utility *foo*.

The defaults for some of the options to R CMD build can be set by environment variables _R_BUILD_RESAVE_DATA_ and _R_BUILD_COMPACT_VIGNETTES_: see 'Writing Extensions'. Many of the checks in R CMD check can be turned off or on by environment variables: see Chapter 6 of the 'R Internals' manual.

By default R CMD build uses the "internal" option to tar to prepare the tarball. An external tar program can be specified by the R_BUILD_TAR environment variable. This may be substantially faster for very large packages, and can be needed for packages with long path names (over 100 bytes) or very large files (over 8GB): however, the resulting tarball may not be portable.

R CMD check by default unpacks tarballs by the internal untar function: if needed an external tar command can be specified by the environment variable R_INSTALL_TAR: please ensure that it can handle the type of compression used on the tarball. (This is sometimes needed for tarballs containing invalid or unsupported sections, and can be faster on very large tarballs. Setting R_INSTALL_TAR to 'tar.exe' has been needed to overcome permissions issues on some Windows systems.)

See Also

The sections on "Checking and building packages" and "Processing Rd format" in "Writing Extensions" (see the 'doc/manual' subdirectory of the source tree).

---

process.events *Trigger event handling*

Description

R front ends like the Windows GUI handle key presses and mouse clicks through "events" generated by the OS. These are processed automatically by R at intervals during computations, but in some cases it may be desirable to trigger immediate event handling. The process.events function does that.

Usage

```
process.events()
```

Details

This is a simple wrapper for the C API function `R_ProcessEvents`. As such, it is possible that it will not return if the user has signalled to interrupt the calculation.

Value

`NULL` is returned invisibly.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

See Also

See 'Writing R Extensions' and the 'R for Windows FAQ' for more discussion of the `R_ProcessEvents` function.

`prompt` *Produce Prototype of an R Documentation File*

Description

Facilitate the constructing of files documenting objects.

Usage

```
prompt(object, filename = NULL, name = NULL, ...)

## Default S3 method:
prompt(object, filename = NULL, name = NULL,
       force.function = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
prompt(object, filename = NULL, name = NULL, ...)

promptImport(object, filename = NULL, name = NULL,
importedFrom = NULL, importPage = name, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object, typically a function for the default method. Can be `missing` when `name` is specified.
`filename`	usually, a connection or a character string giving the name of the file to which the documentation shell should be written. The default corresponds to a file whose name is `name` followed by `".Rd"`. Can also be `NA` (see below).
`name`	a character string specifying the name of the object.
`force.function`	a logical. If `TRUE`, treat `object` as function in any case.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
`importedFrom`	a character string naming the package from which `object` was imported. Defaults to the environment of `object` if `object` is a function.
`importPage`	a character string naming the help page in the package from which `object` was imported.

Details

Unless filename is NA, a documentation shell for object is written to the file specified by filename, and a message about this is given. For function objects, this shell contains the proper function and argument names. R documentation files thus created still need to be edited and moved into the 'man' subdirectory of the package containing the object to be documented.

If filename is NA, a list-style representation of the documentation shell is created and returned. Writing the shell to a file amounts to cat(unlist(x), file = filename, sep = "\n"), where x is the list-style representation.

When prompt is used in for loops or scripts, the explicit name specification will be useful.

The importPage argument for promptImport needs to give the base of the name of the help file of the original help page. For example, the approx function is documented in 'approxfun.Rd' in the **stats** package, so if it were imported and re-exported it should have importPage = "approxfun". Objects that are imported from other packages are not normally documented unless re-exported.

Value

If filename is NA, a list-style representation of the documentation shell. Otherwise, the name of the file written to is returned invisibly.

Warning

The default filename may not be a valid filename under limited file systems (e.g., those on Windows).

Currently, calling prompt on a non-function object assumes that the object is in fact a data set and hence documents it as such. This may change in future versions of . Use promptData to create documentation skeletons for data sets.

Note

The documentation file produced by prompt.data.frame does not have the same format as many of the data frame documentation files in the **base** package. We are trying to settle on a preferred format for the documentation.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates for prompt.data.frame

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

promptData, help and the chapter on "Writing documentation" in "Writing Extensions" (see the 'doc/manual' subdirectory of the source tree).

For creation of many help pages (for a package), see package.skeleton.

To prompt the user for input, see readline.

Examples

```
require(graphics)
prompt(plot.default)
prompt(interactive, force.function = TRUE)
unlink("plot.default.Rd")
unlink("interactive.Rd")

prompt(women) # data.frame
unlink("women.Rd")

prompt(sunspots) # non-data.frame data
unlink("sunspots.Rd")

## Not run:
## Create a help file for each function in the .GlobalEnv:
for(f in ls()) if(is.function(get(f))) prompt(name = f)

## End(Not run)
```

---

promptData *Generate Outline Documentation for a Data Set*

Description

Generates a shell of documentation for a data set.

Usage

```
promptData(object, filename = NULL, name = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	an object to be documented as a data set.
filename	usually, a connection or a character string giving the name of the file to which the documentation shell should be written. The default corresponds to a file whose name is name followed by ".Rd". Can also be NA (see below).
name	a character string specifying the name of the object.

Details

Unless filename is NA, a documentation shell for object is written to the file specified by filename, and a message about this is given.

If filename is NA, a list-style representation of the documentation shell is created and returned. Writing the shell to a file amounts to cat(unlist(x), file = filename, sep = "\n"), where x is the list-style representation.

Currently, only data frames are handled explicitly by the code.

Value

If filename is NA, a list-style representation of the documentation shell. Otherwise, the name of the file written to is returned invisibly.

See Also

prompt

Examples

```
promptData(sunspots)
unlink("sunspots.Rd")
```

---

promptPackage *Generate a Shell for Documentation of a Package*

Description

Generates a shell of documentation for an installed or source package.

Usage

```
promptPackage(package, lib.loc = NULL, filename = NULL,
              name = NULL, final = FALSE)
```

Arguments

package	a character string with the name of an *installed* or *source* package to be documented.
lib.loc	a character vector describing the location of library trees to search through, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known. For a source package this should specify the parent directory of the package's sources.
filename	usually, a connection or a character string giving the name of the file to which the documentation shell should be written. The default corresponds to a file whose name is name followed by ".Rd". Can also be NA (see below).
name	a character string specifying the name of the help topic, typically of the form '<pkg>-package'.
final	a logical value indicating whether to attempt to create a usable version of the help topic, rather than just a shell.

Details

Unless filename is NA, a documentation shell for package is written to the file specified by filename, and a message about this is given.

If filename is NA, a list-style representation of the documentation shell is created and returned. Writing the shell to a file amounts to cat(unlist(x), file = filename, sep = "\n"), where x is the list-style representation.

If final is TRUE, the generated documentation will not include the place-holder slots for manual editing, it will be usable as-is. In most cases a manually edited file is preferable (but final = TRUE is certainly less work).

Value

If `filename` is `NA`, a list-style representation of the documentation shell. Otherwise, the name of the file written to is returned invisibly.

See Also

`prompt`

Examples

```
filename <- tempfile()
promptPackage("utils", filename = filename)
file.show(filename)
unlink(filename)
```

`Question` *Documentation Shortcuts*

Description

These functions provide access to documentation. Documentation on a topic with name `name` (typically, an object or a data set) can be displayed by either `help("name")` or `?name`.

Usage

```
?topic

type?topic
```

Arguments

`topic`	Usually, a name or character string specifying the topic for which help is sought. Alternatively, a function call to ask for documentation on a corresponding S4 method: see the section on S4 method documentation. The calls *pkg*`::`*topic* and *pkg*`:::`*topic* are treated specially, and look for help on `topic` in package *pkg*.
`type`	the special type of documentation to use for this topic; for example, if the type is `class`, documentation is provided for the class with name `topic`. See the Section 'S4 Method Documentation' for the uses of `type` to get help on formal methods, including `methods?`*function* and `method?`*call*.

Details

This is a shortcut to `help` and uses its default type of help.

Some topics need to be quoted (by backticks) or given as a character string. There include those which cannot syntactically appear on their own such as unary and binary operators, `function` and control-flow reserved words (including `if`, `else` `for`, `in`, `repeat`, `while`, `break` and `next`. The other `reserved` words can be used as if they were names, for example `TRUE`, `NA` and `Inf`.

S4 Method Documentation

Authors of formal ('S4') methods can provide documentation on specific methods, as well as overall documentation on the methods of a particular function. The `"?"` operator allows access to this documentation in three ways.

The expression `methods?`f will look for the overall documentation methods for the function f. Currently, this means the documentation file containing the alias f`-methods`.

There are two different ways to look for documentation on a particular method. The first is to supply the `topic` argument in the form of a function call, omitting the `type` argument. The effect is to look for documentation on the method that would be used if this function call were actually evaluated. See the examples below. If the function is not a generic (no S4 methods are defined for it), the help reverts to documentation on the function name.

The `"?"` operator can also be called with `doc_type` supplied as `method`; in this case also, the `topic` argument is a function call, but the arguments are now interpreted as specifying the class of the argument, not the actual expression that will appear in a real call to the function. See the examples below.

The first approach will be tedious if the actual call involves complicated expressions, and may be slow if the arguments take a long time to evaluate. The second approach avoids these issues, but you do have to know what the classes of the actual arguments will be when they are evaluated.

Both approaches make use of any inherited methods; the signature of the method to be looked up is found by using `selectMethod` (see the documentation for `getMethod`).

References

Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M. and Wilks, A. R. (1988) *The New S Language*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

`help`

`??` for finding help pages on a vague topic.

Examples

```
?lapply

?"for"                  # but quotes/backticks are needed
?+

?women                  # information about data set "women"

## Not run:
require(methods)
## define a S4 generic function and some methods
combo <- function(x, y) c(x, y)
setGeneric("combo")
setMethod("combo", c("numeric", "numeric"), function(x, y) x+y)

## assume we have written some documentation
## for combo, and its methods ....

?combo  # produces the function documentation
```

```
methods?combo  # looks for the overall methods documentation

method?combo("numeric", "numeric")  # documentation for the method above

?combo(1:10, rnorm(10))  # ... the same method, selected according to
                         # the arguments (one integer, the other numeric)

?combo(1:10, letters)    # documentation for the default method

## End(Not run)
```

`rcompgen` *A Completion Generator for R*

Description

This page documents a mechanism to generate relevant completions from a partially completed command line. It is not intended to be useful by itself, but rather in conjunction with other mechanisms that use it as a backend. The functions listed in the usage section provide a simple control and query mechanism. The actual interface consists of a few unexported functions described further down.

Usage

```
rc.settings(ops, ns, args, func, ipck, S3, data, help,
            argdb, fuzzy, quotes, files)

rc.status()
rc.getOption(name)
rc.options(...)

.DollarNames(x, pattern)

## Default S3 method:
.DollarNames(x, pattern = "")
## S3 method for class list
.DollarNames(x, pattern = "")
## S3 method for class environment
.DollarNames(x, pattern = "")
```

Arguments

`ops, ns, args, func, ipck, S3, data, help, argdb, fuzzy, quotes, files`
: logical, turning some optional completion features on and off.

  `ops`: Activates completion after the `$` and `@` operators.

  `ns`: Controls namespace related completions.

  `args`: Enables completion of function arguments.

  `func`: Enables detection of functions. If enabled, a customizable extension (`"("` by default) is appended to function names. The process of determining whether a potential completion is a function requires evaluation, including

for lazy loaded symbols. This is undesirable for large objects, because of potentially wasteful use of memory in addition to the time overhead associated with loading. For this reason, this feature is disabled by default.

`S3`: When `args = TRUE`, activates completion on arguments of all S3 methods (otherwise just the generic, which usually has very few arguments).

`ipck`: Enables completion of installed package names inside `library` and `require`.

`data`: Enables completion of data sets (including those already visible) inside `data`.

`help`: Enables completion of help requests starting with a question mark, by looking inside help index files.

`argdb`: When `args = TRUE`, completion is attempted on function arguments. Generally, the list of valid arguments is determined by dynamic calls to `args`. While this gives results that are technically correct, the use of the `...` argument often hides some useful arguments. To give more flexibility in this regard, an optional table of valid arguments names for specific functions is retained internally. Setting `argdb = TRUE` enables preferential lookup in this internal data base for functions with an entry in it. Of course, this is useful only when the data base contains information about the function of interest. Some functions are already included, and more can be added by the user through the unexported function `.addFunctionInfo` (see below).

`fuzzy`: Enables fuzzy matching, where close but non-exact matches (e.g., with different case) are considered if no exact matches are found. This feature is experimental and the details can change.

`quotes`: Enables completion in code when inside quotes. This normally leads to filename completion, but can be otherwise depending on context (for example, when the open quote is preceded by ?, help completion is invoked. Setting this to `FALSE` relegates completion to the underlying completion front-end, which may do its own processing (for example, `readline` on Unix-alikes will do filename completion.

`files`: Deprecated. Use `quotes` instead.

All settings are turned on by default except `ipck`, `func`, and `fuzzy`. Turn more off if your CPU cycles are valuable; you will still retain basic completion on names of objects in the search list. See below for additional details.

`name, ...` user-settable options. Currently valid names are

`function.suffix`: default `"("`

`funarg.suffix`: default `" = "`

`package.suffix` default `"::"`

Usage is similar to that of `options`.

`x` An R object for which valid names after `"$"` are computed and returned.

`pattern` A regular expression. Only matching names are returned.

Details

There are several types of completion, some of which can be disabled using `rc.settings`. The most basic level, which can not be turned off once the completion functionality is activated, provides completion on names visible on the search path, along with a few special keywords (e.g., `TRUE`). This type of completion is not attempted if the partial 'word' (a.k.a. token) being completed is

empty (since there would be too many completions). The more advanced types of completion are described below.

Completion after extractors `$` and `@`: When the `ops` setting is turned on, completion after `$` and `@` is attempted. This requires the prefix to be evaluated, which is attempted unless it involves an explicit function call (implicit function calls involving the use of `[`, `$`, etc *do not* inhibit evaluation).

Valid completions after the `$` extractor are determined by the generic function `.DollarNames`. Some basic methods are provided, and more can be written for custom classes.

Completion inside namespaces: When the `ns` setting is turned on, completion inside namespaces is attempted when a token is preceded by the `::` or `:::` operators. Additionally, the basic completion mechanism is extended to include attached namespaces, or more precisely, `foopkg::` becomes a valid completion of `foo` if the return value of `search()` includes the string `"package:foopkg"`.

The completion of package namespaces applies only to attached packages, i.e. if `MASS` is not attached (whether or not it is loaded), `MAS` will not complete to `MASS::`. However, attempted completion *inside* an apparent namespace will attempt to load the namespace if it is not already loaded, e.g. trying to complete on `MASS::fr` will load `MASS` (but not necessarily attach it) even if it is not already loaded.

Completion for help items: When the `help` setting is turned on, completion on help topics is attempted when a token is preceded by `?`. Prefixes (such as `class`, `method`) are supported, as well as quoted help topics containing special characters.

Completion of function arguments: When the `args` setting is turned on, completion on function arguments is attempted whenever deemed appropriate. The mechanism used will currently fail if the relevant function (at the point where completion is requested) was entered on a previous prompt (which implies in particular that the current line is being typed in response to a continuation prompt, usually `+`). Note that separation by newlines is fine.

The list of possible argument completions that is generated can be misleading. There is no problem for non-generic functions (except that `...` is listed as a completion; this is intentional as it signals the fact that the function can accept further arguments). However, for generic functions, it is practically impossible to give a reliable argument list without evaluating arguments (and not even then, in some cases), which is risky (in addition to being difficult to code, which is the real reason it hasn't even been tried), especially when that argument is itself an inline function call. Our compromise is to consider arguments of *all* currently available methods of that generic. This has two drawbacks. First, not all listed completions may be appropriate in the call currently being constructed. Second, for generics with many methods (like `print` and `plot`), many matches will need to be considered, which may take a noticeable amount of time. Despite these drawbacks, we believe this behaviour to be more useful than the only other practical alternative, which is to list arguments of the generic only.

Only S3 methods are currently supported in this fashion, and that can be turned off using the `S3` setting.

Since arguments can be unnamed in function calls, other types of completion are also appropriate whenever argument completion is. Since there are usually many many more visible objects than formal arguments of any particular function, possible argument completions are often buried in a bunch of other possibilities. However, recall that basic completion is suppressed for blank tokens. This can be useful to list possible arguments of a function. For example, trying to complete `seq([TAB]` and `seq(from = 1, [TAB])` will both list only the arguments of `seq` (or any of its methods), whereas trying to complete `seq(length[TAB]` will list both the `length.out` argument and the `length(` function as possible completions. Note that no attempt is made to remove arguments already supplied, as that would incur a further speed penalty.

Special functions: For a few special functions (`library`, `data`, etc), the first argument is treated specially, in the sense that normal completion is suppressed, and some function specific completions are enabled if so requested by the settings. The `ipck` setting, which controls whether `library` and `require` will complete on *installed packages*, is disabled by default because the first call to `installed.packages` is potentially time consuming (e.g., when packages are installed on a remote network file server). Note, however, that the results of a call to `installed.packages` is cached, so subsequent calls are usually fast, so turning this option on is not particularly onerous even in such situations.

Value

If `rc.settings` is called without any arguments, it returns the current settings as a named logical vector. Otherwise, it returns `NULL` invisibly.

`rc.status` returns, as a list, the contents of an internal (unexported) environment that is used to record the results of the last completion attempt. This can be useful for debugging. For such use, one must resist the temptation to use completion when typing the call to `rc.status` itself, as that then becomes the last attempt by the time the call is executed.

The items of primary interest in the returned list are:

`comps`	The possible completions generated by the last call to `.completeToken`, as a character vector.
`token`	The token that was (or, is to be) completed, as set by the last call to `.assignToken` (possibly inside a call to `.guessTokenFromLine`).
`linebuffer`	The full line, as set by the last call to `.assignLinebuffer`.
`start`	The start position of the token in the line buffer, as set by the last call to `.assignStart`.
`end`	The end position of the token in the line buffer, as set by the last call to `.assignEnd`.
`fileName`	Logical, indicating whether the cursor is currently inside quotes.
`fguess`	The name of the function the cursor is currently inside.
`isFirstArg`	Logical. If cursor is inside a function, is it the first argument?

In addition, the components `settings` and `options` give the current values of settings and options respectively.

`rc.getOption` and `rc.options` behave much like `getOption` and `options` respectively.

Unexported API

There are several unexported functions in the package. Of these, a few are special because they provide the API through which other mechanisms can make use of the facilities provided by this package (they are unexported because they are not meant to be called directly by users). The usage of these functions are:

```
.assignToken(text)
.assignLinebuffer(line)
.assignStart(start)
.assignEnd(end)

.completeToken()
.retrieveCompletions()
```

```
.getFileComp()

.guessTokenFromLine()
.win32consoleCompletion(linebuffer, cursorPosition,
                        check.repeat = TRUE,
                        minlength = -1)

.addFunctionInfo(...)
```

The first four functions set up a completion attempt by specifying the token to be completed (`text`), and indicating where (`start` and `end`, which should be integers) the token is placed within the complete line typed so far (`line`).

Potential completions of the token are generated by `.completeToken`, and the completions can be retrieved as an character vector using `.retrieveCompletions`.

If the cursor is inside quotes, completion may be suppressed. The function `.getFileComp` can be used after a call to `.completeToken` to determine if this is the case (returns `TRUE`), and alternative completions generated as deemed useful. In most cases, filename completion is a reasonable fallback.

The `.guessTokenFromLine` function is provided for use with backends that do not already break a line into tokens. It requires the linebuffer and endpoint (cursor position) to be already set, and itself sets the token and the start position. It returns the token as a character string.

The `.win32consoleCompletion` is similar in spirit, but is more geared towards the Windows GUI (or rather, any front-end that has no completion facilities of its own). It requires the linebuffer and cursor position as arguments, and returns a list with three components, `addition`, `possible` and `comps`. If there is an unambiguous extension at the current position, `addition` contains the additional text that should be inserted at the cursor. If there is more than one possibility, these are available either as a character vector of preformatted strings in `possible`, or as a single string in `comps`. `possible` consists of lines formatted using the current `width` option, so that printing them on the console one line at a time will be a reasonable way to list them. `comps` is a space separated (collapsed) list of the same completions, in case the front-end wishes to display it in some other fashion.

The `minlength` argument can be used to suppress completion when the token is too short (which can be useful if the front-end is set up to try completion on every keypress). If `check.repeat` is `TRUE`, it is detected if the same completion is being requested more than once in a row, and ambiguous completions are returned only in that case. This is an attempt to emulate GNU Readline behaviour, where a single TAB completes up to any unambiguous part, and multiple possibilities are reported only on two consecutive TABs.

As the various front-end interfaces evolve, the details of these functions are likely to change as well.

The function `.addFunctionInfo` can be used to add information about the permitted argument names for specific functions. Multiple named arguments are allowed in calls to it, where the tags are names of functions and values are character vectors representing valid arguments. When the `argdb` setting is `TRUE`, these are used as a source of valid argument names for the relevant functions.

Note

If you are uncomfortable with unsolicited evaluation of pieces of code, you should set `ops = FALSE`. Otherwise, trying to complete `foo@ba` will evaluate `foo`, trying to complete `foo[i, 1:10]$ba` will evaluate `foo[i, 1:10]`, etc. This should not be too bad, as explicit function calls (involving parentheses) are not evaluated in this manner. However, this *will* affect promises and lazy loaded symbols.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar, <deepayan.sarkar@r-project.org>

`read.DIF` *Data Input from Spreadsheet*

Description

Reads a file in Data Interchange Format (DIF) and creates a data frame from it. DIF is a format for data matrices such as single spreadsheets.

Usage

```
read.DIF(file, header = FALSE,
         dec = ".", numerals = c("allow.loss", "warn.loss", "no.loss"),
         row.names, col.names, as.is = !stringsAsFactors,
         na.strings = "NA", colClasses = NA, nrows = -1,
         skip = 0, check.names = TRUE, blank.lines.skip = TRUE,
         stringsAsFactors = default.stringsAsFactors(),
         transpose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`file`	the name of the file which the data are to be read from, or a connection, or a complete URL. The name `"clipboard"` may also be used on Windows, in which case `read.DIF("clipboard")` will look for a DIF format entry in the Windows clipboard.
`header`	a logical value indicating whether the spreadsheet contains the names of the variables as its first line. If missing, the value is determined from the file format: `header` is set to `TRUE` if and only if the first row contains only character values and the top left cell is empty.
`dec`	the character used in the file for decimal points.
`numerals`	string indicating how to convert numbers whose conversion to double precision would lose accuracy, see `type.convert`.
`row.names`	a vector of row names. This can be a vector giving the actual row names, or a single number giving the column of the table which contains the row names, or character string giving the name of the table column containing the row names. If there is a header and the first row contains one fewer field than the number of columns, the first column in the input is used for the row names. Otherwise if `row.names` is missing, the rows are numbered. Using `row.names = NULL` forces row numbering.
`col.names`	a vector of optional names for the variables. The default is to use `"V"` followed by the column number.
`as.is`	the default behavior of `read.DIF` is to convert character variables to factors. The variable `as.is` controls the conversion of columns not otherwise specified by `colClasses`. Its value is either a vector of logicals (values are recycled if necessary), or a vector of numeric or character indices which specify which columns should not be converted to factors.

Note: In releases prior to 2.12.1, cells marked as being of character type were converted to logical, numeric or complex using type.convert as in read.table.

Note: to suppress all conversions including those of numeric columns, set colClasses = "character".

Note that as.is is specified per column (not per variable) and so includes the column of row names (if any) and any columns to be skipped.

na.strings — a character vector of strings which are to be interpreted as NA values. Blank fields are also considered to be missing values in logical, integer, numeric and complex fields.

colClasses — character. A vector of classes to be assumed for the columns. Recycled as necessary, or if the character vector is named, unspecified values are taken to be NA.

Possible values are NA (when type.convert is used), "NULL" (when the column is skipped), one of the atomic vector classes (logical, integer, numeric, complex, character, raw), or "factor", "Date" or "POSIXct". Otherwise there needs to be an as method (from package **methods**) for conversion from "character" to the specified formal class.

Note that colClasses is specified per column (not per variable) and so includes the column of row names (if any).

nrows — the maximum number of rows to read in. Negative values are ignored.

skip — the number of lines of the data file to skip before beginning to read data.

check.names — logical. If TRUE then the names of the variables in the data frame are checked to ensure that they are syntactically valid variable names. If necessary they are adjusted (by make.names) so that they are, and also to ensure that there are no duplicates.

blank.lines.skip — logical: if TRUE blank lines in the input are ignored.

stringsAsFactors — logical: should character vectors be converted to factors?

transpose — logical, indicating if the row and column interpretation should be transposed. Microsoft's Excel has been known to produce (non-standard conforming) DIF files which would need transpose = TRUE to be read correctly.

Value

A data frame (data.frame) containing a representation of the data in the file. Empty input is an error unless col.names is specified, when a 0-row data frame is returned: similarly giving just a header line if header = TRUE results in a 0-row data frame.

Note

The columns referred to in as.is and colClasses include the column of row names (if any).

Less memory will be used if colClasses is specified as one of the six atomic vector classes.

Author(s)

R Core; transpose option by Christoph Buser, ETH Zurich

References

The DIF format specification can be found by searching on http://www.wotsit.org/; the optional header fields are ignored. See also http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Data_Interchange_Format.

The term is likely to lead to confusion: Windows will have a 'Windows Data Interchange Format (DIF) data format' as part of its WinFX system, which may or may not be compatible.

See Also

The *R Data Import/Export* manual.

scan, type.convert, read.fwf for reading *f*ixed *w*idth *f*ormatted input; read.table; data.frame.

Examples

```
## read.DIF() may need transpose = TRUE for a file exported from Excel
udir <- system.file("misc", package = "utils")
dd <- read.DIF(file.path(udir, "exDIF.dif"), header = TRUE, transpose = TRUE)
dc <- read.csv(file.path(udir, "exDIF.csv"), header = TRUE)
stopifnot(identical(dd, dc), dim(dd) == c(4,2))
```

---

read.fortran *Read Fixed-Format Data in a Fortran-like Style*

Description

Read fixed-format data files using Fortran-style format specifications.

Usage

```
read.fortran(file, format, ..., as.is = TRUE, colClasses = NA)
```

Arguments

file	File or connection to read from.
format	Character vector or list of vectors. See 'Details' below.
...	Other arguments for read.fwf.
as.is	Keep characters as characters?
colClasses	Variable classes to override defaults. See read.table for details.

Details

The format for a field is of one of the following forms: rFl.d, rDl.d, rXl, rAl, rIl, where l is the number of columns, d is the number of decimal places, and r is the number of repeats. F and D are numeric formats, A is character, I is integer, and X indicates columns to be skipped. The repeat code r and decimal place code d are always optional. The length code l is required except for X formats when r is present.

For a single-line record, format should be a character vector. For a multiline record it should be a list with a character vector for each line.

Skipped (X) columns are not passed to read.fwf, so colClasses, col.names, and similar arguments passed to read.fwf should not reference these columns.

Value

A data frame

Note

`read.fortran` does not use actual Fortran input routines, so the formats are at best rough approximations to the Fortran ones. In particular, specifying `d > 0` in the `F` or `D` format will shift the decimal `d` places to the left, even if it is explicitly specified in the input file.

See Also

`read.fwf`, `read.table`, `read.csv`

Examples

```
ff <- tempfile()
cat(file = ff, "123456", "987654", sep = "\n")
read.fortran(ff, c("F2.1","F2.0","I2"))
read.fortran(ff, c("2F1.0","2X","2A1"))
unlink(ff)
cat(file = ff, "123456AB", "987654CD", sep = "\n")
read.fortran(ff, list(c("2F3.1","A2"), c("3I2","2X")))
unlink(ff)
# Note that the first number is read differently than Fortran would
# read it:
cat(file = ff, "12.3456", "1234567", sep = "\n")
read.fortran(ff, "F7.4")
unlink(ff)
```

---

read.fwf *Read Fixed Width Format Files*

Description

Read a table of **f**ixed **w**idth **f**ormatted data into a `data.frame`.

Usage

```
read.fwf(file, widths, header = FALSE, sep = "\t",
         skip = 0, row.names, col.names, n = -1,
         buffersize = 2000, ...)
```

Arguments

`file`	the name of the file which the data are to be read from. Alternatively, `file` can be a connection, which will be opened if necessary, and if so closed at the end of the function call.
`widths`	integer vector, giving the widths of the fixed-width fields (of one line), or list of integer vectors giving widths for multiline records.
`header`	a logical value indicating whether the file contains the names of the variables as its first line. If present, the names must be delimited by `sep`.

sep	character; the separator used internally; should be a character that does not occur in the file (except in the header).
skip	number of initial lines to skip; see read.table.
row.names	see read.table.
col.names	see read.table.
n	the maximum number of records (lines) to be read, defaulting to no limit.
buffersize	Maximum number of lines to read at one time
...	further arguments to be passed to read.table. Useful such arguments include as.is, na.strings, colClasses and strip.white.

Details

Multiline records are concatenated to a single line before processing. Fields that are of zero-width or are wholly beyond the end of the line in file are replaced by NA.

Negative-width fields are used to indicate columns to be skipped, e.g., -5 to skip 5 columns. These fields are not seen by read.table and so should not be included in a col.names or colClasses argument (nor in the header line, if present).

Reducing the buffersize argument may reduce memory use when reading large files with long lines. Increasing buffersize may result in faster processing when enough memory is available.

Note that read.fwf (not read.table) reads the supplied file, so the latter's arguments such as encoding and fileEncoding will not be useful.

Value

A data.frame as produced by read.table which is called internally.

Author(s)

Brian Ripley for version: originally in Perl by Kurt Hornik.

See Also

scan and read.table.

read.fortran for another style of fixed-format files.

Examples

```
ff <- tempfile()
cat(file = ff, "123456", "987654", sep = "\n")
read.fwf(ff, widths = c(1,2,3))    #> 1 23 456 \ 9 87 654
read.fwf(ff, widths = c(1,-2,3))   #> 1 456 \ 9 654
unlink(ff)
cat(file = ff, "123", "987654", sep = "\n")
read.fwf(ff, widths = c(1,0, 2,3))    #> 1 NA 23 NA \ 9 NA 87 654
unlink(ff)
cat(file = ff, "123456", "987654", sep = "\n")
read.fwf(ff, widths = list(c(1,0, 2,3), c(2,2,2))) #> 1 NA 23 456 98 76 54
unlink(ff)
```

`read.socket` *Read from or Write to a Socket*

Description

`read.socket` reads a string from the specified socket, `write.socket` writes to the specified socket. There is very little error checking done by either.

Usage

```
read.socket(socket, maxlen = 256L, loop = FALSE)
write.socket(socket, string)
```

Arguments

`socket`	a socket object.
`maxlen`	maximum length (in bytes) of string to read.
`loop`	wait for ever if there is nothing to read?
`string`	string to write to socket.

Value

`read.socket` returns the string read as a length-one character vector.

`write.socket` returns the number of bytes written.

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley

See Also

`close.socket`, `make.socket`

Examples

```
finger <- function(user, host = "localhost", port = 79, print = TRUE)
{
    if (!is.character(user))
        stop("user name must be a string")
    user <- paste(user,"\r\n")
    socket <- make.socket(host, port)
    on.exit(close.socket(socket))
    write.socket(socket, user)
    output <- character(0)
    repeat{
        ss <- read.socket(socket)
        if (ss == "") break
        output <- paste(output, ss)
    }
    close.socket(socket)
    if (print) cat(output)
    invisible(output)
```

```
}
## Not run:
finger("root")  ## only works if your site provides a finger daemon
## End(Not run)
```

`read.table` *Data Input*

Description

Reads a file in table format and creates a data frame from it, with cases corresponding to lines and variables to fields in the file.

Usage

```
read.table(file, header = FALSE, sep = "", quote = "\"",
           dec = ".", numerals = c("allow.loss", "warn.loss", "no.loss"),
           row.names, col.names, as.is = !stringsAsFactors,
           na.strings = "NA", colClasses = NA, nrows = -1,
           skip = 0, check.names = TRUE, fill = !blank.lines.skip,
           strip.white = FALSE, blank.lines.skip = TRUE,
           comment.char = "#",
           allowEscapes = FALSE, flush = FALSE,
           stringsAsFactors = default.stringsAsFactors(),
           fileEncoding = "", encoding = "unknown", text, skipNul = FALSE)

read.csv(file, header = TRUE, sep = ",", quote = "\"",
         dec = ".", fill = TRUE, comment.char = "", ...)

read.csv2(file, header = TRUE, sep = ";", quote = "\"",
          dec = ",", fill = TRUE, comment.char = "", ...)

read.delim(file, header = TRUE, sep = "\t", quote = "\"",
           dec = ".", fill = TRUE, comment.char = "", ...)

read.delim2(file, header = TRUE, sep = "\t", quote = "\"",
            dec = ",", fill = TRUE, comment.char = "", ...)
```

Arguments

`file` the name of the file which the data are to be read from. Each row of the table appears as one line of the file. If it does not contain an *absolute* path, the file name is *relative* to the current working directory, `getwd()`. Tilde-expansion is performed where supported. This can be a compressed file (see `file`).

Alternatively, `file` can be a readable text-mode connection (which will be opened for reading if necessary, and if so `close`d (and hence destroyed) at the end of the function call). (If `stdin()` is used, the prompts for lines may be somewhat confusing. Terminate input with a blank line or an EOF signal, `Ctrl-D` on Unix and `Ctrl-Z` on Windows. Any pushback on `stdin()` will be cleared before return.)

`file` can also be a complete URL. (For the supported URL schemes, see the 'URLs' section of the help for `url`.)

header — a logical value indicating whether the file contains the names of the variables as its first line. If missing, the value is determined from the file format: header is set to TRUE if and only if the first row contains one fewer field than the number of columns.

sep — the field separator character. Values on each line of the file are separated by this character. If sep = "" (the default for read.table) the separator is 'white space', that is one or more spaces, tabs, newlines or carriage returns.

quote — the set of quoting characters. To disable quoting altogether, use quote = "". See scan for the behaviour on quotes embedded in quotes. Quoting is only considered for columns read as character, which is all of them unless colClasses is specified.

dec — the character used in the file for decimal points.

numerals — string indicating how to convert numbers whose conversion to double precision would lose accuracy, see type.convert.

row.names — a vector of row names. This can be a vector giving the actual row names, or a single number giving the column of the table which contains the row names, or character string giving the name of the table column containing the row names.

If there is a header and the first row contains one fewer field than the number of columns, the first column in the input is used for the row names. Otherwise if row.names is missing, the rows are numbered.

Using row.names = NULL forces row numbering. Missing or NULL row.names generate row names that are considered to be 'automatic' (and not preserved by as.matrix).

col.names — a vector of optional names for the variables. The default is to use "V" followed by the column number.

as.is — the default behavior of read.table is to convert character variables (which are not converted to logical, numeric or complex) to factors. The variable as.is controls the conversion of columns not otherwise specified by colClasses. Its value is either a vector of logicals (values are recycled if necessary), or a vector of numeric or character indices which specify which columns should not be converted to factors.

Note: to suppress all conversions including those of numeric columns, set colClasses = "character".

Note that as.is is specified per column (not per variable) and so includes the column of row names (if any) and any columns to be skipped.

na.strings — a character vector of strings which are to be interpreted as NA values. Blank fields are also considered to be missing values in logical, integer, numeric and complex fields.

colClasses — character. A vector of classes to be assumed for the columns. Recycled as necessary, or if the character vector is named, unspecified values are taken to be NA.

Possible values are NA (the default, when type.convert is used), "NULL" (when the column is skipped), one of the atomic vector classes (logical, integer, numeric, complex, character, raw), or "factor", "Date" or "POSIXct". Otherwise there needs to be an as method (from package **methods**) for conversion from "character" to the specified formal class.

Note that colClasses is specified per column (not per variable) and so includes the column of row names (if any).

nrows	integer: the maximum number of rows to read in. Negative and other invalid values are ignored.
skip	integer: the number of lines of the data file to skip before beginning to read data.
check.names	logical. If TRUE then the names of the variables in the data frame are checked to ensure that they are syntactically valid variable names. If necessary they are adjusted (by make.names) so that they are, and also to ensure that there are no duplicates.
fill	logical. If TRUE then in case the rows have unequal length, blank fields are implicitly added. See 'Details'.
strip.white	logical. Used only when sep has been specified, and allows the stripping of leading and trailing white space from unquoted character fields (numeric fields are always stripped). See scan for further details (including the exact meaning of 'white space'), remembering that the columns may include the row names.
blank.lines.skip	logical: if TRUE blank lines in the input are ignored.
comment.char	character: a character vector of length one containing a single character or an empty string. Use "" to turn off the interpretation of comments altogether.
allowEscapes	logical. Should C-style escapes such as '\n' be processed or read verbatim (the default)? Note that if not within quotes these could be interpreted as a delimiter (but not as a comment character). For more details see scan.
flush	logical: if TRUE, scan will flush to the end of the line after reading the last of the fields requested. This allows putting comments after the last field.
stringsAsFactors	logical: should character vectors be converted to factors? Note that this is overridden by as.is and colClasses, both of which allow finer control.
fileEncoding	character string: if non-empty declares the encoding used on a file (not a connection) so the character data can be re-encoded. See the 'Encoding' section of the help for file, the 'R Data Import/Export Manual' and 'Note'.
encoding	encoding to be assumed for input strings. It is used to mark character strings as known to be in Latin-1 or UTF-8 (see Encoding): it is not used to re-encode the input, but allows to handle encoded strings in their native encoding (if one of those two). See 'Value' and 'Note'.
text	character string: if file is not supplied and this is, then data are read from the value of text via a text connection. Notice that a literal string can be used to include (small) data sets within R code.
skipNul	logical: should nuls be skipped?
...	Further arguments to be passed to read.table.

Details

This function is the principal means of reading tabular data into .

Unless colClasses is specified, all columns are read as character columns and then converted using type.convert to logical, integer, numeric, complex or (depending on as.is) factor as appropriate. Quotes are (by default) interpreted in all fields, so a column of values like "42" will result in an integer column.

A field or line is 'blank' if it contains nothing (except whitespace if no separator is specified) before a comment character or the end of the field or line.

If row.names is not specified and the header line has one less entry than the number of columns, the first column is taken to be the row names. This allows data frames to be read in from the format in which they are printed. If row.names is specified and does not refer to the first column, that column is discarded from such files.

The number of data columns is determined by looking at the first five lines of input (or the whole file if it has less than five lines), or from the length of col.names if it is specified and is longer. This could conceivably be wrong if fill or blank.lines.skip are true, so specify col.names if necessary (as in the 'Examples').

read.csv and read.csv2 are identical to read.table except for the defaults. They are intended for reading 'comma separated value' files ('.csv') or (read.csv2) the variant used in countries that use a comma as decimal point and a semicolon as field separator. Similarly, read.delim and read.delim2 are for reading delimited files, defaulting to the TAB character for the delimiter. Notice that header = TRUE and fill = TRUE in these variants, and that the comment character is disabled.

The rest of the line after a comment character is skipped; quotes are not processed in comments. Complete comment lines are allowed provided blank.lines.skip = TRUE; however, comment lines prior to the header must have the comment character in the first non-blank column.

Quoted fields with embedded newlines are supported except after a comment character. Embedded nuls are unsupported: skipping them (with skipNul = TRUE) may work.

Value

A data frame (data.frame) containing a representation of the data in the file.

Empty input is an error unless col.names is specified, when a 0-row data frame is returned: similarly giving just a header line if header = TRUE results in a 0-row data frame. Note that in either case the columns will be logical unless colClasses was supplied.

Character strings in the result (including factor levels) will have a declared encoding if encoding is "latin1" or "UTF-8".

Memory usage

These functions can use a surprising amount of memory when reading large files. There is extensive discussion in the 'R Data Import/Export' manual, supplementing the notes here.

Less memory will be used if colClasses is specified as one of the six atomic vector classes. This can be particularly so when reading a column that takes many distinct numeric values, as storing each distinct value as a character string can take up to 14 times as much memory as storing it as an integer.

Using nrows, even as a mild over-estimate, will help memory usage.

Using comment.char = "" will be appreciably faster than the read.table default.

read.table is not the right tool for reading large matrices, especially those with many columns: it is designed to read *data frames* which may have columns of very different classes. Use scan instead for matrices.

Note

The columns referred to in as.is and colClasses include the column of row names (if any).

There are two approaches for reading input that is not in the local encoding. If the input is known to be UTF-8 or Latin1, use the encoding argument to declare that. If the input is in some other encoding, then it may be translated on input. The fileEncoding argument achieves this by setting

up a connection to do the re-encoding into the current locale. Note that on Windows or other systems not running in a UTF-8 locale, this may not be possible.

References

Chambers, J. M. (1992) *Data for models.* Chapter 3 of *Statistical Models in S* eds J. M. Chambers and T. J. Hastie, Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

See Also

The 'R Data Import/Export' manual.

`scan`, `type.convert`, `read.fwf` for reading *f*ixed *w*idth *f*ormatted input; `write.table`; `data.frame`.

`count.fields` can be useful to determine problems with reading files which result in reports of incorrect record lengths (see the 'Examples' below).

`http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4180` for the IANA definition of CSV files (which requires comma as separator and CRLF line endings).

Examples

```
## using count.fields to handle unknown maximum number of fields
## when fill = TRUE
test1 <- c(1:5, "6,7", "8,9,10")
tf <- tempfile()
writeLines(test1, tf)

read.csv(tf, fill = TRUE) # 1 column
ncol <- max(count.fields(tf, sep = ","))
read.csv(tf, fill = TRUE, header = FALSE,
         col.names = paste0("V", seq_len(ncol)))
unlink(tf)

## "Inline" data set, using text=
## Notice that leading and trailing empty lines are auto-trimmed

read.table(header = TRUE, text = "
a b
1 2
3 4
")
```

---

recover *Browsing after an Error*

Description

This function allows the user to browse directly on any of the currently active function calls, and is suitable as an error option. The expression `options(error = recover)` will make this the error option.

Usage

```
recover()
```

Details

When called, recover prints the list of current calls, and prompts the user to select one of them. The standard browser is then invoked from the corresponding environment; the user can type ordinary language expressions to be evaluated in that environment.

When finished browsing in this call, type c to return to recover from the browser. Type another frame number to browse some more, or type 0 to exit recover.

The use of recover largely supersedes dump.frames as an error option, unless you really want to wait to look at the error. If recover is called in non-interactive mode, it behaves like dump.frames. For computations involving large amounts of data, recover has the advantage that it does not need to copy out all the environments in order to browse in them. If you do decide to quit interactive debugging, call dump.frames directly while browsing in any frame (see the examples).

Value

Nothing useful is returned. However, you *can* invoke recover directly from a function, rather than through the error option shown in the examples. In this case, execution continues after you type 0 to exit recover.

Compatibility Note

The recover function can be used in the same way as the S function of the same name; therefore, the error option shown is a compatible way to specify the error action. However, the actual functions are essentially unrelated and interact quite differently with the user. The navigating commands up and down do not exist in the version; instead, exit the browser and select another frame.

References

John M. Chambers (1998). *Programming with Data*; Springer.
See the compatibility note above, however.

See Also

browser for details about the interactive computations; options for setting the error option; dump.frames to save the current environments for later debugging.

Examples

```
## Not run:

options(error = recover) # setting the error option

### Example of interaction

> myFit <- lm(y ~ x, data = xy, weights = w)
Error in lm.wfit(x, y, w, offset = offset, ...) :
        missing or negative weights not allowed

Enter a frame number, or 0 to exit
1:lm(y ~ x, data = xy, weights = w)
2:lm.wfit(x, y, w, offset = offset, ...)
Selection: 2
Called from: eval(expr, envir, enclos)
Browse[1]> objects() # all the objects in this frame
[1] "method" "n"      "ny"     "offset" "tol"    "w"
```

```
[7] "x"      "y"
Browse[1]> w
[1] -0.5013844  1.3112515  0.2939348 -0.8983705 -0.1538642
[6] -0.9772989  0.7888790 -0.1919154 -0.3026882
Browse[1]> dump.frames() # save for offline debugging
Browse[1]> c # exit the browser

Enter a frame number, or 0 to exit
1:lm(y ~ x, data = xy, weights = w)
2:lm.wfit(x, y, w, offset = offset, ...)
Selection: 0 # exit recover
>


## End(Not run)
```

---

relist *Allow Re-Listing an unlist()ed Object*

Description

relist() is an S3 generic function with a few methods in order to allow easy inversion of unlist(obj) when that is used with an object obj of (S3) class "relistable".

Usage

```
relist(flesh, skeleton)
## Default S3 method:
relist(flesh, skeleton = attr(flesh, "skeleton"))
## S3 method for class factor
relist(flesh, skeleton = attr(flesh, "skeleton"))
## S3 method for class list
relist(flesh, skeleton = attr(flesh, "skeleton"))
## S3 method for class matrix
relist(flesh, skeleton = attr(flesh, "skeleton"))

as.relistable(x)
is.relistable(x)

## S3 method for class relistable
unlist(x, recursive = TRUE, use.names = TRUE)
```

Arguments

flesh	a vector to be relisted
skeleton	a list, the structure of which determines the structure of the result
x	an object, typically a list (or vector).
recursive	logical. Should unlisting be applied to list components of x?
use.names	logical. Should names be preserved?

Details

Some functions need many parameters, which are most easily represented in complex structures, e.g., nested lists. Unfortunately, many mathematical functions in , including `optim` and `nlm` can only operate on functions whose domain is a vector. has `unlist()` to convert nested list objects into a vector representation. `relist()`, its methods and the functionality mentioned here provide the inverse operation to convert vectors back to the convenient structural representation. This allows structured functions (such as `optim()`) to have simple mathematical interfaces.

For example, a likelihood function for a multivariate normal model needs a variance-covariance matrix and a mean vector. It would be most convenient to represent it as a list containing a vector and a matrix. A typical parameter might look like

```
list(mean = c(0, 1), vcov = cbind(c(1, 1), c(1, 0))).
```

However, `optim` cannot operate on functions that take lists as input; it only likes numeric vectors. The solution is conversion. Given a function `mvdnorm(x, mean, vcov, log = FALSE)` which computes the required probability density, then

```
ipar <- list(mean = c(0, 1), vcov = c bind(c(1, 1), c(1, 0)))
initial.param <- as.relistable(ipar)

ll <- function(param.vector)
{
   param <- relist(param.vector, skeleton = ipar))
   -sum(mvdnorm(x, mean = param$mean, vcov = param$vcov,
                log = TRUE))
}

optim(unlist(initial.param), ll)
```

`relist` takes two parameters: skeleton and flesh. Skeleton is a sample object that has the right shape but the wrong content. `flesh` is a vector with the right content but the wrong shape. Invoking

```
relist(flesh, skeleton)
```

will put the content of flesh on the skeleton. You don't need to specify skeleton explicitly if the skeleton is stored as an attribute inside flesh. In particular, if flesh was created from some object obj with `unlist(as.relistable(obj))` then the skeleton attribute is automatically set. (Note that this does not apply to the example here, as `optim` is creating a new vector to pass to `ll` and not its `par` argument.)

As long as `skeleton` has the right shape, it should be a precise inverse of `unlist`. These equalities hold:

```
relist(unlist(x), x) == x
unlist(relist(y, skeleton)) == y

x <- as.relistable(x)
relist(unlist(x)) == x
```

Value

an object of (S3) class `"relistable"` (and `"list"`).

Author(s)

R Core, based on a code proposal by Andrew Clausen.

See Also

unlist

Examples

```
ipar <- list(mean = c(0, 1), vcov = cbind(c(1, 1), c(1, 0)))
initial.param <- as.relistable(ipar)
ul <- unlist(initial.param)
relist(ul)
stopifnot(identical(relist(ul), initial.param))
```

REMOVE *Remove Add-on Packages*

Description

Utility for removing add-on packages.

Usage

```
R CMD REMOVE [options] [-l lib] pkgs
```

Arguments

pkgs	a space-separated list with the names of the packages to be removed.
lib	the path name of the library tree to remove from. May be absolute or relative. Also accepted in the form '--library=lib'.
options	further options for help or version.

Details

If used as R CMD REMOVE pkgs without explicitly specifying lib, packages are removed from the library tree rooted at the first directory in the library path which would be used by run in the current environment.

To remove from the library tree *lib* instead of the default one, use R CMD REMOVE -l lib *pkgs*.

Use R CMD REMOVE --help for more usage information.

Note

Some binary distributions of have REMOVE in a separate bundle, e.g. an R-devel RPM.

See Also

INSTALL, remove.packages

remove.packages *Remove Installed Packages*

Description

Removes installed packages/bundles and updates index information as necessary.

Usage

```
remove.packages(pkgs, lib)
```

Arguments

pkgs	a character vector with the names of the packages to be removed.
lib	a character vector giving the library directories to remove the packages from. If missing, defaults to the first element in `.libPaths()`.

See Also

`REMOVE` for a command line version; `install.packages` for installing packages.

removeSource *Remove Stored Source from a Function.*

Description

When `options("keep.source")` is `TRUE`, a copy of the original source code to a function is stored with it. This function removes that copy.

Usage

```
removeSource(fn)
```

Arguments

fn	A single function from which to remove the source.

Details

This removes both the `"source"` attribute (from version 2.13.x or earlier) and the `"srcref"` and related attributes.

Value

A copy of the function with the source removed.

See Also

`srcref` for a description of source reference records, `deparse` for a description of how functions are deparsed.

Examples

```
fn <- function(x) {
  x + 1 # A comment, kept as part of the source
}
fn
fn <- removeSource(fn)
fn
```

RHOME *R Home Directory*

Description

Returns the location of the home directory, which is the root of the installed tree.

Usage

```
R RHOME
```

---

roman *Roman Numerals*

Description

Manipulate integers as roman numerals.

Usage

```
as.roman(x)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector, or a character vector of arabic or roman numerals.

Details

`as.roman` creates objects of class `"roman"` which are internally represented as integers, and have suitable methods for printing, formatting, subsetting, and coercion to `character`.

Only numbers between 1 and 3899 have a unique representation as roman numbers.

References

Wikipedia contributors (2006). Roman numerals. Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia. http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Roman_numerals&oldid=78252134. Accessed September 29, 2006.

Examples

```
## First five roman numbers.
(y <- as.roman(1 : 5))
## Middle one.
y[3]
## Current year as a roman number.
(y <- as.roman(format(Sys.Date(), "%Y")))
## 10 years ago ...
y - 10
```

Rprof *Enable Profiling of R's Execution*

Description

Enable or disable profiling of the execution of expressions.

Usage

```
Rprof(filename = "Rprof.out", append = FALSE, interval = 0.02,
      memory.profiling = FALSE, gc.profiling = FALSE,
      line.profiling = FALSE, numfiles = 100L, bufsize = 10000L)
```

Arguments

`filename`	The file to be used for recording the profiling results. Set to `NULL` or `""` to disable profiling.
`append`	logical: should the file be over-written or appended to?
`interval`	real: time interval between samples.
`memory.profiling`	logical: write memory use information to the file?
`gc.profiling`	logical: record whether GC is running?
`line.profiling`	logical: write line locations to the file?
`numfiles, bufsize`	integers: line profiling memory allocation

Details

Enabling profiling automatically disables any existing profiling to another or the same file.

Profiling works by writing out the call stack every `interval` seconds, to the file specified. Either the `summaryRprof` function or the wrapper script `R CMD Rprof` can be used to process the output file to produce a summary of the usage; use `R CMD Rprof --help` for usage information.

How time is measured varies by platform: on a Unix-alike it is the CPU time of the process, so for example excludes time when is waiting for input or for processes run by `system` to return.

Note that the timing interval cannot usefully be too small: once the timer goes off, the information is not recorded until the next timing click (probably in the range 1–10msecs).

Functions will only be recorded in the profile log if they put a context on the call stack (see `sys.calls`). Some primitive functions do not do so: specifically those which are of type `"special"` (see the 'R Internals' manual for more details).

Individual statements will be recorded in the profile log if `line.profiling` is `TRUE`, and if the code being executed was parsed with source references. See `parse` for a discussion of source references. By default the statement locations are not shown in `summaryRprof`, but see that help page for options to enable the display.

Note

Profiling is not available on all platforms. By default, support for profiling is compiled in if possible – configure with '`--disable-R-profiling`' to change this.

As profiling uses the same mechanisms as C profiling, the two cannot be used together, so do not use `Rprof` in an executable built for C-level profiling.

Note

The profiler interrupts R asynchronously, and it cannot allocate memory to store results as it runs. This affects line profiling, which needs to store an unknown number of file pathnames. The `numfiles` and `bufsize` arguments control the size of pre-allocated buffers to hold these results: the former counts the maximum number of paths, the latter counts the numbers of bytes in them. If the profiler runs out of space it will skip recording the line information for new files, and issue a warning when `Rprof(NULL)` is called to finish profiling.

See Also

The chapter on "Tidying and profiling R code" in "Writing Extensions" (see the '`doc/manual`' subdirectory of the source tree).

`summaryRprof` to analyse the output file.

`tracemem`, `Rprofmem` for other ways to track memory use.

Examples

```
## Not run: Rprof()
## some code to be profiled
Rprof(NULL)
## some code NOT to be profiled
Rprof(append = TRUE)
## some code to be profiled
Rprof(NULL)
...
## Now post-process the output as described in Details

## End(Not run)
```

Rprofmem *Enable Profiling of R's Memory Use*

Description

Enable or disable reporting of memory allocation in R.

Usage

```
Rprofmem(filename = "Rprofmem.out", append = FALSE, threshold = 0)
```

Arguments

`filename`	The file to be used for recording the memory allocations. Set to `NULL` or `""` to disable reporting.
`append`	logical: should the file be over-written or appended to?
`threshold`	numeric: allocations on R's "large vector" heap larger than this number of bytes will be reported.

Details

Enabling profiling automatically disables any existing profiling to another or the same file.

Profiling writes the call stack to the specified file every time `malloc` is called to allocate a large vector object or to allocate a page of memory for small objects. The size of a page of memory and the size above which `malloc` is used for vectors are compile-time constants, by default 2000 and 128 bytes respectively.

The profiler tracks allocations, some of which will be to previously used memory and will not increase the total memory use of R.

Value

None

Note

The memory profiler slows down R even when not in use, and so is a compile-time option. The memory profiler can be used at the same time as other and C profilers.

See Also

The R sampling profiler, `Rprof` also collects memory information.

`tracemem` traces duplications of specific objects.

The "Writing R Extensions" manual section on "Tidying and profiling R code"

Examples

```
## Not run:
## not supported unless R is compiled to support it.
Rprofmem("Rprofmem.out", threshold = 1000)
example(glm)
Rprofmem(NULL)
noquote(readLines("Rprofmem.out", n = 5))

## End(Not run)
```

`Rscript` *Scripting Front-End for R*

Description

This is an alternative front end for use in '`#!`' scripts and other scripting applications.

Usage

```
Rscript [options] [-e expr [-e expr2 ...] | file] [args]
```

Arguments

`options`	a list of options, all beginning with '`--`'. These can be any of the options of the standard front-end, and also those described in the details.
`expr, expr2`	expression(s), properly quoted.
`file`	the name of a file containing commands. '`-`' indicates '`stdin`'.
`args`	arguments to be passed to the script in `file`.

Details

`Rscript --help` gives details of usage, and `Rscript --version` gives the version of `Rscript`.

Other invocations invoke the front-end with selected options. This front-end is convenient for writing '`#!`' scripts since it is an executable and takes `file` directly as an argument. Options '`--slave --no-restore`' are always supplied: these imply '`--no-save`'. (The standard Windows command line has no concept of '`#!`' scripts, but Cygwin shells do.)

Either one or more '`-e`' options or `file` should be supplied. When using '`-e`' options be aware of the quoting rules in the shell used: see the examples.

Additional options accepted (before `file` or `args`) are

'`--verbose`' gives details of what `Rscript` is doing. Also passed on to .

'`--default-packages=list`' where `list` is a comma-separated list of package names or `NULL`. Sets the environment variable `R_DEFAULT_PACKAGES` which determines the packages loaded on startup. The default for `Rscript` omits **methods** as it takes about 60% of the startup time.

Spaces are allowed in `expression` and `file` (but will need to be protected from the shell in use, if any, for example by enclosing the argument in quotes).

Normally the version of is determined at installation, but this can be overridden by setting the environment variable `RHOME`.

`stdin()` refers to the input file, and `file("stdin")` to the `stdin` file stream of the process.

Note

`Rscript` is only supported on systems with the `execv` system call.

Examples

```
## Not run:
Rscript -e date() -e format(Sys.time(), "%a %b %d %X %Y")

## example #! script for a Unix-alike

#! /path/to/Rscript --vanilla --default-packages=utils
args <- commandArgs(TRUE)
res <- try(install.packages(args))
if(inherits(res, "try-error")) q(status=1) else q()


## End(Not run)
```

RShowDoc *Show R Manuals and Other Documentation*

Description

Utility function to find and display documentation.

Usage

```
RShowDoc(what, type = c("pdf", "html", "txt"), package)
```

Arguments

what	a character string: see 'Details'.
type	an optional character string giving the preferred format.
package	an optional character string specifying the name of a package within which to look for documentation.

Details

what can specify one of several different sources of documentation, including the manuals (R-admin, R-data, R-exts, R-intro, R-ints, R-lang), NEWS, COPYING (the GPL licence), any of the licenses in 'share/licenses', FAQ (also available as R-FAQ), and the files in '*R_HOME*/doc'.

Only on Windows, the for Windows FAQ is specified by rw-FAQ.

If package is supplied, documentation is looked for in the 'doc' and top-level directories of an installed package of that name.

If what is missing a brief usage message is printed.

The documentation types are tried in turn starting with the first specified in type (or "pdf" if none is specified).

Value

A invisible character string given the path to the file found.

Examples

```
RShowDoc("R-lang")
RShowDoc("FAQ", type = "html")
RShowDoc("frame", package = "grid")
RShowDoc("changes.txt", package = "grid")
RShowDoc("NEWS", package = "MASS")
```

RSiteSearch *Search for Key Words or Phrases in Documentation*

Description

Search for key words or phrases in help pages, vignettes or task views, using the search engine at http://search.r-project.org and view them in a web browser.

Usage

```
RSiteSearch(string,
            restrict = c("functions", "vignettes", "views"),
            format = c("normal", "short"),
            sortby = c("score", "date:late", "date:early",
                       "subject", "subject:descending",
                       "from", "from:descending",
                       "size", "size:descending"),
            matchesPerPage = 20)
```

Arguments

string	A character string specifying word(s) or a phrase to search. If the words are to be searched as one entity, enclose all words in braces (see the first example).
restrict	a character vector, typically of length greater than one. Possible areas to search in: functions for help pages, views for task views and vignettes for package vignettes.
format	normal or short (no excerpts); can be abbreviated.
sortby	character string (can be abbreviated) indicating how to sort the search results: (score, date:late for sorting by date with latest results first, date:early for earliest first, subject for subject in alphabetical order, subject:descending for reverse alphabetical order, from or from:descending for sender (when applicable), size or size:descending for size.)
matchesPerPage	How many items to show per page.

Details

This function is designed to work with the search site at http://search.r-project.org, and depends on that site continuing to be made available (thanks to Jonathan Baron and the School of Arts and Sciences of the University of Pennsylvania).

Unique partial matches will work for all arguments. Each new browser window will stay open unless you close it.

Value

(Invisibly) the complete URL passed to the browser, including the query string.

Author(s)

Andy Liaw and Jonathan Baron

See Also

`help.search`, `help.start` for local searches.

`browseURL` for how the help file is displayed.

Examples

```
# need Internet connection
RSiteSearch("{logistic regression}") # matches exact phrase
Sys.sleep(5) # allow browser to open, take a quick look
## Search in vignettes and store the query-string:
fullquery <- RSiteSearch("lattice", restrict = "vignettes")
fullquery # a string of ~ 110 characters
```

---

rtags *An Etags-like Tagging Utility for R*

Description

`rtags` provides etags-like indexing capabilities for R code, using R's own parser.

Usage

```
rtags(path = ".", pattern = "\\.[RrSs]$",
      recursive = FALSE,
      src = list.files(path = path, pattern = pattern,
                       full.names = TRUE,
                       recursive = recursive),
      keep.re = NULL,
      ofile = "", append = FALSE,
      verbose = getOption("verbose"))
```

Arguments

`path, pattern, recursive`
: Arguments passed on to `list.files` to determine the files to be tagged. By default, these are all files with extension `.R`, `.r`, `.S`, and `.s` in the current directory. These arguments are ignored if `src` is specified.

`src`
: A vector of file names to be indexed.

`keep.re`
: A regular expression further restricting `src` (the files to be indexed). For example, specifying `keep.re = "/R/[^/]*\\.R$"` will only retain files with extension `.R` inside a directory named `R`.

ofile	Passed on to cat as the file argument; typically the output file where the tags will be written ("TAGS" by convention). By default, the output is written to the R console (unless redirected).
append	Logical, indicating whether the output should overwrite an existing file, or append to it.
verbose	Logical. If TRUE, file names are echoed to the R console as they are processed.

Details

Many text editors allow definitions of functions and other language objects to be quickly and easily located in source files through a tagging utility. This functionality requires the relevant source files to be preprocessed, producing an index (or tag) file containing the names and their corresponding locations. There are multiple tag file formats, the most popular being the vi-style ctags format and the and emacs-style etags format. Tag files in these formats are usually generated by the ctags and etags utilities respectively. Unfortunately, these programs do not recognize R code syntax. They do allow tagging of arbitrary language files through regular expressions, but this too is insufficient.

The rtags function is intended to be a tagging utility for R code. It parses R code files (using R's parser) and produces tags in Emacs' etags format. Support for vi-style tags is currently absent, but should not be difficult to add.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar

References

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ctags, https://www.gnu.org/software/emacs/manual/html_node/eintr/etags.html

See Also

list.files, cat

Examples

```
## Not run:
rtags("/path/to/src/repository",
      pattern = "[.]*\\.[RrSs]$",
      keep.re = "/R/",
      verbose = TRUE,
      ofile = "TAGS",
      append = FALSE,
      recursive = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

`Rtangle` *R Driver for Stangle*

Description

A driver for `Stangle` that extracts code chunks.

Usage

```
Rtangle()
RtangleSetup(file, syntax, output = NULL, annotate = TRUE,
             split = FALSE, quiet = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`file`	Name of Sweave source file. See the description of the corresponding argument of `Sweave`.
`syntax`	An object of class `SweaveSyntax`.
`output`	Name of output file used unless `split = TRUE`: see 'Details'.
`annotate`	By default, code chunks are separated by comment lines specifying the names and numbers of the code chunks. If `FALSE` the decorating comments are omitted.
`split`	Split output into a file for each code chunk?
`quiet`	If `TRUE` all progress messages are suppressed.
`...`	Additional named arguments setting defaults for further options.

Details

Unless `split = TRUE`, the default name of the output file is `basename(file)` with an extension corresponding to the Sweave syntax (e.g., '`Rnw`', '`Stex`') replaced by '`R`'. File names `"stdout"` and `"stderr"` are interpreted as the output and message connection respectively.

If splitting is selected (including by the options in the file), each chunk is written to a separate file with extension the name of the 'engine' (default '`.R`').

The annotation is of one of the forms

```
###################################################
### code chunk number 3: viewport
###################################################

###################################################
### code chunk number 18: grid.Rnw:647-648
###################################################

###################################################
### code chunk number 19: trellisdata (eval = FALSE)
###################################################
```

using either the chunk label or the file name and line numbers.

Note that this driver does not simple extract the code chunks verbatim because code chunks can re-use earlier chunks.

Supported Options

Rtangle supports the following options for code chunks (the values in parentheses show the default values):

engine: character string ("R"). Only chunks with engine equal to "R" or "S" are processed.

keep.source: logical (TRUE). If keep.source == TRUE the original source is copied to the file. Otherwise, deparsed source is output.

eval: logical (TRUE). If FALSE, the code chunk is copied across but commented out.

prefix Used if split = TRUE. See prefix.string.

prefix.string: a character string, default is the name of the source file (without extension). Used if split = TRUE as the prefix for the filename if the chunk has no label, or if it has a label and prefix = TRUE. Note that this is used as part of filenames, so needs to be portable.

show.line.nos logical (FALSE). Should the output be annotated with comments showing the line number of the first code line of the chunk?

Author(s)

Friedrich Leisch and R-core.

See Also

'Sweave User Manual', a vignette in the **utils** package.

Sweave, RweaveLatex

RweaveLatex *R/LaTeX Driver for Sweave*

Description

A driver for Sweave that translates R code chunks in LaTeX files.

Usage

```
RweaveLatex()

RweaveLatexSetup(file, syntax, output = NULL, quiet = FALSE,
                 debug = FALSE, stylepath, ...)
```

Arguments

file	Name of Sweave source file. See the description of the corresponding argument of Sweave.
syntax	An object of class SweaveSyntax.
output	Name of output file. The default is to remove extension '.nw', '.Rnw' or '.Snw' and to add extension '.tex'. Any directory paths in file are also removed such that the output is created in the current working directory.
quiet	If TRUE all progress messages are suppressed.
debug	If TRUE, input and output of all code chunks is copied to the console.
stylepath	See 'Details'.
...	named values for the options listed in 'Supported Options'.

Details

The LaTeX file generated needs to contain the line '\usepackage{Sweave}', and if this is not present in the Sweave source file (possibly in a comment), it is inserted by the RweaveLatex driver. If stylepath = TRUE, a hard-coded path to the file 'Sweave.sty' in the installation is set in place of Sweave. The hard-coded path makes the LaTeX file less portable, but avoids the problem of installing the current version of 'Sweave.sty' to some place in your TeX input path. However, TeX may not be able to process the hard-coded path if it contains spaces (as it often will under Windows) or TeX special characters.

The default for stylepath is now taken from the environment variable SWEAVE_STYLEPATH_DEFAULT, or is FALSE it that is unset or empty. If set, it should be exactly TRUE or FALSE: any other values are taken as FALSE.

The simplest way for frequent Sweave users to ensure that 'Sweave.sty' is in the TeX input path is to add '*R_HOME*/share/texmf' as a 'texmf tree' ('root directory' in the parlance of the 'MiKTeX settings' utility).

By default, 'Sweave.sty' sets the width of all included graphics to:
'\setkeys{Gin}{width=0.8\textwidth}'.

This setting affects the width size option passed to the '\includegraphics{}' directive for each plot file and in turn impacts the scaling of your plot files as they will appear in your final document.

Thus, for example, you may set width=3 in your figure chunk and the generated graphics files will be set to 3 inches in width. However, the width of your graphic in your final document will be set to '0.8\textwidth' and the height dimension will be scaled accordingly. Fonts and symbols will be similarly scaled in the final document.

You can adjust the default value by including the '\setkeys{Gin}{width=...}' directive in your '.Rnw' file after the '\begin{document}' directive and changing the width option value as you prefer, using standard LaTeX measurement values.

If you wish to override this default behavior entirely, you can add a '\usepackage[nogin]{Sweave}' directive in your preamble. In this case, no size/scaling options will be passed to the '\includegraphics{}' directive and the height and width options will determine both the runtime generated graphic file sizes and the size of the graphics in your final document.

'Sweave.sty' also supports the '[noae]' option, which suppresses the use of the 'ae' package, the use of which may interfere with certain encoding and typeface selections. If you have problems in the rendering of certain character sets, try this option.

As from 3.1.0 it also supports the '[inconsolata]' option, to render monospaced text in inconsolata, the font used by default for help pages.

The use of fancy quotes (see sQuote) can cause problems when setting output. Either set options(useFancyQuotes = FALSE) or arrange that LaTeX is aware of the encoding used (by a '\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}' declaration: Windows users of Sweave from Rgui.exe will need to replace 'utf8' by 'cp1252' or similar) and ensure that typewriter fonts containing directional quotes are used.

Some LaTeX graphics drivers do not include '.png' or '.jpg' in the list of known extensions. To enable them, add something like '\DeclareGraphicsExtensions{.png,.pdf,.jpg}' to the preamble of your document or check the behavior of your graphics driver. When both pdf and png are TRUE both files will be produced by Sweave, and their order in the 'DeclareGraphicsExtensions' list determines which will be used by pdflatex.

Supported Options

RweaveLatex supports the following options for code chunks (the values in parentheses show the default values). Character string values should be quoted when passed from Sweave through ... but not when use in the header of a code chunk.

engine: character string ("R"). Only chunks with engine equal to "R" or "S" are processed.

echo: logical (TRUE). Include code in the output file?

keep.source: logical (TRUE). When echoing, if keep.source == TRUE the original source is copied to the file. Otherwise, deparsed source is echoed.

eval: logical (TRUE). If FALSE, the code chunk is not evaluated, and hence no text nor graphical output produced.

results: character string ("verbatim"). If "verbatim", the output of commands is included in the verbatim-like 'Soutput' environment. If "tex", the output is taken to be already proper LaTeX markup and included as is. If "hide" then all output is completely suppressed (but the code executed during the weave).

print: logical (FALSE). If TRUE, this forces auto-printing of all expressions.

term: logical (TRUE). If TRUE, visibility of values emulates an interactive session: values of assignments are not printed, values of single objects are printed. If FALSE, output comes only from explicit print or similar statements.

split: logical (FALSE). If TRUE, text output is written to separate files for each code chunk.

strip.white: character string ("true"). If "true", blank lines at the beginning and end of output are removed. If "all", then all blank lines are removed from the output. If "false" then blank lines are retained.

A 'blank line' is one that is empty or includes only whitespace (spaces and tabs).

Note that blank lines in a code chunk will usually produce a prompt string rather than a blank line on output.

prefix: logical (TRUE). If TRUE generated filenames of figures and output all have the common prefix given by the prefix.string option: otherwise only unlabelled chunks use the prefix.

prefix.string: a character string, default is the name of the source file (without extension). Note that this is used as part of filenames, so needs to be portable.

include: logical (TRUE), indicating whether input statements for text output (if split = TRUE) and '\includegraphics' statements for figures should be auto-generated. Use include = FALSE if the output should appear in a different place than the code chunk (by placing the input line manually).

fig: logical (FALSE), indicating whether the code chunk produces graphical output. Note that only one figure per code chunk can be processed this way. The labels for figure chunks are used as part of the file names, so should preferably be alphanumeric.

eps: logical (FALSE), indicating whether EPS figures should be generated. Ignored if fig = FALSE.

pdf: logical (TRUE), indicating whether PDF figures should be generated. Ignored if fig = FALSE.

pdf.version, pdf.encoding, pdf.compress: passed to pdf to set the version, encoding and compression (or not). Defaults taken from pdf.options().

png: logical (FALSE), indicating whether PNG figures should be generated. Ignored if fig = FALSE. Only available in >= 2.13.0.

jpeg: logical (FALSE), indicating whether JPEG figures should be generated. Ignored if fig = FALSE. Only available in >= 2.13.0.

grdevice: character (NULL): see section 'Custom Graphics Devices'. Ignored if fig = FALSE. Only available in >= 2.13.0.

width: numeric (6), width of figures in inches. See 'Details'.

height: numeric (6), height of figures in inches. See 'Details'.

resolution: numeric (300), resolution in pixels per inch: used for PNG and JPEG graphics. Note that the default is a fairly high value, appropriate for high-quality plots. Something like `100` is a better choice for package vignettes.

concordance: logical (`FALSE`). Write a concordance file to link the input line numbers to the output line numbers. This is an experimental feature; see the source code for the output format, which is subject to change in future releases.

figs.only: logical (`FALSE`). By default each figure chunk is run once, then re-run for each selected type of graphics. That will open a default graphics device for the first figure chunk and use that device for the first evaluation of all subsequent chunks. If this option is true, the figure chunk is run only for each selected type of graphics, for which a new graphics device is opened and then closed.

In addition, users can specify further options, either in the header of an individual code section or in a '`\SweaveOpts{}`' line in the document. For unknown options, their type is set at first use.

Custom Graphics Devices

If option `grdevice` is supplied for a code chunk with both `fig` and `eval` true, the following call is made

```
get(options$grdevice, envir = .GlobalEnv)(name=, width=,
                                          height=, options)
```

which should open a graphics device. The chunk's code is then evaluated and `dev.off` is called. Normally a function of the name given will have been defined earlier in the Sweave document, e.g.

```
<<results=hide>>=
my.Swd <- function(name, width, height, ...)
  grDevices::png(filename = paste(name, "png", sep = "."),
                 width = width, height = height, res = 100,
                 units = "in", type = "quartz", bg = "transparent")
@
```

Currently only one custom device can be used for each chunk, but different devices can be used for different chunks.

A replacement for `dev.off` can be provided as a function with suffix `.off`, e.g. `my.Swd.off()`.

Hook Functions

Before each code chunk is evaluated, zero or more hook functions can be executed. If `getOption("SweaveHooks")` is set, it is taken to be a named list of hook functions. For each *logical* option of a code chunk (`echo`, `print`, `...`) a hook can be specified, which is executed if and only if the respective option is `TRUE`. Hooks must be named elements of the list returned by `getOption("SweaveHooks")` and be functions taking no arguments. E.g., if option `"SweaveHooks"` is defined as `list(fig = foo)`, and `foo` is a function, then it would be executed before the code in each figure chunk. This is especially useful to set defaults for the graphical parameters in a series of figure chunks.

Note that the user is free to define new Sweave logical options and associate arbitrary hooks with them. E.g., one could define a hook function for a new option called `clean` that removes all objects in the workspace. Then all code chunks specified with `clean = TRUE` would start operating on an empty workspace.

Author(s)

Friedrich Leisch and R-core

See Also

'Sweave User Manual', a vignette in the **utils** package.

Sweave, Rtangle

`savehistory` *Load or Save or Display the Commands History*

Description

Load or save or display the commands history.

Usage

```
loadhistory(file = ".Rhistory")
savehistory(file = ".Rhistory")

history(max.show = 25, reverse = FALSE, pattern, ...)

timestamp(stamp = date(),
          prefix = "##------ ", suffix = " ------##",
          quiet = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`file`	The name of the file in which to save the history, or from which to load it. The path is relative to the current working directory.
`max.show`	The maximum number of lines to show. `Inf` will give all of the currently available history.
`reverse`	logical. If true, the lines are shown in reverse order. Note: this is not useful when there are continuation lines.
`pattern`	A character string to be matched against the lines of the history. When supplied, only *unique* matching lines are shown.
`...`	Arguments to be passed to `grep` when doing the matching.
`stamp`	A value or vector of values to be written into the history.
`prefix`	A prefix to apply to each line.
`suffix`	A suffix to apply to each line.
`quiet`	If `TRUE`, suppress printing timestamp to the console.

Details

There are several history mechanisms available for the different consoles, which work in similar but not identical ways. There are separate versions of this help file for Unix and Windows.

The functions described here work on Unix-alikes under the `readline` command-line interface but may not otherwise (for example, in batch use or in an embedded application). Note that can be built without `readline`.

`R.app`, the console on OS X, has a separate and largely incompatible history mechanism, which by default uses a file '`.Rapp.history`' and saves up to 250 entries. These functions are not currently implemented there.

The `readline` history mechanism is controlled by two environment variables: `R_HISTSIZE` controls the number of lines that are saved (default 512), and `R_HISTFILE` (default '`.Rhistory`') sets the filename used for the loading/saving of history if requested at the beginning/end of a session (but not the default for `loadhistory`/`savehistory`). There is no limit on the number of lines of history retained during a session, so setting `R_HISTSIZE` to a large value has no penalty unless a large file is actually generated.

These environment variables are read at the time of saving, so can be altered within a session by the use of `Sys.setenv`.

Note that `readline` history library saves files with permission `0600`, that is with read/write permission for the user and not even read permission for any other account.

The `timestamp` function writes a timestamp (or other message) into the history and echos it to the console. On platforms that do not support a history mechanism only the console message is printed.

Note

If you want to save the history at the end of (almost) every interactive session (even those in which you do not save the workspace), you can put a call to `savehistory()` in `.Last`. See the examples.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Save the history in the home directory: note that it is not
## (by default) read from there but from the current directory
.Last <- function()
    if(interactive()) try(savehistory("~/.Rhistory"))

## End(Not run)
```

`select.list` *Select Items from a List*

Description

Select item(s) from a character vector.

Usage

```
select.list(choices, preselect = NULL, multiple = FALSE,
            title = NULL, graphics = getOption("menu.graphics"))
```

Arguments

choices	a character vector of items.
preselect	a character vector, or NULL. If non-null and if the string(s) appear in the list, the item(s) are selected initially.
multiple	logical: can more than one item be selected?
title	optional character string for window title, or NULL for no title.
graphics	logical: should a graphical widget be used?

Details

The normal default is graphics = TRUE. Under the OS X GUI this brings up a modal dialog box with a (scrollable) list of items, which can be selected by the mouse. On other Unix-like platforms it will use a Tcl/Tk listbox widget if possible.

If graphics is FALSE or no graphical widget is available it displays a text list from which the user can choose by number(s). The multiple = FALSE case uses menu. Preselection is only supported for multiple = TRUE, where it is indicated by a "+" preceding the item.

It is an error to use select.list in a non-interactive session.

Value

A character vector of selected items. If multiple is false and no item was selected (or Cancel was used), "" is returned. If multiple is true and no item was selected (or Cancel was used) then a character vector of length 0 is returned.

See Also

menu, tk_select.list for a graphical version using Tcl/Tk.

Examples

```
## Not run:
select.list(sort(.packages(all.available = TRUE)))

## End(Not run)
```

---

sessionInfo *Collect Information About the Current R Session*

Description

Print version information about , the OS and attached or loaded packages.

Usage

```
sessionInfo(package = NULL)
## S3 method for class sessionInfo
print(x, locale = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class sessionInfo
toLatex(object, locale = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

package	a character vector naming installed packages, or NULL (the default) meaning all attached packages.
x	an object of class "sessionInfo".
object	an object of class "sessionInfo".
locale	show locale information?
...	currently not used.

Value

An object of class "sessionInfo", which has a print method. This is a list with components

R.version	a list, the result of calling R.Version().
platform	a character string describing the platform. Where sub-architectures are in use this is of the form 'platform/sub-arch (nn-bit)'.
running	a character string describing the OS and version which it is running under (as distinct from compiled under).
locale	a character string, the result of calling Sys.getlocale().
basePkgs	a character vector of base packages which are attached.
otherPkgs	(not always present): a character vector of other attached packages.
loadedOnly	(not always present): a named list of the results of calling packageDescription on packages whose namespaces are loaded but are not attached.

Note

The information on 'loaded' packages and namespaces is the *current* version installed at the location the package was loaded from: it can be wrong if another process has been changing packages during the session.

How OSes identify themselves and their versions can be arcane: where possible running uses a human-readable form.

See Also

R.version

Examples

```
sessionInfo()
toLatex(sessionInfo(), locale = FALSE)
```

`setRepositories` *Select Package Repositories*

Description

Interact with the user to choose the package repositories to be used.

Usage

```
setRepositories(graphics = getOption("menu.graphics"),
                ind = NULL, addURLs = character())
```

Arguments

`graphics`	Logical. If true, use a graphical list: on Windows or OS X GUI use a list box, and on a Unix-alike if **tcltk** and an X server are available, use Tk widget. Otherwise use a text `menu`.
`ind`	`NULL` or a vector of integer indices, which have the same effect as if they were entered at the prompt for `graphics = FALSE`.
`addURLs`	A character vector of additional URLs: it is often helpful to use a named vector.

Details

The default list of known repositories is stored in the file '*R_HOME*`/etc/repositories`'. That file can be edited for a site, or a user can have a personal copy in '*HOME*`/.R/repositories`' which will take precedence.

A Bioconductor mirror can be selected by setting `options("BioC_mirror")`, e.g. via `chooseBioCmirror` the default value is '`"http://www.bioconductor.org"`'.

The items that are preselected are those that are currently in `options("repos")` plus those marked as default in the list of known repositories.

The list of repositories offered depends on the setting of option `"pkgType"` as some repositories only offer a subset of types (e.g., only source packages or not OS X binary packages). Further, for binary packages some repositories (notably R-Forge) only offer packages for the current or recent versions of . (Type `"both"` is equivalent to `"source"`.)

Repository '`CRAN`' is treated specially: the value is taken from the current setting of `getOption("repos")` if this has an element `"CRAN"`: this ensures mirror selection is sticky.

This function requires the session to be interactive unless `ind` is supplied.

Value

This function is invoked mainly for its side effect of updating `options("repos")`. It returns (invisibly) the previous `repos` options setting (as a `list` with component `repos`) or `NULL` if no changes were applied.

Note

This does **not** set the list of repositories at startup: to do so set `options(repos =)` in a start up file (see help topic Startup).

See Also

chooseCRANmirror, chooseBioCmirror, install.packages.

Examples

```
## Not run:
setRepositories(addURLs =
                c(CRANxtras = "http://www.stats.ox.ac.uk/pub/RWin"))

## End(Not run)
```

SHLIB *Build Shared Object/DLL for Dynamic Loading*

Description

Compile the given source files and then link all specified object files into a shared object aka DLL which can be loaded into using dyn.load or library.dynam.

Usage

```
R CMD SHLIB [options] [-o dllname] files
```

Arguments

files	a list specifying the object files to be included in the shared object/DLL. You can also include the name of source files (for which the object files are automagically made from their sources) and library linking commands.
dllname	the full name of the shared object/DLL to be built, including the extension (typically '.so' on Unix systems, and '.dll' on Windows). If not given, the basename of the object/DLL is taken from the basename of the first file.
options	Further options to control the processing. Use R CMD SHLIB --help for a current list.

Details

R CMD SHLIB is the mechanism used by INSTALL to compile source code in packages. It will generate suitable compilation commands for C, C++, Objective C(++) and Fortran sources: Fortran 90/95 sources can also be used but it may not be possible to mix these with other languages (on most platforms it is possible to mix with C, but mixing with C++ rarely works).

Please consult section 'Creating shared objects' in the manual 'Writing R Extensions' for how to customize it (for example to add cpp flags and to add libraries to the link step) and for details of some of its quirks.

Items in files with extensions '.c', '.cpp', '.cc', '.C', '.f', '.f90', '.f95', '.m' (ObjC), '.M' and '.mm' (ObjC++) are regarded as source files, and those with extension '.o' as object files. All other items are passed to the linker.

Objective C(++) support is optional when was configured: their main usage is on OS X.

Note that the appropriate run-time libraries will be used when linking if C++, Fortran or Objective C(++) sources are supplied, but not for compiled object files from these languages.

Option '-n' (also known as '--dry-run') will show the commands that would be run without actually executing them.

Note

Some binary distributions of have SHLIB in a separate bundle, e.g., an R-devel RPM.

See Also

COMPILE, dyn.load, library.dynam.

The 'R Installation and Administration' and 'Writing R Extensions' manuals, including the section on "Customizing compilation" in the former.

Examples

```
## Not run:
# To link against a library not on the system library paths:
R CMD SHLIB -o mylib.so a.f b.f -L/opt/acml3.5.0/gnu64/lib -lacml

## End(Not run)
```

---

sourceutils *Source Reference Utilities*

Description

These functions extract information from source references.

Usage

```
getSrcFilename(x, full.names = FALSE, unique = TRUE)
getSrcDirectory(x, unique = TRUE)
getSrcref(x)
getSrcLocation(x, which = c("line", "column", "byte", "parse"),
               first = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	An object (typically a function) containing source references.
full.names	Whether to include the full path in the filename result.
unique	Whether to list only unique filenames/directories.
which	Which part of a source reference to extract.
first	Whether to show the first (or last) location of the object.

Details

Each statement of a function will have its own source reference if the "keep.source" option is TRUE. These functions retrieve all of them.

The components are as follows:

line The line number where the object starts or ends.

column The column number where the object starts or ends.

byte As for "column", but counting bytes, which may differ in case of multibyte characters.

parse As for "line", but this ignores #line directives.

Value

`getSrcFilename` and `getSrcDirectory` return character vectors holding the filename/directory.

`getSrcref` returns a list of `"srcref"` objects or `NULL` if there are none.

`getSrcLocation` returns an integer vector of the requested type of locations.

See Also

`srcref`, `getParseData`

Examples

```
fn <- function(x) {
  x + 1 # A comment, kept as part of the source
}

# Show the temporary file directory
# where the example was saved

getSrcDirectory(fn)
getSrcLocation(fn, "line")
```

---

stack *Stack or Unstack Vectors from a Data Frame or List*

Description

Stacking vectors concatenates multiple vectors into a single vector along with a factor indicating where each observation originated. Unstacking reverses this operation.

Usage

```
stack(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
stack(x, ...)
## S3 method for class data.frame
stack(x, select, ...)

unstack(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
unstack(x, form, ...)
## S3 method for class data.frame
unstack(x, form, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a list or data frame to be stacked or unstacked.
`select`	an expression, indicating which variable(s) to select from a data frame.
`form`	a two-sided formula whose left side evaluates to the vector to be unstacked and whose right side evaluates to the indicator of the groups to create. Defaults to `formula(x)` in the data frame method for `unstack`.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The stack function is used to transform data available as separate columns in a data frame or list into a single column that can be used in an analysis of variance model or other linear model. The unstack function reverses this operation.

Note that stack applies to *vectors* (as determined by is.vector): non-vector columns (e.g., factors) will be ignored (with a warning as from 2.15.0). Where vectors of different types are selected they are concatenated by unlist whose help page explains how the type of the result is chosen.

These functions are generic: the supplied methods handle data frames and objects coercible to lists by as.list.

Value

unstack produces a list of columns according to the formula form. If all the columns have the same length, the resulting list is coerced to a data frame.

stack produces a data frame with two columns:

values	the result of concatenating the selected vectors in x.
ind	a factor indicating from which vector in x the observation originated.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates

See Also

lm, reshape

Examples

```
require(stats)
formula(PlantGrowth)         # check the default formula
pg <- unstack(PlantGrowth)   # unstack according to this formula
pg
stack(pg)                    # now put it back together
stack(pg, select = -ctrl)    # omitting one vector
```

---

str *Compactly Display the Structure of an Arbitrary R Object*

Description

Compactly display the internal **str**ucture of an object, a diagnostic function and an alternative to summary (and to some extent, dput). Ideally, only one line for each 'basic' structure is displayed. It is especially well suited to compactly display the (abbreviated) contents of (possibly nested) lists. The idea is to give reasonable output for **any** object. It calls args for (non-primitive) function objects.

strOptions() is a convenience function for setting options(str = .), see the examples.

Usage

```
str(object, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
str(object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
str(object, max.level = NA,
    vec.len  = strO$vec.len, digits.d = strO$digits.d,
    nchar.max = 128, give.attr = TRUE,
    give.head = TRUE, give.length = give.head,
    width = getOption("width"), nest.lev = 0,
    indent.str = paste(rep.int(" ", max(0, nest.lev + 1)),
                       collapse = ".."),
    comp.str = "$ ", no.list = FALSE, envir = baseenv(),
    strict.width = strO$strict.width,
    formatNum = strO$formatNum, list.len = 99, ...)

strOptions(strict.width = "no", digits.d = 3, vec.len = 4,
           formatNum = function(x, ...)
                       format(x, trim = TRUE, drop0trailing = TRUE, ...))
```

Arguments

`object`	any object about which you want to have some information.
`max.level`	maximal level of nesting which is applied for displaying nested structures, e.g., a list containing sub lists. Default NA: Display all nesting levels.
`vec.len`	numeric (>= 0) indicating how many 'first few' elements are displayed of each vector. The number is multiplied by different factors (from .5 to 3) depending on the kind of vector. Defaults to the `vec.len` component of option `"str"` (see `options`) which defaults to 4.
`digits.d`	number of digits for numerical components (as for `print`). Defaults to the `digits.d` component of option `"str"` which defaults to 3.
`nchar.max`	maximal number of characters to show for `character` strings. Longer strings are truncated, see `longch` example below.
`give.attr`	logical; if `TRUE` (default), show attributes as sub structures.
`give.length`	logical; if `TRUE` (default), indicate length (as `[1:...]`).
`give.head`	logical; if `TRUE` (default), give (possibly abbreviated) mode/class and length (as `<type>[1:...]`).
`width`	the page width to be used. The default is the currently active `options("width")`; note that this has only a weak effect, unless `strict.width` is not `"no"`.
`nest.lev`	current nesting level in the recursive calls to `str`.
`indent.str`	the indentation string to use.
`comp.str`	string to be used for separating list components.
`no.list`	logical; if true, no 'list of ...' nor the class are printed.
`envir`	the environment to be used for *promise* (see `delayedAssign`) objects only.

`strict.width`	string indicating if the `width` argument's specification should be followed strictly, one of the values `c("no", "cut", "wrap")`. Defaults to the `strict.width` component of option `"str"` (see `options`) which defaults to `"no"` for back compatibility reasons; `"wrap"` uses `strwrap(*, width = width)` whereas `"cut"` cuts directly to `width`. Note that a small `vec.length` may be better than setting `strict.width = "wrap"`.
`formatNum`	a function such as `format` for formatting numeric vectors. It defaults to the `formatNum` component of option `"str"`, see "Usage" of `strOptions()` above, which is almost back compatible to <= 2.7.x, however, using `formatC` may be slightly better.
`list.len`	numeric; maximum number of list elements to display within a level.
`...`	potential further arguments (required for Method/Generic reasons).

Value

`str` does not return anything, for efficiency reasons. The obvious side effect is output to the terminal.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler <maechler@stat.math.ethz.ch> since 1990.

See Also

`ls.str` for *listing* objects with their structure; `summary`, `args`.

Examples

```
require(stats); require(grDevices); require(graphics)
## The following examples show some of str capabilities
str(1:12)
str(ls)
str(args) #- more useful than  args(args) !
str(freeny)
str(str)
str(.Machine, digits.d = 20) # extra digits for identification of binary numbers
str( lsfit(1:9, 1:9))
str( lsfit(1:9, 1:9), max.level = 1)
str( lsfit(1:9, 1:9), width = 60, strict.width = "cut")
str( lsfit(1:9, 1:9), width = 60, strict.width = "wrap")
op <- options(); str(op)   # save first;
                           # otherwise internal options() is used.
need.dev <-
  !exists(".Device") || is.null(.Device) || .Device == "null device"
{ if(need.dev) postscript()
  str(par())
  if(need.dev) graphics.off()
}
ch <- letters[1:12]; is.na(ch) <- 3:5
str(ch) # character NAs

str(list(a = "A", L = as.list(1:100)), list.len = 9)
nchar(longch <- paste(rep(letters,100), collapse = ""))
str(longch)
str(longch, nchar.max = 52)
```

```
str(longch, strict.width = "wrap")

## Settings for narrow transcript :
op <- options(width = 60,
              str = strOptions(strict.width = "wrap"))
str(lsfit(1:9,1:9))
str(options())
## reset to previous:
options(op)



str(quote( { A+B; list(C, D) } ))



## S4 classes :
require(stats4)
x <- 0:10; y <- c(26, 17, 13, 12, 20, 5, 9, 8, 5, 4, 8)
ll <- function(ymax = 15, xh = 6)
      -sum(dpois(y, lambda=ymax/(1+x/xh), log=TRUE))
fit <- mle(ll)
str(fit)
```

---

summaryRprof *Summarise Output of R Sampling Profiler*

Description

Summarise the output of the Rprof function to show the amount of time used by different functions.

Usage

```
summaryRprof(filename = "Rprof.out", chunksize = 5000,
               memory = c("none", "both", "tseries", "stats"),
               lines = c("hide", "show", "both"),
               index = 2, diff = TRUE, exclude = NULL,
               basenames = 1)
```

Arguments

filename	Name of a file produced by Rprof().
chunksize	Number of lines to read at a time.
memory	Summaries for memory information. See 'Memory profiling' below.
lines	Summaries for line information. See 'Line profiling' below.
index	How to summarize the stack trace for memory information. See 'Details' below.
diff	If TRUE memory summaries use change in memory rather than current memory.
exclude	Functions to exclude when summarizing the stack trace for memory summaries.
basenames	Number of components of the path to filenames to display.

Details

This function provides the analysis code for Rprof files used by R CMD Rprof.

As the profiling output file could be larger than available memory, it is read in blocks of chunksize lines. Increasing chunksize will make the function run faster if sufficient memory is available.

Value

If memory = "none" and lines = "hide", a list with components

by.self	A data frame of timings sorted by 'self' time.
by.total	A data frame of timings sorted by 'total' time.
sample.interval	The sampling interval.
sampling.time	Total time of profiling run.

The first two components have columns 'self.time', 'self.pct', 'total.time' and 'total.pct', the times in seconds and percentages of the total time spent executing code in that function and code in that function or called from that function, respectively.

If lines = "show", an additional component is added to the list:

by.line	A data frame of timings sorted by source location.

If memory = "both" the same list but with memory consumption in Mb in addition to the timings.

If memory = "tseries" a data frame giving memory statistics over time.

If memory = "stats" a by object giving memory statistics by function.

Prior to 2.15.3 an error was thrown if no events were recorded: now zero-row data frames are returned.

Memory profiling

Options other than memory = "none" apply only to files produced by Rprof(memory.profiling = TRUE).

When called with memory.profiling = TRUE, the profiler writes information on three aspects of memory use: vector memory in small blocks on the R heap, vector memory in large blocks (from malloc), memory in nodes on the R heap. It also records the number of calls to the internal function duplicate in the time interval. duplicate is called by C code when arguments need to be copied. Note that the profiler does not track which function actually allocated the memory.

With memory = "both" the change in total memory (truncated at zero) is reported in addition to timing data.

With memory = "tseries" or memory = "stats" the index argument specifies how to summarize the stack trace. A positive number specifies that many calls from the bottom of the stack; a negative number specifies the number of calls from the top of the stack. With memory = "tseries" the index is used to construct labels and may be a vector to give multiple sets of labels. With memory = "stats" the index must be a single number and specifies how to aggregate the data to the maximum and average of the memory statistics. With both memory = "tseries" and memory = "stats" the argument diff = TRUE asks for summaries of the increase in memory use over the sampling interval and diff = FALSE asks for the memory use at the end of the interval.

Line profiling

If the code being run has source reference information retained (via `keep.source = TRUE` in `source` or `KeepSource = TRUE` in a package 'DESCRIPTION' file or some other way), then information about the origin of lines is recorded during profiling. By default this is not displayed, but the `lines` parameter can enable the display.

If `lines = "show"`, line locations will be used in preference to the usual function name information, and the results will be displayed ordered by location in addition to the other orderings.

If `lines = "both"`, line locations will be mixed with function names in a combined display.

See Also

The chapter on "Tidying and profiling R code" in "Writing Extensions" (see the 'doc/manual' subdirectory of the source tree).

`Rprof`

`tracemem` traces copying of an object via the C function `duplicate`.

`Rprofmem` is a non-sampling memory-use profiler.

`http://developer.r-project.org/memory-profiling.html`

Examples

```
## Not run:
## Rprof() is not available on all platforms
Rprof(tmp <- tempfile())
example(glm)
Rprof()
summaryRprof(tmp)
unlink(tmp)

## End(Not run)
```

Sweave *Automatic Generation of Reports*

Description

`Sweave` provides a flexible framework for mixing text and R/S code for automatic report generation. The basic idea is to replace the code with its output, such that the final document only contains the text and the output of the statistical analysis: however, the source code can also be included.

Usage

```
Sweave(file, driver = RweaveLatex(),
       syntax = getOption("SweaveSyntax"), encoding = "", ...)

Stangle(file, driver = Rtangle(),
        syntax = getOption("SweaveSyntax"), encoding = "", ...)
```

Arguments

`file`	Path to Sweave source file. Note that this can be supplied without the extension, but the function will only proceed if there is exactly one Sweave file in the directory whose basename matches `file`.
`driver`	The actual workhorse, see 'Details'.
`syntax`	`NULL` or an object of class `SweaveSyntax` or a character string with its name. See the section 'Syntax Definition'.
`encoding`	The default encoding to assume for `file`.
`...`	Further arguments passed to the driver's setup function: see section 'Drivers', `RweaveLatex` and `Rtangle`.

Details

Automatic generation of reports by mixing word processing markup (like latex) and S code. The S code gets replaced by its output (text or graphs) in the final markup file. This allows a report to be re-generated if the input data change and documents the code to reproduce the analysis in the same file that also produces the report.

`Sweave` combines the documentation and code chunks together (or their output) into a single document. `Stangle` extracts only the code from the Sweave file creating an S source file that can be run using `source`. (Code inside `\Sexpr{}` statements is ignored by `Stangle`.)

`Stangle` is just a wrapper to `Sweave` specifying a different default driver. Alternative drivers can be used: the CRAN package **cacheSweave** and the Bioconductor package **weaver** both provide drivers based on the default driver `RweaveLatex` which incorporate ideas of *caching* the results of computations on code chunks.

Environment variable `SWEAVE_OPTIONS` can be used to override the initial options set by the driver: it should be a comma-separated set of `key=value` items, as would be used in a '`\SweaveOpts`' statement in a document.

Non-ASCII source files must contain a line of the form

```
\usepackage[foo]{inputenc}
```

(where '`foo`' is typically '`latin1`', '`latin2`', '`utf8`' or '`cp1252`' or '`cp1250`') or they will give an error. Re-encoding can be turned off completely with argument `encoding = "bytes"`.

Syntax Definition

Sweave allows a flexible syntax framework for marking documentation and text chunks. The default is a noweb-style syntax, as alternative a latex-style syntax can be used. (See the user manual for further details.)

If `syntax = NULL` (the default) then the available syntax objects are consulted in turn, and selected if their `extension` component matches (as a regexp) the file name. Objects `SweaveSyntaxNoweb` (with `extension = "[.][rsRS]nw$"`) and `SweaveSyntaxLatex` (with `extension = "[.][rsRS]tex$"`) are supplied, but users or packages can supply others with names matching the pattern `SweaveSyntax.*`.

Author(s)

Friedrich Leisch and R-core.

References

Friedrich Leisch (2002) Dynamic generation of statistical reports using literate data analysis. In W. Härdle and B. Rönz, editors, *Compstat 2002 - Proceedings in Computational Statistics*, pages 575–580. Physika Verlag, Heidelberg, Germany, ISBN 3-7908-1517-9.

See Also

'Sweave User Manual', a vignette in the **utils** package.

`RweaveLatex`, `Rtangle`.

Packages **cacheSweave**, **weaver** (Bioconductor) and **SweaveListingUtils**.

Further Sweave drivers are in, for example, packages **R2HTML**, **ascii**, **odfWeave** and **pgfSweave**.

Non-Sweave vignettes may be built with `tools::buildVignette`.

Examples

```
testfile <- system.file("Sweave", "Sweave-test-1.Rnw", package = "utils")

## enforce par(ask = FALSE)
options(device.ask.default = FALSE)

## create a LaTeX file
Sweave(testfile)

## This can be compiled to PDF by
## tools::texi2pdf("Sweave-test-1.tex")
## or outside R by
## R CMD texi2pdf Sweave-test-1.tex
## which sets the appropriate TEXINPUTS path.

## create an R source file from the code chunks
Stangle(testfile)
## which can be sourced, e.g.
source("Sweave-test-1.R")
```

`SweaveSyntConv` *Convert Sweave Syntax*

Description

This function converts the syntax of files in `Sweave` format to another Sweave syntax definition.

Usage

```
SweaveSyntConv(file, syntax, output = NULL)
```

Arguments

file	Name of Sweave source file.
syntax	An object of class SweaveSyntax or a character string with its name giving the target syntax to which the file is converted.
output	Name of output file, default is to remove the extension from the input file and to add the default extension of the target syntax. Any directory names in file are also removed such that the output is created in the current working directory.

Author(s)

Friedrich Leisch

See Also

'Sweave User Manual', a vignette in the **utils** package.

RweaveLatex, Rtangle

Examples

```
testfile <- system.file("Sweave", "Sweave-test-1.Rnw", package = "utils")

## convert the file to latex syntax
SweaveSyntConv(testfile, SweaveSyntaxLatex)

## and run it through Sweave
Sweave("Sweave-test-1.Stex")
```

---

tar *Create a Tar Archive*

Description

Create a tar archive.

Usage

```
tar(tarfile, files = NULL,
    compression = c("none", "gzip", "bzip2", "xz"),
    compression_level = 6, tar = Sys.getenv("tar"),
    extra_flags = "")
```

Arguments

tarfile	The pathname of the tar file: tilde expansion (see path.expand) will be performed. Alternatively, a connection that can be used for binary writes.
files	A character vector of filepaths to be archived: the default is to archive all files under the current directory.
compression	character string giving the type of compression to be used (default none). Can be abbreviated.

`compression_level`
: integer: the level of compression. Only used for the internal method.

`tar`
: character string: the path to the command to be used. If the command itself contains spaces it needs to be quoted (e.g., by `shQuote`) – but argument `tar` can also contain flags separated from the command by spaces.

`extra_flags`
: any extra flags for an external `tar`.

Details

This is either a wrapper for a `tar` command or uses an internal implementation in . The latter is used if `tarfile` is a connection or if the argument `tar` is `"internal"` or `""` (the 'factory-fresh' default). Note that whereas Unix-alike versions of set the environment variable `TAR`, its value is not the default for this function.

Argument `extra_flags` is passed to an external `tar` and so is platform-dependent. Possibly useful values include '`-h`' (follow symbolic links, also '`-L`' on some platforms), '`--acls`', '`--exclude-backups`', '`--exclude-vcs`' (and similar) and on Windows '`--force-local`' (so drives can be included in filepaths: however, this is the default for the `Rtools` `tar`). For GNU `tar`, '`--format=ustar`' forces a more portable format (the current default in version 1.26 is '`--format=gnu`', but the manual says the intention is to change to '`--format=pax`' which GNU incorrectly calls 'POSIX' – it was never part of the POSIX standard for `tar`). For libarchive `tar`, '`--format=ustar`' is more portable than the default.

Value

The return code from `system` or `0` for the internal version, invisibly.

Portability

The 'tar' format no longer has an agreed standard! 'Unix Standard Tar' was part of POSIX 1003.1:1998 but has been removed in favour of `pax`, and in any case many common implementations diverged from the former standard. Most platforms use a version of GNU `tar` (including `Rtools` on Windows, but the behaviour seems to be changed with each version), Mac OS >= 10.6 and FreeBSD use `bsdtar` from the 'libarchive' project, and commercial Unixes will have their own versions.

Known problems arise from

- The handling of file paths of more than 100 bytes. These were unsupported in early versions of `tar`, and supported in one way by POSIX `tar` and in another by GNU `tar` and yet another by the POSIX `pax` command which recent`tar` programs often support. The internal implementation warns on paths of more than 100 bytes, uses the 'ustar' way from the 1998 POSIX standard which supports up to 256 bytes (depending on the path: in particular the final component is limited to 100 bytes) if possible, or the GNU way (which is widely supported).

  Most formats do not record the encoding of file paths.

- (File) links. `tar` was developed on an OS that used hard links, and physical files that were referred to more than once in the list of files to be included were included only once, the remaining instances being added as links. Later a means to include symbolic links was added. The internal implementation supports symbolic links (on OSes that support them), only. Of course, the question arises as to how links should be unpacked on OSes that do not support them: for regular files, at least, file copies can be used.

  Names of links in the 'ustar' format are restricted to 100 bytes. There is an GNU extension for arbitrarily long link names, but `bsdtar` does not read. The internal method uses the GNU extension, with a warning.

- Header fields, in particular the padding to be used when fields are not full or not used. POSIX did define the correct behaviour but commonly used implementations did (and still do) not comply.
- File sizes. The 'ustar' format is restricted to 8GB per (uncompressed) file.

For portability, avoid file paths of more than 100 bytes and all links (especially hard links and symbolic links to directories).

The internal implementation writes only the blocks of 512 bytes required (including trailing blocks of nuls), unlike GNU `tar` which by default pads with '`nul`' to a multiple of 20 blocks (10KB). Implementations which pad differ on whether the block padding should occur before or after compression (or both): padding was designed for improved performance on physical tape drives.

See Also

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tar_(file_format), http://pubs.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/9699919799/utilities/pax.html#tag_20_92_13_06 for the way the POSIX utility `pax` handles `tar` formats.

https://github.com/libarchive/libarchive/wiki/FormatTar.

`untar`.

---

toLatex *Converting R Objects to BibTeX or LaTeX*

Description

These methods convert objects to character vectors with BibTeX or LaTeX markup.

Usage

```
toBibtex(object, ...)
toLatex(object, ...)
## S3 method for class Bibtex
print(x, prefix = "", ...)
## S3 method for class Latex
print(x, prefix = "", ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	object of a class for which a `toBibtex` or `toLatex` method exists.
`x`	object of class `"Bibtex"` or `"Latex"`.
`prefix`	a character string which is printed at the beginning of each line, mostly used to insert whitespace for indentation.
`...`	in the print methods, passed to `writeLines`.

Details

Objects of class `"Bibtex"` or `"Latex"` are simply character vectors where each element holds one line of the corresponding BibTeX or LaTeX file.

See Also

`citEntry` and `sessionInfo` for examples

txtProgressBar *Text Progress Bar*

Description

Text progress bar in the console.

Usage

```
txtProgressBar(min = 0, max = 1, initial = 0, char = "=",
               width = NA, title, label, style = 1, file = "")

getTxtProgressBar(pb)
setTxtProgressBar(pb, value, title = NULL, label = NULL)
## S3 method for class txtProgressBar
close(con, ...)
```

Arguments

min, max	(finite) numeric values for the extremes of the progress bar. Must have min < max.
initial, value	initial or new value for the progress bar. See 'Details' for what happens with invalid values.
char	the character (or character string) to form the progress bar.
width	the width of the progress bar, as a multiple of the width of char. If NA, the default, the number of characters is that which fits into getOption("width").
style	the 'style' of the bar – see 'Details'.
file	an open connection object or "" which indicates the console: stderr() might be useful here.
pb, con	an object of class "txtProgressBar".
title, label	ignored, for compatibility with other progress bars.
...	for consistency with the generic.

Details

txtProgressBar will display a progress bar on the console (or a connection) via a text representation.

setTxtProgessBar will update the value. Missing (NA) and out-of-range values of value will be (silently) ignored. (Such values of initial cause the progress bar not to be displayed until a valid value is set.)

The progress bar should be closed when finished with: this outputs the final newline character.

style = 1 and style = 2 just shows a line of char. They differ in that style = 2 redraws the line each time, which is useful if other code might be writing to the console. style = 3 marks the end of the range by | and gives a percentage to the right of the bar.

Value

For `txtProgressBar` an object of class `"txtProgressBar"`.

For `getTxtProgressBar` and `setTxtProgressBar`, a length-one numeric vector giving the previous value (invisibly for `setTxtProgressBar`).

Note

Using `style` 2 or 3 or reducing the value with `style = 1` uses '`\r`' to return to the left margin – the interpretation of carriage return is up to the terminal or console in which is running, and this is liable to produce ugly output on a connection other than a terminal, including when `stdout()` is redirected to a file.

See Also

`tkProgressBar`.

Windows versions of also have `winProgressBar`.

Examples

```
 # slow
testit <- function(x = sort(runif(20)), ...)
{
    pb <- txtProgressBar(...)
    for(i in c(0, x, 1)) {Sys.sleep(0.5); setTxtProgressBar(pb, i)}
    Sys.sleep(1)
    close(pb)
}
testit()
testit(runif(10))
testit(style = 3)
```

`type.convert` *Type Conversion on Character Variables*

Description

Convert a character vector to logical, integer, numeric, complex or factor as appropriate.

Usage

```
type.convert(x, na.strings = "NA", as.is = FALSE, dec = ".",
             numerals = c("allow.loss", "warn.loss", "no.loss"))
```

Arguments

`x`	a character vector.
`na.strings`	a vector of strings which are to be interpreted as `NA` values. Blank fields are also considered to be missing values in logical, integer, numeric or complex vectors.
`as.is`	logical. See 'Details'.
`dec`	the character to be assumed for decimal points.

numerals — string indicating how to convert numbers whose conversion to double precision would lose accuracy, typically when x has more digits than can be stored in a double.

numerals = "allow.loss", **default:** the conversion happens with some accuracy loss. This has been the only behavior of versions 3.0.3 and earlier.

numerals = "warn.loss": a warning about accuracy loss is signalled and the conversion happens as with numerals = "allow.loss".

numerals = "no.loss": x is *not* converted to a number, but to a factor or left as character, depending on as.is. This has been the only behavior of version 3.1.0.

Details

This is principally a helper function for read.table. Given a character vector, it attempts to convert it to logical, integer, numeric or complex, and failing that converts it to factor unless as.is = TRUE. The first type that can accept all the non-missing values is chosen.

Vectors which are entirely missing values are converted to logical, since NA is primarily logical.

Vectors containing just F, T, FALSE, TRUE and values from na.strings are converted to logical. Vectors containing optional whitespace followed by decimal constants representable as integers or values from na.strings are converted to integer. Other vectors containing optional whitespace followed by other decimal or hexadecimal constants (see NumericConstants), or NaN, Inf or infinity (ignoring case) or values from na.strings are converted to numeric. As from 3.1.0, where converting inputs to numeric or complex would result in loss of accuracy they are returned as strings (for as.is = TRUE) or factors.

Since this is a helper function, the caller should always pass an appropriate value of as.is.

Value

An atomic vector or (for as.is = FALSE) a factor.

See Also

read.table

---

untar *Extract or List Tar Archives*

Description

Extract files from or list a tar archive.

Usage

```
untar(tarfile, files = NULL, list = FALSE, exdir = ".",
      compressed = NA, extras = NULL, verbose = FALSE,
      restore_times =  TRUE, tar = Sys.getenv("TAR"))
```

Arguments

tarfile	The pathname of the tar file: tilde expansion (see path.expand) will be performed. Alternatively, a connection that can be used for binary reads.
files	A character vector of recorded filepaths to be extracted: the default is to extract all files.
list	If TRUE, list the files (the equivalent of tar -tf). Otherwise extract the files (the equivalent of tar -xf).
exdir	The directory to extract files to (the equivalent of tar -C). It will be created if necessary.
compressed	logical or character. Values "gzip", "bzip2" and "xz" select that form of compression (and may be abbreviated to the first letter). TRUE indicates gzip compression, FALSE no known compression (but an external tar command may detect compression automagically), and NA (the default) that the type is inferred from the file header.
extras	NULL or a character string: further command-line flags such as '-p' to be passed to an external tar program.
verbose	logical: if true echo the command used.
restore_times	logical. If true (default) restore file modification times. If false, the equivalent of the '-m' flag. Times in tarballs are supposed to be in UTC, but tarballs are submitted to CRAN with times in the future or far past: this argument allows such times to be discarded.
tar	character string: the path to the command to be used. If the command itself contains spaces it needs to be quoted – but tar can also contain flags separated from the command by spaces.

Details

This is either a wrapper for a tar command or for an internal implementation written in . The latter is used if tarfile is a connection or if the argument tar is "internal" or "" (except on Windows, when tar.exe is tried first).

What options are supported will depend on the tar used. Modern GNU flavours of tar will support compressed archives, and since 1.15 are able to detect the type of compression automatically: version 1.20 added support for lzma and version 1.22 for xz compression using LZMA2. OS X 10.6 and later (and FreeBSD and some other OSes) have a tar (also known as bsdtar) from the 'libarchive' project which can also detect gzip and bzip2 compression automatically. For other flavours of tar, environment variable R_GZIPCMD gives the command to decompress gzip and compress files, and R_BZIPCMD for bzip2 files.

Arguments compressed, extras and verbose are only used when an external tar is used.

The internal implementation restores symbolic links as links on a Unix-alike, and as file copies on Windows (which works only for existing files, not for directories), and hard links as links. If the linking operation fails (as it may on a FAT file system), a file copy is tried. Since it uses gzfile to read a file it can handle files compressed by any of the methods that function can handle: at least compress, gzip, bzip2 and xz compression, and some types of lzma compression. It does not guard against restoring absolute file paths, as some tar implementations do. It will create the parent directories for directories or files in the archive if necessary. It handles the standard (USTAR/POSIX), GNU and pax ways of handling file paths of more than 100 bytes, and the GNU way of handling link targets of more than 100 bytes.

You may see warnings from the internal implementation such as

```
unsupported entry type x
```

This often indicates an invalid archive: entry types `"A-Z"` are allowed as extensions, but other types are reserved. The only thing you can do with such an archive is to find a `tar` program that handles it, and look carefully at the resulting files. There may also be the warning

```
using pax extended headers
```

This is indicates that additional information may have been discarded, such as ACLs, encodings ..., and long path and link names are only used as from 2.15.3.

The standards only support ASCII filenames (indeed, only alphanumeric plus period, underscore and hyphen). `untar` makes no attempt to map filenames to those acceptable on the current system, and treats the filenames in the archive as applicable without any re-encoding in the current locale.

Value

If `list = TRUE`, a character vector of (relative or absolute) paths of files contained in the tar archive.

Otherwise the return code from `system`, invisibly.

See Also

`tar`, `unzip`.

`unzip` *Extract or List Zip Archives*

Description

Extract files from or list a zip archive.

Usage

```
unzip(zipfile, files = NULL, list = FALSE, overwrite = TRUE,
      junkpaths = FALSE, exdir = ".", unzip = "internal",
      setTimes = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`zipfile`	The pathname of the zip file: tilde expansion (see `path.expand`) will be performed.
`files`	A character vector of recorded filepaths to be extracted: the default is to extract all files.
`list`	If `TRUE`, list the files and extract none. The equivalent of `unzip -l`.
`overwrite`	If `TRUE`, overwrite existing files, otherwise ignore such files. The equivalent of `unzip -o`.
`junkpaths`	If `TRUE`, use only the basename of the stored filepath when extracting. The equivalent of `unzip -j`.
`exdir`	The directory to extract files to (the equivalent of `unzip -d`). It will be created if necessary.

unzip	The method to be used. An alternative is to use getOption("unzip"), which on a Unix-alike may be set to the path to a unzip program.
setTimes	logical. For the internal method only, should the file time be set based on the times in the zip file? (NB: this applies to files, not to directories.

Value

If list = TRUE, a data frame with columns Name (character) Length (the size of the uncompressed file, numeric) and Date (of class "POSIXct").

Otherwise for the "internal" method, a character vector of the filepaths extracted to, invisibly.

Note

The default internal method is a minimal implementation, principally designed for Windows' users to be able to unpack Windows binary packages without external software. It does not (for example) support Unicode filenames as introduced in zip 3.0: for that use unzip = "unzip" with unzip 6.00 or later. (It does have support for files of more than 4GB and bzip2 compression.)

If unzip specifies a program, the format of the dates listed with list = TRUE is unknown (on Windows it can even depend on the current locale) and the return values could be NA or expressed in the wrong time zone or misinterpreted (the latter being far less likely as from unzip 6.00).

File times in zip files are stored in the style of MS-DOS, as local times to an accuracy of 2 seconds. This is not very useful when transferring zip files between machines (even across continents), so we chose not to restore them by default.

Source

The internal C code uses zlib and is in particular based on the contributed 'minizip' application in the zlib sources (from http://zlib.net) by Gilles Vollant.

See Also

unz to read a single component from a zip file.

zip.

---

update.packages *Compare Installed Packages with CRAN-like Repositories*

Description

old.packages indicates packages which have a (suitable) later version on the repositories whereas update.packages offers to download and install such packages.

new.packages looks for (suitable) packages on the repositories that are not already installed, and optionally offers them for installation.

Usage

```
update.packages(lib.loc = NULL, repos = getOption("repos"),
                contriburl = contrib.url(repos, type),
                method, instlib = NULL,
                ask = TRUE, available = NULL,
                oldPkgs = NULL, ..., checkBuilt = FALSE,
                type = getOption("pkgType"))

old.packages(lib.loc = NULL, repos = getOption("repos"),
             contriburl = contrib.url(repos, type),
             instPkgs = installed.packages(lib.loc = lib.loc),
             method, available = NULL, checkBuilt = FALSE,
             type = getOption("pkgType"))

new.packages(lib.loc = NULL, repos = getOption("repos"),
             contriburl = contrib.url(repos, type),
             instPkgs = installed.packages(lib.loc = lib.loc),
             method, available = NULL, ask = FALSE, ...,
             type = getOption("pkgType"))
```

Arguments

lib.loc	character vector describing the location of R library trees to search through (and update packages therein), or NULL for all known trees (see .libPaths).
repos	character vector, the base URL(s) of the repositories to use, e.g., the URL of a CRAN mirror such as "http://cran.us.r-project.org".
contriburl	URL(s) of the contrib sections of the repositories. Use this argument if your repository is incomplete. Overrides argument repos. Incompatible with type = "both".
method	Download method, see download.file. Unused if a non-NULL available is supplied.
instlib	character string giving the library directory where to install the packages.
ask	logical indicating whether to ask the user to select packages before they are downloaded and installed, or the character string "graphics", which brings up a widget to allow the user to (de-)select from the list of packages which could be updated. (The latter value only works on systems with a GUI version of select.list, and is otherwise equivalent to ask = TRUE.)
available	an object as returned by available.packages listing packages available at the repositories, or NULL which makes an internal call to available.packages. Incompatible with type = "both".
checkBuilt	If TRUE, a package built under an earlier major.minor version of (e.g., 3.1) is considered to be 'old'.
oldPkgs	if specified as non-NULL, update.packages() only considers these packages for updating. This may be a character vector of package names or a matrix as returned by old.packages.
instPkgs	by default all installed packages, installed.packages(lib.loc = lib.loc). A subset can be specified; currently this must be in the same (character matrix) format as returned by installed.packages().
...	Arguments such as destdir and dependencies to be passed to install.packages.

type character, indicating the type of package to download and install. See install.packages.

Details

old.packages compares the information from available.packages with that from instPkgs (computed by installed.packages by default) and reports installed packages that have newer versions on the repositories or, if checkBuilt = TRUE, that were built under an earlier minor version of (for example built under 3.0.x when running 3.1.0). (For binary package types here is no check that the version on the repository was built under the current minor version of , but it is advertised as being suitable for this version.)

new.packages does the same comparison but reports uninstalled packages that are available at the repositories. If ask != FALSE it asks which packages should be installed in the first element of lib.loc.

The main function of the set is update.packages. First a list of all packages found in lib.loc is created and compared with those available at the repositories. If ask = TRUE (the default) packages with a newer version are reported and for each one the user can specify if it should be updated. If so the packages are downloaded from the repositories and installed in the respective library path (or instlib if specified).

For how the list of suitable available packages is determined see available.packages. available = NULL make a call to available.packages(contriburl = contriburl, method = method) and hence by default filters on version, OS type and removes duplicates.

Value

update.packages returns NULL invisibly.

For old.packages, NULL or a matrix with one row per package, row names the package names and column names "Package", "LibPath", "Installed" (the version), "Built" (the version built under), "ReposVer" and "Repository".

For new.packages a character vector of package names, *after* any selected *via* ask have been installed.

Warning

Take care when using dependencies (passed to install.packages) with update.packages, for it is unclear where new dependencies should be installed. The current implementation will only allow it if all the packages to be updated are in a single library, when that library will be used.

See Also

install.packages, available.packages, download.packages, installed.packages, contrib.url.

The options listed for install.packages under options.

See download.file for how to handle proxies and other options to monitor file transfers.

INSTALL, REMOVE, remove.packages, library, .packages, read.dcf

The 'R Installation and Administration' manual for how to set up a repository.

url.show *Display a text URL*

Description

Extension of `file.show` to display text files from a remote server.

Usage

```
url.show(url, title = url, file = tempfile(),
         delete.file = TRUE, method, ...)
```

Arguments

`url`	The URL to read from.
`title`	Title for the browser.
`file`	File to copy to.
`delete.file`	Delete the file afterwards?
`method`	File transfer method: see `download.file`
`...`	Arguments to pass to `file.show`.

Note

Since this is for text files, it will convert to CRLF line endings on Windows.

See Also

`url`, `file.show`, `download.file`

Examples

```
## Not run: url.show("http://lib.stat.cmu.edu/datasets/csb/ch3a.txt")
```

URLencode *Encode or Decode a (partial) URL*

Description

Functions to encode or decode characters in URLs.

Usage

```
URLencode(URL, reserved = FALSE)
URLdecode(URL)
```

Arguments

`URL`	A character string.
`reserved`	should reserved characters be encoded? See 'Details'.

Details

Characters in a URL other than the English alphanumeric characters and '- _ . ~' should be encoded as % plus a two-digit hexadecimal representation, and any single-byte character can be so encoded. (Multi-byte characters are encoded byte-by-byte.)

In addition, '! $ & ( ) * + , ; = : / ? @ # [ ]' are reserved characters, and should be encoded unless used in their reserved sense, which is scheme specific. The default in URLencode is to leave them alone, which is appropriate for 'file://' URLs, but probably not for 'http://' ones.

URLencode will encode further the % characters in an already-encoded URL.

Value

A character string.

References

RFC 3986 http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3986

Examples

```
(y <- URLencode("a url with spaces and / and @"))
URLdecode(y)
(y <- URLencode("a url with spaces and / and @", reserved = TRUE))
URLdecode(y)
URLdecode("ab%20cd")
```

---

utils-deprecated *Deprecated Functions in Package* **utils**

Description

These functions are provided for compatibility with older versions of only, and may be defunct as soon as of the next release.

See Also

Deprecated, Defunct

View *Invoke a Data Viewer*

Description

Invoke a spreadsheet-style data viewer on a matrix-like object.

Usage

```
View(x, title)
```

Arguments

x	an object which can be coerced to a data frame with non-zero numbers of rows and columns.
title	title for viewer window. Defaults to name of x prefixed by Data:.

Details

Object x is coerced (if possible) to a data frame, and all non-numeric columns are then coerced to character. The object is then viewed in a spreadsheet-like data viewer, a read-only version of data.entry.

If there are row names on the data frame that are not 1:nrow, they are displayed in a separate first column called row.names.

Objects with zero columns or zero rows are not accepted.

The array of cells can be navigated by the cursor keys and Home, End, Page Up and Page Down (where supported by X11) as well as Enter and Tab.

Value

Invisible NULL. The functions puts up a window and returns immediately: the window can be closed via its controls or menus.

See Also

edit.data.frame, data.entry.

---

vignette *View or List Package Vignettes*

Description

View a specified package vignette, or list the available ones.

Usage

```
vignette(topic, package = NULL, lib.loc = NULL, all = TRUE)

## S3 method for class vignette
print(x, ...)
## S3 method for class vignette
edit(name, ...)
```

Arguments

topic	a character string giving the (base) name of the vignette to view. If omitted, all vignettes from all installed packages are listed.
package	a character vector with the names of packages to search through, or NULL in which 'all' packages (as defined by argument all) are searched.
lib.loc	a character vector of directory names of libraries, or NULL. The default value of NULL corresponds to all libraries currently known.

all	logical; if TRUE search all available packages in the library trees specified by lib.loc, and if FALSE, search only attached packages.
x, name	Object of class vignette.
...	Ignored by the print method, passed on to file.edit by the edit method.

Details

Function vignette returns an object of the same class, the print method opens a viewer for it. The program specified by the pdfviewer option is used for viewing PDF versions of vignettes. If several vignettes have PDF/HTML versions with base name identical to topic, the first one found is used.

If no topics are given, all available vignettes are listed. The corresponding information is returned in an object of class "packageIQR".

The edit method copies the code extracted from the vignette to a temporary file and opens the file in an editor (see edit). This makes it very easy to execute the commands line by line, modify them in any way you want to help you test variants, etc.

See Also

browseVignettes for an HTML-based vignette browser.

Examples

```
## List vignettes from all *attached* packages
vignette(all = FALSE)

## List vignettes from all *installed* packages (can take a long time!):
vignette(all = TRUE)

## Not run:
## Open the grid intro vignette
vignette("grid")

## The same
v1 <- vignette("grid")
print(v1)

## Now let us have a closer look at the code
edit(v1)

## An alternative way of extracting the code,
## R file is written to current working directory
Stangle(v1$file)

## A package can have more than one vignette (package grid has several):
vignette(package = "grid")
vignette("rotated")
## The same, but without searching for it:
vignette("rotated", package = "grid")

## End(Not run)
```

write.table *Data Output*

Description

write.table prints its required argument x (after converting it to a data frame if it is not one nor a matrix) to a file or connection.

Usage

```
write.table(x, file = "", append = FALSE, quote = TRUE, sep = " ",
            eol = "\n", na = "NA", dec = ".", row.names = TRUE,
            col.names = TRUE, qmethod = c("escape", "double"),
            fileEncoding = "")

write.csv(...)
write.csv2(...)
```

Arguments

x	the object to be written, preferably a matrix or data frame. If not, it is attempted to coerce x to a data frame.
file	either a character string naming a file or a connection open for writing. "" indicates output to the console.
append	logical. Only relevant if file is a character string. If TRUE, the output is appended to the file. If FALSE, any existing file of the name is destroyed.
quote	a logical value (TRUE or FALSE) or a numeric vector. If TRUE, any character or factor columns will be surrounded by double quotes. If a numeric vector, its elements are taken as the indices of columns to quote. In both cases, row and column names are quoted if they are written. If FALSE, nothing is quoted.
sep	the field separator string. Values within each row of x are separated by this string.
eol	the character(s) to print at the end of each line (row). For example, eol = "\r\n" will produce Windows' line endings on a Unix-alike OS, and eol = "\r" will produce files as expected by Excel:mac 2004.
na	the string to use for missing values in the data.
dec	the string to use for decimal points in numeric or complex columns: must be a single character.
row.names	either a logical value indicating whether the row names of x are to be written along with x, or a character vector of row names to be written.
col.names	either a logical value indicating whether the column names of x are to be written along with x, or a character vector of column names to be written. See the section on 'CSV files' for the meaning of col.names = NA.
qmethod	a character string specifying how to deal with embedded double quote characters when quoting strings. Must be one of "escape" (default for write.table), in which case the quote character is escaped in C style by a backslash, or "double" (default for write.csv and write.csv2), in which case it is doubled. You can specify just the initial letter.

`fileEncoding`	character string: if non-empty declares the encoding to be used on a file (not a connection) so the character data can be re-encoded as they are written. See `file`.
`...`	arguments to `write.table`: `append`, `col.names`, `sep`, `dec` and `qmethod` cannot be altered.

Details

If the table has no columns the rownames will be written only if `row.names = TRUE`, and *vice versa*.

Real and complex numbers are written to the maximal possible precision.

If a data frame has matrix-like columns these will be converted to multiple columns in the result (*via* `as.matrix`) and so a character `col.names` or a numeric `quote` should refer to the columns in the result, not the input. Such matrix-like columns are unquoted by default.

Any columns in a data frame which are lists or have a class (e.g., dates) will be converted by the appropriate `as.character` method: such columns are unquoted by default. On the other hand, any class information for a matrix is discarded and non-atomic (e.g., list) matrices are coerced to character.

Only columns which have been converted to character will be quoted if specified by `quote`.

The `dec` argument only applies to columns that are not subject to conversion to character because they have a class or are part of a matrix-like column (or matrix), in particular to columns protected by `I()`. Use `options("OutDec")` to control such conversions.

In almost all cases the conversion of numeric quantities is governed by the option `"scipen"` (see `options`), but with the internal equivalent of `digits = 15`. For finer control, use `format` to make a character matrix/data frame, and call `write.table` on that.

These functions check for a user interrupt every 1000 lines of output.

If `file` is a non-open connection, an attempt is made to open it and then close it after use.

To write a Unix-style file on Windows, use a binary connection e.g. `file = file("filename", "wb")`.

CSV files

By default there is no column name for a column of row names. If `col.names = NA` and `row.names = TRUE` a blank column name is added, which is the convention used for CSV files to be read by spreadsheets. Note that such CSV files can be read in by

```
read.csv(file = "<filename>", row.names = 1)
```

`write.csv` and `write.csv2` provide convenience wrappers for writing CSV files. They set `sep` and `dec` (see below), `qmethod = "double"`, and `col.names` to `NA` if `row.names = TRUE` (the default) and to `TRUE` otherwise.

`write.csv` uses `"."` for the decimal point and a comma for the separator.

`write.csv2` uses a comma for the decimal point and a semicolon for the separator, the Excel convention for CSV files in some Western European locales.

These wrappers are deliberately inflexible: they are designed to ensure that the correct conventions are used to write a valid file. Attempts to change `append`, `col.names`, `sep`, `dec` or `qmethod` are ignored, with a warning.

CSV files do not record an encoding, and this causes problems if they are not ASCII for many other applications. Windows Excel 2007/10 will open files (e.g., by the file association mechanism)

correctly if they are ASCII or UTF-16 (use `fileEncoding = "UTF-16LE"`) or perhaps in the current Windows codepage (e.g., `"CP1252"`), but the 'Text Import Wizard' (from the 'Data' tab) allows far more choice of encodings. Excel:mac 2004/8 can *import* only 'Macintosh' (which seems to mean Mac Roman), 'Windows' (perhaps Latin-1) and 'PC-8' files. OpenOffice 3.x asks for the character set when opening the file.

There is an IETF RFC4180 (http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4180) for CSV files, which mandates comma as the separator and CRLF line endings. `write.csv` writes compliant files on Windows: use `eol = "\r\n"` on other platforms.

Note

`write.table` can be slow for data frames with large numbers (hundreds or more) of columns: this is inevitable as each column could be of a different class and so must be handled separately. If they are all of the same class, consider using a matrix instead.

See Also

The 'R Data Import/Export' manual.

`read.table`, `write`.

`write.matrix` in package **MASS**.

Examples

```
## Not run:
## To write a CSV file for input to Excel one might use
x <- data.frame(a = I("a \" quote"), b = pi)
write.table(x, file = "foo.csv", sep = ",", col.names = NA,
            qmethod = "double")
## and to read this file back into R one needs
read.table("foo.csv", header = TRUE, sep = ",", row.names = 1)
## NB: you do need to specify a separator if qmethod = "double".

### Alternatively
write.csv(x, file = "foo.csv")
read.csv("foo.csv", row.names = 1)
## or without row names
write.csv(x, file = "foo.csv", row.names = FALSE)
read.csv("foo.csv")

## To write a file in Mac Roman for simple use in Mac Excel 2004/8
write.csv(x, file = "foo.csv", fileEncoding = "macroman")
## or for Windows Excel 2007/10
write.csv(x, file = "foo.csv", fileEncoding = "UTF-16LE")

## End(Not run)
```

---

zip *Create Zip archives*

Description

A wrapper for an external `zip` command to create zip archives.

Usage

```
zip(zipfile, files, flags = "-r9X", extras = "",
    zip = Sys.getenv("R_ZIPCMD", "zip"))
```

Arguments

`zipfile`	The pathname of the zip file: tilde expansion (see `path.expand`) will be performed.
`files`	A character vector of recorded filepaths to be included.
`flags`	A character string of flags to be passed to the command: see 'Details'.
`extras`	An optional character vector: see 'Details'.
`zip`	A character string specifying the external command to be used.

Details

On a Unix-alike, the default for `zip` will by default use the value of `R_ZIPCMD`, which is set in '`etc/Renviron`' if an `unzip` command was found during configuration. On Windows, the default relies on a `zip` program (for example that from Rtools) being in the path.

The default for `flags` is that appropriate for zipping up a directory tree in a portable way: see the system-specific help for the `zip` command for other possibilities.

Argument `extras` can be used to specify `-x` or `-i` followed by a list of filepaths to exclude or include.

Value

The status value returned by the external command, invisibly.

See Also

`unzip`, `unz`.

Part II

Chapter 15

The KernSmooth package

---

bkde *Compute a Binned Kernel Density Estimate*

Description

Returns x and y coordinates of the binned kernel density estimate of the probability density of the data.

Usage

```
bkde(x, kernel = "normal", canonical = FALSE, bandwidth,
     gridsize = 401L, range.x, truncate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector of observations from the distribution whose density is to be estimated. Missing values are not allowed.
bandwidth	the kernel bandwidth smoothing parameter. Larger values of bandwidth make smoother estimates, smaller values of bandwidth make less smooth estimates. The default is a bandwidth computed from the variance of x, specifically the 'oversmoothed bandwidth selector' of Wand and Jones (1995, page 61).
kernel	character string which determines the smoothing kernel. kernel can be: "normal" - the Gaussian density function (the default). "box" - a rectangular box. "epanech" - the centred beta(2,2) density. "biweight" - the centred beta(3,3) density. "triweight" - the centred beta(4,4) density. This can be abbreviated to any unique abbreviation.
canonical	logical flag: if TRUE, canonically scaled kernels are used.
gridsize	the number of equally spaced points at which to estimate the density.
range.x	vector containing the minimum and maximum values of x at which to compute the estimate. The default is the minimum and maximum data values, extended by the support of the kernel.
truncate	logical flag: if TRUE, data with x values outside the range specified by range.x are ignored.

Details

This is the binned approximation to the ordinary kernel density estimate. Linear binning is used to obtain the bin counts. For each x value in the sample, the kernel is centered on that x and the heights of the kernel at each datapoint are summed. This sum, after a normalization, is the corresponding y value in the output.

Value

a list containing the following components:

x	vector of sorted x values at which the estimate was computed.
y	vector of density estimates at the corresponding x.

Background

Density estimation is a smoothing operation. Inevitably there is a trade-off between bias in the estimate and the estimate's variability: large bandwidths will produce smooth estimates that may hide local features of the density; small bandwidths may introduce spurious bumps into the estimate.

References

Wand, M. P. and Jones, M. C. (1995). *Kernel Smoothing.* Chapman and Hall, London.

See Also

density, dpik, hist, ksmooth.

Examples

```
data(geyser, package="MASS")
x <- geyser$duration
est <- bkde(x, bandwidth=0.25)
plot(est, type="l")
```

---

bkde2D *Compute a 2D Binned Kernel Density Estimate*

Description

Returns the set of grid points in each coordinate direction, and the matrix of density estimates over the mesh induced by the grid points. The kernel is the standard bivariate normal density.

Usage

```
bkde2D(x, bandwidth, gridsize = c(51L, 51L), range.x, truncate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	a two-column numeric matrix containing the observations from the distribution whose density is to be estimated. Missing values are not allowed.
bandwidth	numeric vector oflength 2, containing the bandwidth to be used in each coordinate direction.
gridsize	vector containing the number of equally spaced points in each direction over which the density is to be estimated.
range.x	a list containing two vectors, where each vector contains the minimum and maximum values of x at which to compute the estimate for each direction. The default minimum in each direction is minimum data value minus 1.5 times the bandwidth for that direction. The default maximum is the maximum data value plus 1.5 times the bandwidth for that direction
truncate	logical flag: if TRUE, data with x values outside the range specified by range.x are ignored.

Value

a list containing the following components:

x1	vector of values of the grid points in the first coordinate direction at which the estimate was computed.
x2	vector of values of the grid points in the second coordinate direction at which the estimate was computed.
fhat	matrix of density estimates over the mesh induced by x1 and x2.

Details

This is the binned approximation to the 2D kernel density estimate. Linear binning is used to obtain the bin counts and the Fast Fourier Transform is used to perform the discrete convolutions. For each x1,x2 pair the bivariate Gaussian kernel is centered on that location and the heights of the kernel, scaled by the bandwidths, at each datapoint are summed. This sum, after a normalization, is the corresponding fhat value in the output.

References

Wand, M. P. (1994). Fast Computation of Multivariate Kernel Estimators. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics,* **3**, 433-445.

Wand, M. P. and Jones, M. C. (1995). *Kernel Smoothing.* Chapman and Hall, London.

See Also

bkde, density, hist.

Examples

```
data(geyser, package="MASS")
x <- cbind(geyser$duration, geyser$waiting)
est <- bkde2D(x, bandwidth=c(0.7, 7))
contour(est$x1, est$x2, est$fhat)
persp(est$fhat)
```

bkfe *Compute a Binned Kernel Functional Estimate*

Description

Returns an estimate of a binned approximation to the kernel estimate of the specified density functional. The kernel is the standard normal density.

Usage

```
bkfe(x, drv, bandwidth, gridsize = 401L, range.x, binned = FALSE,
     truncate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector of observations from the distribution whose density is to be estimated. Missing values are not allowed.
drv	order of derivative in the density functional. Must be a non-negative even integer.
bandwidth	the kernel bandwidth smoothing parameter. Must be supplied.
gridsize	the number of equally-spaced points over which binning is performed.
range.x	vector containing the minimum and maximum values of x at which to compute the estimate. The default is the minimum and maximum data values, extended by the support of the kernel.
binned	logical flag: if TRUE, then x and y are taken to be grid counts rather than raw data.
truncate	logical flag: if TRUE, data with x values outside the range specified by range.x are ignored.

Details

The density functional of order drv is the integral of the product of the density and its drvth derivative. The kernel estimates of such quantities are computed using a binned implementation, and the kernel is the standard normal density.

Value

the (scalar) estimated functional.

Background

Estimates of this type were proposed by Sheather and Jones (1991).

References

Sheather, S. J. and Jones, M. C. (1991). A reliable data-based bandwidth selection method for kernel density estimation. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, **53**, 683–690.

Wand, M. P. and Jones, M. C. (1995). *Kernel Smoothing.* Chapman and Hall, London.

Examples

```
data(geyser, package="MASS")
x <- geyser$duration
est <- bkfe(x, drv=4, bandwidth=0.3)
```

---

dpih *Select a Histogram Bin Width*

Description

Uses direct plug-in methodology to select the bin width of a histogram.

Usage

```
dpih(x, scalest = "minim", level = 2L, gridsize = 401L,
     range.x = range(x), truncate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector containing the sample on which the histogram is to be constructed.
scalest	estimate of scale. "stdev" - standard deviation is used. "iqr" - inter-quartile range divided by 1.349 is used. "minim" - minimum of "stdev" and "iqr" is used.
level	number of levels of functional estimation used in the plug-in rule.
gridsize	number of grid points used in the binned approximations to functional estimates.
range.x	range over which functional estimates are obtained. The default is the minimum and maximum data values.
truncate	if truncate is TRUE then observations outside of the interval specified by range.x are omitted. Otherwise, they are used to weight the extreme grid points.

Details

The direct plug-in approach, where unknown functionals that appear in expressions for the asymptotically optimal bin width and bandwidths are replaced by kernel estimates, is used. The normal distribution is used to provide an initial estimate.

Value

the selected bin width.

Background

This method for selecting the bin width of a histogram is described in Wand (1995). It is an extension of the normal scale rule of Scott (1979) and uses plug-in ideas from bandwidth selection for kernel density estimation (e.g. Sheather and Jones, 1991).

References

Scott, D. W. (1979). On optimal and data-based histograms. *Biometrika*, **66**, 605–610.

Sheather, S. J. and Jones, M. C. (1991). A reliable data-based bandwidth selection method for kernel density estimation. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, **53**, 683–690.

Wand, M. P. (1995). Data-based choice of histogram binwidth. *The American Statistician*, **51**, 59–64.

See Also

hist

Examples

```
data(geyser, package="MASS")
x <- geyser$duration
h <- dpih(x)
bins <- seq(min(x)-h, max(x)+h, by=h)
hist(x, breaks=bins)
```

---

dpik *Select a Bandwidth for Kernel Density Estimation*

Description

Use direct plug-in methodology to select the bandwidth of a kernel density estimate.

Usage

```
dpik(x, scalest = "minim", level = 2L, kernel = "normal",
     canonical = FALSE, gridsize = 401L, range.x = range(x),
     truncate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector containing the sample on which the kernel density estimate is to be constructed.
scalest	estimate of scale. "stdev" - standard deviation is used. "iqr" - inter-quartile range divided by 1.349 is used. "minim" - minimum of "stdev" and "iqr" is used.
level	number of levels of functional estimation used in the plug-in rule.
kernel	character string which determines the smoothing kernel. kernel can be: "normal" - the Gaussian density function (the default). "box" - a rectangular box. "epanech" - the centred beta(2,2) density. "biweight" - the centred beta(3,3) density. "triweight" - the centred beta(4,4) density. This can be abbreviated to any unique abbreviation.
canonical	logical flag: if TRUE, canonically scaled kernels are used
gridsize	the number of equally-spaced points over which binning is performed to obtain kernel functional approximation.

range.x	vector containing the minimum and maximum values of x at which to compute the estimate. The default is the minimum and maximum data values.
truncate	logical flag: if TRUE, data with x values outside the range specified by range.x are ignored.

Details

The direct plug-in approach, where unknown functionals that appear in expressions for the asymptotically optimal bandwidths are replaced by kernel estimates, is used. The normal distribution is used to provide an initial estimate.

Value

the selected bandwidth.

Background

This method for selecting the bandwidth of a kernel density estimate was proposed by Sheather and Jones (1991) and is described in Section 3.6 of Wand and Jones (1995).

References

Sheather, S. J. and Jones, M. C. (1991). A reliable data-based bandwidth selection method for kernel density estimation. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, **53**, 683–690.

Wand, M. P. and Jones, M. C. (1995). *Kernel Smoothing.* Chapman and Hall, London.

See Also

bkde, density, ksmooth

Examples

```
data(geyser, package="MASS")
x <- geyser$duration
h <- dpik(x)
est <- bkde(x, bandwidth=h)
plot(est,type="l")
```

---

dpill *Select a Bandwidth for Local Linear Regression*

Description

Use direct plug-in methodology to select the bandwidth of a local linear Gaussian kernel regression estimate, as described by Ruppert, Sheather and Wand (1995).

Usage

```
dpill(x, y, blockmax = 5, divisor = 20, trim = 0.01, proptrun = 0.05,
      gridsize = 401L, range.x, truncate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector of x data. Missing values are not accepted.
y	numeric vector of y data. This must be same length as x, and missing values are not accepted.
blockmax	the maximum number of blocks of the data for construction of an initial parametric estimate.
divisor	the value that the sample size is divided by to determine a lower limit on the number of blocks of the data for construction of an initial parametric estimate.
trim	the proportion of the sample trimmed from each end in the x direction before application of the plug-in methodology.
proptrun	the proportion of the range of x at each end truncated in the functional estimates.
gridsize	number of equally-spaced grid points over which the function is to be estimated.
range.x	vector containing the minimum and maximum values of x at which to compute the estimate. For density estimation the default is the minimum and maximum data values with 5% of the range added to each end. For regression estimation the default is the minimum and maximum data values.
truncate	logical flag: if TRUE, data with x values outside the range specified by range.x are ignored.

Details

The direct plug-in approach, where unknown functionals that appear in expressions for the asymptotically optimal bandwidths are replaced by kernel estimates, is used. The kernel is the standard normal density. Least squares quartic fits over blocks of data are used to obtain an initial estimate. Mallow's C_p is used to select the number of blocks.

Value

the selected bandwidth.

Warning

If there are severe irregularities (i.e. outliers, sparse regions) in the x values then the local polynomial smooths required for the bandwidth selection algorithm may become degenerate and the function will crash. Outliers in the y direction may lead to deterioration of the quality of the selected bandwidth.

References

Ruppert, D., Sheather, S. J. and Wand, M. P. (1995). An effective bandwidth selector for local least squares regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **90**, 1257–1270.

Wand, M. P. and Jones, M. C. (1995). *Kernel Smoothing.* Chapman and Hall, London.

See Also

ksmooth, locpoly.

Examples

```
data(geyser, package = "MASS")
x <- geyser$duration
y <- geyser$waiting
plot(x, y)
h <- dpill(x, y)
fit <- locpoly(x, y, bandwidth = h)
lines(fit)
```

---

locpoly *Estimate Functions Using Local Polynomials*

Description

Estimates a probability density function, regression function or their derivatives using local polynomials. A fast binned implementation over an equally-spaced grid is used.

Usage

```
locpoly(x, y, drv = 0L, degree, kernel = "normal",
        bandwidth, gridsize = 401L, bwdisc = 25,
        range.x, binned = FALSE, truncate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric vector of x data. Missing values are not accepted.
bandwidth	the kernel bandwidth smoothing parameter. It may be a single number or an array having length gridsize, representing a bandwidth that varies according to the location of estimation.
y	vector of y data. This must be same length as x, and missing values are not accepted.
drv	order of derivative to be estimated.
degree	degree of local polynomial used. Its value must be greater than or equal to the value of drv. The default value is of degree is drv + 1.
kernel	"normal" - the Gaussian density function. Currently ignored.
gridsize	number of equally-spaced grid points over which the function is to be estimated.
bwdisc	number of logarithmically-equally-spaced bandwidths on which bandwidth is discretised, to speed up computation.
range.x	vector containing the minimum and maximum values of x at which to compute the estimate.
binned	logical flag: if TRUE, then x and y are taken to be grid counts rather than raw data.
truncate	logical flag: if TRUE, data with x values outside the range specified by range.x are ignored.

Value

if y is specified, a local polynomial regression estimate of E[Y|X] (or its derivative) is computed. If y is missing, a local polynomial estimate of the density of x (or its derivative) is computed.

a list containing the following components:

x	vector of sorted x values at which the estimate was computed.
y	vector of smoothed estimates for either the density or the regression at the corresponding x.

Details

Local polynomial fitting with a kernel weight is used to estimate either a density, regression function or their derivatives. In the case of density estimation, the data are binned and the local fitting procedure is applied to the bin counts. In either case, binned approximations over an equally-spaced grid is used for fast computation. The bandwidth may be either scalar or a vector of length `gridsize`.

References

Wand, M. P. and Jones, M. C. (1995). *Kernel Smoothing.* Chapman and Hall, London.

See Also

bkde, density, dpill, ksmooth, loess, smooth, supsmu.

Examples

```
data(geyser, package = "MASS")
# local linear density estimate
x <- geyser$duration
est <- locpoly(x, bandwidth = 0.25)
plot(est, type = "l")

# local linear regression estimate
y <- geyser$waiting
plot(x, y)
fit <- locpoly(x, y, bandwidth = 0.25)
lines(fit)
```

Chapter 16

The MASS package

---

abbey *Determinations of Nickel Content*

Description

A numeric vector of 31 determinations of nickel content (ppm) in a Canadian syenite rock.

Usage

```
abbey
```

Source

S. Abbey (1988) *Geostandards Newsletter* **12**, 241.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

---

accdeaths *Accidental Deaths in the US 1973-1978*

Description

A regular time series giving the monthly totals of accidental deaths in the USA.

Usage

```
accdeaths
```

Details

The values for first six months of 1979 (p. 326) were `7798 7406 8363 8460 9217 9316`.

Source

P. J. Brockwell and R. A. Davis (1991) *Time Series: Theory and Methods.* Springer, New York.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

---

addterm *Try All One-Term Additions to a Model*

Description

Try fitting all models that differ from the current model by adding a single term from those supplied, maintaining marginality.

This function is generic; there exist methods for classes `lm` and `glm` and the default method will work for many other classes.

Usage

```
addterm(object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
addterm(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq"),
        k = 2, sorted = FALSE, trace = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class lm
addterm(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq", "F"),
        k = 2, sorted = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class glm
addterm(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq", "F"),
        k = 2, sorted = FALSE, trace = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object fitted by some model-fitting function.
`scope`	a formula specifying a maximal model which should include the current one. All additional terms in the maximal model with all marginal terms in the original model are tried.
`scale`	used in the definition of the AIC statistic for selecting the models, currently only for `lm`, `aov` and `glm` models. Specifying `scale` asserts that the residual standard error or dispersion is known.
`test`	should the results include a test statistic relative to the original model? The F test is only appropriate for `lm` and `aov` models, and perhaps for some over-dispersed `glm` models. The Chisq test can be an exact test (`lm` models with known scale) or a likelihood-ratio test depending on the method.
`k`	the multiple of the number of degrees of freedom used for the penalty. Only `k=2` gives the genuine AIC: `k = log(n)` is sometimes referred to as BIC or SBC.
`sorted`	should the results be sorted on the value of AIC?
`trace`	if `TRUE` additional information may be given on the fits as they are tried.
`...`	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The definition of AIC is only up to an additive constant: when appropriate (`lm` models with specified scale) the constant is taken to be that used in Mallows' Cp statistic and the results are labelled accordingly.

Value

A table of class `"anova"` containing at least columns for the change in degrees of freedom and AIC (or Cp) for the models. Some methods will give further information, for example sums of squares, deviances, log-likelihoods and test statistics.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`dropterm`, `stepAIC`

Examples

```
quine.hi <- aov(log(Days + 2.5) ~ .^4, quine)
quine.lo <- aov(log(Days+2.5) ~ 1, quine)
addterm(quine.lo, quine.hi, test="F")

house.glm0 <- glm(Freq ~ Infl*Type*Cont + Sat, family=poisson,
                  data=housing)
addterm(house.glm0, ~. + Sat:(Infl+Type+Cont), test="Chisq")
house.glm1 <- update(house.glm0, . ~ . + Sat*(Infl+Type+Cont))
addterm(house.glm1, ~. + Sat:(Infl+Type+Cont)^2, test = "Chisq")
```

`Aids2` *Australian AIDS Survival Data*

Description

Data on patients diagnosed with AIDS in Australia before 1 July 1991.

Usage

```
Aids2
```

Format

This data frame contains 2843 rows and the following columns:

`state` Grouped state of origin: `"NSW "`includes ACT and `"other"` is WA, SA, NT and TAS.

`sex` Sex of patient.

`diag` (Julian) date of diagnosis.

`death` (Julian) date of death or end of observation.

`status` `"A"` (alive) or `"D"` (dead) at end of observation.

`T.categ` Reported transmission category.

`age` Age (years) at diagnosis.

Note

This data set has been slightly jittered as a condition of its release, to ensure patient confidentiality.

Source

Dr P. J. Solomon and the Australian National Centre in HIV Epidemiology and Clinical Research.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`Animals` *Brain and Body Weights for 28 Species*

Description

Average brain and body weights for 28 species of land animals.

Usage

```
Animals
```

Format

`body` body weight in kg.

`brain` brain weight in g.

Note

The name `Animals` avoids conflicts with a system dataset `animals` in S-PLUS 4.5 and later.

Source

P. J. Rousseeuw and A. M. Leroy (1987) *Robust Regression and Outlier Detection.* Wiley, p. 57.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

anorexia *Anorexia Data on Weight Change*

Description

The anorexia data frame has 72 rows and 3 columns. Weight change data for young female anorexia patients.

Usage

```
anorexia
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Treat` Factor of three levels: `"Cont"` (control), `"CBT"` (Cognitive Behavioural treatment) and `"FT"` (family treatment).

`Prewt` Weight of patient before study period, in lbs.

`Postwt` Weight of patient after study period, in lbs.

Source

Hand, D. J., Daly, F., McConway, K., Lunn, D. and Ostrowski, E. eds (1993) *A Handbook of Small Data Sets.* Chapman & Hall, Data set 285 (p. 229)

(Note that the original source mistakenly says that weights are in kg.)

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

anova.negbin *Likelihood Ratio Tests for Negative Binomial GLMs*

Description

Method function to perform sequential likelihood ratio tests for Negative Binomial generalized linear models.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class negbin
anova(object, ..., test = "Chisq")
```

Arguments

object	Fitted model object of class "negbin", inheriting from classes "glm" and "lm", specifying a Negative Binomial fitted GLM. Typically the output of glm.nb().
...	Zero or more additional fitted model objects of class "negbin". They should form a nested sequence of models, but need not be specified in any particular order.
test	Argument to match the test argument of anova.glm. Ignored (with a warning if changed) if a sequence of two or more Negative Binomial fitted model objects is specified, but possibly used if only one object is specified.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function anova() for class "negbin". It can be invoked by calling anova(x) for an object x of the appropriate class, or directly by calling anova.negbin(x) regardless of the class of the object.

Note

If only one fitted model object is specified, a sequential analysis of deviance table is given for the fitted model. The theta parameter is kept fixed. If more than one fitted model object is specified they must all be of class "negbin" and likelihood ratio tests are done of each model within the next. In this case theta is assumed to have been re-estimated for each model.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

glm.nb, negative.binomial, summary.negbin

Examples

```
m1 <- glm.nb(Days ~ Eth*Age*Lrn*Sex, quine, link = log)
m2 <- update(m1, . ~ . - Eth:Age:Lrn:Sex)
anova(m2, m1)
anova(m2)
```

---

area *Adaptive Numerical Integration*

Description

Integrate a function of one variable over a finite range using a recursive adaptive method. This function is mainly for demonstration purposes.

Usage

```
area(f, a, b, ..., fa = f(a, ...), fb = f(b, ...),
     limit = 10, eps = 1e-05)
```

Arguments

f	The integrand as an S function object. The variable of integration must be the first argument.
a	Lower limit of integration.
b	Upper limit of integration.
...	Additional arguments needed by the integrand.
fa	Function value at the lower limit.
fb	Function value at the upper limit.
limit	Limit on the depth to which recursion is allowed to go.
eps	Error tolerance to control the process.

Details

The method divides the interval in two and compares the values given by Simpson's rule and the trapezium rule. If these are within eps of each other the Simpson's rule result is given, otherwise the process is applied separately to each half of the interval and the results added together.

Value

The integral from a to b of f(x).

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1994) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-Plus.* Springer. pp. 105–110.

Examples

```
area(sin, 0, pi)  # integrate the sin function from 0 to pi.
```

---

bacteria *Presence of Bacteria after Drug Treatments*

Description

Tests of the presence of the bacteria *H. influenzae* in children with otitis media in the Northern Territory of Australia.

Usage

```
bacteria
```

Format

This data frame has 220 rows and the following columns:

y presence or absence: a factor with levels `n` and `y`.

ap active/placebo: a factor with levels `a` and `p`.

hilo hi/low compliance: a factor with levels `hi` amd `lo`.

week numeric: week of test.

ID subject ID: a factor.

trt a factor with levels `placebo`, `drug` and `drug+`, a re-coding of `ap` and `hilo`.

Details

Dr A. Leach tested the effects of a drug on 50 children with a history of otitis media in the Northern Territory of Australia. The children were randomized to the drug or the a placebo, and also to receive active encouragement to comply with taking the drug.

The presence of *H. influenzae* was checked at weeks 0, 2, 4, 6 and 11: 30 of the checks were missing and are not included in this data frame.

Source

Dr Amanda Leach *via* Mr James McBroom.

References

Menzies School of Health Research 1999–2000 Annual Report. p.20. http://www.menzies.edu.au/icms_docs/172302_2000_Annual_report.pdf.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
contrasts(bacteria$trt) <- structure(contr.sdif(3),
     dimnames = list(NULL, c("drug", "encourage")))
## fixed effects analyses
summary(glm(y ~ trt * week, binomial, data = bacteria))
summary(glm(y ~ trt + week, binomial, data = bacteria))
summary(glm(y ~ trt + I(week > 2), binomial, data = bacteria))

# conditional random-effects analysis
library(survival)
bacteria$Time <- rep(1, nrow(bacteria))
coxph(Surv(Time, unclass(y)) ~ week + strata(ID),
      data = bacteria, method = "exact")
coxph(Surv(Time, unclass(y)) ~ factor(week) + strata(ID),
      data = bacteria, method = "exact")
coxph(Surv(Time, unclass(y)) ~ I(week > 2) + strata(ID),
      data = bacteria, method = "exact")

# PQL glmm analysis
library(nlme)
summary(glmmPQL(y ~ trt + I(week > 2), random = ~ 1 | ID,
                family = binomial, data = bacteria))
```

bandwidth.nrd *Bandwidth for density() via Normal Reference Distribution*

Description

A well-supported rule-of-thumb for choosing the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.

Usage

```
bandwidth.nrd(x)
```

Arguments

x	A data vector.

Value

A bandwidth on a scale suitable for the `width` argument of `density`.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Springer, equation (5.5) on page 130.

Examples

```
# The function is currently defined as
function(x)
{
    r <- quantile(x, c(0.25, 0.75))
    h <- (r[2] - r[1])/1.34
    4 * 1.06 * min(sqrt(var(x)), h) * length(x)^(-1/5)
}
```

bcv *Biased Cross-Validation for Bandwidth Selection*

Description

Uses biased cross-validation to select the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.

Usage

```
bcv(x, nb = 1000, lower, upper)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector
nb	number of bins to use.
lower, upper	Range over which to minimize. The default is almost always satisfactory.

Value

a bandwidth

References

Scott, D. W. (1992) *Multivariate Density Estimation: Theory, Practice, and Visualization.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

ucv, width.SJ, density

Examples

```
bcv(geyser$duration)
```

---

beav1 *Body Temperature Series of Beaver 1*

Description

Reynolds (1994) describes a small part of a study of the long-term temperature dynamics of beaver *Castor canadensis* in north-central Wisconsin. Body temperature was measured by telemetry every 10 minutes for four females, but data from a one period of less than a day for each of two animals is used there.

Usage

```
beav1
```

Format

The beav1 data frame has 114 rows and 4 columns. This data frame contains the following columns:

`day` Day of observation (in days since the beginning of 1990), December 12–13.

`time` Time of observation, in the form `0330` for 3.30am.

`temp` Measured body temperature in degrees Celsius.

`activ` Indicator of activity outside the retreat.

Note

The observation at 22:20 is missing.

Source

P. S. Reynolds (1994) Time-series analyses of beaver body temperatures. Chapter 11 of Lange, N., Ryan, L., Billard, L., Brillinger, D., Conquest, L. and Greenhouse, J. eds (1994) *Case Studies in Biometry.* New York: John Wiley and Sons.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

beav2

Examples

```
beav1 <- within(beav1,
              hours <- 24*(day-346) + trunc(time/100) + (time%%100)/60)
plot(beav1$hours, beav1$temp, type="l", xlab="time",
   ylab="temperature", main="Beaver 1")
usr <- par("usr"); usr[3:4] <- c(-0.2, 8); par(usr=usr)
lines(beav1$hours, beav1$activ, type="s", lty=2)
temp <- ts(c(beav1$temp[1:82], NA, beav1$temp[83:114]),
           start = 9.5, frequency = 6)
activ <- ts(c(beav1$activ[1:82], NA, beav1$activ[83:114]),
            start = 9.5, frequency = 6)

acf(temp[1:53])
acf(temp[1:53], type = "partial")
ar(temp[1:53])
act <- c(rep(0, 10), activ)
X <- cbind(1, act = act[11:125], act1 = act[10:124],
          act2 = act[9:123], act3 = act[8:122])
alpha <- 0.80
stemp <- as.vector(temp - alpha*lag(temp, -1))
sX <- X[-1, ] - alpha * X[-115,]
beav1.ls <- lm(stemp ~ -1 + sX, na.action = na.omit)
summary(beav1.ls, cor = FALSE)
rm(temp, activ)
```

---

beav2 *Body Temperature Series of Beaver 2*

Description

Reynolds (1994) describes a small part of a study of the long-term temperature dynamics of beaver *Castor canadensis* in north-central Wisconsin. Body temperature was measured by telemetry every 10 minutes for four females, but data from a one period of less than a day for each of two animals is used there.

Usage

```
beav2
```

Format

The beav2 data frame has 100 rows and 4 columns. This data frame contains the following columns:

day Day of observation (in days since the beginning of 1990), November 3–4.

time Time of observation, in the form 0330 for 3.30am.

`temp` Measured body temperature in degrees Celsius.

`activ` Indicator of activity outside the retreat.

Source

P. S. Reynolds (1994) Time-series analyses of beaver body temperatures. Chapter 11 of Lange, N., Ryan, L., Billard, L., Brillinger, D., Conquest, L. and Greenhouse, J. eds (1994) *Case Studies in Biometry.* New York: John Wiley and Sons.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`beav1`

Examples

```
attach(beav2)
beav2$hours <- 24*(day-307) + trunc(time/100) + (time%%100)/60
plot(beav2$hours, beav2$temp, type = "l", xlab = "time",
   ylab = "temperature", main = "Beaver 2")
usr <- par("usr"); usr[3:4] <- c(-0.2, 8); par(usr = usr)
lines(beav2$hours, beav2$activ, type = "s", lty = 2)

temp <- ts(temp, start = 8+2/3, frequency = 6)
activ <- ts(activ, start = 8+2/3, frequency = 6)
acf(temp[activ == 0]); acf(temp[activ == 1]) # also look at PACFs
ar(temp[activ == 0]); ar(temp[activ == 1])

arima(temp, order = c(1,0,0), xreg = activ)
dreg <- cbind(sin = sin(2*pi*beav2$hours/24), cos = cos(2*pi*beav2$hours/24))
arima(temp, order = c(1,0,0), xreg = cbind(active=activ, dreg))

library(nlme) # for gls and corAR1
beav2.gls <- gls(temp ~ activ, data = beav2, corr = corAR1(0.8),
                 method = "ML")
summary(beav2.gls)
summary(update(beav2.gls, subset = 6:100))
detach("beav2"); rm(temp, activ)
```

Belgian-phones *Belgium Phone Calls 1950-1973*

Description

A list object with the annual numbers of telephone calls, in Belgium. The components are:

`year` last two digits of the year.

`calls` number of telephone calls made (in millions of calls).

Usage

```
phones
```

Source

P. J. Rousseeuw and A. M. Leroy (1987) *Robust Regression & Outlier Detection.* Wiley.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

---

biopsy *Biopsy Data on Breast Cancer Patients*

Description

This breast cancer database was obtained from the University of Wisconsin Hospitals, Madison from Dr. William H. Wolberg. He assessed biopsies of breast tumours for 699 patients up to 15 July 1992; each of nine attributes has been scored on a scale of 1 to 10, and the outcome is also known. There are 699 rows and 11 columns.

Usage

```
biopsy
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`ID` sample code number (not unique).

`V1` clump thickness.

`V2` uniformity of cell size.

`V3` uniformity of cell shape.

`V4` marginal adhesion.

`V5` single epithelial cell size.

`V6` bare nuclei (16 values are missing).

`V7` bland chromatin.

`V8` normal nucleoli.

`V9` mitoses.

`class` `"benign"` or `"malignant"`.

Source

P. M. Murphy and D. W. Aha (1992). UCI Repository of machine learning databases. [Machine-readable data repository]. Irvine, CA: University of California, Department of Information and Computer Science.

O. L. Mangasarian and W. H. Wolberg (1990) Cancer diagnosis via linear programming. *SIAM News* **23**, pp 1 & 18.

William H. Wolberg and O.L. Mangasarian (1990) Multisurface method of pattern separation for medical diagnosis applied to breast cytology. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.* **87**, pp. 9193–9196.

O. L. Mangasarian, R. Setiono and W.H. Wolberg (1990) Pattern recognition via linear programming: Theory and application to medical diagnosis. In *Large-scale Numerical Optimization* eds Thomas F. Coleman and Yuying Li, SIAM Publications, Philadelphia, pp 22–30.

K. P. Bennett and O. L. Mangasarian (1992) Robust linear programming discrimination of two linearly inseparable sets. *Optimization Methods and Software* **1**, pp. 23–34 (Gordon & Breach Science Publishers).

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

---

birthwt *Risk Factors Associated with Low Infant Birth Weight*

Description

The `birthwt` data frame has 189 rows and 10 columns. The data were collected at Baystate Medical Center, Springfield, Mass during 1986.

Usage

```
birthwt
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`low` indicator of birth weight less than 2.5 kg.

`age` mother's age in years.

`lwt` mother's weight in pounds at last menstrual period.

`race` mother's race (`1` = white, `2` = black, `3` = other).

`smoke` smoking status during pregnancy.

`ptl` number of previous premature labours.

`ht` history of hypertension.

`ui` presence of uterine irritability.

`ftv` number of physician visits during the first trimester.

`bwt` birth weight in grams.

Source

Hosmer, D.W. and Lemeshow, S. (1989) *Applied Logistic Regression.* New York: Wiley

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
bwt <- with(birthwt, {
race <- factor(race, labels = c("white", "black", "other"))
ptd <- factor(ptl > 0)
ftv <- factor(ftv)
levels(ftv)[-(1:2)] <- "2+"
data.frame(low = factor(low), age, lwt, race, smoke = (smoke > 0),
           ptd, ht = (ht > 0), ui = (ui > 0), ftv)
})
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
glm(low ~ ., binomial, bwt)
```

Boston *Housing Values in Suburbs of Boston*

Description

The `Boston` data frame has 506 rows and 14 columns.

Usage

```
Boston
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`crim` per capita crime rate by town.

`zn` proportion of residential land zoned for lots over 25,000 sq.ft.

`indus` proportion of non-retail business acres per town.

`chas` Charles River dummy variable (= 1 if tract bounds river; 0 otherwise).

`nox` nitrogen oxides concentration (parts per 10 million).

`rm` average number of rooms per dwelling.

`age` proportion of owner-occupied units built prior to 1940.

`dis` weighted mean of distances to five Boston employment centres.

`rad` index of accessibility to radial highways.

`tax` full-value property-tax rate per \$10,000.

`ptratio` pupil-teacher ratio by town.

`black` $1000(Bk - 0.63)^2$ where Bk is the proportion of blacks by town.

`lstat` lower status of the population (percent).

`medv` median value of owner-occupied homes in \$1000s.

Source

Harrison, D. and Rubinfeld, D.L. (1978) Hedonic prices and the demand for clean air. *J. Environ. Economics and Management* **5**, 81–102.

Belsley D.A., Kuh, E. and Welsch, R.E. (1980) *Regression Diagnostics. Identifying Influential Data and Sources of Collinearity.* New York: Wiley.

---

boxcox *Box-Cox Transformations for Linear Models*

Description

Computes and optionally plots profile log-likelihoods for the parameter of the Box-Cox power transformation.

Usage

```
boxcox(object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
boxcox(object, lambda = seq(-2, 2, 1/10), plotit = TRUE,
       interp, eps = 1/50, xlab = expression(lambda),
       ylab = "log-Likelihood", ...)

## S3 method for class formula
boxcox(object, lambda = seq(-2, 2, 1/10), plotit = TRUE,
       interp, eps = 1/50, xlab = expression(lambda),
       ylab = "log-Likelihood", ...)

## S3 method for class lm
boxcox(object, lambda = seq(-2, 2, 1/10), plotit = TRUE,
       interp, eps = 1/50, xlab = expression(lambda),
       ylab = "log-Likelihood", ...)
```

Arguments

object	a formula or fitted model object. Currently only lm and aov objects are handled.
lambda	vector of values of lambda – default $(-2, 2)$ in steps of 0.1.
plotit	logical which controls whether the result should be plotted.
interp	logical which controls whether spline interpolation is used. Default to TRUE if plotting with lambda of length less than 100.
eps	Tolerance for lambda = 0; defaults to 0.02.
xlab	defaults to "lambda".
ylab	defaults to "log-Likelihood".
...	additional parameters to be used in the model fitting.

Value

A list of the lambda vector and the computed profile log-likelihood vector, invisibly if the result is plotted.

Side Effects

If `plotit = TRUE` plots log-likelihood *vs* `lambda` and indicates a 95% confidence interval about the maximum observed value of `lambda`. If `interp = TRUE`, spline interpolation is used to give a smoother plot.

References

Box, G. E. P. and Cox, D. R. (1964) An analysis of transformations (with discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society B*, **26**, 211–252.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
boxcox(Volume ~ log(Height) + log(Girth), data = trees,
       lambda = seq(-0.25, 0.25, length = 10))

boxcox(Days+1 ~ Eth*Sex*Age*Lrn, data = quine,
       lambda = seq(-0.05, 0.45, len = 20))
```

---

cabbages *Data from a cabbage field trial*

Description

The `cabbages` data set has 60 observations and 4 variables

Usage

```
cabbages
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Cult` Factor giving the cultivar of the cabbage, two levels: `c39` and `c52`.

`Date` Factor specifying one of three planting dates: `d16`, `d20` or `d21`.

`HeadWt` Weight of the cabbage head, presumably in kg.

`VitC` Ascorbic acid content, in undefined units.

Source

Rawlings, J. O. (1988) *Applied Regression Analysis: A Research Tool.* Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole. Example 8.4, page 219. (Rawlings cites the original source as the files of the late Dr Gertrude M Cox.)

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

caith *Colours of Eyes and Hair of People in Caithness*

Description

Data on the cross-classification of people in Caithness, Scotland, by eye and hair colour. The region of the UK is particularly interesting as there is a mixture of people of Nordic, Celtic and Anglo-Saxon origin.

Usage

```
caith
```

Format

A 4 by 5 table with rows the eye colours (blue, light, medium, dark) and columns the hair colours (fair, red, medium, dark, black).

Source

Fisher, R.A. (1940) The precision of discriminant functions. *Annals of Eugenics (London)* **10**, 422–429.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
corresp(caith)
dimnames(caith)[[2]] <- c("F", "R", "M", "D", "B")
par(mfcol=c(1,3))
plot(corresp(caith, nf=2)); title("symmetric")
plot(corresp(caith, nf=2), type="rows"); title("rows")
plot(corresp(caith, nf=2), type="col"); title("columns")
par(mfrow=c(1,1))
```

Cars93 *Data from 93 Cars on Sale in the USA in 1993*

Description

The Cars93 data frame has 93 rows and 27 columns.

Usage

```
Cars93
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Manufacturer` Manufacturer.

`Model` Model.

`Type` Type: a factor with levels `"Small"`, `"Sporty"`, `"Compact"`, `"Midsize"`, `"Large"` and `"Van"`.

`Min.Price` Minimum Price (in \$1,000): price for a basic version.

`Price` Midrange Price (in \$1,000): average of `Min.Price` and `Max.Price`.

`Max.Price` Maximum Price (in \$1,000): price for "a premium version".

`MPG.city` City MPG (miles per US gallon by EPA rating).

`MPG.highway` Highway MPG.

`AirBags` Air Bags standard. Factor: none, driver only, or driver & passenger.

`DriveTrain` Drive train type: rear wheel, front wheel or 4WD; (factor).

`Cylinders` Number of cylinders (missing for Mazda RX-7, which has a rotary engine).

`EngineSize` Engine size (litres).

`Horsepower` Horsepower (maximum).

`RPM` RPM (revs per minute at maximum horsepower).

`Rev.per.mile` Engine revolutions per mile (in highest gear).

`Man.trans.avail` Is a manual transmission version available? (yes or no, Factor).

`Fuel.tank.capacity` Fuel tank capacity (US gallons).

`Passengers` Passenger capacity (persons)

`Length` Length (inches).

`Wheelbase` Wheelbase (inches).

`Width` Width (inches).

`Turn.circle` U-turn space (feet).

`Rear.seat.room` Rear seat room (inches) (missing for 2-seater vehicles).

`Luggage.room` Luggage capacity (cubic feet) (missing for vans).

`Weight` Weight (pounds).

`Origin` Of non-USA or USA company origins? (factor).

`Make` Combination of Manufacturer and Model (character).

Details

Cars were selected at random from among 1993 passenger car models that were listed in both the *Consumer Reports* issue and the *PACE Buying Guide*. Pickup trucks and Sport/Utility vehicles were eliminated due to incomplete information in the *Consumer Reports* source. Duplicate models (e.g., Dodge Shadow and Plymouth Sundance) were listed at most once.

Further description can be found in Lock (1993).

Source

Lock, R. H. (1993) 1993 New Car Data. *Journal of Statistics Education* **1**(1). `http://www.amstat.org/publications/jse/v1n1/datasets.lock.html`.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS*. Third Edition. Springer.

cats *Anatomical Data from Domestic Cats*

Description

The heart and body weights of samples of male and female cats used for *digitalis* experiments. The cats were all adult, over 2 kg body weight.

Usage

```
cats
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Sex` sex: Factor with evels `"F"` and `"M"`.

`Bwt` body weight in kg.

`Hwt` heart weight in g.

Source

R. A. Fisher (1947) The analysis of covariance method for the relation between a part and the whole, *Biometrics* **3**, 65–68.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

cement *Heat Evolved by Setting Cements*

Description

Experiment on the heat evolved in the setting of each of 13 cements.

Usage

```
cement
```

Format

`x1, x2, x3, x4` Proportions (%) of active ingredients.

`y` heat evolved in cals/gm.

Details

Thirteen samples of Portland cement were set. For each sample, the percentages of the four main chemical ingredients was accurately measured. While the cement was setting the amount of heat evolved was also measured.

Source

Woods, H., Steinour, H.H. and Starke, H.R. (1932) Effect of composition of Portland cement on heat evolved during hardening. *Industrial Engineering and Chemistry*, **24**, 1207–1214.

References

Hald, A. (1957) *Statistical Theory with Engineering Applications.* Wiley, New York.

Examples

```
lm(y ~ x1 + x2 + x3 + x4, cement)
```

---

chem *Copper in Wholemeal Flour*

Description

A numeric vector of 24 determinations of copper in wholemeal flour, in parts per million.

Usage

```
chem
```

Source

Analytical Methods Committee (1989) Robust statistics – how not to reject outliers. *The Analyst* **114**, 1693–1702.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

---

con2tr *Convert Lists to Data Frames for use by lattice*

Description

Convert lists to data frames for use by lattice.

Usage

```
con2tr(obj)
```

Arguments

obj	A list of components x, y and z as passed to contour.

Details

con2tr repeats the x and y components suitably to match the vector z.

Value

A data frame suitable for passing to lattice (formerly trellis) functions.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`confint-MASS` *Confidence Intervals for Model Parameters*

Description

Computes confidence intervals for one or more parameters in a fitted model. Package **MASS** adds methods for `glm` and `nls` fits.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glm
confint(object, parm, level = 0.95, trace = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class nls
confint(object, parm, level = 0.95, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a fitted model object. Methods currently exist for the classes `"glm"`, `"nls"` and for profile objects from these classes.
`parm`	a specification of which parameters are to be given confidence intervals, either a vector of numbers or a vector of names. If missing, all parameters are considered.
`level`	the confidence level required.
`trace`	logical. Should profiling be traced?
`...`	additional argument(s) for methods.

Details

`confint` is a generic function in package `stats`.

These `confint` methods call the appropriate profile method, then find the confidence intervals by interpolation in the profile traces. If the profile object is already available it should be used as the main argument rather than the fitted model object itself.

Value

A matrix (or vector) with columns giving lower and upper confidence limits for each parameter. These will be labelled as (1 - level)/2 and 1 - (1 - level)/2 in % (by default 2.5% and 97.5%).

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

confint (the generic and "lm" method), profile

Examples

```
expn1 <- deriv(y ~ b0 + b1 * 2^(-x/th), c("b0", "b1", "th"),
               function(b0, b1, th, x) {})

wtloss.gr <- nls(Weight ~ expn1(b0, b1, th, Days),
   data = wtloss, start = c(b0=90, b1=95, th=120))

expn2 <- deriv(~b0 + b1*((w0 - b0)/b1)^(x/d0),
         c("b0","b1","d0"), function(b0, b1, d0, x, w0) {})

wtloss.init <- function(obj, w0) {
  p <- coef(obj)
  d0 <-  - log((w0 - p["b0"])/p["b1"])/log(2) * p["th"]
  c(p[c("b0", "b1")], d0 = as.vector(d0))
}

out <- NULL
w0s <- c(110, 100, 90)
for(w0 in w0s) {
    fm <- nls(Weight ~ expn2(b0, b1, d0, Days, w0),
              wtloss, start = wtloss.init(wtloss.gr, w0))
    out <- rbind(out, c(coef(fm)["d0"], confint(fm, "d0")))
  }
dimnames(out) <- list(paste(w0s, "kg:"),  c("d0", "low", "high"))
out

ldose <- rep(0:5, 2)
numdead <- c(1, 4, 9, 13, 18, 20, 0, 2, 6, 10, 12, 16)
sex <- factor(rep(c("M", "F"), c(6, 6)))
SF <- cbind(numdead, numalive = 20 - numdead)
budworm.lg0 <- glm(SF ~ sex + ldose - 1, family = binomial)
confint(budworm.lg0)
confint(budworm.lg0, "ldose")
```

---

contr.sdif *Successive Differences Contrast Coding*

Description

A coding for factors based on successive differences.

Usage

```
contr.sdif(n, contrasts = TRUE, sparse = FALSE)
```

Arguments

n	The number of levels required.
contrasts	logical: Should there be n - 1 columns orthogonal to the mean (the default) or n columns spanning the space?

`sparse` logical. If true and the result would be sparse (only true for `contrasts = FALSE`), return a sparse matrix.

Details

The contrast coefficients are chosen so that the coded coefficients in a one-way layout are the differences between the means of the second and first levels, the third and second levels, and so on. This makes most sense for ordered factors, but does not assume that the levels are equally spaced.

Value

If `contrasts` is `TRUE`, a matrix with `n` rows and `n - 1` columns, and the `n` by `n` identity matrix if `contrasts` is `FALSE`.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth Edition, Springer.

See Also

`contr.treatment`, `contr.sum`, `contr.helmert`.

Examples

```
(A <- contr.sdif(6))
zapsmall(ginv(A))
```

---

coop *Co-operative Trial in Analytical Chemistry*

Description

Seven specimens were sent to 6 laboratories in 3 separate batches and each analysed for Analyte. Each analysis was duplicated.

Usage

```
coop
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Lab` Laboratory, `L1`, `L2`, ..., `L6`.

`Spc` Specimen, `S1`, `S2`, ..., `S7`.

`Bat` Batch, `B1`, `B2`, `B3` (nested within `Spc/Lab`),

`Conc` Concentration of Analyte in g/kg.

Source

Analytical Methods Committee (1987) Recommendations for the conduct and interpretation of co-operative trials, *The Analyst* **112**, 679–686.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

chem, abbey.

`corresp` *Simple Correspondence Analysis*

Description

Find the principal canonical correlation and corresponding row- and column-scores from a correspondence analysis of a two-way contingency table.

Usage

```
corresp(x, ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
corresp(x, nf = 1, ...)

## S3 method for class factor
corresp(x, y, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
corresp(x, ...)

## S3 method for class xtabs
corresp(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
corresp(formula, data, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, formula`	The function is generic, accepting various forms of the principal argument for specifying a two-way frequency table. Currently accepted forms are matrices, data frames (coerced to frequency tables), objects of class `"xtabs"` and formulae of the form `~ F1 + F2`, where `F1` and `F2` are factors.
`nf`	The number of factors to be computed. Note that although 1 is the most usual, one school of thought takes the first two singular vectors for a sort of biplot.
`y`	a second factor for a cross-classification.
`data`	a data frame against which to preferentially resolve variables in the formula.
`...`	If the principal argument is a formula, a data frame may be specified as well from which variables in the formula are preferentially satisfied.

Details

See Venables & Ripley (2002). The `plot` method produces a graphical representation of the table if `nf=1`, with the *areas* of circles representing the numbers of points. If `nf` is two or more the `biplot` method is called, which plots the second and third columns of the matrices `A = Dr^(-1/2) U L` and `B = Dc^(-1/2) V L` where the singular value decomposition is `U L V`. Thus the x-axis is the canonical correlation times the row and column scores. Although this is called a biplot, it does *not* have any useful inner product relationship between the row and column scores. Think of this as an equally-scaled plot with two unrelated sets of labels. The origin is marked on the plot with a cross. (For other versions of this plot see the book.)

Value

An list object of class `"correspondence"` for which `print`, `plot` and `biplot` methods are supplied. The main components are the canonical correlation(s) and the row and column scores.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Gower, J. C. and Hand, D. J. (1996) *Biplots.* Chapman & Hall.

See Also

`svd`, `princomp`.

Examples

```
(ct <- corresp(~ Age + Eth, data = quine))
plot(ct)

corresp(caith)
biplot(corresp(caith, nf = 2))
```

`cov.rob` *Resistant Estimation of Multivariate Location and Scatter*

Description

Compute a multivariate location and scale estimate with a high breakdown point – this can be thought of as estimating the mean and covariance of the good part of the data. `cov.mve` and `cov.mcd` are compatibility wrappers.

Usage

```
cov.rob(x, cor = FALSE, quantile.used = floor((n + p + 1)/2),
        method = c("mve", "mcd", "classical"),
        nsamp = "best", seed)

cov.mve(...)
cov.mcd(...)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix or data frame.
cor	should the returned result include a correlation matrix?
quantile.used	the minimum number of the data points regarded as good points.
method	the method to be used – minimum volume ellipsoid, minimum covariance determinant or classical product-moment. Using cov.mve or cov.mcd forces mve or mcd respectively.
nsamp	the number of samples or "best" or "exact" or "sample". If "sample" the number chosen is min(5*p, 3000), taken from Rousseeuw and Hubert (1997). If "best" exhaustive enumeration is done up to 5000 samples: if "exact" exhaustive enumeration will be attempted however many samples are needed.
seed	the seed to be used for random sampling: see RNGkind. The current value of .Random.seed will be preserved if it is set.
...	arguments to cov.rob other than method.

Details

For method "mve", an approximate search is made of a subset of size quantile.used with an enclosing ellipsoid of smallest volume; in method "mcd" it is the volume of the Gaussian confidence ellipsoid, equivalently the determinant of the classical covariance matrix, that is minimized. The mean of the subset provides a first estimate of the location, and the rescaled covariance matrix a first estimate of scatter. The Mahalanobis distances of all the points from the location estimate for this covariance matrix are calculated, and those points within the 97.5% point under Gaussian assumptions are declared to be good. The final estimates are the mean and rescaled covariance of the good points.

The rescaling is by the appropriate percentile under Gaussian data; in addition the first covariance matrix has an *ad hoc* finite-sample correction given by Marazzi.

For method "mve" the search is made over ellipsoids determined by the covariance matrix of p of the data points. For method "mcd" an additional improvement step suggested by Rousseeuw and van Driessen (1999) is used, in which once a subset of size quantile.used is selected, an ellipsoid based on its covariance is tested (as this will have no larger a determinant, and may be smaller).

Value

A list with components

center	the final estimate of location.
cov	the final estimate of scatter.
cor	(only is cor = TRUE) the estimate of the correlation matrix.
sing	message giving number of singular samples out of total
crit	the value of the criterion on log scale. For MCD this is the determinant, and for MVE it is proportional to the volume.
best	the subset used. For MVE the best sample, for MCD the best set of size quantile.used.
n.obs	total number of observations.

References

P. J. Rousseeuw and A. M. Leroy (1987) *Robust Regression and Outlier Detection.* Wiley.

A. Marazzi (1993) *Algorithms, Routines and S Functions for Robust Statistics.* Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole.

P. J. Rousseeuw and B. C. van Zomeren (1990) Unmasking multivariate outliers and leverage points, *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **85**, 633–639.

P. J. Rousseeuw and K. van Driessen (1999) A fast algorithm for the minimum covariance determinant estimator. *Technometrics* **41**, 212–223.

P. Rousseeuw and M. Hubert (1997) Recent developments in PROGRESS. In *L1-Statistical Procedures and Related Topics* ed Y. Dodge, IMS Lecture Notes volume **31**, pp. 201–214.

See Also

lqs

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
cov.rob(stackloss)
cov.rob(stack.x, method = "mcd", nsamp = "exact")
```

---

cov.trob *Covariance Estimation for Multivariate t Distribution*

Description

Estimates a covariance or correlation matrix assuming the data came from a multivariate t distribution: this provides some degree of robustness to outlier without giving a high breakdown point.

Usage

```
cov.trob(x, wt = rep(1, n), cor = FALSE, center = TRUE, nu = 5,
         maxit = 25, tol = 0.01)
```

Arguments

x	data matrix. Missing values (NAs) are not allowed.
wt	A vector of weights for each case: these are treated as if the case i actually occurred wt[i] times.
cor	Flag to choose between returning the correlation (cor = TRUE) or covariance (cor = FALSE) matrix.
center	a logical value or a numeric vector providing the location about which the covariance is to be taken. If center = FALSE, no centering is done; if center = TRUE the MLE of the location vector is used.
nu	'degrees of freedom' for the multivariate t distribution. Must exceed 2 (so that the covariance matrix is finite).
maxit	Maximum number of iterations in fitting.
tol	Convergence tolerance for fitting.

Value

A list with the following components

`cov`	the fitted covariance matrix.
`center`	the estimated or specified location vector.
`wt`	the specified weights: only returned if the `wt` argument was given.
`n.obs`	the number of cases used in the fitting.
`cor`	the fitted correlation matrix: only returned if `cor = TRUE`.
`call`	The matched call.
`iter`	The number of iterations used.

References

J. T. Kent, D. E. Tyler and Y. Vardi (1994) A curious likelihood identity for the multivariate t-distribution. *Communications in Statistics—Simulation and Computation* **23**, 441–453.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS*. Third Edition. Springer.

See Also

`cov`, `cov.wt`, `cov.mve`

Examples

```
cov.trob(stackloss)
```

---

cpus *Performance of Computer CPUs*

Description

A relative performance measure and characteristics of 209 CPUs.

Usage

```
cpus
```

Format

The components are:

`name` manufacturer and model.

`syct` cycle time in nanoseconds.

`mmin` minimum main memory in kilobytes.

`mmax` maximum main memory in kilobytes.

`cach` cache size in kilobytes.

`chmin` minimum number of channels.

`chmax` maximum number of channels.

`perf` published performance on a benchmark mix relative to an IBM 370/158-3.

`estperf` estimated performance (by Ein-Dor & Feldmesser).

Source

P. Ein-Dor and J. Feldmesser (1987) Attributes of the performance of central processing units: a relative performance prediction model. *Comm. ACM.* **30**, 308–317.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`crabs` *Morphological Measurements on Leptograpsus Crabs*

Description

The `crabs` data frame has 200 rows and 8 columns, describing 5 morphological measurements on 50 crabs each of two colour forms and both sexes, of the species *Leptograpsus variegatus* collected at Fremantle, W. Australia.

Usage

```
crabs
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`sp species` - `"B"` or `"O"` for blue or orange.

`sex` as it says.

`index` index `1:50` within each of the four groups.

`FL` frontal lobe size (mm).

`RW` rear width (mm).

`CL` carapace length (mm).

`CW` carapace width (mm).

`BD` body depth (mm).

Source

Campbell, N.A. and Mahon, R.J. (1974) A multivariate study of variation in two species of rock crab of genus *Leptograpsus. Australian Journal of Zoology* **22**, 417–425.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Cushings *Diagnostic Tests on Patients with Cushing's Syndrome*

Description

Cushing's syndrome is a hypertensive disorder associated with over-secretion of cortisol by the adrenal gland. The observations are urinary excretion rates of two steroid metabolites.

Usage

```
Cushings
```

Format

The `Cushings` data frame has 27 rows and 3 columns:

`Tetrahydrocortisone` urinary excretion rate (mg/24hr) of Tetrahydrocortisone.

`Pregnanetriol` urinary excretion rate (mg/24hr) of Pregnanetriol.

`Type` underlying type of syndrome, coded `a` (adenoma) , `b` (bilateral hyperplasia), `c` (carcinoma) or `u` for unknown.

Source

J. Aitchison and I. R. Dunsmore (1975) *Statistical Prediction Analysis.* Cambridge University Press, Tables 11.1–3.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

DDT *DDT in Kale*

Description

A numeric vector of 15 measurements by different laboratories of the pesticide DDT in kale, in ppm (parts per million) using the multiple pesticide residue measurement.

Usage

```
DDT
```

Source

C. E. Finsterwalder (1976) Collaborative study of an extension of the Mills *et al* method for the determination of pesticide residues in food. *J. Off. Anal. Chem.* **59**, 169–171

R. G. Staudte and S. J. Sheather (1990) *Robust Estimation and Testing.* Wiley

deaths — *Monthly Deaths from Lung Diseases in the UK*

Description

A time series giving the monthly deaths from bronchitis, emphysema and asthma in the UK, 1974-1979, both sexes (deaths),

Usage

```
deaths
```

Source

P. J. Diggle (1990) *Time Series: A Biostatistical Introduction.* Oxford, table A.3

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

This the same as dataset ldeaths in 's **datasets** package.

denumerate — *Transform an Allowable Formula for 'loglm' into one for 'terms'*

Description

loglm allows dimension numbers to be used in place of names in the formula. denumerate modifies such a formula into one that terms can process.

Usage

```
denumerate(x)
```

Arguments

x	A formula conforming to the conventions of loglm, that is, it may allow dimension numbers to stand in for names when specifying a log-linear model.

Details

The model fitting function loglm fits log-linear models to frequency data using iterative proportional scaling. To specify the model the user must nominate the margins in the data that remain fixed under the log-linear model. It is convenient to allow the user to use dimension numbers, 1, 2, 3, ... for the first, second, third, ..., margins in a similar way to variable names. As the model formula has to be parsed by terms, which treats 1 in a special way and requires parseable variable names, these formulae have to be modified by giving genuine names for these margin, or dimension numbers. denumerate replaces these numbers with names of a special form, namely n is replaced by .vn. This allows terms to parse the formula in the usual way.

Value

A linear model formula like that presented, except that where dimension numbers, say n, have been used to specify fixed margins these are replaced by names of the form .vn which may be processed by terms.

See Also

renumerate

Examples

```
denumerate(~(1+2+3)^3 + a/b)
## which gives ~ (.v1 + .v2 + .v3)^3 + a/b
```

---

dose.p *Predict Doses for Binomial Assay model*

Description

Calibrate binomial assays, generalizing the calculation of LD50.

Usage

```
dose.p(obj, cf = 1:2, p = 0.5)
```

Arguments

obj	A fitted model object of class inheriting from "glm".
cf	The terms in the coefficient vector giving the intercept and coefficient of (log-)dose
p	Probabilities at which to predict the dose needed.

Value

An object of class "glm.dose" giving the prediction (attribute "p" and standard error (attribute "SE") at each response probability.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Springer.

Examples

```
ldose <- rep(0:5, 2)
numdead <- c(1, 4, 9, 13, 18, 20, 0, 2, 6, 10, 12, 16)
sex <- factor(rep(c("M", "F"), c(6, 6)))
SF <- cbind(numdead, numalive = 20 - numdead)
budworm.lg0 <- glm(SF ~ sex + ldose - 1, family = binomial)

dose.p(budworm.lg0, cf = c(1,3), p = 1:3/4)
dose.p(update(budworm.lg0, family = binomial(link=probit)),
       cf = c(1,3), p = 1:3/4)
```

drivers *Deaths of Car Drivers in Great Britain 1969-84*

Description

A regular time series giving the monthly totals of car drivers in Great Britain killed or seriously injured Jan 1969 to Dec 1984. Compulsory wearing of seat belts was introduced on 31 Jan 1983

Usage

```
drivers
```

Source

Harvey, A.C. (1989) *Forecasting, Structural Time Series Models and the Kalman Filter.* Cambridge University Press, pp. 519–523.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

dropterm *Try All One-Term Deletions from a Model*

Description

Try fitting all models that differ from the current model by dropping a single term, maintaining marginality.

This function is generic; there exist methods for classes `lm` and `glm` and the default method will work for many other classes.

Usage

```
dropterm (object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
dropterm(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq"),
         k = 2, sorted = FALSE, trace = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
dropterm(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq", "F"),
         k = 2, sorted = FALSE, ...)

## S3 method for class glm
dropterm(object, scope, scale = 0, test = c("none", "Chisq", "F"),
         k = 2, sorted = FALSE, trace = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	A object fitted by some model-fitting function.
scope	a formula giving terms which might be dropped. By default, the model formula. Only terms that can be dropped and maintain marginality are actually tried.
scale	used in the definition of the AIC statistic for selecting the models, currently only for lm, aov and glm models. Specifying scale asserts that the residual standard error or dispersion is known.
test	should the results include a test statistic relative to the original model? The F test is only appropriate for lm and aov models, and perhaps for some over-dispersed glm models. The Chisq test can be an exact test (lm models with known scale) or a likelihood-ratio test depending on the method.
k	the multiple of the number of degrees of freedom used for the penalty. Only k = 2 gives the genuine AIC: k = log(n) is sometimes referred to as BIC or SBC.
sorted	should the results be sorted on the value of AIC?
trace	if TRUE additional information may be given on the fits as they are tried.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The definition of AIC is only up to an additive constant: when appropriate (lm models with specified scale) the constant is taken to be that used in Mallows' Cp statistic and the results are labelled accordingly.

Value

A table of class "anova" containing at least columns for the change in degrees of freedom and AIC (or Cp) for the models. Some methods will give further information, for example sums of squares, deviances, log-likelihoods and test statistics.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

addterm, stepAIC

Examples

```
quine.hi <- aov(log(Days + 2.5) ~ .^4, quine)
quine.nxt <- update(quine.hi, . ~ . - Eth:Sex:Age:Lrn)
dropterm(quine.nxt, test=  "F")
quine.stp <- stepAIC(quine.nxt,
    scope = list(upper = ~Eth*Sex*Age*Lrn, lower = ~1),
    trace = FALSE)
dropterm(quine.stp, test = "F")
quine.3 <- update(quine.stp, . ~ . - Eth:Age:Lrn)
dropterm(quine.3, test = "F")
quine.4 <- update(quine.3, . ~ . - Eth:Age)
dropterm(quine.4, test = "F")
quine.5 <- update(quine.4, . ~ . - Age:Lrn)
```

```
dropterm(quine.5, test = "F")

house.glm0 <- glm(Freq ~ Infl*Type*Cont + Sat, family=poisson,
                  data = housing)
house.glm1 <- update(house.glm0, . ~ . + Sat*(Infl+Type+Cont))
dropterm(house.glm1, test = "Chisq")
```

`eagles` *Foraging Ecology of Bald Eagles*

Description

Knight and Skagen collected during a field study on the foraging behaviour of wintering Bald Eagles in Washington State, USA data concerning 160 attempts by one (pirating) Bald Eagle to steal a chum salmon from another (feeding) Bald Eagle.

Usage

```
eagles
```

Format

The `eagles` data frame has 8 rows and 5 columns.

- `y` Number of successful attempts.
- `n` Total number of attempts.
- `P` Size of pirating eagle (`L` = large, `S` = small).
- `A` Age of pirating eagle (`I` = immature, `A` = adult).
- `V` Size of victim eagle (`L` = large, `S` = small).

Source

Knight, R. L. and Skagen, S. K. (1988) Agonistic asymmetries and the foraging ecology of Bald Eagles. *Ecology* **69**, 1188–1194.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

Examples

```
eagles.glm <- glm(cbind(y, n - y) ~ P*A + V, data = eagles,
                  family = binomial)
dropterm(eagles.glm)
prof <- profile(eagles.glm)
plot(prof)
pairs(prof)
```

epil *Seizure Counts for Epileptics*

Description

Thall and Vail (1990) give a data set on two-week seizure counts for 59 epileptics. The number of seizures was recorded for a baseline period of 8 weeks, and then patients were randomly assigned to a treatment group or a control group. Counts were then recorded for four successive two-week periods. The subject's age is the only covariate.

Usage

```
epil
```

Format

This data frame has 236 rows and the following 9 columns:

`y` the count for the 2-week period.

`trt` treatment, `"placebo"` or `"progabide"`.

`base` the counts in the baseline 8-week period.

`age` subject's age, in years.

`V4` `0/1` indicator variable of period 4.

`subject` subject number, 1 to 59.

`period` period, 1 to 4.

`lbase` log-counts for the baseline period, centred to have zero mean.

`lage` log-ages, centred to have zero mean.

Source

Thall, P. F. and Vail, S. C. (1990) Some covariance models for longitudinal count data with over-dispersion. *Biometrics* **46**, 657–671.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth Edition. Springer.

Examples

```
summary(glm(y ~ lbase*trt + lage + V4, family = poisson,
            data = epil), cor = FALSE)
epil2 <- epil[epil$period == 1, ]
epil2["period"] <- rep(0, 59); epil2["y"] <- epil2["base"]
epil["time"] <- 1; epil2["time"] <- 4
epil2 <- rbind(epil, epil2)
epil2$pred <- unclass(epil2$trt) * (epil2$period > 0)
epil2$subject <- factor(epil2$subject)
epil3 <- aggregate(epil2, list(epil2$subject, epil2$period > 0),
   function(x) if(is.numeric(x)) sum(x) else x[1])
```

```
epil3$pred <- factor(epil3$pred,
   labels = c("base", "placebo", "drug"))

contrasts(epil3$pred) <- structure(contr.sdif(3),
    dimnames = list(NULL, c("placebo-base", "drug-placebo")))
summary(glm(y ~ pred + factor(subject) + offset(log(time)),
            family = poisson, data = epil3), cor = FALSE)

summary(glmmPQL(y ~ lbase*trt + lage + V4,
                random = ~ 1 | subject,
                family = poisson, data = epil))
summary(glmmPQL(y ~ pred, random = ~1 | subject,
                family = poisson, data = epil3))
```

`eqscplot` *Plots with Geometrically Equal Scales*

Description

Version of a scatterplot with scales chosen to be equal on both axes, that is 1cm represents the same units on each

Usage

```
eqscplot(x, y, ratio = 1, tol = 0.04, uin, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	vector of x values, or a 2-column matrix, or a list with components `x` and `y`
`y`	vector of y values
`ratio`	desired ratio of units on the axes. Units on the y axis are drawn at `ratio` times the size of units on the x axis. Ignored if `uin` is specified and of length 2.
`tol`	proportion of white space at the margins of plot
`uin`	desired values for the units-per-inch parameter. If of length 1, the desired units per inch on the x axis.
`...`	further arguments for `plot` and graphical parameters. Note that `par(xaxs="i", yaxs="i")` is enforced, and `xlim` and `ylim` will be adjusted accordingly.

Details

Limits for the x and y axes are chosen so that they include the data. One of the sets of limits is then stretched from the midpoint to make the units in the ratio given by `ratio`. Finally both are stretched by `1 + tol` to move points away from the axes, and the points plotted.

Value

invisibly, the values of `uin` used for the plot.

Side Effects

performs the plot.

Note

Arguments `ratio` and `uin` were suggested by Bill Dunlap.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`plot`, `par`

`farms` *Ecological Factors in Farm Management*

Description

The `farms` data frame has 20 rows and 4 columns. The rows are farms on the Dutch island of Terschelling and the columns are factors describing the management of grassland.

Usage

```
farms
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Mois` Five levels of soil moisture – level 3 does not occur at these 20 farms.

`Manag` Grassland management type (`SF` = standard, `BF` = biological, `HF` = hobby farming, `NM` = nature conservation).

`Use` Grassland use (`U1` = hay production, `U2` = intermediate, `U3` = grazing).

`Manure` Manure usage – classes `C0` to `C4`.

Source

J.C. Gower and D.J. Hand (1996) *Biplots*. Chapman & Hall, Table 4.6.

Quoted as from:
R.H.G. Jongman, C.J.F. ter Braak and O.F.R. van Tongeren (1987) *Data Analysis in Community and Landscape Ecology.* PUDOC, Wageningen.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
farms.mca <- mca(farms, abbrev = TRUE)  # Use levels as names
eqscplot(farms.mca$cs, type = "n")
text(farms.mca$rs, cex = 0.7)
text(farms.mca$cs, labels = dimnames(farms.mca$cs)[[1]], cex = 0.7)
```

fgl *Measurements of Forensic Glass Fragments*

Description

The fgl data frame has 214 rows and 10 columns. It was collected by B. German on fragments of glass collected in forensic work.

Usage

```
fgl
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

RI refractive index; more precisely the refractive index is 1.518xxxx.
The next 8 measurements are percentages by weight of oxides.

Na sodium.

Mg manganese.

Al aluminium.

Si silicon.

K potassium.

Ca calcium.

Ba barium.

Fe iron.

type The fragments were originally classed into seven types, one of which was absent in this dataset. The categories which occur are window float glass (WinF: 70), window non-float glass (WinNF: 76), vehicle window glass (Veh: 17), containers (Con: 13), tableware (Tabl: 9) and vehicle headlamps (Head: 29).

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

fitdistr *Maximum-likelihood Fitting of Univariate Distributions*

Description

Maximum-likelihood fitting of univariate distributions, allowing parameters to be held fixed if desired.

Usage

```
fitdistr(x, densfun, start, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector of length at least one containing only finite values.
densfun	Either a character string or a function returning a density evaluated at its first argument. Distributions "beta", "cauchy", "chi-squared", "exponential", "f", "gamma", "geometric", "log-normal", "lognormal", "logistic", "negative binomial", "normal", "Poisson", "t" and "weibull" are recognised, case being ignored.
start	A named list giving the parameters to be optimized with initial values. This can be omitted for some of the named distributions and must be for others (see Details).
...	Additional parameters, either for densfun or for optim. In particular, it can be used to specify bounds via lower or upper or both. If arguments of densfun (or the density function corresponding to a character-string specification) are included they will be held fixed.

Details

For the Normal, log-Normal, geometric, exponential and Poisson distributions the closed-form MLEs (and exact standard errors) are used, and start should not be supplied.

For all other distributions, direct optimization of the log-likelihood is performed using optim. The estimated standard errors are taken from the observed information matrix, calculated by a numerical approximation. For one-dimensional problems the Nelder-Mead method is used and for multi-dimensional problems the BFGS method, unless arguments named lower or upper are supplied (when L-BFGS-B is used) or method is supplied explicitly.

For the "t" named distribution the density is taken to be the location-scale family with location m and scale s.

For the following named distributions, reasonable starting values will be computed if start is omitted or only partially specified: "cauchy", "gamma", "logistic", "negative binomial" (parametrized by mu and size), "t" and "weibull". Note that these starting values may not be good enough if the fit is poor: in particular they are not resistant to outliers unless the fitted distribution is long-tailed.

There are print, coef, vcov and logLik methods for class "fitdistr".

Value

An object of class "fitdistr", a list with four components,

estimate	the parameter estimates,
sd	the estimated standard errors,
vcov	the estimated variance-covariance matrix, and
loglik	the log-likelihood.

Note

Numerical optimization cannot work miracles: please note the comments in optim on scaling data. If the fitted parameters are far away from one, consider re-fitting specifying the control parameter parscale.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
## avoid spurious accuracy
op <- options(digits = 3)
set.seed(123)
x <- rgamma(100, shape = 5, rate = 0.1)
fitdistr(x, "gamma")
## now do this directly with more control.
fitdistr(x, dgamma, list(shape = 1, rate = 0.1), lower = 0.001)

set.seed(123)
x2 <- rt(250, df = 9)
fitdistr(x2, "t", df = 9)
## allow df to vary: not a very good idea!
fitdistr(x2, "t")
## now do fixed-df fit directly with more control.
mydt <- function(x, m, s, df) dt((x-m)/s, df)/s
fitdistr(x2, mydt, list(m = 0, s = 1), df = 9, lower = c(-Inf, 0))

set.seed(123)
x3 <- rweibull(100, shape = 4, scale = 100)
fitdistr(x3, "weibull")

set.seed(123)
x4 <- rnegbin(500, mu = 5, theta = 4)
fitdistr(x4, "Negative Binomial")
options(op)
```

---

forbes *Forbes' Data on Boiling Points in the Alps*

Description

A data frame with 17 observations on boiling point of water and barometric pressure in inches of mercury.

Usage

```
forbes
```

Format

`bp` boiling point (degrees Farenheit).

`pres` barometric pressure in inches of mercury.

Source

A. C. Atkinson (1985) *Plots, Transformations and Regression.* Oxford.

S. Weisberg (1980) *Applied Linear Regression.* Wiley.

`fractions` *Rational Approximation*

Description

Find rational approximations to the components of a real numeric object using a standard continued fraction method.

Usage

```
fractions(x, cycles = 10, max.denominator = 2000, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	Any object of mode numeric. Missing values are now allowed.
`cycles`	The maximum number of steps to be used in the continued fraction approximation process.
`max.denominator`	An early termination criterion. If any partial denominator exceeds `max.denominator` the continued fraction stops at that point.
`...`	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Each component is first expanded in a continued fraction of the form

```
x = floor(x) + 1/(p1 + 1/(p2 + ...)))
```

where `p1`, `p2`, `...`are positive integers, terminating either at `cycles` terms or when a `pj > max.denominator`. The continued fraction is then re-arranged to retrieve the numerator and denominator as integers.

The numerators and denominators are then combined into a character vector that becomes the `"fracs"` attribute and used in printed representations.

Arithmetic operations on `"fractions"` objects have full floating point accuracy, but the character representation printed out may not.

Value

An object of class `"fractions"`. A structure with `.Data` component the same as the input numeric `x`, but with the rational approximations held as a character vector attribute, `"fracs"`. Arithmetic operations on `"fractions"` objects are possible.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth Edition. Springer.

See Also

`rational`

Examples

```
X <- matrix(runif(25), 5, 5)
zapsmall(solve(X, X/5)) # print near-zeroes as zero
fractions(solve(X, X/5))
fractions(solve(X, X/5)) + 1
```

GAGurine *Level of GAG in Urine of Children*

Description

Data were collected on the concentration of a chemical GAG in the urine of 314 children aged from zero to seventeen years. The aim of the study was to produce a chart to help a paediatrican to assess if a child's GAG concentration is 'normal'.

Usage

```
GAGurine
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Age` age of child in years.

`GAG` concentration of GAG (the units have been lost).

Source

Mrs Susan Prosser, Paediatrics Department, University of Oxford, via Department of Statistics Consulting Service.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

---

galaxies *Velocities for 82 Galaxies*

Description

A numeric vector of velocities in km/sec of 82 galaxies from 6 well-separated conic sections of an `unfilled` survey of the Corona Borealis region. Multimodality in such surveys is evidence for voids and superclusters in the far universe.

Usage

```
galaxies
```

Note

There is an 83rd measurement of 5607 km/sec in the Postman *et al.* paper which is omitted in Roeder (1990) and from the dataset here.

There is also a typo: this dataset has 78th observation 26690 which should be 26960.

Source

Roeder, K. (1990) Density estimation with confidence sets exemplified by superclusters and voids in galaxies. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **85**, 617–624.

Postman, M., Huchra, J. P. and Geller, M. J. (1986) Probes of large-scale structures in the Corona Borealis region. *Astronomical Journal* **92**, 1238–1247.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
gal <- galaxies/1000
c(width.SJ(gal, method = "dpi"), width.SJ(gal))
plot(x = c(0, 40), y = c(0, 0.3), type = "n", bty = "l",
     xlab = "velocity of galaxy (1000km/s)", ylab = "density")
rug(gal)
lines(density(gal, width = 3.25, n = 200), lty = 1)
lines(density(gal, width = 2.56, n = 200), lty = 3)
```

---

gamma.dispersion *Calculate the MLE of the Gamma Dispersion Parameter in a GLM Fit*

Description

A front end to `gamma.shape` for convenience. Finds the reciprocal of the estimate of the shape parameter only.

Usage

```
gamma.dispersion(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	Fitted model object giving the gamma fit.
`...`	Additional arguments passed on to `gamma.shape`.

Value

The MLE of the dispersion parameter of the gamma distribution.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

gamma.shape.glm, including the example on its help page.

---

gamma.shape *Estimate the Shape Parameter of the Gamma Distribution in a GLM Fit*

Description

Find the maximum likelihood estimate of the shape parameter of the gamma distribution after fitting a Gamma generalized linear model.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glm
gamma.shape(object, it.lim = 10,
            eps.max = .Machine$double.eps^0.25, verbose = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	Fitted model object from a Gamma family or quasi family with variance = "mu^2".
it.lim	Upper limit on the number of iterations.
eps.max	Maximum discrepancy between approximations for the iteration process to continue.
verbose	If TRUE, causes successive iterations to be printed out. The initial estimate is taken from the deviance.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

A glm fit for a Gamma family correctly calculates the maximum likelihood estimate of the mean parameters but provides only a crude estimate of the dispersion parameter. This function takes the results of the glm fit and solves the maximum likelihood equation for the reciprocal of the dispersion parameter, which is usually called the shape (or exponent) parameter.

Value

List of two components

alpha	the maximum likelihood estimate
SE	the approximate standard error, the square-root of the reciprocal of the observed information.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

gamma.dispersion

Examples

```
clotting <- data.frame(
    u = c(5,10,15,20,30,40,60,80,100),
    lot1 = c(118,58,42,35,27,25,21,19,18),
    lot2 = c(69,35,26,21,18,16,13,12,12))
clot1 <- glm(lot1 ~ log(u), data = clotting, family = Gamma)
gamma.shape(clot1)

gm <- glm(Days + 0.1 ~ Age*Eth*Sex*Lrn,
          quasi(link=log, variance="mu^2"), quine,
          start = c(3, rep(0,31)))
gamma.shape(gm, verbose = TRUE)
summary(gm, dispersion = gamma.dispersion(gm))  # better summary
```

---

gehan *Remission Times of Leukaemia Patients*

Description

A data frame from a trial of 42 leukaemia patients. Some were treated with the drug *6-mercaptopurine* and the rest are controls. The trial was designed as matched pairs, both withdrawn from the trial when either came out of remission.

Usage

```
gehan
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`pair` label for pair.

`time` remission time in weeks.

`cens` censoring, 0/1.

`treat` treatment, control or 6-MP.

Source

Cox, D. R. and Oakes, D. (1984) *Analysis of Survival Data.* Chapman & Hall, p. 7. Taken from

Gehan, E.A. (1965) A generalized Wilcoxon test for comparing arbitrarily single-censored samples. *Biometrika* **52**, 203–233.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
library(survival)
gehan.surv <- survfit(Surv(time, cens) ~ treat, data = gehan,
     conf.type = "log-log")
summary(gehan.surv)
survreg(Surv(time, cens) ~ factor(pair) + treat, gehan, dist = "exponential")
summary(survreg(Surv(time, cens) ~ treat, gehan, dist = "exponential"))
summary(survreg(Surv(time, cens) ~ treat, gehan))
gehan.cox <- coxph(Surv(time, cens) ~ treat, gehan)
summary(gehan.cox)
```

---

genotype *Rat Genotype Data*

Description

Data from a foster feeding experiment with rat mothers and litters of four different genotypes: `A`, `B`, `I` and `J`. Rat litters were separated from their natural mothers at birth and given to foster mothers to rear.

Usage

```
genotype
```

Format

The data frame has the following components:

`Litter` genotype of the litter.

`Mother` genotype of the foster mother.

`Wt` Litter average weight gain of the litter, in grams at age 28 days. (The source states that the within-litter variability is negligible.)

Source

Scheffe, H. (1959) *The Analysis of Variance* Wiley p. 140.

Bailey, D. W. (1953) *The Inheritance of Maternal Influences on the Growth of the Rat.* Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, University of California. Table B of the Appendix.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

geyser — *Old Faithful Geyser Data*

Description

A version of the eruptions data from the 'Old Faithful' geyser in Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming. This version comes from Azzalini and Bowman (1990) and is of continuous measurement from August 1 to August 15, 1985.

Some nocturnal duration measurements were coded as 2, 3 or 4 minutes, having originally been described as 'short', 'medium' or 'long'.

Usage

```
geyser
```

Format

A data frame with 299 observations on 2 variables.

`duration`	numeric	Eruption time in mins
`waiting`	numeric	Waiting time for this eruption

Note

The `waiting` time was incorrectly described as the time to the next eruption in the original files, and corrected for **MASS** version 7.3-30.

References

Azzalini, A. and Bowman, A. W. (1990) A look at some data on the Old Faithful geyser. *Applied Statistics* **39**, 357–365.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`faithful`.

CRAN package **sm**.

gilgais — *Line Transect of Soil in Gilgai Territory*

Description

This dataset was collected on a line transect survey in gilgai territory in New South Wales, Australia. Gilgais are natural gentle depressions in otherwise flat land, and sometimes seem to be regularly distributed. The data collection was stimulated by the question: are these patterns reflected in soil properties? At each of 365 sampling locations on a linear grid of 4 meters spacing, samples were taken at depths 0-10 cm, 30-40 cm and 80-90 cm below the surface. pH, electrical conductivity and chloride content were measured on a 1:5 soil:water extract from each sample.

Usage

```
gilgais
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`pH00` pH at depth 0–10 cm.

`pH30` pH at depth 30–40 cm.

`pH80` pH at depth 80–90 cm.

`e00` electrical conductivity in mS/cm (0–10 cm).

`e30` electrical conductivity in mS/cm (30–40 cm).

`e80` electrical conductivity in mS/cm (80–90 cm).

`c00` chloride content in ppm (0–10 cm).

`c30` chloride content in ppm (30–40 cm).

`c80` chloride content in ppm (80–90 cm).

Source

Webster, R. (1977) Spectral analysis of gilgai soil. *Australian Journal of Soil Research* **15**, 191–204.

Laslett, G. M. (1989) Kriging and splines: An empirical comparison of their predictive performance in some applications (with discussion). *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **89**, 319–409

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

---

ginv *Generalized Inverse of a Matrix*

Description

Calculates the Moore-Penrose generalized inverse of a matrix `X`.

Usage

```
ginv(X, tol = sqrt(.Machine$double.eps))
```

Arguments

`X`	Matrix for which the Moore-Penrose inverse is required.
`tol`	A relative tolerance to detect zero singular values.

Value

A MP generalized inverse matrix for `X`.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS*. Third Edition. Springer. p.100.

See Also

`solve`, `svd`, `eigen`

Examples

```
## Not run:
# The function is currently defined as
function(X, tol = sqrt(.Machine$double.eps))
{
## Generalized Inverse of a Matrix
  dnx <- dimnames(X)
  if(is.null(dnx)) dnx <- vector("list", 2)
  s <- svd(X)
  nz <- s$d > tol * s$d[1]
  structure(
    if(any(nz)) s$v[, nz] %*% (t(s$u[, nz])/s$d[nz]) else X,
    dimnames = dnx[2:1])
}

## End(Not run)
```

---

glm.convert *Change a Negative Binomial fit to a GLM fit*

Description

This function modifies an output object from `glm.nb()` to one that looks like the output from `glm()` with a negative binomial family. This allows it to be updated keeping the theta parameter fixed.

Usage

```
glm.convert(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object of class `"negbin"`, typically the output from `glm.nb()`.

Details

Convenience function needed to effect some low level changes to the structure of the fitted model object.

Value

An object of class `"glm"` with negative binomial family. The theta parameter is then fixed at its present estimate.

See Also

glm.nb, negative.binomial, glm

Examples

```
quine.nb1 <- glm.nb(Days ~ Sex/(Age + Eth*Lrn), data = quine)
quine.nbA <- glm.convert(quine.nb1)
quine.nbB <- update(quine.nb1, . ~ . + Sex:Age:Lrn)
anova(quine.nbA, quine.nbB)
```

---

glm.nb *Fit a Negative Binomial Generalized Linear Model*

Description

A modification of the system function glm() to include estimation of the additional parameter, theta, for a Negative Binomial generalized linear model.

Usage

```
glm.nb(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
       start = NULL, etastart, mustart,
       control = glm.control(...), method = "glm.fit",
       model = TRUE, x = FALSE, y = TRUE, contrasts = NULL, ...,
       init.theta, link = log)
```

Arguments

formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, start, etastart, mustart, control, method, model, x,	arguments for the glm() function. Note that these exclude family and offset (but offset() can be used).
init.theta	Optional initial value for the theta parameter. If omitted a moment estimator after an initial fit using a Poisson GLM is used.
link	The link function. Currently must be one of log, sqrt or identity.

Details

An alternating iteration process is used. For given theta the GLM is fitted using the same process as used by glm(). For fixed means the theta parameter is estimated using score and information iterations. The two are alternated until convergence of both. (The number of alternations and the number of iterations when estimating theta are controlled by the maxit parameter of glm.control.)

Setting trace > 0 traces the alternating iteration process. Setting trace > 1 traces the glm fit, and setting trace > 2 traces the estimation of theta.

Value

A fitted model object of class negbin inheriting from glm and lm. The object is like the output of glm but contains three additional components, namely theta for the ML estimate of theta, SE.theta for its approximate standard error (using observed rather than expected information), and twologlik for twice the log-likelihood function.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

glm, negative.binomial, anova.negbin, summary.negbin, theta.md

There is a simulate method.

Examples

```
quine.nb1 <- glm.nb(Days ~ Sex/(Age + Eth*Lrn), data = quine)
quine.nb2 <- update(quine.nb1, . ~ . + Sex:Age:Lrn)
quine.nb3 <- update(quine.nb2, Days ~ .^4)
anova(quine.nb1, quine.nb2, quine.nb3)
```

---

glmmPQL *Fit Generalized Linear Mixed Models via PQL*

Description

Fit a GLMM model with multivariate normal random effects, using Penalized Quasi-Likelihood.

Usage

```
glmmPQL(fixed, random, family, data, correlation, weights,
        control, niter = 10, verbose = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

fixed	a two-sided linear formula giving fixed-effects part of the model.
random	a formula or list of formulae describing the random effects.
family	a GLM family.
data	an optional data frame used as the first place to find variables in the formulae, weights and if present in ..., subset.
correlation	an optional correlation structure.
weights	optional case weights as in glm.
control	an optional argument to be passed to lme.
niter	maximum number of iterations.
verbose	logical: print out record of iterations?
...	Further arguments for lme.

Details

glmmPQL works by repeated calls to lme, so package nlme will be loaded at first use if necessary.

Value

A object of class "lme": see lmeObject.

References

Schall, R. (1991) Estimation in generalized linear models with random effects. *Biometrika* **78**, 719–727.

Breslow, N. E. and Clayton, D. G. (1993) Approximate inference in generalized linear mixed models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **88**, 9–25.

Wolfinger, R. and O'Connell, M. (1993) Generalized linear mixed models: a pseudo-likelihood approach. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation* **48**, 233–243.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`lme`

Examples

```
library(nlme) # will be loaded automatically if omitted
summary(glmmPQL(y ~ trt + I(week > 2), random = ~ 1 | ID,
                family = binomial, data = bacteria))
```

---

hills *Record Times in Scottish Hill Races*

Description

The record times in 1984 for 35 Scottish hill races.

Usage

```
hills
```

Format

The components are:

`dist` distance in miles (on the map).

`climb` total height gained during the route, in feet.

`time` record time in minutes.

Source

A.C. Atkinson (1986) Comment: Aspects of diagnostic regression analysis. *Statistical Science* **1**, 397–402.

[A.C. Atkinson (1988) Transformations unmasked. *Technometrics* **30**, 311–318 "corrects" the time for Knock Hill from 78.65 to 18.65. It is unclear if this based on the original records.]

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

hist.scott *Plot a Histogram with Automatic Bin Width Selection*

Description

Plot a histogram with automatic bin width selection, using the Scott or Freedman–Diaconis formulae.

Usage

```
hist.scott(x, prob = TRUE, xlab = deparse(substitute(x)), ...)
hist.FD(x, prob = TRUE, xlab = deparse(substitute(x)), ...)
```

Arguments

x	A data vector
prob	Should the plot have unit area, so be a density estimate?
xlab, ...	Further arguments to hist.

Value

For the nclass.* functions, the suggested number of classes.

Side Effects

Plot a histogram.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Springer.

See Also

hist

housing *Frequency Table from a Copenhagen Housing Conditions Survey*

Description

The housing data frame has 72 rows and 5 variables.

Usage

```
housing
```

Format

`Sat` Satisfaction of householders with their present housing circumstances, (High, Medium or Low, ordered factor).

`Infl` Perceived degree of influence householders have on the management of the property (High, Medium, Low).

`Type` Type of rental accommodation, (Tower, Atrium, Apartment, Terrace).

`Cont` Contact residents are afforded with other residents, (Low, High).

`Freq` Frequencies: the numbers of residents in each class.

Source

Madsen, M. (1976) Statistical analysis of multiple contingency tables. Two examples. *Scand. J. Statist.* **3**, 97–106.

Cox, D. R. and Snell, E. J. (1984) *Applied Statistics, Principles and Examples*. Chapman & Hall.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))

# Surrogate Poisson models
house.glm0 <- glm(Freq ~ Infl*Type*Cont + Sat, family = poisson,
                  data = housing)
summary(house.glm0, cor = FALSE)

addterm(house.glm0, ~. + Sat:(Infl+Type+Cont), test = "Chisq")

house.glm1 <- update(house.glm0, . ~ . + Sat*(Infl+Type+Cont))
summary(house.glm1, cor = FALSE)

1 - pchisq(deviance(house.glm1), house.glm1$df.residual)

dropterm(house.glm1, test = "Chisq")

addterm(house.glm1, ~. + Sat:(Infl+Type+Cont)^2, test  =  "Chisq")

hnames <- lapply(housing[, -5], levels) # omit Freq
newData <- expand.grid(hnames)
newData$Sat <- ordered(newData$Sat)
house.pm <- predict(house.glm1, newData,
                    type = "response")  # poisson means
house.pm <- matrix(house.pm, ncol = 3, byrow = TRUE,
                   dimnames = list(NULL, hnames[[1]]))
house.pr <- house.pm/drop(house.pm %*% rep(1, 3))
cbind(expand.grid(hnames[-1]), round(house.pr, 2))

# Iterative proportional scaling
loglm(Freq ~ Infl*Type*Cont + Sat*(Infl+Type+Cont), data = housing)


# multinomial model
```

```
library(nnet)
(house.mult<- multinom(Sat ~ Infl + Type + Cont, weights = Freq,
                       data = housing))
house.mult2 <- multinom(Sat ~ Infl*Type*Cont, weights = Freq,
                        data = housing)
anova(house.mult, house.mult2)

house.pm <- predict(house.mult, expand.grid(hnames[-1]), type = "probs")
cbind(expand.grid(hnames[-1]), round(house.pm, 2))

# proportional odds model
house.cpr <- apply(house.pr, 1, cumsum)
logit <- function(x) log(x/(1-x))
house.ld <- logit(house.cpr[2, ]) - logit(house.cpr[1, ])
(ratio <- sort(drop(house.ld)))
mean(ratio)

(house.plr <- polr(Sat ~ Infl + Type + Cont,
                   data = housing, weights = Freq))

house.pr1 <- predict(house.plr, expand.grid(hnames[-1]), type = "probs")
cbind(expand.grid(hnames[-1]), round(house.pr1, 2))

Fr <- matrix(housing$Freq, ncol  =  3, byrow = TRUE)
2*sum(Fr*log(house.pr/house.pr1))

house.plr2 <- stepAIC(house.plr, ~.^2)
house.plr2$anova
```

---

huber *Huber M-estimator of Location with MAD Scale*

Description

Finds the Huber M-estimator of location with MAD scale.

Usage

```
huber(y, k = 1.5, tol = 1e-06)
```

Arguments

y	vector of data values
k	Winsorizes at k standard deviations
tol	convergence tolerance

Value

list of location and scale parameters

mu	location estimate
s	MAD scale estimate

References

Huber, P. J. (1981) *Robust Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`hubers`, `mad`

Examples

```
huber(chem)
```

`hubers` *Huber Proposal 2 Robust Estimator of Location and/or Scale*

Description

Finds the Huber M-estimator for location with scale specified, scale with location specified, or both if neither is specified.

Usage

```
hubers(y, k = 1.5, mu, s, initmu = median(y), tol = 1e-06)
```

Arguments

`y`	vector y of data values
`k`	Winsorizes at k standard deviations
`mu`	specified location
`s`	specified scale
`initmu`	initial value of `mu`
`tol`	convergence tolerance

Value

list of location and scale estimates

`mu`	location estimate
`s`	scale estimate

References

Huber, P. J. (1981) *Robust Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`huber`

Examples

```
hubers(chem)
hubers(chem, mu=3.68)
```

`immer` *Yields from a Barley Field Trial*

Description

The `immer` data frame has 30 rows and 4 columns. Five varieties of barley were grown in six locations in each of 1931 and 1932.

Usage

```
immer
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Loc` The location.

`Var` The variety of barley (`"manchuria"`, `"svansota"`, `"velvet"`, `"trebi"` and `"peatland"`).

`Y1` Yield in 1931.

`Y2` Yield in 1932.

Source

Immer, F.R., Hayes, H.D. and LeRoy Powers (1934) Statistical determination of barley varietal adaptation. *Journal of the American Society for Agronomy* **26**, 403–419.

Fisher, R.A. (1947) *The Design of Experiments.* 4th edition. Edinburgh: Oliver and Boyd.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

Examples

```
immer.aov <- aov(cbind(Y1,Y2) ~ Loc + Var, data = immer)
summary(immer.aov)

immer.aov <- aov((Y1+Y2)/2 ~ Var + Loc, data = immer)
summary(immer.aov)
model.tables(immer.aov, type = "means", se = TRUE, cterms = "Var")
```

`Insurance` *Numbers of Car Insurance claims*

Description

The data given in data frame `Insurance` consist of the numbers of policyholders of an insurance company who were exposed to risk, and the numbers of car insurance claims made by those policyholders in the third quarter of 1973.

Usage

```
Insurance
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`District` factor: district of residence of policyholder (1 to 4): 4 is major cities.

`Group` an ordered factor: group of car with levels <1 litre, 1–1.5 litre, 1.5–2 litre, >2 litre.

`Age` an ordered factor: the age of the insured in 4 groups labelled <25, 25–29, 30–35, >35.

`Holders` numbers of policyholders.

`Claims` numbers of claims

Source

L. A. Baxter, S. M. Coutts and G. A. F. Ross (1980) Applications of linear models in motor insurance. *Proceedings of the 21st International Congress of Actuaries, Zurich* pp. 11–29.

M. Aitkin, D. Anderson, B. Francis and J. Hinde (1989) *Statistical Modelling in GLIM*. Oxford University Press.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS*. Third Edition. Springer.

Examples

```
## main-effects fit as Poisson GLM with offset
glm(Claims ~ District + Group + Age + offset(log(Holders)),
    data = Insurance, family = poisson)

# same via loglm
loglm(Claims ~ District + Group + Age + offset(log(Holders)),
      data = Insurance)
```

`isoMDS` *Kruskal's Non-metric Multidimensional Scaling*

Description

One form of non-metric multidimensional scaling

Usage

```
isoMDS(d, y = cmdscale(d, k), k = 2, maxit = 50, trace = TRUE,
       tol = 1e-3, p = 2)

Shepard(d, x, p = 2)
```

Arguments

`d`	distance structure of the form returned by `dist`, or a full, symmetric matrix. Data are assumed to be dissimilarities or relative distances, but must be positive except for self-distance. Both missing and infinite values are allowed.
`y`	An initial configuration. If none is supplied, `cmdscale` is used to provide the classical solution, unless there are missing or infinite dissimilarities.
`k`	The desired dimension for the solution, passed to `cmdscale`.
`maxit`	The maximum number of iterations.
`trace`	Logical for tracing optimization. Default `TRUE`.
`tol`	convergence tolerance.
`p`	Power for Minkowski distance in the configuration space.
`x`	A final configuration.

Details

This chooses a k-dimensional (default k = 2) configuration to minimize the stress, the square root of the ratio of the sum of squared differences between the input distances and those of the configuration to the sum of configuration distances squared. However, the input distances are allowed a monotonic transformation.

An iterative algorithm is used, which will usually converge in around 10 iterations. As this is necessarily an $O(n^2)$ calculation, it is slow for large datasets. Further, since for the default $p = 2$ the configuration is only determined up to rotations and reflections (by convention the centroid is at the origin), the result can vary considerably from machine to machine.

Value

Two components:

`points`	A k-column vector of the fitted configuration.
`stress`	The final stress achieved (in percent).

Side Effects

If `trace` is true, the initial stress and the current stress are printed out every 5 iterations.

References

T. F. Cox and M. A. A. Cox (1994, 2001) *Multidimensional Scaling*. Chapman & Hall.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks*. Cambridge University Press.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`cmdscale`, `sammon`

Examples

```
swiss.x <- as.matrix(swiss[, -1])
swiss.dist <- dist(swiss.x)
swiss.mds <- isoMDS(swiss.dist)
plot(swiss.mds$points, type = "n")
text(swiss.mds$points, labels = as.character(1:nrow(swiss.x)))
swiss.sh <- Shepard(swiss.dist, swiss.mds$points)
plot(swiss.sh, pch = ".")
lines(swiss.sh$x, swiss.sh$yf, type = "S")
```

---

kde2d *Two-Dimensional Kernel Density Estimation*

Description

Two-dimensional kernel density estimation with an axis-aligned bivariate normal kernel, evaluated on a square grid.

Usage

```
kde2d(x, y, h, n = 25, lims = c(range(x), range(y)))
```

Arguments

`x`	x coordinate of data
`y`	y coordinate of data
`h`	vector of bandwidths for x and y directions. Defaults to normal reference bandwidth (see `bandwidth.nrd`). A scalar value will be taken to apply to both directions.
`n`	Number of grid points in each direction. Can be scalar or a length-2 integer vector.
`lims`	The limits of the rectangle covered by the grid as `c(xl, xu, yl, yu)`.

Value

A list of three components.

`x, y`	The x and y coordinates of the grid points, vectors of length `n`.
`z`	An `n[1]` by `n[2]` matrix of the estimated density: rows correspond to the value of `x`, columns to the value of `y`.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
attach(geyser)
plot(duration, waiting, xlim = c(0.5,6), ylim = c(40,100))
f1 <- kde2d(duration, waiting, n = 50, lims = c(0.5, 6, 40, 100))
image(f1, zlim = c(0, 0.05))
f2 <- kde2d(duration, waiting, n = 50, lims = c(0.5, 6, 40, 100),
            h = c(width.SJ(duration), width.SJ(waiting)) )
image(f2, zlim = c(0, 0.05))
persp(f2, phi = 30, theta = 20, d = 5)

plot(duration[-272], duration[-1], xlim = c(0.5, 6),
     ylim = c(1, 6),xlab = "previous duration", ylab = "duration")
f1 <- kde2d(duration[-272], duration[-1],
            h = rep(1.5, 2), n = 50, lims = c(0.5, 6, 0.5, 6))
contour(f1, xlab = "previous duration",
        ylab = "duration", levels  =  c(0.05, 0.1, 0.2, 0.4) )
f1 <- kde2d(duration[-272], duration[-1],
            h = rep(0.6, 2), n = 50, lims = c(0.5, 6, 0.5, 6))
contour(f1, xlab = "previous duration",
        ylab = "duration", levels  =  c(0.05, 0.1, 0.2, 0.4) )
f1 <- kde2d(duration[-272], duration[-1],
            h = rep(0.4, 2), n = 50, lims = c(0.5, 6, 0.5, 6))
contour(f1, xlab = "previous duration",
        ylab = "duration", levels  =  c(0.05, 0.1, 0.2, 0.4) )
detach("geyser")
```

---

lda *Linear Discriminant Analysis*

Description

Linear discriminant analysis.

Usage

```
lda(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
lda(formula, data, ..., subset, na.action)

## Default S3 method:
lda(x, grouping, prior = proportions, tol = 1.0e-4,
    method, CV = FALSE, nu, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
lda(x, ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
lda(x, grouping, ..., subset, na.action)
```

Arguments

`formula`	A formula of the form `groups ~ x1 + x2 + ...` That is, the response is the grouping factor and the right hand side specifies the (non-factor) discriminators.
`data`	Data frame from which variables specified in `formula` are preferentially to be taken.
`x`	(required if no formula is given as the principal argument.) a matrix or data frame or Matrix containing the explanatory variables.
`grouping`	(required if no formula principal argument is given.) a factor specifying the class for each observation.
`prior`	the prior probabilities of class membership. If unspecified, the class proportions for the training set are used. If present, the probabilities should be specified in the order of the factor levels.
`tol`	A tolerance to decide if a matrix is singular; it will reject variables and linear combinations of unit-variance variables whose variance is less than `tol^2`.
`subset`	An index vector specifying the cases to be used in the training sample. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
`na.action`	A function to specify the action to be taken if `NA`s are found. The default action is for the procedure to fail. An alternative is `na.omit`, which leads to rejection of cases with missing values on any required variable. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
`method`	`"moment"` for standard estimators of the mean and variance, `"mle"` for MLEs, `"mve"` to use `cov.mve`, or `"t"` for robust estimates based on a t distribution.
`CV`	If true, returns results (classes and posterior probabilities) for leave-one-out cross-validation. Note that if the prior is estimated, the proportions in the whole dataset are used.
`nu`	degrees of freedom for `method = "t"`.
`...`	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The function tries hard to detect if the within-class covariance matrix is singular. If any variable has within-group variance less than `tol^2` it will stop and report the variable as constant. This could result from poor scaling of the problem, but is more likely to result from constant variables.

Specifying the `prior` will affect the classification unless over-ridden in `predict.lda`. Unlike in most statistical packages, it will also affect the rotation of the linear discriminants within their space, as a weighted between-groups covariance matrix is used. Thus the first few linear discriminants emphasize the differences between groups with the weights given by the prior, which may differ from their prevalence in the dataset.

If one or more groups is missing in the supplied data, they are dropped with a warning, but the classifications produced are with respect to the original set of levels.

Value

If `CV = TRUE` the return value is a list with components `class`, the MAP classification (a factor), and `posterior`, posterior probabilities for the classes.

Otherwise it is an object of class `"lda"` containing the following components:

`prior`	the prior probabilities used.

means	the group means.
scaling	a matrix which transforms observations to discriminant functions, normalized so that within groups covariance matrix is spherical.
svd	the singular values, which give the ratio of the between- and within-group standard deviations on the linear discriminant variables. Their squares are the canonical F-statistics.
N	The number of observations used.
call	The (matched) function call.

Note

This function may be called giving either a formula and optional data frame, or a matrix and grouping factor as the first two arguments. All other arguments are optional, but `subset=` and `na.action=`, if required, must be fully named.

If a formula is given as the principal argument the object may be modified using `update()` in the usual way.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

`predict.lda`, `qda`, `predict.qda`

Examples

```
Iris <- data.frame(rbind(iris3[,,1], iris3[,,2], iris3[,,3]),
                   Sp = rep(c("s","c","v"), rep(50,3)))
train <- sample(1:150, 75)
table(Iris$Sp[train])
## your answer may differ
##  c  s  v
## 22 23 30
z <- lda(Sp ~ ., Iris, prior = c(1,1,1)/3, subset = train)
predict(z, Iris[-train, ])$class
##  [1] s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s c c c
## [31] c c c c c c c v c c c c v c c c c c c c c c c c v v v v v
## [61] v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v
(z1 <- update(z, . ~ . - Petal.W.))
```

---

ldahist *Histograms or Density Plots of Multiple Groups*

Description

Plot histograms or density plots of data on a single Fisher linear discriminant.

Usage

```
ldahist(data, g, nbins = 25, h, x0 = - h/1000, breaks,
        xlim = range(breaks), ymax = 0, width,
        type = c("histogram", "density", "both"),
        sep = (type != "density"),
        col = 5, xlab = deparse(substitute(data)), bty = "n", ...)
```

Arguments

data	vector of data. Missing values (NAs) are allowed and omitted.
g	factor or vector giving groups, of the same length as data.
nbins	Suggested number of bins to cover the whole range of the data.
h	The bin width (takes precedence over nbins).
x0	Shift for the bins - the breaks are at x0 + h * (..., -1, 0, 1, ...)
breaks	The set of breakpoints to be used. (Usually omitted, takes precedence over h and nbins).
xlim	The limits for the x-axis.
ymax	The upper limit for the y-axis.
width	Bandwidth for density estimates. If missing, the Sheather-Jones selector is used for each group separately.
type	Type of plot.
sep	Whether there is a separate plot for each group, or one combined plot.
col	The colour number for the bar fill.
xlab	label for the plot x-axis. By default, this will be the name of data.
bty	The box type for the plot - defaults to none.
...	additional arguments to polygon.

Side Effects

Histogram and/or density plots are plotted on the current device.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

plot.lda.

`leuk` *Survival Times and White Blood Counts for Leukaemia Patients*

Description

A data frame of data from 33 leukaemia patients.

Usage

```
leuk
```

Format

A data frame with columns:

`wbc` white blood count.

`ag` a test result, `"present"` or `"absent"`.

`time` survival time in weeks.

Details

Survival times are given for 33 patients who died from acute myelogenous leukaemia. Also measured was the patient's white blood cell count at the time of diagnosis. The patients were also factored into 2 groups according to the presence or absence of a morphologic characteristic of white blood cells. Patients termed AG positive were identified by the presence of Auer rods and/or significant granulation of the leukaemic cells in the bone marrow at the time of diagnosis.

Source

Cox, D. R. and Oakes, D. (1984) *Analysis of Survival Data*. Chapman & Hall, p. 9.

Taken from

Feigl, P. & Zelen, M. (1965) Estimation of exponential survival probabilities with concomitant information. *Biometrics* **21**, 826–838.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
library(survival)
plot(survfit(Surv(time) ~ ag, data = leuk), lty = 2:3, col = 2:3)

# now Cox models
leuk.cox <- coxph(Surv(time) ~ ag + log(wbc), leuk)
summary(leuk.cox)
```

lm.gls *Fit Linear Models by Generalized Least Squares*

Description

Fit linear models by Generalized Least Squares

Usage

```
lm.gls(formula, data, W, subset, na.action, inverse = FALSE,
       method = "qr", model = FALSE, x = FALSE, y = FALSE,
       contrasts = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula expression as for regression models, of the form response ~ predictors. See the documentation of formula for other details.
data	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables occurring in formula.
W	a weight matrix.
subset	expression saying which subset of the rows of the data should be used in the fit. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a function to filter missing data.
inverse	logical: if true W specifies the inverse of the weight matrix: this is appropriate if a variance matrix is used.
method	method to be used by lm.fit.
model	should the model frame be returned?
x	should the design matrix be returned?
y	should the response be returned?
contrasts	a list of contrasts to be used for some or all of
...	additional arguments to lm.fit.

Details

The problem is transformed to uncorrelated form and passed to lm.fit.

Value

An object of class "lm.gls", which is similar to an "lm" object. There is no "weights" component, and only a few "lm" methods will work correctly. As from version 7.1-22 the residuals and fitted values refer to the untransformed problem.

See Also

gls, lm, lm.ridge

`lm.ridge` *Ridge Regression*

Description

Fit a linear model by ridge regression.

Usage

```
lm.ridge(formula, data, subset, na.action, lambda = 0, model = FALSE,
         x = FALSE, y = FALSE, contrasts = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	a formula expression as for regression models, of the form `response ~ predictors`. See the documentation of `formula` for other details. `offset` terms are allowed.
`data`	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables occurring in `formula`.
`subset`	expression saying which subset of the rows of the data should be used in the fit. All observations are included by default.
`na.action`	a function to filter missing data.
`lambda`	A scalar or vector of ridge constants.
`model`	should the model frame be returned? Not implemented.
`x`	should the design matrix be returned? Not implemented.
`y`	should the response be returned? Not implemented.
`contrasts`	a list of contrasts to be used for some or all of factor terms in the formula. See the `contrasts.arg` of `model.matrix.default`.
`...`	additional arguments to `lm.fit`.

Details

If an intercept is present in the model, its coefficient is not penalized. (If you want to penalize an intercept, put in your own constant term and remove the intercept.)

Value

A list with components

`coef`	matrix of coefficients, one row for each value of `lambda`. Note that these are not on the original scale and are for use by the `coef` method.
`scales`	scalings used on the X matrix.
`Inter`	was intercept included?
`lambda`	vector of lambda values
`ym`	mean of `y`
`xm`	column means of `x` matrix
`GCV`	vector of GCV values
`kHKB`	HKB estimate of the ridge constant.
`kLW`	L-W estimate of the ridge constant.

References

Brown, P. J. (1994) *Measurement, Regression and Calibration* Oxford.

See Also

`lm`

Examples

```
longley # not the same as the S-PLUS dataset
names(longley)[1] <- "y"
lm.ridge(y ~ ., longley)
plot(lm.ridge(y ~ ., longley,
              lambda = seq(0,0.1,0.001)))
select(lm.ridge(y ~ ., longley,
               lambda = seq(0,0.1,0.0001)))
```

---

loglm *Fit Log-Linear Models by Iterative Proportional Scaling*

Description

This function provides a front-end to the standard function, `loglin`, to allow log-linear models to be specified and fitted in a manner similar to that of other fitting functions, such as `glm`.

Usage

```
loglm(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	A linear model formula specifying the log-linear model. If the left-hand side is empty, the `data` argument is required and must be a (complete) array of frequencies. In this case the variables on the right-hand side may be the names of the `dimnames` attribute of the frequency array, or may be the positive integers: 1, 2, 3, ... used as alternative names for the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, ... dimension (classifying factor). If the left-hand side is not empty it specifies a vector of frequencies. In this case the data argument, if present, must be a data frame from which the left-hand side vector and the classifying factors on the right-hand side are (preferentially) obtained. The usual abbreviation of a . to stand for 'all other variables in the data frame' is allowed. Any non-factors on the right-hand side of the formula are coerced to factor.
`data`	Numeric array or data frame. In the first case it specifies the array of frequencies; in then second it provides the data frame from which the variables occurring in the formula are preferentially obtained in the usual way. This argument may be the result of a call to `xtabs`.
`subset`	Specifies a subset of the rows in the data frame to be used. The default is to take all rows.
`na.action`	Specifies a method for handling missing observations. The default is to fail if missing values are present.
`...`	May supply other arguments to the function `loglm1`.

Details

If the left-hand side of the formula is empty the `data` argument supplies the frequency array and the right-hand side of the formula is used to construct the list of fixed faces as required by `loglin`. Structural zeros may be specified by giving a `start` argument with those entries set to zero, as described in the help information for `loglin`.

If the left-hand side is not empty, all variables on the right-hand side are regarded as classifying factors and an array of frequencies is constructed. If some cells in the complete array are not specified they are treated as structural zeros. The right-hand side of the formula is again used to construct the list of faces on which the observed and fitted totals must agree, as required by `loglin`. Hence terms such as `a:b`, `a*b` and `a/b` are all equivalent.

Value

An object of class `"loglm"` conveying the results of the fitted log-linear model. Methods exist for the generic functions `print`, `summary`, `deviance`, `fitted`, `coef`, `resid`, `anova` and `update`, which perform the expected tasks. Only log-likelihood ratio tests are allowed using `anova`.

The deviance is simply an alternative name for the log-likelihood ratio statistic for testing the current model within a saturated model, in accordance with standard usage in generalized linear models.

Warning

If structural zeros are present, the calculation of degrees of freedom may not be correct. `loglin` itself takes no action to allow for structural zeros. `loglm` deducts one degree of freedom for each structural zero, but cannot make allowance for gains in error degrees of freedom due to loss of dimension in the model space. (This would require checking the rank of the model matrix, but since iterative proportional scaling methods are developed largely to avoid constructing the model matrix explicitly, the computation is at least difficult.)

When structural zeros (or zero fitted values) are present the estimated coefficients will not be available due to infinite estimates. The deviances will normally continue to be correct, though.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`loglm1`, `loglin`

Examples

```
# The data frames  Cars93, minn38 and quine are available
# in the MASS package.

# Case 1: frequencies specified as an array.
sapply(minn38, function(x) length(levels(x)))
## hs phs fol sex f
##  3   4   7   2 0
##minn38a <- array(0, c(3,4,7,2), lapply(minn38[, -5], levels))
##minn38a[data.matrix(minn38[,-5])] <- minn38$f

## or more simply
minn38a <- xtabs(f ~ ., minn38)
```

```
fm <- loglm(~ 1 + 2 + 3 + 4, minn38a)  # numerals as names.
deviance(fm)
## [1] 3711.9
fm1 <- update(fm, .~.^2)
fm2 <- update(fm, .~.^3, print = TRUE)
## 5 iterations: deviation 0.075
anova(fm, fm1, fm2)

# Case 1. An array generated with xtabs.

loglm(~ Type + Origin, xtabs(~ Type + Origin, Cars93))

# Case 2.  Frequencies given as a vector in a data frame
names(quine)
## [1] "Eth"  "Sex"  "Age"  "Lrn"  "Days"
fm <- loglm(Days ~ .^2, quine)
gm <- glm(Days ~ .^2, poisson, quine)  # check glm.
c(deviance(fm), deviance(gm))          # deviances agree
## [1] 1368.7 1368.7
c(fm$df, gm$df)                        # resid df do not!
c(fm$df, gm$df.residual)               # resid df do not!
## [1] 127 128
# The loglm residual degrees of freedom is wrong because of
# a non-detectable redundancy in the model matrix.
```

`logtrans` *Estimate log Transformation Parameter*

Description

Find and optionally plot the marginal (profile) likelihood for alpha for a transformation model of the form `log(y + alpha) ~ x1 + x2 + ...`.

Usage

```
logtrans(object, ...)

## Default S3 method:
logtrans(object, ..., alpha = seq(0.5, 6, by = 0.25) - min(y),
         plotit = TRUE, interp =, xlab = "alpha",
         ylab = "log Likelihood")

## S3 method for class formula
logtrans(object, data, ...)

## S3 method for class lm
logtrans(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	Fitted linear model object, or formula defining the untransformed model that is `y ~ x1 + x2 + ...`. The function is generic.
`...`	If `object` is a formula, this argument may specify a data frame as for `lm`.

`alpha`	Set of values for the transformation parameter, alpha.
`plotit`	Should plotting be done?
`interp`	Should the marginal log-likelihood be interpolated with a spline approximation? (Default is `TRUE` if plotting is to be done and the number of real points is less than 100.)
`xlab`	as for `plot`.
`ylab`	as for `plot`.
`data`	optional `data` argument for `lm` fit.

Value

List with components `x` (for alpha) and `y` (for the marginal log-likelihood values).

Side Effects

A plot of the marginal log-likelihood is produced, if requested, together with an approximate mle and 95% confidence interval.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`boxcox`

Examples

```
logtrans(Days ~ Age*Sex*Eth*Lrn, data = quine,
         alpha = seq(0.75, 6.5, len=20))
```

`lqs` *Resistant Regression*

Description

Fit a regression to the *good* points in the dataset, thereby achieving a regression estimator with a high breakdown point. `lmsreg` and `ltsreg` are compatibility wrappers.

Usage

```
lqs(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
lqs(formula, data, ...,
    method = c("lts", "lqs", "lms", "S", "model.frame"),
    subset, na.action, model = TRUE,
    x.ret = FALSE, y.ret = FALSE, contrasts = NULL)

## Default S3 method:
lqs(x, y, intercept = TRUE, method = c("lts", "lqs", "lms", "S"),
```

```
    quantile, control = lqs.control(...), k0 = 1.548, seed, ...)

lmsreg(...)
ltsreg(...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	a formula of the form `y ~ x1 + x2 + ...`.
`data`	data frame from which variables specified in `formula` are preferentially to be taken.
`subset`	an index vector specifying the cases to be used in fitting. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named exactly.)
`na.action`	function to specify the action to be taken if `NA`s are found. The default action is for the procedure to fail. Alternatives include `na.omit` and `na.exclude`, which lead to omission of cases with missing values on any required variable. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named exactly.)
`model, x.ret, y.ret`	logical. If `TRUE` the model frame, the model matrix and the response are returned, respectively.
`contrasts`	an optional list. See the `contrasts.arg` of `model.matrix.default`.
`x`	a matrix or data frame containing the explanatory variables.
`y`	the response: a vector of length the number of rows of `x`.
`intercept`	should the model include an intercept?
`method`	the method to be used. `model.frame` returns the model frame: for the others see the `Details` section. Using `lmsreg` or `ltsreg` forces `"lms"` and `"lts"` respectively.
`quantile`	the quantile to be used: see `Details`. This is over-ridden if `method = "lms"`.
`control`	additional control items: see `Details`.
`k0`	the cutoff / tuning constant used for $\chi()$ and $\psi()$ functions when `method = "S"`, currently corresponding to Tukey's 'biweight'.
`seed`	the seed to be used for random sampling: see `.Random.seed`. The current value of `.Random.seed` will be preserved if it is set..
`...`	arguments to be passed to `lqs.default` or `lqs.control`, see `control` above and `Details`.

Details

Suppose there are `n` data points and `p` regressors, including any intercept.

The first three methods minimize some function of the sorted squared residuals. For methods `"lqs"` and `"lms"` is the `quantile` squared residual, and for `"lts"` it is the sum of the `quantile` smallest squared residuals. `"lqs"` and `"lms"` differ in the defaults for `quantile`, which are `floor((n+p+1)/2)` and `floor((n+1)/2)` respectively. For `"lts"` the default is `floor(n/2) + floor((p+1)/2)`.

The `"S"` estimation method solves for the scale `s` such that the average of a function chi of the residuals divided by `s` is equal to a given constant.

The `control` argument is a list with components

`psamp`: the size of each sample. Defaults to `p`.

`nsamp`: the number of samples or `"best"` (the default) or `"exact"` or `"sample"`. If `"sample"` the number chosen is `min(5*p, 3000)`, taken from Rousseeuw and Hubert (1997). If `"best"` exhaustive enumeration is done up to 5000 samples; if `"exact"` exhaustive enumeration will be attempted however many samples are needed.

`adjust`: should the intercept be optimized for each sample? Defaults to `TRUE`.

Value

An object of class `"lqs"`. This is a list with components

`crit`	the value of the criterion for the best solution found, in the case of `method == "S"` before IWLS refinement.
`sing`	character. A message about the number of samples which resulted in singular fits.
`coefficients`	of the fitted linear model
`bestone`	the indices of those points fitted by the best sample found (prior to adjustment of the intercept, if requested).
`fitted.values`	the fitted values.
`residuals`	the residuals.
`scale`	estimate(s) of the scale of the error. The first is based on the fit criterion. The second (not present for `method == "S"`) is based on the variance of those residuals whose absolute value is less than 2.5 times the initial estimate.

Note

There seems no reason other than historical to use the `lms` and `lqs` options. LMS estimation is of low efficiency (converging at rate $n^{-1/3}$) whereas LTS has the same asymptotic efficiency as an M estimator with trimming at the quartiles (Marazzi, 1993, p.201). LQS and LTS have the same maximal breakdown value of `(floor((n-p)/2) + 1)/n` attained if `floor((n+p)/2) <= quantile <= floor((n+p+1)/2)`. The only drawback mentioned of LTS is greater computation, as a sort was thought to be required (Marazzi, 1993, p.201) but this is not true as a partial sort can be used (and is used in this implementation).

Adjusting the intercept for each trial fit does need the residuals to be sorted, and may be significant extra computation if `n` is large and `p` small.

Opinions differ over the choice of `psamp`. Rousseeuw and Hubert (1997) only consider p; Marazzi (1993) recommends p+1 and suggests that more samples are better than adjustment for a given computational limit.

The computations are exact for a model with just an intercept and adjustment, and for LQS for a model with an intercept plus one regressor and exhaustive search with adjustment. For all other cases the minimization is only known to be approximate.

References

P. J. Rousseeuw and A. M. Leroy (1987) *Robust Regression and Outlier Detection.* Wiley.

A. Marazzi (1993) *Algorithms, Routines and S Functions for Robust Statistics.* Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole.

P. Rousseeuw and M. Hubert (1997) Recent developments in PROGRESS. In *L1-Statistical Procedures and Related Topics*, ed Y. Dodge, IMS Lecture Notes volume **31**, pp. 201–214.

See Also

predict.lqs

Examples

```
set.seed(123) # make reproducible
lqs(stack.loss ~ ., data = stackloss)
lqs(stack.loss ~ ., data = stackloss, method = "S", nsamp = "exact")
```

---

mammals *Brain and Body Weights for 62 Species of Land Mammals*

Description

A data frame with average brain and body weights for 62 species of land mammals.

Usage

```
mammals
```

Format

`body` body weight in kg.

`brain` brain weight in g.

`name` Common name of species. (Rock hyrax-a = *Heterohyrax brucci*, Rock hyrax-b = *Procavia habessinic.*.)

Source

Weisberg, S. (1985) *Applied Linear Regression.* 2nd edition. Wiley, pp. 144–5.

Selected from: Allison, T. and Cicchetti, D. V. (1976) Sleep in mammals: ecological and constitutional correlates. *Science* **194**, 732–734.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

`mca` *Multiple Correspondence Analysis*

Description

Computes a multiple correspondence analysis of a set of factors.

Usage

```
mca(df, nf = 2, abbrev = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`df`	A data frame containing only factors
`nf`	The number of dimensions for the MCA. Rarely 3 might be useful.
`abbrev`	Should the vertex names be abbreviated? By default these are of the form 'factor.level' but if `abbrev = TRUE` they are just 'level' which will suffice if the factors have distinct levels.

Value

An object of class `"mca"`, with components

`rs`	The coordinates of the rows, in `nf` dimensions.
`cs`	The coordinates of the column vertices, one for each level of each factor.
`fs`	Weights for each row, used to interpolate additional factors in `predict.mca`.
`p`	The number of factors
`d`	The singular values for the `nf` dimensions.
`call`	The matched call.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`predict.mca`, `plot.mca`, `corresp`

Examples

```
farms.mca <- mca(farms, abbrev=TRUE)
farms.mca
plot(farms.mca)
```

mcycle *Data from a Simulated Motorcycle Accident*

Description

A data frame giving a series of measurements of head acceleration in a simulated motorcycle accident, used to test crash helmets.

Usage

```
mcycle
```

Format

`times` in milliseconds after impact.

`accel` in g.

Source

Silverman, B. W. (1985) Some aspects of the spline smoothing approach to non-parametric curve fitting. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society series B* **47**, 1–52.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS*. Third Edition. Springer.

Melanoma *Survival from Malignant Melanoma*

Description

The `Melanoma` data frame has data on 205 patients in Denmark with malignant melanoma.

Usage

```
Melanoma
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`time` survival time in days, possibly censored.

`status` `1` died from melanoma, `2` alive, `3` dead from other causes.

`sex` `1` = male, `0` = female.

`age` age in years.

`year` of operation.

`thickness` tumour thickness in mm.

`ulcer` `1` = presence, `0` = absence.

Source

P. K. Andersen, O. Borgan, R. D. Gill and N. Keiding (1993) *Statistical Models based on Counting Processes.* Springer.

`menarche` *Age of Menarche in Warsaw*

Description

Proportions of female children at various ages during adolescence who have reached menarche.

Usage

```
menarche
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Age` Average age of the group. (The groups are reasonably age homogeneous.)

`Total` Total number of children in the group.

`Menarche` Number who have reached menarche.

Source

Milicer, H. and Szczotka, F. (1966) Age at Menarche in Warsaw girls in 1965. *Human Biology* **38**, 199–203.

The data are also given in
Aranda-Ordaz, F.J. (1981) On two families of transformations to additivity for binary response data. *Biometrika* **68**, 357–363.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
mprob <- glm(cbind(Menarche, Total - Menarche) ~ Age,
             binomial(link = probit), data = menarche)
```

michelson *Michelson's Speed of Light Data*

Description

Measurements of the speed of light in air, made between 5th June and 2nd July, 1879. The data consists of five experiments, each consisting of 20 consecutive runs. The response is the speed of light in km/s, less 299000. The currently accepted value, on this scale of measurement, is 734.5.

Usage

```
michelson
```

Format

The data frame contains the following components:

`Expt` The experiment number, from 1 to 5.

`Run` The run number within each experiment.

`Speed` Speed-of-light measurement.

Source

A.J. Weekes (1986) *A Genstat Primer.* Edward Arnold.

S. M. Stigler (1977) Do robust estimators work with real data? *Annals of Statistics* **5**, 1055–1098.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

minn38 *Minnesota High School Graduates of 1938*

Description

The Minnesota high school graduates of 1938 were classified according to four factors, described below. The `minn38` data frame has 168 rows and 5 columns.

Usage

```
minn38
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`hs` high school rank: `"L"`, `"M"` and `"U"` for lower, middle and upper third.

`phs` post high school status: Enrolled in college, (`"C"`), enrolled in non-collegiate school, (`"N"`), employed full-time, (`"E"`) and other, (`"O"`).

`fol` father's occupational level, (seven levels, `"F1"`, `"F2"`, ..., `"F7"`).

`sex` sex: factor with levels`"F"` or `"M"`.

`f` frequency.

Source

From R. L. Plackett, (1974) *The Analysis of Categorical Data.* London: Griffin

who quotes the data from

Hoyt, C. J., Krishnaiah, P. R. and Torrance, E. P. (1959) Analysis of complex contingency tables, *J. Exp. Ed.* **27**, 187–194.

`motors` *Accelerated Life Testing of Motorettes*

Description

The `motors` data frame has 40 rows and 3 columns. It describes an accelerated life test at each of four temperatures of 10 motorettes, and has rather discrete times.

Usage

```
motors
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`temp` the temperature (degrees C) of the test.

`time` the time in hours to failure or censoring at 8064 hours (= 336 days).

`cens` an indicator variable for death.

Source

Kalbfleisch, J. D. and Prentice, R. L. (1980) *The Statistical Analysis of Failure Time Data.* New York: Wiley.

taken from

Nelson, W. D. and Hahn, G. J. (1972) Linear regression of a regression relationship from censored data. Part 1 – simple methods and their application. *Technometrics*, **14**, 247–276.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
library(survival)
plot(survfit(Surv(time, cens) ~ factor(temp), motors), conf.int = FALSE)
# fit Weibull model
motor.wei <- survreg(Surv(time, cens) ~ temp, motors)
summary(motor.wei)
# and predict at 130C
unlist(predict(motor.wei, data.frame(temp=130), se.fit = TRUE))

motor.cox <- coxph(Surv(time, cens) ~ temp, motors)
summary(motor.cox)
# predict at temperature 200
```

```
plot(survfit(motor.cox, newdata = data.frame(temp=200),
     conf.type = "log-log"))
summary( survfit(motor.cox, newdata = data.frame(temp=130)) )
```

`muscle` *Effect of Calcium Chloride on Muscle Contraction in Rat Hearts*

Description

The purpose of this experiment was to assess the influence of calcium in solution on the contraction of heart muscle in rats. The left auricle of 21 rat hearts was isolated and on several occasions a constant-length strip of tissue was electrically stimulated and dipped into various concentrations of calcium chloride solution, after which the shortening of the strip was accurately measured as the response.

Usage

```
muscle
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Strip` which heart muscle strip was used?

`Conc` concentration of calcium chloride solution, in multiples of 2.2 mM.

`Length` the change in length (shortening) of the strip, (allegedly) in mm.

Source

Linder, A., Chakravarti, I. M. and Vuagnat, P. (1964) Fitting asymptotic regression curves with different asymptotes. In *Contributions to Statistics. Presented to Professor P. C. Mahalanobis on the occasion of his 70th birthday*, ed. C. R. Rao, pp. 221–228. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth Edition. Springer.

Examples

```
A <- model.matrix(~ Strip - 1, data=muscle)
rats.nls1 <- nls(log(Length) ~ cbind(A, rho^Conc),
   data = muscle, start = c(rho=0.1), algorithm="plinear")
(B <- coef(rats.nls1))

st <- list(alpha = B[2:22], beta = B[23], rho = B[1])
(rats.nls2 <- nls(log(Length) ~ alpha[Strip] + beta*rho^Conc,
                  data = muscle, start = st))

Muscle <- with(muscle, {
Muscle <- expand.grid(Conc = sort(unique(Conc)), Strip = levels(Strip))
Muscle$Yhat <- predict(rats.nls2, Muscle)
Muscle <- cbind(Muscle, logLength = rep(as.numeric(NA), 126))
```

```
ind <- match(paste(Strip, Conc),
            paste(Muscle$Strip, Muscle$Conc))
Muscle$logLength[ind] <- log(Length)
Muscle})

lattice::xyplot(Yhat ~ Conc | Strip, Muscle, as.table = TRUE,
   ylim = range(c(Muscle$Yhat, Muscle$logLength), na.rm = TRUE),
   subscripts = TRUE, xlab = "Calcium Chloride concentration (mM)",
   ylab = "log(Length in mm)", panel =
   function(x, y, subscripts, ...) {
      panel.xyplot(x, Muscle$logLength[subscripts], ...)
      llines(spline(x, y))
   })
```

`mvrnorm` *Simulate from a Multivariate Normal Distribution*

Description

Produces one or more samples from the specified multivariate normal distribution.

Usage

```
mvrnorm(n = 1, mu, Sigma, tol = 1e-6, empirical = FALSE, EISPACK = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`n`	the number of samples required.
`mu`	a vector giving the means of the variables.
`Sigma`	a positive-definite symmetric matrix specifying the covariance matrix of the variables.
`tol`	tolerance (relative to largest variance) for numerical lack of positive-definiteness in `Sigma`.
`empirical`	logical. If true, mu and Sigma specify the empirical not population mean and covariance matrix.
`EISPACK`	logical: values other than `FALSE` are an error.

Details

The matrix decomposition is done via `eigen`; although a Choleski decomposition might be faster, the eigendecomposition is stabler.

Value

If `n = 1` a vector of the same length as `mu`, otherwise an `n` by `length(mu)` matrix with one sample in each row.

Side Effects

Causes creation of the dataset `.Random.seed` if it does not already exist, otherwise its value is updated.

References

B. D. Ripley (1987) *Stochastic Simulation.* Wiley. Page 98.

See Also

rnorm

Examples

```
Sigma <- matrix(c(10,3,3,2),2,2)
Sigma
var(mvrnorm(n = 1000, rep(0, 2), Sigma))
var(mvrnorm(n = 1000, rep(0, 2), Sigma, empirical = TRUE))
```

---

negative.binomial *Family function for Negative Binomial GLMs*

Description

Specifies the information required to fit a Negative Binomial generalized linear model, with known theta parameter, using glm().

Usage

```
negative.binomial(theta = stop("theta must be specified"), link = "log")
```

Arguments

theta	The known value of the additional parameter, theta.
link	The link function, as a character string, name or one-element character vector specifying one of log, sqrt or identity, or an object of class "link-glm".

Value

An object of class "family", a list of functions and expressions needed by glm() to fit a Negative Binomial generalized linear model.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

See Also

glm.nb, anova.negbin, summary.negbin

Examples

```
# Fitting a Negative Binomial model to the quine data
#   with theta = 2 assumed known.
#
glm(Days ~ .^4, family = negative.binomial(2), data = quine)
```

newcomb *Newcomb's Measurements of the Passage Time of Light*

Description

A numeric vector giving the 'Third Series' of measurements of the passage time of light recorded by Newcomb in 1882. The given values divided by 1000 plus 24 give the time in millionths of a second for light to traverse a known distance. The 'true' value is now considered to be 33.02.

Usage

```
newcomb
```

Source

S. M. Stigler (1973) Simon Newcomb, Percy Daniell, and the history of robust estimation 1885–1920. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **68**, 872–879.

R. G. Staudte and S. J. Sheather (1990) *Robust Estimation and Testing.* Wiley.

nlschools *Eighth-Grade Pupils in the Netherlands*

Description

Snijders and Bosker (1999) use as a running example a study of 2287 eighth-grade pupils (aged about 11) in 132 classes in 131 schools in the Netherlands. Only the variables used in our examples are supplied.

Usage

```
nlschools
```

Format

This data frame contains 2287 rows and the following columns:

`lang` language test score.

`IQ` verbal IQ.

`class` class ID.

`GS` class size: number of eighth-grade pupils recorded in the class (there may be others: see `COMB`, and some may have been omitted with missing values).

`SES` social-economic status of pupil's family.

`COMB` were the pupils taught in a multi-grade class (`0/1`)? Classes which contained pupils from grades 7 and 8 are coded `1`, but only eighth-graders were tested.

Source

Snijders, T. A. B. and Bosker, R. J. (1999) *Multilevel Analysis. An Introduction to Basic and Advanced Multilevel Modelling.* London: Sage.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
nl1 <- within(nlschools, {
IQave <- tapply(IQ, class, mean)[as.character(class)]
IQ <- IQ - IQave
})
cen <- c("IQ", "IQave", "SES")
nl1[cen] <- scale(nl1[cen], center = TRUE, scale = FALSE)

nl.lme <- nlme::lme(lang ~ IQ*COMB + IQave + SES,
                    random = ~ IQ | class, data = nl1)
summary(nl.lme)
```

---

npk *Classical N, P, K Factorial Experiment*

Description

A classical N, P, K (nitrogen, phosphate, potassium) factorial experiment on the growth of peas conducted on 6 blocks. Each half of a fractional factorial design confounding the NPK interaction was used on 3 of the plots.

Usage

```
npk
```

Format

The npk data frame has 24 rows and 5 columns:

`block` which block (label 1 to 6).

`N` indicator (0/1) for the application of nitrogen.

`P` indicator (0/1) for the application of phosphate.

`K` indicator (0/1) for the application of potassium.

`yield` Yield of peas, in pounds/plot (the plots were (1/70) acre).

Note

This dataset is also contained in 3.0.2 and later.

Source

Imperial College, London, M.Sc. exercise sheet.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.sum", "contr.poly"))
npk.aov <- aov(yield ~ block + N*P*K, npk)
npk.aov
summary(npk.aov)
alias(npk.aov)
coef(npk.aov)
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
npk.aov1 <- aov(yield ~ block + N + K, data = npk)
summary.lm(npk.aov1)
se.contrast(npk.aov1, list(N=="0", N=="1"), data = npk)
model.tables(npk.aov1, type = "means", se = TRUE)
```

---

npr1 *US Naval Petroleum Reserve No. 1 data*

Description

Data on the locations, porosity and permeability (a measure of oil flow) on 104 oil wells in the US Naval Petroleum Reserve No. 1 in California.

Usage

```
npr1
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`x` x coordinates, in miles (origin unspecified)..

`y` y coordinates, in miles.

`perm` permeability in milli-Darcies.

`por` porosity (%).

Source

Maher, J.C., Carter, R.D. and Lantz, R.J. (1975) Petroleum geology of Naval Petroleum Reserve No. 1, Elk Hills, Kern County, California. *USGS Professional Paper* **912**.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`Null` *Null Spaces of Matrices*

Description

Given a matrix, `M`, find a matrix `N` giving a basis for the (left) null space. That is `crossprod(N, M) = t(N) %*% M` is an all-zero matrix and `N` has the maximum number of linearly independent columns.

Usage

```
Null(M)
```

Arguments

`M`	Input matrix. A vector is coerced to a 1-column matrix.

Details

For a basis for the (right) null space $\{x : Mx = 0\}$, use `Null(t(M))`.

Value

The matrix `N` with the basis for the (left) null space, or a matrix with zero columns if the matrix `M` is square and of maximal rank.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`qr`, `qr.Q`.

Examples

```
# The function is currently defined as
function(M)
{
    tmp <- qr(M)
    set <- if(tmp$rank == 0L) seq_len(ncol(M)) else  -seq_len(tmp$rank)
    qr.Q(tmp, complete = TRUE)[, set, drop = FALSE]
}
```

oats *Data from an Oats Field Trial*

Description

The yield of oats from a split-plot field trial using three varieties and four levels of manurial treatment. The experiment was laid out in 6 blocks of 3 main plots, each split into 4 sub-plots. The varieties were applied to the main plots and the manurial treatments to the sub-plots.

Usage

```
oats
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`B` Blocks, levels I, II, III, IV, V and VI.

`V` Varieties, 3 levels.

`N` Nitrogen (manurial) treatment, levels 0.0cwt, 0.2cwt, 0.4cwt and 0.6cwt, showing the application in cwt/acre.

`Y` Yields in 1/4lbs per sub-plot, each of area 1/80 acre.

Source

Yates, F. (1935) Complex experiments, *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Suppl.* **2**, 181–247.

Also given in Yates, F. (1970) *Experimental design: Selected papers of Frank Yates, C.B.E, F.R.S.* London: Griffin.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
oats$Nf <- ordered(oats$N, levels = sort(levels(oats$N)))
oats.aov <- aov(Y ~ Nf*V + Error(B/V), data = oats, qr = TRUE)
summary(oats.aov)
summary(oats.aov, split = list(Nf=list(L=1, Dev=2:3)))
par(mfrow = c(1,2), pty = "s")
plot(fitted(oats.aov[[4]]), studres(oats.aov[[4]]))
abline(h = 0, lty = 2)
oats.pr <- proj(oats.aov)
qqnorm(oats.pr[[4]][,"Residuals"], ylab = "Stratum 4 residuals")
qqline(oats.pr[[4]][,"Residuals"])

par(mfrow = c(1,1), pty = "m")
oats.aov2 <- aov(Y ~ N + V + Error(B/V), data = oats, qr = TRUE)
model.tables(oats.aov2, type = "means", se = TRUE)
```

OME *Tests of Auditory Perception in Children with OME*

Description

Experiments were performed on children on their ability to differentiate a signal in broad-band noise. The noise was played from a pair of speakers and a signal was added to just one channel; the subject had to turn his/her head to the channel with the added signal. The signal was either coherent (the amplitude of the noise was increased for a period) or incoherent (independent noise was added for the same period to form the same increase in power).

The threshold used in the original analysis was the stimulus loudness needs to get 75% correct responses. Some of the children had suffered from otitis media with effusion (OME).

Usage

```
OME
```

Format

The `OME` data frame has 1129 rows and 7 columns:

`ID` Subject ID (1 to 99, with some IDs missing). A few subjects were measured at different ages.

`OME` `"low"` or `"high"` or `"N/A"` (at ages other than 30 and 60 months).

`Age` Age of the subject (months).

`Loud` Loudness of stimulus, in decibels.

`Noise` Whether the signal in the stimulus was `"coherent"` or `"incoherent"`.

`Correct` Number of correct responses from `Trials` trials.

`Trials` Number of trials performed.

Background

The experiment was to study otitis media with effusion (OME), a very common childhood condition where the middle ear space, which is normally air-filled, becomes congested by a fluid. There is a concomitant fluctuating, conductive hearing loss which can result in various language, cognitive and social deficits. The term 'binaural hearing' is used to describe the listening conditions in which the brain is processing information from both ears at the same time. The brain computes differences in the intensity and/or timing of signals arriving at each ear which contributes to sound localisation and also to our ability to hear in background noise.

Some years ago, it was found that children of 7–8 years with a history of significant OME had significantly worse binaural hearing than children without such a history, despite having equivalent sensitivity. The question remained as to whether it was the timing, the duration, or the degree of severity of the otitis media episodes during critical periods, which affected later binaural hearing. In an attempt to begin to answer this question, 95 children were monitored for the presence of effusion every month since birth. On the basis of OME experience in their first two years, the test population was split into one group of high OME prevalence and one of low prevalence.

Source

Sarah Hogan, Dept of Physiology, University of Oxford, via Dept of Statistics Consulting Service

Examples

```
# Fit logistic curve from p = 0.5 to p = 1.0
fp1 <- deriv(~ 0.5 + 0.5/(1 + exp(-(x-L75)/scal)),
             c("L75", "scal"),
             function(x,L75,scal)NULL)
nls(Correct/Trials ~ fp1(Loud, L75, scal), data = OME,
    start = c(L75=45, scal=3))
nls(Correct/Trials ~ fp1(Loud, L75, scal),
    data = OME[OME$Noise == "coherent",],
    start=c(L75=45, scal=3))
nls(Correct/Trials ~ fp1(Loud, L75, scal),
    data = OME[OME$Noise == "incoherent",],
    start = c(L75=45, scal=3))

# individual fits for each experiment

aa <- factor(OME$Age)
ab <- 10*OME$ID + unclass(aa)
ac <- unclass(factor(ab))
OME$UID <- as.vector(ac)
OME$UIDn <- OME$UID + 0.1*(OME$Noise == "incoherent")
rm(aa, ab, ac)
OMEi <- OME

library(nlme)
fp2 <- deriv(~ 0.5 + 0.5/(1 + exp(-(x-L75)/2)),
            "L75", function(x,L75) NULL)
dec <- getOption("OutDec")
options(show.error.messages = FALSE, OutDec=".")
OMEi.nls <- nlsList(Correct/Trials ~ fp2(Loud, L75) | UIDn,
   data = OMEi, start = list(L75=45), control = list(maxiter=100))
options(show.error.messages = TRUE, OutDec=dec)
tmp <- sapply(OMEi.nls, function(X)
              {if(is.null(X)) NA else as.vector(coef(X))})
OMEif <- data.frame(UID = round(as.numeric((names(tmp)))),
         Noise = rep(c("coherent", "incoherent"), 110),
         L75 = as.vector(tmp), stringsAsFactors = TRUE)
OMEif$Age <- OME$Age[match(OMEif$UID, OME$UID)]
OMEif$OME <- OME$OME[match(OMEif$UID, OME$UID)]
OMEif <- OMEif[OMEif$L75 > 30,]
summary(lm(L75 ~ Noise/Age, data = OMEif, na.action = na.omit))
summary(lm(L75 ~ Noise/(Age + OME), data = OMEif,
           subset = (Age >= 30 & Age <= 60),
           na.action = na.omit), cor = FALSE)

# Or fit by weighted least squares
fpl75 <- deriv(~ sqrt(n)*(r/n - 0.5 - 0.5/(1 + exp(-(x-L75)/scal))),
               c("L75", "scal"),
               function(r,n,x,L75,scal) NULL)
nls(0 ~ fpl75(Correct, Trials, Loud, L75, scal),
    data = OME[OME$Noise == "coherent",],
    start = c(L75=45, scal=3))
nls(0 ~ fpl75(Correct, Trials, Loud, L75, scal),
    data = OME[OME$Noise == "incoherent",],
    start = c(L75=45, scal=3))
```

```
# Test to see if the curves shift with age
fpl75age <- deriv(~sqrt(n)*(r/n -  0.5 - 0.5/(1 +
                  exp(-(x-L75-slope*age)/scal))),
                  c("L75", "slope", "scal"),
                  function(r,n,x,age,L75,slope,scal) NULL)
OME.nls1 <-
nls(0 ~ fpl75age(Correct, Trials, Loud, Age, L75, slope, scal),
    data = OME[OME$Noise == "coherent",],
    start = c(L75=45, slope=0, scal=2))
sqrt(diag(vcov(OME.nls1)))

OME.nls2 <-
nls(0 ~ fpl75age(Correct, Trials, Loud, Age, L75, slope, scal),
    data = OME[OME$Noise == "incoherent",],
    start = c(L75=45, slope=0, scal=2))
sqrt(diag(vcov(OME.nls2)))

# Now allow random effects by using NLME
OMEf <- OME[rep(1:nrow(OME), OME$Trials),]
OMEf$Resp <- with(OME, rep(rep(c(1,0), length(Trials)),
                           t(cbind(Correct, Trials-Correct))))
OMEf <- OMEf[, -match(c("Correct", "Trials"), names(OMEf))]

## Not run: ## these fail in R on most platforms
fp2 <- deriv(~ 0.5 + 0.5/(1 + exp(-(x-L75)/exp(lsc))),
             c("L75", "lsc"),
             function(x, L75, lsc) NULL)
try(summary(nlme(Resp ~ fp2(Loud, L75, lsc),
     fixed = list(L75 ~ Age, lsc ~ 1),
     random = L75 + lsc ~ 1 | UID,
     data = OMEf[OMEf$Noise == "coherent",], method = "ML",
     start = list(fixed=c(L75=c(48.7, -0.03), lsc=0.24)), verbose = TRUE)))

try(summary(nlme(Resp ~ fp2(Loud, L75, lsc),
     fixed = list(L75 ~ Age, lsc ~ 1),
     random = L75 + lsc ~ 1 | UID,
     data = OMEf[OMEf$Noise == "incoherent",], method = "ML",
     start = list(fixed=c(L75=c(41.5, -0.1), lsc=0)), verbose = TRUE)))

## End(Not run)
```

`painters` *The Painter's Data of de Piles*

Description

The subjective assessment, on a 0 to 20 integer scale, of 54 classical painters. The painters were assessed on four characteristics: composition, drawing, colour and expression. The data is due to the Eighteenth century art critic, de Piles.

Usage

```
painters
```

Format

The row names of the data frame are the painters. The components are:

`Composition` Composition score.

`Drawing` Drawing score.

`Colour` Colour score.

`Expression` Expression score.

`School` The school to which a painter belongs, as indicated by a factor level code as follows: `"A"`: Renaissance; `"B"`: Mannerist; `"C"`: Seicento; `"D"`: Venetian; `"E"`: Lombard; `"F"`: Sixteenth Century; `"G"`: Seventeenth Century; `"H"`: French.

Source

A. J. Weekes (1986) *A Genstat Primer.* Edward Arnold.

M. Davenport and G. Studdert-Kennedy (1972) The statistical analysis of aesthetic judgement: an exploration. *Applied Statistics* **21**, 324–333.

I. T. Jolliffe (1986) *Principal Component Analysis.* Springer.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`pairs.lda` *Produce Pairwise Scatterplots from an 'lda' Fit*

Description

Pairwise scatterplot of the data on the linear discriminants.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lda
pairs(x, labels = colnames(x), panel = panel.lda,
     dimen, abbrev = FALSE, ..., cex=0.7, type = c("std", "trellis"))
```

Arguments

`x`	Object of class `"lda"`.
`labels`	vector of character strings for labelling the variables.
`panel`	panel function to plot the data in each panel.
`dimen`	The number of linear discriminants to be used for the plot; if this exceeds the number determined by `x` the smaller value is used.
`abbrev`	whether the group labels are abbreviated on the plots. If `abbrev > 0` this gives `minlength` in the call to `abbreviate`.
`...`	additional arguments for `pairs.default`.
`cex`	graphics parameter `cex` for labels on plots.
`type`	type of plot. The default is in the style of `pairs.default`; the style `"trellis"` uses the Trellis function `splom`.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function `pairs()` for class `"lda"`. It can be invoked by calling `pairs(x)` for an object `x` of the appropriate class, or directly by calling `pairs.lda(x)` regardless of the class of the object.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`pairs`

`parcoord` *Parallel Coordinates Plot*

Description

Parallel coordinates plot

Usage

```
parcoord(x, col = 1, lty = 1, var.label = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix or data frame who columns represent variables. Missing values are allowed.
`col`	A vector of colours, recycled as necessary for each observation.
`lty`	A vector of line types, recycled as necessary for each observation.
`var.label`	If `TRUE`, each variable's axis is labelled with maximum and minimum values.
`...`	Further graphics parameters which are passed to `matplot`.

Side Effects

a parallel coordinates plots is drawn.

Author(s)

B. D. Ripley. Enhancements based on ideas and code by Fabian Scheipl.

References

Wegman, E. J. (1990) Hyperdimensional data analysis using parallel coordinates. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **85**, 664–675.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
parcoord(state.x77[, c(7, 4, 6, 2, 5, 3)])

ir <- rbind(iris3[,,1], iris3[,,2], iris3[,,3])
parcoord(log(ir)[, c(3, 4, 2, 1)], col = 1 + (0:149)%/%50)
```

petrol *N. L. Prater's Petrol Refinery Data*

Description

The yield of a petroleum refining process with four covariates. The crude oil appears to come from only 10 distinct samples.

These data were originally used by Prater (1956) to build an estimation equation for the yield of the refining process of crude oil to gasoline.

Usage

```
petrol
```

Format

The variables are as follows

`No` crude oil sample identification label. (Factor.)

`SG` specific gravity, degrees API. (Constant within sample.)

`VP` vapour pressure in pounds per square inch. (Constant within sample.)

`V10` volatility of crude; ASTM 10% point. (Constant within sample.)

`EP` desired volatility of gasoline. (The end point. Varies within sample.)

`Y` yield as a percentage of crude.

Source

N. H. Prater (1956) Estimate gasoline yields from crudes. *Petroleum Refiner* **35**, 236–238.

This dataset is also given in D. J. Hand, F. Daly, K. McConway, D. Lunn and E. Ostrowski (eds) (1994) *A Handbook of Small Data Sets.* Chapman & Hall.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
library(nlme)
Petrol <- petrol
Petrol[, 2:5] <- scale(as.matrix(Petrol[, 2:5]), scale = FALSE)
pet3.lme <- lme(Y ~ SG + VP + V10 + EP,
                random = ~ 1 | No, data = Petrol)
pet3.lme <- update(pet3.lme, method = "ML")
pet4.lme <- update(pet3.lme, fixed = Y ~ V10 + EP)
anova(pet4.lme, pet3.lme)
```

`Pima.tr` *Diabetes in Pima Indian Women*

Description

A population of women who were at least 21 years old, of Pima Indian heritage and living near Phoenix, Arizona, was tested for diabetes according to World Health Organization criteria. The data were collected by the US National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. We used the 532 complete records after dropping the (mainly missing) data on serum insulin.

Usage

```
Pima.tr
Pima.tr2
Pima.te
```

Format

These data frames contains the following columns:

`npreg` number of pregnancies.

`glu` plasma glucose concentration in an oral glucose tolerance test.

`bp` diastolic blood pressure (mm Hg).

`skin` triceps skin fold thickness (mm).

`bmi` body mass index (weight in kg/(height in m)^2).

`ped` diabetes pedigree function.

`age` age in years.

`type` `Yes` or `No`, for diabetic according to WHO criteria.

Details

The training set `Pima.tr` contains a randomly selected set of 200 subjects, and `Pima.te` contains the remaining 332 subjects. `Pima.tr2` contains `Pima.tr` plus 100 subjects with missing values in the explanatory variables.

Source

Smith, J. W., Everhart, J. E., Dickson, W. C., Knowler, W. C. and Johannes, R. S. (1988) Using the ADAP learning algorithm to forecast the onset of *diabetes mellitus*. In *Proceedings of the Symposium on Computer Applications in Medical Care (Washington, 1988),* ed. R. A. Greenes, pp. 261–265. Los Alamitos, CA: IEEE Computer Society Press.

Ripley, B.D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

plot.lda *Plot Method for Class 'lda'*

Description

Plots a set of data on one, two or more linear discriminants.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lda
plot(x, panel = panel.lda, ..., cex = 0.7, dimen,
     abbrev = FALSE, xlab = "LD1", ylab = "LD2")
```

Arguments

x	An object of class "lda".
panel	the panel function used to plot the data.
...	additional arguments to pairs, ldahist or eqscplot.
cex	graphics parameter cex for labels on plots.
dimen	The number of linear discriminants to be used for the plot; if this exceeds the number determined by x the smaller value is used.
abbrev	whether the group labels are abbreviated on the plots. If abbrev > 0 this gives minlength in the call to abbreviate.
xlab	label for the x axis
ylab	label for the y axis

Details

This function is a method for the generic function plot() for class "lda". It can be invoked by calling plot(x) for an object x of the appropriate class, or directly by calling plot.lda(x) regardless of the class of the object.

The behaviour is determined by the value of dimen. For dimen > 2, a pairs plot is used. For dimen = 2, an equiscaled scatter plot is drawn. For dimen = 1, a set of histograms or density plots are drawn. Use argument type to match "histogram" or "density" or "both".

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

pairs.lda, ldahist, lda, predict.lda

plot.mca — *Plot Method for Objects of Class 'mca'*

Description

Plot a multiple correspondence analysis.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class mca
plot(x, rows = TRUE, col, cex = par("cex"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	An object of class "mca".
rows	Should the coordinates for the rows be plotted, or just the vertices for the levels?
col, cex	The colours and cex to be used for the row points and level vertices respectively.
...	Additional parameters to plot.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

mca, predict.mca

Examples

```
plot(mca(farms, abbrev = TRUE))
```

plot.profile — *Plotting Functions for 'profile' Objects*

Description

plot and pairs methods for objects of class "profile".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class profile
plot(x, ...)
## S3 method for class profile
pairs(x, colours = 2:3, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "profile".
colours	Colours to be used for the mean curves conditional on x and y respectively.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This is the main `plot` method for objects created by `profile.glm`. It can also be called on objects created by `profile.nls`, but they have a specific method, `plot.profile.nls`.

The `pairs` method shows, for each pair of parameters x and y, two curves intersecting at the maximum likelihood estimate, which give the loci of the points at which the tangents to the contours of the bivariate profile likelihood become vertical and horizontal, respectively. In the case of an exactly bivariate normal profile likelihood, these two curves would be straight lines giving the conditional means of y|x and x|y, and the contours would be exactly elliptical.

Author(s)

Originally, D. M. Bates and W. N. Venables. (For S in 1996.)

See Also

`profile.glm`, `profile.nls`.

Examples

```
## see ?profile.glm for an example using glm fits.

## a version of example(profile.nls) from R >= 2.8.0
fm1 <- nls(demand ~ SSasympOrig(Time, A, lrc), data = BOD)
pr1 <- profile(fm1, alpha = 0.1)
MASS:::plot.profile(pr1)
pairs(pr1) # a little odd since the parameters are highly correlated

## an example from ?nls
x <- -(1:100)/10
y <- 100 + 10 * exp(x / 2) + rnorm(x)/10
nlmod <- nls(y ~  Const + A * exp(B * x), start=list(Const=100, A=10, B=1))
pairs(profile(nlmod))
```

---

polr *Ordered Logistic or Probit Regression*

Description

Fits a logistic or probit regression model to an ordered factor response. The default logistic case is *proportional odds logistic regression*, after which the function is named.

Usage

```
polr(formula, data, weights, start, ..., subset, na.action,
     contrasts = NULL, Hess = FALSE, model = TRUE,
     method = c("logistic", "probit", "loglog", "cloglog", "cauchit"))
```

Arguments

formula	a formula expression as for regression models, of the form response ~ predictors. The response should be a factor (preferably an ordered factor), which will be interpreted as an ordinal response, with levels ordered as in the factor. The model must have an intercept: attempts to remove one will lead to a warning and be ignored. An offset may be used. See the documentation of formula for other details.
data	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables occurring in formula.
weights	optional case weights in fitting. Default to 1.
start	initial values for the parameters. This is in the format c(coefficients, zeta): see the Values section.
...	additional arguments to be passed to optim, most often a control argument.
subset	expression saying which subset of the rows of the data should be used in the fit. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a function to filter missing data.
contrasts	a list of contrasts to be used for some or all of the factors appearing as variables in the model formula.
Hess	logical for whether the Hessian (the observed information matrix) should be returned. Use this if you intend to call summary or vcov on the fit.
model	logical for whether the model matrix should be returned.
method	logistic or probit or (complementary) log-log or cauchit (corresponding to a Cauchy latent variable).

Details

This model is what Agresti (2002) calls a *cumulative link* model. The basic interpretation is as a *coarsened* version of a latent variable Y_i which has a logistic or normal or extreme-value or Cauchy distribution with scale parameter one and a linear model for the mean. The ordered factor which is observed is which bin Y_i falls into with breakpoints

$$\zeta_0 = -\infty < \zeta_1 < \cdots < \zeta_K = \infty$$

This leads to the model

$$\text{logit} P(Y \le k|x) = \zeta_k - \eta$$

with *logit* replaced by *probit* for a normal latent variable, and η being the linear predictor, a linear function of the explanatory variables (with no intercept). Note that it is quite common for other software to use the opposite sign for η (and hence the coefficients beta).

In the logistic case, the left-hand side of the last display is the log odds of category k or less, and since these are log odds which differ only by a constant for different k, the odds are proportional. Hence the term *proportional odds logistic regression*.

The log-log and complementary log-log links are the increasing functions $F^{-1}(p) = -log(-log(p))$ and $F^{-1}(p) = log(-log(1-p))$; some call the first the 'negative log-log' link. These correspond to a latent variable with the extreme-value distribution for the maximum and minimum respectively.

A *proportional hazards* model for grouped survival times can be obtained by using the complementary log-log link with grouping ordered by increasing times.

predict, summary, vcov, anova, model.frame and an extractAIC method for use with stepAIC (and step). There are also profile and confint methods.

Value

A object of class "polr". This has components

coefficients	the coefficients of the linear predictor, which has no intercept.
zeta	the intercepts for the class boundaries.
deviance	the residual deviance.
fitted.values	a matrix, with a column for each level of the response.
lev	the names of the response levels.
terms	the terms structure describing the model.
df.residual	the number of residual degrees of freedoms, calculated using the weights.
edf	the (effective) number of degrees of freedom used by the model
n, nobs	the (effective) number of observations, calculated using the weights. (nobs is for use by stepAIC.
call	the matched call.
method	the matched method used.
convergence	the convergence code returned by optim.
niter	the number of function and gradient evaluations used by optim.
lp	the linear predictor (including any offset).
Hessian	(if Hess is true). Note that this is a numerical approximation derived from the optimization proces.
model	(if model is true).

Note

The vcov method uses the approximate Hessian: for reliable results the model matrix should be sensibly scaled with all columns having range the order of one.

Prior to version 7.3-32, method = "cloglog" confusingly gave the log-log link, implicitly assuming the first response level was the 'best'.

References

Agresti, A. (2002) *Categorical Data.* Second edition. Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

optim, glm, multinom.

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
house.plr <- polr(Sat ~ Infl + Type + Cont, weights = Freq, data = housing)
house.plr
summary(house.plr, digits = 3)
## slightly worse fit from
summary(update(house.plr, method = "probit", Hess = TRUE), digits = 3)
## although it is not really appropriate, can fit
summary(update(house.plr, method = "loglog", Hess = TRUE), digits = 3)
```

```
summary(update(house.plr, method = "cloglog", Hess = TRUE), digits = 3)

predict(house.plr, housing, type = "p")
addterm(house.plr, ~.^2, test = "Chisq")
house.plr2 <- stepAIC(house.plr, ~.^2)
house.plr2$anova
anova(house.plr, house.plr2)

house.plr <- update(house.plr, Hess=TRUE)
pr <- profile(house.plr)
confint(pr)
plot(pr)
pairs(pr)
```

`predict.glmmPQL` *Predict Method for glmmPQL Fits*

Description

Obtains predictions from a fitted generalized linear model with random effects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glmmPQL
predict(object, newdata = NULL, type = c("link", "response"),
       level, na.action = na.pass, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a fitted object of class inheriting from `"glmmPQL"`.
`newdata`	optionally, a data frame in which to look for variables with which to predict.
`type`	the type of prediction required. The default is on the scale of the linear predictors; the alternative `"response"` is on the scale of the response variable. Thus for a default binomial model the default predictions are of log-odds (probabilities on logit scale) and `type = "response"` gives the predicted probabilities.
`level`	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in obtaining the predictions. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population predictions. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
`na.action`	function determining what should be done with missing values in `newdata`. The default is to predict `NA`.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

If `level` is a single integer, a vector otherwise a data frame.

See Also

`glmmPQL`, `predict.lme`.

Examples

```
fit <- glmmPQL(y ~ trt + I(week > 2), random = ~1 |  ID,
               family = binomial, data = bacteria)
predict(fit, bacteria, level = 0, type="response")
predict(fit, bacteria, level = 1, type="response")
```

`predict.lda` *Classify Multivariate Observations by Linear Discrimination*

Description

Classify multivariate observations in conjunction with `lda`, and also project data onto the linear discriminants.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lda
predict(object, newdata, prior = object$prior, dimen,
        method = c("plug-in", "predictive", "debiased"), ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	object of class `"lda"`
`newdata`	data frame of cases to be classified or, if `object` has a formula, a data frame with columns of the same names as the variables used. A vector will be interpreted as a row vector. If newdata is missing, an attempt will be made to retrieve the data used to fit the `lda` object.
`prior`	The prior probabilities of the classes, by default the proportions in the training set or what was set in the call to `lda`.
`dimen`	the dimension of the space to be used. If this is less than `min(p, ng-1)`, only the first `dimen` discriminant components are used (except for `method="predictive"`), and only those dimensions are returned in `x`.
`method`	This determines how the parameter estimation is handled. With `"plug-in"` (the default) the usual unbiased parameter estimates are used and assumed to be correct. With `"debiased"` an unbiased estimator of the log posterior probabilities is used, and with `"predictive"` the parameter estimates are integrated out using a vague prior.
`...`	arguments based from or to other methods

Details

This function is a method for the generic function `predict()` for class `"lda"`. It can be invoked by calling `predict(x)` for an object `x` of the appropriate class, or directly by calling `predict.lda(x)` regardless of the class of the object.

Missing values in `newdata` are handled by returning `NA` if the linear discriminants cannot be evaluated. If `newdata` is omitted and the `na.action` of the fit omitted cases, these will be omitted on the prediction.

This version centres the linear discriminants so that the weighted mean (weighted by `prior`) of the group centroids is at the origin.

Value

a list with components

class	The MAP classification (a factor)
posterior	posterior probabilities for the classes
x	the scores of test cases on up to dimen discriminant variables

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

lda, qda, predict.qda

Examples

```
tr <- sample(1:50, 25)
train <- rbind(iris3[tr,,1], iris3[tr,,2], iris3[tr,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[-tr,,1], iris3[-tr,,2], iris3[-tr,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
z <- lda(train, cl)
predict(z, test)$class
```

---

predict.lqs *Predict from an lqs Fit*

Description

Predict from an resistant regression fitted by lqs.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lqs
predict(object, newdata, na.action = na.pass, ...)
```

Arguments

object	object inheriting from class "lqs"
newdata	matrix or data frame of cases to be predicted or, if object has a formula, a data frame with columns of the same names as the variables used. A vector will be interpreted as a row vector. If newdata is missing, an attempt will be made to retrieve the data used to fit the lqs object.
na.action	function determining what should be done with missing values in newdata. The default is to predict NA.
...	arguments to be passed from or to other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function `predict()` for class `lqs`. It can be invoked by calling `predict(x)` for an object `x` of the appropriate class, or directly by calling `predict.lqs(x)` regardless of the class of the object.

Missing values in `newdata` are handled by returning `NA` if the linear fit cannot be evaluated. If `newdata` is omitted and the `na.action` of the fit omitted cases, these will be omitted on the prediction.

Value

A vector of predictions.

Author(s)

B.D. Ripley

See Also

`lqs`

Examples

```
set.seed(123)
fm <- lqs(stack.loss ~ ., data = stackloss, method = "S", nsamp = "exact")
predict(fm, stackloss)
```

---

predict.mca *Predict Method for Class 'mca'*

Description

Used to compute coordinates for additional rows or additional factors in a multiple correspondence analysis.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class mca
predict(object, newdata, type = c("row", "factor"), ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object of class `"mca"`, usually the result of a call to `mca`.
`newdata`	A data frame containing *either* additional rows of the factors used to fit `object` *or* additional factors for the cases used in the original fit.
`type`	Are predictions required for further rows or for new factors?
`...`	Additional arguments from `predict`: unused.

Value

If `type = "row"`, the coordinates for the additional rows.

If `type = "factor"`, the coordinates of the column vertices for the levels of the new factors.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

mca, plot.mca

`predict.qda` *Classify from Quadratic Discriminant Analysis*

Description

Classify multivariate observations in conjunction with qda

Usage

```
## S3 method for class qda
predict(object, newdata, prior = object$prior,
        method = c("plug-in", "predictive", "debiased", "looCV"), ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	object of class `"qda"`
`newdata`	data frame of cases to be classified or, if `object` has a formula, a data frame with columns of the same names as the variables used. A vector will be interpreted as a row vector. If newdata is missing, an attempt will be made to retrieve the data used to fit the qda object.
`prior`	The prior probabilities of the classes, by default the proportions in the training set or what was set in the call to qda.
`method`	This determines how the parameter estimation is handled. With `"plug-in"` (the default) the usual unbiased parameter estimates are used and assumed to be correct. With `"debiased"` an unbiased estimator of the log posterior probabilities is used, and with `"predictive"` the parameter estimates are integrated out using a vague prior. With `"looCV"` the leave-one-out cross-validation fits to the original dataset are computed and returned.
`...`	arguments based from or to other methods

Details

This function is a method for the generic function `predict()` for class `"qda"`. It can be invoked by calling `predict(x)` for an object `x` of the appropriate class, or directly by calling `predict.qda(x)` regardless of the class of the object.

Missing values in `newdata` are handled by returning `NA` if the quadratic discriminants cannot be evaluated. If `newdata` is omitted and the `na.action` of the fit omitted cases, these will be omitted on the prediction.

Value

a list with components

class	The MAP classification (a factor)
posterior	posterior probabilities for the classes

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

qda, lda, predict.lda

Examples

```
tr <- sample(1:50, 25)
train <- rbind(iris3[tr,,1], iris3[tr,,2], iris3[tr,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[-tr,,1], iris3[-tr,,2], iris3[-tr,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
zq <- qda(train, cl)
predict(zq, test)$class
```

---

profile.glm *Method for Profiling glm Objects*

Description

Investigates the profile log-likelihood function for a fitted model of class "glm".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glm
profile(fitted, which = 1:p, alpha = 0.01, maxsteps = 10,
        del = zmax/5, trace = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

fitted	the original fitted model object.
which	the original model parameters which should be profiled. This can be a numeric or character vector. By default, all parameters are profiled.
alpha	highest significance level allowed for the profile t-statistics.
maxsteps	maximum number of points to be used for profiling each parameter.
del	suggested change on the scale of the profile t-statistics. Default value chosen to allow profiling at about 10 parameter values.
trace	logical: should the progress of profiling be reported?
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The profile t-statistic is defined as the square root of change in sum-of-squares divided by residual standard error with an appropriate sign.

Value

A list of classes `"profile.glm"` and `"profile"` with an element for each parameter being profiled. The elements are data-frames with two variables

`par.vals`	a matrix of parameter values for each fitted model.
`tau`	the profile t-statistics.

Author(s)

Originally, D. M. Bates and W. N. Venables. (For S in 1996.)

See Also

`glm`, `profile`, `plot.profile`

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
ldose <- rep(0:5, 2)
numdead <- c(1, 4, 9, 13, 18, 20, 0, 2, 6, 10, 12, 16)
sex <- factor(rep(c("M", "F"), c(6, 6)))
SF <- cbind(numdead, numalive = 20 - numdead)
budworm.lg <- glm(SF ~ sex*ldose, family = binomial)
pr1 <- profile(budworm.lg)
plot(pr1)
pairs(pr1)
```

---

qda *Quadratic Discriminant Analysis*

Description

Quadratic discriminant analysis.

Usage

```
qda(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
qda(formula, data, ..., subset, na.action)

## Default S3 method:
qda(x, grouping, prior = proportions,
    method, CV = FALSE, nu, ...)

## S3 method for class data.frame
qda(x, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class matrix
qda(x, grouping, ..., subset, na.action)
```

Arguments

formula	A formula of the form `groups ~ x1 + x2 + ...` That is, the response is the grouping factor and the right hand side specifies the (non-factor) discriminators.
data	Data frame from which variables specified in `formula` are preferentially to be taken.
x	(required if no formula is given as the principal argument.) a matrix or data frame or Matrix containing the explanatory variables.
grouping	(required if no formula principal argument is given.) a factor specifying the class for each observation.
prior	the prior probabilities of class membership. If unspecified, the class proportions for the training set are used. If specified, the probabilities should be specified in the order of the factor levels.
subset	An index vector specifying the cases to be used in the training sample. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
na.action	A function to specify the action to be taken if NAs are found. The default action is for the procedure to fail. An alternative is na.omit, which leads to rejection of cases with missing values on any required variable. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
method	`"moment"` for standard estimators of the mean and variance, `"mle"` for MLEs, `"mve"` to use `cov.mve`, or `"t"` for robust estimates based on a t distribution.
CV	If true, returns results (classes and posterior probabilities) for leave-out-out cross-validation. Note that if the prior is estimated, the proportions in the whole dataset are used.
nu	degrees of freedom for `method = "t"`.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Uses a QR decomposition which will give an error message if the within-group variance is singular for any group.

Value

an object of class `"qda"` containing the following components:

prior	the prior probabilities used.
means	the group means.
scaling	for each group `i`, `scaling[,,i]` is an array which transforms observations so that within-groups covariance matrix is spherical.
ldet	a vector of half log determinants of the dispersion matrix.
lev	the levels of the grouping factor.
terms	(if formula is a formula) an object of mode expression and class term summarizing the formula.

call	the (matched) function call.

unless CV=TRUE, when the return value is a list with components:

class	The MAP classification (a factor)
posterior	posterior probabilities for the classes

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

predict.qda, lda

Examples

```
tr <- sample(1:50, 25)
train <- rbind(iris3[tr,,1], iris3[tr,,2], iris3[tr,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[-tr,,1], iris3[-tr,,2], iris3[-tr,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
z <- qda(train, cl)
predict(z,test)$class
```

---

quine *Absenteeism from School in Rural New South Wales*

Description

The quine data frame has 146 rows and 5 columns. Children from Walgett, New South Wales, Australia, were classified by Culture, Age, Sex and Learner status and the number of days absent from school in a particular school year was recorded.

Usage

```
quine
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Eth ethnic background: Aboriginal or Not, ("A" or "N").

Sex sex: factor with levels ("F" or "M").

Age age group: Primary ("F0"), or forms "F1," "F2" or "F3".

Lrn learner status: factor with levels Average or Slow learner, ("AL" or "SL").

Days days absent from school in the year.

Source

S. Quine, quoted in Aitkin, M. (1978) The analysis of unbalanced cross classifications (with discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society series A* **141**, 195–223.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`Rabbit` *Blood Pressure in Rabbits*

Description

Five rabbits were studied on two occasions, after treatment with saline (control) and after treatment with the $5-HT_3$ antagonist MDL 72222. After each treatment ascending doses of phenylbiguanide were injected intravenously at 10 minute intervals and the responses of mean blood pressure measured. The goal was to test whether the cardiogenic chemoreflex elicited by phenylbiguanide depends on the activation of $5-HT_3$ receptors.

Usage

```
Rabbit
```

Format

This data frame contains 60 rows and the following variables:

`BPchange` change in blood pressure relative to the start of the experiment.

`Dose` dose of Phenylbiguanide in micrograms.

`Run` label of run (`"C1"` to `"C5"`, then `"M1"` to `"M5"`).

`Treatment` placebo or the $5-HT_3$ antagonist MDL 72222.

`Animal` label of animal used (`"R1"` to `"R5"`).

Source

J. Ludbrook (1994) Repeated measurements and multiple comparisons in cardiovascular research. *Cardiovascular Research* **28**, 303–311.
[The numerical data are not in the paper but were supplied by Professor Ludbrook]

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`rational` *Rational Approximation*

Description

Find rational approximations to the components of a real numeric object using a standard continued fraction method.

Usage

```
rational(x, cycles = 10, max.denominator = 2000, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	Any object of mode numeric. Missing values are now allowed.
`cycles`	The maximum number of steps to be used in the continued fraction approximation process.
`max.denominator`	An early termination criterion. If any partial denominator exceeds `max.denominator` the continued fraction stops at that point.
`...`	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Each component is first expanded in a continued fraction of the form

```
x = floor(x) + 1/(p1 + 1/(p2 + ...)))
```

where `p1`, `p2`, `...`are positive integers, terminating either at `cycles` terms or when a `pj > max.denominator`. The continued fraction is then re-arranged to retrieve the numerator and denominator as integers and the ratio returned as the value.

Value

A numeric object with the same attributes as `x` but with entries rational approximations to the values. This effectively rounds relative to the size of the object and replaces very small entries by zero.

See Also

`fractions`

Examples

```
X <- matrix(runif(25), 5, 5)
zapsmall(solve(X, X/5)) # print near-zeroes as zero
rational(solve(X, X/5))
```

renumerate — *Convert a Formula Transformed by 'denumerate'*

Description

`denumerate` converts a formula written using the conventions of `loglm` into one that `terms` is able to process. `renumerate` converts it back again to a form like the original.

Usage

```
renumerate(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	A formula, normally as modified by `denumerate`.

Details

This is an inverse function to `denumerate`. It is only needed since `terms` returns an expanded form of the original formula where the non-marginal terms are exposed. This expanded form is mapped back into a form corresponding to the one that the user originally supplied.

Value

A formula where all variables with names of the form `.vn`, where `n` is an integer, converted to numbers, `n`, as allowed by the formula conventions of `loglm`.

See Also

`denumerate`

Examples

```
denumerate(~(1+2+3)^3 + a/b)
## ~ (.v1 + .v2 + .v3)^3 + a/b
renumerate(.Last.value)
## ~ (1 + 2 + 3)^3 + a/b
```

rlm — *Robust Fitting of Linear Models*

Description

Fit a linear model by robust regression using an M estimator.

Usage

```
rlm(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
rlm(formula, data, weights, ..., subset, na.action,
    method = c("M", "MM", "model.frame"),
    wt.method = c("inv.var", "case"),
    model = TRUE, x.ret = TRUE, y.ret = FALSE, contrasts = NULL)

## Default S3 method:
rlm(x, y, weights, ..., w = rep(1, nrow(x)),
    init = "ls", psi = psi.huber,
    scale.est = c("MAD", "Huber", "proposal 2"), k2 = 1.345,
    method = c("M", "MM"), wt.method = c("inv.var", "case"),
    maxit = 20, acc = 1e-4, test.vec = "resid", lqs.control = NULL)

psi.huber(u, k = 1.345, deriv = 0)
psi.hampel(u, a = 2, b = 4, c = 8, deriv = 0)
psi.bisquare(u, c = 4.685, deriv = 0)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula of the form `y ~ x1 + x2 + ...`.
data	data frame from which variables specified in `formula` are preferentially to be taken.
weights	a vector of prior weights for each case.
subset	An index vector specifying the cases to be used in fitting.
na.action	A function to specify the action to be taken if NAs are found. The 'factory-fresh' default action in is `na.omit`, and can be changed by `options(na.action=)`.
x	a matrix or data frame containing the explanatory variables.
y	the response: a vector of length the number of rows of `x`.
method	currently either M-estimation or MM-estimation or (for the `formula` method only) find the model frame. MM-estimation is M-estimation with Tukey's bi-weight initialized by a specific S-estimator. See the 'Details' section.
wt.method	are the weights case weights (giving the relative importance of case, so a weight of 2 means there are two of these) or the inverse of the variances, so a weight of two means this error is half as variable?
model	should the model frame be returned in the object?
x.ret	should the model matrix be returned in the object?
y.ret	should the response be returned in the object?
contrasts	optional contrast specifications: see `lm`.
w	(optional) initial down-weighting for each case.
init	(optional) initial values for the coefficients OR a method to find initial values OR the result of a fit with a `coef` component. Known methods are `"ls"` (the default) for an initial least-squares fit using weights `w*weights`, and `"lts"` for an unweighted least-trimmed squares fit with 200 samples.
psi	the psi function is specified by this argument. It must give (possibly by name) a function `g(x, ..., deriv)` that for `deriv=0` returns psi(x)/x and for `deriv=1` returns psi'(x). Tuning constants will be passed in via `...`.

scale.est	method of scale estimation: re-scaled MAD of the residuals (default) or Huber's proposal 2 (which can be selected by either "Huber" or "proposal 2").
k2	tuning constant used for Huber proposal 2 scale estimation.
maxit	the limit on the number of IWLS iterations.
acc	the accuracy for the stopping criterion.
test.vec	the stopping criterion is based on changes in this vector.
...	additional arguments to be passed to rlm.default or to the psi function.
lqs.control	An optional list of control values for lqs.
u	numeric vector of evaluation points.
k, a, b, c	tuning constants.
deriv	0 or 1: compute values of the psi function or of its first derivative.

Details

Fitting is done by iterated re-weighted least squares (IWLS).

Psi functions are supplied for the Huber, Hampel and Tukey bisquare proposals as psi.huber, psi.hampel and psi.bisquare. Huber's corresponds to a convex optimization problem and gives a unique solution (up to collinearity). The other two will have multiple local minima, and a good starting point is desirable.

Selecting method = "MM" selects a specific set of options which ensures that the estimator has a high breakdown point. The initial set of coefficients and the final scale are selected by an S-estimator with k0 = 1.548; this gives (for $n \gg p$) breakdown point 0.5. The final estimator is an M-estimator with Tukey's biweight and fixed scale that will inherit this breakdown point provided c > k0; this is true for the default value of c that corresponds to 95% relative efficiency at the normal. Case weights are not supported for method = "MM".

Value

An object of class "rlm" inheriting from "lm". Note that the df.residual component is deliberately set to NA to avoid inappropriate estimation of the residual scale from the residual mean square by "lm" methods.

The additional components not in an lm object are

s	the robust scale estimate used
w	the weights used in the IWLS process
psi	the psi function with parameters substituted
conv	the convergence criteria at each iteration
converged	did the IWLS converge?
wresid	a working residual, weighted for "inv.var" weights only.

References

P. J. Huber (1981) *Robust Statistics*. Wiley.

F. R. Hampel, E. M. Ronchetti, P. J. Rousseeuw and W. A. Stahel (1986) *Robust Statistics: The Approach based on Influence Functions*. Wiley.

A. Marazzi (1993) *Algorithms, Routines and S Functions for Robust Statistics*. Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

lm, lqs.

Examples

```
summary(rlm(stack.loss ~ ., stackloss))
rlm(stack.loss ~ ., stackloss, psi = psi.hampel, init = "lts")
rlm(stack.loss ~ ., stackloss, psi = psi.bisquare)
```

---

rms.curv *Relative Curvature Measures for Non-Linear Regression*

Description

Calculates the root mean square parameter effects and intrinsic relative curvatures, c^θ and c^ι, for a fitted nonlinear regression, as defined in Bates & Watts, section 7.3, p. 253ff

Usage

```
rms.curv(obj)
```

Arguments

obj	Fitted model object of class "nls". The model must be fitted using the default algorithm.

Details

The method of section 7.3.1 of Bates & Watts is implemented. The function deriv3 should be used generate a model function with first derivative (gradient) matrix and second derivative (Hessian) array attributes. This function should then be used to fit the nonlinear regression model.

A print method, print.rms.curv, prints the pc and ic components only, suitably annotated.

If either pc or ic exceeds some threshold (0.3 has been suggested) the curvature is unacceptably high for the planar assumption.

Value

A list of class rms.curv with components pc and ic for parameter effects and intrinsic relative curvatures multiplied by sqrt(F), ct and ci for c^θ and c^ι (unmultiplied), and C the C-array as used in section 7.3.1 of Bates & Watts.

References

Bates, D. M, and Watts, D. G. (1988) *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and its Applications.* Wiley, New York.

See Also

deriv3

Examples

```
# The treated sample from the Puromycin data
mmcurve <- deriv3(~ Vm * conc/(K + conc), c("Vm", "K"),
                  function(Vm, K, conc) NULL)
Treated <- Puromycin[Puromycin$state == "treated", ]
(Purfit1 <- nls(rate ~ mmcurve(Vm, K, conc), data = Treated,
                start = list(Vm=200, K=0.1)))
rms.curv(Purfit1)
##Parameter effects: c^theta x sqrt(F) = 0.2121
##        Intrinsic: c^iota  x sqrt(F) = 0.092
```

---

rnegbin *Simulate Negative Binomial Variates*

Description

Function to generate random outcomes from a Negative Binomial distribution, with mean `mu` and variance `mu + mu^2/theta`.

Usage

```
rnegbin(n, mu = n, theta = stop("theta must be specified"))
```

Arguments

`n`	If a scalar, the number of sample values required. If a vector, `length(n)` is the number required and `n` is used as the mean vector if `mu` is not specified.
`mu`	The vector of means. Short vectors are recycled.
`theta`	Vector of values of the `theta` parameter. Short vectors are recycled.

Details

The function uses the representation of the Negative Binomial distribution as a continuous mixture of Poisson distributions with Gamma distributed means. Unlike `rnbinom` the index can be arbitrary.

Value

Vector of random Negative Binomial variate values.

Side Effects

Changes `.Random.seed` in the usual way.

Examples

```
# Negative Binomials with means fitted(fm) and theta = 4.5
fm <- glm.nb(Days ~ ., data = quine)
dummy <- rnegbin(fitted(fm), theta = 4.5)
```

road *Road Accident Deaths in US States*

Description

A data frame with the annual deaths in road accidents for half the US states.

Usage

```
road
```

Format

Columns are:

`state` name.
`deaths` number of deaths.
`drivers` number of drivers (in 10,000s).
`popden` population density in people per square mile.
`rural` length of rural roads, in 1000s of miles.
`temp` average daily maximum temperature in January.
`fuel` fuel consumption in 10,000,000 US gallons per year.

Source

Imperial College, London M.Sc. exercise

rotifer *Numbers of Rotifers by Fluid Density*

Description

The data give the numbers of rotifers falling out of suspension for different fluid densities. There are two species, `pm` *Polyartha major* and `kc`, *Keratella cochlearis* and for each species the number falling out and the total number are given.

Usage

```
rotifer
```

Format

`density` specific density of fluid.
`pm.y` number falling out for *P. major*.
`pm.total` total number of *P. major*.
`kc.y` number falling out for *K. cochlearis*.
`kc.tot` total number of *K. cochlearis*.

Source

D. Collett (1991) *Modelling Binary Data.* Chapman & Hall. p. 217

Rubber *Accelerated Testing of Tyre Rubber*

Description

Data frame from accelerated testing of tyre rubber.

Usage

```
Rubber
```

Format

`loss` the abrasion loss in gm/hr.

`hard` the hardness in Shore units.

`tens` tensile strength in kg/sq m.

Source

O.L. Davies (1947) *Statistical Methods in Research and Production.* Oliver and Boyd, Table 6.1 p. 119.

O.L. Davies and P.L. Goldsmith (1972) *Statistical Methods in Research and Production.* 4th edition, Longmans, Table 8.1 p. 239.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

sammon *Sammon's Non-Linear Mapping*

Description

One form of non-metric multidimensional scaling.

Usage

```
sammon(d, y = cmdscale(d, k), k = 2, niter = 100, trace = TRUE,
       magic = 0.2, tol = 1e-4)
```

Arguments

d	distance structure of the form returned by dist, or a full, symmetric matrix. Data are assumed to be dissimilarities or relative distances, but must be positive except for self-distance. This can contain missing values.
y	An initial configuration. If none is supplied, cmdscale is used to provide the classical solution. (If there are missing values in d, an initial configuration must be provided.) This must not have duplicates.
k	The dimension of the configuration.
niter	The maximum number of iterations.
trace	Logical for tracing optimization. Default TRUE.
magic	initial value of the step size constant in diagonal Newton method.
tol	Tolerance for stopping, in units of stress.

Details

This chooses a two-dimensional configuration to minimize the stress, the sum of squared differences between the input distances and those of the configuration, weighted by the distances, the whole sum being divided by the sum of input distances to make the stress scale-free.

An iterative algorithm is used, which will usually converge in around 50 iterations. As this is necessarily an $O(n^2)$ calculation, it is slow for large datasets. Further, since the configuration is only determined up to rotations and reflections (by convention the centroid is at the origin), the result can vary considerably from machine to machine. In this release the algorithm has been modified by adding a step-length search (magic) to ensure that it always goes downhill.

Value

Two components:

points	A two-column vector of the fitted configuration.
stress	The final stress achieved.

Side Effects

If trace is true, the initial stress and the current stress are printed out every 10 iterations.

References

Sammon, J. W. (1969) A non-linear mapping for data structure analysis. *IEEE Trans. Comput.*, **C-18** 401–409.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks*. Cambridge University Press.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S*. Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

cmdscale, isoMDS

Examples

```
swiss.x <- as.matrix(swiss[, -1])
swiss.sam <- sammon(dist(swiss.x))
plot(swiss.sam$points, type = "n")
text(swiss.sam$points, labels = as.character(1:nrow(swiss.x)))
```

ships *Ships Damage Data*

Description

Data frame giving the number of damage incidents and aggregate months of service by ship type, year of construction, and period of operation.

Usage

```
ships
```

Format

`type` type: `"A"` to `"E"`.

`year` year of construction: 1960–64, 65–69, 70–74, 75–79 (coded as `"60"`, `"65"`, `"70"`, `"75"`).

`period` period of operation : 1960–74, 75–79.

`service` aggregate months of service.

`incidents` number of damage incidents.

Source

P. McCullagh and J. A. Nelder, (1983), *Generalized Linear Models.* Chapman & Hall, section 6.3.2, page 137

shoes *Shoe wear data of Box, Hunter and Hunter*

Description

A list of two vectors, giving the wear of shoes of materials A and B for one foot each of ten boys.

Usage

```
shoes
```

Source

G. E. P. Box, W. G. Hunter and J. S. Hunter (1978) *Statistics for Experimenters.* Wiley, p. 100

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

shrimp *Percentage of Shrimp in Shrimp Cocktail*

Description

A numeric vector with 18 determinations by different laboratories of the amount (percentage of the declared total weight) of shrimp in shrimp cocktail.

Usage

```
shrimp
```

Source

F. J. King and J. J. Ryan (1976) Collaborative study of the determination of the amount of shrimp in shrimp cocktail. *J. Off. Anal. Chem.* **59**, 644–649.

R. G. Staudte and S. J. Sheather (1990) *Robust Estimation and Testing.* Wiley.

shuttle *Space Shuttle Autolander Problem*

Description

The `shuttle` data frame has 256 rows and 7 columns. The first six columns are categorical variables giving example conditions; the seventh is the decision. The first 253 rows are the training set, the last 3 the test conditions.

Usage

```
shuttle
```

Format

This data frame contains the following factor columns:

`stability` stable positioning or not (`stab` / `xstab`).

`error` size of error (`MM` / `SS` / `LX` / `XL`).

`sign` sign of error, positive or negative (`pp` / `nn`).

`wind` wind sign (`head` / `tail`).

`magn` wind strength (`Light` / `Medium` / `Strong` / `Out of Range`).

`vis` visibility (`yes` / `no`).

`use` use the autolander or not. (`auto` / `noauto`.)

Source

D. Michie (1989) Problems of computer-aided concept formation. In *Applications of Expert Systems 2*, ed. J. R. Quinlan, Turing Institute Press / Addison-Wesley, pp. 310–333.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Sitka — *Growth Curves for Sitka Spruce Trees in 1988*

Description

The `Sitka` data frame has 395 rows and 4 columns. It gives repeated measurements on the log-size of 79 Sitka spruce trees, 54 of which were grown in ozone-enriched chambers and 25 were controls. The size was measured five times in 1988, at roughly monthly intervals.

Usage

```
Sitka
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`size` measured size (height times diameter squared) of tree, on log scale.

`Time` time of measurement in days since 1 January 1988.

`tree` number of tree.

`treat` either `"ozone"` for an ozone-enriched chamber or `"control"`.

Source

P. J. Diggle, K.-Y. Liang and S. L. Zeger (1994) *Analysis of Longitudinal Data.* Clarendon Press, Oxford

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`Sitka89`.

Sitka89 — *Growth Curves for Sitka Spruce Trees in 1989*

Description

The `Sitka89` data frame has 632 rows and 4 columns. It gives repeated measurements on the log-size of 79 Sitka spruce trees, 54 of which were grown in ozone-enriched chambers and 25 were controls. The size was measured eight times in 1989, at roughly monthly intervals.

Usage

```
Sitka89
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`size` measured size (height times diameter squared) of tree, on log scale.

`Time` time of measurement in days since 1 January 1988.

`tree` number of tree.

`treat` either `"ozone"` for an ozone-enriched chamber or `"control"`.

Source

P. J. Diggle, K.-Y. Liang and S. L. Zeger (1994) *Analysis of Longitudinal Data.* Clarendon Press, Oxford

See Also

`Sitka`

`Skye` *AFM Compositions of Aphyric Skye Lavas*

Description

The `Skye` data frame has 23 rows and 3 columns.

Usage

```
Skye
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`A` Percentage of sodium and potassium oxides.

`F` Percentage of iron oxide.

`M` Percentage of magnesium oxide.

Source

R. N. Thompson, J. Esson and A. C. Duncan (1972) Major element chemical variation in the Eocene lavas of the Isle of Skye. *J. Petrology*, **13**, 219–253.

References

J. Aitchison (1986) *The Statistical Analysis of Compositional Data.* Chapman and Hall, p.360.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
# ternary() is from the on-line answers.
ternary <- function(X, pch = par("pch"), lcex = 1,
                    add = FALSE, ord = 1:3, ...)
{
  X <- as.matrix(X)
  if(any(X < 0)) stop("X must be non-negative")
  s <- drop(X %*% rep(1, ncol(X)))
  if(any(s<=0)) stop("each row of X must have a positive sum")
  if(max(abs(s-1)) > 1e-6) {
    warning("row(s) of X will be rescaled")
    X <- X / s
  }
  X <- X[, ord]
  s3 <- sqrt(1/3)
  if(!add)
  {
    oldpty <- par("pty")
    on.exit(par(pty=oldpty))
    par(pty="s")
    plot(c(-s3, s3), c(0.5-s3, 0.5+s3), type="n", axes=FALSE,
         xlab="", ylab="")
    polygon(c(0, -s3, s3), c(1, 0, 0), density=0)
    lab <- NULL
    if(!is.null(dn <- dimnames(X))) lab <- dn[[2]]
    if(length(lab) < 3) lab <- as.character(1:3)
    eps <- 0.05 * lcex
    text(c(0, s3+eps*0.7, -s3-eps*0.7),
         c(1+eps, -0.1*eps, -0.1*eps), lab, cex=lcex)
  }
  points((X[,2] - X[,3])*s3, X[,1], ...)
}

ternary(Skye/100, ord=c(1,3,2))
```

`snails` *Snail Mortality Data*

Description

Groups of 20 snails were held for periods of 1, 2, 3 or 4 weeks in carefully controlled conditions of temperature and relative humidity. There were two species of snail, A and B, and the experiment was designed as a 4 by 3 by 4 by 2 completely randomized design. At the end of the exposure time the snails were tested to see if they had survived; the process itself is fatal for the animals. The object of the exercise was to model the probability of survival in terms of the stimulus variables, and in particular to test for differences between species.

The data are unusual in that in most cases fatalities during the experiment were fairly small.

Usage

```
snails
```

Format

The data frame contains the following components:

`Species` snail species A (1) or B (2).

`Exposure` exposure in weeks.

`Rel.Hum` relative humidity (4 levels).

`Temp` temperature, in degrees Celsius (3 levels).

`Deaths` number of deaths.

`N` number of snails exposed.

Source

Zoology Department, The University of Adelaide.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

SP500 *Returns of the Standard and Poors 500*

Description

Returns of the Standard and Poors 500 Index in the 1990's

Usage

```
SP500
```

Format

A vector of returns of the Standard and Poors 500 index for all the trading days in 1990, 1991, . . . , 1999.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

stdres *Extract Standardized Residuals from a Linear Model*

Description

The standardized residuals. These are normalized to unit variance, fitted including the current data point.

Usage

```
stdres(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object representing a linear model.

Value

The vector of appropriately transformed residuals.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`residuals`, `studres`

steam *The Saturated Steam Pressure Data*

Description

Temperature and pressure in a saturated steam driven experimental device.

Usage

```
steam
```

Format

The data frame contains the following components:

`Temp` temperature, in degrees Celsius.

`Press` pressure, in Pascals.

Source

N.R. Draper and H. Smith (1981) *Applied Regression Analysis.* Wiley, pp. 518–9.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

`stepAIC` *Choose a model by AIC in a Stepwise Algorithm*

Description

Performs stepwise model selection by AIC.

Usage

```
stepAIC(object, scope, scale = 0,
        direction = c("both", "backward", "forward"),
        trace = 1, keep = NULL, steps = 1000, use.start = FALSE,
        k = 2, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object representing a model of an appropriate class. This is used as the initial model in the stepwise search.
`scope`	defines the range of models examined in the stepwise search. This should be either a single formula, or a list containing components `upper` and `lower`, both formulae. See the details for how to specify the formulae and how they are used.
`scale`	used in the definition of the AIC statistic for selecting the models, currently only for `lm` and `aov` models (see `extractAIC` for details).
`direction`	the mode of stepwise search, can be one of `"both"`, `"backward"`, or `"forward"`, with a default of `"both"`. If the `scope` argument is missing the default for `direction` is `"backward"`.
`trace`	if positive, information is printed during the running of `stepAIC`. Larger values may give more information on the fitting process.
`keep`	a filter function whose input is a fitted model object and the associated `AIC` statistic, and whose output is arbitrary. Typically `keep` will select a subset of the components of the object and return them. The default is not to keep anything.
`steps`	the maximum number of steps to be considered. The default is 1000 (essentially as many as required). It is typically used to stop the process early.
`use.start`	if true the updated fits are done starting at the linear predictor for the currently selected model. This may speed up the iterative calculations for `glm` (and other fits), but it can also slow them down. **Not used** in .
`k`	the multiple of the number of degrees of freedom used for the penalty. Only `k = 2` gives the genuine AIC: `k = log(n)` is sometimes referred to as BIC or SBC.
`...`	any additional arguments to `extractAIC`. (None are currently used.)

Details

The set of models searched is determined by the scope argument. The right-hand-side of its lower component is always included in the model, and right-hand-side of the model is included in the upper component. If scope is a single formula, it specifies the upper component, and the lower model is empty. If scope is missing, the initial model is used as the upper model.

Models specified by scope can be templates to update object as used by update.formula.

There is a potential problem in using glm fits with a variable scale, as in that case the deviance is not simply related to the maximized log-likelihood. The glm method for extractAIC makes the appropriate adjustment for a gaussian family, but may need to be amended for other cases. (The binomial and poisson families have fixed scale by default and do not correspond to a particular maximum-likelihood problem for variable scale.)

Where a conventional deviance exists (e.g. for lm, aov and glm fits) this is quoted in the analysis of variance table: it is the *unscaled* deviance.

Value

the stepwise-selected model is returned, with up to two additional components. There is an "anova" component corresponding to the steps taken in the search, as well as a "keep" component if the keep= argument was supplied in the call. The "Resid. Dev" column of the analysis of deviance table refers to a constant minus twice the maximized log likelihood: it will be a deviance only in cases where a saturated model is well-defined (thus excluding lm, aov and survreg fits, for example).

Note

The model fitting must apply the models to the same dataset. This may be a problem if there are missing values and an na.action other than na.fail is used (as is the default in). We suggest you remove the missing values first.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

addterm, dropterm, step

Examples

```
quine.hi <- aov(log(Days + 2.5) ~ .^4, quine)
quine.nxt <- update(quine.hi, . ~ . - Eth:Sex:Age:Lrn)
quine.stp <- stepAIC(quine.nxt,
    scope = list(upper = ~Eth*Sex*Age*Lrn, lower = ~1),
    trace = FALSE)
quine.stp$anova

cpus1 <- cpus
for(v in names(cpus)[2:7])
  cpus1[[v]] <- cut(cpus[[v]], unique(quantile(cpus[[v]])),
                    include.lowest = TRUE)
cpus0 <- cpus1[, 2:8]  # excludes names, authors predictions
cpus.samp <- sample(1:209, 100)
cpus.lm <- lm(log10(perf) ~ ., data = cpus1[cpus.samp,2:8])
```

```
cpus.lm2 <- stepAIC(cpus.lm, trace = FALSE)
cpus.lm2$anova

example(birthwt)
birthwt.glm <- glm(low ~ ., family = binomial, data = bwt)
birthwt.step <- stepAIC(birthwt.glm, trace = FALSE)
birthwt.step$anova
birthwt.step2 <- stepAIC(birthwt.glm, ~ .^2 + I(scale(age)^2)
    + I(scale(lwt)^2), trace = FALSE)
birthwt.step2$anova

quine.nb <- glm.nb(Days ~ .^4, data = quine)
quine.nb2 <- stepAIC(quine.nb)
quine.nb2$anova
```

`stormer` *The Stormer Viscometer Data*

Description

The stormer viscometer measures the viscosity of a fluid by measuring the time taken for an inner cylinder in the mechanism to perform a fixed number of revolutions in response to an actuating weight. The viscometer is calibrated by measuring the time taken with varying weights while the mechanism is suspended in fluids of accurately known viscosity. The data comes from such a calibration, and theoretical considerations suggest a nonlinear relationship between time, weight and viscosity, of the form `Time = (B1*Viscosity)/(Weight - B2) + E` where `B1` and `B2` are unknown parameters to be estimated, and `E` is error.

Usage

```
stormer
```

Format

The data frame contains the following components:

`Viscosity` viscosity of fluid.

`Wt` actuating weight.

`Time` time taken.

Source

E. J. Williams (1959) *Regression Analysis.* Wiley.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

studres *Extract Studentized Residuals from a Linear Model*

Description

The Studentized residuals. Like standardized residuals, these are normalized to unit variance, but the Studentized version is fitted ignoring the current data point. (They are sometimes called jackknifed residuals).

Usage

```
studres(object)
```

Arguments

object	any object representing a linear model.

Value

The vector of appropriately transformed residuals.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

residuals, stdres

summary.loglm *Summary Method Function for Objects of Class 'loglm'*

Description

Returns a summary list for log-linear models fitted by iterative proportional scaling using loglm.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class loglm
summary(object, fitted = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted loglm model object.
fitted	if TRUE return observed and expected frequencies in the result. Using fitted = TRUE may necessitate re-fitting the object.
...	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function summary() for class "loglm". It can be invoked by calling summary(x) for an object x of the appropriate class, or directly by calling summary.loglm(x) regardless of the class of the object.

Value

a list is returned for use by print.summary.loglm. This has components

formula	the formula used to produce object
tests	the table of test statistics (likelihood ratio, Pearson) for the fit.
oe	if fitted = TRUE, an array of the observed and expected frequencies, otherwise NULL.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

loglm, summary

---

summary.negbin *Summary Method Function for Objects of Class 'negbin'*

Description

Identical to summary.glm, but with three lines of additional output: the ML estimate of theta, its standard error, and twice the log-likelihood function.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class negbin
summary(object, dispersion = 1, correlation = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	fitted model object of class negbin inheriting from glm and lm. Typically the output of glm.nb.
dispersion	as for summary.glm, with a default of 1.
correlation	as for summary.glm.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

summary.glm is used to produce the majority of the output and supply the result. This function is a method for the generic function summary() for class "negbin". It can be invoked by calling summary(x) for an object x of the appropriate class, or directly by calling summary.negbin(x) regardless of the class of the object.

Value

As for `summary.glm`; the additional lines of output are not included in the resultant object.

Side Effects

A summary table is produced as for `summary.glm`, with the additional information described above.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`summary`, `glm.nb`, `negative.binomial`, `anova.negbin`

Examples

```
summary(glm.nb(Days ~ Eth*Age*Lrn*Sex, quine, link = log))
```

---

summary.rlm *Summary Method for Robust Linear Models*

Description

`summary` method for objects of class `"rlm"`

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rlm
summary(object, method = c("XtX", "XtWX"), correlation = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	the fitted model. This is assumed to be the result of some fit that produces an object inheriting from the class `rlm`, in the sense that the components returned by the `rlm` function will be available.
`method`	Should the weighted (by the IWLS weights) or unweighted cross-products matrix be used?
`correlation`	logical. Should correlations be computed (and printed)?
`...`	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function `summary()` for class `"rlm"`. It can be invoked by calling `summary(x)` for an object `x` of the appropriate class, or directly by calling `summary.rlm(x)` regardless of the class of the object.

Value

If printing takes place, only a null value is returned. Otherwise, a list is returned with the following components. Printing always takes place if this function is invoked automatically as a method for the `summary` function.

`correlation`	The computed correlation coefficient matrix for the coefficients in the model.
`cov.unscaled`	The unscaled covariance matrix; i.e, a matrix such that multiplying it by an estimate of the error variance produces an estimated covariance matrix for the coefficients.
`sigma`	The scale estimate.
`stddev`	A scale estimate used for the standard errors.
`df`	The number of degrees of freedom for the model and for residuals.
`coefficients`	A matrix with three columns, containing the coefficients, their standard errors and the corresponding t statistic.
`terms`	The terms object used in fitting this model.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`summary`

Examples

```
summary(rlm(calls ~ year, data = phones, maxit = 50))
```

---

survey *Student Survey Data*

Description

This data frame contains the responses of 237 Statistics I students at the University of Adelaide to a number of questions.

Usage

```
survey
```

Format

The components of the data frame are:

`Sex` The sex of the student. (Factor with levels `"Male"` and `"Female"`.)

`Wr.Hnd` span (distance from tip of thumb to tip of little finger of spread hand) of writing hand, in centimetres.

`NW.Hnd` span of non-writing hand.

`W.Hnd` writing hand of student. (Factor, with levels `"Left"` and `"Right"`.)

`Fold` "Fold your arms! Which is on top" (Factor, with levels `"R on L"`, `"L on R"`, `"Neither"`.)

`Pulse` pulse rate of student (beats per minute).

`Clap` 'Clap your hands! Which hand is on top?' (Factor, with levels `"Right"`, `"Left"`, `"Neither"`.)

`Exer` how often the student exercises. (Factor, with levels `"Freq"` (frequently), `"Some"`, `"None"`.)

`Smoke` how much the student smokes. (Factor, levels `"Heavy"`, `"Regul"` (regularly), `"Occas"` (occasionally), `"Never"`.)

`Height` height of the student in centimetres.

`M.I` whether the student expressed height in imperial (feet/inches) or metric (centimetres/metres) units. (Factor, levels `"Metric"`, `"Imperial"`.)

`Age` age of the student in years.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

---

synth.tr *Synthetic Classification Problem*

Description

The `synth.tr` data frame has 250 rows and 3 columns. The `synth.te` data frame has 100 rows and 3 columns. It is intended that `synth.tr` be used from training and `synth.te` for testing.

Usage

```
synth.tr
synth.te
```

Format

These data frames contains the following columns:

`xs` x-coordinate

`ys` y-coordinate

`yc` class, coded as 0 or 1.

Source

Ripley, B.D. (1994) Neural networks and related methods for classification (with discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society series B* **56**, 409–456.

Ripley, B.D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

theta.md *Estimate theta of the Negative Binomial*

Description

Given the estimated mean vector, estimate `theta` of the Negative Binomial Distribution.

Usage

```
theta.md(y, mu, dfr, weights, limit = 20, eps = .Machine$double.eps^0.25)

theta.ml(y, mu, n, weights, limit = 10, eps = .Machine$double.eps^0.25,
         trace = FALSE)

theta.mm(y, mu, dfr, weights, limit = 10, eps = .Machine$double.eps^0.25)
```

Arguments

`y`	Vector of observed values from the Negative Binomial.
`mu`	Estimated mean vector.
`n`	Number of data points (defaults to the sum of `weights`)
`dfr`	Residual degrees of freedom (assuming `theta` known). For a weighted fit this is the sum of the weights minus the number of fitted parameters.
`weights`	Case weights. If missing, taken as 1.
`limit`	Limit on the number of iterations.
`eps`	Tolerance to determine convergence.
`trace`	logical: should iteration progress be printed?

Details

`theta.md` estimates by equating the deviance to the residual degrees of freedom, an analogue of a moment estimator.

`theta.ml` uses maximum likelihood.

`theta.mm` calculates the moment estimator of `theta` by equating the Pearson chi-square $\sum(y - \mu)^2/(\mu + \mu^2/\theta)$ to the residual degrees of freedom.

Value

The required estimate of `theta`, as a scalar. For `theta.ml`, the standard error is given as attribute `"SE"`.

See Also

`glm.nb`

Examples

```
quine.nb <- glm.nb(Days ~ .^2, data = quine)
theta.md(quine$Days, fitted(quine.nb), dfr = df.residual(quine.nb))
theta.ml(quine$Days, fitted(quine.nb))
theta.mm(quine$Days, fitted(quine.nb), dfr = df.residual(quine.nb))

## weighted example
yeast <- data.frame(cbind(numbers = 0:5, fr = c(213, 128, 37, 18, 3, 1)))
fit <- glm.nb(numbers ~ 1, weights = fr, data = yeast)
summary(fit)
mu <- fitted(fit)
theta.md(yeast$numbers, mu, dfr = 399, weights = yeast$fr)
theta.ml(yeast$numbers, mu, limit = 15, weights = yeast$fr)
theta.mm(yeast$numbers, mu, dfr = 399, weights = yeast$fr)
```

---

topo *Spatial Topographic Data*

Description

The topo data frame has 52 rows and 3 columns, of topographic heights within a 310 feet square.

Usage

```
topo
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

x x coordinates (units of 50 feet)

y y coordinates (units of 50 feet)

z heights (feet)

Source

Davis, J.C. (1973) *Statistics and Data Analysis in Geology.* Wiley.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Traffic *Effect of Swedish Speed Limits on Accidents*

Description

An experiment was performed in Sweden in 1961–2 to assess the effect of a speed limit on the motorway accident rate. The experiment was conducted on 92 days in each year, matched so that day `j` in 1962 was comparable to day `j` in 1961. On some days the speed limit was in effect and enforced, while on other days there was no speed limit and cars tended to be driven faster. The speed limit days tended to be in contiguous blocks.

Usage

```
Traffic
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`year` 1961 or 1962.

`day` of year.

`limit` was there a speed limit?

`y` traffic accident count for that day.

Source

Svensson, A. (1981) On the goodness-of-fit test for the multiplicative Poisson model. *Annals of Statistics,* **9**, 697–704.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

truehist *Plot a Histogram*

Description

Creates a histogram on the current graphics device.

Usage

```
truehist(data, nbins = "Scott", h, x0 = -h/1000,
         breaks, prob = TRUE, xlim = range(breaks),
         ymax = max(est), col = "cyan",
         xlab = deparse(substitute(data)), bty = "n", ...)
```

Arguments

data	numeric vector of data for histogram. Missing values (NAs) are allowed and omitted.
nbins	The suggested number of bins. Either a positive integer, or a character string naming a rule: "Scott" or "Freedman-Diaconis" or "FD". (Case is ignored.)
h	The bin width, a strictly positive number (takes precedence over nbins).
x0	Shift for the bins - the breaks are at x0 + h * (..., -1, 0, 1, ...)
breaks	The set of breakpoints to be used. (Usually omitted, takes precedence over h and nbins).
prob	If true (the default) plot a true histogram. The vertical axis has a *relative frequency density* scale, so the product of the dimensions of any panel gives the relative frequency. Hence the total area under the histogram is 1 and it is directly comparable with most other estimates of the probability density function. If false plot the counts in the bins.
xlim	The limits for the x-axis.
ymax	The upper limit for the y-axis.
col	The colour for the bar fill: the default is colour 5 in the default palette.
xlab	label for the plot x-axis. By default, this will be the name of data.
bty	The box type for the plot - defaults to none.
...	additional arguments to rect or plot.

Details

This plots a true histogram, a density estimate of total area 1. If breaks is specified, those breakpoints are used. Otherwise if h is specified, a regular grid of bins is used with width h. If neither breaks nor h is specified, nbins is used to select a suitable h.

Side Effects

A histogram is plotted on the current device.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

hist

ucv *Unbiased Cross-Validation for Bandwidth Selection*

Description

Uses unbiased cross-validation to select the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.

Usage

```
ucv(x, nb = 1000, lower, upper)
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector
nb	number of bins to use.
lower, upper	Range over which to minimize. The default is almost always satisfactory.

Value

a bandwidth.

References

Scott, D. W. (1992) *Multivariate Density Estimation: Theory, Practice, and Visualization.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

bcv, width.SJ, density

Examples

```
ucv(geyser$duration)
```

UScereal *Nutritional and Marketing Information on US Cereals*

Description

The UScereal data frame has 65 rows and 11 columns. The data come from the 1993 ASA Statistical Graphics Exposition, and are taken from the mandatory F&DA food label. The data have been normalized here to a portion of one American cup.

Usage

```
UScereal
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`mfr` Manufacturer, represented by its first initial: G=General Mills, K=Kelloggs, N=Nabisco, P=Post, Q=Quaker Oats, R=Ralston Purina.

`calories` number of calories in one portion.

`protein` grams of protein in one portion.

`fat` grams of fat in one portion.

`sodium` milligrams of sodium in one portion.

`fibre` grams of dietary fibre in one portion.

`carbo` grams of complex carbohydrates in one portion.

`sugars` grams of sugars in one portion.

`shelf` display shelf (1, 2, or 3, counting from the floor).

`potassium` grams of potassium.

`vitamins` vitamins and minerals (none, enriched, or 100%).

Source

The original data are available at http://lib.stat.cmu.edu/datasets/1993.expo/.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS*. Third Edition. Springer.

UScrime *The Effect of Punishment Regimes on Crime Rates*

Description

Criminologists are interested in the effect of punishment regimes on crime rates. This has been studied using aggregate data on 47 states of the USA for 1960 given in this data frame. The variables seem to have been re-scaled to convenient numbers.

Usage

```
UScrime
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`M` percentage of males aged 14–24.

`So` indicator variable for a Southern state.

`Ed` mean years of schooling.

`Po1` police expenditure in 1960.

`Po2` police expenditure in 1959.

`LF` labour force participation rate.

`M.F` number of males per 1000 females.

`Pop` state population.

`NW` number of non-whites per 1000 people.

`U1` unemployment rate of urban males 14–24.

`U2` unemployment rate of urban males 35–39.

`GDP` gross domestic product per head.

`Ineq` income inequality.

`Prob` probability of imprisonment.

`Time` average time served in state prisons.

`y` rate of crimes in a particular category per head of population.

Source

Ehrlich, I. (1973) Participation in illegitimate activities: a theoretical and empirical investigation. *Journal of Political Economy*, **81**, 521–565.

Vandaele, W. (1978) Participation in illegitimate activities: Ehrlich revisited. In *Deterrence and Incapacitation*, eds A. Blumstein, J. Cohen and D. Nagin, pp. 270–335. US National Academy of Sciences.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (1999) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS.* Third Edition. Springer.

VA *Veteran's Administration Lung Cancer Trial*

Description

Veteran's Administration lung cancer trial from Kalbfleisch & Prentice.

Usage

```
VA
```

Format

A data frame with columns:

`stime` survival or follow-up time in days.

`status` dead or censored.

`treat` treatment: standard or test.

`age` patient's age in years.

`Karn` Karnofsky score of patient's performance on a scale of 0 to 100.

`diag.time` times since diagnosis in months at entry to trial.

`cell` one of four cell types.

`prior` prior therapy?

Source

Kalbfleisch, J.D. and Prentice R.L. (1980) *The Statistical Analysis of Failure Time Data.* Wiley.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

`waders` *Counts of Waders at 15 Sites in South Africa*

Description

The `waders` data frame has 15 rows and 19 columns. The entries are counts of waders in summer.

Usage

```
waders
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns (species)

`S1` Oystercatcher

`S2` White-fronted Plover

`S3` Kitt Lutz's Plover

`S4` Three-banded Plover

`S5` Grey Plover

`S6` Ringed Plover

`S7` Bar-tailed Godwit

`S8` Whimbrel

`S9` Marsh Sandpiper

`S10` Greenshank

`S11` Common Sandpiper

`S12` Turnstone

`S13` Knot

`S14` Sanderling

`S15` Little Stint

`S16` Curlew Sandpiper

`S17` Ruff

`S18` Avocet

`S19` Black-winged Stilt

The rows are the sites:

A = Namibia North coast
B = Namibia North wetland
C = Namibia South coast
D = Namibia South wetland
E = Cape North coast
F = Cape North wetland
G = Cape West coast
H = Cape West wetland
I = Cape South coast
J= Cape South wetland
K = Cape East coast
L = Cape East wetland
M = Transkei coast
N = Natal coast
O = Natal wetland

Source

J.C. Gower and D.J. Hand (1996) *Biplots* Chapman & Hall Table 9.1. Quoted as from:

R.W. Summers, L.G. Underhill, D.J. Pearson and D.A. Scott (1987) Wader migration systems in south and eastern Africa and western Asia. *Wader Study Group Bulletin* **49** Supplement, 15–34.

Examples

```
plot(corresp(waders, nf=2))
```

---

whiteside *House Insulation: Whiteside's Data*

Description

Mr Derek Whiteside of the UK Building Research Station recorded the weekly gas consumption and average external temperature at his own house in south-east England for two heating seasons, one of 26 weeks before, and one of 30 weeks after cavity-wall insulation was installed. The object of the exercise was to assess the effect of the insulation on gas consumption.

Usage

```
whiteside
```

Format

The `whiteside` data frame has 56 rows and 3 columns.:

`Insul` A factor, before or after insulation.

`Temp` Purportedly the average outside temperature in degrees Celsius. (These values is far too low for any 56-week period in the 1960s in South-East England. It might be the weekly average of daily minima.)

`Gas` The weekly gas consumption in 1000s of cubic feet.

Source

A data set collected in the 1960s by Mr Derek Whiteside of the UK Building Research Station. Reported by

Hand, D. J., Daly, F., McConway, K., Lunn, D. and Ostrowski, E. eds (1993) *A Handbook of Small Data Sets.* Chapman & Hall, p. 69.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
require(lattice)
xyplot(Gas ~ Temp | Insul, whiteside, panel =
  function(x, y, ...) {
    panel.xyplot(x, y, ...)
    panel.lmline(x, y, ...)
  }, xlab = "Average external temperature (deg. C)",
  ylab = "Gas consumption  (1000 cubic feet)", aspect = "xy",
  strip = function(...) strip.default(..., style = 1))

gasB <- lm(Gas ~ Temp, whiteside, subset = Insul=="Before")
gasA <- update(gasB, subset = Insul=="After")
summary(gasB)
summary(gasA)
gasBA <- lm(Gas ~ Insul/Temp - 1, whiteside)
summary(gasBA)

gasQ <- lm(Gas ~ Insul/(Temp + I(Temp^2)) - 1, whiteside)
coef(summary(gasQ))

gasPR <- lm(Gas ~ Insul + Temp, whiteside)
anova(gasPR, gasBA)
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
gasBA1 <- lm(Gas ~ Insul*Temp, whiteside)
coef(summary(gasBA1))
```

---

width.SJ *Bandwidth Selection by Pilot Estimation of Derivatives*

Description

Uses the method of Sheather & Jones (1991) to select the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.

Usage

```
width.SJ(x, nb = 1000, lower, upper, method = c("ste", "dpi"))
```

Arguments

x	a numeric vector
nb	number of bins to use.
upper, lower	range over which to search for solution if method = "ste".
method	Either "ste" ("solve-the-equation") or "dpi" ("direct plug-in").

Value

a bandwidth.

References

Sheather, S. J. and Jones, M. C. (1991) A reliable data-based bandwidth selection method for kernel density estimation. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society series B* **53**, 683–690.

Scott, D. W. (1992) *Multivariate Density Estimation: Theory, Practice, and Visualization.* Wiley.

Wand, M. P. and Jones, M. C. (1995) *Kernel Smoothing.* Chapman & Hall.

See Also

ucv, bcv, density

Examples

```
width.SJ(geyser$duration, method = "dpi")
width.SJ(geyser$duration)

width.SJ(galaxies, method = "dpi")
width.SJ(galaxies)
```

---

write.matrix *Write a Matrix or Data Frame*

Description

Writes a matrix or data frame to a file or the console, using column labels and a layout respecting columns.

Usage

```
write.matrix(x, file = "", sep = " ", blocksize)
```

Arguments

x	matrix or data frame.
file	name of output file. The default ("") is the console.
sep	The separator between columns.
blocksize	If supplied and positive, the output is written in blocks of blocksize rows. Choose as large as possible consistent with the amount of memory available.

Details

If x is a matrix, supplying blocksize is more memory-efficient and enables larger matrices to be written, but each block of rows might be formatted slightly differently.

If x is a data frame, the conversion to a matrix may negate the memory saving.

Side Effects

A formatted file is produced, with column headings (if x has them) and columns of data.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

write.table

---

wtloss *Weight Loss Data from an Obese Patient*

Description

The data frame gives the weight, in kilograms, of an obese patient at 52 time points over an 8 month period of a weight rehabilitation programme.

Usage

```
wtloss
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Days time in days since the start of the programme.

Weight weight in kilograms of the patient.

Source

Dr T. Davies, Adelaide.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
wtloss.fm <- nls(Weight ~ b0 + b1*2^(-Days/th),
    data = wtloss, start = list(b0=90, b1=95, th=120))
wtloss.fm
plot(wtloss)
with(wtloss, lines(Days, fitted(wtloss.fm)))
```

Chapter 17

The Matrix package

---

abIndex-class *Class "abIndex" of Abstract Index Vectors*

Description

The "abIndex" class, short for "Abstract Index Vector", is used for dealing with large index vectors more efficiently, than using integer (or numeric) vectors of the kind 2:1000000 or c(0:1e5, 1000:1e6).

Note that the current implementation details are subject to change, and if you consider working with these classes, please contact the package maintainers (packageDescription("Matrix")$Maintainer).

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("abIndex", ...), but more easily and typically either by as(x, "abIndex") where x is an integer (valued) vector, or directly by abIseq() and combination c(...) of such.

Slots

kind: a character string, one of ("int32", "double", "rleDiff"), denoting the internal structure of the abIndex object.

x: Object of class "numLike"; is used (i.e., not of length 0) only iff the object is *not* compressed, i.e., currently exactly when kind != "rleDiff".

rleD: object of class "rleDiff", used for compression via rle.

Methods

as.numeric, as.integer, as.vector signature(x = "abIndex"): ...

[signature(x = "abIndex", i = "index", j = "ANY", drop = "ANY"): ...

coerce signature(from = "numeric", to = "abIndex"): ...

coerce signature(from = "abIndex", to = "numeric"): ...

coerce signature(from = "abIndex", to = "integer"): ...

length signature(x = "abIndex"): ...

Ops `signature(e1 = "numeric", e2 = "abIndex")`: These and the following arithmetic and logic operations are **not yet implemented**; see `Ops` for a list of these (S4) group methods.

Ops `signature(e1 = "abIndex", e2 = "abIndex")`: ...

Ops `signature(e1 = "abIndex", e2 = "numeric")`: ...

Summary `signature(x = "abIndex")`: ...

show `("abIndex")`: simple `show` method, building on `show(<rleDiff>)`.

is.na `("abIndex")`: works analogously to regular vectors.

is.finite, is.infinite `("abIndex")`: ditto.

Note

This is currently experimental and not yet used for our own code. Please contact us (`packageDescription("Matrix")$Maintainer`), if you plan to make use of this class.

Partly builds on ideas and code from Jens Oehlschlaegel, as implemented (around 2008, in the GPL'ed part of) package **ff**.

See Also

`rle` (**base**) which is used here; `numeric`

Examples

```
showClass("abIndex")
ii <- c(-3:40, 20:70)
str(ai <- as(ii, "abIndex"))# note
ai # -> show() method


stopifnot(identical(-3:20,
                    as(abIseq1(-3,20), "vector")))
```

`abIseq` *Sequence Generation of "abIndex", Abstract Index Vectors*

Description

Generation of abstract index vectors, i.e., objects of class `"abIndex"`.

`abIseq()` is designed to work entirely like `seq`, but producing `"abIndex"` vectors.
`abIseq1()` is its basic building block, where `abIseq1(n,m)` corresponds to `n:m`.

`c(x, ...)` will return an `"abIndex"` vector, when `x` is one.

Usage

```
abIseq1(from = 1, to = 1)
abIseq (from = 1, to = 1, by = ((to - from)/(length.out - 1)),
        length.out = NULL, along.with = NULL)

## S3 method for class abIndex
c(...)
```

Arguments

from, to	the starting and (maximal) end value of the sequence.
by	number: increment of the sequence.
length.out	desired length of the sequence. A non-negative number, which for seq and seq.int will be rounded up if fractional.
along.with	take the length from the length of this argument.
...	in general an arbitrary number of objects; here, when the first is an "abIndex" vector, these arguments will be concatenated to a new "abIndex" object.

Value

An abstract index vector, i.e., object of class "abIndex".

See Also

the class abIndex documentation; rep2abI() for another constructor; rle (**base**).

Examples

```
stopifnot(identical(-3:20,
                    as(abIseq1(-3,20), "vector")))

try( ## (arithmetic) not yet implemented
abIseq(1, 50, by = 3)
)
```

---

all-methods *"Matrix" Methods for Functions all() and any()*

Description

The basic functions all and any now have methods for Matrix objects and should behave as for matrix ones.

Methods

all signature(x = "Matrix", ..., na.rm = FALSE): ...
any signature(x = "Matrix", ..., na.rm = FALSE): ...
all signature(x = "ldenseMatrix", ..., na.rm = FALSE): ...
all signature(x = "lsparseMatrix", ..., na.rm = FALSE): ...

Examples

```
M <- Matrix(1:12 +0, 3,4)
all(M >= 1) # TRUE
any(M < 0 ) # FALSE
MN <- M; MN[2,3] <- NA; MN
all(MN >= 0) # NA
any(MN <  0) # NA
any(MN <  0, na.rm = TRUE) # -> FALSE
```

all.equal-methods *Matrix Package Methods for Function all.equal()*

Description

Methods for function `all.equal()` (from package **base**) are defined for all `Matrix` classes.

Methods

target = "Matrix", current = "Matrix" \

target = "ANY", current = "Matrix" \

target = "Matrix", current = "ANY" these three methods are simply using `all.equal.numeric` directly and work via `as.vector()`.

There are more methods, notably also for `"sparseVector"`'s, see `showMethods("all.equal")`.

Examples

```
showMethods("all.equal")

(A <- spMatrix(3,3, i= c(1:3,2:1), j=c(3:1,1:2), x = 1:5))
ex <- expand(lu. <- lu(A))
stopifnot( all.equal(as(A[lu.@p + 1L, lu.@q + 1L], "CsparseMatrix"),
                     lu.@L %*% lu.@U),
           with(ex, all.equal(as(P %*% A %*% Q, "CsparseMatrix"),
                              L %*% U)),
           with(ex, all.equal(as(A, "CsparseMatrix"),
                              t(P) %*% L %*% U %*% t(Q))))
```

atomicVector-class *Virtual Class "atomicVector" of Atomic Vectors*

Description

The `class` `"atomicVector"` is a *virtual* class containing all atomic vector classes of base , as also implicitly defined via `is.atomic`.

Objects from the Class

A virtual Class: No objects may be created from it.

Methods

In the **Matrix** package, the "atomicVector" is used in signatures where typically “old-style” "matrix" objects can be used and can be substituted by simple vectors.

Extends

The atomic classes `"logical"`, `"integer"`, `"double"`, `"numeric"`, `"complex"`, `"raw"` and `"character"` are extended directly. Note that `"numeric"` already contains `"integer"` and `"double"`, but we want all of them to be direct subclasses of `"atomicVector"`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

`is.atomic`, `integer`, `numeric`, `complex`, etc.

Examples

```
showClass("atomicVector")
```

---

band *Extract bands of a matrix*

Description

Returns a new matrix formed by extracting the lower triangle (`tril`) or the upper triangle (`triu`) or a general band relative to the diagonal (band), and setting other elements to zero. The general forms of these functions include integer arguments to specify how many diagonal bands above or below the main diagonal are not set to zero.

Usage

```
band(x, k1, k2, ...)
tril(x, k = 0, ...)
triu(x, k = 0, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix-like object
k,k1,k2	integers specifying the diagonal bands that will not be set to zero. These are given relative to the main diagonal, which is k=0. A negative value of k indicates a diagonal below the main diagonal and a positive value indicates a diagonal above the main diagonal.
...	Optional arguments used by specific methods. (None used at present.)

Value

An object of an appropriate matrix class. The class of the value of `tril` or `triu` inherits from `triangularMatrix` when appropriate. Note that the result is of class `sparseMatrix` only if x is.

Methods

x = "CsparseMatrix" method for compressed, sparse, column-oriented matrices.

x = "TsparseMatrix" method for sparse matrices in triplet format.

x = "RsparseMatrix" method for compressed, sparse, row-oriented matrices.

x = "ddenseMatrix" method for dense numeric matrices, including packed numeric matrices.

See Also

`bandSparse` for the *construction* of a banded sparse matrix directly from its non-zero diagonals.

Examples

```
## A random sparse matrix :
set.seed(7)
m <- matrix(0, 5, 5)
m[sample(length(m), size = 14)] <- rep(1:9, length=14)
(mm <- as(m, "CsparseMatrix"))

tril(mm)        # lower triangle
tril(mm, -1)    # strict lower triangle
triu(mm,  1)    # strict upper triangle
band(mm, -1, 2) # general band
(m5 <- Matrix(rnorm(25), nc = 5))
tril(m5)        # lower triangle
tril(m5, -1)    # strict lower triangle
triu(m5, 1)     # strict upper triangle
band(m5, -1, 2) # general band
(m65 <- Matrix(rnorm(30), nc = 5))  # not square
triu(m65)       # result in not dtrMatrix unless square
(sm5 <- crossprod(m65)) # symmetric
   band(sm5, -1, 1)# symmetric band preserves symmetry property
as(band(sm5, -1, 1), "sparseMatrix")# often preferable
```

---

bandSparse *Construct Sparse Banded Matrix from (Sup-/Super-) Diagonals*

Description

Construct a sparse banded matrix by specifying its non-zero sup- and super-diagonals.

Usage

```
bandSparse(n, m = n, k, diagonals, symmetric = FALSE, giveCsparse = TRUE)
```

Arguments

n,m	the matrix dimension $(n, m) = (nrow, ncol)$.
k	integer vector of "diagonal numbers", with identical meaning as in band(*, k).
diagonals	optional list of sub-/super- diagonals; if missing, the result will be a pattern matrix, i.e., inheriting from class nMatrix. diagonals can also be $n' \times d$ matrix, where d <- length(k) and $n' >= min(n, m)$. In that case, the sub-/super- diagonals are taken from the columns of diagonals, where only the first several rows will be used (typically) for off-diagonals.
symmetric	logical; if true the result will be symmetric (inheriting from class symmetricMatrix) and only the upper or lower triangle must be specified (via k and diagonals).
giveCsparse	logical indicating if the result should be a CsparseMatrix or a TsparseMatrix. The default, TRUE is very often more efficient subsequently, but not always.

Value

a sparse matrix (of class CsparseMatrix) of dimension $n \times m$ with diagonal "bands" as specified.

See Also

band, for *extraction* of matrix bands; bdiag, diag, sparseMatrix, Matrix.

Examples

```
diags <- list(1:30, 10*(1:20), 100*(1:20))
s1 <- bandSparse(13, k = -c(0:2, 6), diag = c(diags, diags[2]), symm=TRUE)
s1
s2 <- bandSparse(13, k =  c(0:2, 6), diag = c(diags, diags[2]), symm=TRUE)
stopifnot(identical(s1, t(s2)), is(s1,"dsCMatrix"))

## a pattern Matrix of *full* (sub-)diagonals:
bk <- c(0:4, 7,9)
(s3 <- bandSparse(30, k = bk, symm = TRUE))

## If you want a pattern matrix, but with "sparse"-diagonals,
## you currently need to go via logical sparse:
lLis <- lapply(list(rpois(20, 2), rpois(20,1), rpois(20,3))[c(1:3,2:3,3:2)],
               as.logical)
(s4 <- bandSparse(20, k = bk, symm = TRUE, diag = lLis))
(s4. <- as(drop0(s4), "nsparseMatrix"))

n <- 1e4
bk <- c(0:5, 7,11)
bMat <- matrix(1:8, n, 8, byrow=TRUE)
bLis <- as.data.frame(bMat)
B  <- bandSparse(n, k = bk, diag = bLis)
Bs <- bandSparse(n, k = bk, diag = bLis, symmetric=TRUE)
B [1:15, 1:30]
Bs[1:15, 1:30]
## can use a list *or* a matrix for specifying the diagonals:
stopifnot(identical(B,  bandSparse(n, k = bk, diag = bMat)),
  identical(Bs, bandSparse(n, k = bk, diag = bMat, symmetric=TRUE)))
```

---

bdiag *Construct a Block Diagonal Matrix*

Description

Build a block diagonal matrix given several building block matrices.

Usage

```
bdiag(...)
.bdiag(lst)
```

Arguments

...	individual matrices or a list of matrices.
lst	non-empty list of matrices.

Details

For non-trivial argument list, `bdiag()` calls `.bdiag()`. The latter maybe useful to programmers

Value

A *sparse* matrix obtained by combining the arguments into a block diagonal matrix.

The value of `bdiag()` inheris from class `CsparseMatrix`, whereas `.bdiag()` returns a `TsparseMatrix`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler, built on a version posted by Berton Gunter to R-help; earlier versions have been posted by other authors, notably Scott Chasalow to S-news. Doug Bates's faster implementation builds on `TsparseMatrix` objects.

See Also

`Diagonal` for constructing matrices of class `diagonalMatrix`, or `kronecker` which also works for `"Matrix"` inheriting matrices.

`bandSparse` constructs a *banded* sparse matrix from its non-zero sub-/super - diagonals.

Note that other CRAN packages have own versions of `bdiag()` which return traditional matrices.

Examples

```
bdiag(matrix(1:4, 2), diag(3))
## combine "Matrix" class and traditional matrices:
bdiag(Diagonal(2), matrix(1:3, 3,4), diag(3:2))

mlist <- list(1, 2:3, diag(x=5:3), 27, cbind(1,3:6), 100:101)
bdiag(mlist)
stopifnot(identical(bdiag(mlist),
                    bdiag(lapply(mlist, as.matrix))))

ml <- c(as(matrix((1:24)%% 11 == 0, 6,4),"nMatrix"),
        rep(list(Diagonal(2, x=TRUE)), 3))
mln <- c(ml, Diagonal(x = 1:3))
stopifnot(is(bdiag(ml), "lsparseMatrix"),
          is(bdiag(mln),"dsparseMatrix") )
```

BunchKaufman-methods *Bunch-Kaufman Decomposition Methods*

Description

The Bunch-Kaufman Decomposition of a square symmetric matrix A is $A = PLDL'P'$ where P is a permutation matrix, L is *unit*-lower triangular and D is *block*-diagonal with blocks of dimension 1×1 or 2×2.

Usage

```
BunchKaufman(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a symmetric square matrix.
...	potentially further arguments passed to methods.

Value

an object of class BunchKaufman, which can also be used as a (triangular) matrix directly.

Methods

Currently, only methods for **dense** numeric symmetric matrices are implemented.

`x = "dspMatrix"` uses Lapack routine `dsptrf`,

`x = "dsyMatrix"` uses Lapack routine `dsytrf`, computing the Bunch-Kaufman decomposition.

References

The original LAPACK source code, including documentation; http://www.netlib.org/lapack/double/dsytrf.f and http://www.netlib.org/lapack/double/dsptrf.f

See Also

The resulting class, BunchKaufman. Related decompositions are the LU, lu, and the Cholesky, chol (and for *sparse* matrices, Cholesky).

Examples

```
data(CAex)
dim(CAex)
isSymmetric(CAex)# TRUE
CAs <- as(CAex, "symmetricMatrix")
if(FALSE) # no method defined yet for *sparse* :
   bk. <- BunchKaufman(CAs)
## does apply to *dense* symmetric matrices:
bkCA <- BunchKaufman(as(CAs, "denseMatrix"))
bkCA

image(bkCA)# shows how sparse it is, too
str(R.CA <- as(bkCA, "sparseMatrix"))
## an upper triangular 72x72 matrix with only 144 non-zero entries
```

CAex *Albers' example Matrix with "Difficult" Eigen Factorization*

Description

An example of a sparse matrix for which eigen() seemed to be difficult, an unscaled version of this has been posted to the web, accompanying an E-mail to R-help (https://stat.ethz.ch/mailman/listinfo/r-help), by Casper J Albers, Open University, UK.

Usage

```
data(CAex)
```

Format

This is a 72×72 symmetric matrix with 216 non-zero entries in five bands, stored as sparse matrix of class dgCMatrix.

Details

In some versions of , eigen(CAex) fell into an infinite loop (whereas eigen(CAex, EISPACK=TRUE) has been okay).

Examples

```
data(CAex)
str(CAex) # of class "dgCMatrix"

image(CAex)# -> its a simple band matrix with 5 bands
## and the eigen values are basically 1 (42 times) and 0 (30 x):
zapsmall(ev <- eigen(CAex, EISPACK=TRUE, only.values=TRUE)$values)
## i.e., the matrix is symmetric, hence
sCA <- as(CAex, "symmetricMatrix")
## and
stopifnot(class(sCA) == "dsCMatrix",
          as(sCA, "matrix") == as(CAex, "matrix"))
```

---

cBind *Versions of 'cbind' and 'rbind' recursively built on cbind2/rbind2*

Description

The base functions cbind and rbind are defined for an arbitrary number of arguments and hence have the first formal argument .... For that reason, S4 methods cannot easily be defined for binding together matrices inheriting from Matrix.

For that reason, cbind2 and rbind2 have been provided for binding together *two* matrices, and we have defined methods for these and the Matrix-matrices.

As a substitute for *S4-enabled* versions of cbind and rbind, you can use cBind and rBind with identical syntax and semantic in order to bind together multiple matrices ("matrix" or "Matrix" and vectors.

Usage

```
cBind(..., deparse.level = 1)
rBind(..., deparse.level = 1)
```

Arguments

...	matrix-like objects to be bound together, see cbind and rbind.
deparse.level	integer determining under which circumstances column and row names are built from the actual arguments' 'expression', see cbind.

Details

The implementation of these is *recursive*, calling `cbind2` or `rbind2` respectively, where these have methods defined and so should dispatch appropriately.

Value

typically a 'matrix-like' object of a similar `class` as the first argument in `...`.

Note that sometimes by default, the result is a `sparseMatrix` if one of the arguments is (even in the case where this is not efficient). In other cases, the result is chosen to be sparse when there are more zero entries is than non-zero ones (as the default `sparse` in `Matrix()`).

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

`cbind2`, `cbind`, `Methods`.

Examples

```
(a <- matrix(c(2:1,1:2), 2,2))
cbind(0, rBind(a, 7)) # remains traditional matrix

D <- Diagonal(2)
cBind(4, a, D, -1, D, 0) # a sparse Matrix
```

CHMfactor-class *CHOLMOD-based Cholesky Factorizations*

Description

The virtual class `"CHMfactor"` is a class of CHOLMOD-based Cholesky factorizations of symmetric, sparse, compressed, column-oriented matrices. Such a factorization is simplicial (virtual class `"CHMsimpl"`) or supernodal (virtual class `"CHMsuper"`). Objects that inherit from these classes are either numeric factorizations (classes `"dCHMsimpl"` and `"dCHMsuper"`) or symbolic factorizations (classes `"nCHMsimpl"` and `"nCHMsuper"`).

Usage

```
isLDL(x)

## S4 method for signature CHMfactor
update(object, parent, mult = 0, ...)
.updateCHMfactor(object, parent, mult)

## and many more methods, notably,
##   solve(a, b, system = c("A","LDLt","LD","DLt","L","Lt","D","P","Pt"), ...)
##   -----    see below
```

Arguments

x,object,a	a "CHMfactor" object (almost always the result of Cholesky()).
parent	a "dsCMatrix" or "dgCMatrix" matrix object with the same nonzero pattern as the matrix that generated object. If parent is symmetric, of class "dsCMatrix", then object should be a decomposition of a matrix with the same nonzero pattern as parent. If parent is not symmetric then object should be the decomposition of a matrix with the same nonzero pattern as tcrossprod(parent). Since Matrix version 1.0-8, other "sparseMatrix" matrices are coerced to dsparseMatrix and CsparseMatrix if needed.
mult	a numeric scalar (default 0). mult times the identity matrix is (implicitly) added to parent or tcrossprod(parent) before updating the decomposition object.
...	potentially further arguments to the methods.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("dCHMsuper", ...) but are more commonly created via Cholesky(), applied to dsCMatrix or lsCMatrix objects.

For an introduction, it may be helpful to look at the expand() method and examples below.

Slots

of "CHMfactor" and all classes inheriting from it:

perm: An integer vector giving the 0-based permutation of the rows and columns chosen to reduce fill-in and for post-ordering.

colcount: Object of class "integer" ....

type: Object of class "integer" ....

Slots of the non virtual classes "[dl]CHM(super|simpl)":

p: Object of class "integer" of pointers, one for each column, to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the column. Only present in classes that contain "CHMsimpl".

i: Object of class "integer" of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix. Only present in classes that contain "CHMsimpl".

x: For the "d*" classes: "numeric" - the non-zero elements of the matrix.

Methods

isLDL (x) returns a logical indicating if x is an LDL' decomposition or (when FALSE) an LL' one.

coerce signature(from = "CHMfactor", to = "sparseMatrix") (or equivalently, to = "Matrix" or to = "triangularMatrix")

as(*, "sparseMatrix") returns the lower triangular factor L from the LL' form of the Cholesky factorization. Note that (currently) the factor from the LL' form is always returned, even if the "CHMfactor" object represents an LDL' decomposition. Furthermore, this is the factor after any fill-reducing permutation has been applied. See the expand method for obtaining both the permutation matrix, P, and the lower Cholesky factor, L.

coerce signature(from = "CHMfactor", to = "pMatrix") returns the permutation matrix P, representing the fill-reducing permutation used in the decomposition.

expand `signature(x = "CHMfactor")` returns a list with components `P`, the matrix representing the fill-reducing permutation, and `L`, the lower triangular Cholesky factor. The original positive-definite matrix A corresponds to the product $A = P'LL'P$. Because of fill-in during the decomposition the product may apparently have more non-zeros than the original matrix, even after applying `drop0` to it. However, the extra "non-zeros" should be very small in magnitude.

image `signature(x = "CHMfactor")`: Plot the image of the lower triangular factor, L, from the decomposition. This method is equivalent to `image(as(x, "sparseMatrix"))` so the comments in the above description of the `coerce` method apply here too.

solve `signature(a = "CHMfactor", b = "ddenseMatrix"), system= *`:

The `solve` methods for a `"CHMfactor"` object take an optional third argument `system` whose value can be one of the character strings `"A"`, `"LDLt"`, `"LD"`, `"DLt"`, `"L"`, `"Lt"`, `"D"`, `"P"` or `"Pt"`. This argument describes the system to be solved. The default, `"A"`, is to solve $Ax = b$ for x where `A` is the sparse, positive-definite matrix that was factored to produce `a`. Analogously, `system = "L"` returns the solution x, of $Lx = b$. Similarly, for all system codes **but** `"P"` and `"Pt"` where, e.g., `x <- solve(a, b, system="P")` is equivalent to `x <- P %*% b`.

See also `solve-methods`.

determinant `signature(x = "CHMfactor", logarithm = "logical")` returns the determinant (or the logarithm of the determinant, if `logarithm = TRUE`, the default) of the factor L from the LL' decomposition (even if the decomposition represented by `x` is of the LDL' form (!)). This is the square root of the determinant (half the logarithm of the determinant when `logarithm = TRUE`) of the positive-definite matrix that was decomposed.

update `signature(object = "CHMfactor"), parent`. The `update` method requires an additional argument `parent`, which is *either* a `"dsCMatrix"` object, say A, (with the same structure of nonzeros as the matrix that was decomposed to produce `object`) or a general `"dgCMatrix"`, say M, where $A := MM'$ (`== tcrossprod(parent)`) is used for A. Further it provides an optional argument `mult`, a numeric scalar. This method updates the numeric values in `object` to the decomposition of $A + mI$ where A is the matrix above (either the `parent` or MM') and m is the scalar `mult`. Because only the numeric values are updated this method should be faster than creating and decomposing $A + mI$. It is not uncommon to want, say, the determinant of $A + mI$ for many different values of m. This method would be the preferred approach in such cases.

See Also

`Cholesky`, also for examples; class `dgCMatrix`.

Examples

```
## An example for the expand() method
n <- 1000; m <- 200; nnz <- 2000
set.seed(1)
M1 <- spMatrix(n, m,
               i = sample(n, nnz, replace = TRUE),
               j = sample(m, nnz, replace = TRUE),
               x = round(rnorm(nnz),1))
XX <- crossprod(M1) ## = M1M1  = M M  where M <- t(M1)
CX <- Cholesky(XX)
isLDL(CX)
str(CX) ## a "dCHMsimpl" object
r <- expand(CX)
L.P <- with(r, crossprod(L,P))  ## == LP
PLLP <- crossprod(L.P)          ## == (LP) LP == PLLP  = XX = M M
```

```
b <- sample(m)
stopifnot(all.equal(PLLP, XX),
          all(as.vector(solve(CX, b, system="P" )) == r$P %*% b),
          all(as.vector(solve(CX, b, system="Pt")) == t(r$P) %*% b) )

u1 <- update(CX, XX,    mult=pi)
u2 <- update(CX, t(M1), mult=pi) # with the original M, where XX = M M
stopifnot(all.equal(u1,u2, tol=1e-14))

   ## [ See  help(Cholesky)  for more examples ]
   ##        -------------
```

---

chol *Choleski Decomposition - 'Matrix' S4 Generic and Methods*

Description

Compute the Choleski factorization of a real symmetric positive-definite square matrix.

Usage

```
chol(x, ...)
## S4 method for signature dsCMatrix
chol(x, pivot = FALSE, ...)
## S4 method for signature dsparseMatrix
chol(x, pivot = FALSE, cache = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a (sparse or dense) square matrix, here inheriting from class Matrix; if x is not positive definite, an error is signalled.
pivot	logical indicating if pivoting is to be used. Currently, this is *not* made use of for dense matrices.
cache	logical indicating if the result should be cashed in x@factors; note that this argument is experimental and only available for some sparse matrices.
...	potentially further arguments passed to methods.

Details

Note that these Cholesky factorizations are typically *cached* with x currently, and these caches are available in x@factors, which may be useful for the sparse case when pivot = TRUE, where the permutation can be retrieved; see also the examples.

However, this should not be considered part of the API and made use of. Rather consider Cholesky() in such situations, since chol(x, pivot=TRUE) uses the same algorithm (but not the same return value!) as Cholesky(x, LDL=FALSE) and chol(x) corresponds to Cholesky(x, perm=FALSE, LDL=FALSE).

Value

a matrix of class Cholesky, i.e., upper triangular: R such that $R'R = x$ (if pivot=FALSE) *or* $P'R'RP = x$ (if pivot=TRUE and P is the corresponding permutation matrix).

Methods

Use showMethods(chol) to see all; some are worth mentioning here:

chol signature(x = "dgeMatrix"): works via "dpoMatrix", see class dpoMatrix.

chol signature(x = "dpoMatrix"): Returns (and stores) the Cholesky decomposition of x, via LAPACK routines dlacpy and dpotrf.

chol signature(x = "dppMatrix"): Returns (and stores) the Cholesky decomposition via LAPACK routine dpptrf.

chol signature(x = "dsCMatrix", pivot = "logical"): Returns (and stores) the Cholesky decomposition of x. If pivot is true, the Approximate Minimal Degree (AMD) algorithm is used to create a reordering of the rows and columns of x so as to reduce fill-in.

References

Timothy A. Davis (2006) *Direct Methods for Sparse Linear Systems*, SIAM Series "Fundamentals of Algorithms".

Tim Davis (1996), An approximate minimal degree ordering algorithm, *SIAM J. Matrix Analysis and Applications*, **17**, 4, 886–905.

See Also

The default from **base**, chol; for more flexibility (but not returning a matrix!) Cholesky.

Examples

```
showMethods(chol, inherited = FALSE) # show different methods

sy2 <- new("dsyMatrix", Dim = as.integer(c(2,2)), x = c(14, NA,32,77))
(c2 <- chol(sy2))#-> "Cholesky" matrix
stopifnot(all.equal(c2, chol(as(sy2, "dpoMatrix")), tolerance= 1e-13))
str(c2)

## An example where chol() cant work
(sy3 <- new("dsyMatrix", Dim = as.integer(c(2,2)), x = c(14, -1, 2, -7)))
try(chol(sy3)) # error, since it is not positive definite

## A sparse example --- exemplifying pivot
(mm <- toeplitz(as(c(10, 0, 1, 0, 3), "sparseVector"))) # 5 x 5
(R <- chol(mm)) ## default:  pivot = FALSE
R2 <- chol(mm, pivot=FALSE)
stopifnot( identical(R, R2), all.equal(crossprod(R), mm) )
(R. <- chol(mm, pivot=TRUE))# nice band structure,
## but of course crossprod(R.) is *NOT* equal to mm
## --> see Cholesky() and its examples, for the pivot structure & factorization
stopifnot(all.equal(sqrt(det(mm)), det(R)),
          all.equal(prod(diag(R)), det(R)),
          all.equal(prod(diag(R.)), det(R)))

## a second, even sparser example:
(M2 <- toeplitz(as(c(1,.5, rep(0,12), -.1), "sparseVector")))
c2 <- chol(M2)
C2 <- chol(M2, pivot=TRUE)
## For the experts, check the caching of the factorizations:
ff <- M2@factors[["spdCholesky"]]
```

```
FF <- M2@factors[["sPdCholesky"]]
L1 <- as(ff, "Matrix")# pivot=FALSE: no perm.
L2 <- as(FF, "Matrix"); P2 <- as(FF, "pMatrix")
stopifnot(identical(t(L1), c2),
          all.equal(t(L2), C2, tolerance=0),#-- why not identical()?
          all.equal(M2, tcrossprod(L1)),            # M = LL
          all.equal(M2, crossprod(crossprod(L2, P2)))# M = PL LP
         )
```

---

chol2inv-methods *Inverse from Choleski or QR Decomposition – Matrix Methods*

Description

Invert a symmetric, positive definite square matrix from its Choleski decomposition. Equivalently, compute $(X'X)^{-1}$ from the (R part) of the QR decomposition of X.
Even more generally, given an upper triangular matrix R, compute $(R'R)^{-1}$.

Methods

x = "ANY" the default method from **base**, see chol2inv, for traditional matrices.

x = "dtrMatrix" method for the numeric triangular matrices, built on the same LAPACK DPOTRI function as the base method.

x = "denseMatrix" if x is coercable to a triangularMatrix, call the "dtrMatrix" method above.

x = "sparseMatrix" if x is coercable to a triangularMatrix, use solve() currently.

See Also

chol (for Matrix objects); further, chol2inv (from the **base** package), solve.

Examples

```
(M  <- Matrix(cbind(1, 1:3, c(1,3,7))))
(cM <- chol(M)) # a "Cholesky" object, inheriting from "dtrMatrix"
chol2inv(cM) %*% M # the identity
stopifnot(all(chol2inv(cM) %*% M - Diagonal(nrow(M))) < 1e-10)
```

Cholesky *Cholesky Decomposition of a Sparse Matrix*

Description

Computes the Cholesky (aka "Choleski") decomposition of a sparse, symmetric, positive-definite matrix. However, typically chol() should rather be used unless you are interested in the different kinds of sparse Cholesky decompositions.

Usage

```
Cholesky(A, perm = TRUE, LDL = !super, super = FALSE, Imult = 0, ...)
```

Arguments

A	sparse symmetric matrix. No missing values or IEEE special values are allowed.
perm	logical scalar indicating if a fill-reducing permutation should be computed and applied to the rows and columns of A. Default is TRUE.
LDL	logical scalar indicating if the decomposition should be computed as LDL' where L is a unit lower triangular matrix. The alternative is LL' where L is lower triangular with arbitrary diagonal elements. Default is TRUE. Setting it to NA leaves the choice to a CHOLMOD-internal heuristic.
super	logical scalar indicating if a supernodal decomposition should be created. The alternative is a simplicial decomposition. Default is FALSE. Setting it to NA leaves the choice to a CHOLMOD-internal heuristic.
Imult	numeric scalar which defaults to zero. The matrix that is decomposed is $A+m*I$ where m is the value of Imult and I is the identity matrix of order ncol(A).
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This is a generic function with special methods for different types of matrices. Use showMethods("Cholesky") to list all the methods for the Cholesky generic.

The method for class dsCMatrix of sparse matrices — the only one available currently — is based on functions from the CHOLMOD library.

Again: If you just want the Cholesky decomposition of a matrix in a straightforward way, you should probably rather use chol(.).

Note that if perm=TRUE (default), the decomposition is

$$A = P'\tilde{L}D\tilde{L}'P = P'LL'P,$$

where L can be extracted by as(*, "Matrix"), P by as(*, "pMatrix") and both by expand(*), see the class CHMfactor documentation.

Note that consequently, you cannot easily get the "traditional" cholesky factor R, from this decomposition, as

$$R'R = A = P'LL'P = P'\tilde{R}'\tilde{R}P = (\tilde{R}P)'(\tilde{R}P),$$

but $\tilde{R}P$ is *not* triangular even though $\tilde{R}$ is.

Value

an object inheriting from either "CHMsuper", or "CHMsimpl", depending on the super argument; both classes extend "CHMfactor" which extends "MatrixFactorization".

In other words, the result of Cholesky() is *not* a matrix, and if you want one, you should probably rather use chol(), see Details.

References

Tim Davis (2005) *CHOLMOD: sparse supernodal Cholesky factorization and update/downdate* http://www.cise.ufl.edu/research/sparse/cholmod/

Timothy A. Davis (2006) *Direct Methods for Sparse Linear Systems*, SIAM Series "Fundamentals of Algorithms".

See Also

Class definitions CHMfactor and dsCMatrix and function expand. Note the extra solve(*, system = .) options in CHMfactor.

Note that chol() returns matrices (inheriting from "Matrix") whereas Cholesky() returns a "CHMfactor" object, and hence a typical user will rather use chol(A).

Examples

```
data(KNex)
mtm <- with(KNex, crossprod(mm))
str(mtm@factors) # empty list()
(C1 <- Cholesky(mtm))             # uses show(<MatrixFactorization>)
str(mtm@factors) # sPDCholesky (simpl)
(Cm <- Cholesky(mtm, super = TRUE))
c(C1 = isLDL(C1), Cm = isLDL(Cm))
str(mtm@factors) # sPDCholesky  *and* SPdCholesky
str(cm1  <- as(C1, "sparseMatrix"))
str(cmat <- as(Cm, "sparseMatrix"))# hmm: super is *less* sparse here
cm1[1:20, 1:20]

b <- matrix(c(rep(0, 711), 1), nc = 1)
## solve(Cm, b) by default solves  Ax = b, where A = CmCm (= mtm)!
## hence, the identical() check *should* work, but fails on some GOTOblas:
x <- solve(Cm, b)
stopifnot(identical(x, solve(Cm, b, system = "A")),
          all.equal(x, solve(mtm, b)))

Cn <- Cholesky(mtm, perm = FALSE)# no permutation -- much worse:
sizes <- c(simple = object.size(C1),
           super  = object.size(Cm),
           noPerm = object.size(Cn))
## simple is 100, super= 137, noPerm= 812 :
noquote(cbind(format(100 * sizes / sizes[1], digits=4)))


## Visualize the sparseness:
dq <- function(ch) paste(",ch,", sep="") ## dQuote(<UTF-8>) gives bad plots
image(mtm, main=paste("crossprod(mm) : Sparse", dq(class(mtm))))
image(cm1, main= paste("as(Cholesky(crossprod(mm)),\"sparseMatrix\"):",
                       dq(class(cm1))))


## Smaller example, with same matrix as in  help(chol) :
(mm <- Matrix(toeplitz(c(10, 0, 1, 0, 3)), sparse = TRUE)) # 5 x 5
(opts <- expand.grid(perm = c(TRUE,FALSE), LDL = c(TRUE,FALSE), super = c(FALSE,TRUE)))
rr <- lapply(seq_len(nrow(opts)), function(i)
             do.call(Cholesky, c(list(A = mm), opts[i,])))
nn <- do.call(expand.grid, c(attr(opts, "out.attr")$dimnames,
              stringsAsFactors=FALSE,KEEP.OUT.ATTRS=FALSE))
names(rr) <- apply(nn, 1, function(r)
                   paste(sub("(=.).*","\\1", r), collapse=","))
str(rr, max=1)

str(re <- lapply(rr, expand), max=2)
## each has a P and a L matrix %% FIXME !! --- "check" them  __unfinished__
R0 <- chol(mm, pivot=FALSE)
```

```
R1 <- chol(mm, pivot=TRUE )
stopifnot(all.equal(t(R1), re[[1]]$L),
          all.equal(t(R0), re[[2]]$L),
          identical(as(1:5, "pMatrix"), re[[2]]$P), # no pivoting
TRUE)



# Version of the underlying SuiteSparse library by Tim Davis :
.SuiteSparse_version()
```

Cholesky-class *Cholesky and Bunch-Kaufman Decompositions*

Description

The "Cholesky" class is the class of Cholesky decompositions of positive-semidefinite, real dense matrices. The "BunchKaufman" class is the class of Bunch-Kaufman decompositions of symmetric, real matrices. The "pCholesky" and "pBunchKaufman" classes are their ***p****acked* storage versions.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("Cholesky", ...) or new("BunchKaufman", ...), etc, or rather by calls of the form chol(pm) or BunchKaufman(pm) where pm inherits from the "dpoMatrix" or "dsyMatrix" class or as a side-effect of other functions applied to "dpoMatrix" objects (see dpoMatrix).

Slots

A Cholesky decomposition extends class MatrixFactorization but is basically a triangular matrix extending the "dtrMatrix" class.

uplo: inherited from the "dtrMatrix" class.

diag: inherited from the "dtrMatrix" class.

x: inherited from the "dtrMatrix" class.

Dim: inherited from the "dtrMatrix" class.

Dimnames: inherited from the "dtrMatrix" class.

A Bunch-Kaufman decomposition also extends the "dtrMatrix" class and has a perm slot representing a permutation matrix. The packed versions extend the "dtpMatrix" class.

Extends

Class "MatrixFactorization" and "dtrMatrix", directly. Class "dgeMatrix", by class "dtrMatrix". Class "Matrix", by class "dtrMatrix".

Methods

Both these factorizations can *directly* be treated as (triangular) matrices, as they extend "dtrMatrix", see above. There are currently no further explicit methods defined with class "Cholesky" or "BunchKaufman" in the signature.

Note

1. Objects of class "Cholesky" typically stem from chol(D), applied to a *dense* matrix D.
   On the other hand, the *function* Cholesky(S) applies to a *sparse* matrix S, and results in objects inheriting from class CHMfactor.
2. For traditional matrices m, chol(m) is a traditional matrix as well, triangular, but simply an $n \times n$ numeric matrix. Hence, for compatibility, the "Cholesky" and "BunchKaufman" classes (and their "p*" packed versions) also extend triangular Matrix classes (such as "dtrMatrix").
   Consequently, determinant(R) for R <- chol(A) returns the determinant of R, not of A. This is in contrast to class CHMfactor objects C, where determinant(C) gives the determinant of the *original* matrix A, for C <- Cholesky(A), see also the determinant method documentation on the class CHMfactor page.

See Also

Classes dtrMatrix, dpoMatrix; function chol.

Function Cholesky resulting in class CHMfactor objects, *not* class "Cholesky" ones, see the section 'Note'.

Examples

```
(sm <- as(as(Matrix(diag(5) + 1), "dsyMatrix"), "dspMatrix"))
signif(csm <- chol(sm), 4)

(pm <- crossprod(Matrix(rnorm(18), nrow = 6, ncol = 3)))
(ch <- chol(pm))
if (toupper(ch@uplo) == "U") # which is TRUE
   crossprod(ch)
stopifnot(all.equal(as(crossprod(ch), "matrix"),
                    as(pm, "matrix"), tolerance=1e-14))
```

---

colSums *Form Row and Column Sums and Means*

Description

Form row and column sums and means for Matrix objects.

Usage

```
colSums (x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1, ...)
rowSums (x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1, ...)
colMeans(x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1, ...)
rowMeans(x, na.rm = FALSE, dims = 1, ...)

## S4 method for signature CsparseMatrix
colSums(x, na.rm = FALSE,
        dims = 1, sparseResult = FALSE)
## S4 method for signature CsparseMatrix
rowSums(x, na.rm = FALSE,
        dims = 1, sparseResult = FALSE)
## S4 method for signature CsparseMatrix
```

```
colMeans(x, na.rm = FALSE,
         dims = 1, sparseResult = FALSE)
## S4 method for signature CsparseMatrix
rowMeans(x, na.rm = FALSE,
         dims = 1, sparseResult = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a Matrix, i.e., inheriting from Matrix.
na.rm	logical. Should missing values (including NaN) be omitted from the calculations?
dims	completely ignored by the Matrix methods.
...	potentially further arguments, for method <-> generic compatibility.
sparseResult	logical indicating if the result should be sparse, i.e., inheriting from class sparseVector.

Value

returns a numeric vector if sparseResult is FALSE as per default. Otherwise, returns a sparseVector.

See Also

colSums and the sparseVector classes.

Examples

```
(M <- bdiag(Diagonal(2), matrix(1:3, 3,4), diag(3:2))) # 7 x 8
colSums(M)
d <- Diagonal(10, c(0,0,10,0,2,rep(0,5)))
MM <- kronecker(d, M)
dim(MM) # 70 80
length(MM@x) # 160, but many are 0 ; drop those:
MM <- drop0(MM)
length(MM@x) # 32
  cm <- colSums(MM)
(scm <- colSums(MM, sparseResult = TRUE))
stopifnot(is(scm, "sparseVector"),
          identical(cm, as.numeric(scm)))
rowSums (MM, sparseResult = TRUE) # 14 of 70 are not zero
colMeans(MM, sparseResult = TRUE) # 16 of 80 are not zero
## Since we have no NAs, these two are equivalent :
stopifnot(identical(rowMeans(MM, sparseResult = TRUE),
                    rowMeans(MM, sparseResult = TRUE, na.rm = TRUE)),
  rowMeans(Diagonal(16)) == 1/16,
  colSums(Diagonal(7)) == 1)
```

compMatrix-class *Class "compMatrix" of Composite (Factorizable) Matrices*

Description

Virtual class of *composite* matrices; i.e., matrices that can be *factorized*, typically as a product of simpler matrices.

Objects from the Class

A virtual Class: No objects may be created from it.

Slots

`factors`: Object of class `"list"` - a list of factorizations of the matrix. Note that this is typically empty, i.e. `list()`, initially and is updated automagically whenever a matrix factorization is computed.

`Dim` ,

`Dimnames`: inherited from the `Matrix` class, see there.

Extends

Class `"Matrix"`, directly.

condest *Compute Approximate CONDition number and 1-Norm of (Large) Matrices*

Description

"Estimate", i.e. compute approximately the CONDition number of a (potentially large, often sparse) matrix `A`. It works by apply a fast *randomized* approximation of the 1-norm, `norm(A,"1")`, through `onenormest(.)`.

Usage

```
condest(A, t = min(n, 5), normA = norm(A, "1"),
        silent = FALSE, quiet = TRUE)

onenormest(A, t = min(n, 5), A.x, At.x, n,
           silent = FALSE, quiet = silent,
           iter.max = 10, eps = 4 * .Machine$double.eps)
```

Arguments

A	a square matrix, optional for onenormest(), where instead of A, A.x and At.x can be specified, see there.
t	number of columns to use in the iterations.
normA	number; (an estimate of) the 1-norm of A, by default norm(A, "1"); may be replaced by an estimate.
silent	logical indicating if warning and (by default) convergence messages should be displayed.
quiet	logical indicating if convergence messages should be displayed.
A.x, At.x	when A is missing, these two must be given as functions which compute A %% x, or t(A) %% x, respectively.
n	== nrow(A), only needed when A is not specified.
iter.max	maximal number of iterations for the 1-norm estimator.
eps	the relative change that is deemed irrelevant.

Details

condest() calls lu(A), and subsequently onenormest(A.x = , At.x =) to compute an approximate norm of the *inverse* of A, A^{-1}, in a way which keeps using sparse matrices efficiently when A is sparse.

Note that onenormest() uses random vectors and hence *both* functions' results are random, i.e., depend on the random seed, see, e.g., set.seed().

Value

Both functions return a list; condest() with components,

est	a number > 0, the estimated (1-norm) condition number $\hat{\kappa}$; when $r :=$rcond(A), $1/\hat{\kappa} \approx r$.
v	the maximal Ax column, scaled to norm(v) = 1. Consequently, $norm(Av) = norm(A)/est$; when est is large, v is an approximate null vector.

The function onenormest() returns a list with components,

est	a number > 0, the estimated norm(A, "1").
v	0-1 integer vector length n, with an 1 at the index j with maximal column A[,j] in A.
w	numeric vector, the largest Ax found.
iter	the number of iterations used.

Author(s)

This is based on octave's condest() and onenormest() implementations with original author Jason Riedy, U Berkeley; translation to and adaption by Martin Maechler.

References

Nicholas J. Higham and Françoise Tisseur (2000). A Block Algorithm for Matrix 1-Norm Estimation, with an Application to 1-Norm Pseudospectra. *SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl.* **21**, 4, 1185–1201. http://dx.doi.org/10.1137/S0895479899356080

William W. Hager (1984). Condition Estimates. *SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput.* **5**, 311–316.

See Also

norm, rcond.

Examples

```
data(KNex)
mtm <- with(KNex, crossprod(mm))
system.time(ce <- condest(mtm))
sum(abs(ce$v)) ## || v ||_1  == 1
## Prove that  || A v || = || A || / est  (as ||v|| = 1):
stopifnot(all.equal(norm(mtm %*% ce$v),
                    norm(mtm) / ce$est))

## reciprocal
1 / ce$est
system.time(rc <- rcond(mtm)) # takes ca  3 x  longer
rc
all.equal(rc, 1/ce$est) # TRUE -- the approxmation was good

one <- onenormest(mtm)
str(one) ## est = 12.3
## the maximal column:
which(one$v == 1) # mostly 4, rarely 1, depending on random seed
```

CsparseMatrix-class *Class "CsparseMatrix" of Sparse Matrices in Column-compressed Form*

Description

The "CsparseMatrix" class is the virtual class of all sparse matrices coded in sorted compressed column-oriented form. Since it is a virtual class, no objects may be created from it. See showClass("CsparseMatrix") for its subclasses.

Slots

i: Object of class "integer" of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the *0-based* row numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix, i.e., i must be in 0:(nrow(.)-1).

p: integer vector for providing pointers, one for each column, to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the column. .@p is of length ncol(.) + 1, with p[1] == 0 and p[length(p)] == nnzero, such that in fact, diff(.@p) are the number of non-zero elements for each column.

In other words, m@p[1:ncol(m)] contains the indices of those elements in m@x that are the first elements in the respective column of m.

Dim, Dimnames: inherited from the superclass, see the sparseMatrix class.

Extends

Class "sparseMatrix", directly. Class "Matrix", by class "sparseMatrix".

Methods

matrix products %*%, crossprod() and tcrossprod(), several solve methods, and other matrix methods available:

signature(e1 = "CsparseMatrix", e2 = "numeric"): ...

Arith signature(e1 = "numeric", e2 = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

Math signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

band signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

- signature(e1 = "CsparseMatrix", e2 = "numeric"): ...

- signature(e1 = "numeric", e2 = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

+ signature(e1 = "CsparseMatrix", e2 = "numeric"): ...

+ signature(e1 = "numeric", e2 = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "CsparseMatrix", to = "TsparseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "CsparseMatrix", to = "denseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "CsparseMatrix", to = "matrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "CsparseMatrix", to = "lsparseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "CsparseMatrix", to = "nsparseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "TsparseMatrix", to = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "denseMatrix", to = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

diag signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

gamma signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

lgamma signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

log signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

t signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

tril signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

triu signature(x = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

Note

All classes extending CsparseMatrix have a common validity (see validObject) check function. That function additionally checks the i slot for each column to contain increasing row numbers. In earlier versions of **Matrix** (<= 0.999375-16), validObject automatically re-sorted the entries when necessary, and hence new() calls with somewhat permuted i and x slots worked, as new(...) (*with* slot arguments) automatically checks the validity.

Now, you have to use sparseMatrix to achieve the same functionality or know how to use .validateCsparse() to do so.

See Also

colSums, kronecker, and other such methods with own help pages.

Further, the super class of CsparseMatrix, sparseMatrix, and, e.g., class dgCMatrix for the links to other classes.

Examples

```
getClass("CsparseMatrix")

## The common validity check function (based on C code):
getValidity(getClass("CsparseMatrix"))
```

ddenseMatrix-class *Virtual Class "ddenseMatrix" of Numeric Dense Matrices*

Description

This is the virtual class of all dense numeric (i.e., **d**ouble, hence *"ddense"*) S4 matrices.

Its most important subclass is the dgeMatrix class.

Extends

Class "dMatrix" directly; class "Matrix", by the above.

Slots

the same slots at its subclass dgeMatrix, see there.

Methods

Most methods are implemented via as(*, "dgeMatrix") and are mainly used as "fallbacks" when the subclass doesn't need its own specialized method.

Use showMethods(class = "ddenseMatrix", where = "package:Matrix") for an overview.

See Also

The virtual classes Matrix, dMatrix, and dsparseMatrix.

Examples

```
showClass("ddenseMatrix")

showMethods(class = "ddenseMatrix", where = "package:Matrix")
```

ddiMatrix-class *Class "ddiMatrix" of Diagonal Numeric Matrices*

Description

The class "ddiMatrix" of numerical diagonal matrices.

Note that diagonal matrices now extend sparseMatrix, whereas they did extend dense matrices earlier.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("ddiMatrix", ...) but typically rather via Diagonal.

Slots

x: numeric vector. For an $n \times n$ matrix, the x slot is of length n or 0, depending on the diag slot:

diag: "character" string, either "U" or "N" where "U" denotes unit-diagonal, i.e., identity matrices.

Dim,Dimnames: matrix dimension and dimnames, see the Matrix class description.

Extends

Class "diagonalMatrix", directly. Class "dMatrix", directly. Class "sparseMatrix", indirectly, see showClass("ddiMatrix").

Methods

%*% signature(x = "ddiMatrix", y = "ddiMatrix"): ...

See Also

Class diagonalMatrix and function Diagonal.

Examples

```
(d2 <- Diagonal(x = c(10,1)))
str(d2)
## slightly larger in internal size:
str(as(d2, "sparseMatrix"))

M <- Matrix(cbind(1,2:4))
M %*% d2 #> fast multiplication

chol(d2) # trivial
stopifnot(is(cd2 <- chol(d2), "ddiMatrix"),
          all.equal(cd2@x, c(sqrt(10),1)))
```

---

denseMatrix-class *Virtual Class "denseMatrix" of All Dense Matrices*

Description

This is the virtual class of all dense (S4) matrices. It is the direct superclass of ddenseMatrix, ldenseMatrix

Extends

class "Matrix" directly.

Slots

exactly those of its superclass "Matrix".

Methods

Use `showMethods(class = "denseMatrix", where = "package:Matrix")` for an overview of methods.

Extraction ("[") methods, see `[-methods`.

See Also

`colSums`, `kronecker`, and other such methods with own help pages.

Its superclass `Matrix`, and main subclasses, `ddenseMatrix` and `sparseMatrix`.

Examples

```
showClass("denseMatrix")
```

---

dgCMatrix-class *Compressed, sparse, column-oriented numeric matrices*

Description

The `dgCMatrix` class is a class of sparse numeric matrices in the compressed, sparse, column-oriented format. In this implementation the non-zero elements in the columns are sorted into increasing row order. `dgCMatrix` is the *"standard"* class for sparse numeric matrices in the **Matrix** package.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dgCMatrix", ...)`, more typically via `as(*, "CsparseMatrix")` or similar. Often however, more easily via `Matrix(*, sparse = TRUE)`, or most efficiently via `sparseMatrix()`.

Slots

x: Object of class `"numeric"` - the non-zero elements of the matrix.

... all other slots are inherited from the superclass `"CsparseMatrix"`.

Methods

Matrix products (e.g., crossprod-methods), and (among other)

coerce `signature(from = "matrix", to = "dgCMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dgCMatrix", to = "matrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dgCMatrix", to = "dgTMatrix")`

diag `signature(x = "dgCMatrix")`: returns the diagonal of `x`

dim `signature(x = "dgCMatrix")`: returns the dimensions of `x`

image `signature(x = "dgCMatrix")`: plots an image of `x` using the `levelplot` function

solve `signature(a = "dgCMatrix", b = "...")`: see `solve-methods`, notably the extra argument `sparse`.

lu `signature(x = "dgCMatrix")`: computes the LU decomposition of a square `dgCMatrix` object

See Also

Classes dsCMatrix, dtCMatrix, lu

Examples

```
(m <- Matrix(c(0,0,2:0), 3,5))
str(m)
m[,1]
```

---

dgeMatrix-class *Class "dgeMatrix" of Dense Numeric (S4 Class) Matrices*

Description

A general numeric dense matrix in the S4 Matrix representation. dgeMatrix is the *"standard"* class for dense numeric matrices in the **Matrix** package.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("dgeMatrix", ...) or, more commonly, by coercion from the Matrix class (see Matrix) or by Matrix(..).

Slots

x: Object of class "numeric" - the numeric values contained in the matrix, in column-major order.

Dim: Object of class "integer" - the dimensions of the matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

Dimnames: a list of length two - inherited from class Matrix.

factors: Object of class "list" - a list of factorizations of the matrix.

Methods

The are group methods (see, e.g., Arith)

Arith signature(e1 = "dgeMatrix", e2 = "dgeMatrix"): ...

Arith signature(e1 = "dgeMatrix", e2 = "numeric"): ...

Arith signature(e1 = "numeric", e2 = "dgeMatrix"): ...

Math signature(x = "dgeMatrix"): ...

Math2 signature(x = "dgeMatrix", digits = "numeric"): ...

matrix products %*%, crossprod() and tcrossprod(), several solve methods, and other matrix methods available:

Schur signature(x = "dgeMatrix", vectors = "logical"): ...

Schur signature(x = "dgeMatrix", vectors = "missing"): ...

chol signature(x = "dgeMatrix"): see chol.

coerce signature(from = "dgeMatrix", to = "lgeMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "dgeMatrix", to = "matrix"): ...

coerce `signature(from = "matrix", to = "dgeMatrix")`: ...

colMeans `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: columnwise means (averages)

colSums `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: columnwise sums

diag `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: ...

dim `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: ...

dimnames `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: ...

eigen `signature(x = "dgeMatrix", only.values= "logical")`: ...

eigen `signature(x = "dgeMatrix", only.values= "missing")`: ...

norm `signature(x = "dgeMatrix", type = "character")`: ...

norm `signature(x = "dgeMatrix", type = "missing")`: ...

rcond `signature(x = "dgeMatrix", norm = "character")` or `norm = "missing"`: the reciprocal condition number, `rcond()`.

rowMeans `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: rowwise means (averages)

rowSums `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: rowwise sums

t `signature(x = "dgeMatrix")`: matrix transpose

See Also

Classes `Matrix`, `dtrMatrix`, and `dsyMatrix`.

`dgRMatrix-class` *Sparse Compressed, Row-oriented Numeric Matrices*

Description

The `dgRMatrix` class is a class of sparse numeric matrices in the compressed, sparse, row-oriented format. In this implementation the non-zero elements in the rows are sorted into increasing column order.

Note: The column-oriented sparse classes, e.g., `dgCMatrix`, are preferred and better supported in the **Matrix** package.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dgRMatrix", ...)`.

Slots

`j`: Object of class `"integer"` of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the column numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix.

`p`: Object of class `"integer"` of pointers, one for each row, to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the row.

`x`: Object of class `"numeric"` - the non-zero elements of the matrix.

`Dim`: Object of class `"integer"` - the dimensions of the matrix.

Methods

coerce `signature(from = "matrix", to = "dgRMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dgRMatrix", to = "matrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dgRMatrix", to = "dgTMatrix")`

diag `signature(x = "dgRMatrix")`: returns the diagonal of `x`

dim `signature(x = "dgRMatrix")`: returns the dimensions of `x`

image `signature(x = "dgRMatrix")`: plots an image of `x` using the `levelplot` function

See Also

the `RsparseMatrix` class, the virtual class of all sparse compressed **r**ow-oriented matrices, with its methods. The `dgCMatrix` class (**c**olumn compressed sparse) is really preferred.

---

dgTMatrix-class *Sparse matrices in triplet form*

Description

The `"dgTMatrix"` class is the class of sparse matrices stored as (possibly redundant) triplets. The internal representation is not at all unique, contrary to the one for class `dgCMatrix`.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dgTMatrix", ...)`, but more typically via `as(*, "dgTMatrix")`, `spMatrix()`, or `sparseMatrix(*, giveCsparse=FALSE)`.

Slots

`i`: Object of class `"integer"` - the row indices of non-zero entries *in 0-base*, i.e., must be in `0:(nrow(.)-1)`.

`j`: Object of class `"integer"` - the column indices of non-zero entries. Must be the same length as slot `i` and *0-based* as well, i.e., in `0:(ncol(.)-1)`.

`x`: Object of class `"numeric"` - the (non-zero) entry at position `(i,j)`. Must be the same length as slot `i`. If an index pair occurs more than once the corresponding values of slot `x` are added to form the element of the matrix.

`Dim`: Object of class `"integer"` of length 2 - the dimensions of the matrix.

Methods

`+` `signature(e1 = "dgTMatrix", e2 = "dgTMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dgTMatrix", to = "dgCMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dgTMatrix", to = "dgeMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dgTMatrix", to = "matrix")`, and typically coercion methods for more specific signatures, we are not mentioning here.

Note that these are not guaranteed to continue to exist, but rather you should use calls like `as(x,"CsparseMatrix")`, `as(x, "generalMatrix")`, `as(x, "dMatrix")`, i.e. coercion to higher level virtual classes.

coerce `signature(from = "matrix", to = "dgTMatrix")`, (direct coercion from tradition matrix).

image `signature(x = "dgTMatrix")`: plots an image of `x` using the `levelplot` function

t `signature(x = "dgTMatrix")`: returns the transpose of `x`

Note

Triplet matrices are a convenient form in which to construct sparse matrices after which they can be coerced to `dgCMatrix` objects.

Note that both `new(.)` and `spMatrix` constructors for `"dgTMatrix"` (and other `"linkS4class{TsparseMatrix}"` classes) implicitly add x_k's that belong to identical (i_k, j_k) pairs.

See Also

Class `dgCMatrix` or the superclasses `dsparseMatrix` and `TsparseMatrix`;

Examples

```
m <- Matrix(0+1:28, nrow = 4)
m[-3,c(2,4:5,7)] <- m[ 3, 1:4] <- m[1:3, 6] <- 0
(mT <- as(m, "dgTMatrix"))
str(mT)
mT[1,]
mT[4, drop = FALSE]
stopifnot(identical(mT[lower.tri(mT)],
                    m [lower.tri(m) ]))
mT[lower.tri(mT,diag=TRUE)] <- 0
mT

## Triplet representation with repeated (i,j) entries
## *adds* the corresponding xs:
T2 <- new("dgTMatrix",
          i = as.integer(c(1,1,0,3,3)),
          j = as.integer(c(2,2,4,0,0)), x=10*1:5, Dim=4:5)
str(T2) # contains (i,j,x) slots exactly as above, but
T2 ## has only three non-zero entries, as for repeated (i,j)s,
   ## the corresponding xs are "implicitly" added
stopifnot(nnzero(T2) == 3)
```

`Diagonal` *Create Diagonal Matrix Object*

Description

Create a diagonal matrix object, i.e., an object inheriting from `diagonalMatrix`.

Usage

```
Diagonal(n, x = NULL)

.symDiagonal(n, x = rep.int(1,n), uplo = "U")
.sparseDiagonal(n, x = 1, uplo = "U",
                shape = if(missing(cols)) "t" else "g",
        unitri, kind, cols = if(n) 0:(n - 1L) else integer(0))
```

Arguments

n	integer specifying the dimension of the (square) matrix. If missing, `length(x)` is used.
x	numeric or logical; if missing, a *unit* diagonal $n \times n$ matrix is created.
uplo	for `.symDiagonal`, the resulting sparse `symmetricMatrix` will have slot `uplo` set from this argument, either `"U"` or `"L"`. Only rarely will it make sense to change this from the default.
shape	string of 1 character, one of `c("t","s","g")`, to choose a triangular, symmetric or general result matrix.
unitri	optional logical indicating if a triangular result should be "unit-triangular", i.e., with `diag = "U"` slot, if possible. The default, `missing`, is the same as `TRUE`.
kind	string of 1 character, one of `c("d","l","n")`, to choose the storage mode of the result, from classes `dsparseMatrix`, `lsparseMatrix`, or `nsparseMatrix`, respectively.
cols	integer vector with values from `0:(n-1)`, denoting the *columns* to subselect conceptually, i.e., get the equivalent of `Diagonal(n,*)[, cols + 1]`.

Value

`Diagonal()` returns an object of class `ddiMatrix` or `ldiMatrix` (with "superclass" `diagonalMatrix`).

`.symDiagonal()` returns an object of class `dsCMatrix` or `lsCMatrix`, i.e., a *sparse symmetric* matrix. This can be more efficient than `Diagonal(n)` when the result is combined with further symmetric (sparse) matrices, however *not* for matrix multiplications where `Diagonal()` is clearly preferred.

`.sparseDiagonal()`, the workhorse of `.symDiagonal` returns a `CsparseMatrix` (the resulting class depending on `shape` and `kind`) representation of `Diagonal(n)`, or, when `cols` are specified, of `Diagonal(n)[, cols+1]`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

the generic function `diag` for *extraction* of the diagonal from a matrix works for all "Matrices".

`bandSparse` constructs a *banded* sparse matrix from its non-zero sub-/super - diagonals. `band(A)` returns a band matrix containing some sub-/super - diagonals of `A`.

`Matrix` for general matrix construction; further, class `diagonalMatrix`.

Examples

```
Diagonal(3)
Diagonal(x = 10^(3:1))
Diagonal(x = (1:4) >= 2)#-> "ldiMatrix"

## Use Diagonal() + kronecker() for "repeated-block" matrices:
M1 <- Matrix(0+0:5, 2,3)
(M <- kronecker(Diagonal(3), M1))

(S <- crossprod(Matrix(rbinom(60, size=1, prob=0.1), 10,6)))
(SI <- S + 10*.symDiagonal(6)) # sparse symmetric still
stopifnot(is(SI, "dsCMatrix"))
(I4 <- .sparseDiagonal(4, shape="t"))# now (2012-10) unitriangular
stopifnot(I4@diag == "U", all(I4 == diag(4)))
```

---

diagonalMatrix-class *Class "diagonalMatrix" of Diagonal Matrices*

Description

Class "diagonalMatrix" is the virtual class of all diagonal matrices.

Objects from the Class

A virtual Class: No objects may be created from it.

Slots

`diag`: code"character" string, either `"U"` or `"N"`, where `"U"` means 'unit-diagonal'.

`Dim`: matrix dimension, and

`Dimnames`: the `dimnames`, a `list`, see the `Matrix` class description. Typically `list(NULL,NULL)` for diagonal matrices.

Extends

Class `"sparseMatrix"`, directly.

Methods

These are just a subset of the signature for which defined methods. Currently, there are (too) many explicit methods defined in order to ensure efficient methods for diagonal matrices.

coerce `signature(from = "matrix", to = "diagonalMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "Matrix", to = "diagonalMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "diagonalMatrix", to = "generalMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "diagonalMatrix", to = "triangularMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "diagonalMatrix", to = "nMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "diagonalMatrix", to = "matrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "diagonalMatrix", to = "sparseVector")`: ...

t `signature(x = "diagonalMatrix")`: ...
and many more methods

solve `signature(a = "diagonalMatrix", b, ...)`: is trivially implemented, of course; see also `solve-methods`.

which `signature(x = "nMatrix")`, semantically equivalent to **base** function `which(x, arr.ind)`.

"Math" `signature(x = "diagonalMatrix")`: all these group methods return a `"diagonalMatrix"`, apart from `cumsum()` etc which return a *vector* also for **base** `matrix`.

`*` `signature(e1 = "ddiMatrix", e2="denseMatrix")`: arithmetic and other operators from the `Ops` group have a few dozen explicit method definitions, in order to keep the results *diagonal* in many cases, including the following:

`/` `signature(e1 = "ddiMatrix", e2="denseMatrix")`: the result is from class `ddiMatrix` which is typically very desirable. Note that when `e2` contains off-diagonal zeros or `NA`s, we implicitly use $0/x = 0$, hence differing from traditional arithmetic (where $0/0 \mapsto$ NaN), in order to preserve sparsity.

summary `(object = "diagonalMatrix")`: Returns an object of S3 class `"diagSummary"` which is the summary of the vector `object@x` plus a simple heading, and an appropriate `print` method.

See Also

`Diagonal()` as constructor of these matrices, and `isDiagonal`. `ddiMatrix` and `ldiMatrix` are "actual" classes extending `"diagonalMatrix"`.

Examples

```
I5 <- Diagonal(5)
D5 <- Diagonal(x = 10*(1:5))
## trivial (but explicitly defined) methods:
stopifnot(identical(crossprod(I5), I5),
          identical(tcrossprod(I5), I5),
          identical(crossprod(I5, D5), D5),
          identical(tcrossprod(D5, I5), D5),
          identical(solve(D5), solve(D5, I5)),
          all.equal(D5, solve(solve(D5)), tolerance = 1e-12)
          )
solve(D5)# efficient as is diagonal

# an unusual way to construct a band matrix:
rbind2(cbind2(I5, D5),
       cbind2(D5, I5))
```

`diagU2N` *Transform Triangular Matrices from Unit Triangular to General and back*

Description

Transform a triangular matrix `x`, i.e., of `class "triangularMatrix"`, from (internally!) unit triangular ("unitriangular") to "general" (`diagU2N(x)`) or back (`diagN2U(x)`). Note that the latter, `diagN2U(x)`, also sets the diagonal to one in cases where `diag(x)` was not all one.

`.diagU2N(x)` assumes but does *not* check that `x` is a `triangularMatrix` with `diag` slot `"U"`, and should hence be used with care.

Usage

```
 diagN2U(x, cl = getClassDef(class(x)), checkDense = FALSE)
 diagU2N(x, cl = getClassDef(class(x)), checkDense = FALSE)
.diagU2N(x, cl, checkDense = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	a triangularMatrix, often sparse.
cl	(optional, for speedup only:) class (definition) of x.
checkDense	logical indicating if dense (see denseMatrix) matrices should be considered at all; i.e., when false, as per default, the result will be sparse even when x is dense.

Details

The concept of unit triangular matrices with a diag slot of "U" stems from LAPACK.

Value

a triangular matrix of the same class and (semantically) with identical entries as x, but with a different diag slot.

Note

Such internal storage details should rarely be of relevance to the user. Hence, these functions really are rather *internal* utilities.

See Also

"triangularMatrix", "dtCMatrix".

Examples

```
(T <- Diagonal(7) + triu(Matrix(rpois(49, 1/4), 7,7), k = 1))
(uT <- diagN2U(T)) # "unitriangular"
(t.u <- diagN2U(10*T))# changes the diagonal!
stopifnot(all(T == uT), diag(t.u) == 1,
          identical(T, diagU2N(uT)))
T[upper.tri(T)] <- 5
T <- diagN2U(as(T,"triangularMatrix"))
stopifnot(T@diag == "U")
dT <- as(T, "denseMatrix")
dt. <- diagN2U(dT)
dtU <- diagN2U(dT, checkDense=TRUE)
stopifnot(is(dtU, "denseMatrix"), is(dt., "sparseMatrix"),
          all(dT == dt.), all(dT == dtU),
          dt.@diag == "U", dtU@diag == "U")
```

dMatrix-class *(Virtual) Class "dMatrix" of "double" Matrices*

Description

The dMatrix class is a virtual class contained by all actual classes of numeric matrices in the **Matrix** package. Similarly, all the actual classes of logical matrices inherit from the lMatrix class.

Slots

Common to *all* matrix object in the package:

Dim: Object of class "integer" - the dimensions of the matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

Dimnames: list of length two; each component containing NULL or a character vector length equal the corresponding Dim element.

Methods

There are (relatively simple) group methods (see, e.g., Arith)

Arith signature(e1 = "dMatrix", e2 = "dMatrix"): ...

Arith signature(e1 = "dMatrix", e2 = "numeric"): ...

Arith signature(e1 = "numeric", e2 = "dMatrix"): ...

Math signature(x = "dMatrix"): ...

Math2 signature(x = "dMatrix", digits = "numeric"): this group contains round() and signif().

Compare signature(e1 = "numeric", e2 = "dMatrix"): ...

Compare signature(e1 = "dMatrix", e2 = "numeric"): ...

Compare signature(e1 = "dMatrix", e2 = "dMatrix"): ...

Summary signature(x = "dMatrix"): The "Summary" group contains the seven functions max(), min(), range(), prod(), sum(), any(), and all().

The following methods are also defined for all double matrices:

coerce signature(from = "dMatrix", to = "matrix"): ...

expm signature(x = "dMatrix"): computes the *"Matrix Exponential"*, see expm.

zapsmall signature(x = "dMatrix"): ...

The following methods are defined for all logical matrices:

which signature(x = "lsparseMatrix") and many other subclasses of "lMatrix": as the **base** function which(x, arr.ind) returns the indices of the TRUE entries in x; if arr.ind is true, as a 2-column matrix of row and column indices.

See Also

The nonzero-pattern matrix class nMatrix, which can be used to store non-NA logical matrices even more compactly.

The numeric matrix classes dgeMatrix, dgCMatrix, and Matrix.

drop0(x, tol=1e-10) is sometimes preferable to (and more efficient than) zapsmall(x, digits=10).

Examples

```
showClass("dMatrix")

set.seed(101)
round(Matrix(rnorm(28), 4,7), 2)
M <- Matrix(rlnorm(56, sd=10), 4,14)
(M. <- zapsmall(M))
table(as.logical(M. == 0))
```

---

dpoMatrix-class *Positive Semi-definite Dense Numeric Matrices*

Description

The "dpoMatrix" class is the class of positive-semidefinite symmetric matrices in nonpacked storage. The "dppMatrix" class is the same except in packed storage. Only the upper triangle or the lower triangle is required to be available.

The "corMatrix" class extends "dpoMatrix" with a slot sd.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("dpoMatrix", ...) or from crossprod applied to an "dgeMatrix" object.

Slots

uplo: Object of class "character". Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

x: Object of class "numeric". The numeric values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

Dim: Object of class "integer". The dimensions of the matrix which must be a two-element vector of non-negative integers.

Dimnames: inherited from class "Matrix"

factors: Object of class "list". A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

sd: (for "corMatrix") a numeric vector of length n containing the (original) $\sqrt{var(.)}$ entries which allow reconstruction of a covariance matrix from the correlation matrix.

Extends

Class "dsyMatrix", directly.
Classes "dgeMatrix", "symmetricMatrix", and many more by class "dsyMatrix".

Methods

chol signature(x = "dpoMatrix"): Returns (and stores) the Cholesky decomposition of x, see chol.

determinant signature(x = "dpoMatrix"): Returns the determinant of x, via chol(x), see above.

rcond `signature(x = "dpoMatrix", norm = "character")`: Returns (and stores) the reciprocal of the condition number of `x`. The `norm` can be `"O"` for the one-norm (the default) or `"I"` for the infinity-norm. For symmetric matrices the result does not depend on the norm.

solve `signature(a = "dpoMatrix", b = "....")`, and

solve `signature(a = "dppMatrix", b = "....")`work via the Cholesky composition, see also the Matrix `solve-methods`.

Arith `signature(e1 = "dpoMatrix", e2 = "numeric")` (and quite a few other signatures): The result of ("elementwise" defined) arithmetic operations is typically *not* positive-definite anymore. The only exceptions, currently, are multiplications, divisions or additions with *positive* `length(.) == 1` numbers (or `logical`s).

See Also

Classes `dsyMatrix` and `dgeMatrix`; further, `Matrix`, `rcond`, `chol`, `solve`, `crossprod`.

Examples

```
h6 <- Hilbert(6)
rcond(h6)
str(h6)
h6 * 27720 # is integer
solve(h6)
str(hp6 <- as(h6, "dppMatrix"))

### Note that  as(*, "corMatrix")  *scales* the matrix
(ch6 <- as(h6, "corMatrix"))
stopifnot(all.equal(h6 * 27720, round(27720 * h6), tolerance = 1e-14),
          all.equal(ch6@sd^(-2), 2*(1:6)-1, tolerance= 1e-12))
chch <- chol(ch6)
stopifnot(identical(chch, ch6@factors$Cholesky),
          all(abs(crossprod(chch) - ch6) < 1e-10))
```

`drop0` *Drop "Explicit Zeroes" from a Sparse Matrix*

Description

Returns a sparse matrix with no "explicit zeroes", i.e., all zero or `FALSE` entries are dropped from the explicitly indexed matrix entries.

Usage

```
drop0(x, tol = 0, is.Csparse = NA)
```

Arguments

`x`	a Matrix, typically sparse, i.e., inheriting from `sparseMatrix`.
`tol`	non-negative number to be used as tolerance for checking if an entry $x_{i,j}$ should be considered to be zero.
`is.Csparse`	logical indicating prior knowledge about the "Csparseness" of `x`. This exists for possible speedup reasons only.

Value

a Matrix like `x` but with no explicit zeros, i.e., `!any(x@x == 0)`, always inheriting from `CsparseMatrix`.

Note

When a sparse matrix is the result of matrix multiplications, you may want to consider combining `drop0()` with `zapsmall()`, see the example.

See Also

`spMatrix`, class `sparseMatrix`

Examples

```
m <- spMatrix(10,20, i= 1:8, j=2:9, x = c(0:2,3:-1))
m
drop0(m)

## A larger example:
t5 <- new("dtCMatrix", Dim = c(5L, 5L), uplo = "L",
          x = c(10, 1, 3, 10, 1, 10, 1, 10, 10),
  i = c(0L,2L,4L, 1L, 3L,2L,4L, 3L, 4L),
  p = c(0L, 3L, 5L, 7:9))
TT <- kronecker(t5, kronecker(kronecker(t5,t5), t5))
IT <- solve(TT)
I. <- TT %*% IT ;  nnzero(I.) # 697 ( = 625 + 72 )
I.0 <- drop0(zapsmall(I.))
## which actually can be more efficiently achieved by
I.. <- drop0(I., tol = 1e-15)
stopifnot(all(I.0 == Diagonal(625)),
          nnzero(I..) == 625)
```

---

dsCMatrix-class *Numeric Symmetric Sparse (column compressed) Matrices*

Description

The `dsCMatrix` class is a class of symmetric, sparse numeric matrices in the compressed, column-oriented format. In this implementation the non-zero elements in the columns are sorted into increasing row order.
The `dsTMatrix` class is the class of symmetric, sparse numeric matrices in triplet format.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dsCMatrix", ...)` or `new("dsTMatrix", ...)`, or automatically via e.g., `as(*, "symmetricMatrix")`, or (for `dsCMatrix`) also from `Matrix(.)`.

Creation "from scratch" most efficiently happens via `sparseMatrix(*, symmetric=TRUE)`.

Slots

`uplo`: A character object indicating if the upper triangle (`"U"`) or the lower triangle (`"L"`) is stored.

`i`: Object of class `"integer"` of length nnZ (*half* number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each non-zero element in the lower triangle of the matrix.

`p`: (only in class `"dsCMatrix"`:) an `integer` vector for providing pointers, one for each column, see the detailed description in `CsparseMatrix`.

`j`: (only in class `"dsTMatrix"`:) Object of class `"integer"` of length nnZ (as `i`). These are the column numbers for each non-zero element in the lower triangle of the matrix.

`x`: Object of class `"numeric"` of length nnZ – the non-zero elements of the matrix (to be duplicated for full matrix).

`factors`: Object of class `"list"` - a list of factorizations of the matrix.

`Dim`: Object of class `"integer"` - the dimensions of the matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

Extends

Both classes extend classes and `symmetricMatrix` `dsparseMatrix` directly; `dsCMatrix` further directly extends `CsparseMatrix`, where `dsTMatrix` does `TsparseMatrix`.

Methods

solve `signature(a = "dsCMatrix", b = "....")`: `x <- solve(a,b)` solves $Ax = b$ for x; see `solve-methods`.

chol `signature(x = "dsCMatrix", pivot = "logical")`: Returns (and stores) the Cholesky decomposition of `x`, see `chol`.

Cholesky `signature(A = "dsCMatrix",...)`: Computes more flexibly Cholesky decompositions, see `Cholesky`.

determinant `signature(x = "dsCMatrix", logarithm = "missing")`: Evaluate the determinant of `x` on the logarithm scale. This creates and stores the Cholesky factorization.

determinant `signature(x = "dsCMatrix", logarithm = "logical")`: Evaluate the determinant of `x` on the logarithm scale or not, according to the `logarithm` argument. This creates and stores the Cholesky factorization.

t `signature(x = "dsCMatrix")`: Transpose. As for all symmetric matrices, a matrix for which the upper triangle is stored produces a matrix for which the lower triangle is stored and vice versa, i.e., the `uplo` slot is swapped, and the row and column indices are interchanged.

t `signature(x = "dsTMatrix")`: Transpose. The `uplo` slot is swapped from `"U"` to `"L"` or vice versa, as for a `"dsCMatrix"`, see above.

coerce `signature(from = "dsCMatrix", to = "dgTMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dsCMatrix", to = "dgeMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dsCMatrix", to = "matrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dsTMatrix", to = "dgeMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dsTMatrix", to = "dsCMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dsTMatrix", to = "dsyMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dsTMatrix", to = "matrix")`

See Also

Classes `dgCMatrix`, `dgTMatrix`, `dgeMatrix` and those mentioned above.

Examples

```
mm <- Matrix(toeplitz(c(10, 0, 1, 0, 3)), sparse = TRUE)
mm # automatically dsCMatrix
str(mm)

## how would we go from a manually constructed Tsparse* :
mT <- as(mm, "dgTMatrix")

## Either
(symM <- as(mT, "symmetricMatrix"))# dsT
(symC <- as(symM, "CsparseMatrix"))# dsC
## or
sC <- Matrix(mT, sparse=TRUE, forceCheck=TRUE)

sym2 <- as(symC, "TsparseMatrix")
## --> the same as symM, a "dsTMatrix"
```

---

dsparseMatrix-class *Virtual Class "dsparseMatrix" of Numeric Sparse Matrices*

Description

The Class "dsparseMatrix" is the virtual (super) class of all numeric sparse matrices.

Slots

Dim: the matrix dimension, see class "Matrix".

Dimnames: see the "Matrix" class.

x: a numeric vector containing the (non-zero) matrix entries.

Extends

Class "dMatrix" and "sparseMatrix", directly.
Class "Matrix", by the above classes.

See Also

the documentation of the (non virtual) sub classes, see showClass("dsparseMatrix"); in particular, dgTMatrix, dgCMatrix, and dgRMatrix.

Examples

```
showClass("dsparseMatrix")
```

dsRMatrix-class *Symmetric Sparse Compressed Row Matrices*

Description

The dsRMatrix class is a class of symmetric, sparse matrices in the compressed, row-oriented format. In this implementation the non-zero elements in the rows are sorted into increasing column order.

Objects from the Class

These "..RMatrix" classes are currently still mostly unimplemented!

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("dsRMatrix", ...).

Slots

uplo: A character object indicating if the upper triangle ("U") or the lower triangle ("L") is stored. At present only the lower triangle form is allowed.

j: Object of class "integer" of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix.

p: Object of class "integer" of pointers, one for each row, to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the row.

factors: Object of class "list" - a list of factorizations of the matrix.

x: Object of class "numeric" - the non-zero elements of the matrix.

Dim: Object of class "integer" - the dimensions of the matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

Dimnames: List of length two, see Matrix.

Extends

Classes RsparseMatrix, dsparseMatrix and symmetricMatrix, directly.

Class "dMatrix", by class "dsparseMatrix", class "sparseMatrix", by class "dsparseMatrix" or "RsparseMatrix"; class "compMatrix" by class "symmetricMatrix" and of course, class "Matrix".

Methods

forceSymmetric signature(x = "dsRMatrix", uplo = "missing"): a trivial method just returning x

forceSymmetric signature(x = "dsRMatrix", uplo = "character"): if uplo == x@uplo, this trivially returns x; otherwise t(x).

coerce signature(from = "dsCMatrix", to = "dsRMatrix")

See Also

the classes dgCMatrix, dgTMatrix, and dgeMatrix.

Examples

```
(m0 <- new("dsRMatrix"))
m2 <- new("dsRMatrix", Dim = c(2L,2L),
          x = c(3,1), j = c(1L,1L), p = 0:2)
m2
stopifnot(colSums(as(m2, "TsparseMatrix")) == 3:4)
str(m2)
(ds2 <- forceSymmetric(diag(2))) # dsy*
dR <- as(ds2, "RsparseMatrix")
dR # dsRMatrix
```

---

dsyMatrix-class *Symmetric Dense Numeric Matrices*

Description

The "dsyMatrix" class is the class of symmetric, dense matrices in non-packed storage and "dspMatrix" is the class of symmetric dense matrices in packed storage. Only the upper triangle or the lower triangle is stored.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("dsyMatrix", ...).

Slots

uplo: Object of class "character". Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

x: Object of class "numeric". The numeric values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

Dim,Dimnames: The dimension (a length-2 "integer") and corresponding names (or NULL), see the Matrix.

factors: Object of class "list". A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

Extends

"dsyMatrix" extends class "dgeMatrix", directly, whereas
"dspMatrix" extends class "ddenseMatrix", directly.

Both extend class "symmetricMatrix", directly, and class "Matrix" and others, *in*directly, use showClass("dsyMatrix"), e.g., for details.

Methods

coerce signature(from = "ddenseMatrix", to = "dgeMatrix")

coerce signature(from = "dspMatrix", to = "matrix")

coerce signature(from = "dsyMatrix", to = "matrix")

coerce signature(from = "dsyMatrix", to = "dspMatrix")

coerce signature(from = "dspMatrix", to = "dsyMatrix")

norm `signature(x = "dspMatrix", type = "character")`, or `x = "dsyMatrix"` or `type = "missing"`: Computes the matrix norm of the desired type, see, `norm`.

rcond `signature(x = "dspMatrix", type = "character")`, or `x = "dsyMatrix"` or `type = "missing"`: Computes the reciprocal condition number, `rcond()`.

solve `signature(a = "dspMatrix", b = "....")`, and

solve `signature(a = "dsyMatrix", b = "....")`: `x <- solve(a,b)` solves $Ax = b$ for x; see `solve-methods`.

t `signature(x = "dsyMatrix")`: Transpose; swaps from upper triangular to lower triangular storage, i.e., the uplo slot from `"U"` to `"L"` or vice versa, the same as for all symmetric matrices.

See Also

Classes `dgeMatrix` and `Matrix`; `solve`, `norm`, `rcond`, `t`

Examples

```
## Only upper triangular part matters (when uplo == "U" as per default)
(sy2 <- new("dsyMatrix", Dim = as.integer(c(2,2)), x = c(14, NA,32,77)))
str(t(sy2)) # uplo = "L", and the lower tri. (i.e. NA is replaced).

chol(sy2) #-> "Cholesky" matrix
(sp2 <- pack(sy2)) # a "dspMatrix"

## Coercing to dpoMatrix gives invalid object:
sy3 <- new("dsyMatrix", Dim = as.integer(c(2,2)), x = c(14, -1, 2, -7))
try(as(sy3, "dpoMatrix")) # -> error: not positive definite
```

---

dtCMatrix-class *Triangular, (compressed) sparse column matrices*

Description

The `"dtCMatrix"` class is a class of triangular, sparse matrices in the compressed, column-oriented format. In this implementation the non-zero elements in the columns are sorted into increasing row order. The `"dtTMatrix"` class is a class of triangular, sparse matrices in triplet format.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dtCMatrix", ...)` or calls of the form `new("dtTMatrix", ...)`, but more typically automatically via `Matrix()` or coercion such as `as(x, "dtCMatrix")`.

Slots

uplo: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

diag: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either `"U"`, for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or `"N"`; see `triangularMatrix`.

p: (only present in `"dtCMatrix"`:) an `integer` vector for providing pointers, one for each column, see the detailed description in `CsparseMatrix`.

`i`: Object of class `"integer"` of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix.

`j`: Object of class `"integer"` of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the column numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix. (Only present in the `dtTMatrix` class.)

`x`: Object of class `"numeric"` - the non-zero elements of the matrix.

`Dim`,`Dimnames`: The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`) and corresponding names (or `NULL`), inherited from the `Matrix`, see there.

Extends

Class `"dgCMatrix"`, directly. Class `"triangularMatrix"`, directly. Class `"dMatrix"`, `"sparseMatrix"`, and more by class `"dgCMatrix"` etc, see the examples.

Methods

coerce `signature(from = "dtCMatrix", to = "dgTMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtCMatrix", to = "dgeMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtTMatrix", to = "dgeMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtTMatrix", to = "dtrMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtTMatrix", to = "matrix")`

solve `signature(a = "dtCMatrix", b = "....")`: sparse triangular solve (aka "backsolve" or "forwardsolve"), see `solve-methods`.

t `signature(x = "dtCMatrix")`: returns the transpose of `x`

t `signature(x = "dtTMatrix")`: returns the transpose of `x`

See Also

Classes `dgCMatrix`, `dgTMatrix`, `dgeMatrix`, and `dtrMatrix`.

Examples

```
showClass("dtCMatrix")

showClass("dtTMatrix")
t1 <- new("dtTMatrix", x= c(3,7), i= 0:1, j=3:2, Dim= as.integer(c(4,4)))
t1
## from  0-diagonal to unit-diagonal {low-level step}:
tu <- t1 ; tu@diag <- "U"
tu
(cu <- as(tu, "dtCMatrix"))
str(cu)# only two entries in @i and @x
stopifnot(cu@i == 1:0,
          all(2 * symmpart(cu) == Diagonal(4) + forceSymmetric(cu)))

t1[1,2:3] <- -1:-2
diag(t1) <- 10*c(1:2,3:2)
t1 # still triangular
(it1 <- solve(t1))
t1. <- solve(it1)
all(abs(t1 - t1.) < 10 * .Machine$double.eps)
```

```
## 2nd example
U5 <- new("dtCMatrix", i= c(1L, 0:3), p=c(0L,0L,0:2, 5L), Dim = c(5L, 5L),
          x = rep(1, 5), diag = "U")
U5
(iu <- solve(U5)) # contains one 0
validObject(iu2 <- solve(U5, Diagonal(5)))# failed in earlier versions

I5 <- iu  %*% U5 # should equal the identity matrix
i5 <- iu2 %*% U5
m53 <- matrix(1:15, 5,3, dimnames=list(NULL,letters[1:3]))
asDiag <- function(M) as(drop0(M), "diagonalMatrix")
stopifnot(
   all.equal(Diagonal(5), asDiag(I5), tolerance=1e-14) ,
   all.equal(Diagonal(5), asDiag(i5), tolerance=1e-14) ,
   identical(list(NULL, dimnames(m53)[[2]]), dimnames(solve(U5, m53)))
)
```

`dtpMatrix-class` *Packed Triangular Dense Matrices - "dtpMatrix"*

Description

The `"dtpMatrix"` class is the class of triangular, dense, numeric matrices in packed storage. The `"dtrMatrix"` class is the same except in nonpacked storage.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dtpMatrix", ...)` or by coercion from other classes of matrices.

Slots

`uplo`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

`diag`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either `"U"`, for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or `"N"`; see `triangularMatrix`.

`x`: Object of class `"numeric"`. The numeric values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order. For a packed square matrix of dimension $d \times d$, `length(x)` is of length $d(d+1)/2$ (also when `diag == "U"`!).

`Dim`,`Dimnames`: The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`) and corresponding names (or `NULL`), inherited from the `Matrix`, see there.

Extends

Class `"ddenseMatrix"`, directly. Class `"triangularMatrix"`, directly. Class `"dMatrix"` and more by class `"ddenseMatrix"` etc, see the examples.

Methods

%*% `signature(x = "dtpMatrix", y = "dgeMatrix")`: Matrix multiplication; ditto for several other signature combinations, see `showMethods("%*%", class = "dtpMatrix")`.

coerce `signature(from = "dtpMatrix", to = "dtrMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtpMatrix", to = "matrix")`

determinant `signature(x = "dtpMatrix", logarithm = "logical")`: the `determinant(x)` trivially is `prod(diag(x))`, but computed on log scale to prevent over- and underflow.

diag `signature(x = "dtpMatrix")`: ...

norm `signature(x = "dtpMatrix", type = "character")`: ...

rcond `signature(x = "dtpMatrix", norm = "character")`: ...

solve `signature(a = "dtpMatrix", b = "...")`: efficiently using internal backsolve or forwardsolve, see `solve-methods`.

t `signature(x = "dtpMatrix")`: `t(x)` remains a `"dtpMatrix"`, lower triangular if `x` is upper triangular, and vice versa.

See Also

Class `dtrMatrix`

Examples

```
showClass("dtrMatrix")

example("dtrMatrix-class", echo=FALSE)
(p1 <- as(T2, "dtpMatrix"))
str(p1)
(pp <- as(T, "dtpMatrix"))
ip1 <- solve(p1)
stopifnot(length(p1@x) == 3, length(pp@x) == 3,
          p1 @ uplo == T2 @ uplo, pp @ uplo == T @ uplo,
  identical(t(pp), p1), identical(t(p1), pp),
  all((l.d <- p1 - T2) == 0), is(l.d, "dtpMatrix"),
  all((u.d <- pp - T ) == 0), is(u.d, "dtpMatrix"),
  l.d@uplo == T2@uplo, u.d@uplo == T@uplo,
  identical(t(ip1), solve(pp)), is(ip1, "dtpMatrix"),
  all.equal(as(solve(p1,p1), "diagonalMatrix"), Diagonal(2)))
```

---

dtRMatrix-class *Triangular Sparse Compressed Row Matrices*

Description

The `dtRMatrix` class is a class of triangular, sparse matrices in the compressed, row-oriented format. In this implementation the non-zero elements in the rows are sorted into increasing columnd order.

Objects from the Class

This class is currently still mostly unimplemented!

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dtRMatrix", ...)`.

Slots

`uplo`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular. At present only the lower triangle form is allowed.

`diag`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either `"U"`, for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or `"N"`; see `triangularMatrix`.

`j`: Object of class `"integer"` of length `nnzero(.)` (number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix.

`p`: Object of class `"integer"` of pointers, one for each row, to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the row. (Only present in the `dsRMatrix` class.)

`x`: Object of class `"numeric"` - the non-zero elements of the matrix.

`Dim`: The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`)

`Dimnames`: corresponding names (or `NULL`), inherited from the `Matrix`, see there.

Extends

Class `"dgRMatrix"`, directly. Class `"dsparseMatrix"`, by class `"dgRMatrix"`. Class `"dMatrix"`, by class `"dgRMatrix"`. Class `"sparseMatrix"`, by class `"dgRMatrix"`. Class `"Matrix"`, by class `"dgRMatrix"`.

Methods

No methods currently with class "dsRMatrix" in the signature.

See Also

Classes `dgCMatrix`, `dgTMatrix`, `dgeMatrix`

Examples

```
(m0 <- new("dtRMatrix"))
(m2 <- new("dtRMatrix", Dim = c(2L,2L),
                        x = c(5, 1:2), p = c(0L,2:3), j= c(0:1,1L)))
str(m2)
(m3 <- as(Diagonal(2), "RsparseMatrix"))# --> dtRMatrix
```

---

dtrMatrix-class *Triangular, dense, numeric matrices*

Description

The `"dtrMatrix"` class is the class of triangular, dense, numeric matrices in nonpacked storage. The `"dtpMatrix"` class is the same except in packed storage.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("dtrMatrix", ...)`.

Slots

`uplo`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

`diag`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either `"U"`, for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or `"N"`; see `triangularMatrix`.

`x`: Object of class `"numeric"`. The numeric values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

`Dim`: Object of class `"integer"`. The dimensions of the matrix which must be a two-element vector of non-negative integers.

Extends

Class `"ddenseMatrix"`, directly. Class `"triangularMatrix"`, directly. Class `"Matrix"` and others, by class `"ddenseMatrix"`.

Methods

Among others (such as matrix products, e.g. `?crossprod-methods`),

coerce `signature(from = "dgeMatrix", to = "dtrMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtrMatrix", to = "matrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtrMatrix", to = "ltrMatrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "dtrMatrix", to = "matrix")`

coerce `signature(from = "matrix",    to = "dtrMatrix")`

norm `signature(x = "dtrMatrix", type = "character")`

rcond `signature(x = "dtrMatrix", norm = "character")`

solve `signature(a = "dtrMatrix", b = "....")`efficientely use a "forwardsolve" or `backsolve` for a lower or upper triangular matrix, respectively, see also `solve-methods`.

+, -, *, ..., ==, >=, ... all the `Ops` group methods are available. When applied to two triangular matrices, these return a triangular matrix when easily possible.

See Also

Classes `ddenseMatrix`, `dtpMatrix`, `triangularMatrix`

Examples

```
(m <- rbind(2:3, 0:-1))
(M <- as(m, "dgeMatrix"))

(T <- as(M, "dtrMatrix")) ## upper triangular is default
(T2 <- as(t(M), "dtrMatrix"))
stopifnot(T@uplo == "U", T2@uplo == "L", identical(T2, t(T)))
```

expand *Expand a Decomposition into Factors*

Description

Expands decompositions stored in compact form into factors.

Usage

```
expand(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix decomposition.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This is a generic function with special methods for different types of decompositions, see `showMethods(expand)` to list them all.

Value

The expanded decomposition, typically a list of matrix factors.

Note

Factors for decompositions such as `lu` and `qr` can be stored in a compact form. The function `expand` allows all factors to be fully expanded.

See Also

The LU `lu`, and the `Cholesky` decompositions which have `expand` methods; `facmul`.

Examples

```
(x <- Matrix(round(rnorm(9),2), 3, 3))
(ex <- expand(lux <- lu(x)))
```

expm *Matrix Exponential*

Description

Compute the exponential of a matrix.

Usage

```
expm(x)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix, typically inheriting from the dMatrix class.

Details

The exponential of a matrix is defined as the infinite Taylor series `expm(A) = I + A + A^2/2! + A^3/3! + ...` (although this is definitely not the way to compute it). The method for the `dgeMatrix` class uses Ward's diagonal Pade' approximation with three step preconditioning.

Value

The matrix exponential of `x`.

Note

The **expm** package contains newer (partly faster and more accurate) algorithms for `expm()` and includes `logm` and `sqrtm`.

Author(s)

This is a translation of the implementation of the corresponding Octave function contributed to the Octave project by A. Scottedward Hodel <A.S.Hodel@Eng.Auburn.EDU>. A bug in there has been fixed by Martin Maechler.

References

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix_exponential

Cleve Moler and Charles Van Loan (2003) Nineteen dubious ways to compute the exponential of a matrix, twenty-five years later. *SIAM Review* **45**, 1, 3–49.

Eric W. Weisstein et al. (1999) *Matrix Exponential*. From MathWorld, http://mathworld.wolfram.com/MatrixExponential.html

See Also

`Schur`; additionally, `expm`, `logm`, etc in package **expm**.

Examples

```
(m1 <- Matrix(c(1,0,1,1), nc = 2))
(e1 <- expm(m1)) ; e <- exp(1)
stopifnot(all.equal(e1@x, c(e,0,e,e), tolerance = 1e-15))
(m2 <- Matrix(c(-49, -64, 24, 31), nc = 2))
(e2 <- expm(m2))
(m3 <- Matrix(cbind(0,rbind(6*diag(3),0))))# sparse!
(e3 <- expm(m3)) # upper triangular
```

---

externalFormats *Read and write external matrix formats*

Description

Read matrices stored in the Harwell-Boeing or MatrixMarket formats or write sparseMatrix objects to one of these formats.

Usage

```
readHB(file)
readMM(file)
writeMM(obj, file, ...)
```

Arguments

obj	a real sparse matrix
file	for writeMM - the name of the file to be written. For readHB and readMM the name of the file to read, as a character scalar. The names of files storing matrices in the Harwell-Boeing format usually end in ".rua" or ".rsa". Those storing matrices in the MatrixMarket format usually end in ".mtx". Alternatively, readHB and readMM accept connection objects.
...	optional additional arguments. Currently none are used in any methods.

Value

The readHB and readMM functions return an object that inherits from the "Matrix" class. Methods for the writeMM generic functions usually return NULL and, as a side effect, the matrix obj is written to file in the MatrixMarket format (writeMM).

Note

The Harwell-Boeing format is older and less flexible than the MatrixMarket format. The function writeHB was deprecated and has now been removed. Please use writeMM instead.

A very simple way to export small sparse matrices S, is to use summary(S) which returns a data.frame with columns i, j, and possibly x, see summary in sparseMatrix-class, and an example below.

References

http://math.nist.gov/MatrixMarket

http://www.cise.ufl.edu/research/sparse/matrices

Examples

```
str(pores <- readMM(system.file("external/pores_1.mtx",
                                package = "Matrix")))
str(utm <- readHB(system.file("external/utm300.rua",
                              package = "Matrix")))
str(lundA <- readMM(system.file("external/lund_a.mtx",
                                package = "Matrix")))
str(lundA <- readHB(system.file("external/lund_a.rsa",
                                package = "Matrix")))
## Not run:
## NOTE: The following examples take quite some time
## ----  even on a fast internet connection:
if(FALSE) # the URL has been corrected, but we need an un-tar step!
str(sm <-
 readHB(gzcon(url("http://www.cise.ufl.edu/research/sparse/RB/Boeing/msc00726.tar.gz"))))

str(jgl009 <-
 readMM(gzcon(url("ftp://math.nist.gov/pub/MatrixMarket2/Harwell-Boeing/counterx/jgl009.mtx.gz"))))

## End(Not run)
data(KNex)
writeMM(KNex$mm, "mmMM.mtx")

## very simple export - in triplet format - to text file:
data(CAex)
s.CA <- summary(CAex)
message("writing to ", outf <- tempfile())
write.table(s.CA, file = outf, row.names=FALSE)
## and read it back -- showing off  sparseMatrix():
dd <- read.table(outf, header=TRUE)
mm <- do.call(sparseMatrix, dd)
stopifnot(all.equal(mm, CAex, tolerance=1e-15))
```

---

facmul *Multiplication by Decomposition Factors*

Description

Performs multiplication by factors for certain decompositions (and allows explicit formation of those factors).

Usage

```
facmul(x, factor, y, transpose, left, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix decomposition. No missing values or IEEE special values are allowed.
factor	an indicator for selecting a particular factor for multiplication.
y	a matrix or vector to be multiplied by the factor or its transpose. No missing values or IEEE special values are allowed.
transpose	a logical value. When FALSE (the default) the factor is applied. When TRUE the transpose of the factor is applied.

left	a logical value. When TRUE (the default) the factor is applied from the left. When FALSE the factor is applied from the right.
...	the method for "qr.Matrix" has additional arguments.

Value

the product of the selected factor (or its transpose) and y

NOTE

Factors for decompositions such as lu and qr can be stored in a compact form. The function facmul allows multiplication without explicit formation of the factors, saving both storage and operations.

References

Golub, G., and Van Loan, C. F. (1989). *Matrix Computations,* 2nd edition, Johns Hopkins, Baltimore.

Examples

```
library(Matrix)
x <- Matrix(rnorm(9), 3, 3)
## Not run:
qrx <- qr(x)                      # QR factorization of x
y <- rnorm(3)
facmul( qr(x), factor = "Q", y)   # form Q y

## End(Not run)
```

---

forceSymmetric *Force a Matrix to 'symmetricMatrix' Without Symmetry Checks*

Description

Force a square matrix x to a symmetricMatrix, **without** a symmetry check as it would be applied for as(x, "symmetricMatrix").

Usage

```
forceSymmetric(x, uplo)
```

Arguments

x	any square matrix (of numbers), either “"traditional"” (matrix) or inheriting from Matrix.
uplo	optional string, "U" or "L" indicating which “triangle” half of x should determine the result. The default is "U" unless x already has a uplo slot (i.e., when it is symmetricMatrix, or triangularMatrix), where the default will be x@uplo.

Value

a square matrix inheriting from class symmetricMatrix.

See Also

symmpart for the symmetric part of a matrix, or the coercions as(x, <symmetricMatrix class>).

Examples

```
## Hilbert matrix
i <- 1:6
h6 <- 1/outer(i - 1L, i, "+")
sd <- sqrt(diag(h6))
hh <- t(h6/sd)/sd # theoretically symmetric
isSymmetric(hh, tol=0) # FALSE; hence
try( as(hh, "symmetricMatrix") ) # fails, but this works fine:
H6 <- forceSymmetric(hh)

## result can be pretty surprising:
(M <- Matrix(1:36, 6))
forceSymmetric(M) # symmetric, hence very different in lower triangle
(tm <- tril(M))
forceSymmetric(tm)
```

---

formatSparseM *Formatting Sparse Numeric Matrices Utilities*

Description

Utilities for formatting sparse numeric matrices in a flexible way. These functions are used by the format and print methods for sparse matrices and can be applied as well to standard matrices. Note that *all* arguments but the first are optional.

formatSparseM() is the main "workhorse" of formatSpMatrix, the format method for sparse matrices.

.formatSparseSimple() is a simple helper function, also dealing with (short/empty) column names construction.

Usage

```
formatSparseM(x, zero.print = ".", align = c("fancy", "right"),
              m = as(x,"matrix"), asLogical=NULL, digits=NULL,
              cx, iN0, dn = dimnames(m))

.formatSparseSimple(m, asLogical=FALSE, digits=NULL,
    col.names, note.dropping.colnames = TRUE,
                  dn=dimnames(m))
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class sparseMatrix.
zero.print	character which should be used for *structural* zeroes. The default "." may occasionally be replaced by " " (blank); using "0" would look almost like print()ing of non-sparse matrices.

align — a string specifying how the zero.print codes should be aligned, see formatSpMatrix.

m — (optional) a (standard) matrix version of x.

asLogical — should the matrix be formatted as a logical matrix (or rather as a numeric one); mostly for formatSparseM().

digits — significant digits to use for printing, see print.default.

cx — (optional) character matrix; a formatted version of x, still with strings such as "0.00" for the zeros.

iNO — (optional) integer vector, specifying the location of the *non*-zeroes of x.

col.names, note.dropping.colnames — see formatSpMatrix.

dn — dimnames to be used; a list (of length two) with row and column names (or NULL).

Value

a character matrix like cx, where the zeros have been replaced with (padded versions of) zero.print. As this is a *dense* matrix, do not use these functions for really large (really) sparse matrices!

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

formatSpMatrix which calls formatSparseM() and is the format method for sparse matrices.
printSpMatrix which is used by the (typically implicitly called) show and print methods for sparse matrices.

Examples

```
m <- suppressWarnings(matrix(c(0, 3.2, 0,0, 11,0,0,0,0,-7,0), 4,9))
fm <- formatSparseM(m)
noquote(fm)
## nice, but this is nicer :
print(fm, quote=FALSE, right=TRUE)
## and "the same" as :
Matrix(m)

## align = "right" is cheaper -->  the "." are not aligned:
noquote(f2 <- formatSparseM(m,align="r"))
stopifnot(f2 == fm   |   m == 0, dim(f2) == dim(m),
          (f2 == ".") == (m == 0))
```

generalMatrix-class *Class "generalMatrix" of General Matrices*

Description

Virtual class of "general" matrices; i.e., matrices that do not have a known property such as symmetric, triangular, or diagonal.

Objects from the Class

A virtual Class: No objects may be created from it.

Slots

`factors` ,

`Dim` ,

`Dimnames`**:** all slots inherited from `compMatrix`; see its description.

Extends

Class `"compMatrix"`, directly. Class `"Matrix"`, by class `"compMatrix"`.

See Also

Classes `compMatrix`, and the non-general virtual classes: `symmetricMatrix`, `triangularMatrix`, `diagonalMatrix`.

graph-sparseMatrix *Conversions "graph" <–> (sparse) Matrix*

Description

The **Matrix** package has supported conversion from and to `"graph"` objects from (Bioconductor) package **graph** since summer 2005, via the usual `as(., "<class>")` coercion,

```
as(from, Class)
```

Since 2013, this functionality is further exposed as the `graph2T()` and `T2graph()` functions (with further arguments than just `from`), which convert graphs to and from the triplet form of sparse matrices (of class `"TsparseMatrix"`) .

Usage

```
graph2T(from, use.weights = )
T2graph(from, need.uniq = is_not_uniqT(from), edgemode = NULL)
```

Arguments

from	for graph2T(), an object of class "graph"; for T2graph(), a sparse matrix inheriting from "TsparseMatrix".
use.weights	logical indicating if weights should be used, i.e., equivalently the result will be numeric, i.e. of class dgTMatrix; otherwise the result will be ngTMatrix or nsTMatrix, the latter if the graph is undirected. The default looks if there are weights in the graph, and if any differ from 1, weights are used.
need.uniq	a logical indicating if from may need to be internally "uniqified"; do not set this and hence rather use the default, unless you know what you are doing!
edgemode	one of NULL, "directed", or "undirected". The default NULL looks if the matrix is symmetric and assumes "undirected" in that case.

Value

For graph2T(), a sparse matrix inheriting from "TsparseMatrix".

For T2graph() an object of class "graph".

See Also

Note that the CRAN package **igraph** also provides conversions from and to sparse matrices (of package **Matrix**) via its graph.adjacency() and get.adjacency().

Examples

```
if(isTRUE(try(require(graph)))) { ## super careful .. for "checking reasons"
  n4 <- LETTERS[1:4]; dns <- list(n4,n4)
  show(a1 <- sparseMatrix(i= c(1:4),   j=c(2:4,1),   x = 2,    dimnames=dns))
  show(g1 <- as(a1, "graph")) # directed
  unlist(edgeWeights(g1)) # all 2

  show(a2 <- sparseMatrix(i= c(1:4,4), j=c(2:4,1:2), x = TRUE, dimnames=dns))
  show(g2 <- as(a2, "graph")) # directed
  # now if you want it undirected:
  show(g3  <- T2graph(as(a2,"TsparseMatrix"), edgemode="undirected"))
  show(m3 <- as(g3,"Matrix"))
  show( graph2T(g3) ) # a "pattern Matrix" (nsTMatrix)

  a. <- sparseMatrix(i= 4:1, j=1:4, dimnames=list(n4,n4), giveC=FALSE) # no x
  show(a.) # "ngTMatrix"
  show(g. <- as(a., "graph"))

}
```

Hilbert *Generate a Hilbert matrix*

Description

Generate the n by n symmetric Hilbert matrix. Because these matrices are ill-conditioned for moderate to large n, they are often used for testing numerical linear algebra code.

Usage

```
Hilbert(n)
```

Arguments

n	a non-negative integer.

Value

the n by n symmetric Hilbert matrix as a "dpoMatrix" object.

See Also

the class dpoMatrix

Examples

```
Hilbert(6)
```

---

image-methods *Methods for image() in Package 'Matrix'*

Description

Methods for function image in package **Matrix**. An image of a matrix simply color codes all matrix entries and draws the $n \times m$ matrix using an $n \times m$ grid of (colored) rectangles.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature dgTMatrix
image(x,
      xlim = c(1, di[2]),
      ylim = c(di[1], 1), aspect = "iso",
      sub = sprintf("Dimensions: %d x %d", di[1], di[2]),
      xlab = "Column", ylab = "Row", cuts = 15,
      useRaster = FALSE,
      useAbs = NULL, colorkey = !useAbs,
      col.regions = NULL,
      lwd = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a Matrix object, i.e., fulfilling is(x, "Matrix").
xlim, ylim	x- and y-axis limits; may be used to "zoom into" matrix. Note that x, y "feel reversed": ylim is for the rows (= 1st index) and xlim for the columns (= 2nd index). For convenience, when the limits are integer valued, they are both extended by 0.5; also, ylim is always used decreasingly.
aspect	aspect ratio specified as number (y/x) or string; see levelplot.
sub, xlab, ylab	axis annotation with sensible defaults; see plot.default.

cuts	number of levels the range of matrix values would be divided into.
useRaster	logical indicating if raster graphics should be used (instead of the tradition rectangle vector drawing). If true, panel.levelplot.raster (from **lattice** package) is used, and the colorkey is also done via rasters, see also levelplot and possibly grid.raster. Note that using raster graphics may often be faster, but can be slower, depending on the matrix dimensions and the graphics device (dimensions).
useAbs	logical indicating if abs(x) should be shown; if TRUE, the former (implicit) default, the default col.regions will be grey colors (and no colorkey drawn). The default is FALSE unless the matrix has no negative entries.
colorkey	logical indicating if a color key aka 'legend' should be produced. Default is to draw one, unless useAbs is true. You can also specify a list, see levelplot, such aslist(raster=TRUE) in the case of rastering.
col.regions	vector of gradually varying colors; see levelplot.
lwd	(only used when useRaster is false:) non-negative number or NULL (default), specifying the line-width of the rectangles of each non-zero matrix entry (drawn by grid.rect). The default depends on the matrix dimension and the device size.
...	further arguments passed to methods and levelplot, notably at for specifying (possibly non equidistant) cut values for dividing the matrix values (superseding cuts above).

Methods

All methods currently end up calling the method for the dgTMatrix class. Use showMethods(image) to list them all.

Examples

```
showMethods(image)
## If you want to see all the methods implementations:
showMethods(image, incl=TRUE, inherit=FALSE)

data(CAex)
image(CAex, main = "image(CAex)")
image(CAex, useAbs=TRUE, main = "image(CAex, useAbs=TRUE)")

cCA <- Cholesky(crossprod(CAex), Imult = .01)
image(cCA, main="Cholesky(crossprod(CAex), Imult = .01)")
image(cCA, useAbs=TRUE)

data(USCounties)
image(USCounties)# huge
image(sign(USCounties))## just the pattern
    # how the result looks, may depend heavily on
    # the device, screen resolution, antialiasing etc
    # e.g. x11(type="Xlib") may show very differently than cairo-based

## Drawing borders around each rectangle;
    # again, viewing depends very much on the device:
image(USCounties[1:400,1:200], lwd=.1)
## Using (xlim,ylim) has advantage : matrix dimension and (col/row) indices:
image(USCounties, c(1,200), c(1,400), lwd=.1)
```

```
image(USCounties, c(1,300), c(1,200), lwd=.5 )
image(USCounties, c(1,300), c(1,200), lwd=.01)

if(doExtras <- interactive() || nzchar(Sys.getenv("R_MATRIX_CHECK_EXTRA")) ||
    identical("true", unname(Sys.getenv("R_PKG_CHECKING_doExtras")))) {
## Using raster graphics: For PDF this would give a 77 MB file,
## however, for such a large matrix, this is typically considerably
## *slower* (than vector graphics rectangles) in most cases :
if(doPNG <- !dev.interactive())
png("image-USCounties-raster.png", width=3200, height=3200)
image(USCounties, useRaster = TRUE) # should not suffer from anti-aliasing
if(doPNG)
   dev.off()
   ## and now look at the *.png image in a viewer you can easily zoom in and out
}#only if(doExtras)
```

---

index-class *Virtual Class "index" - Simple Class for Matrix Indices*

Description

The class "index" is a virtual class used for indices (in signatures) for matrix indexing and sub-assignment of **"Matrix"** matrices.

In fact, it is currently implemented as a simple class union (setClassUnion) of "numeric", "logical" and "character".

Objects from the Class

Since it is a virtual Class, no objects may be created from it.

See Also

[-methods, and

Subassign-methods, also for examples.

Examples

```
showClass("index")
```

---

indMatrix-class *Index matrices*

Description

The "indMatrix" class is the class of index matrices, stored as 1-based integer index vectors. An index matrix is a matrix with exactly one non-zero entry per row. Index matrices are useful for mapping observations to unique covariate values, for example.

Matrix (vector) multiplication with index matrices is equivalent to replicating and permuting rows, or "sampling rows with replacement", and is implemented that way in the **Matrix** package, see the 'Details' below.

Details

Matrix (vector) multiplication with index matrices from the left is equivalent to replicating and permuting rows of the matrix on the right hand side. (Similarly, matrix multiplication with the transpose of an index matrix from the right corresponds to selecting *columns*.) The crossproduct of an index matrix M with itself is a diagonal matrix with the number of entries in each column of M on the diagonal, i.e., $M'M$ =`Diagonal(x=table(M@perm))`.

Permutation matrices (of class `pMatrix`) are special cases of index matrices: They are square, of dimension, say, $n \times n$, and their index vectors contain exactly all of `1:n`.

While "row-indexing" (of more than one row *or* using `drop=FALSE`) stays within the `"indMatrix"` class, all other subsetting/indexing operations ("column-indexing", including, `diag`) on `"indMatrix"` objects treats them as nonzero-pattern matrices (`"ngTMatrix"` specifically), such that non-matrix subsetting results in `logical` vectors. Sub-assignment (`M[i,j] <- v`) is not sensible and hence an error for these matrices.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("indMatrix", ...)` or by coercion from an integer index vector, see below.

Slots

`perm`**:** An integer, 1-based index vector, i.e. an integer vector of length `Dim[1]` whose elements are taken from `1:Dim[2]`.

`Dim`**:** Object of class `"integer"`. The dimensions of the matrix which must skinny, i.e., the first dimension has to be at least as large as the second.

`Dimnames`**:** list of length two; each component containing NULL or a `character` vector length equal the corresponding `Dim` element.

Extends

Class `"sparseMatrix"` and `"generalMatrix"`, directly.

Methods

%*% `signature(x = "matrix", y = "indMatrix")` and other signatures (use `showMethods("%*%", class="indMatrix")`): ...

coerce `signature(from = "integer", to = "indMatrix")`: This enables typical `"indMatrix"` construction, given an index vector from elements in `1:Dim[2]`, see the first example.

coerce `signature(from = "numeric", to = "indMatrix")`: a user convenience, to allow `as(perm, "indMatrix")` for numeric `perm` with integer values.

coerce `signature(from = "list", to = "indMatrix")`: The list must have two (integer-valued) entries: the first giving the index vector with elements in `1:Dim[2]`, the second giving `Dim[2]`. This allows `"indMatrix"` construction for cases in which the values represented by the rightmost column(s) are not associated with any observations, i.e., in which the index does not contain values `Dim[2], Dim[2]-1, Dim[2]-2, ...`

coerce `signature(from = "indMatrix", to = "matrix")`: coercion to a traditional FALSE/TRUE `matrix` of `mode` `logical`.

coerce `signature(from = "indMatrix", to = "ngTMatrix")`: coercion to sparse logical matrix of class `ngTMatrix`.

t `signature(x = "indMatrix")`: return the transpose of the index matrix (which is no longer an `indMatrix`, but of class `ngTMatrix`.

colSums, colMeans, rowSums, rowMeans `signature(x = "indMatrix")`: return the column or row sums or means.

rbind2 `signature(x = "indMatrix", y = "indMatrix")`: a fast method for rowwise catenation of two index matrices (with the same number of columns).

kronecker `signature(X = "indMatrix", Y = "indMatrix")`: return the kronecker product of two index matrices, which corresponds to the index matrix of the interaction of the two.

Author(s)

Fabian Scheipl <....@uni-muenchen.de> building on existing "pMatrix", after a nice hike's conversation with Martin Maechler and tweaks by the latter.

See Also

The permutation matrices `pMatrix` are special index matrices. The "pattern" matrices, `nMatrix` and its subclasses.

Examples

```
p1 <- as(c(2,3,1), "pMatrix")
(sm1 <- as(rep(c(2,3,1), e=3), "indMatrix"))
stopifnot(all(sm1 == p1[rep(1:3, each=3),]))

## row-indexing of a <pMatrix> turns it into an <indMatrix>:
class(p1[rep(1:3, each=3),])

set.seed(12) # so we know 10 is in sample
## random index matrix for 30 observations and 10 unique values:
(s10 <- as(sample(10, 30, replace=TRUE),"indMatrix"))

## Sample rows of a numeric matrix :
(mm <- matrix(1:10, nrow=10, ncol=3))
s10 %*% mm

set.seed(27)
IM1 <- as(sample(1:20, 100, replace=TRUE), "indMatrix")
IM2 <- as(sample(1:18, 100, replace=TRUE), "indMatrix")
(c12 <- crossprod(IM1,IM2))
## same as cross-tabulation of the two index vectors:
stopifnot(all(c12 - unclass(table(IM1@perm, IM2@perm)) == 0))

# 3 observations, 4 implied values, first does not occur in sample:
as(2:4, "indMatrix")
# 3 observations, 5 values, first and last do not occur in sample:
as(list(2:4, 5), "indMatrix")

as(sm1, "ngTMatrix")
s10[1:7, 1:4] # gives an "ngTMatrix" (most economic!)
s10[1:4, ]  # preserves "indMatrix"-class

I1 <- as(c(5:1,6:4,7:3), "indMatrix")
I2 <- as(7:1, "pMatrix")
(I12 <- rBind(I1, I2))
```

```
stopifnot(is(I12, "indMatrix"),
  colSums(I12) == c(2L,2:4,4:2))
```

`invPerm` *Inverse Permutation Vector*

Description

From a permutation vector `p`, compute its *inverse* permutation vector.

Usage

```
invPerm(p, zero.p = FALSE, zero.res = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`p`	an integer vector of length, say, `n`.
`zero.p`	logical indicating if `p` contains values `0:(n-1)` or rather (by default, `zero.p = FALSE`) `1:n`.
`zero.res`	logical indicating if the result should contain values `0:(n-1)` or rather (by default, `zero.res = FALSE`) `1:n`.

Value

an integer vector of the same length (`n`) as `p`. By default, (`zero.p = FALSE, zero.res = FALSE`), `invPerm(p)` is the same as `order(p)` or `sort.list(p)` and for that case, the function is equivalent to `invPerm. <- function(p) { p[p] <- seq_along(p) ; p }`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

the class of permutation matrices, `pMatrix`.

Examples

```
p <- sample(10) # a random permutation vector
ip <- invPerm(p)
p[ip] # == 1:10
## they are indeed inverse of each other:
stopifnot(
  identical(p[ip], 1:10),
  identical(ip[p], 1:10),
  identical(invPerm(ip), p)
)
```

`is.na-methods` *is.na(), is.infinite() Methods for 'Matrix' Objects*

Description

Methods for function `is.na()`, `is.finite()`, and `is.infinite()` for all Matrices (objects extending the `Matrix` class):

x = "denseMatrix" returns a `"nMatrix"` object of same dimension as `x`, with TRUE's whenever `x` is `NA`, finite, or infinite, respectively.

x = "sparseMatrix" ditto.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature sparseMatrix
is.na(x)
## S4 method for signature dsparseMatrix
is.finite(x)
## S4 method for signature ddenseMatrix
is.infinite(x)
## ...
## and for other classes

## S4 method for signature xMatrix
anyNA(x)
## S4 method for signature nsparseMatrix
anyNA(x)
## S4 method for signature sparseVector
anyNA(x)
## S4 method for signature nsparseVector
anyNA(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	sparse or dense matrix or sparse vector (here; any object in general).

See Also

`NA`, `is.na`; `is.finite`, `is.infinite`; `nMatrix`, `denseMatrix`, `sparseMatrix`.

The `sparseVector` class.

Examples

```
M <- Matrix(1:6, nrow=4, ncol=3,
       dimnames = list(c("a", "b", "c", "d"), c("A", "B", "C")))
stopifnot(all(!is.na(M)))
M[2:3,2] <- NA
is.na(M)
if(exists("anyNA", mode="function"))
anyNA(M)

A <- spMatrix(10,20, i = c(1,3:8),
```

```
                    j = c(2,9,6:10),
                    x = 7 * (1:7))
stopifnot(all(!is.na(A)))

A[2,3] <- A[1,2] <- A[5, 5:9] <- NA
inA <- is.na(A)
stopifnot(sum(inA) == 1+1+5)
```

`is.null.DN` *Are the Dimnames* dn *NULL-like ?*

Description

Are the `dimnames` dn `NULL`-like?

`is.null.DN(dn)` is less strict than `is.null(dn)`, because it is also true (`TRUE`) when the dimnames dn are "like" `NULL`, or `list(NULL,NULL)`, as they can easily be for the traditional matrices (`matrix`) which have no formal `class` definition, and hence much freedom in how their `dimnames` look like.

Usage

```
is.null.DN(dn)
```

Arguments

dn	`dimnames()` of a `matrix`-like object.

Value

`logical` `TRUE` or `FALSE`.

Note

This function is really to be used on "traditional" matrices rather than those inheriting from `Matrix`, as the latter will always have dimnames `list(NULL,NULL)` exactly, in such a case.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

`is.null`, `dimnames`, `matrix`.

Examples

```
m <- matrix(round(100 * rnorm(6)), 2,3); m1 <- m2 <- m3 <- m4 <- m
dimnames(m1) <- list(NULL, NULL)
dimnames(m2) <- list(NULL, character())
dimnames(m3) <- rev(dimnames(m2))
dimnames(m4) <- rep(list(character()),2)

m4 ## prints absolutely identically to  m
```

```
stopifnot(m == m1, m1 == m2, m2 == m3, m3 == m4,
  identical(capture.output(m) -> cm,
    capture.output(m1)),
  identical(cm, capture.output(m2)),
  identical(cm, capture.output(m3)),
  identical(cm, capture.output(m4)))
```

`isSymmetric-methods` *Methods for Function isSymmetric in Package 'Matrix'*

Description

`isSymmetric(M)` returns a `logical` indicating if `M` is a symmetric matrix. This (now) is a **base** function with a default method for the traditional matrices of `class` `"matrix"`. Methods here are defined for virtual Matrix classes such that it works for all objects inheriting from class `Matrix`.

See Also

`forceSymmetric`, `symmpart`, and the formal class (and subclasses) `"symmetricMatrix"`.

Examples

```
isSymmetric(Diagonal(4)) # TRUE of course
M <- Matrix(c(1,2,2,1), 2,2)
isSymmetric(M) # TRUE (*and* of formal class "dsyMatrix")
isSymmetric(as(M, "dgeMatrix")) # still symmetric, even if not "formally"
isSymmetric(triu(M)) # FALSE

## Look at implementations:
showMethods("isSymmetric", includeDefs=TRUE)# "ANY": bases S3 generic; 6 more
```

`isTriangular` *isTriangular() and isDiagonal() Methods*

Description

`isTriangular(M)` returns a `logical` indicating if `M` is a triangular matrix. Analogously, `isDiagonal(M)` is true iff `M` is a diagonal matrix.

Contrary to `isSymmetric()`, these two functions are generically from package **Matrix**, and hence also define methods for traditional (`class` `"matrix"`) matrices.

Usage

```
isDiagonal(object)

isTriangular(object, upper = NA, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any object, typically a matrix (traditional or Matrix package).
upper	logical, one of NA (default), FALSE, or TRUE where the last two cases require a lower or upper triangular object to result in TRUE.
...	potentially further arguments for other methods.

Value

a ("scalar") logical, TRUE or FALSE, never NA. For isTriangular(), if the result is TRUE, it may contain an attribute (see attributes "kind", either "L" or "U" indicating if it is a **l**ower or **u**pper triangular matrix.

See Also

isSymmetric; formal class (and subclasses) "triangularMatrix" and "diagonalMatrix".

Examples

```
isTriangular(Diagonal(4))
## is TRUE: a diagonal matrix is also (both upper and lower) triangular
(M <- Matrix(c(1,2,0,1), 2,2))
isTriangular(M) # TRUE (*and* of formal class "dtrMatrix")
isTriangular(as(M, "dgeMatrix")) # still triangular, even if not "formally"
isTriangular(crossprod(M)) # FALSE

isDiagonal(matrix(c(2,0,0,1), 2,2)) # TRUE
```

KhatriRao *Khatri-Rao Matrix Product*

Description

Computes Khatri-Rao products for any kind of matrices.

The Khatri-Rao product is a column-wise Kronecker product. Originally introduced by Khatri and Rao (1968), it has many different applications, see Liu and Trenkler (2008) for a survey. Notably, it is used in higher-dimensional tensor decompositions, see Bader and Kolda (2008).

Usage

```
KhatriRao(X, Y = X, FUN = "*", make.dimnames = FALSE)
```

Arguments

X,Y	matrices of with the same number of columns.
FUN	the (name of the) function to be used for the column-wise Kronecker products, see kronecker, defaulting to the usual multiplication.
make.dimnames	logical indicating if the result should inherit dimnames from X and Y in a simple way.

Value

a "CsparseMatrix", say R, the Khatri-Rao product of X ($n \times k$) and Y ($m \times k$), is of dimension $(n \cdot m) \times k$, where the j-th column, R[,j] is the kronecker product kronecker(X[,j], Y[,j]).

Note

The current implementation is efficient for large sparse matrices.

Author(s)

Michael Cysouw, Univ. Marburg; minor tweaks by Martin Maechler.

References

Khatri, C. G., and Rao, C. Radhakrishna (1968) Solutions to Some Functional Equations and Their Applications to Characterization of Probability Distributions. *Sankhya: Indian J. Statistics, Series A* **30**, 167–180.

Liu, Shuangzhe, and Gõtz Trenkler (2008) Hadamard, Khatri-Rao, Kronecker and Other Matrix Products. *International J. Information and Systems Sciences* **4**, 160–177.

Bader, Brett W, and Tamara G Kolda (2008) Efficient MATLAB Computations with Sparse and Factored Tensors. *SIAM J. Scientific Computing* **30**, 205–231.

See Also

kronecker.

Examples

```
## Example with very small matrices:
m <- matrix(1:12,3,4)
d <- diag(1:4)
KhatriRao(m,d)
KhatriRao(d,m)
dimnames(m) <- list(LETTERS[1:3], letters[1:4])
KhatriRao(m,d, make.dimnames=TRUE)
KhatriRao(d,m, make.dimnames=TRUE)
dimnames(d) <- list(NULL, paste0("D", 1:4))
KhatriRao(m,d, make.dimnames=TRUE)
KhatriRao(d,m, make.dimnames=TRUE)
dimnames(d) <- list(paste0("d", 10*1:4), paste0("D", 1:4))
KhatriRao(m,d, make.dimnames=TRUE)
KhatriRao(d,m, make.dimnames=TRUE)

nm <- as(m,"nMatrix")
nd <- as(d,"nMatrix")
KhatriRao(nm,nd, make.dimnames=TRUE)
KhatriRao(nd,nm, make.dimnames=TRUE)

stopifnot(dim(KhatriRao(m,d)) == c(nrow(m)*nrow(d), ncol(d)))
```

KNex *Koenker-Ng Example Sparse Model Matrix and Response Vector*

Description

A model matrix `mm` and corresponding response vector `y` used in an example by Koenker and Ng. The matrix `mm` is a sparse matrix with 1850 rows and 712 columns but only 8758 non-zero entries. It is a `"dgCMatrix"` object. The vector `y` is just `numeric` of length 1850.

Usage

```
data(KNex)
```

References

Roger Koenker and Pin Ng (2003). SparseM: A sparse matrix package for R; *J. of Statistical Software*, **8** (6), http://www.jstatsoft.org/

Examples

```
data(KNex)
class(KNex$mm)
  dim(KNex$mm)
image(KNex$mm)
str(KNex)

system.time( # a fraction of a second
  sparse.sol <- with(KNex, solve(crossprod(mm), crossprod(mm, y))))

head(round(sparse.sol,3))

## Compare with QR-based solution ("more accurate, but slightly slower"):
system.time(
  sp.sol2 <- with(KNex, qr.coef(qr(mm), y) ))

all.equal(sparse.sol, sp.sol2, tolerance = 1e-13) # TRUE
```

kronecker-methods *Methods for Function 'kronecker()' in Package 'Matrix'*

Description

Computes Kronecker products for objects inheriting from `"Matrix"`.

In order to preserver sparseness, we treat `0 * NA` as `0`, not as `NA` as usually in (and as used for the **base** function `kronecker`).

Methods

kronecker `signature(X = "Matrix", Y = "ANY")` .....

kronecker `signature(X = "ANY", Y = "Matrix")` .....

kronecker `signature(X = "diagonalMatrix", Y = "ANY")` .....

kronecker `signature(X = "sparseMatrix", Y = "ANY")` .....

kronecker `signature(X = "TsparseMatrix", Y = "TsparseMatrix")` .....

kronecker `signature(X = "dgTMatrix", Y = "dgTMatrix")` .....

kronecker `signature(X = "dtTMatrix", Y = "dtTMatrix")` .....

kronecker `signature(X = "indMatrix", Y = "indMatrix")` .....

Examples

```
(t1 <- spMatrix(5,4, x= c(3,2,-7,11), i= 1:4, j=4:1)) #  5 x  4
(t2 <- kronecker(Diagonal(3, 2:4), t1))               # 15 x 12

## should also work with special-cased logical matrices
l3 <- upper.tri(matrix(,3,3))
M <- Matrix(l3)
(N <- as(M, "nsparseMatrix"))
N2 <- as(N, "generalMatrix")
MM <- kronecker(M,M)
NN <- kronecker(N,N)
NN2 <- kronecker(N2,N2)
stopifnot(identical(NN,MM),
          is(NN, "triangularMatrix"))
```

---

ldenseMatrix-class *Virtual Class "ldenseMatrix" of Dense Logical Matrices*

Description

`ldenseMatrix` is the virtual class of all dense **l**ogical (S4) matrices. It extends both `denseMatrix` and `lMatrix` directly.

Slots

x: logical vector containing the entries of the matrix.

Dim, Dimnames: see `Matrix`.

Extends

Class `"lMatrix"`, directly. Class `"denseMatrix"`, directly. Class `"Matrix"`, by class `"lMatrix"`. Class `"Matrix"`, by class `"denseMatrix"`.

Methods

coerce `signature(from = "matrix", to = "ldenseMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "ldenseMatrix", to = "matrix")`: ...

as.vector `signature(x = "ldenseMatrix", mode = "missing")`: ...

which `signature(x = "ndenseMatrix")`, semantically equivalent to **base** function `which(x, arr.ind)`; for details, see the `lMatrix` class documentation.

See Also

Class lgeMatrix and the other subclasses.

Examples

```
showClass("ldenseMatrix")

as(diag(3) > 0, "ldenseMatrix")
```

---

ldiMatrix-class *Class "ldiMatrix" of Diagonal Logical Matrices*

Description

The class "ldiMatrix" of logical diagonal matrices.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("ldiMatrix", ...) but typically rather via Diagonal.

Slots

x: "logical" vector.

diag: "character" string, either "U" or "N", see ddiMatrix.

Dim,Dimnames: matrix dimension and dimnames, see the Matrix class description.

Extends

Class "diagonalMatrix" and class "lMatrix", directly.

Class "sparseMatrix", by class "diagonalMatrix".

See Also

Classes ddiMatrix and diagonalMatrix; function Diagonal.

Examples

```
(lM <- Diagonal(x = c(TRUE,FALSE,FALSE)))
str(lM)#> gory details (slots)

crossprod(lM) # numeric
(nM <- as(lM, "nMatrix"))# -> sparse (not formally diagonal)
crossprod(nM) # logical sparse
```

lgeMatrix-class *Class "lgeMatrix" of General Dense Logical Matrices*

Description

This is the class of general dense logical matrices.

Slots

x: Object of class "logical". The logical values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

Dim,Dimnames: The dimension (a length-2 "integer") and corresponding names (or NULL), see the Matrix class.

factors: Object of class "list". A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

Extends

Class "ldenseMatrix", directly. Class "lMatrix", by class "ldenseMatrix". Class "denseMatrix", by class "ldenseMatrix". Class "Matrix", by class "ldenseMatrix". Class "Matrix", by class "ldenseMatrix".

Methods

Currently, mainly t() and coercion methods (for as(.)); use, e.g., showMethods(class="lgeMatrix") for details.

See Also

Non-general logical dense matrix classes such as ltrMatrix, or lsyMatrix; *sparse* logical classes such as lgCMatrix.

Examples

```
showClass("lgeMatrix")
str(new("lgeMatrix"))
set.seed(1)
(lM <- Matrix(matrix(rnorm(28), 4,7) > 0))# a simple random lgeMatrix
set.seed(11)
(lC <- Matrix(matrix(rnorm(28), 4,7) > 0))# a simple random lgCMatrix
as(lM, "lgCMatrix")
```

lsparseMatrix-classes *Sparse logical matrices*

Description

The lsparseMatrix class is a virtual class of sparse matrices with TRUE/FALSE entries. Only the positions of the elements that are TRUE are stored. These can be stored in the "triplet" form (classes lgTMatrix, lsTMatrix, and ltTMatrix which really contain pairs, not triplets) or in compressed column-oriented form (classes lgCMatrix, lsCMatrix, and ltCMatrix) or in compressed row-oriented form (classes lgRMatrix, lsRMatrix, and ltRMatrix). The second letter in the name of these non-virtual classes indicates general, symmetric, or triangular.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("lgCMatrix", ...) and so on. More frequently objects are created by coercion of a numeric sparse matrix to the logical form for use in the symbolic analysis phase of an algorithm involving sparse matrices. Such algorithms often involve two phases: a symbolic phase wherein the positions of the non-zeros in the result are determined and a numeric phase wherein the actual results are calculated. During the symbolic phase only the positions of the non-zero elements in any operands are of interest, hence any numeric sparse matrices can be treated as logical sparse matrices.

Slots

x: Object of class "logical", i.e., either TRUE, NA, or FALSE.

uplo: Object of class "character". Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular. Present in the triangular and symmetric classes but not in the general class.

diag: Object of class "character". Must be either "U", for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or "N" for non-unit. The implicit diagonal elements are not explicitly stored when diag is "U". Present in the triangular classes only.

p: Object of class "integer" of pointers, one for each column (row), to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the column. Present in compressed column-oriented and compressed row-oriented forms only.

i: Object of class "integer" of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each TRUE element in the matrix. All other elements are FALSE. Present in triplet and compressed column-oriented forms only.

j: Object of class "integer" of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the column numbers for each TRUE element in the matrix. All other elements are FALSE. Present in triplet and compressed column-oriented forms only.

Dim: Object of class "integer" - the dimensions of the matrix.

Methods

coerce signature(from = "dgCMatrix", to = "lgCMatrix")

t signature(x = "lgCMatrix"): returns the transpose of x

which signature(x = "lsparseMatrix"), semantically equivalent to **base** function which(x, arr.ind); for details, see the lMatrix class documentation.

See Also

the class dgCMatrix

Examples

```
(m <- Matrix(c(0,0,2:0), 3,5, dimnames=list(LETTERS[1:3],NULL)))
(lm <- (m > 1)) # lgC
!lm     # no longer sparse
stopifnot(is(lm,"lsparseMatrix"),
          identical(!lm, m <= 1))

data(KNex)
str(mmG.1 <- (KNex $ mm) > 0.1)# "lgC..."
table(mmG.1@x)# however with many non-structural zeros
## from logical to nz_pattern -- okay when there are no NAs :
nmG.1 <- as(mmG.1, "nMatrix") # <<< has "TRUE" also where mmG.1 had FALSE
## from logical to "double"
dmG.1 <- as(mmG.1, "dMatrix") # has 0 and back:
lmG.1 <- as(dmG.1, "lMatrix") # has no extra FALSE, i.e. drop0() included
stopifnot(identical(nmG.1, as((KNex $ mm) != 0,"nMatrix")),
          validObject(lmG.1), all(lmG.1@x),
          # same "logical" but lmG.1 has no FALSE in x slot:
          all(lmG.1 == mmG.1))

class(xnx <- crossprod(nmG.1))# "nsC.."
class(xlx <- crossprod(mmG.1))# "dsC.." : numeric
is0 <- (xlx == 0)
mean(as.vector(is0))# 99.3% zeros: quite sparse, but
table(xlx@x == 0)# more than half of the entries are (non-structural!) 0
stopifnot(isSymmetric(xlx), isSymmetric(xnx),
          ## compare xnx and xlx : have the *same* non-structural 0s :
          sapply(slotNames(xnx),
                 function(n) identical(slot(xnx, n), slot(xlx, n))))
```

---

lsyMatrix-class *Symmetric Dense Logical Matrices*

Description

The "lsyMatrix" class is the class of symmetric, dense logical matrices in non-packed storage and "lspMatrix" is the class of of these in packed storage. In the packed form, only the upper triangle or the lower triangle is stored.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("lsyMatrix", ...).

Slots

uplo: Object of class "character". Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

x: Object of class "logical". The logical values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

`Dim`,`Dimnames`: The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`) and corresponding names (or `NULL`), see the `Matrix` class.

`factors`: Object of class `"list"`. A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

Extends

Both extend classes `"ldenseMatrix"` and `"symmetricMatrix"`, directly; further, class `"Matrix"` and others, *in*directly. Use `showClass("lsyMatrix")`, e.g., for details.

Methods

Currently, mainly `t()` and coercion methods (for `as(.)`; use, e.g., `showMethods(class="dsyMatrix")` for details.

See Also

`lgeMatrix`, `Matrix`, `t`

Examples

```
(M2 <- Matrix(c(TRUE, NA,FALSE,FALSE), 2,2)) # logical dense (ltr)
str(M2)
# can
(sM <- M2 | t(M2)) # "lge"
as(sM, "lsyMatrix")
str(sM <- as(sM, "lspMatrix")) # packed symmetric
```

---

ltrMatrix-class *Triangular Dense Logical Matrices*

Description

The `"ltrMatrix"` class is the class of triangular, dense, logical matrices in nonpacked storage. The `"ltpMatrix"` class is the same except in packed storage.

Slots

`x`: Object of class `"logical"`. The logical values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

`uplo`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

`diag`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either `"U"`, for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or `"N"`; see `triangularMatrix`.

`Dim`,`Dimnames`: The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`) and corresponding names (or `NULL`), see the `Matrix` class.

`factors`: Object of class `"list"`. A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

Extends

Both extend classes "ldenseMatrix" and "triangularMatrix", directly; further, class "Matrix", "lMatrix" and others, *in*directly. Use showClass("ltrMatrix"), e.g., for details.

Methods

Currently, mainly t() and coercion methods (for as(.); use, e.g., showMethods(class="ltpMatrix") for details.

See Also

Classes lgeMatrix, Matrix; function t

Examples

```
showClass("ltrMatrix")

str(new("ltpMatrix"))
(lutr <- as(upper.tri(matrix(,4,4)), "ltrMatrix"))
str(lutp <- as(lutr, "ltpMatrix"))# packed matrix: only 10 = (4+1)*4/2 entries
!lutp ## the logical negation (is *not* logical triangular !)
## but this one is:
stopifnot(all.equal(lutp, as(!!lutp, "ltpMatrix")))
```

---

lu *(Generalized) Triangular Decomposition of a Matrix*

Description

Computes (generalized) triangular decompositions of square (sparse or dense) and non-square dense matrices.

Usage

```
lu(x, ...)
## S4 method for signature matrix
lu(x, warnSing = TRUE, ...)
## S4 method for signature dgeMatrix
lu(x, warnSing = TRUE, ...)
## S4 method for signature dgCMatrix
lu(x, errSing = TRUE, order = TRUE, tol = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a dense or sparse matrix, in the latter case of square dimension. No missing values or IEEE special values are allowed.
warnSing	(when x is a "denseMatrix") logical specifying if a warning should be signalled when x is singular.
errSing	(when x is a "sparseMatrix") logical specifying if an error (see stop) should be signalled when x is singular. When x is singular, lu(x, errSing=FALSE) returns NA instead of an LU decomposition. No warning is signalled and the useR should be careful in that case.

order	logical or integer, used to choose which fill-reducing permutation technique will be used internally. Do not change unless you know what you are doing.
tol	positive number indicating the pivoting tolerance used in cs_lu. Do only change with much care.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

lu() is a generic function with special methods for different types of matrices. Use showMethods("lu") to list all the methods for the lu generic.

The method for class dgeMatrix (and all dense matrices) is based on LAPACK's "dgetrf" subroutine. It returns a decomposition also for singular and non-square matrices.

The method for class dgCMatrix (and all sparse matrices) is based on functions from the CSparse library. It signals an error (or returns NA, when errSing = FALSE, see above) when the decomposition algorithm fails, as when x is (too close to) singular.

Value

An object of class "LU", i.e., "denseLU" (see its separate help page), or "sparseLU", see sparseLU; this is a representation of a triangular decomposition of x.

References

Golub, G., and Van Loan, C. F. (1989). *Matrix Computations,* 2nd edition, Johns Hopkins, Baltimore.

Tim Davis (2005) http://www.cise.ufl.edu/research/sparse/CSparse/

Timothy A. Davis (2006) *Direct Methods for Sparse Linear Systems*, SIAM Series "Fundamentals of Algorithms".

See Also

Class definitions LU and sparseLU and function expand; qr, chol.

Examples

```
##--- Dense  -------------------------
x <- Matrix(rnorm(9), 3, 3)
lu(x)
dim(x2 <- round(10 * x[,-3]))# non-square
expand(lu2 <- lu(x2))

##--- Sparse (see more in ?"sparseLU-class")----- % ./sparseLU-class.Rd

pm <- as(readMM(system.file("external/pores_1.mtx",
                            package = "Matrix")),
         "CsparseMatrix")
str(pmLU <- lu(pm)) # p is a 0-based permutation of the rows
                                # q is a 0-based permutation of the columns
## permute rows and columns of original matrix
ppm <- pm[pmLU@p + 1L, pmLU@q + 1L]
pLU <- drop0(pmLU@L %*% pmLU@U) # L %*% U -- dropping extra zeros
## equal up to "rounding"
ppm[1:14, 1:5]
pLU[1:14, 1:5]
```

LU-class *LU (dense) Matrix Decompositions*

Description

The "LU" class is the *virtual* class of LU decompositions of real matrices. "denseLU" the class of LU decompositions of dense real matrices.

Details

The decomposition is of the form

$$A = PLU$$

where typically all matrices are of size $n \times n$, and the matrix P is a permutation matrix, L is lower triangular and U is upper triangular (both of class dtrMatrix).

Note that the *dense* decomposition is also implemented for a $m \times n$ matrix A, when $m \neq n$.

If $m < n$ ("wide case"), U is $m \times n$, and hence not triangular.
If $m > n$ ("long case"), L is $m \times n$, and hence not triangular.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("denseLU", ...). More commonly the objects are created explicitly from calls of the form lu(mm) where mm is an object that inherits from the "dgeMatrix" class or as a side-effect of other functions applied to "dgeMatrix" objects.

Extends

"LU" directly extends the virtual class "MatrixFactorization".

"denseLU" directly extends "LU".

Slots

x: object of class "numeric". The "L" (unit lower triangular) and "U" (upper triangular) factors of the original matrix. These are stored in a packed format described in the Lapack manual, and can retrieved by the expand() method, see below.

perm: Object of class "integer" - a vector of length min(Dim) that describes the permutation applied to the rows of the original matrix. The contents of this vector are described in the Lapack manual.

Dim: the dimension of the original matrix; inherited from class MatrixFactorization .

Methods

expand signature(x = "denseLU"): Produce the "L" and "U" (and "P") factors as a named list of matrices, see also the example below.

solve signature(a = "denseLU", b = "missing"): Compute the inverse of A, A^{-1}, solve(A) using the LU decomposition, see also solve-methods.

See Also

class sparseLU for LU decompositions of *sparse* matrices; further, class dgeMatrix and functions lu, expand.

Examples

```
set.seed(1)
mm <- Matrix(round(rnorm(9),2), nrow = 3)
mm
str(lum <- lu(mm))
elu <- expand(lum)
elu # three components: "L", "U", and "P", the permutation
elu$L %*% elu$U
(m2 <- with(elu, P %*% L %*% U)) # the same as mm
stopifnot(all.equal(as(mm, "matrix"),
                    as(m2, "matrix")))
```

`Matrix` *Construct a Classed Matrix*

Description

Construct a Matrix of a class that inherits from `Matrix`.

Usage

```
Matrix(data=NA, nrow=1, ncol=1, byrow=FALSE, dimnames=NULL,
       sparse = NULL, doDiag = TRUE, forceCheck = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`data`	an optional numeric data vector or matrix.
`nrow`	when `data` is not a matrix, the desired number of rows
`ncol`	when `data` is not a matrix, the desired number of columns
`byrow`	logical. If `FALSE` (the default) the matrix is filled by columns, otherwise the matrix is filled by rows.
`dimnames`	a `dimnames` attribute for the matrix: a `list` of two character components. They are set if not `NULL` (as per default).
`sparse`	logical or `NULL`, specifying if the result should be sparse or not. By default, it is made sparse when more than half of the entries are 0. Note that when the resulting matrix is diagonal ("mathematically"), `sparse=FALSE` results in a `diagonalMatrix`, unless `doDiag=FALSE` as well, see the first examples.
`doDiag`	only when `sparse = FALSE`, logical indicating if a `diagonalMatrix` object should be considered (default). Otherwise, in such a case, a dense (symmetric) matrix will be returned.
`forceCheck`	logical indicating if the checks for structure should even happen when `data` is already a `"Matrix"` object.

Details

If either of `nrow` or `ncol` is not given, an attempt is made to infer it from the length of `data` and the other parameter. Further, `Matrix()` makes efforts to keep `logical` matrices logical, i.e., inheriting from class `lMatrix`, and to determine specially structured matrices such as symmetric, triangular or diagonal ones. Note that a *symmetric* matrix also needs symmetric `dimnames`, e.g., by specifying `dimnames = list(NULL,NULL)`, see the examples.

Most of the time, the function works via a traditional (*full*) `matrix`. However, `Matrix(0, nrow,ncol)` directly constructs an "empty" sparseMatrix, as does `Matrix(FALSE, *)`.

Although it is sometime possible to mix unclassed matrices (created with `matrix`) with ones of class `"Matrix"`, it is much safer to always use carefully constructed ones of class `"Matrix"`.

Value

Returns matrix of a class that inherits from `"Matrix"`. Only if `data` is not a `matrix` and does not already inherit from class `Matrix` are the arguments `nrow`, `ncol` and `byrow` made use of.

See Also

The classes `Matrix`, `symmetricMatrix`, `triangularMatrix`, and `diagonalMatrix`; further, `matrix`.

Special matrices can be constructed, e.g., via `sparseMatrix` (sparse), `bdiag` (block-diagonal), `bandSparse` (banded sparse), or `Diagonal`.

Examples

```
Matrix(0, 3, 2)             # 3 by 2 matrix of zeros -> sparse
Matrix(0, 3, 2, sparse=FALSE)# -> dense
Matrix(0, 2, 2, sparse=FALSE)# diagonal !
Matrix(0, 2, 2, sparse=FALSE, doDiag=FALSE)# -> dense
Matrix(1:6, 3, 2)           # a 3 by 2 matrix (+ integer warning)
Matrix(1:6 + 1, nrow=3)

## logical ones:
Matrix(diag(4) >  0)# -> "ldiMatrix" with diag = "U"
Matrix(diag(4) >  0, sparse=TRUE)# -> sparse...
Matrix(diag(4) >= 0)# -> "lsyMatrix" (of all TRUE)
## triangular
l3 <- upper.tri(matrix(,3,3))
(M <- Matrix(l3))  # -> "ltCMatrix"
Matrix(! l3)# -> "ltrMatrix"
as(l3, "CsparseMatrix")

Matrix(1:9, nrow=3,
       dimnames = list(c("a", "b", "c"), c("A", "B", "C")))
(I3 <- Matrix(diag(3)))# identity, i.e., unit "diagonalMatrix"
str(I3) # note the empty x slot

(A <- cbind(a=c(2,1), b=1:2))# symmetric *apart* from dimnames
Matrix(A)                    # hence dgeMatrix
(As <- Matrix(A, dimnames = list(NULL,NULL)))# -> symmetric
stopifnot(is(As, "symmetricMatrix"),
          is(Matrix(0, 3,3), "sparseMatrix"),
          is(Matrix(FALSE, 1,1), "sparseMatrix"))
```

Matrix-class *Virtual Class "Matrix" Class of Matrices*

Description

The Matrix class is a class contained by all actual classes in the **Matrix** package. It is a "virtual" class.

Slots

Common to *all* matrix objects in the package:

Dim**:** Object of class "integer" - the dimensions of the matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

Dimnames**:** list of length two; each component containing NULL or a character vector length equal the corresponding Dim element.

Methods

determinant signature(x = "Matrix", logarithm = "missing"): and

determinant signature(x = "Matrix", logarithm = "logical"): compute the (log) determinant of x. The method chosen depends on the actual Matrix class of x. Note that det also works for all our matrices, calling the appropriate determinant() method. The Matrix::det is an exact copy of base::det, but in the correct namespace, and hence calling the S4-aware version of determinant().).

diff signature(x = "Matrix"): As diff() for traditional matrices, i.e., applying diff() to each column.

dim signature(x = "Matrix"): extract matrix dimensions dim.

dim<- signature(x = "Matrix", value = "ANY"): where value is integer of length 2. Allows to *reshape* Matrix objects, but only when prod(value) == prod(dim(x)).

dimnames signature(x = "Matrix"): extract dimnames.

dimnames<- signature(x = "Matrix", value = "list"): set the dimnames to a list of length 2, see dimnames<-.

length signature(x = "Matrix"): simply defined as prod(dim(x)) (and hence of mode "double").

show signature(object = "Matrix"): show method for printing.

image signature(object = "Matrix"): draws an image of the matrix entries, using levelplot() from package **lattice**.

head signature(object = "Matrix"): return only the *"head"*, i.e., the first few rows.

tail signature(object = "Matrix"): return only the *"tail"*, i.e., the last few rows of the respective matrix.

as.matrix, as.array signature(x = "Matrix"): the same as as(x, "matrix"); see also the note below.

as.vector signature(x = "Matrix", mode = "missing"): as.vector(m) should be identical to as.vector(as(m,"matrix")), implemented more efficiently for some subclasses.

as(x, "vector"), as(x, "numeric") etc, similarly.

There are many more methods that (conceptually should) work for all "Matrix" objects, e.g., colSums, rowMeans. Even **base** functions may work automagically (if they first call as.matrix() on their principal argument), e.g., apply, eigen, svd or kappa all do work via coercion to a "traditional" (dense) matrix.

Note

Loading the Matrix namespace "overloads" as.matrix and as.array in the **base** namespace by the equivalent of function(x) as(x, "matrix"). Consequently, as.matrix(m) or as.array(m) will properly work when m inherits from the "Matrix" class — *also* for functions in package **base** and other packages. E.g., apply or outer can therefore be applied to "Matrix" matrices.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu> and Martin Maechler

See Also

the classes dgeMatrix, dgCMatrix, and function Matrix for construction (and examples).

Methods, e.g., for kronecker.

Examples

```
slotNames("Matrix")

cl <- getClass("Matrix")
names(cl@subclasses) # more than 40 ..

showClass("Matrix")#> output with slots and all subclasses

(M <- Matrix(c(0,1,0,0), 6, 4))
dim(M)
diag(M)
cm <- M[1:4,] + 10*Diagonal(4)
diff(M)
## can reshape it even :
dim(M) <- c(2, 12)
M
stopifnot(identical(M, Matrix(c(0,1,0,0), 2,12)),
          all.equal(det(cm),
                    determinant(as(cm,"matrix"), log=FALSE)$modulus,
                    check.attributes=FALSE))
```

---

matrix-products *Matrix (Cross) Products (of Transpose)*

Description

The basic matrix product, `%*%` is implemented for all our `Matrix` and also for `sparseVector` classes, fully analogously to 's base `matrix` and vector objects.

The functions `crossprod` and `tcrossprod` are matrix products or "cross products", ideally implemented efficiently without computing `t(.)`'s unnecessarily. They also return `symmetricMatrix` classed matrices when easily detectable, e.g., in `crossprod(m)`, the one argument case.

`tcrossprod()` takes the cross-product of the transpose of a matrix. `tcrossprod(x)` is formally equivalent to, but faster than, the call `x %*% t(x)`, and so is `tcrossprod(x, y)` instead of `x %*% t(y)`.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature CsparseMatrix,diagonalMatrix
x %*% y
       ## .... and many more

## S4 method for signature dgeMatrix,missing
crossprod(x, y = NULL)
       ## .... and many more

## S4 method for signature CsparseMatrix,ddenseMatrix
tcrossprod(x, y = NULL)
       ## .... and many more
```

Arguments

x	a matrix-like object
y	a matrix-like object, or for `[t]crossprod()` `NULL` (by default); the latter case is formally equivalent to `y = x`.

Details

For some classes in the `Matrix` package, such as `dgCMatrix`, it is much faster to calculate the cross-product of the transpose directly instead of calculating the transpose first and then its cross-product.

Value

A `Matrix` object, in the one argument case of an appropriate symmetric matrix class.

Methods

%*% `signature(x = "dgeMatrix", y = "dgeMatrix")`: Matrix multiplication; ditto for several other signature combinations, see `showMethods("%*%", class = "dgeMatrix")`.

%*% `signature(x = "dtrMatrix", y = "matrix")` and other signatures (use `showMethods("%*%", class="dtrMatrix")`): matrix multiplication. Multiplication of (matching) triangular matrices now should remain triangular (in the sense of class triangularMatrix).

crossprod `signature(x = "dgeMatrix", y = "dgeMatrix")`: ditto for several other signatures, use `showMethods("crossprod", class = "dgeMatrix")`, matrix crossproduct, an efficient version of `t(x) %*% y`.

crossprod `signature(x = "CsparseMatrix", y = "missing")` returns `t(x) %*% x` as an `dsCMatrix` object.

crossprod `signature(x = "TsparseMatrix", y = "missing")` returns `t(x) %*% x` as an `dsCMatrix` object.

crossprod,tcrossprod `signature(x = "dtrMatrix", y = "matrix")` and other signatures, see `"%*%"` above.

See Also

`tcrossprod` in 's base, `crossprod` and `%*%`.

Examples

```
## A random sparse "incidence" matrix :
m <- matrix(0, 400, 500)
set.seed(12)
m[runif(314, 0, length(m))] <- 1
mm <- as(m, "dgCMatrix")
object.size(m) / object.size(mm) # smaller by a factor of > 200

## tcrossprod() is very fast:
system.time(tCmm <- tcrossprod(mm))# 0   (PIII, 933 MHz)
system.time(cm <- crossprod(t(m))) # 0.16
system.time(cm. <- tcrossprod(m))  # 0.02

stopifnot(cm == as(tCmm, "matrix"))

## show sparse sub matrix
tCmm[1:16, 1:30]
```

MatrixFactorization-class

Class "MatrixFactorization" of Matrix Factorizations

Description

The class `"MatrixFactorization"` is the virtual (super) class of (potentially) all matrix factorizations of matrices from package **Matrix**.

The class `"CholeskyFactorization"` is the virtual class of all Cholesky decompositions from **Matrix** (and trivial sub class of `"MatrixFactorization"`).

Objects from the Class

A virtual Class: No objects may be created from it.

Slots

`Dim`: Object of class `"integer"` - the dimensions of the original matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

Methods

dim `(x)` simply returns `x@Dim`, see above.

expand `signature(x = "MatrixFactorization")`: this has not been implemented yet for all matrix factorizations. It should return a list whose components are matrices which when multiplied return the original `Matrix` object.

show `signature(object = "MatrixFactorization")`: simple printing, see `show`.

solve `signature(a = "MatrixFactorization", b= .)`: solve $Ax = b$ for x; see `solve-methods`.

See Also

classes inheriting from `"MatrixFactorization"`, such as `LU`, `Cholesky`, `CHMfactor`, and `sparseQR`.

Examples

```
showClass("MatrixFactorization")
getClass("CholeskyFactorization")
```

---

ndenseMatrix-class *Virtual Class "ndenseMatrix" of Dense Logical Matrices*

Description

`ndenseMatrix` is the virtual class of all dense **l**ogical (S4) matrices. It extends both `denseMatrix` and `lMatrix` directly.

Slots

`x`: logical vector containing the entries of the matrix.

`Dim`, `Dimnames`: see `Matrix`.

Extends

Class `"nMatrix"`, directly. Class `"denseMatrix"`, directly. Class `"Matrix"`, by class `"nMatrix"`. Class `"Matrix"`, by class `"denseMatrix"`.

Methods

`%*%` `signature(x = "nsparseMatrix", y = "ndenseMatrix")`: ...

`%*%` `signature(x = "ndenseMatrix", y = "nsparseMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "matrix", to = "ndenseMatrix")`: ...

coerce `signature(from = "ndenseMatrix", to = "matrix")`: ...

crossprod `signature(x = "nsparseMatrix", y = "ndenseMatrix")`: ...

crossprod `signature(x = "ndenseMatrix", y = "nsparseMatrix")`: ...

as.vector `signature(x = "ndenseMatrix", mode = "missing")`: ...

diag `signature(x = "ndenseMatrix")`: extracts the diagonal as for all matrices, see the generic `diag()`.

which `signature(x = "ndenseMatrix")`, semantically equivalent to **base** function `which(x, arr.ind)`; for details, see the `lMatrix` class documentation.

See Also

Class ngeMatrix and the other subclasses.

Examples

```
showClass("ndenseMatrix")

as(diag(3) > 0, "ndenseMatrix")# -> "nge"
```

---

nearPD *Nearest Positive Definite Matrix*

Description

Compute the nearest positive definite matrix to an approximate one, typically a correlation or variance-covariance matrix.

Usage

```
nearPD(x, corr = FALSE, keepDiag = FALSE, do2eigen = TRUE,
       doSym = FALSE, doDykstra = TRUE, only.values = FALSE,
       ensureSymmetry = !isSymmetric(x),
       eig.tol = 1e-06, conv.tol = 1e-07, posd.tol = 1e-08,
       maxit = 100, conv.norm.type = "I", trace = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric $n \times n$ approximately positive definite matrix, typically an approximation to a correlation or covariance matrix. If x is not symmetric (and ensureSymmetry is not false), symmpart(x) is used.
corr	logical indicating if the matrix should be a *correlation* matrix.
keepDiag	logical, generalizing corr: if TRUE, the resulting matrix should have the same diagonal (diag(x)) as the input matrix.
do2eigen	logical indicating if a posdefify() eigen step should be applied to the result of the Higham algorithm.
doSym	logical indicating if X <- (X + t(X))/2 should be done, after X <- tcrossprod(Qd, Q); some doubt if this is necessary.
doDykstra	logical indicating if Dykstra's correction should be used; true by default. If false, the algorithm is basically the direct fixpoint iteration $Y_k = P_U(P_S(Y_{k-1}))$.
only.values	logical; if TRUE, the result is just the vector of eigen values of the approximating matrix.
ensureSymmetry	logical; by default, symmpart(x) is used whenever isSymmetric(x) is not true. The user can explicitly set this to TRUE or FALSE, saving the symmetry test. *Beware* however that setting it FALSE for an **a**symmetric input x, is typically nonsense!
eig.tol	defines relative positiveness of eigenvalues compared to largest one, λ_1. Eigen values λ_k are treated as if zero when $\lambda_k/\lambda_1 \leq eig.tol$.
conv.tol	convergence tolerance for Higham algorithm.

posd.tol	tolerance for enforcing positive definiteness (in the final posdefify step when do2eigen is TRUE).
maxit	maximum number of iterations allowed.
conv.norm.type	convergence norm type (norm(*, type)) used for Higham algorithm. The default is "I" (infinity), for reasons of speed (and back compatibility); using "F" is more in line with Higham's proposal.
trace	logical or integer specifying if convergence monitoring should be traced.

Details

This implements the algorithm of Higham (2002), and then (if do2eigen is true) forces positive definiteness using code from posdefify. The algorithm of Knol DL and ten Berge (1989) (not implemented here) is more general in (1) that it allows constraints to fix some rows (and columns) of the matrix and (2) to force the smallest eigenvalue to have a certain value.

Note that setting corr = TRUE just sets diag(.) <- 1 within the algorithm.

Higham (2002) uses Dykstra's correction, but the version by Jens Oehlschlaegel did not use it (accidentally), and has still lead to good results; this simplification, now only via doDykstra = FALSE, was active in nearPD() upto Matrix version 0.999375-40.

Value

If only.values = TRUE, a numeric vector of eigen values of the approximating matrix; Otherwise, as by default, an S3 object of class "nearPD", basically a list with components

mat	a matrix of class dpoMatrix, the computed positive-definite matrix.
eigenvalues	numeric vector of eigen values of mat.
corr	logical, just the argument corr.
normF	the Frobenius norm (norm(x-X, "F")) of the difference between the original and the resulting matrix.
iterations	number of iterations needed.
converged	logical indicating if iterations converged.

Author(s)

Jens Oehlschlaegel donated a first version. Subsequent changes by the Matrix package authors.

References

Cheng, Sheung Hun and Higham, Nick (1998) A Modified Cholesky Algorithm Based on a Symmetric Indefinite Factorization; *SIAM J. Matrix Anal.\ Appl.*, **19**, 1097–1110.

Knol DL, ten Berge JMF (1989) Least-squares approximation of an improper correlation matrix by a proper one. *Psychometrika* **54**, 53–61.

Higham, Nick (2002) Computing the nearest correlation matrix - a problem from finance; *IMA Journal of Numerical Analysis* **22**, 329–343.

See Also

A first version of this (with non-optional corr=TRUE) has been available as nearcor(); and more simple versions with a similar purpose posdefify(), both from package **sfsmisc**.

Examples

```
## Higham(2002), p.334f - simple example
A <- matrix(1, 3,3); A[1,3] <- A[3,1] <- 0
n.A <- nearPD(A, corr=TRUE, do2eigen=FALSE)
n.A[c("mat", "normF")]
stopifnot(all.equal(n.A$mat[1,2], 0.760689917),
  all.equal(n.A$normF, 0.52779033, tolerance=1e-9) )

set.seed(27)
m <- matrix(round(rnorm(25),2), 5, 5)
m <- m + t(m)
diag(m) <- pmax(0, diag(m)) + 1
(m <- round(cov2cor(m), 2))

str(near.m <- nearPD(m, trace = TRUE))
round(near.m$mat, 2)
norm(m - near.m$mat) # 1.102 / 1.08

if(require("sfsmisc")) {
   m2 <- posdefify(m) # a simpler approach
   norm(m - m2)  # 1.185, i.e., slightly "less near"
}

round(nearPD(m, only.values=TRUE), 9)

## A longer example, extended from Jens original,
## showing the effects of some of the options:

pr <- Matrix(c(1,     0.477, 0.644, 0.478, 0.651, 0.826,
               0.477, 1,     0.516, 0.233, 0.682, 0.75,
               0.644, 0.516, 1,     0.599, 0.581, 0.742,
               0.478, 0.233, 0.599, 1,     0.741, 0.8,
               0.651, 0.682, 0.581, 0.741, 1,     0.798,
               0.826, 0.75,  0.742, 0.8,   0.798, 1),
             nrow = 6, ncol = 6)

nc.  <- nearPD(pr, conv.tol = 1e-7) # default
nc.$iterations  # 2
nc.1 <- nearPD(pr, conv.tol = 1e-7, corr = TRUE)
nc.1$iterations # 11 / 12 (!)
ncr   <- nearPD(pr, conv.tol = 1e-15)
str(ncr)# still 2 iterations
ncr.1 <- nearPD(pr, conv.tol = 1e-15, corr = TRUE)
ncr.1 $ iterations # 27 / 30 !

ncF <- nearPD(pr, conv.tol = 1e-15, conv.norm = "F")
stopifnot(all.equal(ncr, ncF))# norm type does not matter at all in this example

## But indeed, the corr = TRUE constraint did ensure a better solution;
## cov2cor() does not just fix it up equivalently :
norm(pr - cov2cor(ncr$mat)) # = 0.09994
norm(pr -       ncr.1$mat)  # = 0.08746 / 0.08805

### 3) a real data example from a systemfit model (3 eq.):
(load(system.file("external", "symW.rda", package="Matrix"))) # "symW"
dim(symW) #  24 x 24
```

```
class(symW)# "dsCMatrix": sparse symmetric
if(dev.interactive())  image(symW)
EV <- eigen(symW, only=TRUE)$values
summary(EV) ## looking more closely {EV sorted decreasingly}:
tail(EV)# all 6 are negative
EV2 <- eigen(sWpos <- nearPD(symW)$mat, only=TRUE)$values
stopifnot(EV2 > 0)
if(require("sfsmisc")) {
       plot(pmax(1e-3,EV), EV2, type="o", log="xy", xaxt="n",yaxt="n")
       eaxis(1); eaxis(2)
} else plot(pmax(1e-3,EV), EV2, type="o", log="xy")
abline(0,1, col="red3",lty=2)
```

---

ngeMatrix-class *Class "ngeMatrix" of General Dense Nonzero-pattern Matrices*

Description

This is the class of general dense nonzero-pattern matrices, see nMatrix.

Slots

x: Object of class "logical". The logical values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

Dim,Dimnames: The dimension (a length-2 "integer") and corresponding names (or NULL), see the Matrix class.

factors: Object of class "list". A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

Extends

Class "ndenseMatrix", directly. Class "lMatrix", by class "ndenseMatrix". Class "denseMatrix", by class "ndenseMatrix". Class "Matrix", by class "ndenseMatrix". Class "Matrix", by class "ndenseMatrix".

Methods

Currently, mainly t() and coercion methods (for as(.)); use, e.g., showMethods(class="ngeMatrix") for details.

See Also

Non-general logical dense matrix classes such as ntrMatrix, or nsyMatrix; *sparse* logical classes such as ngCMatrix.

Examples

```
showClass("ngeMatrix")
## "lgeMatrix" is really more relevant
```

nMatrix-class *Class "nMatrix" of Non-zero Pattern Matrices*

Description

The nMatrix class is the virtual "mother" class of all ***n**on-zero pattern* (or simply *patter**n***) matrices in the **Matrix** package.

Slots

Common to *all* matrix object in the package:

Dim: Object of class "integer" - the dimensions of the matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

Dimnames: list of length two; each component containing NULL or a character vector length equal the corresponding Dim element.

Methods

There is a bunch of coercion methods (for as(..)), e.g.,

coerce signature(from = "nMatrix", to = "matrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "nMatrix", to = "dMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "nMatrix", to = "lMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "matrix", to = "nMatrix"): Note that these coercions (must) coerce NAs to non-zero, hence conceptually TRUE. This is particularly important when sparseMatrix objects are coerced to "nMatrix" and hence to nsparseMatrix.

coerce signature(from = "dMatrix", to = "nMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "lMatrix", to = "nMatrix"): ...

. Additional methods contain group mehods, such as

Ops signature(e1 = "nMatrix", e2 = "...."),...

Arith signature(e1 = "nMatrix", e2 = "...."),...

Compare signature(e1 = "nMatrix", e2 = "...."),...

Logic signature(e1 = "nMatrix", e2 = "...."),...

Summary signature(x = "nMatrix", "...."),...

See Also

The classes lMatrix, nsparseMatrix, and the mother class, Matrix.

Examples

```
getClass("nMatrix")

L3 <- Matrix(upper.tri(diag(3)))
L3 # an "ltCMatrix"
as(L3, "nMatrix") # -> ntC*

## similar, not using Matrix()
as(upper.tri(diag(3)), "nMatrix")# currently "ngTMatrix"
```

nnzero *The Number of Non-Zero Values of a Matrix*

Description

Returns the number of non-zero values of a numeric-like object, and in particular an object x inheriting from class Matrix.

Usage

```
nnzero(x, na.counted = NA)
```

Arguments

x	an object, typically inheriting from class Matrix or numeric.
na.counted	a logical describing how NAs should be counted. There are three possible settings for na.counted:

TRUE NAs *are* counted as non-zero (since "they are not zero").

NA (default)the result will be NA if there are NA's in x (since "NA's are not known, i.e., *may be* zero").

FALSE NAs are *omitted* from x before the non-zero entries are counted.

For sparse matrices, you may often want to use na.counted = TRUE.

Value

the number of non zero entries in x (typically integer).

Note that for a *symmetric* sparse matrix S (i.e., inheriting from class symmetricMatrix), nnzero(S) is typically *twice* the length(S@x).

Methods

signature(x = "ANY") the default method for non-Matrix class objects, simply counts the number 0s in x, counting NA's depending on the na.counted argument, see above.

signature(x = "denseMatrix") conceptually the same as for traditional matrix objects, care has to be taken for "symmetricMatrix" objects.

signature(x = "diagonalMatrix"), **and** signature(x = "indMatrix") fast simple methods for these special "sparseMatrix" classes.

signature(x = "sparseMatrix") typically, the most interesting method, also carefully taking "symmetricMatrix" objects into account.

See Also

The Matrix class also has a length method; typically, length(M) is much larger than nnzero(M) for a sparse matrix M, and the latter is a better indication of the *size* of M.

Examples

```
m <- Matrix(0+1:28, nrow = 4)
m[-3,c(2,4:5,7)] <- m[ 3, 1:4] <- m[1:3, 6] <- 0
(mT <- as(m, "dgTMatrix"))
nnzero(mT)
(S <- crossprod(mT))
nnzero(S)
str(S) # slots are smaller than nnzero()
stopifnot(nnzero(S) == sum(as.matrix(S) != 0))# failed earlier

data(KNex)
M <- KNex$mm
class(M)
dim(M)
length(M); stopifnot(length(M) == prod(dim(M)))
nnzero(M) # more relevant than length
## the above are also visible from
str(M)
```

---

norm *Matrix Norms*

Description

Computes a matrix norm of x, using Lapack for dense matrices. The norm can be the one norm, the infinity norm, the Frobenius norm, or the maximum modulus among elements of a matrix, as determined by the value of type.

Usage

```
norm(x, type, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a real or complex matrix.
type	A character indicating the type of norm desired.
	"O", "o" **or** "1" specifies the one norm, (maximum absolute column sum);
	"I" **or** "i" specifies the infinity norm (maximum absolute row sum);
	"F" **or** "f" specifies the Frobenius norm (the Euclidean norm of x treated as if it were a vector); and
	"M" **or** "m" specifies the maximum modulus of all the elements in x.
	The default is "O". Only the first character of type[1] is used.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

For dense matrices, the methods eventually call the Lapack functions dlange, dlansy, dlantr, zlange, zlansy, and zlantr.

Value

A numeric value of class "norm", representing the quantity chosen according to type.

References

Anderson, E., et al. (1994). *LAPACK User's Guide,* 2nd edition, SIAM, Philadelphia.

See Also

`onenormest()`, an *approximate* randomized estimate of the 1-norm condition number, efficient for large sparse matrices.

Examples

```
x <- Hilbert(9)
norm(x, "1")
norm(x, "I")
norm(x, "F")
norm(x, "M")
```

---

nsparseMatrix-classes *Sparse "pattern" Matrices*

Description

The `nsparseMatrix` class is a virtual class of sparse *"pattern"* matrices, i.e., binary matrices conceptually with `TRUE/FALSE` entries. Only the positions of the elements that are `TRUE` are stored. These can be stored in the "triplet" form (classes `ngTMatrix`, `nsTMatrix`, and `ntTMatrix` which really contain pairs, not triplets) or in compressed column-oriented form (classes `ngCMatrix`, `nsCMatrix`, and `ntCMatrix`) or in compressed row-oriented form (classes `ngRMatrix`, `nsRMatrix`, and `ntRMatrix`). The second letter in the name of these non-virtual classes indicates general, symmetric, or triangular.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("ngCMatrix", ...)` and so on. More frequently objects are created by coercion of a numeric sparse matrix to the pattern form for use in the symbolic analysis phase of an algorithm involving sparse matrices. Such algorithms often involve two phases: a symbolic phase wherein the positions of the non-zeros in the result are determined and a numeric phase wherein the actual results are calculated. During the symbolic phase only the positions of the non-zero elements in any operands are of interest, hence numeric sparse matrices can be treated as sparse pattern matrices.

Slots

`uplo`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular. Present in the triangular and symmetric classes but not in the general class.

`diag`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either `"U"`, for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or `"N"` for non-unit. The implicit diagonal elements are not explicitly stored when `diag` is `"U"`. Present in the triangular classes only.

`p`: Object of class `"integer"` of pointers, one for each column (row), to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the column. Present in compressed column-oriented and compressed row-oriented forms only.

`i`: Object of class `"integer"` of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each TRUE element in the matrix. All other elements are FALSE. Present in triplet and compressed column-oriented forms only.

`j`: Object of class `"integer"` of length nnzero (number of non-zero elements). These are the column numbers for each TRUE element in the matrix. All other elements are FALSE. Present in triplet and compressed column-oriented forms only.

`Dim`: Object of class `"integer"` - the dimensions of the matrix.

Methods

coerce `signature(from = "dgCMatrix", to = "ngCMatrix")`, and many similar ones; typically you should coerce to `"nsparseMatrix"` (or `"nMatrix"`). Note that coercion to a sparse pattern matrix records all the potential non-zero entries, i.e., explicit ("non-structural") zeroes are coerced to `TRUE`, not `FALSE`, see the example.

t `signature(x = "ngCMatrix")`: returns the transpose of `x`

which `signature(x = "lsparseMatrix")`, semantically equivalent to **base** function `which(x, arr.ind)`; for details, see the `lMatrix` class documentation.

See Also

the class `dgCMatrix`

Examples

```
(m <- Matrix(c(0,0,2:0), 3,5, dimnames=list(LETTERS[1:3],NULL)))
## extract the nonzero-pattern of (m) into an nMatrix:
nm <- as(m, "nsparseMatrix") ## -> will be a "ngCMatrix"
str(nm) # no x slot
nnm <- !nm     # no longer sparse
(nnm <- as(nnm, "sparseMatrix"))# "lgCMatrix"
## consistency check:
stopifnot(xor(as( nm, "matrix"),
              as(nnm, "matrix")))

## low-level way of adding "non-structural zeros" :
nnm@x[2:4] <- c(FALSE,NA,NA)
nnm
as(nnm, "nMatrix") # NAs *and* non-structural 0  |--->  TRUE

data(KNex)
nmm <- as(KNex $ mm, "ngCMatrix")
str(xlx <- crossprod(nmm))# "nsCMatrix"
stopifnot(isSymmetric(xlx))
image(xlx, main=paste("crossprod(nmm) : Sparse", class(xlx)))
```

---

nsyMatrix-class *Symmetric Dense Nonzero-Pattern Matrices*

Description

The `"nsyMatrix"` class is the class of symmetric, dense nonzero-pattern matrices in non-packed storage and `"nspMatrix"` is the class of of these in packed storage. Only the upper triangle or the lower triangle is stored.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("nsyMatrix", ...)`.

Slots

`uplo`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

`x`: Object of class `"logical"`. The logical values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

`Dim`,`Dimnames`: The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`) and corresponding names (or `NULL`), see the `Matrix` class.

`factors`: Object of class `"list"`. A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

Extends

`"nsyMatrix"` extends class `"ngeMatrix"`, directly, whereas
`"nspMatrix"` extends class `"ndenseMatrix"`, directly.

Both extend class `"symmetricMatrix"`, directly, and class `"Matrix"` and others, *in*directly, use `showClass("nsyMatrix")`, e.g., for details.

Methods

Currently, mainly `t()` and coercion methods (for `as(.)`; use, e.g., `showMethods(class="dsyMatrix")` for details.

See Also

`ngeMatrix`, `Matrix`, `t`

Examples

```
(s0 <- new("nsyMatrix"))

(M2 <- Matrix(c(TRUE, NA,FALSE,FALSE), 2,2)) # logical dense (ltr)
(sM <- M2 & t(M2))      # "lge"
class(sM <- as(sM, "nMatrix")) # -> "nge"
     (sM <- as(sM, "nsyMatrix")) # -> "nsy"
str ( sM <- as(sM, "nspMatrix")) # -> "nsp": packed symmetric
```

---

ntrMatrix-class *Triangular Dense Logical Matrices*

Description

The `"ntrMatrix"` class is the class of triangular, dense, logical matrices in nonpacked storage. The `"ntpMatrix"` class is the same except in packed storage.

Slots

`x`: Object of class `"logical"`. The logical values that constitute the matrix, stored in column-major order.

`uplo`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

`diag`: Object of class `"character"`. Must be either `"U"`, for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or `"N"`; see `triangularMatrix`.

`Dim`,`Dimnames`: The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`) and corresponding names (or `NULL`), see the `Matrix` class.

`factors`: Object of class `"list"`. A named list of factorizations that have been computed for the matrix.

Extends

`"ntrMatrix"` extends class `"ngeMatrix"`, directly, whereas
`"ntpMatrix"` extends class `"ndenseMatrix"`, directly.

Both extend Class `"triangularMatrix"`, directly, and class `"denseMatrix"`, `"lMatrix"` and others, *in*directly, use `showClass("nsyMatrix")`, e.g., for details.

Methods

Currently, mainly `t()` and coercion methods (for `as(.)`; use, e.g., `showMethods(class="nsyMatrix")` for details.

See Also

Classes `ngeMatrix`, `Matrix`; function `t`

Examples

```
showClass("ntrMatrix")

str(new("ntpMatrix"))
(nutr <- as(upper.tri(matrix(,4,4)), "ntrMatrix"))
str(nutp <- as(nutr, "ntpMatrix"))# packed matrix: only 10 = (4+1)*4/2 entries
!nutp ## the logical negation (is *not* logical triangular !)
## but this one is:
stopifnot(all.equal(nutp, as(!!nutp, "ntpMatrix")))
```

---

number-class *Class "number" of Possibly Complex Numbers*

Description

The class `"number"` is a virtual class, currently used for vectors of eigen values which can be `"numeric"` or `"complex"`.

It is a simple class union (`setClassUnion`) of `"numeric"` and `"complex"`.

Objects from the Class

Since it is a virtual Class, no objects may be created from it.

Examples

```
showClass("number")
stopifnot( is(1i, "number"), is(pi, "number"), is(1:3, "number") )
```

---

pMatrix-class *Permutation matrices*

Description

The "pMatrix" class is the class of permutation matrices, stored as 1-based integer permutation vectors.

Matrix (vector) multiplication with permutation matrices is equivalent to row or column permutation, and is implemented that way in the **Matrix** package, see the 'Details' below.

Details

Matrix multiplication with permutation matrices is equivalent to row or column permutation. Here are the four different cases for an arbitrary matrix M and a permutation matrix P (where we assume matching dimensions):

MP	=	`M %*% P`	=	`M[, i(p)]`
PM	=	`P %*% M`	=	`M[ p , ]`
$P'M$	=	`crossprod(P,M)` (≈`t(P) %*% M`)	=	`M[i(p), ]`
MP'	=	`tcrossprod(M,P)` (≈`M %*% t(P)`)	=	`M[ , p ]`

where `p` is the "permutation vector" corresponding to the permutation matrix `P` (see first note), and `i(p)` is short for `invPerm(p)`.

Also one could argue that these are really only two cases if you take into account that inversion (`solve`) and transposition (`t`) are the same for permutation matrices P.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("pMatrix", ...)` or by coercion from an integer permutation vector, see below.

Slots

`perm`: An integer, 1-based permutation vector, i.e. an integer vector of length `Dim[1]` whose elements form a permutation of `1:Dim[1]`.

`Dim`: Object of class `"integer"`. The dimensions of the matrix which must be a two-element vector of equal, non-negative integers.

`Dimnames`: list of length two; each component containing NULL or a `character` vector length equal the corresponding `Dim` element.

Extends

Class `"indMatrix"`, directly.

Methods

%*% `signature(x = "matrix", y = "pMatrix")` and other signatures (use `showMethods("%*%", class="pMatrix")`): ...

coerce `signature(from = "integer", to = "pMatrix")`: This is enables typical `"pMatrix"` construction, given a permutation vector of `1:n`, see the first example.

coerce `signature(from = "numeric", to = "pMatrix")`: a user convenience, to allow `as(perm, "pMatrix")` for numeric `perm` with integer values.

coerce `signature(from = "pMatrix", to = "matrix")`: coercion to a traditional FALSE/TRUE `matrix` of `mode` `logical`. (in earlier version of **Matrix**, it resulted in a 0/1-integer matrix; `logical` makes slightly more sense, corresponding better to the "natural" sparseMatrix counterpart, `"ngTMatrix"`.)

coerce `signature(from = "pMatrix", to = "ngTMatrix")`: coercion to sparse logical matrix of class `ngTMatrix`.

determinant `signature(x = "pMatrix", logarithm="logical")`: Since permutation matrices are orthogonal, the determinant must be +1 or -1. In fact, it is exactly the *sign of the permutation*.

solve `signature(a = "pMatrix", b = "missing")`: return the inverse permutation matrix; note that `solve(P)` is identical to `t(P)` for permutation matrices. See `solve-methods` for other methods.

t `signature(x = "pMatrix")`: return the transpose of the permutation matrix (which is also the inverse of the permutation matrix).

Note

For every permutation matrix `P`, there is a corresponding permutation vector `p` (of indices, 1:n), and these are related by

```
P <- as(p, "pMatrix")
p <- P@perm
```

see also the 'Examples'.

"Row-indexing" a permutation matrix typically returns an `"indMatrix"`. See `"indMatrix"` for all other subsetting/indexing and subassignment (`A[..] <- v`) operations.

See Also

`invPerm(p)` computes the inverse permutation of an integer (index) vector `p`.

Examples

```
(pm1 <- as(as.integer(c(2,3,1)), "pMatrix"))
t(pm1) # is the same as
solve(pm1)
pm1 %*% t(pm1) # check that the transpose is the inverse
stopifnot(all(diag(3) == as(pm1 %*% t(pm1), "matrix")),
          is.logical(as(pm1, "matrix")))

set.seed(11)
## random permutation matrix :
(p10 <- as(sample(10),"pMatrix"))
```

```
## Permute rows / columns of a numeric matrix :
(mm <- round(array(rnorm(3 * 3), c(3, 3)), 2))
mm %*% pm1
pm1 %*% mm
try(as(as.integer(c(3,3,1)), "pMatrix"))# Error: not a permutation

as(pm1, "ngTMatrix")
p10[1:7, 1:4] # gives an "ngTMatrix" (most economic!)

## row-indexing of a <pMatrix> keeps it as an <indMatrix>:
p10[1:3, ]
```

`printSpMatrix` *Format and Print Sparse Matrices Flexibly*

Description

Format and print sparse matrices flexibly. These are the "workhorses" used by the `format`, `show` and `print` methods for sparse matrices. If `x` is large, `printSpMatrix2(x)` calls `printSpMatrix()` twice, namely, for the first and the last few rows, suppressing those in between, and also suppresses columns when `x` is too wide.

`printSpMatrix()` basically prints the result of `formatSpMatrix()`.

Usage

```
formatSpMatrix(x, digits = NULL, maxp = 1e9,
               cld = getClassDef(class(x)), zero.print = ".",
               col.names, note.dropping.colnames = TRUE,
               align = c("fancy", "right"))

printSpMatrix(x, digits = NULL, maxp = getOption("max.print"),
              cld = getClassDef(class(x)),
              zero.print = ".", col.names, note.dropping.colnames = TRUE,
              col.trailer = "",
              align = c("fancy", "right"))

printSpMatrix2(x, digits = NULL, maxp = getOption("max.print"),
              zero.print = ".", col.names, note.dropping.colnames = TRUE,
              suppRows = NULL, suppCols = NULL,
              col.trailer = if(suppCols) "......" else "",
              align = c("fancy", "right"))
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `sparseMatrix`.
`digits`	significant digits to use for printing, see `print.default`, the default, `NULL`, corresponds to using `getOption("digits")`.
`maxp`	integer, default from `options(max.print)`, influences how many entries of large matrices are printed at all.
`cld`	the class definition of `x`; must be equivalent to `getClassDef(class(x))` and exists mainly for possible speedup.

`zero.print` character which should be printed for *structural* zeroes. The default `"."` may occasionally be replaced by `" "` (blank); using `"0"` would look almost like `print()`ing of non-sparse matrices.

`col.names` logical or string specifying if and how column names of `x` should be printed, possibly abbreviated. The default is taken from `options("sparse.colnames")` if that is set, otherwise `FALSE` unless there are less than ten columns. When `TRUE` the full column names are printed.
When `col.names` is a string beginning with `"abb"` or `"sub"` and ending with an integer `n` (i.e., of the form `"abb... <n>"`), the column names are `abbreviate()`d or `substring()`ed to (target) length `n`, see the examples.

`note.dropping.colnames` logical specifying, when `col.names` is `FALSE` if the dropping of the column names should be noted, `TRUE` by default.

`col.trailer` a string to be appended to the right of each column; this is typically made use of by `show(<sparseMatrix>)` only, when suppressing columns.

`suppRows, suppCols` logicals or `NULL`, for `printSpMatrix2()` specifying if rows or columns should be suppressed in printing. If `NULL`, sensible defaults are determined from `dim(x)` and `options(c("width", "max.print"))`. Setting both to `FALSE` may be a very bad idea.

`align` a string specifying how the `zero.print` codes should be aligned, i.e., padded as strings. The default, `"fancy"`, takes some effort to align the typical `zero.print = "."` with the position of `0`, i.e., the first decimal (one left of decimal point) of the numbers printed, whereas `align = "right"` just makes use of `print(*, right = TRUE)`.

Details

formatSpMatrix: If `x` is large, only the first rows making up the approximately first `maxp` entries is used, otherwise all of `x`. `.formatSparseSimple()` is applied to (a dense version of) the matrix. Then, `formatSparseM` is used, unless in trivial cases or for sparse matrices without `x` slot.

Value

`formatSpMatrix()` returns a character matrix with possibly empty column names, depending on `col.names` etc, see above.

`printSpMatrix*()` return `x` *invisibly*, see `invisible`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

the virtual class `sparseMatrix` and the classes extending it; maybe `sparseMatrix` or `spMatrix` as simple constructors of such matrices.

The underlying utilities `formatSparseM` and `.formatSparseSimple()` (on the same page).

Examples

```
f1 <- gl(5, 3, labels = LETTERS[1:5])
X <- as(f1, "sparseMatrix")
X ## <==>  show(X)  <==>  print(X)
t(X) ## shows column names, since only 5 columns

X2 <- as(gl(12, 3, labels = paste(LETTERS[1:12],"c",sep=".")),
         "sparseMatrix")
X2
## less nice, but possible:
print(X2, col.names = TRUE) # use [,1] [,2] .. => does not fit

t(X2) # suppressing column names
print(t(X2), col.names=TRUE)
print(t(X2), zero.print = "", col.names="abbr. 1")
print(t(X2), zero.print = "-", col.names="substring 2")
```

`qr-methods` *QR Decomposition – S4 Methods and Generic*

Description

The `"Matrix"` package provides methods for the QR decomposition of special classes of matrices. There is a generic function which uses `qr` as default, but methods defined in this package can take extra arguments. In particular there is an option for determining a fill-reducing permutation of the columns of a sparse, rectangular matrix.

Usage

```
qr(x, ...)
qrR(qr, complete=FALSE, backPermute=TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	a numeric or complex matrix whose QR decomposition is to be computed. Logical matrices are coerced to numeric.
`qr`	a QR decomposition of the type computed by `qr`.
`complete`	logical indicating whether the $\boldsymbol{R}$ matrix is to be completed by binding zero-value rows beneath the square upper triangle.
`backPermute`	logical indicating if the rows of the $\boldsymbol{R}$ matrix should be back permuted such that `qrR()`'s result can be used directly to reconstruct the original matrix $\boldsymbol{X}$.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods

Methods

x = "dgCMatrix" QR decomposition of a general sparse double-precision matrix with `nrow(x) >= ncol(x)`. Returns an object of class `"sparseQR"`.

x = "sparseMatrix" works via `"dgCMatrix"`.

See Also

qr; then, the class documentations, mainly sparseQR, and also dgCMatrix.

Examples

```
##------------- example of pivoting -- from base  qraux.Rd -------------
X <- Matrix(cbind(int = 1,
                  b1=rep(1:0, each=3), b2=rep(0:1, each=3),
                  c1=rep(c(1,0,0), 2), c2=rep(c(0,1,0), 2), c3=rep(c(0,0,1),2)),
            sparse=TRUE)
X # is singular, columns "b2" and "c3" are "extra"
(qx <- qr(X))
# both @p and @q are non-trivial permutations

drop0(R. <- qr.R(qx), tol=1e-15) # columns are int b1 c1 c2 b2 c3
Q. <- qr.Q(qx)
qI <- sort.list(qx@q) # the inverse q permutation
(X. <- drop0(Q. %*% R.[, qI], tol=1e-15))## just = X
stopifnot(all(X - X.) < 8*.Machine$double.eps,
          ## qR(.) returns R already "back permuted" (as with qI):
          identical(R.[, qI], qrR(qx)) )
```

---

rankMatrix *Rank of a Matrix*

Description

Compute 'the' matrix rank, a well-defined functional in theory, somewhat ambigous in practice. We provide several methods, the default corresponding to Matlab's definition.

Usage

```
rankMatrix(x, tol = NULL,
           method = c("tolNorm2", "qr.R", "qrLINPACK", "qr",
                      "useGrad", "maybeGrad"),
           sval = svd(x, 0, 0)$d, warn.t = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	numeric matrix, of dimension $n \times m$, say.
tol	nonnegative number specifying a (relative, "scalefree") tolerance for testing of "practically zero" with specific meaning depending on method; by default, max(dim(x)) * .Machine$double.eps is according to Matlab's default (for its only method which is our method="tolNorm2").
method	a character string specifying the computational method for the rank, can be abbreviated: "tolNorm2": the number of singular values >= tol * max(sval); "qrLINPACK": for a dense matrix, this is the rank of qr(x, tol, LAPACK=FALSE) (which is qr(...)$rank); This ("qr*", dense) version used to be *the* recommended way to compute a matrix rank for a while in the past. For sparse x, this is equivalent to "qr.R".

`"qr.R"`: this is the rank of triangular matrix R, where `qr()` uses LAPACK or a "sparseQR" method (see `qr-methods`) to compute the decomposition QR. The rank of R is then defined as the number of "non-zero" diagonal entries d_i of R, and "non-zero"s fulfill $|d_i| \geq \text{tol} \cdot \max(|d_i|)$.

`"qr"`: is for back compatibility; for dense `x`, it corresponds to `"qrLINPACK"`, whereas for sparse `x`, it uses `"qr.R"`.
For all the "qr*" methods, singular values `sval` are not used, which may be crucially important for a large sparse matrix `x`, as in that case, when `sval` is not specified, the default, computing `svd()` currently coerces `x` to a dense matrix.

`"useGrad"`: considering the "gradient" of the (decreasing) singular values, the index of the *smallest* gap.

`"maybeGrad"`: choosing method `"useGrad"` only when that seems *reasonable*; otherwise using `"tolNorm2"`.

`sval` numeric vector of non-increasing singular values of `x`; typically unspecified and computed from `x` when needed, i.e., unless `method = "qr"`.

`warn.t` logical indicating if `rankMatrix()` should warn when it needs `t(x)` instead of `x`. Currently, for `method = "qr"` only, gives a warning by default because the caller often could have passed `t(x)` directly, more efficiently.

Value

positive integer in `1:min(dim(x))`, with attributes detailing the method used.

Note

For large sparse matrices `x`, unless you can specify `sval` yourself, currently `method = "qr"` may be the only feasible one, as the others need `sval` and call `svd()` which currently coerces `x` to a `denseMatrix` which may be very slow or impossible, depending on the matrix dimensions.

Note that in the case of sparse `x`, `method = "qr"`, all non-strictly zero diagonal entries d_i where counted, up to including **Matrix** version 1.1-0, i.e., that method implicitly used `tol = 0`, see also the seed(42) example below.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler; for the "*Grad" methods, building on suggestions by Ravi Varadhan.

See Also

`qr`, `svd`.

Examples

```
rankMatrix(cbind(1, 0, 1:3)) # 2

(meths <- eval(formals(rankMatrix)$method))

## a "border" case:
H12 <- Hilbert(12)
rankMatrix(H12, tol = 1e-20) # 12;  but  11  with default method & tol.
sapply(meths, function(.m.) rankMatrix(H12, method = .m.))
## tolNorm2    qr   qr.R  qrLINPACK  useGrad maybeGrad
##       11    12     11         12       11        11
```

```
## The meaning of tol for method="qrLINPACK" and *dense* x is not entirely "scale free"
rMQL <- function(ex, M) rankMatrix(M, method="qrLINPACK",tol = 10^-ex)
rMQR <- function(ex, M) rankMatrix(M, method="qr.R",     tol = 10^-ex)
sapply(5:15, rMQL, M = H12) # result is platform dependent
##  7  7  8 10 10 11 11 11 12 12 12  {x86_64}
sapply(5:15, rMQL, M = 1000 * H12) # not identical unfortunately
##  7  7  8 10 11 11 12 12 12 12 12
sapply(5:15, rMQR, M = H12)
##  5  6  7  8  8  9  9 10 10 11 11
sapply(5:15, rMQR, M = 1000 * H12) # the *same*


## "sparse" case:
M15 <- kronecker(diag(x=c(100,1,10)), Hilbert(5))
sapply(meths, function(.m.) rankMatrix(M15, method = .m.))
#--> all 15, but useGrad has 14.

## "large" sparse
n <- 250000; p <- 33; nnz <- 10000
L <- sparseMatrix(i = sample.int(n, nnz, replace=TRUE),
                  j = sample.int(p, nnz, replace=TRUE), x = rnorm(nnz))
(st1 <- system.time(r1 <- rankMatrix(L)))               #  warning +  ~1.5 sec
(st2 <- system.time(r2 <- rankMatrix(L, method = "qr"))) # considerably faster!
r1[[1]] == print(r2[[1]]) ## -->  ( 33  TRUE )

## another sparse-"qr" one, which failed till 2013-11-23:
set.seed(42)
f1 <- factor(sample(50, 1000, replace=TRUE))
f2 <- factor(sample(50, 1000, replace=TRUE))
f3 <- factor(sample(50, 1000, replace=TRUE))
D <- t(do.call(rBind, lapply(list(f1,f2,f3), as, sparseMatrix)))
dim(D); nnzero(D) ## 1000 x 150 // 3000 non-zeros (= 2%)
stopifnot(rankMatrix(D,           method=qr) == 148,
  rankMatrix(crossprod(D),method=qr) == 148)
```

---

rcond *Estimate the Reciprocal Condition Number*

Description

Estimate the reciprocal of the condition number of a matrix.

This is a generic function with several methods, as seen by `showMethods(rcond)`.

Usage

```
rcond(x, norm, ...)

## S4 method for signature sparseMatrix,character
rcond(x, norm, useInv=FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object that inherits from the `Matrix` class.

norm	character string indicating the type of norm to be used in the estimate. The default is "O" for the 1-norm ("O" is equivalent to "1"). For sparse matrices, when useInv=TRUE, norm can be any of the kinds allowed for norm; otherwise, the other possible value is "I" for the infinity norm, see also norm.
useInv	logical (or "Matrix" containing solve(x)). If not false, compute the reciprocal condition number as $1/(\|x\| \cdot \|x^{-1}\|)$, where x^{-1} is the inverse of x, solve(x). This may be an efficient alternative (only) in situations where solve(x) is fast (or known), e.g., for (very) sparse or triangular matrices. Note that the *result* may differ depending on useInv, as per default, when it is false, an *approximation* is computed.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

An estimate of the reciprocal condition number of x.

BACKGROUND

The condition number of a regular (square) matrix is the product of the norm of the matrix and the norm of its inverse (or pseudo-inverse).

More generally, the condition number is defined (also for non-square matrices A) as

$$\kappa(A) = \frac{\max_{\|v\|=1} \|Av\|}{\min_{\|v\|=1} \|Av\|}.$$

Whenever x is *not* a square matrix, in our method definitions, this is typically computed via rcond(qr.R(qr(X)), ...) where X is x or t(x).

The condition number takes on values between 1 and infinity, inclusive, and can be viewed as a factor by which errors in solving linear systems with this matrix as coefficient matrix could be magnified.

rcond() computes the *reciprocal* condition number $1/\kappa$ with values in $[0, 1]$ and can be viewed as a scaled measure of how close a matrix is to being rank deficient (aka "singular").

Condition numbers are usually estimated, since exact computation is costly in terms of floating-point operations. An (over) estimate of reciprocal condition number is given, since by doing so overflow is avoided. Matrices are well-conditioned if the reciprocal condition number is near 1 and ill-conditioned if it is near zero.

References

Golub, G., and Van Loan, C. F. (1989). *Matrix Computations,* 2nd edition, Johns Hopkins, Baltimore.

See Also

norm, kappa() from package **base** computes an *approximate* condition number of a "traditional" matrix, even non-square ones, with respect to the $p = 2$ (Euclidean) norm. solve.

condest, a newer *approximate* estimate of the (1-norm) condition number, particularly efficient for large sparse matrices.

Examples

```
x <- Matrix(rnorm(9), 3, 3)
rcond(x)
## typically "the same" (with more computational effort):
1 / (norm(x) * norm(solve(x)))
rcond(Hilbert(9))  # should be about 9.1e-13

## For non-square matrices:
rcond(x1 <- cbind(1,1:10))# 0.05278
rcond(x2 <- cbind(x1, 2:11))# practically 0, since x2 does not have full rank

## sparse
(S1 <- Matrix(rbind(0:1,0, diag(3:-2))))
rcond(S1)
m1 <- as(S1, "denseMatrix")
all.equal(rcond(S1), rcond(m1))

## wide and sparse
rcond(Matrix(cbind(0, diag(2:-1))))

## Large sparse example ----------
m <- Matrix(c(3,0:2), 2,2)
M <- bdiag(kronecker(Diagonal(2), m), kronecker(m,m))
36*(iM <- solve(M)) # still sparse
MM <- kronecker(Diagonal(10), kronecker(Diagonal(5),kronecker(m,M)))
dim(M3 <- kronecker(bdiag(M,M),MM)) # 12800 ^ 2
if(interactive()) ## takes about 2 seconds if you have >= 8 GB RAM
  system.time(r <- rcond(M3))
## whereas this is *fast* even though it computes  solve(M3)
system.time(r. <- rcond(M3, useInv=TRUE))
if(interactive()) ## the values are not the same
  c(r, r.)  # 0.05555 0.013888
## for all 4 norms available for sparseMatrix :
cbind(rr <- sapply(c("1","I","F","M"),
             function(N) rcond(M3, norm=N, useInv=TRUE)))
```

`rep2abI` *Replicate Vectors into 'abIndex' Result*

Description

`rep2abI(x, times)` conceptually computes `rep.int(x, times)` but with an `abIndex` class result.

Usage

```
rep2abI(x, times)
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric vector
`times`	integer (valued) scalar: the number of repetitions

Value

a vector of class abIndex

See Also

rep.int(), the base function; abIseq, abIndex.

Examples

```
(ab <- rep2abI(2:7, 4))
stopifnot(identical(as(ab, "numeric"),
   rep(2:7, 4)))
```

---

replValue-class *Virtual Class "replValue" - Simple Class for subassignment Values*

Description

The class "replValue" is a virtual class used for values in signatures for sub-assignment of **"Matrix"** matrices.

In fact, it is a simple class union (setClassUnion) of "numeric" and "logical" (and maybe "complex" in the future).

Objects from the Class

Since it is a virtual Class, no objects may be created from it.

See Also

Subassign-methods, also for examples.

Examples

```
showClass("replValue")
```

---

rleDiff-class *Class "rleDiff" of rle(diff(.)) Stored Vectors*

Description

Class "rleDiff" is for compactly storing long vectors which mainly consist of *linear* stretches. For such a vector x, diff(x) consists of *constant* stretches and is hence well compressable via rle().

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("rleDiff", ...).

Currently experimental, see below.

Slots

`first`: A single number (of class `"numLike"`, a class union of `"numeric"` and `"logical"`).

`rle`: Object of class `"rle"`, basically a `list` with components `"lengths"` and `"values"`, see `rle()`. As this is used to encode potentially huge index vectors, `lengths` may be of type `double` here.

Methods

There is a simple `show` method only.

Note

This is currently an *experimental* auxiliary class for the class `abIndex`, see there.

See Also

`rle`, `abIndex`.

Examples

```
showClass("rleDiff")

ab <- c(abIseq(2, 100), abIseq(20, -2))
ab@rleD  # is "rleDiff"
```

---

rsparsematrix *Random Sparse Matrix*

Description

Generate a Random Sparse Matrix Efficiently.

Usage

```
rsparsematrix(nrow, ncol, density, nnz = round(density * maxE),
              symmetric = FALSE,
              rand.x = function(n) signif(rnorm(nnz), 2), ...)
```

Arguments

`nrow, ncol`	number of rows and columns, i.e., the matrix dimension (`dim`).
`density`	optional number in $[0, 1]$, the density is the proportion of non-zero entries among all matrix entries. If specified it determines the default for `nnz`, otherwise `nnz` needs to be specified.
`nnz`	number of non-zero entries, for a sparse matrix typically considerably smaller than `nrow*ncol`. Must be specified if `density` is not.
`symmetric`	logical indicating if result should be a matrix of class `symmetricMatrix`. Note that in the symmetric case, `nnz` denotes the number of non zero entries of the upper (or lower) part of the matrix, including the diagonal.

`rand.x`	the random number generator for the `x` slot, a `function` such that `rand.x(n)` generates a numeric vector of length `n`. Typical examples are `rand.x = rnorm`, or `rand.x = runif`; the default is nice for didactical purposes.
`...`	optionally further arguments passed to `sparseMatrix()`, notably `giveCsparse`.

Details

The algorithm first samples "encoded" (i, j)s without replacement, via one dimensional indices, if not `symmetric` `sample.int(nrow*ncol, nnz)`, then gets `x <- rand.x(nnz)` and calls `sparseMatrix(i=i, j=j, x=x, ..)`.

Value

a `sparseMatrix`, say `M` of dimension (nrow, ncol), i.e., with `dim(M) == c(nrow, ncol)`, if `symmetric` is not true, with `nzM <- nnzero(M)` fulfilling `nzM <= nnz` and typically, `nzM == nnz`.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

Examples

```
set.seed(17)# to be reproducible
M <- rsparsematrix(8, 12, nnz = 30) # small example, not very sparse
M
M1 <- rsparsematrix(1000, 20,  nnz = 123,  rand.x = runif)
summary(M1)

## a random *symmetric* Matrix
(S9 <- rsparsematrix(9, 9, nnz = 10, symmetric=TRUE)) # dsCMatrix
nnzero(S9)# ~ 20: as nnz only counts one "triangle"

## a [T]riplet representation sparseMatrix:
T2 <- rsparsematrix(40, 12, nnz = 99, giveCsparse=FALSE)
head(T2)
```

RsparseMatrix-class *Class "RsparseMatrix" of Sparse Matrices in Column-compressed Form*

Description

The `"RsparseMatrix"` class is the virtual class of all sparse matrices coded in sorted compressed row-oriented form. Since it is a virtual class, no objects may be created from it. See `showClass("RsparseMatrix")` for its subclasses.

Slots

`j`: Object of class `"integer"` of length `nnzero` (number of non-zero elements). These are the row numbers for each non-zero element in the matrix.

`p`: Object of class `"integer"` of pointers, one for each row, to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the row.

`Dim`, `Dimnames`: inherited from the superclass, see `sparseMatrix`.

Extends

Class "sparseMatrix", directly. Class "Matrix", by class "sparseMatrix".

Methods

Only **few** methods are defined currently on purpose, since we rather use the CsparseMatrix in **Matrix**. Recently, more methods were added but *beware* that these typically do *not* return "RsparseMatrix" results, but rather Csparse* or Tsparse* ones.

t signature(x = "RsparseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "RsparseMatrix", to = "CsparseMatrix"): ...

coerce signature(from = "RsparseMatrix", to = "TsparseMatrix"): ...

See Also

its superclass, sparseMatrix, and, e.g., class dgRMatrix for the links to other classes.

Examples

```
showClass("RsparseMatrix")
```

Schur *Schur Decomposition of a Matrix*

Description

Computes the Schur decomposition and eigenvalues of a square matrix; see the BACKGROUND information below.

Usage

```
Schur(x, vectors, ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric square Matrix (inheriting from class "Matrix") or traditional matrix. Missing values (NAs) are not allowed.
vectors	logical. When TRUE (the default), the Schur vectors are computed, and the result is a proper MatrixFactorization of class Schur.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

Based on the Lapack subroutine dgees.

Value

If vectors are TRUE, as per default: If x is a Matrix an object of class Schur, otherwise, for a traditional matrix x, a list with components T, Q, and EValues.

If vectors are FALSE, a list with components

T	the upper quasi-triangular (square) matrix of the Schur decomposition.
EValues	the vector of numeric or complex eigen values of T or A.

BACKGROUND

If A is a square matrix, then A = Q T t(Q), where Q is orthogonal, and T is upper block-triangular (nearly triangular with either 1 by 1 or 2 by 2 blocks on the diagonal) where the 2 by 2 blocks correspond to (non-real) complex eigenvalues. The eigenvalues of A are the same as those of T, which are easy to compute. The Schur form is used most often for computing non-symmetric eigenvalue decompositions, and for computing functions of matrices such as matrix exponentials.

References

Anderson, E., et al. (1994). *LAPACK User's Guide,* 2nd edition, SIAM, Philadelphia.

Examples

```
Schur(Hilbert(9))              # Schur factorization (real eigenvalues)

(A <- Matrix(round(rnorm(5*5, sd = 100)), nrow = 5))
(Sch.A <- Schur(A))

eTA <- eigen(Sch.A@T)
str(SchA <- Schur(A, vectors=FALSE))# no T ==> simple list
stopifnot(all.equal(eTA$values, eigen(A)$values, tolerance = 1e-13),
          all.equal(eTA$values,
                    local({z <- Sch.A@EValues
                           z[order(Mod(z), decreasing=TRUE)]}), tolerance = 1e-13),
          identical(SchA$T, Sch.A@T),
          identical(SchA$EValues, Sch.A@EValues))

## For the faint of heart, we provide Schur() also for traditional matrices:

a.m <- function(M) unname(as(M, "matrix"))
a <- a.m(A)
Sch.a <- Schur(a)
stopifnot(identical(Sch.a, list(Q = a.m(Sch.A @ Q),
T = a.m(Sch.A @ T),
EValues = Sch.A@EValues)),
  all.equal(a, with(Sch.a, Q %*% T %*% t(Q)))
)
```

Schur-class *Class "Schur" of Schur Matrix Factorizations*

Description

Class "Schur" is the class of Schur matrix factorizations. These are a generalization of eigen value (or "spectral") decompositions for general (possibly asymmmetric) square matrices, see the Schur() function.

Objects from the Class

Objects of class "Schur" are typically created by Schur().

Slots

"Schur" has slots

T: Upper Block-triangular Matrix object.

Q: Square *orthogonal* "Matrix".

EValues: numeric or complex vector of eigenvalues of T.

Dim: the matrix dimension: equal to c(n,n) of class "integer".

Extends

Class "MatrixFactorization", directly.

See Also

Schur() for object creation; MatrixFactorization.

Examples

```
showClass("Schur")
Schur(M <- Matrix(c(1:7, 10:2), 4,4))
## Trivial, of course:
str(Schur(Diagonal(5)))

## for more examples, see Schur()
```

---

solve-methods *Methods in Package Matrix for Function* solve()

Description

Methods for function solve to solve a linear system of equations, or equivalently, solve for X in

$$AX = B$$

where A is a square matrix, and X, B are matrices or vectors (which are treated as 1-column matrices), and the syntax is

```
X <- solve(A,B)
```

In solve(a,b) in the **Matrix** package, a may also be a MatrixFactorization instead of directly a matrix.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature CHMfactor,ddenseMatrix
solve(a, b,
      system = c("A", "LDLt", "LD", "DLt", "L", "Lt", "D", "P", "Pt"), ...)

## S4 method for signature dgCMatrix,matrix
solve(a, b, sparse = FALSE, tol = .Machine$double.eps, ...)

  solve(a, b, ...) ## *the* two-argument version, almost always preferred to
# solve(a)         ## the *rarely* needed one-argument version
```

Arguments

a	a square numeric matrix, A, typically of one of the classes in **Matrix**. Logical matrices are coerced to corresponding numeric ones.
b	numeric vector or matrix (dense or sparse) as RHS of the linear system $Ax = b$.
system	only if a is a CHMfactor: character string indicating the kind of linear system to be solved, see below. Note that the default, "A", does *not* solve the triangular system (but "L" does).
sparse	only when a is a sparseMatrix, i.e., typically a dgCMatrix: logical specifying if the result should be a (formally) sparse matrix.
tol	only used when a is sparse, in the isSymmetric(a, tol=*) test, where that applies.
...	potentially further arguments to the methods.

Methods

signature(a = "ANY", b = "ANY") is simply the **base** package's S3 generic solve.

signature(a = "CHMfactor", b = "...."), system= * The solve methods for a "CHMfactor" object take an optional third argument system whose value can be one of the character strings "A", "LDLt", "LD", "DLt", "L", "Lt", "D", "P" or "Pt". This argument describes the system to be solved. The default, "A", is to solve $Ax = b$ for x where A is sparse, positive-definite matrix that was factored to produce a. Analogously, system = "L" returns the solution x, of $Lx = b$; similarly, for all system codes **but** "P" and "Pt" where, e.g., x <-solve(a, b,system="P") is equivalent to x <- P %*% b.

If b is a sparseMatrix, system is used as above the corresponding sparse CHOLMOD algorithm is called.

signature(a = "ddenseMatrix", b = "....") (for all b) work via as(a, "dgeMatrix"), using the its methods, see below.

signature(a = "denseLU", b = "missing") basically computes uses triangular forward- and back-solve.

signature(a = "dgCMatrix", b = "matrix") , and

signature(a = "dgCMatrix", b = "ddenseMatrix") with extra argument list (sparse = FALSE, tol = .Machine$double.eps) : Uses the sparse lu(a) decomposition (which is cached in a's factor slot). By default, sparse=FALSE, returns a denseMatrix, since $U^{-1}L^{-1}B$ may not be sparse at all, even when L and U are.

If sparse=TRUE, returns a sparseMatrix (which may not be very sparse at all, even if a *was* sparse).

signature(a = "dgCMatrix", b = "dsparseMatrix") , and

signature(a = "dgCMatrix", b = "missing") with extra argument list (sparse=FALSE, tol = .Machine$double.eps) : Checks if a is symmetric, and in that case, coerces it to "symmetricMatrix", and then computes a *sparse* solution via sparse Cholesky factorization, independently of the sparse argument. If a is not symmetric, the sparse lu decomposition is used and the result will be sparse or dense, depending on the sparse argument, exactly as for the above (b = "ddenseMatrix") case.

signature(a = "dgeMatrix", b = ".....") solve the system via internal LU, calling LAPACK routines dgetri or dgetrs.

signature(a = "diagonalMatrix", b = "matrix") and other bs: Of course this is trivially implemented, as D^{-1} is diagonal with entries $1/D[i, i]$.

`signature(a = "dpoMatrix", b = "....Matrix")` , and

`signature(a = "dppMatrix", b = "....Matrix")` The Cholesky decomposition of a is calculated (if needed) while solving the system.

`signature(a = "dsCMatrix", b = "....")` All these methods first try Cholmod's Cholesky factorization; if that works, i.e., typically if a is positive semi-definite, it is made use of. Otherwise, the sparse LU decomposition is used as for the "general" matrices of class `"dgCMatrix"`.

`signature(a = "dspMatrix", b = "....")` , and

`signature(a = "dsyMatrix", b = "....")` all end up calling LAPACK routines `dsptri`, `dsptrs`, `dsytrs` and `dsytri`.

`signature(a = "dtCMatrix", b = "CsparseMatrix")` ,

`signature(a = "dtCMatrix", b = "dgeMatrix")` , etc sparse triangular solve, in traditional S/ also known as `backsolve`, or `forwardsolve`. `solve(a,b)` is a `sparseMatrix` if b is, and hence a `denseMatrix` otherwise.

`signature(a = "dtrMatrix", b = "ddenseMatrix")` , and

`signature(a = "dtpMatrix", b = "matrix")` , and similar b, including `"missing"`, and `"diagonalMatrix"`:

all use LAPACK based versions of efficient triangular `backsolve`, or `forwardsolve`.

`signature(a = "Matrix", b = "diagonalMatrix")` works via `as(b, "CsparseMatrix")`.

`signature(a = "sparseQR", b = "ANY")` simply uses `qr.coef(a, b)`.

`signature(a = "pMatrix", b = ".....")` these methods typically use `crossprod(a,b)`, as the inverse of a permutation matrix is the same as its transpose.

`signature(a = "TsparseMatrix", b = "ANY")` all work via `as(a, "CsparseMatrix")`.

See Also

`solve`, `lu`, and class documentations `CHMfactor`, `sparseLU`, and `MatrixFactorization`.

Examples

```
## A close to symmetric example with "quite sparse" inverse:
n1 <- 7; n2 <- 3
dd <- data.frame(a = gl(n1,n2), b = gl(n2,1,n1*n2))# balanced 2-way
X <- sparse.model.matrix(~ -1+ a + b, dd)# no intercept --> even sparser
XXt <- tcrossprod(X)
diag(XXt) <- rep(c(0,0,1,0), length.out = nrow(XXt))

n <- nrow(ZZ <- kronecker(XXt, Diagonal(x=c(4,1))))
image(a <- 2*Diagonal(n) + ZZ %*% Diagonal(x=c(10, rep(1, n-1))))
isSymmetric(a) # FALSE
image(drop0(skewpart(a)))
image(ia0 <- solve(a)) # checker board, dense [but really, a is singular!]
try(solve(a, sparse=TRUE))##-> error [ TODO: assertError ]
ia. <- solve(a, sparse=TRUE, tol = 1e-19)##-> *no* error
if(R.version$arch == "x86_64")
  ## Fails on 32-bit [Fedora 19, R 3.0.2] from Matrix 1.1-0 on [FIXME ??] only
  stopifnot(all.equal(as.matrix(ia.), as.matrix(ia0)))
a <- a + Diagonal(n)
iad <- solve(a)
ias <- solve(a, sparse=TRUE)
stopifnot(all.equal(as(ias,"denseMatrix"), iad, tolerance=1e-14))
I. <- iad %*% a          ; image(I.)
```

```
I0 <- drop0(zapsmall(I.)); image(I0)
.I <- a %*% iad
.I0 <- drop0(zapsmall(.I))
stopifnot( all.equal(as(I0, "diagonalMatrix"), Diagonal(n)),
           all.equal(as(.I0,"diagonalMatrix"), Diagonal(n)) )
```

`sparse.model.matrix` *Construct Sparse Design / Model Matrices*

Description

Construct a sparse model or "design" matrix, form a formula and data frame (`sparse.model.matrix`) or a single factor (`fac2sparse`).

The `fac2[Ss]parse()` functions are utilities, also used internally in the principal user level function `sparse.model.matrix()`.

Usage

```
sparse.model.matrix(object, data = environment(object),
    contrasts.arg = NULL, xlev = NULL, transpose = FALSE,
    drop.unused.levels = FALSE, row.names = TRUE,
    verbose = FALSE, ...)

fac2sparse(from, to = c("d", "i", "l", "n", "z"),
   drop.unused.levels = TRUE, giveCsparse = TRUE)
fac2Sparse(from, to = c("d", "i", "l", "n", "z"),
   drop.unused.levels = TRUE, giveCsparse = TRUE,
   factorPatt12, contrasts.arg = NULL)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object of an appropriate class. For the default method, a model formula or terms object.
`data`	a data frame created with `model.frame`. If another sort of object, `model.frame` is called first.
`contrasts.arg`	**for** `sparse.model.matrix()`**:** A list, whose entries are contrasts suitable for input to the `contrasts` replacement function and whose names are the names of columns of `data` containing `factor`s. **for** `fac2Sparse()`**:** character string or `NULL` or (coercable to) `"sparseMatrix"`, specifying the contrasts to be applied to the factor levels.
`xlev`	to be used as argument of `model.frame` if `data` has no `"terms"` attribute.
`transpose`	logical indicating if the *transpose* should be returned; if the transposed is used anyway, setting `transpose = TRUE` is more efficient.
`drop.unused.levels`	should factors have unused levels dropped? The default for `sparse.model.matrix` has been changed to `FALSE`, 2010-07, for compatibility with 's standard (dense) `model.matrix()`.

row.names	logical indicating if row names should be used.
verbose	logical or integer indicating if (and how much) progress output should be printed.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.
from	(for fac2sparse():) a factor.
to	a character indicating the "kind" of sparse matrix to be returned. The default, "d" is for double.
giveCsparse	(for fac2sparse():) logical indicating if the result must be a CsparseMatrix.
factorPatt12	logical vector, say fp, of length two; when fp[1] is true, return "contrasted" t(X); when fp[2] is true, the original ("dummy") t(X), i.e, the result of fac2sparse().

Value

a sparse matrix, extending CsparseMatrix (for fac2sparse() if giveCsparse is true as per default; a TsparseMatrix, otherwise).

For fac2Sparse(), a list of length two, both components with the corresponding transposed model matrix, where the corresponding factorPatt12 is true.

Note that model.Matrix(*, sparse=TRUE) from package **MatrixModels** may be often be preferable to sparse.model.matrix() nowadays, as model.Matrix() returns modelMatrix objects with additional slots assign and contrasts which relate back to the variables used.

fac2sparse(), the basic workhorse of sparse.model.matrix(), returns the *transpose* (t) of the model matrix.

Author(s)

Doug Bates and Martin Maechler, with initial suggestions from Tim Hesterberg.

See Also

model.matrix in standard 's package **stats**.
model.Matrix which calls sparse.model.matrix or model.matrix depending on its sparse argument may be preferred to sparse.model.matrix.

as(f, "sparseMatrix") (see coerce(from = "factor", ..) in the class doc sparseMatrix) produces the *transposed* sparse model matrix for a single factor f (and *no* contrasts).

Examples

```
dd <- data.frame(a = gl(3,4), b = gl(4,1,12))# balanced 2-way
options("contrasts") # the default:  "contr.treatment"
sparse.model.matrix(~ a + b, dd)
sparse.model.matrix(~ -1+ a + b, dd)# no intercept --> even sparser
sparse.model.matrix(~ a + b, dd, contrasts = list(a="contr.sum"))
sparse.model.matrix(~ a + b, dd, contrasts = list(b="contr.SAS"))

## Sparse method is equivalent to the traditional one :
stopifnot(all(sparse.model.matrix(~ a + b, dd) ==
      Matrix(model.matrix(~ a + b, dd), sparse=TRUE)),
  all(sparse.model.matrix(~ 0+ a + b, dd) ==
      Matrix(model.matrix(~ 0+ a + b, dd), sparse=TRUE)))
```

```
(ff <- gl(3,4,, c("X","Y", "Z")))
fac2sparse(ff) #  3 x 12 sparse Matrix of class "dgCMatrix"
##
##  X  1 1 1 1 . . . . . . . .
##  Y  . . . . 1 1 1 1 . . . .
##  Z  . . . . . . . . 1 1 1 1

## can also be computed via sparse.model.matrix():
f30 <- gl(3,0    )
f12 <- gl(3,0, 12)
stopifnot(
  all.equal(t( fac2sparse(ff) ),
    sparse.model.matrix(~ 0+ff),
    tolerance = 0, check.attributes=FALSE),
  is(M <- fac2sparse(f30, drop= TRUE),"CsparseMatrix"), dim(M) == c(0, 0),
  is(M <- fac2sparse(f30, drop=FALSE),"CsparseMatrix"), dim(M) == c(3, 0),
  is(M <- fac2sparse(f12, drop= TRUE),"CsparseMatrix"), dim(M) == c(0,12),
  is(M <- fac2sparse(f12, drop=FALSE),"CsparseMatrix"), dim(M) == c(3,12)
 )
```

`sparseLU-class` *Sparse LU decomposition of a square sparse matrix*

Description

Objects of this class contain the components of the LU decomposition of a sparse square matrix.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form `new("sparseLU", ...)` but are more commonly created by function `lu()` applied to a sparse matrix, such as a matrix of class `dgCMatrix`.

Slots

L: Object of class `"dtCMatrix"`, the lower triangular factor from the left.

U: Object of class `"dtCMatrix"`, the upper triangular factor from the right.

p: Object of class `"integer"`, permutation applied from the left.

q: Object of class `"integer"`, permutation applied from the right.

Dim: the dimension of the original matrix; inherited from class `MatrixFactorization`.

Extends

Class `"LU"`, directly. Class `"MatrixFactorization"`, by class `"LU"`.

Methods

expand `signature(x = "sparseLU")` Returns a list with components `P`, `L`, `U`, and `Q`, where P and Q represent fill-reducing permutations, and L, and U the lower and upper triangular matrices of the decomposition. The original matrix corresponds to the product $PLUQ$.

Note

The decomposition is of the form

$$A = P'LUQ,$$

or equivalently $PAQ' = LU$, where all matrices are sparse and of size $n \times n$. The matrices P and Q, and their transposes P' and Q' are permutation matrices, L is lower triangular and U is upper triangular.

See Also

lu, solve, dgCMatrix

Examples

```
## Extending the one in   examples(lu), calling the matrix  A,
## and confirming the factorization identities :
A <- as(readMM(system.file("external/pores_1.mtx",
                           package = "Matrix")),
        "CsparseMatrix")
str(luA <- lu(A)) # p is a 0-based permutation of the rows
                              # q is a 0-based permutation of the columns
xA <- expand(luA)
## which is simply doing
stopifnot(identical(xA$ L, luA@L),
          identical(xA$ U, luA@U),
          identical(xA$ P, as(luA@p +1L, "pMatrix")),
          identical(xA$ Q, as(luA@q +1L, "pMatrix")))

P.LUQ <- with(xA, t(P) %*% L %*% U %*% Q)
stopifnot(all.equal(A, P.LUQ, tolerance = 1e-12))
## permute rows and columns of original matrix
pA <- A[luA@p + 1L, luA@q + 1L]
stopifnot(identical(pA, with(xA, P %*% A %*% t(Q))))

pLU <- drop0(luA@L %*% luA@U) # L %*% U -- dropping extra zeros
stopifnot(all.equal(pA, pLU))
```

SparseM-conversions *Sparse Matrix Coercion from and to those from package "SparseM"*

Description

Methods for coercion from and to sparse matrices from package **SparseM** are provided here, for ease of porting functionality to the **Matrix** package, and comparing functionality of the two packages.

Methods

from = "matrix.csr", to = "dgRMatrix" ...

from = "matrix.csc", to = "dgCMatrix" ...

from = "matrix.coo", to = "dgTMatrix" ...

from = "dgRMatrix", to = "matrix.csr" ...

from = "dgCMatrix", to = "matrix.csc" ...

from = "dgTMatrix", to = "matrix.coo" ...

from = "sparseMatrix", to = "matrix.csr" ...

from = "matrix.csr", to = "dgCMatrix" ...

from = "matrix.coo", to = "dgCMatrix" ...

from = "matrix.csr", to = "Matrix" ...

from = "matrix.csc", to = "Matrix" ...

from = "matrix.coo", to = "Matrix" ...

See Also

The documentation in package **SparseM**, such as `SparseM.ontology`, and one important class, `matrix.csr`.

`sparseMatrix` *General Sparse Matrix Construction from Nonzero Entries*

Description

User friendly construction of a compressed, column-oriented, sparse matrix, inheriting from `class CsparseMatrix` (or `TsparseMatrix` if `giveCsparse` is false), from locations (and values) of its non-zero entries.

This is the recommended user interface rather than direct `new("***Matrix", ....)` calls.

Usage

```
sparseMatrix(i = ep, j = ep, p, x, dims, dimnames,
             symmetric = FALSE, index1 = TRUE,
             giveCsparse = TRUE, check = TRUE, use.last.ij = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`i,j`	integer vectors of the same length specifying the locations (row and column indices) of the non-zero (or non-`TRUE`) entries of the matrix. Note that for *repeated* pairs (i_k, j_k), when `x` is not missing, the corresponding x_k are *added*, in consistency with the definition of the `"TsparseMatrix"` class, unless `use.last.ij` is true, in which case only the *last* of the corresponding (i_k, j_k, x_k) triplet is used.
`p`	numeric (integer valued) vector of pointers, one for each column (or row), to the initial (zero-based) index of elements in the column (or row). Exactly one of `i`, `j` or `p` must be missing.
`x`	optional values of the matrix entries. If specified, must be of the same length as `i` / `j`, or of length one where it will be recycled to full length. If missing, the resulting matrix will be a 0/1 patter**n** matrix, i.e., extending class `nsparseMatrix`.
`dims`	optional, non-negative, integer, dimensions vector of length 2. Defaults to `c(max(i), max(j))`.
`dimnames`	optional list of `dimnames`; if not specified, none, i.e., `NULL` ones, are used.
`symmetric`	logical indicating if the resulting matrix should be symmetric. In that case, only the lower or upper triangle needs to be specified via $(i/j/p)$.

index1	logical scalar. If TRUE, the default, the index vectors i and/or j are 1-based, as is the convention in . That is, counting of rows and columns starts at 1. If FALSE the index vectors are 0-based so counting of rows and columns starts at 0; this corresponds to the internal representation.
giveCsparse	logical indicating if the result should be a CsparseMatrix or a TsparseMatrix. The default, TRUE is very often more efficient subsequently, but not always.
check	logical indicating if a validity check is performed; do not set to FALSE unless you know what you're doing!
use.last.ij	logical indicating if in the case of repeated, i.e., duplicated pairs (i_k, j_k) only the last one should be used. The default, FALSE, corresponds to the "TsparseMatrix" definition.

Details

Exactly one of the arguments i, j and p must be missing.

In typical usage, p is missing, i and j are vectors of positive integers and x is a numeric vector. These three vectors, which must have the same length, form the triplet representation of the sparse matrix.

If i or j is missing then p must be a non-decreasing integer vector whose first element is zero. It provides the compressed, or "pointer" representation of the row or column indices, whichever is missing. The expanded form of p, rep(seq_along(dp),dp) where dp <- diff(p), is used as the (1-based) row or column indices.

The values of i, j, p and index1 are used to create 1-based index vectors i and j from which a TsparseMatrix is constructed, with numerical values given by x, if non-missing. Note that in that case, when some pairs (i_k, j_k) are repeated (aka "duplicated"), the corresponding x_k are *added*, in consistency with the definition of the "TsparseMatrix" class, unless use.last.ij is set to true.

By default, when giveCsparse is true, the CsparseMatrix derived from this triplet form is returned.

The reason for returning a CsparseMatrix object instead of the triplet format by default is that the compressed column form is easier to work with when performing matrix operations. In particular, if there are no zeros in x then a CsparseMatrix is a unique representation of the sparse matrix.

Value

A sparse matrix, by default (see giveCsparse) in compressed, column-oriented form, as an object inheriting from both CsparseMatrix and generalMatrix.

Note

You *do* need to use index1 = FALSE (or add + 1 to i and j) if you want use the 0-based i (and j) slots from existing sparse matrices.

See Also

Matrix(*, sparse=TRUE) for the constructor of such matrices from a *dense* matrix. That is easier in small sample, but much less efficient (or impossible) for large matrices, where something like sparseMatrix() is needed. Further bdiag and Diagonal for (block-)diagonal and bandSparse for banded sparse matrix constructors.

The standard xtabs(*, sparse=TRUE), for sparse tables and sparse.model.matrix() for building sparse model matrices.

Consider CsparseMatrix and similar class definition help files.

Examples

```
## simple example
i <- c(1,3:8); j <- c(2,9,6:10); x <- 7 * (1:7)
(A <- sparseMatrix(i, j, x = x))
summary(A)
str(A) # note that *internally* 0-based row indices are used

## dims can be larger than the maximum row or column indices
(AA <- sparseMatrix(c(1,3:8), c(2,9,6:10), x = 7 * (1:7), dims = c(10,20)))
summary(AA)

## i, j and x can be in an arbitrary order, as long as they are consistent
set.seed(1); (perm <- sample(1:7))
(A1 <- sparseMatrix(i[perm], j[perm], x = x[perm]))
stopifnot(identical(A, A1))

## The slots are 0-index based, so
try( sparseMatrix(i=A@i, p=A@p, x= seq_along(A@x)) )
## fails and you should say so: 1-indexing is FALSE:
     sparseMatrix(i=A@i, p=A@p, x= seq_along(A@x), index1 = FALSE)

## the (i,j) pairs can be repeated, in which case the xs are summed
(args <- data.frame(i = c(i, 1), j = c(j, 2), x = c(x, 2)))
(Aa <- do.call(sparseMatrix, args))
## explicitly ask for elimination of such duplicates, so
## that the last one is used:
(A. <- do.call(sparseMatrix, c(args, list(use.last.ij = TRUE))))
stopifnot(Aa[1,2] == 9, # 2+7 == 9
          A.[1,2] == 2) # 2 was *after* 7

## for a pattern matrix, of course there is no "summing":
(nA <- do.call(sparseMatrix, args[c("i","j")]))

dn <- list(LETTERS[1:3], letters[1:5])
## pointer vectors can be used, and the (i,x) slots are sorted if necessary:
m <- sparseMatrix(i = c(3,1, 3:2, 2:1), p= c(0:2, 4,4,6), x = 1:6, dimnames = dn)
m
str(m)
stopifnot(identical(dimnames(m), dn))

sparseMatrix(x = 2.72, i=1:3, j=2:4) # recycling x
sparseMatrix(x = TRUE, i=1:3, j=2:4) # recycling x, |--> "lgCMatrix"

## no x --> patter*n* matrix:
(n <- sparseMatrix(i=1:6, j=rev(2:7)))# -> ngCMatrix

## an empty sparse matrix:
(e <- sparseMatrix(dims = c(4,6), i={}, j={}))

## a symmetric one:
(sy <- sparseMatrix(i= c(2,4,3:5), j= c(4,7:5,5), x = 1:5,
                    dims = c(7,7), symmetric=TRUE))
stopifnot(isSymmetric(sy),
          identical(sy, ## switch i <-> j {and transpose }
    t( sparseMatrix(j= c(2,4,3:5), i= c(4,7:5,5), x = 1:5,
                    dims = c(7,7), symmetric=TRUE))))
```

```
## rsparsematrix() calls sparseMatrix() :
M1 <- rsparsematrix(1000, 20, nnz = 200)
summary(M1)


## pointers example in converting from other sparse matrix representations.
if(require(SparseM) && packageVersion("SparseM") >= 0.87 &&
   nzchar(dfil <- system.file("textdata", "rua_32_ax.rua",
                              package = "SparseM"))) {
  X <- model.matrix(read.matrix.hb(dfil))
  XX <- sparseMatrix(j = X@ja, p = X@ia - 1L, x = X@ra, dims = X@dimension)
  validObject(XX)

  ## Alternatively, and even more user friendly :
  X. <- as(X, "Matrix")  # or also
  X2 <- as(X, "sparseMatrix")
  stopifnot(identical(XX, X.), identical(X., X2))
}
```

`sparseMatrix-class` *Virtual Class "sparseMatrix" — Mother of Sparse Matrices*

Description

Virtual Mother Class of All Sparse Matrices

Slots

`Dim`**:** Object of class `"integer"` - the dimensions of the matrix - must be an integer vector with exactly two non-negative values.

`Dimnames`**:** a list of length two - inherited from class `Matrix`, see `Matrix`.

Extends

Class `"Matrix"`, directly.

Methods

show `(object = "sparseMatrix")`: The `show` method for sparse matrices prints *"structural"* zeroes as `"."` using `printSpMatrix()` which allows further customization.

print `signature(x = "sparseMatrix")`, ...
The `print` method for sparse matrices by default is the same as `show()` but can be called with extra optional arguments, see `printSpMatrix()`.

format `signature(x = "sparseMatrix")`, ...
The `format` method for sparse matrices, see `formatSpMatrix()` for details such as the extra optional arguments.

summary `(object = "sparseMatrix")`: Returns an object of S3 class `"sparseSummary"` which is basically a `data.frame` with columns `(i,j,x)` (or just `(i,j)` for `nsparseMatrix` class objects) with the stored (typically non-zero) entries. The `print` method resembles Matlab's way of printing sparse matrices, and also the MatrixMarket format, see `writeMM`.

cbind2 `(x = *, y = *)`: several methods for binding matrices together, column-wise, see the basic `cbind` and `rbind` functions.
Note that the result will typically be sparse, even when one argument is dense and larger than the sparse one.

rbind2 `(x = *, y = *)`: binding matrices together row-wise, see `cbind2` above.

determinant `(x = "sparseMatrix", logarithm=TRUE)`: `determinant()` methods for sparse matrices typically work via `Cholesky` or `lu` decompositions.

diag `(x = "sparseMatrix")`: extracts the diagonal of a sparse matrix.

dim<- `signature(x = "sparseMatrix", value = "ANY")`: allows to *reshape* a sparse matrix to a sparse matrix with the same entries but different dimensions. `value` must be of length two and fulfill `prod(value) == prod(dim(x))`.

coerce `signature(from = "factor", to = "sparseMatrix")`: Coercion of a factor to `"sparseMatrix"` produces the matrix of indicator **rows** stored as an object of class `"dgCMatrix"`. To obtain columns representing the interaction of the factor and a numeric covariate, replace the `"x"` slot of the result by the numeric covariate then take the transpose. Missing values (`NA`) from the factor are translated to columns of all `0`s.

See also `colSums`, `norm`, ... for methods with separate help pages.

Note

In method selection for multiplication operations (i.e. `%*%` and the two-argument form of `crossprod`) the sparseMatrix class takes precedence in the sense that if one operand is a sparse matrix and the other is any type of dense matrix then the dense matrix is coerced to a `dgeMatrix` and the appropriate sparse matrix method is used.

See Also

`sparseMatrix`, and its references, such as `xtabs(*, sparse=TRUE)`, or `sparse.model.matrix()`, for constructing sparse matrices.

`T2graph` for conversion of `"graph"` objects (package **graph**) to and from sparse matrices.

Examples

```
showClass("sparseMatrix") ## and look at the help() of its subclasses
M <- Matrix(0, 10000, 100)
M[1,1] <- M[2,3] <- 3.14
M  ## show(.) method suppresses printing of the majority of rows

data(CAex); dim(CAex) # 72 x 72 matrix
determinant(CAex) # works via sparse lu(.)

## factor -> t( <sparse design matrix> ) :
(fact <- gl(5, 3, 30, labels = LETTERS[1:5]))
(Xt <- as(fact, "sparseMatrix"))  # indicator rows

## missing values --> all-0 columns:
f.mis <- fact
i.mis <- c(3:5, 17)
is.na(f.mis) <- i.mis
Xt != (X. <- as(f.mis, "sparseMatrix")) # differ only in columns 3:5,17
stopifnot(all(X.[,i.mis] == 0), all(Xt[,-i.mis] == X.[,-i.mis]))
```

sparseQR-class *Sparse QR decomposition of a sparse matrix*

Description

Objects class "sparseQR" represent a QR decomposition of a sparse $n \times p$ rectangular matrix X, typically resulting from qr()

Details

The decomposition is of the form A[p+1,] == Q %*% R, if the q slot is of length 0 or A[p+1,q+1] == Q %*% R where A is a sparse $m \times n$ matrix ($m \geq n$), R is an $m \times n$ matrix that is zero below the main diagonal. The p slot is a 0-based permutation of 1:m applied to the rows of the original matrix. If the q slot has length n it is a 0-based permutation of 1:n applied to the columns of the original matrix to reduce the amount of "fill-in" in the matrix R.

The matrix Q is a "virtual matrix". It is the product of n Householder transformations. The information to generate these Householder transformations is stored in the V and beta slots.

The "sparseQR" methods for the qr.* functions return objects of class "dgeMatrix" (see dgeMatrix). Results from qr.coef, qr.resid and qr.fitted (when k == ncol(R)) are well-defined and should match those from the corresponding dense matrix calculations. However, because the matrix Q is not uniquely defined, the results of qr.qy and qr.qty do not necessarily match those from the corresponding dense matrix calculations.

Also, the results of qr.qy and qr.qty apply to the permuted column order when the q slot has length n.

Objects from the Class

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("sparseQR", ...) but are more commonly created by function qr applied to a sparse matrix such as a matrix of class dgCMatrix.

Slots

V: Object of class "dgCMatrix". The columns of V are the vectors that generate the Householder transformations of which the matrix Q is composed.

beta: Object of class "numeric", the normalizing factors for the Householder transformations.

p: Object of class "integer": Permutation (of 0:(n-1)) applied to the rows of the original matrix.

R: Object of class "dgCMatrix": An upper triangular matrix of dimension \

q: Object of class "integer": Permutation applied from the right. Can be of length 0 which implies no permutation.

Methods

qr.R signature(qr = "sparseQR"): compute the upper triangular R matrix of the QR decomposition. Note that this currently warns because of possible permutation mismatch with the classical qr.R() result, *and* you can suppress these warnings by setting options() either "Matrix.quiet.qr.R" or (the more general) either "Matrix.quiet" to TRUE.

qr.Q signature(qr = "sparseQR"): compute the orthogonal Q matrix of the QR decomposition.

qr.coef signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "ddenseMatrix"): ...

qr.coef `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "matrix")`: ...

qr.coef `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "numeric")`: ...

qr.fitted `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "ddenseMatrix")`: ...

qr.fitted `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "matrix")`: ...

qr.fitted `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "numeric")`: ...

qr.qty `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "ddenseMatrix")`: ...

qr.qty `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "matrix")`: ...

qr.qty `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "numeric")`: ...

qr.qy `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "ddenseMatrix")`: ...

qr.qy `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "matrix")`: ...

qr.qy `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "numeric")`: ...

qr.resid `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "ddenseMatrix")`: ...

qr.resid `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "matrix")`: ...

qr.resid `signature(qr = "sparseQR", y = "numeric")`: ...

solve `signature(a = "sparseQR", b = "ANY")`: For `solve(a,b)`, simply uses `qr.coef(a,b)`.

See Also

`qr`, `qr.Q`, `qr.R`, `qr.fitted`, `qr.resid`, `qr.coef`, `qr.qty`, `qr.qy`, `dgCMatrix`, `dgeMatrix`.

Examples

```
data(KNex)
mm <- KNex $ mm
 y <- KNex $  y
 y. <- as(as.matrix(y), "dgCMatrix")
str(qrm <- qr(mm))
 qc  <- qr.coef  (qrm, y); qc. <- qr.coef  (qrm, y.) # 2nd failed in Matrix <= 1.1-0
 qf  <- qr.fitted(qrm, y); qf. <- qr.fitted(qrm, y.)
 qs  <- qr.resid (qrm, y); qs. <- qr.resid (qrm, y.)
stopifnot(all.equal(qc, as.numeric(qc.),  tolerance=1e-12),
          all.equal(qf, as.numeric(qf.),  tolerance=1e-12),
          all.equal(qs, as.numeric(qs.),  tolerance=1e-12),
          all.equal(qf+qs, y, tolerance=1e-12))
```

`sparseVector` *Sparse Vector Construction from Nonzero Entries*

Description

User friendly construction sparse vectors, i.e., objects inheriting from `class sparseVector`, from indices and values of its non-zero entries.

Usage

```
sparseVector(x, i, length)
```

Arguments

x	vector of the non zero entries.
i	integer vector (of the same length as x) specifying the indices of the non-zero (or non-TRUE) entries of the sparse vector.
length	length of the sparse vector.

Details

zero entries in x are dropped automatically, analogously as drop0() acts on sparse matrices.

Value

a sparse vector, i.e., inheriting from class sparseVector.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler

See Also

sparseMatrix() constructor for sparse matrices; the class sparseVector.

Examples

```
str(sv <- sparseVector(x = 1:10, i = sample(999, 10), length=1000))

sx <- c(0,0,3, 3.2, 0,0,0,-3:1,0,0,2,0,0,5,0,0)
ss <- as(sx, "sparseVector")
stopifnot(identical(ss,
   sparseVector(x = c(2, -1, -2, 3, 1, -3, 5, 3.2),
                i = c(15L, 10:9, 3L,12L,8L,18L, 4L), length = 20L)))
```

---

sparseVector-class *Sparse Vector Classes*

Description

Sparse Vector Classes: The virtual mother class "sparseVector" has the five actual daughter classes "dsparseVector", "isparseVector", "lsparseVector", "nsparseVector", and "zsparseVector", where we've mainly implemented methods for the d*, l* and n* ones.

Slots

length: class "numeric" - the length of the sparse vector. Note that "numeric" can be considerably larger than the maximal "integer", .Machine$integer.max, on purpose.

i: class "numeric" - the (1-based) indices of the non-zero entries. Must *not* be NA and strictly sorted increasingly.

Note that "integer" is "part of" "numeric", and can (and often will) be used for non-huge sparseVectors.

x: (for all but "nsparseVector"): the non-zero entries. This is of class "numeric" for class "dsparseVector", "logical" for class "lsparseVector", etc.

Note that "nsparseVector"s have no x slot. Further, mainly for ease of method definitions, we've defined the class union (see setClassUnion) of all sparse vector classes which *have* an x slot, as class "xsparseVector".

Methods

length signature(x = "sparseVector"): simply extracts the length slot.

show signature(object = "sparseVector"): The show method for sparse vectors prints *"structural"* zeroes as "." using the non-exported prSpVector function which allows further customization such as replacing "." by " " (blank).

Note that options(max.print) will influence how many entries of large sparse vectors are printed at all.

as.vector signature(x = "sparseVector", mode = "character") coerces sparse vectors to "regular", i.e., atomic vectors. This is the same as as(x, "vector").

as ..: see coerce below

coerce signature(from = "sparseVector", to = "sparseMatrix"), and

coerce signature(from = "sparseMatrix", to = "sparseVector"), etc: coercions to and from sparse matrices (sparseMatrix) are provided and work analogously as in standard , i.e., a vector is coerced to a 1-column matrix.

dim<- signature(x = "sparseVector", value = "integer") coerces a sparse vector to a sparse Matrix, i.e., an object inheriting from sparseMatrix, of the appropriate dimension.

head signature(x = "sparseVector"): as with 's (package **util**) head, head(x,n) (for $n >= 1$) is equivalent to x[1:n], but here can be much more efficient, see the example.

tail signature(x = "sparseVector"): analogous to head, see above.

toeplitz signature(x = "sparseVector"): as toeplitz(x), produce the $n \times n$ Toeplitz matrix from x, where n = length(x).

rep signature(x = "sparseVector") repeat x, with the same argument list (x, times, length.out, each,...) as the default method for rep().

Ops signature(e1 = "sparseVector", e2 = "*"): define arithmetic, compare and logic operations, (see Ops).

Summary signature(x = "sparseVector"): define all the Summary methods.

[signature(x = "atomicVector", i = ...): not only can you subset (aka *"index into"*) sparseVectors x[i] using sparseVectors i, but we also support efficient subsetting of traditional vectors x by logical sparse vectors (i.e., i of class "nsparseVector" or "lsparseVector").

is.na, is.finite, is.infinite (x = "sparseVector"), and

is.na, is.finite, is.infinite (x = "nsparseVector"): return logical or "nsparseVector" of the same length as x, indicating if/where x is NA (or NaN), finite or infinite, entirely analogously to the corresponding base functions.

See Also

sparseVector() for friendly construction of sparse vectors (apart from as(*, "sparseVector")).

Examples

```
getClass("sparseVector")
getClass("dsparseVector")
getClass("xsparseVector")# those with an x slot

sx <- c(0,0,3, 3.2, 0,0,0,-3:1,0,0,2,0,0,5,0,0)
(ss <- as(sx, "sparseVector"))

ix <- as.integer(round(sx))
(is <- as(ix, "sparseVector"))
## an "isparseVector" (!)

## rep() works too:
(ri <- rep(is, length.out= 25))

## Using dim<-  as in base R :
r <- ss
dim(r) <- c(4,5) # becomes a sparse Matrix:
r
## or coercion (as as.matrix() in base R):
as(ss, "Matrix")
stopifnot(all(ss == print(as(ss, "CsparseMatrix"))))

## currently has "non-structural" FALSE -- printing as ":"
(lis <- is & FALSE)
(nn <- is[is == 0]) # all "structural" FALSE

## NA-case
sN <- sx; sN[4] <- NA
(svN <- as(sN, "sparseVector"))

v <- as(c(0,0,3, 3.2, rep(0,9),-3,0,-1, rep(0,20),5,0),
        "sparseVector")
v <- rep(rep(v, 50), 5000)
set.seed(1); v[sample(v@i, 1e6)] <- 0
str(v)



system.time(for(i in 1:4) hv <- head(v, 1e6))
##   user  system elapsed
##  0.033   0.000   0.032
system.time(for(i in 1:4) h2 <- v[1:1e6])
##   user  system elapsed
##  1.317   0.000   1.319

stopifnot(identical(hv, h2),
          identical(is | FALSE, is != 0),
  validObject(svN), validObject(lis), as.logical(is.na(svN[4])),
  identical(is^2 > 0,is & TRUE),
  all(!lis), !any(lis), length(nn@i) == 0, !any(nn), all(!nn),
  sum(lis) == 0, !prod(lis), range(lis) == c(0,0))

## create and use the t(.) method:
t(x20 <- sparseVector(c(9,3:1), i=c(1:2,4,7), length=20))
```

```
(T20 <- toeplitz(x20))
stopifnot(is(T20, "symmetricMatrix"), is(T20, "sparseMatrix"),
  identical(unname(as.matrix(T20)),
                   toeplitz(as.vector(x20))))
```

---

spMatrix *Sparse Matrix Constructor From Triplet*

Description

User friendly construction of a sparse matrix (inheriting from class TsparseMatrix) from the triplet representation.

Usage

```
spMatrix(nrow, ncol, i = integer(), j = integer(), x = numeric())
```

Arguments

nrow, ncol	integers specifying the desired number of rows and columns.
i,j	integer vectors of the same length specifying the locations of the non-zero (or non-TRUE) entries of the matrix.
x	atomic vector of the same length as i and j, specifying the values of the non-zero entries.

Value

A sparse matrix in triplet form, as an object inheriting from both TsparseMatrix and generalMatrix.

The matrix M will have M[i[k], j[k]] == x[k], for $k = 1, 2, \ldots, n$, where n = length(i) and M[i, j] == 0 for all other pairs (i', j').

See Also

Matrix(*, sparse=TRUE) for the more usual constructor of such matrices; similarly, sparseMatrix which is a bit more general than spMatrix() and returns a CsparseMatrix which is often slightly more desirable. Further, bdiag and Diagonal for (block-)diagonal matrix constructors.

Consider TsparseMatrix and similar class definition help files.

Examples

```
## simple example
A <- spMatrix(10,20, i = c(1,3:8),
                     j = c(2,9,6:10),
                     x = 7 * (1:7))
A # a "dgTMatrix"
summary(A)
str(A) # note that *internally* 0-based indices (i,j) are used

L <- spMatrix(9, 30, i = rep(1:9, 3), 1:27,
              (1:27) %% 4 != 1)
```

```
L # an "lgTMatrix"

### This is a useful utility, to be used for experiments :

 rSpMatrix <- function(nrow, ncol, nnz,
                       rand.x = function(n) round(rnorm(nnz), 2))
 {
     ## Purpose: random sparse matrix
     ## ----------------------------------------------------------
     ## Arguments: (nrow,ncol): dimension
     ##          nnz  :  number of non-zero entries
     ##         rand.x:  random number generator for x slot
     ## ----------------------------------------------------------
     ## Author: Martin Maechler, Date: 14.-16. May 2007
     stopifnot((nnz <- as.integer(nnz)) >= 0,
               nrow >= 0, ncol >= 0,
               nnz <= nrow * ncol)
     spMatrix(nrow, ncol,
              i = sample(nrow, nnz, replace = TRUE),
              j = sample(ncol, nnz, replace = TRUE),
              x = rand.x(nnz))
 }

 M1 <- rSpMatrix(100000, 20, nnz = 200)
 summary(M1)
```

---

symmetricMatrix-class *Virtual Class of Symmetric Matrices in package:Matrix*

Description

The virtual class of symmetric matrices, `"symmetricMatrix"`, from the package **Matrix** contains numeric and logical, dense and sparse matrices, e.g., see the examples.

The main use is in methods (and C functions) that can deal with all symmetric matrices.

Slots

`uplo`**:** Object of class `"character"`. Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

`Dim, Dimnames`**:** The dimension (a length-2 `"integer"`) and corresponding names (or `NULL`), inherited from the `Matrix`, see there.

`factors`**:** a list of matrix factorizations, also from the `Matrix` class.

Extends

Class `"Matrix"`, directly.

Methods

There's a C function `symmetricMatrix_validity()` called by the internal validity checking functions.

See Also

isSymmetric which has efficient methods (isSymmetric-methods) for the **Matrix** classes. Classes triangularMatrix, and, e.g., dsyMatrix for numeric *dense* matrices, or lsCMatrix for a logical *sparse* matrix class.

Examples

```
showClass("symmetricMatrix")

## The names of direct subclasses:
scl <- getClass("symmetricMatrix")@subclasses
directly <- sapply(lapply(scl, slot, "by"), length) == 0
names(scl)[directly]
```

---

symmpart *Symmetric Part and Skew(symmetric) Part of a Matrix*

Description

symmpart(x) computes the symmetric part (x + t(x))/2 and skewpart(x) the skew symmetric part (x - t(x))/2 of a square matrix x, more efficiently for specific Matrix classes.

Note that x == symmpart(x) + skewpart(x) for all square matrices – apart from extraneous NA values in the RHS.

Usage

```
symmpart(x)
skewpart(x)
```

Arguments

x	a *square* matrix; either "traditional" of class "matrix", or typically, inheriting from the Matrix class.

Details

These are generic functions with several methods for different matrix classes, use e.g., showMethods(symmpart) to see them.

If the row and column names differ, the result will use the column names unless they are (partly) NULL where the row names are non-NULL (see also the examples).

Value

symmpart() returns a symmetric matrix, inheriting from symmetricMatrix iff x inherited from Matrix.

skewpart() returns a skew-symmetric matrix, typically of the same class as x (or the closest "general" one, see generalMatrix).

See Also

isSymmetric.

Examples

```
m <- Matrix(1:4, 2,2)
symmpart(m)
skewpart(m)

stopifnot(all(m == symmpart(m) + skewpart(m)))

dn <- dimnames(m) <- list(row = c("r1", "r2"), col = c("var.1", "var.2"))
stopifnot(all(m == symmpart(m) + skewpart(m)))
colnames(m) <- NULL
stopifnot(all(m == symmpart(m) + skewpart(m)))
dimnames(m) <- unname(dn)
stopifnot(all(m == symmpart(m) + skewpart(m)))


## investigate the current methods:
showMethods(skewpart, include = TRUE)
```

---

triangularMatrix-class

Virtual Class of Triangular Matrices in package:Matrix

Description

The virtual class of triangular matrices,"triangularMatrix", from the package **Matrix** contains numeric and logical, dense and sparse matrices, e.g., see the examples.

The main use will be in methods (and C functions) that can deal with all triangular matrices.

Slots

uplo: String (of class "character"). Must be either "U", for upper triangular, and "L", for lower triangular.

diag: String (of class "character"). Must be either "U", for unit triangular (diagonal is all ones), or "N" for non-unit. The diagonal elements are not accessed internally when diag is "U". For denseMatrix classes, they need to be allocated though, i.e., the length of the x slot does not depend on diag.

Dim, Dimnames: The dimension (a length-2 "integer") and corresponding names (or NULL), inherited from the Matrix, see there.

Extends

Class "Matrix", directly.

Methods

There's a C function triangularMatrix_validity() called by the internal validity checking functions.

Currently, Schur, isSymmetric and as() (i.e. coerce) have methods with triangularMatrix in their signature.

See Also

isTriangular() for testing any matrix for triangularity; classes symmetricMatrix, and, e.g., dtrMatrix for numeric *dense* matrices, or ltCMatrix for a logical *sparse* matrix subclass of "triangularMatrix".

Examples

```
showClass("triangularMatrix")

## The names of direct subclasses:
scl <- getClass("triangularMatrix")@subclasses
directly <- sapply(lapply(scl, slot, "by"), length) == 0
names(scl)[directly]

(m <- matrix(c(5,1,0,3), 2))
as(m, "triangularMatrix")
```

TsparseMatrix-class *Class "TsparseMatrix" of Sparse Matrices in Triplet Form*

Description

The "TsparseMatrix" class is the virtual class of all sparse matrices coded in triplet form. Since it is a virtual class, no objects may be created from it. See showClass("TsparseMatrix") for its subclasses.

Slots

Dim, Dimnames: from the "Matrix" class,

i: Object of class "integer" - the row indices of non-zero entries *in 0-base*, i.e., must be in 0:(nrow(.)-1).

j: Object of class "integer" - the column indices of non-zero entries. Must be the same length as slot i and *0-based* as well, i.e., in 0:(ncol(.)-1). For numeric Tsparse matrices, (i,j) pairs can occur more than once, see dgTMatrix.

Extends

Class "sparseMatrix", directly. Class "Matrix", by class "sparseMatrix".

Methods

Extraction ("[") methods, see [-methods.

Note

Most operations with sparse matrices are performed using the compressed, column-oriented or CsparseMatrix representation. The triplet representation is convenient for creating a sparse matrix or for reading and writing such matrices. Once it is created, however, the matrix is generally coerced to a CsparseMatrix for further operations.

Note that all new(.), spMatrix and sparseMatrix(*, giveCsparse=FALSE) constructors for "TsparseMatrix" classes implicitly add x_k's that belong to identical (i_k, j_k) pairs, see, the example below, or also "dgTMatrix".

For convenience, methods for some operations such as %*% and crossprod are defined for TsparseMatrix objects. These methods simply coerce the TsparseMatrix object to a CsparseMatrix object then perform the operation.

See Also

its superclass, sparseMatrix, and the dgTMatrix class, for the links to other classes.

Examples

```
showClass("TsparseMatrix")
## or just the subclasses names
names(getClass("TsparseMatrix")@subclasses)

T3 <- spMatrix(3,4, i=c(1,3:1), j=c(2,4:2), x=1:4)
T3 # only 3 non-zero entries, 5 = 1+4 !
```

---

unpack *Representation of Packed and Unpacked (Dense) Matrices*

Description

"Packed" matrix storage here applies to dense matrices (denseMatrix) only, and there is available only for symmetric (symmetricMatrix) or triangular (triangularMatrix) matrices, where only one triangle of the matrix needs to be stored.

unpack() unpacks "packed" matrices, where
pack() produces "packed" matrices.

Usage

```
pack(x, ...)
## S4 method for signature matrix
pack(x, symmetric = NA, upperTri = NA, ...)

unpack(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	**for** unpack(): a matrix stored in packed form, e.g., of class "d?pMatrix" where "?" is "t" for triangular or "s" for symmetric. **for** pack(): a (symmetric or triangular) matrix stored in full storage.
symmetric	logical (including NA) for optionally specifying if x is symmetric (or rather triangular).
upperTri	(for the triangular case only) logical (incl. NA) indicating if x is upper (or lower) triangular.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

These are generic functions with special methods for different types of packed (or non-packed) symmetric or triangular dense matrices. Use `showMethods("unpack")` to list the methods for `unpack()`, and similarly for `pack()`.

Value

for `unpack()`**:** A `Matrix` object containing the full-storage representation of `x`.

for `pack()`**:** A packed `Matrix` (i.e. of class `"..pMatrix"`) representation of `x`.

Examples

```
showMethods("unpack")
(cp4 <- chol(Hilbert(4))) # is triangular
tp4 <- as(cp4,"dtpMatrix")# [t]riangular [p]acked
str(tp4)
(unpack(tp4))
stopifnot(identical(tp4, pack(unpack(tp4))))

(s <- crossprod(matrix(sample(15), 5,3))) # traditional symmetric matrix
(sp <- pack(s))
mt <- as.matrix(tt <- tril(s))
(pt <- pack(mt))
stopifnot(identical(pt, pack(tt)),
  dim(s ) == dim(sp), all(s  == sp),
  dim(mt) == dim(pt), all(mt == pt), all(mt == tt))
showMethods("pack")
```

`Unused-classes` *Virtual Classes Not Yet Really Implemented and Used*

Description

`iMatrix` is the virtual class of all **i**nteger (S4) matrices. It extends the `Matrix` class directly.

`zMatrix` is the virtual class of all `complex` (S4) matrices. It extends the `Matrix` class directly.

Examples

```
showClass("iMatrix")
showClass("zMatrix")
```

updown *Up- and Down-Dating a Cholesky Decomposition*

Description

Compute the up- or down-dated Cholesky decomposition

Usage

```
updown(update, C, L)
```

Arguments

update	logical (TRUE or FALSE) or "+" or "-" indicating if an up- or a down-date is to be computed.
C	any object, coercable to a sparse matrix (i.e., of subclass of sparseMatrix).
L	a Cholesky factor, specifically, of class "CHMfactor".

Value

an updated Cholesky factor, of the same dimension as L. Typically of class "dCHMsimpl" (a sub class of "CHMfactor").

Methods

```
signature(update = "character", C = "mMatrix", L = "CHMfactor") ..
signature(update = "logical", C = "mMatrix", L = "CHMfactor") ..
```

Author(s)

Contributed by Nicholas Nagle, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, USA

References

CHOLMOD manual, currently beginning of chapter~18. ...

See Also

Cholesky,

Examples

```
dn <- list(LETTERS[1:3], letters[1:5])
## pointer vectors can be used, and the (i,x) slots are sorted if necessary:
m <- sparseMatrix(i = c(3,1, 3:2, 2:1), p= c(0:2, 4,4,6), x = 1:6, dimnames = dn)
cA <- Cholesky(A <- crossprod(m) + Diagonal(5))
166 * as(cA,"Matrix") ^ 2
uc1 <- updown("+",   Diagonal(5), cA)
## Hmm: this loses positive definiteness:
uc2 <- updown("-", 2*Diagonal(5), cA)
image(show(as(cA, "Matrix")))
image(show(c2 <- as(uc2,"Matrix")))# severely negative entries
##--> Warning
```

USCounties *USCounties Contiguity Matrix*

Description

This matrix represents the contiguities of 3111 US counties using the Queen criterion of at least a single shared boundary point. The representation is as a row standardised spatial weights matrix transformed to a symmetric matrix (see Ord (1975), p. 125).

Usage

```
data(UScounties)
```

Format

A 3111^2 symmetric sparse matrix of class dsCMatrix with 9101 non-zero entries.

Details

The data were read into using read.gal, and row-standardised and transformed to symmetry using nb2listw and similar.listw. This spatial weights object was converted to class dsCMatrix using as_dsTMatrix_listw and coercion.

Source

The data were retrieved from http://sal.uiuc.edu/weights/zips/usc.zip, files "usc.txt" and "usc_q.GAL", with permission for use and distribution from Luc Anselin.

References

Ord, J. K. (1975) Estimation methods for models of spatial interaction; *Journal of the American Statistical Association* **70**, 120–126.

Examples

```
data(UScounties)
(n <- ncol(UScounties))
IM <- .symDiagonal(n)
nn <- 50
set.seed(1)
rho <- runif(nn, 0, 1)
system.time(MJ <- sapply(rho, function(x)
determinant(IM - x * UScounties, logarithm = TRUE)$modulus))

## can be done faster, by update()ing the Cholesky factor:
nWC <- -UScounties
C1 <- Cholesky(nWC, Imult = 2)
system.time(MJ1 <- n * log(rho) +
            sapply(rho, function(x)
                   2 * c(determinant(update(C1, nWC, 1/x))$modulus)))
all.equal(MJ, MJ1)
```

```
C2 <- Cholesky(nWC, super = TRUE, Imult = 2)
system.time(MJ2 <- n * log(rho) +
            sapply(rho, function(x)
                   2 * c(determinant(update(C2, nWC, 1/x))$modulus)))
all.equal(MJ, MJ2)
system.time(MJ3 <- n * log(rho) + Matrix:::ldetL2up(C1, nWC, 1/rho))
stopifnot(all.equal(MJ, MJ3))
system.time(MJ4 <- n * log(rho) + Matrix:::ldetL2up(C2, nWC, 1/rho))
stopifnot(all.equal(MJ, MJ4))
```

`[-methods` *Methods for "[": Extraction or Subsetting in Package 'Matrix'*

Description

Methods for `"["`, i.e., extraction or subsetting mostly of matrices, in package **Matrix**.

Methods

There are more than these:

x = "Matrix", i = "missing", j = "missing", drop= "ANY" ...

x = "Matrix", i = "numeric", j = "missing", drop= "missing" ...

x = "Matrix", i = "missing", j = "numeric", drop= "missing" ...

x = "dsparseMatrix", i = "missing", j = "numeric", drop= "logical" ...

x = "dsparseMatrix", i = "numeric", j = "missing", drop= "logical" ...

x = "dsparseMatrix", i = "numeric", j = "numeric", drop= "logical" ...

See Also

`[<--methods` for sub*assign*ment to `"Matrix"` objects. `Extract` about the standard extraction.

Examples

```
str(m <- Matrix(round(rnorm(7*4),2), nrow = 7))
stopifnot(identical(m, m[]))
m[2, 3]   # simple number
m[2, 3:4] # simple numeric of length 2
m[2, 3:4, drop=FALSE] # sub matrix of class dgeMatrix
## rows or columns only:
m[1,]     # first row, as simple numeric vector
m[,1:2]   # sub matrix of first two columns

showMethods("[", inherited = FALSE)
```

[<--methods *Methods for "[<-" - Assigning to Subsets for 'Matrix'*

Description

Methods for "[<-", i.e., extraction or subsetting mostly of matrices, in package **Matrix**.

Note: Contrary to standard matrix assignment in base , in x[..] <- val it is typically an **error** (see stop) when the type or class of val would require the class of x to be changed, e.g., when x is logical, say "lsparseMatrix", and val is numeric. In other cases, e.g., when x is a "nsparseMatrix" and val is not TRUE or FALSE, a warning is signalled, and val is "interpreted" as logical, and (logical) NA is interpreted as TRUE.

Methods

There are *many many* more than these:

x = "Matrix", i = "missing", j = "missing", value= "ANY" is currently a simple fallback method implementation which ensures "readable" error messages.

x = "Matrix", i = "ANY", j = "ANY", value= "ANY" currently gives an error

x = "denseMatrix", i = "index", j = "missing", value= "numeric" ...

x = "denseMatrix", i = "index", j = "index", value= "numeric" ...

x = "denseMatrix", i = "missing", j = "index", value= "numeric" ...

See Also

[-methods for subsetting "Matrix" objects; the index class; Extract about the standard subset assignment (and extraction).

Examples

```
set.seed(101)
(a <- m <- Matrix(round(rnorm(7*4),2), nrow = 7))

a[] <- 2.2 # <<- replaces **every** entry
a
## as do these:
a[,] <- 3 ; a[TRUE,] <- 4

m[2, 3]  <- 3.14 # simple number
m[3, 3:4]<- 3:4  # simple numeric of length 2

## sub matrix assignment:
m[-(4:7), 3:4] <- cbind(1,2:4) #-> upper right corner of m
m[3:5, 2:3] <- 0
m[6:7, 1:2] <- Diagonal(2)
m

## rows or columns only:
m[1,] <- 10
m[,2] <- 1:7
m[-(1:6), ] <- 3:0 # not the first 6 rows, i.e. only the 7th
as(m, "sparseMatrix")
```

Chapter 18

The boot package

---

abc.ci *Nonparametric ABC Confidence Intervals*

Description

Calculate equi-tailed two-sided nonparametric approximate bootstrap confidence intervals for a parameter, given a set of data and an estimator of the parameter, using numerical differentiation.

Usage

```
abc.ci(data, statistic, index=1, strata=rep(1, n), conf=0.95,
       eps=0.001/n, ...)
```

Arguments

data	A data set expressed as a vector, matrix or data frame.
statistic	A function which returns the statistic of interest. The function must take at least 2 arguments; the first argument should be the data and the second a vector of weights. The weights passed to statistic will be normalized to sum to 1 within each stratum. Any other arguments should be passed to abc.ci as part of the ...{} argument.
index	If statistic returns a vector of length greater than 1, then this indicates the position of the variable of interest within that vector.
strata	A factor or numerical vector indicating to which sample each observation belongs in multiple sample problems. The default is the one-sample case.
conf	A scalar or vector containing the confidence level(s) of the required interval(s).
eps	The value of epsilon to be used for the numerical differentiation.
...	Any other arguments for statistic. These will be passed unchanged to statistic each time it is called within abc.ci.

Details

This function is based on the function abcnon written by R. Tibshirani. A listing of the original function is available in DiCiccio and Efron (1996). The function uses numerical differentiation for the first and second derivatives of the statistic and then uses these values to approximate the bootstrap BCa intervals. The total number of evaluations of the statistic is 2*n+2+2*length(conf) where n is the number of data points (plus calculation of the original value of the statistic). The function works for the multiple sample case without the need to rewrite the statistic in an artificial form since the stratified normalization is done internally by the function.

Value

A length(conf) by 3 matrix where each row contains the confidence level followed by the lower and upper end-points of the ABC interval at that level.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*, Chapter 5. Cambridge University Press.

DiCiccio, T. J. and Efron B. (1992) More accurate confidence intervals in exponential families. *Biometrika*, **79**, 231–245.

DiCiccio, T. J. and Efron B. (1996) Bootstrap confidence intervals (with Discussion). *Statistical Science*, **11**, 189–228.

See Also

boot.ci

Examples

```
# 90% and 95% confidence intervals for the correlation
# coefficient between the columns of the bigcity data

abc.ci(bigcity, corr, conf=c(0.90,0.95))

# A 95% confidence interval for the difference between the means of
# the last two samples in gravity
mean.diff <- function(y, w)
{    gp1 <- 1:table(as.numeric(y$series))[1]
     sum(y[gp1, 1] * w[gp1]) - sum(y[-gp1, 1] * w[-gp1])
}
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[, 2]) >= 7, ]
abc.ci(grav1, mean.diff, strata = grav1$series)
```

---

acme *Monthly Excess Returns*

Description

The acme data frame has 60 rows and 3 columns.

The excess return for the Acme Cleveland Corporation are recorded along with those for all stocks listed on the New York and American Stock Exchanges were recorded over a five year period. These excess returns are relative to the return on a risk-less investment such a U.S. Treasury bills.

Usage

```
acme
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`month` A character string representing the month of the observation.

`market` The excess return of the market as a whole.

`acme` The excess return for the Acme Cleveland Corporation.

Source

The data were obtained from

Simonoff, J.S. and Tsai, C.-L. (1994) Use of modified profile likelihood for improved tests of constancy of variance in regression. *Applied Statistics*, **43**, 353–370.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

---

aids *Delay in AIDS Reporting in England and Wales*

Description

The `aids` data frame has 570 rows and 6 columns.

Although all cases of AIDS in England and Wales must be reported to the Communicable Disease Surveillance Centre, there is often a considerable delay between the time of diagnosis and the time that it is reported. In estimating the prevalence of AIDS, account must be taken of the unknown number of cases which have been diagnosed but not reported. The data set here records the reported cases of AIDS diagnosed from July 1983 and until the end of 1992. The data are cross-classified by the date of diagnosis and the time delay in the reporting of the cases.

Usage

```
aids
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`year` The year of the diagnosis.

`quarter` The quarter of the year in which diagnosis was made.

`delay` The time delay (in months) between diagnosis and reporting. 0 means that the case was reported within one month. Longer delays are grouped in 3 month intervals and the value of `delay` is the midpoint of the interval (therefore a value of `2` indicates that reporting was delayed for between 1 and 3 months).

`dud` An indicator of censoring. These are categories for which full information is not yet available and the number recorded is a lower bound only.

`time` The time interval of the diagnosis. That is the number of quarters from July 1983 until the end of the quarter in which these cases were diagnosed.

`y` The number of AIDS cases reported.

Source

The data were obtained from

De Angelis, D. and Gilks, W.R. (1994) Estimating acquired immune deficiency syndrome accounting for reporting delay. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, A*, **157**, 31–40.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`aircondit` *Failures of Air-conditioning Equipment*

Description

Proschan (1963) reported on the times between failures of the air-conditioning equipment in 10 Boeing 720 aircraft. The `aircondit` data frame contains the intervals for the ninth aircraft while `aircondit7` contains those for the seventh aircraft.

Both data frames have just one column. Note that the data have been sorted into increasing order.

Usage

```
aircondit
```

Format

The data frames contain the following column:

`hours` The time interval in hours between successive failures of the air-conditioning equipment

Source

The data were taken from

Cox, D.R. and Snell, E.J. (1981) *Applied Statistics: Principles and Examples*. Chapman and Hall.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Proschan, F. (1963) Theoretical explanation of observed decreasing failure rate. *Technometrics*, **5**, 375-383.

amis *Car Speeding and Warning Signs*

Description

The amis data frame has 8437 rows and 4 columns.

In a study into the effect that warning signs have on speeding patterns, Cambridgeshire County Council considered 14 pairs of locations. The locations were paired to account for factors such as traffic volume and type of road. One site in each pair had a sign erected warning of the dangers of speeding and asking drivers to slow down. No action was taken at the second site. Three sets of measurements were taken at each site. Each set of measurements was nominally of the speeds of 100 cars but not all sites have exactly 100 measurements. These speed measurements were taken before the erection of the sign, shortly after the erection of the sign, and again after the sign had been in place for some time.

Usage

```
amis
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

speed Speeds of cars (in miles per hour).

period A numeric column indicating the time that the reading was taken. A value of 1 indicates a reading taken before the sign was erected, a 2 indicates a reading taken shortly after erection of the sign and a 3 indicates a reading taken after the sign had been in place for some time.

warning A numeric column indicating whether the location of the reading was chosen to have a warning sign erected. A value of 1 indicates presence of a sign and a value of 2 indicates that no sign was erected.

pair A numeric column giving the pair number at which the reading was taken. Pairs were numbered from 1 to 14.

Source

The data were kindly made available by Mr. Graham Amis, Cambridgeshire County Council, U.K.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

aml *Remission Times for Acute Myelogenous Leukaemia*

Description

The aml data frame has 23 rows and 3 columns.

A clinical trial to evaluate the efficacy of maintenance chemotherapy for acute myelogenous leukaemia was conducted by Embury et al. (1977) at Stanford University. After reaching a stage of remission through treatment by chemotherapy, patients were randomized into two groups. The first group received maintenance chemotherapy and the second group did not. The aim of the study was to see if maintenance chemotherapy increased the length of the remission. The data here formed a preliminary analysis which was conducted in October 1974.

Usage

```
aml
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

time The length of the complete remission (in weeks).

cens An indicator of right censoring. 1 indicates that the patient had a relapse and so time is the length of the remission. 0 indicates that the patient had left the study or was still in remission in October 1974, that is the length of remission is right-censored.

group The group into which the patient was randomized. Group 1 received maintenance chemotherapy, group 2 did not.

Note

Package **survival** also has a dataset aml. It is the same data with different names and with group replaced by a factor x.

Source

The data were obtained from

Miller, R.G. (1981) *Survival Analysis*. John Wiley.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Embury, S.H, Elias, L., Heller, P.H., Hood, C.E., Greenberg, P.L. and Schrier, S.L. (1977) Remission maintenance therapy in acute myelogenous leukaemia. *Western Journal of Medicine*, **126**, 267-272.

`beaver` *Beaver Body Temperature Data*

Description

The `beaver` data frame has 100 rows and 4 columns. It is a multivariate time series of class `"ts"` and also inherits from class `"data.frame"`.

This data set is part of a long study into body temperature regulation in beavers. Four adult female beavers were live-trapped and had a temperature-sensitive radio transmitter surgically implanted. Readings were taken every 10 minutes. The location of the beaver was also recorded and her activity level was dichotomized by whether she was in the retreat or outside of it since high-intensity activities only occur outside of the retreat.

The data in this data frame are those readings for one of the beavers on a day in autumn.

Usage

```
beaver
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`day` The day number. The data includes only data from day 307 and early 308.

`time` The time of day formatted as hour-minute.

`temp` The body temperature in degrees Celsius.

`activ` The dichotomized activity indicator. `1` indicates that the beaver is outside of the retreat and therefore engaged in high-intensity activity.

Source

The data were obtained from

Reynolds, P.S. (1994) Time-series analyses of beaver body temperatures. In *Case Studies in Biometry*. N. Lange, L. Ryan, L. Billard, D. Brillinger, L. Conquest and J. Greenhouse (editors), 211–228. John Wiley.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

bigcity *Population of U.S. Cities*

Description

The bigcity data frame has 49 rows and 2 columns.

The city data frame has 10 rows and 2 columns.

The measurements are the population (in 1000's) of 49 U.S. cities in 1920 and 1930. The 49 cities are a random sample taken from the 196 largest cities in 1920. The city data frame consists of the first 10 observations in bigcity.

Usage

```
bigcity
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

u The 1920 population.

x The 1930 population.

Source

The data were obtained from

Cochran, W.G. (1977) *Sampling Techniques*. Third edition. John Wiley

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

boot *Bootstrap Resampling*

Description

Generate R bootstrap replicates of a statistic applied to data. Both parametric and nonparametric resampling are possible. For the nonparametric bootstrap, possible resampling methods are the ordinary bootstrap, the balanced bootstrap, antithetic resampling, and permutation. For nonparametric multi-sample problems stratified resampling is used: this is specified by including a vector of strata in the call to boot. Importance resampling weights may be specified.

Usage

```
boot(data, statistic, R, sim = "ordinary", stype = c("i", "f", "w"),
     strata = rep(1,n), L = NULL, m = 0, weights = NULL,
     ran.gen = function(d, p) d, mle = NULL, simple = FALSE, ...,
     parallel = c("no", "multicore", "snow"),
     ncpus = getOption("boot.ncpus", 1L), cl = NULL)
```

Arguments

data	The data as a vector, matrix or data frame. If it is a matrix or data frame then each row is considered as one multivariate observation.
statistic	A function which when applied to data returns a vector containing the statistic(s) of interest. When sim = "parametric", the first argument to statistic must be the data. For each replicate a simulated dataset returned by ran.gen will be passed. In all other cases statistic must take at least two arguments. The first argument passed will always be the original data. The second will be a vector of indices, frequencies or weights which define the bootstrap sample. Further, if predictions are required, then a third argument is required which would be a vector of the random indices used to generate the bootstrap predictions. Any further arguments can be passed to statistic through the ... argument.
R	The number of bootstrap replicates. Usually this will be a single positive integer. For importance resampling, some resamples may use one set of weights and others use a different set of weights. In this case R would be a vector of integers where each component gives the number of resamples from each of the rows of weights.
sim	A character string indicating the type of simulation required. Possible values are "ordinary" (the default), "parametric", "balanced", "permutation", or "antithetic". Importance resampling is specified by including importance weights; the type of importance resampling must still be specified but may only be "ordinary" or "balanced" in this case.
stype	A character string indicating what the second argument of statistic represents. Possible values of stype are "i" (indices - the default), "f" (frequencies), or "w" (weights). Not used for sim = "parametric".
strata	An integer vector or factor specifying the strata for multi-sample problems. This may be specified for any simulation, but is ignored when sim = "parametric". When strata is supplied for a nonparametric bootstrap, the simulations are done within the specified strata.
L	Vector of influence values evaluated at the observations. This is used only when sim is "antithetic". If not supplied, they are calculated through a call to empinf. This will use the infinitesimal jackknife provided that stype is "w", otherwise the usual jackknife is used.
m	The number of predictions which are to be made at each bootstrap replicate. This is most useful for (generalized) linear models. This can only be used when sim is "ordinary". m will usually be a single integer but, if there are strata, it may be a vector with length equal to the number of strata, specifying how many of the errors for prediction should come from each strata. The actual predictions should be returned as the final part of the output of statistic, which should also take an argument giving the vector of indices of the errors to be used for the predictions.
weights	Vector or matrix of importance weights. If a vector then it should have as many elements as there are observations in data. When simulation from more than one set of weights is required, weights should be a matrix where each row of the matrix is one set of importance weights. If weights is a matrix then R must be a vector of length nrow(weights). This parameter is ignored if sim is not "ordinary" or "balanced".
ran.gen	This function is used only when sim = "parametric" when it describes how random values are to be generated. It should be a function of two arguments.

The first argument should be the observed data and the second argument consists of any other information needed (e.g. parameter estimates). The second argument may be a list, allowing any number of items to be passed to `ran.gen`. The returned value should be a simulated data set of the same form as the observed data which will be passed to `statistic` to get a bootstrap replicate. It is important that the returned value be of the same shape and type as the original dataset. If `ran.gen` is not specified, the default is a function which returns the original `data` in which case all simulation should be included as part of `statistic`. Use of `sim = "parametric"` with a suitable `ran.gen` allows the user to implement any types of nonparametric resampling which are not supported directly.

`mle` The second argument to be passed to `ran.gen`. Typically these will be maximum likelihood estimates of the parameters. For efficiency `mle` is often a list containing all of the objects needed by `ran.gen` which can be calculated using the original data set only.

`simple` logical, only allowed to be `TRUE` for `sim = "ordinary", stype = "i", n = 0` (otherwise ignored with a warning). By default a `n` by `R` index array is created: this can be large and if `simple = TRUE` this is avoided by sampling separately for each replication, which is slower but uses less memory.

`...` Other named arguments for `statistic` which are passed unchanged each time it is called. Any such arguments to `statistic` should follow the arguments which `statistic` is required to have for the simulation. Beware of partial matching to arguments of `boot` listed above, and that arguments named `X` and `FUN` cause conflicts in some versions of **boot** (but not this one).

`parallel` The type of parallel operation to be used (if any). If missing, the default is taken from the option `"boot.parallel"` (and if that is not set, `"no"`).

`ncpus` integer: number of processes to be used in parallel operation: typically one would chose this to the number of available CPUs.

`cl` An optional **parallel** or **snow** cluster for use if `parallel = "snow"`. If not supplied, a cluster on the local machine is created for the duration of the `boot` call.

Details

The statistic to be bootstrapped can be as simple or complicated as desired as long as its arguments correspond to the dataset and (for a nonparametric bootstrap) a vector of indices, frequencies or weights. `statistic` is treated as a black box by the `boot` function and is not checked to ensure that these conditions are met.

The first order balanced bootstrap is described in Davison, Hinkley and Schechtman (1986). The antithetic bootstrap is described by Hall (1989) and is experimental, particularly when used with strata. The other non-parametric simulation types are the ordinary bootstrap (possibly with unequal probabilities), and permutation which returns random permutations of cases. All of these methods work independently within strata if that argument is supplied.

For the parametric bootstrap it is necessary for the user to specify how the resampling is to be conducted. The best way of accomplishing this is to specify the function `ran.gen` which will return a simulated data set from the observed data set and a set of parameter estimates specified in `mle`.

Value

The returned value is an object of class `"boot"`, containing the following components:

`t0` The observed value of `statistic` applied to `data`.

t	A matrix with sum(R) rows each of which is a bootstrap replicate of the result of calling statistic.
R	The value of R as passed to boot.
data	The data as passed to boot.
seed	The value of .Random.seed when boot started work.
statistic	The function statistic as passed to boot.
sim	Simulation type used.
stype	Statistic type as passed to boot.
call	The original call to boot.
strata	The strata used. This is the vector passed to boot, if it was supplied or a vector of ones if there were no strata. It is not returned if sim is "parametric".
weights	The importance sampling weights as passed to boot or the empirical distribution function weights if no importance sampling weights were specified. It is omitted if sim is not one of "ordinary" or "balanced".
pred.i	If predictions are required (m > 0) this is the matrix of indices at which predictions were calculated as they were passed to statistic. Omitted if m is 0 or sim is not "ordinary".
L	The influence values used when sim is "antithetic". If no such values were specified and stype is not "w" then L is returned as consecutive integers corresponding to the assumption that data is ordered by influence values. This component is omitted when sim is not "antithetic".
ran.gen	The random generator function used if sim is "parametric". This component is omitted for any other value of sim.
mle	The parameter estimates passed to boot when sim is "parametric". It is omitted for all other values of sim.

There are c, plot and print methods for this class.

Parallel operation

When parallel = "multicore" is used (not available on Windows), each worker process inherits the environment of the current session, including the workspace and the loaded namespaces and attached packages (but not the random number seed: see below).

More work is needed when parallel = "snow" is used: the worker processes are newly created processes, and statistic needs to arrange to set up the environment it needs: often a good way to do that is to make use of lexical scoping since when statistic is sent to the worker processes its enclosing environment is also sent. (E.g. see the example for jack.after.boot where ancillary functions are nested inside the statistic function.) parallel = "snow" is primarily intended to be used on multi-core Windows machine where parallel = "multicore" is not available.

For most of the boot methods the resampling is done in the master process, but not if simple = TRUE nor sim = "parametric". In those cases (or where statistic itself uses random numbers), more care is needed if the results need to be reproducible. Resampling is done in the worker processes by censboot(sim = "wierd") and by most of the schemes in tsboot (the exceptions being sim == "fixed" and sim == "geom" with the default ran.gen).

Where random-number generation is done in the worker processes, the default behaviour is that each worker chooses a separate seed, non-reproducibly. However, with parallel = "multicore" or parallel = "snow" using the default cluster, a second approach

is used if `RNGkind("LEcuyer-CMRG")` has been selected. In that approach each worker gets a different subsequence of the RNG stream based on the seed at the time the worker is spawned and so the results will be reproducible if `ncpus` is unchanged, and for `parallel = "multicore"` if `parallel::mc.reset.stream()` is called: see the examples for `mclapply`.

Note that loading the **parallel** namespace may change the random seed, so for maximum reproducibility this should be done before calling this function.

References

There are many references explaining the bootstrap and its variations. Among them are :

Booth, J.G., Hall, P. and Wood, A.T.A. (1993) Balanced importance resampling for the bootstrap. *Annals of Statistics*, **21**, 286–298.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Davison, A.C., Hinkley, D.V. and Schechtman, E. (1986) Efficient bootstrap simulation. *Biometrika*, **73**, 555–566.

Efron, B. and Tibshirani, R. (1993) *An Introduction to the Bootstrap*. Chapman & Hall.

Gleason, J.R. (1988) Algorithms for balanced bootstrap simulations. *American Statistician*, **42**, 263–266.

Hall, P. (1989) Antithetic resampling for the bootstrap. *Biometrika*, **73**, 713–724.

Hinkley, D.V. (1988) Bootstrap methods (with Discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, **50**, 312–337, 355–370.

Hinkley, D.V. and Shi, S. (1989) Importance sampling and the nested bootstrap. *Biometrika*, **76**, 435–446.

Johns M.V. (1988) Importance sampling for bootstrap confidence intervals. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **83**, 709–714.

Noreen, E.W. (1989) *Computer Intensive Methods for Testing Hypotheses*. John Wiley & Sons.

See Also

`boot.array`, `boot.ci`, `censboot`, `empinf`, `jack.after.boot`, `tilt.boot`, `tsboot`.

Examples

```
# Usual bootstrap of the ratio of means using the city data
ratio <- function(d, w) sum(d$x * w)/sum(d$u * w)
boot(city, ratio, R = 999, stype = "w")


# Stratified resampling for the difference of means.  In this
# example we will look at the difference of means between the final
# two series in the gravity data.
diff.means <- function(d, f)
{    n <- nrow(d)
     gp1 <- 1:table(as.numeric(d$series))[1]
     m1 <- sum(d[gp1,1] * f[gp1])/sum(f[gp1])
     m2 <- sum(d[-gp1,1] * f[-gp1])/sum(f[-gp1])
     ss1 <- sum(d[gp1,1]^2 * f[gp1]) - (m1 *  m1 * sum(f[gp1]))
     ss2 <- sum(d[-gp1,1]^2 * f[-gp1]) - (m2 *  m2 * sum(f[-gp1]))
     c(m1 - m2, (ss1 + ss2)/(sum(f) - 2))
}
```

```
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[,2]) >= 7,]
boot(grav1, diff.means, R = 999, stype = "f", strata = grav1[,2])

# In this example we show the use of boot in a prediction from
# regression based on the nuclear data.  This example is taken
# from Example 6.8 of Davison and Hinkley (1997).  Notice also
# that two extra arguments to statistic are passed through boot.
nuke <- nuclear[, c(1, 2, 5, 7, 8, 10, 11)]
nuke.lm <- glm(log(cost) ~ date+log(cap)+ne+ct+log(cum.n)+pt, data = nuke)
nuke.diag <- glm.diag(nuke.lm)
nuke.res <- nuke.diag$res * nuke.diag$sd
nuke.res <- nuke.res - mean(nuke.res)

# We set up a new data frame with the data, the standardized
# residuals and the fitted values for use in the bootstrap.
nuke.data <- data.frame(nuke, resid = nuke.res, fit = fitted(nuke.lm))

# Now we want a prediction of plant number 32 but at date 73.00
new.data <- data.frame(cost = 1, date = 73.00, cap = 886, ne = 0,
                       ct = 0, cum.n = 11, pt = 1)
new.fit <- predict(nuke.lm, new.data)

nuke.fun <- function(dat, inds, i.pred, fit.pred, x.pred)
{
     lm.b <- glm(fit+resid[inds] ~ date+log(cap)+ne+ct+log(cum.n)+pt,
                 data = dat)
     pred.b <- predict(lm.b, x.pred)
     c(coef(lm.b), pred.b - (fit.pred + dat$resid[i.pred]))
}

nuke.boot <- boot(nuke.data, nuke.fun, R = 999, m = 1,
                  fit.pred = new.fit, x.pred = new.data)
# The bootstrap prediction squared error would then be found by
mean(nuke.boot$t[, 8]^2)
# Basic bootstrap prediction limits would be
new.fit - sort(nuke.boot$t[, 8])[c(975, 25)]


# Finally a parametric bootstrap.  For this example we shall look
# at the air-conditioning data.  In this example our aim is to test
# the hypothesis that the true value of the index is 1 (i.e. that
# the data come from an exponential distribution) against the
# alternative that the data come from a gamma distribution with
# index not equal to 1.
air.fun <- function(data) {
     ybar <- mean(data$hours)
     para <- c(log(ybar), mean(log(data$hours)))
     ll <- function(k) {
          if (k <= 0) 1e200 else lgamma(k)-k*(log(k)-1-para[1]+para[2])
     }
     khat <- nlm(ll, ybar^2/var(data$hours))$estimate
     c(ybar, khat)
}

air.rg <- function(data, mle) {
    # Function to generate random exponential variates.
    # mle will contain the mean of the original data
```

```
    out <- data
    out$hours <- rexp(nrow(out), 1/mle)
    out
}

air.boot <- boot(aircondit, air.fun, R = 999, sim = "parametric",
                 ran.gen = air.rg, mle = mean(aircondit$hours))

# The bootstrap p-value can then be approximated by
sum(abs(air.boot$t[,2]-1) > abs(air.boot$t0[2]-1))/(1+air.boot$R)
```

`boot.array` *Bootstrap Resampling Arrays*

Description

This function takes a bootstrap object calculated by one of the functions `boot`, `censboot`, or `tilt.boot` and returns the frequency (or index) array for the bootstrap resamples.

Usage

```
boot.array(boot.out, indices)
```

Arguments

`boot.out`	An object of class `"boot"` returned by one of the generation functions for such an object.
`indices`	A logical argument which specifies whether to return the frequency array or the raw index array. The default is `indices=FALSE` unless `boot.out` was created by `tsboot` in which case the default is `indices=TRUE`.

Details

The process by which the original index array was generated is repeated with the same value of `.Random.seed`. If the frequency array is required then `freq.array` is called to convert the index array to a frequency array.

A resampling array can only be returned when such a concept makes sense. In particular it cannot be found for any parametric or model-based resampling schemes. Hence for objects generated by `censboot` the only resampling scheme for which such an array can be found is ordinary case resampling. Similarly if `boot.out$sim` is `"parametric"` in the case of `boot` or `"model"` in the case of `tsboot` the array cannot be found. Note also that for post-blackened bootstraps from `tsboot` the indices found will relate to those prior to any post-blackening and so will not be useful.

Frequency arrays are used in many post-bootstrap calculations such as the jackknife-after-bootstrap and finding importance sampling weights. They are also used to find empirical influence values through the regression method.

Value

A matrix with `boot.out$R` rows and `n` columns where `n` is the number of observations in `boot.out$data`. If `indices` is `FALSE` then this will give the frequency of each of the original observations in each bootstrap resample. If `indices` is `TRUE` it will give the indices of the bootstrap resamples in the order in which they would have been passed to the statistic.

Side Effects

This function temporarily resets `.Random.seed` to the value in `boot.out$seed` and then returns it to its original value at the end of the function.

See Also

boot, censboot, freq.array, tilt.boot, tsboot

Examples

```
#  A frequency array for a nonparametric bootstrap
city.boot <- boot(city, corr, R = 40, stype = "w")
boot.array(city.boot)

perm.cor <- function(d,i) cor(d$x,d$u[i])
city.perm <- boot(city, perm.cor, R = 40, sim = "permutation")
boot.array(city.perm, indices = TRUE)
```

---

boot.ci *Nonparametric Bootstrap Confidence Intervals*

Description

This function generates 5 different types of equi-tailed two-sided nonparametric confidence intervals. These are the first order normal approximation, the basic bootstrap interval, the studentized bootstrap interval, the bootstrap percentile interval, and the adjusted bootstrap percentile (BCa) interval. All or a subset of these intervals can be generated.

Usage

```
boot.ci(boot.out, conf = 0.95, type = "all",
        index = 1:min(2,length(boot.out$t0)), var.t0 = NULL,
        var.t = NULL, t0 = NULL, t = NULL, L = NULL,
        h = function(t) t, hdot = function(t) rep(1,length(t)),
        hinv = function(t) t, ...)
```

Arguments

boot.out	An object of class "boot" containing the output of a bootstrap calculation.
conf	A scalar or vector containing the confidence level(s) of the required interval(s).
type	A vector of character strings representing the type of intervals required. The value should be any subset of the values c("norm","basic", "stud", "perc", "bca") or simply "all" which will compute all five types of intervals.
index	This should be a vector of length 1 or 2. The first element of index indicates the position of the variable of interest in boot.out$t0 and the relevant column in boot.out$t. The second element indicates the position of the variance of the variable of interest. If both var.t0 and var.t are supplied then the second element of index (if present) is ignored. The default is that the variable of interest is in position 1 and its variance is in position 2 (as long as there are 2 positions in boot.out$t0).

`var.t0` If supplied, a value to be used as an estimate of the variance of the statistic for the normal approximation and studentized intervals. If it is not supplied and `length(index)` is 2 then `var.t0` defaults to `boot.out$t0[index[2]]` otherwise `var.t0` is undefined. For studentized intervals `var.t0` must be defined. For the normal approximation, if `var.t0` is undefined it defaults to `var(t)`. If a transformation is supplied through the argument `h` then `var.t0` should be the variance of the untransformed statistic.

`var.t` This is a vector (of length `boot.out$R`) of variances of the bootstrap replicates of the variable of interest. It is used only for studentized intervals. If it is not supplied and `length(index)` is 2 then `var.t` defaults to `boot.out$t[,index[2]]`, otherwise its value is undefined which will cause an error for studentized intervals. If a transformation is supplied through the argument `h` then `var.t` should be the variance of the untransformed bootstrap statistics.

`t0` The observed value of the statistic of interest. The default value is `boot.out$t0[index[1]]`. Specification of `t0` and `t` allows the user to get intervals for a transformed statistic which may not be in the bootstrap output object. See the second example below. An alternative way of achieving this would be to supply the functions `h`, `hdot`, and `hinv` below.

`t` The bootstrap replicates of the statistic of interest. It must be a vector of length `boot.out$R`. It is an error to supply one of `t0` or `t` but not the other. Also if studentized intervals are required and `t0` and `t` are supplied then so should be `var.t0` and `var.t`. The default value is `boot.out$t[,index]`.

`L` The empirical influence values of the statistic of interest for the observed data. These are used only for BCa intervals. If a transformation is supplied through the parameter `h` then `L` should be the influence values for `t`; the values for `h(t)` are derived from these and `hdot` within the function. If `L` is not supplied then the values are calculated using `empinf` if they are needed.

`h` A function defining a transformation. The intervals are calculated on the scale of `h(t)` and the inverse function `hinv` applied to the resulting intervals. It must be a function of one variable only and for a vector argument, it must return a vector of the same length, i.e. `h(c(t1,t2,t3))` should return `c(h(t1),h(t2),h(t3))`. The default is the identity function.

`hdot` A function of one argument returning the derivative of `h`. It is a required argument if `h` is supplied and normal, studentized or BCa intervals are required. The function is used for approximating the variances of `h(t0)` and `h(t)` using the delta method, and also for finding the empirical influence values for BCa intervals. Like `h` it should be able to take a vector argument and return a vector of the same length. The default is the constant function 1.

`hinv` A function, like `h`, which returns the inverse of `h`. It is used to transform the intervals calculated on the scale of `h(t)` back to the original scale. The default is the identity function. If `h` is supplied but `hinv` is not, then the intervals returned will be on the transformed scale.

`...` Any extra arguments that `boot.out$statistic` is expecting. These arguments are needed only if BCa intervals are required and `L` is not supplied since in that case `L` is calculated through a call to `empinf` which calls `boot.out$statistic`.

Details

The formulae on which the calculations are based can be found in Chapter 5 of Davison and Hinkley (1997). Function `boot` must be run prior to running this function to create the object to be passed as `boot.out`.

Variance estimates are required for studentized intervals. The variance of the observed statistic is optional for normal theory intervals. If it is not supplied then the bootstrap estimate of variance is used. The normal intervals also use the bootstrap bias correction.

Interpolation on the normal quantile scale is used when a non-integer order statistic is required. If the order statistic used is the smallest or largest of the R values in boot.out a warning is generated and such intervals should not be considered reliable.

Value

An object of type `"bootci"` which contains the intervals. It has components

`R`	The number of bootstrap replicates on which the intervals were based.
`t0`	The observed value of the statistic on the same scale as the intervals.
`call`	The call to `boot.ci` which generated the object.
	It will also contain one or more of the following components depending on the value of `type` used in the call to `bootci`.
`normal`	A matrix of intervals calculated using the normal approximation. It will have 3 columns, the first being the level and the other two being the upper and lower endpoints of the intervals.
`basic`	The intervals calculated using the basic bootstrap method.
`student`	The intervals calculated using the studentized bootstrap method.
`percent`	The intervals calculated using the bootstrap percentile method.
`bca`	The intervals calculated using the adjusted bootstrap percentile (BCa) method.
	These latter four components will be matrices with 5 columns, the first column containing the level, the next two containing the indices of the order statistics used in the calculations and the final two the calculated endpoints themselves.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*, Chapter 5. Cambridge University Press.

DiCiccio, T.J. and Efron B. (1996) Bootstrap confidence intervals (with Discussion). *Statistical Science*, **11**, 189–228.

Efron, B. (1987) Better bootstrap confidence intervals (with Discussion). *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **82**, 171–200.

See Also

`abc.ci`, `boot`, `empinf`, `norm.ci`

Examples

```
# confidence intervals for the city data
ratio <- function(d, w) sum(d$x * w)/sum(d$u * w)
city.boot <- boot(city, ratio, R = 999, stype = "w", sim = "ordinary")
boot.ci(city.boot, conf = c(0.90, 0.95),
        type = c("norm", "basic", "perc", "bca"))

# studentized confidence interval for the two sample
# difference of means problem using the final two series
# of the gravity data.
```

```
diff.means <- function(d, f)
{    n <- nrow(d)
     gp1 <- 1:table(as.numeric(d$series))[1]
     m1 <- sum(d[gp1,1] * f[gp1])/sum(f[gp1])
     m2 <- sum(d[-gp1,1] * f[-gp1])/sum(f[-gp1])
     ss1 <- sum(d[gp1,1]^2 * f[gp1]) - (m1 *  m1 * sum(f[gp1]))
     ss2 <- sum(d[-gp1,1]^2 * f[-gp1]) - (m2 *  m2 * sum(f[-gp1]))
     c(m1 - m2, (ss1 + ss2)/(sum(f) - 2))
}
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[,2]) >= 7, ]
grav1.boot <- boot(grav1, diff.means, R = 999, stype = "f",
                   strata = grav1[ ,2])
boot.ci(grav1.boot, type = c("stud", "norm"))

# Nonparametric confidence intervals for mean failure time
# of the air-conditioning data as in Example 5.4 of Davison
# and Hinkley (1997)
mean.fun <- function(d, i)
{    m <- mean(d$hours[i])
     n <- length(i)
     v <- (n-1)*var(d$hours[i])/n^2
     c(m, v)
}
air.boot <- boot(aircondit, mean.fun, R = 999)
boot.ci(air.boot, type = c("norm", "basic", "perc", "stud"))

# Now using the log transformation
# There are two ways of doing this and they both give the
# same intervals.

# Method 1
boot.ci(air.boot, type = c("norm", "basic", "perc", "stud"),
        h = log, hdot = function(x) 1/x)

# Method 2
vt0 <- air.boot$t0[2]/air.boot$t0[1]^2
vt <- air.boot$t[, 2]/air.boot$t[ ,1]^2
boot.ci(air.boot, type = c("norm", "basic", "perc", "stud"),
        t0 = log(air.boot$t0[1]), t = log(air.boot$t[,1]),
        var.t0 = vt0, var.t = vt)
```

`brambles` *Spatial Location of Bramble Canes*

Description

The `brambles` data frame has 823 rows and 3 columns.

The location of living bramble canes in a 9m square plot was recorded. We take 9m to be the unit of distance so that the plot can be thought of as a unit square. The bramble canes were also classified by their age.

Usage

```
brambles
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`x` The x coordinate of the position of the cane in the plot.

`y` The y coordinate of the position of the cane in the plot.

`age` The age classification of the canes; `0` indicates a newly emerged cane, `1` indicates a one year old cane and `2` indicates a two year old cane.

Source

The data were obtained from

Diggle, P.J. (1983) *Statistical Analysis of Spatial Point Patterns*. Academic Press.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

---

breslow *Smoking Deaths Among Doctors*

Description

The `breslow` data frame has 10 rows and 5 columns.

In 1961 Doll and Hill sent out a questionnaire to all men on the British Medical Register enquiring about their smoking habits. Almost 70% of such men replied. Death certificates were obtained for medical practitioners and causes of death were assigned on the basis of these certificates. The `breslow` data set contains the person-years of observations and deaths from coronary artery disease accumulated during the first ten years of the study.

Usage

```
breslow
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`age` The mid-point of the 10 year age-group for the doctors.

`smoke` An indicator of whether the doctors smoked (1) or not (0).

`n` The number of person-years in the category.

`y` The number of deaths attributed to coronary artery disease.

`ns` The number of smoker years in the category (`smoke*n`).

Source

The data were obtained from

Breslow, N.E. (1985) Cohort Analysis in Epidemiology. In *A Celebration of Statistics* A.C. Atkinson and S.E. Fienberg (editors), 109–143. Springer-Verlag.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Doll, R. and Hill, A.B. (1966) Mortality of British doctors in relation to smoking: Observations on coronary thrombosis. *National Cancer Institute Monograph*, **19**, 205-268.

`calcium` *Calcium Uptake Data*

Description

The `calcium` data frame has 27 rows and 2 columns.

Howard Grimes from the Botany Department, North Carolina State University, conducted an experiment for biochemical analysis of intracellular storage and transport of calcium across plasma membrane. Cells were suspended in a solution of radioactive calcium for a certain length of time and then the amount of radioactive calcium that was absorbed by the cells was measured. The experiment was repeated independently with 9 different times of suspension each replicated 3 times.

Usage

```
calcium
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`time` The time (in minutes) that the cells were suspended in the solution.

`cal` The amount of calcium uptake (nmoles/mg).

Source

The data were obtained from

Rawlings, J.O. (1988) *Applied Regression Analysis*. Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole Statistics/Probability Series.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

cane *Sugar-cane Disease Data*

Description

The cane data frame has 180 rows and 5 columns. The data frame represents a randomized block design with 45 varieties of sugar-cane and 4 blocks.

Usage

```
cane
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`n` The total number of shoots in each plot.

`r` The number of diseased shoots.

`x` The number of pieces of the stems, out of 50, planted in each plot.

`var` A factor indicating the variety of sugar-cane in each plot.

`block` A factor for the blocks.

Details

The aim of the experiment was to classify the varieties into resistant, intermediate and susceptible to a disease called "coal of sugar-cane" (carvao da cana-de-acucar). This is a disease that is common in sugar-cane plantations in certain areas of Brazil.

For each plot, fifty pieces of sugar-cane stem were put in a solution containing the disease agent and then some were planted in the plot. After a fixed period of time, the total number of shoots and the number of diseased shoots were recorded.

Source

The data were kindly supplied by Dr. C.G.B. Demetrio of Escola Superior de Agricultura, Universidade de Sao Paolo, Brazil.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

capability *Simulated Manufacturing Process Data*

Description

The capability data frame has 75 rows and 1 columns.

The data are simulated successive observations from a process in equilibrium. The process is assumed to have specification limits (5.49, 5.79).

Usage

```
capability
```

Format

This data frame contains the following column:

y The simulated measurements.

Source

The data were obtained from

Bissell, A.F. (1990) How reliable is your capability index? *Applied Statistics*, **39**, 331–340.

References

Canty, A.J. and Davison, A.C. (1996) Implementation of saddlepoint approximations to resampling distributions. To appear in *Computing Science and Statistics; Proceedings of the 28th Symposium on the Interface*.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

catsM *Weight Data for Domestic Cats*

Description

The catsM data frame has 97 rows and 3 columns.

144 adult (over 2kg in weight) cats used for experiments with the drug digitalis had their heart and body weight recorded. 47 of the cats were female and 97 were male. The catsM data frame consists of the data for the male cats. The full data are in dataset cats in package MASS.

Usage

```
cats
```

Format

This data frames contain the following columns:

`Sex` A factor for the sex of the cat (levels are `F` and `M`).

`Bwt` Body weight in kg.

`Hwt` Heart weight in g.

Source

The data were obtained from

Fisher, R.A. (1947) The analysis of covariance method for the relation between a part and the whole. *Biometrics*, **3**, 65–68.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (1994) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-Plus*. Springer-Verlag.

See Also

`cats`

---

cav *Position of Muscle Caveolae*

Description

The `cav` data frame has 138 rows and 2 columns.

The data gives the positions of the individual caveolae in a square region with sides of length 500 units. This grid was originally on a 2.65mum square of muscle fibre. The data are those points falling in the lower left hand quarter of the region used for the dataset `caveolae.dat` in the **spatial** package by B.D. Ripley (1994).

Usage

```
cav
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`x` The x coordinate of the caveola's position in the region.

`y` The y coordinate of the caveola's position in the region.

References

Appleyard, S.T., Witkowski, J.A., Ripley, B.D., Shotton, D.M. and Dubowicz, V. (1985) A novel procedure for pattern analysis of features present on freeze fractured plasma membranes. *Journal of Cell Science*, **74**, 105–117.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

cd4 *CD4 Counts for HIV-Positive Patients*

Description

The cd4 data frame has 20 rows and 2 columns.

CD4 cells are carried in the blood as part of the human immune system. One of the effects of the HIV virus is that these cells die. The count of CD4 cells is used in determining the onset of full-blown AIDS in a patient. In this study of the effectiveness of a new anti-viral drug on HIV, 20 HIV-positive patients had their CD4 counts recorded and then were put on a course of treatment with this drug. After using the drug for one year, their CD4 counts were again recorded. The aim of the experiment was to show that patients taking the drug had increased CD4 counts which is not generally seen in HIV-positive patients.

Usage

```
cd4
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`baseline` The CD4 counts (in 100's) on admission to the trial.

`oneyear` The CD4 counts (in 100's) after one year of treatment with the new drug.

Source

The data were obtained from

DiCiccio, T.J. and Efron B. (1996) Bootstrap confidence intervals (with Discussion). *Statistical Science*, **11**, 189–228.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

cd4.nested *Nested Bootstrap of cd4 data*

Description

This is an example of a nested bootstrap for the correlation coefficient of the cd4 data frame. It is used in a practical in Chapter 5 of Davison and Hinkley (1997).

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

cd4

censboot *Bootstrap for Censored Data*

Description

This function applies types of bootstrap resampling which have been suggested to deal with right-censored data. It can also do model-based resampling using a Cox regression model.

Usage

```
censboot(data, statistic, R, F.surv, G.surv, strata = matrix(1,n,2),
         sim = "ordinary", cox = NULL, index = c(1, 2), ...,
         parallel = c("no", "multicore", "snow"),
         ncpus = getOption("boot.ncpus", 1L), cl = NULL)
```

Arguments

data	The data frame or matrix containing the data. It must have at least two columns, one of which contains the times and the other the censoring indicators. It is allowed to have as many other columns as desired (although efficiency is reduced for large numbers of columns) except for `sim = "weird"` when it should only have two columns - the times and censoring indicators. The columns of `data` referenced by the components of `index` are taken to be the times and censoring indicators.
statistic	A function which operates on the data frame and returns the required statistic. Its first argument must be the data. Any other arguments that it requires can be passed using the `...` argument. In the case of `sim = "weird"`, the data passed to `statistic` only contains the times and censoring indicator regardless of the actual number of columns in `data`. In all other cases the data passed to statistic will be of the same form as the original data. When `sim = "weird"`, the actual number of observations in the resampled data sets may not be the same as the number in `data`. For this reason, if `sim = "weird"` and `strata` is supplied, `statistic` should also take a numeric vector indicating the strata. This allows the statistic to depend on the strata if required.
R	The number of bootstrap replicates.
F.surv	An object returned from a call to `survfit` giving the survivor function for the data. This is a required argument unless `sim = "ordinary"` or `sim = "model"` and `cox` is missing.
G.surv	Another object returned from a call to `survfit` but with the censoring indicators reversed to give the product-limit estimate of the censoring distribution. Note that for consistency the uncensored times should be reduced by a small amount in the call to `survfit`. This is a required argument whenever `sim = "cond"` or when `sim = "model"` and `cox` is supplied.
strata	The strata used in the calls to `survfit`. It can be a vector or a matrix with 2 columns. If it is a vector then it is assumed to be the strata for the survival distribution, and the censoring distribution is assumed to be the same for all observations. If it is a matrix then the first column is the strata for the survival distribution and the second is the strata for the censoring distribution. When `sim = "weird"` only the strata for the survival distribution are used since the

censoring times are considered fixed. When `sim = "ordinary"`, only one set of strata is used to stratify the observations, this is taken to be the first column of `strata` when it is a matrix.

`sim` The simulation type. Possible types are `"ordinary"` (case resampling), `"model"` (equivalent to `"ordinary"` if `cox` is missing, otherwise it is model-based resampling), `"weird"` (the weird bootstrap - this cannot be used if `cox` is supplied), and `"cond"` (the conditional bootstrap, in which censoring times are resampled from the conditional censoring distribution).

`cox` An object returned from `coxph`. If it is supplied, then `F.surv` should have been generated by a call of the form `survfit(cox)`.

`index` A vector of length two giving the positions of the columns in `data` which correspond to the times and censoring indicators respectively.

`...` Other named arguments which are passed unchanged to `statistic` each time it is called. Any such arguments to `statistic` must follow the arguments which `statistic` is required to have for the simulation. Beware of partial matching to arguments of `censboot` listed above, and that arguments named `X` and `FUN` cause conflicts in some versions of **boot** (but not this one).

`parallel, ncpus, cl`
See the help for `boot`.

Details

The various types of resampling are described in Davison and Hinkley (1997) in sections 3.5 and 7.3. The simplest is case resampling which simply resamples with replacement from the observations.

The conditional bootstrap simulates failure times from the estimate of the survival distribution. Then, for each observation its simulated censoring time is equal to the observed censoring time if the observation was censored and generated from the estimated censoring distribution conditional on being greater than the observed failure time if the observation was uncensored. If the largest value is censored then it is given a nominal failure time of `Inf` and conversely if it is uncensored it is given a nominal censoring time of `Inf`. This is necessary to allow the largest observation to be in the resamples.

If a Cox regression model is fitted to the data and supplied, then the failure times are generated from the survival distribution using that model. In this case the censoring times can either be simulated from the estimated censoring distribution (`sim = "model"`) or from the conditional censoring distribution as in the previous paragraph (`sim = "cond"`).

The weird bootstrap holds the censored observations as fixed and also the observed failure times. It then generates the number of events at each failure time using a binomial distribution with mean 1 and denominator the number of failures that could have occurred at that time in the original data set. In our implementation we insist that there is a least one simulated event in each stratum for every bootstrap dataset.

When there are strata involved and `sim` is either `"model"` or `"cond"` the situation becomes more difficult. Since the strata for the survival and censoring distributions are not the same it is possible that for some observations both the simulated failure time and the simulated censoring time are infinite. To see this consider an observation in stratum 1F for the survival distribution and stratum 1G for the censoring distribution. Now if the largest value in stratum 1F is censored it is given a nominal failure time of `Inf`, also if the largest value in stratum 1G is uncensored it is given a nominal censoring time of `Inf` and so both the simulated failure and censoring times could be infinite. When this happens the simulated value is considered to be a failure at the time of the largest observed failure time in the stratum for the survival distribution.

When `parallel = "snow"` and `cl` is not supplied, `library(survival)` is run in each of the worker processes.

Value

An object of class `"boot"` containing the following components:

`t0`	The value of `statistic` when applied to the original data.
`t`	A matrix of bootstrap replicates of the values of `statistic`.
`R`	The number of bootstrap replicates performed.
`sim`	The simulation type used. This will usually be the input value of `sim` unless that was `"model"` but `cox` was not supplied, in which case it will be `"ordinary"`.
`data`	The data used for the bootstrap. This will generally be the input value of `data` unless `sim = "weird"`, in which case it will just be the columns containing the times and the censoring indicators.
`seed`	The value of `.Random.seed` when `censboot` started work.
`statistic`	The input value of `statistic`.
`strata`	The strata used in the resampling. When `sim = "ordinary"` this will be a vector which stratifies the observations, when `sim = "weird"` it is the strata for the survival distribution and in all other cases it is a matrix containing the strata for the survival distribution and the censoring distribution.
`call`	The original call to `censboot`.

Author(s)

Angelo J. Canty. Parallel extensions by Brian Ripley

References

Andersen, P.K., Borgan, O., Gill, R.D. and Keiding, N. (1993) *Statistical Models Based on Counting Processes*. Springer-Verlag.

Burr, D. (1994) A comparison of certain bootstrap confidence intervals in the Cox model. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **89**, 1290–1302.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Efron, B. (1981) Censored data and the bootstrap. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **76**, 312–319.

Hjort, N.L. (1985) Bootstrapping Cox's regression model. Technical report NSF-241, Dept. of Statistics, Stanford University.

See Also

`boot`, `coxph`, `survfit`

Examples

```
library(survival)
# Example 3.9 of Davison and Hinkley (1997) does a bootstrap on some
# remission times for patients with a type of leukaemia.  The patients
# were divided into those who received maintenance chemotherapy and
# those who did not.  Here we are interested in the median remission
# time for the two groups.
data(aml, package = "boot") # not the version in survival.
aml.fun <- function(data) {
     surv <- survfit(Surv(time, cens) ~ group, data = data)
     out <- NULL
     st <- 1
     for (s in 1:length(surv$strata)) {
          inds <- st:(st + surv$strata[s]-1)
          md <- min(surv$time[inds[1-surv$surv[inds] >= 0.5]])
          st <- st + surv$strata[s]
          out <- c(out, md)
     }
     out
}
aml.case <- censboot(aml, aml.fun, R = 499, strata = aml$group)

# Now we will look at the same statistic using the conditional
# bootstrap and the weird bootstrap.  For the conditional bootstrap
# the survival distribution is stratified but the censoring
# distribution is not.

aml.s1 <- survfit(Surv(time, cens) ~ group, data = aml)
aml.s2 <- survfit(Surv(time-0.001*cens, 1-cens) ~ 1, data = aml)
aml.cond <- censboot(aml, aml.fun, R = 499, strata = aml$group,
     F.surv = aml.s1, G.surv = aml.s2, sim = "cond")


# For the weird bootstrap we must redefine our function slightly since
# the data will not contain the group number.
aml.fun1 <- function(data, str) {
     surv <- survfit(Surv(data[, 1], data[, 2]) ~ str)
     out <- NULL
     st <- 1
     for (s in 1:length(surv$strata)) {
          inds <- st:(st + surv$strata[s] - 1)
          md <- min(surv$time[inds[1-surv$surv[inds] >= 0.5]])
          st <- st + surv$strata[s]
          out <- c(out, md)
     }
     out
}
aml.wei <- censboot(cbind(aml$time, aml$cens), aml.fun1, R = 499,
     strata = aml$group,  F.surv = aml.s1, sim = "weird")

# Now for an example where a cox regression model has been fitted
# the data we will look at the melanoma data of Example 7.6 from
# Davison and Hinkley (1997).  The fitted model assumes that there
# is a different survival distribution for the ulcerated and
# non-ulcerated groups but that the thickness of the tumour has a
# common effect.  We will also assume that the censoring distribution
```

```
# is different in different age groups.  The statistic of interest
# is the linear predictor.  This is returned as the values at a
# number of equally spaced points in the range of interest.
data(melanoma, package = "boot")
library(splines)# for ns
mel.cox <- coxph(Surv(time, status == 1) ~ ns(thickness, df=4) + strata(ulcer),
                 data = melanoma)
mel.surv <- survfit(mel.cox)
agec <- cut(melanoma$age, c(0, 39, 49, 59, 69, 100))
mel.cens <- survfit(Surv(time - 0.001*(status == 1), status != 1) ~
                    strata(agec), data = melanoma)
mel.fun <- function(d) {
     t1 <- ns(d$thickness, df=4)
     cox <- coxph(Surv(d$time, d$status == 1) ~ t1+strata(d$ulcer))
     ind <- !duplicated(d$thickness)
     u <- d$thickness[!ind]
     eta <- cox$linear.predictors[!ind]
     sp <- smooth.spline(u, eta, df=20)
     th <- seq(from = 0.25, to = 10, by = 0.25)
     predict(sp, th)$y
}
mel.str <- cbind(melanoma$ulcer, agec)

# this is slow!
mel.mod <- censboot(melanoma, mel.fun, R = 499, F.surv = mel.surv,
     G.surv = mel.cens, cox = mel.cox, strata = mel.str, sim = "model")
# To plot the original predictor and a 95% pointwise envelope for it
mel.env <- envelope(mel.mod)$point
th <- seq(0.25, 10, by = 0.25)
plot(th, mel.env[1, ],  ylim = c(-2, 2),
     xlab = "thickness (mm)", ylab = "linear predictor", type = "n")
lines(th, mel.mod$t0, lty = 1)
matlines(th, t(mel.env), lty = 2)
```

`channing` *Channing House Data*

Description

The `channing` data frame has 462 rows and 5 columns.

Channing House is a retirement centre in Palo Alto, California. These data were collected between the opening of the house in 1964 until July 1, 1975. In that time 97 men and 365 women passed through the centre. For each of these, their age on entry and also on leaving or death was recorded. A large number of the observations were censored mainly due to the resident being alive on July 1, 1975 when the data was collected. Over the time of the study 130 women and 46 men died at Channing House. Differences between the survival of the sexes, taking age into account, was one of the primary concerns of this study.

Usage

```
channing
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`sex` A factor for the sex of each resident (`"Male"` or `"Female"`).

`entry` The residents age (in months) on entry to the centre

`exit` The age (in months) of the resident on death, leaving the centre or July 1, 1975 whichever event occurred first.

`time` The length of time (in months) that the resident spent at Channing House. (`time=exit-entry`)

`cens` The indicator of right censoring. 1 indicates that the resident died at Channing House, 0 indicates that they left the house prior to July 1, 1975 or that they were still alive and living in the centre at that date.

Source

The data were obtained from

Hyde, J. (1980) Testing survival with incomplete observations. *Biostatistics Casebook*. R.G. Miller, B. Efron, B.W. Brown and L.E. Moses (editors), 31–46. John Wiley.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`claridge` *Genetic Links to Left-handedness*

Description

The `claridge` data frame has 37 rows and 2 columns.

The data are from an experiment which was designed to look for a relationship between a certain genetic characteristic and handedness. The 37 subjects were women who had a son with mental retardation due to inheriting a defective X-chromosome. For each such mother a genetic measurement of their DNA was made. Larger values of this measurement are known to be linked to the defective gene and it was hypothesized that larger values might also be linked to a progressive shift away from right-handednesss. Each woman also filled in a questionnaire regarding which hand they used for various tasks. From these questionnaires a measure of hand preference was found for each mother. The scale of this measure goes from 1, indicating someone who always favours their right hand, to 8, indicating someone who always favours their left hand. Between these two extremes are people who favour one hand for some tasks and the other for other tasks.

Usage

```
claridge
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`dnan` The genetic measurement on each woman's DNA.

`hand` The measure of left-handedness on an integer scale from 1 to 8.

Source

The data were kindly made available by Dr. Gordon S. Claridge from the Department of Experimental Psychology, University of Oxford.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`cloth` *Number of Flaws in Cloth*

Description

The `cloth` data frame has 32 rows and 2 columns.

Usage

```
cloth
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`x` The length of the roll of cloth.

`y` The number of flaws found in the roll.

Source

The data were obtained from

Bissell, A.F. (1972) A negative binomial model with varying element size. *Biometrika*, **59**, 435–441.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

co.transfer *Carbon Monoxide Transfer*

Description

The co.transfer data frame has 7 rows and 2 columns. Seven smokers with chickenpox had their levels of carbon monoxide transfer measured on entry to hospital and then again after 1 week. The main question being whether one week of hospitalization has changed the carbon monoxide transfer factor.

Usage

```
co.transfer
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

entry Carbon monoxide transfer factor on entry to hospital.

week Carbon monoxide transfer one week after admittance to hospital.

Source

The data were obtained from

Hand, D.J., Daly, F., Lunn, A.D., McConway, K.J. and Ostrowski, E (1994) *A Handbook of Small Data Sets*. Chapman and Hall.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Ellis, M.E., Neal, K.R. and Webb, A.K. (1987) Is smoking a risk factor for pneumonia in patients with chickenpox? *British Medical Journal*, **294**, 1002.

coal *Dates of Coal Mining Disasters*

Description

The coal data frame has 191 rows and 1 columns.

This data frame gives the dates of 191 explosions in coal mines which resulted in 10 or more fatalities. The time span of the data is from March 15, 1851 until March 22 1962.

Usage

```
coal
```

Format

This data frame contains the following column:

`date` The date of the disaster. The integer part of `date` gives the year. The day is represented as the fraction of the year that had elapsed on that day.

Source

The data were obtained from

Hand, D.J., Daly, F., Lunn, A.D., McConway, K.J. and Ostrowski, E. (1994) *A Handbook of Small Data Sets*, Chapman and Hall.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Jarrett, R.G. (1979) A note on the intervals between coal-mining disasters. *Biometrika*, **66**, 191-193.

`control` *Control Variate Calculations*

Description

This function will find control variate estimates from a bootstrap output object. It can either find the adjusted bias estimate using post-simulation balancing or it can estimate the bias, variance, third cumulant and quantiles, using the linear approximation as a control variate.

Usage

```
control(boot.out, L = NULL, distn = NULL, index = 1, t0 = NULL,
        t = NULL, bias.adj = FALSE, alpha = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`boot.out`	A bootstrap output object returned from `boot`. The bootstrap replicates must have been generated using the usual nonparametric bootstrap.
`L`	The empirical influence values for the statistic of interest. If `L` is not supplied then `empinf` is called to calculate them from `boot.out`.
`distn`	If present this must be the output from `smooth.spline` giving the distribution function of the linear approximation. This is used only if `bias.adj` is `FALSE`. Normally this would be found using a saddlepoint approximation. If it is not supplied in that case then it is calculated by `saddle.distn`.
`index`	The index of the variable of interest in the output of `boot.out$statistic`.
`t0`	The observed value of the statistic of interest on the original data set `boot.out$data`. This argument is used only if `bias.adj` is `FALSE`. The input value is ignored if `t` is not also supplied. The default value is is `boot.out$t0[index]`.
`t`	The bootstrap replicate values of the statistic of interest. This argument is used only if `bias.adj` is `FALSE`. The input is ignored if `t0` is not supplied also. The default value is `boot.out$t[,index]`.

bias.adj	A logical variable which if TRUE specifies that the adjusted bias estimate using post-simulation balance is all that is required. If bias.adj is FALSE (default) then the linear approximation to the statistic is calculated and used as a control variate in estimates of the bias, variance and third cumulant as well as quantiles.
alpha	The alpha levels for the required quantiles if bias.adj is FALSE.
...	Any additional arguments that boot.out$statistic requires. These are passed unchanged every time boot.out$statistic is called. boot.out$statistic is called once if bias.adj is TRUE, otherwise it may be called by empinf for empirical influence calculations if L is not supplied.

Details

If bias.adj is FALSE then the linear approximation to the statistic is found and evaluated at each bootstrap replicate. Then using the equation $T^* = Tl^* + (T^* - Tl^*)$, moment estimates can be found. For quantile estimation the distribution of the linear approximation to t is approximated very accurately by saddlepoint methods, this is then combined with the bootstrap replicates to approximate the bootstrap distribution of t and hence to estimate the bootstrap quantiles of t.

Value

If bias.adj is TRUE then the returned value is the adjusted bias estimate.

If bias.adj is FALSE then the returned value is a list with the following components

L	The empirical influence values used. These are the input values if supplied, and otherwise they are the values calculated by empinf.
tL	The linear approximations to the bootstrap replicates t of the statistic of interest.
bias	The control estimate of bias using the linear approximation to t as a control variate.
var	The control estimate of variance using the linear approximation to t as a control variate.
k3	The control estimate of the third cumulant using the linear approximation to t as a control variate.
quantiles	A matrix with two columns; the first column are the alpha levels used for the quantiles and the second column gives the corresponding control estimates of the quantiles using the linear approximation to t as a control variate.
distn	An output object from smooth.spline describing the saddlepoint approximation to the bootstrap distribution of the linear approximation to t. If distn was supplied on input then this is the same as the input otherwise it is calculated by a call to saddle.distn.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Davison, A.C., Hinkley, D.V. and Schechtman, E. (1986) Efficient bootstrap simulation. *Biometrika*, **73**, 555–566.

Efron, B. (1990) More efficient bootstrap computations. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **55**, 79–89.

See Also

boot, empinf, k3.linear, linear.approx, saddle.distn, smooth.spline, var.linear

Examples

```
# Use of control variates for the variance of the air-conditioning data
mean.fun <- function(d, i)
{    m <- mean(d$hours[i])
     n <- nrow(d)
     v <- (n-1)*var(d$hours[i])/n^2
     c(m, v)
}
air.boot <- boot(aircondit, mean.fun, R = 999)
control(air.boot, index = 2, bias.adj = TRUE)
air.cont <- control(air.boot, index = 2)
# Now let us try the variance on the log scale.
air.cont1 <- control(air.boot, t0 = log(air.boot$t0[2]),
                     t = log(air.boot$t[, 2]))
```

---

corr *Correlation Coefficient*

Description

Calculates the weighted correlation given a data set and a set of weights.

Usage

```
corr(d, w = rep(1, nrow(d))/nrow(d))
```

Arguments

d	A matrix with two columns corresponding to the two variables whose correlation we wish to calculate.
w	A vector of weights to be applied to each pair of observations. The default is equal weights for each pair. Normalization takes place within the function so sum(w) need not equal 1.

Details

This function finds the correlation coefficient in weighted form. This is often useful in bootstrap methods since it allows for numerical differentiation to get the empirical influence values. It is also necessary to have the statistic in this form to find ABC intervals.

Value

The correlation coefficient between d[,1] and d[,2].

See Also

cor

cum3 *Calculate Third Order Cumulants*

Description

Calculates an estimate of the third cumulant, or skewness, of a vector. Also, if more than one vector is specified, a product-moment of order 3 is estimated.

Usage

```
cum3(a, b = a, c = a, unbiased = TRUE)
```

Arguments

a	A vector of observations.
b	Another vector of observations, if not supplied it is set to the value of a. If supplied then it must be the same length as a.
c	Another vector of observations, if not supplied it is set to the value of a. If supplied then it must be the same length as a.
unbiased	A logical value indicating whether the unbiased estimator should be used.

Details

The unbiased estimator uses a multiplier of n/((n-1)*(n-2)) where n is the sample size, if unbiased is FALSE then a multiplier of 1/n is used. This is multiplied by sum((a-mean(a))*(b-mean(b))*(c-mean(c))) to give the required estimate.

Value

The required estimate.

cv.glm *Cross-validation for Generalized Linear Models*

Description

This function calculates the estimated K-fold cross-validation prediction error for generalized linear models.

Usage

```
cv.glm(data, glmfit, cost, K)
```

Arguments

data	A matrix or data frame containing the data. The rows should be cases and the columns correspond to variables, one of which is the response.
glmfit	An object of class "glm" containing the results of a generalized linear model fitted to data.
cost	A function of two vector arguments specifying the cost function for the cross-validation. The first argument to cost should correspond to the observed responses and the second argument should correspond to the predicted or fitted responses from the generalized linear model. cost must return a non-negative scalar value. The default is the average squared error function.
K	The number of groups into which the data should be split to estimate the cross-validation prediction error. The value of K must be such that all groups are of approximately equal size. If the supplied value of K does not satisfy this criterion then it will be set to the closest integer which does and a warning is generated specifying the value of K used. The default is to set K equal to the number of observations in data which gives the usual leave-one-out cross-validation.

Details

The data is divided randomly into K groups. For each group the generalized linear model is fit to data omitting that group, then the function cost is applied to the observed responses in the group that was omitted from the fit and the prediction made by the fitted models for those observations.

When K is the number of observations leave-one-out cross-validation is used and all the possible splits of the data are used. When K is less than the number of observations the K splits to be used are found by randomly partitioning the data into K groups of approximately equal size. In this latter case a certain amount of bias is introduced. This can be reduced by using a simple adjustment (see equation 6.48 in Davison and Hinkley, 1997). The second value returned in delta is the estimate adjusted by this method.

Value

The returned value is a list with the following components.

call	The original call to cv.glm.
K	The value of K used for the K-fold cross validation.
delta	A vector of length two. The first component is the raw cross-validation estimate of prediction error. The second component is the adjusted cross-validation estimate. The adjustment is designed to compensate for the bias introduced by not using leave-one-out cross-validation.
seed	The value of .Random.seed when cv.glm was called.

Side Effects

The value of .Random.seed is updated.

References

Breiman, L., Friedman, J.H., Olshen, R.A. and Stone, C.J. (1984) *Classification and Regression Trees*. Wadsworth.

Burman, P. (1989) A comparative study of ordinary cross-validation, *v*-fold cross-validation and repeated learning-testing methods. *Biometrika*, **76**, 503–514

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Efron, B. (1986) How biased is the apparent error rate of a prediction rule? *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **81**, 461–470.

Stone, M. (1974) Cross-validation choice and assessment of statistical predictions (with Discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, **36**, 111–147.

See Also

glm, glm.diag, predict

Examples

```
# leave-one-out and 6-fold cross-validation prediction error for
# the mammals data set.
data(mammals, package="MASS")
mammals.glm <- glm(log(brain) ~ log(body), data = mammals)
(cv.err <- cv.glm(mammals, mammals.glm)$delta)
(cv.err.6 <- cv.glm(mammals, mammals.glm, K = 6)$delta)

# As this is a linear model we could calculate the leave-one-out
# cross-validation estimate without any extra model-fitting.
muhat <- fitted(mammals.glm)
mammals.diag <- glm.diag(mammals.glm)
(cv.err <- mean((mammals.glm$y - muhat)^2/(1 - mammals.diag$h)^2))


# leave-one-out and 11-fold cross-validation prediction error for
# the nodal data set.  Since the response is a binary variable an
# appropriate cost function is
cost <- function(r, pi = 0) mean(abs(r-pi) > 0.5)

nodal.glm <- glm(r ~ stage+xray+acid, binomial, data = nodal)
(cv.err <- cv.glm(nodal, nodal.glm, cost, K = nrow(nodal))$delta)
(cv.11.err <- cv.glm(nodal, nodal.glm, cost, K = 11)$delta)
```

---

darwin *Darwin's Plant Height Differences*

Description

The darwin data frame has 15 rows and 1 columns.

Charles Darwin conducted an experiment to examine the superiority of cross-fertilized plants over self-fertilized plants. 15 pairs of plants were used. Each pair consisted of one cross-fertilized plant and one self-fertilized plant which germinated at the same time and grew in the same pot. The plants were measured at a fixed time after planting and the difference in heights between the cross- and self-fertilized plants are recorded in eighths of an inch.

Usage

```
darwin
```

Format

This data frame contains the following column:

`y` The difference in heights for the pairs of plants (in units of 0.125 inches).

Source

The data were obtained from

Fisher, R.A. (1935) *Design of Experiments*. Oliver and Boyd.

References

Darwin, C. (1876) *The Effects of Cross- and Self-fertilisation in the Vegetable Kingdom*. John Murray.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`dogs` *Cardiac Data for Domestic Dogs*

Description

The `dogs` data frame has 7 rows and 2 columns.

Data on the cardiac oxygen consumption and left ventricular pressure were gathered on 7 domestic dogs.

Usage

```
dogs
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

mvo Cardiac Oxygen Consumption

lvp Left Ventricular Pressure

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`downs.bc` *Incidence of Down's Syndrome in British Columbia*

Description

The `downs.bc` data frame has 30 rows and 3 columns.

Down's syndrome is a genetic disorder caused by an extra chromosome 21 or a part of chromosome 21 being translocated to another chromosome. The incidence of Down's syndrome is highly dependent on the mother's age and rises sharply after age 30. In the 1960's a large scale study of the effect of maternal age on the incidence of Down's syndrome was conducted at the British Columbia Health Surveillance Registry. These are the data which was collected in that study.

Mothers were classified by age. Most groups correspond to the age in years but the first group comprises all mothers with ages in the range 15-17 and the last is those with ages 46-49. No data for mothers over 50 or below 15 were collected.

Usage

```
downs.bc
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`age` The average age of all mothers in the age category.

`m` The total number of live births to mothers in the age category.

`r` The number of cases of Down's syndrome.

Source

The data were obtained from

Geyer, C.J. (1991) Constrained maximum likelihood exemplified by isotonic convex logistic regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **86**, 717–724.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

ducks *Behavioral and Plumage Characteristics of Hybrid Ducks*

Description

The ducks data frame has 11 rows and 2 columns.

Each row of the data frame represents a male duck who is a second generation cross of mallard and pintail ducks. For 11 such ducks a behavioural and plumage index were calculated. These were measured on scales devised for this experiment which was to examine whether there was any link between which species the ducks resembled physically and which they resembled in behaviour. The scale for the physical appearance ranged from 0 (identical in appearance to a mallard) to 20 (identical to a pintail). The behavioural traits of the ducks were on a scale from 0 to 15 with lower numbers indicating closer to mallard-like in behaviour.

Usage

```
ducks
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`plumage` The index of physical appearance based on the plumage of individual ducks.

`behaviour` The index of behavioural characteristics of the ducks.

Source

The data were obtained from

Larsen, R.J. and Marx, M.L. (1986) *An Introduction to Mathematical Statistics and its Applications* (Second Edition). Prentice-Hall.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Sharpe, R.S., and Johnsgard, P.A. (1966) Inheritance of behavioral characters in F_2 mallard x pintail (*Anas Platyrhynchos L. x Anas Acuta L.*) hybrids. *Behaviour*, **27**, 259-272.

EEF.profile *Empirical Likelihoods*

Description

Construct the empirical log likelihood or empirical exponential family log likelihood for a mean.

Usage

```
EEF.profile(y, tmin = min(y) + 0.1, tmax = max(y) - 0.1, n.t = 25,
            u = function(y, t) y - t)
EL.profile(y, tmin  =  min(y) + 0.1, tmax = max(y) - 0.1, n.t  =  25,
           u = function(y, t) y - t)
```

Arguments

y	A vector or matrix of data
tmin	The minimum value of the range over which the likelihood should be computed. This must be larger than min(y).
tmax	The maximum value of the range over which the likelihood should be computed. This must be smaller than max(y).
n.t	The number of points between tmin and tmax at which the value of the log-likelihood should be computed.
u	A function of the data and the parameter.

Details

These functions calculate the log likelihood for a mean using either an empirical likelihood or an empirical exponential family likelihood. They are supplied as part of the package boot for demonstration purposes with the practicals in chapter 10 of Davison and Hinkley (1997). The functions are not intended for general use and are not supported as part of the bootpackage. For more general and more robust code to calculate empirical likelihoods see Professor A. B. Owen's empirical likelihood home page at the URL http://statistics.stanford.edu/~owen/empirical/.

Value

A matrix with n.t rows. The first column contains the values of the parameter used. The second column of the output of EL.profile contains the values of the empirical log likelihood. The second and third columns of the output of EEF.profile contain two versions of the empirical exponential family log-likelihood. The final column of the output matrix contains the values of the Lagrange multiplier used in the optimization procedure.

Author(s)

Angelo J. Canty

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

empinf *Empirical Influence Values*

Description

This function calculates the empirical influence values for a statistic applied to a data set. It allows four types of calculation, namely the infinitesimal jackknife (using numerical differentiation), the usual jackknife estimates, the 'positive' jackknife estimates and a method which estimates the empirical influence values using regression of bootstrap replicates of the statistic. All methods can be used with one or more samples.

Usage

```
empinf(boot.out = NULL, data = NULL, statistic = NULL,
       type = NULL, stype = NULL ,index = 1, t = NULL,
       strata = rep(1, n), eps = 0.001, ...)
```

Arguments

boot.out	A bootstrap object created by the function boot. If type is "reg" then this argument is required. For any of the other types it is an optional argument. If it is included when optional then the values of data, statistic, stype, and strata are taken from the components of boot.out and any values passed to empinf directly are ignored.
data	A vector, matrix or data frame containing the data for which empirical influence values are required. It is a required argument if boot.out is not supplied. If boot.out is supplied then data is set to boot.out$data and any value supplied is ignored.
statistic	The statistic for which empirical influence values are required. It must be a function of at least two arguments, the data set and a vector of weights, frequencies or indices. The nature of the second argument is given by the value of stype. Any other arguments that it takes must be supplied to empinf and will be passed to statistic unchanged. This is a required argument if boot.out is not supplied, otherwise its value is taken from boot.out and any value supplied here will be ignored.
type	The calculation type to be used for the empirical influence values. Possible values of type are "inf" (infinitesimal jackknife), "jack" (usual jackknife), "pos" (positive jackknife), and "reg" (regression estimation). The default value depends on the other arguments. If t is supplied then the default value of type is "reg" and boot.out should be present so that its frequency array can be found. It t is not supplied then if stype is "w", the default value of type is "inf"; otherwise, if boot.out is present the default is "reg". If none of these conditions apply then the default is "jack". Note that it is an error for type to be "reg" if boot.out is missing or to be "inf" if stype is not "w".
stype	A character variable giving the nature of the second argument to statistic. It can take on three values: "w" (weights), "f" (frequencies), or "i" (indices). If boot.out is supplied the value of stype is set to boot.out$stype and any value supplied here is ignored. Otherwise it is an optional argument which defaults to "w". If type is "inf" then stype MUST be "w".

index	An integer giving the position of the variable of interest in the output of statistic.
t	A vector of length boot.out$R which gives the bootstrap replicates of the statistic of interest. t is used only when type is reg and it defaults to boot.out$t[,index].
strata	An integer vector or a factor specifying the strata for multi-sample problems. If boot.out is supplied the value of strata is set to boot.out$strata. Otherwise it is an optional argument which has default corresponding to the single sample situation.
eps	This argument is used only if type is "inf". In that case the value of epsilon to be used for numerical differentiation will be eps divided by the number of observations in data.
...	Any other arguments that statistic takes. They will be passed unchanged to statistic every time that it is called.

Details

If type is "inf" then numerical differentiation is used to approximate the empirical influence values. This makes sense only for statistics which are written in weighted form (i.e. stype is "w"). If type is "jack" then the usual leave-one-out jackknife estimates of the empirical influence are returned. If type is "pos" then the positive (include-one-twice) jackknife values are used. If type is "reg" then a bootstrap object must be supplied. The regression method then works by regressing the bootstrap replicates of statistic on the frequency array from which they were derived. The bootstrap frequency array is obtained through a call to boot.array. Further details of the methods are given in Section 2.7 of Davison and Hinkley (1997).

Empirical influence values are often used frequently in nonparametric bootstrap applications. For this reason many other functions call empinf when they are required. Some examples of their use are for nonparametric delta estimates of variance, BCa intervals and finding linear approximations to statistics for use as control variates. They are also used for antithetic bootstrap resampling.

Value

A vector of the empirical influence values of statistic applied to data. The values will be in the same order as the observations in data.

Warning

All arguments to empinf must be passed using the name = value convention. If this is not followed then unpredictable errors can occur.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Efron, B. (1982) *The Jackknife, the Bootstrap and Other Resampling Plans*. CBMS-NSF Regional Conference Series in Applied Mathematics, **38**, SIAM.

Fernholtz, L.T. (1983) *von Mises Calculus for Statistical Functionals*. Lecture Notes in Statistics, **19**, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

boot, boot.array, boot.ci, control, jack.after.boot, linear.approx, var.linear

Examples

```
# The empirical influence values for the ratio of means in
# the city data.
ratio <- function(d, w) sum(d$x *w)/sum(d$u*w)
empinf(data = city, statistic = ratio)
city.boot <- boot(city, ratio, 499, stype="w")
empinf(boot.out = city.boot, type = "reg")

# A statistic that may be of interest in the difference of means
# problem is the t-statistic for testing equality of means.  In
# the bootstrap we get replicates of the difference of means and
# the variance of that statistic and then want to use this output
# to get the empirical influence values of the t-statistic.
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[,2]) >= 7,]
grav.fun <- function(dat, w) {
     strata <- tapply(dat[, 2], as.numeric(dat[, 2]))
     d <- dat[, 1]
     ns <- tabulate(strata)
     w <- w/tapply(w, strata, sum)[strata]
     mns <- as.vector(tapply(d * w, strata, sum)) # drop names
     mn2 <- tapply(d * d * w, strata, sum)
     s2hat <- sum((mn2 - mns^2)/ns)
     c(mns[2] - mns[1], s2hat)
}

grav.boot <- boot(grav1, grav.fun, R = 499, stype = "w",
                  strata = grav1[, 2])

# Since the statistic of interest is a function of the bootstrap
# statistics, we must calculate the bootstrap replicates and pass
# them to empinf using the t argument.
grav.z <- (grav.boot$t[,1]-grav.boot$t0[1])/sqrt(grav.boot$t[,2])
empinf(boot.out = grav.boot, t = grav.z)
```

---

envelope *Confidence Envelopes for Curves*

Description

This function calculates overall and pointwise confidence envelopes for a curve based on bootstrap replicates of the curve evaluated at a number of fixed points.

Usage

```
envelope(boot.out = NULL, mat = NULL, level = 0.95, index = 1:ncol(mat))
```

Arguments

boot.out	An object of class "boot" for which boot.out$t contains the replicates of the curve at a number of fixed points.
mat	A matrix of bootstrap replicates of the values of the curve at a number of fixed points. This is a required argument if boot.out is not supplied and is set to boot.out$t otherwise.

`level` The confidence level of the envelopes required. The default is to find 95% confidence envelopes. It can be a scalar or a vector of length 2. If it is scalar then both the pointwise and the overall envelopes are found at that level. If is a vector then the first element gives the level for the pointwise envelope and the second gives the level for the overall envelope.

`index` The numbers of the columns of `mat` which contain the bootstrap replicates. This can be used to ensure that other statistics which may have been calculated in the bootstrap are not considered as values of the function.

Details

The pointwise envelope is found by simply looking at the quantiles of the replicates at each point. The overall error for that envelope is then calculated using equation (4.17) of Davison and Hinkley (1997). A sequence of pointwise envelopes is then found until one of them has overall error approximately equal to the level required. If no such envelope can be found then the envelope returned will just contain the extreme values of each column of `mat`.

Value

A list with the following components :

`point` A matrix with two rows corresponding to the values of the upper and lower pointwise confidence envelope at the same points as the bootstrap replicates were calculated.

`overall` A matrix similar to `point` but containing the envelope which controls the overall error.

`k.pt` The quantiles used for the pointwise envelope.

`err.pt` A vector with two components, the first gives the pointwise error rate for the pointwise envelope, and the second the overall error rate for that envelope.

`k.ov` The quantiles used for the overall envelope.

`err.ov` A vector with two components, the first gives the pointwise error rate for the overall envelope, and the second the overall error rate for that envelope.

`err.nom` A vector of length 2 giving the nominal error rates for the pointwise and the overall envelopes.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

`boot`, `boot.ci`

Examples

```
# Testing whether the final series of measurements of the gravity data
# may come from a normal distribution.  This is done in Examples 4.7
# and 4.8 of Davison and Hinkley (1997).
grav1 <- gravity$g[gravity$series == 8]
grav.z <- (grav1 - mean(grav1))/sqrt(var(grav1))
grav.gen <- function(dat, mle) rnorm(length(dat))
```

```
grav.qqboot <- boot(grav.z, sort, R = 999, sim = "parametric",
                    ran.gen = grav.gen)
grav.qq <- qqnorm(grav.z, plot.it = FALSE)
grav.qq <- lapply(grav.qq, sort)
plot(grav.qq, ylim = c(-3.5, 3.5), ylab = "Studentized Order Statistics",
     xlab = "Normal Quantiles")
grav.env <- envelope(grav.qqboot, level = 0.9)
lines(grav.qq$x, grav.env$point[1, ], lty = 4)
lines(grav.qq$x, grav.env$point[2, ], lty = 4)
lines(grav.qq$x, grav.env$overall[1, ], lty = 1)
lines(grav.qq$x, grav.env$overall[2, ], lty = 1)
```

`exp.tilt` *Exponential Tilting*

Description

This function calculates exponentially tilted multinomial distributions such that the resampling distributions of the linear approximation to a statistic have the required means.

Usage

```
exp.tilt(L, theta = NULL, t0 = 0, lambda = NULL,
         strata = rep(1, length(L)))
```

Arguments

`L`	The empirical influence values for the statistic of interest based on the observed data. The length of `L` should be the same as the size of the original data set. Typically `L` will be calculated by a call to `empinf`.
`theta`	The value at which the tilted distribution is to be centred. This is not required if `lambda` is supplied but is needed otherwise.
`t0`	The current value of the statistic. The default is that the statistic equals 0.
`lambda`	The Lagrange multiplier(s). For each value of `lambda` a multinomial distribution is found with probabilities proportional to `exp(lambda * L)`. In general `lambda` is not known and so `theta` would be supplied, and the corresponding value of `lambda` found. If both `lambda` and `theta` are supplied then `lambda` is ignored and the multipliers for tilting to `theta` are found.
`strata`	A vector or factor of the same length as `L` giving the strata for the observed data and the empirical influence values `L`.

Details

Exponential tilting involves finding a set of weights for a data set to ensure that the bootstrap distribution of the linear approximation to a statistic of interest has mean `theta`. The weights chosen to achieve this are given by `p[j]` proportional to `exp(lambda*L[j]/n)`, where `n` is the number of data points. `lambda` is then chosen to make the mean of the bootstrap distribution, of the linear approximation to the statistic of interest, equal to the required value `theta`. Thus `lambda` is defined as the solution of a nonlinear equation. The equation is solved by minimizing the Euclidean distance between the left and right hand sides of the equation using the function `nlmin`. If this minimum is not equal to zero then the method fails.

Typically exponential tilting is used to find suitable weights for importance resampling. If a small tail probability or quantile of the distribution of the statistic of interest is required then a more efficient simulation is to centre the resampling distribution close to the point of interest and then use the functions `imp.prob` or `imp.quantile` to estimate the required quantity.

Another method of achieving a similar shifting of the distribution is through the use of `smooth.f`. The function `tilt.boot` uses `exp.tilt` or `smooth.f` to find the weights for a tilted bootstrap.

Value

A list with the following components :

`p`	The tilted probabilities. There will be `m` distributions where `m` is the length of `theta` (or `lambda` if supplied). If `m` is 1 then `p` is a vector of `length(L)` probabilities. If `m` is greater than 1 then `p` is a matrix with `m` rows, each of which contain `length(L)` probabilities. In this case the vector `p[i,]` is the distribution tilted to `theta[i]`. `p` is in the form required by the argument `weights` of the function `boot` for importance resampling.
`lambda`	The Lagrange multiplier used in the equation to determine the tilted probabilities. `lambda` is a vector of the same length as `theta`.
`theta`	The values of `theta` to which the distributions have been tilted. In general this will be the input value of `theta` but if `lambda` was supplied then this is the vector of the corresponding `theta` values.

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Efron, B. (1981) Nonparametric standard errors and confidence intervals (with Discussion). *Canadian Journal of Statistics*, **9**, 139–172.

See Also

`empinf`, `imp.prob`, `imp.quantile`, `optim`, `smooth.f`, `tilt.boot`

Examples

```
# Example 9.8 of Davison and Hinkley (1997) requires tilting the resampling
# distribution of the studentized statistic to be centred at the observed
# value of the test statistic 1.84.  This can be achieved as follows.
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[,2]) >=7 , ]
grav.fun <- function(dat, w, orig) {
     strata <- tapply(dat[, 2], as.numeric(dat[, 2]))
     d <- dat[, 1]
     ns <- tabulate(strata)
     w <- w/tapply(w, strata, sum)[strata]
     mns <- as.vector(tapply(d * w, strata, sum)) # drop names
     mn2 <- tapply(d * d * w, strata, sum)
     s2hat <- sum((mn2 - mns^2)/ns)
     c(mns[2]-mns[1], s2hat, (mns[2]-mns[1]-orig)/sqrt(s2hat))
}
grav.z0 <- grav.fun(grav1, rep(1, 26), 0)
grav.L <- empinf(data = grav1, statistic = grav.fun, stype = "w",
                 strata = grav1[,2], index = 3, orig = grav.z0[1])
grav.tilt <- exp.tilt(grav.L, grav.z0[3], strata = grav1[,2])
```

```
boot(grav1, grav.fun, R = 499, stype = "w", weights = grav.tilt$p,
     strata = grav1[,2], orig = grav.z0[1])
```

`fir` *Counts of Balsam-fir Seedlings*

Description

The `fir` data frame has 50 rows and 3 columns.

The number of balsam-fir seedlings in each quadrant of a grid of 50 five foot square quadrants were counted. The grid consisted of 5 rows of 10 quadrants in each row.

Usage

```
fir
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`count` The number of seedlings in the quadrant.

`row` The row number of the quadrant.

`col` The quadrant number within the row.

Source

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`freq.array` *Bootstrap Frequency Arrays*

Description

Take a matrix of indices for nonparametric bootstrap resamples and return the frequencies of the original observations in each resample.

Usage

```
freq.array(i.array)
```

Arguments

`i.array`	This will be an matrix of integers between 1 and n, where n is the number of observations in a data set. The matrix will have n columns and R rows where R is the number of bootstrap resamples. Such matrices are found by `boot` when doing nonparametric bootstraps. They can also be found after a bootstrap has been run through the function `boot.array`.

Value

A matrix of the same dimensions as the input matrix. Each row of the matrix corresponds to a single bootstrap resample. Each column of the matrix corresponds to one of the original observations and specifies its frequency in each bootstrap resample. Thus the first column tells us how often the first observation appeared in each bootstrap resample. Such frequency arrays are often useful for diagnostic purposes such as the jackknife-after-bootstrap plot. They are also necessary for the regression estimates of empirical influence values and for finding importance sampling weights.

See Also

boot.array

---

frets *Head Dimensions in Brothers*

Description

The frets data frame has 25 rows and 4 columns.

The data consist of measurements of the length and breadth of the heads of pairs of adult brothers in 25 randomly sampled families. All measurements are expressed in millimetres.

Usage

```
frets
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

l1 The head length of the eldest son.

b1 The head breadth of the eldest son.

l2 The head length of the second son.

b2 The head breadth of the second son.

Source

The data were obtained from

Frets, G.P. (1921) Heredity of head form in man. *Genetica*, **3**, 193.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Whittaker, J. (1990) *Graphical Models in Applied Multivariate Statistics*. John Wiley.

`glm.diag` *Generalized Linear Model Diagnostics*

Description

Calculates jackknife deviance residuals, standardized deviance residuals, standardized Pearson residuals, approximate Cook statistic, leverage and estimated dispersion.

Usage

```
glm.diag(glmfit)
```

Arguments

`glmfit`	`glmfit` is a `glm.object` - the result of a call to `glm()`

Value

Returns a list with the following components

`res`	The vector of jackknife deviance residuals.
`rd`	The vector of standardized deviance residuals.
`rp`	The vector of standardized Pearson residuals.
`cook`	The vector of approximate Cook statistics.
`h`	The vector of leverages of the observations.
`sd`	The value used to standardize the residuals. This is the estimate of residual standard deviation in the Gaussian family and is the square root of the estimated shape parameter in the Gamma family. In all other cases it is 1.

Note

See the help for `glm.diag.plots` for an example of the use of `glm.diag`.

References

Davison, A.C. and Snell, E.J. (1991) Residuals and diagnostics. In *Statistical Theory and Modelling: In Honour of Sir David Cox*. D.V. Hinkley, N. Reid and E.J. Snell (editors), 83–106. Chapman and Hall.

See Also

`glm`, `glm.diag.plots`, `summary.glm`

glm.diag.plots *Diagnostics plots for generalized linear models*

Description

Makes plot of jackknife deviance residuals against linear predictor, normal scores plots of standardized deviance residuals, plot of approximate Cook statistics against leverage/(1-leverage), and case plot of Cook statistic.

Usage

```
glm.diag.plots(glmfit, glmdiag = glm.diag(glmfit), subset = NULL,
               iden = FALSE, labels = NULL, ret = FALSE)
```

Arguments

glmfit	glm.object : the result of a call to glm()
glmdiag	Diagnostics of glmfit obtained from a call to glm.diag. If it is not supplied then it is calculated.
subset	Subset of data for which glm fitting performed: should be the same as the subset option used in the call to glm() which generated glmfit. Needed only if the subset= option was used in the call to glm.
iden	A logical argument. If TRUE then, after the plots are drawn, the user will be prompted for an integer between 0 and 4. A positive integer will select a plot and invoke identify() on that plot. After exiting identify(), the user is again prompted, this loop continuing until the user responds to the prompt with 0. If iden is FALSE (default) the user cannot interact with the plots.
labels	A vector of labels for use with identify() if iden is TRUE. If it is not supplied then the labels are derived from glmfit.
ret	A logical argument indicating if glmdiag should be returned. The default is FALSE.

Details

The diagnostics required for the plots are calculated by glm.diag. These are then used to produce the four plots on the current graphics device.

The plot on the top left is a plot of the jackknife deviance residuals against the fitted values.

The plot on the top right is a normal QQ plot of the standardized deviance residuals. The dotted line is the expected line if the standardized residuals are normally distributed, i.e. it is the line with intercept 0 and slope 1.

The bottom two panels are plots of the Cook statistics. On the left is a plot of the Cook statistics against the standardized leverages. In general there will be two dotted lines on this plot. The horizontal line is at 8/(n-2p) where n is the number of observations and p is the number of parameters estimated. Points above this line may be points with high influence on the model. The vertical line is at 2p/(n-2p) and points to the right of this line have high leverage compared to the variance of the raw residual at that point. If all points are below the horizontal line or to the left of the vertical line then the line is not shown.

The final plot again shows the Cook statistic this time plotted against case number enabling us to find which observations are influential.

Use of `iden=T` is encouraged for proper exploration of these four plots as a guide to how well the model fits the data and whether certain observations have an unduly large effect on parameter estimates.

Value

If `ret` is `TRUE` then the value of `glmdiag` is returned otherwise there is no returned value.

Side Effects

The current device is cleared and four plots are plotted by use of `split.screen(c(2,2))`. If `iden` is `TRUE`, interactive identification of points is enabled. All screens are closed, but not cleared, on termination of the function.

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Davison, A.C. and Snell, E.J. (1991) Residuals and diagnostics. In *Statistical Theory and Modelling: In Honour of Sir David Cox* D.V. Hinkley, N. Reid, and E.J. Snell (editors), 83–106. Chapman and Hall.

See Also

`glm`, `glm.diag`, `identify`

Examples

```
# In this example we look at the leukaemia data which was looked at in
# Example 7.1 of Davison and Hinkley (1997)
data(leuk, package = "MASS")
leuk.mod <- glm(time ~ ag-1+log10(wbc), family = Gamma(log), data = leuk)
leuk.diag <- glm.diag(leuk.mod)
glm.diag.plots(leuk.mod, leuk.diag)
```

---

gravity *Acceleration Due to Gravity*

Description

The `gravity` data frame has 81 rows and 2 columns.

The `grav` data set has 26 rows and 2 columns.

Between May 1934 and July 1935, the National Bureau of Standards in Washington D.C. conducted a series of experiments to estimate the acceleration due to gravity, g, at Washington. Each experiment produced a number of replicate estimates of g using the same methodology. Although the basic method remained the same for all experiments, that of the reversible pendulum, there were changes in configuration.

The `gravity` data frame contains the data from all eight experiments. The `grav` data frame contains the data from the experiments 7 and 8. The data are expressed as deviations from 980.000 in centimetres per second squared.

Usage

```
gravity
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`g` The deviation of the estimate from 980.000 centimetres per second squared.

`series` A factor describing from which experiment the estimate was derived.

Source

The data were obtained from

Cressie, N. (1982) Playing safe with misweighted means. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **77**, 754–759.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`hirose` *Failure Time of PET Film*

Description

The `hirose` data frame has 44 rows and 3 columns.

PET film is used in electrical insulation. In this accelerated life test the failure times for 44 samples in gas insulated transformers. 4 different voltage levels were used.

Usage

```
hirose
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`volt` The voltage (in kV).

`time` The failure or censoring time in hours.

`cens` The censoring indicator; `1` means right-censored data.

Source

The data were obtained from

Hirose, H. (1993) Estimation of threshold stress in accelerated life-testing. *IEEE Transactions on Reliability*, **42**, 650–657.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Imp.Estimates *Importance Sampling Estimates*

Description

Central moment, tail probability, and quantile estimates for a statistic under importance resampling.

Usage

```
imp.moments(boot.out = NULL, index = 1, t = boot.out$t[, index],
            w = NULL, def = TRUE, q = NULL)
imp.prob(boot.out = NULL, index = 1, t0 = boot.out$t0[index],
         t = boot.out$t[, index], w = NULL, def = TRUE, q = NULL)
imp.quantile(boot.out = NULL, alpha = NULL, index = 1,
             t = boot.out$t[, index], w = NULL, def = TRUE, q = NULL)
```

Arguments

boot.out	A object of class "boot" generated by a call to boot or tilt.boot. Use of these functions makes sense only when the bootstrap resampling used unequal weights for the observations. If the importance weights w are not supplied then boot.out is a required argument. It is also required if t is not supplied.
alpha	The alpha levels for the required quantiles. The default is to calculate the 1%, 2.5%, 5%, 10%, 90%, 95%, 97.5% and 99% quantiles.
index	The index of the variable of interest in the output of boot.out$statistic. This is not used if the argument t is supplied.
t0	The values at which tail probability estimates are required. For each value t0[i] the function will estimate the bootstrap cdf evaluated at t0[i]. If imp.prob is called without the argument t0 then the bootstrap cdf evaluated at the observed value of the statistic is found.
t	The bootstrap replicates of a statistic. By default these are taken from the bootstrap output object boot.out but they can be supplied separately if required (e.g. when the statistic of interest is a function of the calculated values in boot.out). Either boot.out or t must be supplied.
w	The importance resampling weights for the bootstrap replicates. If they are not supplied then boot.out must be supplied, in which case the importance weights are calculated by a call to imp.weights.
def	A logical value indicating whether a defensive mixture is to be used for weight calculation. This is used only if w is missing and it is passed unchanged to imp.weights to calculate w.
q	A vector of probabilities specifying the resampling distribution from which any estimates should be found. In general this would correspond to the usual bootstrap resampling distribution which gives equal weight to each of the original observations. The estimates depend on this distribution only through the importance weights w so this argument is ignored if w is supplied. If w is missing then q is passed as an argument to imp.weights and used to find w.

Value

A list with the following components :

alpha	The alpha levels used for the quantiles, if imp.quantile is used.
t0	The values at which the tail probabilities are estimated, if imp.prob is used.
raw	The raw importance resampling estimates. For imp.moments this has length 2, the first component being the estimate of the mean and the second being the variance estimate. For imp.prob, raw is of the same length as t0, and for imp.quantile it is of the same length as alpha.
rat	The ratio importance resampling estimates. In this method the weights w are rescaled to have average value one before they are used. The format of this vector is the same as raw.
reg	The regression importance resampling estimates. In this method the weights which are used are derived from a regression of t*w on w. This choice of weights can be shown to minimize the variance of the weights and also the Euclidean distance of the weights from the uniform weights. The format of this vector is the same as raw.

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Hesterberg, T. (1995) Weighted average importance sampling and defensive mixture distributions. *Technometrics*, **37**, 185–194.

Johns, M.V. (1988) Importance sampling for bootstrap confidence intervals. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **83**, 709–714.

See Also

boot, exp.tilt, imp.weights, smooth.f, tilt.boot

Examples

```
# Example 9.8 of Davison and Hinkley (1997) requires tilting the
# resampling distribution of the studentized statistic to be centred
# at the observed value of the test statistic, 1.84.  In this example
# we show how certain estimates can be found using resamples taken from
# the tilted distribution.
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[,2]) >= 7, ]
grav.fun <- function(dat, w, orig) {
     strata <- tapply(dat[, 2], as.numeric(dat[, 2]))
     d <- dat[, 1]
     ns <- tabulate(strata)
     w <- w/tapply(w, strata, sum)[strata]
     mns <- as.vector(tapply(d * w, strata, sum)) # drop names
     mn2 <- tapply(d * d * w, strata, sum)
     s2hat <- sum((mn2 - mns^2)/ns)
     c(mns[2] - mns[1], s2hat, (mns[2] - mns[1] - orig)/sqrt(s2hat))
}
grav.z0 <- grav.fun(grav1, rep(1, 26), 0)
grav.L <- empinf(data = grav1, statistic = grav.fun, stype = "w",
                 strata = grav1[,2], index = 3, orig = grav.z0[1])
grav.tilt <- exp.tilt(grav.L, grav.z0[3], strata = grav1[, 2])
```

```
grav.tilt.boot <- boot(grav1, grav.fun, R = 199, stype = "w",
                       strata = grav1[, 2], weights = grav.tilt$p,
                       orig = grav.z0[1])
# Since the weights are needed for all calculations, we shall calculate
# them once only.
grav.w <- imp.weights(grav.tilt.boot)
grav.mom <- imp.moments(grav.tilt.boot, w = grav.w, index = 3)
grav.p <- imp.prob(grav.tilt.boot, w = grav.w, index = 3, t0 = grav.z0[3])
unlist(grav.p)
grav.q <- imp.quantile(grav.tilt.boot, w = grav.w, index = 3,
                       alpha = c(0.9, 0.95, 0.975, 0.99))
as.data.frame(grav.q)
```

`imp.weights` *Importance Sampling Weights*

Description

This function calculates the importance sampling weight required to correct for simulation from a distribution with probabilities `p` when estimates are required assuming that simulation was from an alternative distribution with probabilities `q`.

Usage

```
imp.weights(boot.out, def = TRUE, q = NULL)
```

Arguments

`boot.out`	A object of class `"boot"` generated by `boot` or `tilt.boot`. Typically the bootstrap simulations would have been done using importance resampling and we wish to do our calculations under the assumption of sampling with equal probabilities.
`def`	A logical variable indicating whether the defensive mixture distribution weights should be calculated. This makes sense only in the case where the replicates in `boot.out` were simulated under a number of different distributions. If this is the case then the defensive mixture weights use a mixture of the distributions used in the bootstrap. The alternative is to calculate the weights for each replicate using knowledge of the distribution from which the bootstrap resample was generated.
`q`	A vector of probabilities specifying the resampling distribution from which we require inferences to be made. In general this would correspond to the usual bootstrap resampling distribution which gives equal weight to each of the original observations and this is the default. `q` must have length equal to the number of observations in the `boot.out$data` and all elements of `q` must be positive.

Details

The importance sampling weight for a bootstrap replicate with frequency vector `f` is given by `prod((q/p)^f)`. This reweights the replicates so that estimates can be found as if the bootstrap resamples were generated according to the probabilities `q` even though, in fact, they came from the distribution `p`.

Value

A vector of importance weights of the same length as `boot.out$t`. These weights can then be used to reweight `boot.out$t` so that estimates can be found as if the simulations were from a distribution with probabilities `q`.

Note

See the example in the help for `imp.moments` for an example of using `imp.weights`.

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Hesterberg, T. (1995) Weighted average importance sampling and defensive mixture distributions. *Technometrics*, **37**, 185–194.

Johns, M.V. (1988) Importance sampling for bootstrap confidence intervals. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **83**, 709–714.

See Also

`boot`, `exp.tilt`, `imp.moments`, `smooth.f`, `tilt.boot`

`inv.logit` *Inverse Logit Function*

Description

Given a numeric object return the inverse logit of the values.

Usage

```
inv.logit(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	A numeric object. Missing values (`NA`s) are allowed.

Details

The inverse logit is defined by `exp(x)/(1+exp(x))`. Values in `x` of `-Inf` or `Inf` return logits of 0 or 1 respectively. Any `NA`s in the input will also be `NA`s in the output.

Value

An object of the same type as `x` containing the inverse logits of the input values.

See Also

`logit`, `plogis` for which this is a wrapper.

islay *Jura Quartzite Azimuths on Islay*

Description

The islay data frame has 18 rows and 1 columns.

Measurements were taken of paleocurrent azimuths from the Jura Quartzite on the Scottish island of Islay.

Usage

```
islay
```

Format

This data frame contains the following column:

theta The angle of the azimuth in degrees East of North.

Source

The data were obtained from

Hand, D.J., Daly, F., Lunn, A.D., McConway, K.J. and Ostrowski, E. (1994) *A Handbook of Small Data Sets*, Chapman and Hall.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Till, R. (1974) *Statistical Methods for the Earth Scientist*. Macmillan.

jack.after.boot *Jackknife-after-Bootstrap Plots*

Description

This function calculates the jackknife influence values from a bootstrap output object and plots the corresponding jackknife-after-bootstrap plot.

Usage

```
jack.after.boot(boot.out, index = 1, t = NULL, L = NULL,
                useJ = TRUE, stinf = TRUE, alpha = NULL,
                main = "", ylab = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

boot.out	An object of class "boot" which would normally be created by a call to boot. It should represent a nonparametric bootstrap. For reliable results boot.out$R should be reasonably large.
index	The index of the statistic of interest in the output of boot.out$statistic.
t	A vector of length boot.out$R giving the bootstrap replicates of the statistic of interest. This is useful if the statistic of interest is a function of the calculated bootstrap output. If it is not supplied then the default is boot.out$t[,index].
L	The empirical influence values for the statistic of interest. These are used only if useJ is FALSE. If they are not supplied and are needed, they are calculated by a call to empinf. If L is supplied then it is assumed that they are the infinitesimal jackknife values.
useJ	A logical variable indicating if the jackknife influence values calculated from the bootstrap replicates should be used. If FALSE the empirical influence values are used. The default is TRUE.
stinf	A logical variable indicating whether to standardize the jackknife values before plotting them. If TRUE then the jackknife values used are divided by their standard error.
alpha	The quantiles at which the plots are required. The default is c(0.05, 0.1, 0.16, 0.5, 0.84, 0.9, 0.95).
main	A character string giving the main title for the plot.
ylab	The label for the Y axis. If the default values of alpha are used and ylab is not supplied then a label indicating which percentiles are plotted is used. If alpha is supplied then the default label will not say which percentiles were used.
...	Any extra arguments required by boot.out$statistic. These are required only if useJ is FALSE and L is not supplied, in which case they are passed to empinf for use in calculation of the empirical influence values.

Details

The centred jackknife quantiles for each observation are estimated from those bootstrap samples in which the particular observation did not appear. These are then plotted against the influence values. If useJ is TRUE then the influence values are found in the same way as the difference between the mean of the statistic in the samples excluding the observations and the mean in all samples. If useJ is FALSE then empirical influence values are calculated by calling empinf.

The resulting plots are useful diagnostic tools for looking at the way individual observations affect the bootstrap output.

The plot will consist of a number of horizontal dotted lines which correspond to the quantiles of the centred bootstrap distribution. For each data point the quantiles of the bootstrap distribution calculated by omitting that point are plotted against the (possibly standardized) jackknife values. The observation number is printed below the plots. To make it easier to see the effect of omitting points on quantiles, the plotted quantiles are joined by line segments. These plots provide a useful diagnostic tool in establishing the effect of individual observations on the bootstrap distribution. See the references below for some guidelines on the interpretation of the plots.

Value

There is no returned value but a plot is generated on the current graphics display.

Side Effects

A plot is created on the current graphics device.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Efron, B. (1992) Jackknife-after-bootstrap standard errors and influence functions (with Discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, **54**, 83–127.

See Also

boot, empinf

Examples

```
#  To draw the jackknife-after-bootstrap plot for the head size data as in
#  Example 3.24 of Davison and Hinkley (1997)
frets.fun <- function(data, i) {
    pcorr <- function(x) {
    #  Function to find the correlations and partial correlations between
    #  the four measurements.
         v <- cor(x)
         v.d <- diag(var(x))
         iv <- solve(v)
         iv.d <- sqrt(diag(iv))
         iv <- - diag(1/iv.d) %*% iv %*% diag(1/iv.d)
         q <- NULL
         n <- nrow(v)
         for (i in 1:(n-1))
              q <- rbind( q, c(v[i, 1:i], iv[i,(i+1):n]) )
         q <- rbind( q, v[n, ] )
         diag(q) <- round(diag(q))
         q
    }
    d <- data[i, ]
    v <- pcorr(d)
    c(v[1,], v[2,], v[3,], v[4,])
}
frets.boot <- boot(log(as.matrix(frets)), frets.fun, R = 999)
#  we will concentrate on the partial correlation between head breadth
#  for the first son and head length for the second.  This is the 7th
#  element in the output of frets.fun so we set index = 7
jack.after.boot(frets.boot, useJ = FALSE, stinf = FALSE, index = 7)
```

---

k3.linear *Linear Skewness Estimate*

Description

Estimates the skewness of a statistic from its empirical influence values.

Usage

```
k3.linear(L, strata = NULL)
```

Arguments

L	Vector of the empirical influence values of a statistic. These will usually be calculated by a call to empinf.
strata	A numeric vector or factor specifying which observations (and hence which components of L) come from which strata.

Value

The skewness estimate calculated from L.

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

empinf, linear.approx, var.linear

Examples

```
#  To estimate the skewness of the ratio of means for the city data.
ratio <- function(d, w) sum(d$x * w)/sum(d$u * w)
k3.linear(empinf(data = city, statistic = ratio))
```

---

linear.approx *Linear Approximation of Bootstrap Replicates*

Description

This function takes a bootstrap object and for each bootstrap replicate it calculates the linear approximation to the statistic of interest for that bootstrap sample.

Usage

```
linear.approx(boot.out, L = NULL, index = 1, type = NULL,
              t0 = NULL, t = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

boot.out	An object of class "boot" representing a nonparametric bootstrap. It will usually be created by the function boot.
L	A vector containing the empirical influence values for the statistic of interest. If it is not supplied then L is calculated through a call to empinf.
index	The index of the variable of interest within the output of boot.out$statistic.

type	This gives the type of empirical influence values to be calculated. It is not used if L is supplied. The possible types of empirical influence values are described in the help for empinf.
t0	The observed value of the statistic of interest. The input value is used only if one of t or L is also supplied. The default value is boot.out$t0[index]. If t0 is supplied but neither t nor L are supplied then t0 is set to boot.out$t0[index] and a warning is generated.
t	A vector of bootstrap replicates of the statistic of interest. If t0 is missing then t is not used, otherwise it is used to calculate the empirical influence values (if they are not supplied in L).
...	Any extra arguments required by boot.out$statistic. These are needed if L is not supplied as they are used by empinf to calculate empirical influence values.

Details

The linear approximation to a bootstrap replicate with frequency vector f is given by t0 + sum(L * f)/n in the one sample with an easy extension to the stratified case. The frequencies are found by calling boot.array.

Value

A vector of length boot.out$R with the linear approximations to the statistic of interest for each of the bootstrap samples.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

boot, empinf, control

Examples

```
# Using the city data let us look at the linear approximation to the
# ratio statistic and its logarithm. We compare these with the
# corresponding plots for the bigcity data

ratio <- function(d, w) sum(d$x * w)/sum(d$u * w)
city.boot <- boot(city, ratio, R = 499, stype = "w")
bigcity.boot <- boot(bigcity, ratio, R = 499, stype = "w")
op <- par(pty = "s", mfrow = c(2, 2))

# The first plot is for the city data ratio statistic.
city.lin1 <- linear.approx(city.boot)
lim <- range(c(city.boot$t,city.lin1))
plot(city.boot$t, city.lin1, xlim = lim, ylim = lim,
     main = "Ratio; n=10", xlab = "t*", ylab = "tL*")
abline(0, 1)

# Now for the log of the ratio statistic for the city data.
city.lin2 <- linear.approx(city.boot,t0 = log(city.boot$t0),
```

```
                            t = log(city.boot$t))
lim <- range(c(log(city.boot$t),city.lin2))
plot(log(city.boot$t), city.lin2, xlim = lim, ylim = lim,
     main = "Log(Ratio); n=10", xlab = "t*", ylab = "tL*")
abline(0, 1)

# The ratio statistic for the bigcity data.
bigcity.lin1 <- linear.approx(bigcity.boot)
lim <- range(c(bigcity.boot$t,bigcity.lin1))
plot(bigcity.lin1, bigcity.boot$t, xlim = lim, ylim = lim,
     main = "Ratio; n=49", xlab = "t*", ylab = "tL*")
abline(0, 1)

# Finally the log of the ratio statistic for the bigcity data.
bigcity.lin2 <- linear.approx(bigcity.boot,t0 = log(bigcity.boot$t0),
                              t = log(bigcity.boot$t))
lim <- range(c(log(bigcity.boot$t),bigcity.lin2))
plot(bigcity.lin2, log(bigcity.boot$t), xlim = lim, ylim = lim,
     main = "Log(Ratio); n=49", xlab = "t*", ylab = "tL*")
abline(0, 1)

par(op)
```

`lines.saddle.distn` *Add a Saddlepoint Approximation to a Plot*

Description

This function adds a line corresponding to a saddlepoint density or distribution function approximation to the current plot.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class saddle.distn
lines(x, dens = TRUE, h = function(u) u, J = function(u) 1,
      npts = 50, lty = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object of class `"saddle.distn"` (see `saddle.distn.object` representing a saddlepoint approximation to a distribution.
`dens`	A logical variable indicating whether the saddlepoint density (`TRUE`; the default) or the saddlepoint distribution function (`FALSE`) should be plotted.
`h`	Any transformation of the variable that is required. Its first argument must be the value at which the approximation is being performed and the function must be vectorized.
`J`	When `dens=TRUE` this function specifies the Jacobian for any transformation that may be necessary. The first argument of `J` must the value at which the approximation is being performed and the function must be vectorized. If `h` is supplied `J` must also be supplied and both must have the same argument list.
`npts`	The number of points to be used for the plot. These points will be evenly spaced over the range of points used in finding the saddlepoint approximation.

lty	The line type to be used.
...	Any additional arguments to h and J.

Details

The function uses smooth.spline to produce the saddlepoint curve. When dens=TRUE the spline is on the log scale and when dens=FALSE it is on the probit scale.

Value

sad.d is returned invisibly.

Side Effects

A line is added to the current plot.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

saddle.distn

Examples

```
# In this example we show how a plot such as that in Figure 9.9 of
# Davison and Hinkley (1997) may be produced.  Note the large number of
# bootstrap replicates required in this example.
expdata <- rexp(12)
vfun <- function(d, i) {
     n <- length(d)
     (n-1)/n*var(d[i])
}
exp.boot <- boot(expdata,vfun, R = 9999)
exp.L <- (expdata - mean(expdata))^2 - exp.boot$t0
exp.tL <- linear.approx(exp.boot, L = exp.L)
hist(exp.tL, nclass = 50, probability = TRUE)
exp.t0 <- c(0, sqrt(var(exp.boot$t)))
exp.sp <- saddle.distn(A = exp.L/12,wdist = "m", t0 = exp.t0)

# The saddlepoint approximation in this case is to the density of
# t-t0 and so t0 must be added for the plot.
lines(exp.sp, h = function(u, t0) u+t0, J = function(u, t0) 1,
      t0 = exp.boot$t0)
```

logit *Logit of Proportions*

Description

This function calculates the logit of proportions.

Usage

```
logit(p)
```

Arguments

p	A numeric Splus object, all of whose values are in the range [0,1]. Missing values (NAs) are allowed.

Details

If any elements of p are outside the unit interval then an error message is generated. Values of p equal to 0 or 1 (to within machine precision) will return -Inf or Inf respectively. Any NAs in the input will also be NAs in the output.

Value

A numeric object of the same type as p containing the logits of the input values.

See Also

inv.logit, qlogis for which this is a wrapper.

manaus *Average Heights of the Rio Negro river at Manaus*

Description

The manaus time series is of class "ts" and has 1080 observations on one variable.

The data values are monthly averages of the daily stages (heights) of the Rio Negro at Manaus. Manaus is 18km upstream from the confluence of the Rio Negro with the Amazon but because of the tiny slope of the water surface and the lower courses of its flatland affluents, they may be regarded as a good approximation of the water level in the Amazon at the confluence. The data here cover 90 years from January 1903 until December 1992.

The Manaus gauge is tied in with an arbitrary bench mark of 100m set in the steps of the Municipal Prefecture; gauge readings are usually referred to sea level, on the basis of a mark on the steps leading to the Parish Church (Matriz), which is assumed to lie at an altitude of 35.874 m according to observations made many years ago under the direction of Samuel Pereira, an engineer in charge of the Manaus Sanitation Committee Whereas such an altitude cannot, by any means, be considered to be a precise datum point, observations have been provisionally referred to it. The measurements are in metres.

Source

The data were kindly made available by Professors H. O'Reilly Sternberg and D. R. Brillinger of the University of California at Berkeley.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Sternberg, H. O'R. (1987) Aggravation of floods in the Amazon river as a consequence of deforestation? *Geografiska Annaler*, **69A**, 201-219.

Sternberg, H. O'R. (1995) Waters and wetlands of Brazilian Amazonia: An uncertain future. In *The Fragile Tropics of Latin America: Sustainable Management of Changing Environments*, Nishizawa, T. and Uitto, J.I. (editors), United Nations University Press, 113-179.

---

melanoma *Survival from Malignant Melanoma*

Description

The `melanoma` data frame has 205 rows and 7 columns.

The data consist of measurements made on patients with malignant melanoma. Each patient had their tumour removed by surgery at the Department of Plastic Surgery, University Hospital of Odense, Denmark during the period 1962 to 1977. The surgery consisted of complete removal of the tumour together with about 2.5cm of the surrounding skin. Among the measurements taken were the thickness of the tumour and whether it was ulcerated or not. These are thought to be important prognostic variables in that patients with a thick and/or ulcerated tumour have an increased chance of death from melanoma. Patients were followed until the end of 1977.

Usage

```
melanoma
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`time` Survival time in days since the operation, possibly censored.

`status` The patients status at the end of the study. 1 indicates that they had died from melanoma, 2 indicates that they were still alive and 3 indicates that they had died from causes unrelated to their melanoma.

`sex` The patients sex; 1=male, 0=female.

`age` Age in years at the time of the operation.

`year` Year of operation.

`thickness` Tumour thickness in mm.

`ulcer` Indicator of ulceration; 1=present, 0=absent.

Note

This dataset is not related to the dataset in the **lattice** package with the same name.

Source

The data were obtained from

Andersen, P.K., Borgan, O., Gill, R.D. and Keiding, N. (1993) *Statistical Models Based on Counting Processes*. Springer-Verlag.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (1994) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-Plus*. Springer-Verlag.

---

motor *Data from a Simulated Motorcycle Accident*

Description

The `motor` data frame has 94 rows and 4 columns. The rows are obtained by removing replicate values of `time` from the dataset `mcycle`. Two extra columns are added to allow for strata with a different residual variance in each stratum.

Usage

```
motor
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`times` The time in milliseconds since impact.

`accel` The recorded head acceleration (in g).

`strata` A numeric column indicating to which of the three strata (numbered 1, 2 and 3) the observations belong.

`v` An estimate of the residual variance for the observation. `v` is constant within the strata but a different estimate is used for each of the three strata.

Source

The data were obtained from

Silverman, B.W. (1985) Some aspects of the spline smoothing approach to non-parametric curve fitting. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, **47**, 1–52.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (1994) *Modern Applied Statistics with S-Plus*. Springer-Verlag.

See Also

`mcycle`

neuro *Neurophysiological Point Process Data*

Description

neuro is a matrix containing times of observed firing of a neuron in windows of 250ms either side of the application of a stimulus to a human subject. Each row of the matrix is a replication of the experiment and there were a total of 469 replicates.

Note

There are a lot of missing values in the matrix as different numbers of firings were observed in different replicates. The number of firings observed varied from 2 to 6.

Source

The data were collected and kindly made available by Dr. S.J. Boniface of the Neurophysiology Unit at the Radcliffe Infirmary, Oxford.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Ventura, V., Davison, A.C. and Boniface, S.J. (1997) A stochastic model for the effect of magnetic brain stimulation on a motorneurone. To appear in *Applied Statistics*.

nitrofen *Toxicity of Nitrofen in Aquatic Systems*

Description

The nitrofen data frame has 50 rows and 5 columns.

Nitrofen is a herbicide that was used extensively for the control of broad-leaved and grass weeds in cereals and rice. Although it is relatively non-toxic to adult mammals, nitrofen is a significant tetragen and mutagen. It is also acutely toxic and reproductively toxic to cladoceran zooplankton. Nitrofen is no longer in commercial use in the U.S., having been the first pesticide to be withdrawn due to tetragenic effects.

The data here come from an experiment to measure the reproductive toxicity of nitrofen on a species of zooplankton (*Ceriodaphnia dubia*). 50 animals were randomized into batches of 10 and each batch was put in a solution with a measured concentration of nitrofen. Then the number of live offspring in each of the three broods to each animal was recorded.

Usage

```
nitrofen
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`conc` The nitrofen concentration in the solution (mug/litre).

`brood1` The number of live offspring in the first brood.

`brood2` The number of live offspring in the second brood.

`brood3` The number of live offspring in the third brood.

`total` The total number of live offspring in the first three broods.

Source

The data were obtained from

Bailer, A.J. and Oris, J.T. (1994) Assessing toxicity of pollutants in aquatic systems. In *Case Studies in Biometry*. N. Lange, L. Ryan, L. Billard, D. Brillinger, L. Conquest and J. Greenhouse (editors), 25–40. John Wiley.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`nodal` *Nodal Involvement in Prostate Cancer*

Description

The `nodal` data frame has 53 rows and 7 columns.

The treatment strategy for a patient diagnosed with cancer of the prostate depend highly on whether the cancer has spread to the surrounding lymph nodes. It is common to operate on the patient to get samples from the nodes which can then be analysed under a microscope but clearly it would be preferable if an accurate assessment of nodal involvement could be made without surgery.

For a sample of 53 prostate cancer patients, a number of possible predictor variables were measured before surgery. The patients then had surgery to determine nodal involvement. It was required to see if nodal involvement could be accurately predicted from the predictor variables and which ones were most important.

Usage

```
nodal
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`m` A column of ones.

`r` An indicator of nodal involvement.

`aged` The patients age dichotomized into less than 60 (`0`) and 60 or over `1`.

`stage` A measurement of the size and position of the tumour observed by palpitation with the fingers via the rectum. A value of `1` indicates a more serious case of the cancer.

`grade` Another indicator of the seriousness of the cancer, this one is determined by a pathology reading of a biopsy taken by needle before surgery. A value of 1 indicates a more serious case of the cancer.

`xray` A third measure of the seriousness of the cancer taken from an X-ray reading. A value of 1 indicates a more serious case of the cancer.

`acid` The level of acid phosphatase in the blood serum.

Source

The data were obtained from

Brown, B.W. (1980) Prediction analysis for binary data. In *Biostatistics Casebook*. R.G. Miller, B. Efron, B.W. Brown and L.E. Moses (editors), 3–18. John Wiley.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

---

norm.ci *Normal Approximation Confidence Intervals*

Description

Using the normal approximation to a statistic, calculate equi-tailed two-sided confidence intervals.

Usage

```
norm.ci(boot.out = NULL, conf = 0.95, index = 1, var.t0 = NULL,
        t0 = NULL, t = NULL, L = NULL, h = function(t) t,
        hdot = function(t) 1, hinv = function(t) t)
```

Arguments

`boot.out`	A bootstrap output object returned from a call to `boot`. If `t0` is missing then `boot.out` is a required argument. It is also required if both `var.t0` and `t` are missing.
`conf`	A scalar or vector containing the confidence level(s) of the required interval(s).
`index`	The index of the statistic of interest within the output of a call to `boot.out$statistic`. It is not used if `boot.out` is missing, in which case `t0` must be supplied.
`var.t0`	The variance of the statistic of interest. If it is not supplied then `var(t)` is used.
`t0`	The observed value of the statistic of interest. If it is missing then it is taken from `boot.out` which is required in that case.
`t`	Bootstrap replicates of the variable of interest. These are used to estimate the variance of the statistic of interest if `var.t0` is not supplied. The default value is `boot.out$t[,index]`.
`L`	The empirical influence values for the statistic of interest. These are used to calculate `var.t0` if neither `var.t0` nor `boot.out` are supplied. If a transformation is supplied through `h` then the influence values must be for the untransformed statistic `t0`.

h	A function defining a monotonic transformation, the intervals are calculated on the scale of h(t) and the inverse function hinv is applied to the resulting intervals. h must be a function of one variable only and must be vectorized. The default is the identity function.
hdot	A function of one argument returning the derivative of h. It is a required argument if h is supplied and is used for approximating the variance of h(t0). The default is the constant function 1.
hinv	A function, like h, which returns the inverse of h. It is used to transform the intervals calculated on the scale of h(t) back to the original scale. The default is the identity function. If h is supplied but hinv is not, then the intervals returned will be on the transformed scale.

Details

It is assumed that the statistic of interest has an approximately normal distribution with variance var.t0 and so a confidence interval of length 2*qnorm((1+conf)/2)*sqrt(var.t0) is found. If boot.out or t are supplied then the interval is bias-corrected using the bootstrap bias estimate, and so the interval would be centred at 2*t0-mean(t). Otherwise the interval is centred at t0.

Value

If length(conf) is 1 then a vector containing the confidence level and the endpoints of the interval is returned. Otherwise, the returned value is a matrix where each row corresponds to a different confidence level.

Note

This function is primarily designed to be called by boot.ci to calculate the normal approximation after a bootstrap but it can also be used without doing any bootstrap calculations as long as t0 and var.t0 can be supplied. See the examples below.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

boot.ci

Examples

```
#  In Example 5.1 of Davison and Hinkley (1997), normal approximation
#  confidence intervals are found for the air-conditioning data.
air.mean <- mean(aircondit$hours)
air.n <- nrow(aircondit)
air.v <- air.mean^2/air.n
norm.ci(t0 = air.mean, var.t0 = air.v)
exp(norm.ci(t0 = log(air.mean), var.t0 = 1/air.n)[2:3])

# Now a more complicated example - the ratio estimate for the city data.
ratio <- function(d, w)
     sum(d$x * w)/sum(d$u *w)
city.v <- var.linear(empinf(data = city, statistic = ratio))
norm.ci(t0 = ratio(city,rep(0.1,10)), var.t0 = city.v)
```

nuclear *Nuclear Power Station Construction Data*

Description

The nuclear data frame has 32 rows and 11 columns.

The data relate to the construction of 32 light water reactor (LWR) plants constructed in the U.S.A in the late 1960's and early 1970's. The data was collected with the aim of predicting the cost of construction of further LWR plants. 6 of the power plants had partial turnkey guarantees and it is possible that, for these plants, some manufacturers' subsidies may be hidden in the quoted capital costs.

Usage

```
nuclear
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

cost The capital cost of construction in millions of dollars adjusted to 1976 base.

date The date on which the construction permit was issued. The data are measured in years since January 1 1990 to the nearest month.

t1 The time between application for and issue of the construction permit.

t2 The time between issue of operating license and construction permit.

cap The net capacity of the power plant (MWe).

pr A binary variable where 1 indicates the prior existence of a LWR plant at the same site.

ne A binary variable where 1 indicates that the plant was constructed in the north-east region of the U.S.A.

ct A binary variable where 1 indicates the use of a cooling tower in the plant.

bw A binary variable where 1 indicates that the nuclear steam supply system was manufactured by Babcock-Wilcox.

cum.n The cumulative number of power plants constructed by each architect-engineer.

pt A binary variable where 1 indicates those plants with partial turnkey guarantees.

Source

The data were obtained from

Cox, D.R. and Snell, E.J. (1981) *Applied Statistics: Principles and Examples*. Chapman and Hall.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

paulsen *Neurotransmission in Guinea Pig Brains*

Description

The paulsen data frame has 346 rows and 1 columns.

Sections were prepared from the brain of adult guinea pigs. Spontaneous currents that flowed into individual brain cells were then recorded and the peak amplitude of each current measured. The aim of the experiment was to see if the current flow was quantal in nature (i.e. that it is not a single burst but instead is built up of many smaller bursts of current). If the current was indeed quantal then it would be expected that the distribution of the current amplitude would be multimodal with modes at regular intervals. The modes would be expected to decrease in magnitude for higher current amplitudes.

Usage

```
paulsen
```

Format

This data frame contains the following column:

y The current flowing into individual brain cells. The currents are measured in pico-amperes.

Source

The data were kindly made available by Dr. O. Paulsen from the Department of Pharmacology at the University of Oxford.

Paulsen, O. and Heggelund, P. (1994) The quantal size at retinogeniculate synapses determined from spontaneous and evoked EPSCs in guinea-pig thalamic slices. *Journal of Physiology*, **480**, 505–511.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

plot.boot *Plots of the Output of a Bootstrap Simulation*

Description

This takes a bootstrap object and produces plots for the bootstrap replicates of the variable of interest.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class boot
plot(x, index = 1, t0 = NULL, t = NULL, jack = FALSE,
     qdist = "norm", nclass = NULL, df, ...)
```

Arguments

x	An object of class "boot" returned from one of the bootstrap generation functions.
index	The index of the variable of interest within the output of boot.out. This is ignored if t and t0 are supplied.
t0	The original value of the statistic. This defaults to boot.out$t0[index] unless t is supplied when it defaults to NULL. In that case no vertical line is drawn on the histogram.
t	The bootstrap replicates of the statistic. Usually this will take on its default value of boot.out$t[,index], however it may be useful sometimes to supply a different set of values which are a function of boot.out$t.
jack	A logical value indicating whether a jackknife-after-bootstrap plot is required. The default is not to produce such a plot.
qdist	The distribution against which the Q-Q plot should be drawn. At present "norm" (normal distribution - the default) and "chisq" (chi-squared distribution) are the only possible values.
nclass	An integer giving the number of classes to be used in the bootstrap histogram. The default is the integer between 10 and 100 closest to ceiling(length(t)/25).
df	If qdist is "chisq" then this is the degrees of freedom for the chi-squared distribution to be used. It is a required argument in that case.
...	When jack is TRUE additional parameters to jack.after.boot can be supplied. See the help file for jack.after.boot for details of the possible parameters.

Details

This function will generally produce two side-by-side plots. The left plot will be a histogram of the bootstrap replicates. Usually the breaks of the histogram will be chosen so that t0 is at a breakpoint and all intervals are of equal length. A vertical dotted line indicates the position of t0. This cannot be done if t is supplied but t0 is not and so, in that case, the breakpoints are computed by hist using the nclass argument and no vertical line is drawn.

The second plot is a Q-Q plot of the bootstrap replicates. The order statistics of the replicates can be plotted against normal or chi-squared quantiles. In either case the expected line is also plotted. For the normal, this will have intercept mean(t) and slope sqrt(var(t)) while for the chi-squared it has intercept 0 and slope 1.

If jack is TRUE a third plot is produced beneath these two. That plot is the jackknife-after-bootstrap plot. This plot may only be requested when nonparametric simulation has been used. See jack.after.boot for further details of this plot.

Value

boot.out is returned invisibly.

Side Effects

All screens are closed and cleared and a number of plots are produced on the current graphics device. Screens are closed but not cleared at termination of this function.

See Also

boot, jack.after.boot, print.boot

Examples

```
# We fit an exponential model to the air-conditioning data and use
# that for a parametric bootstrap.  Then we look at plots of the
# resampled means.
air.rg <- function(data, mle) rexp(length(data), 1/mle)

air.boot <- boot(aircondit$hours, mean, R = 999, sim = "parametric",
                 ran.gen = air.rg, mle = mean(aircondit$hours))
plot(air.boot)

# In the difference of means example for the last two series of the
# gravity data
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[, 2]) >= 7, ]
grav.fun <- function(dat, w) {
     strata <- tapply(dat[, 2], as.numeric(dat[, 2]))
     d <- dat[, 1]
     ns <- tabulate(strata)
     w <- w/tapply(w, strata, sum)[strata]
     mns <- as.vector(tapply(d * w, strata, sum)) # drop names
     mn2 <- tapply(d * d * w, strata, sum)
     s2hat <- sum((mn2 - mns^2)/ns)
     c(mns[2] - mns[1], s2hat)
}

grav.boot <- boot(grav1, grav.fun, R = 499, stype = "w", strata = grav1[, 2])
plot(grav.boot)
# now suppose we want to look at the studentized differences.
grav.z <- (grav.boot$t[, 1]-grav.boot$t0[1])/sqrt(grav.boot$t[, 2])
plot(grav.boot, t = grav.z, t0 = 0)

# In this example we look at the one of the partial correlations for the
# head dimensions in the dataset frets.
frets.fun <- function(data, i) {
    pcorr <- function(x) {
    #  Function to find the correlations and partial correlations between
    #  the four measurements.
         v <- cor(x)
         v.d <- diag(var(x))
         iv <- solve(v)
         iv.d <- sqrt(diag(iv))
         iv <- - diag(1/iv.d) %*% iv %*% diag(1/iv.d)
         q <- NULL
         n <- nrow(v)
         for (i in 1:(n-1))
              q <- rbind( q, c(v[i, 1:i], iv[i,(i+1):n]) )
         q <- rbind( q, v[n, ] )
         diag(q) <- round(diag(q))
         q
    }
    d <- data[i, ]
    v <- pcorr(d)
    c(v[1,], v[2,], v[3,], v[4,])
```

```
}
frets.boot <- boot(log(as.matrix(frets)),  frets.fun,  R = 999)
plot(frets.boot, index = 7, jack = TRUE, stinf = FALSE, useJ = FALSE)
```

---

poisons *Animal Survival Times*

Description

The poisons data frame has 48 rows and 3 columns.

The data form a 3x4 factorial experiment, the factors being three poisons and four treatments. Each combination of the two factors was used for four animals, the allocation to animals having been completely randomized.

Usage

```
poisons
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

time The survival time of the animal in units of 10 hours.

poison A factor with levels 1, 2 and 3 giving the type of poison used.

treat A factor with levels A, B, C and D giving the treatment.

Source

The data were obtained from

Box, G.E.P. and Cox, D.R. (1964) An analysis of transformations (with Discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, **26**, 211–252.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

---

polar *Pole Positions of New Caledonian Laterites*

Description

The polar data frame has 50 rows and 2 columns.

The data are the pole positions from a paleomagnetic study of New Caledonian laterites.

Usage

```
polar
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`lat` The latitude (in degrees) of the pole position. Note that all latitudes are negative as the axis is taken to be in the lower hemisphere.

`long` The longitude (in degrees) of the pole position.

Source

The data were obtained from

Fisher, N.I., Lewis, T. and Embleton, B.J.J. (1987) *Statistical Analysis of Spherical Data*. Cambridge University Press.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

---

print.boot *Print a Summary of a Bootstrap Object*

Description

This is a method for the function print for objects of the class `"boot"`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class boot
print(x, digits = getOption("digits"),
      index = 1:ncol(boot.out$t), ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	A bootstrap output object of class `"boot"` generated by one of the bootstrap functions.
`digits`	The number of digits to be printed in the summary statistics.
`index`	Indices indicating for which elements of the bootstrap output summary statistics are required.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

For each statistic calculated in the bootstrap the original value and the bootstrap estimates of its bias and standard error are printed. If `boot.out$t0` is missing (such as when it was created by a call to `tsboot` with `orig.t=FALSE`) the bootstrap mean and standard error are printed. If resampling was done using importance resampling weights, then the bootstrap estimates are reweighted as if uniform resampling had been done. The ratio importance sampling estimates are used and if there were a number of distributions then defensive mixture distributions are used. In this case an extra column with the mean of the observed bootstrap statistics is also printed.

Value

The bootstrap object is returned invisibly.

See Also

boot, censboot, imp.moments, plot.boot, tilt.boot, tsboot

---

print.bootci *Print Bootstrap Confidence Intervals*

Description

This is a method for the function print() to print objects of the class "bootci".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class bootci
print(x, hinv = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	The output from a call to boot.ci.
hinv	A transformation to be made to the interval end-points before they are printed.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function prints out the results from boot.ci in a "nice" format. It also notes whether the scale of the intervals is the original scale of the input to boot.ci or a different scale and whether the calculations were done on a transformed scale. It also looks at the order statistics that were used in calculating the intervals. If the smallest or largest values were used then it prints a message

```
Warning : Intervals used Extreme Quantiles
```

Such intervals should be considered very unstable and not relied upon for inferences. Even if the extreme values are not used, it is possible that the intervals are unstable if they used quantiles close to the extreme values. The function alerts the user to intervals which use the upper or lower 10 order statistics with the message

```
Some intervals may be unstable
```

Value

The object ci.out is returned invisibly.

See Also

boot.ci

print.saddle.distn *Print Quantiles of Saddlepoint Approximations*

Description

This is a method for the function `print()` to print objects of class `"saddle.distn"`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class saddle.distn
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object of class `"saddle.distn"` created by a call to `saddle.distn`.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The quantiles of the saddlepoint approximation to the distribution are printed along with the original call and some other useful information.

Value

The input is returned invisibly.

See Also

`lines.saddle.distn`, `saddle.distn`

print.simplex *Print Solution to Linear Programming Problem*

Description

This is a method for the function `print()` to print objects of class `"simplex"`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class simplex
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	An object of class `"simplex"` created by calling the function `simplex` to solve a linear programming problem.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

The coefficients of the objective function are printed. If a solution to the linear programming problem was found then the solution and the optimal value of the objective function are printed. If a feasible solution was found but the maximum number of iterations was exceeded then the last feasible solution and the objective function value at that point are printed. If no feasible solution could be found then a message stating that is printed.

Value

`x` is returned silently.

See Also

`simplex`

---

remission *Cancer Remission and Cell Activity*

Description

The `remission` data frame has 27 rows and 3 columns.

Usage

```
remission
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`LI` A measure of cell activity.

`m` The number of patients in each group (all values are actually 1 here).

`r` The number of patients (out of `m`) who went into remission.

Source

The data were obtained from

Freeman, D.H. (1987) *Applied Categorical Data Analysis*. Marcel Dekker.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

saddle *Saddlepoint Approximations for Bootstrap Statistics*

Description

This function calculates a saddlepoint approximation to the distribution of a linear combination of **W** at a particular point u, where **W** is a vector of random variables. The distribution of **W** may be multinomial (default), Poisson or binary. Other distributions are possible also if the adjusted cumulant generating function and its second derivative are given. Conditional saddlepoint approximations to the distribution of one linear combination given the values of other linear combinations of **W** can be calculated for **W** having binary or Poisson distributions.

Usage

```
saddle(A = NULL, u = NULL, wdist = "m", type = "simp", d = NULL,
       d1 = 1, init = rep(0.1, d), mu = rep(0.5, n), LR = FALSE,
       strata = NULL, K.adj = NULL, K2 = NULL)
```

Arguments

A	A vector or matrix of known coefficients of the linear combinations of **W**. It is a required argument unless K.adj and K2 are supplied, in which case it is ignored.
u	The value at which it is desired to calculate the saddlepoint approximation to the distribution of the linear combination of **W**. It is a required argument unless K.adj and K2 are supplied, in which case it is ignored.
wdist	The distribution of **W**. This can be one of "m" (multinomial), "p" (Poisson), "b" (binary) or "o" (other). If K.adj and K2 are given wdist is set to "o".
type	The type of saddlepoint approximation. Possible types are "simp" for simple saddlepoint and "cond" for the conditional saddlepoint. When wdist is "o" or "m", type is automatically set to "simp", which is the only type of saddlepoint currently implemented for those distributions.
d	This specifies the dimension of the whole statistic. This argument is required only when wdist = "o" and defaults to 1 if not supplied in that case. For other distributions it is set to ncol(A).
d1	When type is "cond" this is the dimension of the statistic of interest which must be less than length(u). Then the saddlepoint approximation to the conditional distribution of the first d1 linear combinations given the values of the remaining combinations is found. Conditional distribution function approximations can only be found if the value of d1 is 1.
init	Used if wdist is either "m" or "o", this gives initial values to nlmin which is used to solve the saddlepoint equation.
mu	The values of the parameters of the distribution of **W** when wdist is "m", "p" "b". mu must be of the same length as W (i.e. nrow(A)). The default is that all values of mu are equal and so the elements of **W** are identically distributed.
LR	If TRUE then the Lugananni-Rice approximation to the cdf is used, otherwise the approximation used is based on Barndorff-Nielsen's r*.
strata	The strata for stratified data.

`K.adj` The adjusted cumulant generating function used when `wdist` is `"o"`. This is a function of a single parameter, `zeta`, which calculates `K(zeta)-u%*%zeta`, where `K(zeta)` is the cumulant generating function of **W**.

`K2` This is a function of a single parameter `zeta` which returns the matrix of second derivatives of `K(zeta)` for use when `wdist` is `"o"`. If `K.adj` is given then this must be given also. It is called only once with the calculated solution to the saddlepoint equation being passed as the argument. This argument is ignored if `K.adj` is not supplied.

Details

If `wdist` is `"o"` or `"m"`, the saddlepoint equations are solved using `nlmin` to minimize `K.adj` with respect to its parameter `zeta`. For the Poisson and binary cases, a generalized linear model is fitted such that the parameter estimates solve the saddlepoint equations. The response variable 'y' for the `glm` must satisfy the equation `t(A)%*%y = u` (`t()` being the transpose function). Such a vector can be found as a feasible solution to a linear programming problem. This is done by a call to `simplex`. The covariate matrix for the `glm` is given by `A`.

Value

A list consisting of the following components

`spa` The saddlepoint approximations. The first value is the density approximation and the second value is the distribution function approximation.

`zeta.hat` The solution to the saddlepoint equation. For the conditional saddlepoint this is the solution to the saddlepoint equation for the numerator.

`zeta2.hat` If `type` is `"cond"` this is the solution to the saddlepoint equation for the denominator. This component is not returned for any other value of `type`.

References

Booth, J.G. and Butler, R.W. (1990) Randomization distributions and saddlepoint approximations in generalized linear models. *Biometrika*, **77**, 787–796.

Canty, A.J. and Davison, A.C. (1997) Implementation of saddlepoint approximations to resampling distributions. *Computing Science and Statistics; Proceedings of the 28th Symposium on the Interface*, 248–253.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Jensen, J.L. (1995) *Saddlepoint Approximations*. Oxford University Press.

See Also

`saddle.distn`, `simplex`

Examples

```
# To evaluate the bootstrap distribution of the mean failure time of
# air-conditioning equipment at 80 hours
saddle(A = aircondit$hours/12, u = 80)

# Alternatively this can be done using a conditional poisson
saddle(A = cbind(aircondit$hours/12,1), u = c(80, 12),
```

```
       wdist = "p", type = "cond")

# To use the Lugananni-Rice approximation to this
saddle(A = cbind(aircondit$hours/12,1), u = c(80, 12),
       wdist = "p", type = "cond",
       LR = TRUE)

# Example 9.16 of Davison and Hinkley (1997) calculates saddlepoint
# approximations to the distribution of the ratio statistic for the
# city data. Since the statistic is not in itself a linear combination
# of random Variables, its distribution cannot be found directly.
# Instead the statistic is expressed as the solution to a linear
# estimating equation and hence its distribution can be found.  We
# get the saddlepoint approximation to the pdf and cdf evaluated at
# t = 1.25 as follows.
jacobian <- function(dat,t,zeta)
{
     p <- exp(zeta*(dat$x-t*dat$u))
     abs(sum(dat$u*p)/sum(p))
}
city.sp1 <- saddle(A = city$x-1.25*city$u, u = 0)
city.sp1$spa[1] <- jacobian(city, 1.25, city.sp1$zeta.hat) * city.sp1$spa[1]
city.sp1
```

`saddle.distn` *Saddlepoint Distribution Approximations for Bootstrap Statistics*

Description

Approximate an entire distribution using saddlepoint methods. This function can calculate simple and conditional saddlepoint distribution approximations for a univariate quantity of interest. For the simple saddlepoint the quantity of interest is a linear combination of **W** where **W** is a vector of random variables. For the conditional saddlepoint we require the distribution of one linear combination given the values of any number of other linear combinations. The distribution of **W** must be one of multinomial, Poisson or binary. The primary use of this function is to calculate quantiles of bootstrap distributions using saddlepoint approximations. Such quantiles are required by the function `control` to approximate the distribution of the linear approximation to a statistic.

Usage

```
saddle.distn(A, u = NULL, alpha = NULL, wdist = "m",
             type = "simp", npts = 20, t = NULL, t0 = NULL,
             init = rep(0.1, d), mu = rep(0.5, n), LR = FALSE,
             strata = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`A`	This is a matrix of known coefficients or a function which returns such a matrix. If a function then its first argument must be the point `t` at which a saddlepoint is required. The most common reason for A being a function would be if the statistic is not itself a linear combination of the **W** but is the solution to a linear estimating equation.

u — If A is a function then u must also be a function returning a vector with length equal to the number of columns of the matrix returned by A. Usually all components other than the first will be constants as the other components are the values of the conditioning variables. If A is a matrix with more than one column (such as when wdist = "cond") then u should be a vector with length one less than ncol(A). In this case u specifies the values of the conditioning variables. If A is a matrix with one column or a vector then u is not used.

alpha — The alpha levels for the quantiles of the distribution which should be returned. By default the 0.1, 0.5, 1, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, 50, 80, 90, 95, 97.5, 99, 99.5 and 99.9 percentiles are calculated.

wdist — The distribution of **W**. Possible values are "m" (multinomial), "p" (Poisson), or "b" (binary).

type — The type of saddlepoint to be used. Possible values are "simp" (simple saddlepoint) and "cond" (conditional). If wdist is "m", type is set to "simp".

npts — The number of points at which the saddlepoint approximation should be calculated and then used to fit the spline.

t — A vector of points at which the saddlepoint approximations are calculated. These points should extend beyond the extreme quantiles required but still be in the possible range of the bootstrap distribution. The observed value of the statistic should not be included in t as the distribution function approximation breaks down at that point. The points should, however cover the entire effective range of the distribution including close to the centre. If t is supplied then npts is set to length(t). When t is not supplied, the function attempts to find the effective range of the distribution and then selects points to cover this range.

t0 — If t is not supplied then a vector of length 2 should be passed as t0. The first component of t0 should be the centre of the distribution and the second should be an estimate of spread (such as a standard error). These two are then used to find the effective range of the distribution. The range finding mechanism does rely on an accurate estimate of location in t0[1].

init — When wdist is "m", this vector should contain the initial values to be passed to nlmin when it is called to solve the saddlepoint equations.

mu — The vector of parameter values for the distribution. The default is that the components of **W** are identically distributed.

LR — A logical flag. When LR is TRUE the Lugananni-Rice cdf approximations are calculated and used to fit the spline. Otherwise the cdf approximations used are based on Barndorff-Nielsen's r*.

strata — A vector giving the strata when the rows of A relate to stratified data. This is used only when wdist is "m".

... — When A and u are functions any additional arguments are passed unchanged each time one of them is called.

Details

The range at which the saddlepoint is used is such that the cdf approximation at the endpoints is more extreme than required by the extreme values of alpha. The lower endpoint is found by evaluating the saddlepoint at the points t0[1]-2*t0[2], t0[1]-4*t0[2], t0[1]-8*t0[2] etc. until a point is found with a cdf approximation less than min(alpha)/10, then a bisection method is used to find the endpoint which has cdf approximation in the range (min(alpha)/1000, min(alpha)/10). Then a number of, equally spaced, points are chosen between the lower endpoint and t0[1] until

a total of npts/2 approximations have been made. The remaining npts/2 points are chosen to the right of t0[1] in a similar manner. Any points which are very close to the centre of the distribution are then omitted as the cdf approximations are not reliable at the centre. A smoothing spline is then fitted to the probit of the saddlepoint distribution function approximations at the remaining points and the required quantiles are predicted from the spline.

Sometimes the function will terminate with the message "Unable to find range". There are two main reasons why this may occur. One is that the distribution is too discrete and/or the required quantiles too extreme, this can cause the function to be unable to find a point within the allowable range which is beyond the extreme quantiles. Another possibility is that the value of t0[2] is too small and so too many steps are required to find the range. The first problem cannot be solved except by asking for less extreme quantiles, although for very discrete distributions the approximations may not be very good. In the second case using a larger value of t0[2] will usually solve the problem.

Value

The returned value is an object of class "saddle.distn". See the help file for saddle.distn.object for a description of such an object.

References

Booth, J.G. and Butler, R.W. (1990) Randomization distributions and saddlepoint approximations in generalized linear models. *Biometrika*, **77**, 787–796.

Canty, A.J. and Davison, A.C. (1997) Implementation of saddlepoint approximations to resampling distributions. *Computing Science and Statistics; Proceedings of the 28th Symposium on the Interface* 248–253.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Jensen, J.L. (1995) *Saddlepoint Approximations*. Oxford University Press.

See Also

lines.saddle.distn, saddle, saddle.distn.object, smooth.spline

Examples

```
#  The bootstrap distribution of the mean of the air-conditioning
#  failure data: fails to find value on R (and probably on S too)
air.t0 <- c(mean(aircondit$hours), sqrt(var(aircondit$hours)/12))
## Not run: saddle.distn(A = aircondit$hours/12, t0 = air.t0)

# alternatively using the conditional poisson
saddle.distn(A = cbind(aircondit$hours/12, 1), u = 12, wdist = "p",
             type = "cond", t0 = air.t0)

# Distribution of the ratio of a sample of size 10 from the bigcity
# data, taken from Example 9.16 of Davison and Hinkley (1997).
ratio <- function(d, w) sum(d$x *w)/sum(d$u * w)
city.v <- var.linear(empinf(data = city, statistic = ratio))
bigcity.t0 <- c(mean(bigcity$x)/mean(bigcity$u), sqrt(city.v))
Afn <- function(t, data) cbind(data$x - t*data$u, 1)
ufn <- function(t, data) c(0,10)
saddle.distn(A = Afn, u = ufn, wdist = "b", type = "cond",
             t0 = bigcity.t0, data = bigcity)
```

```
# From Example 9.16 of Davison and Hinkley (1997) again, we find the
# conditional distribution of the ratio given the sum of city$u.
Afn <- function(t, data) cbind(data$x-t*data$u, data$u, 1)
ufn <- function(t, data) c(0, sum(data$u), 10)
city.t0 <- c(mean(city$x)/mean(city$u), sqrt(city.v))
saddle.distn(A = Afn, u = ufn, wdist = "p", type = "cond", t0 = city.t0,
             data = city)
```

`saddle.distn.object` *Saddlepoint Distribution Approximation Objects*

Description

Class of objects that result from calculating saddlepoint distribution approximations by a call to `saddle.distn`.

Generation

This class of objects is returned from calls to the function `saddle.distn`.

Methods

The class `"saddle.distn"` has methods for the functions `lines` and `print`.

Structure

Objects of class `"saddle.distn"` are implemented as a list with the following components.

quantiles A matrix with 2 columns. The first column contains the probabilities `alpha` and the second column contains the estimated quantiles of the distribution at those probabilities derived from the spline.

points A matrix of evaluations of the saddlepoint approximation. The first column contains the values of `t` which were used, the second and third contain the density and cdf approximations at those points and the rest of the columns contain the solutions to the saddlepoint equations. When `type` is `"simp"`, there is only one of those. When `type` is `"cond"` there are `2*d-1` where `d` is the number of columns in `A` or the output of `A(t,...{})`. The first `d` of these correspond to the numerator and the remainder correspond to the denominator.

distn An object of class `smooth.spline`. This corresponds to the spline fitted to the saddlepoint cdf approximations in points in order to approximate the entire distribution. For the structure of the object see `smooth.spline`.

call The original call to `saddle.distn` which generated the object.

LR A logical variable indicating whether the Lugananni-Rice approximations were used.

See Also

`lines.saddle.distn`, `saddle.distn`, `print.saddle.distn`

salinity *Water Salinity and River Discharge*

Description

The `salinity` data frame has 28 rows and 4 columns.

Biweekly averages of the water salinity and river discharge in Pamlico Sound, North Carolina were recorded between the years 1972 and 1977. The data in this set consists only of those measurements in March, April and May.

Usage

```
salinity
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`sal` The average salinity of the water over two weeks.

`lag` The average salinity of the water lagged two weeks. Since only spring is used, the value of `lag` is not always equal to the previous value of `sal`.

`trend` A factor indicating in which of the 6 biweekly periods between March and May, the observations were taken. The levels of the factor are from 0 to 5 with 0 being the first two weeks in March.

`dis` The amount of river discharge during the two weeks for which `sal` is the average salinity.

Source

The data were obtained from

Ruppert, D. and Carroll, R.J. (1980) Trimmed least squares estimation in the linear model. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **75**, 828–838.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

simplex *Simplex Method for Linear Programming Problems*

Description

This function will optimize the linear function `a%*%x` subject to the constraints `A1%*%x <= b1`, `A2%*%x >= b2`, `A3%*%x = b3` and `x >= 0`. Either maximization or minimization is possible but the default is minimization.

Usage

```
simplex(a, A1 = NULL, b1 = NULL, A2 = NULL, b2 = NULL, A3 = NULL,
        b3 = NULL, maxi = FALSE, n.iter = n + 2 * m, eps = 1e-10)
```

Arguments

a	A vector of length n which gives the coefficients of the objective function.
A1	An m1 by n matrix of coefficients for the $\leq$ type of constraints.
b1	A vector of length m1 giving the right hand side of the $\leq$ constraints. This argument is required if A1 is given and ignored otherwise. All values in b1 must be non-negative.
A2	An m2 by n matrix of coefficients for the $\geq$ type of constraints.
b2	A vector of length m2 giving the right hand side of the $\geq$ constraints. This argument is required if A2 is given and ignored otherwise. All values in b2 must be non-negative. Note that the constraints x >= 0 are included automatically and so should not be repeated here.
A3	An m3 by n matrix of coefficients for the equality constraints.
b3	A vector of length m3 giving the right hand side of equality constraints. This argument is required if A3 is given and ignored otherwise. All values in b3 must be non-negative.
maxi	A logical flag which specifies minimization if FALSE (default) and maximization otherwise. If maxi is TRUE then the maximization problem is recast as a minimization problem by changing the objective function coefficients to their negatives.
n.iter	The maximum number of iterations to be conducted in each phase of the simplex method. The default is n+2*(m1+m2+m3).
eps	The floating point tolerance to be used in tests of equality.

Details

The method employed by this function is the two phase tableau simplex method. If there are $\geq$ or equality constraints an initial feasible solution is not easy to find. To find a feasible solution an artificial variable is introduced into each $\geq$ or equality constraint and an auxiliary objective function is defined as the sum of these artificial variables. If a feasible solution to the set of constraints exists then the auxiliary objective will be minimized when all of the artificial variables are 0. These are then discarded and the original problem solved starting at the solution to the auxiliary problem. If the only constraints are of the $\leq$ form, the origin is a feasible solution and so the first stage can be omitted.

Value

An object of class "simplex": see simplex.object.

Note

The method employed here is suitable only for relatively small systems. Also if possible the number of constraints should be reduced to a minimum in order to speed up the execution time which is approximately proportional to the cube of the number of constraints. In particular if there are any constraints of the form x[i] >= b2[i] they should be omitted by setting x[i] = x[i]-b2[i], changing all the constraints and the objective function accordingly and then transforming back after the solution has been found.

References

Gill, P.E., Murray, W. and Wright, M.H. (1991) *Numerical Linear Algebra and Optimization Vol. 1*. Addison-Wesley.

Press, W.H., Teukolsky, S.A., Vetterling, W.T. and Flannery, B.P. (1992) *Numerical Recipes: The Art of Scientific Computing (Second Edition)*. Cambridge University Press.

Examples

```
# This example is taken from Exercise 7.5 of Gill, Murray and Wright (1991).
enj <- c(200, 6000, 3000, -200)
fat <- c(800, 6000, 1000, 400)
vitx <- c(50, 3, 150, 100)
vity <- c(10, 10, 75, 100)
vitz <- c(150, 35, 75, 5)
simplex(a = enj, A1 = fat, b1 = 13800, A2 = rbind(vitx, vity, vitz),
        b2 = c(600, 300, 550), maxi = TRUE)
```

---

simplex.object *Linear Programming Solution Objects*

Description

Class of objects that result from solving a linear programming problem using `simplex`.

Generation

This class of objects is returned from calls to the function `simplex`.

Methods

The class `"saddle.distn"` has a method for the function `print`.

Structure

Objects of class `"simplex"` are implemented as a list with the following components.

soln The values of `x` which optimize the objective function under the specified constraints provided those constraints are jointly feasible.

solved This indicates whether the problem was solved. A value of `-1` indicates that no feasible solution could be found. A value of `0` that the maximum number of iterations was reached without termination of the second stage. This may indicate an unbounded function or simply that more iterations are needed. A value of `1` indicates that an optimal solution has been found.

value The value of the objective function at `soln`.

val.aux This is `NULL` if a feasible solution is found. Otherwise it is a positive value giving the value of the auxiliary objective function when it was minimized.

obj The original coefficients of the objective function.

a The objective function coefficients re-expressed such that the basic variables have coefficient zero.

a.aux This is `NULL` if a feasible solution is found. Otherwise it is the re-expressed auxiliary objective function at the termination of the first phase of the simplex method.

A The final constraint matrix which is expressed in terms of the non-basic variables. If a feasible solution is found then this will have dimensions `m1+m2+m3` by `n+m1+m2`, where the final `m1+m2` columns correspond to slack and surplus variables. If no feasible solution is found there will be an additional `m1+m2+m3` columns for the artificial variables introduced to solve the first phase of the problem.

basic The indices of the basic (non-zero) variables in the solution. Indices between `n+1` and `n+m1` correspond to slack variables, those between `n+m1+1` and `n+m2` correspond to surplus variables and those greater than `n+m2` are artificial variables. Indices greater than `n+m2` should occur only if `solved` is `-1` as the artificial variables are discarded in the second stage of the simplex method.

slack The final values of the `m1` slack variables which arise when the "<=" constraints are re-expressed as the equalities `A1%*%x + slack = b1`.

surplus The final values of the `m2` surplus variables which arise when the "<=" constraints are re-expressed as the equalities `A2%*%x - surplus = b2`.

artificial This is NULL if a feasible solution can be found. If no solution can be found then this contains the values of the `m1+m2+m3` artificial variables which minimize their sum subject to the original constraints. A feasible solution exists only if all of the artificial variables can be made 0 simultaneously.

See Also

`print.simplex`, `simplex`

`smooth.f` *Smooth Distributions on Data Points*

Description

This function uses the method of frequency smoothing to find a distribution on a data set which has a required value, `theta`, of the statistic of interest. The method results in distributions which vary smoothly with `theta`.

Usage

```
smooth.f(theta, boot.out, index = 1, t = boot.out$t[, index],
         width = 0.5)
```

Arguments

`theta`	The required value for the statistic of interest. If `theta` is a vector, a separate distribution will be found for each element of `theta`.
`boot.out`	A bootstrap output object returned by a call to `boot`.
`index`	The index of the variable of interest in the output of `boot.out$statistic`. This argument is ignored if `t` is supplied. `index` must be a scalar.
`t`	The bootstrap values of the statistic of interest. This must be a vector of length `boot.out$R` and the values must be in the same order as the bootstrap replicates in `boot.out`.
`width`	The standardized width for the kernel smoothing. The smoothing uses a value of `width*s` for epsilon, where `s` is the bootstrap estimate of the standard error of the statistic of interest. `width` should take a value in the range (0.2, 1) to produce a reasonable smoothed distribution. If `width` is too large then the distribution becomes closer to uniform.

Details

The new distributional weights are found by applying a normal kernel smoother to the observed values of `t` weighted by the observed frequencies in the bootstrap simulation. The resulting distribution may not have parameter value exactly equal to the required value `theta` but it will typically have a value which is close to `theta`. The details of how this method works can be found in Davison, Hinkley and Worton (1995) and Section 3.9.2 of Davison and Hinkley (1997).

Value

If `length(theta)` is 1 then a vector with the same length as the data set `boot.out$data` is returned. The value in position `i` is the probability to be given to the data point in position `i` so that the distribution has parameter value approximately equal to `theta`. If `length(theta)` is bigger than 1 then the returned value is a matrix with `length(theta)` rows each of which corresponds to a distribution with the parameter value approximately equal to the corresponding value of `theta`.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Davison, A.C., Hinkley, D.V. and Worton, B.J. (1995) Accurate and efficient construction of bootstrap likelihoods. *Statistics and Computing*, **5**, 257–264.

See Also

`boot`, `exp.tilt`, `tilt.boot`

Examples

```
# Example 9.8 of Davison and Hinkley (1997) requires tilting the resampling
# distribution of the studentized statistic to be centred at the observed
# value of the test statistic 1.84.  In the book exponential tilting was used
# but it is also possible to use smooth.f.
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[, 2]) >= 7, ]
grav.fun <- function(dat, w, orig) {
     strata <- tapply(dat[, 2], as.numeric(dat[, 2]))
     d <- dat[, 1]
     ns <- tabulate(strata)
     w <- w/tapply(w, strata, sum)[strata]
     mns <- as.vector(tapply(d * w, strata, sum)) # drop names
     mn2 <- tapply(d * d * w, strata, sum)
     s2hat <- sum((mn2 - mns^2)/ns)
     c(mns[2] - mns[1], s2hat, (mns[2]-mns[1]-orig)/sqrt(s2hat))
}
grav.z0 <- grav.fun(grav1, rep(1, 26), 0)
grav.boot <- boot(grav1, grav.fun, R = 499, stype = "w",
                  strata = grav1[, 2], orig = grav.z0[1])
grav.sm <- smooth.f(grav.z0[3], grav.boot, index = 3)

# Now we can run another bootstrap using these weights
grav.boot2 <- boot(grav1, grav.fun, R = 499, stype = "w",
                   strata = grav1[, 2], orig = grav.z0[1],
                   weights = grav.sm)

# Estimated p-values can be found from these as follows
mean(grav.boot$t[, 3] >= grav.z0[3])
```

```
imp.prob(grav.boot2, t0 = -grav.z0[3], t = -grav.boot2$t[, 3])


# Note that for the importance sampling probability we must
# multiply everything by -1 to ensure that we find the correct
# probability.  Raw resampling is not reliable for probabilities
# greater than 0.5. Thus
1 - imp.prob(grav.boot2, index = 3, t0 = grav.z0[3])$raw
# can give very strange results (negative probabilities).
```

`sunspot` *Annual Mean Sunspot Numbers*

Description

`sunspot` is a time series and contains 289 observations.

The Zurich sunspot numbers have been analyzed in almost all books on time series analysis as well as numerous papers. The data set, usually attributed to Rudolf Wolf, consists of means of daily relative numbers of sunspot sightings. The relative number for a day is given by k(f+10g) where g is the number of sunspot groups observed, f is the total number of spots within the groups and k is a scaling factor relating the observer and telescope to a baseline. The relative numbers are then averaged to give an annual figure. See Inzenman (1983) for a discussion of the relative numbers. The figures are for the years 1700-1988.

Source

The data were obtained from

Tong, H. (1990) *Nonlinear Time Series: A Dynamical System Approach*. Oxford University Press

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Inzenman, A.J. (1983) J.R. Wolf and H.A. Wolfer: An historical note on the Zurich sunspot relative numbers. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, A*, **146**, 311-318.

Waldmeir, M. (1961) *The Sunspot Activity in the Years 1610-1960*. Schulthess and Co.

`survival` *Survival of Rats after Radiation Doses*

Description

The `survival` data frame has 14 rows and 2 columns.

The data measured the survival percentages of batches of rats who were given varying doses of radiation. At each of 6 doses there were two or three replications of the experiment.

Usage

```
survival
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`dose` The dose of radiation administered (rads).

`surv` The survival rate of the batches expressed as a percentage.

Source

The data were obtained from

Efron, B. (1988) Computer-intensive methods in statistical regression. *SIAM Review*, **30**, 421–449.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`tau` *Tau Particle Decay Modes*

Description

The `tau` data frame has 60 rows and 2 columns.

The tau particle is a heavy electron-like particle discovered in the 1970's by Martin Perl at the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center. Soon after its production the tau particle decays into various collections of more stable particles. About 86% of the time the decay involves just one charged particle. This rate has been measured independently 13 times.

The one-charged-particle event is made up of four major modes of decay as well as a collection of other events. The four main types of decay are denoted rho, pi, e and mu. These rates have been measured independently 6, 7, 14 and 19 times respectively. Due to physical constraints each experiment can only estimate the composite one-charged-particle decay rate or the rate of one of the major modes of decay.

Each experiment consists of a major research project involving many years work. One of the goals of the experiments was to estimate the rate of decay due to events other than the four main modes of decay. These are uncertain events and so cannot themselves be observed directly.

Usage

```
tau
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`rate` The decay rate expressed as a percentage.

`decay` The type of decay measured in the experiment. It is a factor with levels `1`, `rho`, `pi`, `e` and `mu`.

Source

The data were obtained from

Efron, B. (1992) Jackknife-after-bootstrap standard errors and influence functions (with Discussion). *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, **54**, 83–127.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Hayes, K.G., Perl, M.L. and Efron, B. (1989) Application of the bootstrap statistical method to the tau-decay-mode problem. *Physical Review, D*, **39**, 274-279.

`tilt.boot` *Non-parametric Tilted Bootstrap*

Description

This function will run an initial bootstrap with equal resampling probabilities (if required) and will use the output of the initial run to find resampling probabilities which put the value of the statistic at required values. It then runs an importance resampling bootstrap using the calculated probabilities as the resampling distribution.

Usage

```
tilt.boot(data, statistic, R, sim = "ordinary", stype = "i",
          strata = rep(1, n), L = NULL, theta = NULL,
          alpha = c(0.025, 0.975), tilt = TRUE, width = 0.5,
          index = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

`data`	The data as a vector, matrix or data frame. If it is a matrix or data frame then each row is considered as one (multivariate) observation.
`statistic`	A function which when applied to data returns a vector containing the statistic(s) of interest. It must take at least two arguments. The first argument will always be `data` and the second should be a vector of indices, weights or frequencies describing the bootstrap sample. Any other arguments must be supplied to `tilt.boot` and will be passed unchanged to statistic each time it is called.
`R`	The number of bootstrap replicates required. This will generally be a vector, the first value stating how many uniform bootstrap simulations are to be performed at the initial stage. The remaining values of `R` are the number of simulations to be performed resampling from each reweighted distribution. The first value of `R` must always be present, a value of 0 implying that no uniform resampling is to be carried out. Thus `length(R)` should always equal `1+length(theta)`.
`sim`	This is a character string indicating the type of bootstrap simulation required. There are only two possible values that this can take: `"ordinary"` and `"balanced"`. If other simulation types are required for the initial un-weighted bootstrap then it will be necessary to run `boot`, calculate the weights appropriately, and run `boot` again using the calculated weights.
`stype`	A character string indicating the type of second argument expected by `statistic`. The possible values that `stype` can take are `"i"` (indices), `"w"` (weights) and `"f"` (frequencies).
`strata`	An integer vector or factor representing the strata for multi-sample problems.

L	The empirical influence values for the statistic of interest. They are used only for exponential tilting when tilt is TRUE. If tilt is TRUE and they are not supplied then tilt.boot uses empinf to calculate them.
theta	The required parameter value(s) for the tilted distribution(s). There should be one value of theta for each of the non-uniform distributions. If R[1] is 0 theta is a required argument. Otherwise theta values can be estimated from the initial uniform bootstrap and the values in alpha.
alpha	The alpha level to which tilting is required. This parameter is ignored if R[1] is 0 or if theta is supplied, otherwise it is used to find the values of theta as quantiles of the initial uniform bootstrap. In this case R[1] should be large enough that min(c(alpha, 1-alpha))*R[1] > 5, if this is not the case then a warning is generated to the effect that the theta are extreme values and so the tilted output may be unreliable.
tilt	A logical variable which if TRUE (the default) indicates that exponential tilting should be used, otherwise local frequency smoothing (smooth.f) is used. If tilt is FALSE then R[1] must be positive. In fact in this case the value of R[1] should be fairly large (in the region of 500 or more).
width	This argument is used only if tilt is FALSE, in which case it is passed unchanged to smooth.f as the standardized bandwidth for the smoothing operation. The value should generally be in the range (0.2, 1). See smooth.f for for more details.
index	The index of the statistic of interest in the output from statistic. By default the first element of the output of statistic is used.
...	Any additional arguments required by statistic. These are passed unchanged to statistic each time it is called.

Value

An object of class "boot" with the following components

t0	The observed value of the statistic on the original data.
t	The values of the bootstrap replicates of the statistic. There will be sum(R) of these, the first R[1] corresponding to the uniform bootstrap and the remainder to the tilted bootstrap(s).
R	The input vector of the number of bootstrap replicates.
data	The original data as supplied.
statistic	The statistic function as supplied.
sim	The simulation type used in the bootstrap(s), it can either be "ordinary" or "balanced".
stype	The type of statistic supplied, it is the same as the input value stype.
call	A copy of the original call to tilt.boot.
strata	The strata as supplied.
weights	The matrix of weights used. If R[1] is greater than 0 then the first row will be the uniform weights and each subsequent row the tilted weights. If R[1] equals 0 then the uniform weights are omitted and only the tilted weights are output.
theta	The values of theta used for the tilted distributions. These are either the input values or the values derived from the uniform bootstrap and alpha.

References

Booth, J.G., Hall, P. and Wood, A.T.A. (1993) Balanced importance resampling for the bootstrap. *Annals of Statistics*, **21**, 286–298.

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Hinkley, D.V. and Shi, S. (1989) Importance sampling and the nested bootstrap. *Biometrika*, **76**, 435–446.

See Also

boot, exp.tilt, Imp.Estimates, imp.weights, smooth.f

Examples

```
# Note that these examples can take a while to run.

# Example 9.9 of Davison and Hinkley (1997).
grav1 <- gravity[as.numeric(gravity[,2]) >= 7, ]
grav.fun <- function(dat, w, orig) {
     strata <- tapply(dat[, 2], as.numeric(dat[, 2]))
     d <- dat[, 1]
     ns <- tabulate(strata)
     w <- w/tapply(w, strata, sum)[strata]
     mns <- as.vector(tapply(d * w, strata, sum)) # drop names
     mn2 <- tapply(d * d * w, strata, sum)
     s2hat <- sum((mn2 - mns^2)/ns)
     c(mns[2]-mns[1],s2hat,(mns[2]-mns[1]-orig)/sqrt(s2hat))
}
grav.z0 <- grav.fun(grav1, rep(1, 26), 0)
tilt.boot(grav1, grav.fun, R = c(249, 375, 375), stype = "w",
          strata = grav1[,2], tilt = TRUE, index = 3, orig = grav.z0[1])


#  Example 9.10 of Davison and Hinkley (1997) requires a balanced
#  importance resampling bootstrap to be run.  In this example we
#  show how this might be run.
acme.fun <- function(data, i, bhat) {
     d <- data[i,]
     n <- nrow(d)
     d.lm <- glm(d$acme~d$market)
     beta.b <- coef(d.lm)[2]
     d.diag <- boot::glm.diag(d.lm)
     SSx <- (n-1)*var(d$market)
     tmp <- (d$market-mean(d$market))*d.diag$res*d.diag$sd
     sr <- sqrt(sum(tmp^2))/SSx
     c(beta.b, sr, (beta.b-bhat)/sr)
}
acme.b <- acme.fun(acme, 1:nrow(acme), 0)
acme.boot1 <- tilt.boot(acme, acme.fun, R = c(499, 250, 250),
                        stype = "i", sim = "balanced", alpha = c(0.05, 0.95),
                        tilt = TRUE, index = 3, bhat = acme.b[1])
```

tsboot *Bootstrapping of Time Series*

Description

Generate R bootstrap replicates of a statistic applied to a time series. The replicate time series can be generated using fixed or random block lengths or can be model based replicates.

Usage

```
tsboot(tseries, statistic, R, l = NULL, sim = "model",
       endcorr = TRUE, n.sim = NROW(tseries), orig.t = TRUE,
       ran.gen, ran.args = NULL, norm = TRUE, ...,
       parallel = c("no", "multicore", "snow"),
       ncpus = getOption("boot.ncpus", 1L), cl = NULL)
```

Arguments

tseries	A univariate or multivariate time series.
statistic	A function which when applied to tseries returns a vector containing the statistic(s) of interest. Each time statistic is called it is passed a time series of length n.sim which is of the same class as the original tseries. Any other arguments which statistic takes must remain constant for each bootstrap replicate and should be supplied through the ... argument to tsboot.
R	A positive integer giving the number of bootstrap replicates required.
sim	The type of simulation required to generate the replicate time series. The possible input values are "model" (model based resampling), "fixed" (block resampling with fixed block lengths of l), "geom" (block resampling with block lengths having a geometric distribution with mean l) or "scramble" (phase scrambling).
l	If sim is "fixed" then l is the fixed block length used in generating the replicate time series. If sim is "geom" then l is the mean of the geometric distribution used to generate the block lengths. l should be a positive integer less than the length of tseries. This argument is not required when sim is "model" but it is required for all other simulation types.
endcorr	A logical variable indicating whether end corrections are to be applied when sim is "fixed". When sim is "geom", endcorr is automatically set to TRUE; endcorr is not used when sim is "model" or "scramble".
n.sim	The length of the simulated time series. Typically this will be equal to the length of the original time series but there are situations when it will be larger. One obvious situation is if prediction is required. Another situation in which n.sim is larger than the original length is if tseries is a residual time series from fitting some model to the original time series. In this case, n.sim would usually be the length of the original time series.
orig.t	A logical variable which indicates whether statistic should be applied to tseries itself as well as the bootstrap replicate series. If statistic is expecting a longer time series than tseries or if applying statistic to tseries will not yield any useful information then orig.t should be set to FALSE.

`ran.gen` This is a function of three arguments. The first argument is a time series. If `sim` is `"model"` then it will always be `tseries` that is passed. For other simulation types it is the result of selecting `n.sim` observations from `tseries` by some scheme and converting the result back into a time series of the same form as `tseries` (although of length `n.sim`). The second argument to `ran.gen` is always the value `n.sim`, and the third argument is `ran.args`, which is used to supply any other objects needed by `ran.gen`. If `sim` is `"model"` then the generation of the replicate time series will be done in `ran.gen` (for example through use of `arima.sim`). For the other simulation types `ran.gen` is used for 'post-blackening'. The default is that the function simply returns the time series passed to it.

`ran.args` This will be supplied to `ran.gen` each time it is called. If `ran.gen` needs any extra arguments then they should be supplied as components of `ran.args`. Multiple arguments may be passed by making `ran.args` a list. If `ran.args` is `NULL` then it should not be used within `ran.gen` but note that `ran.gen` must still have its third argument.

`norm` A logical argument indicating whether normal margins should be used for phase scrambling. If `norm` is `FALSE` then margins corresponding to the exact empirical margins are used.

`...` Extra named arguments to `statistic` may be supplied here. Beware of partial matching to the arguments of `tsboot` listed above.

`parallel, ncpus, cl`
See the help for `boot`.

Details

If `sim` is `"fixed"` then each replicate time series is found by taking blocks of length `l`, from the original time series and putting them end-to-end until a new series of length `n.sim` is created. When `sim` is `"geom"` a similar approach is taken except that now the block lengths are generated from a geometric distribution with mean `l`. Post-blackening can be carried out on these replicate time series by including the function `ran.gen` in the call to `tsboot` and having `tseries` as a time series of residuals.

Model based resampling is very similar to the parametric bootstrap and all simulation must be in one of the user specified functions. This avoids the complicated problem of choosing the block length but relies on an accurate model choice being made.

Phase scrambling is described in Section 8.2.4 of Davison and Hinkley (1997). The types of statistic for which this method produces reasonable results is very limited and the other methods seem to do better in most situations. Other types of resampling in the frequency domain can be accomplished using the function `boot` with the argument `sim = "parametric"`.

Value

An object of class `"boot"` with the following components.

`t0` If `orig.t` is `TRUE` then `t0` is the result of `statistic(tseries,...{})` otherwise it is `NULL`.

`t` The results of applying `statistic` to the replicate time series.

`R` The value of `R` as supplied to `tsboot`.

`tseries` The original time series.

`statistic` The function `statistic` as supplied.

sim	The simulation type used in generating the replicates.
endcorr	The value of endcorr used. The value is meaningful only when sim is "fixed"; it is ignored for model based simulation or phase scrambling and is always set to TRUE if sim is "geom".
n.sim	The value of n.sim used.
l	The value of l used for block based resampling. This will be NULL if block based resampling was not used.
ran.gen	The ran.gen function used for generating the series or for 'post-blackening'.
ran.args	The extra arguments passed to ran.gen.
call	The original call to tsboot.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Kunsch, H.R. (1989) The jackknife and the bootstrap for general stationary observations. *Annals of Statistics*, **17**, 1217–1241.

Politis, D.N. and Romano, J.P. (1994) The stationary bootstrap. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **89**, 1303–1313.

See Also

boot, arima.sim

Examples

```
lynx.fun <- function(tsb) {
     ar.fit <- ar(tsb, order.max = 25)
     c(ar.fit$order, mean(tsb), tsb)
}

# the stationary bootstrap with mean block length 20
lynx.1 <- tsboot(log(lynx), lynx.fun, R = 99, l = 20, sim = "geom")

# the fixed block bootstrap with length 20
lynx.2 <- tsboot(log(lynx), lynx.fun, R = 99, l = 20, sim = "fixed")

# Now for model based resampling we need the original model
# Note that for all of the bootstraps which use the residuals as their
# data, we set orig.t to FALSE since the function applied to the residual
# time series will be meaningless.
lynx.ar <- ar(log(lynx))
lynx.model <- list(order = c(lynx.ar$order, 0, 0), ar = lynx.ar$ar)
lynx.res <- lynx.ar$resid[!is.na(lynx.ar$resid)]
lynx.res <- lynx.res - mean(lynx.res)

lynx.sim <- function(res,n.sim, ran.args) {
     # random generation of replicate series using arima.sim
     rg1 <- function(n, res) sample(res, n, replace = TRUE)
     ts.orig <- ran.args$ts
     ts.mod <- ran.args$model
     mean(ts.orig)+ts(arima.sim(model = ts.mod, n = n.sim,
                     rand.gen = rg1, res = as.vector(res)))
```

```
}

lynx.3 <- tsboot(lynx.res, lynx.fun, R = 99, sim = "model", n.sim = 114,
                 orig.t = FALSE, ran.gen = lynx.sim,
                 ran.args = list(ts = log(lynx), model = lynx.model))

#  For "post-blackening" we need to define another function
lynx.black <- function(res, n.sim, ran.args) {
     ts.orig <- ran.args$ts
     ts.mod <- ran.args$model
     mean(ts.orig) + ts(arima.sim(model = ts.mod,n = n.sim,innov = res))
}

# Now we can run apply the two types of block resampling again but this
# time applying post-blackening.
lynx.1b <- tsboot(lynx.res, lynx.fun, R = 99, l = 20, sim = "fixed",
                  n.sim = 114, orig.t = FALSE, ran.gen = lynx.black,
                  ran.args = list(ts = log(lynx), model = lynx.model))

lynx.2b <- tsboot(lynx.res, lynx.fun, R = 99, l = 20, sim = "geom",
                  n.sim = 114, orig.t = FALSE, ran.gen = lynx.black,
                  ran.args = list(ts = log(lynx), model = lynx.model))

# To compare the observed order of the bootstrap replicates we
# proceed as follows.
table(lynx.1$t[, 1])
table(lynx.1b$t[, 1])
table(lynx.2$t[, 1])
table(lynx.2b$t[, 1])
table(lynx.3$t[, 1])
# Notice that the post-blackened and model-based bootstraps preserve
# the true order of the model (11) in many more cases than the others.
```

`tuna` *Tuna Sighting Data*

Description

The `tuna` data frame has 64 rows and 1 columns.

The data come from an aerial line transect survey of Southern Bluefin Tuna in the Great Australian Bight. An aircraft with two spotters on board flies randomly allocated line transects. Each school of tuna sighted is counted and its perpendicular distance from the transect measured. The survey was conducted in summer when tuna tend to stay on the surface.

Usage

```
tuna
```

Format

This data frame contains the following column:

`y` The perpendicular distance, in miles, from the transect for 64 independent sightings of tuna schools.

Source

The data were obtained from

Chen, S.X. (1996) Empirical likelihood confidence intervals for nonparametric density estimation. *Biometrika*, **83**, 329–341.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

`urine` *Urine Analysis Data*

Description

The `urine` data frame has 79 rows and 7 columns.

79 urine specimens were analyzed in an effort to determine if certain physical characteristics of the urine might be related to the formation of calcium oxalate crystals.

Usage

```
urine
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`r` Indicator of the presence of calcium oxalate crystals.

`gravity` The specific gravity of the urine.

`ph` The pH reading of the urine.

`osmo` The osmolarity of the urine. Osmolarity is proportional to the concentration of molecules in solution.

`cond` The conductivity of the urine. Conductivity is proportional to the concentration of charged ions in solution.

`urea` The urea concentration in millimoles per litre.

`calc` The calcium concentration in millimoles per litre.

Source

The data were obtained from

Andrews, D.F. and Herzberg, A.M. (1985) *Data: A Collection of Problems from Many Fields for the Student and Research Worker*. Springer-Verlag.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

var.linear *Linear Variance Estimate*

Description

Estimates the variance of a statistic from its empirical influence values.

Usage

```
var.linear(L, strata = NULL)
```

Arguments

L	Vector of the empirical influence values of a statistic. These will usually be calculated by a call to empinf.
strata	A numeric vector or factor specifying which observations (and hence empirical influence values) come from which strata.

Value

The variance estimate calculated from L.

References

Davison, A. C. and Hinkley, D. V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

See Also

empinf, linear.approx, k3.linear

Examples

```
#  To estimate the variance of the ratio of means for the city data.
ratio <- function(d,w) sum(d$x * w)/sum(d$u * w)
var.linear(empinf(data = city, statistic = ratio))
```

wool *Australian Relative Wool Prices*

Description

wool is a time series of class "ts" and contains 309 observations.

Each week that the market is open the Australian Wool Corporation set a floor price which determines their policy on intervention and is therefore a reflection of the overall price of wool for the week in question. Actual prices paid can vary considerably about the floor price. The series here is the log of the ratio between the price for fine grade wool and the floor price, each market week between July 1976 and Jun 1984.

Source

The data were obtained from

Diggle, P.J. (1990) *Time Series: A Biostatistical Introduction*. Oxford University Press.

References

Davison, A.C. and Hinkley, D.V. (1997) *Bootstrap Methods and Their Application*. Cambridge University Press.

Chapter 19

The `class` package

`batchSOM` *Self-Organizing Maps: Batch Algorithm*

Description

Kohonen's Self-Organizing Maps are a crude form of multidimensional scaling.

Usage

```
batchSOM(data, grid = somgrid(), radii, init)
```

Arguments

`data`	a matrix or data frame of observations, scaled so that Euclidean distance is appropriate.
`grid`	A grid for the representatives: see `somgrid`.
`radii`	the radii of the neighbourhood to be used for each pass: one pass is run for each element of `radii`.
`init`	the initial representatives. If missing, chosen (without replacement) randomly from `data`.

Details

The batch SOM algorithm of Kohonen(1995, section 3.14) is used.

Value

An object of class `"SOM"` with components

`grid`	the grid, an object of class `"somgrid"`.
`codes`	a matrix of representatives.

References

Kohonen, T. (1995) *Self-Organizing Maps.* Springer-Verlag.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

somgrid, SOM

Examples

```
require(graphics)
data(crabs, package = "MASS")

lcrabs <- log(crabs[, 4:8])
crabs.grp <- factor(c("B", "b", "O", "o")[rep(1:4, rep(50,4))])
gr <- somgrid(topo = "hexagonal")
crabs.som <- batchSOM(lcrabs, gr, c(4, 4, 2, 2, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0))
plot(crabs.som)

bins <- as.numeric(knn1(crabs.som$code, lcrabs, 0:47))
plot(crabs.som$grid, type = "n")
symbols(crabs.som$grid$pts[, 1], crabs.som$grid$pts[, 2],
        circles = rep(0.4, 48), inches = FALSE, add = TRUE)
text(crabs.som$grid$pts[bins, ] + rnorm(400, 0, 0.1),
     as.character(crabs.grp))
```

---

condense *Condense training set for k-NN classifier*

Description

Condense training set for k-NN classifier

Usage

```
condense(train, class, store, trace = TRUE)
```

Arguments

train	matrix for training set
class	vector of classifications for test set
store	initial store set. Default one randomly chosen element of the set.
trace	logical. Trace iterations?

Details

The store set is used to 1-NN classify the rest, and misclassified patterns are added to the store set. The whole set is checked until no additions occur.

Value

Index vector of cases to be retained (the final store set).

References

P. A. Devijver and J. Kittler (1982) *Pattern Recognition. A Statistical Approach.* Prentice-Hall, pp. 119–121.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

reduce.nn, multiedit

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
keep <- condense(train, cl)
knn(train[keep, , drop=FALSE], test, cl[keep])
keep2 <- reduce.nn(train, keep, cl)
knn(train[keep2, , drop=FALSE], test, cl[keep2])
```

---

knn *k-Nearest Neighbour Classification*

Description

k-nearest neighbour classification for test set from training set. For each row of the test set, the k nearest (in Euclidean distance) training set vectors are found, and the classification is decided by majority vote, with ties broken at random. If there are ties for the kth nearest vector, all candidates are included in the vote.

Usage

```
knn(train, test, cl, k = 1, l = 0, prob = FALSE, use.all = TRUE)
```

Arguments

train	matrix or data frame of training set cases.
test	matrix or data frame of test set cases. A vector will be interpreted as a row vector for a single case.
cl	factor of true classifications of training set
k	number of neighbours considered.
l	minimum vote for definite decision, otherwise doubt. (More precisely, less than k-l dissenting votes are allowed, even if k is increased by ties.)
prob	If this is true, the proportion of the votes for the winning class are returned as attribute prob.
use.all	controls handling of ties. If true, all distances equal to the kth largest are included. If false, a random selection of distances equal to the kth is chosen to use exactly k neighbours.

Value

Factor of classifications of test set. doubt will be returned as NA.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

knn1, knn.cv

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
knn(train, test, cl, k = 3, prob=TRUE)
attributes(.Last.value)
```

---

knn.cv *k-Nearest Neighbour Cross-Validatory Classification*

Description

k-nearest neighbour cross-validatory classification from training set.

Usage

```
knn.cv(train, cl, k = 1, l = 0, prob = FALSE, use.all = TRUE)
```

Arguments

train	matrix or data frame of training set cases.
cl	factor of true classifications of training set
k	number of neighbours considered.
l	minimum vote for definite decision, otherwise doubt. (More precisely, less than k-l dissenting votes are allowed, even if k is increased by ties.)
prob	If this is true, the proportion of the votes for the winning class are returned as attribute prob.
use.all	controls handling of ties. If true, all distances equal to the kth largest are included. If false, a random selection of distances equal to the kth is chosen to use exactly k neighbours.

Details

This uses leave-one-out cross validation. For each row of the training set train, the k nearest (in Euclidean distance) other training set vectors are found, and the classification is decided by majority vote, with ties broken at random. If there are ties for the kth nearest vector, all candidates are included in the vote.

Value

Factor of classifications of training set. `doubt` will be returned as `NA`.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

knn

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[,,1], iris3[,,2], iris3[,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",50), rep("c",50), rep("v",50)))
knn.cv(train, cl, k = 3, prob = TRUE)
attributes(.Last.value)
```

---

knn1 *1-nearest neighbour classification*

Description

Nearest neighbour classification for test set from training set. For each row of the test set, the nearest (by Euclidean distance) training set vector is found, and its classification used. If there is more than one nearest, a majority vote is used with ties broken at random.

Usage

```
knn1(train, test, cl)
```

Arguments

`train`	matrix or data frame of training set cases.
`test`	matrix or data frame of test set cases. A vector will be interpreted as a row vector for a single case.
`cl`	factor of true classification of training set.

Value

Factor of classifications of test set.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

knn

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
knn1(train, test, cl)
```

`lvq1` *Learning Vector Quantization 1*

Description

Moves examples in a codebook to better represent the training set.

Usage

```
lvq1(x, cl, codebk, niter = 100 * nrow(codebk$x), alpha = 0.03)
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix or data frame of examples
`cl`	a vector or factor of classifications for the examples
`codebk`	a codebook
`niter`	number of iterations
`alpha`	constant for training

Details

Selects `niter` examples at random with replacement, and adjusts the nearest example in the codebook for each.

Value

A codebook, represented as a list with components `x` and `cl` giving the examples and classes.

References

Kohonen, T. (1990) The self-organizing map. *Proc. IEEE* **78**, 1464–1480.

Kohonen, T. (1995) *Self-Organizing Maps.* Springer, Berlin.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`lvqinit`, `olvq1`, `lvq2`, `lvq3`, `lvqtest`

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
cd <- lvqinit(train, cl, 10)
lvqtest(cd, train)
cd0 <- olvq1(train, cl, cd)
lvqtest(cd0, train)
cd1 <- lvq1(train, cl, cd0)
lvqtest(cd1, train)
```

---

lvq2 *Learning Vector Quantization 2.1*

Description

Moves examples in a codebook to better represent the training set.

Usage

```
lvq2(x, cl, codebk, niter = 100 * nrow(codebk$x), alpha = 0.03,
     win = 0.3)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix or data frame of examples
cl	a vector or factor of classifications for the examples
codebk	a codebook
niter	number of iterations
alpha	constant for training
win	a tolerance for the closeness of the two nearest vectors.

Details

Selects niter examples at random with replacement, and adjusts the nearest two examples in the codebook if one is correct and the other incorrect.

Value

A codebook, represented as a list with components x and cl giving the examples and classes.

References

Kohonen, T. (1990) The self-organizing map. *Proc. IEEE* **78**, 1464–1480.

Kohonen, T. (1995) *Self-Organizing Maps.* Springer, Berlin.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

lvqinit, lvq1, olvq1, lvq3, lvqtest

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
cd <- lvqinit(train, cl, 10)
lvqtest(cd, train)
cd0 <- olvq1(train, cl, cd)
lvqtest(cd0, train)
cd2 <- lvq2(train, cl, cd0)
lvqtest(cd2, train)
```

---

lvq3 *Learning Vector Quantization 3*

Description

Moves examples in a codebook to better represent the training set.

Usage

```
lvq3(x, cl, codebk, niter = 100*nrow(codebk$x), alpha = 0.03,
     win = 0.3, epsilon = 0.1)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix or data frame of examples
cl	a vector or factor of classifications for the examples
codebk	a codebook
niter	number of iterations
alpha	constant for training
win	a tolerance for the closeness of the two nearest vectors.
epsilon	proportion of move for correct vectors

Details

Selects niter examples at random with replacement, and adjusts the nearest two examples in the codebook for each.

Value

A codebook, represented as a list with components x and cl giving the examples and classes.

References

Kohonen, T. (1990) The self-organizing map. *Proc. IEEE* **78**, 1464–1480.

Kohonen, T. (1995) *Self-Organizing Maps.* Springer, Berlin.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`lvqinit`, `lvq1`, `olvq1`, `lvq2`, `lvqtest`

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
cd <- lvqinit(train, cl, 10)
lvqtest(cd, train)
cd0 <- olvq1(train, cl, cd)
lvqtest(cd0, train)
cd3 <- lvq3(train, cl, cd0)
lvqtest(cd3, train)
```

`lvqinit` *Initialize a LVQ Codebook*

Description

Construct an initial codebook for LVQ methods.

Usage

```
lvqinit(x, cl, size, prior, k = 5)
```

Arguments

`x`	a matrix or data frame of training examples, `n` by `p`.
`cl`	the classifications for the training examples. A vector or factor of length `n`.
`size`	the size of the codebook. Defaults to `min(round(0.4*ng*(ng-1 + p/2),0), n)` where `ng` is the number of classes.
`prior`	Probabilities to represent classes in the codebook. Default proportions in the training set.
`k`	k used for k-NN test of correct classification. Default is 5.

Details

Selects `size` examples from the training set without replacement with proportions proportional to the prior or the original proportions.

Value

A codebook, represented as a list with components `x` and `cl` giving the examples and classes.

References

Kohonen, T. (1990) The self-organizing map. *Proc. IEEE* **78**, 1464–1480.

Kohonen, T. (1995) *Self-Organizing Maps.* Springer, Berlin.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`lvq1`, `lvq2`, `lvq3`, `olvq1`, `lvqtest`

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
cd <- lvqinit(train, cl, 10)
lvqtest(cd, train)
cd1 <- olvq1(train, cl, cd)
lvqtest(cd1, train)
```

---

lvqtest *Classify Test Set from LVQ Codebook*

Description

Classify a test set by 1-NN from a specified LVQ codebook.

Usage

```
lvqtest(codebk, test)
```

Arguments

`codebk`	codebook object returned by other LVQ software
`test`	matrix of test examples

Details

Uses 1-NN to classify each test example against the codebook.

Value

Factor of classification for each row of `x`

References

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

lvqinit, olvq1

Examples

```
# The function is currently defined as
function(codebk, test) knn1(codebk$x, test, codebk$cl)
```

`multiedit` *Multiedit for k-NN Classifier*

Description

Multiedit for k-NN classifier

Usage

```
multiedit(x, class, k = 1, V = 3, I = 5, trace = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	matrix of training set.
`class`	vector of classification of training set.
`k`	number of neighbours used in k-NN.
`V`	divide training set into V parts.
`I`	number of null passes before quitting.
`trace`	logical for statistics at each pass.

Value

Index vector of cases to be retained.

References

P. A. Devijver and J. Kittler (1982) *Pattern Recognition. A Statistical Approach.* Prentice-Hall, p. 115.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

condense, reduce.nn

Examples

```
tr <- sample(1:50, 25)
train <- rbind(iris3[tr,,1], iris3[tr,,2], iris3[tr,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[-tr,,1], iris3[-tr,,2], iris3[-tr,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep(1,25),rep(2,25), rep(3,25)), labels=c("s", "c", "v"))
table(cl, knn(train, test, cl, 3))
ind1 <- multiedit(train, cl, 3)
length(ind1)
table(cl, knn(train[ind1, , drop=FALSE], test, cl[ind1], 1))
ntrain <- train[ind1,]; ncl <- cl[ind1]
ind2 <- condense(ntrain, ncl)
length(ind2)
table(cl, knn(ntrain[ind2, , drop=FALSE], test, ncl[ind2], 1))
```

---

olvq1 *Optimized Learning Vector Quantization 1*

Description

Moves examples in a codebook to better represent the training set.

Usage

```
olvq1(x, cl, codebk, niter = 40 * nrow(codebk$x), alpha = 0.3)
```

Arguments

x	a matrix or data frame of examples
cl	a vector or factor of classifications for the examples
codebk	a codebook
niter	number of iterations
alpha	constant for training

Details

Selects `niter` examples at random with replacement, and adjusts the nearest example in the codebook for each.

Value

A codebook, represented as a list with components `x` and `cl` giving the examples and classes.

References

Kohonen, T. (1990) The self-organizing map. *Proc. IEEE* **78**, 1464–1480.

Kohonen, T. (1995) *Self-Organizing Maps.* Springer, Berlin.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

lvqinit, lvqtest, lvq1, lvq2, lvq3

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
cd <- lvqinit(train, cl, 10)
lvqtest(cd, train)
cd1 <- olvq1(train, cl, cd)
lvqtest(cd1, train)
```

---

reduce.nn *Reduce Training Set for a k-NN Classifier*

Description

Reduce training set for a k-NN classifier. Used after condense.

Usage

```
reduce.nn(train, ind, class)
```

Arguments

train	matrix for training set
ind	Initial list of members of the training set (from condense).
class	vector of classifications for test set

Details

All the members of the training set are tried in random order. Any which when dropped do not cause any members of the training set to be wrongly classified are dropped.

Value

Index vector of cases to be retained.

References

Gates, G.W. (1972) The reduced nearest neighbor rule. *IEEE Trans. Information Theory* **IT-18**, 431–432.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

condense, multiedit

Examples

```
train <- rbind(iris3[1:25,,1], iris3[1:25,,2], iris3[1:25,,3])
test <- rbind(iris3[26:50,,1], iris3[26:50,,2], iris3[26:50,,3])
cl <- factor(c(rep("s",25), rep("c",25), rep("v",25)))
keep <- condense(train, cl)
knn(train[keep,], test, cl[keep])
keep2 <- reduce.nn(train, keep, cl)
knn(train[keep2,], test, cl[keep2])
```

SOM *Self-Organizing Maps: Online Algorithm*

Description

Kohonen's Self-Organizing Maps are a crude form of multidimensional scaling.

Usage

```
SOM(data, grid = somgrid(), rlen = 10000, alpha, radii, init)
```

Arguments

data	a matrix or data frame of observations, scaled so that Euclidean distance is appropriate.
grid	A grid for the representatives: see somgrid.
rlen	the number of updates: used only in the defaults for alpha and radii.
alpha	the amount of change: one update is done for each element of alpha. Default is to decline linearly from 0.05 to 0 over rlen updates.
radii	the radii of the neighbourhood to be used for each update: must be the same length as alpha. Default is to decline linearly from 4 to 1 over rlen updates.
init	the initial representatives. If missing, chosen (without replacement) randomly from data.

Details

alpha and radii can also be lists, in which case each component is used in turn, allowing two- or more phase training.

Value

An object of class "SOM" with components

grid	the grid, an object of class "somgrid".
codes	a matrix of representatives.

References

Kohonen, T. (1995) *Self-Organizing Maps.* Springer-Verlag

Kohonen, T., Hynninen, J., Kangas, J. and Laaksonen, J. (1996) *SOM PAK: The self-organizing map program package.* Laboratory of Computer and Information Science, Helsinki University of Technology, Technical Report A31.

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

somgrid, batchSOM

Examples

```
require(graphics)
data(crabs, package = "MASS")

lcrabs <- log(crabs[, 4:8])
crabs.grp <- factor(c("B", "b", "O", "o")[rep(1:4, rep(50,4))])
gr <- somgrid(topo = "hexagonal")
crabs.som <- SOM(lcrabs, gr)
plot(crabs.som)

## 2-phase training
crabs.som2 <- SOM(lcrabs, gr,
    alpha = list(seq(0.05, 0, len = 1e4), seq(0.02, 0, len = 1e5)),
    radii = list(seq(8, 1, len = 1e4), seq(4, 1, len = 1e5)))
plot(crabs.som2)
```

---

somgrid *Plot SOM Fits*

Description

Plotting functions for SOM results.

Usage

```
somgrid(xdim = 8, ydim = 6, topo = c("rectangular", "hexagonal"))

## S3 method for class somgrid
plot(x, type = "p", ...)

## S3 method for class SOM
plot(x, ...)
```

Arguments

xdim, ydim	dimensions of the grid
topo	the topology of the grid.
x	an object inheriting from class "somgrid" or "SOM".
type, ...	graphical parameters.

Details

The class "somgrid" records the coordinates of the grid to be used for (batch or on-line) SOM: this has a plot method.

The plot method for class "SOM" plots a stars plot of the representative at each grid point.

Value

For somgrid, an object of class "somgrid", a list with components

pts — a two-column matrix giving locations for the grid points.

xdim, ydim, topo — as in the arguments to somgrid.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

batchSOM, SOM

Chapter 20

The `cluster` package

`agnes` *Agglomerative Nesting (Hierarchical Clustering)*

Description

Computes agglomerative hierarchical clustering of the dataset.

Usage

```
agnes(x, diss = inherits(x, "dist"), metric = "euclidean",
      stand = FALSE, method = "average", par.method,
      keep.diss = n < 100, keep.data = !diss, trace.lev = 0)
```

Arguments

`x`	data matrix or data frame, or dissimilarity matrix, depending on the value of the `diss` argument. In case of a matrix or data frame, each row corresponds to an observation, and each column corresponds to a variable. All variables must be numeric. Missing values (NAs) are allowed. In case of a dissimilarity matrix, `x` is typically the output of `daisy` or `dist`. Also a vector with length n*(n-1)/2 is allowed (where n is the number of observations), and will be interpreted in the same way as the output of the above-mentioned functions. Missing values (NAs) are not allowed.
`diss`	logical flag: if TRUE (default for `dist` or `dissimilarity` objects), then `x` is assumed to be a dissimilarity matrix. If FALSE, then `x` is treated as a matrix of observations by variables.
`metric`	character string specifying the metric to be used for calculating dissimilarities between observations. The currently available options are `"euclidean"` and `"manhattan"`. Euclidean distances are root sum-of-squares of differences, and manhattan distances are the sum of absolute differences. If `x` is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.
`stand`	logical flag: if TRUE, then the measurements in `x` are standardized before calculating the dissimilarities. Measurements are standardized for each variable

(column), by subtracting the variable's mean value and dividing by the variable's mean absolute deviation. If x is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.

`method` character string defining the clustering method. The six methods implemented are `"average"` ([unweighted pair-]group [arithMetic] average method, aka 'UPGMA'), `"single"` (single linkage), `"complete"` (complete linkage), `"ward"` (Ward's method), `"weighted"` (weighted average linkage, aka 'WPGMA'), its generalization `"flexible"` which uses (a constant version of) the Lance-Williams formula and the `par.method` argument, and `"gaverage"` a generalized `"average"` aka "flexible UPGMA" method also using the Lance-Williams formula and `par.method`.

The default is `"average"`.

`par.method` If `method` is `"flexible"` or `"gaverage"`, a numeric vector of length 1, 3, or 4, (with a default for `"gaverage"`), see in the details section.

`keep.diss, keep.data` logicals indicating if the dissimilarities and/or input data x should be kept in the result. Setting these to `FALSE` can give much smaller results and hence even save memory allocation *time*.

`trace.lev` integer specifying a trace level for printing diagnostics during the algorithm. Default `0` does not print anything; higher values print increasingly more.

Details

`agnes` is fully described in chapter 5 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). Compared to other agglomerative clustering methods such as `hclust`, `agnes` has the following features: (a) it yields the agglomerative coefficient (see `agnes.object`) which measures the amount of clustering structure found; and (b) apart from the usual tree it also provides the banner, a novel graphical display (see `plot.agnes`).

The `agnes`-algorithm constructs a hierarchy of clusterings.
At first, each observation is a small cluster by itself. Clusters are merged until only one large cluster remains which contains all the observations. At each stage the two *nearest* clusters are combined to form one larger cluster.

For `method="average"`, the distance between two clusters is the average of the dissimilarities between the points in one cluster and the points in the other cluster.
In `method="single"`, we use the smallest dissimilarity between a point in the first cluster and a point in the second cluster (nearest neighbor method).
When `method="complete"`, we use the largest dissimilarity between a point in the first cluster and a point in the second cluster (furthest neighbor method).

The `method = "flexible"` allows (and requires) more details: The Lance-Williams formula specifies how dissimilarities are computed when clusters are agglomerated (equation (32) in K&R(1990), p.237). If clusters C_1 and C_2 are agglomerated into a new cluster, the dissimilarity between their union and another cluster Q is given by

$$D(C_1 \cup C_2, Q) = \alpha_1 * D(C_1, Q) + \alpha_2 * D(C_2, Q) + \beta * D(C_1, C_2) + \gamma * |D(C_1, Q) - D(C_2, Q)|,$$

where the four coefficients $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \beta, \gamma)$ are specified by the vector `par.method`, either directly as vector of length 4, or (more conveniently) if `par.method` is of length 1, say $= \alpha$, `par.method` is extended to give the "Flexible Strategy" (K&R(1990), p.236 f) with Lance-Williams coefficients $(\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \alpha, \beta = 1 - 2\alpha, \gamma = 0)$.
Also, if `length(par.method) == 3`, $\gamma = 0$ is set.

Care and expertise is probably needed when using `method = "flexible"` particularly for the case when `par.method` is specified of longer length than one. Since **cluster** version 2.0, choices leading to invalid `merge` structures now signal an error (from the C code already). The *weighted average* (`method="weighted"`) is the same as `method="flexible", par.method = 0.5`. Further, `method= "single"` is equivalent to `method="flexible", par.method = c(.5,.5,0,-.5)`, and `method="complete"` is equivalent to `method="flexible", par.method = c(.5,.5,0,+.5)`.

The `method = "gaverage"` is a generalization of `"average"`, aka "flexible UPGMA" method, and is (a generalization of the approach) detailed in Belbin et al. (1992). As `"flexible"`, it uses the Lance-Williams formula above for dissimilarity updating, but with α_1 and α_2 not constant, but *proportional* to the *sizes* n_1 and n_2 of the clusters C_1 and C_2 respectively, i.e,

$$\alpha_j = \alpha'_j \frac{n_1}{n_1 + n_2},$$

where α'_1, α'_2 are determined from `par.method`, either directly as $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \beta, \gamma)$ or $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \beta)$ with $\gamma = 0$, or (less flexibly, but more conveniently) as follows:

Belbin et al proposed "flexible beta", i.e. the user would only specify β (as `par.method`), sensibly in

$$-1 \le \beta < 1,$$

and β determines α'_1 and α'_2 as

$$\alpha'_j = 1 - \beta,$$

and $\gamma = 0$.

This β may be specified by `par.method` (as length 1 vector), and if `par.method` is not specified, a default value of -0.1 is used, as Belbin et al recommend taking a β value around -0.1 as a general agglomerative hierarchical clustering strategy.

Note that `method = "gaverage", par.method = 0` (or `par.method = c(1,1,0,0)`) is equivalent to the `agnes()` default method `"average"`.

Value

an object of class `"agnes"` (which extends `"twins"`) representing the clustering. See `agnes.object` for details, and methods applicable.

BACKGROUND

Cluster analysis divides a dataset into groups (clusters) of observations that are similar to each other.

Hierarchical methods like `agnes`, `diana`, and `mona` construct a hierarchy of clusterings, with the number of clusters ranging from one to the number of observations.

Partitioning methods like `pam`, `clara`, and `fanny` require that the number of clusters be given by the user.

Author(s)

Method `"gaverage"` has been contributed by Pierre Roudier, Landcare Research, New Zealand.

References

Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). (=: "K&R(1990)") *Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis*. Wiley, New York.

Anja Struyf, Mia Hubert and Peter J. Rousseeuw (1996) Clustering in an Object-Oriented Environment. *Journal of Statistical Software* **1**. http://www.jstatsoft.org/v01/i04

Struyf, A., Hubert, M. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1997). Integrating Robust Clustering Techniques in S-PLUS, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, **26**, 17–37.

Lance, G.N., and W.T. Williams (1966). A General Theory of Classifactory Sorting Strategies, I. Hierarchical Systems. *Computer J.* **9**, 373–380.

Belbin, L., Faith, D.P. and Milligan, G.W. (1992). A Comparison of Two Approaches to Beta-Flexible Clustering. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, **27**, 417–433.

See Also

agnes.object, daisy, diana, dist, hclust, plot.agnes, twins.object.

Examples

```
data(votes.repub)
agn1 <- agnes(votes.repub, metric = "manhattan", stand = TRUE)
agn1
plot(agn1)

op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
agn2 <- agnes(daisy(votes.repub), diss = TRUE, method = "complete")
plot(agn2)
## alpha = 0.625 ==> beta = -1/4  is "recommended" by some
agnS <- agnes(votes.repub, method = "flexible", par.meth = 0.625)
plot(agnS)
par(op)

## "show" equivalence of three "flexible" special cases
d.vr <- daisy(votes.repub)
a.wgt  <- agnes(d.vr, method = "weighted")
a.sing <- agnes(d.vr, method = "single")
a.comp <- agnes(d.vr, method = "complete")
iC <- -(6:7) # not using call and method for comparisons
stopifnot(
  all.equal(a.wgt [iC], agnes(d.vr, method="flexible", par.method = 0.5)[iC])   ,
  all.equal(a.sing[iC], agnes(d.vr, method="flex", par.method= c(.5,.5,0, -.5))[iC]),
  all.equal(a.comp[iC], agnes(d.vr, method="flex", par.method= c(.5,.5,0, +.5))[iC]))

## Exploring the dendrogram structure
(d2 <- as.dendrogram(agn2)) # two main branches
d2[[1]] # the first branch
d2[[2]] # the 2nd one  { 8 + 42  = 50 }
d2[[1]][[1]]# first sub-branch of branch 1 .. and shorter form
identical(d2[[c(1,1)]],
          d2[[1]][[1]])
## a "textual picture" of the dendrogram :
str(d2)

data(agriculture)

## Plot similar to Figure 7 in ref
## Not run: plot(agnes(agriculture), ask = TRUE)


data(animals)
aa.a  <- agnes(animals) # default method = "average"
aa.ga <- agnes(animals, method = "gaverage")
```

```
op <- par(mfcol=1:2, mgp=c(1.5, 0.6, 0), mar=c(.1+ c(4,3,2,1)),
          cex.main=0.8)
plot(aa.a,  which.plot = 2)
plot(aa.ga, which.plot = 2)
par(op)


## Show how "gaverage" is a "generalized average":
aa.ga.0 <- agnes(animals, method = "gaverage", par.method = 0)
stopifnot(all.equal(aa.ga.0[iC], aa.a[iC]))
```

`agnes.object` *Agglomerative Nesting (AGNES) Object*

Description

The objects of class `"agnes"` represent an agglomerative hierarchical clustering of a dataset.

Value

A legitimate `agnes` object is a list with the following components:

`order`	a vector giving a permutation of the original observations to allow for plotting, in the sense that the branches of a clustering tree will not cross.
`order.lab`	a vector similar to `order`, but containing observation labels instead of observation numbers. This component is only available if the original observations were labelled.
`height`	a vector with the distances between merging clusters at the successive stages.
`ac`	the agglomerative coefficient, measuring the clustering structure of the dataset. For each observation i, denote by m(i) its dissimilarity to the first cluster it is merged with, divided by the dissimilarity of the merger in the final step of the algorithm. The `ac` is the average of all 1 - m(i). It can also be seen as the average width (or the percentage filled) of the banner plot. Because `ac` grows with the number of observations, this measure should not be used to compare datasets of very different sizes.
`merge`	an (n-1) by 2 matrix, where n is the number of observations. Row i of `merge` describes the merging of clusters at step i of the clustering. If a number j in the row is negative, then the single observation |j| is merged at this stage. If j is positive, then the merger is with the cluster formed at stage j of the algorithm.
`diss`	an object of class `"dissimilarity"` (see `dissimilarity.object`), representing the total dissimilarity matrix of the dataset.
`data`	a matrix containing the original or standardized measurements, depending on the `stand` option of the function `agnes`. If a dissimilarity matrix was given as input structure, then this component is not available.

GENERATION

This class of objects is returned from `agnes`.

METHODS

The "agnes" class has methods for the following generic functions: print, summary, plot, and as.dendrogram.

In addition, cutree(x, *) can be used to "cut" the dendrogram in order to produce cluster assignments.

INHERITANCE

The class "agnes" inherits from "twins". Therefore, the generic functions pltree and as.hclust are available for agnes objects. After applying as.hclust(), all *its* methods are available, of course.

See Also

agnes, diana, as.hclust, hclust, plot.agnes, twins.object.

cutree.

Examples

```
data(agriculture)
ag.ag <- agnes(agriculture)
class(ag.ag)
pltree(ag.ag) # the dendrogram

## cut the dendrogram -> get cluster assignments:
(ck3 <- cutree(ag.ag, k = 3))
(ch6 <- cutree(as.hclust(ag.ag), h = 6))
stopifnot(identical(unname(ch6), ck3))
```

---

agriculture *European Union Agricultural Workforces*

Description

Gross National Product (GNP) per capita and percentage of the population working in agriculture for each country belonging to the European Union in 1993.

Usage

```
data(agriculture)
```

Format

A data frame with 12 observations on 2 variables:

[, 1]	x	numeric	per capita GNP
[, 2]	y	numeric	percentage in agriculture

The row names of the data frame indicate the countries.

Details

The data seem to show two clusters, the "more agricultural" one consisting of Greece, Portugal, Spain, and Ireland.

Source

Eurostat (European Statistical Agency, 1994): *Cijfers en feiten: Een statistisch portret van de Europese Unie*.

References

see those in agnes.

See Also

agnes, daisy, diana.

Examples

```
data(agriculture)

## Compute the dissimilarities using Euclidean metric and without
## standardization
daisy(agriculture, metric = "euclidean", stand = FALSE)

## 2nd plot is similar to Figure 3 in Struyf et al (1996)
plot(pam(agriculture, 2))

## Plot similar to Figure 7 in Struyf et al (1996)
## Not run: plot(agnes(agriculture), ask = TRUE)


## Plot similar to Figure 8 in Struyf et al (1996)
## Not run: plot(diana(agriculture), ask = TRUE)
```

---

animals *Attributes of Animals*

Description

This data set considers 6 binary attributes for 20 animals.

Usage

```
data(animals)
```

Format

A data frame with 20 observations on 6 variables:

[, 1]	war	warm-blooded
[, 2]	fly	can fly
[, 3]	ver	vertebrate
[, 4]	end	endangered
[, 5]	gro	live in groups
[, 6]	hai	have hair

All variables are encoded as 1 = 'no', 2 = 'yes'.

Details

This dataset is useful for illustrating monothetic (only a single variable is used for each split) hierarchical clustering.

Source

Leonard Kaufman and Peter J. Rousseeuw (1990): *Finding Groups in Data* (pp 297ff). New York: Wiley.

References

see Struyf, Hubert & Rousseeuw (1996), in agnes.

Examples

```
data(animals)
apply(animals,2, table) # simple overview

ma <- mona(animals)
ma
## Plot similar to Figure 10 in Struyf et al (1996)
plot(ma)
```

---

bannerplot *Plot Banner (of Hierarchical Clustering)*

Description

Draws a "banner", i.e. basically a horizontal barplot visualizing the (agglomerative or divisive) hierarchical clustering or an other binary dendrogram structure.

Usage

```
bannerplot(x, w = rev(x$height), fromLeft = TRUE,
           main=NULL, sub=NULL, xlab = "Height",  adj = 0,
           col = c(2, 0), border = 0, axes = TRUE, frame.plot = axes,
           rev.xax = !fromLeft, xax.pretty = TRUE,
           labels = NULL, nmax.lab = 35, max.strlen = 5,
           yax.do = axes && length(x$order) <= nmax.lab,
           yaxRight = fromLeft, y.mar = 2.4 + max.strlen/2.5, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a list with components order, order.lab and height when w, the next argument is not specified.
w	non-negative numeric vector of bar widths.
fromLeft	logical, indicating if the banner is from the left or not.
main,sub	main and sub titles, see title.
xlab	x axis label (with 'correct' default e.g. for plot.agnes).
adj	passed to title(main,sub) for string adjustment.
col	vector of length 2, for two horizontal segments.
border	color for bar border; now defaults to background (no border).
axes	logical indicating if axes (and labels) should be drawn at all.
frame.plot	logical indicating the banner should be framed; mainly used when border = 0 (as per default).
rev.xax	logical indicating if the x axis should be reversed (as in plot.diana).
xax.pretty	logical or integer indicating if pretty() should be used for the x axis. xax.pretty = FALSE is mainly for back compatibility.
labels	labels to use on y-axis; the default is constructed from x.
nmax.lab	integer indicating the number of labels which is considered too large for single-name labelling the banner plot.
max.strlen	positive integer giving the length to which strings are truncated in banner plot labeling.
yax.do	logical indicating if a y axis and banner labels should be drawn.
yaxRight	logical indicating if the y axis is on the right or left.
y.mar	positive number specifying the margin width to use when banners are labeled (along a y-axis). The default adapts to the string width and optimally would also dependend on the font.
...	graphical parameters (see par) may also be supplied as arguments to this function.

Note

This is mainly a utility called from plot.agnes, plot.diana and plot.mona.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler (from original code of Kaufman and Rousseeuw).

Examples

```
data(agriculture)
bannerplot(agnes(agriculture), main = "Bannerplot")
```

---

chorSub *Subset of C-horizon of Kola Data*

Description

This is a small rounded subset of the C-horizon data chorizon from package **mvoutlier**.

Usage

```
data(chorSub)
```

Format

A data frame with 61 observations on 10 variables. The variables contain scaled concentrations of chemical elements.

Details

This data set was produced from chorizon via these statements:

```
data(chorizon, package = "mvoutlier")
chorSub <- round(100*scale(chorizon[,101:110]))[190:250,]
storage.mode(chorSub) <- "integer"
colnames(chorSub) <- gsub("_.*", , colnames(chorSub))
```

Source

Kola Project (1993-1998)

See Also

chorizon in package **mvoutlier** and other Kola data in the same package.

Examples

```
data(chorSub)
summary(chorSub)
pairs(chorSub, gap= .1)# some outliers
```

clara *Clustering Large Applications*

Description

Computes a "clara" object, a list representing a clustering of the data into k clusters.

Usage

```
clara(x, k, metric = "euclidean", stand = FALSE, samples = 5,
      sampsize = min(n, 40 + 2 * k), trace = 0, medoids.x = TRUE,
      keep.data = medoids.x, rngR = FALSE, pamLike = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	data matrix or data frame, each row corresponds to an observation, and each column corresponds to a variable. All variables must be numeric. Missing values (NAs) are allowed.
k	integer, the number of clusters. It is required that $0 < k < n$ where n is the number of observations (i.e., n = nrow(x)).
metric	character string specifying the metric to be used for calculating dissimilarities between observations. The currently available options are "euclidean" and "manhattan". Euclidean distances are root sum-of-squares of differences, and manhattan distances are the sum of absolute differences.
stand	logical, indicating if the measurements in x are standardized before calculating the dissimilarities. Measurements are standardized for each variable (column), by subtracting the variable's mean value and dividing by the variable's mean absolute deviation.
samples	integer, number of samples to be drawn from the dataset. The default, 5, is rather small for historical (and now back compatibility) reasons and we recommend to set samples an order of magnitude larger.
sampsize	integer, number of observations in each sample. sampsize should be higher than the number of clusters (k) and at most the number of observations (n = nrow(x)).
trace	integer indicating a *trace level* for diagnostic output during the algorithm.
medoids.x	logical indicating if the medoids should be returned, identically to some rows of the input data x. If FALSE, keep.data must be false as well, and the medoid indices, i.e., row numbers of the medoids will still be returned (i.med component), and the algorithm saves space by needing one copy less of x.
keep.data	logical indicating if the (*scaled* if stand is true) data should be kept in the result. Setting this to FALSE saves memory (and hence time), but disables clusplot()ing of the result. Use medoids.x = FALSE to save even more memory.
rngR	logical indicating if 's random number generator should be used instead of the primitive clara()-builtin one. If true, this also means that each call to clara() returns a different result – though only slightly different in good situations.

pamLike — logical indicating if the "swap" phase (see pam, in C code) should use the same algorithm as pam(). Note that from Kaufman and Rousseeuw's description this *should* have been true always, but as the original Fortran code and the subsequent port to C has always contained a small one-letter change (a typo according to Martin Maechler) with respect to PAM, the default, pamLike = FALSE has been chosen to remain back compatible rather than "PAM compatible".

Details

clara is fully described in chapter 3 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). Compared to other partitioning methods such as pam, it can deal with much larger datasets. Internally, this is achieved by considering sub-datasets of fixed size (sampsize) such that the time and storage requirements become linear in n rather than quadratic.

Each sub-dataset is partitioned into k clusters using the same algorithm as in pam.
Once k representative objects have been selected from the sub-dataset, each observation of the entire dataset is assigned to the nearest medoid.

The mean (equivalent to the sum) of the dissimilarities of the observations to their closest medoid is used as a measure of the quality of the clustering. The sub-dataset for which the mean (or sum) is minimal, is retained. A further analysis is carried out on the final partition.

Each sub-dataset is forced to contain the medoids obtained from the best sub-dataset until then. Randomly drawn observations are added to this set until sampsize has been reached.

Value

an object of class "clara" representing the clustering. See clara.object for details.

Note

By default, the random sampling is implemented with a *very* simple scheme (with period $2^{16} = 65536$) inside the Fortran code, independently of 's random number generation, and as a matter of fact, deterministically. Alternatively, we recommend setting rngR = TRUE which uses 's random number generators. Then, clara() results are made reproducible typically by using set.seed() before calling clara.

The storage requirement of clara computation (for small k) is about $O(n \times p) + O(j^2)$ where $j =$ sampsize, and $(n, p) =$ dim(x). The CPU computing time (again assuming small k) is about $O(n \times p \times j^2 \times N)$, where $N =$ samples.

For "small" datasets, the function pam can be used directly. What can be considered *small*, is really a function of available computing power, both memory (RAM) and speed. Originally (1990), "small" meant less than 100 observations; in 1997, the authors said *"small (say with fewer than 200 observations)"*; as of 2006, you can use pam with several thousand observations.

Author(s)

Kaufman and Rousseeuw (see agnes), originally. All arguments from trace on, and most documentation and all tests by Martin Maechler.

See Also

agnes for background and references; clara.object, pam, partition.object, plot.partition.

Examples

```
## generate 500 objects, divided into 2 clusters.
x <- rbind(cbind(rnorm(200,0,8), rnorm(200,0,8)),
           cbind(rnorm(300,50,8), rnorm(300,50,8)))
clarax <- clara(x, 2, samples=50)
clarax
clarax$clusinfo
## using pamLike=TRUE  gives the same (apart from the call):
all.equal(clarax[-8],
          clara(x, 2, samples=50, pamLike = TRUE)[-8])
plot(clarax)

## xclara is an artificial data set with 3 clusters of 1000 bivariate
## objects each.
data(xclara)
(clx3 <- clara(xclara, 3))
## "better" number of samples
cl.3 <- clara(xclara, 3, samples=100)
## but that did not change the result here:
stopifnot(cl.3$clustering == clx3$clustering)
## Plot similar to Figure 5 in Struyf et al (1996)
## Not run: plot(clx3, ask = TRUE)


## Try 100 times *different* random samples -- for reliability:
nSim <- 100
nCl <- 3 # = no.classes
set.seed(421)# (reproducibility)
cl <- matrix(NA,nrow(xclara), nSim)
for(i in 1:nSim)
   cl[,i] <- clara(xclara, nCl, medoids.x = FALSE, rngR = TRUE)$cluster
tcl <- apply(cl,1, tabulate, nbins = nCl)
## those that are not always in same cluster (5 out of 3000 for this seed):
(iDoubt <- which(apply(tcl,2, function(n) all(n < nSim))))
if(length(iDoubt)) { # (not for all seeds)
  tabD <- tcl[,iDoubt, drop=FALSE]
  dimnames(tabD) <- list(cluster = paste(1:nCl), obs = format(iDoubt))
  t(tabD) # how many times in which clusters
}
```

`clara.object` *Clustering Large Applications (CLARA) Object*

Description

The objects of class `"clara"` represent a partitioning of a large dataset into clusters and are typically returned from `clara`.

Value

A legitimate `clara` object is a list with the following components:

`sample`	labels or case numbers of the observations in the best sample, that is, the sample used by the `clara` algorithm for the final partition.

medoids	the medoids or representative objects of the clusters. It is a matrix with in each row the coordinates of one medoid. Possibly NULL, namely when the object resulted from clara(*, medoids.x=FALSE). Use the following i.med in that case.
i.med	the *indices* of the medoids above: medoids <- x[i.med,] where x is the original data matrix in clara(x,*).
clustering	the clustering vector, see partition.object.
objective	the objective function for the final clustering of the entire dataset.
clusinfo	matrix, each row gives numerical information for one cluster. These are the cardinality of the cluster (number of observations), the maximal and average dissimilarity between the observations in the cluster and the cluster's medoid. The last column is the maximal dissimilarity between the observations in the cluster and the cluster's medoid, divided by the minimal dissimilarity between the cluster's medoid and the medoid of any other cluster. If this ratio is small, the cluster is well-separated from the other clusters.
diss	dissimilarity (maybe NULL), see partition.object.
silinfo	list with silhouette width information for the best sample, see partition.object.
call	generating call, see partition.object.
data	matrix, possibibly standardized, or NULL, see partition.object.

Methods, Inheritance

The "clara" class has methods for the following generic functions: print, summary.

The class "clara" inherits from "partition". Therefore, the generic functions plot and clusplot can be used on a clara object.

See Also

clara, dissimilarity.object, partition.object, plot.partition.

---

clusGap *Gap Statistic for Estimating the Number of Clusters*

Description

clusGap() calculates a goodness of clustering measure, the "gap" statistic. For each number of clusters k, it compares $\log(W(k))$ with $E^*[\log(W(k))]$ where the latter is defined via bootstrapping, i.e. simulating from a reference distribution.

maxSE(f, SE.f) determines the location of the **maximum** of f, taking a "1-SE rule" into account for the *SE* methods. The default method "firstSEmax" looks for the smallest k such that its value $f(k)$ is not more than 1 standard error away from the first local maximum. This is similar but not the same as "Tibs2001SEmax", Tibshirani et al's recommendation of determining the number of clusters from the gap statistics and their standard deviations.

Usage

```
clusGap(x, FUNcluster, K.max, B = 100, verbose = interactive(), ...)

maxSE(f, SE.f,
      method = c("firstSEmax", "Tibs2001SEmax", "globalSEmax",
                 "firstmax", "globalmax"),
      SE.factor = 1)
## S3 method for class clusGap
print(x, method = "firstSEmax", SE.factor = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

x	numeric matrix or data.frame.
FUNcluster	a function which accepts as first argument a (data) matrix like x, second argument, say $k, k \geq 2$, the number of clusters desired, and returns a list with a component named (or shortened to) cluster which is a vector of length n = nrow(x) of integers in 1:k determining the clustering or grouping of the n observations.
K.max	the maximum number of clusters to consider, must be at least two.
B	integer, number of Monte Carlo ("bootstrap") samples.
verbose	integer or logical, determining if "progress" output should be printed. The default prints one bit per bootstrap sample.
...	optionally further arguments for FUNcluster(), see kmeans example below.
f	numeric vector of 'function values', of length K, whose ("1 SE respected") maximum we want.
SE.f	numeric vector of length K of standard errors of f.
method	character string indicating how the "optimal" number of clusters, $\hat{k}$, is computed from the gap statistics (and their standard deviations), or more generally how the location $\hat{k}$ of the maximum of f_k should be determined. "globalmax": simply corresponds to the global maximum, i.e., is which.max(f) "firstmax": gives the location of the first *local* maximum. "Tibs2001SEmax": uses the criterion, Tibshirani et al (2001) proposed: "the smallest k such that $f(k) \geq f(k+1) - s_{k+1}$". Note that this chooses $k = 1$ when all standard deviations are larger than the differences $f(k+1) - f(k)$. "firstSEmax": location of the first $f()$ value which is not larger than the first *local* maximum minus SE.factor * SE.f[], i.e, within an "f S.E." range of that maximum (see also SE.factor). "globalSEmax": (used in Dudoit and Fridlyand (2002), supposedly following Tibshirani's proposition): location of the first $f()$ value which is not larger than the *global* maximum minus SE.factor * SE.f[], i.e, within an "f S.E." range of that maximum (see also SE.factor). See the examples for a comparison in a simple case.
SE.factor	[When method contains "SE"] Determining the optimal number of clusters, Tibshirani et al. proposed the "1 S.E."-rule. Using an SE.factor f, the "f S.E."-rule is used, more generally.

Details

The main result `<res>$Tab[,"gap"]` of course is from bootstrapping aka Monte Carlo simulation and hence random, or equivalently, depending on the initial random seed (see `set.seed()`). On the other hand, in our experience, using `B = 500` gives quite precise results such that the gap plot is basically unchanged after an another run.

Value

an object of S3 class `"clusGap"`, basically a list with components

`Tab`	a matrix with `K.max` rows and 4 columns, named "logW", "E.logW", "gap", and "SE.sim", where `gap = E.logW - logW`, and `SE.sim` corresponds to the standard error of `gap`, `SE.sim[k]`=s_k, where $s_k := \sqrt{1 + 1/B}\, sd^*(gap_j)$, and $sd^*()$ is the standard deviation of the simulated ("bootstrapped") gap values.
`n`	number of observations, i.e., `nrow(x)`.
`B`	input `B`
`FUNcluster`	input function `FUNcluster`

Author(s)

This function is originally based on the functions `gap` of (Bioconductor) package **SAGx** by Per Broberg, `gapStat()` from former package **SLmisc** by Matthias Kohl and ideas from `gap()` and its methods of package **lga** by Justin Harrington.

The current implementation is by Martin Maechler.

References

Tibshirani, R., Walther, G. and Hastie, T. (2001). Estimating the number of data clusters via the Gap statistic. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society B*, **63**, 411–423.

Tibshirani, R., Walther, G. and Hastie, T. (2000). Estimating the number of clusters in a dataset via the Gap statistic. Technical Report. Stanford.

Per Broberg (2006). SAGx: Statistical Analysis of the GeneChip. R package version 1.9.7. http://home.swipnet.se/pibroberg/expression_hemsida1.html

See Also

`silhouette` for a much simpler less sophisticated goodness of clustering measure.

`cluster.stats()` in package **fpc** for alternative measures.

Examples

```
### --- maxSE() methods --------------------------------------------
(mets <- eval(formals(maxSE)$method))
fk <- c(2,3,5,4,7,8,5,4)
sk <- c(1,1,2,1,1,3,1,1)/2
## use plot.clusGap():
plot(structure(class="clusGap", list(Tab = cbind(gap=fk, SE.sim=sk))))
## Note that firstmax and globalmax are always at 3 and 6 :
sapply(c(1/4, 1,2,4), function(SEf)
        sapply(mets, function(M) maxSE(fk, sk, method = M, SE.factor = SEf)))

### --- clusGap() --------------------------------------------------
```

```
## ridiculously nicely separated clusters in 3 D :
x <- rbind(matrix(rnorm(150,           sd = 0.1), ncol = 3),
           matrix(rnorm(150, mean = 1, sd = 0.1), ncol = 3),
           matrix(rnorm(150, mean = 2, sd = 0.1), ncol = 3),
           matrix(rnorm(150, mean = 3, sd = 0.1), ncol = 3))

## Slightly faster way to use pam (see below)
pam1 <- function(x,k) list(cluster = pam(x,k, cluster.only=TRUE))

doExtras <- cluster:::doExtras()
## or set it explicitly to TRUE for the following
if(doExtras) {
## Note we use  B = 60 in the following examples to keep them "speedy".
## ---- rather keep the default B = 500 for your analysis!

## note we can  pass nstart = 20 to kmeans() :
gskmn <- clusGap(x, FUN = kmeans, nstart = 20, K.max = 8, B = 60)
gskmn #-> its print() method
plot(gskmn, main = "clusGap(., FUN = kmeans, n.start=20, B= 60)")
set.seed(12); system.time(
  gsPam0 <- clusGap(x, FUN = pam, K.max = 8, B = 60)
)
set.seed(12); system.time(
  gsPam1 <- clusGap(x, FUN = pam1, K.max = 8, B = 60)
)
## and show that it gives the same:
stopifnot(identical(gsPam1[-4], gsPam0[-4]))
gsPam1
print(gsPam1, method="globalSEmax")
print(gsPam1, method="globalmax")
}

gs.pam.RU <- clusGap(ruspini, FUN = pam1, K.max = 8, B = 60)
gs.pam.RU
plot(gs.pam.RU, main = "Gap statistic for the ruspini data")
mtext("k = 4 is best .. and  k = 5  pretty close")

## This takes a minute..
## No clustering ==> k = 1 ("one cluster") should be optimal:
Z <- matrix(rnorm(256*3), 256,3)
gsP.Z <- clusGap(Z, FUN = pam1, K.max = 8, B = 200)
plot(gsP.Z)
gsP.Z
```

`clusplot` *Bivariate Cluster Plot (of a Partitioning Object)*

Description

Draws a 2-dimensional "clusplot" (clustering plot) on the current graphics device. The generic function has a default and a `partition` method.

Usage

```
clusplot(x, ...)

## S3 method for class partition
clusplot(x, main = NULL, dist = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object, here, specifically an object of class "partition", e.g. created by one of the functions pam, clara, or fanny.
main	title for the plot; when NULL (by default), a title is constructed, using x$call.
dist	when x does not have a diss nor a data component, e.g., for pam(dist(*), keep.diss=FALSE), dist must specify the dissimilarity for the clusplot.
...	optional arguments passed to methods, notably the clusplot.default method (except for the diss one) may also be supplied to this function. Many graphical parameters (see par) may also be supplied as arguments here.

Details

The clusplot.partition() method relies on clusplot.default.

If the clustering algorithms pam, fanny and clara are applied to a data matrix of observations-by-variables then a clusplot of the resulting clustering can always be drawn. When the data matrix contains missing values and the clustering is performed with pam or fanny, the dissimilarity matrix will be given as input to clusplot. When the clustering algorithm clara was applied to a data matrix with NAs then clusplot will replace the missing values as described in clusplot.default, because a dissimilarity matrix is not available.

Value

For the partition (and default) method: An invisible list with components Distances and Shading, as for clusplot.default, see there.

Side Effects

a 2-dimensional clusplot is created on the current graphics device.

See Also

clusplot.default for references; partition.object, pam, pam.object, clara, clara.object, fanny, fanny.object, par.

Examples

```
 ## For more, see ?clusplot.default

## generate 25 objects, divided into 2 clusters.
x <- rbind(cbind(rnorm(10,0,0.5), rnorm(10,0,0.5)),
           cbind(rnorm(15,5,0.5), rnorm(15,5,0.5)))
clusplot(pam(x, 2))
## add noise, and try again :
x4 <- cbind(x, rnorm(25), rnorm(25))
clusplot(pam(x4, 2))
```

clusplot.default *Bivariate Cluster Plot (clusplot) Default Method*

Description

Creates a bivariate plot visualizing a partition (clustering) of the data. All observation are represented by points in the plot, using principal components or multidimensional scaling. Around each cluster an ellipse is drawn.

Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
clusplot(x, clus, diss = FALSE,
         s.x.2d = mkCheckX(x, diss), stand = FALSE,
         lines = 2, shade = FALSE, color = FALSE,
         labels= 0, plotchar = TRUE,
         col.p = "dark green", col.txt = col.p,
         col.clus = if(color) c(2, 4, 6, 3) else 5, cex = 1, cex.txt = cex,
         span = TRUE,
         add = FALSE,
         xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL,
         main = paste("CLUSPLOT(", deparse(substitute(x)),")"),
         sub = paste("These two components explain",
            round(100 * var.dec, digits = 2), "% of the point variability."),
         xlab = "Component 1", ylab = "Component 2",
         verbose = getOption("verbose"),
         ...)
```

Arguments

x	matrix or data frame, or dissimilarity matrix, depending on the value of the diss argument. In case of a matrix (alike), each row corresponds to an observation, and each column corresponds to a variable. All variables must be numeric. Missing values (NAs) are allowed. They are replaced by the median of the corresponding variable. When some variables or some observations contain only missing values, the function stops with a warning message. In case of a dissimilarity matrix, x is the output of daisy or dist or a symmetric matrix. Also, a vector of length $n*(n-1)/2$ is allowed (where n is the number of observations), and will be interpreted in the same way as the output of the above-mentioned functions. Missing values (NAs) are not allowed.
clus	a vector of length n representing a clustering of x. For each observation the vector lists the number or name of the cluster to which it has been assigned. clus is often the clustering component of the output of pam, fanny or clara.
diss	logical indicating if x will be considered as a dissimilarity matrix or a matrix of observations by variables (see x arugment above).
s.x.2d	a list with components x (a $n \times 2$ matrix; typically something like principal components of original data), labs and var.dec.
stand	logical flag: if true, then the representations of the n observations in the 2-dimensional plot are standardized.

`lines` integer out of `0, 1, 2`, used to obtain an idea of the distances between ellipses. The distance between two ellipses E1 and E2 is measured along the line connecting the centers $m1$ and $m2$ of the two ellipses.

In case E1 and E2 overlap on the line through $m1$ and $m2$, no line is drawn. Otherwise, the result depends on the value of `lines`: If

lines = 0, no distance lines will appear on the plot;

lines = 1, the line segment between $m1$ and $m2$ is drawn;

lines = 2, a line segment between the boundaries of E1 and E2 is drawn (along the line connecting $m1$ and $m2$).

`shade` logical flag: if TRUE, then the ellipses are shaded in relation to their density. The density is the number of points in the cluster divided by the area of the ellipse.

`color` logical flag: if TRUE, then the ellipses are colored with respect to their density. With increasing density, the colors are light blue, light green, red and purple. To see these colors on the graphics device, an appropriate color scheme should be selected (we recommend a white background).

`labels` integer code, currently one of 0,1,2,3,4 and 5. If

labels= 0, no labels are placed in the plot;

labels= 1, points and ellipses can be identified in the plot (see `identify`);

labels= 2, all points and ellipses are labelled in the plot;

labels= 3, only the points are labelled in the plot;

labels= 4, only the ellipses are labelled in the plot.

labels= 5, the ellipses are labelled in the plot, and points can be identified.

The levels of the vector `clus` are taken as labels for the clusters. The labels of the points are the rownames of `x` if `x` is matrix like. Otherwise (`diss = TRUE`), `x` is a vector, point labels can be attached to `x` as a "Labels" attribute (`attr(x,"Labels")`), as is done for the output of `daisy`.

A possible `names` attribute of `clus` will not be taken into account.

`plotchar` logical flag: if TRUE, then the plotting symbols differ for points belonging to different clusters.

`span` logical flag: if TRUE, then each cluster is represented by the ellipse with smallest area containing all its points. (This is a special case of the minimum volume ellipsoid.)
If FALSE, the ellipse is based on the mean and covariance matrix of the same points. While this is faster to compute, it often yields a much larger ellipse.

There are also some special cases: When a cluster consists of only one point, a tiny circle is drawn around it. When the points of a cluster fall on a straight line, `span=FALSE` draws a narrow ellipse around it and `span=TRUE` gives the exact line segment.

`add` logical indicating if ellipses (and labels if `labels` is true) should be *added* to an already existing plot. If false, neither a `title` or sub title, see `sub`, is written.

`col.p` color code(s) used for the observation points.

`col.txt` color code(s) used for the labels (if `labels >= 2`).

`col.clus` color code for the ellipses (and their labels); only one if color is false (as per default).

`cex, cex.txt` character **ex**pansion (size), for the point symbols and point labels, respectively.

`xlim, ylim` numeric vectors of length 2, giving the x- and y- ranges as in `plot.default`.

main	main title for the plot; by default, one is constructed.
sub	sub title for the plot; by default, one is constructed.
xlab, ylab	x- and y- axis labels for the plot, with defaults.
verbose	a logical indicating, if there should be extra diagnostic output; mainly for 'debugging'.
...	Further graphical parameters may also be supplied, see par.

Details

clusplot uses the functions princomp and cmdscale. These functions are data reduction techniques. They will represent the data in a bivariate plot. Ellipses are then drawn to indicate the clusters. The further layout of the plot is determined by the optional arguments.

Value

An invisible list with components:

Distances	When lines is 1 or 2 we optain a k by k matrix (k is the number of clusters). The element in [i,j] is the distance between ellipse i and ellipse j. If lines = 0, then the value of this component is NA.
Shading	A vector of length k (where k is the number of clusters), containing the amount of shading per cluster. Let y be a vector where element i is the ratio between the number of points in cluster i and the area of ellipse i. When the cluster i is a line segment, y[i] and the density of the cluster are set to NA. Let z be the sum of all the elements of y without the NAs. Then we put shading = y/z *37 + 3 .

Side Effects

a visual display of the clustering is plotted on the current graphics device.

Note

When we have 4 or fewer clusters, then the color=TRUE gives every cluster a different color. When there are more than 4 clusters, clusplot uses the function pam to cluster the densities into 4 groups such that ellipses with nearly the same density get the same color. col.clus specifies the colors used.

The col.p and col.txt arguments, added for , are recycled to have length the number of observations. If col.p has more than one value, using color = TRUE can be confusing because of a mix of point and ellipse colors.

References

Pison, G., Struyf, A. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1999) Displaying a Clustering with CLUSPLOT, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, **30**, 381–392.

Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990). *Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis.* Wiley, New York.

Struyf, A., Hubert, M. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1997). Integrating Robust Clustering Techniques in S-PLUS, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, **26**, 17-37.

See Also

princomp, cmdscale, pam, clara, daisy, par, identify, cov.mve, clusplot.partition.

Examples

```
## plotting votes.diss(dissimilarity) in a bivariate plot and
## partitioning into 2 clusters
data(votes.repub)
votes.diss <- daisy(votes.repub)
pamv <- pam(votes.diss, 2, diss = TRUE)
clusplot(pamv, shade = TRUE)
## is the same as
votes.clus <- pamv$clustering
clusplot(votes.diss, votes.clus, diss = TRUE, shade = TRUE)

clusplot(pamv, col.p = votes.clus, labels = 4)# color points and label ellipses
# "simple" cheap ellipses: larger than minimum volume:
# here they are *added* to the previous plot:
clusplot(pamv, span = FALSE, add = TRUE, col.clus = "midnightblue")

## a work-around for setting a small label size:
clusplot(votes.diss, votes.clus, diss = TRUE)
op <- par(new=TRUE, cex = 0.6)
clusplot(votes.diss, votes.clus, diss = TRUE,
         axes=FALSE,ann=FALSE, sub="", col.p=NA, col.txt="dark green", labels=3)
par(op)
## MM: This should now be as simple as
clusplot(votes.diss, votes.clus, diss = TRUE, labels = 3, cex.txt = 0.6)


if(interactive()) { #  uses identify() *interactively* :
  clusplot(votes.diss, votes.clus, diss = TRUE, shade = TRUE, labels = 1)
  clusplot(votes.diss, votes.clus, diss = TRUE, labels = 5)# ident. only points
}

## plotting iris (data frame) in a 2-dimensional plot and partitioning
## into 3 clusters.
data(iris)
iris.x <- iris[, 1:4]
cl3 <- pam(iris.x, 3)$clustering
op <- par(mfrow= c(2,2))
clusplot(iris.x, cl3, color = TRUE)
U <- par("usr")
## zoom in :
rect(0,-1, 2,1, border = "orange", lwd=2)
clusplot(iris.x, cl3, color = TRUE, xlim = c(0,2), ylim = c(-1,1))
box(col="orange",lwd=2); mtext("sub region", font = 4, cex = 2)
##  or zoom out :
clusplot(iris.x, cl3, color = TRUE, xlim = c(-4,4), ylim = c(-4,4))
mtext("super region", font = 4, cex = 2)
rect(U[1],U[3], U[2],U[4], lwd=2, lty = 3)

# reset graphics
par(op)
```

coef.hclust *Agglomerative / Divisive Coefficient for 'hclust' Objects*

Description

Computes the "agglomerative coefficient" (aka "divisive coefficient" for diana), measuring the clustering structure of the dataset.

For each observation i, denote by $m(i)$ its dissimilarity to the first cluster it is merged with, divided by the dissimilarity of the merger in the final step of the algorithm. The agglomerative coefficient is the average of all $1 - m(i)$. It can also be seen as the average width (or the percentage filled) of the banner plot.

coefHier() directly interfaces to the underlying C code, and "proves" that *only* object$heights is needed to compute the coefficient.

Because it grows with the number of observations, this measure should not be used to compare datasets of very different sizes.

Usage

```
coefHier(object)
coef.hclust(object, ...)
## S3 method for class hclust
coef(object, ...)
## S3 method for class twins
coef(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class "hclust" or "twins", i.e., typically the result of hclust(.),agnes(.), or diana(.). Since coef.hclust only uses object$heights, and object$merge, object can be any list-like object with appropriate merge and heights components. For coefHier, even only object$heights is needed.
...	currently unused potential further arguments

Value

a number specifying the *agglomerative* (or *divisive* for diana objects) coefficient as defined by Kaufman and Rousseeuw, see agnes.object $ ac or diana.object $ dc.

Examples

```
data(agriculture)
aa <- agnes(agriculture)
coef(aa) # really just extracts aa$ac
coef(as.hclust(aa))# recomputes
coefHier(aa)       # ditto
```

daisy *Dissimilarity Matrix Calculation*

Description

Compute all the pairwise dissimilarities (distances) between observations in the data set. The original variables may be of mixed types. In that case, or whenever `metric = "gower"` is set, a generalization of Gower's formula is used, see 'Details' below.

Usage

```
daisy(x, metric = c("euclidean", "manhattan", "gower"),
      stand = FALSE, type = list(), weights = rep.int(1, p))
```

Arguments

`x`	numeric matrix or data frame, of dimension $n \times p$, say. Dissimilarities will be computed between the rows of `x`. Columns of mode `numeric` (i.e. all columns when `x` is a matrix) will be recognized as interval scaled variables, columns of class `factor` will be recognized as nominal variables, and columns of class `ordered` will be recognized as ordinal variables. Other variable types should be specified with the `type` argument. Missing values (`NA`s) are allowed.
`metric`	character string specifying the metric to be used. The currently available options are `"euclidean"` (the default), `"manhattan"` and `"gower"`. Euclidean distances are root sum-of-squares of differences, and manhattan distances are the sum of absolute differences. "Gower's distance" is chosen by metric `"gower"` or automatically if some columns of `x` are not numeric. Also known as Gower's coefficient (1971), expressed as a dissimilarity, this implies that a particular standardisation will be applied to each variable, and the "distance" between two units is the sum of all the variable-specific distances, see the details section.
`stand`	logical flag: if TRUE, then the measurements in `x` are standardized before calculating the dissimilarities. Measurements are standardized for each variable (column), by subtracting the variable's mean value and dividing by the variable's mean absolute deviation. If not all columns of `x` are numeric, `stand` will be ignored and Gower's standardization (based on the `range`) will be applied in any case, see argument `metric`, above, and the details section.
`type`	list for specifying some (or all) of the types of the variables (columns) in `x`. The list may contain the following components: `"ordratio"` (ratio scaled variables to be treated as ordinal variables), `"logratio"` (ratio scaled variables that must be logarithmically transformed), `"asymm"` (asymmetric binary) and `"symm"` (symmetric binary variables). Each component's value is a vector, containing the names or the numbers of the corresponding columns of `x`. Variables not mentioned in the `type` list are interpreted as usual (see argument `x`).
`weights`	an optional numeric vector of length p(=`ncol(x)`); to be used in "case 2" (mixed variables, or `metric = "gower"`), specifying a weight for each variable (`x[,k]`) instead of 1 in Gower's original formula.

Details

The original version of daisy is fully described in chapter 1 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). Compared to dist whose input must be numeric variables, the main feature of daisy is its ability to handle other variable types as well (e.g. nominal, ordinal, (a)symmetric binary) even when different types occur in the same data set.

The handling of nominal, ordinal, and (a)symmetric binary data is achieved by using the general dissimilarity coefficient of Gower (1971). If x contains any columns of these data-types, both arguments metric and stand will be ignored and Gower's coefficient will be used as the metric. This can also be activated for purely numeric data by metric = "gower". With that, each variable (column) is first standardized by dividing each entry by the range of the corresponding variable, after subtracting the minimum value; consequently the rescaled variable has range $[0, 1]$, exactly.

Note that setting the type to symm (symmetric binary) gives the same dissimilarities as using *nominal* (which is chosen for non-ordered factors) only when no missing values are present, and more efficiently.

Note that daisy now gives a warning when 2-valued numerical variables do not have an explicit type specified, because the reference authors recommend to consider using "asymm".

In the daisy algorithm, missing values in a row of x are not included in the dissimilarities involving that row. There are two main cases,

1. If all variables are interval scaled (and metric is *not* "gower"), the metric is "euclidean", and n_g is the number of columns in which neither row i and j have NAs, then the dissimilarity d(i,j) returned is $\sqrt{p/n_g}$ (p =ncol(x)) times the Euclidean distance between the two vectors of length n_g shortened to exclude NAs. The rule is similar for the "manhattan" metric, except that the coefficient is p/n_g. If $n_g = 0$, the dissimilarity is NA.
2. When some variables have a type other than interval scaled, or if metric = "gower" is specified, the dissimilarity between two rows is the weighted mean of the contributions of each variable. Specifically,
$$d_{ij} = d(i, j) = \frac{\sum_{k=1}^{p} w_k \delta_{ij}^{(k)} d_{ij}^{(k)}}{\sum_{k=1}^{p} w_k \delta_{ij}^{(k)}}.$$
In other words, d_{ij} is a weighted mean of $d_{ij}^{(k)}$ with weights $w_k \delta_{ij}^{(k)}$, where w_k= weigths[k], $\delta_{ij}^{(k)}$ is 0 or 1, and $d_{ij}^{(k)}$, the k-th variable contribution to the total distance, is a distance between x[i,k] and x[j,k], see below.
The 0-1 weight $\delta_{ij}^{(k)}$ becomes zero when the variable x[,k] is missing in either or both rows (i and j), or when the variable is asymmetric binary and both values are zero. In all other situations it is 1.
The contribution $d_{ij}^{(k)}$ of a nominal or binary variable to the total dissimilarity is 0 if both values are equal, 1 otherwise. The contribution of other variables is the absolute difference of both values, divided by the total range of that variable. Note that "standard scoring" is applied to ordinal variables, i.e., they are replaced by their integer codes 1:K. Note that this is not the same as using their ranks (since there typically are ties).
As the individual contributions $d_{ij}^{(k)}$ are in $[0, 1]$, the dissimilarity d_{ij} will remain in this range.
If all weights $w_k \delta_{ij}^{(k)}$ are zero, the dissimilarity is set to NA.

Value

an object of class "dissimilarity" containing the dissimilarities among the rows of x. This is typically the input for the functions pam, fanny, agnes or diana. For more details, see dissimilarity.object.

Background

Dissimilarities are used as inputs to cluster analysis and multidimensional scaling. The choice of metric may have a large impact.

Author(s)

Anja Struyf, Mia Hubert, and Peter and Rousseeuw, for the original version.
Martin Maechler improved the NA handling and type specification checking, and extended functionality to `metric = "gower"` and the optional `weights` argument.

References

Gower, J. C. (1971) A general coefficient of similarity and some of its properties, *Biometrics* **27**, 857–874.

Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990) *Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis*. Wiley, New York.

Struyf, A., Hubert, M. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1997) Integrating Robust Clustering Techniques in S-PLUS, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis* **26**, 17–37.

See Also

dissimilarity.object, dist, pam, fanny, clara, agnes, diana.

Examples

```
data(agriculture)
## Example 1 in ref:
##  Dissimilarities using Euclidean metric and without standardization
d.agr <- daisy(agriculture, metric = "euclidean", stand = FALSE)
d.agr
as.matrix(d.agr)[,"DK"] # via as.matrix.dist(.)
## compare with
as.matrix(daisy(agriculture, metric = "gower"))

data(flower)
## Example 2 in ref
summary(dfl1 <- daisy(flower, type = list(asymm = 3)))
summary(dfl2 <- daisy(flower, type = list(asymm = c(1, 3), ordratio = 7)))
## this failed earlier:
summary(dfl3 <- daisy(flower,
        type = list(asymm = c("V1", "V3"), symm= 2,
                    ordratio= 7, logratio= 8)))
```

---

diana *DIvisive ANAlysis Clustering*

Description

Computes a divisive hierarchical clustering of the dataset returning an object of class diana.

Usage

```
diana(x, diss = inherits(x, "dist"), metric = "euclidean", stand = FALSE,
      keep.diss = n < 100, keep.data = !diss, trace.lev = 0)
```

Arguments

x	data matrix or data frame, or dissimilarity matrix or object, depending on the value of the diss argument. In case of a matrix or data frame, each row corresponds to an observation, and each column corresponds to a variable. All variables must be numeric. Missing values (NAs) *are* allowed. In case of a dissimilarity matrix, x is typically the output of daisy or dist. Also a vector of length n*(n-1)/2 is allowed (where n is the number of observations), and will be interpreted in the same way as the output of the above-mentioned functions. Missing values (NAs) are *not* allowed.
diss	logical flag: if TRUE (default for dist or dissimilarity objects), then x will be considered as a dissimilarity matrix. If FALSE, then x will be considered as a matrix of observations by variables.
metric	character string specifying the metric to be used for calculating dissimilarities between observations. The currently available options are "euclidean" and "manhattan". Euclidean distances are root sum-of-squares of differences, and manhattan distances are the sum of absolute differences. If x is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.
stand	logical; if true, the measurements in x are standardized before calculating the dissimilarities. Measurements are standardized for each variable (column), by subtracting the variable's mean value and dividing by the variable's mean absolute deviation. If x is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.
keep.diss, keep.data	logicals indicating if the dissimilarities and/or input data x should be kept in the result. Setting these to FALSE can give much smaller results and hence even save memory allocation *time*.
trace.lev	integer specifying a trace level for printing diagnostics during the algorithm. Default 0 does not print anything; higher values print increasingly more.

Details

diana is fully described in chapter 6 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). It is probably unique in computing a divisive hierarchy, whereas most other software for hierarchical clustering is agglomerative. Moreover, diana provides (a) the divisive coefficient (see diana.object) which measures the amount of clustering structure found; and (b) the banner, a novel graphical display (see plot.diana).

The diana-algorithm constructs a hierarchy of clusterings, starting with one large cluster containing all n observations. Clusters are divided until each cluster contains only a single observation.
At each stage, the cluster with the largest diameter is selected. (The diameter of a cluster is the largest dissimilarity between any two of its observations.)
To divide the selected cluster, the algorithm first looks for its most disparate observation (i.e., which has the largest average dissimilarity to the other observations of the selected cluster). This observation initiates the "splinter group". In subsequent steps, the algorithm reassigns observations that are

closer to the "splinter group" than to the "old party". The result is a division of the selected cluster into two new clusters.

Value

an object of class "diana" representing the clustering; this class has methods for the following generic functions: print, summary, plot.

Further, the class "diana" inherits from "twins". Therefore, the generic function pltree can be used on a diana object, and as.hclust and as.dendrogram methods are available.

A legitimate diana object is a list with the following components:

order	a vector giving a permutation of the original observations to allow for plotting, in the sense that the branches of a clustering tree will not cross.
order.lab	a vector similar to order, but containing observation labels instead of observation numbers. This component is only available if the original observations were labelled.
height	a vector with the diameters of the clusters prior to splitting.
dc	the divisive coefficient, measuring the clustering structure of the dataset. For each observation i, denote by $d(i)$ the diameter of the last cluster to which it belongs (before being split off as a single observation), divided by the diameter of the whole dataset. The dc is the average of all $1 - d(i)$. It can also be seen as the average width (or the percentage filled) of the banner plot. Because dc grows with the number of observations, this measure should not be used to compare datasets of very different sizes.
merge	an (n-1) by 2 matrix, where n is the number of observations. Row i of merge describes the split at step n-i of the clustering. If a number j in row r is negative, then the single observation $\|j\|$ is split off at stage n-r. If j is positive, then the cluster that will be splitted at stage n-j (described by row j), is split off at stage n-r.
diss	an object of class "dissimilarity", representing the total dissimilarity matrix of the dataset.
data	a matrix containing the original or standardized measurements, depending on the stand option of the function agnes. If a dissimilarity matrix was given as input structure, then this component is not available.

See Also

agnes also for background and references; cutree (and as.hclust) for grouping extraction; daisy, dist, plot.diana, twins.object.

Examples

```
data(votes.repub)
dv <- diana(votes.repub, metric = "manhattan", stand = TRUE)
print(dv)
plot(dv)

## Cut into 2 groups:
dv2 <- cutree(as.hclust(dv), k = 2)
table(dv2) # 8 and 42 group members
rownames(votes.repub)[dv2 == 1]
```

```
## For two groups, does the metric matter ?
dv0 <- diana(votes.repub, stand = TRUE) # default: Euclidean
dv.2 <- cutree(as.hclust(dv0), k = 2)
table(dv2 == dv.2)## identical group assignments

str(as.dendrogram(dv0)) # {via as.dendrogram.twins() method}

data(agriculture)
## Plot similar to Figure 8 in ref
## Not run: plot(diana(agriculture), ask = TRUE)
```

`dissimilarity.object` *Dissimilarity Matrix Object*

Description

Objects of class `"dissimilarity"` representing the dissimilarity matrix of a dataset.

Value

The dissimilarity matrix is symmetric, and hence its lower triangle (column wise) is represented as a vector to save storage space. If the object, is called `do`, and `n` the number of observations, i.e., `n <- attr(do, "Size")`, then for $i < j <= n$, the dissimilarity between (row) `i` and `j` is `do[n*(i-1) - i*(i-1)/2 + j-i]`. The length of the vector is $n * (n-1)/2$, i.e., of order n^2.

`"dissimilarity"` objects also inherit from class `dist` and can use `dist` methods, in particular, `as.matrix`, such that d_{ij} from above is just `as.matrix(do)[i,j]`.

The object has the following attributes:

`Size`	the number of observations in the dataset.
`Metric`	the metric used for calculating the dissimilarities. Possible values are "euclidean", "manhattan", "mixed" (if variables of different types were present in the dataset), and "unspecified".
`Labels`	optionally, contains the labels, if any, of the observations of the dataset.
`NA.message`	optionally, if a dissimilarity could not be computed, because of too many missing values for some observations of the dataset.
`Types`	when a mixed metric was used, the types for each variable as one-letter codes (as in the book, e.g. p.54): **A** Asymmetric binary **S** Symmetric binary **N** Nominal (factor) **O** Ordinal (ordered factor) **I** Interval scaled (numeric) **T** raTio to be log transformed (positive numeric) .

GENERATION

`daisy` returns this class of objects. Also the functions `pam`, `clara`, `fanny`, `agnes`, and `diana` return a `dissimilarity` object, as one component of their return objects.

METHODS

The "dissimilarity" class has methods for the following generic functions: print, summary.

See Also

daisy, dist, pam, clara, fanny, agnes, diana.

---

ellipsoidhull *Compute the Ellipsoid Hull or Spanning Ellipsoid of a Point Set*

Description

Compute the "ellipsoid hull" or "spanning ellipsoid", i.e. the ellipsoid of minimal volume ('area' in 2D) such that all given points lie just inside or on the boundary of the ellipsoid.

Usage

```
ellipsoidhull(x, tol=0.01, maxit=5000,
              ret.wt = FALSE, ret.sqdist = FALSE, ret.pr = FALSE)
## S3 method for class ellipsoid
print(x, digits = max(1, getOption("digits") - 2), ...)
```

Arguments

x	the n p-dimensional points asnumeric $n \times p$ matrix.
tol	convergence tolerance for Titterington's algorithm. Setting this to much smaller values may drastically increase the number of iterations needed, and you may want to increas maxit as well.
maxit	integer giving the maximal number of iteration steps for the algorithm.
ret.wt, ret.sqdist, ret.pr	logicals indicating if additional information should be returned, ret.wt specifying the *weights*, ret.sqdist the ***squared distances*** and ret.pr the final **pr**obabilities in the algorithms.
digits,...	the usual arguments to print methods.

Details

The "spanning ellipsoid" algorithm is said to stem from Titterington(1976), in Pison et al (1999) who use it for clusplot.default.
The problem can be seen as a special case of the "Min.Vol." ellipsoid of which a more more flexible and general implementation is cov.mve in the MASS package.

Value

an object of class "ellipsoid", basically a list with several components, comprising at least

cov	$p \times p$ *covariance* matrix description the ellipsoid.
loc	p-dimensional location of the ellipsoid center.

d2	average squared radius. Further, $d2 = t^2$, where t is "the value of a t-statistic on the ellipse boundary" (from ellipse in the **ellipse** package), and hence, more usefully, d2 = qchisq(alpha, df = p), where alpha is the confidence level for p-variate normally distributed data with location and covariance loc and cov to lie inside the ellipsoid.
wt	the vector of weights iff ret.wt was true.
sqdist	the vector of squared distances iff ret.sqdist was true.
prob	the vector of algorithm probabilities iff ret.pr was true.
it	number of iterations used.
tol, maxit	just the input argument, see above.
eps	the achieved tolerance which is the maximal squared radius minus p.
ierr	error code as from the algorithm; 0 means *ok*.
conv	logical indicating if the converged. This is defined as it < maxit && ierr == 0.

Author(s)

Martin Maechler did the present class implementation; Rousseeuw et al did the underlying code.

References

Pison, G., Struyf, A. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1999) Displaying a Clustering with CLUSPLOT, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, **30**, 381–392.

D.M. Titterington (1976) Algorithms for computing D-optimal design on finite design spaces. In *Proc.\ of the 1976 Conf.\ on Information Science and Systems*, 213–216; John Hopkins University.

See Also

predict.ellipsoid which is also the predict method for ellipsoid objects. volume.ellipsoid for an example of 'manual' ellipsoid object construction;
further ellipse from package **ellipse** and ellipsePoints from package **sfsmisc**.

chull for the convex hull, clusplot which makes use of this; cov.mve.

Examples

```
x <- rnorm(100)
xy <- unname(cbind(x, rnorm(100) + 2*x + 10))
exy <- ellipsoidhull(xy)
exy # >> calling print.ellipsoid()

plot(xy, main = "ellipsoidhull(<Gauss data>) -- spanning points")
lines(predict(exy), col="blue")
points(rbind(exy$loc), col = "red", cex = 3, pch = 13)

exy <- ellipsoidhull(xy, tol = 1e-7, ret.wt = TRUE, ret.sq = TRUE)
str(exy) # had small tol, hence many iterations
(ii <- which(zapsmall(exy $ wt) > 1e-6))
## --> only about 4 to 6  "spanning ellipsoid" points
round(exy$wt[ii],3); sum(exy$wt[ii]) # weights summing to 1
points(xy[ii,], pch = 21, cex = 2,
       col="blue", bg = adjustcolor("blue",0.25))
```

fanny *Fuzzy Analysis Clustering*

Description

Computes a fuzzy clustering of the data into k clusters.

Usage

```
fanny(x, k, diss = inherits(x, "dist"), memb.exp = 2,
      metric = c("euclidean", "manhattan", "SqEuclidean"),
      stand = FALSE, iniMem.p = NULL, cluster.only = FALSE,
      keep.diss = !diss && !cluster.only && n < 100,
      keep.data = !diss && !cluster.only,
      maxit = 500, tol = 1e-15, trace.lev = 0)
```

Arguments

x	data matrix or data frame, or dissimilarity matrix, depending on the value of the diss argument. In case of a matrix or data frame, each row corresponds to an observation, and each column corresponds to a variable. All variables must be numeric. Missing values (NAs) are allowed. In case of a dissimilarity matrix, x is typically the output of daisy or dist. Also a vector of length n*(n-1)/2 is allowed (where n is the number of observations), and will be interpreted in the same way as the output of the above-mentioned functions. Missing values (NAs) are not allowed.
k	integer giving the desired number of clusters. It is required that $0 < k < n/2$ where n is the number of observations.
diss	logical flag: if TRUE (default for dist or dissimilarity objects), then x is assumed to be a dissimilarity matrix. If FALSE, then x is treated as a matrix of observations by variables.
memb.exp	number r strictly larger than 1 specifying the *membership exponent* used in the fit criterion; see the 'Details' below. Default: 2 which used to be hardwired inside FANNY.
metric	character string specifying the metric to be used for calculating dissimilarities between observations. Options are "euclidean" (default), "manhattan", and "SqEuclidean". Euclidean distances are root sum-of-squares of differences, and manhattan distances are the sum of absolute differences, and "SqEuclidean", the *squared* euclidean distances are sum-of-squares of differences. Using this last option is equivalent (but somewhat slower) to computing so called "fuzzy C-means". If x is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.
stand	logical; if true, the measurements in x are standardized before calculating the dissimilarities. Measurements are standardized for each variable (column), by subtracting the variable's mean value and dividing by the variable's mean absolute deviation. If x is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.

`iniMem.p` numeric $n \times k$ matrix or `NULL` (by default); can be used to specify a starting `membership` matrix, i.e., a matrix of non-negative numbers, each row summing to one.

`cluster.only` logical; if true, no silhouette information will be computed and returned, see details.

`keep.diss, keep.data` logicals indicating if the dissimilarities and/or input data `x` should be kept in the result. Setting these to `FALSE` can give smaller results and hence also save memory allocation *time*.

`maxit, tol` maximal number of iterations and default tolerance for convergence (relative convergence of the fit criterion) for the FANNY algorithm. The defaults `maxit = 500` and `tol = 1e-15` used to be hardwired inside the algorithm.

`trace.lev` integer specifying a trace level for printing diagnostics during the C-internal algorithm. Default `0` does not print anything; higher values print increasingly more.

Details

In a fuzzy clustering, each observation is "spread out" over the various clusters. Denote by u_{iv} the membership of observation i to cluster v.

The memberships are nonnegative, and for a fixed observation i they sum to 1. The particular method `fanny` stems from chapter 4 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990) (see the references in `daisy`) and has been extended by Martin Maechler to allow user specified `memb.exp`, `iniMem.p`, `maxit`, `tol`, etc.

Fanny aims to minimize the objective function

$$\sum_{v=1}^{k} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} u_{iv}^{r} u_{jv}^{r} d(i,j)}{2 \sum_{j=1}^{n} u_{jv}^{r}}$$

where n is the number of observations, k is the number of clusters, r is the membership exponent `memb.exp` and $d(i,j)$ is the dissimilarity between observations i and j.
Note that $r \to 1$ gives increasingly crisper clusterings whereas $r \to \infty$ leads to complete fuzzyness. K&R(1990), p.191 note that values too close to 1 can lead to slow convergence. Further note that even the default, $r = 2$ can lead to complete fuzzyness, i.e., memberships $u_{iv} \equiv 1/k$. In that case a warning is signalled and the user is advised to chose a smaller `memb.exp` ($= r$).

Compared to other fuzzy clustering methods, `fanny` has the following features: (a) it also accepts a dissimilarity matrix; (b) it is more robust to the `spherical cluster` assumption; (c) it provides a novel graphical display, the silhouette plot (see `plot.partition`).

Value

an object of class `"fanny"` representing the clustering. See `fanny.object` for details.

See Also

`agnes` for background and references; `fanny.object`, `partition.object`, `plot.partition`, `daisy`, `dist`.

Examples

```
## generate 10+15 objects in two clusters, plus 3 objects lying
## between those clusters.
x <- rbind(cbind(rnorm(10, 0, 0.5), rnorm(10, 0, 0.5)),
           cbind(rnorm(15, 5, 0.5), rnorm(15, 5, 0.5)),
           cbind(rnorm( 3,3.2,0.5), rnorm( 3,3.2,0.5)))
fannyx <- fanny(x, 2)
## Note that observations 26:28 are "fuzzy" (closer to # 2):
fannyx
summary(fannyx)
plot(fannyx)

(fan.x.15 <- fanny(x, 2, memb.exp = 1.5)) # crispier for obs. 26:28
(fanny(x, 2, memb.exp = 3))               # more fuzzy in general

data(ruspini)
f4 <- fanny(ruspini, 4)
stopifnot(rle(f4$clustering)$lengths == c(20,23,17,15))
plot(f4, which = 1)
## Plot similar to Figure 6 in Stryuf et al (1996)
plot(fanny(ruspini, 5))
```

`fanny.object` *Fuzzy Analysis (FANNY) Object*

Description

The objects of class `"fanny"` represent a fuzzy clustering of a dataset.

Value

A legitimate `fanny` object is a list with the following components:

`membership`	matrix containing the memberships for each pair consisting of an observation and a cluster.
`memb.exp`	the membership exponent used in the fitting criterion.
`coeff`	Dunn's partition coefficient $F(k)$ of the clustering, where k is the number of clusters. $F(k)$ is the sum of all *squared* membership coefficients, divided by the number of observations. Its value is between $1/k$ and 1. The normalized form of the coefficient is also given. It is defined as $(F(k) - 1/k)/(1 - 1/k)$, and ranges between 0 and 1. A low value of Dunn's coefficient indicates a very fuzzy clustering, whereas a value close to 1 indicates a near-crisp clustering.
`clustering`	the clustering vector of the nearest crisp clustering, see `partition.object`.
`k.crisp`	integer ($\leq k$) giving the number of *crisp* clusters; can be less than k, where it's recommended to decrease `memb.exp`.
`objective`	named vector containing the minimal value of the objective function reached by the FANNY algorithm and the relative convergence tolerance `tol` used.
`convergence`	named vector with `iterations`, the number of iterations needed and `converged` indicating if the algorithm converged (in `maxit` iterations within convergence tolerance `tol`).

diss	an object of class "dissimilarity", see partition.object.
call	generating call, see partition.object.
silinfo	list with silhouette information of the nearest crisp clustering, see partition.object.
data	matrix, possibibly standardized, or NULL, see partition.object.

GENERATION

These objects are returned from fanny.

METHODS

The "fanny" class has methods for the following generic functions: print, summary.

INHERITANCE

The class "fanny" inherits from "partition". Therefore, the generic functions plot and clusplot can be used on a fanny object.

See Also

fanny, print.fanny, dissimilarity.object, partition.object, plot.partition.

---

flower *Flower Characteristics*

Description

8 characteristics for 18 popular flowers.

Usage

```
data(flower)
```

Format

A data frame with 18 observations on 8 variables:

[, "V1"]	factor	winters
[, "V2"]	factor	shadow
[, "V3"]	factor	tubers
[, "V4"]	factor	color
[, "V5"]	ordered	soil
[, "V6"]	ordered	preference
[, "V7"]	numeric	height
[, "V8"]	numeric	distance

V1 winters, is binary and indicates whether the plant may be left in the garden when it freezes.

V2 shadow, is binary and shows whether the plant needs to stand in the shadow.

V3 tubers, is asymmetric binary and distinguishes between plants with tubers and plants that grow in any other way.

V4 color, is nominal and specifies the flower's color (1 = white, 2 = yellow, 3 = pink, 4 = red, 5 = blue).

V5 soil, is ordinal and indicates whether the plant grows in dry (1), normal (2), or wet (3) soil.

V6 preference, is ordinal and gives someone's preference ranking going from 1 to 18.

V7 height, is interval scaled, the plant's height in centimeters.

V8 distance, is interval scaled, the distance in centimeters that should be left between the plants.

References

Struyf, Hubert and Rousseeuw (1996), see agnes.

Examples

```
data(flower)
## Example 2 in ref
daisy(flower, type = list(asymm = 3))
daisy(flower, type = list(asymm = c(1, 3), ordratio = 7))
```

---

lower.to.upper.tri.inds

Permute Indices for Triangular Matrices

Description

Compute index vectors for extracting or reordering of lower or upper triangular matrices that are stored as contiguous vectors.

Usage

```
lower.to.upper.tri.inds(n)
upper.to.lower.tri.inds(n)
```

Arguments

n	integer larger than 1.

Value

integer vector containing a permutation of 1:N where $N = n(n-1)/2$.

See Also

upper.tri, lower.tri with a related purpose.

Examples

```
m5 <- matrix(NA,5,5)
m <- m5; m[lower.tri(m)] <- upper.to.lower.tri.inds(5); m
m <- m5; m[upper.tri(m)] <- lower.to.upper.tri.inds(5); m

stopifnot(lower.to.upper.tri.inds(2) == 1,
          lower.to.upper.tri.inds(3) == 1:3,
          upper.to.lower.tri.inds(3) == 1:3,
     sort(upper.to.lower.tri.inds(5)) == 1:10,
     sort(lower.to.upper.tri.inds(6)) == 1:15)
```

---

mona *MONothetic Analysis Clustering of Binary Variables*

Description

Returns a list representing a divisive hierarchical clustering of a dataset with binary variables only.

Usage

```
mona(x)
```

Arguments

x	data matrix or data frame in which each row corresponds to an observation, and each column corresponds to a variable. All variables must be binary. A limited number of missing values (NAs) is allowed. Every observation must have at least one value different from NA. No variable should have half of its values missing. There must be at least one variable which has no missing values. A variable with all its non-missing values identical, is not allowed.

Details

mona is fully described in chapter 7 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). It is "monothetic" in the sense that each division is based on a single (well-chosen) variable, whereas most other hierarchical methods (including agnes and diana) are "polythetic", i.e. they use all variables together.

The mona-algorithm constructs a hierarchy of clusterings, starting with one large cluster. Clusters are divided until all observations in the same cluster have identical values for all variables.
At each stage, all clusters are divided according to the values of one variable. A cluster is divided into one cluster with all observations having value 1 for that variable, and another cluster with all observations having value 0 for that variable.

The variable used for splitting a cluster is the variable with the maximal total association to the other variables, according to the observations in the cluster to be splitted. The association between variables f and g is given by a(f,g)*d(f,g) - b(f,g)*c(f,g), where a(f,g), b(f,g), c(f,g), and d(f,g) are the numbers in the contingency table of f and g. [That is, a(f,g) (resp. d(f,g)) is the number of observations for which f and g both have value 0 (resp. value 1); b(f,g) (resp. c(f,g)) is the number of observations for which f has value 0 (resp. 1) and g has value 1 (resp. 0).] The total association of a variable f is the sum of its associations to all variables.

This algorithm does not work with missing values, therefore the data are revised, e.g. all missing values are filled in. To do this, the same measure of association between variables is used as in the algorithm. When variable f has missing values, the variable g with the largest absolute association

to f is looked up. When the association between f and g is positive, any missing value of f is replaced by the value of g for the same observation. If the association between f and g is negative, then any missing value of f is replaced by the value of 1-g for the same observation.

Value

an object of class "mona" representing the clustering. See mona.object for details.

See Also

agnes for background and references; mona.object, plot.mona.

Examples

```
data(animals)
ma <- mona(animals)
ma
## Plot similar to Figure 10 in Struyf et al (1996)
plot(ma)

## One place to see if/how error messages are *translated* (to de / pl):
ani.NA   <- animals; ani.NA[4,] <- NA
aniNA    <- within(animals, { end[2:9] <- NA })
if(getRversion() >= 3.0) {
 aniN2   <- animals; aniN2[cbind(1:6, c(3, 1, 4:6, 2))] <- NA }
ani.non2 <- within(animals, end[7] <- 3 )
ani.idNA <- within(animals, end[!is.na(end)] <- 1 )
try( mona(ani.NA)   ) ## error: .. object with all values missing
try( mona(aniNA)    ) ## error: .. more than half missing values
if(getRversion() >= 3.0)
try( mona(aniN2)    ) ## error: all have at least one missing
try( mona(ani.non2) ) ## error: all must be binary
try( mona(ani.idNA) ) ## error:  ditto
```

---

mona.object *Monothetic Analysis (MONA) Object*

Description

The objects of class "mona" represent the divisive hierarchical clustering of a dataset with only binary variables (measurements). This class of objects is returned from mona.

Value

A legitimate mona object is a list with the following components:

data	matrix with the same dimensions as the original data matrix, but with factors coded as 0 and 1, and all missing values replaced.
order	a vector giving a permutation of the original observations to allow for plotting, in the sense that the branches of a clustering tree will not cross.
order.lab	a vector similar to order, but containing observation labels instead of observation numbers. This component is only available if the original observations were labelled.

variable	vector of length n-1 where n is the number of observations, specifying the variables used to separate the observations of order.
step	vector of length n-1 where n is the number of observations, specifying the separation steps at which the observations of order are separated.

METHODS

The "mona" class has methods for the following generic functions: print, summary, plot.

See Also

mona for examples etc, plot.mona.

---

pam *Partitioning Around Medoids*

Description

Partitioning (clustering) of the data into k clusters "around medoids", a more robust version of K-means.

Usage

```
pam(x, k, diss = inherits(x, "dist"), metric = "euclidean",
    medoids = NULL, stand = FALSE, cluster.only = FALSE,
    do.swap = TRUE,
    keep.diss = !diss && !cluster.only && n < 100,
    keep.data = !diss && !cluster.only,
    pamonce = FALSE, trace.lev = 0)
```

Arguments

x	data matrix or data frame, or dissimilarity matrix or object, depending on the value of the diss argument. In case of a matrix or data frame, each row corresponds to an observation, and each column corresponds to a variable. All variables must be numeric. Missing values (NAs) *are* allowed—as long as every pair of observations has at least one case not missing. In case of a dissimilarity matrix, x is typically the output of daisy or dist. Also a vector of length n*(n-1)/2 is allowed (where n is the number of observations), and will be interpreted in the same way as the output of the above-mentioned functions. Missing values (NAs) are *not* allowed.
k	positive integer specifying the number of clusters, less than the number of observations.
diss	logical flag: if TRUE (default for dist or dissimilarity objects), then x will be considered as a dissimilarity matrix. If FALSE, then x will be considered as a matrix of observations by variables.

metric	character string specifying the metric to be used for calculating dissimilarities between observations. The currently available options are "euclidean" and "manhattan". Euclidean distances are root sum-of-squares of differences, and manhattan distances are the sum of absolute differences. If x is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.
medoids	NULL (default) or length-k vector of integer indices (in 1:n) specifying initial medoids instead of using the '*build*' algorithm.
stand	logical; if true, the measurements in x are standardized before calculating the dissimilarities. Measurements are standardized for each variable (column), by subtracting the variable's mean value and dividing by the variable's mean absolute deviation. If x is already a dissimilarity matrix, then this argument will be ignored.
cluster.only	logical; if true, only the clustering will be computed and returned, see details.
do.swap	logical indicating if the **swap** phase should happen. The default, TRUE, correspond to the original algorithm. On the other hand, the **swap** phase is much more computer intensive than the **build** one for large n, so can be skipped by do.swap = FALSE.
keep.diss, keep.data	logicals indicating if the dissimilarities and/or input data x should be kept in the result. Setting these to FALSE can give much smaller results and hence even save memory allocation *time*.
pamonce	logical or integer in 0:2 specifying algorithmic short cuts as proposed by Reynolds et al. (2006), see below.
trace.lev	integer specifying a trace level for printing diagnostics during the build and swap phase of the algorithm. Default 0 does not print anything; higher values print increasingly more.

Details

The basic pam algorithm is fully described in chapter 2 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw(1990). Compared to the k-means approach in kmeans, the function pam has the following features: (a) it also accepts a dissimilarity matrix; (b) it is more robust because it minimizes a sum of dissimilarities instead of a sum of squared euclidean distances; (c) it provides a novel graphical display, the silhouette plot (see plot.partition) (d) it allows to select the number of clusters using mean(silhouette(pr)) on the result pr <- pam(..), or directly its component pr$silinfo$avg.width, see also pam.object.

When cluster.only is true, the result is simply a (possibly named) integer vector specifying the clustering, i.e.,
pam(x,k, cluster.only=TRUE) is the same as
pam(x,k)$clustering but computed more efficiently.

The pam-algorithm is based on the search for k representative objects or medoids among the observations of the dataset. These observations should represent the structure of the data. After finding a set of k medoids, k clusters are constructed by assigning each observation to the nearest medoid. The goal is to find k representative objects which minimize the sum of the dissimilarities of the observations to their closest representative object.
By default, when medoids are not specified, the algorithm first looks for a good initial set of medoids (this is called the **build** phase). Then it finds a local minimum for the objective function, that is, a solution such that there is no single switch of an observation with a medoid that will decrease the objective (this is called the **swap** phase).

When the medoids are specified, their order does *not* matter; in general, the algorithms have been designed to not depend on the order of the observations.

The pamonce option, new in cluster 1.14.2 (Jan. 2012), has been proposed by Matthias Studer, University of Geneva, based on the findings by Reynolds et al. (2006).

The default FALSE (or integer 0) corresponds to the original "swap" algorithm, whereas pamonce = 1 (or TRUE), corresponds to the first proposal .... and pamonce = 2 additionally implements the second proposal as well.

Value

an object of class "pam" representing the clustering. See ?pam.object for details.

Note

For large datasets, pam may need too much memory or too much computation time since both are $O(n^2)$. Then, clara() is preferable, see its documentation.

Author(s)

Kaufman and Rousseeuw's orginal Fortran code was translated to C and augmented in several ways, e.g. to allow cluster.only=TRUE or do.swap=FALSE, by Martin Maechler.
Matthias Studer, Univ.Geneva provided the pamonce implementation.

References

Reynolds, A., Richards, G., de la Iglesia, B. and Rayward-Smith, V. (1992) Clustering rules: A comparison of partitioning and hierarchical clustering algorithms; *Journal of Mathematical Modelling and Algorithms* **5**, 475–504 (http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s10852-005-9022-1).

See Also

agnes for background and references; pam.object, clara, daisy, partition.object, plot.partition, dist.

Examples

```
## generate 25 objects, divided into 2 clusters.
x <- rbind(cbind(rnorm(10,0,0.5), rnorm(10,0,0.5)),
           cbind(rnorm(15,5,0.5), rnorm(15,5,0.5)))
pamx <- pam(x, 2)
pamx
summary(pamx)
plot(pamx)
## use obs. 1 & 16 as starting medoids -- same result (typically)
(p2m <- pam(x, 2, medoids = c(1,16)))

p3m <- pam(x, 3, trace = 2)
## rather stupid initial medoids:
(p3m. <- pam(x, 3, medoids = 3:1, trace = 1))


pam(daisy(x, metric = "manhattan"), 2, diss = TRUE)

data(ruspini)
## Plot similar to Figure 4 in Stryuf et al (1996)
```

```
## Not run: plot(pam(ruspini, 4), ask = TRUE)
```

`pam.object` *Partitioning Around Medoids (PAM) Object*

Description

The objects of class `"pam"` represent a partitioning of a dataset into clusters.

Value

A legitimate `pam` object is a `list` with the following components:

`medoids`	the medoids or representative objects of the clusters. If a dissimilarity matrix was given as input to `pam`, then a vector of numbers or labels of observations is given, else `medoids` is a `matrix` with in each row the coordinates of one medoid.
`id.med`	integer vector of *indices* giving the medoid observation numbers.
`clustering`	the clustering vector, see `partition.object`.
`objective`	the objective function after the first and second step of the `pam` algorithm.
`isolation`	vector with length equal to the number of clusters, specifying which clusters are isolated clusters (L- or L*-clusters) and which clusters are not isolated. A cluster is an L*-cluster iff its diameter is smaller than its separation. A cluster is an L-cluster iff for each observation i the maximal dissimilarity between i and any other observation of the cluster is smaller than the minimal dissimilarity between i and any observation of another cluster. Clearly each L*-cluster is also an L-cluster.
`clusinfo`	matrix, each row gives numerical information for one cluster. These are the cardinality of the cluster (number of observations), the maximal and average dissimilarity between the observations in the cluster and the cluster's medoid, the diameter of the cluster (maximal dissimilarity between two observations of the cluster), and the separation of the cluster (minimal dissimilarity between an observation of the cluster and an observation of another cluster).
`silinfo`	list with silhouette width information, see `partition.object`.
`diss`	dissimilarity (maybe NULL), see `partition.object`.
`call`	generating call, see `partition.object`.
`data`	(possibibly standardized) see `partition.object`.

GENERATION

These objects are returned from `pam`.

METHODS

The `"pam"` class has methods for the following generic functions: `print`, `summary`.

INHERITANCE

The class `"pam"` inherits from `"partition"`. Therefore, the generic functions `plot` and `clusplot` can be used on a `pam` object.

See Also

pam, dissimilarity.object, partition.object, plot.partition.

Examples

```
## Use the silhouette widths for assessing the best number of clusters,
## following a one-dimensional example from Christian Hennig :
##
x <- c(rnorm(50), rnorm(50,mean=5), rnorm(30,mean=15))
asw <- numeric(20)
## Note that "k=1" wont work!
for (k in 2:20)
  asw[k] <- pam(x, k) $ silinfo $ avg.width
k.best <- which.max(asw)
cat("silhouette-optimal number of clusters:", k.best, "\n")

plot(1:20, asw, type= "h", main = "pam() clustering assessment",
     xlab= "k  (# clusters)", ylab = "average silhouette width")
axis(1, k.best, paste("best",k.best,sep="\n"), col = "red", col.axis = "red")
```

---

partition.object *Partitioning Object*

Description

The objects of class "partition" represent a partitioning of a dataset into clusters.

Value

a "partition" object is a list with the following (and typically more) components:

clustering — the clustering vector. An integer vector of length n, the number of observations, giving for each observation the number ('id') of the cluster to which it belongs.

call — the matched call generating the object.

silinfo — a list with all *silhouette* information, only available when the number of clusters is non-trivial, i.e., $1 < k < n$ and then has the following components, see silhouette

widths an (n x 3) matrix, as returned by silhouette(), with for each observation i the cluster to which i belongs, as well as the neighbor cluster of i (the cluster, not containing i, for which the average dissimilarity between its observations and i is minimal), and the silhouette width $s(i)$ of the observation.

clus.avg.widths the average silhouette width per cluster.

avg.width the average silhouette width for the dataset, i.e., simply the average of $s(i)$ over all observations i.

This information is also needed to construct a *silhouette plot* of the clustering, see plot.partition.

Note that avg.width can be maximized over different clusterings (e.g. with varying number of clusters) to choose an *optimal* clustering.

objective	value of criterion maximized during the partitioning algorithm, may more than one entry for different stages.
diss	an object of class "dissimilarity", representing the total dissimilarity matrix of the dataset (or relevant subset, e.g. for clara).
data	a matrix containing the original or standardized data. This might be missing to save memory or when a dissimilarity matrix was given as input structure to the clustering method.

GENERATION

These objects are returned from pam, clara or fanny.

METHODS

The "partition" class has a method for the following generic functions: plot, clusplot.

INHERITANCE

The following classes inherit from class "partition" : "pam", "clara" and "fanny".

See pam.object, clara.object and fanny.object for details.

See Also

pam, clara, fanny.

---

plantTraits *Plant Species Traits Data*

Description

This dataset constitutes a description of 136 plant species according to biological attributes (morphological or reproductive)

Usage

```
data(plantTraits)
```

Format

A data frame with 136 observations on the following 31 variables.

pdias Diaspore mass (mg)

longindex Seed bank longevity

durflow Flowering duration

height Plant height, an ordered factor with levels 1 < 2 < ... < 8.

begflow Time of first flowering, an ordered factor with levels 1 < 2 < 3 < 4 < 5 < 6 < 7 < 8 < 9

mycor Mycorrhizas, an ordered factor with levels 0never < 1 sometimes< 2always

vegaer aerial vegetative propagation, an ordered factor with levels 0never < 1 present but limited< 2important.

`vegsout` underground vegetative propagation, an ordered factor with 3 levels identical to `vegaer` above.

`autopoll` selfing pollination, an ordered factor with levels `0`never < `1`rare < `2` often< the rule`3`

`insects` insect pollination, an ordered factor with 5 levels `0` < ... < `4`.

`wind` wind pollination, an ordered factor with 5 levels `0` < ... < `4`.

`lign` a binary factor with levels `0:1`, indicating if plant is woody.

`piq` a binary factor indicating if plant is thorny.

`ros` a binary factor indicating if plant is rosette.

`semiros` semi-rosette plant, a binary factor (`0`: no; `1`: yes).

`leafy` leafy plant, a binary factor.

`suman` summer annual, a binary factor.

`winan` winter annual, a binary factor.

`monocarp` monocarpic perennial, a binary factor.

`polycarp` polycarpic perennial, a binary factor.

`seasaes` seasonal aestival leaves, a binary factor.

`seashiv` seasonal hibernal leaves, a binary factor.

`seasver` seasonal vernal leaves, a binary factor.

`everalw` leaves always evergreen, a binary factor.

`everparti` leaves partially evergreen, a binary factor.

`elaio` fruits with an elaiosome (dispersed by ants), a binary factor.

`endozoo` endozoochorous fruits, a binary factor.

`epizoo` epizoochorous fruits, a binary factor.

`aquat` aquatic dispersal fruits, a binary factor.

`windgl` wind dispersed fruits, a binary factor.

`unsp` unspecialized mechanism of seed dispersal, a binary factor.

Details

Most of factor attributes are not disjunctive. For example, a plant can be usually pollinated by insects but sometimes self-pollination can occured.

Source

Vallet, Jeanne (2005) *Structuration de communautés végétales et analyse comparative de traits biologiques le long d'un gradient d'urbanisation*. Mémoire de Master 2 'Ecologie-Biodiversité-Evolution'; Université Paris Sud XI, 30p.+ annexes (in french)

Examples

```
data(plantTraits)

## Calculation of a dissimilarity matrix
library(cluster)
dai.b <- daisy(plantTraits,
               type = list(ordratio = 4:11, symm = 12:13, asymm = 14:31))

## Hierarchical classification
```

```
agn.trts <- agnes(dai.b, method="ward")
plot(agn.trts, which.plots = 2, cex= 0.6)
plot(agn.trts, which.plots = 1)
cutree6 <- cutree(agn.trts, k=6)
cutree6

## Principal Coordinate Analysis
cmdsdai.b <- cmdscale(dai.b, k=6)
plot(cmdsdai.b[, 1:2], asp = 1, col = cutree6)
```

`plot.agnes` *Plots of an Agglomerative Hierarchical Clustering*

Description

Creates plots for visualizing an `agnes` object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class agnes
plot(x, ask = FALSE, which.plots = NULL, main = NULL,
           sub = paste("Agglomerative Coefficient = ",round(x$ac, digits = 2)),
           adj = 0, nmax.lab = 35, max.strlen = 5, xax.pretty = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `"agnes"`, typically created by `agnes(.)`.
`ask`	logical; if true and `which.plots` is `NULL`, `plot.agnes` operates in interactive mode, via `menu`.
`which.plots`	integer vector or NULL (default), the latter producing both plots. Otherwise, `which.plots` must contain integers of 1 for a *banner* plot or 2 for a dendrogram or "clustering tree".
`main, sub`	main and sub title for the plot, with convenient defaults. See documentation for these arguments in `plot.default`.
`adj`	for label adjustment in `bannerplot()`.
`nmax.lab`	integer indicating the number of labels which is considered too large for single-name labelling the banner plot.
`max.strlen`	positive integer giving the length to which strings are truncated in banner plot labeling.
`xax.pretty`	logical or integer indicating if `pretty(*, n = xax.pretty)` should be used for the x axis. `xax.pretty = FALSE` is for back compatibility.
`...`	graphical parameters (see `par`) may also be supplied and are passed to `bannerplot()` or `pltree()` (see `pltree.twins`), respectively.

Details

When `ask = TRUE`, rather than producing each plot sequentially, `plot.agnes` displays a menu listing all the plots that can be produced. If the menu is not desired but a pause between plots is still wanted one must set `par(ask= TRUE)` before invoking the plot command.

The banner displays the hierarchy of clusters, and is equivalent to a tree. See Rousseeuw (1986) or chapter 5 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). The banner plots distances at which observations and clusters are merged. The observations are listed in the order found by the `agnes` algorithm, and the numbers in the `height` vector are represented as bars between the observations.

The leaves of the clustering tree are the original observations. Two branches come together at the distance between the two clusters being merged.

For more customization of the plots, rather call `bannerplot` and `pltree()`, i.e., its method `pltree.twins`, respectively.

directly with corresponding arguments, e.g., `xlab` or `ylab`.

Side Effects

Appropriate plots are produced on the current graphics device. This can be one or both of the following choices:
Banner
Clustering tree

Note

In the banner plot, observation labels are only printed when the number of observations is limited less than `nmax.lab` (35, by default), for readability. Moreover, observation labels are truncated to maximally `max.strlen` (5) characters.

For the dendrogram, more flexibility than via `pltree()` is provided by `dg <- as.dendrogram(x)` and plotting `dg` via `plot.dendrogram`.

References

Kaufman, L. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1990) *Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis*. Wiley, New York.

Rousseeuw, P.J. (1986). A visual display for hierarchical classification, in *Data Analysis and Informatics 4*; edited by E. Diday, Y. Escoufier, L. Lebart, J. Pages, Y. Schektman, and R. Tomassone. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 743–748.

Struyf, A., Hubert, M. and Rousseeuw, P.J. (1997) Integrating Robust Clustering Techniques in S-PLUS, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, **26**, 17–37.

See Also

`agnes` and `agnes.object`; `bannerplot`, `pltree.twins`, and `par`.

Examples

```
## Can also pass labels to pltree() and bannerplot():
data(iris)
cS <- as.character(Sp <- iris$Species)
cS[Sp == "setosa"] <- "S"
cS[Sp == "versicolor"] <- "V"
cS[Sp == "virginica"] <- "g"
```

```
ai <- agnes(iris[, 1:4])
plot(ai, labels = cS, nmax = 150)# bannerplot labels are mess
```

---

plot.diana *Plots of a Divisive Hierarchical Clustering*

Description

Creates plots for visualizing a diana object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class diana
plot(x, ask = FALSE, which.plots = NULL, main = NULL,
           sub = paste("Divisive Coefficient = ", round(x$dc, digits = 2)),
           adj = 0, nmax.lab = 35, max.strlen = 5, xax.pretty = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "diana", typically created by diana(.).
ask	logical; if true and which.plots is NULL, plot.diana operates in interactive mode, via menu.
which.plots	integer vector or NULL (default), the latter producing both plots. Otherwise, which.plots must contain integers of 1 for a *banner* plot or 2 for a dendrogram or "clustering tree".
main, sub	main and sub title for the plot, each with a convenient default. See documentation for these arguments in plot.default.
adj	for label adjustment in bannerplot().
nmax.lab	integer indicating the number of labels which is considered too large for single-name labelling the banner plot.
max.strlen	positive integer giving the length to which strings are truncated in banner plot labeling.
xax.pretty	logical or integer indicating if pretty(*, n = xax.pretty) should be used for the x axis. xax.pretty = FALSE is for back compatibility.
...	graphical parameters (see par) may also be supplied and are passed to bannerplot() or pltree(), respectively.

Details

When ask = TRUE, rather than producing each plot sequentially, plot.diana displays a menu listing all the plots that can be produced. If the menu is not desired but a pause between plots is still wanted one must set par(ask= TRUE) before invoking the plot command.

The banner displays the hierarchy of clusters, and is equivalent to a tree. See Rousseeuw (1986) or chapter 6 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). The banner plots the diameter of each cluster being splitted. The observations are listed in the order found by the diana algorithm, and the numbers in the height vector are represented as bars between the observations.

The leaves of the clustering tree are the original observations. A branch splits up at the diameter of the cluster being splitted.

Side Effects

An appropriate plot is produced on the current graphics device. This can be one or both of the following choices:
Banner
Clustering tree

Note

In the banner plot, observation labels are only printed when the number of observations is limited less than `nmax.lab` (35, by default), for readability. Moreover, observation labels are truncated to maximally `max.strlen` (5) characters.

References

see those in `plot.agnes`.

See Also

`diana`, `diana.object`, `twins.object`, `par`.

Examples

```
example(diana)# -> dv <- diana(....)

plot(dv, which = 1, nmax.lab = 100)

## wider labels :
op <- par(mar = par("mar") + c(0, 2, 0,0))
plot(dv, which = 1, nmax.lab = 100, max.strlen = 12)
par(op)
```

---

plot.mona *Banner of Monothetic Divisive Hierarchical Clusterings*

Description

Creates the banner of a `mona` object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class mona
plot(x, main = paste("Banner of ", deparse(x$call)),
          sub = NULL, xlab = "Separation step",
  col = c(2,0), axes = TRUE, adj = 0,
          nmax.lab = 35, max.strlen = 5, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "mona", typically created by mona(.).
main,sub	main and sub titles for the plot, with convenient defaults. See documentation in plot.default.
xlab	x axis label, see title.
col,adj	graphical parameters passed to bannerplot().
axes	logical, indicating if (labeled) axes should be drawn.
nmax.lab	integer indicating the number of labels which is considered too large for labeling.
max.strlen	positive integer giving the length to which strings are truncated in labeling.
...	further graphical arguments are passed to bannerplot() and text.

Details

Plots the separation step at which clusters are splitted. The observations are given in the order found by the mona algorithm, the numbers in the step vector are represented as bars between the observations.

When a long bar is drawn between two observations, those observations have the same value for each variable. See chapter 7 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990).

Side Effects

A banner is plotted on the current graphics device.

Note

In the banner plot, observation labels are only printed when the number of observations is limited less than nmax.lab (35, by default), for readability. Moreover, observation labels are truncated to maximally max.strlen (5) characters.

References

see those in plot.agnes.

See Also

mona, mona.object, par.

---

plot.partition *Plot of a Partition of the Data Set*

Description

Creates plots for visualizing a partition object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class partition
plot(x, ask = FALSE, which.plots = NULL,
     nmax.lab = 40, max.strlen = 5, data = x$data, dist = NULL,
     stand = FALSE, lines = 2,
     shade = FALSE, color = FALSE, labels = 0, plotchar = TRUE,
     span = TRUE, xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL, main = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "partition", typically created by the functions pam, clara, or fanny.
ask	logical; if true and which.plots is NULL, plot.partition operates in interactive mode, via menu.
which.plots	integer vector or NULL (default), the latter producing both plots. Otherwise, which.plots must contain integers of 1 for a *clusplot* or 2 for *silhouette*.
nmax.lab	integer indicating the number of labels which is considered too large for single-name labeling the silhouette plot.
max.strlen	positive integer giving the length to which strings are truncated in silhouette plot labeling.
data	numeric matrix with the scaled data; per default taken from the partition object x, but can be specified explicitly.
dist	when x does not have a diss component as for pam(*, keep.diss=FALSE), dist must be the dissimilarity if a clusplot is desired.
stand,lines,shade,color,labels,plotchar,span,xlim,ylim,main, ...	All optional arguments available for the clusplot.default function (except for the diss one) and graphical parameters (see par) may also be supplied as arguments to this function.

Details

When ask= TRUE, rather than producing each plot sequentially, plot.partition displays a menu listing all the plots that can be produced. If the menu is not desired but a pause between plots is still wanted, call par(ask= TRUE) before invoking the plot command.

The *clusplot* of a cluster partition consists of a two-dimensional representation of the observations, in which the clusters are indicated by ellipses (see clusplot.partition for more details).

The *silhouette plot* of a nonhierarchical clustering is fully described in Rousseeuw (1987) and in chapter 2 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990). For each observation i, a bar is drawn, representing its silhouette width s(i), see silhouette for details. Observations are grouped per cluster, starting with cluster 1 at the top. Observations with a large s(i) (almost 1) are very well clustered, a small s(i) (around 0) means that the observation lies between two clusters, and observations with a negative s(i) are probably placed in the wrong cluster.

A clustering can be performed for several values of k (the number of clusters). Finally, choose the value of k with the largest overall average silhouette width.

Side Effects

An appropriate plot is produced on the current graphics device. This can be one or both of the following choices:
Clusplot
Silhouette plot

Note

In the silhouette plot, observation labels are only printed when the number of observations is less than `nmax.lab` (40, by default), for readability. Moreover, observation labels are truncated to maximally `max.strlen` (5) characters.
For more flexibility, use `plot(silhouette(x), ...)`, see `plot.silhouette`.

References

Rousseeuw, P.J. (1987) Silhouettes: A graphical aid to the interpretation and validation of cluster analysis. *J. Comput. Appl. Math.*, **20**, 53–65.

Further, the references in `plot.agnes`.

See Also

`partition.object`, `clusplot.partition`, `clusplot.default`, `pam`, `pam.object`, `clara`, `clara.object`, `fanny`, `fanny.object`, `par`.

Examples

```
## generate 25 objects, divided into 2 clusters.
x <- rbind(cbind(rnorm(10,0,0.5), rnorm(10,0,0.5)),
           cbind(rnorm(15,5,0.5), rnorm(15,5,0.5)))
plot(pam(x, 2))

## Save space not keeping data in clus.object, and still clusplot() it:
data(xclara)
cx <- clara(xclara, 3, keep.data = FALSE)
cx$data # is NULL
plot(cx, data = xclara)
```

`pltree` *Plot Clustering Tree of a Hierarchical Clustering*

Description

`pltree()` Draws a clustering tree ("dendrogram") on the current graphics device. We provide the `twins` method draws the tree of a `twins` object, i.e., hierarchical clustering, typically resulting from `agnes()` or `diana()`.

Usage

```
pltree(x, ...)
## S3 method for class twins
pltree(x, main = paste("Dendrogram of ", deparse(x$call)),
            labels = NULL, ylab = "Height", ...)
```

Arguments

x	in general, an object for which a pltree method is defined; specifically, an object of class "twins", typically created by either agnes() or diana().
main	main title with a sensible default.
labels	labels to use; the default is constructed from x.
ylab	label for y-axis.
...	graphical parameters (see par) may also be supplied as arguments to this function.

Details

Creates a plot of a clustering tree given a twins object. The leaves of the tree are the original observations. In case of an agglomerative clustering, two branches come together at the distance between the two clusters being merged. For a divisive clustering, a branch splits up at the diameter of the cluster being splitted.

Note that currently the method function simply calls plot(as.hclust(x), ...), which dispatches to plot.hclust(..). If more flexible plots are needed, consider xx <- as.dendrogram(as.hclust(x)) and plotting xx, see plot.dendrogram.

Value

a NULL value is returned.

See Also

agnes, agnes.object, diana, diana.object, hclust, par, plot.agnes, plot.diana.

Examples

```
data(votes.repub)
agn <- agnes(votes.repub)
pltree(agn)

dagn  <- as.dendrogram(as.hclust(agn))
dagn2 <- as.dendrogram(as.hclust(agn), hang = 0.2)
op <- par(mar = par("mar") + c(0,0,0, 2)) # more space to the right
plot(dagn2, horiz = TRUE)
plot(dagn, horiz = TRUE, center = TRUE,
     nodePar = list(lab.cex = 0.6, lab.col = "forest green", pch = NA),
     main = deparse(agn$call))
par(op)
```

---

pluton *Isotopic Composition Plutonium Batches*

Description

The pluton data frame has 45 rows and 4 columns, containing percentages of isotopic composition of 45 Plutonium batches.

Usage

```
data(pluton)
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Pu238 the percentages of ^{238}Pu, always less than 2 percent.

Pu239 the percentages of ^{239}Pu, typically between 60 and 80 percent (from neutron capture of Uranium, ^{238}U).

Pu240 percentage of the plutonium 240 isotope.

Pu241 percentage of the plutonium 241 isotope.

Details

Note that the percentage of plutonium~242 can be computed from the other four percentages, see the examples.

In the reference below it is explained why it is very desirable to combine these plutonium patches in three groups of similar size.

Source

Available as '`pluton.dat`' from the archive of the University of Antwerpen,

'`..../datasets/clusplot-examples.tar.gz`', no longer available.

References

Rousseeuw, P.J. and Kaufman, L and Trauwaert, E. (1996) Fuzzy clustering using scatter matrices, *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis* **23**(1), 135–151.

Examples

```
data(pluton)

hist(apply(pluton,1,sum), col = "gray") # between 94% and 100%
pu5 <- pluton
pu5$Pu242 <- 100 - apply(pluton,1,sum) # the remaining isotope.
pairs(pu5)
```

`predict.ellipsoid` *Predict Method for Ellipsoid Objects*

Description

Compute points on the ellipsoid boundary, mostly for drawing.

Usage

```
predict.ellipsoid(object, n.out=201, ...)
## S3 method for class ellipsoid
predict(object, n.out=201, ...)
ellipsoidPoints(A, d2, loc, n.half = 201)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class ellipsoid, typically from ellipsoidhull(); alternatively any list-like object with proper components, see details below.
n.out, n.half	half the number of points to create.
A, d2, loc	arguments of the auxilary ellipsoidPoints, see below.
...	passed to and from methods.

Details

Note ellipsoidPoints is the workhorse function of predict.ellipsoid a standalone function and method for ellipsoid objects, see ellipsoidhull. The class of object is not checked; it must solely have valid components loc (length p), the $p \times p$ matrix cov (corresponding to A) and d2 for the center, the shape ("covariance") matrix and the squared average radius (or distance) or qchisq(*, p) quantile.

Unfortunately, this is only implemented for $p = 2$, currently; contributions for $p \geq 3$ are *very welcome*.

Value

a numeric matrix of dimension 2*n.out times p.

See Also

ellipsoidhull, volume.ellipsoid.

Examples

```
 ## see also  example(ellipsoidhull)

## Robust vs. L.S. covariance matrix
set.seed(143)
x <- rt(200, df=3)
y <- 3*x + rt(200, df=2)
plot(x,y, main="non-normal data (N=200)")
mtext("with classical and robust cov.matrix ellipsoids")
X <- cbind(x,y)
C.ls <- cov(X) ; m.ls <- colMeans(X)
d2.99 <- qchisq(0.99, df = 2)
lines(ellipsoidPoints(C.ls, d2.99, loc=m.ls), col="green")
if(require(MASS)) {
  Cxy <- cov.rob(cbind(x,y))
  lines(ellipsoidPoints(Cxy$cov, d2 = d2.99, loc=Cxy$center), col="red")
}# MASS
```

---

print.agnes *Print Method for AGNES Objects*

Description

Prints the call, agglomerative coefficient, ordering of objects and distances between merging clusters ('Height') of an agnes object.

This is a method for the generic print() function for objects inheriting from class agnes, see agnes.object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class agnes
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an agnes object.
...	potential further arguments (required by generic).

See Also

summary.agnes producing more output; agnes, agnes.object, print, print.default.

---

print.clara *Print Method for CLARA Objects*

Description

Prints the best sample, medoids, clustering vector and objective function of clara object.

This is a method for the function print() for objects inheriting from class clara.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class clara
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a clara object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

summary.clara producing more output; clara, clara.object, print, print.default.

print.diana *Print Method for DIANA Objects*

Description

Prints the ordering of objects, diameters of splitted clusters, and divisive coefficient of a diana object.

This is a method for the function print() for objects inheriting from class diana.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class diana
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a diana object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

diana, diana.object, print, print.default.

print.dissimilarity *Print and Summary Methods for Dissimilarity Objects*

Description

Print or summarize the distances and the attributes of a dissimilarity object.

These are methods for the functions print() and summary() for dissimilarity objects. See print, print.default, or summary for the general behavior of these.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class dissimilarity
print(x, diag = NULL, upper = NULL,
      digits = getOption("digits"), justify = "none", right = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class dissimilarity
summary(object,
        digits = max(3, getOption("digits") - 2), ...)
## S3 method for class summary.dissimilarity
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	a dissimilarity object or a summary.dissimilarity one for print.summary.dissimilarity().
digits	the number of digits to use, see print.default.
diag, upper, justify, right	optional arguments specifying how the triangular dissimilarity matrix is printed; see print.dist.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

daisy, dissimilarity.object, print, print.default, print.dist.

Examples

```
## See  example(daisy)

sd <- summary(daisy(matrix(rnorm(100), 20,5)))
sd # -> print.summary.dissimilarity(.)
str(sd)
```

---

print.fanny *Print and Summary Methods for FANNY Objects*

Description

Prints the objective function, membership coefficients and clustering vector of fanny object.

This is a method for the function print() for objects inheriting from class fanny.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class fanny
print(x, digits = getOption("digits"), ...)
## S3 method for class fanny
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class summary.fanny
print(x, digits = getOption("digits"), ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	a fanny object.
digits	number of significant digits for printing, see print.default.
...	potential further arguments (required by generic).

See Also

fanny, fanny.object, print, print.default.

print.mona *Print Method for MONA Objects*

Description

Prints the ordering of objects, separation steps, and used variables of a mona object.

This is a method for the function print() for objects inheriting from class mona.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class mona
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a mona object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

mona, mona.object, print, print.default.

print.pam *Print Method for PAM Objects*

Description

Prints the medoids, clustering vector and objective function of pam object.

This is a method for the function print() for objects inheriting from class pam.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pam
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a pam object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

pam, pam.object, print, print.default.

ruspini *Ruspini Data*

Description

The Ruspini data set, consisting of 75 points in four groups that is popular for illustrating clustering techniques.

Usage

```
data(ruspini)
```

Format

A data frame with 75 observations on 2 variables giving the x and y coordinates of the points, respectively.

Source

E. H. Ruspini (1970) Numerical methods for fuzzy clustering. *Inform. Sci.* **2**, 319–350.

References

see those in agnes.

Examples

```
data(ruspini)

## Plot similar to Figure 4 in Stryuf et al (1996)
## Not run: plot(pam(ruspini, 4), ask = TRUE)


## Plot similar to Figure 6 in Stryuf et al (1996)
plot(fanny(ruspini, 5))
```

silhouette *Compute or Extract Silhouette Information from Clustering*

Description

Compute silhouette information according to a given clustering in k clusters.

Usage

```
silhouette(x, ...)
## Default S3 method:
  silhouette(x, dist, dmatrix, ...)
## S3 method for class partition
silhouette(x, ...)
## S3 method for class clara
silhouette(x, full = FALSE, ...)

sortSilhouette(object, ...)
## S3 method for class silhouette
summary(object, FUN = mean, ...)
## S3 method for class silhouette
plot(x, nmax.lab = 40, max.strlen = 5,
     main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = expression("Silhouette width "* s[i]),
     col = "gray",  do.col.sort = length(col) > 1, border = 0,
     cex.names = par("cex.axis"), do.n.k = TRUE, do.clus.stat = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of appropriate class; for the `default` method an integer vector with k different integer cluster codes or a list with such an `x$clustering` component. Note that silhouette statistics are only defined if $2 \leq k \leq n-1$.
dist	a dissimilarity object inheriting from class `dist` or coercible to one. If not specified, `dmatrix` must be.
dmatrix	a symmetric dissimilarity matrix ($n \times n$), specified instead of `dist`, which can be more efficient.
full	logical specifying if a *full* silhouette should be computed for `clara` object. Note that this requires $O(n^2)$ memory, since the full dissimilarity (see `daisy`) is needed internally.
object	an object of class `silhouette`.
...	further arguments passed to and from methods.
FUN	function used to summarize silhouette widths.
nmax.lab	integer indicating the number of labels which is considered too large for single-name labeling the silhouette plot.
max.strlen	positive integer giving the length to which strings are truncated in silhouette plot labeling.
main, sub, xlab	arguments to `title`; have a sensible non-NULL default here.
col, border, cex.names	arguments passed `barplot()`; note that the default used to be `col = heat.colors(n), border = par("fg")` instead. `col` can also be a color vector of length k for clusterwise coloring, see also `do.col.sort`:
do.col.sort	logical indicating if the colors `col` should be sorted "along" the silhouette; this is useful for casewise or clusterwise coloring.
do.n.k	logical indicating if n and k "title text" should be written.
do.clus.stat	logical indicating if cluster size and averages should be written right to the silhouettes.

Details

For each observation i, the *silhouette width* $s(i)$ is defined as follows:
Put a(i) = average dissimilarity between i and all other points of the cluster to which i belongs (if i is the *only* observation in its cluster, $s(i) := 0$ without further calculations). For all *other* clusters C, put $d(i, C)$ = average dissimilarity of i to all observations of C. The smallest of these $d(i, C)$ is $b(i) := \min_C d(i, C)$, and can be seen as the dissimilarity between i and its "neighbor" cluster, i.e., the nearest one to which it does *not* belong. Finally,

$$s(i) := \frac{b(i) - a(i)}{max(a(i), b(i))}.$$

`silhouette.default()` is now based on C code donated by Romain Francois (the R version being still available as `cluster:::silhouette.default.R`).

Observations with a large $s(i)$ (almost 1) are very well clustered, a small $s(i)$ (around 0) means that the observation lies between two clusters, and observations with a negative $s(i)$ are probably placed in the wrong cluster.

Value

`silhouette()` returns an object, `sil`, of class `silhouette` which is an [n x 3] matrix with attributes. For each observation i, `sil[i,]` contains the cluster to which i belongs as well as the neighbor cluster of i (the cluster, not containing i, for which the average dissimilarity between its observations and i is minimal), and the silhouette width $s(i)$ of the observation. The `colnames` correspondingly are `c("cluster", "neighbor", "sil_width")`.

`summary(sil)` returns an object of class `summary.silhouette`, a list with components

`si.summary`	numerical `summary` of the individual silhouette widths $s(i)$.
`clus.avg.widths`	numeric (rank 1) array of clusterwise *means* of silhouette widths where `mean = FUN` is used.
`avg.width`	the total mean `FUN(s)` where `s` are the individual silhouette widths.
`clus.sizes`	`table` of the k cluster sizes.
`call`	if available, the call creating `sil`.
`Ordered`	logical identical to `attr(sil, "Ordered")`, see below.

`sortSilhouette(sil)` orders the rows of `sil` as in the silhouette plot, by cluster (increasingly) and decreasing silhouette width $s(i)$.
`attr(sil, "Ordered")` is a logical indicating if `sil` *is* ordered as by `sortSilhouette()`. In that case, `rownames(sil)` will contain case labels or numbers, and
`attr(sil, "iOrd")` the ordering index vector.

Note

While `silhouette()` is *intrinsic* to the `partition` clusterings, and hence has a (trivial) method for these, it is straightforward to get silhouettes from hierarchical clusterings from `silhouette.default()` with `cutree()` and distance as input.

By default, for `clara()` partitions, the silhouette is just for the best random *subset* used. Use `full = TRUE` to compute (and later possibly plot) the full silhouette.

References

Rousseeuw, P.J. (1987) Silhouettes: A graphical aid to the interpretation and validation of cluster analysis. *J. Comput. Appl. Math.*, **20**, 53–65.

chapter 2 of Kaufman and Rousseeuw (1990), see the references in `plot.agnes`.

See Also

`partition.object`, `plot.partition`.

Examples

```
data(ruspini)
pr4 <- pam(ruspini, 4)
str(si <- silhouette(pr4))
(ssi <- summary(si))
plot(si) # silhouette plot
plot(si, col = c("red", "green", "blue", "purple"))# with cluster-wise coloring

si2 <- silhouette(pr4$clustering, dist(ruspini, "canberra"))
summary(si2) # has small values: "canberra"s fault
plot(si2, nmax= 80, cex.names=0.6)

op <- par(mfrow= c(3,2), oma= c(0,0, 3, 0),
          mgp= c(1.6,.8,0), mar= .1+c(4,2,2,2))
for(k in 2:6)
   plot(silhouette(pam(ruspini, k=k)), main = paste("k = ",k), do.n.k=FALSE)
mtext("PAM(Ruspini) as in Kaufman & Rousseeuw, p.101",
      outer = TRUE, font = par("font.main"), cex = par("cex.main")); frame()

## the same with cluster-wise colours:
c6 <- c("tomato", "forest green", "dark blue", "purple2", "goldenrod4", "gray20")
for(k in 2:6)
   plot(silhouette(pam(ruspini, k=k)), main = paste("k = ",k), do.n.k=FALSE,
        col = c6[1:k])
par(op)

## clara(): standard silhouette is just for the best random subset
data(xclara)
set.seed(7)
str(xc1k <- xclara[sample(nrow(xclara), size = 1000) ,])
cl3 <- clara(xc1k, 3)
plot(silhouette(cl3))# only of the "best" subset of 46
## The full silhouette: internally needs large (36 MB) dist object:
sf <- silhouette(cl3, full = TRUE) ## this is the same as
s.full <- silhouette(cl3$clustering, daisy(xc1k))
if(paste(R.version$major, R.version$minor, sep=".") >= "2.3.0")
   stopifnot(all.equal(sf, s.full, check.attributes = FALSE, tolerance = 0))
## color dependent on original "3 groups of each 1000":
plot(sf, col = 2+ as.integer(names(cl3$clustering) ) %/% 1000,
     main ="plot(silhouette(clara(.), full = TRUE))")

## Silhouette for a hierarchical clustering:
ar <- agnes(ruspini)
si3 <- silhouette(cutree(ar, k = 5), # k = 4 gave the same as pam() above
                  daisy(ruspini))
plot(si3, nmax = 80, cex.names = 0.5)
```

```
## 2 groups: Agnes() wasnt too good:
si4 <- silhouette(cutree(ar, k = 2), daisy(ruspini))
plot(si4, nmax = 80, cex.names = 0.5)
```

---

sizeDiss *Sample Size of Dissimilarity Like Object*

Description

Returns the number of observations (*sample size*) corresponding to a dissimilarity like object, or equivalently, the number of rows or columns of a matrix when only the lower or upper triangular part (without diagonal) is given.

It is nothing else but the inverse function of $f(n) = n(n-1)/2$.

Usage

```
sizeDiss(d)
```

Arguments

d	any object with length (typically) $n(n-1)/2$.

Value

a number; n if `length(d) == n(n-1)/2`, `NA` otherwise.

See Also

`dissimilarity.object` and also `as.dist` for class `dissimilarity` and `dist` objects which have a `Size` attribute.

Examples

```
sizeDiss(1:10)# 5, since 10 == 5 * (5 - 1) / 2
sizeDiss(1:9) # NA

n <- 1:100
stopifnot(n == sapply( n*(n-1)/2, function(n) sizeDiss(logical(n))))
```

---

summary.agnes *Summary Method for 'agnes' Objects*

Description

Returns (and prints) a summary list for an `agnes` object. Printing gives more output than the corresponding `print.agnes` method.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class agnes
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class summary.agnes
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	a agnes object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

agnes, agnes.object.

Examples

```
data(agriculture)
summary(agnes(agriculture))
```

---

summary.clara *Summary Method for 'clara' Objects*

Description

Returns (and prints) a summary list for a clara object. Printing gives more output than the corresponding print.clara method.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class clara
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class summary.clara
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	a clara object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

clara.object

Examples

```
## generate 2000 objects, divided into 5 clusters.
set.seed(47)
x <- rbind(cbind(rnorm(400, 0,4), rnorm(400, 0,4)),
           cbind(rnorm(400,10,8), rnorm(400,40,6)),
           cbind(rnorm(400,30,4), rnorm(400, 0,4)),
           cbind(rnorm(400,40,4), rnorm(400,20,2)),
           cbind(rnorm(400,50,4), rnorm(400,50,4))
)
clx5 <- clara(x, 5)
## Misclassification table:


table(rep(1:5, rep(400,5)), clx5$clust) # -> 1 "error"
summary(clx5)

## Graphically:
par(mfrow = c(3,1), mgp = c(1.5, 0.6, 0), mar = par("mar") - c(0,0,2,0))

plot(x, col = rep(2:6, rep(400,5)))
plot(clx5)
```

`summary.diana` *Summary Method for 'diana' Objects*

Description

Returns (and prints) a summary list for a `diana` object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class diana
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class summary.diana
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, object`	a `diana` object.
`...`	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

`diana`, `diana.object`.

summary.mona *Summary Method for 'mona' Objects*

Description

Returns (and prints) a summary list for a mona object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class mona
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class summary.mona
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	a mona object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

mona, mona.object.

summary.pam *Summary Method for PAM Objects*

Description

Summarize a pam object and return an object of class summary.pam. There's a print method for the latter.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pam
summary(object, ...)
## S3 method for class summary.pam
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x, object	a pam object.
...	potential further arguments (require by generic).

See Also

pam, pam.object.

twins.object *Hierarchical Clustering Object*

Description

The objects of class "twins" represent an agglomerative or divisive (polythetic) hierarchical clustering of a dataset.

Value

See agnes.object and diana.object for details.

GENERATION

This class of objects is returned from agnes or diana.

METHODS

The "twins" class has a method for the following generic function: pltree.

INHERITANCE

The following classes inherit from class "twins" : "agnes" and "diana".

See Also

agnes,diana.

volume.ellipsoid *Compute the Volume of Planar Object*

Description

Compute the volume of a planar object. This is a generic function and a method for ellipsoid objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ellipsoid
volume(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object the volume of which is wanted; for the ellipsoid method, an object of that class (see ellipsoidhull or the example below).

Value

a number, the volume of the given object.

See Also

ellipsoidhull for spanning ellipsoid computation.

Examples

```
## example(ellipsoidhull) # which defines ellipsoid object <namefoo>

myEl <- structure(list(cov = rbind(c(3,1),1:2), loc = c(0,0), d2 = 10),
                  class = "ellipsoid")
volume(myEl)# i.e. "area" here (d = 2)
myEl # also mentions the "volume"
```

---

votes.repub *Votes for Republican Candidate in Presidential Elections*

Description

A data frame with the percents of votes given to the republican candidate in presidential elections from 1856 to 1976. Rows represent the 50 states, and columns the 31 elections.

Usage

```
data(votes.repub)
```

Source

S. Peterson (1973): *A Statistical History of the American Presidential Elections*. New York: Frederick Ungar Publishing Co.

Data from 1964 to 1976 is from R. M. Scammon, *American Votes 12*, Congressional Quarterly.

---

xclara *Bivariate Data Set with 3 Clusters*

Description

An artificial data set consisting of 3000 points in 3 well-separated clusters of size 1000 each.

Usage

```
data(xclara)
```

Format

A data frame with 3000 observations on 2 numeric variables giving the x and y coordinates of the points, respectively.

Source

Sample data set accompanying the reference below.

References

Anja Struyf, Mia Hubert & Peter J. Rousseeuw (1996) Clustering in an Object-Oriented Environment. *Journal of Statistical Software* **1**. http://www.jstatsoft.org/v01/i04

Chapter 21

The codetools package

---

checkUsage *Check R Code for Possible Problems*

Description

Check R code for possible problems.

Usage

```
checkUsage(fun, name = "<anonymous>", report = cat, all = FALSE,
           suppressLocal = FALSE, suppressParamAssigns = !all,
           suppressParamUnused = !all, suppressFundefMismatch = FALSE,
           suppressLocalUnused = FALSE, suppressNoLocalFun = !all,
           skipWith = FALSE, suppressUndefined = dfltSuppressUndefined,
           suppressPartialMatchArgs = TRUE)
checkUsageEnv(env, ...)
checkUsagePackage(pack, ...)
```

Arguments

fun	closure.
name	character; name of closure.
env	environment containing closures to check.
pack	character naming package to check.
...	options to be passed to checkUsage.
report	function to use to report possible problems.
all	logical; report all possible problems if TRUE.
suppressLocal	suppress all local variable warnings.
suppressParamAssigns	suppress warnings about assignments to formal parameters.
suppressParamUnused	suppress warnings about unused formal parameters.

`suppressFundefMismatch`
: suppress warnings about multiple local function definitions with different formal argument lists

`suppressLocalUnused`
: suppress warnings about unused local variables

`suppressNoLocalFun`
: suppress warnings about using local variables as functions with no apparent local function definition

`skipWith`
: logical; if true, do no examine code portion of `with` expressions.

`suppressUndefined`
: suppress warnings about undefined global functions and variables.

`suppressPartialMatchArgs`
: suppress warnings about partial argument matching

Details

`checkUsage` checks a single R closure. Options control which possible problems to report. The default settings are moderately verbose. A first pass might use `suppressLocal=TRUE` to suppress all information related to local variable usage. The `suppressXYZ` values can either be scalar logicals or character vectors; then they are character vectors they only suppress problem reports for the variables with names in the vector.

`checkUsageEnv` and `checkUsagePackage` are convenience functions that apply `checkUsage` to all closures in an environment or a package. `checkUsagePackage` requires that the package be loaded. If the package has a name space then the internal name space frame is checked.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney

Examples

```
checkUsage(checkUsage)
checkUsagePackage("codetools",all=TRUE)
## Not run: checkUsagePackage("base",suppressLocal=TRUE)
```

---

codetools *Low Level Code Analysis Tools for R*

Description

These functions provide some tools for analysing R code. Mainly indented to support the other tools in this package and byte code compilation.

Usage

```
collectLocals(e, collect)
collectUsage(fun, name = "<anonymous>", ...)
constantFold(e, env = NULL, fail = NULL)
findFuncLocals(formals, body)
findLocals(e, envir = .BaseEnv)
findLocalsList(elist, envir = .BaseEnv)
```

```
flattenAssignment(e)
getAssignedVar(e)
isConstantValue(v, w)
makeCodeWalker(..., handler, call, leaf)
makeLocalsCollector(..., leaf, handler, isLocal, exit, collect)
makeUsageCollector(fun, ..., name, enterLocal, enterGlobal, enterInternal,
                   startCollectLocals, finishCollectLocals, warn,
                   signal)
walkCode(e, w = makeCodeWalker())
```

Arguments

e	R expression.
elist	list of R expressions.
v	R object.
fun	closure.
formals	formal arguments of a closure.
body	body of a closure.
name	character.
env	character.
envir	environment.
w	code walker.
...	extra elements for code walker.
collect	function.
fail	function.
handler	function.
call	function.
leaf	function.
isLocal	function.
exit	function.
enterLocal	function.
enterGlobal	function.
enterInternal	function.
startCollectLocals	function.
finishCollectLocals	function.
warn	function.
signal	function.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney

findGlobals *Find Global Functions and Variables Used by a Closure*

Description

Finds global functions and variables used by a closure.

Usage

```
findGlobals(fun, merge = TRUE)
```

Arguments

fun	closure.
merge	logical

Details

The result is an approximation. R semantics only allow variables that might be local to be identified (and event that assumes no use of `assign` and `rm`).

Value

Character vector if `merge` is true; otherwise, a list with `functions` and `variables` components.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney

Examples

```
findGlobals(findGlobals)
findGlobals(findGlobals, merge = FALSE)
```

showTree *Print Lisp-Style Representation of R Expression*

Description

Prints a Lisp-style representation of R expression. This can be useful for understanding how some things are parsed.

Usage

```
showTree(e, write = cat)
```

Arguments

e	R expression.
write	function of one argument to write the result.

Author(s)

Luke Tierney

Examples

```
showTree(quote(-3))
showTree(quote("x"<-1))
showTree(quote("f"(x)))
```

Chapter 22

The `foreign` package

`lookup.xport` *Lookup Information on a SAS XPORT Format Library*

Description

Scans a file as a SAS XPORT format library and returns a list containing information about the SAS library.

Usage

```
lookup.xport(file)
```

Arguments

`file`	character variable with the name of the file to read. The file must be in SAS XPORT format.

Value

A list with one component for each dataset in the XPORT format library.

Author(s)

Saikat DebRoy

References

SAS Technical Support document TS-140: "The Record Layout of a Data Set in SAS Transport (XPORT) Format" available as https://support.sas.com/techsup/technote/ts140.pdf.

See Also

`read.xport`

Examples

```
## Not run: ## no XPORT file is installed.
lookup.xport("test.xpt")

## End(Not run)
```

---

read.arff *Read Data from ARFF Files*

Description

Reads data from Weka Attribute-Relation File Format (ARFF) files.

Usage

```
read.arff(file)
```

Arguments

file	a character string with the name of the ARFF file to read from, or a connection which will be opened if necessary, and if so closed at the end of the function call.

Value

A data frame containing the data from the ARFF file.

References

Attribute-Relation File Format http://www.cs.waikato.ac.nz/~ml/weka/arff.html http://sourceforge.net/projects/weka/files/documentation/.

See Also

write.arff

---

read.dbf *Read a DBF File*

Description

The function reads a DBF file into a data frame, converting character fields to factors, and trying to respect NULL fields.

The DBF format is documented but not much adhered to. There is is no guarantee this will read all DBF files.

Usage

```
read.dbf(file, as.is = FALSE)
```

Arguments

file	name of input file
as.is	should character vectors not be converted to factors?

Details

DBF is the extension used for files written for the 'XBASE' family of database languages, 'covering the dBase, Clipper, FoxPro, and their Windows equivalents Visual dBase, Visual Objects, and Visual FoxPro, plus some older products' (http://www.clicketyclick.dk/databases/xbase/format/). Most of these follow the file structure used by Ashton-Tate's dBase II, III or 4 (later owned by Borland).

read.dbf is based on C code from http://shapelib.maptools.org/ which implements the 'XBASE' specification. It can convert fields of type "L" (logical), "N" and "F" (numeric and float) and "D" (dates): all other field types are read as-is as character vectors. A numeric field is read as an integer vector if it is encoded to have no decimals, otherwise as a numeric vector. However, if the numbers are too large to fit into an integer vector, it is changed to numeric. Note that is possible to read integers that cannot be represented exactly even as doubles: this sometimes occurs if IDs are incorrectly coded as numeric.

Value

A data frame of data from the DBF file; note that the field names are adjusted to use in R using make.names(unique=TRUE).

There is an attribute "data_type" giving the single-character dBase types for each field.

Note

Not to be able to read a particular 'DBF' file is not a bug: this is a convenience function especially for shapefiles.

Author(s)

Nicholas Lewin-Koh and Roger Bivand; shapelib by Frank Warmerdam

References

http://shapelib.maptools.org/.

The Borland file specification *via* http://www.wotsit.org, currently at http://www.wotsit.org/list.asp?fc=6.

See Also

write.dbf

Examples

```
x <- read.dbf(system.file("files/sids.dbf", package="foreign")[1])
str(x)
summary(x)
```

read.dta *Read Stata Binary Files*

Description

Reads a file in Stata version 5–12 binary format into a data frame.

Frozen: will not support Stata formats after 12.

Usage

```
read.dta(file, convert.dates = TRUE, convert.factors = TRUE,
         missing.type = FALSE,
         convert.underscore = FALSE, warn.missing.labels = TRUE)
```

Arguments

file	a filename or URL as a character string.
convert.dates	Convert Stata dates to Date class, and date-times to POSIXct class?
convert.factors	Use Stata value labels to create factors? (Version 6.0 or later).
missing.type	For version 8 or later, store information about different types of missing data?
convert.underscore	Convert "_" in Stata variable names to "." in R names?
warn.missing.labels	Warn if a variable is specified with value labels and those value labels are not present in the file.

Details

If the filename appears to be a URL (of schemes 'http:', 'ftp:' or 'https:') the URL is first downloaded to a temporary file and then read. ('https:' is only supported on some platforms.)

The variables in the Stata data set become the columns of the data frame. Missing values are correctly handled. The data label, variable labels, timestamp, and variable/dataset characteristics are stored as attributes of the data frame.

By default Stata dates (%d and %td formats) are converted to 's Date class, and variables with Stata value labels are converted to factors. Ordinarily, read.dta will not convert a variable to a factor unless a label is present for every level. Use convert.factors = NA to override this. In any case the value label and format information is stored as attributes on the returned data frame. Stata's date formats are sketchily documented: if necessary use convert.dates = FALSE and examine the attributes to work out how to post-process the dates.

Stata 8 introduced a system of 27 different missing data values. If missing.type is TRUE a separate list is created with the same variable names as the loaded data. For string variables the list value is NULL. For other variables the value is NA where the observation is not missing and 0–26 when the observation is missing. This is attached as the "missing" attribute of the returned value.

The default file format for Stata 13, format-115, is substantially different from those for Stata 5–12.

Value

A data frame with attributes. These will include "datalabel", "time.stamp", "formats", "types", "val.labels", "var.labels" and "version" and may include "label.table" and "expansion.table". Possible versions are 5, 6, 7, -7 (Stata 7SE, 'format-111'), 8 (Stata 8 and 9, 'format-113'), 10 (Stata 10 and 11, 'format-114'). and 12 (Stata 12, 'format-115').

The value labels in attribute "val.labels" name a table for each variable, or are an empty string. The tables are elements of the named list attribute "label.table": each is an integer vector with names.

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley and R-core members: support for value labels by Brian Quistorff.

References

Stata Users Manual (versions 5 & 6), Programming manual (version 7), or online help (version 8 and later) describe the format of the files. Or directly at http://www.stata.com/help.cgi?dta_114 and http://www.stata.com/help.cgi?dta_113, but note that these have been changed since first published.

See Also

A different approach is available in package **memisc**: see its help for Stata.file, at the time of writing not for Stata 12 or later.

Package **readstata13** for Stata 13 files.

write.dta, attributes, Date, factor

Examples

```
data(swiss)
write.dta(swiss,swissfile <- tempfile())
read.dta(swissfile)
```

---

read.epiinfo *Read Epi Info Data Files*

Description

Reads data files in the .REC format used by Epi Info versions 6 and earlier and by EpiData. Epi Info is a public domain database and statistics package produced by the US Centers for Disease Control and EpiData is a freely available data entry and validation system.

Usage

```
read.epiinfo(file, read.deleted = FALSE, guess.broken.dates = FALSE,
             thisyear = NULL, lower.case.names = FALSE)
```

Arguments

file	A filename, URL, or connection.
read.deleted	Deleted records are read if TRUE, omitted if FALSE or replaced with NA if NA.
guess.broken.dates	Attempt to convert dates with 0 or 2 digit year information (see 'Details').
thisyear	A 4-digit year to use for dates with no year. Defaults to the current year.
lower.case.names	Convert variable names to lowercase?

Details

Epi Info allows dates to be specified with no year or with a 2 or 4 digits. Dates with four-digit years are always converted to Date class. With the guess.broken.dates option the function will attempt to convert two-digit years using the operating system's default method (see Date) and will use the current year or the thisyear argument for dates with no year information.

If read.deleted is TRUE the "deleted" attribute of the data frame indicates the deleted records.

Value

A data frame.

Note

Some later versions of Epi Info use the Microsoft Access file format to store data. That may be readable with the **RODBC** package.

References

http://www.cdc.gov/epiinfo/, http://www.epidata.dk

See Also

DateTimeClasses

Examples

```
## Not run: ## That file is not available
read.epiinfo("oswego.rec", guess.broken.dates = TRUE, thisyear = "1972")

## End(Not run)
```

---

read.mtp *Read a Minitab Portable Worksheet*

Description

Return a list with the data stored in a file as a Minitab Portable Worksheet.

Usage

```
read.mtp(file)
```

Arguments

file	character variable with the name of the file to read. The file must be in Minitab Portable Worksheet format.

Value

A list with one component for each column, matrix, or constant stored in the Minitab worksheet.

Note

This function was written around 1990 for the format current then. Later versions of Minitab appear to have added to the format.

Author(s)

Douglas M. Bates

References

http://www.minitab.com/

Examples

```
## Not run:
read.mtp("ex1-10.mtp")

## End(Not run)
```

---

read.octave *Read Octave Text Data Files*

Description

Read a file in Octave text data format into a list.

Usage

```
read.octave(file)
```

Arguments

file	a character string with the name of the file to read.

Details

This function is used to read in files in Octave text data format, as created by `save -text` in Octave. It knows about most of the common types of variables, including the standard atomic (real and complex scalars, matrices, and N-d arrays, strings, ranges, and boolean scalars and matrices) and recursive (structs, cells, and lists) ones, but has no guarantee to read all types. If a type is not recognized, a warning indicating the unknown type is issued, it is attempted to skip the unknown entry, and `NULL` is used as its value. Note that this will give incorrect results, and maybe even errors, in the case of unknown recursive data types.

As Octave can read MATLAB binary files, one can make the contents of such files available to R by using Octave's load and save (as text) facilities as an intermediary step.

Value

A list with one named component for each variable in the file.

Author(s)

Stephen Eglen <stephen@gnu.org> and Kurt Hornik

References

http://www.octave.org/

`read.spss` *Read an SPSS Data File*

Description

`read.spss` reads a file stored by the SPSS `save` or `export` commands.

This was orignally written in 2000 and has limited support for changes in SPSS formats since (which have not been many).

Usage

```
read.spss(file, use.value.labels = TRUE, to.data.frame = FALSE,
          max.value.labels = Inf, trim.factor.names = FALSE,
          trim_values = TRUE, reencode = NA, use.missings = to.data.frame)
```

Arguments

`file`	character string: the name of the file or URL to read.
`use.value.labels`	logical: convert variables with value labels into factors with those levels? This is only done if there are at least as many labels as values of the variable (when values without a matching label are returned as `NA`).
`to.data.frame`	logical: return a data frame?
`max.value.labels`	logical: only variables with value labels and at most this many unique values will be converted to factors if `TRUE`.
`trim.factor.names`	logical: trim trailing spaces from factor levels?
`trim_values`	logical: should values and value labels have trailing spaces ignored when matching for `use.value.labels = TRUE`?
`reencode`	logical: should character strings be re-encoded to the current locale. The default, `NA`, means to do so in a UTF-8 locale, only. Alternatively a character string specifying an encoding to assume for the file.
`use.missings`	logical: should information on user-defined missing values be used to set the corresponding values to `NA`?

Details

This uses modified code from the PSPP project (http://www.gnu.org/software/pspp/ for reading the SPSS formats.

If the filename appears to be a URL (of schemes 'http:', 'ftp:' or 'https:') the URL is first downloaded to a temporary file and then read. ('https:' is supported where supported by download.file with its current default method.)

Occasionally in SPSS, value labels will be added to some values of a continuous variable (e.g. to distinguish different types of missing data), and you will not want these variables converted to factors. By setting max.value.labels you can specify that variables with a large number of distinct values are not converted to factors even if they have value labels. In addition, variables will not be converted to factors if there are non-missing values that have no value label. The value labels are then returned in the "value.labels" attribute of the variable.

If SPSS variable labels are present, they are returned as the "variable.labels" attribute of the answer.

Fixed length strings (including value labels) are padded on the right with spaces by SPSS, and so are read that way by . The default argument trim_values=TRUE causes trailing spaces to be ignored when matching to value labels, as examples have been seen where the strings and the value labels had different amounts of padding. See the examples for sub for ways to remove trailing spaces in character data.

URL http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms776446(VS.85).aspx provides a list of translations from Windows codepage numbers to encoding names that iconv is likely to know about and so suitable values for reencode. Automatic re-encoding is attempted for apparent codepages of 200 or more in a UTF-8 locale: some other high-numbered codepages can be re-encoded on most systems, but the encoding names are platform-dependent (see iconvlist).

Value

A list (or optionally a data frame) with one component for each variable in the saved data set.

If what looks like a Windows codepage was recorded in the SPSS file, it is attached (as a number) as attribute "codepage" to the result.

There may be attributes "label.table" and "variable.labels". Attribute "label.table" is a named list of value labels with one element per variable, either NULL or a named character vector. Attribute "variable.labels" is a named character vector with names the short variable names and elements the long names.

If there are user-defined missing values, there will be a attribute "Missings". This is a named list with one list element per variable. Each element has an element type, a length-one character vector giving the type of missingness, and may also have an element value with the values corresponding to missingness. This is a complex subject (where the and C source code for read.spss is the main documentation), but the simplest cases are types "one", "two" and "three" with a corresponding number of (real or string) values whose labels can be found from the "label.table" attribute. Other possibilities are a finite or semi-infinite range, possibly plus a single value. See also http://www.gnu.org/software/pspp/manual/html_node/Missing-Observations.html#Missing-Observations.

Note

If SPSS value labels are converted to factors the underlying numerical codes will not in general be the same as the SPSS numerical values, since the numerical codes in R are always $1, 2, 3, \ldots$.

You may see warnings about the file encoding for SPSS save files: it is possible such files contain non-ASCII character data which need re-encoding. The most common occurrence is Windows codepage 1252, a superset of Latin-1. The encoding is recorded (as an integer) in attribute "codepage" of the result if it looks like a Windows codepage. Automatic re-encoding is done only in UTF-8 locales: see argument reencode.

Author(s)

Saikat DebRoy and the R-core team

See Also

A different interface also based on the PSPP codebase is available in package **memisc**: see its help for spss.system.file.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## if you have an SPSS file called datafile:
read.spss("datafile")
## dont convert value labels to factor levels
read.spss("datafile", use.value.labels = FALSE)
## convert value labels to factors for variables with at most
## ten distinct values.
read.spss("datafile", max.value.labels = 10)

## End(Not run)
```

---

read.ssd *Obtain a Data Frame from a SAS Permanent Dataset, via read.xport*

Description

Generates a SAS program to convert the ssd contents to SAS transport format and then uses read.xport to obtain a data frame.

Usage

```
read.ssd(libname, sectionnames,
   tmpXport=tempfile(), tmpProgLoc=tempfile(), sascmd="sas")
```

Arguments

libname	character string defining the SAS library (usually a directory reference)
sectionnames	character vector giving member names. These are files in the libname directory. They will usually have a .ssd0x or .sas7bdat extension, which should be omitted. Use of ASCII names of at most 8 characters is strongly recommended.
tmpXport	character string: location where temporary xport format archive should reside – defaults to a randomly named file in the session temporary directory, which will be removed.
tmpProgLoc	character string: location where temporary conversion SAS program should reside – defaults to a randomly named file in session temporary directory, which will be removed on successful operation.
sascmd	character string giving full path to SAS executable.

Details

Creates a SAS program and runs it.

Error handling is primitive.

Value

A data frame if all goes well, or `NULL` with warnings and some enduring side effects (log file for auditing)

Note

This requires SAS to be available. If you have a SAS dataset without access to SAS you will need another product to convert it to a format such as `.csv`, for example 'Stat/Transfer' or 'DBMS/Copy' or the 'SAS System Viewer' (Windows only).

SAS requires section names to be no more than 8 characters. This is worked by the use of symbolic links: these are barely supported on Windows.

Author(s)

For Unix: VJ Carey <stvjc@channing.harvard.edu>

See Also

`read.xport`

Examples

```
## if there were some files on the web we could get a real
## runnable example
## Not run:
R> list.files("trialdata")
 [1] "baseline.sas7bdat" "form11.sas7bdat"   "form12.sas7bdat"
 [4] "form13.sas7bdat"   "form22.sas7bdat"   "form23.sas7bdat"
 [7] "form3.sas7bdat"    "form4.sas7bdat"    "form48.sas7bdat"
[10] "form50.sas7bdat"   "form51.sas7bdat"   "form71.sas7bdat"
[13] "form72.sas7bdat"   "form8.sas7bdat"    "form9.sas7bdat"
[16] "form90.sas7bdat"   "form91.sas7bdat"
R> baseline <- read.ssd("trialdata", "baseline")
R> form90 <- read.ssd("trialdata", "form90")

## Or for a Windows example
sashome <- "/Program Files/SAS/SAS 9.1"
read.ssd(file.path(sashome, "core", "sashelp"), "retail",
         sascmd = file.path(sashome, "sas.exe"))

## End(Not run)
```

`read.systat` *Obtain a Data Frame from a Systat File*

Description

`read.systat` reads a rectangular data file stored by the Systat `SAVE` command as (legacy) `*.sys` or more recently `*.syd` files.

Usage

```
read.systat(file, to.data.frame = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`file`	character variable with the name of the file to read
`to.data.frame`	return a data frame (otherwise a list)

Details

The function only reads those Systat files that are rectangular data files (`mtype = 1`), and warns when files have non-standard variable name codings. The files tested were produced on MS-DOS and Windows: files for the Mac version of Systat have a completely different format.

The C code was originally written for an add-on module for Systat described in Bivand (1992 paper). Variable names retain the trailing dollar in the list returned when `to.data.frame` is `FALSE`, and in that case character variables are returned as is and filled up to 12 characters with blanks on the right. The original function was limited to reading Systat files with up to 256 variables (a Systat limitation); it will now read up to 8192 variables.

If there is a user comment in the header this is returned as attribute `"comment"`. Such comments are always a multiple of 72 characters (with a maximum of 720 chars returned), normally padded with trailing spaces.

Value

A data frame (or list) with one component for each variable in the saved data set.

Author(s)

Roger Bivand

References

Systat Manual, 1987, 1989

Bivand, R. S. (1992) SYSTAT-compatible software for modelling spatial dependence among observations. *Computers and Geosciences* **18**, 951–963.

Examples

```
summary(iris)
iris.s <- read.systat(system.file("files/Iris.syd", package="foreign")[1])
str(iris.s)
summary(iris.s)
```

`read.xport` *Read a SAS XPORT Format Library*

Description

Reads a file as a SAS XPORT format library and returns a list of data.frames.

Usage

```
read.xport(file)
```

Arguments

`file`	character variable with the name of the file to read. The file must be in SAS XPORT format.

Value

If there is a more than one dataset in the XPORT format library, a named list of data frames, otherwise a data frame. The columns of the data frames will be either numeric (corresponding to numeric in SAS) or factor (corresponding to character in SAS). All SAS numeric missing values (including special missing values represented by `._`, `.A` to `.Z` by SAS) are mapped to `NA`.

Trailing blanks are removed from character columns before conversion to a factor. Some sources claim that character missing values in SAS are represented by or : these are not treated as missing values.

Author(s)

Saikat DebRoy <saikat@stat.wisc.edu>

References

SAS Technical Support document TS-140: "The Record Layout of a Data Set in SAS Transport (XPORT) Format" available at https://support.sas.com/techsup/technote/ts140.pdf.

See Also

`lookup.xport`

Examples

```
## Not run: ## no XPORT file is installed
read.xport("test.xpt")

## End(Not run)
```

S3 read functions *Read an S3 Binary or data.dump File*

Description

Reads binary data files or `data.dump` files that were produced in S version 3.

Usage

```
data.restore(file, print = FALSE, verbose = FALSE, env = .GlobalEnv)
read.S(file)
```

Arguments

`file`	the filename of the S-PLUS `data.dump` or binary file.
`print`	whether to print the name of each object as read from the file.
`verbose`	whether to print the name of every subitem within each object.
`env`	environment within which to create the restored object(s).

Details

`read.S` can read the binary files produced in some older versions of S-PLUS on either Windows (versions 3.x, 4.x, 2000) or Unix (version 3.x with 4 byte integers). It automatically detects whether the file was produced on a big- or little-endian machine and adapts itself accordingly.

`data.restore` can read a similar range of files produced by `data.dump` and for newer versions of S-PLUS, those from `data.dump(....., oldStyle=TRUE)`.

Not all S3 objects can be handled in the current version. The most frequently encountered exceptions are functions and expressions; you will also have trouble with objects that contain model formulas. In particular, comments will be lost from function bodies, and the argument lists of functions will often be changed.

Value

For `read.S`, an R version of the S3 object.

For `data.restore`, the name of the file.

Author(s)

Duncan Murdoch

Examples

```
## if you have an S-PLUS _Data file containing myobj
## Not run: read.S(file.path("_Data", "myobj"))
data.restore("dumpdata", print = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

`write.arff` *Write Data into ARFF Files*

Description

Writes data into Weka Attribute-Relation File Format (ARFF) files.

Usage

```
write.arff(x, file, eol = "\n", relation = deparse(substitute(x)))
```

Arguments

`x`	the data to be written, preferably a matrix or data frame. If not, coercion to a data frame is attempted.
`file`	either a character string naming a file, or a connection. `""` indicates output to the standard output connection.
`eol`	the character(s) to print at the end of each line (row).
`relation`	The name of the relation to be written in the file.

Details

`relation` will be passed through `make.names` before writing to the file, in an attempt to it them acceptable to Weka, and column names what do not start with an alphabetic character will have `X` prepended.

However, the references say that ARFF files are ASCII files, and that encoding is not enforced.

References

Attribute-Relation File Format http://www.cs.waikato.ac.nz/~ml/weka/arff.html
http://sourceforge.net/projects/weka/files/documentation/.

See Also

`read.arff`

Examples

```
write.arff(iris, file = "")
```

write.dbf *Write a DBF File*

Description

The function tries to write a data frame to a DBF file.

Usage

```
write.dbf(dataframe, file, factor2char = TRUE, max_nchar = 254)
```

Arguments

dataframe	a data frame object.
file	a file name to be written to.
factor2char	logical, default TRUE, convert factor columns to character: otherwise they are written as the internal integer codes.
max_nchar	The maximum number of characters allowed in a character field. Strings which exceed this will be truncated with a warning. See Details.

Details

Dots in column names are replaced by underlines in the DBF file, and names are truncated to 11 characters.

Only vector columns of classes "logical", "numeric", "integer", "character", "factor" and "Date" can be written. Other columns should be converted to one of these.

Maximum precision (number of digits including minus sign and decimal sign) for numeric is 19 - scale (digits after the decimal sign) which is calculated internally based on the number of digits before the decimal sign.

The original DBASE format limited character fields to 254 bytes. It is said that Clipper and FoxPro can read up to 32K, and it is possible to write a reader that could accept up to 65535 bytes. (The documentation suggests that only ASCII characters can be assumed to be supported.) Readers expecting the older standard (which includes Excel 2003, Access 2003 and OpenOffice 2.0) will truncate the field to the maximum width modulo 256, so increase max_nchar only if you are sure the intended reader supports wider character fields.

Value

Invisible NULL.

Note

Other applications have varying abilities to read the data types used here. Microsoft Access reads "numeric", "integer", "character" and "Date" fields, including recognizing missing values, but not "logical" (read as 0,-1). Microsoft Excel understood all possible types but did not interpret missing values in character fields correctly (showing them as character nuls).

Author(s)

Nicholas J. Lewin-Koh, modified by Roger Bivand and Brian Ripley; shapelib by Frank Warmerdam.

References

http://shapelib.maptools.org/

http://www.clicketyclick.dk/databases/xbase/format/data_types.html

See Also

read.dbf

Examples

```
str(warpbreaks)
try1 <- paste(tempfile(), ".dbf", sep = "")
write.dbf(warpbreaks, try1, factor2char = FALSE)
in1 <- read.dbf(try1)
str(in1)
try2 <- paste(tempfile(), ".dbf", sep = "")
write.dbf(warpbreaks, try2, factor2char = TRUE)
in2 <- read.dbf(try2)
str(in2)
unlink(c(try1, try2))
```

---

write.dta *Write Files in Stata Binary Format*

Description

Writes the data frame to file in the Stata binary format. Does not write array variables unless they can be drop-ed to a vector.

Frozen: will not support Stata formats after 10 (also used by Stata 11).

Usage

```
write.dta(dataframe, file, version = 7L,
          convert.dates = TRUE, tz = "GMT",
          convert.factors = c("labels", "string", "numeric", "codes"))
```

Arguments

dataframe	a data frame.
file	character string giving filename.
version	integer: Stata version: 6, 7, 8 and 10 are supported, and 9 is mapped to 8, 11 to 10.
convert.dates	logical: convert Date and POSIXct objects: see section 'Dates'.
tz	timezone for date conversion.
convert.factors	how to handle factors.

Details

The major difference between supported file formats in Stata versions is that version 7.0 and later allow 32-character variable names (5 and 6 were restricted to 8-character names). The `abbreviate` function is used to trim variable names to the permitted length. A warning is given if this is needed and it is an error for the abbreviated names not to be unique. Each version of Stata is claimed to be able to read all earlier formats.

The columns in the data frame become variables in the Stata data set. Missing values are handled correctly.

There are four options for handling factors. The default is to use Stata 'value labels' for the factor levels. With `convert.factors = "string"`, the factor levels are written as strings (the name of the value label is taken from the `"val.labels"` attribute if it exists or the variable name otherwise). With `convert.factors = "numeric"` the numeric values of the levels are written, or `NA` if they cannot be coerced to numeric. Finally, `convert.factors = "codes"` writes the underlying integer codes of the factors. This last used to be the only available method and is provided largely for backwards compatibility.

If the `"label.table"` attriburte contains value labels with names not already attached to a variable (not the variable name or name from `"val.labels"`) then these will be written out as well.

If the `"datalabel"` attribute contains a string, it is written out as the dataset label otherwise the dataset label is `"Written by R."`.

If the `"expansion.table"` attribute exists expansion fields are written. This attribute should contain a list where each element is string vector of length three. The first vector element contains the name of a variable or "_dta" (meaning the dataset). The second element contains the characeristic name. The third contains the associated data.

If the `"val.labels"` attribute contains a string vector with a string label for each variable then this is written as the variable labels. Otherwise the variable names are repeated as variable labels.

If the `"var.labels"` attribute contains a string vector with a string label for each variable then this is written as the variable labels. Otherwise the variable names are repeated as variable labels.

For Stata 8 or later use the default `version = 7` – the only advantage of Stata 8 format over 7 is that it can represent multiple different missing value types, and doesn't have them. Stata 10/11 allows longer format lists, but does not make use of them.

Note that the Stata formats are documented to use ASCII strings – does not enforce this, but use of non-ASCII character strings will not be portable as the encoding is not recorded. Up to 244 bytes are allowed in character data, and longer strings will be truncated with a warning.

Stata uses some large numerical values to represent missing values. This function does not currently check, and hence integers greater than `2147483620` and doubles greater than `8.988e+307` may be misinterpreted by Stata.

Value

`NULL`

Dates

Unless disabled by argument `convert.dates = FALSE`, date and date-time objects (`POSIXt` classes) are converted into the Stata date format, the number of days since 1960-01-01. (For date-time objects this may lose information.) Stata can be told that these are dates by

```
format xdate %td;
```

It is possible to pass objects of class POSIXct to Stata to be treated as one of its versions of date-times. Stata uses the number of milliseconds since 1960-01-01, either excluding (format %tc) or counting (format %tC) leap seconds. So either an object of class POSICct can be passed to Stata with convert.dates = FALSE and converted in Stata, or 315619200 should be added and then multiplied by 1000 before passing to write.dta and assigning format %tc. Stata's comments on the first route are at http://www.stata.com/manuals13/ddatetime.pdf, but at the time of writing were wrong: uses POSIX conventions and hence does not count leap seconds.

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley and R-core members: support for value labels by Brian Quistorff.

References

Stata 6.0 Users Manual, Stata 7.0 Programming manual, Stata online help (version 8 and later, also http://www.stata.com/help.cgi?dta_114 and http://www.stata.com/help.cgi?dta_113) describe the file formats.

See Also

read.dta, attributes, DateTimeClasses, abbreviate

Examples

```
write.dta(swiss, swissfile <- tempfile())
read.dta(swissfile)
```

---

write.foreign *Write Text Files and Code to Read Them*

Description

This function exports simple data frames to other statistical packages by writing the data as free-format text and writing a separate file of instructions for the other package to read the data.

Usage

```
write.foreign(df, datafile, codefile,
              package = c("SPSS", "Stata", "SAS"), ...)
```

Arguments

df	A data frame
datafile	Name of file for data output
codefile	Name of file for code output
package	Name of package
...	Other arguments for the individual writeForeign functions

Details

The work for this function is done by `foreign:::writeForeignStata`, `foreign:::writeForeignSAS` and `foreign:::writeForeignSPSS`. To add support for another package, eg Systat, create a function `writeForeignSystat` with the same first three arguments as `write.foreign`. This will be called from `write.foreign` when `package="Systat"`.

Numeric variables and factors are supported for all packages: dates and times (`Date`, `dates`, `date`, and `POSIXt` classes) and logical vectors are also supported for SAS and characters are supported for SPSS.

For `package="SAS"` there are optional arguments `dataname = "rdata"` taking a string that will be the SAS data set name, `validvarname` taking either `"V6"` or `"V7"`, and `libpath = NULL` taking a string that will be the directory where the target SAS datset will be written when the generated SAS code been run.

Value

Invisible `NULL`.

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley and Stephen Weigand

Examples

```
## Not run:
datafile<-tempfile()
codefile<-tempfile()
write.foreign(esoph,datafile,codefile,package="SPSS")
file.show(datafile)
file.show(codefile)
unlink(datafile)
unlink(codefile)

## End(Not run)
```

Chapter 23

The `lattice` package

`A_01_Lattice` *Lattice Graphics*

Description

The **lattice** add-on package is an implementation of Trellis graphics for . It is a powerful and elegant high-level data visualization system with an emphasis on multivariate data. It is designed to meet most typical graphics needs with minimal tuning, but can also be easily extended to handle most nonstandard requirements.

Details

Trellis Graphics, originally developed for S and S-PLUS at the Bell Labs, is a framework for data visualization developed by R. A. Becker, W. S. Cleveland, et al, extending ideas presented in Cleveland's 1993 book *Visualizing Data*. The Lattice API is based on the original design in S, but extends it in many ways.

The Lattice user interface primarily consists of several 'high-level' generic functions (listed below in the "See Also" section), each designed to create a particular type of display by default. Although the functions produce different output, they share many common features, reflected in several common arguments that affect the resulting displays in similar ways. These arguments are extensively (sometimes only) documented in the help page for `xyplot`, which also includes a discussion of the important topics of *conditioning* and control of the Trellis layout. Features specific to other high-level functions are documented in their respective help pages.

Lattice employs an extensive system of user-controllable settings to determine the look and feel of the displays it produces. To learn how to use and customize the graphical parameters used by lattice, see `trellis.par.set`. For other settings, see `lattice.options`. The default graphical settings are (potentially) different for different graphical devices. To learn how to initialize new devices with the desired settings or change the settings of the current device, see `trellis.device`.

It is usually unnecessary, but sometimes important to be able to plot multiple lattice plots on a single page. Such capabilities are described in the `print.trellis` help page. See `update.trellis` to learn about manipulating a `"trellis"` object. Tools to augment lattice plots after they are drawn (including `locator`-like functionality) are described in the `trellis.focus` help page.

The online documentation accompanying the package is complete, and effort has been made to present the help pages in a logical sequence, so that one can learn how to use lattice by reading the PDF reference manual available at `http://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/lattice/`.

However, the format in which the online documentation is written and the breadth of topics covered necessarily makes it somewhat terse and less than ideal as a first introduction. For a more gentle introduction, a book on lattice is available as part of Springer's 'Use R' series; see the "References" section below.

Note

High-level **lattice** functions like `xyplot` are different from traditional graphics functions in that they do not perform any plotting themselves. Instead, they return an object, of class `"trellis"`, which has to be then `print`-ed or `plot`-ted to create the actual plot. Due to 's automatic printing rule, it is usually not necessary to explicitly carry out the second step, and **lattice** functions appear to behave like their traditional counterparts. However, the automatic plotting is suppressed when the high-level functions are called inside another function (most often `source`) or in other contexts where automatic printing is suppressed (e.g., `for` or `while` loops). In such situations, an explicit call to `print` or `plot` is required.

The **lattice** package is based on the Grid graphics engine and requires the **grid** add-on package. One consquence of this is that it is not (readily) compatible with traditional graphics tools. In particular, changing `par()` settings usually has no effect on Lattice plots; **lattice** provides its own interface for querying and modifying an extensive set of graphical and non-graphical settings.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Sarkar, Deepayan (2008) *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer. ISBN: 978-0-387-75968-5 http://lmdvr.r-forge.r-project.org/

Cleveland, William .S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*, Hobart Press, Summit, New Jersey.

Becker, R. A. and Cleveland, W. S. and Shyu, M. J. (1996). "The Visual Design and Control of Trellis Display", *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, **5(2)**, 123–155.

Bell Lab's Trellis Page contains several documents outlining the use of Trellis graphics; these provide a holistic introduction to the Trellis paradigm: http://cm.bell-labs.com/cm/ms/departments/sia/project/trellis/

See Also

The following is a list of high-level functions in the **lattice** package and their default displays. In all cases, the actual display is produced by the so-called "panel" function, which has a suitable default, but can be substituted by an user defined function to create customized displays. In many cases, the default panel function will itself have many optional arguments to customize its output. The default panel functions are named as "`panel.`" followed by the name of the corresponding high-level function; i.e., the default panel function for `xyplot` is `panel.xyplot`, the one for `histogram` is `panel.histogram`, etc. Each default panel function has a separate help page, linked from the help pages of the corresponding high-level function. Although documented separately, arguments to these panel functions can be supplied directly to the high-level functions, which will pass on the arguments appropriately.

Univariate:

`barchart`**:** Bar plots.

`bwplot`**:** Box-and-whisker plots.

`densityplot`**:** Kernel density estimates.

dotplot: Cleveland dot plots.

histogram: Histograms.

qqmath: Theretical quantile plots.

stripplot: One-dimensional scatterplots.

Bivariate:

qq: Quantile plots for comparing two distributions.

xyplot: Scatterplots and time-series plots (and potentially a lot more).

Trivariate:

levelplot: Level plots (similar to image plots).

contourplot: Contour plots.

cloud: Three-dimensional scatter plots.

wireframe: Three-dimensional surface plots (similar to persp plots).

Hypervariate:

splom: Scatterplot matrices.

parallel: Parallel coordinate plots.

Miscellaneous:

rfs: Residual and fitted value plots (also see oneway).

tmd: Tukey Mean-Difference plots.

In addition, there are several panel functions that do little by themselves, but can be useful components of custom panel functions. These are documented in panel.functions. Lattice also provides a collection of convenience functions that correspond to the traditional graphics primitives lines, points, etc. These are implemented using Grid graphics, but try to be as close to the traditional versions as possible in terms of their argument list. These functions have names like llines or panel.lines and are often useful when writing (or porting from S-PLUS code) nontrivial panel functions.

Finally, many useful enhancements that extend the Lattice system are available in the **latticeExtra** package.

Examples

```
## Not run:

## Show brief history of changes to lattice, including
## a summary of new features.

RShowDoc("NEWS", package = "lattice")

## End(Not run)
```

B_00_xyplot *Common Bivariate Trellis Plots*

Description

This help page documents several commonly used high-level Lattice functions. `xyplot` produces bivariate scatterplots or time-series plots, `bwplot` produces box-and-whisker plots, `dotplot` produces Cleveland dot plots, `barchart` produces bar plots, and `stripplot` produces one-dimensional scatterplots. All these functions, along with other high-level Lattice functions, respond to a common set of arguments that control conditioning, layout, aspect ratio, legends, axis annotation, and many other details in a consistent manner. These arguments are described extensively in this help page, and should be used as the reference for other high-level functions as well.

For control and customization of the actual display in each panel, the help page of the respective default panel function will often be more informative. In particular, these help pages describe many arguments commonly used when calling the corresponding high-level function but are specific to them.

Usage

```
xyplot(x, data, ...)
dotplot(x, data, ...)
barchart(x, data, ...)
stripplot(x, data, ...)
bwplot(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
xyplot(x,
       data,
       allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
       outer = !is.null(groups),
       auto.key = FALSE,
       aspect = "fill",
       panel = lattice.getOption("panel.xyplot"),
       prepanel = NULL,
       scales = list(),
       strip = TRUE,
       groups = NULL,
       xlab,
       xlim,
       ylab,
       ylim,
       drop.unused.levels = lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
       ...,
       lattice.options = NULL,
       default.scales,
       default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.xyplot"),
       subscripts = !is.null(groups),
       subset = TRUE)

## S3 method for class formula
```

```
dotplot(x,
        data,
        panel = lattice.getOption("panel.dotplot"),
        default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.dotplot"),
        ...)

## S3 method for class formula
barchart(x,
         data,
         panel = lattice.getOption("panel.barchart"),
         default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.barchart"),
         box.ratio = 2,
         ...)

## S3 method for class formula
stripplot(x,
          data,
          panel = lattice.getOption("panel.stripplot"),
          default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.stripplot"),
          ...)

## S3 method for class formula
bwplot(x,
       data,
       allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
       outer = FALSE,
       auto.key = FALSE,
       aspect = "fill",
       panel = lattice.getOption("panel.bwplot"),
       prepanel = NULL,
       scales = list(),
       strip = TRUE,
       groups = NULL,
       xlab,
       xlim,
       ylab,
       ylim,
       box.ratio = 1,
       horizontal = NULL,
       drop.unused.levels = lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
       ...,
       lattice.options = NULL,
       default.scales,
       default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.bwplot"),
       subscripts = !is.null(groups),
       subset = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	All high-level function in **lattice** are generic. x is the object on which method dispatch is carried out. For the "formula" methods, x must be a formula describing the primary vari-

ables (used for the per-panel display) and the optional conditioning variables (which define the subsets plotted in different panels) to be used in the plot. Conditioning is described in the "Details" section below.

For the functions documented here, the formula is generally of the form `y ~ x | g1 * g2 * ...` (or equivalently, `y ~ x | g1 + g2 + ...`), indicating that plots of `y` (on the y-axis) versus `x` (on the x-axis) should be produced conditional on the variables `g1, g2, ...`. Here `x` and `y` are the primary variables, and `g1, g2, ...` are the conditioning variables. The conditioning variables may be omitted to give a formula of the form `y ~ x`, in which case the plot will consist of a single panel with the full dataset. The formula can also involve expressions, e.g., `sqrt()`, `log()`, etc. See the `data` argument below for rules regarding evaluation of the terms in the formula.

With the exception of `xyplot`, the functions documented here may also be supplied a formula of the form `~ x | g1 * g2 * ...`. In that case, `y` defaults to `names(x)` if `x` is named, and a factor with a single level otherwise.

Cases where `x` is not a formula is handled by appropriate methods. The `numeric` methods are equivalent to a call with no left hand side and no conditioning variables in the formula. For `barchart` and `dotplot`, non-trivial methods exist for tables and arrays, documented at `barchart.table`.

The conditioning variables `g1, g2, ...` must be either factors or shingles. Shingles provide a way of using numeric variables for conditioning; see the help page of `shingle` for details. Like factors, they have a `"levels"` attribute, which is used in producing the conditional plots. If necessary, numeric conditioning variables are converted to shingles using the `shingle` function; however, using `equal.count` may be more appropriate in many cases. Character variables are coerced to factors.

Extended formula interface: As a useful extension of the interface described above, the primary variable terms (both the LHS `y` and RHS `x`) may consist of multiple terms separated by a '+' sign, e.g., `y1 + y2 ~ x | a * b`. This formula would be taken to mean that the user wants to plot both `y1 ~ x | a * b` and `y2 ~ x | a * b`, but with the `y1 ~ x` and `y2 ~ x` superposed in each panel. The two groups will be distinguished by different graphical parameters. This is essentially what the `groups` argument (see below) would produce, if `y1` and `y2` were concatenated to produce a longer vector, with the `groups` argument being an indicator of which rows come from which variable. In fact, this is exactly what is done internally using the `reshape` function. This feature cannot be used in conjunction with the `groups` argument.

To interpret `y1 + y2` as a sum, one can either set `allow.multiple=FALSE` or use `I(y1+y2)`.

A variation on this feature is when the `outer` argument is set to `TRUE`. In that case, the plots are not superposed in each panel, but instead separated into different panels (as if a new conditioning variable had been added).

Primary variables: The `x` and `y` variables should both be numeric in `xyplot`, and an attempt is made to coerce them if not. However, if either is a factor, the levels of that factor are used as axis labels. In the other four functions documented here, exactly one of `x` and `y` should be numeric, and the other a factor or shingle. Which of these will happen is determined by the `horizontal` argument — if `horizontal=TRUE`, then `y` will be coerced to be a factor or shingle, otherwise `x`. The default value of `horizontal` is `FALSE` if `x` is a factor or shingle, `TRUE` otherwise. (The functionality provided by `horizontal=FALSE` is not S-compatible.)

Note that the x argument used to be called formula in earlier versions (when the high-level functions were not generic and the formula method was essentially the only method). This is no longer allowed. It is recommended that this argument not be named in any case, but instead be the first (unnamed) argument.

data — For the formula methods, a data frame (or more precisely, anything that is a valid envir argument in eval, e.g., a list or an environment) containing values for any variables in the formula, as well as groups and subset if applicable. If not found in data, or if data is unspecified, the variables are looked for in the environment of the formula. For other methods (where x is not a formula), data is usually ignored, often with a warning if it is explicitly specified.

allow.multiple — Logical flag specifying whether the extended formula interface described above should be in effect. Defaults to TRUE whenever sensible.

outer — Logical flag controlling what happens with formulas using the extended interface described above (see the entry for x for details). Defaults to FALSE, except when groups is explicitly specified or grouping does not make sense for the default panel function.

box.ratio — Applicable to barchart and bwplot. Specifies the ratio of the width of the rectangles to the inter-rectangle space. See also the box.width argument in the respective default panel functions.

horizontal — Logical flag applicable to bwplot, dotplot, barchart, and stripplot. Determines which of x and y is to be a factor or shingle (y if TRUE, x otherwise). Defaults to FALSE if x is a factor or shingle, TRUE otherwise. This argument is used to process the arguments to these high-level functions, but more importantly, it is passed as an argument to the panel function, which is expected to use it as appropriate.

A potentially useful component of scales in this case may be abbreviate = TRUE, in which case long labels which would usually overlap will be abbreviated. scales could also contain a minlength argument in this case, which would be passed to the abbreviate function.

Common arguments: The following arguments are common to all the functions documented here, as well as most other high-level Trellis functions. These are not documented elsewhere, except to override the usage given here.

panel — Once the subset of rows defined by each unique combination of the levels of the grouping variables are obtained (see "Details"), the corresponding x and y variables (or other variables, as appropriate, in the case of other high-level functions) are passed on to be plotted in each panel. The actual plotting is done by the function specified by the panel argument. The argument may be a function object or a character string giving the name of a predefined function. Each high-level function has its own default panel function, named as "panel." followed by the name of the corresponding high-level function (e.g., panel.xyplot, panel.barchart, etc).

Much of the power of Trellis Graphics comes from the ability to define customized panel functions. A panel function appropriate for the functions described here would usually expect arguments named x and y, which would be provided by the conditioning process. It can also have other arguments. It is useful to know in this context that all arguments passed to a high-level Lattice function (such as xyplot) that are not recognized by it are passed through to the panel function. It is thus generally good practice when defining panel functions to allow a ... argument. Such extra arguments typically control graphical parameters, but other uses are also common. See documentation for individual panel functions for specifics.

Note that unlike in S-PLUS, it is not guaranteed that panel functions will be supplied only numeric vectors for the x and y arguments; they can be factors as well (but not shingles). Panel functions need to handle this case, which in most cases can be done by simply coercing them to numeric.

Technically speaking, panel functions must be written using Grid graphics functions. However, knowledge of Grid is usually not necessary to construct new custom panel functions, as there are several predefined panel functions which can help; for example, panel.grid, panel.loess, etc. There are also some grid-compatible replacements of commonly used traditional graphics functions useful for this purpose. For example, lines can be replaced by llines (or equivalently, panel.lines). Note that traditional graphics functions like lines will not work in a lattice panel function.

One case where a bit more is required of the panel function is when the groups argument is not NULL. In that case, the panel function should also accept arguments named groups and subscripts (see below for details). A useful panel function predefined for use in such cases is panel.superpose, which can be combined with different panel.groups functions to determine what is plotted for each group. See the "Examples" section for an interaction plot constructed in this way. Several other panel functions can also handle the groups argument, including the default ones for xyplot, barchart, dotplot, and stripplot.

Even when groups is not present, the panel function can have subscripts as a formal argument. In either case, the subscripts argument passed to the panel function are the indices of the x and y data for that panel in the original data, BEFORE taking into account the effect of the subset argument. Note that groups remains unaffected by any subsetting operations, so groups[subscripts] gives the values of groups that correspond to the data in that panel.

This interpretation of subscripts does not hold when the extended formula interface is in use (i.e., when allow.multiple is in effect). A comprehensive description would be too complicated (details can be found in the source code of the function latticeParseFormula), but in short, the extended interface works by creating an artificial grouping variable that is longer than the original data frame, and consequently, subscripts needs to refer to rows beyond those in the original data. To further complicate matters, the artificial grouping variable is created after any effect of subset, in which case subscripts may have no relationship with corresponding rows in the original data frame.

One can also use functions called panel.number and packet.number, representing panel order and packet order respectively, inside the panel function (as well as the strip function or while interacting with a lattice display using trellis.focus etc). Both provide a simple integer index indicating which panel is currently being drawn, but differ in how the count is calculated. The panel number is a simple incremental counter that starts with 1 and is incremented each time a panel is drawn. The packet number on the other hand indexes the combination of levels of the conditioning variables that is represented by that panel. The two indices coincide unless the order of conditioning variables is permuted and/or the plotting order of levels within one or more conditioning variables is altered (using perm.cond and index.cond respectively), in which case packet.number gives the index corresponding to the 'natural' ordering of that combination of levels of the conditioning variables.

panel.xyplot has an argument called type which is worth mentioning here because it is quite frequently used (and as mentioned above, can be passed to xyplot directly). In the event that a groups variable is used, panel.xyplot

calls panel.superpose, arguments of which can also be passed directly to xyplot. Panel functions for bwplot and friends should have an argument called horizontal to account for the cases when x is the factor or shingle.

aspect

This argument controls the physical aspect ratio of the panels, which is usually the same for all the panels. It can be specified as a ratio (vertical size/horizontal size) or as a character string. In the latter case, legitimate values are "fill" (the default) which tries to make the panels as big as possible to fill the available space; "xy", which computes the aspect ratio based on the 45 degree banking rule (see banking); and "iso" for isometric scales, where the relation between physical distance on the device and distance in the data scale are forced to be the same for both axes.

If a prepanel function is specified and it returns components dx and dy, these are used for banking calculations. Otherwise, values from the default prepanel function are used. Not all default prepanel functions produce sensible banking calculations.

groups

A variable or expression to be evaluated in data, expected to act as a grouping variable within each panel, typically used to distinguish different groups by varying graphical parameters like color and line type. Formally, if groups is specified, then groups along with subscripts is passed to the panel function, which is expected to handle these arguments. For high level functions where grouping is appropriate, the default panel functions can handle grouping.

It is very common to use a key (legend) when a grouping variable is specified. See entries for key, auto.key and simpleKey for how to draw a key.

auto.key

A logical, or a list containing components to be used as arguments to simpleKey. auto.key=TRUE is equivalent to auto.key=list(), in which case simpleKey is called with a set of default arguments (which may depend on the relevant high-level function). Most valid components to the key argument can be specified in this manner, as simpleKey will simply add unrecognized arguments to the list it produces.

auto.key is typically used to automatically produce a suitable legend in conjunction with a grouping variable. If auto.key=TRUE, a suitable legend will be drawn if a groups argument is also provided, and not otherwise. In list form, auto.key will modify the default legend thus produced. For example, auto.key=list(columns = 2) will create a legend split into two columns (columns is documented in the entry for key).

More precisely, if auto.key is not FALSE, groups is non-null, and there is no key or legend argument specified in the call, a key is created with simpleKey with levels(groups) as the first (text) argument. (Note: this may not work in all high-level functions, but it does work for the ones where grouping makes sense with the default panel function). If auto.key is provided as a list and includes a text component, then that is used instead as the text labels in the key, and the key is drawn even if groups is not specified.

Note that simpleKey uses the default settings (see trellis.par.get) to determine the graphical parameters in the key, so the resulting legend will be meaningful only if the same settings are used in the plot as well. The par.settings argument, possibly in conjunction with simpleTheme, may be useful to temporarily modify the default settings for this purpose.

One disadvantage to using key (or even simpleKey) directly is that the graphical parameters used in the key are absolutely determined at the time when the "trellis" object is created. Consequently, if a plot once created is re-plotted with different settings, the original parameter settings will be used for the

key even though the new settings are used for the actual display. However, with auto.key, the key is actually created at plotting time, so the settings will match.

prepanel

A function that takes the same arguments as the panel function and returns a list, possibly containing components named xlim, ylim, dx, and dy (and less frequently, xat and yat). The return value of a user-supplied prepanel function need not contain all these components; in case some are missing, they are replaced by the component-wise defaults.

The xlim and ylim components are similar to the high level xlim and ylim arguments (i.e., they are usually a numeric vector of length 2 defining a range, or a character vector representing levels of a factor). If the xlim and ylim arguments are not explicitly specified (possibly as components in scales) in the high-level call, then the actual limits of the panels are guaranteed to include the limits returned by the prepanel function. This happens globally if the relation component of scales is "same", and on a per-panel basis otherwise.

The dx and dy components are used for banking computations in case aspect is specified as "xy". See documentation of banking for details.

If xlim or ylim is a character vector (which is appropriate when the corresponding variable is a factor), this implicitly indicates that the scale should include the first n integers, where n is the length of xlim or ylim, as the case may be. The elements of the character vector are used as the default labels for these n integers. Thus, to make this information consistent between panels, the xlim or ylim values should represent all the levels of the corresponding factor, even if some are not used within that particular panel.

In such cases, an additional component xat or yat may be returned by the prepanel function, which should be a subset of 1:n, indicating which of the n values (levels) are actually represented in the panel. This is useful when calculating the limits with relation="free" or relation="sliced" in scales.

The prepanel function is responsible for providing a meaningful return value when the x, y (etc.) variables are zero-length vectors. When nothing else is appropriate, values of NA should be returned for the xlim and ylim components.

strip

A logical flag or function. If FALSE, strips are not drawn. Otherwise, strips are drawn using the strip function, which defaults to strip.default. See documentation of strip.default to see the arguments that are available to the strip function. This description also applies to the strip.left argument (see ... below), which can be used to draw strips on the left of each panel (useful for wide short panels, e.g., in time-series plots).

xlab

Character or expression (or a "grob") giving label(s) for the x-axis. Generally defaults to the expression for x in the formula defining the plot. Can be specified as NULL to omit the label altogether. Finer control is possible, as described in the entry for main, with the modification that if the label component is omitted from the list, it is replaced by the default xlab.

ylab

Character or expression (or "grob") giving label for the y-axis. Generally defaults to the expression for y in the formula defining the plot. Finer control is possible, see entries for main and xlab.

scales

Generally a list determining how the x- and y-axes (tick marks and labels) are drawn. The list contains parameters in name=value form, and may also contain two other lists called x and y of the same form (described below). Components of x and y affect the respective axes only, while those in scales affect both. When parameters are specified in both lists, the values in x or y are used. Note that certain high-level functions have defaults that are specific to a particular

axis (e.g., bwplot has alternating=FALSE for the categorical axis only); these can only be overridden by an entry in the corresponding component of scales.

As a special exception, scales (or its x and y components) can also be a character string, in which case it is interpreted as the relation component.

The possible components are :

relation A character string that determines how axis limits are calculated for each panel. Possible values are "same" (default), "free" and "sliced". For relation="same", the same limits, usually large enough to encompass all the data, are used for all the panels. For relation="free", limits for each panel is determined by just the points in that panel. Behavior for relation="sliced" is similar, except that the length (max - min) of the scales are constrained to remain the same across panels.

The determination of what axis limits are suitable for each panel can be controlled by the prepanel function, which can be overridden by xlim, ylim or scales$limits (except when relation="sliced", in which case explicitly specified limits are ignored with a warning). When relation is "free", xlim or ylim can be a list, in which case it is treated as if its components were the limit values obtained from the prepanel calculations for each panel (after being replicated if necessary).

tick.number An integer, giving the suggested number of intervals between ticks. This is ignored for a factor, shingle, or character vector, for in these cases there is no natural rule for leaving out some of the labels. But see xlim.

draw A logical flag, defaulting to TRUE, that determines whether to draw the axis (i.e., tick marks and labels) at all.

alternating Usually a logical flag specifying whether axis labels should alternate from one side of the group of panels to the other. For finer control, alternating can also be a vector (replicated to be as long as the number of rows or columns per page) consisting of the following numbers

- 0: do not draw tick labels
- 1: bottom/left
- 2: top/right
- 3: both.

alternating applies only when relation="same". The default is TRUE, or equivalently, c(1, 2)

limits Same as xlim and ylim.

at The location of tick marks along the axis (in native coordinates), or a list as long as the number of panels describing tick locations for each panel.

labels Vector of labels (characters or expressions) to go along with at. Can also be a list like at.

cex A numeric multiplier to control character sizes for axis labels. Can be a vector of length 2, to control left/bottom and right/top labels separately.

font, fontface, fontfamily Specifies the font to be used for axis labels.

lineheight Specifies the line height parameter (height of line as a multiple of the size of text); relevant for multi-line labels. (This is currently ignored for cloud.)

tck Usually a numeric scalar controlling the length of tick marks. Can also be a vector of length 2, to control the length of left/bottom and right/top tick marks separately.

col Color of tick marks and labels.

`rot` Angle (in degrees) by which the axis labels are to be rotated. Can be a vector of length 2, to control left/bottom and right/top axes separately.

`abbreviate` A logical flag, indicating whether to abbreviate the labels using the `abbreviate` function. Can be useful for long labels (e.g., in factors), especially on the x-axis.

`minlength` Argument passed to `abbreviate` if `abbreviate=TRUE`.

`log` Controls whether the corresponding variable (`x` or `y`) will be log transformed before being passed to the panel function. Defaults to `FALSE`, in which case the data are not transformed. Other possible values are any number that works as a base for taking logarithm, `TRUE` (which is equivalent to 10), and `"e"` (for the natural logarithm). As a side effect, the corresponding axis is labeled differently. Note that this is in reality a transformation of the data, not the axes. Other than the axis labeling, using this feature is no different than transforming the data in the formula; e.g., `scales=list(x = list(log = 2))` is equivalent to `y ~ log2(x)`.
See entry for `equispaced.log` below for details on how to control axis labeling.

`equispaced.log` A logical flag indicating whether tick mark locations should be equispaced when 'log scales' are in use. Defaults to `TRUE`.
Tick marks are always labeled in the original (untransformed) scale, but this makes the choice of tick mark locations nontrivial. If `equispaced.log` is `FALSE`, the choice made is similar to how log scales are annotated in traditional graphics. If `TRUE`, tick mark locations are chosen as 'pretty' equispaced values in the transformed scale, and labeled in the form `"base^loc"`, where `base` is the base of the logarithm transformation, and `loc` are the locations in the transformed scale.
See also `xscale.components.logpower` in the **latticeExtra** package.

`format` The `format` to use for POSIXct variables. See `strptime` for description of valid values.

`axs` A character string, `"r"` (default) or `"i"`. In the latter case, the axis limits are calculated as the exact data range, instead of being padded on either side. (May not always work as expected.)

Note that much of the function of `scales` is accomplished by `pscales` in `splom`.

`subscripts` A logical flag specifying whether or not a vector named `subscripts` should be passed to the panel function. Defaults to `FALSE`, unless `groups` is specified, or if the panel function accepts an argument named `subscripts`. This argument is useful if one wants the subscripts to be passed on even if these conditions do not hold; a typical example is when one wishes to augment a Lattice plot after it has been drawn, e.g., using `panel.identify`.

`subset` An expression that evaluates to a logical or integer indexing vector. Like `groups`, it is evaluated in `data`. Only the resulting rows of `data` are used for the plot. If `subscripts` is `TRUE`, the subscripts provided to the panel function will be indices referring to the rows of `data` prior to the subsetting. Whether levels of factors in the data frame that are unused after the subsetting will be dropped depends on the `drop.unused.levels` argument.

`xlim` Normally a numeric vector (or a DateTime object) of length 2 giving left and right limits for the x-axis, or a character vector, expected to denote the levels of `x`. The latter form is interpreted as a range containing c(1, length(xlim)), with the character vector determining labels at tick positions `1:length(xlim)`.

`xlim` could also be a list, with as many components as the number of panels (recycled if necessary), with each component as described above. This is meaningful only when `scales$x$relation` is `"free"`, in which case these are treated as if they were the corresponding limit components returned by prepanel calculations.

`ylim` Similar to `xlim`, applied to the y-axis.

`drop.unused.levels`
A logical flag indicating whether the unused levels of factors will be dropped, usually relevant when a subsetting operation is performed or an `interaction` is created. Unused levels are usually dropped, but it is sometimes appropriate to suppress dropping to preserve a useful layout. For finer control, this argument could also be list containing components `cond` and `data`, both logical, indicating desired behavior for conditioning variables and primary variables respectively. The default is given by `lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels")`, which is initially set to `TRUE` for both components. Note that this argument does not control dropping of levels of the `groups` argument.

`default.scales` A list giving the default values of `scales` for a particular high-level function. This is rarely of interest to the end-user, but may be helpful when defining other functions that act as a wrapper to one of the high-level Lattice functions.

`default.prepanel`
A function or character string giving the name of a function that serves as the (component-wise) fallback prepanel function when the `prepanel` argument is not specified, or does not return all necessary components. The main purpose of this argument is to enable the defaults to be overridden through the use of `lattice.options`.

`lattice.options`
A list that could be supplied to `lattice.options`. These options are applied temporarily for the duration of the call, after which the settings revert back to what they were before. The options are retained along with the object and reused during plotting. This enables the user to attach options settings to the trellis object itself rather than change the settings globally. See also the `par.settings` argument described below for a similar treatment of graphical settings.

`...` Further arguments, usually not directly processed by the high-level functions documented here, but instead passed on to other functions. Such arguments can be broadly categorized into two types: those that affect all high-level Lattice functions in a similar manner, and those that are meant for the specific panel function being used.

The first group of arguments are processed by a common, unexported function called `trellis.skeleton`. These arguments affect all high-level functions, but are only documented here (except to override the behaviour described here). All other arguments specified in a high-level call, specifically those neither described here nor in the help page of the relevant high-level function, are passed unchanged to the panel function used. By convention, the default panel function used for any high-level function is named as "`panel.`" followed by the name of the high-level function; for example, the default panel function for `bwplot` is `panel.bwplot`. In practical terms, this means that in addition to the help page of the high-level function being used, the user should also consult the help page of the corresponding panel function for arguments that may be specified in the high-level call.

The effect of the first group of common arguments are as follows:

`as.table`: A logical flag that controls the order in which panels should be displayed: if `FALSE` (the default), panels are drawn left to right, bottom to top (as in a graph); if `TRUE`, left to right, top to bottom (as in a table).

`between`: A list with components `x` and `y` (both usually 0 by default), numeric vectors specifying the space between the panels (units are character heights). `x` and `y` are repeated to account for all panels in a page and any extra components are ignored. The result is used for all pages in a multi page display. In other words, it is not possible to use different `between` values for different pages.

`key`: A list that defines a legend to be drawn on the plot. This list is used as an argument to the `draw.key` function, which produces a `"grob"` (grid object) eventually plotted by the print method for `"trellis"` objects. The structure of the legend is constrained in the ways described below.

Although such a list can be and often is created explicitly, it is also possible to generate such a list using the `simpleKey` function; the latter is more convenient but less flexible. The `auto.key` argument can be even more convenient for the most common situation where legends are used, namely, in conjunction with a grouping variable. To use more than one legend, or to have arbitrary legends not constrained by the structure imposed by `key`, use the `legend` argument.

The position of the key can be controlled in either of two possible ways. If a component called `space` is present, the key is positioned outside the plot region, in one of the four sides, determined by the value of `space`, which can be one of `"top"`, `"bottom"`, `"left"` and `"right"`. Alternatively, the key can be positioned inside the plot region by specifying components `x`, `y` and `corner`. `x` and `y` determine the location of the corner of the key given by `corner`, which is usually one of `c(0,0)`, `c(1,0)`, `c(1,1)` and `c(0,1)`, which denote the corners of the unit square. Fractional values are also allowed, in which case `x` and `y` determine the position of an arbitrary point inside (or outside for values outside the unit interval) the key.

`x` and `y` should be numbers between 0 and 1, giving coordinates with respect to the "display area". Depending on the value of the `"legend.bbox"` option (see `lattice.getOption`), this can be either the full figure region (`"full"`), or just the region that bounds the panels and strips (`"panel"`).

The key essentially consists of a number of columns, possibly divided into blocks, each containing some rows. The contents of the key are determined by (possibly repeated) components named `"rectangles"`, `"lines"`, `"points"` or `"text"`. Each of these must be lists with relevant graphical parameters (see later) controlling their appearance. The `key` list itself can contain graphical parameters, these would be used if relevant graphical components are omitted from the other components.

The length (number of rows) of each such column (except `"text"`s) is taken to be the largest of the lengths of the graphical components, including the ones specified outside (see the entry for `rep` below for details on this). The `"text"` component must have a character or expression vector as its first component, to be used as labels. The length of this vector determines the number of rows.

The graphical components that can be included in `key` and also in the components named `"text"`, `"lines"`, `"points"` and `"rectangles"` (as appropriate) are:

- `cex=1` (text, lines, points)
- `col="black"` (text, rectangles, lines, points)

- alpha=1 (text, rectangles, lines, points)
- fill="transparent" (lines, points)
- lty=1 (lines)
- lwd=1 (lines, points)
- font=1 (text, points)
- fontface (text, points)
- fontfamily (text, points)
- pch=8 (lines, points)
- adj=0 (text)
- type="l" (lines)
- size=5 (rectangles, lines)
- height=1 (rectangles)
- lineheight=1 (text)
- angle=0 (rectangles, but ignored)
- density=-1 (rectangles, but ignored)

In addition, the component border can be included inside the "rect" component to control the border color of the rectangles; when specified at the top level, border controls the border of the entire key (see below).

angle and density are unimplemented. size determines the width of columns of rectangles and lines in character widths. type is relevant for lines; "l" denotes a line, "p" denotes a point, and "b" and "o" both denote both together. height gives heights of rectangles as a fraction of the default.

Other possible components of key are:

reverse.rows Logical flag, defaulting to FALSE. If TRUE, all components are reversed *after* being replicated (the details of which may depend on the value of rep). This is useful in certain situations, e.g., with a grouped barchart with stack = TRUE with the categorical variable on the vertical axis, where the bars in the plot will usually be ordered from bottom to top, but the corresponding legend will have the levels from top to bottom unless reverse.rows = TRUE. Note that in this case, unless all columns have the same number or rows, they will no longer be aligned.

between Numeric vector giving the amount of space (character widths) surrounding each column (split equally on both sides).

title String or expression giving a title for the key.

rep Logical flag, defaults to TRUE. By default, it is assumed that all columns in the key (except the "text"s) will have the same number of rows, and all components are replicated to be as long as the longest. This can be suppressed by specifying rep=FALSE, in which case the length of each column will be determined by components of that column alone.

cex.title Zoom factor for the title.

lines.title The amount of vertical space to be occupied by the title in lines (in multiples of itself). Defaults to 2.

padding.text The amount of space (padding) to be used above and below each row containing text, in multiples of the default, which is currently 0.2 * "lines". This padding is in addition to the normal height of any row that contains text, which is the minimum amount necessary to contain all the text entries.

background Background color for the legend. Defaults to the global background color.

alpha.background An alpha transparency value between 0 and 1 for the background.

border Either a color for the border, or a logical flag. In the latter case, the border color is black if border is TRUE, and no border is drawn if it is FALSE (the default).

transparent=FALSE Logical flag, whether legend should have a transparent background.

just A character or numeric vector of length one or two giving horizontal and vertical justification for the placement of the legend. See grid.layout for more precise details.

columns The number of column-blocks (drawn side by side) the legend is to be divided into.

between.columns Space between column blocks, in addition to between.

divide Number of point symbols to divide each line when type is "b" or "o" in lines.

legend: The legend argument can be useful if one wants to place more than one key. It also allows the use of arbitrary "grob"s (grid objects) as legends.
If used, legend must be a list, with an arbitrary number of components. Each component must be named one of "left", "right", "top", "bottom", or "inside". The name "inside" can be repeated, but not the others. This name will be used to determine the location for that component, and is similar to the space component of key. If key (or colorkey for levelplot and wireframe) is specified, their space component must not conflict with the name of any component of legend.
Each component of legend must have a component called fun. This can be a "grob", or a function (or the name of a function) that produces a "grob" when called. If this function expects any arguments, they must be supplied as a list in another component called args. For components named "inside", there can be additional components called x, y and corner, which work in the same way as for key.

page: A function of one argument (page number) to be called after drawing each page. The function must be 'grid-compliant', and is called with the whole display area as the default viewport.

xlab.top, ylab.right: Labels for the x-axis on top, and y-axis on the right. Similar to xlab and ylab, but less commonly used.

main: Typically a character string or expression describing the main title to be placed on top of each page. Defaults to NULL.
main (as well as xlab, ylab and sub) is usually a character string or an expression that gets used as the label, but can also be a list that controls further details. Expressions are treated as specification of LaTeX-like markup as described in plotmath. The label can be a vector, in which case the components will be spaced out horizontally (or vertically for ylab). This feature can be used to provide column or row labels rather than a single axis label. When main (etc.) is a list, the actual label should be specified as the label component (which may be unnamed if it is the first component). The label can be missing, in which case the default will be used (xlab and ylab usually have defaults, but main and sub do not). Further named arguments are passed on to textGrob; this can include arguments controlling positioning

like just and rot as well as graphical parameters such as col and font (see gpar for a full list).
main, sub, xlab, ylab, xlab.top, and ylab.right can also be arbitrary "grob"s (grid graphical objects).

sub: Character string or expression (or a list or "grob") for a subtitle to be placed at the bottom of each page. See entry for main for finer control options.

par.strip.text: A list of parameters to control the appearance of strip text. Notable components are col, cex, font, and lines. The first three control graphical parameters while the last is a means of altering the height of the strips. This can be useful, for example, if the strip labels (derived from factor levels, say) are double height (i.e., contains "\n"-s) or if the default height seems too small or too large.
Additionally, the lineheight component can control the space between multiple lines. The labels can be abbreviated when shown by specifying abbreviate = TRUE, in which case the components minlength and dot (passed along to the abbreviate function) can be specified to control the details of how this is done.

layout: In general, a conditioning plot in Lattice consists of several panels arranged in a rectangular array, possibly spanning multiple pages. layout determines this arrangement.
layout is a numeric vector of length 2 or 3 giving the number of columns, rows, and pages (optional) in a multipanel display. By default, the number of columns is the number of levels of the first conditioning variable and the number of rows is the number of levels of the second conditioning variable. If there is only one conditioning variable, the default layout vector is c(0,n), where n is the number of levels of the given vector. Any time the first value in the layout vector is 0, the second value is used as the desired number of panels per page and the actual layout is computed from this, taking into account the aspect ratio of the panels and the device dimensions (via par("din")). If NA is specified for the number of rows or columns (but not both), that dimension will be filled out according to the number of panels.
The number of pages is by default set to as many as is required to plot all the panels, and so rarely needs to be specified. However, in certain situations the default calculation may be incorrect, and in that case the number of pages needs to be specified explicitly.

skip: A logical vector (default FALSE), replicated to be as long as the number of panels (spanning all pages). For elements that are TRUE, the corresponding panel position is skipped; i.e., nothing is plotted in that position. The panel that was supposed to be drawn there is now drawn in the next available panel position, and the positions of all the subsequent panels are bumped up accordingly. This may be useful for arranging plots in an informative manner.

strip.left: strip.left can be used to draw strips on the left of each panel, which can be useful for wide short panels, as in time-series (or similar) plots. See the entry for strip for detailed usage.

xlab.default, ylab.default: Fallback default for xlab and ylab when they are not specified. If NULL, the defaults are parsed from the Trellis formula. This is rarely useful for the end-user, but can be helpful when developing new Lattice functions.

xscale.components, yscale.components: Functions that determine axis an-

notation for the x and y axes respectively. See documentation for xscale.components.default, the default values of these arguments, to learn more.

axis: Function responsible for drawing axis annotation. See documentation for axis.default, the default value of this argument, to learn more.

perm.cond: An integer vector, a permutation of 1:n, where n is the number of conditioning variables. By default, the order in which panels are drawn depends on the order of the conditioning variables specified in the formula. perm.cond can modify this order. If the trellis display is thought of as an n-dimensional array, then during printing, its dimensions are permuted using perm.cond as the perm argument does in aperm.

index.cond: Whereas perm.cond permutes the dimensions of the multidimensional array of panels, index.cond can be used to subset (or reorder) margins of that array. index.cond can be a list or a function, with behavior in each case described below.

The panel display order within each conditioning variable depends on the order of their levels. index.cond can be used to choose a 'subset' (in the R sense) of these levels, which is then used as the display order for that variable. If index.cond is a list, it has to be as long as the number of conditioning variables, and the i-th component has to be a valid indexing vector for levels(g_i), where g_i is the i-th conditioning variable in the plot (note that these levels may not contain all levels of the original variable, depending on the effects of the subset and drop.unused.levels arguments). In particular, this indexing may repeat levels, or drop some altogether. The result of this indexing determines the order of panels within that conditioning variable. To keep the order of a particular variable unchanged, the corresponding component must be set to TRUE.

Note that the components of index.cond are interpreted in the order of the conditioning variables in the original call, and is not affected by perm.cond.

Another possibility is to specify index.cond as a function. In this case, this function is called once for each panel, potentially with all arguments that are passed to the panel function for that panel. (More specifically, if this function has a ... argument, then all panel arguments are passed, otherwise, only named arguments that match are passed.) If there is only one conditioning variable, the levels of that variable are then sorted so that these values are in ascending order. For multiple conditioning variables, the order for each variable is determined by first taking the average over all other conditioning variables.

Although they can be supplied in high-level function calls directly, it is more typical to use perm.cond and index.cond to update an existing "trellis" object, thus allowing it to be displayed in a different arrangement without re-calculating the data subsets that go into each panel. In the update.trellis method, both can be set to NULL, which reverts these back to their defaults.

par.settings: A list that could be supplied to trellis.par.set. When the resulting object is plotted, these options are applied temporarily for the duration of the plotting, after which the settings revert back to what they were before. This enables the user to attach some display settings to the trellis object itself rather than change the settings globally. See also the lattice.options argument described above for a similar treatment of non-graphical options.

plot.args: A list containing possible arguments to plot.trellis, which will

be used by the `plot` or `print` methods when drawing the object, unless overridden explicitly. This enables the user to attach such arguments to the trellis object itself. Partial matching is not performed.

Details

The high-level functions documented here, as well as other high-level Lattice functions, are generic, with the `formula` method usually doing the most substantial work. The structure of the plot that is produced is mostly controlled by the formula (implicitly in the case of the non-formula methods). For each unique combination of the levels of the conditioning variables `g1, g2, ...`, a separate "packet" is produced, consisting of the points `(x,y)` for the subset of the data defined by that combination. The display can be thought of as a three-dimensional array of panels, consisting of one two-dimensional matrix per page. The dimensions of this array are determined by the `layout` argument. If there are no conditioning variables, the plot produced consists of a single packet. Each packet usually corresponds to one panel, but this is not strictly necessary (see the entry for `index.cond` above).

The coordinate system used by **lattice** by default is like a graph, with the origin at the bottom left, with axes increasing to the right and top. In particular, panels are by default drawn starting from the bottom left corner, going right and then up, unless `as.table = TRUE`, in which case panels are drawn from the top left corner, going right and then down. It is possible to set a global preference for the table-like arrangement by changing the default to `as.table=TRUE`; this can be done by setting `lattice.options(default.args = list(as.table = TRUE))`. Default values can be set in this manner for the following arguments: `as.table`, `aspect`, `between`, `page`, `main`, `sub`, `par.strip.text`, `layout`, `skip` and `strip`. Note that these global defaults are sometimes overridden by individual functions.

The order of the panels depends on the order in which the conditioning variables are specified, with `g1` varying fastest, followed by `g2`, and so on. Within a conditioning variable, the order depends on the order of the levels (which for factors is usually in alphabetical order). Both of these orders can be modified using the `index.cond` and `perm.cond` arguments, possibly using the `update` (and other related) method(s).

Value

The high-level functions documented here, as well as other high-level Lattice functions, return an object of class `"trellis"`. The `update` method can be used to subsequently update components of the object, and the `print` method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Note

Most of the arguments documented here are also applicable for the other high-level functions in the **lattice** package. These are not described in any detail elsewhere unless relevant, and this should be considered the canonical documentation for such arguments.

Any arguments passed to these functions and not recognized by them will be passed to the panel function. Most predefined panel functions have arguments that customize its output. These arguments are described only in the help pages for these panel functions, but can usually be supplied as arguments to the high-level plot.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Sarkar, Deepayan (2008) *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer. http://lmdvr.r-forge.r-project.org/

See Also

Lattice for an overview of the package, as well as barchart.table, print.trellis, shingle, banking, reshape, panel.xyplot, panel.bwplot, panel.barchart, panel.dotplot, panel.stripplot, panel.superpose, panel.loess, panel.average, strip.default, simpleKey trellis.par.set

Examples

```
require(stats)

## Tonga Trench Earthquakes

Depth <- equal.count(quakes$depth, number=8, overlap=.1)
xyplot(lat ~ long | Depth, data = quakes)
update(trellis.last.object(),
       strip = strip.custom(strip.names = TRUE, strip.levels = TRUE),
       par.strip.text = list(cex = 0.75),
       aspect = "iso")

## Examples with data from Visualizing Data (Cleveland, 1993) obtained
## from http://cm.bell-labs.com/cm/ms/departments/sia/wsc/

EE <- equal.count(ethanol$E, number=9, overlap=1/4)

## Constructing panel functions on the fly; prepanel
xyplot(NOx ~ C | EE, data = ethanol,
       prepanel = function(x, y) prepanel.loess(x, y, span = 1),
       xlab = "Compression Ratio", ylab = "NOx (micrograms/J)",
       panel = function(x, y) {
           panel.grid(h = -1, v = 2)
           panel.xyplot(x, y)
           panel.loess(x, y, span=1)
       },
       aspect = "xy")

## Extended formula interface

xyplot(Sepal.Length + Sepal.Width ~ Petal.Length + Petal.Width | Species,
       data = iris, scales = "free", layout = c(2, 2),
       auto.key = list(x = .6, y = .7, corner = c(0, 0)))


## user defined panel functions

states <- data.frame(state.x77,
                     state.name = dimnames(state.x77)[[1]],
                     state.region = state.region)
xyplot(Murder ~ Population | state.region, data = states,
       groups = state.name,
       panel = function(x, y, subscripts, groups) {
           ltext(x = x, y = y, labels = groups[subscripts], cex=1,
```

```
                  fontfamily = "HersheySans")
       })

## Stacked bar chart

barchart(yield ~ variety | site, data = barley,
         groups = year, layout = c(1,6), stack = TRUE,
         auto.key = list(space = "right"),
         ylab = "Barley Yield (bushels/acre)",
         scales = list(x = list(rot = 45)))

bwplot(voice.part ~ height, data=singer, xlab="Height (inches)")

dotplot(variety ~ yield | year * site, data=barley)

## Grouped dot plot showing anomaly at Morris

dotplot(variety ~ yield | site, data = barley, groups = year,
        key = simpleKey(levels(barley$year), space = "right"),
        xlab = "Barley Yield (bushels/acre) ",
        aspect=0.5, layout = c(1,6), ylab=NULL)

stripplot(voice.part ~ jitter(height), data = singer, aspect = 1,
          jitter.data = TRUE, xlab = "Height (inches)")

## Interaction Plot

xyplot(decrease ~ treatment, OrchardSprays, groups = rowpos,
       type = "a",
       auto.key =
       list(space = "right", points = FALSE, lines = TRUE))

## longer version with no x-ticks

## Not run:
bwplot(decrease ~ treatment, OrchardSprays, groups = rowpos,
       panel = "panel.superpose",
       panel.groups = "panel.linejoin",
       xlab = "treatment",
       key = list(lines = Rows(trellis.par.get("superpose.line"),
                  c(1:7, 1)),
                  text = list(lab = as.character(unique(OrchardSprays$rowpos))),
                  columns = 4, title = "Row position"))

## End(Not run)
```

B_01_xyplot.ts *Time series plotting methods*

Description

This function handles time series plotting, including cut-and-stack plots. Examples are given of superposing, juxtaposing and styling different time series.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ts
xyplot(x, data = NULL,
       screens = if (superpose) 1 else colnames(x),
       ...,
       superpose = FALSE,
       cut = FALSE,
       type = "l",
       col = NULL,
       lty = NULL,
       lwd = NULL,
       pch = NULL,
       cex = NULL,
       fill = NULL,
       auto.key = superpose,
       panel = if (superpose) "panel.superpose"
               else "panel.superpose.plain",
       par.settings = list(),
       layout = NULL, as.table = TRUE,
       xlab = "Time", ylab = NULL,
       default.scales = list(y = list(relation =
           if (missing(cut)) "free" else "same")))
```

Arguments

x	an object of class ts, which may be multi-variate, i.e. have a matrix structure with multiple columns.
data	not used, and must be left as NULL.
...	additional arguments passed to xyplot, which may pass them on to panel.xyplot.
screens	factor (or coerced to factor) whose levels specify which panel each series is to be plotted in. screens = c(1, 2, 1) would plot series 1, 2 and 3 in panels 1, 2 and 1. May also be a named list, see Details below.
superpose	overlays all series in one panel (via screens = 1) and uses grouped style settings (from trellis.par.get("superpose.line"), etc). Note that this is just a convenience argument: its only action is to change the default values of other arguments.
cut	defines a cut-and-stack plot. cut can be a list of arguments to the function equal.count, i.e. number (number of intervals to divide into) and overlap (the fraction of overlap between cuts, default 0.5). If cut is numeric this is passed as the number argument. cut = TRUE tries to choose an appropriate number of cuts (up to a maximum of 6), using banking, and assuming a square plot region. This should have the effect of minimising wasted space when aspect = "xy".
type, col, lty, lwd, pch, cex, fill	graphical arguments, which are processed and eventually passed to panel.xyplot. These arguments can also be vectors or (named) lists, see Details for more information.
auto.key	a logical, or a list describing how to draw a key. See the auto.key entry in xyplot. The default here is to draw lines, not points, and any specified style arguments should show up automatically.

`panel`	the panel function. It is recommended to leave this alone, but one can pass a `panel.groups` argument which is handled by `panel.superpose` for each series.
`par.settings`	style settings beyond the standard `col`, `lty`, `lwd`, etc; see `trellis.par.set` and `simpleTheme`.
`layout`	numeric vector of length 2 specifying number of columns and rows in the plot. The default is to fill columns with up to 6 rows.
`as.table`	to draw panels from top to bottom. The order is determined by the order of columns in `x`.
`xlab, ylab`	X axis and Y axis labels; see `xyplot`. Note in particular that `ylab` may be a character vector, in which case the labels are spaced out equally, to correspond to the panels; but *NOTE* in this case the vector should be reversed OR the argument `as.table` set to `FALSE`.
`default.scales`	`scales` specification. The default is set to have `"free"` Y axis scales unless `cut` is given. Note, users should pass the `scales` argument rather than `default.scales`.

Details

The handling of several graphical parameters is more flexible for multivariate series. These parameters can be vectors of the same length as the number of series plotted or are recycled if shorter. They can also be (partially) named list, e.g., `list(A = c(1,2), c(3,4))` in which `c(3, 4)` is the default value and `c(1, 2)` the value only for series `A`. The `screens` argument can be specified in a similar way.

Some examples are given below.

Value

An object of class `"trellis"`. The `update` method can be used to update components of the object and the `print` method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Gabor Grothendieck, Achim Zeileis, Deepayan Sarkar and Felix Andrews <felix@nfrac.org>.

The first two authors developed `xyplot.ts` in their **zoo** package, including the `screens` approach. The third author developed a different `xyplot.ts` for cut-and-stack plots in the **latticeExtra** package. The final author fused these together.

References

Sarkar, Deepayan (2008) *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer. http://lmdvr.r-forge.r-project.org/ (cut-and-stack plots)

See Also

`xyplot`, `panel.xyplot`, `plot.ts`, `ts`, `xyplot.zoo` in the **zoo** package.

Examples

```
xyplot(ts(c(1:10,10:1)))

### Figure 14.1 from Sarkar (2008)
xyplot(sunspot.year, aspect = "xy",
```

```
       strip = FALSE, strip.left = TRUE,
       cut = list(number = 4, overlap = 0.05))

### A multivariate example; first juxtaposed, then superposed
xyplot(EuStockMarkets, scales = list(y = "same"))
xyplot(EuStockMarkets, superpose = TRUE, aspect = "xy", lwd = 2,
    type = c("l","g"), ylim = c(0, max(EuStockMarkets)))

### Examples using screens (these two are identical)
xyplot(EuStockMarkets, screens = c(rep("Continental", 3), "UK"))
xyplot(EuStockMarkets, screens = list(FTSE = "UK", "Continental"))

### Automatic group styles
xyplot(EuStockMarkets, screens = list(FTSE = "UK", "Continental"),
    superpose = TRUE)

xyplot(EuStockMarkets, screens = list(FTSE = "UK", "Continental"),
    superpose = TRUE, xlim = extendrange(1996:1998),
    par.settings = standard.theme(color = FALSE))

### Specifying styles for series by name
xyplot(EuStockMarkets, screens = list(FTSE = "UK", "Continental"),
    col = list(DAX = "red", FTSE = "blue", "black"), auto.key = TRUE)

xyplot(EuStockMarkets, screens = list(FTSE = "UK", "Continental"),
    col = list(DAX = "red"), lty = list(SMI = 2), lwd = 1:2,
    auto.key = TRUE)

### Example with simpler data, few data points
set.seed(1)
z <- ts(cbind(a = 1:5, b = 11:15, c = 21:25) + rnorm(5))
xyplot(z, screens = 1)
xyplot(z, screens = list(a = "primary (a)", "other (b & c)"),
  type = list(a = c("p", "h"), b = c("p", "s"), "o"),
  pch = list(a = 2, c = 3), auto.key = list(type = "o"))
```

B_02_barchart.table *table methods for barchart and dotplot*

Description

Contingency tables are often displayed using bar charts and dot plots. These methods operate directly on tables, bypassing the need to convert them to data frames for use with the formula interface. Matrices and arrays are also supported, by coercing them to tables.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class table
barchart(x, data, groups = TRUE,
         origin = 0, stack = TRUE, ..., horizontal = TRUE)

## S3 method for class array
barchart(x, data, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class matrix
barchart(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class table
dotplot(x, data, groups = TRUE, ..., horizontal = TRUE)

## S3 method for class array
dotplot(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
dotplot(x, data, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A table, array or matrix object.
data	Should not be specified. If specified, will be ignored with a warning.
groups	A logical flag, indicating whether to use the last dimension as a grouping variable in the display.
origin, stack	Arguments to panel.barchart. The defaults for the table method are different.
horizontal	Logical flag, indicating whether the plot should be horizontal (with the categorical variable on the y-axis) or vertical.
...	Other arguments, passed to the underlying formula method.

Details

The first dimension is used as the variable on the categorical axis. The last dimension is optionally used as a grouping variable (to produce stacked barcharts by default). All other dimensions are used as conditioning variables. The order of these variables cannot be altered (except by permuting the original argument beforehand using t or aperm). For more flexibility, use the formula method after converting the table to a data frame using the relevant as.data.frame method.

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

barchart, t, aperm, table, panel.barchart, Lattice

Examples

```
barchart(Titanic, scales = list(x = "free"),
         auto.key = list(title = "Survived"))
```

B_03_histogram *Histograms and Kernel Density Plots*

Description

Draw Histograms and Kernel Density Plots, possibly conditioned on other variables.

Usage

```
histogram(x, data, ...)
densityplot(x, data, ...)
## S3 method for class formula
histogram(x,
          data,
          allow.multiple, outer = TRUE,
          auto.key = FALSE,
          aspect = "fill",
          panel = lattice.getOption("panel.histogram"),
          prepanel, scales, strip, groups,
          xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim,
          type = c("percent", "count", "density"),
          nint = if (is.factor(x)) nlevels(x)
          else round(log2(length(x)) + 1),
          endpoints = extend.limits(range(as.numeric(x),
                         finite = TRUE), prop = 0.04),
          breaks,
          equal.widths = TRUE,
          drop.unused.levels =
              lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
          ...,
          lattice.options = NULL,
          default.scales = list(),
          default.prepanel =
              lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.histogram"),
          subscripts,
          subset)

## S3 method for class numeric
histogram(x, data = NULL, xlab, ...)
## S3 method for class factor
histogram(x, data = NULL, xlab, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
densityplot(x,
            data,
            allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
            outer = !is.null(groups),
            auto.key = FALSE,
            aspect = "fill",
            panel = lattice.getOption("panel.densityplot"),
            prepanel, scales, strip, groups, weights,
```

```
            xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim,
            bw, adjust, kernel, window, width, give.Rkern,
            n = 50, from, to, cut, na.rm,
            drop.unused.levels =
                lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
            ...,
            lattice.options = NULL,
            default.scales = list(),
            default.prepanel =
                lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.densityplot"),
            subscripts,
            subset)
## S3 method for class numeric
densityplot(x, data = NULL, xlab, ...)

do.breaks(endpoints, nint)
```

Arguments

x	The object on which method dispatch is carried out. For the formula method, x can be a formula of the form ~ x | g1 * g2 * ..., indicating that histograms or kernel density estimates of the x variable should be produced conditioned on the levels of the (optional) variables g1, g2, ... x should be numeric (or possibly a factor in the case of histogram), and each of g1, g2, ... should be either factors or shingles. As a special case, the right hand side of the formula can contain more than one term separated by '+' signs (e.g., ~ x1 + x2 | g1 * g2). What happens in this case is described in the documentation for xyplot. Note that in either form, all the terms in the formula must have the same length after evaluation. For the numeric and factor methods, x is the variable whose histogram or Kernel density estimate is drawn. Conditioning is not allowed in these cases.
data	For the formula method, an optional data source (usually a data frame) in which variables are to be evaluated (see xyplot for details). data should not be specified for the other methods, and is ignored with a warning if it is.
type	A character string indicating the type of histogram that is to be drawn. "percent" and "count" give relative frequency and frequency histograms respectively, and can be misleading when breakpoints are not equally spaced. "density" produces a density histogram. type defaults to "density" when the breakpoints are unequally spaced, and when breaks is NULL or a function, and to "percent" otherwise.
nint	An integer specifying the number of histogram bins, applicable only when breaks is unspecified or NULL in the call. Ignored when the variable being plotted is a factor.
endpoints	A numeric vector of length 2 indicating the range of x-values that is to be covered by the histogram. This applies only when breaks is unspecified and the variable being plotted is not a factor. In do.breaks, this specifies the interval that is to be divided up.
breaks	Usually a numeric vector of length (number of bins + 1) defining the breakpoints of the bins. Note that when breakpoints are not equally spaced, the only value of type that makes sense is density.

When `breaks` is unspecified, the value of `lattice.getOption("histogram.breaks")` is first checked. If this value is `NULL`, then the default is to use

```
breaks = seq_len(1 + nlevels(x)) - 0.5
```

when `x` is a factor, and

```
breaks = do.breaks(endpoints, nint)
```

otherwise. Breakpoints calculated in such a manner are used in all panels. If the retrieved value is not `NULL`, or if `breaks` is explicitly specified, it affects the display in each panel independently. Valid values are those accepted as the `breaks` argument in `hist`. In particular, this allows specification of `breaks` as an integer giving the number of bins (similar to `nint`), as a character string denoting a method, or as a function.

When specified explicitly, a special value of `breaks` is `NULL`, in which case the number of bins is determined by `nint` and then breakpoints are chosen according to the value of `equal.widths`.

`equal.widths` A logical flag, relevant only when `breaks=NULL`. If `TRUE`, equally spaced bins will be selected, otherwise, approximately equal area bins will be selected (typically producing unequally spaced breakpoints).

`n` Integer, giving the number of points at which the kernel density is to be evaluated. Passed on as an argument to `density`.

`panel` A function, called once for each panel, that uses the packet (subset of panel variables) corresponding to the panel to create a display. The default panel functions `panel.histogram` and `panel.densityplot` are documented separately, and have arguments that can be used to customize its output in various ways. Such arguments can usually be directly supplied to the high-level function.

`allow.multiple, outer` See `xyplot`.

`auto.key` See `xyplot`.

`aspect` See `xyplot`.

`prepanel` See `xyplot`.

`scales` See `xyplot`.

`strip` See `xyplot`.

`groups` See `xyplot`. Note that the default panel function for `histogram` does not support grouped displays, whereas the one for `densityplot` does.

`xlab, ylab` See `xyplot`.

`xlim, ylim` See `xyplot`.

`drop.unused.levels` See `xyplot`.

`lattice.options` See `xyplot`.

`default.scales` See `xyplot`.

`subscripts` See `xyplot`.

`subset` See `xyplot`.

`default.prepanel`
: Fallback prepanel function. See `xyplot`.

`weights`
: numeric vector of weights for the density calculations, evaluated in the non-standard manner used for `groups` and terms in the formula, if any. If this is specified, it is subsetted using `subscripts` inside the panel function to match it to the corresponding `x` values.

  At the time of writing, `weights` do not work in conjunction with an extended formula specification (this is not too hard to fix, so just bug the maintainer if you need this feature).

`bw, adjust, width`
: Arguments controlling bandwidth. Passed on as arguments to `density`.

`kernel, window`
: The choice of kernel. Passed on as arguments to `density`.

`give.Rkern`
: Logical flag, passed on as argument to `density`. This argument is made available only for ease of implementation, and will produce an error if `TRUE`.

`from, to, cut`
: Controls range over which density is evaluated. Passed on as arguments to `density`.

`na.rm`
: Logical flag specifying whether `NA` values should be ignored. Passed on as argument to `density`, but unlike in `density`, the default is `TRUE`.

`...`
: Further arguments. See corresponding entry in `xyplot` for non-trivial details.

Details

`histogram` draws Conditional Histograms, and `densityplot` draws Conditional Kernel Density Plots. The default panel function uses the `density` function to compute the density estimate, and all arguments accepted by `density` can be specified in the call to `densityplot` to control the output. See documentation of `density` for details. Note that the default value of the argument `n` of `density` is changed to 50.

These and all other high level Trellis functions have several arguments in common. These are extensively documented only in the help page for `xyplot`, which should be consulted to learn more detailed usage.

`do.breaks` is an utility function that calculates breakpoints given an interval and the number of pieces to break it into.

Value

An object of class `"trellis"`. The `update` method can be used to update components of the object and the `print` method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Note

The form of the arguments accepted by the default panel function `panel.histogram` is different from that in S-PLUS. Whereas S-PLUS calculates the heights inside `histogram` and passes only the breakpoints and the heights to the panel function, **lattice** simply passes along the original variable `x` along with the breakpoints. This approach is more flexible; see the example below with an estimated density superimposed over the histogram.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Sarkar, Deepayan (2008) *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer. http://lmdvr.r-forge.r-project.org/

See Also

xyplot, panel.histogram, density, panel.densityplot, panel.mathdensity, Lattice

Examples

```
require(stats)
histogram( ~ height | voice.part, data = singer, nint = 17,
          endpoints = c(59.5, 76.5), layout = c(2,4), aspect = 1,
          xlab = "Height (inches)")

histogram( ~ height | voice.part, data = singer,
          xlab = "Height (inches)", type = "density",
          panel = function(x, ...) {
              panel.histogram(x, ...)
              panel.mathdensity(dmath = dnorm, col = "black",
                                args = list(mean=mean(x),sd=sd(x)))
          } )

densityplot( ~ height | voice.part, data = singer, layout = c(2, 4),
            xlab = "Height (inches)", bw = 5)
```

B_04_qqmath *Q-Q Plot with Theoretical Distribution*

Description

Draw quantile-Quantile plots of a sample against a theoretical distribution, possibly conditioned on other variables.

Usage

```
qqmath(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
qqmath(x,
       data,
       allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
       outer = !is.null(groups),
       distribution = qnorm,
       f.value = NULL,
       auto.key = FALSE,
       aspect = "fill",
       panel = lattice.getOption("panel.qqmath"),
       prepanel = NULL,
       scales, strip, groups,
       xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim,
       drop.unused.levels = lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
```

```
       ...,
       lattice.options = NULL,
       default.scales = list(),
       default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.qqmath"),
       subscripts,
       subset)
## S3 method for class numeric
qqmath(x, data = NULL, ylab, ...)
```

Arguments

x	The object on which method dispatch is carried out. For the "formula" method, x should be a formula of the form ~ x | g1 * g2 * ..., where x should be a numeric variable. For the "numeric" method, x should be a numeric vector.
data	For the formula method, an optional data source (usually a data frame) in which variables are to be evaluated (see xyplot for details). data should not be specified for the other methods, and is ignored with a warning if it is.
distribution	A quantile function that takes a vector of probabilities as argument and produces the corresponding quantiles from a theoretical distribution. Possible values are qnorm, qunif, etc. Distributions with other required arguments need to be provided as user-defined functions (see example with qt).
f.value	An optional numeric vector of probabilities, quantiles corresponding to which should be plotted. This can also be a function of a single integer (representing sample size) that returns such a numeric vector. A typical value for this argument is the function ppoints, which is also the S-PLUS default. If specified, the probabilities generated by this function is used for the plotted quantiles, through the quantile function for the sample, and the function specified as the distribution argument for the theoretical distribution. f.value defaults to NULL, which has the effect of using ppoints for the quantiles of the theoretical distribution, but the exact data values for the sample. This is similar to what happens for qqnorm, but different from the S-PLUS default of f.value=ppoints. For large x, this argument can be used to restrict the number of points plotted. See also the tails.n argument in panel.qqmath.
panel	A function, called once for each panel, that uses the packet (subset of panel variables) corresponding to the panel to create a display. The default panel function panel.qqmath is documented separately, and has arguments that can be used to customize its output in various ways. Such arguments can usually be directly supplied to the high-level function.
allow.multiple, outer	See xyplot.
auto.key	See xyplot.
aspect	See xyplot.
prepanel	See xyplot.
scales	See xyplot.
strip	See xyplot.
groups	See xyplot.
xlab, ylab	See xyplot.

`xlim, ylim` See xyplot.

`drop.unused.levels`
See xyplot.

`lattice.options`
See xyplot.

`default.scales` See xyplot.

`subscripts` See xyplot.

`subset` See xyplot.

`default.prepanel`
Fallback prepanel function. See xyplot.

`...` Further arguments. See corresponding entry in xyplot for non-trivial details.

Details

qqmath produces Q-Q plots of the given sample against a theoretical distribution. The default behaviour of qqmath is different from the corresponding S-PLUS function, but is similar to qqnorm. See the entry for f.value for specifics.

The implementation details are also different from S-PLUS. In particular, all the important calculations are done by the panel (and prepanel function) and not qqmath itself. In fact, both the arguments distribution and f.value are passed unchanged to the panel and prepanel function. This allows, among other things, display of grouped Q-Q plots, which are often useful. See the help page for panel.qqmath for further details.

This and all other high level Trellis functions have several arguments in common. These are extensively documented only in the help page for xyplot, which should be consulted to learn more detailed usage.

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot, panel.qqmath, panel.qqmathline, prepanel.qqmathline, Lattice, quantile

Examples

```
qqmath(~ rnorm(100), distribution = function(p) qt(p, df = 10))
qqmath(~ height | voice.part, aspect = "xy", data = singer,
       prepanel = prepanel.qqmathline,
       panel = function(x, ...) {
          panel.qqmathline(x, ...)
          panel.qqmath(x, ...)
       })
vp.comb <-
    factor(sapply(strsplit(as.character(singer$voice.part), split = " "),
                  "[", 1),
           levels = c("Bass", "Tenor", "Alto", "Soprano"))
```

```
vp.group <-
    factor(sapply(strsplit(as.character(singer$voice.part), split = " "),
                  "[", 2))
qqmath(~ height | vp.comb, data = singer,
       groups = vp.group, auto.key = list(space = "right"),
       aspect = "xy",
       prepanel = prepanel.qqmathline,
       panel = function(x, ...) {
          panel.qqmathline(x, ...)
          panel.qqmath(x, ...)
       })
```

B_05_qq *Quantile-Quantile Plots of Two Samples*

Description

Quantile-Quantile plots for comparing two Distributions

Usage

```
qq(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
qq(x, data, aspect = "fill",
   panel = lattice.getOption("panel.qq"),
   prepanel, scales, strip,
   groups, xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim, f.value = NULL,
   drop.unused.levels = lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
   ...,
   lattice.options = NULL,
   qtype = 7,
   default.scales = list(),
   default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.qq"),
   subscripts,
   subset)
```

Arguments

x	The object on which method dispatch is carried out. For the "formula" method, x should be a formula of the form y ~ x | g1 * g2 * ..., where x should be a numeric variable, and y a factor, shingle, character, or numeric variable, with the restriction that there must be exactly two levels of y, which divide the values of x into two groups. Quantiles for these groups will be plotted against each other along the two axes.
data	For the formula method, an optional data source (usually a data frame) in which variables are to be evaluated (see xyplot for details).
f.value	An optional numeric vector of probabilities, quantiles corresponding to which should be plotted. This can also be a function of a single integer (representing sample size) that returns such a numeric vector. A typical value for this argument is the function ppoints, which is also the S-PLUS default. If specified, the

probabilities generated by this function is used for the plotted quantiles, through the quantile function.

f.value defaults to NULL, which is equivalent to

```
f.value = function(n) ppoints(n, a = 1)
```

This has the effect of including the minimum and maximum data values in the computed quantiles. This is similar to what happens for qqplot but different from the default behaviour of qq in S-PLUS.

For large x, this argument can be used to restrict the number of quantiles plotted.

panel — A function, called once for each panel, that uses the packet (subset of panel variables) corresponding to the panel to create a display. The default panel function panel.qq is documented separately, and has arguments that can be used to customize its output in various ways. Such arguments can usually be directly supplied to the high-level function.

qtype — The type argument for quantile.

aspect — See xyplot.

prepanel — See xyplot.

scales — See xyplot.

strip — See xyplot.

groups — See xyplot.

xlab, ylab — See xyplot.

xlim, ylim — See xyplot.

drop.unused.levels — See xyplot.

lattice.options — See xyplot.

default.scales — See xyplot.

subscripts — See xyplot.

subset — See xyplot.

default.prepanel — Fallback prepanel function. See xyplot.

... — Further arguments. See corresponding entry in xyplot for non-trivial details.

Details

qq produces Q-Q plots of two samples. The default behaviour of qq is different from the corresponding S-PLUS function. See the entry for f.value for specifics.

This and all other high level Trellis functions have several arguments in common. These are extensively documented only in the help page for xyplot, which should be consulted to learn more detailed usage.

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot, panel.qq, qqmath, Lattice

Examples

```
qq(voice.part ~ height, aspect = 1, data = singer,
   subset = (voice.part == "Bass 2" | voice.part == "Tenor 1"))
```

B_06_levelplot *Level plots and contour plots*

Description

Draws false color level plots and contour plots.

Usage

```
levelplot(x, data, ...)
contourplot(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
levelplot(x,
          data,
          allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
          outer = TRUE,
          aspect = "fill",
          panel = if (useRaster) lattice.getOption("panel.levelplot.raster")
                  else lattice.getOption("panel.levelplot"),
          prepanel = NULL,
          scales = list(),
          strip = TRUE,
          groups = NULL,
          xlab,
          xlim,
          ylab,
          ylim,
          at,
          cuts = 15,
          pretty = FALSE,
          region = TRUE,
          drop.unused.levels =
              lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
          ...,
          useRaster = FALSE,
          lattice.options = NULL,
          default.scales = list(),
          default.prepanel =
```

```
              lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.levelplot"),
          colorkey = region,
          col.regions,
          alpha.regions,
          subset = TRUE)

## S3 method for class formula
contourplot(x,
            data,
            panel = lattice.getOption("panel.contourplot"),
            default.prepanel =
                lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.contourplot"),
            cuts = 7,
            labels = TRUE,
            contour = TRUE,
            pretty = TRUE,
            region = FALSE,
            ...)

## S3 method for class table
levelplot(x, data = NULL, aspect = "iso", ..., xlim, ylim)

## S3 method for class table
contourplot(x, data = NULL, aspect = "iso", ..., xlim, ylim)

## S3 method for class matrix
levelplot(x, data = NULL, aspect = "iso",
          ..., xlim, ylim,
          row.values = seq_len(nrow(x)),
          column.values = seq_len(ncol(x)))

## S3 method for class matrix
contourplot(x, data = NULL, aspect = "iso",
            ..., xlim, ylim,
            row.values = seq_len(nrow(x)),
            column.values = seq_len(ncol(x)))


## S3 method for class array
levelplot(x, data = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class array
contourplot(x, data = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	for the formula method, a formula of the form `z ~ x * y | g1 * g2 * ...`, where `z` is a numeric response, and `x`, `y` are numeric values evaluated on a rectangular grid. `g1`, `g2`, `...` are optional conditional variables, and must be either factors or shingles if present. Calculations are based on the assumption that all x and y values are evaluated

on a grid (defined by their unique values). The function will not return an error if this is not true, but the display might not be meaningful. However, the x and y values need not be equally spaced.

Both levelplot and wireframe have methods for matrix, array, and table objects, in which case x provides the z vector described above, while its rows and columns are interpreted as the x and y vectors respectively. This is similar to the form used in filled.contour and image. For higher-dimensional arrays and tables, further dimensions are used as conditioning variables. Note that the dimnames may be duplicated; this is handled by calling make.unique to make the names unique (although the original labels are used for the x- and y-axes).

data — For the formula methods, an optional data frame in which variables in the formula (as well as groups and subset, if any) are to be evaluated. Usually ignored with a warning in other cases.

row.values, column.values — Optional vectors of values that define the grid when x is a matrix. row.values and column.values must have the same lengths as nrow(x) and ncol(x) respectively. By default, row and column numbers.

panel — panel function used to create the display, as described in xyplot

aspect — For the matrix methods, the default aspect ratio is chosen to make each cell square. The usual default is aspect="fill", as described in xyplot.

at — A numeric vector giving breakpoints along the range of z. Contours (if any) will be drawn at these heights, and the regions in between would be colored using col.regions. In the latter case, values outside the range of at will not be drawn at all. This serves as a way to limit the range of the data shown, similar to what a zlim argument might have been used for. However, this also means that when supplying at explicitly, one has to be careful to include values outside the range of z to ensure that all the data are shown.

at can have length one only if region=FALSE.

col.regions — color vector to be used if regions is TRUE. The general idea is that this should be a color vector of moderately large length (longer than the number of regions. By default this is 100). It is expected that this vector would be gradually varying in color (so that nearby colors would be similar). When the colors are actually chosen, they are chosen to be equally spaced along this vector. When there are more regions than colors in col.regions, the colors are recycled. The actual color assignment is performed by level.colors, which is documented separately.

alpha.regions — numeric, specifying alpha transparency (works only on some devices)

colorkey — logical specifying whether a color key is to be drawn alongside the plot, or a list describing the color key. The list may contain the following components:

space: location of the colorkey, can be one of "left", "right", "top" and "bottom". Defaults to "right".

x, y: location, currently unused

col: A color ramp specification, as in the col.regions argument in level.colors

at: numeric vector specifying where the colors change. must be of length 1 more than the col vector.

labels: a character vector for labelling the at values, or more commonly, a list describing characteristics of the labels. This list may include components labels, at, cex, col, rot, font, fontface and fontfamily.

tick.number: The approximate number of ticks desired.

`tck`: A (scalar) multipler for tick lengths.

`corner`: Interacts with x, y; currently unimplemented

`width`: The width of the key

`height`: The length of key as a fraction of the appropriate side of plot.

`raster`: A logical flag indicating whether the colorkey should be rendered as a raster image using `grid.raster`. See also `panel.levelplot.raster`.

`interpolate`: Logical flag, passed to `rasterGrob` when `raster=TRUE`.

`axis.line`: A list giving graphical parameters for the color key boundary and tick marks. Defaults to `trellis.par.get("axis.line")`.

`axis.text`: A list giving graphical parameters for the tick mark labels on the color key. Defaults to `trellis.par.get("axis.text")`.

`contour` A logical flag, indicating whether to draw contour lines.

`cuts` The number of levels the range of `z` would be divided into.

`labels` Typically a logical indicating whether contour lines should be labelled, but other possibilities for more sophisticated control exists. Details are documented in the help page for `panel.levelplot`, to which this argument is passed on unchanged. That help page also documents the `label.style` argument, which affects how the labels are rendered.

`pretty` A logical flag, indicating whether to use pretty cut locations and labels.

`region` A logical flag, indicating whether regions between contour lines should be filled as in a level plot.

`allow.multiple, outer, prepanel, scales, strip, groups, xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim, drop.unused.leve`
These arguments are described in the help page for `xyplot`.

`default.prepanel`
Fallback prepanel function. See `xyplot`.

`...` Further arguments may be supplied. Some are processed by `levelplot` or `contourplot`, and those that are unrecognized are passed on to the panel function.

`useRaster` A logical flag indicating whether raster representations should be used, both for the false color image and the color key (if present). Effectively, setting this to `TRUE` changes the default panel function from `panel.levelplot` to `panel.levelplot.raster`, and sets the default value of `colorkey$raster` to `TRUE`.

Note that `panel.levelplot.raster` provides only a subset of the features of `panel.levelplot`, but setting `useRaster=TRUE` will not check whether any of the additional features have been requested.

Not all devices support raster images. For devices that appear to lack support, `useRaster=TRUE` will be ignored with a warning.

Details

These and all other high level Trellis functions have several arguments in common. These are extensively documented only in the help page for `xyplot`, which should be consulted to learn more detailed usage.

Other useful arguments are mentioned in the help page for the default panel function `panel.levelplot` (these are formally arguments to the panel function, but can be specified in the high level calls directly).

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Sarkar, Deepayan (2008) *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer. http://lmdvr.r-forge.r-project.org/

See Also

xyplot, Lattice, panel.levelplot

Examples

```
x <- seq(pi/4, 5 * pi, length.out = 100)
y <- seq(pi/4, 5 * pi, length.out = 100)
r <- as.vector(sqrt(outer(x^2, y^2, "+")))
grid <- expand.grid(x=x, y=y)
grid$z <- cos(r^2) * exp(-r/(pi^3))
levelplot(z~x*y, grid, cuts = 50, scales=list(log="e"), xlab="",
          ylab="", main="Weird Function", sub="with log scales",
          colorkey = FALSE, region = TRUE)


#S-PLUS example
require(stats)
attach(environmental)
ozo.m <- loess((ozone^(1/3)) ~ wind * temperature * radiation,
       parametric = c("radiation", "wind"), span = 1, degree = 2)
w.marginal <- seq(min(wind), max(wind), length.out = 50)
t.marginal <- seq(min(temperature), max(temperature), length.out = 50)
r.marginal <- seq(min(radiation), max(radiation), length.out = 4)
wtr.marginal <- list(wind = w.marginal, temperature = t.marginal,
        radiation = r.marginal)
grid <- expand.grid(wtr.marginal)
grid[, "fit"] <- c(predict(ozo.m, grid))
contourplot(fit ~ wind * temperature | radiation, data = grid,
            cuts = 10, region = TRUE,
            xlab = "Wind Speed (mph)",
            ylab = "Temperature (F)",
            main = "Cube Root Ozone (cube root ppb)")
detach()
```

B_07_cloud *3d Scatter Plot and Wireframe Surface Plot*

Description

Generic functions to draw 3d scatter plots and surfaces. The "formula" methods do most of the actual work.

Usage

```
cloud(x, data, ...)
wireframe(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
cloud(x,
      data,
      allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
      outer = FALSE,
      auto.key = FALSE,
      aspect = c(1,1),
      panel.aspect = 1,
      panel = lattice.getOption("panel.cloud"),
      prepanel = NULL,
      scales = list(),
      strip = TRUE,
      groups = NULL,
      xlab,
      ylab,
      zlab,
      xlim = if (is.factor(x)) levels(x) else range(x, finite = TRUE),
      ylim = if (is.factor(y)) levels(y) else range(y, finite = TRUE),
      zlim = if (is.factor(z)) levels(z) else range(z, finite = TRUE),
      at,
      drape = FALSE,
      pretty = FALSE,
      drop.unused.levels,
      ...,
      lattice.options = NULL,
      default.scales =
      list(distance = c(1, 1, 1),
           arrows = TRUE,
           axs = axs.default),
      default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.cloud"),
      colorkey,
      col.regions,
      alpha.regions,
      cuts = 70,
      subset = TRUE,
      axs.default = "r")

## S3 method for class formula
```

```
wireframe(x,
          data,
          panel = lattice.getOption("panel.wireframe"),
          default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.wireframe"),
          ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
cloud(x, data = NULL, type = "h",
      zlab = deparse(substitute(x)), aspect, ...,
      xlim, ylim, row.values, column.values)

## S3 method for class table
cloud(x, data = NULL, groups = FALSE,
      zlab = deparse(substitute(x)),
      type = "h", ...)

## S3 method for class matrix
wireframe(x, data = NULL,
          zlab = deparse(substitute(x)), aspect, ...,
          xlim, ylim, row.values, column.values)
```

Arguments

x	The object on which method dispatch is carried out. For the "formula" methods, a formula of the form z ~ x * y | g1 * g2 * ..., where z is a numeric response, and x, y are numeric values. g1, g2, ..., if present, are conditioning variables used for conditioning, and must be either factors or shingles. In the case of wireframe, calculations are based on the assumption that the x and y values are evaluated on a rectangular grid defined by their unique values. The grid points need not be equally spaced. For wireframe, x, y and z may also be matrices (of the same dimension), in which case they are taken to represent a 3-D surface parametrized on a 2-D grid (e.g., a sphere). Conditioning is not possible with this feature. See details below. Missing values are allowed, either as NA values in the z vector, or missing rows in the data frame (note however that in that case the X and Y grids will be determined only by the available values). For a grouped display (producing multiple surfaces), missing rows are not allowed, but NA-s in z are. Both wireframe and cloud have methods for matrix objects, in which case x provides the z vector described above, while its rows and columns are interpreted as the x and y vectors respectively. This is similar to the form used in persp.
data	for the "formula" methods, an optional data frame in which variables in the formula (as well as groups and subset, if any) are to be evaluated. data should not be specified except when using the "formula" method.
row.values, column.values	Optional vectors of values that define the grid when x is a matrix. row.values and column.values must have the same lengths as nrow(x) and ncol(x) respectively. By default, row and column numbers.
allow.multiple, outer, auto.key, prepanel, strip, groups, xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim, drop.unused.le	These arguments are documented in the help page for xyplot. For the cloud.table method, groups must be a logical indicating whether the last di-

mension should be used as a grouping variable as opposed to a conditioning variable. This is only relevant if the table has more than 2 dimensions.

`type` type of display in `cloud` (see `panel.3dscatter` for details). Defaults to `"h"` for the `matrix` method.

`aspect, panel.aspect`
Unlike other high level functions, `aspect` is taken to be a numeric vector of length 2, giving the relative aspects of the y-size/x-size and z-size/x-size of the enclosing cube. The usual role of the `aspect` argument in determining the aspect ratio of the panel (see `xyplot` for details) is played by `panel.aspect`, except that it can only be a numeric value.

For the `matrix` methods, the default y/x aspect is `ncol(x) / nrow(x)` and the z/x aspect is the smaller of the y/x aspect and 1.

`panel` panel function used to create the display. See `panel.cloud` for (non-trivial) details.

`default.prepanel`
Fallback prepanel function. See `xyplot`.

`scales` a list describing the scales. As with other high level functions (see `xyplot` for details), this list can contain parameters in name=value form. It can also contain components with the special names `x`, `y` and `z`, which can be similar lists with axis-specific values overriding the ones specified in `scales`.

The most common use for this argument is to set `arrows=FALSE`, which causes tick marks and labels to be used instead of arrows being drawn (the default). Both can be suppressed by `draw=FALSE`. Another special component is `distance`, which specifies the relative distance of the axis label from the bounding box. If specified as a component of `scales` (as opposed to one of `scales$z` etc), this can be (and is recycled if not) a vector of length 3, specifying distances for the x, y and z labels respectively.

Other components that work in the `scales` argument of `xyplot` etc. should also work here (as long as they make sense), including explicit specification of tick mark locations and labels. (Not everything is implemented yet, but if you find something that should work but does not, feel free to bug the maintainer.)

Note, however, that for these functions `scales` cannot contain information that is specific to particular panels. If you really need that, consider using the `scales.3d` argument of `panel.cloud`.

`axs.default` Unlike 2-D display functions, `cloud` does not expand the bounding box to slightly beyound the range of the data, even though it should. This is primarily because this is the natural behaviour in `wireframe`, which uses the same code. `axs.default` is intended to provide a different default for `cloud`. However, this feature has not yet been implemented.

`zlab` Specifies a label describing the z variable in ways similar to `xlab` and `ylab` (i.e. "grob", character string, expression or list) in other high level functions. Additionally, if `zlab` (and `xlab` and `ylab`) is a list, it can contain a component called `rot`, controlling the rotation for the label

`zlim` limits for the z-axis. Similar to `xlim` and `ylim` in other high level functions

`drape` logical, whether the wireframe is to be draped in color. If `TRUE`, the height of a facet is used to determine its color in a manner similar to the coloring scheme used in `levelplot`. Otherwise, the background color is used to color the facets. This argument is ignored if `shade = TRUE` (see `panel.3dwire`).

`at, col.regions, alpha.regions`
: these arguments are analogous to those in `levelplot`. if `drape=TRUE`, `at` gives the vector of cutpoints where the colors change, and `col.regions` the vector of colors to be used in that case. `alpha.regions` determines the alpha-transparency on supporting devices. These are passed down to the panel function, and also used in the colorkey if appropriate. The default for `col.regions` and `alpha.regions` is derived from the Trellis setting `"regions"`

`cuts`
: if `at` is unspecified, the approximate number of cutpoints if `drape=TRUE`

`pretty`
: whether automatic choice of cutpoints should be prettfied

`colorkey`
: logical indicating whether a color key should be drawn alongside, or a list describing such a key. See `levelplot` for details.

`...`
: Any number of other arguments can be specified, and are passed to the panel function. In particular, the arguments `distance`, `perspective`, `screen` and `R.mat` are very important in determining the 3-D display. The argument `shade` can be useful for `wireframe` calls, and controls shading of the rendered surface. These arguments are described in detail in the help page for `panel.cloud`.

  Additionally, an argument called `zoom` may be specified, which should be a numeric scalar to be interpreted as a scale factor by which the projection is magnified. This can be useful to get the variable names into the plot. This argument is actually only used by the default prepanel function.

Details

These functions produce three dimensional plots in each panel (as long as the default panel functions are used). The orientation is obtained as follows: the data are scaled to fall within a bounding box that is contained in the [-0.5, 0.5] cube (even smaller for non-default values of `aspect`). The viewing direction is given by a sequence of rotations specified by the `screen` argument, starting from the positive Z-axis. The viewing point (camera) is located at a distance of `1/distance` from the origin. If `perspective=FALSE`, `distance` is set to 0 (i.e., the viewing point is at an infinite distance).

`cloud` draws a 3-D Scatter Plot, while `wireframe` draws a 3-D surface (usually evaluated on a grid). Multiple surfaces can be drawn by `wireframe` using the `groups` argument (although this is of limited use because the display is incorrect when the surfaces intersect). Specifying `groups` with `cloud` results in a `panel.superpose`-like effect (via `panel.3dscatter`).

`wireframe` can optionally render the surface as being illuminated by a light source (no shadows though). Details can be found in the help page for `panel.3dwire`. Note that although arguments controlling these are actually arguments for the panel function, they can be supplied to `cloud` and `wireframe` directly.

For single panel plots, `wireframe` can also plot parametrized 3-D surfaces (i.e., functions of the form f(u,v) = (x(u,v), y(u,v), z(u,v)), where values of (u,v) lie on a rectangle. The simplest example of this sort of surface is a sphere parametrized by latitude and longitude. This can be achieved by calling `wireframe` with a formula `x` of the form `z~x*y`, where `x`, `y` and `z` are all matrices of the same dimension, representing the values of x(u,v), y(u,v) and z(u,v) evaluated on a discrete rectangular grid (the actual values of (u,v) are irrelevant).

When this feature is used, the heights used to calculate `drape` colors or shading colors are no longer the `z` values, but the distances of `(x,y,z)` from the origin.

Note that this feature does not work with `groups`, `subscripts`, `subset`, etc. Conditioning variables are also not supported in this case.

The algorithm for identifying which edges of the bounding box are 'behind' the points doesn't work in some extreme situations. Also, `panel.cloud` tries to figure out the optimal location of the arrows

and axis labels automatically, but can fail on occasion (especially when the view is from 'below' the data). This can be manually controlled by the scpos argument in panel.cloud.

These and all other high level Trellis functions have several other arguments in common. These are extensively documented only in the help page for xyplot, which should be consulted to learn more detailed usage.

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Note

There is a known problem with grouped wireframe displays when the (x, y) coordinates represented in the data do not represent the full evaluation grid. The problem occurs whether the grouping is specified through the groups argument or through the formula interface, and currently causes memory access violations. Depending on the circumstances, this is manifested either as a meaningless plot or a crash. To work around the problem, it should be enough to have a row in the data frame for each grid point, with an NA response (z) in rows that were previously missing.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Sarkar, Deepayan (2008) *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer. http://lmdvr.r-forge.r-project.org/

See Also

Lattice for an overview of the package, as well as xyplot, levelplot, panel.cloud.

For interaction, see panel.identify.cloud.

Examples

```
## volcano  ## 87 x 61 matrix
wireframe(volcano, shade = TRUE,
          aspect = c(61/87, 0.4),
          light.source = c(10,0,10))

g <- expand.grid(x = 1:10, y = 5:15, gr = 1:2)
g$z <- log((g$x^g$gr + g$y^2) * g$gr)
wireframe(z ~ x * y, data = g, groups = gr,
          scales = list(arrows = FALSE),
          drape = TRUE, colorkey = TRUE,
          screen = list(z = 30, x = -60))

cloud(Sepal.Length ~ Petal.Length * Petal.Width | Species, data = iris,
      screen = list(x = -90, y = 70), distance = .4, zoom = .6)

## cloud.table

cloud(prop.table(Titanic, margin = 1:3),
      type = c("p", "h"), strip = strip.custom(strip.names = TRUE),
```

```
      scales = list(arrows = FALSE, distance = 2), panel.aspect = 0.7,
      zlab = "Proportion")[, 1]

## transparent axes

par.set <-
    list(axis.line = list(col = "transparent"),
         clip = list(panel = "off"))
print(cloud(Sepal.Length ~ Petal.Length * Petal.Width,
            data = iris, cex = .8,
            groups = Species,
            main = "Stereo",
            screen = list(z = 20, x = -70, y = 3),
            par.settings = par.set,
            scales = list(col = "black")),
      split = c(1,1,2,1), more = TRUE)
print(cloud(Sepal.Length ~ Petal.Length * Petal.Width,
            data = iris, cex = .8,
            groups = Species,
            main = "Stereo",
            screen = list(z = 20, x = -70, y = 0),
            par.settings = par.set,
            scales = list(col = "black")),
      split = c(2,1,2,1))
```

B_08_splom *Scatter Plot Matrices*

Description

Draw Conditional Scatter Plot Matrices and Parallel Coordinate Plots

Usage

```
splom(x, data, ...)
parallelplot(x, data, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
splom(x,
      data,
      auto.key = FALSE,
      aspect = 1,
      between = list(x = 0.5, y = 0.5),
      panel = lattice.getOption("panel.splom"),
      prepanel,
      scales,
      strip,
      groups,
      xlab,
      xlim,
      ylab = NULL,
      ylim,
```

```
       superpanel = lattice.getOption("panel.pairs"),
       pscales = 5,
       varnames = NULL,
       drop.unused.levels,
       ...,
       lattice.options = NULL,
       default.scales,
       default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.splom"),
       subset = TRUE)
## S3 method for class formula
parallelplot(x,
         data,
         auto.key = FALSE,
         aspect = "fill",
         between = list(x = 0.5, y = 0.5),
         panel = lattice.getOption("panel.parallel"),
         prepanel,
         scales,
         strip,
         groups,
         xlab = NULL,
         xlim,
         ylab = NULL,
         ylim,
         varnames = NULL,
         horizontal.axis = TRUE,
         drop.unused.levels,
         ...,
         lattice.options = NULL,
         default.scales,
         default.prepanel = lattice.getOption("prepanel.default.parallel"),
         subset = TRUE)

## S3 method for class data.frame
splom(x, data = NULL, ..., groups = NULL, subset = TRUE)
## S3 method for class matrix
splom(x, data = NULL, ..., groups = NULL, subset = TRUE)

## S3 method for class matrix
parallelplot(x, data = NULL, ..., groups = NULL, subset = TRUE)
## S3 method for class data.frame
parallelplot(x, data = NULL, ..., groups = NULL, subset = TRUE)
```

Arguments

x	The object on which method dispatch is carried out. For the "formula" method, a formula describing the structure of the plot, which should be of the form ~ x | g1 * g2 * ..., where x is a data frame or matrix. Each of g1,g2,... must be either factors or shingles. The conditioning variables g1, g2, ... may be omitted. For the data.frame methods, a data frame.
data	For the formula methods, an optional data frame in which variables in the for-

mula (as well as groups and subset, if any) are to be evaluated.

aspect — aspect ratio of each panel (and subpanel), square by default for splom.

between — to avoid confusion between panels and subpanels, the default is to show the panels of a splom plot with space between them.

panel — For parallelplot, this has the usual interpretation, i.e., a function that creates the display within each panel.

For splom, the terminology is slightly complicated. The role played by the panel function in most other high-level functions is played here by the superpanel function, which is responsible for the display for each conditional data subset. panel is simply an argument to the default superpanel function panel.pairs, and is passed on to it unchanged. It is used there to create each pairwise display. See panel.pairs for more useful options.

superpanel — function that sets up the splom display, by default as a scatterplot matrix.

pscales — a numeric value or a list, meant to be a less functional substitute for the scales argument in xyplot etc. This argument is passed to the superpanel function, and is handled by the default superpanel function panel.pairs. The help page for the latter documents this argument in more detail.

varnames — A character or expression vector or giving names to be used for the variables in x. By default, the column names of x.

horizontal.axis — logical indicating whether the parallel axes should be laid out horizontally (TRUE) or vertically (FALSE).

auto.key, prepanel, scales, strip, groups, xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim, drop.unused.levels, lattice.c — See xyplot

default.prepanel — Fallback prepanel function. See xyplot.

... — Further arguments. See corresponding entry in xyplot for non-trivial details.

Details

splom produces Scatter Plot Matrices. The role usually played by panel is taken over by superpanel, which takes a data frame subset and is responsible for plotting it. It is called with the coordinate system set up to have both x- and y-limits from 0.5 to ncol(z) + 0.5. The only built-in option currently available is panel.pairs, which calls a further panel function for each pair (i, j) of variables in z inside a rectangle of unit width and height centered at c(i, j) (see panel.pairs for details).

Many of the finer customizations usually done via arguments to high level function like xyplot are instead done by panel.pairs for splom. These include control of axis limits, tick locations and prepanel calcultions. If you are trying to fine-tune your splom plot, definitely look at the panel.pairs help page. The scales argument is usually not very useful in splom, and trying to change it may have undesired effects.

parallelplot draws Parallel Coordinate Plots. (Difficult to describe, see example.)

These and all other high level Trellis functions have several arguments in common. These are extensively documented only in the help page for xyplot, which should be consulted to learn more detailed usage.

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot, Lattice, panel.pairs, panel.parallel.

Examples

```
super.sym <- trellis.par.get("superpose.symbol")
splom(~iris[1:4], groups = Species, data = iris,
      panel = panel.superpose,
      key = list(title = "Three Varieties of Iris",
                 columns = 3,
                 points = list(pch = super.sym$pch[1:3],
                 col = super.sym$col[1:3]),
                 text = list(c("Setosa", "Versicolor", "Virginica"))))
splom(~iris[1:3]|Species, data = iris,
      layout=c(2,2), pscales = 0,
      varnames = c("Sepal\nLength", "Sepal\nWidth", "Petal\nLength"),
      page = function(...) {
          ltext(x = seq(.6, .8, length.out = 4),
                y = seq(.9, .6, length.out = 4),
                labels = c("Three", "Varieties", "of", "Iris"),
                cex = 2)
      })
parallelplot(~iris[1:4] | Species, iris)
parallelplot(~iris[1:4], iris, groups = Species,
             horizontal.axis = FALSE, scales = list(x = list(rot = 90)))
```

B_09_tmd *Tukey Mean-Difference Plot*

Description

tmd Creates Tukey Mean-Difference Plots from a trellis object returned by xyplot, qq or qqmath. The prepanel and panel functions are used as appropriate. The formula method for tmd is provided for convenience, and simply calls tmd on the object created by calling xyplot on that formula.

Usage

```
tmd(object, ...)

## S3 method for class trellis
tmd(object,
    xlab = "mean",
    ylab = "difference",
    panel,
    prepanel,
    ...)

prepanel.tmd.qqmath(x,
```

```
              f.value = NULL,
              distribution = qnorm,
              qtype = 7,
              groups = NULL,
              subscripts, ...)
panel.tmd.qqmath(x,
              f.value = NULL,
              distribution = qnorm,
              qtype = 7,
              groups = NULL,
              subscripts, ...,
              identifier = "tmd")
panel.tmd.default(x, y, groups = NULL, ...,
                  identifier = "tmd")
prepanel.tmd.default(x, y, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	An object of class `"trellis"` returned by `xyplot`, `qq` or `qqmath`.
`xlab`	x label
`ylab`	y label
`panel`	panel function to be used. See details below.
`prepanel`	prepanel function. See details below.
`f.value, distribution, qtype`	see `panel.qqmath`.
`groups, subscripts`	see `xyplot`.
`x, y`	data as passed to panel functions in original call.
`...`	other arguments
`identifier`	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

The Tukey Mean-difference plot is produced by modifying the (x,y) values of each panel as follows: the new coordinates are given by `x=(x+y)/2` and `y=y-x`, which are then plotted. The default panel function(s) add a reference line at `y=0` as well.

`tmd` acts on the a `"trellis"` object, not on the actual plot this object would have produced. As such, it only uses the arguments supplied to the panel function in the original call, and completely ignores what the original panel function might have done with this data. `tmd` uses these panel arguments to set up its own scales (using its `prepanel` argument) and display (using `panel`). It is thus important to provide suitable prepanel and panel functions to `tmd` depending on the original call.

Such functions currently exist for `xyplot`, `qq` (the ones with `default` in their name) and `qqmath`, as listed in the usage section above. These assume the default displays for the corresponding high-level call. If unspecified, the `prepanel` and `panel` arguments default to suitable choices.

`tmd` uses the `update` method for `"trellis"` objects, which processes all extra arguments supplied to `tmd`.

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

qq, qqmath, xyplot, Lattice

Examples

```
tmd(qqmath(~height | voice.part, data = singer))
```

B_10_rfs *Residual and Fit Spread Plots*

Description

Plots fitted values and residuals (via qqmath) on a common scale for any object that has methods for fitted values and residuals.

Usage

```
rfs(model, layout=c(2, 1), xlab="f-value", ylab=NULL,
    distribution = qunif,
    panel, prepanel, strip, ...)
```

Arguments

model	a fitted model object with methods fitted.values and residuals. Can be the value returned by oneway
layout	default layout is c(2,1)
xlab	defaults to "f.value"
distribution	the distribution function to be used for qqmath
ylab, panel, prepanel, strip	See xyplot
...	other arguments, passed on to qqmath.

Value

An object of class "trellis". The update method can be used to update components of the object and the print method (usually called by default) will plot it on an appropriate plotting device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

oneway, qqmath, xyplot, Lattice

Examples

```
rfs(oneway(height ~ voice.part, data = singer, spread = 1), aspect = 1)
```

B_11_oneway *Fit One-way Model*

Description

Fits a One-way model to univariate data grouped by a factor, the result often being displayed using `rfs`

Usage

```
oneway(formula, data, location=mean, spread=function(x) sqrt(var(x)))
```

Arguments

`formula`	formula of the form `y ~ x` where `y` is the numeric response and `x` is the grouping factor
`data`	data frame in which the model is to be evaluated
`location`	function or numeric giving the location statistic to be used for centering the observations, e.g. `median`, 0 (to avoid centering).
`spread`	function or numeric giving the spread statistic to be used for scaling the observations, e.g. `sd`, 1 (to avoid scaling).

Value

A list with components

`location`	vector of locations for each group.
`spread`	vector of spreads for each group.
`fitted.values`	vector of locations for each observation.
`residuals`	residuals (`y - fitted.values`).
`scaled.residuals`	residuals scaled by `spread` for their group

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

rfs, Lattice

C_01_trellis.device *Initializing Trellis Displays*

Description

Initialization of a display device with appropriate graphical parameters.

Usage

```
trellis.device(device = getOption("device"),
               color = !(dev.name == "postscript"),
               theme = lattice.getOption("default.theme"),
               new = TRUE,
               retain = FALSE,
               ...)

standard.theme(name, color)
canonical.theme(name, color)
col.whitebg()
```

Arguments

device	function (or the name of one as a character string) that starts a device. Admissible values depend on the platform and how was compiled (see Devices), but usually "pdf", "postscript", "png", "jpeg" and at least one of "X11", "windows" and "quartz" will be available.
color	logical, whether the initial settings should be color or black and white. Defaults to FALSE for postscript devices, TRUE otherwise. Note that this only applies to the initial choice of colors, which can be overridden using theme or subsequent calls to trellis.par.set (and by arguments supplied directly in high level calls for some settings).
theme	list of components that changes the settings of the device opened, or, a function that when called produces such a list. The function name can be supplied as a quoted string. These settings are only used to modify the default settings (determined by other arguments), and need not contain all possible parameters. A possible use of this argument is to change the default settings by specifying lattice.options(default.theme = "col.whitebg"). For back-compatibility, this is initially (when lattice is loaded) set to getOption(lattice.theme). If theme is a function, it will not be supplied any arguments, however, it is guaranteed that a device will already be open when it is called, so one may use .Device inside the function to ascertain what device has been opened.
new	logical flag indicating whether a new device should be started. If FALSE, the options for the current device are changed to the defaults determined by the other arguments.
retain	logical. If TRUE and a setting for this device already exists, then that is used instead of the defaults for this device. By default, pre-existing settings are overwritten (and lost).

name	name of the device for which the setting is required, as returned by .Device
...	additional parameters to be passed to the device function, most commonly file for non-screen devices, as well as height, width, etc. See the help file for individual devices for admissible arguments.

Details

Trellis Graphics functions obtain the default values of various graphical parameters (colors, line types, fonts, etc.) from a customizable "settings" list. This functionality is analogous to par for standard graphics and, together with lattice.options, mostly supplants it (par settings are mostly ignored by Lattice). Unlike par, Trellis settings can be controlled separately for each different device type (but not concurrently for different instances of the same device). standard.theme and col.whitebg produce predefined settings (a.k.a. themes), while trellis.device provides a high level interface to control which "theme" will be in effect when a new device is opened. trellis.device is called automatically when a "trellis" object is plotted, and the defaults can be used to provide sufficient control, so in a properly configured system it is rarely necessary for the user to call trellis.device explicitly.

The standard.theme function is intended to provide device specific settings (e.g. light colors on a grey background for screen devices, dark colors or black and white for print devices) which were used as defaults prior to 2.3.0. However, these defaults are not always appropriate, due to the variety of platforms and hardware settings on which is used, as well as the fact that a plot created on a particular device may be subsequently used in many different ways. For this reason, a "safe" default is used for all devices from 2.3.0 onwards. The old behaviour can be reinstated by setting standard.theme as the default theme argument, e.g. by putting lattice.options(default.theme = "standard.theme") in a startup script (see the entry for theme above for details).

Value

standard.theme returns a list of components defining graphical parameter settings for Lattice displays. It is used internally in trellis.device, and can also be used as the theme argument to trellis.par.set, or even as theme in trellis.device to use the defaults for another device. canonical.theme is an alias for standard.theme.

col.whitebg returns a similar (but smaller) list that is suitable as the theme argument to trellis.device and trellis.par.set. It contains settings values which provide colors suitable for plotting on a white background. Note that the name col.whitebg is somewhat of a misnomer, since it actually sets the background to transparent rather than white.

Note

Earlier versions of trellis.device had a bg argument to set the background color, but this is no longer supported. If supplied, the bg argument will be passed on to the device function; however, this will have no effect on the Trellis settings. It is rarely meaningful to change the background alone; if you feel the need to change the background, consider using the theme argument instead.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Sarkar, Deepayan (2008) *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer. http://lmdvr.r-forge.r-project.org/

See Also

Lattice for an overview of the lattice package.

Devices for valid choices of device on your platform.

trellis.par.get and trellis.par.set can be used to query and modify the settings *after* a device has been initialized. The par.settings argument to high level functions, described in xyplot, can be used to attach transient settings to a "trellis" object.

C_02_trellis.par.get *Graphical Parameters for Trellis Displays*

Description

Functions used to query, display and modify graphical parameters for fine control of Trellis displays. Modifications are made to the settings for the currently active device only.

Usage

```
trellis.par.set(name, value, ..., theme, warn = TRUE, strict = FALSE)
trellis.par.get(name = NULL)
show.settings(x = NULL)
```

Arguments

name	A character string giving the name of a component. If unspecified in trellis.par.get(), the return value is a named list containing all the current settings (this can be used to get the valid values for name).
value	a list giving the desired value of the component. Components that are already defined as part of the current settings but are not mentioned in value will remain unchanged.
theme	a list decribing how to change the settings, similar to what is returned by trellis.par.get(). This is purely for convenience, allowing multiple calls to trellis.par.set to be condensed into one. The name of each component must be a valid name as described above, with the corresponding value a valid value as described above. As in trellis.device, theme can also be a function that produces such a list when called. The function name can be supplied as a quoted string.
...	Multiple settings can be specified in name = value form. Equivalent to calling with theme = list(...)
warn	A logical flag, indicating whether a warning should be issued when trellis.par.get is called when no graphics device is open.
strict	Usually a logical flag, indicating whether the value should be interpreted strictly. Usually, assignment of value to the corresponding named component is fuzzy in the sense that sub-components that are absent from value but not currently NULL are retained. By specifying strict = TRUE, such values will be removed. An even stricter interpretation is allowed by specifying strict as a numeric value larger than 1. In that case, top-level components not specified in the call will also be removed. This is primarily for internal use.

x optional list of components that change the settings (any valid value of theme). These are used to modify the current settings (obtained by trellis.par.get) before they are displayed.

Details

The various graphical parameters (color, line type, background etc) that control the look and feel of Trellis displays are highly customizable. Also, R can produce graphics on a number of devices, and it is expected that a different set of parameters would be more suited to different devices. These parameters are stored internally in a variable named lattice.theme, which is a list whose components define settings for particular devices. The components are idenified by the name of the device they represent (as obtained by .Device), and are created as and when new devices are opened for the first time using trellis.device (or Lattice plots are drawn on a device for the first time in that session).

The initial settings for each device defaults to values appropriate for that device. In practice, this boils down to three distinct settings, one for screen devices like x11 and windows, one for black and white plots (mostly useful for postscript) and one for color printers (color postcript, pdf).

Once a device is open, its settings can be modified. When another instance of the same device is opened later using trellis.device, the settings for that device are reset to its defaults, unless otherwise specified in the call to trellis.device. But settings for different devices are treated separately, i.e., opening a postscript device will not alter the x11 settings, which will remain in effect whenever an x11 device is active.

The functions trellis.par.* are meant to be interfaces to the global settings. They always apply on the settings for the currently ACTIVE device.

trellis.par.get, called without any arguments, returns the full list of settings for the active device. With the name argument present, it returns that component only. trellis.par.get sets the value of the name component of the current active device settings to value.

trellis.par.get is usually used inside trellis functions to get graphical parameters before plotting. Modifications by users via trellis.par.set is traditionally done as follows:

```
add.line <- trellis.par.get("add.line")
add.line$col <- "red"
trellis.par.set("add.line", add.line)
```

More convenient (but not S compatible) ways to do this are

```
trellis.par.set(list(add.line = list(col = "red")))
```

and

```
trellis.par.set(add.line = list(col = "red"))
```

The actual list of the components in trellis.settings has not been finalized, so I'm not attempting to list them here. The current value can be obtained by print(trellis.par.get()). Most names should be self-explanatory.

show.settings provides a graphical display summarizing some of the values in the current settings.

Value

trellis.par.get returns a list giving parameters for that component. If name is missing, it returns the full list.

Most of the settings are graphical parameters that control various elements of a lattice plot. For details, see the examples below. The more unusual settings are described here.

grid.pars Grid graphical parameters that are in effect globally unless overridden by specific settings.

fontsize A list of two components (each a numeric scalar), `text` and `points`, for text and symbols respectively.

clip A list of two components (each a character string, either `"on"` or `"off"`), `panel` and `strip`.

axis.components

layout.heights

layout.widths

Note

In some ways, `trellis.par.get` and `trellis.par.set` together are a replacement for the `par` function used in traditional R graphics. In particular, changing `par` settings has little (if any) effect on lattice output. Since lattice plots are implemented using Grid graphics, its parameter system *does* have an effect unless overridden by a suitable lattice parameter setting. Such parameters can be specified as part of a lattice theme by including them in the `grid.pars` component (see `gpar` for a list of valid parameter names).

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

`trellis.device`, `Lattice`, `gpar`

Examples

```
show.settings()

tp <- trellis.par.get()

unusual <- c("grid.pars", "fontsize", "clip", "axis.components",
             "layout.heights", "layout.widths")

for (u in unusual) tp[[u]] <- NULL
names.tp <- lapply(tp, names)
unames <- sort(unique(unlist(names.tp)))
ans <- matrix(0, nrow = length(names.tp), ncol = length(unames))
rownames(ans) <- names(names.tp)
colnames(ans) <- unames
for (i in seq(along = names.tp))
    ans[i, ] <- as.numeric(unames %in% names.tp[[i]])
ans <- ans[, order(-colSums(ans))]
ans <- ans[order(rowSums(ans)), ]
ans[ans == 0] <- NA

levelplot(t(ans), colorkey = FALSE,
          scales = list(x = list(rot = 90)),
          panel = function(x, y, z, ...) {
              panel.abline(v = unique(as.numeric(x)),
                           h = unique(as.numeric(y)),
                           col = "darkgrey")
              panel.xyplot(x, y, pch = 16 * z, ...)
```

```
},
xlab = "Graphical parameters",
ylab = "Setting names")
```

C_03_simpleTheme *Function to generate a simple theme*

Description

Simple interface to generate a list appropriate as a theme, typically used as the par.settings argument in a high level call

Usage

```
simpleTheme(col, alpha,
            cex, pch, lty, lwd, font, fill, border,
            col.points, col.line,
            alpha.points, alpha.line)
```

Arguments

col, col.points, col.line	A color specification. col is used for components "plot.symbol", "plot.line", "plot.polygon", "superpose.symbol", "superpose.line", and "superpose.polygon". col.points overrides col, but is used only for "plot.symbol" and "superpose.symbol". Similarly, col.line overrides col for "plot.line" and "superpose.line". The arguments can be vectors, but only the first component is used for scalar targets (i.e., the ones without "superpose" in their name).
alpha, alpha.points, alpha.line	A numeric alpha transparency specification. The same rules as col, etc., apply.
cex, pch, font	Parameters for points. Applicable for components plot.symbol (for which only the first component is used) and superpose.symbol (for which the arguments can be vectors).
lty, lwd	Parameters for lines. Applicable for components plot.line (for which only the first component is used) and superpose.line (for which the arguments can be vectors).
fill	fill color, applicable for components plot.symbol, plot.polygon, superpose.symbol, and superpose.polygon.
border	border color, applicable for components plot.polygon and superpose.polygon.

Details

The appearance of a lattice display depends partly on the "theme" active when the display is plotted (see trellis.device for details). This theme is used to obtain defaults for various graphical parameters, and in particular, the auto.key argument works on the premise that the same source is used for both the actual graphical encoding and the legend. The easiest way to specify custom settings for a particular display is to use the par.settings argument, which is usually tedious to

construct as it is a nested list. The simpleTheme function can be used in such situations as a wrapper that generates a suitable list given parameters in simple name=value form, with the nesting made implicit. This is less flexible, but straightforward and sufficient in most situations.

Value

A list that would work as the theme argument to trellis.device and trellis.par.set, or as the par.settings argument to any high level lattice function such as xyplot.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>, based on a suggestion from John Maindonald.

See Also

trellis.device, xyplot, Lattice

Examples

```
str(simpleTheme(pch = 16))

dotplot(variety ~ yield | site, data = barley, groups = year,
        auto.key = list(space = "right"),
        par.settings = simpleTheme(pch = 16),
        xlab = "Barley Yield (bushels/acre) ",
        aspect=0.5, layout = c(1,6))
```

C_04_lattice.options *Low-level Options Controlling Behaviour of Lattice*

Description

Functions to handle settings used by lattice. Their main purpose is to make code maintainance easier, and users normally should not need to use these functions. However, fine control at this level maybe useful in certain cases.

Usage

```
lattice.options(...)
lattice.getOption(name)
```

Arguments

name	character giving the name of a setting
...	new options can be defined, or existing ones modified, using one or more arguments of the form name = value or by passing a list of such tagged values. Existing values can be retrieved by supplying the names (as character strings) of the components as unnamed arguments.

Details

These functions are modeled on `options` and `getOption`, and behave similarly for the most part. Some of the available components are documented here, but not all. The purpose of the ones not documented are either fairly obvious, or not of interest to the end-user.

`panel.error` A function, or `NULL`. If the former, every call to the panel function will be wrapped inside `tryCatch` with the specified function as an error handler. The default is to use the `panel.error` function. This prevents the plot from failing due to errors in a single panel, and leaving the grid operations in an unmanageable state. If set to `NULL`, errors in panel functions will not be caught using `tryCatch`.

`save.object` Logical flag indicating whether a `"trellis"` object should be saved when plotted for subsequent retrieval and further manipulation. Defaults to `TRUE`.

`layout.widths`, `layout.heights` Controls details of the default space allocation in the grid layout created in the course of plotting a `"trellis"` object. Each named component is a list of arguments to the **grid** function `unit` (`x`, `units`, and optionally `data`).

Usually not of interest to the end-user, who should instead use the similiarly named component in the graphical settings, modifiable using `trellis.par.set`.

`drop.unused.levels` A list of two components named `cond` and `data`, both logical flags. The flags indicate whether the unused levels of factors (conditioning variables and primary variables respectively) will be dropped, which is usually relevant when a subsetting operation is performed or an 'interaction' is created. See `xyplot` for more details. Note that this does not control dropping of levels of the 'groups' argument.

`legend.bbox` A character string, either `"full"` or `"panel"`. This determines the interpretation of `x` and `y` when `space="inside"` in `key` (determining the legend; see `xyplot`): either the full figure region ('"full"'), or just the region that bounds the panels and strips ('"panel"').

`default.args` A list giving default values for various standard arguments: `as.table`, `aspect`, `between`, `skip`, `strip`, `xscale.components`, `yscale.components`, and `axis`.

`highlight.gpar` A list giving arguments to `gpar` used to highlight a viewport chosen using `trellis.focus`.

`banking` The banking function. See `banking`.

`axis.padding` List with components named `"numeric"` and `"factor"`, both scalar numbers. Panel limits are extended by this amount, to provide padding for numeric and factor scales respectively. The value for numeric is multiplicative, whereas factor is additive.

`skip.boundary.labels` Numeric scalar between 0 and 1. Tick marks that are too close to the limits are not drawn unless explicitly requested. The limits are contracted by this proportion, and anything outside is skipped.

`interaction.sep` The separator for creating interactions with the extended formula interface (see `xyplot`).

`axis.units` List determining default units for axis components. Should not be of interest to the end-user.

In addition, there is an option for the default prepanel and panel function for each high-level function; e.g., `panel.xyplot` and `prepanel.default.xyplot` for `xyplot`. The options for the others have similarly patterned names.

Value

`lattice.getOption` returns the value of a single component, whereas `lattice.options` always returns a list with one or more named components. When changing the values of components, the old values of the modified components are returned by `lattice.options`. If called without any arguments, the full list is returned.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

options, trellis.device, trellis.par.get, Lattice

Examples

```
names(lattice.options())
str(lattice.getOption("layout.widths"), max.level = 2)
```

C_05_print.trellis *Plot and Summarize Trellis Objects*

Description

The print and plot methods produce a graph from a "trellis" object. The print method is necessary for automatic plotting. plot method is essentially an alias, provided for convenience. The summary method gives a textual summary of the object. dim and dimnames describe the cross-tabulation induced by conditioning. panel.error is the default handler used when an error occurs while executing the panel function.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class trellis
plot(x, position, split,
     more = FALSE, newpage = TRUE,
     packet.panel = packet.panel.default,
     draw.in = NULL,
     panel.height = lattice.getOption("layout.heights")$panel,
     panel.width = lattice.getOption("layout.widths")$panel,
     save.object = lattice.getOption("save.object"),
     panel.error = lattice.getOption("panel.error"),
     prefix,
     ...)
## S3 method for class trellis
print(x, ...)

## S3 method for class trellis
summary(object, ...)

## S3 method for class trellis
dim(x)
## S3 method for class trellis
dimnames(x)

panel.error(e)
```

Arguments

x, object	an object of class "trellis"
position	a vector of 4 numbers, typically c(xmin, ymin, xmax, ymax) that give the lower-left and upper-right corners of a rectangle in which the Trellis plot of x is to be positioned. The coordinate system for this rectangle is [0-1] in both the x and y directions.
split	a vector of 4 integers, c(x,y,nx,ny) , that says to position the current plot at the x,y position in a regular array of nx by ny plots. (Note: this has origin at top left)
more	A logical specifying whether more plots will follow on this page.
newpage	A logical specifying whether the plot should be on a new page. This option is specific to lattice, and is useful for including lattice plots in an arbitrary grid viewport (see the details section).
packet.panel	a function that determines which packet (data subset) is plotted in which panel. Panels are always drawn in an order such that columns vary the fastest, then rows and then pages. This function determines, given the column, row and page and other relevant information, the packet (if any) which should be used in that panel. By default, the association is determnined by matching panel order with packet order, which is determined by varying the first conditioning variable the fastest, then the second, and so on. This association rule is encoded in the default, namely the function packet.panel.default, whose help page details the arguments supplied to whichever function is specified as the packet.panel argument.
draw.in	An optional (grid) viewport (used as the name argument in downViewport) in which the plot is to be drawn. If specified, the newpage argument is ignored. This feature is not well-tested.
panel.width, panel.height	lists with 2 components, that should be valid x and units arguments to unit() (the data argument cannot be specified currently, but can be considered for addition if needed). The resulting unit object will be the width/height of each panel in the Lattice plot. These arguments can be used to explicitly control the dimensions of the panel, rather than letting them expand to maximize available space. Vector widths are allowed, and can specify unequal lengths across rows or columns. Note that this option should not be used in conjunction with non-default values of the aspect argument in the original high level call (no error will be produced, but the resulting behaviour is undefined).
save.object	logical, specifying whether the object being printed is to be saved. The last object thus saved can be subsequently retrieved. This is an experimental feature that should allow access to a panel's data after the plot is done, making it possible to enhance the plot after the fact. This also allows the user to invoke the update method on the current plot, even if it was not assigned to a variable explicitly. For more details, see trellis.focus.
panel.error	a function, or a character string naming a function, that is to be executed when an error occurs during the execution of the panel function. The error is caught (using tryCatch) and supplied as the only argument to panel.error. The default behaviour (implemented as the panel.error function) is to print the corresponding error message in the panel and continue. To stop execution on error, use panel.error = stop.

Normal error recovery and debugging tools are unhelpful when tryCatch is used. tryCatch can be completely bypassed by setting panel.error to NULL.

prefix — A character string acting as a prefix identifying the plot of a "trellis" object, primarily used in constructing viewport and grob names, to distinguish similar viewports if a page contains multiple plots. The default is based on the serial number of the current plot on the current page (specifically, "plot_01", "plot_02", etc.). If supplied explicitly, this must be a valid symbol name (briefly, it must start with a letter or a period followed by a letter) and must not contain the grid path separator (currently "::").

e — an error condition caught by tryCatch

... — extra arguments, ignored by the print method. All arguments to the plot method are passed on to the print method.

Details

This is the default print method for objects of class "trellis", produced by calls to functions like xyplot, bwplot etc. It is usually called automatically when a trellis object is produced. It can also be called explicitly to control plot positioning by means of the arguments split and position.

When newpage = FALSE, the current grid viewport is treated as the plotting area, making it possible to embed a Lattice plot inside an arbitrary grid viewport. The draw.in argument provides an alternative mechanism that may be simpler to use.

The print method uses the information in x (the object to be printed) to produce a display using the Grid graphics engine. At the heart of the plot is a grid layout, of which the entries of most interest to the user are the ones containing the display panels.

Unlike in older versions of Lattice (and Grid), the grid display tree is retained after the plot is produced, making it possible to access individual viewport locations and make additions to the plot. For more details and a lattice level interface to these viewports, see trellis.focus.

Note

Unlike S-PLUS, trying to position a multipage display (using position and/or split) will mess things up.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, unit, update.trellis, trellis.focus, packet.panel.default

Examples

```
p11 <- histogram( ~ height | voice.part, data = singer, xlab="Height")
p12 <- densityplot( ~ height | voice.part, data = singer, xlab = "Height")
p2 <- histogram( ~ height, data = singer, xlab = "Height")


## simple positioning by split
print(p11, split=c(1,1,1,2), more=TRUE)
print(p2, split=c(1,2,1,2))
```

```
## Combining split and position:
print(p11, position = c(0,0,.75,.75), split=c(1,1,1,2), more=TRUE)
print(p12, position = c(0,0,.75,.75), split=c(1,2,1,2), more=TRUE)
print(p2, position = c(.5,.75,1,1), more=FALSE)

## Using seekViewport

## repeat same plot, with different polynomial fits in each panel
xyplot(Armed.Forces ~ Year, longley, index.cond = list(rep(1, 6)),
       layout = c(3, 2),
       panel = function(x, y, ...)
       {
           panel.xyplot(x, y, ...)
           fm <- lm(y ~ poly(x, panel.number()))
           llines(x, predict(fm))
       })

## Not run:
grid::seekViewport(trellis.vpname("panel", 1, 1))
cat("Click somewhere inside the first panel:\n")
ltext(grid::grid.locator(), lab = "linear")

## End(Not run)

grid::seekViewport(trellis.vpname("panel", 1, 1))
grid::grid.text("linear")

grid::seekViewport(trellis.vpname("panel", 2, 1))
grid::grid.text("quadratic")

grid::seekViewport(trellis.vpname("panel", 3, 1))
grid::grid.text("cubic")

grid::seekViewport(trellis.vpname("panel", 1, 2))
grid::grid.text("degree 4")

grid::seekViewport(trellis.vpname("panel", 2, 2))
grid::grid.text("degree 5")

grid::seekViewport(trellis.vpname("panel", 3, 2))
grid::grid.text("degree 6")
```

`C_06_update.trellis` *Retrieve and Update Trellis Object*

Description

Update method for objects of class `"trellis"`, and a way to retrieve the last printed trellis object (that was saved).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class trellis
update(object,
```

```
        panel,
        aspect,
        as.table,
        between,
        key,
        auto.key,
        legend,
        layout,
        main,
        page,
        par.strip.text,
        prepanel,
        scales,
        skip,
        strip,
        strip.left,
        sub,
        xlab,
        ylab,
        xlab.top,
        ylab.right,
        xlim,
        ylim,
        xscale.components,
        yscale.components,
        axis,
        par.settings,
        plot.args,
        lattice.options,
        index.cond,
        perm.cond,
        ...)

## S3 method for class trellis
t(x)

## S3 method for class trellis
x[i, j, ..., drop = FALSE]

trellis.last.object(..., prefix)
```

Arguments

`object, x`	The object to be updated, of class `"trellis"`.
`i, j`	indices to be used. Names are not currently allowed.
`drop`	logical, whether dimensions with only one level are to be dropped. Currently ignored, behaves as if it were `FALSE`.
`panel, aspect, as.table, between, key, auto.key, legend, layout, main, page, par.strip.text, pre`	arguments that will be used to update `object`. See details below.
`prefix`	A character string acting as a prefix identifying the plot of a `"trellis"` object. Only relevant when a particular page is occupied by more than one plot.

Defaults to the value appropriate for the last "trellis" object printed. See trellis.focus.

Details

All high level lattice functions such as xyplot produce an object of (S3) class "trellis", which is usually displayed by its print method. However, the object itself can be manipulated and modified to a large extent using the update method, and then re-displayed as needed.

Most arguments to high level functions can also be supplied to the update method as well, with some exceptions. Generally speaking, anything that would needs to change the data within each panel is a no-no (this includes the formula, data, groups, subscripts and subset). Everything else is technically game, though might not be implemented yet. If you find something missing that you wish to have, feel free to make a request.

Not all arguments accepted by a Lattice function are processed by update, but the ones listed above should work. The purpose of these arguments are described in the help page for xyplot. Any other argument is added to the list of arguments to be passed to the panel function. Because of their somewhat special nature, updates to objects produced by cloud and wireframe do not work very well yet.

The "[" method is a convenient shortcut for updating index.cond. The t method is a convenient shortcut for updating perm.cond in the special (but frequent) case where there are exactly two conditioning variables, when it has the effect of switching ('transposing') their order.

The print method for "trellis" objects optionally saves the object after printing it. If this feature is enabled, trellis.last.object can retrieve it. By default, the last object plotted is retrieved, but if multiple objects are plotted on the current page, then others can be retrieved using the appropriate prefix argument. If trellis.last.object is called with arguments, these are used to update the retrieved object before returning it.

Value

An object of class trellis, by default plotted by print.trellis. trellis.last.object returns NULL is no saved object is available.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

trellis.object, Lattice, xyplot

Examples

```
spots <- by(sunspots, gl(235, 12, labels = 1749:1983), mean)
old.options <- lattice.options(save.object = TRUE)
xyplot(spots ~ 1749:1983, xlab = "", type = "l",
       scales = list(x = list(alternating = 2)),
       main = "Average Yearly Sunspots")
update(trellis.last.object(), aspect = "xy")
trellis.last.object(xlab = "Year")
lattice.options(old.options)
```

C_07_shingles *shingles*

Description

Functions to handle shingles

Usage

```
shingle(x, intervals=sort(unique(x)))
equal.count(x, ...)
as.shingle(x)
is.shingle(x)

## S3 method for class shingle
plot(x, panel, xlab, ylab, ...)

## S3 method for class shingle
print(x, showValues = TRUE, ...)

## S3 method for class shingleLevel
as.character(x, ...)

## S3 method for class shingleLevel
print(x, ...)

## S3 method for class shingle
summary(object, showValues = FALSE, ...)



## S3 method for class shingle
x[subset, drop = FALSE]
as.factorOrShingle(x, subset, drop)
```

Arguments

x	numeric variable or R object, shingle in `plot.shingle` and `x[]`. An object (list of intervals) of class "shingleLevel" in `print.shingleLevel`
object	shingle object to be summarized
showValues	logical, whether to print the numeric part. If FALSE, only the intervals are printed
intervals	numeric vector or matrix with 2 columns
subset	logical vector
drop	whether redundant shingle levels are to be dropped
panel, xlab, ylab	standard Trellis arguments (see `xyplot`)
...	other arguments, passed down as appropriate. For example, extra arguments to `equal.count` are passed on to `co.intervals`. graphical parameters can be passed as arguments to the `plot` method.

Details

A shingle is a data structure used in Trellis, and is a generalization of factors to 'continuous' variables. It consists of a numeric vector along with some possibly overlapping intervals. These intervals are the 'levels' of the shingle. The `levels` and `nlevels` functions, usually applicable to factors, also work on shingles. The implementation of shingles is slightly different from S.

There are print methods for shingles, as well as for printing the result of `levels()` applied to a shingle. For use in labelling, the `as.character` method can be used to convert levels of a shingle to character strings.

`equal.count` converts `x` to a shingle using the equal count algorithm. This is essentially a wrapper around `co.intervals`. All arguments are passed to `co.intervals`.

`shingle` creates a shingle using the given `intervals`. If `intervals` is a vector, these are used to form 0 length intervals.

`as.shingle` returns `shingle(x)` if `x` is not a shingle.

`is.shingle` tests whether `x` is a shingle.

`plot.shingle` displays the ranges of shingles via rectangles. `print.shingle` and `summary.shingle` describe the shingle object.

Value

`x$intervals` for `levels.shingle(x)`, logical for `is.shingle`, an object of class `"trellis"` for `plot` (printed by default by `print.trellis`), and an object of class `"shingle"` for the others.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot, co.intervals, Lattice

Examples

```
z <- equal.count(rnorm(50))
plot(z)
print(z)
print(levels(z))
```

D_draw.colorkey *Produce a Colorkey for levelplot*

Description

Produces (and possibly draws) a Grid frame grob which is a colorkey that can be placed in other Grid plots. Used in levelplot

Usage

```
draw.colorkey(key, draw=FALSE, vp=NULL)
```

Arguments

key	A list determining the key. See documentation for levelplot, in particular the section describing the colorkey argument, for details.
draw	logical, whether the grob is to be drawn.
vp	viewport

Value

A Grid frame object (that inherits from "grob")

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot

D_draw.key *Produce a Legend or Key*

Description

Produces (and possibly draws) a Grid frame grob which is a legend (aka key) that can be placed in other Grid plots.

Usage

```
draw.key(key, draw=FALSE, vp=NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

key	A list determining the key. See documentation for xyplot, in particular the section describing the key argument, for details.
draw	logical, whether the grob is to be drawn.
vp	viewport
...	ignored

Value

A Grid frame object (that inherits from 'grob').

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot

D_level.colors *A function to compute false colors representing a numeric or categorical variable*

Description

Calculates false colors from a numeric variable (including factors, using their numeric codes) given a color scheme and breakpoints.

Usage

```
level.colors(x, at, col.regions, colors = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric or factor variable.
at	A numeric variable of breakpoints defining intervals along the range of x.
col.regions	A specification of the colors to be assigned to each interval defined by at. This could be either a vector of colors, or a function that produces a vector of colors when called with a single argument giving the number of colors. See details below.
colors	logical indicating whether colors should be computed and returned. If FALSE, only the indices representing which interval (among those defined by at) each value in x falls into is returned.
...	Extra arguments, ignored.

Details

If at has length n, then it defines n-1 intervals. Values of x outside the range of at are not assigned to an interval, and the return value is NA for such values.

Colors are chosen by assigning a color to each of the n-1 intervals. If col.regions is a palette function (such as topo.colors, or the result of calling colorRampPalette), it is called with n-1 as an argument to obtain the colors. Otherwise, if there are exactly n-1 colors in col.regions, these get assigned to the intervals. If there are fewer than n-1 colors, col.regions gets recycled. If there are more, a more or less equally spaced (along the length of col.regions) subset is chosen.

Value

A vector of the same length as x. Depending on the colors argument, this could be either a vector of colors (in a form usable by), or a vector of integer indices representing which interval the values of x fall in.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <deepayan.sarkar@r-project.org>

See Also

levelplot, colorRampPalette.

Examples

```
depth.col <-
    with(quakes,
         level.colors(depth, at = do.breaks(range(depth), 30),
                      col.regions = terrain.colors))


xyplot(lat ~ long | equal.count(stations), quakes,
       strip = strip.custom(var.name = "Stations"),
       colours = depth.col,
       panel = function(x, y, colours, subscripts, ...) {
           panel.xyplot(x, y, pch = 21, col = "transparent",
                        fill = colours[subscripts], ...)
       })
```

D_make.groups *Grouped data from multiple vectors*

Description

Combines two or more vectors, possibly of different lengths, producing a data frame with a second column indicating which of these vectors that row came from. This is mostly useful for getting data into a form suitable for use in high level Lattice functions.

Usage

```
make.groups(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	one or more vectors of the same type (coercion is attempted if not), or one or more data frames with similar columns, with possibly differing number of rows.

Value

When all the input arguments are vectors, a data frame with two columns

`data`	all the vectors supplied, concatenated
`which`	factor indicating which vector the corresponding `data` value came from

When all the input arguments are data frames, the result of `rbind` applied to them, along with an additional `which` column as described above.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

`Lattice`

Examples

```
sim.dat <-
    make.groups(uniform = runif(200),
                exponential = rexp(175),
                lognormal = rlnorm(150),
                normal = rnorm(125))
qqmath( ~ data | which, sim.dat, scales = list(y = "free"))
```

D_simpleKey *Function to generate a simple key*

Description

Simple interface to generate a list appropriate for `draw.key`

Usage

```
simpleKey(text, points = TRUE,
          rectangles = FALSE,
          lines = FALSE,
          col, cex, alpha, font,
          fontface, fontfamily,
          lineheight, ...)
```

Arguments

`text`	character or expression vector, to be used as labels for levels of the grouping variable
`points`	logical
`rectangles`	logical
`lines`	logical
`col, cex, alpha, font, fontface, fontfamily, lineheight`	Used as top-level components of the list produced, to be used for the text labels. Defaults to the values in `trellis.par.get("add.text")`
`...`	further arguments added to the list, eventually passed to `draw.key`

Details

A lattice plot can include a legend (key) if an appropriate list is specified as the `key` argument to a high level Lattice function such as `xyplot`. This key can be very flexible, but that flexibility comes at a cost: this list needs to be fairly complicated even in simple situations. `simpleKey` is designed as a useful shortcut in the common case of a key drawn in conjunction with a grouping variable, using the default graphical settings.

The `simpleKey` function produces a suitable `key` argument using a simpler interface. The resulting list will use the `text` argument as a text component, along with at most one set each of points, rectangles, and lines. The number of entries (rows) in the key will be the length of the `text` component. The graphical parameters for the additional components will be derived from the default graphical settings (wherein lies the simplification, as otherwise these would have to be provided explicitly).

Calling `simpleKey` directly is usually unnecessary. It is most commonly invoked (during the plotting of the `"trellis"` object) when the `auto.key` argument is supplied in a high-level plot with

a groups argument. In that case, the text argument of simpleKey defaults to levels(groups), and the defaults for the other arguments depend on the relevant high-level function. Note that these defaults can be overridden by supplying auto.key as a list containing the replacement values.

Value

A list that would work as the key argument to xyplot, etc.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, draw.key, trellis.par.get, and xyplot, specifically the entry for auto.key.

D_strip.default *Default Trellis Strip Function*

Description

strip.default is the function that draws the strips by default in Trellis plots. Users can write their own strip functions, but most commonly this involves calling strip.default with a slightly different arguments. strip.custom provides a convenient way to obtain new strip functions that differ from strip.default only in the default values of certain arguments.

Usage

```
strip.default(which.given,
              which.panel,
              var.name,
              factor.levels,
              shingle.intervals,
              strip.names = c(FALSE, TRUE),
              strip.levels = c(TRUE, FALSE),
              sep = " : ",
              style = 1,
              horizontal = TRUE,
              bg = trellis.par.get("strip.background")$col[which.given],
              fg = trellis.par.get("strip.shingle")$col[which.given],
              par.strip.text = trellis.par.get("add.text"))
strip.custom(...)
```

Arguments

which.given	integer index specifying which of the conditioning variables this strip corresponds to.
which.panel	vector of integers as long as the number of conditioning variables. The contents are indices specifying the current levels of each of the conditioning variables (thus, this would be unique for each distinct packet). This is identical to the return value of which.packet, which is a more accurate name.

`var.name` vector of character strings or expressions as long as the number of conditioning variables. The contents are interpreted as names for the conditioning variables. Whether they are shown on the strip depends on the values of `strip.names` and `style` (see below). By default, the names are shown for shingles, but not for factors.

`factor.levels` vector of character strings or expressions giving the levels of the conditioning variable currently being drawn. For more than one conditioning variable, this will vary with `which.given`. Whether these levels are shown on the strip depends on the values of `strip.levels` and `style` (see below). `factor.levels` may be specified for both factors and shingles (despite the name), but by default they are shown only for factors. If shown, the labels may optionally be abbreviated by specifying suitable components in `par.strip.text` (see `xyplot`)

`shingle.intervals` if the current strip corresponds to a shingle, this should be a 2-column matrix giving the levels of the shingle. (of the form that would be produced by **printing** `levels(shingle)`). Otherwise, it should be `NULL`

`strip.names` a logical vector of length 2, indicating whether or not the name of the conditioning variable that corresponds to the strip being drawn is to be written on the strip. The two components give the values for factors and shingles respectively.

This argument is ignored for a factor when `style` is not one of 1 and 3.

`strip.levels` a logical vector of length 2, indicating whether or not the level of the conditioning variable that corresponds to the strip being drawn is to be written on the strip. The two components give the values for factors and shingles respectively.

`sep` character or expression, serving as a separator if the name and level are both to be shown.

`style` integer, with values 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 currently supported, controlling how the current level of a factor is encoded. Ignored for shingles (actually, when `shingle.intervals` is non-null.

The best way to find out what effect the value of `style` has is to try them out. Here is a short description: for a style value of 1, the strip is colored in the background color with the strip text (as determined by other arguments) centered on it. A value of 3 is the same, except that a part of the strip is colored in the foreground color, indicating the current level of the factor. For styles 2 and 4, the part corresponding to the current level remains colored in the foreground color, however, for style = 2, the remaining part is not colored at all, whereas for 4, it is colored with the background color. For both these, the names of all the levels of the factor are placed on the strip from left to right. Styles 5 and 6 produce the same effect (they are subtly different in S, this implementation corresponds to 5), they are similar to style 1, except that the strip text is not centered, it is instead positioned according to the current level.

Note that unlike S-PLUS, the default value of `style` is 1. `strip.names` and `strip.levels` have no effect if `style` is not 1 or 3.

`horizontal` logical, specifying whether the labels etc should be horizontal. `horizontal=FALSE` is useful for strips on the left of panels using `strip.left=TRUE`

`par.strip.text` list with parameters controlling the text on each strip, with components `col`, `cex`, `font`, etc.

`bg` strip background color.

`fg` strip foreground color.

...	arguments to be passed on to strip.default, overriding whatever value it would have normally assumed

Details

default strip function for trellis functions. Useful mostly because of the style argument — non-default styles are often more informative, especially when the names of the levels of the factor x are small. Traditional use is as strip = function(...) strip.default(style=2,...), though this can be simplified by the use of strip.custom.

Value

strip.default is called for its side-effect, which is to draw a strip appropriate for multi-panel Trellis conditioning plots. strip.custom returns a function that is similar to strip.default, but with different defaults for the arguments specified in the call.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot, Lattice

Examples

```
## Traditional use
xyplot(Petal.Length ~ Petal.Width | Species, iris,
       strip = function(..., style) strip.default(..., style = 4))

## equivalent call using strip.custom
xyplot(Petal.Length ~ Petal.Width | Species, iris,
       strip = strip.custom(style = 4))

xyplot(Petal.Length ~ Petal.Width | Species, iris,
       strip = FALSE,
       strip.left = strip.custom(style = 4, horizontal = FALSE))
```

D_trellis.object *A Trellis Plot Object*

Description

This class of objects is returned by high level lattice functions, and is usually plotted by default by its print method.

Details

A trellis object, as returned by high level lattice functions like xyplot, is a list with the "class" attribute set to "trellis". Many of the components of this list are simply the arguments to the high level function that produced the object. Among them are: as.table, layout, page, panel, prepanel, main, sub, par.strip.text, strip, skip, xlab ylab, par.settings, lattice.options and plot.args. Some other typical components are:

`formula` the Trellis formula used in the call

`index.cond` list with index for each of the conditioning variables

`perm.cond` permutation of the order of the conditioning variables

`aspect.fill` logical, whether `aspect` is `"fill"`

`aspect.ratio` numeric, aspect ratio to be used if `aspect.fill` is `FALSE`

`call` call that generated the object.

`condlevels` list with levels of the conditioning variables

`legend` list describing the legend(s) to be drawn

`panel.args` a list as long as the number of panels, each element being a list itself, containing the arguments in named form to be passed to the panel function in that panel.

`panel.args.common` a list containing the arguments common to all the panel functions in `name=value` form

`x.scales` list describing x-scale, can consist of several other lists, paralleling panel.args, if x-relation is not `"same"`

`y.scales` list describing y-scale, similar to `x.scales`

`x.between` numeric vector of interpanel x-space

`y.between` numeric vector of interpanel y-space

`x.limits` numeric vector of length 2 or list, giving x-axis limits

`y.limits` similar to `x.limits`

`packet.sizes` array recording the number of observations in each packet

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, xyplot, print.trellis

E_interaction *Functions to Interact with Lattice Plots*

Description

The classic Trellis paradigm is to plot the whole object at once, without the possibility of interacting with it afterwards. However, by keeping track of the grid viewports where the panels and strips are drawn, it is possible to go back to them afterwards and enhance them one panel at a time. These functions provide convenient interfaces to help in this. Note that these are still experimental and the exact details may change in future.

Usage

```
panel.identify(x, y = NULL,
               subscripts = seq_along(x),
               labels = subscripts,
               n = length(x), offset = 0.5,
               threshold = 18, ## in points, roughly 0.25 inches
               panel.args = trellis.panelArgs(),
               ...)
panel.identify.qqmath(x, distribution, groups, subscripts, labels,
                      panel.args = trellis.panelArgs(),
                      ...)
panel.identify.cloud(x, y, z, subscripts,
                     perspective, distance,
                     xlim, ylim, zlim,
                     screen, R.mat, aspect, scales.3d,
                     ...,
                     panel.3d.identify,
                     n = length(subscripts),
                     offset = 0.5,
                     threshold = 18,
                     labels = subscripts,
                     panel.args = trellis.panelArgs())
panel.link.splom(threshold = 18, verbose = getOption("verbose"), ...)
panel.brush.splom(threshold = 18, verbose = getOption("verbose"), ...)


trellis.vpname(name = c("position", "split", "split.location", "toplevel",
                        "figure", "panel", "strip", "strip.left",
                        "legend", "legend.region", "main", "sub",
                        "xlab", "ylab", "xlab.top", "ylab.right", "page"),
               column, row,
               side = c("left", "top", "right", "bottom", "inside"),
               clip.off = FALSE, prefix)
trellis.grobname(name,
                 type = c("", "panel", "strip", "strip.left",
                          "key", "colorkey"),
                 group = 0,
                 which.given = lattice.getStatus("current.which.given",
                                                 prefix = prefix),
                 which.panel = lattice.getStatus("current.which.panel",
                                                 prefix = prefix),
                 column = lattice.getStatus("current.focus.column",
                                            prefix = prefix),
                 row = lattice.getStatus("current.focus.row",
                                         prefix = prefix),
                 prefix = lattice.getStatus("current.prefix"))
trellis.focus(name, column, row, side, clip.off,
              highlight = interactive(), ..., prefix,
              guess = TRUE, verbose = getOption("verbose"))
trellis.switchFocus(name, side, clip.off, highlight, ..., prefix)
trellis.unfocus()
trellis.panelArgs(x, packet.number)
```

Arguments

x, y, z	variables defining the contents of the panel. In the case of trellis.panelArgs, a "trellis" object.
n	the number of points to identify by default (overridden by a right click)
subscripts	an optional vector of integer indices associated with each point. See details below.
labels	an optional vector of labels associated with each point. Defaults to subscripts
distribution, groups	typical panel arguments of panel.qqmath. These will usually be obtained from panel.args
offset	the labels are printed either below, above, to the left or to the right of the identified point, depending on the relative location of the mouse click. The offset specifies (in "char" units) how far from the identified point the labels should be printed.
threshold	threshold in grid's "points" units. Points further than these from the mouse click position are not considered
panel.args	list that contains components names x (and usually y), to be used if x is missing. Typically, when called after trellis.focus, this would appropriately be the arguments passed to that panel.
perspective, distance, xlim, ylim, zlim, screen, R.mat, aspect, scales.3d	arguments as passed to panel.cloud. These are required to recompute the relevant three-dimensional projections in panel.identify.cloud.
panel.3d.identify	the function that is responsible for the actual interaction once the data rescaling and rotation computations have been done. By default, an internal function similar to panel.identify is used.
name	A character string indicating which viewport or grob we are looking for. Although these do not necessarily provide access to all viewports and grobs created by a lattice plot, they cover most of the ones that end-users may find interesting. trellis.vpname and trellis.focus deal with viewport names only, and only accept the values explicitly listed above. trellis.grobname is meant to create names for grobs, and can currently accept any value. If name, as well as column and row is missing in a call to trellis.focus, the user can click inside a panel (or an associated strip) to focus on that panel. Note however that this assumes equal width and height for each panel, and may not work when this is not true. When name is "panel", "strip", or "strip.left", column and row must also be specified. When name is "legend", side must also be specified.
column, row	integers, indicating position of the panel or strip that should be assigned focus in the Trellis layout. Rows are usually calculated from the bottom up, unless the plot was created with as.table=TRUE
guess	logical. If TRUE, and the display has only one panel, that panel will be automatically selected by a call to trellis.focus.
side	character string, relevant only for legends (i.e., when name="legend"), indicating their position. Partial specification is allowed, as long as it is unambiguous.
clip.off	logical, whether clipping should be off, relevant when name is "panel" or "strip". This is necessary if axes are to be drawn outside the panel or strip. Note that setting clip.off=FALSE does not necessarily mean that clipping is on; that is determined by conditions in effect during printing.

`type` A character string specifying whether the grob is specific to a particular panel or strip.

When `type` is `"panel"`, `"strip"`, or `"strip.left"`, information about the panel is added to the grob name.

`group` An integer specifying whether the grob is specific to a particular group within the plot.

When `group` is greater than zero, information about the group is added to the grob name.

`which.given, which.panel`
integers, indicating which conditional variable is being represented (within a strip) and the current levels of the conditional variables.

When `which.panel` has length greater than 1, and the `type` is `"strip"` or `"strip.left"`, information about the conditional variable is added to the grob name.

`prefix` A character string acting as a prefix identifying the plot of a `"trellis"` object, primarily used to distinguish otherwise equivalent viewports in different plots. This only becomes relevant when a particular page is occupied by more than one plot. Defaults to the value appropriate for the last `"trellis"` object printed, as determined by the `prefix` argument in `print.trellis`.

Users should not usually need to supply a value for this argument except to interact with an existing plot other than the one plotted last.

For `switchFocus`, ignored except when it does not match the prefix of the currently active plot, in which case an error occurs.

`highlight` logical, whether the viewport being assigned focus should be highlighted. For `trellis.focus`, the default is `TRUE` in interactive mode, and `trellis.switchFocus` by default preserves the setting currently active.

`packet.number` integer, which panel to get data from. See `packet.number` for details on how this is calculated

`verbose` whether details will be printed

`...` For `panel.identify.qqmath`, extra parameters are passed on to `panel.identify`. For `panel.identify`, extra arguments are treated as graphical parameters and are used for labelling. For `trellis.focus` and `trellis.switchFocus`, these are used (in combination with `lattice.options`) for highlighting the chosen viewport if so requested. Graphical parameters can be supplied for `panel.link.splom`.

Details

`panel.identify` is similar to `identify`. When called, it waits for the user to identify points (in the panel being drawn) via mouse clicks. Clicks other than left-clicks terminate the procedure. Although it is possible to call it as part of the panel function, it is more typical to use it to identify points after plotting the whole object, in which case a call to `trellis.focus` first is necessary.

`panel.link.splom` is meant for use with `splom`, and requires a panel to be chosen using `trellis.focus` before it is called. Clicking on a point causes that and the corresponding proections in other pairwise scatter plots to be highlighted. `panel.brush.splom` is a (misnamed) alias for `panel.link.splom`, retained for back-compatibility.

`panel.identify.qqmath` is a specialized wrapper meant for use with the display produced by `qqmath`. `panel.identify.qqmath` is a specialized wrapper meant for use with the display produced by `cloud`. It would be unusual to call them except in a context where default panel function arguments are available through `trellis.panelArgs` (see below).

One way in which panel.identify etc. are different from identify is in how it uses the subscripts argument. In general, when one identifies points in a panel, one wants to identify the origin in the data frame used to produce the plot, and not within that particular panel. This information is available to the panel function, but only in certain situations. One way to ensure that subscripts is available is to specify subscripts = TRUE in the high level call such as xyplot. If subscripts is not explicitly specified in the call to panel.identify, but is available in panel.args, then those values will be used. Otherwise, they default to seq_along(x). In either case, the final return value will be the subscripts that were marked.

The process of printing (plotting) a Trellis object builds up a grid layout with named viewports which can then be accessed to modify the plot further. While full flexibility can only be obtained by using grid functions directly, a few lattice functions are available for the more common tasks.

trellis.focus can be used to move to a particular panel or strip, identified by its position in the array of panels. It can also be used to focus on the viewport corresponding to one of the labels or a legend, though such usage would be less useful. The exact viewport is determined by the name along with the other arguments, not all of which are relevant for all names. Note that when more than one object is plotted on a page, trellis.focus will always go to the plot that was created last. For more flexibility, use grid functions directly (see note below).

After a successful call to trellis.focus, the desired viewport (typically panel or strip area) will be made the 'current' viewport (plotting area), which can then be enhanced by calls to standard lattice panel functions as well as grid functions.

It is quite common to have the layout of panels chosen when a "trellis" object is drawn, and not before then. Information on the layout (specifically, how many rows and columns, and which packet belongs in which position in this layout) is retained for the last "trellis" object plotted, and is available through trellis.currentLayout.

trellis.unfocus unsets the focus, and makes the top level viewport the current viewport.

trellis.switchFocus is a convenience function to switch from one viewport to another, while preserving the current row and column. Although the rows and columns only make sense for panels and strips, they would be preserved even when the user switches to some other viewport (where row/column is irrelevant) and then switches back.

Once a panel or strip is in focus, trellis.panelArgs can be used to retrieve the arguments that were available to the panel function at that position. In this case, it can be called without arguments as

```
trellis.panelArgs()
```

This usage is also allowed when a "trellis" object is being printed, e.g. inside the panel functions or the axis function (but not inside the prepanel function). trellis.panelArgs can also retrieve the panel arguments from any "trellis" object. Note that for this usage, one needs to specify the packet.number (as described under the panel entry in xyplot) and not the position in the layout, because a layout determines the panel only **after** the object has been printed.

It is usually not necessary to call trellis.vpname and trellis.grobname directly. However, they can be useful in generating appropriate names in a portable way when using grid functions to interact with the plots directly, as described in the note below.

Value

panel.identify returns an integer vector containing the subscripts of the identified points (see details above). The equivalent of identify with pos=TRUE is not yet implemented, but can be considered for addition if requested.

`trellis.panelArgs` returns a named list of arguments that were available to the panel function for the chosen panel.

`trellis.vpname` and `trellis.grobname` return character strings.

`trellis.focus` has a meaningful return value only if it has been used to focus on a panel interactively, in which case the return value is a list with components `col` and `row` giving the column and row positions respectively of the chosen panel, unless the choice was cancelled (by a right click), in which case the return value is `NULL`. If click was outside a panel, both `col` and `row` are set to 0.

Note

The viewports created by lattice are accessible to the user through `trellis.focus` as described above. Functions from the grid package can also be used directly. For example, `current.vpTree` can be used to inspect the current viewport tree and `seekViewport` or `downViewport` can be used to navigate to these viewports. For such usage, `trellis.vpname` and `trellis.grobname` provides a portable way to access the appropriate viewports and grobs by name.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>. Felix Andrews provided initial implementations of `panel.identify.qqmath` and support for focusing on panels interctively.

See Also

`identify`, `Lattice`, `print.trellis`, `trellis.currentLayout`, `current.vpTree`, `viewports`

Examples

```
## Not run:
xyplot(1:10 ~ 1:10)
trellis.focus("panel", 1, 1)
panel.identify()

## End(Not run)

xyplot(Petal.Length ~ Sepal.Length | Species, iris, layout = c(2, 2))
Sys.sleep(1)

trellis.focus("panel", 1, 1)
do.call("panel.lmline", trellis.panelArgs())
Sys.sleep(0.5)
trellis.unfocus()

trellis.focus("panel", 2, 1)
do.call("panel.lmline", trellis.panelArgs())
Sys.sleep(0.5)
trellis.unfocus()

trellis.focus("panel", 1, 2)
do.call("panel.lmline", trellis.panelArgs())
Sys.sleep(0.5)
trellis.unfocus()


## choosing loess smoothing parameter
```

```
p <- xyplot(dist ~ speed, cars)

panel.loessresid <-
    function(x = panel.args$x,
             y = panel.args$y,
             span,
             panel.args = trellis.panelArgs())
{
    fm <- loess(y ~ x, span = span)
    xgrid <- do.breaks(current.panel.limits()$xlim, 50)
    ygrid <- predict(fm, newdata = data.frame(x = xgrid))
    panel.lines(xgrid, ygrid)
    pred <- predict(fm)
    ## center residuals so that they fall inside panel
    resids <- y - pred + mean(y)
    fm.resid <- loess.smooth(x, resids, span = span)
    ##panel.points(x, resids, col = 1, pch = 4)
    panel.lines(fm.resid, col = 1)
}


spans <- c(0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8)
update(p, index.cond = list(rep(1, length(spans))))
panel.locs <- trellis.currentLayout()

i <- 1

for (row in 1:nrow(panel.locs))
    for (column in 1:ncol(panel.locs))
    if (panel.locs[row, column] > 0)
{
    trellis.focus("panel", row = row, column = column,
                  highlight = FALSE)
    panel.loessresid(span = spans[i])
    grid::grid.text(paste("span = ", spans[i]),
                    x = 0.25,
                    y = 0.75,
                    default.units = "npc")
    trellis.unfocus()
    i <- i + 1
}
```

F_1_panel.barchart *Default Panel Function for barchart*

Description

Default panel function for barchart.

Usage

```
panel.barchart(x, y, box.ratio = 1, box.width,
```

```
                horizontal = TRUE,
                origin = NULL, reference = TRUE,
                stack = FALSE,
                groups = NULL,
                col = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$col
                      else superpose.polygon$col,
                border = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$border
                         else superpose.polygon$border,
                lty = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$lty
                      else superpose.polygon$lty,
                lwd = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$lwd
                      else superpose.polygon$lwd,
                ..., identifier = "barchart")
```

Arguments

x	Extent of Bars. By default, bars start at left of panel, unless origin is specified, in which case they start there.
y	Horizontal location of bars. Possibly a factor.
box.ratio	Ratio of bar width to inter-bar space.
box.width	Thickness of bars in absolute units; overrides box.ratio. Useful for specifying thickness when the categorical variable is not a factor, as use of box.ratio alone cannot achieve a thickness greater than 1.
horizontal	Logical flag. If FALSE, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that the behaviours of x and y are switched. x is now the 'factor'. Interpretation of other arguments change accordingly. See documentation of bwplot for a fuller explanation.
origin	The origin for the bars. For grouped displays with stack = TRUE, this argument is ignored and the origin set to 0. Otherwise, defaults to NULL, in which case bars start at the left (or bottom) end of a panel. This choice is somewhat unfortuntate, as it can be misleading, but is the default for historical reasons. For tabular (or similar) data, origin = 0 is usually more appropriate; if not, one should reconsider the use of a bar chart in the first place (dot plots are often a good alternative).
reference	Logical, whether a reference line is to be drawn at the origin.
stack	logical, relevant when groups is non-null. If FALSE (the default), bars for different values of the grouping variable are drawn side by side, otherwise they are stacked.
groups	Optional grouping variable.
col, border, lty, lwd	Graphical parameters for the bars. By default, the trellis parameter plot.polygon is used if there is no grouping variable, otherwise superpose.polygon is used. col gives the fill color, border the border color, and lty and lwd the line type and width of the borders.
...	Extra arguments will be accepted but ignored.
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

A barchart is drawn in the panel. Note that most arguments controlling the display can be supplied to the high-level barchart call directly.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

barchart

Examples

```
barchart(yield ~ variety | site, data = barley,
         groups = year, layout = c(1,6), origin = 0,
         ylab = "Barley Yield (bushels/acre)",
         scales = list(x = list(abbreviate = TRUE,
                                minlength = 5)))
```

F_1_panel.bwplot *Default Panel Function for bwplot*

Description

This is the default panel function for bwplot.

Usage

```
panel.bwplot(x, y, box.ratio = 1,
             box.width = box.ratio / (1 + box.ratio),
             horizontal = TRUE,
             pch, col, alpha, cex,
             font, fontfamily, fontface,
             fill, varwidth = FALSE,
             notch = FALSE, notch.frac = 0.5,
             ...,
             levels.fos,
             stats = boxplot.stats,
             coef = 1.5,
             do.out = TRUE,
             identifier = "bwplot")
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric vector or factor. Boxplots drawn for each unique value of y (x) if horizontal is TRUE (FALSE)
box.ratio	ratio of box thickness to inter box space
box.width	thickness of box in absolute units; overrides box.ratio. Useful for specifying thickness when the categorical variable is not a factor, as use of box.ratio alone cannot achieve a thickness greater than 1.
horizontal	logical. If FALSE, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that the behaviours of x and y are switched. x is now the 'factor'. Interpretation of other arguments change accordingly. See documentation of bwplot for a fuller explanation.

`pch, col, alpha, cex, font, fontfamily, fontface`
: graphical parameters controlling the dot. `pch="|"` is treated specially, by replacing the dot with a line (similar to `boxplot`)

`fill`
: color to fill the boxplot

`varwidth`
: logical. If TRUE, widths of boxplots are proportional to the number of points used in creating it.

`notch`
: if `notch` is `TRUE`, a notch is drawn in each side of the boxes. If the notches of two plots do not overlap this is 'strong evidence' that the two medians differ (Chambers et al., 1983, p. 62). See `boxplot.stats` for the calculations used.

`notch.frac`
: numeric in (0,1). When `notch=TRUE`, the fraction of the box width that the notches should use.

`stats`
: a function, defaulting to `boxplot.stats`, that accepts a numeric vector and returns a list similar to the return value of `boxplot.stats`. The function must accept arguments `coef` and `do.out` even if they do not use them (a `...` argument is good enough). This function is used to determine the box and whisker plot.

`coef, do.out`
: passed to `stats`

`levels.fos`
: numeric values corresponding to positions of the factor or shingle variable. For internal use.

`...`
: further arguments, ignored.

`identifier`
: A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

Creates Box and Whisker plot of `x` for every level of `y` (or the other way round if `horizontal=FALSE`). By default, the actual boxplot statistics are calculated using `boxplot.stats`. Note that most arguments controlling the display can be supplied to the high-level `bwplot` call directly.

Although the graphical parameters for the dot representing the median can be controlled by optional arguments, many others can not. These parameters are obtained from the relevant settings parameters (`"box.rectangle"` for the box, `"box.umbrella"` for the whiskers and `"plot.symbol"` for the outliers).

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

`bwplot`, `boxplot.stats`

Examples

```
bwplot(voice.part ~ height, data = singer,
       xlab = "Height (inches)",
       panel = function(...) {
           panel.grid(v = -1, h = 0)
           panel.bwplot(...)
       },
       par.settings = list(plot.symbol = list(pch = 4)))
```

```
bwplot(voice.part ~ height, data = singer,
       xlab = "Height (inches)",
       notch = TRUE, pch = "|")
```

F_1_panel.cloud *Default Panel Function for cloud*

Description

These are default panel functions controlling cloud and wireframe displays.

Usage

```
panel.cloud(x, y, subscripts, z,
            groups = NULL,
            perspective = TRUE,
            distance = if (perspective) 0.2 else 0,
            xlim, ylim, zlim,
            panel.3d.cloud = "panel.3dscatter",
            panel.3d.wireframe = "panel.3dwire",
            screen = list(z = 40, x = -60),
            R.mat = diag(4), aspect = c(1, 1),
            par.box = NULL,
            xlab, ylab, zlab,
            xlab.default, ylab.default, zlab.default,
            scales.3d,
            proportion = 0.6,
            wireframe = FALSE,
            scpos,
            ...,
            at,
            identifier = "cloud")
panel.wireframe(...)
panel.3dscatter(x, y, z, rot.mat, distance,
                groups, type = "p",
                xlim, ylim, zlim,
                xlim.scaled, ylim.scaled, zlim.scaled,
                zero.scaled,
                col, col.point, col.line,
                lty, lwd, cex, pch,
                cross, ..., .scale = FALSE, subscripts,
                identifier = "3dscatter")
panel.3dwire(x, y, z, rot.mat = diag(4), distance,
             shade = FALSE,
             shade.colors.palette = trellis.par.get("shade.colors")$palette,
             light.source = c(0, 0, 1000),
             xlim, ylim, zlim,
             xlim.scaled,
```

```
            ylim.scaled,
            zlim.scaled,
            col = if (shade) "transparent" else "black",
            lty = 1, lwd = 1,
            alpha,
            col.groups = superpose.polygon$col,
            polynum = 100,
            ...,
            .scale = FALSE,
            drape = FALSE,
            at,
            col.regions = regions$col,
            alpha.regions = regions$alpha,
            identifier = "3dwire")
```

Arguments

x, y, z	numeric (or possibly factors) vectors representing the data to be displayed. The interpretation depends on the context. For panel.cloud these are essentially the same as the data passed to the high level plot (except if formula was a matrix, the appropriate x and y vectors are generated). By the time they are passed to panel.3dscatter and panel.3dwire, they have been appropriately subsetted (using subscripts) and scaled (to lie inside a bounding box, usually the [-0.5, 0.5] cube). Further, for panel.3dwire, x and y are shorter than z and represent the sorted locations defining a rectangular grid. Also in this case, z may be a matrix if the display is grouped, with each column representing one surface. In panel.cloud (called from wireframe) and panel.3dwire, x, y and z could also be matrices (of the same dimension) when they represent a 3-D surface parametrized on a 2-D grid.
subscripts	index specifying which points to draw. The same x, y and z values (representing the whole data) are passed to panel.cloud for each panel. subscripts specifies the subset of rows to be used for the particular panel.
groups	specification of a grouping variable, passed down from the high level functions.
perspective	logical, whether to plot a perspective view. Setting this to FALSE is equivalent to setting distance to 0
distance	numeric, between 0 and 1, controls amount of perspective. The distance of the viewing point from the origin (in the transformed coordinate system) is 1 / distance. This is described in a little more detail in the documentation for cloud
screen	A list determining the sequence of rotations to be applied to the data before being plotted. The initial position starts with the viewing point along the positive z-axis, and the x and y axes in the usual position. Each component of the list should be named one of "x", "y" or "z" (repetitions are allowed), with their values indicating the amount of rotation about that axis in degrees.
R.mat	initial rotation matrix in homogeneous coordinates, to be applied to the data before screen rotates the view further.
par.box	graphical parameters for box, namely, col, lty and lwd. By default obtained from the parameter box.3d.

`xlim, ylim, zlim`
: limits for the respective axes. As with other lattice functions, these could each be a numeric 2-vector or a character vector indicating levels of a factor.

`panel.3d.cloud, panel.3d.wireframe`
: functions that draw the data-driven part of the plot (as opposed to the bounding box and scales) in `cloud` and `wireframe`. This function is called after the 'back' of the bounding box is drawn, but before the 'front' is drawn.

  Any user-defined custom display would probably want to change these functions. The intention is to pass as much information to this function as might be useful (not all of which are used by the defaults). In particular, these functions can expect arguments called `xlim`, `ylim`, `zlim` which give the bounding box ranges in the original data scale and `xlim.scaled`, `ylim.scaled`, `zlim.scaled` which give the bounding box ranges in the transformed scale. More arguments can be considered on request.

`aspect`
: aspect as in `cloud`

`xlab, ylab, zlab`
: Labels, have to be lists. Typically the user will not manipulate these, but instead control this via arguments to `cloud` directly.

`xlab.default`
: for internal use

`ylab.default`
: for internal use

`zlab.default`
: for internal use

`scales.3d`
: list defining the scales

`proportion`
: numeric scalar, gives the length of arrows as a proportion of the sides

`scpos`
: A list with three components x, y and z (each a scalar integer), describing which of the 12 sides of the cube the scales should be drawn. The defaults should be OK. Valid values are x: 1, 3, 9, 11; y: 8, 5, 7, 6 and z: 4, 2, 10, 12. (See comments in the source code of `panel.cloud` to see the details of this enumeration.)

`wireframe`
: logical, indicating whether this is a wireframe plot

`drape`
: logical, whether the facets will be colored by height, in a manner similar to `levelplot`. This is ignored if `shade=TRUE`.

`at, col.regions, alpha.regions`
: deals with specification of colors when `drape = TRUE` in `wireframe`. `at` can be a numeric vector, `col.regions` a vector of colors, and `alpha.regions` a numeric scalar controlling transparency. The resulting behaviour is similar to `levelplot`, `at` giving the breakpoints along the z-axis where colors change, and the other two determining the colors of the facets that fall in between.

`rot.mat`
: 4x4 transformation matrix in homogeneous coordinates. This gives the rotation matrix combining the `screen` and `R.mat` arguments to `panel.cloud`

`type`
: Character vector, specifying type of cloud plot. Can include one or more of `"p"`, `"l"`, `"h"` or `"b"`. `"p"` and `"l"` mean 'points' and 'lines' respectively, and `"b"` means 'both'. `"h"` stands for 'histogram', and causes a line to be drawn from each point to the X-Y plane (i.e., the plane representing `z = 0`), or the lower (or upper) bounding box face, whichever is closer.

`xlim.scaled, ylim.scaled, zlim.scaled`
: axis limits (after being scaled to the bounding box)

`zero.scaled`
: z-axis location (after being scaled to the bounding box) of the X-Y plane in the original data scale, to which lines will be dropped (if within range) from each point when `type = "h"`

`cross` logical, defaults to `TRUE` if `pch = "+"`. `panel.3dscatter` can represent each point by a 3d 'cross' of sorts (it's much easier to understand looking at an example than from a description). This is different from the usual `pch` argument, and reflects the depth of the points and the orientation of the axes. This argument indicates whether this feature will be used.

This is useful for two reasons. It can be set to `FALSE` to use `"+"` as the plotting character in the regular sense. It can also be used to force this feature in grouped displays.

`shade` logical, indicating whether the surface is to be colored using an illumination model with a single light source

`shade.colors.palette`

a function (or the name of one) that is supposed to calculate the color of a facet when shading is being used. Three pieces of information are available to the function: first, the cosine of the angle between the incident light ray and the normal to the surface (representing foreshortening); second, the cosine of half the angle between the reflected ray and the viewing direction (useful for non-Lambertian surfaces); and third, the scaled (average) height of that particular facet with respect to the total plot z-axis limits.

All three numbers should be between 0 and 1. The `shade.colors.palette` function should return a valid color. The default function is obtained from the trellis settings.

`light.source` a 3-vector representing (in cartesian coordinates) the light source. This is relative to the viewing point being (0, 0, 1/distance) (along the positive z-axis), keeping in mind that all observations are bounded within the [-0.5, 0.5] cube

`polynum` quadrilateral faces are drawn in batches of `polynum` at a time. Drawing too few at a time increases the total number of calls to the underlying `grid.polygon` function, which affects speed. Trying to draw too many at once may be unnecessarily memory intensive. This argument controls the trade-off.

`col.groups` colors for different groups

`col, col.point, col.line, lty, lwd, cex, pch, alpha`

Graphical parameters. Some other arguments (such as `lex` for line width) may also be passed through the `...` argument.

`...` other parameters, passed down when appropriate

`.scale` Logical flag, indicating whether `x`, `y`, and `z` should be assumed to be in the original data scale and hence scaled before being plotted. `x`, `y`, and `z` are usually already scaled. However, setting `.scale=TRUE` may be helpful for calls to `panel.3dscatter` and `panel.3dwire` in user-supplied panel functions.

`identifier` A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

These functions together are responsible for the content drawn inside each panel in `cloud` and `wireframe`. `panel.wireframe` is a wrapper to `panel.cloud`, which does the actual work.

`panel.cloud` is responsible for drawing the content that does not depend on the data, namely, the bounding box, the arrows/scales, etc. At some point, depending on whether `wireframe` is TRUE, it calls either `panel.3d.wireframe` or `panel.3d.cloud`, which draws the data-driven part of the plot.

The arguments accepted by these two functions are different, since they have essentially different purposes. For cloud, the data is unstructured, and `x`, `y` and `z` are all passed to the `panel.3d.cloud`

function. For wireframe, on the other hand, x and y are increasing vectors with unique values, defining a rectangular grid. z must be a matrix with length(x) * length(y) rows, and as many columns as the number of groups.

panel.3dscatter is the default panel.3d.cloud function. It has a type argument similar to panel.xyplot, and supports grouped displays. It tries to honour depth ordering, i.e., points and lines closer to the camera are drawn later, overplotting more distant ones. (Of course there is no absolute ordering for line segments, so an ad hoc ordering is used. There is no hidden point removal.)

panel.3dwire is the default panel.3d.wireframe function. It calculates polygons corresponding to the facets one by one, but waits till it has collected information about polynum facets, and draws them all at once. This avoids the overhead of drawing grid.polygon repeatedly, speeding up the rendering considerably. If shade = TRUE, these attempt to color the surface as being illuminated from a light source at light.source. palette.shade is a simple function that provides the deafult shading colors

Multiple surfaces are drawn if groups is non-null in the call to wireframe, however, the algorithm is not sophisticated enough to render intersecting surfaces correctly.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

cloud, utilities.3d

F_1_panel.densityplot *Default Panel Function for densityplot*

Description

This is the default panel function for densityplot.

Usage

```
panel.densityplot(x, darg, plot.points = "jitter", ref = FALSE,
                  groups = NULL, weights = NULL,
                  jitter.amount, type, ...,
                  identifier = "density")
```

Arguments

x	data points for which density is to be estimated
darg	list of arguments to be passed to the density function. Typically, this should be a list with zero or more of the following components : bw, adjust, kernel, window, width, give.Rkern, n, from, to, cut, na.rm (see density for details)
plot.points	logical specifying whether or not the data points should be plotted along with the estimated density. Alternatively, a character string specifying how the points should be plotted. Meaningful values are "rug", in which case panel.rug is used to plot a 'rug', and "jitter", in which case the points are jittered vertically to better distinguish overlapping points.

ref	logical, whether to draw x-axis
groups	an optional grouping variable. If present, panel.superpose will be used instead to display each subgroup
weights	numeric vector of weights for the density calculations. If this is specified, the ... part must also include a subscripts argument that matches the weights to x.
jitter.amount	when plot.points="jitter", the value to use as the amount argument to jitter.
type	type argument used to plot points, if requested. This is not expected to be useful, it is available mostly to protect a type argument, if specified, from affecting the density curve.
...	extra graphical parameters. Note that additional arguments to panel.rug cannot be passed on through panel.densityplot.
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

densityplot, jitter

F_1_panel.dotplot *Default Panel Function for dotplot*

Description

Default panel function for dotplot.

Usage

```
panel.dotplot(x, y, horizontal = TRUE,
              pch, col, lty, lwd,
              col.line, levels.fos,
              groups = NULL,
              ...,
              identifier = "dotplot")
```

Arguments

x,y	variables to be plotted in the panel. Typically y is the 'factor'
horizontal	logical. If FALSE, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that the behaviours of x and y are switched. x is now the 'factor'. Interpretation of other arguments change accordingly. See documentation of bwplot for a fuller explanation.
pch, col, lty, lwd, col.line	graphical parameters
levels.fos	locations where reference lines will be drawn

groups	grouping variable (affects graphical parameters)
...	extra parameters, passed to panel.xyplot which is responsible for drawing the foreground points (panel.dotplot only draws the background reference lines).
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

Creates (possibly grouped) Dotplot of x against y or vice versa

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

dotplot

F_1_panel.histogram *Default Panel Function for histogram*

Description

This is the default panel function for histogram.

Usage

```
panel.histogram(x,
                breaks,
                equal.widths = TRUE,
                type = "density",
                nint = round(log2(length(x)) + 1),
                alpha, col, border, lty, lwd,
                ...,
                identifier = "histogram")
```

Arguments

x	The data points for which the histogram is to be drawn
breaks	The breakpoints for the histogram
equal.widths	logical used when breaks==NULL
type	Type of histogram, possible values being "percent", "density" and "count"
nint	Number of bins for the histogram
alpha, col, border, lty, lwd	graphical parameters for bars; defaults are obtained from the plot.polygon settings.
...	other arguments, passed to hist when deemed appropriate
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

histogram

F_1_panel.levelplot *Panel Functions for levelplot and contourplot*

Description

These are the default panel functions for levelplot and contourplot. Also documented is an alternative raster-based panel function for use with levelplot.

Usage

```
panel.levelplot(x, y, z,
                subscripts,
                at = pretty(z),
                shrink,
                labels,
                label.style = c("mixed", "flat", "align"),
                contour = FALSE,
                region = TRUE,
                col = add.line$col,
                lty = add.line$lty,
                lwd = add.line$lwd,
                border = "transparent",
                border.lty = 1,
                border.lwd = 0.1,
                ...,
                col.regions = regions$col,
                alpha.regions = regions$alpha,
                identifier = "levelplot")
panel.contourplot(...)

panel.levelplot.raster(x, y, z,
                       subscripts,
                       at = pretty(z),
                       ...,
                       col.regions = regions$col,
                       alpha.regions = regions$alpha,
                       interpolate = FALSE,
                       identifier = "levelplot")
```

Arguments

x, y, z	Variables defining the plot.
subscripts	Integer vector indicating what subset of x, y and z to draw.
at	Numeric vector giving breakpoints along the range of z. See levelplot for details.
shrink	Either a numeric vector of length 2 (meant to work as both x and y components), or a list with components x and y which are numeric vectors of length 2. This allows the rectangles to be scaled proportional to the z-value. The specification can be made separately for widths (x) and heights (y). The elements of the length 2 numeric vector gives the minimum and maximum proportion of shrinkage (corresponding to min and max of z).
labels	Either a logical scalar indicating whether the labels are to be drawn, or a character or expression vector giving the labels associated with the at values. Alternatively, labels can be a list with the following components: labels: a character or expression vector giving the labels. This can be omitted, in which case the defaults will be used. col, cex, alpha: graphical parameters for label texts fontfamily, fontface, font: font used for the labels
label.style	Controls how label positions and rotation are determined. A value of "flat" causes the label to be positioned where the contour is flattest, and the label is not rotated. A value of "align" causes the label to be drawn as far from the boundaries as possible, and the label is rotated to align with the contour at that point. The default is to mix these approaches, preferring the flattest location unless it is too close to the boundaries.
contour	A logical flag, specifying whether contour lines should be drawn.
region	A logical flag, specifying whether inter-contour regions should be filled with appropriately colored rectangles.
col, lty, lwd	Graphical parameters for contour lines.
border	Border color for rectangles used when region=TRUE.
border.lty, border.lwd	Graphical parameters for the border
...	Extra parameters.
col.regions	A vector of colors, or a function to produce a vecor of colors, to be used if region=TRUE. Each interval defined by at is assigned a color, so the number of colors actually used is one less than the length of at. See level.colors for details on how the color assignment is done.
alpha.regions	numeric scalar controlling transparency of facets
interpolate	logical, passed to grid.raster.
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

The same panel function is used for both levelplot and contourplot (which differ only in default values of some arguments). panel.contourplot is a simple wrapper to panel.levelplot.

When contour=TRUE, the contourLines function is used to calculate the contour lines.

panel.levelplot.raster is an alternative panel function that uses the raster drawing abilities in R 2.11.0 and higher (through grid.raster). It has fewer options (e.g., can only render data on an equispaced grid), but can be more efficient. When using panel.levelplot.raster, it may be desirable to render the color key in the same way. This is possible, but must be done separately; see levelplot for details.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

levelplot, level.colors, contourLines

Examples

```
require(grid)

levelplot(rnorm(10) ~ 1:10 + sort(runif(10)), panel = panel.levelplot)

suppressWarnings(plot(levelplot(rnorm(10) ~ 1:10 + sort(runif(10)),
                                panel = panel.levelplot.raster,
                                interpolate = TRUE)))

levelplot(volcano, panel = panel.levelplot.raster)

levelplot(volcano, panel = panel.levelplot.raster,
          col.regions = topo.colors, cuts = 30, interpolate = TRUE)
```

F_1_panel.pairs *Default Superpanel Function for splom*

Description

This is the default superpanel function for splom.

Usage

```
panel.pairs(z,
            panel = lattice.getOption("panel.splom"),
            lower.panel = panel,
            upper.panel = panel,
            diag.panel = "diag.panel.splom",
            as.matrix = FALSE,
            groups = NULL,
            panel.subscripts,
            subscripts,
            pscales = 5,
            prepanel.limits = scale.limits,
            varnames = colnames(z),
            varname.col, varname.cex, varname.font,
            varname.fontfamily, varname.fontface,
```

```
            axis.text.col, axis.text.cex, axis.text.font,
            axis.text.fontfamily, axis.text.fontface,
            axis.text.lineheight,
            axis.line.col, axis.line.lty, axis.line.lwd,
            axis.line.alpha, axis.line.tck,
            ...)
diag.panel.splom(x = NULL,
                 varname = NULL, limits, at = NULL, labels = NULL,
                 draw = TRUE, tick.number = 5,
                 varname.col, varname.cex,
                 varname.lineheight, varname.font,
                 varname.fontfamily, varname.fontface,
                 axis.text.col, axis.text.alpha,
                 axis.text.cex, axis.text.font,
                 axis.text.fontfamily, axis.text.fontface,
                 axis.text.lineheight,
                 axis.line.col, axis.line.alpha,
                 axis.line.lty, axis.line.lwd,
                 axis.line.tck,
                 ...)
```

Arguments

z	The data frame used for the plot.
panel, lower.panel, upper.panel	The panel function used to display each pair of variables. If specified, lower.panel and upper.panel are used for panels below and above the diagonal respectively. In addition to extra arguments not recognized by panel.pairs, the list of arguments passed to the panel function also includes arguments named i and j, with values indicating the row and column of the scatterplot matrix being plotted.
diag.panel	The panel function used for the diagonals. See arguments to diag.panel.splom to know what arguments this function is passed when called.
as.matrix	logical. If TRUE, the layout of the panels will have origin on the top left instead of bottom left (similar to pairs). This is in essence the same functionality as provided by as.table for the panel layout
groups	Grouping variable, if any
panel.subscripts	logical specifying whether the panel function accepts an argument named subscripts.
subscripts	The indices of the rows of z that are to be displayed in this (super)panel.
pscales	Controls axis labels, passed down from splom. If pscales is a single number, it indicates the approximate number of equally-spaced ticks that should appear on each axis. If pscales is a list, it should have one component for each column in z, each of which itself a list with the following valid components: at: a numeric vector specifying tick locations labels: character vector labels to go with at limits: numeric 2-vector specifying axis limits (should be made more flexible at some point to handle factors)

These are specifications on a per-variable basis, and used on all four sides in the diagonal cells used for labelling. Factor variables are labelled with the factor names. Use `pscales=0` to supress the axes entirely.

`prepanel.limits`
: A function to calculate suitable axis limits given a single argument `x` containing a data vector. The return value of the function should be similar to the `xlim` or `ylim` argument documented in `xyplot`; that is, it should be a numeric or DateTime vector of length 2 defining a range, or a character vector representing levels of a factor.

  Most high-level lattice plots (such as `xyplot`) use the `prepanel` function for deciding on axis limits from data. This function serves a similar function by calculating the per-variable limits. These limits can be overridden by the corresponding `limits` component in the `pscales` list.

`x`
: data vector corresponding to that row / column (which will be the same for diagonal 'panels').

`varname`
: (scalar) character string or expression that is to be written centred within the panel

`limits`
: numeric of length 2, or, vector of characters, specifying the scale for that panel (used to calculate tick locations when missing)

`at`
: locations of tick marks

`labels`
: optional labels for tick marks

`draw`
: A logical flag specifying whether to draw the tick marks and labels. If `FALSE`, variable names are shown but axis annotation is omitted.

`tick.number`
: A Numeric scalar giving the suggested number of tick marks.

`varnames`
: A character or expression vector or giving names to be used for the variables in `x`. By default, the column names of `x`.

`varname.col`
: Color for the variable name in each diagonal panel. See `gpar` for details on this and the other graphical parameters listed below.

`varname.cex`
: Size multiplier for the variable name in each diagonal panel.

`varname.lineheight`
: Line height for the variable name in each diagonal panel.

`varname.font, varname.fontfamily, varname.fontface`
: Font specification for the variable name in each diagonal panel.

`axis.text.col`
: Color for axis label text.

`axis.text.cex`
: Size multiplier for axis label text.

`axis.text.font, axis.text.fontfamily, axis.text.fontface`
: Font specification for axis label text.

`axis.text.lineheight`
: Line height for axis label text.

`axis.text.alpha`
: Alpha-transparency for axis label text.

`axis.line.col`
: Color for the axes.

`axis.line.lty`
: Line type for the axes.

`axis.line.lwd`
: Line width for the axes.

`axis.line.alpha`
: Alpha-transparency for the axes.

`axis.line.tck`
: A numeric multiplier for the length of tick marks in diagonal panels.

`...`
: Further arguments, passed on to `panel`, `lower.panel`, `upper.panel`, and `diag.panel` from `panel.pairs`. Currently ignored by `diag.panel.splom`.

Details

panel.pairs is the function that is actually used as the panel function in a "trellis" object produced by splom.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

splom

Examples

```
Cmat <- outer(1:6,1:6,
              function(i,j) rainbow(11, start=.12, end=.5)[i+j-1])

splom(~diag(6), as.matrix = TRUE,
      panel = function(x, y, i, j, ...) {
          panel.fill(Cmat[i,j])
          panel.text(.5,.5, paste("(",i,",",j,")",sep=""))
      })
```

F_1_panel.parallel *Default Panel Function for parallel*

Description

This is the default panel function for parallel.

Usage

```
panel.parallel(x, y, z, subscripts,
               groups = NULL,
               col, lwd, lty, alpha,
               common.scale = FALSE,
               lower,
               upper,
               ...,
               horizontal.axis = TRUE,
               identifier = "parallel")
```

Arguments

x, y	dummy variables, ignored.
z	The data frame used for the plot. Each column will be coerced to numeric before being plotted, and an error will be issued if this fails.
subscripts	The indices of the rows of z that are to be displyed in this panel.
groups	An optional grouping variable. If specified, different groups are distinguished by use of different graphical parameters (i.e., rows of z in the same group share parameters).

`col, lwd, lty, alpha`
: graphical parameters (defaults to the settings for `superpose.line`). If `groups` is non-null, these parameters used one for each group. Otherwise, they are recycled and used to distinguish between rows of the data frame `z`.

`common.scale`
: logical, whether a common scale should be used columns of `z`. Defaults to `FALSE`, in which case the horizontal range for each column is different (as determined by `lower` and `upper`).

`lower, upper`
: numeric vectors replicated to be as long as the number of columns in `z`. Determines the lower and upper bounds to be used for scaling the corresponding columns of `z` after coercing them to numeric. Defaults to the minimum and maximum of each column. Alternatively, these could be functions (to be applied on each column) that return a scalar.

`...`
: other arguments (ignored)

`horizontal.axis`
: logical indicating whether the parallel axes should be laid out horizontally (`TRUE`) or vertically (`FALSE`).

`identifier`
: A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

Produces parallel coordinate plots, which are easier to understand from an example than through a verbal description. See example for `parallel`

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Inselberg, Alfred (2009) *Parallel Coordinates: Visual Multidimensional Geometry and Its Applications*, Springer. ISBN: 978-0-387-21507-5.

Inselberg, A. (1985) "The Plane with Parallel Coordinates", *The Visual Computer*.

See Also

`parallel`

F_1_panel.qqmath *Default Panel Function for qqmath*

Description

This is the default panel function for `qqmath`.

Usage

```
panel.qqmath(x, f.value = NULL,
             distribution = qnorm,
             qtype = 7,
             groups = NULL, ...,
             tails.n = 0,
             identifier = "qqmath")
```

Arguments

x	vector (typically numeric, coerced if not) of data values to be used in the panel.
f.value, distribution	Defines how quantiles are calculated. See qqmath for details.
qtype	The type argument to be used in quantile
groups	An optional grouping variable. Within each panel, one Q-Q plot is produced for every level of this grouping variable, differentiated by different graphical parameters.
...	Further arguments, often graphical parameters, eventually passed on to panel.xyplot. Arguments grid and abline of panel.xyplot may be particularly useful.
tails.n	number of data points to represent exactly on each tail of the distribution. This reproduces the effect of f.value = NULL for the extreme data values, while approximating the remaining data. It has no effect if f.value = NULL. If tails.n is given, qtype is forced to be 1.
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

Creates a Q-Q plot of the data and the theoretical distribution given by distribution. Note that most of the arguments controlling the display can be supplied directly to the high-level qqmath call.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

qqmath

Examples

```
set.seed(0)
xx <- rt(10000, df = 10)
qqmath(~ xx, pch = "+", distribution = qnorm,
       grid = TRUE, abline = c(0, 1),
       xlab.top = c("raw", "ppoints(100)", "tails.n = 50"),
       panel = function(..., f.value) {
           switch(panel.number(),
                  panel.qqmath(..., f.value = NULL),
                  panel.qqmath(..., f.value = ppoints(100)),
                  panel.qqmath(..., f.value = ppoints(100), tails.n = 50))
       }, layout = c(3, 1))[c(1,1,1)]
```

F_1_panel.stripplot *Default Panel Function for stripplot*

Description

This is the default panel function for `stripplot`. Also see `panel.superpose`

Usage

```
panel.stripplot(x, y, jitter.data = FALSE,
                factor = 0.5, amount = NULL,
                horizontal = TRUE, groups = NULL,
                ...,
                identifier = "stripplot")
```

Arguments

`x,y`	coordinates of points to be plotted
`jitter.data`	whether points should be jittered to avoid overplotting. The actual jittering is performed inside `panel.xyplot`, using its `jitter.x` or `jitter.y` argument (depending on the value of `horizontal`).
`factor, amount`	amount of jittering, see `jitter`
`horizontal`	logical. If FALSE, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that the behaviours of x and y are switched. x is now the 'factor'. Interpretation of other arguments change accordingly. See documentation of `bwplot` for a fuller explanation.
`groups`	optional grouping variable
`...`	additional arguments, passed on to `panel.xyplot`
`identifier`	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

Creates stripplot (one dimensional scatterplot) of `x` for each level of `y` (or vice versa, depending on the value of `horizontal`)

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

`stripplot`, `jitter`

F_1_panel.xyplot *Default Panel Function for xyplot*

Description

This is the default panel function for xyplot. Also see panel.superpose. The default panel functions for splom and qq are essentially the same function.

Usage

```
panel.xyplot(x, y, type = "p",
             groups = NULL,
             pch, col, col.line, col.symbol,
             font, fontfamily, fontface,
             lty, cex, fill, lwd,
             horizontal = FALSE, ...,
             grid = FALSE, abline = NULL,
             jitter.x = FALSE, jitter.y = FALSE,
             factor = 0.5, amount = NULL,
             identifier = "xyplot")
panel.splom(..., identifier = "splom")
panel.qq(..., identifier = "qq")
```

Arguments

x,y	variables to be plotted in the scatterplot
type	character vector consisting of one or more of the following: "p", "l", "h", "b", "o", "s", "S", "r", "a", "g", "smooth", and "spline". If type has more than one element, an attempt is made to combine the effect of each of the components. The behaviour if any of the first six are included in type is similar to the effect of type in plot (type "b" is actually the same as "o"). "r" adds a linear regression line (same as panel.lmline, except for default graphical parameters). "smooth" adds a loess fit (same as panel.loess). "spline" adds a cubic smoothing spline fit (same as panel.spline). "g" adds a reference grid using panel.grid in the background (but using the grid argument is now the preferred way to do so). "a" has the effect of calling panel.average, which can be useful for creating interaction plots. The effect of several of these specifications depend on the value of horizontal. Type "s" (and "S") sorts the values along one of the axes (depending on horizontal); this is unlike the behavior in plot. For the latter behavior, use type = "s" with panel = panel.points. See example(xyplot) and demo(lattice) for examples.
groups	an optional grouping variable. If present, panel.superpose will be used instead to display each subgroup
col, col.line, col.symbol	default colours are obtained from plot.symbol and plot.line using trellis.par.get.
font, fontface, fontfamily	font used when pch is a character

`pch, lty, cex, lwd, fill`
: other graphical parameters. `fill` serves the purpose of bg in `points` for certain values of `pch`

`horizontal`
: A logical flag controlling the orientation for certain `type`'s, e.g., `"h"`, `"s"`, ans `"S"`.

`...`
: Extra arguments, if any, for `panel.xyplot`. In most cases `panel.xyplot` ignores these. For types "r" and "smooth", these are passed on to `panel.lmline` and `panel.loess` respectively.

`grid`
: A logical flag, character string, or list specifying whether and how a background grid should be drawn. This provides the same functionality as `type="g"`, but is the preferred alternative as the effect `type="g"` is conceptually different from that of other `type` values (which are all data-dependent). Using the `grid` argument also allows more flexibility.

  Most generally, `grid` can be a list of arguments to be supplied to `panel.grid`, which is called with those arguments. Three shortcuts are available:

  `TRUE`: roughly equivalent to `list(h = -1, v = -1)`

  `"h"`: roughly equivalent to `list(h = -1, v = 0)`

  `"v"`: roughly equivalent to `list(h = 0, v = -1)`

  No grid is drawn if `grid = FALSE`.

`abline`
: A numeric vector or list, specifying arguments arguments for `panel.abline`, which is called with those arguments. If specified as a (possibly named) numeric vector, `abline` is coerced to a list. This allows arguments of the form `abline = c(0, 1)`, which adds the diagonal line, or `abline = c(h = 0, v = 0)`, which adds the x- and y-axes to the plot. Use the list form for finer control; e.g., `abline = list(h = 0, v = 0, col = "grey")`.

  For more flexibility, use `panel.abline` directly.

`jitter.x, jitter.y`
: logical, whether the data should be jittered before being plotted.

`factor, amount`
: controls amount of jittering.

`identifier`
: A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

Creates scatterplot of `x` and `y`, with various modifications possible via the type argument. `panel.qq` draws a 45 degree line before calling `panel.xyplot`.

Note that most of the arguments controlling the display can be supplied directly to the high-level (e.g. `xyplot`) call.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

`panel.superpose`, `xyplot`, `splom`

Examples

```
types.plain <- c("p", "l", "o", "r", "g", "s", "S", "h", "a", "smooth")
types.horiz <- c("s", "S", "h", "a", "smooth")
horiz <- rep(c(FALSE, TRUE), c(length(types.plain), length(types.horiz)))

types <- c(types.plain, types.horiz)

x <- sample(seq(-10, 10, length.out = 15), 30, TRUE)
y <- x + 0.25 * (x + 1)^2 + rnorm(length(x), sd = 5)

xyplot(y ~ x | gl(1, length(types)),
       xlab = "type",
       ylab = list(c("horizontal=TRUE", "horizontal=FALSE"), y = c(1/6, 4/6)),
       as.table = TRUE, layout = c(5, 3),
       between = list(y = c(0, 1)),
       strip = function(...) {
           panel.fill(trellis.par.get("strip.background")$col[1])
           type <- types[panel.number()]
           grid::grid.text(label = sprintf("%s", type),
                           x = 0.5, y = 0.5)
           grid::grid.rect()
       },
       scales = list(alternating = c(0, 2), tck = c(0, 0.7), draw = FALSE),
       par.settings =
       list(layout.widths = list(strip.left = c(1, 0, 0, 0, 0))),
       panel = function(...) {
           type <- types[panel.number()]
           horizontal <- horiz[panel.number()]
           panel.xyplot(...,
                        type = type,
                        horizontal = horizontal)
       })[rep(1, length(types))]
```

F_2_llines *Replacements of traditional graphics functions*

Description

These functions are intended to replace common low level traditional graphics functions, primarily for use in panel functions. The originals can not be used (at least not easily) because lattice panel functions need to use grid graphics. Low level drawing functions in grid can be used directly as well, and is often more flexible. These functions are provided for convenience and portability.

Usage

```
lplot.xy(xy, type, pch, lty, col, cex, lwd,
         font, fontfamily, fontface,
         col.line, col.symbol, alpha, fill,
         origin = 0, ..., identifier, name.type)

llines(x, ...)
lpoints(x, ...)
```

```
ltext(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
llines(x, y = NULL, type = "l",
       col, alpha, lty, lwd, ..., identifier, name.type)
## Default S3 method:
lpoints(x, y = NULL, type = "p", col, pch, alpha, fill,
        font, fontfamily, fontface, cex, ..., identifier, name.type)
## Default S3 method:
ltext(x, y = NULL, labels = seq_along(x),
      col, alpha, cex, srt = 0,
      lineheight, font, fontfamily, fontface,
      adj = c(0.5, 0.5), pos = NULL, offset = 0.5, ..., identifier, name.type)

lsegments(x0, y0, x1, y1, x2, y2,
          col, alpha, lty, lwd,
          font, fontface, ..., identifier, name.type)
lrect(xleft, ybottom, xright, ytop,
      x = (xleft + xright) / 2,
      y = (ybottom + ytop) / 2,
      width = xright - xleft,
      height = ytop - ybottom,
      col = "transparent",
      border = "black",
      lty = 1, lwd = 1, alpha = 1,
      just = "center",
      hjust = NULL, vjust = NULL,
      ..., identifier, name.type)
larrows(x0 = NULL, y0 = NULL, x1, y1, x2 = NULL, y2 = NULL,
        angle = 30, code = 2, length = 0.25, unit = "inches",
        ends = switch(code, "first", "last", "both"),
        type = "open",
        col = add.line$col,
        alpha = add.line$alpha,
        lty = add.line$lty,
        lwd = add.line$lwd,
        fill = NULL, ..., identifier, name.type)
lpolygon(x, y = NULL,
         border = "black", col = "transparent", fill = NULL,
         font, fontface, ..., identifier, name.type)

panel.lines(...)
panel.points(...)
panel.segments(...)
panel.text(...)
panel.rect(...)
panel.arrows(...)
panel.polygon(...)
```

Arguments

`x, y, x0, y0, x1, y1, x2, y2, xy`
: locations. `x2` and `y2` are available for for S compatibility.

`length, unit` determines extent of arrow head. `length` specifies the length in terms of `unit`, which can be any valid grid unit as long as it doesn't need a `data` argument. `unit` defaults to inches, which is the only option in the base version of the function, `arrows`.

`angle, code, type, labels, srt, adj, pos, offset`
arguments controlling behaviour. See respective base functions for details. For `larrows` and `panel.larrows`, `type` is either `"open"` or `"closed"`, indicating the type of arrowhead.

`ends` serves the same function as `code`, using descriptive names rather than integer codes. If specified, this overrides `code`

`col, alpha, lty, lwd, fill, pch, cex, lineheight, font, fontfamily, fontface, col.line, col.symb`
graphical parameters. `fill` applies to points when `pch` is in `21:25` and specifies the fill color, similar to the `bg` argument in the base graphics function `points`. For devices that support alpha-transparency, a numeric argument `alpha` between 0 and 1 can controls transparency. Be careful with this, since for devices that do not support alpha-transparency, nothing will be drawn at all if this is set to anything other than 0.

`fill`, `font` and `fontface` are included in `lpolygon` and `lsegments` only to ensure that they are not passed down (as `gpar` does not like them).

`origin` for `type="h"` or `type="H"`, the value to which lines drop down.

`xleft, ybottom, xright, ytop`
see `rect`

`width, height, just, hjust, vjust`
finer control over rectangles, see `grid.rect`

`...` extra arguments, passed on to lower level functions as appropriate.

`identifier` A character string that is prepended to the name of the grob that is created.

`name.type` A character value indicating whether the name of the grob should have panel or strip information added to it. Typically either `"panel"`, `"strip"`, `"strip.left"`, or `""` (for no extra information).

Details

These functions are meant to be grid replacements of the corresponding base R graphics functions, to allow existing Trellis code to be used with minimal modification. The functions `panel.*` are essentially identical to the `l*` versions, are recommended for use in new code (as opposed to ported code) as they have more readable names.

See the documentation of the base functions for usage. Not all arguments are always supported. All these correspond to the default methods only.

Note

There is a new `type="H"` option wherever appropriate, which is similar to `type="h"`, but with horizontal lines.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

`points`, `lines`, `rect`, `text`, `segments`, `arrows`, `Lattice`

F_2_panel.functions *Useful Panel Function Components*

Description

These are predefined panel functions available in lattice for use in constructing new panel functions (often on-the-fly).

Usage

```
panel.abline(a = NULL, b = 0,
             h = NULL, v = NULL,
             reg = NULL, coef = NULL,
             col, col.line, lty, lwd, alpha, type,
             ...,
             reference = FALSE,
             identifier = "abline")
panel.refline(...)

panel.curve(expr, from, to, n = 101,
            curve.type = "l",
            col, lty, lwd, type,
            ...,
            identifier = "curve")
panel.rug(x = NULL, y = NULL,
          regular = TRUE,
          start = if (regular) 0 else 0.97,
          end = if (regular) 0.03 else 1,
          x.units = rep("npc", 2),
          y.units = rep("npc", 2),
          col, col.line, lty, lwd, alpha,
          ...,
          identifier = "rug")
panel.average(x, y, fun = mean, horizontal = TRUE,
              lwd, lty, col, col.line, type,
              ...,
              identifier = "linejoin")
panel.linejoin(x, y, fun = mean, horizontal = TRUE,
               lwd, lty, col, col.line, type,
               ...,
               identifier = "linejoin")




panel.fill(col, border, ..., identifier = "fill")
panel.grid(h=3, v=3, col, col.line, lty, lwd, x, y, ..., identifier = "grid")
panel.lmline(x, y, ..., identifier = "lmline")
panel.mathdensity(dmath = dnorm, args = list(mean=0, sd=1),
                  n = 50, col, col.line, lwd, lty, type,
```

```
..., identifier = "mathdensity")
```

Arguments

x, y	Variables defining the contents of the panel. In panel.grid these are optional and are used only to choose an appropriate method of pretty.
a, b	Coefficients of the line to be added by panel.abline. a can be a vector of length 2, representing the coefficients of the line to be added, in which case b should be missing. a can also be an appropriate 'regression' object, i.e., an object which has a coef method that returns a length 2 numeric vector. The corresponding line will be plotted. The reg argument overrides a if specified.
coef	Coefficients of the line to be added as a vector of length 2.
reg	A (linear) regression object, with a coef method that gives the coefficints of the corresponding regression line.
h, v	For panel.abline, these are numeric vectors giving locations respectively of horizontal and vertical lines to be added to the plot, in native coordinates. For panel.grid, these usually specify the number of horizontal and vertical reference lines to be added to the plot. Alternatively, they can be negative numbers. h=-1 and v=-1 are intended to make the grids aligned with the axis labels. This doesn't always work; all that actually happens is that the locations are chosen using pretty, which is also how the label positions are chosen in the most common cases (but not for factor variables, for instance). h and v can be negative numbers other than -1, in which case -h and -v (as appropriate) is supplied as the n argument to pretty. If x and/or y are specified in panel.grid, they will be used to select an appropriate method for pretty. This is particularly useful while plotting date-time objects.
reference	A logical flag determining whether the default graphical parameters for panel.abline should be taken from the "reference.line" parameter settings. The default is to take them from the "add.line" settings. The panel.refline function is a wrapper around panel.abline that calls it with reference = TRUE.
expr	An expression considered as a function of x, or a function, to be plotted as a curve.
n	The number of points to use for drawing the curve.
from, to	optional lower and upper x-limits of curve. If missing, limits of current panel are used
curve.type	Type of curve ("p" for points, etc), passed to llines
regular	A logical flag indicating whether the 'rug' is to be drawn on the 'regular' side (left / bottom) or not (right / top).
start, end	endpoints of rug segments, in normalized parent coordinates (between 0 and 1). Defaults depend on value of regular, and cover 3% of the panel width and height.
x.units, y.units	Character vectors, replicated to be of length two. Specifies the (grid) units associated with start and end above. x.units and y.units are for the rug on the x-axis and y-axis respectively (and thus are associated with start and end values on the y and x scales respectively).

`col, col.line, lty, lwd, alpha, border`
: Graphical parameters.

`type`
: Usually ignored by the panel functions documented here; the argument is present only to make sure an explicitly specified `type` argument (perhaps meant for another function) does not affect the display.

`fun`
: The function that will be applied to the subset of `x` values (or `y` if `horizontal` is `FALSE`) determined by the unique values of `y` (`x`).

`horizontal`
: A logical flag. If `FALSE`, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that the roles of `x` and `y` are switched; `x` is now the 'factor'. Interpretation of other arguments change accordingly. See documentation of `bwplot` for a fuller explanation.

`dmath`
: A vectorized function that produces density values given a numeric vector named `x`, e.g., `dnorm`.

`args`
: A list giving additional arguments to be passed to `dmath`.

`...`
: Further arguments, typically graphical parameters, passed on to other low-level functions as appropriate. Color can usually be specified by `col`, `col.line`, and `col.symbol`, the last two overriding the first for lines and points respectively.

`identifier`
: A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

`panel.abline` adds a line of the form `y = a + b * x`, or vertical and/or horizontal lines. Graphical parameters are obtained from the "add.line" settings by default. `panel.refline` is similar, but uses the "reference.line" settings for the defaults.

`panel.grid` draws a reference grid.

`panel.curve` adds a curve, similar to what `curve` does with `add = TRUE`. Graphical parameters for the curve are obtained from the "add.line" setting.

`panel.average` treats one of `x` and `y` as a factor (according to the value of `horizontal`), calculates `fun` applied to the subsets of the other variable determined by each unique value of the factor, and joins them by a line. Can be used in conjunction with `panel.xyplot`, and more commonly with `panel.superpose` to produce interaction plots.

`panel.linejoin` is an alias for `panel.average`. It is retained for back-compatibility, and may go away in future.

`panel.mathdensity` plots a (usually theoretical) probability density function. This can be useful in conjunction with `histogram` and `densityplot` to visually assess goodness of fit (note, however, that `qqmath` is more suitable for this).

`panel.rug` adds a *rug* representation of the (marginal) data to the panel, much like `rug`.

`panel.lmline(x, y)` is equivalent to `panel.abline(lm(y ~ x))`.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, `panel.axis`, `panel.identify` `identify`, `trellis.par.set`.

Examples

```
## Interaction Plot

bwplot(yield ~ site, barley, groups = year,
       panel = function(x, y, groups, subscripts, ...) {
           panel.grid(h = -1, v = 0)
           panel.stripplot(x, y, ..., jitter.data = TRUE,
                           groups = groups, subscripts = subscripts)
           panel.superpose(x, y, ..., panel.groups = panel.average,
                           groups = groups, subscripts = subscripts)
       },
       auto.key =
       list(points = FALSE, lines = TRUE, columns = 2))

## Superposing a fitted normal density on a Histogram

histogram( ~ height | voice.part, data = singer, layout = c(2, 4),
          type = "density", border = "transparent", col.line = "grey60",
          xlab = "Height (inches)",
          ylab = "Density Histogram\n with Normal Fit",
          panel = function(x, ...) {
              panel.histogram(x, ...)
              panel.mathdensity(dmath = dnorm,
                                args = list(mean=mean(x),sd=sd(x)), ...)
          } )
```

F_2_panel.loess *Panel Function to Add a LOESS Smooth*

Description

A predefined panel function that can be used to add a LOESS smooth based on the provided data.

Usage

```
panel.loess(x, y, span = 2/3, degree = 1,
            family = c("symmetric", "gaussian"),
            evaluation = 50,
            lwd, lty, col, col.line, type,
            horizontal = FALSE,
            ..., identifier = "loess")
```

Arguments

`x, y`	Variables defining the data to be used.
`lwd, lty, col, col.line`	Graphical parameters for the added line. `col.line` overrides `col`.
`type`	Ignored. The argument is present only to make sure that an explicitly specified `type` argument (perhaps meant for another function) does not affect the display.

`span, degree, family, evaluation`
: Arguments to `loess.smooth`, for which `panel.loess` is essentially a wrapper.

`horizontal`
: A logical flag controlling which variable is to be treated as the predictor (by default `x`) and which as the response (by default `y`). If `TRUE`, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that `y` becomes the predictor and `x` the response. (The name 'horizontal' may seem an odd choice for this argument, and originates from similar usage in `bwplot`).

`...`
: Extra arguments, passed on to `panel.lines`.

`identifier`
: A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Value

The object returned by `loess.smooth`.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, `loess.smooth`, `prepanel.loess`

F_2_panel.qqmathline *Useful panel function with qqmath*

Description

Useful panel function with qqmath. Draws a line passing through the points (usually) determined by the .25 and .75 quantiles of the sample and the theoretical distribution.

Usage

```
panel.qqmathline(x, y = x,
                 distribution = qnorm,
                 probs = c(0.25, 0.75),
                 qtype = 7,
                 groups = NULL,
                 ...,
                 identifier = "qqmathline")
```

Arguments

`x`
: The original sample, possibly reduced to a fewer number of quantiles, as determined by the `f.value` argument to `qqmath`

`y`
: an alias for `x` for backwards compatibility

`distribution`
: quantile function for reference theoretical distribution.

`probs`
: numeric vector of length two, representing probabilities. Corresponding quantile pairs define the line drawn.

`qtype`
: the `type` of quantile computation used in `quantile`

groups	optional grouping variable. If non-null, a line will be drawn for each group.
...	other arguments.
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

prepanel.qqmathline, qqmath, quantile

F_2_panel.smoothScatter

Lattice panel function analogous to smoothScatter

Description

This function allows the user to place smoothScatter plots in lattice graphics.

Usage

```
panel.smoothScatter(x, y = NULL,
                    nbin = 64, cuts = 255,
                    bandwidth,
                    colramp,
                    nrpoints = 100,
                    transformation = function(x) x^0.25,
                    pch = ".",
                    cex = 1, col="black",
                    range.x,
                    ...,
                    raster = FALSE,
                    subscripts,
                    identifier = "smoothScatter")
```

Arguments

x	Numeric vector containing x-values or n by 2 matrix containing x and y values.
y	Numeric vector containing y-values (optional). The length of x must be the same as that of y.
nbin	Numeric vector of length 1 (for both directions) or 2 (for x and y separately) containing the number of equally spaced grid points for the density estimation.
cuts	number of cuts defining the color gradient
bandwidth	Numeric vector: the smoothing bandwidth. If missing, these functions come up with a more or less useful guess. This parameter then gets passed on to the function bkde2D.
colramp	Function accepting an integer n as an argument and returning n colors.

nrpoints	Numeric vector of length 1 giving number of points to be superimposed on the density image. The first nrpoints points from those areas of lowest regional densities will be plotted. Adding points to the plot allows for the identification of outliers. If all points are to be plotted, choose nrpoints = Inf.
transformation	Function that maps the density scale to the color scale.
pch, cex	graphical parameters for the nrpoints "outlying" points shown in the display
range.x	see bkde2D for details.
col	points color parameter
...	Further arguments that are passed on to panel.levelplot.
raster	logical; if TRUE, panel.levelplot.raster is used, making potentially smaller output files.
subscripts	ignored, but necessary for handling of ... in certain situations. Likely to be removed in future.
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

This replicates the display part of the smoothScatter function by replacing standard graphics calls by grid-compatible ones.

Value

The function is called for its side effects, namely the production of the appropriate plots on a graphics device.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <deepayan.sarkar@r-project.org>

Examples

```
ddf <- as.data.frame(matrix(rnorm(40000), ncol = 4) + 3 * rnorm(10000))
ddf[, c(2,4)] <- (-ddf[, c(2,4)])
xyplot(V1 ~ V2 + V3, ddf, outer = TRUE,
       panel = panel.smoothScatter, aspect = "iso")
splom(ddf, panel = panel.smoothScatter, nbin = 64, raster = TRUE)
```

F_2_panel.spline *Panel Function to Add a Spline Smooth*

Description

A predefined panel function that can be used to add a spline smooth based on the provided data.

Usage

```
panel.spline(x, y, npoints = 101,
             lwd = plot.line$lwd,
             lty = plot.line$lty,
             col, col.line = plot.line$col,
             type,
             horizontal = FALSE, ...,
             keep.data = FALSE,
             identifier = "spline")
```

Arguments

x, y	Variables defining the data to be used.
npoints	The number of equally spaced points within the range of the predictor at which the fitted model is evaluated for plotting.
lwd, lty, col, col.line	Graphical parameters for the added line. col.line overrides col.
type	Ignored. The argument is present only to make sure that an explicitly specified type argument (perhaps meant for another function) does not affect the display.
horizontal	A logical flag controlling which variable is to be treated as the predictor (by default x) and which as the response (by default y). If TRUE, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that y becomes the predictor and x the response. (The name 'horizontal' may seem an odd choice for this argument, and originates from similar usage in bwplot).
keep.data	Passed on to smooth.spline. The default here (FALSE) is different, and results in the original data not being retained in the fitted spline model. It may be useful to set this to TRUE if the return value of panel.spline, which is the fitted model as returned by smooth.spline, is to be used for subsequent computations.
...	Extra arguments, passed on to smooth.spline and panel.lines as appropriate.
identifier	A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Value

The fitted model as returned by smooth.spline.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, smooth.spline, prepanel.spline

F_2_panel.superpose *Panel Function for Display Marked by groups*

Description

These are panel functions for Trellis displays useful when a grouping variable is specified for use within panels. The x (and y where appropriate) variables are plotted with different graphical parameters for each distinct value of the grouping variable.

Usage

```
panel.superpose(x, y = NULL, subscripts, groups,
                panel.groups = "panel.xyplot",
                ...,
                col, col.line, col.symbol,
                pch, cex, fill, font,
                fontface, fontfamily,
                lty, lwd, alpha,
                type = "p", grid = FALSE,
                distribute.type = FALSE)
panel.superpose.2(..., distribute.type = TRUE)

panel.superpose.plain(...,
                      col, col.line, col.symbol,
                      pch, cex, fill, font,
                      fontface, fontfamily,
                      lty, lwd, alpha)
```

Arguments

x,y	Coordinates of the points to be displayed. Usually numeric.
panel.groups	The panel function to be used for each subgroup of points. Defaults to panel.xyplot. To be able to distinguish between different levels of the originating group inside panel.groups, it will be supplied two special arguments called group.number and group.value which will hold the numeric code and factor level corresponding to the current level of groups. No special care needs to be taken when writing a panel.groups function if this feature is not used.
subscripts	An integer vector of subscripts giving indices of the x and y values in the original data source. See the corresponding entry in xyplot for details.
groups	A grouping variable. Different graphical parameters will be used to plot the subsets of observations given by each distinct value of groups. The default graphical parameters are obtained from the "superpose.symbol" and "superpose.line" settings using trellis.par.get wherever appropriate.
type	Usually a character vector specifying how each group should be drawn. Formally, it is passed on to the panel.groups function, which must know what to do with it. By default, panel.groups is panel.xyplot, whose help page describes the admissible values.

The functions panel.superpose and panel.superpose.2 differ only in the default value of distribute.type, which controls the way the type argument is interpreted. If distribute.type = FALSE, then the interpretation is the same as for panel.xyplot for each of the unique groups. In other words, if type is a vector, all the individual components are honoured concurrently. If distribute.type = TRUE, type is replicated to be as long as the number of unique values in groups, and one component used for the points corresponding to the each different group. Even in this case, it is possible to request multiple types per group, specifying type as a list, each component being the desired type vector for the corresponding group.

If distribute.type = FALSE, any occurrence of "g" in type causes a grid to be drawn, and all such occurrences are removed before type is passed on to panel.groups.

grid — Logical flag specifying whether a background reference grid should be drawn. See panel.xyplot for details.

col — A vector color specification. See Details.

col.line — A vector color specification. See Details.

col.symbol — A vector color specification. See Details.

pch — A vector plotting character specification. See Details.

cex — A vector size factor specification. See Details.

fill — A vector fill color specification. See Details.

font, fontface, fontfamily — A vector color specification. See Details.

lty — A vector color specification. See Details.

lwd — A vector color specification. See Details.

alpha — A vector alpha-transparency specification. See Details.

... — Extra arguments. Passed down to panel.superpose from panel.superpose.2, and to panel.groups from panel.superpose.

distribute.type — logical controlling interpretation of the type argument.

Details

panel.superpose divides up the x (and optionally y) variable(s) by the unique values of groups[subscripts], and plots each subset with different graphical parameters. The graphical parameters (col.symbol, pch, etc.) are usually supplied as suitable atomic vectors, but can also be lists. When panel.groups is called for the i-th level of groups, the corresponding element of each graphical parameter is passed to it. In the list form, the individual components can themselves be vectors.

The actual plot for each subgroup is created by the panel.groups function. With the default panel.groups, the col argument is overridden by col.line and col.symbol for lines and points respectively, which default to the "superpose.line" and "superpose.symbol" settings. However, col will still be supplied as an argument to panel.groups functions that make use of it, with a default of "black". The defaults of other graphical parameters are also taken from the "superpose.line" and "superpose.symbol" settings as appropriate. The alpha parameter takes it default from the "superpose.line" setting.

panel.superpose and panel.superpose.2 differ essentially in how type is interpreted by default. The default behaviour in panel.superpose is the opposite of that in S, which is the same as that of panel.superpose.2.

panel.superpose.plain is the same as panel.superpose, except that the default settings for the style arguments are the same for all groups and are taken from the default plot style. It is used in xyplot.ts.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org> (panel.superpose.2 originally contributed by Neil Klepeis)

See Also

Different functions when used as panel.groups gives different types of plots, for example panel.xyplot, panel.dotplot and panel.average (This can be used to produce interaction plots).

See Lattice for an overview of the package, and xyplot for common arguments (in particular, the discussion of the extended formula interface and the groups argument).

F_2_panel.violin *Panel Function to create Violin Plots*

Description

This is a panel function that can create a violin plot. It is typically used in a high-level call to bwplot.

Usage

```
panel.violin(x, y, box.ratio = 1, box.width,
             horizontal = TRUE,
             alpha, border, lty, lwd, col,
             varwidth = FALSE,
             bw, adjust, kernel, window,
             width, n = 50, from, to, cut,
             na.rm, ...,
             identifier = "violin")
```

Arguments

x, y	numeric vector or factor. Violin plots are drawn for each unique value of y (x) if horizontal is TRUE (FALSE)
box.ratio	ratio of the thickness of each violin and inter violin space
box.width	thickness of the violins in absolute units; overrides box.ratio. Useful for specifying thickness when the categorical variable is not a factor, as use of box.ratio alone cannot achieve a thickness greater than 1.
horizontal	logical. If FALSE, the plot is 'transposed' in the sense that the behaviours of x and y are switched. x is now the 'factor'. See documentation of bwplot for a fuller explanation.
alpha, border, lty, lwd, col	graphical parameters controlling the violin. Defaults are taken from the "plot.polygon" settings.

varwidth — logical. If FALSE, the densities are scaled separately for each group, so that the maximum value of the density reaches the limit of the allocated space for each violin (as determined by box.ratio). If TRUE, densities across violins will have comparable scale.

bw, adjust, kernel, window, width, n, from, to, cut, na.rm — arguments to density, passed on as appropriate

... — arguments passed on to density.

identifier — A character string that is prepended to the names of grobs that are created by this panel function.

Details

Creates Violin plot of x for every level of y. Note that most arguments controlling the display can be supplied to the high-level (typically bwplot) call directly.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

bwplot, density

Examples

```
bwplot(voice.part ~ height, singer,
       panel = function(..., box.ratio) {
           panel.violin(..., col = "transparent",
                        varwidth = FALSE, box.ratio = box.ratio)
           panel.bwplot(..., fill = NULL, box.ratio = .1)
       } )
```

F_3_prepanel.default *Default Prepanel Functions*

Description

These prepanel functions are used as fallback defaults in various high level plot functions in Lattice. These are rarely useful to normal users but may be helpful in developing new displays.

Usage

```
prepanel.default.bwplot(x, y, horizontal, nlevels, origin, stack, ...)
prepanel.default.histogram(x, breaks, equal.widths, type, nint, ...)
prepanel.default.qq(x, y, ...)
prepanel.default.xyplot(x, y, type, subscripts, groups, ...)
prepanel.default.cloud(perspective, distance,
                       xlim, ylim, zlim,
                       screen = list(z = 40, x = -60),
                       R.mat = diag(4),
                       aspect = c(1, 1), panel.aspect = 1,
```

```
                        ..., zoom = 0.8)
prepanel.default.levelplot(x, y, subscripts, ...)
prepanel.default.qqmath(x, f.value, distribution, qtype,
                        groups, subscripts, ..., tails.n = 0)
prepanel.default.densityplot(x, darg, groups, weights, subscripts, ...)
prepanel.default.parallel(x, y, z, ..., horizontal.axis)
prepanel.default.splom(z, ...)
```

Arguments

`x, y`	x and y values, numeric or factor
`horizontal`	logical, applicable when one of the variables is to be treated as categorical (factor or shingle).
`horizontal.axis`	logical indicating whether the parallel axes should be laid out horizontally (`TRUE`) or vertically (`FALSE`).
`nlevels`	number of levels of such a categorical variable.
`origin, stack`	for barcharts or the `type="h"` plot type
`breaks, equal.widths, type, nint`	details of histogram calculations. `type` has a different meaning in `prepanel.default.xyplot` (see `panel.xyplot`)
`groups, subscripts`	See `xyplot`. Whenever appropriate, calculations are done separately for each group and then combined.
`weights`	numeric vector of weights for the density calculations. If this is specified, it is subsetted by `subscripts` to match it to `x`.
`perspective, distance, xlim, ylim, zlim, screen, R.mat, aspect, panel.aspect, zoom`	see `panel.cloud`
`f.value, distribution, tails.n`	see `panel.qqmath`
`darg`	list of arguments passed to `density`
`z`	see `panel.parallel` and `panel.pairs`
`qtype`	type of `quantile`
`...`	other arguments, usually ignored

Value

A list with components `xlim`, `ylim`, `dx` and `dy`, and possibly `xat` and `yat`, the first two being used to calculate panel axes limits, the last two for banking computations. The form of these components are described in the help page for `xyplot`.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

`xyplot`, `banking`, `Lattice`. See documentation of corresponding panel functions for more details about the arguments.

F_3_prepanel.functions

Useful Prepanel Function for Lattice

Description

These are predefined prepanel functions available in Lattice.

Usage

```
prepanel.lmline(x, y, ...)
prepanel.qqmathline(x, y = x, distribution = qnorm,
                    probs = c(0.25, 0.75), qtype = 7,
                    groups, subscripts,
                    ...)
prepanel.loess(x, y, span, degree, family, evaluation,
               horizontal = FALSE, ...)
prepanel.spline(x, y, npoints = 101,
                horizontal = FALSE, ...,
                keep.data = FALSE)
```

Arguments

x, y	x and y values, numeric or factor
distribution	quantile function for theoretical distribution. This is automatically passed in when this is used as a prepanel function in qqmath.
qtype	type of quantile
probs	numeric vector of length two, representing probabilities. If used with aspect="xy", the aspect ratio will be chosen to make the line passing through the corresponding quantile pairs as close to 45 degrees as possible.
span, degree, family, evaluation	Arguments controlling the underlying loess smooth.
horizontal, npoints	See documentation for corresponding panel function.
keep.data	Ignored. Present to capture argument of the same name in smooth.spline.
groups, subscripts	See xyplot. Whenever appropriate, calculations are done separately for each group and then combined.
...	Other arguments. These are passed on to other functions if appropriate (in particular, smooth.spline), and ignored otherwise.

Details

All these prepanel functions compute the limits to be large enough to contain all points as well as the relevant smooth.

In addition, prepanel.lmline computes the dx and dy such that it reflects the slope of the linear regression line; for prepanel.qqmathline, this is the slope of the line passing through the quantile pairs specified by probs. For prepanel.loess and prepanel.spline, dx and dy reflect the piecewise slopes of the nonlinear smooth.

Value

usually a list with components xlim, ylim, dx and dy, the first two being used to calculate panel axes limits, the last two for banking computations. The form of these components are described under xyplot. There are also several prepanel functions that serve as the default for high level functions, see prepanel.default.xyplot

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, xyplot, banking, panel.loess, panel.spline.

G_axis.default *Default axis annotation utilities*

Description

Lattice funtions provide control over how the plot axes are annotated through a common interface. There are two levels of control. The xscale.components and yscale.components arguments can be functions that determine tick mark locations and labels given a packet. For more direct control, the axis argument can be a function that actually draws the axes. The functions documented here are the defaults for these arguments. They can additonally be used as components of user written replacements.

Usage

```
xscale.components.default(lim,
                          packet.number = 0,
                          packet.list = NULL,
                          top = TRUE,
                          ...)
yscale.components.default(lim,
                          packet.number = 0,
                          packet.list = NULL,
                          right = TRUE,
                          ...)
axis.default(side = c("top", "bottom", "left", "right"),
             scales, components, as.table,
             labels = c("default", "yes", "no"),
             ticks = c("default", "yes", "no"),
             ..., prefix)
```

Arguments

lim	the range of the data in that packet (data subset corresponding to a combination of levels of the conditioning variable). The range is not necessarily numeric; e.g. for factors, they could be character vectors representing levels, and for the various date-time representations, they could be vectors of length 2 with the corresponding class.

packet.number	which packet (counted according to the packet order, described in print.trellis) is being processed. In cases where all panels have the same limits, this function is called only once (rather than once for each packet), in which case this argument will have the value 0.
packet.list	list, as long as the number of packets, giving all the actual packets. Specifically, each component is the list of arguments given to the panel function when and if that packet is drawn in a panel. (This has not yet been implemented.)
top, right	the value of the top and right components of the result, as appropriate. See below for interpretation.
side	on which side the axis is to be drawn. The usual partial matching rules apply.
scales	the appropriate component of the scales argument supplied to the high level function, suitably standardized.
components	list, similar to those produced by xscale.components.default and yscale.components.default.
as.table	the as.table argument in the high level function.
labels	whether labels are to be drawn. By default, the rules determined by scales are used.
ticks	whether labels are to be drawn. By default, the rules determined by scales are used.
...	many other arguments may be supplied, and are passed on to other internal functions.
prefix	A character string identifying the plot being drawn (see print.trellis). Used to retrieve location of current panel in the overall layout, so that axes can be drawn appropriately.

Details

These functions are part of a new API introduced in lattice 0.14 to provide the user more control over how axis annotation is done. While the API has been designed in anticipation of use that was previously unsupported, the implementation has initially focused on reproducing existing capabilities, rather than test new features. At the time of writing, several features are unimplemented. If you require them, please contact the maintainer.

Value

xscale.components.default and yscale.components.default return a list of the form suitable as the components argument of axis.default. Valid components in the return value of xscale.components.default are:

num.limit	A numeric limit for the box.
bottom	A list with two elements, ticks and labels. ticks must be a list with components at and tck which give the location and lengths of tick marks. tck can be a vector, and will be recycled to be as long as at. labels must be a list with components at, labels, and check.overlap. at and labels give the location and labels of the tick labels; this is usually the same as the location of the ticks, but is not required to be so. check.overlap is a logical flag indicating whether overlapping of labels should be avoided by omitting some of the labels while rendering.

top — This can be a logical flag; if TRUE, top is treated as being the same as bottom; if FALSE, axis annotation for the top axis is omitted. Alternatively, top can be a list like bottom.

Valid components in the return value of yscale.components.default are left and right. Their interpretations are analogous to (respectively) the bottom and top components described above.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, xyplot, print.trellis

Examples

```
str(xscale.components.default(c(0, 1)))

set.seed(36872)
rln <- rlnorm(100)

densityplot(rln,
            scales = list(x = list(log = 2), alternating = 3),
            xlab = "Simulated lognormal variates",
            xscale.components = function(...) {
                ans <- xscale.components.default(...)
                ans$top <- ans$bottom
                ans$bottom$labels$labels <- parse(text = ans$bottom$labels$labels)
                ans$top$labels$labels <-
                    if (require(MASS))
                        fractions(2^(ans$top$labels$at))
                    else
                        2^(ans$top$labels$at)
                ans
            })


## Direct use of axis to show two temperature scales (Celcius and
## Fahrenheit).  This does not work for multi-row plots, and doesnt
## do automatic allocation of space


F2C <- function(f) 5 * (f - 32) / 9
C2F <- function(c) 32 + 9 * c / 5

axis.CF <-
    function(side, ...)
{
    ylim <- current.panel.limits()$ylim
    switch(side,
           left = {
               prettyF <- pretty(ylim)
               labF <- parse(text = sprintf("%s ~ degree * F", prettyF))
               panel.axis(side = side, outside = TRUE,
                          at = prettyF, labels = labF)
           },
```

```
            right = {
                prettyC <- pretty(F2C(ylim))
                labC <- parse(text = sprintf("%s ~ degree * C", prettyC))
                panel.axis(side = side, outside = TRUE,
                           at = C2F(prettyC), labels = labC)
            },
            axis.default(side = side, ...))
}

xyplot(nhtemp ~ time(nhtemp), aspect = "xy", type = "o",
       scales = list(y = list(alternating = 3)),
       axis = axis.CF, xlab = "Year", ylab = "Temperature",
       main = "Yearly temperature in New Haven, CT")

## version using yscale.components

yscale.components.CF <-
    function(...)
{
    ans <- yscale.components.default(...)
    ans$right <- ans$left
    ans$left$labels$labels <-
        parse(text = sprintf("%s ~ degree * F", ans$left$labels$at))
    prettyC <- pretty(F2C(ans$num.limit))
    ans$right$ticks$at <- C2F(prettyC)
    ans$right$labels$at <- C2F(prettyC)
    ans$right$labels$labels <-
        parse(text = sprintf("%s ~ degree * C", prettyC))
    ans
}


xyplot(nhtemp ~ time(nhtemp), aspect = "xy", type = "o",
       scales = list(y = list(alternating = 3)),
       yscale.components = yscale.components.CF,
       xlab = "Year", ylab = "Temperature",
       main = "Yearly temperature in New Haven, CT")
```

G_banking *Banking*

Description

Calculates banking slope

Usage

```
banking(dx, dy)
```

Arguments

dx, dy	vector of consecutive x, y differences.

Details

banking is the banking function used when aspect = "xy" in high level Trellis functions. It is usually not very meaningful except with xyplot. It considers the absolute slopes (based on dx and dy) and returns a value which when adjusted by the panel scale limits will make the median of the above absolute slopes correspond to a 45 degree line.

This function was inspired by the discussion of banking in the documentation for Trellis Graphics available at Bell Labs' website (see Lattice), but is most likely identical to an algorithm described by Cleveland et al (see below). It is not clear (to the author) whether this is the algorithm used in S-PLUS. Alternative banking rules, implemented as a similar function, can be used as a drop-in replacement by suitably modifying lattice.options("banking").

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

References

Cleveland, William S. and McGill, Marylyn E. and McGill, Robert (1988) "The Shape Parameter of a Two-variable Graph", *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **83**, 289–300.

See Also

Lattice, xyplot

Examples

```
## with and without banking

plot <- xyplot(sunspot.year ~ 1700:1988, xlab = "", type = "l",
               scales = list(x = list(alternating = 2)),
               main = "Yearly Sunspots")
print(plot, position = c(0, .3, 1, .9), more = TRUE)
print(update(plot, aspect = "xy", main = "", xlab = "Year"),
      position = c(0, 0, 1, .3))

## cut-and-stack plot (see also xyplot.ts)

xyplot(sunspot.year ~ time(sunspot.year) | equal.count(time(sunspot.year)),
       xlab = "", type = "l", aspect = "xy", strip = FALSE,
       scales = list(x = list(alternating = 2, relation = "sliced")),
       as.table = TRUE, main = "Yearly Sunspots")
```

G_latticeParseFormula *Parse Trellis formula*

Description

this function is used by high level Lattice functions like xyplot to parse the formula argument and evaluate various components of the data.

Usage

```
latticeParseFormula(model, data, dimension = 2,
                    subset = TRUE, groups = NULL,
                    multiple, outer,
                    subscripts,
                    drop)
```

Arguments

model	the model/formula to be parsed. This can be in either of two possible forms, one for 2d and one for 3d formulas, determined by the dimension argument. The 2d formulas are of the form y ~ x| g1 * ... *gn, and the 3d formulas are of the form z ~ x * y | g1 * ...* gn. In the first form, y may be omitted. The conditioning variables g1, ...,gn can be omitted in either case.
data	the environment/dataset where the variables in the formula are evaluated.
dimension	dimension of the model, see above
subset	index for choosing a subset of the data frame
groups	the grouping variable, if present
multiple, outer	logicals, determining how a '+' in the y and x components of the formula are processed. See xyplot for details
subscripts	logical, whether subscripts are to be calculated
drop	logical or list, similar to the drop.unused.levels argument in xyplot, indicating whether unused levels of conditioning factors and data variables that are factors are to be dropped.

Value

returns a list with several components, including left, right, left.name, right.name, condition for 2-D, and left, right.x, right.y, left.name, right.x.name, right.y.name, condition for 3-D. Other possible components are groups, subscr

Author(s)

Saikat DebRoy, Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot, Lattice

G_packet.panel.default

Associating Packets with Panels

Description

When a "trellis" object is plotted, panels are always drawn in an order such that columns vary the fastest, then rows and then pages. An optional function can be specified that determines, given the column, row and page and other relevant information, the packet (if any) which should be used in that panel. The function documented here implements the default behaviour, which is to match panel order with packet order, determined by varying the first conditioning variable the fastest, then the second, and so on. This matching is performed after any reordering and/or permutation of the conditioning variables.

Usage

```
packet.panel.default(layout, condlevels, page, row, column,
                     skip, all.pages.skip = TRUE)
```

Arguments

layout	the layout argument in high level functions, suitably standardized.
condlevels	a list of levels of conditioning variables, after relevant permutations and/or reordering of levels
page, row, column	the location of the panel in the coordinate system of pages, rows and columns.
skip	the skip argument in high level functions
all.pages.skip	whether skip should be replicated over all pages. If FALSE, skip will be replicated to be only as long as the number of positions on a page, and that template will be used for all pages.

Value

A suitable combination of levels of the conditioning variables in the form of a numeric vector as long as the number of conditioning variables, with each element an integer indexing the levels of the corresponding variable. Specifically, if the return value is p, then the i-th conditioning variable will have level condlevels[[i]][p[i]].

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, xyplot

Examples

```
packet.panel.page <- function(n)
{
    ## returns a function that when used as the packet.panel
    ## argument in print.trellis plots page number n only
    function(layout, page, ...) {
        stopifnot(layout[3] == 1)
        packet.panel.default(layout = layout, page = n, ...)
    }
}
```

```
data(mtcars)
HP <- equal.count(mtcars$hp, 6)
p <-
    xyplot(mpg ~ disp | HP * factor(cyl),
           mtcars, layout = c(0, 6, 1))

print(p, packet.panel = packet.panel.page(1))
print(p, packet.panel = packet.panel.page(2))
```

G_panel.axis *Panel Function for Drawing Axis Ticks and Labels*

Description

panel.axis is the function used by lattice to draw axes. It is typically not used by users, except those wishing to create advanced annotation. Keep in mind issues of clipping when trying to use it as part of the panel function. current.panel.limits can be used to retrieve a panel's x and y limits.

Usage

```
panel.axis(side = c("bottom", "left", "top", "right"),
           at,
           labels = TRUE,
           draw.labels = TRUE,
           check.overlap = FALSE,
           outside = FALSE,
           ticks = TRUE,
           half = !outside,
           which.half,
           tck = as.numeric(ticks),
           rot = if (is.logical(labels)) 0 else c(90, 0),
           text.col, text.alpha, text.cex, text.font,
           text.fontfamily, text.fontface, text.lineheight,
           line.col, line.lty, line.lwd, line.alpha)

current.panel.limits(unit = "native")
```

Arguments

side	A character string indicating which side axes are to be drawn on. Partial specification is allowed.
at	Numeric vector giving location of labels.
labels	The labels to go along with at. The labels can be a character vector or a vector of expressions. Alternatively, at can be a logical flag: If TRUE, the labels are derived from at, otherwise, labels are empty.
draw.labels	A logical indicating whether labels are to be drawn.
check.overlap	A logical, whether to check for overlapping of labels. This also has the effect of removing at values that are 'too close' to the limits.

outside	A logical flag, indicating whether to draw the labels outside the panel or inside. Note that outside=TRUE will only have a visible effect if clipping is disabled for the viewport (panel).
ticks	Logical flag, whether to draw the tickmarks.
half	Logical flag, indicating whether only around half the scales will be drawn for each side. This is primarily used for axis labeling in splom.
which.half	Character string, either "lower" or "upper", indicating which half is to be used for tick locations if half = TRUE. Defaults to whichever is suitable for splom.
tck	A numeric scalar multiplier for tick length. Can be negative, in which case the ticks point inwards.
rot	Rotation angle(s) for labels in degrees. Can be a vector of length 2 for x- and y-axes.
text.col	Color for the axis label text. See gpar for more details on this and the other graphical parameters listed below.
text.alpha	Alpha-transparency value for the axis label text.
text.cex	Size multiplier for the axis label text.
text.font, text.fontfamily, text.fontface	Font for the axis label text.
text.lineheight	Line height for the axis label text.
line.col	Color for the axis label text.
line.lty	Color for the axis.
line.lwd	Color for the axis.
line.alpha	Alpha-transparency value for the axis.
unit	Which grid unit the values should be in.

Details

panel.axis can draw axis tick marks inside or outside a panel (more precisely, a grid viewport). It honours the (native) axis scales. Used in panel.pairs for splom, as well as for all the usual axis drawing by the print method for "trellis" objects. It can also be used to enhance plots 'after the fact' by adding axes.

Value

current.panel.limits returns a list with components xlim and ylim, which are both numeric vectors of length 2, giving the scales of the current panel (viewport). The values correspond to the unit system specified by unit, by default "native".

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, xyplot, trellis.focus, unit

G_panel.number *Accessing Auxiliary Information During Plotting*

Description

Control over lattice plots are provided through a collection of user specifiable functions that perform various tasks during the plotting. Not all information is available to all functions. The functions documented here attempt to provide a consistent interface to access relevant information from within these user specified functions, namely those specified as the `panel`, `strip` and `axis` functions. Note that this information is not available to the `prepanel` function, which is executed prior to the actual plotting.

Usage

```
current.row(prefix)
current.column(prefix)
panel.number(prefix)
packet.number(prefix)
which.packet(prefix)

trellis.currentLayout(which = c("packet", "panel"), prefix)
```

Arguments

`which`	whether return value (a matrix) should contain panel numbers or packet numbers, which are usually, but not necessarily, the same (see below for details).
`prefix`	A character string acting as a prefix identifying the plot of a `"trellis"` object. Only relevant when a particular page is occupied by more than one plot. Defaults to the value appropriate for the last `"trellis"` object printed. See `trellis.focus`.

Value

`trellis.currentLayout` returns a matrix with as many rows and columns as in the layout of panels in the current plot. Entries in the matrix are integer indices indicating which packet (or panel; see below) occupies that position, with 0 indicating the absence of a panel. `current.row` and `current.column` return integer indices specifying which row and column in the layout are currently active. `panel.number` returns an integer counting which panel is being drawn (starting from 1 for the first panel, a.k.a. the panel order). `packet.number` gives the packet number according to the packet order, which is determined by varying the first conditioning variable the fastest, then the second, and so on. `which.packet` returns the combination of levels of the conditioning variables in the form of a numeric vector as long as the number of conditioning variables, with each element an integer indexing the levels of the corresponding variable.

Note

The availability of these functions make redundant some features available in earlier versions of lattice, namely optional arguments called `panel.number` and `packet.number` that were made available to `panel` and `strip`. If you have written such functions, it should be enough to replace instances of `panel.number` and `packet.number` by the corresponding function calls. You should

also remove `panel.number` and `packet.number` from the argument list of your function to avoid a warning.

If these accessor functions are not enough for your needs, feel free to contact the maintainer and ask for more.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

Lattice, xyplot

G_Rows *Extract rows from a list*

Description

Convenience function to extract subset of a list. Usually used in creating keys.

Usage

```
Rows(x, which)
```

Arguments

x	list with each member a vector of the same length
which	index for members of x

Value

A list similar to x, with each `x[[i]]` replaced by `x[[i]][which]`

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

xyplot, Lattice

G_utilities.3d *Utility functions for 3-D plots*

Description

These are (related to) the default panel functions for cloud and wireframe.

Usage

```
ltransform3dMatrix(screen, R.mat)
ltransform3dto3d(x, R.mat, dist)
```

Arguments

x	x can be a numeric matrix with 3 rows for ltransform3dto3d
screen	list, as described in panel.cloud
R.mat	4x4 transformation matrix in homogeneous coordinates
dist	controls transformation to account for perspective viewing

Details

ltransform3dMatrix and ltransform3dto3d are utility functions to help in computation of projections. These functions are used inside the panel functions for cloud and wireframe. They may be useful in user-defined panel functions as well.

The first function takes a list of the form of the screen argument in cloud and wireframe and a R.mat, a 4x4 transformation matrix in homogeneous coordinates, to return a new 4x4 transformation matrix that is the result of applying R.mat followed by the rotations in screen. The second function applies a 4x4 transformation matrix in homogeneous coordinates to a 3xn matrix representing points in 3-D space, and optionally does some perspective computations. (There has been no testing with non-trivial transformation matrices, and my knowledge of the homogeneous coordinate system is very limited, so there may be bugs here.)

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

See Also

cloud, panel.cloud

H_barley *Yield data from a Minnesota barley trial*

Description

Total yield in bushels per acre for 10 varieties at 6 sites in each of two years.

Usage

```
barley
```

Format

A data frame with 120 observations on the following 4 variables.

yield Yield (averaged across three blocks) in bushels/acre.

variety Factor with levels `"Svansota"`, `"No. 462"`, `"Manchuria"`, `"No. 475"`, `"Velvet"`, `"Peatland"`, `"Glabron"`, `"No. 457"`, `"Wisconsin No. 38"`, `"Trebi"`.

year Factor with levels `1932`, `1931`

site Factor with 6 levels: `"Grand Rapids"`, `"Duluth"`, `"University Farm"`, `"Morris"`, `"Crookston"`, `"Waseca"`

Details

These data are yields in bushels per acre, of 10 varieties of barley grown in 1/40 acre plots at University Farm, St. Paul, and at the five branch experiment stations located at Waseca, Morris, Crookston, Grand Rapids, and Duluth (all in Minnesota). The varieties were grown in three randomized blocks at each of the six stations during 1931 and 1932, different land being used each year of the test.

Immer et al. (1934) present the data for each Year*Site*Variety*Block. The data here is the average yield across the three blocks.

Immer et al. (1934) refer (once) to the experiment as being conducted in 1930 and 1931, then later refer to it (repeatedly) as being conducted in 1931 and 1932. Later authors have continued the confusion.

Cleveland (1993) suggests that the data for the Morris site may have had the years switched.

Author(s)

Documentation contributed by Kevin Wright.

Source

Immer, R. F., H. K. Hayes, and LeRoy Powers. (1934). Statistical Determination of Barley Varietal Adaptation. *Journal of the American Society of Agronomy*, **26**, 403–419.

Wright, Kevin (2013). Revisiting Immer's Barley Data. *The American Statistician*, **67(3)**, 129–133.

References

Cleveland, William S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*. Hobart Press, Summit, New Jersey.

Fisher, R. A. (1971) *The Design of Experiments*. Hafner, New York, 9th edition.

See Also

immer in the MASS package for data from the same experiment (expressed as total yield for 3 blocks) for a subset of varieties.

Examples

```
# Graphic suggesting the Morris data switched the years 1931 and 1932
# Figure 1.1 from Cleveland
dotplot(variety ~ yield | site, data = barley, groups = year,
        key = simpleKey(levels(barley$year), space = "right"),
        xlab = "Barley Yield (bushels/acre) ",
        aspect=0.5, layout = c(1,6), ylab=NULL)
```

H_environmental *Atmospheric environmental conditions in New York City*

Description

Daily measurements of ozone concentration, wind speed, temperature and solar radiation in New York City from May to September of 1973.

Usage

```
environmental
```

Format

A data frame with 111 observations on the following 4 variables.

ozone Average ozone concentration (of hourly measurements) of in parts per billion.

radiation Solar radiation (from 08:00 to 12:00) in langleys.

temperature Maximum daily emperature in degrees Fahrenheit.

wind Average wind speed (at 07:00 and 10:00) in miles per hour.

Author(s)

Documentation contributed by Kevin Wright.

Source

Bruntz, S. M., W. S. Cleveland, B. Kleiner, and J. L. Warner. (1974). The Dependence of Ambient Ozone on Solar Radiation, Wind, Temperature, and Mixing Height. In *Symposium on Atmospheric Diffusion and Air Pollution*, pages 125–128. American Meterological Society, Boston.

References

Cleveland, William S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*. Hobart Press, Summit, New Jersey.

Examples

```
# Scatter plot matrix with loess lines
splom(~environmental,
  panel=function(x,y){
    panel.xyplot(x,y)
    panel.loess(x,y)
  }
)


# Conditioned plot similar to figure 5.3 from Cleveland
attach(environmental)
Temperature <- equal.count(temperature, 4, 1/2)
Wind <- equal.count(wind, 4, 1/2)
xyplot((ozone^(1/3)) ~ radiation | Temperature * Wind,
  aspect=1,
prepanel = function(x, y)
prepanel.loess(x, y, span = 1),
panel = function(x, y){
panel.grid(h = 2, v = 2)
panel.xyplot(x, y, cex = .5)
panel.loess(x, y, span = 1)
},
xlab = "Solar radiation (langleys)",
ylab = "Ozone (cube root ppb)")
detach()

# Similar display using the coplot function
with(environmental,{
  coplot((ozone^.33) ~ radiation | temperature * wind,
  number=c(4,4),
  panel = function(x, y, ...) panel.smooth(x, y, span = .8, ...),
  xlab="Solar radiation (langleys)",
  ylab="Ozone (cube root ppb)")
})
```

`H_ethanol` *Engine exhaust fumes from burning ethanol*

Description

Ethanol fuel was burned in a single-cylinder engine. For various settings of the engine compression and equivalence ratio, the emissions of nitrogen oxides were recorded.

Usage

```
ethanol
```

Format

A data frame with 88 observations on the following 3 variables.

NOx Concentration of nitrogen oxides (NO and NO2) in micrograms/J.

C Compression ratio of the engine.

E Equivalence ratio–a measure of the richness of the air and ethanol fuel mixture.

Author(s)

Documentation contributed by Kevin Wright.

Source

Brinkman, N.D. (1981) Ethanol Fuel—A Single-Cylinder Engine Study of Efficiency and Exhaust Emissions. *SAE transactions*, **90**, 1410–1424.

References

Cleveland, William S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*. Hobart Press, Summit, New Jersey.

Examples

```
## Constructing panel functions on the fly
EE <- equal.count(ethanol$E, number=9, overlap=1/4)
xyplot(NOx ~ C | EE, data = ethanol,
       prepanel = function(x, y) prepanel.loess(x, y, span = 1),
       xlab = "Compression ratio", ylab = "NOx (micrograms/J)",
       panel = function(x, y) {
           panel.grid(h=-1, v= 2)
           panel.xyplot(x, y)
           panel.loess(x,y, span=1)
       },
       aspect = "xy")

# Wireframe loess surface fit.  See Figure 4.61 from Cleveland.
require(stats)
with(ethanol, {
  eth.lo <- loess(NOx ~ C * E, span = 1/3, parametric = "C",
                  drop.square = "C", family="symmetric")
  eth.marginal <- list(C = seq(min(C), max(C), length.out = 25),
                       E = seq(min(E), max(E), length.out = 25))
  eth.grid <- expand.grid(eth.marginal)
  eth.fit <- predict(eth.lo, eth.grid)
  wireframe(eth.fit ~ eth.grid$C * eth.grid$E,
            shade=TRUE,
    screen = list(z = 40, x = -60, y=0),
    distance = .1,
    xlab = "C", ylab = "E", zlab = "NOx")
})
```

H_melanoma *Melanoma skin cancer incidence*

Description

These data from the Connecticut Tumor Registry present age-adjusted numbers of melanoma skin-cancer incidences per 100,000 people in Connectict for the years from 1936 to 1972.

Usage

```
melanoma
```

Format

A data frame with 37 observations on the following 2 variables.

year Years 1936 to 1972.

incidence Rate of melanoma cancer per 100,000 population.

Note

This dataset is not related to the melanoma dataset in the **boot** package with the same name.

The S-PLUS 6.2 help for the melanoma data says that the incidence rate is per *million*, but this is not consistent with data found at the National Cancer Institute (http://www.nci.nih.gov).

Author(s)

Documentation contributed by Kevin Wright.

Source

Houghton, A., E. W. Munster, and M. V. Viola. (1978). Increased Incidence of Malignant Melanoma After Peaks of Sunspot Activity. *The Lancet*, **8**, 759–760.

References

Cleveland, William S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*. Hobart Press, Summit, New Jersey.

Examples

```
# Time-series plot.  Figure 3.64 from Cleveland.
xyplot(incidence ~ year,
  data = melanoma,
aspect = "xy",
panel = function(x, y)
panel.xyplot(x, y, type="o", pch = 16),
ylim = c(0, 6),
xlab = "Year",
ylab = "Incidence")
```

H_singer *Heights of New York Choral Society singers*

Description

Heights in inches of the singers in the New York Choral Society in 1979. The data are grouped according to voice part. The vocal range for each voice part increases in pitch according to the following order: Bass 2, Bass 1, Tenor 2, Tenor 1, Alto 2, Alto 1, Soprano 2, Soprano 1.

Usage

```
singer
```

Format

A data frame with 235 observations on the following 2 variables.

height Height in inches of the singers.

voice.part (Unordered) factor with levels "Bass 2", "Bass 1", "Tenor 2", "Tenor 1", "Alto 2", "Alto 1", "Soprano 2", "Soprano 1".

Author(s)

Documentation contributed by Kevin Wright.

Source

Chambers, J.M., W. S. Cleveland, B. Kleiner, and P. A. Tukey. (1983). *Graphical Methods for Data Analysis*. Chapman and Hall, New York.

References

Cleveland, William S. (1993) *Visualizing Data*. Hobart Press, Summit, New Jersey.

Examples

```
# Separate histogram for each voice part (Figure 1.2 from Cleveland)
histogram(~ height | voice.part,
          data = singer,
          aspect=1,
          layout = c(2, 4),
          nint=15,
          xlab = "Height (inches)")

# Quantile-Quantile plot (Figure 2.11 from Cleveland)
qqmath(~ height | voice.part,
       data=singer,
       aspect=1,
       layout=c(2,4),
       prepanel = prepanel.qqmathline,
       panel = function(x, ...) {
         panel.grid()
         panel.qqmathline(x, ...)
         panel.qqmath(x, ...)
       },
       xlab = "Unit Normal Quantile",
       ylab="Height (inches)")
```

I_lset *Interface to modify Trellis Settings - Defunct*

Description

A (hopefully) simpler alternative to `trellis.par.get/set`. This is deprecated, and the same functionality is now available with `trellis.par.set`

Usage

```
lset(theme = col.whitebg())
```

Arguments

`theme`	a list decribing how to change the settings of the current active device. Valid components are those in the list returned by `trellis.par.get()`. Each component must itself be a list, with one or more of the appropriate components (need not have all components). Changes are made to the settings for the currently active device only.

Author(s)

Deepayan Sarkar <Deepayan.Sarkar@R-project.org>

Chapter 24

The mgcv package

---

anova.gam *Approximate hypothesis tests related to GAM fits*

Description

Performs hypothesis tests relating to one or more fitted gam objects. For a single fitted gam object, Wald tests of the significance of each parametric and smooth term are performed, so interpretation is analogous to drop1 rather than anova.lm (i.e. it's like type III ANOVA, rather than a sequential type I ANOVA). Otherwise the fitted models are compared using an analysis of deviance table: this latter approach should not be use to test the significance of terms which can be penalized to zero. See details.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
anova(object, ..., dispersion = NULL, test = NULL,
                    freq = FALSE,p.type=0)
## S3 method for class anova.gam
print(x, digits = max(3, getOption("digits") - 3),...)
```

Arguments

object,...	fitted model objects of class gam as produced by gam().
x	an anova.gam object produced by a single model call to anova.gam().
dispersion	a value for the dispersion parameter: not normally used.
test	what sort of test to perform for a multi-model call. One of "Chisq", "F" or "Cp".
freq	whether to use frequentist or Bayesian approximations for parametric term p-values. See summary.gam for details.
p.type	selects exact test statistic to use for single smooth term p-values. See summary.gam for details.
digits	number of digits to use when printing output.

Details

If more than one fitted model is provided than anova.glm is used, with the difference in model degrees of freedom being taken as the difference in effective degress of freedom. The p-values resulting from this are only approximate, and must be used with care. The approximation is most accurate when the comparison relates to unpenalized terms, or smoothers with a null space of dimension greater than zero. (Basically we require that the difference terms could be well approximated by unpenalized terms with degrees of freedom approximately the effective degrees of freedom). In simulations the p-values are usually slightly too low. For terms with a zero-dimensional null space (i.e. those which can be penalized to zero) the approximation is often very poor, and significance can be greatly overstated: i.e. p-values are often substantially too low. This case applies to random effect terms.

Note also that in the multi-model call to anova.gam, it is quite possible for a model with more terms to end up with lower effective degrees of freedom, but better fit, than the notionally null model with fewer terms. In such cases it is very rare that it makes sense to perform any sort of test, since there is then no basis on which to accept the notional null model.

If only one model is provided then the significance of each model term is assessed using Wald like tests, conditional on the smoothing parameter estimates: see summary.gam and Wood (2013a,b) for details. The p-values provided here are better justified than in the multi model case, and have close to the correct distribution under the null, unless smoothing parameters are poorly identified. ML or REML smoothing parameter selection leads to the best results in simulations as they tend to avoid occasional severe undersmoothing. In replication of the full simulation study of Scheipl et al. (2008) the tests give almost indistinguishable power to the method recommended there, but slightly too low p-values under the null in their section 3.1.8 test for a smooth interaction (the Scheipl et al. recommendation is not used directly, because it only applies in the Gaussian case, and requires model refits, but it is available in package RLRsim).

In the single model case print.anova.gam is used as the printing method.

By default the p-values for parametric model terms are also based on Wald tests using the Bayesian covariance matrix for the coefficients. This is appropriate when there are "re" terms present, and is otherwise rather similar to the results using the frequentist covariance matrix (freq=TRUE), since the parametric terms themselves are usually unpenalized. Default P-values for parameteric terms that are penalized using the paraPen argument will not be good.

Value

In the multi-model case anova.gam produces output identical to anova.glm, which it in fact uses.

In the single model case an object of class anova.gam is produced, which is in fact an object returned from summary.gam.

print.anova.gam simply produces tabulated output.

WARNING

If models 'a' and 'b' differ only in terms with no un-penalized components then p values from anova(a,b) are unreliable, and usually much too low.

Default P-values will usually be wrong for parametric terms penalized using 'paraPen': use freq=TRUE to obtain better p-values when the penalties are full rank and represent conventional random effects.

For a single model, interpretation is similar to drop1, not anova.lm.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org> with substantial improvements by Henric Nilsson.

References

Scheipl, F., Greven, S. and Kuchenhoff, H. (2008) Size and power of tests for a zero random effect variance or polynomial regression in additive and linear mixed models. Comp. Statist. Data Anal. 52, 3283-3299

Wood, S.N. (2013a) On p-values for smooth components of an extended generalized additive model. Biometrika 100:221-228

Wood, S.N. (2013b) A simple test for random effects in regression models. Biometrika 100:1005-1010

See Also

gam, predict.gam, gam.check, summary.gam

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
dat <- gamSim(5,n=200,scale=2)

b<-gam(y ~ x0 + s(x1) + s(x2) + s(x3),data=dat)
anova(b)
b1<-gam(y ~ x0 + s(x1) + s(x2),data=dat)
anova(b,b1,test="F")
```

---

bam *Generalized additive models for very large datasets*

Description

Fits a generalized additive model (GAM) to a very large data set, the term 'GAM' being taken to include any quadratically penalized GLM. The degree of smoothness of model terms is estimated as part of fitting. In use the function is much like gam, except that the numerical methods are designed for datasets containing upwards of several tens of thousands of data (see Wood, Goude and Shaw, 2014). The advantage of bam is much lower memory footprint than gam, but it can also be much faster, for large datasets. bam can also compute on a cluster set up by the parallel package.

Usage

```
bam(formula,family=gaussian(),data=list(),weights=NULL,subset=NULL,
    na.action=na.omit, offset=NULL,method="fREML",control=list(),
    scale=0,gamma=1,knots=NULL,sp=NULL,min.sp=NULL,paraPen=NULL,
    chunk.size=10000,rho=0,AR.start=NULL,sparse=FALSE,cluster=NULL,
    nthreads=NA,gc.level=1,use.chol=FALSE,samfrac=1,
    drop.unused.levels=TRUE,...)
```

Arguments

formula	A GAM formula (see formula.gam and also gam.models). This is exactly like the formula for a GLM except that smooth terms, s and te can be added to the right hand side to specify that the linear predictor depends on smooth functions of predictors (or linear functionals of these).
family	This is a family object specifying the distribution and link to use in fitting etc. See glm and family for more details. A negative binomial family is provided: see negbin, but only the known theta case is supported by bam.
data	A data frame or list containing the model response variable and covariates required by the formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula): typically the environment from which gam is called.
weights	prior weights on the contribution of the data to the log likelihood. Note that a weight of 2, for example, is equivalent to having made exactly the same observation twice. If you want to reweight the contributions of each datum without changing the overall magnitude of the log likelihood, then you should normalize the weights (e.g. weights <- weights/mean(weights)).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain 'NA's. The default is set by the 'na.action' setting of 'options', and is 'na.fail' if that is unset. The "factory-fresh" default is 'na.omit'.
offset	Can be used to supply a model offset for use in fitting. Note that this offset will always be completely ignored when predicting, unlike an offset included in formula: this conforms to the behaviour of lm and glm.
method	The smoothing parameter estimation method. "GCV.Cp" to use GCV for unknown scale parameter and Mallows' Cp/UBRE/AIC for known scale. "GACV.Cp" is equivalent, but using GACV in place of GCV. "REML" for REML estimation, including of unknown scale, "P-REML" for REML estimation, but using a Pearson estimate of the scale. "ML" and "P-ML" are similar, but using maximum likelihood in place of REML. Default "fREML" uses fast REML computation.
control	A list of fit control parameters to replace defaults returned by gam.control. Any control parameters not supplied stay at their default values.
scale	If this is positive then it is taken as the known scale parameter. Negative signals that the scale paraemter is unknown. 0 signals that the scale parameter is 1 for Poisson and binomial and unknown otherwise. Note that (RE)ML methods can only work with scale parameter 1 for the Poisson and binomial cases.
gamma	It is sometimes useful to inflate the model degrees of freedom in the GCV or UBRE/AIC score by a constant multiplier. This allows such a multiplier to be supplied.
knots	this is an optional list containing user specified knot values to be used for basis construction. For most bases the user simply supplies the knots to be used, which must match up with the k value supplied (note that the number of knots is not always just k). See tprs for what happens in the "tp"/"ts" case. Different terms can use different numbers of knots, unless they share a covariate.
sp	A vector of smoothing parameters can be provided here. Smoothing parameters must be supplied in the order that the smooth terms appear in the model formula. Negative elements indicate that the parameter should be estimated, and hence a

mixture of fixed and estimated parameters is possible. If smooths share smoothing parameters then `length(sp)` must correspond to the number of underlying smoothing parameters.

`min.sp` Lower bounds can be supplied for the smoothing parameters. Note that if this option is used then the smoothing parameters `full.sp`, in the returned object, will need to be added to what is supplied here to get the smoothing parameters actually multiplying the penalties. `length(min.sp)` should always be the same as the total number of penalties (so it may be longer than `sp`, if smooths share smoothing parameters).

`paraPen` optional list specifying any penalties to be applied to parametric model terms. `gam.models` explains more.

`chunk.size` The model matrix is created in chunks of this size, rather than ever being formed whole. Reset to `4*p` if `chunk.size < 4*p` where `p` is the number of coefficients.

`rho` An AR1 error model can be used for the residuals (based on dataframe order), of Gaussian-identity link models. This is the AR1 correlation parameter.

`AR.start` logical variable of same length as data, `TRUE` at first observation of an independent section of AR1 correlation. Very first observation in data frame does not need this. If `NULL` then there are no breaks in AR1 correlaion.

`sparse` If all smooths are P-splines and all tensor products are of the form `te(...,bs="ps",np=FALSE)` then in principle computation could be made faster using sparse matrix methods, and you could set this to `TRUE`. In practice the speed up is disappointing, and the computation is less well conditioned than the default. See details.

`cluster` `bam` can compute the computationally dominant QR decomposition in parallel using parLapply from the `parallel` package, if it is supplied with a cluster on which to do this (a cluster here can be some cores of a single machine). See details and example code.

`nthreads` Number of threads to use for non-cluster computation (e.g. combining results from cluster nodes). if `NA` set to `max(1,length(cluster))`.

`gc.level` to keep the memory footprint down, it helps to call the garbage collector often, but this takes a substatial amount of time. Setting this to zero means that garbage collection only happens when R decides it should. Setting to 2 gives frequent garbage collection. 1 is in between.

`use.chol` By default `bam` uses a very stable QR update approach to obtaining the QR decomposition of the model matrix. For well conditioned models an alternative accumulates the crossproduct of the model matrix and then finds its Choleski decomposition, at the end. This is somewhat more efficient, computationally.

`samfrac` For very large sample size Generalized additive models the number of iterations needed for the model fit can be reduced by first fitting a model to a random sample of the data, and using the results to supply starting values. This initial fit is run with sloppy convergence tolerances, so is typically very low cost. `samfrac` is the sampling fraction to use. 0.1 is often reasonable.

`drop.unused.levels` by default unused levels are dropped from factors before fitting. For some smooths involving factor variables you might want to turn this off. Only do so if you know what you are doing.

`...` further arguments for passing on e.g. to `gam.fit` (such as `mustart`).

Details

bam operates by first setting up the basis characteristics for the smooths, using a representative subsample of the data. Then the model matrix is constructed in blocks using predict.gam. For each block the factor R, from the QR decomposition of the whole model matrix is updated, along with Q'y. and the sum of squares of y. At the end of block processing, fitting takes place, without the need to ever form the whole model matrix.

In the generalized case, the same trick is used with the weighted model matrix and weighted pseudodata, at each step of the PIRLS. Smoothness selection is performed on the working model at each stage (performance oriented iteration), to maintain the small memory footprint. This is trivial to justify in the case of GCV or Cp/UBRE/AIC based model selection, and for REML/ML is justified via the asymptotic multivariate normality of Q'z where z is the IRLS pseudodata.

For full method details see Wood, Goude and Shaw (2014).

Note that POI is not as stable as the default nested iteration used with gam, but that for very large, information rich, datasets, this is unlikely to matter much.

Note also that it is possible to spend most of the computational time on basis evaluation, if an expensive basis is used. In practice this means that the default "tp" basis should be avoided: almost any other basis (e.g. "cr" or "ps") can be used in the 1D case, and tensor product smooths (te) are typically much less costly in the multi-dimensional case.

If cluster is provided as a cluster set up using makeCluster (or makeForkCluster) from the parallel package, then the rate limiting QR decomposition of the model matrix is performed in parallel using this cluster. Note that the speed ups are often not that great. On a multi-core machine it is usually best to set the cluster size to the number of physical cores, which is often less than what is reported by detectCores. Using more than the number of physical cores can result in no speed up at all (or even a slow down). Note that a highly parallel BLAS may negate all advantage from using a cluster of cores. Computing in parallel of course requires more memory than computing in series. See examples.

If the argument sparse=TRUE then QR updating is replaced by an alternative scheme, in which the model matrix is stored whole as a sparse matrix. This only makes sense if all smooths are P-splines and all tensor products are of the form te(...,bs="ps",np=FALSE), but no check is made. The computations are then based on the Choleski decomposition of the crossproduct of the sparse model matrix. Although this crossproduct is nearly dense, sparsity should make its formation efficient, which is useful as it is the leading order term in the operations count. However there is no benefit in using sparse methods to form the Choleski decomposition, given that the crossproduct is dense. In practice the sparse matrix handling overheads mean that modest or no speed ups are produced by this approach, while the computation is less stable than the default, and the memory footprint often higher (but please let the author know if you find an example where the speedup is really worthwhile).

Value

An object of class "gam" as described in gamObject.

WARNINGS

The routine will be slow if the default "tp" basis is used.

You must have more unique combinations of covariates than the model has total parameters. (Total parameters is sum of basis dimensions plus sum of non-spline terms less the number of spline terms).

This routine is less stable than 'gam' for the same dataset.

The negbin family is only supported for the *known theta* case.

AIC computation does not currently take account of an AR1 model, if used.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N., Goude, Y. & Shaw S. (2014) Generalized additive models for large datasets. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series C, in press.

See Also

mgcv.parallel, mgcv-package, gamObject, gam.models, smooth.terms, linear.functional.terms, s, te predict.gam, plot.gam, summary.gam, gam.side, gam.selection, gam.control gam.check, linear.functional.terms negbin, magic,vis.gam

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## See help("mgcv-parallel") for using bam in parallel

## Some examples are marked Not run purely to keep
## checking load on CRAN down. Sample sizes are small for
## the same reason.

set.seed(3)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=25000,dist="normal",scale=20)
bs <- "cr";k <- 12
b <- bam(y ~ s(x0,bs=bs)+s(x1,bs=bs)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)+
           s(x3,bs=bs),data=dat)
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1,rug=FALSE)  ## plot smooths, but not rug
plot(b,pages=1,rug=FALSE,seWithMean=TRUE) ## with intercept CIs

## Not run:
ba <- bam(y ~ s(x0,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x1,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)+
            s(x3,bs=bs,k=k),data=dat,method="GCV.Cp") ## use GCV
summary(ba)
## End(Not run)

## A Poisson example...

k <- 15
dat <- gamSim(1,n=21000,dist="poisson",scale=.1)

system.time(b1 <- bam(y ~ s(x0,bs=bs)+s(x1,bs=bs)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k),
            data=dat,family=poisson()))
b1


## Sparse smoother example...
## Not run:
dat <- gamSim(1,n=10000,dist="poisson",scale=.1)
system.time( b3 <- bam(y ~ te(x0,x1,bs="ps",k=10,np=FALSE)+
             s(x2,bs="ps",k=30)+s(x3,bs="ps",k=30),data=dat,
```

```
              method="REML",family=poisson(),sparse=TRUE))
b3
## End(Not run)
```

`bam.update` *Update a strictly additive bam model for new data.*

Description

Gaussian with identity link models fitted by `bam` can be efficiently updated as new data becomes available, by simply updating the QR decomposition on which estimation is based, and re-optimizing the smoothing parameters, starting from the previous estimates. This routine implements this.

Usage

```
bam.update(b,data,chunk.size=10000)
```

Arguments

`b`	A `gam` object fitted by `bam` and representing a strictly additive model (i.e. `gaussian` errors, `identity` link).
`data`	Extra data to augment the original data used to obtain `b`. Must include a `weights` column if the original fit was weighted and a `AR.start` column if `AR.start` was non `NULL` in original fit.
`chunk.size`	size of subsets of data to process in one go when getting fitted values.

Details

`bam.update` updates the QR decomposition of the (weighted) model matrix of the GAM represented by `b` to take account of the new data. The orthogonal factor multiplied by the response vector is also updated. Given these updates the model and smoothing parameters can be re-estimated, as if the whole dataset (original and the new data) had been fitted in one go. The function will use the same AR1 model for the residuals as that employed in the original model fit (see `rho` parameter of `bam`).

Note that there may be small numerical differences in fit between fitting the data all at once, and fitting in stages by updating, if the smoothing bases used have any of their details set with reference to the data (e.g. default knot locations).

Value

An object of class `"gam"` as described in `gamObject`.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

mgcv-package, bam

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## following is not *very* large, for obvious reasons...
set.seed(8)
n <- 5000
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,dist="normal",scale=5)
dat[c(50,13,3000,3005,3100),]<- NA
dat1 <- dat[(n-999):n,]
dat0 <- dat[1:(n-1000),]
bs <- "ps";k <- 20
method <- "GCV.Cp"
b <- bam(y ~ s(x0,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x1,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)+
           s(x3,bs=bs,k=k),data=dat0,method=method)

b1 <- bam.update(b,dat1)

b2 <- bam.update(bam.update(b,dat1[1:500,]),dat1[501:1000,])

b3 <- bam(y ~ s(x0,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x1,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)+
           s(x3,bs=bs,k=k),data=dat,method=method)
b1;b2;b3

## example with AR1 errors...

e <- rnorm(n)
for (i in 2:n) e[i] <- e[i-1]*.7 + e[i]
dat$y <- dat$f + e*3
dat[c(50,13,3000,3005,3100),]<- NA
dat1 <- dat[(n-999):n,]
dat0 <- dat[1:(n-1000),]
method <- "ML"

b <- bam(y ~ s(x0,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x1,bs=bs,k=k)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)+
           s(x3,bs=bs,k=k),data=dat0,method=method,rho=0.7)

b1 <- bam.update(b,dat1)


summary(b1);summary(b2);summary(b3)
```

---

betar *GAM beta regression family*

Description

Family for use with gam, implementing regression for beta distributed data on (0,1). A linear predictor controls the mean, μ of the beta distribution, while the variance is then $\mu(1-\mu)/(1+\phi)$, with parameter ϕ being estimated during fitting, alongside the smoothing parameters.

Usage

```
betar(theta = NULL, link = "logit")
```

Arguments

theta	the extra parameter (ϕ above).
link	The link function: one of "logit", "probit", "cloglog" and "cauchit".

Details

These models are useful for proportions data which can not be modelled as binomial. Note the assumption that data are in (0,1), despite the fact that for some parameter values 0 and 1 are perfectly legitimate observations. The restriction is needed to keep the log likelihood bounded for all parameter values. Any data exactly at 0 or 1 are reset to be just above 0 or just below 1.

Value

An object of class extended.family.

Author(s)

Natalya Pya (nyp20@bath.ac.uk) and Simon Wood (s.wood@r-project.org)

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## Simulate some beta data...
set.seed(3);n<-400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n)
mu <- binomial()$linkinv(dat$f/4-2)
phi <- .5
a <- mu*phi;b <- phi - a;
dat$y <- rbeta(n,a,b)

bm <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=betar(link="logit"),data=dat)

bm
plot(bm,pages=1)
```

---

choose.k *Basis dimension choice for smooths*

Description

Choosing the basis dimension, and checking the choice, when using penalized regression smoothers.

Penalized regression smoothers gain computational efficiency by virtue of being defined using a basis of relatively modest size, k. When setting up models in the mgcv package, using s or te terms in a model formula, k must be chosen: the defaults are essentially arbitrary.

In practice k-1 (or k) sets the upper limit on the degrees of freedom associated with an s smooth (1 degree of freedom is usually lost to the identifiability constraint on the smooth). For te smooths

the upper limit of the degrees of freedom is given by the product of the k values provided for each marginal smooth less one, for the constraint. However the actual effective degrees of freedom are controlled by the degree of penalization selected during fitting, by GCV, AIC, REML or whatever is specified. The exception to this is if a smooth is specified using the fx=TRUE option, in which case it is unpenalized.

So, exact choice of k is not generally critical: it should be chosen to be large enough that you are reasonably sure of having enough degrees of freedom to represent the underlying 'truth' reasonably well, but small enough to maintain reasonable computational efficiency. Clearly 'large' and 'small' are dependent on the particular problem being addressed.

As with all model assumptions, it is useful to be able to check the choice of k informally. If the effective degrees of freedom for a model term are estimated to be much less than k-1 then this is unlikely to be very worthwhile, but as the EDF approach k-1, checking can be important. A useful general purpose approach goes as follows: (i) fit your model and extract the deviance residuals; (ii) for each smooth term in your model, fit an equivalent, single, smooth to the residuals, using a substantially increased k to see if there is pattern in the residuals that could potentially be explained by increasing k. Examples are provided below.

The obvious, but more costly, alternative is simply to increase the suspect k and refit the original model. If there are no statistically important changes as a result of doing this, then k was large enough. (Change in the smoothness selection criterion, and/or the effective degrees of freedom, when k is increased, provide the obvious numerical measures for whether the fit has changed substantially.)

gam.check runs a simple simulation based check on the basis dimensions, which can help to flag up terms for which k is too low. Grossly too small k will also be visible from partial residuals available with plot.gam.

One scenario that can cause confusion is this: a model is fitted with k=10 for a smooth term, and the EDF for the term is estimated as 7.6, some way below the maximum of 9. The model is then refitted with k=20 and the EDF increases to 8.7 - what is happening - how come the EDF was not 8.7 the first time around? The explanation is that the function space with k=20 contains a larger subspace of functions with EDF 8.7 than did the function space with k=10: one of the functions in this larger subspace fits the data a little better than did any function in the smaller subspace. These subtleties seldom have much impact on the statistical conclusions to be drawn from a model fit, however.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. CRC.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

Examples

```
## Simulate some data ....
library(mgcv)
set.seed(1)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,scale=2)

## fit a GAM with quite low k
b<-gam(y~s(x0,k=6)+s(x1,k=6)+s(x2,k=6)+s(x3,k=6),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1,residuals=TRUE) ## hint of a problem in s(x2)
```

```
## the following suggests a problem with s(x2)
gam.check(b)

## Another approach (see below for more obvious method)....
## check for residual pattern, removeable by increasing k
## typically k, below, chould be substantially larger than
## the original, k but certainly less than n/2.
## Note use of cheap "cs" shrinkage smoothers, and gamma=1.4
## to reduce chance of overfitting...
rsd <- residuals(b)
gam(rsd~s(x0,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine
gam(rsd~s(x1,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine
gam(rsd~s(x2,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## k too low
gam(rsd~s(x3,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine

## refit...
b <- gam(y~s(x0,k=6)+s(x1,k=6)+s(x2,k=20)+s(x3,k=6),data=dat)
gam.check(b) ## better

## similar example with multi-dimensional smooth
b1 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1,x2,k=15)+s(x3),data=dat)
rsd <- residuals(b1)
gam(rsd~s(x0,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine
gam(rsd~s(x1,x2,k=100,bs="ts"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## k too low
gam(rsd~s(x3,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine

gam.check(b1) ## shows same problem

## and a te example
b2 <- gam(y~s(x0)+te(x1,x2,k=4)+s(x3),data=dat)
rsd <- residuals(b2)
gam(rsd~s(x0,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine
gam(rsd~te(x1,x2,k=10,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## k too low
gam(rsd~s(x3,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine

gam.check(b2) ## shows same problem

## same approach works with other families in the original model
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,scale=.25,dist="poisson")
bp<-gam(y~s(x0,k=5)+s(x1,k=5)+s(x2,k=5)+s(x3,k=5),
        family=poisson,data=dat,method="ML")

gam.check(bp)

rsd <- residuals(bp)
gam(rsd~s(x0,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine
gam(rsd~s(x1,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine
gam(rsd~s(x2,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## k too low
gam(rsd~s(x3,k=40,bs="cs"),gamma=1.4,data=dat) ## fine

rm(dat)

## More obvious, but more expensive tactic... Just increase
## suspicious k until fit is stable.

set.seed(0)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,scale=2)
```

```
## fit a GAM with quite low k
b <- gam(y~s(x0,k=6)+s(x1,k=6)+s(x2,k=6)+s(x3,k=6),
         data=dat,method="REML")
b
## edf for 3rd smooth is highest as proportion of k -- increase k
b <- gam(y~s(x0,k=6)+s(x1,k=6)+s(x2,k=12)+s(x3,k=6),
         data=dat,method="REML")
b
## edf substantially up, -ve REML substantially down
b <- gam(y~s(x0,k=6)+s(x1,k=6)+s(x2,k=24)+s(x3,k=6),
         data=dat,method="REML")
b
## slight edf increase and -ve REML change
b <- gam(y~s(x0,k=6)+s(x1,k=6)+s(x2,k=40)+s(x3,k=6),
         data=dat,method="REML")
b
## defintely stabilized (but really k around 20 would have been fine)
```

`columb` *Reduced version of Columbus OH crime data*

Description

By district crime data from Columbus OH, together with polygons describing district shape. Useful for illustrating use of simple Markov Random Field smoothers.

Usage

```
data(columb)
data(columb.polys)
```

Format

`columb` is a 49 row data frame with the following columns

area land area of district

home.value housing value in 1000USD.

income household income in 1000USD.

crime residential burglaries and auto thefts per 1000 households.

open.space measure of open space in district.

district code identifying district, and matching `names(columb.polys)`.

`columb.polys` contains the polygons defining the areas in the format described below.

Details

The data frame `columb` relates to the districts whose boundaries are coded in `columb.polys`. `columb.polys[[i]]` is a 2 column matrix, containing the vertices of the polygons defining the boundary of the ith district. `columb.polys[[2]]` has an artificial hole inserted to illustrate how holes in districts can be spefified. Different polygons defining the boundary of a district are separated by NA rows in `columb.polys[[1]]`, and a polygon enclosed within another is treated as a hole in that region (a hole should never come first). `names(columb.polys)` matches `columb$district` (order unimportant).

Source

The data are adapted from the columbus example in the spdep package, where the original source is given as:

Anselin, Luc. 1988. Spatial econometrics: methods and models. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic, Table 12.1 p. 189.

Examples

```
## see ?mrf help files
```

---

concurvity *GAM concurvity measures*

Description

Produces summary measures of concurvity between gam components.

Usage

```
concurvity(b,full=TRUE)
```

Arguments

b	An object inheriting from class "gam".
full	If TRUE then concurvity of each term with the whole of the rest of the model is considered. If FALSE then pairwise concurvity measures between each smooth term (as well as the parametric component) are considered.

Details

Concurvity occurs when some smooth term in a model could be approximated by one or more of the other smooth terms in the model. This is often the case when a smooth of space is included in a model, along with smooths of other covariates that also vary more or less smoothly in space. Similarly it tends to be an issue in models including a smooth of time, along with smooths of other time varying covariates.

Concurvity can be viewed as a generalization of co-linearity, and causes similar problems of interpretation. It can also make estimates somewhat unstable (so that they become sensitive to apparently innocuous modelling details, for example).

This routine computes three related indices of concurvity, all bounded between 0 and 1, with 0 indicating no problem, and 1 indicating total lack of identifiability. The three indices are all based on the idea that a smooth term, f, in the model can be decomposed into a part, g, that lies entirely in the space of one or more other terms in the model, and a remainder part that is completely within the term's own space. If g makes up a large part of f then there is a concurvity problem. The indices used are all based on the square of ||g||/||f||, that is the ratio of the squared Euclidean norms of the vectors of f and g evaluated at the observed covariate values.

The three measures are as follows

worst This is the largest value that the square of ||g||/||f|| could take for any coefficient vector. This is a fairly pessimistic measure, as it looks at the worst case irrespective of data. This is the only measure that is symmetric.

observed This just returns the value of the square of ||g||/||f|| according to the estimated coefficients. This could be a bit over-optimistic about the potential for a problem in some cases.

estimate This is the squared F-norm of the basis for g divided by the F-norm of the basis for f. It is a measure of the extent to which the f basis can be explained by the g basis. It does not suffer from the pessimism or potential for over-optimism of the previous two measures, but is less easy to understand.

Value

If `full=TRUE` a matrix with one column for each term and one row for each of the 3 concurvity measures detailed below. If `full=FALSE` a list of 3 matrices, one for each of the three concurvity measures detailed below. Each row of the matrix relates to how the model terms depend on the model term supplying that rows name.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## simulate data with concurvity...
set.seed(8);n<- 200
f2 <- function(x) 0.2 * x^11 * (10 * (1 - x))^6 + 10 *
            (10 * x)^3 * (1 - x)^10
t <- sort(runif(n)) ## first covariate
## make covariate x a smooth function of t + noise...
x <- f2(t) + rnorm(n)*3
## simulate response dependent on t and x...
y <- sin(4*pi*t) + exp(x/20) + rnorm(n)*.3

## fit model...
b <- gam(y ~ s(t,k=15) + s(x,k=15),method="REML")

## assess concurvity between each term and rest of model...
concurvity(b)

## ... and now look at pairwise concurvity between terms...
concurvity(b,full=FALSE)
```

---

cox.ph *Additive Cox Proportional Hazard Model*

Description

The `cox.ph` family implements the Cox Proportional Hazards model with Peto's correction for ties, and estimation by penalized partial likelihood maximization, for use with `gam`. In the model formula, event time is the response. The `weights` vector provides the censoring information (0 for censoring, 1 for event).

Usage

```
cox.ph(link="identity")
```

Arguments

link	currently (and possibly for ever) only "identity" supported.

Details

Used with gam to fit Cox Proportional Hazards models to survival data. The model formula will have event/censoring times on the left hand side and the linear predictor specification on the right hand side. Censoring information is provided by the weights argument to gam, with 1 indicating an event and 0 indicating censoring.

Prediction from the fitted model object (using the predict method) with type="response" will predict on the survivor function scale. See example code below for extracting the baseline hazard/survival directly. Martingale or deviance residuals can be extracted. The fitted.values stored in the model object are survival function estimates for each subject at their event/censoring time.

Estimation of model coefficients is by maximising the log-partial likelihood penalized by the smoothing penalties. See e.g. Hastie and Tibshirani, 1990, section 8.3. for the partial likelihood used (with Peto's approximation for ties), but note that optimization of the partial likelihood does not follow Hastie and Tibshirani. See Klein amd Moeschberger (2003) for estimation of residuals, the baseline hazard, survival function and associated standard errors.

The percentage deviance explained reported for Cox PH models is based on the sum of squares of the deviance residuals, as the model deviance, and the sum of squares of the deviance residuals when the covariate effects are set to zero, as the null deviance. The same baseline hazard estimate is used for both.

Value

An object inheriting from class general.family.

References

Hastie and Tibshirani (1990) Generalized Additive Models, Chapman and Hall.

Klein, J.P and Moeschberger, M.L. (2003) Survival Analysis: Techniques for Censored and Truncated Data (2nd ed.) Springer.

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
library(survival) ## for data
col1 <- colon[colon$etype==1,] ## concentrate on single event
col1$differ <- as.factor(col1$differ)
col1$sex <- as.factor(col1$sex)

b <- gam(time~s(age,by=sex)+sex+s(nodes)+perfor+rx+obstruct+adhere,
         family=cox.ph(),data=col1,weights=status)

summary(b)

plot(b,pages=1,all.terms=TRUE) ## plot effects

plot(b$linear.predictors,residuals(b))
```

```
## plot survival function for patient j...

np <- 300;j <- 6
newd <- data.frame(time=seq(0,3000,length=np))
dname <- names(col1)
for (n in dname) newd[[n]] <- rep(col1[[n]][j],np)
newd$time <- seq(0,3000,length=np)
fv <- predict(b,newdata=newd,type="response",se=TRUE)
plot(newd$time,fv$fit,type="l",ylim=c(0,1),xlab="time",ylab="survival")
lines(newd$time,fv$fit+2*fv$se.fit,col=2)
lines(newd$time,fv$fit-2*fv$se.fit,col=2)

## crude plot of baseline survival...

plot(b$family$data$tr,exp(-b$family$data$h),type="l",ylim=c(0,1),
     xlab="time",ylab="survival")
lines(b$family$data$tr,exp(-b$family$data$h + 2*b$family$data$q^.5),col=2)
lines(b$family$data$tr,exp(-b$family$data$h - 2*b$family$data$q^.5),col=2)
lines(b$family$data$tr,exp(-b$family$data$km),lty=2) ## Kaplan Meier

## Simple simulated known truth example...
ph.weibull.sim <- function(eta,gamma=1,h0=.01,t1=100) {
  lambda <- h0*exp(eta)
  n <- length(eta)
  U <- runif(n)
  t <- (-log(U)/lambda)^(1/gamma)
  d <- as.numeric(t <= t1)
  t[!d] <- t1
  list(t=t,d=d)
}
n <- 500;set.seed(2)
x0 <- runif(n, 0, 1);x1 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
x2 <- runif(n, 0, 1);x3 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
f0 <- function(x) 2 * sin(pi * x)
f1 <- function(x) exp(2 * x)
f2 <- function(x) 0.2*x^11*(10*(1-x))^6+10*(10*x)^3*(1-x)^10
f3 <- function(x) 0*x
f <- f0(x0) + f1(x1) + f2(x2)
g <- (f-mean(f))/5
surv <- ph.weibull.sim(g)
surv$x0 <- x0;surv$x1 <- x1;surv$x2 <- x2;surv$x3 <- x3

b <- gam(t~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2,k=15)+s(x3),family=cox.ph,weights=d,data=surv)

plot(b,pages=1)
```

`cSplineDes` *Evaluate cyclic B spline basis*

Description

Uses `splineDesign` to set up the model matrix for a cyclic B-spline basis.

Usage

```
cSplineDes(x, knots, ord = 4)
```

Arguments

x	covariate values for smooth.
knots	The knot locations: the range of these must include all the data.
ord	order of the basis. 4 is a cubic spline basis. Must be >1.

Details

The routine is a wrapper that sets up a B-spline basis, where the basis functions wrap at the first and last knot locations.

Value

A matrix with `length(x)` rows and `length(knots)-1` columns.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

cyclic.p.spline

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
## create some xs and knots...
n <- 200
x <- 0:(n-1)/(n-1);k<- 0:5/5
X <- cSplineDes(x,k) ## cyclic spline design matrix
## plot evaluated basis functions...
plot(x,X[,1],type="l"); for (i in 2:5) lines(x,X[,i],col=i)
## check that the ends match up....
ee <- X[1,]-X[n,];ee
tol <- .Machine$double.eps^.75
if (all.equal(ee,ee*0,tolerance=tol)!=TRUE)
  stop("cyclic spline ends dont match!")

## similar with uneven data spacing...
x <- sort(runif(n)) + 1 ## sorting just makes end checking easy
k <- seq(min(x),max(x),length=8) ## create knots
X <- cSplineDes(x,k) ## get cyclic spline model matrix
plot(x,X[,1],type="l"); for (i in 2:ncol(X)) lines(x,X[,i],col=i)
ee <- X[1,]-X[n,];ee ## do ends match??
tol <- .Machine$double.eps^.75
if (all.equal(ee,ee*0,tolerance=tol)!=TRUE)
  stop("cyclic spline ends dont match!")
```

`exclude.too.far` *Exclude prediction grid points too far from data*

Description

Takes two arrays defining the nodes of a grid over a 2D covariate space and two arrays defining the location of data in that space, and returns a logical vector with elements `TRUE` if the corresponding node is too far from data and `FALSE` otherwise. Basically a service routine for `vis.gam` and `plot.gam`.

Usage

```
exclude.too.far(g1,g2,d1,d2,dist)
```

Arguments

`g1`	co-ordinates of grid relative to first axis.
`g2`	co-ordinates of grid relative to second axis.
`d1`	co-ordinates of data relative to first axis.
`d2`	co-ordinates of data relative to second axis.
`dist`	how far away counts as too far. Grid and data are first scaled so that the grid lies exactly in the unit square, and `dist` is a distance within this unit square.

Details

Linear scalings of the axes are first determined so that the grid defined by the nodes in `g1` and `g2` lies exactly in the unit square (i.e. on [0,1] by [0,1]). These scalings are applied to `g1`, `g2`, `d1` and `d2`. The minimum Euclidean distance from each node to a datum is then determined and if it is greater than `dist` the corresponding entry in the returned array is set to `TRUE` (otherwise to `FALSE`). The distance calculations are performed in compiled code for speed without storage overheads.

Value

A logical array with `TRUE` indicating a node in the grid defined by `g1`, `g2` that is 'too far' from any datum.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

`vis.gam`

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
x<-rnorm(100);y<-rnorm(100) # some "data"
n<-40 # generate a grid....
mx<-seq(min(x),max(x),length=n)
my<-seq(min(y),max(y),length=n)
gx<-rep(mx,n);gy<-rep(my,rep(n,n))
tf<-exclude.too.far(gx,gy,x,y,0.1)
plot(gx[!tf],gy[!tf],pch=".");points(x,y,col=2)
```

---

extract.lme.cov *Extract the data covariance matrix from an lme object*

Description

This is a service routine for gamm. Extracts the estimated covariance matrix of the data from an lme object, allowing the user control about which levels of random effects to include in this calculation. extract.lme.cov forms the full matrix explicitly: extract.lme.cov2 tries to be more economical than this.

Usage

```
extract.lme.cov(b,data,start.level=1)
extract.lme.cov2(b,data,start.level=1)
```

Arguments

b	A fitted model object returned by a call to lme.
data	The data frame/ model frame that was supplied to lme.
start.level	The level of nesting at which to start including random effects in the calculation. This is used to allow smooth terms to be estimated as random effects, but treated like fixed effects for variance calculations.

Details

The random effects, correlation structure and variance structure used for a linear mixed model combine to imply a covariance matrix for the response data being modelled. These routines extracts that covariance matrix. The process is slightly complicated, because different components of the fitted model object are stored in different orders (see function code for details!).

The extract.lme.cov calculation is not optimally efficient, since it forms the full matrix, which may in fact be sparse. extract.lme.cov2 is more efficient. If the covariance matrix is diagonal, then only the leading diagonal is returned; if it can be written as a block diagonal matrix (under some permutation of the original data) then a list of matrices defining the non-zero blocks is returned along with an index indicating which row of the original data each row/column of the block diagonal matrix relates to. The block sizes are defined by the coarsest level of grouping in the random effect structure.

gamm uses extract.lme.cov2.

extract.lme.cov does not currently deal with the situation in which the grouping factors for a correlation structure are finer than those for the random effects. extract.lme.cov2 does deal with this situation.

Value

For `extract.lme.cov` an estimated covariance matrix.

For `extract.lme.cov2` a list containing the estimated covariance matrix and an indexing array. The covariance matrix is stored as the elements on the leading diagonal, a list of the matrices defining a block diagonal matrix, or a full matrix if the previous two options are not possible.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

For `lme` see:

Pinheiro J.C. and Bates, D.M. (2000) Mixed effects Models in S and S-PLUS. Springer

For details of how GAMMs are set up here for estimation using `lme` see:

Wood, S.N. (2006) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for Generalized Additive Mixed Models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

or

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

`gamm`, `formXtViX`

Examples

```
## see also ?formXtViX for use of extract.lme.cov2
require(mgcv)
library(nlme)
data(Rail)
b <- lme(travel~1,Rail,~1|Rail)
extract.lme.cov(b,Rail)
```

---

family.mgcv *Distribution families in mgcv*

Description

As well as the standard families documented in `family` (see also `glm`) which can be used with functions `gam`, `bam` and `gamm`, `mgcv` also supplies some extra families, most of which are currently only usable with `gam`. These are described here.

Details

The following families are in the exponential family given the value of a single parameter. They are usable with all modelling functions.

- `Tweedie` An exponential family distribution for which the variance of the response is given by the mean response to the power `p`. `p` is in (1,2) and must be supplied. See `tw` to estimate `p`.
- `negbin` The negative binomial. See `nb` to estimate the `theta` parameter of the negative binomial.

The following families are for regression type models dependent on a single linear predictor, and with a log likelihood which is a sum of independent terms, each coprresponding to a single response observation. Usable only with `gam`, with smoothing parameter estimation by `"REML"` or `"ML"` (the latter does not integrate the unpenalized and parameteric effects out of the marginal likelihood optimized for the smoothing parameters).

- `ocat` for ordered categorical data.
- `tw` for Tweedie distributed data, when the power parameter relating the variance to the mean is to be estimated.
- `nb` for negative binomial data when the `theta` parameter is to be estimated.
- `betar` for proportions data on (0,1) when the binomial is not appropriate.
- `scat` scaled t for heavy tailed data that would otherwise be modelled as Gaussian.
- `ziP` for zero inflated Poisson data, when the zero inflation rate depends simply on the Poisson mean.

The following families implement more general model classes. Usable only with `gam` and only with REML smoothing parameter estimation.

- `cox.ph` the Cox Proportional Hazards model for survival data.
- `gaulss` a Gaussian location-scale model where the mean and the standard deviation are both modelled using smooth linear predictors.
- `ziplss` a 'two-stage' zero inflated Poisson model, in which 'potential-presence' is modelled with one linear predictor, and Poisson mean abundance given potential presence is modelled with a second linear predictor.
- `mvn` multivariate normal additive models.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood (s.wood@r-project.org) & Natalya Pya

`fix.family.link` *Modify families for use in GAM fitting and checking*

Description

Generalized Additive Model fitting by 'outer' iteration, requires extra derivatives of the variance and link functions to be added to family objects. The first 3 functions add what is needed. Model checking can be aided by adding quantile and random deviate generating functions to the family. The final two functions do this.

Usage

```
fix.family.link(fam)
fix.family.var(fam)
fix.family.ls(fam)
fix.family.qf(fam)
fix.family.rd(fam)
```

Arguments

fam	A family.

Details

Consider the first 3 function first.

Outer iteration GAM estimation requires derivatives of the GCV, UBRE/gAIC, GACV, REML or ML score, which are obtained by finding the derivatives of the model coefficients w.r.t. the log smoothing parameters, using the implicit function theorem. The expressions for the derivatives require the second and third derivatives of the link w.r.t. the mean (and the 4th derivatives if Fisher scoring is not used). Also required are the first and second derivatives of the variance function w.r.t. the mean (plus the third derivative if Fisher scoring is not used). Finally REML or ML estimation of smoothing parameters requires the log saturated likelihood and its first two derivatives w.r.t. the scale parameter. These functions add functions evaluating these quantities to a family.

If the family already has functions dvar, d2var, d3var, d2link, d3link, d4link and for RE/ML ls, then these functions simply return the family unmodified: this allows non-standard links to be used with gam when using outer iteration (performance iteration operates with unmodified families). Note that if you only need Fisher scoring then d4link and d3var can be dummy, as they are ignored. similalry ls is only needed for RE/ML.

The dvar function is a function of a mean vector, mu, and returns a vector of corresponding first derivatives of the family variance function. The d2link function is also a function of a vector of mean values, mu: it returns a vector of second derivatives of the link, evaluated at mu. Higher derivatives are defined similarly.

If modifying your own family, note that you can often get away with supplying only a dvar and d2var, function if your family only requires links that occur in one of the standard families.

The second two functions are useful for investigating the distribution of residuals and are used by qq.gam. If possible the functions add quantile (qf) or random deviate (rd) generating functions to the family. If a family already has qf or rd functions then it is left unmodified. qf functions are only available for some families, and for quasi families neither type of function is available.

Value

A family object with extra component functions dvar, d2var, d2link, d3link, d4link, ls, and possibly qf and rd, depending on which functions are called.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

gam.fit3, qq.gam

`fixDependence` *Detect linear dependencies of one matrix on another*

Description

Identifies columns of a matrix `X2` which are linearly dependent on columns of a matrix `X1`. Primarily of use in setting up identifiability constraints for nested GAMs.

Usage

```
fixDependence(X1,X2,tol=.Machine$double.eps^.5,rank.def=0,strict=FALSE)
```

Arguments

`X1`	A matrix.
`X2`	A matrix, the columns of which may be partially linearly dependent on the columns of `X1`.
`tol`	The tolerance to use when assessing linear dependence.
`rank.def`	If the degree of rank deficiency in `X2`, given `X1`, is known, then it can be supplied here, and `tol` is then ignored. Unused unless positive and not greater than the number of columns in `X2`.
`strict`	if `TRUE` then only columns individually dependent on `X1` are detected, if `FALSE` then enough columns to make the reduced `X2` full rank and independent of `X1` are detected.

Details

The algorithm uses a simple approach based on QR decomposition: see Wood (2006, section 4.10.2) for details.

Value

A vector of the columns of `X2` which are linearly dependent on columns of `X1` (or which need to be deleted to acheive independence and full rank if `strict==FALSE`). `NULL` if the two matrices are independent.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
n<-20;c1<-4;c2<-7
X1<-matrix(runif(n*c1),n,c1)
X2<-matrix(runif(n*c2),n,c2)
X2[,3]<-X1[,2]+X2[,4]*.1
X2[,5]<-X1[,1]*.2+X1[,2]*.04
fixDependence(X1,X2)
fixDependence(X1,X2,strict=TRUE)
```

---

formula.gam *GAM formula*

Description

Description of gam formula (see Details), and how to extract it from a fitted gam object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
formula(x,...)
```

Arguments

x	fitted model objects of class gam (see gamObject) as produced by gam().
...	un-used in this case

Details

The formula supplied to gam is exactly like that supplied to glm except that smooth terms, s and te can be added to the right hand side (and . is not supported in gam formulae).

Smooth terms are specified by expressions of the form:
s(x1,x2,...,k=12,fx=FALSE,bs="tp",by=z,id=1)
where x1, x2, etc. are the covariates which the smooth is a function of, and k is the dimension of the basis used to represent the smooth term. If k is not specified then basis specific defaults are used. Note that these defaults are essentially arbitrary, and it is important to check that they are not so small that they cause oversmoothing (too large just slows down computation). Sometimes the modelling context suggests sensible values for k, but if not informal checking is easy: see choose.k and gam.check.

fx is used to indicate whether or not this term should be unpenalized, and therefore have a fixed number of degrees of freedom set by k (almost always k-1). bs indicates the basis to use for the smooth: the built in options are described in smooth.terms, and user defined smooths can be added (see user.defined.smooth). If bs is not supplied then the default "tp" (tprs) basis is used. by can be used to specify a variable by which the smooth should be multiplied. For example gam(y~s(x,by=z)) would specify a model $E(y) = f(x)z$ where $f(\cdot)$ is a smooth function. The by option is particularly useful for models in which different functions of the same variable are required for each level of a factor and for 'varying coefficient models': see gam.models. id is used to give smooths identities: smooths with the same identity have the same basis, penalty and smoothing parameter (but different coefficients, so they are different functions).

An alternative for specifying smooths of more than one covariate is e.g.:
te(x,z,bs=c("tp","tp"),m=c(2,3),k=c(5,10))

which would specify a tensor product smooth of the two covariates x and z constructed from marginal t.p.r.s. bases of dimension 5 and 10 with marginal penalties of order 2 and 3. Any combination of basis types is possible, as is any number of covariates. te provides further information. ti terms are a variant designed to be used as interaction terms when the main effects (and any lower order interactions) are present. t2 produces tensor product smooths that are the natural low rank analogue of smoothing spline anova models.

s, te, ti and t2 terms accept an sp argument of supplied smoothing parameters: positive values are taken as fixed values to be used, negative to indicate that the parameter should be estimated. If sp is supplied then it over-rides whatever is in the sp argument to gam, if it is not supplied then it defaults to all negative, but does not over-ride the sp argument to gam.

Formulae can involve nested or "overlapping" terms such as
y~s(x)+s(z)+s(x,z) or y~s(x,z)+s(z,v)
but nested models should really be set up using ti terms: see gam.side for further details and examples.

Smooth terms in a gam formula will accept matrix arguments as covariates (and corresponding by variable), in which case a 'summation convention' is invoked. Consider the example of s(X,Z,by=L) where X, Z and L are n by m matrices. Let F be the n by m matrix that results from evaluating the smooth at the values in X and Z. Then the contribution to the linear predictor from the term will be rowSums(F*L) (note the element-wise multiplication). This convention allows the linear predictor of the GAM to depend on (a discrete approximation to) any linear functional of a smooth: see linear.functional.terms for more information and examples (including functional linear models/signal regression).

Note that gam allows any term in the model formula to be penalized (possibly by multiple penalties), via the paraPen argument. See gam.models for details and example code.

Value

Returns the model formula, x$formula. Provided so that anova methods print an appropriate description of the model.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

gam

---

formXtViX *Form component of GAMM covariance matrix*

Description

This is a service routine for gamm. Given, V, an estimated covariance matrix obtained using extract.lme.cov2 this routine forms a matrix square root of $X^TV^{-1}X$ as efficiently as possible, given the structure of V (usually sparse).

Usage

```
formXtViX(V,X)
```

Arguments

V	A data covariance matrix list returned from extract.lme.cov2
X	A model matrix.

Details

The covariance matrix returned by extract.lme.cov2 may be in a packed and re-ordered format, since it is usually sparse. Hence a special service routine is required to form the required products involving this matrix.

Value

A matrix, R such that crossprod(R) gives $X^T V^{-1} X$.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

For lme see:

Pinheiro J.C. and Bates, D.M. (2000) Mixed effects Models in S and S-PLUS. Springer

For details of how GAMMs are set up for estimation using lme see:

Wood, S.N. (2006) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for Generalized Additive Mixed Models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gamm, extract.lme.cov2

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
library(nlme)
data(ergoStool)
b <- lme(effort ~ Type, data=ergoStool, random=~1|Subject)
V1 <- extract.lme.cov(b, ergoStool)
V2 <- extract.lme.cov2(b, ergoStool)
X <- model.matrix(b, data=ergoStool)
crossprod(formXtViX(V2, X))
t(X)
```

`fs.test` *FELSPLINE test function*

Description

Implements a finite area test function based on one proposed by Tim Ramsay (2002).

Usage

```
fs.test(x,y,r0=.1,r=.5,l=3,b=1,exclude=TRUE)
fs.boundary(r0=.1,r=.5,l=3,n.theta=20)
```

Arguments

`x,y`	Points at which to evaluate the test function.
`r0`	The test domain is a sort of bent sausage. This is the radius of the inner bend
`r`	The radius of the curve at the centre of the sausage.
`l`	The length of an arm of the sausage.
`b`	The rate at which the function increases per unit increase in distance along the centre line of the sausage.
`exclude`	Should exterior points be set to `NA`?
`n.theta`	How many points to use in a piecewise linear representation of a quarter of a circle, when generating the boundary curve.

Details

The function details are not given in the source article: but this is pretty close. The function is modified from Ramsay (2002), in that it bulges, rather than being flat: this makes a better test of the smoother.

Value

`fs.test` returns function evaluations, or `NA`s for points outside the boundary. `fs.boundary` returns a list of `x,y` points to be jointed up in order to define/draw the boundary.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

References

Tim Ramsay (2002) "Spline smoothing over difficult regions" J.R.Statist. Soc. B 64(2):307-319

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
## plot the function, and its boundary...
fsb <- fs.boundary()
m<-300;n<-150
xm <- seq(-1,4,length=m);yn<-seq(-1,1,length=n)
xx <- rep(xm,n);yy<-rep(yn,rep(m,n))
tru <- matrix(fs.test(xx,yy),m,n) ## truth
image(xm,yn,tru,col=heat.colors(100),xlab="x",ylab="y")
lines(fsb$x,fsb$y,lwd=3)
contour(xm,yn,tru,levels=seq(-5,5,by=.25),add=TRUE)
```

---

full.score *GCV/UBRE score for use within nlm*

Description

Evaluates GCV/UBRE score for a GAM, given smoothing parameters. The routine calls gam.fit to fit the model, and is usually called by nlm to optimize the smoothing parameters.

This is basically a service routine for gam, and is not usually called directly by users. It is only used in this context for GAMs fitted by outer iteration (see gam.outer) when the the outer method is "nlm.fd" (see gam argument optimizer).

Usage

```
full.score(sp,G,family,control,gamma,...)
```

Arguments

sp	The logs of the smoothing parameters
G	a list returned by mgcv:::gam.setup
family	The family object for the GAM.
control	a list returned be gam.control
gamma	the degrees of freedom inflation factor (usually 1).
...	other arguments, typically for passing on to gam.fit.

Value

The value of the GCV/UBRE score, with attribute "full.gam.object" which is the full object returned by gam.fit.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

gam *Generalized additive models with integrated smoothness estimation*

Description

Fits a generalized additive model (GAM) to data, the term 'GAM' being taken to include any quadratically penalized GLM and a variety of other models estimated by a quadratically penalised likelihood type approach (see family.mgcv). The degree of smoothness of model terms is estimated as part of fitting. gam can also fit any GLM subject to multiple quadratic penalties (including estimation of degree of penalization). Isotropic or scale invariant smooths of any number of variables are available as model terms, as are linear functionals of such smooths; confidence/credible intervals are readily available for any quantity predicted using a fitted model; gam is extendable: users can add smooths.

Smooth terms are represented using penalized regression splines (or similar smoothers) with smoothing parameters selected by GCV/UBRE/AIC/REML or by regression splines with fixed degrees of freedom (mixtures of the two are permitted). Multi-dimensional smooths are available using penalized thin plate regression splines (isotropic) or tensor product splines (when an isotropic smooth is inappropriate). For an overview of the smooths available see smooth.terms. For more on specifying models see gam.models, random.effects and linear.functional.terms. For more on model selection see gam.selection. Do read gam.check and choose.k.

See gam from package gam, for GAMs via the original Hastie and Tibshirani approach (see details for differences to this implementation).

For very large datasets see bam, for mixed GAM see gamm and random.effects.

Usage

```
gam(formula,family=gaussian(),data=list(),weights=NULL,subset=NULL,
    na.action,offset=NULL,method="GCV.Cp",
    optimizer=c("outer","newton"),control=list(),scale=0,
    select=FALSE,knots=NULL,sp=NULL,min.sp=NULL,H=NULL,gamma=1,
    fit=TRUE,paraPen=NULL,G=NULL,in.out,drop.unused.levels=TRUE,...)
```

Arguments

formula	A GAM formula (see formula.gam and also gam.models). This is exactly like the formula for a GLM except that smooth terms, s, te, ti and t2, can be added to the right hand side to specify that the linear predictor depends on smooth functions of predictors (or linear functionals of these).
family	This is a family object specifying the distribution and link to use in fitting etc (see glm and family). See family.mgcv for a full list of what is available, which goes well beyond exponential family. Note that quasi families actually result in the use of extended quasi-likelihood if method is set to a RE/ML method (McCullagh and Nelder, 1989, 9.6).
data	A data frame or list containing the model response variable and covariates required by the formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula): typically the environment from which gam is called.
weights	prior weights on the contribution of the data to the log likelihood. Note that a weight of 2, for example, is equivalent to having made exactly the same observation twice. If you want to reweight the contributions of each datum without

changing the overall magnitude of the log likelihood, then you should normalize the weights (e.g. `weights <- weights/mean(weights)`).

`subset` an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.

`na.action` a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain 'NA's. The default is set by the 'na.action' setting of 'options', and is 'na.fail' if that is unset. The "factory-fresh" default is 'na.omit'.

`offset` Can be used to supply a model offset for use in fitting. Note that this offset will always be completely ignored when predicting, unlike an offset included in `formula`: this conforms to the behaviour of `lm` and `glm`.

`control` A list of fit control parameters to replace defaults returned by `gam.control`. Values not set assume default values.

`method` The smoothing parameter estimation method. `"GCV.Cp"` to use GCV for unknown scale parameter and Mallows' Cp/UBRE/AIC for known scale. `"GACV.Cp"` is equivalent, but using GACV in place of GCV. `"REML"` for REML estimation, including of unknown scale, `"P-REML"` for REML estimation, but using a Pearson estimate of the scale. `"ML"` and `"P-ML"` are similar, but using maximum likelihood in place of REML. Beyond the exponential family `"REML"` is the default, and the only other option is `"ML"`.

`optimizer` An array specifying the numerical optimization method to use to optimize the smoothing parameter estimation criterion (given by `method`). `"perf"` for performance iteration. `"outer"` for the more stable direct approach. `"outer"` can use several alternative optimizers, specified in the second element of `optimizer`: `"newton"` (default), `"bfgs"`, `"optim"`, `"nlm"` and `"nlm.fd"` (the latter is based entirely on finite differenced derivatives and is very slow).

`scale` If this is positive then it is taken as the known scale parameter. Negative signals that the scale parameter is unknown. 0 signals that the scale parameter is 1 for Poisson and binomial and unknown otherwise. Note that (RE)ML methods can only work with scale parameter 1 for the Poisson and binomial cases.

`select` If this is `TRUE` then `gam` can add an extra penalty to each term so that it can be penalized to zero. This means that the smoothing parameter estimation that is part of fitting can completely remove terms from the model. If the corresponding smoothing parameter is estimated as zero then the extra penalty has no effect.

`knots` this is an optional list containing user specified knot values to be used for basis construction. For most bases the user simply supplies the knots to be used, which must match up with the `k` value supplied (note that the number of knots is not always just `k`). See `tprs` for what happens in the `"tp"/"ts"` case. Different terms can use different numbers of knots, unless they share a covariate.

`sp` A vector of smoothing parameters can be provided here. Smoothing parameters must be supplied in the order that the smooth terms appear in the model formula. Negative elements indicate that the parameter should be estimated, and hence a mixture of fixed and estimated parameters is possible. If smooths share smoothing parameters then `length(sp)` must correspond to the number of underlying smoothing parameters.

`min.sp` Lower bounds can be supplied for the smoothing parameters. Note that if this option is used then the smoothing parameters `full.sp`, in the returned object, will need to be added to what is supplied here to get the smoothing parameters actually multiplying the penalties. `length(min.sp)` should always be the same as the total number of penalties (so it may be longer than `sp`, if smooths share smoothing parameters).

H	A user supplied fixed quadratic penalty on the parameters of the GAM can be supplied, with this as its coefficient matrix. A common use of this term is to add a ridge penalty to the parameters of the GAM in circumstances in which the model is close to un-identifiable on the scale of the linear predictor, but perfectly well defined on the response scale.
gamma	It is sometimes useful to inflate the model degrees of freedom in the GCV or UBRE/AIC score by a constant multiplier. This allows such a multiplier to be supplied.
fit	If this argument is TRUE then gam sets up the model and fits it, but if it is FALSE then the model is set up and an object G containing what would be required to fit is returned is returned. See argument G.
paraPen	optional list specifying any penalties to be applied to parametric model terms. gam.models explains more.
G	Usually NULL, but may contain the object returned by a previous call to gam with fit=FALSE, in which case all other arguments are ignored except for gamma, in.out, scale, control, method optimizer and fit.
in.out	optional list for initializing outer iteration. If supplied then this must contain two elements: sp should be an array of initialization values for all smoothing parameters (there must be a value for all smoothing parameters, whether fixed or to be estimated, but those for fixed s.p.s are not used); scale is the typical scale of the GCV/UBRE function, for passing to the outer optimizer, or the the initial value of the scale parameter, if this is to be estimated by RE/ML.
drop.unused.levels	by default unused levels are dropped from factors before fitting. For some smooths involving factor variables you might want to turn this off. Only do so if you know what you are doing.
...	further arguments for passing on e.g. to gam.fit (such as mustart).

Details

A generalized additive model (GAM) is a generalized linear model (GLM) in which the linear predictor is given by a user specified sum of smooth functions of the covariates plus a conventional parametric component of the linear predictor. A simple example is:

$$\log(E(y_i)) = f_1(x_{1i}) + f_2(x_{2i})$$

where the (independent) response variables $y_i \sim$ Poi, and f_1 and f_2 are smooth functions of covariates x_1 and x_2. The log is an example of a link function.

If absolutely any smooth functions were allowed in model fitting then maximum likelihood estimation of such models would invariably result in complex overfitting estimates of f_1 and f_2. For this reason the models are usually fit by penalized likelihood maximization, in which the model (negative log) likelihood is modified by the addition of a penalty for each smooth function, penalizing its 'wiggliness'. To control the tradeoff between penalizing wiggliness and penalizing badness of fit each penalty is multiplied by an associated smoothing parameter: how to estimate these parameters, and how to practically represent the smooth functions are the main statistical questions introduced by moving from GLMs to GAMs.

The mgcv implementation of gam represents the smooth functions using penalized regression splines, and by default uses basis functions for these splines that are designed to be optimal, given the number basis functions used. The smooth terms can be functions of any number of covariates and the user has some control over how smoothness of the functions is measured.

gam in mgcv solves the smoothing parameter estimation problem by using the Generalized Cross Validation (GCV) criterion

$$nD/(n - DoF)^2$$

or an Un-Biased Risk Estimator (UBRE)criterion

$$D/n + 2sDoF/n - s$$

where D is the deviance, n the number of data, s the scale parameter and DoF the effective degrees of freedom of the model. Notice that UBRE is effectively just AIC rescaled, but is only used when s is known.

Alternatives are GACV, or a Laplace approximation to REML. There is some evidence that the latter may actually be the most effective choice. The main computational challenge solved by the mgcv package is to optimize the smoothness selection criteria efficiently and reliably. Various alternative numerical methods are provided which can be set by argument optimizer.

Broadly gam works by first constructing basis functions and one or more quadratic penalty coefficient matrices for each smooth term in the model formula, obtaining a model matrix for the strictly parametric part of the model formula, and combining these to obtain a complete model matrix (/design matrix) and a set of penalty matrices for the smooth terms. Some linear identifiability constraints are also obtained at this point. The model is fit using gam.fit, gam.fit3 or varaints, which are modifications of glm.fit. The GAM penalized likelihood maximization problem is solved by Penalized Iteratively Reweighted Least Squares (P-IRLS) (see e.g. Wood 2000). Smoothing parameter selection is integrated in one of two ways. (i) 'Performance iteration' uses the fact that at each P-IRLS iteration a penalized weighted least squares problem is solved, and the smoothing parameters of that problem can estimated by GCV or UBRE. Eventually, in most cases, both model parameter estimates and smoothing parameter estimates converge. (ii) Alternatively the P-IRLS scheme is iterated to convergence for each trial set of smoothing parameters, and GCV, UBRE or REML scores are only evaluated on convergence - optimization is then 'outer' to the P-IRLS loop: in this case the P-IRLS iteration has to be differentiated, to facilitate optimization, and gam.fit3 or one of its variants is used in place of gam.fit. The default is the second method, outer iteration.

Several alternative basis-penalty types are built in for representing model smooths, but alternatives can easily be added (see smooth.terms for an overview and smooth.construct for how to add smooth classes). The choice of the basis dimension (k in the s, te, ti and t2 terms) is something that should be considered carefully (the exact value is not critical, but it is important not to make it restrictively small, nor very large and computationally costly). The basis should be chosen to be larger than is believed to be necessary to approximate the smooth function concerned. The effective degrees of freedom for the smooth will then be controlled by the smoothing penalty on the term, and (usually) selected automatically (with an upper limit set by k-1 or occasionally k). Of course the k should not be made too large, or computation will be slow (or in extreme cases there will be more coefficients to estimate than there are data).

Note that gam assumes a very inclusive definition of what counts as a GAM: basically any penalized GLM can be used: to this end gam allows the non smooth model components to be penalized via argument paraPen and allows the linear predictor to depend on general linear functionals of smooths, via the summation convention mechanism described in linear.functional.terms. link{family.mgcv} details what is available beyond GLMs and the exponential family.

Details of the default underlying fitting methods are given in Wood (2011 and 2004). Some alternative methods are discussed in Wood (2000 and 2006).

gam() is not a clone of Trevor Hastie's original (as supplied in S-PLUS or package gam). The major differences are (i) that by default estimation of the degree of smoothness of model terms is part of model fitting, (ii) a Bayesian approach to variance estimation is employed that makes for easier confidence interval calculation (with good coverage probabilities), (iii) that the model can depend on any (bounded) linear functional of smooth terms, (iv) the parametric part of the model can be

penalized, (v) simple random effects can be incorporated, and (vi) the facilities for incorporating smooths of more than one variable are different: specifically there are no `lo` smooths, but instead (a) `s` terms can have more than one argument, implying an isotropic smooth and (b) `te`, `ti` or `t2` smooths are provided as an effective means for modelling smooth interactions of any number of variables via scale invariant tensor product smooths. Splines on the sphere, Duchon splines and Gaussian Markov Random Fields are also available. (vii) Models beyond the exponential family are available. See gam from package `gam`, for GAMs via the original Hastie and Tibshirani approach.

Value

If `fit=FALSE` the function returns a list `G` of items needed to fit a GAM, but doesn't actually fit it.

Otherwise the function returns an object of class `"gam"` as described in `gamObject`.

WARNINGS

The default basis dimensions used for smooth terms are essentially arbitrary, and it should be checked that they are not too small. See `choose.k` and `gam.check`.

You must have more unique combinations of covariates than the model has total parameters. (Total parameters is sum of basis dimensions plus sum of non-spline terms less the number of spline terms).

Automatic smoothing parameter selection is not likely to work well when fitting models to very few response data.

For data with many zeroes clustered together in the covariate space it is quite easy to set up GAMs which suffer from identifiability problems, particularly when using Poisson or binomial families. The problem is that with e.g. log or logit links, mean value zero corresponds to an infinite range on the linear predictor scale.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

Front end design inspired by the S function of the same name based on the work of Hastie and Tibshirani (1990). Underlying methods owe much to the work of Wahba (e.g. 1990) and Gu (e.g. 2002).

References

Key References on this implementation:

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

Wood, S.N. (2004) Stable and efficient multiple smoothing parameter estimation for generalized additive models. J. Amer. Statist. Ass. 99:673-686. [Default method for additive case by GCV (but no longer for generalized)]

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

Wood, S.N. (2006a) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for generalized additive mixed models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

Wood S.N. (2006b) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

Wood S.N., F. Scheipl and J.J. Faraway (2012) Straightforward intermediate rank tensor product smoothing in mixed models. Statistical Computing.

Marra, G and S.N. Wood (2012) Coverage Properties of Confidence Intervals for Generalized Additive Model Components. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics, 39(1), 53-74.

Key Reference on GAMs and related models:

Hastie (1993) in Chambers and Hastie (1993) Statistical Models in S. Chapman and Hall.

Hastie and Tibshirani (1990) Generalized Additive Models. Chapman and Hall.

Wahba (1990) Spline Models of Observational Data. SIAM

Wood, S.N. (2000) Modelling and Smoothing Parameter Estimation with Multiple Quadratic Penalties. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 62(2):413-428 [The original mgcv paper, but no longer the default methods.]

Background References:

Green and Silverman (1994) Nonparametric Regression and Generalized Linear Models. Chapman and Hall.

Gu and Wahba (1991) Minimizing GCV/GML scores with multiple smoothing parameters via the Newton method. SIAM J. Sci. Statist. Comput. 12:383-398

Gu (2002) Smoothing Spline ANOVA Models, Springer.

McCullagh and Nelder (1989) Generalized Linear Models 2nd ed. Chapman & Hall.

O'Sullivan, Yandall and Raynor (1986) Automatic smoothing of regression functions in generalized linear models. J. Am. Statist.Ass. 81:96-103

Wood (2001) mgcv:GAMs and Generalized Ridge Regression for R. R News 1(2):20-25

Wood and Augustin (2002) GAMs with integrated model selection using penalized regression splines and applications to environmental modelling. Ecological Modelling 157:157-177

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

mgcv-package, gamObject, gam.models, smooth.terms, linear.functional.terms, s, te predict.gam, plot.gam, summary.gam, gam.side, gam.selection, gam.control gam.check, linear.functional.terms negbin, magic,vis.gam

Examples

```
## see also examples in ?gam.models (e.g. by variables,
## random effects and tricks for large binary datasets)

library(mgcv)
set.seed(2) ## simulate some data...
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,dist="normal",scale=2)
b <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat)
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1,residuals=TRUE)  ## show partial residuals
plot(b,pages=1,seWithMean=TRUE) ## with intercept CIs
## run some basic model checks, including checking
## smoothing basis dimensions...
gam.check(b)

## same fit in two parts .....
G <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),fit=FALSE,data=dat)
b <- gam(G=G)
print(b)

## change the smoothness selection method to REML
```

```
b0 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,method="REML")
## use alternative plotting scheme, and way intervals include
## smoothing parameter uncertainty...
plot(b0,pages=1,scheme=1,unconditional=TRUE)

## Would a smooth interaction of x0 and x1 be better?
## Use tensor product smooth of x0 and x1, basis
## dimension 49 (see ?te for details, also ?t2).
bt <- gam(y~te(x0,x1,k=7)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,
          method="REML")
plot(bt,pages=1)
plot(bt,pages=1,scheme=2) ## alternative visualization
AIC(b0,bt) ## interaction worse than additive

## Alternative: test for interaction with a smooth ANOVA
## decomposition (this time between x2 and x1)
bt <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3)+ti(x1,x2,k=6),
            data=dat,method="REML")
summary(bt)

## If it is believed that x0 and x1 are naturally on
## the same scale, and should be treated isotropically
## then could try...
bs <- gam(y~s(x0,x1,k=40)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,
          method="REML")
plot(bs,pages=1)
AIC(b0,bt,bs) ## additive still better.

## Now do automatic terms selection as well
b1 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,
       method="REML",select=TRUE)
plot(b1,pages=1)


## set the smoothing parameter for the first term, estimate rest ...
bp <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),sp=c(0.01,-1,-1,-1),data=dat)
plot(bp,pages=1,scheme=1)
## alternatively...
bp <- gam(y~s(x0,sp=.01)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat)


# set lower bounds on smoothing parameters ....
bp<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),
        min.sp=c(0.001,0.01,0,10),data=dat)
print(b);print(bp)

# same with REML
bp<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),
        min.sp=c(0.1,0.1,0,10),data=dat,method="REML")
print(b0);print(bp)


## now a GAM with 3df regression spline term & 2 penalized terms

b0 <- gam(y~s(x0,k=4,fx=TRUE,bs="tp")+s(x1,k=12)+s(x2,k=15),data=dat)
plot(b0,pages=1)
```

```
## now simulate poisson data...
dat <- gamSim(1,n=2000,dist="poisson",scale=.1)

## use "cr" basis to save time, with 2000 data...
b2<-gam(y~s(x0,bs="cr")+s(x1,bs="cr")+s(x2,bs="cr")+
        s(x3,bs="cr"),family=poisson,data=dat,method="REML")
plot(b2,pages=1)

## drop x3, but initialize sps from previous fit, to
## save more time...

b2a<-gam(y~s(x0,bs="cr")+s(x1,bs="cr")+s(x2,bs="cr"),
         family=poisson,data=dat,method="REML",
         in.out=list(sp=b2$sp[1:3],scale=1))
par(mfrow=c(2,2))
plot(b2a)

par(mfrow=c(1,1))
## similar example using performance iteration
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,dist="poisson",scale=.25)

b3<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=poisson,
        data=dat,optimizer="perf")
plot(b3,pages=1)

## repeat using GACV as in Wood 2008...

b4<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=poisson,
        data=dat,method="GACV.Cp",scale=-1)
plot(b4,pages=1)

## repeat using REML as in Wood 2011...

b5<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=poisson,
        data=dat,method="REML")
plot(b5,pages=1)


## a binary example (see later for large dataset version)...

dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,dist="binary",scale=.33)

lr.fit <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=binomial,
              data=dat,method="REML")

## plot model components with truth overlaid in red
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
fn <- c("f0","f1","f2","f3");xn <- c("x0","x1","x2","x3")
for (k in 1:4) {
  plot(lr.fit,residuals=TRUE,select=k)
  ff <- dat[[fn[k]]];xx <- dat[[xn[k]]]
  ind <- sort.int(xx,index.return=TRUE)$ix
  lines(xx[ind],(ff-mean(ff))[ind]*.33,col=2)
}
par(op)
anova(lr.fit)
lr.fit1 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2),family=binomial,
```

```
               data=dat,method="REML")
lr.fit2 <- gam(y~s(x1)+s(x2),family=binomial,
               data=dat,method="REML")
AIC(lr.fit,lr.fit1,lr.fit2)

## For a Gamma example, see ?summary.gam...

## For inverse Gaussian, see ?rig

## now 2D smoothing...

eg <- gamSim(2,n=500,scale=.1)
attach(eg)

op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2),mar=c(4,4,1,1))

contour(truth$x,truth$z,truth$f) ## contour truth
b4 <- gam(y~s(x,z),data=data) ## fit model
fit1 <- matrix(predict.gam(b4,pr,se=FALSE),40,40)
contour(truth$x,truth$z,fit1)   ## contour fit
persp(truth$x,truth$z,truth$f)    ## persp truth
vis.gam(b4)                     ## persp fit
detach(eg)
par(op)

##################################################
## largish dataset example with user defined knots
##################################################

par(mfrow=c(2,2))
n <- 5000
eg <- gamSim(2,n=n,scale=.5)
attach(eg)

ind<-sample(1:n,200,replace=FALSE)
b5<-gam(y~s(x,z,k=40),data=data,
        knots=list(x=data$x[ind],z=data$z[ind]))
## various visualizations
vis.gam(b5,theta=30,phi=30)
plot(b5)
plot(b5,scheme=1,theta=50,phi=20)
plot(b5,scheme=2)

par(mfrow=c(1,1))
## and a pure "knot based" spline of the same data
b6<-gam(y~s(x,z,k=64),data=data,knots=list(x= rep((1:8-0.5)/8,8),
        z=rep((1:8-0.5)/8,rep(8,8))))
vis.gam(b6,color="heat",theta=30,phi=30)

## varying the default large dataset behaviour via xt
b7 <- gam(y~s(x,z,k=40,xt=list(max.knots=500,seed=2)),data=data)
vis.gam(b7,theta=30,phi=30)
detach(eg)
```

gam.check *Some diagnostics for a fitted gam model*

Description

Takes a fitted gam object produced by gam() and produces some diagnostic information about the fitting procedure and results. The default is to produce 4 residual plots, some information about the convergence of the smoothness selection optimization, and to run diagnostic tests of whether the basis dimension choises are adequate.

Usage

```
gam.check(b, old.style=FALSE,
          type=c("deviance","pearson","response"),
          k.sample=5000,k.rep=200,
          rep=0, level=.9, rl.col=2, rep.col="gray80", ...)
```

Arguments

b	a fitted gam object as produced by gam().
old.style	If you want old fashioned plots, exactly as in Wood, 2006, set to TRUE.
type	type of residuals, see residuals.gam, used in all plots.
k.sample	Above this k testing uses a random sub-sample of data.
k.rep	how many re-shuffles to do to get p-value for k testing.
rep, level, rl.col, rep.col	arguments passed to qq.gam() when old.style is false, see there.
...	extra graphics parameters to pass to plotting functions.

Details

Checking a fitted gam is like checking a fitted glm, with two main differences. Firstly, the basis dimensions used for smooth terms need to be checked, to ensure that they are not so small that they force oversmoothing: the defaults are arbitrary. choose.k provides more detail, but the diagnostic tests described below and reported by this function may also help. Secondly, fitting may not always be as robust to violation of the distributional assumptions as would be the case for a regular GLM, so slightly more care may be needed here. In particular, the thoery of quasi-likelihood implies that if the mean variance relationship is OK for a GLM, then other departures from the assumed distribution are not problematic: GAMs can sometimes be more sensitive. For example, un-modelled overdispersion will typically lead to overfit, as the smoothness selection criterion tries to reduce the scale parameter to the one specified. Similarly, it is not clear how sensitive REML and ML smoothness selection will be to deviations from the assumed response dsistribution. For these reasons this routine uses an enhanced residual QQ plot.

This function plots 4 standard diagnostic plots, some smoothing parameter estimation convergence information and the results of tests which may indicate if the smoothing basis dimension for a term is too low.

Usually the 4 plots are various residual plots. For the default optimization methods the convergence information is summarized in a readable way, but for other optimization methods, whatever is returned by way of convergence diagnostics is simply printed.

The test of whether the basis dimension for a smooth is adequate is based on computing an estimate of the residual variance based on differencing residuals that are near neighbours according to the (numeric) covariates of the smooth. This estimate divided by the residual variance is the `k-index` reported. The further below 1 this is, the more likely it is that there is missed pattern left in the residuals. The `p-value` is computed by simulation: the residuals are randomly re-shuffled `k.rep` times to obtain the null distribution of the differencing variance estimator, if there is no pattern in the residuals. For models fitted to more than `k.sample` data, the tests are based of `k.sample` randomly sampled data. Low p-values may indicate that the basis dimension, `k`, has been set too low, especially if the reported `edf` is close to `k\`, the maximum possible EDF for the term. Note the disconcerting fact that if the test statistic itself is based on random resampling and the null is true, then the associated p-values will of course vary widely from one replicate to the next. Currently smooths of factor variables are not supported and will give an `NA` p-value.

Doubling a suspect `k` and re-fitting is sensible: if the reported `edf` increases substantially then you may have been missing something in the first fit. Of course p-values can be low for reasons other than a too low `k`. See `choose.k` for fuller discussion.

The QQ plot produced is usually created by a call to `qq.gam`, and plots deviance residuals against approximate theoretical quantilies of the deviance residual distribution, according to the fitted model. If this looks odd then investigate further using `qq.gam`. Note that residuals for models fitted to binary data contain very little information useful for model checking (it is necessary to find some way of aggregating them first), so the QQ plot is unlikely to be useful in this case.

Value

A vector of reference quantiles for the residual distribution, if these can be computed.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

References

N.H. Augustin, E-A Sauleaub, S.N. Wood (2012) On quantile quantile plots for generalized linear models. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis. 56(8), 2404-3409.

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

`http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/`

See Also

`choose.k`, `gam`, `magic`

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=200)
b<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)
gam.check(b,pch=19,cex=.3)
```

gam.control *Setting GAM fitting defaults*

Description

This is an internal function of package mgcv which allows control of the numerical options for fitting a GAM. Typically users will want to modify the defaults if model fitting fails to converge, or if the warnings are generated which suggest a loss of numerical stability during fitting. To change the default choise of fitting method, see gam arguments method and optimizer.

Usage

```
gam.control(nthreads=1,irls.reg=0.0,epsilon = 1e-07, maxit = 200,
            mgcv.tol=1e-7,mgcv.half=15, trace = FALSE,
            rank.tol=.Machine$double.eps^0.5,
            nlm=list(),optim=list(),newton=list(),
            outerPIsteps=0,idLinksBases=TRUE,scalePenalty=TRUE,
            keepData=FALSE,scale.est="pearson")
```

Arguments

nthreads	Some parts of some smoothing parameter selection methods (e.g. REML) can use some parallelization in the C code if your R installation supports openMP, and nthreads is set to more than 1. Note that it is usually better to use the number of physical cores here, rather than the number of hyper-threading cores.
irls.reg	For most models this should be 0. The iteratively re-weighted least squares method by which GAMs are fitted can fail to converge in some circumstances. For example, data with many zeroes can cause problems in a model with a log link, because a mean of zero corresponds to an infinite range of linear predictor values. Such convergence problems are caused by a fundamental lack of identifiability, but do not show up as lack of identifiability in the penalized linear model problems that have to be solved at each stage of iteration. In such circumstances it is possible to apply a ridge regression penalty to the model to impose identifiability, and irls.reg is the size of the penalty.
epsilon	This is used for judging conversion of the GLM IRLS loop in gam.fit or gam.fit3.
maxit	Maximum number of IRLS iterations to perform.
mgcv.tol	The convergence tolerance parameter to use in GCV/UBRE optimization.
mgcv.half	If a step of the GCV/UBRE optimization method leads to a worse GCV/UBRE score, then the step length is halved. This is the number of halvings to try before giving up.
trace	Set this to TRUE to turn on diagnostic output.
rank.tol	The tolerance used to estimate the rank of the fitting problem.
nlm	list of control parameters to pass to nlm if this is used for outer estimation of smoothing parameters (not default). See details.
optim	list of control parameters to pass to optim if this is used for outer estimation of smoothing parameters (not default). See details.

newton	list of control parameters to pass to default Newton optimizer used for outer estimation of log smoothing parameters. See details.
outerPIsteps	The number of performance interation steps used to initialize outer iteration.
idLinksBases	If smooth terms have their smoothing parameters linked via the id mechanism (see s), should they also have the same bases. Set this to FALSE only if you are sure you know what you are doing (you should almost surely set scalePenalty to FALSE as well in this case).
scalePenalty	gamm is somewhat sensitive to the absolute scaling of the penalty matrices of a smooth relative to its model matrix. This option rescales the penalty matrices to accomodate this problem. Probably should be set to FALSE if you are linking smoothing parameters but have set idLinkBases to FALSE.
keepData	Should a copy of the original data argument be kept in the gam object? Strict compatibility with class glm would keep it, but it wastes space to do so.
scale.est	How to estiamte the scale parameter for exponential family models estimated by outer iteration. See gam.scale.

Details

Outer iteration using newton is controlled by the list newton with the following elements: conv.tol (default 1e-6) is the relative convergence tolerance; maxNstep is the maximum length allowed for an element of the Newton search direction (default 5); maxSstep is the maximum length allowed for an element of the steepest descent direction (only used if Newton fails - default 2); maxHalf is the maximum number of step halvings to permit before giving up (default 30).

If outer iteration using nlm is used for fitting, then the control list nlm stores control arguments for calls to routine nlm. The list has the following named elements: (i) ndigit is the number of significant digits in the GCV/UBRE score - by default this is worked out from epsilon; (ii) gradtol is the tolerance used to judge convergence of the gradient of the GCV/UBRE score to zero - by default set to 10*epsilon; (iii) stepmax is the maximum allowable log smoothing parameter step - defaults to 2; (iv) steptol is the minimum allowable step length - defaults to 1e-4; (v) iterlim is the maximum number of optimization steps allowed - defaults to 200; (vi) check.analyticals indicates whether the built in exact derivative calculations should be checked numerically - defaults to FALSE. Any of these which are not supplied and named in the list are set to their default values.

Outer iteration using optim is controlled using list optim, which currently has one element: factr which takes default value 1e7.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

Wood, S.N. (2004) Stable and efficient multiple smoothing parameter estimation for generalized additive models. J. Amer. Statist. Ass.99:673-686.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gam, gam.fit, glm.control

gam.convergence *GAM convergence and performance issues*

Description

When fitting GAMs there is a tradeoff between speed of fitting and probability of fit convergence. The default fitting options, specified by gam arguments method and optimizer, opt for certainty of convergence over speed of fit. In the Generalized Additive Model case it means using 'outer' iteration in preference to 'performance iteration': see gam.outer for details.

It is possible for the default 'outer' iteration to fail when finding intial smoothing parameters using a few steps of performance iteration (if you get a convergence failure message from magic when outer iterating, then this is what has happened): lower outerPIsteps in gam.control to fix this.

There are three things that you can try to speed up GAM fitting. (i) if you have large numbers of smoothing parameters in the generalized case, then try the "bfgs" method option in gam argument optimizer: this can be faster than the default. (ii) Change the optimizer argument to gam so that 'performance iteration' is used in place of the default outer iteration. Usually performance iteration converges well and it can sometimes be quicker than the default outer iteration. (iii) For large datasets it may be worth changing the smoothing basis to use bs="cr" (see s for details) for 1-d smooths, and to use te smooths in place of s smooths for smooths of more than one variable. This is because the default thin plate regression spline basis "tp" is costly to set up for large datasets (much over 1000 data, say). (iv) consider using bam.

If the GAM estimation process fails to converge when using performance iteration, then switch to outer iteration via the optimizer argument of gam. If it still fails, try increasing the number of IRLS iterations (see gam.control) or perhaps experiment with the convergence tolerance.

If you still have problems, it's worth noting that a GAM is just a (penalized) GLM and the IRLS scheme used to estimate GLMs is not guaranteed to converge. Hence non convergence of a GAM may relate to a lack of stability in the basic IRLS scheme. Therefore it is worth trying to establish whether the IRLS iterations are capable of converging. To do this fit the problematic GAM with all smooth terms specified with fx=TRUE so that the smoothing parameters are all fixed at zero. If this 'largest' model can converge then, then the maintainer would quite like to know about your problem! If it doesn't converge, then its likely that your model is just too flexible for the IRLS process itself. Having tried increasing maxit in gam.control, there are several other possibilities for stabilizing the iteration. It is possible to try (i) setting lower bounds on the smoothing parameters using the min.sp argument of gam: this may or may not change the model being fitted; (ii) reducing the flexibility of the model by reducing the basis dimensions k in the specification of s and te model terms: this obviously changes the model being fitted somewhat; (iii) introduce a small regularization term into the fitting via the irls.reg argument of gam.control: this option obviously changes the nature of the fit somewhat, since parameter estimates are pulled towards zero by doing this.

Usually, a major contributer to fitting difficulties is that the model is a very poor description of the data.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

gam.fit *GAM P-IRLS estimation with GCV/UBRE smoothness estimation*

Description

This is an internal function of package mgcv. It is a modification of the function glm.fit, designed to be called from gam. The major modification is that rather than solving a weighted least squares problem at each IRLS step, a weighted, penalized least squares problem is solved at each IRLS step with smoothing parameters associated with each penalty chosen by GCV or UBRE, using routine magic. For further information on usage see code for gam. Some regularization of the IRLS weights is also permitted as a way of addressing identifiability related problems (see gam.control). Negative binomial parameter estimation is supported.

The basic idea of estimating smoothing parameters at each step of the P-IRLS is due to Gu (1992), and is termed 'performance iteration' or 'performance oriented iteration'.

Usage

```
gam.fit(G, start = NULL, etastart = NULL,
        mustart = NULL, family = gaussian(),
        control = gam.control(),gamma=1,
        fixedSteps=(control$maxit+1),...)
```

Arguments

G	An object of the type returned by gam when fit=FALSE.
start	Initial values for the model coefficients.
etastart	Initial values for the linear predictor.
mustart	Initial values for the expected response.
family	The family object, specifying the distribution and link to use.
control	Control option list as returned by gam.control.
gamma	Parameter which can be increased to up the cost of each effective degree of freedom in the GCV or AIC/UBRE objective.
fixedSteps	How many steps to take: useful when only using this routine to get rough starting values for other methods.
...	Other arguments: ignored.

Value

A list of fit information.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Gu (1992) Cross-validating non-Gaussian data. J. Comput. Graph. Statist. 1:169-179

Gu and Wahba (1991) Minimizing GCV/GML scores with multiple smoothing parameters via the Newton method. SIAM J. Sci. Statist. Comput. 12:383-398

Wood, S.N. (2000) Modelling and Smoothing Parameter Estimation with Multiple Quadratic Penalties. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 62(2):413-428

Wood, S.N. (2004) Stable and efficient multiple smoothing parameter estimation for generalized additive models. J. Amer. Statist. Ass. 99:637-686

See Also

gam.fit3, gam, magic

---

gam.fit3 *P-IRLS GAM estimation with GCV \& UBRE/AIC or RE/ML derivative calculation*

Description

Estimation of GAM smoothing parameters is most stable if optimization of the UBRE/AIC, GCV, GACV, REML or ML score is outer to the penalized iteratively re-weighted least squares scheme used to estimate the model given smoothing parameters.

This routine estimates a GAM (any quadratically penalized GLM) given log smoothing paramaters, and evaluates derivatives of the smoothness selection scores of the model with respect to the log smoothing parameters. Calculation of exact derivatives is generally faster than approximating them by finite differencing, as well as generally improving the reliability of GCV/UBRE/AIC/REML score minimization.

The approach is to run the P-IRLS to convergence, and only then to iterate for first and second derivatives.

Not normally called directly, but rather service routines for gam.

Usage

```
gam.fit3(x, y, sp, Eb ,UrS=list(),
         weights = rep(1, nobs), start = NULL, etastart = NULL,
         mustart = NULL, offset = rep(0, nobs), U1 = diag(ncol(x)),
         Mp = -1, family = gaussian(), control = gam.control(),
         intercept = TRUE,deriv=2,gamma=1,scale=1,
         printWarn=TRUE,scoreType="REML",null.coef=rep(0,ncol(x)),
         pearson.extra=0,dev.extra=0,n.true=-1,Sl=NULL,...)
```

Arguments

x	The model matrix for the GAM (or any penalized GLM).
y	The response variable.
sp	The log smoothing parameters.
Eb	A balanced version of the total penalty matrix: usd for numerical rank determination.

UrS	List of square root penalties premultiplied by transpose of orthogonal basis for the total penalty.
weights	prior weights for fitting.
start	optional starting parameter guesses.
etastart	optional starting values for the linear predictor.
mustart	optional starting values for the mean.
offset	the model offset
U1	An orthogonal basis for the range space of the penalty — required for ML smoothness estimation only.
Mp	The dimension of the total penalty null space — required for ML smoothness estimation only.
family	the family - actually this routine would never be called with gaussian()
control	control list as returned from glm.control
intercept	does the model have and intercept, TRUE or FALSE
deriv	Should derivatives of the GCV and UBRE/AIC scores be calculated? 0, 1 or 2, indicating the maximum order of differentiation to apply.
gamma	The weight given to each degree of freedom in the GCV and UBRE scores can be varied (usually increased) using this parameter.
scale	The scale parameter - needed for the UBRE/AIC score.
printWarn	Set to FALSE to suppress some warnings. Useful in order to ensure that some warnings are only printed if they apply to the final fitted model, rather than an intermediate used in optimization.
scoreType	specifies smoothing parameter selection criterion to use.
null.coef	coefficients for a model which gives some sort of upper bound on deviance. This allows immediate divergence problems to be controlled.
pearson.extra	Extra component to add to numerator of pearson statistic in P-REML/P-ML smoothness selection criteria.
dev.extra	Extra component to add to deviance for REML/ML type smoothness selection criteria.
n.true	Number of data to assume in smoothness selection criteria. <=0 indicates that it should be the number of rows of X.
Sl	A smooth list suitable for passing to gam.fit5.
...	Other arguments: ignored.

Details

This routine is basically glm.fit with some modifications to allow (i) for quadratic penalties on the log likelihood; (ii) derivatives of the model coefficients with respect to log smoothing parameters to be obtained by use of the implicit function theorem and (iii) derivatives of the GAM GCV, UBRE/AIC, REML or ML scores to be evaluated at convergence.

In addition the routines apply step halving to any step that increases the penalized deviance substantially.

The most costly parts of the calculations are performed by calls to compiled C code (which in turn calls LAPACK routines) in place of the compiled code that would usually perform least squares estimation on the working model in the IRLS iteration.

Estimation of smoothing parameters by optimizing GCV scores obtained at convergence of the P-IRLS iteration was proposed by O'Sullivan et al. (1986), and is here termed 'outer' iteration.

Note that use of non-standard families with this routine requires modification of the families as described in `fix.family.link`.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

The routine has been modified from `glm.fit` in R 2.0.1, written by the R core (see `glm.fit` for further credits).

References

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

O 'Sullivan, Yandall & Raynor (1986) Automatic smoothing of regression functions in generalized linear models. J. Amer. Statist. Assoc. 81:96-103.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

`gam.fit`, `gam`, `magic`

`gam.models` *Specifying generalized additive models*

Description

This page is intended to provide some more information on how to specify GAMs. A GAM is a GLM in which the linear predictor depends, in part, on a sum of smooth functions of predictors and (possibly) linear functionals of smooth functions of (possibly dummy) predictors.

Specifically let y_i denote an independent random variable with mean μ_i and an exponential family distribution, or failing that a known mean variance relationship suitable for use of quasi-likelihood methods. Then the the linear predictor of a GAM has a structure something like

$$g(\mu_i) = \mathbf{X}_i\beta + f_1(x_{1i}, x_{2i}) + f_2(x_{3i}) + L_i f_3(x_4) + \ldots$$

where g is a known smooth monotonic 'link' function, $\mathbf{X}_i\beta$ is the parametric part of the linear predictor, the x_j are predictor variables, the f_j are smooth functions and L_i is some linear functional of f_3. There may of course be multiple linear functional terms, or none.

The key idea here is that the dependence of the response on the predictors can be represented as a parametric sub-model plus the sum of some (functionals of) smooth functions of one or more of the predictor variables. Thus the model is quite flexible relative to strictly parametric linear or generalized linear models, but still has much more structure than the completely general model that says that the response is just some smooth function of all the covariates.

Note one important point. In order for the model to be identifiable the smooth functions usually have to be constrained to have zero mean (usually taken over the set of covariate values). The constraint is needed if the term involving the smooth includes a constant function in its span. `gam`

always applies such constraints unless there is a by variable present, in which case an assessment is made of whether the constraint is needed or not (see below).

The following sections discuss specifying model structures for gam. Specification of the distribution and link function is done using the family argument to gam and works in the same way as for glm. This page therefore concentrates on the model formula for gam.

Models with simple smooth terms

Consider the example model.

$$g(\mu_i) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{1i} + \beta_2 x_{2i} + f_1(x_{3i}) + f_2(x_{4i}, x_{5i})$$

where the response variables y_i has expectation μ_i and g is a link function.

The gam formula for this would be
`y ~ x1 + x2 + s(x3) + s(x4,x5).`
This would use the default basis for the smooths (a thin plate regression spline basis for each), with automatic selection of the effective degrees of freedom for both smooths. The dimension of the smoothing basis is given a default value as well (the dimension of the basis sets an upper limit on the maximum possible degrees of freedom for the basis - the limit is typically one less than basis dimension). Full details of how to control smooths are given in s and te, and further discussion of basis dimension choice can be found in choose.k. For the moment suppose that we would like to change the basis of the first smooth to a cubic regression spline basis with a dimension of 20, while fixing the second term at 25 degrees of freedom. The appropriate formula would be:
`y ~ x1 + x2 + s(x3,bs="cr",k=20) + s(x4,x5,k=26,fx=TRUE).`

The above assumes that x_4 and x_5 are naturally on similar scales (e.g. they might be co-ordinates), so that isotropic smoothing is appropriate. If this assumption is false then tensor product smoothing might be better (see te).
`y ~ x1 + x2 + s(x3) + te(x4,x5)`
would generate a tensor product smooth of x_4 and x_5. By default this smooth would have basis dimension 25 and use cubic regression spline marginals. Varying the defaults is easy. For example
`y ~ x1 + x2 + s(x3) + te(x4,x5,bs=c("cr","ps"),k=c(6,7))`
specifies that the tensor product should use a rank 6 cubic regression spline marginal and a rank 7 P-spline marginal to create a smooth with basis dimension 42.

Nested terms/functional ANOVA

Sometimes it is interesting to specify smooth models with a main effects + interaction structure such as

$$E(y_i) = f_1(x_i) + f_2(z_i) + f_3(x_i, z_i)$$

or

$$E(y_i) = f_1(x_i) + f_2(z_i) + f_3(v_i) + f_4(x_i, z_i) + f_5(z_i, v_i) + f_6(z_i, v_i) + f_7(x_i, z_i, v_i)$$

for example. Such models should be set up using ti terms in the model formula. For example:
`y ~ ti(x) + ti(z) + ti(x,z)`, or
`y ~ ti(x) + ti(z) + ti(v) + ti(x,z) + ti(x,v) + ti(z,v)+ti(x,z,v).`
The ti terms produce interactions with the component main effects excluded appropriately. (There is in fact no need to use ti terms for the main effects here, s terms could also be used.)

gam allows nesting (or 'overlap') of te and s smooths, and automatically generates side conditions to make such models identifiable, but the resulting models are much less stable and interpretable than those constructed using ti terms.

'by' variables

by variables are the means for constructing 'varying-coefficient models' (geographic regression models) and for letting smooths 'interact' with factors or parametric terms. They are also the key to specifying general linear functionals of smooths.

The s and te terms used to specify smooths accept an argument by, which is a numeric or factor variable of the same dimension as the covariates of the smooth. If a by variable is numeric, then its ith element multiples the ith row of the model matrix corresponding to the smooth term concerned.

Factor smooth interactions (see also factor.smooth.interaction). If a by variable is a factor then it generates an indicator vector for each level of the factor, unless it is an ordered factor. In the non-ordered case, the model matrix for the smooth term is then replicated for each factor level, and each copy has its rows multiplied by the corresponding rows of its indicator variable. The smoothness penalties are also duplicated for each factor level. In short a different smooth is generated for each factor level (the id argument to s and te can be used to force all such smooths to have the same smoothing parameter). ordered by variables are handled in the same way, except that no smooth is generated for the first level of the ordered factor (see b3 example below). This is useful for setting up identifiable models when the same smooth occurs more than once in a model, with different factor by variables.

As an example, consider the model

$$E(y_i) = \beta_0 + f(x_i)z_i$$

where f is a smooth function, and z_i is a numeric variable. The appropriate formula is:
`y ~ s(x,by=z)`
- the by argument ensures that the smooth function gets multiplied by covariate z. Note that when using factor by variables, centering constraints are applied to the smooths, which usually means that the by variable should be included as a parametric term, as well.

The example code below also illustrates the use of factor by variables.

by variables may be supplied as numeric matrices as part of specifying general linear functional terms.

If a by variable is present and numeric (rather than a factor) then the corresponding smooth is only subjected to an identifiability constraint if (i) the by variable is a constant vector, or, (ii) for a matrix by variable, L, if `L%*%rep(1,ncol(L))` is constant or (iii) if a user defined smooth constructor supplies an identifiability constraint explicitly, and that constraint has an attibute `"always.apply"`.

Linking smooths with 'id'

It is sometimes desirable to insist that different smooth terms have the same degree of smoothness. This can be done by using the id argument to s or te terms. Smooths which share an id will have the same smoothing parameter. Really this only makes sense if the smooths use the same basis functions, and the default behaviour is to force this to happen: all smooths sharing an id have the same basis functions as the first smooth occurring with that id. Note that if you want exactly the same function for each smooth, then this is best achieved by making use of the summation convention covered under 'linear functional terms'.

As an example suppose that $E(y_i) \equiv \mu_i$ and

$$g(\mu_i) = f_1(x_{1i}) + f_2(x_{2i}, x_{3i}) + f_3(x_{4i})$$

but that f_1 and f_3 should have the same smoothing parameters (and x_2 and x_3 are on different scales). Then the gam formula
`y ~ s(x1,id=1) + te(x_2,x3) + s(x4,id=1)`
would achieve the desired result. id can be numbers or character strings. Giving an id to a term

with a factor by variable causes the smooths at each level of the factor to have the same smoothing parameter.

Smooth term ids are not supported by gamm.

Linear functional terms

General linear functional terms have a long history in the spline literature including in the penalized GLM context (see e.g. Wahba 1990). Such terms encompass varying coefficient models/ geographic regression, functional GLMs (i.e. GLMs with functional predictors), GLASS models, etc, and allow smoothing with respect to aggregated covariate values, for example.

Such terms are implemented in mgcv using a simple 'summation convention' for smooth terms: If the covariates of a smooth are supplied as matrices, then summation of the evaluated smooth over the columns of the matrices is implied. Each covariate matrix and any by variable matrix must be of the same dimension. Consider, for example the term
`s(X,Z,by=L)`
where X, Z and L are $n \times p$ matrices. Let f denote the thin plate regression spline specified. The resulting contibution to the ith element of the linear predictor is

$$\sum_{j=1}^{p} L_{ij} f(X_{ij}, Z_{ij})$$

If no L is supplied then all its elements are taken as 1. In R code terms, let F denote the $n \times p$ matrix obtained by evaluating the smooth at the values in X and Z. Then the contribution of the term to the linear predictor is `rowSums(L*F)` (note that it's element by element multiplication here!).

The summation convention applies to te terms as well as s terms. More details and examples are provided in linear.functional.terms.

Random effects

Random effects can be added to gam models using `s(...,bs="re")` terms (see smooth.construct.re.smooth.spec), or the paraPen argument to gam covered below. See gam.vcomp, random.effects and smooth.construct.re.smooth.spec for further details. An alternative is to use the approach of gamm.

Penalizing the parametric terms

In case the ability to add smooth classes, smooth identities, by variables and the summation convention are still not sufficient to implement exactly the penalized GLM that you require, gam also allows you to penalize the parametric terms in the model formula. This is mostly useful in allowing one or more matrix terms to be included in the formula, along with a sequence of quadratic penalty matrices for each.

Suppose that you have set up a model matrix $\mathbf{X}$, and want to penalize the corresponding coefficients, β with two penalties $\beta^T \mathbf{S}_1 \beta$ and $\beta^T \mathbf{S}_2 \beta$. Then something like the following would be appropriate:
`gam(y ~ X - 1,paraPen=list(X=list(S1,S2)))`
The paraPen argument should be a list with elements having names corresponding to the terms being penalized. Each element of paraPen is itself a list, with optional elements L, rank and sp: all other elements must be penalty matrices. If present, rank is a vector giving the rank of each penalty matrix (if absent this is determined numerically). L is a matrix that maps underlying log smoothing parameters to the log smoothing parameters that actually multiply the individual quadratic penalties: taken as the identity if not supplied. sp is a vector of (underlying) smoothing parameter values: positive values are taken as fixed, negative to signal that the smoothing parameter should be estimated. Taken as all negative if not supplied.

An obvious application of paraPen is to incorporate random effects, and an example of this is provided below. In this case the supplied penalty matrices will be (generalized) inverse covariance matrices for the random effects — i.e. precision matrices. The final estimate of the covariance matrix corresponding to one of these penalties is given by the (generalized) inverse of the penalty matrix multiplied by the estimated scale parameter and divided by the estimated smoothing parameter for the penalty. For example, if you use an identity matrix to penalize some coefficients that are to be viewed as i.i.d. Gaussian random effects, then their estimated variance will be the estimated scale parameter divided by the estimate of the smoothing parameter, for this penalty. See the 'rail' example below.

P-values for penalized parametric terms should be treated with caution. If you must have them, then use the option freq=TRUE in anova.gam and summary.gam, which will tend to give reasonable results for random effects implemented this way, but not for terms with a rank defficient penalty (or penalties with a wide eigen-spectrum).

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wahba (1990) Spline Models of Observational Data SIAM.

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
set.seed(10)
## simulate date from y = f(x2)*x1 + error
dat <- gamSim(3,n=400)

b<-gam(y ~ s(x2,by=x1),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)
summary(b)

## Factor by variable example (with a spurious covariate x0)
## simulate data...

dat <- gamSim(4)

## fit model...
b <- gam(y ~ fac+s(x2,by=fac)+s(x0),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)
summary(b)

## note that the preceding fit is the same as....
b1<-gam(y ~ s(x2,by=as.numeric(fac==1))+s(x2,by=as.numeric(fac==2))+
            s(x2,by=as.numeric(fac==3))+s(x0)-1,data=dat)
## ... the -1 is because the intercept is confounded with the
## *uncentred* smooths here.
plot(b1,pages=1)
summary(b1)

## repeat forcing all s(x2) terms to have the same smoothing param
## (not a very good idea for these data!)
```

```
b2 <- gam(y ~ fac+s(x2,by=fac,id=1)+s(x0),data=dat)
plot(b2,pages=1)
summary(b2)

## now repeat with a single reference level smooth, and
## two difference smooths...
dat$fac <- ordered(dat$fac)
b3 <- gam(y ~ fac+s(x2)+s(x2,by=fac)+s(x0),data=dat,method="REML")
plot(b3,pages=1)
summary(b3)


rm(dat)

## An example of a simple random effects term implemented via
## penalization of the parametric part of the model...

dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,scale=2) ## simulate 4 term additive truth
## Now add some random effects to the simulation. Response is
## grouped into one of 20 groups by fac and each groups has a
## random effect added....
fac <- as.factor(sample(1:20,400,replace=TRUE))
dat$X <- model.matrix(~fac-1)
b <- rnorm(20)*.5
dat$y <- dat$y + dat$X%*%b

## now fit appropriate random effect model...
PP <- list(X=list(rank=20,diag(20)))
rm <- gam(y~ X+s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,paraPen=PP)
plot(rm,pages=1)
## Get estimated random effects standard deviation...
sig.b <- sqrt(rm$sig2/rm$sp[1]);sig.b

## a much simpler approach uses "re" terms...

rm1 <- gam(y ~ s(fac,bs="re")+s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,method="ML")
gam.vcomp(rm1)

## Simple comparison with lme, using Rail data.
## See ?random.effects for a simpler method
require(nlme)
b0 <- lme(travel~1,data=Rail,~1|Rail,method="ML")
Z <- model.matrix(~Rail-1,data=Rail,
     contrasts.arg=list(Rail="contr.treatment"))
b <- gam(travel~Z,data=Rail,paraPen=list(Z=list(diag(6))),method="ML")

b0
(b$reml.scale/b$sp)^.5 ## gam ML estimate of Rail sd
b$reml.scale^.5         ## gam ML estimate of residual sd

b0 <- lme(travel~1,data=Rail,~1|Rail,method="REML")
Z <- model.matrix(~Rail-1,data=Rail,
     contrasts.arg=list(Rail="contr.treatment"))
b <- gam(travel~Z,data=Rail,paraPen=list(Z=list(diag(6))),method="REML")

b0
(b$reml.scale/b$sp)^.5 ## gam REML estimate of Rail sd
```

```
b$reml.scale^.5         ## gam REML estimate of residual sd

#################################################################
## Approximate large dataset logistic regression for rare events
## based on subsampling the zeroes, and adding an offset to
## approximately allow for this.
## Doing the same thing, but upweighting the sampled zeroes
## leads to problems with smoothness selection, and CIs.
#################################################################
n <- 50000  ## simulate n data
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,dist="binary",scale=.33)
p <- binomial()$linkinv(dat$f-6) ## make 1s rare
dat$y <- rbinom(p,1,p)      ## re-simulate rare response

## Now sample all the 1s but only proportion S of the 0s
S <- 0.02                   ## sampling fraction of zeroes
dat <- dat[dat$y==1 | runif(n) < S,] ## sampling

## Create offset based on total sampling fraction
dat$s <- rep(log(nrow(dat)/n),nrow(dat))

lr.fit <- gam(y~s(x0,bs="cr")+s(x1,bs="cr")+s(x2,bs="cr")+s(x3,bs="cr")+
              offset(s),family=binomial,data=dat,method="REML")

## plot model components with truth overlaid in red
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
fn <- c("f0","f1","f2","f3");xn <- c("x0","x1","x2","x3")
for (k in 1:4) {
       plot(lr.fit,select=k,scale=0)
       ff <- dat[[fn[k]]];xx <- dat[[xn[k]]]
       ind <- sort.int(xx,index.return=TRUE)$ix
       lines(xx[ind],(ff-mean(ff))[ind]*.33,col=2)
}
par(op)
rm(dat)

## A Gamma example, by modify gamSim output...

dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,dist="normal",scale=1)
dat$f <- dat$f/4 ## true linear predictor
Ey <- exp(dat$f);scale <- .5 ## mean and GLM scale parameter
## Note that shape and scale in rgamma are almost
## opposite terminology to that used with GLM/GAM...
dat$y <- rgamma(Ey*0,shape=1/scale,scale=Ey*scale)
bg <- gam(y~ s(x0)+ s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=Gamma(link=log),
          data=dat,method="REML")
plot(bg,pages=1,scheme=1)
```

---

gam.outer *Minimize GCV or UBRE score of a GAM using 'outer' iteration*

Description

Estimation of GAM smoothing parameters is most stable if optimization of the smoothness selection score (GCV, GACV, UBRE/AIC, REML, ML etc) is outer to the penalized iteratively re-weighted

least squares scheme used to estimate the model given smoothing parameters.

This routine optimizes a smoothness selection score in this way. Basically the score is evaluated for each trial set of smoothing parameters by estimating the GAM for those smoothing parameters. The score is minimized w.r.t. the parameters numerically, using `newton` (default), `bfgs`, `optim` or `nlm`. Exact (first and second) derivatives of the score can be used by fitting with `gam.fit3`. This improves efficiency and reliability relative to relying on finite difference derivatives.

Not normally called directly, but rather a service routine for `gam`.

Usage

```
gam.outer(lsp,fscale,family,control,method,optimizer,
          criterion,scale,gamma,G,...)
```

Arguments

`lsp`	The log smoothing parameters.
`fscale`	Typical scale of the GCV or UBRE/AIC score.
`family`	the model family.
`control`	control argument to pass to `gam.fit` if pure finite differencing is being used.
`method`	method argument to `gam` defining the smoothness criterion to use (but depending on whether or not scale known).
`optimizer`	The argument to `gam` defining the numerical optimization method to use.
`criterion`	Which smoothness selction criterion to use. One of `"UBRE"`, `"GCV"`, `"GACV"`, `"REML"` or `"P-REML"`.
`scale`	Supplied scale parameter. Positive indicates known.
`gamma`	The degree of freedom inflation factor for the GCV/UBRE/AIC score.
`G`	List produced by `mgcv:::gam.setup`, containing most of what's needed to actually fit a GAM.
`...`	other arguments, typically for passing on to `gam.fit3` (ultimately).

Details

See Wood (2008) for full details on 'outer iteration'.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

`gam.fit3`, `gam`, `magic`

gam.scale *Scale parameter estimation in GAMs*

Description

Scale parameter estimation in gam depends on the type of family. For extended families then the RE/ML estimate is used. For conventional exponential families, estimated by the default outer iteration, the scale estimator can be controlled using argument scale.est in gam.control. The options are "robust", "pearson" (default) or "deviance". The Pearson estimator is the (weighted) sum of squares of the pearson residuals, divided by the effective residual degrees of freedom. The deviance estimator simply substitutes deviance residuals for Pearson residuals.

Usually the Pearson estimator is recommended for GLMs, since it is asymptotically unbiased. However, it can also be unstable at finite sample sizes, if a few Pearson residuals are very large. For example, a very low Poisson mean with a non zero count can give a huge Pearson residual, even though the deviance residual is much more modest. The ("robust") estimator in gam is an attempt to mitigate against the bias of the deviance estimator and the instability of the Pearson estimator. The estimator simply scales the deviance residuals by the median ratio of pearson to deviance residuals, separately for positive and negative residuals (given the difference in skew of the two types). The estimator is forced to lie between the Pearson and deviance estimators. All three options coincide for Gaussian data. A warning is generated if the Pearson scale estimate is more than twice the robust version. In this case you consider changing to the robust estimator, especially if the Pearson residuals contain extreme outliers.

For performance iteration the Pearson estimator is always used.

gamm uses the estimate of the scale parameter from the underlying call to lme. bam uses the REML estimator if the method is "fREML". Otherwise the estimator is a Pearson estimator.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

gam.control

gam.selection *Generalized Additive Model Selection*

Description

This page is intended to provide some more information on how to select GAMs. In particular, it gives a brief overview of smoothness selection, and then discusses how this can be extended to select inclusion/exclusion of terms. Hypothesis testing approaches to the latter problem are also discussed.

Smoothness selection criteria

Given a model structure specified by a gam model formula, `gam()` attempts to find the appropriate smoothness for each applicable model term using prediction error criteria or likelihood based methods. The prediction error criteria used are Generalized (Approximate) Cross Validation (GCV or GACV) when the scale parameter is unknown or an Un-Biased Risk Estimator (UBRE) when it is known. UBRE is essentially scaled AIC (Generalized case) or Mallows' Cp (additive model case). GCV and UBRE are covered in Craven and Wahba (1979) and Wahba (1990). Alternatively REML of maximum likelihood (ML) may be used for smoothness selection, by viewing the smooth components as random effects (in this case the variance component for each smooth random effect will be given by the scale parameter divided by the smoothing parameter — for smooths with multiple penalties, there will be multiple variance components). The `method` argument to `gam` selects the smoothness selection criterion.

Automatic smoothness selection is unlikely to be successful with few data, particularly with multiple terms to be selected. In addition GCV and UBRE/AIC score can occasionally display local minima that can trap the minimisation algorithms. GCV/UBRE/AIC scores become constant with changing smoothing parameters at very low or very high smoothing parameters, and on occasion these 'flat' regions can be separated from regions of lower score by a small 'lip'. This seems to be the most common form of local minimum, but is usually avoidable by avoiding extreme smoothing parameters as starting values in optimization, and by avoiding big jumps in smoothing parameters while optimizing. Never the less, if you are suspicious of smoothing parameter estimates, try changing fit method (see `gam` arguments `method` and `optimizer`) and see if the estimates change, or try changing some or all of the smoothing parameters 'manually' (argument `sp` of `gam`, or `sp` arguments to `s` or `te`).

REML and ML are less prone to local minima than the other criteria, and may therefore be preferable.

Automatic term selection

Unmodified smoothness selection by GCV, AIC, REML etc. will not usually remove a smooth from a model. This is because most smoothing penalties view some space of (non-zero) functions as 'completely smooth' and once a term is penalized heavily enough that it is in this space, further penalization does not change it.

However it is straightforward to modify smooths so that under heavy penalization they are penalized to the zero function and thereby 'selected out' of the model. There are two approaches.

The first approach is to modify the smoothing penalty with an additional shrinkage term. Smooth classes`cs.smooth` and `tprs.smooth` (specified by `"cs"` and `"ts"` respectively) have smoothness penalties which include a small shrinkage component, so that for large enough smoothing parameters the smooth becomes identically zero. This allows automatic smoothing parameter selection methods to effectively remove the term from the model altogether. The shrinkage component of the penalty is set at a level that usually makes negligable contribution to the penalization of the model, only becoming effective when the term is effectively 'completely smooth' according to the conventional penalty.

The second approach leaves the original smoothing penalty unchanged, but constructs an additional penalty for each smooth, which penalizes only functions in the null space of the original penalty (the 'completely smooth' functions). Hence, if all the smoothing parameters for a term tend to infinity, the term will be selected out of the model. This latter approach is more expensive computationally, but has the advantage that it can be applied automatically to any smooth term. The `select` argument to `gam` turns on this method.

In fact, as implemented, both approaches operate by eigen-decomposiong the original penalty matrix. A new penalty is created on the null space: it is the matrix with the same eigenvectors as

the original penalty, but with the originally postive egienvalues set to zero, and the originally zero eigenvalues set to something positive. The first approach just addes a multiple of this penalty to the original penalty, where the multiple is chosen so that the new penalty can not dominate the original. The second approach treats the new penalty as an extra penalty, with its own smoothing parameter.

Of course, as with all model selection methods, some care must be take to ensure that the automatic selection is sensible, and a decision about the effective degrees of freedom at which to declare a term 'negligible' has to be made.

Interactive term selection

In general the most logically consistent method to use for deciding which terms to include in the model is to compare GCV/UBRE/ML scores for models with and without the term (REML scores should not be used to compare models with different fixed effects structures). When UBRE is the smoothness selection method this will give the same result as comparing by `AIC` (the AIC in this case uses the model EDF in place of the usual model DF). Similarly, comparison via GCV score and via AIC seldom yields different answers. Note that the negative binomial with estimated `theta` parameter is a special case: the GCV score is not informative, because of the `theta` estimation scheme used. More generally the score for the model with a smooth term can be compared to the score for the model with the smooth term replaced by appropriate parametric terms. Candidates for replacement by parametric terms are smooth terms with estimated degrees of freedom close to their minimum possible.

Candidates for removal can also be identified by reference to the approximate p-values provided by `summary.gam`, and by looking at the extent to which the confidence band for an estimated term includes the zero function. It is perfectly possible to perform backwards selection using p-values in the usual way: that is by sequentially dropping the single term with the highest non-significant p-value from the model and re-fitting, until all terms are significant. This suffers from the same problems as stepwise procedures for any GLM/LM, with the additional caveat that the p-values are only approximate. If adopting this approach, it is probably best to use ML smoothness selection.

Note that GCV and UBRE are not appropriate for comparing models using different families: in that case AIC should be used.

Caveats/platitudes

Formal model selection methods are only appropriate for selecting between reasonable models. If formal model selection is attempted starting from a model that simply doesn't fit the data, then it is unlikely to provide meaningful results.

The more thought is given to appropriate model structure up front, the more successful model selection is likely to be. Simply starting with a hugely flexible model with 'everything in' and hoping that automatic selection will find the right structure is not often successful.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

References

Marra, G. and S.N. Wood (2011) Practical variable selection for generalized additive models. Computational Statistics and Data Analysis 55,2372-2387.

Craven and Wahba (1979) Smoothing Noisy Data with Spline Functions. Numer. Math. 31:377-403

Venables and Ripley (1999) Modern Applied Statistics with S-PLUS

Wahba (1990) Spline Models of Observational Data. SIAM.

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

Wood, S.N. (2008) Fast stable direct fitting and smoothness selection for generalized additive models. J.R.Statist. Soc. B 70(3):495-518

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gam, step.gam

Examples

```
## an example of automatic model selection via null space penalization
library(mgcv)
set.seed(3);n<-200
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,scale=.15,dist="poisson") ## simulate data
dat$x4 <- runif(n, 0, 1);dat$x5 <- runif(n, 0, 1) ## spurious

b<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3)+s(x4)+s(x5),data=dat,
         family=poisson,select=TRUE,method="REML")
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1)
```

---

gam.side *Identifiability side conditions for a GAM*

Description

GAM formulae with repeated variables may only correspond to identifiable models given some side conditions. This routine works out appropriate side conditions, based on zeroing redundant parameters. It is called from mgcv:::gam.setup and is not intended to be called by users.

The method identifies nested and repeated variables by their names, but numerically evaluates which constraints need to be imposed. Constraints are always applied to smooths of more variables in preference to smooths of fewer variables. The numerical approach allows appropriate constraints to be applied to models constructed using any smooths, including user defined smooths.

Usage

```
gam.side(sm,Xp,tol=.Machine$double.eps^.5,with.pen=FALSE)
```

Arguments

sm	A list of smooth objects as returned by smooth.construct.
Xp	The model matrix for the strictly parametric model components.
tol	The tolerance to use when assessing linear dependence of smooths.
with.pen	Should the computation of dependence consider the penalties or not. Doing so will lead to fewer constraints.

Details

Models such as y~s(x)+s(z)+s(x,z) can be estimated by gam, but require identifiability constraints to be applied, to make them identifiable. This routine does this, effectively setting redundant parameters to zero. When the redundancy is between smooths of lower and higher numbers of variables, the constraint is always applied to the smooth of the higher number of variables.

Dependent smooths are identified symbolically, but which constraints are needed to ensure identifiability of these smooths is determined numerically, using fixDependence. This makes the routine rather general, and not dependent on any particular basis.

Xp is used to check whether there is a constant term in the model (or columns that can be linearly combined to give a constant). This is because centred smooths can appear independent, when they would be dependent if there is a constant in the model, so dependence testing needs to take account of this.

Value

A list of smooths, with model matrices and penalty matrices adjusted to automatically impose the required constraints. Any smooth that has been modified will have an attribute "del.index", listing the columns of its model matrix that were deleted. This index is used in the creation of prediction matrices for the term.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Examples

```
## The first two examples here iluustrate models that cause
## gam.side to impose constraints, but both are a bad way
## of estimating such models. The 3rd example is the right
## way....
set.seed(7)
require(mgcv)
dat <- gamSim(n=400,scale=2) ## simulate data
## estimate model with redundant smooth interaction (bad idea).
b<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x0,x1)+s(x2),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)

## Simulate data with real interation...
dat <- gamSim(2,n=500,scale=.1)
old.par<-par(mfrow=c(2,2))

## a fully nested tensor product example (bad idea)
b <- gam(y~s(x,bs="cr",k=6)+s(z,bs="cr",k=6)+te(x,z,k=6),
       data=dat$data)
plot(b)

old.par<-par(mfrow=c(2,2))
## A fully nested tensor product example, done properly,
## so that gam.side is not needed to ensure identifiability.
## ti terms are designed to produce interaction smooths
## suitable for adding to main effects (we could also have
## used s(x) and s(z) without a problem, but not s(z,x)
## or te(z,x)).
b <- gam(y ~ ti(x,k=6) + ti(z,k=6) + ti(x,z,k=6),
```

```
       data=dat$data)
plot(b)

par(old.par)
rm(dat)
```

`gam.vcomp` *Report gam smoothness estimates as variance components*

Description

GAMs can be viewed as mixed models, where the smoothing parameters are related to variance components. This routine extracts the estimated variance components associated with each smooth term, and if possible returns confidence intervals on the standard deviation scale.

Usage

```
gam.vcomp(x,rescale=TRUE,conf.lev=.95)
```

Arguments

`x`	a fitted model object of class `gam` as produced by `gam()`.
`rescale`	the penalty matrices for smooths are rescaled before fitting, for numerical stability reasons, if `TRUE` this rescaling is reversed, so that the variance components are on the original scale.
`conf.lev`	when the smoothing parameters are estimated by REML or ML, then confidence intervals for the variance components can be obtained from large sample likelihood results. This gives the confidence level to work at.

Details

The (pseudo) inverse of the penalty matrix penalizing a term is proportional to the covariance matrix of the term's coefficients, when these are viewed as random. For single penalty smooths, it is possible to compute the variance component for the smooth (which multiplies the inverse penalty matrix to obtain the covariance matrix of the smooth's coefficients). This variance component is given by the scale parameter divided by the smoothing parameter.

This routine computes such variance components, for `gam` models, and associated confidence intervals, if smoothing parameter estimation was likelihood based. Note that variance components are also returned for tensor product smooths, but that their interpretation is not so straightforward.

The routine is particularly useful for model fitted by `gam` in which random effects have been incorporated.

Value

Either a vector of variance components for each smooth term (as standard deviations), or a matrix. The first column of the matrix gives standard deviations for each term, while the subsequent columns give lower and upper confidence bounds, on the same scale.

For models in which there are more smoothing parameters than actually estimated (e.g. if some were fixed, or smoothing parameters are linked) then a list is returned. The `vc` element is as above, the `all` element is a vector of variance components for all the smoothing parameters (estimated + fixed or replicated).

The routine prints a table of estimated standard deviations and confidence limits, if these can be computed, and reports the numerical rank of the covariance matrix.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2008) Fast stable direct fitting and smoothness selection for generalized additive models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 70(3):495-518

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

See Also

smooth.construct.re.smooth.spec

Examples

```
set.seed(3)
require(mgcv)
## simulate some data, consisting of a smooth truth + random effects

dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,dist="normal",scale=2)
a <- factor(sample(1:10,400,replace=TRUE))
b <- factor(sample(1:7,400,replace=TRUE))
Xa <- model.matrix(~a-1)    ## random main effects
Xb <-  model.matrix(~b-1)
Xab <- model.matrix(~a:b-1) ## random interaction
dat$y <- dat$y + Xa%*%rnorm(10)*.5 +
         Xb%*%rnorm(7)*.3 + Xab%*%rnorm(70)*.7
dat$a <- a;dat$b <- b

## Fit the model using "re" terms, and smoother linkage

mod <- gam(y~s(a,bs="re")+s(b,bs="re")+s(a,b,bs="re")+s(x0,id=1)+s(x1,id=1)+
             s(x2,k=15)+s(x3),data=dat,method="ML")

gam.vcomp(mod)
```

---

gam2objective *Objective functions for GAM smoothing parameter estimation*

Description

Estimation of GAM smoothing parameters is most stable if optimization of the UBRE/AIC or GCV score is outer to the penalized iteratively re-weighted least squares scheme used to estimate the model given smoothing parameters. These functions evaluate the GCV/UBRE/AIC score of a GAM model, given smoothing parameters, in a manner suitable for use by optim or nlm. Not normally called directly, but rather service routines for gam.outer.

Usage

```
gam2objective(lsp,args,...)
gam2derivative(lsp,args,...)
```

Arguments

lsp	The log smoothing parameters.
args	List of arguments required to call gam.fit3.
...	Other arguments for passing to gam.fit3.

Details

gam2objective and gam2derivative are functions suitable for calling by optim, to evaluate the GCV/UBRE/AIC score and its derivatives w.r.t. log smoothing parameters.

gam4objective is an equivalent to gam2objective, suitable for optimization by nlm - derivatives of the GCV/UBRE/AIC function are calculated and returned as attributes.

The basic idea of optimizing smoothing parameters 'outer' to the P-IRLS loop was first proposed in O'Sullivan et al. (1986).

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

O 'Sullivan, Yandall & Raynor (1986) Automatic smoothing of regression functions in generalized linear models. J. Amer. Statist. Assoc. 81:96-103.

Wood, S.N. (2008) Fast stable direct fitting and smoothness selection for generalized additive models. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 70(3):495-518

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gam.fit3, gam, magic

---

gamm *Generalized Additive Mixed Models*

Description

Fits the specified generalized additive mixed model (GAMM) to data, by a call to lme in the normal errors identity link case, or by a call to gammPQL (a modification of glmmPQL from the MASS library) otherwise. In the latter case estimates are only approximately MLEs. The routine is typically slower than gam, and not quite as numerically robust.

To use lme4 in place of nlme as the underlying fitting engine, see gamm4 from package gamm4.

Smooths are specified as in a call to gam as part of the fixed effects model formula, but the wiggly components of the smooth are treated as random effects. The random effects structures and correlation structures availabale for lme are used to specify other random effects and correlations.

It is assumed that the random effects and correlation structures are employed primarily to model residual correlation in the data and that the prime interest is in inference about the terms in the fixed effects model formula including the smooths. For this reason the routine calculates a posterior covariance matrix for the coefficients of all the terms in the fixed effects formula, including the smooths.

To use this function effectively it helps to be quite familiar with the use of gam and lme.

Usage

```
gamm(formula,random=NULL,correlation=NULL,family=gaussian(),
data=list(),weights=NULL,subset=NULL,na.action,knots=NULL,
control=list(niterEM=0,optimMethod="L-BFGS-B"),
niterPQL=20,verbosePQL=TRUE,method="ML",drop.unused.levels=TRUE,...)
```

Arguments

formula	A GAM formula (see also formula.gam and gam.models). This is like the formula for a glm except that smooth terms (s and te) can be added to the right hand side of the formula. Note that ids for smooths and fixed smoothing parameters are not supported.
random	The (optional) random effects structure as specified in a call to lme: only the list form is allowed, to facilitate manipulation of the random effects structure within gamm in order to deal with smooth terms. See example below.
correlation	An optional corStruct object (see corClasses) as used to define correlation structures in lme. Any grouping factors in the formula for this object are assumed to be nested within any random effect grouping factors, without the need to make this explicit in the formula (this is slightly different to the behaviour of lme). This is a GEE approach to correlation in the generalized case. See examples below.
family	A family as used in a call to glm or gam. The default gaussian with identity link causes gamm to fit by a direct call to lme procided there is no offset term, otherwise gammPQL is used.
data	A data frame or list containing the model response variable and covariates required by the formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula), typically the environment from which gamm is called.
weights	In the generalized case, weights with the same meaning as glm weights. An lme type weights argument may only be used in the identity link gaussian case, with no offset (see documentation for lme for details of how to use such an argument).
subset	an optional vector specifying a subset of observations to be used in the fitting process.
na.action	a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain 'NA's. The default is set by the 'na.action' setting of 'options', and is 'na.fail' if that is unset. The "factory-fresh" default is 'na.omit'.
knots	this is an optional list containing user specified knot values to be used for basis construction. Different terms can use different numbers of knots, unless they share a covariate.

`control` A list of fit control parameters for `lme` to replace the defaults returned by `lmeControl`. Note the setting for the number of EM iterations used by `lme`: smooths are set up using custom `pdMat` classes, which are currently not supported by the EM iteration code. If you supply a list of control values, it is advisable to include `niterEM=0`, as well, and only increase from 0 if you want to perturb the starting values used in model fitting (usually to worse values!). The `optimMethod` option is only used if your version of R does not have the `nlminb` optimizer function.

`niterPQL` Maximum number of PQL iterations (if any).

`verbosePQL` Should PQL report its progress as it goes along?

`method` Which of `"ML"` or `"REML"` to use in the Gaussian additive mixed model case when `lme` is called directly. Ignored in the generalized case (or if the model has an offset), in which case `gammPQL` is used.

`drop.unused.levels`
by default unused levels are dropped from factors before fitting. For some smooths involving factor variables you might want to turn this off. Only do so if you know what you are doing.

`...` further arguments for passing on e.g. to `lme`

Details

The Bayesian model of spline smoothing introduced by Wahba (1983) and Silverman (1985) opens up the possibility of estimating the degree of smoothness of terms in a generalized additive model as variances of the wiggly components of the smooth terms treated as random effects. Several authors have recognised this (see Wang 1998; Ruppert, Wand and Carroll, 2003) and in the normal errors, identity link case estimation can be performed using general linear mixed effects modelling software such as `lme`. In the generalized case only approximate inference is so far available, for example using the Penalized Quasi-Likelihood approach of Breslow and Clayton (1993) as implemented in `glmmPQL` by Venables and Ripley (2002). One advantage of this approach is that it allows correlated errors to be dealt with via random effects or the correlation structures available in the `nlme` library (using correlation structures beyond the strictly additive case amounts to using a GEE approach to fitting).

Some details of how GAMs are represented as mixed models and estimated using `lme` or `gammPQL` in `gamm` can be found in Wood (2004 ,2006a,b). In addition `gamm` obtains a posterior covariance matrix for the parameters of all the fixed effects and the smooth terms. The approach is similar to that described in Lin & Zhang (1999) - the covariance matrix of the data (or pseudodata in the generalized case) implied by the weights, correlation and random effects structure is obtained, based on the estimates of the parameters of these terms and this is used to obtain the posterior covariance matrix of the fixed and smooth effects.

The bases used to represent smooth terms are the same as those used in `gam`, although adaptive smoothing bases are not available.

In the event of `lme` convergence failures, consider modifying `option(mgcv.vc.logrange)`: reducing it helps to remove indefiniteness in the likelihood, if that is the problem, but too large a reduction can force over or undersmoothing. See `notExp2` for more information on this option. Failing that, you can try increasing the `niterEM` option in `control`: this will perturb the starting values used in fitting, but usually to values with lower likelihood! Note that this version of `gamm` works best with R 2.2.0 or above and `nlme`, 3.1-62 and above, since these use an improved optimizer.

Value

Returns a list with two items:

gam — an object of class gam, less information relating to GCV/UBRE model selection. At present this contains enough information to use predict, summary and print methods and vis.gam, but not to use e.g. the anova method function to compare models.

lme — the fitted model object returned by lme or gammPQL. Note that the model formulae and grouping structures may appear to be rather bizarre, because of the manner in which the GAMM is split up and the calls to lme and gammPQL are constructed.

WARNINGS

gamm performs poorly with binary data, since it uses PQL. It is better to use gam with s(...,bs="re") terms, or gamm4.

gamm assumes that you know what you are doing! For example, unlike glmmPQL from MASS it will return the complete lme object from the working model at convergence of the PQL iteration, including the 'log likelihood', even though this is not the likelihood of the fitted GAMM.

The routine will be very slow and memory intensive if correlation structures are used for the very large groups of data. e.g. attempting to run the spatial example in the examples section with many 1000's of data is definitely not recommended: often the correlations should only apply within clusters that can be defined by a grouping factor, and provided these clusters do not get too huge then fitting is usually possible.

Models must contain at least one random effect: either a smooth with non-zero smoothing parameter, or a random effect specified in argument random.

gamm is not as numerically stable as gam: an lme call will occasionally fail. See details section for suggestions, or try the 'gamm4' package.

gamm is usually much slower than gam, and on some platforms you may need to increase the memory available to R in order to use it with large data sets (see mem.limits).

Note that the weights returned in the fitted GAM object are dummy, and not those used by the PQL iteration: this makes partial residual plots look odd.

Note that the gam object part of the returned object is not complete in the sense of having all the elements defined in gamObject and does not inherit from glm: hence e.g. multi-model anova calls will not work.

The parameterization used for the smoothing parameters in gamm, bounds them above and below by an effective infinity and effective zero. See notExp2 for details of how to change this.

Linked smoothing parameters and adaptive smoothing are not supported.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Breslow, N. E. and Clayton, D. G. (1993) Approximate inference in generalized linear mixed models. Journal of the American Statistical Association 88, 9-25.

Lin, X and Zhang, D. (1999) Inference in generalized additive mixed models by using smoothing splines. JRSSB. 55(2):381-400

Pinheiro J.C. and Bates, D.M. (2000) Mixed effects Models in S and S-PLUS. Springer

Ruppert, D., Wand, M.P. and Carroll, R.J. (2003) Semiparametric Regression. Cambridge

Silverman, B.W. (1985) Some aspects of the spline smoothing approach to nonparametric regression. JRSSB 47:1-52

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) Modern Applied Statistics with S. Fourth edition. Springer.

Wahba, G. (1983) Bayesian confidence intervals for the cross validated smoothing spline. JRSSB 45:133-150

Wood, S.N. (2004) Stable and efficient multiple smoothing parameter estimation for generalized additive models. Journal of the American Statistical Association. 99:673-686

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

Wood, S.N. (2006a) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for generalized additive mixed models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

Wood S.N. (2006b) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

Wang, Y. (1998) Mixed effects smoothing spline analysis of variance. J.R. Statist. Soc. B 60, 159-174

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

magic for an alternative for correlated data, te, s, predict.gam, plot.gam, summary.gam, negbin, vis.gam,pdTens, gamm4 (http://cran.r-project.org/package=gamm4)

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## simple examples using gamm as alternative to gam
set.seed(0)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=200,scale=2)
b <- gamm(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat)
plot(b$gam,pages=1)
summary(b$lme) # details of underlying lme fit
summary(b$gam) # gam style summary of fitted model
anova(b$gam)
gam.check(b$gam) # simple checking plots

b <- gamm(y~te(x0,x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat)
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
plot(b$gam)
par(op)
rm(dat)

## Add a factor to the linear predictor, to be modelled as random
dat <- gamSim(6,n=200,scale=.2,dist="poisson")
b2<-gamm(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2),family=poisson,
         data=dat,random=list(fac=~1))
plot(b2$gam,pages=1)
fac <- dat$fac
rm(dat)
vis.gam(b2$gam)


## now an example with autocorrelated errors....
n <- 200;sig <- 2
```

```
x <- 0:(n-1)/(n-1)
f <- 0.2*x^11*(10*(1-x))^6+10*(10*x)^3*(1-x)^10
e <- rnorm(n,0,sig)
for (i in 2:n) e[i] <- 0.6*e[i-1] + e[i]
y <- f + e
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
## Fit model with AR1 residuals
b <- gamm(y~s(x,k=20),correlation=corAR1())
plot(b$gam);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2)
## Raw residuals still show correlation, of course...
acf(residuals(b$gam),main="raw residual ACF")
## But standardized are now fine...
acf(residuals(b$lme,type="normalized"),main="standardized residual ACF")
## compare with model without AR component...
b <- gam(y~s(x,k=20))
plot(b);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2)

## more complicated autocorrelation example - AR errors
## only within groups defined by fac
e <- rnorm(n,0,sig)
for (i in 2:n) e[i] <- 0.6*e[i-1]*(fac[i-1]==fac[i]) + e[i]
y <- f + e
b <- gamm(y~s(x,k=20),correlation=corAR1(form=~1|fac))
plot(b$gam);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2)
par(op)

## more complex situation with nested random effects and within
## group correlation

set.seed(0)
n.g <- 10
n<-n.g*10*4
## simulate smooth part...
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,scale=2)
f <- dat$f
## simulate nested random effects....
fa <- as.factor(rep(1:10,rep(4*n.g,10)))
ra <- rep(rnorm(10),rep(4*n.g,10))
fb <- as.factor(rep(rep(1:4,rep(n.g,4)),10))
rb <- rep(rnorm(4),rep(n.g,4))
for (i in 1:9) rb <- c(rb,rep(rnorm(4),rep(n.g,4)))
## simulate auto-correlated errors within groups
e<-array(0,0)
for (i in 1:40) {
  eg <- rnorm(n.g, 0, sig)
  for (j in 2:n.g) eg[j] <- eg[j-1]*0.6+ eg[j]
  e<-c(e,eg)
}
dat$y <- f + ra + rb + e
dat$fa <- fa;dat$fb <- fb
## fit model ....
b <- gamm(y~s(x0,bs="cr")+s(x1,bs="cr")+s(x2,bs="cr")+
  s(x3,bs="cr"),data=dat,random=list(fa=~1,fb=~1),
  correlation=corAR1())
plot(b$gam,pages=1)
summary(b$gam)
vis.gam(b$gam)
```

```
## and a "spatial" example...
library(nlme);set.seed(1);n <- 100
dat <- gamSim(2,n=n,scale=0) ## standard example
attach(dat)
old.par<-par(mfrow=c(2,2))
contour(truth$x,truth$z,truth$f)  ## true function
f <- data$f                       ## true expected response
## Now simulate correlated errors...
cstr <- corGaus(.1,form = ~x+z)
cstr <- Initialize(cstr,data.frame(x=data$x,z=data$z))
V <- corMatrix(cstr) ## correlation matrix for data
Cv <- chol(V)
e <- t(Cv) %*% rnorm(n)*0.05 # correlated errors
## next add correlated simulated errors to expected values
data$y <- f + e ## ... to produce response
b<- gamm(y~s(x,z,k=50),correlation=corGaus(.1,form=~x+z),
         data=data)
plot(b$gam) # gamm fit accounting for correlation
# overfits when correlation ignored.....
b1 <- gamm(y~s(x,z,k=50),data=data);plot(b1$gam)
b2 <- gam(y~s(x,z,k=50),data=data);plot(b2)
par(old.par)
```

`gamObject` *Fitted gam object*

Description

A fitted GAM object returned by function `gam` and of class `"gam"` inheriting from classes `"glm"` and `"lm"`. Method functions `anova`, `logLik`, `influence`, `plot`, `predict`, `print`, `residuals` and `summary` exist for this class.

All compulsory elements of `"glm"` and `"lm"` objects are present, but the fitting method for a GAM is different to a linear model or GLM, so that the elements relating to the QR decomposition of the model matrix are absent.

Value

A `gam` object has the following elements:

`aic`	AIC of the fitted model: bear in mind that the degrees of freedom used to calculate this are the effective degrees of freedom of the model, and the likelihood is evaluated at the maximum of the penalized likelihood in most cases, not at the MLE.
`assign`	Array whose elements indicate which model term (listed in `pterms`) each parameter relates to: applies only to non-smooth terms.
`boundary`	did parameters end up at boundary of parameter space?
`call`	the matched call (allows `update` to be used with `gam` objects, for example).
`cmX`	column means of the model matrix (with elements corresponding to smooths set to zero) — useful for componentwise CI calculation.
`coefficients`	the coefficients of the fitted model. Parametric coefficients are first, followed by coefficients for each spline term in turn.

control	the gam control list used in the fit.
converged	indicates whether or not the iterative fitting method converged.
data	the original supplied data argument (for class "glm" compatibility). Only included if gam control argument element keepData is set to TRUE (default is FALSE).
db.drho	matrix of first derivatives of model coefficients w.r.t. log smoothing parameters.
deviance	model deviance (not penalized deviance).
df.null	null degrees of freedom.
df.residual	effective residual degrees of freedom of the model.
edf	estimated degrees of freedom for each model parameter. Penalization means that many of these are less than 1.
edf1	similar, but using alternative estimate of EDF. Useful for testing.
edf2	if estimation is by ML or REML then an edf that accounts for smoothing parameter uncertainty can be computed, this is it. edf1 is a heuristic upper bound for edf2.
family	family object specifying distribution and link used.
fitted.values	fitted model predictions of expected value for each datum.
formula	the model formula.
full.sp	full array of smoothing parameters multiplying penalties (excluding any contribution from min.sp argument to gam). May be larger than sp if some terms share smoothing parameters, and/or some smoothing parameter values were supplied in the sp argument of gam.
F	Degrees of freedom matrix. This may be removed at some point, and should probably not be used.
gcv.ubre	The minimized smoothing parameter selection score: GCV, UBRE(AIC), GACV, negative log marginal likelihood or negative log restricted likelihood.
hat	array of elements from the leading diagonal of the 'hat' (or 'influence') matrix. Same length as response data vector.
iter	number of iterations of P-IRLS taken to get convergence.
linear.predictors	fitted model prediction of link function of expected value for each datum.
method	One of "GCV" or "UBRE", "REML", "P-REML", "ML", "P-ML", "PQL", "lme.ML" or "lme.REML", depending on the fitting criterion used.
mgcv.conv	A list of convergence diagnostics relating to the "magic" parts of smoothing parameter estimation - this will not be very meaningful for pure "outer" estimation of smoothing parameters. The items are: full.rank, The apparent rank of the problem given the model matrix and constraints; rank, The numerical rank of the problem; fully.converged, TRUE is multiple GCV/UBRE converged by meeting convergence criteria and FALSE if method stopped with a steepest descent step failure; hess.pos.defWas the hessian of the GCV/UBRE score positive definite at smoothing parameter estimation convergence?; iter How many iterations were required to find the smoothing parameters? score.calls, and how many times did the GCV/UBRE score have to be evaluated?; rms.grad, root mean square of the gradient of the GCV/UBRE score at convergence.
min.edf	Minimum possible degrees of freedom for whole model.

model	model frame containing all variables needed in original model fit.
na.action	The na.action used in fitting.
nsdf	number of parametric, non-smooth, model terms including the intercept.
null.deviance	deviance for single parameter model.
offset	model offset.
optimizer	optimizer argument to gam, or "magic" if it's a pure additive model.
outer.info	If 'outer' iteration has been used to fit the model (see gam argument optimizer) then this is present and contains whatever was returned by the optimization routine used (currently nlm or optim).
paraPen	If the paraPen argument to gam was used then this provides information on the parametric penalties. NULL otherwise.
pred.formula	one sided formula containing variables needed for prediction, used by predict.gam
prior.weights	prior weights on observations.
pterms	terms object for strictly parametric part of model.
R	Factor R from QR decomposition of weighted model matrix, unpivoted to be in same column order as model matrix (so need not be upper triangular).
rank	apparent rank of fitted model.
reml.scale	The scale (RE)ML scale parameter estimate, if (P-)(RE)ML used for smoothness estimation.
residuals	the working residuals for the fitted model.
rV	If present, rV%*%t(rV)*sig2 gives the estimated Bayesian covariance matrix.
scale	when present, the scale (as sig2)
scale.estimated	TRUE if the scale parameter was estimated, FALSE otherwise.
sig2	estimated or supplied variance/scale parameter.
smooth	list of smooth objects, containing the basis information for each term in the model formula in the order in which they appear. These smooth objects are what gets returned by the smooth.construct objects.
sp	estimated smoothing parameters for the model. These are the underlying smoothing parameters, subject to optimization. For the full set of smoothing parameters multiplying the penalties see full.sp. Divide the scale parameter by the smoothing parameters to get, variance components, but note that this is not valid for smooths that have used rescaling to improve conditioning.
terms	terms object of model model frame.
var.summary	A named list of summary information on the predictor variables. If a parametric variable is a matrix, then the summary is a one row matrix, containing the observed data value closest to the column median, for each matrix column. If the variable is a factor the then summary is the modal factor level, returned as a factor, with levels corresponding to those of the data. For numerics and matrix arguments of smooths, the summary is the mean, nearest observed value to median and maximum, as a numeric vector. Used by vis.gam, in particular.
Ve	frequentist estimated covariance matrix for the parameter estimators. Particularly useful for testing whether terms are zero. Not so useful for CI's as smooths are usually biased.

Vp	estimated covariance matrix for the parameters. This is a Bayesian posterior covariance matrix that results from adopting a particular Bayesian model of the smoothing process. Paricularly useful for creating credible/confidence intervals.
Vc	Under ML or REML smoothing parameter estimation it is possible to correct the covariance matrix Vp for smoothing parameter uncertainty. This is the corrected version.
weights	final weights used in IRLS iteration.
y	response data.

WARNINGS

This model object is different to that described in Chambers and Hastie (1993) in order to allow smoothing parameter estimation etc.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

A Key Reference on this implementation:

Wood, S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman & Hall/ CRC, Boca Raton, Florida

Key Reference on GAMs generally:

Hastie (1993) in Chambers and Hastie (1993) Statistical Models in S. Chapman and Hall.

Hastie and Tibshirani (1990) Generalized Additive Models. Chapman and Hall.

See Also

gam

---

gamSim *Simulate example data for GAMs*

Description

Function used to simulate data sets to illustrate the use of gam and gamm. Mostly used in help files to keep down the length of the example code sections.

Usage

```
gamSim(eg=1,n=400,dist="normal",scale=2,verbose=TRUE)
```

Arguments

eg	numeric value specifying the example required.
n	number of data to simulate.
dist	character string which may be used to spcify the distribution of the response.
scale	Used to set noise level.
verbose	Should information about simulation type be printed?

Details

See the source code for exactly what is simulated in each case.

1. Gu and Wahba 4 univariate term example.
2. A smooth function of 2 variables.
3. Example with continuous by variable.
4. Example with factor by variable.
5. An additive example plus a factor variable.
6. Additive + random effect.
7. As 1 but with correlated covariates.

Value

Depends on `eg`, but usually a dataframe, which may also contain some information on the underlying truth. Sometimes a list with more items, including a data frame for model fitting. See source code or helpfile examples where the function is used for further information.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

gam, gamm

Examples

```
## see ?gam
```

---

gaulss *Gaussian location-scale model family*

Description

The `gaulss` family implements Gaussian location scale additive models in which the mean and the inverse of the standard deviation can depend on additive smooth predictors. Useable only with gam, the linear predictors are specified via a list of formulae.

Usage

```
gaulss(link=list("identity","logb"),b=0.01)
```

Arguments

`link`	two item list specifying the link for the mean and the standard deviation. See details.
`b`	The minumum standard deviation, for the `"logb"` link.

Details

Used with gam to fit Gaussian location - scale models. gam is called with a list containing 2 formulae, the first specifies the response on the left hand side and the structure of the linear predictor for the mean on the right hand side. The second is one sided, specifying the linear predictor for the standard deviation on the right hand side.

Link functions "identity", "inverse", "log" and "sqrt" are available for the mean. For the standard deviation only the "logb" link is implemented: $\eta = \log(\sigma - b)$ and $\sigma = b + \exp(\eta)$. This link is designed to avoid singularities in the likelihood caused by the standard deviation tending to zero.

The fitted values for this family will be a two column matrix. The first column is the mean, and the second column is the inverse of the standard deviation. Predictions using predict.gam will also produce 2 column matrices for type "link" and "response".

The null deviance reported for this family is the sum of squares of the difference between the response and the mean response divided by the standard deviation of the response according to the model. The deviance is the sum of squares of residuals divided by model standard deviations.

Value

An object inheriting from class general.family.

Examples

```
library(mgcv);library(MASS)
b <- gam(list(accel~s(times,k=20,bs="ad"),~s(times)),
            data=mcycle,family=gaulss())
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1,scale=0)
```

---

get.var *Get named variable or evaluate expression from list or data.frame*

Description

This routine takes a text string and a data frame or list. It first sees if the string is the name of a variable in the data frame/ list. If it is then the value of this variable is returned. Otherwise the routine tries to evaluate the expression within the data.frame/list (but nowhere else) and if successful returns the result. If neither step works then NULL is returned. The routine is useful for processing gam formulae. If the variable is a matrix then it is coerced to a numeric vector, by default.

Usage

```
get.var(txt,data,vecMat=TRUE)
```

Arguments

txt	a text string which is either the name of a variable in data or when parsed is an expression that can be evaluated in data. It can also be neither in which case the function returns NULL.
data	A data frame or list.
vecMat	Should matrices be coerced to numeric vectors?

Value

The evaluated variable or NULL. May be coerced to a numeric vector if it's a matrix.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gam

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
y <- 1:4;dat<-data.frame(x=5:10)
get.var("x",dat)
get.var("y",dat)
get.var("x==6",dat)
dat <- list(X=matrix(1:6,3,2))
get.var("X",dat)
```

---

in.out *Which of a set of points lie within a polygon defined region*

Description

Tests whether each of a set of points lie within a region defined by one or more (possibly nested) polygons. Points count as 'inside' if they are interior to an odd number of polygons.

Usage

```
in.out(bnd,x)
```

Arguments

bnd	A two column matrix, the rows of which define the vertices of polygons defining the boundary of a region. Different polygons should be separated by an NA row, and the polygons are assumed closed.
x	A two column matrix. Each row is a point to test for inclusion in the region defined by bnd.

Details

The algorithm works by counting boundary crossings (using compiled C code).

Value

A logical vector of length nrow(x). TRUE if the corresponding row of x is inside the boundary and FALSE otherwise.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
data(columb.polys)
bnd <- columb.polys[[2]]
plot(bnd,type="n")
polygon(bnd)
x <- seq(7.9,8.7,length=20)
y <- seq(13.7,14.3,length=20)
gr <- as.matrix(expand.grid(x,y))
inside <- in.out(bnd,gr)
points(gr,col=as.numeric(inside)+1)
```

---

influence.gam *Extract the diagonal of the influence/hat matrix for a GAM*

Description

Extracts the leading diagonal of the influence matrix (hat matrix) of a fitted gam object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
influence(model,...)
```

Arguments

model	fitted model objects of class gam as produced by gam().
...	un-used in this case

Details

Simply extracts hat array from fitted model. (More may follow!)

Value

An array (see above).

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

gam

initial.sp *Starting values for multiple smoothing parameter estimation*

Description

Finds initial smoothing parameter guesses for multiple smoothing parameter estimation. The idea is to find values such that the estimated degrees of freedom per penalized parameter should be well away from 0 and 1 for each penalized parameter, thus ensuring that the values are in a region of parameter space where the smoothing parameter estimation criterion is varying substantially with smoothing parameter value.

Usage

```
initial.sp(X,S,off,expensive=FALSE)
```

Arguments

X	is the model matrix.
S	is a list of of penalty matrices. S[[i]] is the ith penalty matrix, but note that it is not stored as a full matrix, but rather as the smallest square matrix including all the non-zero elements of the penalty matrix. Element 1,1 of S[[i]] occupies element off[i], off[i] of the ith penalty matrix. Each S[[i]] must be positive semi-definite.
off	is an array indicating the first parameter in the parameter vector that is penalized by the penalty involving S[[i]].
expensive	if TRUE then the overall amount of smoothing is adjusted so that the average degrees of freedom per penalized parameter is exactly 0.5: this is numerically costly.

Details

Basically uses a crude approximation to the estimated degrees of freedom per model coefficient, to try and find smoothing parameters which bound these e.d.f.'s away from 0 and 1.

Usually only called by magic and gam.

Value

An array of initial smoothing parameter estimates.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

magic, gam.outer, gam,

inSide *Are points inside boundary?*

Description

Assesses whether points are inside a boundary. The boundary must enclose the domain, but may include islands.

Usage

```
inSide(bnd,x,y)
```

Arguments

bnd	This should have two equal length columns with names matching whatever is supplied in x and y. This may contain several sections of boundary separated by NA. Alternatively bnd may be a list, each element of which contains 2 columns named as above. See below for details.
x	x co-ordinates of points to be tested.
y	y co-ordinates of points to be tested.

Details

Segments of boundary are separated by NAs, or are in separate list elements. The boundary co-ordinates are taken to define nodes which are joined by straight line segments in order to create the boundary. Each segment is assumed to define a closed loop, and the last point in a segment will be assumed to be joined to the first. Loops must not intersect (no test is made for this).

The method used is to count how many times a line, in the y-direction from a point, crosses a boundary segment. An odd number of crossings defines an interior point. Hence in geographic applications it would be usual to have an outer boundary loop, possibly with some inner 'islands' completely enclosed in the outer loop.

The routine calls compiled C code and operates by an exhaustive search for each point in x, y.

Value

The function returns a logical array of the same dimension as x and y. TRUE indicates that the corresponding x, y point lies inside the boundary.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
m <- 300;n <- 150
xm <- seq(-1,4,length=m);yn<-seq(-1,1,length=n)
x <- rep(xm,n);y<-rep(yn,rep(m,n))
er <- matrix(fs.test(x,y),m,n)
bnd <- fs.boundary()
in.bnd <- inSide(bnd,x,y)
plot(x,y,col=as.numeric(in.bnd)+1,pch=".")
lines(bnd$x,bnd$y,col=3)
points(x,y,col=as.numeric(in.bnd)+1,pch=".")
## check boundary details ...
plot(x,y,col=as.numeric(in.bnd)+1,pch=".",ylim=c(-1,0),xlim=c(3,3.5))
lines(bnd$x,bnd$y,col=3)
points(x,y,col=as.numeric(in.bnd)+1,pch=".")
```

---

interpret.gam *Interpret a GAM formula*

Description

This is an internal function of package mgcv. It is a service routine for gam which splits off the strictly parametric part of the model formula, returning it as a formula, and interprets the smooth parts of the model formula.

Not normally called directly.

Usage

```
interpret.gam(gf)
```

Arguments

gf	A GAM formula as supplied to gam or gamm, or a list of such formulae, as supplied for some gam families.

Value

An object of class split.gam.formula with the following items:

pf	A model formula for the strictly parametric part of the model.
pfok	TRUE if there is a pf formula.
smooth.spec	A list of class xx.smooth.spec objects where xx depends on the basis specified for the term. (These can be passed to smooth constructor method functions to actually set up penalties and bases.)
full.formula	An expanded version of the model formula in which the options are fully expanded, and the options do not depend on variables which might not be available later.
fake.formula	A formula suitable for use in evaluating a model frame.
response	Name of the response variable.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gam gamm

---

jagam *Just Another Gibbs Additive Modeller: JAGS support for mgcv.*

Description

Facilities to auto-generate model specification code and associated data to simulate with GAMs in JAGS (or BUGS). This is useful for inference about models with complex random effects structure best coded in JAGS. It is a very innefficient approach to making inferences about standard GAMs. The idea is that jagam generates template JAGS code, and associated data, for the smooth part of the model. This template is then directly edited to include other stochastic components. After simulation with the resulting model, facilities are provided for plotting and prediction with the model smooth components.

Usage

```
jagam(formula,family=gaussian,data=list(),file,weights=NULL,na.action,
offset=NULL,knots=NULL,sp=NULL,drop.unused.levels=TRUE,
control=gam.control(),centred=TRUE,sp.prior = "gamma",diagonalize=FALSE)

sim2jam(sam,pregam,edf.type=2,burnin=0)
```

Arguments

formula	A GAM formula (see formula.gam and also gam.models). This is exactly like the formula for a GLM except that smooth terms, s, te, ti and t2 can be added to the right hand side to specify that the linear predictor depends on smooth functions of predictors (or linear functionals of these).
family	This is a family object specifying the distribution and link function to use. See glm and family for more details. Currently only gaussian, poisson, binomial and Gamma families are supported, but the user can easily modify the assumed distribution in the JAGS code.
data	A data frame or list containing the model response variable and covariates required by the formula. By default the variables are taken from environment(formula): typically the environment from which jagam is called.
file	Name of the file to which JAGS model specification code should be written. See setwd for setting and querying the current working directory.
weights	prior weights on the data.

`na.action` a function which indicates what should happen when the data contain 'NA's. The default is set by the 'na.action' setting of 'options', and is 'na.fail' if that is unset. The "factory-fresh" default is 'na.omit'.

`offset` Can be used to supply a model offset for use in fitting. Note that this offset will always be completely ignored when predicting, unlike an offset included in `formula`: this conforms to the behaviour of `lm` and `glm`.

`control` A list of fit control parameters to replace defaults returned by `gam.control`. Any control parameters not supplied stay at their default values. little effect on `jagam`.

`knots` this is an optional list containing user specified knot values to be used for basis construction. For most bases the user simply supplies the knots to be used, which must match up with the `k` value supplied (note that the number of knots is not always just `k`). See `tprs` for what happens in the `"tp"/"ts"` case. Different terms can use different numbers of knots, unless they share a covariate.

`sp` A vector of smoothing parameters can be provided here. Smoothing parameters must be supplied in the order that the smooth terms appear in the model formula (without forgetting null space penalties). Negative elements indicate that the parameter should be estimated, and hence a mixture of fixed and estimated parameters is possible. If smooths share smoothing parameters then `length(sp)` must correspond to the number of underlying smoothing parameters.

`drop.unused.levels` by default unused levels are dropped from factors before fitting. For some smooths involving factor variables you might want to turn this off. Only do so if you know what you are doing.

`centred` Should centring constraints be applied to the smooths, as is usual with GAMS? Only set this to `FALSE` if you know exactly what you are doing. If `FALSE` there is a (usually global) intercept for each smooth.

`sp.prior` `"gamma"` or `"log.uniform"` prior for the smoothing parameters? Do check that the default parameters are appropriate for your model in the JAGS code.

`diagonalize` Should smooths be re-parameterized to have i.i.d. Gaussian priors? For Gaussian data this allows efficient conjugate samplers to be used, but otherwise it is better to update smoothers blockwise, and not do this.

`sam` jags sample object, containing at least fields `b` (coefficients) and `rho` (log smoothing parameters). May also contain field `mu` containing monitored expected response.

`pregam` standard `mgcv` GAM setup data, as returned in `jagam` return list.

`edf.type` Since EDF is not uniquely defined and may be affected by the stochastic structure added to the JAGS model file, 3 options are offered. See details.

`burnin` the amount of burn in to discard from the simulation chains. Limited to .9 of the chain length.

Details

Smooths are easily incorportated into JAGS models using multivariate normal priors on the smooth coefficients. The smoothing parameters and smoothing penalty matrices directly specifiy the prior multivariate normal precision matrix. Normally a smoothing penalty does not correspond to a full rank precision matrix, implying an improper prior inappropriate for Gibbs sampling. To rectify this problem the null space penalties suggested in Marra and Wood (2011) are added to the usual penalties.

In an additive modelling context it is usual to centre the smooths, to avoid the identifiability issues associated with having an intercept for each smooth term (in addition to a global intercept). Under Gibbs sampling it is technically possible to omit this centring, since we anyway force propriety on the priors, and this propiety implies formal model identifiability. However, in most situations this formal identifiability is rather artificial and does not imply statistically meaningfull identifiability. Rather it serves only to massively inflate confidence intervals, since the multiple intercept terms are not identifiable from the data, but only from the prior. By default then, `jagam` imposes standard GAM identifiability constraints on all smooths. The `centred` argument does allow you to turn this off, but it is not recommended. If you do set `centred=FALSE` then chain convergence and mixing checks should be particularly stringent.

The final technical issue for model setup is the setting of initial conditions for the coefficients and smoothing parameters. The approach taken is to take the default initial smoothing parameter values used elsewhere by `mgcv`, and to take a single PIRLS fitting step with these smoothing parameters in order to obtain starting values for the smooth coefficients. In the setting of fully conjugate updating the initial values of the coefficients are not critical, and good results are obtained without supplying them. But in the usual setting in which slice sampling is required for at least some of the updates then very poor results can sometimes be obtained without initial values, as the sampler simply fails to find the region of the posterior mode.

The `sim2jam` function takes the partial `gam` object (`pregam`) from `jagam` along with simulation output in standard `rjags` form and creates a reduced version of a `gam` object, suitable for plotting and prediction of the model's smooth components. `sim2gam` computes effective degrees of freedom for each smooth, but it should be noted that there are several possibilites for doing this in the context of a model with a complex random effects structure. The simplest approach (`edf.type=0`) is to compute the degrees of freedom that the smooth would have had if it had been part of an unweighted Gaussian additive model. One might choose to use this option if the model has been modified so that the response distribution and/or link are not those that were specified to `jagam`. The second option is (`edf.type=1`) uses the edf that would have been computed by `gam` had it produced these estimates - in the context in which the JAGS model modifications have all been about modifying the random effects structure, this is equivalent to simply setting all the random effects to zero for the effective degrees of freedom calculation. The default option (`edf.type=2`) is to base the EDF on the sample covariance matrix, `Vp`, of the model coefficients. If the simulation output (`sim`) includes a `mu` field, then this will be used to form the weight matrix `W` in `XWX = t(X)%*%W%*%X`, where the EDF is computed from `rowSums(Vp*XWX)*scale`. If `mu` is not supplied then it is estimated from the the model matrix `X` and the mean of the simulated coefficients, but the resulting `W` may not be strictly comaptible with the `Vp` matrix in this case. In the situation in which the fitted model is very different in structure from the regression model of the template produced by `jagam` then the default option may make no sense, and indeed it may be best to use option 0.

Value

For `jagam` a three item list containing

`pregam`	standard `mgcv` GAM setup data.
`jags.data`	list of arguments to be supplied to JAGS containing information referenced in model specification.
`jags.ini`	initialization data for smooth coefficients and smoothing parameters.

For `sim2jam` an object of class `"jam"`: a partial version of an `mgcv` `gamObject`, suitable for plotting and predicting.

WARNINGS

Gibb's sampling is a very slow inferential method for standard GAMs. It is only likely to be worthwhile when complex random effects structures are required above what is possible with direct GAMM methods.

Check that the parameters of the priors on the parameters are fit for your purpose.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Marra, G. and S.N. Wood (2011) Practical variable selection for generalized additive models. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis 55(7): 2372-2387

Here is a key early reference to smoothing using BUGS (although the approach and smooths used are different to jagam)

Crainiceanu, C. M. D Ruppert, & M.P. Wand (2005) Bayesian Analysis for Penalized Spline Regression Using WinBUGS Journal of Statistical Software 14.

See Also

gam, gamm

Examples

```
## the following illustrates a typical workflow. To run the
## do not run code you need rjags (and JAGS) to be installed.
require(mgcv)

set.seed(2) ## simulate some data...
n <- 400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,dist="normal",scale=2)
## regular gam fit for comparison...
b0 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1) + s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,method="REML")

## Set up JAGS code and data. In this one might want to diagonalize
## to use conjugate samplers. Usually call setwd first, to set
## directory in which model file ("test.jags") will be written.
jd <- jagam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,file="test.jags",
            sp.prior="gamma",diagonalize=TRUE)

## In normal use the model in "test.jags" would now be edited to add
## the non-standard stochastic elements that require use of JAGS....

## Not run:
require(rjags)
jm <-jags.model("test.jags",data=jd$jags.data,inits=jd$jags.ini,n.chains=1)
list.samplers(jm)
sam <- jags.samples(jm,c("b","rho","scale"),n.iter=10000,thin=10)
jam <- sim2jam(sam,jd$pregam)
plot(jam,pages=1)
jam
pd <- data.frame(x0=c(.5,.6),x1=c(.4,.2),x2=c(.8,.4),x3=c(.1,.1))
fv <- predict(jam,newdata=pd)
```

```
## End(Not run)

## a gamma example...
set.seed(1); n <- 400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,dist="normal",scale=2)
scale <- .5; Ey <- exp(dat$f/2)
dat$y <- rgamma(n,shape=1/scale,scale=Ey*scale)
jd <- jagam(y~s(x0)+te(x1,x2)+s(x3),data=dat,family=Gamma(link=log),
            file="test.jags",sp.prior="log.uniform")

## In normal use the model in "test.jags" would now be edited to add
## the non-standard stochastic elements that require use of JAGS....

## Not run:
require(rjags)
jd$jags.ini$.RNG.name <- "base::Mersenne-Twister" ## setting RNG
jd$jags.ini$.RNG.seed <- 6 ## how to set RNG seed
jm <-jags.model("test.jags",data=jd$jags.data,inits=jd$jags.ini,n.chains=1)
list.samplers(jm)
sam <- jags.samples(jm,c("b","rho","scale","mu"),n.iter=10000,thin=10)
jam <- sim2jam(sam,jd$pregam)
plot(jam,pages=1)
jam
pd <- data.frame(x0=c(.5,.6),x1=c(.4,.2),x2=c(.8,.4),x3=c(.1,.1))
fv <- predict(jam,newdata=pd)

## End(Not run)
```

`ldTweedie` *Log Tweedie density evaluation*

Description

A function to evaluate the log of the Tweedie density for variance powers between 1 and 2, inclusive. Also evaluates first and second derivatives of log density w.r.t. its scale parameter, `phi`, and `p`, or w.r.t. `rho=log(phi)` and `theta` where `p = (a+b*exp(theta))/(1+exp(theta))`.

Usage

```
ldTweedie(y,mu=y,p=1.5,phi=1,rho=NA,theta=NA,a=1.001,b=1.999)
```

Arguments

`y`	values at which to evaluate density.
`mu`	corresponding means (either of same length as `y` or a single value).
`p`	the variance of `y` is proportional to its mean to the power `p`. `p` must be between 1 and 2. 1 is Poisson like (exactly Poisson if `phi=1`), 2 is gamma.
`phi`	The scale parameter. Variance of `y` is `phi*mu^p`.
`rho`	optional log scale parameter. Over-rides `phi` if `theta` also supplied.

theta	parameter such that p = (a+b*exp(theta))/(1+exp(theta)). Over-rides p if rho also supplied.
a	lower limit parameter used in definition of p from theta.
b	upper limit parameter used in definition of p from theta.

Details

A Tweedie random variable with 1<p<2 is a sum of N gamma random variables where N has a Poisson distribution. The p=1 case is a generalization of a Poisson distribution and is a discrete distribution supported on integer multiples of the scale parameter. For 1<p<2 the distribution is supported on the positive reals with a point mass at zero. p=2 is a gamma distribution. As p gets very close to 1 the continuous distribution begins to converge on the discretely supported limit at p=1.

ldTweedie is based on the series evaluation method of Dunn and Smyth (2005). Without the restriction on p the calculation of Tweedie densities is less straightforward. If you really need this case then the tweedie package is the place to start.

The rho, theta parameterization is useful for optimization of p and phi, in order to keep p bounded well away from 1 and 2, and phi positive. The derivatives near p=1 tend to infinity.

Value

A matrix with 6 columns. The first is the log density of y (log probability if p=1). The second and third are the first and second derivatives of the log density w.r.t. phi. 4th and 5th columns are first and second derivative w.r.t. p, final column is second derivative w.r.t. phi and p.

If rho and theta were supplied then derivatives are w.r.t. these.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Dunn, P.K. and G.K. Smith (2005) Series evaluation of Tweedie exponential dispersion model densities. Statistics and Computing 15:267-280

Tweedie, M. C. K. (1984). An index which distinguishes between some important exponential families. Statistics: Applications and New Directions. Proceedings of the Indian Statistical Institute Golden Jubilee International Conference (Eds. J. K. Ghosh and J. Roy), pp. 579-604. Calcutta: Indian Statistical Institute.

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## convergence to Poisson illustrated
## notice how p>1.1 is OK
y <- seq(1e-10,10,length=1000)
p <- c(1.0001,1.001,1.01,1.1,1.2,1.5,1.8,2)
phi <- .5
fy <- exp(ldTweedie(y,mu=2,p=p[1],phi=phi)[,1])
plot(y,fy,type="l",ylim=c(0,3),main="Tweedie density as p changes")
for (i in 2:length(p)) {
  fy <- exp(ldTweedie(y,mu=2,p=p[i],phi=phi)[,1])
  lines(y,fy,col=i)
}
```

linear.functional.terms *Linear functionals of a smooth in GAMs*

Description

gam allows the response variable to depend on linear functionals of smooth terms. Specifically dependancies of the form

$$g(\mu_i) = \ldots + \sum_j L_{ij} f(x_{ij}) + \ldots$$

are allowed, where the x_{ij} are covariate values and the L_{ij} are fixed weights. i.e. the response can depend on the weighted sum of the same smooth evaluated at different covariate values. This allows, for example, for the response to depend on the derivatives or integrals of a smooth (approximated by finite differencing or quadrature, respectively). It also allows dependence on predictor functions (sometimes called 'signal regression').

The mechanism by which this is achieved is to supply matrices of covariate values to the model smooth terms specified by s or te terms in the model formula. Each column of the covariate matrix gives rise to a corresponding column of predictions from the smooth. Let the resulting matrix of evaluated smooth values be F (F will have the same dimension as the covariate matrices). In the absense of a by variable then these columns are simply summed and added to the linear predictor. i.e. the contribution of the term to the linear predictor is `rowSums(F)`. If a by variable is present then it must be a matrix, L,say, of the same dimension as F (and the covariate matrices), and it contains the weights L_{ij} in the summation given above. So in this case the contribution to the linear predictor is `rowSums(L*F)`.

Note that if a $\mathbf{L1}$ (i.e. `rowSums(L)`) is a constant vector, or there is no by variable then the smooth will automatically be centred in order to ensure identifiability. Otherwise it will not be. Note also that for centred smooths it can be worth replacing the constant term in the model with `rowSums(L)` in order to ensure that predictions are automatically on the right scale.

When predicting from the model it is not necessary to provide matrix covariate and by variable values. For example to simply examine the underlying smooth function one would use vectors of covariate values and vector by variables, with the by variable and equivalent of L1, above, set to vectors of ones.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Examples

```
### matrix argument linear operator smoothing
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)

################################
## simple summation example...#
################################
```

```
n<-400
sig<-2
x <- runif(n, 0, .9)
f2 <- function(x) 0.2*x^11*(10*(1-x))^6+10*(10*x)^3*(1-x)^10
x1 <- x + .1

f <- f2(x) + f2(x1)  ## response is sum of f at two adjacent x values
y <- f + rnorm(n)*sig

X <- matrix(c(x,x1),n,2) ## matrix covariate contains both x values
b <- gam(y~s(X))

plot(b)  ## reconstruction of f
plot(f,fitted(b))

#########################################################################
## multivariate integral example. Function test1 will be integrated#
## (by midpoint quadrature) over 100 equal area sub-squares covering #
## the unit square. Noise is added to the resulting simulated data.  #
## test1 is estimated from the resulting data using two alternative#
## smooths.                                                          #
#########################################################################

test1 <- function(x,z,sx=0.3,sz=0.4)
  { (pi**sx*sz)*(1.2*exp(-(x-0.2)^2/sx^2-(z-0.3)^2/sz^2)+
    0.8*exp(-(x-0.7)^2/sx^2-(z-0.8)^2/sz^2))
  }

## create quadrature (integration) grid, in useful order
ig <- 5 ## integration grid within square
mx <- mz <- (1:ig-.5)/ig
ix <- rep(mx,ig);iz <- rep(mz,rep(ig,ig))

og <- 10 ## observarion grid
mx <- mz <- (1:og-1)/og
ox <- rep(mx,og);ox <- rep(ox,rep(ig^2,og^2))
oz <- rep(mz,rep(og,og));oz <- rep(oz,rep(ig^2,og^2))

x <- ox + ix/og;z <- oz + iz/og ## full grid, subsquare by subsquare

## create matrix covariates...
X <- matrix(x,og^2,ig^2,byrow=TRUE)
Z <- matrix(z,og^2,ig^2,byrow=TRUE)

## create simulated test data...
dA <- 1/(og*ig)^2  ## quadrature square area
F <- test1(X,Z)    ## evaluate on grid
f <- rowSums(F)*dA ## integrate by midpoint quadrature
y <- f + rnorm(og^2)*5e-4 ## add noise
## ... so each y is a noisy observation of the integral of test1
## over a 0.1 by 0.1 sub-square from the unit square

## Now fit model to simulated data...

L <- X*0 + dA

## ... let F be the matrix of the smooth evaluated at the x,z values
```

```
## in matrices X and Z. rowSums(L*F) gives the model predicted
## integrals of test1 corresponding to the observed y

L1 <- rowSums(L) ## smooths are centred --- need to add in L%*%1

## fit models to reconstruct test1....

b <- gam(y~s(X,Z,by=L)+L1-1)   ## (L1 and const are confounded here)
b1 <- gam(y~te(X,Z,by=L)+L1-1) ## tensor product alternative

## plot results...

old.par<-par(mfrow=c(2,2))
x<-runif(n);z<-runif(n);
xs<-seq(0,1,length=30);zs<-seq(0,1,length=30)
pr<-data.frame(x=rep(xs,30),z=rep(zs,rep(30,30)))
truth<-matrix(test1(pr$x,pr$z),30,30)
contour(xs,zs,truth)
plot(b)
vis.gam(b,view=c("X","Z"),cond=list(L1=1,L=1),plot.type="contour")
vis.gam(b1,view=c("X","Z"),cond=list(L1=1,L=1),plot.type="contour")

###################################
## A "signal" regression example...#
###################################

rf <- function(x=seq(0,1,length=100)) {
## generates random functions...
  m <- ceiling(runif(1)*5) ## number of components
  f <- x*0;
  mu <- runif(m,min(x),max(x));sig <- (runif(m)+.5)*(max(x)-min(x))/10
  for (i in 1:m) f <- f+ dnorm(x,mu[i],sig[i])
  f
}

x <- seq(0,1,length=100) ## evaluation points

## example functional predictors...
par(mfrow=c(3,3));for (i in 1:9) plot(x,rf(x),type="l",xlab="x")

## simulate 200 functions and store in rows of L...
L <- matrix(NA,200,100)
for (i in 1:200) L[i,] <- rf()  ## simulate the functional predictors

f2 <- function(x) { ## the coefficient function
  (0.2*x^11*(10*(1-x))^6+10*(10*x)^3*(1-x)^10)/10
}

f <- f2(x) ## the true coefficient function

y <- L%*%f + rnorm(200)*20 ## simulated response data

## Now fit the model E(y) = L%*%f(x) where f is a smooth function.
## The summation convention is used to evaluate smooth at each value
## in matrix X to get matrix F, say. Then rowSum(L*F) gives E(y).

## create matrix of eval points for each function. Note that
```

```
## smoothCon is smart and will recognize the duplication...
X <- matrix(x,200,100,byrow=TRUE)

b <- gam(y~s(X,by=L,k=20))
par(mfrow=c(1,1))
plot(b,shade=TRUE);lines(x,f,col=2)
```

`logLik.gam` *Log likelihood for a fitted GAM, for AIC*

Description

Function to extract the log-likelihood for a fitted `gam` model (note that the models are usually fitted by penalized likelihood maximization). Used by `AIC`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
logLik(object,...)
```

Arguments

`object`	fitted model objects of class `gam` as produced by `gam()`.
`...`	un-used in this case

Details

Modification of `logLik.glm` which corrects the degrees of freedom for use with `gam` objects.

The function is provided so that `AIC` functions correctly with `gam` objects, and uses the appropriate degrees of freedom (accounting for penalization). Note, when using `AIC` for penalized models, that the degrees of freedom are the effective degrees of freedom and not the number of parameters, and the model maximizes the penalized likelihood, not the actual likelihood. (See e.g. Hastie and Tibshirani, 1990, section 6.8.3 and also Wood 2008),

By default this routine uses a definition of the effective degrees of freedom that includes smoothing parameter uncertainty, if this is available (i.e. if smoothing parameter selection is by some variety of marginal likelihood).

Value

Standard `logLik` object: see `logLik`.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>` based directly on `logLik.glm`

References

Hastie and Tibshirani, 1990, Generalized Additive Models.

Wood, S.N. (2008) Fast stable direct fitting and smoothness selection for generalized additive models. J.R.Statist. Soc. B 70(3):495-518

See Also

AIC

`ls.size` *Size of list elements*

Description

Produces a named array giving the size, in bytes, of the elements of a list.

Usage

```
ls.size(x)
```

Arguments

x	A list.

Value

A numeric vector giving the size in bytes of each element of the list x. The elements of the array have the same names as the elements of the list. If x is not a list then its size in bytes is returned, un-named.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
b <- list(M=matrix(runif(100),10,10),quote=
"The world is ruled by idiots because only an idiot would want to rule the world.",
fam=binomial())
ls.size(b)
```

magic *Stable Multiple Smoothing Parameter Estimation by GCV or UBRE*

Description

Function to efficiently estimate smoothing parameters in generalized ridge regression problems with multiple (quadratic) penalties, by GCV or UBRE. The function uses Newton's method in multi-dimensions, backed up by steepest descent to iteratively adjust the smoothing parameters for each penalty (one penalty may have a smoothing parameter fixed at 1).

For maximal numerical stability the method is based on orthogonal decomposition methods, and attempts to deal with numerical rank deficiency gracefully using a truncated singular value decomposition approach.

Usage

```
magic(y,X,sp,S,off,L=NULL,lsp0=NULL,rank=NULL,H=NULL,C=NULL,
      w=NULL,gamma=1,scale=1,gcv=TRUE,ridge.parameter=NULL,
      control=list(tol=1e-6,step.half=25,rank.tol=
      .Machine$double.eps^0.5),extra.rss=0,n.score=length(y),nthreads=1)
```

Arguments

y	is the response data vector.
X	is the model matrix (more columns than rows are allowed).
sp	is the array of smoothing parameters. The vector L%*%log(sp) + lsp0 contains the logs of the smoothing parameters that actually multiply the penalty matrices stored in S (L is taken as the identity if NULL). Any sp values that are negative are autoinitialized, otherwise they are taken as supplying starting values. A supplied starting value will be reset to a default starting value if the gradient of the GCV/UBRE score is too small at the supplied value.
S	is a list of of penalty matrices. S[[i]] is the ith penalty matrix, but note that it is not stored as a full matrix, but rather as the smallest square matrix including all the non-zero elements of the penalty matrix. Element 1,1 of S[[i]] occupies element off[i], off[i] of the ith penalty matrix. Each S[[i]] must be positive semi-definite. Set to list() if there are no smoothing parameters to be estimated.
off	is an array indicating the first parameter in the parameter vector that is penalized by the penalty involving S[[i]].
L	is a matrix mapping log(sp) to the log smoothing parameters that actually multiply the penalties defined by the elemts of S. Taken as the identity, if NULL. See above under sp.
lsp0	If L is not NULL this is a vector of constants in the linear transformation from log(sp) to the actual log smoothing parameters. So the logs of the smoothing parameters multiplying the S[[i]] are given by L%*%log(sp) + lsp0. Taken as 0 if NULL.
rank	is an array specifying the ranks of the penalties. This is useful, but not essential, for forming square roots of the penalty matrices.

`H` is the optional offset penalty - i.e. a penalty with a smoothing parameter fixed at 1. This is useful for allowing regularization of the estimation process, fixed smoothing penalties etc.

`C` is the optional matrix specifying any linear equality constraints on the fitting problem. If $\mathbf{b}$ is the parameter vector then the parameters are forced to satisfy $\mathbf{Cb} = \mathbf{0}$.

`w` the regression weights. If this is a matrix then it is taken as being the square root of the inverse of the covariance matrix of `y`, specifically $\mathbf{V}_y^{-1} = \mathbf{w}'\mathbf{w}$. If `w` is an array then it is taken as the diagonal of this matrix, or simply the weight for each element of `y`. See below for an example using this.

`gamma` is an inflation factor for the model degrees of freedom in the GCV or UBRE score.

`scale` is the scale parameter for use with UBRE.

`gcv` should be set to `TRUE` if GCV is to be used, `FALSE` for UBRE.

`ridge.parameter`
It is sometimes useful to apply a ridge penalty to the fitting problem, penalizing the parameters in the constrained space directly. Setting this parameter to a value greater than zero will cause such a penalty to be used, with the magnitude given by the parameter value.

`control` is a list of iteration control constants with the following elements:

tol The tolerance to use in judging convergence.

step.half If a trial step fails then the method tries halving it up to a maximum of `step.half` times.

rank.tol is a constant used to test for numerical rank deficiency of the problem. Basically any singular value less than `rank_tol` multiplied by the largest singular value of the problem is set to zero.

`extra.rss` is a constant to be added to the residual sum of squares (squared norm) term in the calculation of the GCV, UBRE and scale parameter estimate. In conjuction with `n.score`, this is useful for certain methods for dealing with very large data sets.

`n.score` number to use as the number of data in GCV/UBRE score calculation: usually the actual number of data, but there are methods for dealing with very large datasets that change this.

`nthreads` `magic` can make use of multiple threads if this is set to >1.

Details

The method is a computationally efficient means of applying GCV or UBRE (often approximately AIC) to the problem of smoothing parameter selection in generalized ridge regression problems of the form:

$$minimise\ \|\mathbf{W}(\mathbf{Xb}-\mathbf{y})\|^2 + \mathbf{b}'\mathbf{Hb} + \sum_{i=1}^{m}\theta_i\mathbf{b}'\mathbf{S}_i\mathbf{b}$$

possibly subject to constraints $\mathbf{Cb} = \mathbf{0}$. $\mathbf{X}$ is a design matrix, $\mathbf{b}$ a parameter vector, $\mathbf{y}$ a data vector, $\mathbf{W}$ a weight matrix, $\mathbf{S}_i$ a positive semi-definite matrix of coefficients defining the ith penalty with associated smoothing parameter θ_i, $\mathbf{H}$ is the positive semi-definite offset penalty matrix and $\mathbf{C}$ a matrix of coefficients defining any linear equality constraints on the problem. $\mathbf{X}$ need not be of full column rank.

The θ_i are chosen to minimize either the GCV score:

$$V_g = \frac{n\|\mathbf{W}(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{y})\|^2}{[tr(\mathbf{I} - \gamma\mathbf{A})]^2}$$

or the UBRE score:

$$V_u = \|\mathbf{W}(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{y})\|^2/n - 2\phi tr(\mathbf{I} - \gamma\mathbf{A})/n + \phi$$

where γ is `gamma` the inflation factor for degrees of freedom (usually set to 1) and ϕ is `scale`, the scale parameter. $\mathbf{A}$ is the hat matrix (influence matrix) for the fitting problem (i.e the matrix mapping data to fitted values). Dependence of the scores on the smoothing parameters is through $\mathbf{A}$.

The method operates by Newton or steepest descent updates of the logs of the θ_i. A key aspect of the method is stable and economical calculation of the first and second derivatives of the scores w.r.t. the log smoothing parameters. Because the GCV/UBRE scores are flat w.r.t. very large or very small θ_i, it's important to get good starting parameters, and to be careful not to step into a flat region of the smoothing parameter space. For this reason the algorithm rescales any Newton step that would result in a $log(\theta_i)$ change of more than 5. Newton steps are only used if the Hessian of the GCV/UBRE is postive definite, otherwise steepest descent is used. Similarly steepest descent is used if the Newton step has to be contracted too far (indicating that the quadratic model underlying Newton is poor). All initial steepest descent steps are scaled so that their largest component is 1. However a step is calculated, it is never expanded if it is successful (to avoid flat portions of the objective), but steps are successively halved if they do not decrease the GCV/UBRE score, until they do, or the direction is deemed to have failed. (Given the smoothing parameters the optimal $\mathbf{b}$ parameters are easily found.)

The method is coded in `C` with matrix factorizations performed using LINPACK and LAPACK routines.

Value

The function returns a list with the following items:

`b` The best fit parameters given the estimated smoothing parameters.

`scale` the estimated (GCV) or supplied (UBRE) scale parameter.

`score` the minimized GCV or UBRE score.

`sp` an array of the estimated smoothing parameters.

`sp.full` an array of the smoothing parameters that actually multiply the elements of `S` (same as `sp` if `L` was `NULL`). This is `exp(L%*%log(sp))`.

`rV` a factored form of the parameter covariance matrix. The (Bayesian) covariance matrix of the parametes `b` is given by `rV%*%t(rV)*scale`.

`gcv.info` is a list of information about the performance of the method with the following elements:

full.rank The apparent rank of the problem: number of parameters less number of equality constraints.

rank The estimated actual rank of the problem (at the final iteration of the method).

fully.converged is `TRUE` if the method converged by satisfying the convergence criteria, and `FALSE` if it coverged by failing to decrease the score along the search direction.

hess.pos.def is TRUE if the hessian of the UBRE or GCV score was positive definite at convergence.

iter is the number of Newton/Steepest descent iterations taken.

score.calls is the number of times that the GCV/UBRE score had to be evaluated.

rms.grad is the root mean square of the gradient of the UBRE/GCV score w.r.t. the smoothing parameters.

R The factor R from the QR decomposition of the weighted model matrix. This is un-pivoted so that column order corresponds to X. So it may not be upper triangular.

Note that some further useful quantities can be obtained using magic.post.proc.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2004) Stable and efficient multiple smoothing parameter estimation for generalized additive models. J. Amer. Statist. Ass. 99:673-686

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

magic.post.proc,gam

Examples

```
## Use magic for a standard additive model fit ...
   library(mgcv)
   set.seed(1);n <- 200;sig <- 1
   dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,scale=sig)
   k <- 30
## set up additive model
   G <- gam(y~s(x0,k=k)+s(x1,k=k)+s(x2,k=k)+s(x3,k=k),fit=FALSE,data=dat)
## fit using magic (and gam default tolerance)
   mgfit <- magic(G$y,G$X,G$sp,G$S,G$off,rank=G$rank,
                  control=list(tol=1e-7,step.half=15))
## and fit using gam as consistency check
   b <- gam(G=G)
   mgfit$sp;b$sp  # compare smoothing parameter estimates
   edf <- magic.post.proc(G$X,mgfit,G$w)$edf # get e.d.f. per param
   range(edf-b$edf)  # compare

## p>n example... fit model to first 100 data only, so more
## params than data...

   mgfit <- magic(G$y[1:100],G$X[1:100,],G$sp,G$S,G$off,rank=G$rank)
   edf <- magic.post.proc(G$X[1:100,],mgfit,G$w[1:100])$edf

## constrain first two smooths to have identical smoothing parameters
   L <- diag(3);L <- rbind(L[1,],L)
   mgfit <- magic(G$y,G$X,rep(-1,3),G$S,G$off,L=L,rank=G$rank,C=G$C)
```

```
## Now a correlated data example ...
    library(nlme)
## simulate truth
    set.seed(1);n<-400;sig<-2
    x <- 0:(n-1)/(n-1)
    f <- 0.2*x^11*(10*(1-x))^6+10*(10*x)^3*(1-x)^10
## produce scaled covariance matrix for AR1 errors...
    V <- corMatrix(Initialize(corAR1(.6),data.frame(x=x)))
    Cv <- chol(V)  # t(Cv)%*%Cv=V
## Simulate AR1 errors ...
    e <- t(Cv)%*%rnorm(n,0,sig) # so cov(e) = V * sig^2
## Observe truth + AR1 errors
    y <- f + e
## GAM ignoring correlation
    par(mfrow=c(1,2))
    b <- gam(y~s(x,k=20))
    plot(b);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2);title("Ignoring correlation")
## Fit smooth, taking account of *known* correlation...
    w <- solve(t(Cv)) # V^{-1} = ww
    ## Use gam to set up model for fitting...
    G <- gam(y~s(x,k=20),fit=FALSE)
    ## fit using magic, with weight *matrix*
    mgfit <- magic(G$y,G$X,G$sp,G$S,G$off,rank=G$rank,C=G$C,w=w)
## Modify previous gam object using new fit, for plotting...
    mg.stuff <- magic.post.proc(G$X,mgfit,w)
    b$edf <- mg.stuff$edf;b$Vp <- mg.stuff$Vb
    b$coefficients <- mgfit$b
    plot(b);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2);title("Known correlation")
```

`magic.post.proc` *Auxilliary information from magic fit*

Description

Obtains Bayesian parameter covariance matrix, frequentist parameter estimator covariance matrix, estimated degrees of freedom for each parameter and leading diagonal of influence/hat matrix, for a penalized regression estimated by `magic`.

Usage

```
magic.post.proc(X,object,w=NULL)
```

Arguments

`X`	is the model matrix.
`object`	is the list returned by `magic` after fitting the model with model matrix `X`.
`w`	is the weight vector used in fitting, or the weight matrix used in fitting (i.e. supplied to `magic`, if one was.). If `w` is a vector then its elements are typically proportional to reciprocal variances (but could even be negative). If `w` is a matrix then `t(w)%*%w` should typically give the inverse of the covariance matrix of the response data supplied to `magic`.

Details

`object` contains `rV` ($\mathbf{V}$, say), and `scale` (ϕ, say) which can be used to obtain the require quantities as follows. The Bayesian covariance matrix of the parameters is $\mathbf{VV}'\phi$. The vector of estimated degrees of freedom for each parameter is the leading diagonal of $\mathbf{VV}'\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{W}'\mathbf{WX}$ where $\mathbf{W}$ is either the weight matrix `w` or the matrix `diag(w)`. The hat/influence matrix is given by $\mathbf{WXVV}'\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{W}'$.

The frequentist parameter estimator covariance matrix is $\mathbf{VV}'\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{W}'\mathbf{WXVV}'\phi$: it is sometimes useful for testing terms for equality to zero.

Value

A list with three items:

`Vb`	the Bayesian covariance matrix of the model parameters.
`Ve`	the frequentist covariance matrix for the parameter estimators.
`hat`	the leading diagonal of the hat (influence) matrix.
`edf`	the array giving the estimated degrees of freedom associated with each parameter.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

See Also

`magic`

`mgcv.FAQ` *Frequently Asked Questions for package mgcv*

Description

This page provides answers to some of the questions that get asked most often about mgcv

FAQ list

1. **How can I compare gamm models?** In the identity link normal errors case, then AIC and hypotheis testing based methods are fine. Otherwise it is best to work out a strategy based on the `summary.gam` Alternatively, simple random effects can be fitted with `gam`, which makes comparison straightforward. Package `gamm4` is an alternative, which allows AIC type model selection for generalized models.
2. **How do I get the equation of an estimated smooth?** This slightly misses the point of semi-parametric modelling: the idea is that we estimate the form of the function from data without assuming that it has a particular simple functional form. Of course for practical computation the functions do have underlying mathematical representations, but they are not very helpful, when written down. If you do need the functional forms then see chapter 4 of Wood (2006). However for most purposes it is better to use `predict.gam` to evaluate the function for whatever argument values you need. If derivatives are required then the simplest approach is to use finite differencing (which also allows SEs etc to be calculated).

3. **Some of my smooths are estimated to be straight lines and their confidence intervals vanish at some point in the middle. What is wrong?** Nothing. Smooths are subject to sum-to-zero identifiability constraints. If a smooth is estimated to be a straight line then it consequently has one degree of freedom, and there is no choice about where it passes through zero — so the CI must vanish at that point.
4. **How do I test whether a smooth is significantly different from a straight line**. See `tprs` and the example therein.
5. **Some code from Wood (2006) causes an error: why?** The book was written using mgcv version 1.3. To allow for REML estimation of smoothing parameters in versions 1.5, some changes had to be made to the syntax. In particular the function `gam.method` no longer exists. The smoothness selection method (GCV, REML etc) is now controlled by the `method` argument to `gam` while the optimizer is selected using the `optimizer` argument. See `gam` and `http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/igam/index.html` for details.
6. **Why is a model object saved under a previous mgcv version not usable with the current mgcv version?** I'm sorry about this issue, I know it's really annoying. Here's my defence. Each mgcv version is run through an extensive test suite before release, to ensure that it gives the same results as before, unless there are good statistical reasons why not (e.g. improvements to p-value approximation, fixing of an error). However it is sometimes necessary to modify the internal structure of model objects in a way that makes an old style object unusable with a newer version. For example, bug fixes or new R features sometimes require changes in the way that things are computed which in turn require modification of the object structure. Similarly improvements, such as the ability to compute smoothing parameters by RE/ML require object level changes. The only fix to this problem is to access the old object using the original mgcv version (available on CRAN), or to recompute the fit using the current mgcv version.
7. **When using `gamm` or `gamm4`, the reported AIC is different for the `gam` object and the `lme` or `lmer` object. Why is this?** There are several reasons for this. The most important is that the models being used are actually different in the two representations. When treating the GAM as a mixed model, you are implicitly assuming that if you gathered a replicate dataset, the smooths in your model would look completely different to the smooths from the original model, except for having the same degree of smoothness. Technically you would expect the smooths to be drawn afresh from their distribution under the random effects model. When viewing the gam from the usual penalized regression perspective, you would expect smooths to look broadly similar under replication of the data. i.e. you are really using Bayesian model for the smooths, rather than a random effects model (it's just that the frequentist random effects and Bayesian computations happen to coincide for computing the estimates). As a result of the different assumptions about the data generating process, AIC model comparisons can give rather different answers depending on the model adopted. Which you use should depend on which model you really think is appropriate. In addition the computations of the AICs are different. The mixed model AIC uses the marginal liklihood and the corresponding number of model parameters. The gam model uses the penalized likelihood and the effective degrees of freedom.
8. **What does 'mgcv' stand for?** '**M**ixed **G**AM **C**omputation **V**ehicle', is my current best effort (let me know if you can do better). Originally it stood for 'Multiple GCV', which has long since ceased to be usefully descriptive, (and I can't really change 'mgcv' now without causing disruption). On a bad inbox day '**M**ad **G**AM **C**omputing **V**ulture'.
9. **My new method is failing to beat mgcv, what can I do?** If speed is the problem, then make sure that you use the slowest basis possible (`"tp"`) with a large sample size, and experiment with different optimizers to find one that is slow for your problem. For prediction error/MSE, then leaving the smoothing basis dimensions at their arbitrary defaults, when these are inappropriate for the problem setting, is a good way of reducing performance. Similarly, using p-splines in place of derivative penalty based splines will often shave a little more from the

performance here. Unlike REML/ML, prediction error based smoothness selection criteria such as Mallows Cp and GCV often produce a small proportion of severe overfits, so careful choise of smoothness selection method can help further. In particular GCV etc. usually result in worse confidence interval and p-value performance than ML or REML. If all this fails, try using a really odd simulation setup for which mgcv is clearly not suited: for example poor performance is almost guaranteed for small noisy datasets with large numbers of predictors.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

`mgcv.package` *Mixed GAM Computation Vehicle with GCV/AIC/REML smoothness estimation and GAMMs by REML/PQL*

Description

mgcv provides functions for generalized additive modelling (gam and bam) and generalized additive mixed modelling (gamm, and random.effects). The term GAM is taken to include any model dependent on unknown smooth functions of predictors and estimated by quadratically penalized (possibly quasi-) likelihood maximization. Available distributions are covered in family.mgcv.

Particular features of the package are facilities for automatic smoothness selection (Wood, 2004, 2011), and the provision of a variety of smooths of more than one variable. User defined smooths can be added. A Bayesian approach to confidence/credible interval calculation is provided. Linear functionals of smooths, penalization of parametric model terms and linkage of smoothing parameters are all supported. Lower level routines for generalized ridge regression and penalized linearly constrained least squares are also available.

Details

mgcv provides generalized additive modelling functions gam, predict.gam and plot.gam, which are very similar in use to the S functions of the same name designed by Trevor Hastie (with some extensions). However the underlying representation and estimation of the models is based on a penalized regression spline approach, with automatic smoothness selection. A number of other functions such as summary.gam and anova.gam are also provided, for extracting information from a fitted gamObject.

Use of gam is much like use of glm, except that within a gam model formula, isotropic smooths of any number of predictors can be specified using s terms, while scale invariant smooths of any number of predictors can be specified using te, ti or t2 terms. smooth.terms provides an overview of the built in smooth classes, and random.effects should be refered to for an overview of random effects terms (see also mrf for Markov random fields). Estimation is by penalized likelihood or quasi-likelihood maximization, with smoothness selection by GCV, GACV, gAIC/UBRE or (RE)ML. See gam, gam.models, linear.functional.terms and gam.selection for some discussion of model specification and selection. For detailed control of fitting see gam.convergence, gam arguments method and optimizer and gam.control. For checking and visualization see gam.check,

choose.k, vis.gam and plot.gam. While a number of types of smoother are built into the package, it is also extendable with user defined smooths, see smooth.construct, for example.

A Bayesian approach to smooth modelling is used to derive standard errors on predictions, and hence credible intervals (see Marra and Wood, 2012). The Bayesian covariance matrix for the model coefficients is returned in Vp of the gamObject. See predict.gam for examples of how this can be used to obtain credible regions for any quantity derived from the fitted model, either directly, or by direct simulation from the posterior distribution of the model coefficients. Approximate p-values can also be obtained for testing individual smooth terms for equality to the zero function, using similar ideas (see Wood, 2013a,b). Frequentist approximations can be used for hypothesis testing based model comparison. See anova.gam and summary.gam for more on hypothesis testing.

For large datasets (that is large n) see bam which is a version of gam with a much reduced memory footprint.

The package also provides a generalized additive mixed modelling function, gamm, based on a PQL approach and lme from the nlme library (for an lme4 based version, see package gamm4). gamm is particularly useful for modelling correlated data (i.e. where a simple independence model for the residual variation is inappropriate). In addition, low level routine magic can fit models to data with a known correlation structure.

Some underlying GAM fitting methods are available as low level fitting functions: see magic. But there is little functionality that can not be more conventiently accessed via gam . Penalized weighted least squares with linear equality and inequality constraints is provided by pcls.

For a complete list of functions type library(help=mgcv). See also mgcv.FAQ.

Author(s)

Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

with contributions and/or help from Natalya Pya, Thomas Kneib, Kurt Hornik, Mike Lonergan, Henric Nilsson, Fabian Scheipl and Brian Ripley.

Polish translation - Lukasz Daniel; German translation - Chris Leick, Detlef Steuer; French Translation - Philippe Grosjean

Maintainer: Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

These provide details for the underlying mgcv methods, and fuller references to the large literature on which the methods are based.

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

Wood, S.N. (2004) Stable and efficient multiple smoothing parameter estimation for generalized additive models. J. Amer. Statist. Ass. 99:673-686.

Marra, G and S.N. Wood (2012) Coverage Properties of Confidence Intervals for Generalized Additive Model Components. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics, 39(1), 53-74.

Wood, S.N. (2013a) A simple test for random effects in regression models. Biometrika 100:1005-1010

Wood, S.N. (2013b) On p-values for smooth components of an extended generalized additive model. Biometrika 100:221-228

Wood, S.N. (2006) *Generalized Additive Models: an introduction with R*, CRC

Development of mgcv version 1.8 was part funded by EPSRC grants EP/K005251/1 and EP/I000917/1.

Examples

```
## see examples for gam and gamm
```

`mgcv.parallel` *Parallel computation in mgcv.*

Description

`mgcv` can make some use of multiple cores or a cluster. Function `bam` uses the facilities provided in the parallel package for this purpose. See examples in `bam`.

Function `gam` can use parallel threads on a (shared memory) multi-core machine via `openMP` (where this is supported). To do this, set the desired number of threads by setting `nthreads` to the number of cores to use, in the `control` argument of `gam`. Note that, for the most part, only the dominant $O(np^2)$ steps are parallelized (n is number of data, p number of parameters). For additive Gaussian models estimated by GCV, the speed up can be disappointing as these employ an $O(p^3)$ SVD step that can also have substantial cost in practice.

`magic` can also use multiple cores, but the same comments apply as for the GCV Gaussian additive model.

If `control$nthreads` is set to more than the number of cores detected, then only the number of detected cores is used. Note that using virtual cores usually gives very little speed up, and can even slow computations slightly. For example, many Intel processors reporting 4 cores actually have 2 physical cores, each with 2 virtual cores, so using 2 threads gives a marked increase in speed, while using 4 threads makes little extra difference.

Note that on Intel and similar processors the maximum performance is usually achieved by disabling Hyper-Threading in BIOS, and then setting the number of threads to the number of physical cores used. This prevents the operating system scheduler from sending 2 floating point intensive threads to the same physical core, where they have to share a CPU (and cache) and therefore slow each other down. The scheduler tends to do this under the manager - worker multi-threading approach used in mgcv, since the manager thread looks very busy up to the point at which the workers are set to work, and at the point of scheduling the sceduler has no way of knowing that the manager thread actually has nothing more to do until the workers are finished. If you are working on a many cored platform where you can not disable hyper-threading then it may be worth setting the number of threads to one less than the number of physical cores, to reduce the frequency of such scheduling problems.

mgcv's work splitting always makes the simple assumption that all your cores are equal, and you are not sharing them with other floating point intensive threads.

Because the computational burden in `mgcv` is all in the linear algebra, then parallel computation may provide reduced or no benefit with a tuned BLAS. This is particularly the case if you are using a multi threaded BLAS, but a BLAS that is tuned to make efficient use of a particular cache size may also experience loss of performance if threads have to share the cache.

Author(s)

Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

https://computing.llnl.gov/tutorials/openMP/

Examples

```
## illustration of multi-threading with gam...

require(mgcv);set.seed(9)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=2000,dist="poisson",scale=.1)
k <- 12;bs <- "cr";ctrl <- list(nthreads=2)

system.time(b1<-gam(y~s(x0,bs=bs)+s(x1,bs=bs)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)+
            s(x3,bs=bs,k=k),family=poisson,data=dat,method="REML"))[3]

system.time(b2<-gam(y~s(x0,bs=bs)+s(x1,bs=bs)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)+
s(x3,bs=bs,k=k),family=poisson,data=dat,method="REML",control=ctrl))[3]

## Poisson example on a cluster with bam.
## Note that there is some overhead in initializing the
## computation on the cluster, associated with loading
## the Matrix package on each node. For this reason the
## sample sizes here are very small to keep CRAN happy, but at
## this low sample size you see little advantage of parallel computation.

k <- 15
dat <- gamSim(1,n=8000,dist="poisson",scale=.1)
require(parallel)
nc <- 2   ## cluster size, set for example portability
if (detectCores()>1) { ## no point otherwise
  cl <- makeCluster(nc)
  ## could also use makeForkCluster, but read warnings first!
} else cl <- NULL

system.time(b3 <- bam(y ~ s(x0,bs=bs)+s(x1,bs=bs)+s(x2,bs=bs,k=k)
            ,data=dat,family=poisson(),chunk.size=5000,cluster=cl))

fv <- predict(b3,cluster=cl) ## parallel prediction

if (!is.null(cl)) stopCluster(cl)
b3
```

`model.matrix.gam` *Extract model matrix from GAM fit*

Description

Obtains the model matrix from a fitted gam object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
model.matrix(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	fitted model object of class gam as produced by `gam()`.
`...`	other arguments, passed to `predict.gam`.

Details

Calls predict.gam with no newdata argument and type="lpmatrix" in order to obtain the model matrix of object.

Value

A model matrix.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood S.N. (2006b) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

gam

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
n <- 15
x <- runif(n)
y <- sin(x*2*pi) + rnorm(n)*.2
mod <- gam(y~s(x,bs="cc",k=6),knots=list(x=seq(0,1,length=6)))
model.matrix(mod)
```

---

mono.con *Monotonicity constraints for a cubic regression spline*

Description

Finds linear constraints sufficient for monotonicity (and optionally upper and/or lower boundedness) of a cubic regression spline. The basis representation assumed is that given by the gam, "cr" basis: that is the spline has a set of knots, which have fixed x values, but the y values of which constitute the parameters of the spline.

Usage

```
mono.con(x,up=TRUE,lower=NA,upper=NA)
```

Arguments

x	The array of knot locations.
up	If TRUE then the constraints imply increase, if FALSE then decrease.
lower	This specifies the lower bound on the spline unless it is NA in which case no lower bound is imposed.
upper	This specifies the upper bound on the spline unless it is NA in which case no upper bound is imposed.

Details

Consider the natural cubic spline passing through the points $\{x_i, p_i : i = 1 \ldots n\}$. Then it is possible to find a relatively small set of linear constraints on $\mathbf{p}$ sufficient to ensure monotonicity (and bounds if required): $\mathbf{Ap} \geq \mathbf{b}$. Details are given in Wood (1994).

Value

a list containing constraint matrix `A` and constraint vector `b`.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Gill, P.E., Murray, W. and Wright, M.H. (1981) *Practical Optimization*. Academic Press, London.

Wood, S.N. (1994) Monotonic smoothing splines fitted by cross validation. *SIAM Journal on Scientific Computing* **15**(5), 1126–1133.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

magic, pcls

Examples

```
## see ?pcls
```

---

mroot *Smallest square root of matrix*

Description

Find a square root of a positive semi-definite matrix, having as few columns as possible. Uses either pivoted choleski decomposition or singular value decomposition to do this.

Usage

```
mroot(A,rank=NULL,method="chol")
```

Arguments

`A`	The positive semi-definite matrix, a square root of which is to be found.
`rank`	if the rank of the matrix `A` is known then it should be supplied. `NULL` or <1 imply that it should be estimated.
`method`	`"chol"` to use pivoted choloeski decompositon, which is fast but tends to overestimate rank. `"svd"` to use singular value decomposition, which is slow, but is the most accurate way to estimate rank.

Details

The function uses SVD, or a pivoted Choleski routine. It is primarily of use for turning penalized regression problems into ordinary regression problems.

Value

A matrix, $\mathbf{B}$ with as many columns as the rank of $\mathbf{A}$, and such that $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{B}'$.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
a <- matrix(runif(24),6,4)
A <- a%*%t(a) ## A is +ve semi-definite, rank 4
B <- mroot(A) ## default pivoted choleski method
tol <- 100*.Machine$double.eps
chol.err <- max(abs(A-B%*%t(B)));chol.err
if (chol.err>tol) warning("mroot (chol) suspect")
B <- mroot(A,method="svd") ## svd method
svd.err <- max(abs(A-B%*%t(B)));svd.err
if (svd.err>tol) warning("mroot (svd) suspect")
```

---

mvn *Multivariate normal additive models*

Description

Family for use with gam implementing smooth multivariate Gaussian regression. The means for each dimension are given by a separate linear predictor, which may contain smooth components. The Choleski factor of the response precision matrix is estimated as part of fitting.

Usage

```
mvn(d=2)
```

Arguments

d	The dimension of the response (>1).

Details

The response is d dimensional multivariate normal, where the covariance matrix is estimated, and the means for each dimension have sperate linear predictors. Model sepcification is via a list of gam like formulae - one for each dimension. See example.

Currently the family ignores any prior weights, and is implemented using first derivative information sufficient for BFGS estimation of smoothing parameters. "response" residuals give raw residuals, while "deviance" residuals are standardized to be approximately independent standard normal if all is well.

Value

An object of class general.family.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

gaussian

Examples

```
library(MASS)
library(mgcv)
## simulate some data...
V <- matrix(c(2,1,1,2),2,2)
f0 <- function(x) 2 * sin(pi * x)
f1 <- function(x) exp(2 * x)
f2 <- function(x) 0.2 * x^11 * (10 * (1 - x))^6 + 10 *
            (10 * x)^3 * (1 - x)^10
n <- 300
x0 <- runif(n);x1 <- runif(n);
x2 <- runif(n);x3 <- runif(n)
y <- matrix(0,n,2)
for (i in 1:n) {
  mu <- c(f0(x0[i])+f1(x1[i]),f2(x2[i]))
  y[i,] <- mvrnorm(1,mu,V)
}
dat <- data.frame(y0=y[,1],y1=y[,2],x0=x0,x1=x1,x2=x2,x3=x3)

## fit model...

b <- gam(list(y0~s(x0)+s(x1),y1~s(x2)+s(x3)),family=mvn(d=2),data=dat)
b
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1)
solve(crossprod(b$family$data$R)) ## estimated cov matrix
```

---

negbin *GAM negative binomial families*

Description

The gam modelling function is designed to be able to use the negbin family (a modification of MASS library negative.binomial family by Venables and Ripley), or the nb function designed for integrated estimation of parameter theta. θ is the parameter such that $var(y) = \mu + \mu^2/\theta$, where $\mu = E(y)$.

Two approaches to estimating theta are available (with gam only):

- With negbin then if 'performance iteration' is used for smoothing parameter estimation (see gam), then smoothing parameters are chosen by GCV and theta is chosen in order to ensure that the Pearson estimate of the scale parameter is as close as possible to 1, the value that the scale parameter should have.
- If 'outer iteration' is used for smoothing parameter selection with the nb family then theta is estimated alongside the smoothing parameters by ML or REML.

To use the first option, set the optimizer argument of gam to "perf" (it can sometimes fail to converge).

Usage

```
negbin(theta = stop("theta must be specified"), link = "log")
nb(theta = NULL, link = "log")
```

Arguments

theta	Either i) a single value known value of theta or ii) two values of theta specifying the endpoints of an interval over which to search for theta (this is an option only for negbin). For nb then a positive supplied theta is treated as a fixed known parameter, otherwise it is estimated (the absolute value of a negative theta is taken as a starting value).
link	The link function: one of "log", "identity" or "sqrt"

Details

nb allows estimation of the theta parameter alongside the model smoothing parameters, but is only useable with gam (not bam or gam).

For negbin, if a single value of theta is supplied then it is always taken as the known fixed value and this is useable with bam and gamm. If theta is two numbers (theta[2]>theta[1]) then they are taken as specifying the range of values over which to search for the optimal theta. This option should only be used with performance iteration estimation (see gam argument optimizer), in which case the method of estimation is to choose $\hat{\theta}$ so that the GCV (Pearson) estimate of the scale parameter is one (since the scale parameter is one for the negative binomial). In this case θ estimation is nested within the IRLS loop used for GAM fitting. After each call to fit an iteratively weighted additive model to the IRLS pseudodata, the θ estimate is updated. This is done by conditioning on all components of the current GCV/Pearson estimator of the scale parameter except θ and then searching for the $\hat{\theta}$ which equates this conditional estimator to one. The search is a simple bisection search after an initial crude line search to bracket one. The search will terminate at the upper boundary of the search region is a Poisson fit would have yielded an estimated scale parameter <1.

The following negbin based approaches are now deprecated:

If outer iteration is used then θ is estimated by searching for the value yielding the lowest AIC. The search is either over the supplied array of values, or is a grid search over the supplied range, followed by a golden section search. A full fit is required for each trial θ, so the process is slow, but speed is enhanced by making the changes in θ as small as possible, from one step to the next, and using the previous smothing parameter and fitted values to start the new fit.

In a simulation test based on 800 replicates of the first example data, given below, the GCV based (performance iteration) method yielded models with, on avergage 6% better MSE performance than the AIC based (outer iteration) method. theta had a 0.86 correlation coefficient between the two methods. theta estimates averaged 3.36 with a standard deviation of 0.44 for the AIC based method and 3.22 with a standard deviation of 0.43 for the GCV based method. However the GCV based method is less computationally reliable, failing in around 4% of replicates.

Value

For `negbin` an object inheriting from class `family`, with additional elements

`dvar`	the function giving the first derivative of the variance function w.r.t. `mu`.
`d2var`	the function giving the second derivative of the variance function w.r.t. `mu`.
`getTheta`	A function for retrieving the value(s) of theta. This also useful for retriving the estimate of `theta` after fitting (see example).

For `nb` an object inheriting from class `extended.family`.

WARNINGS

`gamm` and `bam` do not support `theta` estimation

The negative binomial functions from the MASS library are no longer supported.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org> modified from Venables and Ripley's `negative.binomial` family.

References

Venables, B. and B.R. Ripley (2002) Modern Applied Statistics in S, Springer.

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(3)
n<-400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n)
g <- exp(dat$f/5)

## negative binomial data...
dat$y <- rnbinom(g,size=3,mu=g)
## known theta fit ...
b0 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=negbin(3),data=dat)
plot(b0,pages=1)
print(b0)

## same with theta estimation...
b <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=nb(),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)
print(b)
b$family$getTheta(TRUE) ## extract final theta estimate

## unknown theta via performance iteration...
b1 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=negbin(c(1,10)),
          optimizer="perf",data=dat)
plot(b1,pages=1)
print(b1)

## another example...
set.seed(1)
f <- dat$f
f <- f - min(f)+5;g <- f^2/10
```

```
dat$y <- rnbinom(g,size=3,mu=g)
b2 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=nb(link="sqrt"),
          data=dat,method="REML")
plot(b2,pages=1)
print(b2)
rm(dat)
```

---

new.name *Obtain a name for a new variable that is not already in use*

Description

gamm works by transforming a GAMM into something that can be estimated by lme, but this involves creating new variables, the names of which should not clash with the names of other variables on which the model depends. This simple service routine checks a suggested name against a list of those in use, and if neccesary modifies it so that there is no clash.

Usage

```
new.name(proposed,old.names)
```

Arguments

proposed	a suggested name
old.names	An array of names that must not be duplicated

Value

A name that is not in old.names.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gamm

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
old <- c("a","tuba","is","tubby")
new.name("tubby",old)
```

notExp *Functions for better-than-log positive parameterization*

Description

It is common practice in statistical optimization to use log-parameterizations when a parameter ought to be positive. i.e. if an optimization parameter a should be non-negative then we use a=exp(b) and optimize with respect to the unconstrained parameter b. This often works well, but it does imply a rather limited working range for b: using 8 byte doubles, for example, if b's magnitude gets much above 700 then a overflows or underflows. This can cause problems for numerical optimization methods.

notExp is a monotonic function for mapping the real line into the positive real line with much less extreme underflow and overflow behaviour than exp. It is a piece-wise function, but is continuous to second derivative: see the source code for the exact definition, and the example below to see what it looks like.

notLog is the inverse function of notExp.

The major use of these functions was originally to provide more robust pdMat classes for lme for use by gamm. Currently the notExp2 and notLog2 functions are used in their place, as a result of changes to the nlme optimization routines.

Usage

```
notExp(x)

notLog(x)
```

Arguments

x	Argument array of real numbers (notExp) or positive real numbers (notLog).

Value

An array of function values evaluated at the supplied argument values.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

pdTens, pdIdnot, gamm

Examples

```
## Illustrate the notExp function:
## less steep than exp, but still monotonic.
require(mgcv)
x <- -100:100/10
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
plot(x,notExp(x),type="l")
lines(x,exp(x),col=2)
plot(x,log(notExp(x)),type="l")
lines(x,log(exp(x)),col=2) # redundancy intended
x <- x/4
plot(x,notExp(x),type="l")
lines(x,exp(x),col=2)
plot(x,log(notExp(x)),type="l")
lines(x,log(exp(x)),col=2) # redundancy intended
par(op)
range(notLog(notExp(x))-x) # show that inverse works!
```

---

notExp2 *Alternative to log parameterization for variance components*

Description

notLog2 and notExp2 are alternatives to log and exp or notLog and notExp for re-parameterization of variance parameters. They are used by the pdTens and pdIdnot classes which in turn implement smooths for gamm.

The functions are typically used to ensure that smoothing parameters are positive, but the notExp2 is not monotonic: rather it cycles between 'effective zero' and 'effective infinity' as its argument changes. The notLog2 is the inverse function of the notExp2 only over an interval centered on zero.

Parameterizations using these functions ensure that estimated smoothing parameters remain positive, but also help to ensure that the likelihood is never indefinite: once a working parameter pushes a smoothing parameter below 'effetive zero' or above 'effective infinity' the cyclic nature of the notExp2 causes the likelihood to decrease, where otherwise it might simply have flattened.

This parameterization is really just a numerical trick, in order to get lme to fit gamm models, without failing due to indefiniteness. Note in particular that asymptotic results on the likelihood/REML criterion are not invalidated by the trick, unless parameter estimates end up close to the effective zero or effective infinity: but if this is the case then the asymptotics would also have been invalid for a conventional monotonic parameterization.

This reparameterization was made necessary by some modifications to the underlying optimization method in lme introduced in nlme 3.1-62. It is possible that future releases will return to the notExp parameterization.

Note that you can reset 'effective zero' and 'effective infinity': see below.

Usage

```
notExp2(x,d=.Options$mgcv.vc.logrange,b=1/d)

notLog2(x,d=.Options$mgcv.vc.logrange,b=1/d)
```

Arguments

x	Argument array of real numbers (notExp) or positive real numbers (notLog).
d	the range of notExp2 runs from exp(-d) to exp(d). To change the range used by gamm reset mgcv.vc.logrange using options.
b	determines the period of the cycle of notExp2.

Value

An array of function values evaluated at the supplied argument values.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

pdTens, pdIdnot, gamm

Examples

```
## Illustrate the notExp2 function:
require(mgcv)
x <- seq(-50,50,length=1000)
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
plot(x,notExp2(x),type="l")
lines(x,exp(x),col=2)
plot(x,log(notExp2(x)),type="l")
lines(x,log(exp(x)),col=2) # redundancy intended
x <- x/4
plot(x,notExp2(x),type="l")
lines(x,exp(x),col=2)
plot(x,log(notExp2(x)),type="l")
lines(x,log(exp(x)),col=2) # redundancy intended
par(op)
```

---

null.space.dimension *The basis of the space of un-penalized functions for a TPRS*

Description

The thin plate spline penalties give zero penalty to some functions. The space of these functions is spanned by a set of polynomial terms. null.space.dimension finds the dimension of this space, M, given the number of covariates that the smoother is a function of, d, and the order of the smoothing penalty, m. If m does not satisfy $2m > d$ then the smallest possible dimension for the null space is found given d and the requirement that the smooth should be visually smooth.

Usage

```
null.space.dimension(d,m)
```

Arguments

d	is a positive integer - the number of variables of which the t.p.s. is a function.
m	a non-negative integer giving the order of the penalty functional, or signalling that the default order should be used.

Details

Thin plate splines are only visually smooth if the order of the wiggliness penalty, m, satisfies $2m > d + 1$. If $2m < d + 1$ then this routine finds the smallest m giving visual smoothness for the given d, otherwise the supplied m is used. The null space dimension is given by:

$M = (m + d - 1)!/(d!(m - 1)!)$

which is the value returned.

Value

An integer (array), the null space dimension M.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

tprs

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
null.space.dimension(2,0)
```

---

ocat *GAM ordered categorical family*

Description

Family for use with gam, implementing regression for ordered categorical data. A linear predictor provides the expected value of a latent variable following a logistic distribution. The probability of this latent variable lying between certain cut-points provides the probability of the ordered categorical variable being of the corresponding category. The cut-points are estimated along side the model smoothing parameters (using the same criterion). The observed categories are coded 1, 2, 3, ... up to the number of categories.

Usage

```
ocat(theta=NULL,link="identity",R=NULL)
```

Arguments

theta	cut point parameter vector (dimension R-2). If supplied and all positive, then taken to be the cut point increments (first cut point is fixed at -1). If any are negative then absolute values are taken as starting values for cutpoint increments.
link	The link function: only "identity" allowed at present (possibly for ever).
R	the number of catergories.

Details

Such cumulative threshold models are only identifiable up to an intercept, or one of the cut points. Rather than remove the intercept, ocat simply sets the first cut point to -1. Use predict.gam with type="response" to get the predicted probabilities in each category.

Value

An object of class extended.family.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## Simulate some ordered categorical data...
set.seed(3);n<-400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n)
dat$f <- dat$f - mean(dat$f)

alpha <- c(-Inf,-1,0,5,Inf)
R <- length(alpha)-1
y <- dat$f
u <- runif(n)
u <- dat$f + log(u/(1-u))
for (i in 1:R) {
  y[u > alpha[i]&u <= alpha[i+1]] <- i
}
dat$y <- y

## plot the data...
par(mfrow=c(2,2))
with(dat,plot(x0,y));with(dat,plot(x1,y))
with(dat,plot(x2,y));with(dat,plot(x3,y))

## fit ocat model to data...
b <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=ocat(R=R),data=dat)
b
plot(b,pages=1)
gam.check(b)
summary(b)
b$family$getTheta(TRUE) ## the estimated cut points

## predict probabilities of being in each category
predict(b,dat[1:2,],type="response",se=TRUE)
```

`pcls` *Penalized Constrained Least Squares Fitting*

Description

Solves least squares problems with quadratic penalties subject to linear equality and inequality constraints using quadratic programming.

Usage

```
pcls(M)
```

Arguments

`M` is the single list argument to `pcls`. It should have the following elements:

y The response data vector.

w A vector of weights for the data (often proportional to the reciprocal of the variance).

X The design matrix for the problem, note that `ncol(M$X)` must give the number of model parameters, while `nrow(M$X)` should give the number of data.

C Matrix containing any linear equality constraints on the problem (e.g. $\mathbf{C}$ in $\mathbf{Cp} = \mathbf{c}$). If you have no equality constraints initialize this to a zero by zero matrix. Note that there is no need to supply the vector $\mathbf{c}$, it is defined implicitly by the initial parameter estimates $\mathbf{p}$.

S A list of penalty matrices. `S[[i]]` is the smallest contiguous matrix including all the non-zero elements of the ith penalty matrix. The first parameter it penalizes is given by `off[i]+1` (starting counting at 1).

off Offset values locating the elements of `M$S` in the correct location within each penalty coefficient matrix. (Zero offset implies starting in first location)

sp An array of smoothing parameter estimates.

p An array of feasible initial parameter estimates - these must satisfy the constraints, but should avoid satisfying the inequality constraints as equality constraints.

Ain Matrix for the inequality constraints $\mathbf{A}_{in}\mathbf{p} > \mathbf{b}_{in}$.

bin vector in the inequality constraints.

Details

This solves the problem:

$$minimise \; \|\mathbf{W}^{1/2}(\mathbf{Xp} - \mathbf{y})\|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{m} \lambda_i \mathbf{p}'\mathbf{S}_i\mathbf{p}$$

subject to constraints $\mathbf{Cp} = \mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{A}_{in}\mathbf{p} > \mathbf{b}_{in}$, w.r.t. $\mathbf{p}$ given the smoothing parameters λ_i. $\mathbf{X}$ is a design matrix, $\mathbf{p}$ a parameter vector, $\mathbf{y}$ a data vector, $\mathbf{W}$ a diagonal weight matrix, $\mathbf{S}_i$ a positive semi-definite matrix of coefficients defining the ith penalty and $\mathbf{C}$ a matrix of coefficients defining the linear equality constraints on the problem. The smoothing parameters are the λ_i. Note that $\mathbf{X}$ must be of full column rank, at least when projected into the null space of any equality constraints.

$\mathbf{A}_{in}$ is a matrix of coefficients defining the inequality constraints, while $\mathbf{b}_{in}$ is a vector involved in defining the inequality constraints.

Quadratic programming is used to perform the solution. The method used is designed for maximum stability with least squares problems: i.e. $\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X}$ is not formed explicitly. See Gill et al. 1981.

Value

The function returns an array containing the estimated parameter vector.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Gill, P.E., Murray, W. and Wright, M.H. (1981) Practical Optimization. Academic Press, London.

Wood, S.N. (1994) Monotonic smoothing splines fitted by cross validation SIAM Journal on Scientific Computing 15(5):1126-1133

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

magic, mono.con

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
# first an un-penalized example - fit E(y)=a+bx subject to a>0
set.seed(0)
n <- 100
x <- runif(n); y <- x - 0.2 + rnorm(n)*0.1
M <- list(X=matrix(0,n,2),p=c(0.1,0.5),off=array(0,0),S=list(),
Ain=matrix(0,1,2),bin=0,C=matrix(0,0,0),sp=array(0,0),y=y,w=y*0+1)
M$X[,1] <- 1; M$X[,2] <- x; M$Ain[1,] <- c(1,0)
pcls(M) -> M$p
plot(x,y); abline(M$p,col=2); abline(coef(lm(y~x)),col=3)

# Penalized example: monotonic penalized regression spline .....

# Generate data from a monotonic truth.
x <- runif(100)*4-1;x <- sort(x);
f <- exp(4*x)/(1+exp(4*x)); y <- f+rnorm(100)*0.1; plot(x,y)
dat <- data.frame(x=x,y=y)
# Show regular spline fit (and save fitted object)
f.ug <- gam(y~s(x,k=10,bs="cr")); lines(x,fitted(f.ug))
# Create Design matrix, constraints etc. for monotonic spline....
sm <- smoothCon(s(x,k=10,bs="cr"),dat,knots=NULL)[[1]]
F <- mono.con(sm$xp);   # get constraints
G <- list(X=sm$X,C=matrix(0,0,0),sp=f.ug$sp,p=sm$xp,y=y,w=y*0+1)
G$Ain <- F$A;G$bin <- F$b;G$S <- sm$S;G$off <- 0

p <- pcls(G);  # fit spline (using s.p. from unconstrained fit)

fv<-Predict.matrix(sm,data.frame(x=x))%*%p
lines(x,fv,col=2)
```

```
# now a tprs example of the same thing....

f.ug <- gam(y~s(x,k=10)); lines(x,fitted(f.ug))
# Create Design matrix, constriants etc. for monotonic spline....
sm <- smoothCon(s(x,k=10,bs="tp"),dat,knots=NULL)[[1]]
xc <- 0:39/39 # points on [0,1]
nc <- length(xc)  # number of constraints
xc <- xc*4-1  # points at which to impose constraints
A0 <- Predict.matrix(sm,data.frame(x=xc))
# ... A0%*%p evaluates spline at xc points
A1 <- Predict.matrix(sm,data.frame(x=xc+1e-6))
A <- (A1-A0)/1e-6
##  ... approx. constraint matrix (A%*%p is -ve
## spline gradient at points xc)
G <- list(X=sm$X,C=matrix(0,0,0),sp=f.ug$sp,y=y,w=y*0+1,S=sm$S,off=0)
G$Ain <- A;    # constraint matrix
G$bin <- rep(0,nc);  # constraint vector
G$p <- rep(0,10); G$p[10] <- 0.1
# ... monotonic start params, got by setting coefs of polynomial part
p <- pcls(G);  # fit spline (using s.p. from unconstrained fit)

fv2 <- Predict.matrix(sm,data.frame(x=x))%*%p
lines(x,fv2,col=3)

######################################
## monotonic additive model example...
######################################

## First simulate data...

set.seed(10)
f1 <- function(x) 5*exp(4*x)/(1+exp(4*x));
f2 <- function(x) {
  ind <- x > .5
  f <- x*0
  f[ind] <- (x[ind] - .5)^2*10
  f
}
f3 <- function(x) 0.2 * x^11 * (10 * (1 - x))^6 +
      10 * (10 * x)^3 * (1 - x)^10
n <- 200
x <- runif(n); z <- runif(n); v <- runif(n)
mu <- f1(x) + f2(z) + f3(v)
y <- mu + rnorm(n)

## Preliminary unconstrained gam fit...
G <- gam(y~s(x)+s(z)+s(v,k=20),fit=FALSE)
b <- gam(G=G)

## generate constraints, by finite differencing
## using predict.gam ....
eps <- 1e-7
pd0 <- data.frame(x=seq(0,1,length=100),z=rep(.5,100),
                  v=rep(.5,100))
pd1 <- data.frame(x=seq(0,1,length=100)+eps,z=rep(.5,100),
                  v=rep(.5,100))
```

```
X0 <- predict(b,newdata=pd0,type="lpmatrix")
X1 <- predict(b,newdata=pd1,type="lpmatrix")
Xx <- (X1 - X0)/eps ## Xx %*% coef(b) must be positive
pd0 <- data.frame(z=seq(0,1,length=100),x=rep(.5,100),
                  v=rep(.5,100))
pd1 <- data.frame(z=seq(0,1,length=100)+eps,x=rep(.5,100),
                  v=rep(.5,100))
X0 <- predict(b,newdata=pd0,type="lpmatrix")
X1 <- predict(b,newdata=pd1,type="lpmatrix")
Xz <- (X1-X0)/eps
G$Ain <- rbind(Xx,Xz) ## inequality constraint matrix
G$bin <- rep(0,nrow(G$Ain))
G$C = matrix(0,0,ncol(G$X))
G$sp <- b$sp
G$p <- coef(b)
G$off <- G$off-1 ## to match what pcls is expecting
## force inital parameters to meet constraint
G$p[11:18] <- G$p[2:9]<- 0
p <- pcls(G) ## constrained fit
par(mfrow=c(2,3))
plot(b) ## original fit
b$coefficients <- p
plot(b) ## constrained fit
## note that standard errors in preceding plot are obtained from
## unconstrained fit
```

`pdIdnot` *Overflow proof pdMat class for multiples of the identity matrix*

Description

This set of functions is a modification of the `pdMat` class `pdIdent` from library `nlme`. The modification is to replace the log parameterization used in `pdMat` with a `notLog2` parameterization, since the latter avoids indefiniteness in the likelihood and associated convergence problems: the parameters also relate to variances rather than standard deviations, for consistency with the `pdTens` class. The functions are particularly useful for working with Generalized Additive Mixed Models where variance parameters/smoothing parameters can be very large or very small, so that overflow or underflow can be a problem.

These functions would not normally be called directly, although unlike the `pdTens` class it is easy to do so.

Usage

```
pdIdnot(value = numeric(0), form = NULL,
       nam = NULL, data = sys.frame(sys.parent()))
```

Arguments

`value`	Initialization values for parameters. Not normally used.
`form`	A one sided formula specifying the random effects structure.
`nam`	a names argument, not normally used with this class.
`data`	data frame in which to evaluate formula.

Details

The following functions are provided: Dim.pdIndot, coef.pdIdnot, corMatrix.pdIdnot, logDet.pdIdnot, pdConstruct.pdIdnot, pdFactor.pdIdnot, pdMatrix.pdIdnot, solve.pdIdnot, summary.pdIdnot. (e.g. mgcv:::coef.pdIdnot to access.)

Note that while the pdFactor and pdMatrix functions return the inverse of the scaled random effect covariance matrix or its factor, the pdConstruct function is initialised with estimates of the scaled covariance matrix itself.

Value

A class pdIdnot object, or related quantities. See the nlme documentation for further details.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Pinheiro J.C. and Bates, D.M. (2000) Mixed effects Models in S and S-PLUS. Springer

The nlme source code.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

te, pdTens, notLog2, gamm

Examples

```
# see gamm
```

---

pdTens *Functions implementing a pdMat class for tensor product smooths*

Description

This set of functions implements an nlme library pdMat class to allow tensor product smooths to be estimated by lme as called by gamm. Tensor product smooths have a penalty matrix made up of a weighted sum of penalty matrices, where the weights are the smoothing parameters. In the mixed model formulation the penalty matrix is the inverse of the covariance matrix for the random effects of a term, and the smoothing parameters (times a half) are variance parameters to be estimated. It's not possible to transform the problem to make the required random effects covariance matrix look like one of the standard pdMat classes: hence the need for the pdTens class. A notLog2 parameterization ensures that the parameters are positive.

These functions (pdTens, pdConstruct.pdTens, pdFactor.pdTens, pdMatrix.pdTens, coef.pdTens and summary.pdTens) would not normally be called directly.

Usage

```
pdTens(value = numeric(0), form = NULL,
       nam = NULL, data = sys.frame(sys.parent()))
```

Arguments

value	Initialization values for parameters. Not normally used.
form	A one sided formula specifying the random effects structure. The formula should have an attribute S which is a list of the penalty matrices the weighted sum of which gives the inverse of the covariance matrix for these random effects.
nam	a names argument, not normally used with this class.
data	data frame in which to evaluate formula.

Details

If using this class directly note that it is worthwhile scaling the S matrices to be of 'moderate size', for example by dividing each matrix by its largest singular value: this avoids problems with lme defaults (smooth.construct.tensor.smooth.spec does this automatically).

This appears to be the minimum set of functions required to implement a new pdMat class.

Note that while the pdFactor and pdMatrix functions return the inverse of the scaled random effect covariance matrix or its factor, the pdConstruct function is sometimes initialised with estimates of the scaled covariance matrix, and sometimes intialized with its inverse.

Value

A class pdTens object, or its coefficients or the matrix it represents or the factor of that matrix. pdFactor returns the factor as a vector (packed column-wise) (pdMatrix always returns a matrix).

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Pinheiro J.C. and Bates, D.M. (2000) Mixed effects Models in S and S-PLUS. Springer

The nlme source code.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

te gamm

Examples

```
# see gamm
```

pen.edf *Extract the effective degrees of freedom associated with each penalty in a gam fit*

Description

Finds the coefficients penalized by each penalty and adds up their effective degrees of freedom. Very useful for t2 terms, but hard to interpret for terms where the penalties penalize overlapping sets of parameters (e.g. te terms).

Usage

```
pen.edf(x)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from gam

Details

Useful for models containing t2 terms, since it splits the EDF for the term up into parts due to different components of the smooth. This is useful for figuring out which interaction terms are actually needed in a model.

Value

A vector of EDFs, named with labels identifying which penalty each EDF relates to.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

t2

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
set.seed(20)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,scale=2) ## simulate data
## following t2 smooth basically separates smooth
## of x0,x1 into main effects + interaction....

b <- gam(y~t2(x0,x1,bs="tp",m=1,k=7)+s(x2)+s(x3),
         data=dat,method="ML")
pen.edf(b)

## label "rr" indicates interaction edf (range space times range space)
## label "nr" (null space for x0 times range space for x1) is main
##            effect for x1.
## label "rn" is main effect for x0
## clearly interaction is negligible
```

```
## second example with higher order marginals.

b <- gam(y~t2(x0,x1,bs="tp",m=2,k=7,full=TRUE)
          +s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat,method="ML")
pen.edf(b)

## In this case the EDF is negligible for all terms in the t2 smooth
## apart from the main effects (r2 and 2r). To understand the labels
## consider the following 2 examples....
## "r1" relates to the interaction of the range space of the first
##      marginal smooth and the first basis function of the null
##      space of the second marginal smooth
## "2r" relates to the interaction of the second basis function of
##      the null space of the first marginal smooth with the range
##      space of the second marginal smooth.
```

`place.knots` *Automatically place a set of knots evenly through covariate values*

Description

Given a univariate array of covariate values, places a set of knots for a regression spline evenly through the covariate values.

Usage

```
place.knots(x,nk)
```

Arguments

x	array of covariate values (need not be sorted).
nk	integer indicating the required number of knots.

Details

Places knots evenly throughout a set of covariates. For example, if you had 11 covariate values and wanted 6 knots then a knot would be placed at the first (sorted) covariate value and every second (sorted) value thereafter. With less convenient numbers of data and knots the knots are placed within intervals between data in order to achieve even coverage, where even means having approximately the same number of data between each pair of knots.

Value

An array of knot locations.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

smooth.construct.cc.smooth.spec

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
x<-runif(30)
place.knots(x,7)
rm(x)
```

---

plot.gam *Default GAM plotting*

Description

Takes a fitted gam object produced by gam() and plots the component smooth functions that make it up, on the scale of the linear predictor. Optionally produces term plots for parametric model components as well.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
plot(x,residuals=FALSE,rug=TRUE,se=TRUE,pages=0,select=NULL,scale=-1,
         n=100,n2=40,pers=FALSE,theta=30,phi=30,jit=FALSE,xlab=NULL,
         ylab=NULL,main=NULL,ylim=NULL,xlim=NULL,too.far=0.1,
         all.terms=FALSE,shade=FALSE,shade.col="gray80",
         shift=0,trans=I,seWithMean=FALSE,unconditional=FALSE,by.resids=FALSE,
         scheme=0,...)
```

Arguments

x	a fitted gam object as produced by gam().
residuals	If TRUE then partial residuals are added to plots of 1-D smooths. If FALSE then no residuals are added. If this is an array of the correct length then it is used as the array of residuals to be used for producing partial residuals. If TRUE then the residuals are the working residuals from the IRLS iteration weighted by the IRLS weights. Partial residuals for a smooth term are the residuals that would be obtained by dropping the term concerned from the model, while leaving all other estimates fixed (i.e. the estimates for the term plus the residuals).
rug	when TRUE (default) then the covariate to which the plot applies is displayed as a rug plot at the foot of each plot of a 1-d smooth, and the locations of the covariates are plotted as points on the contour plot representing a 2-d smooth. Setting to FALSE will speed up plotting for large datasets.
se	when TRUE (default) upper and lower lines are added to the 1-d plots at 2 standard errors above and below the estimate of the smooth being plotted while for 2-d plots, surfaces at +1 and -1 standard errors are contoured and overlayed on the contour plot for the estimate. If a positive number is supplied then this number is multiplied by the standard errors when calculating standard error curves or surfaces. See also shade, below.

pages	(default 0) the number of pages over which to spread the output. For example, if pages=1 then all terms will be plotted on one page with the layout performed automatically. Set to 0 to have the routine leave all graphics settings as they are.
select	Allows the plot for a single model term to be selected for printing. e.g. if you just want the plot for the second smooth term set select=2.
scale	set to -1 (default) to have the same y-axis scale for each plot, and to 0 for a different y axis for each plot. Ignored if ylim supplied.
n	number of points used for each 1-d plot - for a nice smooth plot this needs to be several times the estimated degrees of freedom for the smooth. Default value 100.
n2	Square root of number of points used to grid estimates of 2-d functions for contouring.
pers	Set to TRUE if you want perspective plots for 2-d terms.
theta	One of the perspective plot angles.
phi	The other perspective plot angle.
jit	Set to TRUE if you want rug plots for 1-d terms to be jittered.
xlab	If supplied then this will be used as the x label for all plots.
ylab	If supplied then this will be used as the y label for all plots.
main	Used as title (or z axis label) for plots if supplied.
ylim	If supplied then this pair of numbers are used as the y limits for each plot.
xlim	If supplied then this pair of numbers are used as the x limits for each plot.
too.far	If greater than 0 then this is used to determine when a location is too far from data to be plotted when plotting 2-D smooths. This is useful since smooths tend to go wild away from data. The data are scaled into the unit square before deciding what to exclude, and too.far is a distance within the unit square. Setting to zero can make plotting faster for large datasets, but care then needed with interpretation of plots.
all.terms	if set to TRUE then the partial effects of parametric model components are also plotted, via a call to termplot. Only terms of order 1 can be plotted in this way.
shade	Set to TRUE to produce shaded regions as confidence bands for smooths (not avaliable for parametric terms, which are plotted using termplot).
shade.col	define the color used for shading confidence bands.
shift	constant to add to each smooth (on the scale of the linear predictor) before plotting. Can be useful for some diagnostics, or with trans.
trans	function to apply to each smooth (after any shift), before plotting. shift and trans are occasionally useful as a means for getting plots on the response scale, when the model consists only of a single smooth.
seWithMean	if TRUE the component smooths are shown with confidence intervals that include the uncertainty about the overall mean. If FALSE then the uncertainty relates purely to the centred smooth itself. Marra and Wood (2012) suggests that TRUE results in better coverage performance, and this is also suggested by simulation.
unconditional	if TRUE then the smoothing parameter uncertainty corrected covariance matrix is used to compute uncertainty bands, if available. Otherwise the bands treat the smoothing parameters as fixed.
by.resids	Should partial residuals be plotted for terms with by variables? Usually the answer is no, they would be meaningless.
scheme	Integer or integer vector selecting a plotting scheme for each plot. See details.
...	other graphics parameters to pass on to plotting commands.

Details

Produces default plot showing the smooth components of a fitted GAM, and optionally parametric terms as well, when these can be handled by termplot.

For smooth terms plot.gam actually calls plot method functions depending on the class of the smooth. Currently random.effects, Markov random fields (mrf), Spherical.Spline and factor.smooth.interaction terms have special methods (documented in their help files), the rest use the defaults described below.

For plots of 1-d smooths, the x axis of each plot is labelled with the covariate name, while the y axis is labelled s(cov,edf) where cov is the covariate name, and edf the estimated (or user defined for regression splines) degrees of freedom of the smooth. scheme == 0 produces a smooth curve with dashed curves indicating 2 standard error bounds. scheme == 1 illustrates the error bounds using a shaded region.

For scheme==0, contour plots are produced for 2-d smooths with the x-axes labelled with the first covariate name and the y axis with the second covariate name. The main title of the plot is something like s(var1,var2,edf), indicating the variables of which the term is a function, and the estimated degrees of freedom for the term. When se=TRUE, estimator variability is shown by overlaying contour plots at plus and minus 1 s.e. relative to the main estimate. If se is a positive number then contour plots are at plus or minus se multiplied by the s.e. Contour levels are chosen to try and ensure reasonable separation of the contours of the different plots, but this is not always easy to achieve. Note that these plots can not be modified to the same extent as the other plot.

For 2-d smooths scheme==1 produces a perspective plot, while scheme==2 produces a heatmap, with overlaid contours.

Smooths of more than 2 variables are not plotted, but see vis.gam.

Fine control of plots for parametric terms can be obtained by calling termplot directly, taking care to use its terms argument.

Note that, if seWithMean=TRUE, the confidence bands include the uncertainty about the overall mean. In other words although each smooth is shown centred, the confidence bands are obtained as if every other term in the model was constrained to have average 0, (average taken over the covariate values), except for the smooth concerned. This seems to correspond more closely to how most users interpret componentwise intervals in practice, and also results in intervals with close to nominal (frequentist) coverage probabilities by an extension of Nychka's (1988) results presented in Marra and Wood (2012).

Sometimes you may want a small change to a default plot, and the arguments to plot.gam just won't let you do it. In this case, the quickest option is sometimes to clone the smooth.construct and Predict.matrix methods for the smooth concerned, modifying only the returned smoother class (e.g. to foo.smooth). Then copy the plot method function for the original class (e.g. mgcv:::plot.mgcv.smooth), modify the source code to plot exactly as you want and rename the plot method function (e.g. plot.foo.smooth). You can then use the cloned smooth in models (e.g. s(x,bs="foo")), and it will automatically plot using the modified plotting function.

Value

The function simply generates plots.

WARNING

Note that the behaviour of this function is not identical to plot.gam() in S-PLUS.

Plotting can be slow for models fitted to large datasets. Set rug=FALSE to improve matters. If it's still too slow set too.far=0, but then take care not to overinterpret smooths away from supporting data.

Plots of 2-D smooths with standard error contours shown can not easily be customized.

The function can not deal with smooths of more than 2 variables!

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Henric Nilsson <henric.nilsson@statisticon.se> donated the code for the shade option.

The design is inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers and Hastie (1993) (but is not a clone).

References

Chambers and Hastie (1993) Statistical Models in S. Chapman & Hall.

Marra, G and S.N. Wood (2012) Coverage Properties of Confidence Intervals for Generalized Additive Model Components. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics.

Nychka (1988) Bayesian Confidence Intervals for Smoothing Splines. Journal of the American Statistical Association 83:1134-1143.

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

gam, predict.gam, vis.gam

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
## fake some data...
f1 <- function(x) {exp(2 * x)}
f2 <- function(x) {
  0.2*x^11*(10*(1-x))^6+10*(10*x)^3*(1-x)^10
}
f3 <- function(x) {x*0}

n<-200
sig2<-4
x0 <- rep(1:4,50)
x1 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
x2 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
x3 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
e <- rnorm(n, 0, sqrt(sig2))
y <- 2*x0 + f1(x1) + f2(x2) + f3(x3) + e
x0 <- factor(x0)

## fit and plot...
b<-gam(y~x0+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3))
plot(b,pages=1,residuals=TRUE,all.terms=TRUE,shade=TRUE,shade.col=2)
plot(b,pages=1,seWithMean=TRUE) ## better coverage intervals

## just parametric term alone...
termplot(b,terms="x0",se=TRUE)

## more use of color...
```

```
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2),bg="blue")
x <- 0:1000/1000
for (i in 1:3) {
  plot(b,select=i,rug=FALSE,col="green",
    col.axis="white",col.lab="white",all.terms=TRUE)
  for (j in 1:2) axis(j,col="white",labels=FALSE)
  box(col="white")
  eval(parse(text=paste("fx <- f",i,"(x)",sep="")))
  fx <- fx-mean(fx)
  lines(x,fx,col=2) ## overlay truth in red
}
par(op)

## example with 2-d plots, and use of schemes...
b1 <- gam(y~x0+s(x1,x2)+s(x3))
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
plot(b1,all.terms=TRUE)
par(op)
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
plot(b1,all.terms=TRUE,scheme=1)
par(op)
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
plot(b1,all.terms=TRUE,scheme=c(2,1))
par(op)
```

`polys.plot` *Plot geographic regions defined as polygons*

Description

Produces plots of geographic regions defined by polygons, optionally filling the polygons with a color or grey shade dependent on a covariate.

Usage

```
polys.plot(pc,z=NULL,scheme="heat",lab="",...)
```

Arguments

`pc`	A named list of matrices. Each matrix has two columns. The matrix rows each define the vertex of a boundary polygon. If a boundary is defined by several polygons, then each of these must be separated by an `NA` row in the matrix. See `mrf` for an example.
`z`	A vector of values associated with each area (item) of `pc`. If the vector elements have names then these are used to match elements of `z` to areas defined in `pc`. Otherwise `pc` and `z` are assumed to be in the same order. If `z` is `NULL` then polygons are not filled.
`scheme`	One of `"heat"` or `"grey"`, indicating how to fill the polygons in accordance with the value of `z`.
`lab`	label for plot.
`...`	other arguments to pass to plot (currently only if `z` is `NULL`).

Details

Any polygon within another polygon counts as a hole in the area. Further nesting is dealt with by treating any point that is interior to an odd number of polygons as being within the area, and all other points as being exterior. The routine is provided to facilitate plotting with models containing `mrf` smooths.

Value

Simply produces a plot.

Author(s)

Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

`mrf` and `columb.polys`.

Examples

```
## see also ?mrf for use of z
require(mgcv)
data(columb.polys)
polys.plot(columb.polys)
```

---

predict.bam *Prediction from fitted Big Additive Model model*

Description

Essentially a wrapper for `predict.gam` for prediction from a model fitted by `bam`. Can compute on a parallel cluster.

Takes a fitted `bam` object produced by `bam` and produces predictions given a new set of values for the model covariates or the original values used for the model fit. Predictions can be accompanied by standard errors, based on the posterior distribution of the model coefficients. The routine can optionally return the matrix by which the model coefficients must be pre-multiplied in order to yield the values of the linear predictor at the supplied covariate values: this is useful for obtaining credible regions for quantities derived from the model (e.g. derivatives of smooths), and for lookup table prediction outside `R` (see example code below).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class bam
predict(object,newdata,type="link",se.fit=FALSE,terms=NULL,
        block.size=50000,newdata.guaranteed=FALSE,na.action=na.pass,cluster=NULL,...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted bam object as produced by bam.
newdata	A data frame or list containing the values of the model covariates at which predictions are required. If this is not provided then predictions corresponding to the original data are returned. If newdata is provided then it should contain all the variables needed for prediction: a warning is generated if not.
type	When this has the value "link" (default) the linear predictor (possibly with associated standard errors) is returned. When type="terms" each component of the linear predictor is returned seperately (possibly with standard errors): this includes parametric model components, followed by each smooth component, but excludes any offset and any intercept. type="iterms" is the same, except that any standard errors returned for smooth components will include the uncertainty about the intercept/overall mean. When type="response" predictions on the scale of the response are returned (possibly with approximate standard errors). When type="lpmatrix" then a matrix is returned which yields the values of the linear predictor (minus any offset) when postmultiplied by the parameter vector (in this case se.fit is ignored). The latter option is most useful for getting variance estimates for quantities derived from the model: for example integrated quantities, or derivatives of smooths. A linear predictor matrix can also be used to implement approximate prediction outside R (see example code, below).
se.fit	when this is TRUE (not default) standard error estimates are returned for each prediction.
terms	if type=="terms" then only results for the terms named in this array will be returned.
block.size	maximum number of predictions to process per call to underlying code: larger is quicker, but more memory intensive.
newdata.guaranteed	Set to TRUE to turn off all checking of newdata except for sanity of factor levels: this can speed things up for large prediction tasks, but newdata must be complete, with no NA values for predictors required in the model.
na.action	what to do about NA values in newdata. With the default na.pass, any row of newdata containing NA values for required predictors, gives rise to NA predictions (even if the term concerned has no NA predictors). na.exclude or na.omit result in the dropping of newdata rows, if they contain any NA values for required predictors. If newdata is missing then NA handling is determined from object$na.action.
cluster	predict.bam can compute in parallel using parLapply from the parallel package, if it is supplied with a cluster on which to do this (a cluster here can be some cores of a single machine). See details and example code for bam.
...	other arguments.

Details

The standard errors produced by predict.gam are based on the Bayesian posterior covariance matrix of the parameters Vp in the fitted bam object.

To facilitate plotting with termplot, if object possesses an attribute "para.only" and type=="terms" then only parametric terms of order 1 are returned (i.e. those that termplot can handle).

Note that, in common with other prediction functions, any offset supplied to gam as an argument is always ignored when predicting, unlike offsets specified in the gam model formula.

See the examples in predict.gam for how to use the lpmatrix for obtaining credible regions for quantities derived from the model.

Value

If type=="lpmatrix" then a matrix is returned which will give a vector of linear predictor values (minus any offest) at the supplied covariate values, when applied to the model coefficient vector. Otherwise, if se.fit is TRUE then a 2 item list is returned with items (both arrays) fit and se.fit containing predictions and associated standard error estimates, otherwise an array of predictions is returned. The dimensions of the returned arrays depends on whether type is "terms" or not: if it is then the array is 2 dimensional with each term in the linear predictor separate, otherwise the array is 1 dimensional and contains the linear predictor/predicted values (or corresponding s.e.s). The linear predictor returned termwise will not include the offset or the intercept.

newdata can be a data frame, list or model.frame: if it's a model frame then all variables must be supplied.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

The design is inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers and Hastie (1993) (but is not a clone).

References

Chambers and Hastie (1993) Statistical Models in S. Chapman & Hall.

Marra, G and S.N. Wood (2012) Coverage Properties of Confidence Intervals for Generalized Additive Model Components. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics.

Wood S.N. (2006b) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

bam, predict.gam

Examples

```
## for parallel computing see examples for ?bam

## for general useage follow examples in ?predict.gam
```

predict.gam *Prediction from fitted GAM model*

Description

Takes a fitted gam object produced by gam() and produces predictions given a new set of values for the model covariates or the original values used for the model fit. Predictions can be accompanied by standard errors, based on the posterior distribution of the model coefficients. The routine can optionally return the matrix by which the model coefficients must be pre-multiplied in order to yield the values of the linear predictor at the supplied covariate values: this is useful for obtaining credible regions for quantities derived from the model (e.g. derivatives of smooths), and for lookup table prediction outside R (see example code below).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
predict(object,newdata,type="link",se.fit=FALSE,terms=NULL,
        block.size=NULL,newdata.guaranteed=FALSE,na.action=na.pass,
        unconditional=FALSE,...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted gam object as produced by gam().
newdata	A data frame or list containing the values of the model covariates at which predictions are required. If this is not provided then predictions corresponding to the original data are returned. If newdata is provided then it should contain all the variables needed for prediction: a warning is generated if not.
type	When this has the value "link" (default) the linear predictor (possibly with associated standard errors) is returned. When type="terms" each component of the linear predictor is returned seperately (possibly with standard errors): this includes parametric model components, followed by each smooth component, but excludes any offset and any intercept. type="iterms" is the same, except that any standard errors returned for smooth components will include the uncertainty about the intercept/overall mean. When type="response" predictions on the scale of the response are returned (possibly with approximate standard errors). When type="lpmatrix" then a matrix is returned which yields the values of the linear predictor (minus any offset) when postmultiplied by the parameter vector (in this case se.fit is ignored). The latter option is most useful for getting variance estimates for quantities derived from the model: for example integrated quantities, or derivatives of smooths. A linear predictor matrix can also be used to implement approximate prediction outside R (see example code, below).
se.fit	when this is TRUE (not default) standard error estimates are returned for each prediction.
terms	if type=="terms" then only results for the terms given in this array will be returned.
block.size	maximum number of predictions to process per call to underlying code: larger is quicker, but more memory intensive. Set to < 1 to use total number of predictions as this. If NULL then block size is 1000 if new data supplied, and the number of rows in the model frame otherwise.

newdata.guaranteed
: Set to TRUE to turn off all checking of newdata except for sanity of factor levels: this can speed things up for large prediction tasks, but newdata must be complete, with no NA values for predictors required in the model.

na.action
: what to do about NA values in newdata. With the default na.pass, any row of newdata containing NA values for required predictors, gives rise to NA predictions (even if the term concerned has no NA predictors). na.exclude or na.omit result in the dropping of newdata rows, if they contain any NA values for required predictors. If newdata is missing then NA handling is determined from object$na.action.

unconditional
: if TRUE then the smoothing parameter uncertainty corrected covariance matrix is used, when available, otherwise the covariance matrix conditional on the estimated smoothing parameters is used.

...
: other arguments.

Details

The standard errors produced by predict.gam are based on the Bayesian posterior covariance matrix of the parameters Vp in the fitted gam object.

To facilitate plotting with termplot, if object possesses an attribute "para.only" and type=="terms" then only parametric terms of order 1 are returned (i.e. those that termplot can handle).

Note that, in common with other prediction functions, any offset supplied to gam as an argument is always ignored when predicting, unlike offsets specified in the gam model formula.

See the examples for how to use the lpmatrix for obtaining credible regions for quantities derived from the model.

Value

If type=="lpmatrix" then a matrix is returned which will give a vector of linear predictor values (minus any offest) at the supplied covariate values, when applied to the model coefficient vector. Otherwise, if se.fit is TRUE then a 2 item list is returned with items (both arrays) fit and se.fit containing predictions and associated standard error estimates, otherwise an array of predictions is returned. The dimensions of the returned arrays depends on whether type is "terms" or not: if it is then the array is 2 dimensional with each term in the linear predictor separate, otherwise the array is 1 dimensional and contains the linear predictor/predicted values (or corresponding s.e.s). The linear predictor returned termwise will not include the offset or the intercept.

newdata can be a data frame, list or model.frame: if it's a model frame then all variables must be supplied.

WARNING

Note that the behaviour of this function is not identical to predict.gam() in Splus.

type=="terms" does not exactly match what predict.lm does for parametric model components.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

The design is inspired by the S function of the same name described in Chambers and Hastie (1993) (but is not a clone).

References

Chambers and Hastie (1993) Statistical Models in S. Chapman & Hall.

Marra, G and S.N. Wood (2012) Coverage Properties of Confidence Intervals for Generalized Additive Model Components. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics, 39(1), 53-74.

Wood S.N. (2006b) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

gam, gamm, plot.gam

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
n<-200
sig <- 2
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,scale=sig)

b<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(I(x1^2))+s(x2)+offset(x3),data=dat)

newd <- data.frame(x0=(0:30)/30,x1=(0:30)/30,x2=(0:30)/30,x3=(0:30)/30)
pred <- predict.gam(b,newd)

#############################################
## difference between "terms" and "iterms"
#############################################
nd2 <- data.frame(x0=c(.25,.5),x1=c(.25,.5),x2=c(.25,.5),x3=c(.25,.5))
predict(b,nd2,type="terms",se=TRUE)
predict(b,nd2,type="iterms",se=TRUE)

##########################################################
## now get variance of sum of predictions using lpmatrix
##########################################################

Xp <- predict(b,newd,type="lpmatrix")

## Xp %*% coef(b) yields vector of predictions

a <- rep(1,31)
Xs <- t(a) %*% Xp ## Xs %*% coef(b) gives sum of predictions
var.sum <- Xs %*% b$Vp %*% t(Xs)


##############################################################
## Now get the variance of non-linear function of predictions
## by simulation from posterior distribution of the params
##############################################################

rmvn <- function(n,mu,sig) { ## MVN random deviates
  L <- mroot(sig);m <- ncol(L);
  t(mu + L%*%matrix(rnorm(m*n),m,n))
}

br <- rmvn(1000,coef(b),b$Vp) ## 1000 replicate param. vectors
res <- rep(0,1000)
```

```
for (i in 1:1000)
{ pr <- Xp %*% br[i,] ## replicate predictions
  res[i] <- sum(log(abs(pr))) ## example non-linear function
}
mean(res);var(res)

## loop is replace-able by following ....

res <- colSums(log(abs(Xp %*% t(br))))

#####################################################################
## The following shows how to use use an "lpmatrix" as a lookup
## table for approximate prediction. The idea is to create
## approximate prediction matrix rows by appropriate linear
## interpolation of an existing prediction matrix. The additivity
## of a GAM makes this possible.
## There is no reason to ever do this in R, but the following
## code provides a useful template for predicting from a fitted
## gam *outside* R: all that is needed is the coefficient vector
## and the prediction matrix. Use larger Xp/ smaller dx and/or
## higher order interpolation for higher accuracy.
#####################################################################

xn <- c(.341,.122,.476,.981) ## want prediction at these values
x0 <- 1         ## intercept column
dx <- 1/30      ## covariate spacing in newd
for (j in 0:2) { ## loop through smooth terms
  cols <- 1+j*9 +1:9      ## relevant cols of Xp
  i <- floor(xn[j+1]*30)  ## find relevant rows of Xp
  w1 <- (xn[j+1]-i*dx)/dx ## interpolation weights
  ## find approx. predict matrix row portion, by interpolation
  x0 <- c(x0,Xp[i+2,cols]*w1 + Xp[i+1,cols]*(1-w1))
}
dim(x0)<-c(1,28)
fv <- x0%*%coef(b) + xn[4];fv    ## evaluate and add offset
se <- sqrt(x0%*%b$Vp%*%t(x0));se ## get standard error
## compare to normal prediction
predict(b,newdata=data.frame(x0=xn[1],x1=xn[2],
        x2=xn[3],x3=xn[4]),se=TRUE)

#####################################################################
## Differentiating the smooths in a model (with CIs for derivatives)
#####################################################################

## simulate data and fit model...
dat <- gamSim(1,n=300,scale=sig)
b<-gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)

## now evaluate derivatives of smooths with associated standard
## errors, by finite differencing...
x.mesh <- seq(0,1,length=200) ## where to evaluate derivatives
newd <- data.frame(x0 = x.mesh,x1 = x.mesh, x2=x.mesh,x3=x.mesh)
X0 <- predict(b,newd,type="lpmatrix")

eps <- 1e-7 ## finite difference interval
x.mesh <- x.mesh + eps ## shift the evaluation mesh
```

```
newd <- data.frame(x0 = x.mesh,x1 = x.mesh, x2=x.mesh,x3=x.mesh)
X1 <- predict(b,newd,type="lpmatrix")

Xp <- (X1-X0)/eps ## maps coefficients to (fd approx.) derivatives
colnames(Xp)      ## can check which cols relate to which smooth

par(mfrow=c(2,2))
for (i in 1:4) {  ## plot derivatives and corresponding CIs
  Xi <- Xp*0
  Xi[,(i-1)*9+1:9+1] <- Xp[,(i-1)*9+1:9+1] ## Xi%*%coef(b) = smooth deriv i
  df <- Xi%*%coef(b)              ## ith smooth derivative
  df.sd <- rowSums(Xi%*%b$Vp*Xi)^.5 ## cheap diag(Xi%*%b$Vp%*%t(Xi))^.5
  plot(x.mesh,df,type="l",ylim=range(c(df+2*df.sd,df-2*df.sd)))
  lines(x.mesh,df+2*df.sd,lty=2);lines(x.mesh,df-2*df.sd,lty=2)
}
```

`Predict.matrix` *Prediction methods for smooth terms in a GAM*

Description

Takes `smooth` objects produced by `smooth.construct` methods and obtains the matrix mapping the parameters associated with such a smooth to the predicted values of the smooth at a set of new covariate values.

In practice this method is often called via the wrapper function `PredictMat`.

Usage

```
Predict.matrix(object,data)
Predict.matrix2(object,data)
```

Arguments

`object`	is a smooth object produced by a `smooth.construct` method function. The object contains all the information required to specify the basis for a term of its class, and this information is used by the appropriate `Predict.matrix` function to produce a prediction matrix for new covariate values. Further details are given in `smooth.construct`.
`data`	A data frame containing the values of the (named) covariates at which the smooth term is to be evaluated. Exact requirements are as for `smooth.construct` and `smooth.construct2`.

Details

Smooth terms in a GAM formula are turned into smooth specification objects of class `xx.smooth.spec` during processing of the formula. Each of these objects is converted to a smooth object using an appropriate `smooth.construct` function. The `Predict.matrix` functions are used to obtain the matrix that will map the parameters associated with a smooth term to the predicted values for the term at new covariate values.

Note that new smooth classes can be added by writing a new `smooth.construct` method function and a corresponding `Predict.matrix` method function: see the example code provided for `smooth.construct` for details.

Value

A matrix which will map the parameters associated with the smooth to the vector of values of the smooth evaluated at the covariate values given in `object`. If the smooth class is one which generates offsets the corresponding offset is returned as attribute `"offset"` of the matrix.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

`gam`,`gamm`, `smooth.construct`, `PredictMat`

Examples

```
# See smooth.construct examples
```

`Predict.matrix.cr.smooth`

Predict matrix method functions

Description

The various built in smooth classes for use with `gam` have associate `Predict.matrix` method functions to enable prediction from the fitted model.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class cr.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
## S3 method for class cs.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
## S3 method for class cyclic.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
## S3 method for class pspline.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
## S3 method for class tensor.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
## S3 method for class tprs.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
## S3 method for class ts.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
## S3 method for class t2.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
```

Arguments

`object`	a smooth object, usually generated by a `smooth.construct` method having processed a smooth specification object generated by an `s` or `te` term in a `gam` formula.
`data`	A data frame containing the values of the (named) covariates at which the smooth term is to be evaluated. Exact requirements are as for `smooth.construct` and `smooth.construct2`.

Details

The Predict matrix function is not normally called directly, but is rather used internally by `predict.gam` etc. to predict from a fitted `gam` model. See `Predict.matrix` for more details, or the specific `smooth.construct` pages for details on a particular smooth class.

Value

A matrix mapping the coeffients for the smooth term to its values at the supplied data values.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

Examples

```
## see smooth.construct
```

Predict.matrix.soap.film

Prediction matrix for soap film smooth

Description

Creates a prediction matrix for a soap film smooth object, mapping the coefficients of the smooth to the linear predictor component for the smooth. This is the `Predict.matrix` method function required by `gam`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class soap.film
Predict.matrix(object,data)
## S3 method for class sw
Predict.matrix(object,data)
## S3 method for class sf
Predict.matrix(object,data)
```

Arguments

object	A class "soap.film", "sf" or "sw" object.
data	A list list or data frame containing the arguments of the smooth at which predictions are required.

Details

The smooth object will be largely what is returned from smooth.construct.so.smooth.spec, although elements X and S are not needed, and need not be present, of course.

Value

A matrix. This may have an "offset" attribute corresponding to the contribution from any known boundary conditions on the smooth.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <s.wood@bath.ac.uk>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

smooth.construct.so.smooth.spec

Examples

```
## This is a lower level example. The basis and
## penalties are obtained explicitly
## and magic is used as the fitting routine...

require(mgcv)
set.seed(66)

## create a boundary...
fsb <- list(fs.boundary())

## create some internal knots...
knots <- data.frame(x=rep(seq(-.5,3,by=.5),4),
                    y=rep(c(-.6,-.3,.3,.6),rep(8,4)))

## Simulate some fitting data, inside boundary...
n<-1000
x <- runif(n)*5-1;y<-runif(n)*2-1
z <- fs.test(x,y,b=1)
ind <- inSide(fsb,x,y) ## remove outsiders
z <- z[ind];x <- x[ind]; y <- y[ind]
n <- length(z)
z <- z + rnorm(n)*.3 ## add noise

## plot boundary with knot and data locations
plot(fsb[[1]]$x,fsb[[1]]$y,type="l");points(knots$x,knots$y,pch=20,col=2)
points(x,y,pch=".",col=3);
```

```
## set up the basis and penalties...
sob <- smooth.construct2(s(x,y,bs="so",k=40,xt=list(bnd=fsb,nmax=100)),
             data=data.frame(x=x,y=y),knots=knots)
## ... model matrix is element X of sob, penalties matrices
## are in list element S.

## fit using magic
um <- magic(z,sob$X,sp=c(-1,-1),sob$S,off=c(1,1))
beta <- um$b

## produce plots...
par(mfrow=c(2,2),mar=c(4,4,1,1))
m<-100;n<-50
xm <- seq(-1,3.5,length=m);yn<-seq(-1,1,length=n)
xx <- rep(xm,n);yy<-rep(yn,rep(m,n))

## plot truth...
tru <- matrix(fs.test(xx,yy),m,n) ## truth
image(xm,yn,tru,col=heat.colors(100),xlab="x",ylab="y")
lines(fsb[[1]]$x,fsb[[1]]$y,lwd=3)
contour(xm,yn,tru,levels=seq(-5,5,by=.25),add=TRUE)

## Plot soap, by first predicting on a fine grid...

## First get prediction matrix...
X <- Predict.matrix2(sob,data=list(x=xx,y=yy))

## Now the predictions...
fv <- X%*%beta

## Plot the estimated function...
image(xm,yn,matrix(fv,m,n),col=heat.colors(100),xlab="x",ylab="y")
lines(fsb[[1]]$x,fsb[[1]]$y,lwd=3)
points(x,y,pch=".")
contour(xm,yn,matrix(fv,m,n),levels=seq(-5,5,by=.25),add=TRUE)

## Plot TPRS...
b <- gam(z~s(x,y,k=100))
fv.gam <- predict(b,newdata=data.frame(x=xx,y=yy))
names(sob$sd$bnd[[1]]) <- c("xx","yy","d")
ind <- inSide(sob$sd$bnd,xx,yy)
fv.gam[!ind]<-NA
image(xm,yn,matrix(fv.gam,m,n),col=heat.colors(100),xlab="x",ylab="y")
lines(fsb[[1]]$x,fsb[[1]]$y,lwd=3)
points(x,y,pch=".")
contour(xm,yn,matrix(fv.gam,m,n),levels=seq(-5,5,by=.25),add=TRUE)
```

`print.gam` *Print a Generalized Additive Model object.*

Description

The default print method for a gam object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x, ...	fitted model objects of class gam as produced by gam().

Details

Prints out the family, model formula, effective degrees of freedom for each smooth term, and optimized value of the smoothness selection criterion used. See gamObject (or names(x)) for a listing of what the object contains. summary.gam provides more detail.

Note that the optimized smoothing parameter selection criterion reported is one of GCV, UBRE(AIC), GACV, negative log marginal likelihood (ML), or negative log restricted likelihood (REML).

If rank deficiency of the model was detected then the apparent rank is reported, along with the length of the cofficient vector (rank in absense of rank deficieny). Rank deficiency occurs when not all coefficients are identifiable given the data. Although the fitting routines (except gamm) deal gracefully with rank deficiency, interpretation of rank deficient models may be difficult.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. CRC/ Chapmand and Hall, Boca Raton, Florida.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

gam, summary.gam

---

qq.gam *QQ plots for gam model residuals*

Description

Takes a fitted gam object produced by gam() and produces QQ plots of its residuals (conditional on the fitted model coefficients and scale parameter). If the model distributional assumptions are met then usually these plots should be close to a straight line (although discrete data can yield marked random departures from this line).

Usage

```
qq.gam(object, rep=0, level=.9,s.rep=10,
       type=c("deviance","pearson","response"),
       pch=".", rl.col=2, rep.col="gray80", ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted gam object as produced by gam() (or a glm object).
rep	How many replicate datasets to generate to simulate quantiles of the residual distribution. 0 results in an efficient simulation free method for direct calculation, if this is possible for the object family.
level	If simulation is used for the quantiles, then reference intervals can be provided for the QQ-plot, this specifies the level. 0 or less for no intervals, 1 or more to simply plot the QQ plot for each replicate generated.
s.rep	how many times to randomize uniform quantiles to data under direct computation.
type	what sort of residuals should be plotted? See residuals.gam.
pch	plot character to use. 19 is good.
rl.col	color for the reference line on the plot.
rep.col	color for reference bands or replicate reference plots.
...	extra graphics parameters to pass to plotting functions.

Details

QQ-plots of the the model residuals can be produced in one of two ways. The cheapest method generates reference quantiles by associating a quantile of the uniform distribution with each datum, and feeding these uniform quantiles into the quantile function associated with each datum. The resulting quantiles are then used in place of each datum to generate approximate quantiles of residuals. The residual quantiles are averaged over s.rep randomizations of the uniform quantiles to data.

The second method is to use direct simulatation. For each replicate, data are simulated from the fitted model, and the corresponding residuals computed. This is repeated rep times. Quantiles are readily obtained from the empirical distribution of residuals so obtained. From this method reference bands are also computable.

Even if rep is set to zero, the routine will attempt to simulate quantiles if no quantile function is available for the family. If no random deviate generating function family is available (e.g. for the quasi families), then a normal QQ-plot is produced. The routine conditions on the fitted model coefficents and the scale parameter estimate.

The plots are very similar to those proposed in Ben and Yohai (2004), but are substantially cheaper to produce (the interpretation of residuals for binary data in Ben and Yohai is not recommended).

Note that plots for raw residuals from fits to binary data contain almost no useful information about model fit. Whether the residual is negative or positive is decided by whether the response is zero or one. The magnitude of the residual, given its sign, is determined entirely by the fitted values. In consequence only the most gross violations of the model are detectable from QQ-plots of residuals for binary data. To really check distributional assumptions from residuals for binary data you have to be able to group the data somehow. Binomial models other than binary are ok.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

N.H. Augustin, E-A Sauleaub, S.N. Wood (2012) On quantile quantile plots for generalized linear models Computational Statistics & Data Analysis. 56(8), 2404-2409.

M.G. Ben and V.J. Yohai (2004) JCGS 13(1), 36-47.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

choose.k, gam

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## simulate binomial data...
set.seed(0)
n.samp <- 400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n.samp,dist="binary",scale=.33)
p <- binomial()$linkinv(dat$f) ## binomial p
n <- sample(c(1,3),n.samp,replace=TRUE) ## binomial n
dat$y <- rbinom(n,n,p)
dat$n <- n

lr.fit <- gam(y/n~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3)
            ,family=binomial,data=dat,weights=n,method="REML")

par(mfrow=c(2,2))
## normal QQ-plot of deviance residuals
qqnorm(residuals(lr.fit),pch=19,cex=.3)
## Quick QQ-plot of deviance residuals
qq.gam(lr.fit,pch=19,cex=.3)
## Simulation based QQ-plot with reference bands
qq.gam(lr.fit,rep=100,level=.9)
## Simulation based QQ-plot, Pearson resids, all
## simulated reference plots shown...
qq.gam(lr.fit,rep=100,level=1,type="pearson",pch=19,cex=.2)

## Now fit the wrong model and check....

pif <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3)
            ,family=poisson,data=dat,method="REML")
par(mfrow=c(2,2))
qqnorm(residuals(pif),pch=19,cex=.3)
qq.gam(pif,pch=19,cex=.3)
qq.gam(pif,rep=100,level=.9)
qq.gam(pif,rep=100,level=1,type="pearson",pch=19,cex=.2)

## Example of binary data model violation so gross that you see a problem
## on the QQ plot...

y <- c(rep(1,10),rep(0,20),rep(1,40),rep(0,10),rep(1,40),rep(0,40))
x <- 1:160
b <- glm(y~x,family=binomial)
par(mfrow=c(2,2))
## Note that the next two are not necessarily similar under gross
## model violation...
```

```
qq.gam(b)
qq.gam(b,rep=50,level=1)
## and a much better plot for detecting the problem
plot(x,residuals(b),pch=19,cex=.3)
plot(x,y);lines(x,fitted(b))

## alternative model
b <- gam(y~s(x,k=5),family=binomial,method="ML")
qq.gam(b)
qq.gam(b,rep=50,level=1)
plot(x,residuals(b),pch=19,cex=.3)
plot(b,residuals=TRUE,pch=19,cex=.3)
```

`random.effects` *Random effects in GAMs*

Description

The smooth components of GAMs can be viewed as random effects for estimation purposes. This means that more conventional random effects terms can be incorporated into GAMs in two ways. The first method converts all the smooths into fixed and random components suitable for estimation by standard mixed modelling software. Once the GAM is in this form then conventional random effects are easily added, and the whole model is estimated as a general mixed model. `gamm` and `gamm4` from the `gamm4` package operate in this way.

The second method represents the conventional random effects in a GAM in the same way that the smooths are represented — as penalized regression terms. This method can be used with `gam` by making use of `s(...,bs="re")` terms in a model: see `smooth.construct.re.smooth.spec`, for full details. The basic idea is that, e.g., `s(x,z,g,bs="re")` generates an i.i.d. Gaussian random effect with model matrix given by `model.matrix(~x:z:g-1)` — in principle such terms can take any number of arguments. This simple approach is sufficient for implementing a wide range of commonly used random effect structures. For example if `g` is a factor then `s(g,bs="re")` produces a random coefficient for each level of `g`, with the radndom coefficients all modelled as i.i.d. normal. If `g` is a factor and `x` is numeric, then `s(x,g,bs="re")` produces an i.i.d. normal random slope relating the response to `x` for each level of `g`. If `h` is another factor then `s(h,g,bs="re")` produces the usual i.i.d. normal `g` - `h` interaction. Note that a rather useful approximate test for zero random effect is also implemented for tsuch terms based on Wood (2013).

Alternatively, but less straightforwardly, the `paraPen` argument to `gam` can be used: see `gam.models`. If smoothing parameter estimation is by ML or REML (e.g. `gam(...,method="REML")`) then this approach is a completely conventional likelihood based treatment of random effects.

`gam` can be slow for fitting models with large numbers of random effects, because it does not exploit the sparcity that is often a feature of parametric random effects. It can not be used for models with more coefficients than data. However `gam` is often faster and more relaiable than `gamm` or `gamm4`, when the number of random effects is modest.

To facilitate the use of random effects with `gam`, `gam.vcomp` is a utility routine for converting smoothing parameters to variance components. It also provides confidence intervals, if smoothness estimation is by ML or REML.

Note that treating random effects as smooths does not remove the usual problems associated with testing variance components for equality to zero: see `summary.gam` and `anova.gam`.

Author(s)

Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2013) A simple test for random effects in regression models. Biometrika 100:1005-1010

Wood, S.N. (2011) Fast stable restricted maximum likelihood and marginal likelihood estimation of semiparametric generalized linear models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 73(1):3-36

Wood, S.N. (2008) Fast stable direct fitting and smoothness selection for generalized additive models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 70(3):495-518

Wood, S.N. (2006) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for generalized additive mixed models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

See Also

gam.vcomp, gam.models, smooth.terms, smooth.construct.re.smooth.spec, gamm

Examples

```
## see also examples for gam.models, gam.vcomp and gamm

## simple comparison of lme and gam
require(mgcv)
require(nlme)
b0 <- lme(travel~1,data=Rail,~1|Rail,method="REML")

b <- gam(travel~s(Rail,bs="re"),data=Rail,method="REML")

intervals(b0)
gam.vcomp(b)
anova(b)
```

---

residuals.gam *Generalized Additive Model residuals*

Description

Returns residuals for a fitted gam model object. Pearson, deviance, working and response residuals are available.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
residuals(object, type = "deviance",...)
```

Arguments

object	a gam fitted model object.
type	the type of residuals wanted. Usually one of "deviance", "pearson","scaled.pearson", "working", or "response".
...	other arguments.

Details

Response residuals are the raw residuals (data minus fitted values). Scaled Pearson residuals are raw residuals divided by the standard deviation of the data according to the model mean variance relationship and estimated scale parameter. Pearson residuals are the same, but multiplied by the square root of the scale parameter (so they are independent of the scale parameter): $((y-\mu)/\sqrt{V(\mu)}$, where y is data μ is model fitted value and V is model mean-variance relationship.). Both are provided since not all texts agree on the definition of Pearson residuals. Deviance residuals simply return the deviance residuals defined by the model family. Working residuals are the residuals returned from model fitting at convergence.

Families can supply their own residual function, which is used in place of the standard function if present, (e.g. `cox.ph`).

Value

A vector of residuals.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

`gam`

`rig` *Generate inverse Gaussian random deviates*

Description

Generates inverse Gaussian random deviates.

Usage

```
rig(n,mean,scale)
```

Arguments

`n`	the number of deviates required. If this has length > 1 then the length is taken as the number of deviates required.
`mean`	vector of mean values.
`scale`	vector of scale parameter values (lambda, see below)

Details

If x if the returned vector, then E(x) = `mean` while var(x) = `scale*mean^3`. For density and distribution functions see the `statmod` package. The algorithm used is Algorithm 5.7 of Gentle (2003), based on Michael et al. (1976). Note that `scale` here is the scale parameter in the GLM sense, which is the reciprocal of the usual 'lambda' parameter.

Value

A vector of inverse Gaussian random deviates.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Gentle, J.E. (2003) Random Number Generation and Monte Carlo Methods (2nd ed.) Springer.

Michael, J.R., W.R. Schucany & R.W. Hass (1976) Generating random variates using transformations with multiple roots. The American Statistician 30, 88-90.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
set.seed(7)
## An inverse.gaussian GAM example, by modify gamSim output...
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,dist="normal",scale=1)
dat$f <- dat$f/4 ## true linear predictor
Ey <- exp(dat$f);scale <- .5 ## mean and GLM scale parameter
## simulate inverse Gaussian response...
dat$y <- rig(Ey,mean=Ey,scale=.2)
big <- gam(y~ s(x0)+ s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=inverse.gaussian(link=log),
          data=dat,method="REML")
plot(big,pages=1)
gam.check(big)
summary(big)
```

Rrank *Find rank of upper triangular matrix*

Description

Finds rank of upper triangular matrix R, by estimating condition number of upper `rank` by `rank` block, and reducing `rank` until this is acceptably low. Assumes R has been computed by a method that uses pivoting, usually pivoted QR or Choleski.

Usage

```
Rrank(R,tol=.Machine$double.eps^.9)
```

Arguments

`R`	An upper triangular matrix, obtained by pivoted QR or pivoted Choleski.
`tol`	the tolerance to use for judging rank.

Details

The method is based on Cline et al. (1979) as described in Golub and van Loan (1996).

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Cline, A.K., C.B. Moler, G.W. Stewart and J.H. Wilkinson (1979) An estimate for the condition number of a matrix. SIAM J. Num. Anal. 16, 368-375

Golub, G.H, and C.F. van Loan (1996) Matrix Computations 3rd ed. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore.

Examples

```
set.seed(0)
n <- 10;p <- 5
X <- matrix(runif(n*(p-1)),n,p)
qrx <- qr(X,LAPACK=TRUE)
Rrank(qr.R(qrx))
```

---

rTweedie *Generate Tweedie random deviates*

Description

Generates Tweedie random deviates, for powers between 1 and 2.

Usage

```
rTweedie(mu,p=1.5,phi=1)
```

Arguments

mu	vector of expected values for the deviates to be generated. One deviate generated for each element of mu.
p	the variance of a deviate is proportional to its mean, mu to the power p. p must be between 1 and 2. 1 is Poisson like (exactly Poisson if phi=1), 2 is gamma.
phi	The scale parameter. Variance of the deviates is given by is phi*mu^p.

Details

A Tweedie random variable with 1<p<2 is a sum of N gamma random variables where N has a Poisson distribution, with mean mu^(2-p)/((2-p)*phi). The Gamma random variables that are summed have shape parameter (2-p)/(p-1) and scale parameter phi*(p-1)*mu^(p-1) (note that this scale parameter is different from the scale parameter for a GLM with Gamma errors).

This is a restricted, but faster, version of rtweedie from the tweedie package.

Value

A vector of random deviates from a Tweedie distribution, expected value vector mu, variance vector phi*mu^p.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Peter K Dunn (2009). tweedie: Tweedie exponential family models. R package version 2.0.2. http://CRAN.R-project.org/package=tweedie

See Also

ldTweedie, Tweedie

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
f2 <- function(x) 0.2 * x^11 * (10 * (1 - x))^6 + 10 *
          (10 * x)^3 * (1 - x)^10
n <- 300
x <- runif(n)
mu <- exp(f2(x)/3+.1);x <- x*10 - 4
y <- rTweedie(mu,p=1.5,phi=1.3)
b <- gam(y~s(x,k=20),family=Tweedie(p=1.5))
b
plot(b)
```

---

s *Defining smooths in GAM formulae*

Description

Function used in definition of smooth terms within gam model formulae. The function does not evaluate a (spline) smooth - it exists purely to help set up a model using spline based smooths.

Usage

```
s(..., k=-1,fx=FALSE,bs="tp",m=NA,by=NA,xt=NULL,id=NULL,sp=NULL)
```

Arguments

...	a list of variables that are the covariates that this smooth is a function of.
k	the dimension of the basis used to represent the smooth term. The default depends on the number of variables that the smooth is a function of. k should not be less than the dimension of the null space of the penalty for the term (see null.space.dimension), but will be reset if it is. See choose.k for further information.
fx	indicates whether the term is a fixed d.f. regression spline (TRUE) or a penalized regression spline (FALSE).
bs	a two letter character string indicating the (penalized) smoothing basis to use. (eg "tp" for thin plate regression spline, "cr" for cubic regression spline). see smooth.terms for an over view of what is available.

m — The order of the penalty for this term (e.g. 2 for normal cubic spline penalty with 2nd derivatives when using default t.p.r.s basis). NA signals autoinitialization. Only some smooth classes use this. The "ps" class can use a 2 item array giving the basis and penalty order separately.

by — a numeric or factor variable of the same dimension as each covariate. In the numeric vector case the elements multiply the smooth, evaluated at the corresponding covariate values (a 'varying coefficient model' results). For the numeric by variable case the resulting smooth is not usually subject to a centering constraint (so the by variable should not be added as an additional main effect). In the factor by variable case a replicate of the smooth is produced for each factor level (these smooths will be centered, so the factor usually needs to be added as a main effect as well). See gam.models for further details. A by variable may also be a matrix if covariates are matrices: in this case implements linear functional of a smooth (see gam.models and linear.functional.terms for details).

xt — Any extra information required to set up a particular basis. Used e.g. to set large data set handling behaviour for "tp" basis.

id — A label or integer identifying this term in order to link its smoothing parameters to others of the same type. If two or more terms have the same id then they will have the same smoothing paramsters, and, by default, the same bases (first occurance defines basis type, but data from all terms used in basis construction). An id with a factor by variable causes the smooths at each factor level to have the same smoothing parameter.

sp — any supplied smoothing parameters for this term. Must be an array of the same length as the number of penalties for this smooth. Positive or zero elements are taken as fixed smoothing parameters. Negative elements signal autoinitialization. Over-rides values supplied in sp argument to gam. Ignored by gamm.

Details

The function does not evaluate the variable arguments. To use this function to specify use of your own smooths, note the relationships between the inputs and the output object and see the example in smooth.construct.

Value

A class xx.smooth.spec object, where xx is a basis identifying code given by the bs argument of s. These smooth.spec objects define smooths and are turned into bases and penalties by smooth.construct method functions.

The returned object contains the following items:

term — An array of text strings giving the names of the covariates that the term is a function of.

bs.dim — The dimension of the basis used to represent the smooth.

fixed — TRUE if the term is to be treated as a pure regression spline (with fixed degrees of freedom); FALSE if it is to be treated as a penalized regression spline

dim — The dimension of the smoother - i.e. the number of covariates that it is a function of.

p.order — The order of the t.p.r.s. penalty, or 0 for auto-selection of the penalty order.

by	is the name of any by variable as text ("NA" for none).
label	A suitable text label for this smooth term.
xt	The object passed in as argument xt.
id	An identifying label or number for the smooth, linking it to other smooths. Defaults to NULL for no linkage.
sp	array of smoothing parameters for the term (negative for auto-estimation). Defaults to NULL.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

te, gam, gamm

Examples

```
# example utilising by variables
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
n<-200;sig2<-4
x1 <- runif(n, 0, 1);x2 <- runif(n, 0, 1);x3 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
fac<-c(rep(1,n/2),rep(2,n/2)) # create factor
fac.1<-rep(0,n)+(fac==1);fac.2<-1-fac.1 # and dummy variables
fac<-as.factor(fac)
f1 <-  exp(2 * x1) - 3.75887
f2 <-  0.2 * x1^11 * (10 * (1 - x1))^6 + 10 * (10 * x1)^3 * (1 - x1)^10
f<-f1*fac.1+f2*fac.2+x2
e <- rnorm(n, 0, sqrt(abs(sig2)))
y <- f + e
# NOTE: smooths will be centered, so need to include fac in model....
b<-gam(y~fac+s(x1,by=fac)+x2)
plot(b,pages=1)
```

---

scat *GAM scaled t family for heavy tailed data*

Description

Family for use with gam, implementing regression for the heavy tailed response variables, y, using a scaled t model. The idea is that $(y - \mu)/\sigma \sim t_\nu$ where mu is determined by a linear predictor, while σ and ν are parameters to be estimated alongside the smoothing parameters.

Usage

```
scat(theta = NULL, link = "identity")
```

Arguments

theta	the parameters to be estimated $\nu = 2 + \exp(\theta_1)$ and $\sigma = \exp(\theta_2)$. If supplied and positive, then taken to be fixed values of ν and σ. If any negative, then absolute values taken as starting values.
link	The link function: one of "identity", "log" or "inverse".

Details

Useful in place of Gaussian, when data are heavy tailed.

Value

An object of class extended.family.

Author(s)

Natalya Pya (nyp20@bath.ac.uk)

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## Simulate some t data...
set.seed(3);n<-400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n)
dat$y <- dat$f + rt(n,df=3)*2

b <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=scat(link="identity"),data=dat)

b
plot(b,pages=1)
```

---

slanczos *Compute truncated eigen decomposition of a symmetric matrix*

Description

Uses Lanczos iteration to find the truncated eigen-decomposition of a symmetric matrix.

Usage

```
slanczos(A,k=10,kl=-1,tol=.Machine$double.eps^.5,nt=1)
```

Arguments

A	A symmetric matrix.
k	Must be non-negative. If kl is negative, then the k largest magnitude eigenvalues are found, together with the corresponding eigenvectors. If kl is non-negative then the k highest eigenvalues are found together with their eigenvectors and the kl lowest eigenvalues with eigenvectors are also returned.
kl	If kl is non-negative then the kl lowest eigenvalues are returned together with their corresponding eigenvectors (in addition to the k highest eignevalues + vectors). negative kl signals that the k largest magnitude eigenvalues should be returned, with eigenvectors.
tol	tolerance to use for convergence testing of eigenvalues. Error in eigenvalues will be less than the magnitude of the dominant eigenvalue multiplied by tol (or the machine precision!).
nt	number of threads to use for leading order iterative multiplication of A by vector. May show no speed improvement on two processor machine.

Details

If kl is non-negative, returns the highest k and lowest kl eigenvalues, with their corresponding eigenvectors. If kl is negative, returns the largest magnitude k eigenvalues, with corresponding eigenvectors.

The routine implements Lanczos iteration with full re-orthogonalization as described in Demmel (1997). Lanczos iteraction iteratively constructs a tridiagonal matrix, the eigenvalues of which converge to the eigenvalues of A, as the iteration proceeds (most extreme first). Eigenvectors can also be computed. For small k and kl the approach is faster than computing the full symmetric eigendecompostion. The tridiagonal eigenproblems are handled using LAPACK.

The implementation is not optimal: in particular the inner triadiagonal problems could be handled more efficiently, and there would be some savings to be made by not always returning eigenvectors.

Value

A list with elements values (array of eigenvalues); vectors (matrix with eigenvectors in its columns); iter (number of iterations required).

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Demmel, J. (1997) Applied Numerical Linear Algebra. SIAM

See Also

cyclic.p.spline

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
## create some xs and knots...
set.seed(1);
n <- 700;A <- matrix(runif(n*n),n,n);A <- A+t(A)
```

```
## compare timings of slanczos and eigen
system.time(er <- slanczos(A,10))
system.time(um <- eigen(A,symmetric=TRUE))

## confirm values are the same...
ind <- c(1:6,(n-3):n)
range(er$values-um$values[ind]);range(abs(er$vectors)-abs(um$vectors[,ind]))
```

---

smooth.construct *Constructor functions for smooth terms in a GAM*

Description

Smooth terms in a GAM formula are turned into smooth specification objects of class `xx.smooth.spec` during processing of the formula. Each of these objects is converted to a smooth object using an appropriate `smooth.construct` function. New smooth classes can be added by writing a new `smooth.construct` method function and a corresponding `Predict.matrix` method function (see example code below).

In practice, `smooth.construct` is usually called via `smooth.construct2` and the wrapper function `smoothCon`, in order to handle by variables and centering constraints (see the `smoothCon` documentation if you need to handle these things directly, for a user defined smooth class).

Usage

```
smooth.construct(object,data,knots)
smooth.construct2(object,data,knots)
```

Arguments

`object` is a smooth specification object, generated by an `s` or `te` term in a GAM formula. Objects generated by `s` terms have class `xx.smooth.spec` where `xx` is given by the `bs` argument of `s` (this convention allows the user to add their own smoothers). If `object` is not class `tensor.smooth.spec` it will have the following elements:

term The names of the covariates for this smooth, in an array.

bs.dim Argument `k` of the `s` term generating the object. This is the dimension of the basis used to represent the term (or, arguably, 1 greater than the basis dimension for `cc` terms). `bs.dim<0` indicates that the constructor should set this to the default value.

fixed `TRUE` if the term is to be unpenalized, otherwise `FALSE`.

dim the number covariates of which this smooth is a function.

p.order the order of the smoothness penalty or `NA` for autoselection of this. This is argument `m` of the `s` term that generated `object`.

by the name of any by variable to multiply this term as supplied as an argument to `s`. `"NA"` if there is no such term.

label A suitable label for use with this term.

xt An object containing information that may be needed for basis setup (used, e.g. by `"tp"` smooths to pass optional information on big dataset handling).

id Any identity associated with this term — used for linking bases and smoothing parameters. NULL by default, indicating no linkage.

sp Smoothing parameters for the term. Any negative are estimated, otherwise they are fixed at the supplied value. Unless NULL (default), over-rides sp argument to gam.

If object is of class tensor.smooth.spec then it was generated by a te term in the GAM formula, and specifies a smooth of several variables with a basis generated as a tensor product of lower dimensional bases. In this case the object will be different and will have the following elements:

margin is a list of smooth specification objects of the type listed above, defining the bases which have their tensor product formed in order to construct this term.

term is the array of names of the covariates that are arguments of the smooth.

by is the name of any by variable, or "NA".

fx is an array, the elements of which indicate whether (TRUE) any of the margins in the tensor product should be unpenalized.

label A suitable label for use with this term.

dim is the number of covariates of which this smooth is a function.

mp TRUE if multiple penalties are to be used.

np TRUE if 1-D marginal smooths are to be re-parameterized in terms of function values.

id Any identity associated with this term — used for linking bases and smoothing parameters. NULL by default, indicating no linkage.

sp Smoothing parameters for the term. Any negative are estimated, otherwise they are fixed at the supplied value. Unless NULL (default), over-rides sp argument to gam.

data For smooth.construct a data frame or list containing the evaluation of the elements of object$term, with names given by object$term. The last entry will be the by variable, if object$by is not "NA". For smooth.construct2 data need only be an object within which object$term can be evaluated, the variables can be in any order, and there can be irrelevant variables present as well.

knots an optional data frame or list containing the knots relating to object$term. If it is NULL then the knot locations are generated automatically. The structure of knots should be as for data, depending on whether smooth.construct or smooth.construct2 is used.

Details

There are built in methods for objects with the following classes: tp.smooth.spec (thin plate regression splines: see tprs); ts.smooth.spec (thin plate regression splines with shrinkage-to-zero); cr.smooth.spec (cubic regression splines: see cubic.regression.spline; cs.smooth.spec (cubic regression splines with shrinkage-to-zero); cc.smooth.spec (cyclic cubic regression splines); ps.smooth.spec (Eilers and Marx (1986) style P-splines: see p.spline); cp.smooth.spec (cyclic P-splines); ad.smooth.spec (adaptive smooths of 1 or 2 variables: see adaptive.smooth); re.smooth.spec (simple random effect terms); mrf.smooth.spec (Markov random field smoothers for smoothing over discrete districts); tensor.smooth.spec (tensor product smooths).

There is an implicit assumption that the basis only depends on the knots and/or the set of unique covariate combinations; i.e. that the basis is the same whether generated from the full set of covariates, or just the unique combinations of covariates.

Plotting of smooths is handled by plot methods for smooth objects. A default mgcv.smooth method is used if there is no more specific method available. Plot methods can be added for specific smooth classes, see source code for mgcv:::plot.sos.smooth, mgcv:::plot.random.effect, mgcv:::plot.mgcv.smooth for example code.

Value

The input argument object, assigned a new class to indicate what type of smooth it is and with at least the following items added:

X	The model matrix from this term. This may have an "offset" attribute: a vector of length nrow(X) containing any contribution of the smooth to the model offset term. by variables do not need to be dealt with here, but if they are then an item by.done must be added to the object.
S	A list of positive semi-definite penalty matrices that apply to this term. The list will be empty if the term is to be left un-penalized.
rank	An array giving the ranks of the penalties.
null.space.dim	The dimension of the penalty null space (before centering).

The following items may be added:

C	The matrix defining any identifiability constraints on the term, for use when fitting. If this is NULL then smoothCon will add an identifiability constraint that each term should sum to zero over the covariate values. Set to a zero row matrix if no constraints are required. If a supplied C has an attribute "always.apply" then it is never ignored, even if any by variables of a smooth imply that no constraint is actually needed.
Cp	An optional matrix supplying alternative identifiability constraints for use when predicting. By default the fitting constrants are used. This option is useful when some sort of simple sparse constraint is required for fitting, but the usual sum-to-zero constraint is required for prediction so that, e.g. the CIs for model components are as narrow as possible.
no.rescale	if this is non-NULL then the penalty coefficient matrix of the smooth will not be rescaled for enhaced numerical stability (rescaling is the default, because gamm requires it). Turning off rescaling is useful if the values of the smoothing parameters should be interpretable in a model, for example because they are inverse variance components.
df	the degrees of freedom associated with this term (when unpenalized and unconstrained). If this is null then smoothCon will set it to the basis dimension. smoothCon will reduce this by the number of constraints.
te.ok	0 if this term should not be used as a tensor product marginal, 1 if it can be used and plotted, and 2 is it can be used but not plotted. Set to 1 if NULL.
plot.me	Set to FALSE if this smooth should not be plotted by plot.gam. Set to TRUE if NULL.
side.constrain	Set to FALSE to ensure that the smooth is never subject to side constraints as a result of nesting.
L	smooths may depend on fewer 'underlying' smoothing parameters than there are elements of S. In this case L is the matrix mapping the vector of underlying log smoothing parameters to the vector of logs of the smoothing parameters actually multiplying the S[[i]]. L=NULL signifies that there is one smoothing parameter per S[[i]].

Usually the returned object will also include extra information required to define the basis, and used by Predict.matrix methods to make predictions using the basis. See the Details section for links to the information included for the built in smooth classes.

tensor.smooth returned objects will additionally have each element of the margin list updated in the same way. tensor.smooths also have a list, XP, containing re-parameterization matrices for any 1-D marginal terms re-parameterized in terms of function values. This list will have NULL entries for marginal smooths that are not re-parameterized, and is only long enough to reach the last re-parameterized marginal in the list.

WARNING

User defined smooth objects should avoid having attributes names "qrc" or "nCons" as these are used internally to provide constraint free parameterizations.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

Wood, S.N. (2006) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for generalized additive mixed models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

The code given in the example is based on the smooths advocated in:

Ruppert, D., M.P. Wand and R.J. Carroll (2003) Semiparametric Regression. Cambridge University Press.

However if you want p-splines, rather than splines with derivative based penalties, then the built in "ps" class is probably a marginally better bet. It's based on

Eilers, P.H.C. and B.D. Marx (1996) Flexible Smoothing with B-splines and Penalties. Statistical Science, 11(2):89-121

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

s,get.var, gamm, gam, Predict.matrix, smoothCon, PredictMat

Examples

```
## Adding a penalized truncated power basis class and methods
## as favoured by Ruppert, Wand and Carroll (2003)
## Semiparametric regression CUP. (No advantage to actually
## using this, since mgcv can happily handle non-identity
## penalties.)

smooth.construct.tr.smooth.spec<-function(object,data,knots)
## a truncated power spline constructor method function
## object$p.order = null space dimension
{ m <- object$p.order[1]
  if (is.na(m)) m <- 2 ## default
  if (m<1) stop("silly m supplied")
  if (object$bs.dim<0) object$bs.dim <- 10 ## default
  nk<-object$bs.dim-m-1 ## number of knots
  if (nk<=0) stop("k too small for m")
```

```
  x <- data[[object$term]]  ## the data
  x.shift <- mean(x) # shift used to enhance stability
  k <- knots[[object$term]] ## will be NULL if none supplied
  if (is.null(k)) # space knots through data
  { n<-length(x)
    k<-quantile(x[2:(n-1)],seq(0,1,length=nk+2))[2:(nk+1)]
  }
  if (length(k)!=nk) # right number of knots?
  stop(paste("there should be ",nk," supplied knots"))
  x <- x - x.shift # basis stabilizing shift
  k <- k - x.shift # knots treated the same!
  X<-matrix(0,length(x),object$bs.dim)
  for (i in 1:(m+1)) X[,i] <- x^(i-1)
  for (i in 1:nk) X[,i+m+1]<-(x-k[i])^m*as.numeric(x>k[i])
  object$X<-X # the finished model matrix
  if (!object$fixed) # create the penalty matrix
  { object$S[[1]]<-diag(c(rep(0,m+1),rep(1,nk)))
  }
  object$rank<-nk  # penalty rank
  object$null.space.dim <- m+1  # dim. of unpenalized space
  ## store "tr" specific stuff ...
  object$knots<-k;object$m<-m;object$x.shift <- x.shift

  object$df<-ncol(object$X)     # maximum DoF (if unconstrained)

  class(object)<-"tr.smooth"  # Give object a class
  object
}

Predict.matrix.tr.smooth<-function(object,data)
## prediction method function for the tr smooth class
{ x <- data[[object$term]]
  x <- x - object$x.shift # stabilizing shift
  m <- object$m;     # spline order (3=cubic)
  k<-object$knots    # knot locations
  nk<-length(k)      # number of knots
  X<-matrix(0,length(x),object$bs.dim)
  for (i in 1:(m+1)) X[,i] <- x^(i-1)
  for (i in 1:nk) X[,i+m+1] <- (x-k[i])^m*as.numeric(x>k[i])
  X # return the prediction matrix
}

# an example, using the new class....
require(mgcv)
set.seed(100)
dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,scale=2)
b<-gam(y~s(x0,bs="tr",m=2)+s(x1,bs="ps",m=c(1,3))+
         s(x2,bs="tr",m=3)+s(x3,bs="tr",m=2),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)
b<-gamm(y~s(x0,bs="tr",m=2)+s(x1,bs="ps",m=c(1,3))+
         s(x2,bs="tr",m=3)+s(x3,bs="tr",m=2),data=dat)
plot(b$gam,pages=1)
# another example using tensor products of the new class
dat <- gamSim(2,n=400,scale=.1)$data
b <- gam(y~te(x,z,bs=c("tr","tr"),m=c(2,2)),data=dat)
vis.gam(b)
```

`smooth.construct.ad.smooth.spec` *Adaptive smooths in GAMs*

Description

`gam` can use adaptive smooths of one or two variables, specified via terms like `s(...,bs="ad",...)`. (`gamm` can not use such terms — check out package `AdaptFit` if this is a problem.) The basis for such a term is a (tensor product of) p-spline(s) or cubic regression spline(s). Discrete P-spline type penalties are applied directly to the coefficients of the basis, but the penalties themselves have a basis representation, allowing the strength of the penalty to vary with the covariates. The coefficients of the penalty basis are the smoothing parameters.

When invoking an adaptive smoother the `k` argument specifies the dimension of the smoothing basis (default 40 in 1D, 15 in 2D), while the `m` argument specifies the dimension of the penalty basis (default 5 in 1D, 3 in 2D). For an adaptive smooth of two variables `k` is taken as the dimension of both marginal bases: different marginal basis dimensions can be specified by making `k` a two element vector. Similarly, in the two dimensional case `m` is the dimension of both marginal bases for the penalties, unless it is a two element vector, which specifies different basis dimensions for each marginal (If the penalty basis is based on a thin plate spline then `m` specifies its dimension directly).

By default, P-splines are used for the smoothing and penalty bases, but this can be modified by supplying a list as argument `xt` with a character vector `xt$bs` specifying the smoothing basis type. Only `"ps"`, `"cp"`, `"cc"` and `"cr"` may be used for the smoothing basis. The penalty basis is always a B-spline, or a cyclic B-spline for cyclic bases.

The total number of smoothing parameters to be estimated for the term will be the dimension of the penalty basis. Bear in mind that adaptive smoothing places quite severe demands on the data. For example, setting `m=10` for a univariate smooth of 200 data is rather like estimating 10 smoothing parameters, each from a data series of length 20. The problem is particularly serious for smooths of 2 variables, where the number of smoothing parameters required to get reasonable flexibility in the penalty can grow rather fast, but it often requires a very large smoothing basis dimension to make good use of this flexibility. In short, adaptive smooths should be used sparingly and with care.

In practice it is often as effective to simply transform the smoothing covariate as it is to use an adaptive smooth.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ad.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
```

Arguments

`object`	a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term `s(...,bs="ad",...)`
`data`	a list containing just the data (including any `by` variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to `object$term` (and `object$by`). The `by` variable is the last element.
`knots`	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as `data`. Can be `NULL`

Details

The constructor is not normally called directly, but is rather used internally by gam. To use for basis setup it is recommended to use smooth.construct2.

This class can not be used as a marginal basis in a tensor product smooth, nor by gamm.

Value

An object of class "pspline.smooth" in the 1D case or "tensor.smooth" in the 2D case.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Examples

```
## Comparison using an example taken from AdaptFit
## library(AdaptFit)
require(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
x <- 1:1000/1000
mu <- exp(-400*(x-.6)^2)+5*exp(-500*(x-.75)^2)/3+2*exp(-500*(x-.9)^2)
y <- mu+0.5*rnorm(1000)

##fit with default knots
## y.fit <- asp(y~f(x))

par(mfrow=c(2,2))
## plot(y.fit,main=round(cor(fitted(y.fit),mu),digits=4))
## lines(x,mu,col=2)

b <- gam(y~s(x,bs="ad",k=40,m=5)) ## adaptive
plot(b,shade=TRUE,main=round(cor(fitted(b),mu),digits=4))
lines(x,mu-mean(mu),col=2)

b <- gam(y~s(x,k=40))             ## non-adaptive
plot(b,shade=TRUE,main=round(cor(fitted(b),mu),digits=4))
lines(x,mu-mean(mu),col=2)

b <- gam(y~s(x,bs="ad",k=40,m=5,xt=list(bs="cr")))
plot(b,shade=TRUE,main=round(cor(fitted(b),mu),digits=4))
lines(x,mu-mean(mu),col=2)

## A 2D example (marked, Not run purely to reduce
## checking load on CRAN).
## Not run:
par(mfrow=c(2,2),mar=c(1,1,1,1))
x <- seq(-.5, 1.5, length= 60)
z <- x
f3 <- function(x,z,k=15) { r<-sqrt(x^2+z^2);f<-exp(-r^2*k);f}
f <- outer(x, z, f3)
op <- par(bg = "white")

## Plot truth....
persp(x,z,f,theta=30,phi=30,col="lightblue",ticktype="detailed")

n <- 2000
```

```
x <- runif(n)*2-.5
z <- runif(n)*2-.5
f <- f3(x,z)
y <- f + rnorm(n)*.1

## Try tprs for comparison...
b0 <- gam(y~s(x,z,k=150))
vis.gam(b0,theta=30,phi=30,ticktype="detailed")

## Tensor product with non-adaptive version of adaptive penalty
b1 <- gam(y~s(x,z,bs="ad",k=15,m=1),gamma=1.4)
vis.gam(b1,theta=30,phi=30,ticktype="detailed")

## Now adaptive...
b <- gam(y~s(x,z,bs="ad",k=15,m=3),gamma=1.4)
vis.gam(b,theta=30,phi=30,ticktype="detailed")
cor(fitted(b0),f);cor(fitted(b),f)

## End(Not run)
```

`smooth.construct.cr.smooth.spec`
Penalized Cubic regression splines in GAMs

Description

`gam` can use univariate penalized cubic regression spline smooths, specified via terms like `s(x,bs="cr")`. `s(x,bs="cs")` specifies a penalized cubic regression spline which has had its penalty modified to shrink towards zero at high enough smoothing parameters (as the smoothing parameter goes to infinity a normal cubic spline tends to a straight line.) `s(x,bs="cc")` specifies a cyclic penalized cubic regression spline smooth.

'Cardinal' spline bases are used: Wood (2006) sections 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 gives full details. These bases have very low setup costs. For a given basis dimension, k, they typically perform a little less well then thin plate regression splines, but a little better than p-splines. See `te` to use these bases in tensor product smooths of several variables.

Default k is 10.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class cr.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class cs.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class cc.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
```

Arguments

`object`	a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term `s(...,bs="cr",...)`, `s(...,bs="cs",...)` or `s(...,bs="cc",...)`

data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.
knots	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as data. Can be NULL. See details.

Details

The constructor is not normally called directly, but is rather used internally by gam. To use for basis setup it is recommended to use smooth.construct2.

If they are not supplied then the knots of the spline are placed evenly throughout the covariate values to which the term refers: For example, if fitting 101 data with an 11 knot spline of x then there would be a knot at every 10th (ordered) x value. The parameterization used represents the spline in terms of its values at the knots. The values at neighbouring knots are connected by sections of cubic polynomial constrained to be continuous up to and including second derivative at the knots. The resulting curve is a natural cubic spline through the values at the knots (given two extra conditions specifying that the second derivative of the curve should be zero at the two end knots).

The shrinkage version of the smooth, eigen-decomposes the wiggliness penalty matrix, and sets its 2 zero eigenvalues to small multiples of the smallest strictly positive eigenvalue. The penalty is then set to the matrix with eigenvectors corresponding to those of the original penalty, but eigenvalues set to the peturbed versions. This penalty matrix has full rank and shrinks the curve to zero at high enough smoothing parameters.

Note that the cyclic smoother will wrap at the smallest and largest covariate values, unless knots are supplied. If only two knots are supplied then they are taken as the end points of the smoother (provided all the data lie between them), and the remaining knots are generated automatically.

The cyclic smooth is not subject to the condition that second derivatives go to zero at the first and last knots.

Value

An object of class "cr.smooth" "cs.smooth" or "cyclic.smooth". In addition to the usual elements of a smooth class documented under smooth.construct, this object will contain:

xp	giving the knot locations used to generate the basis.
BD	class "cyclic.smooth" objects include matrix BD which transforms function values at the knots to second derivatives at the knots.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

Examples

```
## cyclic spline example...
  require(mgcv)
  set.seed(6)
  x <- sort(runif(200)*10)
```

```
  z <- runif(200)
  f <- sin(x*2*pi/10)+.5
  y <- rpois(exp(f),exp(f))

## finished simulating data, now fit model...
  b <- gam(y ~ s(x,bs="cc",k=12) + s(z),family=poisson,
                      knots=list(x=seq(0,10,length=12)))
## or more simply
   b <- gam(y ~ s(x,bs="cc",k=12) + s(z),family=poisson,
                      knots=list(x=c(0,10)))

## plot results...
  par(mfrow=c(2,2))
  plot(x,y);plot(b,select=1,shade=TRUE);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2)
  plot(b,select=2,shade=TRUE);plot(fitted(b),residuals(b))
```

`smooth.construct.ds.smooth.spec`

Low rank Duchon 1977 splines

Description

Thin plate spline smoothers are a special case of the isotropic splines discussed in Duchon (1977). A subset of this more general class can be invoked by terms like `s(x,z,bs="ds",m=c(1,.5)` in a `gam` model formula. In the notation of Duchon (1977) m is given by `m[1]` (default value 2), while s is given by `m[2]` (default value 0).

Duchon's (1977) construction generalizes the usual thin plate spline penalty as follows. The usual TPS penalty is given by the integral of the squared Euclidian norm of a vector of mixed partial mth order derivatives of the function w.r.t. its arguments. Duchon re-expresses this penalty in the Fourier domain, and then weights the squared norm in the integral by the Euclidean norm of the fourier frequencies, raised to the power 2s. s is a user selected constant taking integer values divided by 2. If d is the number of arguments of the smooth, then it is required that -d/2 < s < d/2. To obtain continuous functions we further require that m + s > d/2. If s=0 then the usual thin plate spline is recovered.

The construction is amenable to exactly the low rank approximation method given in Wood (2003) to thin plate splines, with similar optimality properties, so this approach to low rank smoothing is used here. For large datasets the same subsampling approach as is used in the `tprs` case is employed here to reduce computational costs.

These smoothers allow the use of lower orders of derivative in the penalty than conventional thin plate splines, while still yielding continuous functions. For example, we can set m = 1 and s = d/2 - .5 in order to use first derivative penalization for any d (which has the advantage that the dimension of the null space of unpenalized functions is only d+1).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ds.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class duchon.spline
Predict.matrix(object, data)
```

Arguments

object	a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term s(...,bs="ds",...).
data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.
knots	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as data. Can be NULL

Details

The default basis dimension for this class is k=M+k.def where M is the null space dimension (dimension of unpenalized function space) and k.def is 10 for dimension 1, 30 for dimension 2 and 100 for higher dimensions. This is essentially arbitrary, and should be checked, but as with all penalized regression smoothers, results are statistically insensitive to the exact choise, provided it is not so small that it forces oversmoothing (the smoother's degrees of freedom are controlled primarily by its smoothing parameter).

The constructor is not normally called directly, but is rather used internally by gam. To use for basis setup it is recommended to use smooth.construct2.

For these classes the specification object will contain information on how to handle large datasets in their xt field. The default is to randomly subsample 2000 'knots' from which to produce a reduced rank eigen approximation to the full basis, if the number of unique predictor variable combinations in excess of 2000. The default can be modified via the xt argument to s. This is supplied as a list with elements max.knots and seed containing a number to use in place of 2000, and the random number seed to use (either can be missing). Note that the random sampling will not effect the state of R's RNG.

For these bases knots has two uses. Firstly, as mentioned already, for large datasets the calculation of the tp basis can be time-consuming. The user can retain most of the advantages of the approach by supplying a reduced set of covariate values from which to obtain the basis - typically the number of covariate values used will be substantially smaller than the number of data, and substantially larger than the basis dimension, k. This approach is the one taken automatically if the number of unique covariate values (combinations) exceeds max.knots. The second possibility is to avoid the eigen-decomposition used to find the spline basis altogether and simply use the basis implied by the chosen knots: this will happen if the number of knots supplied matches the basis dimension, k. For a given basis dimension the second option is faster, but gives poorer results (and the user must be quite careful in choosing knot locations).

Value

An object of class "duchon.spline". In addition to the usual elements of a smooth class documented under smooth.construct, this object will contain:

shift	A record of the shift applied to each covariate in order to center it around zero and avoid any co-linearity problems that might otehrwise occur in the penalty null space basis of the term.
Xu	A matrix of the unique covariate combinations for this smooth (the basis is constructed by first stripping out duplicate locations).
UZ	The matrix mapping the smoother parameters back to the parameters of a full Duchon spline.

`null.space.dimension`
: The dimension of the space of functions that have zero wiggliness according to the wiggliness penalty for this term.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Duchon, J. (1977) Splines minimizing rotation-invariant semi-norms in Solobev spaces. in W. Shemp and K. Zeller (eds) Construction theory of functions of several variables, 85-100, Springer, Berlin.

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

See Also

Spherical.Spline

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
eg <- gamSim(2,n=200,scale=.05)
attach(eg)
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2),mar=c(4,4,1,1))
b0 <- gam(y~s(x,z,bs="ds",m=c(2,0),k=50),data=data)  ## tps
b <- gam(y~s(x,z,bs="ds",m=c(1,.5),k=50),data=data)  ## first deriv penalty
b1 <- gam(y~s(x,z,bs="ds",m=c(2,.5),k=50),data=data) ## modified 2nd deriv

persp(truth$x,truth$z,truth$f,theta=30) ## truth
vis.gam(b0,theta=30)
vis.gam(b,theta=30)
vis.gam(b1,theta=30)

detach(eg)
```

---

smooth.construct.fs.smooth.spec

Factor smooth interactions in GAMs

Description

Simple factor smooth interactions, which are efficient when used with gamm. This smooth class allows a separate smooth for each level of a factor, with the same smoothing parameter for all smooths. It is an alternative to using factor by variables.

See the discussion of by variables in gam.models for more general alternatives for factor smooth interactions (including interactions of tensor product smooths with factors).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class fs.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class fs.interaction
Predict.matrix(object, data)
```

Arguments

object	For the smooth.construct method a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term s(x,...,bs="fs",). For the predict.Matrix method an object of class "fs.interaction" produced by the smooth.construct method.
data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term.
knots	a list containing any knots supplied for smooth basis setup.

Details

This class produces a smooth for each level of a single factor variable. Within a gam formula this is done with something like s(x,fac,bs="fs"), which is almost equivalent to s(x,by=fac,id=1) (with the gam argument select=TRUE). The terms are fully penalized, with separate penalties on each null space component: for this reason they are not centred (no sum-to-zero constraint).

The class is particularly useful for use with gamm, where estimation efficiently exploits the nesting of the smooth within the factor. Note however that: i) gamm only allows one conditioning factor for smooths, so s(x)+s(z,fac,bs="fs")+s(v,fac,bs="fs") is OK, but s(x)+s(z,fac1,bs="fs")+s(v,fac2,bs="fs") is not; ii) all aditional random effects and correlation structures will be treated as nested within the factor of the smooth factor interaction.

Note that gamm4 from the gamm4 package suffers from none of the restrictions that apply to gamm, and "fs" terms can be used without side-effects.

Any singly penalized basis can be used to smooth at each factor level. The default is "tp", but alternatives can be supplied in the xt argument of s (e.g. s(x,fac,bs="fs",xt="cr") or s(x,fac,bs="fs",xt=list(bs="cr")). The k argument to s(...,bs="fs") refers to the basis dimension to use for each level of the factor variable.

Note one computational bottleneck: currently gamm (or gamm4) will produce the full posterior covariance matrix for the smooths, including the smooths at each level of the factor. This matrix can get large and computationally costly if there are more than a few hundred levels of the factor. Even at one or two hundred levels, care should be taken to keep down k.

The plot method for this class has two schemes. scheme==0 is in colour, while scheme==1 is black and white.

Value

An object of class "fs.interaction" or a matrix mapping the coefficients of the factor smooth interaction to the smooths themselves.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

gam.models, gamm

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
## simulate data...
f0 <- function(x) 2 * sin(pi * x)
f1 <- function(x,a=2,b=-1) exp(a * x)+b
f2 <- function(x) 0.2 * x^11 * (10 * (1 - x))^6 + 10 *
           (10 * x)^3 * (1 - x)^10
n <- 500;nf <- 25
fac <- sample(1:nf,n,replace=TRUE)
x0 <- runif(n);x1 <- runif(n);x2 <- runif(n)
a <- rnorm(nf)*.2 + 2;b <- rnorm(nf)*.5
f <- f0(x0) + f1(x1,a[fac],b[fac]) + f2(x2)
fac <- factor(fac)
y <- f + rnorm(n)*2
## so response depends on global smooths of x0 and
## x2, and a smooth of x1 for each level of fac.

## fit model (note p-values not available when fit
## using gamm)...
bm <- gamm(y~s(x0)+ s(x1,fac,bs="fs",k=5)+s(x2,k=20))
plot(bm$gam,pages=1)
summary(bm$gam)

## Could also use...
## b <- gam(y~s(x0)+ s(x1,fac,bs="fs",k=5)+s(x2,k=20),method="ML")
## ... but its slower (increasingly so with increasing nf)
## b <- gam(y~s(x0)+ t2(x1,fac,bs=c("tp","re"),k=5,full=TRUE)+
##        s(x2,k=20),method="ML"))
## ... is exactly equivalent.
```

`smooth.construct.mrf.smooth.spec`
Markov Random Field Smooths

Description

For data observed over discrete spatial units, a simple Markov random field smoother is sometimes appropriate. These functions provide such a smoother class for `mgcv`. See details for how to deal with regions with missing data.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class mrf.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class mrf.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
```

Arguments

`object`	For the `smooth.construct` method a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term `s(x,...,bs="mrf",xt=list(polys=foo))`. `x` is a factor variable giving labels for geographic districts, and the `xt` argument is obligatory:

see details. For the Predict.Matrix method an object of class "mrf.smooth" produced by the smooth.construct method.

data a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.

knots If there are more geographic areas than data were observed for, then this argument is used to provide the labels for all the areas (observed and unobserved).

Details

A Markov random field smooth over a set of discrete areas is defined using a set of area labels, and a neighbourhood structure for the areas. The covariate of the smooth is the vector of area labels corresponding to each obervation. This covariate should be a factor, or capable of being coerced to a factor.

The neighbourhood structure is supplied in the xt argument to s. This must contain at least one of the elements polys, nb or penalty.

polys contains the polygons defining the geographic areas. It is a list with as many elements as there are geographic areas. names(polys) must correspond to the levels of the argument of the smooth, in any order (i.e. it gives the area labels). polys[[i]] is a 2 column matrix the rows of which specify the vertices of the polygon(s) defining the boundary of the ith area. A boundary may be made up of several closed loops: these must be separated by NA rows. A polygon within another is treated as a hole. The first polygon in any polys[[i]] should not be a hole. An example of the structure is provided by columb.polys (which contains an artificial hole in its second element, for illustration). Any list elements with duplicate names are combined into a single NA separated matrix.

Plotting of the smooth is not possible without a polys object.

If polys is the only element of xt provided, then the neighbourhood structure is computed from it automatically. To count as neigbours, polygons must exactly share one of more vertices.

nb is a named list defining the neighbourhood structure. names(nb) must correspond to the levels of the covariate of the smooth (i.e. the area labels), but can be in any order. nb[[i]] is a vector indexing the neighbours of the ith area. All indices are relative to nb itself, but can be translated using names(nb).

If no penalty is provided then it is computed automatically from this list. The ith row of the penalty matrix will be zero everwhere, except in the ith column, which will contain the number of neighbours of the ith geographic area, and the columns corresponding to those geographic neighbours, which will each contain -1.

penalty if this is supplied, then it is used as the penalty matrix. It should be positive semi-definite. Its row and column names should correspond to the levels of the covariate.

If no basis dimension is supplied then the constructor produces a full rank MRF, with a coefficient for each geographic area. Otherwise a low rank approximation is obtained based on truncation of the parameterization given in Wood (2006) Section 4.10.4.

Note that smooths of this class have a built in plot method, and that the utility function in.out can be useful for working with discrete area data. The plot method has two schemes, scheme==0 is colour, scheme==1 is grey scale.

The situation in which there are areas with no data requires special handling. You should set drop.unused.levels=FALSE in the model fitting function, gam, bam or gamm, having first ensured that any fixed effect factors do not contain unobserved levels. Also make sure that the basis dimension is set to ensure that the total number of coefficients is less than the number of observations.

Value

An object of class "mrf.smooth" or a matrix mapping the coefficients of the MRF smooth to the predictions for the areas listed in data.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org> and Thomas Kneib (Fabian Scheipl prototyped the low rank MRF idea)

References

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized additive models: an introduction with R. CRC.

See Also

in.out, polys.plot

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## Load Columbus Ohio crime data (see ?columbus for details and credits)
data(columb)       ## data frame
data(columb.polys) ## district shapes list
xt <- list(polys=columb.polys) ## neighbourhood structure info for MRF
par(mfrow=c(2,2))
## First a full rank MRF...
b <- gam(crime ~ s(district,bs="mrf",xt=xt),data=columb,method="REML")
plot(b,scheme=1)
## Compare to reduced rank version...
b <- gam(crime ~ s(district,bs="mrf",k=20,xt=xt),data=columb,method="REML")
plot(b,scheme=1)
## An important covariate added...
b <- gam(crime ~ s(district,bs="mrf",k=20,xt=xt)+s(income),
         data=columb,method="REML")
plot(b,scheme=c(0,1))

## plot fitted values by district
par(mfrow=c(1,1))
fv <- fitted(b)
names(fv) <- as.character(columb$district)
polys.plot(columb.polys,fv)
```

---

smooth.construct.ps.smooth.spec

P-splines in GAMs

Description

gam can use univariate P-splines as proposed by Eilers and Marx (1996), specified via terms like s(x,bs="ps"). These terms use B-spline bases penalized by discrete penalties applied directly to the basis coefficients. Cyclic P-splines are specified by model terms like s(x,bs="cp",...). These bases can be used in tensor product smooths (see te).

The advantage of P-splines is the flexible way that penalty and basis order can be mixed. This often provides a useful way of 'taming' an otherwise poorly behave smooth. However, in regular use, splines with derivative based penalties (e.g. "tp" or "cr" bases) tend to result in slightly better MSE performance, presumably because the good approximation theoretic properties of splines are rather closely connected to the use of derivative penalties.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ps.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class cp.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
```

Arguments

object	a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term s(x,bs="ps",...) or s(x,bs="cp",...)
data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.
knots	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as data. Can be NULL. See details for further information.

Details

A smooth term of the form s(x,bs="ps",m=c(2,3)) specifies a 2nd order P-spline basis (cubic spline), with a third order difference penalty (0th order is a ridge penalty) on the coefficients. If m is a single number then it is taken as the basis order and penalty order. The default is the 'cubic spline like' m=c(2,2).

The default basis dimension, k, is the larger of 10 and m[1]+1 for a "ps" terms and the larger of 10 and m[1] for a "cp" term. m[1]+1 and m[1] are the lower limits on basis dimension for the two types.

If knots are supplied, then the number of knots should be one more than the basis dimension (i.e. k+1) for a "cp"smooth. For the "ps" basis the number of supplied knots should be k + m[1] + 2, and the range of the middle k-m[1] knots should include all the covariate values. See example.

Alternatively, for both types of smooth, 2 knots can be supplied, denoting the lower and upper limits between which the spline can be evaluated (Don't make this range too wide, however, or you can end up with no information about some basis coefficients, because the corresponding basis functions have a span that includes no data!). Note that P-splines don't make much sense with uneven knot spacing.

Linear extrapolation is used for prediction that requires extrapolation (i.e. prediction outside the range of the interior k-m[1] knots). Such extrapolation is not allowed in basis construction, but is when predicting.

Value

An object of class "ps.smooth" or "cp.smooth". See smooth.construct, for the elements that this object will contain.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Eilers, P.H.C. and B.D. Marx (1996) Flexible Smoothing with B-splines and Penalties. Statistical Science, 11(2):89-121

See Also

cSplineDes

Examples

```
## see ?gam
## cyclic example ...
  require(mgcv)
  set.seed(6)
  x <- sort(runif(200)*10)
  z <- runif(200)
  f <- sin(x*2*pi/10)+.5
  y <- rpois(exp(f),exp(f))

## finished simulating data, now fit model...
  b <- gam(y ~ s(x,bs="cp") + s(z,bs="ps"),family=poisson)

## example with supplied knot ranges for x and z (can do just one)
  b <- gam(y ~ s(x,bs="cp") + s(z,bs="ps"),family=poisson,
           knots=list(x=c(0,10),z=c(0,1)))

## example with supplied knots...
  bk <- gam(y ~ s(x,bs="cp",k=12) + s(z,bs="ps",k=13),family=poisson,
                      knots=list(x=seq(0,10,length=13),z=(-3):13/10))

## plot results...
  par(mfrow=c(2,2))
  plot(b,select=1,shade=TRUE);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2)
  plot(b,select=2,shade=TRUE);lines(z,0*z,col=2)
  plot(bk,select=1,shade=TRUE);lines(x,f-mean(f),col=2)
  plot(bk,select=2,shade=TRUE);lines(z,0*z,col=2)
```

---

smooth.construct.re.smooth.spec

Simple random effects in GAMs

Description

gam can deal with simple independent random effects, by exploiting the link between smooths and random effects to treat random effects as smooths. `s(x,bs="re")` implements this. Such terms can can have any number of predictors, which can be any mixture of numeric or factor variables. The terms produce a parametric interaction of the predictors, and penalize the corresponding coefficients with a multiple of the identity matrix, corresponding to an assumption of i.i.d. normality. See details.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class re.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class random.effect
Predict.matrix(object, data)
```

Arguments

object	For the smooth.construct method a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term s(x,...,bs="re",). For the predict.Matrix method an object of class "random.effect" produced by the smooth.construct method.
data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.
knots	generically a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — unused at present.

Details

Exactly how the random effects are implemented is best seen by example. Consider the model term s(x,z,bs="re"). This will result in the model matrix component corresponding to ~x:z-1 being added to the model matrix for the whole model. The coefficients associated with the model matrix component are assumed i.i.d. normal, with unknown variance (to be estimated). This assumption is equivalent to an identity penalty matrix (i.e. a ridge penalty) on the coefficients. Because such a penalty is full rank, random effects terms do not require centering constraints.

If the nature of the random effect specification is not clear, consider a couple more examples: s(x,bs="re") results in model.matrix(~x-1) being appended to the overall model matrix, while s(x,v,w,bs="re") would result in model.matrix(~x:v:w-1) being appended to the model matrix. In both cases the corresponding model coefficients are assumed i.i.d. normal, and are hence subject to ridge penalties.

Note that smooth ids are not supported for random effect terms. Unlike most smooth terms, side conditions are never applied to random effect terms in the event of nesting (since they are identifiable without side conditions).

Random effects implemented in this way do not exploit the sparse structure of many random effects, and may therefore be relatively inefficient for models with large numbers of random effects, when gamm4 or gamm may be better alternatives. Note also that gam will not support models with more coefficients than data.

The situation in which factor variable random effects intentionally have unobserved levels requires special handling. You should set drop.unused.levels=FALSE in the model fitting function, gam, bam or gamm, having first ensured that any fixed effect factors do not contain unobserved levels.

Value

An object of class "random.effect" or a matrix mapping the coefficients of the random effect to the random effects themselves.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2008) Fast stable direct fitting and smoothness selection for generalized additive models. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society (B) 70(3):495-518

See Also

gam.vcomp, gamm

Examples

```
## see ?gam.vcomp
```

---

smooth.construct.so.smooth.spec

Soap film smoother constructer

Description

Sets up basis functions and wiggliness penalties for soap film smoothers (Wood, Bravington and Hedley, 2008). Soap film smoothers are based on the idea of constructing a 2-D smooth as a film of soap connecting a smoothly varying closed boundary. Unless smoothing very heavily, the film is distorted towards the data. The smooths are designed not to smooth across boundary features (peninsulas, for example).

The so version sets up the full smooth. The sf version sets up just the boundary interpolating soap film, while the sw version sets up the wiggly component of a soap film (zero on the boundary). The latter two are useful for forming tensor products with soap films, and can be used with gamm and gamm4. To use these to simply set up a basis, then call via the wrapper smooth.construct2 or smoothCon.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class so.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object,data,knots)
## S3 method for class sf.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object,data,knots)
## S3 method for class sw.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object,data,knots)
```

Arguments

object	A smooth specification object as produced by a s(...,bs="so",xt=list(bnd=bnd,...)) term in a gam formula. Note that the xt argument to s *must* be supplied, and should be a list, containing at least a boundary specification list (see details). xt may also contain various options controlling the boundary smooth (see details), and PDE solution grid. The dimension of the bases for boundary loops is specified via the k argument of s, either as a single number to be used for each boundary loop, or as a vector of different basis dimensions for the various boundary loops.
data	A list or data frame containing the arguments of the smooth.

knots — list or data frame with two named columns specifying the knot locations within the boundary. The column names should match the names of the arguments of the smooth. The number of knots defines the *interior* basis dimension (i.e. it is *not* supplied via argument k of s).

Details

For soap film smooths the following *must* be supplied:

- k the basis dimension for each boundary loop smooth.
- xt$bnd the boundary specification for the smooth.
- knots the locations of the interior knots for the smooth.

When used in a GAM then k and xt are supplied via s while knots are supplied in the knots argument of gam.

The bnd element of the xt list is a list of lists (or data frames), specifying the loops that define the boundary. Each boundary loop list must contain 2 columns giving the co-ordinates of points defining a boundary loop (when joined sequentially by line segments). Loops should not intersect (not checked). A point is deemed to be in the region of interest if it is interior to an odd number of boundary loops. Each boundary loop list may also contain a column f giving known boundary conditions on a loop.

The bndSpec element of xt, if non-NULL, should contain

- bs the type of cyclic smoothing basis to use: one of "cc" and "cp". If not "cc" then a cyclic p-spline is used, and argument m must be supplied.
- knot.space set to "even" to get even knot spacing with the "cc" basis.
- m 1 or 2 element array specifying order of "cp" basis and penalty.

Currently the code will not deal with more than one level of nesting of loops, or with separate loops without an outer enclosing loop: if there are known boundary conditions (identifiability constraints get awkward).

Note that the function locator provides a simple means for defining boundaries graphically, using something like bnd <-as.data.frame(locator(type="l")), after producing a plot of the domain of interest (right click to stop). If the real boundary is very complicated, it is probably better to use a simpler smooth boundary enclosing the true boundary, which represents the major boundary features that you don't want to smooth across, but doesn't follow every tiny detail.

Model set up, and prediction, involves evaluating basis functions which are defined as the solution to PDEs. The PDEs are solved numerically on a grid using sparse matrix methods, with bilinear interpolation used to obtain values at any location within the smoothing domain. The dimension of the PDE solution grid can be controlled via element nmax (default 200) of the list supplied as argument xt of s in a gam formula: it gives the number of cells to use on the longest grid side.

A little theory: the soap film smooth $f(x, y)$ is defined as the solution of

$$f_{xx} + f_{yy} = g$$

subject to the condition that $f = s$, on the boundary curve, where s is a smooth function (usually a cyclic penalized regression spline). The function g is defined as the solution of

$$g_{xx} + g_{yy} = 0$$

where $g = 0$ on the boundary curve and $g(x_k, y_k) = c_k$ at the 'knots' of the surface; the c_k are model coefficients.

In the simplest case, estimation of the coefficients of f (boundary coefficients plus c_k's) is by minimization of

$$\|z - f\|^2 + \lambda_s J_s(s) + \lambda_f J_f(f)$$

where J_s is usually some cubic spline type wiggliness penalty on the boundary smooth and J_f is the integral of $(f_x x + f_y y)^2$ over the interior of the boundary. Both penalties can be expressed as quadratic forms in the model coefficients. The λ's are smoothing parameters, selectable by GCV, REML, AIC, etc. z represents noisy observations of f.

Value

A list with all the elements of `object` plus

`sd`	A list defining the PDE solution grid and domain boundary, and including the sparse LU factorization of the PDE coefficient matrix.
`X`	The model matrix: this will have an `"offset"` attribute, if there are any known boundary conditions.
`S`	List of smoothing penalty matrices (in smallest non-zero submatrix form).
`irng`	A vector of scaling factors that have been applied to the model matrix, to ensure nice conditioning.

In addition there are all the elements usually added by `smooth.construct` methods.

WARNINGS

Soap film smooths are quite specialized, and require more setup than most smoothers (e.g. you have to supply the boundary and the interior knots, plus the boundary smooth basis dimension(s)). It is worth looking at the reference.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N., M.V. Bravington and S.L. Hedley (2008) "Soap film smoothing", J.R.Statist.Soc.B 70(5), 931-955.

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

`Predict.matrix.soap.film`

Examples

```
require(mgcv)

##########################
## simple test function...
##########################

fsb <- list(fs.boundary())
nmax <- 100
## create some internal knots...
```

```
knots <- data.frame(v=rep(seq(-.5,3,by=.5),4),
                    w=rep(c(-.6,-.3,.3,.6),rep(8,4)))
## Simulate some fitting data, inside boundary...
set.seed(0)
n<-600
v <- runif(n)*5-1;w<-runif(n)*2-1
y <- fs.test(v,w,b=1)
names(fsb[[1]]) <- c("v","w")
ind <- inSide(fsb,x=v,y=w) ## remove outsiders
y <- y + rnorm(n)*.3 ## add noise
y <- y[ind];v <- v[ind]; w <- w[ind]
n <- length(y)

par(mfrow=c(3,2))
## plot boundary with knot and data locations
plot(fsb[[1]]$v,fsb[[1]]$w,type="l");points(knots,pch=20,col=2)
points(v,w,pch=".");

## Now fit the soap film smoother. k is dimension of boundary smooth.
## boundary supplied in xt, and knots in knots...

nmax <- 100 ## reduced from default for speed.
b <- gam(y~s(v,w,k=30,bs="so",xt=list(bnd=fsb,nmax=nmax)),knots=knots)

plot(b) ## default plot
plot(b,scheme=1)
plot(b,scheme=2)
plot(b,scheme=3)

vis.gam(b,plot.type="contour")

################################
# Fit same model in two parts...
################################

par(mfrow=c(2,2))
vis.gam(b,plot.type="contour")

b1 <- gam(y~s(v,w,k=30,bs="sf",xt=list(bnd=fsb,nmax=nmax))+
            s(v,w,k=30,bs="sw",xt=list(bnd=fsb,nmax=nmax)) ,knots=knots)
vis.gam(b,plot.type="contour")
plot(b1)

################################################
## Now an example with known boundary condition...
################################################

## Evaluate known boundary condition at boundary nodes...
fsb[[1]]$f <- fs.test(fsb[[1]]$v,fsb[[1]]$w,b=1,exclude=FALSE)

## Now fit the smooth...
bk <- gam(y~s(v,w,bs="so",xt=list(bnd=fsb,nmax=nmax)),knots=knots)
plot(bk) ## default plot

########################################
## tensor product example (marked
## Not run to reduce CRAN checking load)
```

```
########################################
## Not run:
n <- 10000
v <- runif(n)*5-1;w<-runif(n)*2-1
t <- runif(n)
y <- fs.test(v,w,b=1)
y <- y + 4.2
y <- y^(.5+t)
fsb <- list(fs.boundary())
names(fsb[[1]]) <- c("v","w")
ind <- inSide(fsb,x=v,y=w) ## remove outsiders
y <- y[ind];v <- v[ind]; w <- w[ind]; t <- t[ind]
n <- length(y)
y <- y + rnorm(n)*.05 ## add noise
knots <- data.frame(v=rep(seq(-.5,3,by=.5),4),
                    w=rep(c(-.6,-.3,.3,.6),rep(8,4)))

## notice NULL element in xt list - to indicate no xt object for "cr" basis...
bk <- gam(y~
 te(v,w,t,bs=c("sf","cr"),k=c(25,4),d=c(2,1),xt=list(list(bnd=fsb,nmax=nmax),NULL))+
 te(v,w,t,bs=c("sw","cr"),k=c(25,4),d=c(2,1),xt=list(list(bnd=fsb,nmax=nmax),NULL))
          ,knots=knots)

par(mfrow=c(3,2))
m<-100;n<-50
xm <- seq(-1,3.5,length=m);yn<-seq(-1,1,length=n)
xx <- rep(xm,n);yy<-rep(yn,rep(m,n))
tru <- matrix(fs.test(xx,yy),m,n)+4.2 ## truth

image(xm,yn,tru^.5,col=heat.colors(100),xlab="v",ylab="w",
      main="truth")
lines(fsb[[1]]$v,fsb[[1]]$w,lwd=3)
contour(xm,yn,tru^.5,add=TRUE)

vis.gam(bk,view=c("v","w"),cond=list(t=0),plot.type="contour")

image(xm,yn,tru,col=heat.colors(100),xlab="v",ylab="w",
      main="truth")
lines(fsb[[1]]$v,fsb[[1]]$w,lwd=3)
contour(xm,yn,tru,add=TRUE)

vis.gam(bk,view=c("v","w"),cond=list(t=.5),plot.type="contour")

image(xm,yn,tru^1.5,col=heat.colors(100),xlab="v",ylab="w",
      main="truth")
lines(fsb[[1]]$v,fsb[[1]]$w,lwd=3)
contour(xm,yn,tru^1.5,add=TRUE)

vis.gam(bk,view=c("v","w"),cond=list(t=1),plot.type="contour")

## End(Not run)

############################
# nested boundary example...
############################

bnd <- list(list(x=0,y=0),list(x=0,y=0))
```

```
seq(0,2*pi,length=100) -> theta
bnd[[1]]$x <- sin(theta);bnd[[1]]$y <- cos(theta)
bnd[[2]]$x <- .3 + .3*sin(theta);
bnd[[2]]$y <- .3 + .3*cos(theta)
plot(bnd[[1]]$x,bnd[[1]]$y,type="l")
lines(bnd[[2]]$x,bnd[[2]]$y)

## setup knots
k <- 8
xm <- seq(-1,1,length=k);ym <- seq(-1,1,length=k)
x=rep(xm,k);y=rep(ym,rep(k,k))
ind <- inSide(bnd,x,y)
knots <- data.frame(x=x[ind],y=y[ind])
points(knots$x,knots$y)

## a test function

f1 <- function(x,y) {
  exp(-(x-.3)^2-(y-.3)^2)
}

## plot the test function within the domain
par(mfrow=c(2,3))
m<-100;n<-100
xm <- seq(-1,1,length=m);yn<-seq(-1,1,length=n)
x <- rep(xm,n);y<-rep(yn,rep(m,n))
ff <- f1(x,y)
ind <- inSide(bnd,x,y)
ff[!ind] <- NA
image(xm,yn,matrix(ff,m,n),xlab="x",ylab="y")
contour(xm,yn,matrix(ff,m,n),add=TRUE)
lines(bnd[[1]]$x,bnd[[1]]$y,lwd=2);lines(bnd[[2]]$x,bnd[[2]]$y,lwd=2)

## Simulate data by noisy sampling from test function...

set.seed(1)
x <- runif(300)*2-1;y <- runif(300)*2-1
ind <- inSide(bnd,x,y)
x <- x[ind];y <- y[ind]
n <- length(x)
z <- f1(x,y) + rnorm(n)*.1

## Fit a soap film smooth to the noisy data
nmax <- 60
b <- gam(z~s(x,y,k=c(30,15),bs="so",xt=list(bnd=bnd,nmax=nmax)),knots=knots,method="REML")
plot(b) ## default plot
vis.gam(b,plot.type="contour") ## prettier version

## trying out separated fits....
ba <- gam(z~s(x,y,k=c(30,15),bs="sf",xt=list(bnd=bnd,nmax=nmax))+
          s(x,y,k=c(30,15),bs="sw",xt=list(bnd=bnd,nmax=nmax)),knots=knots,method="REML")
plot(ba)
vis.gam(ba,plot.type="contour")
```

`smooth.construct.sos.smooth.spec` *Splines on the sphere*

Description

`gam` can use isotropic smooths on the sphere, via terms like `s(la,lo,bs="sos",m=2,k=100)`. There must be exactly 2 arguments to such a smooth. The first is taken to be latitude (in degrees) and the second longitude (in degrees). `m` (default 0) is an integer in the range -1 to 4 determining the order of the penalty used. For `m>0`, `(m+2)/2` is the penalty order, with `m=2` equivalent to the usual second derivative penalty. `m=0` signals to use the 2nd order spline on the sphere, computed by Wendelberger's (1981) method. `m = -1` results in a `Duchon.spline` being used (with m=2 and s=1/2), following an unpublished suggestion of Jean Duchon.

`k` (default 50) is the basis dimension.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class sos.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class sos.smooth
Predict.matrix(object, data)
```

Arguments

`object`	a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term `s(...,bs="sos",...)`.
`data`	a list containing just the data (including any `by` variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to `object$term` (and `object$by`). The `by` variable is the last element.
`knots`	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as `data`. Can be `NULL`

Details

For `m>0`, the smooths implemented here are based on the pseudosplines on the sphere of Wahba (1981) (there is a correction of table 1 in 1982, but the correction has a misprint in the definition of A — the A given in the 1981 paper is correct). For `m=0` (default) then a second order spline on the sphere is used which is the analogue of a second order thin plate spline in 2D: the computation is based on Chapter 4 of Wendelberger, 1981. Optimal low rank approximations are obtained using exactly the approach given in Wood (2003). For `m = -1` a smooth of the general type discussed in Duchon (1977) is used: the sphere is embedded in a 3D Euclidean space, but smoothing employs a penalty based on second derivatives (so that locally as the smoothing parameter tends to zero we recover a "normal" thin plate spline on the tangent space). This is an unpublished suggestion of Jean Duchon.

Note that the null space of the penalty is always the space of constant functions on the sphere, whatever the order of penalty.

This class has a plot method, with 3 schemes. `scheme==0` plots one hemisphere of the sphere, projected onto a circle. The plotting sphere has the north pole at the top, and the 0 meridian running down the middle of the plot, and towards the viewer. The smoothing sphere is rotated within the

plotting sphere, by specifying the location of its pole in the co-ordinates of the viewing sphere. `theta`, `phi` give the longitude and latitude of the smoothing sphere pole within the plotting sphere (in plotting sphere co-ordinates). (You can visualize the smoothing sphere as a globe, free to rotate within the fixed transparent plotting sphere.) The value of the smooth is shown by a heat map overlaid with a contour plot. lat, lon gridlines are also plotted.

`scheme==1` is as `scheme==0`, but in black and white, without the image plot. `scheme>1` calls the default plotting method with `scheme` decremented by 2.

Value

An object of class `"sos.smooth"`. In addition to the usual elements of a smooth class documented under `smooth.construct`, this object will contain:

`Xu`	A matrix of the unique covariate combinations for this smooth (the basis is constructed by first stripping out duplicate locations).
`UZ`	The matrix mapping the parameters of the reduced rank spline back to the parameters of a full spline.

Author(s)

Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>, with help from Grace Wahba (m=0 case) and Jean Duchon (m = -1 case).

References

Wahba, G. (1981) Spline interpolation and smoothing on the sphere. SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput. 2(1):5-16

Wahba, G. (1982) Erratum. SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput. 3(3):385-386.

Wendelberger, J. (1981) PhD Thesis, University of Winsconsin.

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

See Also

`Duchon.spline`

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
n <- 400

f <- function(la,lo) { ## a test function...
  sin(lo)*cos(la-.3)
}

## generate with uniform density on sphere...
lo <- runif(n)*2*pi-pi ## longitude
la <- runif(3*n)*pi-pi/2
ind <- runif(3*n)<=cos(la)
la <- la[ind];
la <- la[1:n]

ff <- f(la,lo)
y <- ff + rnorm(n)*.2 ## test data
```

```
## generate data for plotting truth...
lam <- seq(-pi/2,pi/2,length=30)
lom <- seq(-pi,pi,length=60)
gr <- expand.grid(la=lam,lo=lom)
fz <- f(gr$la,gr$lo)
zm <- matrix(fz,30,60)

require(mgcv)
dat <- data.frame(la = la *180/pi,lo = lo *180/pi,y=y)

## fit spline on sphere model...
bp <- gam(y~s(la,lo,bs="sos",k=60),data=dat)

## pure knot based alternative...
ind <- sample(1:n,100)
bk <- gam(y~s(la,lo,bs="sos",k=60),knots=list(la=dat$la[ind],lo=dat$lo[ind]),data=dat)

b <- bp

cor(fitted(b),ff)

## plot results and truth...

pd <- data.frame(la=gr$la*180/pi,lo=gr$lo*180/pi)
fv <- matrix(predict(b,pd),30,60)

par(mfrow=c(2,2),mar=c(4,4,1,1))
contour(lom,lam,t(zm))
contour(lom,lam,t(fv))
plot(bp,rug=FALSE)
plot(bp,scheme=1,theta=-30,phi=20,pch=19,cex=.5)
```

`smooth.construct.t2.smooth.spec`

Tensor product smoothing constructor

Description

A special `smooth.construct` method function for creating tensor product smooths from any combination of single penalty marginal smooths, using the construction of Wood, Scheipl and Faraway (2013).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class t2.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
```

Arguments

`object`	a smooth specification object of class `t2.smooth.spec`, usually generated by a term like `t2(x,z)` in a `gam` model formula

data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.
knots	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as data. Can be NULL. See details for further information.

Details

Tensor product smooths are smooths of several variables which allow the degree of smoothing to be different with respect to different variables. They are useful as smooth interaction terms, as they are invariant to linear rescaling of the covariates, which means, for example, that they are insensitive to the measurement units of the different covariates. They are also useful whenever isotropic smoothing is inappropriate. See t2, te, smooth.construct and smooth.terms. The construction employed here produces tensor smooths for which the smoothing penalties are non-overlapping portions of the identity matrix. This makes their estimation by mixed modelling software rather easy.

Value

An object of class "t2.smooth".

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N., F. Scheipl and J.J. Faraway (2013) Straightforward intermediate rank tensor product smoothing in mixed models. Statistics and Computing 23: 341-360.

See Also

t2

Examples

```
## see ?t2
```

---

smooth.construct.tensor.smooth.spec

Tensor product smoothing constructor

Description

A special smooth.construct method function for creating tensor product smooths from any combination of single penalty marginal smooths.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class tensor.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
```

Arguments

object	a smooth specification object of class tensor.smooth.spec, usually generated by a term like te(x,z) in a gam model formula
data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.
knots	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as data. Can be NULL. See details for further information.

Details

Tensor product smooths are smooths of several variables which allow the degree of smoothing to be different with respect to different variables. They are useful as smooth interaction terms, as they are invariant to linear rescaling of the covariates, which means, for example, that they are insensitive to the measurement units of the different covariates. They are also useful whenever isotropic smoothing is inappropriate. See te, smooth.construct and smooth.terms.

Value

An object of class "tensor.smooth". See smooth.construct, for the elements that this object will contain.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2006) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for generalized additive mixed models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

See Also

cSplineDes

Examples

```
## see ?gam
```

---

smooth.construct.tp.smooth.spec

Penalized thin plate regression splines in GAMs

Description

gam can use isotropic smooths of any number of variables, specified via terms like s(x,z,bs="tp",m=3) (or just s(x,z) as this is the default basis). These terms are based on thin plate regression splines. m specifies the order of the derivatives in the thin plate spline penalty. If m is a vector of length 2 and the second element is zero, then the penalty null space of the smooth is not included in the smooth: this is useful if you need to test whether a smooth could be replaced by a linear term, for example.

Thin plate regression splines are constructed by starting with the basis and penalty for a full thin plate spline and then truncating this basis in an optimal manner, to obtain a low rank smoother. Details are given in Wood (2003). One key advantage of the approach is that it avoids the knot placement problems of conventional regression spline modelling, but it also has the advantage that smooths of lower rank are nested within smooths of higher rank, so that it is legitimate to use conventional hypothesis testing methods to compare models based on pure regression splines. Note that the basis truncation does not change the meaning of the thin plate spline penalty (it penalizes exactly what it would have penalized for a full thin plate spline).

The t.p.r.s. basis and penalties can become expensive to calculate for large datasets. For this reason the default behaviour is to randomly subsample max.knots unique data locations if there are more than max.knots such, and to use the sub-sample for basis construction. The sampling is always done with the same random seed to ensure repeatability (does not reset R RNG). max.knots is 2000, by default. Both seed and max.knots can be modified using the xt argument to s. Alternatively the user can supply knots from which to construct a basis.

The "ts" smooths are t.p.r.s. with the penalty modified so that the term is shrunk to zero for high enough smoothing parameter, rather than being shrunk towards a function in the penalty null space (see details).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class tp.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
## S3 method for class ts.smooth.spec
smooth.construct(object, data, knots)
```

Arguments

object	a smooth specification object, usually generated by a term s(...,bs="tp",...) or s(...,bs="ts",...)
data	a list containing just the data (including any by variable) required by this term, with names corresponding to object$term (and object$by). The by variable is the last element.
knots	a list containing any knots supplied for basis setup — in same order and with same names as data. Can be NULL

Details

The default basis dimension for this class is k=M+k.def where M is the null space dimension (dimension of unpenalized function space) and k.def is 8 for dimension 1, 27 for dimension 2 and 100 for higher dimensions. This is essentially arbitrary, and should be checked, but as with all penalized regression smoothers, results are statistically insensitive to the exact choise, provided it is not so small that it forces oversmoothing (the smoother's degrees of freedom are controlled primarily by its smoothing parameter).

The default is to set m (the order of derivative in the thin plate spline penalty) to the smallest value satisfying 2m > d+1 where d if the number of covariates of the term: this yields 'visually smooth' functions. In any case 2m>d must be satisfied.

The constructor is not normally called directly, but is rather used internally by gam. To use for basis setup it is recommended to use smooth.construct2.

For these classes the specification object will contain information on how to handle large datasets in their xt field. The default is to randomly subsample 2000 'knots' from which to produce a tprs basis, if the number of unique predictor variable combinations in excess of 2000. The default can be modified via the xt argument to s. This is supplied as a list with elements max.knots and seed containing a number to use in place of 2000, and the random number seed to use (either can be missing).

For these bases knots has two uses. Firstly, as mentioned already, for large datasets the calculation of the tp basis can be time-consuming. The user can retain most of the advantages of the t.p.r.s. approach by supplying a reduced set of covariate values from which to obtain the basis - typically the number of covariate values used will be substantially smaller than the number of data, and substantially larger than the basis dimension, k. This approach is the one taken automatically if the number of unique covariate values (combinations) exceeds max.knots. The second possibility is to avoid the eigen-decomposition used to find the t.p.r.s. basis altogether and simply use the basis implied by the chosen knots: this will happen if the number of knots supplied matches the basis dimension, k. For a given basis dimension the second option is faster, but gives poorer results (and the user must be quite careful in choosing knot locations).

The shrinkage version of the smooth, eigen-decomposes the wiggliness penalty matrix, and sets its zero eigenvalues to small multiples of the smallest strictly positive eigenvalue. The penalty is then set to the matrix with eigenvectors corresponding to those of the original penalty, but eigenvalues set to the peturbed versions. This penalty matrix has full rank and shrinks the curve to zero at high enough smoothing parameters.

Value

An object of class "tprs.smooth" or "ts.smooth". In addition to the usual elements of a smooth class documented under smooth.construct, this object will contain:

- shift — A record of the shift applied to each covariate in order to center it around zero and avoid any co-linearity problems that might otehrwise occur in the penalty null space basis of the term.
- Xu — A matrix of the unique covariate combinations for this smooth (the basis is constructed by first stripping out duplicate locations).
- UZ — The matrix mapping the t.p.r.s. parameters back to the parameters of a full thin plate spline.
- null.space.dimension — The dimension of the space of functions that have zero wiggliness according to the wiggliness penalty for this term.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

Examples

```
require(mgcv); n <- 100; set.seed(2)
x <- runif(n); y <- x + x^2*.2 + rnorm(n) *.1
## is smooth significantly different from straight line?
summary(gam(y~s(x,m=c(2,0))+x,method="REML")) ## not quite
## is smooth significaly different from zero?
summary(gam(y~s(x),method="REML")) ## yes!
## see ?gam
```

`smooth.terms` *Smooth terms in GAM*

Description

Smooth terms are specified in a `gam` formula using `s`, `te`, `ti` and `t2` terms. Various smooth classes are available, for different modelling tasks, and users can add smooth classes (see `user.defined.smooth`). What defines a smooth class is the basis used to represent the smooth function and quadratic penalty (or multiple penalties) used to penalize the basis coefficients in order to control the degree of smoothness. Smooth classes are invoked directly by `s` terms, or as building blocks for tensor product smoothing via `te`, `ti` or `t2` terms (only smooth classes with single penalties can be used in tensor products). The smooths built into the `mgcv` package are all based one way or another on low rank versions of splines. For the full rank versions see Wahba (1990).

Note that smooths can be used rather flexibly in `gam` models. In particular the linear predictor of the GAM can depend on (a discrete approximation to) any linear functional of a smooth term, using by variables and the 'summation convention' explained in `linear.functional.terms`.

The single penalty built in smooth classes are summarized as follows

Thin plate regression splines `bs="tp"`. These are low rank isotropic smoothers of any number of covariates. By isotropic is meant that rotation of the covariate co-ordinate system will not change the result of smoothing. By low rank is meant that they have far fewer coefficients than there are data to smooth. They are reduced rank versions of the thin plate splines and use the thin plate spline penalty. They are the default smooth for `s` terms because there is a defined sense in which they are the optimal smoother of any given basis dimension/rank (Wood, 2003). Thin plate regression splines do not have 'knots' (at least not in any conventional sense): a truncated eigen-decomposition is used to achieve the rank reduction. See `tprs` for further details.

`bs="ts"` is as `"tp"` but with a modification to the smoothing penalty, so that the null space is also penalized slightly and the whole term can therefore be shrunk to zero.

Duchon splines `bs="ds"`. These generalize thin plate splines. In particular, for any given number of covariates they allow lower orders of derivative in the penalty than thin plate splines (and hence a smaller null space). See `Duchon.spline` for further details.

Cubic regression splines `bs="cr"`. These have a cubic spline basis defined by a modest sized set of knots spread evenly through the covariate values. They are penalized by the conventional intergrated square second derivative cubic spline penalty. For details see `cubic.regression.spline` and e.g. Wood (2006a).

`bs="cs"` specifies a shrinkage version of `"cr"`.

`bs="cc"` specifies a cyclic cubic regression splines (see cyclic.cubic.spline). i.e. a penalized cubic regression splines whose ends match, up to second derivative.

Splines on the sphere `bs="sos"`. These are two dimensional splines on a sphere. Arguments are latitude and longitude, and they are the analogue of thin plate splines for the sphere. Useful for data sampled over a large portion of the globe, when isotropy is appropriate. See `Spherical.Spline` for details.

P-splines `bs="ps"`. These are P-splines as proposed by Eilers and Marx (1996). They combine a B-spline basis, with a discrete penalty on the basis coefficients, and any sane combination of penalty and basis order is allowed. Although this penalty has no exact interpretation in terms of function shape, in the way that the derivative penalties do, P-splines perform almost as well as conventional splines in many standard applications, and can perform better in particular cases where it is advantageous to mix different orders of basis and penalty.

`bs="cp"` gives a cyclic version of a P-spline (see cyclic.p.spline).

Random effects `bs="re"`. These are parametric terms penalized by a ridge penalty (i.e. the identity matrix). When such a smooth has multiple arguments then it represents the parametric interaction of these arguments, with the coefficients penalized by a ridge penalty. The ridge penalty is equivalent to an assumption that the coefficients are i.i.d. normal random effects. See `smooth.construct.re.smooth.spec`.

Markov Random Fields `bs="mrf"`. These are popular when space is split up into discrete contiguous geographic units (districts of a town, for example). In this case a simple smoothing penalty is constructed based on the neighbourhood structure of the geographic units. See `mrf` for details and an example.

Soap film smooths `bs="so"` (actually not single penaltied, but `bs="sw"` and `bs="sf"` allows splitting into single penalty components for use in tensor product smoothing). These are finite area smoothers designed to smooth within complicated geographical boundaries, where the boundary matters (e.g. you do not want to smooth across boundary features). See `soap` for details.

Broadly speaking the default penalized thin plate regression splines tend to give the best MSE performance, but they are slower to set up than the other bases. The knot based penalized cubic regression splines (with derivative based penalties) usually come next in MSE performance, with the P-splines doing just a little worse. However the P-splines are useful in non-standard situations.

All the preceding classes (and any user defined smooths with single penalties) may be used as marginal bases for tensor product smooths specified via `te`, `ti` or `t2` terms. Tensor product smooths are smooth functions of several variables where the basis is built up from tensor products of bases for smooths of fewer (usually one) variable(s) (marginal bases). The multiple penalties for these smooths are produced automatically from the penalties of the marginal smooths. Wood (2006b) and Wood, Scheipl and Faraway (2012), give the general recipe for these constructions. The `te` construction results in fewer, more interpretable, penalties, while the `t2` construction is more natural if you are interested in functional ANOVA decompositions. `t2` works with the `gamm4` package.

Tensor product smooths often perform better than isotropic smooths when the covariates of a smooth are not naturally on the same scale, so that their relative scaling is arbitrary. For example, if smoothing with repect to time and distance, an isotropic smoother will give very different results if the units are cm and minutes compared to if the units are metres and seconds: a tensor product smooth will give the same answer in both cases (see `te` for an example of this). Note that `te` terms are knot based, and the thin plate splines seem to offer no advantage over cubic or P-splines as marginal bases.

Some further specialist smoothers that are not suitable for use in tensor products are also available.

Adaptive smoothers `bs="ad"` Univariate and bivariate adaptive smooths are available (see `adaptive.smooth`). These are appropriate when the degree of smoothing should itself vary with the covariates to be smoothed, and the data contain sufficient information to be able to estimate the appropriate variation. Because this flexibility is achieved by splitting the penalty

into several 'basis penalties' these terms are not suitable as components of tensor product smooths, and are not supported by gamm.

Factor smooth interactions bs="fs" Smooth factor interactions are often produced using by variables (see gam.models), but a special smoother class (see factor.smooth.interaction) is available for the case in which a smooth is required at each of a large number of factor levels (for example a smooth for each patient in a study), and each smooth should have the same smoothing parameter. The "fs" smoothers are set up to be efficient when used with gamm, and have penalties on each null sapce component (i.e. they are fully 'random effects').

Author(s)

Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Eilers, P.H.C. and B.D. Marx (1996) Flexible Smoothing with B-splines and Penalties. Statistical Science, 11(2):89-121

Wahba (1990) Spline Models of Observational Data. SIAM

Wood, S.N. (2003) Thin plate regression splines. J.R.Statist.Soc.B 65(1):95-114

Wood, S.N. (2006a) *Generalized Additive Models: an introduction with R*, CRC

Wood, S.N. (2006b) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for generalized additive mixed models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

Wood S.N., F. Scheipl and J.J. Faraway (2012) Straightforward intermediate rank tensor product smoothing in mixed models. Statistical Computing.

See Also

s, te, t2 tprs,Duchon.spline, cubic.regression.spline,p.spline, mrf, codesoap, codeSpherical.Spline, adaptive.smooth, user.defined.smooth, codesmooth.construct.re.smooth.spec, codefactor.smooth.interaction

Examples

```
## see examples for gam and gamm
```

---

smoothCon *Prediction/Construction wrapper functions for GAM smooth terms*

Description

Wrapper functions for construction of and prediction from smooth terms in a GAM. The purpose of the wrappers is to allow user-transparant re-parameterization of smooth terms, in order to allow identifiability constraints to be absorbed into the parameterization of each term, if required. The routine also handles 'by' variables and construction of identifiability constraints automatically, although this behaviour can be over-ridden.

Usage

```
smoothCon(object,data,knots,absorb.cons=FALSE,
          scale.penalty=TRUE,n=nrow(data),dataX=NULL,
          null.space.penalty=FALSE,sparse.cons=0,
          diagonal.penalty=FALSE)
PredictMat(object,data,n=nrow(data))
```

Arguments

object	is a smooth specification object or a smooth object.
data	A data frame, model frame or list containing the values of the (named) covariates at which the smooth term is to be evaluated. If it's a list then n must be supplied.
knots	An optional data frame supplying any knot locations to be supplied for basis construction.
absorb.cons	Set to TRUE in order to have identifiability constraints absorbed into the basis.
scale.penalty	should the penalty coefficient matrix be scaled to have approximately the same 'size' as the inner product of the terms model matrix with itself? This can improve the performance of gamm fitting.
n	number of values for each covariate, or if a covariate is a matrix, the number of rows in that matrix: must be supplied explicitly if data is a list.
dataX	Sometimes the basis should be set up using data in data, but the model matrix should be constructed with another set of data provided in dataX — n is assumed to be the same for both. Facilitates smooth id's.
null.space.penalty	Should an extra penalty be added to the smooth which will penalize the components of the smooth in the penalty null space: provides a way of penalizing terms out of the model altogether.
sparse.cons	If 0 then default sum to zero constraints are used. If -1 then sweep and drop sum to zero constraints are used (default with bam). If 1 then one coefficient is set to zero as constraint for sparse smooths. If 2 then sparse coefficient sum to zero constraints are used for sparse smooths. None of these options has an effect if the smooth supplies its own constraint.
diagonal.penalty	If TRUE then the smooth is reparameterized to turn the penalty into an identity matrix, with the final diagonal elements zeroed (corresponding to the penalty nullspace). May result in a matrix diagRP in the returned object for use by PredictMat.

Details

These wrapper functions exist to allow smooths specified using smooth.construct and Predict.matrix method functions to be re-parameterized so that identifiability constraints are no longer required in fitting. This is done in a user transparent manner, but is typically of no importance in use of GAMs. The routine's also handle by variables and will create default identifiability constraints.

If a user defined smooth constructor handles by variables itself, then its returned smooth object should contain an object by.done. If this does not exist then smoothCon will use the default code. Similarly if a user defined Predict.matrix method handles by variables internally then the returned matrix should have a "by.done" attribute.

Default centering constraints, that terms should sum to zero over the covariates, are produced unless the smooth constructor includes a matrix `C` of constraints. To have no constraints (in which case you had better have a full rank penalty!) the matrix `C` should have no rows. There is an option to use centering constraint that generate no, or limited infil, if the smoother has a sparse model matrix.

`smoothCon` returns a list of smooths because factor `by` variables result in multiple copies of a smooth, each multiplied by the dummy variable associated with one factor level. `smoothCon` modifies the smooth object labels in the presence of `by` variables, to ensure that they are unique, it also stores the level of a by variable factor associated with a smooth, for later use by `PredictMat`.

The parameterization used by `gam` can be controlled via `gam.control`.

Value

From `smoothCon` a list of `smooth` objects returned by the appropriate `smooth.construct` method function. If constraints are to be absorbed then the objects will have attributes `"qrc"` and `"nCons"`. `"nCons"` is the number of constraints. `"qrc"` is usually the qr decomposition of the constraint matrix (returned by `qr`), but if it is a single positive integer it is the index of the coefficient to set to zero, and if it is a negative number then this indicates that the parameters are to sum to zero.

For `predictMat` a matrix which will map the parameters associated with the smooth to the vector of values of the smooth evaluated at the covariate values given in `object`.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

`gam.control`, `smooth.construct`, `Predict.matrix`

Examples

```
## example of using smoothCon and PredictMat to set up a basis
## to use for regression and make predictions using the result
library(MASS) ## load for mcycle data.
## set up a smoother...
sm <- smoothCon(s(times,k=10),data=mcycle,knots=NULL)[[1]]
## use it to fit a regression spline model...
beta <- coef(lm(mcycle$accel~sm$X-1))
with(mcycle,plot(times,accel)) ## plot data
times <- seq(0,60,length=200)  ## creat prediction times
## Get matrix mapping beta to spline prediction at times
Xp <- PredictMat(sm,data.frame(times=times))
lines(times,Xp%*%beta) ## add smooth to plot

## Same again but using a penalized regression spline of
## rank 30....
sm <- smoothCon(s(times,k=30),data=mcycle,knots=NULL)[[1]]
E <- t(mroot(sm$S[[1]])) ## square root penalty
X <- rbind(sm$X,0.1*E) ## augmented model matrix
y <- c(mcycle$accel,rep(0,nrow(E))) ## augmented data
beta <- coef(lm(y~X-1)) ## fit penalized regression spline
```

```
Xp <- PredictMat(sm,data.frame(times=times)) ## prediction matrix
with(mcycle,plot(times,accel)) ## plot data
lines(times,Xp%*%beta) ## overlay smooth
```

`sp.vcov` *Extract smoothing parameter estimator covariance matrix from (RE)ML GAM fit*

Description

Extracts the estimated covariance matrix for the log smoothing parameter estimates from a (RE)ML estimated `gam` object, provided the fit was with a method that evaluated the required Hessian.

Usage

```
sp.vcov(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	a fitted model object of class `gam` as produced by `gam()`.

Details

Just extracts the inverse of the hessian matrix of the negative (restricted) log likelihood w.r.t the log smoothing parameters, if this has been obtained as part of fitting.

Value

A matrix corresponding to the estimated covariance matrix of the log smoothing parameter estimators, if this can be extracted, otherwise `NULL`. If the scale parameter has been (RE)ML estimated (i.e. if the method was `"ML"` or `"REML"` and the scale parameter was unknown) then the last row and column relate to the log scale parameter.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood `<simon.wood@r-project.org>`

References

Wood, S.N. (2006) On confidence intervals for generalized additive models based on penalized regression splines. Australian and New Zealand Journal of Statistics. 48(4): 445-464.

See Also

`gam`, `gam.vcomp`

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
n <- 100
x <- runif(n);z <- runif(n)
y <- sin(x*2*pi) + rnorm(n)*.2
mod <- gam(y~s(x,bs="cc",k=10)+s(z),knots=list(x=seq(0,1,length=10)),
           method="REML")
sp.vcov(mod)
```

---

spasm.construct *Experimental sparse smoothers*

Description

These are experimental sparse smoothing functions, and should be left well alone!

Usage

```
spasm.construct(object,data)
spasm.sp(object,sp,w=rep(1,object$nobs),get.trH=TRUE,block=0,centre=FALSE)
spasm.smooth(object,X,residual=FALSE,block=0)
```

Arguments

object	sparse smooth object
data	data frame
sp	smoothing parameter value
w	optional weights
get.trH	Should (estimated) trace of sparse smoother matrix be returned
block	index of block, 0 for all blocks
centre	should sparse smooth be centred?
X	what to smooth
residual	apply residual operation?

WARNING

It is not recommended to use these yet

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

step.gam *Alternatives to step.gam*

Description

There is no step.gam in package mgcv. The mgcv default for model selection is to use either prediction error criteria such as GCV, GACV, Mallows' Cp/AIC/UBRE or the likelihood based methods of REML or ML. Since the smoothness estimation part of model selection is done in this way it is logically most consistent to perform the rest of model selection in the same way. i.e. to decide which terms to include or omit by looking at changes in GCV, AIC, REML etc.

To facilitate fully automatic model selection the package implements two smooth modification techniques which can be used to allow smooths to be shrunk to zero as part of smoothness selection.

Shrinkage smoothers are smoothers in which a small multiple of the identity matrix is added to the smoothing penalty, so that strong enough penalization will shrink all the coefficients of the smooth to zero. Such smoothers can effectively be penalized out of the model altogether, as part of smoothing parameter estimation. 2 classes of these shrinkage smoothers are implemented: "cs" and "ts", based on cubic regression spline and thin plate regression spline smoothers (see s)

Null space penalization An alternative is to construct an extra penalty for each smooth which penalizes the space of functions of zero wiggliness according to its existing penalties. If all the smoothing parameters for such a term tend to infinity then the term is penalized to zero, and is effectively dropped from the model. The advantage of this approach is that it can be implemented automatically for any smooth. The select argument to gam causes this latter approach to be used. Unpenalized terms (e.g. s(x,fx=TRUE)) remain unpenalized.

REML and ML smoothness selection are equivalent under this approach, and simulation evidence suggests that they tend to perform a little better than prediction error criteria, for model selection.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Marra, G. and S.N. Wood (2011) Practical variable selection for generalized additive models Computational Statistics and Data Analysis 55,2372-2387

See Also

gam.selection

Examples

```
## an example of GCV based model selection as
## an alternative to stepwise selection, using
## shrinkage smoothers...
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0);n <- 400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,scale=2)
dat$x4 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
dat$x5 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
```

```
attach(dat)
## Note the increased gamma parameter below to favour
## slightly smoother models...
b<-gam(y~s(x0,bs="ts")+s(x1,bs="ts")+s(x2,bs="ts")+
   s(x3,bs="ts")+s(x4,bs="ts")+s(x5,bs="ts"),gamma=1.4)
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1)

## Same again using REML/ML
b<-gam(y~s(x0,bs="ts")+s(x1,bs="ts")+s(x2,bs="ts")+
   s(x3,bs="ts")+s(x4,bs="ts")+s(x5,bs="ts"),method="REML")
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1)

## And once more, but using the null space penalization
b<-gam(y~s(x0,bs="cr")+s(x1,bs="cr")+s(x2,bs="cr")+
   s(x3,bs="cr")+s(x4,bs="cr")+s(x5,bs="cr"),
   method="REML",select=TRUE)
summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1)


detach(dat);rm(dat)
```

---

summary.gam *Summary for a GAM fit*

Description

Takes a fitted gam object produced by gam() and produces various useful summaries from it. (See sink to divert output to a file.)

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
summary(object, dispersion=NULL, freq=FALSE, p.type = 0, ...)

## S3 method for class summary.gam
print(x,digits = max(3, getOption("digits") - 3),
                  signif.stars = getOption("show.signif.stars"),...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted gam object as produced by gam().
x	a summary.gam object produced by summary.gam().
dispersion	A known dispersion parameter. NULL to use estimate or default (e.g. 1 for Poisson).
freq	By default p-values for parametric terms are calculated using the Bayesian estimated covariance matrix of the parameter estimators. If this is set to TRUE then the frequentist covariance matrix of the parameters is used instead.

p.type	determines how p-values are computed for smooth terms. 0 uses a test statistic with distribution determined by the un-rounded edf of the term. 1 uses upwardly biased rounding of the edf and -1 uses a version of the test statistic with a null distribution that has to be simulated. 5 is the approximation in Wood (2006). Other options are poor, generate a warning, and are only of research interest. See details.
digits	controls number of digits printed in output.
signif.stars	Should significance stars be printed alongside output.
...	other arguments.

Details

Model degrees of freedom are taken as the trace of the influence (or hat) matrix $\mathbf{A}$ for the model fit. Residual degrees of freedom are taken as number of data minus model degrees of freedom. Let $\mathbf{P}_i$ be the matrix giving the parameters of the ith smooth when applied to the data (or pseudodata in the generalized case) and let $\mathbf{X}$ be the design matrix of the model. Then $tr(\mathbf{X}\mathbf{P}_i)$ is the edf for the ith term. Clearly this definition causes the edf's to add up properly! An alternative version of EDF is more appropriate for p-value computation, and is based on the trace of $2\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}$.

`print.summary.gam` tries to print various bits of summary information useful for term selection in a pretty way.

P-values for smooth terms are usually based on a test statistic motivated by an extension of Nychka's (1988) analysis of the frequentist properties of Bayesian confidence intervals for smooths (Marra and Wood, 2012). These have better frequentist performance (in terms of power and distribution under the null) than the alternative strictly frequentist approximation. When the Bayesian intervals have good across the function properties then the p-values have close to the correct null distribution and reasonable power (but there are no optimality results for the power). Full details are in Wood (2013b), although what is computed is actually a slight variant in which the components of the test statistic are weighted by the iterative fitting weights.

Note that for terms with no unpenalized terms (such as Gaussian random effects) the Nychka (1988) requirement for smoothing bias to be substantially less than variance breaks down (see e.g. appendix of Marra and Wood, 2012), and this results in incorrect null distribution for p-values computed using the above approach. In this case it is necessary to use an alternative approach designed for random effects variance components, and this is done. See Wood (2013a) for details: the test is based on a likelihood ratio statistic (with the reference distribution appropriate for the null hypothesis on the boundary of the parameter space).

All p-values are computed without considering uncertainty in the smoothing parameter estimates.

In simulations the p-values have best behaviour under ML smoothness selection, with REML coming second. In general the p-values behave well, but neglecting smoothing parameter uncertainty means that they may be somewhat too low when smoothing parameters are highly uncertain. High uncertainty happens in particular when smoothing parameters are poorly identified, which can occur with nested smooths or highly correlated covariates (high concurvity).

If `p.type=5` then the frequentist approximation for p-values of smooth terms described in section 4.8.5 of Wood (2006) is used. The approximation is not as good as the default, and is no longer recommended.

By default the p-values for parametric model terms are also based on Wald tests using the Bayesian covariance matrix for the coefficients. This is appropriate when there are "re" terms present, and is otherwise rather similar to the results using the frequentist covariance matrix (`freq=TRUE`), since the parametric terms themselves are usually unpenalized. Default P-values for parameteric terms that are penalized using the `paraPen` argument will not be good. However if such terms represent conventional random effects with full rank penalties, then setting `freq=TRUE` is appropriate.

Value

summary.gam produces a list of summary information for a fitted gam object.

p.coeff	is an array of estimates of the strictly parametric model coefficients.
p.t	is an array of the p.coeff's divided by their standard errors.
p.pv	is an array of p-values for the null hypothesis that the corresponding parameter is zero. Calculated with reference to the t distribution with the estimated residual degrees of freedom for the model fit if the dispersion parameter has been estimated, and the standard normal if not.
m	The number of smooth terms in the model.
chi.sq	An array of test statistics for assessing the significance of model smooth terms. See details.
s.pv	An array of approximate p-values for the null hypotheses that each smooth term is zero. Be warned, these are only approximate.
se	array of standard error estimates for all parameter estimates.
r.sq	The adjusted r-squared for the model. Defined as the proportion of variance explained, where original variance and residual variance are both estimated using unbiased estimators. This quantity can be negative if your model is worse than a one parameter constant model, and can be higher for the smaller of two nested models! The proportion null deviance explained is probably more appropriate for non-normal errors. Note that r.sq does not include any offset in the one parameter model.
dev.expl	The proportion of the null deviance explained by the model. The null deviance is computed taking account of any offset, so dev.expl can be substantially lower than r.sq when an offset is present.
edf	array of estimated degrees of freedom for the model terms.
residual.df	estimated residual degrees of freedom.
n	number of data.
np	number of model coefficients (regression coefficients, not smoothing parameters or other parameters of likelihood).
rank	apparent model rank.
method	The smoothing selection criterion used.
sp.criterion	The minimized value of the smoothness selection criterion. Note that for ML and REML methods, what is reported is the negative log marginal likelihood or negative log restricted likelihood.
scale	estimated (or given) scale parameter.
family	the family used.
formula	the original GAM formula.
dispersion	the scale parameter.
pTerms.df	the degrees of freedom associated with each parametric term (excluding the constant).
pTerms.chi.sq	a Wald statistic for testing the null hypothesis that the each parametric term is zero.
pTerms.pv	p-values associated with the tests that each term is zero. For penalized fits these are approximate. The reference distribution is an appropriate chi-squared when the scale parameter is known, and is based on an F when it is not.

cov.unscaled	The estimated covariance matrix of the parameters (or estimators if freq=TRUE), divided by scale parameter.
cov.scaled	The estimated covariance matrix of the parameters (estimators if freq=TRUE).
p.table	significance table for parameters
s.table	significance table for smooths
p.Terms	significance table for parametric model terms

WARNING

The p-values are approximate and neglect smoothing parameter uncertainty. They are likely to be somewhat too low when smoothing parameter estimates are highly uncertain: do read the details section. If the exact values matter, read Wood (2013a or b).

P-values for terms penalized via 'paraPen' are unlikely to be correct.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org> with substantial improvements by Henric Nilsson.

References

Marra, G and S.N. Wood (2012) Coverage Properties of Confidence Intervals for Generalized Additive Model Components. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics, 39(1), 53-74.

Nychka (1988) Bayesian Confidence Intervals for Smoothing Splines. Journal of the American Statistical Association 83:1134-1143.

Wood, S.N. (2013a) A simple test for random effects in regression models. Biometrika 100:1005-1010

Wood, S.N. (2013b) On p-values for smooth components of an extended generalized additive model. Biometrika 100:221-228

Wood S.N. (2006) Generalized Additive Models: An Introduction with R. Chapman and Hall/CRC Press.

See Also

gam, predict.gam, gam.check, anova.gam, gam.vcomp, sp.vcov

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)

dat <- gamSim(1,n=200,scale=2) ## simulate data

b <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)
summary(b)

## now check the p-values by using a pure regression spline.....
b.d <- round(summary(b)$edf)+1 ## get edf per smooth
b.d <- pmax(b.d,3) # cant have basis dimension less than 3!
bc<-gam(y~s(x0,k=b.d[1],fx=TRUE)+s(x1,k=b.d[2],fx=TRUE)+
        s(x2,k=b.d[3],fx=TRUE)+s(x3,k=b.d[4],fx=TRUE),data=dat)
plot(bc,pages=1)
```

```
summary(bc)

## Example where some p-values are less reliable...
dat <- gamSim(6,n=200,scale=2)
b <- gam(y~s(x0,m=1)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3)+s(fac,bs="re"),data=dat)
## Here s(x0,m=1) can be penalized to zero, so p-value approximation
## cruder than usual...
summary(b)

## p-value check - increase k to make this useful!
k<-20;n <- 200;p <- rep(NA,k)
for (i in 1:k)
{ b<-gam(y~te(x,z),data=data.frame(y=rnorm(n),x=runif(n),z=runif(n)),
         method="ML")
  p[i]<-summary(b)$s.p[1]
}
plot(((1:k)-0.5)/k,sort(p))
abline(0,1,col=2)
ks.test(p,"punif") ## how close to uniform are the p-values?

## A Gamma example, by modify gamSim output...

dat <- gamSim(1,n=400,dist="normal",scale=1)
dat$f <- dat$f/4 ## true linear predictor
Ey <- exp(dat$f);scale <- .5 ## mean and GLM scale parameter
## Note that shape and scale in rgamma are almost
## opposite terminology to that used with GLM/GAM...
dat$y <- rgamma(Ey*0,shape=1/scale,scale=Ey*scale)
bg <- gam(y~ s(x0)+ s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=Gamma(link=log),
          data=dat,method="REML")
summary(bg)
```

---

t2 *Define alternative tensor product smooths in GAM formulae*

Description

Alternative to te for defining tensor product smooths in a gam formula. Results in a construction in which the penalties are non-overlapping multiples of identity matrices (with some rows and columns zeroed). The construction, which is due to Fabian Scheipl, is analogous to Smoothing Spline ANOVA (Gu, 2002), but using low rank penalized regression spline marginals. The main advantage of this construction is that it is useable with gamm4 from package gamm4.

Usage

```
t2(..., k=NA,bs="cr",m=NA,d=NA,by=NA,xt=NULL,
                id=NULL,sp=NULL,full=FALSE,ord=NULL)
```

Arguments

...	a list of variables that are the covariates that this smooth is a function of.

k — the dimension(s) of the bases used to represent the smooth term. If not supplied then set to 5^d. If supplied as a single number then this basis dimension is used for each basis. If supplied as an array then the elements are the dimensions of the component (marginal) bases of the tensor product. See choose.k for further information.

bs — array (or single character string) specifying the type for each marginal basis. "cr" for cubic regression spline; "cs" for cubic regression spline with shrinkage; "cc" for periodic/cyclic cubic regression spline; "tp" for thin plate regression spline; "ts" for t.p.r.s. with extra shrinkage. See smooth.terms for details and full list. User defined bases can also be used here (see smooth.construct for an example). If only one basis code is given then this is used for all bases.

m — The order of the spline and its penalty (for smooth classes that use this) for each term. If a single number is given then it is used for all terms. A vector can be used to supply a different m for each margin. For marginals that take vector m (e.g. p.spline and Duchon.spline), then a list can be supplied, with a vector element for each margin. NA autoinitializes. m is ignored by some bases (e.g. "cr").

d — array of marginal basis dimensions. For example if you want a smooth for 3 covariates made up of a tensor product of a 2 dimensional t.p.r.s. basis and a 1-dimensional basis, then set d=c(2,1). Incompatibilities between built in basis types and dimension will be resolved by resetting the basis type.

by — a numeric or factor variable of the same dimension as each covariate. In the numeric vector case the elements multiply the smooth evaluated at the corresponding covariate values (a 'varying coefficient model' results). In the factor case causes a replicate of the smooth to be produced for each factor level. See gam.models for further details. May also be a matrix if covariates are matrices: in this case implements linear functional of a smooth (see gam.models and linear.functional.terms for details).

xt — Either a single object, providing any extra information to be passed to each marginal basis constructor, or a list of such objects, one for each marginal basis.

id — A label or integer identifying this term in order to link its smoothing parameters to others of the same type. If two or more smooth terms have the same id then they will have the same smoothing paramsters, and, by default, the same bases (first occurance defines basis type, but data from all terms used in basis construction).

sp — any supplied smoothing parameters for this term. Must be an array of the same length as the number of penalties for this smooth. Positive or zero elements are taken as fixed smoothing parameters. Negative elements signal auto-initialization. Over-rides values supplied in sp argument to gam. Ignored by gamm.

full — If TRUE then there is a separate penalty for each combination of null space column and range space. This gives strict invariance. If FALSE each combination of null space and range space generates one penalty, but the coulmns of each null space basis are treated as one group. The latter is more parsimonious, but does mean that invariance is only achieved by an arbitrary rescaling of null space basis vectors.

ord — an array giving the orders of terms to retain. Here order means number of marginal range spaces used in the construction of the component. NULL to retain everything.

Details

Smooths of several covariates can be constructed from tensor products of the bases used to represent smooths of one (or sometimes more) of the covariates. To do this 'marginal' bases are produced with associated model matrices and penalty matrices. These are reparameterized so that the penalty is zero everywhere, except for some elements on the leading diagonal, which all have the same non-zero value. This reparameterization results in an unpenalized and a penalized subset of parameters, for each marginal basis (see e.g. appendix of Wood, 2004, for details).

The re-parameterized marginal bases are then combined to produce a basis for a single function of all the covariates (dimension given by the product of the dimensions of the marginal bases). In this set up there are multiple penalty matrices — all zero, but for a mixture of a constant and zeros on the leading diagonal. No two penalties have a non-zero entry in the same place.

Essentially the basis for the tensor product can be thought of as being constructed from a set of products of the penalized (range) or unpenalized (null) space bases of the marginal smooths (see Gu, 2002, section 2.4). To construct one of the set, choose either the null space or the range space from each marginal, and from these bases construct a product basis. The result is subject to a ridge penalty (unless it happens to be a product entirely of marginal null spaces). The whole basis for the smooth is constructed from all the different product bases that can be constructed in this way. The separately penalized components of the smooth basis each have an interpretation in terms of the ANOVA - decomposition of the term. See `pen.edf` for some further information.

Note that there are two ways to construct the product. When `full=FALSE` then the null space bases are treated as a whole in each product, but when `full=TRUE` each null space column is treated as a separate null space. The latter results in more penalties, but is the strict analog of the SS-ANOVA approach.

Tensor product smooths are especially useful for representing functions of covariates measured in different units, although they are typically not quite as nicely behaved as t.p.r.s. smooths for well scaled covariates.

Note also that GAMs constructed from lower rank tensor product smooths are nested within GAMs constructed from higher rank tensor product smooths if the same marginal bases are used in both cases (the marginal smooths themselves are just special cases of tensor product smooths.)

Note that tensor product smooths should not be centred (have identifiability constraints imposed) if any marginals would not need centering. The constructor for tensor product smooths ensures that this happens.

The function does not evaluate the variable arguments.

Value

A class `t2.smooth.spec` object defining a tensor product smooth to be turned into a basis and penalties by the `smooth.construct.tensor.smooth.spec` function.

The returned object contains the following items:

`margin`	A list of `smooth.spec` objects of the type returned by `s`, defining the basis from which the tensor product smooth is constructed.
`term`	An array of text strings giving the names of the covariates that the term is a function of.
`by`	is the name of any by variable as text (`"NA"` for none).
`fx`	logical array with element for each penalty of the term (tensor product smooths have multiple penalties). `TRUE` if the penalty is to be ignored, `FALSE`, otherwise.
`label`	A suitable text label for this smooth term.

dim	The dimension of the smoother - i.e. the number of covariates that it is a function of.
mp	TRUE is multiple penalties are to be used (default).
np	TRUE to re-parameterize 1-D marginal smooths in terms of function values (defualt).
id	the id argument supplied to te.
sp	the sp argument supplied to te.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org> and Fabian Scheipl

References

Wood S.N., F. Scheipl and J.J. Faraway (2012) Straightforward intermediate rank tensor product smoothing in mixed models. Statistical Computing.

Gu, C. (2002) Smoothing Spline ANOVA, Springer.

http://people.bath.ac.uk/sw283/

Alternative approaches to functional ANOVA decompositions, *not* implemented by t2 terms, are discussed in:

Belitz and Lang (2008) Simultaneous selection of variables and smoothing parameters in structured additive regression models. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 53(1):61-81

Lee, D-J and M. Durban (2011) P-spline ANOVA type interaction models for spatio-temporal smoothing. Statistical Modelling

Wood, S.N. (2006) Low-Rank Scale-Invariant Tensor Product Smooths for Generalized Additive Mixed Models. Biometrics 62(4): 1025-1036.

See Also

te s,gam,gamm,

Examples

```
# following shows how tensor product deals nicely with
# badly scaled covariates (range of x 5% of range of z )
require(mgcv)
test1<-function(x,z,sx=0.3,sz=0.4)
{ x<-x*20
  (pi**sx*sz)*(1.2*exp(-(x-0.2)^2/sx^2-(z-0.3)^2/sz^2)+
  0.8*exp(-(x-0.7)^2/sx^2-(z-0.8)^2/sz^2))
}
n<-500
old.par<-par(mfrow=c(2,2))
x<-runif(n)/20;z<-runif(n);
xs<-seq(0,1,length=30)/20;zs<-seq(0,1,length=30)
pr<-data.frame(x=rep(xs,30),z=rep(zs,rep(30,30)))
truth<-matrix(test1(pr$x,pr$z),30,30)
f <- test1(x,z)
y <- f + rnorm(n)*0.2
b1<-gam(y~s(x,z))
persp(xs,zs,truth);title("truth")
vis.gam(b1);title("t.p.r.s")
```

```
b2<-gam(y~t2(x,z))
vis.gam(b2);title("tensor product")
b3<-gam(y~t2(x,z,bs=c("tp","tp")))
vis.gam(b3);title("tensor product")
par(old.par)

test2<-function(u,v,w,sv=0.3,sw=0.4)
{ ((pi**sv*sw)*(1.2*exp(-(v-0.2)^2/sv^2-(w-0.3)^2/sw^2)+
  0.8*exp(-(v-0.7)^2/sv^2-(w-0.8)^2/sw^2)))*(u-0.5)^2*20
}
n <- 500
v <- runif(n);w<-runif(n);u<-runif(n)
f <- test2(u,v,w)
y <- f + rnorm(n)*0.2

## tensor product of 2D Duchon spline and 1D cr spline
m <- list(c(1,.5),0)
b <- gam(y~t2(v,w,u,k=c(30,5),d=c(2,1),bs=c("ds","cr"),m=m))

## look at the edf per penalty. "rr" denotes interaction term
## (range space range space). "rn" is interaction of null space
## for u with range space for v,w...
pen.edf(b)

## plot results...
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=0),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=.33),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=.67),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=1),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
par(op)

b <- gam(y~t2(v,w,u,k=c(25,5),d=c(2,1),bs=c("tp","cr"),full=TRUE),
         method="ML")
## more penalties now. numbers in labels like "r1" indicate which
## basis function of a null space is involved in the term.
pen.edf(b)
```

`te` *Define tensor product smooths or tensor product interactions in GAM formulae*

Description

Functions used for the definition of tensor product smooths and interactions within `gam` model formulae. `te` produces a full tensor product smooth, while `ti` produces a tensor product interaction, appropriate when the main effects (and any lower interactions) are also present.

The functions do not evaluate the smooth - they exists purely to help set up a model using tensor product based smooths. Designed to construct tensor products from any marginal smooths with a basis-penalty representation (with the restriction that each marginal smooth must have only one penalty).

Usage

```
te(..., k=NA,bs="cr",m=NA,d=NA,by=NA,fx=FALSE,
               mp=TRUE,np=TRUE,xt=NULL,id=NULL,sp=NULL)
ti(..., k=NA,bs="cr",m=NA,d=NA,by=NA,fx=FALSE,
               np=TRUE,xt=NULL,id=NULL,sp=NULL,mc=NULL)
```

Arguments

...	a list of variables that are the covariates that this smooth is a function of.
k	the dimension(s) of the bases used to represent the smooth term. If not supplied then set to 5^d. If supplied as a single number then this basis dimension is used for each basis. If supplied as an array then the elements are the dimensions of the component (marginal) bases of the tensor product. See choose.k for further information.
bs	array (or single character string) specifying the type for each marginal basis. "cr" for cubic regression spline; "cs" for cubic regression spline with shrinkage; "cc" for periodic/cyclic cubic regression spline; "tp" for thin plate regression spline; "ts" for t.p.r.s. with extra shrinkage. See smooth.terms for details and full list. User defined bases can also be used here (see smooth.construct for an example). If only one basis code is given then this is used for all bases.
m	The order of the spline and its penalty (for smooth classes that use this) for each term. If a single number is given then it is used for all terms. A vector can be used to supply a different m for each margin. For marginals that take vector m (e.g. p.spline and Duchon.spline), then a list can be supplied, with a vector element for each margin. NA autoinitializes. m is ignored by some bases (e.g. "cr").
d	array of marginal basis dimensions. For example if you want a smooth for 3 covariates made up of a tensor product of a 2 dimensional t.p.r.s. basis and a 1-dimensional basis, then set d=c(2,1). Incompatibilities between built in basis types and dimension will be resolved by resetting the basis type.
by	a numeric or factor variable of the same dimension as each covariate. In the numeric vector case the elements multiply the smooth evaluated at the corresponding covariate values (a 'varying coefficient model' results). In the factor case causes a replicate of the smooth to be produced for each factor level. See gam.models for further details. May also be a matrix if covariates are matrices: in this case implements linear functional of a smooth (see gam.models and linear.functional.terms for details).
fx	indicates whether the term is a fixed d.f. regression spline (TRUE) or a penalized regression spline (FALSE).
mp	TRUE to use multiple penalties for the smooth. FALSE to use only a single penalty: single penalties are not recommended and are deprecated - they tend to allow only rather wiggly models.
np	TRUE to use the 'normal parameterization' for a tensor product smooth. This represents any 1-d marginal smooths via parameters that are function values at 'knots', spread evenly through the data. The parameterization makes the penalties easily interpretable, however it can reduce numerical stability in some cases.
xt	Either a single object, providing any extra information to be passed to each marginal basis constructor, or a list of such objects, one for each marginal basis.

id — A label or integer identifying this term in order to link its smoothing parameters to others of the same type. If two or more smooth terms have the same id then they will have the same smoothing paramsters, and, by default, the same bases (first occurance defines basis type, but data from all terms used in basis construction).

sp — any supplied smoothing parameters for this term. Must be an array of the same length as the number of penalties for this smooth. Positive or zero elements are taken as fixed smoothing parameters. Negative elements signal auto-initialization. Over-rides values supplied in sp argument to gam. Ignored by gamm.

mc — For ti smooths you can specify which marginals should have centering constraints applied, by supplying 0/1 or FALSE/TRUE values for each marginal in this vector. By default all marginals are constrained, which is what is appropriate for, e.g., functional ANOVA models. Note that ti only applies constraints to the marginals, so if you turn off all marginal constraints the term will have no identifiability constraints. Only use this if you really understand how marginal constraints work.

Details

Smooths of several covariates can be constructed from tensor products of the bases used to represent smooths of one (or sometimes more) of the covariates. To do this 'marginal' bases are produced with associated model matrices and penalty matrices, and these are then combined in the manner described in tensor.prod.model.matrix and tensor.prod.penalties, to produce a single model matrix for the smooth, but multiple penalties (one for each marginal basis). The basis dimension of the whole smooth is the product of the basis dimensions of the marginal smooths.

An option for operating with a single penalty (The Kronecker product of the marginal penalties) is provided, but it is rarely of practical use, and is deprecated: the penalty is typically so rank deficient that even the smoothest resulting model will have rather high estimated degrees of freedom.

Tensor product smooths are especially useful for representing functions of covariates measured in different units, although they are typically not quite as nicely behaved as t.p.r.s. smooths for well scaled covariates.

It is sometimes useful to investigate smooth models with a main-effects + interactions structure, for example

$$f_1(x) + f_2(z) + f_3(x, z)$$

This functional ANOVA decomposition is supported by ti terms, which produce tensor product interactions from which the main effects have been excluded, under the assumption that they will be included separately. For example the ~ ti(x) + ti(z) + ti(x,z) would produce the above main effects + interaction structure. This is much better than attempting the same thing with sor te terms representing the interactions (although mgcv does not forbid it). Technically ti terms are very simple: they simply construct tensor product bases from marginal smooths to which identifiability constraints (usually sum-to-zero) have already been applied: correct nesting is then automatic (as with all interactions in a GLM framework).

The 'normal parameterization' (np=TRUE) re-parameterizes the marginal smooths of a tensor product smooth so that the parameters are function values at a set of points spread evenly through the range of values of the covariate of the smooth. This means that the penalty of the tensor product associated with any particular covariate direction can be interpreted as the penalty of the appropriate marginal smooth applied in that direction and averaged over the smooth. Currently this is only done for marginals of a single variable. This parameterization can reduce numerical stability when used with marginal smooths other than "cc", "cr" and "cs": if this causes problems, set np=FALSE.

Note that tensor product smooths should not be centred (have identifiability constraints imposed) if any marginals would not need centering. The constructor for tensor product smooths ensures that this happens.

The function does not evaluate the variable arguments.

Value

A class `tensor.smooth.spec` object defining a tensor product smooth to be turned into a basis and penalties by the `smooth.construct.tensor.smooth.spec` function.

The returned object contains the following items:

`margin`	A list of `smooth.spec` objects of the type returned by `s`, defining the basis from which the tensor product smooth is constructed.
`term`	An array of text strings giving the names of the covariates that the term is a function of.
`by`	is the name of any by variable as text (`"NA"` for none).
`fx`	logical array with element for each penalty of the term (tensor product smooths have multiple penalties). `TRUE` if the penalty is to be ignored, `FALSE`, otherwise.
`label`	A suitable text label for this smooth term.
`dim`	The dimension of the smoother - i.e. the number of covariates that it is a function of.
`mp`	`TRUE` is multiple penalties are to be used (default).
`np`	`TRUE` to re-parameterize 1-D marginal smooths in terms of function values (defualt).
`id`	the `id` argument supplied to `te`.
`sp`	the `sp` argument supplied to `te`.
`inter`	`TRUE` if the term was generated by `ti`, `FALSE` otherwise.
`mc`	the argument `mc` supplied to `ti`.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2006a) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for generalized additive mixed models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

http://www.maths.bath.ac.uk/~sw283/

See Also

s,gam,gamm, smooth.construct.tensor.smooth.spec

Examples

```
# following shows how tensor pruduct deals nicely with
# badly scaled covariates (range of x 5% of range of z )
require(mgcv)
test1 <- function(x,z,sx=0.3,sz=0.4) {
  x <- x*20
  (pi**sx*sz)*(1.2*exp(-(x-0.2)^2/sx^2-(z-0.3)^2/sz^2)+
  0.8*exp(-(x-0.7)^2/sx^2-(z-0.8)^2/sz^2))
}
n <- 500
old.par <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
x <- runif(n)/20;z <- runif(n);
xs <- seq(0,1,length=30)/20;zs <- seq(0,1,length=30)
pr <- data.frame(x=rep(xs,30),z=rep(zs,rep(30,30)))
truth <- matrix(test1(pr$x,pr$z),30,30)
f <- test1(x,z)
y <- f + rnorm(n)*0.2
b1 <- gam(y~s(x,z))
persp(xs,zs,truth);title("truth")
vis.gam(b1);title("t.p.r.s")
b2 <- gam(y~te(x,z))
vis.gam(b2);title("tensor product")
b3 <- gam(y~ ti(x) + ti(z) + ti(x,z))
vis.gam(b3);title("tensor anova")

## now illustrate partial ANOVA decomp...
vis.gam(b3);title("full anova")
b4 <- gam(y~ ti(x) + ti(x,z,mc=c(0,1))) ## note z constrained!
vis.gam(b4);title("partial anova")
plot(b4)

par(old.par)

## now with a multivariate marginal....

test2<-function(u,v,w,sv=0.3,sw=0.4)
{ ((pi**sv*sw)*(1.2*exp(-(v-0.2)^2/sv^2-(w-0.3)^2/sw^2)+
  0.8*exp(-(v-0.7)^2/sv^2-(w-0.8)^2/sw^2)))*(u-0.5)^2*20
}
n <- 500
v <- runif(n);w<-runif(n);u<-runif(n)
f <- test2(u,v,w)
y <- f + rnorm(n)*0.2
# tensor product of 2D Duchon spline and 1D cr spline
m <- list(c(1,.5),rep(0,0)) ## example of list form of m
b <- gam(y~te(v,w,u,k=c(30,5),d=c(2,1),bs=c("ds","cr"),m=m))
op <- par(mfrow=c(2,2))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=0),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=.33),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=.67),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
vis.gam(b,cond=list(u=1),color="heat",zlim=c(-0.2,3.5))
par(op)
```

`tensor.prod.model.matrix` *Utility functions for constructing tensor product smooths*

Description

Produce model matrices or penalty matrices for a tensor product smooth from the model matrices or penalty matrices for the marginal bases of the smooth.

Usage

```
tensor.prod.model.matrix(X)
tensor.prod.penalties(S)
```

Arguments

`X`	a list of model matrices for the marginal bases of a smooth
`S`	a list of penalties for the marginal bases of a smooth.

Details

If `X[[1]]`, `X[[2]]` ... `X[[m]]` are the model matrices of the marginal bases of a tensor product smooth then the ith row of the model matrix for the whole tensor product smooth is given by `X[[1]][i,]%x%X[[2]][i,]%x% ... X[[m]][i,]`, where `%x%` is the Kronecker product. Of course the routine operates column-wise, not row-wise!

If `S[[1]]`, `S[[2]]` ... `S[[m]]` are the penalty matrices for the marginal bases, and `I[[1]]`, `I[[2]]` ... `I[[m]]` are corresponding identity matrices, each of the same dimension as its corresponding penalty, then the tensor product smooth has m associate penalties of the form:

`S[[1]]%x%I[[2]]%x% ... I[[m]]`,

`I[[1]]%x%S[[2]]%x% ... I[[m]]`

...

`I[[1]]%x%I[[2]]%x% ... S[[m]]`.

Of course it's important that the model matrices and penalty matrices are presented in the same order when constructing tensor product smooths.

Value

Either a single model matrix for a tensor product smooth, or a list of penalty terms for a tensor product smooth.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2006) Low rank scale invariant tensor product smooths for Generalized Additive Mixed Models. Biometrics 62(4):1025-1036

See Also

te, smooth.construct.tensor.smooth.spec

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
X <- list(matrix(1:4,2,2),matrix(5:10,2,3))
tensor.prod.model.matrix(X)

S<-list(matrix(c(2,1,1,2),2,2),matrix(c(2,1,0,1,2,1,0,1,2),3,3))
tensor.prod.penalties(S)
```

Tweedie *GAM Tweedie families*

Description

Tweedie families, designed for use with gam from the mgcv library. Restricted to variance function powers between 1 and 2. A useful alternative to quasi when a full likelihood is desirable. Tweedie is for use with fixed p. tw is for use when p is to be estimated during fitting. For fixed p between 1 and 2 the Tweedie is an exponential family distribution with variance given by the mean to the power p.

tw is only useable with gam, not bam or gamm. Tweedie works with all three.

Usage

```
Tweedie(p=1, link = power(0))
tw(theta = NULL, link = "log",a=1.01,b=1.99)
```

Arguments

p	the variance of an observation is proportional to its mean to the power p. p must be greater than 1 and less than or equal to 2. 1 would be Poisson, 2 is gamma.
link	The link function: one of "log", "identity", "inverse", "sqrt", or a power link (Tweedie only).
theta	Related to the Tweedie power parameter by $p = \exp(a+b\exp(\theta))/(1+\exp(\theta))$. If this is supplied as a positive value then it is taken as the fixed value for p. If it is a negative values then its absolute value is taken as the initial value for p.
a	lower limit on p for optimization.
b	upper limit on p for optimization.

Details

A Tweedie random variable with 1<p<2 is a sum of N gamma random variables where N has a Poisson distribution. The p=1 case is a generalization of a Poisson distribution and is a discrete distribution supported on integer multiples of the scale parameter. For 1<p<2 the distribution is supported on the positive reals with a point mass at zero. p=2 is a gamma distribution. As p gets very close to 1 the continuous distribution begins to converge on the discretely supported limit at p=1, and is therefore highly multimodal. See ldTweedie for more on this behaviour.

Tweedie is based partly on the poisson family, and partly on tweedie from the statmod package. It includes extra components to work with all mgcv GAM fitting methods as well as an aic function.

The Tweedie density involves a normalizing constant with no closed form, so this is evaluated using the series evaluation method of Dunn and Smyth (2005), with extensions to also compute the derivatives w.r.t. p and the scale parameter. Without restricting p to (1,2) the calculation of Tweedie densities is more difficult, and there does not currently seem to be an implementation which offers any benefit over quasi. If you need this case then the tweedie package is the place to start.

Value

For Tweedie, an object inheriting from class family, with additional elements

dvar	the function giving the first derivative of the variance function w.r.t. mu.
d2var	the function giving the second derivative of the variance function w.r.t. mu.
ls	A function returning a 3 element array: the saturated log likelihood followed by its first 2 derivatives w.r.t. the scale parameter.

For tw, an object of class extended.family.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>.

References

Dunn, P.K. and G.K. Smyth (2005) Series evaluation of Tweedie exponential dispersion model densities. Statistics and Computing 15:267-280

Tweedie, M. C. K. (1984). An index which distinguishes between some important exponential families. Statistics: Applications and New Directions. Proceedings of the Indian Statistical Institute Golden Jubilee International Conference (Eds. J. K. Ghosh and J. Roy), pp. 579-604. Calcutta: Indian Statistical Institute.

See Also

ldTweedie, rTweedie

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(3)
n<-400
## Simulate data...
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n,dist="poisson",scale=.2)
dat$y <- rTweedie(exp(dat$f),p=1.3,phi=.5) ## Tweedie response

## Fit a fixed p Tweedie, with wrong link ...
b <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=Tweedie(1.25,power(.1)),
         data=dat)
plot(b,pages=1)
print(b)

## Same by approximate REML...
b1 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=Tweedie(1.25,power(.1)),
          data=dat,method="REML")
```

```
plot(b1,pages=1)
print(b1)

## estimate p as part of fitting

b2 <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=tw(),
          data=dat,method="REML")
plot(b2,pages=1)
print(b2)

rm(dat)
```

---

uniquecombs *find the unique rows in a matrix*

Description

This routine returns a matrix containing all the unique rows of the matrix supplied as its argument. That is, all the duplicate rows are stripped out. Note that the ordering of the rows on exit is not the same as on entry. It also returns an index attribute for relating the result back to the original matrix.

Usage

```
uniquecombs(x)
```

Arguments

x	is an matrix (numeric)

Details

Models with more parameters than unique combinations of covariates are not identifiable. This routine provides a means of evaluating the number of unique combinations of coavariates in a model. The routine calls compiled C code, and is based on sorting, with consequent O(nlog(n)) cost. In principle a hash table based solution should be only O(n).

unique and duplicated, can sometimes be used in place of this, if the full index is not needed. Relative performance is variable.

Value

A matrix consisting of the unique rows of x (in arbitrary order).

The matrix has an "index" attribute. index[i] gives the row of the returned matrix that contains row i of the original matrix.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

unique, duplicated.

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
X<-matrix(c(1,2,3,1,2,3,4,5,6,1,3,2,4,5,6,1,1,1),6,3,byrow=TRUE)
print(X)
Xu <- uniquecombs(X);Xu
ind <- attr(Xu,"index")
## find the value for row 3 of the original from Xu
Xu[ind[3],];X[3,]
```

---

vcov.gam *Extract parameter (estimator) covariance matrix from GAM fit*

Description

Extracts the Bayesian posterior covariance matrix of the parameters or frequentist covariance matrix of the parameter estimators from a fitted gam object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gam
vcov(object, freq = FALSE, dispersion = NULL,unconditional=FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	fitted model object of class gam as produced by gam().
freq	TRUE to return the frequentist covariance matrix of the parameter estimators, FALSE to return the Bayesian posterior covariance matrix of the parameters.
dispersion	a value for the dispersion parameter: not normally used.
unconditional	if TRUE (and freq==FALSE) then the Bayesian smoothing parameter uncertainty corrected covariance matrix is returned, if available.
...	other arguments, currently ignored.

Details

Basically, just extracts object$Ve or object$Vp from a gamObject.

Value

A matrix corresponding to the estimated frequentist covariance matrix of the model parameter estimators/coefficients, or the estimated posterior covariance matrix of the parameters, depending on the argument freq.

Author(s)

Henric Nilsson. Maintained by Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

References

Wood, S.N. (2006) On confidence intervals for generalized additive models based on penalized regression splines. Australian and New Zealand Journal of Statistics. 48(4): 445-464.

See Also

gam

Examples

```
require(mgcv)
n <- 100
x <- runif(n)
y <- sin(x*2*pi) + rnorm(n)*.2
mod <- gam(y~s(x,bs="cc",k=10),knots=list(x=seq(0,1,length=10)))
diag(vcov(mod))
```

---

vis.gam *Visualization of GAM objects*

Description

Produces perspective or contour plot views of gam model predictions, fixing all but the values in view to the values supplied in cond.

Usage

```
vis.gam(x,view=NULL,cond=list(),n.grid=30,too.far=0,col=NA,
        color="heat",contour.col=NULL,se=-1,type="link",
        plot.type="persp",zlim=NULL,nCol=50,...)
```

Arguments

x	a gam object, produced by gam()
view	an array containing the names of the two main effect terms to be displayed on the x and y dimensions of the plot. If omitted the first two suitable terms will be used. Note that variables coerced to factors in the model formula won't work as view variables, and vis.gam can not detect that this has happened when setting defaults.
cond	a named list of the values to use for the other predictor terms (not in view). Variables omitted from this list will have the closest observed value to the median for continuous variables, or the most commonly occuring level for factors. Parametric matrix variables have all the entries in each column set to the observed column entry closest to the column median.
n.grid	The number of grid nodes in each direction used for calculating the plotted surface.
too.far	plot grid nodes that are too far from the points defined by the variables given in view can be excluded from the plot. too.far determines what is too far. The grid is scaled into the unit square along with the view variables and then grid nodes more than too.far from the predictor variables are excluded.
col	The colours for the facets of the plot. If this is NA then if se>0 the facets are transparent, otherwise the colour scheme specified in color is used. If col is not NA then it is used as the facet colour.

color	the colour scheme to use for plots when se<=0. One of "topo", "heat", "cm", "terrain", "gray" or "bw". Schemes "gray" and "bw" also modify the colors used when se>0.
contour.col	sets the colour of contours when using plot.type="contour". Default scheme used if NULL.
se	if less than or equal to zero then only the predicted surface is plotted, but if greater than zero, then 3 surfaces are plotted, one at the predicted values minus se standard errors, one at the predicted values and one at the predicted values plus se standard errors.
type	"link" to plot on linear predictor scale and "response" to plot on the response scale.
plot.type	one of "contour" or "persp".
zlim	a two item array giving the lower and upper limits for the z-axis scale. NULL to choose automatically.
nCol	The number of colors to use in color schemes.
...	other options to pass on to persp, image or contour. In particular ticktype="detailed" will add proper axes labelling to the plots.

Details

The x and y limits are determined by the ranges of the terms named in view. If se<=0 then a single (height colour coded, by default) surface is produced, otherwise three (by default see-through) meshes are produced at mean and +/- se standard errors. Parts of the x-y plane too far from data can be excluded by setting too.far

All options to the underlying graphics functions can be reset by passing them as extra arguments ...: such supplied values will always over-ride the default values used by vis.gam.

Value

Simply produces a plot.

WARNINGS

The routine can not detect that a variable has been coerced to factor within a model formula, and will therefore fail if such a variable is used as a view variable. When setting default view variables it can not detect this situation either, which can cause failures if the coerced variables are the first, otherwise suitable, variables encountered.

Author(s)

Simon Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Based on an original idea and design by Mike Lonergan.

See Also

persp and gam.

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
set.seed(0)
n<-200;sig2<-4
x0 <- runif(n, 0, 1);x1 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
x2 <- runif(n, 0, 1)
y<-x0^2+x1*x2 +runif(n,-0.3,0.3)
g<-gam(y~s(x0,x1,x2))
old.par<-par(mfrow=c(2,2))
# display the prediction surface in x0, x1 ....
vis.gam(g,ticktype="detailed",color="heat",theta=-35)
vis.gam(g,se=2,theta=-35) # with twice standard error surfaces
vis.gam(g, view=c("x1","x2"),cond=list(x0=0.75)) # different view
vis.gam(g, view=c("x1","x2"),cond=list(x0=.75),theta=210,phi=40,
        too.far=.07)
# ..... areas where there is no data are not plotted

# contour examples....
vis.gam(g, view=c("x1","x2"),plot.type="contour",color="heat")
vis.gam(g, view=c("x1","x2"),plot.type="contour",color="terrain")
vis.gam(g, view=c("x1","x2"),plot.type="contour",color="topo")
vis.gam(g, view=c("x1","x2"),plot.type="contour",color="cm")


par(old.par)

# Examples with factor and "by" variables

fac<-rep(1:4,20)
x<-runif(80)
y<-fac+2*x^2+rnorm(80)*0.1
fac<-factor(fac)
b<-gam(y~fac+s(x))

vis.gam(b,theta=-35,color="heat") # factor example

z<-rnorm(80)*0.4
y<-as.numeric(fac)+3*x^2*z+rnorm(80)*0.1
b<-gam(y~fac+s(x,by=z))

vis.gam(b,theta=-35,color="heat",cond=list(z=1)) # by variable example

vis.gam(b,view=c("z","x"),theta= 35) # plot against by variable
```

---

ziP *GAM zero-inflated Poisson regression family*

Description

Family for use with gam, implementing regression for zero inflated Poisson data when the complinetart log log of the zero probability is linearly dependent on the log of the Poisson parameter. Use with care, noting that simply having many zero response observations is not an indication of zero inflation: the question is whether you have too many zeroes given the specified model.

Usage

```
ziP(theta = NULL, link = "identity")
```

Arguments

theta	the 2 parameters controlling the slope and intercept of the linear transform of the mean controlling the zero inflation rate. If supplied (and second element is positive) then treated as fixed parameters (θ_1 and $\exp(\theta_2)$), otherwise estimated. If supplied and second element is negative then treated as starting values (with sign of second element reversed).
link	The link function: only the "identity" is currently supported.

Details

The probability of a zero count is given by $1-p$, whereas the probability of count $y > 0$ is given by the truncated Poisson probability function $p\mu^y/((\exp(\mu)-1)y!)$. The linear predictor gives $\log\mu$, while $\eta = \log(-\log(1-p))$ and $\eta = \theta_1 + \exp(\theta_2)\log\mu$. The theta parameters are estimated alongside the smoothing parameters.

Note that the fitted values for this model are the log of the Poisson parameter. Use the predict function with type=="response" to get the predicted expected response.

Value

An object of class extended.family.

WARNINGS

Zero inflated models are often over-used. Having lots of zeroes in the data does not in itself imply zero inflation. Having too many zeroes *given the model mean* may imply zero inflation.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

See Also

ziplss

Examples

```
rzip <- function(gamma,theta= c(-2,.3)) {
## generate zero inflated Poisson random variables, where
## lambda = exp(gamma), eta = theta[1] + exp(theta[2])*gamma
## and 1-p = exp(-exp(eta)).
   y <- gamma; n <- length(y)
   lambda <- exp(gamma)
   eta <- theta[1] + exp(theta[2])*gamma
   p <- 1- exp(-exp(eta))
   ind <- p > runif(n)
   y[!ind] <- 0
   np <- sum(ind)
   ## generate from zero truncated Poisson, given presence...
   y[ind] <- qpois(runif(np,dpois(0,lambda[ind]),1),lambda[ind])
   y
```

```
}

library(mgcv)
## Simulate some beta data...
set.seed(1);n<-400
dat <- gamSim(1,n=n)
dat$y <- rzip(dat$f/4-1)

b <- gam(y~s(x0)+s(x1)+s(x2)+s(x3),family=ziP(),data=dat)
b$outer.info ## check convergence!!
b
plot(b,pages=1)
## plot deviance residuals against expected response
plot(predict(b,type="response"),residuals(b))
```

`ziplss` *Zero inflated Poisson location-scale model family*

Description

The `ziplss` family implements a zero inflated Poisson model in which one linear predictor controls the probability of presence and the other controls the mean given presence. Useable only with `gam`, the linear predictors are specified via a list of formulae. Should be used with care: simply having a large number of zeroes is not an indication of zero inflation.

Usage

```
ziplss(link=list("identity","identity"))
```

Arguments

`link`	two item list specifying the link - currently only identity links are possible, as parameterization is directly in terms of log of Poisson response and logit of probability of presence.

Details

Used with `gam` to fit 2 stage zero inflated Poisson models. `gam` is called with a list containing 2 formulae, the first specifies the response on the left hand side and the structure of the linear predictor for the Poisson parameter on the right hand side. The second is one sided, specifying the linear predictor for the probability of presence on the right hand side.

The fitted values for this family will be a two column matrix. The first column is the log of the Poisson parameter, and the second column is the complimentary log log of probability of presnece.. Predictions using `predict.gam` will also produce 2 column matrices for `type "link"` and `"response"`.

The null deviance computed for this model assumes that a single probability of presence and a single Poisson parameter are estimated.

For data with large areas of covariate space over which the response is zero it may be advisable to use low order penalties to avoid problems. For 1D smooths uses e.g. `s(x,m=1)` and for isotropic smooths use `Duchon.spline`s in place of thin plaste terms with order 1 penalties, e.g `s(x,z,m=c(1,.5))` — such smooths penalize towards constants, thereby avoiding extreme estimates when the data are uninformative.

Value

An object inheriting from class `general.family`.

WARNINGS

Zero inflated models are often over-used. Having lots of zeroes in the data does not in itself imply zero inflation. Having too many zeroes *given the model mean* may imply zero inflation.

Author(s)

Simon N. Wood <simon.wood@r-project.org>

Examples

```
library(mgcv)
## simulate some data...
f0 <- function(x) 2 * sin(pi * x); f1 <- function(x) exp(2 * x)
f2 <- function(x) 0.2 * x^11 * (10 * (1 - x))^6 + 10 *
            (10 * x)^3 * (1 - x)^10
n <- 500;set.seed(5)
x0 <- runif(n); x1 <- runif(n)
x2 <- runif(n); x3 <- runif(n)

## Simulate probability of potential presence...
eta1 <- f0(x0) + f1(x1) - 3
p <- binomial()$linkinv(eta1)
y <- as.numeric(runif(n)<p) ## 1 for presence, 0 for absence

## Simulate y given potentially present (not exactly model fitted!)...
ind <- y>0
eta2 <- f2(x2[ind])/3
y[ind] <- rpois(exp(eta2),exp(eta2))

## Fit ZIP model...
b <- gam(list(y~s(x2)+s(x3),~s(x0)+s(x1)),family=ziplss())
b$outer.info ## check convergence

summary(b)
plot(b,pages=1)
```

Chapter 25

The nlme package

ACF *Autocorrelation Function*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: gls and lme.

Usage

```
ACF(object, maxLag, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any object from which an autocorrelation function can be obtained. Generally an object resulting from a model fit, from which residuals can be extracted.
maxLag	maximum lag for which the autocorrelation should be calculated.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <Bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

ACF.gls, ACF.lme, plot.ACF

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

`ACF.gls` *Autocorrelation Function for gls Residuals*

Description

This method function calculates the empirical autocorrelation function for the residuals from a `gls` fit. If a grouping variable is specified in `form`, the autocorrelation values are calculated using pairs of residuals within the same group; otherwise all possible residual pairs are used. The autocorrelation function is useful for investigating serial correlation models for equally spaced data.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
ACF(object, maxLag, resType, form, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"gls"`, representing a generalized least squares fitted model.
`maxLag`	an optional integer giving the maximum lag for which the autocorrelation should be calculated. Defaults to maximum lag in the residuals.
`resType`	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used. If `"response"`, the "raw" residuals (observed - fitted) are used; else, if `"pearson"`, the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if `"normalized"`, the normalized residuals (standardized residuals pre-multiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to `"pearson"`.
`form`	an optional one sided formula of the form `~ t`, or `~ t | g`, specifying a time covariate `t` and, optionally, a grouping factor `g`. The time covariate must be integer valued. When a grouping factor is present in `form`, the autocorrelations are calculated using residual pairs within the same group. Defaults to `~ 1`, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
`na.action`	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain `NA`s. The default action (`na.fail`) causes `ACF.gls` to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments.

Value

a data frame with columns `lag` and `ACF` representing, respectively, the lag between residuals within a pair and the corresponding empirical autocorrelation. The returned value inherits from class `ACF`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

ACF.lme, plot.ACF

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary)
ACF(fm1, form = ~ 1 | Mare)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 255-257
fm1Dial.gls <- gls(rate ~
  (pressure+I(pressure^2)+I(pressure^3)+I(pressure^4))*QB,
                   Dialyzer)

fm2Dial.gls <- update(fm1Dial.gls,
                 weights = varPower(form = ~ pressure))

ACF(fm2Dial.gls, form = ~ 1 | Subject)
```

ACF.lme *Autocorrelation Function for lme Residuals*

Description

This method function calculates the empirical autocorrelation function for the within-group residuals from an lme fit. The autocorrelation values are calculated using pairs of residuals within the innermost group level. The autocorrelation function is useful for investigating serial correlation models for equally spaced data.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
ACF(object, maxLag, resType, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
maxLag	an optional integer giving the maximum lag for which the autocorrelation should be calculated. Defaults to maximum lag in the within-group residuals.
resType	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used. If "response", the "raw" residuals (observed - fitted) are used; else, if "pearson", the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if "normalized", the normalized residuals (standardized residuals pre-multiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to "pearson".
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments – not used.

Value

a data frame with columns `lag` and `ACF` representing, respectively, the lag between residuals within a pair and the corresponding empirical autocorrelation. The returned value inherits from class `ACF`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`ACF.gls`, `plot.ACF`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time),
           Ovary, random = ~ sin(2*pi*Time) | Mare)
ACF(fm1, maxLag = 11)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p240-241
fm1Over.lme <- lme(follicles  ~ sin(2*pi*Time) +
           cos(2*pi*Time), data=Ovary,
     random=pdDiag(~sin(2*pi*Time)) )
(ACF.fm1Over <- ACF(fm1Over.lme, maxLag=10))
plot(ACF.fm1Over, alpha=0.01)
```

`Alfalfa` *Split-Plot Experiment on Varieties of Alfalfa*

Description

The `Alfalfa` data frame has 72 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Variety a factor with levels `Cossack`, `Ladak`, and `Ranger`

Date a factor with levels `None` `S1` `S20` `O7`

Block a factor with levels `1` `2` `3` `4` `5` `6`

Yield a numeric vector

Details

These data are described in Snedecor and Cochran (1980) as an example of a split-plot design. The treatment structure used in the experiment was a $3x4$ full factorial, with three varieties of alfalfa and four dates of third cutting in 1943. The experimental units were arranged into six blocks, each subdivided into four plots. The varieties of alfalfa (*Cossac*, *Ladak*, and *Ranger*) were assigned randomly to the blocks and the dates of third cutting (*None*, *S1*—September 1, *S20*—September 20, and *O7*—October 7) were randomly assigned to the plots. All four dates were used on each block.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.1)

Snedecor, G. W. and Cochran, W. G. (1980), *Statistical Methods (7th ed)*, Iowa State University Press, Ames, IA

`allCoef` *Extract Coefficients from a Set of Objects*

Description

The extractor function is applied to each object in `...`, with the result being converted to a vector. A `map` attribute is included to indicate which pieces of the returned vector correspond to the original objects in `dots`.

Usage

```
allCoef(..., extract)
```

Arguments

`...`	objects to which `extract` will be applied. Generally these will be model components, such as `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects.
`extract`	an optional extractor function. Defaults to `coef`.

Value

a vector with all elements, generally coefficients, obtained by applying `extract` to the objects in `....`

Author(s)

José' Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`lmeStruct`,`nlmeStruct`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(0.1)
vf1 <- varPower(0.5)
allCoef(cs1, vf1)
```

anova.gls *Compare Likelihoods of Fitted Objects*

Description

When only one fitted model object is present, a data frame with the sums of squares, numerator degrees of freedom, F-values, and P-values for Wald tests for the terms in the model (when Terms and L are NULL), a combination of model terms (when Terms in not NULL), or linear combinations of the model coefficients (when L is not NULL). Otherwise, when multiple fitted objects are being compared, a data frame with the degrees of freedom, the (restricted) log-likelihood, the Akaike Information Criterion (AIC), and the Bayesian Information Criterion (BIC) of each object is returned. If test=TRUE, whenever two consecutive objects have different number of degrees of freedom, a likelihood ratio statistic, with the associated p-value is included in the returned data frame.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
anova(object, ..., test, type, adjustSigma, Terms, L, verbose)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted model object inheriting from class gls, representing a generalized least squares fit.
...	other optional fitted model objects inheriting from classes "gls", "gnls", "lm", "lme", "lmList", "nlme", "nlsList", or "nls".
test	an optional logical value controlling whether likelihood ratio tests should be used to compare the fitted models represented by object and the objects in .... Defaults to TRUE.
type	an optional character string specifying the type of sum of squares to be used in F-tests for the terms in the model. If "sequential", the sequential sum of squares obtained by including the terms in the order they appear in the model is used; else, if "marginal", the marginal sum of squares obtained by deleting a term from the model at a time is used. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to "sequential".
adjustSigma	an optional logical value. If TRUE and the estimation method used to obtain object was maximum likelihood, the residual standard error is multiplied by $\sqrt{n_{obs}/(n_{obs} - n_{par})}$, converting it to a REML-like estimate. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Default is TRUE.
Terms	an optional integer or character vector specifying which terms in the model should be jointly tested to be zero using a Wald F-test. If given as a character vector, its elements must correspond to term names; else, if given as an integer vector, its elements must correspond to the order in which terms are included in the model. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Default is NULL.
L	an optional numeric vector or array specifying linear combinations of the coefficients in the model that should be tested to be zero. If given as an array, its rows define the linear combinations to be tested. If names are assigned to the vector elements (array columns), they must correspond to coefficients names and will

be used to map the linear combination(s) to the coefficients; else, if no names are available, the vector elements (array columns) are assumed in the same order as the coefficients appear in the model. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Default is NULL.

verbose — an optional logical value. If TRUE, the calling sequences for each fitted model object are printed with the rest of the output, being omitted if verbose = FALSE. Defaults to FALSE.

Value

a data frame inheriting from class "anova.lme".

Note

Likelihood comparisons are not meaningful for objects fit using restricted maximum likelihood and with different fixed effects.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

gls, gnls, lme, logLik.gls, AIC, BIC, print.anova.lme

Examples

```
# AR(1) errors within each Mare
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
anova(fm1)
# variance changes with a power of the absolute fitted values?
fm2 <- update(fm1, weights = varPower())
anova(fm1, fm2)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 251-252
fm1Orth.gls <- gls(distance ~ Sex * I(age - 11), Orthodont,
                correlation = corSymm(form = ~ 1 | Subject),
                weights = varIdent(form = ~ 1 | age))
fm2Orth.gls <- update(fm1Orth.gls,
                corr = corCompSymm(form = ~ 1 | Subject))
anova(fm1Orth.gls, fm2Orth.gls)

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 215-215, 255-260
#p. 215
fm1Dial.lme <-
  lme(rate ~(pressure + I(pressure^2) + I(pressure^3) + I(pressure^4))*QB,
      Dialyzer, ~ pressure + I(pressure^2))
# p. 216
fm2Dial.lme <- update(fm1Dial.lme,
```

```
                  weights = varPower(form = ~ pressure))
# p. 255
fm1Dial.gls <- gls(rate ~ (pressure +
     I(pressure^2) + I(pressure^3) + I(pressure^4))*QB,
        Dialyzer)
fm2Dial.gls <- update(fm1Dial.gls,
                 weights = varPower(form = ~ pressure))
anova(fm1Dial.gls, fm2Dial.gls)
fm3Dial.gls <- update(fm2Dial.gls,
                    corr = corAR1(0.771, form = ~ 1 | Subject))
anova(fm2Dial.gls, fm3Dial.gls)
# anova.gls to compare a gls and an lme fit
anova(fm3Dial.gls, fm2Dial.lme, test = FALSE)

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 261-266
fm1Wheat2 <- gls(yield ~ variety - 1, Wheat2)
fm3Wheat2 <- update(fm1Wheat2,
      corr = corRatio(c(12.5, 0.2),
        form = ~ latitude + longitude, nugget = TRUE))
# Test a specific contrast
anova(fm3Wheat2, L = c(-1, 0, 1))
```

`anova.lme` *Compare Likelihoods of Fitted Objects*

Description

When only one fitted model object is present, a data frame with the sums of squares, numerator degrees of freedom, denominator degrees of freedom, F-values, and P-values for Wald tests for the terms in the model (when `Terms` and `L` are `NULL`), a combination of model terms (when `Terms` in not `NULL`), or linear combinations of the model coefficients (when `L` is not `NULL`). Otherwise, when multiple fitted objects are being compared, a data frame with the degrees of freedom, the (restricted) log-likelihood, the Akaike Information Criterion (AIC), and the Bayesian Information Criterion (BIC) of each object is returned. If `test=TRUE`, whenever two consecutive objects have different number of degrees of freedom, a likelihood ratio statistic, with the associated p-value is included in the returned data frame.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
anova(object, ..., test, type, adjustSigma, Terms, L, verbose)
## S3 method for class anova.lme
print(x, verbose, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"lme"`, representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
`...`	other optional fitted model objects inheriting from classes `"gls"`, `"gnls"`, `"lm"`, `"lme"`, `"lmList"`, `"nlme"`, `"nlsList"`, or `"nls"`.

`test` an optional logical value controlling whether likelihood ratio tests should be used to compare the fitted models represented by `object` and the objects in `...`. Defaults to `TRUE`.

`type` an optional character string specifying the type of sum of squares to be used in F-tests for the terms in the model. If `"sequential"`, the sequential sum of squares obtained by including the terms in the order they appear in the model is used; else, if `"marginal"`, the marginal sum of squares obtained by deleting a term from the model at a time is used. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to `"sequential"`.

`adjustSigma` an optional logical value. If `TRUE` and the estimation method used to obtain `object` was maximum likelihood, the residual standard error is multiplied by $\sqrt{n_{obs}/(n_{obs} - n_{par})}$, converting it to a REML-like estimate. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Default is `TRUE`.

`Terms` an optional integer or character vector specifying which terms in the model should be jointly tested to be zero using a Wald F-test. If given as a character vector, its elements must correspond to term names; else, if given as an integer vector, its elements must correspond to the order in which terms are included in the model. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Default is `NULL`.

`L` an optional numeric vector or array specifying linear combinations of the coefficients in the model that should be tested to be zero. If given as an array, its rows define the linear combinations to be tested. If names are assigned to the vector elements (array columns), they must correspond to coefficients names and will be used to map the linear combination(s) to the coefficients; else, if no names are available, the vector elements (array columns) are assumed in the same order as the coefficients appear in the model. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Default is `NULL`.

`x` an object inheriting from class `"anova.lme"`

`verbose` an optional logical value. If `TRUE`, the calling sequences for each fitted model object are printed with the rest of the output, being omitted if `verbose = FALSE`. Defaults to `FALSE`.

Value

a data frame inheriting from class `"anova.lme"`.

Note

Likelihood comparisons are not meaningful for objects fit using restricted maximum likelihood and with different fixed effects.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

gls, gnls, nlme, lme, AIC, BIC, print.anova.lme, logLik.lme,

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
anova(fm1)
fm2 <- update(fm1, random = pdDiag(~age))
anova(fm1, fm2)

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 251-254
fm1Orth.gls <- gls(distance ~ Sex * I(age - 11), Orthodont,
            correlation = corSymm(form = ~ 1 | Subject),
            weights = varIdent(form = ~ 1 | age))
fm2Orth.gls <- update(fm1Orth.gls,
                corr = corCompSymm(form = ~ 1 | Subject))
# anova.gls
anova(fm1Orth.gls, fm2Orth.gls)
fm3Orth.gls <- update(fm2Orth.gls, weights = NULL)
# anova.gls
anova(fm2Orth.gls, fm3Orth.gls)
fm4Orth.gls <- update(fm3Orth.gls,
                 weights = varIdent(form = ~ 1 | Sex))
# anova.gls
anova(fm3Orth.gls, fm4Orth.gls)
# not in book but needed for the following command
fm3Orth.lme <-
    lme(distance~Sex*I(age-11), data = Orthodont,
        random = ~ I(age-11) | Subject,
        weights = varIdent(form = ~ 1 | Sex))
# anova.lme to compare an "lme" object with a "gls" object
anova(fm3Orth.lme, fm4Orth.gls, test = FALSE)

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 222-225
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
fm1BW.lme <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight,
                  random = ~ Time)
fm2BW.lme <- update(fm1BW.lme, weights = varPower())
# Test a specific contrast
anova(fm2BW.lme, L = c("Time:Diet2" = 1, "Time:Diet3" = -1))

fm1Theo.lis <- nlsList(
     conc ~ SSfol(Dose, Time, lKe, lKa, lCl), data=Theoph)
fm1Theo.lis

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 352-365
fm1Theo.lis <- nlsList(
     conc ~ SSfol(Dose, Time, lKe, lKa, lCl), data=Theoph)
fm1Theo.nlme <- nlme(fm1Theo.lis)
fm2Theo.nlme <- update(fm1Theo.nlme,
   random=pdDiag(lKe+lKa+lCl~1) )
fm3Theo.nlme <- update(fm2Theo.nlme,
   random=pdDiag(lKa+lCl~1) )

# anova comparing 3 models
anova(fm1Theo.nlme, fm3Theo.nlme, fm2Theo.nlme)
```

`as.matrix.corStruct` *Matrix of a corStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts the correlation matrix, or list of correlation matrices, associated with `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
as.matrix(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"corStruct"`, representing a correlation structure.
`...`	further arguments passed from other methods.

Value

If the correlation structure includes a grouping factor, the returned value will be a list with components given by the correlation matrices for each group. Otherwise, the returned value will be a matrix representing the correlation structure associated with `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

`corClasses`, `corMatrix`

Examples

```
cst1 <- corAR1(form = ~1|Subject)
cst1 <- Initialize(cst1, data = Orthodont)
as.matrix(cst1)
```

as.matrix.pdMat *Matrix of a pdMat Object*

Description

This method function extracts the positive-definite matrix represented by x.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
as.matrix(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "pdMat", representing a positive-definite matrix.
...	further arguments passed from other methods.

Value

a matrix corresponding to the positive-definite matrix represented by x.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

pdMat, corMatrix

Examples

```
as.matrix(pdSymm(diag(4)))
```

as.matrix.reStruct *Matrices of an reStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts the positive-definite matrices corresponding to the pdMat elements of object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
as.matrix(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
...	further arguments passed from other methods.

Value

a list with components given by the positive-definite matrices corresponding to the elements of object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, reStruct, pdMat

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(pdSymm(diag(3), ~age+Sex, data = Orthodont))
as.matrix(rs1)
```

---

asOneFormula *Combine Formulas of a Set of Objects*

Description

The names of all variables used in the formulas extracted from the objects defined in ... are converted into a single linear formula, with the variables names separated by +.

Usage

```
asOneFormula(..., omit)
```

Arguments

...	objects, or lists of objects, from which a formula can be extracted.
omit	an optional character vector with the names of variables to be omitted from the returned formula. Defaults to c(".", "pi").

Value

a one-sided linear formula with all variables named in the formulas extracted from the objects in ..., except the ones listed in omit.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

formula, all.vars

Examples

```
asOneFormula(y ~ x + z | g, list(~ w, ~ t * sin(2 * pi)))
```

Assay *Bioassay on Cell Culture Plate*

Description

The Assay data frame has 60 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Block an ordered factor with levels 2 < 1 identifying the block where the wells are measured.

sample a factor with levels a to f identifying the sample corresponding to the well.

dilut a factor with levels 1 to 5 indicating the dilution applied to the well

logDens a numeric vector of the log-optical density

Details

These data, courtesy of Rich Wolfe and David Lansky from Searle, Inc., come from a bioassay run on a 96-well cell culture plate. The assay is performed using a split-block design. The 8 rows on the plate are labeled A–H from top to bottom and the 12 columns on the plate are labeled 1–12 from left to right. Only the central 60 wells of the plate are used for the bioassay (the intersection of rows B–G and columns 2–11). There are two blocks in the design: Block 1 contains columns 2–6 and Block 2 contains columns 7–11. Within each block, six samples are assigned randomly to rows and five (serial) dilutions are assigned randomly to columns. The response variable is the logarithm of the optical density. The cells are treated with a compound that they metabolize to produce the stain. Only live cells can make the stain, so the optical density is a measure of the number of cells that are alive and healthy.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.2)

asTable *Convert groupedData to a matrix*

Description

Create a tabular representation of the response in a balanced groupedData object.

Usage

```
asTable(object)
```

Arguments

object	A balanced groupedData object

Details

A balanced groupedData object can be represented as a matrix or table of response values corresponding to the values of a primary covariate for each level of a grouping factor. This function creates such a matrix representation of the data in object.

Value

A matrix. The data in the matrix are the values of the response. The columns correspond to the distinct values of the primary covariate and are labelled as such. The rows correspond to the distinct levels of the grouping factor and are labelled as such.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

groupedData, isBalanced, balancedGrouped

Examples

```
asTable(Orthodont)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 109
ergoStool.mat <- asTable(ergoStool)
```

augPred *Augmented Predictions*

Description

Predicted values are obtained at the specified values of primary. If object has a grouping structure (i.e. getGroups(object) is not NULL), predicted values are obtained for each group. If level has more than one element, predictions are obtained for each level of the max(level) grouping factor. If other covariates besides primary are used in the prediction model, their average (numeric covariates) or most frequent value (categorical covariates) are used to obtain the predicted values. The original observations are also included in the returned object.

Usage

```
augPred(object, primary, minimum, maximum, length.out, ...)

## S3 method for class lme
augPred(object, primary = NULL,
        minimum = min(primary), maximum = max(primary),
        length.out = 51, level = Q, ...)
```

Arguments

object	a fitted model object from which predictions can be extracted, using a predict method.
primary	an optional one-sided formula specifying the primary covariate to be used to generate the augmented predictions. By default, if a covariate can be extracted from the data used to generate object (using getCovariate), it will be used as primary.
minimum	an optional lower limit for the primary covariate. Defaults to min(primary).
maximum	an optional upper limit for the primary covariate. Defaults to max(primary).
length.out	an optional integer with the number of primary covariate values at which to evaluate the predictions. Defaults to 51.
level	an optional integer vector specifying the desired prediction levels. Levels increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level 0 representing the population (fixed effects) predictions. Defaults to the innermost level.
...	some methods for the generic may require additional arguments.

Value

a data frame with four columns representing, respectively, the values of the primary covariate, the groups (if object does not have a grouping structure, all elements will be 1), the predicted or observed values, and the type of value in the third column: original for the observed values and predicted (single or no grouping factor) or predict.groupVar (multiple levels of grouping), with groupVar replaced by the actual grouping variable name (fixed is used for population predictions). The returned object inherits from class "augPred".

Note

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: gls, lme, and lmList.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

plot.augPred, getGroups, predict

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(Orthodont, random = ~1)
augPred(fm1, length.out = 2, level = c(0,1))
```

---

balancedGrouped *Create a groupedData object from a matrix*

Description

Create a groupedData object from a data matrix. This function can be used only with balanced data. The opposite conversion, from a groupedData object to a matrix, is done with asTable.

Usage

```
balancedGrouped(form, data, labels=NULL, units=NULL)
```

Arguments

form	A formula of the form y ~ x | g giving the name of the response, the primary covariate, and the grouping factor.
data	A matrix or data frame containing the values of the response grouped according to the levels of the grouping factor (rows) and the distinct levels of the primary covariate (columns). The dimnames of the matrix are used to construct the levels of the grouping factor and the primary covariate.
labels	an optional list of character strings giving labels for the response and the primary covariate. The label for the primary covariate is named x and that for the response is named y. Either label can be omitted.
units	an optional list of character strings giving the units for the response and the primary covariate. The units string for the primary covariate is named x and that for the response is named y. Either units string can be omitted.

Value

A balanced groupedData object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

groupedData, isBalanced, asTable

Examples

```
OrthoMat <- asTable( Orthodont )
Orth2 <- balancedGrouped(distance ~ age | Subject, data = OrthoMat,
    labels = list(x = "Age",
                  y = "Distance from pituitary to pterygomaxillary fissure"),
    units = list(x = "(yr)", y = "(mm)"))
Orth2[ 1:10, ]        ## check the first few entries

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 109
ergoStool.mat <- asTable(ergoStool)
balancedGrouped(effort~Type|Subject,
                data=ergoStool.mat)
```

---

bdf *Language scores*

Description

The bdf data frame has 2287 rows and 25 columns of language scores from grade 8 pupils in elementary schools in The Netherlands.

Usage

```
data(bdf)
```

Format

schoolNR a factor denoting the school.

pupilNR a factor denoting the pupil.

IQ.verb a numeric vector of verbal IQ scores

IQ.perf a numeric vector of IQ scores.

sex Sex of the student.

Minority a factor indicating if the student is a member of a minority group.

repeatgr an ordered factor indicating if one or more grades have been repeated.

aritPRET a numeric vector

classNR a numeric vector

aritPOST a numeric vector

langPRET a numeric vector

langPOST a numeric vector

ses a numeric vector of socioeconomic status indicators.

denomina a factor indicating of the school is a public school, a Protestant private school, a Catholic private school, or a non-denominational private school.

schoolSES a numeric vector

satiprin a numeric vector

natitest a factor with levels `0` and `1`

meetings a numeric vector

currmeet a numeric vector

mixedgra a factor indicating if the class is a mixed-grade class.

percmino a numeric vector

aritdiff a numeric vector

homework a numeric vector

classsiz a numeric vector

groupsiz a numeric vector

Source

'`http://stat.gamma.rug.nl/snijders/multilevel.htm`', the first edition of http://www.stats.ox.ac.uk/~snijders/mlbook.htm.

References

Snijders, Tom and Bosker, Roel (1999), *Multilevel Analysis: An Introduction to Basic and Advanced Multilevel Modeling*, Sage.

Examples

```
summary(bdf)
```

`BodyWeight` *Rat weight over time for different diets*

Description

The `BodyWeight` data frame has 176 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

weight a numeric vector giving the body weight of the rat (grams).

Time a numeric vector giving the time at which the measurement is made (days).

Rat an ordered factor with levels `2` < `3` < `4` < `1` < `8` < `5` < `6` < `7` < `11` < `9` < `10` < `12` < `13` < `15` < `14` < `16` identifying the rat whose weight is measured.

Diet a factor with levels `1` to `3` indicating the diet that the rat receives.

Details

Hand and Crowder (1996) describe data on the body weights of rats measured over 64 days. These data also appear in Table 2.4 of Crowder and Hand (1990). The body weights of the rats (in grams) are measured on day 1 and every seven days thereafter until day 64, with an extra measurement on day 44. The experiment started several weeks before "day 1." There are three groups of rats, each on a different diet.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.3)

Crowder, M. and Hand, D. (1990), *Analysis of Repeated Measures*, Chapman and Hall, London.

Hand, D. and Crowder, M. (1996), *Practical Longitudinal Data Analysis*, Chapman and Hall, London.

Cefamandole *Pharmacokinetics of Cefamandole*

Description

The `Cefamandole` data frame has 84 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Subject a factor giving the subject from which the sample was drawn.

Time a numeric vector giving the time at which the sample was drawn (minutes post-injection).

conc a numeric vector giving the observed plasma concentration of cefamandole (mcg/ml).

Details

Davidian and Giltinan (1995, 1.1, p. 2) describe data obtained during a pilot study to investigate the pharmacokinetics of the drug cefamandole. Plasma concentrations of the drug were measured on six healthy volunteers at 14 time points following an intraveneous dose of 15 mg/kg body weight of cefamandole.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.4)

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995), *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman and Hall, London.

Examples

```
plot(Cefamandole)
fm1 <- nlsList(SSbiexp, data = Cefamandole)
summary(fm1)
```

Coef *Assign Values to Coefficients*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include all "pdMat", "corStruct" and "varFunc" classes, "reStruct", and "modelStruct".

Usage

```
coef(object, ...) <-  value
```

Arguments

object	any object representing a fitted model, or, by default, any object with a coef component.
...	some methods for this generic function may require additional arguments.
value	a value to be assigned to the coefficients associated with object.

Value

will depend on the method function; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

coef

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

coef.corStruct *Coefficients of a corStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts the coefficients associated with the correlation structure represented by object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
coef(object, unconstrained, ...)
## S3 replacement method for class corStruct
coef(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "corStruct", representing a correlation structure.
unconstrained	a logical value. If TRUE the coefficients are returned in unconstrained form (the same used in the optimization algorithm). If FALSE the coefficients are returned in "natural", possibly constrained, form. Defaults to TRUE.
value	a vector with the replacement values for the coefficients associated with object. It must be a vector with the same length of coef{object} and must be given in unconstrained form.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the coefficients corresponding to object.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the values of the coefficients of object to value. Object must be initialized (using Initialize) before new values can be assigned to its coefficients.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

See Also

corAR1, corARMA, corCAR1, corCompSymm, corExp, corGaus, corLin, corRatio, corSpatial, corSpher, corSymm,Initialize

Examples

```
cst1 <- corARMA(p = 1, q = 1)
coef(cst1)
```

---

coef.gnls *Extract gnls Coefficients*

Description

The estimated coefficients for the nonlinear model represented by object are extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gnls
coef(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "gnls", representing a generalized nonlinear least squares fitted model.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the estimated coefficients for the nonlinear model represented by object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gnls

Examples

```
fm1 <- gnls(weight ~ SSlogis(Time, Asym, xmid, scal), Soybean,
            weights = varPower())
coef(fm1)
```

---

coef.lme *Extract lme Coefficients*

Description

The estimated coefficients at level i are obtained by adding together the fixed effects estimates and the corresponding random effects estimates at grouping levels less or equal to i. The resulting estimates are returned as a data frame, with rows corresponding to groups and columns to coefficients. Optionally, the returned data frame may be augmented with covariates summarized over groups.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
coef(object, augFrame, level, data, which, FUN,
       omitGroupingFactor, subset, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
augFrame	an optional logical value. If TRUE, the returned data frame is augmented with variables defined in data; else, if FALSE, only the coefficients are returned. Defaults to FALSE.
level	an optional positive integer giving the level of grouping to be used in extracting the coefficients from an object with multiple nested grouping levels. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.

data	an optional data frame with the variables to be used for augmenting the returned data frame when augFrame = TRUE. Defaults to the data frame used to fit object.
which	an optional positive integer or character vector specifying which columns of data should be used in the augmentation of the returned data frame. Defaults to all columns in data.
FUN	an optional summary function or a list of summary functions to be applied to group-varying variables, when collapsing data by groups. Group-invariant variables are always summarized by the unique value that they assume within that group. If FUN is a single function it will be applied to each non-invariant variable by group to produce the summary for that variable. If FUN is a list of functions, the names in the list should designate classes of variables in the frame such as ordered, factor, or numeric. The indicated function will be applied to any group-varying variables of that class. The default functions to be used are mean for numeric factors, and Mode for both factor and ordered. The Mode function, defined internally in gsummary, returns the modal or most popular value of the variable. It is different from the mode function that returns the S-language mode of the variable.
omitGroupingFactor	an optional logical value. When TRUE the grouping factor itself will be omitted from the group-wise summary of data but the levels of the grouping factor will continue to be used as the row names for the returned data frame. Defaults to FALSE.
subset	an optional expression specifying a subset
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame inheriting from class "coef.lme" with the estimated coefficients at level level and, optionally, other covariates summarized over groups. The returned object also inherits from classes "ranef.lme" and "data.frame".

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York, esp. pp. 455-457.

See Also

lme, ranef.lme, plot.ranef.lme, gsummary

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
coef(fm1)
coef(fm1, augFrame = TRUE)
```

`coef.lmList` *Extract lmList Coefficients*

Description

The coefficients of each `lm` object in the `object` list are extracted and organized into a data frame, with rows corresponding to the `lm` components and columns corresponding to the coefficients. Optionally, the returned data frame may be augmented with covariates summarized over the groups associated with the `lm` components.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
coef(object, augFrame, data, which, FUN,
   omitGroupingFactor, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"lmList"`, representing a list of `lm` objects with a common model.
`augFrame`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE`, the returned data frame is augmented with variables defined in the data frame used to produce `object`; else, if `FALSE`, only the coefficients are returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`data`	an optional data frame with the variables to be used for augmenting the returned data frame when `augFrame = TRUE`. Defaults to the data frame used to fit `object`.
`which`	an optional positive integer or character vector specifying which columns of the data frame used to produce `object` should be used in the augmentation of the returned data frame. Defaults to all variables in the data.
`FUN`	an optional summary function or a list of summary functions to be applied to group-varying variables, when collapsing the data by groups. Group-invariant variables are always summarized by the unique value that they assume within that group. If `FUN` is a single function it will be applied to each non-invariant variable by group to produce the summary for that variable. If `FUN` is a list of functions, the names in the list should designate classes of variables in the frame such as `ordered`, `factor`, or `numeric`. The indicated function will be applied to any group-varying variables of that class. The default functions to be used are `mean` for numeric factors, and `Mode` for both `factor` and `ordered`. The `Mode` function, defined internally in `gsummary`, returns the modal or most popular value of the variable. It is different from the `mode` function that returns the S-language mode of the variable.
`omitGroupingFactor`	an optional logical value. When `TRUE` the grouping factor itself will be omitted from the group-wise summary of `data` but the levels of the grouping factor will continue to be used as the row names for the returned data frame. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame inheriting from class "coef.lmList" with the estimated coefficients for each "lm" component of object and, optionally, other covariates summarized over the groups corresponding to the "lm" components. The returned object also inherits from classes "ranef.lmList" and "data.frame".

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York, esp. pp. 457-458.

See Also

lmList, fixed.effects.lmList, ranef.lmList, plot.ranef.lmList, gsummary

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age|Subject, data = Orthodont)
coef(fm1)
coef(fm1, augFrame = TRUE)
```

---

coef.modelStruct *Extract modelStruct Object Coefficients*

Description

This method function extracts the coefficients associated with each component of the modelStruct list.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class modelStruct
coef(object, unconstrained, ...)
## S3 replacement method for class modelStruct
coef(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "modelStruct", representing a list of model components, such as "corStruct" and "varFunc" objects.
unconstrained	a logical value. If TRUE the coefficients are returned in unconstrained form (the same used in the optimization algorithm). If FALSE the coefficients are returned in "natural", possibly constrained, form. Defaults to TRUE.
value	a vector with the replacement values for the coefficients associated with object. It must be a vector with the same length of coef{object} and must be given in unconstrained form.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with all coefficients corresponding to the components of `object`.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the values of the coefficients of `object` to `value`. `Object` must be initialized (using `Initialize`) before new values can be assigned to its coefficients.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`Initialize`

Examples

```
lms1 <- lmeStruct(reStruct = reStruct(pdDiag(diag(2), ~age)),
   corStruct = corAR1(0.3))
coef(lms1)
```

---

coef.pdMat *pdMat Object Coefficients*

Description

This method function extracts the coefficients associated with the positive-definite matrix represented by `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
coef(object, unconstrained, ...)
## S3 replacement method for class pdMat
coef(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"pdMat"`, representing a positive-definite matrix.
`unconstrained`	a logical value. If `TRUE` the coefficients are returned in unconstrained form (the same used in the optimization algorithm). If `FALSE` the upper triangular elements of the positive-definite matrix represented by `object` are returned. Defaults to `TRUE`.
`value`	a vector with the replacement values for the coefficients associated with `object`. It must be a vector with the same length of `coef{object}` and must be given in unconstrained form.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the coefficients corresponding to `object`.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the values of the coefficients of `object` to `value`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

References

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289-296.

See Also

`pdMat`

Examples

```
coef(pdSymm(diag(3)))
```

`coef.reStruct` *reStruct Object Coefficients*

Description

This method function extracts the coefficients associated with the positive-definite matrix represented by `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
coef(object, unconstrained, ...)
## S3 replacement method for class reStruct
coef(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"reStruct"`, representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of `pdMat` objects.
`unconstrained`	a logical value. If `TRUE` the coefficients are returned in unconstrained form (the same used in the optimization algorithm). If `FALSE` the coefficients are returned in "natural", possibly constrained, form. Defaults to `TRUE`.
`value`	a vector with the replacement values for the coefficients associated with `object`. It must be a vector with the same length of `coef(object)` and must be given in unconstrained form.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the coefficients corresponding to `object`.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the values of the coefficients of `object` to `value`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`coef.pdMat`, `reStruct`, `pdMat`

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(A = pdSymm(diag(1:3), form = ~Score),
  B = pdDiag(2 * diag(4), form = ~Educ)))
coef(rs1)
```

---

coef.varFunc *varFunc Object Coefficients*

Description

This method function extracts the coefficients associated with the variance function structure represented by `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
coef(object, unconstrained, allCoef, ...)
## S3 replacement method for class varIdent
coef(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"varFunc"` representing a variance function structure.
`unconstrained`	a logical value. If `TRUE` the coefficients are returned in unconstrained form (the same used in the optimization algorithm). If `FALSE` the coefficients are returned in "natural", generally constrained form. Defaults to `TRUE`.
`allCoef`	a logical value. If `FALSE` only the coefficients which may vary during the optimization are returned. If `TRUE` all coefficients are returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`value`	a vector with the replacement values for the coefficients associated with `object`. It must be have the same length of `coef{object}` and must be given in unconstrained form. `Object` must be initialized before new values can be assigned to its coefficients.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the coefficients corresponding to `object`.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the values of the coefficients of `object` to `value`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`varFunc`

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(1)
coef(vf1)

coef(vf1) <- 2
```

---

collapse *Collapse According to Groups*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Currently, only a `groupedData` method is available.

Usage

```
collapse(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object to be collapsed, usually a data frame.
`...`	some methods for the generic may require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`collapse.groupedData`

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

`collapse.groupedData` *Collapse a groupedData Object*

Description

If `object` has a single grouping factor, it is returned unchanged. Else, it is summarized by the values of the `displayLevel` grouping factor (or the combination of its values and the values of the covariate indicated in `preserve`, if any is present). The collapsed data is used to produce a new `groupedData` object, with grouping factor given by the `displayLevel` factor.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class groupedData
collapse(object, collapseLevel, displayLevel,
       outer, inner, preserve, FUN, subset, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `groupedData`, generally with multiple grouping factors.
`collapseLevel`	an optional positive integer or character string indicating the grouping level to use when collapsing the data. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping. Default is the highest or innermost level of grouping.
`displayLevel`	an optional positive integer or character string indicating the grouping level to use as the grouping factor for the collapsed data. Default is `collapseLevel`.
`outer`	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating covariates that are outer to the `displayLevel` grouping factor. If equal to `TRUE`, the `displayLevel` element `attr(object, "outer")` is used to indicate the outer covariates. An outer covariate is invariant within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Ordering of the groups is done in such a way as to preserve adjacency of groups with the same value of the outer variables. Defaults to `NULL`, meaning that no outer covariates are to be used.
`inner`	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating a covariate that is inner to the `displayLevel` grouping factor. If equal to `TRUE`, `attr(object, "outer")` is used to indicate the inner covariate. An inner covariate can change within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Defaults to `NULL`, meaning that no inner covariate is present.
`preserve`	an optional one-sided formula indicating a covariate whose levels should be preserved when collapsing the data according to the `collapseLevel` grouping factor. The collapsing factor is obtained by pasting together the levels of the `collapseLevel` grouping factor and the values of the covariate to be preserved. Default is `NULL`, meaning that no covariates need to be preserved.
`FUN`	an optional summary function or a list of summary functions to be used for collapsing the data. The function or functions are applied only to variables in `object` that vary within the groups defined by `collapseLevel`. Invariant variables are always summarized by group using the unique value that they assume

within that group. If FUN is a single function it will be applied to each non-invariant variable by group to produce the summary for that variable. If FUN is a list of functions, the names in the list should designate classes of variables in the data such as ordered, factor, or numeric. The indicated function will be applied to any non-invariant variables of that class. The default functions to be used are mean for numeric factors, and Mode for both factor and ordered. The Mode function, defined internally in gsummary, returns the modal or most popular value of the variable. It is different from the mode function that returns the S-language mode of the variable.

subset — an optional named list. Names can be either positive integers representing grouping levels, or names of grouping factors. Each element in the list is a vector indicating the levels of the corresponding grouping factor to be preserved in the collapsed data. Default is NULL, meaning that all levels are used.

... — some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a groupedData object with a single grouping factor given by the displayLevel grouping factor, resulting from collapsing object over the levels of the collapseLevel grouping factor.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

groupedData, plot.nmGroupedData

Examples

```
# collapsing by Dog
collapse(Pixel, collapse = 1)  # same as collapse(Pixel, collapse = "Dog")
```

---

compareFits *Compare Fitted Objects*

Description

The columns in object1 and object2 are put together in matrices which allow direct comparison of the individual elements for each object. Missing columns in either object are replaced by NAs.

Usage

```
compareFits(object1, object2, which)
```

Arguments

object1,object2	data frames, or matrices, with the same row names, but possibly different column names. These will usually correspond to coefficients from fitted objects with a grouping structure (e.g. lme and lmList objects).
which	an optional integer or character vector indicating which columns in object1 and object2 are to be used in the returned object. Defaults to all columns.

Value

a three-dimensional array, with the third dimension given by the number of unique column names in either object1 or object2. To each column name there corresponds a matrix with as many rows as the rows in object1 and two columns, corresponding to object1 and object2. The returned object inherits from class compareFits.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

plot.compareFits, pairs.compareFits, comparePred, coef, random.effects

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(Orthodont)
fm2 <- lme(fm1)
compareFits(coef(fm1), coef(fm2))
```

---

comparePred *Compare Predictions*

Description

Predicted values are obtained at the specified values of primary for each object. If either object1 or object2 have a grouping structure (i.e. getGroups(object) is not NULL), predicted values are obtained for each group. When both objects determine groups, the group levels must be the same. If other covariates besides primary are used in the prediction model, their group-wise averages (numeric covariates) or most frequent values (categorical covariates) are used to obtain the predicted values. The original observations are also included in the returned object.

Usage

```
comparePred(object1, object2, primary, minimum, maximum,
    length.out, level, ...)
```

Arguments

object1,object2	fitted model objects, from which predictions can be extracted using the predict method.
primary	an optional one-sided formula specifying the primary covariate to be used to generate the augmented predictions. By default, if a covariate can be extracted from the data used to generate the objects (using getCovariate), it will be used as primary.
minimum	an optional lower limit for the primary covariate. Defaults to min(primary), after primary is evaluated in the data used in fitting object1.
maximum	an optional upper limit for the primary covariate. Defaults to max(primary), after primary is evaluated in the data used in fitting object1.
length.out	an optional integer with the number of primary covariate values at which to evaluate the predictions. Defaults to 51.
level	an optional integer specifying the desired prediction level. Levels increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level 0 representing the population (fixed effects) predictions. Only one level can be specified. Defaults to the innermost level.
...	some methods for the generic may require additional arguments.

Value

a data frame with four columns representing, respectively, the values of the primary covariate, the groups (if object does not have a grouping structure, all elements will be 1), the predicted or observed values, and the type of value in the third column: the objects' names are used to classify the predicted values and original is used for the observed values. The returned object inherits from classes comparePred and augPred.

Note

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: gls, lme, and lmList.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

augPred, getGroups

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age * Sex, data = Orthodont, random = ~ age)
fm2 <- update(fm1, distance ~ age)
comparePred(fm1, fm2, length.out = 2)
```

corAR1 *AR(1) Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corAR1 class, representing an autocorrelation structure of order 1. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corAR1(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	the value of the lag 1 autocorrelation, which must be between -1 and 1. Defaults to 0 (no autocorrelation).
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ t, or ~ t | g, specifying a time covariate t and, optionally, a grouping factor g. A covariate for this correlation structure must be integer valued. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corAR1, representing an autocorrelation structure of order 1.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 235, 397.

See Also

ACF.lme, corARMA, corClasses, Dim.corSpatial, Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct

Examples

```
## covariate is observation order and grouping factor is Mare
cs1 <- corAR1(0.2, form = ~ 1 | Mare)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 236
cs1AR1 <- corAR1(0.8, form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs1AR1. <- Initialize(cs1AR1, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1AR1.)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 240
fm1Ovar.lme <- lme(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time),
                   data = Ovary, random = pdDiag(~sin(2*pi*Time)))
fm2Ovar.lme <- update(fm1Ovar.lme, correlation = corAR1())

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 255-258:  use in gls
fm1Dial.gls <-
  gls(rate ~(pressure + I(pressure^2) + I(pressure^3) + I(pressure^4))*QB,
      Dialyzer)
fm2Dial.gls <- update(fm1Dial.gls,
                 weights = varPower(form = ~ pressure))
fm3Dial.gls <- update(fm2Dial.gls,
                    corr = corAR1(0.771, form = ~ 1 | Subject))

# Pinheiro and Bates use in nlme:
# from p. 240 needed on p. 396
fm1Ovar.lme <- lme(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time),
                   data = Ovary, random = pdDiag(~sin(2*pi*Time)))
fm5Ovar.lme <- update(fm1Ovar.lme,
                corr = corARMA(p = 1, q = 1))
# p. 396
fm1Ovar.nlme <- nlme(follicles~
     A+B*sin(2*pi*w*Time)+C*cos(2*pi*w*Time),
   data=Ovary, fixed=A+B+C+w~1,
   random=pdDiag(A+B+w~1),
   start=c(fixef(fm5Ovar.lme), 1) )
# p. 397
fm2Ovar.nlme <- update(fm1Ovar.nlme,
         corr=corAR1(0.311) )
```

---

corARMA *ARMA(p,q) Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corARMA class, representing an autocorrelation-moving average correlation structure of order (p, q). Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corARMA(value, form, p, q, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	a vector with the values of the autoregressive and moving average parameters, which must have length p + q and all elements between -1 and 1. Defaults to a vector of zeros, corresponding to uncorrelated observations.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ t, or ~ t | g, specifying a time covariate t and, optionally, a grouping factor g. A covariate for this correlation structure must be integer valued. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
p, q	non-negative integers specifying respectively the autoregressive order and the moving average order of the ARMA structure. Both default to 0.
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corARMA, representing an autocorrelation-moving average correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 236, 397.

See Also

corAR1, corClasses Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct

Examples

```
## ARMA(1,2) structure, with observation order as a covariate and
## Mare as grouping factor
cs1 <- corARMA(c(0.2, 0.3, -0.1), form = ~ 1 | Mare, p = 1, q = 2)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 237
cs1ARMA <- corARMA(0.4, form = ~ 1 | Subject, q = 1)
cs1ARMA <- Initialize(cs1ARMA, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1ARMA)

cs2ARMA <- corARMA(c(0.8, 0.4), form = ~ 1 | Subject, p=1, q=1)
cs2ARMA <- Initialize(cs2ARMA, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs2ARMA)

# Pinheiro and Bates use in nlme:
# from p. 240 needed on p. 396
```

```
fm1Ovar.lme <- lme(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time),
                   data = Ovary, random = pdDiag(~sin(2*pi*Time)))
fm5Ovar.lme <- update(fm1Ovar.lme,
                corr = corARMA(p = 1, q = 1))
# p. 396
fm1Ovar.nlme <- nlme(follicles~
     A+B*sin(2*pi*w*Time)+C*cos(2*pi*w*Time),
   data=Ovary, fixed=A+B+C+w~1,
   random=pdDiag(A+B+w~1),
   start=c(fixef(fm5Ovar.lme), 1) )
# p. 397
fm3Ovar.nlme <- update(fm1Ovar.nlme,
         corr=corARMA(p=0, q=2) )
```

---

corCAR1 *Continuous AR(1) Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corCAR1 class, representing an autocorrelation structure of order 1, with a continuous time covariate. Objects created using this constructor must be later initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corCAR1(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	the correlation between two observations one unit of time apart. Must be between 0 and 1. Defaults to 0.2.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ t, or ~ t | g, specifying a time covariate t and, optionally, a grouping factor g. Covariates for this correlation structure need not be integer valued. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corCAR1, representing an autocorrelation structure of order 1, with a continuous time covariate.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Jones, R.H. (1993) "Longitudinal Data with Serial Correlation: A State-space Approach", Chapman and Hall.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 236, 243.

See Also

corClasses, Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct

Examples

```
## covariate is Time and grouping factor is Mare
cs1 <- corCAR1(0.2, form = ~ Time | Mare)

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 240, 243
fm1Ovar.lme <- lme(follicles ~
           sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time),
   data = Ovary, random = pdDiag(~sin(2*pi*Time)))
fm4Ovar.lme <- update(fm1Ovar.lme,
          correlation = corCAR1(form = ~Time))
```

---

corClasses *Correlation Structure Classes*

Description

Standard classes of correlation structures (corStruct) available in the nlme package.

Value

Available standard classes:

corAR1	autoregressive process of order 1.
corARMA	autoregressive moving average process, with arbitrary orders for the autoregressive and moving average components.
corCAR1	continuous autoregressive process (AR(1) process for a continuous time covariate).
corCompSymm	compound symmetry structure corresponding to a constant correlation.
corExp	exponential spatial correlation.
corGaus	Gaussian spatial correlation.
corLin	linear spatial correlation.
corRatio	Rational quadratics spatial correlation.
corSpher	spherical spatial correlation.
corSymm	general correlation matrix, with no additional structure.

Note

Users may define their own corStruct classes by specifying a constructor function and, at a minimum, methods for the functions corMatrix and coef. For examples of these functions, see the methods for classes corSymm and corAR1.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

corAR1, corARMA, corCAR1, corCompSymm, corExp, corGaus, corLin, corRatio, corSpher, corSymm, summary.corStruct

---

corCompSymm *Compound Symmetry Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corCompSymm class, representing a compound symmetry structure corresponding to uniform correlation. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corCompSymm(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	the correlation between any two correlated observations. Defaults to 0.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ t, or ~ t | g, specifying a time covariate t and, optionally, a grouping factor g. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corCompSymm, representing a compound symmetry correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Milliken, G. A. and Johnson, D. E. (1992) "Analysis of Messy Data, Volume I: Designed Experiments", Van Nostrand Reinhold.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 233-234.

See Also

corClasses, Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct

Examples

```
## covariate is observation order and grouping factor is Subject
cs1 <- corCompSymm(0.5, form = ~ 1 | Subject)

# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 222-225
fm1BW.lme <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight,
                  random = ~ Time)
# p. 223
fm2BW.lme <- update(fm1BW.lme, weights = varPower())
# p. 225
cs1CompSymm <- corCompSymm(value = 0.3, form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs2CompSymm <- corCompSymm(value = 0.3, form = ~ age | Subject)
cs1CompSymm <- Initialize(cs1CompSymm, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1CompSymm)
```

---

corExp *Exponential Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the "corExp" class, representing an exponential spatial correlation structure. Letting d denote the range and n denote the nugget effect, the correlation between two observations a distance r apart is $\exp(-r/d)$ when no nugget effect is present and $(1-n)\exp(-r/d)$ when a nugget effect is assumed. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corExp(value, form, nugget, metric, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values in constrained form. If nugget is FALSE, value can have only one element, corresponding to the "range" of the exponential correlation structure, which must be greater than zero. If nugget is TRUE, meaning that a nugget effect is present, value can contain one or two elements, the first being the "range" and the second the "nugget effect" (one minus the correlation between two observations taken arbitrarily close together); the first must be greater than zero and the second must be between zero and one.

Defaults to numeric(0), which results in a range of 90% of the minimum distance and a nugget effect of 0.1 being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized.

form — a one sided formula of the form ~ S1+...+Sp, or ~ S1+...+Sp | g, specifying spatial covariates S1 through Sp and, optionally, a grouping factor g. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.

nugget — an optional logical value indicating whether a nugget effect is present. Defaults to FALSE.

metric — an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".

fixed — an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class "corExp", also inheriting from class "corSpatial", representing an exponential spatial correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

Littel, Milliken, Stroup, and Wolfinger (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. p. 238.

See Also

corClasses, Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct, dist

Examples

```
sp1 <- corExp(form = ~ x + y + z)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 238
spatDat <- data.frame(x = (0:4)/4, y = (0:4)/4)

cs1Exp <- corExp(1, form = ~ x + y)
cs1Exp <- Initialize(cs1Exp, spatDat)
```

```
corMatrix(cs1Exp)

cs2Exp <- corExp(1, form = ~ x + y, metric = "man")
cs2Exp <- Initialize(cs2Exp, spatDat)
corMatrix(cs2Exp)

cs3Exp <- corExp(c(1, 0.2), form = ~ x + y,
                 nugget = TRUE)
cs3Exp <- Initialize(cs3Exp, spatDat)
corMatrix(cs3Exp)

# example lme(..., corExp ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 222-247
# p. 222
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
fm1BW.lme <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight,
                   random = ~ Time)
# p. 223
fm2BW.lme <- update(fm1BW.lme, weights = varPower())
# p. 246
fm3BW.lme <- update(fm2BW.lme,
           correlation = corExp(form = ~ Time))
# p. 247
fm4BW.lme <-
      update(fm3BW.lme, correlation = corExp(form =  ~ Time,
                         nugget = TRUE))
anova(fm3BW.lme, fm4BW.lme)
```

`corFactor` *Factor of a Correlation Matrix*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include all `corStruct` classes.

Usage

```
corFactor(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object from which a correlation matrix can be extracted.
`...`	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

corFactor.corStruct, recalc.corStruct

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

---

corFactor.corStruct *Factor of a corStruct Object Matrix*

Description

This method function extracts a transpose inverse square-root factor, or a series of transpose inverse square-root factors, of the correlation matrix, or list of correlation matrices, represented by `object`. Letting Σ denote a correlation matrix, a square-root factor of Σ is any square matrix L such that $\Sigma = L'L$. This method extracts L^{-t}.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
corFactor(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "corStruct" representing a correlation structure, which must have been initialized (using `Initialize`).
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

If the correlation structure does not include a grouping factor, the returned value will be a vector with a transpose inverse square-root factor of the correlation matrix associated with `object` stacked column-wise. If the correlation structure includes a grouping factor, the returned value will be a vector with transpose inverse square-root factors of the correlation matrices for each group, stacked by group and stacked column-wise within each group.

Note

This method function is used intensively in optimization algorithms and its value is returned as a vector for efficiency reasons. The `corMatrix` method function can be used to obtain transpose inverse square-root factors in matrix form.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

corFactor, corMatrix.corStruct, recalc.corStruct, Initialize.corStruct

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(form = ~1 | Subject)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, data = Orthodont)
corFactor(cs1)
```

---

corGaus *Gaussian Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corGaus class, representing a Gaussian spatial correlation structure. Letting d denote the range and n denote the nugget effect, the correlation between two observations a distance r apart is $\exp(-(r/d)^2)$ when no nugget effect is present and $(1-n)\exp(-(r/d)^2)$ when a nugget effect is assumed. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate ' Initialize method.

Usage

```
corGaus(value, form, nugget, metric, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values in constrained form. If nugget is FALSE, value can have only one element, corresponding to the "range" of the Gaussian correlation structure, which must be greater than zero. If nugget is TRUE, meaning that a nugget effect is present, value can contain one or two elements, the first being the "range" and the second the "nugget effect" (one minus the correlation between two observations taken arbitrarily close together); the first must be greater than zero and the second must be between zero and one. Defaults to numeric(0), which results in a range of 90% of the minimum distance and a nugget effect of 0.1 being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ S1+...+Sp, or ~ S1+...+Sp | g, specifying spatial covariates S1 through Sp and, optionally, a grouping factor g. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
nugget	an optional logical value indicating whether a nugget effect is present. Defaults to FALSE.
metric	an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corGaus, also inheriting from class corSpatial, representing a Gaussian spatial correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

Littel, Milliken, Stroup, and Wolfinger (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct, dist

Examples

```
sp1 <- corGaus(form = ~ x + y + z)

# example lme(..., corGaus ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 222-249
fm1BW.lme <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight,
                  random = ~ Time)
# p. 223
fm2BW.lme <- update(fm1BW.lme, weights = varPower())
# p 246
fm3BW.lme <- update(fm2BW.lme,
           correlation = corExp(form = ~ Time))
# p. 249
fm8BW.lme <- update(fm3BW.lme, correlation = corGaus(form = ~ Time))
```

---

corLin *Linear Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corLin class, representing a linear spatial correlation structure. Letting d denote the range and n denote the nugget effect, the correlation between two observations a distance $r < d$ apart is $1 - (r/d)$ when no nugget effect is present and $(1 - n)(1 - (r/d))$ when a nugget effect is assumed. If $r \geq d$ the correlation is zero. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corLin(value, form, nugget, metric, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values in constrained form. If nugget is FALSE, value can have only one element, corresponding to the "range" of the linear correlation structure, which must be greater than zero. If nugget is TRUE, meaning that a nugget effect is present, value can contain one or two elements, the first being the "range" and the second the "nugget effect" (one minus the correlation between two observations taken arbitrarily close together); the first must be greater than zero and the second must be between zero and one. Defaults to numeric(0), which results in a range of 90% of the minimum distance and a nugget effect of 0.1 being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ S1+...+Sp, or ~ S1+...+Sp | g, specifying spatial covariates S1 through Sp and, optionally, a grouping factor g. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
nugget	an optional logical value indicating whether a nugget effect is present. Defaults to FALSE.
metric	an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corLin, also inheriting from class corSpatial, representing a linear spatial correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

Littel, Milliken, Stroup, and Wolfinger (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct, dist

Examples

```
sp1 <- corLin(form = ~ x + y)

# example lme(..., corLin ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 222-249
fm1BW.lme <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight,
                 random = ~ Time)
# p. 223
fm2BW.lme <- update(fm1BW.lme, weights = varPower())
# p 246
fm3BW.lme <- update(fm2BW.lme,
           correlation = corExp(form = ~ Time))
# p. 249
fm7BW.lme <- update(fm3BW.lme, correlation = corLin(form = ~ Time))
```

---

corMatrix *Extract Correlation Matrix*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include all `corStruct` classes.

Usage

```
corMatrix(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object for which a correlation matrix can be extracted.
`...`	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`corMatrix.corStruct`, `corMatrix.pdMat`

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

corMatrix.corStruct *Matrix of a corStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts the correlation matrix (or its transpose inverse square-root factor), or list of correlation matrices (or their transpose inverse square-root factors) corresponding to `covariate` and `object`. Letting Σ denote a correlation matrix, a square-root factor of Σ is any square matrix L such that $\Sigma = L'L$. When `corr = FALSE`, this method extracts L^{-t}.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
corMatrix(object, covariate, corr, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corStruct"` representing a correlation structure.
`covariate`	an optional covariate vector (matrix), or list of covariate vectors (matrices), at which values the correlation matrix, or list of correlation matrices, are to be evaluated. Defaults to `getCovariate(object)`.
`corr`	a logical value. If `TRUE` the function returns the correlation matrix, or list of correlation matrices, represented by `object`. If `FALSE` the function returns a transpose inverse square-root of the correlation matrix, or a list of transpose inverse square-root factors of the correlation matrices.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

If `covariate` is a vector (matrix), the returned value will be an array with the corresponding correlation matrix (or its transpose inverse square-root factor). If the `covariate` is a list of vectors (matrices), the returned value will be a list with the correlation matrices (or their transpose inverse square-root factors) corresponding to each component of `covariate`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`corFactor.corStruct`, `Initialize.corStruct`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(0.3)
corMatrix(cs1, covariate = 1:4)
corMatrix(cs1, covariate = 1:4, corr = FALSE)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 225
cs1CompSymm <- corCompSymm(value = 0.3, form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs1CompSymm <- Initialize(cs1CompSymm, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1CompSymm)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 226
cs1Symm <- corSymm(value = c(0.2, 0.1, -0.1, 0, 0.2, 0),
                   form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs1Symm <- Initialize(cs1Symm, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1Symm)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 236
cs1AR1 <- corAR1(0.8, form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs1AR1 <- Initialize(cs1AR1, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1AR1)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 237
cs1ARMA <- corARMA(0.4, form = ~ 1 | Subject, q = 1)
cs1ARMA <- Initialize(cs1ARMA, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1ARMA)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 238
spatDat <- data.frame(x = (0:4)/4, y = (0:4)/4)
cs1Exp <- corExp(1, form = ~ x + y)
cs1Exp <- Initialize(cs1Exp, spatDat)
corMatrix(cs1Exp)
```

---

corMatrix.pdMat *Extract Correlation Matrix from a pdMat Object*

Description

The correlation matrix corresponding to the positive-definite matrix represented by `object` is obtained.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
corMatrix(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "pdMat", representing a positive definite matrix.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the correlation matrix corresponding to the positive-definite matrix represented by `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, pdMatrix

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(diag(1:4))
corMatrix(pd1)
```

---

corMatrix.reStruct *Extract Correlation Matrix from Components of an reStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts the correlation matrices corresponding to the pdMat elements of object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
corMatrix(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with components given by the correlation matrices corresponding to the elements of object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

as.matrix.reStruct, corMatrix, reStruct, pdMat

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(pdSymm(diag(3), ~age+Sex, data = Orthodont))
corMatrix(rs1)
```

corNatural *General correlation in natural parameterization*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corNatural class, representing a general correlation structure in the "natural" parameterization, which is described under pdNatural. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corNatural(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values. Default is numeric(0), which results in a vector of zeros of appropriate dimension being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized (corresponding to an identity correlation structure).
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ t, or ~ t | g, specifying a time covariate t and, optionally, a grouping factor g. A covariate for this correlation structure must be integer valued. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corNatural representing a general correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Initialize.corNatural, pdNatural, summary.corNatural

Examples

```
## covariate is observation order and grouping factor is Subject
cs1 <- corNatural(form = ~ 1 | Subject)
```

corRatio *Rational Quadratic Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corRatio class, representing a rational quadratic spatial correlation structure. Letting d denote the range and n denote the nugget effect, the correlation between two observations a distance r apart is $1/(1 + (r/d)^2)$ when no nugget effect is present and $(1 - n)/(1 + (r/d)^2)$ when a nugget effect is assumed. Objects created using this constructor need to be later initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corRatio(value, form, nugget, metric, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values in constrained form. If nugget is FALSE, value can have only one element, corresponding to the "range" of the rational quadratic correlation structure, which must be greater than zero. If nugget is TRUE, meaning that a nugget effect is present, value can contain one or two elements, the first being the "range" and the second the "nugget effect" (one minus the correlation between two observations taken arbitrarily close together); the first must be greater than zero and the second must be between zero and one. Defaults to numeric(0), which results in a range of 90% of the minimum distance and a nugget effect of 0.1 being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ S1+...+Sp, or ~ S1+...+Sp | g, specifying spatial covariates S1 through Sp and, optionally, a grouping factor g. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
nugget	an optional logical value indicating whether a nugget effect is present. Defaults to FALSE.
metric	an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corRatio, also inheriting from class corSpatial, representing a rational quadratic spatial correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

Littel, Milliken, Stroup, and Wolfinger (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct, dist

Examples

```
sp1 <- corRatio(form = ~ x + y + z)

# example lme(..., corRatio ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 222-249
fm1BW.lme <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight,
                  random = ~ Time)
# p. 223
fm2BW.lme <- update(fm1BW.lme, weights = varPower())
# p 246
fm3BW.lme <- update(fm2BW.lme,
           correlation = corExp(form = ~ Time))
# p. 249
fm5BW.lme <- update(fm3BW.lme, correlation =
                  corRatio(form = ~ Time))

# example gls(..., corRatio ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 261, 263
fm1Wheat2 <- gls(yield ~ variety - 1, Wheat2)
# p. 263
fm3Wheat2 <- update(fm1Wheat2, corr =
    corRatio(c(12.5, 0.2),
       form = ~ latitude + longitude,
             nugget = TRUE))
```

---

corSpatial *Spatial Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corSpatial class, representing a spatial correlation structure. This class is "virtual", having four "real" classes, corresponding to specific spatial correlation structures, associated with it: corExp, corGaus, corLin, corRatio, and corSpher. The returned object will inherit from one of these "real" classes, determined by the type argument, and from the "virtual" corSpatial class. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corSpatial(value, form, nugget, type, metric, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values in constrained form. If nugget is FALSE, value can have only one element, corresponding to the "range" of the spatial correlation structure, which must be greater than zero. If nugget is TRUE, meaning that a nugget effect is present, value can contain one or two elements, the first being the "range" and the second the "nugget effect" (one minus the correlation between two observations taken arbitrarily close together); the first must be greater than zero and the second must be between zero and one. Defaults to numeric(0), which results in a range of 90% of the minimum distance and a nugget effect of 0.1 being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ S1+...+Sp, or ~ S1+...+Sp | g, specifying spatial covariates S1 through Sp and, optionally, a grouping factor g. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
nugget	an optional logical value indicating whether a nugget effect is present. Defaults to FALSE.
type	an optional character string specifying the desired type of correlation structure. Available types include "spherical", "exponential", "gaussian", "linear", and "rational". See the documentation on the functions corSpher, corExp, corGaus, corLin, and corRatio for a description of these correlation structures. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided.Defaults to "spherical".
metric	an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class determined by the type argument and also inheriting from class corSpatial, representing a spatial correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

Littel, Milliken, Stroup, and Wolfinger (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

See Also

corExp, corGaus, corLin, corRatio, corSpher, Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct, dist

Examples

```
sp1 <- corSpatial(form = ~ x + y + z, type = "g", metric = "man")
```

---

corSpher *Spherical Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corSpher class, representing a spherical spatial correlation structure. Letting d denote the range and n denote the nugget effect, the correlation between two observations a distance $r < d$ apart is $1-1.5(r/d)+0.5(r/d)^3$ when no nugget effect is present and $(1-n)(1-1.5(r/d)+0.5(r/d)^3)$ when a nugget effect is assumed. If $r \geq d$ the correlation is zero. Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corSpher(value, form, nugget, metric, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values in constrained form. If nugget is FALSE, value can have only one element, corresponding to the "range" of the spherical correlation structure, which must be greater than zero. If nugget is TRUE, meaning that a nugget effect is present, value can contain one or two elements, the first being the "range" and the second the "nugget effect" (one minus the correlation between two observations taken arbitrarily close together); the first must be greater than zero and the second must be between zero and one. Defaults to numeric(0), which results in a range of 90% of the minimum distance and a nugget effect of 0.1 being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized.
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ S1+...+Sp, or ~ S1+...+Sp | g, specifying spatial covariates S1 through Sp and, optionally, a grouping factor g. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
nugget	an optional logical value indicating whether a nugget effect is present. Defaults to FALSE.

metric	an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corSpher, also inheriting from class corSpatial, representing a spherical spatial correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

Littel, Milliken, Stroup, and Wolfinger (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

Initialize.corStruct, summary.corStruct, dist

Examples

```
sp1 <- corSpher(form = ~ x + y)

# example lme(..., corSpher ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 222-249
fm1BW.lme <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight,
                   random = ~ Time)
# p. 223
fm2BW.lme <- update(fm1BW.lme, weights = varPower())
# p 246
fm3BW.lme <- update(fm2BW.lme,
           correlation = corExp(form = ~ Time))
# p. 249
fm6BW.lme <- update(fm3BW.lme,
          correlation = corSpher(form = ~ Time))

# example gls(..., corSpher ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 261, 263
fm1Wheat2 <- gls(yield ~ variety - 1, Wheat2)
# p. 262
fm2Wheat2 <- update(fm1Wheat2, corr =
   corSpher(c(28, 0.2),
     form = ~ latitude + longitude, nugget = TRUE))
```

corSymm *General Correlation Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the corSymm class, representing a general correlation structure. The internal representation of this structure, in terms of unconstrained parameters, uses the spherical parametrization defined in Pinheiro and Bates (1996). Objects created using this constructor must later be initialized using the appropriate Initialize method.

Usage

```
corSymm(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional vector with the parameter values. Default is numeric(0), which results in a vector of zeros of appropriate dimension being assigned to the parameters when object is initialized (corresponding to an identity correlation structure).
form	a one sided formula of the form ~ t, or ~ t | g, specifying a time covariate t and, optionally, a grouping factor g. A covariate for this correlation structure must be integer valued. When a grouping factor is present in form, the correlation structure is assumed to apply only to observations within the same grouping level; observations with different grouping levels are assumed to be uncorrelated. Defaults to ~ 1, which corresponds to using the order of the observations in the data as a covariate, and no groups.
fixed	an optional logical value indicating whether the coefficients should be allowed to vary in the optimization, or kept fixed at their initial value. Defaults to FALSE, in which case the coefficients are allowed to vary.

Value

an object of class corSymm representing a general correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289-296.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

Initialize.corSymm, summary.corSymm

Examples

```
## covariate is observation order and grouping factor is Subject
cs1 <- corSymm(form = ~ 1 | Subject)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 225
cs1CompSymm <- corCompSymm(value = 0.3, form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs1CompSymm <- Initialize(cs1CompSymm, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1CompSymm)

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 226
cs1Symm <- corSymm(value =
        c(0.2, 0.1, -0.1, 0, 0.2, 0),
                  form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs1Symm <- Initialize(cs1Symm, data = Orthodont)
corMatrix(cs1Symm)

# example gls(..., corSpher ...)
# Pinheiro and Bates, pp. 261, 263
fm1Wheat2 <- gls(yield ~ variety - 1, Wheat2)
# p. 262
fm2Wheat2 <- update(fm1Wheat2, corr =
   corSpher(c(28, 0.2),
     form = ~ latitude + longitude, nugget = TRUE))

# example gls(..., corSymm ... )
# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 251
fm1Orth.gls <- gls(distance ~ Sex * I(age - 11), Orthodont,
                  correlation = corSymm(form = ~ 1 | Subject),
                  weights = varIdent(form = ~ 1 | age))
```

`Covariate` *Assign Covariate Values*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include all "`varFunc`" classes.

Usage

```
covariate(object) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	any object with a `covariate` component.
`value`	a value to be assigned to the covariate associated with `object`.

Value

will depend on the method function; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

getCovariate

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

Covariate.varFunc *Assign varFunc Covariate*

Description

The covariate(s) used in the calculation of the weights of the variance function represented by `object` is (are) replaced by `value`. If `object` has been initialized, `value` must have the same dimensions as `getCovariate(object)`.

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class varFunc
covariate(object) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "varFunc", representing a variance function structure.
`value`	a value to be assigned to the covariate associated with `object`.

Value

a `varFunc` object similar to `object`, but with its `covariate` attribute replaced by `value`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

getCovariate.varFunc

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(1.1, form = ~age)
covariate(vf1) <- Orthodont[["age"]]
```

`Dialyzer` *High-Flux Hemodialyzer*

Description

The `Dialyzer` data frame has 140 rows and 5 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Subject an ordered factor with levels `10` < `8` < `2` < `6` < `3` < `5` < `9` < `7` < `1` < `4` < `17` < `20` < `11` < `12` < `16` < `13` < `14` < `18` < `15` < `19` giving the unique identifier for each subject

QB a factor with levels `200` and `300` giving the bovine blood flow rate (dL/min).

pressure a numeric vector giving the transmembrane pressure (dmHg).

rate the hemodialyzer ultrafiltration rate (mL/hr).

index index of observation within subject—1 through 7.

Details

Vonesh and Carter (1992) describe data measured on high-flux hemodialyzers to assess their *in vivo* ultrafiltration characteristics. The ultrafiltration rates (in mL/hr) of 20 high-flux dialyzers were measured at seven different transmembrane pressures (in dmHg). The *in vitro* evaluation of the dialyzers used bovine blood at flow rates of either 200~dl/min or 300~dl/min. The data, are also analyzed in Littell, Milliken, Stroup, and Wolfinger (1996).

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.6)

Vonesh, E. F. and Carter, R. L. (1992), Mixed-effects nonlinear regression for unbalanced repeated measures, *Biometrics*, **48**, 1-18.

Littell, R. C., Milliken, G. A., Stroup, W. W. and Wolfinger, R. D. (1996), *SAS System for Mixed Models*, SAS Institute, Cary, NC.

`Dim` *Extract Dimensions from an Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: `"corSpatial"`, `"corStruct"`, `"pdCompSymm"`, `"pdDiag"`, `"pdIdent"`, `"pdMat"`, and `"pdSymm"`.

Usage

```
Dim(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any object for which dimensions can be extracted.
...	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Note

If dim allowed more than one argument, there would be no need for this generic function.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Dim.pdMat, Dim.corStruct

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

Dim.corSpatial *Dimensions of a corSpatial Object*

Description

if groups is missing, it returns the Dim attribute of object; otherwise, calculates the dimensions associated with the grouping factor.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corSpatial
Dim(object, groups, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "corSpatial", representing a spatial correlation structure.
groups	an optional factor defining the grouping of the observations; observations within a group are correlated and observations in different groups are uncorrelated.
...	further arguments to be passed to or from methods.

Value

a list with components:

N	length of groups
M	number of groups
spClass	an integer representing the spatial correlation class; 0 = user defined class, 1 = corSpher, 2 = corExp, 3 = corGaus, 4 = corLin
sumLenSq	sum of the squares of the number of observations per group
len	an integer vector with the number of observations per group
start	an integer vector with the starting position for the distance vectors in each group, beginning from zero

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Dim, Dim.corStruct

Examples

```
Dim(corGaus(), getGroups(Orthodont))

cs1ARMA <- corARMA(0.4, form = ~ 1 | Subject, q = 1)
cs1ARMA <- Initialize(cs1ARMA, data = Orthodont)
Dim(cs1ARMA)
```

Dim.corStruct *Dimensions of a corStruct Object*

Description

if groups is missing, it returns the Dim attribute of object; otherwise, calculates the dimensions associated with the grouping factor.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
Dim(object, groups, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "corStruct", representing a correlation structure.
groups	an optional factor defining the grouping of the observations; observations within a group are correlated and observations in different groups are uncorrelated.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with components:

N	length of groups
M	number of groups
maxLen	maximum number of observations in a group
sumLenSq	sum of the squares of the number of observations per group
len	an integer vector with the number of observations per group
start	an integer vector with the starting position for the observations in each group, beginning from zero

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Dim, Dim.corSpatial

Examples

```
Dim(corAR1(), getGroups(Orthodont))
```

Dim.pdMat *Dimensions of a pdMat Object*

Description

This method function returns the dimensions of the matrix represented by object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
Dim(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "pdMat", representing a positive-definite matrix.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an integer vector with the number of rows and columns of the matrix represented by object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`Dim`

Examples

```
Dim(pdSymm(diag(3)))
```

`Earthquake` *Earthquake Intensity*

Description

The `Earthquake` data frame has 182 rows and 5 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Quake an ordered factor with levels `20` < `16` < `14` < `10` < `3` < `8` < `23` < `22` < `6` < `13` < `7` < `21` < `18` < `15` < `4` < `12` < `19` < `5` < `9` < `1` < `2` < `17` < `11` indicating the earthquake on which the measurements were made.

Richter a numeric vector giving the intensity of the earthquake on the Richter scale.

distance the distance from the seismological measuring station to the epicenter of the earthquake (km).

soil a factor with levels `0` and `1` giving the soil condition at the measuring station, either soil or rock.

accel maximum horizontal acceleration observed (g).

Details

Measurements recorded at available seismometer locations for 23 large earthquakes in western North America between 1940 and 1980. They were originally given in Joyner and Boore (1981); are mentioned in Brillinger (1987); and are analyzed in Davidian and Giltinan (1995).

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.8)

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995), *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman and Hall, London.

Joyner and Boore (1981), Peak horizontal acceleration and velocity from strong-motion records including records from the 1979 Imperial Valley, California, earthquake, *Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America*, **71**, 2011-2038.

Brillinger, D. (1987), Comment on a paper by C. R. Rao, *Statistical Science*, **2**, 448-450.

ergoStool *Ergometrics experiment with stool types*

Description

The ergoStool data frame has 36 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

effort a numeric vector giving the effort (Borg scale) required to arise from a stool.

Type a factor with levels T1, T2, T3, and T4 giving the stool type.

Subject an ordered factor giving a unique identifier for the subject in the experiment.

Details

Devore (2000) cites data from an article in *Ergometrics* (1993, pp. 519-535) on "The Effects of a Pneumatic Stool and a One-Legged Stool on Lower Limb Joint Load and Muscular Activity."

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.9)

Devore, J. L. (2000), *Probability and Statistics for Engineering and the Sciences (5th ed)*, Duxbury, Boston, MA.

Examples

```
fm1 <-
   lme(effort ~ Type, data = ergoStool, random = ~ 1 | Subject)
anova( fm1 )
```

Fatigue *Cracks caused by metal fatigue*

Description

The Fatigue data frame has 262 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Path an ordered factor with levels 1 < 2 < 3 < 4 < 5 < 6 < 7 < 8 < 9 < 10 < 11 < 12 < 13 < 14 < 15 < 16 < 17 < 18 < 19 < 20 < 21 giving the test path (or test unit) number. The order is in terms of increasing failure time or decreasing terminal crack length.

cycles number of test cycles at which the measurement is made (millions of cycles).

relLength relative crack length (dimensionless).

Details

These data are given in Lu and Meeker (1993) where they state "We obtained the data in Table 1 visually from figure 4.5.2 on page 242 of Bogdanoff and Kozin (1985)." The data represent the growth of cracks in metal for 21 test units. An initial notch of length 0.90 inches was made on each unit which then was subjected to several thousand test cycles. After every 10,000 test cycles the crack length was measured. Testing was stopped if the crack length exceeded 1.60 inches, defined as a failure, or at 120,000 cycles.

Source

Lu, C. Joséph , and Meeker, William Q. (1993), Using degradation measures to estimate a time-to-failure distribution, *Technometrics*, **35**, 161-174

---

fdHess *Finite difference Hessian*

Description

Evaluate an approximate Hessian and gradient of a scalar function using finite differences.

Usage

```
fdHess(pars, fun, ..., .relStep=(.Machine$double.eps)^(1/3), minAbsPar=0)
```

Arguments

`pars`	the numeric values of the parameters at which to evaluate the function `fun` and its derivatives.
`fun`	a function depending on the parameters `pars` that returns a numeric scalar.
`...`	Optional additional arguments to `fun`
`.relStep`	The relative step size to use in the finite differences. It defaults to the cube root of `.Machine$double.eps`
`minAbsPar`	The minimum magnitude of a parameter value that is considered non-zero. It defaults to zero meaning that any non-zero value will be considered different from zero.

Details

This function uses a second-order response surface design known as a Koschal design to determine the parameter values at which the function is evaluated.

Value

A list with components

`mean`	the value of function `fun` evaluated at the parameter values `pars`
`gradient`	an approximate gradient
`Hessian`	a matrix whose upper triangle contains an approximate Hessian.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

Examples

```
fdHess(c(12.3, 2.34), function(x) x[1]*(1-exp(-0.4*x[2])))
```

---

fitted.glsStruct *Calculate glsStruct Fitted Values*

Description

The fitted values for the linear model represented by `object` are extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glsStruct
fitted(object, glsFit, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "`glsStruct`", representing a list of linear model components, such as `corStruct` and "`varFunc`" objects.
`glsFit`	an optional list with components `logLik` (log-likelihood), `beta` (coefficients), `sigma` (standard deviation for error term), `varBeta` (coefficients' covariance matrix), `fitted` (fitted values), and `residuals` (residuals). Defaults to `attr(object, "glsFit")`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the fitted values for the linear model represented by `object`.

Note

This method function is generally only used inside `gls` and `fitted.gls`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`gls`, `residuals.glsStruct`

fitted.gnlsStruct *Calculate gnlsStruct Fitted Values*

Description

The fitted values for the nonlinear model represented by `object` are extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gnlsStruct
fitted(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"gnlsStruct"`, representing a list of model components, such as `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects, and attributes specifying the underlying nonlinear model and the response variable.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the fitted values for the nonlinear model represented by `object`.

Note

This method function is generally only used inside `gnls` and `fitted.gnls`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`gnls`, `residuals.gnlsStruct`

fitted.lme *Extract lme Fitted Values*

Description

The fitted values at level i are obtained by adding together the population fitted values (based only on the fixed effects estimates) and the estimated contributions of the random effects to the fitted values at grouping levels less or equal to i. The resulting values estimate the best linear unbiased predictions (BLUPs) at level i.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
fitted(object, level, asList, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
level	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in extracting the fitted values from object. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population fitted values. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
asList	an optional logical value. If TRUE and a single value is given in level, the returned object is a list with the fitted values split by groups; else the returned value is either a vector or a data frame, according to the length of level. Defaults to FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

If a single level of grouping is specified in level, the returned value is either a list with the fitted values split by groups (asList = TRUE) or a vector with the fitted values (asList = FALSE); else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in level, the returned object is a data frame with columns given by the fitted values at different levels and the grouping factors. For a vector or data frame result the napredict method is applied.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Bates, D.M. and Pinheiro, J.C. (1998) "Computational methods for multilevel models" available in PostScript or PDF formats at http://nlme.stat.wisc.edu/pub/NLME/

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 235, 397.

See Also

lme, residuals.lme

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age + Sex, data = Orthodont, random = ~ 1)
fitted(fm1, level = 0:1)
```

---

fitted.lmeStruct *Calculate lmeStruct Fitted Values*

Description

The fitted values at level i are obtained by adding together the population fitted values (based only on the fixed effects estimates) and the estimated contributions of the random effects to the fitted values at grouping levels less or equal to i. The resulting values estimate the best linear unbiased predictions (BLUPs) at level i.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmeStruct
fitted(object, level, conLin, lmeFit, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmeStruct", representing a list of linear mixed-effects model components, such as reStruct, corStruct, and varFunc objects.
level	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in extracting the fitted values from object. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population fitted values. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
conLin	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying lme model. Defaults to attr(object, "conLin").
lmeFit	an optional list with components beta and b containing respectively the fixed effects estimates and the random effects estimates to be used to calculate the fitted values. Defaults to attr(object, "lmeFit").
...	some methods for this generic accept other optional arguments.

Value

if a single level of grouping is specified in level, the returned value is a vector with the fitted values at the desired level; else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in level, the returned object is a matrix with columns given by the fitted values at different levels.

Note

This method function is generally only used inside lme and fitted.lme.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, fitted.lme, residuals.lmeStruct

---

fitted.lmList *Extract lmList Fitted Values*

Description

The fitted values are extracted from each lm component of object and arranged into a list with as many components as object, or combined into a single vector.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
fitted(object, subset, asList, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmList", representing a list of lm objects with a common model.
subset	an optional character or integer vector naming the lm components of object from which the fitted values are to be extracted. Default is NULL, in which case all components are used.
asList	an optional logical value. If TRUE, the returned object is a list with the fitted values split by groups; else the returned value is a vector. Defaults to FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with components given by the fitted values of each lm component of object, or a vector with the fitted values for all lm components of object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList, residuals.lmList

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
fitted(fm1)
```

---

fitted.nlmeStruct *Calculate nlmeStruct Fitted Values*

Description

The fitted values at level i are obtained by adding together the contributions from the estimated fixed effects and the estimated random effects at levels less or equal to i and evaluating the model function at the resulting estimated parameters. The resulting values estimate the predictions at level i.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nlmeStruct
fitted(object, level, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "nlmeStruct", representing a list of mixed-effects model components, such as reStruct, corStruct, and varFunc objects, plus attributes specifying the underlying nonlinear model and the response variable.
level	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in extracting the fitted values from object. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population fitted values. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
conLin	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying nlme model. Defaults to attr(object, "conLin").
...	additional arguments that could be given to this method. None are used.

Value

if a single level of grouping is specified in level, the returned value is a vector with the fitted values at the desired level; else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in level, the returned object is a matrix with columns given by the fitted values at different levels.

Note

This method function is generally only used inside nlme and fitted.nlme.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Bates, D.M. and Pinheiro, J.C. (1998) "Computational methods for multilevel models" available in PostScript or PDF formats at http://nlme.stat.wisc.edu/pub/NLME/

See Also

nlme, residuals.nlmeStruct

---

fixed.effects *Extract Fixed Effects*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include lmList and lme.

Usage

```
fixed.effects(object, ...)
fixef(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any fitted model object from which fixed effects estimates can be extracted.
...	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

fixef.lmList

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

---

fixef.lmList *Extract lmList Fixed Effects*

Description

The average of the coefficients corresponding to the lm components of object is calculated.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
fixef(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmList", representing a list of lm objects with a common model.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the average of the individual lm coefficients in object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList, random.effects.lmList

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
fixed.effects(fm1)
```

`formula.pdBlocked` *Extract pdBlocked Formula*

Description

The `formula` attributes of the `pdMat` elements of `x` are extracted and returned as a list, in case `asList=TRUE`, or converted to a single one-sided formula when `asList=FALSE`. If the `pdMat` elements do not have a `formula` attribute, a `NULL` value is returned.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdBlocked
formula(x, asList, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"pdBlocked"`, representing a positive definite block diagonal matrix.
`asList`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE`, a list with the formulas for the individual block diagonal elements of `x` is returned; else, if `FALSE`, a one-sided formula combining all individual formulas is returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list of one-sided formulas, or a single one-sided formula, or `NULL`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`pdBlocked`, `pdMat`

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdBlocked(list(~ age, ~ Sex - 1))
formula(pd1)
formula(pd1, asList = TRUE)
```

`formula.pdMat` *Extract pdMat Formula*

Description

This method function extracts the formula associated with a `pdMat` object, in which the column and row names are specified.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
formula(x, asList, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"pdMat"`, representing a positive definite matrix.
`asList`	logical. Should the asList argument be applied to each of the components? Never used.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

if `x` has a `formula` attribute, its value is returned, else `NULL` is returned.

Note

Because factors may be present in `formula(x)`, the `pdMat` object needs to have access to a data frame where the variables named in the formula can be evaluated, before it can resolve its row and column names from the formula.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`pdMat`

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(~Sex*age)
formula(pd1)
```

formula.reStruct *Extract reStruct Object Formula*

Description

This method function extracts a formula from each of the components of x, returning a list of formulas.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
formula(x, asList, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
asList	logical. Should the asList argument be applied to each of the components?
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with the formulas of each component of x.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

formula

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(A = pdDiag(diag(2), ~age), B = ~1))
formula(rs1)
```

gapply *Apply a Function by Groups*

Description

Applies the function to the distinct sets of rows of the data frame defined by groups.

Usage

```
gapply(object, which, FUN, form, level, groups, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object to which the function will be applied - usually a groupedData object or a data.frame. Must inherit from class "data.frame".
which	an optional character or positive integer vector specifying which columns of object should be used with FUN. Defaults to all columns in object.
FUN	function to apply to the distinct sets of rows of the data frame object defined by the values of groups.
form	an optional one-sided formula that defines the groups. When this formula is given the right-hand side is evaluated in object, converted to a factor if necessary, and the unique levels are used to define the groups. Defaults to formula(object).
level	an optional positive integer giving the level of grouping to be used in an object with multiple nested grouping levels. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
groups	an optional factor that will be used to split the rows into groups. Defaults to getGroups(object, form, level).
...	optional additional arguments to the summary function FUN. Often it is helpful to specify na.rm = TRUE.

Value

Returns a data frame with as many rows as there are levels in the groups argument.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. sec. 3.4.

See Also

gsummary

Examples

```
## Find number of non-missing "conc" observations for each Subject
gapply( Phenobarb, FUN = function(x) sum(!is.na(x$conc)) )

# Pinheiro and Bates, p. 127
table( gapply(Quinidine, "conc", function(x) sum(!is.na(x))) )
changeRecords <- gapply( Quinidine, FUN = function(frm)
    any(is.na(frm[["conc"]]) & is.na(frm[["dose"]])) )
```

Gasoline *Refinery yield of gasoline*

Description

The Gasoline data frame has 32 rows and 6 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

yield a numeric vector giving the percentage of crude oil converted to gasoline after distillation and fractionation

endpoint a numeric vector giving the temperature (degrees F) at which all the gasoline is vaporized

Sample an ordered factor giving the inferred crude oil sample number

API a numeric vector giving the crude oil gravity (degrees API)

vapor a numeric vector giving the vapor pressure of the crude oil $(\mathrm{lbf}/\mathrm{in}^2)$

ASTM a numeric vector giving the crude oil 10% point ASTM—the temperature at which 10% of the crude oil has become vapor.

Details

Prater (1955) provides data on crude oil properties and gasoline yields. Atkinson (1985) uses these data to illustrate the use of diagnostics in multiple regression analysis. Three of the covariates—API, vapor, and ASTM—measure characteristics of the crude oil used to produce the gasoline. The other covariate — endpoint—is a characteristic of the refining process. Daniel and Wood (1980) notice that the covariates characterizing the crude oil occur in only ten distinct groups and conclude that the data represent responses measured on ten different crude oil samples.

Source

Prater, N. H. (1955), Estimate gasoline yields from crudes, *Petroleum Refiner*, **35** (5).

Atkinson, A. C. (1985), *Plots, Transformations, and Regression*, Oxford Press, New York.

Daniel, C. and Wood, F. S. (1980), *Fitting Equations to Data*, Wiley, New York

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S (4th ed)*, Springer, New York.

getCovariate *Extract Covariate from an Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include corStruct, corSpatial, data.frame, and varFunc.

Usage

```
getCovariate(object, form, data)
```

Arguments

object	any object with a covariate component
form	an optional one-sided formula specifying the covariate(s) to be extracted. Defaults to formula(object).
data	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in form.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. p. 100.

See Also

getCovariate.corStruct, getCovariate.data.frame, getCovariate.varFunc, getCovariateFormula

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

---

getCovariate.corStruct

Extract corStruct Object Covariate

Description

This method function extracts the covariate(s) associated with object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
getCovariate(object, form, data)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class corStruct representing a correlation structure.
form	this argument is included to make the method function compatible with the generic. It will be assigned the value of formula(object) and should not be modified.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in form, in case object is not initialized and the covariate needs to be evaluated.

Value

when the correlation structure does not include a grouping factor, the returned value will be a vector or a matrix with the covariate(s) associated with `object`. If a grouping factor is present, the returned value will be a list of vectors or matrices with the covariate(s) corresponding to each grouping level.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

getCovariate

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Subject)
getCovariate(cs1, data = Orthodont)
```

---

getCovariate.data.frame

Extract Data Frame Covariate

Description

The right hand side of `form`, stripped of any conditioning expression (i.e. an expression following a `|` operator), is evaluated in `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class data.frame
getCovariate(object, form, data)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `data.frame`.
`form`	an optional formula specifying the covariate to be evaluated in `object`. Defaults to `formula(object)`.
`data`	some methods for this generic require a separate data frame. Not used in this method.

Value

the value of the right hand side of `form`, stripped of any conditional expression, evaluated in `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

getCovariateFormula

Examples

```
getCovariate(Orthodont)
```

---

getCovariate.varFunc *Extract varFunc Covariate*

Description

This method function extracts the covariate(s) associated with the variance function represented by `object`, if any is present.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
getCovariate(object, form, data)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `varFunc`, representing a variance function structure.
`form`	an optional formula specifying the covariate to be evaluated in `object`. Defaults to `formula(object)`.
`data`	some methods for this generic require a `data` object. Not used in this method.

Value

if `object` has a `covariate` attribute, its value is returned; else `NULL` is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

covariate<-.varFunc

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(1.1, form = ~age)
covariate(vf1) <- Orthodont[["age"]]
getCovariate(vf1)
```

getCovariateFormula *Extract Covariates Formula*

Description

The right hand side of `formula(object)`, without any conditioning expressions (i.e. any expressions after a `|` operator) is returned as a one-sided formula.

Usage

```
getCovariateFormula(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object from which a formula can be extracted.

Value

a one-sided formula describing the covariates associated with `formula(object)`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`getCovariate`

Examples

```
getCovariateFormula(y ~ x | g)
getCovariateFormula(y ~ x)
```

getData *Extract Data from an Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include `gls`, `lme`, and `lmList`.

Usage

```
getData(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object from which a data.frame can be extracted, generally a fitted model object.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

getData.gls, getData.lme, getData.lmList

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

---

getData.gls *Extract gls Object Data*

Description

If present in the calling sequence used to produce object, the data frame used to fit the model is obtained.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
getData(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class gls, representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model.

Value

if a data argument is present in the calling sequence that produced object, the corresponding data frame (with na.action and subset applied to it, if also present in the call that produced object) is returned; else, NULL is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls, getData

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), data = Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
getData(fm1)
```

getData.lme *Extract lme Object Data*

Description

If present in the calling sequence used to produce object, the data frame used to fit the model is obtained.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
getData(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class lme, representing a linear mixed-effects fitted model.

Value

if a data argument is present in the calling sequence that produced object, the corresponding data frame (with na.action and subset applied to it, if also present in the call that produced object) is returned; else, NULL is returned.

Note that as from version 3.1-102, this only omits rows omitted in the fit if na.action = na.omit, and does not omit at all if na.action = na.exclude. That is generally what is wanted for plotting, the main use of this function.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, getData

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), data = Ovary,
           random = ~ sin(2*pi*Time))
getData(fm1)
```

getData.lmList *Extract lmList Object Data*

Description

If present in the calling sequence used to produce `object`, the data frame used to fit the model is obtained.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
getData(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `lmList`, representing a list of `lm` objects with a common model.

Value

if a `data` argument is present in the calling sequence that produced `object`, the corresponding data frame (with `na.action` and `subset` applied to it, if also present in the call that produced `object`) is returned; else, `NULL` is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lmList`, `getData`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
getData(fm1)
```

getGroups *Extract Grouping Factors from an Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include `corStruct`, `data.frame`, `gls`, `lme`, `lmList`, and `varFunc`.

Usage

```
getGroups(object, form, level, data, sep)
```

Arguments

object	any object
form	an optional formula with a conditioning expression on its right hand side (i.e. an expression involving the | operator). Defaults to formula(object).
level	a positive integer vector with the level(s) of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present. This argument is optional for most methods of this generic function and defaults to all levels of nesting.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in form. Optional for most methods.
sep	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is /.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 100, 461.

See Also

getGroupsFormula, getGroups.data.frame, getGroups.gls, getGroups.lmList, getGroups.lme

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

---

getGroups.corStruct *Extract corStruct Groups*

Description

This method function extracts the grouping factor associated with object, if any is present.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
getGroups(object, form, level, data, sep)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class corStruct representing a correlation structure.
form	this argument is included to make the method function compatible with the generic. It will be assigned the value of formula(object) and should not be modified.
level	this argument is included to make the method function compatible with the generic and is not used.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in form, in case object is not initialized and the grouping factor needs to be evaluated.
sep	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is /.

Value

if a grouping factor is present in the correlation structure represented by object, the function returns the corresponding factor vector; else the function returns NULL.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

getGroups

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Subject)
getGroups(cs1, data = Orthodont)
```

---

getGroups.data.frame *Extract Groups from a Data Frame*

Description

Each variable named in the expression after the | operator on the right hand side of form is evaluated in object. If more than one variable is indicated in level they are combined into a data frame; else the selected variable is returned as a vector. When multiple grouping levels are defined in form and level > 1, the levels of the returned factor are obtained by pasting together the levels of the grouping factors of level greater or equal to level, to ensure their uniqueness.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class data.frame
getGroups(object, form, level, data, sep)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `data.frame`.
`form`	an optional formula with a conditioning expression on its right hand side (i.e. an expression involving the `|` operator). Defaults to `formula(object)`.
`level`	a positive integer vector with the level(s) of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present. Defaults to all levels of nesting.
`data`	unused
`sep`	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is `/`.

Value

either a data frame with columns given by the grouping factors indicated in `level`, from outer to inner, or, when a single level is requested, a factor representing the selected grouping factor.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 100, 461.

See Also

`getGroupsFormula`

Examples

```
getGroups(Pixel)
getGroups(Pixel, level = 2)
```

`getGroups.gls` *Extract gls Object Groups*

Description

If present, the grouping factor associated to the correlation structure for the linear model represented by `object` is extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
getGroups(object, form, level, data, sep)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class gls, representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model.
form	an optional formula with a conditioning expression on its right hand side (i.e. an expression involving the | operator). Defaults to formula(object). Not used.
level	a positive integer vector with the level(s) of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present. This argument is optional for most methods of this generic function and defaults to all levels of nesting. Not used.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in form. Optional for most methods. Not used.
sep	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is /. Not used.

Value

if the linear model represented by object incorporates a correlation structure and the corresponding corStruct object has a grouping factor, a vector with the group values is returned; else, NULL is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls, corClasses

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
getGroups(fm1)
```

---

getGroups.lme *Extract lme Object Groups*

Description

The grouping factors corresponding to the linear mixed-effects model represented by object are extracted. If more than one level is indicated in level, the corresponding grouping factors are combined into a data frame; else the selected grouping factor is returned as a vector.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
getGroups(object, form, level, data, sep)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `lme`, representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
`form`	this argument is included to make the method function compatible with the generic and is ignored in this method.
`level`	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be extracted from `object`. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
`data`	unused
`sep`	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is `/`.

Value

either a data frame with columns given by the grouping factors indicated in `level`, or, when a single level is requested, a factor representing the selected grouping factor.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lme`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(pixel ~ day + day^2, Pixel,
  random = list(Dog = ~day, Side = ~1))
getGroups(fm1, level = 1:2)
```

`getGroups.lmList` *Extract lmList Object Groups*

Description

The grouping factor determining the partitioning of the observations used to produce the `lm` components of `object` is extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
getGroups(object, form, level, data, sep)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class lmList, representing a list of lm objects with a common model.
form	an optional formula with a conditioning expression on its right hand side (i.e. an expression involving the | operator). Defaults to formula(object). Not used.
level	a positive integer vector with the level(s) of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present. This argument is optional for most methods of this generic function and defaults to all levels of nesting. Not used.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in form. Optional for most methods. Not used.
sep	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is /. Not used.

Value

a vector with the grouping factor corresponding to the lm components of object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
getGroups(fm1)
```

---

getGroups.varFunc *Extract varFunc Groups*

Description

This method function extracts the grouping factor associated with the variance function represented by object, if any is present.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
getGroups(object, form, level, data, sep)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class varFunc, representing a variance function structure.
form	an optional formula with a conditioning expression on its right hand side (i.e. an expression involving the | operator). Defaults to formula(object). Not used.
level	a positive integer vector with the level(s) of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present. This argument is optional for most methods of this generic function and defaults to all levels of nesting. Not used.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in form. Optional for most methods. Not used.
sep	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is /. Not used.

Value

if object has a groups attribute, its value is returned; else NULL is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(form = ~ age | Sex)
vf1 <- Initialize(vf1, Orthodont)
getGroups(vf1)
```

---

getGroupsFormula *Extract Grouping Formula*

Description

The conditioning expression associated with formula(object) (i.e. the expression after the | operator) is returned either as a named list of one-sided formulas, or a single one-sided formula, depending on the value of asList. The components of the returned list are ordered from outermost to innermost level and are named after the grouping factor expression.

Usage

```
getGroupsFormula(object, asList, sep)
```

Arguments

object	any object from which a formula can be extracted.
asList	an optional logical value. If TRUE the returned value with be a list of formulas; else, if FALSE the returned value will be a one-sided formula. Defaults to FALSE.
sep	character, the separator to use between group levels when multiple levels are collapsed. The default is /.

Value

a one-sided formula, or a list of one-sided formulas, with the grouping structure associated with `formula(object)`. If no conditioning expression is present in `formula(object)` a `NULL` value is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`getGroupsFormula.gls`, `getGroupsFormula.lmList`, `getGroupsFormula.lme`, `getGroupsFormula.reStruct`, `getGroups`

Examples

```
getGroupsFormula(y ~ x | g1/g2)
```

---

getResponse *Extract Response Variable from an Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include `data.frame`, `gls`, `lme`, and `lmList`.

Usage

```
getResponse(object, form)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object
`form`	an optional two-sided formula. Defaults to `formula(object)`.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`getResponseFormula`

Examples

```
getResponse(Orthodont)
```

getResponseFormula *Extract Formula Specifying Response Variable*

Description

The left hand side of `formula{object}` is returned as a one-sided formula.

Usage

```
getResponseFormula(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object from which a formula can be extracted.

Value

a one-sided formula with the response variable associated with `formula{object}`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

getResponse

Examples

```
getResponseFormula(y ~ x | g)
```

getVarCov *Extract variance-covariance matrix*

Description

Extract the variance-covariance matrix from a fitted model, such as a mixed-effects model.

Usage

```
getVarCov(obj, ...)
## S3 method for class lme
getVarCov(obj, individuals,
    type = c("random.effects", "conditional", "marginal"), ...)
## S3 method for class gls
getVarCov(obj, individual = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

`obj`	A fitted model. Methods are available for models fit by `lme` and by `gls`
`individuals`	For models fit by `lme` a vector of levels of the grouping factor can be specified for the conditional or marginal variance-covariance matrices.
`individual`	For models fit by `gls` the only type of variance-covariance matrix provided is the marginal variance-covariance of the responses by group. The optional argument `individual` specifies the group of responses.
`type`	For models fit by `lme` the `type` argument specifies the type of variance-covariance matrix, either `"random.effects"` for the random-effects variance-covariance (the default), or `"conditional"` for the conditional. variance-covariance of the responses or `"marginal"` for the the marginal variance-covariance of the responses.
`...`	Optional arguments for some methods, as described above

Value

A variance-covariance matrix or a list of variance-covariance matrices.

Author(s)

Mary Lindstrom <lindstro@biostat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lme`, `gls`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, data = Orthodont, subset = Sex == "Female")
getVarCov(fm1)
getVarCov(fm1, individual = "F01", type = "marginal")
getVarCov(fm1, type = "conditional")
fm2 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
getVarCov(fm2)
```

`gls` *Fit Linear Model Using Generalized Least Squares*

Description

This function fits a linear model using generalized least squares. The errors are allowed to be correlated and/or have unequal variances.

Usage

```
gls(model, data, correlation, weights, subset, method, na.action,
    control, verbose)
## S3 method for class gls
update(object, model., ..., evaluate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "gls", representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model.
model	a two-sided linear formula object describing the model, with the response on the left of a ~ operator and the terms, separated by + operators, on the right.
model.	Changes to the model – see update.formula for details.
data	an optional data frame containing the variables named in model, correlation, weights, and subset. By default the variables are taken from the environment from which gls is called.
correlation	an optional corStruct object describing the within-group correlation structure. See the documentation of corClasses for a description of the available corStruct classes. If a grouping variable is to be used, it must be specified in the form argument to the corStruct constructor. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to uncorrelated errors.
weights	an optional varFunc object or one-sided formula describing the within-group heteroscedasticity structure. If given as a formula, it is used as the argument to varFixed, corresponding to fixed variance weights. See the documentation on varClasses for a description of the available varFunc classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to homoscedastic errors.
subset	an optional expression indicating which subset of the rows of data should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
method	a character string. If "REML" the model is fit by maximizing the restricted log-likelihood. If "ML" the log-likelihood is maximized. Defaults to "REML".
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes gls to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
control	a list of control values for the estimation algorithm to replace the default values returned by the function glsControl. Defaults to an empty list.
verbose	an optional logical value. If TRUE information on the evolution of the iterative algorithm is printed. Default is FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.
evaluate	If TRUE evaluate the new call else return the call.

Value

an object of class "gls" representing the linear model fit. Generic functions such as print, plot, and summary have methods to show the results of the fit. See glsObject for the components of the fit. The functions resid, coef and fitted, can be used to extract some of its components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

The different correlation structures available for the `correlation` argument are described in Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994), Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996), and Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002). The use of variance functions for linear and nonlinear models is presented in detail in Carroll, R.J. and Ruppert, D. (1988) and Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995).

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Carroll, R.J. and Ruppert, D. (1988) "Transformation and Weighting in Regression", Chapman and Hall.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measurement Data", Chapman and Hall.

Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 100, 461.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

`corClasses`, `glsControl`, `glsObject`, `glsStruct`, `plot.gls`, `predict.gls`, `qqnorm.gls`, `residuals.gls`, `summary.gls`, `varClasses`, `varFunc`

Examples

```
# AR(1) errors within each Mare
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
# variance increases as a power of the absolute fitted values
fm2 <- update(fm1, weights = varPower())
```

`glsControl` *Control Values for gls Fit*

Description

The values supplied in the function call replace the defaults and a list with all possible arguments is returned. The returned list is used as the `control` argument to the `gls` function.

Usage

```
glsControl(maxIter, msMaxIter, tolerance, msTol, msVerbose,
           singular.ok, returnObject, apVar, .relStep,
           opt=c("nlminb", "optim"), optimMethod,
           minAbsParApVar, natural)
```

Arguments

maxIter	maximum number of iterations for the gls optimization algorithm. Default is 50.
msMaxIter	maximum number of iterations for the optimization step inside the gls optimization. Default is 50.
tolerance	tolerance for the convergence criterion in the gls algorithm. Default is 1e-6.
msTol	tolerance for the convergence criterion of the first outer iteration when optim is used. Default is 1e-7.
msVerbose	a logical value passed as the trace argument to ms (see documentation on that function). Default is FALSE.
singular.ok	a logical value indicating whether non-estimable coefficients (resulting from linear dependencies among the columns of the regression matrix) should be allowed. Default is FALSE.
returnObject	a logical value indicating whether the fitted object should be returned when the maximum number of iterations is reached without convergence of the algorithm. Default is FALSE.
apVar	a logical value indicating whether the approximate covariance matrix of the variance-covariance parameters should be calculated. Default is TRUE.
.relStep	relative step for numerical derivatives calculations. Default is .Machine$double.eps^(1/3).
opt	the optimizer to be used, either "nlminb" (the current default) or "optim" (the previous default).
optimMethod	character - the optimization method to be used with the optim optimizer. The default is "BFGS". An alternative is "L-BFGS-B".
minAbsParApVar	numeric value - minimum absolute parameter value in the approximate variance calculation. The default is 0.05.
natural	logical. Should the natural parameterization be used for the approximate variance calculations? Default is TRUE.

Value

a list with components for each of the possible arguments.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls

Examples

```
# decrease the maximum number iterations in the optimization call and
# request that information on the evolution of the ms iterations be printed
glsControl(msMaxIter = 20, msVerbose = TRUE)
```

glsObject *Fitted gls Object*

Description

An object returned by the gls function, inheriting from class "gls" and representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model. Objects of this class have methods for the generic functions anova, coef, fitted, formula, getGroups, getResponse, intervals, logLik, plot, predict, print, residuals, summary, and update.

Value

The following components must be included in a legitimate "gls" object.

apVar	an approximate covariance matrix for the variance-covariance coefficients. If apVar = FALSE in the list of control values used in the call to gls, this component is equal to NULL.
call	a list containing an image of the gls call that produced the object.
coefficients	a vector with the estimated linear model coefficients.
contrasts	a list with the contrasts used to represent factors in the model formula. This information is important for making predictions from a new data frame in which not all levels of the original factors are observed. If no factors are used in the model, this component will be an empty list.
dims	a list with basic dimensions used in the model fit, including the components N - the number of observations in the data and p - the number of coefficients in the linear model.
fitted	a vector with the fitted values..
glsStruct	an object inheriting from class glsStruct, representing a list of linear model components, such as corStruct and varFunc objects.
groups	a vector with the correlation structure grouping factor, if any is present.
logLik	the log-likelihood at convergence.
method	the estimation method: either "ML" for maximum likelihood, or "REML" for restricted maximum likelihood.
numIter	the number of iterations used in the iterative algorithm.
residuals	a vector with the residuals.
sigma	the estimated residual standard error.
varBeta	an approximate covariance matrix of the coefficients estimates.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls, glsStruct

glsStruct *Generalized Least Squares Structure*

Description

A generalized least squares structure is a list of model components representing different sets of parameters in the linear model. A `glsStruct` may contain `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects. `NULL` arguments are not included in the `glsStruct` list.

Usage

```
glsStruct(corStruct, varStruct)
```

Arguments

`corStruct`	an optional `corStruct` object, representing a correlation structure. Default is `NULL`.
`varStruct`	an optional `varFunc` object, representing a variance function structure. Default is `NULL`.

Value

a list of model variance-covariance components determining the parameters to be estimated for the associated linear model.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`corClasses`, `gls`, `residuals.glsStruct`, `varFunc`

Examples

```
gls1 <- glsStruct(corAR1(), varPower())
```

Glucose *Glucose levels over time*

Description

The `Glucose` data frame has 378 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Subject an ordered factor with levels `6 < 2 < 3 < 5 < 1 < 4`

Time a numeric vector

conc a numeric vector of glucose levels

Meal an ordered factor with levels `2am < 6am < 10am < 2pm < 6pm < 10pm`

Source

Hand, D. and Crowder, M. (1996), *Practical Longitudinal Data Analysis*, Chapman and Hall, London.

`Glucose2` *Glucose Levels Following Alcohol Ingestion*

Description

The `Glucose2` data frame has 196 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Subject a factor with levels `1` to `7` identifying the subject whose glucose level is measured.

Date a factor with levels `1` `2` indicating the occasion in which the experiment was conducted.

Time a numeric vector giving the time since alcohol ingestion (in min/10).

glucose a numeric vector giving the blood glucose level (in mg/dl).

Details

Hand and Crowder (Table A.14, pp. 180-181, 1996) describe data on the blood glucose levels measured at 14 time points over 5 hours for 7 volunteers who took alcohol at time 0. The same experiment was repeated on a second date with the same subjects but with a dietary additive used for all subjects.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.10)

Hand, D. and Crowder, M. (1996), *Practical Longitudinal Data Analysis*, Chapman and Hall, London.

`gnls` *Fit Nonlinear Model Using Generalized Least Squares*

Description

This function fits a nonlinear model using generalized least squares. The errors are allowed to be correlated and/or have unequal variances.

Usage

```
gnls(model, data, params, start, correlation, weights, subset,
     na.action, naPattern, control, verbose)
```

Arguments

model	a two-sided formula object describing the model, with the response on the left of a ~ operator and a nonlinear expression involving parameters and covariates on the right. If data is given, all names used in the formula should be defined as parameters or variables in the data frame.
data	an optional data frame containing the variables named in model, correlation, weights, subset, and naPattern. By default the variables are taken from the environment from which gnls is called.
params	an optional two-sided linear formula of the form p1+...+pn~x1+...+xm, or list of two-sided formulas of the form p1~x1+...+xm, with possibly different models for each parameter. The p1,...,pn represent parameters included on the right hand side of model and x1+...+xm define a linear model for the parameters (when the left hand side of the formula contains several parameters, they are all assumed to follow the same linear model described by the right hand side expression). A 1 on the right hand side of the formula(s) indicates a single fixed effects for the corresponding parameter(s). By default, the parameters are obtained from the names of start.
start	an optional named list, or numeric vector, with the initial values for the parameters in model. It can be omitted when a selfStarting function is used in model, in which case the starting estimates will be obtained from a single call to the nls function.
correlation	an optional corStruct object describing the within-group correlation structure. See the documentation of corClasses for a description of the available corStruct classes. If a grouping variable is to be used, it must be specified in the form argument to the corStruct constructor. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to uncorrelated errors.
weights	an optional varFunc object or one-sided formula describing the within-group heteroscedasticity structure. If given as a formula, it is used as the argument to varFixed, corresponding to fixed variance weights. See the documentation on varClasses for a description of the available varFunc classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to homoscedastic errors.
subset	an optional expression indicating which subset of the rows of data should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes gnls to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
naPattern	an expression or formula object, specifying which returned values are to be regarded as missing.
control	a list of control values for the estimation algorithm to replace the default values returned by the function gnlsControl. Defaults to an empty list.
verbose	an optional logical value. If TRUE information on the evolution of the iterative algorithm is printed. Default is FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object of class gnls, also inheriting from class gls, representing the nonlinear model fit. Generic functions such as print, plot and summary have methods to show the results of the fit. See gnlsObject for the components of the fit. The functions resid, coef, and fitted can be used to extract some of its components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

The different correlation structures available for the correlation argument are described in Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994), Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996), and Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002). The use of variance functions for linear and nonlinear models is presented in detail in Carrol, R.J. and Rupert, D. (1988) and Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995).

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Carrol, R.J. and Rupert, D. (1988) "Transformation and Weighting in Regression", Chapman and Hall.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measurement Data", Chapman and Hall.

Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

corClasses, gnlsControl, gnlsObject, gnlsStruct, predict.gnls, varClasses, varFunc

Examples

```
# variance increases with a power of the absolute fitted values
fm1 <- gnls(weight ~ SSlogis(Time, Asym, xmid, scal), Soybean,
            weights = varPower())
summary(fm1)
```

---

gnlsControl *Control Values for gnls Fit*

Description

The values supplied in the function call replace the defaults and a list with all possible arguments is returned. The returned list is used as the control argument to the gnls function.

Usage

```
gnlsControl(maxIter, nlsMaxIter, msMaxIter, minScale, tolerance,
            nlsTol, msTol, returnObject, msVerbose,
            apVar, .relStep,
            opt = c("nlminb", "optim"), optimMethod,
            minAbsParApVar)
```

Arguments

maxIter	maximum number of iterations for the gnls optimization algorithm. Default is 50.
nlsMaxIter	maximum number of iterations for the nls optimization step inside the gnls optimization. Default is 7.
msMaxIter	maximum number of iterations for the ms optimization step inside the gnls optimization. Default is 50.
minScale	minimum factor by which to shrink the default step size in an attempt to decrease the sum of squares in the nls step. Default 0.001.
tolerance	tolerance for the convergence criterion in the gnls algorithm. Default is 1e-6.
nlsTol	tolerance for the convergence criterion in nls step. Default is 1e-3.
msTol	tolerance for the convergence criterion of the first outer iteration when optim is used. Default is 1e-7.
returnObject	a logical value indicating whether the fitted object should be returned when the maximum number of iterations is reached without convergence of the algorithm. Default is FALSE.
msVerbose	a logical value passed as the trace argument to ms (see documentation on that function). Default is FALSE.
apVar	a logical value indicating whether the approximate covariance matrix of the variance-covariance parameters should be calculated. Default is TRUE.
.relStep	relative step for numerical derivatives calculations. Default is .Machine$double.eps^(1/3).
opt	the optimizer to be used, either "nlminb" (the current default) or "optim" (the previous default).
optimMethod	character - the optimization method to be used with the optim optimizer. The default is "BFGS". An alternative is "L-BFGS-B".
minAbsParApVar	numeric value - minimum absolute parameter value in the approximate variance calculation. The default is 0.05.

Value

a list with components for each of the possible arguments.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gnls

Examples

```
# decrease the maximum number iterations in the ms call and
# request that information on the evolution of the ms iterations be printed
gnlsControl(msMaxIter = 20, msVerbose = TRUE)
```

---

gnlsObject *Fitted gnls Object*

Description

An object returned by the gnls function, inheriting from class gnls and also from class gls, and representing a generalized nonlinear least squares fitted model. Objects of this class have methods for the generic functions anova, coef, fitted, formula, getGroups, getResponse, intervals, logLik, plot, predict, print, residuals, summary, and update.

Value

The following components must be included in a legitimate gnls object.

apVar	an approximate covariance matrix for the variance-covariance coefficients. If apVar = FALSE in the list of control values used in the call to gnls, this component is equal to NULL.
call	a list containing an image of the gnls call that produced the object.
coefficients	a vector with the estimated nonlinear model coefficients.
contrasts	a list with the contrasts used to represent factors in the model formula. This information is important for making predictions from a new data frame in which not all levels of the original factors are observed. If no factors are used in the model, this component will be an empty list.
dims	a list with basic dimensions used in the model fit, including the components N - the number of observations used in the fit and p - the number of coefficients in the nonlinear model.
fitted	a vector with the fitted values.
modelStruct	an object inheriting from class gnlsStruct, representing a list of model components, such as corStruct and varFunc objects.
groups	a vector with the correlation structure grouping factor, if any is present.
logLik	the log-likelihood at convergence.
numIter	the number of iterations used in the iterative algorithm.
plist	
pmap	
residuals	a vector with the residuals.
sigma	the estimated residual standard error.
varBeta	an approximate covariance matrix of the coefficients estimates.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gnls, gnlsStruct

gnlsStruct *Generalized Nonlinear Least Squares Structure*

Description

A generalized nonlinear least squares structure is a list of model components representing different sets of parameters in the nonlinear model. A `gnlsStruct` may contain `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects. `NULL` arguments are not included in the `gnlsStruct` list.

Usage

```
gnlsStruct(corStruct, varStruct)
```

Arguments

`corStruct`	an optional `corStruct` object, representing a correlation structure. Default is `NULL`.
`varStruct`	an optional `varFunc` object, representing a variance function structure. Default is `NULL`.

Value

a list of model variance-covariance components determining the parameters to be estimated for the associated nonlinear model.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`gnls`, `corClasses`, `residuals.gnlsStruct` `varFunc`

Examples

```
gnls1 <- gnlsStruct(corAR1(), varPower())
```

groupedData *Construct a groupedData Object*

Description

An object of the `groupedData` class is constructed from the `formula` and `data` by attaching the `formula` as an attribute of the data, along with any of `outer`, `inner`, `labels`, and `units` that are given. If `order.groups` is `TRUE` the grouping factor is converted to an ordered factor with the ordering determined by `FUN`. Depending on the number of grouping levels and the type of primary covariate, the returned object will be of one of three classes: `nfnGroupedData` - numeric covariate, single level of nesting; `nffGroupedData` - factor covariate, single level of nesting; and `nmGroupedData` - multiple levels of nesting. Several modeling and plotting functions can use the formula stored with a `groupedData` object to construct default plots and models.

Usage

```
groupedData(formula, data, order.groups, FUN, outer, inner,
 labels, units)
## S3 method for class groupedData
update(object, formula, data, order.groups, FUN,
outer, inner, labels, units, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class groupedData.
formula	a formula of the form resp ~ cov | group where resp is the response, cov is the primary covariate, and group is the grouping factor. The expression 1 can be used for the primary covariate when there is no other suitable candidate. Multiple nested grouping factors can be listed separated by the / symbol as in fact1/fact2. In an expression like this the fact2 factor is nested within the fact1 factor.
data	a data frame in which the expressions in formula can be evaluated. The resulting groupedData object will consist of the same data values in the same order but with additional attributes.
order.groups	an optional logical value, or list of logical values, indicating if the grouping factors should be converted to ordered factors according to the function FUN applied to the response from each group. If multiple levels of grouping are present, this argument can be either a single logical value (which will be repeated for all grouping levels) or a list of logical values. If no names are assigned to the list elements, they are assumed in the same order as the group levels (outermost to innermost grouping). Ordering within a level of grouping is done within the levels of the grouping factors which are outer to it. Changing the grouping factor to an ordered factor does not affect the ordering of the rows in the data frame but it does affect the order of the panels in a trellis display of the data or models fitted to the data. Defaults to TRUE.
FUN	an optional summary function that will be applied to the values of the response for each level of the grouping factor, when order.groups = TRUE, to determine the ordering. Defaults to the max function.
outer	an optional one-sided formula, or list of one-sided formulas, indicating covariates that are outer to the grouping factor(s). If multiple levels of grouping are present, this argument can be either a single one-sided formula, or a list of one-sided formulas. If no names are assigned to the list elements, they are assumed in the same order as the group levels (outermost to innermost grouping). An outer covariate is invariant within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Ordering of the groups is done in such a way as to preserve adjacency of groups with the same value of the outer variables. When plotting a groupedData object, the argument outer = TRUE causes the panels to be determined by the outer formula. The points within the panels are associated by level of the grouping factor. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no outer covariates are present.
inner	an optional one-sided formula, or list of one-sided formulas, indicating covariates that are inner to the grouping factor(s). If multiple levels of grouping are present, this argument can be either a single one-sided formula, or a list of one-sided formulas. If no names are assigned to the list elements, they are assumed in the same order as the group levels (outermost to innermost grouping). An

	inner covariate can change within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. An inner formula can be used to associate points in a plot of a groupedData object. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no inner covariates are present.
labels	an optional list of character strings giving labels for the response and the primary covariate. The label for the primary covariate is named x and that for the response is named y. Either label can be omitted.
units	an optional list of character strings giving the units for the response and the primary covariate. The units string for the primary covariate is named x and that for the response is named y. Either units string can be omitted.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object of one of the classes nfnGroupedData, nffGroupedData, or nmGroupedData, and also inheriting from classes groupedData and data.frame.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates and José Pinheiro

References

Bates, D.M. and Pinheiro, J.C. (1997), "Software Design for Longitudinal Data", in "Modelling Longitudinal and Spatially Correlated Data: Methods, Applications and Future Directions", T.G. Gregoire (ed.), Springer-Verlag, New York.

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates, D.M. (1997) "Future Directions in Mixed-Effects Software: Design of NLME 3.0" available at http://nlme.stat.wisc.edu/

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

formula, gapply, gsummary, lme, plot.nffGroupedData, plot.nfnGroupedData, plot.nmGroupedData, reStruct

Examples

```
Orth.new <-  # create a new copy of the groupedData object
  groupedData( distance ~ age | Subject,
               data = as.data.frame( Orthodont ),
               FUN = mean,
               outer = ~ Sex,
               labels = list( x = "Age",
                 y = "Distance from pituitary to pterygomaxillary fissure" ),
               units = list( x = "(yr)", y = "(mm)") )
## Not run:
plot( Orth.new )         # trellis plot by Subject

## End(Not run)
formula( Orth.new )      # extractor for the formula
gsummary( Orth.new )     # apply summary by Subject
fm1 <- lme( Orth.new )   # fixed and groups formulae extracted from object
Orthodont2 <- update(Orthodont, FUN = mean)
```

gsummary *Summarize by Groups*

Description

Provide a summary of the variables in a data frame by groups of rows. This is most useful with a groupedData object to examine the variables by group.

Usage

```
gsummary(object, FUN, omitGroupingFactor, form, level,
   groups, invariantsOnly, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object to be summarized - usually a groupedData object or a data.frame.
FUN	an optional summary function or a list of summary functions to be applied to each variable in the frame. The function or functions are applied only to variables in object that vary within the groups defined by groups. Invariant variables are always summarized by group using the unique value that they assume within that group. If FUN is a single function it will be applied to each non-invariant variable by group to produce the summary for that variable. If FUN is a list of functions, the names in the list should designate classes of variables in the frame such as ordered, factor, or numeric. The indicated function will be applied to any non-invariant variables of that class. The default functions to be used are mean for numeric factors, and Mode for both factor and ordered. The Mode function, defined internally in gsummary, returns the modal or most popular value of the variable. It is different from the mode function that returns the S-language mode of the variable.
omitGroupingFactor	an optional logical value. When TRUE the grouping factor itself will be omitted from the group-wise summary but the levels of the grouping factor will continue to be used as the row names for the data frame that is produced by the summary. Defaults to FALSE.
form	an optional one-sided formula that defines the groups. When this formula is given, the right-hand side is evaluated in object, converted to a factor if necessary, and the unique levels are used to define the groups. Defaults to formula(object).
level	an optional positive integer giving the level of grouping to be used in an object with multiple nested grouping levels. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
groups	an optional factor that will be used to split the rows into groups. Defaults to getGroups(object, form, level).
invariantsOnly	an optional logical value. When TRUE only those covariates that are invariant within each group will be summarized. The summary value for the group is always the unique value taken on by that covariate within the group. The columns in the summary are of the same class as the corresponding columns in object. By definition, the grouping factor itself must be an invariant. When combined with omitGroupingFactor = TRUE, this option can be used to discover is there are invariant covariates in the data frame. Defaults to FALSE.

... optional additional arguments to the summary functions that are invoked on the variables by group. Often it is helpful to specify `na.rm = TRUE`.

Value

A `data.frame` with one row for each level of the grouping factor. The number of columns is at most the number of columns in `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

summary, groupedData, getGroups

Examples

```
gsummary(Orthodont)  # default summary by Subject
## gsummary with invariantsOnly = TRUE and omitGroupingFactor = TRUE
## determines whether there are covariates like Sex that are invariant
## within the repeated observations on the same Subject.
gsummary(Orthodont, inv = TRUE, omit = TRUE)
```

Gun *Methods for firing naval guns*

Description

The Gun data frame has 36 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

rounds a numeric vector

Method a factor with levels `M1` `M2`

Team an ordered factor with levels `T1S` < `T3S` < `T2S` < `T1A` < `T2A` < `T3A` < `T1H` < `T3H` < `T2H`

Physique an ordered factor with levels `Slight` < `Average` < `Heavy`

Details

Hicks (p.180, 1993) reports data from an experiment on methods for firing naval guns. Gunners of three different physiques (slight, average, and heavy) tested two firing methods. Both methods were tested twice by each of nine teams of three gunners with identical physique. The response was the number of rounds fired per minute.

Source

Hicks, C. R. (1993), *Fundamental Concepts in the Design of Experiments (4th ed)*, Harcourt Brace, New York.

IGF *Radioimmunoassay of IGF-I Protein*

Description

The IGF data frame has 237 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Lot an ordered factor giving the radioactive tracer lot.

age a numeric vector giving the age (in days) of the radioactive tracer.

conc a numeric vector giving the estimated concentration of IGF-I protein (ng/ml)

Details

Davidian and Giltinan (1995) describe data obtained during quality control radioimmunoassays for ten different lots of radioactive tracer used to calibrate the Insulin-like Growth Factor (IGF-I) protein concentration measurements.

Source

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995), *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman and Hall, London.

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.11)

Initialize *Initialize Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: corStruct, lmeStruct, reStruct, and varFunc.

Usage

```
Initialize(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any object requiring initialization, e.g. "plug-in" structures such as corStruct and varFunc objects.
data	a data frame to be used in the initialization procedure.
...	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

an initialized object with the same class as object. Changes introduced by the initialization procedure will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

Initialize.corStruct, Initialize.lmeStruct, Initialize.glsStruct, Initialize.varFunc, isInitialized

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

Initialize.corStruct *Initialize corStruct Object*

Description

This method initializes object by evaluating its associated covariate(s) and grouping factor, if any is present, in data, calculating various dimensions and constants used by optimization algorithms involving corStruct objects (see the appropriate Dim method documentation), and assigning initial values for the coefficients in object, if none were present.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
Initialize(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "corStruct" representing a correlation structure.
data	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in formula(object).
...	this argument is included to make this method compatible with the generic.

Value

an initialized object with the same class as `object` representing a correlation structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`Dim.corStruct`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Subject)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, data = Orthodont)
```

Initialize.glsStruct *Initialize a glsStruct Object*

Description

The individual linear model components of the `glsStruct` list are initialized.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glsStruct
Initialize(object, data, control, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"glsStruct"`, representing a list of linear model components, such as `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects.
`data`	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in `formula(object)`.
`control`	an optional list with control parameters for the initialization and optimization algorithms used in `gls`. Defaults to `list(singular.ok = FALSE)`, implying that linear dependencies are not allowed in the model.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a `glsStruct` object similar to `object`, but with initialized model components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls, Initialize.corStruct, Initialize.varFunc, Initialize

`Initialize.lmeStruct` *Initialize an lmeStruct Object*

Description

The individual linear mixed-effects model components of the `lmeStruct` list are initialized.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmeStruct
Initialize(object, data, groups, conLin, control, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"lmeStruct"`, representing a list of linear mixed-effects model components, such as `reStruct`, `corStruct`, and `varFunc` objects.
`data`	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in `formula(object)`.
`groups`	a data frame with the grouping factors corresponding to the lme model associated with `object` as columns, sorted from innermost to outermost grouping level.
`conLin`	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components `"Xy"`, corresponding to a regression matrix (`X`) combined with a response vector (`y`), and `"logLik"`, corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying lme model. Defaults to `attr(object, "conLin")`.
`control`	an optional list with control parameters for the initialization and optimization algorithms used in `lme`. Defaults to `list(niterEM=20, gradHess=TRUE)`, implying that 20 EM iterations are to be used in the derivation of initial estimates for the coefficients of the `reStruct` component of `object` and, if possible, numerical gradient vectors and Hessian matrices for the log-likelihood function are to be used in the optimization algorithm.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an `lmeStruct` object similar to `object`, but with initialized model components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, Initialize.reStruct, Initialize.corStruct, Initialize.varFunc, Initialize

Initialize.reStruct *Initialize reStruct Object*

Description

Initial estimates for the parameters in the pdMat objects forming object, which have not yet been initialized, are obtained using the methodology described in Bates and Pinheiro (1998). These estimates may be refined using a series of EM iterations, as described in Bates and Pinheiro (1998). The number of EM iterations to be used is defined in control.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
Initialize(object, data, conLin, control, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
data	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in formula(object).
conLin	a condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying model.
control	an optional list with a single component niterEM controlling the number of iterations for the EM algorithm used to refine initial parameter estimates. It is given as a list for compatibility with other Initialize methods. Defaults to list(niterEM = 20).
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an reStruct object similar to object, but with all pdMat components initialized.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

reStruct, pdMat, Initialize

Initialize.varFunc *Initialize varFunc Object*

Description

This method initializes `object` by evaluating its associated covariate(s) and grouping factor, if any is present, in `data`; determining if the covariate(s) need to be updated when the values of the coefficients associated with `object` change; initializing the log-likelihood and the weights associated with `object`; and assigning initial values for the coefficients in `object`, if none were present. The covariate(s) will only be initialized if no update is needed when `coef(object)` changes.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
Initialize(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "varFunc", representing a variance function structure.
`data`	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in `formula(object)`.
`...`	this argument is included to make this method compatible with the generic.

Value

an initialized object with the same class as `object` representing a variance function structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Initialize

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower( form = ~ age | Sex )
vf1 <- Initialize( vf1, Orthodont )
```

`intervals` *Confidence Intervals on Coefficients*

Description

Confidence intervals on the parameters associated with the model represented by `object` are obtained. This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: `gls`, `lme`, and `lmList`.

Usage

```
intervals(object, level, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a fitted model object from which parameter estimates can be extracted.
`level`	an optional numeric value for the interval confidence level. Defaults to 0.95.
`...`	some methods for the generic may require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`intervals.lme`, `intervals.lmList`, `intervals.gls`

Examples

```
## see the method documentation
```

`intervals.gls` *Confidence Intervals on gls Parameters*

Description

Approximate confidence intervals for the parameters in the linear model represented by `object` are obtained, using a normal approximation to the distribution of the (restricted) maximum likelihood estimators (the estimators are assumed to have a normal distribution centered at the true parameter values and with covariance matrix equal to the negative inverse Hessian matrix of the (restricted) log-likelihood evaluated at the estimated parameters). Confidence intervals are obtained in an unconstrained scale first, using the normal approximation, and, if necessary, transformed to the constrained scale.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
intervals(object, level, which, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"gls"`, representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model.
`level`	an optional numeric value for the interval confidence level. Defaults to 0.95.
`which`	an optional character string specifying the subset of parameters for which to construct the confidence intervals. Possible values are `"all"` for all parameters, `"var-cov"` for the variance-covariance parameters only, and `"coef"` for the linear model coefficients only. Defaults to `"all"`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with components given by data frames with rows corresponding to parameters and columns `lower`, `est.`, and `upper` representing respectively lower confidence limits, the estimated values, and upper confidence limits for the parameters. Possible components are:

`coef`	linear model coefficients, only present when `which` is not equal to `"var-cov"`.
`corStruct`	correlation parameters, only present when `which` is not equal to `"coef"` and a correlation structure is used in `object`.
`varFunc`	variance function parameters, only present when `which` is not equal to `"coef"` and a variance function structure is used in `object`.
`sigma`	residual standard error.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

gls, intervals, print.intervals.gls

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
intervals(fm1)
```

---

intervals.lme *Confidence Intervals on lme Parameters*

Description

Approximate confidence intervals for the parameters in the linear mixed-effects model represented by object are obtained, using a normal approximation to the distribution of the (restricted) maximum likelihood estimators (the estimators are assumed to have a normal distribution centered at the true parameter values and with covariance matrix equal to the negative inverse Hessian matrix of the (restricted) log-likelihood evaluated at the estimated parameters). Confidence intervals are obtained in an unconstrained scale first, using the normal approximation, and, if necessary, transformed to the constrained scale. The pdNatural parametrization is used for general positive-definite matrices.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
intervals(object, level, which, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
level	an optional numeric value with the confidence level for the intervals. Defaults to 0.95.
which	an optional character string specifying the subset of parameters for which to construct the confidence intervals. Possible values are "all" for all parameters, "var-cov" for the variance-covariance parameters only, and "fixed" for the fixed effects only. Defaults to "all".
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with components given by data frames with rows corresponding to parameters and columns lower, est., and upper representing respectively lower confidence limits, the estimated values, and upper confidence limits for the parameters. Possible components are:

fixed	fixed effects, only present when which is not equal to "var-cov".
reStruct	random effects variance-covariance parameters, only present when which is not equal to "fixed".

corStruct	within-group correlation parameters, only present when which is not equal to "fixed" and a correlation structure is used in object.
varFunc	within-group variance function parameters, only present when which is not equal to "fixed" and a variance function structure is used in object.
sigma	within-group standard deviation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

lme, intervals, print.intervals.lme, pdNatural

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
intervals(fm1)
```

---

intervals.lmList *Confidence Intervals on lmList Coefficients*

Description

Confidence intervals on the linear model coefficients are obtained for each lm component of object and organized into a three dimensional array. The first dimension corresponding to the names of the object components. The second dimension is given by lower, est., and upper corresponding, respectively, to the lower confidence limit, estimated coefficient, and upper confidence limit. The third dimension is given by the coefficients names.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
intervals(object, level, pool, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmList", representing a list of lm objects with a common model.
level	an optional numeric value with the confidence level for the intervals. Defaults to 0.95.
pool	an optional logical value indicating whether a pooled estimate of the residual standard error should be used. Default is attr(object, "pool").
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a three dimensional array with the confidence intervals and estimates for the coefficients of each `lm` component of `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`lmList`, `intervals`, `plot.intervals.lmList`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
intervals(fm1)
```

---

isBalanced *Check a Design for Balance*

Description

Check the design of the experiment or study for balance.

Usage

```
isBalanced(object, countOnly, level)
```

Arguments

`object`	A `groupedData` object containing a data frame and a formula that describes the roles of variables in the data frame. The object will have one or more nested grouping factors and a primary covariate.
`countOnly`	A logical value indicating if the check for balance should only consider the number of observations at each level of the grouping factor(s). Defaults to `FALSE`.
`level`	an optional integer vector specifying the desired prediction levels. Levels increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level 0 representing the population (fixed effects) predictions. Defaults to the innermost level.

Details

A design is balanced with respect to the grouping factor(s) if there are the same number of observations at each distinct value of the grouping factor or each combination of distinct levels of the nested grouping factors. If `countOnly` is `FALSE` the design is also checked for balance with respect to the primary covariate, which is often the time of the observation. A design is balanced with respect to the grouping factor and the covariate if the number of observations at each distinct level (or combination of levels for nested factors) is constant and the times at which the observations are taken (in general, the values of the primary covariates) also are constant.

Value

TRUE or FALSE according to whether the data are balanced or not

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

table, groupedData

Examples

```
isBalanced(Orthodont)                    # should return TRUE
isBalanced(Orthodont, countOnly = TRUE)  # should return TRUE
isBalanced(Pixel)                        # should return FALSE
isBalanced(Pixel, level = 1)             # should return FALSE
```

---

isInitialized *Check if Object is Initialized*

Description

Checks if object has been initialized (generally through a call to Initialize), by searching for components and attributes which are modified during initialization.

Usage

```
isInitialized(object)
```

Arguments

object	any object requiring initialization.

Value

a logical value indicating whether object has been initialized.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

Initialize

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdDiag(~age)
isInitialized(pd1)
```

LDEsysMat *Generate system matrix for LDEs*

Description

Generate the system matrix for the linear differential equations determined by a compartment model.

Usage

```
LDEsysMat(pars, incidence)
```

Arguments

pars	a numeric vector of parameter values.
incidence	an integer matrix with columns named From, To, and Par. Values in the Par column must be in the range 1 to length(pars). Values in the From column must be between 1 and the number of compartments. Values in the To column must be between 0 and the number of compartments.

Details

A compartment model describes material transfer between k in a system of k compartments to a linear system of differential equations. Given a description of the system and a vector of parameter values this function returns the system matrix.

This function is intended for use in a general system for solving compartment models, as described in Bates and Watts (1988).

Value

A k by k numeric matrix.

Author(s)

Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Bates, D. M. and Watts, D. G. (1988), *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley, New York.

Examples

```
# incidence matrix for a two compartment open system
incidence <-
  matrix(c(1,1,2,2,2,1,3,2,0), ncol = 3, byrow = TRUE,
   dimnames = list(NULL, c("Par", "From", "To")))
incidence
LDEsysMat(c(1.2, 0.3, 0.4), incidence)
```

lme *Linear Mixed-Effects Models*

Description

This generic function fits a linear mixed-effects model in the formulation described in Laird and Ware (1982) but allowing for nested random effects. The within-group errors are allowed to be correlated and/or have unequal variances.

The methods `lme.lmList` and `lme.groupedData` are documented separately.

Usage

```
lme(fixed, data, random, correlation, weights, subset, method,
    na.action, control, contrasts = NULL, keep.data = TRUE)

## S3 method for class lme
update(object, fixed., ..., evaluate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `lme`, representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
`fixed`	a two-sided linear formula object describing the fixed-effects part of the model, with the response on the left of a `~` operator and the terms, separated by `+` operators, on the right, an `"lmList"` object, or a `"groupedData"` object. There is limited support for formulae such as `resp ~ 1` and `resp ~ 0`, and less prior to version '`3.1-112`'.
`fixed.`	Changes to the fixed-effects formula – see `update.formula` for details.
`data`	an optional data frame containing the variables named in `fixed`, `random`, `correlation`, `weights`, and `subset`. By default the variables are taken from the environment from which `lme` is called.
`random`	optionally, any of the following: (i) a one-sided formula of the form `~ x1 + ... + xn | g1/.../gm`, with `x1 + ... + xn` specifying the model for the random effects and `g1/.../gm` the grouping structure (`m` may be equal to 1, in which case no `/` is required). The random effects formula will be repeated for all levels of grouping, in the case of multiple levels of grouping; (ii) a list of one-sided formulas of the form `~ x1 + ... + xn | g`, with possibly different random effects models for each grouping level. The order of nesting will be assumed the same as the order of the elements in the list; (iii) a one-sided formula of the form `~ x1 + ... + xn`, or a `pdMat` object with a formula (i.e. a non-`NULL` value for `formula(object)`), or a list of such formulas or `pdMat` objects. In this case, the grouping structure formula will be derived from the data used to fit the linear mixed-effects model, which should inherit from class `"groupedData"`; (iv) a named list of formulas or `pdMat` objects as in (iii), with the grouping factors as names. The order of nesting will be assumed the same as the order of the order of the elements in the list; (v) an `reStruct` object. See the documentation on `pdClasses` for a description of the available `pdMat` classes. Defaults to a formula consisting of the right hand side of `fixed`.

correlation	an optional corStruct object describing the within-group correlation structure. See the documentation of corClasses for a description of the available corStruct classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no within-group correlations.
weights	an optional varFunc object or one-sided formula describing the within-group heteroscedasticity structure. If given as a formula, it is used as the argument to varFixed, corresponding to fixed variance weights. See the documentation on varClasses for a description of the available varFunc classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to homoscedastic within-group errors.
subset	an optional expression indicating the subset of the rows of data that should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
method	a character string. If "REML" the model is fit by maximizing the restricted log-likelihood. If "ML" the log-likelihood is maximized. Defaults to "REML".
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes lme to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
control	a list of control values for the estimation algorithm to replace the default values returned by the function lmeControl. Defaults to an empty list.
contrasts	an optional list. See the contrasts.arg of model.matrix.default.
keep.data	logical: should the data argument (if supplied and a data frame) be saved as part of the model object?
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.
evaluate	If TRUE evaluate the new call else return the call.

Value

An object of class "lme" representing the linear mixed-effects model fit. Generic functions such as print, plot and summary have methods to show the results of the fit. See lmeObject for the components of the fit. The functions resid, coef, fitted, fixed.effects, and random.effects can be used to extract some of its components.

Note

The function does not do any scaling internally: the optimization will work best when the response is scaled so its variance is of the order of one.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

The computational methods follow the general framework of Lindstrom and Bates (1988). The model formulation is described in Laird and Ware (1982). The variance-covariance parametrizations are described in Pinheiro and Bates (1996). The different correlation structures available for the correlation argument are described in Box, Jenkins and Reinse (1994), Littel *et al* (1996), and Venables and Ripley, (2002). The use of variance functions for linear and nonlinear mixed effects models is presented in detail in Davidian and Giltinan (1995).

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden–Day.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measurement Data", Chapman and Hall.

Laird, N.M. and Ware, J.H. (1982) "Random-Effects Models for Longitudinal Data", Biometrics, 38, 963–974.

Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1988) "Newton-Raphson and EM Algorithms for Linear Mixed-Effects Models for Repeated-Measures Data", Journal of the American Statistical Association, 83, 1014–1022.

Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289–296.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

corClasses, lme.lmList, lme.groupedData, lmeControl, lmeObject, lmeStruct, lmList, pdClasses, plot.lme, predict.lme, qqnorm.lme, residuals.lme, reStruct, simulate.lme, summary.lme, varClasses, varFunc

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, data = Orthodont) # random is ~ age
fm2 <- lme(distance ~ age + Sex, data = Orthodont, random = ~ 1)
summary(fm1)
summary(fm2)
```

---

lme.groupedData *LME fit from groupedData Object*

Description

The response variable and primary covariate in `formula(fixed)` are used to construct the fixed effects model formula. This formula and the `groupedData` object are passed as the `fixed` and `data` arguments to `lme.formula`, together with any other additional arguments in the function call. See the documentation on `lme.formula` for a description of that function.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class groupedData
lme(fixed, data, random, correlation, weights,
    subset, method, na.action, control, contrasts, keep.data = TRUE)
```

Arguments

fixed	a data frame inheriting from class "groupedData".
data	this argument is included for consistency with the generic function. It is ignored in this method function.
random	optionally, any of the following: (i) a one-sided formula of the form ~x1+...+xn | g1/.../gm, with x1+...+xn specifying the model for the random effects and g1/.../gm the grouping structure (m may be equal to 1, in which case no / is required). The random effects formula will be repeated for all levels of grouping, in the case of multiple levels of grouping; (ii) a list of one-sided formulas of the form ~x1+...+xn | g, with possibly different random effects models for each grouping level. The order of nesting will be assumed the same as the order of the elements in the list; (iii) a one-sided formula of the form ~x1+...+xn, or a pdMat object with a formula (i.e. a non-NULL value for formula(object)), or a list of such formulas or pdMat objects. In this case, the grouping structure formula will be derived from the data used to fit the linear mixed-effects model, which should inherit from class groupedData; (iv) a named list of formulas or pdMat objects as in (iii), with the grouping factors as names. The order of nesting will be assumed the same as the order of the order of the elements in the list; (v) an reStruct object. See the documentation on pdClasses for a description of the available pdMat classes. Defaults to a formula consisting of the right hand side of fixed.
correlation	an optional corStruct object describing the within-group correlation structure. See the documentation of corClasses for a description of the available corStruct classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no within-group correlations.
weights	an optional varFunc object or one-sided formula describing the within-group heteroscedasticity structure. If given as a formula, it is used as the argument to varFixed, corresponding to fixed variance weights. See the documentation on varClasses for a description of the available varFunc classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to homoscedastic within-group errors.
subset	an optional expression indicating the subset of the rows of data that should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
method	a character string. If "REML" the model is fit by maximizing the restricted log-likelihood. If "ML" the log-likelihood is maximized. Defaults to "REML".
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes lme to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
control	a list of control values for the estimation algorithm to replace the default values returned by the function lmeControl. Defaults to an empty list.
contrasts	an optional list. See the contrasts.arg of model.matrix.default.
keep.data	logical: should the data argument (if supplied and a data frame) be saved as part of the model object?

Value

an object of class lme representing the linear mixed-effects model fit. Generic functions such as print, plot and summary have methods to show the results of the fit. See lmeObject for the

components of the fit. The functions `resid`, `coef`, `fitted`, `fixed.effects`, and `random.effects` can be used to extract some of its components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

The computational methods follow on the general framework of Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1988). The model formulation is described in Laird, N.M. and Ware, J.H. (1982). The variance-covariance parametrizations are described in Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996). The different correlation structures available for the `correlation` argument are described in Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994), Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996), and Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002). The use of variance functions for linear and nonlinear mixed effects models is presented in detail in Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995).

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measurement Data", Chapman and Hall.

Laird, N.M. and Ware, J.H. (1982) "Random-Effects Models for Longitudinal Data", Biometrics, 38, 963-974.

Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1988) "Newton-Raphson and EM Algorithms for Linear Mixed-Effects Models for Repeated-Measures Data", Journal of the American Statistical Association, 83, 1014-1022.

Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289-296.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

`lme`, `groupedData`, `lmeObject`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(Orthodont)
summary(fm1)
```

`lme.lmList` *LME fit from lmList Object*

Description

If the random effects names defined in `random` are a subset of the `lmList` object coefficient names, initial estimates for the covariance matrix of the random effects are obtained (overwriting any values given in `random`). `formula(fixed)` and the `data` argument in the calling sequence used to obtain `fixed` are passed as the `fixed` and `data` arguments to `lme.formula`, together with any other additional arguments in the function call. See the documentation on `lme.formula` for a description of that function.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
lme(fixed, data, random, correlation, weights, subset, method,
    na.action, control, contrasts, keep.data)
```

Arguments

`fixed`	an object inheriting from class `"lmList."`, representing a list of `lm` fits with a common model.
`data`	this argument is included for consistency with the generic function. It is ignored in this method function.
`random`	an optional one-sided linear formula with no conditioning expression, or a `pdMat` object with a `formula` attribute. Multiple levels of grouping are not allowed with this method function. Defaults to a formula consisting of the right hand side of `formula(fixed)`.
`correlation`	an optional `corStruct` object describing the within-group correlation structure. See the documentation of `corClasses` for a description of the available `corStruct` classes. Defaults to `NULL`, corresponding to no within-group correlations.
`weights`	an optional `varFunc` object or one-sided formula describing the within-group heteroscedasticity structure. If given as a formula, it is used as the argument to `varFixed`, corresponding to fixed variance weights. See the documentation on `varClasses` for a description of the available `varFunc` classes. Defaults to `NULL`, corresponding to homoscedastic within-group errors.
`subset`	an optional expression indicating the subset of the rows of `data` that should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
`method`	a character string. If `"REML"` the model is fit by maximizing the restricted log-likelihood. If `"ML"` the log-likelihood is maximized. Defaults to `"REML"`.
`na.action`	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain `NA`s. The default action (`na.fail`) causes `lme` to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
`control`	a list of control values for the estimation algorithm to replace the default values returned by the function `lmeControl`. Defaults to an empty list.

contrasts	an optional list. See the contrasts.arg of model.matrix.default.
keep.data	logical: should the data argument (if supplied and a data frame) be saved as part of the model object?

Value

an object of class lme representing the linear mixed-effects model fit. Generic functions such as print, plot and summary have methods to show the results of the fit. See lmeObject for the components of the fit. The functions resid, coef, fitted, fixed.effects, and random.effects can be used to extract some of its components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

The computational methods follow the general framework of Lindstrom and Bates (1988). The model formulation is described in Laird and Ware (1982). The variance-covariance parametrizations are described in Pinheiro and Bates (1996). The different correlation structures available for the correlation argument are described in Box, Jenkins and Reinse (1994), Littel *et al* (1996), and Venables and Ripley, (2002). The use of variance functions for linear and nonlinear mixed effects models is presented in detail in Davidian and Giltinan (1995).

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden–Day.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measurement Data", Chapman and Hall.

Laird, N.M. and Ware, J.H. (1982) "Random-Effects Models for Longitudinal Data", Biometrics, 38, 963–974.

Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1988) "Newton-Raphson and EM Algorithms for Linear Mixed-Effects Models for Repeated-Measures Data", Journal of the American Statistical Association, 83, 1014–1022.

Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289–296.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

lme, lmList, lmeObject

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(Orthodont)
fm2 <- lme(fm1)
summary(fm1)
summary(fm2)
```

`lmeControl` *Control Values for lme Fit*

Description

The values supplied in the function call replace the defaults and a list with all possible arguments is returned. The returned list is used as the `control` argument to the `lme` function.

Usage

```
lmeControl(maxIter, msMaxIter, tolerance, niterEM, msMaxEval, msTol,
           msVerbose, returnObject, gradHess, apVar,
           .relStep, minAbsParApVar,
           opt = c("nlminb", "optim"), optimMethod,
           natural, ...)
```

Arguments

`maxIter`	maximum number of iterations for the `lme` optimization algorithm. Default is `50`.
`msMaxIter`	maximum number of iterations for the optimization step inside the `lme` optimization. Default is `50`.
`tolerance`	tolerance for the convergence criterion in the `lme` algorithm. Default is `1e-6`.
`niterEM`	number of iterations for the EM algorithm used to refine the initial estimates of the random effects variance-covariance coefficients. Default is `25`.
`msMaxEval`	maximum number of evaluations of the objective function permitted for nlminb. Default is `200`.
`msTol`	tolerance for the convergence criterion on the first iteration when `optim` is used. Default is `1e-7`.
`msVerbose`	a logical value passed as the `trace` argument to `nlminb` or `optim`. Default is `FALSE`.
`returnObject`	a logical value indicating whether the fitted object should be returned when the maximum number of iterations is reached without convergence of the algorithm. Default is `FALSE`.
`gradHess`	a logical value indicating whether numerical gradient vectors and Hessian matrices of the log-likelihood function should be used in the internal optimization. This option is only available when the correlation structure (`corStruct`) and the variance function structure (`varFunc`) have no "varying" parameters and the `pdMat` classes used in the random effects structure are `pdSymm` (general positive-definite), `pdDiag` (diagonal), `pdIdent` (multiple of the identity), or `pdCompSymm` (compound symmetry). Default is `TRUE`.
`apVar`	a logical value indicating whether the approximate covariance matrix of the variance-covariance parameters should be calculated. Default is `TRUE`.
`.relStep`	relative step for numerical derivatives calculations. Default is `.Machine$double.eps^(1/3)`.
`opt`	the optimizer to be used, either `"nlminb"` (the default) or `"optim"`.
`optimMethod`	character - the optimization method to be used with the `optim` optimizer. The default is `"BFGS"`. An alternative is `"L-BFGS-B"`.

minAbsParApVar	numeric value - minimum absolute parameter value in the approximate variance calculation. The default is 0.05.
natural	a logical value indicating whether the pdNatural parametrization should be used for general positive-definite matrices (pdSymm) in reStruct, when the approximate covariance matrix of the estimators is calculated. Default is TRUE.
...	Further named control arguments to be passed to nlminb (those from abs.tol down) or optim (those except trace and maxit; reltol is used only from the second iteration).

Value

a list with components for each of the possible arguments.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, nlminb, optim

Examples

```
# decrease the maximum number iterations in the ms call and
# request that information on the evolution of the ms iterations be printed
lmeControl(msMaxIter = 20, msVerbose = TRUE)
```

---

lmeObject *Fitted lme Object*

Description

An object returned by the lme function, inheriting from class lme and representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model. Objects of this class have methods for the generic functions anova, coef, fitted, fixed.effects, formula, getGroups, getResponse, intervals, logLik, pairs, plot, predict, print, random.effects, residuals, summary, and update.

Value

The following components must be included in a legitimate lme object.

apVar	an approximate covariance matrix for the variance-covariance coefficients. If apVar = FALSE in the list of control values used in the call to lme, this component is equal to NULL.
call	a list containing an image of the lme call that produced the object.
coefficients	a list with two components, fixed and random, where the first is a vector containing the estimated fixed effects and the second is a list of matrices with the estimated random effects for each level of grouping. For each matrix in the random list, the columns refer to the random effects and the rows to the groups.

contrasts	a list with the contrasts used to represent factors in the fixed effects formula and/or random effects formula. This information is important for making predictions from a new data frame in which not all levels of the original factors are observed. If no factors are used in the lme model, this component will be an empty list.
dims	a list with basic dimensions used in the lme fit, including the components N - the number of observations in the data, Q - the number of grouping levels, qvec - the number of random effects at each level from innermost to outermost (last two values are equal to zero and correspond to the fixed effects and the response), ngrps - the number of groups at each level from innermost to outermost (last two values are one and correspond to the fixed effects and the response), and ncol - the number of columns in the model matrix for each level of grouping from innermost to outermost (last two values are equal to the number of fixed effects and one).
fitted	a data frame with the fitted values as columns. The leftmost column corresponds to the population fixed effects (corresponding to the fixed effects only) and successive columns from left to right correspond to increasing levels of grouping.
fixDF	a list with components X and terms specifying the denominator degrees of freedom for, respectively, t-tests for the individual fixed effects and F-tests for the fixed-effects terms in the models.
groups	a data frame with the grouping factors as columns. The grouping level increases from left to right.
logLik	the (restricted) log-likelihood at convergence.
method	the estimation method: either "ML" for maximum likelihood, or "REML" for restricted maximum likelihood.
modelStruct	an object inheriting from class lmeStruct, representing a list of mixed-effects model components, such as reStruct, corStruct, and varFunc objects.
numIter	the number of iterations used in the iterative algorithm.
residuals	a data frame with the residuals as columns. The leftmost column corresponds to the population residuals and successive columns from left to right correspond to increasing levels of grouping.
sigma	the estimated within-group error standard deviation.
varFix	an approximate covariance matrix of the fixed effects estimates.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, lmeStruct

lmeStruct *Linear Mixed-Effects Structure*

Description

A linear mixed-effects structure is a list of model components representing different sets of parameters in the linear mixed-effects model. An `lmeStruct` list must contain at least a `reStruct` object, but may also contain `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects. `NULL` arguments are not included in the `lmeStruct` list.

Usage

```
lmeStruct(reStruct, corStruct, varStruct)
```

Arguments

`reStruct`	a `reStruct` representing a random effects structure.
`corStruct`	an optional `corStruct` object, representing a correlation structure. Default is `NULL`.
`varStruct`	an optional `varFunc` object, representing a variance function structure. Default is `NULL`.

Value

a list of model components determining the parameters to be estimated for the associated linear mixed-effects model.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`corClasses`, `lme`, `residuals.lmeStruct`, `reStruct`, `varFunc`

Examples

```
lms1 <- lmeStruct(reStruct(~age), corAR1(), varPower())
```

lmList *List of lm Objects with a Common Model*

Description

`Data` is partitioned according to the levels of the grouping factor `g` and individual `lm` fits are obtained for each `data` partition, using the model defined in `object`.

Usage

```
lmList(object, data, level, subset, na.action, pool)
## S3 method for class lmList
update(object, formula., ..., evaluate = TRUE)
## S3 method for class lmList
print(x, pool, ...)
```

Arguments

object	For lmList, either a linear formula object of the form y ~ x1+...+xn | g or a groupedData object. In the formula object, y represents the response, x1,...,xn the covariates, and g the grouping factor specifying the partitioning of the data according to which different lm fits should be performed. The grouping factor g may be omitted from the formula, in which case the grouping structure will be obtained from data, which must inherit from class groupedData. The method function lmList.groupedData is documented separately. For the method update.lmList, object is an object inheriting from class lmList.
formula	(used in update.lmList only) a two-sided linear formula with the common model for the individuals lm fits.
formula.	Changes to the formula – see update.formula for details.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in object.
level	an optional integer specifying the level of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present.
subset	an optional expression indicating which subset of the rows of data should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes lmList to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
pool	an optional logical value indicating whether a pooled estimate of the residual standard error should be used in calculations of standard deviations or standard errors for summaries.
x	an object inheriting from class lmList to be printed.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.
evaluate	If TRUE evaluate the new call else return the call.

Value

a list of lm objects with as many components as the number of groups defined by the grouping factor. Generic functions such as coef, fixed.effects, lme, pairs, plot, predict, random.effects, summary, and update have methods that can be applied to an lmList object.

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

lm, lme.lmList, plot.lmList, pooledSD, predict.lmList, residuals.lmList, summary.lmList

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
summary(fm1)
```

---

lmList.groupedData *lmList Fit from a groupedData Object*

Description

The response variable and primary covariate in formula(object) are used to construct the linear model formula. This formula and the groupedData object are passed as the object and data arguments to lmList.formula, together with any other additional arguments in the function call. See the documentation on lmList.formula for a description of that function.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class groupedData
lmList(object, data, level, subset, na.action, pool)
```

Arguments

object	a data frame inheriting from class "groupedData".
data	this argument is included for consistency with the generic function. It is ignored in this method function.
level	an optional integer specifying the level of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present.
subset	an optional expression indicating which subset of the rows of data should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes lmList to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
pool	an optional logical value that is preserved as an attribute of the returned value. This will be used as the default for pool in calculations of standard deviations or standard errors for summaries.

Value

a list of lm objects with as many components as the number of groups defined by the grouping factor. Generic functions such as coef, fixed.effects, lme, pairs, plot, predict, random.effects, summary, and update have methods that can be applied to an lmList object.

See Also

groupedData, lm, lme.lmList, lmList, lmList.formula

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(Orthodont)
summary(fm1)
```

---

logDet *Extract the Logarithm of the Determinant*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: corStruct, several pdMat classes, and reStruct.

Usage

```
logDet(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any object from which a matrix, or list of matrices, can be extracted
...	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

logLik, logDet.corStruct, logDet.pdMat, logDet.reStruct

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

logDet.corStruct *Extract corStruct Log-Determinant*

Description

This method function extracts the logarithm of the determinant of a square-root factor of the correlation matrix associated with `object`, or the sum of the log-determinants of square-root factors of the list of correlation matrices associated with `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
logDet(object, covariate, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corStruct"`, representing a correlation structure.
`covariate`	an optional covariate vector (matrix), or list of covariate vectors (matrices), at which values the correlation matrix, or list of correlation matrices, are to be evaluated. Defaults to `getCovariate(object)`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the log-determinant of a square-root factor of the correlation matrix associated with `object`, or the sum of the log-determinants of square-root factors of the list of correlation matrices associated with `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`logLik.corStruct`, `corMatrix.corStruct`, `logDet`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(0.3)
logDet(cs1, covariate = 1:4)
```

logDet.pdMat *Extract Log-Determinant from a pdMat Object*

Description

This method function extracts the logarithm of the determinant of a square-root factor of the positive-definite matrix represented by `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
logDet(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "pdMat", representing a positive definite matrix.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the log-determinant of a square-root factor of the positive-definite matrix represented by `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

pdMat, logDet

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(diag(1:3))
logDet(pd1)
```

logDet.reStruct *Extract reStruct Log-Determinants*

Description

Calculates, for each of the `pdMat` components of `object`, the logarithm of the determinant of a square-root factor.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
logDet(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the log-determinants of square-root factors of the pdMat components of object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro

See Also

reStruct, pdMat, logDet

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(A = pdSymm(diag(1:3), form = ~Score),
  B = pdDiag(2 * diag(4), form = ~Educ)))
logDet(rs1)
```

---

logLik.corStruct *Extract corStruct Log-Likelihood*

Description

This method function extracts the component of a Gaussian log-likelihood associated with the correlation structure, which is equal to the negative of the logarithm of the determinant (or sum of the logarithms of the determinants) of the matrix (or matrices) represented by object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
logLik(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "corStruct", representing a correlation structure.
data	this argument is included to make this method function compatible with other logLik methods and will be ignored.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the negative of the logarithm of the determinant (or sum of the logarithms of the determinants) of the correlation matrix (or matrices) represented by object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

logDet.corStruct, logLik.lme,

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(0.2)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, data = Orthodont)
logLik(cs1)
```

---

logLik.glsStruct *Log-Likelihood of a glsStruct Object*

Description

Pars is used to update the coefficients of the model components of object and the individual (restricted) log-likelihood contributions of each component are added together. The type of log-likelihood (restricted or not) is determined by the settings attribute of object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glsStruct
logLik(object, Pars, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "glsStruct", representing a list of linear model components, such as corStruct and "varFunc" objects.
Pars	the parameter values at which the (restricted) log-likelihood is to be evaluated.
conLin	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying linear model. Defaults to attr(object, "conLin").
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the (restricted) log-likelihood for the linear model described by object, evaluated at Pars.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls, glsStruct, logLik.lme

logLik.gnls *Log-Likelihood of a gnls Object*

Description

Returns the log-likelihood value of the nonlinear model represented by `object` evaluated at the estimated coefficients.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gnls
logLik(object, REML, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "`gnls`", representing a generalized nonlinear least squares fitted model.
`REML`	an logical value for consistency with `logLik,gls`, but only `FALSE` is accepted..
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the log-likelihood of the linear model represented by `object` evaluated at the estimated coefficients.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`gnls`, `logLik.lme`

Examples

```
fm1 <- gnls(weight ~ SSlogis(Time, Asym, xmid, scal), Soybean,
            weights = varPower())
logLik(fm1)
```

logLik.gnlsStruct *Log-Likelihood of a gnlsStruct Object*

Description

`Pars` is used to update the coefficients of the model components of `object` and the individual log-likelihood contributions of each component are added together.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gnlsStruct
logLik(object, Pars, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class gnlsStruct, representing a list of model components, such as corStruct and varFunc objects, and attributes specifying the underlying nonlinear model and the response variable.
Pars	the parameter values at which the log-likelihood is to be evaluated.
conLin	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying nonlinear model. Defaults to attr(object, "conLin").
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the log-likelihood for the linear model described by object, evaluated at Pars.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gnls, gnlsStruct, logLik.gnls

---

logLik.lme *Log-Likelihood of an lme Object*

Description

If REML=FALSE, returns the log-likelihood value of the linear mixed-effects model represented by object evaluated at the estimated coefficients; else, the restricted log-likelihood evaluated at the estimated coefficients is returned.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
logLik(object, REML, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
REML	an optional logical value. If TRUE the restricted log-likelihood is returned, else, if FALSE, the log-likelihood is returned. Defaults to the method of estimation used, that is TRUE if and only object was fitted with method = "REML" (the default for these fitting functions) .
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the (restricted) log-likelihood of the model represented by `object` evaluated at the estimated coefficients.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

References

Harville, D.A. (1974) "Bayesian Inference for Variance Components Using Only Error Contrasts", *Biometrika*, **61**, 383–385.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`lme`,`gls`, `logLik.corStruct`, `logLik.glsStruct`, `logLik.lmeStruct`, `logLik.lmList`, `logLik.reStruct`, `logLik.varFunc`,

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ Sex * age, Orthodont, random = ~ age, method = "ML")
logLik(fm1)
logLik(fm1, REML = TRUE)
```

---

logLik.lmeStruct *Log-Likelihood of an lmeStruct Object*

Description

`Pars` is used to update the coefficients of the model components of `object` and the individual (restricted) log-likelihood contributions of each component are added together. The type of log-likelihood (restricted or not) is determined by the `settings` attribute of `object`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmeStruct
logLik(object, Pars, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"lmeStruct"`, representing a list of linear mixed-effects model components, such as `reStruct`, `corStruct`, and `varFunc` objects.
`Pars`	the parameter values at which the (restricted) log-likelihood is to be evaluated.
`conLin`	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components `"Xy"`, corresponding to a regression matrix (`X`) combined with a response vector (`y`), and `"logLik"`, corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying lme model. Defaults to `attr(object, "conLin")`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the (restricted) log-likelihood for the linear mixed-effects model described by `object`, evaluated at `Pars`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lme`, `lmeStruct`, `logLik.lme`

`logLik.lmList` *Log-Likelihood of an lmList Object*

Description

If `pool=FALSE`, the (restricted) log-likelihoods of the `lm` components of `object` are summed together. Else, the (restricted) log-likelihood of the `lm` fit with different coefficients for each level of the grouping factor associated with the partitioning of the `object` components is obtained.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
logLik(object, REML, pool, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"lmList"`, representing a list of `lm` objects with a common model.
`REML`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE` the restricted log-likelihood is returned, else, if `FALSE`, the log-likelihood is returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`pool`	an optional logical value indicating whether all `lm` components of `object` may be assumed to have the same error variance. Default is `attr(object, "pool")`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

either the sum of the (restricted) log-likelihoods of each `lm` component in `object`, or the (restricted) log-likelihood for the `lm` fit with separate coefficients for each component of `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lmList`, `logLik.lme`,

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
logLik(fm1)   # returns NA when it should not
```

`logLik.reStruct` *Calculate reStruct Log-Likelihood*

Description

Calculates the log-likelihood, or restricted log-likelihood, of the Gaussian linear mixed-effects model represented by `object` and `conLin` (assuming spherical within-group covariance structure), evaluated at `coef(object)`. The `settings` attribute of `object` determines whether the log-likelihood, or the restricted log-likelihood, is to be calculated. The computational methods are described in Bates and Pinheiro (1998).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
logLik(object, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"reStruct"`, representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of `pdMat` objects.
`conLin`	a condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components `"Xy"`, corresponding to a regression matrix (`X`) combined with a response vector (`y`), and `"logLik"`, corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying model.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the log-likelihood, or restricted log-likelihood, of linear mixed-effects model represented by `object` and `conLin`, evaluated at `coef{object}`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`reStruct`, `pdMat`, `logLik.lme`

logLik.varFunc *Extract varFunc logLik*

Description

This method function extracts the component of a Gaussian log-likelihood associated with the variance function structure represented by `object`, which is equal to the sum of the logarithms of the corresponding weights.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
logLik(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "varFunc", representing a variance function structure.
`data`	this argument is included to make this method function compatible with other `logLik` methods and will be ignored.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the sum of the logarithms of the weights corresponding to the variance function structure represented by `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

logLik.lme

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(form = ~age)
vf1 <- Initialize(vf1, Orthodont)
coef(vf1) <- 0.1
logLik(vf1)
```

Machines *Productivity Scores for Machines and Workers*

Description

The `Machines` data frame has 54 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Worker an ordered factor giving the unique identifier for the worker.

Machine a factor with levels `A`, `B`, and `C` identifying the machine brand.

score a productivity score.

Details

Data on an experiment to compare three brands of machines used in an industrial process are presented in Milliken and Johnson (p. 285, 1992). Six workers were chosen randomly among the employees of a factory to operate each machine three times. The response is an overall productivity score taking into account the number and quality of components produced.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.14)

Milliken, G. A. and Johnson, D. E. (1992), *Analysis of Messy Data, Volume I: Designed Experiments*, Chapman and Hall, London.

MathAchieve *Mathematics achievement scores*

Description

The `MathAchieve` data frame has 7185 rows and 6 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

School an ordered factor identifying the school that the student attends

Minority a factor with levels `No Yes` indicating if the student is a member of a minority racial group.

Sex a factor with levels `Male Female`

SES a numeric vector of socio-economic status.

MathAch a numeric vector of mathematics achievement scores.

MEANSES a numeric vector of the mean SES for the school.

Details

Each row in this data frame contains the data for one student.

Examples

```
summary(MathAchieve)
```

`MathAchSchool` *School demographic data for MathAchieve*

Description

The `MathAchSchool` data frame has 160 rows and 7 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

School a factor giving the school on which the measurement is made.

Size a numeric vector giving the number of students in the school

Sector a factor with levels `Public` `Catholic`

PRACAD a numeric vector giving the percentage of students on the academic track

DISCLIM a numeric vector measuring the discrimination climate

HIMINTY a factor with levels `0` `1`

MEANSES a numeric vector giving the mean SES score.

Details

These variables give the school-level demographic data to accompany the `MathAchieve` data.

`Matrix` *Assign Matrix Values*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include `pdMat`, `pdBlocked`, and `reStruct`.

Usage

```
matrix(object) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	any object to which `as.matrix` can be applied.
`value`	a matrix, or list of matrices, with the same dimensions as `as.matrix(object)` with the new values to be assigned to the matrix associated with `object`.

Value

will depend on the method function; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

as.matrix

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

Matrix.pdMat *Assign Matrix to a pdMat Object*

Description

The positive-definite matrix represented by `object` is replaced by `value`. If the original matrix had row and/or column names, the corresponding names for `value` can either be `NULL`, or a permutation of the original names.

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class pdMat
matrix(object) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"pdMat"`, representing a positive definite matrix.
`value`	a matrix with the new values to be assigned to the positive-definite matrix represented by `object`. Must have the same dimensions as `as.matrix(object)`.

Value

a `pdMat` object similar to `object`, but with its coefficients modified to produce the matrix in `value`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

pdMat,"matrix<-"

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(diag(3))
matrix(pd1) <- diag(1:3)
pd1
```

Matrix.reStruct *Assign reStruct Matrices*

Description

The individual matrices in value are assigned to each pdMat component of object, in the order they are listed. The new matrices must have the same dimensions as the matrices they are meant to replace.

Usage

```
## S3 replacement method for class reStruct
matrix(object) <-  value
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
value	a matrix, or list of matrices, with the new values to be assigned to the matrices associated with the pdMat components of object.

Value

an reStruct object similar to object, but with the coefficients of the individual pdMat components modified to produce the matrices listed in value.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

reStruct, pdMat, "matrix<-"

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(Dog = ~day, Side = ~1), data = Pixel)
matrix(rs1) <- list(diag(2), 3)
```

Meat *Tenderness of meat*

Description

The Meat data frame has 30 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Storage an ordered factor specifying the storage treatment - 1 (0 days), 2 (1 day), 3 (2 days), 4 (4 days), 5 (9 days), and 6 (18 days)

score a numeric vector giving the tenderness score of beef roast.

Block an ordered factor identifying the muscle from which the roast was extracted with levels `II` < `V` < `I` < `III` < `IV`

Pair an ordered factor giving the unique identifier for each pair of beef roasts with levels `II-1` < ... < `IV-1`

Details

Cochran and Cox (section 11.51, 1957) describe data from an experiment conducted at Iowa State College (Paul, 1943) to compare the effects of length of cold storage on the tenderness of beef roasts. Six storage periods ranging from 0 to 18 days were used. Thirty roasts were scored by four judges on a scale from 0 to 10, with the score increasing with tenderness. The response was the sum of all four scores. Left and right roasts from the same animal were grouped into pairs, which were further grouped into five blocks, according to the muscle from which they were extracted. Different storage periods were applied to each roast within a pair according to a balanced incomplete block design.

Source

Cochran, W. G. and Cox, G. M. (1957), *Experimental Designs*, Wiley, New York.

`Milk` *Protein content of cows' milk*

Description

The `Milk` data frame has 1337 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

protein a numeric vector giving the protein content of the milk.

Time a numeric vector giving the time since calving (weeks).

Cow an ordered factor giving a unique identifier for each cow.

Diet a factor with levels `barley`, `barley+lupins`, and `lupins` identifying the diet for each cow.

Details

Diggle, Liang, and Zeger (1994) describe data on the protein content of cows' milk in the weeks following calving. The cattle are grouped according to whether they are fed a diet with barley alone, with barley and lupins, or with lupins alone.

Source

Diggle, Peter J., Liang, Kung-Yee and Zeger, Scott L. (1994), *Analysis of longitudinal data*, Oxford University Press, Oxford.

`model.matrix.reStruct` *reStruct Model Matrix*

Description

The model matrices for each element of `formula(object)`, calculated using `data`, are bound together column-wise. When multiple grouping levels are present (i.e. when `length(object) > 1`), the individual model matrices are combined from innermost (at the leftmost position) to outermost (at the rightmost position).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
model.matrix(object, data, contrast, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"reStruct"`, representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of `pdMat` objects.
`data`	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables defined in `formula(object)`.
`contrast`	an optional named list specifying the contrasts to be used for representing the `factor` variables in `data`. The components names should match the names of the variables in `data` for which the contrasts are to be specified. The components of this list will be used as the `contrasts` attribute of the corresponding factor. If missing, the default contrast specification is used.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a matrix obtained by binding together, column-wise, the model matrices for each element of `formula(object)`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`model.matrix`, `contrasts`, `reStruct`, `formula.reStruct`

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(Dog = ~day, Side = ~1), data = Pixel)
model.matrix(rs1, Pixel)
```

Muscle *Contraction of heart muscle sections*

Description

The `Muscle` data frame has 60 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Strip an ordered factor indicating the strip of muscle being measured.

conc a numeric vector giving the concentration of CaCl2

length a numeric vector giving the shortening of the heart muscle strip.

Details

Baumann and Waldvogel (1963) describe data on the shortening of heart muscle strips dipped in a $CaCl_2$ solution. The muscle strips are taken from the left auricle of a rat's heart.

Source

Baumann, F. and Waldvogel, F. (1963), La restitution pastsystolique de la contraction de l'oreillette gauche du rat. Effets de divers ions et de l'acetylcholine, *Helvetica Physiologica Acta*, **21**.

Names *Names Associated with an Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: `formula`, `modelStruct`, `pdBlocked`, `pdMat`, and `reStruct`.

Usage

```
Names(object, ...)
Names(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

`object`	any object for which names can be extracted and/or assigned.
`...`	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.
`value`	names to be assigned to `object`.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the names associated with `object` to `value`, which must have an appropriate length.

Note

If `names` were generic, there would be no need for this generic function.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`Names.formula`, `Names.pdMat`

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

Names.formula *Extract Names from a formula*

Description

This method function returns the names of the terms corresponding to the right hand side of `object` (treated as a linear formula), obtained as the column names of the corresponding `model.matrix`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class formula
Names(object, data, exclude, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"formula"`.
`data`	an optional data frame containing the variables specified in `object`. By default the variables are taken from the environment from which `Names.formula` is called.
`exclude`	an optional character vector with names to be excluded from the returned value. Default is `c("pi",".")`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a character vector with the column names of the `model.matrix` corresponding to the right hand side of `object` which are not listed in `excluded`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

model.matrix, terms, Names

Examples

```
Names(distance ~ Sex * age, data = Orthodont)
```

Names.pdBlocked *Names of a pdBlocked Object*

Description

This method function extracts the first element of the Dimnames attribute, which contains the column names, for each block diagonal element in the matrix represented by object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdBlocked
Names(object, asList, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "pdBlocked" representing a positive-definite matrix with block diagonal structure
asList	a logical value. If TRUE a list with the names for each block diagonal element is returned. If FALSE a character vector with all column names is returned. Defaults to FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

if asList is FALSE, a character vector with column names of the matrix represented by object; otherwise, if asList is TRUE, a list with components given by the column names of the individual block diagonal elements in the matrix represented by object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Names, Names.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdBlocked(list(~Sex - 1, ~age - 1), data = Orthodont)
Names(pd1)
```

Names.pdMat *Names of a pdMat Object*

Description

This method function returns the fist element of the Dimnames attribute of object, which contains the column names of the matrix represented by object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
Names(object, ...)
## S3 replacement method for class pdMat
Names(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "pdMat", representing a positive-definite matrix.
value	a character vector with the replacement values for the column and row names of the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the matrix represented by object and, if names have been previously assigned to object, it must correspond to a permutation of the original names.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

if object has a Dimnames attribute then the first element of this attribute is returned; otherwise NULL.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the Dimnames attribute of object to list(value, value).

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Names, Names.pdBlocked

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(~age, data = Orthodont)
Names(pd1)
```

Names.reStruct *Names of an reStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts the column names of each of the positive-definite matrices represented the pdMat elements of object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
Names(object, ...)
## S3 replacement method for class reStruct
Names(object, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
value	a list of character vectors with the replacement values for the names of the individual pdMat objects that form object. It must have the same length as object.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list containing the column names of each of the positive-definite matrices represented by the pdMat elements of object.

SIDE EFFECTS

On the left side of an assignment, sets the Names of the pdMat elements of object to the corresponding element of value.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

reStruct, pdMat, Names.pdMat

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(Dog = ~day, Side = ~1), data = Pixel)
Names(rs1)
```

needUpdate *Check if Update is Needed*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. By default, it tries to extract a `needUpdate` attribute of `object`. If this is `NULL` or `FALSE` it returns `FALSE`; else it returns `TRUE`. Updating of objects usually takes place in iterative algorithms in which auxiliary quantities associated with the object, and not being optimized over, may change.

Usage

```
needUpdate(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	any object

Value

a logical value indicating whether `object` needs to be updated.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`needUpdate.modelStruct`

Examples

```
vf1 <- varExp()
vf1 <- Initialize(vf1, data = Orthodont)
needUpdate(vf1)
```

needUpdate.modelStruct *Check if a modelStruct Object Needs Updating*

Description

This method function checks if any of the elements of `object` needs to be updated. Updating of objects usually takes place in iterative algorithms in which auxiliary quantities associated with the object, and not being optimized over, may change.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class modelStruct
needUpdate(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "modelStruct", representing a list of model components, such as corStruct and varFunc objects.

Value

a logical value indicating whether any element of object needs to be updated.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

needUpdate

Examples

```
lms1 <- lmeStruct(reStruct = reStruct(pdDiag(diag(2), ~age)),
   varStruct = varPower(form = ~age))
needUpdate(lms1)
```

Nitrendipene *Assay of nitrendipene*

Description

The Nitrendipene data frame has 89 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

activity a numeric vector

NIF a numeric vector

Tissue an ordered factor with levels 2 < 1 < 3 < 4

log.NIF a numeric vector

Source

Bates, D. M. and Watts, D. G. (1988), *Nonlinear Regression Analysis and Its Applications*, Wiley, New York.

nlme *Nonlinear Mixed-Effects Models*

Description

This generic function fits a nonlinear mixed-effects model in the formulation described in Lindstrom and Bates (1990) but allowing for nested random effects. The within-group errors are allowed to be correlated and/or have unequal variances.

Usage

```
nlme(model, data, fixed, random, groups, start, correlation, weights,
     subset, method, na.action, naPattern, control, verbose)
```

Arguments

model	a nonlinear model formula, with the response on the left of a ~ operator and an expression involving parameters and covariates on the right, or an nlsList object. If data is given, all names used in the formula should be defined as parameters or variables in the data frame. The method function nlme.nlsList is documented separately.
data	an optional data frame containing the variables named in model, fixed, random, correlation, weights, subset, and naPattern. By default the variables are taken from the environment from which nlme is called.
fixed	a two-sided linear formula of the form f1+...+fn~x1+...+xm, or a list of two-sided formulas of the form f1~x1+...+xm, with possibly different models for different parameters. The f1,...,fn are the names of parameters included on the right hand side of model and the x1+...+xm expressions define linear models for these parameters (when the left hand side of the formula contains several parameters, they all are assumed to follow the same linear model, described by the right hand side expression). A 1 on the right hand side of the formula(s) indicates a single fixed effects for the corresponding parameter(s).
random	optionally, any of the following: (i) a two-sided formula of the form r1+...+rn~x1+...+xm | g1/.../gQ, with r1,...,rn naming parameters included on the right hand side of model, x1+...+xm specifying the random-effects model for these parameters and g1/.../gQ the grouping structure (Q may be equal to 1, in which case no / is required). The random effects formula will be repeated for all levels of grouping, in the case of multiple levels of grouping; (ii) a two-sided formula of the form r1+...+rn~x1+..+xm, a list of two-sided formulas of the form r1~x1+...+xm, with possibly different random-effects models for different parameters, a pdMat object with a two-sided formula, or list of two-sided formulas (i.e. a non-NULL value for formula(random)), or a list of pdMat objects with two-sided formulas, or lists of two-sided formulas. In this case, the grouping structure formula will be given in groups, or derived from the data used to fit the nonlinear mixed-effects model, which should inherit from class groupedData,; (iii) a named list of formulas, lists of formulas, or pdMat objects as in (ii), with the grouping factors as names. The order of nesting will be assumed the same as the order of the order of the elements in the list; (iv) an reStruct object. See the documentation on pdClasses for a description of the available pdMat classes. Defaults to fixed, resulting in all fixed effects having also random effects.

groups — an optional one-sided formula of the form ~g1 (single level of nesting) or ~g1/.../gQ (multiple levels of nesting), specifying the partitions of the data over which the random effects vary. g1,...,gQ must evaluate to factors in data. The order of nesting, when multiple levels are present, is taken from left to right (i.e. g1 is the first level, g2 the second, etc.).

start — an optional numeric vector, or list of initial estimates for the fixed effects and random effects. If declared as a numeric vector, it is converted internally to a list with a single component fixed, given by the vector. The fixed component is required, unless the model function inherits from class selfStart, in which case initial values will be derived from a call to nlsList. An optional random component is used to specify initial values for the random effects and should consist of a matrix, or a list of matrices with length equal to the number of grouping levels. Each matrix should have as many rows as the number of groups at the corresponding level and as many columns as the number of random effects in that level.

correlation — an optional corStruct object describing the within-group correlation structure. See the documentation of corClasses for a description of the available corStruct classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no within-group correlations.

weights — an optional varFunc object or one-sided formula describing the within-group heteroscedasticity structure. If given as a formula, it is used as the argument to varFixed, corresponding to fixed variance weights. See the documentation on varClasses for a description of the available varFunc classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to homoscedastic within-group errors.

subset — an optional expression indicating the subset of the rows of data that should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.

method — a character string. If "REML" the model is fit by maximizing the restricted log-likelihood. If "ML" the log-likelihood is maximized. Defaults to "ML".

na.action — a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes nlme to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.

naPattern — an expression or formula object, specifying which returned values are to be regarded as missing.

control — a list of control values for the estimation algorithm to replace the default values returned by the function nlmeControl. Defaults to an empty list.

verbose — an optional logical value. If TRUE information on the evolution of the iterative algorithm is printed. Default is FALSE.

Value

an object of class nlme representing the nonlinear mixed-effects model fit. Generic functions such as print, plot and summary have methods to show the results of the fit. See nlmeObject for the components of the fit. The functions resid, coef, fitted, fixed.effects, and random.effects can be used to extract some of its components.

Note

The function does not do any scaling internally: the optimization will work best when the response is scaled so its variance is of the order of one.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

The model formulation and computational methods are described in Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1990). The variance-covariance parametrizations are described in Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996). The different correlation structures available for the `correlation` argument are described in Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994), Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996), and Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002). The use of variance functions for linear and nonlinear mixed effects models is presented in detail in Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995).

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measurement Data", Chapman and Hall.

Laird, N.M. and Ware, J.H. (1982) "Random-Effects Models for Longitudinal Data", Biometrics, 38, 963-974.

Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1990) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measures Data", Biometrics, 46, 673-687.

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289-296.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

`nlmeControl`, `nlme.nlsList`, `nlmeObject`, `nlsList`, `nlmeStruct`, `pdClasses`, `reStruct`, `varFunc`, `corClasses`, `varClasses`

Examples

```
fm1 <- nlme(height ~ SSasymp(age, Asym, R0, lrc),
            data = Loblolly,
            fixed = Asym + R0 + lrc ~ 1,
            random = Asym ~ 1,
            start = c(Asym = 103, R0 = -8.5, lrc = -3.3))
summary(fm1)
fm2 <- update(fm1, random = pdDiag(Asym + lrc ~ 1))
summary(fm2)
```

nlme.nlsList *NLME fit from nlsList Object*

Description

If the random effects names defined in random are a subset of the lmList object coefficient names, initial estimates for the covariance matrix of the random effects are obtained (overwriting any values given in random). formula(fixed) and the data argument in the calling sequence used to obtain fixed are passed as the fixed and data arguments to nlme.formula, together with any other additional arguments in the function call. See the documentation on nlme.formula for a description of that function.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nlsList
nlme(model, data, fixed, random, groups, start, correlation, weights,
     subset, method, na.action, naPattern, control, verbose)
```

Arguments

model	an object inheriting from class "nlsList", representing a list of nls fits with a common model.
data	this argument is included for consistency with the generic function. It is ignored in this method function.
fixed	this argument is included for consistency with the generic function. It is ignored in this method function.
random	an optional one-sided linear formula with no conditioning expression, or a pdMat object with a formula attribute. Multiple levels of grouping are not allowed with this method function. Defaults to a formula consisting of the right hand side of formula(fixed).
groups	an optional one-sided formula of the form ~g1 (single level of nesting) or ~g1/.../gQ (multiple levels of nesting), specifying the partitions of the data over which the random effects vary. g1,...,gQ must evaluate to factors in data. The order of nesting, when multiple levels are present, is taken from left to right (i.e. g1 is the first level, g2 the second, etc.).
start	an optional numeric vector, or list of initial estimates for the fixed effects and random effects. If declared as a numeric vector, it is converted internally to a list with a single component fixed, given by the vector. The fixed component is required, unless the model function inherits from class selfStart, in which case initial values will be derived from a call to nlsList. An optional random component is used to specify initial values for the random effects and should consist of a matrix, or a list of matrices with length equal to the number of grouping levels. Each matrix should have as many rows as the number of groups at the corresponding level and as many columns as the number of random effects in that level.
correlation	an optional corStruct object describing the within-group correlation structure. See the documentation of corClasses for a description of the available corStruct classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no within-group correlations.

weights	an optional varFunc object or one-sided formula describing the within-group heteroscedasticity structure. If given as a formula, it is used as the argument to varFixed, corresponding to fixed variance weights. See the documentation on varClasses for a description of the available varFunc classes. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to homoscedastic within-group errors.
subset	an optional expression indicating the subset of the rows of data that should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
method	a character string. If "REML" the model is fit by maximizing the restricted log-likelihood. If "ML" the log-likelihood is maximized. Defaults to "ML".
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes nlme to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
naPattern	an expression or formula object, specifying which returned values are to be regarded as missing.
control	a list of control values for the estimation algorithm to replace the default values returned by the function nlmeControl. Defaults to an empty list.
verbose	an optional logical value. If TRUE information on the evolution of the iterative algorithm is printed. Default is FALSE.

Value

an object of class nlme representing the linear mixed-effects model fit. Generic functions such as print, plot and summary have methods to show the results of the fit. See nlmeObject for the components of the fit. The functions resid, coef, fitted, fixed.effects, and random.effects can be used to extract some of its components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

The computational methods follow on the general framework of Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1988). The model formulation is described in Laird, N.M. and Ware, J.H. (1982). The variance-covariance parametrizations are described in <Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996). The different correlation structures available for the correlation argument are described in Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994), Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996), and Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002). The use of variance functions for linear and nonlinear mixed effects models is presented in detail in Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995).

Box, G.E.P., Jenkins, G.M., and Reinsel G.C. (1994) "Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control", 3rd Edition, Holden-Day.

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D.M. (1995) "Nonlinear Mixed Effects Models for Repeated Measurement Data", Chapman and Hall.

Laird, N.M. and Ware, J.H. (1982) "Random-Effects Models for Longitudinal Data", Biometrics, 38, 963-974.

Lindstrom, M.J. and Bates, D.M. (1988) "Newton-Raphson and EM Algorithms for Linear Mixed-Effects Models for Repeated-Measures Data", Journal of the American Statistical Association, 83, 1014-1022.

Littel, R.C., Milliken, G.A., Stroup, W.W., and Wolfinger, R.D. (1996) "SAS Systems for Mixed Models", SAS Institute.

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289-296.

Venables, W.N. and Ripley, B.D. (2002) "Modern Applied Statistics with S", 4th Edition, Springer-Verlag.

See Also

nlme, lmList, nlmeObject

Examples

```
fm1 <- nlsList(SSasymp, data = Loblolly)
fm2 <- nlme(fm1, random = Asym ~ 1)
summary(fm1)
summary(fm2)
```

---

nlmeControl *Control Values for nlme Fit*

Description

The values supplied in the function call replace the defaults and a list with all possible arguments is returned. The returned list is used as the `control` argument to the `nlme` function.

Usage

```
nlmeControl(maxIter, pnlsMaxIter, msMaxIter, minScale,
            tolerance, niterEM, pnlsTol, msTol,
            returnObject, msVerbose, gradHess, apVar, .relStep,
            minAbsParApVar = 0.05,
            opt = c("nlminb", "nlm"), natural = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`maxIter`	maximum number of iterations for the `nlme` optimization algorithm. Default is 50.
`pnlsMaxIter`	maximum number of iterations for the `PNLS` optimization step inside the `nlme` optimization. Default is 7.
`msMaxIter`	maximum number of iterations for the `nlm` optimization step inside the `nlme` optimization. Default is 50.
`minScale`	minimum factor by which to shrink the default step size in an attempt to decrease the sum of squares in the `PNLS` step. Default `0.001`.
`tolerance`	tolerance for the convergence criterion in the `nlme` algorithm. Default is `1e-6`.
`niterEM`	number of iterations for the EM algorithm used to refine the initial estimates of the random effects variance-covariance coefficients. Default is 25.
`pnlsTol`	tolerance for the convergence criterion in `PNLS` step. Default is `1e-3`.

msTol	tolerance for the convergence criterion in nlm, passed as the gradtol argument to the function (see documentation on nlm). Default is 1e-7.
returnObject	a logical value indicating whether the fitted object should be returned when the maximum number of iterations is reached without convergence of the algorithm. Default is FALSE.
msVerbose	a logical value passed as the trace argument to nlm (see documentation on that function). Default is FALSE.
gradHess	a logical value indicating whether numerical gradient vectors and Hessian matrices of the log-likelihood function should be used in the nlm optimization. This option is only available when the correlation structure (corStruct) and the variance function structure (varFunc) have no "varying" parameters and the pdMat classes used in the random effects structure are pdSymm (general positive-definite), pdDiag (diagonal), pdIdent (multiple of the identity), or pdCompSymm (compound symmetry). Default is TRUE.
apVar	a logical value indicating whether the approximate covariance matrix of the variance-covariance parameters should be calculated. Default is TRUE.
.relStep	relative step for numerical derivatives calculations. Default is .Machine$double.eps^(1/3).
minAbsParApVar	numeric value - minimum absolute parameter value in the approximate variance calculation. The default is 0.05.
opt	the optimizer to be used, either "nlminb" (the default) or "nlm".
natural	a logical value indicating whether the pdNatural parametrization should be used for general positive-definite matrices (pdSymm) in reStruct, when the approximate covariance matrix of the estimators is calculated. Default is TRUE.
...	Further named control arguments to be passed to nlminb, where used (eval.max and those from abs.tol down).

Value

a list with components for each of the possible arguments.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

nlme, nlm, optim, nlmeStruct

Examples

```
# decrease the maximum number iterations in the ms call and
# request that information on the evolution of the ms iterations be printed
nlmeControl(msMaxIter = 20, msVerbose = TRUE)
```

nlmeObject *Fitted nlme Object*

Description

An object returned by the nlme function, inheriting from class "nlme", also inheriting from class "lme", and representing a fitted nonlinear mixed-effects model. Objects of this class have methods for the generic functions anova, coef, fitted, fixed.effects, formula, getGroups, getResponse, intervals, logLik, pairs, plot, predict, print, random.effects, residuals, summary, and update.

Value

The following components must be included in a legitimate "nlme" object.

apVar	an approximate covariance matrix for the variance-covariance coefficients. If apVar = FALSE in the list of control values used in the call to nlme, this component is equal to NULL.
call	a list containing an image of the nlme call that produced the object.
coefficients	a list with two components, fixed and random, where the first is a vector containing the estimated fixed effects and the second is a list of matrices with the estimated random effects for each level of grouping. For each matrix in the random list, the columns refer to the random effects and the rows to the groups.
contrasts	a list with the contrasts used to represent factors in the fixed effects formula and/or random effects formula. This information is important for making predictions from a new data frame in which not all levels of the original factors are observed. If no factors are used in the nlme model, this component will be an empty list.
dims	a list with basic dimensions used in the nlme fit, including the components N - the number of observations in the data, Q - the number of grouping levels, qvec - the number of random effects at each level from innermost to outermost (last two values are equal to zero and correspond to the fixed effects and the response), ngrps - the number of groups at each level from innermost to outermost (last two values are one and correspond to the fixed effects and the response), and ncol - the number of columns in the model matrix for each level of grouping from innermost to outermost (last two values are equal to the number of fixed effects and one).
fitted	a data frame with the fitted values as columns. The leftmost column corresponds to the population fixed effects (corresponding to the fixed effects only) and successive columns from left to right correspond to increasing levels of grouping.
fixDF	a list with components X and terms specifying the denominator degrees of freedom for, respectively, t-tests for the individual fixed effects and F-tests for the fixed-effects terms in the models.
groups	a data frame with the grouping factors as columns. The grouping level increases from left to right.
logLik	the (restricted) log-likelihood at convergence.
map	a list with components fmap, rmap, rmapRel, and bmap, specifying various mappings for the fixed and random effects, used to generate predictions from the fitted object.

method	the estimation method: either "ML" for maximum likelihood, or "REML" for restricted maximum likelihood.
modelStruct	an object inheriting from class nlmeStruct, representing a list of mixed-effects model components, such as reStruct, corStruct, and varFunc objects.
numIter	the number of iterations used in the iterative algorithm.
residuals	a data frame with the residuals as columns. The leftmost column corresponds to the population residuals and successive columns from left to right correspond to increasing levels of grouping.
sigma	the estimated within-group error standard deviation.
varFix	an approximate covariance matrix of the fixed effects estimates.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

nlme, nlmeStruct

---

nlmeStruct *Nonlinear Mixed-Effects Structure*

Description

A nonlinear mixed-effects structure is a list of model components representing different sets of parameters in the nonlinear mixed-effects model. An nlmeStruct list must contain at least a reStruct object, but may also contain corStruct and varFunc objects. NULL arguments are not included in the nlmeStruct list.

Usage

```
nlmeStruct(reStruct, corStruct, varStruct)
```

Arguments

reStruct	a reStruct representing a random effects structure.
corStruct	an optional corStruct object, representing a correlation structure. Default is NULL.
varStruct	an optional varFunc object, representing a variance function structure. Default is NULL.

Value

a list of model components determining the parameters to be estimated for the associated nonlinear mixed-effects model.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

corClasses, nlme, residuals.nlmeStruct, reStruct, varFunc

Examples

```
nlms1 <- nlmeStruct(reStruct(~age), corAR1(), varPower())
```

---

nlsList *List of nls Objects with a Common Model*

Description

Data is partitioned according to the levels of the grouping factor defined in model and individual nls fits are obtained for each data partition, using the model defined in model.

Usage

```
nlsList(model, data, start, control, level, subset, na.action, pool)
## S3 method for class nlsList
update(object, model., ..., evaluate = TRUE)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class nlsList, representing a list of fitted nls objects.
model	either a nonlinear model formula, with the response on the left of a ~ operator and an expression involving parameters, covariates, and a grouping factor separated by the | operator on the right, or a selfStart function. The method function nlsList.selfStart is documented separately.
model.	Changes to the model – see update.formula for details.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in model.
start	an optional named list with initial values for the parameters to be estimated in model. It is passed as the start argument to each nls call and is required when the nonlinear function in model does not inherit from class selfStart.
control	a list of control values passed as the control argument to nls. Defaults to an empty list.
level	an optional integer specifying the level of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present.
subset	an optional expression indicating the subset of the rows of data that should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes nlsList to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
pool	an optional logical value that is preserved as an attribute of the returned value. This will be used as the default for pool in calculations of standard deviations or standard errors for summaries.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.
evaluate	If TRUE evaluate the new call else return the call.

Value

a list of nls objects with as many components as the number of groups defined by the grouping factor. Generic functions such as coef, fixed.effects, lme, pairs, plot, predict, random.effects, summary, and update have methods that can be applied to an nlsList object.

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

See Also

nls, nlme.nlsList, nlsList.selfStart, summary.nlsList

Examples

```
fm1 <- nlsList(uptake ~ SSasympOff(conc, Asym, lrc, c0),
   data = CO2, start = c(Asym = 30, lrc = -4.5, c0 = 52))
summary(fm1)
```

---

nlsList.selfStart *nlsList Fit from a selfStart Function*

Description

The response variable and primary covariate in formula(data) are used together with model to construct the nonlinear model formula. This is used in the nls calls and, because a selfStarting model function can calculate initial estimates for its parameters from the data, no starting estimates need to be provided.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class selfStart
nlsList(model, data, start, control, level, subset, na.action, pool)
```

Arguments

model	a "selfStart" model function, which calculates initial estimates for the model parameters from data.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables in model. Because no grouping factor can be specified in model, data must inherit from class "groupedData".
start	an optional named list with initial values for the parameters to be estimated in model. It is passed as the start argument to each nls call and is required when the nonlinear function in model does not inherit from class selfStart.
control	a list of control values passed as the control argument to nls. Defaults to an empty list.
level	an optional integer specifying the level of grouping to be used when multiple nested levels of grouping are present.
subset	an optional expression indicating the subset of the rows of data that should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector, or a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included, or a character vector of the row names to be included. All observations are included by default.

na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes nlsList to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
pool	an optional logical value that is preserved as an attribute of the returned value. This will be used as the default for pool in calculations of standard deviations or standard errors for summaries.

Value

a list of nls objects with as many components as the number of groups defined by the grouping factor. A NULL value is assigned to the components corresponding to clusters for which the nls algorithm failed to converge. Generic functions such as coef, fixed.effects, lme, pairs, plot, predict, random.effects, summary, and update have methods that can be applied to an nlsList object.

See Also

selfStart, groupedData, nls, nlsList, nlme.nlsList, nlsList.formula

Examples

```
fm1 <- nlsList(SSasympOff, CO2)
summary(fm1)
```

Oats *Split-plot Experiment on Varieties of Oats*

Description

The Oats data frame has 72 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Block an ordered factor with levels VI < V < III < IV < II < I

Variety a factor with levels Golden Rain Marvellous Victory

nitro a numeric vector

yield a numeric vector

Details

These data have been introduced by Yates (1935) as an example of a split-plot design. The treatment structure used in the experiment was a 3×4 full factorial, with three varieties of oats and four concentrations of nitrogen. The experimental units were arranged into six blocks, each with three whole-plots subdivided into four subplots. The varieties of oats were assigned randomly to the whole-plots and the concentrations of nitrogen to the subplots. All four concentrations of nitrogen were used on each whole-plot.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.15)

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S. (4th ed)*, Springer, New York.

`Orthodont` *Growth curve data on an orthdontic measurement*

Description

The `Orthodont` data frame has 108 rows and 4 columns of the change in an orthdontic measurement over time for several young subjects.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

distance a numeric vector of distances from the pituitary to the pterygomaxillary fissure (mm). These distances are measured on x-ray images of the skull.

age a numeric vector of ages of the subject (yr).

Subject an ordered factor indicating the subject on which the measurement was made. The levels are labelled `M01` to `M16` for the males and `F01` to `F13` for the females. The ordering is by increasing average distance within sex.

Sex a factor with levels `Male` and `Female`

Details

Investigators at the University of North Carolina Dental School followed the growth of 27 children (16 males, 11 females) from age 8 until age 14. Every two years they measured the distance between the pituitary and the pterygomaxillary fissure, two points that are easily identified on x-ray exposures of the side of the head.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.17)

Potthoff, R. F. and Roy, S. N. (1964), "A generalized multivariate analysis of variance model useful especially for growth curve problems", *Biometrika*, **51**, 313–326.

Examples

```
formula(Orthodont)
plot(Orthodont)
```

Ovary — *Counts of Ovarian Follicles*

Description

The `Ovary` data frame has 308 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Mare an ordered factor indicating the mare on which the measurement is made.

Time time in the estrus cycle. The data were recorded daily from 3 days before ovulation until 3 days after the next ovulation. The measurement times for each mare are scaled so that the ovulations for each mare occur at times 0 and 1.

follicles the number of ovarian follicles greater than 10 mm in diameter.

Details

Pierson and Ginther (1987) report on a study of the number of large ovarian follicles detected in different mares at several times in their estrus cycles.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.18)

Pierson, R. A. and Ginther, O. J. (1987), Follicular population dynamics during the estrus cycle of the mare, *Animal Reproduction Science*, **14**, 219-231.

Oxboys — *Heights of Boys in Oxford*

Description

The `Oxboys` data frame has 234 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Subject an ordered factor giving a unique identifier for each boy in the experiment

age a numeric vector giving the standardized age (dimensionless)

height a numeric vector giving the height of the boy (cm)

Occasion an ordered factor - the result of converting `age` from a continuous variable to a count so these slightly unbalanced data can be analyzed as balanced.

Details

These data are described in Goldstein (1987) as data on the height of a selection of boys from Oxford, England versus a standardized age.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.19)

Oxide *Variability in Semiconductor Manufacturing*

Description

The `Oxide` data frame has 72 rows and 5 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Source a factor with levels `1` and `2`

Lot a factor giving a unique identifier for each lot.

Wafer a factor giving a unique identifier for each wafer within a lot.

Site a factor with levels `1`, `2`, and `3`

Thickness a numeric vector giving the thickness of the oxide layer.

Details

These data are described in Littell et al. (1996, p. 155) as coming "from a passive data collection study in the semiconductor industry where the objective is to estimate the variance components to determine the assignable causes of the observed variability." The observed response is the thickness of the oxide layer on silicon wafers, measured at three different sites of each of three wafers selected from each of eight lots sampled from the population of lots.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.20)

Littell, R. C., Milliken, G. A., Stroup, W. W. and Wolfinger, R. D. (1996), *SAS System for Mixed Models*, SAS Institute, Cary, NC.

`pairs.compareFits` *Pairs Plot of compareFits Object*

Description

Scatter plots of the values being compared are generated for each pair of coefficients in `x`. Different symbols (colors) are used for each object being compared and values corresponding to the same group are joined by a line, to facilitate comparison of fits. If only two coefficients are present, the `trellis` function `xyplot` is used; otherwise the `trellis` function `splom` is used.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class compareFits
pairs(x, subset, key, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `compareFits`.
`subset`	an optional logical or integer vector specifying which rows of `x` should be used in the plots. If missing, all rows are used.
`key`	an optional logical value, or list. If `TRUE`, a legend is included at the top of the plot indicating which symbols (colors) correspond to which objects being compared. If `FALSE`, no legend is included. If given as a list, `key` is passed down as an argument to the `trellis` function generating the plots (`splom` or `xyplot`). Defaults to `TRUE`.
`...`	optional arguments passed down to the `trellis` function generating the plots.

Value

Pairwise scatter plots of the values being compared, with different symbols (colors) used for each object under comparison.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`compareFits`, `plot.compareFits`, `pairs.lme`, `pairs.lmList`, `xyplot`, `splom`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(Orthodont)
fm2 <- lme(Orthodont)
pairs(compareFits(coef(fm1), coef(fm2)))
```

pairs.lme *Pairs Plot of an lme Object*

Description

Diagnostic plots for the linear mixed-effects fit are obtained. The form argument gives considerable flexibility in the type of plot specification. A conditioning expression (on the right side of a | operator) always implies that different panels are used for each level of the conditioning factor, according to a Trellis display. The expression on the right hand side of the formula, before a | operator, must evaluate to a data frame with at least two columns. If the data frame has two columns, a scatter plot of the two variables is displayed (the Trellis function xyplot is used). Otherwise, if more than two columns are present, a scatter plot matrix with pairwise scatter plots of the columns in the data frame is displayed (the Trellis function splom is used).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
pairs(x, form, label, id, idLabels, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
form	an optional one-sided formula specifying the desired type of plot. Any variable present in the original data frame used to obtain x can be referenced. In addition, x itself can be referenced in the formula using the symbol ".". Conditional expressions on the right of a | operator can be used to define separate panels in a Trellis display. The expression on the right hand side of form, and to the left of the | operator, must evaluate to a data frame with at least two columns. Default is ~ coef(.) , corresponding to a pairs plot of the coefficients evaluated at the innermost level of nesting.
label	an optional character vector of labels for the variables in the pairs plot.
id	an optional numeric value, or one-sided formula. If given as a value, it is used as a significance level for an outlier test based on the Mahalanobis distances of the estimated random effects. Groups with random effects distances greater than the $1 - value$ percentile of the appropriate chi-square distribution are identified in the plot using idLabels. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a logical, integer, or character vector which is used to identify points in the plot. If missing, no points are identified.
idLabels	an optional vector, or one-sided formula. If given as a vector, it is converted to character and used to label the points identified according to id. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a vector which is converted to character and used to label the identified points. Default is the innermost grouping factor.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a diagnostic Trellis plot.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, pairs.compareFits, pairs.lmList, xyplot, splom

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
# scatter plot of coefficients by gender, identifying unusual subjects
pairs(fm1, ~coef(., augFrame = TRUE) | Sex, id = 0.1, adj = -0.5)
# scatter plot of estimated random effects
## Not run:
pairs(fm1, ~ranef(.))

## End(Not run)
```

---

pairs.lmList *Pairs Plot of an lmList Object*

Description

Diagnostic plots for the linear model fits corresponding to the x components are obtained. The form argument gives considerable flexibility in the type of plot specification. A conditioning expression (on the right side of a | operator) always implies that different panels are used for each level of the conditioning factor, according to a Trellis display. The expression on the right hand side of the formula, before a | operator, must evaluate to a data frame with at least two columns. If the data frame has two columns, a scatter plot of the two variables is displayed (the Trellis function xyplot is used). Otherwise, if more than two columns are present, a scatter plot matrix with pairwise scatter plots of the columns in the data frame is displayed (the Trellis function splom is used).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
pairs(x, form, label, id, idLabels, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "lmList", representing a list of lm objects with a common model.
form	an optional one-sided formula specifying the desired type of plot. Any variable present in the original data frame used to obtain x can be referenced. In addition, x itself can be referenced in the formula using the symbol ".". Conditional expressions on the right of a | operator can be used to define separate panels in a Trellis display. The expression on the right hand side of form, and to the left of the | operator, must evaluate to a data frame with at least two columns. Default is ~ coef(.) , corresponding to a pairs plot of the coefficients of x.

label	an optional character vector of labels for the variables in the pairs plot.
id	an optional numeric value, or one-sided formula. If given as a value, it is used as a significance level for an outlier test based on the Mahalanobis distances of the estimated random effects. Groups with random effects distances greater than the $1 - value$ percentile of the appropriate chi-square distribution are identified in the plot using idLabels. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a logical, integer, or character vector which is used to identify points in the plot. If missing, no points are identified.
idLabels	an optional vector, or one-sided formula. If given as a vector, it is converted to character and used to label the points identified according to id. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a vector which is converted to character and used to label the identified points. Default is the innermost grouping factor.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a diagnostic Trellis plot.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList, pairs.lme, pairs.compareFits, xyplot, splom

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
# scatter plot of coefficients by gender, identifying unusual subjects
pairs(fm1, ~coef(.) | Sex, id = 0.1, adj = -0.5)
# scatter plot of estimated random effects
## Not run:
pairs(fm1, ~ranef(.))

## End(Not run)
```

PBG *Effect of Phenylbiguanide on Blood Pressure*

Description

The PBG data frame has 60 rows and 5 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

deltaBP a numeric vector

dose a numeric vector

Run an ordered factor with levels T5 < T4 < T3 < T2 < T1 < P5 < P3 < P2 < P4 < P1

Treatment a factor with levels MDL 72222 Placebo

Rabbit an ordered factor with levels 5 < 3 < 2 < 4 < 1

Details

Data on an experiment to examine the effect of a antagonist MDL 72222 on the change in blood pressure experienced with increasing dosage of phenylbiguanide are described in Ludbrook (1994) and analyzed in Venables and Ripley (2002, section 10.3). Each of five rabbits was exposed to increasing doses of phenylbiguanide after having either a placebo or the HD5-antagonist MDL 72222 administered.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.21)

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S (4th ed)*, Springer, New York.

Ludbrook, J. (1994), Repeated measurements and multiple comparisons in cardiovascular research, *Cardiovascular Research*, **28**, 303-311.

---

pdBlocked *Positive-Definite Block Diagonal Matrix*

Description

This function is a constructor for the pdBlocked class, representing a positive-definite block-diagonal matrix. Each block-diagonal element of the underlying matrix is itself a positive-definite matrix and is represented internally as an individual pdMat object. When value is numeric(0), a list of uninitialized pdMat objects, a list of one-sided formulas, or a list of vectors of character strings, object is returned as an uninitialized pdBlocked object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the coef or matrix replacement functions. If value is a list of initialized pdMat objects, object will be constructed from the list obtained by applying as.matrix to each of the pdMat elements of value. Finally, if value is a list of numeric vectors, they are assumed to represent the unrestricted coefficients of the block-diagonal elements of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
pdBlocked(value, form, nam, data, pdClass)
```

Arguments

value	an optional list with elements to be used as the value argument to other pdMat constructors. These include: pdMat objects, positive-definite matrices, one-sided linear formulas, vectors of character strings, or numeric vectors. All elements in the list must be similar (e.g. all one-sided formulas, or all numeric vectors). Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional list of one-sided linear formulas specifying the row/column names for the block-diagonal elements of the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formulas needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names they define. This argument is ignored when value is a list of one-sided formulas. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional list of vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the block-diagonal elements of the matrix represented by object. Each of its components must have length equal to the dimension of the corresponding block-diagonal element and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a list of vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on any factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.
pdClass	an optional vector of character strings naming the pdMat classes to be assigned to the individual blocks in the underlying matrix. If a single class is specified, it is used for all block-diagonal elements. This argument will only be used when value is missing, or its elements are not pdMat objects. Defaults to "pdSymm".

Value

a pdBlocked object representing a positive-definite block-diagonal matrix, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. p. 162.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, pdClasses, matrix<-.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdBlocked(list(diag(1:2), diag(c(0.1, 0.2, 0.3))),
                 nam = list(c("A","B"), c("a1", "a2", "a3")))
pd1
```

pdClasses *Positive-Definite Matrix Classes*

Description

Standard classes of positive-definite matrices (pdMat) structures available in the nlme package.

Value

Available standard classes:

pdSymm	general positive-definite matrix, with no additional structure
pdLogChol	general positive-definite matrix, with no additional structure, using a log-Cholesky parameterization
pdDiag	diagonal
pdIdent	multiple of an identity
pdCompSymm	compound symmetry structure (constant diagonal and constant off-diagonal elements)
pdBlocked	block-diagonal matrix, with diagonal blocks of any "atomic" pdMat class
pdNatural	general positive-definite matrix in natural parametrization (i.e. parametrized in terms of standard deviations and correlations). The underlying coefficients are not unrestricted, so this class should NOT be used for optimization.

Note

Users may define their own pdMat classes by specifying a constructor function and, at a minimum, methods for the functions pdConstruct, pdMatrix and coef. For examples of these functions, see the methods for classes pdSymm and pdDiag.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

pdBlocked, pdCompSymm, pdDiag, pdFactor, pdIdent, pdMat, pdMatrix, pdNatural, pdSymm, pdLogChol

pdCompSymm *Positive-Definite Matrix with Compound Symmetry Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the pdCompSymm class, representing a positive-definite matrix with compound symmetry structure (constant diagonal and constant off-diagonal elements). The underlying matrix is represented by 2 unrestricted parameters. When value is numeric(0), an unitialized pdMat object, a one-sided formula, or a vector of character strings, object is returned as an uninitialized pdCompSymm object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the coef or matrix replacement functions. If value is an initialized pdMat object, object will be constructed from as.matrix(value). Finally, if value is a numeric vector of length 2, it is assumed to represent the unrestricted coefficients of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
pdCompSymm(value, form, nam, data)
```

Arguments

value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric vector of length 2. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.

Value

a pdCompSymm object representing a positive-definite matrix with compound symmetry structure, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. p. 161.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, matrix<-.pdMat, pdClasses

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdCompSymm(diag(3) + 1, nam = c("A","B","C"))
pd1
```

---

pdConstruct *Construct pdMat Objects*

Description

This function is an alternative constructor for the pdMat class associated with object and is mostly used internally in other functions. See the documentation on the principal constructor function, generally with the same name as the pdMat class of object.

Usage

```
pdConstruct(object, value, form, nam, data, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class pdMat, representing a positive definite matrix.
value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric vector. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.
...	optional arguments for some methods.

Value

a pdMat object representing a positive-definite matrix, inheriting from the same classes as object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

pdCompSymm, pdDiag, pdIdent, pdNatural, pdSymm

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm()
pdConstruct(pd1, diag(1:4))
```

---

pdConstruct.pdBlocked *Construct pdBlocked Objects*

Description

This function give an alternative constructor for the pdBlocked class, representing a positive-definite block-diagonal matrix. Each block-diagonal element of the underlying matrix is itself a positive-definite matrix and is represented internally as an individual pdMat object. When value is numeric(0), a list of uninitialized pdMat objects, a list of one-sided formulas, or a list of vectors of character strings, object is returned as an uninitialized pdBlocked object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the coef or matrix replacement functions. If value is a list of initialized pdMat objects, object will be constructed from the list obtained by applying as.matrix to each of the pdMat elements of value. Finally, if value is a list of numeric vectors, they are assumed to represent the unrestricted coefficients of the block-diagonal elements of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdBlocked
pdConstruct(object, value, form, nam, data, pdClass,
...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "pdBlocked", representing a positive definite block-diagonal matrix.
value	an optional list with elements to be used as the value argument to other pdMat constructors. These include: pdMat objects, positive-definite matrices, one-sided linear formulas, vectors of character strings, or numeric vectors. All elements in the list must be similar (e.g. all one-sided formulas, or all numeric vectors). Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional list of one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the block-diagonal elements of the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formulas needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names they defines. This argument is ignored when value is a list of one-sided formulas. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional list of vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the block-diagonal elements of the matrix represented by object. Each of its components must have length equal to the dimension of the corresponding block-diagonal element and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a list of vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.

data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.
pdClass	an optional vector of character strings naming the pdMat classes to be assigned to the individual blocks in the underlying matrix. If a single class is specified, it is used for all block-diagonal elements. This argument will only be used when value is missing, or its elements are not pdMat objects. Defaults to "pdSymm".
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a pdBlocked object representing a positive-definite block-diagonal matrix, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, pdBlocked, pdClasses, pdConstruct, matrix<-.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdBlocked(list(c("A","B"), c("a1", "a2", "a3")))
pdConstruct(pd1, list(diag(1:2), diag(c(0.1, 0.2, 0.3))))
```

---

pdDiag *Diagonal Positive-Definite Matrix*

Description

This function is a constructor for the pdDiag class, representing a diagonal positive-definite matrix. If the matrix associated with object is of dimension n, it is represented by n unrestricted parameters, given by the logarithm of the square-root of the diagonal values. When value is numeric(0), an uninitialized pdMat object, a one-sided formula, or a vector of character strings, object is returned as an uninitialized pdDiag object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the coef or matrix replacement functions. If value is an initialized pdMat object, object will be constructed from as.matrix(value). Finally, if value is a numeric vector, it is assumed to represent the unrestricted coefficients of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
pdDiag(value, form, nam, data)
```

Arguments

value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric vector of length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.

Value

a pdDiag object representing a diagonal positive-definite matrix, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, pdClasses, matrix<-.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdDiag(diag(1:3), nam = c("A","B","C"))
pd1
```

---

pdFactor *Square-Root Factor of a Positive-Definite Matrix*

Description

A square-root factor of the positive-definite matrix represented by object is obtained. Letting Σ denote a positive-definite matrix, a square-root factor of Σ is any square matrix L such that $\Sigma = L'L$. This function extracts L.

Usage

```
pdFactor(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class pdMat, representing a positive definite matrix, which must have been initialized (i.e. length(coef(object)) > 0).

Value

a vector with a square-root factor of the positive-definite matrix associated with object stacked column-wise.

Note

This function is used intensively in optimization algorithms and its value is returned as a vector for efficiency reasons. The pdMatrix function can be used to obtain square-root factors in matrix form.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

pdMatrix

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdCompSymm(4 * diag(3) + 1)
pdFactor(pd1)
```

---

pdFactor.reStruct *Extract Square-Root Factor from Components of an reStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts square-root factors of the positive-definite matrices corresponding to the pdMat elements of object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
pdFactor(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.

Value

a vector with square-root factors of the positive-definite matrices corresponding to the elements of `object` stacked column-wise.

Note

This function is used intensively in optimization algorithms and its value is returned as a vector for efficiency reasons. The `pdMatrix` function can be used to obtain square-root factors in matrix form.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`pdFactor`, `pdMatrix.reStruct`, `pdFactor.pdMat`

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(pdSymm(diag(3), ~age+Sex, data = Orthodont))
pdFactor(rs1)
```

---

pdIdent *Multiple of the Identity Positive-Definite Matrix*

Description

This function is a constructor for the `pdIdent` class, representing a multiple of the identity positive-definite matrix. The matrix associated with `object` is represented by 1 unrestricted parameter, given by the logarithm of the square-root of the diagonal value. When `value` is `numeric(0)`, an uninitialized `pdMat` object, a one-sided formula, or a vector of character strings, `object` is returned as an uninitialized `pdIdent` object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the `coef` or `matrix` replacement functions. If `value` is an initialized `pdMat` object, `object` will be constructed from `as.matrix(value)`. Finally, if `value` is a numeric value, it is assumed to represent the unrestricted coefficient of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
pdIdent(value, form, nam, data)
```

Arguments

value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric value. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.

Value

a pdIdent object representing a multiple of the identity positive-definite matrix, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, pdClasses, matrix<-.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdIdent(4 * diag(3), nam = c("A","B","C"))
pd1
```

---

pdLogChol *General Positive-Definite Matrix*

Description

This function is a constructor for the pdLogChol class, representing a general positive-definite matrix. If the matrix associated with object is of dimension n, it is represented by $n(n+1)/2$ unrestricted parameters, using the log-Cholesky parametrization described in Pinheiro and Bates (1996). When value is numeric(0), an uninitialized pdMat object, a one-sided formula, or a vector of character strings, object is returned as an uninitialized pdLogChol object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the coef or matrix replacement functions. If value is an initialized pdMat object, object will be constructed from as.matrix(value). Finally, if value is a numeric vector, it is assumed to represent the unrestricted coefficients of the matrix-logarithm parametrization of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
pdLogChol(value, form, nam, data)
```

Arguments

value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric vector. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.

Value

a pdLogChol object representing a general positive-definite matrix, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289-296.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, pdClasses, matrix<-.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdLogChol(diag(1:3), nam = c("A","B","C"))
pd1
```

---

pdMat *Positive-Definite Matrix*

Description

This function gives an alternative way of constructing an object inheriting from the pdMat class named in pdClass, or from data.class(object) if object inherits from pdMat, and is mostly used internally in other functions. See the documentation on the principal constructor function, generally with the same name as the pdMat class of object.

Usage

```
pdMat(value, form, nam, data, pdClass)
```

Arguments

value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric vector. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.
pdClass	an optional character string naming the pdMat class to be assigned to the returned object. This argument will only be used when value is not a pdMat object. Defaults to "pdSymm".

Value

a pdMat object representing a positive-definite matrix, inheriting from the class named in pdClass, or from class(object), if object inherits from pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

pdClasses, pdCompSymm, pdDiag, pdIdent, pdNatural, pdSymm, reStruct, solve.pdMat, summary.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdMat(diag(1:4), pdClass = "pdDiag")
pd1
```

---

pdMatrix *Extract Matrix or Square-Root Factor from a pdMat Object*

Description

The positive-definite matrix represented by `object`, or a square-root factor of it is obtained. Letting Σ denote a positive-definite matrix, a square-root factor of Σ is any square matrix L such that $\Sigma = L'L$. This function extracts S or L.

Usage

```
pdMatrix(object, factor)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `pdMat`, representing a positive definite matrix.
`factor`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE`, a square-root factor of the positive-definite matrix represented by `object` is returned; else, if `FALSE`, the positive-definite matrix is returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.

Value

if `fact` is `FALSE` the positive-definite matrix represented by `object` is returned; else a square-root of the positive-definite matrix is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. p. 162.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, pdClasses, pdFactor, pdMat, pdMatrix.reStruct, corMatrix

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(diag(1:4))
pdMatrix(pd1)
```

---

pdMatrix.reStruct *Extract Matrix or Square-Root Factor from Components of an reStruct Object*

Description

This method function extracts the positive-definite matrices corresponding to the pdMat elements of object, or square-root factors of the positive-definite matrices.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
pdMatrix(object, factor)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "reStruct", representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of pdMat objects.
factor	an optional logical value. If TRUE, square-root factors of the positive-definite matrices represented by the elements of object are returned; else, if FALSE, the positive-definite matrices are returned. Defaults to FALSE.

Value

a list with components given by the positive-definite matrices corresponding to the elements of object, or square-root factors of the positive-definite matrices.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. p. 162.

See Also

as.matrix.reStruct, reStruct, pdMat, pdMatrix, pdMatrix.pdMat

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(pdSymm(diag(3), ~age+Sex, data = Orthodont))
pdMatrix(rs1)
```

pdNatural *General Positive-Definite Matrix in Natural Parametrization*

Description

This function is a constructor for the pdNatural class, representing a general positive-definite matrix, using a natural parametrization . If the matrix associated with object is of dimension n, it is represented by $n(n+1)/2$ parameters. Letting σ_{ij} denote the ij-th element of the underlying positive definite matrix and $\rho_{ij} = \sigma_i/\sqrt{\sigma_{ii}\sigma_{jj}},\ i \neq j$ denote the associated "correlations", the "natural" parameters are given by $\sqrt{\sigma_{ii}},\ i = 1, \ldots, n$ and $\log((1+\rho_{ij})/(1-\rho_{ij})),\ i \neq j$. Note that all natural parameters are individually unrestricted, but not jointly unrestricted (meaning that not all unrestricted vectors would give positive-definite matrices). Therefore, this parametrization should NOT be used for optimization. It is mostly used for deriving approximate confidence intervals on parameters following the optimization of an objective function. When value is numeric(0), an uninitialized pdMat object, a one-sided formula, or a vector of character strings, object is returned as an uninitialized pdSymm object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the coef or matrix replacement functions. If value is an initialized pdMat object, object will be constructed from as.matrix(value). Finally, if value is a numeric vector, it is assumed to represent the natural parameters of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
pdNatural(value, form, nam, data)
```

Arguments

value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric vector. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.
data	an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.

Value

a pdNatural object representing a general positive-definite matrix in natural parametrization, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. p. 162.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, pdClasses, matrix<-.pdMat

Examples

```
pdNatural(diag(1:3))
```

---

pdSymm *General Positive-Definite Matrix*

Description

This function is a constructor for the pdSymm class, representing a general positive-definite matrix. If the matrix associated with object is of dimension n, it is represented by $n(n+1)/2$ unrestricted parameters, using the matrix-logarithm parametrization described in Pinheiro and Bates (1996). When value is numeric(0), an uninitialized pdMat object, a one-sided formula, or a vector of character strings, object is returned as an uninitialized pdSymm object (with just some of its attributes and its class defined) and needs to have its coefficients assigned later, generally using the coef or matrix replacement functions. If value is an initialized pdMat object, object will be constructed from as.matrix(value). Finally, if value is a numeric vector, it is assumed to represent the unrestricted coefficients of the matrix-logarithm parametrization of the underlying positive-definite matrix.

Usage

```
pdSymm(value, form, nam, data)
```

Arguments

value	an optional initialization value, which can be any of the following: a pdMat object, a positive-definite matrix, a one-sided linear formula (with variables separated by +), a vector of character strings, or a numeric vector. Defaults to numeric(0), corresponding to an uninitialized object.
form	an optional one-sided linear formula specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. Because factors may be present in form, the formula needs to be evaluated on a data.frame to resolve the names it defines. This argument is ignored when value is a one-sided formula. Defaults to NULL.
nam	an optional vector of character strings specifying the row/column names for the matrix represented by object. It must have length equal to the dimension of the underlying positive-definite matrix and unreplicated elements. This argument is ignored when value is a vector of character strings. Defaults to NULL.

data — an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables named in value and form. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying matrix. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.

Value

a pdSymm object representing a general positive-definite matrix, also inheriting from class pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C. and Bates., D.M. (1996) "Unconstrained Parametrizations for Variance-Covariance Matrices", Statistics and Computing, 6, 289-296.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

as.matrix.pdMat, coef.pdMat, pdClasses, matrix<-.pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(diag(1:3), nam = c("A","B","C"))
pd1
```

Phenobarb *Phenobarbitol Kinetics*

Description

The Phenobarb data frame has 744 rows and 7 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Subject an ordered factor identifying the infant.

Wt a numeric vector giving the birth weight of the infant (kg).

Apgar an ordered factor giving the 5-minute Apgar score for the infant. This is an indication of health of the newborn infant.

ApgarInd a factor indicating whether the 5-minute Apgar score is < 5 or >= 5.

time a numeric vector giving the time when the sample is drawn or drug administered (hr).

dose a numeric vector giving the dose of drug administered (ug/kg).

conc a numeric vector giving the phenobarbital concentration in the serum (ug/L).

Details

Data from a pharmacokinetics study of phenobarbital in neonatal infants. During the first few days of life the infants receive multiple doses of phenobarbital for prevention of seizures. At irregular intervals blood samples are drawn and serum phenobarbital concentrations are determined. The data were originally given in Grasela and Donn(1985) and are analyzed in Boeckmann, Sheiner and Beal (1994), in Davidian and Giltinan (1995), and in Littell et al. (1996).

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.23)

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995), *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman and Hall, London. (section 6.6)

Grasela and Donn (1985), Neonatal population pharmacokinetics of phenobarbital derived from routine clinical data, *Developmental Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, **8**, 374-383.

Boeckmann, A. J., Sheiner, L. B., and Beal, S. L. (1994), *NONMEM Users Guide: Part V*, University of California, San Francisco.

Littell, R. C., Milliken, G. A., Stroup, W. W. and Wolfinger, R. D. (1996), *SAS System for Mixed Models*, SAS Institute, Cary, NC.

---

phenoModel *Model function for the Phenobarb data*

Description

A model function for a model used with the `Phenobarb` data. This function uses compiled C code to improve execution speed.

Usage

```
phenoModel(Subject, time, dose, lCl, lV)
```

Arguments

`Subject`	an integer vector of subject identifiers. These should be sorted in increasing order.
`time`	numeric. A vector of the times at which the sample was drawn or the drug administered (hr).
`dose`	numeric. A vector of doses of drug administered (ug/kg).
`lCl`	numeric. A vector of values of the natural log of the clearance parameter according to `Subject` and `time`.
`lV`	numeric. A vector of values of the natural log of the effective volume of distribution according to `Subject` and `time`.

Details

See the details section of `Phenobarb` for a description of the model function that `phenoModel` evaluates.

Value

a numeric vector of predicted phenobarbital concentrations.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer. (section 6.4)

Pixel *X-ray pixel intensities over time*

Description

The `Pixel` data frame has 102 rows and 4 columns of data on the pixel intensities of CT scans of dogs over time

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Dog a factor with levels `1` to `10` designating the dog on which the scan was made

Side a factor with levels `L` and `R` designating the side of the dog being scanned

day a numeric vector giving the day post injection of the contrast on which the scan was made

pixel a numeric vector of pixel intensities

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer.

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(pixel ~ day + I(day^2), data = Pixel,
           random = list(Dog = ~ day, Side = ~ 1))
summary(fm1)
VarCorr(fm1)
```

plot.ACF *Plot an ACF Object*

Description

an xyplot of the autocorrelations versus the lags, with type = "h", is produced. If alpha > 0, curves representing the critical limits for a two-sided test of level alpha for the autocorrelations are added to the plot.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ACF
plot(x, alpha, xlab, ylab, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class ACF, consisting of a data frame with two columns named lag and ACF, representing the autocorrelation values and the corresponding lags.
alpha	an optional numeric value with the significance level for testing if the autocorrelations are zero. Lines corresponding to the lower and upper critical values for a test of level alpha are added to the plot. Default is 0, in which case no lines are plotted.
xlab,ylab	optional character strings with the x- and y-axis labels. Default respectively to "Lag" and "Autocorrelation".
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the xyplot function.

Value

an xyplot Trellis plot.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

ACF, xyplot

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary)
plot(ACF(fm1, maxLag = 10), alpha = 0.01)
```

plot.augPred *Plot an augPred Object*

Description

A Trellis xyplot of predictions versus the primary covariate is generated, with a different panel for each value of the grouping factor. Predicted values are joined by lines, with different line types (colors) being used for each level of grouping. Original observations are represented by circles.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class augPred
plot(x, key, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "augPred".
key	an optional logical value, or list. If TRUE, a legend is included at the top of the plot indicating which symbols (colors) correspond to which prediction levels. If FALSE, no legend is included. If given as a list, key is passed down as an argument to the trellis function generating the plots (xyplot). Defaults to TRUE.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed down to the trellis function generating the plots.

Value

A Trellis plot of predictions versus the primary covariate, with panels determined by the grouping factor.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

augPred, xyplot

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(Orthodont)
plot(augPred(fm1, level = 0:1, length.out = 2))
```

plot.compareFits *Plot a compareFits Object*

Description

A Trellis dotplot of the values being compared, with different rows per group, is generated, with a different panel for each coefficient. Different symbols (colors) are used for each object being compared.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class compareFits
plot(x, subset, key, mark, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "compareFits".
subset	an optional logical or integer vector specifying which rows of x should be used in the plots. If missing, all rows are used.
key	an optional logical value, or list. If TRUE, a legend is included at the top of the plot indicating which symbols (colors) correspond to which objects being compared. If FALSE, no legend is included. If given as a list, key is passed down as an argument to the trellis function generating the plots (dotplot). Defaults to TRUE.
mark	an optional numeric vector, of length equal to the number of coefficients being compared, indicating where vertical lines should be drawn in the plots. If missing, no lines are drawn.
...	optional arguments passed down to the trellis function generating the plots.

Value

A Trellis dotplot of the values being compared, with rows determined by the groups and panels by the coefficients.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

compareFits, pairs.compareFits, dotplot

Examples

```
## Not run:
fm1 <- lmList(Orthodont)
fm2 <- lme(Orthodont)
plot(compareFits(coef(fm1), coef(fm2)))

## End(Not run)
```

plot.gls *Plot a gls Object*

Description

Diagnostic plots for the linear model fit are obtained. The `form` argument gives considerable flexibility in the type of plot specification. A conditioning expression (on the right side of a `|` operator) always implies that different panels are used for each level of the conditioning factor, according to a Trellis display. If `form` is a one-sided formula, histograms of the variable on the right hand side of the formula, before a `|` operator, are displayed (the Trellis function `histogram` is used). If `form` is two-sided and both its left and right hand side variables are numeric, scatter plots are displayed (the Trellis function `xyplot` is used). Finally, if `form` is two-sided and its left had side variable is a factor, box-plots of the right hand side variable by the levels of the left hand side variable are displayed (the Trellis function `bwplot` is used).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
plot(x, form, abline, id, idLabels, idResType, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"gls"`, representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model.
`form`	an optional formula specifying the desired type of plot. Any variable present in the original data frame used to obtain `x` can be referenced. In addition, `x` itself can be referenced in the formula using the symbol `"."`. Conditional expressions on the right of a `|` operator can be used to define separate panels in a Trellis display. Default is `resid(., type = "p") ~ fitted(.)` , corresponding to a plot of the standardized residuals versus fitted values, both evaluated at the innermost level of nesting.
`abline`	an optional numeric value, or numeric vector of length two. If given as a single value, a horizontal line will be added to the plot at that coordinate; else, if given as a vector, its values are used as the intercept and slope for a line added to the plot. If missing, no lines are added to the plot.
`id`	an optional numeric value, or one-sided formula. If given as a value, it is used as a significance level for a two-sided outlier test for the standardized residuals. Observations with absolute standardized residuals greater than the $1 - value/2$ quantile of the standard normal distribution are identified in the plot using `idLabels`. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a logical, integer, or character vector which is used to identify observations in the plot. If missing, no observations are identified.
`idLabels`	an optional vector, or one-sided formula. If given as a vector, it is converted to character mode and used to label the observations identified according to `id`. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a vector which is converted to character mode and used to label the identified observations. Default is the innermost grouping factor.
`idResType`	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used in identifying outliers, when `id` is a numeric value. If `"pearson"`, the standardized

	residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if "normalized", the normalized residuals (standardized residuals premultiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to "pearson".
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default depends on the type of Trellis plot used: if xyplot defaults to TRUE, else defaults to FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a diagnostic Trellis plot.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls, xyplot, bwplot, histogram

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
# standardized residuals versus fitted values by Mare
plot(fm1, resid(., type = "p") ~ fitted(.) | Mare, abline = 0)
# box-plots of residuals by Mare
plot(fm1, Mare ~ resid(.))
# observed versus fitted values by Mare
plot(fm1, follicles ~ fitted(.) | Mare, abline = c(0,1))
```

---

plot.intervals.lmList *Plot lmList Confidence Intervals*

Description

A Trellis dot-plot of the confidence intervals on the linear model coefficients is generated, with a different panel for each coefficient. Rows in the dot-plot correspond to the names of the lm components of the lmList object used to produce x. The lower and upper confidence limits are connected by a line segment and the estimated coefficients are marked with a "+". The Trellis function dotplot is used in this method function.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class intervals.lmList
plot(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "intervals.lmList", representing confidence intervals and estimates for the coefficients in the lm components of the lmList object used to produce x.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis dotplot function.

Value

a Trellis plot with the confidence intervals on the coefficients of the individual lm components of the lmList that generated x.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

intervals.lmList, lmList, dotplot

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
plot(intervals(fm1))
```

---

plot.lme *Plot an lme or nls object*

Description

Diagnostic plots for the linear mixed-effects fit are obtained. The form argument gives considerable flexibility in the type of plot specification. A conditioning expression (on the right side of a | operator) always implies that different panels are used for each level of the conditioning factor, according to a Trellis display. If form is a one-sided formula, histograms of the variable on the right hand side of the formula, before a | operator, are displayed (the Trellis function histogram is used). If form is two-sided and both its left and right hand side variables are numeric, scatter plots are displayed (the Trellis function xyplot is used). Finally, if form is two-sided and its left had side variable is a factor, box-plots of the right hand side variable by the levels of the left hand side variable are displayed (the Trellis function bwplot is used).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
plot(x, form, abline, id, idLabels, idResType, grid, ...)
## S3 method for class nls
plot(x, form, abline, id, idLabels, idResType, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model, or from nls, representing an fitted nonlinear least squares model.
form	an optional formula specifying the desired type of plot. Any variable present in the original data frame used to obtain x can be referenced. In addition, x itself can be referenced in the formula using the symbol ".". Conditional expressions on the right of a | operator can be used to define separate panels in a Trellis display. Default is resid(., type = "p") ~ fitted(.) , corresponding to a plot of the standardized residuals versus fitted values, both evaluated at the innermost level of nesting.
abline	an optional numeric value, or numeric vector of length two. If given as a single value, a horizontal line will be added to the plot at that coordinate; else, if given as a vector, its values are used as the intercept and slope for a line added to the plot. If missing, no lines are added to the plot.
id	an optional numeric value, or one-sided formula. If given as a value, it is used as a significance level for a two-sided outlier test for the standardized, or normalized residuals. Observations with absolute standardized (normalized) residuals greater than the $1 - value/2$ quantile of the standard normal distribution are identified in the plot using idLabels. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a logical, integer, or character vector which is used to identify observations in the plot. If missing, no observations are identified.
idLabels	an optional vector, or one-sided formula. If given as a vector, it is converted to character and used to label the observations identified according to id. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a vector which is converted to character and used to label the identified observations. Default is the innermost grouping factor.
idResType	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used in identifying outliers, when id is a numeric value. If "pearson", the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if "normalized", the normalized residuals (standardized residuals premultiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to "pearson".
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default depends on the type of Trellis plot used: if xyplot defaults to TRUE, else defaults to FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a diagnostic Trellis plot.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, xyplot, bwplot, histogram

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
# standardized residuals versus fitted values by gender
plot(fm1, resid(., type = "p") ~ fitted(.) | Sex, abline = 0)
# box-plots of residuals by Subject
plot(fm1, Subject ~ resid(.))
# observed versus fitted values by Subject
plot(fm1, distance ~ fitted(.) | Subject, abline = c(0,1))
```

`plot.lmList` *Plot an lmList Object*

Description

Diagnostic plots for the linear model fits corresponding to the `x` components are obtained. The `form` argument gives considerable flexibility in the type of plot specification. A conditioning expression (on the right side of a `|` operator) always implies that different panels are used for each level of the conditioning factor, according to a Trellis display. If `form` is a one-sided formula, histograms of the variable on the right hand side of the formula, before a `|` operator, are displayed (the Trellis function `histogram` is used). If `form` is two-sided and both its left and right hand side variables are numeric, scatter plots are displayed (the Trellis function `xyplot` is used). Finally, if `form` is two-sided and its left had side variable is a factor, box-plots of the right hand side variable by the levels of the left hand side variable are displayed (the Trellis function `bwplot` is used).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
plot(x, form, abline, id, idLabels, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"lmList"`, representing a list of `lm` objects with a common model.
`form`	an optional formula specifying the desired type of plot. Any variable present in the original data frame used to obtain `x` can be referenced. In addition, `x` itself can be referenced in the formula using the symbol `"."`. Conditional expressions on the right of a `|` operator can be used to define separate panels in a Trellis display. Default is `resid(., type = "pool") ~ fitted(.)` , corresponding to a plot of the standardized residuals (using a pooled estimate for the residual standard error) versus fitted values.
`abline`	an optional numeric value, or numeric vector of length two. If given as a single value, a horizontal line will be added to the plot at that coordinate; else, if given as a vector, its values are used as the intercept and slope for a line added to the plot. If missing, no lines are added to the plot.
`id`	an optional numeric value, or one-sided formula. If given as a value, it is used as a significance level for a two-sided outlier test for the standardized residuals. Observations with absolute standardized residuals greater than the $1 - value/2$ quantile of the standard normal distribution are identified in the plot using `idLabels`. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a logical, integer, or character vector which is used to identify observations in the plot. If missing, no observations are identified.

idLabels	an optional vector, or one-sided formula. If given as a vector, it is converted to character and used to label the observations identified according to id. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a vector which is converted to character and used to label the identified observations. Default is getGroups(x).
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default depends on the type of Trellis plot used: if xyplot defaults to TRUE, else defaults to FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a diagnostic Trellis plot.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList,predict.lm, xyplot, bwplot, histogram

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
# standardized residuals versus fitted values by gender
plot(fm1, resid(., type = "pool") ~ fitted(.) | Sex, abline = 0, id = 0.05)
# box-plots of residuals by Subject
plot(fm1, Subject ~ resid(.))
# observed versus fitted values by Subject
plot(fm1, distance ~ fitted(.) | Subject, abline = c(0,1))
```

---

plot.nffGroupedData *Plot an nffGroupedData Object*

Description

A Trellis dot-plot of the response by group is generated. If outer variables are specified, the combination of their levels are used to determine the panels of the Trellis display. The Trellis function dotplot is used.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nffGroupedData
plot(x, outer, inner, innerGroups, xlab, ylab, strip, panel, key,
     grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class nffGroupedData, representing a groupedData object with a factor primary covariate and a single grouping level.
outer	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating covariates that are outer to the grouping factor, which are used to determine the panels of the Trellis plot. If equal to TRUE, attr(object, "outer") is used to indicate the outer covariates. An outer covariate is invariant within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Ordering of the groups is done in such a way as to preserve adjacency of groups with the same value of the outer variables. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no outer covariates are to be used.
inner	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating a covariate that is inner to the grouping factor, which is used to associate points within each panel of the Trellis plot. If equal to TRUE, attr(object, "inner") is used to indicate the inner covariate. An inner covariate can change within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no inner covariate is present.
innerGroups	an optional one-sided formula specifying a factor to be used for grouping the levels of the inner covariate. Different colors, or symbols, are used for each level of the innerGroups factor. Default is NULL, meaning that no innerGroups covariate is present.
xlab	an optional character string with the label for the horizontal axis. Default is the y elements of attr(object, "labels") and attr(object, "units") pasted together.
ylab	an optional character string with the label for the vertical axis. Default is the grouping factor name.
strip	an optional function passed as the strip argument to the dotplot function. Default is strip.default(..., style = 1) (see trellis.args).
panel	an optional function used to generate the individual panels in the Trellis display, passed as the panel argument to the dotplot function.
key	an optional logical function or function. If TRUE and either inner or innerGroups are non-NULL, a legend for the different inner (innerGroups) levels is included at the top of the plot. If given as a function, it is passed as the key argument to the dotplot function. Default is TRUE is either inner or innerGroups are non-NULL and FALSE otherwise.
grid	this argument is included for consistency with the plot.nfnGroupedData method calling sequence. It is ignored in this method function.
...	optional arguments passed to the dotplot function.

Value

a Trellis dot-plot of the response by group.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Bates, D.M. and Pinheiro, J.C. (1997), "Software Design for Longitudinal Data", in "Modelling Longitudinal and Spatially Correlated Data: Methods, Applications and Future Directions", T.G. Gregoire (ed.), Springer-Verlag, New York.

See Also

groupedData, dotplot

Examples

```
plot(Machines)
plot(Machines, inner = TRUE)
```

---

plot.nfnGroupedData *Plot an nfnGroupedData Object*

Description

A Trellis plot of the response versus the primary covariate is generated. If outer variables are specified, the combination of their levels are used to determine the panels of the Trellis display. Otherwise, the levels of the grouping variable determine the panels. A scatter plot of the response versus the primary covariate is displayed in each panel, with observations corresponding to same inner group joined by line segments. The Trellis function xyplot is used.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nfnGroupedData
plot(x, outer, inner, innerGroups, xlab, ylab, strip, aspect, panel,
     key, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class nfnGroupedData, representing a groupedData object with a numeric primary covariate and a single grouping level.
outer	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating covariates that are outer to the grouping factor, which are used to determine the panels of the Trellis plot. If equal to TRUE, attr(object, "outer") is used to indicate the outer covariates. An outer covariate is invariant within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Ordering of the groups is done in such a way as to preserve adjacency of groups with the same value of the outer variables. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no outer covariates are to be used.
inner	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating a covariate that is inner to the grouping factor, which is used to associate points within each panel of the Trellis plot. If equal to TRUE, attr(object, "inner") is used to indicate the inner covariate. An inner covariate can change within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no inner covariate is present.
innerGroups	an optional one-sided formula specifying a factor to be used for grouping the levels of the inner covariate. Different colors, or line types, are used for each level of the innerGroups factor. Default is NULL, meaning that no innerGroups covariate is present.
xlab, ylab	optional character strings with the labels for the plot. Default is the corresponding elements of attr(object, "labels") and attr(object, "units") pasted together.

strip	an optional function passed as the strip argument to the xyplot function. Default is strip.default(..., style = 1) (see trellis.args).
aspect	an optional character string indicating the aspect ratio for the plot passed as the aspect argument to the xyplot function. Default is "xy" (see trellis.args).
panel	an optional function used to generate the individual panels in the Trellis display, passed as the panel argument to the xyplot function.
key	an optional logical function or function. If TRUE and innerGroups is non-NULL, a legend for the different innerGroups levels is included at the top of the plot. If given as a function, it is passed as the key argument to the xyplot function. Default is TRUE if innerGroups is non-NULL and FALSE otherwise.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is TRUE.
...	optional arguments passed to the xyplot function.

Value

a Trellis plot of the response versus the primary covariate.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Bates, D.M. and Pinheiro, J.C. (1997), "Software Design for Longitudinal Data", in "Modelling Longitudinal and Spatially Correlated Data: Methods, Applications and Future Directions", T.G. Gregoire (ed.), Springer-Verlag, New York.

See Also

groupedData, xyplot

Examples

```
# different panels per Subject
plot(Orthodont)
# different panels per gender
plot(Orthodont, outer = TRUE)
```

---

plot.nmGroupedData *Plot an nmGroupedData Object*

Description

The groupedData object is summarized by the values of the displayLevel grouping factor (or the combination of its values and the values of the covariate indicated in preserve, if any is present). The collapsed data is used to produce a new groupedData object, with grouping factor given by the displayLevel factor, which is plotted using the appropriate plot method for groupedData objects with single level of grouping.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nmGroupedData
plot(x, collapseLevel, displayLevel, outer, inner,
    preserve, FUN, subset, key, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class nmGroupedData, representing a groupedData object with multiple grouping factors.
collapseLevel	an optional positive integer or character string indicating the grouping level to use when collapsing the data. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping. Default is the highest or innermost level of grouping.
displayLevel	an optional positive integer or character string indicating the grouping level to use for determining the panels in the Trellis display, when outer is missing. Default is collapseLevel.
outer	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating covariates that are outer to the displayLevel grouping factor, which are used to determine the panels of the Trellis plot. If equal to TRUE, the displayLevel element attr(object, "outer") is used to indicate the outer covariates. An outer covariate is invariant within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Ordering of the groups is done in such a way as to preserve adjacency of groups with the same value of the outer variables. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no outer covariates are to be used.
inner	an optional logical value or one-sided formula, indicating a covariate that is inner to the displayLevel grouping factor, which is used to associate points within each panel of the Trellis plot. If equal to TRUE, attr(object, "outer") is used to indicate the inner covariate. An inner covariate can change within the sets of rows defined by the grouping factor. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no inner covariate is present.
preserve	an optional one-sided formula indicating a covariate whose levels should be preserved when collapsing the data according to the collapseLevel grouping factor. The collapsing factor is obtained by pasting together the levels of the collapseLevel grouping factor and the values of the covariate to be preserved. Default is NULL, meaning that no covariates need to be preserved.
FUN	an optional summary function or a list of summary functions to be used for collapsing the data. The function or functions are applied only to variables in object that vary within the groups defined by collapseLevel. Invariant variables are always summarized by group using the unique value that they assume within that group. If FUN is a single function it will be applied to each non-invariant variable by group to produce the summary for that variable. If FUN is a list of functions, the names in the list should designate classes of variables in the data such as ordered, factor, or numeric. The indicated function will be applied to any non-invariant variables of that class. The default functions to be used are mean for numeric factors, and Mode for both factor and ordered. The Mode function, defined internally in gsummary, returns the modal or most popular value of the variable. It is different from the mode function that returns the S-language mode of the variable.
subset	an optional named list. Names can be either positive integers representing grouping levels, or names of grouping factors. Each element in the list is a vector indicating the levels of the corresponding grouping factor to be used for plotting the data. Default is NULL, meaning that all levels are used.

key	an optional logical value, or list. If TRUE, a legend is included at the top of the plot indicating which symbols (colors) correspond to which prediction levels. If FALSE, no legend is included. If given as a list, key is passed down as an argument to the trellis function generating the plots (xyplot). Defaults to TRUE.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is TRUE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a Trellis display of the data collapsed over the values of the collapseLevel grouping factor and grouped according to the displayLevel grouping factor.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Bates, D.M. and Pinheiro, J.C. (1997), "Software Design for Longitudinal Data", in "Modelling Longitudinal and Spatially Correlated Data: Methods, Applications and Future Directions", T.G. Gregoire (ed.), Springer-Verlag, New York.

See Also

groupedData, collapse.groupedData, plot.nfnGroupedData, plot.nffGroupedData

Examples

```
# no collapsing, panels by Dog
plot(Pixel, display = "Dog", inner = ~Side)
# collapsing by Dog, preserving day
plot(Pixel, collapse = "Dog", preserve = ~day)
```

---

plot.ranef.lme *Plot a ranef.lme Object*

Description

If form is missing, or is given as a one-sided formula, a Trellis dot-plot of the random effects is generated, with a different panel for each random effect (coefficient). Rows in the dot-plot are determined by the form argument (if not missing) or by the row names of the random effects (coefficients). If a single factor is specified in form, its levels determine the dot-plot rows (with possibly multiple dots per row); otherwise, if form specifies a crossing of factors, the dot-plot rows are determined by all combinations of the levels of the individual factors in the formula. The Trellis function dotplot is used in this method function.

If form is a two-sided formula, a Trellis display is generated, with a different panel for each variable listed in the right hand side of form. Scatter plots are generated for numeric variables and boxplots are generated for categorical (factor or ordered) variables.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ranef.lme
plot(x, form, omitFixed, level, grid, control, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "ranef.lme", representing the estimated coefficients or estimated random effects for the lme object from which it was produced.
form	an optional formula specifying the desired type of plot. If given as a one-sided formula, a dotplot of the estimated random effects (coefficients) grouped according to all combinations of the levels of the factors named in form is returned. Single factors (~g) or crossed factors (~g1*g2) are allowed. If given as a two-sided formula, the left hand side must be a single random effects (coefficient) and the right hand side is formed by covariates in x separated by +. A Trellis display of the random effect (coefficient) versus the named covariates is returned in this case. Default is NULL, in which case the row names of the random effects (coefficients) are used.
omitFixed	an optional logical value indicating whether columns with values that are constant across groups should be omitted. Default is TRUE.
level	an optional integer value giving the level of grouping to be used for x. Only used when x is a list with different components for each grouping level. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Only applies to plots associated with two-sided formulas in form. Default is FALSE.
control	an optional list with control values for the plot, when form is given as a two-sided formula. The control values are referenced by name in the control list and only the ones to be modified from the default need to be specified. Available values include: drawLine, a logical value indicating whether a loess smoother should be added to the scatter plots and a line connecting the medians should be added to the boxplots (default is TRUE); span.loess, used as the span argument in the call to panel.loess (default is 2/3); degree.loess, used as the degree argument in the call to panel.loess (default is 1); cex.axis, the character expansion factor for the x-axis (default is 0.8); srt.axis, the rotation factor for the x-axis (default is 0); and mgp.axis, the margin parameters for the x-axis (default is c(2, 0.5, 0)).
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis dotplot function.

Value

a Trellis plot of the estimated random-effects (coefficients) versus covariates, or groups.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

ranef.lme, lme, dotplot

Examples

```
## Not run:
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
plot(ranef(fm1))
fm1RE <- ranef(fm1, aug = TRUE)
plot(fm1RE, form = ~ Sex)
plot(fm1RE, form = age ~ Sex)

## End(Not run)
```

`plot.ranef.lmList` *Plot a ranef.lmList Object*

Description

If `form` is missing, or is given as a one-sided formula, a Trellis dot-plot of the random effects is generated, with a different panel for each random effect (coefficient). Rows in the dot-plot are determined by the `form` argument (if not missing) or by the row names of the random effects (coefficients). If a single factor is specified in `form`, its levels determine the dot-plot rows (with possibly multiple dots per row); otherwise, if `form` specifies a crossing of factors, the dot-plot rows are determined by all combinations of the levels of the individual factors in the formula. The Trellis function `dotplot` is used in this method function.

If `form` is a two-sided formula, a Trellis display is generated, with a different panel for each variable listed in the right hand side of `form`. Scatter plots are generated for numeric variables and boxplots are generated for categorical (`factor` or `ordered`) variables.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class ranef.lmList
plot(x, form, grid, control, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object inheriting from class `"ranef.lmList"`, representing the estimated coefficients or estimated random effects for the `lmList` object from which it was produced.
`form`	an optional formula specifying the desired type of plot. If given as a one-sided formula, a `dotplot` of the estimated random effects (coefficients) grouped according to all combinations of the levels of the factors named in `form` is returned. Single factors (`~g`) or crossed factors (`~g1*g2`) are allowed. If given as a two-sided formula, the left hand side must be a single random effects (coefficient) and the right hand side is formed by covariates in `x` separated by `+`. A Trellis display of the random effect (coefficient) versus the named covariates is returned in this case. Default is `NULL`, in which case the row names of the random effects (coefficients) are used.
`grid`	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Only applies to plots associated with two-sided formulas in `form`. Default is `FALSE`.
`control`	an optional list with control values for the plot, when `form` is given as a two-sided formula. The control values are referenced by name in the `control` list and only the ones to be modified from the default need to be specified. Available

values include: drawLine, a logical value indicating whether a loess smoother should be added to the scatter plots and a line connecting the medians should be added to the boxplots (default is TRUE); span.loess, used as the span argument in the call to panel.loess (default is 2/3); degree.loess, used as the degree argument in the call to panel.loess (default is 1); cex.axis, the character expansion factor for the x-axis (default is 0.8); srt.axis, the rotation factor for the x-axis (default is 0); and mgp.axis, the margin parameters for the x-axis (default is c(2, 0.5, 0)).

... optional arguments passed to the Trellis dotplot function.

Value

a Trellis plot of the estimated random-effects (coefficients) versus covariates, or groups.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList, dotplot

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
plot(ranef(fm1))
fm1RE <- ranef(fm1, aug = TRUE)
plot(fm1RE, form = ~ Sex)
## Not run: plot(fm1RE, form = age ~ Sex)
```

---

plot.Variogram *Plot a Variogram Object*

Description

an xyplot of the semi-variogram versus the distances is produced. If smooth = TRUE, a loess smoother is added to the plot. If showModel = TRUE and x includes an "modelVariog" attribute, the corresponding semi-variogram is added to the plot.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class Variogram
plot(x, smooth, showModel, sigma, span, xlab,
     ylab, type, ylim, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

x an object inheriting from class "Variogram", consisting of a data frame with two columns named variog and dist, representing the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances.

smooth an optional logical value controlling whether a loess smoother should be added to the plot. Defaults to TRUE, when showModel is FALSE.

showModel	an optional logical value controlling whether the semi-variogram corresponding to an "modelVariog" attribute of x, if any is present, should be added to the plot. Defaults to TRUE, when the "modelVariog" attribute is present.
sigma	an optional numeric value used as the height of a horizontal line displayed in the plot. Can be used to represent the process standard deviation. Default is NULL, implying that no horizontal line is drawn.
span	an optional numeric value with the smoothing parameter for the loess fit. Default is 0.6.
xlab,ylab	optional character strings with the x- and y-axis labels. Default respectively to "Distance" and "SemiVariogram".
type	an optional character indicating the type of plot. Defaults to "p".
ylim	an optional numeric vector with the limits for the y-axis. Defaults to c(0, max(x$variog)).
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis xyplot function.

Value

an xyplot Trellis plot.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

Variogram, xyplot, loess

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary)
plot(Variogram(fm1, form = ~ Time | Mare, maxDist = 0.7))
```

---

pooledSD *Extract Pooled Standard Deviation*

Description

The pooled estimated standard deviation is obtained by adding together the residual sum of squares for each non-null element of object, dividing by the sum of the corresponding residual degrees-of-freedom, and taking the square-root.

Usage

```
pooledSD(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class lmList.

Value

the pooled standard deviation for the non-null elements of `object`, with an attribute `df` with the number of degrees-of-freedom used in the estimation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lmList`, `lm`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(Orthodont)
pooledSD(fm1)
```

---

predict.gls *Predictions from a gls Object*

Description

The predictions for the linear model represented by `object` are obtained at the covariate values defined in `newdata`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
predict(object, newdata, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "`gls`", representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model.
`newdata`	an optional data frame to be used for obtaining the predictions. All variables used in the linear model must be present in the data frame. If missing, the fitted values are returned.
`na.action`	a function that indicates what should happen when `newdata` contains `NA`s. The default action (`na.fail`) causes the function to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the predicted values.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
newOvary <- data.frame(Time = c(-0.75, -0.5, 0, 0.5, 0.75))
predict(fm1, newOvary)
```

---

predict.gnls *Predictions from a gnls Object*

Description

The predictions for the nonlinear model represented by `object` are obtained at the covariate values defined in `newdata`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gnls
predict(object, newdata, na.action, naPattern, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "gnls", representing a generalized nonlinear least squares fitted model.
`newdata`	an optional data frame to be used for obtaining the predictions. All variables used in the nonlinear model must be present in the data frame. If missing, the fitted values are returned.
`na.action`	a function that indicates what should happen when `newdata` contains `NA`s. The default action (`na.fail`) causes the function to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
`naPattern`	an expression or formula object, specifying which returned values are to be regarded as missing.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the predicted values.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gnls

Examples

```
fm1 <- gnls(weight ~ SSlogis(Time, Asym, xmid, scal), Soybean,
            weights = varPower())
newSoybean <- data.frame(Time = c(10,30,50,80,100))
predict(fm1, newSoybean)
```

`predict.lme` *Predictions from an lme Object*

Description

The predictions at level i are obtained by adding together the population predictions (based only on the fixed effects estimates) and the estimated contributions of the random effects to the predictions at grouping levels less or equal to i. The resulting values estimate the best linear unbiased predictions (BLUPs) at level i. If group values not included in the original grouping factors are present in `newdata`, the corresponding predictions will be set to `NA` for levels greater or equal to the level at which the unknown groups occur.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
predict(object, newdata, level, asList, na.action, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "`lme`", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
`newdata`	an optional data frame to be used for obtaining the predictions. All variables used in the fixed and random effects models, as well as the grouping factors, must be present in the data frame. If missing, the fitted values are returned.
`level`	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in obtaining the predictions. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population predictions. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
`asList`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE` and a single value is given in `level`, the returned object is a list with the predictions split by groups; else the returned value is either a vector or a data frame, according to the length of `level`.
`na.action`	a function that indicates what should happen when `newdata` contains `NA`s. The default action (`na.fail`) causes the function to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

if a single level of grouping is specified in `level`, the returned value is either a list with the predictions split by groups (`asList = TRUE`) or a vector with the predictions (`asList = FALSE`); else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in `level`, the returned object is a data frame with columns given by the predictions at different levels and the grouping factors.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, fitted.lme

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
newOrth <- data.frame(Sex = c("Male","Male","Female","Female","Male","Male"),
                      age = c(15, 20, 10, 12, 2, 4),
                      Subject = c("M01","M01","F30","F30","M04","M04"))
predict(fm1, newOrth, level = 0:1)
```

---

predict.lmList *Predictions from an lmList Object*

Description

If the grouping factor corresponding to object is included in newdata, the data frame is partitioned according to the grouping factor levels; else, newdata is repeated for all lm components. The predictions and, optionally, the standard errors for the predictions, are obtained for each lm component of object, using the corresponding element of the partitioned newdata, and arranged into a list with as many components as object, or combined into a single vector or data frame (if se.fit=TRUE).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
predict(object, newdata, subset, pool, asList, se.fit, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmList", representing a list of lm objects with a common model.
newdata	an optional data frame to be used for obtaining the predictions. All variables used in the object model formula must be present in the data frame. If missing, the same data frame used to produce object is used.
subset	an optional character or integer vector naming the lm components of object from which the predictions are to be extracted. Default is NULL, in which case all components are used.
asList	an optional logical value. If TRUE, the returned object is a list with the predictions split by groups; else the returned value is a vector. Defaults to FALSE.
pool	an optional logical value indicating whether a pooled estimate of the residual standard error should be used. Default is attr(object, "pool").
se.fit	an optional logical value indicating whether pointwise standard errors should be computed along with the predictions. Default is FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with components given by the predictions (and, optionally, the standard errors for the predictions) from each `lm` component of `object`, a vector with the predictions from all `lm` components of `object`, or a data frame with columns given by the predictions and their corresponding standard errors.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lmList`, `predict.lm`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
predict(fm1, se.fit = TRUE)
```

---

predict.nlme *Predictions from an nlme Object*

Description

The predictions at level i are obtained by adding together the contributions from the estimated fixed effects and the estimated random effects at levels less or equal to i and evaluating the model function at the resulting estimated parameters. If group values not included in the original grouping factors are present in `newdata`, the corresponding predictions will be set to `NA` for levels greater or equal to the level at which the unknown groups occur.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nlme
predict(object, newdata, level, asList, na.action,
naPattern, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"nlme"`, representing a fitted nonlinear mixed-effects model.
`newdata`	an optional data frame to be used for obtaining the predictions. All variables used in the nonlinear model, the fixed and the random effects models, as well as the grouping factors, must be present in the data frame. If missing, the fitted values are returned.
`level`	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in obtaining the predictions. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population predictions. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
`asList`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE` and a single value is given in `level`, the returned object is a list with the predictions split by groups; else the returned value is either a vector or a data frame, according to the length of `level`.

na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when newdata contains NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes the function to print an error message and terminate if there are any incomplete observations.
naPattern	an expression or formula object, specifying which returned values are to be regarded as missing.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

if a single level of grouping is specified in level, the returned value is either a list with the predictions split by groups (asList = TRUE) or a vector with the predictions (asList = FALSE); else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in level, the returned object is a data frame with columns given by the predictions at different levels and the grouping factors.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

nlme, fitted.lme

Examples

```
fm1 <- nlme(height ~ SSasymp(age, Asym, R0, lrc),
            data = Loblolly,
            fixed = Asym + R0 + lrc ~ 1,
            random = Asym ~ 1,
            start = c(Asym = 103, R0 = -8.5, lrc = -3.3))
newLoblolly <- data.frame(age = c(5,10,15,20,25,30),
                    Seed = rep(301,6))
predict(fm1, newLoblolly, level = 0:1)
```

---

print.summary.pdMat *Print a summary.pdMat Object*

Description

The standard deviations and correlations associated with the positive-definite matrix represented by object (considered as a variance-covariance matrix) are printed, together with the formula and the grouping level associated object, if any are present.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class summary.pdMat
print(x, sigma, rdig, Level, resid, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "summary.pdMat", generally resulting from applying summary to an object inheriting from class "pdMat".
sigma	an optional numeric value used as a multiplier for the square-root factor of the positive-definite matrix represented by object (usually the estimated within-group standard deviation from a mixed-effects model). Defaults to 1.
rdig	an optional integer value with the number of significant digits to be used in printing correlations. Defaults to 3.
Level	an optional character string with a description of the grouping level associated with object (generally corresponding to levels of grouping in a mixed-effects model). Defaults to NULL.
resid	an optional logical value. If TRUE an extra row with the "residual" standard deviation given in sigma will be included in the output. Defaults to FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to print.default; see the documentation on that method function.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

summary.pdMat,pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdCompSymm(3 * diag(2) + 1, form = ~age + age^2,
         data = Orthodont)
print(summary(pd1), sigma = 1.2, resid = TRUE)
```

---

print.varFunc *Print a varFunc Object*

Description

The class and the coefficients associated with x are printed.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "varFunc", representing a variance function structure.
...	optional arguments passed to print.default; see the documentation on that method function.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

summary.varFunc

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(0.3, form = ~age)
vf1 <- Initialize(vf1, Orthodont)
print(vf1)
```

---

qqnorm.gls *Normal Plot of Residuals from a gls Object*

Description

Diagnostic plots for assessing the normality of residuals the generalized least squares fit are obtained. The form argument gives considerable flexibility in the type of plot specification. A conditioning expression (on the right side of a | operator) always implies that different panels are used for each level of the conditioning factor, according to a Trellis display.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
qqnorm(y, form, abline, id, idLabels, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

y	an object inheriting from class "gls", representing a generalized least squares fitted model.
form	an optional one-sided formula specifying the desired type of plot. Any variable present in the original data frame used to obtain y can be referenced. In addition, y itself can be referenced in the formula using the symbol ".". Conditional expressions on the right of a | operator can be used to define separate panels in a Trellis display. The expression on the right hand side of form and to the left of a | operator must evaluate to a residuals vector. Default is ~ resid(., type = "p"), corresponding to a normal plot of the standardized residuals.
abline	an optional numeric value, or numeric vector of length two. If given as a single value, a horizontal line will be added to the plot at that coordinate; else, if given as a vector, its values are used as the intercept and slope for a line added to the plot. If missing, no lines are added to the plot.
id	an optional numeric value, or one-sided formula. If given as a value, it is used as a significance level for a two-sided outlier test for the standardized residuals (random effects). Observations with absolute standardized residuals (random effects) greater than the $1 - value/2$ quantile of the standard normal distribution are identified in the plot using idLabels. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a logical, integer, or character vector which is used to identify observations in the plot. If missing, no observations are identified.

idLabels	an optional vector, or one-sided formula. If given as a vector, it is converted to character and used to label the observations identified according to id. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a vector which is converted to character and used to label the identified observations. Default is the innermost grouping factor.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default depends on the type of Trellis plot used: if xyplot defaults to TRUE, else defaults to FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a diagnostic Trellis plot for assessing normality of residuals.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls, plot.gls

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
qqnorm(fm1, abline = c(0,1))
```

---

qqnorm.lme *Normal Plot of Residuals or Random Effects from an lme Object*

Description

Diagnostic plots for assessing the normality of residuals and random effects in the linear mixed-effects fit are obtained. The form argument gives considerable flexibility in the type of plot specification. A conditioning expression (on the right side of a | operator) always implies that different panels are used for each level of the conditioning factor, according to a Trellis display.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
qqnorm(y, form, abline, id, idLabels, grid, ...)
```

Arguments

y	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model or from class "lmList", representing a list of lm objects, or from class "lm", representing a fitted linear model, or from class "nls", representing a nonlinear least squares fitted model.

form	an optional one-sided formula specifying the desired type of plot. Any variable present in the original data frame used to obtain y can be referenced. In addition, y itself can be referenced in the formula using the symbol ".". Conditional expressions on the right of a | operator can be used to define separate panels in a Trellis display. The expression on the right hand side of form and to the left of a | operator must evaluate to a residuals vector, or a random effects matrix. Default is ~ resid(., type = "p"), corresponding to a normal plot of the standardized residuals evaluated at the innermost level of nesting.
abline	an optional numeric value, or numeric vector of length two. If given as a single value, a horizontal line will be added to the plot at that coordinate; else, if given as a vector, its values are used as the intercept and slope for a line added to the plot. If missing, no lines are added to the plot.
id	an optional numeric value, or one-sided formula. If given as a value, it is used as a significance level for a two-sided outlier test for the standardized residuals (random effects). Observations with absolute standardized residuals (random effects) greater than the $1 - value/2$ quantile of the standard normal distribution are identified in the plot using idLabels. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a logical, integer, or character vector which is used to identify observations in the plot. If missing, no observations are identified.
idLabels	an optional vector, or one-sided formula. If given as a vector, it is converted to character and used to label the observations identified according to id. If given as a one-sided formula, its right hand side must evaluate to a vector which is converted to character and used to label the identified observations. Default is the innermost grouping factor.
grid	an optional logical value indicating whether a grid should be added to plot. Default is FALSE.
...	optional arguments passed to the Trellis plot function.

Value

a diagnostic Trellis plot for assessing normality of residuals or random effects.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, plot.lme

Examples

```
## Not run:
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
# normal plot of standardized residuals by gender
qqnorm(fm1, ~ resid(., type = "p") | Sex, abline = c(0, 1))
# normal plots of random effects
qqnorm(fm1, ~ranef(.))

## End(Not run)
```

`Quinidine` *Quinidine Kinetics*

Description

The `Quinidine` data frame has 1471 rows and 14 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Subject a factor identifying the patient on whom the data were collected.

time a numeric vector giving the time (hr) at which the drug was administered or the blood sample drawn. This is measured from the time the patient entered the study.

conc a numeric vector giving the serum quinidine concentration (mg/L).

dose a numeric vector giving the dose of drug administered (mg). Although there were two different forms of quinidine administered, the doses were adjusted for differences in salt content by conversion to milligrams of quinidine base.

interval a numeric vector giving the when the drug has been given at regular intervals for a sufficiently long period of time to assume steady state behavior, the interval is recorded.

Age a numeric vector giving the age of the subject on entry to the study (yr).

Height a numeric vector giving the height of the subject on entry to the study (in.).

Weight a numeric vector giving the body weight of the subject (kg).

Race a factor with levels `Caucasian`, `Latin`, and `Black` identifying the race of the subject.

Smoke a factor with levels `no` and `yes` giving smoking status at the time of the measurement.

Ethanol a factor with levels `none`, `current`, `former` giving ethanol (alcohol) abuse status at the time of the measurement.

Heart a factor with levels `No/Mild`, `Moderate`, and `Severe` indicating congestive heart failure for the subject.

Creatinine an ordered factor with levels `< 50` < `>= 50` indicating the creatine clearance (mg/min).

glyco a numeric vector giving the alpha-1 acid glycoprotein concentration (mg/dL). Often measured at the same time as the quinidine concentration.

Details

Verme et al. (1992) analyze routine clinical data on patients receiving the drug quinidine as a treatment for cardiac arrythmia (atrial fibrillation of ventricular arrythmias). All patients were receiving oral quinidine doses. At irregular intervals blood samples were drawn and serum concentrations of quinidine were determined. These data are analyzed in several publications, including Davidian and Giltinan (1995, section 9.3).

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.25)

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995), *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman and Hall, London.

Verme, C. N., Ludden, T. M., Clementi, W. A. and Harris, S. C. (1992), Pharmacokinetics of quinidine in male patients: A population analysis, *Clinical Pharmacokinetics*, **22**, 468-480.

quinModel *Model function for the Quinidine data*

Description

A model function for a model used with the Quinidine data. This function calls compiled C code.

Usage

```
quinModel(Subject, time, conc, dose, interval, lV, lKa, lCl)
```

Arguments

Subject	a factor identifying the patient on whom the data were collected.
time	a numeric vector giving the time (hr) at which the drug was administered or the blood sample drawn. This is measured from the time the patient entered the study.
conc	a numeric vector giving the serum quinidine concentration (mg/L).
dose	a numeric vector giving the dose of drug administered (mg). Although there were two different forms of quinidine administered, the doses were adjusted for differences in salt content by conversion to milligrams of quinidine base.
interval	a numeric vector giving the when the drug has been given at regular intervals for a sufficiently long period of time to assume steady state behavior, the interval is recorded.
lV	numeric. A vector of values of the natural log of the effective volume of distribution according to Subject and time.
lKa	numeric. A vector of values of the natural log of the absorption rate constant according to Subject and time.
lCl	numeric. A vector of values of the natural log of the clearance parameter according to Subject and time.

Details

See the details section of Quinidine for a description of the model function that quinModel evaluates.

Value

a numeric vector of predicted quinidine concentrations.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000) *Mixed-effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer. (section 8.2)

Rail — *Evaluation of Stress in Railway Rails*

Description

The `Rail` data frame has 18 rows and 2 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Rail an ordered factor identifying the rail on which the measurement was made.

travel a numeric vector giving the travel time for ultrasonic head-waves in the rail (nanoseconds). The value given is the original travel time minus 36,100 nanoseconds.

Details

Devore (2000, Example 10.10, p. 427) cites data from an article in *Materials Evaluation* on "a study of travel time for a certain type of wave that results from longitudinal stress of rails used for railroad track."

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.26)

Devore, J. L. (2000), *Probability and Statistics for Engineering and the Sciences (5th ed)*, Duxbury, Boston, MA.

random.effects — *Extract Random Effects*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include `lmList` and `lme`.

Usage

```
random.effects(object, ...)
ranef(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	any fitted model object from which random effects estimates can be extracted.
`...`	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 100, 461.

See Also

ranef.lmList,ranef.lme

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

---

ranef.lme *Extract lme Random Effects*

Description

The estimated random effects at level i are represented as a data frame with rows given by the different groups at that level and columns given by the random effects. If a single level of grouping is specified, the returned object is a data frame; else, the returned object is a list of such data frames. Optionally, the returned data frame(s) may be augmented with covariates summarized over groups.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
ranef(object, augFrame, level, data, which, FUN,
      standard, omitGroupingFactor, subset, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
augFrame	an optional logical value. If TRUE, the returned data frame is augmented with variables defined in data; else, if FALSE, only the coefficients are returned. Defaults to FALSE.
level	an optional vector of positive integers giving the levels of grouping to be used in extracting the random effects from an object with multiple nested grouping levels. Defaults to all levels of grouping.
data	an optional data frame with the variables to be used for augmenting the returned data frame when augFrame = TRUE. Defaults to the data frame used to fit object.
which	an optional positive integer vector specifying which columns of data should be used in the augmentation of the returned data frame. Defaults to all columns in data.
FUN	an optional summary function or a list of summary functions to be applied to group-varying variables, when collapsing data by groups. Group-invariant variables are always summarized by the unique value that they assume within that group. If FUN is a single function it will be applied to each non-invariant variable by group to produce the summary for that variable. If FUN is a list of functions, the names in the list should designate classes of variables in the frame such as

ordered, factor, or numeric. The indicated function will be applied to any group-varying variables of that class. The default functions to be used are mean for numeric factors, and Mode for both factor and ordered. The Mode function, defined internally in gsummary, returns the modal or most popular value of the variable. It is different from the mode function that returns the S-language mode of the variable.

standard — an optional logical value indicating whether the estimated random effects should be "standardized" (i.e. divided by the estimate of the standard deviation of that group of random effects). Defaults to FALSE.

omitGroupingFactor — an optional logical value. When TRUE the grouping factor itself will be omitted from the group-wise summary of data but the levels of the grouping factor will continue to be used as the row names for the returned data frame. Defaults to FALSE.

subset — an optional expression indicating for which rows the random effects should be extracted.

... — some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame, or list of data frames, with the estimated random effects at the grouping level(s) specified in level and, optionally, other covariates summarized over groups. The returned object inherits from classes random.effects.lme and data.frame.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 100, 461.

See Also

coef.lme, gsummary, lme, plot.ranef.lme, random.effects

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
ranef(fm1)
random.effects(fm1)             # same as above
random.effects(fm1, augFrame = TRUE)
```

`ranef.lmList` *Extract lmList Random Effects*

Description

The difference between the individual `lm` components coefficients and their average is calculated.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
ranef(object, augFrame, data, which, FUN, standard,
                omitGroupingFactor, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "`lmList`", representing a list of `lm` objects with a common model.
`augFrame`	an optional logical value. If `TRUE`, the returned data frame is augmented with variables defined in `data`; else, if `FALSE`, only the coefficients are returned. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`data`	an optional data frame with the variables to be used for augmenting the returned data frame when `augFrame = TRUE`. Defaults to the data frame used to fit `object`.
`which`	an optional positive integer vector specifying which columns of `data` should be used in the augmentation of the returned data frame. Defaults to all columns in `data`.
`FUN`	an optional summary function or a list of summary functions to be applied to group-varying variables, when collapsing `data` by groups. Group-invariant variables are always summarized by the unique value that they assume within that group. If `FUN` is a single function it will be applied to each non-invariant variable by group to produce the summary for that variable. If `FUN` is a list of functions, the names in the list should designate classes of variables in the frame such as `ordered`, `factor`, or `numeric`. The indicated function will be applied to any group-varying variables of that class. The default functions to be used are `mean` for numeric factors, and `Mode` for both `factor` and `ordered`. The `Mode` function, defined internally in `gsummary`, returns the modal or most popular value of the variable. It is different from the `mode` function that returns the S-language mode of the variable.
`standard`	an optional logical value indicating whether the estimated random effects should be "standardized" (i.e. divided by the corresponding estimated standard error). Defaults to `FALSE`.
`omitGroupingFactor`	an optional logical value. When `TRUE` the grouping factor itself will be omitted from the group-wise summary of `data` but the levels of the grouping factor will continue to be used as the row names for the returned data frame. Defaults to `FALSE`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the differences between the individual `lm` coefficients in `object` and their average.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 100, 461.

See Also

`fixed.effects.lmList`, `lmList`, `random.effects`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
ranef(fm1)
random.effects(fm1)              # same as above
```

RatPupWeight *The weight of rat pups*

Description

The `RatPupWeight` data frame has 322 rows and 5 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

weight a numeric vector

sex a factor with levels `Male` `Female`

Litter an ordered factor with levels 9 < 8 < 7 < 4 < 2 < 10 < 1 < 3 < 5 < 6 < 21 < 22 < 24 < 27 < 26 < 25 < 23 < 17 < 11 < 14 < 13 < 15 < 16 < 20 < 19 < 18 < 12

Lsize a numeric vector

Treatment an ordered factor with levels `Control` < `Low` < `High`

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

recalc *Recalculate Condensed Linear Model Object*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include: corStruct, modelStruct, reStruct, and varFunc.

Usage

```
recalc(object, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

object	any object which induces a recalculation of the condensed linear model object conLin.
conLin	a condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying model.
...	some methods for this generic can take additional arguments.

Value

the recalculated condensed linear model object.

Note

This function is only used inside model fitting functions, such as lme and gls, that require recalculation of a condensed linear model object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

recalc.corStruct, recalc.modelStruct, recalc.reStruct, recalc.varFunc

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

`recalc.corStruct` *Recalculate for corStruct Object*

Description

This method function pre-multiples the `"Xy"` component of `conLin` by the transpose square-root factor(s) of the correlation matrix (matrices) associated with `object` and adds the log-likelihood contribution of `object`, given by `logLik(object)`, to the `"logLik"` component of `conLin`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
recalc(object, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corStruct"`, representing a correlation structure.
`conLin`	a condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components `"Xy"`, corresponding to a regression matrix (`X`) combined with a response vector (`y`), and `"logLik"`, corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying model.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the recalculated condensed linear model object.

Note

This method function is only used inside model fitting functions, such as `lme` and `gls`, that allow correlated error terms.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`corFactor`, `logLik.corStruct`

`recalc.modelStruct` *Recalculate for a modelStruct Object*

Description

This method function recalculates the condensed linear model object using each element of `object` sequentially from last to first.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class modelStruct
recalc(object, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"modelStruct"`, representing a list of model components, such as `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects.
`conLin`	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components `"Xy"`, corresponding to a regression matrix (`X`) combined with a response vector (`y`), and `"logLik"`, corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying model. Defaults to `attr(object, "conLin")`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the recalculated condensed linear model object.

Note

This method function is generally only used inside model fitting functions, such as `lme` and `gls`, that allow model components, such as correlated error terms and variance functions.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`recalc.corStruct`, `recalc.reStruct`, `recalc.varFunc`

recalc.reStruct *Recalculate for an reStruct Object*

Description

The log-likelihood, or restricted log-likelihood, of the Gaussian linear mixed-effects model represented by `object` and `conLin` (assuming spherical within-group covariance structure), evaluated at `coef(object)` is calculated and added to the `logLik` component of `conLin`. The `settings` attribute of `object` determines whether the log-likelihood, or the restricted log-likelihood, is to be calculated. The computational methods for the (restricted) log-likelihood calculations are described in Bates and Pinheiro (1998).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
recalc(object, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"reStruct"`, representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of `pdMat` objects.
`conLin`	a condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components `"Xy"`, corresponding to a regression matrix (`X`) combined with a response vector (`y`), and `"logLik"`, corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying model.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the condensed linear model with its `logLik` component updated.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`logLik`, `lme`, `recalc`, `reStruct`

recalc.varFunc *Recalculate for varFunc Object*

Description

This method function pre-multiples the `"Xy"` component of `conLin` by a diagonal matrix with diagonal elements given by the weights corresponding to the variance structure represented by `objecte` and adds the log-likelihood contribution of `object`, given by `logLik(object)`, to the `"logLik"` component of `conLin`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
recalc(object, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "varFunc", representing a variance function structure.
conLin	a condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying model.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

the recalculated condensed linear model object.

Note

This method function is only used inside model fitting functions, such as lme and gls, that allow heteroscedastic error terms.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

recalc, varWeights, logLik.varFunc

Relaxin *Assay for Relaxin*

Description

The Relaxin data frame has 198 rows and 3 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Run an ordered factor with levels 5 < 8 < 9 < 3 < 4 < 2 < 7 < 1 < 6

conc a numeric vector

cAMP a numeric vector

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

Remifentanil *Pharmacokinetics of remifentanil*

Description

The `Remifentanil` data frame has 2107 rows and 12 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

ID a numeric vector

Subject an ordered factor

Time a numeric vector

conc a numeric vector

Rate a numeric vector

Amt a numeric vector

Age a numeric vector

Sex a factor with levels `Female` `Male`

Ht a numeric vector

Wt a numeric vector

BSA a numeric vector

LBM a numeric vector

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

residuals.gls *Extract gls Residuals*

Description

The residuals for the linear model represented by `object` are extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
residuals(object, type, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "gls", representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model, or from class gnls, representing a generalized nonlinear least squares fitted linear model.
type	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used. If "response", the "raw" residuals (observed - fitted) are used; else, if "pearson", the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if "normalized", the normalized residuals (standardized residuals pre-multiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to "response".
...	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the residuals for the linear model represented by object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gls

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
residuals(fm1)
```

---

residuals.glsStruct *Calculate glsStruct Residuals*

Description

The residuals for the linear model represented by object are extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glsStruct
residuals(object, glsFit, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"glsStruct"`, representing a list of linear model components, such as `corStruct` and `"varFunc"` objects.
`glsFit`	an optional list with components `logLik` (log-likelihood), `beta` (coefficients), `sigma` (standard deviation for error term), `varBeta` (coefficients' covariance matrix), `fitted` (fitted values), and `residuals` (residuals). Defaults to `attr(object, "glsFit")`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the residuals for the linear model represented by `object`.

Note

This method function is primarily used inside `gls` and `residuals.gls`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`gls`, `glsStruct`, `residuals.gls`, `fitted.glsStruct`

`residuals.gnlsStruct` *Calculate gnlsStruct Residuals*

Description

The residuals for the nonlinear model represented by `object` are extracted.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gnlsStruct
residuals(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"gnlsStruct"`, representing a list of model components, such as `corStruct` and `varFunc` objects, and attributes specifying the underlying nonlinear model and the response variable.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a vector with the residuals for the nonlinear model represented by `object`.

Note

This method function is primarily used inside gnls and residuals.gnls.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

gnls, residuals.gnls, fitted.gnlsStruct

---

residuals.lme *Extract lme Residuals*

Description

The residuals at level i are obtained by subtracting the fitted levels at that level from the response vector (and dividing by the estimated within-group standard error, if type="pearson"). The fitted values at level i are obtained by adding together the population fitted values (based only on the fixed effects estimates) and the estimated contributions of the random effects to the fitted values at grouping levels less or equal to i.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
residuals(object, level = Q,
          type = c("response", "pearson", "normalized"), asList = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
level	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in extracting the residuals from object. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population residuals. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
type	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used. If "response", as by default, the "raw" residuals (observed - fitted) are used; else, if "pearson", the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if "normalized", the normalized residuals (standardized residuals pre-multiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided.
asList	an optional logical value. If TRUE and a single value is given in level, the returned object is a list with the residuals split by groups; else the returned value is either a vector or a data frame, according to the length of level. Defaults to FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

if a single level of grouping is specified in `level`, the returned value is either a list with the residuals split by groups (`asList = TRUE`) or a vector with the residuals (`asList = FALSE`); else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in `level`, the returned object is a data frame with columns given by the residuals at different levels and the grouping factors. For a vector or data frame result the `naresid` method is applied.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`lme`, `fitted.lme`

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age + Sex, data = Orthodont, random = ~ 1)
head(residuals(fm1, level = 0:1))
summary(residuals(fm1) /
        residuals(fm1, type = "p")) # constant scaling factor 1.432
```

`residuals.lmeStruct` *Calculate lmeStruct Residuals*

Description

The residuals at level i are obtained by subtracting the fitted values at that level from the response vector. The fitted values at level i are obtained by adding together the population fitted values (based only on the fixed effects estimates) and the estimated contributions of the random effects to the fitted values at grouping levels less or equal to i.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmeStruct
residuals(object, level, conLin, lmeFit, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"lmeStruct"`, representing a list of linear mixed-effects model components, such as `reStruct`, `corStruct`, and `varFunc` objects.
`level`	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in extracting the residuals from `object`. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population fitted values. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
`conLin`	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components `"Xy"`, corresponding to a regression matrix (`X`) combined with a response vector (`y`), and `"logLik"`, corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying lme model. Defaults to `attr(object, "conLin")`.

lmeFit	an optional list with components beta and b containing respectively the fixed effects estimates and the random effects estimates to be used to calculate the residuals. Defaults to attr(object, "lmeFit").
...	some methods for this generic accept optional arguments.

Value

if a single level of grouping is specified in level, the returned value is a vector with the residuals at the desired level; else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in level, the returned object is a matrix with columns given by the residuals at different levels.

Note

This method function is primarily used within the lme function.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lme, residuals.lme, fitted.lmeStruct

---

residuals.lmList *Extract lmList Residuals*

Description

The residuals are extracted from each lm component of object and arranged into a list with as many components as object, or combined into a single vector.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
residuals(object, type, subset, asList, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmList", representing a list of lm objects with a common model.
subset	an optional character or integer vector naming the lm components of object from which the residuals are to be extracted. Default is NULL, in which case all components are used.
type	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be extracted. Options include "response" for the "raw" residuals (observed - fitted), "pearson" for the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the estimated residual standard error) using different standard errors for each lm fit, and "pooled.pearson" for the standardized residuals using a pooled estimate of the residual standard error. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to "response".

asList	an optional logical value. If TRUE, the returned object is a list with the residuals split by groups; else the returned value is a vector. Defaults to FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with components given by the residuals of each lm component of object, or a vector with the residuals for all lm components of object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList, fitted.lmList

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
residuals(fm1)
```

---

residuals.nlmeStruct *Calculate nlmeStruct Residuals*

Description

The residuals at level i are obtained by subtracting the fitted values at that level from the response vector. The fitted values at level i are obtained by adding together the contributions from the estimated fixed effects and the estimated random effects at levels less or equal to i and evaluating the model function at the resulting estimated parameters.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nlmeStruct
residuals(object, level, conLin, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "nlmeStruct", representing a list of mixed-effects model components, such as reStruct, corStruct, and varFunc objects.
level	an optional integer vector giving the level(s) of grouping to be used in extracting the residuals from object. Level values increase from outermost to innermost grouping, with level zero corresponding to the population fitted values. Defaults to the highest or innermost level of grouping.
conLin	an optional condensed linear model object, consisting of a list with components "Xy", corresponding to a regression matrix (X) combined with a response vector (y), and "logLik", corresponding to the log-likelihood of the underlying nlme model. Defaults to attr(object, "conLin").
...	optional arguments to the residuals generic. Not used.

Value

if a single level of grouping is specified in `level`, the returned value is a vector with the residuals at the desired level; else, when multiple grouping levels are specified in `level`, the returned object is a matrix with columns given by the residuals at different levels.

Note

This method function is primarily used within the `nlme` function.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Bates, D.M. and Pinheiro, J.C. (1998) "Computational methods for multilevel models" available in PostScript or PDF formats at http://nlme.stat.wisc.edu

See Also

`nlme`, `fitted.nlmeStruct`

---

reStruct *Random Effects Structure*

Description

This function is a constructor for the `reStruct` class, representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of `pdMat` objects, plus a `settings` attribute containing information for the optimization algorithm used to fit the associated mixed-effects model.

Usage

```
reStruct(object, pdClass, REML, data)
## S3 method for class reStruct
print(x, sigma, reEstimates, verbose, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	any of the following: (i) a one-sided formula of the form `~x1+...+xn | g1/.../gm`, with `x1+...+xn` specifying the model for the random effects and `g1/.../gm` the grouping structure (`m` may be equal to 1, in which case no `/` is required). The random effects formula will be repeated for all levels of grouping, in the case of multiple levels of grouping; (ii) a list of one-sided formulas of the form `~x1+...+xn | g`, with possibly different random effects models for each grouping level. The order of nesting will be assumed the same as the order of the elements in the list; (iii) a one-sided formula of the form `~x1+...+xn`, or a `pdMat` object with a formula (i.e. a non-`NULL` value for `formula(object)`), or a list of such formulas or `pdMat` objects. In this case, the grouping structure formula will be derived from the data used to to fit the mixed-effects model, which should inherit from class

groupedData; (iv) a named list of formulas or pdMat objects as in (iii), with the grouping factors as names. The order of nesting will be assumed the same as the order of the order of the elements in the list; (v) an reStruct object.

pdClass — an optional character string with the name of the pdMat class to be used for the formulas in object. Defaults to "pdSymm" which corresponds to a general positive-definite matrix.

REML — an optional logical value. If TRUE, the associated mixed-effects model will be fitted using restricted maximum likelihood; else, if FALSE, maximum likelihood will be used. Defaults to FALSE.

data — an optional data frame in which to evaluate the variables used in the random effects formulas in object. It is used to obtain the levels for factors, which affect the dimensions and the row/column names of the underlying pdMat objects. If NULL, no attempt is made to obtain information on factors appearing in the formulas. Defaults to the parent frame from which the function was called.

x — an object inheriting from class reStruct to be printed.

sigma — an optional numeric value used as a multiplier for the square-root factors of the pdMat components (usually the estimated within-group standard deviation from a mixed-effects model). Defaults to 1.

reEstimates — an optional list with the random effects estimates for each level of grouping. Only used when verbose = TRUE.

verbose — an optional logical value determining if the random effects estimates should be printed. Defaults to FALSE.

... — Optional arguments can be given to other methods for this generic. None are used in this method.

Value

an object inheriting from class reStruct, representing a random effects structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

groupedData, lme, pdMat, solve.reStruct, summary.reStruct, update.reStruct

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(Dog = ~day, Side = ~1), data = Pixel)
rs1
```

simulate.lme *Simulate Results from* lme *Models*

Description

The model object is fit to the data. Using the fitted values of the parameters, nsim new data vectors from this model are simulated. Both m1 and m2 are fit by maximum likelihood (ML) and/or by restricted maximum likelihood (REML) to each of the simulated data vectors.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
simulate(object, nsim, seed, m2, method, niterEM, useGen, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model, or a list containing an lme model specification. If given as a list, it should contain components fixed, data, and random with values suitable for a call to lme. This argument defines the null model.
m2	an lme object, or a list, like m1 containing a second lme model specification. This argument defines the alternative model. If given as a list, only those parts of the specification that change between model m1 and m2 need to be specified.
seed	an optional integer that is passed to set.seed. Defaults to a random integer.
method	an optional character array. If it includes "REML" the models are fit by maximizing the restricted log-likelihood. If it includes "ML" the log-likelihood is maximized. Defaults to c("REML", "ML"), in which case both methods are used.
nsim	an optional positive integer specifying the number of simulations to perform. Defaults to **1**. **This has changed. Previously the default was 1000.**
niterEM	an optional integer vector of length 2 giving the number of iterations of the EM algorithm to apply when fitting the m1 and m2 to each simulated set of data. Defaults to c(40,200).
useGen	an optional logical value. If TRUE, numerical derivatives are used to obtain the gradient and the Hessian of the log-likelihood in the optimization algorithm in the ms function. If FALSE, the default algorithm in ms for functions that do not incorporate gradient and Hessian attributes is used. Default depends on the "pdMat" classes used in m1 and m2: if both are standard classes (see pdClasses) then defaults to TRUE, otherwise defaults to FALSE.
...	optional additional arguments. None are used.

Value

an object of class simulate.lme with components null and alt. Each of these has components ML and/or REML which are matrices. An attribute called Random.seed contains the seed that was used for the random number generator.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

lme, set.seed

Examples

```
## Not run:
orthSim <-
   simulate.lme(list(fixed = distance ~ age, data = Orthodont,
                     random = ~ 1 | Subject), nsim = 1000,
                m2 = list(random = ~ age | Subject))

## End(Not run)
```

---

solve.pdMat *Calculate Inverse of a Positive-Definite Matrix*

Description

The positive-definite matrix represented by a is inverted and assigned to a.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
solve(a, b, ...)
```

Arguments

a	an object inheriting from class "pdMat", representing a positive definite matrix.
b	this argument is only included for consistency with the generic function and is not used in this method function.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a pdMat object similar to a, but with coefficients corresponding to the inverse of the positive-definite matrix represented by a.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdCompSymm(3 * diag(3) + 1)
solve(pd1)
```

`solve.reStruct` *Apply Solve to an reStruct Object*

Description

`Solve` is applied to each `pdMat` component of `a`, which results in inverting the positive-definite matrices they represent.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class reStruct
solve(a, b, ...)
```

Arguments

`a`	an object inheriting from class `"reStruct"`, representing a random effects structure and consisting of a list of `pdMat` objects.
`b`	this argument is only included for consistency with the generic function and is not used in this method function.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an `reStruct` object similar to `a`, but with the `pdMat` components representing the inverses of the matrices represented by the components of `a`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`solve.pdMat`, `reStruct`

Examples

```
rs1 <- reStruct(list(A = pdSymm(diag(1:3), form = ~Score),
  B = pdDiag(2 * diag(4), form = ~Educ)))
solve(rs1)
```

Soybean *Growth of soybean plants*

Description

The Soybean data frame has 412 rows and 5 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Plot a factor giving a unique identifier for each plot.

Variety a factor indicating the variety; Forrest (F) or Plant Introduction \#416937 (P).

Year a factor indicating the year the plot was planted.

Time a numeric vector giving the time the sample was taken (days after planting).

weight a numeric vector giving the average leaf weight per plant (g).

Details

These data are described in Davidian and Giltinan (1995, 1.1.3, p.7) as "Data from an experiment to compare growth patterns of two genotypes of soybeans: Plant Introduction \#416937 (P), an experimental strain, and Forrest (F), a commercial variety."

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.27)

Davidian, M. and Giltinan, D. M. (1995), *Nonlinear Models for Repeated Measurement Data*, Chapman and Hall, London.

Examples

```
summary(fm1 <- nlsList(SSlogis, data = Soybean))
```

splitFormula *Split a Formula*

Description

Splits the right hand side of form into a list of subformulas according to the presence of sep. The left hand side of form, if present, will be ignored. The length of the returned list will be equal to the number of occurrences of sep in form plus one.

Usage

```
splitFormula(form, sep)
```

Arguments

`form`	a `formula` object.
`sep`	an optional character string specifying the separator to be used for splitting the formula. Defaults to `"/"`.

Value

a list of formulas, corresponding to the split of `form` according to `sep`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`formula`

Examples

```
splitFormula(~ g1/g2/g3)
```

Spruce *Growth of Spruce Trees*

Description

The `Spruce` data frame has 1027 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Tree a factor giving a unique identifier for each tree.

days a numeric vector giving the number of days since the beginning of the experiment.

logSize a numeric vector giving the logarithm of an estimate of the volume of the tree trunk.

plot a factor identifying the plot in which the tree was grown.

Details

Diggle, Liang, and Zeger (1994, Example 1.3, page 5) describe data on the growth of spruce trees that have been exposed to an ozone-rich atmosphere or to a normal atmosphere.

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York. (Appendix A.28)

Diggle, Peter J., Liang, Kung-Yee and Zeger, Scott L. (1994), *Analysis of longitudinal data*, Oxford University Press, Oxford.

summary.corStruct *Summarize a corStruct Object*

Description

This method function prepares `object` to be printed using the `print.summary` method, by changing its class and adding a `structName` attribute to it.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corStruct
summary(object, structName, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corStruct"`, representing a correlation structure.
`structName`	an optional character string defining the type of correlation structure associated with `object`, to be used in the `print.summary` method. Defaults to `class(object)[1]`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object identical to `object`, but with its class changed to `summary.corStruct` and an additional attribute `structName`. The returned value inherits from the same classes as `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates

See Also

`corClasses`, `corNatural`, `Initialize.corStruct`, `summary`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corAR1(0.2)
summary(cs1)
```

summary.gls *Summarize a gls Object*

Description

Additional information about the linear model fit represented by object is extracted and included as components of object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
summary(object, verbose, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "gls", representing a generalized least squares fitted linear model.
verbose	an optional logical value used to control the amount of output when the object is printed. Defaults to FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object inheriting from class summary.gls with all components included in object (see glsObject for a full description of the components) plus the following components:

corBeta	approximate correlation matrix for the coefficients estimates
tTable	a data frame with columns Value, Std. Error, t-value, and p-value representing respectively the coefficients estimates, their approximate standard errors, the ratios between the estimates and their standard errors, and the associated p-value under a t approximation. Rows correspond to the different coefficients.
residuals	if more than five observations are used in the gls fit, a vector with the minimum, first quartile, median, third quartile, and maximum of the residuals distribution; else the residuals.
AIC	the Akaike Information Criterion corresponding to object.
BIC	the Bayesian Information Criterion corresponding to object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

AIC, BIC, gls, summary

Examples

```
fm1 <- gls(follicles ~ sin(2*pi*Time) + cos(2*pi*Time), Ovary,
           correlation = corAR1(form = ~ 1 | Mare))
summary(fm1)
```

summary.lme *Summarize an lme Object*

Description

Additional information about the linear mixed-effects fit represented by object is extracted and included as components of object. The returned object is suitable for printing with the print.summary.lme method.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
summary(object, adjustSigma, verbose, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lme", representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
adjustSigma	an optional logical value. If TRUE and the estimation method used to obtain object was maximum likelihood, the residual standard error is multiplied by $\sqrt{n_{obs}/(n_{obs} - n_{par})}$, converting it to a REML-like estimate. This argument is only used when a single fitted object is passed to the function. Default is TRUE.
verbose	an optional logical value used to control the amount of output in the print.summary.lme method. Defaults to FALSE.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object inheriting from class summary.lme with all components included in object (see lmeObject for a full description of the components) plus the following components:

corFixed	approximate correlation matrix for the fixed effects estimates
tTable	a data frame with columns Value, Std. Error, DF, t-value, and p-value representing respectively the fixed effects estimates, their approximate standard errors, the denominator degrees of freedom, the ratios between the estimates and their standard errors, and the associated p-value from a t distribution. Rows correspond to the different fixed effects.
residuals	if more than five observations are used in the lme fit, a vector with the minimum, first quartile, median, third quartile, and maximum of the innermost grouping level residuals distribution; else the innermost grouping level residuals.
AIC	the Akaike Information Criterion corresponding to object.
BIC	the Bayesian Information Criterion corresponding to object.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

AIC, BIC, lme, print.summary.lme

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, Orthodont, random = ~ age | Subject)
summary(fm1)
```

---

summary.lmList *Summarize an lmList Object*

Description

The summary.lm method is applied to each lm component of object to produce summary information on the individual fits, which is organized into a list of summary statistics. The returned object is suitable for printing with the print.summary.lmList method.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmList
summary(object, pool, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmList", representing a list of lm fitted objects.
pool	an optional logical value indicating whether a pooled estimate of the residual standard error should be used. Default is attr(object, "pool").
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with summary statistics obtained by applying summary.lm to the elements of object, inheriting from class summary.lmList. The components of value are:

call	a list containing an image of the lmList call that produced object.
coefficients	a three dimensional array with summary information on the lm coefficients. The first dimension corresponds to the names of the object components, the second dimension is given by "Value", "Std. Error", "t value", and "Pr(>|t|)", corresponding, respectively, to the coefficient estimates and their associated standard errors, t-values, and p-values. The third dimension is given by the coefficients names.
correlation	a three dimensional array with the correlations between the individual lm coefficient estimates. The first dimension corresponds to the names of the object components. The third dimension is given by the coefficients names. For each coefficient, the rows of the associated array give the correlations between that coefficient and the remaining coefficients, by lm component.

cov.unscaled	a three dimensional array with the unscaled variances/covariances for the individual lm coefficient estimates (giving the estimated variance/covariance for the coefficients, when multiplied by the estimated residual errors). The first dimension corresponds to the names of the object components. The third dimension is given by the coefficients names. For each coefficient, the rows of the associated array give the unscaled covariances between that coefficient and the remaining coefficients, by lm component.
df	an array with the number of degrees of freedom for the model and for residuals, for each lm component.
df.residual	the total number of degrees of freedom for residuals, corresponding to the sum of residuals df of all lm components.
fstatistics	an array with the F test statistics and corresponding degrees of freedom, for each lm component.
pool	the value of the pool argument to the function.
r.squared	a vector with the multiple R-squared statistics for each lm component.
residuals	a list with components given by the residuals from individual lm fits.
RSE	the pooled estimate of the residual standard error.
sigma	a vector with the residual standard error estimates for the individual lm fits.
terms	the terms object used in fitting the individual lm components.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

lmList, summary

Examples

```
fm1 <- lmList(distance ~ age | Subject, Orthodont)
summary(fm1)
```

---

summary.modelStruct *Summarize a modelStruct Object*

Description

This method function applies summary to each element of object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class modelStruct
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "modelStruct", representing a list of model components, such as reStruct, corStruct and varFunc objects.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a list with elements given by the summarized components of `object`. The returned value is of class `summary.modelStruct`, also inheriting from the same classes as `object`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`reStruct`, `summary`

Examples

```
lms1 <- lmeStruct(reStruct = reStruct(pdDiag(diag(2), ~age)),
   corStruct = corAR1(0.3))
summary(lms1)
```

---

summary.nlsList *Summarize an nlsList Object*

Description

The `summary` function is applied to each `nls` component of `object` to produce summary information on the individual fits, which is organized into a list of summary statistics. The returned object is suitable for printing with the `print.summary.nlsList` method.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nlsList
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"nlsList"`, representing a list of `nls` fitted objects.
`...`	optional arguments to the `summary.lmList` method. One such optional argument is `pool`, a logical value indicating whether a pooled estimate of the residual standard error should be used. Default is `attr(object, "pool")`.

Value

a list with summary statistics obtained by applying `summary` to the elements of `object`, inheriting from class `summary.nlsList`. The components of `value` are:

`call`	a list containing an image of the `nlsList` call that produced `object`.
`parameters`	a three dimensional array with summary information on the `nls` coefficients. The first dimension corresponds to the names of the `object` components, the second dimension is given by `"Value"`, `"Std. Error"`, `"t value"`, and `"Pr(>|t|)"`, corresponding, respectively, to the coefficient estimates and their associated standard errors, t-values, and p-values. The third dimension is given by the coefficients names.

correlation	a three dimensional array with the correlations between the individual nls coefficient estimates. The first dimension corresponds to the names of the object components. The third dimension is given by the coefficients names. For each coefficient, the rows of the associated array give the correlations between that coefficient and the remaining coefficients, by nls component.
cov.unscaled	a three dimensional array with the unscaled variances/covariances for the individual lm coefficient estimates (giving the estimated variance/covariance for the coefficients, when multiplied by the estimated residual errors). The first dimension corresponds to the names of the object components. The third dimension is given by the coefficients names. For each coefficient, the rows of the associated array give the unscaled covariances between that coefficient and the remaining coefficients, by nls component.
df	an array with the number of degrees of freedom for the model and for residuals, for each nls component.
df.residual	the total number of degrees of freedom for residuals, corresponding to the sum of residuals df of all nls components.
pool	the value of the pool argument to the function.
RSE	the pooled estimate of the residual standard error.
sigma	a vector with the residual standard error estimates for the individual lm fits.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

nlsList, summary

Examples

```
fm1 <- nlsList(SSasymp, Loblolly)
summary(fm1)
```

---

summary.pdMat *Summarize a pdMat Object*

Description

Attributes structName and noCorrelation, with the values of the corresponding arguments to the method function, are appended to object and its class is changed to summary.pdMat.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
summary(object, structName, noCorrelation, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "pdMat", representing a positive definite matrix.
structName	an optional character string with a description of the pdMat class. Default depends on the method function: "Blocked" for pdBlocked, "Compound Symmetry" for pdCompSymm, "Diagonal" for pdDiag, "Multiple of an Identity" for pdIdent, "General Positive-Definite, Natural Parametrization" for pdNatural, "General Positive-Definite" for pdSymm, and data.class(object) for pdMat.
noCorrelation	an optional logical value indicating whether correlations are to be printed in print.summary.pdMat. Default depends on the method function: FALSE for pdDiag and pdIdent, and TRUE for all other classes.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object similar to object, with additional attributes structName and noCorrelation, inheriting from class summary.pdMat.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

print.summary.pdMat, pdMat

Examples

```
summary(pdSymm(diag(4)))
```

---

summary.varFunc *Summarize varFunc Object*

Description

A structName attribute, with the value of corresponding argument, is appended to object and its class is changed to summary.varFunc.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
summary(object, structName, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "varFunc", representing a variance function structure.
structName	an optional character string with a description of the varFunc class. Default depends on the method function: "Combination of variance functions" for varComb, "Constant plus power of covariate" for varConstPower, "Exponential of variance covariate" for varExp, "Different standard deviations per stratum" for varIdent, "Power of variance covariate" for varPower, and data.class(object) for varFunc.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object similar to object, with an additional attribute structName, inheriting from class summary.varFunc.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

varClasses, varFunc

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(0.3, form = ~age)
vf1 <- Initialize(vf1, Orthodont)
summary(vf1)
```

Tetracycline1 *Pharmacokinetics of tetracycline*

Description

The Tetracycline1 data frame has 40 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

conc a numeric vector

Time a numeric vector

Subject an ordered factor with levels 5 < 3 < 2 < 4 < 1

Formulation a factor with levels tetrachel tetracyn

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

Tetracycline2 *Pharmacokinetics of tetracycline*

Description

The Tetracycline2 data frame has 40 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

conc a numeric vector

Time a numeric vector

Subject an ordered factor with levels 4 < 5 < 2 < 1 < 3

Formulation a factor with levels Berkmycin tetramycin

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

update.modelStruct *Update a modelStruct Object*

Description

This method function updates each element of object, allowing the access to data.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class modelStruct
update(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "modelStruct", representing a list of model components, such as corStruct and varFunc objects.
data	a data frame in which to evaluate the variables needed for updating the elements of object.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

an object similar to object (same class, length, and names), but with updated elements.

Note

This method function is primarily used within model fitting functions, such as lme and gls, that allow model components such as variance functions.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

reStruct

---

update.varFunc *Update varFunc Object*

Description

If the formula(object) includes a "." term, representing a fitted object, the variance covariate needs to be updated upon completion of an optimization cycle (in which the variance function weights are kept fixed). This method function allows a reevaluation of the variance covariate using the current fitted object and, optionally, other variables in the original data.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class varFunc
update(object, data, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "varFunc", representing a variance function structure.
data	a list with a component named "." with the current version of the fitted object (from which fitted values, coefficients, and residuals can be extracted) and, if necessary, other variables used to evaluate the variance covariate(s).
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

if formula(object) includes a "." term, an varFunc object similar to object, but with the variance covariate reevaluated at the current fitted object value; else object is returned unchanged.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

needUpdate, covariate<-.varFunc

varClasses *Variance Function Classes*

Description

Standard classes of variance function structures (varFunc) available in the nlme package. Covariates included in the variance function, denoted by variance covariates, may involve functions of the fitted model object, such as the fitted values and the residuals. Different coefficients may be assigned to the levels of a classification factor.

Value

Available standard classes:

varExp	exponential of a variance covariate.
varPower	power of a variance covariate.
varConstPower	constant plus power of a variance covariate.
varIdent	constant variance(s), generally used to allow different variances according to the levels of a classification factor.
varFixed	fixed weights, determined by a variance covariate.
varComb	combination of variance functions.

Note

Users may define their own varFunc classes by specifying a constructor function and, at a minimum, methods for the functions coef, coef<-, and initialize. For examples of these functions, see the methods for class varPower.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varComb, varConstPower, varExp, varFixed, varIdent, varPower, summary.varFunc

varComb *Combination of Variance Functions*

Description

This function is a constructor for the varComb class, representing a combination of variance functions. The corresponding variance function is equal to the product of the variance functions of the varFunc objects listed in ....

Usage

```
varComb(...)
```

Arguments

...	objects inheriting from class varFunc representing variance function structures.

Value

a varComb object representing a combination of variance functions, also inheriting from class varFunc.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varClasses, varWeights.varComb, coef.varComb

Examples

```
vf1 <- varComb(varIdent(form = ~1|Sex), varPower())
```

varConstPower *Constant Plus Power Variance Function*

Description

This function is a constructor for the varConstPower class, representing a constant plus power variance function structure. Letting v denote the variance covariate and $\sigma^2(v)$ denote the variance function evaluated at v, the constant plus power variance function is defined as $\sigma^2(v) = (\theta_1 + |v|^{\theta}_2)^2$, where θ_1, θ_2 are the variance function coefficients. When a grouping factor is present, different θ_1, θ_2 are used for each factor level.

Usage

```
varConstPower(const, power, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

const, power	optional numeric vectors, or lists of numeric values, with, respectively, the coefficients for the constant and the power terms. Both arguments must have length one, unless a grouping factor is specified in form. If either argument has length greater than one, it must have names which identify its elements to the levels of the grouping factor defined in form. If a grouping factor is present in form and the argument has length one, its value will be assigned to all grouping levels. Only positive values are allowed for const. Default is numeric(0), which results in a vector of zeros of appropriate length being assigned to the coefficients when object is initialized (corresponding to constant variance equal to one).
form	an optional one-sided formula of the form ~ v, or ~ v | g, specifying a variance covariate v and, optionally, a grouping factor g for the coefficients. The variance covariate must evaluate to a numeric vector and may involve expressions using ".", representing a fitted model object from which fitted values (fitted(.)) and residuals (resid(.)) can be extracted (this allows the variance covariate to be updated during the optimization of an object function). When a grouping factor is present in form, a different coefficient value is used for each of its levels. Several grouping variables may be simultaneously specified, separated by the * operator, as in ~ v | g1 * g2 * g3. In this case, the levels of each grouping variable are pasted together and the resulting factor is used to group the observations. Defaults to ~ fitted(.) representing a variance covariate given by the fitted values of a fitted model object and no grouping factor.
fixed	an optional list with components const and/or power, consisting of numeric vectors, or lists of numeric values, specifying the values at which some or all of the coefficients in the variance function should be fixed. If a grouping factor is specified in form, the components of fixed must have names identifying which coefficients are to be fixed. Coefficients included in fixed are not allowed to vary during the optimization of an objective function. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no fixed coefficients.

Value

a varConstPower object representing a constant plus power variance function structure, also inheriting from class varFunc.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varClasses, varWeights.varFunc, coef.varConstPower

Examples

```
vf1 <- varConstPower(1.2, 0.2, form = ~age|Sex)
```

VarCorr *Extract variance and correlation components*

Description

This function calculates the estimated variances, standard deviations, and correlations between the random-effects terms in a linear mixed-effects model, of class "lme", or a nonlinear mixed-effects model, of class "nlme". The within-group error variance and standard deviation are also calculated.

Usage

```
VarCorr(x, sigma, rdig)
```

Arguments

x	a fitted model object, usually an object inheriting from class "lme".
sigma	an optional numeric value used as a multiplier for the standard deviations. Default is 1.
rdig	an optional integer value specifying the number of digits used to represent correlation estimates. Default is 3.

Value

a matrix with the estimated variances, standard deviations, and correlations for the random effects. The first two columns, named Variance and StdDev, give, respectively, the variance and the standard deviations. If there are correlation components in the random effects model, the third column, named Corr, and the remaining unnamed columns give the estimated correlations among random effects within the same level of grouping. The within-group error variance and standard deviation are included as the last row in the matrix.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer, esp. pp. 100, 461.

See Also

lme, nlme

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(distance ~ age, data = Orthodont, random = ~age)
VarCorr(fm1)
```

varExp *Exponential Variance Function*

Description

This function is a constructor for the varExp class, representing an exponential variance function structure. Letting v denote the variance covariate and $\sigma^2(v)$ denote the variance function evaluated at v, the exponential variance function is defined as $\sigma^2(v) = \exp(2\theta v)$, where θ is the variance function coefficient. When a grouping factor is present, a different θ is used for each factor level.

Usage

```
varExp(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional numeric vector, or list of numeric values, with the variance function coefficients. Value must have length one, unless a grouping factor is specified in form. If value has length greater than one, it must have names which identify its elements to the levels of the grouping factor defined in form. If a grouping factor is present in form and value has length one, its value will be assigned to all grouping levels. Default is numeric(0), which results in a vector of zeros of appropriate length being assigned to the coefficients when object is initialized (corresponding to constant variance equal to one).
form	an optional one-sided formula of the form ~ v, or ~ v | g, specifying a variance covariate v and, optionally, a grouping factor g for the coefficients. The variance covariate must evaluate to a numeric vector and may involve expressions using ".", representing a fitted model object from which fitted values (fitted(.)) and residuals (resid(.)) can be extracted (this allows the variance covariate to be updated during the optimization of an object function). When a grouping factor is present in form, a different coefficient value is used for each of its levels. Several grouping variables may be simultaneously specified, separated by the * operator, like in ~ v | g1 * g2 * g3. In this case, the levels of each grouping variable are pasted together and the resulting factor is used to group the observations. Defaults to ~ fitted(.) representing a variance covariate given by the fitted values of a fitted model object and no grouping factor.
fixed	an optional numeric vector, or list of numeric values, specifying the values at which some or all of the coefficients in the variance function should be fixed. If a grouping factor is specified in form, fixed must have names identifying which coefficients are to be fixed. Coefficients included in fixed are not allowed to vary during the optimization of an objective function. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no fixed coefficients.

Value

a varExp object representing an exponential variance function structure, also inheriting from class varFunc.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varClasses, varWeights.varFunc, coef.varExp

Examples

```
vf1 <- varExp(0.2, form = ~age|Sex)
```

---

varFixed *Fixed Variance Function*

Description

This function is a constructor for the varFixed class, representing a variance function with fixed variances. Letting v denote the variance covariate defined in value, the variance function $\sigma^2(v)$ for this class is $\sigma^2(v) = |v|$. The variance covariate v is evaluated once at initialization and remains fixed thereafter. No coefficients are required to represent this variance function.

Usage

```
varFixed(value)
```

Arguments

value	a one-sided formula of the form ~ v specifying a variance covariate v. Grouping factors are ignored.

Value

a varFixed object representing a fixed variance function structure, also inheriting from class varFunc.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varClasses, varWeights.varFunc, varFunc

Examples

```
vf1 <- varFixed(~age)
```

varFunc *Variance Function Structure*

Description

If `object` is a one-sided formula, it is used as the argument to `varFixed` and the resulting object is returned. Else, if `object` inherits from class `varFunc`, it is returned unchanged.

Usage

```
varFunc(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	either an one-sided formula specifying a variance covariate, or an object inheriting from class `varFunc`, representing a variance function structure.

Value

an object from class `varFunc`, representing a variance function structure.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

`summary.varFunc`, `varFixed`, `varWeights.varFunc`, `coef.varFunc`

Examples

```
vf1 <- varFunc(~age)
```

varIdent *Constant Variance Function*

Description

This function is a constructor for the `varIdent` class, representing a constant variance function structure. If no grouping factor is present in `form`, the variance function is constant and equal to one, and no coefficients required to represent it. When `form` includes a grouping factor with $M > 1$ levels, the variance function allows M different variances, one for each level of the factor. For identifiability reasons, the coefficients of the variance function represent the ratios between the variances and a reference variance (corresponding to a reference group level). Therefore, only $M - 1$ coefficients are needed to represent the variance function. By default, if the elements in `value` are unnamed, the first group level is taken as the reference level.

Usage

```
varIdent(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional numeric vector, or list of numeric values, with the variance function coefficients. If no grouping factor is present in form, this argument is ignored, as the resulting variance function contains no coefficients. If value has length one, its value is repeated for all coefficients in the variance function. If value has length greater than one, it must have length equal to the number of grouping levels minus one and names which identify its elements to the levels of the grouping factor. Only positive values are allowed for this argument. Default is numeric(0), which results in a vector of zeros of appropriate length being assigned to the coefficients when object is initialized (corresponding to constant variance equal to one).
form	an optional one-sided formula of the form ~ v, or ~ v | g, specifying a variance covariate v and, optionally, a grouping factor g for the coefficients. The variance covariate is ignored in this variance function. When a grouping factor is present in form, a different coefficient value is used for each of its levels less one reference level (see description section below). Several grouping variables may be simultaneously specified, separated by the * operator, like in ~ v | g1 * g2 * g3. In this case, the levels of each grouping variable are pasted together and the resulting factor is used to group the observations. Defaults to ~ 1.
fixed	an optional numeric vector, or list of numeric values, specifying the values at which some or all of the coefficients in the variance function should be fixed. It must have names identifying which coefficients are to be fixed. Coefficients included in fixed are not allowed to vary during the optimization of an objective function. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no fixed coefficients.

Value

a varIdent object representing a constant variance function structure, also inheriting from class varFunc.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varClasses, varWeights.varFunc, coef.varIdent

Examples

```
vf1 <- varIdent(c(Female = 0.5), form = ~ 1 | Sex)
```

Variogram *Calculate Semi-variogram*

Description

This function is generic; method functions can be written to handle specific classes of objects. Classes which already have methods for this function include `default`, `gls` and `lme`. See the appropriate method documentation for a description of the arguments.

Usage

```
Variogram(object, distance, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a numeric vector with the values to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, usually a residual vector from a fitted model.
`distance`	a numeric vector with the pairwise distances corresponding to the elements of `object`. The order of the elements in `distance` must correspond to the pairs `(1,2), (1,3), ..., (n-1,n)`, with `n` representing the length of `object`, and must have length `n(n-1)/2`.
`...`	some methods for this generic function require additional arguments.

Value

will depend on the method function used; see the appropriate documentation.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`Variogram.corExp`, `Variogram.corGaus`, `Variogram.corLin`, `Variogram.corRatio`, `Variogram.corSpatial`, `Variogram.corSpher`, `Variogram.default`, `Variogram.gls`, `Variogram.lme`, `plot.Variogram`

Examples

```
## see the method function documentation
```

Variogram.corExp *Calculate Semi-variogram for a corExp Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram values corresponding to the Exponential correlation model, using the estimated coefficients corresponding to `object`, at the distances defined by `distance`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corExp
Variogram(object, distance, sig2, length.out, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corExp"`, representing an exponential spatial correlation structure.
`distance`	an optional numeric vector with the distances at which the semi-variogram is to be calculated. Defaults to `NULL`, in which case a sequence of length `length.out` between the minimum and maximum values of `getCovariate(object)` is used.
`sig2`	an optional numeric value representing the process variance. Defaults to `1`.
`length.out`	an optional integer specifying the length of the sequence of distances to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, when `distance = NULL`. Defaults to `50`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns `variog` and `dist` representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. The returned value inherits from class `Variogram`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

`corExp`, `plot.Variogram`, `Variogram`

Examples

```
stopifnot(require("stats", quietly = TRUE))
cs1 <- corExp(3, form = ~ Time | Rat)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, BodyWeight)
Variogram(cs1)[1:10,]
```

Variogram.corGaus *Calculate Semi-variogram for a corGaus Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram values corresponding to the Gaussian correlation model, using the estimated coefficients corresponding to `object`, at the distances defined by `distance`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corGaus
Variogram(object, distance, sig2, length.out, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corGaus"`, representing an Gaussian spatial correlation structure.
`distance`	an optional numeric vector with the distances at which the semi-variogram is to be calculated. Defaults to `NULL`, in which case a sequence of length `length.out` between the minimum and maximum values of `getCovariate(object)` is used.
`sig2`	an optional numeric value representing the process variance. Defaults to `1`.
`length.out`	an optional integer specifying the length of the sequence of distances to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, when `distance = NULL`. Defaults to `50`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns `variog` and `dist` representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. The returned value inherits from class `Variogram`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

`corGaus`, `plot.Variogram`, `Variogram`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corGaus(3, form = ~ Time | Rat)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, BodyWeight)
Variogram(cs1)[1:10,]
```

Variogram.corLin *Calculate Semi-variogram for a corLin Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram values corresponding to the Linear correlation model, using the estimated coefficients corresponding to `object`, at the distances defined by `distance`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corLin
Variogram(object, distance, sig2, length.out, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corLin"`, representing an Linear spatial correlation structure.
`distance`	an optional numeric vector with the distances at which the semi-variogram is to be calculated. Defaults to `NULL`, in which case a sequence of length `length.out` between the minimum and maximum values of `getCovariate(object)` is used.
`sig2`	an optional numeric value representing the process variance. Defaults to `1`.
`length.out`	an optional integer specifying the length of the sequence of distances to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, when `distance = NULL`. Defaults to `50`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns `variog` and `dist` representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. The returned value inherits from class `Variogram`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

`corLin`, `plot.Variogram`, `Variogram`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corLin(15, form = ~ Time | Rat)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, BodyWeight)
Variogram(cs1)[1:10,]
```

Variogram.corRatio *Calculate Semi-variogram for a corRatio Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram values corresponding to the Rational Quadratic correlation model, using the estimated coefficients corresponding to `object`, at the distances defined by `distance`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corRatio
Variogram(object, distance, sig2, length.out, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "`corRatio`", representing an Rational Quadratic spatial correlation structure.
`distance`	an optional numeric vector with the distances at which the semi-variogram is to be calculated. Defaults to `NULL`, in which case a sequence of length `length.out` between the minimum and maximum values of `getCovariate(object)` is used.
`sig2`	an optional numeric value representing the process variance. Defaults to `1`.
`length.out`	an optional integer specifying the length of the sequence of distances to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, when `distance = NULL`. Defaults to `50`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns `variog` and `dist` representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. The returned value inherits from class `Variogram`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

`corRatio`, `plot.Variogram` `Variogram`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corRatio(7, form = ~ Time | Rat)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, BodyWeight)
Variogram(cs1)[1:10,]
```

Variogram.corSpatial *Calculate Semi-variogram for a corSpatial Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram values corresponding to the model defined in FUN, using the estimated coefficients corresponding to object, at the distances defined by distance.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corSpatial
Variogram(object, distance, sig2, length.out, FUN, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "corSpatial", representing spatial correlation structure.
distance	an optional numeric vector with the distances at which the semi-variogram is to be calculated. Defaults to NULL, in which case a sequence of length length.out between the minimum and maximum values of getCovariate(object) is used.
sig2	an optional numeric value representing the process variance. Defaults to 1.
length.out	an optional integer specifying the length of the sequence of distances to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, when distance = NULL. Defaults to 50.
FUN	a function of two arguments, the distance and the range corresponding to object, specifying the semi-variogram model.
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns variog and dist representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. The returned value inherits from class Variogram.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

corSpatial, Variogram, Variogram.default, Variogram.corExp, Variogram.corGaus, Variogram.corLin, Variogram.corRatio, Variogram.corSpher, plot.Variogram

Examples

```
cs1 <- corExp(3, form = ~ Time | Rat)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, BodyWeight)
Variogram(cs1, FUN = function(x, y) (1 - exp(-x/y)))[1:10,]
```

`Variogram.corSpher` *Calculate Semi-variogram for a corSpher Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram values corresponding to the Spherical correlation model, using the estimated coefficients corresponding to `object`, at the distances defined by `distance`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class corSpher
Variogram(object, distance, sig2, length.out, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"corSpher"`, representing an Spherical spatial correlation structure.
`distance`	an optional numeric vector with the distances at which the semi-variogram is to be calculated. Defaults to `NULL`, in which case a sequence of length `length.out` between the minimum and maximum values of `getCovariate(object)` is used.
`sig2`	an optional numeric value representing the process variance. Defaults to `1`.
`length.out`	an optional integer specifying the length of the sequence of distances to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, when `distance = NULL`. Defaults to `50`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns `variog` and `dist` representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. The returned value inherits from class `Variogram`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

`corSpher`, `plot.Variogram`, `Variogram`

Examples

```
cs1 <- corSpher(15, form = ~ Time | Rat)
cs1 <- Initialize(cs1, BodyWeight)
Variogram(cs1)[1:10,]
```

`Variogram.default` *Calculate Semi-variogram*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram for an arbitrary vector `object`, according to the distances in `distance`. For each pair of elements x, y in `object`, the corresponding semi-variogram is $(x - y)^2/2$. The semi-variogram is useful for identifying and modeling spatial correlation structures in observations with constant expectation and constant variance.

Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
Variogram(object, distance, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	a numeric vector with the values to be used for calculating the semi-variogram, usually a residual vector from a fitted model.
`distance`	a numeric vector with the pairwise distances corresponding to the elements of `object`. The order of the elements in `distance` must correspond to the pairs `(1,2), (1,3), ..., (n-1,n)`, with `n` representing the length of `object`, and must have length `n(n-1)/2`.
`...`	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns `variog` and `dist` representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. The returned value inherits from class `Variogram`.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

`Variogram`, `Variogram.gls`, `Variogram.lme`, `plot.Variogram`

Examples

```
## Not run:
fm1 <- lm(follicles ~ sin(2 * pi * Time) + cos(2 * pi * Time), Ovary,
          subset = Mare == 1)
Variogram(resid(fm1), dist(1:29))[1:10,]

## End(Not run)
```

Variogram.gls *Calculate Semi-variogram for Residuals from a gls Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram for the residuals from a gls fit. The semi-variogram values are calculated for pairs of residuals within the same group level, if a grouping factor is present. If collapse is different from "none", the individual semi-variogram values are collapsed using either a robust estimator (robust = TRUE) defined in Cressie (1993), or the average of the values within the same distance interval. The semi-variogram is useful for modeling the error term correlation structure.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class gls
Variogram(object, distance, form, resType, data,
      na.action, maxDist, length.out, collapse, nint, breaks,
      robust, metric, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "gls", representing a generalized least squares fitted model.
distance	an optional numeric vector with the distances between residual pairs. If a grouping variable is present, only the distances between residual pairs within the same group should be given. If missing, the distances are calculated based on the values of the arguments form, data, and metric, unless object includes a corSpatial element, in which case the associated covariate (obtained with the getCovariate method) is used.
form	an optional one-sided formula specifying the covariate(s) to be used for calculating the distances between residual pairs and, optionally, a grouping factor for partitioning the residuals (which must appear to the right of a | operator in form). Default is ~1, implying that the observation order within the groups is used to obtain the distances.
resType	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used. If "response", the "raw" residuals (observed - fitted) are used; else, if "pearson", the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if "normalized", the normalized residuals (standardized residuals pre-multiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to "pearson".
data	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables in form. By default, the same data used to fit object is used.
na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes an error message to be printed and the function to terminate, if there are any incomplete observations.
maxDist	an optional numeric value for the maximum distance used for calculating the semi-variogram between two residuals. By default all residual pairs are included.

length.out	an optional integer value. When object includes a corSpatial element, its semi-variogram values are calculated and this argument is used as the length.out argument to the corresponding Variogram method. Defaults to 50.
collapse	an optional character string specifying the type of collapsing to be applied to the individual semi-variogram values. If equal to "quantiles", the semi-variogram values are split according to quantiles of the distance distribution, with equal number of observations per group, with possibly varying distance interval lengths. Else, if "fixed", the semi-variogram values are divided according to distance intervals of equal lengths, with possibly different number of observations per interval. Else, if "none", no collapsing is used and the individual semi-variogram values are returned. Defaults to "quantiles".
nint	an optional integer with the number of intervals to be used when collapsing the semi-variogram values. Defaults to 20.
robust	an optional logical value specifying if a robust semi-variogram estimator should be used when collapsing the individual values. If TRUE the robust estimator is used. Defaults to FALSE.
breaks	an optional numeric vector with the breakpoints for the distance intervals to be used in collapsing the semi-variogram values. If not missing, the option specified in collapse is ignored.
metric	an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns variog and dist representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. If the semi-variogram values are collapsed, an extra column, n.pairs, with the number of residual pairs used in each semi-variogram calculation, is included in the returned data frame. If object includes a corSpatial element, a data frame with its corresponding semi-variogram is included in the returned value, as an attribute "modelVariog". The returned value inherits from class Variogram.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

gls, Variogram, Variogram.default, Variogram.lme, plot.Variogram

Examples

```
## Not run:
fm1 <- gls(weight ~ Time * Diet, BodyWeight)
Variogram(fm1, form = ~ Time | Rat)[1:10,]

## End(Not run)
```

`Variogram.lme` *Calculate Semi-variogram for Residuals from an lme Object*

Description

This method function calculates the semi-variogram for the within-group residuals from an `lme` fit. The semi-variogram values are calculated for pairs of residuals within the same group. If `collapse` is different from `"none"`, the individual semi-variogram values are collapsed using either a robust estimator (`robust = TRUE`) defined in Cressie (1993), or the average of the values within the same distance interval. The semi-variogram is useful for modeling the error term correlation structure.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lme
Variogram(object, distance, form, resType, data,
       na.action, maxDist, length.out, collapse, nint, breaks,
       robust, metric, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `"lme"`, representing a fitted linear mixed-effects model.
`distance`	an optional numeric vector with the distances between residual pairs. If a grouping variable is present, only the distances between residual pairs within the same group should be given. If missing, the distances are calculated based on the values of the arguments `form`, `data`, and `metric`, unless `object` includes a `corSpatial` element, in which case the associated covariate (obtained with the `getCovariate` method) is used.
`form`	an optional one-sided formula specifying the covariate(s) to be used for calculating the distances between residual pairs and, optionally, a grouping factor for partitioning the residuals (which must appear to the right of a `|` operator in `form`). Default is `~1`, implying that the observation order within the groups is used to obtain the distances.
`resType`	an optional character string specifying the type of residuals to be used. If `"response"`, the "raw" residuals (observed - fitted) are used; else, if `"pearson"`, the standardized residuals (raw residuals divided by the corresponding standard errors) are used; else, if `"normalized"`, the normalized residuals (standardized residuals pre-multiplied by the inverse square-root factor of the estimated error correlation matrix) are used. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first character needs to be provided. Defaults to `"pearson"`.
`data`	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables in `form`. By default, the same data used to fit `object` is used.

na.action	a function that indicates what should happen when the data contain NAs. The default action (na.fail) causes an error message to be printed and the function to terminate, if there are any incomplete observations.
maxDist	an optional numeric value for the maximum distance used for calculating the semi-variogram between two residuals. By default all residual pairs are included.
length.out	an optional integer value. When object includes a corSpatial element, its semi-variogram values are calculated and this argument is used as the length.out argument to the corresponding Variogram method. Defaults to 50.
collapse	an optional character string specifying the type of collapsing to be applied to the individual semi-variogram values. If equal to "quantiles", the semi-variogram values are split according to quantiles of the distance distribution, with equal number of observations per group, with possibly varying distance interval lengths. Else, if "fixed", the semi-variogram values are divided according to distance intervals of equal lengths, with possibly different number of observations per interval. Else, if "none", no collapsing is used and the individual semi-variogram values are returned. Defaults to "quantiles".
nint	an optional integer with the number of intervals to be used when collapsing the semi-variogram values. Defaults to 20.
robust	an optional logical value specifying if a robust semi-variogram estimator should be used when collapsing the individual values. If TRUE the robust estimator is used. Defaults to FALSE.
breaks	an optional numeric vector with the breakpoints for the distance intervals to be used in collapsing the semi-variogram values. If not missing, the option specified in collapse is ignored.
metric	an optional character string specifying the distance metric to be used. The currently available options are "euclidean" for the root sum-of-squares of distances; "maximum" for the maximum difference; and "manhattan" for the sum of the absolute differences. Partial matching of arguments is used, so only the first three characters need to be provided. Defaults to "euclidean".
...	some methods for this generic require additional arguments. None are used in this method.

Value

a data frame with columns variog and dist representing, respectively, the semi-variogram values and the corresponding distances. If the semi-variogram values are collapsed, an extra column, n.pairs, with the number of residual pairs used in each semi-variogram calculation, is included in the returned data frame. If object includes a corSpatial element, a data frame with its corresponding semi-variogram is included in the returned value, as an attribute "modelVariog". The returned value inherits from class Variogram.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Cressie, N.A.C. (1993), "Statistics for Spatial Data", J. Wiley & Sons.

See Also

lme, Variogram, Variogram.default, Variogram.gls, plot.Variogram

Examples

```
fm1 <- lme(weight ~ Time * Diet, data=BodyWeight, ~ Time | Rat)
Variogram(fm1, form = ~ Time | Rat, nint = 10, robust = TRUE)
```

---

varPower *Power Variance Function*

Description

This function is a constructor for the varPower class, representing a power variance function structure. Letting v denote the variance covariate and $\sigma^2(v)$ denote the variance function evaluated at v, the power variance function is defined as $\sigma^2(v) = |v|^{2\theta}$, where θ is the variance function coefficient. When a grouping factor is present, a different θ is used for each factor level.

Usage

```
varPower(value, form, fixed)
```

Arguments

value	an optional numeric vector, or list of numeric values, with the variance function coefficients. Value must have length one, unless a grouping factor is specified in form. If value has length greater than one, it must have names which identify its elements to the levels of the grouping factor defined in form. If a grouping factor is present in form and value has length one, its value will be assigned to all grouping levels. Default is numeric(0), which results in a vector of zeros of appropriate length being assigned to the coefficients when object is initialized (corresponding to constant variance equal to one).
form	an optional one-sided formula of the form ~ v, or ~ v | g, specifying a variance covariate v and, optionally, a grouping factor g for the coefficients. The variance covariate must evaluate to a numeric vector and may involve expressions using ".", representing a fitted model object from which fitted values (fitted(.)) and residuals (resid(.)) can be extracted (this allows the variance covariate to be updated during the optimization of an object function). When a grouping factor is present in form, a different coefficient value is used for each of its levels. Several grouping variables may be simultaneously specified, separated by the * operator, like in ~ v | g1 * g2 * g3. In this case, the levels of each grouping variable are pasted together and the resulting factor is used to group the observations. Defaults to ~ fitted(.) representing a variance covariate given by the fitted values of a fitted model object and no grouping factor.
fixed	an optional numeric vector, or list of numeric values, specifying the values at which some or all of the coefficients in the variance function should be fixed. If a grouping factor is specified in form, fixed must have names identifying which coefficients are to be fixed. Coefficients included in fixed are not allowed to vary during the optimization of an objective function. Defaults to NULL, corresponding to no fixed coefficients.

Value

a varPower object representing a power variance function structure, also inheriting from class varFunc.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varWeights.varFunc, coef.varPower

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(0.2, form = ~age|Sex)
```

---

varWeights *Extract Variance Function Weights*

Description

The inverse of the standard deviations corresponding to the variance function structure represented by object are returned.

Usage

```
varWeights(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class varFunc, representing a variance function structure.

Value

if object has a weights attribute, its value is returned; else NULL is returned.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

logLik.varFunc, varWeights

Examples

```
vf1 <- varPower(form=~age)
vf1 <- Initialize(vf1, Orthodont)
coef(vf1) <- 0.3
varWeights(vf1)[1:10]
```

`varWeights.glsStruct` *Variance Weights for glsStruct Object*

Description

If `object` includes a `varStruct` component, the inverse of the standard deviations of the variance function structure represented by the corresponding `varFunc` object are returned; else, a vector of ones of length equal to the number of observations in the data frame used to fit the associated linear model is returned.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class glsStruct
varWeights(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class "`glsStruct`", representing a list of linear model components, such as `corStruct` and "`varFunc`" objects.

Value

if `object` includes a `varStruct` component, a vector with the corresponding variance weights; else, or a vector of ones.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

`varWeights`

varWeights.lmeStruct *Variance Weights for lmeStruct Object*

Description

If object includes a varStruct component, the inverse of the standard deviations of the variance function structure represented by the corresponding varFunc object are returned; else, a vector of ones of length equal to the number of observations in the data frame used to fit the associated linear mixed-effects model is returned.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class lmeStruct
varWeights(object)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class "lmeStruct", representing a list of linear mixed-effects model components, such as reStruct, corStruct, and varFunc objects.

Value

if object includes a varStruct component, a vector with the corresponding variance weights; else, or a vector of ones.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

References

Pinheiro, J.C., and Bates, D.M. (2000) "Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS", Springer.

See Also

varWeights

Wafer *Modeling of Analog MOS Circuits*

Description

The Wafer data frame has 400 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Wafer a factor with levels 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

Site a factor with levels 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

voltage a numeric vector

current a numeric vector

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

`Wheat` *Yields by growing conditions*

Description

The `Wheat` data frame has 48 rows and 4 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Tray an ordered factor with levels `3` < `1` < `2` < `4` < `5` < `6` < `8` < `9` < `7` < `12` < `11` < `10`

Moisture a numeric vector

fertilizer a numeric vector

DryMatter a numeric vector

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

`Wheat2` *Wheat Yield Trials*

Description

The `Wheat2` data frame has 224 rows and 5 columns.

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Block an ordered factor with levels `4` < `2` < `3` < `1`

variety a factor with levels `ARAPAHOE` `BRULE` `BUCKSKIN` `CENTURA` `CENTURK78` `CHEYENNE` `CODY` `COLT` `GAGE` `HOMESTEAD` `KS831374` `LANCER` `LANCOTA` `NE83404` `NE83406` `NE83407` `NE83432` `NE83498` `NE83T12` `NE84557` `NE85556` `NE85623` `NE86482` `NE86501` `NE86503` `NE86507` `NE86509` `NE86527` `NE86582` `NE86606` `NE86607` `NE86T666` `NE87403` `NE87408` `NE87409` `NE87446` `NE87451` `NE87457` `NE87463` `NE87499` `NE87512` `NE87513` `NE87522` `NE87612` `NE87613` `NE87615` `NE87619` `NE87627` `NORKAN` `REDLAND` `ROUGHRIDER` `SCOUT66` `SIOUXLAND` `TAM107` `TAM200` `VONA`

yield a numeric vector

latitude a numeric vector

longitude a numeric vector

Source

Pinheiro, J. C. and Bates, D. M. (2000), *Mixed-Effects Models in S and S-PLUS*, Springer, New York.

[.pdMat *Subscript a pdMat Object*

Description

This method function extracts sub-matrices from the positive-definite matrix represented by x.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class pdMat
x[i, j, drop = TRUE]
## S3 replacement method for class pdMat
x[i, j] <- value
```

Arguments

x	an object inheriting from class "pdMat" representing a positive-definite matrix.
i, j	optional subscripts applying respectively to the rows and columns of the positive-definite matrix represented by object. When i (j) is omitted, all rows (columns) are extracted.
drop	a logical value. If TRUE, single rows or columns are converted to vectors. If FALSE the returned value retains its matrix representation.
value	a vector, or matrix, with the replacement values for the relevant piece of the matrix represented by x.

Value

if i and j are identical, the returned value will be pdMat object with the same class as x. Otherwise, the returned value will be a matrix. In the case a single row (or column) is selected, the returned value may be converted to a vector, according to the rules above.

Author(s)

José Pinheiro and Douglas Bates <bates@stat.wisc.edu>

See Also

[, pdMat

Examples

```
pd1 <- pdSymm(diag(3))
pd1[1, , drop = FALSE]
pd1[1:2, 1:2] <- 3 * diag(2)
```

Chapter 26

The nnet package

`class.ind` *Generates Class Indicator Matrix from a Factor*

Description

Generates a class indicator function from a given factor.

Usage

```
class.ind(cl)
```

Arguments

`cl`	factor or vector of classes for cases.

Value

a matrix which is zero except for the column corresponding to the class.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

Examples

```
# The function is currently defined as
class.ind <- function(cl)
{
  n <- length(cl)
  cl <- as.factor(cl)
  x <- matrix(0, n, length(levels(cl)) )
  x[(1:n) + n*(unclass(cl)-1)] <- 1
  dimnames(x) <- list(names(cl), levels(cl))
  x
}
```

`multinom` *Fit Multinomial Log-linear Models*

Description

Fits multinomial log-linear models via neural networks.

Usage

```
multinom(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
         contrasts = NULL, Hess = FALSE, summ = 0, censored = FALSE,
         model = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	a formula expression as for regression models, of the form `response ~ predictors`. The response should be a factor or a matrix with K columns, which will be interpreted as counts for each of K classes. A log-linear model is fitted, with coefficients zero for the first class. An offset can be included: it should be a numeric matrix with K columns if the response is either a matrix with K columns or a factor with K >= 2 classes, or a numeric vector for a response factor with 2 levels. See the documentation of `formula()` for other details.
`data`	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables occurring in `formula`.
`weights`	optional case weights in fitting.
`subset`	expression saying which subset of the rows of the data should be used in the fit. All observations are included by default.
`na.action`	a function to filter missing data.
`contrasts`	a list of contrasts to be used for some or all of the factors appearing as variables in the model formula.
`Hess`	logical for whether the Hessian (the observed/expected information matrix) should be returned.
`summ`	integer; if non-zero summarize by deleting duplicate rows and adjust weights. Methods 1 and 2 differ in speed (2 uses `C`); method 3 also combines rows with the same X and different Y, which changes the baseline for the deviance.
`censored`	If Y is a matrix with `K` columns, interpret the entries as one for possible classes, zero for impossible classes, rather than as counts.
`model`	logical. If true, the model frame is saved as component `model` of the returned object.
`...`	additional arguments for `nnet`

Details

`multinom` calls `nnet`. The variables on the rhs of the formula should be roughly scaled to [0,1] or the fit will be slow or may not converge at all.

Value

A nnet object with additional components:

deviance	the residual deviance, compared to the full saturated model (that explains individual observations exactly). Also, minus twice log-likelihood.
edf	the (effective) number of degrees of freedom used by the model
AIC	the AIC for this fit.
Hessian	(if Hess is true).
model	(if model is true).

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

nnet

Examples

```
options(contrasts = c("contr.treatment", "contr.poly"))
library(MASS)
example(birthwt)
(bwt.mu <- multinom(low ~ ., bwt))
```

---

nnet *Fit Neural Networks*

Description

Fit single-hidden-layer neural network, possibly with skip-layer connections.

Usage

```
nnet(x, ...)

## S3 method for class formula
nnet(formula, data, weights, ...,
     subset, na.action, contrasts = NULL)

## Default S3 method:
nnet(x, y, weights, size, Wts, mask,
     linout = FALSE, entropy = FALSE, softmax = FALSE,
     censored = FALSE, skip = FALSE, rang = 0.7, decay = 0,
     maxit = 100, Hess = FALSE, trace = TRUE, MaxNWts = 1000,
     abstol = 1.0e-4, reltol = 1.0e-8, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	A formula of the form `class ~ x1 + x2 + ...`
x	matrix or data frame of `x` values for examples.
y	matrix or data frame of target values for examples.
weights	(case) weights for each example – if missing defaults to 1.
size	number of units in the hidden layer. Can be zero if there are skip-layer units.
data	Data frame from which variables specified in `formula` are preferentially to be taken.
subset	An index vector specifying the cases to be used in the training sample. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
na.action	A function to specify the action to be taken if `NA`s are found. The default action is for the procedure to fail. An alternative is na.omit, which leads to rejection of cases with missing values on any required variable. (NOTE: If given, this argument must be named.)
contrasts	a list of contrasts to be used for some or all of the factors appearing as variables in the model formula.
Wts	initial parameter vector. If missing chosen at random.
mask	logical vector indicating which parameters should be optimized (default all).
linout	switch for linear output units. Default logistic output units.
entropy	switch for entropy (= maximum conditional likelihood) fitting. Default by least-squares.
softmax	switch for softmax (log-linear model) and maximum conditional likelihood fitting. `linout`, `entropy`, `softmax` and `censored` are mutually exclusive.
censored	A variant on `softmax`, in which non-zero targets mean possible classes. Thus for `softmax` a row of `(0, 1, 1)` means one example each of classes 2 and 3, but for `censored` it means one example whose class is only known to be 2 or 3.
skip	switch to add skip-layer connections from input to output.
rang	Initial random weights on [-`rang`, `rang`]. Value about 0.5 unless the inputs are large, in which case it should be chosen so that `rang` * max(`|x|`) is about 1.
decay	parameter for weight decay. Default 0.
maxit	maximum number of iterations. Default 100.
Hess	If true, the Hessian of the measure of fit at the best set of weights found is returned as component `Hessian`.
trace	switch for tracing optimization. Default `TRUE`.
MaxNWts	The maximum allowable number of weights. There is no intrinsic limit in the code, but increasing `MaxNWts` will probably allow fits that are very slow and time-consuming.
abstol	Stop if the fit criterion falls below `abstol`, indicating an essentially perfect fit.
reltol	Stop if the optimizer is unable to reduce the fit criterion by a factor of at least `1 - reltol`.
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

If the response in `formula` is a factor, an appropriate classification network is constructed; this has one output and entropy fit if the number of levels is two, and a number of outputs equal to the number of classes and a softmax output stage for more levels. If the response is not a factor, it is passed on unchanged to `nnet.default`.

Optimization is done via the BFGS method of `optim`.

Value

object of class `"nnet"` or `"nnet.formula"`. Mostly internal structure, but has components

`wts`	the best set of weights found
`value`	value of fitting criterion plus weight decay term.
`fitted.values`	the fitted values for the training data.
`residuals`	the residuals for the training data.
`convergence`	`1` if the maximum number of iterations was reached, otherwise `0`.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`predict.nnet`, `nnetHess`

Examples

```
# use half the iris data
ir <- rbind(iris3[,,1],iris3[,,2],iris3[,,3])
targets <- class.ind( c(rep("s", 50), rep("c", 50), rep("v", 50)) )
samp <- c(sample(1:50,25), sample(51:100,25), sample(101:150,25))
ir1 <- nnet(ir[samp,], targets[samp,], size = 2, rang = 0.1,
            decay = 5e-4, maxit = 200)
test.cl <- function(true, pred) {
    true <- max.col(true)
    cres <- max.col(pred)
    table(true, cres)
}
test.cl(targets[-samp,], predict(ir1, ir[-samp,]))


# or
ird <- data.frame(rbind(iris3[,,1], iris3[,,2], iris3[,,3]),
        species = factor(c(rep("s",50), rep("c", 50), rep("v", 50))))
ir.nn2 <- nnet(species ~ ., data = ird, subset = samp, size = 2, rang = 0.1,
               decay = 5e-4, maxit = 200)
table(ird$species[-samp], predict(ir.nn2, ird[-samp,], type = "class"))
```

nnetHess *Evaluates Hessian for a Neural Network*

Description

Evaluates the Hessian (matrix of second derivatives) of the specified neural network. Normally called via argument `Hess=TRUE` to `nnet` or via `vcov.multinom`.

Usage

```
nnetHess(net, x, y, weights)
```

Arguments

`net`	object of class `nnet` as returned by `nnet`.
`x`	training data.
`y`	classes for training data.
`weights`	the (case) weights used in the `nnet` fit.

Value

square symmetric matrix of the Hessian evaluated at the weights stored in the net.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`nnet`, `predict.nnet`

Examples

```
# use half the iris data
ir <- rbind(iris3[,,1], iris3[,,2], iris3[,,3])
targets <- matrix(c(rep(c(1,0,0),50), rep(c(0,1,0),50), rep(c(0,0,1),50)),
150, 3, byrow=TRUE)
samp <- c(sample(1:50,25), sample(51:100,25), sample(101:150,25))
ir1 <- nnet(ir[samp,], targets[samp,], size=2, rang=0.1, decay=5e-4, maxit=200)
eigen(nnetHess(ir1, ir[samp,], targets[samp,]), TRUE)$values
```

predict.nnet *Predict New Examples by a Trained Neural Net*

Description

Predict new examples by a trained neural net.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class nnet
predict(object, newdata, type = c("raw","class"), ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object of class nnet as returned by nnet.
newdata	matrix or data frame of test examples. A vector is considered to be a row vector comprising a single case.
type	Type of output
...	arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function predict() for class "nnet". It can be invoked by calling predict(x) for an object x of the appropriate class, or directly by calling predict.nnet(x) regardless of the class of the object.

Value

If type = "raw", the matrix of values returned by the trained network; if type = "class", the corresponding class (which is probably only useful if the net was generated by nnet.formula).

References

Ripley, B. D. (1996) *Pattern Recognition and Neural Networks.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

nnet, which.is.max

Examples

```
# use half the iris data
ir <- rbind(iris3[,,1], iris3[,,2], iris3[,,3])
targets <- class.ind( c(rep("s", 50), rep("c", 50), rep("v", 50)) )
samp <- c(sample(1:50,25), sample(51:100,25), sample(101:150,25))
ir1 <- nnet(ir[samp,], targets[samp,],size = 2, rang = 0.1,
            decay = 5e-4, maxit = 200)
test.cl <- function(true, pred){
        true <- max.col(true)
        cres <- max.col(pred)
        table(true, cres)
```

```
}
test.cl(targets[-samp,], predict(ir1, ir[-samp,]))

# or
ird <- data.frame(rbind(iris3[,,1], iris3[,,2], iris3[,,3]),
        species = factor(c(rep("s",50), rep("c", 50), rep("v", 50))))
ir.nn2 <- nnet(species ~ ., data = ird, subset = samp, size = 2, rang = 0.1,
               decay = 5e-4, maxit = 200)
table(ird$species[-samp], predict(ir.nn2, ird[-samp,], type = "class"))
```

`which.is.max` *Find Maximum Position in Vector*

Description

Find the maximum position in a vector, breaking ties at random.

Usage

```
which.is.max(x)
```

Arguments

x	a vector

Details

Ties are broken at random.

Value

index of a maximal value.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`max.col`, `which.max` which takes the first of ties.

Examples

```
## Not run: ## this is incomplete
pred <- predict(nnet, test)
table(true, apply(pred, 1, which.is.max))

## End(Not run)
```

Chapter 27

The rpart package

`car.test.frame` *Automobile Data from 'Consumer Reports' 1990*

Description

The `car.test.frame` data frame has 60 rows and 8 columns, giving data on makes of cars taken from the April, 1990 issue of *Consumer Reports*. This is part of a larger dataset, some columns of which are given in `cu.summary`.

Usage

```
car.test.frame
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Price` a numeric vector giving the list price in US dollars of a standard model

`Country` of origin, a factor with levels 'France', 'Germany', 'Japan' , 'Japan/USA', 'Korea', 'Mexico', 'Sweden' and 'USA'

`Reliability` a numeric vector coded 1 to 5.

`Mileage` fuel consumption miles per US gallon, as tested.

`Type` a factor with levels `Compact` `Large` `Medium` `Small` `Sporty` `Van`

`Weight` kerb weight in pounds.

`Disp.` the engine capacity (displacement) in litres.

`HP` the net horsepower of the vehicle.

Source

Consumer Reports, April, 1990, pp. 235–288 quoted in

John M. Chambers and Trevor J. Hastie eds. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*, Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA, pp. 46–47.

See Also

car90, cu.summary

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
summary(z.auto)
```

---

car90 *Automobile Data from 'Consumer Reports' 1990*

Description

Data on 111 cars, taken from pages 235–255, 281–285 and 287–288 of the April 1990 *Consumer Reports* Magazine.

Usage

```
data(car90)
```

Format

The data frame contains the following columns

Country a factor giving the country in which the car was manufactured

Disp engine displacement in cubic inches

Disp2 engine displacement in liters

Eng.Rev engine revolutions per mile, or engine speed at 60 mph

Front.Hd distance between the car's head-liner and the head of a 5 ft. 9 in. front seat passenger, in inches, as measured by CU

Frt.Leg.Room maximum front leg room, in inches, as measured by CU

Frt.Shld front shoulder room, in inches, as measured by CU

Gear.Ratio the overall gear ratio, high gear, for manual transmission

Gear2 the overall gear ratio, high gear, for automatic transmission

HP net horsepower

HP.revs the red line—the maximum safe engine speed in rpm

Height height of car, in inches, as supplied by manufacturer

Length overall length, in inches, as supplied by manufacturer

Luggage luggage space

Mileage a numeric vector of gas mileage in miles/gallon as tested by CU; contains NAs.

Model2 alternate name, if the car was sold under two labels

Price list price with standard equipment, in dollars

Rear.Hd distance between the car's head-liner and the head of a 5 ft 9 in. rear seat passenger, in inches, as measured by CU

Rear.Seating rear fore-and-aft seating room, in inches, as measured by CU

RearShld rear shoulder room, in inches, as measured by CU

Reliability an ordered factor with levels 'Much worse' < 'worse' < 'average' < 'better' < 'Much better': contains NAs.

Rim factor giving the rim size

Sratio.m Number of turns of the steering wheel required for a turn of 30 foot radius, manual steering

Sratio.p Number of turns of the steering wheel required for a turn of 30 foot radius, power steering

Steering steering type offered: manual, power, or both

Tank fuel refill capacity in gallons

Tires factor giving tire size

Trans1 manual transmission, a factor with levels '', 'man.4', 'man.5' and 'man.6'

Trans2 automatic transmission, a factor with levels '', 'auto.3', 'auto.4', and 'auto.CVT'. No car is missing both the manual and automatic transmission variables, but several had both as options

Turning the radius of the turning circle in feet

Type a factor giving the general type of car. The levels are: 'Small', 'Sporty', 'Compact', 'Medium', 'Large', 'Van'

Weight an order statistic giving the relative weights of the cars; 1 is the lightest and 111 is the heaviest

Wheel.base length of wheelbase, in inches, as supplied by manufacturer

Width width of car, in inches, as supplied by manufacturer

Source

This is derived (with permission) from the data set car.all in S-PLUS, but with some further clean up of variable names and definitions.

See Also

car.test.frame, cu.summary for extracts from other versions of the dataset.

Examples

```
data(car90)
plot(car90$Price/1000, car90$Weight,
     xlab = "Price (thousands)", ylab = "Weight (lbs)")
mlowess <- function(x, y, ...) {
    keep <- !(is.na(x) | is.na(y))
    lowess(x[keep], y[keep], ...)
}
with(car90, lines(mlowess(Price/1000, Weight, f = 0.5)))
```

`cu.summary` *Automobile Data from 'Consumer Reports' 1990*

Description

The `cu.summary` data frame has 117 rows and 5 columns, giving data on makes of cars taken from the April, 1990 issue of *Consumer Reports*.

Usage

```
cu.summary
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Price` a numeric vector giving the list price in US dollars of a standard model

`Country` of origin, a factor with levels 'Brazil', 'England', 'France', 'Germany', 'Japan', 'Japan/USA', 'Korea', 'Mexico', 'Sweden' and 'USA'

`Reliability` an ordered factor with levels 'Much worse' < 'worse' < 'average' < 'better' < 'Much better'

`Mileage` fuel consumption miles per US gallon, as tested.

`Type` a factor with levels `Compact` `Large` `Medium` `Small` `Sporty` `Van`

Source

Consumer Reports, April, 1990, pp. 235–288 quoted in

John M. Chambers and Trevor J. Hastie eds. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*, Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA, pp. 46–47.

See Also

`car.test.frame`, `car90`

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(Price ~ Mileage + Type + Country, cu.summary)
par(xpd = TRUE)
plot(fit, compress = TRUE)
text(fit, use.n = TRUE)
```

kyphosis *Data on Children who have had Corrective Spinal Surgery*

Description

The kyphosis data frame has 81 rows and 4 columns. representing data on children who have had corrective spinal surgery

Usage

```
kyphosis
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

Kyphosis a factor with levels absent present indicating if a kyphosis (a type of deformation) was present after the operation.

Age in months

Number the number of vertebrae involved

Start the number of the first (topmost) vertebra operated on.

Source

John M. Chambers and Trevor J. Hastie eds. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*, Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA.

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis)
fit2 <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis,
              parms = list(prior = c(0.65, 0.35), split = "information"))
fit3 <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data=kyphosis,
              control = rpart.control(cp = 0.05))
par(mfrow = c(1,2), xpd = TRUE)
plot(fit)
text(fit, use.n = TRUE)
plot(fit2)
text(fit2, use.n = TRUE)
```

labels.rpart *Create Split Labels For an Rpart Object*

Description

This function provides labels for the branches of an rpart tree.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rpart
labels(object, digits = 4, minlength = 1L, pretty, collapse = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
digits	the number of digits to be used for numeric values. All of the rpart functions that call labels explicitly set this value, with options("digits") as the default.
minlength	the minimum length for abbreviation of character or factor variables. If 0 no abbreviation is done; if 1 single English letters are used, first lower case than upper case (with a maximum of 52 levels). If the value is greater than , the abbreviate function is used, passed the minlength argument.
pretty	an argument included for compatibility with the **tree** package: pretty = 0 implies minlength = 0L, pretty = NULL implies minlength = 1L, and pretty = TRUE implies minlength = 4L.
collapse	logical. The returned set of labels is always of the same length as the number of nodes in the tree. If collapse = TRUE (default), the returned value is a vector of labels for the branch leading into each node, with "root" as the label for the top node. If FALSE, the returned value is a two column matrix of labels for the left and right branches leading out from each node, with "leaf" as the branch labels for terminal nodes.
...	optional arguments to abbreviate.

Value

Vector of split labels (collapse = TRUE) or matrix of left and right splits (collapse = FALSE) for the supplied rpart object. This function is called by printing methods for rpart and is not intended to be called directly by the users.

See Also

abbreviate

---

meanvar.rpart *Mean-Variance Plot for an Rpart Object*

Description

Creates a plot on the current graphics device of the deviance of the node divided by the number of observations at the node. Also returns the node number.

Usage

```
meanvar(tree, ...)

## S3 method for class rpart
meanvar(tree, xlab = "ave(y)", ylab = "ave(deviance)", ...)
```

Arguments

tree	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
xlab	x-axis label for the plot.
ylab	y-axis label for the plot.
...	additional graphical parameters may be supplied as arguments to this function.

Value

an invisible list containing the following vectors is returned.

x	fitted value at terminal nodes (yval).
y	deviance of node divided by number of observations at node.
label	node number.

Side Effects

a plot is put on the current graphics device.

See Also

plot.rpart.

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
meanvar(z.auto, log = xy)
```

---

na.rpart *Handles Missing Values in an Rpart Object*

Description

Handles missing values in an "rpart" object.

Usage

```
na.rpart(x)
```

Arguments

x	a model frame.

Details

Default function that handles missing values when calling the function rpart.

It omits cases where part of the response is missing or all the explanatory variables are missing.

path.rpart *Follow Paths to Selected Nodes of an Rpart Object*

Description

Returns a names list where each element contains the splits on the path from the root to the selected nodes.

Usage

```
path.rpart(tree, nodes, pretty = 0, print.it = TRUE)
```

Arguments

tree	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
nodes	an integer vector containing indices (node numbers) of all nodes for which paths are desired. If missing, user selects nodes as described below.
pretty	an integer denoting the extent to which factor levels in split labels will be abbreviated. A value of (0) signifies no abbreviation. A NULL, the default, signifies using elements of letters to represent the different factor levels.
print.it	Logical. Denotes whether paths will be printed out as nodes are interactively selected. Irrelevant if nodes argument is supplied.

Details

The function has a required argument as an rpart object and a list of nodes as optional arguments. Omitting a list of nodes will cause the function to wait for the user to select nodes from the dendrogram. It will return a list, with one component for each node specified or selected. The component contains the sequence of splits leading to that node. In the graphical interaction, the individual paths are printed out as nodes are selected.

Value

A named (by node) list, each element of which contains all the splits on the path from the root to the specified or selected nodes.

Graphical Interaction

A dendrogram of the rpart object is expected to be visible on the graphics device, and a graphics input device (e.g. a mouse) is required. Clicking (the selection button) on a node selects that node. This process may be repeated any number of times. Clicking the exit button will stop the selection process and return the list of paths.

References

This function was modified from path.tree in S.

See Also

rpart

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis)
print(fit)
path.rpart(fit, node = c(11, 22))
```

---

plot.rpart *Plot an Rpart Object*

Description

Plots an rpart object on the current graphics device.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rpart
plot(x, uniform = FALSE, branch = 1, compress = FALSE, nspace,
     margin = 0, minbranch = 0.3, ...)
```

Arguments

x	a fitted object of class "rpart", containing a classification, regression, or rate tree.
uniform	if TRUE, uniform vertical spacing of the nodes is used; this may be less cluttered when fitting a large plot onto a page. The default is to use a non-uniform spacing proportional to the error in the fit.
branch	controls the shape of the branches from parent to child node. Any number from 0 to 1 is allowed. A value of 1 gives square shouldered branches, a value of 0 give V shaped branches, with other values being intermediate.
compress	if FALSE, the leaf nodes will be at the horizontal plot coordinates of 1:nleaves. If TRUE, the routine attempts a more compact arrangement of the tree. The compaction algorithm assumes uniform=TRUE; surprisingly, the result is usually an improvement even when that is not the case.
nspace	the amount of extra space between a node with children and a leaf, as compared to the minimal space between leaves. Applies to compressed trees only. The default is the value of branch.
margin	an extra fraction of white space to leave around the borders of the tree. (Long labels sometimes get cut off by the default computation).
minbranch	set the minimum length for a branch to minbranch times the average branch length. This parameter is ignored if uniform=TRUE. Sometimes a split will give very little improvement, or even (in the classification case) no improvement at all. A tree with branch lengths strictly proportional to improvement leaves no room to squeeze in node labels.
...	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function plot, for objects of class rpart. The y-coordinate of the top node of the tree will always be 1.

Value

The coordinates of the nodes are returned as a list, with components `x` and `y`.

Side Effects

An unlabeled plot is produced on the current graphics device: one being opened if needed.

In order to build up a plot in the usual S style, e.g., a separate `text` command for adding labels, some extra information about the plot needs be retained. This is kept in an environment in the package.

See Also

`rpart`, `text.rpart`

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(Price ~ Mileage + Type + Country, cu.summary)
par(xpd = TRUE)
plot(fit, compress = TRUE)
text(fit, use.n = TRUE)
```

---

plotcp *Plot a Complexity Parameter Table for an Rpart Fit*

Description

Gives a visual representation of the cross-validation results in an `rpart` object.

Usage

```
plotcp(x, minline = TRUE, lty = 3, col = 1,
       upper = c("size", "splits", "none"), ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	an object of class `"rpart"`
`minline`	whether a horizontal line is drawn 1SE above the minimum of the curve.
`lty`	line type for this line
`col`	colour for this line
`upper`	what is plotted on the top axis: the size of the tree (the number of leaves), the number of splits or nothing.
`...`	additional plotting parameters

Details

The set of possible cost-complexity prunings of a tree from a nested set. For the geometric means of the intervals of values of `cp` for which a pruning is optimal, a cross-validation has (usually) been done in the initial construction by `rpart`. The `cptable` in the fit contains the mean and standard deviation of the errors in the cross-validated prediction against each of the geometric means, and these are plotted by this function. A good choice of `cp` for pruning is often the leftmost value for which the mean lies below the horizontal line.

Value

None.

Side Effects

A plot is produced on the current graphical device.

See Also

rpart, printcp, rpart.object

---

post.rpart *PostScript Presentation Plot of an Rpart Object*

Description

Generates a PostScript presentation plot of an rpart object.

Usage

```
post(tree, ...)

## S3 method for class rpart
post(tree, title.,
     filename = paste(deparse(substitute(tree)), ".ps", sep = ""),
     digits = getOption("digits") - 2, pretty = TRUE,
     use.n = TRUE, horizontal = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

tree	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
title.	a title which appears at the top of the plot. By default, the name of the rpart endpoint is printed out.
filename	ASCII file to contain the output. By default, the name of the file is the name of the object given by rpart (with the suffix .ps added). If filename = "", the plot appears on the current graphical device.
digits	number of significant digits to include in numerical data.
pretty	an integer denoting the extent to which factor levels will be abbreviated in the character strings defining the splits; (0) signifies no abbreviation of levels. A NULL signifies using elements of letters to represent the different factor levels. The default (TRUE) indicates the maximum possible abbreviation.
use.n	Logical. If TRUE (default), adds to label (\#events level1/ \#events level2/etc. for method class, n for method anova, and \#events/n for methods poisson and exp).
horizontal	Logical. If TRUE (default), plot is horizontal. If FALSE, plot appears as landscape.
...	other arguments to the postscript function.

Details

The plot created uses the functions `plot.rpart` and `text.rpart` (with the `fancy` option). The settings were chosen because they looked good to us, but other options may be better, depending on the `rpart` object. Users are encouraged to write their own function containing favorite options.

Side Effects

a plot of `rpart` is created using the `postscript` driver, or the current device if `filename = ""`.

See Also

`plot.rpart`, `rpart`, `text.rpart`, `abbreviate`

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
post(z.auto, file = "")   # display tree on active device
   # now construct postscript version on file "pretty.ps"
   # with no title
post(z.auto, file = "pretty.ps", title = " ")
z.hp <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight + HP, car.test.frame)
post(z.hp)
```

`predict.rpart` *Predictions from a Fitted Rpart Object*

Description

Returns a vector of predicted responses from a fitted `rpart` object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rpart
predict(object, newdata,
       type = c("vector", "prob", "class", "matrix"),
       na.action = na.pass, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	fitted model object of class `"rpart"`. This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the `rpart` function.
`newdata`	data frame containing the values at which predictions are required. The predictors referred to in the right side of `formula(object)` must be present by name in `newdata`. If missing, the fitted values are returned.
`type`	character string denoting the type of predicted value returned. If the `rpart` object is a classification tree, then the default is to return `prob` predictions, a matrix whose columns are the probability of the first, second, etc. class. (This agrees with the default behavior of `tree`). Otherwise, a vector result is returned.
`na.action`	a function to determine what should be done with missing values in `newdata`. The default is to pass them down the tree using surrogates in the way selected when the model was built. Other possibilities are `na.omit` and `na.fail`.
`...`	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function predict for class "rpart". It can be invoked by calling predict for an object of the appropriate class, or directly by calling predict.rpart regardless of the class of the object.

Value

A new object is obtained by dropping newdata down the object. For factor predictors, if an observation contains a level not used to grow the tree, it is left at the deepest possible node and frame$yval at the node is the prediction.

If type = "vector":
vector of predicted responses. For regression trees this is the mean response at the node, for Poisson trees it is the estimated response rate, and for classification trees it is the predicted class (as a number).

If type = "prob":
(for a classification tree) a matrix of class probabilities.

If type = "matrix":
a matrix of the full responses (frame$yval2 if this exists, otherwise frame$yval). For regression trees, this is the mean response, for Poisson trees it is the response rate and the number of events at that node in the fitted tree, and for classification trees it is the concatenation of at least the predicted class, the class counts at that node in the fitted tree, and the class probabilities (some versions of **rpart** may contain further columns).

If type = "class":
(for a classification tree) a factor of classifications based on the responses.

See Also

predict, rpart.object

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
predict(z.auto)

fit <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis)
predict(fit, type = "prob")   # class probabilities (default)
predict(fit, type = "vector") # level numbers
predict(fit, type = "class")  # factor
predict(fit, type = "matrix") # level number, class frequencies, probabilities

sub <- c(sample(1:50, 25), sample(51:100, 25), sample(101:150, 25))
fit <- rpart(Species ~ ., data = iris, subset = sub)
fit
table(predict(fit, iris[-sub,], type = "class"), iris[-sub, "Species"])
```

---

print.rpart *Print an Rpart Object*

Description

This function prints an rpart object. It is a method for the generic function print of class "rpart".

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rpart
print(x, minlength = 0, spaces = 2, cp, digits = getOption("digits"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
minlength	Controls the abbreviation of labels: see labels.rpart.
spaces	the number of spaces to indent nodes of increasing depth.
digits	the number of digits of numbers to print.
cp	prune all nodes with a complexity less than cp from the printout. Ignored if unspecified.
...	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function print for class "rpart". It can be invoked by calling print for an object of the appropriate class, or directly by calling print.rpart regardless of the class of the object.

Side Effects

A semi-graphical layout of the contents of x$frame is printed. Indentation is used to convey the tree topology. Information for each node includes the node number, split, size, deviance, and fitted value. For the "class" method, the class probabilities are also printed.

See Also

print, rpart.object, summary.rpart, printcp

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
z.auto
## Not run: node), split, n, deviance, yval
      * denotes terminal node

 1) root 60 1354.58300 24.58333
   2) Weight>=2567.5 45  361.20000 22.46667
     4) Weight>=3087.5 22   61.31818 20.40909 *
     5) Weight<3087.5 23  117.65220 24.43478
      10) Weight>=2747.5 15   60.40000 23.80000 *
      11) Weight<2747.5 8   39.87500 25.62500 *
   3) Weight<2567.5 15  186.93330 30.93333 *

## End(Not run)
```

printcp *Displays CP table for Fitted Rpart Object*

Description

Displays the cp table for fitted rpart object.

Usage

```
printcp(x, digits = getOption("digits") - 2)
```

Arguments

x	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
digits	the number of digits of numbers to print.

Details

Prints a table of optimal prunings based on a complexity parameter.

See Also

summary.rpart, rpart.object

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
printcp(z.auto)
## Not run:
Regression tree:
rpart(formula = Mileage ~ Weight, data = car.test.frame)

Variables actually used in tree construction:
[1] Weight

Root node error: 1354.6/60 = 22.576

        CP nsplit rel error  xerror     xstd
1 0.595349      0   1.00000 1.03436 0.178526
2 0.134528      1   0.40465 0.60508 0.105217
3 0.012828      2   0.27012 0.45153 0.083330
4 0.010000      3   0.25729 0.44826 0.076998

## End(Not run)
```

prune.rpart *Cost-complexity Pruning of an Rpart Object*

Description

Determines a nested sequence of subtrees of the supplied rpart object by recursively snipping off the least important splits, based on the complexity parameter (cp).

Usage

```
prune(tree, ...)

## S3 method for class rpart
prune(tree, cp, ...)
```

Arguments

tree	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
cp	Complexity parameter to which the rpart object will be trimmed.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

A new rpart object that is trimmed to the value cp.

See Also

rpart

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
zp <- prune(z.auto, cp = 0.1)
plot(zp) #plot smaller rpart object
```

residuals.rpart *Residuals From a Fitted Rpart Object*

Description

Method for residuals for an rpart object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rpart
residuals(object, type = c("usual", "pearson", "deviance"), ...)
```

Arguments

object	fitted model object of class "rpart".
type	Indicates the type of residual desired. For regression or anova trees all three residual definitions reduce to y - fitted. This is the residual returned for user method trees as well. For classification trees the usual residuals are the misclassification losses L(actual, predicted) where L is the loss matrix. With default losses this residual is 0/1 for correct/incorrect classification. The pearson residual is (1-fitted)/sqrt(fitted(1-fitted)) and the deviance residual is sqrt(minus twice logarithm of fitted). For poisson and exp (or survival) trees, the usual residual is the observed - expected number of events. The pearson and deviance residuals are as defined in McCullagh and Nelder.
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

Vector of residuals of type type from a fitted rpart object.

References

McCullagh P. and Nelder, J. A. (1989) *Generalized Linear Models*. London: Chapman and Hall.

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(skips ~ Opening + Solder + Mask + PadType + Panel,
             data = solder, method = "anova")
summary(residuals(fit))
plot(predict(fit),residuals(fit))
```

---

rpart *Recursive Partitioning and Regression Trees*

Description

Fit a rpart model

Usage

```
rpart(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action = na.rpart, method,
      model = FALSE, x = FALSE, y = TRUE, parms, control, cost, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula, with a response but no interaction terms. If this a a data frome, that is taken as the model frame (see model.frame).
data	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables named in the formula.
weights	optional case weights.
subset	optional expression saying that only a subset of the rows of the data should be used in the fit.

na.action	the default action deletes all observations for which y is missing, but keeps those in which one or more predictors are missing.
method	one of "anova", "poisson", "class" or "exp". If method is missing then the routine tries to make an intelligent guess. If y is a survival object, then method = "exp" is assumed, if y has 2 columns then method = "poisson" is assumed, if y is a factor then method = "class" is assumed, otherwise method = "anova" is assumed. It is wisest to specify the method directly, especially as more criteria may added to the function in future. Alternatively, method can be a list of functions named init, split and eval. Examples are given in the file 'tests/usersplits.R' in the sources, and in the vignettes 'User Written Split Functions'.
model	if logical: keep a copy of the model frame in the result? If the input value for model is a model frame (likely from an earlier call to the rpart function), then this frame is used rather than constructing new data.
x	keep a copy of the x matrix in the result.
y	keep a copy of the dependent variable in the result. If missing and model is supplied this defaults to FALSE.
parms	optional parameters for the splitting function. Anova splitting has no parameters. Poisson splitting has a single parameter, the coefficient of variation of the prior distribution on the rates. The default value is 1. Exponential splitting has the same parameter as Poisson. For classification splitting, the list can contain any of: the vector of prior probabilities (component prior), the loss matrix (component loss) or the splitting index (component split). The priors must be positive and sum to 1. The loss matrix must have zeros on the diagonal and positive off-diagonal elements. The splitting index can be gini or information. The default priors are proportional to the data counts, the losses default to 1, and the split defaults to gini.
control	a list of options that control details of the rpart algorithm. See rpart.control.
cost	a vector of non-negative costs, one for each variable in the model. Defaults to one for all variables. These are scalings to be applied when considering splits, so the improvement on splitting on a variable is divided by its cost in deciding which split to choose.
...	arguments to rpart.control may also be specified in the call to rpart. They are checked against the list of valid arguments.

Details

This differs from the tree function in S mainly in its handling of surrogate variables. In most details it follows Breiman *et. al* (1984) quite closely. package **tree** provides a re-implementation of tree.

Value

An object of class rpart. See rpart.object.

References

Breiman L., Friedman J. H., Olshen R. A., and Stone, C. J. (1984) *Classification and Regression Trees.* Wadsworth.

See Also

rpart.control, rpart.object, summary.rpart, print.rpart

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis)
fit2 <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis,
              parms = list(prior = c(.65,.35), split = "information"))
fit3 <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis,
              control = rpart.control(cp = 0.05))
par(mfrow = c(1,2), xpd = NA) # otherwise on some devices the text is clipped
plot(fit)
text(fit, use.n = TRUE)
plot(fit2)
text(fit2, use.n = TRUE)
```

---

rpart.control *Control for Rpart Fits*

Description

Various parameters that control aspects of the rpart fit.

Usage

```
rpart.control(minsplit = 20, minbucket = round(minsplit/3), cp = 0.01,
              maxcompete = 4, maxsurrogate = 5, usesurrogate = 2, xval = 10,
              surrogatestyle = 0, maxdepth = 30, ...)
```

Arguments

minsplit	the minimum number of observations that must exist in a node in order for a split to be attempted.
minbucket	the minimum number of observations in any terminal <leaf> node. If only one of minbucket or minsplit is specified, the code either sets minsplit to minbucket*3 or minbucket to minsplit/3, as appropriate.
cp	complexity parameter. Any split that does not decrease the overall lack of fit by a factor of cp is not attempted. For instance, with anova splitting, this means that the overall R-squared must increase by cp at each step. The main role of this parameter is to save computing time by pruning off splits that are obviously not worthwhile. Essentially,the user informs the program that any split which does not improve the fit by cp will likely be pruned off by cross-validation, and that hence the program need not pursue it.
maxcompete	the number of competitor splits retained in the output. It is useful to know not just which split was chosen, but which variable came in second, third, etc.
maxsurrogate	the number of surrogate splits retained in the output. If this is set to zero the compute time will be reduced, since approximately half of the computational time (other than setup) is used in the search for surrogate splits.

usesurrogate	how to use surrogates in the splitting process. 0 means display only; an observation with a missing value for the primary split rule is not sent further down the tree. 1 means use surrogates, in order, to split subjects missing the primary variable; if all surrogates are missing the observation is not split. For value 2 ,if all surrogates are missing, then send the observation in the majority direction. A value of 0 corresponds to the action of tree, and 2 to the recommendations of Breiman *et.al* (1984).
xval	number of cross-validations.
surrogatestyle	controls the selection of a best surrogate. If set to 0 (default) the program uses the total number of correct classification for a potential surrogate variable, if set to 1 it uses the percent correct, calculated over the non-missing values of the surrogate. The first option more severely penalizes covariates with a large number of missing values.
maxdepth	Set the maximum depth of any node of the final tree, with the root node counted as depth 0. Values greater than 30 rpart will give nonsense results on 32-bit machines.
...	mop up other arguments.

Value

A list containing the options.

See Also

rpart

---

rpart.exp *Initialization function for exponential fitting*

Description

This function does the initialization step for rpart, when the response is a survival object. It rescales the data so as to have an exponential baseline hazard and then uses Poisson methods. This function would rarely if ever be called directly by a user.

Usage

```
rpart.exp(y, offset, parms, wt)
```

Arguments

y	the response, which will be of class Surv
offset	optional offset
parms	parameters controlling the fit. This is a list with components shrink and method. The first is the prior for the coefficient of variation of the predictions. The second is either "deviance" or "sqrt" and is the measure used for cross-validation. If values are missing the defaults are used, which are "deviance" for the method, and a shrinkage of 1.0 for the deviance method and 0 for the square root.
wt	case weights, if present

Value

a list with the necessary initialization components

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

rpart

`rpart.object` *Recursive Partitioning and Regression Trees Object*

Description

These are objects representing fitted `rpart` trees.

Value

`frame` data frame with one row for each node in the tree. The `row.names` of `frame` contain the (unique) node numbers that follow a binary ordering indexed by node depth. Columns of `frame` include `var`, a factor giving the names of the variables used in the split at each node (leaf nodes are denoted by the level `"<leaf>"`), `n`, the number of observations reaching the node, `wt`, the sum of case weights for observations reaching the node, `dev`, the deviance of the node, `yval`, the fitted value of the response at the node, and `splits`, a two column matrix of left and right split labels for each node. Also included in the frame are `complexity`, the complexity parameter at which this split will collapse, `ncompete`, the number of competitor splits recorded, and `nsurrogate`, the number of surrogate splits recorded.

Extra response information which may be present is in `yval2`, which contains the number of events at the node (poisson tree), or a matrix containing the fitted class, the class counts for each node, the class probabilities and the 'node probability' (classification trees).

`where` an integer vector of the same length as the number of observations in the root node, containing the row number of `frame` corresponding to the leaf node that each observation falls into.

`call` an image of the call that produced the object, but with the arguments all named and with the actual formula included as the formula argument. To re-evaluate the call, say `update(tree)`.

`terms` an object of class `c("terms", "formula")` (see `terms.object`) summarizing the formula. Used by various methods, but typically not of direct relevance to users.

`splits` a numeric matrix describing the splits: only present if there are any. The row label is the name of the split variable, and columns are `count`, the number of observations (which are not missing and are of positive weight) sent left or right by the split (for competitor splits this is the number that would have been sent left or right had this split been used, for surrogate splits it is the number missing the primary split variable which were decided using this surrogate), `ncat`,

the number of categories or levels for the variable (+/-1 for a continuous variable), improve, which is the improvement in deviance given by this split, or, for surrogates, the concordance of the surrogate with the primary, and index, the numeric split point. The last column adj gives the adjusted concordance for surrogate splits. For a factor, the index column contains the row number of the csplit matrix. For a continuous variable, the sign of ncat determines whether the subset x < cutpoint or x > cutpoint is sent to the left.

csplit — an integer matrix. (Only present only if at least one of the split variables is a factor or ordered factor.) There is a row for each such split, and the number of columns is the largest number of levels in the factors. Which row is given by the index column of the splits matrix. The columns record 1 if that level of the factor goes to the left, 3 if it goes to the right, and 2 if that level is not present at this node of the tree (or not defined for the factor).

method — character string: the method used to grow the tree. One of "class", "exp", "poisson", "anova" or "user" (if splitting functions were supplied).

cptable — a matrix of information on the optimal prunings based on a complexity parameter.

variable.importance — a named numeric vector giving the importance of each variable. (Only present if there are any splits.) When printed by summary.rpart these are rescaled to add to 100.

numresp — integer number of responses; the number of levels for a factor response.

parms, control — a record of the arguments supplied, which defaults filled in.

functions — the summary, print and text functions for method used.

ordered — a named logical vector recording for each variable if it was an ordered factor.

na.action — (where relevant) information returned by model.frame on the special handling of NAs derived from the na.action argument.

There may be attributes "xlevels" and "levels" recording the levels of any factor splitting variables and of a factor response respectively.

Optional components include the model frame (model), the matrix of predictors (x) and the response variable (y) used to construct the rpart object.

Structure

The following components must be included in a legitimate rpart object.

See Also

rpart.

---

rsq.rpart *Plots the Approximate R-Square for the Different Splits*

Description

Produces 2 plots. The first plots the r-square (apparent and apparent - from cross-validation) versus the number of splits. The second plots the Relative Error(cross-validation) +/- 1-SE from cross-validation versus the number of splits.

Usage

```
rsq.rpart(x)
```

Arguments

x	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.

Side Effects

Two plots are produced.

Note

The labels are only appropriate for the "anova" method.

Examples

```
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
rsq.rpart(z.auto)
```

---

snip.rpart *Snip Subtrees of an Rpart Object*

Description

Creates a "snipped" rpart object, containing the nodes that remain after selected subtrees have been snipped off. The user can snip nodes using the toss argument, or interactively by clicking the mouse button on specified nodes within the graphics window.

Usage

```
snip.rpart(x, toss)
```

Arguments

x	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
toss	an integer vector containing indices (node numbers) of all subtrees to be snipped off. If missing, user selects branches to snip off as described below.

Details

A dendrogram of rpart is expected to be visible on the graphics device, and a graphics input device (e.g., a mouse) is required. Clicking (the selection button) on a node displays the node number, sample size, response y-value, and Error (dev). Clicking a second time on the same node snips that subtree off and visually erases the subtree. This process may be repeated an number of times. Warnings result from selecting the root or leaf nodes. Clicking the exit button will stop the snipping process and return the resulting rpart object.

See the documentation for the specific graphics device for details on graphical input techniques.

Value

A `rpart` object containing the nodes that remain after specified or selected subtrees have been snipped off.

Warning

Visually erasing the plot is done by over-plotting with the background colour. This will do nothing if the background is transparent (often true for screen devices).

See Also

`plot.rpart`

Examples

```
## dataset not in R
## Not run:
z.survey <- rpart(market.survey) # grow the rpart object
plot(z.survey) # plot the tree
z.survey2 <- snip.rpart(z.survey, toss = 2) # trim subtree at node 2
plot(z.survey2) # plot new tree

# can also interactively select the node using the mouse in the
# graphics window

## End(Not run)
```

---

solder *Soldering of Components on Printed-Circuit Boards*

Description

The `solder` data frame has 720 rows and 6 columns, representing a balanced subset of a designed experiment varying 5 factors on the soldering of components on printed-circuit boards.

Usage

```
solder
```

Format

This data frame contains the following columns:

`Opening` a factor with levels 'L', 'M' and 'S' indicating the amount of clearance around the mounting pad.

`Solder` a factor with levels 'Thick' and 'Thin' giving the thickness of the solder used.

`Mask` a factor with levels 'A1.5', 'A3', 'B3' and 'B6' indicating the type and thickness of mask used.

`PadType` a factor with levels 'D4', 'D6', 'D7', 'L4', 'L6', 'L7', 'L8', 'L9', 'W4' and 'W9' giving the size and geometry of the mounting pad.

`Panel` `1:3` indicating the panel on a board being tested.

`skips` a numeric vector giving the number of visible solder skips.

Source

John M. Chambers and Trevor J. Hastie eds. (1992) *Statistical Models in S*, Wadsworth and Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA.

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(skips ~ Opening + Solder + Mask + PadType + Panel,
             data = solder, method = "anova")
summary(residuals(fit))
plot(predict(fit), residuals(fit))
```

---

stagec *Stage C Prostate Cancer*

Description

A set of 146 patients with stage C prostate cancer, from a study exploring the prognostic value of flow cytometry.

Usage

```
data(stagec)
```

Format

A data frame with 146 observations on the following 8 variables.

`pgtime` Time to progression or last follow-up (years)

`pgstat` 1 = progression observed, 0 = censored

`age` age in years

`eet` early endocrine therapy, 1 = no, 2 = yes

`g2` percent of cells in G2 phase, as found by flow cytometry

`grade` grade of the tumor, Farrow system

`gleason` grade of the tumor, Gleason system

`ploidy` the ploidy status of the tumor, from flow cytometry. Values are '`diploid`', '`tetraploid`', and '`aneuploid`'

Details

A tumor is called diploid (normal complement of dividing cells) if the fraction of cells in G2 phase was determined to be 13% or less. Aneuploid cells have a measurable fraction with a chromosome count that is neither 24 nor 48, for these the G2 percent is difficult or impossible to measure.

Examples

```
require(survival)
rpart(Surv(pgtime, pgstat) ~ ., stagec)
```

summary.rpart *Summarize a Fitted Rpart Object*

Description

Returns a detailed listing of a fitted rpart object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rpart
summary(object, cp = 0, digits = getOption("digits"), file, ...)
```

Arguments

object	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
digits	Number of significant digits to be used in the result.
cp	trim nodes with a complexity of less than cp from the listing.
file	write the output to a given file name. (Full listings of a tree are often quite long).
...	arguments to be passed to or from other methods.

Details

This function is a method for the generic function summary for class "rpart". It can be invoked by calling summary for an object of the appropriate class, or directly by calling summary.rpart regardless of the class of the object.

It prints the call, the table shown by printcp, the variable importance (summing to 100) and details for each node (the details depending on the type of tree).

See Also

summary, rpart.object, printcp.

Examples

```
## a regression tree
z.auto <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
summary(z.auto)

## a classification tree with multiple variables and surrogate splits.
summary(rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data = kyphosis))
```

text.rpart *Place Text on a Dendrogram Plot*

Description

Labels the current plot of the tree dendrogram with text.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class rpart
text(x, splits = TRUE, label, FUN = text, all = FALSE,
     pretty = NULL, digits = getOption("digits") - 3, use.n = FALSE,
     fancy = FALSE, fwidth = 0.8, fheight = 0.8, bg = par("bg"),
     minlength = 1L, ...)
```

Arguments

x	fitted model object of class "rpart". This is assumed to be the result of some function that produces an object with the same named components as that returned by the rpart function.
splits	logical flag. If TRUE (default), then the splits in the tree are labeled with the criterion for the split.
label	For compatibility with rpart2, ignored in this version (with a warning).
FUN	the name of a labeling function, e.g. text.
all	Logical. If TRUE, all nodes are labeled, otherwise just terminal nodes.
minlength	the length to use for factor labels. A value of 1 causes them to be printed as 'a', 'b', ... Larger values use abbreviations of the label names. See the labels.rpart function for details.
pretty	an alternative to the minlength argument, see labels.rpart.
digits	number of significant digits to include in numerical labels.
use.n	Logical. If TRUE, adds to label (\#events level1/ \#events level2/etc. for class, n for anova, and \#events/n for poisson and exp).
fancy	Logical. If TRUE, nodes are represented by ellipses (interior nodes) and rectangles (leaves) and labeled by yval. The edges connecting the nodes are labeled by left and right splits.
fwidth	Relates to option fancy and the width of the ellipses and rectangles. If fwidth < 1 then it is a scaling factor (default = 0.8). If fwidth > 1 then it represents the number of character widths (for current graphical device) to use.
fheight	Relates to option fancy and the height of the ellipses and rectangles. If fheight <1 then it is a scaling factor (default = 0.8). If fheight > 1 then it represents the number of character heights (for current graphical device) to use.
bg	The color used to paint the background to annotations if fancy = TRUE.
...	Graphical parameters may also be supplied as arguments to this function (see par). As labels often extend outside the plot region it can be helpful to specify xpd = TRUE.

Side Effects

the current plot of a tree dendrogram is labeled.

See Also

text, plot.rpart, rpart, labels.rpart, abbreviate

Examples

```
freen.tr <- rpart(y ~ ., freeny)
par(xpd = TRUE)
plot(freen.tr)
text(freen.tr, use.n = TRUE, all = TRUE)
```

---

xpred.rpart *Return Cross-Validated Predictions*

Description

Gives the predicted values for an rpart fit, under cross validation, for a set of complexity parameter values.

Usage

```
xpred.rpart(fit, xval = 10, cp, return.all = FALSE)
```

Arguments

fit	a object of class "rpart".
xval	number of cross-validation groups. This may also be an explicit list of integers that define the cross-validation groups.
cp	the desired list of complexity values. By default it is taken from the cptable component of the fit.
return.all	if FALSE return only the first element of the prediction

Details

Complexity penalties are actually ranges, not values. If the cp values found in the table were .36, .28, and .13, for instance, this means that the first row of the table holds for all complexity penalties in the range $[.36, 1]$, the second row for cp in the range $[.28, .36)$ and the third row for $[.13, .28)$. By default, the geometric mean of each interval is used for cross validation.

Value

A matrix with one row for each observation and one column for each complexity value. If return.all is TRUE and the prediction for each node is a vector, then the result will be an array containing all of the predictions. When the response is categorical, for instance, the result contains the predicted class followed by the class probabilities of the selected terminal node; result[1,,] will be the matrix of predicted classes, result[2,,] the matrix of class 1 probabilities, etc.

See Also

rpart

Examples

```
fit <- rpart(Mileage ~ Weight, car.test.frame)
xmat <- xpred.rpart(fit)
xerr <- (xmat - car.test.frame$Mileage)^2
apply(xerr, 2, sum)   # cross-validated error estimate

# approx same result as rel. error from printcp(fit)
apply(xerr, 2, sum)/var(car.test.frame$Mileage)
printcp(fit)
```

Chapter 28

The spatial package

---

anova.trls *Anova tables for fitted trend surface objects*

Description

Compute analysis of variance tables for one or more fitted trend surface model objects; where anova.trls is called with multiple objects, it passes on the arguments to anovalist.trls.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class trls
anova(object, ...)
anovalist.trls(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	A fitted trend surface model object from surf.ls
...	Further objects of the same kind

Value

anova.trls and anovalist.trls return objects corresponding to their printed tabular output.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

surf.ls

Examples

```
library(stats)
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo0 <- surf.ls(0, topo)
topo1 <- surf.ls(1, topo)
topo2 <- surf.ls(2, topo)
topo3 <- surf.ls(3, topo)
topo4 <- surf.ls(4, topo)
anova(topo0, topo1, topo2, topo3, topo4)
summary(topo4)
```

---

correlogram *Compute Spatial Correlograms*

Description

Compute spatial correlograms of spatial data or residuals.

Usage

```
correlogram(krig, nint, plotit = TRUE,  ...)
```

Arguments

krig	trend-surface or kriging object with columns x, y, and z
nint	number of bins used
plotit	logical for plotting
...	parameters for the plot

Details

Divides range of data into nint bins, and computes the covariance for pairs with separation in each bin, then divides by the variance. Returns results for bins with 6 or more pairs.

Value

x and y coordinates of the correlogram, and cnt, the number of pairs averaged per bin.

Side Effects

Plots the correlogram if plotit = TRUE.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

variogram

Examples

```
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.ls(2, topo)
correlogram(topo.kr, 25)
d <- seq(0, 7, 0.1)
lines(d, expcov(d, 0.7))
```

---

expcov *Spatial Covariance Functions*

Description

Spatial covariance functions for use with `surf.gls`.

Usage

```
expcov(r, d, alpha = 0, se = 1)
gaucov(r, d, alpha = 0, se = 1)
sphercov(r, d, alpha = 0, se = 1, D = 2)
```

Arguments

`r`	vector of distances at which to evaluate the covariance
`d`	range parameter
`alpha`	proportion of nugget effect
`se`	standard deviation at distance zero
`D`	dimension of spheres.

Value

vector of covariance values.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`surf.gls`

Examples

```
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.ls(2, topo)
correlogram(topo.kr, 25)
d <- seq(0, 7, 0.1)
lines(d, expcov(d, 0.7))
```

`Kaver` *Average K-functions from Simulations*

Description

Forms the average of a series of (usually simulated) K-functions.

Usage

```
Kaver(fs, nsim, ...)
```

Arguments

`fs`	full scale for K-fn
`nsim`	number of simulations
`...`	arguments to simulate one point process object

Value

list with components `x` and `y` of the average K-fn on L-scale.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`Kfn`, `Kenvl`

Examples

```
towns <- ppinit("towns.dat")
par(pty="s")
plot(Kfn(towns, 40), type="b")
plot(Kfn(towns, 10), type="b", xlab="distance", ylab="L(t)")
for(i in 1:10) lines(Kfn(Psim(69), 10))
lims <- Kenvl(10,100,Psim(69))
lines(lims$x,lims$lower, lty=2, col="green")
lines(lims$x,lims$upper, lty=2, col="green")
lines(Kaver(10,25,Strauss(69,0.5,3.5)),  col="red")
```

`Kenvl` *Compute Envelope and Average of Simulations of K-fns*

Description

Computes envelope (upper and lower limits) and average of simulations of K-fns

Usage

```
Kenvl(fs, nsim, ...)
```

Arguments

`fs`	full scale for K-fn
`nsim`	number of simulations
`...`	arguments to produce one simulation

Value

list with components

`x`	distances
`lower`	min of K-fns
`upper`	max of K-fns
`aver`	average of K-fns

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`Kfn`, `Kaver`

Examples

```
towns <- ppinit("towns.dat")
par(pty="s")
plot(Kfn(towns, 40), type="b")
plot(Kfn(towns, 10), type="b", xlab="distance", ylab="L(t)")
for(i in 1:10) lines(Kfn(Psim(69), 10))
lims <- Kenvl(10,100,Psim(69))
lines(lims$x,lims$lower, lty=2, col="green")
lines(lims$x,lims$upper, lty=2, col="green")
lines(Kaver(10,25,Strauss(69,0.5,3.5)), col="red")
```

`Kfn` *Compute K-fn of a Point Pattern*

Description

Actually computes $L = \sqrt{K/\pi}$.

Usage

```
Kfn(pp, fs, k=100)
```

Arguments

`pp`	a list such as a pp object, including components `x` and `y`
`fs`	full scale of the plot
`k`	number of regularly spaced distances in (0, `fs`)

Details

relies on the domain D having been set by `ppinit` or `ppregion`.

Value

A list with components

`x`	vector of distances
`y`	vector of L-fn values
`k`	number of distances returned – may be less than `k` if `fs` is too large
`dmin`	minimum distance between pair of points
`lm`	maximum deviation from L(t) = t

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`ppinit`, `ppregion`, `Kaver`, `Kenvl`

Examples

```
towns <- ppinit("towns.dat")
par(pty="s")
plot(Kfn(towns, 10), type="s", xlab="distance", ylab="L(t)")
```

ppgetregion *Get Domain for Spatial Point Pattern Analyses*

Description

Retrieves the rectangular domain `(xl, xu)` × `(yl, yu)` from the underlying `C` code.

Usage

```
ppgetregion()
```

Value

A vector of length four with names `c("xl", "xu", "yl", "yu")`.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`ppregion`

ppinit *Read a Point Process Object from a File*

Description

Read a file in standard format and create a point process object.

Usage

```
ppinit(file)
```

Arguments

`file`	string giving file name

Details

The file should contain

the number of points
a header (ignored)
xl xu yl yu scale
x y (repeated n times)

Value

class `"pp"` object with components `x`, `y`, `xl`, `xu`, `yl`, `yu`

Side Effects

Calls ppregion to set the domain.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

ppregion

Examples

```
towns <- ppinit("towns.dat")
par(pty="s")
plot(Kfn(towns, 10), type="b", xlab="distance", ylab="L(t)")
```

---

pplik *Pseudo-likelihood Estimation of a Strauss Spatial Point Process*

Description

Pseudo-likelihood estimation of a Strauss spatial point process.

Usage

```
pplik(pp, R, ng=50, trace=FALSE)
```

Arguments

pp	a pp object
R	the fixed parameter R
ng	use a ng x ng grid with border R in the domain for numerical integration.
trace	logical? Should function evaluations be printed?

Value

estimate for c in the interval $[0, 1]$.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1988) *Statistical Inference for Spatial Processes.* Cambridge.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

Strauss

Examples

```
pines <- ppinit("pines.dat")
pplik(pines, 0.7)
```

ppregion *Set Domain for Spatial Point Pattern Analyses*

Description

Sets the rectangular domain `(xl, xu)` × `(yl, yu)`.

Usage

```
ppregion(xl = 0, xu = 1, yl = 0, yu = 1)
```

Arguments

`xl`	Either `xl` or a list containing components `xl`, `xu`, `yl`, `yu` (such as a point-process object)
`xu`	
`yl`	
`yu`	

Value

none

Side Effects

initializes variables in the `C` subroutines.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`ppinit`, `ppgetregion`

predict.trls *Predict method for trend surface fits*

Description

Predicted values based on trend surface model object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class trls
predict(object, x, y, ...)
```

Arguments

object	Fitted trend surface model object returned by surf.ls
x	Vector of prediction location eastings (x coordinates)
y	Vector of prediction location northings (y coordinates)
...	further arguments passed to or from other methods.

Value

predict.trls produces a vector of predictions corresponding to the prediction locations. To display the output with image or contour, use trmat or convert the returned vector to matrix form.

References

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

surf.ls, trmat

Examples

```
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo2 <- surf.ls(2, topo)
topo4 <- surf.ls(4, topo)
x <- c(1.78, 2.21)
y <- c(6.15, 6.15)
z2 <- predict(topo2, x, y)
z4 <- predict(topo4, x, y)
cat("2nd order predictions:", z2, "\n4th order predictions:", z4, "\n")
```

---

prmat *Evaluate Kriging Surface over a Grid*

Description

Evaluate Kriging surface over a grid.

Usage

```
prmat(obj, xl, xu, yl, yu, n)
```

Arguments

obj	object returned by surf.gls
xl	limits of the rectangle for grid
xu	
yl	
yu	
n	use n x n grid within the rectangle

Value

list with components x, y and z suitable for contour and image.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

surf.gls, trmat, semat

Examples

```
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.gls(2, expcov, topo, d=0.7)
prsurf <- prmat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 50)
contour(prsurf, levels=seq(700, 925, 25))
```

Psim *Simulate Binomial Spatial Point Process*

Description

Simulate Binomial spatial point process.

Usage

```
Psim(n)
```

Arguments

n	number of points

Details

relies on the region being set by ppinit or ppregion.

Value

list of vectors of x and y coordinates.

Side Effects

uses the random number generator.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

SSI, Strauss

Examples

```
towns <- ppinit("towns.dat")
par(pty="s")
plot(Kfn(towns, 10), type="s", xlab="distance", ylab="L(t)")
for(i in 1:10) lines(Kfn(Psim(69), 10))
```

---

semat *Evaluate Kriging Standard Error of Prediction over a Grid*

Description

Evaluate Kriging standard error of prediction over a grid.

Usage

```
semat(obj, xl, xu, yl, yu, n, se)
```

Arguments

obj	object returned by surf.gls
xl	limits of the rectangle for grid
xu	
yl	
yu	
n	use n x n grid within the rectangle
se	standard error at distance zero as a multiple of the supplied covariance. Otherwise estimated, and it assumed that a correlation function was supplied.

Value

list with components x, y and z suitable for contour and image.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

surf.gls, trmat, prmat

Examples

```
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.gls(2, expcov, topo, d=0.7)
prsurf <- prmat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 50)
contour(prsurf, levels=seq(700, 925, 25))
sesurf <- semat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 30)
contour(sesurf, levels=c(22,25))
```

SSI *Simulates Sequential Spatial Inhibition Point Process*

Description

Simulates SSI (sequential spatial inhibition) point process.

Usage

```
SSI(n, r)
```

Arguments

n	number of points
r	inhibition distance

Details

uses the region set by `ppinit` or `ppregion`.

Value

list of vectors of `x` and `y` coordinates

Side Effects

uses the random number generator.

Warnings

will never return if `r` is too large and it cannot place `n` points.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`Psim`, `Strauss`

Examples

```
towns <- ppinit("towns.dat")
par(pty = "s")
plot(Kfn(towns, 10), type = "b", xlab = "distance", ylab = "L(t)")
lines(Kaver(10, 25, SSI(69, 1.2)))
```

`Strauss` *Simulates Strauss Spatial Point Process*

Description

Simulates Strauss spatial point process.

Usage

```
Strauss(n, c=0, r)
```

Arguments

`n`	number of points
`c`	parameter `c` in $[0, 1]$. `c = 0` corresponds to complete inhibition at distances up to `r`.
`r`	inhibition distance

Details

Uses spatial birth-and-death process for 4`n` steps, or for 40`n` steps starting from a binomial pattern on the first call from an other function. Uses the region set by `ppinit` or `ppregion`.

Value

list of vectors of x and y coordinates

Side Effects

uses the random number generator

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`Psim`, `SSI`

Examples

```
towns <- ppinit("towns.dat")
par(pty="s")
plot(Kfn(towns, 10), type="b", xlab="distance", ylab="L(t)")
lines(Kaver(10, 25, Strauss(69,0.5,3.5)))
```

surf.gls *Fits a Trend Surface by Generalized Least-squares*

Description

Fits a trend surface by generalized least-squares.

Usage

```
surf.gls(np, covmod, x, y, z, nx = 1000, ...)
```

Arguments

np	degree of polynomial surface
covmod	function to evaluate covariance or correlation function
x	x coordinates or a data frame with columns x, y, z
y	y coordinates
z	z coordinates. Will supersede x$z
nx	Number of bins for table of the covariance. Increasing adds accuracy, and increases size of the object.
...	parameters for covmod

Value

list with components

beta	the coefficients
x	
y	
z	and others for internal use only.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

trmat, surf.ls, prmat, semat, expcov, gaucov, sphercov

Examples

```
library(MASS)  # for eqscplot
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.gls(2, expcov, topo, d=0.7)
trsurf <- trmat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 50)
eqscplot(trsurf, type = "n")
contour(trsurf, add = TRUE)

prsurf <- prmat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 50)
```

```
contour(prsurf, levels=seq(700, 925, 25))
sesurf <- semat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 30)
eqscplot(sesurf, type = "n")
contour(sesurf, levels = c(22, 25), add = TRUE)
```

`surf.ls` *Fits a Trend Surface by Least-squares*

Description

Fits a trend surface by least-squares.

Usage

```
surf.ls(np, x, y, z)
```

Arguments

`np`	degree of polynomial surface
`x`	x coordinates or a data frame with columns `x`, `y`, `z`
`y`	y coordinates
`z`	z coordinates. Will supersede `x$z`

Value

list with components

`beta`	the coefficients
`x`	
`y`	
`z`	and others for internal use only.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

`trmat`, `surf.gls`

Examples

```
library(MASS)  # for eqscplot
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.ls(2, topo)
trsurf <- trmat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 50)
eqscplot(trsurf, type = "n")
contour(trsurf, add = TRUE)
points(topo)

eqscplot(trsurf, type = "n")
contour(trsurf, add = TRUE)
plot(topo.kr, add = TRUE)
title(xlab= "Circle radius proportional to Cooks influence statistic")
```

---

trls.influence *Regression diagnostics for trend surfaces*

Description

This function provides the basic quantities which are used in forming a variety of diagnostics for checking the quality of regression fits for trend surfaces calculated by `surf.ls`.

Usage

```
trls.influence(object)
## S3 method for class trls
plot(x, border = "red", col = NA, pch = 4, cex = 0.6,
     add = FALSE, div = 8, ...)
```

Arguments

`object, x`	Fitted trend surface model from `surf.ls`
`div`	scaling factor for influence circle radii in `plot.trls`
`add`	add influence plot to existing graphics if `TRUE`
`border, col, pch, cex, ...`	additional graphical parameters

Value

`trls.influence` returns a list with components:

`r`	raw residuals as given by `residuals.trls`
`hii`	diagonal elements of the Hat matrix
`stresid`	standardised residuals
`Di`	Cook's statistic

References

Unwin, D. J., Wrigley, N. (1987) Towards a general-theory of control point distribution effects in trend surface models. *Computers and Geosciences,* **13**, 351–355.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

surf.ls, influence.measures, plot.lm

Examples

```
library(MASS)  # for eqscplot
data(topo, package = "MASS")
topo2 <- surf.ls(2, topo)
infl.topo2 <- trls.influence(topo2)
(cand <- as.data.frame(infl.topo2)[abs(infl.topo2$stresid) > 1.5, ])
cand.xy <- topo[as.integer(rownames(cand)), c("x", "y")]
trsurf <- trmat(topo2, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 50)
eqscplot(trsurf, type = "n")
contour(trsurf, add = TRUE, col = "grey")
plot(topo2, add = TRUE, div = 3)
points(cand.xy, pch = 16, col = "orange")
text(cand.xy, labels = rownames(cand.xy), pos = 4, offset = 0.5)
```

---

trmat *Evaluate Trend Surface over a Grid*

Description

Evaluate trend surface over a grid.

Usage

```
trmat(obj, xl, xu, yl, yu, n)
```

Arguments

obj	object returned by surf.ls or surf.gls
xl	limits of the rectangle for grid
xu	
yl	
yu	
n	use n x n grid within the rectangle

Value

list with components x, y and z suitable for contour and image.

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

surf.ls, surf.gls

Examples

```
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.ls(2, topo)
trsurf <- trmat(topo.kr, 0, 6.5, 0, 6.5, 50)
```

---

variogram *Compute Spatial Variogram*

Description

Compute spatial (semi-)variogram of spatial data or residuals.

Usage

```
variogram(krig, nint, plotit = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

`krig`	trend-surface or kriging object with columns `x`, `y`, and `z`
`nint`	number of bins used
`plotit`	logical for plotting
`...`	parameters for the plot

Details

Divides range of data into `nint` bins, and computes the average squared difference for pairs with separation in each bin. Returns results for bins with 6 or more pairs.

Value

`x` and `y` coordinates of the variogram and `cnt`, the number of pairs averaged per bin.

Side Effects

Plots the variogram if `plotit = TRUE`

References

Ripley, B. D. (1981) *Spatial Statistics.* Wiley.

Venables, W. N. and Ripley, B. D. (2002) *Modern Applied Statistics with S.* Fourth edition. Springer.

See Also

correlogram

Examples

```
data(topo, package="MASS")
topo.kr <- surf.ls(2, topo)
variogram(topo.kr, 25)
```

Chapter 29

The survival package

---

aareg *Aalen's additive regression model for censored data*

Description

Returns an object of class "aareg" that represents an Aalen model.

Usage

```
aareg(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
   qrtol=1e-07, nmin, dfbeta=FALSE, taper=1,
   test = c(aalen, variance, nrisk),
    model=FALSE, x=FALSE, y=FALSE)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula object, with the response on the left of a '~' operator and the terms, separated by + operators, on the right. The response must be a Surv object. Due to a particular computational approach that is used, the model MUST include an intercept term. If "-1" is used in the model formula the program will ignore it.
data	data frame in which to interpret the variables named in the formula, subset, and weights arguments. This may also be a single number to handle some speci al cases – see below for details. If data is missi ng, the variables in the model formula should be in the search path.
weights	vector of observation weights. If supplied, the fitting algorithm minimizes the sum of the weights multiplied by the squared residuals (see below for additional technical details). The length of weights must be the same as the number of observations. The weights must be nonnegative and it i s recommended that they be strictly positive, since zero weights are ambiguous. To exclude particular observations from the model, use the subset argument instead of zero weights.
subset	expression specifying which subset of observations should be used in the fit. Th is can be a logical vector (which is replicated to have length equal to the numb er of observations), a numeric vector indicating the observation numbers to be i ncluded, or a character vector of the observation names that should be included. All observations are included by default.

na.action	a function to filter missing data. This is applied to the model.fr ame after any subset argument has be en applied. The default is na.fail, which returns a n error if any missing values are found. An alternative is na.excl ude, which deletes observations that contain one or more missing values.
qrtol	tolerance for detection of singularity in the QR decomposition
nmin	minimum number of observations for an estimate; defaults to 3 times the number of covariates. This essentially truncates the computations near the tail of the data set, when n is small and the calcualtions can become numerically unstable.
dfbeta	should the array of dfbeta residuals be computed. This implies computation of the sandwich variance estimate. The residuals will always be computed if there is a cluster term in the model formula.
taper	allows for a smoothed variance estimate. Var(x), where x is the set of covariates, is an important component of the calculations for the Aalen regression model. At any given time point t, it is computed over all subjects who are still at risk at time t. The tape argument allows smoothing these estimates, for example taper=(1:4)/4 would cause the variance estimate used at any event time to be a weighted average of the estimated variance matrices at the last 4 death times, with a weight of 1 for the current death time and decreasing to 1/4 for prior event times. The default value gives the standard Aalen model.
test	selects the weighting to be used, for computing an overall "average" coefficient vector over time and the subsequent test for equality to zero.
model, x, y	should copies of the model frame, the x matrix of predictors, or the response vector y be included in the saved result.

Details

The Aalen model assumes that the cumulative hazard H(t) for a subject can be expressed as a(t) + X B(t), where a(t) is a time-dependent intercept term, X is the vector of covariates for the subject (possibly time-dependent), and B(t) is a time-dependent matrix of coefficients. The estimates are inheritly non-parametric; a fit of the model will normally be followed by one or more plots of the estimates.

The estimates may become unstable near the tail of a data set, since the increment to B at time t is based on the subjects still at risk at time t. The tolerance and/or nmin parameters may act to truncate the estimate before the last death. The taper argument can also be used to smooth out the tail of the curve. In practice, the addition of a taper such as 1:10 appears to have little effect on death times when n is still reasonably large, but can considerably dampen wild occilations in the tail of the plot.

Value

an object of class "aareg" representing the fit, with the following components:

n	vector containing the number of observations in the data set, the number of event times, and the number of event times used in the computation
times	vector of sorted event times, which may contain duplicates
nrisk	vector containing the number of subjects at risk, of the same length as times
coefficient	matrix of coefficients, with one row per event and one column per covariate
test.statistic	the value of the test statistic, a vector with one element per covariate
test.var	variance-covariance matrix for the test
test	the type of test; a copy of the test argument above
tweight	matrix of weights used in the computation, one row per event
call	a copy of the call that produced this result

References

Aalen, O.O. (1989). A linear regression model for the analysis of life times. Statistics in Medicine, 8:907-925.

Aalen, O.O (1993). Further results on the non-parametric linear model in survival analysis. Statistics in Medicine. 12:1569-1588.

See Also

print.aareg, summary.aareg, plot.aareg

Examples

```
# Fit a model to the lung cancer data set
lfit <- aareg(Surv(time, status) ~ age + sex + ph.ecog, data=lung,
                     nmin=1)
## Not run:
lfit
Call:
aareg(formula = Surv(time, status) ~ age + sex + ph.ecog, data = lung, nmin = 1
        )

  n=227 (1 observations deleted due to missing values)
    138 out of 138 unique event times used

              slope      coef se(coef)     z        p
Intercept  5.26e-03  5.99e-03 4.74e-03  1.26 0.207000
      age  4.26e-05  7.02e-05 7.23e-05  0.97 0.332000
      sex -3.29e-03 -4.02e-03 1.22e-03 -3.30 0.000976
  ph.ecog  3.14e-03  3.80e-03 1.03e-03  3.70 0.000214

Chisq=26.73 on 3 df, p=6.7e-06; test weights=aalen

plot(lfit[4], ylim=c(-4,4))  # Draw a plot of the function for ph.ecog

## End(Not run)
lfit2 <- aareg(Surv(time, status) ~ age + sex + ph.ecog, data=lung,
                  nmin=1, taper=1:10)
## Not run: lines(lfit2[4], col=2)  # Nearly the same, until the last point

# A fit to the mulitple-infection data set of children with
# Chronic Granuomatous Disease.  See section 8.5 of Therneau and Grambsch.
fita2 <- aareg(Surv(tstart, tstop, status) ~ treat + age + inherit +
                         steroids + cluster(id), data=cgd)
## Not run:
  n= 203
    69 out of 70 unique event times used

                     slope      coef se(coef) robust se     z        p
Intercept         0.004670  0.017800 0.002780  0.003910  4.55 5.30e-06
treatrIFN-g      -0.002520 -0.010100 0.002290  0.003020 -3.36 7.87e-04
age              -0.000101 -0.000317 0.000115  0.000117 -2.70 6.84e-03
inheritautosomal  0.001330  0.003830 0.002800  0.002420  1.58 1.14e-01
steroids          0.004620  0.013200 0.010600  0.009700  1.36 1.73e-01

Chisq=16.74 on 4 df, p=0.0022; test weights=aalen
```

```
## End(Not run)
```

---

agreg.fit *Cox model fitting functions*

Description

These are the the functions called by coxph that do the actual computation. In certain situations, e.g. a simulation, it may be advantagous to call these directly rather than the usual coxph call using a model formula.

Usage

```
agreg.fit(x, y, strata, offset, init, control, weights, method, rownames)
coxph.fit(x, y, strata, offset, init, control, weights, method, rownames)
```

Arguments

x	Matix of predictors. This should *not* include an intercept.
y	a Surv object containing either 2 columns (coxph.fit) or 3 columns (agreg.fit).
strata	a vector containing the stratification, or NULL
offset	optional offset vector
init	initial values for the coefficients
control	the result of a call to coxph.control
weights	optional vector of weights
method	method for hanling ties, one of "breslow" or "efron"
rownames	this is only needed for a NULL model, in which case it contains the rownames (if any) of the original data.

Details

This routine does no checking that arguments are the proper length or type. Only use it if you know what you are doing!

Value

a list containing results of the fit

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

coxph

aml *Acute Myelogenous Leukemia survival data*

Description

Survival in patients with Acute Myelogenous Leukemia. The question at the time was whether the standard course of chemotherapy should be extended ('maintainance') for additional cycles.

Usage

```
aml
leukemia
```

Format

time:	survival or censoring time
status:	censoring status
x:	maintenance chemotherapy given? (factor)

Source

Rupert G. Miller (1997), *Survival Analysis*. John Wiley & Sons. ISBN: 0-471-25218-2.

anova.coxph *Analysis of Deviance for a Cox model.*

Description

Compute an analysis of deviance table for one or more Cox model fits.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class coxph
anova(object, ...,  test = Chisq)
```

Arguments

object	An object of class coxph
...	Further coxph objects
test	a character string. The appropriate test is a chisquare, all other choices result in no test being done.

Details

Specifying a single object gives a sequential analysis of deviance table for that fit. That is, the reductions in the model log-likelihood as each term of the formula is added in turn are given in as the rows of a table, plus the log-likelihoods themselves. A robust variance estimate is normally used in situations where the model may be mis-specified, e.g., multiple events per subject. In this case a comparison of partial-likelihood values does not make sense, and anova will refuse to print results.

If more than one object is specified, the table has a row for the degrees of freedom and loglikelihood for each model. For all but the first model, the change in degrees of freedom and loglik is also given. (This only make statistical sense if the models are nested.) It is conventional to list the models from smallest to largest, but this is up to the user.

The table will optionally contain test statistics (and P values) comparing the reduction in loglik for each row.

Value

An object of class "anova" inheriting from class "data.frame".

Warning

The comparison between two or more models by anova or will only be valid if they are fitted to the same dataset. This may be a problem if there are missing values.

See Also

coxph, anova.

Examples

```
fit <- coxph(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ resid.ds *rx + ecog.ps, data = ovarian)
anova(fit)
fit2 <- coxph(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ resid.ds +rx + ecog.ps, data=ovarian)
anova(fit2,fit)
```

---

attrassign *Create new-style "assign" attribute*

Description

The "assign" attribute on model matrices describes which columns come from which terms in the model formula. It has two versions. R uses the original version, but the alternate version found in S-plus is sometimes useful.

Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
attrassign(object, tt,...)
## S3 method for class lm
attrassign(object,...)
```

Arguments

object	model matrix or linear model object
tt	terms object
...	ignored

Details

For instance consider the following

```
survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ age + sex + factor(ph.ecog), lung)
```

R gives the compact for for assign, a vector (0, 1, 2, 3, 3, 3); which can be read as "the first column of the X matrix (intercept) goes with none of the terms, the second column of X goes with term 1 of the model equation, the third column of X with term 2, and columns 4-6 with term 3".

The alternate (S-Plus default) form is a list

```
$(Intercept)     1
$age             2
$sex             3
$factor(ph.ecog) 4 5 6
```

Value

A list with names corresponding to the term names and elements that are vectors indicating which columns come from which terms

See Also

terms,model.matrix

Examples

```
formula <- Surv(time,status)~factor(ph.ecog)
tt <- terms(formula)
mf <- model.frame(tt,data=lung)
mm <- model.matrix(tt,mf)
## a few rows of data
mm[1:3,]
## old-style assign attribute
attr(mm,"assign")
## alternate style assign attribute
attrassign(mm,tt)
```

basehaz *Alias for the survfit function*

Description

Compute the predicted survival curve for a Cox model.

Usage

```
basehaz(fit, centered=TRUE)
```

Arguments

fit	a coxph fit
centered	if TRUE return data from a predicted survival curve at the mean values of the covariates fit$mean, if FALSE return a prediction for all covariates equal to zero.

Details

This function is simply an alias for survfit, which is the actual function that does all the computations. See the manual page for that function for the preferred use. This function survives only for backwards support of prior usage.

The function returns a data frame containing the time, cumhaz and optionally the strata (if the fitted Cox model used a strata statement), which are copied the survfit result. If there are factor variables in the model, then the default predictions at the "mean" are meaningless since they do not correspond to any possible subject; correct results require use of the newdata argument of survfit. Results for all covariates =0 are normally only of use as a building block for further calcuations.

Value

a data frame with variable names of hazard, time and optionally strata. The first is actually the cumulative hazard.

See Also

survfit.coxph

bladder *Bladder Cancer Recurrences*

Description

Data on recurrences of bladder cancer, used by many people to demonstrate methodology for recurrent event modelling.

Bladder1 is the full data set from the study. It contains all three treatment arms and all recurrences for 118 subjects; the maximum observed number of recurrences is 9.

Bladder is the data set that appears most commonly in the literature. It uses only the 85 subjects with nonzero follow-up who were assigned to either thiotepa or placebo, and only the first four recurrences for any patient. The status variable is 1 for recurrence and 0 for everything else (including death for any reason). The data set is laid out in the competing risks format of the paper by Wei, Lin, and Weissfeld.

Bladder2 uses the same subset of subjects as bladder, but formated in the (start, stop] or Anderson-Gill style. Note that in transforming from the WLW to the AG style data set there is a quite common programming mistake that leads to extra follow-up time for 12 subjects: all those with follow-up beyond their 4th recurrence). Over this extended time these subjects are by definition not at risk for another event in the WLW data set.

Usage

```
bladder1
bladder
bladder2
```

Format

bladder1

id:	Patient id
treatment:	Placebo, pyridoxine (vitamin B6), or thiotepa
number:	Initial number of tumours (8=8 or more)
size:	Size (cm) of largest initial tumour
recur:	Number of recurrences
start,stop:	The start and end time of each time interval
status:	End of interval code, 0=censored, 1=recurrence, 2=death from bladder disease, 3=death other/unknown cause
rtumor:	Number of tumors found at the time of a recurrence
rsize:	Size of largest tumor at a recurrence
enum:	Event number (observation number within patient)

bladder

id:	Patient id
rx:	Treatment 1=placebo 2=thiotepa
number:	Initial number of tumours (8=8 or more)
size:	size (cm) of largest initial tumour
stop:	recurrence or censoring time
enum:	which recurrence (up to 4)

bladder2

id:	Patient id

rx:	Treatment 1=placebo 2=thiotepa
number:	Initial number of tumours (8=8 or more)
size:	size (cm) of largest initial tumour
start:	start of interval (0 or previous recurrence time)
stop:	recurrence or censoring time
enum:	which recurrence (up to 4)

Source

Andrews DF, Hertzberg AM (1985), DATA: A Collection of Problems from Many Fields for the Student and Research Worker, New York: Springer-Verlag.

LJ Wei, DY Lin, L Weissfeld (1989), Regression analysis of multivariate incomplete failure time data by modeling marginal distributions. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **84**.

---

cch *Fits proportional hazards regression model to case-cohort data*

Description

Returns estimates and standard errors from relative risk regression fit to data from case-cohort studies. A choice is available among the Prentice, Self-Prentice and Lin-Ying methods for unstratified data. For stratified data the choice is between Borgan I, a generalization of the Self-Prentice estimator for unstratified case-cohort data, and Borgan II, a generalization of the Lin-Ying estimator.

Usage

```
cch(formula, data = sys.parent(), subcoh, id, stratum=NULL, cohort.size,
    method =c("Prentice","SelfPrentice","LinYing","I.Borgan","II.Borgan"),
    robust=FALSE)
```

Arguments

formula	A formula object that must have a Surv object as the response. The Surv object must be of type "right", or of type "counting".
subcoh	Vector of indicatorsfor subjects sampled as part of the sub-cohort. Code 1 or TRUE for members of the sub-cohort, 0 or FALSE for others. If data is a data frame then subcoh may be a one-sided formula.
id	Vector of unique identifiers, or formula specifying such a vector.
stratum	A vector of stratum indicators or a formula specifying such a vector
cohort.size	Vector with size of each stratum original cohort from which subcohort was sampled
data	An optional data frame in which to interpret the variables occurring in the formula.
method	Three procedures are available. The default method is "Prentice", with options for "SelfPrentice" or "LinYing".
robust	For "LinYing" only, if robust=TRUE, use design-based standard errors even for phase I

Details

Implements methods for case-cohort data analysis described by Therneau and Li (1999). The three methods differ in the choice of "risk sets" used to compare the covariate values of the failure with those of others at risk at the time of failure. "Prentice" uses the sub-cohort members "at risk" plus the failure if that occurs outside the sub-cohort and is score unbiased. "SelfPren" (Self-Prentice) uses just the sub-cohort members "at risk". These two have the same asymptotic variance-covariance matrix. "LinYing" (Lin-Ying) uses the all members of the sub-cohort and all failures outside the sub-cohort who are "at risk". The methods also differ in the weights given to different score contributions.

The `data` argument must not have missing values for any variables in the model. There must not be any censored observations outside the subcohort.

Value

An object of class "cch" incorporating a list of estimated regression coefficients and two estimates of their asymptotic variance-covariance matrix.

`coef`	regression coefficients.
`naive.var`	Self-Prentice model based variance-covariance matrix.
`var`	Lin-Ying empirical variance-covariance matrix.

Author(s)

Norman Breslow, modified by Thomas Lumley

References

Prentice, RL (1986). A case-cohort design for epidemiologic cohort studies and disease prevention trials. Biometrika 73: 1–11.

Self, S and Prentice, RL (1988). Asymptotic distribution theory and efficiency results for case-cohort studies. Annals of Statistics 16: 64–81.

Lin, DY and Ying, Z (1993). Cox regression with incomplete covariate measurements. Journal of the American Statistical Association 88: 1341–1349.

Barlow, WE (1994). Robust variance estimation for the case-cohort design. Biometrics 50: 1064–1072

Therneau, TM and Li, H (1999). Computing the Cox model for case-cohort designs. Lifetime Data Analysis 5: 99–112.

Borgan, *O*, Langholz, B, Samuelsen, SO, Goldstein, L and Pogoda, J (2000) Exposure stratified case-cohort designs. Lifetime Data Analysis 6, 39-58.

See Also

`twophase` and `svycoxph` in the "survey" package for more general two-phase designs. http://faculty.washington.edu/tlumley/survey/

Examples

```
## The complete Wilms Tumor Data
## (Breslow and Chatterjee, Applied Statistics, 1999)
## subcohort selected by simple random sampling.
##
```

```
subcoh <- nwtco$in.subcohort
selccoh <- with(nwtco, rel==1|subcoh==1)
ccoh.data <- nwtco[selccoh,]
ccoh.data$subcohort <- subcoh[selccoh]
## central-lab histology
ccoh.data$histol <- factor(ccoh.data$histol,labels=c("FH","UH"))
## tumour stage
ccoh.data$stage <- factor(ccoh.data$stage,labels=c("I","II","III","IV"))
ccoh.data$age <- ccoh.data$age/12 # Age in years

##
## Standard case-cohort analysis: simple random subcohort
##

fit.ccP <- cch(Surv(edrel, rel) ~ stage + histol + age, data =ccoh.data,
   subcoh = ~subcohort, id=~seqno, cohort.size=4028)


fit.ccP

fit.ccSP <- cch(Surv(edrel, rel) ~ stage + histol + age, data =ccoh.data,
   subcoh = ~subcohort, id=~seqno, cohort.size=4028, method="SelfPren")

summary(fit.ccSP)

##
## (post-)stratified on instit
##
stratsizes<-table(nwtco$instit)
fit.BI<- cch(Surv(edrel, rel) ~ stage + histol + age, data =ccoh.data,
   subcoh = ~subcohort, id=~seqno, stratum=~instit, cohort.size=stratsizes,
   method="I.Borgan")

summary(fit.BI)
```

---

cgd *Chronic Granulotomous Disease data*

Description

Data are from a placebo controlled trial of gamma interferon in chronic granulotomous disease (CGD). Contains the data on time to serious infections observed through end of study for each patient.

Usage

```
cgd
```

Format

id subject identifiction number

center enrolling center

random date of randomization

treatment placebo or gamma interferon

sex sex

age age in years, at study entry

height height in cm at study entry

weight weight in kg at study entry

inherit pattern of inheritance

steroids use of steroids at study entry,1=yes

propylac use of prophylactic antibiotics at study entry

hos.cat a categorization of the centers into 4 groups

tstart, tstop start and end of each time interval

status 1=the interval ends with an infection

enum observation number within subject

Details

The cgd0 data set is in the form found in the references, with one line per patient and no recoding of the variables. The cgd data set (this one) has been cast into (start, stop] format with one line per event, and covariates such as center recoded as factors to include meaningful labels.

Source

Fleming and Harrington, Counting Processes and Survival Analysis, appendix D.2.

See Also

link{cgd0}

---

cgd0 *Chronic Granulotomous Disease data*

Description

Data are from a placebo controlled trial of gamma interferon in chronic granulotomous disease (CGD). Contains the data on time to serious infections observed through end of study for each patient.

Usage

```
cgd0
```

Format

id subject identifiction number

center enrolling center

random date of randomization

treatment placebo or gamma interferon

sex sex

age age in years, at study entry

height height in cm at study entry

weight weight in kg at study entry

inherit pattern of inheritance

steroids use of steroids at study entry,1=yes

propylac use of prophylactic antibiotics at study entry

hos.cat a categorization of the centers into 4 groups

futime days to last follow-up

etime1-etime7 up to 7 infection times for the subject

Details

The `cgdraw` data set (this one) is in the form found in the references, with one line per patient and no recoding of the variables.

The `cgd` data set has been further processed so as to have one line per event, with covariates such as center recoded as factors to include meaningful labels.

Source

Fleming and Harrington, Counting Processes and Survival Analysis, appendix D.2.

See Also

`cgd`

`clogit` *Conditional logistic regression*

Description

Estimates a logistic regression model by maximising the conditional likelihood. Uses a model formula of the form `case.status~exposure+strata(matched.set)`. The default is to use the exact conditional likelihood, a commonly used approximate conditional likelihood is provided for compatibility with older software.

Usage

```
clogit(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
 method=c("exact", "approximate", "efron", "breslow"),
 ...)
```

Arguments

formula	Model formula
data	data frame
weights	optional, names the variable containing case weights
subset	optional, subset the data
na.action	optional na.action argument. By default the global option na.action is used.
method	use the correct (exact) calculation in the conditional likelihood or one of the approximations
...	optional arguments, which will be passed to coxph.control

Details

It turns out that the logliklihood for a conditional logistic regresson model = loglik from a Cox model with a particular data structure. Proving this is a nice homework exercise for a PhD statistics class; not too hard, but the fact that it is true is surprising.

When a well tested Cox model routine is available many packages use this 'trick' rather than writing a new software routine from scratch, and this is what the clogit routine does. In detail, a stratified Cox model with each case/control group assigned to its own stratum, time set to a constant, status of 1=case 0=control, and using the exact partial likelihood has the same likelihood formula as a conditional logistic regression. The clogit routine creates the necessary dummy variable of times (all 1) and the strata, then calls coxph.

The computation of the exact partial likelihood can be very slow, however. If a particular strata had say 10 events out of 20 subjects we have to add up a denominator that involves all possible ways of choosing 10 out of 20, which is 20!/(10! 10!) = 184756 terms. Gail et al describe a fast recursion method which largely ameleorates this; it was incorporated into version 2.36-11 of the survival package. Most of the time conditional logistic modeling is applied data with 1 case + k controls per set, however, where the above the computational issue above does not arise. Thus most users will not notice the change but for others computation time will drop precipitously. The 'appoximate' option maps to the Breslow approximation for the Cox model, for historical reasons.

It is not clear how case weights should be handled. For instance if there are two deaths in a strata, one with weight=1 and one with weight=2, should the likelihood calculation consider all subsets of size 2 or all subsets of size 3? Consequently, case weights are ignored by the routine.

Value

An object of class "clogit", which is a wrapper for a "coxph" object.

References

Michell H Gail, Jay H Lubin and Lawrence V Rubinstein. Likelihood calculations for matched case-control studies and survival studies with tied death times. Biometrika 68:703-707, 1980.

Author(s)

Thomas Lumley

See Also

strata,coxph,glm

Examples

```
## Not run: clogit(case ~ spontaneous + induced + strata(stratum), data=infert)

# A multinomial response recoded to use clogit
#  The revised data set has one copy per possible outcome level, with new
#  variable tocc = target occupation for this copy, and case = whether
#  that is the actual outcome for each subject.
# See the catspec package for more details on the Logan approach.
resp <- levels(logan$occupation)
n <- nrow(logan)
indx <- rep(1:n, length(resp))
logan2 <- data.frame(logan[indx,],
                     id = indx,
                     tocc = factor(rep(resp, each=n)))
logan2$case <- (logan2$occupation == logan2$tocc)
clogit(case ~ tocc + tocc:education + strata(id), logan2)
```

---

cluster *Identify clusters.*

Description

This is a special function used in the context of survival models. It identifies correlated groups of observations, and is used on the right hand side of a formula. Using `cluster()` in a formula implies that robust sandwich variance estimators are desired.

Usage

```
cluster(x)
```

Arguments

x	A character, factor, or numeric variable.

Details

The function's only action is semantic, to mark a variable as the cluster indicator. The resulting variance is what is known as the "working independence" variance in a GEE model. Note that one cannot use both a frailty term and a cluster term in the same model, the first is a mixed-effects approach to correlation and the second a GEE approach, and these don't mix.

Value

x

See Also

coxph, survreg

Examples

```
marginal.model <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ rx + cluster(litter), rats,
                        subset=(sex==f))
frailty.model  <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ rx + frailty(litter), rats,
                        subset=(sex==f))
```

---

colon *Chemotherapy for Stage B/C colon cancer*

Description

These are data from one of the first successful trials of adjuvant chemotherapy for colon cancer. Levamisole is a low-toxicity compound previously used to treat worm infestations in animals; 5-FU is a moderately toxic (as these things go) chemotherapy agent. There are two records per person, one for recurrence and one for death

Usage

```
colon
```

Format

id:	id
study:	1 for all patients
rx:	Treatment - Obs(ervation), Lev(amisole), Lev(amisole)+5-FU
sex:	1=male
age:	in years
obstruct:	obstruction of colon by tumour
perfor:	perforation of colon
adhere:	adherence to nearby organs
nodes:	number of lymph nodes with detectable cancer
time:	days until event or censoring
status:	censoring status
differ:	differentiation of tumour (1=well, 2=moderate, 3=poor)
extent:	Extent of local spread (1=submucosa, 2=muscle, 3=serosa, 4=contiguous structures)
surg:	time from surgery to registration (0=short, 1=long)
node4:	more than 4 positive lymph nodes
etype:	event type: 1=recurrence,2=death

Note

The study is originally described in Laurie (1989). The main report is found in Moertel (1990). This data set is closest to that of the final report in Moertel (1991). A version of the data with less follow-up time was used in the paper by Lin (1994).

References

JA Laurie, CG Moertel, TR Fleming, HS Wieand, JE Leigh, J Rubin, GW McCormack, JB Gerstner, JE Krook and J Malliard. Surgical adjuvant therapy of large-bowel carcinoma: An evaluation of levamisole and the combination of levamisole and fluorouracil: The North Central Cancer Treatment Group and the Mayo Clinic. J Clinical Oncology, 7:1447-1456, 1989.

DY Lin. Cox regression analysis of multivariate failure time data: the marginal approach. Statistics in Medicine, 13:2233-2247, 1994.

CG Moertel, TR Fleming, JS MacDonald, DG Haller, JA Laurie, PJ Goodman, JS Ungerleider, WA Emerson, DC Tormey, JH Glick, MH Veeder and JA Maillard. Levamisole and fluorouracil for adjuvant therapy of resected colon carcinoma. New England J of Medicine, 332:352-358, 1990.

CG Moertel, TR Fleming, JS MacDonald, DG Haller, JA Laurie, CM Tangen, JS Ungerleider, WA Emerson, DC Tormey, JH Glick, MH Veeder and JA Maillard, Fluorouracil plus Levamisole as and effective adjuvant therapy after resection of stage II colon carcinoma: a final report. Annals of Internal Med, 122:321-326, 1991.

---

cox.zph *Test the Proportional Hazards Assumption of a Cox Regression*

Description

Test the proportional hazards assumption for a Cox regression model fit (coxph).

Usage

```
cox.zph(fit, transform="km", global=TRUE)
```

Arguments

fit	the result of fitting a Cox regression model, using the coxph function.
transform	a character string specifying how the survival times should be transformed before the test is performed. Possible values are "km", "rank", "identity" or a function of one argument.
global	should a global chi-square test be done, in addition to the per-variable tests.

Value

an object of class "cox.zph", with components:

table	a matrix with one row for each variable, and optionally a last row for the global test. Columns of the matrix contain the correlation coefficient between transformed survival time and the scaled Schoenfeld residuals, a chi-square, and the two-sided p-value. For the global test there is no appropriate correlation, so an NA is entered into the matrix as a placeholder.
x	the transformed time axis.
y	the matrix of scaled Schoenfeld residuals. There will be one column per variable and one row per event. The row labels contain the original event times (for the identity transform, these will be the same as x).

`call` the calling sequence for the routine.

The computations require the original `x` matrix of the Cox model fit. Thus it saves time if the `x=TRUE` option is used in `coxph`. This function would usually be followed by both a plot and a print of the result. The plot gives an estimate of the time-dependent coefficient `beta(t)`. If the proportional hazards assumption is true, `beta(t)` will be a horizontal line. The printout gives a test for `slope=0`.

References

P. Grambsch and T. Therneau (1994), Proportional hazards tests and diagnostics based on weighted residuals. *Biometrika,* **81**, 515-26.

See Also

`coxph`, `Surv`.

Examples

```
fit <- coxph(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ age + ecog.ps,
             data=ovarian)
temp <- cox.zph(fit)
print(temp)                  # display the results
plot(temp)                   # plot curves
```

---

coxph *Fit Proportional Hazards Regression Model*

Description

Fits a Cox proportional hazards regression model. Time dependent variables, time dependent strata, multiple events per subject, and other extensions are incorporated using the counting process formulation of Andersen and Gill.

Usage

```
coxph(formula, data=, weights, subset,
      na.action, init, control,
      ties=c("efron","breslow","exact"),
      singular.ok=TRUE, robust=FALSE,
      model=FALSE, x=FALSE, y=TRUE, tt, method, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula` a formula object, with the response on the left of a ~ operator, and the terms on the right. The response must be a survival object as returned by the `Surv` function.

`data` a data.frame in which to interpret the variables named in the `formula`, or in the `subset` and the `weights` argument.

`weights` vector of case weights. If `weights` is a vector of integers, then the estimated coefficients are equivalent to estimating the model from data with the individual cases replicated as many times as indicated by `weights`.

subset	expression indicating which subset of the rows of data should be used in the fit. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a missing-data filter function. This is applied to the model.frame after any subset argument has been used. Default is options()$na.action.
init	vector of initial values of the iteration. Default initial value is zero for all variables.
control	Object of class coxph.control specifying iteration limit and other control options. Default is coxph.control(...).
ties	a character string specifying the method for tie handling. If there are no tied death times all the methods are equivalent. Nearly all Cox regression programs use the Breslow method by default, but not this one. The Efron approximation is used as the default here, it is more accurate when dealing with tied death times, and is as efficient computationally. The "exact partial likelihood" is equivalent to a conditional logistic model, and is appropriate when the times are a small set of discrete values. If there are a large number of ties and (start, stop) style survival data the computational time will be excessive.
singular.ok	logical value indicating how to handle collinearity in the model matrix. If TRUE, the program will automatically skip over columns of the X matrix that are linear combinations of earlier columns. In this case the coefficients for such columns will be NA, and the variance matrix will contain zeros. For ancillary calculations, such as the linear predictor, the missing coefficients are treated as zeros.
robust	this argument has been deprecated, use a cluster term in the model instead. (The two options accomplish the same goal – creation of a robust variance – but the second is more flexible).
model	logical value: if TRUE, the model frame is returned in component model.
x	logical value: if TRUE, the x matrix is returned in component x.
y	logical value: if TRUE, the response vector is returned in component y.
tt	optional list of time-transform functions.
method	alternate name for the ties argument.
...	Other arguments will be passed to coxph.control

Details

The proportional hazards model is usually expressed in terms of a single survival time value for each person, with possible censoring. Andersen and Gill reformulated the same problem as a counting process; as time marches onward we observe the events for a subject, rather like watching a Geiger counter. The data for a subject is presented as multiple rows or "observations", each of which applies to an interval of observation (start, stop].

The routine internally scales and centers data to avoid overflow in the argument to the exponential function. These actions do not change the result, but lead to more numerical stability. However, arguments to offset are not scaled since there are situations where a large offset value is a purposefully used. Users should not use normally allow large numeric offset values.

Value

an object of class coxph representing the fit. See coxph.object for details.

Side Effects

Depending on the call, the `predict`, `residuals`, and `survfit` routines may need to reconstruct the x matrix created by `coxph`. It is possible for this to fail, as in the example below in which the predict function is unable to find `tform`.

```
tfun <- function(tform) coxph(tform, data=lung)
fit <- tfun(Surv(time, status) ~ age)
predict(fit)
```

In such a case add the `model=TRUE` option to the `coxph` call to obviate the need for reconstruction, at the expense of a larger `fit` object.

Special terms

There are three special terms that may be used in the model equation. A `strata` term identifies a stratified Cox model; separate baseline hazard functions are fit for each strata. The `cluster` term is used to compute a robust variance for the model. The term `+ cluster(id)` where each value of `id` is unique is equivalent to specifying the `robust=T` argument. If the `id` variable is not unique, it is assumed that it identifies clusters of correlated observations. The robust estimate arises from many different arguments and thus has had many labels. It is variously known as the Huber sandwich estimator, White's estimate (linear models/econometrics), the Horvitz-Thompson estimate (survey sampling), the working independence variance (generalized estimating equations), the infinitesimal jackknife, and the Wei, Lin, Weissfeld (WLW) estimate.

A time-transform term allows variables to vary dynamically in time. In this case the `tt` argument will be a function or a list of functions (if there are more than one tt() term in the model) giving the appropriate transform. See the examples below.

Convergence

In certain data cases the actual MLE estimate of a coefficient is infinity, e.g., a dichotomous variable where one of the groups has no events. When this happens the associated coefficient grows at a steady pace and a race condition will exist in the fitting routine: either the log likelihood converges, the information matrix becomes effectively singular, an argument to exp becomes too large for the computer hardware, or the maximum number of interactions is exceeded. (Nearly always the first occurs.) The routine attempts to detect when this has happened, not always successfully. The primary consequence for he user is that the Wald statistic = coefficient/se(coefficient) is not valid in this case and should be ignored; the likelihood ratio and score tests remain valid however.

Penalized regression

`coxph` can now maximise a penalised partial likelihood with arbitrary user-defined penalty. Supplied penalty functions include ridge regression (ridge), smoothing splines (pspline), and frailty models (frailty).

References

Andersen, P. and Gill, R. (1982). Cox's regression model for counting processes, a large sample study. *Annals of Statistics* **10**, 1100-1120.

Therneau, T., Grambsch, P., Modeling Survival Data: Extending the Cox Model. Springer-Verlag, 2000.

See Also

cluster, strata, Surv, survfit, pspline, frailty, ridge.

Examples

```
# Create the simplest test data set
test1 <- list(time=c(4,3,1,1,2,2,3),
              status=c(1,1,1,0,1,1,0),
              x=c(0,2,1,1,1,0,0),
              sex=c(0,0,0,0,1,1,1))
# Fit a stratified model
coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ x + strata(sex), test1)
# Create a simple data set for a time-dependent model
test2 <- list(start=c(1,2,5,2,1,7,3,4,8,8),
              stop=c(2,3,6,7,8,9,9,9,14,17),
              event=c(1,1,1,1,1,1,1,0,0,0),
              x=c(1,0,0,1,0,1,1,1,0,0))
summary(coxph(Surv(start, stop, event) ~ x, test2))

#
# Create a simple data set for a time-dependent model
#
test2 <- list(start=c(1, 2, 5, 2, 1, 7, 3, 4, 8, 8),
               stop =c(2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9, 9, 9,14,17),
               event=c(1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0),
               x    =c(1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0) )


summary( coxph( Surv(start, stop, event) ~ x, test2))

# Fit a stratified model, clustered on patients

bladder1 <- bladder[bladder$enum < 5, ]
coxph(Surv(stop, event) ~ (rx + size + number) * strata(enum) +
      cluster(id), bladder1)

# Fit a time transform model using current age
coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + tt(age), data=lung,
     tt=function(x,t,...) pspline(x + t/365.25))
```

---

coxph.control *Ancillary arguments for controling coxph fits*

Description

This is used to set various numeric parameters controling a Cox model fit. Typically it would only be used in a call to coxph.

Usage

```
coxph.control(eps = 1e-09, toler.chol = .Machine$double.eps^0.75,
iter.max = 20, toler.inf = sqrt(eps), outer.max = 10)
```

Arguments

eps	Iteration continues until the relative change in the log partial likelihood is less than eps. Must be positive.
toler.chol	Tolerance for detection of singularity during a Cholesky decomposion of the variance matrix, i.e., for detecting a redundant predictor variable.
iter.max	Maximum number of iterations to attempt for convergence.
toler.inf	Tolerance criteria for the warning message about a possible infinite coefficient value.
outer.max	For a penalized coxph model, e.g. with pspline terms, there is an outer loop of iteration to determine the penalty parameters; maximum number of iterations for this outer loop.

Value

a list containing the values of each of the above constants

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

coxph

---

coxph.detail *Details of a Cox Model Fit*

Description

Returns the individual contributions to the first and second derivative matrix, at each unique event time.

Usage

```
coxph.detail(object, riskmat=FALSE)
```

Arguments

object	a Cox model object, i.e., the result of coxph.
riskmat	include the at-risk indicator matrix in the output?

Details

This function may be useful for those who wish to investigate new methods or extensions to the Cox model. The example below shows one way to calculate the Schoenfeld residuals.

Value

a list with components

time	the vector of unique event times
nevent	the number of events at each of these time points.
means	a matrix with one row for each event time and one column for each variable in the Cox model, containing the weighted mean of the variable at that time, over all subjects still at risk at that time. The weights are the risk weights exp(x %*% fit$coef).
nrisk	number of subjects at risk.
score	the contribution to the score vector (first derivative of the log partial likelihood) at each time point.
imat	the contribution to the information matrix (second derivative of the log partial likelihood) at each time point.
hazard	the hazard increment. Note that the hazard and variance of the hazard are always for some particular future subject. This routine uses object$mean as the future subject.
varhaz	the variance of the hazard increment.
x,y	copies of the input data.
strata	only present for a stratified Cox model, this is a table giving the number of time points of component time that were contributed by each of the strata.
riskmat	a matrix with one row for each time and one column for each observation containing a 0/1 value to indicate whether that observation was (1) or was not (0) at risk at the given time point.

See Also

coxph, residuals.coxph

Examples

```
fit   <- coxph(Surv(futime,fustat) ~ age + rx + ecog.ps, ovarian, x=TRUE)
fitd  <- coxph.detail(fit)
#  There is one Schoenfeld residual for each unique death.  It is a
# vector (covariates for the subject who died) - (weighted mean covariate
# vector at that time).  The weighted mean is defined over the subjects
# still at risk, with exp(X beta) as the weight.

events <- fit$y[,2]==1
etime  <- fit$y[events,1]   #the event times --- may have duplicates
indx   <- match(etime, fitd$time)
schoen <- fit$x[events,] - fitd$means[indx,]
```

coxph.object *Proportional Hazards Regression Object*

Description

This class of objects is returned by the coxph class of functions to represent a fitted proportional hazards model. Objects of this class have methods for the functions print, summary, residuals, predict and survfit.

Arguments

coefficients	the vector of coefficients. If the model is over-determined there will be missing values in the vector corresponding to the redundant columns in the model matrix.
var	the variance matrix of the coefficients. Rows and columns corresponding to any missing coefficients are set to zero.
naive.var	this component will be present only if the robust option was true. If so, the var component will contain the robust estimate of variance, and this component will contain the ordinary estimate.
loglik	a vector of length 2 containing the log-likelihood with the initial values and with the final values of the coefficients.
score	value of the efficient score test, at the initial value of the coefficients.
rscore	the robust log-rank statistic, if a robust variance was requested.
wald.test	the Wald test of whether the final coefficients differ from the initial values.
iter	number of iterations used.
linear.predictors	the vector of linear predictors, one per subject. Note that this vector has been centered, see predict.coxph for more details.
residuals	the martingale residuals.
means	vector of column means of the X matrix. Subsequent survival curves are adjusted to this value.
n	the number of observations used in the fit.
nevent	the number of events (usually deaths) used in the fit.
weights	the vector of case weights, if one was used.
method	the computation method used.
na.action	the na.action attribute, if any, that was returned by the na.action routine.
	The object will also contain the following, for documentation see the lm object: terms, assign, formula, call, and, optionally, x, y, and/or frame.

Components

The following components must be included in a legitimate coxph object.

See Also

coxph, coxph.detail, cox.zph, residuals.coxph, survfit, survreg.

coxph.wtest *Compute a quadratic form*

Description

This function is used internally by several survival routines. It computes a simple quadratic form, while properly dealing with missings.

Usage

```
coxph.wtest(var, b, toler.chol = 1e-09)
```

Arguments

var	variance matrix
b	vector
toler.chol	tolerance for the internal choelsky decomposition

Details

Compute b' V-inverse b. Equivalent to sum(b * solve(V,b)), except for the case of redundant covariates in the original model, which lead to NA values in V and b.

Value

a real number

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

dsurvreg *Distributions available in survreg.*

Description

Density, cumulative distribution function, quantile function and random generation for the set of distributions supported by the survreg function.

Usage

```
dsurvreg(x, mean, scale=1, distribution=weibull, parms)
psurvreg(q, mean, scale=1, distribution=weibull, parms)
qsurvreg(p, mean, scale=1, distribution=weibull, parms)
rsurvreg(n, mean, scale=1, distribution=weibull, parms)
```

Arguments

x	vector of quantiles. Missing values (NAs) are allowed.
q	vector of quantiles. Missing values (NAs) are allowed.
p	vector of probabilities. Missing values (NAs) are allowed.
n	number of random deviates to produce
mean	vector of linear predictors for the model. This is replicated to be the same length as p, q or n.
scale	vector of (positive) scale factors. This is replicated to be the same length as p, q or n.
distribution	character string giving the name of the distribution. This must be one of the elements of survreg.distributions
parms	optional parameters, if any, of the distribution. For the t-distribution this is the degrees of freedom.

Details

Elements of q or p that are missing will cause the corresponding elements of the result to be missing.

The location and scale values are as they would be for survreg. The label "mean" was an unfortunate choice (made in mimicry of qnorm); since almost none of these distributions are symmetric it will not actually be a mean, but corresponds instead to the linear predictor of a fitted model. Translation to the usual parameterization found in a textbook is not always obvious. For example, the Weibull distribution is fit using the Extreme value distribution along with a log transformation. Letting $F(t) = 1 - \exp[-(at)^p]$ be the cumulative distribution of the Weibull using a standard parameterization in terms of a and p, the survreg location corresponds to $-\log(a)$ and the scale to $1/p$ (Kalbfleish and Prentice, section 2.2.2).

Value

density (dsurvreg), probability (psurvreg), quantile (qsurvreg), or for the requested distribution with mean and scale parameters mean and sd.

References

Kalbfleish, J. D. and Prentice, R. L. (1970). *The Statistical Analysis of Failure Time Data* Wiley, New York.

See Also

survreg, Normal

Examples

```
# List of distributions available
names(survreg.distributions)
## Not run:
 [1] "extreme"     "logistic"    "gaussian"    "weibull"     "exponential"
 [6] "rayleigh"    "loggaussian" "lognormal"   "loglogistic" "t"

## End(Not run)
# Compare results
all.equal(dsurvreg(1:10, 2, 5, dist=lognormal), dlnorm(1:10, 2, 5))
```

```
# Hazard function for a Weibull distribution
x   <- seq(.1, 3, length=30)
haz <- dsurvreg(x, 2, 3)/ (1-psurvreg(x, 2, 3))
## Not run:
plot(x, haz, log=xy, ylab="Hazard") #line with slope (1/scale -1)

## End(Not run)
```

`flchain` *Assay of serum free light chain for 7874 subjects.*

Description

This is a stratified random sample containing 1/2 of the subjects from a study of the relationship between serum free light chain (FLC) and mortality. The original sample contains samples on approximately 2/3 of the residents of Olmsted County aged 50 or greater.

Usage

```
data(flchain)
```

Format

A data frame with 7874 persons containing the following variables.

`age` age in years

`sex` F=female, M=male

`sample.yr` the calendar year in which a blood sample was obtained

`kappa` serum free light chain, kappa portion

`lambda` serum free light chain, lambda portion

`flc.grp` the FLC group for the subject, as used in the original analysis

`creatinine` serum creatinine

`mgus` 1 if the subject had been diagnosed with monoclonal gammapothy (MGUS)

`futime` days from enrollment until death. Note that there are 3 subjects whose sample was obtained on their death date.

`death` 0=alive at last contact date, 1=dead

`chapter` for those who died, a grouping of their primary cause of death by chapter headings of the International Code of Diseases ICD-9

Details

In 1995 Dr. Robert Kyle embarked on a study to determine the prevalence of monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS) in Olmsted County, Minnesota, a condition which is normally only found by chance from a test (serum electrophoresis) which is ordered for other causes. Later work suggested that one component of immunoglobulin production, the serum free light chain, might be a possible marker for immune disregulation. In 2010 Dr. Angela Dispenzieri and colleagues assayed FLC levels on those samples from the original study for which they had

patient permission and from which sufficient material remained for further testing. They found that elevated FLC levels were indeed associated with higher death rates.

Patients were recruited when they came to the clinic for other appointments, with a final random sample of those who had not yet had a visit since the study began. An interesting side question is whether there are differences between early, mid, and late recruits.

This data set contains an age and sex stratified random sample that includes 7874 of the original 15759 subjects. The original subject identifiers and dates have been removed to protect patient identity. Subsampling was done to further protect this information.

Source

The primary investigator (A Dispenzieri) and statistician (T Therneau) for the study.

References

A Dispenzieri, J Katzmann, R Kyle, D Larson, T Therneau, C Colby, R Clark, G Mead, S Kumar, LJ Melton III and SV Rajkumar (2012). Use of monclonal serum immunoglobulin free light chains to predict overall survival in the general population, Mayo Clinic Proceedings 87:512-523.

R Kyle, T Therneau, SV Rajkumar, D Larson, M Plevak, J Offord, A Dispenzieri, J Katzmann, and LJ Melton, III, 2006, Prevalence of monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance, New England J Medicine 354:1362-1369.

Examples

```
data(flchain)
age.grp <-  cut(flchain$age, c(49,54, 59,64, 69,74,79, 89, 110),
               labels= paste(c(50,55,60,65,70,75,80,90),
                             c(54,59,64,69,74,79,89,109), sep=-))
table(flchain$sex, age.grp)
```

---

frailty *Random effects terms*

Description

The frailty function allows one to add a simple random effects term to a Cox or survreg model.

Usage

```
frailty(x, distribution="gamma", ...)
frailty.gamma(x, sparse = (nclass > 5), theta, df, eps = 1e-05,
         method = c("em","aic", "df", "fixed"), ...)
frailty.gaussian(x, sparse = (nclass > 5), theta, df,
         method =c("reml","aic", "df", "fixed"), ...)
frailty.t(x, sparse = (nclass > 5), theta, df, eps = 1e-05, tdf = 5,
         method = c("aic", "df", "fixed"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	the variable to be entered as a random effect. It is always treated as a factor.
distribution	either the gamma, gaussian or t distribution may be specified. The routines frailty.gamma, frailty.gaussian and frailty.t do the actual work.
...	Arguments for specific distribution, including (but not limited to)
sparse	cutoff for using a sparse coding of the data matrix. If the total number of levels of x is larger than this value, then a sparse matrix approximation is used. The correct cutoff is still a matter of exploration: if the number of levels is very large (thousands) then the non-sparse calculation may not be feasable in terms of both memory and compute time. Likewise, the accuracy of the sparse approximation appears to be related to the maximum proportion of subjects in any one class, being best when no one class has a large membership.
theta	if specified, this fixes the variance of the random effect. If not, the variance is a parameter, and a best solution is sought. Specifying this implies method=fixed.
df	if specified, this fixes the degrees of freedom for the random effect. Specifying this implies method=df. Only one of theta or df should be specified.
method	the method used to select a solution for theta, the variance of the random effect. The fixed corresponds to a user-specified value, and no iteration is done. The df selects the variance such that the degrees of freedom for the random effect matches a user specified value. The aic method seeks to maximize Akiake's information criteria 2*(partial likelihood - df). The em and reml methods are specific to Cox models with gamma and gaussian random effects, respectively. Please see further discussion below.
tdf	the degrees of freedom for the t-distribution.
eps	convergence critera for the iteration on theta.

Details

The frailty plugs into the general penalized modeling framework provided by the coxph and survreg routines. This framework deals with likelihood, penalties, and degrees of freedom; these aspects work well with either parent routine.

Therneau, Grambsch, and Pankratz show how maximum likelihood estimation for the Cox model with a gamma frailty can be accomplished using a general penalized routine, and Ripatti and Palmgren work through a similar argument for the Cox model with a gaussian frailty. Both of these are specific to the Cox model. Use of gamma/ml or gaussian/reml with survreg does not lead to valid results.

The extensible structure of the penalized methods is such that the penalty function, such as frailty or pspine, is completely separate from the modeling routine. The strength of this is that a user can plug in any penalization routine they choose. A weakness is that it is very difficult for the modeling routine to know whether a sensible penalty routine has been supplied.

Note that use of a frailty term implies a mixed effects model and use of a cluster term implies a GEE approach; these cannot be mixed.

The coxme package has superseded this method. It is faster, more stable, and more flexible.

Value

this function is used in the model statment of either coxph or survreg. It's results are used internally.

References

S Ripatti and J Palmgren, Estimation of multivariate frailty models using penalized partial likelihood, Biometrics, 56:1016-1022, 2000.

T Therneau, P Grambsch and VS Pankratz, Penalized survival models and frailty, J Computational and Graphical Statistics, 12:156-175, 2003.

See Also

coxph, survreg

Examples

```
# Random institutional effect
coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ age + frailty(inst, df=4), lung)

# Litter effects for the rats data
rfit2a <- survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ rx +
                  frailty.gaussian(litter, df=13, sparse=FALSE), rats,
                  subset= (sex==f))
rfit2b <- survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ rx +
                  frailty.gaussian(litter, df=13, sparse=TRUE), rats,
                  subset= (sex==f))
```

---

heart *Stanford Heart Transplant data*

Description

Survival of patients on the waiting list for the Stanford heart transplant program.

Usage

```
heart
jasa
jasa1
```

Format

jasa: original data

birth.dt:	birth date
accept.dt:	acceptance into program
tx.date:	transplant date
fu.date:	end of followup
fustat:	dead or alive
surgery:	prior bypass surgery
age:	age (in days)
futime:	followup time
wait.time:	time before transplant
transplant:	transplant indicator
mismatch:	mismatch score
hla.a2:	particular type of mismatch

mscore:	another mismatch score
reject:	rejection occurred

jasa1, heart: processed data

start, stop, event:	Entry and exit time and status for this interval of time
age:	age-48 years
year:	year of acceptance (in years after 1 Nov 1967)
surgery:	prior bypass surgery 1=yes
transplant:	received transplant 1=yes
id:	patient id

Source

J Crowley and M Hu (1977), Covariance analysis of heart transplant survival data. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, **72**, 27–36.

See Also

stanford2

---

is.ratetable *Verify that an object is of class ratetable.*

Description

The function verifies not only the `class` attribute, but the structure of the object.

Usage

```
is.ratetable(x, verbose=FALSE)
```

Arguments

x	the object to be verified.
verbose	if TRUE and the object is not a ratetable, then return a character string describing the way(s) in which x fails to be a proper ratetable object.

Details

Rate tables are used by the `pyears` and `survexp` functions, and normally contain death rates for some population, categorized by age, sex, or other variables. They have a fairly rigid structure, and the `verbose` option can help in creating a new rate table.

Value

returns TRUE if x is a ratetable, and FALSE or a description if it is not.

See Also

pyears, survexp.

Examples

```
is.ratetable(survexp.us)  # True
is.ratetable(cancer)      # False
```

---

kidney *Kidney catheter data*

Description

Data on the recurrence times to infection, at the point of insertion of the catheter, for kidney patients using portable dialysis equipment. Catheters may be removed for reasons other than infection, in which case the observation is censored. Each patient has exactly 2 observations.

This data has often been used to illustrate the use of random effects (frailty) in a survival model. However, one of the males (id 21) is a large outlier, with much longer survival than his peers. If this observation is removed no evidence remains for a random subject effect.

Format

patient:	id
time:	time
status:	event status
age:	in years
sex:	1=male, 2=female
disease:	disease type (0=GN, 1=AN, 2=PKD, 3=Other)
frail:	frailty estimate from original paper

Note

The original paper ignored the issue of tied times and so is not exactly reproduced by the survival package.

Source

CA McGilchrist, CW Aisbett (1991), Regression with frailty in survival analysis. *Biometrics* **47**, 461–66.

Examples

```
kfit <- coxph(Surv(time, status)~ age + sex + disease + frailty(id), kidney)
kfit0 <- coxph(Surv(time, status)~ age + sex + disease, kidney)
kfitm1 <- coxph(Surv(time,status) ~ age + sex + disease +
frailty(id, dist=gauss), kidney)
```

`lines.survfit` *Add Lines or Points to a Survival Plot*

Description

Often used to add the expected survival curve(s) to a Kaplan-Meier plot generated with `plot.survfit`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class survfit
lines(x, type="s", mark=3, col=1, lty=1,
        lwd=1, cex=1, mark.time=TRUE,
xscale=1,  firstx=0, firsty=1, xmax, fun, conf.int=FALSE,  ...)
## S3 method for class survexp
lines(x, type="l", ...)
## S3 method for class survfit
points(x, xscale, xmax, fun, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	a survival object, generated from the `survfit` or `survexp` functions.
`type`	the line type, as described in `lines`. The default is a step function for `survfit` objects, and a connected line for `survexp` objects. All other arguments for `lines.survexp` are identical to those for `lines.survfit`.
`mark, col, lty, lwd, cex`	vectors giving the mark symbol, color, line type, line width and character size for the added curves.
`...`	other graphical parameters
`mark.time`	controls the labeling of the curves. If `FALSE`, no labeling is done. If `TRUE`, then curves are marked at each censoring time. If `mark.time` is a numeric vector, then curves are marked at the specified time points.
`xscale`	a number used to divide the x values. If time was originally in days, a value of 365.25 would give a plotted scale in years.
`firstx, firsty`	the starting point for the survival curves. If either of these is set to `NA` or < blank > the plot will start at the first time point of the curve.
`xmax`	the maximum horizontal plot coordinate. This shortens the curve before plotting it, so unlike using the `xlim` graphical parameter, warning messages about out of bounds points are not generated.
`fun`	an arbitrary function defining a transformation of the survival curve. For example `fun=log` is an alternative way to draw a log-survival curve (but with the axis labeled with log(S) values). Four often used transformations can be specified with a character argument instead: "log" is the same as using the `log=T` option, "event" plots cumulative events (f(y) = 1-y), "cumhaz" plots the cumulative hazard function (f(y) = -log(y)) and "cloglog" creates a complimentary log-log survival plot (f(y) = log(-log(y) along with log scale for the x-axis).
`conf.int`	if `TRUE`, confidence bands for the curves are also plotted. If set to `"only"`, then only the CI bands are plotted, and the curve itself is left off. This can be useful for fine control over the colors or line types of a plot.

Details

When the survfit function creates a multi-state survival curve the resulting object has class 'survfitms'. The only difference in the plots is that that it defaults to a curve that goes from lower left to upper right (starting at 0), where survival curves default to starting at 1 and going down. All other options are identical.

Value

a list with components x and y, containing the coordinates of the last point on each of the curves (but not of the confidence limits). This may be useful for labeling.

Side Effects

one or more curves are added to the current plot.

See Also

lines, par, plot.survfit, survfit, survexp.

Examples

```
fit <- survfit(Surv(time, status==2) ~ sex, pbc,subset=1:312)
plot(fit, mark.time=FALSE, xscale=365.25,
        xlab=Years, ylab=Survival)
lines(fit[1], lwd=2, xscale=365.24)    #darken the first curve and add marks


# Add expected survival curves for the two groups,
#   based on the US census data
# The data set does not have entry date, use the midpoint of the study
efit <- survexp(~ ratetable(sex=sex,age=age*365.35,year=as.Date(1979/1/1)) +
            sex, data=pbc,  times=(0:24)*182)
temp <- lines(efit, lty=2, xscale=365.24, lwd=2:1)
text(temp, c("Male", "Female"), adj= -.1) #labels just past the ends
title(main="Primary Biliary Cirrhosis, Observed and Expected")
```

---

logan *Data from the 1972-78 GSS data used by Logan*

Description

Intergenerational occupational mobility data with covariates.

Usage

```
data(logan)
```

Format

A data frame with 838 observations on the following 4 variables.

occupation subject's occupation, a factor with levels `farm`, `operatives`, `craftsmen`, `sales`, and `professional`

focc father's occupation

education total years of schooling, 0 to 20

race levels of `non-black` and `black`

Source

General Social Survey data, see the web site for detailed information on the variables. http://www3.norc.org/GSS+Website.

References

Logan, John A. (1983). A Multivariate Model for Mobility Tables. *American Journal of Sociology* 89: 324-349.

---

lung *NCCTG Lung Cancer Data*

Description

Survival in patients with advanced lung cancer from the North Central Cancer Treatment Group. Performance scores rate how well the patient can perform usual daily activities.

Usage

```
lung
cancer
```

Format

inst:	Institution code
time:	Survival time in days
status:	censoring status 1=censored, 2=dead
age:	Age in years
sex:	Male=1 Female=2
ph.ecog:	ECOG performance score (0=good 5=dead)
ph.karno:	Karnofsky performance score (bad=0-good=100) rated by physician
pat.karno:	Karnofsky performance score as rated by patient
meal.cal:	Calories consumed at meals
wt.loss:	Weight loss in last six months

Source

Terry Therneau

References

Loprinzi CL. Laurie JA. Wieand HS. Krook JE. Novotny PJ. Kugler JW. Bartel J. Law M. Bateman M. Klatt NE. et al. Prospective evaluation of prognostic variables from patient-completed questionnaires. North Central Cancer Treatment Group. Journal of Clinical Oncology. 12(3):601-7, 1994.

---

mgus *Monoclonal gammapothy data*

Description

Natural history of 241 subjects with monoclonal gammapothy of undetermined significance (MGUS).

Usage

```
mgus
mgus1
```

Format

mgus: A data frame with 241 observations on the following 12 variables.

id:	subject id
age:	age in years at the detection of MGUS
sex:	`male` or `female`
dxyr:	year of diagnosis
pcdx:	for subjects who progress to a plasma cell malignancy the subtype of malignancy: multiple myeloma (MM) is the most common, followed by amyloidosis (AM), macroglobulinemia (MA), and other lymphprolifative disorders (LP)
pctime:	days from MGUS until diagnosis of a plasma cell malignancy
futime:	days from diagnosis to last follow-up
death:	1= follow-up is until death
alb:	albumin level at MGUS diagnosis
creat:	creatinine at MGUS diagnosis
hgb:	hemoglobin at MGUS diagnosis
mspike:	size of the monoclonal protien spike at diagnosis

mgus1: The same data set in start,stop format. Contains the id, age, sex, and laboratory variable described above along with

start, stop:	sequential intervals of time for each subject
status:	=1 if the interval ends in an event
event:	a factor containing the event type: censor, death, or plasma cell malignancy
enum:	event number for each subject: 1 or 2

Details

Plasma cells are responsible for manufacturing immunoglobulins, an important part of the immune defense. At any given time there are estimated to be about 10^6 different immunoglobulins in the circulation at any one time. When a patient has a plasma cell malignancy the distribuion will become dominated by a single isotype, the product of the malignant clone, visible as a spike on a serum protein electrophoresis. Monoclonal gammapothy of undertermined significance (MGUS) is the presence of such a spike, but in a patient with no evidence of overt malignancy. This data set of 241 sequential subjects at Mayo Clinic was the groundbreaking study defining the natural history of such subjects. Due to the diligence of the principle investigator 0 subjects have been lost to follow-up.

Three subjects had MGUS detected on the day of death. In data set `mgus1` these subjects have the time to MGUS coded as .5 day before the death in order to avoid tied times.

These data sets were updated in Jan 2015 to correct some small errors.

Source

Mayo Clinic data courtesy of Dr. Robert Kyle.

References

R Kyle, Benign monoclonal gammopathy – after 20 to 35 years of follow-up, Mayo Clinic Proc 1993; 68:26-36.

Examples

```
# Create the competing risk curves for time to first of death or PCM
sfit <- survfit(Surv(start, stop, event) ~ sex, mgus1, subset=(enum==1))
print(sfit)  # the order of printout is the order in which they plot

plot(sfit, xscale=365.25, lty=c(2,1,2,1), col=c(1,1,2,2),
     xlab="Years after MGUS detection", ylab="Proportion")
legend(0, .8, c("Death/male", "Death/female", "PCM/male", "PCM/female"),
       lty=c(1,1,2,2), col=c(2,1,2,1), bty=n)

title("Curves for the first of plasma cell malignancy or death")
# The plot shows that males have a higher death rate than females (no
# surprise) but their rates of conversion to PCM are essentially the same.
```

---

mgus2 *Monoclonal gammapothy data*

Description

Natural history of 1341 sequential patients with monoclonal gammapothy of undetermined significance (MGUS).

Usage

```
data("mgus2")
```

Format

A data frame with 1384 observations on the following 10 variables.

`id` subject identifier

`age` age at diagnosis, in years

`sex` a factor with levels `F M`

`hgb` hemoglobin

`creat` creatinine

`mspike` size of the monoclonal serum splike

`ptime` time until progression to a plasma cell malignancy (PCM) or last contact, in months

`pstat` occurence of PCM: 0=no, 1=yes

`futime` time until death or last contact, in months

`death` occurence of death: 0=no, 1=yes

Details

This is a larger follow-on study of the condition also found in data set `mgus`.

Source

Mayo Clinic data courtesy of Dr. Robert Kyle. All patient identifiers have been removed, age rounded to the nearest year, and follow-up times rounded to the nearest month.

References

R. Kyle, T. Therneau, V. Rajkumar, J. Offord, D. Larson, M. Plevak, and L. J. Melton III, A long-terms study of prognosis in monoclonal gammopathy of undertermined significance. New Engl J Med, 346:564-569 (2002).

`model.frame.coxph` *Model.frame method for coxph objects*

Description

Recreate the model frame of a coxph fit.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class coxph
model.frame(formula, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	the result of a `coxph` fit
`...`	other arguments to `model.frame`

Details

For details, see the manual page for the generic function. This function would rarely be called by a user, it is mostly used inside functions like `residual` that need to recreate the data set from a model in order to do further calculations.

Value

the model frame used in the original fit, or a parallel one for new data.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

`model.frame`

`model.matrix.coxph` *Model.matrix method for coxph models*

Description

Reconstruct the model matrix for a cox model.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class coxph
model.matrix(object, data=NULL, contrast.arg =
 object$contrasts, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	the result of a `coxph` model
`data`	optional, a data frame from which to obtain the data
`contrast.arg`	optional, a contrasts object describing how factors should be coded
`...`	other possible argument to `model.frame`

Details

When there is a `data` argument this function differs from most of the other `model.matrix` methods in that the response variable for the original formual is *not* required to be in the data.

If the data frame contains a `terms` attribute then it is assumed to be the result of a call to `model.frame`, otherwise a call to `model.frame` is applied with the data as an argument.

Value

The model matrix for the fit

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

model.matrix

Examples

```
fit1 <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ age + factor(ph.ecog), data=lung)
xfit <- model.matrix(fit1)

fit2 <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ age + factor(ph.ecog), data=lung,
                                  x=TRUE)
all.equal(model.matrix(fit1), fit2$x)
```

---

neardate *Find the index of the closest value in data set 2, for each entry in data set one.*

Description

A common task in medical work is to find the closest lab value to some index date, for each subject.

Usage

```
neardate(id1, id2, y1, y2, best = c("after", "prior"),
nomatch = NA_integer_)
```

Arguments

id1	vector of subject identifiers for the index group
id2	vector of identifiers for the reference group
y1	normally a vector of dates for the index group, but any orderable data type is allowed
y2	reference set of dates
best	find the index of the first y2 value prior to or equal to the target y1 value, for each subject, or the one after?
nomatch	the value to return for items without a match

Details

This routine is closely related to match and to findInterval, the first of which finds exact matches and the second closest matches. This finds the closest matching date within sets of exactly matching identifiers. Closest date matching is often needed in clinical studies. For example data set 1 might contain the subject identifier and the date of some procedure and data set set 2 has the dates and values for laboratory tests, and the query is to find the first test value after the intervention but no closer than 7 days.

The id1 and id2 arguments are similar to match in that we are searching for instances of id1 that will be found in id2, and the result is the same length as id1. However, instead of returning the first match with id2 this routine returns the one that best matches with respect to y1.

The y1 and y2 arguments need not be dates, the function works for any data type such that the expression c(y1, y2) gives a sensible, sortable result. Be careful about matching Date and DateTime

values and the impact of time zones, however, see as.POSIXct. If y1 and y2 are not of the same class the user is on their own. Since there exist pairs of unmatched data types where the result could be sensible, the routine will in this case proceed under the assumption that "the user knows what they are doing". Caveat emptor.

Value

the index of the matching observations in the second data set, or the nomatch value for no successful match

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

match, findInterval

Examples

```
data1 <- data.frame(id = 1:10,
                    entry.dt = as.Date(paste("2011", 1:10, "5", sep="-")))
temp1 <- c(1,4,5,1,3,6,9, 2,7,8,12,4,6,7,10,12,3)
data2 <- data.frame(id = c(1,1,1,2,2,4,4,5,5,5,6,8,8,9,10,10,12),
                    lab.dt = as.Date(paste("2011", temp1, "1", sep="-")),
                    chol = round(runif(17, 130, 280)))

#first cholesterol on or after enrollment
indx1 <- neardate(data1$id, data2$id, data1$entry.dt, data2$lab.dt)
data2[indx1, "chol"]

# Closest one, either before or after.
#
indx2 <- neardate(data1$id, data2$id, data1$entry.dt, data2$lab.dt,
                  best="prior")
ifelse(is.na(indx1), indx2, # none after, take before
       ifelse(is.na(indx2), indx1, #none before
       ifelse(abs(data2$lab.dt[indx2]- data1$entry.dt) <
              abs(data2$lab.dt[indx1]- data1$entry.dt), indx2, indx1)))

# closest date before or after, but no more than 21 days prior to index
indx2 <- ifelse((data1$entry.dt - data2$lab.dt[indx2]) >21, NA, indx2)
ifelse(is.na(indx1), indx2, # none after, take before
       ifelse(is.na(indx2), indx1, #none before
       ifelse(abs(data2$lab.dt[indx2]- data1$entry.dt) <
              abs(data2$lab.dt[indx1]- data1$entry.dt), indx2, indx1)))
```

---

nwtco *Data from the National Wilm's Tumor Study*

Description

Missing data/masurement error example. Tumor histology predicts survival, but prediction is stronger with central lab histology than with the local institution determination.

Usage

```
nwtco
```

Format

A data frame with 4028 observations on the following 9 variables.

`seqno` id number

`instit` Histology from local institution

`histol` Histology from central lab

`stage` Disease stage

`study` study

`rel` indicator for relapse

`edrel` time to relapse

`age` age in months

`in.subcohort` Included in the subcohort for the example in the paper

Source

http://faculty.washington.edu/norm/software.html

References

NE Breslow and N Chatterjee (1999), Design and analysis of two-phase studies with binary outcome applied to Wilms tumour prognosis. *Applied Statistics* **48**, 457–68.

Examples

```
with(nwtco, table(instit,histol))
anova(coxph(Surv(edrel,rel)~histol+instit,data=nwtco))
anova(coxph(Surv(edrel,rel)~instit+histol,data=nwtco))
```

---

ovarian *Ovarian Cancer Survival Data*

Description

Survival in a randomised trial comparing two treatments for ovarian cancer

Usage

```
ovarian
```

Format

futime:	survival or censoring time
fustat:	censoring status
age:	in years
resid.ds:	residual disease present (1=no,2=yes)
rx:	treatment group
ecog.ps:	ECOG performance status (1 is better, see reference)

Source

Terry Therneau

References

Edmunson, J.H., Fleming, T.R., Decker, D.G., Malkasian, G.D., Jefferies, J.A., Webb, M.J., and Kvols, L.K., Different Chemotherapeutic Sensitivities and Host Factors Affecting Prognosis in Advanced Ovarian Carcinoma vs. Minimal Residual Disease. Cancer Treatment Reports, 63:241-47, 1979.

---

pbc *Mayo Clinic Primary Biliary Cirrhosis Data*

Description

D This data is from the Mayo Clinic trial in primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) of the liver conducted between 1974 and 1984. A total of 424 PBC patients, referred to Mayo Clinic during that ten-year interval, met eligibility criteria for the randomized placebo controlled trial of the drug D-penicillamine. The first 312 cases in the data set participated in the randomized trial and contain largely complete data. The additional 112 cases did not participate in the clinical trial, but consented to have basic measurements recorded and to be followed for survival. Six of those cases were lost to follow-up shortly after diagnosis, so the data here are on an additional 106 cases as well as the 312 randomized participants.

A nearly identical data set found in appendix D of Fleming and Harrington; this version has fewer missing values.

Usage

```
pbc
```

Format

age:	in years
albumin:	serum albumin (g/dl)
alk.phos:	alkaline phosphotase (U/liter)
ascites:	presence of ascites
ast:	aspartate aminotransferase, once called SGOT (U/ml)
bili:	serum bilirunbin (mg/dl)
chol:	serum cholesterol (mg/dl)
copper:	urine copper (ug/day)
edema:	0 no edema, 0.5 untreated or successfully treated
	1 edema despite diuretic therapy
hepato:	presence of hepatomegaly or enlarged liver
id:	case number
platelet:	platelet count
protime:	standardised blood clotting time
sex:	m/f
spiders:	blood vessel malformations in the skin

stage:	histologic stage of disease (needs biopsy)
status:	status at endpoint, 0/1/2 for censored, transplant, dead
time:	number of days between registration and the earlier of death, transplantion, or study analysis in July, 1986
trt:	1/2/NA for D-penicillmain, placebo, not randomised
trig:	triglycerides (mg/dl)

Source

T Therneau and P Grambsch (2000), *Modeling Survival Data: Extending the Cox Model*, Springer-Verlag, New York. ISBN: 0-387-98784-3.

`pbcseq` *Mayo Clinic Primary Biliary Cirrhosis, sequential data*

Description

This data is a continuation of the PBC data set, and contains the follow-up laboratory data for each study patient. An analysis based on the data can be found in Murtagh, et. al.

The primary PBC data set contains only baseline measurements of the laboratory paramters. This data set contains multiple laboratory results, but only on the 312 randomized patients. Some baseline data values in this file differ from the original PBC file, for instance, the data errors in prothrombin time and age which were discovered after the orignal analysis (see Fleming and Harrington, figure 4.6.7).

One "feature" of the data deserves special comment. The last observation before death or liver transplant often has many more missing covariates than other data rows. The original clinical protocol for these patients specified visits at 6 months, 1 year, and annually thereafter. At these protocol visits lab values were obtained for a large pre-specified battery of tests. "Extra" visits, often undertaken because of worsening medical condition, did not necessarily have all this lab work. The missing values are thus potentially informative.

Usage

```
pbc
```

Format

id:	case number
age:	in years
sex:	m/f
trt:	1/2/NA for D-penicillmain, placebo, not randomised
time:	number of days between registration and the earlier of death, transplantion, or study analysis in July, 1986
status:	status at endpoint, 0/1/2 for censored, transplant, dead
day:	number of days between enrollment and this visit date all measurements below refer to this date
albumin:	serum albumin (mg/dl)

alk.phos:	alkaline phosphotase (U/liter)
ascites:	presence of ascites
ast:	aspartate aminotransferase, once called SGOT (U/ml)
bili:	serum bilirunbin (mg/dl)
chol:	serum cholesterol (mg/dl)
copper:	urine copper (ug/day)
edema:	0 no edema, 0.5 untreated or successfully treated
	1 edema despite diuretic therapy
hepato:	presence of hepatomegaly or enlarged liver
platelet:	platelet count
protime:	standardised blood clotting time
spiders:	blood vessel malformations in the skin
stage:	histologic stage of disease (needs biopsy)
trig:	triglycerides (mg/dl)

Source

T Therneau and P Grambsch, "Modeling Survival Data: Extending the Cox Model", Springer-Verlag, New York, 2000. ISBN: 0-387-98784-3.

References

Murtaugh PA. Dickson ER. Van Dam GM. Malinchoc M. Grambsch PM. Langworthy AL. Gips CH. "Primary biliary cirrhosis: prediction of short-term survival based on repeated patient visits." Hepatology. 20(1.1):126-34, 1994.

Fleming T and Harrington D., "Counting Processes and Survival Analysis", Wiley, New York, 1991.

Examples

```
# Create the start-stop-event triplet needed for coxph
first <- with(pbcseq, c(TRUE, diff(id) !=0)) #first id for each subject
last  <- c(first[-1], TRUE)  #last id

time1 <- with(pbcseq, ifelse(first, 0, day))
time2 <- with(pbcseq, ifelse(last,  futime, c(day[-1], 0)))
event <- with(pbcseq, ifelse(last,  status, 0))

fit1 <- coxph(Surv(time1, time2, event) ~ age + sex + log(bili), pbcseq)
```

---

plot.aareg *Plot an aareg object.*

Description

Plot the estimated coefficient function(s) from a fit of Aalen's additive regression model.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class aareg
plot(x, se=TRUE, maxtime, type=s, ...)
```

Arguments

x	the result of a call to the aareg function
se	if TRUE, standard error bands are included on the plot
maxtime	upper limit for the x-axis.
type	graphical parameter for the type of line, default is "steps".
...	other graphical parameters such as line type, color, or axis labels.

Side Effects

A plot is produced on the current graphical device.

References

Aalen, O.O. (1989). A linear regression model for the analysis of life times. Statistics in Medicine, 8:907-925.

See Also

aareg

---

plot.cox.zph *Graphical Test of Proportional Hazards*

Description

Displays a graph of the scaled Schoenfeld residuals, along with a smooth curve.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class cox.zph
plot(x, resid=TRUE, se=TRUE, df=4, nsmo=40, var, ...)
```

Arguments

x	result of the cox.zph function.
resid	a logical value, if TRUE the residuals are included on the plot, as well as the smooth fit.
se	a logical value, if TRUE, confidence bands at two standard errors will be added.
df	the degrees of freedom for the fitted natural spline, df=2 leads to a linear fit.
nsmo	number of points used to plot the fitted spline.
var	the set of variables for which plots are desired. By default, plots are produced in turn for each variable of a model. Selection of a single variable allows other features to be added to the plot, e.g., a horizontal line at zero or a main title. This has been superseded by a subscripting method; see the example below.
...	additional graphical arguments passed to the plot function.

Side Effects

a plot is produced on the current graphics device.

See Also

coxph, cox.zph.

Examples

```
vfit <- coxph(Surv(time,status) ~ trt + factor(celltype) +
              karno + age, data=veteran, x=TRUE)
temp <- cox.zph(vfit)
plot(temp, var=5)      # Look at Karnofsy score, old way of doing plot
plot(temp[5])     # New way with subscripting
abline(0, 0, lty=3)
# Add the linear fit as well
abline(lm(temp$y[,5] ~ temp$x)$coefficients, lty=4, col=3)
title(main="VA Lung Study")
```

---

plot.survfit *Plot method for* survfit *objects*

Description

A plot of survival curves is produced, one curve for each strata. The log=T option does extra work to avoid log(0), and to try to create a pleasing result. If there are zeros, they are plotted by default at 0.8 times the smallest non-zero value on the curve(s).

Curves are plotted in the same order as they are listed by print (which gives a 1 line summary of each). This will be the order in which col, lty, etc are used.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class survfit
plot(x, conf.int=, mark.time=TRUE,
 mark=3, col=1, lty=1, lwd=1, cex=1, log=FALSE, xscale=1, yscale=1,
 firstx=0, firsty=1, xmax, ymin=0, fun,
 xlab="", ylab="", xaxs="S", ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class survfit, usually returned by the survfit function.
conf.int	determines whether confidence intervals will be plotted. The default is to do so if there is only 1 curve, i.e., no strata.
mark.time	controls the labeling of the curves. If set to FALSE, no labeling is done. If TRUE, then curves are marked at each censoring time which is not also a death time. If mark.time is a numeric vector, then curves are marked at the specified time points.
mark	vector of mark parameters, which will be used to label the curves. The lines help file contains examples of the possible marks. The vector is reused cyclically if it is shorter than the number of curves.

col	a vector of integers specifying colors for each curve. The default value is 1.
lty	a vector of integers specifying line types for each curve. The default value is 1.
lwd	a vector of numeric values for line widths. The default value is 1.
cex	a numeric value specifying the size of the marks. This is not treated as a vector; all marks have the same size.
log	a logical value, if TRUE the y axis wll be on a log scale. Alternately, one of the standard character strings "x", "y", or "xy" can be given to specific logarithmic horizontal and/or vertical axes.
yscale	a numeric value used to multiply the labels on the y axis. A value of 100, for instance, would be used to give a percent scale. Only the labels are changed, not the actual plot coordinates, so that adding a curve with "lines(surv.exp(...))", say, will perform as it did without the yscale argument.
xscale	a numeric value used like yscale for labels on the x axis. A value of 365.25 will give labels in years instead of the original days.
firstx, firsty	the starting point for the survival curves. If either of these is set to NA the plot will start at the first time point of the curve. By default, the plot program obeys tradition by having the plot start at (0,0). If start.time argument is used in survfit, firstx is set to that value.
xmax	the maximum horizontal plot coordinate. This can be used to shrink the range of a plot. It shortens the curve before plotting it, so that unlike using the xlim graphical parameter, warning messages about out of bounds points are not generated.
ymin	lower boundary for y values. Survival curves are most often drawn in the range of 0-1, even if none of the curves approach zero. The parameter is ignored if the fun argument is present, or if it has been set to NA.
fun	an arbitrary function defining a transformation of the survival curve. For example fun=log is an alternative way to draw a log-survival curve (but with the axis labeled with log(S) values), and fun=sqrt would generate a curve on square root scale. Four often used transformations can be specified with a character argument instead: "log" is the same as using the log=T option, "event" plots cumulative events (f(y) = 1-y), "cumhaz" plots the cumulative hazard function (f(y) = -log(y)), and "cloglog" creates a complimentary log-log survival plot (f(y) = log(-log(y)) along with log scale for the x-axis).
xlab	label given to the x-axis.
ylab	label given to the y-axis.
xaxs	either "S" for a survival curve or a standard x axis style as listed in par. Survival curves are usually displayed with the curve touching the y-axis, but not touching the bounding box of the plot on the other 3 sides. Type "S" accomplishes this by manipulating the plot range and then using the "i" style internally.
...	for future methods

Details

When the survfit function creates a multi-state survival curve the resulting object also has class 'survfitms'. Competing risk curves are a common case. The only difference in the plots is that multi-state defaults to a curve that goes from lower left to upper right (starting at 0), where survival curves by default start at 1 and go down. All other options are identical.

Value

a list with components x and y, containing the coordinates of the last point on each of the curves (but not the confidence limits). This may be useful for labeling.

See Also

points.survfit, lines.survfit, par, survfit

Examples

```
leukemia.surv <- survfit(Surv(time, status) ~ x, data = aml)
plot(leukemia.surv, lty = 2:3)
legend(100, .9, c("Maintenance", "No Maintenance"), lty = 2:3)
title("Kaplan-Meier Curves\nfor AML Maintenance Study")
lsurv2 <- survfit(Surv(time, status) ~ x, aml, type=fleming)
plot(lsurv2, lty=2:3, fun="cumhaz",
xlab="Months", ylab="Cumulative Hazard")
```

---

predict.coxph *Predictions for a Cox model*

Description

Compute fitted values and regression terms for a model fitted by coxph

Usage

```
## S3 method for class coxph
predict(object, newdata,
type=c("lp", "risk", "expected", "terms"),
se.fit=FALSE, na.action=na.pass, terms=names(object$assign), collapse,
reference=c("strata", "sample"),  ...)
```

Arguments

object	the results of a coxph fit.
newdata	Optional new data at which to do predictions. If absent predictions are for the data frame used in the original fit. When coxph has been called with a formula argument created in another context, i.e., coxph has been called within another function and the formula was passed as an argument to that function, there can be problems finding the data set. See the note below.
type	the type of predicted value. Choices are the linear predictor ("lp"), the risk score exp(lp) ("risk"), the expected number of events given the covariates and follow-up time ("expected"), and the terms of the linear predictor ("terms").
se.fit	if TRUE, pointwise standard errors are produced for the predictions.
na.action	applies only when the newdata argument is present, and defines the missing value action for the new data. The default is to include all observations. When there is no newdata, then the behavior of missing is dictated by the na.action option of the original fit.

terms	if type="terms", this argument can be used to specify which terms should be included; the default is all.
collapse	optional vector of subject identifiers. If specified, the output will contain one entry per subject rather than one entry per observation.
reference	reference for centering predictions, see details below
...	For future methods

Details

The Cox model is a *relative* risk model; predictions of type "linear predictor", "risk", and "terms" are all relative to the sample from which they came. By default, the reference value for each of these is the mean covariate within strata. The primary underlying reason is statistical: a Cox model only predicts relative risks between pairs of subjects within the same strata, and hence the addition of a constant to any covariate, either overall or only within a particular stratum, has no effect on the fitted results. Using the `reference="strata"` option causes this to be true for predictions as well.

When the results of `predict` are used in further calculations it may be desirable to use a fixed reference level. Use of `reference="sample"` will use the overall means, and agrees with the `linear.predictors` component of the coxph object (which uses the overall mean for backwards compatability with older code). Predictions of `type="terms"` are almost invariably passed forward to further calculation, so for these we default to using the sample as the reference.

Predictions of type "expected" incorporate the baseline hazard and are thus absolute instead of relative; the `reference` option has no effect on these.

Models that contain a `frailty` term are a special case: due to the technical difficulty, when there is a `newdata` argument the predictions will always be for a random effect of zero.

Value

a vector or matrix of predictions, or a list containing the predictions (element "fit") and their standard errors (element "se.fit") if the se.fit option is TRUE.

Note

Some predictions can be obtained directly from the coxph object, and for others it is necessary for the routine to have the entirety of the original data set, e.g., for type = `terms` or if standard errors are requested. This extra information is saved in the coxph object if `model=TRUE`, if not the original data is reconstructed. If it is known that such residuals will be required overall execution will be slightly faster if the model information is saved.

In some cases the reconstruction can fail. The most common is when coxph has been called inside another function and the formula was passed as one of the arguments to that enclosing function. Another is when the data set has changed between the original call and the time of the prediction call. In each of these the simple solution is to add `model=TRUE` to the original coxph call.

See Also

predict,coxph,termplot

Examples

```
options(na.action=na.exclude) # retain NA in predictions
fit <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ age + ph.ecog + strata(inst), lung)
#lung data set has status coded as 1/2
mresid <- (lung$status-1) - predict(fit, type=expected) #Martingale resid
```

```
predict(fit,type="lp")
predict(fit,type="expected")
predict(fit,type="risk",se.fit=TRUE)
predict(fit,type="terms",se.fit=TRUE)
```

`predict.survreg` *Predicted Values for a 'survreg' Object*

Description

Predicted values for a `survreg` object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class survreg
predict(object, newdata,
type=c("response", "link", "lp", "linear", "terms", "quantile",
"uquantile"),
 se.fit=FALSE, terms=NULL, p=c(0.1, 0.9), na.action=na.pass, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	result of a model fit using the `survreg` function.
`newdata`	data for prediction. If absent predictions are for the subjects used in the original fit.
`type`	the type of predicted value. This can be on the original scale of the data (response), the linear predictor (`"linear"`, with `"lp"` as an allowed abbreviation), a predicted quantile on the original scale of the data (`"quantile"`), a quantile on the linear predictor scale (`"uquantile"`), or the matrix of terms for the linear predictor (`"terms"`). At this time `"link"` and linear predictor (`"lp"`) are identical.
`se.fit`	if `TRUE`, include the standard errors of the prediction in the result.
`terms`	subset of terms. The default for residual type `"terms"` is a matrix with one column for every term (excluding the intercept) in the model.
`p`	vector of percentiles. This is used only for quantile predictions.
`na.action`	applies only when the `newdata` argument is present, and defines the missing value action for the new data. The default is to include all observations.
`...`	for future methods

Value

a vector or matrix of predicted values.

References

Escobar and Meeker (1992). Assessing influence in regression analysis with censored data. *Biometrics,* 48, 507-528.

See Also

`survreg`, `residuals.survreg`

Examples

```
# Draw figure 1 from Escobar and Meeker, 1992.
fit <- survreg(Surv(time,status) ~ age + I(age^2), data=stanford2,
dist=lognormal)
with(stanford2, plot(age, time, xlab=Age, ylab=Days,
xlim=c(0,65), ylim=c(.1, 10^5), log=y, type=n))
with(stanford2, points(age, time, pch=c(2,4)[status+1], cex=.7))
pred <- predict(fit, newdata=list(age=1:65), type=quantile,
         p=c(.1, .5, .9))
matlines(1:65, pred, lty=c(2,1,2), col=1)

# Predicted Weibull survival curve for a lung cancer subject with
#  ECOG score of 2
lfit <- survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog, data=lung)
pct <- 1:98/100   # The 100th percentile of predicted survival is at +infinity
ptime <- predict(lfit, newdata=data.frame(ph.ecog=2), type=quantile,
                 p=pct, se=TRUE)
matplot(cbind(ptime$fit, ptime$fit + 2*ptime$se.fit,
                         ptime$fit - 2*ptime$se.fit)/30.5, 1-pct,
        xlab="Months", ylab="Survival", type=l, lty=c(1,2,2), col=1)
```

`print.aareg` *Print an aareg object*

Description

Print out a fit of Aalen's additive regression model

Usage

```
## S3 method for class aareg
print(x, maxtime, test=c("aalen", "nrisk"),scale=1,...)
```

Arguments

`x`	the result of a call to the `aareg` function
`maxtime`	the upper time point to be used in the test for non-zero slope
`test`	the weighting to be used in the test for non-zero slope. The default weights are based on the variance of each coefficient, as a function of time. The alternative weight is proportional to the number of subjects still at risk at each time point.
`scale`	scales the coefficients. For some data sets, the coefficients of the Aalen model will be very small (10-4); this simply multiplies the printed values by a constant, say 1e6, to make the printout easier to read.
`...`	for future methods

Details

The estimated increments in the coefficient estimates can become quite unstable near the end of follow-up, due to the small number of observations still at risk in a data set. Thus, the test for slope will sometimes be more powerful if this last 'tail' is excluded.

Value

the calling argument is returned.

Side Effects

the results of the fit are displayed.

References

Aalen, O.O. (1989). A linear regression model for the analysis of life times. Statistics in Medicine, 8:907-925.

See Also

aareg

---

print.summary.coxph *Print method for summary.coxph objects*

Description

Produces a printed summary of a fitted coxph model

Usage

```
## S3 method for class summary.coxph
print(x, digits=max(getOption("digits") - 3, 3),
signif.stars = getOption("show.signif.stars"), ...)
```

Arguments

x	the result of a call to summary.coxph
digits	significant digits to print
signif.stars	Show stars to highlight small p-values
...	For future methods

---

print.summary.survexp *Print Survexp Summary*

Description

Prints the results of summary.survexp

Usage

```
## S3 method for class summary.survexp
print(x, digits = max(options()$digits - 4, 3), ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class summary.survexp.
digits	the number of digits to use in printing the result.
...	for future methods

Value

x, with the invisible flag set to prevent further printing.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

link{summary.survexp}, survexp

---

print.summary.survfit *Print Survfit Summary*

Description

Prints the result of summary.survfit.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class summary.survfit
print(x, digits = max(options() $digits-4, 3), ...)
```

Arguments

x	an object of class "summary.survfit", which is the result of the summary.survfit function.
digits	the number of digits to use in printing the numbers.
...	for future methods

Value

x, with the invisible flag set to prevent printing.

Side Effects

prints the summary created by summary.survfit.

See Also

options, print, summary.survfit.

print.survfit *Print a Short Summary of a Survival Curve*

Description

Print number of observations, number of events, the restricted mean survival and its standard error, and the median survival with confidence limits for the median.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class survfit
print(x, scale=1, digits = max(options()$digits - 4,3),
    print.rmean=getOption("survfit.print.rmean"),
    rmean = getOption(survfit.rmean),...)
```

Arguments

x	the result of a call to the survfit function.
scale	a numeric value to rescale the survival time, e.g., if the input data to survfit were in days, scale=365 would scale the printout to years.
digits	Number of digits to print
print.rmean,rmean	Options for computation and display of the restricted mean.
...	for future results

Details

The mean and its variance are based on a truncated estimator. That is, if the last observation(s) is not a death, then the survival curve estimate does not go to zero and the mean is undefined. There are four possible approaches to resolve this, which are selected by the rmean option. The first is to set the upper limit to a constant, e.g.,rmean=365. In this case the reported mean would be the expected number of days, out of the first 365, that would be experienced by each group. This is useful if interest focuses on a fixed period. Other options are "none" (no estimate), "common" and "individual". The "common" option uses the maximum time for all curves in the object as a common upper limit for the auc calculation. For the "individual"options the mean is computed as the area under each curve, over the range from 0 to the maximum observed time for that curve. Since the end point is random, values for different curves are not comparable and the printed standard errors are an underestimate as they do not take into account this random variation. This option is provided mainly for backwards compatability, as this estimate was the default (only) one in earlier releases of the code. Note that SAS (as of version 9.3) uses the integral up to the last *event* time of each individual curve; we consider this the worst of the choices and do not provide an option for that calculation.

The median and its confidence interval are defined by drawing a horizontal line at 0.5 on the plot of the survival curve and its confidence bands. The intersection of the line with the lower CI band defines the lower limit for the median's interval, and similarly for the upper band. If any of the intersections is not a point, then we use the smallest point of intersection, e.g., if the survival curve were exactly equal to 0.5 over an interval.

Value

x, with the invisible flag set to prevent printing. (The default for all print functions in R is to return the object passed to them; print.survfit complies with this pattern. If you want to capture these printed results for further processing, see the `table` component of `summary.survfit`.)

Side Effects

The number of observations, the number of events, the median survival with its confidence interval, and optionally the restricted mean survival (`rmean`) and its standard error, are printed. If there are multiple curves, there is one line of output for each.

References

Miller, Rupert G., Jr. (1981). *Survival Analysis.* New York:Wiley, p 71.

See Also

`summary.survfit`, `quantile.survfit`

`pspline` *Smoothing splines using a pspline basis*

Description

Specifies a penalised spline basis for the predictor. This is done by fitting a comparatively small set of splines and penalising the integrated second derivative. Traditional smoothing splines use one basis per observation, but several authors have pointed out that the final results of the fit are indistinguishable for any number of basis functions greater than about 2-3 times the degrees of freedom. Eilers and Marx point out that if the basis functions are evenly spaced, this leads to significant computational simplifications.

Usage

```
pspline(x, df=4, theta, nterm=2.5 * df, degree=3, eps=0.1, method,
   Boundary.knots=range(x), intercept=FALSE, penalty=TRUE,  ...)

psplineinverse(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	for psline: a covariate vector. The function does not apply to factor variables. For psplineinverse x will be the result of a pspline call.
`df`	the desired degrees of freedom. One of the arguments `df` or `theta`' must be given, but not both. If `df=0`, then the AIC = (loglik -df) is used to choose an "optimal" degrees of freedom. If AIC is chosen, then an optional argument 'caic=T' can be used to specify the corrected AIC of Hurvich et. al.
`theta`	roughness penalty for the fit. It is a monotone function of the degrees of freedom, with theta=1 corresponding to a linear fit and theta=0 to an unconstrained fit of nterm degrees of freedom.
`nterm`	number of splines in the basis

degree	degree of splines
eps	accuracy for df
method	the method for choosing the tuning parameter theta. If theta is given, then 'fixed' is assumed. If the degrees of freedom is given, then 'df' is assumed. If method='aic' then the degrees of freedom is chosen automatically using Akaike's information criterion.
...	optional arguments to the control function
Boundary.knots	the spline is linear beyond the boundary knots. These default to the range of the data.
intercept	if TRUE, the basis functions include the intercept.
penalty	if FALSE a large number of attributes having to do with penalized fits are excluded. Most useful for exploring the code so as to return a matrix with few added attributes.

Value

Object of class pspline, coxph.penalty containing the spline basis, with the appropriate attributes to be recognized as a penalized term by the coxph or survreg functions.

For psplineinverse the original x vector is reconstructed.

References

Eilers, Paul H. and Marx, Brian D. (1996). Flexible smoothing with B-splines and penalties. Statistical Science, 11, 89-121.

Hurvich, C.M. and Simonoff, J.S. and Tsai, Chih-Ling (1998). Smoothing parameter selection in nonparametric regression using an improved Akaike information criterion, JRSSB, volume 60, 271–293.

See Also

coxph,survreg,ridge, frailty

Examples

```
lfit6 <- survreg(Surv(time, status)~pspline(age, df=2), cancer)
plot(cancer$age, predict(lfit6), xlab=Age, ylab="Spline prediction")
title("Cancer Data")
fit0 <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + age, cancer)
fit1 <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + pspline(age,3), cancer)
fit3 <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + pspline(age,8), cancer)
fit0
fit1
fit3
```

pyears *Person Years*

Description

This function computes the person-years of follow-up time contributed by a cohort of subjects, stratified into subgroups. It also computes the number of subjects who contribute to each cell of the output table, and optionally the number of events and/or expected number of events in each cell.

Usage

```
pyears(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,  rmap,
       ratetable, scale=365.25, expect=c(event, pyears),
       model=FALSE, x=FALSE, y=FALSE, data.frame=FALSE)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula object. The response variable will be a vector of follow-up times for each subject, or a Surv object containing the survival time and an event indicator. The predictors consist of optional grouping variables separated by + operators (exactly as in survfit), time-dependent grouping variables such as age (specified with tcut), and optionally a ratetable term. This latter matches each subject to his/her expected cohort.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in the formula, or in the subset and the weights argument.
weights	case weights.
subset	expression saying that only a subset of the rows of the data should be used in the fit.
na.action	a missing-data filter function, applied to the model.frame, after any subset argument has been used. Default is options()$na.action.
rmap	an optional list that maps data set names to the ratetable names. See the details section below.
ratetable	a table of event rates, such as survexp.uswhite.
scale	a scaling for the results. As most rate tables are in units/day, the default value of 365.25 causes the output to be reported in years.
expect	should the output table include the expected number of events, or the expected number of person-years of observation. This is only valid with a rate table.
data.frame	return a data frame rather than a set of arrays.
model, x, y	If any of these is true, then the model frame, the model matrix, and/or the vector of response times will be returned as components of the final result.

Details

Because pyears may have several time variables, it is necessary that all of them be in the same units. For instance, in the call

```
py <- pyears(futime ~ rx, rmap=list(age=age, sex=sex, year=entry.dt),
                  ratetable=survexp.us)
```

the natural unit of the ratetable is hazard per day, it is important that futime, age and entry.dt all be in days. Given the wide range of possible inputs, it is difficult for the routine to do sanity checks of this aspect.

The ratetable being used may have different variable names than the user's data set, this is dealt with by the rmap argument. The rate table for the above calculation was survexp.us, a call to summary{survexp.us} reveals that it expects to have variables age = age in days, sex, and year = the date of study entry, we create them in the rmap line. The sex variable is not mapped, therefore the code assumes that it exists in mydata in the correct format. (Note: for factors such as sex, the program will match on any unique abbreviation, ignoring case.)

A special function tcut is needed to specify time-dependent cutpoints. For instance, assume that age is in years, and that the desired final arrays have as one of their margins the age groups 0-2, 2-10, 10-25, and 25+. A subject who enters the study at age 4 and remains under observation for 10 years will contribute follow-up time to both the 2-10 and 10-25 subsets. If cut(age, c(0,2,10,25,100)) were used in the formula, the subject would be classified according to his starting age only. The tcut function has the same arguments as cut, but produces a different output object which allows the pyears function to correctly track the subject.

The results of pyears are normally used as input to further calculations. The print routine, therefore, is designed to give only a summary of the table.

Value

a list with components:

pyears	an array containing the person-years of exposure. (Or other units, depending on the rate table and the scale). The dimension and dimmanes of the array correspond to the variables on the right hand side of the model equation.
n	an array containing the number of subjects who contribute time to each cell of the pyears array.
event	an array containing the observed number of events. This will be present only if the response variable is a Surv object.
expected	an array containing the expected number of events (or person years if expect ="pyears"). This will be present only if there was a ratetable term.
data	if the data.frame option was set, a data frame containing the variables n, event, pyears and event that supplants the four arrays listed above, along with variables corresponding to each dimension. There will be one row for each cell in the arrays.
offtable	the number of person-years of exposure in the cohort that was not part of any cell in the pyears array. This is often useful as an error check; if there is a mismatch of units between two variables, nearly all the person years may be off table.
summary	a summary of the rate-table matching. This is also useful as an error check.
call	an image of the call to the function.
na.action	the na.action attribute contributed by an na.action routine, if any.

See Also

ratetable, survexp, Surv.

Examples

```
# Look at progression rates jointly by calendar date and age
#
temp.yr  <- tcut(mgus$dxyr, 55:92, labels=as.character(55:91))
temp.age <- tcut(mgus$age, 34:101, labels=as.character(34:100))
ptime <- ifelse(is.na(mgus$pctime), mgus$futime, mgus$pctime)
pstat <- ifelse(is.na(mgus$pctime), 0, 1)
pfit <- pyears(Surv(ptime/365.25, pstat) ~ temp.yr + temp.age + sex,  mgus,
     data.frame=TRUE)
# Turn the factor back into numerics for regression
tdata <- pfit$data
tdata$age <- as.numeric(as.character(tdata$temp.age))
tdata$year<- as.numeric(as.character(tdata$temp.yr))
fit1 <- glm(event ~ year + age+ sex +offset(log(pyears)),
             data=tdata, family=poisson)
## Not run:
# fit a gam model
gfit.m <- gam(y ~ s(age) + s(year) + offset(log(time)),
                        family = poisson, data = tdata)

## End(Not run)

# Example #2  Create the hearta data frame:
hearta <- by(heart, heart$id,
             function(x)x[x$stop == max(x$stop),])
hearta <- do.call("rbind", hearta)
# Produce pyears table of death rates on the surgical arm
#  The first is by age at randomization, the second by current age
fit1 <- pyears(Surv(stop/365.25, event) ~ cut(age + 48, c(0,50,60,70,100)) +
       surgery, data = hearta, scale = 1)
fit2 <- pyears(Surv(stop/365.25, event) ~ tcut(age + 48, c(0,50,60,70,100)) +
       surgery, data = hearta, scale = 1)
fit1$event/fit1$pyears  #death rates on the surgery and non-surg arm

fit2$event/fit2$pyears  #death rates on the surgery and non-surg arm
```

---

quantile.survfit *Quantiles from a survfit object*

Description

Retrieve quantiles and confidence intervals for them from a survfit object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class survfit
quantile(x, probs = c(0.25, 0.5, 0.75), conf.int = TRUE,
  tolerance= sqrt(.Machine$double.eps), ...)
## S3 method for class survfitms
quantile(x, probs = c(0.25, 0.5, 0.75), conf.int = TRUE,
  tolerance= sqrt(.Machine$double.eps), ...)
```

Arguments

x	a result of the survfit function
probs	numeric vector of probabilities with values in [0,1]
conf.int	should lower and upper confidence limits be returned?
tolerance	tolerance for checking that the suvival curve exactly equals one of the quantiles
...	optional arguments for other methods

Details

The kth quantile for a survival curve S(t) is the location at which a horizontal line at height p= 1-k intersects the plot of S(t). Since S(t) is a step function, it is possible for the curve to have a horizontal segment at exactly 1-k, in which case the midpoint of the horizontal segment is returned. This mirrors the standard behavior of the median when data is uncensored. If the survival curve does not fall to 1-k, then that quantile is undefined.

In order to be consistent with other quantile functions, the argument prob of this function applies to the cumulative distribution function F(t) = 1-S(t).

Confidence limits for the values are based on the intersection of the horizontal line at 1-k with the upper and lower limits for the survival curve. Hence confidence limits use the same p-value as was in effect when the curve was created, and will differ depending on the conf.type option of survfit. If the survival curves have no confidence bands, confidence limits for the quantiles are not available.

When a horizontal seqment of the survival curve exactly matches one of the requested quantiles the returned value will be the midpoint of the horizontal seqment; this agrees with the usual definition of a median for uncensored data. Since the survival curve is computed as a series of products, however, there may be round off error. Assume for instance a sample of size 20 with no tied times and no censoring. The survival curve after the 10th death is (19/20)(18/19)(17/18) ... (10/11) = 10/20, but the computed result will not be exactly 0.5. Any horizontal segment whose absolute difference with a requested percentile is less than tolerance is considered to be an exact match.

Value

The quantiles will be a vector if the survfit object contains only a single curve, otherwise it will be a matrix or array. In this case the last dimension will index the quantiles.

If confidence limits are requested, then result will be a list with components quantile, lower, and upper, otherwise it is the vector or matrix of quantiles.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

survfit, print.survfit, qsurvreg

Examples

```
fit <- survfit(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog, data=lung)
quantile(fit)

cfit <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ age + strata(ph.ecog), data=lung)
csurv<- survfit(cfit, newdata=data.frame(age=c(40, 60, 80)),
```

```
                  conf.type ="none")
temp <- quantile(csurv, 1:5/10)
temp[2,3,]  # quantiles for second level of ph.ecog, age=80
quantile(csurv[2,3], 1:5/10)  # quantiles of a single curve, same result
```

`ratetable` *Ratetable reference in formula*

Description

This function matches variable names in data to those in a ratetable for `survexp`

Usage

```
ratetable(...)
```

Arguments

`...`	tags matching dimensions of the ratetable and variables in the data frame (see example)

Value

A data frame

See Also

`survexp`,`survexp.us`,`is.ratetable`

Examples

```
fit <- survfit(Surv(time, status) ~ sex, pbc,subset=1:312)

# The data set does not have entry date, use the midpoint of the study
efit <- survexp(~ ratetable(sex=sex,age=age*365.35,year=as.Date(1979/1/1)) +
            sex, data=pbc,  times=(0:24)*182)
## Not run:
plot(fit, mark.time=F, xscale=365.25, xlab="Years post diagnosis",
        ylab="Survival")
lines(efit, col=2, xscale=365.25) # Add the expected survival line

## End(Not run)
```

ratetableDate — *Convert date objects to ratetable form*

Description

This method converts dates from various forms into the internal form used in `ratetable` objects.

Usage

```
ratetableDate(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	a date. The function currently has methods for Date, date, POSIXt, timeDate, and chron objects.

Details

This function is useful for those who create new ratetables, but is normally invisible to users. It is used internally by the `survexp` and `pyears` functions to map the various date formats; if a new method is added then those routines will automatically be adapted to the new date type.

Value

a numeric vector, the number of days since 1/1/1960.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

`pyears`, `survexp`

ratetables — *Census Data Sets for the Expected Survival and Person Years Functions*

Description

Census data sets for the expected survival and person years functions.

Details

us total United States population, by age and sex, 1960 to 1980.

uswhite United States white population, by age and sex, 1950 to 1980. This is no longer included, but can be extracted from `survexp.usr` as shown in the examples.

usr United States population, by age, sex and race, 1960 to 1980. Race is white, nonwhite, or black. For 1960 and 1970 the black population values were not reported separately, so the nonwhite values were used.

mn total Minnesota population, by age and sex, 1970 and 1980.

mnwhite Minnesota white population, by age and sex, 1960 to 1980.

fl total Florida population, by age and sex, 1970 and 1980.

flr Florida population, by age, sex and race, 1970-1980. Race is white, nonwhite, or black. For 1970 the black population values were not reported separately, so the nonwhite values were used.

az total Arizona population, by age and sex, 1970 and 1980.

azr Arizona population, by age, sex and race, 1970-1980. Race is white versus nonwhite. For 1970 the nonwhite population values were not reported separately. In order to make the rate table be a matrix, the 1980 values were repeated. (White and non-white values are quite different).

Each of these tables contains the daily hazard rate for a matched subject from the population, defined as $-\log(1-q)/365.24$ where q is the 1 year probability of death as reported in the original tables. For age 25 in 1970, for instance, $p = 1-q$ is is the probability that a subject who becomes 25 years of age in 1970 will achieve his/her 26th birthday. The tables are recast in terms of hazard per day entirely for computational convenience. (The fraction .24 in the denominator is based on 24 leap years per century.)

Each table is stored as an array, with additional attributes, and can be subset and manipulated as standard S arrays. Interpolation between calendar years is done "on the fly" by the `survexp` routine.

Some of the deficiencies, e.g., 1970 Arizona non-white, are a result of local (Mayo Clinic) conditions. The data probably exists, but we don't have a copy it in the library.

The tables have been augmented to contain extrapolated values for 1990 and 2000. The details can be found in Mayo Clinic Biostatistics technical report 63 at `http://www.mayo.edu/hsr/techrpt.html`.

Examples

```
survexp.uswhite <- survexp.usr[,,"white",]
```

`rats` *Rat treatment data from Mantel et al*

Description

Rat treatment data from Mantel et al. Three rats were chosen from each of 100 litters, one of which was treated with a drug, and then all followed for tumor incidence.

Usage

```
rats
```

Format

litter:	litter number from 1 to 100
rx:	treatment,(1=drug, 0=control)
time:	time to tumor or last follow-up
status:	event status, 1=tumor and 0=censored
sex:	male or female

Note

Since only 2/150 of the male rats have a tumor, most analyses use only females (odd numbered litters), e.g. Lee et al.

Source

N. Mantel, N. R. Bohidar and J. L. Ciminera. Mantel-Haenszel analyses of litter-matched time to response data, with modifications for recovery of interlitter information. Cancer Research, 37:3863-3868, 1977.

References

E. W. Lee, L. J. Wei, and D. Amato, Cox-type regression analysis for large number of small groups of correlated failure time observations, in "Survival Analysis, State of the Art", Kluwer, 1992.

---

rats2 *Rat data from Gail et al.*

Description

48 rats were injected with a carcinogen, and then randomized to either drug or placebo. The number of tumors ranges from 0 to 13; all rats were censored at 6 months after randomization.

Usage

```
rats2
```

Format

rat:	id
trt:	treatment,(1=drug, 0=control)
observation:	within rat
start:	entry time
stop:	exit time
status:	event status, 1=tumor, 0=censored

Source

MH Gail, TJ Santner, and CC Brown (1980), An analysis of comparative carcinogenesis experiments based on multiple times to tumor. *Biometrics* **36**, 255–266.

`residuals.coxph` *Calculate Residuals for a 'coxph' Fit*

Description

Calculates martingale, deviance, score or Schoenfeld residuals for a Cox proportional hazards model.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class coxph
residuals(object,
       type=c("martingale", "deviance", "score", "schoenfeld",
      "dfbeta", "dfbetas", "scaledsch","partial"),
       collapse=FALSE, weighted=FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class coxph.null
residuals(object,
       type=c("martingale", "deviance","score","schoenfeld"),
       collapse=FALSE, weighted=FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	an object inheriting from class `coxph`, representing a fitted Cox regression model. Typically this is the output from the `coxph` function.
`type`	character string indicating the type of residual desired. Possible values are `"martingale"`, `"deviance"`, `"score"`, `"schoenfeld"`, "dfbeta"', `"dfbetas"`, and `"scaledsch"`. Only enough of the string to determine a unique match is required.
`collapse`	vector indicating which rows to collapse (sum) over. In time-dependent models more than one row data can pertain to a single individual. If there were 4 individuals represented by 3, 1, 2 and 4 rows of data respectively, then `collapse=c(1,1,1, 2, 3,3, 4,4,4,4)` could be used to obtain per subject rather than per observation residuals.
`weighted`	if `TRUE` and the model was fit with case weights, then the weighted residuals are returned.
`...`	other unused arguments

Value

For martingale and deviance residuals, the returned object is a vector with one element for each subject (without `collapse`). For score residuals it is a matrix with one row per subject and one column per variable. The row order will match the input data for the original fit. For Schoenfeld residuals, the returned object is a matrix with one row for each event and one column per variable. The rows are ordered by time within strata, and an attribute `strata` is attached that contains the number of observations in each strata. The scaled Schoenfeld residuals are used in the `cox.zph` function.

The score residuals are each individual's contribution to the score vector. Two transformations of this are often more useful: dfbeta is the approximate change in the coefficient vector if that observation were dropped, and dfbetas is the approximate change in the coefficients, scaled by the standard error for the coefficients.

NOTE

For deviance residuals, the status variable may need to be reconstructed. For score and Schoenfeld residuals, the X matrix will need to be reconstructed.

References

T. Therneau, P. Grambsch, and T. Fleming. "Martingale based residuals for survival models", *Biometrika*, March 1990.

See Also

coxph

Examples

```
fit <- coxph(Surv(start, stop, event) ~ (age + surgery)* transplant,
             data=heart)
mresid <- resid(fit, collapse=heart$id)
```

---

residuals.survreg *Compute Residuals for 'survreg' Objects*

Description

This is a method for the function residuals for objects inheriting from class survreg.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class survreg
residuals(object, type=c("response", "deviance","dfbeta","dfbetas",
"working","ldcase","ldresp","ldshape", "matrix"), rsigma=TRUE,
collapse=FALSE, weighted=FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

object	an object inheriting from class survreg.
type	type of residuals, with choices of "response", "deviance", "dfbeta", "dfbetas", "working", "ldcase", "lsresp", "ldshape", and "matrix". See the LaTeX documentation (survival/doc/survival.ps.gz) for more detail.
rsigma	include the scale parameters in the variance matrix, when doing computations. (I can think of no good reason not to).
collapse	optional vector of subject groups. If given, this must be of the same length as the residuals, and causes the result to be per group residuals.
weighted	give weighted residuals? Normally residuals are unweighted.
...	other unused arguments

Value

A vector or matrix of residuals is returned. Response residuals are on the scale of the original data, working residuals are on the scale of the linear predictor, and deviance residuals are on log-likelihood scale. The dfbeta residuals are a matrix, where the ith row gives the approximate change in the coefficients due to the addition of subject i. The dfbetas matrix contains the dfbeta residuals, with each column scaled by the standard deviation of that coefficient.

The matrix type produces a matrix based on derivatives of the log-likelihood function. Let L be the log-likelihood, p be the linear predictor $X\beta$, and s be $\log(\sigma)$. Then the 6 columns of the matrix are L, dL/dp,$\partial^2 L/\partial p^2$, dL/ds, $\partial^2 L/\partial s^2$ and $\partial^2 L/\partial p \partial s$. Diagnostics based on these quantities are discussed in an article by Escobar and Meeker. The main ones are the likelihood displacement residuals for perturbation of a case weight (`ldcase`), the response value (`ldresp`), and the `shape`.

References

Escobar, L. A. and Meeker, W. Q. (1992). Assessing influence in regression analysis with censored data. *Biometrics* **48**, 507-528.

See Also

`predict.survreg`

Examples

```
fit <- survreg(Surv(time,status) ~x, aml)
rr  <- residuals(fit, type=matrix)
```

---

ridge *Ridge regression*

Description

When used in a coxph or survreg model formula, specifies a ridge regression term. The likelihood is penalised by `theta`/2 time the sum of squared coefficients. If `scale=T` the penalty is calculated for coefficients based on rescaling the predictors to have unit variance. If `df` is specified then `theta` is chosen based on an approximate degrees of freedom.

Usage

```
ridge(..., theta, df=nvar/2, eps=0.1, scale=TRUE)
```

Arguments

`...`	predictors to be ridged
`theta`	penalty is `theta`/2 time sum of squared coefficients
`df`	Approximate degrees of freedom
`eps`	Accuracy required for `df`
`scale`	Scale variables before applying penalty?

Value

An object of class `coxph.penalty` containing the data and control functions.

References

Gray (1992) "Flexible methods of analysing survival data using splines, with applications to breast cancer prognosis" JASA 87:942–951

See Also

coxph,survreg,pspline,frailty

Examples

```
coxph(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ rx + ridge(age, ecog.ps, theta=1),
      ovarian)

lfit0 <- survreg(Surv(time, status) ~1, cancer)
lfit1 <- survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ age + ridge(ph.ecog, theta=5), cancer)
lfit2 <- survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ sex + ridge(age, ph.ecog, theta=1), cancer)
lfit3 <- survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ sex + age + ph.ecog, cancer)
```

---

stanford2 *More Stanford Heart Transplant data*

Description

This contains the Stanford Heart Transplant data in a different format. The main data set is in heart.

Usage

```
stanford2
```

Format

id:	ID number
time:	survival or censoring time
status:	censoring status
age:	in years
t5:	T5 mismatch score

Source

LA Escobar and WQ Meeker Jr (1992), Assessing influence in regression analysis with censored data. *Biometrics* **48**, 507–528. Page 519.

See Also

predict.survreg, heart

strata *Identify Stratification Variables*

Description

This is a special function used in the context of the Cox survival model. It identifies stratification variables when they appear on the right hand side of a formula.

Usage

```
strata(..., na.group=FALSE, shortlabel, sep=, )
```

Arguments

...	any number of variables. All must be the same length.
na.group	a logical variable, if TRUE, then missing values are treated as a distinct level of each variable.
shortlabel	if TRUE omit variable names from resulting factor labels. The default action is to omit the names if all of the arguments are factors, and none of them was named.
sep	the character used to separate groups, in the created label

Details

The result is identical to the interaction function, but for the labeling of the factors (strata is more verbose).

Value

a new factor, whose levels are all possible combinations of the factors supplied as arguments.

See Also

coxph, interaction

Examples

```
a <- factor(rep(1:3,4), labels="low", "medium", "high")
b <- factor(rep(1:4,3))
levels(strata(b))
levels(strata(a,b,shortlabel=TRUE))

coxph(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ age + strata(rx), data=ovarian)
```

summary.aareg *Summarize an aareg fit*

Description

Creates the overall test statistics for an Aalen additive regression model

Usage

```
## S3 method for class aareg
summary(object, maxtime, test=c("aalen", "nrisk"), scale=1,...)
```

Arguments

object	the result of a call to the aareg function
maxtime	truncate the input to the model at time "maxtime"
test	the relative time weights that will be used to compute the test
scale	scales the coefficients. For some data sets, the coefficients of the Aalen model will be very small (10-4); this simply multiplies the printed values by a constant, say 1e6, to make the printout easier to read.
...	for future methods

Details

It is not uncommon for the very right-hand tail of the plot to have large outlying values, particularly for the standard error. The maxtime parameter can then be used to truncate the range so as to avoid these. This gives an updated value for the test statistics, without refitting the model.

The slope is based on a weighted linear regression to the cumulative coefficient plot, and may be a useful measure of the overall size of the effect. For instance when two models include a common variable, "age" for instance, this may help to assess how much the fit changed due to the other variables, in leiu of overlaying the two plots. (Of course the plots are often highly non-linear, so it is only a rough substitute). The slope is not directly related to the test statistic, as the latter is invariant to any monotone transformation of time.

Value

a list is returned with the following components

table	a matrix with rows for the intercept and each covariate, and columns giving a slope estimate, the test statistic, it's standard error, the z-score and a p-value
test	the time weighting used for computing the test statistics
test.statistic	the vector of test statistics
test.var	the model based variance matrix for the test statistic
test.var2	optionally, a robust variance matrix for the test statistic
chisq	the overall test (ignoring the intercept term) for significance of any variable
n	a vector containing the number of observations, the number of unique death times used in the computation, and the total number of unique death times

See Also

aareg, plot.aareg

Examples

```
afit <- aareg(Surv(time, status) ~ age + sex + ph.ecog, data=lung,
     dfbeta=TRUE)
summary(afit)
## Not run:
              slope   test se(test) robust se     z        p
Intercept  5.05e-03    1.9     1.54      1.55  1.23 0.219000
      age  4.01e-05  108.0   109.00    106.00  1.02 0.307000
      sex -3.16e-03  -19.5     5.90      5.95 -3.28 0.001030
  ph.ecog  3.01e-03   33.2     9.18      9.17  3.62 0.000299

Chisq=22.84 on 3 df, p=4.4e-05; test weights=aalen

## End(Not run)

summary(afit, maxtime=600)
## Not run:
              slope   test se(test) robust se      z        p
Intercept  4.16e-03   2.13     1.48      1.47  1.450 0.146000
      age  2.82e-05  85.80   106.00    100.00  0.857 0.392000
      sex -2.54e-03 -20.60     5.61      5.63 -3.660 0.000256
  ph.ecog  2.47e-03  31.60     8.91      8.67  3.640 0.000271

Chisq=27.08 on 3 df, p=5.7e-06; test weights=aalen

## End(Not run)
```

`summary.coxph` *Summary method for Cox models*

Description

Produces a summary of a fitted coxph model

Usage

```
## S3 method for class coxph
summary(object, conf.int=0.95, scale=1,...)
```

Arguments

`object`	the result of a coxph fit
`conf.int`	level for computation of the confidence intervals. If set to FALSE no confidence intervals are printed
`scale`	vector of scale factors for the coefficients, defaults to 1. The confidence limits are for the risk change associated with one scale unit.
`...`	for future methods

Value

An object of class summary.coxph.

See Also

coxph, print.coxph

Examples

```
fit <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ age + sex, lung)
summary(fit)
## Not run:
Call:
coxph(formula = Surv(time, status) ~ age + sex, data = lung)

  n= 228

      coef exp(coef) se(coef)     z      p
age  0.017     1.017  0.00922  1.85 0.0650
sex -0.513     0.599  0.16745 -3.06 0.0022

    exp(coef) exp(-coef) lower .95 upper .95
age     1.017      0.983     0.999     1.036
sex     0.599      1.670     0.431     0.831

Rsquare= 0.06   (max possible= 0.999 )
Likelihood ratio test= 14.1  on 2 df,   p=0.000857
Wald test            = 13.5  on 2 df,   p=0.00119
Score (logrank) test = 13.7  on 2 df,   p=0.00105

## End(Not run)
```

---

summary.survexp *Summary function for a survexp object*

Description

Returns a list containing the values of the survival at specified times.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class survexp
summary(object, times, scale = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

object	the result of a call to the survexp function
times	vector of times; the returned matrix will contain 1 row for each time. Missing values are not allowed.
scale	numeric value to rescale the survival time, e.g., if the input data to survfit were in days, scale = 365.25 would scale the output to years.
...	For future methods

Details

A primary use of this function is to retreive survival at fixed time points, which will be properly interpolated by the function.

Value

a list with the following components:

surv	the estimate of survival at time t.
time	the timepoints on the curve.
n.risk	In expected survival each subject from the data set is matched to a hypothetical person from the parent population, matched on the characteristics of the parent population. The number at risk is the number of those hypothetical subject who are still part of the calculation.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

survexp

---

summary.survfit *Summary of a Survival Curve*

Description

Returns a list containing the survival curve, confidence limits for the curve, and other information.

Usage

```
  ## S3 method for class survfit
summary(object, times=, censored=FALSE, scale=1,
  extend=FALSE, rmean=getOption(survfit.rmean), ...)
```

Arguments

object	the result of a call to the survfit function.
times	vector of times; the returned matrix will contain 1 row for each time. The vector will be sorted into increasing order; missing values are not allowed. If censored=T, the default times vector contains all the unique times in fit, otherwise the default times vector uses only the event (death) times.
censored	logical value: should the censoring times be included in the output? This is ignored if the times argument is present.
scale	numeric value to rescale the survival time, e.g., if the input data to survfit were in days, scale = 365.25 would scale the output to years.

extend	logical value: if TRUE, prints information for all specified times, even if there are no subjects left at the end of the specified times. This is only valid if the times argument is present.
rmean	Show restricted mean: see print.survfit for details
...	for future methods

Value

a list with the following components:

surv	the estimate of survival at time t+0.
time	the timepoints on the curve.
n.risk	the number of subjects at risk at time t-0 (but see the comments on weights in the survfit help file).
n.event	if the times argument is missing, then this column is the number of events that occurred at time t. Otherwise, it is the cumulative number of events that have occurred since the last time listed until time t+0.
n.entered	This is present only for counting process survival data. If the times argument is missing, this column is the number of subjects that entered at time t. Otherwise, it is the cumulative number of subjects that have entered since the last time listed until time t.
n.exit.censored	if the times argument is missing, this column is the number of subjects that left without an event at time t. Otherwise, it is the cumulative number of subjects that have left without an event since the last time listed until time t+0. This is only present for counting process survival data.
std.err	the standard error of the survival value.
conf.int	level of confidence for the confidence intervals of survival.
lower	lower confidence limits for the curve.
upper	upper confidence limits for the curve.
strata	indicates stratification of curve estimation. If strata is not NULL, there are multiple curves in the result and the surv, time, n.risk, etc. vectors will contain multiple curves, pasted end to end. The levels of strata (a factor) are the labels for the curves.
call	the statement used to create the fit object.
na.action	same as for fit, if present.
table	table of information that is returned from print.survfit function.
type	type of data censoring. Passed through from the fit object.

See Also

survfit, print.summary.survfit

Examples

```
summary( survfit( Surv(futime, fustat)~1, data=ovarian))
summary( survfit( Surv(futime, fustat)~rx, data=ovarian))
```

Surv *Create a Survival Object*

Description

Create a survival object, usually used as a response variable in a model formula. Argument matching is special for this function, see Details below.

Usage

```
Surv(time, time2, event,
    type=c(right, left, interval, counting, interval2, mstate),
    origin=0)
is.Surv(x)
```

Arguments

time	for right censored data, this is the follow up time. For interval data, the first argument is the starting time for the interval.
event	The status indicator, normally 0=alive, 1=dead. Other choices are TRUE/FALSE (TRUE = death) or 1/2 (2=death). For interval censored data, the status indicator is 0=right censored, 1=event at time, 2=left censored, 3=interval censored. Although unusual, the event indicator can be omitted, in which case all subjects are assumed to have an event.
time2	ending time of the interval for interval censored or counting process data only. Intervals are assumed to be open on the left and closed on the right, (start, end]. For counting process data, event indicates whether an event occurred at the end of the interval.
type	character string specifying the type of censoring. Possible values are "right", "left", "counting", "interval", "interval2" or "mstate".
origin	for counting process data, the hazard function origin. This option was intended to be used in conjunction with a model containing time dependent strata in order to align the subjects properly when they cross over from one strata to another, but it has rarely proven useful.
x	any R object.

Details

When the type argument is missing the code assumes a type based on the following rules:

- If there are two unnamed arguments, they will match time and event in that order. If there are three unnamed arguments they match time, time2 and event.
- If the event variable is a factor then type mstate is assumed. Otherwise type right if there is no time2 argumement, and type counting if there is.

As a consequence the type argument can usually be omitted.

When the survival type is "mstate" then the status variable will be treated as a factor. The first level of the factor is taken to represent censoring and remaining ones a transition to the given state.

Interval censored data can be represented in two ways. For the first use type = "interval" and the codes shown above. In that usage the value of the time2 argument is ignored unless event=3. The

second approach is to think of each observation as a time interval with (-infinity, t) for left censored, (t, infinity) for right censored, (t,t) for exact and (t1, t2) for an interval. This is the approach used for type = interval2. Infinite values can be represented either by actual infinity (Inf) or NA. The second form has proven to be the more useful one.

Presently, the only methods allowing interval censored data are the parametric models computed by `survreg` and survival curves computed by `survfit`; for both of these, the distinction between open and closed intervals is unimportant. The distinction is important for counting process data and the Cox model.

The function tries to distinguish between the use of 0/1 and 1/2 coding for censored data via the condition `if (max(status)==2)`. If 1/2 coding is used and all the subjects are censored, it will guess wrong. In any questionable case it is safer to use logical coding, e.g., `Surv(time, status==3)` would indicate that a 3 is the code for an event.

For multi-state survival (type= "mstate") the status variable can have multiple levels. The first of these will stand for censoring, and the others for various event types, e.g., causes of death.

Surv objects can be subscripted either as a vector, e.g. `x[1:3]` using a single subscript, in which case the `drop` argument is ignored and the result will be a survival object; or as a matrix by using two subscripts. If the second subscript is missing and `drop=F` (the default), the result of the subscripting will be a Surv object, e.g., `x[1:3,,drop=F]`, otherwise the result will be a matrix (or vector), in accordance with the default behavior for subscripting matrices.

Value

An object of class `Surv`. There are methods for `print`, `is.na`, and subscripting survival objects. `Surv` objects are implemented as a matrix of 2 or 3 columns that has further attributes. These include the type (left censored, right censored, counting process, etc.) and labels for the states for multi-state objects. Any attributes of the input arguments are also preserved in `inputAttributes`. This may be useful for other packages that have attached further information to data items such as labels; none of the routines in the survival package make use of these values, however.

In the case of `is.Surv`, a logical value `TRUE` if `x` inherits from class `"Surv"`, otherwise an `FALSE`.

See Also

`coxph`, `survfit`, `survreg`.

Examples

```
with(lung, Surv(time, status))
Surv(heart$start, heart$stop, heart$event)
```

---

survConcordance *Compute a concordance measure.*

Description

This function computes the concordance between a right-censored survival time and a single continuous covariate

Usage

```
survConcordance(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action)
survConcordance.fit(y, x, strata, weight)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula with a survival time on the left and a single covariate on the right, along with an optional strata() term. The left hand term can also be a numeric vector.
data	a data frame
weights,subset,na.action	as for coxph
x, y, strata, weight	predictor, response, strata, and weight vectors for the direct call

Details

The survConcordance.fit function computes the result but does no data checking whatsoever. It is intended as a hook for other packages that wish to compute concordance, and the data has already been assembled and verified.

Concordance is defined as Pr(agreement) for any two randomly chosen observations, where in this case agreement means that the observation with the shorter survival time of the two also has the larger risk score. The predictor (or risk score) will often be the result of a Cox model or other regression.

For continuous covariates concordance is equivalent to Kendall's tau, and for logistic regression is is equivalent to the area under the ROC curve. A value of 1 signifies perfect agreement, .6-.7 is a common result for survival data, .5 is an agreement that is no better than chance, and .3-.4 is the performace of some stock market analysts.

The computation involves all n(n-1)/2 pairs of data points in the sample. For survival data, however, some of the pairs are incomparable. For instance a pair of times (5+, 8), the first being a censored value. We do not know whether the first survival time is greater than or less than the second. Among observations that are comparable, pairs may also be tied on survival time (but only if both are uncensored) or on the predictor. The final concondance is (agree + tied/2)/(agree + disagree + tied).

There is, unfortunately, one aspect of the formula above that is unclear. Should the count of ties include observations that are tied on survival time y, tied on the predictor x, or both? By default the concordance only counts ties in x, treating tied survival times as incomparable; this agrees with the AUC calculation used in logistic regression. The Goodman-Kruskal Gamma statistic is (agree-disagree)/(agree + disagree), ignoring ties. It ranges from -1 to +1 similar to a correlation coefficient. Kendall's tau uses ties of both types. All of the components are returned in the result, however, so people can compute other combinations if interested. (If two observations have the same survival and the same x, they are counted in the tied survival time category).

The algorithm is based on a balanced binary tree, which allows the computation to be done in O(n log n) time.

Value

an object containing the concordance, followed by the number of pairs that agree, disagree, are tied, and are not comparable.

See Also

summary.coxph

Examples

```
survConcordance(Surv(time, status) ~age, data=lung)

options(na.action=na.exclude)
fit <- coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + age + sex, lung)
survConcordance(Surv(time, status) ~predict(fit), lung)
## Not run:
  n=227 (1 observations deleted due to missing values)
Concordance= 0.6371102 , Gamma= 0.2759638
concordant discordant  tied risk  tied time
     12544       7117        126         28

## End(Not run)
```

---

survdiff *Test Survival Curve Differences*

Description

Tests if there is a difference between two or more survival curves using the G^ρ family of tests, or for a single curve against a known alternative.

Usage

```
survdiff(formula, data, subset, na.action, rho=0)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula expression as for other survival models, of the form `Surv(time, status) ~ predictors`. For a one-sample test, the predictors must consist of a single `offset(sp)` term, where `sp` is a vector giving the survival probability of each subject. For a k-sample test, each unique combination of predictors defines a subgroup. A `strata` term may be used to produce a stratified test. To cause missing values in the predictors to be treated as a separate group, rather than being omitted, use the `strata` function with its `na.group=T` argument.
data	an optional data frame in which to interpret the variables occurring in the formula.
subset	expression indicating which subset of the rows of data should be used in the fit. This can be a logical vector (which is replicated to have length equal to the number of observations), a numeric vector indicating which observation numbers are to be included (or excluded if negative), or a character vector of row names to be included. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a missing-data filter function. This is applied to the `model.frame` after any subset argument has been used. Default is `options()$na.action`.
rho	a scalar parameter that controls the type of test.

Value

a list with components:

n	the number of subjects in each group.
obs	the weighted observed number of events in each group. If there are strata, this will be a matrix with one column per stratum.
exp	the weighted expected number of events in each group. If there are strata, this will be a matrix with one column per stratum.
chisq	the chisquare statistic for a test of equality.
var	the variance matrix of the test.
strata	optionally, the number of subjects contained in each stratum.

METHOD

This function implements the G-rho family of Harrington and Fleming (1982), with weights on each death of $S(t)^\rho$, where $S(t)$ is the Kaplan-Meier estimate of survival. With `rho = 0` this is the log-rank or Mantel-Haenszel test, and with `rho = 1` it is equivalent to the Peto & Peto modification of the Gehan-Wilcoxon test.

If the right hand side of the formula consists only of an offset term, then a one sample test is done. To cause missing values in the predictors to be treated as a separate group, rather than being omitted, use the `factor` function with its `exclude` argument.

References

Harrington, D. P. and Fleming, T. R. (1982). A class of rank test procedures for censored survival data. *Biometrika* **69**, 553-566.

Examples

```
## Two-sample test
survdiff(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ rx,data=ovarian)

## Stratified 7-sample test

survdiff(Surv(time, status) ~ pat.karno + strata(inst), data=lung)

## Expected survival for heart transplant patients based on
## US mortality tables
expect <- survexp(futime ~ ratetable(age=(accept.dt - birth.dt),
     sex=1,year=accept.dt,race="white"), jasa, cohort=FALSE,
     ratetable=survexp.usr)
## actual survival is much worse (no surprise)
survdiff(Surv(jasa$futime, jasa$fustat) ~ offset(expect))
```

survexp *Compute Expected Survival*

Description

Returns either the expected survival of a cohort of subjects, or the individual expected survival for each subject.

Usage

```
survexp(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, rmap, times,
        method=c("ederer", "hakulinen", "conditional", "individual.h",
                 "individual.s"),
        cohort=TRUE, conditional=FALSE,
        ratetable=survival::survexp.us, scale=1,
        se.fit, model=FALSE, x=FALSE, y=FALSE)
```

Arguments

formula	formula object. The response variable is a vector of follow-up times and is optional. The predictors consist of optional grouping variables separated by the + operator (as in survfit), and is often ~1, i.e., expected survival for the entire group.
data	data frame in which to interpret the variables named in the formula, subset and weights arguments.
weights	case weights. This is most useful when conditional survival for a known population is desired, e.g., the data set would contain all unique age/sex combinations and the weights would be the proportion of each.
subset	expression indicating a subset of the rows of data to be used in the fit.
na.action	function to filter missing data. This is applied to the model frame after subset has been applied. Default is options()$na.action.
rmap	an optional list that maps data set names to the ratetable names. See the details section below.
times	vector of follow-up times at which the resulting survival curve is evaluated. If absent, the result will be reported for each unique value of the vector of times supplied in the response value of the formula.
method	computational method for the creating the survival curves. The individual option does not create a curve, rather it retrieves the predicted survival individual.s or cumulative hazard individual.h for each subject. The default is to use method=ederer if the formula has no response, and method=hakulinen otherwise.
cohort	logical value. This argument has been superseded by the method argument. To maintain backwards compatability, if is present and TRUE, it implies method=individual.s.
conditional	logical value. This argument has been superseded by the method argument. To maintain backwards compatability, if it is present and TRUE it implies method=conditional.

ratetable — a table of event rates, such as survexp.mn, or a fitted Cox model. Note the survival:: prefix in the default argument is present to avoid the (rare) case of a user who expects the default table but just happens to have an object named "survexp.us" in their own directory.

scale — numeric value to scale the results. If ratetable is in units/day, scale = 365.25 causes the output to be reported in years.

se.fit — compute the standard error of the predicted survival. This argument is currently ignored. Standard errors are not a defined concept for population rate tables (they are treated as coming from a complete census), and for Cox models the calculation is hard. Despite good intentions standard errors for this latter case have not been coded and validated.

model,x,y — flags to control what is returned. If any of these is true, then the model frame, the model matrix, and/or the vector of response times will be returned as components of the final result, with the same names as the flag arguments.

Details

Individual expected survival is usually used in models or testing, to 'correct' for the age and sex composition of a group of subjects. For instance, assume that birth date, entry date into the study, sex and actual survival time are all known for a group of subjects. The survexp.us population tables contain expected death rates based on calendar year, sex and age. Then

```
haz <- survexp(fu.time ~ 1, data=mydata,
                    rmap = list(year=entry.dt, age=(birth.dt-entry.dt)),
                    method=individual.h))
```

gives for each subject the total hazard experienced up to their observed death time or last follow-up time (variable fu.time) This probability can be used as a rescaled time value in models:

```
glm(status ~ 1 + offset(log(haz)), family=poisson)
glm(status ~ x + offset(log(haz)), family=poisson)
```

In the first model, a test for intercept=0 is the one sample log-rank test of whether the observed group of subjects has equivalent survival to the baseline population. The second model tests for an effect of variable x after adjustment for age and sex.

The ratetable being used may have different variable names than the user's data set, this is dealt with by the rmap argument. The rate table for the above calculation was survexp.us, a call to summary{survexp.us} reveals that it expects to have variables age = age in days, sex, and year = the date of study entry, we create them in the rmap line. The sex variable was not mapped, therefore the function assumes that it exists in mydata in the correct format. (Note: for factors such as sex, the program will match on any unique abbreviation, ignoring case.)

Cohort survival is used to produce an overall survival curve. This is then added to the Kaplan-Meier plot of the study group for visual comparison between these subjects and the population at large. There are three common methods of computing cohort survival. In the "exact method" of Ederer the cohort is not censored, for this case no response variable is required in the formula. Hakulinen recommends censoring the cohort at the anticipated censoring time of each patient, and Verheul recommends censoring the cohort at the actual observation time of each patient. The last of these is the conditional method. These are obtained by using the respective time values as the follow-up time or response in the formula.

Value

if cohort=TRUE an object of class survexp, otherwise a vector of per-subject expected survival values. The former contains the number of subjects at risk and the expected survival for the cohort at each requested time. The cohort survival is the hypothetical survival for a cohort of subjects enrolled from the population at large, but matching the data set on the factors found in the rate table.

References

Berry, G. (1983). The analysis of mortality by the subject-years method. *Biometrics*, 39:173-84.

Ederer, F., Axtell, L. and Cutler, S. (1961). The relative survival rate: a statistical methodology. *Natl Cancer Inst Monogr*, 6:101-21.

Hakulinen, T. (1982). Cancer survival corrected for heterogeneity in patient withdrawal. *Biometrics*, 38:933-942.

Therneau, T. and Grambsch, P. (2000). Modeling survival data: Extending the Cox model. Springer. Chapter 10.

Verheul, H., Dekker, E., Bossuyt, P., Moulijn, A. and Dunning, A. (1993). Background mortality in clinical survival studies. *Lancet*, 341: 872-875.

See Also

survfit, pyears, survexp.us, survexp.fit.

Examples

```
#
# Stanford heart transplant data
#  We dont have sex in the data set, but know it to be nearly all males.
# Estimate of conditional survival
fit1 <- survexp(futime ~ 1, rmap=list(sex="male", year=accept.dt,
          age=(accept.dt-birth.dt)), method=conditional, data=jasa)
summary(fit1, times=1:10*182.5, scale=365) #expected survival by 1/2 years

# Estimate of expected  survival stratified by prior surgery
survexp(~ surgery, rmap= list(sex="male", year=accept.dt,
age=(accept.dt-birth.dt)), method=ederer, data=jasa,
        times=1:10 * 182.5)

## Compare the survival curves for the Mayo PBC data to Cox model fit
##
pfit <-coxph(Surv(time,status>0) ~ trt + log(bili) + log(protime) + age +
                platelet, data=pbc)
plot(survfit(Surv(time, status>0) ~ trt, data=pbc), mark.time=FALSE)
lines(survexp( ~ trt, ratetable=pfit, data=pbc), col=purple)
```

---

survexp.fit *Compute Expected Survival*

Description

Compute expected survival times.

Usage

```
survexp.fit(group, x, y, times, death, ratetable)
```

Arguments

group	if there are multiple survival curves this identifies the group, otherwise it is a constant. Must be an integer.
x	A matrix whose columns match the dimensions of the ratetable, in the correct order.
y	the follow up time for each subject.
times	the vector of times at which a result will be computed.
death	a logical value, if TRUE the conditional survival is computed, if FALSE the cohort survival is computed. See survexp for more details.
ratetable	a rate table, such as survexp.uswhite.

Details

For conditional survival y must be the time of last follow-up or death for each subject. For cohort survival it must be the potential censoring time for each subject, ignoring death.

For an exact estimate times should be a superset of y, so that each subject at risk is at risk for the entire sub-interval of time. For a large data set, however, this can use an inordinate amount of storage and/or compute time. If the times spacing is more coarse than this, an actuarial approximation is used which should, however, be extremely accurate as long as all of the returned values are > .99.

For a subgroup of size 1 and times > y, the conditional method reduces to exp(-h) where h is the expected cumulative hazard for the subject over his/her observation time. This is used to compute individual expected survival.

Value

A list containing the number of subjects and the expected survival(s) at each time point. If there are multiple groups, these will be matrices with one column per group.

Warning

Most users will call the higher level routine survexp. Consequently, this function has very few error checks on its input arguments.

See Also

survexp, survexp.us.

`survfit` *Create survival curves*

Description

This function creates survival curves from either a formula (e.g. the Kaplan-Meier), a previously fitted Cox model, or a previously fitted accelerated failure time model.

Usage

```
survfit(formula, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	either a formula or a previously fitted model
`...`	other arguments to the specific method

Details

A survival curve is based on a tabulation of the number at risk and number of events at each unique death time. When time is a floating point number the definition of "unique" is subject to interpretation. The code uses factor() to define the set. For further details see the documentation for the appropriate method, i.e., `?survfit.formula` or `?survfit.coxph`.

Value

An object of class `survfit` containing one or more survival curves.

Note

Older releases of the code also allowed the specification for a single curve to omit the right hand of the formula, i.e., `~ 1`. Handling this case required some non-standard and fairly fragile manipulations, and this case is no longer supported.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

`survfit.formula`, `survfit.coxph`, `survfit.object`, `print.survfit`, `plot.survfit`, `quantile.survfit`, `summary.survfit`

survfit.coxph *Compute a Survival Curve from a Cox model*

Description

Computes the predicted survivor function for a Cox proportional hazards model.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class coxph
survfit(formula, newdata,
        se.fit=TRUE, conf.int=.95,
        individual=FALSE,
        type,vartype,
        conf.type=c("log","log-log","plain","none"), censor=TRUE, id,
        na.action=na.pass, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	A coxph object.
newdata	a data frame with the same variable names as those that appear in the coxph formula. It is also valid to use a vector, if the data frame would consist of a single row. The curve(s) produced will be representative of a cohort whose covariates correspond to the values in newdata. Default is the mean of the covariates used in the coxph fit.
individual	This argument has been superseded by the id argument and is present only for backwards compatability. A logical value indicating whether each row of newdata represents a distinct individual (FALSE, the default), or if each row of the data frame represents different time epochs for only one individual (TRUE). In the former case the result will have one curve for each row in newdata, in the latter only a single curve will be produced.
conf.int	the level for a two-sided confidence interval on the survival curve(s). Default is 0.95.
se.fit	a logical value indicating whether standard errors should be computed. Default is TRUE.
type,vartype	a character string specifying the type of survival curve. Possible values are "aalen", "efron", or "kalbfleish-prentice" (only the first two characters are necessary). The default is to match the computation used in the Cox model. The Nelson-Aalen-Breslow estimate for ties=breslow, the Efron estimate for ties=efron and the Kalbfleisch-Prentice estimate for a discrete time model ties=exact. Variance estimates are the Aalen-Link-Tsiatis, Efron, and Greenwood. The default will be the Efron estimate for ties=efron and the Aalen estimate otherwise.
conf.type	One of "none", "plain", "log" (the default), or "log-log". Only enough of the string to uniquely identify it is necessary. The first option causes confidence intervals not to be generated. The second causes the standard intervals curve +- k *se(curve), where k is determined from conf.int. The log option calculates intervals based on the cumulative hazard or log(survival). The last option bases intervals on the log hazard or log(-log(survival)).

censor	if FALSE time points at which there are no events (only censoring) are not included in the result.
id	optional variable name of subject identifiers. If this is present, then each group of rows with the same subject id represents the covariate path through time of a single subject, and the result will contain one curve per subject. If the coxph fit had strata then that must also be specified in newdata. If missing, then each individual row of newdata is presumed to represent a distinct subject and there will be nrow(newdata) times the number of strata curves in the result (one for each strata/subject combination). result.
na.action	the na.action to be used on the newdata argument
...	for future methods

Details

Serious thought has been given to removing the default value for newdata, which is to use a single "psuedo" subject with covariate values equal to the means of the data set, since the resulting curve(s) almost never make sense. It remains due to an unwarranted attachment to the option shown by some users and by other packages. Two particularly egregious examples are factor variables and interactions. Suppose one were studying interspecies transmission of a virus, and the data set has a factor variable with levels ("pig", "chicken") and about equal numbers of observations for each. The "mean" covariate level will be 1/2 – is this a flying pig? As to interactions assume data with sex coded as 0/1, ages ranging from 50 to 80, and a model with age*sex. The "mean" value for the age:sex interaction term will be about 30, a value that does not occur in the data. Users are strongly advised to use the newdata argument.

When the original model contains time-dependent covariates, then the path of that covariate through time needs to be specified in order to obtain a predicted curve. This requires newdata to contain multiple lines for each hypothetical subject which gives the covariate values, time interval, and strata for each line (a subject can change strata), along with an id variable which demarks which rows belong to each subject. The time interval must have the same (start, stop, status) variables as the original model: although the status variable is not used and thus can be set to a dummy value of 0 or 1, it is necessary for the variables to be recognized as a Surv object. Last, although predictions with a time-dependent covariate path can be useful, it is very easy to create a prediction that is senseless. Users are encouraged to seek out a text that discusses the issue in detail.

When a model contains strata but no time-dependent covariates the user of this routine has a choice. If newdata argument does not contain strata variables then the returned object will be a matrix of survival curves with one row for each strata in the model and one column for each row in newdata. (This is the historical behavior of the routine.) If newdata does contain strata variables, then the result will contain one curve per row of newdata, based on the indicated stratum of the original model. In the rare case of a model with strata by covariate interactions the strata variable must be included in newdata, the routine does not allow it to be omitted (predictions become too confusing). (Note that the model Surv(time, status) ~ age*strata(sex) expands internally to strata(sex) + age:sex; the sex variable is needed for the second term of the model.)

When all the coefficients are zero, the Kalbfleisch-Prentice estimator reduces to the Kaplan-Meier, the Aalen estimate to the exponential of Nelson's cumulative hazard estimate, and the Efron estimate to the Fleming-Harrington estimate of survival. The variances of the curves from a Cox model are larger than these non-parametrec estimates, however, due to the variance of the coefficients.

See survfit for more details about the counts (number of events, number at risk, etc.)

The censor argument was fixed at FALSE in earlier versions of the code and not made available to the user. The default argument is sensible in most instances — and causes the familiar + sign to appear on plots — it is not sensible for time dependent covariates since it may lead to a large number of spurious marks.

Value

an object of class "survfit". See survfit.object for details. Methods defined for survfit objects are print, plot, lines, and points.

References

Fleming, T. H. and Harrington, D. P. (1984). Nonparametric estimation of the survival distribution in censored data. *Comm. in Statistics* **13**, 2469-86.

Kablfleisch, J. D. and Prentice, R. L. (1980). *The Statistical Analysis of Failure Time Data.* New York:Wiley.

Link, C. L. (1984). Confidence intervals for the survival function using Cox's proportional hazards model with covariates. *Biometrics* **40**, 601-610.

Therneau T and Grambsch P (2000), Modeling Survival Data: Extending the Cox Model, Springer-Verlag.

Tsiatis, A. (1981). A large sample study of the estimate for the integrated hazard function in Cox's regression model for survival data. *Annals of Statistics* **9**, 93-108.

See Also

print.survfit, plot.survfit, lines.survfit, coxph, Surv, strata.

Examples

```
#fit a Kaplan-Meier and plot it
fit <- survfit(Surv(time, status) ~ x, data = aml)
plot(fit, lty = 2:3)
legend(100, .8, c("Maintained", "Nonmaintained"), lty = 2:3)

#fit a Cox proportional hazards model and plot the
#predicted survival for a 60 year old
fit <- coxph(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ age, data = ovarian)
plot(survfit(fit, newdata=data.frame(age=60)),
     xscale=365.25, xlab = "Years", ylab="Survival")

# Here is the data set from Turnbull
#  There are no interval censored subjects, only left-censored (status=3),
#  right-censored (status 0) and observed events (status 1)
#
#                             Time
#                         1    2   3   4
# Type of observation
#           death        12    6   2   3
#          losses         3    2   0   3
#      late entry         2    4   2   5
#
tdata <- data.frame(time  =c(1,1,1,2,2,2,3,3,3,4,4,4),
                    status=rep(c(1,0,2),4),
                    n     =c(12,3,2,6,2,4,2,0,2,3,3,5))
fit  <- survfit(Surv(time, time, status, type=interval) ~1,
              data=tdata, weight=n)

#
# Time to progression/death for patients with monoclonal gammopathy
#  Competing risk curves (cumulative incidence)
```

```
fit1 <- survfit(Surv(stop, event==progression) ~1, data=mgus1,
                   subset=(start==0))
fit2 <- survfit(Surv(stop, status) ~1, data=mgus1,
                   subset=(start==0), etype=event) #competing risks
# CI curves are always plotted from 0 upwards, rather than 1 down
plot(fit2, fun=event, xscale=365.25, xmax=7300, mark.time=FALSE,
           col=2:3, xlab="Years post diagnosis of MGUS")
lines(fit1, fun=event, xscale=365.25, xmax=7300, mark.time=FALSE,
           conf.int=FALSE)
text(10, .4, "Competing Risk: death", col=3)
text(16, .15,"Competing Risk: progression", col=2)
text(15, .30,"KM:prog")
```

`survfit.formula` *Compute a Survival Curve for Censored Data*

Description

Computes an estimate of a survival curve for censored data using either the Kaplan-Meier or the Fleming-Harrington method. For competing risks data it computes the cumulative incidence curve.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class formula
survfit(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
        etype, id, istate, ...)
```

Arguments

`formula`	a formula object, which must have a `Surv` object as the response on the left of the ~ operator and, if desired, terms separated by + operators on the right. One of the terms may be a `strata` object. For a single survival curve the right hand side should be `~ 1`.
`data`	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in the formula, `subset` and `weights` arguments.
`weights`	The weights must be nonnegative and it is strongly recommended that they be strictly positive, since zero weights are ambiguous, compared to use of the `subset` argument.
`subset`	expression saying that only a subset of the rows of the data should be used in the fit.
`na.action`	a missing-data filter function, applied to the model frame, after any `subset` argument has been used. Default is `options()$na.action`.
`etype`	a variable giving the type of event. This has been superseded by multi-state Surv objects; see example below.
`id`	identifies individual subjects, when a given person can have multiple lines of data.
`istate`	for multi-state models, identifies the initial state of each subject
`...`	The following additional arguments are passed to internal functions called by `survfit`.

type a character string specifying the type of survival curve. Possible values are "kaplan-meier", "fleming-harrington" or "fh2" if a formula is given. This is ignored for competing risks or when the Turnbull estimator is used.

error a character string specifying the error. Possible values are "greenwood" for the Greenwood formula or "tsiatis" or "aalen" for the Tsiatis/Aalen formula, or "robust" for a robust variance. The last of these is assumed if non-integer case weights are provided.

conf.type One of "none", "plain", "log" (the default), or "log-log". Only enough of the string to uniquely identify it is necessary. The first option causes confidence intervals not to be generated. The second causes the standard intervals curve +- k *se(curve), where k is determined from conf.int. The log option calculates intervals based on the cumulative hazard or log(survival). The last option bases intervals on the log hazard or log(-log(survival)).

conf.lower a character string to specify modified lower limits to the curve, the upper limit remains unchanged. Possible values are "usual" (unmodified), "peto", and "modified". T he modified lower limit is based on an "effective n" argument. The confidence bands will agree with the usual calculation at each death time, but unlike the usual bands the confidence interval becomes wider at each censored observation. The extra width is obtained by multiplying the usual variance by a factor m/n, where n is the number currently at risk and m is the number at risk at the last death time. (The bands thus agree with the un-modified bands at each death time.) This is especially useful for survival curves with a long flat tail.

The Peto lower limit is based on the same "effective n" argument as the modified limit, but also replaces the usual Greenwood variance term with a simple approximation. It is known to be conservative.

start.time numeric value specifying a time to start calculating survival information. The resulting curve is the survival conditional on surviving to start.time.

conf.int the level for a two-sided confidence interval on the survival curve(s). Default is 0.95.

se.fit a logical value indicating whether standard errors should be computed. Default is TRUE.

Details

The estimates used are the Kalbfleisch-Prentice (Kalbfleisch and Prentice, 1980, p.86) and the Tsiatis/Link/Breslow, which reduce to the Kaplan-Meier and Fleming-Harrington estimates, respectively, when the weights are unity.

The Greenwood formula for the variance is a sum of terms d/(n*(n-m)), where d is the number of deaths at a given time point, n is the sum of weights for all individuals still at risk at that time, and m is the sum of weights for the deaths at that time. The justification is based on a binomial argument when weights are all equal to one; extension to the weighted case is ad hoc. Tsiatis (1981) proposes a sum of terms d/(n*n), based on a counting process argument which includes the weighted case.

The two variants of the F-H estimate have to do with how ties are handled. If there were 3 deaths out of 10 at risk, then the first increments the hazard by 3/10 and the second by 1/10 + 1/9 + 1/8. For the first method S(t) = exp(H), where H is the Nelson-Aalen cumulative hazard estimate, whereas the fh2 method will give results S(t) results closer to the Kaplan-Meier.

When the data set includes left censored or interval censored data (or both), then the EM approach of Turnbull is used to compute the overall curve. When the baseline method is the Kaplan-Meier,

this is known to converge to the maximum likelihood estimate.

The cumulative incidence curve is an alternative to the Kaplan-Meier for competing risks data. For instance, in patients with MGUS, conversion to an overt plasma cell malignancy occurs at a nearly constant rate among those still alive. A Kaplan-Meier estimate, treating death due to other causes as censored, gives a 20 year cumulate rate of 33% for the 241 early patients of Kyle. This estimates the incidence of conversion if all other causes of death were removed, which is an unrealistic assumption given the mean starting age of 63 and a median follow up of over 21 years.

The CI estimate, on the other hand, estimates the total number of conversions that will actually occur. Because the population is older, this is much smaller than the KM, 22% at 20 years for Kyle's data. If there were no censoring, then CI(t) could very simply be computed as total number of patients with progression by time t divided by the sample size n.

Value

an object of class `"survfit"`. See `survfit.object` for details. Methods defined for survfit objects are `print`, `plot`, `lines`, and `points`.

References

Dorey, F. J. and Korn, E. L. (1987). Effective sample sizes for confidence intervals for survival probabilities. *Statistics in Medicine* **6**, 679-87.

Fleming, T. H. and Harrington, D. P. (1984). Nonparametric estimation of the survival distribution in censored data. *Comm. in Statistics* **13**, 2469-86.

Kablfleisch, J. D. and Prentice, R. L. (1980). *The Statistical Analysis of Failure Time Data.* New York:Wiley.

Kyle, R. A. (1997). Moncolonal gammopathy of undetermined significance and solitary plasmacytoma. Implications for progression to overt multiple myeloma}, *Hematology/Oncology Clinics N. Amer.* **11**, 71-87.

Link, C. L. (1984). Confidence intervals for the survival function using Cox's proportional hazards model with covariates. *Biometrics* **40**, 601-610.

Turnbull, B. W. (1974). Nonparametric estimation of a survivorship function with doubly censored data. *J Am Stat Assoc*, **69**, 169-173.

See Also

`survfit.coxph` for survival curves from Cox models, `survfit.object` for a description of the components of a survfit object, `print.survfit`, `plot.survfit`, `lines.survfit`, `coxph`, `Surv`.

Examples

```
#fit a Kaplan-Meier and plot it
fit <- survfit(Surv(time, status) ~ x, data = aml)
plot(fit, lty = 2:3)
legend(100, .8, c("Maintained", "Nonmaintained"), lty = 2:3)

#fit a Cox proportional hazards model and plot the
#predicted survival for a 60 year old
fit <- coxph(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ age, data = ovarian)
plot(survfit(fit, newdata=data.frame(age=60)),
     xscale=365.25, xlab = "Years", ylab="Survival")

# Here is the data set from Turnbull
```

```
#  There are no interval censored subjects, only left-censored (status=3),
#  right-censored (status 0) and observed events (status 1)
#
#                            Time
#                         1    2   3   4
# Type of observation
#           death        12    6   2   3
#          losses         3    2   0   3
#      late entry         2    4   2   5
#
tdata <- data.frame(time  =c(1,1,1,2,2,2,3,3,3,4,4,4),
                    status=rep(c(1,0,2),4),
                    n     =c(12,3,2,6,2,4,2,0,2,3,3,5))
fit  <- survfit(Surv(time, time, status, type=interval) ~1,
              data=tdata, weight=n)

#
# Time to progression/death for patients with monoclonal gammopathy
#  Competing risk curves (cumulative incidence)
fitKM <- survfit(Surv(stop, event==progression) ~1, data=mgus1,
                    subset=(start==0))

fitCI <- survfit(Surv(stop, status*as.numeric(event), type="mstate") ~1,
                    data=mgus1, subset=(start==0))

# CI curves are always plotted from 0 upwards, rather than 1 down
plot(fitCI, xscale=365.25, xmax=7300, mark.time=FALSE,
            col=2:3, xlab="Years post diagnosis of MGUS")
lines(fitKM, fun=event, xscale=365.25, xmax=7300, mark.time=FALSE,
            conf.int=FALSE)
text(10, .4, "Competing risk: death", col=3)
text(16, .15,"Competing risk: progression", col=2)
text(15, .30,"KM:prog")
```

`survfit.object` *Survival Curve Object*

Description

This class of objects is returned by the `survfit` class of functions to represent a fitted survival curve.

Objects of this class have methods for the functions `print`, `summary`, `plot`, `points` and `lines`. The `print.survfit` method does more computation than is typical for a print method and is documented on a separate page. Class of objects that represent a fitted survival curve.

Arguments

`n`	total number of subjects in each curve.
`time`	the time points at which the curve has a step.
`n.risk`	the number of subjects at risk at t.
`n.event`	the number of events that occur at time t.
`n.enter`	for counting process data only, the number of subjects that enter at time t.

n.censor	for counting process data only, the number of subjects who exit the risk set, without an event, at time t. (For right censored data, this number can be computed from the successive values of the number at risk).
surv	the estimate of survival at time t+0. This may be a vector or a matrix.
std.err	the standard error of the cumulative hazard or -log(survival).
upper	upper confidence limit for the survival curve.
lower	lower confidence limit for the survival curve.
strata	if there are multiple curves, this component gives the number of elements of the time etc. vectors corresponding to the first curve, the second curve, and so on. The names of the elements are labels for the curves.
start.time	the value specified for the start.time argument, if it was used in the call.
n.all	for counting process data, and any time that the start.time argument was used, this contains the total number of observations that were available. Not all may have been used in creating the curve, in which case this value will be larger than n above. of observations that were available
conf.type	the approximation used to compute the confidence limits.
conf.int	the level of the confidence limits, e.g. 90 or 95%.
na.action	the returned value from the na.action function, if any. It will be used in the printout of the curve, e.g., the number of observations deleted due to missing values.
call	an image of the call that produced the object.
type	type of survival censoring.

Structure

The following components must be included in a legitimate survfit object.

Subscripts

Survfit objects that contain multiple survival curves can be subscripted. This is most often used to plot a subset of the curves. Usually a single subscript will be used. In one particular case – survival curves for multiple covariate values, from a Cox model that includes a strata statement – there is a matrix of curves and 2 subscripts may be used. (In this case summary.survfit will also print the data as a matrix).

See Also

plot.survfit, summary.survfit, print.survfit, survfit.

---

survfitcoxph.fit *A direct interface to the 'computational engine' of survfit.coxph*

Description

This program is mainly supplied to allow other packages to invoke the survfit.coxph function at a 'data' level rather than a 'user' level. It does no checks on the input data that is provided, which can lead to unexpected errors if that data is wrong.

Usage

```
survfitcoxph.fit(y, x, wt, x2, risk, newrisk, strata, se.fit, survtype,
vartype, varmat, id, y2, strata2, unlist=TRUE)
```

Arguments

y	the response variable used in the Cox model. (Missing values removed of course.)
x	covariate matrix used in the Cox model
wt	weight vector for the Cox model. If the model was unweighted use a vector of 1s.
x2	matrix describing the hypothetical subjects for which a curve is desired. Must have the same number of columns as x.
risk	the risk score exp(X beta) from the fitted Cox model. If the model had an offset, include it in the argument to exp.
newrisk	risk scores for the hypothetical subjects
strata	strata variable used in the Cox model. This will be a factor.
se.fit	if TRUE the standard errors of the curve(s) are returned
survtype	1=Kalbfleish-Prentice, 2=Nelson-Aalen, 3=Efron. It is usual to match this to the approximation for ties used in the coxph model: KP for 'exact', N-A for 'breslow' and Efron for 'efron'.
vartype	1=Greenwood, 2=Aalen, 3=Efron
varmat	the variance matrix of the coefficients
id	optional; if present and not NULL this should be a vector of identifiers of length nrow(x2). A mon-null value signifies that x2 contains time dependent covariates, in which case this identifies which rows of x2 go with each subject.
y2	survival times, for time dependent prediction. It gives the time range (time1,time2] for each row of x2. Note: this must be a Surv object and thus contains a status indicator, which is never used in the routine, however.
strata2	vector of strata indicators for x2. This must be a factor.
unlist	if FALSE the result will be a list with one element for each strata. Otherwise the strata are "unpacked" into the form found in a survfit object.

Value

a list containing nearly all the components of a survfit object. All that is missing is to add the confidence intervals, the type of the original model's response (as in a coxph object), and the class.

Note

The source code for for both this function and survfit.coxph is written using noweb. For complete documentation see the inst/sourcecode.pdf file.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

survfit.coxph

survobrien *O'Brien's Test for Association of a Single Variable with Survival*

Description

Peter O'Brien's test for association of a single variable with survival This test is proposed in Biometrics, June 1978.

Usage

```
survobrien(formula, data, subset, na.action, transform)
```

Arguments

formula	a valid formula for a cox model.
data	a data.frame in which to interpret the variables named in the formula, or in the subset and the weights argument.
subset	expression indicating which subset of the rows of data should be used in the fit. All observations are included by default.
na.action	a missing-data filter function. This is applied to the model.frame after any subset argument has been used. Default is options()$na.action.
transform	the transformation function to be applied at each time point. The default is O'Brien's suggestion logit(tr) where tr = (rank(x)- 1/2)/ length(x) is the rank shifted to the range 0-1 and logit(x) = log(x/(1-x)) is the logit transform.

Value

a new data frame. The response variables will be column names returned by the Surv function, i.e., "time" and "status" for simple survival data, or "start", "stop", "status" for counting process data. Each individual event time is identified by the value of the variable .strata.. Other variables retain their original names. If a predictor variable is a factor or is protected with I(), it is retained as is. Other predictor variables have been replaced with time-dependent logit scores.

The new data frame will have many more rows that the original data, approximately the original number of rows * number of deaths/2.

Method

A time-dependent cox model can now be fit to the new data. The univariate statistic, as originally proposed, is equivalent to single variable score tests from the time-dependent model. This equivalence is the rationale for using the time dependent model as a multivariate extension of the original paper.

In O'Brien's method, the x variables are re-ranked at each death time. A simpler method, proposed by Prentice, ranks the data only once at the start. The results are usually similar.

Note

A prior version of the routine returned new time variables rather than a strata. Unfortunately, that strategy does not work if the original formula has a strata statement. This new data set will be the same size, but the coxph routine will process it slightly faster.

References

O'Brien, Peter, "A Nonparametric Test for Association with Censored Data", *Biometrics* 34: 243-250, 1978.

See Also

survdiff

Examples

```
xx <- survobrien(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ age + factor(rx) + I(ecog.ps),
       data=ovarian)
coxph(Surv(time, status) ~ age + strata(.strata.), data=xx)
```

---

survreg *Regression for a Parametric Survival Model*

Description

Fit a parametric survival regression model. These are location-scale models for an arbitrary transform of the time variable; the most common cases use a log transformation, leading to accelerated failure time models.

Usage

```
survreg(formula, data, weights, subset,
        na.action, dist="weibull", init=NULL, scale=0,
        control,parms=NULL,model=FALSE, x=FALSE,
        y=TRUE, robust=FALSE, score=FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

formula	a formula expression as for other regression models. The response is usually a survival object as returned by the Surv function. See the documentation for Surv, lm and formula for details.
data	a data frame in which to interpret the variables named in the formula, weights or the subset arguments.
weights	optional vector of case weights
subset	subset of the observations to be used in the fit
na.action	a missing-data filter function, applied to the model.frame, after any subset argument has been used. Default is options()$na.action.
dist	assumed distribution for y variable. If the argument is a character string, then it is assumed to name an element from survreg.distributions. These include "weibull", "exponential", "gaussian", "logistic","lognormal" and "loglogistic". Otherwise, it is assumed to be a user defined list conforming to the format described in survreg.distributions.
parms	a list of fixed parameters. For the t-distribution for instance this is the degrees of freedom; most of the distributions have no parameters.

init	optional vector of initial values for the parameters.
scale	optional fixed value for the scale. If set to <=0 then the scale is estimated.
control	a list of control values, in the format produced by survreg.control. The default value is survreg.control()
model,x,y	flags to control what is returned. If any of these is true, then the model frame, the model matrix, and/or the vector of response times will be returned as components of the final result, with the same names as the flag arguments.
score	return the score vector. (This is expected to be zero upon successful convergence.)
robust	Use robust 'sandwich' standard errors, based on independence of individuals if there is no cluster() term in the formula, based on independence of clusters if there is.
...	other arguments which will be passed to survreg.control.

Value

an object of class survreg is returned.

See Also

survreg.object, survreg.distributions, pspline, frailty, ridge

Examples

```
# Fit an exponential model: the two fits are the same
survreg(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ ecog.ps + rx, ovarian, dist=weibull,
                                    scale=1)
survreg(Surv(futime, fustat) ~ ecog.ps + rx, ovarian,
        dist="exponential")

#
# A model with different baseline survival shapes for two groups, i.e.,
#   two different scale parameters
survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + age + strata(sex), lung)

# There are multiple ways to parameterize a Weibull distribution. The survreg
# function embeds it in a general location-scale family, which is a
# different parameterization than the rweibull function, and often leads
# to confusion.
#   survregs scale  =    1/(rweibull shape)
#   survregs intercept = log(rweibull scale)
#   For the log-likelihood all parameterizations lead to the same value.
y <- rweibull(1000, shape=2, scale=5)
survreg(Surv(y)~1, dist="weibull")

# Economists fit a model called tobit regression, which is a standard
# linear regression with Gaussian errors, and left censored data.
tobinfit <- survreg(Surv(durable, durable>0, type=left) ~ age + quant,
            data=tobin, dist=gaussian)
```

survreg.control *Package options for survreg and coxph*

Description

This functions checks and packages the fitting options for survreg

Usage

```
survreg.control(maxiter=30, rel.tolerance=1e-09,
toler.chol=1e-10, iter.max, debug=0, outer.max=10)
```

Arguments

maxiter	maximum number of iterations
rel.tolerance	relative tolerance to declare convergence
toler.chol	Tolerance to declare Cholesky decomposition singular
iter.max	same as maxiter
debug	print debugging information
outer.max	maximum number of outer iterations for choosing penalty parameters

Value

A list with the same elements as the input

See Also

survreg

survreg.distributions *Parametric Survival Distributions*

Description

List of distributions for accelerated failure models. These are location-scale families for some transformation of time. The entry describes the cdf F and density f of a canonical member of the family.

Usage

```
survreg.distributions
```

Format

There are two basic formats, the first defines a distribution de novo, the second defines a new distribution in terms of an old one.

name:	name of distribution
variance:	function(parms) returning the variance (currently unused)
init(x,weights,...):	Function returning an initial estimate of the mean and variance (used for initial values in the iteration)
density(x,parms):	Function returning a matrix with columns F, $1-F$,f,f'/f,f''/f
quantile(p,parms):	Quantile function
scale:	Optional fixed value for the scale parameter
parms:	Vector of default values and names for any additional parameters
deviance(y,scale,parms):	Function returning the deviance for a saturated model; used only for deviance residuals.

and to define one distribution in terms of another

name:	name of distribution
dist:	name of parent distribution
trans:	transformation (eg log)
dtrans:	derivative of transformation
itrans:	inverse of transformation
scale:	Optional fixed value for scale parameter

Details

There are four basic distributions:`extreme`, `gaussian`, `logistic` and `t`. The last three are parametrised in the same way as the distributions already present in . The extreme value cdf is

$$F = 1 - e^{-e^t}.$$

When the logarithm of survival time has one of the first three distributions we obtain respectively `weibull`, `lognormal`, and `loglogistic`. The location-scale parameterizaion of a Weibull distribution found in `survreg` is not the same as the parameterization of `rweibull`.

The other predefined distributions are defined in terms of these. The `exponential` and `rayleigh` distributions are Weibull distributions with fixed `scale` of 1 and 0.5 respectively, and `loggaussian` is a synonym for `lognormal`.

For speed parts of the three most commonly used distributions are hardcoded in C; for this reason the elements of `survreg.distributions` with names of "Extreme value", "Logisitic" and "Gaussian" should not be modified. (The order of these in the list is not important, recognition is by name.) As an alternative to modifying `survreg.distributions` a new distribution can be specified as a separate list. This is the preferred method of addition and is illustrated below.

See Also

`survreg`, `pweibull`, `pnorm`,`plogis`, `pt`, `survregDtest`

Examples

```
# time transformation
survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + sex, dist=weibull, data=lung)
# change the transformation to work in years
# intercept changes by log(365), everything else stays the same
my.weibull <- survreg.distributions$weibull
my.weibull$trans <- function(y) log(y/365)
my.weibull$itrans <- function(y) 365*exp(y)
survreg(Surv(time, status) ~ ph.ecog + sex, lung, dist=my.weibull)

# Weibull parametrisation
y<-rweibull(1000, shape=2, scale=5)
survreg(Surv(y)~1, dist="weibull")
# survreg scale parameter maps to 1/shape, linear predictor to log(scale)

# Cauchy fit
mycauchy <- list(name=Cauchy,
                 init= function(x, weights, ...)
                      c(median(x), mad(x)),
                 density= function(x, parms) {
                      temp <- 1/(1 + x^2)
                      cbind(.5 + atan(x)/pi, .5+ atan(-x)/pi,
                            temp/pi, -2 *x*temp, 2*temp*(4*x^2*temp -1))
                      },
                 quantile= function(p, parms) tan((p-.5)*pi),
                 deviance= function(...) stop(deviance residuals not defined)
                 )
survreg(Surv(log(time), status) ~ ph.ecog + sex, lung, dist=mycauchy)
```

`survreg.object` *Parametric Survival Model Object*

Description

This class of objects is returned by the `survreg` function to represent a fitted parametric survival model. Objects of this class have methods for the functions `print`, `summary`, `predict`, and `residuals`.

COMPONENTS

The following components must be included in a legitimate `survreg` object.

coefficients the coefficients of the `linear.predictors`, which multiply the columns of the model matrix. It does not include the estimate of error (sigma). The names of the coefficients are the names of the single-degree-of-freedom effects (the columns of the model matrix). If the model is over-determined there will be missing values in the coefficients corresponding to non-estimable coefficients.

icoef coefficients of the baseline model, which will contain the intercept and log(scale), or mulitple scale factors for a stratified model.

var the variance-covariance matrix for the parameters, including the log(scale) parameter(s).

loglik a vector of length 2, containing the log-likelihood for the baseline and full models.

iter the number of iterations required

linear.predictors the linear predictor for each subject.

df the degrees of freedom for the final model. For a penalized model this will be a vector with one element per term.

scale the scale factor(s), with length equal to the number of strata.

idf degrees of freedom for the initial model.

means a vector of the column means of the coefficient matrix.

dist the distribution used in the fit.

weights included for a weighted fit.

The object will also have the following components found in other model results (some are optional): `linear predictors`, `weights`, `x`, `y`, `model`, `call`, `terms` and `formula`. See `lm`.

See Also

`survreg`, `lm`

`survregDtest` *Verify a survreg distribution*

Description

This routine is called by `survreg` to verify that a distribution object is valid.

Usage

```
survregDtest(dlist, verbose = F)
```

Arguments

`dlist`	the list describing a survival distribution
`verbose`	return a simple TRUE/FALSE from the test for validity (the default), or a verbose description of any flaws.

Details

If the `survreg` function rejects your user-supplied distribution as invalid, this routine will tell you why it did so.

Value

TRUE if the distribution object passes the tests, and either FALSE or a vector of character strings if not.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

`survreg.distributions`, `survreg`

Examples

```
# An invalid distribution (it should have "init =" on line 2)
#  surveg would give an error message
mycauchy <- list(name=Cauchy,
                 init<- function(x, weights, ...)
                      c(median(x), mad(x)),
                 density= function(x, parms) {
                      temp <- 1/(1 + x^2)
                      cbind(.5 + atan(temp)/pi, .5+ atan(-temp)/pi,
                            temp/pi, -2 *x*temp, 2*temp^2*(4*x^2*temp -1))
                      },
                 quantile= function(p, parms) tan((p-.5)*pi),
                 deviance= function(...) stop(deviance residuals not defined)
                 )

survregDtest(mycauchy, TRUE)
```

---

survSplit *Split a survival data set at specified times*

Description

Given a survival data set and a set of specified cut times, split each record into multiple subrecords at each cut time. The new data set will be in 'counting process' format, with a start time, stop time, and event status for each record.

Usage

```
survSplit(data, cut, end, event, start, id = NULL, zero = 0,
  episode=NULL)
```

Arguments

data	data frame
cut	vector of timepoints to cut at
end	character string with name of event time variable
event	character string with name of censoring indicator
start	character string with name of start time variable (will be created if it does not exist)
id	character string with name of new id variable to create (optional)
zero	If start doesn't already exist, this is the time that the original records start. May be a vector or single value.
episode	character string with name of new episode variable (optional)

Details

The function also works when the original data are in counting-process format, but the id and episode options are of little use in this context.

Value

New, longer, data frame.

See Also

Surv, cut, reshape

Examples

```
aml3<-survSplit(aml,cut=c(5,10,50),end="time",start="start",
      event="status",episode="i")

summary(aml)
summary(aml3)

coxph(Surv(time,status)~x,data=aml)
## the same
coxph(Surv(start,time,status)~x,data=aml3)

aml4<-survSplit(aml3,cut=20,end="time",start="start", event="status")
coxph(Surv(start,time,status)~x,data=aml4)
```

---

tcut *Factors for person-year calculations*

Description

Attaches categories for person-year calculations to a variable without losing the underlying continuous representation

Usage

```
tcut(x, breaks, labels, scale=1)
## S3 method for class tcut
levels(x)
```

Arguments

x	numeric/date variable
breaks	breaks between categories, which are right-continuous
labels	labels for categories
scale	Multiply x and breaks by this.

Value

An object of class tcut

See Also

cut, pyears

Examples

```
mdy.date <- function(m,d,y)
   as.Date(paste(ifelse(y<100, y+1900, y), m, d, sep=/))
temp1 <- mdy.date(6,6,36)
temp2 <- mdy.date(6,6,55)# Now compare the results from person-years
#
temp.age <- tcut(temp2-temp1, floor(c(-1, (18:31 * 365.24))),
labels=c(0-18, paste(18:30, 19:31, sep=-)))
temp.yr  <- tcut(temp2, mdy.date(1,1,1954:1965), labels=1954:1964)
temp.time <- 3700   #total days of fu
py1 <- pyears(temp.time ~ temp.age + temp.yr, scale=1) #output in days
py1
```

---

tmerge *Time based merge for survival data*

Description

A common task in survival analysis is the creation of start,stop data sets which have multiple intervals for each subject, along with the covariate values that apply over that interval. This function aids in the creation of such data sets.

Usage

```
tmerge(data1, data2,  id,..., tstart, tstop, options)
```

Arguments

data1	the primary data set, to which new variables and/or observation will be added
data2	optional second data set in which the other arguments will be found
id	subject identifier
...	operations that add new variables or intervals, see below
tstart	optional variable to define the valid time range for each subject, only used on an initial call
tstop	optional variable to define the valid time range for each subject, only used on an initial call
options	a list of options. Valid ones are id, tstart, and tstop, which will be the names of the three mandatory variables in the output data. The other is defer, which sets a numeric amount of time before an event when covariate changes are disallowed (the are deferred until after the event in that case.)

Details

The program is usually run in multiple passes, the first of which defines the basic structure, and subsequent ones that add new variables to that structure. For a more complete explanation of how this routine works refer to the vignette on time-dependent variables.

There are 4 types of optional arguments: a time dependent covariate (tdc), cumulative count (cumtdc), event (event) or cumulative event (cumevent). Time dependent covariates change their values before an event, events are outcomes.

- newname = tdc(y, x)A new time dependent covariate variable will created. The argument y is assumed to be on the scale of the start and end time, and each instance decribes the occurent of a "condition" at that time. The second argument x is optional. In the case where x is missing the count variable starts at 0 for each subject and becomes 1 at the time of the event; if x is present the count is set to the value of x. If a given subject has multiple rows of data with the same time value the sum of those rows will be assigned.

  newname = cumtdc(y,x)Similar to tdc, except that the event count is accumulated over time for each subject.

  newname = event(y,x)Mark an event at time y. In the ususal case that x is missing, the new 0/1 variable will be similar to the 0/1 status variable of a survival time, and that is in fact how it will normally be used. For multiple types of endpoints the x argument can be used encode the type of event.

  newname = cumevent(y,x)Cumulative events.

Say that a subject had an interval of observation from age 17 to 38, denoted as (17, 38] and that a marker occurs at age 24. A tdc variable is a predictor which is assumed to apply from the time it occured to the end of followup for the subject. The updated data set will have intervals of (17,24] and (24, 38] with a count of 0 for the first interval and 1 for the second, assuming no other occurences for this subject at exactly time 24. An event is an outcome, so if coded as an event the said occurence would be placed in the (17,24] interval, with the new variable marking that this interval finished with an event.

Value

a data frame with two extra attributes `tname` and `tcount`. The first contains the names of the key variables; it's persistence from call to call allows the user to avoid constantly reentering the `options` arguments. The tcount variable contains counts of the match types. New time values that occur before the first interval for a subject are "early", those after the last interval for a subject are "late", and those that fall into a gap are of type "gap".

The most common type will usually be "within", for those new times that fall inside an existing interval and cause it to be split into two. Observations that fall exactly on the edge of an interval are counted as "leading" edge, "trailing" or "boundary". The first corresponds for instance to an occurence at 17 for someone with an interval (17, 35] who is not at risk just before time 17. A `tdc` at time 17 will affect this interval but not an `event`. Symmetrically an `event` occurence at 35 would count in the (17,35] interval, but a `tdc` would not. The last case is where the main data set has touching intervals for a subject, e.g. (17, 28] and (28,35] and a new occurence lands at the join. Events will go to the earlier interval and counts to the latter one.

It is wise to look at `attr(data, tcount)` after each step of a data set build to avoid surprises.

These extra attributes are ephemeral, and will be discarded if the dataframe is modified in any way. This is intentional.

Author(s)

Terry Therneau

See Also

`neardate`

Examples

```
# The data set jasa contains the famous Stanford Heart Transplant data
```

```
#  set, as it appeared in Crowley and Hu, JASA 72:27-36, 1971.
# Two special cases need to be dealt with:
#  subject 15 died on day 0 which leads to an illegal (0,0] interval,
#     make them die on day 0.5 instead
#  subject 38 dies on the day of transplant, make tx happen "earlier in
#     the day" (before death) by subtracting .1 from their transplant day
#
tdata <- jasa[, -(1:4)]  #leave off the dates, temporary data set
tdata$futime <- pmax(.5, tdata$futime)  # the death on day 0
indx <- with(tdata, which(wait.time == futime))
tdata$wait.time[indx] <- tdata$wait.time[indx] - .5  #the tied transplant
sdata <- tmerge(tdata, tdata, id=1:nrow(tdata),
                death = event(futime, fustat),
                trans = tdc(wait.time))
attr(sdata, "tcount")
# Shows two subjects transplanted on the day of entry, the "front edge" of
#  their follow-up interval

fit <- coxph(Surv(tstart, tstop, death) ~ trans + age, data=sdata)
```

`tobin` *Tobin's Tobit data*

Description

Economists fit a parametric censored data model called the 'tobit'. These data are from Tobin's original paper.

Usage

```
tobin
```

Format

A data frame with 20 observations on the following 3 variables.

durable Durable goods purchase

age Age in years

quant Liquidity ratio (x 1000)

Source

J Tobin (1958), Estimation of relationships for limited dependent variables. *Econometrica* **26**, 24–36.

Examples

```
tfit <- survreg(Surv(durable, durable>0, type=left) ~age + quant,
                data=tobin, dist=gaussian)

predict(tfit,type="response")
```

transplant *Liver transplant waiting list*

Description

Subjects on a liver transplant waiting list from 1990-1999, and their disposition: received a transplant, died while waiting, withdrew from the list, or censored.

Usage

```
data("transplant")
```

Format

A data frame with 815 observations on the following 6 variables.

`age` age at addition to the waiting list

`sex` `m` or `f`

`abo` blood type: `A`, `B`, `AB` or `O`

`year` year in which they entered the waiting list

`futime` time from entry to final disposition

`event` final disposition: `censored`, `death`, `ltx` or `withdraw`

Details

This represents the transplant experience in a particular region, over a time period in which liver transplant became much more widely recognized as a viable treatment modality. The number of liver transplants rises over the period, but the number of subjects added to the liver transplant waiting list grew much faster. Important questions addressed by the data are the change in waiting time, who waits, and whether there was an consequent increase in deaths while on the list.

Blood type is an important consideration. Donor livers from subjects with blood type O can be used by patients with A, B, AB or 0 blood types, whereas a recipient of type B cannot accept an A or AB liver for instance. Thus type O subjects on the waiting list are at a disadvantage, since the pool of competitors is larger for type O donor livers.

This data is of historical interest but has little relevance to current practice. Liver allocation policies have evolved and now depend directly on individual patient's risk and need, assessments of which are regularly updated while a patient is on the waiting list. The overall organ shortage remains acute, however.

Examples

```
period <- cut(transplant$year, c(1989, 1992, 1995, 1997, 2000),
              labels=c(90-92, 93-95, 96-97, 98-99))
pfit <- survfit(Surv(futime, event) ~ period, transplant)
pfit[2,]  #time to liver transplant
plot(pfit[,2], mark.time=FALSE, col=1:4, lwd=2, xmax=735,
       xscale=30.5, xlab="Months", ylab="Fraction transplanted",
       xaxt = n)
temp <- c(0, 6, 12, 18, 24)
axis(1, temp, temp)

legend(15, .35, levels(period), lty=1, col=1:4, lwd=2, bty=n)
```

untangle.specials *Help Process the 'specials' Argument of the 'terms' Function.*

Description

Given a terms structure and a desired special name, this returns an index appropriate for subscripting the terms structure and another appropriate for the data frame.

Usage

```
untangle.specials(tt, special, order=1)
```

Arguments

tt	a terms object.
special	the name of a special function, presumably used in the terms object.
order	the order of the desired terms. If set to 2, interactions with the special function will be included.

Value

a list with two components:

vars	a vector of variable names, as would be found in the data frame, of the specials.
terms	a numeric vector, suitable for subscripting the terms structure, that indexes the terms in the expanded model formula which involve the special.

Examples

```
formula<-Surv(tt,ss)~x+z*strata(id)
tms<-terms(formula,specials="strata")
## the specials attribute
attr(tms,"specials")
## main effects
untangle.specials(tms,"strata")
## and interactions
untangle.specials(tms,"strata",order=1:2)
```

uspop2 *Projected US Population*

Description

US population by age and sex, for 2000 through 2020

Usage

```
data(uspop2)
```

Format

The data is a matrix with dimensions age, sex, and calendar year. Age goes from 0 through 100, where the value for age 100 is the total for all ages of 100 or greater.

Details

This data is often used as a "standardized" population for epidemiolgy studies.

Source

NP2008_D1: Projected Population by Single Year of Age, Sex, Race, and Hispanic Origin for the United States: July 1, 2000 to July 1, 2050, www.census.gov/population/projections.

See Also

uspop

Examples

```
us50 <- uspop2[51:101,, "2000"]  #US 2000 population, 50 and over
age <- as.integer(dimnames(us50)[[1]])
smat <- model.matrix( ~ factor(floor(age/5)) -1)
ustot <- t(smat) %*% us50  #totals by 5 year age groups
temp <- c(50,55, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 95)
dimnames(ustot) <- list(c(paste(temp, temp+4, sep="-"), "100+"),
                        c("male", "female"))
```

---

veteran *Veterans' Administration Lung Cancer study*

Description

Randomised trial of two treatment regimens for lung cancer. This is a standard survival analysis data set.

Usage

```
veteran
```

Format

trt:	1=standard 2=test
celltype:	1=squamous, 2=smallcell, 3=adeno, 4=large
time:	survival time
status:	censoring status
karno:	Karnofsky performance score (100=good)
diagtime:	months from diagnosis to randomisation
age:	in years
prior:	prior therapy 0=no, 1=yes

Source

D Kalbfleisch and RL Prentice (1980), *The Statistical Analysis of Failure Time Data*. Wiley, New York.